

**TITLE 22—FOREIGN RELATIONS AND INTERCOURSE**

| Chap. |   | Sec. | Chap. |  | Sec. |
|-------|---|------|-------|--|------|
| 1.    | Diplomatic and Consular Service Generally [Repealed, Transferred, or Omitted] .....         | 1    | 29.   | Cultural, Technical, and Educational Centers .....   | 2051 |
| 2.    | Consular Courts [Repealed or Omitted] .....   | 141  | 29A.  | Inter-American Cultural and Trade Center .....   | 2081 |
| 3.    | United States Court for China [Repealed or Omitted] .....                                   | 191  | 30.   | International Cooperation in Health and Medical Research .....                               | 2101 |
| 4.    | Passports .....   | 211  | 31.   | International Travel .....   | 2121 |
| 5.    | Preservation of Friendly Foreign Relations Generally [Repealed or Transferred] .....        | 231  | 32.   | Foreign Assistance .....   | 2151 |
| 6.    | Foreign Diplomatic and Consular Officers .....  | 251  | 33.   | Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Program .....                                       | 2451 |
| 7.    | International Bureaus, Congresses, etc. ....  | 261  | 34.   | The Peace Corps .....  | 2501 |
| 8.    | Foreign Service Buildings .....   | 291  | 35.   | Arms Control and Disarmament .....   | 2551 |
| 9.    | Foreign Wars, War Materials, and Neutrality .....   | 401  | 36.   | Migration and Refugee Assistance .....   | 2601 |
| 10.   | Hemispherical Relations .....   | 501  | 37.   | Foreign Gifts and Decorations .....  | 2621 |
| 11.   | Foreign Agents and Propaganda .....   | 601  | 38.   | Department of State .....  | 2651 |
| 12.   | Claims Commissions [Omitted] .....  | 661  | 39.   | Arms Export Control .....  | 2751 |
| 13.   | Service Courts of Friendly Foreign Forces .....   | 701  | 40.   | International Expositions .....  | 2801 |
| 14.   | Foreign Service [Repealed, Omitted, or Transferred] .....                                   | 801  | 41.   | Study Commission Relating to Foreign Policy [Omitted] .....                                  | 2821 |
| 14A.  | Foreign Service Information Officers Corps [Repealed] .....                                 | 1221 | 42.   | International Economic Policy [Omitted] .....  | 2841 |
| 15.   | The Republic of the Philippines .....   | 1251 | 43.   | International Broadcasting [Repealed] .....  | 2871 |
| 16.   | Greek and Turkish Assistance [Repealed] .....   | 1401 | 44.   | Japan-United States Friendship .....   | 2901 |
| 17.   | Relief Aid to War-Devastated Countries [Repealed] .....                                     | 1411 | 45.   | Commission on Security and Cooperation in Europe .....                                       | 3001 |
| 18.   | United States Information and Educational Exchange Programs .....                           | 1431 | 46.   | International Investment and Trade in Services Survey .....                                  | 3101 |
| 19.   | Foreign Assistance Program [Repealed] .....   | 1501 | 46A.  | Foreign Direct Investment and International Financial Data .....                             | 3141 |
| 20.   | Mutual Defense Assistance Program [Repealed or Omitted] .....                               | 1571 | 47.   | Nuclear Non-Proliferation .....  | 3201 |
| 20A.  | Mutual Defense Assistance Control Program [Omitted] .....                                   | 1611 | 48.   | Taiwan Relations .....   | 3301 |
| 21.   | Settlement of International Claims .....  | 1621 | 49.   | Support of Peace Treaty Between Egypt and Israel .....                                       | 3401 |
| 21A.  | Settlement of Investment Disputes .....   | 1650 | 50.   | Institute for Scientific and Technological Cooperation .....                                 | 3501 |
| 22.   | Mutual Security Assistance [Repealed] .....   | 1651 | 51.   | Panama Canal .....   | 3601 |
| 23.   | Protection of Citizens Abroad .....   | 1731 | 52.   | Foreign Service .....  | 3901 |
| 24.   | Mutual Security Program .....   | 1750 | 53.   | Authorities Relating to the Regulation of Foreign Missions .....                             | 4301 |
| 24A.  | Middle East Peace and Stability .....   | 1961 | 53A.  | Disposition of Personal Property Abroad .....  | 4341 |
| 25.   | Protection of Vessels on the High Seas and in Territorial Waters of Foreign Countries ..... | 1971 | 53B.  | Foreign Relations of the United States Historical Series .....                               | 4351 |
| 26.   | Armed Forces Participation in International Amateur Sports Competitions [Repealed] .....    | 1981 | 54.   | Private Organization Assistance .....  | 4401 |
| 27.   | International Cultural Exchange and Trade Fair Participation [Repealed] .....               | 1991 | 55.   | Research and Training for Eastern Europe and Independent States of Former Soviet Union ..... | 4501 |
| 28.   | International Atomic Energy Agency Participation .....                                      | 2021 | 56.   | United States Institute of Peace .....   | 4601 |
|       |   |      | 57.   | United States Scholarship Program for Developing Countries .....                             | 4701 |
|       |   |      | 58.   | Diplomatic Security .....  | 4801 |
|       |   |      | 59.   | Fascell Fellowship Program .....   | 4901 |
|       |   |      | 60.   | Anti-Apartheid Program [Repealed] .....  | 5001 |
|       |   |      | 61.   | Anti-Terrorism—PLO .....   | 5201 |
|       |   |      | 62.   | International Financial Policy .....   | 5301 |

| Chap. |  | Sec.        |
|-------|--|-------------|
| 63.   | <b>Support for East European Democracy (SEED) .....</b>                                    | <b>5401</b> |
| 64.   | <b>United States Response to Terrorism Affecting Americans Abroad .....</b>                | <b>5501</b> |
| 65.   | <b>Control and Elimination of Chemical and Biological Weapons .....</b>                    | <b>5601</b> |
| 66.   | <b>United States-Hong Kong Policy .....</b>  | <b>5701</b> |
| 67.   | <b>Freedom for Russia and Emerging Eurasian Democracies and Open Markets Support .....</b> | <b>5801</b> |
| 68.   | <b>Demilitarization of Former Soviet Union .....</b>                                       | <b>5901</b> |
| 68A.  | <b>Cooperative Threat Reduction With States of Former Soviet Union .....</b>               | <b>5951</b> |
| 69.   | <b>Cuban Democracy .....</b>   | <b>6001</b> |
| 70.   | <b>Mansfield Fellowship Program .....</b>  | <b>6101</b> |
| 71.   | <b>United States International Broadcasting .....</b>                                      | <b>6201</b> |

**CHAPTER 1—DIPLOMATIC AND CONSULAR SERVICE GENERALLY**

REVISION OF LAWS

Congress by the enactment of the Foreign Service Act of 1946, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, 60 Stat. 999, classified principally to chapter 14 (§801 et seq.) of this title, consolidated and revised the laws relating to the administration of the Foreign Service. The Foreign Service Act of 1980, Pub. L. 96-465, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2071, classified principally to chapter 52 (§3901 et seq.) of this title, repealed the Foreign Service Act of 1946 and further consolidated and revised the laws relating to the Foreign Service.

PROCLAMATIONS RESPECTING WAR AND NEUTRALITY

See notes preceding section 1 of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense.

**§§ 1 to 7. Repealed. Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title XI, § 1131(32)–(37), (49), (66), 60 Stat. 1037**

Section 1, act May 24, 1924, ch. 182, § 8, formerly § 1, 43 Stat. 140; renumbered § 8 and amended Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, § 7, 46 Stat. 1207, related to establishment of Foreign Service.

Section 1a, act May 3, 1945, ch. 105, § 1, 59 Stat. 102, related to Congressional declaration of purpose.

Section 2, act May 24, 1924, ch. 182, § 9, formerly § 2, 43 Stat. 140; renumbered § 9 and amended Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, § 7, 46 Stat. 1207, related to definition of a Foreign Service officer and assignment to duty generally.

Section 3, act May 24, 1924, ch. 182, § 10, formerly § 3, 43 Stat. 140; renumbered § 10 and amended Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, § 7, 46 Stat. 1207; Apr. 24, 1939, ch. 84, § 2, 53 Stat. 583; May 3, 1945, ch. 105, §§ 4, 5, 59 Stat. 102, 103, related to grading, classification, and compensation of officers.

Section 3a, act May 24, 1924, ch. 182, § 33, as added Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, § 7, 46 Stat. 1215; amended Apr. 24, 1939, ch. 84, § 4, 53 Stat. 588, related to salary increases.

Section 4, act May 24, 1924, ch. 182, § 11, formerly § 4, 43 Stat. 140; renumbered § 11 and amended Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, § 7, 46 Stat. 1215; June 29, 1935, ch. 337, 49 Stat. 436, related to appointment and commission of officers.

Section 5, act May 24, 1924, ch. 182, § 12, formerly § 5, 43 Stat. 141; renumbered § 12 and amended Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, § 7, 46 Stat. 1208, related to examination and appointment on probation of officers.

Section 6, act May 24, 1924, ch. 182, § 12, formerly § 5, 43 Stat. 141; renumbered § 12 and amended Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, § 7, 46 Stat. 1208, related to appointment to a class and not to a particular post.

Section 7, act May 24, 1924, ch. 182, § 14, as added Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, § 7, 46 Stat. 1208; amended May 3, 1945, ch. 105, § 6, 59 Stat. 103, related to reports and recommendations for promotions.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective three months after Aug. 13, 1946, see section 1141 of act Aug. 13, 1946.

**§ 8. Repealed. Pub. L. 89-554, § 8(a), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 645**

Section, act May 24, 1924, ch. 182, § 7, 43 Stat. 141, related to recommissioning diplomatic and consular officers on July 1, 1924.

**§ 9. Repealed. Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title XI, § 1131(25), 60 Stat. 1037**

Section, acts Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, § 4, 34 Stat. 100; May 24, 1924, ch. 182, § 17, formerly § 10, 43 Stat. 142, renumbered § 17 and amended Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, § 7, 46 Stat. 1209, related to inspection of diplomatic and consular offices.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective three months after Aug. 13, 1946.

**§ 10. Repealed. Pub. L. 89-554, § 8(a), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 645**

Section, act May 24, 1924, ch. 182, § 14, formerly § 8, 43 Stat. 142; renumbered § 14 and amended Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, § 7, 46 Stat. 1208, abolished grade of consular assistant and provided against reduction of salaries of certain consuls.

**§§ 11, 12. Repealed. Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title XI, § 1131(38), (39), 60 Stat. 1038**

Section 11, R.S. §§ 1697, 1698, as amended acts Dec. 21, 1898, ch. 36, §§ 1, 2, 30 Stat. 770, 771; May 24, 1924, ch. 182, § 16, formerly § 9, 43 Stat. 142, renumbered § 16 and amended Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, § 7, 46 Stat. 1208; May 3, 1945, ch. 105, § 7, 59 Stat. 103, related to bonds of officers.

Section 12, act May 24, 1924, ch. 182, § 19, formerly § 12, 43 Stat. 142; renumbered § 19 and amended Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, § 7, 46 Stat. 1209; May 3, 1945, ch. 105, § 8, 59 Stat. 104, related to living, representation, and post allowances.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective three months after Aug. 13, 1946, see section 1141 of act Aug. 13, 1946.

**§ 13. Transferred**

CODIFICATION

Section, act May 24, 1924, ch. 182, § 18, formerly § 11, 43 Stat. 142; renumbered § 18 and amended Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, § 7, 46 Stat. 1209, which related to receipt of official fees and method of accounting therefor, was transferred to section 4224 of this title.

**§§ 14 to 23j. Repealed. Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title XI, § 1131(4), (29), (40)–(50), (53), (59)–(63), 60 Stat. 1035**

Section 14, act May 24, 1924, ch. 182, § 20, formerly § 13, 43 Stat. 143; renumbered § 20 and amended Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, § 7, 46 Stat. 1209, related to private secretaries to ambassadors.

Section 15, act May 24, 1924, ch. 182, § 21, formerly § 14, 43 Stat. 143; renumbered § 21 and amended Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, § 7, 46 Stat. 1209; May 3, 1945, ch. 105, § 9, 59 Stat. 104, related to assignment of officers for duty in Department of State or any other department or agency of the Government.

Section 16, act May 24, 1924, ch. 182, § 21, formerly § 14, 43 Stat. 143; renumbered § 21 and amended Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, § 7, 46 Stat. 1209; May 3, 1945, ch. 105, § 9, 59 Stat. 104, related to assignment to special details.

Section 17, act May 24, 1924, ch. 182, § 22, formerly § 15, 43 Stat. 143; renumbered § 22 and amended Feb. 23, 1931,

ch. 276, § 7, 46 Stat. 1210; Mar. 17, 1941, ch. 20, 55 Stat. 44, related to ordering of personnel to United States on statutory leave.

Section 17a, act May 24, 1924, ch. 182, § 22, as added Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, § 7, 46 Stat. 1210, related to leave of absence and sick leave.

Section 18, acts July 1, 1916, ch. 208, 39 Stat. 252; May 24, 1924, ch. 182, § 23, formerly § 16, 43 Stat. 143; renumbered § 23 and amended Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, § 7, 46 Stat. 1210, related to appointment of Foreign Service officer as counselor of embassy or legation.

Section 19, act May 24, 1924, ch. 182, § 24, formerly § 17, 43 Stat. 143; renumbered § 24 and amended Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, § 7, 46 Stat. 1210, related to Foreign Service officers acting as commissioner, chargé d'affaires, etc.

Section 20, R.S. § 1685; acts Mar. 2, 1909, ch. 235, 35 Stat. 673; Feb. 5, 1915, ch. 23, § 3, 38 Stat. 805; May 24, 1924, ch. 182, § 17(25), 43 Stat. 143; Feb. 27, 1925, ch. 364, title I, 43 Stat. 1016; Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, § 7, 46 Stat. 1210, related to compensation of officer acting as chargé d'affaires ad interim.

Section 21, acts May 24, 1924, ch. 182, § 26, formerly § 18, 43 Stat. 144; July 3, 1926, ch. 798, § 1, 44 Stat. 902; renumbered § 26 and amended Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, § 7, 46 Stat. 1211; Apr. 24, 1939, ch. 84, § 3, 53 Stat. 584; July 19, 1939, ch. 330, 53 Stat. 1067; Aug. 5, 1939, ch. 441, 53 Stat. 1208; Apr. 20, 1940, ch. 118, § 1, 54 Stat. 143; Oct. 14, 1940, ch. 859, § 4, 54 Stat. 1118; May 13, 1941, ch. 115, § 1, 55 Stat. 189, eff. Aug. 1, 1941, related to retirement and disability system.

Section 21a, act July 3, 1926, ch. 798, § 2, 44 Stat. 903, related to retirement and disability rights of Chief of Division of Western European Affairs.

Section 22, act May 24, 1924, ch. 182, § 27, formerly § 19, 43 Stat. 146; renumbered § 27 and amended Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, § 7, 46 Stat. 1213, related to recall to active duty of retired officers.

Section 23, act May 24, 1924, ch. 182, § 28, formerly § 20, 43 Stat. 146; renumbered § 28 and amended Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, § 7, 46 Stat. 1213, related to making other laws applicable to Foreign Service officers.

Section 23a, acts Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, § 1, 46 Stat. 1207; May 3, 1945, ch. 105, § 2, 59 Stat. 102, related to administrative, fiscal, and clerical personnel of Foreign Service.

Section 23b, act Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, § 2, 46 Stat. 1207, related to appointment to grade of senior clerk.

Section 23c, acts Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, § 3, 46 Stat. 1207; Apr. 24, 1939, ch. 84, § 1, 53 Stat. 583; May 3, 1945, ch. 105, § 3, 59 Stat. 102, related to allowances at all posts to clerks to meet excessive costs of living.

Section 23d, act Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, § 4, 46 Stat. 1207, related to appointment of clerks to serve in a diplomatic mission.

Section 23e, act Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, § 5, 46 Stat. 1207, related to regulations governing clerks.

Section 23f, act May 24, 1924, ch. 182, § 31, as added Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, § 7, 46 Stat. 1214; amended May 3, 1945, ch. 105, § 10, 59 Stat. 105, related to Board of Foreign Personnel.

Section 23g, act May 24, 1924, ch. 182, § 31, as added Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, § 7, 46 Stat. 1214; amended May 3, 1945, ch. 105, § 10, 59 Stat. 105, related to Chief of Division of Foreign Service personnel and Director of Office of Foreign Service.

Section 23h, act May 24, 1924, ch. 182, § 32, as added Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, § 7, 46 Stat. 1214; amended July 3, 1946, ch. 539, § 5, 60 Stat. 427, related to Division of Foreign Service Personnel, efficiency ratings, etc.

Section 23i, act May 24, 1924, ch. 182, § 33, as added Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, § 7, 46 Stat. 1215; amended Apr. 24, 1939, ch. 84, § 4, 53 Stat. 588, related to separation of officers from Service, retirement pay, and annuities.

Section 23j, act May 24, 1924, ch. 182, § 34, as added Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, § 7, 46 Stat. 1216, related to reduction of salary upon promotion to a higher grade.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective three months after Aug. 13, 1946, see section 1141 of act Aug. 13, 1946.

## §§ 23k, 23l. Transferred

#### CODIFICATION

Section 23k, act May 24, 1924, ch. 182, § 35, as added Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, § 7, 46 Stat. 1216, which related to establishment and maintenance of fiscal accounting and disbursing offices, was transferred to section 4225 of this title.

Section 23l, act May 24, 1924, ch. 182, § 36, as added Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, § 7, 46 Stat. 1216, which related to fees and official monies from diplomatic missions, was transferred to section 4226 of this title.

## § 24. Repealed. Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title XI, § 1131(67), 60 Stat. 1040

Section, act May 3, 1945, ch. 105, § 12, 59 Stat. 105, related to restriction on transaction of business by officers and employees.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective three months after Aug. 13, 1946, see section 1141 of act Aug. 13, 1946.

## §§ 31 to 40. Repealed. Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title XI, § 1131(2), (3), (5), (6), (15), (19), (27), (28), (30), (31), (52), (55), (57), (58), 60 Stat. 1035

Section 31, act Mar. 2, 1909, ch. 235, 35 Stat. 672, related to restriction against creation of new ambassadorships.

Section 32, R.S. § 1675; acts Mar. 3, 1875, ch. 153, 18 Stat. 483; Feb. 27, 1925, ch. 364, 43 Stat. 1015; Jan. 21, 1931, ch. 42, 46 Stat. 1040, related to appointment and salaries of ambassadors, ministers, etc.

Section 32a, act Jan. 21, 1931, ch. 42, 46 Stat. 1040, related to salary of minister to Liberia.

Section 33, R.S. § 1744, related to citizenship as prerequisite to payment of compensation.

Section 34, act Sept. 29, 1919, ch. 72, 41 Stat. 291, related to appointment of an ambassador to Belgium.

Section 34a, act Jan. 22, 1930, ch. 22, 46 Stat. 57, related to appointment of an ambassador to Poland.

Section 34b, act June 5, 1930, ch. 404, 46 Stat. 502, related to appointment of a minister to Union of South Africa.

Section 34c, act June 1, 1922, ch. 204, title I, 42 Stat. 600, related to appointment of a minister to Egypt.

Section 35, acts Feb. 27, 1925, ch. 364, title I, 43 Stat. 1016; Apr. 29, 1926, ch. 195, title I, 44 Stat. 331; Feb. 24, 1927, ch. 189, title I, 44 Stat. 1180; Feb. 15, 1928, ch. 57, title I, 45 Stat. 65; Jan. 25, 1929, ch. 102, title I, 45 Stat. 1096; Apr. 18, 1930, ch. 184, title I, 46 Stat. 175, related to clerks at embassies and legations.

Section 36, R.S. § 1686, related to compensation of persons filling two offices.

Section 37, act June 11, 1874, ch. 275, § 1, 18 Stat. 67, related to special allowance to embassy messenger in Paris.

Section 38, act Feb. 5, 1915, ch. 23, § 7, 38 Stat. 807, related to transaction of business by diplomatic officers.

Section 39, R.S. § 1688, related to prohibition against uniforms and official costumes.

Section 40, R.S. § 1674; acts Feb. 5, 1915, ch. 23, § 6, 38 Stat. 806; July 1, 1916, ch. 208, 39 Stat. 252; May 24, 1924, ch. 182, § 2, 43 Stat. 140, related to definition of diplomatic offices.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective three months after Aug. 13, 1946, see section 1141 of act Aug. 13, 1946.

## § 41. Transferred

#### CODIFICATION

Section, act July 5, 1946, ch. 541, title I, 60 Stat. 448, which related to ambassadors or ministers unable to serve because of emergent conditions abroad, was transferred and set out as a note under section 901 of this title and subsequently omitted from the Code.

**§§ 51, 51a. Repealed. Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title XI, § 1131(2), (7), 60 Stat. 1035**

Section 51, R.S. §1674; act Feb. 5, 1915, ch. 23, §6, 38 Stat. 806, related to official designations in consular service.

Section 51a, R.S. §1695; acts Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, §3, 34 Stat. 100; Feb. 5, 1915, ch. 23, §6, 38 Stat. 806, related to appointment of vice-consuls and consular agents.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective three months after Aug. 13, 1946, see section 1141 of act Aug. 13, 1946.

**§ 52. Omitted**

CODIFICATION

Section, act Feb. 5, 1915, ch. 23, §6, 38 Stat. 806, abolished offices of vice consul general, deputy consul general, and deputy consul.

**§ 53. Transferred**

CODIFICATION

Section, R.S. §1689, which related to various provisions applicable to particular classes of consular officers, was transferred to section 4191 of this title.

**§ 54. Omitted**

CODIFICATION

Section, act Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, §3, 34 Stat. 100, abolished grade of commercial agent.

**§§ 55, 56. Repealed. Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title XI, § 1131(7), (51), 60 Stat. 1036**

Section 55, R.S. §1695, related to limits of consulates.  
Section 56, acts Feb. 27, 1925, ch. 364, 43 Stat. 1017; Apr. 29, 1926, ch. 195, title I, 44 Stat. 333; Feb. 24, 1927, ch. 189, title I, 44 Stat. 1182, related to appointment of consular clerks.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective three months after Aug. 13, 1946, see section 1141 of act Aug. 13, 1946.

**§ 57. Repealed. Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, § 6, 46 Stat. 1207, eff. July 1, 1931**

Section, act Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, §5, 34 Stat. 101, related to citizenship requirements of consular clerks.

**§ 58. Repealed. Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title XI, § 1131(8), 60 Stat. 1036**

Section, R.S. §1696, related to expenses of vice consulate or consular agency.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective three months after Aug. 13, 1946, see section 1141 of act Aug. 13, 1946.

**§ 71. Repealed. Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title XI, § 1131(11), 60 Stat. 1036**

Section, R.S. §1714, related to construction of powers and duties of consular officers.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective three months after Aug. 13, 1946, see section 1141 of act Aug. 13, 1946.

**§§ 72 to 79. Transferred**

CODIFICATION

Section 72, R.S. §4082, which related to solemnization of marriages, was transferred to section 4192 of this title and subsequently repealed.

Section 73, R.S. §1707, which related to receipt of protests and declarations by consuls and vice-consuls, was transferred to section 4193 of this title.

Section 74, R.S. §1708, which related to lists and returns of seamen and vessels, was transferred to section 4194 of this title.

Section 75, R.S. §1709, which related to handling of estates of decedents by consular officers, was transferred to section 4195 of this title.

Section 76, R.S. §1710, which related to notification of death of a decedent by a consular officer, was transferred to section 4196 of this title.

Section 77, R.S. §1711, which related to following testamentary directions by a consular officer, was transferred to section 4197 of this title.

Section 78, act June 30, 1902, ch. 1331, §1, 32 Stat. 546, which related to appointment of a consular officer as a trust officer for settlement or conservation of an estate, was transferred to section 4198 of this title.

Section 79, act June 30, 1902, ch. 1331, §2, 32 Stat. 547, which related to failure of a consular officer to post bond prior to appointment as an administrator, was transferred to section 4199 of this title.

**§§ 80 to 82. Repealed. Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title XI, § 1131(9), (10), (22), 60 Stat. 1036**

Section 80, R.S. §1712; acts June 18, 1888, ch. 393, 25 Stat. 186; Feb. 9, 1889, ch. 122, §§1, 4, 25 Stat. 659; July 14, 1890, ch. 707, 26 Stat. 288; Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, §3, 34 Stat. 100, related to commercial and agricultural reports.

Section 81, acts Jan. 27, 1879, ch. 28, §1, 20 Stat. 273; Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, §3, 34 Stat. 100, related to reports on exports, imports, and wages.

Section 82, R.S. §1713; acts June 18, 1888, ch. 393, 25 Stat. 186; Feb. 9, 1889, ch. 122, §§1, 4, 25 Stat. 659, related to reports on current prices of merchandise, etc.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective three months after Aug. 13, 1946, see section 1141 of act Aug. 13, 1946.

**§§ 83 to 104. Transferred**

CODIFICATION

Section 83, R.S. §1715, which related to certification of invoices, was transferred to section 4200 of this title.

Section 84, act Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, §9, 34 Stat. 101, which related to fees for certification of invoices, was transferred to section 4201 of this title.

Section 85, R.S. §1716, which related to exaction of excessive fees for verification of invoices, was transferred to section 4202 of this title.

Section 86, act Feb. 24, 1903, ch. 753, 32 Stat. 854, which related to destruction of old invoices, was transferred to section 4203 of this title.

Section 87, R.S. §1717, which related to granting of a certificate for goods shipped from countries adjacent to the United States, was transferred to section 4204 of this title.

Section 88, R.S. §1718, which related to retention of papers of American vessels until payment of demands and wages, was transferred to section 4205 of this title.

Section 89, act June 26, 1884, ch. 121, §12, 23 Stat. 56, which related to fees for official services to American vessels or seamen, was transferred to section 4206 of this title.

Section 90, R.S. §1719, which related to profits from dealings with discharged seamen, was transferred to section 4207 of this title.

Section 91, R.S. §1722, which related to valuation of foreign coins in payment of fees, was transferred to section 4208 of this title.

Section 92, R.S. §1723, which related to exaction of excessive fees generally, was transferred to section 4209 of this title.

Section 93, R.S. §1724, which related to liability for uncollected fees, was transferred to section 4210 of this title.

Section 94, R.S. §1725, which related to returns as to fees by officers compensated by fees, was transferred to section 4211 of this title.

Section 95, R.S. §§1726, 1727, which related to receipt for fees, was transferred to section 4212 of this title.

Section 96, R.S. §1727, which related to registry of fees, was transferred to section 4213 of this title.

Section 97, R.S. §1728, which related to account of fees, was transferred to section 4214 of this title.

Section 98, act Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, §7, 34 Stat. 101, which related to notarial acts, oaths, affirmations, affidavits, and depositions, was transferred to section 4215 of this title.

Section 99, acts Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, §8, 34 Stat. 101; Feb. 5, 1915, ch. 23, §§3, 6, 38 Stat. 805, 806; May 24, 1924, ch. 182, §11, 43 Stat. 142; Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title XI, §1131(26), 60 Stat. 1037, which related to general duty to account for fees, was transferred to section 4223 of this title.

Section 100, act Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, §10, 34 Stat. 102, which related to use of official fee stamps on documents involved in performance of any consular or notarial act, was transferred to section 1196 of this title and was subsequently repealed by act June 28, 1955, ch. 196, 69 Stat. 187.

Section 101, R.S. §1731, which related to posting rates of fees, was transferred to section 4216 of this title.

Section 102, R.S. §1734, which related to embezzlement of fees or of effects of American citizens, was transferred to section 4217 of this title.

Section 103, R.S. §§1735, 1736, which related to liability for neglect of duty or malfeasance, was transferred to section 1199 of this title.

Section 104, R.S. §1737, which related to false certificates as to ownership of property, was transferred to section 4218 of this title.

**§ 105. Repealed. Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title XI, § 1131(12), 60 Stat. 1036**

Section, R.S. §1738, related to restriction of diplomatic functions by consular officers.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective three months after Aug. 13, 1946, see section 1141 of act Aug. 13, 1946.

**§§ 106 to 108. Repealed. May 3, 1945, ch. 105, § 11, 59 Stat. 105**

Section 106, R.S. §1699; act Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, §6, 34 Stat. 101, related to restriction of transaction of private business by consular officer.

Section 107, R.S. §1700; act Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, §6, 34 Stat. 101, related to extension of restriction as to transaction of business.

Section 108, R.S. §1701; act Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, §3, 34 Stat. 100, related to penalty for violation of restriction and action on bond.

**§ 109. Repealed. Pub. L. 89-554, § 8(a), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 632, 640**

Section, R.S. §1706; act Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, §3, 34 Stat. 100, related to allowance for office rent of consulates.

**§§ 121, 122. Repealed. Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title XI, § 1131(13), (20), 60 Stat. 1036**

Section 121, R.S. §1740; acts Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, §3, 34 Stat. 100; Feb. 5, 1915, ch. 23, §6, 38 Stat. 806; Feb. 27, 1925, ch. 364, 43 Stat. 1017, related to commencement of salary of officers.

Section 122, act June 11, 1874, ch. 275, §4, 18 Stat. 70, related to fixing of travel time allowances.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective three months after Aug. 13, 1946, see section 1141 of act Aug. 13, 1946.

**§ 123. Repealed. Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, § 22, 46 Stat. 1210, eff. July 1, 1931**

Section, R.S. §1742, related to salary during absence.

**§§ 124 to 126. Repealed. Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title XI, § 1131(14), (21), 60 Stat. 1036**

Section 124, R.S. §1741; acts June 17, 1874, ch. 294, 18 Stat. 77; Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, §3, 34 Stat. 100, related to absence without leave.

Section 125, R.S. §1743, related to extra compensation.

Section 126, R.S. §1751; act June 17, 1874, ch. 294, 18 Stat. 77, related to private correspondence on affairs of foreign governments.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective three months after Aug. 13, 1946, see section 1141 of act Aug. 13, 1946.

**§§ 127, 128. Transferred**

CODIFICATION

Section 127, R.S. §1745, which related to regulation of fees by President, was transferred to section 4219 of this title.

Section 128, R.S. §1746, which related to medium for payment of fees, was transferred to section 4220 of this title.

**§§ 129 to 130b. Repealed Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title XI, §§ 1131(16), (17), 1132, 60 Stat. 1036, 1040**

Section 129, R.S. §1748; act Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, §3, 34 Stat. 100, related to office paraphernalia.

Section 130, R.S. 1749, related to allowances of widows. See section 1082 of this title.

Section 130a, acts Apr. 27, 1938, ch. 180, title I, 52 Stat. 250; June 29, 1939, ch. 248, title I, 53 Stat. 887; May 14, 1940, ch. 189, title I, 54 Stat. 183; June 28, 1941, ch. 258, title I, 55 Stat. 268; July 2, 1942, ch. 472, title I, 56 Stat. 471; July 1, 1943, ch. 182, title I, 57 Stat. 273; June 28, 1944, ch. 294, title I, 58 Stat. 398; May 21, 1945, ch. 129, title I, 59 Stat. 172; July 5, 1946, ch. 541, title I, 60 Stat. 449, related to expenses of bringing home remains of personnel dying abroad.

Section 130b, acts Apr. 27, 1938, ch. 180, title I, 52 Stat. 250; June 29, 1939, ch. 248, title I, 53 Stat. 887; May 14, 1940, ch. 189, title I, 54 Stat. 183; June 28, 1941, ch. 258, title I, 55 Stat. 267; July 2, 1942, ch. 472, title I, 56 Stat. 470; July 1, 1943, ch. 182, title I, 57 Stat. 273; June 28, 1944, ch. 294, title I, 58 Stat. 398; May 21, 1945, ch. 129, title I, 59 Stat. 171; July 5, 1946, ch. 541, title I, 60 Stat. 449, related to expenses of transporting personnel, families, and their effects to and from posts.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective three months after Aug. 13, 1946, see section 1141 of act Aug. 13, 1946.

**§ 131. Transferred**

CODIFICATION

Section, R.S. §1750, which related to depositions and notarial acts, was transferred to section 4221 of this title.

**§ 132. Repealed. Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title XI, § 1131(18), 60 Stat. 1036**

Section, R.S. §1752, related to general regulations by President.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective three months after Aug. 13, 1946, see section 1141 of act Aug. 13, 1946.

**§ 133. Repealed. May 7, 1926, ch. 250, § 7, 44 Stat. 405**

Section, act Feb. 17, 1911, ch. 105, 36 Stat. 917, provided for purchase of buildings for Diplomatic and Consular Service.

**§ 134. Repealed. Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title XI, § 1132, 60 Stat. 1040**

Section, act Mar. 2, 1921, ch. 113, 41 Stat. 1215, related to acceptance of gifts of lands, buildings, etc., for use of the Service.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective three months after Aug. 13, 1946, see section 1141 of act Aug. 13, 1946.

**§§ 135, 136. Transferred**

## CODIFICATION

Section 135, act June 10, 1933, ch. 57, 48 Stat. 122, which related to protection of diplomatic codes, was transferred to section 815 of this title, and was subsequently repealed by act June 25, 1948, ch. 645, § 21, 62 Stat. 862.

Section 136, act July 5, 1946, ch. 541, title I, 60 Stat. 452, which related to temporary assignment of American citizens in Foreign Service to Department of State during national emergencies, was transferred and set out as a note under section 909 of this title and subsequently omitted from the Code.

**CHAPTER 2—CONSULAR COURTS****§§ 141 to 143. Repealed. Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 807, 70 Stat. 774**

Act Aug. 1, 1956, repealed sections 141 to 143 effective upon the date which the President determined to be appropriate for the relinquishment of jurisdiction of the United States in Morocco. Jurisdiction of the United States in Morocco was relinquished by memorandum of President Eisenhower dated Sept. 15, 1956. Notice was given to Morocco on Oct. 6, 1956, and all pending cases were disposed of by 1960. See Bulletin of the State Department Vol. 35:909, page 844.

Section 141, R.S. §§ 4083, 4125, 4126, 4127; act June 14, 1878, ch. 193, 20 Stat. 131, related to judicial authority generally of ministers and consuls of United States in China, Siam, Turkey, Morocco, Muscat, Abyssinia, Persia, and territories formerly part of Ottoman Empire including Egypt.

Section 142, R.S. § 4084, related to general criminal jurisdiction of ministers and consuls of United States.

Section 143, R.S. § 4085, related to general jurisdiction of ministers and consuls of United States and venue in civil cases.

**§ 144. Omitted**

## CODIFICATION

Section, acts Mar. 2, 1909, ch. 235, 35 Stat. 679; Mar. 4, 1915, ch. 145, 38 Stat. 1122, related to exercise of judicial functions by vice consul at Shanghai.

**§§ 145 to 174. Repealed. Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 807, 70 Stat. 774**

Act Aug. 1, 1956, repealed sections 145 to 174 effective upon the date which the President determined to be appropriate for the relinquishment of jurisdiction of the United States in Morocco. Jurisdiction of the United States in Morocco was relinquished by memorandum of President Eisenhower dated Sept. 15, 1956. Notice was given to Morocco on Oct. 6, 1956, and all pending cases were disposed of by 1960. See Bulletin of the State Department Vol. 35:909, page 844.

Section 145, R.S. § 4086, related to system of laws to be applied.

Section 146, R.S. § 4117, related to rules and regulations for consular courts generally.

Section 147, R.S. § 4118, related to assent or dissent of consuls to, and publication of, rules, regulations, decrees, and orders.

Section 148, R.S. § 4119, related to transmission of rules, regulations, orders and decrees to Secretary of State.

Section 149, R.S. § 4087, related to warrant, arrest, trial, and sentence by consul.

Section 150, R.S. § 4105, related to jurisdiction of consul sitting alone in criminal cases and finality of decision.

Section 151, R.S. § 4089, related to jurisdiction of the consul sitting alone in criminal cases and appeal to minister.

Section 152, R.S. § 4106, related to calling in by consul of associates in criminal cases and reference to minister upon disagreement.

Section 153, R.S. § 4107, related to jurisdiction of consuls in civil cases, finality of decision, calling in of associates, and reference to minister upon disagreement.

Section 154, R.S. § 4097, related to evidence and how it was to be taken.

Section 155, R.S. § 4101, related to punishment generally and contempt.

Section 156, R.S. § 4102, related to capital offenses, requisites for conviction, and conviction of lesser offenses.

Section 157, R.S. § 4104, related to punishment for contempt of court.

Section 158, R.S. § 4103, related to execution of criminals and pardons.

Section 159, R.S. § 4120, related to fees for judicial services, application of moneys and rendition of accounts.

Section 160, R.S. § 4099, related to settlement of criminal cases.

Section 161, R.S. § 4098, related to arbitration, reference, and compromise of civil cases.

Section 162, R.S. § 4100, related to invoking the aid of local authorities.

Section 163, R.S. § 4108, related to jurisdiction of minister.

Section 164, R.S. § 4109, related to appellate and original jurisdiction of minister.

Section 165, R.S. § 4091, related to appellate jurisdiction of minister and new trials.

Section 166, R.S. § 4090, related to jurisdiction of minister to try capital and felony cases.

Section 167, R.S. § 4090, related to prevention of American citizens from enlisting with foreign countries.

Section 168, R.S. §§ 1693, 4111; act June 30, 1906, ch. 3934, § 8, 34 Stat. 816, related to marshals of consular courts and their appointment and salary.

Section 169, R.S. § 4112, related to execution and return of process by a marshal.

Section 170, R.S. § 4113, related to bond of a marshal.

Section 171, R.S. § 4114, related to suit on bond of marshal.

Section 172, R.S. § 4115, related to necessity for production of original bond.

Section 173, R.S. § 4116, related to service of rules, orders, writs, and processes of every kind in suit on bond of marshal.

Section 174, R.S. §§ 4121, 4122; act June 25, 1948, ch. 646, § 39, 62 Stat. 992, related to expenses of prisons in foreign countries.

**§ 175. Omitted**

## CODIFICATION

Section, act Mar. 2, 1901, ch. 802, 31 Stat. 893, which appropriated funds for feeding and keeping of prisoners, was repeated in subsequent appropriation acts down to and including act Mar. 3, 1917, ch. 161, 39 Stat. 1058, but was not repeated thereafter.

**§§ 176 to 181. Repealed. Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 807, 70 Stat. 774**

Act Aug. 1, 1956, repealed sections 176 to 181 effective upon the date which the President determined to be ap-

propriate for the relinquishment of jurisdiction of the United States in Morocco. Jurisdiction of the United States in Morocco was relinquished by memorandum of President Eisenhower dated Sept. 15, 1956. Notice was given to Morocco on Oct. 6, 1956, and all pending cases were disposed of by 1960. See Bulletin of the State Department Vol. 35:909, page 844.

Section 176, R.S. §4128, related to the exercise of judicial duties by the Secretary of State in the absence of a minister.

Section 177, R.S. §§4127, 4129; act June 14, 1878, ch. 193, 20 Stat. 131, related to the general extension to unnamed countries with which the United States may after July 1, 1870 enter into treaty relations, of the provisions relating to the jurisdiction of consular and diplomatic officers.

Section 178, R.S. §4130; acts Feb. 1, 1876, ch. 6, 19 Stat. 2; Feb. 5, 1915, ch. 23, §6, 38 Stat. 806, related to the definition of the words "minister" and "consul".

Section 179, R.S. §4110, related to the responsibility of diplomatic and consular officers as judicial officers.

Section 180, R.S. §4088; act Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, §3, 34 Stat. 100, related to the power of consuls in uncivilized countries or countries not recognized by treaties.

Section 181, R.S. §4125, related to the applicability of other laws to Turkey.

### § 182. Omitted

#### CODIFICATION

Section, act Mar. 23, 1874, ch. 62, §1, 18 Stat. 23, related to consular courts in Turkey and Egypt. Such courts in Turkey were abolished Oct. 14, 1949, and such courts in Egypt were abolished by the Treaty of Oct. 28, 1931.

### § 183. Repealed. Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 807, 70 Stat. 774

Section, R.S. §4126, related to the extension of other laws to Persia and suits between American citizens and subjects of Persia and other countries.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Act Aug. 1, 1956, repealed section 183 effective upon the date which the President determined to be appropriate for the relinquishment of jurisdiction of the United States in Morocco. Jurisdiction of the United States in Morocco was relinquished by memorandum of President Eisenhower dated Sept. 15, 1956. Notice was given to Morocco on Oct. 6, 1956, and all pending cases were disposed of by 1960. See Bulletin of the State Department Vol. 35:909, page 844.

## CHAPTER 3—UNITED STATES COURT FOR CHINA

### §§ 191 to 200. Repealed. June 25, 1948, ch. 646, § 39, 62 Stat. 992, eff. Sept. 1, 1948

Section 191, acts June 30, 1906, ch. 3934, §1, 34 Stat. 814; June 24, 1936, ch. 757, 49 Stat. 1909, related to establishment of court.

Section 192, act June 30, 1906, ch. 3934, §2, 34 Stat. 814, related to jurisdiction of consular courts.

Section 193, act June 30, 1906, ch. 3934, §2, 34 Stat. 814, related to administration of estates of decedents.

Section 194, acts June 30, 1906, ch. 3934, §3, 34 Stat. 815; Mar. 3, 1911, ch. 231, §291, 36 Stat. 1167; Jan. 31, 1928, ch. 14, §1, 45 Stat. 54, related to appeals and writs of error.

Section 195, act June 30, 1906, ch. 3934, §4, 34 Stat. 815, related to law applicable to determination of cases.

Section 196, act June 30, 1906, ch. 3934, §5, 34 Stat. 816, related to procedure generally.

Section 197, acts June 30, 1906, ch. 3934, §6, 34 Stat. 816; May 29, 1928, ch. 904, §§1, 2, 45 Stat. 997, related to officers of court.

Section 197a, act May 29, 1928, ch. 904, §§1, 2, 45 Stat. 997, related to salaries of judge.

Section 197b, act June 30, 1906, ch. 3934, §11, as added Aug. 7, 1935, ch. 452, §1, 49 Stat. 539, related to appointment and compensation of special judge.

Section 197c, acts Mar. 2, 1909, ch. 235, 35 Stat. 679; Mar. 4, 1915, ch. 145, 38 Stat. 1122, related to vice consul at Shanghai exercising judicial functions.

Section 198, act June 4, 1920, ch. 223, 41 Stat. 746, related to commissioner for court.

Section 198a, act June 30, 1906, ch. 3934, §10, as added Aug. 7, 1935, ch. 452, §1, 49 Stat. 538, related to commissioner for the court.

Section 199, act June 30, 1906, ch. 3934, §7, 34 Stat. 816, related to tenure of office of judge.

Section 200, act June 30, 1906, ch. 3934, §8, 34 Stat. 816, related to bond of marshal.

### § 201. Omitted

#### CODIFICATION

Section, acts Feb. 27, 1925, ch. 364, title I, 43 Stat. 1025; Apr. 29, 1926, ch. 195, title I, 44 Stat. 341; Feb. 24, 1927, ch. 189, title I, 44 Stat. 1192; Feb. 15, 1928, ch. 57, title I, 45 Stat. 76, related to expenses of judge and district attorney at sessions other than in Shanghai. By the Treaty of Jan. 11, 1943, 57 Stat., pt. 2, 767, between the United States and the Republic of China, the United States relinquished all of its extraterritorial rights in China.

### § 202. Repealed. June 25, 1948, ch. 646, § 39, 62 Stat. 992, eff. Sept. 1, 1948

Section, act June 30, 1906, ch. 3934, §9, 34 Stat. 816, related to fees of marshal and clerk.

## CHAPTER 4—PASSPORTS

Sec.

- 211. Repealed.
- 211a. Authority to grant, issue, and verify passports.
- 212. Persons entitled to passport.
- 213. Application for passport; verification by oath of initial passport.
- 214. Fees for execution and issuance of passports; persons excused from payment.
- 214a. Fees erroneously charged and paid; refund.
- 215. Omitted.
- 216. Return of fees on refusal to visé.
- 217. Repealed.
- 217a. Validity of passport; limitation of time.
- 218. Returns as to passports issued, etc.
- 219 to 229. Repealed.

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Immigration and Nationality Act, see section 1101 et seq. of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality.

### § 211. Repealed. July 3, 1926, ch. 772, § 4, 44 Stat. 887

Section, R.S. §4075; act June 14, 1902, ch. 1088, §1, 32 Stat. 386, provided for issuance of passports. See section 211a of this title.

### § 211a. Authority to grant, issue, and verify passports

The Secretary of State may grant and issue passports, and cause passports to be granted, issued, and verified in foreign countries by diplomatic and consular officers of the United States, and by such other employees of the Department of State who are citizens of the United States as the Secretary of State may designate, and by the chief or other executive officer of the insular possessions of the United States, under such rules as the President shall designate and prescribe for and on behalf of the United States, and no other person shall grant, issue, or verify such passports. Unless authorized by law, a pass-

port may not be designated as restricted for travel to or for use in any country other than a country with which the United States is at war, where armed hostilities are in progress, or where there is imminent danger to the public health or the physical safety of United States travellers.

(July 3, 1926, ch. 772, § 1, 44 Stat. 887; Oct. 7, 1978, Pub. L. 95-426, title I, § 124, 92 Stat. 971; Apr. 30, 1994, Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 127(a), 108 Stat. 394; Oct. 25, 1994, Pub. L. 103-415, § 1(b), 108 Stat. 4299.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-415, § 1(b)(1), substituted “such other employees” for “such employees”.

Pub. L. 103-415, § 1(b)(2), which directed the amendment of this section by substituting “United States” for “United States,” was executed by making the substitution after “who are citizens of the”, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Pub. L. 103-236 substituted “by diplomatic and consular officers of the United States, and by other employees of the Department of State who are citizens of the United States,” for “by diplomatic representatives of the United States, and by such consul generals, consuls, or vice consuls when in charge.”.

1978—Pub. L. 95-426 inserted provision prohibiting passport restrictions except for countries with which the United States is at war, where armed hostilities are in progress or there is imminent danger to the public health or physical safety of United States travellers.

#### LIMITATIONS ON USE OF FUNDS FOR PROCUREMENT OF PAPER FOR PASSPORTS

Pub. L. 100-440, title VI, § 617(b), Sept. 22, 1988, 102 Stat. 1755, provided that: “None of the funds made available by this or any other Act with respect to any fiscal year may be used to procure paper for passports granted or issued pursuant to the first section of the Act entitled ‘An Act to regulate the issue and validity of passports, and for other purposes’, approved July 3, 1926 (22 U.S.C. 211a), if such paper is manufactured outside of the United States or its possessions or is procured from any corporation or other entity owned or controlled by persons not citizens of the United States. This subsection shall not apply if no domestic manufacturer for passport paper exists.”

Similar provisions were contained in the following prior appropriation act:

Pub. L. 100-202, § 101(m) [title VI, § 622(b)], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-390, 1329-428.

#### PERSONS ENTITLED TO DIPLOMATIC OR OFFICIAL UNITED STATES PASSPORT

Section 125 of Pub. L. 95-426 provided that: “It is the sense of the Congress that a diplomatic or official United States passport should be issued only to, and used only by, a person who holds a diplomatic or other official position in the United States Government or who is otherwise eligible for such a passport under conditions specifically authorized by law.”

#### EX. ORD. NO. 11295. RULES GOVERNING GRANTING, ISSUING, AND VERIFYING OF PASSPORTS

Ex. Ord. No. 11295, Aug. 5, 1966, 31 F.R. 10603, provided: By virtue of the authority vested in me by Section 301 of Title 3 of the United States Code, and as President of the United States, it is ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. *Delegation of authority.* The Secretary of State is hereby designated and empowered to exercise, without the approval, ratification, or other action of the President, the authority conferred upon the President by the first section of the Act of July 3, 1926 (22 U.S.C. 211a), to designate and prescribe for and on behalf of the United States rules governing the granting, issuing, and verifying of passports.

SEC. 2. *Superseded orders.* Subject to Section 3 of this order, the following are hereby superseded:

(1) Executive Order No. 7856 of March 31, 1938, entitled “Rules Governing the Granting and Issuing of Passports in the United States.”

(2) Executive Order No. 8820 of July 11, 1941, entitled “Amending the Foreign Service Regulations of the United States.”

SEC. 3. *Saving provisions.* All rules and regulations contained in the Executive order provisions revoked by Section 2 of this order, and all rules and regulations issued under the authority of those provisions, which are in force at the time of the issuance of this order shall remain in full force and effect until revoked, or except as they may be hereafter amended or modified, in pursuance of the authority conferred by this order, unless sooner terminated by operation of law.

LYNDON B. JOHNSON.

#### § 212. Persons entitled to passport

No passport shall be granted or issued to or verified for any other persons than those owing allegiance, whether citizens or not, to the United States.

(R.S. § 4076; June 14, 1902, ch. 1088, § 2, 32 Stat. 386.)

#### CODIFICATION

R.S. § 4076 derived from act May 30, 1866, ch. 102, 14 Stat. 54.

#### AMENDMENTS

1902—Act June 14, 1902, substituted “those owing allegiance, whether citizens or not, to the United States” for “citizens of the United States”.

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Aliens excluded from admission to United States, see section 1182 of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality.

#### § 213. Application for passport; verification by oath of initial passport

Before a passport is issued to any person by or under authority of the United States such person shall subscribe to and submit a written application which shall contain a true recital of each and every matter of fact which may be required by law or by any rules authorized by law to be stated as a prerequisite to the issuance of any such passport. If the applicant has not previously been issued a United States passport, the application shall be duly verified by his oath before a person authorized and empowered by the Secretary of State to administer oaths.

(June 15, 1917, ch. 30, title IX, § 1, 40 Stat. 227; July 26, 1968, Pub. L. 90-428, § 3, 82 Stat. 446.)

#### CODIFICATION

Second sentence of act June 15, 1917, which related to fees for taking application for passport, was omitted as superseded by sections 214 to 217a of this title.

#### AMENDMENTS

1968—Pub. L. 90-428 substituted provisions requiring that the initial passport application be duly verified under oath before a person authorized and empowered by the Secretary of State to administer oaths for provisions requiring that each passport application be duly verified under oath before a person authorized and empowered to administer oaths.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1968 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 90-428 effective on thirtieth day following July 26, 1968, see section 4 of Pub. L. 90-428, set out as a note under section 217a of this title.



## CROSS REFERENCES

Definition of United States as used in this section, see section 408a of this title.

False statement in application and use of passport, penalty, see section 1542 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

Letters or writings nonmailable, see section 1717 of Title 18.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 408a of this title.

### § 214. Fees for execution and issuance of passports; persons excused from payment

There shall be collected and paid into the Treasury of the United States a fee, prescribed by the Secretary of State by regulation, for each passport issued and a fee, prescribed by the Secretary of State by regulation, for executing each application for a passport. Nothing contained in this section shall be construed to limit the right of the Secretary of State by regulation (1) to authorize State officials to collect and retain the execution fee, or (2) to transfer to the United States Postal Service the execution fee for each application accepted by that Service. No passport fee shall be collected from an officer or employee of the United States proceeding abroad in the discharge of official duties, or from members of his immediate family; from an American seaman who requires a passport in connection with his duties aboard an American flag-vessel; or from a widow, child, parent, brother, or sister of a deceased member of the Armed Forces proceeding abroad to visit the grave of such member. No execution fee shall be collected for an application made before a Federal official by a person excused from payment of the passport fee under this section.

(June 4, 1920, ch. 223, § 1, 41 Stat. 750; Feb. 10, 1956, ch. 31, 70 Stat. 11; July 26, 1968, Pub. L. 90-428, § 2, 82 Stat. 446; May 14, 1971, Pub. L. 92-14, § 1, 85 Stat. 38; Sept. 17, 1974, Pub. L. 93-417, 88 Stat. 1151; Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title I, § 116(a), 96 Stat. 279.)

## AMENDMENTS

1982—Pub. L. 97-241 substituted provision that the Secretary of State prescribe by regulation the fee for passports for provision that a fee of \$10 be charged for each passport and that the fees be collected and paid into the Treasury quarterly.

1974—Pub. L. 93-417 substituted provisions authorizing the Secretary of State to prescribe fees for execution of applications for passports by regulation for provisions prescribing a fixed fee of \$2, substituted "United States Postal Service" for "Postal Service", and struck out references to the fee of \$2 in the proviso relating to the rights of the Secretary of State.

1971—Pub. L. 92-14 authorized the United States Postal Service to receive the fee of \$2 for execution of an application for a passport.

1968—Pub. L. 90-428 increased from \$1.00 to \$2.00 and from \$9.00 to \$10.00, respectively, the fees for the execution and the issuance of passports, struck out "to a citizen or person owing allegiance to or entitled to the protection of the United States" after "for each passport issued", restricted the exemption for seamen to American seamen requiring a passport in connection with duties aboard an American flag-vessel, and inserted provision excusing a person exempted from a passport fee from paying an execution fee.

1956—Act Feb. 10, 1956, increased from \$1 to \$2 the fee for executing passport applications, and reworded au-

thorization of State officials to collect and retain \$2 fee.

## EFFECTIVE AND TERMINATION DATE OF 1971 AMENDMENT

Section 2 of Pub. L. 92-14, as amended by Pub. L. 93-126, § 8, Oct. 18, 1973, 87 Stat. 453, provided that: "The amendment made by this Act [amending this section] shall become effective on the date of enactment [May 14, 1971] and shall continue in effect until June 30, 1974."

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1968 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 90-428 effective on thirtieth day following July 26, 1968, see section 4 of Pub. L. 90-428, set out as a note under section 217a of this title.

## DEPOSIT OF RECEIPTS FROM EXPEDITED PASSPORT PROCESSING

Pub. L. 103-317, title V, Aug. 26, 1994, 108 Stat. 1760, provided in part "That hereafter all receipts received from a new charge from expedited passport processing shall be deposited in this account as an offsetting collection and shall be available until expended".

## INFORMATION FROM UNITED STATES PASSPORTS

Pub. L. 101-604, title II, § 203(d), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3083, provided that: "Notwithstanding any other provision of law, to the extent provided in appropriation Acts, for each fiscal year not more than \$5,000,000 in passport fees collected by the Department of State may be credited to a Department of State account. Amounts credited to such account shall be available only for the costs associated with the acquisition and production of machine-readable United States passports and visas and compatible reading equipment. Amounts credited to such account are authorized to remain available until expended."

## CROSS REFERENCES

Red Cross employees cooperating with and assisting armed forces, exemption from payment of fee, see section 2602 of Title 10, Armed Forces.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 214a, 2504 of this title.

### § 214a. Fees erroneously charged and paid; refund

Whenever a fee is erroneously charged and paid for the issue of a passport to a person who is exempted from the payment of such a fee by section 214 of this title, the Department of State is authorized to refund to the person who paid such fee the amount thereof, and the money for that purpose is authorized to be appropriated.

(July 3, 1926, ch. 772, § 3, 44 Stat. 887.)

## CERTAIN APPROPRIATION ACCOUNTS ABOLISHED

Effective July 1, 1935, enumerated appropriation accounts appearing on the books of the Government were abolished and in lieu thereof there was established an account to be designated "Refund of Moneys Erroneously Received and Covered." See section 1322 of Title 31, Money and Finance.

### § 215. Omitted

## CODIFICATION

Section, act June 4, 1920, ch. 223, § 2, 41 Stat. 750, provided for fees of \$1 for each application for a visa and \$9 for each visa. It was superseded by sections 2(h) and 7(h) of the Immigration Act of 1924 (act May 26, 1924, ch. 190, 43 Stat. 154, 157) which provided for fees in the same amounts. The 1924 Act was repealed by section

403(a)(23) of the Immigration and Nationality Act (act June 27, 1952, ch. 477, 66 Stat. 279). See section 1351 of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality, and section 9701 of Title 31, Money and Finance.

#### § 216. Return of fees on refusal to visé

Whenever the appropriate officer within the United States of any foreign country refuses to visé a passport issued by the United States, the Department of State is authorized upon request in writing and the return of the unused passport within six months from the date of issue to refund to the person to whom the passport was issued the fees which have been paid to Federal officials, and the money for that purpose is appropriated and directed to be paid upon the order of the Secretary of State.

(June 4, 1920, ch. 223, § 4, 41 Stat. 751.)

#### § 217. Repealed. July 3, 1926, ch. 772, § 4, 44 Stat. 887

Section, act June 4, 1920, ch. 223, § 3, 41 Stat. 751, limited time as to validity of passport or visé. See section 217a of this title.

#### § 217a. Validity of passport; limitation of time

A passport shall be valid for a period of ten years from the date of issue, except that the Secretary of State may limit the validity of a passport to a period of less than ten years in an individual case or on a general basis pursuant to regulation.

(July 3, 1926, ch. 772, § 2, 44 Stat. 887; July 1, 1930, ch. 782, 46 Stat. 839; May 16, 1932, ch. 187, 47 Stat. 157; Sept. 14, 1959, Pub. L. 86-267, 73 Stat. 552; July 26, 1968, Pub. L. 90-428, § 1, 82 Stat. 446; Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title I, § 116(b)(1), 96 Stat. 279.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1982—Pub. L. 97-241 substituted provision that a passport be valid for a period of ten years from issuance and that the Secretary of State could limit the period to less than ten years in an individual case or on a general basis by regulation for provision that a passport be limited to a period of not more than five years, that the Secretary of State could limit the passport to a shorter period, and that a valid passport outstanding as of the effective date of Pub. L. 90-428 be valid for a period of five years from the date of issue, except where such passport was limited to a shorter period by the Secretary.

1968—Pub. L. 90-428 substituted provisions that passport be limited to a period of not more than five years, though the Secretary of State may limit it to a shorter period and provisions as to the length of validity of passports outstanding as of the effective date of Pub. L. 90-428 for provisions that a passport or passport visa be limited to a period of three years, that a passport be renewed pursuant to regulations of the Secretary for a period not to exceed two years, provided that the final date of expiration not be more than five years from the original date of issue, that the Secretary be authorized to limit the validity of a passport, passport visa, or period of renewal of a passport to less than two years, and that the charge for the issue of an original passport be \$9.00 and the charge for the renewal be \$5.00.

1959—Pub. L. 86-267 substituted “three years” for “two years”, and “five years” for “four years”.

1932—Act May 16, 1932, among other changes, increased payment for renewals from \$2 to \$5, for issue of original passport from \$5 to \$9, and restored final expiration date of renewal passport to four years from six-year period.

1930—Act July 1, 1930, among other changes, provided for \$2 payment for renewal of passport, \$5 payment for issue of an original passport, and changed from four to six years the final expiration date of renewal passport.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1982 AMENDMENT

Section 116(b)(2) of Pub. L. 97-241 provided that: “The amendment made by this subsection [amending this section] applies with respect to passports issued after the date of enactment of this Act [Aug. 24, 1982].”

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1968 AMENDMENT

Section 4 of Pub. L. 90-428 provided that: “This Act [amending this section and sections 213 and 214 of this title] shall take effect on the thirtieth day following the date of its enactment [July 26, 1968].”

#### § 218. Returns as to passports issued, etc.

All persons who shall be authorized to grant, issue, or verify passports, shall make return of the same to the Secretary of State, in such manner and as often as he shall require; and such returns shall specify the names and all other particulars of the persons to whom the same shall be granted, issued, or verified, as embraced in such passport.

(R.S. § 4077.)

#### CODIFICATION

R.S. § 4077 derived from act May 30, 1866, ch. 102, 14 Stat. 54.

#### §§ 219 to 222. Repealed. June 25, 1948, ch. 645, § 21, 62 Stat. 862, eff. Sept. 1, 1948

Section 219, R.S. § 4078; act June 14, 1902, ch. 1088, § 3, 32 Stat. 386, related to issuance of false passports. See section 1541 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

Section 220, acts June 15, 1917, ch. 30, title IX, § 2, 40 Stat. 227; Mar. 28, 1940, ch. 72, § 7, 54 Stat. 80, related to false statements in application for passports. See section 1542 of Title 18.

Section 221, acts June 15, 1917, ch. 30, title IX, § 3, 40 Stat. 227; Mar. 28, 1940, ch. 72, § 7, 54 Stat. 80, related to unlawful use of passports. See section 1544 of Title 18.

Section 222, acts June 15, 1917, ch. 30, title IX, § 4, 40 Stat. 227; Mar. 28, 1940, ch. 72, § 7, 54 Stat. 80, related to forging or altering of passports. See section 1543 of Title 18.

#### §§ 223 to 229. Repealed. June 27, 1952, ch. 477, title IV, § 403(a)(15), (20), (43), 66 Stat. 279, 280

Section 223, acts May 22, 1918, ch. 81, § 1, 40 Stat. 559; June 21, 1941, ch. 210, § 1, 55 Stat. 252, related to wartime restrictions generally. See section 1185 of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality.

Section 224, act May 22, 1918, ch. 81, § 2, 40 Stat. 559, related to requirement of passport for citizens during wartime restrictions. See section 1185 of Title 8.

Section 225, acts May 22, 1918, ch. 81, § 3, 40 Stat. 559; June 21, 1941, ch. 210, § 2, 55 Stat. 253, related to penalty for violation of wartime restrictions. See section 1185 of Title 8.

Section 226, acts May 22, 1918, ch. 81, § 4, 40 Stat. 559; June 21, 1941, ch. 210, § 2a, 55 Stat. 253, related to definition of “United States” and “person” as used in wartime restriction. See section 1185 of Title 8.

Section 226a, act May 22, 1918, ch. 81, § 5, as added June 21, 1941, ch. 210, § 3, 55 Stat. 253, related to permit as guarantee of admission to the United States. See section 1185 of Title 8.

Section 226b, act May 22, 1918, ch. 81, § 6, as added June 21, 1941, ch. 210, § 3, 55 Stat. 253, related to proclamation, rule, etc., as bar to prosecution. See section 1185 of Title 8.

Section 227, act Mar. 2, 1921, ch. 113, §1, 41 Stat. 1217, related to continuation of regulations as to alien passport requirements.

Sections 228 and 229, act June 20, 1941, ch. 209, §§1, 2, 55 Stat. 252, related to refusal of visés to aliens whose admission might endanger the public safety, and to rules and regulations governing this refusal. See section 1102 of Title 8.

#### TERMINATION OF EMERGENCY PROVISIONS

Section 1 of Joint Res. Mar. 31, 1953, ch. 13, 67 Stat. 18, provided for the extension of certain emergency provisions (previously extended to April 1, 1953 by Joint Res. July 3, 1952, ch. 570, §1(b), 66 Stat. 333) until July 1, 1953. Section 2 of Joint Res. Mar. 31, 1953, provided that the extension did not apply to the provisions of sections 223 to 226b of this title.

### CHAPTER 5—PRESERVATION OF FRIENDLY FOREIGN RELATIONS GENERALLY

#### §§ 231, 232. Repealed. June 25, 1948, ch. 645, §21, 62 Stat. 862, eff. Sept. 1, 1948

Section 231, acts June 15, 1917, ch. 30, title VIII, §1, 40 Stat. 226; Mar. 28, 1940, ch. 72, §6, 54 Stat. 80, related to false statements to influence conduct of foreign governments toward the United States. See section 954 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

Section 232, acts June 15, 1917, ch. 30, title VIII, §2, 40 Stat. 226; Mar. 28, 1940, ch. 72, §6, 54 Stat. 80, related to wrongful assumption of character of diplomatic or consular officer. See section 915 of Title 18.

#### §§ 233 to 233g. Transferred

##### CODIFICATION

Section 233, act June 15, 1917, ch. 30, title VIII, §3, 40 Stat. 226, as amended, which related to acting as a foreign agent without notice to Secretary of State, was transferred to section 601 of this title and was subsequently repealed by act June 25, 1948, ch. 645, §21, 62 Stat. 862. See section 951 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

Section 233a, act June 8, 1938, ch. 327, §1, 52 Stat. 631, as amended, which related to defining, various terms included in provisions relating to foreign agents and propaganda, was transferred to section 611 of this title.

Section 233b, act June 8, 1938, ch. 327, §2, 52 Stat. 632, as amended, which related to registration statements, was transferred to section 612 of this title.

Section 233c, act June 8, 1938, ch. 327, §3, 52 Stat. 632, as amended, which related to exemptions, was transferred to section 613 of this title.

Section 233d, act June 8, 1938, ch. 327, §4, 52 Stat. 632, as amended, which related to filing and labeling political propaganda, was transferred to section 614 of this title.

Section 233e, act June 8, 1938, ch. 327, §5, 52 Stat. 633, as amended, which related to books and records, was transferred to section 615 of this title.

Section 233f, act June 8, 1938, ch. 327, §6, 52 Stat. 633, as amended, which related to public examination of official records, was transferred to section 616 of this title.

Section 233g, act June 8, 1938, ch. 327, §§12, 13, as added Apr. 29, 1942, ch. 263, §1, 56 Stat. 258, which related to separability of provisions and effect on existing law, was transferred and set out as a note under section 611 of this title.

#### §§ 234, 235. Repealed. June 25, 1948, ch. 645, §21, 62 Stat. 862, eff. Sept. 1, 1948

Section 234, act June 15, 1917, ch. 30, title VIII, §5, 40 Stat. 226, related to conspiracy to injure property of foreign government. See section 956 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

Section 235, act June 15, 1917, ch. 30, title VIII, §4, 40 Stat. 226, related to definition of "Foreign government". See section 11 of Title 18.

#### §§ 236 to 245. Transferred

##### CODIFICATION

Section 236, act Jan. 31, 1922, ch. 44, §1, 42 Stat. 361, which related to prohibition against exportation of arms to American countries or countries under American jurisdiction in a state of domestic violence, was transferred to section 409 of this title and was repealed by act June 25, 1948, ch. 645, §21, 62 Stat. 862.

Section 237, act Jan. 31, 1922, ch. 44, §2, 42 Stat. 361, which related to penalties, was transferred to section 410 of this title and was repealed by act June 25, 1948, ch. 645, §21, 62 Stat. 862.

Section 238, act June 15, 1917, ch. 30, title VI, §1, 40 Stat. 223, as amended, which related to illegal exportation of war materials, was transferred to section 401 of this title.

Section 239, act June 15, 1917, ch. 30, title VI, §2, 40 Stat. 224, which related to issuance of warrant for detention of seized property, was transferred to section 402 of this title and was repealed by act Aug. 13, 1953, ch. 434, §2, 67 Stat. 577.

Section 240, act June 15, 1917, ch. 30, title VI, §3, 40 Stat. 224, which related to filing petition for restoration of seized property, was transferred to section 403 of this title and was repealed by act Aug. 13, 1953, ch. 434, §2, 67 Stat. 577.

Section 241, act June 15, 1917, ch. 30, title VI, §4, 40 Stat. 224, as amended, which related to institution of libel proceedings and sale of seized property, was transferred to section 404 of this title and was repealed by act Aug. 13, 1953, ch. 434, §2, 67 Stat. 577.

Section 242, act June 15, 1917, ch. 30, title VI, §5, 40 Stat. 224, which related to method of trial and bond for redelivery, was transferred to section 405 of this title and was repealed by act Aug. 13, 1953, ch. 434, §2, 67 Stat. 577.

Section 243, act June 15, 1917, ch. 30, title VI, §6, 40 Stat. 225, which related to interference with foreign trade, was transferred to section 406 of this title.

Section 244, act June 15, 1917, ch. 30, title VI, §7, 40 Stat. 225, which related to the President's discretion to release seized property, was transferred to section 407 of this title and was repealed by act Aug. 13, 1953, ch. 434, §2, 67 Stat. 577.

Section 245, act June 15, 1917, ch. 30, title VI, §8, 40 Stat. 225, which related to use of land and naval forces to prevent exportation, was transferred to section 408 of this title.

#### §§ 245a to 245i. Repealed. Joint Res. Nov. 4, 1939, ch. 2, §19, 54 Stat. 12

Sections 245a to 245i, Joint Res. Aug. 31, 1935, ch. 837, 49 Stat. 1081; acts Feb. 29, 1936, ch. 106, 49 Stat. 1153; May 1, 1937, ch. 146, 50 Stat. 121, constituted the Neutrality Act of 1935. See the Neutrality Act of 1939, sections 441, 444, 445, 447 to 451, and 453 to 457 of this title.

#### §§ 245j to 245j-19. Transferred

##### CODIFICATION

Section 245j, Joint Res. Nov. 4, 1939, ch. 2, §1, 54 Stat. 4, which related to a proclamation of a state of war between foreign states, was transferred to section 441 of this title.

Section 245j-1, Joint Res. Nov. 4, 1939, ch. 2, §2, 54 Stat. 4, which related to commerce with states engaged in armed conflict, was transferred to section 442 of this title and was repealed by Joint Res. Nov. 17, 1941, ch. 473, §1, 55 Stat. 764.

Section 245j-2, Joint Res. Nov. 4, 1939, ch. 2, §3, 54 Stat. 7, which related to combat areas, was transferred to section 443 of this title and was repealed by Joint Res. Nov. 17, 1941, ch. 473, §1, 55 Stat. 764.

Section 245j-3, Joint Res. Nov. 4, 1939, ch. 2, §4, 54 Stat. 7, as amended, which related to American Red Cross vessels, was transferred to section 444 of this title.

Section 245j-4, Joint Res. Nov. 4, 1939, ch. 2, § 5, 54 Stat. 7, which related to travel on vessels of belligerent states, was transferred to section 445 of this title.

Section 245j-5, Joint Res. Nov. 4, 1939, ch. 2, § 6, 54 Stat. 7, which related to the arming of American merchant vessels, was transferred to section 446 of this title and was repealed by Joint Res. Nov. 17, 1941, ch. 473, § 2, 55 Stat. 764.

Section 245j-6, Joint Res. Nov. 4, 1939, ch. 2, § 7, 54 Stat. 7, as amended, which related to financial transactions, was transferred to section 447 of this title.

Section 245j-7, Joint Res. Nov. 4, 1939, ch. 2, § 8, 54 Stat. 8, which related to solicitation and collection of funds and contributions, was transferred to section 448 of this title.

Section 245j-8, Joint Res. Nov. 4, 1939, ch. 2, § 9, 54 Stat. 8, which related to American republics, was transferred to section 449 of this title.

Section 245j-9, Joint Res. Nov. 4, 1939, ch. 2, § 10, 54 Stat. 9, which related to restrictions on use of American ports, was transferred to section 450 of this title.

Section 245j-10, Joint Res. Nov. 4, 1939, ch. 2, § 11, 54 Stat. 9, which related to submarines and armed merchant vessels, was transferred to section 451 of this title.

Section 245j-11, Joint Res. Nov. 4, 1939, ch. 2, § 12, 54 Stat. 10, which related to National Munitions Control Board, was transferred to section 452 of this title and was repealed by act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title V, § 542(a)(12), 68 Stat. 861.

Section 245j-12, Joint Res. Nov. 4, 1939, ch. 2, § 13, 54 Stat. 11, which related to regulations, was transferred to section 453 of this title.

Section 245j-13, Joint Res. Nov. 4, 1939, ch. 2, § 14, 54 Stat. 11, which related to unlawful use of the American flag, was transferred to section 454 of this title.

Section 245j-14, Joint Res. Nov. 4, 1939, ch. 2, § 15, 54 Stat. 11, which related to penalties, was transferred to section 455 of this title.

Section 245j-15, Joint Res. Nov. 4, 1939, ch. 2, § 16, 54 Stat. 12, as amended, which defined terms used in neutrality provisions, was transferred to section 456 of this title.

Section 245j-16, Joint Res. Nov. 4, 1939, ch. 2, § 17, 54 Stat. 12, which related to separability of provisions, was transferred to a note set out under section 441 of this title.

Section 245j-17, Joint Res. Nov. 4, 1939, ch. 2, § 18, 54 Stat. 12, which related to appropriations, was transferred to section 457 of this title.

Section 245j-18, Joint Res. Nov. 4, 1939, ch. 2, § 19, 54 Stat. 12, which related to repeal of earlier Joint Resolutions, was transferred and set out as a note under section 441 of this title.

Section 245j-19, Joint Res. Nov. 4, 1939, ch. 2, § 20, 54 Stat. 12, which related to short title of this resolution, was transferred and set out as a note under section 441 of this title.

**§ 246. Repealed. June 25, 1948, ch. 645, § 21, 62 Stat. 862, eff. Sept. 1, 1948**

Section, act July 8, 1918, ch. 138, 40 Stat. 821, related to wearing of foreign nation's uniform without authority. See section 703 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

**§ 247. Transferred**

CODIFICATION

Section, act Sept. 22, 1922, ch. 414, 42 Stat. 1028, which related to foreign traveling salesmen, was transferred to section 503 of this title.

**§ 248. Repealed. June 25, 1948, ch. 645, § 21, 62 Stat. 862, eff. Sept. 1, 1948**

Section, act June 20, 1936, ch. 635, §§ 1, 2, 49 Stat. 1557, related to prohibition against commercial use of arms of Swiss Confederation. See section 708 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

**§§ 249 to 250f. Transferred**

CODIFICATION

Section 249, act Aug. 9, 1939, ch. 616, § 1, 53 Stat. 1290, which related to utilization of services of government agencies to promote inter-American relations, was transferred to section 501 of this title.

Section 249a, act Aug. 9, 1939, ch. 616, § 2, 53 Stat. 1290, which related to creation of advisory committees, was transferred to section 502 of this title.

Section 250, act June 15, 1940, ch. 365, § 1, 54 Stat. 396, which related to military and naval assistance to governments of American republics, was transferred to section 521 of this title.

Section 250a, act June 15, 1940, ch. 365, § 2, 54 Stat. 396, which related to transmission of information relating to implements of war, was transferred to section 522 of this title.

Section 250b, act June 15, 1940, ch. 365, § 3, 54 Stat. 397, which related to contract restrictions against disposal of implements of war, was transferred to section 523 of this title.

Section 250c, act June 15, 1940, ch. 365, § 4, 54 Stat. 397, which related to information on shipments to be given chairman of National Munitions Control Board, was transferred to section 524 of this title.

Section 250d, act June 15, 1940, ch. 365, § 5, 54 Stat. 397, which related to appropriations and dispositions of receipts, was transferred to section 525 of this title.

Section 250e, act June 15, 1940, ch. 365, § 6, 54 Stat. 397, which related to protection of patent rights, was transferred to section 526 of this title.

Section 250f, act June 15, 1940, ch. 365, § 7, 54 Stat. 397, which related to purchases of implements of war from American republics, was transferred to section 527 of this title.

**CHAPTER 6—FOREIGN DIPLOMATIC AND CONSULAR OFFICERS**

Sec.

251 to 254. Repealed.

254a. Definitions.

254b. Privileges and immunities of mission of non-party to Vienna Convention.

254c. Extension of more favorable or less favorable treatment than provided under Vienna Convention; authority of President.

254c-1. Policy toward certain agents of foreign governments.

254c-2. Repealed.

254d. Dismissal on motion of action against individual entitled to immunity.

254e. Liability insurance for members of mission.

(a) Compliance with regulations.

(b) Establishment by regulation of liability insurance requirements.

(c) Enforcement of liability insurance requirements.

255 to 255b. Repealed or Omitted.

256. Jurisdiction of consular officers in disputes between seamen.

257. Arrest of seamen; procedure generally.

258. Commitment and discharge.

258a. Enforcement of awards of foreign consuls.

259. Repealed.

**§ 251. Repealed. June 25, 1948, ch. 645, § 21, 62 Stat. 862, eff. Sept. 1, 1948**

Section, R.S. § 4062, related to violation of safe conduct. See sections 112 and 1545 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

**§§ 252 to 254. Repealed. Pub. L. 95-393, § 3(a)(1), Sept. 30, 1978, 92 Stat. 808**

Section 252, R.S. § 4063, related to the immunity of any ambassador or public minister of any foreign prince or State, or any domestic or domestic servant of

any such minister against arrest, imprisonment, or seizure of his goods or chattels.

Section 253, R.S. § 4064, related to imprisonment for not more than three years of anyone suing out a writ or process in violation of the provisions of former section 252 of this title, granting diplomatic immunity to certain persons.

Section 254, R.S. §§ 4065, 4066, related to suits against persons in the service of an ambassador or public minister founded upon a debt contracted before entering such service, and registration of the names of persons serving as domestic servants of an ambassador or a public minister with the State Department.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective at end of ninety-day period beginning on Sept. 30, 1978, see section 9 of Pub. L. 95-393, set out as an Effective Date note under section 254a of this title.

#### INSURANCE COVERAGE OF DIPLOMATIC MISSIONS TO UNITED STATES; REPORTS TO SPEAKER OF HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES AND PRESIDENT OF SENATE

Pub. L. 95-148, title V, § 510(1), (2), Oct. 31, 1977, 91 Stat. 1240, provided that it was the sense of the Congress that the Secretary of State should prepare and submit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and to the President of the Senate: (1) not later than six months after Oct. 31, 1977, a report on the adequacy of insurance provided by the accredited diplomatic missions to the United States to cover loss or injury arising from the wrongful acts or omissions of the employees of such missions in the United States; and (2) not later than one year after Oct. 31, 1977, a report on what efforts the President and the Secretary of State had made to encourage the provision of such coverage.

#### § 254a. Definitions

As used in this Act—

(1) the term “members of a mission” means—

(A) the head of a mission and those members of a mission who are members of the diplomatic staff or who, pursuant to law, are granted equivalent privileges and immunities,

(B) members of the administrative and technical staff of a mission, and

(C) members of the service staff of a mission,

as such terms are defined in Article 1 of the Vienna Convention;

(2) the term “family” means—

(A) the members of the family of a member of a mission described in paragraph (1)(A) who form part of his or her household if they are not nationals of the United States, and

(B) the members of the family of a member of a mission described in paragraph (1)(B) who form part of his or her household if they are not nationals or permanent residents of the United States,

within the meaning of Article 37 of the Vienna Convention;

(3) the term “mission” includes missions within the meaning of the Vienna Convention and any missions representing foreign governments, individually or collectively, which are extended the same privileges and immunities, pursuant to law, as are enjoyed by missions under the Vienna Convention; and

(4) the term “Vienna Convention” means the Vienna Convention on Diplomatic Relations of

April 18, 1961 (T.I.A.S. numbered 7502; 23 U.S.T. 3227), entered into force with respect to the United States on December 13, 1972.

(Pub. L. 95-393, § 2, Sept. 30, 1978, 92 Stat. 808; Pub. L. 97-241, title II, § 203(b)(1), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 290.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, means Pub. L. 95-393, Sept. 30, 1978, 92 Stat. 808, as amended, known as the Diplomatic Relations Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note below and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1982—Par. (1)(A). Pub. L. 97-241 substituted “those members of a mission who are members of the diplomatic staff or who, pursuant to law, are granted equivalent privileges and immunities” for “members of the diplomatic staff of a mission”.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1982 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 97-241 effective Oct. 1, 1982, see section 204 of Pub. L. 97-241, set out as an Effective Date note under section 4301 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 9 of Pub. L. 95-393 provided that: “This Act [see Short Title note below] shall take effect at the end of the ninety-day period beginning on the date of its enactment [Sept. 30, 1978]”.

#### SHORT TITLE

Section 1 of Pub. L. 95-393 provided that: “This Act [enacting this section, sections 254b to 254e of this title, and section 1364 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure, amending sections 1251 and 1351 of Title 28, repealing sections 252 to 254 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as a note under this section] may be cited as the ‘Diplomatic Relations Act.’”

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4304a of this title; title 28 section 1351.

#### § 254b. Privileges and immunities of mission of nonparty to Vienna Convention

With respect to a nonparty to the Vienna Convention, the mission, the members of the mission, their families, and diplomatic couriers shall enjoy the privileges and immunities specified in the Vienna Convention.

(Pub. L. 95-393, § 3(b), Sept. 30, 1978, 92 Stat. 808; Pub. L. 97-241, title II, § 203(b)(2), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1982—Pub. L. 97-241 substituted “With respect to a nonparty to the Vienna Convention, the mission, the members of the mission, their families, and diplomatic couriers” for “Members of the mission of a sending state which has not ratified the Vienna Convention, their families, and the diplomatic couriers of such state.”.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1982 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 97-241 effective Oct. 1, 1982, see section 204 of Pub. L. 97-241, set out as an Effective Date note under section 4301 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective at end of ninety-day period beginning on Sept. 30, 1978, see section 9 of Pub. L. 95-393, set out as a note under section 254a of this title.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 254d of this title.

**§ 254c. Extension of more favorable or less favorable treatment than provided under Vienna Convention; authority of President**

The President may, on the basis of reciprocity and under such terms and conditions as he may determine, specify privileges and immunities for the mission, the members of the mission, their families, and the diplomatic couriers which result in more favorable treatment or less favorable treatment than is provided under the Vienna Convention.

(Pub. L. 95-393, § 4, Sept. 30, 1978, 92 Stat. 809; Pub. L. 97-241, title II, § 203(b)(3), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291.)

## AMENDMENTS

1982—Pub. L. 97-241 substituted “immunities for the mission, the members” for “immunities for members” and “diplomatic couriers which” for “diplomatic couriers of any sending state which”.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1982 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 97-241 effective Oct. 1, 1982, see section 204 of Pub. L. 97-241, set out as an Effective Date note under section 4301 of this title.

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective at end of ninety-day period beginning on Sept. 30, 1978, see section 9 of Pub. L. 95-393, set out as a note under section 254a of this title.

EX. ORD. NO. 12101. DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS TO SECRETARY OF STATE RESPECTING PRIVILEGES AND IMMUNITIES FOR DIPLOMATIC MISSIONS AND PERSONNEL

Ex. Ord. No. 12101, Nov. 17, 1978, 43 F.R. 54195, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 12608, Sept. 9, 1987, 52 F.R. 34617, provided:

By the authority vested in me as President of the United States of America by the Diplomatic Relations Act (Public Law 95-393, 92 Stat. 808; 22 U.S.C. 254a et seq.) and Section 301 of Title 3 of the United States Code, in order to implement the liability insurance and other requirements relating to diplomatic personnel, I hereby designate and empower the Secretary of State to perform, without the approval, ratification, or other action of the President, the functions vested or to be vested in the President by Section 4 of Diplomatic Relations Act (92 Stat. 809; 22 U.S.C. 254c).

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 254d of this title.

**§ 254c-1. Policy toward certain agents of foreign governments**

(a) It is the sense of the Congress that the numbers, status, privileges and immunities, travel, accommodations, and facilities within the United States of official representatives to the United States of any foreign government that engages in intelligence activities within the United States harmful to the national security of the United States should not exceed the respective numbers, status, privileges and immunities, travel accommodations, and facilities within such country of official representatives of the United States to such country.

(b) Beginning one year after November 8, 1984, and at intervals of one year thereafter, the President shall prepare and transmit to the Committee on Foreign Relations and Select

Committee on Intelligence of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs and Permanent Select Committee on Intelligence of the House of Representatives a report on the numbers, status, privileges and immunities, travel, accommodations, and facilities within the United States of official representatives to the United States of any foreign government that engages in intelligence activities within the United States harmful to the national security of the United States and the respective numbers, status, privileges and immunities, travel, accommodations, and facilities within such country of official representatives of the United States to such country, and any action which may have been taken with respect thereto.

(Pub. L. 98-618, title VI, § 601(a), (b), Nov. 8, 1984, 98 Stat. 3303.)

## CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

**§ 254c-2. Repealed. Pub. L. 103-199, title V, § 501(c), Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2325**

Section, Pub. L. 100-178, title V, § 501, Dec. 2, 1987, 101 Stat. 1014, related to annual report of Attorney General to congressional committees regarding admissions to United States over objections of the Federal Bureau of Investigation of Soviet nationals employed by or assigned to foreign mission or international organization in United States.

**§ 254d. Dismissal on motion of action against individual entitled to immunity**

Any action or proceeding brought against an individual who is entitled to immunity with respect to such action or proceeding under the Vienna Convention on Diplomatic Relations, under section 254b or 254c of this title, or under any other laws extending diplomatic privileges and immunities, shall be dismissed. Such immunity may be established upon motion or suggestion by or on behalf of the individual, or as otherwise permitted by law or applicable rules of procedure.

(Pub. L. 95-393, § 5, Sept. 30, 1978, 92 Stat. 809.)

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective at end of ninety-day period beginning on Sept. 30, 1978, see section 9 of Pub. L. 95-393, set out as a note under section 254a of this title.

**§ 254e. Liability insurance for members of mission**

**(a) Compliance with regulations**

Each mission, members of the mission and their families, and individuals described in section 19 of the Convention on Privileges and Immunities of the United Nations of February 13, 1946, shall comply with any requirement imposed by the regulations promulgated by the Director of the Office of Foreign Missions in the Department of State pursuant to subsection (b) of this section.

**(b) Establishment by regulation of liability insurance requirements**

The Director of the Office of Foreign Missions shall, by regulation, establish liability insur-

ance requirements which can reasonably be expected to afford adequate compensation to victims and which are to be met by each mission, members of the mission and their families, and individuals described in section 19 of the Convention on Privileges and Immunities of the United Nations of February 13, 1946, relating to risks arising from the operation in the United States of any motor vehicle, vessel, or aircraft.

**(c) Enforcement of liability insurance requirements**

The Director of the Office of Foreign Missions shall take such steps as he may deem necessary to insure that each mission, members of the mission and their families, and individuals described in section 19 of the Convention on Privileges and Immunities of the United Nations of February 13, 1946, who operate motor vehicles, vessels, or aircraft in the United States comply with the requirements established pursuant to subsection (b) of this section.

(Pub. L. 95-393, §6, Sept. 30, 1978, 92 Stat. 809; Pub. L. 98-164, title VI, §602, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1042.)

AMENDMENTS

1983—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 98-164, §602(1), substituted “Director of the Office of Foreign Missions in the Department of State” for “President”.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 98-164, §602(2), inserted provision respecting adequate compensation to victims, and substituted reference to Director for reference to President.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 98-164, §602(3), substituted reference to Director for reference to President.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective at end of ninety-day period beginning on Sept. 30, 1978, see section 9 of Pub. L. 95-393, set out as a note under section 254a of this title.

AUTHORITY OF SECRETARY OF STATE

Except as otherwise provided, Secretary of State to have and exercise any authority vested by law in any official or office of Department of State and references to such officials or offices deemed to refer to Secretary of State or Department of State, as appropriate, see section 2651a of this title and section 161(d) of Pub. L. 103-236, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

**§ 255. Repealed. June 25, 1948, ch. 645, § 21, 62 Stat. 862, eff. Sept. 1, 1948**

Section, R.S. §4062, related to assaulting, etc., a foreign minister. See sections 112 and 1545 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

**§§ 255a, 255b. Omitted**

CODIFICATION

Sections, act Feb. 15, 1938, ch. 29, §§1, 2, 52 Stat. 30, which related to protection for officers and buildings, jurisdiction of offenses and penalties, and permitted picketing, are of particular application to the District of Columbia and are classified as sections 22-1115 and 22-1116 of the District of Columbia Code.

**§ 256. Jurisdiction of consular officers in disputes between seamen**

Whenever it is stipulated by treaty or convention between the United States and any foreign nation that the consul general, consuls, vice consuls, or consular or commercial agents of

each nation, shall have exclusive jurisdiction of controversies, difficulties, or disorders arising at sea or in the waters or ports of the other nation, between the master or officers and any of the crew, or between any of the crew themselves, of any vessel belonging to the nation represented by such consular officer, such stipulations shall be executed and enforced within the jurisdiction of the United States as declared in sections 257 and 258 of this title. But before this section shall take effect as to the vessels of any particular nation having such treaty with the United States, the President shall be satisfied that similar provisions have been made for the execution of such treaty by the other contracting party, and shall issue his proclamation to that effect, declaring this section to be in force as to such nation.

(R.S. §4079.)

CODIFICATION

R.S. §4079 derived from act June 11, 1864, ch. 116, §1, 13 Stat. 121.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 257 of this title.

**§ 257. Arrest of seamen; procedure generally**

In all cases within the purview of section 256 of this title the consul general, consul, or other consular or commercial authority of such foreign nation charged with the appropriate duty in the particular case, may make application to any court of record of the United States, or to any judge thereof, or to any United States magistrate judge, setting forth that such controversy, difficulty, or disorder has arisen, briefly stating the nature thereof, and when and where the same occurred, and exhibiting a certified copy or extract of the shipping articles, roll, or other proper paper of the vessel, to the effect that the person in question is of the crew or ship's company of such vessel; and further stating and certifying that such person has withdrawn himself, or is believed to be about to withdraw himself, from the control and discipline of the master and officers of the vessel or that he has refused, or is about to refuse, to submit to and obey the lawful jurisdiction of such consular or commercial authority in the premises; and further stating and certifying that, to the best of the knowledge and belief of the officer certifying, such person is not a citizen of the United States. Such application shall be in writing and duly authenticated by the consular or other sufficient official seal. Thereupon such court, judge, or magistrate judge shall issue his warrant for the arrest of the person so complained of, directed to the marshal of the United States for the appropriate district, or in his discretion to any person, being a citizen of the United States, whom he may specially depute for the purpose, requiring such person to be brought before him for examination at a certain time and place.

(R.S. §4080; May 28, 1896, ch. 252, §19, 29 Stat. 184; Mar. 2, 1901, ch. 814, 31 Stat. 956; Oct. 17, 1968, Pub. L. 90-578, title IV, §402(b)(2), 82 Stat. 1118; Dec. 1, 1990, Pub. L. 101-650, title III, §321, 104 Stat. 5117.)

## CODIFICATION

R.S. § 4080 derived from act June 11, 1864, ch. 116, § 2, 13 Stat. 121.

Act Mar. 2, 1901, provided in part that all acts or parts of acts applicable to commissioners of the circuit court, except as to appointment and fees, shall be applicable to United States commissioners.

## CHANGE OF NAME

Act May 28, 1896, abolished the circuit court and required the district court to appoint persons to be known as United States commissioners.

“United States magistrate judge” and “magistrate judge” substituted in text for “United States magistrate” and “magistrate”, respectively, pursuant to section 321 of Pub. L. 101-650, set out as a note under section 631 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure. Previously, “magistrate” substituted for “commissioner” pursuant to Pub. L. 90-578. See chapter 43 (§631 et seq.) of Title 28.

## CROSS REFERENCES

Arrest or imprisonment of officers and seamen for desertion not authorized, see section 258 of this title.

District courts or United States commissioners to issue remedial process to carry into effect decrees of any foreign consul, vice consul, or commercial agent, see section 258a of this title.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 256, 258 of this title.

**§ 258. Commitment and discharge**

If, on such examination, it is made to appear that the person so arrested is a citizen of the United States, he shall be forthwith discharged from arrest, and shall be left to the ordinary course of law. But if this is not made to appear, and such court, judge, or magistrate judge finds, upon the papers referred to in section 257 of this title, a sufficient prima facie case that the matter concerns only the internal order and discipline of such foreign vessel, or whether in its nature civil or criminal, does not affect directly the execution of the laws of the United States, or the rights and duties of any citizen of the United States, he shall forthwith, by his warrant, commit such person to prison, where prisoners under sentence of a court of the United States may be lawfully committed, or, in his discretion, to the master or chief officer of such foreign vessel, to be subject to the lawful orders, control, and discipline of such master or chief officer, and to the jurisdiction of the consular or commercial authority of the nation to which such vessel belongs, to the exclusion of any authority or jurisdiction in the premises of the United States or any State thereof. No person shall be detained more than two months after his arrest, but at the end of that time shall be set at liberty and shall not again be arrested for the same cause. The expenses of the arrest and the detention of the person so arrested shall be paid by the consular officers making the application: *Provided*, That nothing in this section or section 257 of this title shall authorize the arrest or imprisonment of officers and seamen deserting or charged with desertion from merchant vessels of foreign nations in the United States and Territories and possessions thereof, and the cooperation, aid, and protection of competent legal authorities in effecting such arrest or imprisonment.

(R.S. § 4081; Mar. 4, 1915, ch. 153, §§ 16, 17, 38 Stat. 1184; Oct. 17, 1968, Pub. L. 90-578, title IV, § 402(b)(2), 82 Stat. 1118; Dec. 1, 1990, Pub. L. 101-650, title III, § 321, 104 Stat. 5117.)

## CODIFICATION

R.S. § 4081 derived from act June 11, 1864, ch. 116, § 2, 13 Stat. 121.

## CHANGE OF NAME

Words “magistrate judge” substituted in text for “magistrate” pursuant to section 321 of Pub. L. 101-650, set out as a note under section 631 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure. Previously, “magistrate” substituted for “commissioner” pursuant to Pub. L. 90-578. See chapter 43 (§631 et seq.) of Title 28.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 256 of this title.

**§ 258a. Enforcement of awards of foreign consuls**

The district courts and the United States magistrate judges shall have power to carry into effect, according to the true intent and meaning thereof, the award or arbitration or decree of any consul, vice consul or commercial agent of any foreign nation, made or rendered by virtue of authority conferred on him as such consul, vice consul, or commercial agent, to sit as judge or arbitrator in such differences as may arise between the captains and crews of the vessels belonging to the nation whose interests are committed to his charge, application for the exercise of such power being first made to such court or magistrate judge, by petition of such consul, vice consul, or commercial agent. And said courts and magistrate judges may issue all proper remedial process, mesne and final, to carry into full effect such award, arbitration, or decree, and to enforce obedience thereto by imprisonment in the jail or other place of confinement in the district in which the United States may lawfully imprison any person arrested under the authority of the United States, until such award, arbitration or decree is complied with, or the parties are otherwise discharged therefrom, by the consent in writing of such consul, vice consul, or commercial agent, or his successor in office, or by the authority of the foreign government appointing such consul, vice consul, or commercial agent. The expenses of the said imprisonment and maintenance of the prisoners, and the cost of the proceedings, shall be borne by such foreign government, or by its consul, vice consul, or commercial agent requiring such imprisonment. The marshals of the United States shall serve all such process, and do all other acts necessary and proper to carry into effect the premises, under the authority of the said courts and magistrate judges.

(Mar. 3, 1911, ch. 231, § 271, 36 Stat. 1163; Oct. 17, 1968, Pub. L. 90-578, title IV, § 402(b)(2), 82 Stat. 1118; Dec. 1, 1990, Pub. L. 101-650, title III, § 321, 104 Stat. 5117.)

## CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 393 of Title 28 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure, by act June 25, 1948, ch. 646, § 1, 62 Stat. 869.

## CHANGE OF NAME

“United States magistrate judges”, “magistrate judge”, and “magistrate judges” substituted in text for



“United States magistrates”, “magistrate”, and “magistrates”, respectively, pursuant to section 321 of Pub. L. 101-650, set out as a note under section 631 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure. Previously, “magistrate” substituted for “commissioner” pursuant to Pub. L. 90-578. See chapter 43 (§631 et seq.) of Title 28.

**§ 259. Repealed. Aug. 10, 1956, ch. 1041, § 53, 70A Stat. 641**

Section, act May 31, 1939, ch. 161, 53 Stat. 795, authorized Secretary of Army to sell supplies to aircraft operated by any foreign military or air attaché accredited to United States. See sections 4626, 4629, 9626, and 9629 of Title 10, Armed Forces.

**CHAPTER 7—INTERNATIONAL BUREAUS, CONGRESSES, ETC.**

Sec.  
261. Policy as to settlement of disputes and disarmament.  
262. President's participation in international congresses restricted.  
262a. Contributions to international organizations; consent of State Department; reports to Congress; limitations as to certain organizations.  
262b. Commitments for United States contributions to international organizations; limitations; consultation with Congressional committees.  
262c. Commitments for United States contributions to international financial institutions fostering economic development in less developed countries; continuation of participation.  
(a) Congressional findings.  
(b) Funding commitments to international financial institutions; availability of funds subject to appropriations.  
262d. Human rights and United States assistance policies with international financial institutions.  
(a) Policy goals.  
(b) Policy considerations for Executive Directors of institutions in implementation of duties.  
(c) Reporting requirements.  
(d) Requirements of United States assistance through institutions for projects in recipient countries.  
(e) Criteria for determination of gross violations of internationally recognized human rights standards.  
(f) Opposition by United States Executive Directors of institutions to financial or technical assistance to violating countries.  
(g) Consultative and additional reporting requirements.  
262d-1. Congressional statement of policy of human rights and United States assistance policies with international institutions.  
262e. Comparability of salaries and benefits of employees of international financial institutions with employees of American private business and governmental service.  
262f. Promotion of development and utilization of light capital technologies and United States assistance policies with international financial institutions.  
262g. Human nutrition in developing countries and United States assistance policies with international financial institutions; declaration of policy.

Sec.  
262g-1. Targeting assistance to specific populations.  
(a) Congressional findings.  
(b) Assistance to poorest populations.  
262g-2. Establishment of guidelines for international financial institutions.  
(a) Consultation with representatives of member countries.  
(b) Congressional findings regarding implementation of objectives.  
262g-3. International negotiations on future replenishments of international financial institutions; consultation with appropriate Members of Congress.  
262h. Opposition by United States Executive Directors of international financial institutions to assistance for production or extraction of export commodities or minerals in surplus on world markets.  
262i. Repealed.  
262j. Use of renewable resources for energy production.  
(a) Promotion, etc., by United States in connection with international financial institutions.  
(b) “Renewable resource” defined.  
262k. Financial assistance to international financial institutions; considerations and criteria.  
(a) Congressional declaration of intent.  
(b) Effect of country adjustment programs; minimization of projected adverse impacts; avoidance of government subsidization.  
(c) Project proposals relating to mining, smelting, refining, and fabricating of minerals and metal products.  
(d) International financial institutions.  
262l. Omitted.  
262m. Congressional findings and policies for multilateral development banks respecting environment, public health, natural resources, and indigenous peoples.  
262m-1. Environmental performance of banks; mechanisms for improvement.  
262m-2. Environmental impact of assistance proposals.  
(a) Analysis by agencies, United States embassies and overseas missions of Agency for International Development; factors considered; affirmative investigation of adverse impacts; availability of information to public.  
(b) Evaluation by major shareholder governments prior to bank action on assistance proposals.  
(c) Identification of proposals likely to have adverse impact; transmittal to Congress.  
(d) Reports to Executive Directors; elimination or mitigation of adverse impacts.  
262m-3. Cooperative information exchange system.  
262m-4. Environmental educational and training programs for mid-level bank managers and officials of borrowing countries.  
262m-5. Environmental impact statements; factors considered; promotion of activities by United States Executive Directors.  
262m-6. Repealed.  
262m-7. Assessment of environmental impact of proposed multilateral development bank actions.  
(a) Assessment required before favorable vote on action.  
(b) Access to assessments in all member countries.  
(c) Consideration of assessment.  
(d) Development of procedures for systematic environmental assessment.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>Sec.</p> <p>262n. Congressional findings and policies respecting agricultural and commodity production.</p> <p>262n-1. Increase in income and employment in developing countries; enhancement of purchasing power; diversification away from single crop or product economies.</p> <p>262n-2. Financing projects for production of export commodities, products, or minerals in surplus in world markets discouraged; instructions by Secretary of the Treasury to United States Executive Directors.</p> <p>262o. Negotiations concerning replenishment or increase in capital; annual reports on implementation of lending policy goals.</p> <p>262o-1. Military spending by recipient countries; military involvement in economies of recipient countries.</p> <p>262p. Impact adjustment lending programs.</p> <p>262p-1. Grassroots Collaboration Program.</p> <p>262p-2. Instructions to United States Executive Directors for extension of credit.</p> <p>262p-3. Participation of women in economic, social and policy development activities.</p> <p>262p-4. Instructions to United States Executive Directors; indigenous people in borrowing country; determination of impact; protection of rights; consultation.</p> <p>262p-4a. Loan programs to reduce economic dependence on illicit narcotics.</p> | <p>Sec.</p> <p>262p-4b. Directives regarding government-owned enterprises in countries receiving World Bank loans.</p> <p>262p-4c. Initiation of discussions to facilitate debt-for-development swaps for human welfare and environmental conservation.</p> <p>262p-4d. Initiation of discussions to facilitate financing of human welfare and natural resource programs in sub-Saharan Africa in connection with debt reduction and conversion.</p> <p>262p-4e. Extent to which borrowing country governments have honored debt-for-development swap agreements to be considered as factor in making loans to such borrowers.</p> <p>262p-4f. Assistance to countries to develop statistical assessment of well-being of poor.</p> <p>262p-4g. Directives regarding government-owned enterprises in countries receiving IADB loans.</p> <p>262p-4h. Discussions to increase productive economic participation of poor; reports.</p> <p>262p-4i. Multilateral development banks and debt-for-nature exchanges.</p> <p>262p-4j. Promotion of lending for environment.</p> <p>262p-4k. Promotion of institution-building for nongovernmental organizations concerned with environment.</p> <p>262p-4l. Improvement of interaction between International Bank for Reconstruction and Development and nongovernmental organizations.</p> <p>262p-4m. Population, health, and nutrition programs.</p> <p>262p-4n. Equal employment opportunities.</p> <p>262p-4o. Respect for indigenous peoples.</p> <p>262p-4p. Encouragement of fair labor practices.</p> <p>262p-5. Definitions.</p> <p>262q. Transferred.</p> <p>262r. Annual report by Chairman of National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Policies.</p> |
|--|---|
- (e) Use of United States personnel.
- (f) Reports.
- (a) Finding.
- (b) Technical assistance to transform government-owned enterprises into privately owned enterprises.
- (c) Reports.
- (a) Findings.
- (b) Initiation of discussions to facilitate debt-for-development swaps for human welfare and environmental conservation.
- (a) Findings.
- (b) Initiation of discussions to facilitate financing of human welfare and natural resource programs in sub-Saharan Africa in connection with debt reduction and conversion.
- (a) In general.
- (b) Definitions.
- (a) Findings.
- (b) Assistance to countries to develop statistical assessment of well-being of poor.
- (a) Finding.
- (b) Technical assistance to transform government-owned enterprises into privately owned enterprises.
- (a) In general.
- (b) Progress report.
- (a) Directions to United States Executive Directors.
- (b) Negotiation of guidelines for restoration, protection, or sustainable use policies.
- (c) Inclusion of certain items in guidelines.
- (a) In general.
- (b) Certain mechanisms urged.
- 262p-4o. Respect for indigenous peoples.
- 262p-4p. Encouragement of fair labor practices.
- 262p-5. Definitions.
- 262q. Transferred.
- 262r. Annual report by Chairman of National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Policies.
- (a) In general.
- (b) Contents of reports.
- (c) Definitions.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>Sec.</p> <p>262r-1. (d) Testimony required.</p> <p>262r-2. Transmission to the Congress of operating summaries of the multilateral development banks.</p> <p>262s. Combined report on effect of pending multilateral development bank loans on environment, natural resources, public health, and indigenous peoples.</p> <p>262s. Multilateral development bank procurement.</p> <p>(a) Executive Directors.</p> <p>(b) Officer of procurement.</p> <p>(b) "Multilateral development bank" defined.</p> <p>262s-1. Procurement opportunities for United States firms.</p> <p>262s-2. Commercial Service Officers and multilateral development bank procurement.</p> <p>(a) Appointment of Commercial Service Officers to serve with Executive Directors.</p> <p>(b) Functions of officers.</p> <p>262t. Personnel practices.</p> <p>(a) Statement of policy.</p> <p>(b) Consultation.</p> <p>263. International Prison Commission.</p> <p>263a. International Criminal Police Organization.</p> <p>264, 265. Omitted.</p> <p>266. International commission of congresses of navigation; authorization of appropriation for expenses.</p> <p>266a, 266b. Transferred or Repealed.</p> <p>267. Permanent Commission of International Geodetic Association; representative of United States.</p> <p>267a. Appointment of delegates; compensation.</p> <p>267b. International Joint Commission; invitation to establish; personnel; duties.</p> <p>268. International Joint Commission; salaries; powers.</p> <p>268a. Repealed.</p> <p>268b. Advances from appropriation "Boundary line, Alaska and Canada, and the United States and Canada".</p> <p>269. Permanent International Association of Road Congresses; authorization of membership.</p> <p>269a. Central Bureau of the International Map of the World on the Millionth Scale; authorization of appropriations.</p> <p>269b. Omitted.</p> <p>269c. International Statistical Bureau at The Hague; authorization of appropriations.</p> <p>269d. Inter American Statistical Institute; authorization of appropriations.</p> <p>269e. Omitted.</p> <p>269f. International Bureau for the Protection of Industrial Property; authorization of appropriations.</p> <p>269g. Private International Law Conference at The Hague and Private Law International Institute in Rome; membership; appointment of delegates.</p> <p>269g-1. Authorization of appropriations.</p> <p>269h. International Union for the Publication of Customs Tariffs; authorization of annual appropriations for expenses.</p> <p>270 to 270g. Repealed.</p> <p>271. International Labor Organization; membership.</p> <p>272. Omitted.</p> <p>272a. Authorization of appropriations.</p> <p>272b. Loyalty check on United States personnel.</p> <p>273. Pan American Institute of Geography and History; authorization of annual appropriations for membership.</p> <p>274. International Council of Scientific Unions and Associated Unions; authorization of annual appropriations for membership.</p> <p>274a. International biological program.</p> <p>(a) Congressional findings.</p> | <p>Sec.</p> <p>(b) Congressional support.</p> <p>(c) Priority.</p> <p>274b. Cooperation of Federal and non-Federal departments, agencies, and organizations; transfers of funds.</p> <p>(a) Full cooperation with international biological program.</p> <p>(b) Authorization for transfers of funds.</p> <p>275. International Hydrographic Bureau.</p> <p>275a. Permanent International Commission of the Congresses of Navigation; authorization of appropriations.</p> <p>276. Bureau of Interparliamentary Union; American group; authorization of appropriations; disbursements.</p> <p>276a. Reports to Congress by American group.</p> <p>276a-1. Conference of the Interparliamentary Union; appointment of delegates from House of Representatives; Chairman; Vice Chairman.</p> <p>276a-2. Conference of the Interparliamentary Union and all other parliamentary conferences; appointment of delegates from Senate; Chairman; Vice Chairman.</p> <p>276a-3. Executive secretary of American group of Interparliamentary Union.</p> <p>276a-4. Auditing of accounts of House and Senate delegations to the Interparliamentary Union; finality and conclusiveness of certificate of Chairman.</p> <p>276b. Repealed.</p> <p>276c. Designation of Senate delegates to Conferences of the Interparliamentary Union.</p> <p>276c-1. Reports of expenditures by members of American groups or delegations and employees; consolidated reports by Congressional committees; public inspection.</p> <p>276c-2. Employee benefits for United States citizen-representatives to International Monetary Fund, International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, European Bank for Reconstruction and Development, Inter-American Development Bank, Asian Development Bank, African Development Fund, African Development Bank, and Inter-American Investment Corporation; Treasury Department as collecting, accounting, and depositing agency for employee payments; contributions from appropriated funds.</p> <p>276c-3. Repealed.</p> <p>276c-4. Employment of United States citizens by certain international organizations.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">SUBCHAPTER I—CANADA-UNITED STATES<br/>INTERPARLIAMENTARY GROUP</p> <p>276d. United States group; appointment; term; meetings.</p> <p>276e. Authorization of appropriations; disbursements.</p> <p>276f. Report to Congress.</p> <p>276g. Auditing of accounts.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">SUBCHAPTER II—MEXICO-UNITED STATES<br/>INTERPARLIAMENTARY GROUP</p> <p>276h. United States group; appointment; term; meetings.</p> <p>276i. Authorization of appropriations; disbursements.</p> <p>276j. Report to Congress.</p> <p>276k. Auditing of accounts.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">SUBCHAPTER II-A—BRITISH-AMERICAN<br/>INTERPARLIAMENTARY GROUP</p> <p>276l. British-American Interparliamentary Group.</p> <p>(a) Establishment and meetings.</p> <p>(b) Appointment of Members.</p> <p>(c) Chair and Vice Chair.</p> <p>(d) Funding.</p> <p>(e) Certification of expenditures.</p> |
|---|---|

- Sec. (f) Annual report.
- SUBCHAPTER II-B—UNITED STATES DELEGATION TO PARLIAMENTARY ASSEMBLY OF CONFERENCE ON SECURITY AND COOPERATION IN EUROPE (CSCE)
- 276m. United States Delegation to Parliamentary Assembly of Conference on Security and Cooperation in Europe (CSCE).  
 (a) Establishment.  
 (b) Appointment of Delegation.  
 (c) Administrative support.  
 (d) Funding.  
 (e) Annual report.
- SUBCHAPTER III—KERMIT ROOSEVELT FUND
- 276aa. Establishment of the Kermit Roosevelt fund; creation and composition of board of trustees.
- 276bb. Acceptance of funds and property from Mrs. Kermit Roosevelt; purpose and use; disbursement and investment of fund.
- 276cc. Acceptance of funds and property from other sources; limitation; disbursement and investment.
- 276dd. Income from property covered into Treasury; disbursement and investment.
- 276ee. Powers of board; personal liability of members; compensation; decisions reviewable by Secretary of the Army; annual report; jurisdiction of court.
- SUBCHAPTER IV—INTERNATIONAL BOUNDARY AND WATER COMMISSION
277. International Boundary Commission, United States and Mexico; study of boundary waters.
- 277a. Investigations of commission; construction of works or projects.
- 277b. Works or projects under treaty.  
 (a) Construction, operation, maintenance, and supervision; sewage interceptor system.  
 (b) Rio Grande bank protection project.  
 (c) Anzalduas diversion dam.
- 277c. Agreements with political subdivisions; acquisition of lands.
- 277d. Funds received from Mexico; expenditure.
- 277d-1. Authorizations for Mexican treaty projects; acquisition of lands for relocation purposes; contracts and conveyances.
- 277d-2. Construction and maintenance of roads, highways, etc.; housing and other facilities for personnel.
- 277d-3. Authorization for appropriations; activities for which available; contracts for excess amounts.
- 277d-4. Acquisition of properties of Imperial Irrigation District of California.
- 277d-5. Availability of prior appropriations; restriction to projects agreed to under treaty.
- 277d-6. Douglas-Agua Prieta Sanitation Project; operation by Commission; division of costs; contribution by City of Douglas, Arizona.
- 277d-7. Authorization for appropriations; availability of prior appropriations; use of moneys received.
- 277d-8. Calexico Mexicali Sanitation Project; operation by Commission; division of costs; contribution by City of Calexico, California.
- 277d-9. Authorization for appropriations; availability of prior appropriations; use of moneys received.
- 277d-10. Nogales Sanitation Project; operation by Commission; division of costs; contribution by Nogales, Arizona.
- 277d-11. Authorization of appropriations; availability of prior appropriations; use of moneys received.
- Sec. 277d-12. Expenditures for flood fighting, rescue operations, repairs or restoration of flood control or sanitation works threatened or destroyed by floodwaters of Rio Grande, Colorado, or Tijuana Rivers.
- 277d-13. Authorization for international storage dam on the Rio Grande.
- 277d-14. Construction, operation, and maintenance on self-liquidating basis of facilities for generating hydroelectric energy.
- 277d-15. Integration of operation of dam with other United States water conservation activities.
- 277d-16. Authorization of appropriations.
- 277d-17. Chamizal boundary settlement; investigations relating to river channel; acquisition of lands; relocation of facilities.
- 277d-18. Construction, operation, and maintenance of works; Bridge of the Americas.  
 (a) In general.  
 (b) Bridge of the Americas.  
 (c) Advance appropriations.
- 277d-19. Compensation of owners and tenants to prevent economic injury; regulations.
- 277d-20. Limitation on application for reimbursement or compensation.
- 277d-21. Attorneys' fees; penalties.
- 277d-22. Prohibition against duplicate payments; eligibility for payments unaffected by means employed for acquisition of property; rights and powers unaffected.
- 277d-23. Taxation; exclusion from gross income.
- 277d-24. Definitions; exemption from administrative procedure provisions.
- 277d-25. Authorization of appropriations.
- 277d-26. Lower Colorado River emergency flood control works; agreements with Mexico for joint construction, operation and maintenance.
- 277d-27. Execution of agreements.
- 277d-28. Authorization of appropriations.
- 277d-29. Rio Grande canalization project; flood and sediment control; agreements authorized; control gates; costs; authorization of appropriations.
- 277d-30. Lower Rio Grande drainage conveyance canal projects; agreements with Mexico for construction, operation, and maintenance; division of costs; non-Federal assurances of one-half of Federal costs.
- 277d-31. Authorization of appropriations.
- 277d-32. Tijuana River flood control project; agreement with Mexico for joint construction, operation and maintenance.
- 277d-33. Authorization; construction, operation, and maintenance, appropriations, and acquisition of land.
- 277d-34. American-Mexican Boundary Treaty, authorization for carrying out treaty provisions; investigations; land acquisition, purposes; damages, repair or compensation.
- 277d-35. Construction, operation, and maintenance of works; property relocation, contracts; transfer of authority.
- 277d-36. Sale of excess land.
- 277d-37. Channel shifts; boundary determination.
- 277d-38. Acquired land, addition to State; State jurisdiction.
- 277d-39. Hidalgo-Reynosa lands; administration; part of national wildlife refuge system.
- 277d-40. Authorization of appropriations.
- 277d-41. American-Mexican Boundary Treaty, Presidio flood control project; authorization of flood control agreement.
- 277d-42. Construction, operation, and maintenance of flood control works; authorization of appropriations; restrictions.
- 277e. Disposal of lands; issuance of licenses for use of lands; compensation for injured property.

|              |   |         |   |
|--------------|---|---------|---|
| Sec.         |   | Sec.    |   |
| 277f.        | Valley Gravity Canal and Storage Project.   | 282g.   | Status, privileges, and immunities of the United States.  |
| 277g.        | Agreements to correct pollution of Rio Grande.  | 282h.   | Loans to or from International Bank for Reconstruction and Development; amendment to Articles of Agreement.                       |
|              | (a) In general.   | 282i.   | Increase in capital stock of Corporation; subscription to additional shares.  |
|              | (b) Content of agreements.  | 282j.   | Increase in capital stock of Corporation; subscription to additional shares.  |
| 277g-1.      | Authority of Secretary of State to plan, construct, operate, and maintain facilities.                               | 282k.   | Securities issued by Corporation.   |
| 277g-2.      | Consultation with Administrator of Environmental Protection Agency and other authorities.                           |         | (a) Exemption from securities laws; reports to Securities and Exchange Commission.  |
| 277g-3.      | Authorization of appropriations.  |         | (b) Authority of Securities and Exchange Commission to suspend exemption; reports to Congress.                                    |
|              | SUBCHAPTER V—GORGAS MEMORIAL LABORATORY   | 282l.   | Capital stock increase.   |
| 278.         | Gorgas Memorial Laboratory; location; acceptance of funds from Latin American countries or other sources.           |         | (a) Subscription authorized.  |
| 278a.        | Annual report to Congress; examination of books and accounts.   |         | (b) Limitations on authorization of appropriations.   |
| 278b.        | Repealed.   | 282m.   | Authority to vote for capital increases necessary to support economic restructuring in independent states of former Soviet Union. |
|              | SUBCHAPTER VI—UNITED NATIONS FOOD AND AGRICULTURE ORGANIZATION  | 282n.   | Authority to agree to amendments to Articles of Agreement.  |
| 279.         | United States membership in the United Nations Food and Agriculture Organization.                                   |         | SUBCHAPTER XII—INTER-AMERICAN DEVELOPMENT BANK  |
| 279a.        | Authorization of appropriations for payment of United States expenses in Organization; limitation of contributions. | 283.    | Acceptance of membership by United States in Inter-American Development Bank.   |
| 279b.        | Integration of International Institute of Agriculture with Organization.  | 283a.   | Appointment of officers; term of office; salary.  |
| 279c.        | Congressional authority necessary for acceptance of new obligations in Organization.                                |         | (a) Governor and alternate governor.  |
| 279d.        | Limitation on power of Conference to impose new obligations on United States.                                       |         | (b) Executive director and alternate executive director.  |
|              | SUBCHAPTER VII—SOUTH PACIFIC COMMISSION   |         | (c) Compensation.   |
| 280.         | Representation in South Pacific Commission; appointment of commissioners and alternates.                            | 283b.   | National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Problems.   |
| 280a.        | Definitions.  | 283c.   | Congressional authorization needed for certain actions.   |
| 280b.        | Authorization of appropriations.  | 283d.   | Federal Reserve banks as depositories.  |
| 280c.        | Employment of personnel with specialized skills.  | 283e.   | Payment of subscription to Bank and Fund by United States.  |
|              | SUBCHAPTER VIII—CARIBBEAN COMMISSION  |         | (a) Authorization of appropriations.  |
| 280h.        | Representation in Caribbean Commission; appointment of commissioners and alternates.                                |         | (b) Issuance of special notes.  |
| 280i.        | Authorization of appropriations.  |         | (c) Income covered into Treasury.   |
|              | SUBCHAPTER IX—PAN AMERICAN RAILWAY CONGRESS   | 283f.   | Jurisdiction and venue of actions.  |
| 280j.        | Representation in Congress; appointment of delegates and alternates.  | 283g.   | Status, privileges, and immunities of the United States.  |
| 280k.        | Authorization of appropriations.  | 283h.   | Securities issued by Bank; reports to and of Securities and Exchange Commission.  |
|              | SUBCHAPTER X—THE INSTITUTE OF INTER-AMERICAN AFFAIRS  |         | (a) Exempt securities; reports of Bank to Commission.   |
| 281 to 281l. | Omitted or Repealed.  |         | (b) Suspension of exemption provisions; annual reports of Commission to Congress.   |
|              | SUBCHAPTER XI—INTERNATIONAL FINANCE CORPORATION   | 283i.   | Repealed.   |
| 282.         | Acceptance of membership by United States in International Finance Corporation.                                     | 283j.   | Increased United States participation in Bank activities.   |
| 282a.        | Governor, executive director, and alternates of Corporation.  | 283j-1. | Audit.  |
| 282b.        | Applicability of National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Problems.                        |         | (a) Establishment.  |
| 282c.        | Congressional authorization needed for certain actions.   |         | (b) Scope and standards.  |
| 282d.        | Federal Reserve banks as depositories.  |         | (c) Reports.  |
| 282e.        | Payment of subscriptions to Corporation by United States; dividends covered into Treasury.                          | 283k.   | Authorization of appropriations.  |
|              | (a) Authority of Secretary of the Treasury.   |         | (a) Capital stock of Inter-American Development Bank.   |
|              | (b) Dividends treated as miscellaneous receipts.  |         | (b) Fund for Special Operations of the Inter-American Development Bank.   |
| 282f.        | Jurisdiction and venue of actions.  | 283l.   | Increase in resources of the Fund for Special Operations.   |
|              |   |         | (a) Authorization of vote; payment to Fund.   |
|              |   |         | (b) Authorization of appropriations.  |
|              |   |         | (c) Loan disapproval by the United States.  |
|              |   | 283m.   | Additional increases in resources of the Fund for Special Operations.   |
|              |   |         | (a) Authorization of vote; payment to Fund.   |

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>Sec.</p> <p>(b) Authorization of appropriations.<br/>(c) Loan disapproval by the United States.</p> <p>283n. Increase in authorized capital stock; United States share; authorization of appropriations.</p> <p>283o. Increase in authorized capital stock and additional subscriptions of members thereto; increase in resources of Fund for Special Operations and contributions thereto; United States share; authorization of appropriations.</p> <p>283p. Authorization for payment of United States contribution to increase Fund for Special Operations; authorization of appropriations.</p> <p>283q. Articles of agreement; authorization to agree to amendments.</p> <p>283r. Expropriation of United States property; loan restrictions.</p> <p>283s. Illegal drug traffic; loan restrictions.</p> <p>283t. Authorization to vote on proposed resolutions.</p> <p>283u. Membership in the Bank for the Bahamas and Guyana.</p> <p>283v. Loans to the Caribbean Development Bank.</p> <p>283w. Increase in authorized capital stock of Bank and increase in resources of Fund for Special Operations; United States share; authorization of appropriations.</p> <p>283x. Subscription to additional shares; authorization of appropriations.</p> <p>283y. Repealed.</p> <p>283z. Proposal of light-capital or intermediate technologies as part of Bank's development strategy.<br/>(a) Contents of proposed resolution.<br/>(b) Progress report to Congress.</p> <p>283z-1. Increase in authorized capital stock of Bank and increase in resources of Fund for Special Operations.<br/>(a) United States share.<br/>(b) Authorization of appropriations.<br/>(c) Funding requirements.<br/>(d) Limitation of funds to members of Bank.</p> <p>283z-2. Contribution to Inter-American Development Bank; authorization of appropriations.</p> <p>283z-3. Increase in authorized capital stock of Bank and increases in resources of Fund for Special Operations; United States share; authorization of appropriations.</p> <p>283z-4. Amendments to Articles of Agreement in resolution on Merger of Interregional and Ordinary Capital Resources.</p> <p>283z-5. Capital increase; increase in resources of Fund for Special Operations.<br/>(a) Authority to vote for, and to subscribe and contribute to, increase in authorized capital stock of Bank and increase in resources of Fund for Special Operations.<br/>(b) Limitation on authorization of appropriations.<br/>(c) Organizational changes required to be made before payment for subscription to capital stock and contribution to Fund for Special Operations.<br/>(d) Certification of access to Bank records required before payment for subscription to capital stock and contribution to Fund for Special Operations.</p> <p>283z-6. Investment in human capital.<br/>(a) In general.<br/>(b) "Investments in human capital" defined.</p> <p>283z-7. Limitations on policy based lending.</p> <p>283z-8. Increase in lending to Caribbean.</p> <p>283z-9. Multilateral Investment Fund.</p> | <p>Sec.</p> <p>(a) Authorization of contribution.<br/>(b) Authorization of appropriations.<br/>(c) Environmental assessment of actions.</p> <p>283z-10. Focus on low-income areas of Latin America and Caribbean.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">SUBCHAPTER XII—INTER-AMERICAN INVESTMENT CORPORATION</p> <p>283aa. Acceptance of membership.<br/>283bb. Governor, Director, and alternates.<br/>283cc. Applicability of Bretton Woods Agreements Act.<br/>283dd. Restrictions.<br/>283ee. Federal Reserve banks as depositories.<br/>283ff. Subscription of stock.<br/>(a) Secretary of the Treasury as subscribing authority.<br/>(b) Authorization of appropriations.<br/>(c) Disposition of dividends.</p> <p>283gg. Jurisdiction of United States courts.<br/>283hh. Effectiveness of agreement.<br/>283ii. Securities issued by the Corporation.<br/>(a) Exempted securities.<br/>(b) Suspension by Securities and Exchange Commission.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">SUBCHAPTER XIII—INTERNATIONAL DEVELOPMENT ASSOCIATION</p> <p>284. Acceptance of membership by United States in International Development Association.<br/>284a. Governor, executive director, and alternates of Association.<br/>284b. National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Problems.<br/>284c. Congressional authorization needed for certain actions.<br/>284d. Federal Reserve banks as depositories.<br/>284e. Payment of subscription to Association by United States.<br/>(a) Authorization of appropriations for subscription.<br/>(b) Increase in Association resources; contribution; authorization of appropriations.<br/>(c) Issuance of special notes.<br/>(d) Income covered into Treasury.</p> <p>284f. Jurisdiction and venue of actions.<br/>284g. Status, privileges, and immunities of the United States.<br/>284h. Second replenishment; authorization of appropriations.<br/>284i. Third replenishment; authorization of appropriations.<br/>284j. Expropriation of United States property; loan restrictions.<br/>284k. Illegal drug traffic; loan restrictions.<br/>284l. Fourth replenishment; authorization of appropriations.<br/>284m. Repealed.<br/>284n. Fifth replenishment; authorization of appropriations.<br/>284o. Sixth replenishment; authorization of appropriations.<br/>284p. Seventh replenishment; authorization of appropriations.<br/>284q. Special Facility for Sub-Saharan Africa.<br/>284r. Eighth replenishment; authorization of appropriations.<br/>284s. Ninth replenishment.<br/>(a) In general.<br/>(b) Limitations on authorization of appropriations.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">SUBCHAPTER XIV—ASIAN DEVELOPMENT BANK</p> <p>285. Acceptance of membership by United States in Asian Development Bank.<br/>285a. Appointment of Governor, Alternate Governor and Director; compensation.<br/>285b. Coordination of policies and operations.</p> |
|--|--|

|   |   |                 |   |
|---|---|-----------------|---|
| Sec.  |   | Sec.            |   |
| 285c.   | Congressional authorization needed for certain actions.   | 286b-1, 286b-2. | Repealed.   |
| 285d.   | Federal Reserve banks as depositories.  | 286c.           | Congressional authorization needed for certain actions.   |
| 285e.   | Authorization of appropriations; income covered into Treasury.  | 286d.           | Federal Reserve banks as depositories.  |
| 285f.   | Jurisdiction and venue of actions.  | 286e.           | Payment of subscriptions to Fund and Bank by United States; issuance of special notes; income covered into Treasury.  |
| 285g.   | Status, immunities, and privileges.   | 286e-1.         | Increase in quota of United States and in capital stock of Bank; subscription to additional shares.   |
| 285h.   | Securities issued by Bank as exempt securities; suspension of exemption provisions; reports to and of Securities and Exchange Commission. | 286e-1a.        | Increase in capital stock of Bank.  |
| 285i.   | Authorization for payment of United States contribution; United States Special Resources.   | 286e-1b.        | Increase in quota of United States; authorization of appropriations.  |
| 285j.   | United States Special Resources.  | 286e-1c.        | Additional increase in quota of United States.  |
|   | (a) Development projects and programs.  | 286e-1d.        | Increase in capital stock of Bank; subscription to additional shares; authorization of appropriations.  |
|   | (b) Authorized uses.  | 286e-1e.        | Equivalent increase in quota of United States.  |
|   | (c) Eligible goods and services.  | 286e-1f.        | Additional increase in capital stock of Bank; subscription to additional shares; authorization of appropriations.   |
|   | (d) Repayment in dollars.   | 286e-1g.        | Additional increase in quota of United States; condition.   |
| 285k.   | Utilization of United States Special Resources.   | 286e-1h.        | Increase of subscription of stock; authority of United States Governor of Bank; authorization of appropriations.  |
| 285l.   | Letter of credit form for United States Special Resources.  | 286e-1i.        | Increase in United States quota; consultations with Congress.   |
| 285m.   | Withdrawal rights covering United States Special Resources.   | 286e-1j.        | Additional increase in capital stock of Bank; subscription to additional shares; authorization of appropriations.   |
| 285n.   | Authorization of appropriations to provide United States Special Resources.   | 286e-1k.        | Capital stock increase.   |
| 285o.   | Expropriation of United States property; loan restrictions.   |                 | (a) Increase authorized.  |
| 285p.   | Illegal drug traffic; loan restrictions.  |                 | (b) Authorization of appropriations.  |
| 285q.   | Subscription to additional shares; authorization of appropriations.   | 286e-1l.        | Quota increase.   |
| 285r.   | Contribution to special funds; authorization of appropriations.   | 286e-2.         | Loans to Fund.  |
| 285s.   | Additional subscription to shares; authorization of appropriations.   |                 | (a) Limitation; balance of payments and reserve position considerations.  |
| 285t.   | Additional contribution to special funds; authorization of appropriations.  |                 | (b) Authorization of appropriations; repayments available for loans to Fund.  |
| 285u.   | Additional contribution to special funds.   |                 | (c) Interest and charges covered into Treasury; additional authorization of appropriations for payment of charges for purchase of currencies or gold from Fund.   |
|   | (a) United States share.  |                 | (d) Amendment to Executive Directors' decision prohibited; conditions.  |
|   | (b) Authorization of appropriations; maximum available for certain years.   | 286e-3.         | Transfers to stabilization fund of purchase of currencies or gold from International Monetary Fund; administration; utilization of fund resources for repayments. |
|   | (c) Funding requirements.   | 286e-4.         | Loans to International Finance Corporation; amendment to Articles of Agreement.   |
| 285v.   | Sense of Congress respecting membership of Taiwan in Bank.  | 286e-5.         | Amendments to Articles of Agreement.  |
| 285w.   | Contribution to Asian Development Fund; authorization of appropriations.  | 286e-5a.        | Additional amendments to Articles of Agreement.   |
| 285x.   | Additional subscription to shares.  | 286e-5b.        | Acceptance of amendments to Articles of Agreement of the Fund.  |
|   | (a) United States share.  | 286e-6.         | Vote against establishment of Council.  |
|   | (b) Authorization of appropriations.  | 286e-7.         | Supplementary Financing Facility.   |
|   | (c) Continued membership of Republic of China in Bank.  |                 | (a) Availability of resources.  |
| 285y.   | Additional contribution to special funds; authorization of appropriations.  |                 | (b) Adjustments in the value of monetary assets.  |
| 285z.   | Additional contribution to special funds; authorization of appropriations.  |                 | (c) Authorization of appropriations.  |
| 285aa.  | Capital increase.   | 286e-8.         | Treatment of creditors in debt rescheduling.  |
|   | (a) Subscription authorized.  | 286e-9.         | Stabilization programs.   |
|   | (b) Limitations on authorization of appropriations.   | 286e-10.        | Repealed.   |
| SUBCHAPTER XV—INTERNATIONAL MONETARY FUND AND BANK FOR RECONSTRUCTION AND DEVELOPMENT |   | 286e-11.        | Assistance by the Fund to any country harboring international terrorists.   |
| 286.  | Acceptance of membership by United States in International Monetary Fund.   | 286e-12.        | Contribution to Interest Subsidy Account of Enhanced Structural Adjustment Facility of International Monetary Fund.   |
| 286a.   | Appointments.   |                 | (a) Contribution authorized.  |
|   | (a) Governors and executive directors; term of office.  |                 | (b) Limitation on authorization of appropriations.  |
|   | (b) Alternates; term of office.   | 286e-13.        | Approval of Fund pledge to sell gold to provide resources for Reserve Account of Enhanced Structural Adjustment Facility Trust.                                   |
|   | (c) Governor to serve as councillor; alternates and associates.   |                 |   |
|   | (d) Compensation for services.  |                 |   |
| 286b.   | National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Problems.   |                 |   |
|   | (a) Establishment and composition.  |                 |   |
|   | (b) Duties and functions; reports by Council.   |                 |   |
|   | (c) Reports to Council.   |                 |   |

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>Sec.<br/>286f. Obtaining and furnishing information to the Fund.<br/>    (a) Required disclosure.<br/>    (b) Penalty for refusal.<br/>    (c) Penalty for unlawful disclosures.<br/>    (d) "Person" defined.</p> <p>286g. Jurisdiction and venue of actions.</p> <p>286h. Status, privileges, and immunities of the United States.</p> <p>286i. Stabilization loans by Bank; amendment to Articles of Agreement.</p> <p>286j. Use of Fund resources.<br/>    (a) Official interpretation of authority of Fund.<br/>    (b) Proposal of amendment.</p> <p>286k. Further promotion of international economic relations.<br/>    (a) Congressional declaration of policy.<br/>    (b) Transmittal of information to Congressional committees.</p> <p>286k-1. Securities issued by Bank as exempt securities; reports filed with Security and Exchange Commission.</p> <p>286k-2. Suspension of right of International Bank to issue securities under section 286k-1; report of Securities and Exchange Commission.</p> <p>286l. British loan; authorization to Secretary of Treasury to carry out agreement.</p> <p>286m. Amount of loan; public-debt transaction; disposition of interest payments.</p> <p>286n. Special Drawing Rights.</p> <p>286o. Administration as part of the Exchange Stabilization Fund.<br/>    (a) Special Drawing Rights.<br/>    (b) Deposit in and withdrawal from Fund.</p> <p>286p. Issuance, purpose, and redemption of Special Drawing Rights certificates.</p> <p>286q. Limitation on allocations to the United States.</p> <p>286r. United States participation in special drawing account.</p> <p>286s. Consideration of basic human needs in economic adjustment programs supported by Fund.<br/>    (a) Formulation and design of programs.<br/>    (b) Changes in Fund guidelines, policies, and decisions; review prior to approval of standby arrangements; coordination among institutions; coordination between Fund and Bank; periodic analyses.</p> <p>286t. Omitted.</p> <p>286u. Dollar-Special Drawing Rights substitution account.</p> <p>286v. Membership for Taiwan in Fund.</p> <p>286w. Denial of membership or other status in Fund for Palestine Liberation Organization; United States participation in Fund if membership or other status granted; report by President to Congress.</p> <p>286x. Assistance to private sector of El Salvador, Nicaragua, and other nations.</p> <p>286y. Promoting conditions for exchange rate stability.</p> <p>286z. Collection and exchange of information on monetary and financial problems.<br/>    (a) Sense of Congress.<br/>    (b) Initiation by United States Executive Director of discussions with other Directors; adoption of procedures.<br/>    (c) "Credit" defined.<br/>    (d) Providing necessary information.</p> <p>286aa. Instructions to United States Executive Director; Communist dictatorships.</p> <p>286bb. Elimination of predatory agricultural export subsidies.</p> <p>286cc. Sustaining economic growth.<br/>    (a) Economic adjustment programs.<br/>    (b) Changes in Fund guidelines; limitations on debt service exceptions.</p> | <p>Sec.<br/>    (c) Emergencies and extraordinary circumstances.</p> <p>286dd. Fund bailouts of banks; rescheduling of debt.</p> <p>286ee. International cooperation.</p> <p>286ff. Fund interest rates.</p> <p>286gg. Elimination of trade restrictions.<br/>    (a) Promotion of fair trade as financial assistance policy.<br/>    (b) Agreement to eliminate unfair trade practices as condition of financial assistance.</p> <p>    (c) United States position on requests for loans or drawing under bank and Fund programs; progress made in eliminating unfair trade practices.</p> <p>    (d) "Multilateral development banks" defined.</p> <p>286hh. Policy based lending for debt reduction.<br/>    (a) Criteria.<br/>    (b) Policy based lending for debt reduction and sustainable growth.<br/>    (c) Voluntary market-based program for debt reduction and sustainable growth.<br/>    (d) Reports.<br/>    (e) Review by House Banking Committee.</p> <p>286ii. Limitations on Bank policy based lending; actions required to be taken to oppose excessive policy based lending by Bank.</p> <p>286jj. Partial guarantees in connection with debt reduction for borrower countries.</p> <p>286kk. Discussions to enhance capacity of Fund to alleviate potentially adverse impacts of Fund programs on poor and environment.</p> <p>286ll. Fund policy changes.<br/>    (a) Policy changes within IMF.<br/>    (b) Progress report.<br/>    (c) Study.</p> <p>286mm. Measures to reduce military spending by developing nations.<br/>    (a) Development by Fund of means to measure military spending.<br/>    (b) Annual reports by Fund on levels of military spending.<br/>    (c) Analysis and assessment of military spending to be included in article IV consultations by Fund.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">SUBCHAPTER XVI—UNITED NATIONS ORGANIZATION</p> <p>287. Representation in Organization.<br/>    (a) Appointment of representative; rank, status, and tenure; duties.<br/>    (b) Appointment of additional representatives; rank, status, and tenure; duties; reappointment unnecessary.<br/>    (c) Appointment of special and alternate representatives; number; senior representative; duties.<br/>    (d) Additional appointees; conditions governing certain appointments; designation of certain State Department officers to sit on Security Council.<br/>    (e) Appointment of representative to European office of United Nations; rank, status, and tenure; duties.<br/>    (f) Representation by President or Secretary of State.<br/>    (g) Compensation.<br/>    (h) Appointment of representative to Vienna office of United Nations; rank, status, and tenure; duties.</p> <p>287a. Action by representatives in accordance with Presidential instructions; voting.</p> <p>287b. Reports to Congress by President.<br/>    (a) Periodic reports.<br/>    (b) Transmittal of Security Council resolutions.</p> |
|---|--|



|   |   |   |  |
|---|---|---|--|
| Sec.  | (c) Reports on peacekeeping operations.<br>(d) Annual report.<br>(e) "Designated congressional committees" defined.   | Sec.<br>288b.                                     | Baggage and effects of officers and employees exempted from customs duties and internal revenue taxes.   |
| 287c.   | Economic and communication sanctions pursuant to United Nations Security Council Resolution.<br>(a) Enforcement measures; importation of Rhodesian chromium.<br>(b) Penalties.<br>(c) Steel mill products containing chromium; certificate of origin; regulations; subpoenas; certificate exemption; release from customs custody; definitions. | 288c.<br>288d.                                    | Exemption from property taxes.<br>Privileges, exemptions, and immunities of officers, employees, and their families; waiver.   |
| 287d.   | Use of armed forces; limitations.   | 288e.   | Personnel entitled to benefits.<br>(a) Notification to and acceptance by Secretary of State of personnel.<br>(b) Deportation of undesirables.<br>(c) Extent of diplomatic status.  |
| 287d-1.   | Noncombatant assistance to United Nations.<br>(a) Armed forces details; supplies and equipment; obligation of funds; procurement and replacement of requested items.<br>(b) Reimbursement from United Nations; waiver of reimbursement.<br>(c) Additional appropriation authorizations.<br>(d) Disclosure of information.                       | 288f.<br>288f-1.                                  | Applicability of reciprocity laws.<br>European Space Agency and Organization of Eastern Caribbean States; extension of privileges, exemptions, and immunities to members.  |
| 287e.   | Authorization of appropriations; payment of expenses.   | 288f-2.<br>288f-3.                                | Organization of African Unity; extension of privileges, exemptions, and immunities.<br>Immunities for International Committee of the Red Cross.  |
| 287e-1.   | Housing supplement for certain employees assigned to the United States Mission to the United Nations.   | 288f-4.   | International Union for Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources; extension of privileges, exemptions, and immunities.   |
| 287f.   | Omitted.  | 288g.   | Organization of American States; extension of privileges and immunities to members.  |
| 287g.   | Authorization of appropriations for loan to United Nations; restrictions on use of proceeds of loan.  | 288h.   | Commission of European Communities; extension of privileges and immunities to members.   |
| 287h.   | Limitation on loan.   | 288i.   | Liaison Office of the People's Republic of China; extension of privileges and immunities to members.   |
| 287i.   | Deduction of principal and interest from annual payment of assessed share of United States of budget.   | 288j.   | International Development Law Institute.   |
| 287j.   | Participation in future United Nations borrowing; promotion of pattern of financing to avoid future large-scale deficits; report to Congress.   | SUBCHAPTER XIX—INTERNATIONAL REFUGEE ORGANIZATION |  |
| 287k.   | Congressional expression of satisfaction that expenditures relating to operations in Middle East and in the Congo are "expenses of the Organization".   | 289.  | Acceptance of membership by the United States; conditions.   |
| 287l.   | Congressional declaration that United Nations take steps to give effect to advisory opinion of International Court of Justice on financial obligations of members.  | 289a.   | Designation of representative and alternates; compensation.  |
| SUBCHAPTER XVII—UNITED NATIONS EDUCATIONAL, SCIENTIFIC, AND CULTURAL ORGANIZATION |   | 289b.   | Authorization of appropriations; payment of salaries and expenses.   |
| 287m.   | Acceptance of membership by the United States.  | 289c.   | Transfer of funds; furnishing supplies and services; accounting for reimbursements.  |
| 287n.   | Representatives in General Conference; number; citizenship; compensation.   | 289d.   | Omitted.   |
| 287o.   | National Commission on Educational, Scientific, and Cultural Cooperation; membership; meetings; expenses.   | SUBCHAPTER XX—WORLD HEALTH ORGANIZATION           |  |
| 287p.   | Citizenship of members.   | 290.  | Acceptance of membership by the United States.   |
| 287q.   | General and special conferences; expenses; acceptance of services and gifts or bequests of money or materials.  | 290a.   | Designation of representatives and alternates; compensation; loyalty checkup.  |
| 287r.   | Authorization of appropriations; payment of expenses.   | 290b.   | Authorization of appropriations; payment of salaries and expenses.   |
| 287s.   | Amendments to constitution of Organization involving new obligations.   | 290c.   | Withdrawal from Organization on one-year notice.   |
| 287t.   | Prohibition against disclosure of information or knowledge.   | 290d.   | Enactment of specific legislation by Congress.   |
| SUBCHAPTER XVIII—PRIVILEGES AND IMMUNITIES OF INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATIONS         |   | 290e.   | Congressional declaration of policy.   |
| 288.  | "International organization" defined; authority of President.   | 290e-1.   | International Agency for Research on Cancer; authorization of appropriations; limitation.  |
| 288a.   | Privileges, exemptions, and immunities of international organizations.  | SUBCHAPTER XXI—INTER-AMERICAN FOUNDATION          |  |
|   |   | 290f.   | Inter-American Foundation.<br>(a) Establishment.<br>(b) Congressional declaration of purpose.<br>(c) Programs and projects to achieve purposes.<br>(d) Coordination of activities with national and international agencies.<br>(e) Powers and functions.<br>(f) Disposal of assets on liquidation.<br>(g) Board of directors; number, term, and appointment.<br>(h) Reimbursement of expenses.<br>(i) Board; authority.<br>(j) Rules and regulations; quorum of the Board. |

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>Sec.</p> <p>(k) Authority of the Board to appoint committees.</p> <p>(l) President of Foundation: appointment and compensation; employment of experts and consultants.</p> <p>(m) Establishment of Council; consultation by the Board; reimbursement of expenses of members of the Council.</p> <p>(n) Nonprofit nature of the Foundation; conflict of interests.</p> <p>(o) Personnel; service in foreign governments or agencies.</p> <p>(p) Service of employees of other agencies in the Foundation; rights and privileges.</p> <p>(q) Establishment of principal and branch offices.</p> <p>(r) Exemption from tax.</p> <p>(s) Authorization of appropriations.</p> <p>(t) Application of chapter 91 of title 31.</p> <p>(u) Interest on funds invested pending disbursement.</p> <p>(v) Travel expenses.</p> <p>(w) Printing expenses.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">SUBCHAPTER XXII—AFRICAN DEVELOPMENT FUND</p> <p>290g. African Development Fund; United States participation.</p> <p>290g-1. Appointment of Governor and Alternate Governor; rank, duties, and compensation.</p> <p>290g-2. Law governing reports to the President and the Congress.</p> <p>290g-3. Specific actions requiring Congressional authorization.</p> <p>290g-4. Authorization of appropriations; repayments and distributions from Fund to Treasury.</p> <p>290g-5. Federal Reserve banks as depository for the Fund; supervision.</p> <p>290g-6. Civil action by or against the Fund; service of process, venue, jurisdiction, removal of actions.</p> <p>290g-7. Force and effect of agreement; deposit of documents by the President; reservation of right to tax salaries and emoluments paid by the Fund to United States citizens or nationals.</p> <p>290g-8. Presidential instructions to United States Governor of the Fund to veto any use of funds to benefit a country pursuing a detrimental economic policy against United States interests; exceptions.</p> <p>290g-9. Repealed.</p> <p>290g-10. Additional authorization for contribution to African Development Fund.</p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;">(a) Payment of United States contribution; review of payment and voting structure with other donor nations.</p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;">(b) Authorization of appropriations.</p> <p>290g-11. Additional authorization for payment of United States contribution.</p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;">(a) United States share.</p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;">(b) Authorization of appropriations.</p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;">(c) Funding requirements.</p> <p>290g-12. Additional authorization for payment of United States contribution.</p> <p>290g-13. Additional authorization for payment of United States contribution.</p> <p>290g-14. Additional authorization for payment of United States contribution.</p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;">(a) Contribution authorized.</p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;">(b) Authorization of appropriations.</p> <p>290g-15. Sixth replenishment.</p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;">(a) Contribution authorized.</p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;">(b) Limitations on authorization of appropriations.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">SUBCHAPTER XXIII—AFRICAN DEVELOPMENT FOUNDATION</p> <p>290h. Congressional findings.</p> | <p>Sec.</p> <p>290h-1. African Development Foundation.</p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;">(a) Establishment of Foundation.</p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;">(b) Principal and branch offices.</p> <p>290h-2. Congressional declaration of purposes.</p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;">(a) Purposes of Foundation.</p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;">(b) Implementation.</p> <p>290h-3. Functions of Foundation.</p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;">(a) Types of programs; project limitations; dissemination of project insights.</p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;">(b) Community project priorities; disbursement of funds by recipients to other African entities.</p> <p>290h-4. Powers of Foundation.</p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;">(a) General provisions.</p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;">(b) Nonprofit entity; restriction on use of moneys; conflict of interests.</p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;">(c) Tax exemption.</p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;">(d) Termination of Foundation and liquidation of assets.</p> <p>290h-5. Management of Foundation.</p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;">(a) Board of directors; membership; designation of Chairperson and Vice Chairperson; appointment considerations; term; vacancies.</p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;">(b) Compensation, actual, necessary, and transportation expenses.</p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;">(c) Quorum.</p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;">(d) President of Foundation; appointment and compensation; employment of experts and consultants.</p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;">(e) Advisory council; membership; appointment considerations; consultations with council; compensation, travel, and other expenses.</p> <p>290h-6. Government corporation control provisions applicable.</p> <p>290h-7. Limitation on spending authority.</p> <p>290h-8. Authorization of appropriations.</p> <p>290h-9. Repealed.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">SUBCHAPTER XXIV—AFRICAN DEVELOPMENT BANK</p> <p>290i. Acceptance of membership.</p> <p>290i-1. Governor and Alternate Governor.</p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;">(a) Appointment; term; termination and reappointment.</p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;">(b) Compensation and expenses.</p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;">(c) Voting.</p> <p>290i-2. Director or Alternate Director; allowances.</p> <p>290i-3. Applicability of Bretton Woods Agreements Act.</p> <p>290i-4. Restrictions.</p> <p>290i-5. Federal Reserve banks as depositories.</p> <p>290i-6. Subscription to stock.</p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;">(a) Authorization of United States subscription to stock.</p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;">(b) Authorization of appropriations.</p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;">(c) Distributions by Bank.</p> <p>290i-7. Jurisdiction of United States courts.</p> <p>290i-8. Force and effect of agreement.</p> <p>290i-9. Securities issued by Bank; Securities and Exchange Commission oversight.</p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;">(a) Treatment as exempt securities; reports to Securities and Exchange Commission.</p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;">(b) Suspension of provisions; reports to Congress.</p> <p>290i-10. Authorization of United States subscription to stock; authorization of appropriations.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">SUBCHAPTER XXV—UNITED STATES-INDIA FUND FOR CULTURAL, EDUCATIONAL, AND SCIENTIFIC COOPERATION</p> <p>290j. Establishment of the Fund.</p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;">(a) Agreement with Government of India; program purposes.</p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;">(b) United States representatives.</p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;">(c) Funding of programs.</p> |
|--|--|

- Sec.  
290j-1. Use of United States owned rupees to capitalize the Fund.
- SUBCHAPTER XXVI—MULTILATERAL INVESTMENT GUARANTEE AGENCY
- 290k. Acceptance of membership.  
290k-1. Governor and Alternate Governor.  
290k-2. Instructions for United States Director.  
290k-3. Opposition to certain guarantees or investment promotions; independent evaluation of guaranteed investments.  
290k-4. Consultation with representatives of private sector and of labor organizations on Agency policy directions and operations.  
290k-5. Applicability of Bretton Woods Agreements Act.  
290k-6. Restrictions.  
290k-7. Federal Reserve banks as depositories.  
290k-8. Subscription of stock.  
(a) Authority of Secretary of the Treasury.  
(b) Authorization of appropriations.  
(c) Dividends deposited into Treasury.  
290k-9. Jurisdiction of United States courts and enforcement of arbitral awards.  
290k-10. Effectiveness of Convention.  
290k-11. Arbitral awards; enforcement; full faith and credit; Federal Arbitration Act inapplicable; exclusiveness of district court jurisdiction.
- SUBCHAPTER XXVII—EUROPEAN BANK FOR RECONSTRUCTION AND DEVELOPMENT
- 290l. Acceptance of membership.  
290l-1. Governor and alternate Governor.  
(a) Appointment.  
(b) Compensation.  
290l-2. Applicability of certain provisions of Bretton Woods Agreements Act.  
290l-3. Federal Reserve banks as depositories.  
290l-4. Subscription of stock.  
(a) Subscription authority.  
(b) Limitations on authorization of appropriations.  
(c) Disposition of net income distributions by Bank.  
290l-5. Jurisdiction and venue of civil actions by or against Bank.  
(a) Jurisdiction.  
(b) Venue.  
290l-6. Effectiveness of Agreement.  
290l-7. Exemption from securities laws for certain securities issued by Bank; reports required.  
(a) Exemption from securities laws; reports to Securities and Exchange Commission.  
(b) Authority of Securities and Exchange Commission to suspend exemption; reports to Congress.  
290l-8. Congressional consultations.
- SUBCHAPTER XXVIII—NORTH AMERICAN DEVELOPMENT BANK AND RELATED PROVISIONS
- 290m. North American Development Bank.  
(a) Acceptance of membership.  
(b) Subscription of stock.  
(c) Compensation of Board members.  
(d) Applicability of Bretton Woods Agreements Act.  
(e) Restrictions.  
(f) Federal Reserve banks as depositories.  
(g) Jurisdiction of United States courts and enforcement of arbitral awards.  
(h) Exemption from securities laws for certain securities issued by Bank; reports required.  
290m-1. Status, immunities, and privileges.  
290m-2. Community adjustment and investment program.

- Sec.  
(a) The President.  
(b) Advisory Committee.  
(c) Ombudsman.  
(d) Reporting requirement.  
290m-3. "Border Environment Cooperation Agreement" defined.
- SUBCHAPTER XXIX—UNITED STATES-MEXICO BORDER HEALTH COMMISSION
- 290n. Establishment of Border Health Commission.  
290n-1. Duties.  
290n-2. Other authorized functions.  
290n-3. Membership.  
(a) Number and appointment of United States section.  
(b) Commissioner.  
(c) Compensation.  
290n-4. Regional offices.  
290n-5. Reports.  
290n-6. Definitions.

### § 261. Policy as to settlement of disputes and disarmament

It is declared to be the policy of the United States to adjust and settle its international disputes through mediation or arbitration, to the end that war may be honorably avoided. It looks with apprehension and disfavor upon a general increase of armament throughout the world, but it realizes that no single nation can disarm, and that without a common agreement upon the subject every considerable power must maintain a relative standing in military strength.

(Aug. 29, 1916, ch. 417, 39 Stat. 618.)

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1977 AMENDMENT

Section 1 of Pub. L. 95-118, as added by Pub. L. 97-35, title XIII, §1361(a), Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 745, provided that: "This Act [enacting sections 262c, 262d, 262e to 262g-3, 282i, 284n, 285s, 285t, 286e-1f, and 290-10 of this title, repealing sections 283y, 284m, and 290g-9 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under 262c and 282i of this title] may be cited as the 'International Financial Institutions Act'."

### § 262. President's participation in international congresses restricted

The Executive shall not extend or accept any invitation to participate in any international congress, conference, or like event, without first having specific authority of law to do so.

(Mar. 4, 1913, ch. 149, 37 Stat. 913.)

### § 262a. Contributions to international organizations; consent of State Department; reports to Congress; limitations as to certain organizations

All financial contributions by the United States to the normal operations of the international organizations covered by this Act, which member states are obligated to support annually, shall be limited to the amounts provided in this Act: *Provided*, That contributions for special projects not regularly budgeted by such international organizations shall not be subject to the above limitation.

All financial contributions by the United States to international organizations in which the United States participates as a member shall be made by or with the consent of the Department of State regardless of the appropria-

tion from which any such contribution is made. The Secretary of State shall report annually to the Congress on the extent and disposition of such contributions.

(Sept. 21, 1950, ch. 976, §2, 64 Stat. 903.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, is act Sept. 21, 1950, ch. 976, 64 Stat. 903, which enacted section 262a of this title, and amended sections 269b, 272a, 279a, 280b, 290b of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

The international organizations covered by this Act, referred to in text, are the Inter-American Children's Institute, the International Labor Organization, the United Nations Food and Agriculture Organization, the South Pacific Commission, and the World Health Organization.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2226 of this title.

### § 262b. Commitments for United States contributions to international organizations; limitations; consultation with Congressional committees

No representative of the United States Government in any international organization hereafter shall make any commitment requiring the appropriation of funds for a contribution by the United States in excess of 33½ per centum of the budget of any international organization for which the appropriation for the United States contribution is contained in this Act: *Provided*, That in exceptional circumstances necessitating a contribution by the United States in excess of 33½ per centum of the budget, a commitment requiring a United States appropriation of a larger proportion may be made after consultation by United States representatives in the organization or other appropriate officials of the Department of State with the Committees on Appropriations of the Senate and House of Representatives: *Provided, however*, That this section shall not apply to the United States representatives to the Inter-American organizations, Caribbean Commission and the Joint Support program of the International Civil Aviation Organization.

(Oct. 22, 1951, ch. 533, title VI, §602, 65 Stat. 599; July 10, 1952, ch. 651, title I, 66 Stat. 550; Aug. 5, 1953, ch. 328, title I, 67 Stat. 368.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, is a composite of acts Oct. 22, 1951, and July 10, 1952, and means act Oct. 22, 1951, ch. 533, title VI, 65 Stat. 599, popularly known as the Departments of State, Justice, Commerce and Judiciary Appropriation Act of 1952, and act July 10, 1952, ch. 651, title I, 66 Stat. 550, popularly known as the Departments of State, Justice, Commerce, and Judiciary Appropriation Act of 1953. For complete classification of these Acts to the Code, see Tables.

#### CODIFICATION

Provisions of this section which prohibited representatives of the United States Government to any international organization of which the United States was not a member in 1952 from making any commitment requiring the appropriation of funds for a contribution by the United States in excess of 33½ percent of the budget of such international organization, which provisions were from the Departments of State, Justice, Commerce, and Judiciary Appropriation Act, 1953, were

omitted since they were not repeated in subsequent appropriation acts.

This section is a composite of several Departments of State, Justice, Commerce, and Judiciary Appropriation acts. See References in Text note above.

#### AMENDMENTS

1953—Act Aug. 5, 1953, inserted proviso that this section is not to apply to the United States representatives to the Caribbean Commission and the Joint Support program of the International Civil Aviation Organization.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 16 sections 773j, 3641, 5709.

### § 262c. Commitments for United States contributions to international financial institutions fostering economic development in less developed countries; continuation of participation

#### (a) Congressional findings

It is the sense of the Congress that—

(1) for humanitarian, economic, and political reasons, it is in the national interest of the United States to assist in fostering economic development in the less developed countries of this world;

(2) the development-oriented international financial institutions have proved themselves capable of playing a significant role in assisting economic development by providing to less developed countries access to capital and technical assistance and soliciting from them maximum self-help and mutual cooperation;

(3) this has been achieved with minimal risk of financial loss to contributing countries;

(4) such institutions have proved to be an effective mechanism for sharing the burden among developed countries of stimulating economic development in the less developed world; and

(5) although continued United States participation in the international financial institutions is an important part of efforts by the United States to assist less developed countries, more of this burden should be shared by other developed countries. As a step in that direction, in future negotiations, the United States should work toward aggregate contributions to future replenishments to international financial institutions covered by this Act not to exceed 25 per centum.

#### (b) Funding commitments to international financial institutions; availability of funds subject to appropriations

The Congress recognizes that economic development is a long-term process needing funding commitments to international financial institutions. It also notes that the availability of funds for the United States contribution to international financial institutions is subject to the appropriations process.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title I, §101, Oct. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 1067.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(5), is Pub. L. 95-118, Oct. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 1067, as amended, which enacted sections 262c, 262d, 262e to 262g-3, 282i, 284n, 285s,

285t, 286e–1f, and 290g–10 of this title, repealed sections 283y, 284m, and 290g–9 of this title, and enacted provisions set out as notes under sections 262c and 282i of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1977 Amendment note set out under section 261 of this title and Tables.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 3, 1977, see section 1001 of Pub. L. 95–118, set out as a note under section 282i of this title.

#### FUTURE UNITED STATES CONTRIBUTIONS TO THE INTERNATIONAL FINANCIAL INSTITUTIONS

Pub. L. 96–536, § 101(b) [H.J. Res. 637, § 101(b); H.R. 4473, title I], Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3167, provided in part that: “It is the sense of the Congress that the United States share of contributions to future replenishments of the International Financial Institutions should not exceed the percentages enumerated below for each of the respective accounts within these institutions:

- “Asian Development Bank:
  - “Paid-in capital, 16.3 percent;
  - “Callable capital, 16.3 percent;
  - “Asian Development Fund, 22.2 percent;
- “African Development Bank:
  - “Special Fund, 18 percent;
- “Inter-American Development Bank:
  - “Paid-in capital, 34.5 percent;
  - “Callable capital, 34.5 percent;
  - “Fund for Special Operations, 40 percent;
- “International Bank for Reconstruction and Development:
  - “Paid-in capital, 24 percent;
  - “Callable capital, 24 percent;
- “International Development Association, 25 percent;
- “International Finance Corporation, 23 percent.”

Similar provisions were contained in the following appropriation acts:

- Pub. L. 96–123, § 101(a) [incorporating Pub. L. 95–481, title III], Nov. 20, 1979, 93 Stat. 923.
- Pub. L. 95–481, title III, Oct. 18, 1978, 92 Stat. 1599.
- Pub. L. 95–148, title III, Oct. 31, 1977, 91 Stat. 1238.

#### STANDARDS FOR HUMAN NEEDS AND PROTECTION OF HUMAN RIGHTS; CONSULTATION FOR DEVELOPMENT OF CRITERIA; REPORT TO CONGRESS

Section 703 of Pub. L. 95–118 provided that:

“(a) The Secretary of State and the Secretary of the Treasury shall initiate a wide consultation designed to develop a viable standard for the meeting of basic human needs and the protection of human rights and a mechanism for acting together to insure that the rewards of international economic cooperation are especially available to those who subscribe to such standards and are seen to be moving toward making them effective in their own systems of governance.

“(b) Not later than one year after the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 3, 1977], the Secretary of State and the Secretary of the Treasury shall report to the President of the Senate and the Speaker of the House of Representatives on the progress made in carrying out this section.”

#### § 262d. Human rights and United States assistance policies with international financial institutions

##### (a) Policy goals

The United States Government, in connection with its voice and vote in the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, the International Development Association, the International Finance Corporation, the Inter-American Development Bank, the African Development Fund, the Asian Development Bank, the African Development Bank, the European

Bank for Reconstruction and Development, and the International Monetary Fund, shall advance the cause of human rights, including by seeking to channel assistance toward countries other than those whose governments engage in—

(1) a pattern of gross violations of internationally recognized human rights, such as torture or cruel, inhumane, or degrading treatment or punishment, prolonged detention without charges, or other flagrant denial to life, liberty, and the security of person; or

(2) provide refuge to individuals committing acts of international terrorism by hijacking aircraft.

##### (b) Policy considerations for Executive Directors of institutions in implementation of duties

Further, the Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct each Executive Director of the above institutions to consider in carrying out his duties:

(1) specific actions by either the executive branch or the Congress as a whole on individual bilateral assistance programs because of human rights considerations;

(2) the extent to which the economic assistance provided by the above institutions directly benefit the needy people in the recipient country;

(3) whether the recipient country—

(A) is seeking to acquire unsafeguarded special nuclear material (as defined in section 830(8) of the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention Act of 1994) or a nuclear explosive device (as defined in section 830(4) of that Act);

(B) is not a State Party to the Treaty on the Non-Proliferation of Nuclear Weapons; or

(C) has detonated a nuclear explosive device; and

(4) in relation to assistance for the Socialist Republic of Vietnam, the People’s Democratic Republic of Laos, Russia and the other independent states of the former Soviet Union (as defined in section 5801 of this title), and Democratic Kampuchea (Cambodia), the responsiveness of the governments of such countries in providing a more substantial accounting of Americans missing in action.

##### (c) Reporting requirements

(1) Not later than 30 days after the end of each calendar quarter, the Secretary of the Treasury shall report quarterly on all loans considered by the Boards of Executive Directors of the institutions listed in subsection (a) of this section to the Chairman and ranking minority member of the Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of the House of Representatives, or the designees of such Chairman and ranking minority member, and the Chairman and ranking minority member of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate.

(2) Each report required by paragraph (1) shall—

(A) include a list of all loans considered by the Board<sup>1</sup> of Executive Directors of the institutions listed in subsection (a) of this section

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be “Boards”.

and shall specify with respect to each such loan—

- (i) the institution involved;
- (ii) the date of final action;
- (iii) the borrower;
- (iv) the amount;
- (v) the project or program;
- (vi) the vote of the United States Government;
- (vii) the reason for United States Government opposition, if any;
- (viii) the final disposition of the loan; and
- (ix) if the United States Government opposed the loan, whether the loan meets basic human needs;

(B) indicate whether the United States has opposed any loan, financial assistance, or technical assistance to a country on human rights grounds;

(C) indicate whether the United States has voted in favor of a loan, financial assistance, or technical assistance to a country with respect to which the United States had, in the preceding 2 years, opposed a loan, financial assistance, or technical assistance on human rights grounds; and

(D) in cases where the United States changed its voting position from opposition to support or from support to opposition, on human rights grounds—

- (i) indicate the policy considerations that were taken into account in the development of the United States voting position;
- (ii) describe human rights conditions in the country involved;
- (iii) indicate how the United States voted on all other loans, financial assistance, and technical assistance to such country during the preceding 2 years; and
- (iv) contain information as to how the United States voting position relates to the overall United States Government policy on human rights in such country.

**(d) Requirements of United States assistance through institutions for projects in recipient countries**

The United States Government, in connection with its voice and vote in the institutions listed in subsection (a) of this section, shall seek to channel assistance to projects which address basic human needs of the people of the recipient country.

**(e) Criteria for determination of gross violations of internationally recognized human rights standards**

In determining whether a country is in gross violation of internationally recognized human rights standards, as defined by the provisions of subsection (a) of this section, the United States Government shall give consideration to the extent of cooperation of such country in permitting an unimpeded investigation of alleged violations of internationally recognized human rights by appropriate international organizations including, but not limited to, the International Committee of the Red Cross, Amnesty International, the International Commission of Jurists, and groups or persons acting under the authority of the United Nations or the Organization of American States.

**(f) Opposition by United States Executive Directors of institutions to financial or technical assistance to violating countries**

The United States Executive Directors of the institutions listed in subsection (a) of this section are authorized and instructed to oppose any loan, any extension of financial assistance, or any technical assistance to any country described in subsection (a)(1) or (2) of this section, unless such assistance is directed specifically to programs which serve the basic human needs of the citizens of such country.

**(g) Consultative and additional reporting requirements**

The Secretary of the Treasury or his delegate shall consult frequently and in a timely manner with the chairmen and ranking minority members of the Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of the House of Representatives and of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate to inform them regarding any prospective changes in policy direction toward countries which have or recently have had poor human rights records.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title VII, § 701, Oct. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 1069; Pub. L. 96-259, title V, § 501(a), (b), June 3, 1980, 94 Stat. 431, 432; Pub. L. 97-35, title XIII, § 1342(b), Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 743; Pub. L. 97-375, title II, § 211, Dec. 21, 1982, 96 Stat. 1826; Pub. L. 98-181, title X, § 1004, Nov. 30, 1983, 97 Stat. 1286; Pub. L. 101-240, title V, § 541(c), (d)(4), (e)(8), Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2517-2519; Pub. L. 101-513, title V, § 562(b)(2), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2034; Pub. L. 102-511, title X, § 1008, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3361; Pub. L. 103-236, title VIII, § 823(b), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 512.)

AMENDMENT OF SECTION

*For termination of amendment by section 851 of Pub. L. 103-236, see Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note below.*

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 830 of the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention Act of 1994, referred to in subsec. (b)(3)(A), is section 830 of Pub. L. 103-236 which is set out in the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention; Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note under section 3201 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 103-236 temporarily amended par. (3) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (3) read as follows: “whether the recipient country has detonated a nuclear device or is not a State Party to the Treaty on Nonproliferation of Nuclear Weapons or both; and”. See Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note below.

1992—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 102-511, § 1008(a), substituted “the African Development Bank, the European Bank for Reconstruction and Development, and the International Monetary Fund,” for “and the African Development Bank,”.

Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 102-511, § 1008(b), inserted “Russia and the other independent states of the former Soviet Union (as defined in section 5801 of this title),” after “Laos,”.

1990—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 101-513 struck out “(2)” before “The Secretary” and substituted “of the Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of the House of Representatives and of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate” for “specified in paragraph (1)”.

1989—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 101-240, § 541(c), amended subsec. (c) generally, substituting provisions relating

to quarterly reports by Secretary of the Treasury not later than 30 days after end of each calendar quarter for provisions relating to annual reports by Secretaries of State and the Treasury, and quarterly reports by Secretary of the Treasury.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 101-240, § 541(e)(8), struck out at end “The annual report required under subsection (c) of this section shall include a listing of categories of such assistance granted, with particular attention to categories that address basic human needs.”

Subsec. (g)(1). Pub. L. 101-240, § 541(d)(4), struck out par. (1) which related to quarterly reporting requirements by Secretary of the Treasury in consultation with Secretary of State.

1983—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 98-181 substituted “pattern” for “consistent pattern”.

Subsec. (g)(1). Pub. L. 98-181 substituted “Not later than thirty days after the end of each calendar quarter, the Secretary of the Treasury, in consultation with the Secretary of State, shall report.” for “The Secretary of the Treasury, in consultation with the Secretary of State, shall report quarterly”.

1982—Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 97-375 inserted “excluding section 262e of this title and”.

1981—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 97-35 inserted reference to the African Development Bank.

1980—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 96-259, § 501(a), designated existing provisions as par. (1) and added par. (2).

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 96-259, § 501(b), added subsec. (g).

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Banking and Financial Services of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### EFFECTIVE AND TERMINATION DATES OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103-236 effective 60 days after Apr. 30, 1994, and ceases to be effective and is repealed on date of enactment of first Foreign Relations Authorization Act enacted after Apr. 30, 1994, and any provision repealed by that amendment shall be reenacted, see sections 831 and 851 of Pub. L. 103-236, set out in the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention; Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note under section 3201 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1989 AMENDMENT

Section 801 of Pub. L. 101-240 provided that: “Except as otherwise provided in this Act, this Act and the amendments made by this Act [enacting sections 262m-7, 262p-4g to 262p-4k, 262r to 262r-2, 262s-1, 262t, 283z-5 to 283z-8, 286e-12, 286kk, and 2281 to 2286 of this title and section 3904a of Title 12, Banks and Banking, amending this section, sections 262m-7, 262p-1, 262p-5, 262s-2, 282b, 283b, 283cc, 284b, 285b, 286b, 286e-9, 286k-1, 286s, 290g-2, 290i-3, and 290k-5 of this title, and sections 635 and 635i-3 of Title 12, transferring former section 262q of this title to section 262s of this title and former section 4722 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, to section 262s-2 of this title, repealing sections 262i, 262m-6, 276c-3, 283i, 286b-1, and 286b-2 of this title, enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 283z-6, 2151, and 2291 of this title and sections 635, 3901, and 3904a of Title 12, amending provisions set out as a note under section 262l of this title, and repealing provisions set out as notes under sections 262g-2 and 283 of this title] shall take effect on the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 19, 1989].”

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1981 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 97-35 effective Aug. 13, 1981, see section 1372 of Pub. L. 97-35, set out as an Effective Date note under section 290i of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 3, 1977, see section 1001 of Pub. L. 95-118, set out as a note under section 282i of this title.

#### CONSULTATIONS FOR ADOPTION OF AMENDMENT TO ARTICLES OF AGREEMENT RESPECTING HUMAN RIGHTS STANDARDS IN CONNECTION WITH ANY APPLICATION FOR ASSISTANCE

Pub. L. 95-118, title VII, § 705, as added by Pub. L. 96-259, title V, § 501(c), June 3, 1980, 94 Stat. 432, provided that: “The President shall direct the United States Governor of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, the United States Governor of the International Finance Corporation, the United States Governor of the International Development Association, the United States Governor of the Inter-American Development Bank, the United States Governor of the Asian Development Bank, and the United States Governor of the African Development Fund, to consult with the other Governors of those institutions concerning adoption of an amendment to the Articles of Agreement of their respective institutions to establish human rights standards to be considered in connection with each application for assistance.”

#### AMENDMENT OF ARTICLES OF AGREEMENT OF INTERNATIONAL FINANCIAL INSTITUTIONS; ESTABLISHMENT OF HUMAN RIGHTS STANDARDS TO BE CONSIDERED IN CONNECTION WITH ASSISTANCE APPLICATION

Pub. L. 95-481, title VI, § 611, Oct. 18, 1978, 92 Stat. 1602, provided that: “The President shall direct the United States Governor of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, the United States Governor of the International Finance Corporation, the United States Governor of the International Development Association, the United States Governor of the Inter-American Development Bank, the United States Governor of the Asian Development Bank, and the United States Governor of the African Development Fund, to propose and seek adoption of an amendment to the Articles of Agreement for their respective institutions to establish human rights standards to be considered in connection with each application for assistance.”

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Denial of international development assistance to countries violating human rights, see section 2151n of this title.

Implementation of United States policy opposing the practice of torture by foreign governments, see Pub. L. 98-447, set out as a note under section 2656 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 262r, 2799aa-1, 5605 of this title.

#### § 262d-1. Congressional statement of policy of human rights and United States assistance policies with international institutions

It is the sense of the Congress that, where other means have proven ineffective in promoting international human rights, and except where the President determines that the cause of international human rights is served more effectively by actions other than voting against such assistance or where the assistance is directed to programs that serve the basic needs of the impoverished majority of the country in question, United States representatives to the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, the International Development Association, the African Development Fund, the Asian Development Bank, and the Inter-American Development Bank should oppose loans and

other financial or technical assistance to any country that persists in a systematic pattern of gross violations of fundamental human rights.

(Pub. L. 95-148, title V, §507, Oct. 31, 1977, 91 Stat. 1240.)

**§ 262e. Comparability of salaries and benefits of employees of international financial institutions with employees of American private business and governmental service**

The President shall direct the United States Executive Directors of such international financial institutions to take all appropriate actions to keep the salaries and benefits of the employees of such institutions to levels comparable to salaries and benefits of employees of private business and the United States Government in comparable positions.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title VII, §704, Oct. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 1071.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 3, 1977, see section 1001 of Pub. L. 95-118, set out as a note under section 282i of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 262r of this title.

**§ 262f. Promotion of development and utilization of light capital technologies and United States assistance policies with international financial institutions**

The United States Government, in connection with its voice and vote in the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, the International Development Association, the International Finance Corporation, the Inter-American Development Bank, the African Development Fund, the Asian Development Bank, and the African Development Bank, shall promote the development and utilization of light capital technologies, otherwise known as intermediate, appropriate, or village technologies, by such international institutions as major facets of their development strategies, with major emphasis on the production and conservation of energy through light capital technologies.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title VIII, §801, Oct. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 1071; Pub. L. 97-35, title XIII, §§1342(c), 1371(b)(1), Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 743, 746.)

AMENDMENTS

1981—Pub. L. 97-35 redesignated subsec. (a) as entire section, inserted reference to African Development Bank, and struck out subsec. (b) which related to an annual report to Congress on progress toward achieving goals of this section.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1981 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 97-35 effective Aug. 13, 1981, see section 1372 of Pub. L. 97-35, set out as an Effective Date note under section 290i of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 3, 1977, see section 1001 of Pub. L. 95-118, set out as a note under section 282i of this title.

**§ 262g. Human nutrition in developing countries and United States assistance policies with international financial institutions; declaration of policy**

The Congress declares it to be the policy of the United States, in connection with its voice and vote in the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, the International Development Association, the International Finance Corporation, the Inter-American Development Bank, the African Development Fund, the Asian Development Fund, and the Asian Development Bank, to combat hunger and malnutrition and to encourage economic development in the developing countries, with emphasis on assistance to those countries that are determined to improve their own agricultural production, by seeking to channel assistance for agriculturally related development to projects that would aid in fulfilling domestic food and nutrition needs and in alleviating hunger and malnutrition in the recipient country. The United States representatives to the institutions named in this section shall oppose any loan or other financial assistance for establishing or expanding production for export of palm oil, sugar, or citrus crops if such loan or assistance will cause injury to United States producers of the same, similar, or competing agricultural commodity.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title IX, §901, Oct. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 1071; Pub. L. 97-35, title XIII, §1371(b)(2), Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 746.)

AMENDMENTS

1981—Pub. L. 97-35 redesignated subsec. (a) as entire section and struck out subsec. (b) which related to an annual report to Congress on the progress towards achieving the goals of this section.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1981 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 97-35 effective Aug. 13, 1981, see section 1372 of Pub. L. 97-35, set out as an Effective Date note under section 290i of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 3, 1977, see section 1001 of Pub. L. 95-118, set out as a note under section 282i of this title.

**§ 262g-1. Targeting assistance to specific populations**

**(a) Congressional findings**

The Congress finds that there is a need for concerted international efforts to deal with the problems of malnutrition, low life expectancy, childhood disease, underemployment, and low productivity in developing countries.

**(b) Assistance to poorest populations**

The Congress notes with approval that the Inter-American Development Bank, under the terms of its Fifth Replenishment, has adopted the target that 50 percent of its lending benefit the poorest groups and has developed a usable methodology for determining the proportion of its lending which benefits such groups.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XI, §1101, as added Pub. L. 97-35, title XIII, §1361(b), Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 745.)



## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Aug. 13, 1981, see section 1372 of Pub. L. 97-35, set out as a note under section 2901 of this title.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 262g-2 of this title.

**§ 262g-2. Establishment of guidelines for international financial institutions**

**(a) Consultation with representatives of member countries**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall consult with representatives of other member countries of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, the International Development Association, the Asian Development Bank, the African Development Fund, and the African Development Bank (if the United States becomes a member of that Bank), for the purpose of establishing guidelines within each of those institutions which specify that, in a manner consistent with the purposes and charters of those institutions, a specified proportion of the annual lending by each institution shall be designed to benefit needy people, primarily by financing sound, efficient, productive, self-sustaining projects designed to benefit needy people in developing countries, thus helping poor people improve their conditions of life.

**(b) Congressional findings regarding implementation of objectives**

The Congress finds that projects to construct basic infrastructure, to expand productive capacity (including private enterprise), and to address social problems can all meet the objectives of this section if they are designed and implemented properly. For the purposes of this title, “needy people” means those people living in “absolute” or “relative” poverty as determined under the standards employed by the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development and the International Development Association.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XI, §1102, as added Pub. L. 97-35, title XIII, §1361(b), Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 745.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This title, referred to in subsec. (b), is title XI (§§1101-1103) of Pub. L. 95-118, as added by Pub. L. 97-35, title XIII, §1361(b), Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 745, which enacted sections 262g-1 and 262g-2 of this title and enacted a provision set out as a note below. For complete classification of title XI to the Code, see Tables.

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Aug. 13, 1981, see section 1372 of Pub. L. 97-35, set out as a note under section 2901 of this title.

## REPORTS TO CONGRESS

Section 1103 of Pub. L. 95-118, as added by Pub. L. 97-35, title XIII, §1361(b), Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 746, required reports on the progress being made toward achieving the goals of this section, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 101-240, title V, §541(d)(4), Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2518.

**§ 262g-3. International negotiations on future replenishments of international financial institutions; consultation with appropriate Members of Congress**

The Secretary of the Treasury or his designee shall consult with the Chairman and the Ranking Minority Member of—

(1) the Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of the House of Representatives, the Committee on Appropriations of the House of Representatives, and the appropriate subcommittee of each such committee, and

(2) the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, the Committee on Appropriations of the Senate, and the appropriate subcommittee of each such committee,

for the purpose of discussing the position of the executive branch and the views of the Congress with respect to any international negotiations being held to consider future replenishments or capital expansions of any multilateral development bank which may involve an increased contribution or subscription by the United States. Such consultation shall be made (A) not later than 30 days before the initiation of such international negotiations, (B) during the period in which such negotiations are being held, in a frequent and timely manner, and (C) before a session of such negotiations is held at which the United States representatives may agree to such a replenishment or capital expansion.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XII, §1201, as added Pub. L. 97-35, title XIII, §1361(b), Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 746.)

## CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Banking and Financial Services of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Aug. 13, 1981, see section 1372 of Pub. L. 97-35, set out as a note under section 2901 of this title.

**§ 262h. Opposition by United States Executive Directors of international financial institutions to assistance for production or extraction of export commodities or minerals in surplus on world markets**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Directors of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, the International Development Association, the International Finance Corporation, the Inter-American Development Bank, the International Monetary Fund, the Asian Development Bank, the Inter-American Investment Corporation, the African Development Bank, and the African Development Fund to use the voice and vote of the United States to oppose any assistance by such institutions, using funds appropriated or otherwise made available pursuant to any provision of law, for the production or extraction of any commodity or mineral for export, if—

(1) such commodity or mineral, as the case may be, is in surplus on world markets; and

(2) the export of such commodity or mineral, as the case may be, would cause substantial injury to the United States producers of the same, similar, or competing commodity or mineral.

(Pub. L. 99-472, § 22, Oct. 15, 1986, 100 Stat. 1210.)

#### SIMILAR PROVISIONS

Similar provisions were contained in the following appropriation acts:

Pub. L. 103-306, title V, § 514, Aug. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 1628.

Pub. L. 103-87, title V, § 514, Sept. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 948.

Pub. L. 102-391, title V, § 521, Oct. 6, 1992, 106 Stat. 1661.

Pub. L. 101-513, title V, § 522, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2007.

Pub. L. 101-167, title V, § 522, Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1221.

Pub. L. 100-461, title V, § 522, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-25.

Pub. L. 100-202, § 101(e) [title V, § 522], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-157.

Pub. L. 99-500, § 101(f) [title V, § 522], Oct. 18, 1986, 100 Stat. 1783-213, 1783-229, and Pub. L. 99-591, § 101(f) [title V, § 522], Oct. 30, 1986, 100 Stat. 3341-214, 3341-229.

Pub. L. 99-190, § 101(i) [title V, § 523], Dec. 19, 1985, 99 Stat. 1291, 1306.

Pub. L. 98-473, title I, § 101(1) [title V, § 524], Oct. 12, 1984, 98 Stat. 1884, 1899.

Pub. L. 98-151, § 101(b)(1) [incorporating Pub. L. 97-121, title V, § 522], Nov. 14, 1983, 97 Stat. 964.

Pub. L. 97-377, title I, § 101(b)(1) [incorporating Pub. L. 97-121, title V, § 522], Dec. 21, 1982, 96 Stat. 1831.

Pub. L. 97-121, title V, § 522, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1656.

Pub. L. 96-536, § 101(b) [H.J. Res. 637, § 101(b); H.R. 4473, title V, § 522A], Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3167.

Pub. L. 96-123, § 101(a) [incorporating Pub. L. 95-481, title VI, § 609], Nov. 20, 1979, 93 Stat. 923.

Pub. L. 95-481, title VI, § 609, Oct. 18, 1978, 92 Stat. 1601.

#### § 262i. Repealed. Pub. L. 101-240, title V, § 541(d)(6), Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2518

Section, Pub. L. 96-259, title IV, § 401, June 3, 1980, 94 Stat. 431, related to communication and dissemination of information respecting export opportunity enhancement.

#### § 262j. Use of renewable resources for energy production

##### (a) Promotion, etc., by United States in connection with international financial institutions

The United States Government, in connection with its voice and vote in the Inter-American Development Bank, the African Development Fund, and the Asian Development Bank, shall encourage such institutions—

(1) to promote the decentralized production of renewable energy;

(2) to identify renewable resources to produce energy in rural development projects and determine the feasibility of substituting them for systems using fossil fuel;

(3) to train personnel in developing technologies for getting energy from renewable resources;

(4) to support research into the use of renewable resources, including hydropower, biomass, solar photovoltaic, and solar thermal;

(5) to support an information network to make available to policymakers the full range of energy choices;

(6) to broaden their energy planning, analyses, and assessments to include consideration of the supply of, demand for, and possible uses of renewable resources; and

(7) to coordinate with the Agency for International Development and other aid organizations in supporting effective rural energy programs.

##### (b) “Renewable resource” defined

For purposes of this section, the term “renewable resource” means any energy resource which—

(1) meets the needs of rural communities;

(2) saves capital without wasting labor;

(3) is modest in scale and simple to install and maintain and which can be managed by local individuals;

(4) is acceptable and affordable; and

(5) does not damage the environment.

(Pub. L. 96-259, title VI, § 602, June 3, 1980, 94 Stat. 433; Pub. L. 97-375, title I, § 112, Dec. 21, 1982, 96 Stat. 1821.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1982—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 97-375 struck out subsec. (c) which directed the Secretary of the Treasury, in consultation with the Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency, to report to Congress not later than six months after June 3, 1980, and annually thereafter on the progress toward achieving the goals set forth in this title.

#### CONGRESSIONAL STATEMENT OF FINDINGS RESPECTING USE OF RENEWABLE RESOURCES FOR ENERGY PRODUCTION IN POOR AND DEVELOPING COUNTRIES AND ROLE OF INTERNATIONAL FINANCIAL INSTITUTIONS

Section 601 of Pub. L. 96-259 provided that: “The Congress finds that—

“(1) without an adequate supply of energy at affordable prices the world’s poor will continue to be deprived of jobs, food, water, shelter, and clothing, and poor countries will continue to be economically and politically unstable;

“(2) dependence on increasingly expensive fossil fuel resources consumes too much of the capital available to poor countries with the result that funds are not available to meet the basic needs of poor people;

“(3) in many developing countries the cost of large central generators and long distance electrical distribution makes it unlikely that rural energy by means of a national grid will contribute to meeting the needs of poor people;

“(4) only one of eight rural inhabitants lives in an area which has access to electricity and even fewer rural inhabitants actually have or can afford electricity;

“(5) wood, animal and agricultural waste, and other ‘noncommercial’ fuels still supply about half the total energy in developing countries and all but a seventh in rural sectors;

“(6) growing dependence of the world’s poor on wood for heating and cooking has forced the overcutting of forests and as a consequence erosion and loss of available agricultural land; and

“(7) recent initiatives by the international financial institutions to develop and utilize decentralized solar, hydro, biomass, geothermal, and wind energy should be significantly expanded to make renewable energy resources increasingly available to the world’s poor on a wide scale.”

**§ 262k. Financial assistance to international financial institutions; considerations and criteria**

**(a) Congressional declaration of intent**

United States active participation in international financial institution activity is based on our national objective of furthering the economic and social development of the nations of the world, in particular the developing nations. The attainment of this national objective is most effectively realized through a world economic and financial system which is both free and stable. Therefore, it is the intent of the United States Congress that United States financial assistance to the international financial institutions should be primarily directed to those projects that would not generate excess commodity supplies in world markets, displace private investment initiatives or foster departures from a market-oriented economy.

**(b) Effect of country adjustment programs; minimization of projected adverse impacts; avoidance of government subsidization**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the representatives of the United States to the international financial institutions described in subsection (d) of this section to take into account in their review of loans, credits, or other utilization of the resources of their respective institutions, the effect that country adjustment programs would have upon individual industry sectors and international commodity markets in order to—

- (1) minimize any projected adverse impacts on such sector or markets of making such loans, credits, or utilization of resources; and
- (2) avoid whenever possible government subsidization of production and exports of international commodities without regard to economic conditions in the markets for such commodities.

**(c) Project proposals relating to mining, smelting, refining, and fabricating of minerals and metal products**

More specifically, the following criteria should be considered as a basis for a vote by the respective United States Executive Director to each of the international financial institutions described in subsection (d) of this section against a project proposal involving the creation of new capacity or the expansion, improvement, or modification of mining, smelting, refining, and fabricating of minerals and metal products:

- (1) Analysis shows that the risks, returns, and incentives of a project are such that it could be financed at reasonable terms by commercial lending services.
- (2) Analysis by the United States Bureau of Mines indicates that surplus capacity in the industry for the primary product of the defined project would exist over half the period of the economic life of the project because of projected world demand and capacity conditions.

(3) United States imports of the commodity constitute less than 50 percent of the domestic production of the primary product in those cases where the United States is the substantial producer of such commodities.

**(d) International financial institutions**

The international financial institutions referred to in subsections (a) and (b) of this section are the International Monetary Fund, the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, the International Development Association, the Inter-American Development Bank, the Asian Development Bank, and the African Development Bank.

(Pub. L. 99-88, title I, § 502, Aug. 15, 1985, 99 Stat. 330; Pub. L. 102-285, § 10(b), May 18, 1992, 106 Stat. 172.)

CHANGE OF NAME

“United States Bureau of Mines” substituted for “Bureau of Mines” in subsec. (c)(2) pursuant to section 10(b) of Pub. L. 102-285, set out as a note under section 1 of Title 30, Mineral Lands and Mining.

COPPER MINING, SMELTING, AND REFINING

Section 501 of Pub. L. 99-88 provided that: “The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Directors of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, the International Development Association, the International Finance Corporation, the Inter-American Development Bank, the International Monetary Fund, the Asian Development Bank, the Inter-American Investment Corporation, the African Development Bank, and the African Development Fund to use the voice and vote of the United States to oppose any assistance by these institutions, using funds appropriated or made available pursuant to this Act or any other Act, for the production of any copper commodity for export or for the financing of the expansion, improvement, or modernization of copper mining, smelting, and refining capacity.”

**§ 262l. Omitted**

CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 102-391, title V, § 532, Oct. 6, 1992, 106 Stat. 1666, which related to involvement of Multilateral Development Banks in promoting environmental and energy initiatives and required reports to Congress on progress in meeting benchmarks in sustainable energy development, forest conservation, forced displacement of populations, and environmental impact assessment, was from the Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Act, 1993, and was omitted from the Code as not repeated in subsequent appropriation acts. Similar provisions were contained in the following prior appropriation acts:

Pub. L. 101-513, title V, § 533, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2013, as amended by Pub. L. 102-27, title III, § 308, Apr. 10, 1991, 105 Stat. 152.

Pub. L. 101-167, title V, § 533, Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1225.

Pub. L. 100-461, title V, § 535, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-28.

Pub. L. 100-202, § 101(e) [title V, § 537], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-161, as amended by Pub. L. 101-240, title V, § 541(d)(8), Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2518.

Pub. L. 99-500, § 101(f) [title V, § 539], Oct. 18, 1986, 100 Stat. 1783-213, 1783-232, and Pub. L. 99-591, § 101(f) [title V, § 539], Oct. 30, 1986, 100 Stat. 3341-214, 3341-232.

Pub. L. 99-190, § 101(i) [title V, § 540], Dec. 19, 1985, 99 Stat. 1291, 1309.

**§ 262m. Congressional findings and policies for multilateral development banks respecting environment, public health, natural resources, and indigenous peoples**

The Congress finds that—

- (1) United States assistance to the multilateral development banks should promote

sustainable use of natural resources and the protection of the environment, public health, and the status of indigenous peoples in developing countries;

(2) multilateral development bank projects, policies, and loans have failed in some cases to provide adequate safeguards for the environment, public health, natural resources, and indigenous peoples;

(3) many development efforts of the multilateral development banks are more enduring and less costly if based on consultations with directly affected population groups and communities;

(4) developing country governments sometimes do not ensure that appropriate policies and procedures are in place to use natural resources sustainably or consult with affected population groups and communities, where costs could be reduced or benefits made more enduring; and

(5) in general, the multilateral development banks do not yet provide systematic and adequate assistance to their borrowers to encourage sustainable resource use and consultation with affected communities, where costs could be reduced or benefits made more enduring.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XIII, § 1301, as added Pub. L. 100-202, § 101(e) [title I], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-134.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section 1301 of Pub. L. 95-118 is based on section 701 of title VII of H.R. 3750, One Hundredth Congress, as introduced Dec. 11, 1987, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-202.

#### § 262m-1. Environmental performance of banks; mechanisms for improvement

The Secretary of the Treasury and the Secretary of State, in cooperation with the Administrator of the Agency for International Development, shall vigorously promote mechanisms to strengthen the environmental performance of these banks. These mechanisms shall include strengthening organizational, administrative, and procedural arrangements within the banks which will substantially improve management of assistance programs necessary to ensure the sustainable use of natural resources and the protection of indigenous peoples.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XIII, § 1302, as added Pub. L. 100-202, § 101(e) [title I], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-134.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section 1302 of Pub. L. 95-118 is based on section 701 of title VII of H.R. 3750, One Hundredth Congress, as introduced Dec. 11, 1987, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-202.

#### DEFINITIONS

The definition in section 262p of this title applies to this section.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 262p of this title.

#### § 262m-2. Environmental impact of assistance proposals

##### (a) Analysis by agencies, United States embassies and overseas missions of Agency for International Development; factors considered; affirmative investigation of adverse impacts; availability of information to public

(1) In the course of reviewing assistance proposals of the multilateral development banks, the Administrator of the Agency for International Development, in consultation with the Secretary of the Treasury and the Secretary of State, shall ensure that other agencies and appropriate United States embassies and overseas missions of the Agency for International Development are instructed to analyze, where feasible, the environmental impacts of multilateral development loans well in advance of such loans' approval by the relevant institutions to determine whether the proposals will contribute to the sustainable development of the borrowing country.

(2) To the extent possible, such reviews shall address the economic viability of the project, adverse impacts on the environment, natural resources, public health, and indigenous peoples, and recommendations as to measures, including alternatives, that could eliminate or mitigate adverse impacts.

(3) If there is reason to believe that any such loan is particularly likely to have substantial adverse impacts, the Administrator of the Agency for International Development, in consultation with the Secretary of the Treasury and the Secretary of State, shall ensure that an affirmative investigation of such impacts is undertaken in consultation with relevant Federal agencies. If not classified under the national security system of classification, the information collected pursuant to this paragraph shall be made available to the public.

##### (b) Evaluation by major shareholder governments prior to bank action on assistance proposals

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the Executive Directors representing the United States at the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, the Inter-American Development Bank, the Asian Development Bank, and the African Development Bank to urge the management and other directors of each such bank, to provide sufficient time between the circulation of assistance proposals and bank action on those proposals, in order to permit their evaluation by major shareholder governments.

##### (c) Identification of proposals likely to have adverse impact; transmittal to Congress

Based on the information obtained during the evaluation referred to in subsection (a) of this section and other available information, the Administrator of the Agency for International Development, in consultation with the Secretary of the Treasury and the Secretary of State, shall identify those assistance proposals likely to have adverse impacts on the environment, natural resources, public health, or indigenous peoples. The proposals so identified shall be transmitted to the Committee on Appropriations and

the Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Appropriations and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, not later than June 30 and December 31 of each year following December 22, 1987.

**(d) Reports to Executive Directors; elimination or mitigation of adverse impacts**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall forward reports concerning information received under subsection (a) of this section to the Executive Director representing the United States in the appropriate bank with instructions to seek to eliminate or mitigate adverse impacts which may result from the proposal.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XIII, §1303, as added Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title I], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-134.)

CODIFICATION

Section 1303 of Pub. L. 95-118 is based on section 701 of title VII of H.R. 3750, One Hundredth Congress, as introduced Dec. 11, 1987, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-202.

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Banking and Financial Services of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 262r-2 of this title.

**§ 262m-3. Cooperative information exchange system**

The Secretary of the Treasury, in consultation with the Secretary of State and the Administrator of the Agency for International Development, shall create a system for cooperative exchange of information with other interested member countries on assistance proposals of the multilateral development banks.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XIII, §1304, as added Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title I], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-134.)

CODIFICATION

Section 1304 of Pub. L. 95-118 is based on section 701 of title VII of H.R. 3750, One Hundredth Congress, as introduced Dec. 11, 1987, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-202.

**§ 262m-4. Environmental educational and training programs for mid-level bank managers and officials of borrowing countries**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Directors of the multilateral development banks to support the strengthening of educational programs within each multilateral development bank to improve the capacity of mid-level managers to initiate and manage environmental aspects of development activities, and to train officials of borrowing countries in the conduct of environmental analyses.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XIII, §1305, as added Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title I], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-134.)

CODIFICATION

Section 1305 of Pub. L. 95-118 is based on section 701 of title VII of H.R. 3750, One Hundredth Congress, as introduced Dec. 11, 1987, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-202.

**§ 262m-5. Environmental impact statements; factors considered; promotion of activities by United States Executive Directors**

(a) The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of each multilateral development bank to vigorously and continuously urge that each bank identify and develop methods and procedures to insure that in addition to economic and technical considerations, unquantified environmental values be given appropriate consideration in decisionmaking, and include in the documents circulated to the Board of Executive Directors concerning each assistance proposal a detailed statement, to include assessment of the benefits and costs of environmental impacts and possible mitigating measures, on the environmental impact of the proposed action, any adverse environmental effects which cannot be avoided if the proposal is implemented, and alternatives to the proposed action.

(b) The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of each multilateral development bank to vigorously and continuously promote—

(1) increases in the proportion of loans supporting environmentally beneficial policies, projects, and project components;

(2) the establishment of environmental programs in appropriate policy-based loans for the purpose of improving natural resource management, environmental quality, and protection of biological diversity;

(3) increases in the proportion of staff with professional training and experience in ecology and related areas and in the areas of anthropological and sociological impact analysis to ensure systematic appraisal and monitoring of environmental and sociocultural impacts of projects and policies;

(4) active and systematic encouragement of participation by borrowing countries nongovernmental environmental, community and indigenous peoples' organizations at all stages of preparations for country lending strategies, policy based loans, and loans that may have adverse environmental or sociocultural impacts; and

(5) full availability to concerned or affected nongovernmental and community organization, early in the preparation phase and at all subsequent stages of planning of full documentary information concerning details of design and potential environmental and sociocultural impacts of proposed loans.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XIII, §1306, as added Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title I], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-134.)

CODIFICATION

Section 1306 of Pub. L. 95-118 is based on section 701 of title VII of H.R. 3750, One Hundredth Congress, as introduced Dec. 11, 1987, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-202.

**§ 262m-6. Repealed. Pub. L. 101-240, title V, § 541(d)(4), Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2518**

Section, Pub. L. 95-118, title XIII, § 1307, as added Pub. L. 100-202, § 101(e) [title I], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-134, required annual reports to Congress on environmental policies.

**§ 262m-7. Assessment of environmental impact of proposed multilateral development bank actions**

**(a) Assessment required before favorable vote on action**

**(1) In general**

Beginning 2 years after December 19, 1989, the Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of each multilateral development bank not to vote in favor of any action proposed to be taken by the respective bank which would have a significant effect on the human environment, unless for at least 120 days before the date of the vote—

(A) an assessment analyzing the environmental impacts of the proposed action and of alternatives to the proposed action has been completed by the borrowing country or the institution, and been made available to the board of directors of the institution; and

(B) except as provided in paragraph (2), such assessment or a comprehensive summary of such assessment has been made available to the multilateral development bank, affected groups, and local nongovernmental organizations.

**(2) Exceptions and reports**

**(A) Exceptions**

The requirement of paragraph (1)(B) shall not apply where the Secretary finds compelling reasons to believe that disclosure in any case described in paragraph (1) would jeopardize the confidential relationship between the borrower country and the respective bank.

**(B) Reports by Secretary**

The Secretary shall submit a quarterly report in writing to the Committees specified in subsection (f)(1) of this section of the findings described in subparagraph (A).

**(b) Access to assessments in all member countries**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall seek the adoption of policies and procedures, through discussions and negotiations with the other member countries of the multilateral development banks and with the management of such banks, which result in access by governmental agencies and interested members of the public of such member countries, to environmental assessments or documentary information containing comprehensive summaries of such assessments which discuss the environmental impact of prospective projects and programs being considered by such banks. Such assessments or summaries should be made available to such governmental agencies and interested members of the public at least 120 days before scheduled board action, and public participation in review of the rel-

evant environmental information should be encouraged.

**(c) Consideration of assessment**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall—

(1) ensure that an environmental impact assessment or comprehensive summary of such assessment described in subsection (a) of this section accompanies loan proposals through the agency review process; and

(2) take into consideration recommendations from all other interested Federal agencies and interested members of the public.

**(d) Development of procedures for systematic environmental assessment**

The Secretary of the Treasury, in consultation with other Federal agencies, including the Environmental Protection Agency, the Department of State, and the Council on Environmental Quality, shall—

(1) instruct the United States Executive Director of each multilateral development bank to initiate discussions with the other executive directors of the respective bank and to propose that the respective bank develop and make available to member governments of, and borrowers from, the respective bank, within 18 months after December 19, 1989, a procedure for the systematic environmental assessment of development projects for which the respective bank provides financial assistance, taking into consideration the Guidelines and Principles for Environmental Impact Assessment promulgated by the United Nations Environmental Programme and other bilateral or multilateral assessment procedures; and

(2) in determining the position of the United States on any action proposed to be taken by a multilateral development bank, develop and prescribe procedures for the consideration of, among other things—

(A) the environmental impact assessment of the action described in subsection (a) of this section;

(B) interagency and public review of such assessment; and

(C) other environmental review and consultation of such action that is required by other law.

**(e) Use of United States personnel**

The Secretary of the Treasury, in consultation with the Secretary of State, the Secretary of the Interior, the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency, the Chairman of the Council on Environmental Quality, the Administrator of the Agency for International Development, and the Administrator of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, shall—

(1) make available to the multilateral development banks, without charge, appropriate United States Government personnel to assist in—

(A) training bank staff in environmental impact assessment procedures;

(B) providing advice on environmental issues;

(C) preparing environmental studies for projects with potentially significant environmental impacts; and

(D) preparing documents for public release, and developing procedures to provide for the inclusion of interested nongovernmental organizations in the environmental review process; and

(2) encourage other member countries of such banks to provide similar assistance.

**(f) Reports**

**(1) In general**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall submit to the Committees on Foreign Relations and Environment and Public Works of the Senate and the Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of the House of Representatives—

(A) not later than the end of the 1-year period beginning on December 19, 1989, a progress report on the efficacy of efforts by the United States to encourage consistent and timely environmental impact assessment of actions proposed to be taken by the multilateral development banks and on the progress made by the multilateral development banks in developing and instituting environmental assessment policies and procedures; and

(B) not later than January 1, 1993, a detailed report on the matters described in subparagraph (A).

**(2) Availability of reports**

The reports required by paragraph (1) shall be made available to the member governments of, and the borrowers from, the multilateral development banks, and to the public.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XIII, §1307, formerly §1308, as added and renumbered §1307, Pub. L. 101-240, title V, §§521, 541(f)(4), Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2511, 2519.)

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Banking and Financial Services of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

**§ 262n. Congressional findings and policies respecting agricultural and commodity production**

The Congress hereby finds the following:

(1) The financing of certain programs and projects by multilateral development banks has been of great concern insofar as the programs and projects have been detrimental to the interests of American farmers and the agribusiness sector.

(2) An increase in rural income in developing countries will generally result in an increase in exports of United States agricultural and food products.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XIV, §1401, as added Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title I], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-134.)

CODIFICATION

Section 1401 of Pub. L. 95-118 is based on section 701 of title VII of H.R. 3750, One Hundredth Congress, as introduced Dec. 11, 1987, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-202.

DEFINITIONS

The definitions in section 262p-5 of this title apply to this section.

**§ 262n-1. Increase in income and employment in developing countries; enhancement of purchasing power; diversification away from single crop or product economies**

The Secretary of the Treasury, after consultations with the Secretary of Agriculture and the Secretary of the Interior (to the extent appropriate) on markets and prices for commodities, shall periodically instruct the United States Executive Director of each multilateral development bank to work with other executive directors of the respective bank to continue to—

(1) support activities which result in broad increases in income and employment and enhance purchasing power in developing countries, particularly among the rural poor; and

(2) encourage diversification away from single crop or product economies in developing countries to help reduce wide fluctuations in commodity prices and the adverse impact of abrupt changes in the terms of trade.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XIV, §1402, as added Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title I], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-134.)

CODIFICATION

Section 1402 of Pub. L. 95-118 is based on section 701 of title VII of H.R. 3750, One Hundredth Congress, as introduced Dec. 11, 1987, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-202.

DEFINITIONS

The definitions in section 262p-5 of this title apply to this section.

**§ 262n-2. Financing projects for production of export commodities, products, or minerals in surplus in world markets discouraged; instructions by Secretary of the Treasury to United States Executive Directors**

(a) The Secretary of the Treasury shall take all appropriate steps to discourage multilateral development banks from financing projects which will result in the production of commodities, products, or minerals for export that will be in surplus in world markets at the time such production begins.

(b) The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Directors of the multilateral development banks to use the voice and vote of the United States in the respective banks—

(1) to oppose financing by the respective bank of projects which produce, or will produce, commodities, products, or minerals for export if—

(A) the commodity, product, or mineral is subsidized in a manner which is inconsistent with Article XVI.3 of the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade or Article 10 of the Agreement on Interpretation and Application of Articles VI, XVI, and XXIII of the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade; and

(B) support from financial sources other than multilateral development banks does not accompany such financing; and

(2) to oppose financing by the respective bank for production of a commodity, product, or mineral for export which—

(A) is likely to be in surplus on world markets at the time such production begins; and

(B) when exported, is likely to cause injury to United States producers within the meaning of Article 6 of the Agreement on Interpretation and Application of Articles VI, XVI, and XXIII of the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade.

(Pub. L. 95–118, title XIV, § 1403, as added Pub. L. 100–202, § 101(e) [title I], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329–131, 1329–134.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section 1403 of Pub. L. 95–118 is based on section 701 of title VII of H.R. 3750, One Hundredth Congress, as introduced Dec. 11, 1987, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100–202.

#### DEFINITIONS

The definitions in section 262p–5 of this title apply to this section.

### § 262o. Negotiations concerning replenishment or increase in capital; annual reports on implementation of lending policy goals

(a) In any negotiations concerning replenishment or an increase in capital for any multilateral development bank, the Secretary of the Treasury shall propose, as a principal point for negotiations, the following institutional reforms:

(1) The establishment of a unified program within each multilateral development bank to assess the extent to which bank lending benefits the least advantaged members of society, particularly women and the poor, and to increase the extent to which such members benefit from future bank lending.

(2) The establishment of an office or other administrative procedures within each multilateral development bank to—

(A) provide in-country liaison services for nongovernmental organizations operating at the community level;

(B) monitor the impact of project and non-project lending on local populations; and

(C) ensure compliance with loan conditionalities, especially loan conditionalities relating to the protection of the quality of life of the poor and the rights of aboriginal minorities.

(3) A major increase in the number of members of the professional staff of each regional multilateral development bank with training in environmental or social impact analysis or natural science, including—

(A) recruitment of additional permanent professional staff; and

(B) training programs for existing staff members in these subject areas.

(4) With respect to the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, the establishment of a program for policy-based lending to promote the sustainable use of renewable resources and the protection of the environment in borrowing countries.

(5) An increase in the length of any review period established by any multilateral devel-

opment bank for board review of staff recommendations by such time as would be sufficient to allow the governments of member countries to review and comment on the staff recommendations before any action is taken by the board of directors of such bank on the recommendations.

(b) The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of each multilateral development bank to request the management of such bank to prepare an annual report which identifies and describes the most exemplary lending practices or loan components implemented during the preceding year with respect to each of the following lending policy goals for each major borrowing country or country group:

(1) Benefit to the poor.

(2) Involvement of nongovernmental organizations and local and indigenous populations in loan design, implementation, planning, and monitoring.

(3) Integration of, consideration of, and concern for environmental quality and the sustainable use of natural resources into loan design, implementation, planning, and monitoring.

(4) Recognition of and support for the economic and social development of women.

(Pub. L. 95–118, title XV, § 1501, as added Pub. L. 100–202, § 101(e) [title I], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329–131, 1329–134.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section 1501 of Pub. L. 95–118 is based on section 701 of title VII of H.R. 3750, One Hundredth Congress, as introduced Dec. 11, 1987, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100–202.

#### DEFINITIONS

The definitions in section 262p–5 of this title apply to this section.

### § 262o–1. Military spending by recipient countries; military involvement in economies of recipient countries

#### (a) Consideration of commitment to achieving certain goals

##### (1)<sup>1</sup> In general

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Directors of the international financial institutions (as defined in section 262r(c)(2) of this title) to promote growth in the international economy by taking into account, when considering whether to support or oppose loan proposals at these institutions, the extent to which the recipient government has demonstrated a commitment to achieving the following goals:

(A) to provide accurate and complete data on the annual expenditures and receipts of the armed forces;

(B) to establish good and publicly accountable governance, including an end to excessive military involvement in the economy; and

(C) to make substantial reductions in excessive military spending and forces.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. No par. (2) has been enacted.



**(b) Steps to achieve goals required**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Directors of the international financial institutions (as so defined) to promote a policy at each institution under which—

(1) the respective institution monitors closely and, through regular policy consultations with recipient governments, seeks to influence the composition of public expenditure in favor of funding growth and development priorities and away from unproductive expenditure, including excessive military expenditures;

(2) the respective institution supports lending operations which assist efforts of recipient governments to promote good governance, including public participation, and reduce military expenditures; and

(3) the allocation of resources and the extension of credit by the respective institution takes into account the performance of recipient governments in the areas of good governance, ending excessive military involvement in the economy and reducing excessive military expenditures.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XV, §1502, as added Pub. L. 103-306, title V, §526(d), Aug. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 1633.)

## DEFINITIONS

The definitions in section 262p-5 of this title apply to this section.

**§ 262p. Impact adjustment lending programs****(a) Establishment of guidelines; impact statements**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development and the International Development Association to initiate discussions with other directors of the respective institutions and to propose that—

(1) guidelines be established which reflect clear and tangible concern for the impact adjustment lending programs, and the activities in support of which such lending is made, have and will have on human welfare; and

(2) impact statements be required which assess the effect an adjustment lending program, and the activities in support of which such lending is made, will have on the poor of the country to which such lending is made.

**(b) Proposed contents of impact statements**

In the discussions referred to in subsection (a) of this section with respect to the impact statement described in paragraph (2) of such subsection, the United States Executive Director should propose that such impact statements—

(1) specify what the projected effects of the adjustment loan will be on the poor;

(2) explain what procedures have been or will be taken to strengthen the in-country capacity of the borrower to—

(A) monitor nutrition levels in a timely manner; and

(B) measure the impact an adjustment loan, and the policies and activities in support of which such loan is made, has on the

living standards of the country's population, especially the poorest; and

(3) indicate specifically what steps the borrower will take to—

(A) mitigate any adverse effect the policies and activities in support of which an adjustment loan is made are expected to have on the living standards of the poor (including the use of the proceeds of any adjustment loan, project aid, or other compensatory measure to mitigate such effect); and

(B) maximize the extent of the participation of the poor in the economic benefits resulting from an adjustment loan.

**(c) Report to member governments by United States Executive Director of International Bank for Reconstruction and Development and by International Development Association**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development and the International Development Association to request the management of the respective institutions to prepare a report for distribution to member governments no later than June 30, 1988, that—

(1) assesses the impact on the poor of structural adjustment in countries to which structural adjustment lending has been made; and

(2) specifies the steps that have been or will be taken by the respective institution to—

(A) mitigate any adverse effect of adjustment lending, and the activities in support of which such lending is made, on the living standards of the poor in the countries to which such loans are made; and

(B) ensure the participation of the poor in the economic benefits resulting from adjustment lending and the activities in support of which such lending is made.

**(d) "Adjustment lending" defined**

For purposes of this section and section 262m-1 of this title, the term "adjustment lending" means nonproject lending in support of structural macroeconomic reforms or sectoral economic reform.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XVI, §1601, as added Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title I], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-134.)

## CODIFICATION

Section 1601 of Pub. L. 95-118 is based on section 701 of title VII of H.R. 3750, One Hundredth Congress, as introduced Dec. 11, 1987, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-202.

## DEFINITIONS

The definitions in section 262p-5 of this title apply to this section.

**§ 262p-1. Grassroots Collaboration Program****(a) Proposal for establishment; private involvement; projects or policies for alleviation of poverty and promotion of environmental protection**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of the International Bank for Reconstruction and De-

velopment and the International Development Association to initiate discussions with other directors of such institutions and to propose the establishment of a Grassroots Collaboration Program to develop improved mechanisms for involving, directly or indirectly, nongovernmental organizations in the design, implementation, and monitoring of development projects financed by, or development policies established by, such bank or association in order to alleviate poverty and promote environmental protection, including—

(1) encouraging nongovernmental organizations in borrowing countries to participate in all stages of project planning and country strategy activities to—

(A) minimize any adverse impact of such projects or activities on the poor people of such country;

(B) minimize any adverse impact of such projects or activities on the environment of such country; and

(C) maximize the extent to which such projects or activities will benefit the poor people of such country;

(2) increasing the direct involvement of nongovernmental organizations in project design, implementation, or monitoring whenever such organizations have a distinct comparative advantage over other entities in providing such services by virtue of their grassroots involvement with poor people, especially women, in a borrowing country;

(3) providing microenterprise credit for small scale economic activities through nongovernmental organizations;

(4) supporting the enhancement of the institutional capacity of nongovernmental organizations in borrowing countries as development practitioners; and

(5) establishing or supporting jointly funded intermediary mechanisms with nongovernmental organizations to facilitate increased collaboration between such bank or association and nongovernmental organizations in borrowing countries.

**(b) Implementation and financing of program**

It is the sense of the Congress that the Grassroots Collaboration Program described in subsection (a) of this section should be implemented and financed as part of the normal operations of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development and the International Development Association.

**(c) Flexible financing; initial grant**

To the extent the activities under the Grassroots Collaboration Program described in subsection (a) of this section need more flexible financing, it is the sense of the Congress that—

(1) such activities could be funded through a grant from the net income of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development; and

(2) an initial grant of not less than \$50,000,000 should be made for such activities with subsequent annual allocations of such additional amounts as may be necessary to allow the Grassroots Collaboration Program to maximize collaboration with nongovernmental or-

ganizations in the alleviation of poverty and the protection of the environment.

**(d) Repealed. Pub. L. 101-240, title V, § 541(d)(4), Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2518**

**(e) Annual reports to Congress**

Each annual report to the Congress by the National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Policies shall describe the status of the establishment and operation of the Grassroots Collaboration Program described in subsection (a) of this section, the activities under taken by the Program and the sum of the amounts expended by the Program.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XVI, § 1602, as added Pub. L. 100-202, § 101(e) [title I], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-134; amended Pub. L. 101-240, title V, § 541(d)(4), Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2518.)

CODIFICATION

Section 1602 of Pub. L. 95-118 is based on section 701 of title VII of H.R. 3750, One Hundredth Congress, as introduced Dec. 11, 1987, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-202.

AMENDMENTS

1989—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 101-240 struck out subsec. (d) which related to initial reporting requirements by Secretary of the Treasury.

DEFINITIONS

The definitions in section 262p-5 of this title apply to this section.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 262p-4I of this title.

**§ 262p-2. Instructions to United States Executive Directors for extension of credit**

**(a) International Bank for Reconstruction and Development; International Development Association; access of poor to formal sources of credit; identification and removal of barriers to extension of credit generally and to provisions of credit to microenterprises**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development and the International Development Association to initiate discussions with other directors of such Bank or Association and to propose that—

(1) in carrying on the activities of the Bank or Association, the Bank or Association take such steps as may be necessary to increase access for the poor people of a borrowing country to formal sources of credit; and

(2) the Bank or Association include a requirement in all appropriate project and non-project agreements, as a condition for assistance under such agreements, that the borrowing country identify and remove unreasonable legal and regulatory barriers to—

(A) the establishment or operation of organizations which extend credit; and

(B) the provision of credit to microenterprises for small scale economic activities.

**(b) African Development Bank and Asian Development Bank; provision of credit to microenterprises**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Directors of the Af-

rican Development Bank and the Asian Development Bank to initiate discussions with other directors of the respective banks and to propose that each such bank—

(1) examine the Program for the Financing of Small Projects of the Inter-American Development Bank and the steps taken by such bank to link the Program to the mainstream operation of the bank; and

(2) explore ways and means to establish similar programs within the respective banks to provide credit to microenterprises for small scale economic activities.

**(c) Annual reports to Congress; inclusion of status of microenterprise credit promotion activities**

Each annual report to the Congress by the National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Policies shall describe the status of the microenterprise credit promotion activities of each of the institutions referred to in subsection (a) or (b) of this section.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XVI, § 1603, as added Pub. L. 100-202, § 101(e) [title I], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-134.)

CODIFICATION

Section 1603 of Pub. L. 95-118 is based on section 701 of title VII of H.R. 3750, One Hundredth Congress, as introduced Dec. 11, 1987, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-202.

DEFINITIONS

The definitions in section 262p-5 of this title apply to this section.

**§ 262p-3. Participation of women in economic, social and policy development activities**

**(a) Congressional declaration of policy**

Congress hereby declares that it is the policy of the United States that multilateral development banks should—

(1) fully involve women in borrowing countries in the identification, planning, implementation, and evaluation of mainstream development activities financed by such banks;

(2) recognize and support women's direct and indirect roles in the economic development of their countries and communities;

(3) recognize and support women's direct and indirect roles in the education and social development of, the maintenance of the health of, and in the provision of adequate nutrition for, family members and communities, especially children;

(4) work to remove legal and customary barriers which impede the full participation of women in economic and social development, such as lack of access to credit, property rights, education, health care, and government services; and

(5) involve women's groups in borrowing countries in project identification and preparation in order to factor their assessments of women's economic and social needs into project design.

**(b) Instructions by Secretary of the Treasury to United States Executive Directors**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct—

(1) the United States Executive Director of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development and the International Development Association to support attempts to strengthen the role of the Women in Development division in policy development, project design and implementation, and evaluation; and

(2) the United States Executive Directors of the regional multilateral development banks to support exploring the establishment of a mechanism, or the strengthening of any existing mechanism, within each of the respective banks, to advise, advocate, and promote the full intergration<sup>1</sup> of women in the planning, design, implementation, and evaluation of lending activities both in borrowing countries and within the banks.

**(c) Annual reports to Congress**

Each annual report to the Congress by the National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Policies shall describe the actions taken by the multilateral development banks to implement the policies established under this section.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XVI, § 1604, as added Pub. L. 100-202, § 101(e) [title I], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-134.)

CODIFICATION

Section 1604 of Pub. L. 95-118 is based on section 701 of title VII of H.R. 3750, One Hundredth Congress, as introduced Dec. 11, 1987, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-202.

DEFINITIONS

The definitions in section 262p-5 of this title apply to this section.

**§ 262p-4. Instructions to United States Executive Directors; indigenous people in borrowing country; determination of impact; protection of rights; consultation**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of each multilateral development bank to initiate discussions with other executive directors of the respective bank and to propose that the bank take such steps as may be necessary—

(1) to determine, at the time an initial feasibility study is conducted with respect to a proposed project and to the fullest extent possible, the impact such project would have on indigenous people in the borrowing country;

(2) to ensure compliance with loan conditionalities relating to the protection of the rights of indigenous people to lands and resources; and

(3) to consult with indigenous people, and nongovernmental organizations representing indigenous people, at every phase of loan design, planning, implementation, and monitoring.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XVI, § 1605, as added Pub. L. 100-202, § 101(e) [title I], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-134.)

CODIFICATION

Section 1605 of Pub. L. 95-118 is based on section 701 of title VII of H.R. 3750, One Hundredth Congress, as in-

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be "integration".

roduced Dec. 11, 1987, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-202.

#### DEFINITIONS

The definitions in section 262p-5 of this title apply to this section.

### § 262p-4a. Loan programs to reduce economic dependence on illicit narcotics

#### (a) Findings

The Congress finds that—

- (1) the illicit narcotics epidemic currently afflicting the United States represents a direct threat to the well-being of every United States citizen;
- (2) every effective means must be pursued to reduce the foreign production and subsequent importation into the United States of illicit narcotics;
- (3) the multilateral development banks can play an integral role in efforts to control the production of illicit narcotics;
- (4) producer country narcotics eradication programs will not be effective unless such programs provide an economic alternative to the production of narcotics;
- (5) efforts to address the illicit narcotics epidemic through production control are doomed to failure unless greater effort is applied to curb use of and demand for illicit narcotics; and
- (6) the appropriate role for the multilateral development banks in the “War Against Drugs” is through coordinating and financing alternative economic opportunities in producer and trafficking countries.

#### (b) Loan programs to reduce economic dependence on illicit narcotics

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development and the United States Executive Director of the Inter-American Development Bank to initiate discussions with other executive directors of such institutions and to advocate and support the creation, within such institutions, of specific country lending programs and policies (including crop substitution, creation of roads conducive to the expansion of markets for licit goods, other infrastructure development measures such as development projects generating employment, agricultural extension assistance, and region-specific development plans) which are particularly oriented to reducing or eliminating the economic dependence of regions of borrowing countries known to be areas in which illicit narcotics are produced or trafficked, on such production and trafficking.

#### (c) Coordination among assistance programs designed to reduce economic dependency on illicit narcotics

In addition, the Secretary of the Treasury should instruct the United States Executive Director of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development and the United States Executive Director of the Inter-American Development Bank to encourage such institutions to provide coordination among other multilateral and bilateral assistance programs designed to

reduce the economic dependence of regions of borrowing countries known to be areas in which illicit narcotics are produced or trafficked, on such production and trafficking.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XVI, § 1606, as added Pub. L. 100-461, title V, § 555, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-36.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section 1606 of Pub. L. 95-118 is based on section 6 of H.R. 4645, One Hundredth Congress, as reported Sept. 28, 1988, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-461.

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 1606 of Pub. L. 95-118 was renumbered section 1622 and is classified to section 262p-5 of this title.

#### DEFINITIONS

The definitions in section 262p-5 of this title apply to this section.

### § 262p-4b. Directives regarding government-owned enterprises in countries receiving World Bank loans

#### (a) Finding

The Congress finds that a principal focus of United States Government policy in the multilateral development banks has been and should be to foster greater development of the private sector in member borrowing countries of such banks.

#### (b) Technical assistance to transform government-owned enterprises into privately owned enterprises

In order to assist and strengthen the advancement of ongoing efforts to have the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development play a key role in building a viable private sector in member borrowing countries of such bank, and to further assist such bank in its determination to facilitate the transfer of government-owned enterprises in such countries to private ownership, the Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of such bank to vigorously encourage the provision of technical assistance to such countries (relying, where appropriate, on the expertise of the International Finance Corporation or the Multilateral Investment Guarantee Agency) to transform enterprises owned, in whole or part, by the governments of such countries into privately owned, self-sufficient enterprises. Such technical assistance may involve the valuation of the assets of such government-owned enterprises, the assessment of tender offers, and the creation or strengthening of market-based mechanisms to facilitate such a transfer of ownership.

#### (c) Reports

##### (1) In general

The United States Executive Director of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development shall submit 3 reports to the Congress on—

- (A) the progress made in transforming government-owned enterprises into privately owned enterprises as described in subsection (b) of this section;

(B) the performance of the privately owned enterprises resulting from such transformation; and

(C) the contributions of development finance companies toward strengthening the private sector in member borrowing countries.

**(2) Timing**

The United States Executive Director of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development shall submit to the Congress the first report required by paragraph (1) within 1 year after October 1, 1988, and shall submit additional reports 12 months, and 24 months, after the date the first report is submitted.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XVI, § 1607, as added Pub. L. 100-461, title V, § 555, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-36.)

CODIFICATION

Section 1607 of Pub. L. 95-118 is based on section 7 of H.R. 4645, One Hundredth Congress, as reported Sept. 28, 1988, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-461.

DEFINITIONS

The definitions in section 262p-5 of this title apply to this section.

**§ 262p-4c. Initiation of discussions to facilitate debt-for-development swaps for human welfare and environmental conservation**

**(a) Findings**

The Congress finds that—

(1) voluntary debt-for-development swaps in heavily indebted developing nations can simultaneously facilitate reduction of the burden of external indebtedness and increase the resources available within the country for charitable, educational, and scientific purposes, including environmental conservation, education, human welfare, health, agricultural research and development, microenterprise credit, and development of indigenous non-profit organizations; and

(2) heavily indebted developing countries may desire to facilitate such swaps to the maximum extent consistent with sound domestic economic management and minimization of inflationary impact.

**(b) Initiation of discussions to facilitate debt-for-development swaps for human welfare and environmental conservation**

**(1) In general**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development to initiate discussions with the directors of such bank, the International Development Association, and the International Finance Corporation and propose that such institutions provide advice and assistance, as appropriate, to borrowing country governments desiring to facilitate debt-for-development swaps, on mechanisms (including trust funds) to accomplish this purpose, particularly in the context of debt rescheduling, which mechanisms result in sound management of the macroeconomic impact of such swaps on such countries, and preserve the value of the capital obtained through such swaps.

**(2) Definitions**

As used in this section:

**(A) Debt-for-development swap**

The term “debt-for-development swap” means the purchase of qualified debt by, or the donation of such debt to, an organization described in section 501(c)(3) of title 26 which is exempt from taxation under section 501(a) of title 26, and the subsequent transfer of such debt to an organization located in such foreign country in exchange for an undertaking by such tax-exempt organization, such foreign government, or such foreign organization to engage in a charitable, educational, or scientific activity.

**(B) Qualified debt**

The term “qualified debt” means—

(i) sovereign debt issued by a foreign government;

(ii) debt owed by private institutions in the country governed by such foreign government; and

(iii) debt owed by institutions in the country governed by such foreign government, which are owned, in part, by private persons and, in part, by public institutions.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XVI, § 1608, as added Pub. L. 100-461, title V, § 555, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-36.)

CODIFICATION

Section 1608 of Pub. L. 95-118 is based on section 8 of H.R. 4645, One Hundredth Congress, as reported Sept. 28, 1988, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-461.

DEFINITIONS

The definitions in section 262p-5 of this title apply to this section.

**§ 262p-4d. Initiation of discussions to facilitate financing of human welfare and natural resource programs in sub-Saharan Africa in connection with debt reduction and conversion**

**(a) Findings**

The Congress finds that—

(1) the heavy burden of debt borne by sub-Saharan governments undermines efforts by such governments to finance projects and programs designed to promote charitable, educational, and scientific purposes, including education, human welfare, health, agricultural research and development, and conservation, restoration and enhancement of the natural resource base; and

(2) the financing of programs to promote such charitable, educational, and scientific purposes should be facilitated in the context of reducing and converting sovereign debt of sub-Saharan governments, as encouraged in the final communique of the June 1988 economic summit conference in Toronto, Canada, through such means as—

(A) concessional interest rates;

(B) extended repayment periods; or

(C) partial or complete write-offs of debt service obligations.

**(b) Initiation of discussions to facilitate financing of human welfare and natural resource programs in sub-Saharan Africa in connection with debt reduction and conversion**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of the African Development Bank and the African Development Fund to initiate discussions with the directors of such institutions and propose that such institutions, jointly with the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, the International Development Association, and the International Finance Corporation, as appropriate, provide advice and assistance to government creditors holding sovereign debt of any sub-Saharan government, and to sub-Saharan governments which desire to finance programs with local currencies obtained through debt reduction and conversion to promote charitable, educational, and scientific (including conservation and restoration of natural resources) purposes, as a condition of reducing or converting such sovereign debt.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XVI, § 1609, as added Pub. L. 100-461, title V, § 555, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-36.)

CODIFICATION

Section 1609 of Pub. L. 95-118 is based on section 9 of H.R. 4645, One Hundredth Congress, as reported Sept. 28, 1988, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-461.

DEFINITIONS

The definitions in section 262p-5 of this title apply to this section.

**§ 262p-4e. Extent to which borrowing country governments have honored debt-for-development swap agreements to be considered as factor in making loans to such borrowers**

**(a) In general**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development to initiate discussions with the directors of such bank and propose that such bank consider, as an important factor in making loans to borrowing country governments, the history of compliance by such governments with, and the extent to which such governments have honored, agreements entered into by such governments as part of any debt-for-development swap which requires such governments to set aside or otherwise limit the use of real property to conservation purposes.

**(b) Definitions**

As used in this section:

**(1) Debt-for-development swap**

The term “debt-for-development swap” means the purchase of qualified debt by, or the donation of such debt to, an organization described in section 501(c)(3) of title 26 which is exempt from taxation under section 501(a) of title 26, and the subsequent transfer of such debt to an organization located in such foreign country in exchange for an undertaking by such tax-exempt organization, such foreign government, or such foreign organization to engage in a charitable, educational, or scientific activity.

**(2) Qualified debt**

The term “qualified debt” means—

(A) sovereign debt issued by a foreign government;

(B) debt owed by private institutions in the country governed by such foreign government; and

(C) debt owed by institutions in the country governed by such foreign government which are owned, in part, by private persons and, in part, by public institutions.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XVI, § 1610, as added Pub. L. 100-461, title V, § 555, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-36.)

CODIFICATION

Section 1610 of Pub. L. 95-118 is based on section 10 of H.R. 4645, One Hundredth Congress, as reported Sept. 28, 1988, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-461.

DEFINITIONS

The definitions in section 262p-5 of this title apply to this section.

**§ 262p-4f. Assistance to countries to develop statistical assessment of well-being of poor**

**(a) Findings**

The Congress finds that—

(1) improvement in the capacity of developing countries to measure and monitor regularly the nutritional and physical well-being of the poorest 40 percent of the population of each of such countries is essential to the development of policies to reduce absolute poverty;

(2) internationally accepted statistical indicators that measure reliably the extent of absolute poverty and identify the location and characteristics of the poor are being developed and refined to guide policy formulation and target assistance to the poor;

(3) such guidance by indicators is, however, not able to be used in some developing countries, especially the poorest countries, due to the woeful unavailability of statistical data;

(4) the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development and the International Development Association have the technical and financial capability to assist borrowing country governments to develop such statistical measurement capabilities for social indicators necessary for the design and monitoring of poverty-reduction policies for such governments;

(5) availability of social indicator data is also essential to the work of such institutions, particularly in monitoring the impact of structural adjustment lending on the poor; and

(6) availability of such indicators will also facilitate the measurement of progress in the alleviation of poverty by other donor agencies, public and private.

**(b) Assistance to countries to develop statistical assessment of well-being of poor**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development and the International Development

Association to advocate and support, as an immediate priority, assistance by such institutions to borrowing country governments to develop appropriate statistical measures for assessing the physical well-being of the poor, by sex and age, by using such indicators as mortality, health, education, and nutrition, as well as wealth and income, and maintain and publish such indicators on an ongoing basis.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XVI, § 1611, as added Pub. L. 100-461, title V, § 555, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-36.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section 1611 of Pub. L. 95-118 is based on section 11 of H.R. 4645, One Hundredth Congress, as reported Sept. 28, 1988, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-461.

#### DEFINITIONS

The definitions in section 262p-5 of this title apply to this section.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 262p-4h of this title.

### § 262p-4g. Directives regarding government-owned enterprises in countries receiving IADB loans

#### (a) Finding

The Congress finds that a principal focus of United States Government policy in the multilateral development banks has been and should be to foster greater development of the private sector in member borrowing countries of such banks.

#### (b) Technical assistance to transform government-owned enterprises into privately owned enterprises

In order to assist and strengthen the advancement of ongoing efforts to have the Inter-American Development Bank play a key role in building a viable private sector in member borrowing countries of such bank, and to further assist such bank in its determination to facilitate the transfer of government-owned enterprises in such countries to private ownership, the Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of such bank to vigorously encourage the provision of technical assistance to such countries to transform enterprises owned, in whole or in part, by the governments of such countries into privately owned, self-sufficient enterprises. Such technical assistance may involve the valuation of the assets of such government-owned enterprises, the assessment of tender offers, and the creation or strengthening of market-based mechanisms to facilitate such a transfer of ownership.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XVI, § 1612, as added Pub. L. 101-240, title II, § 206, Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2499.)

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 1612 of Pub. L. 95-118 was renumbered section 1622 and is classified to section 262p-5 of this title.

#### DEFINITIONS

The definitions in section 262p-5 of this title apply to this section.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 262r of this title.

### § 262p-4h. Discussions to increase productive economic participation of poor; reports

#### (a) In general

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director for each multilateral development bank to vigorously and continually advocate, in all replenishment negotiations and in discussion with other directors of such bank and with such bank, the following:

(1) A major objective of such bank's operations and financing in each borrowing country, as a long term priority, should be to increase the productive role of the poor in the economy of such country.

(2) Such bank should encourage and assist each borrowing country to develop sustainable national plans and strategies to eliminate the causes and alleviate the manifestations of poverty which keep the poor from leading economically and socially productive lives. Such plans and strategies should give attention to—

(A) the enhancement of human resources, including programs for basic nutrition, primary health services, basic education, and safe water and basic sanitation;

(B) access to income-generating activities, employment, and productive assets such as land and credit; and

(C) consultation with public sector social agencies and local non-governmental organizations.

(3) As an integral element of ongoing policy dialogue with each borrowing country to design structural adjustment plans and project lending programs, such bank should provide assistance consistent with achieving the objectives of the country's national plan for increasing the productive economic participation of the poor. Such dialogue should be conducted with government agencies working in social and economic sectors and with non-governmental groups in the borrowing country, especially those that have grassroots involvement with poor people.

(4) In an annual review document, such bank should describe the extent to which the goal of increasing the productive economic participation of the poor is being advanced or retarded and the steps that are being taken to overcome obstacles to its fulfillment. Such review should be based on information contained in the bank's country implementation review documents and in the country strategy documents for each borrowing country. Such country strategy documents should describe the national strategy for productive economic participation of the poor and the steps the bank plans to take to assist the borrowing country during the period covered by the country strategy document.

(5) Such bank should assist countries in assessing and monitoring progress in achieving poverty alleviation goals and targets through measurement by appropriate social indicators.

(6) Such bank should adopt procedures and budgetary allocations for administrative pur-

poses, and establish appropriate staffing levels, to ensure that adequate resources are available to implement the bank's program for enhancing the productive economic participation of the poor, in consultation with non-governmental groups.

(7) Such bank should adopt, as a separate and major criterion in the allocation of concessional financing resources, a preferential allocation to each country which undertakes significant efforts to enhance the productive economic participation of the poor.

(8) Such bank should require each country which receives structural adjustment assistance to have in place, after a reasonable phase-in period, a strategy to enhance the productive economic participation of the poor.

#### (b) Progress report

Before the end of the 1-year period beginning on December 19, 1989, the Secretary of the Treasury shall submit to the Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs and the Committee on Appropriations of the House of Representatives, and the Committee on Foreign Relations and the Committee on Appropriations of the Senate, a report on the following:

(1) The status of advocacy and progress being made to implement the objectives of subsection (a) of this section, describing the success to date, the obstacles encountered, and future expectations of progress.

(2) A description of the progress to date in achieving the purposes of section 262p-4f of this title, including the institutional capacity and effort devoted to assisting in the development of statistical measures to assess the well-being of the poor.

(3) A description and evaluation of the progress to date in developing effective mechanisms for involving non-governmental organizations, directly or indirectly, in the design, implementation, and monitoring of development projects, programs, and policies of the multilateral development banks.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XVI, § 1613, as added Pub. L. 101-240, title V, § 501, Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2505.)

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 1613 of Pub. L. 95-118 was renumbered section 1622 and is classified to section 262p-5 of this title.

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Banking and Financial Services of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### DEFINITIONS

The definitions in section 262p-5 of this title apply to this section.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 262r of this title.

### § 262p-4i. Multilateral development banks and debt-for-nature exchanges

#### (a) Directions to United States Executive Directors

The Secretary of the Treasury shall direct the United States Executive Directors of the multilateral development banks to—

(1) negotiate for the creation in each respective multilateral development bank, except where the Secretary of the Treasury determines that the provisions of this subsection have previously been met, of a department that will—

(A) be responsible for environmental protection and resource conservation, including support for restoration, protection, and sustainable use policies;

(B) develop and monitor strict environmental guidelines and policies to govern lending activities; and

(C) actively promote, coordinate and facilitate debt-for-nature exchanges and the restoration, protection, and sustainable use of tropical forests, renewable natural resources, endangered ecosystems and species in debtor countries;

(2) support and encourage the approval of multilateral development bank loans which include provisions that foster and facilitate the implementation of a sound and effective environmental policy in the borrowing country;

(3) encourage the banks to assist such countries in reducing and restructuring private debt through the use of a portion of a project or policy based environmental loan in ways which will enable such countries to buy back private debt at a rate of discount available for such debt, at auction in the secondary market or through negotiations with creditors holding such debt;

(4) seek to ensure that staff of each bank facilitate debtor countries' collaboration with local and international non-governmental or private organizations in implementing debt-for-nature exchanges; and

(5) seek to ensure that each bank adopts policy guidelines which to the maximum extent possible provide for—

(A) the inclusion of sustainable use policies in loan agreements negotiated with borrower members;

(B) the adoption of economic programs to foster sound environmental policies; and

(C) the provision of debtor countries' policy changes or significant increases in financial resources for use in at least 1 of the following—

(i) restoration, protection, or sustainable use of the world's oceans and atmosphere;

(ii) restoration, protection, or sustainable use of diverse animal and plant species;

(iii) establishment, restoration, protection, and maintenance of parks and reserves;

(iv) development and implementation of sound systems of natural resource management;

(v) development and support of local conservation programs;



(vi) training programs to strengthen conservation institutions and increase scientific, technical, and managerial capabilities of individuals and organizations involved in conservation efforts;

(vii) efforts to generate knowledge, increase understanding, and enhance public commitment to conservation;

(viii) design and implementation of sound programs of land and ecosystem management; and

(ix) promotion of regenerative approaches in farming, forestry, and watershed management.

**(b) Negotiation of guidelines for restoration, protection, or sustainable use policies**

The United States Executive Directors of the multilateral development banks shall seek to negotiate with the other executive directors to provide guidelines for restoration, protection, or sustainable use policies. Pending the outcome of such negotiations, the United States Executive Directors shall consider restoration, protection, or sustainable use policies to be those which—

(1) support development that maintains and restores the renewable natural resource base so that present and future needs of debtor countries' populations can be met, while not impairing critical ecosystems and not exacerbating global environmental problems;

(2) are environmentally sustainable in that resources are conserved and managed in an effort to remove pressure on the natural resource base and to make judicious use of the land so as to sustain growth and the availability of all natural resources;

(3) support development that does not exceed the limits imposed by local hydrological cycles, soil, climate, vegetation, and human cultural practices;

(4) promote the maintenance and restoration of soils, vegetation, hydrological cycles, wildlife, critical ecosystems (tropical forests, wetlands, and coastal marine resources), biological diversity and other natural resources essential to economic growth and human well-being and shall, when using natural resources, be implemented to minimize the depletion of such natural resources; and

(5) take steps, wherever feasible, to prevent pollution that threatens human health and important biotic systems and to achieve patterns of energy consumption that meet human needs and rely on renewable resources.

**(c) Inclusion of certain items in guidelines**

The United States Executive Directors shall endeavor to include the provisions of paragraphs (1) through (5) of subsection (b) of this section in the guidelines developed through the negotiations specified in this section.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XVI, § 1614, as added Pub. L. 101-240, title V, § 512, Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2508.)

**PRIOR PROVISIONS**

A prior section 1614 of Pub. L. 95-118 was renumbered section 1622 and is classified to section 262p-5 of this title.

**DEFINITIONS**

The definitions in section 262p-5 of this title apply to this section.

**§ 262p-4j. Promotion of lending for environment**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development to initiate discussions with the other executive directors of such bank and the management of such bank and propose that, in order to reduce the future need for bank lending for reforestation and restoration of environmentally degraded areas, the bank establish a project and policy based environmental lending program (including a loan a portion of which could be used to reduce and restructure private debt), to be made available to interested countries with a demonstrated commitment to natural resource conservation, which would be based on—

(1) the estimated long-term economic return which could be expected from the sustainable use and protection of tropical forests, including the value of tropical forests for indigenous people and for science;

(2) the value derived from such services as—

(A) watershed management;

(B) soil erosion control;

(C) the maintenance and improvement of—

(i) fisheries;

(ii) water supply regulation for industrial development;

(iii) food;

(iv) fuel;

(v) fodder; and

(vi) building materials for local communities;

(D) the extraction of naturally occurring products from locally controlled protected areas; and

(E) indigenous knowledge of the management and use of natural resources; and

(3) the long-term benefits expected to be derived from maintaining biological diversity and climate stabilization.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XVI, § 1615, as added Pub. L. 101-240, title V, § 512, Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2510.)

**DEFINITIONS**

The definitions in section 262p-5 of this title apply to this section.

**§ 262p-4k. Promotion of institution-building for nongovernmental organizations concerned with environment**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Directors of the multilateral development banks to vigorously promote the adoption of policies and procedures which seek to—

(1) increase collaboration with, and, where necessary, strengthen, nongovernmental organizations in such countries which are concerned with environmental protection by providing appropriate assistance and support for programs and activities on environmental protection; and

(2) encourage international collaboration for information exchange and project enhancement with nongovernmental organizations in developing countries which are concerned with environmental protection and government

agencies and private voluntary organizations in developed countries which are concerned with environmental protection.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XVI, § 1616, as added Pub. L. 101-240, title V, § 512, Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2510.)

#### DEFINITIONS

The definitions in section 262p-5 of this title apply to this section.

### § 262p-4l. Improvement of interaction between International Bank for Reconstruction and Development and nongovernmental organizations

#### (a) In general

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development to propose, and urge the Executive Board and the management of the bank to develop and implement<sup>1</sup> specific mechanisms designed to—

(1) substantially improve the ability of the staff of the bank to interact with nongovernmental organizations and other local groups that are affected by loans made by the bank to borrower countries; and

(2) delegate to the field offices of the bank in borrowing countries greater responsibility for decisions with respect to proposals for projects in such countries that are to be financed by the bank.

#### (b) Certain mechanisms urged

The mechanisms described in subsection (a) of this section shall include, at a minimum, the following measures:

(1) An instruction to the management of the bank to undertake efforts to appropriately train and significantly increase the number of bank professional staff (based in Washington, District of Columbia, as of November 5, 1990) assigned, on a rotating basis, to field offices of the bank in borrower countries.

(2) The assignment to at least 1 professional in each field office of the bank in a borrower country of responsibility for relations with local nongovernmental organizations, and for the preparation and submission to appropriate staff of the bank of a report on the impact of project loans to be made by the bank to the country, based on views solicited from local people who will be affected by such loans, which shall be included as part of the project appraisal report.

(3) The establishment of the Grassroots Collaboration Program described in section 262p-1(a) of this title.

(4) Before a project loan is made to a borrower country, the country is to be required to hold open hearings on the proposed project during project identification and project preparation.

(5) The establishment of assessment procedures which allow affected parties and nongovernmental organizations to review information describing a prospective project or policy loan design, in a timely manner, before the

loan is submitted to the Executive Board for approval.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XVI, § 1617, as added Pub. L. 101-513, title V, § 562(a)(2), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2032.)

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 1617 of Pub. L. 95-118 was renumbered section 1622 and is classified to section 262p-5 of this title.

#### DEFINITIONS

The definitions in section 262p-5 of this title apply to this section.

### § 262p-4m. Population, health, and nutrition programs

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development to urge the bank to support an increase in the amount the bank lends annually to support population, health, and nutrition programs of the borrower countries.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XVI, § 1618, as added Pub. L. 101-513, title V, § 562(a)(2), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2033.)

#### DEFINITIONS

The definitions in section 262p-5 of this title apply to this section.

### § 262p-4n. Equal employment opportunities

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Directors of the multilateral development banks and of the International Monetary Fund to use the voices and votes of the Executive Directors to urge their respective banks and the Fund to adopt a policy which provides, and implement procedures which ensure, that such banks and the Fund, and the affiliates of such banks and of the Fund, shall not discriminate against any person on the basis of race, ethnicity, gender, color, or religious affiliation in any determination related to employment.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XVI, § 1619, as added Pub. L. 101-513, title V, § 562(b)(1), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2033.)

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 1619 of Pub. L. 95-118 was renumbered section 1622 and is classified to section 262p-5 of this title.

#### DEFINITIONS

The definitions in section 262p-5 of this title apply to this section.

### § 262p-4o. Respect for indigenous peoples

The Secretary of the Treasury shall direct the United States Executive Directors of the international financial institutions (as defined in section 262r(c)(2) of this title) and the United States representative to the council of the Global Environment Facility administered by the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development to use the voice and vote of the United States to bring about the creation and full implementation of policies designed to pro-

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be followed by a comma.

mote respect for and full protection of the territorial rights, traditional economies, cultural integrity, traditional knowledge and human rights of indigenous peoples.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XVI, § 1620, as added Pub. L. 103-306, title V, § 526(e), Aug. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 1633.)

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 1620 of Pub. L. 95-118 was renumbered 1622 and is classified to section 262p-5 of this title.

#### DEFINITIONS

The definitions in section 262p-5 of this title apply to this section.

#### § 262p-4p. Encouragement of fair labor practices

(a) The Secretary of the Treasury shall direct the United States Executive Directors of the international financial institutions (as defined in section 262r(c)(2) of this title) to use the voice and vote of the United States to urge the respective institution—

(1) to adopt policies to encourage borrowing countries to guarantee internationally recognized worker rights (within the meaning of section 2462(a)(4) of title 19) and to include the status of such rights as an integral part of the institution's policy dialogue with each borrowing country;

(2) in developing the policies referred to in paragraph (1), to use the relevant conventions of the International Labor Organization, which have set forth, among other things, the right of association, the right to organize and bargain collectively, a prohibition on the use of any form of forced or compulsory labor, and certain minimum labor standards that take into account differences in development levels among nations including a minimum age for the employment of children, acceptable conditions of work with respect to minimum wages, hours of work, and occupational safety and health; and

(3) to establish formal procedures to screen projects and programs funded by the institution for any negative impact in a borrowing country on the rights referred to in paragraph (1).

(b) The Secretary of the Treasury shall submit to the Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate by the end of each fiscal year a report on the extent to which each borrowing country guarantees internationally recognized worker rights to its labor force and on progress toward achieving each of the goals described in subsection (a) of this section.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XVI, § 1621, as added Pub. L. 103-306, title V, § 526(e), Aug. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 1634.)

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Banking and Financial Services of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### DEFINITIONS

The definitions in section 262p-5 of this title apply to this section.

#### § 262p-5. Definitions

For purposes of this title and titles XIV and XV—

(1) the term “multilateral development bank” means the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, the International Development Association, and the regional multilateral development banks; and

(2) the term “regional multilateral development bank” means the Inter-American Development Bank, the African Development Bank, the African Development Fund, and the Asian Development Bank.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XVI, § 1622, formerly § 1606, as added Pub. L. 100-202, § 101(e) [title I], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-134; renumbered § 1612, Pub. L. 100-461, title V, § 555, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-36; renumbered § 1613, renumbered § 1614, renumbered § 1617, Pub. L. 101-240, title II, § 206, title V, §§ 501, 512, Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2499, 2505, 2508; renumbered § 1619, renumbered § 1620, Pub. L. 101-513, title V, § 562(a)(2), (b)(1), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2032, 2033; renumbered § 1622, Pub. L. 103-306, title V, § 526(e), Aug. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 1633.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This title and titles XIV and XV, referred to in text, are titles XVI, XIV, and XV, respectively, of Pub. L. 95-118. Title XIV is classified to sections 262n to 262n-2 of this title, title XV is classified to sections 262o and 262o-1 of this title, and title XVI is classified to sections 262p to 262p-5 of this title. For complete classification of these titles to the Code, see Tables.

#### CODIFICATION

Section 1622, formerly § 1606, of Pub. L. 95-118 is based on section 701 of title VII of H.R. 3750, One Hundredth Congress, as introduced Dec. 11, 1987, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-202. Renumbering of section 1606 of Pub. L. 95-118 as section 1612 was based on section 6 of H.R. 4645, One Hundredth Congress, as reported Sept. 28, 1988, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-461.

#### § 262q. Transferred

#### CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 100-418, title III, § 3202, Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1382, which related to multilateral development bank procurement, was renumbered section 1801 of title XVIII of Pub. L. 95-118, by Pub. L. 101-240, title V, § 541(b)(1), Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2517, and transferred to section 262s of this title.

#### § 262r. Annual report by Chairman of National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Policies

##### (a) In general

The Chairman shall report annually to the Speaker of the House of Representatives, the President of the Senate, and to the President of the United States on the participation of the United States in the international financial institutions. The Chairman shall present such report to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the President of the Senate not later than April 1 of each year following the close of the fiscal year covered by such report, except

that the report for fiscal year 1989 shall be submitted not later than June 1, 1990.

**(b) Contents of reports**

Each annual report required by subsection (a) of this section shall contain—

(1) such data and explanations concerning the effectiveness, operations, and policies of the international financial institutions, such recommendations concerning the international financial institutions, and such other data and material as the Chairman may deem appropriate;

(2) the reports on each specific issue and topic which is required by any other provision of law to be included in the report of the National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Policies required by section 286b(b)(5) of this title, as in effect immediately before December 19, 1989;

(3) a description of each loan or other form of financial assistance approved by any international financial institution during the fiscal year covered by such report, and a discussion of how such loan or financial assistance will benefit the people, particularly the poor people, of the recipient country;

(4) a review of the success achieved through the multilateral development banks in reducing or eliminating import restrictions and unfair export subsidies which—

(A) have been determined to be consistent with international agreements; and

(B) have a serious adverse impact on the United States;

(5) a description of the actions taken and the progress made in carrying out subsections (a) and (b) of section 286cc of this title;

(6) the report required by section 2018(c) of the International Narcotics Act of 1986 (title II of Public Law 99-570), discussing the actions taken and progress made in encouraging the multilateral development banks to finance drug eradication and crop substitution programs;

(7) a description of the progress made by the United States Executive Director of the International Monetary Fund with respect to the goals of section 286kk of this title;

(8) a description of the status of procedures in the multilateral development banks specifically designed to increase the productive role of the poor in the economies of the nations which are borrowers from such banks;

(9) in consultation with the Secretary of State, a report on the progress toward achieving the goals of title VII (other than section 262e of this title), including the information required to be reported pursuant to section 262d(c) of this title, and, for the fiscal year 1990, the report described in section 262p-4h of this title;

(10) in consultation with the Secretary of State and the Administrator of the Agency for International Development, an assessment of the progress being made to implement the objectives of title XIII; and

(11) a report on—

(A) the progress made in transforming government-owned enterprises into privately owned enterprises as described in section 262p-4g(b) of this title;

(B) the performance of the privately owned enterprises resulting from such transformation; and

(C) the contributions of development finance companies toward strengthening the private sector in member borrowing countries.

**(c) Definitions**

As used in this title, title XVIII, and title XIX:

**(1) Chairman**

The term “Chairman” means the Chairman of the National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Policies.

**(2) International financial institutions**

The term “international financial institutions” means the International Monetary Fund, International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, European Bank for Reconstruction and Development, International Development Association, International Finance Corporation, Multilateral Investment Guarantee Agency, African Development Bank, African Development Fund, Asian Development Bank, Inter-American Development Bank, and Inter-American Investment Corporation.

**(3) Multilateral development institutions**

The term “multilateral development institutions” means the international financial institutions other than the International Monetary Fund.

**(4) Multilateral development banks**

The term “multilateral development banks” means the multilateral development institutions other than the Multilateral Investment Guarantee Agency.

**(d) Testimony required**

Upon request of the Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of the House of Representatives, the Chairman shall testify before the Committee to support and explain each annual report required by subsection (a) of this section. If the President has delegated to a person or persons other than the Chairman the authority to manage United States participation in the international financial institutions which was vested in the President by section 1(b) of the Reorganization Plan No. 4 of 1965, such person or persons shall, upon request of the Committee, accompany the Chairman and testify before the Committee with regard to such report. The Chairman and such other person or persons shall assess, in their testimony, the effectiveness of the international financial institutions, the major issues affecting United States participation, the major developments in the past year, the prospects for the coming year, United States policy goals with respect to the international financial institutions, and any specific issues addressed to them by any member of the Committee.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XVII, § 1701, as added Pub. L. 101-240, title V, § 541(a), Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2514; amended Pub. L. 101-513, title V, § 562(c)(10)(A), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2036.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 2018(c) of the International Narcotics Act of 1986, referred to in subsec. (b)(6), means section 2018(c)

of Pub. L. 99-570, known as the International Narcotics Control Act of 1986, which is set out as a note under section 2291 of this title.

This title and titles VII, XIII, XVIII, and XIX, referred to in subsecs. (b)(9), (10) and (c), are titles XVII, VII, XIII, XVIII, and XIX, respectively, of Pub. L. 95-118. Title VII enacted sections 262d and 262e of this title, repealed sections 283y, 284m, and 290g-9 of this title, and enacted provisions set out as a note under section 262c of this title. Title XIII is classified to sections 262m to 262m-6 of this title. Title XVII is classified to sections 262r to 262r-2 of this title. Title XVIII is classified to sections 262s to 262s-2 of this title. Title XIX is classified to section 262t of this title. For complete classification of these titles to the Code, see Tables.

Reorganization Plan No. 4 of 1965, referred to in subsec. (d), is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

#### AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 101-513 inserted “European Bank for Reconstruction and Development,” before “International Development Association.”

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Banking and Financial Services of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 262o-1, 262p-4o, 262p-4p, 2421 of this title.

### § 262r-1. Transmission to the Congress of operating summaries of the multilateral development banks

The Secretary of the Treasury shall transmit to the Congress, on a monthly basis, current copies of the Monthly Operating Summary of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, showing the loan proposals or appraisal reports under consideration and the status of those loan proposals or appraisal reports within the Bank. The Secretary of the Treasury shall also transmit to the Congress, at such times as may be appropriate, comparable documents prepared by the other multilateral development banks which show the loans or credits under consideration in the other multilateral development banks.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XVII, §1702, as added Pub. L. 101-240, title V, §541(a), Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2516.)

#### DEFINITIONS

The definitions in section 262r of this title apply to this section.

### § 262r-2. Combined report on effect of pending multilateral development bank loans on environment, natural resources, public health, and indigenous peoples

Not later than April 1 and October 1 of each year, the Administrator of the Agency for International Development, in consultation with the Secretary of the Treasury and the Secretary of State, shall submit to the Committee on Appropriations and the Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of the House of Rep-

resentatives, and the Committee on Appropriations and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, as a combined report, the reports required by section 262m-2(c) of this title and by section 537(h)(2) of the Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Act, 1988 (sec. 1(e) of Public Law 100-202).

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XVII, §1703, as added Pub. L. 101-240, title V, §541(a), Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2516.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 537(h)(2) of the Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Act, 1988, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title V, §537(h)(2)], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-163, which was classified to section 262l of this title.

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Banking and Financial Services of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### DEFINITIONS

The definitions in section 262r of this title apply to this section.

### § 262s. Multilateral development bank procurement

#### (a) Executive Directors

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of each multilateral development bank to attach a high priority to promoting opportunities for exports for goods and services from the United States and, in carrying out this function, to investigate thoroughly any complaints from United States bidders about the awarding of procurement contracts by the multilateral development banks to ensure that all contract procedures and rules of the banks are observed and that United States firms are treated fairly.

#### (b)<sup>1</sup> Officer of procurement

##### (1) Establishment

The Secretary of the Treasury shall designate, within the Office of International Affairs in the Department of the Treasury, an officer of multilateral development bank procurement.

##### (2) Function

The officer shall act as the liaison between the Department of the Treasury, the Department of Commerce, and the United States Executive Directors' offices in the multilateral development banks, in carrying out this section. The officer shall cooperate with the Department of Commerce in efforts to improve opportunities for multilateral development bank procurement by United States companies.

#### (b)<sup>1</sup> “Multilateral development bank” defined

As used in this section, the term “multilateral development bank” includes the International

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Two subsecs. (b) have been enacted.

Bank for Reconstruction and Development, the International Development Association, the International Finance Corporation, the Inter-American Development Bank, the Inter-American Investment Corporation, the Asian Development Bank, the African Development Bank, and the African Development Fund.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XVIII, §1801, formerly Pub. L. 100-418, title III, §3202, Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1382; renumbered §1801 of Pub. L. 95-118, Pub. L. 101-240, title V, §541(b)(1), Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2517.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 262q of this title prior to renumbering by Pub. L. 101-240.

#### SHORT TITLE

Section 3201 of Pub. L. 100-418 provided that: "This subtitle [subtitle C (§§3201, 3202) of title III of Pub. L. 100-418, enacting former section 262q of this title] may be cited as the 'Multilateral Development Banks Procurement Act of 1988'."

#### DEFINITIONS

The definitions in section 262r of this title apply to this section.

### § 262s-1. Procurement opportunities for United States firms

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Directors of the multilateral development institutions to take all possible steps to ensure that information relating to potential procurement opportunities for United States firms is expeditiously communicated to the Secretary of the Treasury, the Secretary of State, and the Secretary of Commerce, and is disseminated as widely as possible to large and small businesses.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XVIII, §1802, as added Pub. L. 101-240, title V, §541(a), Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2516.)

#### DEFINITIONS

The definitions in section 262r of this title apply to this section.

### § 262s-2. Commercial Service Officers and multilateral development bank procurement

#### (a) Appointment of Commercial Service Officers to serve with Executive Directors

The Secretary of Commerce, in consultation with the Secretary of the Treasury, shall appoint a procurement officer, who is a representative of the International Trade Administration or a Commercial Service Officer of the United States and Foreign Commercial Service, to serve, on a full-time or part-time basis, with each of the Executive Directors of the multilateral development banks in which the United States participates.

#### (b) Functions of officers

Each procurement officer appointed under subsection (a) of this section shall assist the United States Executive Director with respect to whom such officer is appointed in promoting opportunities for exports of goods and services from the United States by doing the following:

(1) Acting as the liaison between the business community and the multilateral develop-

ment bank involved, whether or not the bank has offices in the United States. The Secretary of Commerce shall ensure that the procurement officer has access to, and disseminates to United States businesses, information relating to projects which are being proposed by the multilateral development bank, and bid specifications and deadlines for projects about to be developed by the bank. The procurement officer shall make special efforts to disseminate such information to small and medium-sized businesses interested in participating in such projects. The procurement officer shall explore opportunities for disseminating such information through private sector, nonprofit organizations.

(2) Taking actions to assure that United States businesses are fully informed of bidding opportunities for projects for which loans have been made by the multilateral development bank involved.

(3) Taking actions to assure that United States businesses can focus on projects in which they have a particular interest or competitive advantage, and to permit them to compete and have an equal opportunity in submitting timely and conforming bidding documents.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XVIII, §1803, formerly Pub. L. 100-418, title II, §2302, Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1341; renumbered §1803 of Pub. L. 95-118, and amended Pub. L. 101-240, title V, §541(b)(2), Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2517.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 4722 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, prior to renumbering by Pub. L. 101-240.

#### AMENDMENTS

1989—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 101-240 struck out subsec. (c) which defined "multilateral development bank" for purposes of this section.

#### ADDITIONAL PROCUREMENT OFFICERS

Pub. L. 102-549, title V, §501, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3663, provided that:

"(a) APPOINTMENT.—The Secretary of Commerce, in consultation with the Secretary of the Treasury, shall appoint one or more full-time additional procurement officers, for each multilateral development bank, to promote exports of goods and services from the United States by doing the following:

"(1) Acting as the liaison between the business community and one or more multilateral development banks, whether or not the banks have offices in the United States. The Secretary of Commerce shall ensure that the procurement officer has access to, and disseminates to United States businesses, information relating to projects which are being proposed by the multilateral development bank involved, and bid specifications and deadlines for projects about to be developed by the bank. The procurement officer shall make special efforts to disseminate such information to small- and medium-sized businesses interested in participating in such projects. The procurement officer shall explore opportunities for disseminating such information through private sector, nonprofit organizations.

"(2) Taking actions to assure that United States businesses are fully informed of bidding opportunities for projects for which loans have been made by the multilateral development bank involved.

"(3) Taking actions to assure that United States businesses can focus on projects in which they have

a particular interest or competitive advantage, and to permit them to compete and have an equal opportunity in submitting timely and conforming bidding documents.

“(b) DEFINITION.—As used in this section, the term ‘multilateral development bank’ has the meaning given that term in section 1701(c) of the International Financial Institutions Act (22 U.S.C. 262r(c)).

“(c) AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.—There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary of Commerce \$1,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 1993 and 1994 to carry out this section. Amounts appropriated pursuant to this subsection shall be available only for the purpose of making the appointment of additional procurement officers required by subsection (a).”

#### DEFINITIONS

The definitions in section 262r of this title apply to this section.

### § 262t. Personnel practices

#### (a) Statement of policy

It shall be the policy of the United States that no initiatives, discussions, or recommendations concerning the placement or removal of any personnel employed by the international financial institutions shall be based on the political philosophy or activity of the individual under consideration.

#### (b) Consultation

The Secretary of the Treasury shall consult with the Chairman and the ranking minority member of the Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate before any discussion or recommendations by any official of the United States Government concerning the placement or removal of any principal officer of any international financial institutions.

(Pub. L. 95-118, title XIX, § 1901, as added Pub. L. 101-240, title V, § 541(a), Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2517.)

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Banking and Financial Services of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### DEFINITIONS

The definitions in section 262r of this title apply to this section.

### § 263. International Prison Commission

The United States shall continue as an adhering member of the International Prison Commission and participate in the work of said commission.

The Secretary of the Treasury be, and he is hereby, authorized annually to pay the pro rata share of the United States in the administration expenses of the International Prison Commission and the necessary expenses of a commissioner to represent the United States on said commission at its annual meetings, together with necessary clerical and other expenses, out of any money which shall be appropriated for such purposes from time to time by Congress.

(Feb. 28, 1913, ch. 86, 37 Stat. 692.)

### § 263a. International Criminal Police Organization

The Attorney General is authorized to accept and maintain, on behalf of the United States, membership in the International Criminal Police Organization, and to designate any departments and agencies which may participate in the United States representation with that organization. All dues and expenses to be paid for the membership of the United States shall be paid out of sums authorized and appropriated for the Department of Justice.

(June 10, 1938, ch. 335, 52 Stat. 640; Aug. 27, 1958, Pub. L. 85-768, 72 Stat. 921; Nov. 28, 1967, Pub. L. 90-159, 81 Stat. 517; Aug. 10, 1972, Pub. L. 92-380, § 1, 86 Stat. 531; Oct. 24, 1974, Pub. L. 93-468, § 1, 88 Stat. 1422; Nov. 9, 1978, Pub. L. 95-624, § 21(a), 92 Stat. 3466.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1978—Pub. L. 95-624 substituted provision authorizing payment of all dues and expenses for membership of the United States out of sums authorized and appropriated for Department of Justice for provisions authorizing each participating department and agency to pay its pro rata share of expenses of such membership and forbidding total dues paid for such membership to exceed \$120,000 per annum.

1974—Pub. L. 93-468 substituted “\$120,000” for “\$80,000”.

1972—Pub. L. 92-380 substituted “\$80,000” for “\$28,500”.

1967—Pub. L. 90-159 substituted “\$28,500” for “\$25,000”.

1958—Pub. L. 85-768 authorized the Attorney General to designate departments and agencies which may participate, on a pro rata share basis, in the United States representation with the International Criminal Police Organization, and increased from \$1,500 to \$25,000 per annum the amount of expenses which may be incurred by reason of United States membership.

### §§ 264, 265. Omitted

#### CODIFICATION

Section 264, act Aug. 18, 1894, ch. 301, 28 Stat. 418, which related to Pan American Union, was superseded by Convention of 1928, ratified by the United States and providing that the government of Pan American Union should be vested in a governing board.

Section 265, act Jan. 25, 1929, ch. 102, title I, 45 Stat. 1102, which was from an appropriation act, related to disposition of receipts of Pan American Union, and was not repeated in subsequent appropriation acts.

### § 266. International commission of congresses of navigation; authorization of appropriation for expenses

The sum of \$3,000 a year is authorized to be appropriated, out of any money in the Treasury not otherwise appropriated, for the support and maintenance of the permanent international commission of the congresses of navigation and for the payment of the actual expenses of the properly accredited national delegates of the United States to the meetings of the congresses and of the commission; and the Secretary of the Army is authorized to draw his warrant each year upon the Secretary of the Treasury for such sum, not to exceed \$3,000, as may in his opinion be proper to apply to the purposes above mentioned, and the said sum shall be disbursed under such regulations as may be prescribed by the Secretary of the Army.

The national delegates aforesaid from the United States shall serve without compensation, but shall be reimbursed for their actual expenses incurred while traveling to and from the meetings, and while in attendance thereon, from the funds appropriated in this section and authorized to be expended.

(June 28, 1902, ch. 1306, 32 Stat. 485; June 26, 1934, ch. 756, § 2, 48 Stat. 1225; July 26, 1947, ch. 343, title II, § 205(a), 61 Stat. 501.)

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Department of War designated Department of the Army and title of Secretary of War changed to Secretary of the Army by section 205(a) of act July 26, 1947, ch. 343, title II, 61 Stat. 501. Section 205(a) of act July 26, 1947, was repealed by section 53 of act Aug. 10, 1956, ch. 1041, 70A Stat. 641. Section 1 of act Aug. 10, 1956, enacted "Title 10, Armed Forces" which in sections 3010 to 3013 continued Department of the Army under administrative supervision of Secretary of the Army.

#### APPROPRIATIONS

Section 2 of act June 26, 1934, ch. 756, 48 Stat. 1225, which was classified to section 725a of former Title 31, Money and Finance, repealed the permanent appropriation under the title "Permanent International Commission of Congress of Navigation (fiscal year) (8-887)" effective July 1, 1935, and provided that such portions of any Acts as make permanent appropriations to be expended under such account are amended so as to authorize, in lieu thereof, annual appropriations from the general fund of the Treasury in identical terms and in such amounts as now provided by the laws providing such permanent appropriations.

#### § 266a. Transferred

##### CODIFICATION

Section, act Feb. 14, 1931, ch. 189, 46 Stat. 1162, as amended, which related to appropriations for expenses of participation in the International Technical Committee of Aerial Legal Experts, was transferred to section 231 of former Title 49, Transportation, and subsequently repealed by Pub. L. 103-272, § 7(b), July 5, 1994, 108 Stat. 1379, the first section of which enacted subtitles II, III, and V to X of Title 49, Transportation.

#### § 266b. Repealed. June 11, 1940, ch. 306, 54 Stat. 263

Section, Joint Res. Aug. 7, 1935, ch. 455, § 2, 49 Stat. 540, related to termination of Authorizations for Participation in Work of Committee of International Technical Aerial Legal Experts.

#### § 267. Permanent Commission of International Geodetic Association; representative of United States

The duly appointed representative of the United States on the permanent commission of the International Geodetic Association is granted authority to vote with the representatives on the permanent commission from other nations on all matters coming before the association, including the extension of its existence, subject to the approval of Congress.

(Mar. 3, 1917, ch. 161, 39 Stat. 1055.)

#### § 267a. Appointment of delegates; compensation

The President is authorized to appoint delegates, who shall be officers of the National Ocean Survey, to attend the meetings of the International Geodetic Association whenever

and wheresoever the same shall be held; but no extra salary or additional compensation shall be paid to such officers by reason of such attendance.

(July 23, 1894, No. 37, 28 Stat. 587.)

##### CHANGE OF NAME

Coast and Geodetic Survey consolidated with National Weather Bureau in 1965 to form Environmental Science Services Administration by Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1965, eff. July 13, 1965, 30 F.R. 8819, 79 Stat. 1318. Environmental Science Services Administration abolished in 1970 and its personnel, property, records, etc., transferred to National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration by Reorg. Plan No. 4 of 1970, eff. Oct. 3, 1970, 35 F.R. 15627, 84 Stat. 2090. By order of Acting Associate Administrator of National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, 35 F.R. 19249, Dec. 19, 1970, Coast and Geodetic Survey redesignated National Ocean Survey. See notes set out under section 311 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade.

#### § 267b. International Joint Commission; invitation to establish; personnel; duties

The President of the United States is requested to invite the Government of Great Britain to join in the formation of an international commission, to be composed of three members from the United States and three who shall represent the interests of the Dominion of Canada, whose duty it shall be to investigate and report upon the conditions and uses of the waters adjacent to the boundary lines between the United States and Canada, including all of the waters of the lakes and rivers whose natural outlet is by the River Saint Lawrence to the Atlantic Ocean; also upon the maintenance and regulation of suitable levels; and also upon the effect upon the shores of these waters and the structures thereon, and upon the interests of navigation, by reason of the diversion of these waters from or change in their natural flow; and, further, to report upon the necessary measures to regulate such diversion, and to make such recommendations for improvements and regulations as shall best subserve the interests of navigation in said waters. The said commissioners shall report upon the advisability of locating a dam at the outlet of Lake Erie, with a view to determining whether such dam will benefit navigation, and if such structure is deemed advisable, shall make recommendations to their respective Governments looking to an agreement or treaty which shall provide for the construction of the same, and they shall make an estimate of the probable cost thereof. The President, in selecting the three members of said Commission who shall represent the United States, is authorized to appoint one officer of the Corps of Engineers of the United States Army, one civil engineer well versed in the hydraulics of the Great Lakes, and one lawyer of experience in questions of international and riparian law, and said Commission shall be authorized to employ such persons as it may deem needful in the performance of the duties hereby imposed.

(June 13, 1902, ch. 1079, § 4, 32 Stat. 373.)

##### CODIFICATION

Provisions of this section relating to the payment of salaries and expenses of the International Joint Commission were omitted. For provisions relating to the



payment of salaries of the United States members of the International Joint Commission, see section 268 of this title.

#### ESTABLISHMENT OF COMMISSION

The International Joint Commission was organized in 1911 pursuant to article VII of the treaty of January 11, 1909, with Great Britain, 36 Stat. 2448.

#### WATER RESOURCES PLANNING

Jurisdiction, powers, or prerogatives of the International Joint Commission, United States and Canada, unaffected by Water Resources Planning Act, see section 1962-1 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare.

#### PASSAMAQUODDY TIDAL POWER PROJECT

Joint Res. Jan. 31, 1956, ch. 27, 70 Stat. 9, provided for the Secretary of State to request the International Joint Commission created by the treaty between the United States and Great Britain relating to boundary waters between the United States and Canada to arrange for a final survey to be made to determine the cost of construction and economic feasibility of the proposed Passamaquoddy tidal power project at Passamaquoddy Bay, authorized United States agencies to assist the Commission, authorized appropriations, and required the Secretary of State to report the results of the survey to Congress.

#### § 268. International Joint Commission; salaries; powers

The salaries of the members on the part of the United States, of the International Joint Commission, established under the treaty of January 11, 1909, between the United States and Great Britain, relating to boundary waters between the United States and Canada, shall be fixed by the President. Said commission or any member thereof shall have power to administer oaths and to take evidence on oath whenever deemed necessary in any proceeding or inquiry or matter within its jurisdiction under said treaty, and said commission shall be authorized to compel the attendance of witnesses in any proceedings before it or the production of books and papers when necessary by application to the district court of the United States for the district within which such session is held, which court is hereby empowered and directed to make all orders and issue all processes necessary and appropriate for that purpose.

(Mar. 4, 1911, ch. 285, 36 Stat. 1364.)

#### FEDERAL RULES OF CIVIL PROCEDURE

Subpoena, see rule 45, Title 28, Appendix, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

#### § 268a. Repealed. Pub. L. 89-554, § 8(a), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 650

Section, act May 14, 1940, ch. 189, title I, 54 Stat. 191, related to compensation and travel expenses of the International Joint Commission.

Similar provisions were contained in the following prior appropriation acts:

June 29, 1939, ch. 248, title I, 53 Stat. 895.  
Apr. 27, 1938, ch. 180, title I, 52 Stat. 256.  
June 16, 1937, ch. 359, title I, 50 Stat. 270.  
May 15, 1936, ch. 405, 49 Stat. 1319.  
Mar. 22, 1935, ch. 39, 49 Stat. 75.

#### § 268b. Advances from appropriation "Boundary line, Alaska and Canada, and the United States and Canada"

Advances of money under the appropriation "Boundary line, Alaska and Canada, and the

United States and Canada", may be made to the commissioner on the part of the United States and by his authority to chiefs of parties and accounts arising under advances shall be rendered through and by the commissioner on the part of the United States to the General Accounting Office as under advances made to chiefs of parties prior to March 2, 1921.

(Apr. 15, 1918, ch. 52, 40 Stat. 523; Mar. 2, 1921, ch. 113, 41 Stat. 1210; June 10, 1921, ch. 18, title III, § 304, 42 Stat. 24; Apr. 29, 1926, ch. 195, title I, 44 Stat. 336; Feb. 24, 1927, ch. 189, title I, 44 Stat. 1185; Feb. 15, 1928, ch. 57, title I, 45 Stat. 70; Jan. 25, 1929, ch. 102, title I, 45 Stat. 1101; Apr. 18, 1930, ch. 184, title I, 46 Stat. 179; Sept. 6, 1966, Pub. L. 89-554, § 8(a), 80 Stat. 643; June 6, 1972, Pub. L. 92-310, title II, § 231(aa), 86 Stat. 212.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section is from the Diplomatic and Consular Service Appropriation Act of Mar. 2, 1921. Similar provisions were contained in act Apr. 15, 1918, and other prior acts.

Acts Apr. 29, 1926; Feb. 24, 1927; Feb. 15, 1928; Jan. 25, 1929; and Apr. 18, 1930, were appropriation acts for the fiscal years 1927, 1928, 1929, 1930, and 1931, respectively. These Acts made applicable boundary appropriations for the enumerated fiscal years.

Section was formerly classified to section 535 of Title 31 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 31, Money and Finance, by Pub. L. 97-258, § 1, Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 877.

#### AMENDMENTS

1972—Pub. L. 92-310 struck out provisions that required chiefs of parties to give bonds.

1966—Pub. L. 89-554 struck out provisions that related to traveling expenses of the commissioner.

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

"General Accounting Office" substituted in text for "Treasury Department" pursuant to act June 10, 1921, which transferred powers and duties conferred upon Comptroller, six auditors, and certain other officers of the Treasury to General Accounting Office. See section 701 et seq. of Title 31, Money and Finance.

#### § 269. Permanent International Association of Road Congresses; authorization of membership

The President is authorized to maintain membership of the United States in the Permanent International Association of Road Congresses.

(Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 164(b), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 676.)

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 269, act June 18, 1926, ch. 623, 44 Stat. 754, authorized appropriations of \$3,000 per annum to enable United States to accept membership in Permanent Association of International Road Congresses, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 164(a), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 676.

#### § 269a. Central Bureau of the International Map of the World on the Millionth Scale; authorization of appropriations

There is hereby authorized to be appropriated, out of any money in the Treasury not otherwise appropriated, an annual sum of \$50 as a contribution on the part of the United States toward the expenses incurred by the Central Bureau of the International Map of the World on the Millionth Scale.

(June 27, 1930, ch. 652, 46 Stat. 825.)

#### ANNUAL APPROPRIATIONS

Annual appropriations to meet the obligations of membership in various international organizations were contained in the following acts:

Aug. 26, 1994, Pub. L. 103-317, title V, 108 Stat. 1762, 1763, as amended Sept. 30, 1994, Pub. L. 103-335, title VIII, § 8155(a), 108 Stat. 2658.

Oct. 27, 1993, Pub. L. 103-121, title V, 107 Stat. 1187.  
Oct. 6, 1992, Pub. L. 102-395, title V, 106 Stat. 1866, 1867.

Oct. 28, 1991, Pub. L. 102-140, title V, 105 Stat. 818.  
Nov. 5, 1990, Pub. L. 101-515, title III, 104 Stat. 2126.  
Nov. 21, 1989, Pub. L. 101-162, title III, 103 Stat. 1008.  
Oct. 1, 1988, Pub. L. 100-459, title III, 102 Stat. 2205.  
Dec. 22, 1987, Pub. L. 100-202, § 101(a) [title III], 101 Stat. 1329, 1329-20, 1329-21.

July 11, 1987, Pub. L. 100-71, title I, 101 Stat. 394.  
Oct. 18, 1986, Pub. L. 99-500, § 101(b) [title III], 100 Stat. 1783-39, 1783-58, 1783-59, and Oct. 30, 1986, Pub. L. 99-591, § 101(b) [title III], 100 Stat. 3341-39, 3341-58, 3341-59, as amended July 11, 1987, Pub. L. 100-71, title I, 101 Stat. 394.

Dec. 13, 1985, Pub. L. 99-180, title III, 99 Stat. 1150, 1151.

Aug. 30, 1984, Pub. L. 98-411, title III, 98 Stat. 1565, 1566.

Nov. 28, 1983, Pub. L. 98-166, title III, 97 Stat. 1094.  
Dec. 21, 1982, Pub. L. 97-377, title I, § 101(d), 96 Stat. 1877.

Oct. 2, 1982, Pub. L. 97-276, § 101(a), 96 Stat. 1186.  
Dec. 15, 1981, Pub. L. 97-92, § 101(h) [incorporating Pub. L. 96-536, § 101(o); H.R. 7584, title I], 95 Stat. 1190.  
Dec. 16, 1980, Pub. L. 96-536, § 101(o) [H.R. 7584, title I], 94 Stat. 3169.

Oct. 1, 1980, Pub. L. 96-369, § 101(a), 94 Stat. 1351.  
Sept. 24, 1979, Pub. L. 96-68, title I, 93 Stat. 417, 418.  
Oct. 10, 1978, Pub. L. 95-431, title I, 92 Stat. 1022, 1023.  
Aug. 2, 1977, Pub. L. 95-86, title I, 91 Stat. 420, 421.  
July 14, 1976, Pub. L. 94-362, title I, 90 Stat. 938, 939.  
Oct. 21, 1975, Pub. L. 94-121, title I, 89 Stat. 613, 614.  
Oct. 5, 1974, Pub. L. 93-433, title I, 88 Stat. 1188, 1189.  
Nov. 27, 1973, Pub. L. 93-162, title I, 87 Stat. 637, 638.  
Oct. 25, 1972, Pub. L. 92-544, title I, 86 Stat. 1110, 1111.  
Aug. 10, 1971, Pub. L. 92-77, title I, 85 Stat. 247, 248.  
Oct. 21, 1970, Pub. L. 91-472, title I, 84 Stat. 1041, 1042.  
Dec. 24, 1969, Pub. L. 91-153, title I, 83 Stat. 404, 405.  
Aug. 9, 1968, Pub. L. 90-470, title I, 82 Stat. 669, 670.  
Nov. 8, 1967, Pub. L. 90-133, title I, 81 Stat. 412, 413.  
Nov. 8, 1966, Pub. L. 89-797, title I, 80 Stat. 1480, 1481.  
Sept. 2, 1965, Pub. L. 89-164, title I, 79 Stat. 621, 622.  
Aug. 31, 1964, Pub. L. 88-527, title I, 78 Stat. 712, 713.  
Dec. 30, 1963, Pub. L. 88-245, title I, 77 Stat. 777, 778.  
Oct. 18, 1962, Pub. L. 87-843, title I, 76 Stat. 1081, 1082.  
Sept. 21, 1961, Pub. L. 87-264, title I, 75 Stat. 546, 547.  
Aug. 31, 1960, Pub. L. 86-678, title I, 74 Stat. 557, 558.  
July 13, 1959, Pub. L. 86-84, title I, 73 Stat. 183, 184.  
June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-474, title I, 72 Stat. 246, 247.  
June 11, 1957, Pub. L. 85-49, title I, 71 Stat. 56, 57.  
June 20, 1956, ch. 414, title I, 70 Stat. 301.

July 7, 1955, ch. 279, title I, 69 Stat. 265, 266.  
July 2, 1954, ch. 456, title I, 68 Stat. 414, 415.  
Aug. 5, 1953, ch. 328, title I, 67 Stat. 368, 369.  
July 10, 1952, ch. 651, title I, 66 Stat. 550, 551.  
Oct. 22, 1951, ch. 533, title I, 65 Stat. 577, 578.  
Sept. 6, 1950, ch. 896, Ch. III, title I, 64 Stat. 610, 611.  
July 20, 1949, ch. 354, title I, 63 Stat. 449-451.  
June 3, 1948, ch. 400, title I, 62 Stat. 308-310.  
July 9, 1947, ch. 211, title I, 61 Stat. 282-284.  
July 5, 1946, ch. 541, title I, 60 Stat. 453, 454.  
May 21, 1945, ch. 129, title I, 59 Stat. 175, 176.  
June 28, 1944, ch. 294, title I, 58 Stat. 402, 403.  
July 1, 1943, ch. 182, title I, 57 Stat. 277, 278.  
July 2, 1942, ch. 472, title I, 56 Stat. 474, 475.  
June 28, 1941, ch. 258, title I, 55 Stat. 271-273.  
May 14, 1940, ch. 189, title I, 54 Stat. 187-189.  
June 29, 1939, ch. 248, title I, 53 Stat. 891-893.  
Apr. 27, 1938, ch. 180, title I, 52 Stat. 253-255.

June 16, 1937, ch. 359, title I, 50 Stat. 267, 268.  
June 22, 1936, ch. 689, title III, 49 Stat. 1634.  
May 15, 1936, ch. 405, title I, 49 Stat. 1315-1317.  
Mar. 22, 1935, ch. 39, title I, 49 Stat. 73, 74.  
Apr. 7, 1934, ch. 104, title I, 48 Stat. 534.  
Mar. 1, 1933, ch. 144, title I, 47 Stat. 1376.  
July 1, 1932, ch. 361, title I, 47 Stat. 480-486.  
Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 280, title I, 46 Stat. 1314-1320.  
June 27, 1930, ch. 652, 46 Stat. 825.  
Apr. 18, 1930, ch. 184, title I, 46 Stat. 179-185.  
Jan. 25, 1929, ch. 102, title I, 45 Stat. 1100-1107.  
Feb. 15, 1928, ch. 57, title I, 45 Stat. 69-75.  
Feb. 24, 1927, ch. 189, title I, 44 Stat. 1184-1191.  
Apr. 29, 1926, ch. 195, title I, 44 Stat. 335-340.  
Feb. 27, 1925, ch. 364, title I, 43 Stat. 1019-1024.  
May 28, 1924, ch. 204, title I, 43 Stat. 210-215.  
Jan. 3, 1923, ch. 21, title I, 42 Stat. 1073-1077.  
June 1, 1922, ch. 204, title I, 42 Stat. 605-609.

#### § 269b. Omitted

Section, acts May 3, 1928, ch. 489, 45 Stat. 487; Sept. 21, 1950, ch. 976, § 1(a), 64 Stat. 902; July 27, 1956, ch. 750, 70 Stat. 696; Feb. 16, 1960, Pub. L. 86-384, 74 Stat. 3; Oct. 4, 1961, Pub. L. 87-365, 75 Stat. 784, which authorized appropriations for the Department of State for the fiscal years 1963 and 1964, not in excess of \$50,000 per fiscal year, to meet the obligations of the United States as a member of the Inter-American Children's Institute, has been omitted because the authorization has not been extended for later than the 1963 and 1964 fiscal years.

#### § 269c. International Statistical Bureau at The Hague; authorization of appropriations

There is hereby authorized to be appropriated, out of any sums in the Treasury not otherwise appropriated, sums not exceeding \$2,500 per annum to enable the United States to maintain membership in the International Statistical Bureau at The Hague, such sums to be expended under the direction of the Secretary of State.

(Apr. 28, 1924, ch. 136, 43 Stat. 112.)

#### § 269d. Inter American Statistical Institute; authorization of appropriations

To enable the United States to become an adhering member of the Inter American Statistical Institute, there is hereby authorized to be appropriated annually, out of any money in the Treasury not otherwise appropriated, such sums as may be required for expenditure under the direction of the Secretary of State, for the payment of the share of the United States toward the support of the Institute: *Provided*, That (1) the membership dues of the United States payable for any fiscal year shall not be paid unless, during the preceding fiscal year, at least eight other American nations shall have been in good standing as adhering members, and unless at least eight of such other adhering members for the last preceding year for which such members were respectively obligated to pay dues shall have paid dues which aggregated at least \$10,000, and (2) the total cost to the United States for any fiscal year, for adhering membership, shall not exceed \$35,000.

(Jan. 27, 1942, ch. 22, 56 Stat. 20; July 2, 1945, ch. 218, 59 Stat. 311.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1945—Act July 2, 1945, substituted the single proviso for two provisos.

**§ 269e. Omitted**

## CODIFICATION

Section, acts July 10, 1952, ch. 651, title I, 66 Stat. 551; Aug. 5, 1953, ch. 328, title I, 67 Stat. 368; July 2, 1954, ch. 456, title I, 68 Stat. 415; July 7, 1955, ch. 279, title I, 69 Stat. 266; June 20, 1956, ch. 414, title I, 70 Stat. 301, related to availability of funds for United States participation in the International Civil Aviation Organization, and was from annual Department of State Appropriation Acts. Similar provisions which are permanent are classified to section 2673 of this title.

**§ 269f. International Bureau for the Protection of Industrial Property; authorization of appropriations**

Funds appropriated to the Secretary of State for "International Organizations and Conferences" shall be available for the payment by the United States of its proportionate share of the expenses of the International Bureau for the Protection of Industrial Property for any year after 1981 as determined under article 16(4) of the Paris Convention for the Protection of Industrial Property, as revised, except that in no event shall the payment for any year exceed 6 per centum of all expenses of the Bureau apportioned among countries for that year.

(Pub. L. 86-614, July 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 381; Pub. L. 88-69, July 19, 1963, 77 Stat. 82; Pub. L. 92-511, Oct. 20, 1972, 86 Stat. 918; Pub. L. 98-164, title I, § 112, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1019.)

## AMENDMENTS

1983—Pub. L. 98-164 substituted provisions making appropriations available for the payment of expenses of the International Bureau for the Protection of Industrial Property for any year after 1981, for provisions authorizing appropriations for contributions for the support of the International Bureau of Intellectual Property for the period from July 1, 1950, through June 30, 1959, and for the payment by the United States of its share of the expenses of the Bureau.

1972—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 92-511, §1(1), substituted "International Bureau of Intellectual Property" for "International Bureau for the Protection of Industrial Property".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 92-511, §1(2), substituted provisions authorizing appropriation of sums as determined under article 16(4) of the Paris Convention for the Protection of Industrial Property up to a maximum of 4.5 percent of the total expenses apportioned among member countries, for provisions authorizing appropriation of sums for payment by the United States of its proportionate share not exceeding \$15,000 annually.

1963—Pub. L. 88-69 increased the limitation on the annual appropriation authorization from \$7,250 to \$15,000.

## ANNUAL APPROPRIATIONS

Annual appropriations to meet the obligations of membership in various international organizations were contained in acts listed in a note set out under section 269a of this title.

**§ 269g. Private International Law Conference at The Hague and Private Law International Institute in Rome; membership; appointment of delegates**

The President is hereby authorized to accept membership for the Government of the United States in (1) the Hague Conference on Private International Law and (2) the International (Rome) Institute for the Unification of Private Law, and to appoint the United States delegates

and their alternates to meetings of the two organizations, and the committees and organs thereof.

(Pub. L. 88-244, §1, Dec. 30, 1963, 77 Stat. 775.)

**§ 269g-1. Authorization of appropriations**

There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as may be necessary for the payment by the United States of its proportionate share of the expenses of the Hague Conference on Private International Law and of the International (Rome) Institute for the Unification of Private Law.

(Pub. L. 88-244, §2, Dec. 30, 1963, 77 Stat. 775; Pub. L. 92-497, Oct. 17, 1972, 86 Stat. 814; Pub. L. 97-241, title I, §114, Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 278.)

## AMENDMENTS

1982—Pub. L. 97-241 struck out provision that no payment of the United States for any year exceed 7 per centum of all expenses apportioned among members for that year.

1972—Pub. L. 92-497 substituted provisions authorizing to be appropriated such sums as may be necessary for the payment of the United States of its proportionate share, except that no payment of the United States for any year shall exceed 7 per centum of all expenses apportioned among members for that year, for provisions authorizing to be appropriated such sums as may be necessary, not to exceed \$25,000 annually, for the payment by the United States of its proportionate share.

## ANNUAL APPROPRIATIONS

Annual appropriations to meet the obligations of membership in various international organizations were contained in acts listed in a note set out under section 269a of this title.

**§ 269h. International Union for the Publication of Customs Tariffs; authorization of annual appropriations for expenses**

There is hereby authorized to be appropriated annually to the Department of State such sums as may be necessary, including contributions pursuant to the convention of July 5, 1890, as amended, for the payment by the United States of its share of the expenses of the International Union for the Publication of Customs Tariffs and of the Bureau established to carry out the functions of the Union, but not to exceed 6 per centum of such expenses per annum.

(Pub. L. 90-569, Oct. 12, 1968, 82 Stat. 1003.)

## ANNUAL APPROPRIATIONS

Annual appropriations to meet the obligations of membership in various international organizations were contained in acts listed in a note set out under section 269a of this title.

**§§ 270 to 270g. Repealed. Pub. L. 88-619, §3, Oct. 3, 1964, 78 Stat. 995**

Sections 270 to 270c, act July 3, 1930, ch. 851, §§1-4, 46 Stat. 1005, 1006, related to international tribunals, the administration of oaths, perjury, testimony of witnesses, production of documentary evidence, subpoena power, contempt and its punishment, the authority of commissioners to take evidence, and to procedure. See section 1782 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

Sections 270d to 270g, act July 3, 1930, ch. 851, §§5-8, as added June 7, 1933, ch. 50, 48 Stat. 117, 118, related to

international tribunals, issuance of subpoenas upon application of United States' agent to United States district court, proceedings thereon, notice to foreign governments, forwarding of certified transcripts of testimony to agents of United States and any opposing government, perjury and contempt and the penalties therefor, and declared the Supreme Court of the District of Columbia to be a district court of the United States. See section 1782 of Title 28.

### § 271. International Labor Organization; membership

The President is authorized to accept membership for the Government of the United States of America in the International Labor Organization, which, through its general conference of representatives of its members and through its International Labor Office, collects information concerning labor throughout the world and prepares international conventions for the consideration of member governments with a view to improving conditions of labor.

(June 19, 1934, ch. 676, § 1, 48 Stat. 1182.)

#### ACCEPTANCE OF CONSTITUTION BY UNITED STATES

Section 1 of act June 30, 1948, ch. 756, 62 Stat. 1151, provided: "That the President is hereby authorized to accept for the Government of the United States of America the Constitution of the International Labor Organization Instrument of Amendment adopted by the Twenty-ninth Session of the International Labor Conference on October 9, 1946."

#### ACCEPTANCE OF CONSTITUTIONAL AMENDMENT BY UNITED STATES

Pub. L. 88-65, July 17, 1963, 77 Stat. 80, provided: "That the President is hereby authorized to accept on behalf of the United States of America the instrument for the amendment of the constitution of the International Labor Organization adopted at Geneva on June 22, 1962, by the International Labor Conference at its forty-sixth session."

#### REASONS FOR ACCEPTANCE OF CONSTITUTION BY UNITED STATES

The reasons for acceptance of the Constitution of the Organization by the United States is set forth in the preliminary clauses of act June 30, 1948, ch. 756, 62 Stat. 1151, which provided that:

"Whereas the Senate and House of Representatives by Public Resolution Numbered 43 of the Seventy-third Congress authorized the President to accept membership for the Government of the United States of America in the International Labor Organization and the President, pursuant thereto, accepted such membership on August 20, 1934; and

"Whereas such membership in the International Labor Organization has proved of benefit to the people of the United States; and

"Whereas the International Labor Organization provides a unique international forum in which representatives of employers and workers join together with those of governments in formulating conventions and recommendations which serve as international minimum standards for labor and social legislation and administration within member countries; and

"Whereas extensive revision of the constitution has been undertaken to enable the Organization to meet changed conditions, to strengthen the application of conventions and recommendations, with careful provision to meet the constitutional rules and practices of Federal States, and to operate as a specialized agency in relationship with the United Nations; and

"Whereas the Constitution of the International Labor Organization Instrument of Amendment of 1946 was adopted unanimously on October 9, 1946, with the entire

delegation of the United States to the Twenty-ninth Session of the International Labor Conference supporting this Instrument of Amendment."

#### EX. ORD. NO. 12216. PRESIDENT'S COMMITTEE ON THE INTERNATIONAL LABOR ORGANIZATION

Ex. Ord. No. 12216, June 18, 1980, 45 F.R. 41619, provided:

By the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and statutes of the United States of America, and in order to create in accordance with the Federal Advisory Committee Act (5 U.S.C. App.) an advisory committee on United States participation in the International Labor Organization, it is hereby ordered as follows:

##### 1-1. ESTABLISHMENT OF COMMITTEE

1-101. There is established the President's Committee on the International Labor Organization (ILO). The members will be the Secretaries of Labor, State, and Commerce, the Assistant to the President for National Security Affairs, and the Presidents of the AFL-CIO and the United States Council of the International Chamber of Commerce, or their designated representatives.

1-102. The Chairman of the Committee shall be the Secretary of Labor. The Committee shall meet at the request of the Chairman.

##### 1-2. FUNCTIONS OF THE COMMITTEE

1-201. The Committee shall monitor and assess the work of the ILO.

1-202. The Committee shall make recommendations to the President or other officers of the Federal government, including the Secretary of Labor. With due recognition that in the ILO tripartite system, government, employer, and employee representatives retain the right to take positions independent of one another, the Committee shall exert its best efforts to develop a coordinated position as to United States policy on ILO issues.

1-203. The Committee shall also perform other functions relevant to relations with the ILO as requested by the President or the Committee Chairman.

##### 1-3. FUNDING AND EXPENSES

1-301. Each member of the Committee who is not otherwise employed full-time by the Federal government may receive, to the extent permitted by law, compensation for each day he is engaged in the work of the Committee at a rate not to exceed the maximum daily rate now or hereafter prescribed by law, and may also receive transportation and travel expenses, including per diem in lieu of subsistence, as authorized by law (5 U.S.C. 5702 and 5703).

1-302. The Chairman of the Committee is authorized to establish such additional advisory committees as may be deemed appropriate to carry out the purposes of this Order.

1-303. All necessary administrative staff services, support, facilities and expenses of the Committee shall be furnished by the Department of Labor to the extent permitted by law.

##### 1-4. GENERAL PROVISIONS

1-401. Notwithstanding the provisions of any other Executive order, the functions of the President applicable to the Committee under the Federal Advisory Committee Act, as amended (5 U.S.C. App.), except that of reporting annually to the Congress, are hereby delegated to the Secretary of Labor, who shall perform them in accordance with guidelines and procedures established by the Administrator of General Services.

1-402. The Committee shall terminate on December 31, 1980, unless this date is extended by further Executive order.

JIMMY CARTER.

EXTENSION OF TERM OF PRESIDENT'S COMMITTEE ON THE  
INTERNATIONAL LABOR ORGANIZATION

Term of the President's Committee on the International Labor Organization extended until Dec. 31, 1982, by Ex. Ord. No. 12258, Dec. 31, 1980, 46 F.R. 1251, formerly set out as a note under section 14 of the Federal Advisory Committee Act in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

Term of the President's Committee on the International Labor Organization extended until Sept. 30, 1984, by Ex. Ord. No. 12399, Dec. 31, 1982, 48 F.R. 379, formerly set out as a note under section 14 of the Federal Advisory Committee Act in the Appendix to Title 5.

Term of the President's Committee on the International Labor Organization extended until Sept. 30, 1985, by Ex. Ord. No. 12489, Sept. 28, 1984, 49 F.R. 38927, formerly set out as a note under section 14 of the Federal Advisory Committee Act in the Appendix to Title 5.

Term of the President's Committee on the International Labor Organization extended until Sept. 30, 1987, by Ex. Ord. No. 12534, Sept. 30, 1985, 50 F.R. 40319, formerly set out as a note under section 14 of the Federal Advisory Committee Act in the Appendix to Title 5.

Term of the President's Committee on the International Labor Organization extended until Sept. 30, 1989, by Ex. Ord. No. 12610, Sept. 30, 1987, 52 F.R. 36901, formerly set out as a note under section 14 of the Federal Advisory Committee Act in the Appendix to Title 5.

Term of the President's Committee on the International Labor Organization extended until Sept. 30, 1991, by Ex. Ord. No. 12692, Sept. 29, 1989, 54 F.R. 40627, formerly set out as a note under section 14 of the Federal Advisory Committee Act in the Appendix to Title 5.

Term of the President's Committee on the International Labor Organization extended until Sept. 30, 1993, by Ex. Ord. No. 12774, Sept. 27, 1991, 56 F.R. 49835, formerly set out as a note under section 14 of the Federal Advisory Committee Act in the Appendix to Title 5.

Term of the President's Committee on the International Labor Organization extended until Sept. 30, 1995, by Ex. Ord. No. 12869, Sept. 30, 1993, 58 F.R. 51751, formerly set out as a note under section 14 of the Federal Advisory Committee Act in the Appendix to Title 5.

Term of the President's Committee on the International Labor Organization extended until Sept. 30, 1997, by Ex. Ord. No. 12974, Sept. 29, 1995, 60 F.R. 51875, set out as a note under section 14 of the Federal Advisory Committee Act in the Appendix to Title 5.

**§ 272. Omitted**

CODIFICATION

Section, act June 19, 1934, ch. 676, §2, 48 Stat. 1183, provided that the President, in accepting membership in the International Labor Organization, was to assume no obligation under the covenant of the League of Nations.

**§ 272a. Authorization of appropriations**

There is hereby authorized to be appropriated annually to the Department of State—

(a) such sums as may be necessary for the payments by the United States of its share of the expenses of the Organization, but not to exceed 25 per centum of such expenses, as apportioned by the International Labour Conference in accordance with article 13(2)(c) and 13(3) of the constitution of the Organization; and

(b) such additional sums as may be necessary to pay the expenses incident to partici-

pation by the United States in the activities of the Organization, including—

(1) salaries of the representative or representatives and alternates and appropriate staff, including personal services in the District of Columbia and elsewhere, without regard to the civil-service laws and chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of title 5; services as authorized by section 3109 of title 5; under such rules and regulations as the Secretary of State may prescribe, allowances for living quarters, including heat, fuel, and light and cost-of-living allowances to persons temporarily stationed abroad; printing and binding without regard to section 501 of title 44, and section 5 of title 41; and

(2) such other expenses as the Secretary of State deems necessary to participation by the United States in the activities of the Organization: *Provided*, That the provisions of section 287r of this title, and regulations thereunder, applicable to expenses incurred pursuant to subchapter XVII of this chapter shall be applicable to any expenses incurred pursuant to this paragraph.

(June 30, 1948, ch. 756, §2, 62 Stat. 1151; Oct. 28, 1949, ch. 782, title II, §202(2), title XI, §1106(a), 63 Stat. 954, 972; Sept. 21, 1950, ch. 976, §1(e), 64 Stat. 903; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. V, §502(f), 72 Stat. 273.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The civil-service laws, referred to in subsec. (b)(1), are set forth in Title 5, Government Organization and Employees. See, particularly, section 3301 et seq. of Title 5.

Subchapter XVII [§287m et seq.] of this chapter, referred to in subsec. (b)(2), was in the original a reference to the Act of July 30, 1946, Public Law 565, Seventy-ninth Congress.

CODIFICATION

In subsec. (b)(1), "chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of title 5" and "section 3109 of title 5" substituted for "the Classification Act of 1949" and "section 15 of Public Law 600, Seventy-ninth Congress [5 U.S.C. 55a]", respectively, on authority of Pub. L. 89-554, §7(b) Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 631, the first section of which enacted Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

"Section 501 of title 44" substituted for "section 11 of the Act of March 1, 1919 (44 U.S.C. 111)" on authority of Pub. L. 90-620, §2(b), Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1305, the first section of which enacted Title 44, Public Printing and Documents.

AMENDMENTS

1958—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 85-477 substituted provisions limiting appropriations to not more than 25 per centum of the expenses for provisions which authorized an appropriation of not more than \$1,750,000 per annum for payment of expenses.

1950—Subsec. (a). Joint Res. Sept. 21, 1950, §1(e)(1), (2), increased the authorized annual appropriation from \$1,091,739 to \$1,750,000, and changed the reference to the Organization's constitution from article 13(c) to article 13(2)(c) and 13(3).

Subsec. (b). Joint Res. Sept. 21, 1950, §1(e)(3), struck out limitation of \$95,000 on the authorized annual appropriation for expenses.

1949—Subsec. (b)(1). Act Oct. 28, 1949, substituted "Classification Act of 1949" for "Classification Act of 1923".

## LIMITATION OF CONTRIBUTIONS

Contributions by United States, except for special projects, limited to amount provided by Joint Res. Sept. 21, 1950; consent by State Department and reports to Congress, see section 262a of this title.

## ANNUAL APPROPRIATIONS

Annual appropriations to meet the obligations of membership in various international organizations were contained in acts listed in a note set out under section 269a of this title.

**§ 272b. Loyalty check on United States personnel**

No person shall serve as representative, delegate, or alternate from the United States until such person has been investigated as to loyalty and security by the Director of the Office of Personnel Management.

(June 30, 1948, ch. 756, §3, 62 Stat. 1152; Apr. 5, 1952, ch. 159, §1, 66 Stat. 43; 1978 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §102, eff. Jan. 1, 1979, 43 F.R. 36037, 92 Stat. 3784.)

## AMENDMENTS

1952—Act Apr. 5, 1952, substituted “Civil Service Commission” for “Federal Bureau of Investigation”.

## TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“Director of the Office of Personnel Management” substituted in text for “Civil Service Commission” pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1978, §102, 43 F.R. 36037, 92 Stat. 3783, set out under section 1101 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, which transferred functions vested by statute in Civil Service Commission to Director of Office of Personnel Management (except as otherwise specified), effective Jan. 1, 1979, as provided by section 1–102 of Ex. Ord. No. 12107, Dec. 28, 1978, 44 F.R. 1055, set out under section 1101 of Title 5.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 5 section 1304.

**§ 273. Pan American Institute of Geography and History; authorization of annual appropriations for membership**

In order to meet the obligations of the United States as a member of the Pan American Institute of Geography and History, there are authorized to be appropriated to the Department of State—

(1) such sums as may be required for the payment by the United States of its share of the expenses of the Institute, as apportioned in accordance with the statutes of the Institute;

(2) such additional sums as may be needed annually for the payment of all necessary expenses incident to participation by the United States in the activities of the Institute; and

(3) the sum of \$386,050 for payment by the United States of its assessed annual contributions for the period beginning July 1, 1964, and extending through the fiscal year expiring June 30, 1969.

(Aug. 2, 1935, ch. 430, §1, 49 Stat. 512; Aug. 31, 1954, ch. 1154, 68 Stat. 1008; Oct. 13, 1966, Pub. L. 89–646, 80 Stat. 893; July 17, 1970, Pub. L. 91–340, 84 Stat. 438; Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97–241, title I, §113, 96 Stat. 278.)

## AMENDMENTS

1982—Par. (1). Pub. L. 97–241 struck out “, not to exceed \$200,000 annually,” after “such sums”.

1970—Pub. L. 91–340 increased annual appropriation authorization in par. (1) from \$90,300 to \$200,000, and added par. (3).

1966—Pub. L. 89–646 redesignated as cl. (1) provisions of former cl. (b), increasing the annual appropriation authorization from \$50,000 to \$90,300 and substituted cl. (2) additional annual appropriation authorization for payment of necessary expenses incident to participation by the United States in Institute activities for former cl. (a) appropriation authorization of \$98,775 for payment by the United States of its assessed annual contributions for period beginning July 1, 1951, and extending through fiscal year expiring June 30, 1954.

1954—Act Aug. 31, 1954, appropriated sufficient funds to pay back assessments for years 1951 to 1954, and increased from \$10,000 to \$50,000 the authorized annual contribution.

## ANNUAL APPROPRIATIONS

Annual appropriations to meet the obligations of membership in various international organizations were contained in acts listed in a note set out under section 269a of this title.

**§ 274. International Council of Scientific Unions and Associated Unions; authorization of annual appropriations for membership**

There is hereby authorized to be appropriated, to be expended under the direction of the Secretary of State, in paying the annual share of the United States as an adhering member of the International Council of Scientific Unions and Associated Unions, including the International Astronomical Union, International Union of Chemistry, International Union of Geodesy and Geophysics, International Union of Mathematics, International Scientific Radio Union, International Union of Physics, and International Geographical Union, and such other international scientific unions as the Secretary of State may designate, such sum as may be necessary for the payment of such annual share, not to exceed \$100,000 in any one year.

(Aug. 7, 1935, ch. 454, 49 Stat. 540; Aug. 14, 1958, Pub. L. 85–627, 72 Stat. 574; Aug. 3, 1965, Pub. L. 89–104, 79 Stat. 427.)

## AMENDMENTS

1965—Pub. L. 89–104 substituted “\$100,000” for “\$65,000”.

1958—Pub. L. 85–627 substituted “\$65,000” for “\$9,000”.

## ANNUAL APPROPRIATIONS

Annual appropriations to meet the obligations of membership in various international organizations were contained in acts listed in a note set out under section 269a of this title.

## ANNUAL APPROPRIATIONS BETWEEN 1948 AND 1970

Act June 3, 1948, ch. 400, title I, §101, 62 Stat. 305, and subsequent Department of State Appropriation Acts through act Dec. 24, 1969, Pub. L. 91–153, title I, §101, 83 Stat. 404, failed to authorize appropriations for this section. See Annual Appropriations note set out above.

**§ 274a. International biological program****(a) Congressional findings**

The Congress hereby finds and declares that the international biological program, which was established under the auspices of the International Council of Scientific Unions and the International Union of Biological Sciences and is sponsored in the United States by the Na-

tional Academy of Sciences and the National Academy of Engineering, deals with one of the most crucial situations to face this or any other civilization—the immediate or near potential of mankind to damage, possibly beyond repair, the earth's ecological system on which all life depends. The Congress further finds and declares that the international biological program provides an immediate and effective means available of meeting this situation, through its stated objectives of increased study and research related to biological productivity and human welfare in a changing world environment.

**(b) Congressional support**

The Congress therefore commends and endorses the international biological program and expresses its support of the United States National Committee and the Interagency Coordinating Committee, which together have the responsibility for planning, coordinating, and carrying out the program in the United States.

**(c) Priority**

In view of the urgency of the problem, the Congress finds and declares that the provision by the United States of adequate financial and other support for the international biological program is a matter of first priority.

(Pub. L. 91-438, §1, Oct. 7, 1970, 84 Stat. 889.)

**§ 274b. Cooperation of Federal and non-Federal departments, agencies, and organizations; transfers of funds**

**(a) Full cooperation with international biological program**

The Congress calls upon all Federal departments and agencies and other persons and organizations, both public and private, to support and cooperate fully with the international biological program and the activities and goals of the United States National Committee and the Interagency Coordinating Committee.

**(b) Authorization for transfers of funds**

For this purpose, the Congress authorizes and requests all Federal departments and agencies having functions or objectives which coincide with or are related to those of the international biological program to obligate or make appropriate transfers of funds to the program from moneys available for such functions or objectives and provide such other support as may be appropriate.

(Pub. L. 91-438, §2, Oct. 7, 1970, 84 Stat. 889.)

**§ 275. International Hydrographic Bureau**

To enable the United States to become a member of the International Hydrographic Bureau, and for the first annual contribution of the United States toward the creation and maintenance of such bureau, there is hereby appropriated out of money in the Treasury not otherwise appropriated \$2,500, or so much thereof as may be necessary, to be paid by the Secretary of State when the exact quota shall have been ascertained.

(Mar. 2, 1921, ch. 113, 41 Stat. 1215.)

ANNUAL APPROPRIATIONS

Annual appropriations to meet the obligations of membership in various international organizations

were contained in acts listed in a note set out under section 269a of this title.

**§ 275a. Permanent International Commission of the Congresses of Navigation; authorization of appropriations**

Not to exceed \$45,000 annually of the funds appropriated for rivers and harbors shall be available for the support and maintenance of the Permanent International Commission of the Congresses of Navigation and for the payment in amounts approved by the Chief of Engineers of the expenses of the properly accredited delegates of the United States to the meetings of the congresses and of the Commission.

(June 30, 1948, ch. 771, title I, §107, 62 Stat. 1174; Oct. 27, 1965, Pub. L. 89-298, title III, §306, 79 Stat. 1094; Mar. 7, 1974, Pub. L. 93-251, title I, §93, 88 Stat. 39.)

AMENDMENTS

1974—Pub. L. 93-251 substituted “\$45,000” for “\$22,000”.

1965—Pub. L. 89-298 substituted “\$22,000” for “\$5,000”.

**§ 276. Bureau of Interparliamentary Union; American group; authorization of appropriations; disbursements**

There is authorized to be appropriated for fiscal year 1976 and for each subsequent fiscal year—

(1) for the annual contribution of the United States toward the maintenance of the Bureau of the Interparliamentary Union for the promotion of international arbitration, an amount equal to 13.61 per centum of the budget of the Interparliamentary Union for the year with respect to which such contribution is to be made if the American group of the Interparliamentary Union has approved such budget; and

(2) to assist in meeting the expenses of the American group for such fiscal year, \$90,000, or so much thereof as may be necessary.

Funds made available under paragraph (2) shall be disbursed on vouchers to be approved by the Chairman of the House delegation in the case of delegates from the House of Representatives or the Chairman of the Senate delegation in the case of delegates from the Senate, except that either such Chairman may authorize the executive secretary of the American group to approve such vouchers on his behalf.

(June 28, 1935, ch. 322, §1, 49 Stat. 425; Feb. 6, 1948, ch. 48, 62 Stat. 19; June 20, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. V, §502(b), 72 Stat. 272; Sept. 4, 1961, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. IV, §710(a), 75 Stat. 465; Aug. 1, 1962, Pub. L. 87-565, pt. IV, §404, 76 Stat. 263; Oct. 7, 1964, Pub. L. 88-633, pt. IV, §401, 78 Stat. 1014; Nov. 14, 1967, Pub. L. 90-137, pt. IV, §402, 81 Stat. 463; Feb. 7, 1972, Pub. L. 92-226, pt. IV, §404, 86 Stat. 34; Oct. 18, 1973, Pub. L. 93-126, §3, 87 Stat. 451; Nov. 29, 1975, Pub. L. 94-141, title II, §204(a), 89 Stat. 762; June 15, 1977, Pub. L. 95-45, §4(d)(1), 91 Stat. 223; Oct. 7, 1978, Pub. L. 95-426, title VII, §710, 92 Stat. 994.)

AMENDMENTS

1978—Par. (2). Pub. L. 95-426 substituted “\$90,000” for “\$45,000”.

1977—Pub. L. 95-45 substituted provision directing that funds made available under par. (2) be disbursed on vouchers approved by the Chairman of the House delegation in the case of delegates from the House of Representatives or the Chairman of the Senate delegation in the case of delegates from the Senate, except that either such Chairman may authorize the executive secretary of the American group to approve such vouchers on his behalf for provision directing only that such funds be disbursed on vouchers approved by the president and executive secretary of the American group.

1975—Pub. L. 94-141 designated existing provisions as pars. (1) and (2), substituted provisions for determining the amount of annual contributions for fiscal year 1976 and subsequent years on a per centum basis for provisions setting forth a specific annual appropriation, and made expense voucher provisions applicable to such par. (2).

1973—Pub. L. 93-126 substituted “\$120,000” for “\$102,000” and “\$75,000” for “\$57,000”.

1972—Pub. L. 92-226 substituted “\$102,000” for “\$53,550”, “\$57,000” for “\$26,650”, and “\$45,000” for “\$26,900”.

1967—Pub. L. 90-137 substituted “\$53,550” for “\$50,000” and “\$26,650” for “\$23,100”.

1964—Pub. L. 88-633 substituted “\$50,000” for “\$48,000”, “\$23,100” for “\$21,000”, and “\$26,900” for “\$27,000”.

1962—Pub. L. 87-565 substituted “\$21,000” for “\$18,000” and “\$27,000” for “\$30,000”.

1961—Pub. L. 87-195 substituted “\$48,000” for “\$33,000” and “\$30,000” for “\$15,000”.

1958—Pub. L. 85-477 substituted “\$33,000” for “\$30,000” and “\$18,000” for “\$15,000”.

1948—Act Feb. 6, 1948, increased annual appropriation from \$20,000 to \$30,000 to allow an increase of \$5,000 in annual contribution by United States and an increase of \$5,000 in expense payments.

#### TERMINATION DATE OF 1961 AMENDMENT

Section 710(b) of Pub. L. 87-195 which provided that the amendments made by section 710(a) to this section shall be effective only for the fiscal year 1962, was repealed by section 401 of Pub. L. 87-565.

#### REPEALS

Section 710(a) of Pub. L. 87-195, cited as a credit to this section, was repealed by section 401 of Pub. L. 87-565, except insofar as section 710(a) affected this section.

#### PERMANENT APPROPRIATIONS FOR DELEGATION EXPENSES

Pub. L. 103-236, title V, § 502(b), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 462, provided that: “Funds appropriated and disbursed pursuant to section 303 of Title III [of section 101(a)] of Public Law 100-202 (101 Stat. 1329-23; 22 U.S.C. 276 note) are authorized to be deposited in interest-bearing accounts and any interest which accrues shall be deposited, periodically, in a miscellaneous account of the Treasury.”

Pub. L. 100-202, § 101(a) [title III, § 303], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329, 1329-23, as amended by Pub. L. 100-459, title III, § 303(a), Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2207; Pub. L. 101-515, title III, § 304(a), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2128, provided that: “There is hereby appropriated, out of any money in the Treasury not otherwise appropriated, a total of \$440,000 for each fiscal year to carry out (in accordance with the respective authorization amounts) paragraph (2) of the first section of Public Law 74-170 [22 U.S.C. 276(2)], section 2(2) of Public Law 84-689 [22 U.S.C. 1928b(2)], section 2 of Public Law 86-42 [22 U.S.C. 276e], section 2 of Public Law 86-420 [22 U.S.C. 276i], and section 109(b) and (c) of the Department of State Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1984 and 1985 [§ 109(b), (c) of Pub. L. 98-164, title I, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1019]. [sic] These funds may be disbursed to each delegation, pursuant to vouchers in accordance with the applicable provisions of law, at any time requested by

the Chairman of the delegation after that fiscal year begins.”

[Section 303(c) of Pub. L. 100-459 provided that: “The amendments made by this section [amending this note] shall take effect on October 1, 1988.”]

#### ANNUAL APPROPRIATIONS

Annual appropriations to meet the obligations of membership in various international organizations were contained in acts listed in a note set out under section 269a of this title.

#### APPROPRIATIONS FOR EXPENSES OF INTERPARLIAMENTARY GROUPS

Pub. L. 98-164, title I, § 109(b), (c), Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1019, as amended by Pub. L. 99-415, § 7(b), Sept. 19, 1986, 100 Stat. 949; Pub. L. 100-459, title III, § 303(b), Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2207; Pub. L. 101-515, title III, § 304(b), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2128, provided that:

“(b) There are authorized to be appropriated each fiscal year \$50,000, to be equally divided between delegations of the Senate and the House of Representatives, to assist in meeting the expenses of the United States Group of the British-American Parliamentary Group. Amounts appropriated under this section [amending section 1928e of this title and enacting this note] are authorized to remain available until expended.

“(c) There are authorized to be appropriated for each fiscal year \$50,000 for expenses of United States participation in the United States-European Community Interparliamentary Group.”

Joint Res. July 13, 1953, ch. 186, 67 Stat. 147, authorized \$150,000 to be appropriated to defray expenses of 1953 meeting of the Interparliamentary Union in Washington, D.C., and nonimmigrant visitors’ visas to be issued to delegates attending the annual meeting without being registered or fingerprinted.

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Reports of expenditures by members of United States group, and by employees of the Senate or House of Representatives, see section 276c-1 of this title.

#### § 276a. Reports to Congress by American group

The American group of the Interparliamentary Union shall submit to the Congress a report for each fiscal year for which an appropriation is made, including its expenditures under such appropriation.

(June 28, 1935, ch. 322, § 2, 49 Stat. 426.)

#### § 276a-1. Conference of the Interparliamentary Union; appointment of delegates from House of Representatives; Chairman; Vice Chairman

There shall be not to exceed twelve delegates from the House of Representatives (at least four of whom shall be from the Committee on Foreign Affairs) to each Conference of the Interparliamentary Union, such delegates to be appointed by the Speaker of the House of Representatives. The Chairman or Vice Chairman of the House delegation shall be a member from the Committee on Foreign Affairs. The Speaker shall designate the Chairman and the Vice Chairman of the House delegation for each such Conference.

(June 28, 1935, ch. 322, § 3, as added Nov. 29, 1975, Pub. L. 94-141, title II, § 204(b), 89 Stat. 762; amended June 15, 1977, Pub. L. 95-45, § 4(d)(2), 91 Stat. 223; Nov. 2, 1994, Pub. L. 103-437, § 9(a)(1), 108 Stat. 4588.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-437 substituted “Foreign Affairs” for “International Relations” in two places.



1977—Pub. L. 95-45 substituted provisions that, there be not to exceed twelve delegates from the House of Representatives (at least four of whom shall be from the Committee on International Relations) to each Conference of the Interparliamentary Union, such delegates to be appointed by the Speaker of the House of Representatives, that the Chairman or Vice Chairman of the House delegation be a member from the Committee on International Relations, and that the Speaker designate the Chairman and the Vice Chairman of the House delegation for each such Conference for provisions that, after January 1, 1976, there be not to exceed nine delegates from the House of Representatives to each Conference of the Interparliamentary Union, such delegates to be appointed by the Speaker of the House of Representatives, and that not more than five delegates from the House of Representatives to any such Conference be of the same political party.

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### **§ 276a-2. Conference of the Interparliamentary Union and all other parliamentary conferences; appointment of delegates from Senate; Chairman; Vice Chairman**

Senate delegates to each conference of the Interparliamentary Union, and to all other parliamentary conferences, shall be designated by the President of the Senate upon recommendations of the majority and minority leaders of the Senate. Unless the President of the Senate, upon the recommendation of the majority leader, determines otherwise, the Chairman or Vice Chairman of the Senate delegation shall be a Member from the Foreign Relations Committee. Not fewer than two Senators designated to be in the Senate delegation to each conference of the Interparliamentary Union shall be members of the Committee on Foreign Relations.

(June 28, 1935, ch. 322, § 4, as added June 15, 1977, Pub. L. 95-45, § 4(d)(3), 91 Stat. 223.)

#### **§ 276a-3. Executive secretary of American group of Interparliamentary Union**

After December 31, 1977, the executive secretary of the American group of the Interparliamentary Union shall be an officer or employee of the Senate or the House of Representatives and shall be appointed—

(1) by the Chairman of the Senate delegation upon recommendations of the majority and minority leaders of the Senate for service during odd-numbered Congresses; and

(2) by the Chairman of the House delegation for service during even-numbered Congresses.

(June 28, 1935, ch. 322, § 5, as added June 15, 1977, Pub. L. 95-45, § 4(d)(3), 91 Stat. 223.)

#### **§ 276a-4. Auditing of accounts of House and Senate delegations to the Interparliamentary Union; finality and conclusiveness of certificate of Chairman**

The certificate of the Chairman of the respective delegation to the Interparliamentary Union (or the certificate of the executive secretary of the American group if the Chairman delegates such authority to him) shall be final and conclu-

sive upon the accounting officers in the auditing of all accounts of the House and Senate delegations to the Interparliamentary Union.

(June 28, 1935, ch. 322, § 6, as added June 15, 1977, Pub. L. 95-45, § 4(d)(3), 91 Stat. 223.)

#### **§ 276b. Repealed. Pub. L. 95-45, § 4(d)(4), June 15, 1977, 91 Stat. 223**

Section, act Aug. 25, 1937, ch. 757, 50 Stat. 770, provided that, on and after Aug. 25, 1937, the certificate of the president and executive secretary of the American Group of the Interparliamentary Union be final and conclusive upon the accounting officers in the auditing of all accounts of the Group. See section 276a-4 of this title.

#### **§ 276c. Designation of Senate delegates to Conferences of the Interparliamentary Union**

On and after June 30, 1958, Senate delegates to Conferences of the Interparliamentary Union shall be designated by the Presiding Officer of the Senate. Not less than two Senators so designated shall be members of the Committee on Foreign Relations.

(Pub. L. 85-474, title I, June 30, 1958, 72 Stat. 246; Pub. L. 94-141, title II, § 204(c), Nov. 29, 1975, 89 Stat. 762.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1975—Pub. L. 94-141 inserted at end "Not less than two Senators so designated shall be members of the Committee on Foreign Relations."

#### **§ 276c-1. Reports of expenditures by members of American groups or delegations and employees; consolidated reports by Congressional committees; public inspection**

Each chairman or senior member of the House of Representatives and Senate group or delegation of the United States group or delegation to the Interparliamentary Union, the North Atlantic Assembly, the Canada-United States Interparliamentary Group, the Mexico-United States Interparliamentary Group, or any similar interparliamentary group of which the United States is a member or participates, by whom or on whose behalf local currencies owned by the United States are made available and expended and/or expenditures are made from funds appropriated for the expenses of such group or delegation, shall file with the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate in the case of the group or delegation of the Senate, or with the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives in the case of the group or delegation of the House, an itemized report showing all such expenditures made by or on behalf of each Member or employee of the group or delegation together with the purposes of the expenditure, including per diem (lodging and meals), transportation, and other purposes. Within sixty days after the beginning of each regular session of Congress, the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations and the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Affairs shall prepare consolidated reports showing with respect to each such group or delegation the total amount expended, the purposes of the expenditures, the amount expended for each such purpose, the names of the

Members or employees by or on behalf of whom the expenditures were made and the amount expended by or on behalf of each Member or employee for each such purpose. The consolidated reports prepared by the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate shall be filed with the Secretary of the Senate, and the consolidated reports prepared by the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House shall be filed with the Committee on House Administration of the House and shall be open to public inspection.

(Pub. L. 86-628, §105(b), July 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 460; Pub. L. 90-137, pt. IV, §401(b), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 463; Pub. L. 94-59, title XI, §1104, July 25, 1975, 89 Stat. 299; Pub. L. 103-437, §9(a)(2), Nov. 2, 1994, 108 Stat. 4588.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-437 substituted “Foreign Affairs” for “International Relations” wherever appearing.

1975—Pub. L. 94-59 brought reporting requirements into conformity with other foreign travel expense reporting requirements and into conformity with rules of House of Representatives.

1967—Pub. L. 90-137 substituted “North Atlantic Assembly” for “NATO parliamentarian’s Conference”.

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives and Committee on House Administration of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on House Oversight of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

### § 276c-2. Employee benefits for United States citizen-representatives to International Monetary Fund, International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, European Bank for Reconstruction and Development, Inter-American Development Bank, Asian Development Bank, African Development Fund, African Development Bank, and Inter-American Investment Corporation; Treasury Department as collecting, accounting, and depositing agency for employee payments; contributions from appropriated funds

Notwithstanding the provisions of any other law, the Executive Directors and Directors and their alternates, representing the United States in the International Monetary Fund, the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, the European Bank for Reconstruction and Development, the Inter-American Development Bank, the Asian Development Bank, the African Development Fund, the African Development Bank, and the Inter-American Investment Corporation, shall, if they are citizens of the United States, in the discretion of the Secretary of the Treasury, each be eligible on the basis of such service and the total compensation received therefor, for all employee benefits afforded employees in the civil service of the United States. The Treasury Department shall serve as the employing office for collecting, accounting for, and depositing in the Civil Service Retirement and Disability Fund, Employees Life Insurance Fund, and Employees Health Benefits Fund, all retirement and health insurance bene-

fits payments made by these employees, and shall make any necessary agency contributions from funds appropriated to the Department of the Treasury.

(Pub. L. 91-599, ch. 5, §51, Dec. 30, 1970, 84 Stat. 1659; Pub. L. 95-612, §4, Nov. 8, 1978, 92 Stat. 3092; Pub. L. 97-35, title XIII, §1342(d), Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 743; Pub. L. 98-473, title I, §101(1) [title I], Oct. 12, 1984, 98 Stat. 1884, 1885; Pub. L. 101-513, title V, §562(c)(10)(C), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2036.)

#### CODIFICATION

Amendment by Pub. L. 98-473 is based on section 211(b) of title II of S. 2416, Ninety-eighth Congress, as introduced in the Senate on Mar. 13, 1984, which was enacted into permanent law by Pub. L. 98-473.

#### AMENDMENTS

1990—Pub. L. 101-513 inserted “the European Bank for Reconstruction and Development,” before “the Inter-American Development Bank,”.

1984—Pub. L. 98-473 inserted reference to the Inter-American Investment Corporation.

1981—Pub. L. 97-35 inserted reference to the African Development Bank.

1978—Pub. L. 95-612 prescribed requirement of citizenship to be eligible for employee benefits, extended the benefits to representatives to the African Development Fund, substituted provision for contributions from appropriated funds for prior provision for contributions from the fund established under section 822a(a) of title 31, and struck out provision making section effective Dec. 14, 1966.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1981 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 97-35 effective Aug. 13, 1981, see section 1372 of Pub. L. 97-35, set out as an Effective Date note under section 290i of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Section 7 of Pub. L. 95-612 provided that: “This Act [amending this section, section 5108 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, and section 822a of former Title 31, Money and Finance, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 5108 of Title 5] shall take effect on October 1, 1978, or on such later date as funds are made available pursuant to appropriation Acts authorized by section 5 of this Act [authorizing appropriations of \$24,000,000 for fiscal year 1979; not classified to the Code].” Section 7 of Pub. L. 95-612 was repealed as executed by Pub. L. 97-258, §5(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1088, section 1 of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

### § 276c-3. Repealed. Pub. L. 101-240, title V, § 541(d)(7), Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2518

Section, Pub. L. 98-181, title X, §1006, Nov. 30, 1983, 97 Stat. 1287, related to personnel practices at the Inter-American Development Bank, Asian Development Bank, and African Development Bank.

### § 276c-4. Employment of United States citizens by certain international organizations

Not less than 180 days after October 28, 1991, and each year thereafter, the Secretary of State shall submit a report to the Congress concerning each international organization which had a geographic distribution formula in effect on January 1, 1991, of whether each such organization—

- (1) is taking good faith steps to increase the staffing of United States citizens; and
- (2) has met its geographic distribution formula.

(Pub. L. 102-138, title I, §181, Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 682.)

SUBCHAPTER I—CANADA-UNITED STATES  
INTERPARLIAMENTARY GROUP

**§ 276d. United States group; appointment; term; meetings**

Not to exceed twenty-four Members of Congress shall be appointed to meet jointly and at least annually and when Congress is not in session (except that this restriction shall not apply during the first session of the Eighty-sixth Congress or to meetings held in the United States) with representatives of the House of Commons and Senate of the Canadian Parliament for discussion of common problems in the interests of relations between the United States and Canada. Of the Members of the Congress to be appointed for the purposes of this subchapter (hereinafter designated as the United States group) half shall be appointed by the Speaker of the House from Members of the House (not less than four of whom shall be from the Foreign Affairs Committee), and half shall be appointed by the President of the Senate upon recommendations of the majority and minority leaders of the Senate from Members of the Senate (not less than four of whom shall be from the Foreign Relations Committee).

Such appointments shall be for the period of each meeting of the Canada-United States Interparliamentary group except for the four members of the Foreign Affairs Committee and the four members of the Foreign Relations Committee, whose appointments shall be for the duration of each Congress.

The Chairman or Vice Chairman of the House delegation shall be a Member from the Foreign Affairs Committee, and, unless the President of the Senate, upon the recommendation of the Majority Leader, determines otherwise, the Chairman or Vice Chairman of the Senate delegation shall be a Member from the Foreign Relations Committee.

(Pub. L. 86-42, § 1, June 11, 1959, 73 Stat. 72; Pub. L. 95-45, § 4(a), June 15, 1977, 91 Stat. 222; Pub. L. 103-437, § 9(a)(3), Nov. 2, 1994, 108 Stat. 4588.)

AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-437 substituted “Foreign Affairs” for “International Relations” wherever appearing.

1977—Pub. L. 95-45 substituted “International Relations Committee” for “Foreign Affairs Committee” as the name of the House Committee from which not less than four of the House appointees must be drawn, inserted requirement that the appointment of the Senate appointees by the President of the Senate be made upon the recommendations of the majority and minority leaders of the Senate, and inserted provision that the Chairman or Vice Chairman of the House delegation be a Member from the International Relations Committee, and, unless the President of the Senate, upon the recommendation of the Majority Leader, determines otherwise, the Chairman or Vice Chairman of the Senate delegation be a Member from the Foreign Relations Committee.

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

**§ 276e. Authorization of appropriations; disbursements**

An appropriation of \$70,000 annually is authorized, \$35,000 of which shall be for the House delegation and \$35,000 for the Senate delegation, or so much thereof as may be necessary, to assist in meeting the expenses of the United States group of the Canada-United States Interparliamentary group for each fiscal year for which an appropriation is made, the House and Senate portions of such appropriation to be disbursed on vouchers to be approved by the Chairman of the House delegation and the Chairman of the Senate delegation, respectively.

(Pub. L. 86-42, § 2, June 11, 1959, 73 Stat. 72; Pub. L. 94-350, title I, § 118(a), July 12, 1976, 90 Stat. 827; Pub. L. 103-236, title V, § 502(a)(2), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 462.)

AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-236 substituted “\$70,000” for “\$50,000” and substituted “\$35,000” for “\$25,000” in two places.

1976—Pub. L. 94-350 increased annual appropriations authorization to \$50,000 from \$30,000 and amount for the House and Senate delegations to \$25,000 from \$15,000.

PERMANENT APPROPRIATION FOR DELEGATION EXPENSES

A permanent appropriation to carry out this section is contained in section 101(a) [title III, § 303] of Pub. L. 100-202, set out as a note under section 276 of this title.

CROSS REFERENCES

Reports of expenditures by members of United States group, and by employees of the Senate or House of Representatives, see section 276c-1 of this title.

**§ 276f. Report to Congress**

The United States group of the Canada-United States Interparliamentary group shall submit to the Congress a report for each fiscal year for which an appropriation is made including its expenditures under such appropriation.

(Pub. L. 86-42, § 3, June 11, 1959, 73 Stat. 73.)

**§ 276g. Auditing of accounts**

The certificate of the Chairman of the House delegation or the Senate delegation of the Canada-United States Interparliamentary group shall hereafter be final and conclusive upon the accounting officers in the auditing of the accounts of the United States group of the Canada-United States Interparliamentary group.

(Pub. L. 86-42, § 4, June 11, 1959, 73 Stat. 73.)

SUBCHAPTER II—MEXICO-UNITED STATES  
INTERPARLIAMENTARY GROUP

**§ 276h. United States group; appointment; term; meetings**

Not to exceed twenty-four Members of Congress shall be appointed to meet jointly and at least annually with representatives of the Chamber of Deputies and Chamber of Senators of the Mexican Congress for discussion of common problems in the interests of relations between the United States and Mexico. Of the Members of the Congress to be appointed for the purposes of this subchapter (hereinafter designated as the United States group) half shall be

appointed by the Speaker of the House from Members of the House (not less than four of whom shall be from the Foreign Affairs Committee), and half shall be appointed by the President of the Senate upon recommendations of the majority and minority leaders of the Senate from Members of the Senate (not less than four of whom shall be from the Foreign Relations Committee). Such appointments shall be for the period of each meeting of the Mexico-United States Interparliamentary group except for the four members of the Foreign Affairs Committee, and the four members of the Foreign Relations Committee, whose appointments shall be for the duration of each Congress. The Chairman or Vice Chairman of the House delegation shall be a Member from the Foreign Affairs Committee, and, unless the President of the Senate, upon the recommendation of the Majority Leader, determines otherwise, the Chairman or Vice Chairman of the Senate delegation shall be a Member from the Foreign Relations Committee.

(Pub. L. 86-420, § 1, Apr. 9, 1960, 74 Stat. 40; Pub. L. 95-45, § 4(b), June 15, 1977, 91 Stat. 222; Pub. L. 103-437, § 9(a)(4), Nov. 2, 1994, 108 Stat. 4588.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-437 substituted “Foreign Affairs” for “International Relations” wherever appearing.

1977—Pub. L. 95-45 substituted “International Relations Committee” for “Foreign Affairs Committee” as the name of the House Committee from which not less than four of the House appointees must be drawn, inserted requirement that the appointment of the Senate appointees by the President of the Senate be made upon the recommendations of the majority and minority leaders of the Senate, and inserted provision that the Chairman or Vice Chairman of the House delegation be a Member from the International Relations Committee, and, unless the President of the Senate, upon the recommendation of the Majority Leader, determines otherwise, the Chairman or Vice Chairman of the Senate delegation be a Member from the Foreign Relations Committee.

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### § 276i. Authorization of appropriations; disbursements

An appropriation of \$80,000 annually is authorized, \$40,000 of which shall be for the House delegation and \$40,000 for the Senate delegation, or so much thereof as may be necessary, to assist in meeting the expenses of the United States group of the Mexico-United States Interparliamentary group for each fiscal year for which an appropriation is made, the House and Senate portions of such appropriation to be disbursed on vouchers to be approved by the Chairman of the House delegation and the Chairman of the Senate delegation, respectively.

(Pub. L. 86-420, § 2, Apr. 9, 1960, 74 Stat. 40; Pub. L. 94-350, title I, § 118(b), July 12, 1976, 90 Stat. 827; Pub. L. 101-515, title III, § 304(c), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2129; Pub. L. 103-236, title V, § 502(a)(1), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 461.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-236 substituted “\$80,000” for “\$100,000” and substituted “\$40,000” for “\$50,000” in two places.

1990—Pub. L. 101-515 substituted “\$100,000” for “\$50,000” and “\$50,000” for “\$25,000” in two places.

1976—Pub. L. 94-350 increased annual appropriations authorization to \$50,000 from \$30,000 and amount for the House and Senate delegations to \$25,000 from \$15,000.

#### PERMANENT APPROPRIATION FOR DELEGATION EXPENSES

A permanent appropriation to carry out this section is contained in section 101(a) [title III, § 303] of Pub. L. 100-202, set out as a note under section 276 of this title.

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Reports of expenditures by members of United States group, and by employees of the Senate or House of Representatives, see section 276c-1 of this title.

#### § 276j. Report to Congress

The United States group of the Mexico-United States Interparliamentary group shall submit to the Congress a report for each fiscal year for which an appropriation is made including its expenditures under such appropriation.

(Pub. L. 86-420, § 3, Apr. 9, 1960, 74 Stat. 40.)

#### § 276k. Auditing of accounts

The certificate of the Chairman of the House delegation or the Senate delegation of the Mexico-United States Interparliamentary group shall on and after April 9, 1960 be final and conclusive upon the accounting officers in the auditing of the accounts of the United States group of the Mexico-United States Interparliamentary group.

(Pub. L. 86-420, § 4, Apr. 9, 1960, 74 Stat. 40.)

#### SUBCHAPTER II-A—BRITISH-AMERICAN INTERPARLIAMENTARY GROUP

#### § 276l. British-American Interparliamentary Group

##### (a) Establishment and meetings

Not to exceed 24 Members of Congress shall be appointed to meet annually and when the Congress is not in session (except that this restriction shall not apply to meetings held in the United States), with representatives of the House of Commons and the House of Lords of the Parliament of Great Britain for discussion of common problems in the interest of relations between the United States and Great Britain. The Members of Congress so appointed shall be referred to as the “United States group” of the United States Interparliamentary Group.

##### (b) Appointment of Members

Of the Members of Congress appointed for purposes of this section—

(1) half shall be appointed by the Speaker of the House of Representatives from among Members of the House (not less than 4 of whom shall be members of the Committee on Foreign Affairs), and

(2) half shall be appointed by the President Pro Tempore of the Senate, upon recommendations of the majority and minority leaders of the Senate, from among Members of the Senate (not less than 4 of whom shall be mem-

bers of the Committee on Foreign Relations) unless the majority and minority leaders of the Senate determine otherwise.

**(c) Chair and Vice Chair**

(1) The Chair or Vice Chair of the House delegation of the United States group shall be a member from the Committee on Foreign Affairs.

(2) The President Pro Tempore of the Senate shall designate the Chair or Vice Chair of the Senate delegation.

**(d) Funding**

There is authorized to be appropriated \$50,000 for each fiscal year to assist in meeting the expenses of the United States group for each fiscal year for which an appropriation is made, half of which shall be for the House delegation and half of which shall be for the Senate delegation. The House and Senate portions of such appropriations shall be disbursed on vouchers to be approved by the Chair of the House delegation and the Chair of the Senate delegation, respectively.

**(e) Certification of expenditures**

The certificate of the Chair of the House delegation or the Senate delegation of the United States group shall be final and conclusive upon the accounting officers in the auditing of the accounts of the United States group.

**(f) Annual report**

The United States group shall submit to the Congress a report for each fiscal year for which an appropriation is made for the United States group, which shall include its expenditures under such appropriation.

(Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 168, Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 676.)

CODIFICATION

Section is comprised of section 168 of Pub. L. 102-138. Subsec. (g) of section 168 of Pub. L. 102-138 amended section 1928e of this title.

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

SUBCHAPTER II-B—UNITED STATES DELEGATION TO PARLIAMENTARY ASSEMBLY OF CONFERENCE ON SECURITY AND COOPERATION IN EUROPE (CSCE)

**§ 276m. United States Delegation to Parliamentary Assembly of Conference on Security and Cooperation in Europe (CSCE)**

**(a) Establishment**

In accordance with the allocation of seats to the United States in the Parliamentary Assembly of the Conference on Security and Cooperation in Europe (hereinafter referred to as the "CSCE Assembly") not to exceed 17 Members of Congress shall be appointed to meet jointly and annually with representative parliamentary groups from other Conference on Security and Cooperation in Europe (CSCE) member-nations for the purposes of—

(1) assessing the implementation of the objectives of the CSCE;

(2) discussing subjects addressed during the meetings of the Council of Ministers for Foreign Affairs and the biennial Summit of Heads of State or Government;

(3) initiating and promoting such national and multilateral measures as may further cooperation and security in Europe.

**(b) Appointment of Delegation**

For each meeting of the CSCE Assembly, there shall be appointed a United States Delegation, as follows:

(1) In 1992 and every even-numbered year thereafter, 9 Members shall be appointed by the Speaker of the House from Members of the House (not less than 4 of whom, including the Chairman of the United States Delegation, shall be from the Committee on Foreign Affairs); and 8 Members shall, upon recommendations of the Majority and Minority leaders of the Senate, be appointed by the President Pro Tempore of the Senate from Members of the Senate (not less than 4 of whom, including the Vice Chairman of the United States Delegation, shall be from the Committee on Foreign Relations, unless the President Pro Tempore of the Senate, upon recommendations of the Majority and Minority leaders of the Senate, determines otherwise).

(2) In every odd-numbered year beginning in 1993, 9 Members shall, upon recommendation of the Majority and Minority Leaders<sup>1</sup> of the Senate, be appointed by the President Pro Tempore of the Senate from Members of the Senate (not less than 4 of whom, including the Chairman of the United States Delegation, shall be from the Committee on Foreign Relations, unless the President Pro Tempore of the Senate, upon recommendations of the Majority and Minority leaders of the Senate, determines otherwise); and 8 Members shall be appointed by the Speaker of the House from Members of the House (not less than 4 of whom, including the Vice Chairman, shall be from the Committee on Foreign Affairs).

**(c) Administrative support**

For the purpose of providing general staff support and continuity between successive delegations, each United States Delegation shall have 2 secretaries (one of whom shall be appointed by the Chairman of the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and one of whom shall be appointed by the Chairman of the Delegation of the Senate).

**(d) Funding**

**(1) United States participation**

There is authorized to be appropriated for each fiscal year \$80,000 to assist in meeting the expenses of the United States delegation.<sup>2</sup> For each fiscal year for which an appropriation is made under this subsection, half of such appropriation may be disbursed on voucher to be approved by the Chairman and half of such appropriation may be disbursed on voucher to be approved by the Vice Chairman.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should not be capitalized.

<sup>2</sup> So in original. Probably should be capitalized.

**(2) Availability of appropriations**

Amounts appropriated pursuant to this subsection are authorized to be available until expended.

**(e) Annual report**

The United States Delegation shall, for each fiscal year for which an appropriation is made, submit to the Congress a report including its expenditures under such appropriation. The certificate of the Chairman and Vice Chairman of the United States Delegation shall be final and conclusive upon the accounting officers in the auditing of the accounts of the United States Delegation.

(Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 169, Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 677.)

## CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

## SUBCHAPTER III—KERMIT ROOSEVELT FUND

**§ 276aa. Establishment of the Kermit Roosevelt fund; creation and composition of board of trustees**

There is established in the Department of the Army a board to be known as the Trustees of the Kermit Roosevelt Fund, whose duty it shall be properly to administer all money and property which on and after July 2, 1945, may come under its control as part of the Kermit Roosevelt fund, created pursuant to section 276bb of this title. The board shall be composed of the Chief of Finance, United States Army, ex officio, and three general officers of the Army who shall be appointed to the board and may be replaced thereon by the Secretary of the Army.

(July 2, 1945, ch. 228, § 1, 59 Stat. 316; July 26, 1947, ch. 343, title II, § 205(a), 61 Stat. 501.)

## CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 224 of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, § 1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

## CHANGE OF NAME

Department of War designated Department of the Army and title of Secretary of War changed to Secretary of the Army by section 205(a) of act July 26, 1947, ch. 343, title II, 61 Stat. 501. Section 205(a) of act July 26, 1947, was repealed by section 53 of act Aug. 10, 1956, ch. 1041, 70A Stat. 641. Section 1 of act Aug. 10, 1956, enacted "Title 10, Armed Forces" which in sections 3010 to 3013 continued Department of the Army under administrative supervision of Secretary of the Army.

**§ 276bb. Acceptance of funds and property from Mrs. Kermit Roosevelt; purpose and use; disbursement and investment of fund**

The board is authorized to accept from Mrs. Kermit Roosevelt such money and property as she may tender, to receipt therefor on behalf of the United States, and to deposit the funds so received in the Treasury of the United States as the original corpus of a trust fund, to be known

as the Kermit Roosevelt fund, which shall be used for the purpose of fostering a better understanding and a closer relationship between the military forces of the United States and those of the United Kingdom by sponsoring lectures or courses of instruction to be delivered by officers of the British Army at the United States Military Academy and elsewhere in the United States and by officers of the United States Army at Sandhurst Royal Military College and elsewhere in the United Kingdom or, should such exchange lectures prove or become impracticable or unnecessary for any reason, by such other application of the funds as the board, with the approval of the Secretary of the Army may determine. The original corpus of the fund and the income therefrom may be disbursed at the discretion of the board in furtherance of the stated purpose, and shall be subject to investment and reinvestment as provided in section 276cc of this title.

(July 2, 1945, ch. 228, § 2, 59 Stat. 316; July 26, 1947, ch. 343, title II, § 205(a), 61 Stat. 501.)

## CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 225 of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, § 1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

## CHANGE OF NAME

Department of War designated Department of the Army and title of Secretary of War changed to Secretary of the Army by section 205(a) of act July 26, 1947, ch. 343, title II, 61 Stat. 501. Section 205(a) of act July 26, 1947, was repealed by section 53 of act Aug. 10, 1956, ch. 1041, 70A Stat. 641. Section 1 of act Aug. 10, 1956, enacted "Title 10, Armed Forces" which in sections 3010 to 3013 continued Department of the Army under administrative supervision of Secretary of the Army.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 276aa, 276dd, 276ee of this title.

**§ 276cc. Acceptance of funds and property from other sources; limitation; disbursement and investment**

The board is also authorized to accept, receive, hold, and administer gifts, bequests and devises of money, securities, or other property, whether real or personal, from any source, for the benefit of the Kermit Roosevelt fund, but no such gift, bequest, or devise which entails any expenditure not to be met out of the gift, bequest, devise, or the income thereof shall be accepted without the consent of Congress. Such additional sums or property shall be receipted for by the Chief of Finance and may, at the discretion of the board and unless otherwise restricted by the terms of the gift, bequest, or devise, be administered and disbursed in the same manner as the original corpus of the fund and the income therefrom. The board may in its discretion sell or exchange securities or other property given, bequeathed, or devised to or for the benefit of the Kermit Roosevelt fund, and may invest and reinvest the proceeds thereof, together with any other moneys in the fund, in such investments as it may determine from time to time: *Provided, however,* That the board is not authorized to engage in any business, nor shall

it make any investments for the account of the fund which could not lawfully be made by a trust company in the District of Columbia, except that it may make any investment directly authorized by the instrument of gift, bequest, or devise under which the funds to be invested are derived, and may retain any investments accepted by it.

(July 2, 1945, ch. 228, § 3, 59 Stat. 317.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 226 of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, § 1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 276bb, 276ee of this title.

#### § 276dd. Income from property covered into Treasury; disbursement and investment

The income from any property held or administered by the board, as and when collected, shall be deposited in the Treasury of the United States to the credit of the trust fund established pursuant to section 276bb of this title, and it shall be and remain subject to investment, reinvestment, and disbursement by the board for the uses and purposes set forth herein.

(July 2, 1945, ch. 228, § 4, 59 Stat. 317.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 227 of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, § 1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 276ee of this title.

#### § 276ee. Powers of board; personal liability of members; compensation; decisions reviewable by Secretary of the Army; annual report; jurisdiction of court

The board shall have all the usual powers of a trustee in respect to all property administered by it, but the members of the board shall not be personally liable, except for misfeasance, on account of any acts performed in their trust capacity. The members of the board shall not be required to furnish bond, and no additional compensation shall accrue to any of them on account of their duties as trustees. Within the limits prescribed by sections 276bb to 276dd of this title, the administration, control, and expenditure of this fund and its application to the purposes intended shall be according to the sole discretion of the board, and the exercise of its discretion and authority in regard thereto and its decisions thereon, including any payments made or authorized by it to be made from the Kermit Roosevelt fund, shall not be subject to review except by the Secretary of the Army, to whom the board shall, on the 1st day of January, each year, render a full report of its activities during the preceding twelve months. The actions of the board shall not be subject to judicial review except in an action brought in the United States District Court for the District of Columbia,

which is given jurisdiction of such suits, for the purpose of enforcing the provisions of any trust accepted by the board.

(July 2, 1945, ch. 228, § 5, 59 Stat. 317; July 26, 1947, ch. 343, title II, § 205(a), 61 Stat. 501.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 228 of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, § 1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Department of War designated Department of the Army and title of Secretary of War changed to Secretary of the Army by section 205(a) of act July 26, 1947, ch. 343, title II, 61 Stat. 501. Section 205(a) of act July 26, 1947, was repealed by section 53 of act Aug. 10, 1956, ch. 1041, 70A Stat. 641. Section 1 of act Aug. 10, 1956, enacted "Title 10, Armed Forces" which in sections 3010 to 3013 continued Department of the Army under administrative supervision of Secretary of the Army.

#### SUBCHAPTER IV—INTERNATIONAL BOUNDARY AND WATER COMMISSION

#### § 277. International Boundary Commission, United States and Mexico; study of boundary waters

The President is authorized to designate the American Commissioner on the International Boundary Commission, United States and Mexico, or other Federal agency, to cooperate with a representative or representatives of the Government of Mexico in a study regarding the equitable use of the waters of the lower Rio Grande and the lower Colorado and Tia Juana Rivers, for the purpose of obtaining information which may be used as a basis for the negotiation of a treaty with the Government of Mexico relative to the use of the waters of these rivers and to matters closely related thereto. On completion of such study the results shall be reported to the Secretary of State.

(May 13, 1924, ch. 153, § 1, 43 Stat. 118; Mar. 3, 1927, ch. 381, § 1, 44 Stat. 1403; Aug. 19, 1935, ch. 561, 49 Stat. 660.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1935—Act Aug. 19, 1935, created the International Boundary Commission to take the place of the three special commissioners.

1927—Act Mar. 3, 1927, provided for a study of Tia Juana River in addition to the lower Rio Grande and Colorado Rivers.

#### CHANGE OF NAME

International Boundary Commission, United States and Mexico, American section, to which powers, duties, and functions of International Water Commission, United States and Mexico, American section, were transferred by act June 30, 1932, ch. 314, § 510, 47 Stat. 417, reconstituted as International Boundary and Water Commission by Water Treaty of 1944.

#### SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 100-465, Oct. 3, 1988, 102 Stat. 2272, which enacted sections 277g to 277g-3 of this title, is known as the Rio Grande Pollution Correction Act of 1987. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 277g of this title and Tables.

Pub. L. 92-549, Oct. 25, 1972, 86 Stat. 1161, which enacted sections 277d-34 to 277d-42 of this title, is known

as the American-Mexican Boundary Treaty Act of 1972. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 277d-34 of this title and Tables.

Pub. L. 88-300, Apr. 29, 1964, 78 Stat. 184, which enacted sections 277d-17 to 277d-25 of this title, is known as the American-Mexican Chamizal Convention Act of 1964. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 277d-17 of this title and Tables.

Act Sept. 13, 1950, ch. 948, 64 Stat. 846, which enacted sections 277d-1 to 277d-9 of this title, is known as the American-Mexican Treaty Act of 1950. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 277d-1 of this title and Tables.

#### REPEALS

Act Mar. 3, 1927, cited as a credit to this section, was repealed by Pub. L. 89-554, §8(a), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 647.

#### ANNUAL APPROPRIATIONS

Annual appropriations to meet the obligations of membership in various international organizations were contained in acts listed in a note set out under section 269a of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 277c, 277d of this title.

### § 277a. Investigations of commission; construction of works or projects

The Secretary of State, acting through the American Commissioner, International Boundary Commission, United States and Mexico, is further authorized to conduct technical and other investigations relating to the defining, demarcation, fencing, or monumentation of the land and water boundary between the United States and Mexico, to flood control, water resources, conservation, and utilization of water, sanitation and prevention of pollution, channel rectification, stabilization, drainage of transboundary storm waters, and other related matters upon the international boundary between the United States and Mexico; and to construct and maintain fences, monuments and other demarcations of the boundary line between the United States and Mexico, and sewer systems, water systems, and electric light, power and gas systems crossing the international border, and to continue such work and operations through the American Commissioner as are now in progress and are authorized by law.

The President is authorized and empowered to construct, operate, and maintain on the Rio Grande River below Fort Quitman, Texas, any and all works or projects which are recommended to the President as the result of such investigations and by the President are deemed necessary and proper.

(May 13, 1924, ch. 153, §2, 43 Stat. 118; Mar. 3, 1927, ch. 381, §2, 44 Stat. 1403; Aug. 19, 1935, ch. 561, 49 Stat. 660; Feb. 16, 1990, Pub. L. 101-246, title IV, §412(b)(2), 104 Stat. 70.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1990—Pub. L. 101-246 inserted reference to drainage of transboundary storm waters.

1935—Act Aug. 19, 1935, amended section generally.

1927—Act Mar. 3, 1927, increased appropriation from \$20,000 to \$50,000.

#### CHANGE OF NAME

International Boundary Commission, United States and Mexico, American section, to which powers, duties, and functions of International Water Commission, United States and Mexico, American section, were transferred by act June 30, 1932, ch. 314, §510, 47 Stat. 417, reconstituted as International Boundary and Water Commission by Water Treaty of 1944.

#### REPEALS

Act Mar. 3, 1927, cited as a credit to this section, was repealed by Pub. L. 89-554, §8(a), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 647.

#### WATER RESOURCES PLANNING

Jurisdiction, powers, or prerogatives of the International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico, unaffected by Water Resources Planning Act, see section 1962-1 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 277c, 277d of this title.

### § 277b. Works or projects under treaty

#### (a) Construction, operation, maintenance, and supervision; sewage interceptor system

The President is further authorized (1) to construct any project or works which may be provided for in a treaty entered into with Mexico and to repair, protect, maintain, or complete works now existing or now under construction or those that may be constructed under the treaty provisions aforesaid; and to construct any project or works designed to facilitate compliance with the provisions of treaties between the United States and Mexico; (2) to operate and maintain any project or works so constructed or, subject to such rules and regulations for continuing supervision by the said American Commissioner or any Federal agency as the President may cause to be promulgated, to turn over the operation and maintenance of such project or works to any Federal agency, or any State, county, municipality, district, or other political subdivision within which such project or works may be in whole or in part situated, upon such terms, conditions, and requirements as the President may deem appropriate; and (3) to carry out preliminary surveys, operations, and maintenance of the interceptor system constructed to intercept sewage flows from Tijuana from selected canyon areas.

#### (b) Rio Grande bank protection project

Expenditures for the Rio Grande bank protection project shall be subject to the provisions and conditions made with respect to that project in the first undesignated paragraph under the heading "INTERNATIONAL OBLIGATIONS" contained in the Act of April 25, 1945 (59 Stat. 89).

#### (c) Anzalduas diversion dam

The Anzalduas diversion dam shall not be operated for irrigation or water supply purposes in the United States unless suitable arrangements have been made with the prospective water users for repayment to the Government of the United States for such portions of the dam as shall have been allocated to such purposes by the Secretary of State.



(May 13, 1924, ch. 153, § 3, as added Aug. 19, 1935, ch. 561, 49 Stat. 660; amended Feb. 16, 1990, Pub. L. 101-246, title IV, § 412(b)(1), 104 Stat. 70.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The first undesignated paragraph under the heading "INTERNATIONAL OBLIGATIONS" contained in the Act of April 25, 1945 (59 Stat. 89), referred to in subsec. (b), is not classified to the Code.

## AMENDMENTS

1990—Pub. L. 101-246 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a), redesignated cls. (a) and (b) as (1) and (2), respectively, added cl. (3), and added subsecs. (b) and (c).

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 277c, 277d of this title.

**§ 277c. Agreements with political subdivisions; acquisition of lands**

In order to carry out the provisions of sections 277 to 277d of this title, the President, or any Federal agency he may designate is authorized, (a) in his discretion, to enter into agreements with any one or more of said political subdivisions, in connection with the construction of any project or works provided for in paragraph (2) of section 277a and section 277b of this title, under the terms of which agreements there shall be furnished to the United States, gratuitously, except for the examination and approval of titles, the lands or easements in lands necessary for the construction, operation, and maintenance in whole or in part of any such project or works, or for the assumption by one or more of any such political subdivisions making such agreement, of the operation and maintenance of such project or works in whole or in part upon the completion thereof: *Provided, however,* That when an agreement is reached that necessary lands or easements shall be provided by any such political subdivision and for the future operation and maintenance by it of a project or works or a part thereof, in the discretion of the President the title to such lands and easements for such projects or works need not be required to be conveyed to the United States but may be required only to be vested in and remain in such political subdivision; (b) to acquire by purchase, exercise of the power of eminent domain, or by donation, any real or personal property which may be necessary; (c) to withdraw from sale, public entry or disposal of such public lands of the United States as he may find to be necessary and thereupon the Secretary of the Interior shall cause the lands so designated to be withdrawn from any public entry whatsoever, and from sale, disposal, location or settlement under the mining laws or any other law relating to the public domain and shall cause such withdrawal to appear upon the records in the appropriate land office having jurisdiction over such lands, and such lands may be used for carrying out the purposes of sections 277 to 277d of this title: *Provided,* That any such withdrawal may subsequently be revoked by the President; and (d) to make or approve all necessary rules and regulations.

(May 13, 1924, ch. 153, § 4, as added Aug. 19, 1935, ch. 561, 49 Stat. 660; amended May 22, 1936, ch. 447, 49 Stat. 1370.)

## REPEALS

*Clause (c), except the proviso thereof, repealed by Pub. L. 94-579, title VII, § 704(a), Oct. 21, 1976, 90 Stat. 2792, effective on and after Oct. 21, 1976.*

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The mining laws, referred to in cl. (c), are classified generally to Title 30, Mineral Lands and Mining.

## AMENDMENTS

1936—Act May 22, 1936, inserted "paragraph (2) of section 277a".

## SAVINGS PROVISION

Repeal of cl. (c), except the proviso thereof, by Pub. L. 94-579, title VII, § 704(a), Oct. 21, 1976, 90 Stat. 2792, not to be construed as terminating any valid lease, permit, patent, etc., existing on Oct. 21, 1976, see note set out under section 1701 of Title 43, Public Lands.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 277d of this title.

**§ 277d. Funds received from Mexico; expenditure**

Any moneys contributed by or received from the United Mexican States for the purpose of cooperating or assisting in carrying out the provisions of sections 277 to 277d of this title shall be available for expenditure in connection with any appropriation which may be made for the purposes of such sections.

(May 13, 1924, ch. 153, § 5, as added Aug. 19, 1935, ch. 561, 49 Stat. 660.)

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 277c of this title.

**§ 277d-1. Authorizations for Mexican treaty projects; acquisition of lands for relocation purposes; contracts and conveyances**

The Secretary of State, acting through the United States Commissioner, International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico (herein referred to as the "Commission"), in connection with any project under the jurisdiction of the United States Section, International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico, is authorized: (a) to purchase, or condemn, lands, or interests in lands, for relocation of highways, roadways, railroads, telegraph, telephone, or electric transmission lines, or any other properties whatsoever, the relocation of which, in the judgment of the said Commissioner, is necessitated by the construction or operation and maintenance of any such project, and to perform any or all work involved in said relocations on said lands, or interests in lands, other lands, or interests in lands, owned and held by the United States in connection with the construction or operation and maintenance of any such project, or properties not owned by the United States; (b) to enter into contracts with the owners of the said properties whereby they undertake to acquire any, or all, property needed for said relocation, or to perform any, or all, work involved in said relocations; and (c) for the purpose of effecting completely said relocations, to convey, or exchange Government properties acquired or improved under clause (a) of this sec-

tion, with or without improvements, or other properties owned and held by the United States in connection with the construction or operation and maintenance of said project, or to grant term or perpetual easements therein or thereover. Grants or conveyances hereunder shall be by instruments executed by the Secretary of State without regard to provisions of law governing the patenting of public lands.

(Sept. 13, 1950, ch. 948, title I, §101, 64 Stat. 846.)

#### SHORT TITLE

Section 1 of act Sept. 13, 1950, provided that: "This Act [enacting this section and sections 277d-2 to 277d-9 of this title] may be cited as the 'American-Mexican Treaty Act of 1950'."

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 277d-5 of this title.

### § 277d-2. Construction and maintenance of roads, highways, etc.; housing and other facilities for personnel

The United States Commissioner is authorized to construct, equip, and operate and maintain all access roads, highways, railways, power lines, buildings, and facilities necessary in connection with any such project, and in his discretion to provide housing, subsistence, and medical and recreational facilities for the officers, agents, and employees of the United States, and/or for the contractors and their employees engaged in the construction, operation, and maintenance of any such project, and to make equitable charges therefor, or deductions from the salaries and wages due employees, or from progress payments due contractors, upon such terms and conditions as he may determine to be to the best interest of the United States, the sums of money so charged and collected or deducted to be credited to the appropriation for the project current at the time the obligations are incurred.

(Sept. 13, 1950, ch. 948, title I, §102, 64 Stat. 846.)

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 277d-5 of this title.

### § 277d-3. Authorization for appropriations; activities for which available; contracts for excess amounts

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Department of State for the use of the Commission, out of any money in the Treasury not otherwise appropriated, such sums as may be necessary to carry out the provisions of the Treaty of February 3, 1944, and other treaties and conventions between the United States of America and the United Mexican States, under which the United States Section operates, and to discharge the statutory functions and duties of the United States Section. Such sums shall be available for construction, operation and maintenance of stream gaging stations, and their equipment and sites therefor; personal services and rent in the District of Columbia and elsewhere; services, including those of attorneys and appraisers, in accordance with the provisions of

section 3109 of title 5, at rates for individuals not in excess of the maximum daily rate for grade GS-15 of the General Schedule and the United States Commissioner is authorized, notwithstanding the provisions of any other Act, to employ as consultants by contract or otherwise without regard to chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of title 5, and the civil-service laws and regulations, retired personnel of the Armed Forces of the United States, who shall not be required to revert to an active status; travel expense, including, in the discretion of the Commissioner, expenses of attendance at meetings of organizations concerned with the activities of the Commission which may be necessary for the efficient discharge of the responsibilities of the Commission; hire, with or without personal services, of work animals, and animal-drawn, and motor-propelled (including passenger) vehicles and aircraft and equipment; acquisition by donation, purchase, or condemnation, of real and personal property, including expenses of abstracts, certificates of title, and recording fees; purchase of ice and drinking water; inspection of equipment, supplies and materials by contract or otherwise; drilling and testing of foundations and dam sites, by contract if deemed necessary; payment for official telephone service in the field in case of official telephones installed in private houses when authorized under regulations established by the Commissioner; purchase of firearms and ammunition for guard purposes; official entertainment and other representation expenses within the United States for the United States section; and such other objects and purposes as may be permitted by laws applicable, in whole or in part, to the United States Section: *Provided*, That, when appropriations have been made for the commencement or continuation of construction or operation and maintenance of any such project, the United States Commissioner, notwithstanding the provisions of sections 1341, 1342, and 1349 to 1351 and subchapter II of chapter 15 of title 31, and sections 11 and 12 of title 41, or any other law, may enter into contracts beyond the amount actually appropriated for so much of the work on any such authorized project as the physical and orderly sequence of construction makes necessary, such contracts to be subject to and dependent upon future appropriations by Congress: *Provided further*, That the United States Commissioner shall prepare, within 30 days after the end of each fiscal year, a report of all expenditures during that year for official entertainment and other representation expenses, which shall be available for public inspection.

(Sept. 13, 1950, ch. 948, title I, §103, 64 Stat. 847; Aug. 19, 1964, Pub. L. 88-448, title IV, §402(a)(29), 78 Stat. 494; Aug. 17, 1977, Pub. L. 95-105, title V, §514(c), 91 Stat. 862; Oct. 28, 1991, Pub. L. 102-138, title I, §165, 105 Stat. 676.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Grade GS-15, referred to in text, is contained in the General Schedule which is set out under section 5332 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

The civil service laws, referred to in text, are set out in Title 5. See, particularly, section 3301 et seq. of Title 5.

## CODIFICATION

“Section 3109 of title 5” and “chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of title 5” substituted in text for “section 15 of the Act of August 2, 1946 (5 U.S.C. sec. 55a)” and “the Classification Act of 1949, as amended”, respectively, on authority of Pub. L. 89-554, §7(b), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 631, the first section of which enacted Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

“Sections 1341, 1342, and 1349 to 1351 and subchapter II of chapter 15 of title 31” substituted in text for reference to section 3679 of the Revised Statutes [31 U.S.C. 665] on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, §4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

## AMENDMENTS

1991—Pub. L. 102-138 inserted “official entertainment and other representation expenses within the United States for the United States section;” after “guard purposes;” and concluding provision that the United States Commissioner prepare, within 30 days after the end of each fiscal year, a report of all expenditures during that year for official entertainment and other representation expenses, with such report to be available for public inspection.

1977—Pub. L. 95-105 substituted “the maximum daily rate for grade GS-15 of the General Schedule” for “\$100 per diem”.

1964—Pub. L. 88-448 struck out provisions which permitted retired personnel of the Armed Forces of the United States employed by the Commission to receive as compensation for temporary service, the difference between the rates of pay established therefor and their retired pay during the period or periods of their temporary employment.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1977 AMENDMENT

Section 514(d) of Pub. L. 95-105 provided that: “The amendments made by this section [amending this section and sections 277d-28 and 277d-31 of this title] shall take effect on October 1, 1977.”

## CROSS REFERENCES

American-Mexican Chamizal Convention Act of 1964, provisions of this section as applicable to, see section 277d-25 of this title.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 277d-5, 277d-25 of this title.

**§ 277d-4. Acquisition of properties of Imperial Irrigation District of California**

The United States Commissioner, in order to comply with the provisions of articles 12 and 23 of the treaty of February 3, 1944, between the United States and Mexico, relating to the utilization of the waters of the Colorado and Tijuana Rivers and of the Rio Grande below Fort Quitman, Texas, is authorized to acquire, in the name of the United States, by purchase or by proceedings in eminent domain, the physical properties owned by the Imperial Irrigation District of California, located in the vicinity of Andrade, California, consisting of the Alamo Canal in the United States, the Rockwood Intake, the Hanlon Heading, the quarry, buildings used in connection with such facilities, and appurtenant lands, and to reconstruct, operate and maintain such properties in connection with the administration of said treaty.

(Sept. 13, 1950, ch. 948, title I, §104, 64 Stat. 847.)

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 277d-5 of this title.

**§ 277d-5. Availability of prior appropriations; restriction to projects agreed to under treaty**

Funds heretofore appropriated to the Department of State under the heading “International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico” shall be available for the purposes of sections 277d-1 to 277d-5 of this title: *Provided*, That authorizations under said sections shall apply only to projects agreed upon by the two Governments in accordance with the treaty of February 3, 1944.

(Sept. 13, 1950, ch. 948, title I, §105, 64 Stat. 848.)

**§ 277d-6. Douglas-Agua Prieta Sanitation Project; operation by Commission; division of costs; contribution by City of Douglas, Arizona**

The Secretary of State is authorized, notwithstanding any other provision of law and subject to the conditions provided in this section and section 277d-7 of this title, to enter into an agreement with the appropriate official or officials of the United Mexican States for the operation and maintenance by the International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico, of the Douglas-Agua Prieta sanitation project, located at Douglas, Arizona, and Agua Prieta, Sonora, Mexico, heretofore constructed by the said Commission, which agreement shall contain such provisions relating to a division between the two Governments of the costs of such operation and maintenance, or of the work involved therein, as may be recommended by said Commission and approved by the Government of Mexico and by the Secretary of State on behalf of the Government of the United States: *Provided*, That no such agreement shall be entered into until the governing body of the city of Douglas, Arizona, has given assurances satisfactory to the Secretary of State that it will, so long as such agreement remains in force, contribute an equitable proportion, as determined by the United States Section of said Commission, subject to the approval of the Secretary of State, of the costs of such operation and maintenance allocated to the United States.

(Sept. 13, 1950, ch. 948, title II, §201, 64 Stat. 848.)

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 277d-7 of this title.

**§ 277d-7. Authorization for appropriations; availability of prior appropriations; use of moneys received**

There is authorized to be appropriated to the United States Section, International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico, such sums as may be necessary to defray such costs as may accrue to the United States arising out of any such agreement for the operation and maintenance of such project: *Provided*, That funds heretofore appropriated to the Department of State under the heading “International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico”, shall be available for expenditure for the purposes of this section and section 277d-6 of this title: *Provided further*, That any moneys received from the United Mexican States under the terms of any such

agreement shall be available for expenditure in connection with any appropriations which may be available or which may be made for the purposes of said sections: *And provided further*, That moneys received from the city of Douglas, Arizona, pursuant to the provisions of said sections shall be available for expenditure in connection with any appropriations which may be available or which may be made available for the purposes of said sections.

(Sept. 13, 1950, ch. 948, title II, §202, 64 Stat. 848.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 277d-6 of this title.

**§ 277d-8. Calexico Mexicali Sanitation Project; operation by Commission; division of costs; contribution by City of Calexico, California**

The Secretary of State is authorized, subject to the conditions provided in this section and section 277d-9 of this title, to enter into an agreement with the appropriate official or officials of the United Mexican States for the construction, operation, and maintenance by the International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico, of a sanitation project for the cities of Calexico, California, and Mexicali, Lower California, Mexico, which agreement shall contain such provisions relating to a division between the two Governments of the cost of such construction and operation and maintenance, or of the work involved therein, as may be recommended by the said Commission and approved by the Government of Mexico and by the Secretary of State on behalf of the Government of the United States: *Provided*, That no such agreement shall be entered into until the governing body of the city of Calexico, California, has given assurances satisfactory to the Secretary of State that, so long as such agreement remains in force, the city of Calexico will contribute an equitable proportion as determined by the United States Section of said Commission, subject to the approval of the Secretary of State, of the costs of such construction, operation, and maintenance allocated to the United States.

(Sept. 13, 1950, ch. 948, title III, §301, 64 Stat. 848.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 277d-9 of this title.

**§ 277d-9. Authorization for appropriations; availability of prior appropriations; use of moneys received**

There is authorized to be appropriated to the United States section, International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico, such sums as may be necessary to defray such costs as may accrue to the United States arising out of any such agreement for the construction, operation, and maintenance of such project: *Provided*, That funds heretofore appropriated to the Department of State under the heading "International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico", shall be available for expenditure for the purposes of this section and section 277d-8 of this title: *Pro-*

*vided further*, That any moneys received from the United Mexican States under the terms of any such agreement shall be available for expenditure in connection with any appropriation which may be available or which may be made available for the purposes of said sections: *And provided further*, That moneys received from the city of Calexico, California, pursuant to the provisions of said sections, shall be available for expenditure in connection with any appropriations which may be available or which may be made available for the purposes of said sections.

(Sept. 13, 1950, ch. 948, title III, §302, 64 Stat. 849.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 277d-8 of this title.

**§ 277d-10. Nogales Sanitation Project; operation by Commission; division of costs; contribution by Nogales, Arizona**

The Secretary of State is authorized, notwithstanding any other provision of law and subject to the conditions provided in this section and section 277d-11 of this title, to enter into an agreement with the appropriate official or officials of the United Mexican States for the operation and maintenance by the International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico, of the Nogales sanitation project, located at Nogales, Arizona, and Nogales, Sonora, Mexico, heretofore constructed by the said Commission, which agreement shall contain such provisions relating to a division between the two Governments of the costs of such operation and maintenance, or of the work involved therein, as may be recommended by said Commission and approved by the Government of Mexico and by the Secretary of State on behalf of the Government of the United States: *Provided*, That no such agreement shall be entered into until the governing body of the city of Nogales, Arizona, has given assurances satisfactory to the Secretary of State that it will, so long as such agreement remains in force, contribute an equitable proportion, as determined by the United States section of said Commission, subject to the approval of the Secretary of State, of the costs of such operation and maintenance allocated to the United States.

(July 27, 1953, ch. 242, §1, 67 Stat. 195.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 277d-11 of this title.

**§ 277d-11. Authorization of appropriations; availability of prior appropriations; use of moneys received**

There is authorized to be appropriated to the United States section, International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico, such sums as may be necessary to defray such costs as may accrue to the United States arising out of any such agreement for the operation and maintenance of such project: *Provided*, That funds heretofore appropriated to the Department of State under the heading "International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico", shall be available

for expenditure for the purposes of this section and section 277d-10 of this title: *Provided further*, That any moneys received from the United Mexican States under the terms of any such agreement shall be available for expenditure in connection with any appropriations which may be available or which may be made for the purposes of said sections: *And provided further*, That moneys received from the city of Nogales, Arizona, pursuant to the provisions of said sections shall be available for expenditure in connection with any appropriations which may be available or which may be made available for the purposes of said sections.

(July 27, 1953, ch. 242, § 2, 67 Stat. 195.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 277d-10 of this title.

**§ 277d-12. Expenditures for flood fighting, rescue operations, repairs or restoration of flood control or sanitation works threatened or destroyed by floodwaters of Rio Grande, Colorado, or Tijuana Rivers**

On and after June 20, 1956, in addition to the funds available under the appropriation "Rio Grande emergency flood protection", the United States Commissioner is authorized to expend from any appropriation available to the International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico, American Section, such sums as may be necessary for prosecution of emergency flood fighting and rescue operations, repairs or restoration of any flood control or sanitation works threatened or destroyed by floodwaters of the Rio Grande, the Colorado or Tijuana Rivers, or other streams running across or near the boundary, and for taking emergency actions, consistent with the emergency provisions of the Safe Drinking Water Act [42 U.S.C. 300f et seq.], to protect against health threatening surface and ground water pollution problems along the United States-Mexico boundary.

(June 20, 1956, ch. 414, title I, 70 Stat. 302; Feb. 16, 1990, Pub. L. 101-246, title IV, § 412(a), 104 Stat. 69; Apr. 30, 1994, Pub. L. 103-236, title IV, § 423(b), 108 Stat. 457.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Safe Drinking Water Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 93-523, Dec. 16, 1974, 88 Stat. 1660, as amended, which is classified principally to subchapter XII (§ 300f et seq.) of chapter 6A of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1974 Amendments note set out under section 201 of Title 42 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-236 substituted "Tijuana Rivers, or other streams running across or near the boundary, and for taking emergency actions, consistent with the emergency provisions of the Safe Drinking Water Act, to protect against health threatening surface and ground water pollution problems along the United States-Mexico boundary" for "Tijuana Rivers, and for taking emergency actions to protect against health threatening sanitation problems by repairing or replacing existing capital infrastructure along the United States-Mexico Boundary".

1990—Pub. L. 101-246 inserted "or sanitation" after "flood control" and inserted before period at end "", the

Colorado or Tijuana Rivers, and for taking emergency actions to protect against health threatening sanitation problems by repairing or replacing existing capital infrastructure along the United States-Mexico Boundary".

**§ 277d-13. Authorization for international storage dam on the Rio Grande**

The Secretary of State, acting through the United States Commissioner, International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico, is hereby authorized to conclude with the appropriate official or officials of the Government of Mexico an agreement for the joint construction, operation, and maintenance by the United States and Mexico, in accordance with the provisions of the treaty of February 3, 1944, with Mexico, of a major international storage dam on the Rio Grande at the site and having substantially the characteristics described in minute numbered 207 adopted June 19, 1958, by the said Commission, and in the "Rio Grande International Storage Dams Project—Report on Proposed Dam and Reservoir" prepared by the United States Section of the said Commission and dated September 1958.

(Pub. L. 86-605, § 1, July 7, 1960, 74 Stat. 360.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 277d-14, 277d-15, 277d-16 of this title; title 16 section 460fff-1.

**§ 277d-14. Construction, operation, and maintenance on self-liquidating basis of facilities for generating hydroelectric energy**

If agreement is concluded pursuant to section 277d-13 of this title for the construction of a major international storage dam the Secretary of State, acting through the United States Commissioner, International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico, is authorized to conclude with the appropriate official or officials of Mexico an agreement consistent with article 7 of the treaty of February 3, 1944, for the construction, operation, and maintenance on a self-liquidating basis, for the United States share, of facilities for generating hydroelectric energy at said dam.

If agreement for the construction of separate facilities for generating hydroelectric energy is concluded, the United States Commissioner, International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico, is directed to construct, operate, and maintain such self-liquidating facilities for the United States.

(Pub. L. 86-605, § 2, July 7, 1960, 74 Stat. 360.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 277d-16 of this title; title 16 section 460fff-1.

**§ 277d-15. Integration of operation of dam with other United States water conservation activities**

If a dam is constructed pursuant to an agreement concluded under the authorization granted by section 277d-13 of this title, its operation for conservation and release of United States share of waters shall be integrated with other United States water conservation activities on the Rio

Grande below Fort Quitman, Texas, in such manner as to provide the maximum feasible amount of water for beneficial use in the United States with the understandings that (a) releases of United States share of waters from said dam for domestic, municipal, industrial, and irrigation uses in the United States shall be made pursuant to order by the appropriate authority or authorities of the State of Texas, and (b) the State of Texas having stipulated that the amount of water that will be available for use in the United States below Falcon Dam after the proposed dam is placed in operation will be not less than the amount available under existing conditions of river development, and to carry out such understandings and said stipulation the conservation storage of said dam shall be used, and it shall be the exclusive responsibility of the appropriate authority or authorities of said State to distribute available United States share of waters of the Rio Grande in such manner as will comply with said stipulation.

(Pub. L. 86-605, §3, July 7, 1960, 74 Stat. 360.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 277d-16 of this title; title 16 section 460fff-1.

**§ 277d-16. Authorization of appropriations**

There is hereby authorized to be appropriated to the Department of State for the use of the United States Section, International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico, such sums as may be necessary to carry out the provisions of sections 277d-13 to 277d-16 of this title.

(Pub. L. 86-605, §4, July 7, 1960, 74 Stat. 361.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 16 section 460fff-1.

**§ 277d-17. Chamizal boundary settlement; investigations relating to river channel; acquisition of lands; relocation of facilities**

In connection with the convention between the United States of America and the United Mexican States for the solution of the problem of the Chamizal, signed August 29, 1963, the Secretary of State, acting through the United States Commissioner, International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico, is authorized—

a. to conduct technical and other investigations relating to: the demarcation or monumentation of the boundary between the United States and Mexico; flood control; water resources; sanitation and prevention of pollution; channel relocation, improvement, and stabilization; and other matters related to the new river channel.

b. to acquire by donation, purchase, or condemnation, all lands required—

(1) for transfer to Mexico as provided in said convention;

(2) for construction of that portion of the new river channel and the adjoining levee in the territory of the United States;

(3) for relocation of highways, roadways, railroads, telegraph, telephone, electric transmission lines, bridges, related facilities,

and any publicly owned structure or facility, the relocation of which, in the judgment of the said Commissioner, is necessitated by the project.

c. For the purpose of effecting said relocations—

(1) to perform any or all work involved in said relocations;

(2) to enter into contracts with the owners of properties to be relocated whereby they undertake to acquire any or all properties needed for said relocations, or undertake to perform any or all work involved in said relocations;

(3) to convey or exchange properties acquired or improved by the United States under sections 277d-17 to 277d-25 of this title or under said convention, with or without improvements, or to grant term or perpetual easements therein or thereover.

(Pub. L. 88-300, §1, Apr. 29, 1964, 78 Stat. 184.)

CODIFICATION

Section is comprised of part of section 1 of Pub. L. 88-300. Remainder of section 1 is set out as a Short Title note below.

SHORT TITLE

Section 1 of Pub. L. 88-300 provided in part: "That this Act [enacting this section and sections 277d-18 to 277d-25 of this title] may be cited as the 'American-Mexican Chamizal Convention Act of 1964.'"

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 277d-18, 277d-22, 277d-24, 277d-25 of this title.

**§ 277d-18. Construction, operation, and maintenance of works; Bridge of the Americas**

**(a) In general**

The United States Commissioner is authorized to construct, operate, and maintain all works provided for in said convention and sections 277d-17 to 277d-25 of this title, and to turn over the operation and maintenance of any such works to any Federal agency, or any State, county, municipality, district, or other political subdivision within which such project or works may be in whole or in part situated, upon such terms, conditions, and requirements as the Commissioner may deem appropriate.

**(b) Bridge of the Americas**

The United States Commissioner is authorized to receive payments of money from public or private sources in the United States or Mexico made for the purpose of sharing in the cost of replacement of the Bridge of the Americas which crosses the Rio Grande between El Paso, Texas, and Cd. Juarez, Chihuahua. Notwithstanding any other provision of law, such payments of money shall be credited to any appropriation to the Commission which is currently available. Funds received under this subsection shall be available only for the replacement of such bridge.

**(c) Advance appropriations**

The authority of subsection (b) of this section may be exercised only to the extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriation Acts.

(Pub. L. 88-300, § 2, Apr. 29, 1964, 78 Stat. 184; Pub. L. 103-236, title IV, § 423(a), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 457.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-236 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsecs. (b) and (c).

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 277d-17, 277d-22, 277d-24, 277d-25 of this title.

### § 277d-19. Compensation of owners and tenants to prevent economic injury; regulations

The United States Commissioner, under regulations approved by the Secretary of State, and upon application of the owners and tenants of lands to be acquired by the United States to fulfill and accomplish the purposes of said convention, and to the extent administratively determined by the Commissioner to be fair and reasonable, is authorized to—

a. Reimburse the owners and tenants for expenses and other losses and damages incurred by them in the process and as a direct result of such moving of themselves, their families, and their possessions as is occasioned by said acquisition: *Provided*, That the total of such reimbursement to the owners and tenants of any parcel of land shall in no event exceed 25 per centum of its fair value, as determined by the Commissioner. No payment under this subsection shall be made unless application therefor is supported by an itemized and certified statement of the expenses, losses, and damages incurred.

b. Compensate the said owners and tenants for identifiable, reasonable, and satisfactorily proved costs and losses to owners and tenants over and above those reimbursed under the foregoing subsection in the categories herein-after provided, and for which purpose there shall be established by the Commissioner a board of examiners, consisting of such personnel employed and compensation fixed as he deems advisable, without regard to the provisions of the civil service laws and chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of title 5. Said board may hold hearings and shall examine submitted evidence and make determinations, subject to the Commissioner's approval, regarding all claims in said categories as follows:

(1) For properties—

(a) For nonconforming abodes and minimum forms of shelter for which there are no comparable properties on the market in the city of El Paso and concerning which fair market value would be inadequate to find minimum housing of equal utility, compensation to the owner up to an amount which when added to the market value allowed for his property, including land values, would enable purchase of minimum habitable housing of similar utility in another residential section of said city.

(b) For commercial properties for which there are no comparable properties on the market in or near El Paso, Texas, compensation to the owner up to an amount which, when added to the total fair market value,

including the land value, would compensate the owner for the "value in use" of the real estate to him. Such "value in use" is to be determined on the basis of replacement cost less deterioration and obsolescence in existing real estate and taking into consideration factors bearing upon income attributable to the real estate.

(2) For loss in business:

(a) Loss of profits directly resulting from relocation, limited to the period between termination of business in the old location and commencement of business in the new, such period not to exceed thirty days.

(b) Loss to owner resulting from inability to rent to others housing or commercial space that can be reasonably related to uncertainties arising out of the pending acquisition of the owner's property by the United States, such losses limited to those incurred after July 18, 1963, and prior to the making by the United States of a firm offer to purchase.

(3) For penalty costs to property owners for prepayment of mortgages incident to acquisition of the properties by the United States.

(Pub. L. 88-300, § 3, Apr. 29, 1964, 78 Stat. 184.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The civil service laws, referred to in par. b., are set forth in Title 5, Government Organization and Employees. See, particularly, section 3301 et seq. of Title 5.

#### CODIFICATION

In par. b., "chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of title 5" substituted for "the Classification Act of 1949, as amended" on authority of Pub. L. 89-554, § 7(b), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 631, the first section of which enacted Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 277d-17, 277d-18, 277d-20, 277d-21, 277d-22, 277d-23, 277d-24, 277d-25 of this title.

### § 277d-20. Limitation on application for reimbursement or compensation

Application for reimbursement or compensation under section 277d-19 of this title shall be submitted to the Commissioner within either one year from the date of acquisition or the date of vacating the premises by the applicant, whichever date is later. Applications not submitted within said period shall be forever barred.

(Pub. L. 88-300, § 4, Apr. 29, 1964, 78 Stat. 185.)

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 277d-17, 277d-18, 277d-22, 277d-24, 277d-25 of this title.

### § 277d-21. Attorneys' fees; penalties

The Commissioner, in rendering an award in favor of any claimant under section 277d-19 of this title, may, as part of such award, determine and allow reasonable attorneys' fees which shall not exceed 10 per centum of the amount awarded, to be paid out of but not in addition to the amount of award, to the attorneys representing

the claimant. Any attorney who charges, demands, receives, or collects for services rendered in connection with such claim any amount in excess of that allowed by the terms of this section, if award be made, shall be fined not more than \$2,000 or imprisoned not more than one year, or both.

(Pub. L. 88-300, § 5, Apr. 29, 1964, 78 Stat. 185.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 277d-17, 277d-18, 277d-22, 277d-24, 277d-25 of this title.

**§ 277d-22. Prohibition against duplicate payments; eligibility for payments unaffected by means employed for acquisition of property; rights and powers unaffected**

Payments to be made as herein provided shall be in addition to, but not in duplication of, any payments that may otherwise be authorized by law. The means employed to acquire the property, whether by condemnation or otherwise, shall not affect eligibility for reimbursement or compensation under sections 277d-17 to 277d-25 of this title. Nothing contained in such sections shall be construed as creating any legal right or cause of action against the United States or as precluding the exercise by the Government of the right of eminent domain or any other right or power that it may have under such sections or any other law; nor shall such sections be construed as precluding an owner or tenant from asserting any rights he may have under other laws or the Constitution of the United States.

(Pub. L. 88-300, § 6, Apr. 29, 1964, 78 Stat. 186.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 277d-17, 277d-18, 277d-24, 277d-25 of this title.

**§ 277d-23. Taxation; exclusion from gross income**

No amount received as an award under subsection a. and subsections b. (1) and (3) of section 277d-19 of this title shall be included in gross income for purposes of chapter 1 of title 26. However, amounts received under subsection b. (1) shall be included in gross income to the extent that such amounts are not used within one year of the receipt thereof to purchase replacement housing or facilities.

(Pub. L. 88-300, § 7, Apr. 29, 1964, 78 Stat. 186; Pub. L. 99-514, § 2, Oct. 22, 1986, 100 Stat. 2095.)

AMENDMENTS

1986—Pub. L. 99-514 substituted “Internal Revenue Code of 1986” for “Internal Revenue Code of 1954”, which for purposes of codification was translated as “title 26” thus requiring no change in text.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 277d-17, 277d-18, 277d-22, 277d-24, 277d-25 of this title.

**§ 277d-24. Definitions; exemption from administrative procedure provisions**

As used in sections 277d-17 to 277d-25 of this title, the term “land” shall include interests in land, and the term “fair value” shall mean fair value of the interest acquired. The provisions of such sections shall be exempt from the oper-

ations of subchapter II of chapter 5, and chapter 7, of title 5.

(Pub. L. 88-300, § 8, Apr. 29, 1964, 78 Stat. 186.)

CODIFICATION

“Subchapter II of chapter 5, and chapter 7, of title 5” substituted in text for “the Administrative Procedure Act of June 11, 1946 (60 Stat. 237), as amended (5 U.S.C. 1001-1011)” on authority of Pub. L. 89-554, § 7(b), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 631, the first section of which enacted Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 277d-17, 277d-18, 277d-22, 277d-25 of this title.

**§ 277d-25. Authorization of appropriations**

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Department of State for the use of the United States section of said Commission not to exceed \$44,900,000 to carry out the provisions of said convention and sections 277d-17 to 277d-25 of this title and for transfer to other Federal agencies to accomplish by them or other proper agency relocation of their facilities necessitated by the project. Of the appropriations authorized by this section, not to exceed \$4,200,000 may be used to carry out the provisions of section 277d-19 of this title. The provisions of section 277d-3 of this title are hereby expressly extended to apply to the carrying out of the provisions of said convention and sections 277d-17 to 277d-25 of this title.

(Pub. L. 88-300, § 9, Apr. 29, 1964, 78 Stat. 186.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 277d-17, 277d-18, 277d-22, 277d-24 of this title.

**§ 277d-26. Lower Colorado River emergency flood control works; agreements with Mexico for joint construction, operation and maintenance**

The Secretary of State, acting through the United States Commissioner, International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico, is authorized to conclude, with the appropriate official or officials of the Government of Mexico, agreements for emergency flood control measures of international character in the reaches of the lower Colorado River between Imperial Dam and the Gulf of California, in both the United States and Mexico, such agreements to provide: (a) for the joint clearing and maintaining free of trees and brush the bed and banks of the channel; for removing sediment deposits from the river channel; and (b) for corrective actions to guard against sedimentation and consequent aggradation of the river channel incident to desilting operations at diversion dams in the two countries: *Provided*, That, prior approval of the Secretary of the Interior is required of any proposed agreement with Mexico under clause (b) of this section which would involve construction and/or operation of works on the Colorado River in the United States under the jurisdiction of the Secretary. The measures contemplated herein are for the purpose of controlling floods on the lower Colorado River in accordance with article 13 of the 1944 Water Treaty with Mexico, and accomplishment thereof by the



International Boundary and Water Commission, United States Section, would be in accord with the Memorandum of Understanding “as to Functions and Jurisdiction of Agencies of the United States in Relation to the Colorado and Tijuana Rivers and the Rio Grande Below Fort Quitman, Texas, Under Water Treaty Signed at Washington, February 3, 1944,” between the Department of State and the United States Section, International Boundary and Water Commission and the Department of the Interior dated February 14, 1945.

(Pub. L. 88-411, §1, Aug. 10, 1964, 78 Stat. 386.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 277d-27, 277d-28 of this title.

**§ 277d-27. Execution of agreements**

The United States Commissioner, International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico, is authorized to carry out those measures agreed upon for execution by the United States in the agreements concluded pursuant to section 277d-26 of this title.

(Pub. L. 88-411, §2, Aug. 10, 1964, 78 Stat. 386.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 277d-28 of this title.

**§ 277d-28. Authorization of appropriations**

There is authorized to be appropriated to the Department of State for use of the United States Section, International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico, not in excess of \$300,000 for the initial cost of the work authorized in sections 277d-26 to 277d-28 of this title, and not to exceed \$30,000 based on December 1975 prices, plus or minus such amounts as may be justified by reason of ordinary fluctuations in operation and maintenance costs involved therein, annually thereafter for necessary maintenance.

(Pub. L. 88-411, §3, Aug. 10, 1964, 78 Stat. 386; Pub. L. 93-126, §7(b), Oct. 18, 1973, 87 Stat. 452; Pub. L. 95-105, title V, §514(b), Aug. 17, 1977, 91 Stat. 862.)

AMENDMENTS

1977—Pub. L. 95-105 inserted “based on December 1975 prices, plus or minus such amounts as may be justified by reason of ordinary fluctuations in operation and maintenance costs involved therein,” after “\$30,000”.

1973—Pub. L. 93-126 substituted “\$30,000” for “\$20,000”.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1977 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-105 effective Oct. 1, 1977, see section 514(d) of Pub. L. 95-105, set out as a note under section 277d-3 of this title.

**§ 277d-29. Rio Grande canalization project; flood and sediment control; agreements authorized; control gates; costs; authorization of appropriations**

For the purposes of facilitating and implementing operation and maintenance of the international Rio Grande canalization project, the United States Commissioner, International

Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico, is authorized to enter into agreements with the appropriate official or officials of local organizations, as defined in the Watershed Protection and Flood Prevention Act of August 4, 1954, as amended [16 U.S.C. 1001 et seq.], for the maintenance by said local organizations either directly or indirectly through mutually satisfactory maintenance agreements with others, including the United States, of all those flood and arroyo sediment control dams, together with all related works, hereafter installed or constructed in the Rio Grande watershed between Caballo Dam and El Paso, Texas, in accordance with said Act, and which are necessary, in the opinion of Said Commissioner, to facilitate and implement the operation and maintenance of said project.

Such maintenance agreements between the local organization and the United States shall provide the extent of contribution by the United States as may be mutually agreed by the two parties, based on the degree of benefits to be derived from said dams and related works, and the contribution by the United States may be either in the form of funds or performance of the actual operation and maintenance.

Control gates shall not be installed on any of the dams which, in the opinion of the United States Commissioner, International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico, are necessary to facilitate and implement the operation and maintenance of the Rio Grande canalization project.

Arrangements made between the United States and the local organizations shall be satisfactory to the Secretary of Agriculture for defraying cost of maintaining such work of improvement in accordance with regulations prescribed by said Secretary.

There is hereby authorized to be appropriated not in excess of \$50,000 per annum for contributions to maintenance authorized by this section.

(Pub. L. 88-600, Sept. 18, 1964, 78 Stat. 956; Pub. L. 93-126, §7(c), Oct. 18, 1973, 87 Stat. 452.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Watershed Protection and Flood Prevention Act of August 4, 1954, as amended, referred to in text, is act Aug. 4, 1954, ch. 656, 68 Stat. 666, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 18 (§1001 et seq.) of Title 16, Conservation. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1001 of Title 16 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1973—Pub. L. 93-126 substituted “\$50,000” for “\$23,000”.

**§ 277d-30. Lower Rio Grande drainage conveyance canal projects; agreements with Mexico for construction, operation, and maintenance; division of costs; non-Federal assurances of one-half of Federal costs**

The Secretary of State, acting through the United States Commissioner, International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico, is authorized, notwithstanding any other provision of law and subject to the conditions provided in this section and section 277d-31 of this title to conclude an agreement or agree-

ments with the appropriate official or officials of the Government of the United Mexican States for the construction, operation, and maintenance by the United Mexican States under the supervision of the International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico, of a drainage conveyance canal through Mexican territory for the discharge of waters of El Morillo and other drains in the United Mexican States into the Gulf of Mexico in the manner, and having substantially the characteristics, described in said Commission's minute numbered 223, dated November 30, 1965. The agreement or agreements shall provide that the cost of construction including costs of design and right-of-way and the costs of operation and maintenance, shall be equally divided between the United Mexican States and the United States. Before concluding the agreement or agreements, the Secretary of State shall receive satisfactory assurances from private citizens or a responsible local group that they or it will pay to the United States Treasury one-half of the actual United States costs of such construction, including costs of design and right-of-way, and one-half of the actual costs of operation and maintenance allocated under such agreement or agreements to the United States. Payments to the United States Treasury under this section shall be covered into the Treasury as miscellaneous receipts.

(Pub. L. 89-584, §1, Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 808.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 277d-31 of this title.

**§ 277d-31. Authorization of appropriations**

To defray costs that accrue to the United States under the agreement or agreements referred to in section 277d-30 of this title for the construction, operation, and maintenance of drainage conveyance canal projects, there are authorized to be appropriated to the Department of State for use of the United States Section, International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico, the following amounts:

(1) Not to exceed \$690,000 for costs of construction.

(2) Upon completion of construction, not to exceed \$25,000 based on estimated calendar year 1976 costs, plus or minus such amounts as may be justified by reason of ordinary fluctuations in operation and maintenance costs involved therein, annually for costs of operation and maintenance.

(Pub. L. 89-584, §2, Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 808; Pub. L. 93-126, §7(a), Oct. 18, 1973, 87 Stat. 452; Pub. L. 95-105, title V, §514(a), Aug. 17, 1977, 91 Stat. 862.)

AMENDMENTS

1977—Par. (2). Pub. L. 95-105 inserted "based on estimated calendar year 1976 costs, plus or minus such amounts as may be justified by reason of ordinary fluctuations in operation and maintenance costs involved therein," after "\$25,000".

1973—Par. (2). Pub. L. 93-126 substituted "\$25,000" for "\$20,000".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1977 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-105 effective Oct. 1, 1977, see section 514(d) of Pub. L. 95-105, set out as a note under section 277d-3 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 277d-30 of this title.

**§ 277d-32. Tijuana River flood control project; agreement with Mexico for joint construction, operation and maintenance**

The Secretary of State, acting through the United States Commissioner, International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico, is hereby authorized to conclude with the appropriate official or officials of the Government of Mexico an agreement for the joint construction, operation, and maintenance by the United States and Mexico, in accordance with the provisions of the treaty of February 3, 1944, with Mexico, of an international flood control project for the Tijuana River, which shall be located and have substantially the characteristics described in "Report on an International Flood Control Project, Tijuana River Basin", prepared by the United States Section, International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico.

(Pub. L. 89-640, §1, Oct. 10, 1966, 80 Stat. 884.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 277d-33 of this title.

**§ 277d-33. Authorization; construction, operation, and maintenance, appropriations, and acquisition of land**

Pursuant to the agreement concluded under the authority of section 277d-32 of this title, the United States Commissioner is authorized to construct, operate, and maintain the portion of the "International Flood Control Project, Tijuana River Basin," assigned to the United States, and there is hereby authorized to be appropriated to the Department of State for use of the United States section the sum of \$10,800,000 for construction costs of such project, as modified, based on estimated June 1976 prices, plus or minus such amounts as may be justified by reason of price index fluctuations in costs involved therein, and such sums as may be necessary for its maintenance and operation, except that no funds may be appropriated under sections 277d-32 and 277d-33 of this title for the fiscal year ending on September 30, 1977. Contingent upon the furnishing by the city of San Diego of its appropriate share of the funds for the acquisition of the land and interests therein needed to carry out the agreement between the United States and Mexico to construct such project, the Secretary of State, acting through the United States Commissioner, is further authorized to participate financially with non-Federal interests in the acquisition of said lands and interest therein, to the extent that funds provided by the city of San Diego are insufficient for this purpose.

(Pub. L. 89-640, §2, Oct. 10, 1966, 80 Stat. 884; Pub. L. 94-425, Sept. 28, 1976, 90 Stat. 1333.)

## AMENDMENTS

1976—Pub. L. 94-425 substituted provisions authorizing appropriations of \$10,800,000 for construction costs for project based on June 1976 prices, with exception that no funds may be appropriated for fiscal year ending Sept. 30, 1977 for provisions authorizing appropriations not to exceed \$12,600,000 for construction costs for project, eliminated provision requiring approval of title by Attorney General, and inserted provision authorizing financial participation of Secretary of State through Commissioner to acquire land for construction of project contingent upon city of San Diego furnishing its appropriate share of funds.

**§ 277d-34. American-Mexican Boundary Treaty, authorization for carrying out treaty provisions; investigations; land acquisition, purposes; damages, repair or compensation**

In connection with the treaty between the United States of America and the United Mexican States to resolve pending boundary differences and maintain the Rio Grande and the Colorado River as the international boundary between the United States of America and the United Mexican States, signed November 23, 1970, (hereafter in this Act referred to as the "treaty"), the Secretary of State, acting through the United States Commissioner, International Boundary and Water Commission, United States, and Mexico (hereafter in this Act referred to as the "Commissioner"), is authorized—

(1) to conduct technical and other investigations relating to—

(A) the demarcation, mapping, monumentation, channel relocation, rectification, improvement, stabilization, and other matters relating to the preservation of the river boundaries between the United States and Mexico;

(B) the establishment and delimitation of the maritime boundaries in the Gulf of Mexico and in the Pacific Ocean;

(C) water resources; and

(D) the sanitation and the prevention of pollution;

(2) to acquire by donation, purchase, or condemnation, all lands or interests in lands required—

(A) for transfer to Mexico as provided in the treaty;

(B) for construction of that portion of new river channels and the adjoining levees in the territory of the United States;

(C) to preserve the Rio Grande and the Colorado River as the boundary by preventing the construction of works which may cause deflection or obstruction of the normal flow of the rivers or of their floodflows; and

(D) for relocation of any structure or facility, public or private, the relocation of which, in the judgment of the Commissioner, is necessitated by the project; and

(3) to remove, modify, or repair the damages caused to Mexico by works constructed in the United States which the International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico, as determined have an adverse effect on Mexico, or to compensate Mexico for such damages.

(Pub. L. 92-549, title I, § 101, Oct. 25, 1972, 86 Stat. 1161.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, means Pub. L. 92-549, Oct. 25, 1972, 86 Stat. 1161, which enacted sections 277d-34 to 277d-42 of this title and amended section 1322 of Title 19, Customs Duties. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out below and Tables.

## SHORT TITLE

Section 1 of Pub. L. 92-549 provided: "That this Act [enacting this section and sections 277d-35 to 277d-42 of this title and amending section 1322 of Title 19, Customs Duties] may be cited as the 'American-Mexican Boundary Treaty Act of 1972'."

**§ 277d-35. Construction, operation, and maintenance of works; property relocation, contracts; transfer of authority**

The Commissioner is authorized—

(1) to construct, operate, and maintain all works provided for in the treaty and title I of this Act;

(2) to enter into contracts with the owners of properties to be relocated whereby such owners undertake to perform, at the expense of the United States, any or all operations involved in such relocations; and

(3) to turn over the operation and maintenance of any works referred to in paragraph (1) of this section to any Federal agency, or any State, county, municipality, district, or other political subdivision within which such works may be situated, in whole or in part, upon such terms, conditions, and requirements as the Commissioner may deem appropriate.

(Pub. L. 92-549, title I, § 102, Oct. 25, 1972, 86 Stat. 1161.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 92-549, Oct. 25, 1972, 86 Stat. 1161, known as the "American-Mexican Boundary Treaty Act of 1972". Title I of this Act enacted sections 277d-34 to 277d-40 of this title and amended section 1322 of Title 19, Customs Duties. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 277d-34 of this title and Tables.

**§ 277d-36. Sale of excess land**

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Commissioner is authorized to dispose of by warranty deed, or otherwise, any land acquired by him on behalf of the United States, or obtained by the United States pursuant to treaty between the United States and Mexico, and not required for project purposes, under procedures to be formulated by the Commissioner, to adjoining landowners at such price as he considers fair and equitable, and, if not so disposed of, to turn such land over to the General Services Administration for disposal under the provisions of the Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949 [40 U.S.C. 471 et seq.].

(Pub. L. 92-549, title I, § 103, Oct. 25, 1972, 86 Stat. 1162.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949, as amended, referred to in text, is act June 30, 1949, ch. 288, 63 Stat. 377, as amended. Provisions of that Act relating to disposal of Government property are classified to chapter 10 (§ 471 et seq.) of Title 40,

Public Buildings, Property, and Works. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 471 of Title 40 and Tables.

**§ 277d-37. Channel shifts; boundary determination**

When a determination must be made under the treaty whether to permit a new channel to become the boundary, or whether or not to restore a river to its former channel, or whether, instead of restoration, the Governments should undertake a rectification of the river channel, the Commissioner's decision, approved by the Secretary of State shall be final so far as the United States is concerned, and the Commissioner is authorized to construct or arrange for the construction of such works as may be required to give effect to that decision.

(Pub. L. 92-549, title I, §104, Oct. 25, 1972, 86 Stat. 1162.)

**§ 277d-38. Acquired land, addition to State; State jurisdiction**

Land acquired or to be acquired by the United States of America in accordance with the provisions of the treaty, including the tract provided for in section 277d-39 of this title, shall become a geographical part of the State to which it attaches and shall be under the civil and criminal jurisdiction of such State, without affecting the ownership of such land. The addition of land and the ceding of jurisdiction to a State shall take effect upon acceptance by such State.

(Pub. L. 92-549, title I, §105, Oct. 25, 1972, 86 Stat. 1162.)

**§ 277d-39. Hidalgo-Reynosa lands; administration; part of national wildlife refuge system**

Upon transfer of sovereignty from Mexico to the United States of the 481.68 acres of land acquired by the United States from Mexico near Hidalgo-Reynosa, administration over the portion of that land which is determined by the Commissioner not to be required for the construction and maintenance of the relocated river channel shall be assumed by the Department of the Interior; and the Department of the Interior, United States Fish and Wildlife Service, is authorized to plan, establish, develop, and administer such portion of the acquired lands as a part of the national wildlife refuge system.

(Pub. L. 92-549, title I, §106, Oct. 25, 1972, 86 Stat. 1162; Pub. L. 93-271, §1(3), Apr. 22, 1974, 88 Stat. 92.)

CHANGE OF NAME

“United States Fish and Wildlife Service” substituted in text for “Fish and Wildlife Service, Bureau of Sport Fisheries and Wildlife” pursuant to section 1(3) of Pub. L. 93-271, see section 742b of Title 16, Conservation.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 277d-38 of this title.

**§ 277d-40. Authorization of appropriations**

There is authorized to be appropriated to the Department of State for the use of the United

States section of the International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico, such sums as may be necessary to carry out the provisions of the treaty and title I of this Act.

(Pub. L. 92-549, title I, §108, Oct. 25, 1972, 86 Stat. 1162.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 92-549, Oct. 25, 1972, 86 Stat. 1161, known as the “American-Mexican Boundary Treaty Act of 1972”. Title I of this Act enacted sections 277d-34 to 277d-40 of this title and amended section 1322 of Title 19, Customs Duties. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 277d-34 of this title and Tables.

**§ 277d-41. American-Mexican Boundary Treaty, Presidio flood control project; authorization of flood control agreement**

The Secretary of State, acting through the Commissioner, is hereby authorized to conclude with the appropriate official or officials of the Government of Mexico an agreement for a coordinated plan by the United States and Mexico for international flood control works for protection of lands along the international section of the Rio Grande in the United States and in Mexico in the Presidio-Ojinaga Valley.

(Pub. L. 92-549, title II, §201, Oct. 25, 1972, 86 Stat. 1163.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 277d-42 of this title.

**§ 277d-42. Construction, operation, and maintenance of flood control works; authorization of appropriations; restrictions**

If an agreement is concluded pursuant to section 277d-41 of this title, the Commissioner is authorized to construct, operate, and maintain flood control works located in the United States having substantially the characteristics described in “Report on the Flood Control Project Rio Grande, Presidio Valley, Texas”, prepared by the United States section, International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico; and there are hereby authorized to be appropriated to the Department of State for the use of the United States section of the Commission such sums as may be necessary to carry out the provisions of title II of this Act. No part of any appropriation under this section shall be expended for flood control works on any land, site, or easement unless such land, site, or easement has been acquired under the treaty for other purposes or by donation and, in the case of a donation, the title thereto has been approved in accordance with existing rules and regulations of the Attorney General of the United States.

(Pub. L. 92-549, title II, §202, Oct. 25, 1972, 86 Stat. 1163.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 92-549, Oct. 25, 1972, 86 Stat. 1161, known as the “American-Mexican Boundary Treaty Act of 1972”. Title II of this Act en-

acted sections 277d-41 and 277d-42 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 277d-34 of this title and Tables.

**§ 277e. Disposal of lands; issuance of licenses for use of lands; compensation for injured property**

The Secretary of State is authorized to lease any land heretofore or hereafter acquired under any Act, Executive order, or treaty in connection with projects, in whole or in part, constructed or administered by the Secretary of State through the said American Commissioner, or to dispose of such lands when no longer needed, subject to applicable regulations under the Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949, as amended [40 U.S.C. 471 et seq.], by sale at public auction, after thirty days' advertisement, at a price not less than that which may be fixed by three disinterested appraisers, to be designated by the Secretary of State, or by private sale, or otherwise, at not less than such appraised value: *Provided*, That any of such land as shall have been donated to the United States and which is no longer needed may be reconveyed, without cost, to the grantor or his heirs: *Provided, further*, That the lease or disposal of any land pursuant hereto may, in the discretion of the Secretary of State, be subject to reservations in favor of the United States for rights-of-way for irrigation, drainage, river work, and other purposes, and any such disposal may be conditioned upon and made subject to inclusion of such lands in any existing irrigation district in the vicinity of such lands, the proceeds of any such lease or sale to be covered into the Treasury of the United States: *And provided further*, That in the discretion of the Secretary of State, and subject to such conditions as he may deem appropriate, conveyances of any other of such lands not needed by the United States may be made to the State to which they lie adjacent or to any similarly situated county, city, or other governmental subdivision of such State, without cost, for use for public purposes.

The Secretary of State is further authorized to issue revokable licenses for public or private use for irrigation or other structures or uses not inconsistent with the use of such lands made, or to be made, by the United States, across any lands retained by the United States, and to execute all necessary leases, title instruments, and conveyances, in order to carry out the provisions of this section.

Whenever the construction of any project or works undertaken or administered by the Secretary of State through the International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico, results in the interference with or necessitates the alteration or restoration of constructed and existing irrigation or water-supply structures, sanitary or sewage disposal works, or other structures, or physical property belonging to any municipal or private corporation, company, association, or individual, the Secretary of State may cause the restoration or reconstruction of such works, structures, or physical property or the construction of others in lieu thereof or he may compensate the owners thereof to the extent of the reasonable value

thereof as the same may be agreed upon by the American Commissioner with such owner.

The Secretary of State acting through such officers as he may designate, is further authorized to consider, adjust, and pay from funds appropriated for the project, the construction of which resulted in damages, any claim for damages accruing after March 31, 1937, caused to owners of lands or other private property of any kind by reason of the operations of the United States, its officers or employees, in the survey, construction, operation, or maintenance of any project constructed or administered through the American Commissioner, International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico, if such claim for damages does not exceed \$1,000 and has been filed with the American Commissioner within one year after the damage is alleged to have occurred, and when in the opinion of the American Commissioner such claim is substantiated by a report of a board appointed by the said Commissioner.

(Aug. 27, 1935, ch. 763, 49 Stat. 906; June 19, 1939, ch. 212, 53 Stat. 841; Oct. 31, 1951, ch. 654, §2(15), 65 Stat. 707; Aug. 28, 1957, Pub. L. 85-201, 71 Stat. 475.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949, as amended, referred to in text, is act June 30, 1949, ch. 288, 63 Stat. 377, as amended. Provisions of that Act relating to disposal of Government property are classified to chapter 10 (§471 et seq.) of Title 40, Public Buildings, Property, and Works. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 471 of Title 40 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1957—Pub. L. 85-201 struck out “to citizens of the United States” after “is authorized to lease” and “to American citizens” after “or to dispose of such lands” in first sentence of first paragraph, before first proviso.

1951—Act Oct. 31, 1951, inserted reference to applicable regulations of the Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949, as amended, in text before first proviso of first paragraph.

1939—Act June 19, 1939, inserted last paragraph.

**§ 277f. Valley Gravity Canal and Storage Project**

The Secretary of State, with the approval of the President, shall designate the features of the Valley Gravity Canal and Storage Project which he deems international in character, and shall direct such changes in the general project plan as he deems advisable with respect to such features; and the features so designated shall be built, after consultation with the Bureau of Reclamation as to general design, by the American section of the International Boundary Commission, United States and Mexico, and shall be operated and maintained by said Commission insofar as their operation and maintenance in such manner is, in the opinion of the Secretary of State, necessary because of their international character. The construction, operation, and maintenance of such project shall be pursuant to the Federal reclamation laws, except as hereinbefore provided and except that—

(1) In addition to the nonreimbursable allocation to flood control or navigation which may be made by the Secretary of the Interior under section 485h(b) of title 43, the President,

after consultation with the Secretary of State and the Secretary of the Interior, shall allocate such part of the total estimated cost of the project as he deems proper to the protection of American interests from drought hazards resulting from the uncontrolled and unregulated flow of the international portion of the Rio Grande below Old Fort Quitman, Texas. Provisions of law applicable with respect to allocations to flood control under section 485h(b) of title 43, shall, insofar as they are not inconsistent with the foregoing provisions, be applicable in like manner with respect to any allocation made under this subparagraph; and

(2) All revenues received by the United States in connection with the construction, operation, and maintenance of such projects shall be covered into the Treasury as miscellaneous receipts.

(June 28, 1941, ch. 259, 55 Stat. 338.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Federal reclamation laws, referred to in text, are classified generally to chapter 12 (§371 et seq.) of Title 43, Public Lands.

#### CHANGE OF NAME

International Boundary Commission, United States and Mexico, American section, to which powers, duties, and functions of International Water Commission, United States and Mexico, American section, were transferred by act June 30, 1932, ch. 314, §510, 47 Stat. 417, reconstituted as International Boundary and Water Commission by Water Treaty of 1944.

### § 277g. Agreements to correct pollution of Rio Grande

#### (a) In general

The Secretary of State, acting through the United States Commissioner, International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico (hereafter in sections 277g to 277g-3 of this title referred to as the "Commissioner"), is authorized to conclude agreements with the appropriate representative of the Ministry of Foreign Relations of Mexico for the purpose of correcting the international problem of pollution of the Rio Grande caused by discharge of raw and inadequately treated sewage and other wastes into such river from the border cities including but not limited to Ciudad Acuna, Nuevo Laredo, and Reynosa, Mexico, and Del Rio, Laredo, and Hidalgo, Texas.

#### (b) Content of agreements

Agreements concluded under subsection (a) of this section should consist of recommendations to the Governments of the United States and Mexico of measures to protect the health and welfare of persons along the Rio Grande from the effects of pollution, including—

(1) facilities that should be constructed, operated, and maintained in each country;

(2) estimates of the cost of plans, construction, operation, and maintenance of the facilities referred to in paragraph (1);

(3) formulas for the initial division between the United States and Mexico of the cost of plans, constructions, operation, and maintenance of the facilities referred to in paragraph (1);

(4) a method for review and adjustment of the formulas referred to in paragraph (3) at intervals of five years which recognizes that such initial formulas should not be used as a precedent in their subsequent review and adjustment; and

(5) dates for the beginning and completion of construction of the facilities referred to in paragraph (1).

(Pub. L. 100-465, §2, Oct. 3, 1988, 102 Stat. 2272.)

#### SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 100-465, §1, Oct. 3, 1988, 102 Stat. 2272, provided that: "This Act [enacting this section and sections 277g-1 to 277g-3 of this title] may be cited as the 'Rio Grande Pollution Correction Act of 1987'."

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 277g-1, 277g-2, 277g-3 of this title.

### § 277g-1. Authority of Secretary of State to plan, construct, operate, and maintain facilities

The Secretary of State, acting through the Commissioner, is authorized to act jointly with the appropriate representative of the Government of Mexico and to—

(1) supervise the planning of, and

(2) supervise construction, operation, and maintenance of,

the facilities recommended in agreements concluded pursuant to section 277g of this title and approved by the Governments of the United States and Mexico.

(Pub. L. 100-465, §3, Oct. 3, 1988, 102 Stat. 2272.)

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 277g, 277g-2 of this title.

### § 277g-2. Consultation with Administrator of Environmental Protection Agency and other authorities

The Secretary of State shall consult with the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency and other concerned Federal, State, and local government officials in implementing sections 277g to 277g-3 of this title.

(Pub. L. 100-465, §4, Oct. 3, 1988, 102 Stat. 2273.)

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 277g of this title.

### § 277g-3. Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated such sums as may be necessary for the United States to fund its share of the cost of the plans, construction, operation, and maintenance of the facilities recommended in agreements concluded pursuant to section 277g of this title and approved by the Governments of the United States and Mexico.

(Pub. L. 100-465, §5, Oct. 3, 1988, 102 Stat. 2273.)

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 277g, 277g-2 of this title.

SUBCHAPTER V—GORGAS MEMORIAL  
LABORATORY

**§ 278. Gorgas Memorial Laboratory; location; acceptance of funds from Latin American countries or other sources**

There is hereby authorized to be permanently appropriated for each year, out of any money in the Treasury not otherwise appropriated, the sum of not to exceed \$2,000,000 to be paid to the Gorgas Memorial Institute of Tropical and Preventive Medicine, Incorporated (hereinafter referred to as the Gorgas Memorial Institute), for the maintenance and operation by its, of a laboratory to be known as the Gorgas Memorial Laboratory, upon condition (1) that the necessary building or quarters for said laboratory shall be constructed within the five years next ensuing after this subchapter shall become a law, either upon the site offered by the Republic of Panama therefor, at, or adjacent to, the city of Panama, or upon a site in the Canal Zone to be provided by the United States; and (2) that the said Gorgas Memorial Institute be, and it is, authorized within its discretion, henceforth to accept from any of the Latin American Governments, or from any other sources, any funds which may be offered or given for the use of the Gorgas Memorial Institute for the maintenance and operation of the Gorgas Memorial Laboratory, and for carrying on the work of said Laboratory wherever deemed by the said Institute to be necessary or desirable.

(May 7, 1928, ch. 505, § 1, 45 Stat. 491; July 1, 1948, ch. 787, 62 Stat. 1213; Apr. 19, 1954, ch. 160, 68 Stat. 57; Sept. 21, 1959, Pub. L. 86-296, § 1, 73 Stat. 572; Sept. 11, 1965, Pub. L. 89-181, 79 Stat. 679; Dec. 30, 1974, Pub. L. 93-559, § 47, 88 Stat. 1816.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

For definition of Canal Zone, referred to in text, see section 3602(b) of this title.

AMENDMENTS

1974—Pub. L. 93-559 substituted “\$2,000,000” for “\$500,000”.

1965—Pub. L. 89-181 substituted “not to exceed \$500,000” for “\$250,000”.

1959—Pub. L. 86-296 substituted “\$250,000” for “\$150,000”.

1954—Act Apr. 19, 1954, provided that donations for maintenance of the Laboratory may be accepted from Latin American countries and from other sources, in lieu of provisions which required that such countries be invited to contribute, and struck out provisions that such countries be represented on the board or council directing the administration of such Laboratory in proportion to the amount of their contributions.

1948—Act July 1, 1948, substituted “\$150,000” for “\$50,000”.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1965 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 89-181 provided that the amendment made by Pub. L. 89-181 is effective for fiscal years ending after June 30, 1963.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1959 AMENDMENT

Section 1 of Pub. L. 86-296 provided that the amendment made by that section is effective for fiscal years ending after June 30, 1960.

ADDITIONAL APPROPRIATION FOR THE FISCAL YEAR  
ENDING JUNE 30, 1970

Section 505 of Pub. L. 90-574, title V, Oct. 15, 1968, 82 Stat. 1013, provided that the annual appropriation for

the maintenance and operation of the Gorgas Memorial Laboratory for the fiscal year ending June 30, 1970 would be increased by \$500,000.

ANNUAL APPROPRIATIONS

An annual appropriation was contained in the following appropriation acts:

Aug. 5, 1953, ch. 328, title I, 67 Stat. 368.  
July 10, 1952, ch. 651, title I, 66 Stat. 550.  
Oct. 22, 1951, ch. 533, title I, 65 Stat. 577.  
Sept. 6, 1950, ch. 896, ch. III, title I, 64 Stat. 610.  
July 20, 1949, ch. 354, title I, 63 Stat. 449.  
June 3, 1948, ch. 400, title I, 62 Stat. 308.  
July 9, 1947, ch. 211, title I, 61 Stat. 282.  
July 5, 1946, ch. 541, title I, 60 Stat. 453.  
May 21, 1945, ch. 129, title I, 59 Stat. 175.  
June 28, 1944, ch. 294, title I, 58 Stat. 402.  
July 1, 1943, ch. 182, title I, 57 Stat. 278.  
July 2, 1942, ch. 472, title I, 56 Stat. 474.  
June 28, 1941, ch. 258, title I, 55 Stat. 271.  
May 14, 1940, ch. 189, title I, 54 Stat. 187.  
June 29, 1939, ch. 248, title I, 53 Stat. 891.  
Apr. 27, 1938, ch. 180, title I, 52 Stat. 253.  
June 16, 1937, ch. 359, title I, 50 Stat. 267.  
May 15, 1936, ch. 405, title I, 49 Stat. 1315.  
Mar. 22, 1935, ch. 39, title I, 49 Stat. 73.  
Apr. 7, 1934, ch. 104, title I, 48 Stat. 534.  
Mar. 1, 1933, ch. 144, title I, 47 Stat. 1376.  
July 1, 1932, ch. 361, title I, 47 Stat. 485.  
Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 280, title I, 46 Stat. 1309.  
Apr. 18, 1930, ch. 184, title I, 46 Stat. 173.  
Jan. 25, 1929, ch. 102, title I, 45 Stat. 1094.

APPROPRIATION FOR CONSTRUCTION OF FACILITIES

Section 4 of act May 7, 1928, as added by section 2 of Pub. L. 86-296, and amended Pub. L. 86-617, July 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 396, provided that a sum not to exceed \$500,000 be appropriated for construction and equipment of facilities for Gorgas Memorial Laboratory, including preparation of plans and specifications, remodeling of buildings, and site improvement, but excluding the cost of acquisition of land.

CROSS REFERENCES

Gorgas Hospital, see sections 301 and 302 of Title 24, Hospitals and Asylums.

**§ 278a. Annual report to Congress; examination of books and accounts**

The Gorgas Memorial Institute shall make to Congress, on April 1 of each year, a full report of the operation and work of the Gorgas Memorial Laboratory during the fiscal year ending the preceding September 30, and shall include therewith a complete statement of the receipts and expenditures of said laboratory for such fiscal year. The books and accounts of the Gorgas Memorial Laboratory shall at all times be open to examination by the Comptroller General of the United States.

(May 7, 1928, ch. 505, § 3, 45 Stat. 491; Oct. 7, 1978, Pub. L. 95-426, title VII, § 701(a), 92 Stat. 991.)

AMENDMENTS

1978—Pub. L. 95-426 substituted “on April 1 of each year” and “during the fiscal year ending the preceding September 30” for “annually, on the first Monday in December” and “up to the first of November next preceding”, respectively.

**§ 278b. Repealed. Pub. L. 95-426, title VII, § 701(b), Oct. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 991**

Section, act June 28, 1944, ch. 294, title I, 58 Stat. 402, related to a report to Congress of the operation and work of the laboratory, including the statement of the

receipts and expenditures, such a report to cover a fiscal year period ending on June 30 of the calendar year immediately preceding the convening of each such session. Similar provisions were contained in the following prior acts:

July 1, 1943, ch. 182, title I, 57 Stat. 277.  
 July 2, 1942, ch. 472, title I, 56 Stat. 474.  
 June 28, 1941, ch. 258, title I, 55 Stat. 271.  
 May 14, 1940, ch. 189, title I, 54 Stat. 187.  
 June 29, 1939, ch. 248, 53 Stat. 891.  
 Apr. 27, 1938, ch. 180, title I, 52 Stat. 253.  
 June 16, 1937, ch. 359, title I, 50 Stat. 267.

#### SUBCHAPTER VI—UNITED NATIONS FOOD AND AGRICULTURE ORGANIZATION

##### § 279. United States membership in the United Nations Food and Agriculture Organization

The President is hereby authorized to accept membership for the United States in the Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations (hereinafter referred to as the "Organization") the Constitution of which is set forth in appendix I of the First Report to the Governments of the United Nations by the Interim Commission on Food and Agriculture, dated August 1, 1944.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 342, §1, 59 Stat. 529.)

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Bretton Woods Agreement Act, see sections 286 to 286b, 286c to 286k-1 of this title.

##### § 279a. Authorization of appropriations for payment of United States expenses in Organization; limitation of contributions

There is hereby authorized to be appropriated, out of any money in the Treasury not otherwise appropriated, such sums as may be required for expenditure under the direction of the Secretary of State, for the payment by the United States of its proportionate share in the expenses of the Organization: *Provided*, That the percentage contribution of the United States to the total annual budget of the Organization shall not exceed 33.33 per centum.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 342, §2, 59 Stat. 529; Sept. 21, 1950, ch. 976, §1(b), 64 Stat. 902; Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title IV, §421, as added July 18, 1956, ch. 627, §8(n), 70 Stat. 559; Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title V, §544(b), as added Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, §11(b)(2), 71 Stat. 365; Sept. 4, 1961, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. IV, §709, 75 Stat. 465.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1961—Pub. L. 87-195 struck out provisions which limited the annual appropriations to not more than \$3,000,000.

1957—Pub. L. 85-141, §11(b)(2), added section 544(b) to act August 26, 1954, which section 544(b) amended this section by increasing the maximum percentage contribution from 31.5 to 33.33 per centum.

1956—Act July 18, 1956, increased authorized annual appropriation from \$2,000,000, to \$3,000,000, and inserted provisions limiting percentage contribution of United States to total annual budget to not more than 31.5 per centum.

1950—Joint Res. Sept. 21, 1950, increased authorized annual appropriation from \$1,250,000 to \$2,000,000.

#### REPEALS

Section 709 of Pub. L. 87-195, cited as a credit to this section, was repealed by section 401 of Pub. L. 87-565,

pt. IV, Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 263, except insofar as section 709 affected this section.

Section 544(b) of act Aug. 26, 1954, cited as a credit to this section, was repealed by Pub. L. 85-477, ch. IV, §401(h), June 30, 1958, 72 Stat. 270, except insofar as such section 544(b) affected this section.

Section 421 of act August 26, 1954, cited as a credit to this section was repealed by section 8(n) of Pub. L. 85-141, except insofar as section 421 affected this section.

#### SIMILAR PROVISIONS

Similar provisions were contained in the Department of State Appropriation Act, 1946, act July 5, 1946, ch. 541, title I, 60 Stat. 453.

#### ANNUAL APPROPRIATIONS

Annual appropriations to meet the obligations of membership in various international organizations were contained in acts listed in a note set out under section 269a of this title.

#### LIMITATION OF CONTRIBUTIONS

Contributions by United States, except for special projects, limited to amount provided by Joint Res. Sept. 21, 1950, consent by State Department and reports to Congress, see section 262a of this title.

##### § 279b. Integration of International Institute of Agriculture with Organization

In adopting this subchapter, it is the sense of the Congress that the Government of the United States should use its best efforts to bring about, as soon as practicable, the integration of the functions and the resources of the International Institute of Agriculture with those of the Organization, in a legal and orderly manner, to effect one united institution in such form as to provide an adequate research, informational, and statistical service for the industry of agriculture.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 342, §3, 59 Stat. 530.)

##### § 279c. Congressional authority necessary for acceptance of new obligations in Organization

Unless Congress by law authorizes such action, neither the President nor any person or agency shall on behalf of the United States accept any amendment under paragraph 1 of article XX of the Constitution of the Organization involving any new obligation for the United States.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 342, §4, 59 Stat. 530.)

##### § 279d. Limitation on power of Conference to impose new obligations on United States

In adopting this subchapter the Congress does so with the understanding that paragraph 2 of article XIII does not authorize the Conference of the Organization to so modify the provisions of its Constitution as to involve any new obligation for the United States.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 342, §5, 59 Stat. 530.)

#### SUBCHAPTER VII—SOUTH PACIFIC COMMISSION

##### § 280. Representation in South Pacific Commission; appointment of commissioners and alternates

The President is hereby authorized to accept membership for the United States in the South Pacific Commission, created by the Agreement



Establishing the South Pacific Commission, signed on February 6, 1947, at Canberra, Australia, by delegates representing the Governments of Australia, the French Republic, the Kingdom of the Netherlands, New Zealand, the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland, and the United States of America, and to appoint the United States Commissioners, and their alternates, thereto.

(Jan. 28, 1948, ch. 38, § 1, 62 Stat. 15.)

#### PURPOSE OF COMMISSION

In defining the purposes of act Jan. 28, 1948, Congress stated that:

"Whereas delegates representing the Governments of Australia, the French Republic, the Kingdom of the Netherlands, New Zealand, the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland, and the United States of America attended the South Seas Conference held at Canberra, Australia, and signed an 'Agreement Establishing the South Pacific Commission' on February 6, 1947; and

"Whereas the purpose of the South Pacific Commission is to encourage and strengthen international cooperation in promoting the economic and social welfare and advancement of the non-self-governing territories in the South Pacific in accordance with the principles set forth in Chapter XI of the Charter of the United Nations, thereby contributing to the maintenance of international peace and security: Therefore be it".

#### § 280a. Definitions

When used in this subchapter—

(1) the term "Secretary" means the Secretary of State;

(2) the term "Government agency" means any department, independent establishment, or other agency of the Government of the United States, or any corporation wholly owned by the Government of the United States; and

(3) the term "Commission" means the South Pacific Commission.

(Jan. 28, 1948, ch. 38, § 2, 62 Stat. 15.)

#### § 280b. Authorization of appropriations

There is hereby authorized to be appropriated to the Department of State, out of any money in the Treasury not otherwise appropriated—

(a) such<sup>1</sup> sums as may be required annually for the payment by the United States of its proportionate share of the expenses of the Commission and its auxiliary and subsidiary bodies, in accordance with article XIV of the agreement establishing the South Pacific Commission, as amended, except that in no event shall that payment for any fiscal year of the Commission exceed 20 per centum of all expenses apportioned among participating governments of the Commission for that year.

(b) Such additional sums as may be needed for the payment of all necessary expenses incident to participation by the United States in the activities of the Commission, including salaries of the United States Commissioners, their alternates, and appropriate staff, without regard to the civil-service laws and chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of title 5; personal services in the District of Columbia; services as au-

thorized by section 3109 of title 5; under such rules and regulations as the Secretary of State may prescribe, allowances for living quarters, including heat, fuel, and light and cost-of-living allowances to persons temporarily stationed abroad; hire of passenger motor vehicles and other local transportation; printing and binding without regard to section 501 of title 44 and section 5 of title 41; and such other expenses as the Secretary of State finds necessary to participation by the United States in the activities of the Commission: *Provided*, That the provisions of section 287r of this title, and regulations thereunder, applicable to expenses incurred pursuant to subchapter XVII of this chapter shall be applicable to any expenses incurred pursuant to this paragraph.

(Jan. 28, 1948, ch. 38, § 3, 62 Stat. 15; Oct. 28, 1949, ch. 782, title II, § 202(2), title XI, § 1106(a), 63 Stat. 954, 972; Sept. 21, 1950, ch. 976, § 1(c), 64 Stat. 902; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. VI, § 603, 74 Stat. 141; Jan. 31, 1964, Pub. L. 88-263, 78 Stat. 7; July 27, 1965, Pub. L. 89-91, 79 Stat. 281; Dec. 31, 1970, Pub. L. 91-632, 84 Stat. 1876; Oct. 13, 1972, Pub. L. 92-490, 86 Stat. 808.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The civil-service laws, referred to in subsec. (b), are set forth in Title 5, Government Organization and Employees. See, particularly, section 3301 et seq. of Title 5.

Subchapter XVII [§ 287m et seq.] of this chapter, referred to in subsec. (b), was in the original a reference to the Act of July 30, 1946 (Public Law 565, Seventy-ninth Congress).

#### CODIFICATION

In subsec. (b), "chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of title 5" and "section 3109 of title 5" substituted for "the Classification Act of 1949" and "section 15 of Public Law 600, Seventy-ninth Congress [5 U.S.C. 55a]", respectively, on authority of Pub. L. 89-554, § 7(b), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 631, the first section of which enacted Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

"Section 501 of title 44" substituted for "section 11 of the Act of March 1, 1919 (44 U.S.C. 111)" on authority of Pub. L. 90-620, § 2(b), Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1305, the first section of which enacted Title 44, Public Printing and Documents.

#### AMENDMENTS

1972—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 92-490 struck out "not to exceed \$250,000 per fiscal year" after "annually" and inserted "except that in no event shall that payment for any fiscal year of the Commission exceed 20 per centum of all expenses apportioned among participating governments of the Commission for that year" after "as amended".

1970—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 91-632 substituted "\$250,000" for "\$200,000".

1965—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 89-91 substituted "such sums as may be required annually, not to exceed \$200,000 per fiscal year" for "Not more than \$150,000 for the fiscal year 1965, and \$150,000 for the fiscal year 1966".

1964—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 88-263 substituted "\$150,000 for the fiscal year 1965, and \$150,000 for the fiscal year 1966," for "\$100,000 annually".

1960—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 86-472 substituted "\$100,000" for "\$75,000".

1950—Subsec. (a). Joint Res. Sept. 21, 1950, substituted "\$75,000" for "\$20,000".

1949—Subsec. (a). Act Oct. 28, 1949, substituted "Classification Act of 1949" for "Classification Act of 1923".

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be capitalized.

## REPEALS

Act Oct. 28, 1949, ch. 782, cited as a credit to this section, was repealed (subject to a savings clause) by Pub. L. 89-554, Sept. 6, 1966, § 8, 80 Stat. 632, 655.

## ANNUAL APPROPRIATIONS

Annual appropriations to meet the obligations of membership in various international organizations were contained in acts listed in a note set out under section 269a of this title.

## LIMITATION OF CONTRIBUTIONS

Contributions by United States, except for special projects, limited to amount provided by Joint Res. Sept. 21, 1950; consent by State Department and reports to Congress, see section 262a of this title.

### § 280c. Employment of personnel with specialized skills

The Secretary is authorized, when the Commission is desirous of obtaining the services of a person having special scientific or other technical or professional qualifications, from time to time to detail, or authorize the detail of, for temporary service to or in cooperation with the Commission, any person in the employ or service of the Government of the United States who has such qualifications, with the approval of the Government agency in which such person is employed or serving, under the same conditions as those governing the detail of officers and employees of the United States Government to the government of another country in accordance with the provisions of the Act of May 25, 1938 (52 Stat. 442), as amended, except that the authority vested in the President under that Act shall be vested in the Secretary for the purpose of carrying out this section.

(Jan. 28, 1948, ch. 38, § 4, 62 Stat. 16.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

Act of May 25, 1938 (52 Stat. 442), as amended, referred to in text, is act May 25, 1938, ch. 277, 52 Stat. 442, as amended, which was classified to section 118e of former title 5, Executive Departments and Government Officers and Employees, and was repealed by act Jan. 26, 1948, ch. 36, § 1004(a), 62 Stat. 13. Section 1004(c) of act Jan. 26, 1948, provided that any reference to provisions of act May 25, 1938 shall be construed to be applicable to the appropriate provisions of titles III and IX of act Jan. 26, 1948 [see sections 1451 et seq., 1478 and 1479 of this title].

## SUBCHAPTER VIII—CARIBBEAN COMMISSION

### § 280h. Representation in Caribbean Commission; appointment of commissioners and alternates

The President is hereby authorized to accept membership for the United States in the Caribbean Commission, created by "An agreement for the establishment of the Caribbean Commission," signed in Washington on October 30, 1946, by representatives of the Governments of the French Republic, the Kingdom of the Netherlands, the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland, and the United States of America, and to appoint the United States Commissioners, and their alternates, thereto.

(Mar. 4, 1948, ch. 97, § 1, 62 Stat. 66.)

## PURPOSE OF COMMISSION

In defining the purposes of act Mar. 4, 1948, Congress stated that:

"Whereas representatives of the Governments of the French Republic, the Kingdom of the Netherlands, the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland, and the United States of America signed 'An Agreement for the establishment of the Caribbean Commission' in Washington on October 30, 1946, which agreement continued and extended the international cooperative arrangements initiated in 1942 between the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland, and the United States; and

"Whereas the purpose of the Caribbean Commission is to encourage and strengthen international cooperation in promoting the economic and social welfare and advancement of the non-self-governing territories in the Caribbean area, whose economic and social development is of vital interest to the security of the United States, in accordance with the principles set forth in chapter XI of the Charter of the United Nations: Therefore be it".

## ACCEPTANCE OF CARIBBEAN ORGANIZATION AGREEMENT

Pub. L. 87-73, June 30, 1961, 75 Stat. 194, provided: "That the President is hereby authorized to accept on behalf of the Government of the United States of America the 'Agreement for the Establishment of the Caribbean Organization' signed at Washington on June 21, 1960, by representatives of the Governments of the Republic of France, the Kingdom of the Netherlands, the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland, and the United States of America; that the participation of the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico and the Virgin Islands of the United States in the Caribbean Organization is hereby authorized; that the Caribbean Organization shall, upon promulgation by the President of an Executive order to this effect, be entitled to the privileges, exemptions, and immunities conferred by the International Organizations Immunities Act (59 Stat. 669; 22 U.S.C. 288); and that the Secretary of State is hereby authorized to appoint or designate a United States observer to the Caribbean Organization."

## TERMINATION OF CARIBBEAN COMMISSION

Article III of the Agreement of the Establishment of the Caribbean Organization provides that "On the termination of the Agreement for the establishment of the Caribbean Commission, signed at Washington on October 30, 1946, the assets of the Caribbean Commission shall be and are by virtue of this Agreement transferred to and vested in the Caribbean Organization. The Caribbean Organization is hereby authorized to assume at the same time the liabilities of the Caribbean Commission and shall be regarded as the successor body to the Caribbean Commission."

Article IV of such Agreement provides that "The Agreement for the establishment of the Caribbean Commission shall terminate at the end of the first meeting of the Caribbean Council provided for in the Statute annexed to this Agreement."

## EX. ORD. NO. 10609. DELEGATION OF AUTHORITY TO APPOINT ALTERNATE COMMISSIONERS

Ex. Ord. No. 10609, May 7, 1955, 20 F.R. 3147, provided: By virtue of the authority vested in me by section 301 of title 3 of the United States Code (65 Stat. 713), and as President of the United States, it is ordered that the Secretary of State be, and he is hereby, designated and empowered to exercise, without the approval, ratification, or other action of the President, so much of the authority vested in the President by the first section of the Joint Resolution of March 4, 1948, entitled "Joint Resolution providing for membership and participation by the United States in the Caribbean Commission and authorizing an appropriation therefor" (62 Stat. 66; 22 U.S.C. 280h) as consists of authority to appoint alternate United States Commissioners to the Caribbean Commission.

DWIGHT D. EISENHOWER.

**§ 280i. Authorization of appropriations**

There is hereby authorized to be appropriated to the Department of State, out of any money in the Treasury not otherwise appropriated—

(a) Not more than \$142,000 annually for the payment by the United States of its proportionate share of the expenses of the Commission and its auxiliary and subsidiary bodies, pursuant to article XV of the “agreement for the Establishment of the Caribbean Commission”; and

(b) Such additional sums as may be needed for the payment of all necessary expenses incident to participation by the United States in the activities of the Commission, including salaries of the United States Commissioners, their alternates, appropriate staff, without regard to the civil-service laws, and chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of title 5; personal services in the District of Columbia; services as authorized by section 3109 of title 5; hire of passenger motor vehicles and other local transportation; printing and binding without regard to section 501 of title 44, and section 5 of title 41; and such other expenses as the Secretary of State finds necessary to participation by the United States in the activities of the Commission: *Provided*, That the provisions of section 287r of this title, and regulations thereunder, applicable to expenses incurred pursuant to subchapter XVII of this chapter shall be applicable to any expenses incurred pursuant to this paragraph.

(Mar. 4, 1948, ch. 97, § 2, 62 Stat. 66; Oct. 28, 1949, ch. 782, title II, § 202(2), title XI, § 1106(a), 63 Stat. 954, 972.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The civil-service laws, referred to in subsec. (b), are set forth in Title 5, Government Organization and Employees. See, particularly, section 3301 et seq. of Title 5.

Subchapter XVII [§ 287m et seq.] of this chapter, referred to in subsec. (b), was in the original a reference to the Act of July 30, 1946 (Public Law 565, Seventy-ninth Congress).

## CODIFICATION

In subsec. (b), “chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of title 5” and “section 3109 of title 5” substituted for “the Classification Act of 1949” and “section 15 of Public Law 600, Seventy-ninth Congress [5 U.S.C. 55a], respectively, on authority of Pub. L. 89-554, § 7(b), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 631, the first section of which enacted Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

“Section 501 of title 44” substituted for “section 11 of the Act of March 1, 1919 (44 U.S.C. 111)” on authority of Pub. L. 90-620, § 2(b), Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1305, the first section of which enacted Title 44, Public Printing and Documents.

## AMENDMENTS

1949—Subsec. (b). Act Oct. 28, 1949, substituted “Classification Act of 1949” for “Classification Act of 1923”.

## REPEALS

Act Oct. 28, 1949, ch. 782, cited as a credit to this section, was repealed (subject to a savings clause) by Pub. L. 89-554, Sept. 6, 1966, § 8, 80 Stat. 632, 655.

## ANNUAL APPROPRIATIONS

Annual appropriations to meet the obligations of membership in various international organizations were contained in acts listed in a note set out under section 269a of this title.

## CROSS REFERENCES

Consent by State Department to contributions to international organizations and reports to Congress, see section 262a of this title.

## SUBCHAPTER IX—PAN AMERICAN RAILWAY CONGRESS

**§ 280j. Representation in Congress; appointment of delegates and alternates**

The President is hereby authorized to accept membership for the Government of the United States in, and to appoint the United States delegates and their alternates to, the Pan American Railway Congress, the constitution and bylaws of which were approved in Montevideo, Uruguay, April 1946, and deposited in the archives of the Pan American Union in Washington.

(June 28, 1948, ch. 686, § 1, 62 Stat. 1060.)

**§ 280k. Authorization of appropriations**

There is hereby authorized to be appropriated to the Department of State, out of any money in the Treasury not otherwise appropriated—

(a) Such sums as may be necessary for the payment by the United States of its proportionate share of the expenses of the Pan American Railway Congress and its Permanent Commission; and

(b) Such additional sums as may be needed for the payment of all necessary expenses incident to participation by the United States in the activities thereof, including expenses of the United States delegates, their alternates, and appropriate staff, without regard to the civil-service laws and chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of title 5; personal services in the District of Columbia; services as authorized by section 3109 of title 5; hire of passenger motor vehicles and other local transportation; printing and binding without regard to section 501 of title 44, and section 5 of title 41; and such other expenses as the Secretary of State finds necessary to participation by the United States in the activities of the organization: *Provided*, That the provisions of section 287r of this title, and regulations thereunder, applicable to expenses incurred pursuant to subchapter XVII of this chapter shall be applicable to any expenses incurred pursuant to this subsection.

(June 28, 1948, ch. 686, § 2, 62 Stat. 1060; Oct. 28, 1949, ch. 782, title II, § 202(2), title XI, § 1106(a), 63 Stat. 954, 972; Dec. 16, 1970, Pub. L. 91-553, 84 Stat. 1441; Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title I, § 115, 96 Stat. 278.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The civil-service laws, referred to in subsec. (b), are set forth in Title 5, Government Organization and Employees. See, particularly, section 3301 et seq. of Title 5.

Subchapter XVII [§ 287m et seq.] of this chapter, referred to in subsec. (b), was in the original a reference to the Act of July 30, 1946 (Public Law 565, Seventy-ninth Congress).

## CODIFICATION

In subsec. (b), “chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of title 5” and “section 3109 of title 5” substituted for “the Classification Act of 1949” and “sec-

tion 15 of Public Law 600, Seventy-ninth Congress [5 U.S.C. 55a)], respectively, on authority of Pub. L. 89-554, § 7(b), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 631, the first section of which enacted Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

“Section 501 of title 44” substituted for “section 11 of the Act of March 1, 1919 (44 U.S.C. 111)” on authority of Pub. L. 90-620, § 2(b), Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1305, the first section of which enacted Title 44, Public Printing and Documents.

#### AMENDMENTS

1982—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 97-241 substituted “Such sums as may be necessary” for “Not more than \$15,000 annually”.

1970—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 91-553 increased annual authorization from \$5,000 to \$15,000.

1949—Subsec. (b). Act Oct. 28, 1949, substituted “Classification Act of 1949” for “Classification Act of 1923”.

#### REPEALS

Act Oct. 28, 1949, ch. 782, cited as a credit to this section, was repealed (subject to a savings clause) by Pub. L. 89-554, Sept. 6, 1966, § 8, 80 Stat. 632, 655.

#### ANNUAL APPROPRIATIONS

Annual appropriations to meet the obligations of membership in various international organizations were contained in acts listed in a note set out under section 269a of this title.

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Consent by State Department to contributions to international organizations and reports to Congress, see section 262a of this title.

### SUBCHAPTER X—THE INSTITUTE OF INTER-AMERICAN AFFAIRS

#### §§ 281 to 281b. Omitted

#### CODIFICATION

Sections 281 to 281b of this title contained provisions relating to the Institute of Inter-American Affairs. The Institute was created pursuant to act Aug. 5, 1947, ch. 498, 61 Stat. 780. Section 3 of such act, as amended, provided that the Institute was to have succession until June 30, 1960. Prior to such date, the Institute, together with its functions, was transferred to the Foreign Operations Administration by Reorg. Plan No. 7 of 1953, eff. Aug. 1, 1953, 18 F.R. 4541, 67 Stat. 639, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees. The Foreign Operations Administration was abolished by Ex. Ord. No. 10610, May 9, 1955, 20 F.R. 3179, and its functions and offices were transferred to the Department of State to be administered by the International Cooperation Administration. The International Cooperation Administration was to continue to exist for a period not to exceed sixty days after the effective date of Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424 [Sept. 4, 1961], and the President was authorized to transfer offices, entities, functions, property, records, and personnel of the Administration to the Agency carrying out functions relating to international development under the provisions of section 621(b), (e) of Pub. L. 87-195. The functions of the Administration were re-delegated to the Agency for International Development pursuant to President's letter of Sept. 30, 1961 and Ex. Ord. No. 10973, Nov. 3, 1961, 26 F.R. 10469, section 102 of which provided for the establishment of the Agency for International Development and section 103 of which continued the existence of the Administration until the end of Nov. 3, 1961 and authorized the Secretary to utilize the personnel, offices, entities, property, records, and funds of the Administration. See section 621 of Pub. L. 87-195 and Ex. Ord. No. 10973, classified to section 2381 of this title, and set out as a note under section 2381, respectively.

Section 281, act Aug. 5, 1947, ch. 498, § 1, 61 Stat. 780, created the Institute of Inter-American Affairs.

Section 281a, act Aug. 5, 1947, ch. 498, § 2, 61 Stat. 781, set forth the purposes of the Institute of Inter-American Affairs.

Section 281b, acts Aug. 5, 1947, ch. 498, § 3, 61 Stat. 781; Sept. 3, 1949, ch. 532, § 1, 63 Stat. 685; Apr. 5, 1952, ch. 159, § 1, 66 Stat. 43; Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title V, § 544(a), 68 Stat. 862; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, § 11(b)(1), 71 Stat. 365, provided that the Institute of Inter-American Affairs have succession until June 30, 1960, and set forth the powers and duties of the Institute.

#### § 281b-1. Repealed. Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title V, § 544(b), 68 Stat. 862

Section, act Sept. 3, 1949, ch. 532, § 1, 63 Stat. 685, related to contract authorizations.

#### §§ 281b-2 to 281j. Omitted

#### CODIFICATION

Sections 281b-2 to 281j of this title contained provisions relating to the Institute of Inter-American Affairs. The Institute was created pursuant to act Aug. 5, 1947, ch. 498, 61 Stat. 780. Section 3 of such act, as amended, provided that the Institute was to have succession until June 30, 1960. See Codification note set out under section 281 of this title.

Section 281b-2, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title V, § 544(a), 68 Stat. 862; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, § 11(b)(1), 71 Stat. 365, authorized the Institute of Inter-American Affairs to make contracts for periods not to exceed five years, with the proviso that any contract extending beyond June 30, 1960, be made subject to termination by the Institute upon notice, and provided that the Institute, on and after July 1, 1954, be subject to the applicable provisions of the Budget and Accounting Act, 1921, as amended, in lieu of the provisions of the Government Corporation Control Act, as amended [31 U.S.C. 9101 et seq.].

Section 281c, act Aug. 5, 1947, ch. 498, § 4, 61 Stat. 782, provided for transfer of assets to United States Treasury upon termination of corporate life of Institute of Inter-American Affairs.

Section 281d, act Aug. 5, 1947, ch. 498, § 5, 61 Stat. 782, established a Board of Directors for Institute of Inter-American Affairs, and enumerated powers of Board.

Section 281e, act Aug. 5, 1947, ch. 498, § 6, 61 Stat. 782, provided that Institute of Inter-American Affairs be a nonprofit corporation, have no capital stock, and that no part of its revenue, earnings, or other income or property inure to benefit of its directors, officers, and employees.

Section 281f, act Aug. 5, 1947, ch. 498, § 7, 61 Stat. 782, authorized officers and employees of Institute of Inter-American Affairs to hold offices upon approval of Institute, with governments or governmental agencies of other American Republics.

Section 281g, act Aug. 5, 1947, ch. 498, § 8, 61 Stat. 782, authorized Secretary of State to detail employees of Department of State to Institute of Inter-American Affairs.

Section 281h, act Aug. 5, 1947, ch. 498, § 9, 61 Stat. 783, provided that principal office of Institute of Inter-American Affairs be located in District of Columbia, with branch offices any place in United States or other American Republics.

Section 281i, act Aug. 5, 1947, ch. 498, § 10, 61 Stat. 783, exempted Institute of Inter-American Affairs from taxation by any Federal, State, or local taxing authority.

Section 281j, act Aug. 5, 1947, ch. 498, § 11, 61 Stat. 783, reserved right to alter, amend or repeal provisions of sections 281 to 281b and 281c to 281j of this title, and set forth savings clause for such provisions.

#### § 281k. Repealed. Pub. L. 89-554, § 8(a), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 654

Section, act Aug. 5, 1947, ch. 498, § 12, 61 Stat. 783, provided for transfer of property to Institute of Inter-American Affairs.

**§ 281. Omitted**

## CODIFICATION

Section, act Aug. 5, 1947, ch. 498, §13, 61 Stat. 783, provided that Institute of Inter-American Affairs be subject to provisions of the Government Corporation Control Act. See Codification note set out under section 281 of this title.

SUBCHAPTER XI—INTERNATIONAL  
FINANCE CORPORATION**§ 282. Acceptance of membership by United States in International Finance Corporation**

The President is hereby authorized to accept membership for the United States in the International Finance Corporation (hereinafter referred to as the "Corporation"), provided for by the Articles of Agreement of the Corporation deposited in the archives of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development.

(Aug. 11, 1955, ch. 788, §2, 69 Stat. 669.)

## SHORT TITLE

Section 1 of act Aug. 11, 1955, provided that: "This Act [enacting this subchapter] may be cited as the 'International Finance Corporation Act'."

## CROSS REFERENCES

Advancement of human rights through United States assistance policies with international financial institutions, see section 262d of this title.

**§ 282a. Governor, executive director, and alternates of Corporation**

The governor and executive director of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, and the alternate for each of them, appointed under section 286a of this title, shall serve as governor, director and alternates, respectively, of the Corporation.

(Aug. 11, 1955, ch. 788, §3, 69 Stat. 669.)

**§ 282b. Applicability of National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Problems**

The provisions of section 286b of this title, shall apply with respect to the Corporation to the same extent as with respect to the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development.

(Aug. 11, 1955, ch. 788, §4, 69 Stat. 669; Dec. 19, 1989, Pub. L. 101-240, title V, §541(e)(1), 103 Stat. 2518.)

## AMENDMENTS

1989—Pub. L. 101-240 struck out at end "Reports with respect to the Corporation under paragraphs 5 and 6 of subsection (b) of section 286b of this title, shall be included in the first report made thereunder after the establishment of the Corporation and in each succeeding report."

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Problems under this section delegated to National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Policies, see section 2(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 11269, Feb. 14, 1966, 31 F.R. 2813, set out as a note under section 286b of this title.

**§ 282c. Congressional authorization needed for certain actions**

Unless Congress by law authorizes such action, neither the President nor any person or agency shall on behalf of the United States (a) subscribe to additional shares of stock under article II, section 3, of the Articles of Agreement of the Corporation; (b) accept any amendment under article VII of the Articles of Agreement of the Corporation; (c) make any loan to the Corporation. The United States Governor of the Corporation is authorized to agree to an amendment to article III of the articles of agreement of the Corporation to authorize the Corporation to make investments of its funds in capital stock and to limit the exercise of voting rights by the Corporation unless exercise of such rights is deemed necessary by the Corporation to protect its interests, as proposed in the resolution submitted by the Board of Directors on February 20, 1961. Unless Congress by law authorizes such action, no governor or alternate representing the United States shall vote for an increase of capital stock of the Corporation under article II, section 2(c)(ii), of the Articles of Agreement of the Corporation.

(Aug. 11, 1955, ch. 788, §5, 69 Stat. 669; Aug. 30, 1961, Pub. L. 87-185, 75 Stat. 413.)

## AMENDMENTS

1961—Pub. L. 87-185 authorized acceptance of an amendment to the articles of agreement of the Corporation to permit investment in capital stock and to limit the exercise of voting rights.

**§ 282d. Federal Reserve banks as depositories**

Any Federal Reserve bank which is requested to do so by the Corporation shall act as its depository or as its fiscal agent, and the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System shall supervise and direct the carrying out of these functions by the Federal Reserve banks.

(Aug. 11, 1955, ch. 788, §6, 69 Stat. 669.)

**§ 282e. Payment of subscriptions to Corporation by United States; dividends covered into Treasury****(a) Authority of Secretary of the Treasury**

The Secretary of the Treasury is authorized to pay the subscription of the United States to the Corporation and for this purpose is authorized to use as a public-debt transaction not to exceed \$35,168,000 of the proceeds of any securities hereafter issued under chapter 31 of title 31, and the purposes for which securities may be issued under that chapter are extended to include such purpose. Payment under this subsection of the subscription of the United States to the Corporation and any repayment thereof shall be treated as public-debt transactions of the United States.

**(b) Dividends treated as miscellaneous receipts**

Any payment of dividends made to the United States by the Corporation shall be covered into the Treasury as a miscellaneous receipt.

(Aug. 11, 1955, ch. 788, §7, 69 Stat. 670.)

## CODIFICATION

In subsec. (a), "chapter 31 of title 31" and "that chapter" substituted for "the Second Liberty Bond Act, as

amended” and “that Act”, respectively, on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, §4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

**§ 282f. Jurisdiction and venue of actions**

For the purpose of any action which may be brought within the United States or its Territories or possessions by or against the Corporation in accordance with the Articles of Agreement of the Corporation, the Corporation shall be deemed to be an inhabitant of the Federal judicial district in which its principal office in the United States is located, and any such action at law or in equity to which the Corporation shall be a party shall be deemed to arise under the laws of the United States, and the district courts of the United States shall have original jurisdiction of any such action. When the Corporation is a defendant in any such action, it may, at any time before the trial thereof, remove such action from a State court into the district court of the United States for the proper district by following the procedure for removal of causes otherwise provided by law.

(Aug. 11, 1955, ch. 788, §8, 69 Stat. 670.)

FEDERAL RULES OF CIVIL PROCEDURE

One form of action, see rule 2, Title 28, Appendix, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

CROSS REFERENCES

Removal of cases from State to district courts, see section 1441 et seq. of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

**§ 282g. Status, privileges, and immunities of the United States**

The provisions of article V, section 5(d), and article VI, sections 2 to 9, both inclusive, of the Articles of Agreement of the Corporation shall have full force and effect in the United States and its Territories and possessions upon acceptance of membership by the United States in, and the establishment of, the Corporation.

(Aug. 11, 1955, ch. 788, §9, 69 Stat. 670.)

**§ 282h. Loans to or from International Bank for Reconstruction and Development; amendment to Articles of Agreement**

The United States Governor of the Corporation is authorized to agree to the amendments of the articles of agreement of the Corporation to remove the prohibition therein contained against the Corporation lending to or borrowing from the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, and to place limitations on such borrowing.

(Aug. 11, 1955, ch. 788, §10, as added Aug. 14, 1965, Pub. L. 89-126, §2, 79 Stat. 519.)

**§ 282i. Increase in capital stock of Corporation; subscription to additional shares**

(a) The United States Governor of the Corporation is authorized—

(1) to vote for an increase of five hundred and forty thousand shares in the authorized capital stock of the Corporation; and

(2) if such increase becomes effective, to subscribe on behalf of the United States to one

hundred and eleven thousand four hundred and ninety-three additional shares of the capital stock of the Corporation: *Provided, however,* That any commitment to make payment for such additional subscriptions shall be made subject to obtaining the necessary appropriations.

(b) In order to pay for the increase in the United States subscription to the Corporation provided for in this section, there are authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, \$111,493,000 for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury.

(Aug. 11, 1955, ch. 788, §11, as added Oct. 3, 1977, Pub. L. 95-118, title III, §301, 91 Stat. 1068.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 1001 of Pub. L. 95-118 provided that: “This Act [enacting this section and sections 262c, 262d, 262e to 262g, 284n, 285s, 285t, 286e-1f, and 290g-10 of this title, repealing sections 283y, 284m, 290g-9 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 262c of this title] shall take effect on the date of its enactment [Oct. 3, 1977], except that no funds authorized to be appropriated by any amendment contained in title II, III, IV, V, or VI [enacting this section and sections 286e-1f, 284n, 285s, 285t, or 290g-10 of this title] may be available for use or obligation prior to October 1, 1977”.

**§ 282j. Increase in capital stock of Corporation; subscription to additional shares**

(a) The United States Governor of the Corporation is authorized—

(1) to vote for an increase of 650,000 shares in the authorized capital stock of the Corporation; and

(2) to subscribe on behalf of the United States to 175,162 additional shares of the capital stock of the Corporation, except that any subscription to additional shares shall be effective only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriations Acts.

(b) In order to pay for the increase in the United States subscription to the Corporation provided for in this section, there are authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, \$175,162,000 for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury.

(Aug. 11, 1955, ch. 788, §12, as added Dec. 19, 1985, Pub. L. 99-190, §101(i) [title I, (a)], 99 Stat. 1291, 1294.)

CODIFICATION

Section 12 of act Aug. 11, 1955, is based on section 3 of H.R. 1948, Ninety-ninth Congress, as introduced Apr. 3, 1985, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 99-190.

**§ 282k. Securities issued by Corporation**

**(a) Exemption from securities laws; reports to Securities and Exchange Commission**

Any securities issued by the Corporation (including any guaranty by the Corporation, whether or not limited in scope) and any securities guaranteed by the Corporation as to both principal and interest shall be deemed to be exempted securities within the meaning of section 77c(a)(2) of title 15 and section 78c(a)(12) of title 15. The Corporation shall file with the Securities and Exchange Commission such annual and

other reports with regard to such securities as the Commission shall determine to be appropriate in view of the special character of the Corporation and its operations and necessary in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

**(b) Authority of Securities and Exchange Commission to suspend exemption; reports to Congress**

The Securities and Exchange Commission, acting in consultation with the National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Problems, is authorized to suspend the provisions of subsection (a) of this section at any time as to any or all securities issued or guaranteed by the Corporation during the period of such suspension. The Commission shall include in its annual reports to the Congress such information as it shall deem advisable with regard to the operations and effect of this section.

(Aug. 11, 1955, ch. 788, §13, as added Nov. 5, 1990, Pub. L. 101-513, title V, §562(e)(1)(A), 104 Stat. 2037.)

**§ 282l. Capital stock increase**

**(a) Subscription authorized**

**(1) In general**

The United States Governor of the Corporation may—

(A) vote for an increase of 1,000,000 shares in the authorized capital stock of the Corporation; and

(B) subscribe on behalf of the United States to 250,000 additional shares of the capital stock of the Corporation.

**(2) Prior appropriation required**

The subscription authority provided in paragraph (1) shall be effective only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriations Acts.

**(b) Limitations on authorization of appropriations**

In order to pay for the subscription authorized in subsection (a) of this section, there are authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, \$50,000,000 for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury.

(Aug. 11, 1955, ch. 788, §14, as added Oct. 28, 1991, Pub. L. 102-145, §125(a), as added Apr. 1, 1992, Pub. L. 102-266, §102, 106 Stat. 97.)

**§ 282m. Authority to vote for capital increases necessary to support economic restructuring in independent states of former Soviet Union**

The United States Governor of the Corporation may vote in favor of any increase in the capital stock of the Corporation that may be needed to accommodate the requirements of the independent states of the former Soviet Union (as defined in section 5801 of this title).

(Aug. 11, 1955, ch. 788, §15, as added Oct. 24, 1992, Pub. L. 102-511, title X, §1005, 106 Stat. 3361.)

**§ 282n. Authority to agree to amendments to Articles of Agreement**

The United States Governor of the Corporation is authorized to agree to amendments to

the Articles of Agreement of the Corporation that would—

(1) amend Article II, Section 2(c)(ii), to increase the vote by which the Board of Governors of the Corporation may increase the capital stock of the Corporation from a three-fourths majority to a four-fifths majority; and

(2) amend Article VII(a) to increase the vote by which the Board of Governors of the Corporation may amend the Articles of Agreement of the Corporation from a four-fifths majority to an eighty-five percent majority.

(Aug. 11, 1955, ch. 788, §16, as added Oct. 24, 1992, Pub. L. 102-511, title X, §1006, 106 Stat. 3361.)

**SUBCHAPTER XII—INTER-AMERICAN DEVELOPMENT BANK**

**§ 283. Acceptance of membership by United States in Inter-American Development Bank**

The President is hereby authorized to accept membership for the United States in the Inter-American Development Bank (hereinafter referred to as the “Bank”), provided for by the agreement establishing the bank (hereinafter referred to as the “agreement”) deposited in the archives of the Organization of American States.

(Pub. L. 86-147, §2, Aug. 7, 1959, 73 Stat. 299.)

**SHORT TITLE**

Section 1 of Pub. L. 86-147 provided that: “This Act [enacting this subchapter and amending section 24 of Title 12, Banks and Banking] may be cited as the ‘Inter-American Development Bank Act.’”

**PROPOSALS FOR JOINT ACT BY PARTICIPANTS IN INTER-AMERICAN DEVELOPMENT BANK FOR INCREASED EXPLORATION AND EXPLOITATION OF ENERGY AND MINERAL RESOURCES OF WESTERN HEMISPHERE**

Pub. L. 96-259, title I, §102, June 3, 1980, 94 Stat. 430, which required Presidential evaluation and report on a proposal for joint action by countries of Western Hemisphere and other countries which participate in Inter-American Development Bank to increase exploration for and exploitation of energy and mineral resources of Western Hemisphere through multilateral incentives, administered by Inter-American Development Bank, was repealed by Pub. L. 101-240, title V, §541(d)(6), Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2518.

**PAR VALUE MODIFICATION**

For Congressional direction that the Secretary of the Treasury maintain the value in terms of gold of the Inter-American Development Bank’s holdings of United States dollars following the establishment of a par value of the dollar at \$38 for a fine troy ounce of gold pursuant to the Par Value Modification Act and for the authorization of the appropriations necessary to provide such maintenance of value, see section 5152 of Title 31, Money and Finance.

**CROSS REFERENCES**

Advancement of human rights through United States assistance policies with international financial institutions, see section 262d of this title.

**§ 283a. Appointment of officers; term of office; salary**

**(a) Governor and alternate governor**

The President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint a governor of the Bank and an alternate for the governor. The

term of office for the governor and the alternate governor shall be five years, but each shall remain in office until a successor has been appointed.

**(b) Executive director and alternate executive director**

The President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint an executive director of the Bank and an alternate Executive Director. Except as provided for in article XV, section 3, of the agreement, the term of office for the executive director shall be three years, but he shall remain in office until a successor has been appointed.

**(c) Compensation**

No person shall be entitled to receive any salary or other compensation from the United States for services as a governor, alternate governor, or executive director.

(Pub. L. 86-147, § 3, Aug. 7, 1959, 73 Stat. 299; Pub. L. 91-599, ch. 2, § 21(b), Dec. 30, 1970, 84 Stat. 1658.)

AMENDMENTS

1970—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 91-599 authorized appointment of an alternate Executive Director.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 283bb of this title.

**§ 283b. National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Problems**

The provisions of section 286b of this title shall apply with respect to the Bank to the same extent as with respect to the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development and the International Monetary Fund.

(Pub. L. 86-147, § 4, Aug. 7, 1959, 73 Stat. 299; Pub. L. 101-240, title V, § 541(e)(2), Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2518.)

AMENDMENTS

1989—Pub. L. 101-240 struck out at end “Reports with respect to the Bank under paragraphs (5) and (6) of subsection (b) of section 286b of this title shall be included in the first report made thereunder after the establishment of the Bank and in each succeeding report.”

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Problems under this section delegated to National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Policies, see section 2(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 11269, Feb. 14, 1966, 31 F.R. 2813, set out as a note under section 286b of this title.

**§ 283c. Congressional authorization needed for certain actions**

Unless Congress by law authorizes such action, neither the President nor any person or agency shall, on behalf of the United States, (a) subscribe to additional shares of stock under article II, section 3, or article IIA, section 2, of the agreement; (b) request or consent to any change in the quota of the United States under article IV, section 3, of the agreement; (c) accept any amendment under article XII of the agreement; or (d) make a loan or provide other financing to the Bank, except that loans or other financing may be provided to the Bank by a United States

agency created pursuant to an Act of Congress which is authorized by law to make loans or provide other financing to international organizations. Unless Congress by law authorizes such actions, no governor or alternate appointed to represent the United States shall vote for any increase of capital stock of the Bank under article II, section 2, or article IIA, section 1, of the agreement or any increase in the resources of the Fund for Special Operations under article IV, section 3(g) thereof.

(Pub. L. 86-147, § 5, Aug. 7, 1959, 73 Stat. 299; Pub. L. 94-302, title I, § 103(a)(2), May 31, 1976, 90 Stat. 593.)

AMENDMENTS

1976—Pub. L. 94-302 inserted “, or article IIA, section 2,” after “article II, section 3” and “or article IIA, section 1,” after “article II, section 2.”

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1976 AMENDMENT

Section 103(b) of Pub. L. 94-302 provided that: “The amendments made by paragraphs (2) and (3) of this section [amending this section and section 283h of this title] shall become effective upon approval by the Board of Governors of the Bank of the resolutions referred to in section 23 of the Inter-American Development Bank Act (22 U.S.C. 283 et seq.).”

**§ 283d. Federal Reserve banks as depositories**

Any Federal Reserve bank which is requested to do so by the Bank shall act as its depository or as its fiscal agent and the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System shall supervise and direct the carrying out of these functions by the Federal Reserve banks.

(Pub. L. 86-147, § 6, Aug. 7, 1959, 73 Stat. 300.)

**§ 283e. Payment of subscription to Bank and Fund by United States**

**(a) Authorization of appropriations**

There is hereby authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, for the purchase of thirty-five thousand shares of capital stock in the Bank, \$350 million. In addition, there is authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, for payment of the subscription of the United States to the Fund for Special Operations, \$100 million.

**(b) Issuance of special notes**

For the purpose of keeping to a minimum the cost to the United States of participation in the Bank, the Secretary of the Treasury, after paying the requisite part of the subscription and quota of the United States in the Bank required to be made under article II, section 4, and article IV, section 3, respectively, of the agreement, is authorized and directed to issue special notes of the United States from time to time, at par, and to deliver such notes to the Bank in exchange for dollars to the extent permitted by the agreement. The special notes provided for in this subsection shall be issued under the authority and subject to the provisions of chapter 31 of title 31, and the purposes for which securities may be issued under that chapter are extended to include the purposes for which special notes are authorized and directed to be issued under this subsection, but such notes shall bear no interest, shall be nonnegotiable, and shall be pay-



able on demand of the Bank. The face amount of special notes issued to the Bank under the authority of this subsection and outstanding at any one time shall not exceed, in the aggregate, the amount of the subscription and quota of the United States actually paid to the Bank under article II, section 4, and article IV, section 3, respectively, of the agreement.

**(c) Income covered into Treasury**

Any payment made to the United States by the Bank as a distribution of net income shall be covered into the Treasury as a miscellaneous receipt.

(Pub. L. 86-147, §7, Aug. 7, 1959, 73 Stat. 300.)

CODIFICATION

In subsec. (b), “chapter 31 of title 31” and “that chapter” substituted for “the Second Liberty Bond Act, as amended” and “that Act”, respectively, on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, §4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

**§ 283f. Jurisdiction and venue of actions**

For the purpose of any action which may be brought within the United States, its Territories or possessions, or the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico by or against the Bank in accordance with the agreement, the Bank shall be deemed to be an inhabitant of the Federal judicial district in which its principal office in the United States is located, and any such action at law or in equity to which the Bank shall be a party shall be deemed to arise under the laws of the United States, and the district courts of the United States shall have original jurisdiction of any such action. When the Bank is a defendant in any such action, it may, at any time before the trial thereof, remove such action from a State court into the district court of the United States for the proper district by following the procedure for removal of causes otherwise provided by law.

(Pub. L. 86-147, §8, Aug. 7, 1959, 73 Stat. 300.)

FEDERAL RULES OF CIVIL PROCEDURE

One form of action, see rule 2, Title 28, Appendix, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

CROSS REFERENCES

Removal of cases from State to district courts, see section 1441 et seq. of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

**§ 283g. Status, privileges, and immunities of the United States**

The provisions of article X, section 4(c), and article XI, sections 2 to 9, both inclusive, of the agreement shall have full force and effect in the United States, its Territories and possessions, and the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, upon acceptance of membership by the United States in, and the establishment of, the Bank.

(Pub. L. 86-147, §9, Aug. 7, 1959, 73 Stat. 301.)

**§ 283h. Securities issued by Bank; reports to and of Securities and Exchange Commission**

**(a) Exempt securities; reports of Bank to Commission**

Any securities issued by the Bank (including any guarantee by the Bank, whether or not lim-

ited in scope) in connection with raising of funds for including in the Bank’s capital resources as defined in article II, section 5, and article IIA, section 4, of the agreement, and any securities guaranteed by the Bank as to both principal and interest to which the commitment in article II, section 4(a)(ii), or article IIA, section 3(c), of the agreement is expressly applicable, shall be deemed to be exempted securities within the meaning of subsection (a)(2) of section 77c of title 15 and subsection (a)(12) of section 78c of title 15. The Bank shall file with the Securities and Exchange Commission such annual and other reports with regard to such securities as the Commission shall determine to be appropriate in view of the special character of the Bank and its operations and necessary in the Public interest or for the protection of investors.

**(b) Suspension of exemption provisions; annual reports of Commission to Congress**

The Securities and Exchange Commission, acting in consultation with the National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Problems, is authorized to suspend the provisions of subsection (a) of this section at any time as to any or all securities issued or guaranteed by the Bank during the period of such suspension. The Commission shall include in its annual reports to Congress such information as it shall deem advisable with regard to the operations and effect of this section and in connection therewith shall include any views submitted for such purpose by any association of dealers registered with the Commission.

(Pub. L. 86-147, §11, Aug. 7, 1959, 73 Stat. 301; Pub. L. 94-302, title I, §103(a)(3), May 31, 1976, 90 Stat. 593.)

AMENDMENTS

1976—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94-302 struck out “ordinary” after “in the Bank’s” and inserted “and article IIA, section 4” after “article II, section 5” and “or article IIA, section 3(c)” after “article II, section 4(a)(ii)”.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1976 AMENDMENT

For effective date of amendment by Pub. L. 94-302, see section 103(b) of Pub. L. 94-302, set out as a note under section 283c of this title.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Problems delegated to National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Policies, see section 2(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 11269, Feb. 14, 1966, 31 F.R. 2813, set out as a note under section 286b of this title.

**§ 283i. Repealed. Pub. L. 101-240, title V, § 541(d)(3), Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2518**

Section, Pub. L. 86-147, §12, Aug. 7, 1959, 73 Stat. 301, related to reports on effectiveness of section 283h of this title and section 24 of Title 12, Banks and Banking, on development of economic resources in member countries.

**§ 283j. Increased United States participation in Bank activities**

The United States Governor of the Bank is hereby authorized (1) to vote (A) for the increases in the authorized capital stock of the

Bank under article II, Section 2, of the agreement, and (B) for an increase in the resources of the Fund for Special Operations under article IV, section 3, of the agreement, all as recommended by the Executive Directors in a report dated March 18, 1963, to the Board of Governors of the Bank; (2) to agree on behalf of the United States to subscribe to its proportionate share of the \$1,000,000,000 increase in the authorized callable capital stock of the Bank; and (3) to vote for an amendment to article VIII, section 3, of the agreement to provide that the Board of Governors may, upon certain conditions, increase by one the number of Executive Directors.

(Pub. L. 86-147, §13, as added Pub. L. 88-259, §1, Jan. 22, 1964, 78 Stat. 3.)

#### § 283j-1. Audit

##### (a) Establishment

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director to propose the establishment by the Board of Executive Directors of a program of selective but continuing independent and comprehensive audit of the Inter-American Development Bank, in accordance with such terms of reference as the Board of Executive Directors itself (or through a subcommittee), may prescribe. Such proposal shall provide that the audit reports be submitted to the Board of Executive Directors and to the Board of Governors.

##### (b) Scope and standards

The Comptroller General of the United States shall prepare for the Secretary of the Treasury the scope of the audit and the auditing and reporting standards for the use of the United States Executive Director in assisting in the formulation of the terms of reference.

##### (c) Reports

The reports of the National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Policies to the Congress shall include, among other things, an appraisal of the effectiveness of the implementation and administration of the loans made by the Bank based upon the audit reports. The Comptroller General shall periodically review the reports of audit and findings issued and report to the Secretary of the Treasury and the Congress any suggestions he might have in improving the scope of the audit or auditing and reporting standards of the independent auditing firm, group, or staff.

(Pub. L. 86-147, §14, as added Pub. L. 90-88, §1, Sept. 22, 1967, 81 Stat. 227.)

#### § 283k. Authorization of appropriations

##### (a) Capital stock of Inter-American Development Bank

There is hereby authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, for payment of the increased United States subscription to the capital stock of the Inter-American Development Bank, \$411,760,000.

##### (b) Fund for Special Operations of the Inter-American Development Bank

There is hereby authorized to be appropriated, for payment of the increased United States sub-

scription to the Fund for Special Operations of the Inter-American Development Bank, \$50,000,000.

(Pub. L. 88-259, §2, Jan. 22, 1964, 78 Stat. 3.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as part of Pub. L. 86-147, Aug. 7, 1959, 73 Stat. 299, known as the Inter-American Development Bank Act, which comprises this subchapter.

#### § 283l. Increase in resources of the Fund for Special Operations

##### (a) Authorization of vote; payment to Fund

The United States Governor of the Bank is hereby authorized to vote in favor of the resolution entitled "Increase of Resources of the Fund for Special Operations" proposed by the Governors at their annual meeting in April 1964, and now pending before the Board of Governors of the Bank. Upon the adoption of such resolution, the United States Governor is authorized to agree, on behalf of the United States to pay to the Fund for Special Operations of the Bank, the sum of \$750,000,000, in accordance with and subject to the terms and conditions of such resolution.

##### (b) Authorization of appropriations

There is hereby authorized to be appropriated without fiscal year limitation, for the United States share in the increase in the resources of the Fund for Special Operations of the Bank, the sum of \$750,000,000.

##### (c) Loan disapproval by the United States

With respect to any dollars herein provided, the voting power of the United States shall be exercised for the purpose of disapproving any loan from the Fund for Special Operations of the Bank for any project, enterprise, or activity in any country, during any period for which the President has suspended assistance to the government of such country because of any action taken on or after January 1, 1962, by the government of such country or any government agency or subdivision within such country as specified in paragraph (A), (B), or (C) of subsection (e)(1) of section 2370 of this title, and the failure of such country within a reasonable time to take appropriate steps to discharge its obligations or provide relief in accordance with provisions of such subsection.

(Pub. L. 86-147, §15, formerly §14, as added Pub. L. 89-6, Mar. 24, 1965, 79 Stat. 23; renumbered §15, Pub. L. 90-88, §1, Sept. 22, 1967, 81 Stat. 226.)

#### § 283m. Additional increases in resources of the Fund for Special Operations

##### (a) Authorization of vote; payment to Fund

The United States Governor of the Bank is hereby authorized to vote in favor of the resolution entitled "Increase of \$1,200,000,000 in Resources of Fund for Special Operations" proposed by the Governors at their annual meeting in April 1967 and now pending before the Board of Governors of the Bank. Upon the adoption of such resolution, the United States Governor is authorized to agree, on behalf of the United States, to pay to the Fund for Special Oper-

ations of the Bank, the sum of \$900,000,000, in accordance with and subject to the terms and conditions of such resolution, and subject to the further condition that in consideration of the United States balance-of-payments deficit any local cost financing, by project or otherwise, with the funds authorized under this section to be held to the minimum possible level. The United States Governor is also authorized to vote in favor of the amendment to Annex C of the agreement, now pending before the Board of Governors of the Bank, to modify the procedure employed in the election of Executive Directors.

**(b) Authorization of appropriations**

There is hereby authorized to be appropriated without fiscal year limitation, for the United States share in the increase in the resources of the Fund for Special Operations of the Bank, the sum of \$900,000,000.

**(c) Loan disapproval by the United States**

The voting power of the United States shall be exercised for the purpose of disapproving any loan which might assist the recipient country directly or indirectly to acquire sophisticated or heavy military equipment.

(Pub. L. 86-147, §16, as added Pub. L. 90-88, §2, Sept. 22, 1967, 81 Stat. 227.)

**§ 283n. Increase in authorized capital stock; United States share; authorization of appropriations**

(a) The United States Governor of the Bank is hereby authorized (1) to vote for an increase in the authorized capital stock of the Bank under article II, section 2, of the agreement as recommended by the Board of Executive Directors in its report of April 1967, to the Board of Governors of the Bank; and (2) to agree on behalf of the United States to subscribe to its proportionate share of the \$1,000,000,000 increase in the authorized callable capital stock of the bank.

(b) There is hereby authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury of the increased United States subscription to the capital stock of the Inter-American Development Bank, \$411,760,000.

(Pub. L. 86-147, §17, as added Pub. L. 90-325, June 4, 1968, 82 Stat. 168.)

**§ 283o. Increase in authorized capital stock and additional subscriptions of members thereto; increase in resources of Fund for Special Operations and contributions thereto; United States share; authorization of appropriations**

(a) The United States Governor of the Bank is hereby authorized to vote in favor of the two resolutions proposed by the Governors at their annual meeting in April 1970 and now pending before the Board of Governors of the Bank, which provide for (1) an increase in the authorized capital stock to the Bank and additional subscriptions of members thereto and (2) an increase in the resources of the Fund for Special Operations and contributions thereto. Upon adoption of such resolutions the United States Governor is authorized to agree on behalf of the United States (1) to subscribe to eighty-two

thousand three hundred and fifty-two shares of \$10,000 par value of the increase in the authorized capital stock of the Bank of which sixty-seven thousand three hundred and fifty-two shall be callable shares and fifteen thousand shall be paid in and (2) to pay to the Fund for Special Operations an initial annual installment of \$100,000,000 and, upon further authorization by the Congress two subsequent annual installments of \$450,000,000 each, in accordance with and subject to the terms and conditions of such resolutions.

(b) There are hereby authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, the amounts necessary for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury of (1) three annual installments of \$50,000,000 each for the United States subscription to paid-in capital stock of the Bank; (2) two installments of \$336,760,000 each for the United States subscription to the callable capital stock of the Bank; and (3) one installment of \$100,000,000 for the United States share of the increase in the resources of the Fund for Special Operations of the Bank.

(Pub. L. 86-147, §18, as added Pub. L. 91-599, ch. 2, §21(a), Dec. 30, 1970, 84 Stat. 1658.)

**§ 283p. Authorization for payment of United States contribution to increase Fund for Special Operations; authorization of appropriations**

(a) The United States Governor of the Bank is authorized to pay to the Fund for Special Operations two annual installments of \$450,000,000 each in accordance with and subject to the terms and conditions of the resolution adopted by the Board of Governors on December 31, 1970, concerning an increase in the resources of the Fund for Special Operations and contributions thereto.

(b) There are hereby authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, the amounts necessary for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury of the two annual installments of \$450,000,000 each for the United States share of the increase in the resources of the Fund for Special Operations of the Bank.

(Pub. L. 86-147, §19, as added Pub. L. 92-246, §1, Mar. 10, 1972, 86 Stat. 59.)

**§ 283q. Articles of agreement; authorization to agree to amendments**

The United States Governor of the Bank is authorized to agree to amendments to the provisions of the articles of agreement as provided in proposed Board of Governors resolutions entitled (a) "Amendment of the Provisions of the Agreement Establishing the Bank with Respect to Membership and to Related Matters" and (b) "Amendment of the Provisions of the Agreement Establishing the Bank with Respect to the Election of Executive Directors".

(Pub. L. 86-147, §20, as added Pub. L. 92-246, §1, Mar. 10, 1972, 86 Stat. 59.)

**§ 283r. Expropriation of United States property; loan restrictions**

The President shall instruct the United States Executive Director of the Bank to vote against

any loan or other utilization of the funds of the Bank for the benefit of any country which has—

(1) nationalized or expropriated or seized ownership or control of property owned by any United States citizen or by any corporation, partnership, or association not less than 50 per centum of which is beneficially owned by United States citizens;

(2) taken steps to repudiate or nullify existing contracts or agreements with any United States citizen or any corporation, partnership, or association not less than 50 per centum of which is beneficially owned by United States citizens; or

(3) imposed or enforced discriminatory taxes or other exactions, or restrictive maintenance or operational conditions, or has taken other actions, which have the effect of nationalizing, expropriating, or otherwise seizing ownership or control of property so owned;

unless the President determines that (A) an arrangement for prompt, adequate, and effective compensation has been made, (B) the parties have submitted the dispute to arbitration under the rules of the Convention for the Settlement of Investment Disputes, or (C) good faith negotiations are in progress aimed at providing prompt, adequate, and effective compensation under the applicable principles of international law.

(Pub. L. 86-147, §21, as added Pub. L. 92-246, §1, Mar. 10, 1972, 86 Stat. 59.)

#### **§ 283s. Illegal drug traffic; loan restrictions**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of the Bank to vote against any loan or other utilization of the funds of the Bank for the benefit of any country with respect to which the President has made a determination, and so notified the Secretary of the Treasury, that the government of such country has failed to take adequate steps to prevent narcotic drugs and other controlled substances (as defined by the Comprehensive Drug Abuse Prevention and Control Act of 1970 [21 U.S.C. 801 et seq.]) produced or processed, in whole or in part, in such country, or transported through such country, from being sold illegally within the jurisdiction of such country to United States Government personnel or their dependents, or from entering the United States unlawfully. Such instruction shall continue in effect until the President determines, and so notifies the Secretary of the Treasury, that the government of such country has taken adequate steps to prevent such sale or entry of narcotic drugs and other controlled substances.

(Pub. L. 86-147, §22, as added Pub. L. 92-246, §2, Mar. 10, 1972, 86 Stat. 60.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Comprehensive Drug Abuse Prevention and Control Act of 1970, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 91-513, Oct. 27, 1970, 84 Stat. 1236, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 13 (§801 et seq.) of Title 21, Food and Drugs. For complete classification of this act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 801 of Title 21 and Tables.

#### **§ 283t. Authorization to vote on proposed resolutions**

The United States Governor of the Bank is authorized to vote for three proposed resolutions of the Board of Governors entitled (a) "Amendments to the Agreement Establishing the Bank with respect to the Creation of the Inter-Regional Capital Stock of the Bank and to Related Matters", (b) "General Rules Governing Admission of Nonregional Countries to Membership in the Bank", and (c) "Increase in the Authorized Callable Ordinary Capital Stock and Subscriptions Thereto in Connection with the Admission of Nonregional Member Countries", which were submitted to the Board of Governors pursuant to a resolution of the Board of Executive Directors approved on March 4, 1975.

(Pub. L. 86-147, §23, as added Pub. L. 94-302, title I, §103(a)(1), May 31, 1976, 90 Stat. 592.)

#### **§ 283u. Membership in the Bank for the Bahamas and Guyana**

The United States Governor of the Bank is authorized to agree to the amendments to article II, section 1(b) and article IV, section 3(b) of the Agreement Establishing the Bank, as proposed by the Board of Executive Directors, to provide for membership for the Bahamas and Guyana in the Bank at such times and in accordance with such terms as the Bank may determine.

(Pub. L. 86-147, §24, as added Pub. L. 94-302, title I, §103(a)(1), May 31, 1976, 90 Stat. 592.)

#### **§ 283v. Loans to the Caribbean Development Bank**

The United States Governor of the Bank is authorized to agree to the amendments to article III, sections 1, 4, and 6(b) of the Agreement Establishing the Bank, as proposed by the Board of Executive Directors, to provide for lending to the Caribbean Development Bank.

(Pub. L. 86-147, §25, as added Pub. L. 94-302, title I, §103(a)(1), May 31, 1976, 90 Stat. 592.)

#### **§ 283w. Increase in authorized capital stock of Bank and increase in resources of Fund for Special Operations; United States share; authorization of appropriations**

(a) The United States Governor of the Bank is hereby authorized to vote in favor of two resolutions proposed by the Governors at a special meeting in July 1975, and now pending before the Board of Governors of the Bank, which provide for (1) an increase in the authorized capital stock of the Bank and additional subscriptions of members thereto and (2) an increase in the resources of the Fund for Special Operations and contributions thereto. Upon adoption of such resolutions, the United States Governor is authorized to agree on behalf of the United States (1) to subscribe to ninety-nine thousand four hundred and seventy-four shares of \$10,000 par value of the increase in the authorized capital stock of the Bank of which eighty-nine thousand five hundred and twenty-six shall be callable shares and nine thousand nine hundred and forty-eight shall be paid in and (2) to contribute to the Fund for Special Operations \$600,000,000,

in accordance with and subject to the terms and conditions of such resolutions.

(b) There are hereby authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, the amounts necessary for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury of (1) \$1,199,997,873 for the United States subscription to the capital stock of the Bank and (2) \$600,000,000 for the United States share of the increase in the resources of the Fund for Special Operations: *Provided, however,* That not more than \$15,677,000 may be made available to the Fund for Special Operations for the fiscal year 1982.

(Pub. L. 86-147, § 26, as added Pub. L. 94-302, title I, § 101, May 31, 1976, 90 Stat. 591; amended Pub. L. 97-35, title XIII, § 1351(c), Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 744.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1981—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 97-35 inserted provision limiting amount of appropriations available for Fund for Special Operations for fiscal year 1982.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1981 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 97-35 effective Aug. 13, 1981, except that any funds authorized to be appropriated shall not be available for use or obligation prior to Oct. 1, 1981, see section 1372 of Pub. L. 97-35, set out as an Effective Date note under section 290i of this title.

#### § 283x. Subscription to additional shares; authorization of appropriations

(a) The United States Governor of the Bank is hereby authorized to vote for an additional increase of one hundred and eight thousand shares of \$10,000 par value in the authorized callable capital stock of the Bank as recommended in the resolution of the Board of Governors entitled "Increase of US\$4 Billion in the Authorized Capital Stock and Subscriptions Thereto." Upon adoption of a Board of Governors resolution increasing the authorized capital stock of the Bank by such amount, the United States Governor is authorized to agree on behalf of the United States to subscribe to thirty-seven thousand three hundred and three shares of \$10,000 par value of such additional increase in callable capital in accordance with and subject to the terms and conditions of such resolution.

(b) In order to pay for the increase in the United States subscription to the Bank provided for in this section, there is hereby authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, \$450,002,218 for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury.

(Pub. L. 86-147, § 27, as added Pub. L. 94-302, title I, § 101, May 31, 1976, 90 Stat. 591.)

#### § 283y. Repealed. Pub. L. 95-118, title VII, § 702, Oct. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 1070

Section, Pub. L. 86-147, § 28, as added Pub. L. 94-302, title I, § 103(a)(1), May 31, 1976, 90 Stat. 592; H. Res. 5, Jan. 4, 1977, set forth provisions relating to United States participation in financial assistance by Inter-American Development Bank to any country engaging in a consistent pattern of gross violations of internationally recognized human rights. See section 262d of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 3, 1977, see section 1001 of Pub. L. 95-118, set out as an Effective Date note under section 282i of this title.

#### § 283z. Proposal of light-capital or intermediate technologies as part of Bank's development strategy

##### (a) Contents of proposed resolution

The United States Executive Director of the Bank shall propose to the Board of Executive Directors of the Bank the adoption of a resolution providing (1) that the development and utilization of light-capital or intermediate technologies should be accepted as major facets of the Bank's development strategy, and (2) that such light-capital or intermediate technologies should be developed and utilized as soon as possible in all Bank activities. Such resolution shall further provide that, by the close of the calendar year 1977, some projects that employ primarily such light-capital or intermediate technologies shall be designed and approved.

##### (b) Progress report to Congress

The United States Governor of the Bank shall report to the Congress no later than six months after May 31, 1976, on the proposal made under subsection (a) of this section, and no later than twelve months after such date on the progress that has been made with respect to such proposal.

(Pub. L. 86-147, § 28, formerly § 29, as added Pub. L. 94-302, title I, § 104, May 31, 1976, 90 Stat. 593; renumbered § 28, Pub. L. 96-259, title I, § 101(1), June 3, 1980, 94 Stat. 429.)

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 28 of Pub. L. 86-147, as added by section 103(a)(1) of Pub. L. 94-302, was classified to section 283y of this title prior to repeal by Pub. L. 95-118, title VII, § 702, Oct. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 1070.

#### § 283z-1. Increase in authorized capital stock of Bank and increase in resources of Fund for Special Operations

##### (a) United States share

The United States Governor of the Bank is authorized to vote for two resolutions which were proposed by the Governors at a special meeting in December 1978 and are pending before the Board of Governors of the Bank. These resolutions provide for (1) an increase in the authorized capital stock of the Bank and additional subscriptions thereto, and (2) an increase in the resources of the Fund for Special Operations and contributions thereto. Upon adoption of these resolutions, the United States Governor is authorized on behalf of the United States (A) to subscribe to two hundred twenty-seven thousand eight hundred and ninety-six shares of the increase in the authorized capital stock of the Bank, of which two hundred ten thousand eight hundred and four shall be callable and seventeen thousand and ninety-two shall be paid-in, and (B) to contribute to the Fund for Special Operations \$630,000,000; except that any commitment to make such subscriptions to paid-in and callable capital stock and to make such contributions to the Fund for Special Operations shall be effective only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriation Acts.

##### (b) Authorization of appropriations

In order to pay for the increase in the United States subscription and contribution provided

for in this section, there are authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury (1) \$2,474,287,189 for the United States subscription to the capital stock of the Bank, and (2) \$630,000,000 for the United States share of the increase in the resources of the Fund for Special Operations: *Provided, however*, That for contributions to the Fund for Special Operations, not more than \$175,000,000 may be made available for the fiscal year 1982, and not more than \$105,000,000 may be made available for the fiscal year 1983.

**(c) Funding requirements**

For the purpose of keeping to a minimum the cost to the United States, the Secretary of the Treasury—

(1) shall pay the United States contribution to the Fund for Special Operations authorized by this section by letter of credit in four annual installments; and

(2) shall take the steps necessary to obtain a certification from the Bank that any undistributed balances resulting from drawdowns on such letter of credit will not exceed at any time the United States share of expected disbursement requirements for the following three-month period.

**(d) Limitation of funds to members of Bank**

None of the funds authorized to be appropriated by this section may be used for any form of assistance to any country which is not a member of the Bank.

(Pub. L. 86-147, § 29, as added Pub. L. 96-259, title I, § 101(2), June 3, 1980, 94 Stat. 429; amended Pub. L. 97-35, title XIII, § 1351(b), Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 744.)

AMENDMENTS

1981—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 97-35 inserted provision limiting amount of appropriations available for Fund for Special Operations for fiscal years 1982 and 1983.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1981 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 97-35 effective Aug. 13, 1981, except that any funds authorized to be appropriated shall not be available for use or obligation prior to Oct. 1, 1981, see section 1372 of Pub. L. 97-35, set out as an Effective Date note under section 290i of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 283z-2 of this title.

**§ 283z-2. Contribution to Inter-American Development Bank; authorization of appropriations**

(a) The United States Governor of the Bank is authorized on behalf of the United States to contribute to the Fund for Special Operations \$70,000,000: *Provided, however*, That any commitment to make such contribution shall be made subject to obtaining the necessary appropriations.

(b) In order to pay for a portion of the increase in the United States subscription to the capital stock of the Bank provided for in section 283z-1(a) of this title and for the United States contribution to the Fund for Special Operations provided for in this section, there are authorized

to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury, (1) \$274,920,799 for the United States subscription, and (2) \$70,000,000 for the United States contribution to the Fund for Special Operations: *Provided, however*, That no funds may be made available for such contribution to the Fund for Special Operations for the fiscal year 1982.

(Pub. L. 86-147, § 30, as added Pub. L. 97-35, title XIII, § 1351(a), Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 744.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Aug. 13, 1981, except that any funds authorized to be appropriated shall not be available for use or obligation prior to Oct. 1, 1981, see section 1372 of Pub. L. 97-35, set out as a note under section 290i of this title.

**§ 283z-3. Increase in authorized capital stock of Bank and increases in resources of Fund for Special Operations; United States share; authorization of appropriations**

(a)(1) The United States Governor of the Bank is authorized to vote for resolutions—

(A) which were proposed by the Governors at a special meeting in February 1983;

(B) which are pending before the Board of Governors of the Bank; and

(C) which provide for—

(i) an increase in the authorized capital stock of the Bank and subscriptions thereto; and

(ii) an increase in the resources of the Fund for Special Operations and contributions thereto.

(2)(A) Upon adoption of the resolutions specified in paragraph (1), the United States Governor of the Bank is authorized on behalf of the United States to—

(i) subscribe to 427,396 shares of the increase in the authorized capital stock of the Bank; and

(ii) contribute \$350,000,000 to the Fund for Special Operations.

(B) Any commitment to make such subscriptions to paid-in and callable capital stock and to make such contributions to the Fund for Special Operations shall be effective only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriation Acts.

(b) In order to pay for the increase in the United States subscription and contribution provided for in this section, there are authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury—

(1) \$5,155,862,744 for the United States subscriptions to the capital stock of the Bank; and

(2) \$350,000,000 for the United States share of the increase in the resources of the Fund for Special Operations.

(Pub. L. 86-147, § 31, as added Pub. L. 98-181, title X, § 1001, Nov. 30, 1983, 97 Stat. 1284.)

**§ 283z-4. Amendments to Articles of Agreement in resolution on Merger of Interregional and Ordinary Capital Resources**

The United States Governor of the Inter-American Development Bank is hereby author-

ized to agree to and to accept the amendments to the Articles of Agreement in the proposed resolution entitled “Merger of Inter-regional and Ordinary Capital Resources”.

(Pub. L. 86-147, §32, as added Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title I], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-134.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section 32 of Pub. L. 86-147 is based on section 501 of title V of H.R. 3750, One Hundredth Congress, as introduced Dec. 11, 1987, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-202.

### § 283z-5. Capital increase; increase in resources of Fund for Special Operations

#### (a) Authority to vote for, and to subscribe and contribute to, increase in authorized capital stock of Bank and increase in resources of Fund for Special Operations

##### (1) Vote authorized

The United States Governor of the Bank is authorized to vote for resolutions which—

(A) were transmitted by the Board of Executive Directors to the Governors of the Bank by resolution of April 19, 1989;

(B) are pending before the Board of Governors of the Bank; and

(C) provide for—

(i) an increase in the authorized capital stock of the Bank and subscriptions to the Bank; and

(ii) an increase in the resources of the Fund for Special Operations and contributions to the Fund.

##### (2) Subscription and contribution authority

To the extent and in the amounts provided in advance in appropriations Acts, on adoption of the resolutions described in paragraph (1), the United States Governor of the Bank may, on behalf of the United States—

(A) subscribe to 760,112 shares of the increase in the authorized capital stock of the Bank; and

(B) contribute \$82,304,000 to the Fund for Special Operations.

#### (b) Limitation on authorization of appropriations

To pay for the subscription and contribution authorized under subsection (a) of this section, there are authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury—

(1) \$9,169,559,712, for the United States subscription to the capital stock of the Bank; and

(2) \$82,304,000, for the United States contribution to the Fund for Special Operations.

#### (c) Organizational changes required to be made before payment for subscription to capital stock and contribution to Fund for Special Operations

The Secretary of the Treasury may not make any payment for the subscription and contribution authorized under subsection (a) of this section unless the Bank—

(1) has established an environmental unit with responsibility for the development, evaluation, and integration of Bank policies,

projects, and programs designed to promote environmentally sustainable development in borrower countries;

(2) has increased the number of the staff of the Bank with environmentally oriented responsibilities and training;

(3) provides for an increase in the number of environmentally beneficial projects and programs financed by the Bank; and

(4) has designed a process for ensuring the access of indigenous non-governmental organizations to the process for designing projects and programs.

#### (d) Certification of access to Bank records required before payment for subscription to capital stock and contribution to Fund for Special Operations

The Secretary of the Treasury shall not make any payment for the subscription and contribution authorized under subsection (a) of this section until the Secretary, after consultation with the United States Executive Director of the Bank, certifies to the Congress that—

(1) the Bank has given the Comptroller General of the United States access to the audit memorandum issued by the Auditor General of the Bank with respect to the November 1987 disbursement of funds to the Government of Nicaragua;

(2) the Bank has implemented and is continuing to implement revised procedures issued in 1988 for collecting loan services payments in arrears;

(3) the revised procedures referred to in paragraph (2) satisfy the recommendations of the Auditor General of the Bank; and

(4) the Comptroller General of the United States has access to all documents of the Bank on the same terms and under the same conditions as such documents are made available to the United States Executive Director of the Bank.

(Pub. L. 86-147, §33, as added Pub. L. 101-240, title II, §201, Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2496.)

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 283z-7 of this title.

### § 283z-6. Investment in human capital

#### (a) In general

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of the Inter-American Development Bank to propose and use the voice and vote of such director, during the 4-year period beginning on January 1, 1990, to vigorously promote an increase in the proportion of Bank lending in support of projects and programs which support investments in human capital and to seek the rapid implementation by the Bank of systematic mechanisms of consultation with locally affected populations in borrower countries either directly or through appropriate representative non-governmental organizations.

#### (b) “Investments in human capital” defined

As used in subsection (a) of this section, the term “investments in human capital” means investments in projects, policies, and programs de-

signed to improve urban and rural health care and sanitation, basic nutrition, education, the small-producer private sector, the economic activities of women, and the development of indigenous non-governmental organizations.

(Pub. L. 86-147, §34, as added Pub. L. 101-240, title II, §202(a), Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2498.)

REPORT TO CONGRESS

Section 202(b) of Pub. L. 101-240 provided that: “The Chairman of the National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Policies shall include in the report required by section 1701 of the International Financial Institutions Act [22 U.S.C. 262r] for fiscal year 1991 a report on the efforts undertaken by the United States Executive Director of the Inter-American Development Bank, and the progress to date, in achieving the objectives of section 34 of the Inter-American Development Bank Act [22 U.S.C. 283z-6].”

**§ 283z-7. Limitations on policy based lending**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall—

(1) take all necessary steps to encourage the Bank to limit the aggregate value of the policy based loans made by the Bank (other than policy based loans made to any country which the Bank has determined is economically less developed or has a limited market economy, which are used to purchase sovereign debt of such country or to reduce the debt or debt service burden of such country) during the 4-year period beginning on January 1, 1990, to 25 percent of the aggregate value of all loans made by the Bank during such 4-year period;

(2) take all necessary steps to encourage the Bank to limit the aggregate value of the policy based loans made by the Bank to the government of a particular country during such 4-year period, to 50 percent of the aggregate value of all loans made by the Bank to such government during such 4-year period;

(3) instruct the United States Executive Director of the Bank to explore with the other Executive Directors of the Bank ways to use a portion of the resources made available to the Bank by reason of the subscription and contribution described in section 283z-5(a)(2) of this title for debt reduction and debt service reduction for countries described in paragraph (1); and

(4) before the end of the 12-month period beginning on December 19, 1989, report to the Congress on the matters described in paragraph (3).

(Pub. L. 86-147, §35, as added Pub. L. 101-240, title II, §203, Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2498.)

**§ 283z-8. Increase in lending to Caribbean**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of the Bank to enter into discussions with the management of the Bank and with other member country governments to seek to increase Bank lending to the Caribbean region, directly or through appropriate financial intermediaries, for viable projects which will—

(1) result in expanded regional economic integration, diversification, and industrial and agricultural production, and improved infrastructure; and

(2) seek to ensure equitable and environmentally sustainable economic growth.

(Pub. L. 86-147, §36, as added Pub. L. 101-240, title II, §204, Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2499.)

**§ 283z-9. Multilateral Investment Fund**

**(a) Authorization of contribution**

The Secretary of the Treasury is authorized to contribute, and to make payment of, \$500,000,000 to the Multilateral Investment Fund established pursuant to the agreements of February 11, 1992: *Provided*, That such funds shall only be disbursed from the Fund to countries that have governments that are democratically elected,<sup>1</sup> that do not harbor or sponsor international terrorists; that do not fail to cooperate in narcotics matters; and that do not engage in a consistent pattern of gross violations of internationally recognized human rights.

**(b) Authorization of appropriations**

There is hereby authorized to be appropriated without fiscal year limitation \$500,000,000 for the contribution authorized in subsection (a) of this section.

**(c) Environmental assessment of actions**

If an Enterprise for the Americas Multilateral Investment Fund is established pursuant to this section, the Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States representative to the Fund not to vote in favor of any action proposed to be taken by the Fund which may have a significant adverse effect on the environment unless an assessment of the impact of the action on the environment has been available for at least 120 days before the vote.

(Pub. L. 86-147, §37, as added Pub. L. 102-391, title V, §594(b), Oct. 6, 1992, 106 Stat. 1693.)

**§ 283z-10. Focus on low-income areas of Latin America and Caribbean**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall direct the United States Executive Director of the Bank to use the voice and vote of the United States to support an increased focus on the poorest countries in Latin America and the Caribbean, and on poorer areas of better off countries, and to support programs conducted by the Multilateral Investment Fund, particularly in targeting low-income countries and populations, working with nongovernmental organizations and training and assisting former combatants from civil conflicts in Latin America.

(Pub. L. 86-147, §38, as added Pub. L. 103-306, title V, §526(f), Aug. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 1634.)

SUBCHAPTER XII-A—INTER-AMERICAN INVESTMENT CORPORATION

**§ 283aa. Acceptance of membership**

The President is hereby authorized to accept membership for the United States in the Inter-American Investment Corporation (hereinafter in this subchapter referred to as the “Corporation”) provided for by the agreement establishing the Corporation (hereinafter in this subchapter referred to as the “agreement”) deposited in the archives of the Inter-American Development Bank.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. The comma probably should be a semicolon.



(Pub. L. 98-473, title I, §101(1) [title I], Oct. 12, 1984, 98 Stat. 1884, 1885.)

CODIFICATION

Section is based on section 202 of title II of S. 2416, Ninety-eighth Congress, as introduced Mar. 13, 1984, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 98-473.

SHORT TITLE

Section 201 of title II of S. 2416, as introduced in the Senate Mar. 13, 1984, and as enacted into permanent law by section 101(1) [title I] of Pub. L. 98-473, provided that: “This title [enacting this subchapter and amending section 276c-2 of this title and section 24 of Title 12, Banks and Banking] may be cited as the ‘Inter-American Investment Corporation Act.’”

**§ 283bb. Governor, Director, and alternates**

The Governor and Executive Director of the Inter-American Development Bank, and the alternate for each of them, appointed under section 283a of this title, shall serve as Governor, Director, and alternates, respectively, of the Corporation.

(Pub. L. 98-473, title I, §101(1) [title I], Oct. 12, 1984, 98 Stat. 1884, 1885.)

CODIFICATION

Section is based on section 203 of title II of S. 2416, Ninety-eighth Congress, as introduced Mar. 13, 1984, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 98-473.

**§ 283cc. Applicability of Bretton Woods Agreements Act**

The provisions of section 286b of this title shall apply with respect to the Corporation to the same extent as with respect to the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development and the International Monetary Fund.

(Pub. L. 98-473, title I, §101(1) [title I], Oct. 12, 1984, 98 Stat. 1884, 1885; Pub. L. 101-240, title V, §541(e)(3), Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2518.)

CODIFICATION

Section is based on section 204 of title II of S. 2416, Ninety-eighth Congress, as introduced Mar. 13, 1984, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 98-473.

AMENDMENTS

1989—Pub. L. 101-240 struck out at end “Reports with respect to the Corporation under paragraphs (5) and (6) of subsection (b) of section 286b of this title shall be included in the first and subsequent reports made thereunder after the United States accepts membership in the Corporation.”

**§ 283dd. Restrictions**

(a)<sup>1</sup> Unless authorized by law, neither the President nor any person or agency shall, on behalf of the United States—

- (1) subscribe to additional shares of stock of the Corporation;
- (2) vote for or agree to any amendment of the agreement which increases the obligations of the United States, or which changes the purpose or functions of the Corporation; or
- (3) make a loan or provide other financing to the Corporation.

(Pub. L. 98-473, title I, §101(1) [title I], Oct. 12, 1984, 98 Stat. 1884, 1885.)

<sup>1</sup> So in original. No subsec. (b) has been enacted.

CODIFICATION

Section is based on section 205 of title II of S. 2416, Ninety-eighth Congress, as introduced Mar. 13, 1984, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 98-473.

**§ 283ee. Federal Reserve banks as depositories**

Any Federal Reserve bank which is requested to do so by the Corporation shall act as its depository or as its fiscal agent, and the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System shall supervise and direct the carrying out of these functions by the Federal Reserve banks.

(Pub. L. 98-473, title I, §101(1) [title I], Oct. 12, 1984, 98 Stat. 1884, 1885.)

CODIFICATION

Section is based on section 206 of title II of S. 2416, Ninety-eighth Congress, as introduced Mar. 13, 1984, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 98-473.

**§ 283ff. Subscription of stock**

**(a) Secretary of the Treasury as subscribing authority**

The Secretary of the Treasury is authorized to subscribe on behalf of the United States to five thousand one hundred shares of the capital stock of the Corporation: *Provided, however,* That the subscription shall be effective only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriations Acts.

**(b) Authorization of appropriations**

There is authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury of the subscription of the United States for those shares, \$51,000,000.

**(c) Disposition of dividends**

Any payment of dividends made to the United States by the Corporation shall be deposited into the Treasury as a miscellaneous receipt.

(Pub. L. 98-473, title I, §101(1) [title I], Oct. 12, 1984, 98 Stat. 1884, 1885.)

CODIFICATION

Section is based on section 207 of title II of S. 2416, Ninety-eighth Congress, as introduced Mar. 13, 1984, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 98-473.

**§ 283gg. Jurisdiction of United States courts**

For the purposes of any civil action which may be brought within the United States, its territories or possessions, or the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, by or against the Corporation in accordance with the agreement, the Corporation shall be deemed to be an inhabitant of the Federal judicial district in which its principal office within the United States or its agent appointed for the purpose of accepting service or notice of service is located, and any such action to which the Corporation shall be a party shall be deemed to arise under the laws of the United States, and the district courts of the United States, including the courts enumerated in section 460 of title 28, shall have original jurisdiction of any such action. When the Corporation is a defendant in any action in a State court, it may at any time before the trial thereof remove the action into the appropriate district court of the United States by following the procedure for removal provided in section 1446 of title 28.

(Pub. L. 98-473, title I, §101(1) [title I], Oct. 12, 1984, 98 Stat. 1884, 1885.)

CODIFICATION

Section is based on section 208 of title II of S. 2416, Ninety-eighth Congress, as introduced Mar. 13, 1984, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 98-473.

**§ 283hh. Effectiveness of agreement**

Article VI, section 4(c), and article VII, sections 2 to 9, both inclusive, of the agreement shall have full force and effect in the United States, its territories and possessions, and the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, upon acceptance of membership by the United States in the Corporation.

(Pub. L. 98-473, title I, §101(1) [title I], Oct. 12, 1984, 98 Stat. 1884, 1885.)

CODIFICATION

Section is based on section 209 of title II of S. 2416, Ninety-eighth Congress, as introduced Mar. 13, 1984, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 98-473.

**§ 283ii. Securities issued by the Corporation**

**(a) Exempted securities**

Any securities issued by the Corporation (including any guarantee by the Corporation, whether or not limited in scope) in connection with the raising of funds for inclusion in the Corporation's resources as defined in article II, section 2 of the agreement, and any securities guaranteed by the Corporation as to both principal and interest to which the commitment in article II, section 2(e) of the agreement is expressly applicable, shall be deemed to be exempted securities within the meaning of section 77c(a)(2) of title 15 and section 78c(a)(12) of title 15. The Corporation shall file with the Securities and Exchange Commission such annual and other reports with regard to such securities as the Commission shall determine to be appropriate in view of the special character of the Corporation and its operations as necessary in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

**(b) Suspension by Securities and Exchange Commission**

The Securities and Exchange Commission, acting in consultation with such agency or officer as the President shall designate, is authorized to suspend the provisions of subsection (a) of this section at any time as to any or all securities issued or guaranteed by the Corporation during the period of such suspension. The Commission shall include in its annual reports to Congress such information as it shall deem advisable with regard to the operations and effect of this section and in connection therewith shall include any views submitted for such purpose by any association of dealers registered with the Commission.

(Pub. L. 98-473, title I, §101(1) [title I], Oct. 12, 1984, 98 Stat. 1884, 1885.)

CODIFICATION

Section is based on section 210 of title II of S. 2416, Ninety-eighth Congress, as introduced Mar. 13, 1984, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 98-473.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Section 2 of Ex. Ord. No. 12567, Oct. 2, 1986, 51 F.R. 35495, provided that: "The functions vested in the President by Section 210 of the Inter-American Investment Corporation Act [this section] are hereby delegated to the Secretary of the Treasury."

SUBCHAPTER XIII—INTERNATIONAL DEVELOPMENT ASSOCIATION

**§ 284. Acceptance of membership by United States in International Development Association**

The President is hereby authorized to accept membership for the United States in the International Development Association (hereinafter referred to as the "Association"), provided for by the Articles of Agreement (hereinafter referred to as the "Articles") of the Association deposited in the archives of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development.

(Pub. L. 86-565, § 2, June 30, 1960, 74 Stat. 293.)

SHORT TITLE

Section 1 of Pub. L. 86-565 provided that: "This Act [enacting this subchapter] may be cited as the 'International Development Association Act'."

PAR VALUE MODIFICATION

For Congressional direction that the Secretary of the Treasury maintain the value in terms of gold of the International Development Association's holdings of United States dollars following the establishment of a par value of the dollar at \$38 for a fine troy ounce of gold pursuant to the Par Value Modification Act and for the authorization of the appropriations necessary to provide such maintenance of value, see section 5152 of Title 31, Money and Finance.

CROSS REFERENCES

Advancement of human rights through United States assistance policies with international financial institutions, see section 262d of this title.

**§ 284a. Governor, executive director, and alternates of Association**

The Governor and Executive Director of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, and the alternate for each of them, appointed under section 286a of this title, shall serve as Governor, Executive Director and alternates, respectively, of the Association.

(Pub. L. 86-565, § 3, June 30, 1960, 74 Stat. 293.)

**§ 284b. National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Problems**

The provisions of section 286b of this title, shall apply with respect to the Association to the same extent as with respect to the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development and the International Monetary Fund.

(Pub. L. 86-565, § 4, June 30, 1960, 74 Stat. 294; Pub. L. 101-240, title V, § 541(e)(4), Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2518.)

AMENDMENTS

1989—Pub. L. 101-240 struck out at end "Reports with respect to the Association under paragraphs (5) and (6) of subsection (b) of section 286b of this title, shall be included in the first report made thereunder after the establishment of the Association and in each succeeding report."

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Problems under this section delegated to National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Policies, see section 2(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 11269, Feb. 14, 1966, 31 F.R. 2813, set out as a note under section 286b of this title.

**§ 284c. Congressional authorization needed for certain actions**

Unless Congress by law authorizes such action, neither the President nor any person or agency shall, on behalf of the United States, (a) subscribe to additional funds under article III, section 1, of the articles; (b) accept any amendment under article IX of the articles; or (c) make a loan or provide other financing to the Association.

(Pub. L. 86-565, § 5, June 30, 1960, 74 Stat. 294.)

**§ 284d. Federal Reserve banks as depositories**

Any Federal Reserve bank which is requested to do so by the Association shall act as its depository or as its fiscal agent, and the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System shall supervise and direct the carrying out of these functions by the Federal Reserve banks.

(Pub. L. 86-565, § 6, June 30, 1960, 74 Stat. 294.)

**§ 284e. Payment of subscription to Association by United States**

**(a) Authorization of appropriations for subscription**

There is hereby authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, for the subscription of the United States to the Association, \$320,290,000.

**(b) Increase in Association resources; contribution; authorization of appropriations**

The United States Governor is hereby authorized (1) to vote for an increase in the resources of the Association and (2) to agree on behalf of the United States to contribute to the Association the sum of \$312 million, both as recommended by the Executive Directors, in a report dated September 9, 1963, to the Board of Governors of the Association. There is hereby authorized to be appropriated out of funds supplied by the Nation's taxpayers or out of funds borrowed on their credit, without fiscal year limitations, \$312 million to provide the United States share of the increase in the resources of the Association.

**(c) Issuance of special notes**

For the purpose of keeping to a minimum the cost to the United States of participation in the Association, the Secretary of the Treasury is authorized and directed to issue special notes of the United States from time to time, at par, and to deliver such notes to the Association in exchange for dollars to the extent permitted by the articles. The special notes provided for in this subsection shall be issued under the authority and subject to the provisions of chapter 31 of title 31, and the purposes for which securities may be issued under that chapter are extended to include the purposes for which special notes are authorized and directed to be issued under

this subsection, but such notes shall bear no interest, shall be nonnegotiable, and shall be payable on demand of the Association. The face amount of special notes issued to the Association under the authority of this subsection and outstanding at any one time shall not exceed, in the aggregate, the amount actually paid to the Association under the articles.

**(d) Income covered into Treasury**

Any payment made to the United States by the Association as a distribution of net income shall be covered into the Treasury as a miscellaneous receipt.

(Pub. L. 86-565, § 7, June 30, 1960, 74 Stat. 294; Pub. L. 88-310, §§ 1, 2, May 26, 1964, 78 Stat. 200.)

## CODIFICATION

In subsec. (c), "chapter 31 of title 31" and "that chapter" substituted for "the Second Liberty Bond Act, as amended" and "that Act", respectively, on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, § 4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

## AMENDMENTS

1964—Subsecs. (b) to (d). Pub. L. 88-310 added subsec. (b), redesignated former subsec. (b) as (c) and struck out ", after paying the requisite part of the subscription of the United States in the Association required to be made under the articles." after "Secretary of the Treasury" in first sentence and "of the subscription of the United States" after "amount" in third sentence, respectively, and redesignated former subsec. (c) as (d).

**§ 284f. Jurisdiction and venue of actions**

For the purpose of any action which may be brought within the United States, its possessions, or the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, by or against the Association in accordance with the articles, the Association shall be deemed to be an inhabitant of the Federal Judicial district in which its principal office in the United States is located, and any such action at law or in equity to which the Association shall be a party shall be deemed to arise under the laws of the United States, and the district courts of the United States shall have original jurisdiction of any such action. When the Association is a defendant in any such action, it may, at any time before the trial thereof, remove such action from a State court into the district court of the United States for the proper district by following the procedure for removal of causes otherwise provided by law.

(Pub. L. 86-565, § 8, June 30, 1960, 74 Stat. 294.)

## FEDERAL RULES OF CIVIL PROCEDURE

One form of action, see rule 2, Title 28, Appendix, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

## CROSS REFERENCES

Removal of cases from State to district courts, see section 1441 et seq. of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

**§ 284g. Status, privileges, and immunities of the United States**

The provisions of article VII, section 5(d), and article VIII sections 2 to 9, both inclusive, of the articles shall have full force and effect in the United States, its possessions, and the Common-

wealth of Puerto Rico, upon acceptance of membership by the United States in, and the establishment of, the Association.

(Pub. L. 86-565, §9, June 30, 1960, 74 Stat. 295.)

**§ 284h. Second replenishment; authorization of appropriations**

The United States Governor is hereby authorized (1) to vote in favor of the second replenishment resolutions providing for an increase in the resources of the Association, and (2) to agree on behalf of the United States to contribute to the Association the sum of \$480,000,000, as recommended by the Executive Directors in a report dated March 8, 1968, to the Board of Governors of the Association. There is hereby authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, \$480,000,000 for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury of the United States share of the increase in the resources of the Association.

(Pub. L. 86-565, §10, as added Pub. L. 91-14, May 23, 1969, 83 Stat. 10.)

**§ 284i. Third replenishment; authorization of appropriations**

The United States Governor is hereby authorized to agree on behalf of the United States to contribute to the Association three annual installments of \$320,000,000 each as recommended in the "Report of the Executive Directors to the Board of Governors on Additions to IDA Resources: Third Replenishment," dated July 21, 1970. There is hereby authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, the amounts necessary for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury of three annual installments of \$320,000,000 each for the United States share of the increase in the resources of the Association.

(Pub. L. 86-565, §11, as added Pub. L. 92-247, §1, Mar. 10, 1972, 86 Stat. 60.)

**§ 284j. Expropriation of United States property; loan restrictions**

The President shall instruct the United States Executive Directors of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development and the International Development Association to vote against any loan or other utilization of the funds of the Bank and the Association for the benefit of any country which has—

(1) nationalized or expropriated or seized ownership or control of property owned by any United States citizen or by any corporation, partnership, or association not less than 50 per centum of which is beneficially owned by the United States citizens;

(2) taken steps to repudiate or nullify existing contracts or agreements with any United States citizen or any corporation, partnership, or association not less than 50 per centum of which is beneficially owned by United States citizens; or

(3) imposed or enforced discriminatory taxes or other exactions, or restrictive maintenance or operational conditions, or has taken other actions, which have the effect of nationalizing, expropriating, or otherwise seizing ownership or control of property so owned;

unless the President determines that (A) an arrangement for prompt, adequate, and effective compensation has been made, (B) the parties have submitted the dispute to arbitration under the rules of the Convention for the Settlement of Investment Disputes, or (C) good faith negotiations are in progress aimed at providing prompt, adequate, and effective compensation under the applicable principles of international law.

(Pub. L. 86-565, §12, as added Pub. L. 92-247, §1, Mar. 10, 1972, 86 Stat. 60.)

**§ 284k. Illegal drug traffic; loan restrictions**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Directors of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development and the International Development Association to vote against any loan or other utilization of the funds of the Bank and the Association for the benefit of any country with respect to which the President has made a determination, and so notified the Secretary of the Treasury, that the government of such country has failed to take adequate steps to prevent narcotic drugs and other controlled substances (as defined by the Comprehensive Drug Abuse Prevention and Control Act of 1970 [21 U.S.C. 801 et seq.]) produced or processed, in whole or in part, in such country, or transported through such country, from being sold illegally within the jurisdiction of such country to United States Government personnel or their dependents, or from entering the United States unlawfully. Such instruction shall continue in effect until the President determines, and so notifies the Secretary of the Treasury, that the government of such country has taken adequate steps to prevent such sale or entry of narcotic drugs and other controlled substances.

(Pub. L. 86-565, §13, as added Pub. L. 92-247, §2, Mar. 10, 1972, 86 Stat. 61.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Comprehensive Drug Abuse Prevention and Control Act of 1970, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 91-513, Oct. 27, 1970, 84 Stat. 1236, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 13 (§801 et seq.) of Title 21, Food and Drugs. For classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 801 of Title 21 and Tables.

**§ 284l. Fourth replenishment; authorization of appropriations**

(a) The United States Governor is hereby authorized to agree on behalf of the United States to pay to the Association four annual installments of \$375,000,000 each as the United States contribution to the Fourth Replenishment of the Resources of the Association.

(b) In order to pay for the United States contribution, there is hereby authorized to be appropriated without fiscal year limitation four annual installments of \$375,000,000 each for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury.

(Pub. L. 86-565, §14, as added Pub. L. 93-373, §1, Aug. 14, 1974, 88 Stat. 445.)

**§ 284m. Repealed. Pub. L. 95-118, title VII, § 702, Oct. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 1070**

Section, Pub. L. 86-565, §15, as added Pub. L. 93-373, §3, Aug. 14, 1974, 88 Stat. 445, set forth provisions relating to United States participation in loans by the International Development Association to any country developing any nuclear explosive device. See section 262d of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 3, 1977, see section 1001 of Pub. L. 95-118, set out as an Effective Date note under section 282i of this title.

**§ 284n. Fifth replenishment; authorization of appropriations**

(a) The United States Governor is authorized to agree on behalf of the United States to pay to the Association \$2,400,000,000 as the United States contribution to the fifth replenishment of the Resources of the Association: *Provided, however,* That any commitment to make such contributions shall be made subject to obtaining the necessary appropriations.

(b) In order to pay for the United States contribution provided for in this section, there are authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, \$2,400,000,000 for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury.

(Pub. L. 86-565, §16, as added Pub. L. 95-118, title IV, §401, Oct. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 1068.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 3, 1977, except that no funds authorized to be appropriated by this section may be available for use or obligation prior to Oct. 1, 1977, see section 1001 of Pub. L. 95-118, set out as a note under section 282i of this title.

**§ 284o. Sixth replenishment; authorization of appropriations**

(a) The United States Governor is authorized to agree on behalf of the United States to pay to the Association \$3,240,000,000 as the United States contribution to the sixth replenishment of the resources of the Association: *Provided, however,* That any commitment to make such contributions shall be made subject to obtaining the necessary appropriations.

(b) In order to pay for the United States contributions provided for in this section, there is authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, \$3,240,000,000 for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury: *Provided, however,* That not more than \$850,000,000 of such sum may be made available for the fiscal year 1982 and not more than \$945,000,000 of such sum may be made available for the fiscal year 1983.

(Pub. L. 86-565, §17, as added Pub. L. 97-35, title XIII, §1321, Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 740.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Aug. 13, 1981, see section 1372 of Pub. L. 97-35, set out as a note under section 290i of this title.

**§ 284p. Seventh replenishment; authorization of appropriations**

(a) The United States Governor is hereby authorized to agree on behalf of the United States

to pay to the Association \$2,250,000,000 as the United States contribution to the seventh replenishment of the resources of the Association, except that any commitment to make such contributions shall be made subject to obtaining the necessary appropriations.

(b) In order to pay for the United States contribution provided for in subsection (a) of this section, there are authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, \$2,250,000,000 for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury.

(Pub. L. 86-565, §18, as added Pub. L. 98-473, title I, §101(1) [title I], Oct. 12, 1984, 98 Stat. 1884, 1885.)

CODIFICATION

Section 18 of Pub. L. 86-565 is based on section 901 of S. 2582, Ninety-eighth Congress, as reported Apr. 18, 1984, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 98-473.

CREDITS AVAILABLE TO SUB-SAHARAN AFRICA

Pub. L. 98-473, title I, §101(1) [title I], Oct. 12, 1984, 98 Stat. 1884, 1885, provided: "That the Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director to undertake negotiations to ensure, to the maximum extent possible consistent with the effective use of resources, that the amount of development credits made available to sub-Saharan Africa through the seventh replenishment shall equal or exceed the amount of development credits made available to sub-Saharan Africa through the sixth replenishment."

**§ 284q. Special Facility for Sub-Saharan Africa**

(a) The Secretary of the Treasury shall pay to the Special Facility for Sub-Saharan Africa, administered by the Association, amounts appropriated pursuant to subsection (b) of this section.

(b) For purposes of the United States contribution provided for in subsection (a) of this section, there are authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, \$225,000,000.

(Pub. L. 86-565, §19, as added Pub. L. 99-190, §101(i) [title I, (a)], Dec. 19, 1985, 99 Stat. 1291, 1294.)

CODIFICATION

Section 19 of Pub. L. 86-565 is based on section 102 of title I of H.R. 2253, Ninety-ninth Congress, as reported May 15, 1985, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 99-190.

CONGRESSIONAL FINDINGS

Section 101 of title I of H.R. 2253, as enacted into permanent law by section 101(i) of Pub. L. 99-190, provided that: "The Congress hereby finds that—

"(1) Sub-Saharan Africa faces a virtually unprecedented condition of human misery which threatens the lives of one hundred and fifty million people;

"(2) only the combined effort of both the African nations themselves and international aid donors can overcome the obstacles to economic development which have given rise to conditions of famine, declining food production, infant mortality, desertification, and deteriorating infrastructure;

"(3) international relief efforts have helped to address the immediate crisis of starvation in Africa and the United States has made important contributions to this effort both bilaterally and through contributions to the multilateral development institutions;

"(4) there is a serious shortfall in the external capital resources necessary to support the policy reform efforts of the African governments and to achieve the long-term development necessary to avert a chronic state of crisis in Sub-Saharan Africa;

“(5) the Special Facility for Sub-Saharan Africa will have as its primary goal the implementation of policy reforms to help the African countries to help themselves;

“(6) to succeed, these efforts must be reinforced by development resources;

“(7) the appalling conditions prevalent in the countries of Sub-Saharan Africa underscore the need for the United States to participate in a coordinated framework with the other aid donor countries; and

“(8) the Special Facility for Sub-Saharan Africa provides such a framework and it is in the humanitarian, economic, and strategic interests of the United States to participate.”

#### § 284r. Eighth replenishment; authorization of appropriations

(a) The United States Governor is hereby authorized to agree on behalf of the United States to pay to the Association \$2,875,000,000 to the eighth replenishment of the resources of the Association, except that any commitment to make such contributions shall be made subject to obtaining the necessary appropriations.

(b) In order to pay for the United States contribution provided for in subsection (a) of this section, there are authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, \$2,875,000,000 for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury.

(Pub. L. 86-565, §20, as added Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title I], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-134.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section 20 of Pub. L. 86-565 is based on section 101 of title I of H.R. 3750, One Hundredth Congress, as introduced Dec. 11, 1987, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-202.

#### § 284s. Ninth replenishment

##### (a) In general

The United States Governor is hereby authorized to agree on behalf of the United States to pay to the Association \$3,180,000,000 to the ninth replenishment of the resources of the Association, subject to obtaining the necessary appropriations.

##### (b) Limitations on authorization of appropriations

In order to pay for the United States contribution provided for in subsection (a) of this section, there are authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, \$3,180,000,000 for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury.

(Pub. L. 86-565, §21, as added Pub. L. 101-513, title V, §562(a)(1), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2032.)

#### TENTH REPLENISHMENT

Pub. L. 103-87, title V, §526, Sept. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 952, provided in part that the Secretary of the Treasury is authorized to agree on behalf of the United States to participate in the tenth replenishment of the resources of the International Development Association, subject to obtaining the necessary appropriations, and pursuant to the tenth replenishment authorized \$2,500,000,000 to be appropriated.

#### SUBCHAPTER XIV—ASIAN DEVELOPMENT BANK

#### § 285. Acceptance of membership by United States in Asian Development Bank

The President is hereby authorized to accept membership for the United States in the Asian

Development Bank (hereinafter referred to as the “Bank”) provided for by the agreement establishing the Bank (hereinafter referred to as the “agreement”) deposited in the archives of the United Nations.

(Pub. L. 89-369, §2, Mar. 16, 1966, 80 Stat. 71.)

#### SHORT TITLE

Section 1 of Pub. L. 89-369 provided: “That this Act [enacting this subchapter and amending section 24 of Title 12, Banks and Banking] may be cited as the ‘Asian Development Bank Act’.”

#### PAR VALUE MODIFICATION

For Congressional direction that the Secretary of the Treasury maintain the value in terms of gold of the Asian Development Bank’s holdings of United States dollars following the establishment of a par value of the dollar at \$38 for a fine troy ounce of gold pursuant to the Par Value Modification Act and for the authorization of the appropriations necessary to provide such maintenance of value, see section 5152 of Title 31, Money and Finance.

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Advancement of human rights through United States assistance policies with international financial institutions, see section 262d of this title.

#### § 285a. Appointment of Governor, Alternate Governor and Director; compensation

(a) The President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint a Governor of the Bank, an alternate for the Governor, and a Director of the Bank.

(b) No person shall be entitled to receive any salary or other compensation from the United States for services as a Governor or Alternate Governor. The Director may, in the discretion of the President, receive such compensation, allowances, and other benefits as, together with those received by him from the Bank, will equal those authorized for a chief of mission under the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [22 U.S.C. 3901 et seq.].

(Pub. L. 89-369, §3, Mar. 16, 1966, 80 Stat. 71; Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2206(a)(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2160.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Service Act of 1980, referred to in subsection (b), is Pub. L. 96-465, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2071, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 52 (§3901 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3901 of this title and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1980—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 96-465 substituted “a chief of mission under the Foreign Service Act of 1980” for “a Chief of Mission, class 2, within the meaning of the Foreign Service Act of 1946, as amended”.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-465 effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

#### § 285b. Coordination of policies and operations

The policies and operations of the representatives of the United States on the Bank shall be coordinated with other United States policies in such manner as the President shall direct.

(Pub. L. 89-369, § 4, Mar. 16, 1966, 80 Stat. 71; Pub. L. 101-240, title V, § 541(d)(2), (f)(3), Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2518, 2519.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1989—Pub. L. 101-240 struck out subsec. (a) designation and struck out subsec. (b) which read as follows: “An annual report with respect to United States participation in the Bank shall be submitted to the Congress by such agency or officer as the President shall designate.”

#### § 285c. Congressional authorization needed for certain actions

Unless the Congress by law authorizes such action, neither the President nor any person or agency shall, on behalf of the United States, (a) subscribe to additional shares of stock of the Bank; (b) vote for or agree to any amendment of the agreement which increases the obligations of the United States, or which would change the purpose or functions of the Bank; or (c) make a loan or provide other financing to the Bank, except that funds for technical assistance note to exceed \$1,000,000 in any one year may be provided to the Bank by a United States agency created pursuant to an Act of Congress which is authorized by law to provide funds to international organizations.

(Pub. L. 89-369, § 5, Mar. 16, 1966, 80 Stat. 72.)

#### FIFTH REPLENISHMENT

Pub. L. 103-87, title V, § 526, Sept. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 952, provided in part that the Secretary of the Treasury is authorized to agree on behalf of the United States to participate in the fifth replenishment of the Asian Development Fund, subject to obtaining the necessary appropriations.

#### § 285d. Federal Reserve banks as depositories

Any Federal Reserve bank which is requested to do so by the Bank shall act as its depository or as its fiscal agent, and the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System shall supervise and direct the carrying out of these functions by the Federal Reserve banks.

(Pub. L. 89-369, § 6, Mar. 16, 1966, 80 Stat. 72.)

#### § 285e. Authorization of appropriations; income covered into Treasury

(a) There is hereby authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, for the purchase of twenty thousand shares of capital stock of the Bank, \$200,000,000.

(b) Any payment made to the United States by the Bank as a distribution of net income shall be covered into the Treasury as a miscellaneous receipt.

(Pub. L. 89-369, § 7, Mar. 16, 1966, 80 Stat. 72.)

#### § 285f. Jurisdiction and venue of actions

For the purpose of any civil action which may be brought within the United States, its territories or possessions, or the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, by or against the Bank in accordance with the agreement, the Bank shall be deemed to be an inhabitant of the Federal judicial district in which its principal office or agency in the United States is located, and any such action to which the Bank shall be a party shall

be deemed to arise under the laws of the United States, and the district courts of the United States, including the courts enumerated in section 460 of title 28, shall have original jurisdiction of any such action. When the Bank is a defendant in any action in a State court, it may, at any time before the trial thereof, remove such action into the district court of the United States for the proper district by following the procedure for removal of causes otherwise provided by law.

(Pub. L. 89-369, § 8, Mar. 16, 1966, 80 Stat. 72.)

#### FEDERAL RULES OF CIVIL PROCEDURE

One form of action, see rule 2, Title 28, Appendix, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Removal of cases from State to District courts, see section 1441, et seq. of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

#### § 285g. Status, immunities, and privileges

The agreement, and particularly articles 49 through 56, shall have full force and effect in the United States, its territories and possessions, and the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, upon acceptance of membership by the United States in, and the establishment of, the Bank. The President, at the time of deposit of the instrument of acceptance of membership by the United States in the Bank, shall also deposit a declaration that the United States retains for itself and its political subdivisions the right to tax salaries and emoluments paid by the Bank to its citizens or nationals.

(Pub. L. 89-369, § 9, Mar. 16, 1966, 80 Stat. 72.)

#### § 285h. Securities issued by Bank as exempt securities; suspension of exemption provisions; reports to and of Securities and Exchange Commission

(a) Any securities issued by the Bank (including any guarantee by the Bank, whether or not limited in scope) in connection with raising of funds for inclusion in the Bank's ordinary capital resources as defined in article 7 of the agreement and any securities guaranteed by the Bank as to both principal and interest to which the commitment in article 6, section 5, of the agreement is expressly applicable, shall be deemed to be exempted securities within the meaning of subsection (a)(2) of section 77c of title 15, and subsection (a)(12) of section 78c of title 15. The Bank shall file with the Securities and Exchange Commission such annual and other reports with regard to such securities as the Commission shall determine to be appropriate in view of the special character of the Bank and its operations and necessary in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(b) The Securities and Exchange Commission, acting in consultation with such agency or officer as the President shall designate, is authorized to suspend the provisions of subsection (a) of this section at any time as to any or all securities issued or guaranteed by the Bank during the period of such suspension. The Commission shall include in its annual reports to Congress such information as it shall deem advisable with

regard to the operations and effect of this section and in connection therewith shall include any views submitted for such purpose by any association of dealers registered with the Commission.

(Pub. L. 89-369, §11, Mar. 16, 1966, 80 Stat. 73.)

**§ 285i. Authorization for payment of United States contribution; United States Special Resources**

(a) Subject to the provisions of this subchapter, the United States Governor of the Bank is authorized to enter into an agreement with the Bank providing for a United States contribution of \$100,000,000 to the Bank in two annual installments of \$60,000,000 and \$40,000,000, beginning in fiscal year 1972. This contribution is referred to hereinafter in this subchapter as the "United States Special Resources".

(b) The United States Special Resources shall be made available to the Bank pursuant to the provisions of this subchapter and article 19 of the Articles of Agreement of the Bank, and in a manner consistent with the Bank's Special Funds Rules and Regulations.

(Pub. L. 89-369, §12, as added Pub. L. 92-245, §1, Mar. 10, 1972, 86 Stat. 57.)

**§ 285j. United States Special Resources**

**(a) Development projects and programs**

The United States Special Resources shall be used to finance specific high priority development projects and programs in developing member countries of the Bank with emphasis on such projects and programs in the Southeast Asia region.

**(b) Authorized uses**

The United States Special Resources shall be used by the Bank only for—

(1) making development loans on terms which may be more flexible and bear less heavily on the balance of payments than those established by the Bank for its ordinary operations; and

(2) providing technical assistance credits on a reimbursable basis.

**(c) Eligible goods and services**

(1) The United States Special Resources may be expended by the Bank only for procurement in the United States of goods produced in, or services supplied from the United States, except that the United States Governor, in consultation with the National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Policies, may allow eligibility for procurement in other member countries from the United States Special Resources if he determines that such procurement eligibility would materially improve the ability of the Bank to carry out the objectives of its special funds resources and would be compatible with the international financial position of the United States.

(2) The United States Special Resources may be used to pay for administrative expenses arising from the use of the United States Special Resources, but only to the extent such expenses are not covered from the Bank's service fee or income from use of United States Special Resources.

**(d) Repayment in dollars**

All financing of programs and projects by the Bank from the United States Special Resources shall be repayable to the Bank by the borrowers in United States dollars.

(Pub. L. 89-369, §13, as added Pub. L. 92-245, §1, Mar. 10, 1972, 86 Stat. 57.)

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Problems delegated to National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Policies, see section 2(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 11269, Feb. 14, 1966, 31 F.R. 2813, set out as a note under section 286b of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 285l of this title.

**§ 285k. Utilization of United States Special Resources**

(a) The letters of credit provided for in section 285l of this title shall be issued to the Bank only to the extent that at the time of issuance the cumulative amount of the United States Special Resources provided to the Bank (A) constitute a minority of all special funds contributions to the Bank, and (B) are no greater than the largest cumulative contribution of any other single country contributing to the special funds of the Bank.

(b) The United States Governor of the Bank shall give due regard to the principles of (A) utilizing all special funds resources on an equitable basis, and (B) significantly shared participation by other contributors in each special fund to which United States Special Resources are provided.

(Pub. L. 89-369, §14, as added Pub. L. 92-245, §1, Mar. 10, 1972, 86 Stat. 58.)

**§ 285l. Letter of credit form for United States Special Resources**

The United States Special Resources will be provided to the Bank in the form of a nonnegotiable, noninterest-bearing, letter of credit which shall be payable to the Bank at par value on demand to meet the cost of eligible goods and services, and administrative costs authorized pursuant to section 285j(c) of this title.

(Pub. L. 89-369, §15, as added Pub. L. 92-245, §1, Mar. 10, 1972, 86 Stat. 58.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 285k of this title.

**§ 285m. Withdrawal rights covering United States Special Resources**

The United States shall have the right to withdraw all or part of the United States Special Resources and any accrued resources derived therefrom under the procedures provided for in section 8.03 of the Special Funds Rules and Regulations of the Bank.

(Pub. L. 89-369, §16, as added Pub. L. 92-245, §1, Mar. 10, 1972, 86 Stat. 58.)

**§ 285n. Authorization of appropriations to provide United States Special Resources**

For the purpose of providing United States Special Resources to the Bank there is hereby



authorized to be appropriated \$100,000,000, all of which shall remain available until expended.

(Pub. L. 89-369, § 17, as added Pub. L. 92-245, § 1, Mar. 10, 1972, 86 Stat. 58; amended Pub. L. 93-189, § 28, Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 732.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1973—Pub. L. 93-189 substituted “\$100,000,000” for “\$60,000,000 for the fiscal year 1972 and \$40,000,000 for the fiscal year 1973”.

#### § 285o. Expropriation of United States property; loan restrictions

The President shall instruct the United States Executive Director of the Asian Development Bank to vote against any loan or other utilization of the funds of the Bank for the benefit of any country which has—

(1) nationalized or expropriated or seized ownership or control of property owned by any United States citizen or by any corporation, partnership, or association not less than 50 per centum of which is beneficially owned by United States citizens;

(2) taken steps to repudiate or nullify existing contracts or agreements with any United States citizen or any corporation, partnership, or association not less than 50 per centum of which is beneficially owned by United States citizens; or

(3) imposed or enforced discriminatory taxes or other exaction, or restrictive maintenance or operational conditions, or has taken other actions, which have the effect of nationalizing, expropriating, or otherwise seizing ownership or control of property so owned;

unless the President determines that (A) an arrangement for prompt, adequate, and effective compensation has been made, (B) the parties have submitted the dispute to arbitration under the rules of the Convention for the Settlement of Investment Disputes, or (C) good faith negotiations are in progress aimed at providing prompt, adequate, and effective compensation under the applicable principles of international law.

(Pub. L. 89-369, § 18, as added Pub. L. 92-245, § 1, Mar. 10, 1972, 86 Stat. 58.)

#### § 285p. Illegal drug traffic; loan restrictions

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of the Asian Development Bank to vote against any loan or other utilization of the funds of the Bank for the benefit of any country with respect to which the President has made a determination, and so notified the Secretary of the Treasury, that the government of such country has failed to take adequate steps to prevent narcotic drugs and other controlled substances (as defined by the Comprehensive Drug Abuse Prevention and Control Act of 1970 [21 U.S.C. 801 et seq.]) produced or processed, in whole or in part, in such country, or transported through such country, from being sold illegally within the jurisdiction of such country to United States Government personnel or their dependents, or from entering the United States unlawfully. Such instruction shall continue in effect until the

President determines, and so notifies the Secretary of the Treasury, that the government of such country has taken adequate steps to prevent such sale or entry of narcotic drugs and other controlled substances.

(Pub. L. 89-369, § 19, as added Pub. L. 92-245, § 2, Mar. 10, 1972, 86 Stat. 58.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Comprehensive Drug Abuse Prevention and Control Act of 1970, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 91-513, Oct. 27, 1970, 84 Stat. 1236, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 13 (§801 et seq.) of Title 21, Food and Drugs. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 801 of Title 21 and Tables.

#### § 285q. Subscription to additional shares; authorization of appropriations

(a) The United States Governor of the Bank is authorized to subscribe on behalf of the United States to thirty thousand additional shares of the capital stock of the Bank in accordance with and subject to the terms and conditions of Resolution Numbered 46 adopted by the Bank's Board of Governors on November 30, 1971.

(b) In order to pay for the increase in the United States subscription to the Bank provided for in this section, there is hereby authorized to be appropriated without fiscal year limitation \$361,904,726 for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury.

(Pub. L. 89-369, § 20, as added Pub. L. 93-537, Dec. 22, 1974, 88 Stat. 1735.)

#### § 285r. Contribution to special funds; authorization of appropriations

(a) The United States Governor of the Bank is hereby authorized to agree to contribute on behalf of the United States \$50,000,000 to the special funds of the Bank. This contribution shall be made available to the Bank pursuant to the provisions of article 19 of the articles of agreement of the Bank.

(b) In order to pay for the United States contribution to the special funds, there is hereby authorized to be appropriated without fiscal year limitation \$50,000,000 for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury.

(Pub. L. 89-369, § 21, as added Pub. L. 93-537, Dec. 22, 1974, 88 Stat. 1735.)

#### § 285s. Additional subscription to shares; authorization of appropriations

(a) The United States Governor of the Bank is authorized to subscribe on behalf of the United States to sixty-seven thousand and five hundred additional shares of the capital stock of the Bank: *Provided, however,* That any subscription to additional shares shall be effective only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriation Acts.

(b) In order to pay for the increase in the United States subscription to the Bank provided for in this section, there are authorized to be appropriated without fiscal year limitation \$814,286,250 for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury.

(Pub. L. 89-369, § 22, as added Pub. L. 95-118, title V, §501, Oct. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 1068; amended Pub.

L. 97-35, title XIII, §1353, Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 745.)

AMENDMENTS

1981—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 97-35 substituted “effective only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriation Acts” for “made only after the amount required for such subscription has been appropriated”.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1981 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 97-35 effective Aug. 13, 1981, except that any funds authorized to be appropriated shall not be available for use or obligation prior to Oct. 1, 1981, see section 1372 of Pub. L. 97-35, set out as an Effective Date note under section 290i of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 3, 1977, except that no funds authorized to be appropriated by this section may be available for use or obligation prior to Oct. 1, 1977, see section 1001 of Pub. L. 95-118, set out as a note under section 282i of this title.

**§ 285t. Additional contribution to special funds; authorization of appropriations**

(a) The United States Governor of the Bank is authorized to contribute on behalf of the United States \$180,000,000 to the Asian Development Fund, a special fund of the Bank: *Provided, however,* That any commitment to make such contribution shall be made subject to obtaining the necessary appropriations.

(b) In order to pay for the United States contribution to the Asian Development Fund provided for in this section, there are authorized to be appropriated without fiscal year limitation \$180,000,000 for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury: *Provided, however,* That not more than \$14,116,177 may be made available for such contribution for the fiscal year 1982.

(Pub. L. 89-369, §23, as added Pub. L. 95-118, title V, §501, Oct. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 1069; amended Pub. L. 97-35, title XIII, §1352(c), Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 745.)

AMENDMENTS

1981—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 97-35 inserted provision limiting amount of appropriations available for contributions for fiscal year 1982.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1981 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 97-35 effective Aug. 13, 1981, except that any funds authorized to be appropriated shall not be available for use or obligation prior to Oct. 1, 1981, see section 1372 of Pub. L. 97-35, set out as an Effective Date note under section 290i of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 3, 1977, except that no funds authorized to be appropriated by this section may be available for use or obligation prior to Oct. 1, 1977, see section 1001 of Pub. L. 95-118, set out as a note under section 282i of this title.

**§ 285u. Additional contribution to special funds**

**(a) United States share**

The United States Governor of the Bank is authorized to contribute on behalf of the United States \$378,250,000 to the Asian Development Fund, a special fund of the Bank, except that any commitment to make such contribution shall be made subject to obtaining the necessary appropriations.

**(b) Authorization of appropriations; maximum available for certain years**

In order to pay for the United States contribution to the Asian Development Fund provided for in this section, there are authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, \$378,250,000 for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury: *Provided, however,* That not more than \$111,250,000 of such sum may be made available for the fiscal year 1982, and not more than \$44,500,000 of such sum may be made available for the fiscal year 1983.

**(c) Funding requirements**

For the purpose of keeping to a minimum the cost to the United States, the Secretary of the Treasury—

(1) shall pay the United States contribution to the Asian Development Fund authorized by this section by letter of credit in four annual installments; and

(2) shall take the steps necessary to obtain a certification from the Bank that any undisbursed balances resulting from drawdowns on such letter of credit will not exceed at any time the United States share of expected disbursement requirements for the following three-month period.

(Pub. L. 89-369, §24, as added Pub. L. 96-259, title II, §201, June 3, 1980, 94 Stat. 430; amended Pub. L. 97-35, title XIII, §1352(b), Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 744.)

AMENDMENTS

1981—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 97-35 inserted provision limiting amount of appropriations for fiscal years 1982 and 1983.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1981 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 97-35 effective Aug. 13, 1981, except that any funds authorized to be appropriated shall not be available for use or obligation prior to Oct. 1, 1981, see section 1372 of Pub. L. 97-35, set out as an Effective Date note under section 290i of this title.

**§ 285v. Sense of Congress respecting membership of Taiwan in Bank**

It is the sense of the Congress that it is the policy of the United States that Taiwan (before January 1, 1979, known as the Republic of China) shall be permitted to retain membership in the Asian Development Bank and that the United States Executive Director of the Bank shall notify the Bank that a serious review of future United States participation, including any future payments to the Asian Development Fund, would ensue if Taiwan were expelled from the Bank.

(Pub. L. 89-369, §25, as added Pub. L. 96-259, title II, §201, June 3, 1980, 94 Stat. 430.)

**§ 285w. Contribution to Asian Development Fund; authorization of appropriations**

(a) The United States Governor of the Bank is authorized to contribute on behalf of the United States \$66,750,000 to the Asian Development Fund, a special fund of the Bank: *Provided, however,* That any commitment to make such contribution shall be made subject to obtaining the necessary appropriations.

(b) In order to pay for the United States contribution to the Asian Development Fund provided for in this section, there is authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, \$66,750,000 for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury: *Provided, however*, That no funds may be made available for such contribution for the fiscal year 1982.

(Pub. L. 89-369, §26, as added Pub. L. 97-35, title XIII, §1352(a), Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 744.)

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Aug. 13, 1981, except that any funds authorized to be appropriated shall not be available for use or obligation prior to Oct. 1, 1981, see section 1372 of Pub. L. 97-35, set out as a note under section 2901 of this title.

### § 285x. Additional subscription to shares

#### (a) United States share

(1) The United States Governor of the Bank is authorized to subscribe on behalf of the United States to one hundred twenty-three thousand three hundred and seventy-five additional shares of the capital stock of the Bank.

(2) Any subscription to the capital stock of the Bank shall be effective only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriation Acts.

#### (b) Authorization of appropriations

In order to pay for the increase in the United States subscription to the Bank provided for in subsection (a) of this section, there are authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, \$1,322,999,476 for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury.

#### (c) Continued membership of Republic of China in Bank

(1) The Congress hereby finds that—

(A) the Republic of China (Taiwan) is a charter member in good standing of the Asian Development Bank;

(B) the Republic of China has grown from a borrower to a lender in the Asian Development Bank; and

(C) the Republic of China provides, through its economic success, a model for other nations in Asia.

(2) It is the sense of the Congress that—

(A) Taiwan, Republic of China, should remain a full member of the Asian Development Bank, and that its status within that body should remain unaltered no matter how the issue of the People's Republic of China's application for membership is disposed of;

(B) the President and the Secretary of State should express support of Taiwan, Republic of China, making it clear that the United States will not countenance attempts to expel Taiwan, Republic of China, from the Asian Development Bank; and

(C) the Secretary of the Senate and Clerk of the House shall transmit a copy of this resolution to the President with the request that he transmit such copy to the Board of Governors of the Asian Development Bank.

(Pub. L. 89-369, §27, as added Pub. L. 98-181, title X, §1002, Nov. 30, 1983, 97 Stat. 1285.)

### § 285y. Additional contribution to special funds; authorization of appropriations

(a)(1) The United States Governor of the Bank is authorized to contribute on behalf of the United States \$520,000,000 to the Asian Development Fund, a special fund of the Bank.

(2) Any commitment to make the contribution authorized in paragraph (1) shall be made subject to obtaining the necessary appropriations.

(b) In order to pay for the United States contribution to the Asian Development Fund provided for in this section, there are authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, \$520,000,000 for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury.

(Pub. L. 89-369, §28, as added Pub. L. 98-181, title X, §1002, Nov. 30, 1983, 97 Stat. 1286.)

### § 285z. Additional contribution to special funds; authorization of appropriations

(a) The United States Governor of the Bank is authorized to contribute on behalf of the United States \$584,280,000 to the Asian Development Fund, a special Fund of the Bank, except that any commitment to make such contributions shall be made subject to obtaining the necessary appropriations.

(b) In order to pay for the United States contribution provided for in subsection (a) of this section, there are authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, \$584,280,000 for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury.

(Pub. L. 89-369, §29, as added Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title I], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-134.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section 29 of Pub. L. 89-369 is based on section 201 of title II of H.R. 3750, One Hundredth Congress, as introduced Dec. 11, 1987, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-202.

### § 285aa. Capital increase

#### (a) Subscription authorized

(1) The United States Governor of the Bank may subscribe on behalf of the United States to 35,230 additional shares of the capital stock of the Bank. (2) Any subscription by the United States to the capital stock of the Bank shall be effective only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriations Acts.

#### (b) Limitations on authorization of appropriations

In order to pay for the increase in the United States subscription to the Bank provided for in subsection (a) of this section, there are authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, \$213,000,000 for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury.

(Pub. L. 89-369, §30, as added Pub. L. 102-145, §125(b), as added Pub. L. 102-266, §102, Apr. 1, 1992, 106 Stat. 97.)

## SUBCHAPTER XV—INTERNATIONAL MONETARY FUND AND BANK FOR RECONSTRUCTION AND DEVELOPMENT

### SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in sections 286q, 290k-5, 290l-2 of this title.

**§ 286. Acceptance of membership by United States in International Monetary Fund**

The President is hereby authorized to accept membership for the United States in the International Monetary Fund (hereinafter referred to as the "Fund"), and in the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (hereinafter referred to as the "Bank"), provided for by the Articles of Agreement of the Fund and the Articles of Agreement of the Bank as set forth in the Final Act of the United Nations Monetary and Financial Conference dated July 22, 1944, and deposited in the archives of the Department of State.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, § 2, 59 Stat. 512.)

SHORT TITLE OF 1968 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 90-349, June 19, 1968, 82 Stat. 188 [enacting sections 286n to 286r of this title and amending sections 412, 415, 417, and 467 of Title 12, Banks and Banking], is known as the "Special Drawing Rights Act". For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 286n of this title and Tables.

SHORT TITLE

Section 1 of act July 31, 1945, provided: "This act [enacting this subchapter and amending section 822a of former Title 31, Money and Finance] may be cited as the 'Bretton Woods Agreements Act'."

PAR VALUE MODIFICATION

For Congressional direction that the Secretary of the Treasury maintain the value in terms of gold of the holdings in United States dollars of the International Monetary Fund and of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development following the establishment of a par value of the dollar at \$38 for a fine troy ounce of gold pursuant to the Par Value Modification Act and for the authorization of the appropriation necessary to provide such maintenance of value, see section 5152 of Title 31, Money and Finance.

CROSS REFERENCES

Advancement of human rights through United States assistance policies with international financial institutions, see section 262d of this title.

Increase in lending authority of the Export-Import Bank of Washington, see sections 635 to 635h of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

United States membership in the United Nations Food and Agriculture Organization, see sections 279 to 279d of this title.

**§ 286a. Appointments**

**(a) Governors and executive directors; term of office**

The President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint a governor of the Fund who shall also serve as a governor of the Bank, and an executive director of the Fund and an executive director of the Bank. The executive directors so appointed shall also serve as provisional executive directors of the Fund and the Bank for the purposes of the respective Articles of Agreement. The term of office for the governor of the Fund and of the Bank shall be five years. The term of office for the executive directors shall be two years, but the executive directors shall remain in office until their successors have been appointed.

**(b) Alternates; term of office**

The President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint an alternate

for the governor of the Fund and an alternate for the governor of the Bank. The President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint an alternate for each of the executive directors. The alternate for each executive director shall be appointed from among individuals recommended to the President by the executive director. The terms of office for alternates for the governor and the executive directors shall be the same as the terms specified in subsection (a) of this section for the governor and executive directors.

**(c) Governor to serve as councillor; alternates and associates**

Should the provisions of Schedule D of the Articles of Agreement of the Fund apply, the Governor of the Fund shall also serve as councillor, shall designate an alternate for the councillor, and may designate associates.

**(d) Compensation for services**

(1) No person shall be entitled to receive any salary or other compensation from the United States for services as a Governor, executive director, councillor, alternate, or associate.

(2) The United States executive director of the Fund shall not be compensated by the Fund at a rate in excess of the rate provided for an individual occupying a position at level IV of the Executive Schedule under section 5315 of title 5. The United States alternate executive director of the Fund shall not be compensated by the Fund at a rate in excess of the rate provided for an individual occupying a position at level V of the Executive Schedule under section 5316 of title 5.

(3) The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States executive director of the Fund to present to the Fund's Executive Board a comprehensive set of proposals, consistent with maintaining high levels of competence of Fund personnel and consistent with the Articles of Agreement, with the objective of assuring that salaries and other compensation accorded Fund employees do not exceed those received by persons filling similar levels of responsibility within national government service or private industry. The Secretary shall report these proposals together with any measures adopted by the Fund's Executive Board to the Congress prior to February 1, 1979.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, § 3, 59 Stat. 512; Aug. 15, 1973, Pub. L. 93-94, 87 Stat. 314; Oct. 19, 1976, Pub. L. 94-564, § 2, 90 Stat. 2660; Oct. 10, 1978, Pub. L. 95-435, § 2, 92 Stat. 1051.)

AMENDMENTS

1978—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 95-435 designated existing provisions as par. (1) and added pars. (2) and (3).

1976—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 94-564, § 2(1), amended subsec. (c) generally to provide that the Governor serve as councillor and designate an alternate and associates. Former provisions relating to compensation were included in subsec. (d).

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 94-564, § 2(2), added subsec. (d).

1973—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 93-94 substituted "and an alternate for the governor of the Bank" for "who shall also serve as alternate for the governor of the Bank".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1976 AMENDMENT

Section 9 of Pub. L. 94-564 provided that: "The amendments made by sections 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, and 7 of this

Act [amending this section, sections 286c, 286e-2, 286o, 286q, and 286r of this title, and section 822a of former Title 31, Money and Finance] shall become effective upon the entry into force of the amendments to the Articles of Agreement of the International Monetary Fund approved in Resolution Numbered 31-4 of the Board of Governors of the Fund." Such amendments entered into force Apr. 1, 1978.

LEVELS OF FUND SALARIES AND MINIMIZATION OF TRAVEL COSTS

Pub. L. 96-389, §9, Oct. 7, 1980, 94 Stat. 1554, provided that: "The United States Executive Director to the Fund shall seek to insure (a) that Fund salaries do not exceed those levels endorsed by the Fund Bank Joint Committee on Staff Compensation Issues; and (b) that travel costs are minimized by limiting first class and supersonic travel to instances where no reasonable alternative exists."

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 282a, 284a, 290k-1 of this title.

**§ 286b. National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Problems**

**(a) Establishment and composition**

In order to coordinate the policies and operations of the representatives of the United States on the Fund and the Bank and of all agencies of the Government which make or participate in making foreign loans or which engage in foreign financial, exchange or monetary transactions, there is hereby established the National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Problems (hereinafter referred to as the "Council"), consisting of the Secretary of the Treasury, as Chairman, the Secretary of State, the Secretary of Commerce, the Chairman of the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, the President of the Export-Import Bank of the United States, and during such period as the Foreign Operations Administration shall continue to exist, the Director of the Foreign Operations Administration.

**(b) Duties and functions; reports by Council**

(1) The Council, after consultation with the representatives of the United States on the Fund and the Bank, shall recommend to the President general policy directives for the guidance of the representatives of the United States on the Fund and the Bank.

(2) The Council shall advise and consult with the President and the representatives of the United States on the Fund and the Bank on major problems arising in the administration of the Fund and the Bank.

(3) The Council shall coordinate, by consultation or otherwise, so far as is practicable, the policies and operations of the representatives of the United States on the Fund and the Bank, the Export-Import Bank of the United States and all other agencies of the Government to the extent that they make or participate in the making of foreign loans or engage in foreign financial, exchange or monetary transactions.

(4) Whenever, under the Articles of Agreement of the Fund or the Articles of Agreement of the Bank, the approval, consent or agreement of the United States is required before an act may be done by the respective institutions, the decision

as to whether such approval, consent, or agreement, shall be given or refused shall (to the extent such decision is not prohibited by section 286c of this title) be made by the Council, under the general direction of the President. No governor, executive director, or alternate representing the United States shall vote in favor of any waiver of condition under article V, section 4, or in favor of any declaration of the United States dollar as a scarce currency under article VII, section 3, of the Articles of Agreement of the Fund, without prior approval of the Council.

(5) The Council shall make such reports and recommendations to the President as he may from time to time request, or as the Council may consider necessary to more effectively or efficiently accomplish the purposes of this subchapter or the purposes for which the Council is created.

(6) The general policy objectives for the guidance of the United States Executive Director of the Bank shall take into account the effect that development assistance loans have upon individual industry sectors and international commodity markets—

(A) to minimize projected adverse impacts; and

(B) to avoid, wherever possible, government subsidization of production and exports of international commodities without regard to economic conditions in the markets for such commodities.

**(c) Reports to Council**

The representatives of the United States on the Fund and the Bank, and the Export-Import Bank of the United States (and all other agencies of the Government to the extent that they make or participate in the making of foreign loans or engage in foreign financial, exchange or monetary transactions) shall keep the Council fully informed of their activities and shall provide the Council with such further information or data in their possession as the Council may deem necessary to the appropriate discharge of its responsibilities under this subchapter.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, §4, 59 Stat. 512; Apr. 3, 1948, ch. 169, title I, §106, 62 Stat. 141; Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §501(e)(2), 65 Stat. 378; 1953 Reorg. Plan No. 5, eff. June 30, 1953, 18 F.R. 3741, 67 Stat. 637; 1953 Reorg. Plan No. 7, eff. Aug. 1, 1953, 18 F.R. 4541, 67 Stat. 639; Aug. 9, 1954, ch. 660, §2, 68 Stat. 678; Aug. 14, 1965, Pub. L. 89-126, §1(1), 79 Stat. 519; Mar. 13, 1968, Pub. L. 90-267, §1(a), 82 Stat. 47; Nov. 30, 1983, Pub. L. 98-181, title VIII, §808(a), 97 Stat. 1273; Dec. 19, 1989, Pub. L. 101-240, title V, §541(d)(1), (f)(1), 103 Stat. 2518, 2519.)

AMENDMENTS

1989—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 101-240 redesignated pars. (7) and (8) as (5) and (6), respectively, and struck out former pars. (5) and (6) which read as follows:

"(5) The Council shall transmit to the President and to the Congress an annual report with respect to the participation of the United States in the Fund and Bank.

"(6) Each such report shall contain such data concerning the operations and policies of the Fund and Bank, such recommendations concerning the Fund and Bank, and such other data and material as the Council may deem appropriate."

1983—Subsec. (b)(8). Pub. L. 98-181 added par. (8).

1965—Subsec. (b)(5). Pub. L. 89-126 substituted provisions requiring an annual report, for provisions which required the Council to report from time to time, but not less frequently than every six months.

Subsec. (b)(6). Pub. L. 89-126 struck out provisions which required special reports on operations and policies of the Fund and Bank and prescribed contents of such reports, and inserted provisions requiring the annual report to contain such data concerning the operations and policies of the Fund and Bank, such recommendations concerning the Fund and the Bank, and such other data and material as deemed appropriate.

1954—Subsec. (a). Act Aug. 9, 1954, provided membership on Council for President of the Export-Import Bank of Washington.

1951—Subsec. (a). Act Oct. 10, 1951, substituted "Mutual Security Agency" for "Economic Cooperation Administration", and "Director for Mutual Security" for "Administrator for Economic Cooperation".

1948—Subsec. (a). Act Apr. 3, 1948, ch. 169, title I, § 106, 62 Stat. 141, added Administrator for Economic Cooperation, during existence of the Administration, to membership of National Advisory Council.

#### CHANGE OF NAME

"Export-Import Bank of Washington" changed in text to "Export-Import Bank of the United States" to conform to such change in name in the Export-Import Bank Act of 1945, section 635 et seq. of Title 12, Banks and Banking, provided for in section 1(a) of Pub. L. 90-267.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1954 AMENDMENT

Amendment by act Aug. 9, 1954, effective upon initial appointment of President, First Vice President, and one member of the Board of Directors of the Export-Import Bank of Washington, see section 4 of act Aug. 9, 1954, set out as a note under section 635a of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

#### REPEALS

Act Apr. 3, 1948, cited as a credit to this section, was repealed by act June 20, 1952, ch. 449, § 7(c), 66 Stat. 144.

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Problems abolished and its functions, together with functions of its chairman and other officers, transferred to President by sections 1(b) and 3(a) of Reorg. Plan No. 4 of 1965, eff. July 27, 1965, 30 F.R. 9353, 79 Stat. 1321, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

Function of Chairman of Board of Directors of Export-Import Bank of Washington of being a member of National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Problems abolished by Reorg. Plan No. 5 of 1953, eff. June 30, 1953, 18 F.R. 3741, 67 Stat. 637, set out in the Appendix to Title 5.

Foreign Operations Administration abolished by Ex. Ord. No. 10610, May 9, 1955, 20 F.R. 3179, and its functions and offices transferred to Department of State to be administered by International Cooperation Administration. For later transfer, see section 2381 of this title, and notes set out under that section.

Office of Director for Mutual Security abolished and functions of Director transferred to Director of Foreign Operations Administration by Reorg. Plan No. 7 of 1953, eff. Aug. 1, 1953, 18 F.R. 4541. Section 4 of said Reorg. Plan No. 7 of 1953, specifically provided that Director of Foreign Operations Administration shall be a member of National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Problems.

#### EX. ORD. NO. 11269. NATIONAL ADVISORY COUNCIL ON INTERNATIONAL MONETARY AND FINANCIAL POLICIES

Ex. Ord. No. 11269, Feb. 14, 1966, 31 F.R. 2813, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 11334, Mar. 7, 1967, 32 F.R. 3933; Ex. Ord. No. 11808, Sept. 30, 1974, 39 F.R. 35563; Ex. Ord.

No. 11977, Mar. 14, 1977, 42 F.R. 14671; Ex. Ord. No. 12164, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56681; Ex. Ord. No. 12188, Jan. 2, 1980, 45 F.R. 989; Ex. Ord. No. 12403, Feb. 8, 1983, 48 F.R. 6087; Ex. Ord. No. 12567, Oct. 2, 1986, 51 F.R. 35495; Ex. Ord. No. 12647, Aug. 2, 1988, 53 F.R. 29323; Ex. Ord. No. 12766, June 18, 1991, 56 F.R. 28463, provided:

By virtue of the authority vested in me by Reorganization Plan No. 4 of 1965 (30 F.R. 9353) [set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees], and as President of the United States, it is ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. *Establishment of Council.* (a) There is hereby established the National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Policies, hereinafter referred to as the Council.

(b) The Council shall be composed of the following members: the Secretary of the Treasury, who shall be the chairman of the Council, the Assistant to the President for Economic Affairs, who shall be Deputy Chairman of the Council, the Secretary of State, the United States Trade Representative, the Secretary of Commerce, the Chairman of the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, the Director of the International Development Cooperation Agency, and the President of the Export-Import Bank of Washington [now the Export-Import Bank of the United States].

(c) Whenever matters within the jurisdiction of the Council may be of interest to Federal agencies not represented on the Council under Section 1(b) of this order, the Chairman of the Council may consult with such agencies and may invite them to designate representatives to participate in meetings and deliberations of the Council.

SEC. 2. *Functions of the Council.* (a) Exclusive of the functions delegated by the provisions of Section 3, below, and subject to the limitations contained in subsection (b) of this Section, all of the functions which are now vested in the President in consequence of their transfer to him effected by the provisions of Section 1(b) of Reorganization Plan No. 4 of 1965 are hereby delegated to the Council.

(b) The functions under Sections 4(a) and 4(b)(3) of the Bretton Woods Agreements Act, including those made applicable to the International Finance Corporation, the Inter-American Development Bank, and the International Development Association (22 U.S.C. 286b(a) and (b)(3); 282b; 283b; 284b), to the extent that such functions consist of coordination of policies, are hereby delegated to the Council. The functions so delegated shall be deemed to include the authority to review proposed individual loan, financial, exchange, or monetary transactions to the extent necessary or desirable to effectuate the coordination of policies.

(c) The Council shall perform with respect to the Asian Development Bank, African Development Fund, [sic] African Development Bank, Inter-American Investment Corporation, Multilateral Investment Guarantee Agency, and European Bank for Reconstruction and Development, the same functions as those delegated to it by subsections (a) and (b) of this section with respect to other international financial institutions.

SEC. 3. *Functions of the Secretary of the Treasury.* (a) Functions which are now vested in the President in consequence of their transfer to him effected by the provisions of Section 1(b) of Reorganization Plan No. 4 of 1965 are hereby delegated to the Secretary of the Treasury to the extent of the following:

(1) Authority, subject to the provisions of Section 7 of this Order, to instruct representatives of the United States to international financial organizations.

(2) Authority provided for in Section 4(b)(4) of the Bretton Woods Agreements Act (22 U.S.C. 286b(b)(4)). Such authority, insofar as it relates to the development aspects of the policies, programs, or projects of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development shall be exercised subject to the provisions of Section 7 of this Order.

(b) In carrying out the functions delegated to him by subsection (a) of this Section the Secretary shall consult with the Council.

(c) Nothing in this order shall be deemed to derogate from the responsibilities of the Secretary of State with respect to the foreign policy of the United States.

(d) The Secretary of the Treasury shall perform, with respect to the Asian Development Bank, African Development Fund., [sic] African Development Bank, Inter-American Investment Corporation, Multilateral Investment Guarantee Agency, and European Bank for Reconstruction and Development, the same functions as those delegated to him by subsections (a) and (b) of this section with respect to other international financial institutions.

(e) The Secretary of the Treasury is hereby delegated the functions conferred upon the President by Section 203(b) and Section 207 of the Act of May 31, 1976 (90 Stat. 593 and 594, 22 U.S.C. 290g-1 and 290g-5), subject to the provisions of Section 7 of this Order.

SEC. 4. *Information.* (a) All agencies and officers of the Government, including representatives of the United States to international financial organizations, (1) shall keep the Council or the Secretary of the Treasury, as the case may be, fully informed concerning the foreign loan, financial, exchange, and monetary transactions in which they engage or may engage or with respect to which they have other responsibility, and (2) shall provide the Council, the Director of the International Development Cooperation Agency, and the Secretary with such further information or data in their possession as the Council, the Director of the International Development Cooperation Agency, or the Secretary, as the case may be, may deem necessary to the appropriate discharge of the responsibilities of the Council, the Director of the International Development Cooperation Agency, and Secretary under Sections 2 and 3 of this order, respectively.

(b) The Council shall from time to time transmit to all appropriate agencies and officers of the Government statements of the policies of the Council under this order and such other information relating to the above-mentioned transactions or to the functions of the Council hereunder as the Council shall deem desirable.

SEC. 5. *Executive Order No. 10033.* Section 2(a) of Executive Order No. 10033 of February 8, 1949 [set out as a note under section 286f of this title], is hereby amended by substituting for the name "National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Problems" the following: "National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Policies."

SEC. 6. *Effective date.* The provisions of this order shall be effective as of January 1, 1966.

SEC. 7. *Functions of the Director of the International Development Cooperation Agency.* As the principal international development advisor to the President, the Director of the International Development Cooperation Agency shall advise both the Secretary of the Treasury and the appropriate United States representatives to the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, the International Development Association, the International Finance Corporation, the Inter-American Development Bank, the Asian Development Bank, the African Development Fund., [sic] African Development Bank, Inter-American Investment Corporation, Multilateral Investment Guarantee Agency, and European Bank for Reconstruction and Development on the development aspects of matters relating to those institutions and their activities.

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Inter-American Development Bank, applicability of provisions, see section 283b of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 262, 282b, 283b, 283cc, 284b, 290g-2, 290i-3, 290k-5, 290l-2, 290m of this title.

#### §§ 286b-1, 286b-2. Repealed. Pub. L. 101-240, title V, § 541(d)(1), (5), Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2518

Section 286b-1, Pub. L. 91-599, ch. 3, § 31, Dec. 30, 1970, 84 Stat. 1658, related to annual report to Congress of

National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Policies.

Section 286b-2, act July 31, 1945, ch. 339, § 50, as added Nov. 30, 1983, Pub. L. 98-181, title VIII, § 813, 97 Stat. 1276, related to reports to Congress by National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Policies and Secretary of the Treasury.

#### § 286c. Congressional authorization needed for certain actions

Unless Congress by law authorizes such action, neither the President nor any person or agency shall on behalf of the United States (a) request or consent to any change in the quota of the United States under article III, section 2(a), of the Articles of Agreement of the Fund; (b) propose a par value for the United States dollar under paragraph 2, paragraph 4, or paragraph 10 of schedule C of the Articles of Agreement of the Fund; (c) propose any change in the par value of the United States dollar under paragraph 6 of schedule C of the Articles of Agreement of the Fund, or approve any general change in par values under paragraph 11 of schedule C; (d) subscribe to additional shares of stock under article II, section 3, of the Articles of Agreement of the Bank; (e) accept any amendment under article XXVIII of the Articles of Agreement of the Fund or Article VIII of the Articles of Agreement of the Bank; (f) make any loan to the Fund or the Bank; or (g) approve either the disposition of more than 25 million ounces of Fund gold for the benefit of the Trust Fund established by the Fund on May 6, 1976, or the establishment of any additional trust fund whereby resources of the International Monetary Fund would be used for the special benefit of a single member, or of a particular segment of the membership, of the fund. Unless Congress by law authorizes such action, no governor or alternate appointed to represent the United States shall vote for an increase of capital stock of the Bank under article II, section 2, of the Articles of Agreement of the Bank, if such increase involves an increased subscription on the part of the United States. Neither the President nor any person or agency shall, on behalf of the United States, consent to any borrowing (other than borrowing from a foreign government or other official public source) by the Fund of funds denominated in United States dollars, unless the Secretary of the Treasury transmits a notice of such proposed borrowing to both Houses of the Congress at least 60 days prior to the date on which such borrowing is scheduled to occur.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, § 5, 59 Stat. 514; Aug. 14, 1965, Pub. L. 89-126, § 1(2), 79 Stat. 519; Oct. 19, 1976, Pub. L. 94-564, § 3, 90 Stat. 2660; Oct. 28, 1977, Pub. L. 95-147, § 4(a)(1), 91 Stat. 1228; Nov. 30, 1983, Pub. L. 98-181, title VIII, § 811, 97 Stat. 1274.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1983—Pub. L. 98-181 inserted provision prohibiting the President or any person or agency from consenting to a borrowing of funds denominated in dollars unless notice of such borrowing is transmitted to Congress at least 60 days prior to such borrowing.

1977—Pub. L. 95-147 added to cl. (g) provisions relating to disposition of more than 25 million ounces of Fund gold for the benefit of the Trust Fund.

1976—Pub. L. 94-564 amended cls. (a) to (g) generally.  
1965—Pub. L. 89-126 inserted "if such increase involves an increased subscription on the part of the United States".

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1976 AMENDMENT

Amendment effective Apr. 1, 1978, see section 9 of Pub. L. 94-564, set out as a note under section 286a of this title.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 286b of this title.

**§ 286d. Federal Reserve banks as depositories**

Any Federal Reserve bank which is requested to do so by the Fund or the Bank shall act as its depository or as its fiscal agent, and the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System shall supervise and direct the carrying out of these functions by the Federal Reserve banks.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, § 6, 59 Stat. 514.)

**§ 286e. Payment of subscriptions to Fund and Bank by United States; issuance of special notes; income covered into Treasury**

The Secretary of the Treasury is authorized to pay the balance of the subscription of the United States to the Fund not provided for in subsection (a) and to pay the subscription of the United States to the Bank from time to time when payments are required to be made to the Bank. For the purpose of making these payments, the Secretary of the Treasury is authorized to use as a public-debt transaction \$8,675,000,000 of the proceeds of any securities hereafter issued under chapter 31 of title 31, and the purposes for which securities may be issued under that chapter are extended to include such purpose. Payment under this paragraph of the subscription of the United States to the Fund or the Bank and repayments thereof shall be treated as public-debt transactions of the United States.

For the purpose of keeping to a minimum the cost to the United States of participation in the Fund and the Bank, the Secretary of the Treasury, after paying the subscription of the United States to the Fund, and any part of the subscription of the United States to the Bank required to be made under article II, section 7(i), of the Articles of Agreement of the Bank, is authorized and directed to issue special notes of the United States from time to time at par and to deliver such notes to the Fund and the Bank in exchange for dollars to the extent permitted by the respective Articles of Agreement. The special notes provided for in this paragraph shall be issued under the authority and subject to the provisions of chapter 31 of title 31, and the purposes for which securities may be issued under that chapter are extended to include the purposes for which special notes are authorized and directed to be issued under this paragraph, but such notes shall bear no interest, shall be non-negotiable, and shall be payable on demand of the Fund or the Bank, as the case may be. The face amount of special notes issued to the Fund under the authority of this paragraph and outstanding at any one time shall not exceed in the aggregate the amount of the subscription of the United States actually paid to the Fund and the dollar equivalent of currencies and gold which the United States shall have purchased from the Fund in accordance with the Articles of Agreement, and the face amount of such notes issued

to the Bank and outstanding at any one time shall not exceed in the aggregate the amount of the subscription of the United States actually paid to the Bank under article II, section 7(i) of the Articles of Agreement of the Bank.

Any payment made to the United States by the Fund or the Bank as a distribution of net income shall be covered into the Treasury as a miscellaneous receipt.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, § 7(b)-(d), 59 Stat. 514; June 17, 1959, Pub. L. 86-48, § 2, 73 Stat. 80; June 19, 1962, Pub. L. 87-490, § 2, 76 Stat. 105.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

Subsection (a), referred to in the first par., means section 7(a) of act July 31, 1945, ch. 339, 59 Stat. 514, which generally amended subsec. (c) of section 822a of former Title 31, Money and Finance. Section 822a(c) of former Title 31 was repealed and reenacted as section 5302(d) of Title 31 by Pub. L. 97-258, § 4(a), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31.

## CODIFICATION

In first and second pars., “chapter 31 of title 31” and “that chapter” substituted for “the Second Liberty Bond Act, as amended” and “that Act”, respectively, on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, § 4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

Section is based on subsecs. (b) to (d) of section 7 of act July 31, 1945. Subsec. (a) of section 7 amended section 822a of former Title 31. See References in Text note above.

## AMENDMENTS

1962—Pub. L. 87-490 included in the limitation of face amount of special notes issued to the Fund the dollar equivalent of currencies and gold which the United States shall have purchased from the Fund in accordance with the Articles of Agreement.

1959—Pub. L. 86-48 struck out “of \$950,000,000” after “is authorized to pay the balance”, and substituted “\$8,675,000,000” for “not to exceed \$4,125,000,000”.

## INCREASE IN QUOTA OF UNITED STATES; APPROPRIATION REQUIREMENTS; TRANSFERS AND CREDITS; RESTRICTIONS

Pub. L. 96-544, Dec. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 3213, provided that: “For an increase in the United States quota in the International Monetary Fund, the dollar equivalent of 4,202.5 million Special Drawing Rights (approximately \$5,537,839,000), to remain available until expended, and balances equivalent to the current SDR value of the United States quota in the Fund shall be merged with this appropriation. Amounts equivalent to the United States reserve position in the Fund shall be credited to this appropriation. Amounts available in this account may be transferred to the Fund by the Secretary of the Treasury to meet United States obligations in the Fund in an amount not to exceed at any time the United States quota in the Fund. The amounts provided for valuation adjustments of Fund holdings of United States dollars shall continue to be available for this purpose and shall be available for transfers to this appropriation account for the purpose of such adjustments. In the administration of these funds it shall be the policy of the United States:

“(1) that the Palestine Liberation Organization should not be given membership in the Fund or be given observer status or any other official status at any meeting sponsored by or associated with the Fund;

“(2) that the United States Executive Director of the Fund shall promptly notify the Fund of such policy;

“(3) that in the event that the Fund provides either membership, observer status, or any other official



status to the Palestine Liberation Organization, such action would result in a serious diminution of United States support; and

“(4) that upon review of such action, the President would be required to report his recommendations to the Congress with regard to any further United States participation in the Fund.”

**§ 286e-1. Increase in quota of United States and in capital stock of Bank; subscription to additional shares**

(a) The United States Governor of the Fund is authorized to request and consent to an increase of \$1,375,000,000 in the quota of the United States under article III, section 2, of the articles of agreement of the Fund, as proposed in the resolution of the Board of Governors of the Fund dated February 2, 1959.

(b) The United States Governor of the Bank is authorized (1) to vote for increases in the capital stock of the Bank under article II, section 2, of the articles of agreement of the Bank, as recommended in the resolution of the Board of Governors of the Bank dated February 2, 1959, and (2) if such increases become effective, to subscribe on behalf of the United States to thirty-one thousand seven hundred and fifty additional shares of stock under article II, section 3, of the articles of agreement of the Bank.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, §16, as added June 17, 1959, Pub. L. 86-48, §1, 73 Stat. 80.)

**§ 286e-1a. Increase in capital stock of Bank**

The United States Governor of the Bank is authorized to vote for an increase of \$1,000,000,000 in the authorized capital stock of the Bank under article II, section 2, of the articles of agreement of the Bank, as recommended in the report, dated November 6, 1962, to the Board of Governors of the Bank by the Bank's Executive Directors.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, §19, as added Nov. 13, 1963, Pub. L. 88-178, 77 Stat. 334.)

**§ 286e-1b. Increase in quota of United States; authorization of appropriations**

(a) The United States Governor of the Fund is authorized to consent to an increase of \$1,035,000,000 in the quota of the United States in the Fund.

(b) In order to pay the increase in the United States subscription to the Fund provided for in this section, there is hereby authorized to be appropriated \$1,035,000,000, to remain available until expended.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, §20, as added June 2, 1965, Pub. L. 89-31, 79 Stat. 119.)

**§ 286e-1c. Additional increase in quota of United States**

(a) The United States Governor of the Fund is authorized to consent to an increase of \$1,540,000,000 in the quota of the United States in the Fund.

(b) In order to pay the increase in the United States quota in the Fund provided for in this section, there is hereby authorized to be appropriated \$1,540,000,000, to remain available until expended.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, §22, as added Dec. 30, 1970, Pub. L. 91-599, ch. 1, §1, 84 Stat. 1657.)

**§ 286e-1d. Increase in capital stock of Bank; subscription to additional shares; authorization of appropriations**

(a) The United States Governor of the Bank is authorized (1) to vote for an increase of \$3,000,000,000 in the authorized capital stock of the Bank, and (2) if such increase becomes effective, to subscribe on behalf of the United States to two thousand four hundred and sixty-one additional shares of the capital stock of the Bank.

(b) In order to pay for the increase in the United States subscription to the Bank provided for in this section, there is hereby authorized to be appropriated \$246,100,000 to remain available until expended.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, §23, as added Dec. 30, 1970, Pub. L. 91-599, ch. 1, §1, 84 Stat. 1657.)

**§ 286e-1e. Equivalent increase in quota of United States**

The United States Governor of the Fund is authorized to consent to an increase in the quota of the United States in the Fund equivalent to 1,705 million Special Drawing Rights.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, §25, as added Oct. 19, 1976, Pub. L. 94-564, §1, 90 Stat. 2660.)

**§ 286e-1f. Additional increase in capital stock of Bank; subscription to additional shares; authorization of appropriations**

(a) The United States Governor of the Bank is authorized—

(1) to vote for an increase of seventy thousand shares in the authorized capital stock of the Bank; and

(2) if such increase becomes effective, to subscribe on behalf of the United States to thirteen thousand and five additional shares of the capital stock of the Bank: *Provided, however*, That any subscription to additional shares shall be effective only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriations Acts.

(b) In order to pay for the increase in the United States subscription to the Bank provided for in this section, there are authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, \$1,568,856,318 for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, §27, as added Oct. 3, 1977, Pub. L. 95-118, title II, §201, 91 Stat. 1067; amended Aug. 13, 1981, Pub. L. 97-35, title XIII, §1312, 95 Stat. 740.)

AMENDMENTS

1981—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 97-35 substituted “effective only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriations Acts” for “made only after the amount required for such subscription has been appropriated”.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1981 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 97-35 effective Aug. 13, 1981, except that any funds authorized to be appropriated shall not be available for use or obligation prior to Oct. 1, 1981, see section 1372 of Pub. L. 97-35, set out as an Effective Date note under section 290i of this title.

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 3, 1977, except that no funds authorized to be appropriated by this section may be available for use or obligation prior to Oct. 1, 1977, see section 1001 of Pub. L. 95-118, set out as a note under section 282i of this title.

**§ 286e-1g. Additional increase in quota of United States; condition**

The United States Governor of the Fund is authorized to consent to an increase in the quota of the United States in the Fund equivalent to 4,202.5 million Special Drawing Rights, limited to such amounts as are appropriated in advance in appropriation Acts.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, § 32, as added and amended Oct. 7, 1980, Pub. L. 96-389, §§ 1, 11, 94 Stat. 1551, 1555.)

## AMENDMENTS

1980—Pub. L. 96-389, § 11, substituted “limited to such amounts as are appropriated in advance in appropriation Acts” for “to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in appropriations Acts”.

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 7, 1980, see section 12 of Pub. L. 96-389, set out as a note under section 286s of this title.

**§ 286e-1h. Increase of subscription of stock; authority of United States Governor of Bank; authorization of appropriations**

(a) The United States Governor of the Bank is authorized—

(1) to vote to increase by three hundred and sixty-five thousand shares the authorized capital stock of the Bank; and

(2) to subscribe on behalf of the United States to not more than seventy-three thousand and ten shares of the capital stock of the Bank: *Provided, however*, That not more than seven and one-half percent (\$658,305,195) of the price of the shares subscribed may be paid in to the Bank on subscription, with the remainder of that price (\$8,149,256,155) being subject to call only when a call on unpaid subscriptions is required to meet obligations of the Bank for funds borrowed or on loans guaranteed by it and not for use by the Bank in its lending activities or for administrative expenses: *Provided further*, That any subscription to such additional shares shall be effective only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriations Acts.

(b) In order to pay for the paid-in portion of the United States subscription to the Bank provided for in this section, there is authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, \$658,305,195 for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury: *Provided, however*, That not more than \$109,720,549 of such sum may be made available for each of the fiscal years 1982, 1983, and 1984.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, § 39, as added Aug. 13, 1981, Pub. L. 97-35, title XIII, § 1311, 95 Stat. 740.)

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Aug. 13, 1981, except that any funds authorized to be appropriated shall not be available for use or obligation prior to Oct. 1, 1981, see section 1372 of Pub. L. 97-35, set out as a note under section 290i of this title.

**§ 286e-1i. Increase in United States quota; consultations with Congress**

(a) The United States Governor of the Fund is authorized to consent to an increase in the quota of the United States in the Fund equivalent to 5,310,800,000 Special Drawing Rights, limited to such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriations Acts.

(b)(1) The Secretary of the Treasury shall consult with the chairman and the ranking minority member of—

(A) the Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs and the Committee on Appropriations of the House of Representatives, and any appropriate subcommittee of each such committee; and

(B) the committee on Foreign Relations, the Committee on Appropriations, and the Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs of the Senate, and any appropriate subcommittee of each such committee,

for purposes of discussing the position of the executive branch and the views of the Congress with respect to any international negotiations being held to consider any future quota increase for the International Monetary Fund which may involve an increased contribution, subscription, or loan by the United States.

(2) Such consultation shall be made—

(A) not later than thirty days before the initiation of such international negotiations;

(B) during the period in which such negotiations are being held, in a frequent and timely manner; and

(C) before a session of such negotiations is held at which the United States representatives may agree to such quota increase.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, § 41, as added Nov. 30, 1983, Pub. L. 98-181, title VIII, § 802(a)(4), 97 Stat. 1268.)

## CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Banking and Financial Services of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 286y of this title.

**§ 286e-1j. Additional increase in capital stock of Bank; subscription to additional shares; authorization of appropriations**

(a) The United States Governor of the Bank is authorized—

(1) to vote for an increase of seventy thousand shares in the authorized capital stock of the Bank; and

(2) to subscribe on behalf of the United States to twelve thousand four hundred and fifty-three additional shares of the capital stock of the Bank, except that any subscription to such additional shares shall be effective only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriations Acts.

(b) In order to pay for the increase in the United States subscription to the Bank provided

for in this section, there are authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, \$1,502,267,655 for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, §51, as added Dec. 19, 1985, Pub. L. 99-190, §101(i) [title I, (a)], 99 Stat. 1291, 1294.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section 51 of act July 31, 1945, is based on section 301 of title III of H.R. 2253, Ninety-ninth Congress, as reported May 15, 1985, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 99-190.

### § 286e-1k. Capital stock increase

#### (a) Increase authorized

The United States Governor of the Bank is authorized—

(1) to vote for an increase of 620,000 shares in the authorized capital stock of the Bank; and

(2) to subscribe on behalf of the United States to 116,262 additional shares of the capital stock of the Bank, except that any subscription to such additional shares shall be effective only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriations Acts.

#### (b) Authorization of appropriations

In order to pay for the increase in the United States subscription to the Bank provided for in this section, there are authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, \$14,025,266,370, for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, §53, as added Oct. 1, 1988, Pub. L. 100-461, title V, §555, 102 Stat. 2268-36.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section 53 of act July 31, 1945, is based on section 1 of H.R. 4645, One Hundredth Congress, as reported Sept. 28, 1988, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-461.

### § 286e-1l. Quota increase

The United States Governor of the Fund may consent to an increase in the quota of the United States in the Fund equivalent to 8,608,500,000 Special Drawing Rights, limited to such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriations Acts.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, §56, as added Oct. 24, 1992, Pub. L. 102-511, title X, §1001, 106 Stat. 3357.)

### § 286e-2. Loans to Fund

#### (a) Limitation; balance of payments and reserve position considerations

In order to carry out the purposes of the decisions of January 5, 1962, and February 24, 1983, as amended in accordance with their terms, of the Executive Directors of the International Monetary Fund, the Secretary of the Treasury is authorized to make loans, in an amount not to exceed the equivalent of 4,250,000,000 Special Drawing Rights, limited to such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriations Acts, except that prior to activation, the Secretary of the Treasury shall certify that supplementary resources are needed to forestall or cope with an impairment of the international monetary sys-

tem and that the Fund has fully explored other means of funding, to the Fund under article VII, section 1(i), of the Articles of Agreement of the Fund. Any loan under the authority granted in this subsection shall be made with due regard to the present and prospective balance of payments and reserve position of the United States.

#### (b) Authorization of appropriations; repayments available for loans to Fund

For the purpose of making loans to the International Monetary Fund pursuant to this section, there is authorized to be appropriated 4,250,000,000 Special Drawing Rights, except that prior to activation, the Secretary of the Treasury shall certify whether supplementary resources are needed to forestall or cope with an impairment of the international monetary system and that the Fund has fully explored other means of funding, to remain available until expended to meet calls by the International Monetary Fund. Any payments made to the United States by the International Monetary Fund as a repayment on account of the principal of a loan made under this section shall continue to be available for loans to the International Monetary Fund.

#### (c) Interest and charges covered into Treasury; additional authorization of appropriations for payment of charges for purchase of currencies or gold from Fund

Payments of interest and charges to the United States on account of any loan to the International Monetary Fund shall be covered into the Treasury as miscellaneous receipts. In addition to the amount authorized in subsection (b) of this section, there is authorized to be appropriated such amounts as may be necessary for the payment of charges in connection with any purchases of currencies or gold by the United States from the International Monetary Fund.

#### (d) Amendment to Executive Directors' decision prohibited; conditions

Unless the Congress by law so authorizes, neither the President, the Secretary of the Treasury, nor any other person acting on behalf of the United States, may instruct the United States Executive Director to the Fund to consent to any amendment to the Decision of February 24, 1983, of the Executive Directors of the Fund, if the adoption of such amendment would significantly alter the amount, terms, or conditions of participation by the United States in the General Arrangements to Borrow.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, §17, as added June 19, 1962, Pub. L. 87-490, §1, 76 Stat. 105; amended Oct. 19, 1976, Pub. L. 94-564, §4, 90 Stat. 2661; Nov. 30, 1983, Pub. L. 98-181, title VIII, §802(a)(1)-(3), 97 Stat. 1268.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1983—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 98-181, §802(a)(1), substituted “decisions of January 5, 1962, and February 24, 1983, as amended in accordance with their terms” for “decision of January 5, 1962”, and “in an amount not to exceed the equivalent of 4,250,000,000 Special Drawing Rights, limited to such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriations Acts, except that prior to activation, the Secretary of the Treasury shall certify that

supplementary resources are needed to forestall or cope with an impairment of the international monetary system and that the fund has fully explored other means of funding” for “not to exceed \$2,000,000,000 outstanding at any one time”.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 98-181, §802(a)(2), substituted “4,250,000,000 Special Drawing Rights, except that prior to activation, the Secretary of the Treasury shall certify whether supplementary resources are needed to forestall or cope with an impairment of the international monetary system and that the Fund has fully explored other means of funding” for “\$2,000,000,000”.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 98-181, §802(a)(3), added subsec. (d).

1976—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94-564 substituted “section 1(i)” for “section 2(i)”.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1976 AMENDMENT

Amendment effective Apr. 1, 1978, see section 9 of Pub. L. 94-564, set out as a note under section 286a of this title.

### § 286e-3. Transfers to stabilization fund of purchase of currencies or gold from International Monetary Fund; administration; utilization of fund resources for repayments

Any purchases of currencies or gold by the United States from the International Monetary Fund may be transferred to and administered by the fund established by section 5302 of title 31, for use in accordance with the provisions of that section. The Secretary of the Treasury is authorized to utilize the resources of that fund for the purpose of any repayments in connection with such transactions.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, §18, as added June 19, 1962, Pub. L. 87-490, §1, 76 Stat. 105.)

#### CODIFICATION

“Section 5302 of title 31” substituted in text for “section 10 of the Gold Reserve Act of 1934, as amended (31 U.S.C. 822a)” on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, §4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 31 section 5302.

### § 286e-4. Loans to International Finance Corporation; amendment to Articles of Agreement

The United States Governor of the Bank is authorized to agree to an amendment to the articles of agreement of the Bank to permit the Bank to make, participate in, or guarantee loans to the International Finance Corporation for use in the lending operations of the latter.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, §21, as added Aug. 14, 1965, Pub. L. 89-126, §1(3), 79 Stat. 519.)

### § 286e-5. Amendments to Articles of Agreement

The United States Governor of the Fund is authorized to accept the amendments to the Articles of Agreement of the Fund approved in resolution numbered 31-4 of the Board of Governors of the Fund.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, §24, as added Oct. 19, 1976, Pub. L. 94-564, §1, 90 Stat. 2660.)

### § 286e-5a. Additional amendments to Articles of Agreement

The United States Governor of the Bank is hereby authorized to agree to and to accept the

amendment to the Articles of Agreement in the proposed resolution entitled “Amendment to the Articles of Agreement of the Bank”, forwarded to the United States on February 27, 1987.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, §52, as added Dec. 22, 1987, Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title I], 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-134.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section 52 of act July 31, 1945, is based on section 601 of title VI of H.R. 3750, One Hundredth Congress, as introduced Dec. 11, 1987, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-202.

### § 286e-5b. Acceptance of amendments to Articles of Agreement of the Fund

The United States Governor of the Fund may agree to and accept the amendments to the Articles of Agreement of the Fund as proposed in the resolution numbered 45-3 of the Board of Governors of the Fund that was approved by such Board on June 28, 1990.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, §57, as added Oct. 24, 1992, Pub. L. 102-511, title X, §1001, 106 Stat. 3357.)

### § 286e-6. Vote against establishment of Council

The United States Governor of the Fund is directed to vote against the establishment of a Council authorized under Article XII, Section 1 of the Fund Articles of Agreement as amended, if under any circumstances the United States’ vote in the Council would be less than its weighted vote in the Fund.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, §26, as added Oct. 19, 1976, Pub. L. 94-564, §1, 90 Stat. 2660.)

### § 286e-7. Supplementary Financing Facility

#### (a) Availability of resources

For the purpose of participation of the United States in the Supplementary Financing Facility (hereinafter referred to as the “facility”) established by the decision numbered 5508-(77/127) of the Executive Directors of the Fund, the Secretary of the Treasury is authorized to make resources available as provided in the decision numbered 5509-(77/127) of the Fund, in an amount not to exceed the equivalent of 1,450 million Special Drawing Rights.

#### (b) Adjustments in the value of monetary assets

The Secretary of the Treasury shall account, through the fund established by section 5302 of title 31, for any adjustment in the value of monetary assets held by the United States in respect of United States participation in the facility.

#### (c) Authorization of appropriations

Notwithstanding any other provision of this section, the authority of the Secretary to enter into agreements making resources available under this section shall be limited to such amounts as are appropriated in advance in appropriation Acts. Effective October 1, 1978, there are hereby authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary of the Treasury, without fiscal year limitation, such sums as are necessary to carry out subsection (a) of this section, but not to exceed an amount of dollars equivalent to 1,450 million Special Drawing Rights.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, §28, as added Oct. 10, 1978, Pub. L. 95-435, §1, 92 Stat. 1051.)

CODIFICATION

In subsec. (b), “section 5302 of title 31” substituted for “section 10 of the Gold Reserve Act of 1934, as amended (31 U.S.C. 822a)” on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, §4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

**§ 286e-8. Treatment of creditors in debt rescheduling**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States executive director to seek to assure that no decision by the International Monetary Fund undermines or departs from United States policy regarding the comparability of treatment of public and private creditors in cases of debt rescheduling where official United States credits are involved.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, §29, as added Oct. 10, 1978, Pub. L. 95-435, §3, 92 Stat. 1052; amended Oct. 7, 1980, Pub. L. 96-389, §5, 94 Stat. 1554.)

AMENDMENTS

1980—Pub. L. 96-389 struck out “on the use of the facility” after “Monetary Fund”.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-389 effective Oct. 7, 1980, see section 12 of Pub. L. 96-389, set out as an Effective Date note under section 286s of this title.

**§ 286e-9. Stabilization programs**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States executive director on the Executive Board of the International Monetary Fund to initiate a wide consultation with the managing director of the Fund and other member country executive directors with regard to encouraging the staff of the Fund to formulate stabilization programs which, to the maximum feasible extent, foster a broader base of productive investment and employment, especially in those productive activities which are designed to meet basic human needs.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, §30, as added Oct. 10, 1978, Pub. L. 95-435, §4, 92 Stat. 1052; amended Oct. 7, 1980, Pub. L. 96-389, §2(b), 94 Stat. 1553; Dec. 19, 1989, Pub. L. 101-240, title V, §541(d)(1), (f)(2), 103 Stat. 2518, 2519.)

AMENDMENTS

1989—Pub. L. 101-240 struck out subsec. (a) designation and struck out subsec. (b) which read as follows: “In order to gain a better understanding of the social, political and economic impact of the Fund’s stabilization programs on borrowing countries, especially as it relates to the poor majority within those countries, the United States Governor of the Fund shall prepare and submit, not later than 180 days after the close of each calendar year, a report to the Congress. Such report shall evaluate, to the maximum extent feasible, with respect to countries to which loans are made during each year, the effects of policies of those countries which result from the standby agreements on basic human needs in such countries.”

1980—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 96-389, §2(b)(1), struck out “entered into pursuant to loans from the Supplementary Financing Facility” after “stabilization programs”.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 96-389, §2(b)(2), (3), struck out “entered into pursuant to loans from the Supple-

mentary Financing Facility” after “stabilization programs” and “by the Supplementary Financing Facility” after “loans are made”.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-389 effective Oct. 7, 1980, see section 12 of Pub. L. 96-389, set out as an Effective Date note under section 286s of this title.

**§ 286e-10. Repealed. Pub. L. 97-35, title XIII, § 1371(a)(1), Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 746**

Section, act July 31, 1945, ch. 339, §31, as added Oct. 10, 1978, Pub. L. 95-435, §4, 92 Stat. 1052, required an annual report to Congress on the status of internationally recognized human rights in each country which draws on funds under the Supplementary Financing Facility of the International Monetary Fund.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Aug. 13, 1981, see section 1372 of Pub. L. 97-35, set out as an Effective Date note under section 290i of this title.

**§ 286e-11. Assistance by the Fund to any country harboring international terrorists**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the Executive Director of the United States to the International Monetary Fund to work in opposition to any extension of financial or technical assistance by the Supplemental Financing Facility or by any other agency or facility of such Fund to any country the government of which—

(1) permits entry into the territory of such country to any person who has committed an act of international terrorism, including any act of aircraft hijacking, or otherwise supports, encourages, or harbors such person; or

(2) fails to take appropriate measures to prevent any such person from committing any such act outside the territory of such country.

(Pub. L. 95-435, §6, Oct. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 1053.)

CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as part of act July 31, 1945, ch. 339, 59 Stat. 512, known as the Bretton Woods Agreements Act, which comprises this subchapter.

**§ 286e-12. Contribution to Interest Subsidy Account of Enhanced Structural Adjustment Facility of International Monetary Fund**

**(a) Contribution authorized**

**(1) In general**

Subject to paragraph (2), the United States Governor of the Fund may contribute \$150,000,000 to the Interest Subsidy Account of the Enhanced Structural Adjustment Facility of the Fund on behalf of the United States.

**(2) Condition**

The United States Governor of the Fund may not make a commitment to contribute any amount authorized to be contributed under paragraph (1) before an amount equal to such amount has been appropriated for such purpose.

**(b) Limitation on authorization of appropriations**

To pay for the contribution authorized by subsection (a) of this section, there are authorized

to be appropriated not to exceed \$150,000,000, without fiscal year limitation, for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, §54, as added Dec. 19, 1989, Pub. L. 101-240, title III, §301, 103 Stat. 2500.)

**§ 286e-13. Approval of fund pledge to sell gold to provide resources for Reserve Account of Enhanced Structural Adjustment Facility Trust**

The Secretary of the Treasury is authorized to instruct the United States Executive Director of the Fund to vote to approve the Fund's pledge to sell, if needed, up to 3,000,000 ounces of the Fund's gold, to restore the resources of the Reserve Account of the Enhanced Structural Adjustment Facility Trust to a level that would be sufficient to meet obligations of the Trust payable to lenders which have made loans to the Loan Account of the Trust that have been used for the purpose of financing programs to Fund members previously in arrears to the Fund.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, §58, as added Oct. 24, 1992, Pub. L. 102-511, title X, §1001, 106 Stat. 3357.)

**§ 286f. Obtaining and furnishing information to the Fund**

**(a) Required disclosure**

Whenever a request is made by the Fund to the United States as a member to furnish data under article VIII, section 5, of the Articles of Agreement of the Fund, the President may, through any agency he may designate, require any person to furnish such information as the President may determine to be essential to comply with such request. In making such determination the President shall seek to collect the information only in such detail as is necessary to comply with the request of the Fund. No information so acquired shall be furnished to the Fund in such detail that the affairs of any person are disclosed.

**(b) Penalty for refusal**

In the event any person refuses to furnish such information when requested to do so, the President, through any designated governmental agency, may by subpoena require such person to appear and testify or to appear and produce records and other documents, or both. In case of contumacy by, or refusal to obey a subpoena served upon any such person, the district court for any district in which such person is found or resides or transacts business, upon application by the President or any governmental agency designated by him, shall have jurisdiction to issue an order requiring such person to appear and give testimony or appear and produce records and documents, or both; and any failure to obey such order of the court may be punished by such court as a contempt thereof.

**(c) Penalty for unlawful disclosures**

It shall be unlawful for any officer or employee of the Government, or for any advisor or consultant to the Government, to disclose, otherwise than in the course of official duty, any information obtained under this section, or to use any such information for his personal benefit. Whoever violates any of the provisions of this subsection shall, upon conviction, be

fined not more than \$5,000, or imprisoned for not more than five years, or both.

**(d) "Person" defined**

The term "person" as used in this section means an individual, partnership, corporation or association.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, §8, 59 Stat. 515.)

**EX. ORD. NO. 10033. REGULATIONS GOVERNING THE PROVIDING OF STATISTICAL INFORMATION TO INTERGOVERNMENTAL ORGANIZATIONS**

Ex. Ord. No. 10033, Feb. 8, 1949, 14 F.R. 561, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 11269, Feb. 14, 1966, 31 F.R. 2813; Ex. Ord. No. 12013, Oct. 7, 1977, 42 F.R. 54931; Ex. Ord. No. 12318, Aug. 21, 1981, 46 F.R. 42833, provided:

SECTION 1. Except as provided in section 2 hereof, the Director of the Office of Management and Budget, hereinafter referred to as the Director, (a) shall determine, with the concurrence of the Secretary of State, what statistical information shall be provided in response to official requests received by the United States Government from any intergovernmental organization of which this country is a member, and (b) shall determine which Federal executive agency or agencies shall prepare the statistical information thus to be provided. The statistical information so prepared shall be transmitted to the requesting intergovernmental organization through established channels by the Secretary of State or by any Federal executive agency now or hereafter authorized by the Secretary of State to transmit such information.

SEC. 2. (a) The National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Policies, hereinafter referred to as the National Advisory Council, shall determine, after consultation with the Director, what information is essential in order that the United States Government may comply with official requests for information received from the International Monetary Fund or the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development.

(b) The Director shall determine which Federal executive agency or agencies shall collect or make available information found essential under section 2(a) hereof.

(c) In the collection of information pursuant to a determination made by the Director under section 2(b) hereof in response to a request under article VIII, section 5, of the Articles of Agreement of the International Monetary Fund, the authority conferred on the President by section 8 of the Bretton Woods Agreements Act [this section] to require any person to furnish such information, by subpoena or otherwise, may be exercised by each of the following-named agencies:

- Department of Agriculture.
- Department of Commerce.
- Department of the Interior.
- Department of Labor.
- Department of the Treasury.
- Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System.
- Federal Communications Commission.
- Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation.
- Federal Power Commission.
- Federal Trade Commission.
- Interstate Commerce Commission.
- Securities and Exchange Commission.
- United States Maritime Commission.
- United States Tariff Commission [now the United States International Trade Commission].

(d) The information collected or made available under section 2 of this order shall be submitted to the National Advisory Council for review and for presentation to the said Fund or Bank.

(e) As used in this order, the word "person" means an individual, partnership, corporation, or association.

SEC. 3. The Director's determination of any matter under section 1 or section 2(b) of this order shall be made after consulting appropriate Federal executive

agencies and giving due consideration to any responsibility now exercised by any of them in relation to an intergovernmental organization.

SEC. 4. This order shall not be construed to authorize the Director or the National Advisory Council to provide, or to require any Federal executive agency to provide, to an intergovernmental organization (a) information during any period of time when the agency having primary responsibility for security of the specified information declares that it must be withheld from the intergovernmental organization in the interest of military security, or (b) information which any Federal executive agency is required by law to maintain on a confidential basis.

SEC. 5. The Director and the National Advisory Council are authorized to prescribe such regulations as may be necessary to carry out their respective responsibilities under this order.

SEC. 6. To the extent that this order conflicts with any previous Executive order, the provisions of this order shall control.

SEC. 7. [Revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 12318, Aug. 21, 1981, 46 F.R. 42833]

#### FEDERAL RULES OF CIVIL PROCEDURE

Subpoena, see rule 45, Title 28, Appendix, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Punishment for contempt, see section 402 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 286z of this title; title 31 section 5315.

### § 286g. Jurisdiction and venue of actions

For the purpose of any action which may be brought within the United States or its Territories or possessions by or against the Fund or the Bank in accordance with the Articles of Agreement of the Fund or the Articles of Agreement of the Bank, the Fund or the Bank, as the case may be, shall be deemed to be an inhabitant of the Federal judicial district in which its principal office in the United States is located, and any such action at law or in equity to which either the Fund or the Bank shall be a party shall be deemed to arise under the laws of the United States, and the district courts of the United States shall have original jurisdiction of any such action. When either the Fund or the Bank is a defendant in any such action, it may, at any time before the trial thereof, remove such action from a State court into the district court of the United States for the proper district by following the procedure for removal of causes otherwise provided by law.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, §10, 59 Stat. 516.)

#### FEDERAL RULES OF CIVIL PROCEDURE

One form of action, see rule 2, Title 28, Appendix, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Removal of cases from state to district courts, see section 1441 et seq. of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

### § 286h. Status, privileges, and immunities of the United States

The provisions of article IX, sections 2 to 9, both inclusive, and the first sentence of article VIII, section 2(b), of the Articles of Agreement

of the Fund, and the provisions of article VI, section 5(i), and article VII, sections 2 to 9, both inclusive, of the Articles of Agreement of the Bank, shall have full force and effect in the United States and its Territories and possessions upon acceptance of membership by the United States in, and the establishment of, the Fund and the Bank, respectively.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, §11, 59 Stat. 516.)

### § 286i. Stabilization loans by Bank; amendment to Articles of Agreement

The governor and executive director of the Bank appointed by the United States are directed to obtain promptly an official interpretation by the Bank as to its authority to make or guarantee loans for programs of economic reconstruction and the reconstruction of monetary systems, including long-term stabilization loans. If the Bank does not interpret its powers to include the making or guaranteeing of such loans, the governor of the Bank representing the United States is directed to propose promptly and support an amendment to the Articles of Agreement for the purpose of explicitly authorizing the Bank, after consultation with the Fund, to make or guarantee such loans. The President is authorized and directed to accept an amendment to that effect on behalf of the United States.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, §12, 59 Stat. 516.)

### § 286j. Use of Fund resources

#### (a) Official interpretation of authority of Fund

The governor and executive director of the Fund appointed by the United States are directed to obtain promptly an official interpretation by the Fund as to whether its authority to use its resources extends beyond current monetary stabilization operations to afford temporary assistance to members in connection with seasonal, cyclical, and emergency fluctuations in the balance of payment of any member for current transactions, and whether it has authority to use its resources to provide facilities for relief, reconstruction, or armaments, or to meet a large or sustained outflow of capital on the part of any member.

#### (b) Proposal of amendment

If the interpretation by the Fund answers in the affirmative any of the questions stated in subsection (a) of this section, the governor of the Fund representing the United States is directed to propose promptly and support an amendment to the Articles of Agreement for the purpose of expressly negating such interpretation. The President is authorized and directed to accept an amendment to that effect on behalf of the United States.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, §13, 59 Stat. 517.)

### § 286k. Further promotion of international economic relations

#### (a) Congressional declaration of policy

In the realization that additional measures of international economic cooperation are necessary to facilitate the expansion and balanced

growth of international trade and render most effective the operations of the Fund and the Bank, it is declared to be the policy of the United States to seek to bring about further agreement and cooperation among nations and international bodies, as soon as possible, on ways and means which will best reduce obstacles to and restrictions upon international trade, eliminate unfair trade practices, promote mutually advantageous commercial relations, and otherwise facilitate the expansion and balanced growth of international trade and promote the stability of international economic relations. In considering the policies of the United States in foreign lending and the policies of the Fund and the Bank, particularly in conducting exchange transactions, the Council and the United States representatives on the Fund and the Bank shall give careful consideration to the progress which has been made in achieving such agreement and cooperation.

**(b) Transmittal of information to Congressional committees**

The President shall, upon the request of any committee of the Congress with legislative or oversight jurisdiction over monetary policy or the International Monetary Fund, provide to such committee any appropriate information relevant to that committee's jurisdiction which is furnished to any department or agency of the United States by the International Monetary Fund. The President shall comply with this provision consistent with United States membership obligations in the International Monetary Fund and subject to such limitations as are appropriate to the sensitive nature of the information.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, §14, 59 Stat. 517; Oct. 28, 1977, Pub. L. 95-147, §4(a)(2), 91 Stat. 1228.)

AMENDMENTS

1977—Pub. L. 95-147 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsec. (b).

**§ 286k-1. Securities issued by Bank as exempt securities; reports filed with Security and Exchange Commission**

(a) Any securities issued by International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (including any guaranty by the bank, whether or not limited in scope), and any securities guaranteed by the bank as to both principal and interest, shall be deemed to be exempted securities within the meaning of subsection (a)(2) of section 77c of title 15, and subsection (a)(12) of section 78c of title 15. The bank shall file with the Securities and Exchange Commission such annual and other reports with regard to such securities as the Commission shall determine to be appropriate in view of the special character of the bank and its operations and necessary in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(b) Repealed. Pub. L. 101-240, title V, §541(d)(1), Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2518.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, §15, as added June 29, 1949, ch. 276, §2, 63 Stat. 298; amended Dec. 19, 1989, Pub. L. 101-240, title V, §541(d)(1), 103 Stat. 2518.)

AMENDMENTS

1989—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 101-240 struck out subsec. (b) which related to contents of National Advisory Council reports provided for in section 286b of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 286k-2 of this title.

**§ 286k-2. Suspension of right of International Bank to issue securities under section 286k-1; report of Securities and Exchange Commission**

The Securities and Exchange Commission acting in consultation with the National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Problems is authorized to suspend the provisions of section 286k-1 (a) of this title at any time as to any or all securities issued or guaranteed by the bank during the period of such suspension. The Commission shall include in its annual reports to Congress such information as it shall deem advisable with regard to the operations and effect of this section, and section 286k-1 of this title and section 24 of title 12 and in connection therewith shall include any views submitted for such purpose by any association of dealers registered with the Commission.

(June 29, 1949, ch. 276, §3, 63 Stat. 299.)

CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as part of act July 31, 1945, ch. 339, 59 Stat. 512, known as the Bretton Woods Agreements Act, which comprises this subchapter.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Problems delegated to National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Policies, see section 2(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 11269, Feb. 14, 1966, 31 F.R. 2813, set out as a note under section 286b of this title.

**§ 286l. British loan; authorization to Secretary of Treasury to carry out agreement**

The Secretary of the Treasury, in consultation with the National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Problems, is authorized to carry out the agreement dated December 6, 1945, between the United States and the United Kingdom which was transmitted by the President to the Congress on January 30, 1946, and the action of the Secretary of the Treasury in signing the agreement dated March 6, 1957, amending said agreement is approved.

(July 15, 1946, ch. 577, §1, 60 Stat. 535; Apr. 20, 1957, Pub. L. 85-21, 71 Stat. 17.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Agreement dated December 6, 1945, between the United States and the United Kingdom, referred to in text, is set out as a note below.

CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as a part of act July 31, 1945, ch. 339, 59 Stat. 512, known as the Bretton Woods Agreements Act, which comprises this subchapter.

AMENDMENTS

1957—Pub. L. 85-21 inserted “, and the action of the Secretary of the Treasury in signing the agreement dated March 6, 1957, amending said agreement is approved”.



## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Problems delegated to National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Policies, see section 2(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 11269, Feb. 14, 1966, 31 F.R. 2813, set out as a note under section 286b of this title.

## PURPOSES

In defining the purposes of act July 15, 1946, sections 2867 and 286m of this title, Congress stated that:

"Whereas in the Bretton Woods Agreements Act [this subchapter] the Congress has declared it to be the policy of the United States 'to seek to bring about further agreement and cooperation among nations and international bodies, as soon as possible, on ways and means which will best reduce obstacles to and restrictions upon international trade, eliminate unfair trade practices, promote mutually advantageous commercial relations, and otherwise facilitate the expansion and balanced growth of international trade and promote the stability of international economic relations'; and

"Whereas in further implementation of the purposes of the Bretton Woods Agreements, the Governments of the United States and the United Kingdom have negotiated an agreement dated December 6, 1945, designed to expedite the achievement of stable and orderly exchange arrangements, the prompt elimination of exchange restrictions and discriminations, and other objectives of the above-mentioned policy declared by the Congress."

## FINANCIAL AGREEMENT BETWEEN THE GOVERNMENTS OF THE UNITED STATES AND THE UNITED KINGDOM

It is hereby agreed between the Government of the United States of America and the Government of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland as follows:

1. Effective date of the agreement: The effective date of this Agreement shall be the date on which the Government of the United States notifies the Government of the United Kingdom that the Congress of the United States has made available the funds necessary to extend to the Government of the United Kingdom the line of credit in accordance with the provisions of this Agreement.

2. Line of credit: The Government of the United States will extend to the Government of the United Kingdom a line of credit of \$3,750,000,000 which may be drawn upon at any time between the effective date of this Agreement and December 31, 1951, inclusive.

3. Purpose of the line of credit: The purpose of the line of credit is to facilitate purchases by the United Kingdom of goods and services in the United States, to assist the United Kingdom to meet transitional post-war deficits in its current balance of payments, to help the United Kingdom to maintain adequate reserves of gold and dollars, and to assist the Government of the United Kingdom to assume the obligations of multi-lateral trade, as defined in this and other agreements.

## 4. Amortization and interest:

(i) The amount of the line of credit drawn by December 31, 1951, shall be repaid in 50 annual installments beginning on December 31, 1951, with interest at the rate of 2 percent per annum. Interest for the year 1951 shall be computed on the amount outstanding on December 31, 1951, and for each year thereafter, interest shall be computed on the amount outstanding on January 1 of each such year.

Forty-nine annual installments of principal repayments and interest shall be equal, calculated at the rate of \$31,823,000 for each \$1,000,000,000 of the line of credit drawn by December 31, 1951, and the fiftieth installment shall be at the rate of \$31,840,736.65 for each such \$1,000,000,000. Each installment shall consist of the full amount of the interest due and the remainder of the installment shall be the principal to be repaid in that year. Payments required by this section are subject to the provisions of section 5.

(ii) The Government of the United Kingdom may accelerate repayment of the amount drawn under this line of credit.

## 5. Deferment of annual installments.

(i) In any calendar year after December 31, 1956, in which the Government of the United Kingdom advises the Government of the United States that it finds that a deferment is necessary in view of the present and prospective conditions of international exchange and the level of its gold and foreign exchange reserves, the Government of the United Kingdom may defer the payment of the annual installment for that year of principal repayment and interest specified under Section 4. Not more than seven (7) annual installments may be so deferred. The first of any such deferred installments shall be paid on December 31, 2001, and the others shall be paid annually thereafter, in order.

(ii) In addition, the installment of interest in respect of the year 1956 is hereby deferred, in lieu of any right of waiver hitherto existing. This installment shall be paid on December 31 of the year following that in which the last of all other installments, including installments deferred under the preceding paragraph, is due.

(iii) Deferred installments shall bear interest at the rate of 2 percent per annum, payable annually on December 31 of each year following that in which deferment occurs.

(iv) Payment of deferred installments may be accelerated, in whole or in part, at the option of the Government of the United Kingdom. [Amended Mar. 6, 1957, eff. Apr. 25, 1957.]

## 6. Relation of this line of credit to other obligations.

The Government of the United Kingdom undertakes not to defer an installment under Section 5 of this Agreement in any year, unless it also defers the installment due in that year under the Financial Agreement between the Government of Canada and the Government of the United Kingdom, dated March 6, 1946. [Amended Mar. 6, 1957, eff. Apr. 25, 1957.]

7. Sterling area exchange arrangements: The Government of the United Kingdom will complete arrangements as early as practicable and in any case not later than one year after the effective date of this Agreement, unless in exceptional cases a later date is agreed upon after consultation, under which immediately after the completion of such arrangements the sterling receipts from current transactions of all sterling area countries (apart from any receipts arising out of military expenditure by the Government of the United Kingdom prior to December 31, 1948, to the extent to which they are treated by agreement with the countries concerned on the same basis as the balances accumulated during the war) will be freely available for current transactions in any currency area without discrimination; with the result that any discrimination arising from the so-called sterling area dollar pool will be entirely removed and that each member of the sterling area will have its current sterling and dollar receipts at its free disposition for current transactions anywhere.

## 8. Other exchange arrangements:

(i) Government of the United Kingdom agrees that after the effective date of this Agreement it will not apply exchange controls in such a manner as to restrict (a) payments or transfers in respect of products of the United States permitted to be imported into the United Kingdom or other current transactions between the two countries or (b) the use of sterling balances to the credit of residents of the United States arising out of current transactions. Nothing in this paragraph (i) shall affect the provisions of Article VII of the Articles of Agreement of the International Monetary Fund when those Articles have come into force.

(ii) The Governments of the United States and the United Kingdom agree that not later than one year after the effective date of this Agreement, unless in exceptional cases a later date is agreed upon after consultation, they will impose no restrictions on payments and transfers for current transactions. The obligations of this paragraph (ii) shall not apply:

(a) to balances of third countries and their nationals accumulated before this paragraph (ii) becomes effective; or

(b) to restrictions imposed in conformity with the Articles of Agreement of the International Monetary Fund, provided that the Governments of the United Kingdom and the United States will not continue to invoke the provisions of Article XIV, Section 2 of those Articles after this paragraph (ii) becomes effective, unless in exceptional cases after consultation they agree otherwise; or

(c) to restrictions imposed in connection with measures designed to uncover and dispose of assets of Germany and Japan.

(iii) This section and section 9, which are in anticipation of more comprehensive arrangements by multilateral agreement, shall operate until December 31, 1951.

9. Import arrangements: If either the Government of the United States or the Government of the United Kingdom imposes or maintains quantitative import restrictions, such restrictions shall be administered on a basis which does not discriminate against imports from the other country in respect of any product; provided that this undertaking shall not apply in cases in which (a) its application would have the effect of preventing the country imposing such restrictions from utilizing, for the purchase of needed imports, inconvertible currencies accumulated up to December 31, 1946, or (b) there may be special necessity for the country imposing such restrictions to assist, by measures not involving a substantial departure from the general rule of non-discrimination, a country whose economy has been disrupted by war, or (c) either government imposes quantitative restrictions having equivalent effect to any exchange restrictions which that government is authorized to impose in conformity with Article VII of the Articles of Agreement of the International Monetary Fund. The provisions of this section shall become effective as soon as practicable but not later than December 31, 1946.

10. Accumulated sterling balances:

(i) The Government of the United Kingdom intends to make agreements with the countries concerned, varying according to the circumstances of each case, for an early settlement covering the sterling balances accumulated by sterling area and other countries prior to such settlement (together with any future receipts arising out of military expenditure by the Government of the United Kingdom to the extent to which they are treated on the same basis by agreement with the countries concerned). The settlements with the sterling area countries will be on the basis of dividing these accumulated balances into three categories (a) balances to be released at once and convertible into any currency for current transactions, (b) balances to be similarly released by installments over a period of years beginning in 1951, and (c) balances to be adjusted as a contribution to the settlement of war and postwar indebtedness and in recognition of the benefits which the countries concerned might be expected to gain from such a settlement. The Government of the United Kingdom will make every endeavor to secure the early completion of these arrangements.

(ii) In consideration of the fact that an important purpose of the present line of credit is to promote the development of multilateral trade and facilitate its early resumption on a non-discriminatory basis, the Government of the United Kingdom agrees that any sterling balances released or otherwise available for current payments will, not later than one year after the effective date of this Agreement unless in special cases a later date is agreed upon after consultation, be freely available for current transactions in any currency area without discrimination.

11. Definitions:

For the purposes of this Agreement:

(i) The term "current transactions" shall have the meaning prescribed in Article XIX (i) of the Articles of Agreement of the International Monetary Fund.

(ii) The term "sterling area" means the United Kingdom and the other territories declared by the Defence (Finance) Definition of the Sterling Area (No. 2) Order, 1944, to be included in the sterling area, namely "the following territories excluding Canada and Newfoundland, that is to say—

(a) any Dominion,

(b) any other part of His Majesty's dominions,

(c) any territory in respect of which a mandate on behalf of the League of Nations has been accepted by His Majesty and is being exercised by His Majesty's Government in the United Kingdom or in any Dominion,

(d) any British protectorate or protected State,

(e) Egypt, the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan and Iraq,

(f) Iceland and the Faroe Islands.'

12. Consultation on Agreement: Either government shall be entitled to approach the other for a reconsideration of any of the provisions of this Agreement, if in its opinion the prevailing conditions of international exchange justify such reconsideration, with a view to agreeing upon modifications for presentation to their respective legislatures.

Signed in duplicate at Washington, District of Columbia this 6th day of December, 1945.

For the Government of the United States of America:

FRED M. VINSON,  
*Secretary of the Treasury*  
*of the United States of America.*

For the Government of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland:

HALIFAX.

#### § 286m. Amount of loan; public-debt transaction; disposition of interest payments

For the purpose of carrying out the agreement dated December 6, 1945, between the United States and the United Kingdom, the Secretary of the Treasury is authorized to use as a public-debt transaction not to exceed \$3,750,000,000 of the proceeds of any securities issued after July 15, 1946, under chapter 31 of title 31, and the purposes for which securities may be issued under that chapter are extended to include such purpose. Payments to the United Kingdom under this section and section 286l of this title and pursuant to the agreement and repayments thereof shall be treated as public-debt transactions of the United States. Payments of interest to the United States under the agreement shall be covered into the Treasury as miscellaneous receipts.

(July 15, 1946, ch. 577, § 2, 60 Stat. 535.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Agreement dated December 6, 1945, between the United States and the United Kingdom, referred to in text, is set out as a note under section 286l of this title.

#### CODIFICATION

"Chapter 31 of title 31" and "that chapter" substituted in text for "the Second Liberty Bond Act, as amended" and "that Act", respectively, on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, § 4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

Section was not enacted as a part of act July 31, 1945, ch. 339, 59 Stat. 512, known as the Bretton Woods Agreement Act, which comprises this subchapter.

#### § 286n. Special Drawing Rights

The President is hereby authorized (a) to accept the amendment to the articles of agreement of the International Monetary Fund (hereinafter referred to as the "Fund"), attached to

the April 1968 report by the Executive Directors to the Board of Governors of the Fund, for the purpose of (i) establishing a facility based on Special Drawing Rights in the Fund and (ii) giving effect to certain modifications in the present rules and practices of the Fund, and (b) to participate in the special drawing account established by the amendment.

(Pub. L. 90-349, §2, June 19, 1968, 82 Stat. 188.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as part of act July 31, 1945, ch. 339, 59 Stat. 512, known as the Bretton Woods Agreement Act, which comprises this subchapter.

#### SHORT TITLE

Section 1 of Pub. L. 90-349 provided: "That this Act [enacting this section and sections 286o to 286r of this title and amending sections 412, 415, 417, and 467 of Title 12, Banks and Banking] may be cited as the 'Special Drawing Rights Act'."

### § 286o. Administration as part of the Exchange Stabilization Fund

#### (a) Special Drawing Rights

Special Drawing Rights allocated to the United States pursuant to article XVIII of the Articles of Agreement of the Fund, and Special Drawing Rights otherwise acquired by the United States, shall be credited to the account of, and administered as part of, the Exchange Stabilization Fund established by section 5302 of title 31.

#### (b) Deposit in and withdrawal from Fund

The proceeds resulting from the use of Special Drawing Rights by the United States, and payments of interest to the United States pursuant to article XX, article XXIV, and article XXV of the Articles of Agreement of the Fund, shall be deposited in the Exchange Stabilization Fund. Currency payments by the United States in return for Special Drawing Rights, and payments of charges or assessments pursuant to article XX, article XXIV, and article XXV of the Articles of Agreement of the Fund, shall be made from the resources of the Exchange Stabilization Fund.

(Pub. L. 90-349, §3, June 19, 1968, 82 Stat. 188; Pub. L. 94-564, §5(1), (2), Oct. 19, 1976, 90 Stat. 2661.)

#### CODIFICATION

In subsec. (a), "section 5302 of title 31" substituted for "section 10 of the Gold Reserve Act of 1934, as amended (31 U.S.C. 822a)" on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, §4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

Section was not enacted as part of act July 31, 1945, ch. 339, 59 Stat. 512, known as the Bretton Woods Agreement Act, which comprises this subchapter.

#### AMENDMENTS

1976—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94-564, §5(1), substituted "article XVIII" for "article XXIV".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 94-564, §5(2), substituted "article XX, article XXIV, and XXV" for "article XXVI, article XXX, and article XXXI" wherever appearing.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1976 AMENDMENT

Amendment effective Apr. 1, 1978, see section 9 of Pub. L. 94-564, set out as a note under section 286a of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 31 section 5302.

### § 286p. Issuance, purpose, and redemption of Special Drawing Rights certificates

(a) The Secretary of the Treasury is authorized to issue to the Federal Reserve banks, and such banks shall purchase, Special Drawing Right certificates in such form and in such denominations as he may determine, against any Special Drawing Rights held to the credit of the Exchange Stabilization Fund. Such certificates shall be issued and remain outstanding only for the purpose of financing the acquisition of Special Drawing Rights or for financing exchange stabilization operations. The amount of Special Drawing Right certificates issued and outstanding shall at no time exceed the value of the Special Drawing Rights held against the Special Drawing Right certificates. The proceeds resulting from the issuance of Special Drawing Right certificates shall be covered into the Exchange Stabilization Fund.

(b) Special Drawing Right certificates owned by the Federal Reserve banks shall be redeemed from the resources of the Exchange Stabilization Fund at such times and in such amounts as the Secretary of the Treasury may determine.

(Pub. L. 90-349, §4, June 19, 1968, 82 Stat. 188.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as part of act July 31, 1945, ch. 339, 59 Stat. 512, known as the Bretton Woods Agreement Act, which comprises this subchapter.

### § 286q. Limitation on allocations to the United States

(a) Unless Congress by law authorizes such action, neither the President nor any person or agency shall on behalf of the United States vote to allocate in each basic period Special Drawing Rights under article XVIII, sections 2 and 3, of the Articles of Agreement of the Fund so that allocations to the United States in that period exceed an amount equal to the United States quota in the Fund as authorized under the Bretton Woods Agreements Act [22 U.S.C. 286 et seq.].

(b)(1) Neither the President nor any person or agency shall on behalf of the United States vote to allocate Special Drawing Rights under article XVIII, sections 2 and 3, of the Articles of Agreement of the Fund without consultations by the Secretary of the Treasury at least 90 days prior to any such vote, with the Chairman and ranking minority members of the Committee on Foreign Relations and the Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs of the Senate and the Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of the House of Representatives, and the appropriate subcommittees thereof.

(2) Such consultations shall include an explanation of the consistency of such proposal to allocate with the requirements of the Articles of Agreement of the Fund, in particular the requirement that in all its decisions with respect to allocation of Special Drawing Rights, the Fund shall "seek to meet the long-term global need, as and when it arises, to supplement existing reserve assets in such manner as will pro-

mote the attainment of its purposes and will avoid economic stagnation and deflation as well as excess demand and inflation in the world”.

(Pub. L. 90-349, §6, June 19, 1968, 82 Stat. 189; Pub. L. 91-599, ch. 1, §2, Dec. 30, 1970, 84 Stat. 1657; Pub. L. 94-564, §5(3), Oct. 19, 1976, 90 Stat. 2661; Pub. L. 98-181, title VIII, §803, Nov. 30, 1983, 97 Stat. 1270.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Bretton Woods Agreements Act, referred to in subsec. (a), is act July 31, 1945, ch. 339, 59 Stat. 512, as amended, which is classified principally to this subchapter (§286 et seq.). For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 286 of this title and Tables.

#### CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as part of act July 31, 1945, ch. 339, 59 Stat. 512, known as the Bretton Woods Agreement Act, which comprises this subchapter.

#### AMENDMENTS

1983—Pub. L. 98-181 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsec. (b).

1976—Pub. L. 94-564 substituted “article XVIII” for “article XXIV”.

1970—Pub. L. 91-599 inserted “in each basic period” after “vote to allocate” and substituted “allocations to the United States in that period exceed an amount equal to the United States quota in the Fund as authorized under the Bretton Woods Agreements Act” for “net cumulative allocations to the United States exceed an amount equal to the United States quota in the Fund as heretofore authorized under the Bretton Woods Agreements Act of 1945, as amended”.

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Banking and Financial Services of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1976 AMENDMENT

Amendment effective Apr. 1, 1978, see section 9 of Pub. L. 94-564, set out as a note under section 286a of this title.

### § 286r. United States participation in special drawing account

The provisions of article XXI(b) of the Articles of Agreement of the Fund shall have full force and effect in the United States and its territories and possessions when the United States becomes a participant in the special drawing account.

(Pub. L. 90-349, §7, June 19, 1968, 82 Stat. 189; Pub. L. 94-564, §5(4), Oct. 19, 1976, 90 Stat. 2661.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as part of act July 31, 1945, ch. 339, 59 Stat. 512, known as the Bretton Woods Agreement Act, which comprises this subchapter.

#### AMENDMENTS

1976—Pub. L. 94-564 substituted “article XXI(b)” for “article XXVII(b)”.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1976 AMENDMENT

Amendment effective Apr. 1, 1978, see section 9 of Pub. L. 94-564, set out as a note under section 286a of this title.

### § 286s. Consideration of basic human needs in economic adjustment programs supported by Fund

#### (a) Formulation and design of programs

The President shall instruct the Secretary of the Treasury, the Secretary of State, and other appropriate Federal officials to use all appropriate means to encourage countries, in formulating economic adjustment programs to deal with their balance of payments difficulties, to design those programs so as to safeguard, to the maximum feasible extent, jobs, investment, real per capita income, policies to reduce the gap in wealth between rich and poor, and social programs such as health, housing, and education.

#### (b) Changes in Fund guidelines, policies, and decisions; review prior to approval of standby arrangements; coordination among institutions; coordination between Fund and Bank; periodic analyses

To ensure the effectiveness of economic adjustment programs supported by Fund resources and the reinforcement of those programs by longer term efforts to promote sustained growth and improved living conditions—

(1) United States representatives to the Fund shall recommend and shall work for changes in Fund guidelines, policies, and decisions that would—

(A) permit stand-by arrangements to be extended beyond three years, as necessary to enable Fund members to implement their economic adjustment programs successfully;

(B) provide that in approving any economic adjustment program the Fund shall take into account the effect such program will have on jobs, investment, real per capita income, the gap in wealth between the rich and poor, and social programs such as health, housing, and education, in order to seek to minimize the adverse impact of those adjustment programs on basic human needs; and

(C) provide that letters of intent submitted to the Fund in support of an economic adjustment program reflect that the member country has taken into account the effect such program will have on the factors listed in subparagraph (B);

(2)(A) before voting on the approval of any standby arrangement with respect to any economic adjustment program, the United States Executive Director shall review—

(i) any analysis of factors prepared by the Fund or the member country in accordance with subparagraphs (B) and (C) of paragraph (1), or

(ii) if no such analysis is prepared and available for such review, an analysis which shall be prepared by the United States Governor of the Fund which examines the effect of the program on the factors listed in subparagraph (B) of paragraph (1); and

(B) the United States Executive Director of the Fund shall take into account the analysis reviewed pursuant to subparagraph (A) of this paragraph in voting on approval of that standby arrangement;

(3) United States representatives to the Fund, to the Bank, and to other appropriate

institutions shall work toward improving coordination among these institutions and, in particular, shall work toward formulation of programs in association with economic adjustment programs supported by Fund resources which (A) will, among other things, promote employment, investment, real income per capita, improvements in income distribution, and the objectives of social programs such as health, housing, and education, and (B) will, to the maximum extent feasible and consistent with the borrowing country's need to improve its balance of payments position within a reasonable period, ameliorate any adverse effects of economic adjustment programs on the poor; (4) United States representatives to the Fund and the Bank shall seek amendments to decisions on policies on the use of Fund and Bank resources to provide that, where countries are seeking Extended Fund Facility or upper credit tranche drawings from the Fund and are eligible to receive financing from the Bank, the Fund and Bank will coordinate their financing activities in order—

(A) to take into account the effects of economic adjustment programs on the areas listed in clause (A) of paragraph (3),

(B) to provide, to the extent feasible, Bank project loans designed to safeguard and further basic human needs in countries adopting economic adjustment programs supported by Fund resources, and

(C) to provide, as appropriate, Bank financing for programs of structural adjustment that will facilitate development of a productive economic base and greater attainment of basic human needs objectives over the longer term; and

(5) United States representatives to the Fund and the Bank shall request the Fund and the Bank to provide periodic analyses of the effects of economic adjustment programs supported by Fund or Bank financing on jobs, investment, real income per capita, income distribution, and social programs such as health, housing, and education.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, § 33, as added Oct. 7, 1980, Pub. L. 96-389, § 2(a), 94 Stat. 1551; amended Dec. 19, 1989, Pub. L. 101-240, title V, § 541(d)(1), 103 Stat. 2518.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1989—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 101-240 struck out subsec. (c) which required inclusion of statement detailing progress made in carrying out subsecs. (a) and (b) requirements in Council's annual report to Congress.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 12 of Pub. L. 96-389 provided that: "This Act [enacting this section and sections 286e-1g and 286t to 286x of this title, amending sections 286e-1g, 286e-8, and 286e-9 of this title and section 27 of former Title 31, Money and Finance, and enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 286a and 286t of this title and section 822a of former Title 31] shall take effect on its date of enactment [Oct. 7, 1980], except that funds may not be appropriated under any authorization contained in this Act for any period prior to October 1, 1980."

#### § 286t. Omitted

#### CODIFICATION

Section, act July 31, 1945, ch. 339, § 34, as added Oct. 7, 1980, Pub. L. 96-389, § 4(b), 94 Stat. 1553, directed the

Secretary of the Treasury, in cooperation with the United States Director of the Fund, to study and report to Congress prior to May 15, 1981, with respect to adequacy of Fund resources and method of increasing Fund liquidity, promotion of more direct recycling of oil surpluses, and methods of providing adequate resources for balance-of-payments financing.

#### RECYCLING BALANCE-OF-PAYMENTS SURPLUSES BY OIL EXPORTING COUNTRIES

Section 4(a) of Pub. L. 96-389 provided that: "It is the sense of the Congress that (1) the interests of the United States and those of other member countries require an effective International Monetary Fund equipped with resources adequate to facilitate orderly balance-of-payments adjustments; (2) persistent balance-of-payments surpluses in oil exporting countries have placed, and will continue to place, severe strains on the resources of oil importing countries and on the liquidity of the Fund; (3) these strains can only be relieved if the oil exporting countries assume a greater burden for financing balance-of-payments deficits through direct methods of recycling their surpluses and through proportionally greater contributions to the Fund and to the international lending institutions; and (4) the Fund must explore innovative proposals to encourage more direct recycling of oil surpluses and to increase its own liquidity."

#### § 286u. Dollar-Special Drawing Rights substitution account

It is the sense of the Congress that the Secretary of the Treasury and the United States Executive Director of the Fund shall encourage member countries of the Fund to negotiate a dollar-Special Drawing Rights substitution account in which equitable burden sharing would exist among participants in the account.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, § 35, as added Oct. 7, 1980, Pub. L. 96-389, § 4(b), 94 Stat. 1554; amended Aug. 13, 1981, Pub. L. 97-35, title XIII, § 1371(a)(2), 95 Stat. 746.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1981—Pub. L. 97-35 struck out reporting requirement on progress toward achieving account.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1981 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 97-35 effective Aug. 13, 1981, see section 1372 of Pub. L. 97-35, set out as an Effective Date note under section 290i of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-389 effective Oct. 7, 1980, see section 12 of Pub. L. 96-389, set out as a note under section 286s of this title.

#### § 286v. Membership for Taiwan in Fund

It is the sense of the Congress that it is the policy of the United States that Taiwan (before January 1, 1979, known as the Republic of China) shall be granted appropriate membership in the Fund and that the United States Executive Director of the Fund shall so notify the Fund.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, § 36, as added Oct. 7, 1980, Pub. L. 96-389, § 6, 94 Stat. 1554.)

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 7, 1980, see section 12 of Pub. L. 96-389, set out as a note under section 286s of this title.

**§ 286w. Denial of membership or other status in Fund for Palestine Liberation Organization; United States participation in Fund if membership or other status granted; report by President to Congress**

It is the policy of the United States that the Palestine Liberation Organization should not be given membership in the Fund or be given observer status or any other official status at any meeting sponsored by or associated with the Fund. The United States Executive Director of the Fund shall promptly notify the Fund of such policy.

In the event that the Fund provides either membership, observer status, or any other official status to the Palestine Liberation Organization, such action would result in a serious diminution of United States support. Upon review of such action, the President would be required to report his recommendations to the Congress with regard to any further United States participation in the Fund.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, § 37, as added Oct. 7, 1980, Pub. L. 96-389, § 7, 94 Stat. 1554.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 7, 1980, see section 12 of Pub. L. 96-389, set out as a note under section 286s of this title.

**§ 286x. Assistance to private sector of El Salvador, Nicaragua, and other nations**

It is the sense of the Congress that in providing assistance through loans or other means to any nation, in particular El Salvador and Nicaragua, the Fund and the Bank should encourage programs which assist the private sector to create an environment which will stabilize the economy of the nation; and that the United States representatives to the Fund and the Bank shall promote the use of assistance by the Fund and the Bank to encourage such programs.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, § 38, as added Oct. 7, 1980, Pub. L. 96-389, § 8, 94 Stat. 1554.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 7, 1980, see section 12 of Pub. L. 96-389, set out as a note under section 286s of this title.

**§ 286y. Promoting conditions for exchange rate stability**

(a) In order to help assure that the resources provided under section 286e-1i of this title are used to support pro-growth policies which will help establish the economic conditions necessary for more appropriate financial and exchange rate alignment and stability, it is the sense of Congress that the Secretary of the Treasury shall—

(1) in consultation with the Secretary of State and the United States Trade Representative, initiate discussions with other countries regarding the economic dislocations which result from structural exchange rate imbalances; and

(2) instruct the United States Executive Director of the Fund to work for adoption of policies in the Fund, both within the framework of article IV (of the Articles of Agreement of the Fund) consultations and with re-

spect to the conditions associated with Fund-supported balance of payments adjustments programs, which promote conditions contributing to the stability of exchange rates and avoid the manipulation of exchange rates between major currencies. Among other initiatives, the Secretary of the Treasury shall propose strengthening the article IV consultation procedures of the Fund to attempt to ensure that countries which are artificially maintaining undervalued or overvalued rates of exchange agree to adopt market determined exchange rates.

(b) In determining his vote on extensions of assistance to any Fund borrower, the United States Executive Director of the Fund shall take into account whether such borrower's policies are consistent with the requirements of article IV of the Articles of Agreement of the Fund.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, § 40, as added Nov. 30, 1983, Pub. L. 98-181, title VIII, § 801, 97 Stat. 1267.)

**§ 286z. Collection and exchange of information on monetary and financial problems**

**(a) Sense of Congress**

It is the sense of the Congress that—

(1) the lack of sufficient information currently available to allow members of the Fund to make sound and prudent decisions concerning their public and private sector international borrowing, and to allow lenders to make sound and prudent decisions concerning their international lending, threatens the stability of the international monetary system; and

(2) in recognition of the Fund's duties, as provided particularly by article VIII of the Articles of Agreement of the Fund, to act as a center for the collection and exchange of information on monetary and financial problems, the Fund should adopt necessary and appropriate measures to ensure that more complete and timely financial information will be available.

**(b) Initiation by United States Executive Director of discussions with other Directors; adoption of procedures**

To this end, the Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of the Fund to initiate discussions with other directors of the Fund and with Fund management, and to propose and vote for, the adoption of procedures, within the Fund—

(1) to collect and disseminate information, on a quarterly basis, from and to Fund members, and to such other persons as the Fund deems appropriate, concerning—

(A) the extension of credit by banks or nonbanks to private and public entities, including all government entities, instrumentalities, and central banks of member countries; and

(B) the receipt of such credit by those private and public entities of member countries, where such banks or nonbanks are not principally established within the borders of the member country to which the credits are extended; and

(2) to disseminate publicly information which is developed in the course of the Fund's collection, and to review and comment on efforts which the Fund determines would serve to enhance the informational base upon which international borrowing and lending decisions are taken.

**(c) "Credit" defined**

For purposes of this section, the term "credit" includes—

(1) outstanding loans to private and public entities, including government entities, instrumentalities, and central banks of any member, and

(2) unused lines of credit which have been made available to those private and public entities of any member,

where such loans or lines of credit are repayable in freely convertible currency.

**(d) Providing necessary information**

The President is authorized to use the authority provided under section 286f of this title to require any person (as defined in such section) subject to the jurisdiction of the United States to provide such information as the Fund determines to be necessary in order to carry out the provisions of this section.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, § 42, as added Nov. 30, 1983, Pub. L. 98-181, title VIII, § 802(a)(4), 97 Stat. 1269.)

**§ 286aa. Instructions to United States Executive Director; Communist dictatorships**

The Congress hereby finds that Communist dictatorships result in severe constraints on labor and capital mobility and other highly inefficient labor and capital supply rigidities which contribute to balance of payments deficits in direct contradiction of the goals of the International Monetary Fund. Therefore, the Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of the Fund to actively oppose any facility involving use of Fund credit by any Communist dictatorship, unless the Secretary of the Treasury certifies and documents in writing upon request and so notifies and appears, if requested, before the Foreign Relations and Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs Committees of the Senate and the Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs Committee of the House of Representatives, at least twenty-one days in advance of any vote on such drawing that such drawing—

(1) provides the basis for correcting the balance of payments difficulties and restoring a sustainable balance of payments position;

(2) would reduce the severe constraints on labor and capital mobility or other highly inefficient labor and capital supply rigidities and advances market-oriented forces in that country; and

(3) is in the best economic interest of the majority of the people in that country.

Should the Secretary not meet a request to appear before the aforementioned committees at least twenty-one days in advance of any vote on any facility involving use of Fund credit by any communist dictatorship and certify and docu-

ment in writing that these three conditions have been met, the United States Executive Director shall vote against such program.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, § 43, as added Nov. 30, 1983, Pub. L. 98-181, title VIII, § 804, 97 Stat. 1270; amended Nov. 23, 1993, Pub. L. 103-149, § 4(b)(6), 107 Stat. 1505.)

AMENDMENTS

1993—Pub. L. 103-149 struck out "(a)" before "The Congress" and struck out subsec. (b) which related to use of International Monetary Fund credit by any country which practices apartheid.

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Banking and Financial Services of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

**§ 286bb. Elimination of predatory agricultural export subsidies**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of the Fund to propose and work for the adoption of a policy encouraging Fund members to eliminate all predatory agricultural export subsidies which might result in the reduction of other member countries' exports.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, § 44, as added Nov. 30, 1983, Pub. L. 98-181, title VIII, § 805, 97 Stat. 1271.)

**§ 286cc. Sustaining economic growth**

**(a) Economic adjustment programs**

(1) The President shall instruct the Secretary of the Treasury, the Secretary of State, and other appropriate Federal officials, and shall request the Chairman of the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, to use all appropriate means to encourage countries to formulate economic adjustment programs to deal with their balance of payment difficulties and external debt owed to private banks.

(2) Such economic adjustment programs should be designed to safeguard, to the maximum extent feasible, international economic growth, world trade, employment, and the long-term solvency of banks, and to minimize the likelihood of civil disturbances in countries needing economic adjustment programs.

**(b) Changes in Fund guidelines; limitations on debt service exceptions**

To ensure the effectiveness of economic adjustment programs supported by Fund resources—

(1) the United States Executive Director of the Fund shall recommend and shall work for changes in Fund guidelines, policies, and decisions which would—

(A) convert short-term bank debt which was made at high interest rates into long-term debt at lower rates of interest;

(B) assure that the annual external debt service, which shall include principal, interest, points, fees, and other charges required of the country involved, is a manageable and prudent percentage of the projected annual export earnings of such country; and

(C) provide that in approving any economic adjustment program the Fund shall take into account the number of countries applying to the Fund for economic adjustment programs and the aggregate effects that such programs will have on international economic growth, world trade, exports and employment of other member countries, and the long-term solvency of banks; and

(2) except as provided in subsection (c) of this section, the United States Executive Director of the Fund shall oppose and vote against providing assistance from the Fund for any economic adjustment program for a country in which the annual external debt service exceeds 85 per centum of the annual export earnings of such country, unless the Secretary of the Treasury first determines and provides written documentation to the Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of the House of Representatives that—

(A) the economic adjustment program converts high interest rate, short-term bank debt into long-term debt at significantly narrower interest rate spreads than the average interest rate spreads prevailing on bank debt reschedulings negotiated between August 1982 and August 1983 for countries receiving assistance from the Fund for economic adjustment programs in order to minimize the burdens of adjustment on the debtor nation, provided that such interest rate spreads are consistent with that nation's need to obtain adequate external private financing;

(B) the annual external debt service required of the country involved is a manageable and prudent percentage of the projected annual export earnings of such country; and

(C) the economic adjustment program will not have an adverse impact on international economic growth, world trade, exports, and employment of other member countries, and the long-term solvency of banks.

**(c) Emergencies and extraordinary circumstances**

The provisions of subsection (b)(2) of this section shall not apply in any case in which the Secretary of the Treasury first determines and provides written documentation to the Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of the House of Representatives that—

(1) an emergency exists in a nation that has applied to the Fund for assistance that requires an immediate short-term loan to avoid disrupting orderly financial markets;

(2) a sudden decrease in export earnings in the country applying to the Fund for assistance has increased the ratio of annual external debt service to annual export earnings, to greater than 85 per centum for a period projected to be no more than one year; or

(3) other extraordinary circumstances exist which warrant waiving the provisions of subsection (b)(2) of this section.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, § 45, as added Nov. 30, 1983, Pub. L. 98-181, title VIII, § 806, 97 Stat. 1272.)

**CHANGE OF NAME**

Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Banking and Financial Services of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

**SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS**

This section is referred to in section 262r of this title.

**§ 286dd. Fund bailouts of banks; rescheduling of debt**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of the Fund—

(1) to oppose and vote against any Fund drawing by a member country where, in his judgment, the Fund resources would be drawn principally for the purpose of repaying loans which have been imprudently made by banking institutions to the member country; and

(2) to work to insure that the Fund encourages borrowing countries and banking institutions to negotiate, where appropriate, a rescheduling of debt which is consistent with safe and sound banking practices and the country's ability to pay.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, § 46, as added Nov. 30, 1983, Pub. L. 98-181, title VIII, § 807, 97 Stat. 1273.)

**§ 286ee. International cooperation**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of the Fund to propose that the Fund adopt the following policies with respect to international lending:

(1) In its consultations with a member government on its economic policies pursuant to article IV of the Articles of Agreement of the Fund, the Fund should—

(A) intensify its examination of the trend and volume of external indebtedness of private and public borrowers in the member country and comment, as appropriate, in its report to the Executive Board from the viewpoint of the contribution of such borrowings to the economic stability of the borrower; and

(B) consider to what extent and in what form these comments might be made available to the international banking community and the public.

(2) As part of any Fund-approved stabilization program, the Fund should give consideration to placing limits on public sector external short- and long-term borrowing.

(3) As a part of its annual report, and at such times as it may consider desirable, the Fund should publish its evaluation of the trend and volume of international lending as it affects the economic situation of lenders, borrowers, and the smooth functioning of the international monetary system.



(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, § 47, as added Nov. 30, 1983, Pub. L. 98-181, title VIII, § 809, 97 Stat. 1274.)

**§ 286ff. Fund interest rates**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of the Fund to propose and work for the adoption of Fund policies regarding the rate of remuneration paid on use of member's quota subscriptions and the rate of charges on Fund drawings to bring those rates in line with market rates.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, § 48, as added Nov. 30, 1983, Pub. L. 98-181, title VIII, § 810, 97 Stat. 1274.)

**§ 286gg. Elimination of trade restrictions**

**(a) Promotion of fair trade as financial assistance policy**

(1) The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of each of the multilateral development banks (in this section referred to as the "banks") and of the Fund to initiate a wide consultation with the Managing Director of each of the banks and of the Fund and the other directors of the banks and of the Fund with regard to the development of financial assistance policies which, to the maximum feasible extent—

(A) reduce obstacles to and restrictions upon international trade and investment in goods and services;

(B) eliminate unfair trade and investment practices; and

(C) promote mutually advantageous economic relations.

(2) The Secretary of the Treasury shall work closely in this effort with the Trade Policy Committee.

(3) As part of this effort, the Secretary of the Treasury shall also instruct the United States Executive Director of each of the banks and of the Fund to encourage close cooperation between their staff and the GATT Secretariat.

**(b) Agreement to eliminate unfair trade practices as condition of financial assistance**

(1) The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of each of the banks and of the Fund, prior to the extension to any country of financial assistance by the banks and by the Fund, to work to have the banks and the Fund obtain the agreement of such country to eliminate, in a manner consistent with its balance of payments adjustment program, unfair trade and investment practices with respect to goods and services which the United States Trade Representative, after consultation with the Trade Policy Committee, has determined to have a significant deleterious effect on the international trading system.

(2) Such practices include—

(A) the provision of predatory export subsidies, employed in connection with the exporting of agricultural commodities and products thereof to foreign countries;

(B) the provision of other export subsidies, such as government subsidized below-market interest rate financing for commodities or manufactured goods;

(C) unreasonable import restrictions;

(D) the imposition of trade-related performance requirements on foreign investment; and

(E) practices which are inconsistent with international agreements.

**(c) United States position on requests for loans or drawing under bank and Fund programs; progress made in eliminating unfair trade practices**

(1) In determining the United States position on requests for loans or periodic drawing under bank and Fund programs, the Secretary of the Treasury shall take full account of the progress countries have made in achieving targets for eliminating or phasing out the practices referred to in subsection (b) of this section.

(2) In the event that the United States supports a request for loans or drawing by a country that has not achieved the bank and Fund targets relating to such practices specified in its program, the Secretary of the Treasury shall report to the appropriate committees of the Congress the reasons for the United States position.

**(d) "Multilateral development banks" defined**

For purposes of this section, the term "multilateral development banks" means the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, the Inter-American Development Bank, the African Development Bank, and the Asian Development Bank.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, § 49, as added Nov. 30, 1983, Pub. L. 98-181, title VIII, § 812, 97 Stat. 1275; amended Oct. 18, 1986, Pub. L. 99-500, § 101(f) [title V, § 555], 100 Stat. 1783-213, 1783-240, and Oct. 30, 1986, Pub. L. 99-591, § 101(f) [title V, § 555], 100 Stat. 3341-214, 3341-240.)

CODIFICATION

Pub. L. 99-591 is a corrected version of Pub. L. 99-500.

AMENDMENTS

1986—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 99-500 and Pub. L. 99-591, § 101(f) [title V, § 555(b)], inserted "each of the multilateral development banks (in this section referred to as the 'banks') and of", "each of the banks and of", and "banks and of the", and substituted "development of financial" for "development of Fund financial".

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 99-500 and Pub. L. 99-591, § 101(f) [title V, § 555(c)], inserted "each of the banks and of" and substituted "their staff" for "Fund staff".

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 99-500 and Pub. L. 99-591, § 101(f) [title V, § 555(d)], inserted "each of the banks and of", "the banks and by", and "the banks and".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 99-500 and Pub. L. 99-591, § 101(f) [title V, § 555(e), (f)], inserted "bank and" and "loans or" in pars. (1) and (2).

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 99-500 and Pub. L. 99-591, § 101(f) [title V, § 555(a)], added subsec. (d).

**§ 286hh. Policy based lending for debt reduction**

**(a) Criteria**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development to initiate discussions with other directors of such bank and to advocate and support the facilitation of voluntary market-based programs for the reduction of sovereign debt and the promotion of sustainable economic development, which, if implemented, would—

(1) not require any organization or government to participate in such a program;

(2) result in debt reduction for each participating country tailored to the particular situation of each country;

(3) provide assistance to participating countries conditioned on the implementation of economic reforms, and the preservation of economic reforms previously implemented, by the country that are consistent with the principles of sustainable development;

(4) encourage participating countries to make economic adjustments steadily and over a period of time in order to achieve policy reform;

(5) use debt reduction techniques that would not compensate commercial banks for the reduction in the value of such debt, but would serve as a catalyst for new lending;

(6) involve such bank in lending for purposes of debt reduction and conversion only where such involvement would not lower the credit rating of such bank;

(7) not require public sector funding beyond that provided through any capital increase for such bank, and any replenishment for the International Development Association, which is agreed to by the member countries of such institutions; and

(8) accomplish debt reduction, not as an end, but as a means to greater growth and investment in, and the restoration of voluntary private lending to, participating countries for environmentally and economically sustainable development.

**(b) Policy based lending for debt reduction and sustainable growth**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development to initiate discussions with other directors of such bank and to propose that policy based loans be made by such bank for, among other reasons, facilitating a reduction in the debt service burden of any country which is participating in a voluntary market-based program for debt reduction described in subsection (c) of this section.

**(c) Voluntary market-based program for debt reduction and sustainable growth**

In connection with the discussions initiated pursuant to subsection (b) of this section, the Secretary shall instruct the United States Executive Director of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development to propose that a country be considered to be participating in a voluntary market-based program of debt reduction for purposes of subsection (b) of this section if the creditors of such country agree to significantly reduce the debt service of such country through forgiveness of a percentage of the interest owed by such country on any sovereign debt or through any other means.

**(d) Reports**

Not later than March 1, 1989, March 1, 1991, and March 1, 1993, respectively, the Secretary of the Treasury shall submit to the Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate 3 reports each of which—

(1) describes the long term strategy and lending programs of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development for reducing and managing the debt burden of the countries designated as “Highly Indebted Countries” in the 1987–1988 World Debt Tables published by such bank, and summarize the long term strategy and lending programs of such bank for other seriously indebted countries;

(2) contains an explanation of the measures taken by such bank to facilitate the reduction of the debt burden of the countries designated as “Highly Indebted Countries” in the 1987–1988 World Debt tables<sup>1</sup> published by such bank;

(3) describes the extent (if any) to which such bank has implemented the measures described in subsections (b) and (c) of this section; and

(4) describes the success each of such countries has had in managing and reducing their debt burdens and achieving sustainable and equitable economic growth as measured by criteria including the ratio of debt service to exports, the ratio of debt to gross national product, net resource flows, and per capita income.

**(e) Review by House Banking Committee**

On receipt of each report required to be submitted pursuant to subsection (d) of this section, and after consultation with the Secretary of the Treasury, the Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of the House of Representatives shall forward such report to the Committee on Appropriations of the House of Representatives with an assessment by the Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs describing the effect on the international debt situation of funding the subscription of the United States to the shares of capital stock of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development due for payment by the United States in the then next fiscal year.

(Pub. L. 100–461, title V, §555, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268–36.)

CODIFICATION

Section is based on section 3 of H.R. 4645, One Hundredth Congress, as reported Sept. 28, 1988, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100–461.

Section was not enacted as part of act July 31, 1945, ch. 339, 59 Stat. 512, known as the Bretton Woods Agreements Act, which comprises this subchapter.

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Banking and Financial Services of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104–14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 286ii of this title.

**§ 286ii. Limitations on Bank policy based lending; actions required to be taken to oppose excessive policy based lending by Bank**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall—

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be capitalized.

(1) take all necessary steps to encourage the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development to limit—

(A) the aggregate value of the policy based loans made by such bank (other than for the purpose described in section 286hh(b) of this title) in any fiscal year of such bank beginning after June 30, 1989, to 25 percent of the aggregate value of all loans made by such bank in such fiscal year; and

(B) the aggregate value of the policy based loans made by such bank to the government of a particular country (other than for the purpose described in section 286hh(b) of this title) in any fiscal year of such bank beginning after June 30, 1989, and occurring during any period of 3 consecutive fiscal years of such bank (determined after disregarding any such fiscal year in which such bank did not make a policy based loan to such government), to 50 percent of the aggregate value of all loans made by such bank to such government during such 3-year period;

(2) instruct the United States Executive Director of such bank to propose and actively seek the adoption by the board of Executive Directors of such bank of a resolution establishing as official bank operating policy for fiscal years 1990 through 1995 of such bank the limits specified in paragraph (1); and

(3) until the resolution described in paragraph (2) is adopted, undertake, in consultation with the Secretary of State, discussions with other member country governments to secure the consent and cooperation of such governments with respect to the adoption of the limits specified in paragraph (1).

(Pub. L. 100-461, title V, § 555, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-36.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section is based on section 4 of H.R. 4645, One Hundredth Congress, as reported Sept. 28, 1988, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-461.

Section was not enacted as part of act July 31, 1945, ch. 339, 59 Stat. 512, known as the Bretton Woods Agreements Act, which comprises this subchapter.

#### § 286jj. Partial guarantees in connection with debt reduction for borrower countries

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development to initiate discussions with other directors of such bank and to propose that such bank establish criteria under which such bank would provide partial guarantees on debt service payments by borrower countries to private creditors when such guarantees would serve a catalytic role in facilitating final agreement on financing packages which involve significant debt reduction.

(Pub. L. 100-461, title V, § 555, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-36.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section is based on section 5 of H.R. 4645, One Hundredth Congress, as reported Sept. 28, 1988, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-461.

Section was not enacted as part of act July 31, 1945, ch. 339, 59 Stat. 512, known as the Bretton Woods Agreements Act, which comprises this subchapter.

#### § 286kk. Discussions to enhance capacity of Fund to alleviate potentially adverse impacts of Fund programs on poor and environment

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of the Fund to seek policy changes by the Fund, through formal initiatives and through bilateral discussions, which will result in—

(1) the initiation of a systematic review of policy prescriptions implemented by the Fund, for the purpose of determining whether the Fund's objectives were met and the social and environmental impacts of such policy prescriptions; and

(2) the establishment of procedures which ensure the inclusion, in future economic reform programs approved by the Fund, of policy options which eliminate or reduce the potential adverse impact on the well-being of the poor or the environment resulting from such programs.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, § 55, as added Dec. 19, 1989, Pub. L. 101-240, title III, § 302, 103 Stat. 2500.)

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 262r of this title.

#### § 286ll. Fund policy changes

##### (a) Policy changes within IMF

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of the Fund to promote regularly and vigorously in program discussions and quota increase negotiations the following proposals:

##### (1) Poverty alleviation, reduction of barriers to economic and social progress, and progress toward environmentally sound policies and programs

(A)(i) Considerations of poverty alleviation and the reduction of barriers to economic and social progress should be incorporated into all Fund programs and all consultations under article IV of the Articles of Agreement of the Fund.

(ii) Preparation of Policy Framework Papers should be extended to all nations which have Fund programs and active Bank or International Development Association lending programs, and existence of a Policy Framework Paper should be a precondition for new lending to such nations by the Fund.

(iii) All Policy Framework Papers should articulate the principal poverty, economic, and social measures that the borrowing nation needs to address, and this portion of the Policy Framework Paper (or a summary thereof that includes specific measures and timing) should be made available when the Policy Framework Paper is submitted to the Executive Directors of the Bank and of the Fund for consideration.

(iv) In considering whether to allocate resources of the Fund to a borrower, the Fund should take into consideration the nature of the program and commitment of the borrower to address the issues referred to in clause (iii).

(v) The Fund should establish procedures to enable the Fund to cooperate with the Bank in evaluating the effectiveness of the measures

referred to in clause (iii), at the levels of policy, project design, monitoring, and reporting, in the international financial institutions and in the borrowing nations.

(B)(i) The Fund should be encouraged to make further progress toward environmentally sound policies and programs.

(ii) The Fund should incorporate environmental considerations into all Fund programs, including consultations under article IV of the Articles of Agreement of the Fund.

(iii) The Fund should be encouraged to support the efforts of nations to implement systems of natural resource accounting in their national income accounts.

(iv) The Fund should be encouraged to assist and cooperate fully with the statistical research being undertaken by the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development and by the United Nations in order to facilitate development and adoption of a generally applicable system for taking account of the depletion or degradation of natural resources in national income accounts.

(v) The Fund should be encouraged to consider and implement, as appropriate, revisions in its national income reporting systems consistent with such new systems as are of general applicability.

## **(2) Policy audits**

(A) The Fund should conduct periodic audits to review systematically the policy prescriptions recommended and required by the Fund in the areas of poverty and the environment.

(B) The purposes of such audits would be—

(i) to determine whether the Fund's objectives were met; and

(ii) to evaluate the social and environmental impacts of the implementation of the policy prescriptions.

(C) Such audits would have access to all ongoing programs and activities of the Fund and the ability to review the effects of Fund-supported programs, on a country-by-country basis, with respect to poverty, economic development, and environment.

(D) Such audits should be made public as appropriate with due respect to confidentiality.

## **(3) Ensuring policy options that increase the productive participation of the poor**

The Fund should establish procedures that ensure the focus of future economic reform programs approved by the Fund on policy options that increase the productive participation of the poor in the economy.

## **(4) Public access to information**

(A) The Fund should establish procedures for public access to information.

(B) Such procedures shall seek to ensure access of the public to information while paying due regard to appropriate confidentiality.

(C) Policy Framework Papers and the supporting documents prepared by the Fund's mission to a country are examples of documents that should be made public at an appropriate time and in appropriate ways.

## **(b) Progress report**

Each annual report of the National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Policies shall describe the following:

(1) The actions that the United States Executive Director and other officials have taken to convince the Fund to adopt the proposals set forth in subsection (a) of this section through formal initiatives before the Board and management of the Fund, through bilateral discussions with other member nations, and through any further quota increase negotiations.

(2) The status of the progress being made by the Fund in implementing the proposals set forth in subsection (a) of this section.

## **(c) Study**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director to the Fund to urge the Fund—

(1) to explore ways to increase the involvement and participation of important ministries, national development experts, environmental experts, free-market experts, and other legitimate experts and representatives from the loan-recipient country in the development of Fund programs; and

(2) to report on the status of Fund efforts in this regard.

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, § 59, as added Oct. 24, 1992, Pub. L. 102-511, title X, § 1002, 106 Stat. 3357.)

## **§ 286mm. Measures to reduce military spending by developing nations**

### **(a) Development by Fund of means to measure military spending**

#### **(1) Position of the United States**

The United States Executive Director of the Fund shall use the voice and vote of the United States to urge the Fund, in consultation with the Bank, to continue to develop an economic methodology to measure the level of military spending by each developing country.

#### **(2) Progress report to the Congress**

No later than 1 year after October 24, 1992, the Secretary of the Treasury shall submit to the Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate a report on the status of the development by the Fund of a workable economic methodology to measure military spending by developing countries.

### **(b) Annual reports by Fund on levels of military spending**

The United States Executive Director of the Fund shall use the voice and vote of the United States to urge the Fund, beginning with 1994, to provide the Executive Board of the Fund with annual reports stating the estimate by the Fund of the level of military spending by each developing country in the immediately preceding calendar year (or, with respect to developing countries whose fiscal years are not calendar years, in the most recently completed fiscal year of the developing country), not later than the date of the annual fall Interim and Development Committee meetings.

**(c) Analysis and assessment of military spending to be included in article IV consultations by Fund**

The United States Executive Director of the Fund shall use the voice and vote of the United States to urge the Fund, beginning no later than the date of the first report provided as described in subsection (b) of this section, to include in every article IV consultation with a developing country an analysis of the level of military spending by the developing country in the immediately preceding calendar year (or, with respect to developing countries whose fiscal years are not calendar years, in the most recently completed fiscal year of the developing country).

(July 31, 1945, ch. 339, § 60, as added Oct. 24, 1992, Pub. L. 102-511, title X, § 1003, 106 Stat. 3359.)

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Banking and Financial Services of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

SUBCHAPTER XVI—UNITED NATIONS ORGANIZATION

SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in section 289b of this title.

**§ 287. Representation in Organization**

**(a) Appointment of representative; rank, status, and tenure; duties**

The President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint a representative of the United States to the United Nations who shall have the rank and status of Ambassador Extraordinary and Plenipotentiary and shall hold office at the pleasure of the President. Such representative shall represent the United States in the Security Council of the United Nations and may serve ex officio as representative of the United States in any organ, commission, or other body of the United Nations other than specialized agencies of the United Nations, and shall perform such other functions in connection with the participation of the United States in the United Nations as the President may, from time to time, direct.

**(b) Appointment of additional representatives; rank, status, and tenure; duties; reappointment unnecessary**

The President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint additional persons with appropriate titles, rank, and status to represent the United States in the principal organs of the United Nations and in such organs, commissions, or other bodies as may be created by the United Nations with respect to nuclear energy or disarmament (control and limitation of armament). Such persons shall serve at the pleasure of the President and subject to the direction of the Representative of the United States to the United Nations. They shall, at the direction of the Representative of the United States to the United Nations, represent the

United States in any organ, commission, or other body of the United Nations, including the Security Council, the Economic and Social Council, and the Trusteeship Council, and perform such other functions as the Representative of the United States is authorized to perform in connection with the participation of the United States in the United Nations. Any Deputy Representative or any other officer holding office at the time the provisions of this Act, as amended, become effective shall not be required to be reappointed by reason of the enactment of this Act, as amended.

**(c) Appointment of special and alternate representatives; number; senior representative; duties**

The President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall designate from time to time to attend a specified session or specified sessions of the General Assembly of the United Nations not to exceed five representatives of the United States and such number of alternates as he may determine consistent with the rules of procedure of the General Assembly. One of the representatives shall be designated as the senior representative.

**(d) Additional appointees; conditions governing certain appointments; designation of certain State Department officers to sit on Security Council**

The President may also appoint from time to time such other persons as he may deem necessary to represent the United States in organs and agencies of the United Nations. The President may, without the advice and consent of the Senate, designate any officer of the United States to act without additional compensation as the representative of the United States in either the Economic and Social Council or the Trusteeship Council (1) at any specified session thereof where the position is vacant or in the absence or disability of the regular representative or (2) in connection with a specified subject matter at any specified session of either such Council in lieu of the regular representative. The President may designate any officer of the Department of State, whose appointment is subject to confirmation by the Senate, to act, without additional compensation, for temporary periods as the representative of the United States in the Security Council of the United Nations in the absence or disability of the representatives provided for under subsections (a) and (b) of this section or in lieu of such representatives in connection with a specified subject matter.

**(e) Appointment of representative to European office of United Nations; rank, status, and tenure; duties**

The President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint a representative of the United States to the European office of the United Nations, with appropriate rank and status who shall serve at the pleasure of the President and subject to the direction of the Secretary of State. Such person shall, at the direction of the Secretary of State, represent the United States at the European office of the United Nations, and perform such other functions there in connection with the participation

of the United States in international organizations as the Secretary of State may, from time to time, direct.

**(f) Representation by President or Secretary of State**

Nothing contained in this section shall preclude the President or the Secretary of State, at the direction of the President, from representing the United States at any meeting or session of any organ or agency of the United Nations.

**(g) Compensation**

All persons appointed in pursuance of authority contained in this section shall receive compensation at rates determined by the President upon the basis of duties to be performed but not in excess of rates authorized by sections 3961, 3962, and 3963 of this title for chiefs of mission, members of the Senior Foreign Service, and Foreign Service officers occupying positions of equivalent importance, except that no member of the Senate or House of Representatives or officer of the United States who is designated under subsections (c) and (d) of this section as a representative of the United States or as an alternate to attend any specified session or specified sessions of the General Assembly shall be entitled to receive such compensation.

**(h) Appointment of representative to Vienna office of United Nations; rank, status, and tenure; duties**

The President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint a representative of the United States to the Vienna office of the United Nations with appropriate rank and status, who shall serve at the pleasure of the President and subject to the direction of the Secretary of State. Such individual shall, at the direction of the Secretary of State, represent the United States at the Vienna office of the United Nations and perform such other functions there in connection with the participation of the United States in international organizations as the Secretary of State from time to time may direct.

(Dec. 20, 1945, ch. 583, § 2, 59 Stat. 619; Oct. 10, 1949, ch. 660, §§ 1, 2, 63 Stat. 734, 735; Sept. 28, 1965, Pub. L. 89-206, §§ 1, 2, 79 Stat. 841, 842; Oct. 17, 1980, Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2206(a)(2)(A), 94 Stat. 2160; Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title I, § 118, 96 Stat. 279.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, as amended, referred to in subsec. (b), is Pub. L. 89-206, Sept. 28, 1965, 79 Stat. 841, which amended this section. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1982—Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 97-241 added subsec. (h).

1980—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 96-465 substituted “sections 3961, 3962, and 3963 of this title for chiefs of mission, members of the Senior Foreign Service,” for “sections 866 and 867 of this title for chiefs of mission”.

1965—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 89-206, § 1(a), struck out provisions which related to the appointment, rank and status, tenure and duties of a deputy representative of the United States to the United Nations.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 89-206, § 1(a), substituted provisions that the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint additional persons

with appropriate titles, rank, and status to represent the United States in the principal organs of the United Nations and in such organs, commissions, or other bodies as may be created by the United Nations with respect to nuclear energy or disarmament, that they shall serve at the pleasure of the President and subject to the direction of the Representative of the United States to the United Nations, that they shall, at the direction of the Representative of the United States to the United Nations, represent the United States in any organ, commission, or other body of the United Nations, including the Security Council, the Economic and Social Council, and the Trusteeship Council, and perform such other functions as the Representative of the United States is authorized to perform in connection with the participation of the United States in the United Nations, and that any Deputy Representative or any other officer holding office at the time the provisions of this Act, as amended, become effective shall not be required to be reappointed by reason of the enactment of this Act, as amended, for provisions which authorized the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to appoint an additional deputy representative of the United States to the Security Council who shall hold office at the pleasure of the President, and which required the deputy representative to represent the United States in the Security Council of the United Nations in the event of the absence or disability of both the representative and the deputy representative of the United States to the United Nations.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 89-206, § 1(b), struck out provisions which required the representative of the United States in the Economic and Social Council and in the Trusteeship Council of the United Nations to be appointed only by and with the advice and consent of the Senate and which required the advice and consent of the Senate for the appointment by the President of the representative of the United States in any commission that may be formed by the United Nations with respect to atomic energy or in any other commission of the United Nations to which the United States is entitled to appoint a representative.

Subsecs. (e) to (g). Pub. L. 89-206, § 2, added subsec. (e) and redesignated former subsecs. (e) and (f) as (f) and (g), respectively.

1949—Subsec. (a). Act Oct. 10, 1949, § 1, created new post of deputy representative, and allowed the principal and deputy representatives to serve ex officio on any organ, commission, or body, other than specialized agencies, of the United Nations.

Subsec. (b). Act Oct. 10, 1949, § 1, amended subsec. (b) generally, to provide for appointment of an additional deputy representative.

Subsec. (c). Act Oct. 10, 1949, § 1, amended subsec. (c) generally, to provide for appointment of special and alternate representatives.

Subsec. (d). Act Oct. 10, 1949, § 1, allowed the designation by the President of any State Department officer, whose appointment is subject to confirmation by the Senate, to sit on the Security Council in certain instances.

Subsec. (f). Act Oct. 10, 1949, § 2, added subsec. (f).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-465 effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

SHORT TITLE

Section 1 of act Dec. 20, 1945, provided that: “This Act [enacting this subchapter] may be cited as the ‘United Nations Participation Act of 1945.’”

UNITED STATES COMMISSION ON IMPROVING THE EFFECTIVENESS OF THE UNITED NATIONS

Pub. L. 100-204, title VII, part B, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1391, as amended by Pub. L. 101-246, title IV, § 409,

Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 68, provided for establishment, membership, etc., of United States Commission on Improving the Effectiveness of the United Nations to examine the United Nations system as a whole and identify and evaluate its strengths and weaknesses and to transmit to President and Congress, not later than 18 months after the date on which all members of the Commission have been appointed, a report containing a detailed statement of the findings, conclusions, and recommendations of the Commission, which report was dated Sept. 10, 1993, and the Commission terminated Sept. 30, 1993.

#### SOVIET MISSION AT THE UNITED NATIONS

Pub. L. 99-569, title VII, § 702, Oct. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 3204, related to policy of Congress of limiting number of Soviet nationals serving as members of Soviet mission at the United Nations to number not to substantially exceed number of United States nationals serving as members of United States mission, required Secretary of State to report numbers of Soviet nationals so serving, and provided that spouses and dependents were not to be included in such numbers, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103-199, title V, § 501(d), Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2325.

#### UNITED STATES PARTICIPATION IN THE UNITED NATIONS IF ISRAEL IS ILLEGALLY EXPELLED

Pub. L. 98-164, title I, § 115, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1021, as amended by Pub. L. 99-93, title I, § 142, Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 424; Pub. L. 100-204, title VII, § 704, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1389, provided that:

“(a) The Congress finds that—

“(1) the United Nations was founded on the principle of universality;

“(2) the United Nations Charter stipulates that members may be suspended by the General Assembly only ‘upon the recommendation of the Security Council’; and

“(3) any move by the General Assembly that would illegally deny Israel its credentials in the Assembly would be a direct violation of these provisions of the Charter.

“(b) If Israel is illegally expelled, suspended, denied its credentials, or in any other manner denied its right to participate in any principal or subsidiary organ or in any specialized, technical, or other agency of the United Nations, the United States shall suspend its participation in any such organ or agency until the illegal action is reversed. The United States shall reduce its annual assessed contribution to the United Nations or such specialized agency by 8.34 percent for each month in which United States participation is suspended pursuant to this section. Nothing in this section may be construed to diminish or to affect United States participation in the United Nations Security Council or the Safeguards Program of the International Atomic Energy Agency.”

#### INTERNATIONAL YEAR OF THE CHILD

Pub. L. 95-561, title XV, §§ 1501-1507, Nov. 1, 1978, 92 Stat. 2373-2375, described the purpose of the International Year of the Child (designated as 1979 by the United Nations General Assembly) as promotion of lasting improvements in the well-being of children, provided for the establishment of a National Commission on the International Year of the Child, and for the Commission's membership, functions, coordination and administration, and waiver of certain provisions of law relating to advertising, competitive bidding, and printing, authorized appropriations, and terminated the life of the Commission thirty days after the submission of its final report, which was to be submitted not later than Mar. 31, 1980, but which life was in no case to be extended beyond Apr. 30, 1980.

Pub. L. 97-35, title V, § 511(b)(1), Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 443, provided that: “No funds are authorized to be appropriated to carry out part A of title XV of the Education Amendments of 1978 [sections 1501 to 1507 of Pub. L. 95-561, see note above] for fiscal year 1982, 1983, or 1984.”

#### UNITED NATIONS ENVIRONMENT PROGRAM PARTICIPATION

Pub. L. 93-188, Dec. 15, 1973, 87 Stat. 713, provided:

“[SEC. 1. Short Title] That this Act [enacting this note] may be cited as the ‘United Nations Environment Program Participation Act of 1973’.

“SEC. 2. [Congressional Declaration of Policy] It is the policy of the United States to participate in coordinated international efforts to solve environmental problems of global and international concern, and in order to assist the implementation of this policy, to contribute funds to the United Nations Environmental Fund for the support of international measures to protect and improve the environment.

“SEC. 3. [Authorization of Appropriations] There is authorized to be appropriated \$40,000,000 for contributions to the United Nations Environment Fund, which amount is authorized to remain available until expended, and which may be used upon such terms and conditions as the President may specify: *Provided*, That not more than \$10,000,000 may be appropriated for use in fiscal year 1974.”

#### UNITED STATES GRANT FOR EXPANSION AND IMPROVEMENT OF UNITED NATIONS HEADQUARTERS

Pub. L. 91-622, Dec. 31, 1970, 84 Stat. 1867, provided: “That there is hereby authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary of State out of any money in the Treasury not otherwise appropriated, a sum not to exceed \$20,000,000, to remain available until expended, for a grant to be made at the discretion of the Secretary of State, to the United Nations to defray a portion of the cost of the expansion and improvement of its headquarters in the city of New York on such terms and conditions as the Secretary of State may determine. Such grant shall not be considered a contribution to the United Nations for purpose of any other applicable law limiting contributions.”

#### UNITED STATES LOAN FOR CONSTRUCTION OF PERMANENT HEADQUARTERS IN NEW YORK CITY

Act Aug. 11, 1948, ch. 834, 62 Stat. 1286, authorized the President to loan to the United Nations \$65,000,000 to construct a permanent headquarters in New York City, provided for the repayment of the loan without interest in installments beginning July 1, 1951, and continuing until July 1, 1982, and authorized the Reconstruction Finance Corporation to advance to the United Nations up to \$25,000,000 until such time as the \$65,000,000 is appropriated by Congress.

#### ESTABLISHMENT OF PERMANENT HEADQUARTERS IN NEW YORK; AGREEMENT BETWEEN UNITED NATIONS AND UNITED STATES

Joint Res. Aug. 4, 1947, ch. 482, 61 Stat. 756, provided that:

“Whereas the Charter of the United Nations was signed on behalf of the United States on June 26, 1945, and was ratified on August 8, 1945, by the President of the United States, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, and the instrument of ratification of the said Charter was deposited on August 8, 1945; and

“Whereas the said Charter of the United Nations came into force with respect to the United States on October 24, 1945; and

“Whereas article 104 of the Charter provides that ‘The Organization shall enjoy in the territory of each of its Members such legal capacity as may be necessary for the exercise of its functions and the fulfillment of its purposes’; and

“Whereas article 105 of the Charter provides that:

“1. The Organization shall enjoy in the territory of each of its Members such privileges and immunities as are necessary for the fulfillment of its purposes.

“2. Representatives of the Members of the United Nations and officials of the Organization shall similarly enjoy such privileges and immunities as are necessary for the independent exercise of their functions in connection with the Organization.

"3. The General Assembly may make recommendations with a view to determining the details of the application of paragraphs 1 and 2 of this article or may propose conventions to the Members of the United Nations for this purpose; and

"Whereas article 28 and other articles of the Charter of the United Nations contemplate the establishment of a seat for the permanent headquarters of the Organization; and

"Whereas the interim arrangements concluded on June 26, 1945, by the governments represented at the United Nations Conference on International Organization instructed the Preparatory Commission established in pursuance of the arrangements to 'make studies and prepare recommendations concerning the location of the permanent headquarters of the Organization'; and

"Whereas during the labors of the said Preparatory Commission, the Congress of the United States in H. Con. Res. 75, passed unanimously by the House of Representatives December 10, 1945, and agreed to unanimously by the Senate December 11, 1945, invited the United Nations 'to locate the seat of the United Nations Organization within the United States'; and

"Whereas the General Assembly on December 14, 1946, resolved 'that the permanent headquarters of the United Nations shall be established in New York City in the area bounded by First Avenue, East Forty-eighth Street, the East River, and East Forty-second Street'; and

"Whereas the General Assembly resolved on December 14, 1946, 'That the Secretary-General be authorized to negotiate and conclude with the appropriate authorities of the United States of America an agreement concerning the arrangements required as a result of the establishment of the permanent headquarters of the United Nations in the city of New York' and to be guided in these negotiations by the provisions of a preliminary draft agreement which had been negotiated by the Secretary-General and the Secretary of State of the United States; and

"Whereas the General Assembly resolved on December 14, 1946, that pending the coming into force of the agreement referred to above 'the Secretary-General be authorized to negotiate and conclude arrangements with the appropriate authorities of the United States of America to determine on a provisional basis the privileges, immunities, and facilities needed in connection with the temporary headquarters of the United Nations.'; and

"Whereas the Secretary of State of the United States, after consultation with the appropriate authorities of the State and city of New York, signed at Lake Success, New York, on June 26, 1947, on behalf of the United States an agreement with the United Nations regarding the headquarters of the United Nations, which agreement is incorporated herein; and

"Whereas the aforesaid agreement provides that it shall be brought into effect by an exchange of notes between the United States and the Secretary-General of the United Nations: Therefore be it

"Resolved by the Senate and House of Representatives of the United States of America in Congress assembled, That the President is hereby authorized to bring into effect on the part of the United States the agreement between the United States of America and the United Nations regarding the headquarters of the United Nations, signed at Lake Success, New York, on June 26, 1947 (hereinafter referred to as the 'agreement'), with such changes therein not contrary to the general tenor thereof and not imposing any additional obligations on the United States as the President may deem necessary and appropriate, and at his discretion, after consultation with the appropriate State and local authorities, to enter into such supplemental agreements with the United Nations as may be necessary to fulfill the purposes of the said agreement: *Provided*, That any supplemental agreement entered into pursuant to section 5 of

the agreement incorporated herein shall be submitted to the Congress for approval. The agreement follows:

"AGREEMENT BETWEEN THE UNITED NATIONS AND THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA REGARDING THE HEADQUARTERS OF THE UNITED NATIONS

THE UNITED NATIONS AND THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA:

Desiring to conclude an agreement for the purpose of carrying out the Resolution adopted by the General Assembly on 14 December 1946 to establish the seat of the United Nations in The City of New York and to regulate questions arising as a result thereof;

Have appointed as their representatives for this purpose:

The United Nations:  
TRYGVE LIE,  
and *Secretary-General*,

The United States of America:  
GEORGE C. MARSHALL,  
*Secretary of State*,

Who have agreed as follows:

"ARTICLE I—DEFINITIONS

SECTION 1

In this agreement:

(a) The expression 'headquarters district' means (1) the area defined as such in Annex 1, (2) any other lands or buildings which from time to time may be included therein by supplemental agreement with the appropriate American authorities;

(b) the expression 'appropriate American authorities' means such federal, state, or local authorities in the United States as may be appropriate in the context and in accordance with the laws and customs of the United States, including the laws and customs of the state and local government involved;

(c) the expression 'General Convention' means the Convention on the Privileges and Immunities of the United Nations approved by the General Assembly of the United Nations 13 February 1946, as acceded to by the United States;

(d) the expression 'United Nations' means the international organization established by the Charter of the United Nations, hereinafter referred to as the 'Charter';

(e) the expression 'Secretary-General' means the Secretary-General of the United Nations.

"ARTICLE II—THE HEADQUARTERS DISTRICT

SECTION 2

The seat of the United Nations shall be the headquarters district.

SECTION 3

The appropriate American authorities shall take whatever action may be necessary to assure that the United Nations shall not be dispossessed of its property in the headquarters district, except as provided in Section 22 in the event that the United Nations ceases to use the same; provided that the United Nations shall reimburse the appropriate American authorities for any costs incurred, after consultation with the United Nations, in liquidating by eminent domain proceedings or otherwise any adverse claims.

SECTION 4

(a) The United Nations may establish and operate in the headquarters district:

(1) its own short-wave sending and receiving radio broadcasting facilities (including emergency link equipment) which may be used on the same frequencies (within the tolerances prescribed for the broadcasting service by applicable United States regulations) for radiotelegraph, radioteletype, radiotelephone, radiotelephoto, and similar services;



(2) one point-to-point circuit between the headquarters district and the office of the United Nations in Geneva (using single sideband equipment) to be used exclusively for the exchange of broadcasting programs and interoffice communications;

(3) low power micro-wave, low or medium frequency facilities for communication within headquarters buildings only, or such other buildings as may temporarily be used by the United Nations;

(4) facilities for point-to-point communication to the same extent and subject to the same conditions as permitted under applicable rules and regulations for amateur operation in the United States, except that such rules and regulations shall not be applied in a manner inconsistent with the inviolability of the headquarters district provided by Section 9(a);

(5) such other radio facilities as may be specified by supplemental agreement between the United Nations and the appropriate American authorities.

(b) The United Nations shall make arrangements for the operation of the services referred to in this section with the International Telecommunication Union, the appropriate agencies of the Government of the United States and the appropriate agencies of other affected governments with regard to all frequencies and similar matters.

(c) The facilities provided for in this section may, to the extent necessary for efficient operation, be established and operated outside the headquarters district. The appropriate American authorities will, on request of the United Nations, make arrangements, on such terms and in such manner as may be agreed upon by supplemental agreement, for the acquisition or use by the United Nations of appropriate premises for such purposes and the inclusion of such premises in the headquarters district.

#### SECTION 5

In the event that the United Nations should find it necessary and desirable to establish and operate an aerodrome, the conditions for the location, use and operation of such an aerodrome and the conditions under which there shall be entry into and exit therefrom shall be the subject of a supplemental agreement.

#### SECTION 6

In the event that the United Nations should propose to organize its own postal service, the conditions under which such service shall be set up shall be the subject of a supplemental agreement.

#### “ARTICLE III—LAW AND AUTHORITY IN THE HEADQUARTERS DISTRICT

#### SECTION 7

(a) The headquarters district shall be under the control and authority of the United Nations as provided in this agreement.

(b) Except as otherwise provided in this agreement or in the General Convention, the federal, state and local law of the United States shall apply within the headquarters district.

(c) Except as otherwise provided in this agreement or in the General Convention, the federal, state and local courts of the United States shall have jurisdiction over acts done and transactions taking place in the headquarters district as provided in applicable federal, state and local laws.

(d) The federal, state and local courts of the United States, when dealing with cases arising out of or relating to acts done or transactions taking place in the headquarters district, shall take into account the regulations enacted by the United Nations under Section 8.

#### SECTION 8

The United Nations shall have the power to make regulations, operative within the headquarters district for the purpose of establishing therein conditions in all respects necessary for the full execution of its func-

tions. No federal, state or local law or regulation of the United States which is inconsistent with a regulation of the United Nations authorized by this section shall, to the extent of such inconsistency, be applicable within the headquarters district. Any dispute, between the United Nations and the United States, as to whether a regulation of the United Nations is authorized by this section or as to whether a federal, state or local law or regulation is inconsistent with any regulation of the United Nations authorized by this section, shall be promptly settled as provided in Section 21. Pending such settlement, the regulation of the United Nations shall apply, and the federal, state or local law or regulation shall be inapplicable in the headquarters district to the extent that the United Nations claims it to be inconsistent with the regulation of the United Nations. This section shall not prevent the reasonable application of fire protection regulations of the appropriate American authorities.

#### SECTION 9

(a) The headquarters district shall be inviolable. Federal, state or local officers or officials of the United States, whether administrative, judicial, military or police, shall not enter the headquarters district to perform any official duties therein except with the consent of and under conditions agreed to by the Secretary-General. The service of legal process, including the seizure of private property, may take place within the headquarters district only with the consent of and under conditions approved by the Secretary-General.

(b) Without prejudice to the provisions of the General Convention or Article IV of this agreement, the United Nations shall prevent the headquarters district from becoming a refuge either for persons who are avoiding arrest under the federal, state, or local law of the United States or are required by the Government of the United States for extradition to another country, or for persons who are endeavoring to avoid service of legal process.

#### SECTION 10

The United Nations may expel or exclude persons from the headquarters district for violation of its regulations adopted under Section 8 or for other cause. Persons who violate such regulations shall be subject to other penalties or to detention under arrest only in accordance with the provisions of such laws or regulations as may be adopted by the appropriate American authorities.

#### “ARTICLE IV—COMMUNICATIONS AND TRANSIT

#### SECTION 11

The federal, state or local authorities of the United States shall not impose any impediments to transit to or from the headquarters district of (1) representatives of Members or officials of the United Nations, or of specialized agencies as defined in Article 57, paragraph 2, of the Charter, or the families of such representatives or officials, (2) experts performing missions for the United Nations or for such specialized agencies, (3) representatives of the press, or of radio, film or other information agencies, who have been accredited by the United Nations (or by such a specialized agency) in its discretion after consultation with the United States, (4) representatives of nongovernmental organizations recognized by the United Nations for the purpose of consultation under Article 71 of the Charter, or (5) other persons invited to the headquarters district by the United Nations or by such specialized agency on official business. The appropriate American authorities shall afford any necessary protection to such persons while in transit to or from the headquarters district. This section does not apply to general interruptions of transportation which are to be dealt with as provided in Section 17, and does not impair the effectiveness of generally applicable laws and regulations as to the operation of means of transportation.

## SECTION 12

The provisions of Section 11 shall be applicable irrespective of the relations existing between the Governments of the persons referred to in that section and the Government of the United States.

## SECTION 13

(a) Laws and regulations in force in the United States regarding the entry of aliens shall not be applied in such manner as to interfere with the privileges referred to in Section 11. When visas are required for persons referred to in that Section, they shall be granted without charge and as promptly as possible.

(b) Laws and regulations in force in the United States regarding the residence of aliens shall not be applied in such manner as to interfere with the privileges referred to in Section 11 and, specifically, shall not be applied in such manner as to require any such person to leave the United States on account of any activities performed by him in his official capacity. In case of abuse of such privileges of residence by any such person in activities in the United States outside his official capacity, it is understood that the privileges referred to in Section 11 shall not be construed to grant him exemption from the laws and regulations of the United States regarding the continued residence of aliens, provided that:

(1) No proceedings shall be instituted under such laws or regulations to require any such person to leave the United States except with the prior approval of the Secretary of State of the United States. Such approval shall be given only after consultation with the appropriate Member in the case of a representative of a Member (or a member of his family) or with the Secretary-General or the principal executive officer of the appropriate specialized agency in the case of any other person referred to in Section 11;

(2) A representative of the Member concerned, the Secretary-General, or the principal executive officer of the appropriate specialized agency, as the case may be, shall have the right to appear in any such proceedings on behalf of the person against whom they are instituted;

(3) Persons who are entitled to diplomatic privileges and immunities under Section 15 or under the General Convention shall not be required to leave the United States otherwise than in accordance with the customary procedure applicable to diplomatic envoys accredited to the United States.

(c) This section does not prevent the requirement of reasonable evidence to establish that persons claiming the rights granted by Section 11 come within the classes described in that section, or the reasonable application of quarantine and health regulations.

(d) Except as provided above in this section and in the General Convention, the United States retains full control and authority over the entry of persons or property into the territory of the United States and the conditions under which persons may remain or reside there.

(e) The Secretary-General shall, at the request of the appropriate American authorities, enter into discussions with such authorities, with a view to making arrangements for registering the arrival and departure of persons who have been granted visas valid only for transit to and from the headquarters district and sojourn therein and in its immediate vicinity.

(f) The United Nations shall, subject to the foregoing provisions of this section, have the exclusive right to authorize or prohibit entry of persons and property into the headquarters district and to prescribe the conditions under which persons may remain or reside there.

## SECTION 14

The Secretary-General and the appropriate American authorities shall, at the request of either of them, consult as to methods of facilitating entrance into the United States, and the use of available means of trans-

portation, by persons coming from abroad who wish to visit the headquarters district and do not enjoy the rights referred to in this Article.

## “ARTICLE V—RESIDENT REPRESENTATIVES TO THE UNITED NATIONS

## SECTION 15

(1) Every person designated by a Member as the principal resident representative to the United Nations of such Member or as a resident representative with the rank of ambassador or minister plenipotentiary,

(2) such resident members of their staffs as may be agreed upon between the Secretary-General, the Government of the United States and the Government of the Member concerned,

(3) every person designated by a Member of a specialized agency, as defined in Article 57, paragraph 2, of the Charter, as its principal resident representative, with the rank of ambassador or minister plenipotentiary, at the headquarters of such agency in the United States, and

(4) such other principal resident representatives of members to a specialized agency and such resident members of the staffs of representatives to a specialized agency as may be agreed upon between the principal executive officer of the specialized agency, the Government of the United States and the Government of the Member concerned, shall, whether residing inside or outside the headquarters district, be entitled in the territory of the United States to the same privileges and immunities, subject to corresponding conditions and obligations, as it accords to diplomatic envoys accredited to it. In the case of Members whose governments are not recognized by the United States, such privileges and immunities need be extended to such representatives, or persons on the staffs of such representatives, only within the headquarters district, at their residences and offices outside the district, in transit between the district and such residences and offices, and in transit on official business to or from foreign countries.

## “ARTICLE VI—POLICE PROTECTION OF THE HEADQUARTERS DISTRICT

## SECTION 16

(a) The appropriate American authorities shall exercise due diligence to ensure that the tranquility of the headquarters district is not disturbed by the unauthorized entry of groups of persons from outside or by disturbances in its immediate vicinity and shall cause to be provided on the boundaries of the headquarters district such police protection as is required for these purposes.

(b) If so requested by the Secretary-General, the appropriate American authorities shall provide a sufficient number of police for the preservation of law and order in the headquarters district, and for the removal therefrom of persons as requested under the authority of the United Nations. The United Nations shall, if requested, enter into arrangements with the appropriate American authorities to reimburse them for the reasonable cost of such services.

## “ARTICLE VII—PUBLIC SERVICES AND PROTECTION OF THE HEADQUARTERS DISTRICT

## SECTION 17

(a) The appropriate American authorities will exercise to the extent requested by the Secretary-General the powers which they possess with respect to the supplying of public services to ensure that the headquarters district shall be supplied on equitable terms with the necessary public services, including electricity, water, gas, post, telephone, telegraph, transportation, drainage, collection of refuse, fire protection, snow removal, et cetera. In case of any interruption or threatened interruption of any such services, the appropriate American authorities will consider the needs

of the United Nations as being of equal importance with the similar needs of essential agencies of the Government of the United States, and will take steps accordingly, to ensure that the work of the United Nations is not prejudiced.

(b) Special provisions with reference to maintenance of utilities and underground construction are contained in Annex 2.

## SECTION 18

The appropriate American authorities shall take all reasonable steps to ensure that the amenities of the headquarters district are not prejudiced and the purposes for which the district is required are not obstructed by any use made of the land in the vicinity of the district. The United Nations shall on its part take all reasonable steps to ensure that the amenities of the land in the vicinity of the headquarters district are not prejudiced by any use made of the land in the headquarters district by the United Nations.

## SECTION 19

It is agreed that no form of racial or religious discrimination shall be permitted within the headquarters district.

## “ARTICLE VIII—MATTERS RELATING TO THE OPERATION OF THIS AGREEMENT

## SECTION 20

The Secretary-General and the appropriate American authorities shall settle by agreement the channels through which they will communicate regarding the application of the provisions of this agreement and other questions affecting the headquarters district, and may enter into such supplemental agreements as may be necessary to fulfill the purposes of this agreement. In making supplemental agreements with the Secretary-General, the United States shall consult with the appropriate state and local authorities. If the Secretary-General so requests, the Secretary of State of the United States shall appoint a special representative for the purpose of liaison with the Secretary-General.

## SECTION 21

(a) Any dispute between the United Nations and the United States concerning the interpretation or application of this agreement or of any supplemental agreement, which is not settled by negotiation or other agreed mode of settlement, shall be referred for final decision to a tribunal of three arbitrators, one to be named by the Secretary-General, one to be named by the Secretary of State of the United States, and the third to be chosen by the two, or, if they should fail to agree upon a third, then by the President of the International Court of Justice.

(b) The Secretary-General or the United States may ask the General Assembly to request of the International Court of Justice an advisory opinion on any legal question arising in the course of such proceedings. Pending the receipt of the opinion of the Court, an interim decision of the arbitral tribunal shall be observed on both parties. Thereafter, the arbitral tribunal shall render a final decision, having regard to the opinion of the Court.

## “ARTICLE IX—MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

## SECTION 22

(a) The United Nations shall not dispose of all or any part of the land owned by it in the headquarters district without the consent of the United States. If the United States is unwilling to consent to a disposition which the United Nations wishes to make of all or any part of such land, the United States shall buy the same from the United Nations at a price to be determined as provided in paragraph (d) of this section.

(b) If the seat of the United Nations is removed from the headquarters district, all right, title and interest of

the United Nations in and to real property in the headquarters district or any part of it shall, on request of either the United Nations or the United States, be assigned and conveyed to the United States. In the absence of such request, the same shall be assigned and conveyed to the subdivision of a state in which it is located or, if such subdivision shall not desire it, then to the state in which it is located. If none of the foregoing desires the same, it may be disposed of as provided in paragraph (a) of this section.

(c) If the United Nations disposes of all or any part of the headquarters district, the provisions of other sections of this agreement which apply to the headquarters district shall immediately cease to apply to the land and buildings so disposed of.

(d) The price to be paid for any conveyance under this section shall, in default of agreement, be the then fair value of the land, buildings and installations, to be determined under the procedure provided in Section 21.

## SECTION 23

The seat of the United Nations shall not be removed from the headquarters district unless the United Nations should so decide.

## SECTION 24

This agreement shall cease to be in force if the seat of the United Nations is removed from the territory of the United States, except for such provisions as may be applicable in connection with the orderly termination of the operations of the United Nations at its seat in the United States and the disposition of its property therein.

## SECTION 25

Wherever this agreement imposes obligations on the appropriate American authorities, the Government of the United States shall have the ultimate responsibility for the fulfillment of such obligations by the appropriate American authorities.

## SECTION 26

The provisions of this agreement shall be complementary to the provisions of the General Convention. In so far as any provision of this agreement and any provisions of the General Convention relate to the same subject matter, the two provisions shall, wherever possible, be treated as complementary, so that both provisions shall be applicable and neither shall narrow the effect of the other; but in any case of absolute conflict, the provisions of this agreement shall prevail.

## SECTION 27

This agreement shall be construed in the light of its primary purpose to enable the United Nations at its headquarters in the United States, fully and efficiently to discharge its responsibilities and fulfill its purposes.

## SECTION 28

This agreement shall be brought into effect by an exchange of notes between the Secretary-General, duly authorized pursuant to a resolution of the General Assembly of the United Nations, and the appropriate executive officer of the United States, duly authorized pursuant to appropriate action of the Congress.

In witness whereof the respective representatives have signed this Agreement and have affixed their seals hereto.

Done in duplicate, in the English and French languages, both authentic, at Lake Success the twentieth day of June 1947.

For the Government of the United States of America:

G. C. MARSHALL,

*Secretary of State*

For the United Nations:

TRYGVE LIE,

*Secretary-General*

## “ANNEX 1

The area referred to in Section 1(a)(1) consists of (a) the premises bounded on the East by the westerly side

of Franklin D. Roosevelt Drive, on the West by the easterly side of First Avenue, on the North by the southerly side of East Forty-eighth Street, and on the South by the northerly side of East Forty-second Street, all as proposed to be widened, in the Borough of Manhattan, City and State of New York, and (b) an easement over Franklin D. Roosevelt Drive, above a lower limiting plane to be fixed for the construction and maintenance of an esplanade, together with the structures thereon and foundations and columns to support the same in locations below such limiting plane, the entire area to be more definitely defined by supplemental agreement between the United Nations and the United States of America.

“ANNEX 2—MAINTENANCE OF UTILITIES AND UNDERGROUND CONSTRUCTION

SECTION 1

The Secretary-General agrees to provide passes to duly authorized employees of The City of New York, the State of New York, or any of their agencies or subdivisions, for the purpose of enabling them to inspect, repair, maintain, reconstruct and relocate utilities, conduits, mains and sewers within the headquarters district.

SECTION 2

Underground constructions may be undertaken by The City of New York, or the State of New York, or any of their agencies or subdivisions, within the headquarters district only after consultation with the Secretary-General, and under conditions which shall not disturb the carrying out of the functions of the United Nations.

SEC. 2. For the purpose of carrying out the obligations of the United States under said agreement and supplemental agreements with respect to United States assurances that the United Nations shall not be dispossessed of its property in the headquarters district, and with respect to the establishment of radio facilities and the possible establishment of an airport:

(a) The President of the United States, or any official or governmental agency authorized by the President, may acquire in the name of the United States any property or interest therein by purchase, donation, or other means of transfer, or may cause proceedings to be instituted for the acquisition of the same by condemnation.

(b) Upon the request of the President, or such officer as the President may designate, the Attorney General of the United States shall cause such condemnation or other proceedings to be instituted in the name of the United States in the district court of the United States for the district in which the property is situated and such court shall have full jurisdiction of such proceedings, and any condemnation proceedings shall be conducted in accordance with the Act of August 1, 1888 (25 Stat. 357), as amended [section 257 of Title 40, Public Buildings, Property, and Works] and the Act of February 26, 1931 (46 Stat. 1421), as amended [sections 258a to 258e of title 40].

(c) After the institution of any such condemnation proceedings, possession of the property may be taken at any time the President, or such officer as he may designate, determines is necessary, and the court shall enter such orders as may be necessary to effect entry and occupancy of the property.

(d) The President of the United States, or any officer or governmental agency duly authorized by the President, may, in the name of the United States, transfer or convey possession of and title to any interest in any property acquired or held by the United States, pursuant to paragraph (a) above, to the United Nations on the terms provided in the agreement or in any supplemental agreement, and shall execute and deliver such conveyances and other instruments and perform such other acts in connection therewith as may be necessary to carry out the provisions of the agreement.

(e) There are authorized to be appropriated, out of any money in the Treasury not otherwise appropriated,

such sums as may be required to enable the United States to carry out the undertakings hereby authorized: *Provided*, That any money appropriated under this authorization shall be spent only on a basis of reimbursement by the United Nations in accordance with section 3 of the agreement, and that the money thus reimbursed shall be deposited and covered into the Treasury of the United States as miscellaneous receipts.

SEC. 3. The President, or the Secretary of State under his direction, is authorized to enter into agreements with the State of New York or any other State of the United States and to the extent not inconsistent with State law, with any one or more of the political subdivisions thereof in aid of effectuating the provisions of the agreement.

SEC. 4. Any States, or, to the extent not inconsistent with State law any political subdivisions thereof, affected by the establishment of the headquarters of the United Nations in the United States are authorized to enter into agreements with the United Nations or with each other consistent with the agreement and for the purpose of facilitating compliance with the same: *Provided*, That, except in cases of emergency and agreements of a routine contractual character, a representative of the United States, to be appointed by the Secretary of State, may, at the discretion of the Secretary of State, participate in the negotiations, and that any such agreement entered into by such State or States or political subdivisions thereof shall be subject to approval by the Secretary of State.

SEC. 5. The President is authorized to make effective with respect to the temporary headquarters of the United Nations in the State of New York, on a provisional basis, such of the provisions of the agreement as he may deem appropriate, having due regard for the needs of the United Nations at its temporary headquarters.

SEC. 6. Nothing in the agreement shall be construed as in any way diminishing, abridging, or weakening the right of the United States to safeguard its own security and completely to control the entrance of aliens into any territory of the United States other than the headquarters district and its immediate vicinity, as to be defined and fixed in a supplementary agreement between the Government of the United States and the United Nations in pursuance of section 13(3)(e) of the agreement, and such areas as it is reasonably necessary to traverse in transit between the same and foreign countries. Moreover, nothing in section 14 of the agreement with respect to facilitating entrance into the United States by persons who wish to visit the headquarters district and do not enjoy the right of entry provided in section 11 of the agreement shall be construed to amend or suspend in any way the immigration laws of the United States or to commit the United States in any way to effect any amendment or suspension of such laws.”

UN MEMBERSHIP FOR COMMUNIST CHINA

Section 105 of Pub. L. 91-472, title I, Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1044, provided that it was the sense of the Congress that the United Nations should not admit the Communist Chinese Government to membership as the representative of China. Similar provisions were contained in the following prior acts:

Dec. 24, 1969, Pub. L. 91-153, title I, §105, 83 Stat. 407.  
 Aug. 9, 1968, Pub. L. 90-470, title I, §105, 82 Stat. 672.  
 Nov. 8, 1967, Pub. L. 90-133, title I, §105, 81 Stat. 416.  
 Nov. 8, 1966, Pub. L. 89-797, title I, §105, 80 Stat. 1484.  
 Sept. 2, 1965, Pub. L. 89-164, title I, §105, 79 Stat. 625.  
 Aug. 31, 1964, Pub. L. 88-527, title I, §105, 78 Stat. 716.  
 Dec. 30, 1963, Pub. L. 88-245, title I, §105, 77 Stat. 781.  
 Oct. 18, 1962, Pub. L. 87-843, title I, §105, 76 Stat. 1085.  
 Sept. 21, 1961, Pub. L. 87-264, title I, §105, 75 Stat. 550.  
 Aug. 31, 1960, Pub. L. 86-678, title I, §105, 74 Stat. 561.  
 July 13, 1959, Pub. L. 86-84, title I, §105, 73 Stat. 186.  
 June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-474, title I, §105, 72 Stat. 249.  
 June 11, 1957, Pub. L. 85-49, title I, §105, 71 Stat. 60.  
 June 20, 1956, ch. 414, title I, §110, 70 Stat. 304.  
 July 7, 1955, ch. 279, title I, §110, 69 Stat. 270.

July 2, 1954, ch. 456, title I, §110, 68 Stat. 418.  
Aug. 5, 1953, ch. 328, title I, §111, 67 Stat. 372.

TRUSTEESHIP AGREEMENT RELATING TO TERRITORY OF  
THE PACIFIC ISLANDS

Act of July 18, 1947, ch. 271, 61 Stat. 397, authorized the President to approve the trusteeship agreement between the United States and the Security Council of the United Nations for the Territory of the Pacific Islands.

EX. ORD. NO. 10108. DESIGNATION OF U.S. MISSION TO  
UNITED NATIONS

Ex. Ord. No. 10108, Feb. 9, 1950, 15 F.R. 757, provided: By virtue of the authority vested in me by the United Nations Participation Act of 1945 (59 Stat. 619) [this subchapter], as amended by the act of October 10, 1949, 63 Stat. 734, and as President of the United States, it is hereby ordered as follows:

1. The Representative of the United States to the United Nations, the Deputy Representative of the United States to the United Nations, the Deputy Representative of the United States to the Security Council of the United Nations, representatives of the United States in the Economic and Social Council of the United Nations and its Commissions, representatives of the United States in the Trusteeship Council, the Atomic Energy Commission, the Commission for Conventional Armaments, and the Military Staff Committee of the United Nations, and representatives to organs and agencies of the United Nations appointed or designated and included within the United States Mission to the United Nations as herein designated, together with their deputies, staffs, and offices—shall constitute and be known as the United States Mission to the United Nations.

2. The Representative of the United States to the United Nations shall be the Chief of Mission in charge of the United States Mission to the United Nations. The Chief of Mission shall coordinate at the seat of the United Nations the activities of the Mission in carrying out the instructions of the President transmitted either by the Secretary of State or by other means of transmission as directed by the President. Instructions to the representatives of the United States Joint Chiefs of Staff in the Military Staff Committee of the United Nations shall be transmitted by the Joint Chiefs of Staff. On request of the Chief of Mission, such representatives shall, in addition to their responsibilities under the Charter of the United Nations, serve as advisers in the United States Mission to the United Nations.

3. The Chief of Mission shall be responsible for the administration of the Mission, including personnel, budget, obligation and expenditure of funds, and the central administrative services; provided that he shall not be responsible for the internal administration of the personnel, budget, and obligation and expenditure of funds of the representatives of the United States Joint Chiefs of Staff in the Military Staff Committee of the United Nations. The Chief of Mission shall discharge his responsibilities under this paragraph in accordance with such rules and regulations as the Secretary of State may from time to time prescribe.

4. The Deputy Representative of the United States to the United Nations shall be the Deputy Chief of Mission, who shall act as Chief of Mission in the absence of the Representative of the United States to the United Nations.

5. This order supersedes Executive Order No. 9844 of April 28, 1947, entitled "Designating the United States Mission to the United Nations and Providing for Its Direction and Administration."

EX. ORD. NO. 10422. LOYALTY PROCEDURES FOR  
EMPLOYEES

Ex. Ord. No. 10422, Jan. 9, 1953, 18 F.R. 239, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 10459, June 2, 1953, 18 F.R. 3183; Ex. Ord. No. 10763, Apr. 23, 1958, eff. July 1, 1958, 23 F.R. 2767; Ex. Ord. No. 11890, Dec. 10, 1975, 40 F.R. 57775; Ex. Ord. No. 12107, Dec. 28, 1978, 44 F.R. 1055, provided:

PART I—INVESTIGATION OF UNITED STATES CITIZENS EMPLOYED OR BEING CONSIDERED FOR EMPLOYMENT ON THE SECRETARIAT OF THE UNITED NATIONS

1. Whenever the Secretary of State receives, from the Secretary General of the United Nations, the name of and other necessary identifying data concerning each United States citizen employed or being considered for employment by the United Nations, the Secretary of State shall, consistent with the Privacy Act of 1974 (5 U.S.C. 552a) and other applicable law, cause an investigation to be conducted as provided in paragraph 2 of this Part, or forward the information received from the Secretary General to the Office of Personnel Management, which shall conduct an investigation, consistent with the Privacy Act of 1974 (5 U.S.C. 552a) and other applicable law, as provided in paragraphs 3 and 4 of this Part.

2. With respect to all applicants for short term appointments which will not exceed six months and which are not appointments to United Nations Secretariat professional posts or posts subject to geographical distribution, the Secretary of State shall cause an investigation to be conducted, which investigation shall be limited to a search of the files of the Department of State. If the investigation reveals any derogatory information within the meaning of the standard set forth in Part II of this order, the information received from the Secretary General of the United Nations shall be forwarded to the Office of Personnel Management, which shall conduct an investigation.

3. (a) Whenever the Office of Personnel Management receives the information forwarded by the Secretary General to the Secretary of State, the Office of Personnel Management shall conduct a National Agency Check. Each National Agency Check shall include reference to the following: (1) Federal Bureau of Investigation files; (2) Office of Personnel Management files; (3) Military Intelligence files as appropriate; and (4) files of any other appropriate Government investigative or intelligence agency.

(b) If the investigation conducted by the Office of Personnel Management reveals that a favorable National Agency Check was previously completed, and the investigation conducted by the Office of Personnel Management has not disclosed any derogatory information within the meaning of the standard set forth in Part II of this order, completion of a new National Agency Check is not required if: (1) the applicant is or was previously employed by the same or another international organization without an immediately prior break in such service exceeding one year; (2) the applicant is or was a United States Government civilian or military employee, or a United States Government contract employee, without an immediately prior break in such employment exceeding one year; or (3) the applicant is transferred or detailed from an agency of the United States Government pursuant to the provisions of sections 3343, 3581, 3582, 3583, or 3584 of Title 5 of the United States Code.

4. Whenever information disclosed with respect to any person being investigated is derogatory, within the standard set forth in Part II of this order, the Office of Personnel Management shall forward such information to the Federal Bureau of Investigation, and the Bureau shall conduct a full field investigation of such persons.

5. Reports of full field investigations shall be forwarded through the Office of Personnel Management to the International Organizations Employees Loyalty Board, established by Part IV of this order and hereinafter referred to as the Board. Whenever such a report contains derogatory information, under the standard set forth in Part II of this order, there shall be made available to the person in question the procedures of the Board provided or authorized by Part IV of this order (including the opportunity of a hearing) for inquiring into the loyalty of the person as a United States citizen in accordance with the standard set forth in Part II of this order. The Board shall transmit its determinations, as advisory opinions, together with the

reasons therefor stated in as much detail as the Board determines that security considerations permit, to the Secretary of State for transmission to the Secretary General of the United Nations for his use in exercising his rights and duties with respect to the personnel of the United Nations as set out in the Charter and in regulations and decisions of the competent organs of the United Nations.

6. At any stage during the investigation or Board proceeding, the Board may transmit to the Secretary of State, for forwarding to the Secretary General, in as much detail as the Board determines that security considerations permit, the derogatory information disclosed by investigation. This shall be for the purpose of assisting the Secretary General in determining whether or not he should take action with respect to the employee, or the person being considered for employment, prior to the completion of the procedures outlined in this order. The making available of any such information shall be without prejudice to the right of full hearing as provided for herein.

7. The Secretary of State shall notify the Secretary General in all cases in which no derogatory information has been developed.

#### PART II—STANDARD

1. The standard to be used by the Board in making an advisory determination as provided for in paragraph 5 of Part I of this order with respect to a United States citizen who is an employee of, or is being considered for employment by, the United Nations, shall be whether or not on all the evidence there is a reasonable doubt as to the loyalty of the person involved to the Government of the United States.

2. Activities and associations of a United States citizen who is an employee or being considered for employment by the United Nations which may be considered in connection with the determination whether or not on all the evidence there is a reasonable doubt as to the loyalty of the person involved to the Government of the United States may include one or more of the following:

(a) Sabotage, espionage, or attempts or preparations therefor, or knowingly associating with spies or saboteurs.

(b) Treason or sedition or advocacy thereof.

(c) Advocacy of revolution or force or violence to alter the constitutional form of government of the United States.

(d) Intentional, unauthorized disclosure to any person, under circumstances which may indicate disloyalty to the United States, of United States documents or United States information of a confidential or non-public character obtained by the person making the disclosure as a result of his previous employment by the Government of the United States or otherwise.

(e) Performing or attempting to perform his duties, or otherwise acting, while an employee of the United States Government during a previous period, so as to serve the interests of another government in preference to the interests of the United States.

(f) Knowing membership with the specific intent of furthering the aims of, or adherence to and active participation in, any foreign or domestic organization, association, movement, group or combination of persons, which unlawfully advocates or practices the commission of acts of force or violence to prevent others from exercising their rights under the Constitution or laws of the United States, or of any State, or which seeks to overthrow the Government of the United States or any State or subdivision thereof by unlawful means.

#### PART III—OTHER INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATIONS

The provisions of Parts I and II of this order shall be applicable to United States citizens who are employees of, or are being considered for employment by, other public international organizations of which the United States Government is a member, by arrangement between the executive head of the international organiza-

tion concerned and the Secretary of State or other officer of the United States designated by the President.

#### PART IV—INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATIONS EMPLOYEES LOYALTY BOARD

1. There is hereby established in the Office of Personnel Management an International Organizations Employees Loyalty Board of not less than three impartial persons, the members of which shall be officers or employees of the Office.

2. The Board shall have authority in cases referred to it under this order to inquire into the loyalty to the Government of the United States of United States citizens employed, or considered for employment, by international organizations of which the United States is a member, and to make advisory determinations in such cases, under the standard set forth in Part II of this order, for transmission by the Secretary of State to the executive heads of the international organizations coming under the arrangements made pursuant to Parts I and III of this order.

3. The Board shall make necessary rules and regulations, not inconsistent with the provisions of this order, for the execution of its functions. There shall be included in such rules and regulations provisions for furnishing each person whose case is considered by the Board:

(a) A written statement of the alleged derogatory information, in as much detail as security considerations permit.

(b) An opportunity to answer or comment upon the statement of alleged derogatory information, in writing, and to submit affidavits.

(c) An opportunity for hearing before the Board, or a panel thereof of at least three members, including the right of the person to be represented by counsel, to present witnesses and other evidence in his behalf, and to cross-examine witnesses offered in support of the derogatory information: *Provided*, That the Board shall conduct its hearings in such manner as to protect from disclosure information affecting the national security.

4. Based upon all the evidence before it, including such confidential information as it may have in its possession, the Board shall make its determinations in writing, and shall send to each person who is the subject thereof a copy. In cases in which hearing or other action is by a panel of three members, the action or determination of the panel shall constitute the action or determination of the Board, except that rules and regulations pursuant to paragraph 3 of this Part shall be adopted by action of the Board as a whole.

5. Except as otherwise specified in this order, the Office of Personnel Management shall provide the necessary investigative and other services required by the Board. All agencies of the executive branch of the Government are authorized and directed to cooperate with the Board, and, to the extent permitted by law, to furnish the Board such information and assistance as it may require in the performance of its functions.

6. All cases arising under this order which are pending before the Regional Loyalty Boards and the Loyalty Review Board of the Commission on the effective date of Executive Order No. 10450 of April 27, 1953, shall on that date be transferred to the Board.

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Military Staff Committee of United Nations, appointment of senior members, see section 711 of Title 10, Armed Forces.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 287a, 287e of this title.

#### § 287a. Action by representatives in accordance with Presidential instructions; voting

The representatives provided for in section 287 of this title, when representing the United

States in the respective organs and agencies of the United Nations, shall, at all times, act in accordance with the instructions of the President transmitted by the Secretary of State unless other means of transmission is directed by the President, and such representatives shall, in accordance with such instructions, cast any and all votes under the Charter of the United Nations.

(Dec. 20, 1945, ch. 583, § 3, 59 Stat. 620.)

### § 287b. Reports to Congress by President

#### (a) Periodic reports

The President shall, from time to time as occasion may require, but not less than once each year, make reports to the Congress of the activities of the United Nations and of the participation of the United States therein. He shall make special current reports on decisions of the Security Council to take enforcement measures under the provisions of the Charter of the United Nations, and on the participation therein under his instructions, of the representative of the United States.

#### (b) Transmittal of Security Council resolutions

Not later than 3 days (excluding Saturdays, Sundays, and legal holidays) after adoption of any resolution by the Security Council, the Secretary of State shall transmit the text of such resolution and any supporting documentation to the designated congressional committees.

#### (c) Reports on peacekeeping operations

The Secretary of State shall promptly transmit to the designated congressional committees any published report prepared by the United Nations and distributed to the members of the Security Council that contains assessments of any proposed, ongoing, or concluded United Nations peacekeeping operation.

#### (d) Annual report

In addition to the report required by subsection (a) of this section, the President, at the time of submission of the annual budget request to the Congress, shall submit to the designated congressional committees a report that includes the following:

##### (1) Costs of peacekeeping operations

(A) In accordance with section 407(a)(5)(B) of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1994 and 1995, a description of all assistance provided by the United States to the United Nations to support peacekeeping operations during the previous calendar quarter and during the previous year.

(B) With respect to United Nations peacekeeping operations—

(i) the aggregate cost of all United Nations peacekeeping operations for the prior fiscal year;

(ii) the costs of each United Nations peacekeeping operation for the prior fiscal year; and

(iii) the amount of United States contributions (both assessed and voluntary) to United Nations peacekeeping operations on an operation-by-operation basis for the prior fiscal year.

(C) With respect to other international peacekeeping operations in which the United States participates—

(i) the aggregate cost of all such operations for the prior fiscal year;

(ii) the costs of each such operation for the prior fiscal year; and

(iii) the amount of United States contributions (both assessed and voluntary) to such operations on an operation-by-operation basis for the prior fiscal year.

(D) In the case of the first 2 reports submitted pursuant to this subsection, a projection of all United States costs for United Nations peacekeeping operations during each of the next 2 fiscal years, including assessed and voluntary contributions.

#### (2) Other matters regarding peacekeeping operations

(A) An assessment of the effectiveness of ongoing international peacekeeping operations, their relevance to United States national interests, the efforts by the United Nations and other international organizations (as applicable) to resolve the relevant armed conflicts, and the projected termination dates for all such operations.

(B) The dollar value and percentage of total peacekeeping contracts that have been awarded to United States contractors during the previous year.

#### (3) United Nations reform

(A)(i) A description of the status of efforts to establish and implement an independent office of the Inspector General at the United Nations.

(ii) If an office of the Inspector General has been established at the United Nations, a discussion of whether the Inspector General is keeping the Secretary General and the members of the General Assembly fully informed about problems, deficiencies, the necessity for corrective action, and the progress of corrective action.

(iii) For purposes of this subparagraph, the term “office of the Inspector General” means an independent office (or other independent entity) established by the United Nations to conduct and supervise objective audits, inspections, and investigations relating to the programs and operations of the United Nations.

(B) A description of the status of efforts to reduce the United States peacekeeping assessment rate.

(C) A description of the status of other United States efforts to achieve financial and management reform at the United Nations.

#### (4) Military personnel participating in multinational forces

A description of—

(A) the status under international law of members of multinational forces, including the legal status of such personnel if captured, missing, or detained;

(B) the extent of the risk for United States military personnel who are captured while participating in multinational forces in cases where their captors fail to respect the 1949 Geneva Conventions and other inter-

national agreements intended to protect prisoners of war; and

(C) the specific steps that have been taken to protect United States military personnel participating in multinational forces, together (if necessary) with any recommendations for the enactment of legislation to achieve that objective.

**(5) Human rights and U.N. peacekeeping forces**

A description of the efforts by United Nations peacekeeping forces to promote and protect internationally recognized human rights standards, including the status of investigations in any case of alleged human rights violations during the preceding year by personnel participating in United Nations peacekeeping forces, as well as any action taken in such cases.

**(e) "Designated congressional committees" defined**

As used in this section, the term "designated congressional committees" has the meaning given that term by section 415 of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1994 and 1995.

(Dec. 20, 1945, ch. 583, §4, 59 Stat. 620; Apr. 30, 1994, Pub. L. 103-236, title IV, §§406, 407(b), 108 Stat. 448, 450.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Sections 407(a)(5)(B) and 415 of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1994 and 1995, referred to in subsecs. (d)(1)(A) and (e), are sections 407(a)(5)(B) and 415 of Pub. L. 103-236, which are set out below.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-236 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a), inserted heading, and added subsecs. (b) to (e).

CONSULTATIONS AND REPORTS ON UNITED NATIONS PEACEKEEPING OPERATIONS

Section 407(a) of Pub. L. 103-236 provided that:

"(1) CONSULTATIONS.—Each month the President shall consult with the Congress on the status of United Nations peacekeeping operations.

"(2) INFORMATION TO BE PROVIDED.—In connection with these consultations, the following information shall be provided each month to the designated congressional committees:

"(A) With respect to ongoing United Nations peacekeeping operations, the following:

"(i) A list of all resolutions of the United Nations Security Council anticipated to be voted on during such month that would extend or change the mandate of any United Nations peacekeeping operation.

"(ii) For each such operation, any changes in the duration, mandate, and command and control arrangements that are anticipated as a result of the adoption of the resolution.

"(iii) An estimate of the total cost to the United Nations of each such operation for the period covered by the resolution, and an estimate of the amount of that cost that will be assessed to the United States.

"(iv) Any anticipated significant changes in United States participation in or support for each such operation during the period covered by the resolution, and the estimated costs to the United States of such changes.

"(B) With respect to each new United Nations peacekeeping operation that is anticipated to be authorized by a Security Council resolution during such month, the following information for the period covered by the resolution:

"(i) The anticipated duration, mandate, and command and control arrangements of such operation.

"(ii) An estimate of the total cost to the United Nations of the operation, and an estimate of the amount of that cost that will be assessed to the United States.

"(iii) A description of the functions that would be performed by any United States Armed Forces participating in or otherwise operating in support of the operation, an estimate of the number of members of the Armed Forces that will participate in or otherwise operate in support of the operation, and an estimate of the cost to the United States of such participation or support.

"(3) WRITTEN INFORMATION.—The information described in clauses (i) and (iii) of paragraph (2)(A) and the information described in clauses (i) and (ii) of paragraph (2)(B) shall be provided each month to the designated congressional committees in written form not later than the 10th day of that month.

"(4) INTERIM INFORMATION.—(A) The President shall submit to the designated congressional committees a written interim report if, during the period between the monthly consultations required by paragraph (1), the United States learns that the United Nations Security Council is likely, before the next such consultation, to vote on a resolution that would authorize a new United Nations peacekeeping operation and that resolution was not previously reported on pursuant to paragraph (2)(B). Each interim report shall include the information described in clauses (i) and (ii) of paragraph (2)(B).

"(B) Any such interim report shall be submitted not less than 5 days before the vote of the United Nations Security Council, unless the President determines that exceptional circumstances prevented compliance with the requirement to report 5 days in advance. If the President makes such a determination, the interim report shall be submitted promptly (but in no case later than 3 days after the vote) and shall include a copy of the determination and a description of the exceptional circumstances which were the basis for that determination.

"(5) NOTIFICATION AND QUARTERLY REPORTS REGARDING UNITED STATES ASSISTANCE.—(A) The President shall notify the designated congressional committees at least 15 days before the United States provides any assistance to the United Nations to support peacekeeping operations. This subparagraph does not apply to—

"(i) assistance having a value of less than \$3,000,000 in the case of nonreimbursable [sic] assistance or less than \$14,000,000 in the case of reimbursable [sic] assistance, or

"(ii) assistance provided under the emergency drawdown authority of sections 506(a)(1) and 552(c)(2) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2318(a)(1) and 2348a(c)(2)).

"(B) The President shall submit quarterly reports to the designated congressional committees on all assistance provided by the United States during the preceding calendar quarter to the United Nations to support peacekeeping operations. Each report shall describe the assistance provided for each such operation, listed by category of assistance. The report for the fourth calendar quarter of each year shall be submitted as part of the annual report required by section 4(d) of the United Nations Participation Act of 1945 [22 U.S.C. 287b(d)] (as added by subsection (b) of this section) and shall include cumulative information for the preceding calendar year."

[Functions of President under section 407(a) of Pub. L. 103-236, set out above, delegated to Secretary of State, to be exercised in coordination with Secretary of Defense, by Memorandum of President of the United States, July 26, 1994, 59 F.R. 40205, set out as a note under section 2370a of this title.]

DESIGNATED CONGRESSIONAL COMMITTEES

Section 415 of Pub. L. 103-236 provided that: "For purposes of this part [part A (§§401 to 415) of title IV of Pub. L. 103-236, enacting section 2321n of this title,



amending this section, enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and section 287e of this title, and amending provisions set out as notes under section 287e of this title], the term ‘designated congressional committees’ means the Committee on Appropriations and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Committee on Appropriations and the Committee on Foreign Affairs [now Committee on International Relations] of the House of Representatives.”

REPORT ON POLICIES PURSUED BY OTHER COUNTRIES IN INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATIONS

Pub. L. 98-164, title I, §117, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1022, as amended by Pub. L. 100-204, title VII, §707, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1390, directed Secretary of State to transmit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, by Jan. 31 of each year, a report regarding policies which each member country of United Nations pursued in international organizations of which United States was a member, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §139(27), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 399.

**§ 287c. Economic and communication sanctions pursuant to United Nations Security Council Resolution**

**(a) Enforcement measures; importation of Rhodesian chromium**

Notwithstanding the provisions of any other law, whenever the United States is called upon by the Security Council to apply measures which said Council has decided, pursuant to article 41 of said Charter, are to be employed to give effect to its decisions under said Charter, the President may, to the extent necessary to apply such measures, through any agency which he may designate, and under such orders, rules, and regulations as may be prescribed by him, investigate, regulate, or prohibit, in whole or in part, economic relations or rail, sea, air, postal, telegraphic, radio, and other means of communication between any foreign country or any national thereof or any person therein and the United States or any person subject to the jurisdiction thereof, or involving any property subject to the jurisdiction of the United States. Any Executive order which is issued under this subsection and which applies measures against Southern Rhodesia pursuant to any United Nations Security Council Resolution may be enforced, notwithstanding the provisions of any other law. The President may exempt from such Executive order any shipment of chromium in any form which is in transit to the United States on March 18, 1977.

**(b) Penalties**

Any person who willfully violates or evades or attempts to violate or evade any order, rule, or regulation issued by the President pursuant to subsection (a) of this section shall, upon conviction, be fined<sup>1</sup> not more than \$10,000 or, if a natural person, be imprisoned for not more than ten years, or both; and the officer, director, or agent of any corporation who knowingly participates in such violation or evasion shall be punished by a like fine, imprisonment, or both, and any property, funds, securities, papers, or other articles or documents, or any vessel, together with her tackle, apparel, furniture, and equipment, or

vehicle, or aircraft, concerned in such violation shall be forfeited to the United States.

**(c) Steel mill products containing chromium; certificate of origin; regulations; subpoenas; certificate exemption; release from customs custody; definitions**

(1) During the period in which measures are applied against Southern Rhodesia under subsection (a) of this section pursuant to any United Nations Security Council Resolution, a shipment of any steel mill product (as such product may be defined by the Secretary) containing chromium in any form may not be released from customs custody for entry into the United States if—

(A) a certificate of origin with respect to such shipment has not been filed with the Secretary; or

(B) in the case of a shipment with respect to which a certificate of origin has been filed with the Secretary, the Secretary determines that the information contained in such certificate does not adequately establish that the steel mill product in such shipment does not contain chromium in any form which is of Southern Rhodesian origin;

unless such release is authorized by the Secretary under paragraph (3)(B) or (C).

(2) The Secretary shall prescribe regulations for carrying out this subsection.

(3)(A) In carrying out this subsection, the Secretary may issue subpoenas requiring the attendance and testimony of witnesses and the production of evidence. Any such subpoena may, upon application by the Secretary, be enforced in a civil action in an appropriate United States district court.

(B) The Secretary may exempt from the certification requirements of this subsection any shipment of a steel mill product containing chromium in any form which is in transit to the United States on March 18, 1977.

(C) Under such circumstances as he deems appropriate, the Secretary may release from customs custody for entry into the United States, under such bond as he may require, any shipment of a steel mill product containing chromium in any form.

(4) As used in this subsection—

(A) the term “certificate of origin” means such certificate as the Secretary may require, with respect to a shipment of any steel mill product containing chromium in any form, issued by the government (or by a designee of such government if the Secretary is satisfied that such designee is the highest available certifying authority) of the country in which such steel mill product was produced certifying that the steel mill product in such shipment contains no chromium in any form which is of Southern Rhodesian origin; and

(B) the term “Secretary” means the Secretary of the Treasury.

(Dec. 20, 1945, ch. 583, §5, 59 Stat. 620; Oct. 10, 1949, ch. 660, §3, 63 Stat. 735; Mar. 18, 1977, Pub. L. 95-12, §1, 91 Stat. 22.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Article 41 of said Charter, referred to in subsec. (a), is an article of the United Nations Charter.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be “fined”.

## AMENDMENTS

1977—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 95-12, §1(1), inserted provision permitting enforcement of any Executive order, issued under this subsection, applying measures against Southern Rhodesia and permitting Presidential exemption from that Executive order of any shipment of chromium in transit to the United States on Mar. 18, 1977.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 95-12, §1(2), added subsec. (c).

1949—Subsec. (b). Act Oct. 10, 1949, made aircraft subject to forfeiture.

## DELEGATION OF AUTHORITY

Authority of President under this section with respect to blocked funds and other assets of Iraqi Government delegated to Secretary of the Treasury by section 1 of Ex. Ord. No. 12817, Oct. 21, 1992, 57 F.R. 48433, set out as a note under section 1701 of Title 50, War and National Defense.

## IMPORTATION OF STRATEGIC AND CRITICAL MATERIALS FROM ZIMBABWE-RHODESIA

Pub. L. 96-107, title VIII, §818, Nov. 9, 1979, 93 Stat. 818, provided that: "It is the sense of the Congress that the United States should have unlimited access to strategic and critical materials which are vital to the defense and security of the United States and that every effort should be made to remove artificial impediments against the importation of such materials into the United States from Zimbabwe-Rhodesia."

## SANCTIONS AGAINST ZIMBABWE-RHODESIA; REPORT TO CONGRESS

Pub. L. 96-60, title IV, §408, Aug. 15, 1979, 93 Stat. 405, provided for termination of sanctions against Zimbabwe-Rhodesia by Nov. 15, 1979, unless the President determined and reported to Congress that termination of sanctions would not be in the national interest, with provision authorizing Congress to reject such Presidential determination, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 97-241, title V, §505(a)(1), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 298.

## DETERMINATIONS RESPECTING FUTURE ENFORCEMENT OF SANCTIONS AGAINST RHODESIA

Pub. L. 95-384, §27, Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 746, which related to enforcement of sanctions against Rhodesia, was repealed by Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, §734(a)(12), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.

## SUSPENSION OF AMENDMENT OPERATION BY PRESIDENT; REPORT TO CONGRESS

Section 2 of Pub. L. 95-12 provided that:

"(a) Upon the enactment of this Act [Mar. 18, 1977], the President may suspend the operation of the amendments contained in this Act [amending this section] if he determines that such suspension would encourage meaningful negotiations and further the peaceful transfer of governing power from minority rule to majority rule in Southern Rhodesia. Such suspension shall remain in effect for such duration as deemed necessary by the President.

"(b) If the President suspends the operation of the amendments contained in this Act [amending this section], he shall so report to the Congress. In addition, the President shall report to the Congress when he terminates such suspension.

"(c) If the President suspends the operation of the amendments contained in this Act [amending this section], any reference in those amendments to date of enactment [Mar. 18, 1977] shall be deemed to be a reference to the date on which such suspension is terminated by the President."

## EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 11322

Ex. Ord. No. 11322, Jan. 5, 1967, 32 F.R. 119, which related to transactions involving Southern Rhodesia, was revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 12183, Dec. 16, 1979, 44 F.R. 74787, set out below.

## EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 11419

Ex. Ord. No. 11419, July 29, 1968, 33 F.R. 10837, which related to trade and other transactions involving Southern Rhodesia, was revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 12183, Dec. 16, 1979, 44 F.R. 74787, set out below.

## EX. ORD. NO. 12183. REVOKING RHODESIAN SANCTIONS

Ex. Ord. No. 12183, Dec. 16, 1979, 44 F.R. 74787, provided:

By the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and statutes of the United States of America, including Section 5 of the United Nations Participation Act of 1945, as amended (22 U.S.C. 287c), and in order to terminate current limitations relating to trade and other transactions involving Zimbabwe-Rhodesia, it is hereby ordered as follows:

1-101. (a) Subject to the provisions of this order, the following are hereby revoked with respect to transactions occurring after the effective date of this order: (1) Executive Order 11322 of January 5, 1967 (32 F.R. 119);

(2) Executive Order 11419 of July 29, 1968 (33 F.R. 10837); and

(3) Executive Order 11978 of March 18, 1977 (42 F.R. 15403).

(b) To the extent consistent with this order, all determinations, authorizations, regulations, rulings, certificates, orders, directives, licenses, contracts, agreements, and other actions made, issued, taken, or entered into under the provisions of such Executive orders and not previously revoked, superseded, or otherwise made inapplicable, shall continue in full force and effect until amended, modified, or terminated by appropriate authority.

1-102. (a) The Secretaries of State, the Treasury, Commerce, and Transportation, and the heads of other government agencies, shall retain the authority and responsibility for the enforcement of Executive Orders 11322, 11419, and 11978 with respect to transactions occurring prior to the effective date of this order.

(b) The revocation, in Section 1-101 of this order, of such prior Executive orders shall not affect:

(1) any act done or omitted to be done or any suit or proceeding finished or started in civil or criminal cases prior to the revocation, but all such liabilities, penalties, and forfeitures under the Executive orders shall continue and may be enforced in the same manner as if the revocation had not been made; or

(2) any violation of any rules, regulations, orders, licenses, or other forms of administrative action under those revoked orders during the periods those orders were in effect.

1-103. (a) The Secretaries of State, the Treasury, Commerce, and Transportation, and the heads of other government agencies, shall take the appropriate measures to implement this order.

(b) In carrying out their respective functions and responsibilities under this order, the Secretaries of the Treasury, Commerce, and Transportation, and the heads of other government agencies, shall, as appropriate, consult with the Secretary of State. Each such Secretary and agency head and the Secretary of State shall also consult with other government agencies and private persons, as appropriate.

JIMMY CARTER.

## EX. ORD. NO. 12918. PROHIBITING CERTAIN TRANSACTIONS WITH RESPECT TO RWANDA AND DELEGATING AUTHORITY WITH RESPECT TO OTHER UNITED NATIONS ARMS EMBARGOES

Ex. Ord. No. 12918, May 26, 1994, 59 F.R. 28205, provided:

By the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of America, including section 5 of the United Nations Participation Act of 1945, as amended (22 U.S.C. 287c), the Export Administration Act of 1979, as amended (50 U.S.C. App. 2401 *et seq.*), the Arms Export Control Act (22 U.S.C. 2751 *et seq.*), and section 301 of title 3, United

States Code, and in view of United Nations Security Council Resolution 918 of May 17, 1994, it is hereby ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. *Arms Embargo.* The following activities are prohibited, notwithstanding the existence of any rights or obligations conferred or imposed by any international agreement or any contract entered into or any license or permit granted before the effective date of this order, except to the extent provided in regulations, orders, directives, or licenses that may hereafter be issued pursuant to this order: (a) The sale or supply to Rwanda from the territory of the United States by any person, or by any United States person in any foreign country or other location, or using any U.S.-registered vessel or aircraft, of arms and related materiel of all types, including weapons and ammunition, military vehicles and equipment, paramilitary police equipment, and spare parts for the aforementioned, irrespective of origin. This prohibition does not apply to activities related to the United Nations Assistance Mission for Rwanda or the United Nations Observer Mission Uganda-Rwanda or other entities permitted to have such items by the United Nations Security Council; and

(b) Any willful evasion or attempt to violate or evade any of the prohibitions set forth in this order, by any person.

SEC. 2. *Definitions.* For purposes of this order, the term: (a) "Person" means a natural person as well as a corporation, business association, partnership, society, trust, or any other entity, organization or group, including governmental entities; and

(b) "United States person" means any citizen or national of the United States, any lawful permanent resident of the United States, or any corporation, business association, partnership, society, trust, or any other entity, organization or group, including governmental entities, organized under the laws of the United States (including foreign branches).

SEC. 3. *Responsibilities.* The functions and responsibilities for the enforcement of the foregoing prohibitions are delegated as follows: (a) The Secretary of State is hereby authorized to take such actions, including the promulgation of rules and regulations, and to employ all powers granted to the President by section 5 of the United Nations Participation Act [22 U.S.C. 287c] and other authorities available to the Secretary of State, as may be necessary to carry out the purpose of this order, relating to arms and related materiel of a type enumerated on the United States Munitions List (22 C.F.R. Part 121). The Secretary of State may redelegate any of these functions to other officers and agencies of the United States Government; and

(b) The Secretary of Commerce, in consultation with the Secretary of State, is hereby authorized to take such actions, including the promulgation of rules and regulations, and to employ all powers granted to the President by section 5 of the United Nations Participation Act and other authorities available to the Secretary of Commerce, as may be necessary to carry out the purpose of this order, relating to arms and related materiel identified in the Export Administration Regulations (15 C.F.R. Parts 730-799). The Secretary of Commerce may redelegate any of these functions to other officers and agencies of the United States Government.

SEC. 4. *Authorization.* All agencies of the United States Government are hereby directed to take all appropriate measures within their authority to carry out the provisions of this order, including suspension or termination of licenses or other authorizations in effect as of the date of this order.

SEC. 5. *Delegation of Authority.* The Secretary of State and the Secretary of Commerce in consultation with the Secretary of State are hereby authorized to promulgate rules and regulations, and to employ all powers granted to the President by section 5 of the United Nations Participation Act [22 U.S.C. 287c] and not otherwise delegated by Executive order, as may be necessary to carry out the purpose of implementing any other arms embargo mandated by resolution of the United Nations Security Council, consistent with the

allocation of functions delegated under section 3 of this order. The Secretary of State or the Secretary of Commerce may redelegate any of these functions to other officers and agencies of the United States Government.

SEC. 6. *Judicial Review.* Nothing contained in this order shall create any right or benefit, substantive or procedural, enforceable by any party against the United States, its agencies or instrumentalities, its officers or employees, or any other person.

SEC. 7. *Effective Date.* This order shall take effect at 11:59 p.m. eastern daylight time on May 26, 1994.

WILLIAM J. CLINTON.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 12 sections 3409, 3413.

#### § 287d. Use of armed forces; limitations

The President is authorized to negotiate a special agreement or agreements with the Security Council which shall be subject to the approval of the Congress by appropriate Act or joint resolution, providing for the numbers and types of armed forces, their degree of readiness and general location, and the nature of facilities and assistance, including rights of passage, to be made available to the Security Council on its call for the purpose of maintaining international peace and security in accordance with article 43 of said Charter. The President shall not be deemed to require the authorization of the Congress to make available to the Security Council on its call in order to take action under article 42 of said Charter and pursuant to such special agreement or agreements the armed forces, facilities, or assistance provided for therein: *Provided*, That, except as authorized in section 287d-1 of this title, nothing herein contained shall be construed as an authorization to the President by the Congress to make available to the Security Council for such purpose armed forces, facilities, or assistance in addition to the forces, facilities, and assistance provided for in such special agreement or agreements.

(Dec. 20, 1945, ch. 583, § 6, 59 Stat. 621; Oct. 10, 1949, ch. 660, § 4, 63 Stat. 735.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Article 43 of said Charter and article 42 of said Charter, referred to in text, are articles of the United Nations Charter.

Herein, referred to in text, means act Dec. 20, 1945, ch. 583, 59 Stat. 619, as amended, known as the United Nations Participation Act of 1945, which is classified generally to this subchapter (§ 287 et seq.). For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 287 of this title and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1949—Act Oct. 10, 1949, inserted “, except as authorized in section 287d-1 of this title,” in proviso.

#### § 287d-1. Noncombatant assistance to United Nations

##### (a) Armed forces details; supplies and equipment; obligation of funds; procurement and replacement of requested items

Notwithstanding the provisions of any other law, the President, upon the request by the United Nations for cooperative action, and to the extent that he finds that it is consistent

with the national interest to comply with such request, may authorize, in support of such activities of the United Nations as are specifically directed to the peaceful settlement of disputes and not involving the employment of armed forces contemplated by chapter VII of the United Nations Charter—

(1) the detail to the United Nations, under such terms and conditions as the President shall determine, of personnel of the armed forces of the United States to serve as observers, guards, or in any non-combatant capacity, but in no event shall more than a total of one thousand of such personnel be so detailed at any one time: *Provided*, That while so detailed, such personnel shall be considered for all purposes as acting in the line of duty, including the receipt of pay and allowances as personnel of the armed forces of the United States, credit for longevity and retirement, and all other perquisites appertaining to such duty: *Provided further*, That upon authorization or approval by the President, such personnel may accept directly from the United Nations (a) any or all of the allowances or perquisites to which they are entitled under the first proviso hereof, and (b) extraordinary expenses and perquisites incident to such detail;

(2) the furnishing of facilities, services, or other assistance and the loan of the agreed fair share of the United States of any supplies and equipment to the United Nations by the Department of Defense, under such terms and conditions as the President shall determine;

(3) the obligation, insofar as necessary to carry out the purposes of clauses (1) and (2) of this subsection, of any funds appropriated to the Department of Defense or any department therein, the procurement of such personnel, supplies, equipment, facilities, services, or other assistance as may be made available in accordance with the request of the United Nations, and the replacement of such items, when necessary, where they are furnished from stocks.

**(b) Reimbursement from United Nations; waiver of reimbursement**

Whenever personnel or assistance is made available pursuant to the authority contained in subsection (a)(1) and (2) of this section, the President shall require reimbursement from the United Nations for the expense thereby incurred by the United States: *Provided*, That in exceptional circumstances, or when the President finds it to be in the national interest, he may waive, in whole or in part, the requirement of such reimbursement: *Provided further*, That when any such reimbursement is made, it shall be credited, at the option of the appropriate department of the Department of Defense, either to the appropriation, fund, or account utilized in incurring the obligation, or to an appropriate appropriation, fund, or account currently available for the purposes for which expenditures were made.

**(c) Additional appropriation authorizations**

In addition to the authorization of appropriations to the Department of State contained in section 287e of this title, there is hereby authorized to be appropriated to the Department of De-

fense, or any department therein, such sums as may be necessary to reimburse such departments in the event that reimbursement from the United Nations is waived in whole or in part pursuant to authority contained in subsection (b) of this section.

**(d) Disclosure of information**

Nothing in this subchapter shall authorize the disclosure of any information or knowledge in any case in which such disclosure is prohibited by any other law of the United States.

(Dec. 20, 1945, ch. 583, §7, as added Oct. 10, 1949, ch. 660, §5, 63 Stat. 735; amended Aug. 10, 1949, ch. 412, §12(a), 63 Stat. 591.)

CHANGE OF NAME

National Military Establishment changed to Department of Defense by act Aug. 10, 1949.

EX. ORD. NO. 10206. SUPPORT OF PEACEFUL SETTLEMENT OF DISPUTES

Ex. Ord. No. 10206, Jan. 19, 1951, 16 F.R. 529, provided: By virtue of the authority vested in me by the Constitution and the statutes, including the United Nations Participation Act of 1945 (59 Stat. 619), as amended [this subchapter], hereinafter referred to as the Act, and the act of August 8, 1950 (Public Law 673, 81st Congress) [sections 301 to 303 of Title 3, The President], and as President of the United States, it is hereby ordered as follows:

1. The Secretary of State, upon the request by the United Nations for cooperative action, and to the extent that he finds that it is consistent with the national interest to comply with such request, is authorized, in support of such activities of the United Nations as are specifically directed to the peaceful settlement of disputes and not involving the employment of armed forces contemplated by Chapter VII of the United Nations Charter, to request the Secretary of Defense to detail personnel of the armed forces to the United Nations, and to furnish facilities, services, or other assistance and to loan supplies and equipment to the United Nations in an agreed fair share of the United States under such terms and conditions as the Secretary of State and the Secretary of Defense shall jointly determine and in accordance with and subject to the provisions of paragraphs (1), (2), and (3) of section 7(a) of the Act [subsection (a)(1), (2) and (3) of this section], and the Secretary of Defense is authorized to comply with the request of the Secretary of State, giving due regard to the requirements of the national defense.

2. The Secretary of State, in accordance with and subject to the provisions of section 7(b) of the Act [subsection (b) of this section], shall require reimbursement from the United Nations for the expense thereby incurred by the United States whenever personnel or assistance is made available to the United Nations, except that in exceptional circumstances, or when the Secretary of State finds it to be in the national interest, he may, after consultation with the Secretary of Defense, waive, in whole or in part, the requirement of such reimbursement.

3. The Secretary of Defense, in accordance with and subject to the provisions of section 7(a)(1) of the Act [subsection (a)(1) of this section], may authorize personnel of the armed forces detailed to the United Nations to accept directly from the United Nations (a) any or all of the allowances or perquisites to which they are entitled under the first proviso of section 7(a)(1) of the Act [subsection (a)(1) of this section], and (b) extraordinary expenses and perquisites incident to such detail.

HARRY S TRUMAN.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 287d, 2348 of this title.

**§ 287e. Authorization of appropriations; payment of expenses**

There is hereby authorized to be appropriated annually to the Department of State, out of any money in the Treasury not otherwise appropriated, such sums as may be necessary for the payment by the United States of its share of the expenses of the United Nations as apportioned by the General Assembly in accordance with article 17 of the Charter, and for all necessary salaries and expenses of the representatives provided for in section 287 of this title, and of their appropriate staffs, including personal services in the District of Columbia and elsewhere, without regard to the civil-service laws and chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of title 5; travel expenses without regard to the Standardized Government Travel Regulations, as amended, subchapter I of chapter 57 and section 5731 of title 5 and, under such rules and regulations as the Secretary of State may prescribe, travel expenses of families and transportation of effects of United States representatives and other personnel in going to and returning from their post of duty; allowances for living quarters, including heat, fuel, and light, as authorized by section 5912 of title 5; cost-of-living allowances for personnel stationed abroad under such rules and regulations as the Secretary of State may prescribe; communications services; stenographic reporting, translating, and other services, by contract; hire of passenger motor vehicles and other local transportation; rent of offices; printing and binding without regard to section 501 of title 44; allowances and expenses as provided in section 287r of this title, and allowances and expenses equivalent to those provided in section 4085 of this title; the lease or rental (for periods not exceeding ten years) of living quarters for the use of the representatives provided for in section 287 of this title serving abroad and of their appropriate staffs the cost of installation and use of telephones in the same manner as telephone service is provided for use of the Foreign Service pursuant to section 1348 of title 31, and unusual expenses similar to those authorized by section 5913 of title 5, incident to the operation and maintenance of such living quarters abroad; and such other expenses as may be authorized by the Secretary of State; all without regard to section 5 of title 41.

(Dec. 20, 1945, ch. 583, § 8, formerly § 7, 59 Stat. 621, renumbered and amended Oct. 10, 1949, ch. 660, § 6, 63 Stat. 736; Oct. 28, 1949, ch. 782, title II, § 202(2), title XI, § 1106(a), 63 Stat. 954, 972; Sept. 6, 1960, Pub. L. 86-707, title III, § 311(b), 74 Stat. 797; Oct. 17, 1980, Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2206(a)(2)(B), 94 Stat. 2161; Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title I, § 119, 96 Stat. 280; Oct. 1, 1988, Pub. L. 100-459, title III, § 304(a), 102 Stat. 2207.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Article 17 of the Charter, referred to in text, is article 17 of the United Nations Charter.

The civil-service laws, referred to in text, are set forth in Title 5, Government Organization and Employees. See, particularly, section 3301 et seq. of Title 5.

CODIFICATION

“Chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of title 5” substituted in text for “the Classification Act of

1949” on authority of Pub. L. 89-554, § 7(b), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 631, the first section of which enacted Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

“Subchapter I of chapter 57 and section 5731 of title 5” substituted in text for “the Travel Expense Act of 1949, and section 10 of the Act of March 3, 1933, as amended [5 U.S.C. 73b]” on authority of Pub. L. 89-554, § 7(b), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 631, the first section of which enacted Title 5.

“Section 5912 of title 5” and “section 5913 of title 5” substituted in text for “the Act approved June 26, 1930 (5 U.S.C. 118a)” and “section 22 of the Administrative Expenses Act of 1946, as amended by section 311 of the Overseas Differentials and Allowances Act [5 U.S.C. 3039]”, respectively, on authority of Pub. L. 89-554, § 7(b), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 631, the first section of which enacted Title 5.

“Section 501 of title 44” substituted in text for “section 11 of the Act of March 1, 1919 (44 U.S.C. 111)” on authority of Pub. L. 90-620, § 2(b), Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1305, the first section of which enacted Title 44, Public Printing and Documents.

“Section 1348 of title 31” substituted in text for “the Act of August 23, 1912, as amended (31 U.S.C. 679)” on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, § 4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

AMENDMENTS

1988—Pub. L. 100-459 inserted “serving abroad” after “use of the representatives provided for in section 287 of this title”, inserted “abroad” after “such living quarters” and struck out at end “Any payments made by United States Government personnel for occupancy by them of living quarters leased or rented under this section shall be credited to the appropriation, fund, or account utilized by the Secretary of State for such lease or rental or to the appropriation, fund, or account currently available for such purpose.”

1982—Pub. L. 97-241 substituted “use of the representatives provided for in section 287 of this title and of their appropriate staffs” for “use of the representative of the United States to the United Nations referred to in subsection (a) of section 287 of this title” and inserted provision that payments made by United States Government personnel for occupancy of living quarters leased or rented be credited to the appropriation, fund, or account utilized for such lease or rental or to the appropriation, fund, or account currently available for such purpose.

1980—Pub. L. 96-465 substituted reference to section 4085 of this title for reference to section 1131 of this title.

1960—Pub. L. 86-707 substituted “and unusual expenses similar to those authorized by section 5913 of title 5, incident to the operation and maintenance of such living quarters” for “and the allotment of funds, similar to the allotment authorized by section 1132 of this title, for unusual expenses incident to the operation and maintenance of such living quarters, to be accounted for in accordance with section 1133 of this title.”

1949—Act Oct. 28, 1949, substituted “Classification Act of 1949” for “Classification Act of 1923”.

Act Oct. 10, 1949, which renumbered section as section 8 of act Dec. 20, 1945, from section 7, authorized lease or rental, for periods not to exceed 10 years, of a residence for our representative to the United Nations, and clarified references to the civil service and classification laws, subsistence allowances, and travel expense.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1988 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 100-459 effective July 1, 1989, see section 304(c)(1) of Pub. L. 100-459, set out as an Effective Date of 1988 Amendment; Transition Provisions note under section 287e-1 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-465 effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L.

96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

#### REPEALS

Act Oct. 28, 1949, ch. 782, cited as a credit to this section, was repealed (subject to a savings clause) by Pub. L. 89-554, Sept. 6, 1966, § 8, 80 Stat. 632, 655.

#### ANNUAL APPROPRIATIONS

Annual appropriations to meet the obligations of membership in various international organizations were contained in acts listed in a note set out under section 269a of this title.

#### REDUCTION IN APPROPRIATIONS FOR CONTRIBUTIONS TO INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATIONS IF OFFICIAL STATUS, ACCREDITATION, OR RECOGNITION IS GRANTED TO ORGANIZATION SEEKING LEGALIZATION OF PEDOPHILIA

Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 102(g), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 389, as amended by Pub. L. 103-415, § 1(o), Oct. 25, 1994, 108 Stat. 4301, provided that: "Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the funds authorized to be appropriated for the United Nations and its affiliated agencies in 'Contributions for International Organizations' shall be reduced in the amount of \$118,875,000 for fiscal year 1995, and for each year thereafter, until the President certifies to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the President of the Senate that no United Nations agency or United Nations affiliated agency grants any official status, accreditation, or recognition to any organization which promotes and condones or seeks the legalization of pedophilia, or which includes as a subsidiary or member any such organization."

[Functions of President under section 102(g) of Pub. L. 103-236, set out above, delegated to Secretary of State by Memorandum of President of the United States, July 26, 1994, 59 F.R. 40205, set out as a note under section 2370a of this title.]

#### MEMBERSHIP OF PALESTINE LIBERATION ORGANIZATION IN UNITED NATIONS AGENCIES

Pub. L. 101-246, title IV, § 414, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 70, provided that:

"(a) PROHIBITION.—No funds authorized to be appropriated by this Act or any other Act shall be available for the United Nations or any specialized agency thereof which accords the Palestine Liberation Organization the same standing as member states.

"(b) TRANSFER OR REPROGRAMMING.—Funds subject to the prohibition contained in subsection (a) which would be available for the United Nations or any specialized agency thereof (but for that prohibition) are authorized to remain available until expended and may be reprogrammed or transferred to any other account of the Department of State or the Agency for International Development to carry out the general purposes for which such funds were authorized."

#### PROBABLE EXEMPTIONS TO UNITED NATIONS EMPLOYEE HIRING FREEZE

Pub. L. 100-204, title VII, § 701, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1383, as amended by Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 163, Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 676, provided that:

"(a) FINDINGS.—The Congress makes the following findings:

"(1) In April 1986, the Secretary-General of the United Nations adopted a freeze on the hiring of personnel within the United Nations Secretariat.

"(2) The conditions of the freeze were such that, as the terms of office for the personnel expired, replacements would not be recruited or hired to fill the vacant positions, with minor exceptions.

"(3) The freeze was designed to reduce United Nations personnel by 15 percent over three years, as recommended by the Group of High-Level Intergovernmental Experts to Review the Efficiency of the Administrative and Financial Functioning of the United Nations (commonly referred to as the 'Group of 18 Experts').

"(4) On May 5, 1987, the Secretary-General reported to the Department of State that he was considering granting 156 exceptions to the hiring freeze.

"(5) Of these 156 probable exceptions, 104 would be Soviet and Soviet-bloc nationals currently employed in the United Nations Secretariat—of 298 Soviet and Soviet-bloc nationals currently employed in the United Nations Secretariat—who would be replaced over the next 18 months.

"(6) According to a report from the Select Committee on Intelligence of the Senate on 'Soviet Presence in the United Nations Secretariat' (Senate Print 99-52, May 1985), approximately one-fourth of the Soviets in the United Nations Secretariat are intelligence officers, many more are co-opted by the Soviet intelligence agencies, and all Soviets in the United Nations Secretariat must respond to KGB requests for assistance.

"(7) Other United States intelligence authorities estimate that as many as one-half of the Soviet and Soviet-bloc nationals in the United Nations Secretariat are officers of the KGB or the GRU.

"(8) If the Secretary-General's probable exemptions are adopted, the Soviet Union will be allowed to replace retiring Soviet and Soviet-bloc personnel with new, highly skilled and well-trained intelligence officers of the KGB or the GRU.

"(9) The Secretary-General's proposed exceptions would thus provide the Soviet Union with the capability to rebuild its intelligence apparatus within the United States, which was devastated in recent years when the United States ordered severe reductions in the size of the Soviet mission to the United Nations, the Soviet Embassy in Washington, District of Columbia, and the Soviet Consulate in San Francisco, California.

"(10) Article 100 of the United Nations Charter calls for the establishment of an international civil service whose members are neutral and loyal only to the United Nations.

"(11) Section 3 of Article 101 of the United Nations Charter calls for the appointment of individuals who are professionally qualified for the positions they are to fill and maintains that due regard shall be paid to the importance of recruiting the staff on as wide a geographical basis as possible.

"(12) As of September 1985, 442 of 446 Soviet nationals employed throughout the United Nations system are 'seconded', that is, serve on short, fixed-term contracts.

"(13) Through the abuse of short, fixed-term contracts, the Soviet Union has maintained undue influence and control over major offices of the United Nations Secretariat, thereby effectively using the United Nations Secretariat in the conduct of its foreign relations, in clear violation of Articles 100 and 101 of the United Nations Charter.

"(14) The Secretary-General's proposed exceptions to the hiring freeze (as described in paragraphs (1) through (5)) would continue the gross violations of Articles 100 and 101 of the United Nations Charter described in paragraph (13).

"(15) The Secretary-General's proposed exceptions to such hiring freeze would be clearly inconsistent with the terms of the United Nation's self-imposed reform program.

"(16) The United Nations has not yet achieved its reform goals and there is no indication that the United Nations can afford to make such large exceptions to such hiring freeze.

"(b) SENSE OF THE CONGRESS.—It is the sense of the Congress that—

"(1) the President should take all such actions necessary to ensure compliance with the hiring freeze rule, including withholding all assessed United States contributions to the United Nations, and denying United States entry visas to Soviet and Soviet-bloc applicants coming to the United States to replace Soviet and Soviet-bloc nationals currently serving in the United Nations Secretariat;

“(2) the President, through the Department of State and the United States mission to the United Nations, should express to the Secretary-General of the United Nations the insistence of the American people that the hiring freeze continue indefinitely, or until the United Nations has complied with the Group of 18 recommendations and can thus afford to make exceptions to the freeze;

“(3) the Secretary-General should revoke all exceptions to the hiring freeze rule, excepting those member-nations which have 15 or fewer nationals serving in the United Nations Secretariat, or those positions not subject to geographical representation, such as those of the general service category;

“(4) the long-term, flagrant violations of Articles 100 and 101 of the United Nations Charter and the abuse of secondment by the Soviet Union and Soviet-bloc member-nations are reprehensible;

“(5) the United Nations should adopt the recommendations of the Group of 18 (as referred to in subsection (a)(3)) that no member-nation be allowed to have more than 50 percent of its nationals employed under fixed-term contracts;

“(6) the Soviet Union is hereby condemned for—

“(A) its refusal to adhere to the principles of the United Nations Charter calling for an international civil service,

“(B) its abuse of secondment, and

“(C) its absolute disregard of the solemn purpose of the United Nations to be an international civil service; and

“(7) if the Soviet Union and the Soviet-bloc intend to remain member-nations of the United Nations, they should adhere to Articles 100, 101, and all other principles of the United Nations Charter to which every other member-nation must adhere.

“(c) DEFINITION.—For the purposes of this section, the term ‘Soviet-bloc’ means the countries of Bulgaria, Cuba, Czechoslovakia, East Germany, Hungary, Nicaragua, North Korea, Poland, and Romania.”

#### HOUSING ALLOWANCES OF INTERNATIONAL CIVIL SERVANTS

Pub. L. 100-204, title VII, § 703, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1389, provided that:

“(a) UNITED STATES POLICY.—It is the policy of the United States to seek the implementation by the United Nations of the recommendation by the International Civil Service Commission to deduct from the pay (commonly referred to as a ‘rental deduction’) of an international civil servant the amount of any housing allowance or payment which is provided by any member state to that international civil servant, in accordance with Article 100 of the Charter of the United Nations and regulations thereunder.

“(b) UNITED STATES AMBASSADOR TO THE UNITED NATIONS.—The United States Ambassador to the United Nations shall seek to promote the adoption of the recommendation described in subsection (a).”

#### REFORM IN BUDGET DECISION-MAKING PROCEDURES OF UNITED NATIONS AND ITS SPECIALIZED AGENCIES

Pub. L. 103-236, title IV, § 409(a)–(d), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 454, provided that:

“(a) ASSESSED CONTRIBUTIONS.—For assessed contributions authorized to be appropriated for ‘Assessed Contributions to International Organizations’ by this Act [108 Stat. 382, 388], the President may withhold 20 percent of the funds appropriated for the United States assessed contribution to the United Nations or to any of its specialized agencies for any calendar year if the United Nations or any such agency has failed to implement or to continue to implement consensus-based decisionmaking procedures on budgetary matters which assure that sufficient attention is paid to the views of the United States and other member states that are the major financial contributors to such assessed budgets.

“(b) NOTICE TO CONGRESS.—The President shall notify the Congress when a decision is made to withhold any

share of the United States assessed contribution to the United Nations or its specialized agencies pursuant to subsection (a) and shall notify the Congress when the decision is made to pay any previously withheld assessed contribution. A notification under this subsection shall include appropriate consultation between the President (or the President’s representative) and the Committee on Foreign Affairs [now Committee on International Relations] of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate.

“(c) CONTRIBUTIONS FOR PRIOR YEARS.—Subject to the availability of appropriations, payment of assessed contributions for prior years may be made to the United Nations or any of its specialized agencies notwithstanding subsection (a) if such payment would further United States interests in that organization.

“(d) REPORT TO CONGRESS.—Not later than February 1 of each year, the President shall submit to the Congress a report concerning the amount of United States assessed contributions paid to the United Nations and each of its specialized agencies during the preceding calendar year.”

[Functions of President under section 409 of Pub. L. 103-236, set out above, delegated to Secretary of State by Memorandum of President of the United States, July 26, 1994, 59 F.R. 40205, set out as a note under section 2370a of this title.]

Similar provisions were contained in the following prior authorization act:

Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 162(a)–(d), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 675; repealed by Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 139(21), title IV, § 409(e), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 399, 454, as amended by Pub. L. 103-415, § 1(aa), Oct. 25, 1994, 108 Stat. 4302.

Pub. L. 101-246, title IV, § 405, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 65, provided that progress had been made in formulation and implementation of budget reforms by United Nations and its specialized agencies but that limitation on United States assessed contributions would continue until President made specific determinations on continued implementation of decisionmaking procedures on budget matters, elimination of abuse of secondment in United Nations Secretariat, and reduction in staff of United Nations Secretariat, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 162(e), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 676.

Pub. L. 99-93, title I, § 143, Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 424, as amended by Pub. L. 100-204, title VII, § 702(b), Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1386, provided for limitation on assessed contributions of United States until reform in budget decisionmaking procedures of United Nations and its specialized agencies had been formulated and implemented as determined by President and reported to Congress, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 162(e), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 676.

#### EMPLOYEES OF THE UNITED NATIONS

Pub. L. 99-93, title I, § 151, Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 428, provided that:

“(a) INITIAL REPORT.—Not later than 90 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Aug. 16, 1985], the Secretary of State shall report to the Congress on whether, and the extent to which, international civil servants employed by the United Nations, including those seconded to the United Nations, are required to return all or part of their salaries to their respective governments. The Secretary shall also include in this report a description of the steps taken by the Department of State and by the United States Representative to the United Nations to correct this practice.

“(b) REPORT ON STEPS TO CORRECT PRACTICE.—The Secretary of State shall determine and report to the Congress on whether substantial progress has been made by June 1, 1986, in correcting the practice of international civil servants employed by the United Nations being required to return all or part of their salaries to their respective governments.

“(c) REDUCTION IN CONTRIBUTION IF SUBSTANTIAL PROGRESS [sic] NOT MADE.—If the Secretary of State determines pursuant to subsection (b) that substantial

progress has not been made in correcting this practice, the United States shall thereafter reduce the amount of its annual assessed contributions to the United Nations by the amount of that contribution which is the United States proportionate share of the salaries of those international civil servants employed by the United Nations who are returning any portion of their salaries to their respective governments.

“(d) NATIONAL TAXATION.—This section does not apply with respect to payments made for purposes of national taxation in accordance with formal treaty reservations concerning such taxation by a member state of the United Nations.”

RESTRICTIONS RELATING TO THE PALESTINE LIBERATION ORGANIZATION AND THE SOUTH WEST AFRICA PEOPLE'S ORGANIZATION

Pub. L. 98-164, title I, §114, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1020, as amended by Pub. L. 99-93, title I, §144, Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 424; Pub. L. 100-204, title VII, §705, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1390, provided that:

“(a) Funds appropriated for any fiscal year for the Department of State for ‘International Organizations and Conferences’ may not be used for payment by the United States, as its contribution toward the assessed budget of the United Nations for any year, of any amount which would cause the total amount paid by the United States as its assessed contribution for that year to exceed the amount assessed as the United States contribution for that year less—

“(1) 25 per centum of the amount budgeted for that year for the Committee on the Exercise for the Inalienable Rights of the Palestinian People (or any similar successor entity); and

“(2) 25 per centum of the amount budgeted for that year for the Special Unit on Palestinian Rights (or any similar successor entity);

“(3) 25 percent of the amount budgeted for that year for the Special Committee to Investigate Israeli Practices Affecting the Human Rights of the Population of the Occupied Territories (or any similar successor entity);

“(4) 25 per centum of the amount budgeted for that year for projects whose primary purpose is to provide benefits to the Palestine Liberation Organization or entities associated with it or to the South West Africa People's Organization;

“(5) 25 percent of the amount budgeted for that year for the Second Decade to Combat Racism and Racial Discrimination;

“(6) 25 percent of the amount budgeted for any other United Nations agency or conference whose sole or partial purpose is to implement the provisions of General Assembly Resolution 33/79; and

“(7) 25 percent of the amount budgeted for the General Assembly-approved \$73,500,000 conference center to be constructed for the Economic Commission for Africa (ECA) in the Ethiopian capital of Addis Ababa.

“(b) Funds appropriated for any fiscal year for the Department of State for ‘International Organizations and Conferences’ may not be used for payment by the United States, as its contribution toward the assessed budget of any specialized agency of the United Nations for any year, of any amount which would cause the total amount paid by the United States as its assessed contribution for that year to exceed the amount assessed as the United States contribution for that year less 25 per centum of the amount budgeted by such agency for that year for projects whose primary purpose is to provide benefits to the Palestine Liberation Organization or entities associated with it or to the South West Africa People's Organization.

“(c) The President shall annually review the budgets of the United Nations and its specialized agencies to determine which projects have the primary purpose of providing benefits to the Palestine Liberation Organization or to the South West Africa People's Organization. The President shall report to the Congress on any such project for which a portion of the United States assessed contribution is withheld and the amount withheld.

“(d) Subsections (a)(3) and (b) shall not be construed as limiting United States contributions to the United Nations or its specialized agencies for projects whose primary purpose is to provide humanitarian, educational, developmental, and other nonpolitical benefits.”

ANNUAL REVIEW FOR PROJECTS PROVIDING POLITICAL BENEFITS TO PALESTINE LIBERATION ORGANIZATION; REPORT TO CONGRESS ON WITHHOLDING OF ASSESSED CONTRIBUTION

Section 104(c) of Pub. L. 97-241 provided that: “The President shall annually review the budgets of the United Nations and its specialized agencies to determine which projects have the primary purpose of providing political benefit to the Palestine Liberation Organization. The President shall report to the Congress on any such project for which a portion of the United States assessed contribution is withheld and the amount withheld.”

[Functions of the President under section 104(c) of Pub. L. 97-241, set out as a note above, delegated to the Secretary of State, see Ex. Ord. No. 12374, July 28, 1982, 47 F.R. 32903, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 12408, Feb. 23, 1983, 48 F.R. 8035.]

LIMIT ON PAYMENTS TO UNITED NATIONS AND AFFILIATED AGENCIES

Pub. L. 103-236, title IV, §404(b)(1), (2), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 447, provided that:

“(1) FISCAL YEARS 1994 AND 1995.—Funds authorized to be appropriated for ‘Contributions for International Peacekeeping Activities’ for fiscal years 1994 and 1995 shall not be available for the payment of the United States assessed contribution for a United Nations peacekeeping operation in an amount which is greater than 30.4 percent of the total of all assessed contributions for that operation, notwithstanding the last sentence of the paragraph headed ‘Contributions to International Organizations’ in Public Law 92-544, as amended by section 203 of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Year 1976 (22 U.S.C. 287e note).

“(2) SUBSEQUENT FISCAL YEARS.—Funds authorized to be appropriated for ‘Contributions for International Peacekeeping Activities’ for any fiscal year after fiscal year 1995 shall not be available for the payment of the United States assessed contribution for a United Nations peacekeeping operation in an amount which is greater than 25 percent of the total of all assessed contributions for that operation.”

Pub. L. 103-236, title IV, §410, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 454, provided that: “The United States shall not make any voluntary or assessed contribution—

“(1) to any affiliated organization of the United Nations which grants full membership as a state to any organization or group that does not have the internationally recognized attributes of statehood, or

“(2) to the United Nations, if the United Nations grants full membership as a state in the United Nations to any organization or group that does not have the internationally recognized attributes of statehood,

during any period in which such membership is effective.”

Pub. L. 92-544, title I, §101, Oct. 25, 1972, 86 Stat. 1110, as amended by Pub. L. 94-141, title II, §203, Nov. 29, 1975, 89 Stat. 762; Pub. L. 103-236, title IV, §404(b)(3), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 447, provided that: “After December 31, 1973, no appropriation is authorized and no payment shall be made to the United Nations or any affiliated agency in excess of 25 per centum of the total annual assessment of such organization. Appropriations are authorized and contributions and payments may be made to the following organizations and activities notwithstanding that such contributions and payments are in excess of 25 per centum of the total annual assessment of the respective organization or 33⅓ per centum of the budget for the respective activity: the International Atomic Energy Agency, the joint financing



program of the International Civil Aviation Organization, and contributions for international peacekeeping activities (other than United Nations peacekeeping operations) conducted through multilateral agreements.”

UNITED STATES ASSESSED CONTRIBUTION TO THE UNITED NATIONS

Pub. L. 92-226, pt. IV, §410, Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 36, provided that: “The Congress strongly urges the President to undertake such negotiations as may be necessary to implement that portion of the recommendations of the Report of the President’s Commission for the Observance of the Twenty-fifth Anniversary of the United Nations (known as the ‘Lodge Commission’) which proposes that the portion of the regular assessed costs to be paid by the United States to the United Nations be reduced so that the United States is assessed in each year not more than 25 per centum of such costs assessed all members of the United Nations for that year.”

CROSS REFERENCES

Consent by State Department to contributions to international organizations and reports to Congress, see section 262a of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 287d-1, 289b, 2673 of this title.

**§ 287e-1. Housing supplement for certain employees assigned to the United States Mission to the United Nations**

The Secretary of State may, under such regulations as he shall prescribe, and notwithstanding section 3324(a) and (b) of title 31 and section 5536 of title 5:

(1) Make available to the Representative of the United States to the United Nations and the Deputy Permanent Representative of the United States to the United Nations living quarters leased or rented by the United States (for periods not exceeding ten years) and allowances for unusual expenses incident to the operation and maintenance of such living quarters similar to those and to be considered for all purposes as authorized by section 5913 of title 5.

(2) Make available in New York to no more than 18 foreign service employees of the staff of the United States Mission to the United Nations, other representatives, and no more than two employees who serve at the pleasure of the Representative, living quarters leased or rented by the United States (for periods not exceeding ten years). The number of employees to which such quarters will be made available shall be determined by the Secretary and shall reflect a significant reduction over the number of persons eligible for housing benefits as of October 1, 1988. No employee may occupy a unit under this provision if the unit is owned by the employee. The Secretary shall require that each employee occupying housing under this subsection contribute to the Department of State a percentage of his or her base salary, in an amount to be determined by the Secretary of State, toward the cost of such housing. The Secretary may reduce such payments to the extent of income taxes paid on the value of the leased or rented quarters any payments made by employees to the Department of State for occupancy by them of living quar-

ters leased or rented under this section shall be credited to the appropriation, fund, or account utilized by the Secretary of State for such lease or rental or to the appropriation, fund, or account currently available for such purpose.

(3) provide<sup>1</sup> such allowance as the Secretary considers appropriate, to each Delegate and Alternate Delegate of the United States to any session of the General Assembly of the United Nations who is not a permanent member of the staff of the United States Mission to the United Nations, in order to compensate each such Delegate or Alternate Delegate for necessary housing and subsistence expenses incurred by him with respect to attending any such session.

(4) The Inspector General shall review the program established by this section no later than December 1989 and periodically thereafter with a view to increasing cost savings and making other appropriate recommendations.

(Dec. 20, 1945, ch. 583, §9, as added Oct. 18, 1973, Pub. L. 93-126, §15, 87 Stat. 454; amended Nov. 22, 1983, Pub. L. 98-164, title II, §215, 97 Stat. 1035; Oct. 1, 1988, Pub. L. 100-459, title III, §304(b), 102 Stat. 2207.)

CODIFICATION

“Section 3324(a) and (b) of title 31” substituted in introductory text for “section 3648 of the Revised Statutes (31 U.S.C. 3324)” on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, §4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

“Section 5913 of title 5” substituted in par. (1) for “section 22 of the Administrative Expenses Act of 1946, as amended by section 311 of the Overseas Differentials and Allowances Act” on authority of Pub. L. 89-554, §7(b), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 631, the first section of which enacted Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

AMENDMENTS

1988—Pub. L. 100-459, §304(b)(1), (3), substituted reference to Secretary of State for reference to President in introductory provisions and struck out last sentence providing that not more than fifty employees, including not more than five employees of the United States Information Agency, could receive an allowance under par. (1) of this section at any one time.

Par. (1), Pub. L. 100-459, §304(b)(1), (3), added par. (1) and struck out former par. (1) which read as follows: “grant any employee of the staff of the United States Mission to the United Nations designated by the Secretary of State, and any employee of the United States Information Agency designated by the Director of that Agency, who is required because of important representational responsibilities to live in the extraordinarily high-rent area immediately surrounding the headquarters of the United Nations in New York, New York, an allowance to compensate for the portion of expenses necessarily incurred by the employee for quarters and utilities which exceed the average of such expenses necessarily incurred by the employee for quarters and utilities which exceed the average of such expenses incurred by typical, permanent residents of the Metropolitan New York, New York, area with comparable salary and family size who are not compelled by reason of their employment to live in such high-rent area; and”.

Pars. (2) to (4), Pub. L. 100-459, §304(b)(2), (3), added par. (2), redesignated former par. (2) as (3) and sub-

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be capitalized.

stituted “Secretary” for “President”, and added par. (4).

1983—Pub. L. 98-164, §215(2), inserted limitation of five United States Information Agency employees, and substituted “fifty” for “forty-five”.

Par. (1). Pub. L. 98-164, §215(1), inserted provisions relating to applicability to United States Information Agency employees.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1988 AMENDMENT; TRANSITION PROVISIONS

Section 304(c) of Pub. L. 100-459 provided that:

“(1) Provisions set forth in this section [amending this section and section 287e of this title] shall be effective July 1, 1989.

“(2) In the event that taxes paid by an employee on the benefit provided under subsection (2) of section 9 [22 U.S.C. 287e-1(2)] exceed the contribution amount computed as a percentage of base salary under that subsection, the Department of State may reimburse the employee up to the amount of such differential for the period from the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 1, 1988] through July 1, 1989.”

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Authority of President under this section delegated to Secretary of State, see section 4(b) of Ex. Ord. No. 11609, July 22, 1971, 36 F.R. 13747, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 11779, Apr. 22, 1974, 39 F.R. 14185, set out as a note under section 301 of Title 3, The President.

**§ 287f. Omitted**

CODIFICATION

Section, act Oct. 22, 1951, ch. 533, title I, 65 Stat. 577, which authorized the Department of State to acquire surplus property for the United Nations and authorized the reduction of the United States contribution to the United Nations by the value of the property acquired and expenses incidental thereto, was from the Department of State Appropriation Act, 1952, and was not repeated in subsequent appropriation acts. Similar provisions were contained in act Sept. 6, 1950, ch. 896, ch. III, title I, 64 Stat. 610.

**§ 287g. Authorization of appropriations for loan to United Nations; restrictions on use of proceeds of loan**

There is hereby authorized to be appropriated to the President, without fiscal-year limitation, out of any money in the Treasury not otherwise appropriated, \$100,000,000 for a loan to the United Nations. The proceeds of such loan shall not be used to relieve members of the United Nations of their obligation to pay arrearages on payments of any United Nations assessments, and shall not be used to reduce regular or special assessments against any such members.

(Pub. L. 87-731, §1, Oct. 2, 1962, 76 Stat. 695.)

CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as part of act Dec. 20, 1945, ch. 583, 59 Stat. 619, known as the United Nations Participation Act of 1945, which comprises this subchapter.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 287h, 287i of this title.

**§ 287h. Limitation on loan**

The total amount of money that may be loaned to the United Nations pursuant to the authorization contained in section 287g of this title shall not exceed the aggregate amount of loans made by other nations.

(Pub. L. 87-731, §2, Oct. 2, 1962, 76 Stat. 695.)

CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as part of act Dec. 20, 1945, ch. 583, 59 Stat. 619, known as the United Nations Participation Act of 1945, which comprises this subchapter.

**§ 287i. Deduction of principal and interest from annual payment of assessed share of United States of budget**

There shall be deducted from the annual payment of the assessed share of the United States of the budget of the United Nations an amount equal to the corresponding annual installment of principal and interest due to the United States on account of the loan made pursuant to section 287g of this title.

(Pub. L. 87-731, §3, Oct. 2, 1962, 76 Stat. 696.)

CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as part of act Dec. 20, 1945, ch. 583, 59 Stat. 619, known as the United Nations Participation Act of 1945, which comprises this subchapter.

**§ 287j. Participation in future United Nations borrowing; promotion of pattern of financing to avoid future large-scale deficits; report to Congress**

Nothing herein shall be regarded as authorizing the United States to participate in any future United Nations borrowing. It is the sense of the Congress that the United States shall use its best efforts to promote a pattern of United Nations financing (including a vigorous program for collection of delinquencies on annual assessments of nations and maintenance of such annual assessments on a current basis) that will avoid any future large-scale deficits.

(Pub. L. 87-731, §4, Oct. 2, 1962, 76 Stat. 696.)

CODIFICATION

Section originally contained a provision instructing the Department of State to submit to the Congress, not later than Jan. 31, 1963, a report on steps taken in the 17th Session of the General Assembly of the United Nations on long term financing of the United Nations which was omitted.

**§ 287k. Congressional expression of satisfaction that expenditures relating to operations in Middle East and in the Congo are “expenses of the Organization”**

The Congress expresses its satisfaction that the International Court of Justice has decided that the expenditures authorized in resolutions of the United Nations General Assembly relating to operations in the Middle East and in the Congo are “expenses of the Organization” within the meaning of the United Nations Charter, thereby providing a sound basis for obtaining prompt payment of assessments for such expenditures by making them obligations of all members of the United Nations.

(Pub. L. 87-731, §5, Oct. 2, 1962, 76 Stat. 696.)

**§ 287l. Congressional declaration that United Nations take steps to give effect to advisory opinion of International Court of Justice on financial obligations of members**

It is the sense of the Congress that the United Nations should take immediate steps to give ef-

fect to the advisory opinion of the International Court of Justice on the financial obligations of members of the United Nations in order to assure prompt payment of all assessments, including assessments to cover the cost of operations to maintain or restore international peace and security.

(Pub. L. 87-731, § 6, Oct. 2, 1962, 76 Stat. 696.)

#### SUBCHAPTER XVII—UNITED NATIONS EDUCATIONAL, SCIENTIFIC, AND CULTURAL ORGANIZATION

##### SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in sections 272a, 280b, 280i, 280k, 290b of this title.

#### § 287m. Acceptance of membership by the United States

The President is hereby authorized to accept membership for the United States in the United Nations Educational, Scientific, and Cultural Organization (hereinafter referred to as the "Organization"), the constitution of which was approved in London on November 16, 1945, by the United Nations Conference for the establishment of an Educational, Scientific, and Cultural Organization, and deposited in the Archives of the Government of the United Kingdom.

(July 30, 1946, ch. 700, § 1, 60 Stat. 712.)

##### CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED NATIONS EDUCATIONAL, SCIENTIFIC, AND CULTURAL ORGANIZATION

##### THE GOVERNMENTS OF THE STATES PARTIES TO THIS CONSTITUTION ON BEHALF OF THEIR PEOPLES DECLARE

that since wars begin in the minds of men, it is in the minds of men that the defences of peace must be constructed;

that ignorance of each other's ways and lives has been a common cause, throughout the history of mankind, of that suspicion and mistrust between the peoples of the world through which their differences have all too often broken into war;

that the great and terrible war which has now ended was a war made possible by the denial of the democratic principles of the dignity, equality and mutual respect of men, and by the propagation, in their place, through ignorance and prejudice, of the doctrine of the inequality of men and races;

that the wide diffusion of culture, and the education of humanity for justice and liberty and peace are indispensable to the dignity of man and constitute a sacred duty which all the nations must fulfill in a spirit of mutual assistance and concern;

that a peace based exclusively upon the political and economic arrangements of governments would not be a peace which could secure the unanimous, lasting and sincere support of the peoples of the world, and that the peace must therefore be founded, if it is not to fail, upon the intellectual and moral solidarity of mankind.

##### FOR THESE REASONS,

the States parties to this Constitution, believing in full and equal opportunities for education for all, in the unrestricted pursuit of objective truth, and in the free exchange of ideas and knowledge, are agreed and determined to develop and to increase the means of communication between their peoples and to employ these means for the purposes of mutual understanding and a truer and more perfect knowledge of each other's lives;

##### IN CONSEQUENCE WHEREOF

they do hereby create the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation for the purpose of

advancing, through the educational and scientific and cultural relations of the peoples of the world, the objectives of international peace and of the common welfare of mankind for which the United Nations Organisation was established and which its Charter proclaims.

##### ARTICLE I.

##### *Purposes and Functions*

1. The purpose of the Organisation is to contribute to peace and security by promoting collaboration among the nations through education, science, and culture in order to further universal respect for justice, for the rule of law and for the human rights and fundamental freedoms which are affirmed for the peoples of the world, without distinction of race, sex, language or religion, by the Charter of the United Nations.

2. To realise this purpose the Organisation will:

(a) collaborate in the work of advancing the mutual knowledge and understanding of peoples, through all means of mass communication and to that end recommend such international agreements as may be necessary to promote the free flow of ideas by word and image;

(b) give fresh impulse to popular education and to the spread of culture;

by collaborating with Members, at their request, in the development of educational activities; by instituting collaboration among the nations to advance the ideal of equality of educational opportunity without regard to race, sex or any distinctions, economic or social;

by suggesting educational methods best suited to prepare the children of the world for the responsibilities of freedom;

(c) maintain, increase and diffuse knowledge;

by assuring the conservation and protection of the world's inheritance of books, works of art and monuments of history and science, and recommending to the nations concerned the necessary international conventions;

by encouraging cooperation among the nations in all branches of intellectual activity, including the international exchange of persons active in the fields of education, science and culture and the exchange of publications, objects of artistic and scientific interest and other materials of information;

by initiating methods of international cooperation calculated to give the people of all countries access to the printed and published materials produced by any of them.

3. With a view to preserving the independence, integrity and fruitful diversity of the cultures and educational systems of the States Members of this Organisation, the Organisation is prohibited from intervening in matters which are essentially within their domestic jurisdiction.

##### ARTICLE II.

##### *Membership*

1. Membership of the United Nations Organisation shall carry with it the right to membership of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation.

2. Subject to the conditions of the agreement between this Organisation and the United Nations Organisation, approved pursuant to Article X of this Constitution, States not members of the United Nations Organisation may be admitted to membership of the Organisation, upon recommendation of the Executive Board, by a two-thirds majority vote of the General Conference.

3. Members of the Organisation which are suspended from the exercise of the rights and privileges of membership of the United Nations Organisation shall, upon the request of the latter, be suspended from the rights and privileges of this Organisation.

4. Members of the Organisation which are expelled from the United Nations Organisation shall automatically cease to be members of this Organisation.

## ARTICLE III.

*Organs*

The Organisation shall include a General Conference, an Executive Board and a Secretariat.

## ARTICLE IV.

*The General Conference**A. Composition.*

1. The General Conference shall consist of the representatives of the States Members of the Organisation. The Government of each Member State shall appoint not more than five delegates, who shall be selected after consultation with the National Commission, if established, or with educational, scientific and cultural bodies.

*B. Functions*

2. The General Conference shall determine the policies and the main lines of work of the Organisation. It shall take decisions on programmes drawn up by the Executive Board.

3. The General Conference shall, when it deems it desirable, summon international conferences on education, the sciences and humanities and the dissemination of knowledge.

4. The General Conference shall, in adopting proposals for submission to the Member States, distinguish between recommendations and international conventions submitted for their approval. In the former case a majority vote shall suffice; in the latter case a two-thirds majority shall be required. Each of the Member States shall submit recommendations or conventions to its competent authorities within a period of one year from the close of the session of the General Conference at which they were adopted.

5. The General Conference shall advise the United Nations Organisation on the educational, scientific and cultural aspects of matters of concern to the latter, in accordance with the terms and procedure agreed upon between the appropriate authorities of the two Organisations.

6. The General Conference shall receive and consider the reports submitted periodically by Member States as provided by Article VIII.

7. The General Conference shall elect the members of the Executive Board and, on the recommendation of the Board, shall appoint the Director-General.

*C. Voting*

8. Each Member State shall have one vote in the General Conference. Decisions shall be made by a simple majority except in cases in which a two-thirds majority is required by the provisions of this Constitution. A majority shall be a majority of the Members present and voting.

*D. Procedure*

9. The General Conference shall meet annually in ordinary session; it may meet in extraordinary session on the call of the Executive Board. At each session the location of its next session shall be designated by the General Conference and shall vary from year to year.

10. The General Conference shall, at each session, elect a President and other officers and adopt rules of procedure.

11. The General Conference shall set up special and technical committees and such other subordinate bodies as may be necessary for its purposes.

12. The General Conference shall cause arrangements to be made for public access to meetings, subject to such regulations as it shall prescribe.

*E. Observers*

13. The General Conference, on the recommendation of the Executive Board and by a two-thirds majority may, subject to its rules of procedure, invite as observers at specified sessions of the Conference or of its commissions representatives of international organisations, such as those referred to in Article XI, paragraph 4.

## ARTICLE V.

*Executive Board**A. Composition*

1. The Executive Board shall consist of eighteen members elected by the General Conference from among the delegates appointed by the Member States, together with the President of the Conference who shall sit *ex officio* in an advisory capacity.

2. In electing the members of the Executive Board the General Conference shall endeavour to include persons competent in the arts, the humanities, the sciences, education and the diffusion of ideas, and qualified by their experience and capacity to fulfill the administrative and executive duties of the Board. It shall also have regard to the diversity of cultures and a balanced geographical distribution. Not more than one national of any Member State shall serve on the Board at any one time, the President of the Conference excepted.

3. The elected members of the Executive Board shall serve for a term of three years, and shall be immediately eligible for a second term, but shall not serve consecutively for more than two terms. At the first election eighteen members shall be elected of whom one third shall retire at the end of the first year and one third at the end of the second year, the order of retirement being determined immediately after the election by the drawing of lots. Thereafter six members shall be elected each year.

4. In the event of the death or resignation of one of its members, the Executive Board shall appoint, from among the delegates of the Member State concerned, a substitute, who shall serve until the next session of the General Conference which shall elect a member for the remainder of the term.

*B. Functions*

5. The Executive Board, acting under the authority of the General Conference, shall be responsible for the execution of the programme adopted by the Conference and shall prepare its agenda and programme of work.

6. The Executive Board shall recommend to the General Conference the admission of new Members to the Organisation.

7. Subject to decisions of the General Conference, the Executive Board shall adopt its own rules of procedure. It shall elect its officers from among its members.

8. The Executive Board shall meet in regular session at least twice a year and may meet in special session if convoked by the Chairman on his own initiative or upon the request of six members of the Board.

9. The Chairman of the Executive Board shall present to the General Conference, with or without comment, the annual report of the Director-General on the activities of the Organisation, which shall have been previously submitted to the Board.

10. The Executive Board shall make all necessary arrangements to consult the representatives of international organisations or qualified persons concerned with questions within its competence.

11. The members of the Executive Board shall exercise the powers delegated to them by the General Conference on behalf of the Conference as a whole and not as representatives of their respective Governments.

## ARTICLE VI.

*Secretariat*

1. The Secretariat shall consist of a Director-General and such staff as may be required.

2. The Director-General shall be nominated by the Executive Board and appointed by the General Conference for a period of six years, under such conditions as the Conference may approve, and shall be eligible for re-appointment. He shall be the chief administrative officer of the Organisation.

3. The Director-General, or a deputy designated by him, shall participate, without the right to vote, in all meetings of the General Conference, of the Executive Board, and of the committees of the Organisation. He

shall formulate proposals for appropriate action by the Conference and the Board.

4. The Director-General shall appoint the staff of the Secretariat in accordance with staff regulations to be approved by the General Conference. Subject to the paramount consideration of securing the highest standards of integrity, efficiency and technical competence, appointment to the staff shall be on as wide a geographical basis as possible.

5. The responsibilities of the Director-General and of the staff shall be exclusively international in character. In the discharge of their duties they shall not seek or receive instructions from any government or from any authority external to the Organisation. They shall refrain from any action which might prejudice their position as international officials. Each State Member of the Organisation undertakes to respect the international character of the responsibilities of the Director-General and the staff, and not to seek to influence them in the discharge of their duties.

6. Nothing in this Article shall preclude the Organisation from entering into special arrangements within the United Nations Organisation for common services and staff and for the interchange of personnel.

#### ARTICLE VII.

##### *National Co-operating Bodies*

1. Each Member State shall make such arrangements as suit its particular conditions for the purpose of associating its principal bodies interested in educational, scientific and cultural matters with the work of the Organisation, preferably by the formation of a National Commission broadly representative of the Government and such bodies.

2. National Commissions or national co-operating bodies, where they exist, shall act in an advisory capacity to their respective delegations to the General Conference and to their Governments in matters relating to the Organisation and shall function as agencies of liaison in all matters of interest to it.

3. The Organisation may, on the request of a Member State delegate, either temporarily or permanently, a member of its Secretariat to serve on the National Commission of that State, in order to assist in the development of its work.

#### ARTICLE VIII.

##### *Reports by Member States*

Each Member State shall report periodically to the Organisation, in a manner to be determined by the General Conference, on its laws, regulations and statistics relating to educational, scientific and cultural life and institutions, and on the action taken upon the recommendations and conventions referred to in Article IV, paragraph 4.

#### ARTICLE IX.

##### *Budget*

1. The budget shall be administered by the Organisation.

2. The General Conference shall approve and give final effect to the budget and to the apportionment of financial responsibility among the States Members of the Organisation subject to such arrangement with the United Nations as may be provided in the agreement to be entered into pursuant to Article X.

3. The Director-General, with the approval of the Executive Board, may receive gifts, bequests, and subventions directly from governments, public and private institutions, associations and private persons.

#### ARTICLE X.

##### *Relations with the United Nations Organisation*

This Organisation shall be brought into relation with the United Nations Organisation, as soon as practicable, as one of the specialised agencies referred to in Article 57 of the Charter of the United Nations. This re-

lationship shall be effected through an agreement with the United Nations Organisation under Article 63 of the Charter, which agreement shall be subject to the approval of the General Conference of this Organisation. The agreement shall provide for effective co-operation between the two Organisations in the pursuit of their common purposes, and at the same time shall recognise the autonomy of this Organisation, within the fields of its competence as defined in this Constitution. Such agreement may, among other matters, provide for the approval and financing of the budget of the Organisation by the General Assembly of the United Nations.

#### ARTICLE XI.

##### *Relations with Other Specialized International Organisations and Agencies*

1. This Organisation may co-operate with other specialised inter-governmental organisations and agencies whose interests and activities are related to its purposes. To this end the Director-General, acting under the general authority of the Executive Board, may establish effective working relationships with such organisations and agencies and establish such joint committees as may be necessary to assure effective co-operation. Any formal arrangements entered into with such organisations or agencies shall be subject to the approval of the Executive Board.

2. Whenever the General Conference of this Organisation and the competent authorities of any other specialised inter-governmental organisations or agencies whose purposes and functions lie within the competence of this Organisation, deem it desirable to effect a transfer of their resources and activities to this Organisation, the Director-General, subject to the approval of the Conference, may enter into mutually acceptable arrangements for its purpose.

3. This Organisation may make appropriate arrangements with other inter-governmental organisations for reciprocal representation at meetings.

4. The United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation may make suitable arrangements for consultation and co-operation with non-governmental international organisations concerned with matters within its competence and may invite them to undertake specific tasks. Such co-operation may also include appropriate participation by representatives of such organisations on advisory committees set up by the General Conference.

#### ARTICLE XII.

##### *Legal status of the Organisation*

The provisions of Articles 104 and 105 of the Charter of the United Nations Organisation concerning the legal status of that Organisation, its privileges and immunities shall apply in the same way to this Organisation.

#### ARTICLE XIII.

##### *Amendments*

1. Proposals for amendments to this Constitution shall become effective upon receiving the approval of the General Conference by a two-thirds majority; provided, however, that those amendments which involve fundamental alterations in the aims of the Organisation or new obligations for the Member States shall require subsequent acceptance on the part of two-thirds of the Member States before they come into force. The draft texts of proposed amendments shall be communicated by the Director-General to the Member States at least six months in advance of their consideration by the General Conference.

2. The General Conference shall have power to adopt by a two-thirds majority rules of procedure for carrying out the provisions of this Article.

#### ARTICLE XIV.

##### *Interpretation*

1. The English and French texts of this Constitution shall be regarded as equally authoritative.

2. Any question or dispute concerning the interpretation of this Constitution shall be referred for determination to the International Court of Justice or to an arbitral tribunal, as the General Conference may determine under its rules of procedure.

## ARTICLE XV.

*Entry into force*

1. This Constitution shall be subject to acceptance. The instruments of acceptance shall be deposited with the Government of the United Kingdom.

2. This Constitution shall remain open for signature in the archives of the Government of the United Kingdom. Signature may take place either before or after the deposit of the instrument of acceptance. No acceptance shall be valid unless preceded or followed by signature.

3. This Constitution shall come into force when it has been accepted by twenty of its signatories. Subsequent acceptances shall take effect immediately.

4. The Government of the United Kingdom will inform all members of the United Nations of the receipt of all instruments of acceptance and of the date on which the Constitution comes into force in accordance with the preceding paragraph.

In faith whereof, the undersigned, duly authorised to that effect, have signed this Constitution in the English and French languages, both texts being equally authentic.

Done in London the sixteenth day of November, 1945 in a single copy, in the English and French languages, of which certified copies will be communicated by the Government of the United Kingdom to the Governments of all the Members of the United Nations.

[Here follow the signatures of the heads of the delegations.]

**§ 287n. Representatives in General Conference; number; citizenship; compensation**

The President by and with the consent of the Senate shall designate from time to time to attend a specified session or specified sessions of the General Conference of the Organization not to exceed five representatives of the United States and such number of alternates not to exceed five as he may determine consistent with the rules of procedure of the General Conference: *Provided, however,* That each such representative and each such alternate must be an American citizen. One of the representatives shall be designated as the senior representative. Such representatives and alternates shall each be entitled to receive compensation at such rates provided for members of the Senior Foreign Service under section 3962 of this title, or provided for Foreign Service officers under section 3963 of this title, as the President may determine, for such periods as the President may specify, except that no Member of the Senate or House of Representatives or officer of the United States who is designated under this section as a representative of the United States or as an alternate to attend any specified session or specified sessions of the General Conference shall be entitled to receive such compensation. Whenever a representative of the United States is elected by the General Conference to serve on the Executive Board, or is elected President of the General Conference and thus becomes an ex officio adviser to the Executive Board, under provision of article V of the constitution of the Organization, the President may extend the above provisions for compensation to such representative during periods of service in connection with the Executive Board.

(July 30, 1946, ch. 700, §2, 60 Stat. 712; July 31, 1956, ch. 804, title I, §112, 70 Stat. 740; Aug. 14, 1964, Pub. L. 88-426, title III, §§305(1), 306(g), 78 Stat. 422, 430; Oct. 17, 1980, Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2206(a)(3), 94 Stat. 2161.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

Article V of the constitution of the Organization, referred to in text, is article V of the Constitution of the United Nations Educational, Scientific, and Cultural Organization, which is set out as a note under section 287m of this title.

## AMENDMENTS

1980—Pub. L. 96-465 substituted “members of the Senior Foreign Service under section 3962 of this title, or provided for Foreign Service officers under section 3963 of this title,” for “Foreign Service officers in the schedule contained in section 867 of this title.”

1964—Pub. L. 88-426, §306(g), substituted provisions permitting payment of compensation at such rates provided for Foreign Service officers in the schedule contained in section 867 of this title for provisions which limited compensation at not more than \$15,000 per annum.

1956—Act July 31, 1956, increased maximum compensation of representatives and alternates from \$12,000 to \$15,000.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-465 effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1964 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 88-426 effective on first day of first pay period which begins on or after July 1, 1964, except to the extent provided in section 501(c) of Pub. L. 88-426, see section 501 of Pub. L. 88-426.

## REPEALS

Section 112 of act July 31, 1956, cited as a credit to this section, was repealed by section 305(1) of Pub. L. 88-426.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 287r of this title.

**§ 287o. National Commission on Educational, Scientific, and Cultural Cooperation; membership; meetings; expenses**

In fulfillment of article VII of the constitution of the Organization, the Secretary of State shall cause to be organized a National Commission on Educational, Scientific, and Cultural Corporation<sup>1</sup> of not to exceed one hundred members. Such Commission shall be appointed by the Secretary of State and shall consist of (a) not more than sixty representatives of principal national, voluntary organizations interested in educational, scientific, and cultural matters; and (b) not more than forty outstanding persons selected by the Secretary of State, including not more than ten persons holding office under or employed by the Government of the United States, not more than fifteen representatives of the educational, scientific, and cultural interests of State and local governments, and not more than fifteen persons chosen at large. The Secretary of State is authorized to name in the first instance fifty of the principal national vol-

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be “Cooperation”.

untary organizations, each of which shall be invited to designate one representative for appointment to the National Commission. Thereafter, the National Commission shall periodically review and, if deemed advisable, revise the list of such organizations designating representatives in order to achieve a desirable rotation among organizations represented. To constitute the initial Commission, one-third of the members shall be appointed to serve for a term of one year, one-third for a term of two years, and one-third or the remainder thereof for a term of three years; from thence on following, all members shall be appointed for a term of three years each, but no member shall serve more than two consecutive terms. The National Commission shall meet at least once annually. The National Commission shall designate from among its members an executive committee, and may designate such other committees as may prove necessary, to consult with the Department of State and to perform such other functions as the National Commission shall delegate to them. No member of the National Commission shall be allowed any salary or other compensation for services: *Provided, however,* That he may be paid transportation and other expenses as authorized by section 5703 of title 5. The Department of State is authorized to provide the necessary secretariat for the Commission.

(July 30, 1946, ch. 700, § 3, 60 Stat. 713; Aug. 14, 1961, Pub. L. 87-139, § 9, 75 Stat. 341.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Article VII of the constitution of the Organization, referred to in text, is article VII of the Constitution of the United Nations Educational, Scientific, and Cultural Organization, which is set out as a note under section 287m of this title.

#### CODIFICATION

“Section 5703 of title 5” substituted in text for “section 5 of the Administrative Expenses Act of 1946, as amended (5 U.S.C. 73b-2)” on authority of Pub. L. 89-554, § 7(b), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 631, the first section of which enacted Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

#### AMENDMENTS

1961—Pub. L. 87-139 substituted provisions for payment of transportation and other expenses as authorized by section 5703 of title 5, for provisions authorizing payment of actual transportation expenses plus a \$10 maximum per diem.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 287r of this title.

#### § 287p. Citizenship of members

Each such member of the National Commission must be an American citizen.

(July 30, 1946, ch. 700, § 4, 60 Stat. 713.)

#### § 287q. General and special conferences; expenses; acceptance of services and gifts or bequests of money or materials

The National Commission shall call general conferences for the discussion of matters relating to the activities of the Organization, to which conferences organized bodies actively interested in such matters shall be invited to send

representatives: *Provided, however,* That the travel and maintenance of such representation shall be without expense to the Government. Such general conferences shall be held annually or biennially, as the National Commission may determine, and in such places as it may designate. They shall be attended so far as possible by the members of the National Commission and by the delegates of the United States to the General Conference of the Organization. The National Commission is further authorized to call special conferences of experts for the consideration of specific matters relating to the Organization by persons of specialized competences. The Department of State may pay their transportation and other expenses as authorized by section 5703 of title 5, for the period of actual attendance and of necessary travel. The National Commission is further authorized to receive and accept services and gifts or bequests of money or materials to carry out any of the educational, scientific, or cultural purposes of the National Commission as set forth in this subchapter and in the constitution of the Organization. Any money so received shall be held by the Secretary of State and shall be subject to disbursement through the disbursement facilities of the Treasury Department as the terms of the gift or bequest may require and shall remain available for expenditure by grant or otherwise until expended: *Provided,* That no such gift or bequest may be accepted or disbursed if the terms thereof are inconsistent with the purposes of the National Commission as set forth in this subchapter and in the constitution of the Organization. Gifts or bequests provided for herein shall, for the purposes of Federal income, estate, and gift taxes, be deemed to be a gift to or for the United States. The National Commission and Secretary of State shall submit to Congress annual reports of receipts and expenditures of funds and bequests received and disbursed pursuant to the provisions of this section.

(July 30, 1946, ch. 700, § 5, 60 Stat. 713; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. V, § 502(e), 72 Stat. 273; Aug. 14, 1961, Pub. L. 87-139, § 10, 75 Stat. 341; Nov. 22, 1983, Pub. L. 98-164, title I, § 106(a), 97 Stat. 1018.)

#### REPEAL OF REPORTING REQUIREMENTS

*Pub. L. 89-348, § 1(21), Nov. 8, 1965, 79 Stat. 1311, repealed provisions of this section which required an annual report to the Congress by the National Commission on Educational, Scientific, and Cultural Cooperation and the Secretary of State of the receipts and expenditures of funds and bequests received and disbursed in connection with the United Nations Educational, Scientific, and Cultural Organization.*

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The constitution of the Organization, referred to in text, is the Constitution of the United Nations Educational, Scientific, and Cultural Organization, which is set out as a note under section 287m of this title.

#### CODIFICATION

“Section 5703 of title 5” substituted in text for “section 5 of the Administrative Expenses Act of 1946, as amended (5 U.S.C. 73b-2)” on authority of Pub. L. 89-554, § 7(b), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 631, the first section of which enacted Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

## AMENDMENTS

1983—Pub. L. 98-164 struck out provision prohibiting acceptance of gifts or bequests aggregating more than \$200,000 in any year.

1961—Pub. L. 87-139 substituted provisions authorizing payment of transportation and other expenses of attending experts as authorized by section 5703 of title 5, for provisions which allowed the experts \$10 per diem plus actual transportation expenses.

1958—Pub. L. 85-477 authorized the National Commission to receive and accept services and gifts or bequests of money or materials.

### § 287r. Authorization of appropriations; payment of expenses

There is hereby authorized to be appropriated annually to the Department of State, out of any money in the Treasury not otherwise appropriated such sums as may be necessary for the payment by the United States of its share of the expenses of the Organization as apportioned by the General Conference of the Organization in accordance with article IX of the constitution of the Organization, and such additional sums as may be necessary to pay the expenses of participation by the United States in the activities of the Organization, including: (a) salaries of the representatives provided for in section 287n of this title, of their appropriate staffs, and of members of the secretariat of the National Commission provided for in section 287o of this title, including personal services in the District of Columbia and elsewhere, without regard to the civil-service laws and chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of title 5; (b) travel expenses without regard to the Standardized Government Travel Regulations, as amended, the Subsistence Expense Act of 1926, as amended, and section 5731 of title 5, and, under such rules and regulations as the Secretary of State may prescribe, travel expenses of families and transportation of effects of United States representatives and other personnel in going to and returning from their post of duty; (c) allowances for living quarters, including heat, fuel, and light, as authorized by section 5912 of title 5; (d) cost of living allowances under such rules and regulations as the Secretary of State may prescribe, including allowances to persons temporarily stationed abroad; (e) communication services; (f) stenographic reporting, translating, and other services, by contract, if deemed necessary, without regard to section 5 of title 41; (g) local transportation; (h) equipment; (i) transportation of things; (j) rent of offices; (k) printing and binding without regard to section 501 of title 44 and section 5 of title 41; (l) official entertainment; (m) stationery; (n) purchase of newspapers, periodicals, books, and documents; and (o) such other expenses as may be authorized by the Secretary of State.

(July 30, 1946, ch. 700, §6, 60 Stat. 714; Oct. 28, 1949, ch. 782, title II, §202(2), title XI, §1106(a), 63 Stat. 954, 972.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

Article IX of the constitution of the Organization, referred to in text, is article IX of the constitution of the United Nations Educational, Scientific, and Cultural Organization, which is set out as a note under section 287m of this title.

The civil-service laws, referred to in clause (a), are set forth in Title 5, Government Organization and Em-

ployees. See, particularly, section 3301 et seq. of Title 5.

The Subsistence Expenses Act of 1926, as amended, referred to in clause (b), was repealed and superseded by the Travel Expense Act of 1949, which is now covered by subchapter I of chapter 57 of Title 5. Section 9(a) of the 1949 Act provided in part: "All Acts . . . applicable to civilian officers or employees of the departments and establishments, providing for reimbursement of actual travel or transportation expense, and all other Acts, general or special, which are in conflict with the provisions of this Act . . . are hereby modified, but only to the extent of inconsistency or conflict with the provisions of this Act . . ."

## CODIFICATION

In clause (a), "chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of title 5" substituted for "the Classification Act of 1949" on authority of Pub. L. 89-554, §7(b), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 631, the first section of which enacted Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

In clauses (b) and (c), "section 5731 of title 5" and "section 5912 of title 5" substituted for "section 10 of the Act of March 3, 1933 (U.S.C., title 5, sec. 73b)" and "the Act approved June 26, 1930 (U.S.C., title 5, sec. 118a)", respectively, on authority of Pub. L. 89-554, §7(b), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 631, the first section of which enacted Title 5.

In clause (k), "section 501 of title 44" substituted for "section 11 of the Act of March 1, 1919 (44 U.S.C. 111)" on authority of Pub. L. 90-620, §2(b), Oct. 22, 1968, the first section of which enacted Title 44, Public Printing and Documents.

## AMENDMENTS

1949—Act Oct. 28, 1949, substituted "Classification Act of 1949" for "Classification Act of 1923".

## REPEALS

Act Oct. 28, 1949, ch. 782, cited as a credit to this section, was repealed (subject to a savings clause) by Pub. L. 89-554, Sept. 6, 1966, §8, 80 Stat. 632, 655.

## ANNUAL APPROPRIATIONS

Annual appropriations to meet the obligations of membership in various international organizations were contained in acts listed in a note set out under section 269a of this title.

## RESTRICTION ON CONTRIBUTIONS BECAUSE OF JOURNALISTIC INTERFERENCE; REPORT TO CONGRESS

Pub. L. 97-241, title I, §109, Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 276, provided that:

"(a) None of the funds authorized to be appropriated by paragraph (2) of section 102 of this Act [section 102(2) of Pub. L. 97-241, which was not classified to the Code] or by any other Act for 'International Organizations and Conferences' may be used for payment by the United States of its contribution toward the assessed budget of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization if that organization implements any policy or procedure the effect of which is to license journalists or their publications, to censor or otherwise restrict the free flow of information within or among countries, or to impose mandatory codes of journalistic practice or ethics.

"(b) Not later than February 1 of each year, the Secretary of State shall report to the Congress with respect to whether the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization has taken any action described in subsection (a) of this section."

## CROSS REFERENCES

Consent by State Department to contributions to international organizations and reports to Congress, see section 262a of this title.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 272a, 280b, 280i, 280k, 287e, 290b, 1928 of this title.



**§ 287s. Amendments to constitution of Organization involving new obligations**

Unless Congress by law authorizes such action, neither the President nor any person or agency shall on behalf of the United States approve any amendment under article XIII of the constitution of the Organization involving any new obligation for the United States.

(July 30, 1946, ch. 700, § 7, 60 Stat. 714.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Article XIII of the constitution of the Organization, referred to in text, is article XIII of the constitution of the United Nations Educational, Scientific, and Cultural Organization, which is set out as a note under section 287m of this title.

**§ 287t. Prohibition against disclosure of information or knowledge**

In adopting this subchapter, it is the understanding of the Congress that the constitution of the Organization does not require, nor does this subchapter authorize, the disclosure of any information or knowledge in any case in which such disclosure is prohibited by any law of the United States.

(July 30, 1946, ch. 700, § 8, 60 Stat. 714.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The constitution of the Organization, referred to in text, is the constitution of the United Nations Educational, Scientific, and Cultural Organization, which is set out as a note under section 287m of this title.

**SUBCHAPTER XVIII—PRIVILEGES AND IMMUNITIES OF INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATIONS**

SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in sections 288j, 4309 of this title; title 8 sections 1101, 1184; title 26 sections 414, 7701; title 28 section 1611; title 29 sections 1002, 1321; title 42 section 410; title 49 section 30144.

**§ 288. "International organization" defined; authority of President**

For the purposes of this subchapter, the term "international organization" means a public international organization in which the United States participates pursuant to any treaty or under the authority of any Act of Congress authorizing such participation or making an appropriation for such participation, and which shall have been designated by the President through appropriate Executive order as being entitled to enjoy the privileges, exemptions, and immunities provided in this subchapter. The President shall be authorized, in the light of the functions performed by any such international organization, by appropriate Executive order to withhold or withdraw from any such organization or its officers or employees any of the privileges, exemptions, and immunities provided for in this subchapter (including the amendments made by this subchapter) or to condition or limit the enjoyment by any such organization or its officers or employees of any such privilege, exemption, or immunity. The President shall be authorized, if in his judgment such action should be justified by reason of the abuse by an international organization or its officers and

employees of the privileges, exemptions, and immunities provided in this subchapter or for any other reason, at any time to revoke the designation of any international organization under this section, whereupon the international organization in question shall cease to be classed as an international organization for the purposes of this subchapter.

(Dec. 29, 1945, ch. 652, title I, § 1, 59 Stat. 669.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this title", meaning title I of act Dec. 29, 1945, ch. 652, 59 Stat. 669, which is classified principally to this subchapter. For complete classification of title I to the Code, see Short Title note set out below and Tables.

SHORT TITLE

Section 10 of title I of act Dec. 29, 1945, provided that: "This title [enacting this subchapter and amending section 215 of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality, sections 116, 1607, 1621, 3466, 3469, 3475, and 3797 of Internal Revenue Code, 1939, and section 409 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare] may be cited as the 'International Organizations Immunities Act'."

ADMINISTRATIVE SUPPLIES FOR INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATIONS

Act Aug. 4, 1947, ch. 479, 61 Stat. 752, provided for the procurement and furnishing of administrative supplies by the Treasury Department to international organizations until July 1, 1948. This act was popularly known as the "International Organizations Procurement Act of 1947."

PUBLIC INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATIONS ENTITLED TO ENJOY CERTAIN PRIVILEGES, EXEMPTIONS, AND IMMUNITIES

International organizations were designated by executive order as public international organizations entitled to enjoy the privileges, exemptions, and immunities conferred by the International Organizations Immunities Act (this subchapter) as follows:

- African Development Bank, Ex. Ord. No. 12403, Feb. 8, 1983, 48 F.R. 6087.
- African Development Fund, Ex. Ord. No. 11977, Mar. 14, 1977, 42 F.R. 14671.
- Asian Development Bank, Ex. Ord. No. 11334, Mar. 7, 1967, 32 F.R. 3933.
- Border Environment Cooperation Commission, Ex. Ord. No. 12904, Mar. 16, 1994, 59 F.R. 13179.
- Caribbean Organization, Ex. Ord. No. 10983, Dec. 30, 1961, 27 F.R. 32.
- Commission for Environmental Cooperation, Ex. Ord. No. 12904, Mar. 16, 1994, 59 F.R. 13179.
- Commission for Labor Cooperation, Ex. Ord. No. 12904, Mar. 16, 1994, 59 F.R. 13179.
- Commission for the Study of Alternatives to the Panama Canal, Ex. Ord. No. 12567, Oct. 2, 1986, 51 F.R. 35495.
- Customs Cooperation Council, Ex. Ord. No. 11596, June 5, 1971, 36 F.R. 11079.
- European Bank for Reconstruction and Development, Ex. Ord. No. 12766, June 18, 1991, 56 F.R. 28463.
- European Space Agency, Ex. Ord. No. 11318, Dec. 5, 1966, 31 F.R. 15307; Ex. Ord. No. 11351, May 22, 1967, 32 F.R. 7561; Ex. Ord. No. 11760, Jan. 17, 1974, 39 F.R. 2343; Ex. Ord. No. 12766, June 18, 1991, 56 F.R. 28463.
- Food and Agriculture Organization, Ex. Ord. No. 9698, Feb. 19, 1946, 11 F.R. 1809.
- Great Lakes Fishery Commission, Ex. Ord. No. 11059, Oct. 23, 1962, 27 F.R. 10405.
- Inter-American Defense Board, Ex. Ord. No. 10228, Mar. 26, 1951, 16 F.R. 2676.
- Inter-American Development Bank, Ex. Ord. No. 10873, Apr. 8, 1960, 25 F.R. 3097; Ex. Ord. No. 11019, Apr. 27, 1962, 27 F.R. 4145.

- Inter-American Institute of Agricultural Sciences, Ex. Ord. No. 9751, July 11, 1946, 11 F.R. 7713.
- Inter-American Investment Corporation, Ex. Ord. No. 12567, Oct. 2, 1986, 51 F.R. 35495.
- Inter-American Statistical Institute, Ex. Ord. No. 9751, July 11, 1946, 11 F.R. 7713.
- Inter-American Tropical Tuna Commission, Ex. Ord. No. 11059, Oct. 23, 1962, 27 F.R. 10405.
- Intergovernmental Maritime Consultative Organization, Ex. Ord. No. 10795, Dec. 13, 1958, 23 F.R. 9709.
- International Atomic Energy Agency, Ex. Ord. No. 10727, Aug. 31, 1957, 22 F.R. 7099.
- International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, Ex. Ord. No. 9751, July 11, 1946, 11 F.R. 7713.
- International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico, Ex. Ord. No. 12467, Mar. 2, 1984, 49 F.R. 8229.
- International Centre for Settlement of Investment Disputes, Ex. Ord. No. 11966, Jan. 19, 1977, 42 F.R. 4331.
- International Civil Aviation Organization, Ex. Ord. No. 9863, May 31, 1947, 12 F.R. 3559.
- International Coffee Organization, Ex. Ord. No. 11225, May 22, 1965, 30 F.R. 7093.
- International Committee of the Red Cross, Ex. Ord. No. 12643, June 23, 1988, 53 F.R. 24247.
- International Cotton Advisory Committee, Ex. Ord. No. 9911, Dec. 19, 1947, 12 F.R. 8719.
- International Cotton Institute, Ex. Ord. No. 11283, May 27, 1966, 31 F.R. 7667.
- International Criminal Police Organization (INTERPOL) (limited privileges), Ex. Ord. No. 12425, June 16, 1983, 48 F.R. 28069; Ex. Ord. No. 12971, Sept. 15, 1995, 60 F.R. 48617.
- International Development Association, Ex. Ord. No. 11966, Jan. 19, 1977, 42 F.R. 4331.
- International Development Law Institute, Ex. Ord. No. 12842, Mar. 29, 1993, 58 F.R. 17081.
- International Fertilizer Development Center, Ex. Ord. No. 11977, Mar. 14, 1977, 42 F.R. 14671.
- International Finance Corporation, Ex. Ord. No. 10680, Oct. 2, 1956, 21 F.R. 7647.
- International Food Policy Research Institute (limited privileges), Ex. Ord. No. 12359, Apr. 22, 1982, 47 F.R. 17791.
- International Fund for Agricultural Development, Ex. Ord. No. 12732, Oct. 31, 1990, 55 F.R. 46489.
- International Hydrographic Bureau, Ex. Ord. No. 10769, May 29, 1958, 23 F.R. 3801.
- International Joint Commission—United States and Canada, Ex. Ord. No. 9972, June 25, 1948, 13 F.R. 3573.
- International Labor Organization, Ex. Ord. No. 9698, Feb. 19, 1946, 11 F.R. 1809.
- International Maritime Satellite Organization, Ex. Ord. No. 12238, Sept. 12, 1980, 45 F.R. 60877.
- International Monetary Fund, Ex. Ord. No. 9751, July 11, 1946, 11 F.R. 7713.
- International Pacific Halibut Commission, Ex. Ord. No. 11059, Oct. 23, 1962, 27 F.R. 10405.
- International Secretariat for Volunteer Service, Ex. Ord. No. 11363, July 20, 1967, 32 F.R. 10779.
- International Telecommunication Union, Ex. Ord. No. 9863, May 31, 1947, 12 F.R. 3559.
- International Telecommunications Satellite Organization (INTELSAT), Ex. Ord. No. 11718, May 14, 1973, 38 F.R. 12797; Ex. Ord. No. 11966, Jan. 19, 1977, 42 F.R. 4331.
- International Union for Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources, Ex. Ord. No. 12986, Jan. 18, 1996, 61 F.R. 1693.
- International Wheat Advisory Committee (International Wheat Council), Ex. Ord. No. 9823, Jan. 24, 1947, 12 F.R. 551.
- Israel-United States Binational Industrial Research and Development Foundation, Ex. Ord. No. 12956, Mar. 13, 1995, 60 F.R. 14199.
- Multilateral Investment Guarantee Agency, Ex. Ord. No. 12647, Aug. 2, 1988, 53 F.R. 29323.
- Multinational Force and Observers, Ex. Ord. No. 12359, Apr. 22, 1982, 47 F.R. 17791.
- North American Development Bank, Ex. Ord. No. 12904, Mar. 16, 1994, 59 F.R. 13179.
- North Pacific Anadromous Fish Commission, Ex. Ord. No. 12895, Jan. 26, 1994, 59 F.R. 4239.
- North Pacific Marine Science Organization, Ex. Ord. No. 12894, Jan. 26, 1994, 59 F.R. 4237.
- Organization for European Economic Cooperation (now known as the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development), Ex. Ord. No. 10133, June 27, 1950, 15 F.R. 4159.
- Organization of African Unity (OAU), Ex. Ord. No. 11767, Feb. 19, 1974, 39 F.R. 6603.
- Organization of American States (includes Pan American Union), Ex. Ord. No. 10533, June 3, 1954, 19 F.R. 3289.
- Organization of Eastern Caribbean States, Ex. Ord. No. 12669, Feb. 20, 1989, 54 F.R. 7753.
- Pacific Salmon Commission, Ex. Ord. No. 12567, Oct. 2, 1986, 51 F.R. 35495.
- Pan American Health Organization (includes Pan American Sanitary Bureau), Ex. Ord. No. 10864, Feb. 18, 1960, 25 F.R. 1507.
- Preparatory Commission of the International Atomic Energy Agency, Ex. Ord. No. 10727, Aug. 31, 1957, 22 F.R. 7099.
- Provisional Intergovernmental Committee for the Movement of Migrants from Europe (now known as the Intergovernmental Committee for European Migration), Ex. Ord. No. 10335, Mar. 28, 1952, 17 F.R. 2741.
- South Pacific Commission, Ex. Ord. No. 10086, Nov. 25, 1949, 14 F.R. 7147.
- United International Bureau for the Protection of Intellectual Property (BIRPI), Ex. Ord. No. 11484, Sept. 29, 1969, 34 F.R. 15337.
- United Nations, Ex. Ord. No. 9698, Feb. 19, 1946, 11 F.R. 1809.
- United Nations Educational, Scientific, and Cultural Organization, Ex. Ord. No. 9863, May 31, 1947, 12 F.R. 3559.
- United Nations Industrial Development Organization, Ex. Ord. No. 12628, Mar. 8, 1988, 53 F.R. 7725.
- Universal Postal Union, Ex. Ord. No. 10727, Aug. 31, 1957, 22 F.R. 7099.
- World Health Organization, Ex. Ord. No. 10025, Dec. 30, 1948, 13 F.R. 9361.
- World Intellectual Property Organization, Ex. Ord. No. 11866, June 18, 1975, 40 F.R. 26015.
- World Meteorological Organization, Ex. Ord. No. 10676, Sept. 1, 1956, 21 F.R. 6625.
- World Tourism Organization, Ex. Ord. No. 12508, Mar. 22, 1985, 50 F.R. 11837.

PUBLIC INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATIONS FORMERLY ENTITLED TO ENJOY CERTAIN PRIVILEGES, EXEMPTIONS, AND IMMUNITIES

Executive orders designating international organizations as public international organizations entitled to enjoy the privileges, exemptions, and immunities conferred by the International Organizations Immunities Act (this subchapter) were revoked as follows:

- Caribbean Commission, Ex. Ord. No. 10025, Dec. 30, 1948, 13 F.R. 9361; revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 10983, Dec. 30, 1961, 27 F.R. 32.
- Coffee Study Group, Ex. Ord. No. 10943, May 19, 1961, 26 F.R. 4419; revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 12033, Jan. 10, 1978, 43 F.R. 1915.
- Inter-American Coffee Board, Ex. Ord. No. 9751, July 11, 1946, 11 F.R. 7713; revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 10083, Oct. 10, 1949, 14 F.R. 6161.
- Intergovernmental Committee on Refugees, Ex. Ord. No. 9823, Jan. 24, 1947, 12 F.R. 551; revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 10083, Oct. 10, 1949, 14 F.R. 6161.
- Interim Communications Satellite Committee, Ex. Ord. No. 11227, June 2, 1965, 30 F.R. 7369; revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 11718, May 14, 1973, 38 F.R. 12797.
- International Refugee Organization, Ex. Ord. No. 9887, Aug. 22, 1947, 12 F.R. 5723; revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 10832, Aug. 18, 1959, 24 F.R. 6753.
- International Telecommunications Satellite Consortium, Ex. Ord. No. 11277, Apr. 30, 1966, 31 F.R. 6609; revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 11718, May 14, 1973, 38 F.R. 12797.

Lake Ontario Claims Tribunal, Ex. Ord. No. 11372, Sept. 18, 1967, 32 F.R. 13251; revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 11439, Dec. 7, 1968, 33 F.R. 18257.

Southeast Asia Treaty Organization, Ex. Ord. No. 10866, Feb. 20, 1960, 25 F.R. 1584; revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 12033, Jan. 10, 1978, 43 F.R. 1915.

United Nations Relief and Rehabilitation Administration, Ex. Ord. No. 9698, Feb. 19, 1946, 11 F.R. 1809; revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 10083, Oct. 10, 1949, 14 F.R. 6161.

#### REVOCATION OF EXECUTIVE ORDER NOS. 9721 AND 10103

Ex. Ord. No. 9721, May 10, 1946, 11 F.R. 5209, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 10103, Feb. 1, 1950, 15 F.R. 597, which provided for the transfer of Federal Government personnel to public international organizations, was revoked with certain savings provisions by section 2 of Ex. Ord. No. 10804, Feb. 12, 1959, 24 F.R. 1147, and subsequently revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 12553, Feb. 25, 1986, 51 F.R. 7237.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 8 section 1401; title 18 sections 831, 1116.

### § 288a. Privileges, exemptions, and immunities of international organizations

International organizations shall enjoy the status, immunities, exemptions, and privileges set forth in this section, as follows:

(a) International organizations shall, to the extent consistent with the instrument creating them, possess the capacity—

(i) to contract;

(ii) to acquire and dispose of real and personal property;

(iii) to institute legal proceedings.

(b) International organizations, their property and their assets, wherever located, and by whomsoever held, shall enjoy the same immunity from suit and every form of judicial process as is enjoyed by foreign governments, except to the extent that such organizations may expressly waive their immunity for the purpose of any proceedings or by the terms of any contract.

(c) Property and assets of international organizations, wherever located and by whomsoever held, shall be immune from search, unless such immunity be expressly waived, and from confiscation. The archives of international organizations shall be inviolable.

(d) Insofar as concerns customs duties and internal-revenue taxes imposed upon or by reason of importation, and the procedures in connection therewith; the registration of foreign agents; and the treatment of official communications, the privileges, exemptions, and immunities to which international organizations shall be entitled shall be those accorded under similar circumstances to foreign governments.

(Dec. 29, 1945, ch. 652, title I, § 2, 59 Stat. 669.)

### § 288b. Baggage and effects of officers and employees exempted from customs duties and internal revenue taxes

Pursuant to regulations prescribed by the Commissioner of Customs with the approval of the Secretary of the Treasury, the baggage and effects of alien officers and employees of international organizations, or of aliens designated by foreign governments to serve as their representatives in or to such organizations, or of the families, suites, and servants of such offi-

cers, employees, or representatives shall be admitted (when imported in connection with the arrival of the owner) free of customs duties and free of internal-revenue taxes imposed upon or by reason of importation.

(Dec. 29, 1945, ch. 652, title I, § 3, 59 Stat. 669.)

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of other officers, employees, and agencies of Department of the Treasury, with certain exceptions, to Secretary of the Treasury, with power to delegate, see Reorg. Plan No. 26, §§ 1, 2, eff. July 31, 1950, 15 F.R. 4935, 64 Stat. 1280, 1281, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees. The Commissioner of Customs, referred to in text, is an officer of the Treasury Department.

### § 288c. Exemption from property taxes

International organizations shall be exempt from all property taxes imposed by, or under the authority of, any Act of Congress, including such Acts as are applicable solely to the District of Columbia or the Territories.

(Dec. 29, 1945, ch. 652, title I, § 6, 59 Stat. 671.)

### § 288d. Privileges, exemptions, and immunities of officers, employees, and their families; waiver

(a) Persons designated by foreign governments to serve as their representatives in or to international organizations and the officers and employees of such organizations, and members of the immediate families of such representatives, officers, and employees residing with them, other than nationals of the United States, shall, insofar as concerns laws regulating entry into and departure from the United States, alien registration and fingerprinting, and the registration of foreign agents, be entitled to the same privileges, exemptions, and immunities as are accorded under similar circumstances to officers and employees, respectively, of foreign governments, and members of their families.

(b) Representatives of foreign governments in or to international organizations and officers and employees of such organizations shall be immune from suit and legal process relating to acts performed by them in their official capacity and falling within their functions as such representatives, officers, or employees except insofar as such immunity may be waived by the foreign government or international organization concerned.

(Dec. 29, 1945, ch. 652, title I, § 7(a), (b), 59 Stat. 671.)

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Diplomatic and semidiplomatic immunities, generally, see section 1102 of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality.

### § 288e. Personnel entitled to benefits

#### (a) Notification to and acceptance by Secretary of State of personnel

No person shall be entitled to the benefits of this subchapter, unless he (1) shall have been duly notified to and accepted by the Secretary of State as a representative, officer, or employee; or (2) shall have been designated by the Secretary of State, prior to formal notification

and acceptance, as a prospective representative, officer, or employee; or (3) is a member of the family or suite, or servant, of one of the foregoing accepted or designated representatives, officers, or employees.

**(b) Deportation of undesirables**

Should the Secretary of State determine that the continued presence in the United States of any person entitled to the benefits of this subchapter is not desirable, he shall so inform the foreign government or international organization concerned, as the case may be, and after such person shall have had a reasonable length of time, to be determined by the Secretary of State, to depart from the United States, he shall cease to be entitled to such benefits.

**(c) Extent of diplomatic status**

No person shall, by reason of the provisions of this subchapter, be considered as receiving diplomatic status or as receiving any of the privileges incident thereto other than such as are specifically set forth herein.

(Dec. 29, 1945, ch. 652, title I, § 8, 59 Stat. 672.)

**§ 288f. Applicability of reciprocity laws**

The privileges, exemptions, and immunities of international organizations and of their officers and employees, and members of their families, suites, and servants, provided for in this subchapter, shall be granted notwithstanding the fact that the similar privileges, exemptions, and immunities granted to a foreign government, its officers, or employees, may be conditioned upon the existence of reciprocity by that foreign government: *Provided*, That nothing contained in this subchapter shall be construed as precluding the Secretary of State from withdrawing the privileges, exemptions, and immunities provided in this subchapter from persons who are nationals of any foreign country on the ground that such country is failing to accord corresponding privileges, exemptions, and immunities to citizens of the United States.

(Dec. 29, 1945, ch. 652, title I, § 9, 59 Stat. 673.)

**§ 288f-1. European Space Agency and Organization of Eastern Caribbean States; extension of privileges, exemptions, and immunities to members**

The provisions of this subchapter may be extended to the European Space Agency and to the Organization of Eastern Caribbean States (including any office established in the United States by that organization) in the same manner, to the same extent, and subject to the same conditions, as they may be extended to a public international organization in which the United States participates pursuant to any treaty or under the authority of any Act of Congress authorizing such participation or making an appropriation for such participation.

(Dec. 29, 1945, ch. 652, title I, § 11, as added Feb. 2, 1966, Pub. L. 89-353, 80 Stat. 5; amended Nov. 22, 1983, Pub. L. 98-164, title I, § 120, 97 Stat. 1023; July 6, 1988, Pub. L. 100-362, 102 Stat. 819.)

AMENDMENTS

1988—Pub. L. 100-362 inserted “and to the Organization of Eastern Caribbean States (including any office

established in the United States by that organization)” after “European Space Agency”.

1983—Pub. L. 98-164 substituted “Space Agency” for “Space Research Organization”.

EXECUTIVE ORDER

For executive orders relating to extension of certain privileges, exemptions, and immunities to public international organizations, see notes set out under section 288 of this title.

**§ 288f-2. Organization of African Unity; extension of privileges, exemptions, and immunities**

The provisions of this subchapter, may be extended to the Organization of African Unity and may continue to be extended to the International Labor Organization in the same manner, to the same extent, and subject to the same conditions, as they may be extended to a public international organization in which the United States participates pursuant to any treaty or under the authority of any Act of Congress authorizing such participation or making an appropriation for such participation.

(Dec. 29, 1945, ch. 652, title I, § 12, as added Nov. 27, 1973, Pub. L. 93-161, 87 Stat. 635; amended Aug. 15, 1979, Pub. L. 96-60, title IV, § 404, 93 Stat. 403.)

AMENDMENTS

1979—Pub. L. 96-60 authorized continuation of extension of privileges and immunities provisions to International Labor Organization.

EXECUTIVE ORDER

For executive orders relating to extension of certain privileges, exemptions, and immunities to public international organizations, see notes set out under section 288 of this title.

**§ 288f-3. Immunities for International Committee of the Red Cross**

The International Committee of the Red Cross, in view of its unique status as an impartial humanitarian body named in the Geneva Conventions of 1949 and assisting in their implementation, shall be considered to be an international organization for the purposes of this subchapter and may be extended the provisions of this subchapter in the same manner, to the same extent, and subject to the same conditions, as such provisions may be extended to a public international organization in which the United States participates pursuant to any treaty or under the authority of any Act of Congress authorizing such participation or making an appropriation for such participation.

(Dec. 29, 1945, ch. 652, title I, § 13, as added Dec. 22, 1987, Pub. L. 100-204, title VII, § 743, 101 Stat. 1395.)

EXECUTIVE ORDER

For executive orders relating to extension of certain privileges, exemptions, and immunities to public international organizations, see notes set out under section 288 of this title.

**§ 288f-4. International Union for Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources; extension of privileges, exemptions, and immunities**

The International Union for Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources shall be consid-

ered to be an international organization for the purposes of this subchapter and may be extended the provisions of this subchapter in the same manner, to the same extent, and subject to the same conditions, as such provisions may be extended to a public international organization in which the United States participates pursuant to any treaty or under the authority of any Act of Congress authorizing such participation or making an appropriation for such participation. (Dec. 29, 1945, ch. 652, title I, §14, as added Apr. 30, 1994, Pub. L. 103-236, title IV, §426, 108 Stat. 458.)

**§ 288g. Organization of American States; extension of privileges and immunities to members**

Under such terms and conditions as he shall determine, the President is hereby authorized to extend, or to enter into an agreement extending, to the representatives of member states (other than the United States) to the Organization of American States and to permanent observers to the Organization of American States, and to members of the staffs of said representatives and permanent observers, the same privileges and immunities, subject to corresponding conditions and obligations, as are enjoyed by diplomatic envoys accredited to the United States.

(July 10, 1952, ch. 628, 66 Stat. 516; Nov. 7, 1973, Pub. L. 93-149, §1(b), 87 Stat. 560.)

CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as part of the International Organizations Immunities Act which comprises this subchapter.

AMENDMENTS

1973—Pub. L. 93-149 substituted provisions extending diplomatic privileges and immunities to representatives of member states to the Organization of American States, to permanent observers to the Organization of American States, and to member of staff of such representatives and permanent observers, for provisions extending such privileges and immunities to representatives of member states on the Council of the Organization of American State and members of their staff.

EX. ORD. NO. 11931. EXTENSION OF DIPLOMATIC PRIVILEGES AND IMMUNITIES TO PERMANENT OBSERVERS TO ORGANIZATION OF AMERICAN STATES

Ex. Ord. No. 11931, Aug. 3, 1976, 41 F.R. 32689, provided: By virtue of the authority vested in me by the Act of November 7, 1973 (87 Stat. 560; 22 U.S.C. 288g), and as President of the United States of America, I extend to Permanent Observers to the Organization of American States, and to the members of the diplomatic staffs of such Permanent Observers, the same privileges and immunities, subject to corresponding conditions and obligations, as are enjoyed by diplomatic envoys accredited to the United States.

This Executive order shall be effective as of November 7, 1973. The enjoyment of privileges and immunities extended hereunder shall be subject to any Agreements entered into between the Government of the United States and the Organization of American States after that date.

GERALD R. FORD.

**§ 288h. Commission of European Communities; extension of privileges and immunities to members**

Under such terms and conditions as he shall determine and consonant with the purposes of

this section, the President is authorized to extend, or to enter into an agreement extending, to the Mission to the United States of America of the Commission of the European Communities, and to members thereof, the same privileges and immunities subject to corresponding conditions and obligations as are enjoyed by diplomatic missions accredited to the United States and by members thereof. Under such terms and conditions as the President may determine, the President is authorized to extend to other offices of the Commission of the European Communities which are established in the United States, and to members thereof—

(1) the privileges and immunities described in the preceding sentence; or

(2) as appropriate for the functioning of a particular office, privileges and immunities, equivalent to those accorded consular premises, consular officers, and consular employees, pursuant to the Vienna Convention on Consular Relations.

(Pub. L. 92-499, Oct. 18, 1972, 86 Stat. 815; Pub. L. 100-204, title VII, §741, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1394.)

CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as part of the International Organizations Immunities Act which comprises this subchapter.

AMENDMENTS

1987—Pub. L. 100-204 inserted sentence at end.

EX. ORD. NO. 12651. OFFICES OF THE COMMISSION OF THE EUROPEAN COMMUNITIES

Ex. Ord. No. 12651, Sept. 9, 1988, 53 F.R. 35287, provided:

By virtue of the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and laws of the United States of America, and the Act to extend diplomatic privileges and immunities to the Mission to the United States of America of the Commission of the European Communities and the members thereof, 22 U.S.C. Sec. 288h, I hereby extend to the Permanent Observer Mission of the Delegation of the Commission of the European Communities to the United Nations the same privileges and immunities as are accorded to permanent observer missions of states to the United Nations. I also hereby extend to the members of the diplomatic staff of that mission assigned to New York to observe the work of the United Nations and duly notified to the United States Government and the United Nations in that capacity, and to their families, the same privileges and immunities, subject to corresponding conditions and obligations, as are accorded to members of the diplomatic staff of missions accredited to the United Nations.

Pursuant to the same authority, I also hereby extend to the West Coast Office of the Delegation of the Commission of the European Communities and to the officers and employees of that mission assigned to San Francisco to represent the Commission to the Government of the United States and duly notified to and accepted by the Secretary of State, and to their families, the privileges and immunities, subject to corresponding conditions and obligations, substantively equivalent to those accorded consular premises, consular officers, and consular employees pursuant to the Vienna Convention on Consular Relations. For the purpose of extending privileges and immunities to the West Coast Office of the Delegation of the Commission of the European Communities, its official functions shall consist in:

(a) protecting in the United States the interests of the European Communities within the limits permitted by domestic and international law;

(b) furthering the development of commercial, economic, cultural, and scientific relations between the European Communities and the United States and otherwise promoting friendly relations between them;

(c) ascertaining by all lawful means conditions and developments in the commercial, economic, cultural, and scientific life of the United States, reporting thereon to the European Communities and giving information to persons interested.

Pursuant to the same authority, I also hereby extend to the members of the administrative and technical staff and members of the service staff of the Delegation of the Commission of the European Communities assigned to Washington to represent the Commission to the Government of the United States and duly notified to and accepted by the Secretary of State, and to their families, the same privileges and immunities, subject to corresponding conditions and obligations, as are enjoyed by members of the administrative and technical staff and members of the service staff of diplomatic missions accredited to the United States.

This order is not intended to abridge in any respect privileges, exemptions or immunities that the Delegation of the Commission of the European Communities may have acquired or may acquire by international agreements or by Congressional action.

RONALD REAGAN.

EX. ORD. NO. 11689. PRESIDENTIAL EXTENSION OF  
DIPLOMATIC PRIVILEGES AND IMMUNITIES

Ex. Ord. No. 11689, Dec. 5, 1972, 37 F.R. 25987, provided:

By virtue of the authority vested in me by the Act of October 18, 1972 (Public Law 92-499) [this section], and as President of the United States, I hereby extend to the Mission to the United States of America of the Commission of the European Communities, and to the officers of that Mission assigned to Washington to represent the Commission to the Government of the United States and duly notified to and accepted by the Secretary of State, and to their families, the same privileges and immunities, subject to corresponding conditions and obligations, as are enjoyed by diplomatic missions accredited to the United States and by members of the diplomatic staffs thereof.

RICHARD NIXON.

**§ 288i. Liaison Office of the People's Republic of China; extension of privileges and immunities to members**

Under such terms and conditions as he shall determine and consonant with the purposes of this section, the President is authorized to extend to the Liaison Office of the People's Republic of China in Washington and to the members thereof the same privileges and immunities subject to corresponding conditions and obligations as are enjoyed by diplomatic missions accredited to the United States and by members thereof.

(Pub. L. 93-22, Apr. 20, 1973, 87 Stat. 24.)

CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as part of the International Organizations Immunities Act which comprises this subchapter.

EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 11771

Ex. Ord. No. 11771, Mar. 18, 1974, 39 F.R. 10415, which extended diplomatic privileges and immunities to the Liaison Office of the People's Republic of China in Washington, D.C., was revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 12553, Feb. 25, 1986, 51 F.R. 7237.

**§ 288j. International Development Law Institute**

For purposes of the International Organizations Immunities Act (22 U.S.C. 288 and follow-

ing), the International Development Law Institute shall be considered to be a public international organization in which the United States participates under the authority of an Act of Congress authorizing such participation.

(Pub. L. 102-511, title VIII, §805, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3353.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The International Organizations Immunities Act, referred to in text, is title I of act Dec. 29, 1945, ch. 652, 59 Stat. 669, as amended, which is classified principally to this subchapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 288 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Freedom for Russia and Emerging Eurasian Democracies and Open Markets Support Act of 1992, also known as the FREEDOM Support Act, and not as part of the International Organizations Immunities Act which comprises this subchapter.

SUBCHAPTER XIX—INTERNATIONAL  
REFUGEE ORGANIZATION

**§ 289. Acceptance of membership by the United States; conditions**

The President is hereby authorized to accept membership for the United States in the International Refugee Organization (hereinafter referred to as the "Organization"), the constitution of which was approved in New York on December 15, 1946, by the General Assembly of the United Nations, and deposited in the archives of the United Nations: *Provided, however*, That this authority is granted and the approval of the Congress of the acceptance of membership of the United States in the International Refugee Organization is given upon condition and with the reservation that no agreement shall be concluded on behalf of the United States and no action shall be taken by any officer, agency, or any other person and acceptance of the constitution of the Organization by or on behalf of the Government of the United States shall not constitute or authorize action (1) whereby any person shall be admitted to or settled or resettled in the United States or any of its Territories or possessions without prior approval thereof by the Congress, and this subchapter shall not be construed as such prior approval, or (2) which will have the effect of abrogating, suspending, modifying, adding to, or superseding any of the immigration laws or any other laws of the United States.

(July 1, 1947, ch. 185, §1, 61 Stat. 214.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The immigration laws, referred to in text, mean chapter 12 (§1101 et seq.) of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality, and all laws, conventions, and treaties of the United States relating to the immigration, exclusion, deportation, or expulsion of aliens. See section 1101(a)(17) of Title 8.

**§ 289a. Designation of representative and alternates; compensation**

The President shall designate from time to time a representative of the United States and not to exceed two alternates to attend a speci-

fied session or specified sessions of the general council of the Organization. Whenever the United States is elected to membership on the executive committee, the President shall designate from time to time, either from among the aforesaid representative and alternates or otherwise, a representative of the United States and not to exceed one alternate to attend sessions of the executive committee. Such representative or representatives shall each be entitled to receive compensation at a rate not to exceed \$12,000 per annum, and any such alternate shall be entitled to receive compensation at a rate not to exceed \$10,000 per annum, for such period or periods as the President may specify, except that no Member of the Senate or House of Representatives or officer of the United States who is designated as such a representative shall be entitled to receive such compensation.

(July 1, 1947, ch. 185, § 2, 61 Stat. 215.)

**§ 289b. Authorization of appropriations; payment of salaries and expenses**

There is hereby authorized to be appropriated annually to the Department of State—

(a) such sums, not to exceed \$73,325,000 for the fiscal year beginning July 1, 1947, as may be necessary for the payment of United States contributions to the Organization (consisting of supplies, services, or funds and all necessary expenses related thereto) as determined in accordance with article 10 of the constitution of the Organization; and

(b) such sums, not to exceed \$175,000 for the fiscal year beginning July 1, 1947, as may be necessary for the payment of—

(1) salaries of the representative or representatives and alternates provided for in section 289a of this title, and appropriate staff, including personal services in the District of Columbia and elsewhere, without regard to the civil-service laws and chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of title 5; and

(2) such other expenses as the Secretary of State deems necessary to participation by the United States in the activities of the Organization; *Provided*, That the provisions of section 287e of this title and regulations thereunder, applicable to expenses incurred pursuant to subchapter XVI of this chapter shall be applicable to any expenses incurred pursuant to this chapter.

(July 1, 1947, ch. 185, § 3, 61 Stat. 215; Oct. 28, 1949, ch. 782, title II, § 202(2), title XI, § 1106(a), 63 Stat. 954, 972.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The civil-service laws, referred to in subsec. (b)(1), are set forth in Title 5, Government Organization and Employees. See, particularly, section 3301 et seq. of Title 5.

Subchapter XVI [§ 287 et seq.] of this chapter, referred to in subsec. (b)(2), was in the original a reference to the United Nations Participation Act of 1945.

CODIFICATION

In subsec. (b)(1), “chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of title 5” substituted for “the Classification Act of 1949” on authority of Pub. L. 89-554, § 7(b), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 631, the first section of which enacted Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

AMENDMENTS

1949—Subsec. (b)(1). Act Oct. 28, 1949, substituted “Classification Act of 1949” for “Classification Act of 1923”.

REPEALS

Act Oct. 28, 1949, ch. 782, cited as a credit to this section, was repealed (subject to a savings clause) by Pub. L. 89-554, Sept. 6, 1966, § 8, 80 Stat. 632, 655.

CROSS REFERENCES

Consent by State Department to contributions to international organizations and reports to Congress, see section 262a of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 289c of this title.

**§ 289c. Transfer of funds; furnishing supplies and services; accounting for reimbursements**

(a) Sums from the appropriations made pursuant to subsection (a) of section 289b of this title may be transferred to any department, agency, or independent establishment of the Government to carry out the purposes of such subsection, and such sums shall be available for obligation and expenditure in accordance with the laws governing obligations and expenditures of the department, agency, independent establishment, or organizational unit thereof concerned, and without regard to section 3324(a) and (b) of title 31 and section 5 of title 41.

(b) Upon request of the Organization, any department, agency, or independent establishment of the Government (upon receipt of advancements or reimbursements for the cost and necessary expenses) may furnish supplies, or if advancements are made may procure and furnish supplies, and may furnish or procure and furnish services, to the Organization. When reimbursement is made it shall be credited, at the option of the department, agency, or independent establishment concerned, either to the appropriation, fund, or account utilized in incurring the obligation, or to an appropriate appropriation fund, or account which is current at the time of such reimbursement.

(July 1, 1947, ch. 185, § 4, 61 Stat. 215; Sept. 6, 1966, Pub. L. 89-554, § 8(a), 80 Stat. 654.)

CODIFICATION

In subsec. (a), “section 3324(a) and (b) of title 31” substituted for reference to section 3648 of the Revised Statutes, as amended (U.S.C. 1940 edition, title 31, sec. 529) on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, § 4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

AMENDMENTS

1966—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 89-554 struck out proviso which excepted certain personnel from the ceiling imposed by section 947 of former title 5.

**§ 289d. Omitted**

CODIFICATION

Section, act July 1, 1947, ch. 185, § 5, 61 Stat. 216, authorized appropriations in the form of advance contributions to the Preparatory Commission of the Organization during the interim period between July 1, 1947 and the coming into force of the constitution of the Organization.

SUBCHAPTER XX—WORLD HEALTH  
ORGANIZATION

**§ 290. Acceptance of membership by the United States**

The President is hereby authorized to accept membership for the United States in the World Health Organization (hereinafter referred to as the Organization), the constitution of which was adopted in New York on July 22, 1946, by the International Health Conference for the establishment of an International Health Organization, and deposited in the archives of the United Nations.

(June 14, 1948, ch. 469, § 1, 62 Stat. 441.)

INTERNATIONAL HEALTH ADMINISTRATION

Ex. Ord. No. 10399, Sept. 29, 1952, 17 F.R. 8648, designated Surgeon General to perform certain duties under International Sanitary Regulations of World Health Organization.

**§ 290a. Designation of representatives and alternates; compensation; loyalty checkup**

The President shall designate from time to time to attend a specified session or specified sessions of the World Health Assembly of the Organization not to exceed three delegates of the United States and such number of alternates as he may determine consistent with the rules of procedure of the World Health Assembly. One of the delegates shall be designated as the chief delegate. Whenever the United States becomes entitled to designate a person to serve on the Executive Board of the Organization, under article 24 of the constitution of the Organization, the President shall designate a representative of the United States, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, and may designate not to exceed one alternate to attend sessions of the Executive Board. Such representative must be a graduate of a recognized medical school and have spent not less than three years in active practice as a physician or surgeon. Such representative and any such alternate shall each be entitled to receive compensation at one of the rates established under section 3962 or 3963 of this title, for such period or periods as the President may specify, except that no Member of the Senate or House of Representatives or officer of the United States who is thus designated shall be entitled to receive such compensation: *Provided*, That no person shall serve as such representative, delegate, or alternate until such person has been investigated as to loyalty and security by the Director of the Office of Personnel Management.

(June 14, 1948, ch. 469, § 2, 62 Stat. 441; Apr. 5, 1952, ch. 159, § 1, 66 Stat. 43; Oct. 11, 1962, Pub. L. 87-793, § 1001(i), 76 Stat. 865; 1978 Reorg. Plan No. 2, § 102, eff. Jan. 1, 1979, 43 F.R. 36037, 92 Stat. 3783; Oct. 17, 1980, Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2206(a)(4), 94 Stat. 2161.)

AMENDMENTS

1980—Pub. L. 96-465 substituted “established under section 3962 or 3963 of this title” for “provided by section 867 of this title.”

1962—Pub. L. 87-793 substituted “Such representative and any such alternate shall each be entitled to receive

compensation at one of the rates provided by section 867 of this title” for “Such representative shall be entitled to receive compensation at a rate not to exceed \$12,000 per annum and any such alternate shall be entitled to receive compensation at a rate not to exceed \$10,000 per annum.”

1952—Act Apr. 5, 1952, substituted “Civil Service Commission” for “Federal Bureau of Investigation”.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-465 effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1962 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 87-793 effective on first day of first pay period which begins on or after Oct. 11, 1962, see section 1008 of Pub. L. 87-793.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“Director of the Office of Personnel Management” substituted in text for “Civil Service Commission” pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1978, § 102, 43 F.R. 36037, 92 Stat. 3783, set out under section 1101 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, which transferred functions vested by statute in Civil Service Commission to Director of Office of Personnel Management (except as otherwise specified), effective Jan. 1, 1979, as provided by section 1-102 of Ex. Ord. No. 12107, Dec. 28, 1978, 44 F.R. 1055, set out under section 1101 of Title 5.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 290b of this title; title 5 section 1304.

**§ 290b. Authorization of appropriations; payment of salaries and expenses**

There are hereby authorized to be appropriated to the Department of State for contribution to the working capital fund of the organization the sum of \$560,000 and as annual appropriations the following:

(a) such sums as may be necessary for the payment by the United States of its share of the expenses of the Organization as apportioned by the Health Assembly in accordance with article 56 of the constitution of the Organization, except that payments by the United States for any fiscal year of the Organization after 1958 shall not exceed 33⅓ per centum of the total assessments of active members of the Organization for such fiscal year; and

(b) such additional sums, not to exceed \$83,000 for the fiscal year beginning July 1, 1947, as may be necessary to pay the expenses incident to participation by the United States in the activities of the Organization, including—

(1) salaries of the representative and alternate provided for in section 290a of this title, and appropriate staff, including personal services in the District of Columbia and elsewhere, without regard to the civil-service laws and chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of title 5; services as authorized by section 3109 of title 5; under such rules and regulations as the Secretary of State may prescribe, allowances for living quarters, including heat, fuel, and light and cost of living allowances to persons temporarily stationed abroad; printing and binding without regard to section 501 of title 44 and section 5 of title 41; and



(2) such other expenses as the Secretary of State deems necessary to participation by the United States in the activities of the Organization: *Provided*, That the provisions of section 287r of this title, and regulations thereunder, applicable to expenses incurred pursuant to subchapter XVII of this chapter shall be applicable to any expenses incurred pursuant to this paragraph.

(June 14, 1948, ch. 469, § 3, 62 Stat. 441; Oct. 28, 1949, ch. 782, title II, § 202(2), title XI, § 1106(a), 63 Stat. 954, 972; Sept. 21, 1950, ch. 976, § 1(d), 64 Stat. 902; Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title IV, § 419, as added July 8, 1955, ch. 301, § 8(j), 69 Stat. 288.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The civil-service laws, referred to in subsec. (b)(1), are set forth in Title 5, Government Organization and Employees. See, particularly, section 3301 et seq. of Title 5.

Subchapter XVII [§ 287m et seq.] of this chapter, referred to in subsec. (b)(2), was in the original a reference to the Act of July 30, 1946, Public Law 565, Seventy-ninth Congress.

#### CODIFICATION

In subsec. (b)(1), “chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of title 5” and “section 3109 of title 5” substituted for “the Classification Act of 1949” and “section 15 of Public Law 600, Seventy-ninth Congress [5 U.S.C. 55a]”, respectively, on authority of Pub. L. 89-554, § 7(b), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 631, the first section of which enacted Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

“Section 501 of title 44” substituted for “section 11 of the Act of March 1, 1919 (44 U.S.C. 111)” on authority of Pub. L. 90-620, § 2(b), Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1305, the first section of which enacted Title 44, Public Printing and Documents.

#### AMENDMENTS

1955—Subsec. (a). Act July 8, 1955, removed limitation of \$3,000,000 which may be appropriated annually, and limited payments by United States to not more than 33½ per centum of total assessments.

1950—Opening par. amended by Joint Res. Sept. 21, 1950, § 1(d)(1), to provide for a contribution of \$560,000 to working capital fund.

Subsec. (a). Joint Res. Sept. 21, 1950, § 1(d)(2), increased authorized annual appropriation from \$1,920,000 to \$3,000,000.

1949—Subsec. (b)(1). Act Oct. 28, 1949, substituted “Classification Act of 1949” for “Classification Act of 1923”.

#### REPEALS

Pub. L. 85-141, § 8(n), Aug. 14, 1957, 71 Stat. 362, repealed section 419 of act Aug. 26, 1954, cited as a credit to this section, except insofar as section 419 affected this section.

Act Oct. 28, 1949, ch. 782, cited as a credit to this section, was repealed (subject to a savings clause) by Pub. L. 89-554, Sept. 6, 1966, § 8, 80 Stat. 632, 655.

#### ANNUAL APPROPRIATIONS

Annual appropriations to meet the obligations of membership in various international organizations were contained in acts listed in a note set out under section 269a of this title.

#### LIMITATION OF CONTRIBUTIONS

Contributions by United States, except for special projects, limited to amount provided by Joint Res. Sept. 21, 1950; consent by State Department and reports to Congress, see section 262a of this title.

### § 290c. Withdrawal from Organization on one-year notice

In adopting this subchapter the Congress does so with the understanding that, in the absence of any provision in the World Health Organization Constitution for withdrawal from the Organization, the United States reserves its right to withdraw from the Organization on a one-year notice: *Provided, however*, That the financial obligations of the United States to the Organization shall be met in full for the Organization's current fiscal year.

(June 14, 1948, ch. 469, § 4, 62 Stat. 442.)

### § 290d. Enactment of specific legislation by Congress

In adopting this subchapter, the Congress does so with the understanding that nothing in the Constitution of the World Health Organization in any manner commits the United States to enact any specific legislative program regarding any matters referred to in said Constitution.

(June 14, 1948, ch. 469, § 5, 62 Stat. 442.)

### § 290e. Congressional declaration of policy

The Congress of the United States, recognizing that the diseases of mankind, because of their widespread prevalence, debilitating effects, and heavy toll in human life, constitute a major deterrent to the efforts of many peoples to develop their economic resources and productive capacities, and to improve their living conditions, declares it to be the policy of the United States to continue and strengthen mutual efforts among the nations for research against diseases such as heart disease and cancer. In furtherance of this policy, the Congress invites the World Health Organization to initiate studies looking toward the strengthening of research and related programs against these and other diseases common to mankind or unique to individual regions of the globe.

(June 14, 1948, ch. 469, § 6, as added June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. V, § 502(m), 72 Stat. 275.)

### § 290e-1. International Agency for Research on Cancer; authorization of appropriations; limitation

There are hereby authorized to be appropriated such sums as may be necessary for the annual payment by the United States of its share of the expenses of the International Agency for Research on Cancer as determined in accordance with article VIII of the Statute of the International Agency for Research on Cancer, except that in no event shall that payment for any year exceed 16 per centum of all contributions assessed Participating Members of the Agency for that year.

(Pub. L. 92-494, Oct. 14, 1972, 86 Stat. 811.)

#### SUBCHAPTER XXI—INTER-AMERICAN FOUNDATION

### § 290f. Inter-American Foundation

#### (a) Establishment

There is created as an agency of the United States of America a body corporate to be known

as the Inter-American Foundation (hereinafter in this section referred to as the "Foundation").

**(b) Congressional declaration of purpose**

The future of freedom, security, and economic development in the Western Hemisphere rests on the realization that man is the foundation of all human progress. It is the purpose of this section to provide support for developmental activities designed to achieve conditions in the Western Hemisphere under which the dignity and the worth of each human person will be respected and under which all men will be afforded the opportunity to develop their potential, to seek through gainful and productive work the fulfillment of their aspirations for a better life, and to live in justice and peace. To this end, it shall be the purpose of the Foundation, primarily in cooperation with private, regional, and international organizations, to—

(1) strengthen the bonds of friendship and understanding among the peoples of this hemisphere;

(2) support self-help efforts designed to enlarge the opportunities for individual development;

(3) stimulate and assist effective and ever wider participation of the people in the development process;

(4) encourage the establishment and growth of democratic institutions, private and governmental, appropriate to the requirements of the individual sovereign nations of this hemisphere.

In pursuing these purposes, the Foundation shall place primary emphasis on the enlargement of educational opportunities at all levels, the production of food and the development of agriculture, and the improvement of environmental conditions relating to health, maternal and child care, family planning, housing, free trade union development, and other social and economic needs of the people.

**(c) Programs and projects to achieve purposes**

The Foundation shall carry out the purposes set forth in subsection (b) of this section primarily through and with private organizations, individuals, and international organizations by undertaking or sponsoring appropriate research and by planning, initiating, assisting, financing, administering, and executing programs and projects designed to promote the achievement of such purposes.

**(d) Coordination of activities with national and international agencies**

In carrying out its functions under this section, the Foundation shall, to the maximum extent possible, coordinate its undertakings with the developmental activities in the Western Hemisphere of the various organs of the Organization of American States, the United States Government, international organizations, and other entities engaged in promoting social and economic development of Latin America.

**(e) Powers and functions**

The Foundation, as a corporation—

(1) shall have perpetual succession unless sooner dissolved by an Act of Congress;

(2) may adopt, alter, and use a corporate seal, which shall be judicially noticed;

(3) may make and perform contracts and other agreements with any individual, corporation, or other body of persons however designated whether within or without the United States of America, and with any government or governmental agency, domestic or foreign;

(4) shall determine and prescribe the manner in which its obligations shall be incurred and its expenses, including expenses for representation (not to exceed \$10,000 in any fiscal year), allowed and paid;

(5) may, as necessary for the transaction of the business of the Foundation, employ and fix the compensation of not to exceed one hundred persons at any one time;

(6) may acquire by purchase, devise, bequest, or gift, or otherwise lease, hold, and improve, such real and personal property as it finds to be necessary to its purposes, whether within or without the United States, and in any manner dispose of all such real and personal property held by it and use as general funds all receipts arising from the disposition of such property;

(7) shall be entitled to the use of the United States mails in the same manner and on the same conditions as the executive departments of the Government;

(8) may, with the consent of any board, corporation, commission, independent establishment, or executive department of the Government, including any field service thereof, avail itself of the use of information, services, facilities, officers, and employees thereof in carrying out the provisions of this section;

(9) may accept money, funds, property, and services of every kind by gift, devise,<sup>1</sup> bequest, grant, or otherwise, and make advances, grants, and loans to any individual, corporation, or other body of persons, whether within or without the United States of America, or to any government or governmental agency, domestic or foreign, when deemed advisable by the Foundation in furtherance of its purposes;

(10) may sue and be sued, complain, and defend, in its corporate name in any court of competent jurisdiction; and

(11) shall have such other powers as may be necessary and incident to carrying out its powers and duties under this section.

**(f) Disposal of assets on liquidation**

Upon termination of the corporate life of the Foundation all of its assets shall be liquidated and, unless otherwise provided by Congress, shall be transferred to the United States Treasury as the property of the United States.

**(g) Board of directors; number, term, and appointment**

The management of the Foundation shall be vested in a board of directors (hereafter in this section referred to as the "Board") composed of nine members appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, one of whom he shall designate to serve as Chairman of the Board and one of whom he shall designate to serve as Vice Chairman of the Board. Six members of the Board shall be ap-

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be "devise."

pointed from private life. Three members of the Board shall be appointed from among officers or employees of agencies of the United States concerned with inter-American affairs. Members of the Board shall be appointed for terms of six years, except that of the members first appointed two shall be appointed for terms of two years and two shall be appointed for terms of four years, as designated by the President at the time of their appointment. A member of the Board appointed to fill a vacancy occurring prior to the expiration of the term for which his predecessor was appointed shall be appointed only for the remainder of such term; but upon the expiration of his term of office a member shall continue to serve until his successor is appointed and shall have qualified. Members of the Board shall be eligible for reappointment. All individuals appointed to the Board shall possess an understanding of and sensitivity to community level development processes. No more than 5 members of the Board may be members of any one political party.

**(h) Reimbursement of expenses**

Members of the Board shall serve without additional compensation, but shall be reimbursed for travel expenses, including per diem in lieu of subsistence, in accordance with section 5703 of title 5, while engaged in their duties on behalf of the corporation.

**(i) Board; authority**

The Board shall direct the exercise of all the powers of the Foundation.

**(j) Rules and regulations; quorum of the Board**

The Board may prescribe, amend, and repeal bylaws, rules, and regulations governing the manner in which the business of the Foundation may be conducted and in which the powers granted to it by law may be exercised and enjoyed. A majority of the Board shall be required as a quorum.

**(k) Authority of the Board to appoint committees**

In furtherance and not in limitation of the powers conferred upon it, the Board may appoint such committees for the carrying out of the work of the Foundation as the Board finds to be for the best interests of the Foundation, each committee to consist of two or more members of the Board, which committees, together with officers and agents duly authorized by the Board and to the extent provided by the Board, shall have and may exercise the powers of the Board in the management of the business and affairs of the Foundation.

**(l) President of Foundation: appointment and compensation; employment of experts and consultants**

(1) The chief executive officer of the Foundation shall be a President who shall be appointed by the Board of Directors on such terms as the Board may determine. The President shall receive compensation at the rate provided for level IV of the Executive Schedule under section 5315 of title 5.

(2) Experts and consultants, or organizations thereof, may be employed as authorized by section 3109 of title 5.

**(m) Establishment of Council; consultation by the Board; reimbursement of expenses of members of the Council**

In order to further the purposes of the Foundation there shall be established a Council to be composed of such number of individuals as may be selected by the Board from among individuals knowledgeable concerning developmental activities in the Western Hemisphere. The Board shall, from time to time, consult with the Council concerning the objectives of the Foundation. Members of the Council shall receive no compensation for their services but shall be entitled to reimbursement in accordance with section 5703 of title 5 for travel and other expenses incurred by them in the performance of their functions under this subsection.

**(n) Nonprofit nature of the Foundation; conflict of interests**

The Foundation shall be a nonprofit corporation and shall have no capital stock. No part of its revenue earnings, or other income or property shall inure to the benefit of its directors, officers, and employees and such revenue, earnings, or other income, or property shall be used for the carrying out of the corporate purposes set forth in this section. No director, officer, or employee of the corporation shall in any manner directly or indirectly participate in the deliberation upon or the determination of any question affecting his personal interests or the interests of any corporation, partnership, or organization in which he is directly or indirectly interested.

**(o) Personnel; service in foreign governments or agencies**

When approved by the Foundation, in furtherance of its purpose, the officers and employees of the Foundation may accept and hold offices or positions to which no compensation is attached with governments or governmental agencies of foreign countries.

**(p) Service of employees of other agencies in the Foundation; rights and privileges**

The Secretary of State shall have authority to detail employees of any agency under his jurisdiction to the Foundation under such circumstances and upon such conditions as he may determine. Any such employee so detailed shall not lose any privileges, rights, or seniority as an employee of any such agency by virtue of such detail.

**(q) Establishment of principal and branch offices**

The Foundation shall maintain its principal office in the metropolitan Washington, D.C., area. The Foundation may establish agencies, branch offices, or other offices in any place or places outside the United States in which the Foundation may carry on all or any of its operations and business.

**(r) Exemption from tax**

The Foundation, including its franchise and income, shall be exempt from taxation now or hereafter imposed by the United States, or any territory or possession thereof, or by any State, county, municipality, or local taxing authority.

**(s) Authorization of appropriations**

(1) Notwithstanding any other provision of law, not to exceed an aggregate amount of

\$50,000,000 of the funds made available for the fiscal years 1970 and 1971 to carry out part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.] shall be available to carry out the purposes of this section. Funds made available to carry out the purposes of this section under the preceding sentence are authorized to remain available until expended.

(2) There are authorized to be appropriated \$28,800,000 for fiscal year 1992 and \$31,000,000 for fiscal year 1993 to carry out this section. Amounts appropriated under this paragraph are authorized to remain available until expended.

**(t) Application of chapter 91 of title 31**

The Foundation shall be subject to the provisions of chapter 91 of title 31.

**(u) Interest on funds invested pending disbursement**

When, with the permission of the Foundation, funds made available to a grantee under this section are invested pending disbursement, the resulting interest is not required to be deposited in the United States Treasury if the grantee uses the resulting interest for the purposes for which the grant was made. This subsection applies with respect to both interest earned before and interest earned after August 24, 1982.

**(v) Travel expenses**

Funds made available to the Foundation may be used for the expenses described in section 1345 of title 31 (relating to travel, transportation, and subsistence expenses for meetings).

**(w) Printing expenses**

Funds made available to the Foundation may be used for printing and binding without regard to section 501 of title 44.

(Pub. L. 91-175, pt. IV, § 401, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 821; Pub. L. 92-226, pt. IV, § 406(2)-(5), Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 34; Pub. L. 95-105, title V, § 508, Aug. 17, 1977, 91 Stat. 859; Pub. L. 97-241, title V, § 501, Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 297; Pub. L. 98-164, title X, § 1001, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1051; Pub. L. 99-83, title VII, § 708, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 243; Pub. L. 99-529, title II, § 202(e), title IV, § 403(a), Oct. 24, 1986, 100 Stat. 3012, 3019; Pub. L. 101-246, title VI, § 601, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 73; Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 173(a), (b)(1), (c), (d), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 679, 680.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (s)(1), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended. Part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 is classified generally to subchapter I (§ 2151 et seq.) of chapter 32 of this title. For provisions deeming references to subchapter I to include parts IV (§ 2346 et seq.), VI (§ 2348 et seq.), and VIII (§ 2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of chapter 32, see section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-228, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

In subsec. (t), “chapter 91 of title 31” substituted for “the Government Corporation Control Act [31 U.S.C. 841 et seq.]” on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, § 4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

AMENDMENTS

1991—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 102-138, § 173(b)(1), inserted provision at end that all individuals appointed to the Board possess an understanding of and sensitivity to community level development processes and that no more than 5 members of the Board be of any one political party.

Subsec. (q). Pub. L. 102-138, § 173(c), amended subsec. (q) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (q) read as follows: “The Foundation shall establish a principal office. The Foundation is authorized to establish agencies, branch offices, or other offices in any place or places within the United States or elsewhere in any of which locations the Foundation may carry on all or any of its operations and business.”

Subsec. (s)(2). Pub. L. 102-138, § 173(a), amended first sentence generally, substituting present provisions for provisions authorizing appropriations of \$16,932,000 for fiscal year 1990 and \$25,000,000 for fiscal year 1991.

Subsecs. (v), (w). Pub. L. 102-138, § 173(d), added subsecs. (v) and (w).

1990—Subsec. (s)(2). Pub. L. 101-246 amended first sentence generally, substituting “\$16,932,000 for the fiscal year 1990 and \$25,000,000 for the fiscal year 1991” for “\$11,969,000 for fiscal year 1986 and \$12,969,000 for fiscal year 1987 (not less than \$1,000,000 of which shall be for Haiti)”.

1986—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 99-529, § 403(a), substituted “nine members” for “seven members” and “Six members” for “Four members”.

Subsec. (s)(2). Pub. L. 99-529, § 202(e), substituted “\$12,969,000 for fiscal year 1987 (not less than \$1,000,000 of which shall be for Haiti)” for “\$11,969,000 for fiscal year 1987”.

1985—Subsec. (s)(2). Pub. L. 99-83 substituted provisions authorizing appropriations of \$11,969,000 for each of fiscal years 1986 and 1987, for provisions authorizing appropriations of \$16,000,000 for each of fiscal years 1984 and 1985.

1983—Subsec. (s)(2). Pub. L. 98-164 substituted “\$16,000,000 for the fiscal year 1984 and \$16,000,000 for the fiscal year 1985” for “\$12,000,000 for the fiscal year 1982 and \$12,800,000 for the fiscal year 1983”.

1982—Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 97-241, § 501(b), substituted “travel expenses, including per diem in lieu of subsistence, in accordance with section 5703 of title 5” for “actual and necessary expenses not in excess of \$50 per day, and for transportation expenses”.

Subsec. (s)(2). Pub. L. 97-241, § 501(a), substituted “\$12,000,000 for the fiscal year 1982 and \$12,800,000 for the fiscal year 1983” for “\$25,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 1979 and 1980”.

Subsec. (u). Pub. L. 97-241, § 501(c), added subsec. (u). 1977—Subsec. (s). Pub. L. 95-105 designated existing provisions as par. (1) and added par. (2).

1972—Pub. L. 92-226, § 406(3), substituted “Foundation” for “Institute” wherever appearing in subsecs. (b) to (g), (i), (j) to (r), and (t).

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 92-226, § 406(2), substituted “Inter-American Foundation” and “Foundation” for “Inter-American Social Development Institute” and “Institute”.

Subsec. (e)(4). Pub. L. 92-226, § 406(4), inserted “, including expenses for representation (not to exceed \$10,000 in any fiscal year),”.

Subsec. (l). Pub. L. 92-226, § 406(5), designated existing provisions as par. (1), substituted “Foundation” for “Institute” and “President” for “Executive Director” in two places, and added par. (2).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Section 403(b) of Pub. L. 99-529 provided that: “The amendments made by subsection (a) [amending this section] shall take effect 120 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 24, 1986].”

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

## SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 91-175, pt. IV, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 821, as amended by Pub. L. 92-226, pt. IV, §406(1), Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 34, designated Part IV provisions classified to this section as the "Inter-American Foundation Act".

## TRANSITION RULE FOR BOARD APPOINTMENTS

Section 173(b)(2) of Pub. L. 102-138 provided that: "The requirements established by the amendment made by paragraph (1) [amending this section] do not affect appointments made to the Board of the Inter-American Foundation before the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 28, 1991]."

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 290h of this title.

SUBCHAPTER XXII—AFRICAN  
DEVELOPMENT FUND**§ 290g. African Development Fund; United States participation**

The President is hereby authorized to accept participation for the United States in the African Development Fund (hereinafter referred to as the "Fund") provided for by the agreement establishing the Fund (hereinafter referred to as the "agreement") deposited in the Archives of the United Nations.

(Pub. L. 94-302, title II, §202, May 31, 1976, 90 Stat. 593.)

## SHORT TITLE

Section 201 of title II of Pub. L. 94-302 provided that: "This title [enacting this subchapter] may be cited as the 'African Development Fund Act'."

## CROSS REFERENCES

Advancement of human rights through United States assistance policies with international financial institutions, see section 262d of this title.

**§ 290g-1. Appointment of Governor and Alternate Governor; rank, duties, and compensation**

(a) The President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint a Governor, and an Alternate Governor, of the Fund.

(b) The Governor, or in his absence the Alternate Governor, on the instructions of the President, shall cast the votes of the United States for the Director to represent the United States in the Fund. The Director representing the United States and his Alternate, if they are citizens of the United States, may, in the discretion of the President, receive such compensation, allowances, and other benefits not exceeding those authorized for a chief of mission under the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [22 U.S.C. 3901 et seq.].

(Pub. L. 94-302, title II, §203, May 31, 1976, 90 Stat. 593; Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2206(a)(5), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2161.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Service Act of 1980, referred to in subsec. (b), is Pub. L. 96-465, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2071, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 52 (§3901 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3901 of this title and Tables.

## AMENDMENTS

1980—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 96-465 substituted "a chief of mission under the Foreign Service Act of 1980" for "a

Chief of Mission, class 2, within the meaning of the Foreign Service Act of 1946, as amended".

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-465 effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

**§ 290g-2. Law governing reports to the President and the Congress**

The provisions of section 286b of this title, shall apply with respect to the Fund to the same extent as with respect to the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development and the International Monetary Fund.

(Pub. L. 94-302, title II, §204, May 31, 1976, 90 Stat. 594; Pub. L. 101-240, title V, §541(e)(6), Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2519.)

## AMENDMENTS

1989—Pub. L. 101-240 struck out at end "Reports with respect to the Fund under paragraphs (5) and (6) of section 286b(b) of this title, shall be included in the first report made thereunder after the United States accepts participation in the Fund."

**§ 290g-3. Specific actions requiring Congressional authorization**

Unless Congress by law authorizes such action, neither the President nor any person or agency shall, on behalf of the United States:

(a) agree to an increase in the subscription of the United States to the Fund;

(b) vote for or agree to any amendment of the agreement which increases the obligations of the United States, or which would change the purpose or functions of the Fund; or

(c) make a loan or provide other financing to the Fund, except that funds for technical assistance may be provided to the Fund by a United States agency created pursuant to an Act of Congress which is authorized by law to provide funds to international organizations.

(Pub. L. 94-302, title II, §205, May 31, 1976, 90 Stat. 594.)

**§ 290g-4. Authorization of appropriations; repayments and distributions from Fund to Treasury**

(a) There is hereby authorized to be appropriated without fiscal year limitation, as the United States subscription, \$25,000,000 to be paid by the Secretary of the Treasury to the Fund in three annual installments of \$9,000,000, \$8,000,000, and \$8,000,000.

(b) Any repayment or distribution of moneys from the Fund to the United States shall be covered into the Treasury as a miscellaneous receipt.

(Pub. L. 94-302, title II, §206, May 31, 1976, 90 Stat. 594.)

**§ 290g-5. Federal Reserve banks as depository for the Fund; supervision**

Any Federal Reserve bank which is requested to do so by the President shall act as a depository for the Fund, and the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System shall supervise and direct the carrying out of these functions by the Federal Reserve banks.

(Pub. L. 94-302, title II, §207, May 31, 1976, 90 Stat. 594.)

**§ 290g-6. Civil action by or against the Fund; service of process, venue, jurisdiction, removal of actions**

For the purpose of any civil action which may be brought within the United States, its territories or possessions, or the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, by or against the Fund in accordance with the agreement, the Fund shall be deemed to be an inhabitant of the Federal judicial district in which its principal office or agency appointed for the purpose of accepting service or notice of service is located, and any such action to which the Fund shall be party shall be deemed to arise under the laws of the United States, and the district courts of the United States (including the courts enumerated in section 460 of title 28) shall have original jurisdiction of any such action. When the Fund is defendant in any action in a State court, it may, at any time before the trial thereof, remove such action into the district court of the United States for the proper district by following the procedure for removal of causes otherwise provided by law.

(Pub. L. 94-302, title II, §208, May 31, 1976, 90 Stat. 594.)

CROSS REFERENCES

District courts, removal of cases from State courts, see section 1441 et seq. of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

**§ 290g-7. Force and effect of agreement; deposit of documents by the President; reservation of right to tax salaries and emoluments paid by the Fund to United States citizens or nationals**

The agreement, including without limitation articles 41 through 50, shall have full force and effect in the United States, its territories and possessions, and the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, upon the acceptance of participation by the United States in, and the entry into force of, the Fund. The President, at the time of deposit of the instrument of acceptance of participation of the United States in the Fund, shall also deposit a declaration that the United States retains for itself and its political subdivisions the right to tax salaries and emoluments paid by the Fund to its citizens or nationals and may deposit a declaration providing for reservations on other matters set forth in article 58.

(Pub. L. 94-302, title II, §209, May 31, 1976, 90 Stat. 594.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The agreement and articles 41 through 50 and article 58, referred to in text, mean the Bretton Woods Agreement and the articles thereof.

**§ 290g-8. Presidential instructions to United States Governor of the Fund to veto any use of funds to benefit a country pursuing a detrimental economic policy against United States interests; exceptions**

The President shall instruct the United States Governor of the Fund to cause the Executive Di-

rector representing the United States in the Fund to cast the votes of the United States against any loan or other utilization of the funds of the Fund for the benefit of any country which has—

(1) nationalized or expropriated or seized ownership or control of property owned by any United States citizen or by any corporation, partnership, or association not less than 50 per centum of which is beneficially owned by United States citizens;

(2) taken steps to repudiate or nullify existing contracts or agreements with any United States citizen or any corporation, partnership, or association not less than 50 per centum of which is beneficially owned by United States citizens; or

(3) imposed or enforced discriminatory taxes or other exactions, or restrictive maintenance or operational conditions, or has taken other actions, which have the effect of nationalizing, expropriating, or otherwise seizing ownership or control of property so owned;

unless the President determines that (A) an arrangement for prompt, adequate, and effective compensation has been made, (B) the parties have submitted the dispute to arbitration under the rules of the Convention for the Settlement of Investment Disputes, or (C) good faith negotiations are in progress aimed at providing prompt, adequate, and effective compensation under the applicable principles of international law.

(Pub. L. 94-302, title II, §210, May 31, 1976, 90 Stat. 595.)

**§ 290g-9. Repealed. Pub. L. 95-118, title VII, § 702, Oct. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 1070**

Section, Pub. L. 94-302, title II, §211, May 31, 1976, 90 Stat. 595; H. Res. 5, Jan. 4, 1977, set forth provisions relating to United States participation in financial assistance by the African Development Fund to any country engaging in a consistent pattern of gross violations of internationally recognized human rights. See section 262d of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 3, 1977, see section 1001 of Pub. L. 95-118, set out as an Effective Date note under section 282i of this title.

**§ 290g-10. Additional authorization for contribution to African Development Fund**

**(a) Payment of United States contribution; review of payment and voting structure with other donor nations**

The United States Governor is authorized to contribute on behalf of the United States \$50,000,000 to the African Development Fund, which would represent an additional United States contribution to the first replenishment. The Secretary of the Treasury is directed to begin discussions with other donor nations to the African Development Fund for the purpose of setting amounts and of reviewing and possibly changing the voting structure within the Fund: *Provided, however*, That any commitment to make such contribution shall be made subject to obtaining the necessary appropriations.

**(b) Authorization of appropriations**

In order to pay for the United States contribution to the African Development Fund provided for in this section there are authorized to be appropriated without fiscal year limitation \$50,000,000 for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury.

(Pub. L. 94-302, title II, § 211, formerly § 212, as added Pub. L. 95-118, title VI, § 601, Oct. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 1069; renumbered § 211, Pub. L. 96-259, title III, § 301(1), June 3, 1980, 94 Stat. 430.)

**PRIOR PROVISIONS**

A prior section 211 of Pub. L. 94-302 was classified to section 290g-9 of this title prior to repeal by Pub. L. 95-118, title VII, § 702, Oct. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 1070.

**EFFECTIVE DATE**

Section effective Oct. 3, 1977, except that no funds authorized to be appropriated by this section may be available for use or obligation prior to Oct. 1, 1977, see section 1001 of Pub. L. 95-118, set out as a note under section 282i of this title.

**§ 290g-11. Additional authorization for payment of United States contribution****(a) United States share**

The United States Governor of the Fund is authorized to contribute on behalf of the United States \$125,000,000 to the Fund as the United States contribution to the second replenishment of the resources of the Fund, except that any commitment to make such contribution shall be made subject to obtaining the necessary appropriations.

**(b) Authorization of appropriations**

In order to pay for the United States contribution provided for in this section, there is authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, \$125,000,000 for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury.

**(c) Funding requirements**

For the purpose of keeping to a minimum the cost to the United States, the Secretary of the Treasury—

(1) shall pay the United States contribution to the African Development Fund authorized by this section by letter of credit in three annual installments; and

(2) shall take the steps necessary to obtain a certification from the Fund that any undisbursed balances resulting from draw-downs on such letter of credit will not exceed at any time the United States share of expected disbursement requirements for the following three-month period.

(Pub. L. 94-302, title II, § 212, as added Pub. L. 96-259, title III, § 301(2), June 3, 1980, 94 Stat. 430.)

**§ 290g-12. Additional authorization for payment of United States contribution**

(a)(1) The United States Governor of the Fund is authorized to contribute on behalf of the United States \$150,000,000 to the Fund as the United States contribution to the third replenishment of the resources of the Fund.

(2) Any commitment to make the contribution authorized in paragraph (1) shall be made subject to obtaining the necessary appropriations.

(b) In order to pay for the United States contribution provided for in this section, there are authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, \$150,000,000 for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury.

(Pub. L. 94-302, title II, § 213, as added Pub. L. 98-181, title X, § 1003, Nov. 30, 1983, 97 Stat. 1286.)

**§ 290g-13. Additional authorization for payment of United States contribution**

(a)(1) The United States Governor of the Fund is authorized to contribute \$225,000,000 to the fourth replenishment of the resources of the Fund.

(2) Any commitment to make the contribution authorized in paragraph (1) shall be made subject to obtaining the necessary appropriations.

(b) In order to pay for the United States contribution provided for in this section, there are authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, \$225,000,000 for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury.

(Pub. L. 94-302, title II, § 214, as added Pub. L. 99-190, § 101(i) [title I, (a)], Dec. 19, 1985, 99 Stat. 1291, 1294.)

**CODIFICATION**

Section 214 of Pub. L. 94-302 is based on section 201 of title II of H.R. 2253, Ninety-ninth Congress, as reported May 15, 1985, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 99-190.

**§ 290g-14. Additional authorization for payment of United States contribution****(a) Contribution authorized**

The United States Governor of the Fund is authorized to contribute \$315,000,000 to the fifth replenishment of the resources of the Fund, except that such authority shall be effective only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriations Acts.

**(b) Authorization of appropriations**

In order to pay for the United States contribution provided for in this section, there are authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, \$315,000,000, for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury.

(Pub. L. 94-302, title II, § 215, as added Pub. L. 100-461, title V, § 555, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-36.)

**CODIFICATION**

Section 215 of Pub. L. 94-302 is based on section 2 of H.R. 4645, One Hundredth Congress, as reported Sept. 28, 1988, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-461.

**§ 290g-15. Sixth replenishment****(a) Contribution authorized**

The United States Governor of the Fund is authorized to contribute \$405,000,000 to the sixth replenishment of the resources of the Fund, except that such authority shall be effective only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriations Acts.

**(b) Limitations on authorization of appropriations**

In order to pay for the United States contribution provided for in this section, there are au-

thorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, \$135,000,000 for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury.

(Pub. L. 94-302, title II, §216, as added Pub. L. 102-145, §125(c), as added Pub. L. 102-266, §102, Apr. 1, 1992, 106 Stat. 98.)

SUBCHAPTER XXIII—AFRICAN  
DEVELOPMENT FOUNDATION

**§ 290h. Congressional findings**

The Congress finds that—

(1) social and economic development ultimately depends on the active participation of individuals within a society and on the enhancement of opportunities for those individuals;

(2) the development of individuals and institutions in African countries can benefit by the provision of support for community-based self-help activities;

(3) by enacting title IX of chapter 2 of part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2218], and recent amendments to that Act, the Congress has sought to enable the poor to participate in the process of development;

(4) the Inter-American Foundation, established by Congress in the Foreign Assistance Act of 1969 [22 U.S.C. 290f], to support the efforts of the people of Latin America and the Caribbean to solve their development problems, has demonstrated a successful approach to development; and

(5) an African Development Foundation similar in structure to the Inter-American Foundation, but adapted to the specific needs of Africa, can complement current United States development programs in Africa.

(Pub. L. 96-533, title V, §502, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3151.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in par. (3), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended. Title IX of chapter 2 of part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 is classified generally to subpart IX of part II of subchapter I (§2218) of chapter 32 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1969, referred to in par. (4), is Pub. L. 91-175, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 805, as amended. The Inter-American Foundation was established by section 401 of that Act, which is classified to section 290f of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

SHORT TITLE

Section 501 of title V of Pub. L. 96-533 provided: "This title [enacting this subchapter] may be cited as the 'African Development Foundation Act'."

**§ 290h-1. African Development Foundation**

**(a) Establishment of Foundation**

There is established a body corporate to be known as the "African Development Foundation" (hereafter in this subchapter referred to as the "Foundation").

**(b) Principal and branch offices**

The Foundation shall establish a principal office in the United States and may establish such

branch offices in Africa as may be necessary to carry out its functions.

(Pub. L. 96-533, title V, §503, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3152.)

**§ 290h-2. Congressional declaration of purposes**

**(a) Purposes of Foundation**

In order to enable the people of African countries to develop their potential, fulfill their aspirations, and enjoy better, more productive lives, the purposes of the Foundation shall be—

(1) to strengthen the bonds of friendship and understanding between the people of Africa and the United States;

(2) to support self-help activities at the local level designed to enlarge opportunities for community development;

(3) to stimulate and assist effective and expanding participation of Africans in their development process; and

(4) to encourage the establishment and growth of development institutions which are indigenous to particular countries in Africa and which can respond to the requirements of the poor in those countries.

**(b) Implementation**

The Foundation shall carry out the purposes specified in subsection (a) of this section in cooperation with, and in response to, organizations indigenous to Africa which are representative of the needs and aspirations of the poor in Africa and, in carrying out such purposes, the Foundation shall, to the extent possible, coordinate its development assistance activities with the activities of the United States Government and private, regional, and international organizations.

(Pub. L. 96-533, title V, §504, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3152.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 290h-3 of this title.

**§ 290h-3. Functions of Foundation**

**(a) Types of programs; project limitations; dissemination of project insights**

(1) In order to carry out the purposes set forth in section 290h-2 of this title, the Foundation may make grants, loans, and loan guarantees to any African private or public group (including public international organizations), association, or other entity engaged in peaceful activities for—

(A) the fostering of local development institutions and the support of development efforts initiated by communities themselves;

(B) the development of self-evaluation techniques by participants in projects supported under this section, for the purpose of transferring experience gained in such projects to similar development activities;

(C) development research by Africans and the transfer of development resources, expertise, and knowledge within Africa;

(D) the procurement of such technical or other assistance as is deemed appropriate by the recipient of such grant, loan, or guarantee,



to carry out the purposes of this subchapter; and

(E) other projects that would carry out the purposes set forth in section 290h-2 of this title.

(2) The total amount of grants, loans, and loan guarantees that may be made under this section for a project may not exceed \$250,000.

(3) The Foundation may disseminate to the American public and to United States and multilateral development institutions insights gained from African development projects assisted under this subchapter.

**(b) Community project priorities; disbursement of funds by recipients to other African entities**

In making grants, loans, and loan guarantees under subsection (a) of this section, the Foundation shall give priority to projects which community groups undertake to foster their own development and in the initiation, design, implementation, and evaluation of which there is the maximum feasible participation of the poor. Where appropriate and in keeping with the purposes of this subchapter, the Foundation may make such grants, loans, and loan guarantees to African entities which are representative and knowledgeable of, and sensitive to, the needs and aspirations of the poor and which would disburse funds acquired under such grants, loans, and loan guarantees to other African entities to carry out the purposes of this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 96-533, title V, §505, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3152; Pub. L. 100-461, title II, §201, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-13.)

AMENDMENTS

1988—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 100-461 inserted “(including public international organizations)” after “public group”.

**§ 290h-4. Powers of Foundation**

**(a) General provisions**

The Foundation, as a corporation—

(1) shall have perpetual succession unless dissolved by an Act of Congress;

(2) may sue and be sued, complain, and defend, in its corporate name in any court of competent jurisdiction;

(3) may adopt, alter, and use a seal, which shall be judicially noticed;

(4) may prescribe, amend, and repeal such rules and regulations as may be necessary for carrying out the functions of the Foundation;

(5) may make and perform such contracts and other agreements with any individual, corporation, or other private or public entity however designated and wherever situated, as may be necessary for carrying out the functions of the Foundation;

(6) may determine and prescribe the manner in which its obligations shall be incurred and its expenses allowed and paid, including expenses for representation not exceeding \$10,000 in any fiscal year;

(7) may, as necessary for carrying out the functions of the Foundation, employ and fix the compensation of not to exceed the following number of persons at any one time: 25 dur-

ing the fiscal year 1981, 50 during the fiscal year 1982, and 75 thereafter;

(8) may lease, purchase, or otherwise acquire, own, hold, improve, use, or otherwise deal in and with such property (real, personal, or mixed) or any interest therein, wherever situated, as may be necessary for carrying out the functions of the Foundation;

(9) may accept gifts or donations of services or of property (real, personal, or mixed), tangible or intangible, in furtherance of the purposes of this subchapter;

(10) may use the United States mails in the same manner and on the same conditions as the executive departments of the Government;

(11) may, with the consent of any agency of the United States, use the information, services, facilities, and personnel of that agency in carrying out the purposes of this subchapter; and

(12) shall have such other powers as may be necessary and incident to carrying out this subchapter.

**(b) Nonprofit entity; restriction on use of moneys; conflict of interests**

The Foundation shall be a nonprofit corporation and shall have no capital stock. No part of its revenue, earnings, or other income or property shall inure to the benefit of any of its directors, officers, or employees, and such revenue, earnings, or other income or property shall only be used for carrying out the purposes of this subchapter. No director, officer, or employee of the corporation shall in any manner directly or indirectly participate in the deliberation upon or the determination of any question affecting his or her personal interests or the interests of any corporation, partnership, or organization in which he or she is directly or indirectly interested.

**(c) Tax exemption**

The Foundation, including its franchise and income, shall be exempt from taxation now or hereafter imposed by the United States, by any territory or possession of the United States, or by any State, county, municipality, or local taxing authority.

**(d) Termination of Foundation and liquidation of assets**

Upon termination of the corporate life of the Foundation its assets shall be liquidated and, unless otherwise provided by Congress, shall be transferred to the United States Treasury as the property of the United States.

(Pub. L. 96-533, title V, §506, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3153.)

**§ 290h-5. Management of Foundation**

**(a) Board of directors; membership; designation of Chairperson and Vice Chairperson; appointment considerations; term; vacancies**

(1) The management of the Foundation shall be vested in a board of directors (hereafter in this subchapter referred to as the “Board”) composed of seven members appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate. The President shall designate one member of the Board to serve as Chairperson of the

Board and one member to serve as Vice Chairperson of the Board. Five members of the Board shall be appointed from private life. Two members of the Board shall be appointed from among officers and employees of agencies of the United States concerned with African affairs. All members of the Board shall be appointed on the basis of their understanding of and sensitivity to community level development processes. Members of the Board shall be appointed so that no more than four members of the Board are members of any one political party.

(2) Members of the Board shall be appointed for terms of six years, except that of the members first appointed, as designated by the President at the time of their appointment, two shall be appointed for terms of two years and two shall be appointed for terms of four years. A member of the Board appointed to fill a vacancy occurring before the expiration of the term for which that member's predecessor was appointed shall be appointed only for the remainder of that term. Upon the expiration of his or her term a member shall continue to serve until a successor is appointed and shall have qualified.

**(b) Compensation, actual, necessary, and transportation expenses**

Members of the Board shall serve without additional compensation, but may be reimbursed for actual and necessary expenses not exceeding \$100 per day, and for transportation expenses, while engaged in their duties on behalf of the Foundation.

**(c) Quorum**

A majority of the Board shall constitute a quorum.

**(d) President of Foundation; appointment and compensation; employment of experts and consultants**

(1) The Board of Directors shall appoint a president of the Foundation on such terms as the Board may determine. The president of the Foundation shall receive compensation at a rate not to exceed that provided for level IV of the Executive Schedule under section 5315 of title 5.

(2) Experts and consultants may be employed by the Board as authorized by section 3109 of title 5.

**(e) Advisory council; membership; appointment considerations; consultations with council; compensation, travel, and other expenses**

(1) The Board shall establish an advisory council to be composed of such number of individuals as may be selected by the Board from among individuals knowledgeable about development activities in Africa. The advisory council may include African recipients of grants, loans, or loan guarantees under this subchapter.

(2) The Board shall, at least once each year, consult the advisory council concerning the objectives and activities of the Foundation.

(3) Members of the advisory council shall receive no compensation for their services but may be allowed travel and other expenses in accordance with section 5703 of title 5, which are incurred by them in the performance of the functions under this subsection.

(Pub. L. 96-533, title V, §507, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3154; Pub. L. 101-167, title II, Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1209.)

AMENDMENTS

1989—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 101-167 inserted at end “Members of the Board shall be appointed so that no more than four members of the Board are members of any one political party.”

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1989 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 101-167, title II, Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1209, provided: “That the amendment to section 507(a)(1) of such Act [22 U.S.C. 290h-5(a)(1)] shall not affect an appointment made to the Board prior to the date of enactment of this Act [Nov. 21, 1989]”.

**§ 290h-6. Government corporation control provisions applicable**

The Foundation shall be subject to the provisions of chapter 91 of title 31 applicable to wholly owned Government corporations.

(Pub. L. 96-533, title V, §508, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3155.)

CODIFICATION

“The provisions of chapter 91 of title 31 applicable to wholly owned Government corporations” substituted in text for “title I of the Government Corporation Control Act [31 U.S.C. 846 et seq.]” on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, §4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

**§ 290h-7. Limitation on spending authority**

Any authority provided by this subchapter involving the expenditure of funds (other than the funds made available pursuant to section 290h-8 of this title) shall be effective for a fiscal year only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriation Acts.

(Pub. L. 96-533, title V, §509, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3155.)

**§ 290h-8. Authorization of appropriations**

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this subchapter, in addition to amounts otherwise available for that purpose, \$3,872,000 for fiscal year 1986 and \$3,872,000 for fiscal year 1987. Funds appropriated under this section are authorized to remain available until expended.

(Pub. L. 96-533, title V, §510, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3155; Pub. L. 97-113, title III, §313, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1536; Pub. L. 99-83, title VIII, §810(a), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 264.)

AMENDMENTS

1985—Pub. L. 99-83 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section read as follows: “Of the funds appropriated to carry out part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, other than funds appropriated for the Economic Support Fund, not less than \$2,000,000 for the fiscal year 1982 and up to \$2,000,000 for the fiscal year 1983 shall be used to carry out this subchapter.”

1981—Pub. L. 97-113 struck out “for the fiscal year 1981” after “Of the funds appropriated” and substituted “not less than \$2,000,000 for the fiscal year 1982 and up to \$2,000,000 for the fiscal year 1983” for “\$2,000,000”.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 290h-7 of this title.

**§ 290h-9. Repealed. Pub. L. 101-167, title II, Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1209**

Section, Pub. L. 96-533, title V, § 511, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3155; Pub. L. 99-83, title VIII, § 810(b), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 264, related to expiration of authority of Foundation.

SUBCHAPTER XXIV—AFRICAN  
DEVELOPMENT BANK

**§ 290i. Acceptance of membership**

The President is hereby authorized to accept membership for the United States in the African Development Bank (hereinafter in this subchapter referred to as the “Bank”) provided for by the agreement establishing the Bank (hereinafter in this subchapter referred to as the “agreement”) deposited in the archives of the United Nations.

(Pub. L. 97-35, title XIII, § 1332, Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 741.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this part”, meaning part 3 of subtitle B of title XIII of Pub. L. 97-35, Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 741, known as the African Development Bank Act, which enacted this subchapter and amended sections 262d, 262f, and 276c-2 of this title and section 24 of Title 12, Banks and Banking. For complete classification of part 3 to the Code, see Short Title note set out below and Tables.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 1372 of Pub. L. 97-35 provided that: “This subtitle [subtitle B (§§ 1311-1372) of title XIII of Pub. L. 97-35, enacting this subchapter and sections 262g-1 to 262g-3, 283z-2, 284o, 285w, and 286e-1h of this title, amending sections 262d, 262f, 262g, 276c-2, 283w, 283z-1, 285s, 285t, 285u, 286e-1f, and 286u of this title and section 24 of Title 12, Banks and Banking, repealing section 286e-10 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 262c, 262g-2, and 290i of this title] shall take effect upon its enactment [Aug. 13, 1981], except that funds authorized to be appropriated by any provision contained in part 1 [enacting section 286e-1h of this title and amending section 286e-1f of this title] or part 4 [enacting sections 283z-2 and 285w of this title and amending sections 283w, 283z-1, 285s, 285t, and 285u of this title] shall not be available for use or obligation prior to October 1, 1981.”

SHORT TITLE

Section 1331 of Pub. L. 97-35 provided that: “This part [part 3 (§§ 1331-1342) of subtitle B of title XIII of Pub. L. 97-35, enacting this subchapter and amending sections 262d, 262f, and 276c-2 of this title and section 24 of Title 12, Banks and Banking] may be cited as the ‘African Development Bank Act.’”

**§ 290i-1. Governor and Alternate Governor**

**(a) Appointment; term; termination and reappointment**

The President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint a Governor, an Alternate Governor, and a Director of the Bank. The term of office for the Governor and the Alternate Governor shall be five years, subject at any time to termination of appointment or to reappointment. The Governor and Alternate Governor shall remain in office until a successor has been appointed.

**(b) Compensation and expenses**

No person shall be entitled to receive any salary or other compensation from the United

States for services as a Governor or Alternate Governor, except for reasonable expenses to attend meetings of the Board of Governors.

**(c) Voting**

The Governor, or in the Governor’s absence the Alternate Governor, on the instructions of the President, shall cast the votes of the United States for the Director to represent the United States in the Bank.

(Pub. L. 97-35, title XIII, § 1333, Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 741; Pub. L. 101-513, title V, § 562(b)(3), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2034.)

AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 101-513 substituted “Governor, an Alternate Governor, and a Director” for “Governor and an Alternate Governor”.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under subsec. (c) delegated to Secretary of the Treasury, see Ex. Ord. No. 12403, Feb. 8, 1983, 48 F.R. 6087.

**§ 290i-2. Director or Alternate Director; allowances**

The Director or Alternate Director representing the United States, if citizens of the United States, may, in the discretion of the President, receive such compensation, allowances, and other benefits as, together with those received from the Bank and from the African Development Fund, may not exceed those authorized for a chief of mission under the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [22 U.S.C. 3901 et seq.].

(Pub. L. 97-35, title XIII, § 1334, Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 741.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Service Act of 1980, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 96-465, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2071, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 52 (§ 3901 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3901 of this title and Tables.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of the Treasury, see Ex. Ord. No. 12403, Feb. 8, 1983, 48 F.R. 6087.

**§ 290i-3. Applicability of Bretton Woods Agreements Act**

The provisions of section 4 of the Bretton Woods Agreements Act (22 U.S.C. 286b) shall apply with respect to the Bank to the same extent as with respect to the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development and the International Monetary Fund.

(Pub. L. 97-35, title XIII, § 1335, Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 741; Pub. L. 101-240, title V, § 541(e)(7), Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2519.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Bretton Woods Agreements Act, referred to in section catchline, is act July 31, 1945, ch. 339, 59 Stat. 512, as amended, which is classified principally to subchapter XV (§ 286 et seq.) of this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 286 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1989—Pub. L. 101-240 struck out at end “Reports with respect to the Bank under paragraphs (5) and (6) of sec-

tion 4 of that Act shall be included in the first and subsequent reports made thereunder after the United States accepts membership in the Bank.”

#### § 290i-4. Restrictions

(a)<sup>1</sup> Unless authorized by law, neither the President, nor any person or agency, shall, on behalf of the United States—

(1) subscribe to additional shares of stock of the Bank;

(2) vote for or agree to any amendment of the agreement which increases the obligations of the United States, or which changes the purpose or functions of the Bank; or

(3) make a loan or provide other financing to the Bank, except that funds for technical assistance may be provided to the Bank by a United States agency created pursuant to an Act of Congress which is authorized by law to provide funds to international organizations.

(Pub. L. 97-35, title XIII, §1336, Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 742.)

#### § 290i-5. Federal Reserve banks as depositories

Any Federal Reserve bank which is requested to do so by the Bank shall act as its depository or as its fiscal agent, and the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System shall supervise and direct the carrying out of these functions by the Federal Reserve banks.

(Pub. L. 97-35, title XIII, §1337, Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 742.)

#### § 290i-6. Subscription to stock

##### (a) Authorization of United States subscription to stock

The President is authorized to agree to subscribe on behalf of the United States to twenty-nine thousand eight hundred and twenty shares of the capital stock of the Bank: *Provided, however*, That the subscription shall be effective only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriations Acts.

##### (b) Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury of the initial United States subscription to twenty-nine thousand eight hundred and twenty shares of the capital stock of the Bank, \$359,733,570: *Provided, however*, That not more than \$17,986,679 of such sum may be made available for paid in subscriptions to the Bank for each of the fiscal years 1982, 1983, and 1984.

##### (c) Distributions by Bank

Any payment or distributions of moneys from the Bank to the United States shall be covered into the Treasury as a miscellaneous receipt.

(Pub. L. 97-35, title XIII, §1338, Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 742.)

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under subsec. (a) delegated to Secretary of the Treasury, see Ex. Ord. No. 12403, Feb. 8, 1983, 48 F.R. 6087.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. No subsec. (b) has been enacted.

#### § 290i-7. Jurisdiction of United States courts

For the purposes of any civil action which may be brought within the United States, its territories or possessions, or the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, by or against the Bank in accordance with the agreement, the Bank shall be deemed to be an inhabitant of the Federal judicial district in which its principal office within the United States or its agent appointed for the purpose of accepting service or notice of service is located, and any such action to which the Bank shall be a party shall be deemed to arise under the laws of the United States, and the district courts of the United States, including the courts enumerated in section 460 of title 28, shall have original jurisdiction of any such action. When the Bank is defendant in any action in a State court, it may at any time before the trial thereof remove the action into the appropriate district court of the United States by following the procedure for removal provided in section 1446 of title 28.

(Pub. L. 97-35, title XIII, §1339, Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 742.)

#### § 290i-8. Force and effect of agreement

Paragraph 5 of article 49, articles 50 through 59, and the other provisions of the agreement shall have full force and effect in the United States, its territories and possessions, and the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, upon acceptance of membership by the United States in the Bank. The President, at the time of deposit of the instrument of acceptance of membership by the United States in the Bank, shall also deposit a declaration as provided in article 64, paragraph 3, of the agreement that the United States retains for itself and its political subdivisions the right to tax salaries and emoluments paid by the Bank to United States citizens or nationals.

(Pub. L. 97-35, title XIII, §1340, Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 743.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The agreement, referred to in text, is the agreement establishing the African Development Bank. See section 290i of this title.

#### § 290i-9. Securities issued by Bank; Securities and Exchange Commission oversight

##### (a) Treatment as exempt securities; reports to Securities and Exchange Commission

Any securities issued by the Bank (including any guarantee by the Bank, whether or not limited in scope) in connection with the raising of funds for inclusion in the Bank's ordinary capital resources as defined in article 9 of the agreement and any securities guaranteed by the Bank as to both principal and interest to which the commitment in article 7, paragraph 4(a), of the agreement is expressly applicable, shall be deemed to be exempted securities within the meaning of sections 77c(a)(2) and 78c(a)(12) of title 15. The Bank shall file with the Securities and Exchange Commission such annual and other reports with regard to such securities as the Commission shall determine to be appropriate in view of the special character of the

Bank and its operations as necessary in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

**(b) Suspension of provisions; reports to Congress**

The Securities and Exchange Commission, acting in consultation with such agency or officer as the President shall designate, is authorized to suspend the provisions of subsection (a) of this section at any time as to any or all securities issued or guaranteed by the Bank during the period of such suspension. The Commission shall include in its annual reports to Congress such information as it shall deem advisable with regard to the operations and effect of this section and in connection therewith shall include any views submitted for such purpose by any association of dealers registered with the Commission.

(Pub. L. 97-35, title XIII, §1341, Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 743.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The agreement, referred to in subsec. (a), is the agreement establishing the African Development Bank. See section 290i of this title.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under subsec. (b) delegated to Secretary of the Treasury, see Ex. Ord. No. 12403, Feb. 8, 1983, 48 F.R. 6087.

**§ 290i-10. Authorization of United States subscription to stock; authorization of appropriations**

(a) The United States Governor of the Bank is authorized to agree to subscribe on behalf of the United States to fifty-nine thousand, six hundred and thirty-two shares of the capital stock of the Bank, except that the subscription shall be effective only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriations Acts.

(b) In order to pay for the United States subscription authorized in subsection (a) of this section, there are authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, \$719,370,633, for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury.

(Pub. L. 97-35, title XIII, §1343, as added Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title I], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-134.)

CODIFICATION

Section 1343 of Pub. L. 97-35 is based on section 301 of title III of H.R. 3750, One Hundredth Congress, as introduced Dec. 11, 1987, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-202.

SUBCHAPTER XXV—UNITED STATES-INDIA FUND FOR CULTURAL, EDUCATIONAL, AND SCIENTIFIC COOPERATION

**§ 290j. Establishment of the Fund**

**(a) Agreement with Government of India; program purposes**

The President is authorized to enter into an agreement with the Government of India for the establishment of a fund (hereafter in this subchapter referred to as the "Fund") which would provide grants and other assistance for cultural, educational, and scientific programs of mutual interest. Such programs may include exchanges

of persons, exchanges of information, and other programs of study, research, and scholarly cooperation. The agreement may also provide for the establishment of an endowment, a foundation, or other means to carry out the purposes of the agreement.

**(b) United States representatives**

The United States representatives on any board or other entity created in accordance with the agreement to administer the Fund shall be designated by the President predominately from among representatives of United States Government agencies, including those administering programs which may be supported in whole or in part by the Fund.

**(c) Funding of programs**

United States Government agencies carrying out programs of the types specified in subsection (a) of this section may receive amounts directly from the Fund for use in carrying out those programs.

(Pub. L. 98-164, title IX, §902, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1051.)

SHORT TITLE

Section 901 of title IX of Pub. L. 98-164 provided that: "This title [enacting this subchapter] may be cited as the 'United States-India Fund for Cultural, Educational, and Scientific Cooperation Act'."

EX. ORD. NO. 12517. DELEGATION CONCERNING UNITED STATES-INDIA FUND FOR CULTURAL, EDUCATIONAL, AND SCIENTIFIC COOPERATION

Ex. Ord. No. 12517, May 29, 1985, 50 F.R. 23105, provided:

By the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and statutes of the United States of America, including section 301 of Title 3 of the United States Code, and in order to delegate certain functions concerning the United States-India Fund for Cultural, Educational, and Scientific Cooperation to the Secretary of State, it is hereby ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. All functions vested in the President by the United States-India Fund for Cultural, Educational, and Scientific Cooperation Act (Title IX of Public Law 98-164, 97 Stat. 1051; "the Act") [22 U.S.C. 290j et seq.] are delegated to the Secretary of State.

SEC. 2. India rupees provided to the President for purposes of Title IX of the Act and under Title III of the Departments of Commerce, Justice, and State, the Judiciary, and Related Agencies Appropriation Act, 1985 (Public Law 98-411, 98 Stat. 1545) are allocated to the Secretary of the Treasury for investment to generate earnings for purposes of Title IX of the Act.

RONALD REAGAN.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 290j-1 of this title.

**§ 290j-1. Use of United States owned rupees to capitalize the Fund**

(a) Subject to applicable requirements concerning reimbursement to the Treasury for United States owned foreign currencies, the President may make available to the Fund, for use in carrying out the agreement authorized by section 290j of this title, up to the equivalent of \$200,000,000 in foreign currencies owned by the United States in India or owed to the United States by the Government of India. Such use may include investment in order to generate in-

terest which would be retained in the Fund and used to support programs pursuant to that agreement.

(b) In accordance with the agreement negotiated pursuant to section 290j(a) of this title, sums made available for investment for the United States-India Fund for Cultural, Educational, and Scientific Cooperation under the Departments of Commerce, Justice, and State, and the Judiciary and Related Agencies Appropriation Act, 1985, and any earnings on such sums shall be available for the purposes of section 290j(a) of this title.

(Pub. L. 98-164, title IX, §903, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1051; Pub. L. 99-93, title VIII, §808, Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 452; Pub. L. 100-204, title III, §305, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1379.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Departments of Commerce, Justice, and State, the Judiciary, and Related Agencies Appropriation Act, 1985, referred to in subsec. (b), is Pub. L. 98-411, Aug. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 1545. For provisions relating to contribution to the United States-India Fund for Cultural, Educational, and Scientific Cooperation, see 98 Stat. 1567.

#### AMENDMENTS

1987—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 100-204 amended subsec. (b) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (b) read as follows: “Pending completion of the negotiation of an agreement with the Government of India, the annual earnings generated by the moneys appropriated by the Departments of Commerce, Justice, and State, the Judiciary, and Related Agencies Appropriation Act, 1985, may be used for the purposes set out in section 290j(a) of this title.”

1985—Pub. L. 99-93 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsec. (b).

### SUBCHAPTER XXVI—MULTILATERAL INVESTMENT GUARANTEE AGENCY

#### § 290k. Acceptance of membership

The President is hereby authorized to accept membership for the United States in the Multilateral Investment Guarantee Agency (hereinafter in this subchapter referred to as the “Agency”) provided for by the Convention Establishing the Multilateral Investment Guarantee Agency (hereinafter in this subchapter referred to as the “Convention”) deposited in the archives of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (hereinafter in this subchapter referred to as the “Bank”).

(Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title I], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-134.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section is based on section 403 of title IV of H.R. 3750, One Hundredth Congress, as introduced Dec. 11, 1987, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-202.

Section 402 of title IV of H.R. 3750, as introduced Dec. 11, 1987, and as enacted into law by section 101(e) [title I] of Pub. L. 100-202, provided that: “This title [enacting this subchapter] shall be codified as subchapter XXVI of chapter 7 of title 22 of the United States Code.”

#### SHORT TITLE

Section 401 of title IV of H.R. 3750, as introduced Dec. 11, 1987, and as enacted into law by section 101(e) [title I] of Pub. L. 100-202, provided that: “This title [enacting this subchapter] may be cited as the ‘Multilateral Investment Guarantee Agency Act.’”

#### § 290k-1. Governor and Alternate Governor

The Governor and Alternate Governor of the Bank, appointed under section 286a of this title, shall serve as Governor and Alternate Governor, respectively, of the Agency.

(Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title I], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-134.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section is based on section 404 of title IV of H.R. 3750, One Hundredth Congress, as introduced Dec. 11, 1987, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-202.

#### § 290k-2. Instructions for United States Director

Immediately after taking office and prior to the issuance by the Agency of its first guarantee, the United States Director of the Agency shall propose and actively seek the adoption by the Board of Directors of policies and procedures under which the Agency will not issue guarantees in respect of any proposed investment that would—

(1) be in any country which has not taken or is not taking steps to afford internationally recognized workers’ rights to workers in that country;

(2) be subject to trade-distorting performance requirements imposed by the host country that are likely to result in a significant net reduction in—

(A) employment in the United States or other member countries; or

(B) other trade benefits likely to accrue to the United States or other member countries from the investment; or

(3) increase a country’s productive capacity in an industry already facing excess worldwide capacity for the same, similar or competing product, and cause substantial injury to producers of such product in another member country.

(Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title I], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-134.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section is based on section 405 of title IV of H.R. 3750, One Hundredth Congress, as introduced Dec. 11, 1987, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-202.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 290k-3 of this title.

#### § 290k-3. Opposition to certain guarantees or investment promotions; independent evaluation of guaranteed investments

Consistent with the purposes of section 290k-2 of this title, the Secretary of the Treasury shall—

(1) instruct the United States Director to oppose, and to actively seek the concurrence of other members of the Board of Directors in opposing, any guarantee or other investment promotion under consideration by the Agency if the proposed investment would—

(A) be in any country which is not a beneficiary developing country for purposes of title V of the Trade Act of 1974 [19 U.S.C. 2461 et seq.] because it has not taken or is

not taking steps to afford internationally-recognized workers' rights to workers in that country;

(B) be subject to trade-distorting performance requirements imposed by the host country that are likely to result in a significant net reduction in—

- (i) employment in the United States; or
- (ii) other trade benefits likely to accrue to the United States from the investment; or

(C) likely increase a country's productive capacity in an industry already facing excess worldwide capacity for the same, similar or competing product, and cause substantial injury to producers of such products in the United States; and

(2) within 12 months after the United States becomes a member of the Agency and each year thereafter for the 3 succeeding years, conduct an independent evaluation of the United States investments which have been guaranteed by the Agency to determine—

(A) the anticipated net impact of such investments on employment in and exports from the United States, and

(B) the extent to which such investments were made in countries which had not taken or are not taking steps to afford internationally-recognized workers' rights to workers in those countries.

In the course of conducting each evaluation required under paragraph (2), the Secretary shall actively solicit and take into account the views of United States labor organizations. The Secretary shall furnish a copy of each such evaluation on its completion to the Congress.

(Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title I], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-134.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Trade Act of 1974, referred to in par. (1)(A), is Pub. L. 93-618, Jan. 3, 1975, 88 Stat. 1978, as amended. Title V of the Trade Act of 1974 is classified generally to subchapter V (§2461 et seq.) of chapter 12 of Title 19, Customs Duties. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 2101 of Title 19 and Tables.

#### CODIFICATION

Section is based on section 406 of title IV of H.R. 3750, One Hundredth Congress, as introduced Dec. 11, 1987, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-202.

#### § 290k-4. Consultation with representatives of private sector and of labor organizations on Agency policy directions and operations

Recognizing that United States participation in the Agency represents an effort to enhance United States trade prospects and strengthen the role of the United States private sector in the development process, the Secretary of the Treasury shall ensure regular and continuing consultations with United States private sector representatives and representatives of United States labor organizations, through appropriate mechanisms, on policy directions and operations of the Agency, and shall take account of those consultations in determining the policies of the United States toward the Agency.

(Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title I], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-134.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section is based on section 407 of title IV of H.R. 3750, One Hundredth Congress, as introduced Dec. 11, 1987, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-202.

#### § 290k-5. Applicability of Bretton Woods Agreements Act

The provisions of section 286b of this title shall apply with respect to the Agency to the same extent as with respect to the Bank and the International Monetary Fund.

(Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title I], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-134; Pub. L. 101-240, title V, §541(e)(5), Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2518.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Bretton Woods Agreements Act, referred to in section catchline, is act July 31, 1945, ch. 339, 59 Stat. 512, as amended, which is classified principally to subchapter XV (§286 et seq.) of this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 286 of this title and Tables.

#### CODIFICATION

Section is based on section 408 of title IV of H.R. 3750, One Hundredth Congress, as introduced Dec. 11, 1987, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-202.

#### AMENDMENTS

1989—Pub. L. 101-240 struck out at end "Reports with respect to the Agency under paragraphs (5) and (6) of section 286b(b) of this title shall be included in the reports made thereunder after the United States accepts membership in the Agency."

#### § 290k-6. Restrictions

Unless authorized by law, neither the President nor any person or agency shall, on behalf of the United States—

- (1) subscribe to additional shares of stock of the Agency;
- (2) vote for or agree to any amendment of the Convention which increases the obligations of the United States, or which changes the purpose or functions of the Agency; or
- (3) make a loan or provide other financing to the Agency.

(Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title I], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-134.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section is based on section 409 of title IV of H.R. 3750, One Hundredth Congress, as introduced Dec. 11, 1987, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-202.

#### § 290k-7. Federal Reserve banks as depositories

Any Federal Reserve bank that is requested to do so by the Agency shall act as its depository or as its fiscal agent, and the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System shall supervise and direct the carrying out of these functions by the Federal Reserve banks.

(Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title I], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-134.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section is based on section 410 of title IV of H.R. 3750, One Hundredth Congress, as introduced Dec. 11, 1987, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-202.

**§ 290k-8. Subscription of stock****(a) Authority of Secretary of the Treasury**

The Secretary of the Treasury is authorized to subscribe on behalf of the United States to 20,519 shares of the capital stock of the Agency, except that the subscription shall be effective only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriations Acts.

**(b) Authorization of appropriations**

In order to pay for United States subscription authorized in subsection (a) of this section, there are authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, \$222,015,580, for payment by the Secretary of the Treasury.

**(c) Dividends deposited into Treasury**

Any payment of dividends made to the United States by the Agency shall be deposited into the Treasury as a miscellaneous receipt.

(Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title I], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-134.)

## CODIFICATION

Section is based on section 411 of title IV of H.R. 3750, One Hundredth Congress, as introduced Dec. 11, 1987, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-202.

**§ 290k-9. Jurisdiction of United States courts and enforcement of arbitral awards**

For the purposes of any civil action which may be brought within the United States, its territories or possessions, or the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, by or against the Agency in accordance with the Convention, including an action brought to enforce an arbitral award against the Agency, the Agency shall be deemed to be an inhabitant of the Federal judicial district in which its principal office within the United States or its agent appointed for the purpose of accepting service or notice of service is located, and any such action to which the Agency shall be a party shall be deemed to arise under the laws of the United States, and the district courts of the United States, including the courts enumerated in section 460 of title 28, shall have original jurisdiction of any such action. When the Agency is a defendant in any action in a State court, it may at any time before the trial thereof remove the action into the appropriate district court of the United States by following the procedure for removal provided in section 1446 of title 28.

(Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title I], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-134.)

## CODIFICATION

Section is based on section 412 of title IV of H.R. 3750, One Hundredth Congress, as introduced Dec. 11, 1987, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-202.

**§ 290k-10. Effectiveness of Convention**

Articles 43 through 48, inclusive, of the Convention shall have full force and effect in the United States, its territories and possessions, and the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, upon the entry into force of the Convention for the United States.

(Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title I], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-134.)

## CODIFICATION

Section is based on section 413 of title IV of H.R. 3750, One Hundredth Congress, as introduced Dec. 11, 1987, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-202.

**§ 290k-11. Arbitral awards; enforcement; full faith and credit; Federal Arbitration Act inapplicable; exclusiveness of district court jurisdiction**

(a) An award of an arbitral tribunal resolving a dispute arising under Article 57 or Article 58 of the Convention shall create a right arising under a treaty of the United States. The pecuniary obligations imposed by such an award shall be enforced and shall be given the same full faith and credit as if the award were a final judgment of a court of general jurisdiction of one of the several States. The Federal Arbitration Act (9 U.S.C. 1, et seq.) shall not apply to enforcement of awards rendered pursuant to the Convention.

(b) The district courts of the United States (including the courts enumerated in section 460 of title 28) shall have exclusive jurisdiction over actions and proceedings under subsection (a) of this section, regardless of the amount in controversy.

(Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title I], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-134.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Federal Arbitration Act, referred to in subsection (a), is classified generally to Title 9, Arbitration.

## CODIFICATION

Section is based on section 414 of title IV of H.R. 3750, One Hundredth Congress, as introduced Dec. 11, 1987, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-202.

**SUBCHAPTER XXVII—EUROPEAN BANK FOR RECONSTRUCTION AND DEVELOPMENT****§ 290l. Acceptance of membership**

The President is hereby authorized to accept membership for the United States in the European Bank for Reconstruction and Development (in this subchapter referred to as the “Bank”) provided for by the agreement establishing the Bank (in this subchapter referred to as the “Agreement”), signed on May 29, 1990.

(Pub. L. 101-513, title V, §562(c)(2), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2034.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this subsection” meaning subsection (c) of section 562 of Pub. L. 101-513, title V, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2034, which is classified principally to this subchapter. For complete classification of subsection (c) to the Code, see Short Title note set out below and Tables.

## SHORT TITLE

Section 562(c)(1) of Pub. L. 101-513 provided that: “This subsection [enacting this subchapter and amending sections 262r and 276c-2 of this title and section 24 of Title 12, Banks and Banking] may be cited as the ‘European Bank for Reconstruction and Development Act.’”

**§ 290l-1. Governor and alternate Governor****(a) Appointment**

The President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint a Governor of



the Bank, an alternate for the Governor, and a Director of the Bank.

**(b) Compensation**

Any person who serves as a Governor of the Bank or as an alternate for the Governor may not receive any salary or other compensation from the United States by reason of such service.

(Pub. L. 101-513, title V, §562(c)(3), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2034.)

CODIFICATION

Subsecs. (a) and (b) were in the original (A) and (B), respectively, and were editorially redesignated for purposes of codification.

**§ 2901-2. Applicability of certain provisions of Bretton Woods Agreements Act**

Section 286b of this title shall apply to the Bank in the same manner in which such section applies to the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development and the International Monetary Fund.

(Pub. L. 101-513, title V, §562(c)(4), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2034.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Bretton Woods Agreements Act, referred to in section catchline, is act July 31, 1945, ch. 339, 59 Stat. 512, as amended, which is classified principally to subchapter XV (§286 et seq.) of this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 286 of this title and Tables.

**§ 2901-3. Federal Reserve banks as depositories**

Any Federal Reserve Bank<sup>1</sup> which is requested to do so by the Bank may act as its depository, or as its fiscal agent, and the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System shall exercise general supervision over the carrying out of these functions.

(Pub. L. 101-513, title V, §562(c)(5), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2034.)

**§ 2901-4. Subscription of stock**

**(a) Subscription authority**

**(1) In general**

The Secretary of the Treasury may subscribe on behalf of the United States to 100,000 shares of the capital stock of the Bank.

**(2) Effectiveness of subscription commitment**

Any commitment to make such subscription shall be effective only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided for in advance by appropriations Acts.

**(b) Limitations on authorization of appropriations**

For payment by the Secretary of the Treasury of the subscription of the United States for shares described in subsection (a) of this section, there are authorized to be appropriated \$1,167,010,000 without fiscal year limitation.

**(c) Disposition of net income distributions by Bank**

Any payment made to the United States by the Bank as a distribution of net income shall

be covered into the Treasury as a miscellaneous receipt.

(Pub. L. 101-513, title V, §562(c)(6), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2034.)

CODIFICATION

Subsecs. (a) to (c) were in the original (A) to (C), respectively, and pars. (1) and (2) of subsec. (a) were in the original (i) and (ii), respectively, and were editorially redesignated for purposes of codification.

**§ 2901-5. Jurisdiction and venue of civil actions by or against Bank**

**(a) Jurisdiction**

The United States district courts shall have original and exclusive jurisdiction of any civil action brought in the United States by or against the Bank.

**(b) Venue**

For purposes of section 1391(b) of title 28, the Bank shall be deemed to be a resident of the judicial district in which the principal office of the Bank in the United States, or its agent appointed for the purpose of accepting service or notice of service, is located.

(Pub. L. 101-513, title V, §562(c)(7), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2035.)

CODIFICATION

Subsecs. (a) and (b) were in the original (A) and (B), respectively, and were editorially redesignated for purposes of codification.

**§ 2901-6. Effectiveness of Agreement**

The Agreement shall have full force and effect in the United States, its territories and possessions, and the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, upon acceptance of membership by the United States in the Bank and the entry into force of the Agreement.

(Pub. L. 101-513, title V, §562(c)(8), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2035.)

**§ 2901-7. Exemption from securities laws for certain securities issued by Bank; reports required**

**(a) Exemption from securities laws; reports to Securities and Exchange Commission**

Any securities issued by the Bank (including any guaranty by the Bank, whether or not limited in scope) in connection with the raising of funds for inclusion in the Bank's ordinary capital resources as defined in article 7 of the Agreement and any securities guaranteed by the Bank as to both principal and interest to which the commitment in article 6, paragraph 4, of the Agreement is expressly applicable, shall be deemed to be exempted securities within the meaning of section 77c(a)(2) of title 15 and section 78c(a)(12) of title 15. The Bank shall file with the Securities and Exchange Commission such annual and other reports with regard to such securities as the Commission shall determine to be appropriate in view of the special character of the Bank and its operations and necessary in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should not be capitalized.

**(b) Authority of Securities and Exchange Commission to suspend exemption; reports to Congress**

The Securities and Exchange Commission, acting in consultation with such agency or officer as the President shall designate, may suspend the provisions of subsection (a) of this section at any time as to any or all securities issued or guaranteed by the Bank during the period of such suspension. The Commission shall include in its annual reports to the Congress such information as it shall deem advisable with regard to the operations and effect of this section.

(Pub. L. 101-513, title V, §562(c)(9), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2035.)

CODIFICATION

Subsecs. (a) and (b) were in the original (A) and (B), respectively, and were editorially redesignated for purposes of codification.

**§ 290/-8. Congressional consultations**

During negotiations on the establishment of operational guidelines for the Bank, the Secretary of the Treasury shall—

(A) consult on a regular and timely basis with the Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs and the Committee on Appropriations of the House of Representatives, and the Committee on Foreign Relations and the Committee on Appropriations of the Senate;

(B) seek to ensure that procedures and mechanisms are established, including the creation of specific departments or staffs within the Bank, which will allow the Bank to assess the impact of any loans, guarantees, or other activities on the environment and on internationally recognized human rights in borrower countries; and

(C) report, through consultation within 90 days after November 5, 1990, to the Committees specified in subparagraph (A) on the progress of efforts to create such procedures and mechanisms.

(Pub. L. 101-513, title V, §562(c)(11), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2036.)

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Banking and Financial Services of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

GOALS IN NEGOTIATIONS CONCERNING STRUCTURE, BYLAWS, AND OPERATING PROCEDURES OF BANK

Section 584 of Pub. L. 101-513 provided that: "In all negotiations concerning the structure, bylaws, and operating procedures of the European Bank for Reconstruction and Development (EBRD), the Secretary of the Treasury shall vigorously seek—

"(1) establishment of procedures for environmental assessment of all proposed operations with potentially significant environmental impacts;

"(2) establishment of an environmental unit with sufficient staff to review proposed operations, monitor compliance with environmental provisions, and provide overall policy guidance;

"(3) establishment of procedures for systematic consultation with and involvement of the public and interested nongovernmental organizations, including

an opportunity for comment by local communities which may be affected by EBRD operations and establishment of a system of public notification and comment during the development of EBRD policies and operating procedures; and

"(4) agreement that a significant portion of the EBRD's funds shall be devoted to projects focused on environmental restoration and protection."

SUBCHAPTER XXVIII—NORTH AMERICAN DEVELOPMENT BANK AND RELATED PROVISIONS

**§ 290m. North American Development Bank**

**(a) Acceptance of membership**

The President is hereby authorized to accept membership for the United States in the North American Development Bank (hereafter in this subchapter referred to as the "Bank") provided for in Chapter II of the Border Environment Cooperation Agreement (hereafter in this subchapter referred to as the "Cooperation Agreement").

**(b) Subscription of stock**

**(1) Subscription authority**

**(A) In general**

The Secretary of the Treasury may subscribe on behalf of the United States up to 150,000 shares of the capital stock of the Bank.

**(B) Effectiveness of subscription**

Except as provided in paragraph (3), any such subscription shall be effective only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriations Acts.

**(2) Limitations on authorization of appropriations**

For payment by the Secretary of the Treasury of the subscription of the United States for shares described in paragraph (1), there are authorized to be appropriated \$1,500,000,000 (\$225,000,000 of which may be used for paid-in capital and \$1,275,000,000 of which may be used for callable capital) without fiscal year limitation.

**(3) Funding; limitation on callable capital subscriptions**

**(A) Funding**

For fiscal year 1995, the Secretary of the Treasury shall pay to the Bank out of any sums in the Treasury not otherwise appropriated the sum of \$56,250,000 for the paid-in portion of the United States share of the capital stock of the Bank, 10 percent of which may be transferred by the Bank to the President pursuant to section 290m-2 of this title to pay for the cost of direct and guaranteed Federal loans.

**(B) Limitation on callable capital subscriptions**

For fiscal year 1995, the Secretary of the Treasury shall subscribe to the callable capital portion of the United States share of the capital stock of the Bank in an amount not to exceed \$318,750,000.

**(4) Disposition of net income distributed by the facility**

Any payment made to the United States by the Bank as a distribution of net income shall

be covered into the Treasury as a miscellaneous receipt.

**(c) Compensation of Board members**

No person shall be entitled to receive any salary or other compensation from the Bank or the United States for services as a Board member.

**(d) Applicability of Bretton Woods Agreements Act**

The provisions of section 4 of the Bretton Woods Agreements Act [22 U.S.C. 286b] shall apply with respect to the Bank to the same extent as with respect to the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development and the International Monetary Fund.

**(e) Restrictions**

Unless authorized by law, neither the President nor any person or agency shall, on behalf of the United States—

- (1) subscribe to additional shares of stock of the Bank;
- (2) vote for or agree to any amendment of the Cooperation Agreement which increases the obligations of the United States, or which changes the purpose or functions of the Bank; or
- (3) make a loan or provide other financing to the Bank.

**(f) Federal Reserve banks as depositories**

Any Federal Reserve bank that is requested to do so by the Bank shall act as its depository or as its fiscal agent, and the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System shall supervise and direct the carrying out of these functions by the Federal Reserve banks.

**(g) Jurisdiction of United States courts and enforcement of arbitral awards**

For the purpose of any civil action which may be brought within the United States, its territories or possessions, or the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, by or against the Bank in accordance with the Cooperation Agreement, including an action brought to enforce an arbitral award against the Bank, the Bank shall be deemed to be an inhabitant of the Federal judicial district in which its principal office within the United States or its agency appointed for the purpose of accepting service or notice of service is located, and any such action to which the Bank shall be a party shall be deemed to arise under the laws of the United States, and the district courts of the United States, including the courts enumerated in section 460 of title 28, shall have original jurisdiction of any such action. When the Bank is a defendant in any action in a State court, it may at any time before trial remove the action into the appropriate district court of the United States by following the procedure for removal provided in section 1446 of title 28.

**(h) Exemption from securities laws for certain securities issued by Bank; reports required**

**(1) Omitted**

**(2) Exemption from securities laws for certain securities issued by the Bank; reports required**

Any securities issued by the Bank (including any guarantee by the Bank, whether or not

limited in scope) in connection with the raising of funds for inclusion in the Bank's capital resources as defined in Section 4 of Article II of Chapter II of the Cooperation Agreement, and any securities guaranteed by the Bank as to both the principal and interest to which the commitment in Section 3(d) of Article II of Chapter II of the Cooperation Agreement is expressly applicable, shall be deemed to be exempted securities within the meaning of section 77c(a)(2) of title 15, and section 78c(a)(12) of title 15. The Bank shall file with the Securities and Exchange Commission such annual and other reports with regard to such securities as the Commission shall determine to be appropriate in view of the special character of the Bank and its operations and necessary in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

**(3) Authority of Securities and Exchange Commission to suspend exemption; reports to the Congress**

The Securities and Exchange Commission, acting in consultation with the National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Problems, is authorized to suspend the provisions of paragraph (2) at any time as to any or all securities issued or guaranteed by the Bank during the period of such suspension. The Commission shall include in its annual reports to Congress such information as it shall deem advisable with regard to the operations and effect of this subsection and in connection therewith shall include any views submitted for such purpose by any association of dealers registered with the Commission.

(Pub. L. 103-182, title V, §541, Dec. 8, 1993, 107 Stat. 2165.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original "this part" meaning part 2 of subtitle D of title V of Pub. L. 103-182, which enacted this subchapter and amended section 24 of Title 12, Banks and Banking. For complete classification of part 2 to the Code, see Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section is comprised of section 541 of Pub. L. 103-182. Subsec. (h)(1) of section 541 amended section 24 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

**§ 290m-1. Status, immunities, and privileges**

Article VIII of Chapter II of the Cooperation Agreement shall have full force and effect in the United States, its territories and possessions, and the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, upon entry into force of the Cooperation Agreement.

(Pub. L. 103-182, title V, §542, Dec. 8, 1993, 107 Stat. 2167.)

**§ 290m-2. Community adjustment and investment program**

**(a) The President**

(1) The President may enter into an agreement with the Bank that facilitates implementation by the President of a program for community adjustment and investment in support of the Agreement pursuant to chapter II of the Co-

operation Agreement (hereafter in this section referred to as the “community adjustment and investment program”).

(2) The President may receive from the Bank 10 percent of the paid-in capital actually paid to the Bank by the United States for the President to carry out, without further appropriations, through Federal agencies and their loan and loan guarantee programs, the community adjustment and investment program, pursuant to an agreement between the President and the Bank.

(3) The President may select one or more Federal agencies that make loans or guarantee the repayment of loans to assist in carrying out the community adjustment and investment program, and may transfer the funds received from the Bank to such agency or agencies for the purpose of assisting in carrying out the community adjustment and investment program.

(4)(A) Each Federal agency selected by the President to assist in carrying out the community adjustment and investment program shall use the funds transferred to it by the President from the Bank to pay for the costs of direct and guaranteed loans, as defined in section 661a of title 2, and, as appropriate, other costs associated with such loans, all subject to the restrictions and limitations that apply to such agency’s existing loan or loan guarantee program.

(B) Funds transferred to an agency under subparagraph (A) shall be in addition to the amount of funds authorized in any appropriations Act to be expended by that agency for its loan or loan guarantee program.

(5) The President shall—

(A) establish guidelines for the loans and loan guarantees to be made under the community adjustment and investment program;

(B) endorse the grants made by the Bank for the community adjustment and investment program, as provided in Article I, section 1(b), and Article III, section 11(a), of Chapter II of the Cooperation Agreement; and

(C) endorse any loans or guarantees made by the Bank for the community adjustment and investment program, as provided in Article I, section 1(b), and Article III, section 6(a) and (c) of Chapter II of the Cooperation Agreement.

## **(b) Advisory Committee**

### **(1) Establishment**

The President shall establish an advisory committee to be known as the Community Adjustment and Investment Program Advisory Committee (in this section referred to as the “Advisory Committee”) in accordance with the provisions of the Federal Advisory Committee Act.

### **(2) Membership**

#### **(A) In general**

The Advisory Committee shall consist of 9 members of the public, appointed by the President, who, collectively, represent—

- (i) community groups whose constituencies include low-income families;
- (ii) any scientific, professional, business, nonprofit, or public interest organization or association which is neither affiliated

with, nor under the direction of, a government;

(iii) for-profit business interests; and

(iv) other appropriate entities with relevant expertise.

### **(B) Representation**

Each of the categories described in clauses (i) through (iv) of subparagraph (A) shall be represented by no fewer than 1 and no more than 3 members of the Advisory Committee.

### **(3) Function**

It shall be the function of the Advisory Committee—

(A) to provide advice to the President regarding the implementation of the community adjustment and investment program, including advice on the guidelines to be established by the President for the loans and loan guarantees to be made pursuant to subsection (a)(4) of this section, advice on identifying the needs for adjustment assistance and investment in support of the goals and objectives of the Agreement, taking into account economic and geographic considerations, and advice on such other matters as may be requested by the President; and

(B) to review on a regular basis the operation of the community adjustment and investment program and provide the President with the conclusions of its review.

### **(4) Terms of members**

#### **(A) In general**

Each member of the Advisory Committee shall serve at the pleasure of the President.

#### **(B) Chairperson**

The President shall appoint a chairperson from among the members of the Advisory Committee.

#### **(C) Meetings**

The Advisory Committee shall meet at least annually and at such other times as requested by the President or the chairperson. A majority of the members of the Advisory Committee shall constitute a quorum.

#### **(D) Reimbursement for expenses**

The members of the Advisory Committee may receive reimbursement for travel, per diem, and other necessary expenses incurred in the performance of their duties, in accordance with the Federal Advisory Committee Act.

#### **(E) Staff and facilities**

The Advisory Committee may utilize the facilities and services of employees of any Federal agency without cost to the Advisory Committee, and any such agency is authorized to provide services as requested by the Committee.

### **(c) Ombudsman**

The President shall appoint an ombudsman to provide the public with an opportunity to participate in the carrying out of the community adjustment and investment program.

#### **(1) Function**

It shall be the function of the ombudsman—

(A) to establish procedures for receiving comments from the general public on the operation of the community adjustment and investment program, to receive such comments, and to provide the President with summaries of the public comments; and

(B) to perform an independent inspection and programmatic audit of the operation of the community adjustment and investment program and to provide the President with the conclusions of its investigation and audit.

**(2) Authorization of appropriations**

There are authorized to be appropriated to the President, or such agency as the President may designate, \$25,000 for fiscal year 1995 and for each fiscal year thereafter, for the costs of the ombudsman.

**(d) Reporting requirement**

The President shall submit to the appropriate congressional committees an annual report on the community adjustment and investment program (if any) that is carried out pursuant to this section. Each report shall state the amount of the loans made or guaranteed during the 12-month period ending on the day before the date of the report.

(Pub. L. 103-182, title V, §543, Dec. 8, 1993, 107 Stat. 2167.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Federal Advisory Committee Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(1), (4)(D), is Pub. L. 92-463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 770, as amended, which is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under subsec. (a)(1) to (3) of this section delegated to Secretary of the Treasury and functions of President under subsecs. (a)(5) and (d) of this section delegated to Community Adjustment and Investment Program Finance Committee by sections 4 to 6 of Ex. Ord. No. 12916, May 13, 1994, 59 F.R. 25780, set out as a note under section 3473 of Title 19, Customs Duties.

TERMINATION OF ADVISORY COMMITTEES

Advisory committees established after Jan. 5, 1973, to terminate not later than the expiration of the 2-year period beginning on the date of their establishment, unless, in the case of a committee established by the President or an officer of the Federal Government, such committee is renewed by appropriate action prior to the expiration of such 2-year period, or in the case of a committee established by Congress, its duration is otherwise provided by law. See section 14 of Pub. L. 92-463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 776, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

COMMUNITY ADJUSTMENT AND INVESTMENT PROGRAM  
FINANCE COMMITTEE

For provisions establishing the Community Adjustment and Investment Program Finance Committee to assist in carrying out the program pursuant to subsec. (a)(3) of this section and to provide to the President advice and conclusions of reviews by the Advisory Committee pursuant to subsec. (b)(3) of this section and summaries of public comments or conclusions of investigations and audits by the ombudsman pursuant to subsec. (c)(1) of this section, see Ex. Ord. No. 12916, §§7-9, May 13, 1994, 59 F.R. 25780, set out as a note under section 3473 of Title 19, Customs Duties.

DEFINITIONS

Agreement means the North American Free Trade Agreement, see section 3301(1) of Title 19, Customs Duties.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 290m of this title.

**§ 290m-3. “Border Environment Cooperation Agreement” defined**

For purposes of this subchapter, the term “Border Environment Cooperation Agreement” (referred to in this subchapter as the “Cooperation Agreement”) means the November 1993 Agreement Between the Government of the United States of America and the Government of the United Mexican States Concerning the Establishment of a Border Environment Cooperation Commission and a North American Development Bank.

(Pub. L. 103-182, title V, §544, Dec. 8, 1993, 107 Stat. 2170.)

SUBCHAPTER XXIX—UNITED STATES-  
MEXICO BORDER HEALTH COMMISSION

**§ 290n. Establishment of Border Health Commission**

The President is authorized and encouraged to conclude an agreement with Mexico to establish a binational commission to be known as the United States-Mexico Border Health Commission.

(Pub. L. 103-400, §2, Oct. 22, 1994, 108 Stat. 4169.)

SHORT TITLE

Section 1 of Pub. L. 103-400 provided that: “This Act [enacting this subchapter] may be cited as the ‘United States-Mexico Border Health Commission Act.’”

**§ 290n-1. Duties**

It should be the duty of the Commission—

(1) to conduct a comprehensive needs assessment in the United States-Mexico Border Area for the purposes of identifying, evaluating, preventing, and resolving health problems and potential health problems that affect the general population of the area;

(2) to implement the actions recommended by the needs assessment through—

(A) assisting in the coordination and implementation of the efforts of public and private entities to prevent and resolve such health problems, and

(B) assisting in the coordination and implementation of efforts of public and private entities to educate such population, in a culturally competent manner, concerning such health problems; and

(3) to formulate recommendations to the Governments of the United States and Mexico concerning a fair and reasonable method by which the government of one country could reimburse a public or private entity in the other country for the cost of a health care service that the entity furnishes to a citizen of the first country who is unable, through insurance or otherwise, to pay for the service.

(Pub. L. 103-400, §3, Oct. 22, 1994, 108 Stat. 4169.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 290n-2 of this title.

**§ 290n-2. Other authorized functions**

In addition to the duties described in section 290n-1 of this title, the Commission should be authorized to perform the following functions as the Commission determines to be appropriate—

(1) to conduct or support investigations, research, or studies designed to identify, study, and monitor, on an on-going basis, health problems that affect the general population in the United States-Mexico Border Area;

(2) to conduct or support a binational, public-private effort to establish a comprehensive and coordinated system, which uses advanced technologies to the maximum extent possible, for gathering health-related data and monitoring health problems in the United States-Mexico Border Area; and

(3) to provide financial, technical, or administrative assistance to public or private nonprofit entities who act to prevent or resolve such problems or who educate the population concerning such health problems.

(Pub. L. 103-400, §4, Oct. 22, 1994, 108 Stat. 4169.)

**§ 290n-3. Membership**

**(a) Number and appointment of United States section**

The United States section of the Commission should be composed of 13 members. The section should consist of the following members:

(1) The Secretary of Health and Human Services or the Secretary's delegate.

(2) The commissioners of health or chief health officer from the States of Texas, New Mexico, Arizona, and California or such commissioners' delegates.

(3) Two individuals residing in United States-Mexico Border Area in each of the States of Texas, New Mexico, Arizona, and California who are nominated by the chief executive officer of the respective States and appointed by the President from among individuals who have demonstrated ties to community-based organizations and have demonstrated interest and expertise in health issues of the United States-Mexico Border Area.

**(b) Commissioner**

The Commissioner of the United States section of the Commission should be the Secretary of Health and Human Services or such individual's delegate to the Commission. The Commissioner should be the leader of the section.

**(c) Compensation**

Members of the United States section of the Commission who are not employees of the United States or any State—

(1) shall each receive compensation at a rate of not to exceed the daily equivalent of the annual rate of basic pay payable for positions at GS-15 of the General Schedule under section 5332 of title 5 for each day such member is engaged in the actual performance of the duties of the Commission; and

(2) shall be allowed travel expenses, including per diem in lieu of subsistence at rates authorized for employees of agencies under subchapter I of chapter 57 of title 5, while away from their homes or regular places of business in the performance of services of the Commission.

(Pub. L. 103-400, §5, Oct. 22, 1994, 108 Stat. 4170.)

**§ 290n-4. Regional offices**

The Commission may designate or establish one border health office in each of the States of Texas, New Mexico, Arizona, and California. Such office should be located within the United States-Mexico Border Area, and should be coordinated with—

(1) State border health offices; and

(2) local nonprofit organizations designated by the State's chief executive officer and directly involved in border health issues.

If feasible to avoid duplicative efforts, the Commission offices should be located in existing State or local nonprofit offices. The Commission should provide adequate compensation for cooperative efforts and resources.

(Pub. L. 103-400, §6, Oct. 22, 1994, 108 Stat. 4170.)

**§ 290n-5. Reports**

Not later than February 1 of each year that occurs more than 1 year after the date of the establishment of the Commission, the Commission should submit an annual report to both the United States Government and the Government of Mexico regarding all activities of the Commission during the preceding calendar year.

(Pub. L. 103-400, §7, Oct. 22, 1994, 108 Stat. 4171.)

**§ 290n-6. Definitions**

As used in this subchapter:

**(1) Commission**

The term "Commission" means the United States-Mexico Border Health Commission.

**(2) Health problem**

The term "health problem" means a disease or medical ailment or an environmental condition that poses the risk of disease or medical ailment. The term includes diseases, ailments, or risks of disease or ailment caused by or related to environmental factors, control of animals and rabies, control of insect and rodent vectors, disposal of solid and hazardous waste, and control and monitoring of air quality.

**(3) Secretary**

The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of Health and Human Services.

**(4) United States-Mexico Border Area**

The term "United States-Mexico Border Area" means the area located in the United States and Mexico within 100 kilometers of the border between the United States and Mexico.

(Pub. L. 103-400, §8, Oct. 22, 1994, 108 Stat. 4171.)

**CHAPTER 8—FOREIGN SERVICE BUILDINGS**

Sec.  
291.

Lease of buildings, etc., for offices, living quarters, heat, light, and equipment.

- Sec.  
292. Acquisition of sites and buildings for diplomatic and consular establishments; allotment of space; credit of payments without regard to limitations of amounts.  
 (a) Authority of Secretary of State.  
 (b) Payments from other than appropriated funds for acquisition of property.
- 292a. Demonstration of solar and other renewable energy technologies in foreign countries.  
 (a) Use of renewable energy systems in United States buildings in foreign countries.  
 (b) Implementation of renewable energy projects by Secretary.  
 (c) Planning for use of renewable energy systems in construction of new buildings.  
 (d) Availability of sums previously authorized to be appropriated.
293. Repealed.
294. Manner of use of buildings; contracts for construction, etc.
- 294a. Contracts requiring payment in foreign currency.
295. Authorization of appropriations; Foreign Service Building Fund; expenditures; foreign currencies.
- 295a, 295b. Omitted.
296. Duties of Secretary of State with respect to commission and properties.
- 296a. Maintenance management of overseas property.
297. Acquisition of property by lease.
- 297a, 298. Omitted.
299. Short title.
300. Dispositions of property; damage payments; acceptance of gifts or services.  
 (a) Authority of Secretary of State.  
 (b) Disposition of proceeds; report to Congress.  
 (c) Proceeds from sale of furniture, furnishings, and equipment.
301. Lease or rental arrangements of not less than ten years; approval by Secretary; delegation of authority; information to Congress.  
 (a) Leases.  
 (b) Advance payments for long-term leases and lease purchase.
302. Award of contracts.  
 (a) Eligibility limitation for construction, etc., abroad.  
 (b) Foreign laws and regulations; competitive status and adequacy; bidder qualifications.  
 (c) Contracts for construction, etc., in United States.  
 (d) Discretionary determinations by Secretary of State.  
 (e) Termination of requirements.

## CHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This chapter is referred to in sections 2701, 2703, 4304 of this title; title 7 section 1765d; title 40 sections 474, 511.

**§ 291. Lease of buildings, etc., for offices, living quarters, heat, light, and equipment**

The Secretary of State may lease or rent, for periods not exceeding ten years, such buildings and grounds for the use of the Foreign Service as may be necessary; and he may, in accordance with existing practice without cost to them, and within the limit of any appropriation made by Congress, furnish the officers and employees in the Foreign Service with living quarters, heat, light, and household equipment in Government-

owned or rented buildings, at places where, in his judgment, it would be in the public interest to do so, notwithstanding the provisions of section 5536 of title 5; and appropriations for "Contingent expenses, foreign missions," and "Contingent expenses, consulates," are made available for such purposes.

(Apr. 18, 1930, ch. 184, title I, 46 Stat. 177.)

## CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as part of the Foreign Service Buildings Act, 1926, which comprises this chapter.

"Section 5536 of title 5" substituted in text for "section 1765 of the Revised Statutes (U.S.C., title 5, sec. 70; U.S.C., Supp. III, title 5, sec. 70)" on authority of Pub. L. 89-554, §7(b), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 631, the first section of which enacted Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

## CROSS REFERENCES

Gifts of buildings for diplomatic and consular service, see section 2697 of this title.

**§ 292. Acquisition of sites and buildings for diplomatic and consular establishments; allotment of space; credit of payments without regard to limitations of amounts**

**(a) Authority of Secretary of State**

The Secretary of State is empowered to acquire by purchase or construction in the manner hereinafter provided, within the limits of appropriations made to carry out this chapter, by exchange, in whole or in part, of any building or grounds of the United States in foreign countries and under the jurisdiction and control of the Secretary of State, sites and buildings in foreign capitals and in other foreign cities, and to alter, repair, and furnish such buildings for the use of the diplomatic and consular establishments of the United States, or for the purpose of consolidating within one or more buildings, the embassies, legation, consulates, and other agencies of the United States Government there maintained. The space in such buildings shall be allotted by the Secretary of State among the several agencies of the United States Government.

**(b) Payments from other than appropriated funds for acquisition of property**

Payments made for rent or otherwise by the United States from funds other than appropriations made to carry out this chapter may be credited toward the acquisition of property under this chapter without regard to limitations of amounts imposed by this chapter.

(May 7, 1926, ch. 250, §1, 44 Stat. 403; May 29, 1928, ch. 876, §1, 45 Stat. 971; Aug. 12, 1963, Pub. L. 88-94, §2(b), 77 Stat. 122; Oct. 10, 1966, Pub. L. 89-636, §2, 80 Stat. 881; Aug. 17, 1977, Pub. L. 95-105, title I, §106(a), 91 Stat. 845.)

## AMENDMENTS

1977—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 95-105, §106(a)(1), substituted "to carry out" for "pursuant to".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 95-105, §106(a)(2), substituted "to carry out" for "under authority of".

1966—Pub. L. 89-636 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsec. (b).

1963—Pub. L. 88-94 struck out " , subject to the direction of the commission hereinafter established," after "is empowered", "under such terms and conditions as

in the judgment of the commission may best protect the interests of the United States," after "in part," and ", to the extent deemed advisable by the commission," after "consolidating" and substituted ". The space in such buildings shall be allotted by the Secretary of State" for ", which buildings shall be appropriately designated by the commission, and the space in which shall be allotted by the Secretary of State under the direction of the commission."

1928—Act May 29, 1928, inserted "or by exchange, in whole or in part, under such terms and conditions as in the judgment of the commission may best protect the interest of the United States, of any building or grounds of the United States in foreign countries and under the jurisdiction and control of the Secretary of State".

#### PROPERTY AGREEMENTS

Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §134, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 396, as amended by Pub. L. 103-415, §1(z), Oct. 25, 1994, 108 Stat. 4302, provided that: "Whenever the Department of State enters into lease-purchase agreements involving property in foreign countries pursuant to section 1 of the Foreign Service Buildings Act, 1926 (22 U.S.C. 292), the Department shall account for such transactions in accordance with fiscal year obligations."

#### AUTHORITY OF DIRECTOR OF UNITED STATES INFORMATION AGENCY

Exercise of authority available under this chapter by Director of United States Information Agency, see Ex. Ord. No. 10477, Aug. 1, 1953, 18 F.R. 4540, set out as a note under section 1472 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 292a of this title.

### § 292a. Demonstration of solar and other renewable energy technologies in foreign countries

#### (a) Use of renewable energy systems in United States buildings in foreign countries

It is the purpose of this section to provide for the demonstration of solar energy and other renewable energy technologies in foreign countries through the use of such energy in buildings acquired under subsection (a) of section 292 of this title, in order that—

(1) countries in which such buildings are located may be given visible incentives to develop and use local solar energy or other renewable energy resources to reduce dependence upon petroleum and petroleum products;

(2) markets may be developed for American solar energy systems and components in order to stimulate investment in such systems and components and to reduce the costs of such systems and components to reasonable levels;

(3) in furtherance of the purpose of section 2151q<sup>1</sup> of this title, cooperation may be developed between the United States and other countries in an effort to develop solar energy or other renewable energy systems within a short period of time; and

(4) equipment which is vital to the operation of sensitive systems within United States missions abroad may be made more reliable and less dependent upon interruptible local energy supplies.

#### (b) Implementation of renewable energy projects by Secretary

(1) The Secretary of State shall implement projects for the application of solar energy or

other forms of renewable energy in buildings acquired under subsection (a) section 292 of this title.

(2) The Secretary of State shall select projects under paragraph (1) in consultation with the Secretary of Energy. Such projects shall apply available solar energy and other renewable energy technologies, including those for—

(A) the heating and cooling of buildings;

(B) solar thermal electric systems;

(C) solar photovoltaic conversion systems;

(D) wind energy systems; and

(E) systems for developing fuels from biomass.

The Secretary of Energy shall inform the Secretary of State of all such technologies which are feasible for such projects, taking into account the resources and environmental conditions of the countries in which such projects are to be implemented. Upon the request of the Secretary of State, the Secretary of Energy shall provide to the Secretary of State any technical information or other technical assistance which the Secretary of State considers necessary with respect to any such project. Any project selected under this section should be similar to projects which have been demonstrated by the Department of Energy (or any of its predecessor agencies) to be reliable, maintainable, and technically feasible.

(3) Any project selected under this section shall be adaptable to the local resources, climatic conditions, and economic circumstances of the country in which such project is implemented in order that such country will be more likely to implement similar projects.

(4) The Secretary of State shall insure that any project selected under this section is demonstrated to, and available for inspection by, officials and other citizens of the country in which such project is implemented.

(5) In selecting projects under this section, the Secretary of State shall give priority to projects to be implemented in developing countries.

#### (c) Planning for use of renewable energy systems in construction of new buildings

Whenever any building is constructed under the authority contained in section 292 of this title, the Secretary of State shall insure that the planning for such construction takes into account those renewable energy systems which are available in the country in which the building is to be constructed.

#### (d) Availability of sums previously authorized to be appropriated

In addition to amounts otherwise available for such purposes, \$4,000,000 of the amount authorized to be appropriated by section 101(a)(1) of this Act shall be available only to carry out the purposes of this section.

(Pub. L. 95-426, title I, §105, Oct. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 965.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 2151q of this title, referred to in subsec. (a)(3), was repealed by Pub. L. 96-533, title III, §304(g), Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3147. See section 2151d(a)(2), (b)(2), (c) of this title.

Section 101(a)(1) of this Act, referred to in subsec. (d), means section 101(a)(1) of Pub. L. 95-426, which is not classified to the Code.

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.



## CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as part of the Foreign Service Buildings Act, 1926, which comprises this chapter.

**§ 293. Repealed. Pub. L. 88-94, § 2(a), Aug. 12, 1963, 77 Stat. 122**

Section, acts May 7, 1926, ch. 250, § 2, 44 Stat. 404; May 29, 1928, ch. 876, § 2, 45 Stat. 971; June 19, 1952, ch. 446, § 1, 66 Stat. 140, established the Foreign Service Buildings Commission, prescribed its duties, abolished the prior commission, authorized the issuance of rules and regulations, required annual reports to Congress and provided for appointment of personnel.

FOREIGN SERVICE BUILDINGS COMMISSION; REFERENCES  
IN OTHER LAWS

Section 2(g) of Pub. L. 88-94 provided that: "All references to the Foreign Service Buildings Commission, originally established by the Foreign Service Buildings Act, 1926 [this chapter] in all laws of the United States are hereby repealed."

**§ 294. Manner of use of buildings; contracts for construction, etc.**

Buildings and grounds acquired under this chapter or prior to May 7, 1926, acquired or authorized for the use of the diplomatic and consular establishments in foreign countries may be used, in the case of buildings and grounds for the diplomatic establishment, as Government offices or residences or as such offices and residences; or, in the case of other buildings and grounds, as such offices or such offices and residences. The contracts for purchases of buildings, for leases, and for all work of construction, alteration, and repair under this chapter are authorized to be negotiated, the terms of the contracts to be prescribed, and the work to be performed, where necessary, without regard to such statutory provisions as relate to the negotiation, making, and performance of contracts and performance of work in the United States and without regard to section 3324(a) and (b) of title 31.

(May 7, 1926, ch. 250, § 3, 44 Stat. 404; Aug. 12, 1963, Pub. L. 88-94, § 2(c), 77 Stat. 122; Oct. 28, 1991, Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 115(c), 105 Stat. 656.)

## CODIFICATION

"Section 3324(a) and (b) of title 31" substituted in text for "section 3648 of the Revised Statutes of the United States (31 U.S.C. 529)" on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, § 4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

## AMENDMENTS

1991—Pub. L. 102-138 inserted "purchases of buildings, for leases, and for" after "contracts for".

1963—Pub. L. 88-94 struck out ", subject to the direction of the commission," before "be used" and "in the judgment of the commission," after "where necessary," and inserted "and without regard to section 529 of title 31".

**§ 294a. Contracts requiring payment in foreign currency**

Whenever a contract is made for the construction, alteration, or repair of a Foreign Service building which requires payments in a foreign currency, the Secretary of State is authorized to purchase such currency at such times and in

such amounts (within the total amount of the payments to be made under such contract) as he may deem necessary, the currency so purchased to be disbursed and accounted for at its cost price.

(May 14, 1940, ch. 189, title I, 54 Stat. 186.)

## CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as a part of the Foreign Service Buildings Act, 1926, which comprises this chapter.

## PRIOR PROVISIONS

Prior similar provisions were contained in act June 29, 1939, ch. 248, title I, 53 Stat. 890.

**§ 295. Authorization of appropriations; Foreign Service Building Fund; expenditures; foreign currencies**

(a) For the purpose of carrying into effect the provisions of this chapter there is authorized to be appropriated an amount not exceeding \$10,000,000, and the appropriations made pursuant to this authorization shall constitute a fund to be known as the Foreign Service Building Fund, to remain available until expended. Under this authorization not more than \$2,000,000 shall be appropriated for any one year, but within the total authorization provided in this chapter the Secretary of State may enter into contracts for the acquisition of the buildings and grounds authorized by this chapter. In the case of the buildings and grounds authorized by this chapter, after the initial alterations, repairs, and furnishing have been completed, subsequent expenditures for such purposes may be made out of the appropriations authorized by this chapter in amounts authorized by the Congress each fiscal year.

(b) For the purpose of carrying into effect the provisions of this chapter there is authorized to be appropriated, in addition to amounts previously authorized, an amount not to exceed \$90,000,000, which shall be available exclusively for payments representing the value, in whole or in part, of property or credits in accordance with the provisions of section 295b<sup>1</sup> of this title. Sums appropriated pursuant to this authorization shall remain available until expended.

(c) For the purpose of carrying into effect the provisions of this chapter there is hereby authorized to be appropriated, in addition to amounts previously authorized, an amount not to exceed \$10,000,000, which shall remain available until expended.

(d) In addition to amounts authorized before the date of enactment of this section, there is hereby authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary of State—

(1) for acquisition, by purchase or construction (including acquisition of leaseholds) of sites and buildings in foreign countries under this chapter, and for major alterations of buildings acquired under this chapter, the following sums—

(A) for use in Africa, not to exceed \$7,140,000 of which not to exceed \$3,270,000 may be appropriated for the fiscal year 1964;

(B) for use in the American Republics, not to exceed \$5,360,000, of which not to exceed

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

\$4,030,000 may be appropriated for the fiscal year 1964;

(C) for use in Europe, not to exceed \$6,839,000, of which not to exceed \$1,820,000 may be appropriated for the fiscal year 1964;

(D) for use in the Far East, not to exceed \$2,350,000, of which not to exceed \$2,200,000 may be appropriated for the fiscal year 1964;

(E) for use in the Near East, not to exceed \$2,710,000, of which not to exceed \$2,100,000 may be appropriated for the fiscal year 1964;

(F) for facilities for the United States Information Agency, not to exceed \$1,125,000, of which not to exceed \$720,000 may be appropriated for the fiscal year 1964, and

(G) for facilities for agricultural and defense attaché housing, not to exceed \$800,000, of which not to exceed \$400,000 may be appropriated for the fiscal year 1964;

(2) for use to carry out the other purposes of this chapter, not to exceed \$11,500,000 for the fiscal year 1964, \$12,000,000 for the fiscal year 1965, \$12,200,000 for the fiscal year 1966, \$12,400,000 for the fiscal year 1967.

(e) For the purpose of carrying into effect the provisions of this chapter in South Vietnam, there is hereby authorized to be appropriated, in addition to amounts previously authorized prior to May 21, 1965, \$2,600,000, to remain available until expended.

(f) In addition to amounts authorized before October 10, 1966, there is hereby authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary of State—

(1) for acquisition by purchase or construction (including acquisition of leaseholds) of sites and buildings in foreign countries under this chapter, and for major alterations of buildings acquired under this chapter, the following sums—

(A) for use in Africa, not to exceed \$5,485,000, of which not to exceed \$1,885,000 may be appropriated for the fiscal year 1967;

(B) for use in the American Republics, not to exceed \$7,920,000, of which not to exceed \$3,585,000 may be appropriated for the fiscal year 1967;

(C) for use in Europe, not to exceed \$3,310,000, of which not to exceed \$785,000 may be appropriated for the fiscal year 1967;

(D) for use in the Far East, not to exceed \$3,150,000, of which not to exceed \$560,000 may be appropriated for the fiscal year 1967;

(E) for use in the Near East, not to exceed \$6,930,000, of which not to exceed \$1,890,000 may be appropriated for the fiscal year 1967;

(F) for facilities for the United States Information Agency, not to exceed \$615,000, of which not to exceed \$430,000 may be appropriated for the fiscal year 1967;

(G) for facilities for agricultural and defense attaché housing, not to exceed \$800,000, of which not to exceed \$400,000 may be appropriated for the fiscal year 1967;

(2) for use to carry out the other purposes of this chapter, not to exceed \$12,600,000 for the fiscal year 1968, not to exceed \$12,750,000 for the fiscal year 1969, not to exceed \$13,500,000 for the fiscal year 1970, not to exceed \$14,300,000 for the fiscal year 1971, not to exceed \$15,000,000 for the fiscal year 1972, and not to exceed \$15,900,000 for the fiscal year 1973.

(g) In addition to amounts authorized before June 22, 1973, there is hereby authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary of State—

(1) for acquisition by purchase or construction (including acquisition of leaseholds) of sites and buildings in foreign countries under this chapter, and for major alterations of buildings acquired under this chapter, the following sums—

(A) for use in Africa, not to exceed \$850,000, of which not to exceed \$631,000 may be appropriated for the fiscal year 1974;

(B) for use in the American Republics, not to exceed \$240,000, of which not to exceed \$240,000 may be appropriated for the fiscal year 1974;

(C) for use in Europe, not to exceed \$682,000, of which not to exceed \$204,000 may be appropriated for the fiscal year 1974;

(D) for use in East Asia, not to exceed \$1,243,000, of which not to exceed \$985,000 may be appropriated for the fiscal year 1974;

(E) for use in the Near East and South Asia, not to exceed \$10,433,000, of which not to exceed \$2,287,000 may be appropriated for the fiscal year 1974;

(F) for facilities for the United States Information Agency, not to exceed \$45,000 for use beginning in the fiscal year 1975;

(G) for facilities for agricultural and defense attaché housing, not to exceed \$318,000 for use beginning in the fiscal year 1974; and

(2) for use to carry out other purposes of this chapter for fiscal years 1974 and 1975, \$48,532,000, of which not to exceed \$23,066,000 may be appropriated for fiscal year 1974.

(h) In addition to amounts authorized before November 29, 1975, there is authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary of State—

(1) for acquisition by purchase or construction (including acquisition of leaseholds) of sites and buildings in foreign countries under this chapter, and for major alterations of buildings acquired under this chapter, the following sums—

(A) for use in Europe, not to exceed \$225,000 for fiscal year 1977;

(B) for use in the Near East and South Asia, not to exceed \$12,885,000, of which not to exceed \$3,985,000 may be appropriated for fiscal year 1976;

(C) for facilities for the United States Information Agency, not to exceed \$3,400,000, of which not to exceed \$2,800,000 may be appropriated for fiscal year 1976;

(D) for facilities for agricultural and defense attaché housing, not to exceed \$150,000 for fiscal year 1977; and

(E) for facilities for the United States Agency for International Development, not to exceed \$17,200,000 for fiscal year 1977; and

(2) for use to carry out the other purposes of this chapter for fiscal years 1976 and 1977, \$73,058,000, of which not to exceed \$32,840,000 may be appropriated for fiscal year 1976.

(i)(1) Sums appropriated under authority of this chapter shall remain available until expended. To the maximum extent feasible, expenditures under this chapter shall be made out

of foreign currencies owned by or owed to the United States.

(2) Not to exceed 10 per centum of the funds authorized by any subparagraph under paragraph (1) of subsections (d), (f), (g), and (h) of this section may be used for any of the purposes for which funds are authorized under any other subparagraph of any of such paragraph (1).

(3) There are hereby authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary of State such additional or supplemental amounts as may be necessary for increases in salary, pay, retirement, or other employee benefits authorized by law.

(May 7, 1926, ch. 250, § 4, 44 Stat. 404; June 19, 1952, ch. 446, § 2, 66 Stat. 140; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, § 49, 74 Stat. 847; Aug. 12, 1963, Pub. L. 88-94, §§ 1, 2(d), 77 Stat. 121, 122; Aug. 10, 1964, Pub. L. 88-414, 78 Stat. 387; May 21, 1965, Pub. L. 89-22, 79 Stat. 112; Oct. 10, 1966, Pub. L. 89-636, § 1, 80 Stat. 881; July 30, 1968, Pub. L. 90-442, 82 Stat. 461; Dec. 24, 1970, Pub. L. 91-586, 84 Stat. 1578; June 22, 1973, Pub. L. 93-47, 87 Stat. 98; Apr. 12, 1974, Pub. L. 93-263, 88 Stat. 83; Nov. 29, 1975, Pub. L. 94-141, title I, § 171, 89 Stat. 760; July 12, 1976, Pub. L. 94-350, title I, § 109, 90 Stat. 824; June 15, 1977, Pub. L. 95-45, § 3, 91 Stat. 221; 1977 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §§ 1, 7(a)(18), 9(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1636, 1638, 1639; Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title III, § 303(b), 96 Stat. 291; Dec. 17, 1993, Pub. L. 103-199, title V, § 503, 107 Stat. 2327.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 295b of this title, referred to in subsec. (b), was omitted from the Code.

Date of enactment of this section, referred to in subsec. (d), probably means the date of enactment of Pub. L. 88-94, which was approved on Aug. 12, 1963.

#### AMENDMENTS

1993—Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 103-199 struck out subsec. (j) which read as follows: "For the purpose of carrying into effect the provisions of this chapter in the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics, there is authorized to be appropriated, in addition to amounts authorized prior to July 12, 1976, \$30,000,000, which amount is authorized to remain available until expended."

1977—Subsec. (h)(1). Pub. L. 95-45 substituted "\$225,000" for "\$6,725,000" in subpar. (A), "\$12,885,000" for "\$8,005,000" in subpar. (B), "\$3,400,000" for "\$3,745,000" in subpar. (C), "\$150,000" for "\$420,000" in subpar. (D), added subpar. (E), authorizing an appropriation of not to exceed \$17,200,000 for facilities for the United States Agency for International Development for fiscal year 1977, and struck out subpars. which had authorized appropriations for Africa, the American Republics, and East Asia for fiscal year 1977.

1976—Subsec. (h)(2). Pub. L. 94-350, § 109(1), increased appropriations authorization for fiscal years 1976 and 1977 to \$73,058,000 from \$71,600,000.

Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 94-350, § 109(2), added subsec. (j).  
1975—Subsec. (g)(1). Pub. L. 94-141, § 171(a), substituted "\$850,000" for "\$2,190,000" in subpar. (A), "\$240,000" for "\$375,000" in subpar. (B), "\$682,000" for "\$4,780,000" in subpar. (C), "\$1,243,000" for "\$2,585,000" in subpar. (D), and "\$10,433,000" for "\$3,518,000" in subpar. (E).

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 94-141, § 171(b)(1), added subsec. (h). Former subsec. (h) redesignated (i).

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 94-141, § 171(b), redesignated former subsec. (h) as (i), and, as so redesignated, in par. (2) inserted reference to subsec. (h) of this section.

1974—Subsec. (g)(1). Pub. L. 93-263, § 1(1)-(3), increased appropriations authorization for fiscal year 1974, in subpar. (A) to \$631,000 from \$590,000, in subpar. (C) to \$204,000 from \$160,000, and in subpar. (E) to \$2,287,000 from \$2,218,000.

Subsec. (g)(2). Pub. L. 92-263, § 1(4), increased appropriations authorization for fiscal years 1974 and 1975 to \$48,532,000 from \$45,800,000 and increased limitation for fiscal year 1974, to \$23,066,000 from \$21,700,000.

1973—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 93-47, § 1(1), added subsec. (g). Former subsec. (g) redesignated (h).

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 93-47, § 1(1), (2), redesignated former subsec. (g) as (h), struck out from par. (2) provision for application of the paragraph beginning with the fiscal year 1966, inserted reference to subsec. (g), and added par. (3), respectively.

1970—Subsec. (f)(2). Pub. L. 91-586 authorized appropriations of not more than \$15,000,000 for fiscal year 1972, and not more than \$15,900,000 for fiscal year 1973.

1968—Subsec. (f)(2). Pub. L. 90-442 authorized appropriations not to exceed \$13,500,000 for fiscal year 1970, and not to exceed \$14,300,000 for fiscal year 1971.

1966—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 89-636, § 1(1), struck out last three sentences providing for availability of appropriated funds until expended, use of foreign currencies for expenditures, and use of funds authorized by any subpar. of par. (1) of subsec. (d), now incorporated in subsec. (g)(1) and (2) of this section, respectively.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 89-636, § 1(2), substituted "\$2,600,000" for "\$1,000,000".

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 89-636, § 1(3), added subsec. (f).

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 89-636, § 1(3), redesignated second and third sentences of subsec. (d) as par. (1) and last sentence of subsec. (d) as par. (2), inserting therein provision for use of funds authorized by any subpar. of par. (1) of subsec. (f).

1965—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 89-22 added subsec. (e).

1964—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 88-414 authorized appropriations of not more than \$12,200,000 for fiscal year 1966, \$12,400,000 for fiscal year 1967, and beginning with fiscal year 1966, permitted use of not more than 10 per centum of the funds authorized for any subparagraph under par. (1) of this subsection for the purposes of any other subparagraph of such par. (1).

1963—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 88-94, § 2(d), struck out "subject to the direction of the commission," after "Secretary of State".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 88-94, § 1, added subsec. (d).

1960—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 86-723 added subsec. (c).

Subsec. (b). Act June 19, 1952, added subsec. (b).

1952—Act June 19, 1952, designated existing provisions as subsec. (a), permitted the expenditure of the authorized and appropriated funds for continuing alterations, repairs, and furnishings, and added subsec. (b).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1960 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 86-723 effective on first day of first pay period which begins more than thirty days after Sept. 8, 1960, see section 56(a) of Pub. L. 86-723.

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

"United States Information Agency" substituted for "International Communication Agency" in subsecs. (d)(1)(F), (f)(1)(F), (g)(1)(F), and (h)(1)(C), pursuant to section 303(b) of Pub. L. 97-241, title III, Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title. Previously, "International Communication Agency" substituted for "United States Information Agency" pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, §§ 1, 7(a)(18), 9(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1636, 1638, 1639, set out under section 1461 of this title, effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by President, which established International Communication Agency, transferred functions vested in Secretary of State under subsecs. (d)(1)(F), (f)(1)(F), (g)(1)(F), and (h)(1)(F) of this section to Director of International Communication Agency, and abolished United States Information Agency. Subsec. (h)(1)(F) of this section was repealed by Pub. L. 95-45, and similar provisions are contained in subsec. (h)(1)(C) of this section.

#### §§ 295a, 295b. Omitted

#### CODIFICATION

Section 295a, act May 25, 1938, ch. 275, 52 Stat. 441, authorized additional appropriations of an amount not to exceed \$5,000,000.

Section 295b, act June 25, 1946, ch. 643, 60 Stat. 663, authorized additional appropriations of an amount not to exceed \$125,000,000 of which \$110,000,000 was to be used exclusively for the payments representing the value of property or credits held abroad by the Government or owing to the Government which could have been used by the Department of State for buildings, equipment, etc.

#### DIPLOMATIC ESTABLISHMENTS IN PHILIPPINE ISLANDS

Acts July 9, 1947, ch. 211, title I, §101, 61 Stat. 288; June 3, 1948, ch. 400, title I, §1, 62 Stat. 315; July 20, 1949, ch. 354, title I, §101, 63 Stat. 456, provided in part that the construction of diplomatic and consular establishments in the Philippines should be without regard to the limitation proviso of section 295a.

### § 296. Duties of Secretary of State with respect to commission and properties

For the purposes of this chapter the Secretary of State is authorized to supervise, preserve, maintain, operate, and, when deemed necessary, to insure the Foreign Service properties in foreign countries and the other properties acquired in accordance with the provisions of this chapter; to rent and insure objects of art; to collect information and formulate plans; and, without regard to civil service and classification laws, to obtain architectural and other expert technical services as may be necessary and pay therefor the scale of professional fees as established by local authority, law or custom, and to make expenditures without regard to section 295a of this title requiring purchase of articles manufactured in the United States.

(May 7, 1926, ch. 250, §5, 44 Stat. 404; June 19, 1952, ch. 446, §3, 66 Stat. 140.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The civil service laws, referred to in text, are set forth in Title 5, Government Organization and Employees. See, particularly, section 3301 et seq. of Title 5.

The classification laws, referred to in text, are classified generally to chapter 51 (§5101 et seq.) and to subchapter III (§5331 et seq.) of chapter 53 of Title 5.

Section 295a of this title, referred to in text, was omitted from the Code.

#### AMENDMENTS

1952—Act June 19, 1952, amended section generally to authorize Secretary of State to supervise, preserve, maintain, operate, and insure Foreign Service property in foreign countries.

### § 296a. Maintenance management of overseas property

The Director of the Office of Foreign Buildings Operations shall—

(1) direct overseas posts to make annual building condition assessments of buildings and facilities used by the post;

(2) not later than 90 days after October 28, 1991, revise the Foreign Affairs Manual to stipulate that the Buildings and Maintenance Handbook shall be used by each post to identify their maintenance needs, standardize their maintenance operations, and conduct annual assessments as required by paragraph (1);

(3) direct the Office of Foreign Buildings Operations to provide proper training and assistance to posts to ensure that annual surveys are effectively completed; and

(4) direct overseas posts to ensure that all maintenance program fiscal transactions are

properly encoded in the Department of State accounting system to enable compilation of actual expenditures on routine maintenance and specific maintenance funded by the Office of Foreign Buildings Operations.

(Pub. L. 102-138, title I, §125, Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 659.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1992 and 1993, and not as part of the Foreign Service Buildings Act, 1926, which comprises this chapter.

#### AUTHORITY OF SECRETARY OF STATE

Except as otherwise provided, Secretary of State to have and exercise any authority vested by law in any official or office of Department of State and references to such officials or offices deemed to refer to Secretary of State or Department of State, as appropriate, see section 2651a of this title and section 161(d) of Pub. L. 103-236, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

### § 297. Acquisition of property by lease

The authority granted to acquire sites and buildings by purchase or otherwise shall include authority to acquire leaseholds.

(May 7, 1926, ch. 250, §6, 44 Stat. 405; June 19, 1952, ch. 446, §4, 66 Stat. 140; Aug. 17, 1977, Pub. L. 95-105, title I, §106(b), 91 Stat. 845.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1977—Pub. L. 95-105 struck out “of not less than ten years” after “acquire leaseholds”.

1952—Act June 19, 1952, provided for leaseholds of not less than 10 years.

### § 297a. Omitted

#### CODIFICATION

Section, which related to leaseholds of not less than ten years, was from the Department of State Appropriation Act, 1953, act July 10, 1952, ch. 651, title I, 66 Stat. 550, and was not repeated in subsequent appropriation acts. Similar provisions were contained in the following prior appropriation acts:

1951—Oct. 22, 1951, ch. 533, title I, 65 Stat. 577.

1950—Sept. 6, 1950, ch. 896, ch. III, title I, 64 Stat. 610.

1949—July 20, 1949, ch. 354, title I, 63 Stat. 449.

### § 298. Omitted

#### CODIFICATION

Section, act May 7, 1926, ch. 250, §7, 44 Stat. 405, repealed act Feb. 17, 1911, ch. 105, 36 Stat. 917, incorporated as section 133 of this title, with a provision that the repeal “shall not invalidate appropriations already made under the authority of such Act.”

### § 299. Short title

This chapter may be cited as the “Foreign Service Buildings Act, 1926.”

(May 7, 1926, ch. 250, §8, 44 Stat. 405.)

### § 300. Dispositions of property; damage payments; acceptance of gifts or services

#### (a) Authority of Secretary of State

The Secretary of State is authorized—

(1) to sell, exchange, lease, or license any property or property interest acquired under this chapter, or under other authority, for use

of diplomatic and consular establishments in foreign countries or in the United States pursuant to section 4304(b)(5) of this title,

(2) to receive payment in whatever form, or in kind, he determines to be in the interest of the United States for damage to or destruction of property acquired for use of diplomatic and consular establishments abroad, and the contents of such buildings, and

(3) to accept on behalf of the United States gifts of property or services of any kind made by will or otherwise for the purposes of this chapter.

**(b) Disposition of proceeds; report to Congress**

Proceeds derived from dispositions, payments, or gifts under subsection (a) of this section shall, notwithstanding the provisions of any other law, be applied toward acquisition, construction, or other purposes authorized by this chapter or held in the Foreign Service Buildings Fund, as in the judgment of the Secretary may best serve the Government's interest: *Provided*, That the Secretary shall report all such transactions annually to the Congress with the budget estimates of the Department of State.

**(c) Proceeds from sale of furniture, furnishings, and equipment**

Notwithstanding subsection (b) of this section, proceeds from the disposition of furniture, furnishings, and equipment from diplomatic and consular establishments in foreign countries shall be deposited into the Foreign Service Building Fund to be available for obligation or expenditure as directed by the Secretary.

(May 7, 1926, ch. 250, § 9, as added Apr. 19, 1945, ch. 78, 59 Stat. 53; amended Aug. 12, 1963, Pub. L. 88-94, § 2(e), 77 Stat. 122; Oct. 10, 1966, Pub. L. 89-636, § 3, 80 Stat. 882; Aug. 27, 1986, Pub. L. 99-399, title IV, § 401(h)(2), 100 Stat. 863; Feb. 16, 1990, Pub. L. 101-246, title I, § 116(c), 104 Stat. 25.)

AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 101-246 inserted before comma at end “or in the United States pursuant to section 4304(b)(5) of this title”.

1986—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 99-399 added subsec. (c).

1966—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 89-636 substituted provisions designated as subsec. (a) and authorizing the Secretary to sell, exchange, lease, or license any property or property interest acquired under this chapter, to receive payment in whatever form, or in kind, for damage to or destruction of buildings or their contents, and to accept gifts of property or services for former provisions which authorized the Secretary, when he found it to be in the Government's interest, to sell buildings and grounds acquired for use of diplomatic and consular establishments in foreign countries.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 89-636 substituted provisions designated as subsec. (b) and providing for application of proceeds derived from dispositions, payments, or gifts under subsec. (a) toward acquisition, construction, or other purposes authorized by this chapter, as in the judgment of the Secretary may best serve the Government's interest, for former provision for application of proceeds of sales toward purchase and construction, furnishing, and preservation of other properties.

1963—Pub. L. 88-94 struck out “with the concurrence of the Foreign Service Buildings Commission,” after “Government,” and “, as in the judgment of the Commission may best serve the Government's interest” after “Foreign Service building fund”.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4304 of this title.

**§ 301. Lease or rental arrangements of not less than ten years; approval by Secretary; delegation of authority; information to Congress**

**(a) Leases**

Notwithstanding the provisions of this chapter or any other Act, no lease or other rental arrangement for a period of less than ten years, and requiring an annual payment in excess of \$50,000 shall be entered into by the Secretary of State for the purpose of renting or leasing offices, buildings, grounds, or living quarters for the use of the Foreign Service abroad, unless such lease or other rental arrangement is approved by the Secretary. The Secretary may delegate his authority under this section only to the Deputy Under Secretary of State for Administration or to the Director of the Office of Foreign Buildings. The Secretary shall keep the Congress fully and currently informed with respect to leases or other rental arrangements approved under this section.

**(b) Advance payments for long-term leases and lease purchase**

The Secretary may, subject to the availability of appropriations, make advance payments for long-term leases and lease-purchase agreements, if the Secretary or his designee determines, in each case, that such payments are in the interest of the United States Government in carrying out the purposes of this chapter.

(May 7, 1926, ch. 250, § 10, as added Oct. 10, 1966, Pub. L. 89-636, § 4, 80 Stat. 882; amended Oct. 28, 1991, Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 115(a), (b), 105 Stat. 655.)

AMENDMENTS

1991—Pub. L. 102-138 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a), inserted heading, substituted “\$50,000” for “\$25,000,” and added subsec. (b).

AUTHORITY OF SECRETARY OF STATE

Except as otherwise provided, Secretary of State to have and exercise any authority vested by law in any official or office of Department of State and references to such officials or offices deemed to refer to Secretary of State or Department of State, as appropriate, see section 2651a of this title and section 161(d) of Pub. L. 103-236, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

**§ 302. Award of contracts**

**(a) Eligibility limitation for construction, etc., abroad**

Eligibility for award of contracts under this chapter or of any other contract by the Secretary of State, including lease-back or other agreements, the purpose of which is to obtain the construction, alteration, or repair of buildings and grounds abroad, when estimated to exceed \$5,000,000, including any contract alternatives or options, shall be limited, after a determination that adequate competition will be obtained thereby, to (1) American-owned bidders and (2) bidders from countries which permit or agree to permit substantially equal access to American bidders for comparable diplomatic and consular building projects, except that participation may be permitted by or limited to host-country bidders where required by international agreement or by the law of the host country or

where determined by the Secretary of State to be necessary in the interest of bilateral relations or necessary to carry out the construction project.

**(b) Foreign laws and regulations; competitive status and adequacy; bidder qualifications**

(1) Generally applicable laws and regulations pertaining to licensing and other qualifications to do business in the country in which the contract is to be performed shall not be deemed a limitation of access for purposes of this section.

(2) For purposes of determining competitive status, bids qualifying under subsection (a)(1) of this section shall be reduced by 10 per centum.

(3) A determination of adequacy of competition for purposes of subsection (a) of this section shall be made after advance publication by the Secretary of State of the proposed project, and receipt from not less than two prospective responsible bidders of intent to submit a bid or proposal. If competition is not determined to be adequate, contracts may be awarded without regard to subsection (a) of this section and this subsection.

(4) Bidder qualification under subsection (a) of this section shall be determined on the basis of nationality of ownership, the burden of which shall be on the prospective bidder. Qualification under subsection (a)(1) of this section shall require evidence of (A) performance of similar construction work in the United States, and (B) either (i) ownership in excess of fifty percent by United States citizens or permanent residents, or (ii) incorporation in the United States for more than three years and employment of United States citizens or permanent residents in more than half of the corporation's permanent full-time professional and managerial positions in the United States.

(5) Qualification under this section shall be established on the basis of determinations at the time bids are requested.

**(c) Contracts for construction, etc., in United States**

Contracts for construction, alteration, or repair in the United States for or on behalf of any foreign mission (as defined in section 202(a)(4)<sup>1</sup> of title II of the State Department Basic Authorities Act of 1956 (22 U.S.C. 4302(a)(4)) may, pursuant to the authority of that title [22 U.S.C. 4301 et seq.], only be awarded to or performed by bidders qualifying under subsection (a) (1) or (2) or by nationals of the country for which the contract is being performed who are granted the right of entry into the United States for that purpose.

**(d) Discretionary determinations by Secretary of State**

Determinations under this section shall be committed to the discretion of the Secretary of State.

**(e) Termination of requirements**

This section shall cease to be effective when the Secretary of State determines that there are internationally-agree-upon<sup>2</sup> rules in effect on bidding for construction contracts.

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

<sup>2</sup> So in original. Probably should be "internationally-agreed-upon".

(May 7, 1926, ch. 250, §11, as added Nov. 22, 1983, Pub. L. 98-164, title I, §136, 97 Stat. 1029.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Title II of the State Department Basic Authorities Act of 1956, referred to in subsec. (c), is title II of act Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, as added Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, §202(b), 96 Stat. 283, known as the Foreign Missions Act, which is classified principally to chapter 53 (§4301 et seq.) of this title. Section 202(a)(4) of title II was redesignated section 202(a)(3), and former section 202(a)(5) was redesignated section 202(a)(4), by Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §162(o)(1), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 409. For complete classification of title II to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4301 of this title and Tables.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4852 of this title.

**CHAPTER 9—FOREIGN WARS, WAR MATERIALS, AND NEUTRALITY**

**SUBCHAPTER I—WAR MATERIALS**

- |             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Sec.        |   |
| 401.        | Illegal exportation of war materials.<br>(a) Seizure and forfeiture of materials and carriers.<br>(b) Applicability of laws relating to seizure, forfeiture, and condemnation.<br>(c) Disposition of forfeited materials. |
| 402 to 405. | Repealed.   |
| 406.        | Interference with foreign trade.  |
| 407.        | Repealed.   |
| 408.        | Use of land and naval forces to prevent exportation.  |
| 408a.       | "United States" defined.  |
| 409 to 420. | Repealed or Omitted.  |
| 421.        | Contracts by Government agencies for defense articles, services, etc., for foreign governments in interests of United States.   |
| 422.        | Retention for United States of defense articles procured for foreign governments.   |
| 423.        | Omitted.  |
|             | <b>SUBCHAPTER II—NEUTRALITY</b>   |
| 441.        | Proclamation of state of war between foreign states.<br>(a) Issuance of proclamation.<br>(b) Revocation of proclamation.  |
| 442, 443.   | Repealed.   |
| 444.        | American Red Cross vessels.<br>(a) Transport of officers, American Red Cross personnel, medical personnel, medical supplies, food and clothing.<br>(b) Transport of refugee children.                                     |
| 445.        | Travel on vessels of belligerent states.<br>(a) Proscription by Presidential proclamation.<br>(b) Revocation of proclamation; effect.   |
| 446.        | Repealed.   |
| 447.        | Financial transactions.<br>(a) Bonds, securities, or other obligations.<br>(b) Renewal or adjustment of indebtedness.<br>(c) Fine and imprisonment.<br>(d) Revocation of proclamation.<br>(e) Wartime.                    |
| 448.        | Solicitation and collection of funds and contributions.<br>(a) Unlawful acts.<br>(b) Medical aid, food, and clothing.<br>(c) Revocation of proclamation.  |
| 449.        | American republics.   |
| 450.        | Restrictions on use of American ports.<br>(a) Bond to insure non-delivery of men, ammunition, fuel, etc.  |

- Sec.
- (b) Departure prohibited.  
(c) Alien seaman; bond.
451. Submarines and armed merchant vessels.  
452. Repealed.  
453. Regulations.  
454. Unlawful use of the American flag by vessel of foreign state.  
455. General penalty provision.  
456. Definitions.  
457. Appropriations.

SUBCHAPTER III—PREVENTION OF OFFENSES AGAINST NEUTRALITY

461. Enforcement by courts; employment of land or naval forces.  
462. Compelling foreign vessels to depart.  
463. Bonds from armed vessels on clearing.  
464. Detention by collectors of customs.  
465. Detention of vessels.

PROCLAMATIONS RESPECTING WAR AND NEUTRALITY

See notes preceding section 1 of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense.

SUBCHAPTER I—WAR MATERIALS

§ 401. **Illegal exportation of war materials**

(a) **Seizure and forfeiture of materials and carriers**

Whenever an attempt is made to export or ship from or take out of the United States any arms or munitions of war or other articles in violation of law, or whenever it is known or there shall be probable cause to believe that any arms or munitions of war or other articles are intended to be or are being or have been exported or removed from the United States in violation of law, the Secretary of the Treasury, or any person duly authorized for the purpose by the President, may seize and detain such arms or munitions of war or other articles and may seize and detain any vessel, vehicle, or aircraft containing the same or which has been or is being used in exporting or attempting to export such arms or munitions of war or other articles. All arms or munitions of war and other articles, vessels, vehicles, and aircraft seized pursuant to this subsection shall be forfeited.

(b) **Applicability of laws relating to seizure, forfeiture, and condemnation**

All provisions of law relating to seizure, summary and judicial forfeiture and condemnation for violation of the customs laws, the disposition of the property forfeited or condemned or the proceeds from the sale thereof; the remission or mitigation of such forfeitures; and the compromise of claims and the award of compensation to informers in respect of such forfeitures shall apply to seizures and forfeitures incurred, or alleged to have been incurred, under the provisions of this section, insofar as applicable and not inconsistent with the provisions hereof. Awards of compensation to informers under this section may be paid only out of funds specifically appropriated therefor.

(c) **Disposition of forfeited materials**

Arms and munitions of war forfeited under subsection (b) of this section shall be delivered to the Secretary of Defense for such use or disposition as he may deem in the public interest, or, in the event that the Secretary of Defense

refuses to accept such arms and munitions of war, they shall be sold or otherwise disposed of as prescribed under existing law in the case of forfeitures for violation of the customs laws.

(June 15, 1917, ch. 30, title VI, §1, 40 Stat. 223; June 17, 1930, ch. 497, title IV, §523, 46 Stat. 740; Aug. 13, 1953, ch. 434, §1, 67 Stat. 577.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The customs laws, referred to in subsecs. (b) and (c), are classified generally to Title 19, Customs Duties.

AMENDMENTS

1953—Act Aug. 13, 1953, provided not only seizure and forfeiture of articles or merchandise which are being, or are intended to be illegally exported, and the vehicle, vessel, or aircraft in which exportation is intended to accomplish, but also for the seizure and forfeiture of articles or merchandise actually illegally exported out, the carrier used to effectuate the exportation, provided for applicability of laws relating to seizure, summary and judicial forfeiture and condemnation, and provided for the disposition of seized materials.

1930—Act June 17, 1930, substituted “comptrollers of customs” for “Naval officers of customs”.

EX. ORD. NO. 10863. AUTHORIZATION OF ATTORNEY GENERAL TO SEIZE ARMS AND MUNITIONS OF WAR, AND OTHER ARTICLES

Ex. Ord. No. 10863, Feb. 18, 1960, 25 F.R. 1507, provided:

By virtue of the authority vested in me by section 1 of Title VI of the act of June 15, 1917, 40 Stat. 223, as amended by section 1 of the act of August 13, 1953, 67 Stat. 577 (22 U.S.C. 401), it is ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. The Attorney General is hereby designated under section 1 of Title VI of the act of June 15, 1917, as amended by section 1 of the act of August 13, 1953 [this section], as a person duly authorized to seize and detain arms or munitions of war or other articles, and to seize and detain any vessel, vehicle, or aircraft containing such items or which has been, or is being, used in exporting or attempting to export such arms or munitions of war or other articles, whenever an attempt is made to export or ship from or take out of the United States such arms or munitions of war or other articles in violation of law, or whenever it is known, or there is probable cause to believe, that such arms or munitions of war or other articles are intended to be, or are being or have been, exported or removed from the United States in violation of law.

SEC. 2. The authority conferred upon the Attorney General by section 1 of this order may be exercised by any officer of the Department of Justice designated for such purpose by the Attorney General.

DWIGHT D. EISENHOWER.

CROSS REFERENCES

Enforcement provisions, see section 1581 et seq. of Title 19, Customs Duties.

Letters or writings nonmailable, see section 1717 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 408, 408a of this title; title 50 App. section 2410.

§§ 402 to 405. **Repealed. Aug. 13, 1953, ch. 434, § 2, 67 Stat. 577**

Section 402, act June 15, 1917, ch. 30, title VI, §2, 40 Stat. 224, related to issuance of warrant for detention of seized property.

Section 403, act June 15, 1917, ch. 30, title VI, §3, 40 Stat. 224, related to filing petition for restoration of seized property.

Section 404, acts June 15, 1917, ch. 30, title VI, §4, 40 Stat. 224; Mar. 1, 1929, ch. 420, 45 Stat. 1423, related to

institution of libel proceedings and sale of seized property.

Section 405, act June 15, 1917, ch. 30, title VI, § 5, 40 Stat. 224, related to method of trial and bond for redelivery.

For subject matter of sections 402 to 405 of this title, see section 401 of this title.

#### § 406. Interference with foreign trade

Except in those cases in which the exportation of arms and munitions of war or other articles is forbidden by proclamation or otherwise by the President, as provided in section 401 of this title, nothing herein contained shall be construed to extend to, or interfere with any trade in such commodities, conducted with any foreign port or place wheresoever, or with any other trade which might have been lawfully carried on before June 15, 1917, under the law of nations, or under the treaties or conventions entered into by the United States, or under the laws thereof. (June 15, 1917, ch. 30, title VI, § 6, 40 Stat. 225.)

##### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Herein, referred to in text, means act June 15, 1917, ch. 30, title VI, 40 Stat. 223, as amended, which enacted sections 31 to 39, 98, 130 to 133, 288, 343 to 346, 381, 502, 535, 536, 574, and 611 to 633 of former Title 18, Criminal Code and Criminal Procedure, sections 213, 231 to 233, 235, 401 to 408a, 462, and 465 of this title, and sections 30 to 42, 191, and 192 to 195 of Title 50, War and National Defense, and amended sections 25, 27, and 349 of former Title 18. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

##### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 408, 408a of this title.

#### § 407. Repealed. Aug. 13, 1953, ch. 434, § 2, 67 Stat. 577

Section, act June 15, 1917, ch. 30, title VI, § 7, 40 Stat. 225, related to President's discretion to release seized property. See section 401 of this title.

#### § 408. Use of land and naval forces to prevent exportation

The President may employ such part of the land or naval forces of the United States as he may deem necessary to carry out the purposes of sections 401 to 408 of this title.

(June 15, 1917, ch. 30, title VI, § 8, 40 Stat. 225.)

##### AIR FORCE

For transfer of certain functions insofar as they pertain to the Air Force, and to the extent that they were not previously transferred to the Secretary of the Air Force from the Secretary of the Army, see Secretary of Defense Transfer Order No. 40 [App. A(1)], July 22, 1949.

##### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 401, 408a of this title.

#### § 408a. "United States" defined

The term "United States" as used in this Act includes the Canal Zone and all territory and waters, continental or insular, subject to the jurisdiction of the United States.

(June 15, 1917, ch. 30, title XIII, § 1, 40 Stat. 231.)

##### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, means act June 15, 1917, ch. 30, 40 Stat. 217, as amended, which enacted sections

31 to 39, 98, 130 to 133, 288, 343 to 346, 381, 502, 535, 536, 574, and 611 to 633 of former Title 18, Criminal Code and Criminal Procedure, sections 213, 231 to 233, 235, 401 to 408a, 462, and 465 of this title, and sections 30 to 42, 191, and 192 to 195 of Title 50, War and National Defense, and amended sections 25, 27, and 349 of former Title 18. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

For definition of Canal Zone, referred to in text, see section 3602(b) of this title.

#### §§ 409, 410. Repealed. June 25, 1948, ch. 645, § 21, 62 Stat. 862, eff. Sept. 1, 1948

Section 409, act Jan. 31, 1922, ch. 44, § 1, 42 Stat. 361, related to prohibition against exportation of arms to American countries or countries under American jurisdiction in a state of domestic violence. See section 1934 of this title.

Section 410, act Jan. 31, 1922, ch. 44, § 2, 42 Stat. 361, related to penalties. See section 1934 of this title.

#### §§ 411 to 419. Omitted

##### CODIFICATION

Sections 411, 412, and 413 to 419, popularly known as the Lend-Lease Act, terminated not later than June 30, 1946, pursuant to section 412 of this title.

Section 411, act Mar. 11, 1941, ch. 11, § 2, 55 Stat. 31, defined "defense article" and "defense information" for purpose of lease, loan, etc., of war materials in interest of United States defense.

Section 412, acts Mar. 11, 1941, ch. 11, § 3, 55 Stat. 31; Mar. 11, 1943, ch. 15, 57 Stat. 20; May 17, 1944, ch. 198, § 1, 2, 58 Stat. 222, 223; Apr. 16, 1945, ch. 61, § 1, 2, 59 Stat. 52, provided for procurement for and transfer of defense articles to other countries, repairs, limitation on amount, termination of powers after June 30, 1946, or after passage of concurrent resolution by both Houses before June 30, 1946, whichever is the earlier, naval convoys, and combat area navigation.

Section 412a, act Mar. 18, 1943, ch. 17, title I, § 1, 57 Stat. 25, prohibited disposition of merchant vessels under sections 411 to 419 of this title except by lease for duration of war.

Section 413, act Mar. 11, 1941, ch. 11, § 4, 55 Stat. 32, provided for contract restrictions against disposal of transferred articles by transferee governments.

Section 414, act Mar. 11, 1941, ch. 11, § 5, 55 Stat. 32, provided for information regarding articles exported and reports to Congress. Section 5(b) of act Mar. 11, 1941, ch. 11, 55 Stat. 32, formerly classified to section 414(b) of this title, provided for reports with respect to operations under the Lend-Lease Act, and was repealed by Pub. L. 89-348, § 1(19), Nov. 8, 1965, 79 Stat. 1311.

Section 415, acts Mar. 11, 1941, ch. 11, § 6, 55 Stat. 33; Mar. 11, 1943, ch. 15, 57 Stat. 20; May 17, 1944, ch. 198, § 1, 58 Stat. 222; Apr. 16, 1945, ch. 61, § 1, 59 Stat. 52; July 25, 1947, ch. 327, § 1, 61 Stat. 449, authorized appropriations.

Section 416, act Mar. 11, 1941, ch. 11, § 7, 55 Stat. 33, provided for protection of patent rights.

Section 417, act Mar. 11, 1941, ch. 11, § 8, 55 Stat. 33, provided for acquisition of war materials from foreign governments.

Section 418, act Mar. 11, 1941, ch. 11, § 9, 55 Stat. 33, authorized executive promulgation of rules and regulations and delegation of powers.

Section 419, act Mar. 11, 1941, ch. 11, § 10, 55 Stat. 33, related to effect of act Mar. 11, 1941 on existing laws relating to use of land and naval forces.

##### ADDITIONAL DEFENSE AID TO OTHER COUNTRIES; LEASE OF CERTAIN SHIPS, BARGES, ETC.

Acts Feb. 7, 1942, ch. 46, title III, § 301, 56 Stat. 82; Oct. 26, 1942, ch. 629, title I, § 103, 56 Stat. 994; Feb. 19, 1943, ch. 1, § 4, 57 Stat. 4, June 26, 1943, ch. 147, § 118, 57 Stat. 217; June 22, 1944, ch. 269, § 121, 58 Stat. 322; May 29, 1945, ch. 130, § 119, 59 Stat. 222, provided for additional defense aid to countries deemed vital to the defense of



the United States and for the lease of ships for periods not extending beyond the termination of the national emergency.

#### LIMITATION ON APPROPRIATIONS

Act Apr. 28, 1942, ch. 247, title II, §201, 56 Stat. 233, provided that limitation of \$2,500,000,000 shall apply to all appropriations made to the Navy Department since Mar. 11, 1941.

#### DEFINITIONS

Act Mar. 5, 1942, ch. 141, title III, §303, 56 Stat. 131, provided that the term "defense article" shall be deemed to include defense information and services, and the expenses in connection with the procurement or supplying of defense articles, information, and services.

#### REDUCTION IN VALUE OF DEFENSE ARTICLES

The value of defense articles was reduced to \$800,000,000 by act Dec. 17, 1941, ch. 591, title I, §102, 55 Stat. 813, and as thus limited was made inapplicable to the War Department after Dec. 17, 1941.

#### § 420. Repealed. July 25, 1947, ch. 327, § 1, 61 Stat. 449

Section, acts May 2, 1941, ch. 84, §5, 55 Stat. 150; June 16, 1942, ch. 416, 56 Stat. 370, related to application of sections 1119a and 1119b of former Title 46, Shipping, to functions of the Maritime Commission under sections 411, 412 and 413 of this title.

#### § 421. Contracts by Government agencies for defense articles, services, etc., for foreign governments in interests of United States

The President may, from time to time, when he deems it in the interest of national defense, authorize the head of any department or agency of the Government, to enter into contracts for the procurement of defense articles, information, or services for the government of any country whose defense the President deems vital to the defense of the United States, to the extent that such government agrees to pay the United States for such defense articles, information, or services prior to the receipt thereof and to make such payments from time to time as the President may require to protect the interests of the United States; and, upon payment of the full cost, the President may dispose of such articles, information, or services to such government: *Provided*, That the total amount of the outstanding contracts under this section, less the amounts which have been paid to the United States under such contracts, shall at no time exceed \$600,000,000.

(Oct. 28, 1941, ch. 460, title I, §102, 55 Stat. 746.)

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 422 of this title.

#### § 422. Retention for United States of defense articles procured for foreign governments

Any defense article procured pursuant to section 421 of this title shall be retained by or transferred to and for the use of such department or agency of the United States as the President may determine, in lieu of being disposed of to a foreign government, whenever in the judgment of the President the defense of the United States will be best served thereby.

(Oct. 28, 1941, ch. 460, title I, §103, 55 Stat. 747.)

#### § 423. Omitted

#### CODIFICATION

Section, act June 14, 1943, ch. 122, §2, 57 Stat. 152, related to retention for defense of United States of certain articles, information or service procured for foreign governments from funds appropriated by act June 14, 1943 or prior acts appropriating funds to the President for such purposes.

#### SUBCHAPTER II—NEUTRALITY

##### SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in sections 613, 2393 of this title; title 46 App. section 1242a.

#### § 441. Proclamation of state of war between foreign states

##### (a) Issuance of proclamation

Whenever the President, or the Congress by concurrent resolution, shall find that there exists a state of war between foreign states, and that it is necessary to promote the security or preserve the peace of the United States or to protect the lives of citizens of the United States, the President shall issue a proclamation naming the states involved; and he shall, from time to time, by proclamation, name other states as and when they may become involved in the war.

##### (b) Revocation of proclamation

Whenever the state of war which shall have caused the President to issue any proclamation under the authority of this section shall have ceased to exist with respect to any state named in such proclamation, he shall revoke such proclamation with respect to such state.

(Nov. 4, 1939, ch. 2, §1, 54 Stat. 4.)

#### SHORT TITLE

Section 20 of Joint Res. Nov. 4, 1939, provided that: "This joint resolution [enacting this subchapter] may be cited as the 'Neutrality Act of 1939'."

#### REPEALS

Section 19 of Joint Res. Nov. 4, 1939, provided that: "The joint resolution of August 31, 1935, as amended [sections 245a to 245i of this title], and the joint resolution of January 8, 1937 [ch. 1, 50 Stat. 3], are hereby repealed; but offenses committed and penalties, forfeitures, or liabilities incurred under either of such joint resolutions prior to the date of enactment of this joint resolution [this subchapter] may be prosecuted and punished, and suits and proceedings for violations of either of such joint resolutions or of any rule or regulation issued pursuant thereto may be commenced and prosecuted, in the same manner and with the same effect as if such joint resolutions had not been repealed."

Neutrality Act of 1939 not to be deemed repealed or modified in any manner by Joint Res. May 7, 1940, ch. 185, 54 Stat. 179, according to section 3 thereof, which resolution amended section 5(b) of the Trading With the Enemy Act, see sections 95a of Title 12, Banks and Banking, and 5(b) of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense, which resolution approved and confirmed Ex. Ord. No. 8389, amending Ex. Ord. No. 6560, set out in note under section 95a of said Title 12, and regulations and general rulings issued by Secretary of Treasury under Ex. Ord. No. 8389.

#### SEPARABILITY

Section 17 of Joint Res. Nov. 4, 1939, provided that: "If any of the provisions of this joint resolution [this subchapter], or the application thereof to any person or circumstance, is held invalid, the remainder of the

joint resolution, and the application of such provision to other persons or circumstances, shall not be affected thereby.”

PURPOSE OF AND RIGHTS RESERVED UNDER  
SUBCHAPTER

The purpose of Joint Res. Nov. 4, 1939, was expressed in the first three paragraphs of the act as follows:

“Whereas the United States, desiring to preserve its neutrality in wars between foreign states and desiring also to avoid involvement therein, voluntarily imposes upon its nationals by domestic legislation the restrictions set out in this joint resolution [this subchapter]; and

“Whereas by so doing the United States waives none of its own rights or privileges, or those of any of its nationals, under international law, and expressly reserves all the rights and privileges to which it and its nationals are entitled under the law of nations; and

“Whereas the United States hereby expressly reserves the right to repeal, change or modify this [this subchapter] or any other domestic legislation in the interests of the peace, security or welfare of the United States and its people.”

CROSS REFERENCES

Proclamations respecting war and neutrality, see notes preceding section 1 of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 444, 445, 447, 448, 450 of this title.

**§§ 442, 443. Repealed. Nov. 17, 1941, ch. 473, § 1, 55 Stat. 764**

Section 442, Joint Res. Nov. 4, 1939, ch. 2, § 2, 54 Stat. 4, related to commerce with states engaged in armed conflict.

Section 443, Joint Res. Nov. 4, 1939, ch. 2, § 3, 54 Stat. 7, related to combat areas.

DEFINITION OF COMBAT AREAS

Proc. No. 2376, Nov. 4, 1939, 3 p.m., 4 F.R. 4495, 54 Stat. 2673; Proc. No. 2394, Apr. 10, 1940, 5 F.R. 1400, 54 Stat. 2693; Proc. No. 2410, June 11, 1940, 5:20 p.m. E.S.T., 5 F.R. 2209, 54 Stat. 2708, as modified by Proc. No. 2474, Apr. 10, 1941, 6 F.R. 1905, 55 Stat. 1628, defined various combat areas.

**§ 444. American Red Cross vessels**

**(a) Transport of officers, American Red Cross personnel, medical personnel, medical supplies, food and clothing**

The provisions of section 442(a)<sup>1</sup> of this title shall not prohibit the transportation by vessels, unarmed and not under convoy, under charter or other direction and control of the American Red Cross of officers and American Red Cross personnel, medical personnel, and medical supplies, food, and clothing, for the relief of human suffering: *Provided*, That where permission has not been given by the blockading power, no American Red Cross vessel shall enter a port where a blockade by aircraft, surface vessel, or submarine is being attempted through the destruction of vessels, or into a port of any country where such blockade of the whole country is being so attempted: *Provided further*, That such American Red Cross vessel shall be on a mission

of mercy only and carrying only Red Cross materials and personnel.

**(b) Transport of refugee children**

The provisions of sections 442(a) and 443<sup>1</sup> of this title shall not prohibit a vessel, in ballast, unarmed, and not under convoy, and transporting refugee children, under sixteen years of age, from war zones, or combat areas, and shall not prohibit such vessel entering into such war zones or combat areas for this purpose, together with such necessary American citizen adult personnel in charge as may be approved by the Secretary of State, subject to the provisions of the immigration laws, if such vessel is proceeding under safe conduct granted by all of the States named in the proclamations issued under the authority of section 441(a) of this title, and if such vessel has painted on a large scale prominently, distinctly, and unmistakably on each side thereof and upon the superstructure thereof plainly visible from the air an American flag and a statement to the effect that such vessel is a refugee-child rescue ship of the United States or under United States registry: *Provided*, That every such child so brought into the United States shall, previous to departure from the port of embarkation, have been so sponsored by some responsible American person, natural or corporate, that he will not become a public charge.

(Nov. 4, 1939, ch. 2, § 4, 54 Stat. 7; June 26, 1940, ch. 431, 54 Stat. 611; Aug. 27, 1940, ch. 695, 54 Stat. 866.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Sections 442(a) and 443 of this title, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (b), were repealed by act Nov. 17, 1941, ch. 473, § 1, 55 Stat. 764.

The immigration laws, referred to in subsec. (b), mean chapter 12 (§1101 et seq.) of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality, and all laws, conventions, and treaties of the United States relating to the immigration, exclusion, deportation, or expulsion of aliens. See section 1101(a)(17) of Title 8.

AMENDMENTS

1940—Act June 26, 1940, inserted “unarmed and not under convoy”, inserted two proviso clauses and struck out “proceeding under safe conduct granted by states named in any proclamation issued under the authority of section 441(a) of this title” after “control of the American Red Cross”.

Act Aug. 27, 1940, designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsec. (b).

**§ 445. Travel on vessels of belligerent states**

**(a) Proscription by Presidential proclamation**

Whenever the President shall have issued a proclamation under the authority of section 441(a) of this title it shall thereafter be unlawful for any citizen of the United States to travel on any vessel of any state named in such proclamation, except in accordance with such rules and regulations as may be prescribed.

**(b) Revocation of proclamation; effect**

Whenever any proclamation issued under the authority of section 441(a) of this title shall have been revoked with respect to any state the provisions of this section shall thereupon cease to apply with respect to such state, except as to offenses committed prior to such revocation.

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

(Nov. 4, 1939, ch. 2, § 5, 54 Stat. 7.)

**§ 446. Repealed. Nov. 17, 1941, ch. 473, § 2, 55 Stat. 764**

Section, Joint Res. Nov. 4, 1939, ch. 2, § 6, 54 Stat. 7, prohibited arming of American merchant vessels. Joint Res. Nov. 17, 1941, § 2, which repealed this section, was itself repealed, effective July 1, 1948, by Joint Res. July 25, 1947, ch. 327, § 2(a), 61 Stat. 451, which provided that it should remain in full force and effect until such date.

**§ 447. Financial transactions**

**(a) Bonds, securities, or other obligations**

Whenever the President shall have issued a proclamation under the authority of section 441(a) of this title, it shall thereafter be unlawful for any person within the United States to purchase, sell, or exchange bonds, securities, or other obligations of the government of any state named in such proclamation, or of any political subdivision of any such state, or of any person acting for or on behalf of the government of any such state, or political subdivision thereof, issued after the date of such proclamation, or to make any loan or extend any credit (other than necessary credits accruing in connection with the transmission of telegraph, cable, wireless and telephone services) to any such government, political subdivision, or person. The provisions of this subsection shall also apply to the sale by any person within the United States to any person in a state named in any such proclamation of any articles or materials listed in a proclamation referred to in or issued under the authority of section 452(i)<sup>1</sup> of this title.

**(b) Renewal or adjustment of indebtedness**

The provisions of this section shall not apply to a renewal or adjustment of such indebtedness as may exist on the date of such proclamation.

**(c) Fine and imprisonment**

Whoever shall knowingly violate any of the provisions of this section or of any regulations issued thereunder shall, upon conviction thereof, be fined not more than \$50,000 or imprisoned for not more than five years, or both. Should the violation be by a corporation, organization, or association, each officer or director thereof participating in the violation shall be liable to the penalty herein prescribed.

**(d) Revocation of proclamation**

Whenever any proclamation issued under the authority of section 441(a) of this title shall have been revoked with respect to any state the provisions of this section shall thereupon cease to apply with respect to such state, except as to offenses committed prior to such revocation.

**(e) Wartime**

This section shall not be operative when the United States is at war.

(Nov. 4, 1939, ch. 2, § 7, 54 Stat. 8; Feb. 21, 1942, ch. 104, 56 Stat. 95.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 452(i) of this title, referred to in subsec. (a), was repealed by act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title V, § 542(a)(12), 68 Stat. 861. See former section 1934(a) and section 2778(a) of this title.

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

AMENDMENTS

1942—Subsec. (e). Joint Res. Feb. 21, 1942, added subsec. (e).

OPERATION OF SECTION POSTPONED UNTIL JULY 1, 1953

Joint Res. July 3, 1952, ch. 570, § 1(b)(7), 66 Stat. 333, as amended by Joint Res. Mar. 31, 1953, ch. 13, § 1, 67 Stat. 18, provided that this section which is normally operative in time of peace shall not be operative by reason of the termination of a state of war on Apr. 28, 1952, but rather (in addition to being inoperative, in accordance with their terms, in time of war) shall continue to be inoperative until 6 months after the termination of the national emergency proclaimed by the President on Dec. 16, 1950, 1950 Proc. 2914, 15 F.R. 9029, set out as a note preceding section 1 of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense, or until such earlier date or dates as the Congress may provide, but in no event beyond Apr. 1, 1953.

REPEAL OF PRIOR ACTS CONTINUING SECTION

Section 6 of Joint Res. July 3, 1952, repealed Joint Res. Apr. 14, 1952, ch. 204, 66 Stat. 54 as amended by Joint Res. May 28, 1952, ch. 339, 66 Stat. 96; Joint Res. June 14, 1952, ch. 437, 66 Stat. 137; Joint Res. June 30, 1952, ch. 526, 66 Stat. 296, which continued provisions until July 3, 1952. This repeal shall take effect as of June 16, 1952, by section 7 of Joint Res. July 3, 1952.

**§ 448. Solicitation and collection of funds and contributions**

**(a) Unlawful acts**

Whenever the President shall have issued a proclamation under the authority of section 441(a) of this title, it shall thereafter be unlawful for any person within the United States to solicit or receive any contribution for or on behalf of the government of any state named in such proclamation or for or on behalf of any agent or instrumentality of any such state.

**(b) Medical aid, food, and clothing**

Nothing in this section shall be construed to prohibit the solicitation or collection of funds and contributions to be used for medical aid and assistance, or for food and clothing to relieve human suffering, when such solicitation or collection of funds and contributions is made on behalf of and for use by any person or organization which is not acting for or on behalf of any such government, but all such solicitations and collections of funds and contributions shall be in accordance with and subject to such rules and regulations as may be prescribed.

**(c) Revocation of proclamation**

Whenever any proclamation issued under the authority of section 441(a) of this title shall have been revoked with respect to any state the provisions of this section shall thereupon cease to apply with respect to such state, except as to offenses committed prior to such revocation.

(Nov. 4, 1939, ch. 2, § 8, 54 Stat. 8.)

**§ 449. American republics**

This subchapter (except section 452<sup>1</sup> of this title) shall not apply to any American republic engaged in war against a non-American state or states, provided the American republic is not cooperating with a non-American state or states in such war.

(Nov. 4, 1939, ch. 2, § 9, 54 Stat. 8.)

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 452 of this title, referred to in text, was repealed by act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title V, §542(a)(12), 68 Stat. 861. See former section 1934(a) and section 2778(a) of this title.

**§ 450. Restrictions on use of American ports****(a) Bond to insure non-delivery of men, ammunition, fuel, etc.**

Whenever, during any war in which the United States is neutral, the President, or any person thereunto authorized by him, shall have cause to believe that any vessel, domestic or foreign, whether requiring clearance or not, is about to carry out of a port or from the jurisdiction of the United States, fuel, men, arms, ammunition, implements of war, supplies, dispatches, or information to any warship, tender, or supply ship of a state named in a proclamation issued under the authority of section 441(a) of this title, but the evidence is not deemed sufficient to justify forbidding the departure of the vessel as provided for by section 967 of title 18, and if, in the President's judgment, such action will serve to maintain peace between the United States and foreign states, or to protect the commercial interests of the United States and its citizens, or to promote the security or neutrality of the United States, he shall have the power, and it shall be his duty, to require the owner, master, or person in command thereof, before departing from a port or from the jurisdiction of the United States, to give a bond to the United States, with sufficient sureties, in such amount as he shall deem proper, conditioned that the vessel will not deliver the men, or any fuel, supplies, dispatches, information, or any part of the cargo, to any warship, tender, or supply ship of a state named in a proclamation issued under the authority of section 441(a) of this title.

**(b) Departure prohibited**

If the President, or any person thereunto authorized by him, shall find that a vessel, domestic or foreign, in a port of the United States, has previously departed from a port or from the jurisdiction of the United States during such war and delivered men, fuel, supplies, dispatches, information, or any part of its cargo to a warship, tender, or supply ship of a state named in a proclamation issued under the authority of section 441(a) of this title, he may prohibit the departure of such vessel during the duration of the war.

**(c) Alien seaman; bond**

Whenever the President shall have issued a proclamation under section 441(a) of this title he may, while such proclamation is in effect, require the owner, master, or person in command of any vessel, foreign or domestic, before departing from the United States, to give a bond to the United States, with sufficient sureties, in such amount as he shall deem proper, conditioned that no alien seaman who arrived on such vessel shall remain in the United States for a longer period than that permitted under the regulations, as amended from time to time, issued pursuant to section 168<sup>1</sup> of title 8. Notwithstanding

the provisions of said section 168<sup>1</sup> of title 8, the President may issue such regulations with respect to the landing of such seamen as he deems necessary to insure their departure either on such vessel or another vessel at the expense of such owner, master, or person in command.

(Nov. 4, 1939, ch. 2, §10, 54 Stat. 9.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 168 of title 8, referred to in subsec. (c), was repealed by act June 27, 1952, ch. 477, §403(a)(13), 66 Stat. 279. See section 1286 of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality.

## CODIFICATION

In subsec. (a), "section 967 of title 18" substituted for "section 1, title V, chapter 30, of the Act approved June 15, 1917 (40 Stat. 217, 221; U.S.C., 1934 edition, title 18, sec. 31)" on authority of act June 25, 1948, ch. 645, 62 Stat. 863, section 1 of which enacted Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

For delegation to Secretary of the Treasury of authority vested in President by subsecs. (a) and (b) of this section, see sections 1(n) and 1(o) of Ex. Ord. No. 10637, Sept. 16, 1955, 20 F.R. 7025, set out as a note under section 301 of Title 3, The President.

**§ 451. Submarines and armed merchant vessels**

Whenever, during any war in which the United States is neutral, the President shall find that special restrictions placed on the use of the ports and territorial waters of the United States by the submarines or armed merchant vessels of a foreign state will serve to maintain peace between the United States and foreign states, or to protect the commercial interests of the United States and its citizens, or to promote the security of the United States, and shall make proclamation thereof, it shall thereafter be unlawful for any such submarine or armed merchant vessel to enter a port or the territorial waters of the United States or to depart therefrom, except under such conditions and subject to such limitations as the President may prescribe. Whenever, in his judgment, the conditions which have caused him to issue his proclamation have ceased to exist, he shall revoke his proclamation and the provisions of this section shall thereupon cease to apply, except as to offenses committed prior to such revocation.

(Nov. 4, 1939, ch. 2, §11, 54 Stat. 9.)

## USE OF UNITED STATES PORTS AND TERRITORIAL WATERS BY SUBMARINES OF FOREIGN NATIONS

By Proc. Nos. 2375, Nov. 4, 1939, 4 F.R. 4494, 54 Stat. 2672; 2400, Apr. 25, 1940, 5 F.R. 1570, 54 Stat. 2699; 2406, May 11, 1940, 5 F.R. 1690, 54 Stat. 2705; 2409, June 10, 1940, 5 F.R. 2192, 54 Stat. 2707; 2445, Nov. 15, 1940, 5 F.R. 4524, 54 Stat. 2672, submarines of France, Germany, Poland, United Kingdom, India, Australia, Canada, New Zealand, Union of South Africa, Norway, Belgium, the Netherlands, Italy, and Greece were denied use of United States ports and territorial waters.

**§ 452. Repealed. Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title V, § 542(a)(12), 68 Stat. 861**

Section, acts Nov. 4, 1939, ch. 2, §12, 54 Stat. 10; Jan. 26, 1942, ch. 19, 56 Stat. 19, established the National Munitions Control Board. See former section 1934 and section 2778 of this title.

Subsec. (h) was subsequently repealed by act Aug. 30, 1954, ch. 1076, §1(28), 68 Stat. 968.

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

**§ 453. Regulations**

The President may, from time to time, promulgate such rules and regulations, not inconsistent with law, as may be necessary and proper to carry out any of the provisions of this subchapter; and he may exercise any power or authority conferred on him by this subchapter through such officer or officers, or agency or agencies, as he shall direct.

(Nov. 4, 1939, ch. 2, § 13, 54 Stat. 11.)

**DELEGATION OF POWERS**

Power to make rules and regulations under this subchapter delegated to Secretary of State by Proc. No. 2374, promulgated Nov. 4, 1939, 4 F.R. 4493, 54 Stat. 2671. See proclamations preceding section 1 of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense.

**§ 454. Unlawful use of the American flag by vessel of foreign state**

(a) It shall be unlawful for any vessel belonging to or operating under the jurisdiction of any foreign state to use the flag of the United States thereon, or to make use of any distinctive signs or markings, indicating that the same is an American vessel.

(b) Any vessel violating the provisions of subsection (a) of this section shall be denied for a period of three months the right to enter the ports or territorial waters of the United States except in cases of force majeure.

(Nov. 4, 1939, ch. 2, § 14, 54 Stat. 11.)

**§ 455. General penalty provision**

In every case of the violation of any of the provisions of this subchapter or of any rule or regulation issued pursuant thereto where a specific penalty is not provided in this subchapter, such violator or violators, upon conviction, shall be fined not more than \$10,000, or imprisoned not more than two years, or both.

(Nov. 4, 1939, ch. 2, § 15, 54 Stat. 11.)

**§ 456. Definitions**

For the purposes of this subchapter—

(a) The term “United States”, when used in a geographical sense, includes the several States and Territories, the insular possessions of the United States, the Canal Zone, and the District of Columbia.

(b) The term “person” includes a partnership, company, association, or corporation, as well as a natural person.

(c) The term “vessel” means every description of watercraft and aircraft capable of being used as a means of transportation on, under, or over water.

(d) The term “American vessel” means any vessel documented, and any aircraft registered or licensed, under the laws of the United States.

(e) The term “state” shall include nation, government, and country.

(f) The term “citizen” shall include any individual owing allegiance to the United States, a partnership, company, or association composed in whole or in part of citizens of the United States, and any corporation organized and existing under the laws of the United States as defined in subsection (a) of this section.

(Nov. 4, 1939, ch. 2, § 16, 54 Stat. 12; Proc. No. 2695, July 4, 1946, 11 F.R. 7517, 60 Stat. 1352.)

**REFERENCES IN TEXT**

For definition of Canal Zone, referred to in subsec. (a), see section 3602(b) of this title.

**CODIFICATION**

Words “(including the Philippine Islands)” omitted from definition of “United States” in subsec. (a) pursuant to the authority of Proc. No. 2695, which granted independence to the Philippines under the provisions of section 1394 of this title, and which is set out as a note under section 1394.

**§ 457. Appropriations**

There is hereby authorized to be appropriated from time to time, out of any money in the Treasury not otherwise appropriated, such amounts as may be necessary to carry out the provisions and accomplish the purposes of this subchapter.

(Nov. 4, 1939, ch. 2, § 18, 54 Stat. 12.)

**SUBCHAPTER III—PREVENTION OF OFFENSES AGAINST NEUTRALITY****§ 461. Enforcement by courts; employment of land or naval forces**

The district courts shall take cognizance of all complaints, by whomsoever instituted, in cases of captures made within the waters of the United States, or within a marine league of the coasts or shores thereof. In every case in which a vessel is fitted out and armed, or attempted to be fitted out and armed, or in which the force of any vessel of war, cruiser, or other armed vessel is increased or augmented, or in which any military expedition or enterprise is begun or set on foot, contrary to the provisions and prohibitions of this subchapter and sections 958 to 962 of title 18; and in every case of the capture of a vessel within the jurisdiction or protection of the United States as before defined; and in every case in which any process issuing out of any court of the United States is disobeyed or resisted by any person having the custody of any vessel of war, cruiser, or other armed vessel of any foreign prince or state, or of any colony, district, or people, or of any subjects or citizens of any foreign prince or state, or of any colony, district, or people, it shall be lawful for the President or such other person as he shall have empowered for that purpose, to employ such part of the land or naval forces of the United States, or of the militia thereof, for the purpose of taking possession of and detaining any such vessel, with her prizes, if any, in order to enforce the execution of the prohibitions and penalties of this subchapter and sections 958 to 962 of title 18, and the restoring of such prizes in the cases in which restoration shall be adjudged; and also for the purpose of preventing the carrying on of any such expedition or enterprise from the territory or jurisdiction of the United States against the territory or dominion of any foreign prince or state, or of any colony, district, or people with whom the United States are at peace.

(Mar. 4, 1909, ch. 321, § 14, 35 Stat. 1090.)

**CODIFICATION**

This subchapter and sections 958 to 962 of title 18, referred to in text, was in the original “this chapter”,

meaning chapter 2 of the act of Mar. 4, 1909, which had been classified to sections 461 to 464 of this title and sections 21 to 25, and 30 of former Title 18, Criminal Code and Criminal Procedure.

“This subchapter” substituted in text for “sections 461 to 464 of this title”.

“Sections 958 to 962 of title 18” substituted in text for “sections 21 to 25, and 30 of title 18” on authority of act June 25, 1948, ch. 645, 62 Stat. 683, section 1 of which enacted Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

Section was formerly classified to section 26 of title 18 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 18 by act June 25, 1948, ch. 645, §1, 62 Stat. 683.

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

Section was derived from R.S. §5287 (act Apr. 20, 1818, ch. 88, §8, 3 Stat. 449) which was amended by act Feb. 18, 1875, ch. 80, 18 Stat. 320, and was repealed by section 341 of the act of Mar. 4, 1909.

### § 462. Compelling foreign vessels to depart

It shall be lawful for the President to employ such part of the land or naval forces of the United States, or of the militia thereof, as he may deem necessary to compel any foreign vessel to depart from the United States or any of its possessions in all cases in which, by the law of nations or the treaties of the United States, it ought not to remain, and to detain or prevent any foreign vessel from so departing in all cases in which, by the law of nations or the treaties of the United States, it is not entitled to depart.

(Mar. 4, 1909, ch. 321, §15, 35 Stat. 1091; June 15, 1917, ch. 30, title V, §10, 40 Stat. 223.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 27 of title 18 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, by act June 25, 1948, ch. 645, §1, 62 Stat. 683.

Act June 15, 1917, inserted provisions relating to detention of vessels.

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

Section was derived from R.S. §5288 (act Apr. 20, 1818, ch. 88, §9, 3 Stat. 449), which was repealed by section 341 of act Mar. 4, 1909.

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Definition of United States as used in this section, see section 408a of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 408a, 465 of this title.

### § 463. Bonds from armed vessels on clearing

The owners or consignees of every armed vessel sailing out of the ports of, or under the jurisdiction of, the United States, belonging wholly or in part to citizens thereof, shall, before clearing out the same, give bond to the United States, with sufficient sureties, in double the amount of the value of the vessel and cargo on board, including her armament, conditioned that the vessel shall not be employed by such owners to cruise or commit hostilities against the subjects, citizens, or property of any foreign prince or state, or of any colony, district, or people, with whom the United States are at peace.

(Mar. 4, 1909, ch. 321, §16, 35 Stat. 1091.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 28 of title 18 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title

18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, by act June 25, 1948, ch. 645, §1, 62 Stat. 683.

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

Section was derived from R.S. §5289 (act Apr. 20, 1818, ch. 88, §10, 3 Stat. 449), which was repealed by section 341 of act Mar. 4, 1909.

#### CROSS REFERENCES

This section as inapplicable to vessels armed under section 351 of Title 10, see section 351 of Title 10, Armed Forces.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 464 of this title; title 10 section 351.

### § 464. Detention by collectors of customs

The several collectors of the customs shall detain any vessel manifestly built for warlike purposes, and about to depart the United States, or any place subject to the jurisdiction thereof, the cargo of which principally consists of arms and munitions of war, when the number of men shipped on board, or other circumstances, render it probable that such vessel is intended to be employed by the owners to cruise or commit hostilities upon the subjects, citizens, or property of any foreign prince or state, or of any colony, district, or people with whom the United States are at peace, until the decision of the President is had thereon, or until the owner gives such bond and security as is required of the owners of armed vessels by section 463 of this title.

(Mar. 4, 1909, ch. 321, §17, 35 Stat. 1091.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 29 of title 18 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, by act June 25, 1948, ch. 645, §1, 62 Stat. 683.

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

Section was derived from R.S. §5290 (act Apr. 20, 1818, ch. 88, §11, 3 Stat. 450), which was repealed by section 341 of act Mar. 4, 1909.

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

Offices of collector of customs, comptroller of customs, surveyor of customs, and appraiser of merchandise of Bureau of Customs of Department of the Treasury to which appointments were required to be made by President with advice and consent of Senate ordered abolished, with such offices to be terminated not later than Dec. 31, 1966, by Reorg. Plan No. 1, of 1965 eff. May 25, 1965, 30 F.R. 7035, 79 Stat. 1317, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees. Functions of Offices eliminated were already vested in Secretary of the Treasury by Reorg. Plan No. 26 of 1950, eff. July 31, 1950, 15 F.R. 4935, 64 Stat. 1280, set out in the Appendix to Title 5.

### § 465. Detention of vessels

The President may employ such part of the land or naval forces of the United States as he may deem necessary to carry out the purposes of sections 462 and 465 of this title, and sections 756, 960, 963 to 967, and 3058 of title 18.

(June 15, 1917, ch. 30, title V, §9, 40 Stat. 223.)

#### CODIFICATION

This section was not enacted as part of act Mar. 4, 1909, ch. 321, 35 Stat. 1090, which comprises this subchapter.

Sections 462 and 465 of this title, and sections 756, 960, 963 to 967, and 3058 of title 18, referred to in text, was in the original "this title", meaning title V of act June 15, 1917, which had been classified to sections 462 and 465 of this title and sections 25, and 31 to 38 of former Title 18, Criminal Code and Criminal Procedure.

"Sections 756, 960, 963 to 967, and 3058 of title 18" substituted in text for "sections 25, and 31 to 38 of title 18" on authority of act June 25, 1948, ch. 645, 62 Stat. 683, section 1 of which enacted Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedures.

Section was formerly classified to section 38 of title 18 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 18, by act June 25, 1948, ch. 645, § 1, 62 Stat. 683.

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Definition of United States as used in this section, see section 408a of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 408a of this title.

### CHAPTER 10—HEMISPHERAL RELATIONS

#### SUBCHAPTER I—GENERALLY

- |      |   |
|------|---|
| Sec. |   |
| 501. | Utilization of services of Government agencies to promote inter-American relations.   |
| 502. | Creation of advisory committees.  |
| 503. | Facilitating work of foreign traveling salesmen; licenses and certificates of identification.                               |
| 504. | Transfer of hemisphere territory from one non-American power to another; recognition; consultation with American Republics. |

#### SUBCHAPTER II—WAR MATERIALS

- |      |  |
|------|--|
| 521. | Military and naval assistance to governments of American Republics.<br>(a) Coast-defense and antiaircraft matériel; ammunition.<br>(b) Vessels of war; armament, artillery, equipment, and ammunition. |
| 522. | Transmission of information pertaining to implements of war, vessels, etc.   |
| 523. | Restriction in contracts against disposal of implements of war, vessels, etc., or information.   |
| 524. | Information on shipments to be given Chairman of National Munitions Control Board.   |
| 525. | Appropriations and disposition of receipts.  |
| 526. | Protection of patent rights.   |
| 527. | Purchases of implements of war, etc., from American Republics.   |

#### SUBCHAPTER I—GENERALLY

##### § 501. Utilization of services of Government agencies to promote inter-American relations

In order to render closer and more effective the relationship between the American republics the President of the United States is authorized, subject to such appropriations as are made available for the purpose, to utilize the services of the departments, agencies, and independent establishments of the Government in carrying out the reciprocal undertakings and cooperative purposes enunciated in the treaties, resolutions, declarations, and recommendations signed by all of the twenty-one American republics at the Inter-American Conference for the Maintenance of Peace held at Buenos Aires, Argentina, in 1936, and at the Eighth International Conference of American States held at Lima, Peru, in 1938.

(Aug. 9, 1939, ch. 616, § 1, 53 Stat. 1290.)

##### § 502. Creation of advisory committees

The President is authorized to create such advisory committees as in his judgment may be of assistance in carrying out the undertakings of this Government under the treaties, resolutions, declarations, and recommendations referred to, but no committee or member thereof shall be allowed any salary or other compensation for services: *Provided, however,* That they may, within the limits of appropriations made available therefor by the Congress, which appropriations are authorized, be paid their actual transportation expenses and not to exceed \$10 per diem in lieu of subsistence and other expenses while away from their homes in attendance upon meetings within the United States under instructions from the Secretary of State.

(Aug. 9, 1939, ch. 616, § 2, 53 Stat. 1290.)

#### TERMINATION OF ADVISORY COMMITTEES

Advisory committees in existence on Jan. 5, 1973, to terminate not later than the expiration of the 2-year period following Jan. 5, 1973, and advisory committees established after Jan. 5, 1973, to terminate not later than the expiration of the 2-year period beginning on the date of their establishment, unless in the case of a committee established by the President or an officer of the Federal Government, such committee is renewed by appropriate action prior to the expiration of such 2-year period, or in the case of a committee established by Congress, its duration is otherwise provided by law. See section 14 of Pub. L. 92-463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 776, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

##### § 503. Facilitating work of foreign traveling salesmen; licenses and certificates of identification

Whereas the United States has entered into conventions with the Governments of Uruguay, Guatemala, Salvador, Panama, and Venezuela which were signed on August 27, 1918, December 3, 1918, January 28, 1919, February 8, 1919, and July 3, 1919, respectively, for facilitating the work of traveling salesmen; and

Whereas Articles I and II of each of said conventions read as follows:

"ARTICLE I. Manufacturers, merchants, and traders domiciled within the jurisdiction of one of the high contracting parties may operate as commercial travelers either personally or by means of agents or employees within the jurisdiction of the other high contracting party on obtaining from the latter, upon payment of a single fee, a license which shall be valid throughout its entire territorial jurisdiction.

"In case either of the high contracting parties shall be engaged in war, it reserves to itself the right to prevent from operating within its jurisdiction under the provisions of this treaty, or otherwise, enemy nationals or other aliens whose presence it may consider prejudicial to public order and national safety.

"ART. II. In order to secure the license above mentioned the applicant must obtain from the country of domicile of the manufacturers, merchants, and traders represented a certificate attesting his character as commercial traveler. This certificate, which shall be issued by the authority to be designated in each country for the purpose, shall be visaed by the consul of the

country in which the applicant proposes to operate, and the authorities of the latter shall, upon the presentation of such certificate, issue to the applicant the national license as provided in Article I.’’

Now, therefore, the Secretary of Commerce, or any person in the Department of Commerce designated by him, is authorized to issue the licenses and certificates of identification which are provided for by the said Articles I and II, respectively, of the said conventions, or which may be provided for by similar articles in any convention or treaty that may, on and after September 22, 1922, be concluded by the United States with a foreign government, and is further authorized to collect a reasonable fee for each license and certificate of identification issued. The amount of such fee shall be fixed by regulations made by the Secretary of Commerce and shall be paid into the Treasury of the United States quarterly.

(Sept. 22, 1922, ch. 414, 42 Stat. 1028.)

TREATIES

Bilateral treaties of Friendship, Commerce and Navigation contain provisions for the reciprocal treatment of commercial travelers which generally state that:

“Commercial travelers representing nationals and companies of either Party engaged in business within the territories thereof, upon their entry into and departure from the territories of the other Party and during their sojourn therein, be accorded most-favored-nation treatment in respect of the customs and other matters, including, subject to the exceptions in paragraph \_\_\_\_\_ of Article \_\_\_\_\_, taxes and charges applicable to them, their samples and the taking of orders, and regulations governing the exercise of their functions.”

| Country                                | Date signed            | Entered into force | Citation      |
|--|------------------------|--------------------|---------------|
| Argentina ...                          | July 27, 1853 ....     | Dec. 20, 1854 .... | 10 Stat. 1005 |
| Austria .....                          | June 19, 1928 ...      | May 27, 1931 ....  | 47 Stat. 1876 |
|  | Jan. 20, 1931 ....     | May 27, 1931 ....  | 47 Stat. 1899 |
| Belgium .....                          | Feb. 21, 1961 ....     | Oct. 3, 1963 ..... | 14 UST 1284   |
| Bolivia .....                          | May 13, 1858 ....      | Nov. 9, 1862 ..... | 12 Stat. 1003 |
| Brunei .....                           | June 23, 1850 ...      | July 11, 1853 .... | 10 Stat. 909  |
| Colombia ...                           | Dec. 12, 1846 ...      | June 10, 1848 ...  | 9 Stat. 881   |
| Costa Rica ...                         | July 10, 1851 ....     | May 26, 1852 ....  | 10 Stat. 916  |
| Denmark .....                          | Oct. 1, 1951 .....     | July 30, 1961 .... | 12 UST 908    |
| Estonia .....                          | Dec. 23, 1925 ....     | May 22, 1926 ....  | 44 Stat. 2379 |
| Ethiopia .....                         | Sept. 7, 1951 ....     | Oct. 8, 1953 ..... | 4 UST 2134    |
|  | Sept. 16, 1965 ...     | May 3, 1973 .....  | 24 UST 2136   |
|  | Oct. 20, 1972 ...      |                    |               |
| Finland .....                          | Feb. 13, 1934 ....     | Aug. 10, 1934 ...  | 49 Stat. 2659 |
|  | Dec. 4, 1952 .....     | Sept. 24, 1953 ... | 4 UST 2047    |
| France .....                           | June 24, 1822 ...      | Feb. 12, 1823 ...  | 8 Stat. 278   |
|  | July 17, 1919 ...      | Jan. 10, 1921 ...  | 41 Stat. 1723 |
|  | Nov. 25, 1959 ...      | Dec. 21, 1960 ...  | 11 UST 2398   |
| Germany,<br>Federal<br>Republic<br>of. | Oct. 29, 1954 ...      | July 14, 1956 ...  | 7 UST 1839    |
| Greece .....                           | Aug. 3, 1951 .....     | Oct. 13, 1954 ...  | 5 UST 1829    |
| Honduras ...                           | Dec. 7, 1927 .....     | July 19, 1928 ...  | 45 Stat. 2618 |
| India .....                            | July 3, 1815 .....     | July 3, 1815 ..... | 8 Stat. 228   |
| Iraq .....                             | Aug. 15, 1955 ...      | June 16, 1957 ...  | 8 UST 899     |
| Ireland .....                          | Dec. 3, 1938 .....     | June 19, 1940 ...  | 54 Stat. 1790 |
| Israel .....                           | Jan. 21, 1950 ...      | Sept. 14, 1950 ... | 1 UST 785     |
| Italy .....                            | Aug. 23, 1951 ...      | Apr. 3, 1954 ..... | 5 UST 560     |
|  | Feb. 2, 1948 .....     | July 26, 1949 ...  | 63 Stat. 2255 |
|  | Sept. 26, 1951 ...     | Mar. 2, 1961 ..... | 12 UST 131    |
| Japan .....                            | Apr. 2, 1953 .....     | Oct. 30, 1953 ...  | 4 UST 2063    |
| Korea .....                            | Nov. 28, 1956 ...      | Nov. 7, 1957 ..... | 8 UST 2117    |
| Latvia .....                           | Apr. 20, 1928 ...      | July 25, 1928 ...  | 45 Stat. 2641 |
| Liberia .....                          | Aug. 8, 1938 .....     | Nov. 21, 1939 ...  | 54 Stat. 1739 |
| Luxembourg                             | Feb. 23, 1962 ...      | Mar. 28, 1963 ...  | 14 UST 251    |
| Madagascar                             | See France .....       | 1896               |               |
| Malta .....                            | See United<br>Kingdom. |                    |               |
| Morocco .....                          | Sept. 16, 1836 ...     | Jan. 28, 1837 ...  | 8 Stat. 484   |
| Nepal .....                            | Apr. 25, 1947 ...      | Apr. 25, 1947 ...  | 61 Stat. 2566 |
| Netherlands                            | Mar. 27, 1956 ...      | Dec. 5, 1957 ..... | 8 UST 2043    |
| Norway .....                           | June 5, 1928 ...       | Sept. 13, 1932 ... | 47 Stat. 2135 |
| Oman .....                             | Dec. 20, 1958 ...      | June 11, 1960 ...  | 11 UST 1835   |
| Pakistan ...                           | Nov. 12, 1959 ...      | Feb. 12, 1961 ...  | 12 UST 110    |
| Paraguay ...                           | Feb. 4, 1859 .....     | Mar. 7, 1860 ..... | 12 Stat. 1091 |
| Saudi Arabia.                          | Nov. 7, 1933 ...       | Nov. 7, 1933 ...   | 48 Stat. 1826 |

| Country                   | Date signed         | Entered into force | Citation      |
|---------------------------|---------------------|--------------------|---------------|
| Spain .....               | July 3, 1902 .....  | Apr. 14, 1903 .... | 33 Stat. 2105 |
| Suriname ...              | See Netherlands.    |                    |               |
| Switzerland               | Nov. 25, 1850 ....  | Nov. 8, 1855 ..... | 11 Stat. 587  |
| Taiwan <sup>1</sup> ..... | Nov. 4, 1946 .....  | Nov. 30, 1948 ...  | 63 Stat. 1299 |
| Thailand .....            | May 29, 1966 .....  | June 8, 1968 ..... | 19 UST 5843   |
| Togo .....                | Feb. 8, 1966 .....  | Feb. 5, 1967 ..... | 18 UST 1      |
| Turkey .....              | Oct. 1, 1929 .....  | Apr. 22, 1930 ...  | 46 Stat. 2743 |
|                           | Oct. 28, 1931 ..... | Feb. 15, 1933 ...  | 47 Stat. 2432 |
| United Kingdom.           | July 3, 1815 .....  | July 3, 1815 ..... | 8 Stat. 228   |
| Vietnam .....             | Aug. 6, 1827 .....  | Apr. 2, 1828 ..... | 8 Stat. 361   |
| Yemen<br>(Sanaa).         | Apr. 3, 1961 .....  | Nov. 30, 1961 ...  | 12 UST 1703   |
| Yugoslavia ..             | May 4, 1946 .....   |                    | 60 Stat. 1782 |
|                           | Oct. 2/14, 1881 ..  | Nov. 15, 1882 .... | 22 Stat. 963  |

<sup>1</sup>This agreement is administered on a nongovernmental basis by the American Institute in Taiwan pursuant to 22 U.S.C. 3305, as a result of the termination of relations with the governing authorities on Taiwan on Jan. 1, 1979.

**§ 504. Transfer of hemisphere territory from one non-American power to another; recognition; consultation with American Republics**

(1) The United States would not recognize any transfer, and would not acquiesce in any attempt to transfer, any geographic region of this hemisphere from one non-American power to another non-American power; and

(2) If such transfer or attempt to transfer should appear likely, the United States shall, in addition to other measures, immediately consult with the other American republics to determine upon the steps which should be taken to safeguard their common interests.

(Apr. 10, 1941, ch. 49, 55 Stat. 133.)

PURPOSE OF ENACTMENT

The “whereas” clauses preceding the resolving words in Joint Res. Apr. 10, 1941, provided as follows:

“Whereas our traditional policy has been to consider any attempt on the part of non-American powers to extend their system to any portion of this hemisphere as dangerous to the peace and safety not only of this country but of the other American republics; and

“Whereas the American republics agreed at the Inter-American Conference for the Maintenance of Peace held in Buenos Aires in 1936 and at the Eighth International Conference of American States held in Lima in 1938 to consult with one another in the event that the peace, security, or territorial integrity of any American republic should be threatened; and

“Whereas the Meeting of the Foreign Ministers of the American Republics at Panama October 3, 1939, resolved ‘That in case any geographic region of America subject to the jurisdiction of any non-American state should be obliged to change its sovereignty and there should result therefrom a danger to the security of the American Continent, a consultative meeting such as the one now being held will be convoked with the urgency that the case may require.’”

SUBCHAPTER II—WAR MATERIALS

**§ 521. Military and naval assistance to governments of American Republics**

**(a) Coast-defense and anti-aircraft matériel; ammunition**

The President may, in his discretion, authorize the Secretary of the Army to manufacture in factories and arsenals under his jurisdiction, or otherwise procure, coast-defense and anti-aircraft matériel, including ammunition therefor, on behalf of the government of any American republic; to sell such matériel and ammunition to any such government; to test or prove such matériel and ammunition prior to sale or



delivery to any such government; to repair such matériel on behalf of any such government; and to communicate to any such government plans, specifications, or other information relating to such matériel and ammunition as may be sold to any such government.

**(b) Vessels of war; armament, artillery, equipment, and ammunition**

The President may, in his discretion, authorize the Secretary of the Navy to construct vessels of war on behalf of the government of any American republic in shipyards under his jurisdiction; to manufacture armament and equipment for such vessels on behalf of any such government in arsenals under his jurisdiction; to sell armament and equipment for such vessels to any such government; to manufacture anti-aircraft artillery and ammunition therefor, on behalf of any such government in factories and arsenals under his jurisdiction; to sell anti-aircraft artillery and ammunition therefor to any such government; to test or prove such vessels, armament, artillery, ammunition, or equipment prior to sale or delivery to any such government; to repair such vessels, armament, artillery, or equipment on behalf of any such government; and to communicate to any such government plans, specifications, and other information relating to such vessels of war and their armament and equipment or anti-aircraft artillery and ammunition therefor, as may be sold to any such government or relating to any vessels of war which any such government may propose to construct or manufacture within its own jurisdiction: *Provided*, That nothing contained herein shall be construed as authorizing the violation of any of the provisions of any treaty to which the United States is or may become a party or of any established principles or precedents of international law: *And provided further*, That no transaction authorized herein shall result in expense to the United States, nor involve the extension of credits by the United States: *And provided further*, That no contract shall be entered into under the terms of this subchapter which shall interfere with or delay the United States in the full use of its shipyards, arsenals, munition plants, and other equipment for its own purposes.

(June 15, 1940, ch. 365, §1, 54 Stat. 396; July 26, 1947, ch. 343, title II, §205(a), 61 Stat. 501.)

CHANGE OF NAME

Department of War designated Department of the Army and title of Secretary of War changed to Secretary of the Army by section 205(a) of act July 26, 1947, ch. 343, title II, 61 Stat. 501. Section 205(a) of act July 26, 1947, was repealed by section 53 of act Aug. 10, 1956, ch. 1041, 70A Stat. 641. Section 1 of act Aug. 10, 1956, enacted "Title 10, Armed Forces" which in sections 3010 to 3013 continued Department of the Army under administrative supervision of Secretary of the Army.

SECRETARY OF THE AIR FORCE

For transfer of certain procurement and related functions and property, insofar as they pertain to Air Force, from Secretary of the Army and Department of the Army to Secretary of the Air Force and Department of the Air Force, see Secretary of Defense Transfer Order Nos. 6 [§1(a)(41)], eff. Jan. 15, 1948; 39 [§2zz], May 18, 1949.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 522 of this title.

**§ 522. Transmission of information pertaining to implements of war, vessels, etc.**

In carrying out transactions authorized by section 521 of this title, the Secretary of the Army and the Secretary of the Navy are authorized, in their discretion and provided that it be not inconsistent with any defense requirements of the United States or of its possessions, to communicate or transmit to the government of any American republic or to any duly authorized person for the use of such government information pertaining to the arms, ammunition, or implements of war sold under the terms of that section or to any vessels of war constructed within the jurisdiction of any such government, and to export for the use of any such government coast defense and anti-aircraft matériel and ammunition therefor, and vessels of war and their armament and equipment involving such information: *Provided*, That any information thus communicated or transmitted or involved in any such arms, ammunition, implements of war, or equipment when exported shall cease to be considered restricted after one year from the date that such communication or transmission has been authorized or such exportation made.

(June 15, 1940, ch. 365, §2, 54 Stat. 396; July 26, 1947, ch. 343, title II, §205(a), 61 Stat. 501.)

CHANGE OF NAME

Department of War designated Department of the Army and title of Secretary of War changed to Secretary of the Army by section 205(a) of act July 26, 1947, ch. 343, title II, 61 Stat. 510. Section 205(a) of act July 26, 1947, was repealed by section 53 of act Aug. 10, 1956, ch. 1041, 70A Stat. 641. Section 1 of act Aug. 10, 1956, enacted "Title 10, Armed Forces" which in sections 3010 to 3013 continued Department of the Army under administrative supervision of Secretary of the Army.

SECRETARY OF THE AIR FORCE

For transfer of certain procurement and related functions and property, insofar as they pertain to Air Force, from Secretary of the Army and Department of the Army to Secretary of the Air Force and Department of the Air Force, see Secretary of Defense Transfer Order Nos. 6 [§1(a)(41)], eff. Jan. 15, 1948, 39 [§2zz], May 18, 1949.

**§ 523. Restriction in contracts against disposal of implements of war, vessels, etc., or information**

All contracts or agreements made by the Secretary of the Army or the Secretary of the Navy for the sale to the government of any American republic of any of the arms, ammunition, or implements of war, the sale of which is authorized by this subchapter, shall contain a clause by which the purchaser undertakes not to dispose of such arms, ammunition, or implements of war, or any plans, specifications, or information pertaining thereto, by gift, sale, or any mode of transfer in such manner that such arms, ammunition, implements of war, or plans, specifications, or information pertaining thereto, may become a part of the armament of any state other than an American republic.

(June 15, 1940, ch. 365, §3, 54 Stat. 397; July 26, 1947, ch. 343, title II, §205(a), 61 Stat. 501.)

## CHANGE OF NAME

Department of War designated Department of the Army and title of Secretary of War changed to Secretary of the Army by section 205(a) of act July 26, 1947, ch. 343, title II, 61 Stat. 501. Section 205(a) of act July 26, 1947, was repealed by section 53 of act Aug. 10, 1956, ch. 1041, 70A Stat. 641. Section 1 of act Aug. 10, 1956, enacted "Title 10, Armed Forces" which in sections 3010 to 3013 continued Department of the Army under administrative supervision of Secretary of the Army.

## SECRETARY OF THE AIR FORCE

For transfer of certain procurement and related functions and property, insofar as they pertain to Air Force, from Secretary of the Army and Department of the Army to Secretary of the Air Force and Department of the Air Force, see Secretary of Defense Transfer Order Nos. 6 [§1(a)(41)], eff. Jan. 15, 1948, 39 [§2zz], May 18, 1949.

**§ 524. Information on shipments to be given Chairman of National Munitions Control Board**

The Secretary of the Army or the Secretary of the Navy, as the case may be, shall, when any arms, ammunition, implements of war, or equipment are exported pursuant to the provisions of this subchapter, immediately inform the Secretary of State, Chairman of the National Munitions Control Board, of the quantities, character, value, terms of sale, and destination of the arms, ammunition, implements of war, or equipment so exported. Such information shall be included in the annual report of the Board.

(June 15, 1940, ch. 365, § 4, 54 Stat. 397; July 26, 1947, ch. 343, title II, § 205(a), 61 Stat. 501.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

National Munitions Control Board, referred to in text, was established under section 452 of this title, which was repealed by act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title V, § 542(a)(12), 68 Stat. 861. See section 2778 of this title.

## CHANGE OF NAME

Department of War designated Department of the Army and title of Secretary of War changed to Secretary of the Army by section 205(a) of act July 26, 1947, ch. 343, title II, 61 Stat. 501. Section 205(a) of act July 26, 1947, was repealed by section 53 of act Aug. 10, 1956, ch. 1041, 70A Stat. 641. Section 1 of act Aug. 10, 1956, enacted "Title 10, Armed Forces" which in sections 3010 to 3013 continued Department of the Army under administrative supervision of Secretary of the Army.

## SECRETARY OF THE AIR FORCE

For transfer of certain procurement and related functions and property, insofar as they pertain to Air Force, from Secretary of the Army and Department of the Army to Secretary of the Air Force and Department of the Air Force, see Secretary of Defense Transfer Order Nos. 6 [§1(a)(41)], eff. Jan. 15, 1948; 39 [§2zz], May 18, 1949.

**§ 525. Appropriations and disposition of receipts**

(a) There is hereby authorized to be appropriated from time to time, out of any moneys in the Treasury not otherwise appropriated, such amounts as may be necessary to carry out the provisions and accomplish the purposes of this subchapter.

(b) All moneys which may be received from the government of any American republic, in payment for any article delivered or service rendered in compliance with the provisions of this

subchapter, shall revert to the respective appropriation or appropriations out of which funds were expended in carrying out the transaction for which money is received, and such moneys shall be available for expenditure for the purpose for which such expended funds were appropriated by law, during the fiscal year in which such funds are received and the ensuing fiscal year.

(June 15, 1940, ch. 365, § 5, 54 Stat. 397.)

**§ 526. Protection of patent rights**

The Secretary of the Army and the Secretary of the Navy shall in all contracts or agreements for the sale of such matériel fully protect the rights of all citizens of the United States who have patent rights in and to any such matériel which is authorized to be sold and the funds collected for royalties on such patents shall be paid to the owners and holders of such patents.

(June 15, 1940, ch. 365, § 6, 54 Stat. 397; July 26, 1947, ch. 343, title II, § 205(a), 61 Stat. 501.)

## CHANGE OF NAME

Department of War designated Department of the Army and title of Secretary of War changed to Secretary of the Army by section 205(a) of act July 26, 1947, ch. 343, title II, 61 Stat. 501. Section 205(a) of act July 26, 1947, was repealed by section 53 of act Aug. 10, 1956, ch. 1041, 70A Stat. 641. Section 1 of act Aug. 10, 1956, enacted "Title 10, Armed Forces" which in sections 3010 to 3013 continued Department of the Army under administrative supervision of Secretary of the Army.

## SECRETARY OF THE AIR FORCE

For transfer of certain procurement and related functions and property, insofar as they pertain to Air Force, from Secretary of the Army and Department of the Army to Secretary of the Air Force and Department of the Air Force, see Secretary of Defense Transfer Order Nos. 6 [§1(a)(41)], eff. Jan. 15, 1948; 39 [§2zz], May 18, 1949.

**§ 527. Purchases of implements of war, etc., from American Republics**

The Secretaries of the Army and of the Navy are authorized to purchase arms, ammunition, and implements of war produced within the jurisdiction of any American republic if such arms, ammunition, or implements of war cannot be produced in the United States.

(June 15, 1940, ch. 365, § 7, 54 Stat. 397; July 26, 1947, ch. 343, title II, § 205(a), 61 Stat. 501.)

## CHANGE OF NAME

Department of War designated Department of the Army and title of Secretary of War changed to Secretary of the Army by section 205(a) of act July 26, 1947, ch. 343, title II, 61 Stat. 501. Section 205(a) of act July 26, 1947, was repealed by section 53 of act Aug. 10, 1956, ch. 1041, 70A Stat. 641. Section 1 of act Aug. 10, 1956, enacted "Title 10, Armed Forces" which in sections 3010 to 3013 continued Department of the Army under administrative supervision of Secretary of the Army.

## SECRETARY OF THE AIR FORCE

For transfer of certain procurement and related functions and property, insofar as they pertain to Air Force, from Secretary of the Army and Department of the Army to Secretary of the Air Force and Department of the Air Force, see Secretary of Defense Transfer Order Nos. 6 [§1(a)(41)], eff. Jan. 15, 1948; 39 [§2zz], May 18, 1949.

**CHAPTER 11—FOREIGN AGENTS AND PROPAGANDA**

SUBCHAPTER I—GENERALLY

Sec.

601. Repealed.

SUBCHAPTER II—REGISTRATION OF FOREIGN PROPAGANDISTS

611. Definitions.
612. Registration statement.
- (a) Filing; contents.
  - (b) Supplements; filing period.
  - (c) Execution of statement under oath.
  - (d) Filing of statement not deemed full compliance nor as preclusion from prosecution.
  - (e) Incorporation of previous statement by reference.
  - (f) Exemption by Attorney General.
613. Exemptions.
- (a) Diplomatic or consular officers.
  - (b) Officials of foreign government.
  - (c) Staff members of diplomatic or consular officers.
  - (d) Private and nonpolitical activities; solicitation of funds.
  - (e) Religious, scholastic, or scientific pursuits.
  - (f) Defense of foreign government vital to United States defense.
  - (g) Persons qualified to practice law.
  - (h) Agents of foreign principals.
614. Filing and labeling of political propaganda.
- (a) Copies to Attorney General; statement as to places, times, and extent of transmission.
  - (b) Identification statement.
  - (c) Public inspection.
  - (d) Library of Congress.
  - (e) Information furnished to agency or official of United States Government.
  - (f) Appearances before Congressional committees.
615. Books and records.
616. Public examination of official records; transmittal of records and information.
- (a) Permanent copy of statement; inspection; withdrawal.
  - (b) Secretary of State.
  - (c) Executive departments and agencies; Congressional committees.
617. Liability of officers.
618. Enforcement and penalties.
- (a) Violations; false statements and willful omissions.
  - (b) Proof of identity of foreign principal.
  - (c) Deportation.
  - (d) Repealed.
  - (e) Continuing offense.
  - (f) Injunctive remedy; jurisdiction of district court.
  - (g) Deficient registration statement.
  - (h) Contingent fee arrangement.
619. Territorial applicability of subchapter.
620. Rules and regulations.
621. Reports to Congress.

SUBCHAPTER I—GENERALLY

**§ 601. Repealed. June 25, 1948, ch. 645, § 21, 62 Stat. 862, eff. Sept. 1, 1948**

Section, acts June 15, 1917, ch. 30, title VIII, § 3, 40 Stat. 226; Mar. 28, 1940, ch. 72, § 6, 54 Stat. 80, related to acting as a foreign agent without notice to Secretary of State. See section 951 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

SUBCHAPTER II—REGISTRATION OF FOREIGN PROPAGANDISTS

EX. ORD. NO. 9176. TRANSFER OF REGISTRATION FUNCTIONS FROM THE SECRETARY OF STATE TO THE ATTORNEY GENERAL

Ex. Ord. No. 9176, May 29, 1942, 7 F.R. 4127, provided: By virtue of the authority vested in me by Title I of the First War Powers Act, 1941, approved December 18, 1941 (Public Law No. 354, 77th Congress [section 601 et seq. of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense]), and as President of the United States, it is hereby ordered as follows:

1. All functions, powers and duties of the Secretary of State under the act of June 8, 1938 (52 Stat. 631), as amended by the act of August 7, 1939 (53 Stat. 1244), requiring the registration of agents of foreign principals, are hereby transferred to and vested in the Attorney General.

2. All property, books and records heretofore maintained by the Secretary of State with respect to his administration of said act of June 8, 1938, as amended, are hereby transferred to and vested in the Attorney General.

3. The Attorney General shall furnish to the Secretary of State for such comment, if any, as the Secretary of State may desire to make from the point of view of the foreign relations of the United States, one copy of each registration statement that is hereafter filed with the Attorney General in accordance with the provisions of this Executive order.

4. All rules, regulations and forms which have been issued by the Secretary of State pursuant to the provisions of said act of June 8, 1938, as amended, and which are in effect shall continue in effect until modified, superseded, revoked or repealed by the Attorney General.

5. This order shall become effective as of June 1, 1942.

FRANKLIN D ROOSEVELT.

SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in title 2 section 1602; title 8 section 1251; title 18 section 219; title 48 section 1905; title 50 App. section 34.

**§ 611. Definitions**

As used in and for the purposes of this subchapter—

(a) The term “person” includes an individual, partnership, association, corporation, organization, or any other combination of individuals;

(b) The term “foreign principal” includes—

(1) a government of a foreign country and a foreign political party;

(2) a person outside of the United States, unless it is established that such person is an individual and a citizen of and domiciled within the United States, or that such person is not an individual and is organized under or created by the laws of the United States or of any State or other place subject to the jurisdiction of the United States and has its principal place of business within the United States; and

(3) a partnership, association, corporation, organization, or other combination of persons organized under the laws of or having its principal place of business in a foreign country.

(c) Except<sup>1</sup> as provided in subsection (d) of this section, the term “agent of a foreign principal” means—

(1) any person who acts as an agent, representative, employee, or servant, or any person who acts in any other capacity at the

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be “Except”.

order, request, or under the direction or control, of a foreign principal or of a person any of whose activities are directly or indirectly supervised, directed, controlled, financed, or subsidized in whole or in major part by a foreign principal, and who directly or through any other person—

(i) engages within the United States in political activities for or in the interests of such foreign principal;

(ii) acts within the United States as a public relations counsel, publicity agent, information-service employee or political consultant for or in the interests of such foreign principal;

(iii) within the United States solicits, collects, disburses, or dispenses contributions, loans, money, or other things of value for or in the interest of such foreign principal; or

(iv) within the United States represents the interests of such foreign principal before any agency or official of the Government of the United States; and

(2) any person who agrees, consents, assumes or purports to act as, or who is or holds himself out to be, whether or not pursuant to contractual relationship, an agent of a foreign principal as defined in clause (1) of this subsection.

(d) The term “agent of a foreign principal” does not include any news or press service or association organized under the laws of the United States or of any State or other place subject to the jurisdiction of the United States, or any newspaper, magazine, periodical, or other publication for which there is on file with the United States Postal Service information in compliance with section 3611<sup>2</sup> of title 39, published in the United States, solely by virtue of any bona fide news or journalistic activities, including the solicitation or acceptance of advertisements, subscriptions, or other compensation therefor, so long as it is at least 80 per centum beneficially owned by, and its officers and directors, if any, are citizens of the United States, and such news or press service or association, newspaper, magazine, periodical, or other publication, is not owned, directed, supervised, controlled, subsidized, or financed, and none of its policies are determined by any foreign principal defined in subsection (b) of this section, or by any agent of a foreign principal required to register under this subchapter;

(e) The term “government of a foreign country” includes any person or group of persons exercising sovereign de facto or de jure political jurisdiction over any country, other than the United States, or over any part of such country, and includes any subdivision of any such group and any group or agency to which such sovereign de facto or de jure authority or functions are directly or indirectly delegated. Such term shall include any faction or body of insurgents within a country assuming to exercise governmental authority whether such faction or body of insurgents has or has not been recognized by the United States;

(f) The term “foreign political party” includes any organization or any other combination of

individuals in a country other than the United States, or any unit or branch thereof, having for an aim or purpose, or which is engaged in any activity devoted in whole or in part to, the establishment, administration, control, or acquisition of administration or control, of a government of a foreign country or a subdivision thereof, or the furtherance or influencing of the political or public interests, policies, or relations of a government of a foreign country or a subdivision thereof;

(g) The term “public-relations counsel” includes any person who engages directly or indirectly in informing, advising, or in any way representing a principal in any public relations matter pertaining to political or public interests, policies, or relations of such principal;

(h) The term “publicity agent” includes any person who engages directly or indirectly in the publication or dissemination of oral, visual, graphic, written, or pictorial information or matter of any kind, including publication by means of advertising, books, periodicals, newspapers, lectures, broadcasts, motion pictures, or otherwise;

(i) The term “information-service employee” includes any person who is engaged in furnishing, disseminating, or publishing accounts, descriptions, information, or data with respect to the political, industrial, employment, economic, social, cultural, or other benefits, advantages, facts, or conditions of any country other than the United States or of any government of a foreign country or of a foreign political party or of a partnership, association, corporation, organization, or other combination of individuals organized under the laws of, or having its principal place of business in, a foreign country;

(j) Repealed. Pub. L. 104-65, §9(1)(A), Dec. 19, 1995, 109 Stat. 699.

(k) The term “registration statement” means the registration statement required to be filed with the Attorney General under section 612(a) of this title, and any supplements thereto required to be filed under section 612(b) of this title, and includes all documents and papers required to be filed therewith or amendatory thereof or supplemental thereto, whether attached thereto or incorporated therein by reference;

(l) The term “American republic” includes any of the states which were signatory to the Final Act of the Second Meeting of the Ministers of Foreign Affairs of the American Republics at Habana, Cuba, July 30, 1940;

(m) The term “United States”, when used in a geographical sense, includes the several States, the District of Columbia, the Territories, the Canal Zone, the insular possessions, and all other places now or hereafter subject to the civil or military jurisdiction of the United States;

(n) The term “prints” means newspapers and periodicals, books, pamphlets, sheet music, visiting cards, address cards, printing proofs, engravings, photographs, pictures, drawings, plans, maps, patterns to be cut out, catalogs, prospectuses, advertisements, and printed, engraved, lithographed, or autographed notices of various kinds, and, in general, all impressions or reproductions obtained on paper or other material assimilable to paper, on parchment or on

<sup>2</sup> So in original. Probably should be section “3685”.

cardboard, by means of printing, engraving, lithography, autography, or any other easily recognizable mechanical process, with the exception of the copying press, stamps with movable or immovable type, and the typewriter;

(o) The term "political activities" means any activity that the person engaging in believes will, or that the person intends to, in any way influence any agency or official of the Government of the United States or any section of the public within the United States with reference to formulating, adopting, or changing the domestic or foreign policies of the United States or with reference to the political or public interests, policies, or relations of a government of a foreign country or a foreign political party;

(p) The term "political consultant" means any person who engages in informing or advising any other person with reference to the domestic or foreign policies of the United States or the political or public interest, policies, or relations of a foreign country or of a foreign political party.

(June 8, 1938, ch. 327, § 1, 52 Stat. 631; Aug. 7, 1939, ch. 521, § 1, 53 Stat. 1244; Apr. 29, 1942, ch. 263, § 1, 56 Stat. 249; Proc. No. 2695, July 4, 1946, 11 F.R. 7517, 60 Stat. 1352; Sept. 23, 1950, ch. 1024, title I, § 20(a), 64 Stat. 1005; Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 849, § 1, 70 Stat. 899; Oct. 4, 1961, Pub. L. 87-366, § 1, 75 Stat. 784; July 4, 1966, Pub. L. 89-486, § 1, 80 Stat. 244; Aug. 12, 1970, Pub. L. 91-375, § 6(k), 84 Stat. 782; Dec. 19, 1995, Pub. L. 104-65, § 9(1), 109 Stat. 699.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

For definition of Canal Zone, referred to in subsec. (m), see section 3602(b) of this title.

#### CODIFICATION

Words "including the Philippine Islands," omitted from definition of "United States" in subsec. (m) pursuant to Proc. No. 2695, which granted independence to the Philippines under the authority of section 1394 of this title, under which section Proc. No. 2695 is set out as a note.

#### AMENDMENTS

1995—Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 104-65, § 9(1)(A), struck out subsec. (j) which read as follows: "The term 'political propaganda' includes any oral, visual, graphic, written, pictorial, or other communication or expression by any person (1) which is reasonably adapted to, or which the person disseminating the same believes will, or which he intends to, prevail upon, indoctrinate, convert, induce, or in any other way influence a recipient or any section of the public within the United States with reference to the political or public interests, policies, or relations of a government of a foreign country or a foreign political party or with reference to the foreign policies of the United States or promote in the United States racial, religious, or social dissensions, or (2) which advocates, advises, instigates, or promotes any racial, social, political, or religious disorder, civil riot, or other conflict involving the use of force or violence in any other American republic or the overthrow of any government or political subdivision of any other American republic by any means involving the use of force or violence. As used in this subsection the term 'disseminating' includes transmitting or causing to be transmitted in the United States mails or by any means or instrumentality of interstate or foreign commerce or offering or causing to be offered in the United States mails;"

Subsec. (o). Pub. L. 104-65, § 9(1)(B), substituted "any activity that the person engaging in believes will, or that the person intends to, in any way influence" for "the dissemination of political propaganda and any

other activity which the person engaging therein believes will, or which he intends to, prevail upon, indoctrinate, convert, induce, persuade, or in any other way influence".

Subsec. (p). Pub. L. 104-65, § 9(1)(C), substituted a period for semicolon at end.

Subsec. (q). Pub. L. 104-65, § 9(1)(D), struck out subsec. (q) which read as follows: "For the purpose of section 613(d) of this title, activities in furtherance of the bona fide commercial, industrial or financial interests of a domestic person engaged in substantial commercial, industrial or financial operations in the United States shall not be deemed to serve predominantly a foreign interest because such activities also benefit the interests of a foreign person engaged in bona fide trade or commerce which is owned or controlled by, or which owns or controls, such domestic person: *Provided*, That (i) such foreign person is not, and such activities are not directly or indirectly supervised, directed, controlled, financed or subsidized in whole or in substantial part by, a government of a foreign country or a foreign political party, (ii) the identity of such foreign person is disclosed to the agency or official of the United States with whom such activities are conducted, and (iii) whenever such foreign person owns or controls such domestic person, such activities are substantially in furtherance of the bona fide commercial, industrial or financial interests of such domestic person."

1970—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 91-375 substituted "file with the United States Postal Service information in compliance with section 3611 of title 39" for "file with the Postmaster General a sworn statement in compliance with section 2 of the Act of August 24, 1912 (37 Stat. 553), as amended".

1966—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 89-486, § 1(1), redesignated former pars. (3) and (4) as (2) and (3), substituted in such par. (3) "combination of persons" for "combination of individuals" and struck out from definition of "foreign principal" former pars. (2), (5), and (6) which included "(2) an individual affiliated or associated with, or supervised, directed, controlled, financed, or subsidized, in whole or in part, by any foreign principal defined in clause (1) of this subsection"; "(5) a domestic partnership, association, corporation, organization, or other combination of individuals, subsidized directly or indirectly, in whole or in part, by any foreign principal defined in clause (1), (3), or (4) of this subsection"; and "(6) a domestic partnership, association, corporation, or other combination of individuals, supervised, directed, controlled, or financed, in whole or in substantial part, by any foreign government or foreign political party".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 89-486, § 1(2), amended provisions generally to redefine "agent of a foreign principal" by specifying four categories of activities creating the agency relationship where person acts as agent, employee, representative, or servant or at the order of, or under the control of, a foreign principal, by requiring a showing not only of foreign connections but also of certain activities performed by the agent for foreign interests, by making change as it relates to problem of indirect control exerted by foreign principals over their agents, by including political activities and actions as political consultant, by excluding attorneys from the relationship, by incorporating provisions of former par. (3) in par. (2) where a person assumes or purports to act as an agent of a foreign principal, and by eliminating the separate category for military or governmental officials contained in former par. (4).

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 89-486, § 1(3), struck out "clause (1), (2), or (4) of" before "subsection (b)".

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 89-486, § 1(4), inserted "public relations" before "matter pertaining to" and "of such principal" after "or relations".

Subsecs. (o) to (q). Pub. L. 89-486, § 1(5), added subsecs. (o) to (q).

1961—Subsec. (b)(6). Pub. L. 87-366 added par. (6).

1956—Subsec. (c)(5). Act Aug. 1, 1956, repealed par. (5) which included within definition of "agent of a foreign

principal” any person trained in foreign espionage systems with certain exceptions. See sections 851 and 852 of Title 50, War and National Defense.

1950—Subsec. (c)(5). Act Sept. 23, 1950, added par. (5).

1942—Act Apr. 29, 1942, amended section generally to redefine terms used in this subchapter.

1939—Act Aug. 7, 1939, amended section generally to redefine terms used in this subchapter.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1995 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 104-65 effective Jan. 1, 1996, except as otherwise provided, see section 24 of Pub. L. 104-65, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1601 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1970 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 91-375 effective within 1 year after Aug. 12, 1970, on date established therefor by Board of Governors of United States Postal Service and published by it in Federal Register, see section 15(a) of Pub. L. 91-375, set out as an Effective Date note preceding section 101 of Title 39, Postal Service.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1966 AMENDMENT

Section 9 of Pub. L. 89-486 provided that: “This Act [enacting sections 219 and 613 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, and amending this section and sections 612 to 616 and 618 of this title] shall take effect ninety days after the date of its enactment [July 4, 1966].”

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1942 AMENDMENT

Section 3 of act Apr. 29, 1942, provided that: “This Act [amending this subchapter] shall take effect on the sixtieth day after the date of its approval, except that prior to such sixtieth day the Attorney General may make, prescribe, amend, and rescind such rules, regulations, and forms as may be necessary to carry out the provisions of this Act [amending this subchapter].”

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 7 of act June 8, 1938, provided that: “This Act [enacting this subchapter] shall take effect on the ninetieth day after the date of its enactment [June 8, 1938].”

#### SHORT TITLE

Section 14 of act June 8, 1938, as added by act Apr. 29, 1942, §1, provided that: “This Act [enacting this subchapter] may be cited as the ‘Foreign Agents Registration Act of 1938, as amended’.”

#### SEPARABILITY; EFFECT ON EXISTING LAW

Sections 12 and 13 of act June 8, 1938, as added by act Apr. 29, 1942, §1, provided that:

“SEC. 12. If any provision of this Act [enacting this subchapter], or the application thereof to any person or circumstances, is held invalid, the remainder of the Act, and the application of such provisions to other persons or circumstances, shall not be affected thereby.

“SEC. 13. This Act [enacting this subchapter] is in addition to and not in substitution for any other existing statute.”

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

Section 2 of act Apr. 29, 1942, provided that: “Upon the effective date of this Act [see Effective Date of 1942 Amendment note above], all powers, duties, and functions of the Secretary of State under the Act of June 8, 1938 (52 Stat. 631), as amended [this subchapter], shall be transferred to and become vested in the Attorney General, together with all property, books, records, and unexpended balances of appropriations used by or available to the Secretary of State for carrying out the functions devolving on him under the above-cited Act. All rules, regulations, and forms which have been issued by the Secretary of State pursuant to the provisions of said Act, and which are in effect, shall con-

tinue in effect until modified, superseded, revoked, or repealed.”

#### POLICY AND PURPOSE OF SUBCHAPTER

Act Apr. 29, 1942, amending generally act June 8, 1938, added an opening paragraph preceding section 1 of the latter act and reading as follows: “It is hereby declared to be the policy and purpose of this Act [enacting this subchapter] to protect the national defense, internal security, and foreign relations of the United States by requiring public disclosure by persons engaging in propaganda activities and other activities for or on behalf of foreign governments, foreign political parties, and other foreign principals so that the Government and the people of the United States may be informed of the identity of such persons and may appraise their statements and actions in the light of their associations and activities.”

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Registration functions of the Secretary of State transferred to the Attorney General, see Ex. Ord. No. 9176, set out preceding this section.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 613 of this title; title 2 sections 441e, 1602; title 15 section 4809; title 18 section 207.

### § 612. Registration statement

#### (a) Filing; contents

No person shall act as an agent of a foreign principal unless he has filed with the Attorney General a true and complete registration statement and supplements thereto as required by subsections (a) and (b) of this section or unless he is exempt from registration under the provisions of this subchapter. Except as hereinafter provided, every person who becomes an agent of a foreign principal shall, within ten days thereafter, file with the Attorney General, in duplicate, a registration statement, under oath on a form prescribed by the Attorney General. The obligation of an agent of a foreign principal to file a registration statement shall, after the tenth day of his becoming such agent, continue from day to day, and termination of such status shall not relieve such agent from his obligation to file a registration statement for the period during which he was an agent of a foreign principal. The registration statement shall include the following, which shall be regarded as material for the purposes of this subchapter:

(1) Registrant's name, principal business address, and all other business addresses in the United States or elsewhere, and all residence addresses, if any;

(2) Status of the registrant; if an individual, nationality; if a partnership, name, residence addresses, and nationality of each partner and a true and complete copy of its articles of co-partnership; if an association, corporation, organization, or any other combination of individuals, the name, residence addresses, and nationality of each director and officer and of each person performing the functions of a director or officer and a true and complete copy of its charter, articles of incorporation, association, constitution, and bylaws, and amendments thereto; a copy of every other instrument or document and a statement of the terms and conditions of every oral agreement relating to its organization, powers, and pur-

poses; and a statement of its ownership and control;

(3) A comprehensive statement of the nature of registrant's business; a complete list of registrant's employees and a statement of the nature of the work of each; the name and address of every foreign principal for whom the registrant is acting, assuming or purporting to act or has agreed to act; the character of the business or other activities of every such foreign principal, and, if any such foreign principal be other than a natural person, a statement of the ownership and control of each; and the extent, if any, to which each such foreign principal is supervised, directed, owned, controlled, financed, or subsidized, in whole or in part, by any government of a foreign country or foreign political party, or by any other foreign principal;

(4) Copies of each written agreement and the terms and conditions of each oral agreement, including all modifications of such agreements, or, where no contract exists, a full statement of all the circumstances, by reason of which the registrant is an agent of a foreign principal; a comprehensive statement of the nature and method of performance of each such contract, and of the existing and proposed activity or activities engaged in or to be engaged in by the registrant as agent of a foreign principal for each such foreign principal, including a detailed statement of any such activity which is a political activity;

(5) The nature and amount of contributions, income, money, or thing of value, if any, that the registrant has received within the preceding sixty days from each such foreign principal, either as compensation or for disbursement or otherwise, and the form and time of each such payment and from whom received;

(6) A detailed statement of every activity which the registrant is performing or is assuming or purporting or has agreed to perform for himself or any other person other than a foreign principal and which requires his registration hereunder, including a detailed statement of any such activity which is a political activity;

(7) The name, business, and residence addresses, and if an individual, the nationality, of any person other than a foreign principal for whom the registrant is acting, assuming or purporting to act or has agreed to act under such circumstances as require his registration hereunder; the extent to which each such person is supervised, directed, owned, controlled, financed, or subsidized, in whole or in part, by any government of a foreign country or foreign political party or by any other foreign principal; and the nature and amount of contributions, income, money, or thing of value, if any, that the registrant has received during the preceding sixty days from each such person in connection with any of the activities referred to in clause (6) of this subsection, either as compensation or for disbursement or otherwise, and the form and time of each such payment and from whom received;

(8) A detailed statement of the money and other things of value spent or disposed of by the registrant during the preceding sixty days

in furtherance of or in connection with activities which require his registration hereunder and which have been undertaken by him either as an agent of a foreign principal or for himself or any other person or in connection<sup>1</sup> with any activities relating to his becoming an agent of such principal, and a detailed statement of any contributions of money or other things of value made by him during the preceding sixty days (other than contributions the making of which is prohibited under the terms of section 613<sup>2</sup> of title 18) in connection with an election to any political office or in connection with any primary election, convention, or caucus held to select candidates for any political office;

(9) Copies of each written agreement and the terms and conditions of each oral agreement, including all modifications of such agreements, or, where no contract exists, a full statement of all the circumstances, by reason of which the registrant is performing or assuming or purporting or has agreed to perform for himself or for a foreign principal or for any person other than a foreign principal any activities which require his registration hereunder;

(10) Such other statements, information, or documents pertinent to the purposes of this subchapter as the Attorney General, having due regard for the national security and the public interest, may from time to time require;

(11) Such further statements and such further copies of documents as are necessary to make the statements made in the registration statement and supplements thereto, and the copies of documents furnished therewith, not misleading.

**(b) Supplements; filing period**

Every agent of a foreign principal who has filed a registration statement required by subsection (a) of this section shall, within thirty days after the expiration of each period of six months succeeding such filing, file with the Attorney General a supplement thereto under oath, on a form prescribed by the Attorney General, which shall set forth with respect to such preceding six months' period such facts as the Attorney General, having due regard for the national security and the public interest, may deem necessary to make the information required under this section accurate, complete, and current with respect to such period. In connection with the information furnished under clauses (3), (4), (6), and (9) of subsection (a) of this section, the registrant shall give notice to the Attorney General of any changes therein within ten days after such changes occur. If the Attorney General, having due regard for the national security and the public interest, determines that it is necessary to carry out the purposes of this subchapter, he may, in any particular case, require supplements to the registration statement to be filed at more frequent intervals in respect to all or particular items of information to be furnished.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be "connection".

<sup>2</sup> See References in Text note below.

**(c) Execution of statement under oath**

The registration statement and supplements thereto shall be executed under oath as follows: If the registrant is an individual, by him; if the registrant is a partnership, by the majority of the members thereof; if the registrant is a person other than an individual or a partnership, by a majority of the officers thereof or persons performing the functions of officers or by a majority of the board of directors thereof or persons performing the functions of directors, if any.

**(d) Filing of statement not deemed full compliance nor as preclusion from prosecution**

The fact that a registration statement or supplement thereto has been filed shall not necessarily be deemed a full compliance with this subchapter and the regulations thereunder on the part of the registrant; nor shall it indicate that the Attorney General has in any way passed upon the merits of such registration statement or supplement thereto; nor shall it preclude prosecution, as provided for in this subchapter, for willful failure to file a registration statement or supplement thereto when due or for a willful false statement of a material fact therein or the willful omission of a material fact required to be stated therein or the willful omission of a material fact or copy of a material document necessary to make the statements made in a registration statement and supplements thereto, and the copies of documents furnished therewith, not misleading.

**(e) Incorporation of previous statement by reference**

If any agent of a foreign principal, required to register under the provisions of this subchapter, has previously thereto registered with the Attorney General under the provisions of section 2386 of title 18, the Attorney General, in order to eliminate inappropriate duplication, may permit the incorporation by reference in the registration statement or supplements thereto filed hereunder of any information or documents previously filed by such agent of a foreign principal under the provisions of said section.

**(f) Exemption by Attorney General**

The Attorney General may, by regulation, provide for the exemption—

(1) from registration, or from the requirement of furnishing any of the information required by this section, of any person who is listed as a partner, officer, director, or employee in the registration statement filed by an agent of a foreign principal under this subchapter, and

(2) from the requirement of furnishing any of the information required by this section of any agent of a foreign principal.

where by reason of the nature of the functions or activities of such person the Attorney General, having due regard for the national security and the public interest, determines that such registration, or the furnishing of such information, as the case may be, is not necessary to carry out the purposes of this subchapter.

(June 8, 1938, ch. 327, § 2, 52 Stat. 632; Apr. 29, 1942, ch. 263, § 1, 56 Stat. 251; Aug. 3, 1950, ch. 524, § 1, 64 Stat. 399; July 4, 1966, Pub. L. 89-486, § 2, 80 Stat. 245.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 613 of title 18, referred to in subsec. (a)(8), was repealed by Pub. L. 94-283, title II, § 201(a), May 11, 1976, 90 Stat. 496.

## CODIFICATION

In subsec. (e), "section 2386 of title 18" was in the original "the Act of October 17, 1940 (54 Stat. 1201)", which had been classified to sections 14 to 17 of title 18. "Section 2386 of title 18" substituted for "sections 14 to 17 of title 18" on authority of act June 25, 1948, ch. 645, 62 Stat. 863, section 1 of which enacted Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

## PRIOR PROVISIONS

Provisions on this subject were contained in sections 612 and 613 of this title prior to general amendment of act June 8, 1938, by act Apr. 29, 1942.

## AMENDMENTS

1966—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 89-486, § 2(1), struck out requirement for transmittal of registration statements by the Attorney General to the Secretary of State and provision declaring a failure of transmission not to be a bar to prosecutions, now covered in section 616(b) of this title.

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 89-486, § 2(2), struck out "unless, and to the extent, this requirement is waived in writing by the Attorney General" after "statement of the nature of the work of each" and provided for a statement of the extent to which a foreign principal is supervised, directed, etc., by any other foreign principal.

Subsec. (a)(4), (6). Pub. L. 89-486, § 2(3), (4), inserted "including a detailed statement of any such activity which is a political activity".

Subsec. (a)(7). Pub. L. 89-486, § 2(5), required certain information pertaining to control and financial arrangements with respect to those persons, not themselves foreign principals, who are so related to a foreign principal that their agents when engaged in political activities in the interests of the principal are required to register.

Subsec. (a)(8). Pub. L. 89-486, § 2(6), inserted requirement that agent report the money or other things of value spent or disposed of in connection with his becoming the agent of his foreign principal and all political contributions made during the preceding sixty days, other than contributions made on behalf of their principals, such contributions being prohibited under section 613 of title 18.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 89-486, § 2(7), added subsec. (f).

1950—Subsec. (a). Act Aug. 3, 1950, made failure to register a continuing offense.

1942—Act Apr. 29, 1942, amended section generally.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1966 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 89-486 effective ninety days after July 4, 1966, see section 9 of Pub. L. 89-486, set out as a note under section 611 of this title.

## FEES FOR NECESSARY EXPENSES OF REGISTRATION UNIT

Pub. L. 102-395, title I, Oct. 6, 1992, 106 Stat. 1831, provided in part that: "In addition, notwithstanding 31 U.S.C. 3302, for fiscal year 1993 and thereafter, the Attorney General shall establish and collect fees to recover necessary expenses of the Registration Unit (to include salaries, supplies, equipment and training) pursuant to the Foreign Agents Registration Act [probably means Foreign Agents Registration Act of 1938, as amended, 22 U.S.C. 611 et seq.], and shall credit such fees to this appropriation, to remain available until expended."

## CROSS REFERENCES

Registration functions of the Secretary of State transferred to the Attorney General, see Ex. Ord. No. 9176, set out preceding section 611 of this title.



## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 611, 613, 617, 618 of this title.

**§ 613. Exemptions**

The requirements of section 612(a) of this title shall not apply to the following agents of foreign principals:

**(a) Diplomatic or consular officers**

A duly accredited diplomatic or consular officer of a foreign government who is so recognized by the Department of State, while said officer is engaged exclusively in activities which are recognized by the Department of State as being within the scope of the functions of such officer;

**(b) Officials of foreign government**

Any official of a foreign government, if such government is recognized by the United States, who is not a public-relations counsel, publicity agent, information-service employee, or a citizen of the United States, whose name and status and the character of whose duties as such official are of public record in the Department of State, while said official is engaged exclusively in activities which are recognized by the Department of State as being within the scope of the functions of such official;

**(c) Staff members of diplomatic or consular officers**

Any member of the staff of, or any person employed by, a duly accredited diplomatic or consular officer of a foreign government who is so recognized by the Department of State, other than a public-relations counsel, publicity agent, or information-service employee, whose name and status and the character of whose duties as such member or employee are of public record in the Department of State, while said member or employee is engaged exclusively in the performance of activities which are recognized by the Department of State as being within the scope of the functions of such member or employee;

**(d) Private and nonpolitical activities; solicitation of funds**

Any person engaging or agreeing to engage only (1) in private and nonpolitical activities in furtherance of the bona fide trade or commerce of such foreign principal; or (2) in other activities not serving predominantly a foreign interest; or (3) in the soliciting or collecting of funds and contributions within the United States to be used only for medical aid and assistance, or for food and clothing to relieve human suffering, if such solicitation or collection of funds and contributions is in accordance with and subject to the provisions of subchapter II of chapter 9 of this title, and such rules and regulations as may be prescribed thereunder;

**(e) Religious, scholastic, or scientific pursuits**

Any person engaging or agreeing to engage only in activities in furtherance of bona fide religious, scholastic, academic, or scientific pursuits or of the fine arts;

**(f) Defense of foreign government vital to United States defense**

Any person, or employee of such person, whose foreign principal is a government of a foreign

country the defense of which the President deems vital to the defense of the United States while, (1) such person or employee engages only in activities which are in furtherance of the policies, public interest, or national defense both of such government and of the Government of the United States, and are not intended to conflict with any of the domestic or foreign policies of the Government of the United States, (2) each communication or expression by such person or employee which he intends to, or has reason to believe will, be published, disseminated, or circulated among any section of the public, or portion thereof, within the United States, is a part of such activities and is believed by such person to be truthful and accurate and the identity of such person as an agent of such foreign principal is disclosed therein, and (3) such government of a foreign country furnishes to the Secretary of State for transmittal to, and retention for the duration of this subchapter by, the Attorney General such information as to the identity and activities of such person or employee at such times as the Attorney General may require. Upon notice to the Government of which such person is an agent or to such person or employee, the Attorney General, having due regard for the public interest and national defense, may, with the approval of the Secretary of State, and shall, at the request of the Secretary of State, terminate in whole or in part the exemption herein of any such person or employee;

**(g) Persons qualified to practice law**

Any person qualified to practice law, insofar as he engages or agrees to engage in the legal representation of a disclosed foreign principal before any court of law or any agency of the Government of the United States: *Provided*, That for the purposes of this subsection legal representation does not include attempts to influence or persuade agency personnel or officials other than in the course of judicial proceedings, criminal or civil law enforcement inquiries, investigations, or proceedings, or agency proceedings required by statute or regulation to be conducted on the record.

**(h) Agents of foreign principals**

Any agent of a person described in section 611(b)(2) of this title or an entity described in section 611(b)(3) of this title if the agent is required to register and does register under the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995 [2 U.S.C. 1601 et seq.] in connection with the agent's representation of such person or entity.

(June 8, 1938, ch. 327, § 3, 52 Stat. 632; Aug. 7, 1939, ch. 521, § 2, 53 Stat. 1245; Apr. 29, 1942, ch. 263, § 1, 56 Stat. 254; Oct. 4, 1961, Pub. L. 87-366, § 2, 75 Stat. 784; July 4, 1966, Pub. L. 89-486, § 3, 80 Stat. 246; Dec. 19, 1995, Pub. L. 104-65, § 9(2), (3), 109 Stat. 700.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995, referred to in subsec. (h), is Pub. L. 104-65, Dec. 19, 1995, 109 Stat. 691, which is classified principally to chapter 26 (§1601 et seq.) of Title 2, The Congress. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1601 of Title 2 and Tables.

## PRIOR PROVISIONS

Prior to general amendment of act June 8, 1938, by act Apr. 29, 1942, section related to additional registration statements after each six months period. Provisions on that subject were incorporated in section 612 of this title by 1942 amendment.

## AMENDMENTS

1995—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 104-65, §9(2), substituted “judicial proceedings, criminal or civil law enforcement inquiries, investigations, or proceedings, or agency proceedings required by statute or regulation to be conducted on the record” for “established agency proceedings, whether formal or informal”.

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 104-65, §9(3), added subsec. (h).

1966—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 89-486, §3(a), designated existing provisions as cls. (1) and (3), struck out “financial or mercantile” before “activities” in cl. (1), and inserted the cl. (2) exemption of any person engaging or agreeing to engage in other activities not serving predominantly a foreign interest.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 89-486, §3(b), added subsec. (g).

1961—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 87-366 substituted “private and nonpolitical financial or mercantile activities in furtherance” for “private, non-political, financial, mercantile, or other activities in furtherance”.

1942—Act Apr. 29, 1942, amended section generally.

1939—Act Aug. 7, 1939, amended section generally.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1995 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 104-65 effective Jan. 1, 1996, except as otherwise provided, see section 24 of Pub. L. 104-65, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1601 of Title 2, The Congress.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1966 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 89-486 effective ninety days after July 4, 1966, see section 9 of Pub. L. 89-486, set out as a note under section 611 of this title.

## CROSS REFERENCES

Registration functions of the Secretary of State transferred to the Attorney General, see Ex. Ord. No. 9176, set out preceding section 611 of this title.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 15 section 4809.

**§ 614. Filing and labeling of political propaganda****(a) Copies to Attorney General; statement as to places, times, and extent of transmission**

Every person within the United States who is an agent of a foreign principal and required to register under the provisions of this subchapter and who transmits or causes to be transmitted in the United States mails or by any means or instrumentality of interstate or foreign commerce any informational materials for or in the interests of such foreign principal (i) in the form of prints, or (ii) in any other form which is reasonably adapted to being, or which he believes will be, or which he intends to be, disseminated or circulated among two or more persons shall, not later than forty-eight hours after the beginning of the transmittal thereof, file with the Attorney General two copies thereof.

**(b) Identification statement**

It shall be unlawful for any person within the United States who is an agent of a foreign principal and required to register under the provisions of this subchapter to transmit or cause to be transmitted in the United States mails or by any means or instrumentality of interstate or

foreign commerce any informational materials for or in the interests of such foreign principal without placing in such informational materials a conspicuous statement that the materials are distributed by the agent on behalf of the foreign principal, and that additional information is on file with the Department of Justice, Washington, District of Columbia. The Attorney General may by rule define what constitutes a conspicuous statement for the purposes of this subsection.

**(c) Public inspection**

The copies of informational materials required by this subchapter to be filed with the Attorney General shall be available for public inspection under such regulations as he may prescribe.

**(d) Library of Congress**

For purposes of the Library of Congress, other than for public distribution, the Secretary of the Treasury and the United States Postal Service are authorized, upon the request of the Librarian of Congress, to forward to the Library of Congress fifty copies, or as many fewer thereof as are available, of all foreign prints determined to be prohibited entry under the provisions of section 1305 of title 19 and of all foreign prints excluded from the mails under authority of section 1717 of title 18.

Notwithstanding the provisions of section 1305 of title 19 and of section 1717 of title 18, the Secretary of the Treasury is authorized to permit the entry and the United States Postal Service is authorized to permit the transmittal in the mails of foreign prints imported for governmental purposes by authority or for the use of the United States or for the use of the Library of Congress.

**(e) Information furnished to agency or official of United States Government**

It shall be unlawful for any person within the United States who is an agent of a foreign principal required to register under the provisions of this subchapter to transmit, convey, or otherwise furnish to any agency or official of the Government (including a Member or committee of either House of Congress) for or in the interests of such foreign principal any political propaganda or to request from any such agency or official for or in the interests of such foreign principal any information or advice with respect to any matter pertaining to the political or public interests, policies or relations of a foreign country or of a political party or pertaining to the foreign or domestic policies of the United States unless the propaganda or the request is prefaced or accompanied by a true and accurate statement to the effect that such person is registered as an agent of such foreign principal under this subchapter.

**(f) Appearances before Congressional committees**

Whenever any agent of a foreign principal required to register under this subchapter appears before any committee of Congress to testify for or in the interests of such foreign principal, he shall, at the time of such appearance, furnish the committee with a copy of his most recent registration statement filed with the Depart-

ment of Justice as an agent of such foreign principal for inclusion in the records of the committee as part of his testimony.

(June 8, 1938, ch. 327, § 4, 52 Stat. 632; Aug. 7, 1939, ch. 521, § 3, 53 Stat. 1246; Apr. 29, 1942, ch. 263, § 1, 56 Stat. 255; July 4, 1966, Pub. L. 89-486, § 4, 80 Stat. 246; Aug. 12, 1970, Pub. L. 91-375, § 4(a), 84 Stat. 773; Dec. 19, 1995, Pub. L. 104-65, § 9(4)-(6), 109 Stat. 700.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section 1717 of title 18, referred to in subsec. (d), was in the original "section 1 of title XII of the Act of June 15, 1917 (40 Stat. 230)" which was classified to section 343 of former Title 18, Criminal Code and Criminal Procedure. "Section 1717 of title 18" substituted for "section 343 of title 18" on authority of act June 25, 1948, ch. 645, 62 Stat. 683, section 1 of which enacted Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

Prior to general amendment of act June 8, 1938, by act Apr. 29, 1942, section related to retention of statements as public records. Provisions on that subject were incorporated in section 616 of this title by 1942 amendment.

#### AMENDMENTS

1995—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 104-65, § 9(4)(B), which directed striking out "and a statement, duly signed by or on behalf of such an agent, setting forth full information as to the places, times, and extent of such transmittal" after "Attorney General two copies thereof", was executed by striking out such language, which read in part "on behalf of such agent", to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Pub. L. 104-65, § 9(4)(A), substituted "informational materials" for "political propaganda".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 104-65, § 9(5), substituted "informational materials for or" for "political propaganda for or" and substituted "without placing in such informational materials a conspicuous statement that the materials are distributed by the agent on behalf of the foreign principal, and that additional information is on file with the Department of Justice, Washington, District of Columbia. The Attorney General may by rule define what constitutes a conspicuous statement for the purposes of this subsection." for cls. (i) and (ii) and concluding provisions which made it unlawful for an agent of a foreign principal to transmit in the United States political propaganda unless the propaganda identified the agent and contained information about the registration of the agent and authorized the Attorney General to prescribe regulations relating to the information to be provided.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 104-65, § 9(6), substituted "informational materials" for "political propaganda".

1966—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 89-486, § 4(1), inserted "for or in the interests of such foreign principal" after "political propaganda" and substituted "file with the Attorney General two copies thereof" for "sent to the Librarian of Congress two copies thereof and file with the Attorney General one copy thereof".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 89-486, § 4(2), inserted "for or in the interests of such foreign principal" after "political propaganda", where first appearing, and "the relationship or connection between the person transmitting the political propaganda or causing it to be transmitted and such propaganda;" after "setting forth" and substituted "such foreign principal" for each of his foreign principals".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 89-486, § 4(3), substituted "filed with the Attorney General" for "sent to the Librarian of Congress".

Subsecs. (e), (f). Pub. L. 89-486, § 4(4), added subsecs. (e) and (f).

1942—Act Apr. 29, 1942, amended section generally.

1939—Act Aug. 7, 1939, amended section generally.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1995 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 104-65 effective Jan. 1, 1996, except as otherwise provided, see section 24 of Pub. L. 104-65, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1601 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1966 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 89-486 effective ninety days after July 4, 1966, see section 9 of Pub. L. 89-486, set out as a note under section 611 of this title.

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

In subsec. (d), "United States Postal Service" substituted for "Postmaster General" in two places pursuant to Pub. L. 91-375, § 4(a), Aug. 12, 1970, 84 Stat. 773, set out as a note under section 201 of Title 39, Postal Service, which abolished office of Postmaster General of Post Office Department and transferred its functions to United States Postal Service.

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Registration functions of the Secretary of State transferred to the Attorney General, see Ex. Ord. No. 9176, set out preceding section 611 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 617, 618 of this title.

### § 615. Books and records

Every agent of a foreign principal registered under this subchapter shall keep and preserve while he is an agent of a foreign principal such books of account and other records with respect to all his activities, the disclosure of which is required under the provisions of this subchapter, in accordance with such business and accounting practices, as the Attorney General, having due regard for the national security and the public interest, may by regulation prescribe as necessary or appropriate for the enforcement of the provisions of this subchapter and shall preserve the same for a period of three years following the termination of such status. Until regulations are in effect under this section every agent of a foreign principal shall keep books of account and shall preserve all written records with respect to his activities. Such books and records shall be open at all reasonable times to the inspection of any official charged with the enforcement of this subchapter. It shall be unlawful for any person willfully to conceal, destroy, obliterate, mutilate, or falsify, or to attempt to conceal, destroy, obliterate, mutilate, or falsify, or to cause to be concealed, destroyed, obliterated, mutilated, or falsified, any books or records required to be kept under the provisions of this section.

(June 8, 1938, ch. 327, § 5, 52 Stat. 633; Apr. 29, 1942, ch. 263, § 1, 56 Stat. 256; July 4, 1966, Pub. L. 89-486, § 5, 80 Stat. 247.)

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

Prior to general amendment of act June 8, 1938, by act Apr. 29, 1942, section related to penalties. Provisions on that subject were incorporated in section 618 of this title by 1942 amendment.

#### AMENDMENTS

1966—Pub. L. 89-486 inserted "in accordance with such business and accounting practices," after "under the provisions of this subchapter,".

1942—Act Apr. 29, 1942, amended section generally.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1966 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 89-486 effective ninety days after July 4, 1966, see section 9 of Pub. L. 89-486, set out as a note under section 611 of this title.

CROSS REFERENCES

Registration functions of the Secretary of State transferred to the Attorney General, see Ex. Ord. No. 9176, set out preceding section 611 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 617 of this title.

**§ 616. Public examination of official records; transmittal of records and information**

**(a) Permanent copy of statement; inspection; withdrawal**

The Attorney General shall retain in permanent form one copy of all registration statements furnished under this subchapter, and the same shall be public records and open to public examination and inspection at such reasonable hours, under such regulations, as the Attorney General may prescribe, and copies of the same shall be furnished to every applicant at such reasonable fee as the Attorney General may prescribe. The Attorney General may withdraw from public examination the registration statement and other statements of any agent of a foreign principal whose activities have ceased to be of a character which requires registration under the provisions of this subchapter.

**(b) Secretary of State**

The Attorney General shall, promptly upon receipt, transmit one copy of every registration statement filed hereunder and one copy of every amendment or supplement thereto filed hereunder, to the Secretary of State for such comment and use as the Secretary of State may determine to be appropriate from the point of view of the foreign relations of the United States. Failure of the Attorney General so to transmit such copy shall not be a bar to prosecution under this subchapter.

**(c) Executive departments and agencies; Congressional committees**

The Attorney General is authorized to furnish to departments and agencies in the executive branch and committees of the Congress such information obtained by him in the administration of this subchapter, including the names of registrants under this subchapter, copies of registration statements, or parts thereof, or other documents or information filed under this subchapter, as may be appropriate in the light of the purposes of this subchapter.

(June 8, 1938, ch. 327, § 6, 52 Stat. 633; Apr. 29, 1942, ch. 263, § 1, 56 Stat. 256; July 4, 1966, Pub. L. 89-486, § 6, 80 Stat. 247; Dec. 19, 1995, Pub. L. 104-65, § 9(7), 109 Stat. 700.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

Prior to general amendment of act June 8, 1938, by act Apr. 29, 1942, section related to rules and regulations. Provisions on that subject were incorporated in section 620 of this title by 1942 amendment.

Provisions on this subject were contained in section 614 of this title prior to general amendment of act June 8, 1938, by act Apr. 29, 1942.

AMENDMENTS

1995—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 104-65, § 9(7)(A), struck out “and all statements concerning the distribution of political propaganda” after “all registration statements”.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 104-65, § 9(7)(B), struck out “, and one copy of every item of political propaganda” after “supplement thereto”.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 104-65, § 9(7)(C), struck out “copies of political propaganda,” after “parts thereof,”.

1966—Pub. L. 89-486 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsecs. (b) and (c).

1942—Act Apr. 29, 1942, amended section generally.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1995 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 104-65 effective Jan. 1, 1996, except as otherwise provided, see section 24 of Pub. L. 104-65, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1601 of Title 2, The Congress.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1966 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 89-486 effective ninety days after July 4, 1966, see section 9 of Pub. L. 89-486, set out as a note under section 611 of this title.

CROSS REFERENCES

Registration functions of the Secretary of State transferred to the Attorney General, see Ex. Ord. No. 9176, set out preceding section 611 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 18 section 219.

**§ 617. Liability of officers**

Each officer, or person performing the functions of an officer, and each director, or person performing the functions of a director, of an agent of a foreign principal which is not an individual shall be under obligation to cause such agent to execute and file a registration statement and supplements thereto as and when such filing is required under subsections (a) and (b) of section 612 of this title and shall also be under obligation to cause such agent to comply with all the requirements of sections 614(a) and (b) and 615 of this title and all other requirements of this subchapter. Dissolution of any organization acting as an agent of a foreign principal shall not relieve any officer, or person performing the functions of an officer, or any director, or person performing the functions of a director, from complying with the provisions of this section. In case of failure of any such agent of a foreign principal to comply with any of the requirements of this subchapter, each of its officers, or persons performing the functions of officers, and each of its directors, or persons performing the functions of directors, shall be subject to prosecution therefor.

(June 8, 1938, ch. 327, § 7, 52 Stat. 633; Apr. 29, 1942, ch. 263, § 1, 56 Stat. 256; Aug. 3, 1950, ch. 524, § 2, 64 Stat. 400.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

Section 7 of act June 8, 1938, prior to the general amendment of that act by act Apr. 29, 1942, provided for the effective date of the 1938 act. See Effective Date note set out under section 611 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

1950—Act Aug. 3, 1950, continued the obligation of officers, directors, and persons acting as such to comply with this subchapter despite the dissolution of a foreign agent.

1942—Act Apr. 29, 1942, amended section generally.

### § 618. Enforcement and penalties

#### (a) Violations; false statements and willful omissions

Any person who—

(1) willfully violates any provision of this subchapter or any regulation thereunder, or

(2) in any registration statement or supplement thereto or in any other document filed with or furnished to the Attorney General under the provisions of this subchapter willfully makes a false statement of a material fact or willfully omits any material fact required to be stated therein or willfully omits a material fact or a copy of a material document necessary to make the statements therein and the copies of documents furnished therewith not misleading, shall, upon conviction thereof, be punished by a fine of not more than \$10,000 or by imprisonment for not more than five years, or both, except that in the case of a violation of subsection (b), (e), or (f) of section 614 of this title or of subsection (g) or (h) of this section the punishment shall be a fine of not more than \$5,000 or imprisonment for not more than six months, or both.

#### (b) Proof of identity of foreign principal

In any proceeding under this subchapter in which it is charged that a person is an agent of a foreign principal with respect to a foreign principal outside of the United States, proof of the specific identity of the foreign principal shall be permissible but not necessary.

#### (c) Deportation

Any alien who shall be convicted of a violation of, or a conspiracy to violate, any provision of this subchapter or any regulation thereunder shall be subject to deportation in the manner provided by sections 1251 to 1253 of title 8.

#### (d) Repealed. Pub. L. 104-65, § 9(8)(B), Dec. 19, 1995, 109 Stat. 700

#### (e) Continuing offense

Failure to file any such registration statement or supplements thereto as is required by either section 612(a) or section 612(b) of this title shall be considered a continuing offense for as long as such failure exists, notwithstanding any statute of limitation or other statute to the contrary.

#### (f) Injunctive remedy; jurisdiction of district court

Whenever in the judgment of the Attorney General any person is engaged in or about to engage in any acts which constitute or will constitute a violation of any provision of this subchapter, or regulations issued thereunder, or whenever any agent of a foreign principal fails to comply with any of the provisions of this subchapter or the regulations issued thereunder, or otherwise is in violation of the subchapter, the Attorney General may make application to the appropriate United States district court for an order enjoining such acts or enjoining such person from continuing to act as an agent of such foreign principal, or for an order requiring compliance with any appropriate provision of the

subchapter or regulation thereunder. The district court shall have jurisdiction and authority to issue a temporary or permanent injunction, restraining order or such other order which it may deem proper.

#### (g) Deficient registration statement

If the Attorney General determines that a registration statement does not comply with the requirements of this subchapter or the regulations issued thereunder, he shall so notify the registrant in writing, specifying in what respects the statement is deficient. It shall be unlawful for any person to act as an agent of a foreign principal at any time ten days or more after receipt of such notification without filing an amended registration statement in full compliance with the requirements of this subchapter and the regulations issued thereunder.

#### (h) Contingent fee arrangement

It shall be unlawful for any agent of a foreign principal required to register under this subchapter to be a party to any contract, agreement, or understanding, either express or implied, with such foreign principal pursuant to which the amount or payment of the compensation, fee, or other remuneration of such agent is contingent in whole or in part upon the success of any political activities carried on by such agent.

(June 8, 1938, ch. 327, § 8, as added Apr. 29, 1942, ch. 263, § 1, 56 Stat. 257; amended Sept. 23, 1950, ch. 1024, title I, § 20(b), 64 Stat. 1005; June 27, 1952, ch. 477, title IV, § 402(d), 66 Stat. 276; Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 849, § 1, 70 Stat. 899; July 4, 1966, Pub. L. 89-486, § 7, 80 Stat. 248; Nov. 8, 1984, Pub. L. 98-620, title IV, § 402(26), 98 Stat. 3359; Dec. 19, 1995, Pub. L. 104-65, § 9(8), 109 Stat. 700.)

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

Provisions on this subject were contained in section 615 of this title prior to general amendment of act June 8, 1938, by act Apr. 29, 1942.

#### AMENDMENTS

1995—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 104-65, § 9(8)(A), struck out “or in any statement under section 614(a) of this title concerning the distribution of political propaganda” after “or supplement thereto”.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 104-65, § 9(8)(B), struck out subsec. (d) which read as follows: “The United States Postal Service may declare to be nonmailable any communication or expression falling within clause (2) of section 611(j) of this title in the form of prints or in any other form reasonably adapted to, or reasonably appearing to be intended for, dissemination or circulation among two or more persons, which is offered or caused to be offered for transmittal in the United States mails to any person or persons in any other American republic by any agent of a foreign principal, if the United States Postal Service is informed in writing by the Secretary of State that the duly accredited diplomatic representative of such American republic has made written representation to the Department of State that the admission or circulation of such communication or expression in such American republic is prohibited by the laws thereof and has requested in writing that its transmittal thereto be stopped.”

1984—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 98-620 struck out provision that the proceedings shall be made a preferred cause and expedited in every way.

1966—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 89-486, § 7(1), inserted exception provision.

Subsecs. (f) to (h). Pub. L. 89-486, § 7(2), added subsecs. (f) to (h).

1956—Act Aug. 1, 1956, amended credit to section by redesignating section 20(b) of act Sept. 23, 1950, as section 20.

1952—Subsec. (c). Act June 27, 1952, substituted “sections 1251 to 1253 of title 8” for “sections 155 and 156 of title 8”.

1950—Subsec. (e). Act Sept. 23, 1950, added subsec. (e).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1995 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 104-65 effective Jan. 1, 1996, except as otherwise provided, see section 24 of Pub. L. 104-65, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1601 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1984 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 98-620 not applicable to cases pending on Nov. 8, 1984, see section 403 of Pub. L. 98-620, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1657 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1966 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 89-486 effective ninety days after July 4, 1966, see section 9 of Pub. L. 89-486, set out as a note under section 611 of this title.

### § 619. Territorial applicability of subchapter

This subchapter shall be applicable in the several States, the District of Columbia, the Territories, the Canal Zone, the insular possessions, and all other places now or hereafter subject to the civil or military jurisdiction of the United States.

(June 8, 1938, ch. 327, § 9, as added Apr. 29, 1942, ch. 263, § 1, 56 Stat. 257; amended Proc. No. 2695, July 4, 1946, 11 F.R. 7517, 60 Stat. 1352.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

For definition of Canal Zone, referred to in text, see section 3602(b) of this title.

#### CODIFICATION

Words “including the Philippine Islands,” omitted from section pursuant to Proc. No. 2695, which granted independence to the Philippine Islands under the authority of section 1394 of this title, under which section Proc. No. 2695 is set out as a note.

### § 620. Rules and regulations

The Attorney General may at any time make, prescribe, amend, and rescind such rules, regulations, and forms as he may deem necessary to carry out the provisions of this subchapter.

(June 8, 1938, ch. 327, § 10, as added Apr. 29, 1942, ch. 263, § 1, 56 Stat. 257.)

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

Provisions on this subject were contained in section 616 of this title prior to general amendment of act June 8, 1938, by act Apr. 29, 1942.

### § 621. Reports to Congress

The Attorney General shall every six months report to the Congress concerning administration of this subchapter, including registrations filed pursuant to the subchapter, and the nature, sources and content of political propaganda disseminated and distributed.

(June 8, 1938, ch. 327, § 11, as added Apr. 29, 1942, ch. 263, § 1, 56 Stat. 258; amended Dec. 19, 1995, Pub. L. 104-65, § 19, 109 Stat. 704.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1995—Pub. L. 104-65 added text and struck out former text which read as follows: “The Attorney General

shall, from time to time, make a report to the Congress concerning the administration of this subchapter, including the nature, sources, and content of political propaganda disseminated or distributed.”

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1995 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 104-65 effective Jan. 1, 1996, see section 24 of Pub. L. 104-65, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1601 of Title 2, The Congress.

## CHAPTER 12—CLAIMS COMMISSIONS

### §§ 661 to 672. Omitted

#### CODIFICATION

Sections 661 to 672, which established the American Mexican Claims Commission in 1942 for the settlement of certain claims, expired pursuant to the provisions of section 661(d), which provided that the authority of the Commission shall terminate at the expiration of four years after the date on which a majority of its members first appointed took office.

Section 661, acts Dec. 18, 1942, ch. 766, § 2, 56 Stat. 1058; Apr. 3, 1945, ch. 52, § 5, 59 Stat. 50; Oct. 28, 1949, ch. 782, title XI, § 1106(a), 63 Stat. 972, established American Mexican Claims Commission, prescribed its composition, provided for compensation of its members, and specified its termination date. Acts Dec. 18, 1942, ch. 766, § 2, 56 Stat. 1058; Apr. 3, 1945, ch. 52, § 5, 59 Stat. 50, were subsequently repealed by Pub. L. 89-554, § 8(a), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 651, 652.

Section 662, acts Dec. 18, 1942, ch. 766, § 3, 56 Stat. 1058; Mar. 28, 1947, ch. 23, 61 Stat. 24, related to jurisdiction of Commission and to presentation of claims.

Section 663, acts Dec. 18, 1942, ch. 766, § 4, 56 Stat. 1059; Apr. 3, 1945, ch. 52, §§ 4, 7, 59 Stat. 49, 50, related to authority of Commission to examine and render final decisions in those cases where claims were appraised by prior commissions.

Section 664, acts Dec. 18, 1942, ch. 766, § 5, 56 Stat. 1060; Apr. 3, 1945, ch. 52, § 1, 2, 59 Stat. 49, related to determination of claims.

Section 665, act Dec. 18, 1942, ch. 766, § 6, 56 Stat. 1061, related to determinations made by prior commissions, and to certification by the Secretary of State.

Section 666, act Dec. 18, 1942, ch. 766, § 7, 56 Stat. 1061, provided for conversion of appraisals from Mexican to American currency, and for interest on award or appraisal.

Section 667, acts Dec. 18, 1942, ch. 766, § 8, 56 Stat. 1061; Apr. 3, 1945, ch. 52, §§ 3, 6, 59 Stat. 49, 50, created Mexican Claims Fund, provided for appropriations to Fund, and for manner of payments from such Fund.

Section 668, act Dec. 18, 1942, ch. 766, § 9, 56 Stat. 1062, provided for payment of awards.

Section 669, act Dec. 18, 1942, ch. 766, § 10, 56 Stat. 1062, authorized appropriations for Commission to carry out its functions, and provided for deductions from award or appraisal as reimbursement for expenses incurred by United States.

Section 670, act Dec. 18, 1942, ch. 766, § 11(a), 56 Stat. 1063, related to distribution of awards by Special Mexican Claims Commission pursuant to Convention signed Apr. 24, 1943.

Section 671, act Dec. 18, 1942, ch. 766, § 12, 56 Stat. 1063, related to claims based on international arbitral awards prior to Convention of 1923.

Section 672, act Dec. 18, 1942, ch. 766, § 13, 56 Stat. 1063, defined terms used in sections 661 to 671 of this title.

## CHAPTER 13—SERVICE COURTS OF FRIENDLY FOREIGN FORCES

#### Sec.

701. Definitions.

702. Arrest of offenders.

703. Attendance of witnesses.

(a) Subpoena; contempt; fees.

|      |  |
|------|--|
| Sec. | (b) Members of armed forces.<br>(c) False testimony; punishment. |
| 704. | Immunities of courts and witnesses.                              |
| 705. | Imprisonment.  |
| 706. | Operative effect dependent upon Presidential finding.            |

### § 701. Definitions

As used in this chapter, unless the context clearly requires a different meaning—

(a) “Friendly foreign force” means any military, naval, or air force of any friendly foreign state with respect to which this chapter is operative by virtue of a Presidential declaration as provided in section 706 of this title.

(b) “Service court” means any military, naval, or air force court, or court martial or similar tribunal of any friendly foreign force within the United States.

(c) “United States” means the United States, its Territories, its insular possessions, the Canal Zone, and any other place subject to the jurisdiction of the United States.

(June 30, 1944, ch. 326, §1, 58 Stat. 643; Proc. No. 2695, July 4, 1946, 11 F.R. 7517, 60 Stat. 1352.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

For definition of Canal Zone, referred to in subsec. (c), see section 3602(b) of this title.

#### CODIFICATION

The phrase “(including the Philippine Islands)” omitted from the definition of the term “United States” in subsection (b), pursuant to 1946 Proc. No. 2695, which granted independence to the Philippine Islands under the authority of section 1394 of this title, under which section Proc. No. 2695 is set out as a note.

### § 702. Arrest of offenders

Upon a specific or general request of the officer commanding any friendly foreign force, having service courts of appropriate jurisdiction within the United States, it shall be lawful for any person in the civil, military, or naval establishments of the United States having authority to arrest, summarily to arrest any member of such force designated in such request and to deliver him to the custody of any officer of such force or to the custody of the military or naval authorities of the United States who shall deliver him forthwith to the custody of an officer of such force, for trial in such service courts within the United States for such offenses as shall lie within the jurisdiction of the service courts of such friendly foreign force: *Provided*, That the trial of any member of such friendly foreign force for an offense against a member of the civilian population shall be in open court (except where security consideration forbids), shall take place promptly in the United States and within a reasonable distance from the place where the offense is alleged to have been committed, for the convenience of witnesses.

(June 30, 1944, ch. 326, §2, 58 Stat. 643.)

### § 703. Attendance of witnesses

#### (a) Subpoena; contempt; fees

Any district court of the United States, or the United States courts of any Territory or possession, within the jurisdiction of which proceed-

ings are had before any service court of a friendly foreign force, or within the jurisdiction of which any person is found, shall have jurisdiction, upon application made by a service court of a friendly foreign force, to issue to such person an order requiring him to appear before the service court or an officer designated to take a deposition for use before such service court and there to produce evidence or give testimony if so ordered. Any failure to obey such order of the court may be punished by said court as a contempt thereof: *Provided*, That the fees of such witnesses and the mileage at the rate allowed to witnesses attending the courts of the United States should be duly paid or tendered in advance to such witnesses, with funds to be supplied by the friendly foreign force. Except as expressly permitted by the court, in its discretion, no such order shall run into any other district.

#### (b) Members of armed forces

Attendance of witnesses in the armed services of the United States shall be obtained by request addressed to the discretion of the commanding officer of the person whose testimony is required.

#### (c) False testimony; punishment

Persons subject to the jurisdiction of the United States, who are not members of a friendly foreign force, who shall give false testimony or shall commit any act in the presence of a service court of a friendly foreign force which, if committed before a court of the United States, would be in contempt thereof, shall upon conviction by a court of the United States be fined not more than \$2,000 or imprisoned for not more than six months, or both.

(June 30, 1944, ch. 326, §3, 58 Stat. 644; Proc. No. 2695, July 4, 1946, 11 F.R. 7517, 60 Stat. 1352.)

#### CODIFICATION

In subsec. (a), reference to “or any court of first instance of the Philippine Commonwealth” omitted pursuant to Proc. No. 2695, which granted independence to the Philippines under the authority of section 1394 of this title, under which section said Proc. No. 2695 is set out as a note.

In subsec. (a), reference to “the District Court of the United States for the District of Columbia” omitted because the District of Columbia constitutes a judicial district, and the District Court of the United States for the District of Columbia is included within the term “district courts of the United States” as used in such subsection. See sections 88 and 132 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

### § 704. Immunities of courts and witnesses

Members of any service court of a friendly foreign force lawfully exercising jurisdiction in the United States in relation to members of such force, and any witnesses appearing before such service court, shall enjoy the same immunities and privileges as are enjoyed by members of a court martial of the United States and by witnesses appearing before such a court martial.

(June 30, 1944, ch. 326, §4, 58 Stat. 644.)

### § 705. Imprisonment

Persons sentenced to imprisonment by a service court of a friendly foreign force may be confined in disciplinary barracks, guardhouses, or

other places of detention of the United States armed forces or in penitentiaries or other institutions employed by the United States for the detention or treatment of prisoners, at the expense of the state on whose behalf the prisoner is detained.

(June 30, 1944, ch. 326, § 5, 58 Stat. 644.)

§ 706. Operative effect dependent upon Presidential finding

This chapter shall be operative with respect to the military, naval, or air forces of any foreign state only after a finding and declaration by the President that the powers and privileges provided herein are necessary for the maintenance of discipline. The President may at any time revoke such finding and declaration.

(June 30, 1944, ch. 326, § 6, 58 Stat. 645.)

PROCLAMATION NO. 2626

Proc. No. 2626, Oct. 12, 1944, 9 F.R. 12403, respecting activation by President, was revoked by Proc. No. 3107, Aug. 9, 1955, 20 F.R. 5805.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 701 of this title.

CHAPTER 14—FOREIGN SERVICE

REPEAL OF CHAPTER

Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159, repealed the Foreign Service Act of 1946 and related and miscellaneous provisions classified to this chapter. Pursuant to section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as a note under section 3901 of this title, Pub. L. 96-465 is effective, except as otherwise provided, on Feb. 15, 1981. Notwithstanding repeal, however, of the provisions of this chapter, section 4172 of this title continues in force and effect the Foreign Service Act of 1946 and any other law repealed, modified, or affected by Pub. L. 96-465 for the purposes enumerated in such section 4172.

REVISION OF LAWS

Congress by the enactment of the Foreign Service Act of 1980, Pub. L. 96-465, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2071, classified principally to chapter 52 (§ 3901 et seq.) of this title, consolidated and revised the laws relating to the administration, etc., of the Foreign Service.

Prior to the enactment of the Foreign Service Act of 1980, the Foreign Service Act of 1946 and related and miscellaneous provisions, which governed the Foreign Service, were classified to this chapter. Some former provisions of this chapter, prior to the enactment of the Foreign Service Act of 1946, had similar and related provisions classified to former chapter 1 of this title as follows:

Table with 2 columns: Former Chapter 1 and Former Chapter 14. Lists various sections and their corresponding numbers in the new chapter.

Table with 2 columns: Former Chapter 1 and Former Chapter 14. Lists various sections and their corresponding numbers in the new chapter.

Provisions similar to those contained in the Foreign Service Act of 1946 and related and miscellaneous provisions formerly classified to this chapter are covered by various sections as follows:

Table with 2 columns: Former Chapter 14 and Present Title 22. Lists various sections and their corresponding numbers in the new title.



| Former Chapter 14 | Present Title 22 |
|-------------------|------------------|
| 882               | 3964, 4001       |
| 886               | 3981             |
| 887, 888          | Rep.             |
| 889               | 3968, 3970       |
| 890               | 3969             |
| 896               | 3972             |
| 900               | 3944             |
| 901               | 3942, 3982       |
| 901a, 902         | 3944             |
| 906               | 3945             |
| 907, 908          | 3952             |
| 909               | 3982 et seq.     |
| 910               | 3941             |
| 911               | 3942, 3946, 3947 |
| 912               | 3947             |
| 913               | 3941 et seq.     |
| 914               | 4053             |
| 915               | 3948             |
| 921               | Omitted          |
| 922               | 3941, 3943, 3949 |
| 923               | 3942 et seq.     |
| 924               | 3952             |
| 925               | Rep.             |
| 926               | Omitted          |
| 927               | 3948             |
| 928               | 3950             |
| 929               | 3943, 3946, 4043 |
| 930-932           | Omitted          |
| 936               | 3943, 3949       |
| 937               | 3982 et seq.     |
| 938               | 3952             |
| 939               | 3941             |
| 946               | 3943             |
| 947               | Omitted          |
| 951               | 3943             |
| 956, 957          | Rep.             |
| 961               | 3942, 3983, 3984 |
| 962               | 3984             |
| 963               | 3983, 3985       |
| 964               | 3983             |
| 965               | Omitted          |
| 966               | 3983, 3984, 4081 |
| 967               | Rep.             |
| 968               | 4022             |
| 981               | Omitted          |
| 986               | 4003             |
| 987               | 4004             |
| 991               | 4001             |
| 992               | 4001 et seq.     |
| 993               | 4002, 4005, 4006 |
| 994               | 4001             |
| 995               | 3966             |
| 996               | 4003             |
| 1001, 1002        | 4052             |
| 1003              | 4007, 4008       |
| 1004              | 4009, 4060       |
| 1005              | 4011             |
| 1006              | 4051             |
| 1007              | 4010             |
| 1008              | 4011             |
| 1009              | 4026             |
| 1016              | 4001             |
| 1017              | 3966             |
| 1021, 1022        | 4010             |
| 1026              | 3968, 4001       |
| 1027, 1028, 1031  | 4012             |
| 1036              | 3929             |
| 1037              | 4131 et seq.     |
| 1037a             | 4131-4138        |
| 1037b             | 4139             |
| 1037c             | 4140             |
| 1041              | 4021             |
| 1042-1045         | 4024             |
| 1046              | 2697             |
| 1047              | 4024             |
| 1048              | 4024, 4025       |
| 1061-1064         | 4041-4044        |
| 1065              | 4067             |
| 1071              | 4045             |
| 1076              | 4046             |
| 1076a             | 4047             |
| 1077-1079s        | Omitted          |
| 1081              | 4048             |
| 1082              | 4049             |
| 1083              | Rep.             |
| 1084              | 4050             |
| 1086              | 4044, 4055       |
| 1091              | 4056             |
| 1092              | Rep.             |
| 1093              | 4057             |
| 1094              | Rep.             |
| 1095              | Omitted          |
| 1101              | 4058             |
| 1102              | Rep.             |
| 1103-1106         | 4059-4062        |
| 1111              | 4063             |
| 1112              | 4064             |
| 1116              | 4065             |
| 1121              | 4066             |
| 1131              | 2704, 4085       |
| 1132, 1133        | Rep.             |
| 1136              | 4081             |
| 1137              | 4082             |
| 1138              | 4081             |

| Former Chapter 14 | Present Title 22 |
|-------------------|------------------|
| 1138a             | 2700             |
| 1139              | 2703             |
| 1140, 1146, 1147  | Rep.             |
| 1148              | 4083             |
| 1149              | 4083             |
| 1150, 1151        | Omitted          |
| 1156              | 4084             |
| 1157              | 4081             |
| 1158-1160         | 4084             |
| 1171-1195         | 4191-4215        |
| 1196              | Rep.             |
| 1197              | 4216             |
| 1198              | 4217             |
| 1199              | Rep.             |
| 1200-1204         | 4218-4222        |

## SUBCHAPTER I—GENERAL PROVISIONS

**§ 801. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title I, §111, 60 Stat. 999, set forth Congressional declaration of objectives for this chapter.

The following provisions of the Foreign Service Act of 1946 (approved Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, 60 Stat. 999), which had been set out as notes under this section, were repealed by Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159:

Title I, §101, 60 Stat. 999, which provided that titles I through X of act Aug. 13, 1946, which enacted this chapter and amended section 681 of former Title 5, Executive Departments and Government Officers and Employees, be cited as the "Foreign Service Act of 1946".

Title X, §1061, 60 Stat. 1032, which provided that chapter be construed liberally.

Title X, §1062, 60 Stat. 1033, which provided that if any provision of this chapter or the application of any such provision to any person or circumstance be held invalid, the validity of the remainder of the chapter or the application thereof not be affected.

Title X, §1063, 60 Stat. 1033, which provided that the title, part, and section headings of this chapter were inserted for convenience and, in the case of conflict between such headings and substance of the titles, parts, or sections, the heading be disregarded.

Title X, §1064, 60 Stat. 1033, which provided that nothing in this chapter be construed to affect provisions of act July 3, 1946, ch. 359, §§1-4, 60 Stat. 426, formerly set out as a note under section 906 of this title, and that "classified grades" under that Act be construed to mean classes 1 to 5, inclusive.

Title X, §1071, 60 Stat. 1033, which authorized appropriations to carry out the purposes of this chapter.

Title XI, §1122, 60 Stat. 1035, which provided that funds appropriated to Department of State for fiscal year 1947, under the caption "Foreign Service", be available for purposes of this chapter and authorized additional appropriations as required to carry out this chapter.

Title XI, §1132, 60 Stat. 1040, which provided that any section not expressly repealed by this chapter but which is inconsistent with any provisions of this chapter shall be considered as having been amended or superseded by this chapter.

Title XI, §1133, 60 Stat. 1040, which provided that repeal of sections by this chapter should not in any way affect acts done or rights accruing or accrued, or any suits or proceedings had or commenced in any civil case, prior to such repeal, but that all rights and liabilities should continue as if such repeal had not been made.

Title XI, §1134, 60 Stat. 1040, which provided that repeal of any section by this chapter shall not be construed as a revival, up to effective date of this chapter, of any section which may have been previously repealed by implication.

Title XI, §1135, 60 Stat. 1040, which provided that notwithstanding provisions of this chapter, existing rules, regulations, and Executive orders remain in effect until revoked or modified, unless clearly inconsistent with the provisions of this chapter.

Title XI, §1141, 60 Stat. 1040, which provided that this chapter be effective three months following Aug. 13, 1946.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

## SHORT TITLE OF 1965 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 89-308, §1, Oct. 31, 1965, 79 Stat. 1129, which provided that Pub. L. 89-308 be cited as the "Foreign Service Annuity Adjustment Act of 1965", was repealed by Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2205(16) Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2160.

**§§ 802 to 807. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section 802, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title I, §121, 60 Stat. 1000; Oct. 7, 1978, Pub. L. 95-426, title I, §116, 92 Stat. 969, set forth definitions applicable to provisions of this chapter.

Section 803, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title X, §1001, 60 Stat. 1030, related to prohibition on wearing of uniforms.

Section 804, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title X, §1002, 60 Stat. 1030; Oct. 15, 1966, Pub. L. 89-673, §8(3), 80 Stat. 953, related to acceptance of gifts by chief of mission or other principal officer.

Section 805, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title X, §1003, 60 Stat. 1030, related to prohibition on engaging in business abroad.

Section 806, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title X, §1004, 60 Stat. 1030, related to prohibition on personal correspondence on affairs of foreign governments.

Section 807, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title X, §1005, 60 Stat. 1030, related to prohibition on political, racial, religious, or color discrimination.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

**§ 808. Repealed. Pub. L. 92-310, title II, § 227(c), June 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 207**

Section, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title X, §1011, 60 Stat. 1030, related to bonds of officers and employees.

## IMPAIRMENT OF EXISTING BONDS

Act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title XI, §1121, 60 Stat. 1035, which related to impairment of existing bonds by enactment of this chapter, was repealed by Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159.

**§§ 809, 810. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section 809, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title X, §1021, 60 Stat. 1031; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, §48, 74 Stat. 847, set forth provisions respecting acceptance of gifts on behalf of United States.

Section 810, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title X, §1031, 60 Stat. 1032, authorized Secretary to retain attorneys.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

**§ 811. Repealed. May 26, 1949, ch. 143, § 5, 63 Stat. 111**

Section, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title X, §1041, 60 Stat. 1032, related to delegation of authority by Secretary and Director General.

**§ 811a. Repealed. Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 162(a), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 405**

Section, act May 26, 1949, ch. 143, §3, 63 Stat. 111, related to administration of Foreign Service by Secretary of State and to delegation of authority to Secretary of State, with respect to such administration. See section 3921 et seq. of this title.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal applicable with respect to officials, offices, and bureaus of Department of State when executive orders, regulations, or departmental directives implementing the amendments by sections 161 and 162 of Pub. L. 103-236 become effective, or 90 days after Apr. 30, 1994, whichever comes earlier, see section 161(b) of Pub. L. 103-236, as amended, set out as an Effective Date of 1994 Amendment note under section 2651a of this title.

**§§ 812 to 814. Transferred**

## CODIFICATION

Section 812, acts May 24, 1924, ch. 182, §18, formerly §11, 43 Stat. 142; renumbered §18 and amended Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, §7, 46 Stat. 1209, which related to fees, accounting, and stamps, was transferred to section 4224 of this title.

Section 813, act May 24, 1924, ch. 182, §35, as added Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, §7, 46 Stat. 1216 and amended, which related to establishment of fiscal districts and district accounting and disbursing offices, was transferred to section 4225 of this title.

Section 814, act May 24, 1924, ch. 182, §36, as added Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, §7, 46 Stat. 1216, which related to disposition of fees and official monies from diplomatic missions, consular offices and district accounting and disbursing offices, was transferred to section 4226 of this title.

**§ 815. Repealed. June 25, 1948, ch. 645, § 21, 62 Stat. 862, eff. Sept. 1, 1948**

Section, act June 10, 1933, ch. 57, 48 Stat. 122, related to protection of diplomatic codes. See section 952 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

**§§ 816, 817. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section 816, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title X, §1081, as added Dec. 16, 1963, Pub. L. 88-205, pt. IV, §404(d), 77 Stat. 391, related to educational facilities for children of employees.

Section 817, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title X, §1091, as added July 12, 1976, Pub. L. 94-350, title I, §119, 90 Stat. 827, related to malpractice protection.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

**SUBCHAPTER II—GOVERNING BODIES OF THE SERVICES**

## PART A—OFFICERS

**§ 821. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title II, §201, 60 Stat. 1000, set forth provisions relating to appointment and duties of Director General.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

**§ 822. Repealed. May 26, 1949, ch. 143, § 5, 63 Stat. 111**

Section, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title II, § 202, 60 Stat. 1000, related to Deputy Director General.

## PART B—BOARDS

**§ 826. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title II, § 211, 60 Stat. 1001, related to composition and duties of Board of Foreign Service.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

## EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 10522

Ex. Ord. No. 10522, Mar. 26, 1954, 19 F.R. 1689, was transferred to a note set out under section 3922 of this title.

## EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 11264

Ex. Ord. No. 11264, Dec. 31, 1965, 31 F.R. 67, as amended, was transferred to a note set out under section 3930 of this title.

**§ 827. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title II, § 212, 60 Stat. 1001, related to duties and composition of Board of Examiners for Foreign Service.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

## SUBCHAPTER III—DUTIES OF OFFICERS AND EMPLOYEES

## PART A—GENERAL

**§§ 841 to 843. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section 841, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title III, § 301, 60 Stat. 1001, related to compliance with laws, international agreements, and executive orders.

Section 842, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title III, § 302, 60 Stat. 1001, authorized Secretary, where not inconsistent with authority of President, to govern duties by regulations.

Section 843, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title III, § 303, 60 Stat. 1002, authorized President to delegate to Secretary authority to prescribe regulations.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

## PART B—SPECIAL

**§ 846. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title III, § 311, 60 Stat. 1002, related to performance of service for government agencies and departments by officers and employees.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

## SUBCHAPTER IV—PERSONNEL CATEGORIES AND SALARIES

## PART A—CATEGORIES OF PERSONNEL

**§ 861. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title IV, § 401, 60 Stat. 1002, related to categories of officers and employees.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

## PART B—SALARIES

**§§ 866, 867. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section 866, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title IV, § 411, 60 Stat. 1002; July 28, 1956, ch. 770, § 2, 70 Stat. 704; Aug. 14, 1964, Pub. L. 88-426, title III, § 306(b), 78 Stat. 428, related to chiefs of missions.

Section 867, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title IV, § 412, 60 Stat. 1003; July 6, 1949, ch. 300, § 1(a), 63 Stat. 407; Aug. 5, 1955, ch. 576, § 4, 69 Stat. 537; July 28, 1956, ch. 770, § 3, 70 Stat. 704; June 20, 1958, Pub. L. 85-462, § 6(a)(1), (2), 72 Stat. 211; July 1, 1960, Pub. L. 86-568, title I, § 113(a), (b), 74 Stat. 299; Oct. 11, 1962, Pub. L. 87-793, § 902, 76 Stat. 861; Aug. 14, 1964, Pub. L. 88-426, title I, § 119, 78 Stat. 411; Oct. 29, 1965, Pub. L. 89-301, § 8(a), 79 Stat. 1118; July 18, 1966, Pub. L. 89-504, title I, § 106(a), 80 Stat. 292; Dec. 16, 1967, Pub. L. 90-206, title II, § 209(a), 81 Stat. 632; Ex. Ord. No. 11413, June 11, 1968, 33 F.R. 8641; Ex. Ord. No. 11474, June 16, 1969, 34 F.R. 9605; Ex. Ord. No. 11524, Apr. 15, 1970, 35 F.R. 6547; Ex. Ord. No. 11576, Jan. 8, 1971, 36 F.R. 347; Ex. Ord. No. 11637, Dec. 22, 1971, 36 F.R. 24911; Ex. Ord. No. 11691, Dec. 15, 1972, 37 F.R. 27607; Ex. Ord. No. 11739, Oct. 3, 1973, 38 F.R. 27581; Ex. Ord. No. 11811, Oct. 7, 1974, 39 F.R. 3602; Ex. Ord. No. 11883, Oct. 6, 1975, 40 F.R. 47091; Ex. Ord. No. 11941, Oct. 1, 1976, 41 F.R. 43889; Ex. Ord. No. 12010, Sept. 28, 1977, 42 F.R. 52365; Ex. Ord. No. 12087, Oct. 7, 1978, 43 F.R. 46823; Ex. Ord. No. 12165, Oct. 9, 1979, 44 F.R. 58671; Ex. Ord. No. 12200, Mar. 12, 1980, 45 F.R. 16443; Ex. Ord. No. 12248, Oct. 16, 1980, 45 F.R. 69199, related to classes of officers and table respecting per annum salary.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

## INCREASE IN RATE OF PER ANNUM SALARY OF FOREIGN SERVICE OFFICERS

Pub. L. 95-105, title IV, § 412(b), Aug. 17, 1977, 91 Stat. 856, increasing the amount of each rate of per annum salary in classes 5 through 8 of Foreign Service Officers, in the table contained in section 867, by \$250, was repealed by Pub. L. 95-426, title IV, § 410, Oct. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 980.

**§§ 868 to 873. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section 868, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title IV, § 413, 60 Stat. 1003; Aug. 31, 1954, ch. 1177, 68 Stat. 1051; Apr. 5, 1955, ch. 23, § 2, 69 Stat. 24, related to appointive salaries.

Section 869, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title IV, § 414, 60 Stat. 1003; July 28, 1956, ch. 770, § 4, 70 Stat. 704, related to classes and rate of salaries of Reserve officers.

Section 870, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title IV, § 415, 60 Stat. 1003; July 6, 1949, ch. 300, § 1(a), 63 Stat. 407; June 20, 1958, Pub. L. 85-462, § 6(a)(3), 72 Stat. 212; July 1, 1960, Pub. L. 86-568, title I, § 113(c), 74 Stat. 300; Oct.

11, 1962, Pub. L. 87-793, §903, 76 Stat. 862; Aug. 14, 1964, Pub. L. 88-426, title I, §120, 78 Stat. 411; Oct. 29, 1965, Pub. L. 89-301, §8(b), 79 Stat. 1118; July 18, 1966, Pub. L. 89-504, title I, §106(b), 80 Stat. 292; Dec. 16, 1967, Pub. L. 90-206, title II, §209(b), 81 Stat. 632; Ex. Ord. No. 11413, June 11, 1968, 33 F.R. 8641; Ex. Ord. No. 11474, June 16, 1969, 34 F.R. 9605; Ex. Ord. No. 11524, Apr. 15, 1970, 35 F.R. 6247; Ex. Ord. No. 11576, Jan. 8, 1971, 36 F.R. 347; Ex. Ord. No. 11637, Dec. 22, 1971, 36 F.R. 24911; Ex. Ord. No. 11691, Dec. 15, 1972, 37 F.R. 27607; Ex. Ord. No. 11739, Oct. 3, 1973, 38 F.R. 27581; Ex. Ord. No. 11811, Oct. 7, 1974, 39 F.R. 3602; Ex. Ord. No. 11883, Oct. 6, 1975, 40 F.R. 47091; Ex. Ord. No. 11941, Oct. 1, 1976, 41 F.R. 43889; Ex. Ord. No. 12010, Sept. 28, 1977, 42 F.R. 52365; Ex. Ord. No. 12087, Oct. 7, 1978, 43 F.R. 46823; Ex. Ord. No. 12165, Oct. 9, 1979, 44 F.R. 58671; Ex. Ord. No. 12200, Mar. 12, 1980, 45 F.R. 16443; Ex. Ord. No. 12248, Oct. 16, 1980, 45 F.R. 69199, related to classes of staff officers and employees, and employees recruited abroad, and table relating to per annum salaries.

Section 871, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title IV, §416, 60 Stat. 1004; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, §2, 74 Stat. 831, related to appointive salaries of staff officers.

Section 872, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title IV, §417, 60 Stat. 1004; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, §3, 74 Stat. 731, related to salary and compensation of alien clerks.

Section 873, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title IV, §418, 60 Stat. 1004, related to salary or compensation of consular agents.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

#### PART C—SALARIES OF OFFICERS TEMPORARILY IN CHARGE

### §§ 876, 877. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159

Section 876, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title IV, §421, 60 Stat. 1004, related to salaries of chargés d'affaires ad interim.

Section 877, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title IV, §422, 60 Stat. 1004, related to salaries of officers in charge of consulate general or consulates.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

#### PART D—TIME OF RECEIVING SALARY

### §§ 881, 882. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159

Section 881, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title IV, §431, 60 Stat. 1004; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, §4, 74 Stat. 831; Aug. 17, 1977, Pub. L. 95-105, title IV, §401, 91 Stat. 852, related to eligibility period, etc., for receipt of salary by chiefs of missions.

Section 882, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title IV, §432, 60 Stat. 1005; Apr. 5, 1955, ch. 23, §13(1), 69 Stat. 27, related to eligibility period, etc., for receipt of salary by officers and employees.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

#### PART E—CLASSIFICATION OF POSITIONS

### § 886. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159

Section, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title IV, §441, 60 Stat. 1005; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, §5, 74 Stat. 831,

related to classification of positions in Service and in Department.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

#### RULES GOVERNING SALARY DETERMINATIONS FOR INITIAL CLASSIFICATION

Act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title XI, §1105, 60 Stat. 1034, which related to applicability of rules for salary determinations for initial classification, was repealed by Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159.

### § 887. Repealed. Pub. L. 86-723, § 52(1), Sept. 8, 1960, 74 Stat. 847

Section, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title IV, §442, 60 Stat. 1006, provided for establishment of new group of positions, known as subclasses, for officers and employees.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective the first day of first pay period which begins more than thirty days after Sept. 8, 1960, see section 56(a) of Pub. L. 86-723.

### § 888. Repealed. Pub. L. 86-707, title V, § 511(a)(1), Sept. 6, 1960, 74 Stat. 800

Section, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title IV, §443, 60 Stat. 1006; Apr. 5, 1955, ch. 23, §3, 69 Stat. 24, related to salary differentials for Foreign Service officers, Reserve officers, and staff officers. See section 5921 et seq. of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

### § 889. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159

Section, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title IV, §444, 60 Stat. 1006; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, §6, 74 Stat. 831; July 12, 1976, Pub. L. 94-350, title I, §112, 90 Stat. 826; Aug. 17, 1977, Pub. L. 95-105, title IV, §402(a), (b)(1), 91 Stat. 852; Oct. 7, 1978, Pub. L. 95-426, title IV, §§401(b), 412(a), 92 Stat. 977, 981; Aug. 15, 1979, Pub. L. 96-60, title I, §107(b), 93 Stat. 397, related to compensation plans and annuity increases for alien employees and family members of personnel abroad.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

#### EMPLOYMENT OF FAMILY MEMBERS OVERSEAS

Pub. L. 95-426, title IV, §401(a), Oct. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 977, which related to employment of family members overseas, was repealed by Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2205(2), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2160. See section 3951 of this title.

#### REPORT TO CONGRESS ON EMPLOYMENT OF FAMILY MEMBERS OF GOVERNMENT PERSONNEL OVERSEAS

Pub. L. 95-426, title IV, §401(c), Oct. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 978, which related to report by Secretary of State respecting overseas employment of family members of Government personnel, was repealed by Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2205(2), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2160.

### § 890. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159

Section, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title IV, §445, 60 Stat. 1006, related to salaries and classification of positions of consular agents.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

## PART F—ADDITIONAL COMPENSATION

**§ 896. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title IV, § 451, as added Oct. 7, 1978, Pub. L. 95-426, title IV, § 402(a), 92 Stat. 978, related to special allowances to Foreign Service officers.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

## SUBCHAPTER V—APPOINTMENTS AND ASSIGNMENTS

## PART A—PRINCIPAL DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

**§§ 900, 901. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section 900, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title V, § 500, as added Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, § 7, 74 Stat. 832, set forth Congressional declaration of policy on qualifications for assignment of chiefs of missions and Foreign Service officers.

Section 901, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title V, § 501, 60 Stat. 1007; Aug. 5, 1955, ch. 576, § 5, 69 Stat. 537; July 13, 1972, Pub. L. 92-352, title I, § 107, 86 Stat. 492; Aug. 17, 1977, Pub. L. 95-105, title IV, § 403, 91 Stat. 853, related to appointment and assignment of ambassadors, ministers, etc., by President.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

## EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 10608

Ex. Ord. No. 10608, May 5, 1955, 20 F.R. 3093, was transferred to a note set out under section 3942 of this title.

**§ 901a. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(5), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2160**

Section, Pub. L. 93-126, § 6, Oct. 18, 1973, 87 Stat. 452; Pub. L. 93-475, § 4(a), Oct. 26, 1974, 88 Stat. 1440; Pub. L. 96-187, title I, § 112(e)(2), Jan. 8, 1980, 93 Stat. 1366, related to campaign contribution report by nominees for ambassador or minister.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

**§ 902. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title V, § 502, 60 Stat. 1007; Aug. 5, 1955, ch. 576, § 6, 69 Stat. 537, related to lists of officers qualified to be career ambassadors, etc., furnished to President.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

## PART B—FOREIGN SERVICE OFFICERS

**§ 906. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title V, § 511, 60 Stat. 1007, related to appointment by President to a class in Foreign Service.

## APPOINTMENT OF ADDITIONAL FOREIGN SERVICE OFFICERS; TERMINATION DATE

Act July 3, 1946, ch. 539, §§ 1-4, 60 Stat. 426, which provided for appointment of 250 additional Foreign Service officers within 2 years after July 3, 1946, was repealed by Pub. L. 89-554, § 8(a), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 653.

**§§ 907 to 911. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section 907, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title V, § 512, 60 Stat. 1007, related to commission of Foreign Service officers.

Section 908, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title V, § 513, 60 Stat. 1007, authorized Secretary to define limits of consular districts.

Section 909, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title V, § 514, 60 Stat. 1008, related to assignment and transfers.

Section 910, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title V, § 515, 60 Stat. 1008; Aug. 17, 1977, Pub. L. 95-105, title IV, § 404, 91 Stat. 853, related to citizenship requirements of Foreign Service officers.

Section 911, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title V, § 516, 60 Stat. 1008; July 28, 1956, ch. 770, § 5, 70 Stat. 704; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, § 8, 74 Stat. 832; Aug. 17, 1977, Pub. L. 95-105, title IV, § 405, 91 Stat. 853, related to admissions to class 6, 7, or 8 for Foreign Service officers.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

**§ 912. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title V, § 517, 60 Stat. 1008; Apr. 5, 1955, ch. 23, § 4, 69 Stat. 25; July 28, 1956, ch. 770, § 6, 70 Stat. 704; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, § 9, 74 Stat. 832, related to admission to classes 1 to 7 for Foreign Service officers.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

## TRANSFER OF OFFICERS FROM OLD TO NEW CLASSES

Act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title XI, § 1102, 60 Stat. 1033, which related to transfer of officers from old class to new class, was repealed by Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159.

## IN CLASS PROMOTIONS

Act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title XI, § 1104, 60 Stat. 1034, which related to in class promotions, was repealed by Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159.

**§ 913. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title V, § 518, 60 Stat. 1008; Aug. 5, 1955, ch. 576, § 7, 69 Stat. 537, related to admission to class of career ambassador or career minister.

## REINSTATEMENT OF CHIEFS OF MISSIONS

Act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 959, title XI, § 1101, 60 Stat. 1033, which related to reinstatement of chiefs of missions, was repealed by Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1979, 94 Stat. 2159.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

**§§ 914, 915. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section 914, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title V, § 519, 60 Stat. 1008; Aug. 17, 1977, Pub. L. 95-105, title IV, § 406, 91 Stat. 854, related to reassignment to Foreign Service of former ambassadors or ministers.

Section 915, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title V, § 520, 60 Stat. 1009; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, § 10, 74 Stat. 832; Sept. 6, 1966, Pub. L. 89-554, § 8(a), 80 Stat. 661; July 12, 1976, Pub. L. 94-350, title V, § 517, 90 Stat. 845, related to reappointment or recall of Foreign Service officers or employees.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

PART C—FOREIGN SERVICE RESERVE OFFICERS

**§§ 921 to 924. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section 921, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title V, § 521, 60 Stat. 1009, related to establishment of Foreign Service Reserve.

Section 922, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title V, § 522, 60 Stat. 1009; Apr. 5, 1955, ch. 23, § 5, 69 Stat. 25; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. VII, § 701(b), 73 Stat. 257; Aug. 20, 1968, Pub. L. 90-494, § 18, 82 Stat. 814; Aug. 17, 1977, Pub. L. 95-105, title IV, § 407, 91 Stat. 854; Oct. 7, 1978, Pub. L. 95-426, title II, § 204(b)(6), 92 Stat. 974, related to appointments and assignments to Reserve.

Section 923, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title V, § 523, 60 Stat. 1009, related to appointment and assignment to a class.

Section 924, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title V, § 524, 60 Stat. 1009, related to commissions for Reserve officers.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

**§ 925. Repealed. Pub. L. 86-723, § 52(2), Sept. 8, 1960, 74 Stat. 847**

Section, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title V, § 525, 60 Stat. 1010, authorized Secretary to define active duty period of Reserve officers.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal by Pub. L. 86-723 effective first day of first pay period which begins more than thirty days after Sept. 8, 1960, see section 56(a) of Pub. L. 86-723.

**§§ 926 to 928. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section 926, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title V, § 526, 60 Stat. 1010, related to benefits of Reserve officers.

Section 927, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title V, § 527, 60 Stat. 1010, related to reappointment or reassignment of Reserve officers.

Section 928, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title V, § 528, 60 Stat. 1010; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, § 11, 74 Stat. 833, related to reinstatement of Reserve officers.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

**§§ 929 to 932. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(6), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2160**

Section 929, Pub. L. 90-464, § 15, Aug. 20, 1968, 82 Stat. 813, related to limitation on tenure and extension of appointment for Reserve officers.

Section 930, Pub. L. 90-494, § 16, Aug. 20, 1968, 82 Stat. 814, related to retirement and tenure for Reserve officers.

Section 931, Pub. L. 90-464, § 17, Aug. 20, 1968, 82 Stat. 814, related to unlimited tenure for Foreign Service Reserve officers.

Section 932, Pub. L. 90-464, § 19, Aug. 20, 1968, 82 Stat. 814, provided that sections 929 to 931 of this title not apply to officers and employees of the Agency for International Development, the Peace Corps, and the Arms Control and Disarmament Agency.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

PART D—FOREIGN SERVICE STAFF OFFICERS AND EMPLOYEES

**§ 936. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title V, § 531, 60 Stat. 1010; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, § 12, 74 Stat. 833, related to appointments for Foreign Service staff officers and employees.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

TRANSFER OF PERSONNEL FROM OLD TO NEW CLASSES

Act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title XI, § 1103, 60 Stat. 1034, which set forth provisions respecting transfer of personnel from old class to new class, was repealed by Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159.

**§§ 937 to 939. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section 937, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title V, § 532, 60 Stat. 1010; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, § 13, 74 Stat. 833, related to assignments and transfers of Foreign Service staff officers and employees.

Section 938, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title V, § 533, 60 Stat. 1010, related to commission as consul or vice consul.

Section 939, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title V, § 534, 60 Stat. 1011, related to citizenship requirements of staff officers or employees.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

PART E—ALIEN CLERKS AND EMPLOYEES

**§§ 946, 947. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section 946, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title V, § 541, 60 Stat. 1011, related to appointment of alien clerks and employees.

Section 947, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title V, § 542, 60 Stat. 1011, related to assignments and transfers of alien clerks and employees.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

PART F—CONSULAR AGENTS

**§ 951. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title V, § 551, 60 Stat. 1011, related to appointment of consular agents.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

PART G—ASSIGNMENT OF PERSONNEL BY THE  
ARMY AND NAVY DEPARTMENTS**§§ 956, 957. Repealed. Aug. 10, 1956, ch. 1041, § 53,  
70A Stat. 641**

Section 956, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title V, § 561, 60 Stat. 1011, related to detail of military and naval personnel as inspectors or supervisors of buildings, or as couriers. See section 713 of Title 10, Armed Forces.

Section 957, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title V, § 562, 60 Stat. 1011, authorized the Secretary of the Navy to assign enlisted men of the Navy and Marine Corps to serve as custodians at an embassy, legation, or consulate. See section 5983 of Title 10, Armed Forces.

PART H—ASSIGNMENT OF FOREIGN SERVICE  
PERSONNEL**§§ 961 to 966. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II,  
§ 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section 961, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title V, § 571, 60 Stat. 1011; May 26, 1949, ch. 143, § 5, 63 Stat. 111; Apr. 5, 1955, ch. 23, § 6, 69 Stat. 25; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. V, § 502(h), 72 Stat. 273; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, § 14, 74 Stat. 833; Dec. 16, 1963, Pub. L. 88-205, pt. IV, § 404(a), 77 Stat. 391; Aug. 17, 1977, Pub. L. 95-105, title IV, § 408, 91 Stat. 854, set forth provisions relating to assignments of officers or employees to any government agency or international organization.

Section 962, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title V, § 572, 60 Stat. 1012, related to compulsory service in the United States.

Section 963, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title V, § 573, 60 Stat. 1012, related to assignment for consultation or instruction.

Section 964, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title V, § 574, 60 Stat. 1012, related to assignment to trade, labor, agricultural, scientific, or other conferences.

Section 965, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title V, § 575, 60 Stat. 1013; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, § 15, 74 Stat. 834, related to assignments to foreign governments of officers and employees.

Section 966, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title V, § 576, as added Oct. 26, 1974, Pub. L. 93-475, § 9(a), 88 Stat. 1440; amended Nov. 29, 1975, Pub. L. 94-141, title IV, § 401(a), 89 Stat. 763; Oct. 7, 1978, Pub. L. 95-426, title IV, § 403(a)(2)-(4), 92 Stat. 978, related to assignments to public or private nonprofit organizations and Members and officers of Congress.

A prior section 576 of act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title V, 60 Stat. 1013, which provided for assignments to international organizations, was repealed by Pub. L. 86-723, § 52(3), Sept. 8, 1960, 74 Stat. 847.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

**§ 967. Repealed. Pub. L. 86-723, § 52(4), Sept. 8,  
1960, 74 Stat. 847**

Section, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title V, § 577, 60 Stat. 1013, related to assignment or detail to United States as affecting personnel ceilings.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective on first day of first pay period which begins more than thirty days after Sept. 8, 1960, see section 56(a) of Pub. L. 86-723.

**§ 968. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1),  
Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title V, § 578, as added Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, § 16, 74 Stat. 834, related to foreign language knowledge as condition for assignment.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

SUBCHAPTER VI—PERSONNEL  
ADMINISTRATION

## PART A—GENERAL

**§ 981. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1),  
Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VI, § 601, 60 Stat. 1013, defined terms “efficiency record” and “efficiency report”.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

## PART B—EFFICIENCY RECORDS

**§§ 986, 987. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II,  
§ 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section 986, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VI, § 611, 60 Stat. 1013, related to responsibility of Director General for efficiency records.

Section 987, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VI, § 612, 60 Stat. 1014, related to availability of records.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

PART C—PROMOTION OF FOREIGN SERVICE  
OFFICERS AND RESERVE OFFICERS**§§ 991 to 996. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II,  
§ 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section 991, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VI, § 621, 60 Stat. 1014; Nov. 29, 1975, Pub. L. 94-141, title IV, § 402, 89 Stat. 764, related to promotion by selection of Foreign Service officers.

Section 992, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VI, § 622, 60 Stat. 1014, related to eligibility for promotion.

Section 993, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VI, § 623, 60 Stat. 1014; Oct. 18, 1973, Pub. L. 93-126, § 10, 87 Stat. 453, related to recommendations for promotion.

Section 994, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 956, title VI, § 624, 60 Stat. 1014, related to promotion of Reserve officers.

Section 995, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VI, § 625, 60 Stat. 1014; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, § 17, 74 Stat. 834; Nov. 29, 1975, Pub. L. 94-141, title IV, § 403, 89 Stat. 764, related to computation, etc., of within-class salary increases.

Section 996, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VI, § 626, as added Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, § 18, 74 Stat. 834, related to effect on promotion of functional and geographical area specialization.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

PART D—SEPARATION OF OFFICERS AND  
EMPLOYEES FROM THE SERVICE

**§ 1001. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1),  
Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VI, § 631, 60 Stat. 1015; Aug. 5, 1955, ch. 576, § 8, 69 Stat. 537; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, § 20, 74 Stat. 835; July 12, 1976, Pub. L. 94-350, title V, § 518, 90 Stat. 845, related to separation from service of career ambassadors.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 17, 1980, see section 2403(d)(1) of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

**§ 1002. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1),  
Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VI, § 632, 60 Stat. 1015; Aug. 5, 1955, ch. 576, § 9, 69 Stat. 537; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, § 21, 74 Stat. 835; July 12, 1976, Pub. L. 94-350, title V, § 519, 90 Stat. 846, related to separation from service of participants in the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System who are not career ambassadors.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 17, 1980, see section 2403(d)(1) of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

MANDATORY RETIREMENT

Act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title XI, § 1111, 60 Stat. 1034, which related to mandatory retirement of certain Foreign Service officers, was repealed by Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159.

**§§ 1003 to 1009. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II,  
§ 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section 1003, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VI, § 633, as added Apr. 5, 1955, ch. 23, § 7, 69 Stat. 25, related to selection-out process and regulations.

A prior section 633 of act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VI, 60 Stat. 1015, which provided that Secretary prescribe maximum period during which Foreign Service officers in classes 2 or 3 remain in force without promotion and for retirement from Service for any officer who did not receive a promotion within such period, was repealed by act Apr. 5, 1955, ch. 23, § 7, 69 Stat. 25.

Section 1004, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VI, § 634, as added Apr. 5, 1955, ch. 23, § 7, 69 Stat. 25; amended July 28, 1956, ch. 770, § 7, 70 Stat. 704; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, § 22, 74 Stat. 835; July 12, 1976, Pub. L. 94-350, title V, § 520, 90 Stat. 846, related to selection-out benefits.

A prior section 634 of act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VI, 60 Stat. 1015, which provided selection-out benefits to officers in classes 4 and 5 was repealed by act Apr. 5, 1955, ch. 23, § 7, 69 Stat. 25.

Section 1005, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VI, § 635, 60 Stat. 1016; July 28, 1956, ch. 770, § 8, 70 Stat. 704; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, § 23, 74 Stat. 836, related to status, etc., of officers in class 7 or 8.

Section 1006, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VI, § 636, 60 Stat. 1016; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, § 24, 74 Stat. 836, related to voluntary retirement.

Section 1007, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VI, § 637, 60 Stat. 1016; July 28, 1956, ch. 770, § 8, 70 Stat. 704; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, § 25(a), 74 Stat. 836; July 12, 1976, Pub. L. 94-350, title V, § 521, 90 Stat. 846, related to separation for cause of officers and employees.

Section 1008, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VI, § 638, 60 Stat. 1016; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, § 26, 74 Stat. 837, related to termination of limited appointments of Reserve officers, and staff officers and employees.

Section 1009, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VI, § 639, as added Oct. 7, 1978, Pub. L. 95-426, title IV, § 404, 92

Stat. 979, related to professional career counseling, advice, and placement assistance.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

PART E—PROMOTION OF STAFF OFFICERS AND  
EMPLOYEES

**§§ 1016, 1017. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II,  
§ 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section 1016, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VI, § 641, 60 Stat. 1017; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, § 27, 74 Stat. 837, related to class promotion of staff personnel.

Section 1017, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VI, § 642, 60 Stat. 1017; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, § 28, 74 Stat. 837; Oct. 11, 1962, Pub. L. 87-793, § 905, 76 Stat. 863, related to within-class salary increases for staff officers or employees.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

PART F—SEPARATION OF STAFF OFFICERS AND  
EMPLOYEES

**§§ 1021, 1022. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II,  
§ 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section 1021, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VI, § 651, 60 Stat. 1017, related to separation from service of staff officers and employees for unsatisfactory performance of duty.

Section 1022, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VI, § 652, 60 Stat. 1017, related to separation from service of staff officers and employees for misconduct or malfeasance.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

PART G—ALIEN CLERKS AND EMPLOYEES

**§§ 1026 to 1028. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II,  
§ 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section 1026, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VI, § 661, 60 Stat. 1017, related to promotion for alien clerks and employees.

Section 1027, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VI, § 662, 60 Stat. 1017, related to separation from service of alien clerks and employees for unsatisfactory performance of duty.

Section 1028, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VI, § 663, 60 Stat. 1017, related to separation from service of alien clerks and employees for misconduct or malfeasance.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

PART H—CONSULAR AGENTS

**§ 1031. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1),  
Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VI, § 671, 60 Stat. 1017, related to separation from service of consular agents.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.



## PART I—INSPECTIONS

**§ 1036. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VI, §681, 60 Stat. 1018, authorized detailing of officers for inspections, time of inspections, and powers of officers.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

## PART J—FOREIGN SERVICE GRIEVANCES

**§§ 1037 to 1037c. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section 1037, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VI, §691, as added Nov. 29, 1975, Pub. L. 94-141, title IV, §404(a), 89 Stat. 765, set forth Congressional statement of purposes with respect to grievances.

Section 1037a, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VI, §692, as added Nov. 29, 1975, Pub. L. 94-141, title IV, §404(a), 89 Stat. 765; amended 1977 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §§5, 7(a)(4), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1636, 1637, set forth provisions relating to consideration and resolution of grievances, promulgation of regulations for procedures, and applicable criteria.

Section 1037b, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VI, §693, as added Nov. 29, 1975, Pub. L. 94-141, title IV, §404(a), 89 Stat. 770, related to filing of grievances and election of remedies.

Section 1037c, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VI, §694, as added Nov. 29, 1975, Pub. L. 94-141, title IV, §404(a), 89 Stat. 770, related to judicial review of regulations and final actions.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

## SUBCHAPTER VII—THE FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE

**§§ 1041 to 1048. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section 1041, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VII, §701, 60 Stat. 1018; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, §29, 74 Stat. 837; Sept. 4, 1961, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. IV, §708(1), 75 Stat. 464, related to establishment, etc., of Foreign Service Institute.

Section 1042, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VII, §702, 60 Stat. 1018, related to appointment, salary, and duties of Director of Institute.

Section 1043, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VII, §703, 60 Stat. 1018, related to aid to nonprofit institutions.

Section 1044, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VII, §704, 60 Stat. 1018; Oct. 28, 1949, ch. 782, title XI, §1106(a), 63 Stat. 972; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, §30, 74 Stat. 837, set forth provisions relating to appointment or assignment of personnel to faculty or staff of Institute.

Section 1045, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VII, §705, 60 Stat. 1019, related to instruction and education at localities other than Institute.

Section 1046, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VII, §706, 60 Stat. 1019, related to endowments and gifts.

Section 1047, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VII, §707, 60 Stat. 1019, related to acquisition of real property.

Section 1048, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VII, §708, as added Oct. 7, 1978, Pub. L. 95-426, title IV, §405(a)(1), 92 Stat. 979, authorized Institute to provide orientation and language training for family members of Government personnel.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

## SUBCHAPTER VIII—RETIREMENT AND DISABILITY SYSTEM

## PART A—ESTABLISHMENT OF SYSTEM

**§§ 1061 to 1063. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section 1061, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VIII, §801, 60 Stat. 1019, authorized rules and regulations.

Section 1062, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VIII, §802, 60 Stat. 1020, related to maintenance of Foreign Service Retirement and Disability Fund.

Section 1063, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VIII, §803, 60 Stat. 1020; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, §31, 74 Stat. 838; July 12, 1976, Pub. L. 94-350, title V, §501, 90 Stat. 834; Oct. 7, 1978, Pub. L. 95-426, title II, §204(b)(7), 92 Stat. 974, related to criteria for participants for benefits in System.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

## CONVERSION TO FOREIGN SERVICE RETIREMENT SYSTEM

Pub. L. 94-350, title V, §522(a)-(c), July 12, 1976, 90 Stat. 846, which set forth provisions relating to conversion to Foreign Service Retirement System, was repealed by Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2205(4), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2160.

**§§ 1064, 1065. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section 1064, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VIII, §804, 60 Stat. 1020; Apr. 5, 1955, ch. 23, §13(2), 69 Stat. 27; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, §32, 74 Stat. 838; Feb. 28, 1970, Pub. L. 91-201, title I, §101, title II, §201, 84 Stat. 17, 18; July 12, 1976, Pub. L. 94-350, title V, §502, 90 Stat. 834; Ex. Ord. No. 11952, §2(a), Jan. 7, 1977, 42 F.R. 2293, 4809; Ex. Ord. No. 12145, §1-102, July 18, 1979, 44 F.R. 42653, defined terms applicable to System.

Section 1065, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VIII, §805, as added July 12, 1976, Pub. L. 94-350, title V, §503, 90 Stat. 835, authorized maintenance of existing areas of conformity between Civil Service and Foreign Service Retirement Systems.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

## PART B—CONTRIBUTIONS TO THE FUND

**§ 1071. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VIII, §811, 60 Stat. 1020; Aug. 5, 1955, ch. 576, §10, 69 Stat. 537; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, §33, 74 Stat. 839; Feb. 28, 1970, Pub. L. 91-201, title I, §102(a), 84 Stat. 17; July 12, 1976, Pub. L. 94-350, title V, §504, 90 Stat. 836; Aug. 17, 1977, Pub. L. 95-105, title IV, §409(a), 91 Stat. 854, Ex. Ord. No. 12145, §1-103, July 18, 1979, 44 F.R. 42653, related to rate of contributions to Fund.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

## PART C—COMPUTATION AND PAYMENT OF ANNUITIES

**§ 1076. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VIII, §821, 60 Stat. 1020; Aug. 5, 1955, ch. 576, §11, 69 Stat. 537; July 28,

1956, ch. 770, §9, 70 Stat. 705; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, §34, 74 Stat. 839; Oct. 31, 1965, Pub. L. 89-308, §9(1), 79 Stat. 1131; Feb. 28, 1970, Pub. L. 91-201, title II, §202, 84 Stat. 18; July 12, 1976, Pub. L. 94-350, title V, §505, 90 Stat. 837; Ex. Ord. No. 11952, §2(b)-(d), Jan. 7, 1977, 42 F.R. 2293, 4809; Aug. 17, 1977, Pub. L. 95-105, title IV, §409(b), 91 Stat. 854; Ex. Ord. No. 12145, §§1-104 to 1-110, July 18, 1979, 44 F.R. 42653, related to rate of annuity and commencement and termination of payments.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

## RECOMPUTATION OF ANNUITY RATES

Act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title XI, §1112, 60 Stat. 1035, which related to recomputation of annuity rates, was repealed by Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159.

## COMPUTATION OF ANNUITIES OF PARTICIPANTS RETIRING DURING THE PERIOD BEGINNING OCTOBER 1, 1978 AND ENDING DECEMBER 31, 1979

Pub. L. 95-426, title IV, §406, Oct. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 979, which provided that the annuity of any participant in the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System whose salary was or is limited by section 5308 of Title 5 and who retired during the period beginning Oct. 1, 1978 and ending Dec. 31, 1979, would be equal to 2 per centum of his or her basic salary for the highest year of service for which contributions had been made to the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability Fund multiplied by the number of years, not exceeding thirty-five, of service credit obtained in accordance with sections 1091 and 1093 of this title, was repealed by Pub. L. 95-482, §109, Oct. 18, 1978, 92 Stat. 1605.

**§ 1076a. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VIII, §822, as added July 12, 1976, Pub. L. 94-350, title V, §506, 90 Stat. 838, related to commencement, etc., of payment of annuity.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

**§§ 1077, 1078. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(12), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2160**

Section 1077, act May 21, 1952, ch. 315, §1, 66 Stat. 81, related to increase of annuities of annuitants retired prior to Nov. 13, 1950.

Section 1078, act May 21, 1952, ch. 315, §2, 66 Stat. 82, related to increase of annuities of survivor annuitants of persons retired prior to Nov. 13, 1950.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

**§§ 1079 to 1079c. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(13), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2160**

Section 1079, act May 1, 1956, ch. 229, §1, 70 Stat. 125, related to increase of annuities of annuitants retired prior to July 1, 1949.

Section 1079a, act May 1, 1956, ch. 229, §2, 70 Stat. 125, related to availability of increases provided for by section 1079 of this title for officers retired before July 1, 1979, who exercised reduced annuity and restoration clause.

Section 1079b, act May 1, 1956, ch. 229, §3, 70 Stat. 125, related to increases for widowed annuitants.

Section 1079c, act May 1, 1956, ch. 229, §4, 70 Stat. 125, related to increases for officers' wives who become annuitants subsequent to the effective date of sections 1079 to 1079f of this title.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

**§ 1079d. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(13), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2160**

Section, acts May 1, 1956, ch. 229, §5, 70 Stat. 125; July 12, 1960, Pub. L. 86-612, §2(a), 74 Stat. 371, related to grants to needy ineligible widows.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1960 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 86-612, §2(b), July 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 371, which provided that the amendment made to this section by section 2(a) of Pub. L. 86-612 take effect on the first day of the first month which begins more than thirty days after July 12, 1960, was repealed by Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2205(15), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2160.

**§§ 1079e, 1079f. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(13), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2160**

Section 1079e, act May 1, 1956, ch. 229, §6, 70 Stat. 125, related to restriction on increases under sections 1079 to 1079f of this title.

Section 1079f, act May 1, 1956, ch. 229, §7, 70 Stat. 125, provided that no annuity currently payable be reduced as a result of sections 1079 to 1079f of this title.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

**§§ 1079g to 1079k. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(14), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2160**

Section 1079g, Pub. L. 85-882, §1, Sept. 2, 1958, 72 Stat. 1705, related to increase of annuities for service terminated on or before Jan. 31, 1958.

Section 1079h, Pub. L. 85-882, §2, Sept. 2, 1958, 72 Stat. 1705, related to increase of annuities of retired officers for service terminated on or after Feb. 1, 1958, and provided a schedule of increase.

Section 1079i, Pub. L. 85-882, §3, Sept. 2, 1958, 72 Stat. 1705, related to increase of annuities of survivor annuitants for service terminated after Feb. 1, 1958, and provided a schedule of increase.

Section 1079j, Pub. L. 85-882, §4, Sept. 2, 1958, 72 Stat. 1705, provided that computation of increase on additional annuities purchased with voluntary contributions be barred.

Section 1079k, Pub. L. 85-882, §5, Sept. 2, 1958, 72 Stat. 1705, provided no annuity of a retired officer or survivor annuitant be increased under sections 1079g to 1079k of this title beyond a specified amount.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

**§ 1079l. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(15), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2160**

Section, Pub. L. 86-612, §1, July 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 371, set forth provisions relating to increase of annuities.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

**§§ 1079m to 1079s. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(16), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2160**

Section 1079m, Pub. L. 89-308, §2, Oct. 31, 1965, 79 Stat. 1129, related to adjustment in annuities for service terminated before Oct. 16, 1960.

Section 1079n, Pub. L. 89-308, §3, Oct. 31, 1965, 79 Stat. 1130, related to benefit of surviving widow of annuitant whose service terminated before Oct. 16, 1960, and who has elected deferred annuity and dies before becoming eligible.

Section 1079o, Pub. L. 89-308, §4, Oct. 31, 1965, 79 Stat. 1130, related to benefit of surviving widow of annuitant who retired before Oct. 16, 1960, and who died before Oct. 31, 1965.

Section 1079p, Pub. L. 89-308, §5, Oct. 31, 1965, 79 Stat. 1131, related to increase in annuity for widows receiving less than \$2,400.

Section 1079q, Pub. L. 89-308, §6, Oct. 31, 1965, 79 Stat. 1131, related to annuity benefits of widows under sections 1079m to 1079p of this title in lieu of any other benefits.

Section 1079r, Pub. L. 89-308, §7, Oct. 31, 1965, 79 Stat. 1131, provided for effective date for increases, adjustments, or grants of annuity.

Section 1079s, Pub. L. 89-308, §8, Oct. 31, 1965, 79 Stat. 1131, related to payments of annuity benefits from Foreign Service Retirement and Disability Fund.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

**PART D—BENEFITS ACCRUING TO CERTAIN PARTICIPANTS**

**§§ 1081, 1082. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section 1081, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VIII, §831, 60 Stat. 1021; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, §35, 74 Stat. 840; July 12, 1976, Pub. L. 94-350, title V, §507, 90 Stat. 839, related to benefits due to disability or incapacity.

Section 1082, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VIII, §832, 60 Stat. 1022; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, §36, 74 Stat. 842; Oct. 31, 1965, Pub. L. 89-308, §9(2), 79 Stat. 1131; Feb. 28, 1970, Pub. L. 91-201, title II, §203, 84 Stat. 18; July 12, 1976, Pub. L. 94-350, title V, §508, 90 Stat. 839, related to payment of lump-sum credit and annuities for death in service.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

**§ 1083. Repealed. Pub. L. 94-350, title V, § 516, July 12, 1976, 90 Stat. 845**

Section, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VIII, §833, 60 Stat. 1022, provided for retirement of non Foreign Service officers and chiefs of missions.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 1, 1976, see section 524(a) of Pub. L. 94-350.

**§ 1084. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VIII, §834, as added Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, §37, 74 Stat. 842;

amended July 12, 1976, Pub. L. 94-350, title V, §509, 90 Stat. 840, related to discontinued service retirement.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

## PART E—LUMP-SUM PAYMENTS

**§ 1086. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VIII, §841, 60 Stat. 1022; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, §38, 74 Stat. 843; July 12, 1976, Pub. L. 94-350, title V, §510, 90 Stat. 840, related to separation from service and computation, etc., of lump-sum credit.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

## PART F—SERVICE PERIOD FOR ANNUITIES

**§ 1091. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VIII, §851, 60 Stat. 1023; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, §39, 74 Stat. 844; Feb. 28, 1970, Pub. L. 91-201, title II, §204, 84 Stat. 19; July 12, 1976, Pub. L. 94-350, title V, §511, 90 Stat. 842, Ex. Ord. No. 12145, §1-111, July 18, 1979, 44 F.R. 42654, related to computation, etc., of creditable service period for annuities.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

**§ 1092. Repealed. Pub. L. 94-350, title V, § 516, July 12, 1976, 90 Stat. 845**

Section, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VIII, §852, 60 Stat. 1023; Apr. 5, 1955, ch. 23, §8(a), (b), 69 Stat. 26; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, §40, 74 Stat. 844; Feb. 28, 1970, Pub. L. 91-201, title I, §103, 84 Stat. 17, related to prior service credits. See sections 4045 and 4056 of this title.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 1, 1976, see section 524(a) of Pub. L. 94-350.

**§ 1093. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VIII, §853, 60 Stat. 1024; Apr. 5, 1955, ch. 23, §9, 69 Stat. 27, related to extra credit for service at unhealthful posts.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

**§ 1094. Repealed. Pub. L. 94-350, title V, § 516, July 12, 1976, 90 Stat. 845**

Section, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VIII, §854, 60 Stat. 1024, provided for credit while on military leave. See section 4045 of this title.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 1, 1976, see section 524(a) of Pub. L. 94-350.

**§ 1095. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VIII, §855, as added Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, §41, 74 Stat. 845, related to recomputation of annuities of certain former participants.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

PART G—MONEYS

**§ 1101. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VIII, §861, 60 Stat. 1024, related to estimation of needed appropriations by Secretary of Treasury.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

**§ 1102. Repealed. Pub. L. 89-348, § 1(22), Nov. 8, 1965, 79 Stat. 1312**

Section, act Aug. 13, 1964, ch. 957, title VIII, §862, 60 Stat. 1024, required an annual report to Congress and to President on condition of Foreign Service Retirement and Disability Fund and of estimates of appropriations necessary to continue system in effect.

**§§ 1103 to 1106. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section 1103, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VIII, §863, 60 Stat. 1024, related to investment of Fund by Secretary of the Treasury.

Section 1104, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VIII, §864, 60 Stat. 1024; Apr. 5, 1955, ch. 23, §13(3), 69 Stat. 27; Ex. Ord. No. 11952, §2(e), Jan. 7, 1977, 42 F.R. 2293, 4809; Ex. Ord. No. 12145, §1-112, July 18, 1979, 44 F.R. 42654, related to attachment of moneys.

Section 1105, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VIII, §865, as added Feb. 28, 1970, Pub. L. 91-201, title I, §104(a), 84 Stat. 17; amended July 12, 1976, Pub. L. 94-350, title V, §512, 90 Stat. 843, related to payments for future benefits, and funding of normal costs.

Section 1106, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VIII, §866, as added Feb. 28, 1970, Pub. L. 91-201, title I, §104(a), 84 Stat. 18, related to unfunded liability obligations, and credit for military service with respect to funding requirements.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

PART H—ANNUITANTS RECALLED IN SERVICE OR REEMPLOYED IN GOVERNMENT

**§§ 1111, 1112. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section 1111, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VIII, §871, 60 Stat. 1025; July 28, 1956, ch. 770, §10, 70 Stat. 705; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, §43, 74 Stat. 845; July 12, 1976, Pub. L. 94-350, title V, §513, 90 Stat. 843, related to annuity adjustment for recall service.

Section 1112, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VIII, §872, as added Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, §44, 74 Stat. 846; amended Sept. 4, 1961, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. IV, §708(2), 75 Stat. 464, related to rights, etc., upon reemployment of annuitant.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

PART I—VOLUNTARY CONTRIBUTIONS

**§ 1116. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VIII, §881, 60 Stat. 1025; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, §45, 74 Stat. 846; July 12, 1976, Pub. L. 94-350, title V, §514, 90 Stat. 843, related to composition, etc., of voluntary contribution account.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

PART J—COST-OF-LIVING ADJUSTMENTS OF ANNUITIES

**§ 1121. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), (16), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159, 2160**

Section, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title VIII, §882, as added Oct. 31, 1965, Pub. L. 89-308, §9(3), 79 Stat. 1131; amended Feb. 28, 1970, Pub. L. 91-201, title II, §205, 84 Stat. 19; July 12, 1976, Pub. L. 94-350, title V, §515, 90 Stat. 844; Oct. 1, 1976, Pub. L. 94-440, title XIII, §1306(e)(1), 90 Stat. 1463; Ex. Ord. No. 11272, §1-101, Jan. 16, 1981, 46 F.R. 5853, related to effective date, etc., of provisions authorizing cost-of-living annuity increase.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

SUBCHAPTER IX—ALLOWANCES AND BENEFITS

PART A—ALLOWANCES AND SPECIAL ALLOTMENTS

**§ 1131. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title IX, §901, 60 Stat. 1025; Apr. 5, 1955, ch. 23, §10, 69 Stat. 27; Sept. 6, 1960, Pub. L. 86-707, title V, §511(c)(7), 74 Stat. 801, related to authorization of representation allowances.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

**§§ 1132, 1133. Repealed. Pub. L. 86-707, title V, § 511(a)(1), Sept. 6, 1960, 74 Stat. 800**

Section 1132, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title IX, §902, 60 Stat. 1026; July 28, 1956, ch. 770, §11, 70 Stat. 705, authorized the Secretary of State to allot funds to defray the unusual expenses incident to the operation and maintenance of official residences suitable for principal representatives of the United States. See section 5913 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

Section 1133, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title IX, §903, 60 Stat. 1026, required the Secretary of State to account for all allowances and allotments.

PART B—TRAVEL AND RELATED EXPENSES

**§§ 1136 to 1138a. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159**

Section 1136, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title IX, §911, 60 Stat. 1026; Apr. 5, 1955, ch. 23, §11, 69 Stat. 27; Sept.

6, 1960, Pub. L. 86-707, title III, §301(a), title V, §511(a)(1), 74 Stat. 795, 800; Sept. 4, 1961, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. IV, §708(3), 75 Stat. 464; Dec. 16, 1963, Pub. L. 88-205, pt. IV, §404(b), 77 Stat. 391; Dec. 23, 1967, Pub. L. 90-221, §1, 81 Stat. 671; Oct. 7, 1978, Pub. L. 95-426, title IV, §§407(a), 408(a), 409(a), 92 Stat. 980, related to payment, etc., of travel expenses, transportation and storage expenses, and expenses for bringing home remains of personnel and family members.

Section 1137, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title IX, §912, 60 Stat. 1027; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, §46, 74 Stat. 846, related to loan of household furnishings and equipment to officers and employees.

Section 1138, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title IX, §913, 60 Stat. 1027; Sept. 6, 1960, Pub. L. 86-707, title III, §322, 74 Stat. 798; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, §47, 74 Stat. 846, related to transportation of motor vehicles of officers and employees.

Section 1138a, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title IX, §914, as added Dec. 16, 1963, Pub. L. 88-205, pt. IV, §404(c), 77 Stat. 391, related to transportation for Government employees and dependents.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

#### PART C—COMMISSARY AND MESS SERVICES AND RECREATION FACILITIES

##### § 1139. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159

Section, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title IX, §921, 60 Stat. 1027; July 28, 1956, ch. 770, §12, 70 Stat. 705; Dec. 16, 1963, Pub. L. 88-205, pt. IV, §404(c), 77 Stat. 391; Oct. 7, 1978, Pub. L. 95-426, title I, §112(a)(2), 92 Stat. 968, related to commissary and mess services and recreational facilities abroad.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

##### § 1140. Repealed. Oct. 31, 1951, ch. 654, § 1(43), 65 Stat. 703

Section, act July 5, 1946, ch. 541, title I, 60 Stat. 452, related to sale or exchange of Foreign Service automobiles abroad. See section 481 of Title 40, Public Buildings, Property, and Works.

#### PART D—LEAVES OF ABSENCE

##### §§ 1146, 1147. Repealed. Oct. 30, 1951, ch. 631, title II, § 207(a)(6), 65 Stat. 682

Sections, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title IX, §§931, 932, 60 Stat. 1028, related to annual and sick leave for officers and employees in the Foreign Service. See section 6301 et seq. of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Jan. 6, 1952, see section 209 of act Oct. 30, 1951.

##### §§ 1148 to 1151. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159

Section 1148, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title IX, §933, 60 Stat. 1028; Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title V, §544(e), as added July 18, 1956, ch. 627, §11(a), 70 Stat. 563; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, §11(b)(1), 71 Stat. 365; Sept. 4, 1961, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. IV, §708(4), 75 Stat. 464, related to return of personnel on leaves of absence to United States, its territories and possessions.

Section 1149, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title IX, §934, 60 Stat. 1028, related to leaves of absence of Reserve officers assigned to the Foreign Service.

Section 1150, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title IX, §935, 60 Stat. 1029, related to transfers of leaves of absence.

Section 1151, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title IX, §936, as added July 28, 1956, ch. 770, §17, 70 Stat. 708, related to application of Annual and Sick Leave Act of 1951.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

#### PART E—MEDICAL SERVICES

##### §§ 1156 to 1160. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159

Section 1156, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title IX, §941, 60 Stat. 1029; July 28, 1956, ch. 770, §13, 70 Stat. 706, related to payment of expenses of medical treatment.

Section 1157, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title IX, §942, 60 Stat. 1029; July 28, 1956, ch. 770, §14, 70 Stat. 706; Sept. 4, 1961, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. IV, §708(5), 75 Stat. 464; Oct. 7, 1978, Pub. L. 95-426, title I, §113(a)(1), 92 Stat. 968, related to payment of expenses for travel for medical purposes.

Section 1158, acts Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title IX, §943, 60 Stat. 1029; Apr. 5, 1955, ch. 23, §12, 69 Stat. 27; July 28, 1956, ch. 770, §15, 70 Stat. 707, related to physical examinations and inoculations.

Section 1159, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title IX, §944, as added Dec. 23, 1967, Pub. L. 90-221, §2, 81 Stat. 671, related to authority to provide medical services beyond date of death or separation of officer or employee.

Section 1160, act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title IX, §945, as added Oct. 7, 1978, Pub. L. 95-426, title I, §113(a)(2), 92 Stat. 968, related to establishment and provision of medical treatment and health care facilities.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

#### SUBCHAPTER X—POWERS, DUTIES, AND LIABILITIES OF CONSULAR OFFICERS GENERALLY

##### §§ 1171 to 1195. Transferred

#### CODIFICATION

Section 1171, R.S. §1689, which related to general application of provisions to consular officers, was transferred to section 4191 of this title.

Section 1172, R.S. §4082, which related to solemnization of marriages, was transferred to section 4192 of this title and subsequently repealed.

Section 1173, R.S. §1707; June 25, 1948, ch. 646, §39, 62 Stat. 992, which related to receipt by consuls and vice consuls of protests, was transferred to section 4193 of this title.

Section 1174, R.S. §1708; Feb. 14, 1903, ch. 552, §10, 32 Stat. 829, which related to lists and returns of seamen and vessels, etc., was transferred to section 4194 of this title.

Section 1175, R.S. §1709; Mar. 3, 1911, ch. 223, 36 Stat. 1083; June 10, 1921, ch. 18, §304, 42 Stat. 24; July 12, 1940, ch. 618, 54 Stat. 758, which related to estates of decedents generally and to General Accounting Office as conservator, was transferred to section 4195 of this title.

Section 1176, R.S. §1710; July 12, 1940, ch. 618, 54 Stat. 760, which related to notification of death of decedent and transmission of inventory of effects of decedent, was transferred to section 4196 of this title.

Section 1177, R.S. §1711; July 12, 1940, ch. 618, 54 Stat. 760, which related to a consular or diplomatic officer

following testamentary directions and assistance to a testamentary appointee, was transferred to section 4197 of this title.

Section 1178, act June 30, 1902, ch. 1331, § 1, 32 Stat. 546, which related to execution of a bond as administrator or guardian and to an action on bond, was transferred to section 4198 of this title.

Section 1179, act June 30, 1902, ch. 1331, § 2, 32 Stat. 547, which related to penalty for failure to give bond and for embezzlement, was transferred to section 4199 of this title.

Section 1180, R.S. §1715, which related to certification by consular officers of invoices generally, was transferred to section 4200 of this title.

Section 1181, act Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, § 9, 34 Stat. 101, which related to fees for certification of invoices, was transferred to section 4201 of this title.

Section 1182, R.S. §1716, which related to exaction of excessive fees for verification of invoices and penalty therefor, was transferred to section 4202 of this title.

Section 1183, act Feb. 24, 1903, ch. 753, 32 Stat. 854, which related to destruction of old invoices, was transferred to section 4203 of this title.

Section 1184, R.S. §1717, which provided for a restriction as to a certificate for goods from countries adjacent to United States, was transferred to section 4204 of this title.

Section 1185, R.S. §1718, which related to retention of papers of American vessels until payment of demands and wages, was transferred to section 4205 of this title.

Section 1186, act June 26, 1884, ch. 121, § 12, 23 Stat. 56, which related to prohibition of fees for services to American vessels or seamen, was transferred to section 4206 of this title.

Section 1187, R.S. §1719; Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, § 3, 34 Stat. 100, which related to prohibition of profits from dealings with discharged seamen, was transferred to section 4207 of this title.

Section 1188, R.S. §1722; Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, § 3, 34 Stat. 100, which related to valuation of foreign coins in payment of fees, was transferred to section 4208 of this title.

Section 1189, R.S. §1723, which related to exaction of excessive fees and a penalty therefor of treble amount, was transferred to section 4209 of this title.

Section 1190, R.S. §1724; Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, § 3, 34 Stat. 100, which related to liability for uncollected fees, was transferred to section 4210 of this title.

Section 1191, R.S. §1725; July 31, 1894, ch. 174, § 5, 28 Stat. 206; Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, § 3, 34 Stat. 100; June 10, 1921, ch. 18, § 304, 42 Stat. 24, which related to returns as to fees by officers compensated by fees, was transferred to section 4211 of this title.

Section 1192, R.S. §§1726, 1727, which related to receipts for fees and numbering of receipts, was transferred to section 4212 of this title.

Section 1193, R.S. §1727, which related to registry of fees, was transferred to section 4213 of this title.

Section 1194, R.S. §1728; June 28, 1955, ch. 196, 69 Stat. 187, which related to accounting of fees and certification of a transcript of register, was transferred to section 4214 of this title.

Section 1195, act Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, § 7, 34 Stat. 101, which related to notarial acts, oaths, affirmations, affidavits, and depositions and fees therefor, was transferred to section 4215 of this title.

#### **§ 1196. Repealed. June 28, 1955, ch. 196, 69 Stat. 187**

Section, acts Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, § 10, 34 Stat. 102; May 24, 1924, ch. 182, § 11, 43 Stat. 142, required consular officers to affix official fee stamps to documents in the performance of any consular or notarial act.

#### **§§ 1197, 1198. Transferred**

##### CODIFICATION

Section 1197, R.S. §1731, which related to posting rates of fees, was transferred to section 4216 of this title.

Section 1198, R.S. §1734; Dec. 21, 1898, ch. 36, § 3, 30 Stat. 771, which related to embezzlement of fees or of effects of American citizens, was transferred to section 4217 of this title.

#### **§ 1199. Repealed. Pub. L. 95-105, title I, § 111(a)(1), Aug. 17, 1977, 91 Stat. 848**

Section, R.S. §§1735, 1736; acts Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, § 3, 34 Stat. 100; June 6, 1972, Pub. L. 92-310, title II, § 227(a), 86 Stat. 207, related to liability of consular officers for neglect of duty or for malfeasance.

##### PENDING ACTIONS

Section 111(b) of Pub. L. 95-105 provided that: "The repeals made by subsection (a) [repealing this section] shall not affect suits commenced before the date of enactment of this Act [Aug. 17, 1977]."

#### **§§ 1200 to 1204. Transferred**

##### CODIFICATION

Section 1200, R.S. §1737; Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, § 3, 34 Stat. 100, which related to penalty for a false certificate as to ownership of property, was transferred to section 4218 of this title.

Section 1201, R.S. §1745; Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, § 3, 34 Stat. 100, which related to regulation of fees by President, was transferred to section 4219 of this title.

Section 1202, R.S. §1746, which related to medium for payment of fees, was transferred to section 4220 of this title.

Section 1203, R.S. §1750; Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, § 3, 34 Stat. 100, which related to depositions and notarial acts and to perjury and other offenses, was transferred to section 4221 of this title.

Section 1204, act June 26, 1936, ch. 640, § 6A, as added June 25, 1938, ch. 682, 52 Stat. 1163, which related to authentication of documents of State of Vatican City by consular officer in Rome, was transferred to section 4222 of this title.

#### **CHAPTER 14A—FOREIGN SERVICE INFORMATION OFFICERS CORPS**

#### **§§ 1221 to 1234. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(6), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2160**

Section 1221, Pub. L. 90-494, § 1, Aug. 20, 1968, 82 Stat. 810; Pub. L. 95-426, title II, § 204(b)(1), Oct. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 973, related to establishment of a category of officers of United States Information Agency known as Foreign Service information officers.

Section 1222, Pub. L. 90-494, § 2, Aug. 20, 1968, 82 Stat. 810; Pub. L. 95-426, title II, § 204(b)(1), Oct. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 973, related to Congressional statement of policy with respect to Foreign Service Information Officer Corps.

Section 1223, Pub. L. 90-494, § 3, Aug. 20, 1968, 82 Stat. 810, related to Congressional statement of purpose with respect to Foreign Service Information Officer Corps.

Section 1224, Pub. L. 90-494, § 4, Aug. 20, 1968, 82 Stat. 811; Pub. L. 95-426, title II, § 204(b)(2), Oct. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 973, related to authority of Director of United States Information Agency. See section 3922 of this title.

Section 1225, Pub. L. 90-494, § 5, Aug. 20, 1968, 82 Stat. 811, related to policies and regulations of Foreign Service information officer personnel system and the Foreign Service officer personnel system. See sections 3923 and 3925 of this title.

Section 1226, Pub. L. 90-494, § 6, Aug. 20, 1968, 82 Stat. 811, related to appointment and assignment of Foreign Service information officers.

Section 1227, Pub. L. 90-494, § 7, Aug. 20, 1968, 82 Stat. 811, related to promotion of Foreign Service information officers.

Section 1228, Pub. L. 90-494, § 8, Aug. 20, 1968, 82 Stat. 812, related to separation and retirement of Foreign Service information officers.

Section 1229, Pub. L. 90-494, §9, Aug. 20, 1968, 82 Stat. 812; Pub. L. 94-350, title V, §522(d), July 12, 1976, 90 Stat. 847, related to participation in Foreign Service retirement and disability system. See section 4043 of this title.

Section 1230, Pub. L. 90-494, §10, Aug. 20, 1968, 82 Stat. 812; Pub. L. 95-426, title II, §204(b)(3), Oct. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 974, related to applicability of other statutory provisions.

Section 1231, Pub. L. 90-494, §11, Aug. 20, 1968, 82 Stat. 813; Pub. L. 95-426, title II, §204(b)(4), Oct. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 974, related to commissioning and assignment as diplomatic and consular officers. See section 3952 of this title.

Section 1232, Pub. L. 90-494, §12, Aug. 20, 1968, 82 Stat. 813; Pub. L. 95-426, title II, §204(b)(1), Oct. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 974, related to applicability of former provisions of chapter.

Section 1233, Pub. L. 90-494, §13, Aug. 20, 1968, 82 Stat. 813, related to transfer of Agency Foreign Service officers to Foreign Service information officer status.

Section 1234, Pub. L. 90-494, §14, Aug. 20, 1968, 82 Stat. 813, related to veterans' preference. See section 3941 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

### CHAPTER 15—THE REPUBLIC OF THE PHILIPPINES

#### SUBCHAPTER I—LAWS AND OBLIGATIONS OF UNITED STATES

##### PART 1—CUSTOMS DUTIES

Sec.  
1251 to 1255. Omitted.

##### PART 2—QUOTAS

1261 to 1266. Omitted.

##### PART 3—INTERNAL TAXES

1271 to 1274. Omitted.

##### PART 4—IMMIGRATION

1281, 1281a. Omitted or Repealed.

#### SUBCHAPTER II—OBLIGATIONS OF PHILIPPINES

##### PART 1—PURPOSES

1291. Omitted.

##### PART 2—CUSTOMS DUTIES

1301 to 1305. Omitted.

##### PART 3—INTERNAL TAXES

1311 to 1313. Omitted.

##### PART 4—IMMIGRATION

1321, 1322. Omitted.

##### PART 5—GENERAL PROVISIONS

1331 to 1334. Omitted.

#### SUBCHAPTER III—EXECUTIVE AGREEMENT BETWEEN UNITED STATES AND PHILIPPINES

1341 to 1348. Omitted.

#### SUBCHAPTER IV—GENERAL PROVISIONS RELATING TO TRADE RELATIONS

1351 to 1353. Omitted.

1354. Quotas on Philippine articles.  
(a) to (c) Omitted.  
(d) Investigations by International Trade Commission.

1355. Suspension of processing tax on coconut oil.

Sec.  
1356. Termination of payments into Philippine treasury.  
1357. Trade agreements with the Philippines.  
1358. Rights of third countries.  
1359. Omitted.  
1360. Definitions.

#### SUBCHAPTER IV—TRADE RELATIONS UNDER REVISED AGREEMENT

1371, 1372. Omitted.  
1373. Suspension of Philippine Trade Act of 1946.  
1374 to 1379. Omitted.

#### SUBCHAPTER V—PROPERTY RETAINED BY THE UNITED STATES

1381. Retention by United States of title to real and personal property.  
1382. Administration of the Trading With the Enemy Act in Philippines.  
1383. Transfer of property by President of United States.  
1384. Transfer of shares of corporations owning agricultural lands; consideration; indemnification.  
1385. Ownership of naval reservations, diplomatic property, etc., unaffected.  
1386. Definitions.

#### SUBCHAPTER VI—MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

1391. Transfer of property and rights to Philippine Commonwealth.  
1392. Acquisition of military and naval bases by United States.  
1393. Supplementary sinking fund for bond payments; purchase of bonds by United States; creation of special trust account.  
1394. Recognition of Philippine independence.  
(a) Withdrawal of American sovereignty.  
(b) Naval reservations and fueling stations.  
(c) Property for diplomatic purposes.  
1395. Definitions.

#### SUBCHAPTER I—LAWS AND OBLIGATIONS OF UNITED STATES

##### SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in sections 1356, 1360, 1373 of this title; title 48 section 734.

##### PART 1—CUSTOMS DUTIES

### §§ 1251 to 1255. Omitted

#### CODIFICATION

Section 1251, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title II, §201, 60 Stat. 143, provided for entry of Philippine articles into the United States, between May 1, 1946 and July 3, 1954, free of ordinary customs duty.

Section 1252, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title II, §202, 60 Stat. 143. Subsec. (a), related to ordinary customs duties on Philippine articles between July 4, 1954 and July 3, 1974. Subsec. (b), which related to ordinary customs duties on Philippine articles for the period after July 3, 1974, was omitted on authority of former section 1345 of this title which nullified subchapter I of this chapter upon the expiration of the revised agreement between the United States and the Republic of the Philippines which occurred on July 4, 1974.

Section 1253, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title II, §203, 60 Stat. 144, related to customs duties on Philippines articles other than ordinary customs duties. See note above for section 1252(b) of this title.

Section 1254, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title II, §204, 60 Stat. 144, related to equality in special import duties. See note above for section 1252(b) of this title.

Section 1255, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title II, §205, 60 Stat. 144, related to equality in duties for products of

the Philippines which did not come within the definition of Philippine articles. See note above for section 1252(b) of this title.

EXTENSION OF DUTY-FREE PERIOD UNTIL DECEMBER 31, 1955

Act July 5, 1954, ch. 459, 68 Stat. 448, provided that the duty-free treatment of this section was to be applied in lieu of section 1252(a)(1), (2) of this title for Philippine articles entered or withdrawn from United States warehouses for consumption during periods between July 3, 1954 and December 31, 1955 provided the President declared by proclamation that such period was one in which United States articles were admitted into the Philippines free of ordinary customs duties.

PROC. NO. 3060. EXTENSION OF THE PERIOD OF DUTY-FREE TREATMENT

Proc. No. 3060, July 10, 1954, 19 F.R. 4397, provided that United States articles entered or withdrawn from warehouse in the Philippines for consumption, during the period from July 4, 1954 to December 31, 1955, be admitted into the Philippines free from ordinary customs duty.

PART 2—QUOTAS

§§ 1261 to 1266. Omitted

CODIFICATION

Section 1261, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title II, §211, 60 Stat. 144, related to amount and allocation of quotas for refined and unrefined Philippine sugar, between the period Jan. 1, 1946 and July 3, 1974.

Section 1262, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title II, §212, 60 Stat. 145, related to amount and allocation of quotas for Philippine cordage, between the period Jan. 1, 1946 and July 3, 1974.

Section 1263, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title II, §213, 60 Stat. 145, related to quota on Philippine rice, between the period Jan. 1, 1946 and July 3, 1974.

Section 1264, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title II, §214, 60 Stat. 146, related to duty-free quotas on cigars, scrap tobacco, coconut oil and buttons of pearl or shell, between the period Jan. 1, 1946 and July 3, 1974.

Section 1265, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title II, §215, 60 Stat. 147, which related to enactment of laws and regulations necessary to put into effect allocations of quotas, was omitted on authority of former section 1345 of this title which nullified subchapter I of this chapter upon expiration of the revised agreement between the United States and the Republic of the Philippines which occurred on July 4, 1974.

Section 1266, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title II, §216, 60 Stat. 147, related to transfers and assignments of quota allotments. See note above for section 1265 of this title.

PART 3—INTERNAL TAXES

§§ 1271 to 1274. Omitted

CODIFICATION

Section 1271, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title II, §221, 60 Stat. 147, which related to equality in internal taxes for Philippine products coming into the United States, was omitted on authority of former section 1345 of this title which nullified subchapter I of this chapter upon expiration of the revised agreement between the United States and the Republic of the Philippines which occurred on July 4, 1974.

Section 1272, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title II, §222, 60 Stat. 148, related to exemption from tax of manila fiber. See note above for section 1271 of this title.

Section 1273, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title II, §223, 60 Stat. 148, prohibited export taxes by the United States on articles exported to the Philippines. See note above for section 1271 of this title.

Section 1274, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title II, §224, 60 Stat. 148, provided an exemption from taxes for articles

for official use of the Philippine Government. See note above for section 1271 of this title.

PART 4—IMMIGRATION

§ 1281. Omitted

CODIFICATION

Section, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title II, §231, 60 Stat. 148, which provided that certain Philippine citizens be granted non-quota status, was omitted on authority of former section 1345 of this title which nullified subchapter I of this chapter upon the expiration of the revised agreement between the United States and the Republic of the Philippines which occurred on July 4, 1974.

PHILIPPINE TRADERS AS NONIMMIGRANTS

Philippine traders as classifiable as nonimmigrants, see section 1184a of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality.

PROC. NO. 2696. IMMIGRATION QUOTA

Proc. No. 2696, July 4, 1946, 11 F.R. 7517, 60 Stat. 1353, provided:

The annual quota for the Philippine Islands effective July 4, 1946, for the remainder of the fiscal year ending June 30, 1947, and for each fiscal year thereafter, has been determined in accordance with the law to be, and shall be, 100.

The immigration quota of 50 authorized by section 8(a)(1) of the Act approved March 24, 1934, entitled "An Act to provide for the complete independence of the Philippine Islands, to provide for the adoption of a constitution and a form of government for the Philippine Islands, and for other purposes" (48 Stat. 462; 53 Stat. 1230; section 1238 of Title 48, Territories and Insular Possessions), which Act was accepted by concurrent resolution of the Philippine Legislature on May 1, 1934, and which became effective on that date, will become inoperative on July 4, 1946, the date the Government of the United States recognizes the independence of the Philippine Islands as a separate and self-governing nation.

The immigration quota assigned to the Philippine Islands is designed solely for purposes of compliance with the pertinent provisions of the Immigration Act of 1924 [section 145 et seq. of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality] and is not to be regarded as having any significance extraneous to this subject.

§ 1281a. Repealed. June 27, 1952, ch. 477, title IV, § 403(a)(35), 666 Stat. 279

Section, act Mar. 24, 1934, ch. 84, §14, 48 Stat. 464, related to immigration after independence. See section 1151 et seq. of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality.

SUBCHAPTER II—OBLIGATIONS OF PHILIPPINES

SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in sections 1356, 1360, 1373 of this title; title 48 section 734.

PART 1—PURPOSES

§ 1291. Omitted

CODIFICATION

Section, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title III, §301, 60 Stat. 148, which stated the purposes of this subchapter, was omitted on authority of subsec. (b)(1) of this section which provided that this subchapter be effective until the expiration of the revised agreement between the United States and the Republic of the Philippines which occurred on July 4, 1974.



## PART 2—CUSTOMS DUTIES

## §§ 1301 to 1305. Omitted

## CODIFICATION

Section 1301, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title III, §311, 60 Stat. 149, provided for entry of United States articles into Philippines, between May 1, 1946, and July 3, 1954, free of ordinary customs duties.

Section 1302, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title III, §312, 60 Stat. 149, Subsec. (a) related to ordinary customs duties on United States articles between July 4, 1954, and July 3, 1974. Subsec. (b), which related ordinary customs duties on United States articles after July 3, 1974, was omitted on authority of section 1291(b)(1) of this title which provided that this subchapter be effective until the expiration of the revised agreement between the United States and the Republic of the Philippines which occurred on July 4, 1974.

Section 1303, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title III, §313, 60 Stat. 149, related to customs duties on United States articles other than ordinary customs duties. See note above for section 1302(b) of this title.

Section 1304, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title III, §314, 60 Stat. 150, related to equality in special import duties. See note above for section 1302(b) of this title.

Section 1305, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title III, §315, 60 Stat. 150, related to equality in duties for products of the United States which did not come within the definition of United States articles. See note above for section 1302(b) of this title.

## PART 3—INTERNAL TAXES

## §§ 1311 to 1313. Omitted

## CODIFICATION

Section 1311, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title III, §321, 60 Stat. 150, which related to equality in internal taxes for United States products coming into the Philippines, was omitted on authority of section 1291(b)(1) of this title which provided that this subchapter be effective until the expiration of the revised agreement between the United States and the Republic of the Philippines which occurred on July 4, 1974.

Section 1312, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title III, §322, 60 Stat. 150, prohibited export taxes by the Philippines on articles exported to the United States. See note above for section 1311 of this title.

Section 1313, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title III, §323, 60 Stat. 150, provided an exemption from taxes for articles for official use of the United States Government. See note above for section 1311 of this title.

## PART 4—IMMIGRATION

## §§ 1321, 1322. Omitted

## CODIFICATION

Section 1321, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title III, §331, 60 Stat. 151, which provided that certain United States citizens be granted non-quota status, was omitted on authority of section 1291(b)(1) of this title which provided that this subchapter be effective until the expiration of the revised agreement between the United States and the Republic of the Philippines which occurred on July 4, 1974.

Section 1322, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title III, §332, 60 Stat. 151, provided for immigration of United States citizens into the Philippines. See note above for section 1321 of this title.

## PART 5—GENERAL PROVISIONS

## §§ 1331 to 1334. Omitted

## CODIFICATION

Section 1331, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title III, §341, 60 Stat. 151, which related to rights of United States

citizens and business enterprises to natural resources in the Philippines, was omitted on authority of section 1291(b)(1) of this title which provided that this subchapter be effective until the expiration of the revised agreement between the United States and the Republic of the Philippines which occurred on July 4, 1974.

Section 1332, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title III, §342, 60 Stat. 151, provided for currency stabilization between the United States and the Philippines. See note above for section 1331 of this title.

Section 1333, acts June 11, 1934, ch. 445, 48 Stat. 929; Aug. 7, 1946, ch. 809, §1, 60 Stat. 901, which related to deposits of and interest on public moneys, terminated on July 1, 1951, under the provisions of section 2 of act Aug. 7, 1946.

Section 1334, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title III, §343, 60 Stat. 151, related to allocation of quotas established by sections 1261, 1262, and 1264 of this title. See note above for section 1331 of this title.

## SUBCHAPTER III—EXECUTIVE AGREEMENT BETWEEN UNITED STATES AND PHILIPPINES

## SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in sections 1356, 1357, 1360, 1373 of this title; title 48 section 734.

## §§ 1341 to 1348. Omitted

## CODIFICATION

Section 1341, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title IV, §401, 60 Stat. 151, which provided authorization for an executive agreement between United States and Republic of Philippines concerning trade and other related matters, was omitted in view of expiration of revised agreement concerning trade and other related matters which occurred on July 4, 1974.

Section 1342, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title IV, §402, 60 Stat. 152, specified obligations of Philippines. See note above for section 1341 of this title.

Section 1343, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title IV, §403, 60 Stat. 153, specified obligations of United States. See note above for section 1341 of this title.

Section 1344, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title IV, §404, 60 Stat. 153, related to provisions concerning termination of agreement. See note above for section 1341 of this title.

Section 1345, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title IV, §405, 60 Stat. 154, provided that upon expiration of agreement the provisions of subchapter I of this chapter shall cease to have effect. See note above for section 1341 of this title.

Section 1346, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title IV, §406, 60 Stat. 154, related to interpretation of agreement. See note above for section 1341 of this title.

Section 1347, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title IV, §407, 60 Stat. 154, related to termination of authority to make the agreement. See note above for section 1341 of this title.

Section 1348, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title IV, §408, 60 Stat. 154, related to effective date of the agreement. See note above for section 1341 of this title.

## SUBCHAPTER IV—GENERAL PROVISIONS RELATING TO TRADE RELATIONS

## SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in section 1373 of this title; title 48 section 734.

## §§ 1351 to 1353. Omitted

## CODIFICATION

Section 1351, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title V, §501, 60 Stat. 155, which related to suspension and termination of trade agreement in case of discrimination, was omitted in view of the expiration of the revised agreement

between the United States and the Republic of the Philippines which occurred on July 4, 1974.

Section 1352, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title V, § 502, 60 Stat. 155, which related to suspension of provisions of subchapter I of this chapter, was omitted on authority of former section 1345 of this title which nullified subchapter I of this chapter upon the expiration of the revised agreement between the United States and the Republic of the Philippines which occurred on July 4, 1974.

Section 1353, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title V, § 503, 60 Stat. 156, related to customs duties on imports from Philippines during period subchapter I of this chapter was in effect. See note above for section 1352 of this title.

### § 1354. Quotas on Philippine articles

#### (a) to (c) Omitted

#### (d) Investigations by International Trade Commission

The United States International Trade Commission shall at the request of the President, upon resolution of either House of Congress or concurrent resolution of both Houses of Congress, upon its own motion, or when in its judgment there is good reason therefor, upon application of any interested party, make an investigation to ascertain (1) whether imports of a Philippine article (other than an article for which a quota is established by part 2 of subchapter I of this chapter) are coming, or are likely to come, into substantial competition with like articles which are the product of the United States; (2) what is the greatest amount of such article which may be entered, or withdrawn from warehouse, in the United States for consumption, without coming into substantial competition with like articles which are the product of the United States; and (3) the total amount of such article which (during the twelve months ended on the last day of the month preceding the month in which occurs the date of the beginning of the investigation) was entered, or withdrawn from warehouse, in the United States for consumption. During the course of the investigation the Commission shall hold a public hearing, of which reasonable public notice shall be given and at which parties interested shall be afforded reasonable opportunity to be present, to produce evidence, and to be heard. The Commission shall give precedence to such investigations. The Commission shall report the results of its investigations to the President, and shall send copies of such report to each House of the Congress.

(Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title V, § 504, 60 Stat. 156; Jan. 3, 1975, Pub. L. 93-618, title I, § 171(b), 88 Stat. 2009.)

#### SUSPENSION OF PROVISIONS

Section not applicable during such time as the revised agreement between the United States and the Philippines is in effect, see section 1373 of this title.

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Part 2 of subchapter I of this chapter, referred to in subsec. (d), was omitted from the Code. See Codification note set out under section 1261 of this title.

#### CODIFICATION

Subsec. (a) of this section, which provided that the President establish quotas on Philippine articles, was omitted on authority of subsec. (c) of this section

which provided that no quota so established continue in effect after the expiration of the executive agreement which expiration occurred on July 4, 1974. Subsec. (b) of this section, which provided for the maximum and minimum quotas, was omitted on authority of subsec. (c) of this section. Subsec. (c) provided for the duration of the quotas.

#### AMENDMENTS

1975—Subsec. (d), Pub. L. 93-618 substituted “United States International Trade Commission” for “United States Tariff Commission”.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 512 of act Apr. 30, 1946, provided that: “This Act [enacting subchapters I to IV of this chapter; sections 2470(a)(2) and 2800(a)(4)(B) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1939; and section 734 of Title 48, Territories and Insular Possessions] shall take effect on the day after the date of its enactment [Apr. 30, 1946], except Part 2 of Title II [enacting sections 1261 to 1266 of this title], which shall take effect as of January 1, 1946.”

#### SHORT TITLE

Section 1 of act Apr. 30, 1946, provided that: “This Act [enacting subchapters I to IV of this chapter, amending section 1393 of this title, sections 2470 and 2800 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1939, and section 734 of Title 48, Territories and Insular Possessions, repealing section 1301 of Title 19, Customs Duties, sections 2476, and 3340 to 3343 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1939, and section 1243 of Title 48] may be cited as the ‘Philippine Trade Act of 1946.’”

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1373 of this title.

### § 1355. Suspension of processing tax on coconut oil

Whenever the President, after consultation with the President of the Philippines, finds that adequate supplies of neither copra nor coconut oil, the product of the Philippines, are readily available for processing in the United States, he shall so proclaim, and after the date of such proclamation the provisions of section 2470(a)(2) of the Internal Revenue Code shall be suspended until the expiration of 30 days after he proclaims that, after consultation with the President of the Philippines, he has found that such adequate supplies are so readily available.

(Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title V, § 505(b), 60 Stat. 157.)

#### SUSPENSION OF PROVISIONS

Section not applicable during such time as the revised agreement between the United States and the Philippines is in effect, see section 1373 of this title.

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 2470(a)(2) of the Internal Revenue Code, referred to in text, is a reference to section 2470(a)(2) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1939. Section 2470 was repealed by section 7851 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1954, Title 26, and was reenacted as sections 4511 and 4513 of Title 26. The Internal Revenue Code of 1954 was redesignated the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 by Pub. L. 99-514, § 2, Oct. 22, 1986, 100 Stat. 2095. Sections 4511 and 4513 of Title 26 were repealed by Pub. L. 87-456, title III, § 302(d), May 24, 1962, 76 Stat. 77, effective Aug. 31, 1963.

#### TERMINATION OF SUSPENSION OF ADDITIONAL RATE ON COCONUT OIL

By Proc. No. 2847, July 28, 1949, 14 F.R. 4773, 63 Stat. 1279, the President found that “adequate supplies of

copra and coconut oil, the product of the Philippines, are readily available for processing in the United States” and that upon the expiration of 30 days from July 28, 1949, the suspension of the provisions of section 2470(a)(2) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1939 will be terminated.

#### SUSPENSION PROCLAMATION

By Proc. No. 2693, June 28, 1946, 11 F.R. 7255, 60 Stat. 1349, the President found that “adequate supplies of neither copra nor coconut oil, the product of the Philippines, are readily available for processing in the United States,” and therefore the provisions of section 2470(a)(2) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1939 are suspended.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1373 of this title.

### § 1356. Termination of payments into Philippine treasury

Notwithstanding the provisions of section 4 of the Act of March 8, 1902 (32 Stat. 54, ch. 140), or of section 19 of the Act of March 24, 1934 (48 Stat. 456, ch. 84), as added to such Act by section 6 of the Act of August 7, 1939 (53 Stat. 1232, ch. 502), or of the Act of November 8, 1945 (59 Stat. 577, ch. 454) or of any other provision of law, the proceeds of any duties or taxes, collected subsequent to July 3, 1946, which but for the enactment of this Act would be required to be paid into the general funds of the Treasury of the Philippines or would be held in separate or special funds and paid into the Treasury of the Philippines, shall be covered into the general fund of the Treasury of the United States.

(Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title V, § 506(a), 60 Stat. 157.)

#### SUSPENSION OF PROVISIONS

Section not applicable during such time as the revised agreement between the United States and the Philippines is in effect, see section 1373 of this title.

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 4 of the Act of March 8, 1902 (32 Stat. 54, ch. 140), referred to in text, was classified to section 123a of Title 19, Customs Duties, and was transferred to section 3343(b) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1939, and subsequently repealed by act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title V, § 506(b), 60 Stat. 157, eff. July 4, 1946.

Section 19 of the Act of March 24, 1934 (48 Stat. 456, ch. 84), as added to such Act by section 6 of the Act of August 7, 1939 (53 Stat. 1232, ch. 502), referred to in text, was classified to section 1248 of Title 48, Territories and Insular Possessions, which was omitted from the Code.

Act of November 8, 1945 (59 Stat. 577, ch. 454), referred to in text, was classified to section 1249 of Title 48, Territories and Insular Possessions, which was omitted from the Code.

This Act, referred to in text, is act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, 60 Stat. 141, known as the Philippine Trade Act of 1946, which is classified principally to subchapters I to IV of this chapter. Subchapters I, II, and III of this chapter were omitted from the Code. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1354 of this title and Tables.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1373 of this title.

### § 1357. Trade agreements with the Philippines

Until July 4, 1974, no trade agreement shall be made with the Philippines under section 1351 of

title 19, unless, prior to such time, the President of the United States has made the proclamation provided for in section 1347 of this title, or the executive agreement provided for in subchapter III of this chapter has been terminated.

(Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title V, § 508, 60 Stat. 158.)

#### SUSPENSION OF PROVISIONS

Section not applicable during such time as the revised agreement between the United States and the Philippines is in effect, see section 1373 of this title.

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The executive agreement provided for in subchapter III of this chapter, referred to in text, expired July 4, 1974.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1373 of this title.

### § 1358. Rights of third countries

The benefits granted by subchapters I to IV of this chapter, and by the executive agreement provided for in subchapter III of this chapter, to the Philippines, Philippine articles or products, and Philippine citizens, shall not, by reason of any provision of any existing treaty or agreement with any third country, be extended to such country or its products, citizens, or subjects.

(Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title V, § 509, 60 Stat. 158.)

#### SUSPENSION OF PROVISIONS

Section not applicable during such time as the revised agreement between the United States and the Philippines is in effect, see section 1373 of this title.

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Subchapters I to IV of this chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, 60 Stat. 141, known as the Philippine Trade Act of 1946, which is classified principally to subchapters I to IV of this chapter. Subchapters I, II, and III of this chapter were omitted from the Code. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1354 of this title and Tables.

The executive agreement provided for in subchapter III of this chapter, referred to in text, expired July 4, 1974.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1373 of this title.

### § 1359. Omitted

#### CODIFICATION

Section, act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title V, § 510, 60 Stat. 158, related to administration of subchapter I of this chapter. See Codification note for section 1352 of this title.

### § 1360. Definitions

(a) For the purposes of subchapters I to IV of this chapter—

(1) The term “person” includes partnerships, corporations, and associations.

(2) The term “United States”, when used in a geographical sense, means the States, the District of Columbia, the Territories of Alaska and Hawaii, and Puerto Rico.

(3) The term “ordinary customs duty” means a customs duty based on the article as

such (whether or not such duty is also based in any manner on the use, value, or method of production of the article, or on the amount of like articles imported, or on any other factor); but does not include—

(A) a customs duty based on an act or omission of any person with respect to the importation of the article, or of the country from which the article is exported, or from which it comes; or

(B) a countervailing duty imposed to offset a subsidy, bounty, or grant; or

(C) an anti-dumping duty imposed to offset the selling of merchandise for exportation at a price less than the prevailing price in the country of export; or

(D) any tax, fee, charge, or exaction, imposed on or in connection with importation unless the law of the country imposing it designates or imposes it as a customs duty or contains a provision to the effect that it shall be treated as a duty imposed under the customs laws; or

(E) the tax imposed by section 2491(c) of the Internal Revenue Code with respect to an article, merchandise, or combination, 10 per centum or more of the quantity by weight of which consists of, or is derived directly or indirectly from, one or more of the oils, fatty acids, or salts specified in section 2470 of the Internal Revenue Code; or the tax imposed by section 3500 of the Internal Revenue Code.

(4) The term “Philippine article” means an article which is the product of the Philippines, unless, in the case of an article produced with the use of materials imported into the Philippines from any foreign country (except the United States) the aggregate value of such imported materials at the time of importation into the Philippines was more than twenty per centum of the value of the article imported into the United States, the value of such article to be determined in accordance with, and as of the time provided by, the customs laws of the United States in effect at the time of importation of such article. As used in this paragraph the term “value”, when used in reference to a material imported into the Philippines, includes the value of the material ascertained under the customs laws of the Philippines in effect at the time of importation into the Philippines, and, if not included in such value, the cost of bringing the material to the Philippines, but does not include the cost of landing it at the port of importation, or customs duties collected in the Philippines. For the purposes of this paragraph any imported material, used in the production of an article in the Philippines, shall be considered as having been used in the production of an article subsequently produced in the Philippines, which is the product of a chain of production in the Philippines in the course of which an article, which is the product of one stage of the chain, is used by its producer or another person, in a subsequent stage of the chain, as a material in the production of another article.

(5) The term “United States article” means an article which is the product of the United

States, unless, in the case of an article produced with the use of materials imported into the United States from any foreign country (except the Philippines) the aggregate value of such imported materials at the time of importation into the United States was more than twenty per centum of the value of the article imported into the Philippines, the value of such article to be determined in accordance with, and as of the time provided by, the customs laws of the Philippines in effect at the time of importation of such article. As used in this paragraph the term “value”, when used in reference to a material imported into the United States, includes the value of the material ascertained under the customs laws of the United States in effect at the time of importation into the United States, and, if not included in such value, the cost of bringing the material to the United States, but does not include the cost of landing it at the port of importation, or customs duties collected in the United States. For the purposes of this paragraph any imported material, used in the production of an article in the United States, shall be considered as having been used in the production of an article subsequently produced in the United States, which is the product of a chain of production in the United States in the course of which an article, which is the product of one stage of the chain, is used by its producer or another person, in a subsequent stage of the chain, as a material in the production of another article.

(6) The term “United States duty” means the rate or rates of ordinary customs duty which (at the time and place of entry, or withdrawal from warehouse, in the United States for consumption, of the Philippine article) would be applicable to a like article if imported from that foreign country which is entitled to the lowest rate, or the lowest aggregate of rates, of ordinary customs duty with respect to such like article.

(7) The term “Philippine duty” means the rate or rates of ordinary customs duty which (at the time and place of entry, or withdrawal from warehouse, in the Philippines for consumption, of the United States article) would be applicable to a like article if imported from that foreign country which is entitled to the lowest rate, or the lowest aggregate of rates, of ordinary customs duty with respect to such like article.

(8) The term “internal tax” includes an internal fee, charge, or exaction, and includes—

(A) the tax imposed by section 2491(c) of the Internal Revenue Code with respect to an article, merchandise, or combination, 10 per centum or more of the quantity by weight of which consists of, or is derived directly or indirectly from, one or more of the oils, fatty acids, or salts specified in section 2470 of the Internal Revenue Code; and the tax imposed by section 3500 of the Internal Revenue Code; and

(B) any other tax, fee, charge, or exaction, imposed on or in connection with importation unless the law of the country imposing it designates or imposes it as a customs duty or contains a provision to the effect that it

shall be treated as a duty imposed under the customs laws.

(b) For the purposes of sections 1271(b) and 1311(b) of this title, any material, used in the production of an article, shall be considered as having been used in the production of an article subsequently produced, which is the product of a chain of production in the course of which an article, which is the product of one stage of the chain, is used by its producer or another person, in a subsequent stage of the chain, as a material in the production of another article.

(c) For the purposes of paragraphs (6) and (7) of subsection (a) of this section—

(1) if an article is entitled to be imported from a foreign country free of ordinary customs duty, that country shall be considered as the country entitled to the lowest rate of ordinary customs duty with respect to such article; and

(2) a reduction in ordinary customs duty granted any country, by law, treaty, trade agreement, or otherwise, with respect to any article, shall be converted into the equivalent reduction in the rate of ordinary customs duty otherwise applicable to such article.

(d) The terms “includes” and “including” when used in a definition contained in subchapters I to IV of this chapter shall not be deemed to exclude other things otherwise within the meaning of the term defined.

(Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title I, § 2, 60 Stat. 141.)

#### SUSPENSION OF PROVISIONS

Section not applicable during such time as the revised agreement between the United States and the Philippines is in effect, see section 1373 of this title.

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Subchapters I to IV of this chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (d), was in the original “this Act”, meaning act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, 60 Stat. 141, known as the Philippine Trade Act of 1946, which is classified principally to subchapters I to IV of this chapter. Subchapters I, II, and III of this chapter were omitted from the Code. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1354 of this title and Tables.

Sections 2470 and 2491(c) of the Internal Revenue Code, referred to in subsec. (a)(3)(E), (8)(A), are references to sections 2470 and 2491(c) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1939, which were repealed by section 7851 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1954, Title 26. The Internal Revenue Code of 1954 was redesignated the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 by Pub. L. 99-514, § 2, Oct. 22, 1986, 100 Stat. 2095. Section 2470 was reenacted as sections 4511 and 4513 of Title 26, and section 2491 was reenacted as part of sections 4581 and 4582 of Title 26. Sections 4511, 4513, 4581, and 4582 of Title 26 were repealed by Pub. L. 87-456, title III, § 302(d), May 24, 1962, 76 Stat. 77, effective Aug. 31, 1963.

Section 3500 of the Internal Revenue Code, referred to in subsec. (a)(3)(E), (8)(A), is reference to section 3500 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1939, which was repealed by section 7851 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1954, Title 26. The Internal Revenue Code of 1954 was redesignated the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 by Pub. L. 99-514, § 2, Oct. 22, 1986, 100 Stat. 2095. See section 4501 of Title 26, Internal Revenue Code.

The customs laws, referred to in subsec. (a)(3)(D) and (8)(B), are classified generally to Title 19, Customs Duties.

#### ADMISSION OF ALASKA AND HAWAII TO STATEHOOD

Alaska was admitted into the Union on Jan. 3, 1959, on issuance of Proc. No. 3269, Jan. 3, 1959, 24 F.R. 81, 73

Stat. c16, and Hawaii was admitted into the Union on Aug. 21, 1959, on issuance of Proc. No. 3309, Aug. 21, 1959, 24 F.R. 6868, 73 Stat. c74. For Alaska Statehood Law, see Pub. L. 85-508, July 7, 1958, 72 Stat. 339, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 48, Territories and Insular Possessions. For Hawaii Statehood Law, see Pub. L. 86-3, Mar. 18, 1959, 73 Stat. 4, set out as a note preceding section 491 of Title 48.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1346, 1373 of this title.

#### SUBCHAPTER IV—A—TRADE RELATIONS UNDER REVISED AGREEMENT

##### SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in title 48 section 734.

#### §§ 1371, 1372. Omitted

##### CODIFICATION

Section 1371, act Aug. 1, 1955, ch. 438, title I, § 2, 69 Stat. 413, which defined revised agreement, was omitted in view of the expiration of the revised agreement between the United States and the Republic of the Philippines which occurred on July 4, 1974.

Section 1372, act Aug. 1, 1955, ch. 438, title II, § 201, 69 Stat. 413, authorized revised agreement. See Codification note for section 1371 of this title.

##### REVISED AGREEMENT BETWEEN UNITED STATES AND PHILIPPINES

Section 201 of act Aug. 1, 1955, provided in part for a revised agreement, accompanied by a protocol, between the United States and the Republic of the Philippines concerning trade and other related matters during a transitional period following the institution of Philippine Independence on July 4, 1946, which agreement by the terms of Article XI thereof, was to have no effect after July 3, 1974.

##### MODIFICATION OF TEXT OF REVISED AGREEMENT

Section 202 of act Aug. 1, 1955, provided that the text of the revised agreement between the United States and the Republic of the Philippines concerning trade and other related matters during a transitional period after Philippine independence was to be modified only to the extent necessary to correct errors or references to laws, to reflect executive or legislative action taken by the Philippines, or merely as changes in style.

##### DUTY-FREE TREATMENT FOR SCRAP TOBACCO AND FILLER TOBACCO

Pub. L. 87-47, June 16, 1961, 75 Stat. 92, provided that the duty-free treatment for scrap tobacco and filler tobacco described in item B in the schedule to paragraph 2 of article II of the agreement between the United States and the Republic of the Philippines concerning trade and other related matters during a transitional period after Philippine independence, as revised, was to apply only to articles certified by the Philippines as having been allocated for exportation to the United States free of duty under that paragraph.

#### § 1373. Suspension of Philippine Trade Act of 1946

The Philippine Trade Act of 1946 [22 U.S.C. 1251 et seq.] (except section 506(a) of this title [22 U.S.C. 1356] relating to termination of payments into Philippine Treasury, and except amendments and repeals made by such Act) shall not apply during such time as the revised agreement is in effect.

(Aug. 1, 1955, ch. 438, title III, § 302, 69 Stat. 426.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Philippine Trade Act of 1946, referred to in text, is act Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, 60 Stat. 141, which is classi-

fied principally to subchapters I to IV of this chapter. Subchapters I, II, and III of this chapter were omitted from the Code. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1354 of this title and Tables.

The revised agreement, referred to in text, was set out as a note under section 1371 of this title.

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 301(b) of title III of act Aug. 1, 1955, provided that: "The provisions of this title [enacting sections 1373 to 1379 of this title and amending section 734 of Title 48, Territories and Insular Possessions] shall take effect on January 1, 1956, but only if the President of the United States has made the proclamation referred to in subsection (a) [section 1379 of this title]."

## SHORT TITLE

Section 1 of act Aug. 1, 1955, provided that: "This Act [enacting this subchapter and amending section 734 of Title 48, Territories and Insular Possessions] may be cited as the 'Philippine Trade Agreement Revision Act of 1955'."

## §§ 1374 to 1379. Omitted

## CODIFICATION

Section 1374, act Aug. 1, 1955, ch. 438, title III, §303, 69 Stat. 426, related to quotas established by article III of the revised agreement. See Codification note for section 1371 of this title.

Section 1375, act Aug. 1, 1955, ch. 438, title III, §304, 69 Stat. 426, related to suspension of processing tax on coconut oil. See Codification note for section 1371 of this title.

Section 1376, act Aug. 1, 1955, ch. 438, title III, §305, 69 Stat. 426, related to rights of third countries to benefits granted Philippines by revised agreement. See Codification note for section 1371 of this title.

Section 1377, act Aug. 1, 1955, ch. 438, title III, §306, 69 Stat. 426, related to rights of third countries to benefits granted Philippines by revised agreement. See Codification note for section 1371 of this title.

Section 1378, act Aug. 1, 1955, ch. 438, title III, §307, 69 Stat. 426, related to administration of revised agreement. See Codification note for section 1371 of this title.

Section 1379, act Aug. 1, 1955, ch. 438, title III, §301(a), 69 Stat. 426, related to effective date of revised agreement. See Codification note for section 1371 of this title.

## SUBCHAPTER V—PROPERTY RETAINED BY THE UNITED STATES

## SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in title 40 section 474; title 50 App. section 39.

## § 1381. Retention by United States of title to real and personal property

There shall remain vested in the Government of the United States or its agencies or instrumentalities all the right, title, and interest of the said Government or its agencies or instrumentalities to all real and personal property within the Philippine Islands as may now be vested in, or later be acquired by the Government of the United States or any of its agencies or instrumentalities.

(July 3, 1946, ch. 536, §2, 60 Stat. 418.)

## SHORT TITLE

Section 1 of act July 3, 1946, provided that: "This Act [enacting this subchapter] may be cited as the 'Philippine Property Act of 1946'."

## § 1382. Administration of the Trading With the Enemy Act in Philippines

The Trading With the Enemy Act of October 6, 1917 (40 Stat. 411), as amended, shall continue in force in the Philippines after July 4, 1946, and all powers and authority conferred upon the President of the United States or the Alien Property Custodian by the terms of the said Trading With the Enemy Act, as amended, with respect to the Philippines, shall continue thereafter to be exercised by the President of the United States, or such officer or agency as he may designate: *Provided*, That all property vested in or transferred to the President of the United States, the Alien Property Custodian, or any such officer or agency as the President of the United States may designate under the Trading With the Enemy Act, as amended, which was located in the Philippines at the time of such vesting, or the proceeds thereof, and which shall remain after the satisfaction of any claim payable under the Trading With the Enemy Act, as amended, and after the payment of such costs and expenses of administration as may by law be charged against such property or proceeds, shall be transferred by the President of the United States to the Republic of the Philippines: *Provided further*, That such property, or proceeds thereof, may be transferred by the President of the United States to the Republic of the Philippines upon indemnification acceptable to the President of the United States by the Republic of the Philippines for such claims, costs, and expenses of administration as may by law be charged against such property or proceeds thereof before final adjudication of such claims, costs, and expenses of administration: *Provided further*, That the courts of first instance of the Republic of the Philippines are given jurisdiction to make and enter all such rules as to notice or otherwise, and all such orders and decrees, and to issue such process as may be necessary and proper in the premises to enforce any orders, rules, and regulations issued by the President of the United States, the Alien Property Custodian, or such officer or agency designated by the President of the United States pursuant to the Trading With the Enemy Act, as amended, with such right of appeal therefrom as may be provided by law: *And provided further*, That any suit authorized under the Trading With the Enemy Act, as amended, with respect to property vested in or transferred to the President of the United States, the Alien Property Custodian, or any officer or agency designated by the President of the United States hereunder, which at the time of such vesting or transfer was located within the Philippines, shall after July 4, 1946, be brought, in the appropriate court of first instance of the Republic of the Philippines, against the officer or agency hereunder designated by the President of the United States with such right of appeal therefrom as may be provided by law, but suits with respect to such property shall after ninety days from December 21, 1950, be brought only in the courts of the United States.

(July 3, 1946, ch. 536, §3, 60 Stat. 418; Dec. 21, 1950, ch. 1144, 64 Stat. 1116.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Trading With the Enemy Act of October 6, 1917, as amended, referred to in text, is act Oct. 6, 1917, ch. 106, 40 Stat. 411, as amended, which is classified to sections 1 to 6, 7 to 39 and 41 to 44 of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

## AMENDMENTS

1950—Act Dec. 21, 1950, required that 90 days after Dec. 21, 1950, all suits against the Philippine Alien Property Administration be brought in United States courts instead of in Philippine courts.

## TERMINATION OF PHILIPPINE ALIEN PROPERTY ADMINISTRATION; TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

Section 101 of act Sept. 6, 1950, ch. 896, Ch. VIII, title I, 64 Stat. 699, provided in part that the Philippine Alien Property Administration cease to exist after June 30, 1951, and all duties performed by such Administration as of that date be transferred to the Office of Alien Property Custodian, including all records, files, and other property.

## EXECUTIVE ORDER No. 9789

Ex. Ord. No. 9789, Oct. 14, 1946, 11 F.R. 11981, related to the establishment of the Philippine Alien Property Administration, and was superseded by Ex. Ord. No. 9818, formerly set out below.

## EXECUTIVE ORDER No. 9818

Ex. Ord. No. 9818, Jan. 7, 1947, 12 F.R. 133, amended Oct. 15, 1949, ch. 695, §5(a), 63 Stat. 880, related to the establishment of the Philippine Alien Property Administration, and was omitted under the authority of Ex. Ord. No. 10254, set out below, which terminated the Administration.

## EXECUTIVE ORDER No. 9876

Ex. Ord. No. 9876, July 24, 1947, 12 F.R. 4981, authorized the delegation of certain presidential functions to the Philippine Alien Property Administrator and was omitted in view of Ex. Ord. No. 10254, set out below, which terminated the Administration.

## EXECUTIVE ORDER No. 9921

Ex. Ord. No. 9921, Jan. 10, 1948, 13 F.R. 171, authorized the Philippine Alien Property Administrator to transfer certain property to the Republic of the Philippines, and was omitted under the authority of Ex. Ord. No. 10254, set out below, which terminated the Alien Property Administration.

## EX. ORD. No. 10254. TERMINATION OF PHILIPPINE ALIEN PROPERTY ADMINISTRATION AND TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS TO DEPARTMENT OF JUSTICE

Ex. Ord. No. 10254, June 15, 1951, 16 F.R. 5829, provided:

1. The Philippine Alien Property Administration, established by Executive Order No. 9818 of January 7, 1947 [formerly set out as note under this section], is hereby terminated. All authority, rights, privileges, powers, duties, and functions vested in such Administration or in the Philippine Alien Property Administrator or transferred or delegated thereto are hereby vested in or transferred or delegated to the Attorney General, as the case may be, and shall be administered by him or under his direction and control by such officers and agencies of the Department of Justice as he may designate.

2. All property or interests vested in or transferred to the Philippine Alien Property Administration or the Administrator thereof, and all proceeds thereof, which are held or administered by the Philippine Alien Property Administration or the Administrator thereof are hereby transferred to the Attorney General of the United States.

3. All personnel, records, files, furniture, funds, authorizations, equipment, and supplies of the Philippine

Alien Property Administration are hereby transferred to the Department of Justice.

4. All necessary expenses incurred in the administration or operation of the functions, duties, authority, rights, privileges, and powers hereby vested in or transferred or delegated to the Attorney General shall be paid, to the extent permitted and in the manner prescribed by law, from funds or property or interests vested in or transferred to the Attorney General by or pursuant to the authority contained in this order, so as to prevent diminution of funds otherwise available for the War Claims Fund under section 39 of the Trading with the Enemy Act, as amended by section 12 of the act of July 3, 1948, 62 Stat. 1246 [section 39 of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense].

This order shall become effective at the close of business in Washington, D.C., on June 29, 1951, and shall at that time supersede all prior Executive orders to the extent that they are in conflict with this order.

HARRY S TRUMAN.

## TRANSFER OF ALIEN PROPERTY CUSTODIAN FUNCTIONS

Functions of Alien Property Custodian and Office of Alien Property Custodian, except those relating to property or interests in Philippines, vested in Attorney General. See notes set out under section 6 of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1383 of this title.

**§ 1383. Transfer of property by President of United States**

In respect to property not transferable to the Republic of the Philippines under section 1382 of this title, the President of the United States is authorized, in his discretion and under such terms and conditions as he may deem appropriate, to transfer to the Republic of the Philippines any or all of the right, title, and interest of the Government of the United States or its agencies or instrumentalities to any or all real and personal property vested in such agencies or instrumentalities.

(July 3, 1946, ch. 536, §4, 60 Stat. 419.)

## EX. ORD. No. 9937. DELEGATION OF PRESIDENT'S AUTHORITY TO AGENCIES PARTICIPATING IN THE PHILIPPINE RECOVERY PROGRAM

Ex. Ord. No. 9937, Mar. 20, 1948, 13 F.R. 1503 as amended by act June 30, 1949, ch. 288, title I, §103(a), 63 Stat. 380; 1949 Reorg. Plan No. 7, §2, eff. Aug. 19, 1949, 14 F.R. 5228, 63 Stat. 1070; 1950 Reorg. Plan No. 21, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3178, 64 Stat. 1273, provided:

By virtue of the authority vested in me by the Constitution and the statutes, and as President of the United States, it is hereby ordered as follows:

The Commissioner of Public Roads of the Department of Commerce, the Chief of Engineers of the United States Army, the Philippine War Damage Commission, the Surgeon General of the Public Health Service of the Federal Security Agency [now the Department of Health and Human Services], the Maritime Administration, the Director of the Fish and Wildlife Service [now the United States Fish and Wildlife Service] of the Department of the Interior, and the Administrator of Civil Aeronautics, the Chief of the Weather Bureau [now the National Weather Service], and the Director of the Coast and Geodetic Survey [now the National Ocean Survey] of the Department of Commerce are hereby authorized, as to their respective agencies, to exercise the authority vested in the President by section 4 of the Philippine Property Act of 1946 (60 Stat. 419) [this section]: *Provided*, that this authority shall be exercised only with respect to property located in the Philippines in the possession and control of the respec-

tive agencies and utilized in carrying out the provisions of Title III of the Philippine Rehabilitation Act of 1946 (60 Stat. 135) [sections 1781 to 1789 of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense].

**§ 1384. Transfer of shares of corporations owning agricultural lands; consideration; indemnification**

Immediately upon passage of this subchapter the Alien Property Custodian of the United States shall enter into an agreement with the President of the Philippines to transfer to the Philippine Government for a nominal cash consideration all shares now vested or hereafter vested by the Alien Property Custodian of corporations owning in fee, leasing, or otherwise operating or controlling agricultural lands in the Philippines, other agricultural lands in the Philippines, vested or hereafter vested by the Alien Property Custodian not included in the foregoing, and improved property in Manila vested or hereafter vested by the Alien Property Custodian which in his judgment is urgently needed for the operation of an administrative agency of the Philippine Government: *Provided*, That in respect to property transferred under this section to the Philippine Government, it shall be made a part of the agreement that the Philippine Government shall fully indemnify the United States for all claims payable under the Trading With the Enemy Act, as amended, and for all such costs and expenses of administration as may by law be charged against such property or proceeds thereof.

(July 3, 1946, ch. 536, § 5, 60 Stat. 419.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Trading With the Enemy Act, as amended, referred to in text, is act Oct. 6, 1917, ch. 106, 40 Stat. 411, as amended, which is classified to sections 1 to 6, 7 to 39 and 41 to 44 of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

TRANSFER OF ALIEN PROPERTY CUSTODIAN FUNCTIONS

Functions of Alien Property Custodian and Office of Alien Property Custodian, except those relating to property or interests in Philippines, vested in Attorney General. See notes set out under section 6 of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense.

**§ 1385. Ownership of naval reservations, diplomatic property, etc., unaffected**

Nothing contained in this subchapter shall be construed as amending the provisions of the Act of March 24, 1934 (48 Stat. 456), as amended, respecting naval reservations and fueling stations, and diplomatic or consular property, and the property of the High Commissioner to the Philippine Islands, nor as amending the provisions of section 1392 of this title, respecting bases for the mutual protection of the Philippine Islands and the United States.

(July 3, 1946, ch. 536, § 6, 60 Stat. 419.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Act of March 24, 1934, as amended, referred to in text, is act Mar. 24, 1934, ch. 84, 48 Stat. 456, as amended, which enacted sections 1281a, 1391, 1393 to 1395 of this title, and section 1248 of Title 48, Territories and Insular Possessions, amended sections 1231 to 1234, 1237, 1238, 1239, 1241 to 1243, 1245, and 1247, of Title 48, and en-

acted a provision set out as a note under section 1391 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

**§ 1386. Definitions**

For the purposes of this subchapter the term "Philippine Government" shall mean "Government of the Commonwealth of the Philippines" until the date of independence, and thereafter it shall mean the "Government of the Republic of the Philippines".

(July 3, 1946, ch. 536, § 7, 60 Stat. 420.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Date of independence, referred to in text, was July 4, 1946 as recognized by 1946 Proc. No. 2695, eff. July 4, 1946, set out as a note under section 1394 of this title.

SUBCHAPTER VI—MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

**§ 1391. Transfer of property and rights to Philippine Commonwealth**

All the property and rights which may have been acquired in the Philippine Islands by the United States under the treaties mentioned in the first section of this Act, except such land or other property as has heretofore been designated by the President of the United States for Military and other reservations of the Government of the United States, and except such land or other property or rights or interests therein as may have been sold or otherwise disposed of in accordance with law, are granted to the government of the Commonwealth of the Philippine Islands when constituted.

(Mar. 24, 1934, ch. 84, § 5, 48 Stat. 459.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Treaties mentioned in the first section of this Act, referred to in text, were treaty of peace between the United States and Spain of December 10, 1898, and treaty between Spain and the United States concluded at Washington, Nov. 7, 1900.

The first section of this Act, referred to in text, is section 1 of act Mar. 24, 1934, which was classified to section 1231 of Title 48, Territories and Insular Possessions, and was omitted from the Code.

Since their independence, the Philippine Islands have been a republic, and are no longer designated as a "Commonwealth", referred to in text. See note below.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

Provisions similar to those in this section were contained in act Jan. 17, 1933, ch. 11, § 5, 47 Stat. 764.

SEPARABILITY

Section 16 of act Mar. 24, 1934, provided: "If any provision of this Act [enacting this section and sections 1281a, 1393 to 1395 of this title, amending sections 1231 to 1234, 1237 to 1239, 1241 to 1243, 1245, 1247, and 1248 of Title 48, Territories and Insular Possessions] is declared unconstitutional or the applicability thereof to any person or circumstances is held invalid, the validity of the remainder of the act and the applicability of such provisions and circumstances shall not be affected thereby."

PHILIPPINE INDEPENDENCE

Philippine Islands granted independence by Proc. No. 2695, which is set out as a note under section 1394 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1394 of this title.



**§ 1392. Acquisition of military and naval bases by United States**

After negotiation with the President of the Commonwealth of the Philippines, or the President of the Filipino Republic, the President of the United States is authorized by such means as he finds appropriate to withhold or to acquire and to retain such bases, necessary appurtenances to such bases, and the rights incident thereto, in addition to any provided for by the Act of March 24, 1934, as he may deem necessary for the mutual protection of the Philippine Islands and of the United States.

(June 29, 1944, ch. 322, § 2, 58 Stat. 626.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Act of March 24, 1934, as amended, referred to in text, is act Mar. 24, 1934, ch. 84, 48 Stat. 456, as amended, which enacted sections 1281a, 1391, 1393 to 1395 of this title, and section 1248 of Title 48, Territories and Insular Possessions, amended sections 1231 to 1234, 1237, 1238, 1239, 1241 to 1243, 1245, and 1247 of Title 48, and enacted a provision set out as a note under section 1391 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

PHILIPPINE INDEPENDENCE

Philippine Islands granted independence by Proc. No. 2695, which is set out as a note under section 1394 of this title, and they now constitute a republic.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1385 of this title.

**§ 1393. Supplementary sinking fund for bond payments; purchase of bonds by United States; creation of special trust account**

(a) to (f). Repealed. Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title V, § 511(2), 60 Stat. 158.

(g)(1) The Philippine Government shall pay to the Secretary of the Treasury of the United States, at the end of each calendar quarter, all of the moneys received during such quarter from export taxes (less refunds), imposed and collected in accordance with the provisions of this section, and said moneys shall be deposited in an account with the Treasurer of the United States and shall constitute a supplementary sinking fund for the payment of bonds of the Philippines, its Provinces, cities, and municipalities, issued prior to May 1, 1934, under authority of Acts of Congress: *Provided, however*, That moneys received from any export tax imposed on any article which is shipped from the Philippines to the United States prior to July 4, 1946, and which is entered, or withdrawn from warehouse for consumption, on or after July 4, 1946, shall be refunded by the independent Government of the Philippines.

(2) The said Secretary of the Treasury is authorized to accept the deposits of the proceeds of the export taxes referred to in subdivision (1) of this subsection in accordance with section 1333<sup>1</sup> of this title.

(3) The Secretary of the Treasury of the United States, with the approval of the Philippine Government, is authorized to purchase with such supplementary sinking-fund bonds of the Philippines, its Provinces, cities, and mu-

nicipalities, issued prior to May 1, 1934, under authority of Acts of Congress and to invest such fund in interest-bearing obligations of the United States or in obligations guaranteed as to both principal and interest by the United States. Whenever the Secretary of the Treasurer<sup>2</sup> finds that such fund is in excess of an amount adequate to meet future interest and principal payments on all such bonds, he may, with the approval of the Philippine Government, purchase with such excess any other bonds of the Philippines, its Provinces, cities, municipalities, and instrumentalities. For the purpose of this subsection obligations may be acquired on original issue at par, or by purchase of outstanding obligations at the market price. Any obligations acquired by the fund may, with the approval of the Philippine Government, be sold by the Secretary of the Treasury at the market price and the proceeds of such sale and the proceeds of the payment upon maturity or redemption of any obligations held in the supplementary sinking fund, as well as all moneys in any manner earned by such fund or on any obligations acquired by said fund, shall be paid into the said fund.

(4) During the three months preceding July 4, 1946, the Philippine Government and the Secretary of the Treasury of the United States shall confer to ascertain that portion of the bonds of the Philippines, its Provinces, cities, and municipalities, issued prior to May 1, 1934, under authority of Acts of Congress, which will remain outstanding on July 4, 1946; and the Philippine Government shall turn over to the Secretary of the Treasury of the United States for destruction all such bonds that are then held, canceled, or uncanceled, in any of the sinking funds maintained for the payment of such bonds. After such outstanding portion of this indebtedness is thus determined, and before July 4, 1946, (i) there shall be set up with the Treasurer of the United States a special trust account in the name of the Secretary of the Treasury of the United States to pay future interest and principal payments on such bonds; (ii) the Philippine Government shall pay to the Secretary of the Treasury of the United States for deposit in this special trust account all of the sinking funds maintained for the payment of such bonds; and (iii) the Secretary of the Treasury of the United States shall transfer into this special trust account all of the proceeds of the supplementary sinking fund referred to in subdivision (1) of this subsection. Any portion of such special trust account found by the Secretary of the Treasury of the United States on July 4, 1946, to be in excess of an amount adequate to meet future interest and principal payments on all such outstanding bonds shall be turned over to the Treasury of the independent Government of the Philippines to be set up as an additional sinking fund to be used for the purpose of liquidating and paying all other obligations of the Philippines, its Provinces, cities, municipalities, and instrumentalities. To the extent that such special trust account is determined by the Secretary of the Treasury of the United States to be insufficient to pay interest and principal on the outstanding bonds of the Philippines, its Provinces, cities,

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

<sup>2</sup> So in original. Probably should be "Treasury".

and municipalities, issued prior to May 1, 1934, under authority of Acts of Congress, the Philippine Government shall, on or before July 3, 1946, pay to the Secretary of the Treasury of the United States for deposit in such special trust account an amount which said Secretary of the Treasury determines is required to assure payment of principal and interest on such bonds: *Provided, however*, That if the Secretary of the Treasury of the United States finds that this requirement would impose an undue hardship upon the Philippines, then the Philippine Government shall continue to provide annually the necessary funds for the payment of interest and principal on such bonds until such time as the Secretary of the Treasury of the United States determines that the amount in the special trust account is adequate to meet interest and principal payments on such bonds.

(5) On and after July 4, 1946, the Secretary of the Treasury of the United States is authorized, with the approval of the independent Government of the Philippines, to purchase at the market price for the special trust account bonds of the Philippines, its Provinces, cities, and municipalities, issued prior to May 1, 1934, under authority of Acts of Congress. The Secretary of the Treasury of the United States is also authorized, with the approval of the independent Government of the Philippines, to invest all or any part of such special trust account in any interest-bearing obligations of the United States or in any obligations guaranteed as to both principal and interest by the United States. Such obligations may be acquired on original issue at the issue price or by purchase of outstanding obligations at the market price, and any obligations acquired by the special trust account may, with the approval of the independent Government of the Philippines, be sold by the Secretary of the Treasury at the market price, and the proceeds of the payment upon maturity or redemption of such obligations shall be held as a part of such special trust account. Whenever the special trust account is determined by the Secretary of the Treasury of the United States to be adequate to meet interest and principal payments on all outstanding bonds of the Philippines, its Provinces, cities, and municipalities, issued prior to May 1, 1934, under authority of Acts of Congress, the Secretary of the Treasury is authorized to pay from such trust account the principal of such outstanding bonds and to pay all interest due and owing on such bonds. All such bonds and interest coupons paid or purchased by the special trust account shall be canceled and destroyed by the Secretary of the Treasury of the United States. From time to time after July 4, 1946, any moneys in such special trust account found by the Secretary of the Treasury of the United States to be in excess of an amount adequate to meet interest and principal payments on all such bonds shall be turned over to the treasurer of the independent Government of the Philippines.

(Mar. 24, 1934, ch. 84, § 6, 48 Stat. 459; Aug. 7, 1939, ch. 502, § 1, 53 Stat. 1226; Apr. 30, 1946, ch. 244, title V, § 511(2), 60 Stat. 158; Sept. 22, 1959, Pub. L. 86-346, title I, § 104(1), 73 Stat. 622.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 1333 of this title, referred to in subsec. (g)(2), was omitted from the Code.

## PRIOR PROVISIONS

Similar provisions were contained in act Jan. 17, 1933, ch. 11, § 6, 47 Stat. 764.

## AMENDMENTS

1959—Subsec. (g)(5). Pub. L. 86-346 substituted “on original issue at the issue price” for “on original issue at par”.

1946—Act Apr. 30, 1946, repealed opening par. and subsecs. (a) to (f), (h) relating to relations with the United States pending complete independence, and trade relations.

1939—Act Aug. 7, 1939, amended section generally.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1946 AMENDMENT

Amendment by act Apr. 30, 1946 effective May 1, 1946, see section 512 of act Apr. 30, 1946, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1354 of this title.

## TERMINATION OF ACCEPTANCE OF DEPOSITS OF EXPORT TAXES

Authority of Secretary of the Treasury to accept deposits of proceeds of export taxes in accordance with section 1333 of this title terminated on July 1, 1951, under the provisions of act Aug. 7, 1946, ch. 809, § 2, 60 Stat. 901.

## CROSS REFERENCES

Trade relations between United States and Philippines after independence, see sections 1354 to 1358, 1360 of this title.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1395 of this title.

**§ 1394. Recognition of Philippine independence****(a) Withdrawal of American sovereignty**

On the 4th day of July immediately following the expiration of a period of ten years from the date of the inauguration of the new government under the constitution provided for in this Act, the President of the United States shall by proclamation withdraw and surrender all right of possession, supervision, jurisdiction, control, or sovereignty then existing and exercised by the United States in and over the territory and people of the Philippine Islands, including all military and other reservations of the Government of the United States in the Philippines (except such naval reservations and fueling stations as are reserved under section 1391 of this title), and, on behalf of the United States, shall recognize the independence of the Philippine Islands as a separate and self-governing nation and acknowledge the authority and control over the same of the government instituted by the people thereof, under the constitution then in force.

**(b) Naval reservations and fueling stations**

The President of the United States is authorized and empowered to enter into negotiations with the government of the Philippine Islands, not later than two years after his proclamation recognizing the independence of the Philippine Islands, for the adjustment and settlement of all questions relating to naval reservations and fueling stations of the United States in the Philippine Islands, and pending such adjustment and settlement the matter of naval reservations and

fueling stations shall remain in its present status.

**(c) Property for diplomatic purposes**

(1) Whenever the President of the United States shall find that any properties in the Philippines, owned by the Philippine Government or by private persons, would be suitable for diplomatic or consular establishments of the United States after the inauguration of the independent Government, he may, with the approval of the Philippine Government, and in exchange for the conveyance of title to the United States, transfer to the said Government or private persons any properties of the United States in the Philippines. Title to any properties so transferred to private persons, and title to any properties so acquired by the United States, shall be vested in fee simple in such persons and the United States, respectively, notwithstanding the provisions contained in subsection (a) of this section.

(2) Whenever, prior to July 4, 1946, the President of the United States shall find that any properties of the United States in the Philippines would be suitable for diplomatic and consular establishments of the United States after the inauguration of the independent Government, he shall designate the same by the issuance of a proclamation or proclamations, and title to any properties so designated shall continue to be vested in fee simple in the United States notwithstanding the provisions contained in subsection (a) of this section.

(3) Title to the lands and buildings pertaining to the official residences of the United States High Commissioner to the Philippine Islands in the cities of Manila and Baguio, together with all fixtures and movable objects, shall continue to be vested in the United States after July 4, 1946, notwithstanding the provisions contained in subsection (a) of this section.

(4) Administrative supervision and control over any properties acquired or designated by the President of the United States pursuant to this subsection, and over the official residences in the Philippines of the High Commissioner, shall, on and after July 4, 1946, be exercised by the Secretary of State, in accordance with Acts of Congress relating to property held by the United States in foreign countries for official establishments.

(Mar. 24, 1934, ch. 84, § 10, 48 Stat. 463; Aug. 7, 1939, ch. 502, § 3, 53 Stat. 1230.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in subsec. (a), is act Mar. 24, 1934, ch. 84, 48 Stat. 456, as amended, which enacted sections 1281a, 1391, 1393 to 1395 of this title, and section 1248 of Title 48, Territories and Insular Possessions, amended sections 1231 to 1234, 1237, 1238, 1239, 1241 to 1243, 1245, and 1247 of Title 48, and enacted a provision set out as a note under section 1391 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

Provisions similar to those contained in subsec. (a) of this section were contained in the first par. of section 10 of act Jan. 17, 1933, ch. 11, 47 Stat. 768.

AMENDMENTS

1939—Subsec. (c). Act Aug. 7, 1939, added subsec. (c).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1939 AMENDMENT

Section 7 of act Aug. 7, 1939, provided that act Aug. 7, 1939, should become effective on Jan. 1, 1940, if certain conditions were fulfilled. The conditions were fulfilled and section became effective on said date.

INDEPENDENCE DATE ADVANCED

Section 3 of act June 29, 1944, ch. 322, 58 Stat. 626, provided in part that date of independence could be advanced prior to July 4, 1946, but it was not done.

PROC. NO. 2695. PHILIPPINE INDEPENDENCE

Proc. No. 2695, July 4, 1946, 11 F.R. 7517, 60 Stat. 1352, provided:

The United States of America hereby withdraws and surrenders all rights of possession, supervision, jurisdiction, control, or sovereignty now existing and exercised by the United States of America in and over the territory and people of the Philippines; and,

On behalf of the United States of America, I do hereby recognize the independence of the Philippines as a separate and self-governing nation and acknowledge the authority and control over the same of the government instituted by the people thereof, under the constitution now in force.

CROSS REFERENCES

Trade relations between United States and Philippines after independence, see sections 1354 to 1358, 1360 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1395 of this title.

**§ 1395. Definitions**

(a) As used in sections 1393 and 1394 of this title—

(1) The term “United States”, when used in a geographical sense, but not the term “continental United States”, includes all Territories and possessions of the United States, other than the Philippines.

(2) The term “cordage” includes yarns, twines (including binding twine described in paragraph 1622<sup>1</sup> of section 1201 of title 19), cords, cordage, rope and cable, tarred or untarred, wholly or in chief value of manila (abaca) or other hard fiber.

(3) The term “Philippine Government” means the Government of the Commonwealth of the Philippines.

(4) The term “United States duty”, when used in connection with the computation of export taxes, means the lowest rate of ordinary customs duty in effect at the time of the shipment of the article concerned from the Philippines and applicable to like articles imported into the continental United States from any foreign country, except Cuba, or when more than one rate of ordinary customs duty is applicable to such like articles, the aggregate of such rates.

(5) The term “refined sugars” possesses the same meaning as the term “direct-consumption sugar” as defined in section 1101<sup>1</sup> of title 7.

(6) The term “Philippine article” means an article the growth, produce, or manufacture of the Philippines, in the production of which no materials of other than Philippine or United States origin valued in excess of 20 per centum

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

of the total value of such article was used and which is brought into the United States from the Philippines.

(7) The term “American article” means an article the growth, produce, or manufacture of the United States, in the production of which no materials of other than Philippine or United States origin valued in excess of 20 per centum of the total value of such article was used and which is brought into the Philippines from the United States.

(8) The term “Philippine import duty” means the lowest rate of ordinary customs duty applicable at the port of arrival, at the time of entry, or withdrawal from warehouse, for consumption of the article concerned, to like articles imported into the Philippines from any other foreign country, or when more than one rate of ordinary customs duty is applicable to such like articles, the aggregate of such rates.

(b) As used in subsection (a) of this section:

(1) The terms “includes” and “including” shall not be deemed to exclude other things otherwise within the meaning of the term defined.

(2) The term “ordinary customs duty” shall not include any import duty or charge which is imposed to compensate for an internal tax imposed in respect of a like domestic product or in respect of a commodity from which the imported product has been manufactured or produced in whole or in part.

(Mar. 24, 1934, ch. 84, §18, as added Aug. 7, 1939, ch. 502, §5, 53 Stat. 1231.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Paragraph 1622 of section 1201 of title 19, referred to in subsec. (a)(2), was repealed by act May 24, 1962, Pub. L. 87-456, title I, §101(a), 76 Stat. 72.

Since their independence, the Philippine Islands have been a republic, and are no longer designated as a “Commonwealth” as referred to in par. (3) of subsec. (a) of this section. See note below.

Section 1101 of title 7, referred to in subsec. (a)(5), was omitted from the Code.

PHILIPPINE INDEPENDENCE

Philippine Islands granted independence by Proc. No. 2695, set out as a note under section 1394 of this title.

CHAPTER 16—GREEK AND TURKISH ASSISTANCE

§§ 1401 to 1410. Repealed. Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title V, § 542(a)(1), (4), 68 Stat. 861

Section 1401, acts May 22, 1947, ch. 81, §1, 61 Stat. 103; Apr. 5, 1952, ch. 159, §1, 66 Stat. 43, authorized President to furnish assistance and prescribed type of assistance to be furnished. See sections 1451 to 1453 and 2395 of this title.

Section 1402, act May 22, 1947, ch. 81, §2, 61 Stat. 104, related to allocation of funds to Government agencies. See section 2392 of this title.

Section 1403, act May 22, 1947, ch. 81, §3, 61 Stat. 104, prescribed conditions precedent to receipt of assistance.

Section 1404, acts May 22, 1947, ch. 81, §4, 61 Stat. 105; Apr. 3, 1948, ch. 169, title III, §303, 62 Stat. 158, related to advancement and reimbursement of funds by and to R.F.C. and appropriations.

Section 1405, act May 22, 1947, ch. 81, §5, 61 Stat. 105, related to rules and regulations and withdrawal of aid. See section 2367 of this title.

Section 1406, act May 22, 1947, ch. 81, §6, 61 Stat. 105, related to termination of assistance. See section 2367 of this title.

Section 1407, act May 22, 1947, ch. 81, §7, 61 Stat. 105, required President to submit quarterly reports to Congress. See section 2394 of this title.

Section 1408, act May 22, 1947, ch. 81, §8, 61 Stat. 105, related to appointment and duties of chief of any mission to Greece and Turkey. See section 2391 of this title.

Section 1409, act Apr. 3, 1948, ch. 169, title III, §302, 62 Stat. 158, related to additional appropriations.

Section 1410, act Apr. 3, 1948, ch. 169, title III, §304, 62 Stat. 158, related to detail of certain personnel to missions in Greece and Turkey, and loyalty check.

See section 2151 et seq. of this title.

CHAPTER 17—RELIEF AID TO WAR-DEVASTATED COUNTRIES

§§ 1411 to 1417. Repealed. Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title V, § 542(a)(2), (3), 68 Stat. 861

Section 1411, acts May 31, 1947, ch. 90, §1, 61 Stat. 125; Dec. 17, 1947, ch. 520, §16(a), 61 Stat. 939; Apr. 5, 1952, ch. 159, §1, 66 Stat. 43, related to appropriation; uses; establishment of relief distribution missions; limitations on amounts; and advances by R.F.C.

Section 1412, act May 31, 1947, ch. 90, §2, 61 Stat. 125, related to relief assistance. See sections 2354, 2385, and 2392 of this title.

Section 1413, act May 31, 1947, ch. 90, §3, 61 Stat. 126, prescribed conditions governing relief assistance. See section 2171 et seq. of this title.

Section 1414, act May 31, 1947, ch. 90, §4, 61 Stat. 127, related to supervision of relief supplies in recipient countries; appointment, compensation, and duties of field administrator; and delegation of President’s authority. See sections 2381 and 2385 of this title.

Section 1415, act May 31, 1947, ch. 90, §5, 61 Stat. 127, related to termination of relief by President or Congress. See section 2367 of this title.

Section 1416, act May 31, 1947, ch. 90, §6, 61 Stat. 128, related to sale of relief supplies by recipient country; establishment of special account as revolving fund; termination; and disposition of balance.

Section 1417, act May 31, 1947, ch. 90, §7, 61 Stat. 128, required the President to submit quarterly reports to Congress. See section 2394 of this title.

See section 2151 et seq. of this title.

Foreign Aid Act of 1947, act Dec. 17, 1947, ch. 520, §§1-18, 61 Stat. 934, which provided immediate aid urgently needed by peoples of Austria, China, France, and Italy and which was formerly set out as a note under former section 1411 of this title, was repealed by act Aug. 26, 1954, §542(a)(3).

CHAPTER 18—UNITED STATES INFORMATION AND EDUCATIONAL EXCHANGE PROGRAMS

SUBCHAPTER I—GENERAL PROVISIONS

- Sec. 1431. Congressional declaration of objectives.
- 1432. Information on United States participation in United Nations.
- 1433. Definitions.
- 1434. Repealed.
- 1435. Delegation of authority by Director.
- 1436. Restriction on disclosure of information.
- 1437. Utilization of private agencies.
- 1438. Veterans’ preference.
- 1439. Repealed.
- 1440. Regulation of similar type international activities of State Department.
- 1441. Omitted.
- 1442. Informational media guaranties.
  - (a) Authorization to make.
  - (b) Assumption of notes issued pursuant to section 1509(c)(2) of this title; advances.

- Sec.
- (c) Limitations of time; total of guaranties outstanding.
  - (d) Sale of foreign currencies; special account; availability.
  - (e) Deposit of fees; availability.
  - (f) Advance payments.
  - (g) Separate accounts; transfers.
  - (h) Appropriations for restoration of realized impairment to capital; liquidation of notes.
- SUBCHAPTER II—INTERCHANGE OF PERSONS, KNOWLEDGE, AND SKILLS BETWEEN UNITED STATES AND FOREIGN COUNTRIES
1446. Repealed.
1447. Books and materials.
1448. Assistance to certain institutions abroad founded or sponsored by United States citizens.
- SUBCHAPTER III—ASSIGNMENT OF SPECIALISTS
1451. Assignment of Government employees to requesting countries; governing regulations.
1452. Status and allowances of assigned personnel.
1453. Acceptance of office under foreign governments of assigned personnel; oath of allegiance.
- SUBCHAPTER IV—PARTICIPATION BY GOVERNMENT AGENCIES
1456. Utilization of facilities and personnel of other Government agencies; reimbursement to agencies; report to Congress.
1457. Rendition of technical and other services to foreign governments; limitations.
1458. Policy governing rendition of services.
- SUBCHAPTER V—DISSEMINATION ABROAD OF INFORMATION ABOUT THE UNITED STATES
1461. General authorization.
- (a) Dissemination of information abroad.
  - (b) Dissemination of information within United States.
- 1461-1. Mission of United States Information Agency.
- 1461-1a. Ban on domestic activities by United States Information Agency.
- 1461a. Omitted.
- 1461b. Indemnification of owners of short-wave radio facilities against loss or damage.
- 1461c. Omitted.
1462. Policies governing information activities.
1463. Repealed.
1464. Voice of America/Europe.
- 1464a. USIA satellite and television.
- (a) In general.
  - (b) Broadcast principles.
  - (c) Programs.
  - (d) Costs.
  - (e) Allocation of funds.
- 1464b. Voice of America hiring practices.
- (a) Prohibition.
  - (b) Exception.
  - (c) Report.
- SUBCHAPTER V-A—RADIO BROADCASTING TO CUBA
1465. Congressional findings and declaration of purposes.
- 1465a. Additional functions of United States Information Agency.
- (a) Radio broadcasting to Cuba.
  - (b) Broadcasting as part of Voice of America.
  - (c) Location of broadcast facilities; frequency; leased time from non-governmental shortwave stations.
  - (d) Changes in frequencies to other AM bands; jamming and interference.
  - (e) Voice of America: Cuba Service; Voice of America: Radio Marti program.
- Sec.
- (f) Use of other facilities.
- 1465b. Cuba Service of Voice of America.
- 1465c. Advisory Board for Cuba Broadcasting.
- (a) Establishment; membership; chairperson.
  - (b) Review; recommendations.
  - (c) Terms; vacancies.
  - (d) Ex officio members.
  - (e) Compensation; travel expenses.
  - (f) Procurement powers of Board.
  - (g) Indefinite life span of Board.
  - (h) Authorization of appropriations.
- 1465d. Assistance from other government agencies.
- 1465e. Compensation for Cuban interference with broadcasting in United States.
- (a) Interim assistance to United States broadcasters.
  - (b) Money payments pursuant to authority from Federal Communications Commission.
  - (c) Regulations and procedures.
  - (d) Authorization of appropriations.
  - (e) Four-year availability for appropriated funds.
  - (f) Presidential task force.
  - (g) Effective date.
- 1465f. Authorization of appropriations.
- 1465g. Repealed.
- SUBCHAPTER V-B—TELEVISION BROADCASTING TO CUBA
- 1465aa. Findings and purposes.
- 1465bb. Television broadcasting to Cuba.
- (a) Television broadcasting to Cuba.
  - (b) Voice of America standards.
  - (c) USIA Television Marti.
  - (d) Frequency assignment.
  - (e) Interference with domestic broadcasting.
  - (f) Monitoring of interference.
  - (g) Task force.
- 1465cc. Television Marti Service of United States Information Agency.
- (a) Television Marti Service.
  - (b) Use of existing facilities of USIA.
  - (c) USIA authority.
- 1465dd. Assistance from other Government agencies.
- 1465ee. Authorization of appropriations.
- (a) Authorization of appropriations.
  - (b) Limitation.
  - (c) Availability of funds.
- 1465ff. Definitions.
- SUBCHAPTER VI—ADVISORY COMMISSIONS TO FORMULATE POLICIES
- 1466 to 1468. Omitted.
1469. United States Advisory Commission on Public Diplomacy.
- (a) Establishment.
  - (b) Staff.
  - (c) Duties and responsibilities.
  - (d) Limitation on authority.
- SUBCHAPTER VII—ADMINISTRATIVE PROCEDURE
1471. Authority of Director of United States Information Agency.
1472. United States Information Agency and other Government agencies.
- (a) Authority of agencies.
  - (b) Contracts for telecommunication activities, etc.; availability of appropriations; cancellation costs.
1473. Use of existing Government property and facilities.
1474. Additional authority of Director of United States Information Agency or other Government agency authorized to administer provisions.
1475. Travel expenses.

- Sec.
- 1475a. Replacement of passenger motor vehicles.
- 1475b. Seal of United States Information Agency; judicial notice.
- 1475c. Acting Associate Directors.
- 1475d. Compensation for disability or death.
- 1475e. Use of certain fees and payments.
- 1475f. Debt collection.
- (a) Contract authority.
- (b) Disclosure of delinquent debt to credit reporting agencies.
- 1475g. USIA posts and personnel overseas.
- (a) Limitation.
- (b) Notification.
- (c) Exceptions.
- 1475h. USIA grants.
- (a) Competitive grant procedures.
- (b) Exceptions.
- (c) Compliance with grant guidelines.
- (d) Report to Congress.
- SUBCHAPTER VIII—APPROPRIATIONS AND OTHER FUNDS**
1476. Prior authorizations by Congress.
1477. Transfer of funds.
- 1477a. Omitted.
- 1477b. Nondiscretionary personnel costs and currency fluctuations.
- (a) Availability of appropriations until expended.
- (b) Additional appropriations.
- (c) Appropriations authorization based on currency fluctuations; Buying Power Maintenance account.
- 1477c. Notification of reprogramings and grants; covered programs, projects, or activities; award of program grants.
- (a) Availability of appropriated funds.
- (b) Notification to Congressional committees.
- (c) Period of availability of appropriated funds.
1478. Reimbursement of program expenses from sources other than appropriations; disposition of receipts.
1479. Advancement of funds, property, or services by foreign governments; disposition; availability; return of unexpended balances or property.
1480. Repealed.

**CHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS**

This chapter is referred to in sections 2054, 2056, 2275, 2458, 2681 of this title.

**SUBCHAPTER I—GENERAL PROVISIONS**

**§ 1431. Congressional declaration of objectives**

The Congress declares that the objectives of this chapter are to enable the Government of the United States to promote a better understanding of the United States in other countries, and to increase mutual understanding between the people of the United States and the people of other countries. Among the means to be used in achieving these objectives are—

(1) an information service to disseminate abroad information about the United States, its people, and policies promulgated by the Congress, the President, the Secretary of State and other responsible officials of Government having to do with matters affecting foreign affairs;

(2) Repealed. Pub. L. 87-256, § 111(a)(2), Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 538.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title I, § 2, 62 Stat. 6; Sept. 21, 1961, Pub. L. 87-256, § 111(a)(2), 75 Stat. 538.)

**AMENDMENTS**

1961—Pub. L. 87-256 repealed par. (2) which authorized an educational exchange service to cooperate with other nations in the interchange of persons, knowledge, and skills, in the rendering of technical and other services, and in the interchange of developments in the field of education, the arts, and sciences. See section 2451 et seq. of this title.

**TERMINATION OF CHAPTER**

Section 1006 of act Jan. 27, 1948, provided that: "The authority granted under this Act [this chapter] shall terminate whenever such termination is directed by concurrent resolution of the two Houses of the Congress."

**SHORT TITLE OF 1983 AMENDMENT**

For short title of Pub. L. 98-111, which enacted subchapter V-A of this chapter, as the "Radio Broadcasting to Cuba Act", see section 1 of Pub. L. 98-111, set out as a Short Title note under section 1465 of this title.

**SHORT TITLE OF 1973 AMENDMENT**

Pub. L. 93-168, Nov. 29, 1973, 87 Stat. 688, which amended section 1476 of this title, is known as the "United States Information Agency Appropriations Authorization Act of 1973". For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1973 Amendment note set out under section 1476 of this title and Tables.

**SHORT TITLE**

Section 1 of act Jan. 27, 1948, provided that: "This Act [enacting this chapter] may be cited as the 'United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948'."

**SEPARABILITY**

Section 1010 of act Jan. 27, 1948, provided that: "If any provision of this Act [enacting this chapter] or the application of any such provision to any person or circumstance shall be held invalid, the validity of the remainder of the Act [this chapter] and the applicability of such provision to other persons or circumstances shall not be affected thereby."

**TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS**

All functions vested in the President, the Secretary of State, the Department of State, the United States Information Agency, or the Director thereof, under this chapter, were transferred to the Director of the International Communication Agency by Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, § 7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637, set out under section 1461 of this title, effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by the President, except to the extent that such functions were vested in the President under sections 1452, 1456, and 1467 of this title. The International Communication Agency, and the Director thereof, were redesignated the United States Information Agency, and the Director thereof, by section 303 of Pub. L. 97-241, title III, Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title.

**CONTINUATION OF CERTAIN EXECUTIVE ORDERS, AGREEMENTS, DETERMINATIONS, REGULATIONS, CONTRACTS, APPOINTMENTS, AND OTHER ACTIONS**

Continuation in full force and effect, and applicability to the appropriate provisions of the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961, set out as section 2451 et seq. of this title, until modified or superseded by appropriate authority, of all Executive orders, agreements, determinations, regulations, contracts, appointments, and other actions issued, concluded, or taken under authority of this section, see section 111(b) of Pub. L. 87-256, set out as a note under section 2451 of this title.

**§ 1432. Information on United States participation in United Nations**

In carrying out the objectives of this chapter, information concerning the participation of the United States in the United Nations, its organizations and functions, shall be emphasized.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title I, § 3, 62 Stat. 6.)

**§ 1433. Definitions**

When used in this chapter, the term—

(1) “Director” means the Director of the United States Information Agency.

(2) “Agency” means the United States Information Agency.

(3) “Government agency” means any executive department, board, bureau, commission, or other agency of the Federal Government, or independent establishment, or any corporation wholly owned (either directly or through one or more corporations) by the United States.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title I, § 4, 62 Stat. 6; 1977 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §§ 5, 7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1636, 1637; Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title III, § 303(b), 96 Stat. 291.)

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“Director of the United States Information Agency” substituted for “Director of the International Communication Agency” in par. (1) and “United States Information Agency” substituted for “International Communication Agency” in par. (2), pursuant to section 303(b) of Pub. L. 97-241, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title.

“‘Director’ means the Director of the International Communication Agency” substituted for “‘Secretary’ means the Secretary of State” in par. (1), pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, § 7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637, set out under section 1461 of this title, effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by President, which transferred functions vested in President, Secretary of State, Department of State, United States Information Agency, and Director thereof, under this chapter, to Director of International Communication Agency, except to extent that such functions were vested in President under sections 1452, 1456, and 1467 of this title. Director of International Communication Agency was authorized by section 5 of Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977 to delegate performance of any such transferred functions to any officer, employee, or unit of International Communication Agency. Accordingly, “‘Agency’ means the International Communication Agency” also substituted for “‘Department’ means the Department of State” in par. (2).

**§ 1434. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-60, title II, § 203(a)(1), Aug. 15, 1979, 93 Stat. 398**

Section, acts Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title X, § 1001, 62 Stat. 13; Apr. 5, 1952, ch. 159, § 1, 66 Stat. 43; 1977 Reorg. Plan No. 2, § 7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637; 1978 Reorg. Plan No. 2, § 102, eff. Jan. 1, 1979, 43 F.R. 36037, 92 Stat. 3783, provided for loyalty check of personnel. Pub. L. 87-256, § 111(a)(2), Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 538, previously repealed this section insofar as it related to persons employed or assigned to duties under the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 209 of Pub. L. 96-60, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1469 of this title.

**§ 1435. Delegation of authority by Director**

The Director may delegate, to such officers of the Government as the Director determines to

be appropriate, any of the powers conferred upon him by this chapter to the extent that he finds such delegation to be in the interest of the purposes expressed in this chapter and the efficient administration of the programs undertaken pursuant to this chapter.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title X, § 1002, 62 Stat. 13; 1977 Reorg. Plan No. 2, § 7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637.)

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“Director” substituted in text for “Secretary” pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, § 7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637, set out under section 1461 of this title, which transferred functions vested in President, Secretary of State, Department of State, United States Information Agency, and Director thereof, under this chapter, to Director of International Communication Agency, except to extent that such functions were vested in President under sections 1452, 1456, and 1467 of this title, effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by President. International Communication Agency, and Director thereof, redesignated United States Information Agency, and Director thereof, by section 303 of Pub. L. 97-241, title III, Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title.

**§ 1436. Restriction on disclosure of information**

Nothing in this chapter shall authorize the disclosure of any information or knowledge in any case in which such disclosure (1) is prohibited by any other law of the United States, or (2) is inconsistent with the security of the United States.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title X, § 1003, 62 Stat. 13.)

**§ 1437. Utilization of private agencies**

In carrying out the provisions of this chapter it shall be the duty of the Director to utilize, to the maximum extent practicable, the services and facilities of private agencies, including existing American press, publishing, radio, motion picture, and other agencies, through contractual arrangements or otherwise. It is the intent of Congress that the Director shall encourage participation in carrying out the purposes of this chapter by the maximum number of different private agencies in each field consistent with the present or potential market for their services in each country.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title X, § 1005, 62 Stat. 14; 1977 Reorg. Plan No. 2, § 7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637.)

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“Director” substituted in text for “Secretary” pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, § 7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637, set out under section 1461 of this title, which transferred functions vested in President, Secretary of State, Department of State, United States Information Agency, and Director thereof, under this chapter, to Director of International Communication Agency, except to extent that such functions were vested in President under sections 1452, 1456, and 1467 of this title, effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by President. International Communication Agency, and Director thereof, redesignated United States Information Agency, and Director thereof, by section 303 of Pub. L. 97-241, title III, Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title.

**§ 1438. Veterans' preference**

No provision of this chapter shall be construed to modify or to repeal the provisions of sections 1302(b), (c), 2108, 3305(b), 3306(a)(2), 3308 to 3318, 3319(b), 3320, 3351, 3363, 3364, 3501 to 3504, 7511, 7512, and 7701 of title 5.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title X, §1007, 62 Stat. 14.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 3306 of title 5, referred to in text, was repealed by Pub. L. 95-228, §1, Feb. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 25.

Section 3319 of title 5, referred to in text, was repealed by Pub. L. 95-454, title III, §307(h)(1), Oct. 13, 1978, 92 Stat. 1149.

Section 3364 of title 5, referred to in text, was repealed by Pub. L. 94-183, §2(6), Dec. 31, 1975, 89 Stat. 1057.

Sections 7511 and 7512 of title 5, referred to in text, which related to adverse actions against preference eligible employees and comprised subchapter II of chapter 75 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, were repealed by Pub. L. 95-454 and replaced by a new subchapter II (§§ 7511-7514) of chapter 75 relating to removal, suspension for more than 14 days, reduction in grade or pay, or furlough for 30 days or less.

## CODIFICATION

“Sections 1302(b), (c), 2108, 3305(b), 3306(a)(2), 3308 to 3318, 3319(b), 3320, 3351, 3363, 3364, 3501 to 3504, 7511, 7512, and 7701 of title 5” substituted in text for “the Veterans' Preference Act of 1944” on authority of Pub. L. 89-554, §7(b), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 631, the first section of which enacted Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

**§ 1439. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-470, title I, § 117, Oct. 19, 1980, 94 Stat. 2240**

Section, acts Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title X, §1008, 62 Stat. 14; Sept. 21, 1961, Pub. L. 87-256, §111(a)(2), 75 Stat. 538; Oct. 26, 1974, Pub. L. 93-475, §7, 88 Stat. 1440; 1977 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637, required the Director to submit annual reports to Congress on expenditures made and activities carried on under this chapter, including appraisals and measurements, where feasible, as to the effectiveness of the several programs in each country where conducted. Pub. L. 87-256, §111(9)(2), Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 538, previously repealed this section insofar as it related to educational exchange activities. See section 2458(b) of this title.

**§ 1440. Regulation of similar type international activities of State Department**

All provisions in this chapter regulating the administration of international information activities and educational exchanges provided herein, shall apply to all such international activities under jurisdiction of the Department of State.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title X, §1009, 62 Stat. 14.)

## PARTIAL REPEAL

*Pub. L. 87-256, §111(a)(2), Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 538, repealed this section insofar as it relates to educational exchange activities. See section 2451 et seq. of this title.*

CONTINUATION OF CERTAIN EXECUTIVE ORDERS, AGREEMENTS, DETERMINATIONS, REGULATIONS, CONTRACTS, APPOINTMENTS, AND OTHER ACTIONS

Continuation in full force and effect, and applicability to the appropriate provisions of the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961, set out as

section 2451 et seq. of this title, until modified or superseded by appropriate authority, of all Executive orders, agreements, determinations, regulations, contracts, appointments, and other actions issued, concluded, or taken under authority of this section, see section 111(b) of Pub. L. 87-256, set out as a note under section 2451 of this title.

**§ 1441. Omitted**

## CODIFICATION

Section, based on third proviso under subheading “International Information and Education Activities” under heading “State Department” of Title I of the Supplemental Appropriation Act, 1950 (approved Oct. 14, 1949, ch. 694, 63 Stat. 878), authorized the acquisition of land outside the continental United States, and was not repeated in the Department of State Appropriation Act, 1951 (approved Sept. 6, 1950, ch. 896, ch. III, title I, 64 Stat. 609), or other appropriation acts.

**§ 1442. Informational media guaranties****(a) Authorization to make**

The Director of the United States Information Agency may make guaranties, in accordance with the provisions of subsection (b) of section 1933<sup>1</sup> of this title, of investments in enterprises producing or distributing informational media consistent with the national interests of the United States: *Provided*, That the purpose of making informational media guaranties shall be the achievement of the foreign policy objectives of the United States, including the objective mentioned in sections 1933(b)(4)(A)<sup>1</sup> and 1933(b)(4)(G)<sup>1</sup> of this title.

**(b) Assumption of notes issued pursuant to section 1509(c)(2) of this title; advances**

The Director is authorized to assume the obligation of not to exceed \$28,000,000 of the notes authorized to be issued pursuant to section 1509(c)(2)<sup>1</sup> of this title, together with the interest accrued and unpaid thereon, and to obtain advances from time to time from the Secretary of the Treasury up to such amount, less amounts previously advanced on such notes, as provided for in said notes. Such advances shall be deposited in a special account in the Treasury available for payments under informational media guaranties.

**(c) Limitations of time; total of guaranties outstanding**

The Director is authorized to make informational media guaranties without regard to the limitations of time contained in section 1933(b)(4)<sup>1</sup> of this title, but the total of such guaranties outstanding at any one time shall not exceed the sum of the face amount of the notes assumed by the Director less the amounts previously advanced on such notes by the Secretary of the Treasury plus the amount of the funds in the special account referred to in subsection (b) of this section.

**(d) Sale of foreign currencies; special account; availability**

Foreign currencies available after June 30, 1955, from conversions made pursuant to the obligation of informational media guaranties may be sold, in accordance with Treasury Depart-

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.



ment regulations, for dollars which shall be deposited in the special account and shall be available for payments under new guaranties. Such currencies shall be available, as may be provided for by the Congress in appropriation Acts, for use for educational, scientific, and cultural purposes which are in the national interest of the United States, and for such other purposes of mutual interest as may be agreed to by the governments of the United States and the country from which the currencies derive.

**(e) Deposit of fees; availability**

Notwithstanding the provisions of section 1933(b)(4)(E)<sup>1</sup> of this title, (1) fees collected for the issuance of informational media guaranties shall be deposited in the special account and shall be available for payments under informational media guaranties; and (2) the Director may require the payment of a minimum charge of up to fifty dollars for issuance of guaranty contracts, or amendments thereto.

**(f) Advance payments**

The Director is further authorized, under such terms as he may prescribe, to make advance payments under informational media guaranties: *Provided*, That currencies receivable from holders of such guaranties on account of such advance payments shall be paid to the United States within nine months from the date of the advance payment and that appropriate security to assure such payments is required before any advance payment is made.

**(g) Separate accounts; transfers**

As soon as feasible after July 18, 1956, all assets, liabilities, income, expenses, and charges of whatever kind pertaining to informational media guaranties, including any charges against the authority to issue notes provided in section 1509(c)(2)<sup>1</sup> of this title, cumulative from April 3, 1948, shall be accounted for separately from other guaranties issued pursuant to section 1933(b)<sup>1</sup> of this title: *Provided*, That there shall be transferred from the special account established pursuant to subsection (b) of this section, into the account available for payments under guaranties other than the informational media guaranties, an amount equal to the total of the fees received for the issuance of guaranties other than informational media guaranties, and used to make payments under informational media guaranties.

**(h) Appropriations for restoration of realized impairment to capital; liquidation of notes**

(1) There is authorized to be appropriated annually an amount to restore in whole or in part any realized impairment to the capital used in carrying on the authority to make informational media guaranties, as provided in subsection (c) of this section, through the end of the last completed fiscal year.

(2) Such impairment shall consist of the amount by which the losses incurred and interest accrued on notes exceed the revenue earned and any previous appropriations made for the restoration of impairment. Losses shall include the dollar losses on foreign currencies sold, and the dollar cost of foreign currencies which (a) the Secretary of the Treasury, after consulta-

tion with the Director, has determined to be unavailable for, or in excess of, requirements of the United States, or (b) have been transferred to other accounts without reimbursement to the special account.

(3) Dollars appropriated pursuant to this section shall be applied to the payment of interest and in satisfaction of notes issued or assumed hereunder, and to the extent of such application to the principal of the notes, the Director is authorized to issue notes to the Secretary of the Treasury which will bear interest at a rate to be determined by the Secretary of the Treasury, taking into consideration the current average market yields of outstanding marketable obligations of the United States having maturities comparable to the guaranties. The currencies determined to be unavailable for, or in excess of, requirements of the United States as provided above shall be transferred to the Secretary of the Treasury to be held until disposed of, and any dollar proceeds realized from such disposition shall be deposited in miscellaneous receipts.

(4) Section 1476(a) of this title shall not apply with respect to any amounts appropriated under this section for the purpose of liquidating the notes (and any accrued interest thereon) which were assumed in the operation of the informational media guaranty program under this section and which were outstanding on August 24, 1982.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title X, §1011, as added Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title V, §544(a), 68 Stat. 862; amended Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title V, §544(g), as added July 18, 1956, ch. 627, §11(a), 70 Stat. 563, and amended Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, §11(b)(1), 71 Stat. 365; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. V, §502(i), 72 Stat. 274; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. VII, §701(c), 73 Stat. 257; 1977 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637; Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title III, §§303(b), 304(f), 96 Stat. 291, 293.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 1933 of this title, referred to in subsecs. (a), (c), (e), and (g), was repealed by Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §642(a)(2), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460. See section 2351 of this title.

Section 1509 of this title, referred to in subsecs. (b) and (g), was repealed by act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title V, §542(a)(4), (6), (9), (10), (11), 68 Stat. 861. See section 1754 et seq. of this title.

AMENDMENTS

1982—Subsec. (h)(4). Pub. L. 97-241, §304(f), added par. (4).

1959—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 86-108 provided that the purpose of making informational media guaranties shall be the achievement of the foreign policy objectives of the United States, including the objective mentioned in former sections 1933(b)(4)(A) and 1933(b)(4)(G) of this title, now covered by section 2351 of this title.

1958—Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 85-477 added subsec. (h).

1956—Subsec. (a). Act Aug. 26, 1954, §544(g), as added by act July 18, 1956, designated as subsec. (a) the entire former section and amended it to eliminate provisions which permitted the Director to make guaranties against funds made available by notes issued pursuant to section 1509(c)(2) of this title and which limited the amount of such guaranties in any fiscal year to not more than \$10,000,000. Such provisions were covered by subsecs. (b) to (g) of this section.

Subsecs. (b) to (g). Act Aug. 26, 1954, § 544(g), as added by act July 18, 1956, added subsecs (b) to (g).

#### REPEALS

Section 544(a), (g) of act Aug. 26, 1954, cited as a credit to this section, was repealed by section 11(b)(1) of Pub. L. 85-141, except in so far as section 544(a), (g) affected this section.

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“Director of the United States Information Agency” substituted for “Director of the International Communication Agency” in subsec. (a), pursuant to section 303(b) of Pub. L. 97-241, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title. Previously, “Director of the International Communication Agency” substituted for “Director of the United States Information Agency”, pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, § 7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637, set out under section 1461 of this title, effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by President, which transferred functions vested in President, Secretary of State, Department of State, United States Information Agency, and Director thereof, under this chapter, to Director of International Communication Agency except to extent that such functions were vested in President under sections 1452, 1456, and 1467 of this title.

### SUBCHAPTER II — INTERCHANGE OF PERSONS, KNOWLEDGE, AND SKILLS BETWEEN UNITED STATES AND FOREIGN COUNTRIES

#### SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in section 1471 of this title.

#### § 1446. Repealed. Pub. L. 87-256, § 111(a)(2), Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 538

Section, acts Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title II, § 201, 62 Stat. 7; June 27, 1952, ch. 477, title IV, § 402(f), 66 Stat. 276; June 4, 1956, ch. 356, 70 Stat. 241, authorized the interchange of persons on a reciprocal basis between the United States and other countries, provided for orientation courses, admission as nonimmigrant visitors, deportation, and eligibility requirements for reentry under changed status. See section 2451 et seq. of this title.

#### CONTINUATION OF CERTAIN EXECUTIVE ORDERS, AGREEMENTS, DETERMINATIONS, REGULATIONS, CONTRACTS, APPOINTMENTS, AND OTHER ACTIONS

Continuation in full force and effect, and applicability to the appropriate provisions of the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961, set out as section 2451 et seq. of this title, until modified or superseded by appropriate authority, of all Executive orders, agreements, determinations, regulations, contracts, appointments, and other actions issued, concluded, or taken under authority of this section, see section 111(b) of Pub. L. 87-256, set out as a note under section 2451 of this title.

#### § 1447. Books and materials

The Director is authorized to provide for interchanges between the United States and other countries of books and periodicals, including government publications, for the translation of such writings, and for the preparation, distribution, and interchange of other educational materials.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title II, § 202, 62 Stat. 7; 1977 Reorg. Plan No. 2, § 7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637.)

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“Director” substituted in text for “Secretary” pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, § 7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461,

91 Stat. 1637, set out under section 1461 of this title, which transferred functions vested in President, Secretary of State, Department of State, United States Information Agency, and Director thereof, under this chapter, to Director of International Communication Agency, except to extent that such functions were vested in President under sections 1452, 1456, and 1467 of this title, effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by President. International Communication Agency, and Director thereof, redesignated United States Information Agency, and Director thereof, by section 303 of Pub. L. 97-241, title III, Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title.

So much of functions vested in Secretary of State with respect to interchange of books and periodicals and aid to libraries and communities centers under this section and section 1448 of this title as is an integral part of information programs under this chapter, together with so much of functions as is incidental to or necessary for performance of such functions, transferred to Director of United States Information Agency by Reorg. Plan No. 8 of 1953, eff. Aug. 1, 1953, 18 F.R. 4542, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title.

#### § 1448. Assistance to certain institutions abroad founded or sponsored by United States citizens

The Director is authorized to provide for assistance to schools, libraries, and community centers abroad, founded or sponsored by citizens of the United States, and serving as demonstration centers for methods and practices employed in the United States. In assisting any such schools, however, the Director shall exercise no control over their educational policies and shall in no case furnish assistance of any character which is not in keeping with the free democratic principles and the established foreign policy of the United States.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title II, § 203, 62 Stat. 7; 1977 Reorg. Plan No. 2, § 7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637.)

#### PARTIAL REPEAL

*Pub. L. 87-256, § 111(a)(2), Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 538, repealed this section insofar as it relates to schools. See section 2451 et seq. of this title.*

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“Director” substituted in text for “Secretary” pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, § 7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637, set out under section 1461 of this title, which transferred functions vested in President, Secretary of State, Department of State, United States Information Agency, and Director thereof, under this chapter, to Director of International Communication Agency, except to extent that such functions were vested in President under sections 1452, 1456, and 1467 of this title, effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by President. International Communication Agency, and Director thereof, redesignated United States Information Agency, and Director thereof, by section 303 of Pub. L. 97-241, title III, Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title.

Functions vested in Secretary of State by this section and section 1462 of this title, together with so much of functions as is incidental to or necessary for performance of such functions, transferred to Director of United States Information Agency by Reorg. Plan

No. 8, of 1953, eff. Aug. 1, 1953, 18 F.R. 4542, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title.

CONTINUATION OF CERTAIN EXECUTIVE ORDERS, AGREEMENTS, DETERMINATIONS, REGULATIONS, CONTRACTS, APPOINTMENTS, AND OTHER ACTIONS

Continuation in full force and effect, and applicability to the appropriate provisions of the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961, set out as section 2451 et seq. of this title, until modified or superseded by appropriate authority, of all Executive orders, agreements, determinations, regulations, contracts, appointments, and other actions issued, concluded, or taken under authority of this section, see section 111(b) of Pub. L. 87-256, set out as a note under section 2451 of this title.

SUBCHAPTER III—ASSIGNMENT OF SPECIALISTS

SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in sections 280c, 1458 of this title.

**§ 1451. Assignment of Government employees to requesting countries; governing regulations**

The Director of the United States Information Agency is authorized, when the government of another country is desirous of obtaining the services of a person having special scientific or other technical or professional qualifications, from time to time to assign or authorize the assignment for service, to or in cooperation with such government, any person in the employ or service of the Government of the United States who has such qualifications, with the approval of the Government agency in which such person is employed or serving. No person shall be assigned for service to or in cooperation with the government of any country unless (1) the Director finds that such assignment is necessary in the national interest of the United States, or (2) such government agrees to reimburse the United States in an amount equal to the compensation, travel expenses, and allowances payable to such person during the period of such assignment in accordance with the provisions of section 1452 of this title, or (3) such government shall have made an advance of funds, property, or services as provided in section 1479 of this title. Nothing in this chapter, however, shall authorize the assignment of such personnel for service relating to the organization, training, operation, development, or combat equipment of the armed forces of a foreign government.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title III, § 301, 62 Stat. 7; Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title III, § 304(a)(1)(A), (2)(A), 96 Stat. 292.)

AMENDMENTS

1982—Pub. L. 97-241 substituted “person in the employ” for “citizen of the United States in the employ”, “Director of the United States Information Agency” for “Secretary”, and “Director finds” for “Secretary finds”.

REFERENCES TO ACT MAY 25, 1938

Subsec. (c) of section 1004 of act Jan. 27, 1948, provided that: “Any reference in the Foreign Service Act of 1946 (60 Stat. 999) [section 801 et seq. of this title], or in any other law, to provisions of such Act of May 25, 1938, as amended [section 118e of former Title 5, Executive Departments and Government Officers and Em-

ployees], shall be construed to be applicable to the appropriate provisions of titles III and IX of this Act [sections 1451 to 1453, 1478, and 1479 of this title].”

EFFECTIVENESS OF EXECUTIVE ORDERS AND REGULATIONS UNDER ACT MAY 25, 1938, CH. 277, 52 STAT. 442

Subsec. (b) of section 1004 of act Jan. 27, 1948, provided that: “Existing Executive orders and regulations pertaining to the administration of such Act of May 25, 1938, as amended [former section 118e of former Title 5, Executive Departments and Government Officers and Employees], shall remain in effect until superseded by regulations prescribed under the provisions of this Act [this chapter].”

CROSS REFERENCES

Detail of Army, Navy, Air Force, and Marine Corps members to assist foreign governments in military matters, see section 712 of Title 10, Armed Forces.

**§ 1452. Status and allowances of assigned personnel**

Any person in the employ or service of the Government of the United States, while assigned for service to or in cooperation with another government under the authority of this chapter, shall be considered, for the purpose of preserving his rights, allowances, and privileges as such, an officer or employee of the Government of the United States and of the Government agency from which assigned and he shall continue to receive compensation from that agency. He may also receive, under such regulations as the President may prescribe, representation allowances similar to those allowed under section 4085 of this title. The authorization of such allowances and other benefits and the payment thereof out of any appropriations available therefor shall be considered as meeting all the requirements of section 5536 of title 5.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title III, § 302, 62 Stat. 8; Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title III, § 304(a)(1)(B), (3), 96 Stat. 292.)

AMENDMENTS

1982—Pub. L. 97-241 substituted “person in the employ or service of the Government of the United States” for “citizen of the United States”, “section 4085 of this title” for “section 1131(3) of this title”, and “section 5536 of title 5” for “section 1765 of the Revised Statutes”. Prior to the amendment by Pub. L. 97-241, “section 5536 of title 5” had been substituted for “section 1765 of the Revised Statutes” (which was formerly classified to section 70 of title 5) on authority of Pub. L. 89-554, § 7(b), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 631, the first section of which enacted Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, thereby requiring no change in text.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1451 of this title.

**§ 1453. Acceptance of office under foreign governments of assigned personnel; oath of allegiance**

Any person in the employ or service of the Government of the United States while assigned for service to or in cooperation with another government under authority of this chapter may, at the discretion of his Government agency, with the concurrence of the Director of the United States Information Agency, and without additional compensation therefor, accept an office under the government to which he is as-

signed, if the acceptance of such an office in the opinion of such agency is necessary to permit the effective performance of duties for which he is assigned, including the making or approving on behalf of such foreign government the disbursement of funds provided by such government or of receiving from such foreign government funds for deposit and disbursement on behalf of such government, in carrying out programs undertaken pursuant to this chapter: *Provided, however*, That such acceptance of office shall in no case involve the taking of an oath of allegiance to another government.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title III, §303, 62 Stat. 8; Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title III, §304(a)(1)(B), (2)(B), 96 Stat. 292.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1982—Pub. L. 97-241 substituted “person in the employ or service of the Government of the United States” for “citizen of the United States” and “Director of the United States Information Agency” for “Secretary”.

#### SUBCHAPTER IV—PARTICIPATION BY GOVERNMENT AGENCIES

##### § 1456. Utilization of facilities and personnel of other Government agencies; reimbursement to agencies; report to Congress

The Director is authorized, in carrying on any activity under the authority of this chapter, to utilize, with the approval of the President, the services, facilities, and personnel of the other Government agencies. Whenever the Director shall use the services, facilities, or personnel of any Government agency for activities under authority of this chapter, the Director shall pay for such performance out of funds available to the Director under this chapter, either in advance, by reimbursement, or direct transfer. The Director shall include in each report submitted to the Congress under section 1439<sup>1</sup> of this title a statement of the services, facilities, and personnel of other Government agencies utilized in carrying on activities under the authority of this chapter, showing the names and salaries of the personnel utilized, or performing services utilized, during the period covered by such report, and the amounts paid to such other agencies under this section as payment for such performance.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title IV, §401, 62 Stat. 8; 1977 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 1439 of this title, referred to in text, was repealed by Pub. L. 96-470, title I, §117, Oct. 19, 1980, 94 Stat. 2240.

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“Director” substituted in text for “Secretary” pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, §7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637, set out under section 1461 of this title, which transferred functions vested in President, Secretary of State, Department of State, United States Information Agency, and Director thereof, under this chapter, to Director of International Communication Agency, except to extent that such functions were vest-

ed in President under sections 1452, 1456, and 1467 of this title, effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by President. International Communication Agency, and Director thereof, redesignated United States Information Agency, and Director thereof, by section 303 of Pub. L. 97-241, title III, Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title.

##### § 1457. Rendition of technical and other services to foreign governments; limitations

A Government agency, at the request of the Director, may perform such technical or other services as such agency may be competent to render for the government of another country desirous of obtaining such services, upon terms and conditions which are satisfactory to the Director and to the head of the Government agency, when it is determined by the Director that such services will contribute to the purposes of this chapter. However, nothing in this chapter shall authorize the performance of services relating to the organization, training, operation, development, or combat equipment of the armed forces of a foreign government.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title IV, §402, 62 Stat. 9; 1977 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637.)

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“Director” substituted in text for “Secretary” pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, §7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637, set out under section 1461 of this title, which transferred functions vested in President, Secretary of State, Department of State, United States Information Agency, and Director thereof, under this chapter, to Director of International Communication Agency, except to extent that such functions were vested in President under sections 1452, 1456, and 1467 of this title, effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by President. International Communication Agency, and Director thereof, redesignated United States Information Agency, and Director thereof, by section 303 of Pub. L. 97-241, title III, Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title.

##### § 1458. Policy governing rendition of services

In authorizing the performance of technical and other services under this subchapter, it is the sense of the Congress (1) that the Director shall encourage through any appropriate Government agency the performance of such services to foreign governments by qualified private American individuals and agencies, and shall not enter into the performance of such services to any foreign government where such services may be performed adequately by qualified private American individuals and agencies and such qualified individuals and agencies are available for the performance of such services; (2) that if such services are rendered by a Government agency, they shall demonstrate the technical accomplishments of the United States, such services being of an advisory, investigative, or instructional nature, or a demonstration of a technical process; (3) that such services shall not include the construction of public works or the supervision of the construction of public works, and that, under authority of this chapter, a Government agency shall render engineering services related to public works only when the Director shall determine that the national

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

interest demands the rendering of such services by a Government agency, but this policy shall not be interpreted to preclude the assignment of individual specialists as advisers to other governments as provided under subchapter III of this chapter, together with such incidental assistance as may be necessary for the accomplishment of their individual assignments.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title IV, § 403, 62 Stat. 9; 1977 Reorg. Plan No. 2, § 7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637.)

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“Director” substituted in text for “Secretary” pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, § 7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637, set out under section 1461 of this title, which transferred functions vested in President, Secretary of State, Department of State, United States Information Agency, and Director thereof, under this chapter, to Director of International Communication Agency, except to extent that such functions were vested in President under sections 1452, 1456, and 1467 of this title, effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by President. International Communication Agency, and Director thereof, redesignated United States Information Agency, and Director thereof, by section 303 of Pub. L. 97-241, title III, Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title.

#### SUBCHAPTER V—DISSEMINATION ABROAD OF INFORMATION ABOUT THE UNITED STATES

##### SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in section 1471 of this title.

#### § 1461. General authorization

##### (a) Dissemination of information abroad

The Director is authorized, when he finds it appropriate, to provide for the preparation, and dissemination abroad, of information about the United States, its people, and its policies, through press, publications, radio, motion pictures, and other information media, and through information centers and instructors abroad. Subject to subsection (b) of this section, any such information (other than “Problems of Communism” and the “English Teaching Forum” which may be sold by the Government Printing Office) shall not be disseminated within the United States, its territories, or possessions, but, on request, shall be available in the English language at the Agency, at all reasonable times following its release as information abroad, for examination only by representatives of United States press associations, newspapers, magazines, radio systems, and stations, and by research students and scholars, and, on request, shall be made available for examination only to Members of Congress.

##### (b) Dissemination of information within United States

(1) The Director of the United States Information Agency shall make available to the Archivist of the United States, for domestic distribution, motion pictures, films, videotapes, and other material prepared for dissemination abroad 12 years after the initial dissemination of the material abroad or, in the case of such mate-

rial not disseminated abroad, 12 years after the preparation of the material.

(2) The Director of the United States Information Agency shall be reimbursed for any attendant expenses. Any reimbursement to the Director pursuant to this subsection shall be credited to the applicable appropriation of the United States Information Agency.

(3) The Archivist shall be the official custodian of the material and shall issue necessary regulations to ensure that persons seeking its release in the United States have secured and paid for necessary United States rights and licenses and that all costs associated with the provision of the material by the Archivist shall be paid by the persons seeking its release. The Archivist may charge fees to recover such costs, in accordance with section 2116(c) of title 44. Such fees shall be paid into, administered, and expended as part of the National Archives Trust Fund.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title V, § 501, 62 Stat. 9; July 13, 1972, Pub. L. 92-352, title II, § 204, 86 Stat. 494; 1977 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §§ 5, 7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1636, 1637; Aug. 15, 1979, Pub. L. 96-60, title II, § 208, 93 Stat. 401; Feb. 16, 1990, Pub. L. 101-246, title II, § 202, 104 Stat. 49.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1990—Pub. L. 101-246 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a), substituted “Subject to subsection (b) of this section, any such information” for “Any such information” in second sentence, and added subsec. (b).

1979—Pub. L. 96-60 substituted “‘Problems of Communism’ and the ‘English Teaching Forum’ which may be sold” for “‘Problems of Communism’ which may continue to be sold” in parenthetical clause.

1972—Pub. L. 92-352 substituted provisions relating to the prohibition, except as otherwise provided, on the dissemination of information within the United States, its territories, or possessions, other than “Problems of Communism” which could continue to be sold at the Government Printing Office, for provisions relating to the availability of press release or radio scripts for examination by representatives of United States press associations, newspapers, magazines, radio systems, and stations, and, on request, Members of Congress.

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“Director” substituted in text for “Secretary” pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, § 7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637, set out below, which transferred functions vested in President, Secretary of State, Department of State, United States Information Agency, and Director thereof, under this chapter, to Director of International Communication Agency, except to extent that such functions were vested in President under sections 1452, 1456, and 1467 of this title, effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by President. Director authorized by section 5 of Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977 to delegate performance of any such transferred functions to any officer, employee, or unit of International Communication Agency. Accordingly, “Agency” also substituted for “Department of State”. International Communication Agency, and Director thereof, redesignated United States Information Agency, and Director thereof, by section 303 of Pub. L. 97-241, title III, Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291, set out as a note below.

Functions vested in Secretary of State by this section and section 1462 of this title, together with so much of functions as is incidental to or is necessary for performance of such functions, transferred to Director of United States Information Agency by Reorg. Plan No. 8 of 1953, eff. Aug. 1, 1953, 18 F.R. 4542, set out as a note below.

## EMERGENCY PREPAREDNESS FUNCTIONS

For assignment of certain emergency preparedness functions to Director of United States Information Agency, see Parts 1, 2, and 25 of Ex. Ord. No. 12656, Nov. 18, 1988, 53 F.R. 47491, set out as a note under section 5195 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare.

## USIA NETWORK FOR DISSEMINATION OF INFORMATION CONCERNING UNITED STATES PROGRAMS TO COMBAT NARCOTICS AND OTHER CONTROLLED SUBSTANCES

Section 210 of Pub. L. 101-246 provided that: "The United States Information Agency shall establish and maintain an international narcotics information network. The network shall disseminate prompt, accurate, and comprehensive information to foreign governments concerning programs and activities of the United States Government—

"(1) to eliminate the illicit production, trafficking, and abuse of narcotic and psychotropic drugs and other controlled substances within the United States; and

"(2) to promote drug prevention and rehabilitation in the United States."

## PUBLIC SERVICE ANNOUNCEMENTS TO PROMOTE CHILD SURVIVAL

Pub. L. 101-246, title II, §233, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 57, provided that: "The United States Information Agency shall establish and maintain through the Voice of America a system of public service announcements focusing on child survival techniques."

## USIA POSTS AND PERSONNEL OVERSEAS

Pub. L. 100-204, title II, §204, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1373, prohibited use of appropriated funds to pay expenses associated with closing of United States Information Agency posts abroad or to pay expenses associated with Bureau of Management or with television and film service of Agency if an Agency post abroad was closed after Apr. 1, 1987, and not reopened within 180 days after Dec. 22, 1987, placed limitation on reduction of number of positions filled by American employees of Agency stationed abroad, authorized waiver of both prohibition and limitation, and permitted Director, in case of a sequestration order, to submit a report to congressional committees proposing a list of Agency posts to be downgraded or closed in order to comply with sequestration order, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 102-138, title II, §206(c), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 693. See section 1475g of this title.

## REDESIGNATION OF INTERNATIONAL COMMUNICATION AGENCY AS UNITED STATES INFORMATION AGENCY

Pub. L. 97-241, title III, §303, Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291, provided that:

"(a) The International Communication Agency, established by Reorganization Plan Numbered 2 of 1977 [set out as a note below], is hereby redesignated the United States Information Agency. The Director of the International Communication Agency or any other official of the International Communication Agency is hereby redesignated the Director or other official, as appropriate, of the United States Information Agency.

"(b) Any reference in any statute, reorganization plan, Executive order, regulation, agreement, determination, or other official document or proceeding to the International Communication Agency or the Director or other official of the International Communication Agency shall be deemed to refer respectively to the United States Information Agency or the Director or other official of the United States Information Agency, as so redesignated by subsection (a)."

## COMPENSATION OF DIRECTOR AND DEPUTY DIRECTOR OF UNITED STATES INFORMATION AGENCY

Compensation of Director and Deputy Director, see sections 5313 and 5315 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

## REORGANIZATION PLAN NO. 8 OF 1953

Eff. Aug. 1, 1953, 18 F.R. 4542, 67 Stat. 642, as amended act June 28, 1955, ch. 189, §12(c)(21), 69 Stat. 183; Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, §9(b), eff. Oct. 11, 1977, 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1639

Prepared by the President and transmitted to the Senate and the House of Representatives in Congress assembled, June 1, 1953, pursuant to the provisions of the Reorganization Act of 1949, approved June 20, 1949, as amended [see 5 U.S.C. 901 et seq.].

## UNITED STATES INFORMATION AGENCY

## SECTION 1. ESTABLISHMENT OF AGENCY

[Superseded. Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, §9(b), eff. Oct. 11, 1977, 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1639, set out as a note below. Section was amended by act June 28, 1955, ch. 189, §12(c)(21), 69 Stat. 183 and related to the establishment of the United States Information Agency.]

## SEC. 2. TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

(a) Subject to subsection (c) of this section, there are hereby transferred to the Director (1) the functions vested in the Secretary of State by Title V of the United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948, as amended [22 U.S.C. 1461, 1462], and so much of functions with respect to the interchange of books and periodicals and aid to libraries and community centers under sections 202 and 203 of the said Act [22 U.S.C. 1447, 1448] as is an integral part of information programs under that Act [22 U.S.C. 1431-1479], together with so much of the functions vested in the Secretary of State by other provisions of the said Act [22 U.S.C. 1431-1479] as is incidental to or is necessary for the performance of the functions under Title V and sections 202 and 203 transferred by this section, and (2) [Superseded. Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, §9(b), eff. Oct. 11, 1977, 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1639. Paragraph related to functions of the Secretary of State with respect to information programs relating to Germany and Austria.]

(b) [Superseded. Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, §9(b), eff. Oct. 11, 1977, 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1639. Subsection related to the transfer to the Director of functions vested in the Director for Mutual Security by the Mutual Security Act of 1951, as amended, act Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, 65 Stat. 373, which related to foreign information programs, as formerly provided for in section 1652 of this title.]

(c)(1) The Secretary of State shall direct the policy and control the content of a program, for use abroad, on official United States positions, including interpretations of current events, identified as official positions by an exclusive descriptive label.

(2) The Secretary of State shall continue to provide to the Director on a current basis full guidance concerning the foreign policy of the United States.

(3) [Superseded. Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, §9(b), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1639. Paragraph provided that nothing in subsec. (c) of this section was to affect the functions of the Secretary of State with respect to conducting negotiations with other governments.]

(d) To the extent the President deems it necessary in order to carry out the functions transferred by the foregoing provisions of this section, he may authorize the Director to exercise, in relation to the respective functions so transferred, any authority or part thereof available by law, including appropriation acts, to the Secretary of State, the Director for Mutual Security, or the Director of the Foreign Operations Administration, in respect of the said transferred functions.

## SEC. 3. PERFORMANCE OF TRANSFERRED FUNCTIONS

[Superseded. Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, §9(b), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1639. Section related to the performance of transferred functions.]

## SEC. 4. INCIDENTAL TRANSFERS

[Superseded. Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, §9(b), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1639. Section related to incidental transfers.]

## SEC. 5. INTERIM PROVISIONS

[Superseded. Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, §9(b), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1639. Section related to interim provisions.]

[The United States Information Agency was abolished and replaced by the International Communication Agency pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, set out below, effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by the President. The International Communication Agency was redesignated the United States Information Agency by section 303 of Pub. L. 97-241, title III, Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291, set out as a note above.]

## MESSAGE OF THE PRESIDENT

To the Congress of the United States:

I transmit herewith Reorganization Plan No. 8 of 1953, prepared in accordance with the Reorganization Act of 1949, as amended, and providing for the reorganization of foreign information functions. My reasons for proposing this plan are stated in another message transmitted to the Congress today.

After investigation, I have found and hereby declare that each reorganization included in Reorganization Plan No. 8 of 1953 is necessary to accomplish one or more of the purposes set forth in section 2(a) of the Reorganization Act of 1949, as amended. I have also found and hereby declare that it is necessary to include in the accompanying reorganization plan, by reason of reorganizations made thereby, provisions for the appointment and compensation of officers specified in section 1 of the plan. The rates of compensation fixed for these officers are, respectively, those which I have found to prevail in respect of comparable officers in the executive branch of the Government.

I expect that the improved organizational arrangement provided for in Reorganization Plan No. 8 of 1953 will lead to substantial economies and significantly improved effectiveness of administration. It is not practicable, however, to itemize at this time the reductions in expenditures which will probably be brought about by the taking effect of the reorganizations included in the reorganization plan.

DWIGHT D. EISENHOWER.

THE WHITE HOUSE, June 1, 1953.

**REORGANIZATION PLAN NO. 2 OF 1977**

42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1636, as amended Pub. L. 101-246, title II, §204(c), Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 50

Prepared by the President and transmitted to the Senate and the House of Representatives in Congress assembled, October 11, 1977,<sup>1</sup> pursuant to the provisions of chapter 9 of title 5 of the United States Code.<sup>2</sup>

## INTERNATIONAL COMMUNICATION AGENCY

## SECTION 1. ESTABLISHMENT OF THE INTERNATIONAL COMMUNICATION AGENCY

There is hereby established in the executive branch an agency to be known as the International Communication Agency (the "Agency").

## SEC. 2. DIRECTOR

The Agency shall be headed by a Director (the "Director"), who shall serve as the principal advisor to the President, the National Security Council, and the Secretary of State on the functions vested in the Director. The Director shall report to the President and the Secretary of State. Under the direction of the Secretary of State, the Director shall have primary responsibility within the Government for the exercise of the functions vested in the Director. The Director shall be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, and shall be entitled to receive compensa-

tion at the rate now or hereafter prescribed by law for Level II of the Executive Schedule [5 U.S.C. 5313].

## SEC. 3. DEPUTY DIRECTOR

A Deputy Director shall be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate. The Deputy Director shall act for, and exercise the powers of, the Director during the Director's absence or disability or during a vacancy in said office and, in addition, shall perform such duties and exercise such powers as the Director may from time to time prescribe. The Deputy Director shall be entitled to receive compensation at the rate now or hereafter prescribed by law for Level III of the Executive Schedule [5 U.S.C. 5314].

## SEC. 4. ASSOCIATE DIRECTORS

The President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, may appoint four Associate Directors, who shall perform such duties and exercise such powers as the Director may from time to time prescribe. One Associate Director shall be known as the Associate Director for Educational and Cultural Affairs and one Associate Director shall be known as the Associate Director for Broadcasting. Each Associate Director shall be entitled to receive compensation at the rate now or hereafter prescribed by law for Level IV of the Executive Schedule [5 U.S.C. 5315].

[Reference to Associate Director for Broadcasting of the United States Information Agency to be considered a reference to Director of the International Broadcasting Bureau of the United States Information Agency pursuant to section 6209(f)(6) of this title.]

## SEC. 5. PERFORMANCE OF FUNCTIONS

The Director may establish within the Agency bureaus, offices, divisions and other units. The Director may from time to time make provision for the performance of any function of the Director by any officer, employee or unit of the Agency.

## SEC. 6. NEGOTIATIONS

(a) Under the direction of the Secretary of State, the Director shall prepare for, manage and conduct negotiations with representatives of foreign states or international organizations on matters for which responsibility is vested in the Director or in the Agency.

(b) For the purpose of conducting such negotiations, or for the purpose of exercising any other authority vested in the Director or in the Agency, the Director may

(1) consult and communicate with or direct the consultation and communication with representatives of other nations or of international organizations; and

(2) communicate in the name of the Secretary of State with diplomatic representatives of the United States in this country and abroad.

## SEC. 7. TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

(a) There are hereby transferred to the Director all functions vested in the President, the Secretary of State, the Department of State, the Director of the United States Information Agency, and the United States Information Agency pursuant to the following:

(1) the United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948, as amended (22 U.S.C. 1431-1479), except to the extent that any function in sections 302, 401, or 602 [22 U.S.C. 1452, 1456, or 1467] is vested in the President;

(2) the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961, as amended (22 U.S.C. 2451-2458a), except for: (A) such functions as are vested by sections 102(b)(6), 102(b)(10), 104(a), 104(e)(1), 104(e)(2), 104(f), 104(g), 105(a), 105(b), 105(c), 106(a), 108 [22 U.S.C. 2452(b)(6), (b)(10), 2454(a), (e)(1), (2), (f), (g), 2455(a), (b), (c), 2456(a), 2458]; (B) to the extent that such functions were assigned to the Secretary of Health, Education and Welfare immediately prior to the effective date of this Reorganization Plan, sections 104(b), 105(d)(2),

<sup>1</sup> Actually transmitted Oct. 12, 1977.

<sup>2</sup> As amended Nov. 1, 1977, and Nov. 3, 1977.

105(f), 106(d), and 106(f) [22 U.S.C. 2454(b), 2455(d)(2), (f), 2456(d), (f)]; and (C) to the extent that any function therein is vested in the President or the Secretary of State, sections 106(b) and 106(c) [22 U.S.C. 2456(b), (c)].

(3) Public Law 90-494 (22 U.S.C. [former] 929-932, 1221-1234), to the extent that such functions are vested in the Director of the United States Information Agency;

(4) Sections 522(3), 692(1), and 803(a)(4) of the Foreign Service Act of 1946, as amended (22 U.S.C. [former sections] 922(3), 1037a(1), and 1063(a)(4)), to the extent such functions are vested in the Director of the United States Information Agency or in the United States Information Agency.

(5) Section 4 of the United States Information Agency Appropriations Authorization Act of 1973, Public Law 93-168 [Nov. 29, 1973, 87 Stat. 689];

(6)(A) Sections 107(b), 204 and 205 of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Year 1978, Public Law 95-105, 91 Stat. 844 [Aug. 17, 1977]; and (B) to the extent such functions are vested in the Director of the United States Information Agency, section 203 of the Act;

(7) The Center for Cultural and Technical Interchange Between East and West Act of 1960 (22 U.S.C. 2054-2057);

(8) Sections 101(a)(15)(J) and 212(e) of the Immigration and Nationality Act (8 U.S.C. 1101(a)(15)(J), 1182(e));

(9) Section 2(a)(1) of Reorganization Plan No. 8 of 1953 (22 U.S.C. 1461 note);

(10) Section 3(a) of the Arts and Artifacts Indemnity Act (20 U.S.C. 972(a));

(11) Section 7 of the Act of June 15, 1951, c. 138, 65 Stat. 71 (50 U.S.C. App. 2316);

(12) Section 9(b) of the National Foundation on the Arts and Humanities Act of 1965 (20 U.S.C. 958(b)), to the extent that such functions are vested in the Secretary of State;

(13) Section 112(a) of the Higher Education Act of 1965 (20 U.S.C. [former] 1009(a)), to the extent such functions are vested in the Department of State;

(14) Section 3(b)(1) of the Woodrow Wilson Memorial Act of 1968 (20 U.S.C. 80f(b)(1));

(15) Section 201 of Public Law 89-665, as amended by section 201(5) of Public Law 94-422 (16 U.S.C. 470i(a)(9));

(16) The third proviso in the twenty-third unnumbered paragraph of title V of Public Law 95-86 (headed "UNITED STATES INFORMATION AGENCY, SALARIES AND EXPENSES"), 91 Stat. 440-41 [Aug. 2, 1977];

(17) The twentieth unnumbered paragraph of title I of Public Law 95-86 (headed "CENTER FOR CULTURAL AND TECHNICAL INTERCHANGE BETWEEN EAST AND WEST"), 91 Stat. 424;

(18) Sections 4(d)(1)(F), 4(f)(1)(F), 4(g)(1)(F), and 4(h)(1)(F) of the Foreign Service Buildings Act, 1926, as amended (22 U.S.C. 295(d)(1)(F), 295(f)(1)(F), 295(g)(1)(F), and 295(h)(1)(F)); and

(19) Sections 1, 2, and 3 of the Act of July 9, 1949, c. 301, 63 Stat. 408 (22 U.S.C. 2681-2683).

(b) There are hereby transferred to the Director all functions vested in the Assistant Secretary of State for Public Affairs pursuant to Section 2(a) of the John F. Kennedy Center Act (20 U.S.C. 76h(a)).

(c) The Director shall insure that the scholarly integrity and nonpolitical character of educational and cultural exchange activities vested in the Director are maintained.

#### SEC. 8. ESTABLISHMENT OF THE UNITED STATES ADVISORY COMMISSION ON INTERNATIONAL COMMUNICATION, CULTURAL, AND EDUCATIONAL AFFAIRS

(a) There is hereby established an advisory commission, to be known as the United States Advisory Commission on International Communication, Cultural and Educational Affairs (the "Commission") [redesignated the United States Advisory Commission on Public Diplomacy]. The Commission shall consist of seven members who shall be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate. The members of the Commission shall represent the public interest and shall be selected from a cross section of educational, communications, cultural, scientific, tech-

nical, public service, labor and business and professional backgrounds. Not more than four members shall be from any one political party. The term of each member shall be three years except that of the original seven appointments, two shall be for a term of one year and two shall be for a term of two years. Any member appointed to fill a vacancy occurring prior to the expiration of the term for which a predecessor was appointed shall be appointed for the remainder of such term. Upon the expiration of a member's term of office, such member may continue to serve until a successor is appointed and has qualified. The President shall designate a member to chair the Commission.

(b) The functions now vested in the United States Advisory Commission on Information and in the United States Advisory Commission on International Educational and Cultural Affairs under sections 601 through 603 and 801(6) of the United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948, as amended (22 U.S.C. 1466-1468, 1471(6)), and under sections 106(b) and 107 of the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961, as amended (22 U.S.C. 2456(b), 2457), respectively, are hereby consolidated and vested in the Commission, as follows:

The Commission shall formulate and recommend to the Director, the Secretary of State, and the President policies and programs to carry out the functions vested in the Director or the Agency, and shall appraise the effectiveness of policies and programs of the Agency. The Commission shall submit to the Congress, the President, the Secretary of State and the Director annual reports on programs and activities carried on by the Agency, including appraisals, where feasible, as to the effectiveness of the several programs. The Commission shall also include in such reports such recommendations as shall have been made by the Commission to the Director for effectuating the purposes of the Agency, and the action taken to carry out such recommendations. The Commission may also submit such other reports to the Congress as it deems appropriate, and shall make reports to the public in the United States and abroad to develop a better understanding of and support for the programs conducted by the Agency. The Commission's reports to the Congress shall include assessments of the degree to which the scholarly integrity and nonpolitical character of the educational and cultural exchange activities vested in the Director have been maintained, and assessments of the attitudes of foreign scholars and governments regarding such activities.

(c) The Commission shall have no authority with respect to the J. William Fulbright Foreign Scholarship Board or the United States National Commission for UNESCO. [As amended Pub. L. 101-246, title II, §204(c), Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 50.]

[United States Advisory Commission on International Communication, Cultural and Educational Affairs was redesignated the United States Advisory Commission on Public Diplomacy by 22 U.S.C. 1469.]

[Any provisions of section 8 of Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977 inconsistent with 22 U.S.C. 1469 to no longer have legal effect on Jan. 20, 1989, and prohibition limiting membership of individuals from same political party is repealed, see 22 U.S.C. 1469(d).]

#### SEC. 9. ABOLITIONS AND SUPERSESSIONS

(a) The following are hereby abolished:

(1) The United States Information Agency, including the offices of Director, Deputy Director, Deputy Director (Policy and Plans) (5 U.S.C. 5316(67)), Associate Director (Policy and Plans) (5 U.S.C. 5316(103)), and additional offices created by section 1(d) of Reorganization Plan No. 8 of 1953 (22 U.S.C. 1461 note), of the United States Information Agency, provided that, pending the initial appointment of the Director, Deputy Director and Associate Directors of the Agency their functions shall be performed temporarily, but not for a period in excess of sixty (60) days, by such officers of the Department of State or of the United States Information Agency as the President shall designate;



(2) One of the offices of Assistant Secretary of State provided for in section 1 of the Act of May 26, 1949, c. 143, 63 Stat. 111, as amended (22 U.S.C. 2652), and in section 5315(22) of title 5 of the United States Code;

(3) The United States Advisory Commission on International Educational and Cultural Affairs (22 U.S.C. [former] 2456(b));

(4) The United States Advisory Commission on Information (22 U.S.C. [former] 1466-1468);

(5) All functions vested in or related to the United States Advisory Commission on International Educational and Cultural Affairs and the United States Advisory Commission on Information that are not transferred to the Director by section 7 or consolidated in the Commission by section 8 of this Reorganization Plan;

(6) The Advisory Committee on the Arts, all functions thereof, and all functions relating thereto (22 U.S.C. [former] 2456(c)); and

(7) The functions vested in the Secretary of State by section 3(e) of the Act of August 1, 1956, c. 841, 70 Stat. 890 (22 U.S.C. [former] 2670(e)).

(b) Sections 1, 2(a)(2), 2(b), 2(c)(3), 3, 4, and 5 of Reorganization Plan No. 8 of 1953 (22 U.S.C. 1461 note) are hereby superseded.

#### SEC. 10. OTHER TRANSFERS

So much of the personnel, property, records, and unexpended balances of appropriations, allocations and other funds employed, used, held, available, or to be made available in connection with the functions transferred or consolidated by this Reorganization Plan, as the Director of the Office of Management and Budget shall determine, shall be transferred to the appropriate department, agency, or commission at such time or times as the Director of the Office of Management and Budget shall provide, except that no such unexpended balances transferred shall be used for purposes other than those for which the appropriation was originally made. The Director of the Office of Management and Budget shall provide for terminating the affairs of all agencies, commissions, and offices abolished herein and for such further measures and dispositions as such Director deems necessary to effectuate the purposes of this Reorganization Plan.

#### SEC. 11. EFFECTIVE DATE

This Reorganization Plan shall become effective at such time or times, on or before July 1, 1978, as the President shall specify, but not sooner than the earliest time allowable under section 906 of title 5 of the United States Code.

[Pursuant to Ex. Ord. No. 12048, set out below, this Reorg. Plan is effective July 1, 1978.]

[The International Communication Agency was redesignated the United States Information Agency and the Director or any other official of the International Communication Agency redesignated as Director or other official, as appropriate, of the United States Information Agency, see section 303 of Pub. L. 97-241, title III, Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291, set out as a note above.]

#### MESSAGE OF THE PRESIDENT

To the Congress of the United States:

I transmit herewith Reorganization Plan No. 2 of 1977 to consolidate certain international communication, educational and cultural, and broadcasting activities of the United States Government. I am acting under the authority vested in me by the Reorganization Act, chapter 9 of title 5 of the United States Code. I am also acting pursuant to section 501 of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Year 1978 (Public Law 95-105), which provides that my recommendations for reorganizing these activities be transmitted by October 31, 1977.

This reorganization will consolidate into a new agency, to be known as the Agency for International Communication, the functions now exercised by the State

Department's Bureau of Educational and Cultural Affairs and the United States Information Agency.

The principal aspects of this proposal are:

—The new agency will take over USIA's international communications programs (including the Voice of America) and the international educational and cultural exchange activities now conducted by the Bureau of Educational and Cultural Affairs.

—The agency's Director will be the principal advisor on international information and exchange activities to the President, the National Security Council, and the Secretary of State. Under the direction of the Secretary of State, the Director will have primary responsibility within the Government for the conduct of such activities. The Director, the Deputy Director and the Associate Directors of the new agency will be confirmed by the Senate.

—The two commissions that now advise USIA and the Bureau of Educational and Cultural Affairs will be combined into a single seven-member commission. Members of this nonpartisan commission will be chosen from fields related to the agency's mission. The commissioners will be appointed by the President and confirmed by the Senate.

The purpose of this reorganization is to broaden our informational, educational and cultural intercourse with the world, since this is the major means by which our government can inform others about our country, and inform ourselves about the rest of the world.

The new Agency for International Communication will play a central role in building these two-way bridges of understanding between our people and the other peoples of the world. Only by knowing and understanding each other's experiences can we find common ground on which we can examine and resolve our differences.

The new agency will have two distinct but related goals:

To tell the world about our society and policies—in particular our commitment to cultural diversity and individual liberty.

To tell ourselves about the world, so as to enrich our own culture as well as to give us the understanding to deal effectively with problems among nations.

As the world becomes more and more interdependent, such mutual understanding becomes increasingly vital. The aim of this reorganization, therefore, is a more effective dialogue among peoples of the earth. Americans—mostly immigrants or the descendants of immigrants—are particularly well suited to enter into such an undertaking. We have already learned much from those who have brought differing values, perspectives and experiences to our shores. And we must continue to learn.

Thus the new agency will lay heavy emphasis on listening to others, so as to learn something of their motivations and aspirations, their histories and cultures.

Several principles guided me in shaping this reorganization plan. Among the most important were:

—Maintaining the integrity of the educational and cultural exchange programs is imperative. To this end, the plan retains the Board of Foreign Scholarships, whose strong leadership has done so much to insure the high quality of the educational exchange program. In addition, I intend to nominate an Associate Director who will be responsible for the administration and supervision of educational and cultural functions consolidated in the new Agency. The responsibilities presently exercised by the Department of State in relation to the Center for Technical and Cultural Interchange Between East and West, Inc., will be transferred to the new agency without alteration.

—Keeping the Voice of America's news gathering and reporting functions independent and objective. The Voice's charter, enacted into law in 1976, provides that "VOA news will be accurate, objective, and comprehensive"; that VOA will "present a balanced and comprehensive projection of significant American thought and institutions"; and that VOA will

present U.S. policies “clearly and effectively, and will also present responsible discussion and opinion on these policies.” Under this Administration, VOA will be solely responsible for the content of news broadcasts—for there is no more valued coin than candor in the international marketplace of ideas. I also plan to nominate an Associate Director who will be responsible for the administration and supervision of the Voice of America.

- The new agency’s activities must be straightforward, open, candid, balanced, and representative. They will not be given over to the advancement of the views of any one group, any one party or any one Administration. The agency must not operate in a covert, manipulative, or propagandistic way.
- Rights of U.S. Information Agency and State Department employees must be respected. In the new agency, their career achievements will be recognized and the best possible use made of their professional skills and abilities.

The Director of the new agency will assess and advise on the impact on worldwide public opinion of American foreign policy decisions. The Agency will coordinate the international information, educational, cultural and exchange programs conducted by the U.S. Government and will be a governmental focal point for private U.S. international exchange programs. It will also play a leading role within the U.S. Government in our efforts to remove barriers to the international exchange of ideas and information.

It is not practicable to specify all of the expenditure reductions and other economies that will result from the proposed reorganization, and therefore I do not do so. The reorganization will result in greater efficiency by unifying in Washington the management of programs which are already administered in a consolidated manner in the field. For example, field officers will no longer report to two separate sets of supervisors and headquarters at home.

This plan abolishes the functions of the Advisory Committee on the Arts authorized by section 106(c) of the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961, as amended (22 U.S.C. 2456(c)). Also abolished, as a result of the consolidation of certain functions of the United States Advisory Commission on Information and the United States Advisory Commission on International Educational and Cultural Affairs in the United States Advisory Commission on International Communication, Cultural and Educational Affairs, are the functions authorized by section 603 of the United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948, as amended (22 U.S.C. 1468) (requiring submission by the United States Advisory Commission on Information of a quarterly report to the Director of USIA and a semi-annual report to the Congress). The new commission will report annually and at such other times as it deems appropriate (as does the existing Advisory Commission on International Educational and Cultural Affairs). Since appointments of all members of the new commission will be on a nonpartisan basis, as has been the case with the Advisory Commission on International Educational and Cultural Affairs, the requirement of section 602(a) of the U.S. Information and Educational Exchange Act (22 U.S.C. 1467(a)) that not more than three members of the Advisory Commission on Information shall be of the same political party is abolished.

Various obsolete or superseded functions under Reorganization Plan No. 8 of 1953 (22 U.S.C. 1461 note), which created the USIA, are superseded by this plan. Finally, the Plan abolishes a provision authorizing the Secretary of State to pay the expenses of transporting the bodies of participants in exchange programs who die away from home, since State no longer will conduct such programs (22 U.S.C. 2670(e)). All functions abolished by the reorganization are done so in compliance with section 903(b) of title 5 of the United States Code.

After investigation, I have found that this reorganization is necessary to carry out the policy set forth in section 901(a) of title 5 of the United States Code.

The provisions in this Plan for the appointment and pay of the Director, Deputy Director, and Associate Directors of the Agency have been found by me to be necessary by reason of the reorganization made by the plan and are at a rate applicable to comparable officers in the executive branch.

In presenting this plan, I ask the support of Congress to strengthen and simplify the machinery by which we carry out these important functions of the United States Government.

Such action will make us better able to project the great variety and vitality of American life to those abroad, and to enrich our own lives with a fuller knowledge of the vitality and variety of other societies.

The new Agency for International Communication will help us demonstrate “a decent respect for the opinions of mankind,” and to deal intelligently with a world awakening to a new spirit of freedom.

JIMMY CARTER.

THE WHITE HOUSE, October 11, 1977.

#### CHANGE OF NAME

United States Advisory Commission on International Communication, Cultural and Educational Affairs redesignated United States Advisory Commission on Public Diplomacy, by section 1469 of this title.

#### EX. ORD. NO. 12048. INTERNATIONAL COMMUNICATION AGENCY

Ex. Ord. No. 12048, Mar. 27, 1978, 43 F.R. 13361, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 12388, Oct. 14, 1982, 47 F.R. 46245; Ex. Ord. No. 12608, Sept. 9, 1987, 52 F.R. 34617, provided:

By virtue of the authority vested in me by the Constitution and laws of the United States of America, including Section 11 of Reorganization Plan No. 2 of 1977 (42 FR 62461 (December 13, 1977)) [set out above], Section 202 of the Budget and Accounting Procedures Act of 1950 (31 U.S.C. 581c) [31 U.S.C. 1531], and Section 301 of Title 3 of the United States Code, and as President of the United States of America, in order to provide for the establishment of the International Communication Agency, it is hereby ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. (a) Reorganization Plan No. 2 of 1977 (42 FR 62461), which establishes the International Communication Agency, except for Section 7(a)(14) thereof, is hereby effective.

(b) Section 7(a)(14) of Reorganization Plan No. 2 of 1977, relating to the Woodrow Wilson Memorial Act of 1968 [20 U.S.C. 80e et seq.], shall be effective on July 1, 1978.

SEC. 2. The functions vested in the Secretary of State by Executive Order No. 11312 are assigned and redelegated to the Director of the International Communication Agency. All authority vested in the United States Information Agency or its Director by Executive order is reassigned and redelegated to the International Communication Agency or its Director, respectively.

SEC. 3. In order to ensure appropriate coordination among the Executive agencies, the Director of the International Communication Agency shall exercise primary responsibility for Government-wide policy guidance for international informational, educational, and cultural activities, including exchange programs. The Director shall take into account the statutory functions of the other concerned Executive agencies.

SEC. 4. The Director of the International Communication Agency, with the assistance of the Secretary of Education, shall prepare and submit to the President the reports which the President is to transmit to the Congress pursuant to Section 108(b) of the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961, as amended (22 U.S.C. 2458).

SEC. 5. The functions vested in the President by Sections 108(c) and 108(d) of the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961, as amended [22 U.S.C. 2458(c) and (d)], are delegated to the Director of the International Communication Agency; because, (a) such a delegation is in the interest of the purposes ex-

pressed in that Act and the efficient administration of the programs undertaken pursuant thereto, (b) the Director is an appropriate official to perform those functions, and (c) those functions are not now delegated to any other officer of the Government.

SEC. 6. The Director of the International Communication Agency shall be the principal adviser to the President, the National Security Council, and the Secretary of State on international informational, educational, and cultural matters. As such, the Director shall provide advice within the policy formulation activities of the National Security Council when such matters are considered. The Director shall ensure that the senior official of the Agency at each diplomatic mission provides advice to the Chief of Mission on such matters. The scope of the Director's advice shall include assessments of the impact of actual and proposed United States foreign policy decisions on public opinion abroad.

SEC. 7. The records, property, personnel, and unexpended balances of appropriations, available or to be made available, which relate to the functions transferred or reassigned, or redelegated as provided in this Order, are hereby transferred to the Director of the International Communication Agency.

SEC. 8. The Director of the Office of Management and Budget shall make such determinations, issue such orders, and take all actions, necessary or appropriate to effectuate the transfers or reassignments provided in this Order, including the transfer of funds, records, property, and personnel.

SEC. 9. This Order shall be effective on April 1, 1978.

SEC. 10. In accord with the name change provisions of Section 303 of Public Law 97-241 [set out as a note above] and effective on August 24, 1982, references in this Order to the International Communication Agency shall be deemed to be references to the United States Information Agency.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1461-1a, 1465bb of this title.

### § 1461-1. Mission of United States Information Agency

The mission of the United States Information Agency shall be to further the national interest by improving United States relations with other countries and peoples through the broadest possible sharing of ideas, information, and educational and cultural activities. In carrying out this mission, the United States Information Agency shall, among other activities—

(1) conduct Government-sponsored information, educational, and cultural activities designed—

(A) to provide other peoples with a better understanding of the policies, values, institutions, and culture of the United States; and

(B) within the statutory limits governing domestic activities of the Agency, to enhance understanding on the part of the Government and people of the United States of the history, culture, attitudes, perceptions, and aspirations of others;

(2) encourage private institutions in the United States to develop their own exchange activities, and provide assistance for those exchange activities which are in the broadest national interest;

(3) coordinate international informational, educational, or cultural activities conducted or planned by departments and agencies of the United States Government;

(4) assist in the development of a comprehensive national policy on international communications; and

(5) promote United States participation in international events relevant to the mission of the Agency.

(Pub. L. 95-426, title II, § 202, Oct. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 972; Pub. L. 97-241, title III, § 303(b), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Year 1979, and not as part of the United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948 which comprises this chapter.

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“United States Information Agency” substituted in text for “International Communication Agency” pursuant to section 303(b) of Pub. L. 97-241, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title.

#### INCREASE IN FINANCIAL RESOURCES OF AGENCY FOR EXCHANGE-OF-PERSONS ACTIVITIES

Section 203 of Pub. L. 95-426, as amended by Pub. L. 97-241, title III, § 303(b), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291, provided that: “The President shall, by a process of gradual expansion during the four-year period beginning October 1, 1979, increase significantly the financial resources expended annually by the United States Information Agency for exchange-of-persons activities. The President shall prepare at an early date a general plan for the accomplishment of this goal and shall adjust that plan annually, as he finds appropriate, in consultation with the Congress.”

### § 1461-1a. Ban on domestic activities by United States Information Agency

Except as provided in section 1461 of this title and this section, no funds authorized to be appropriated to the United States Information Agency shall be used to influence public opinion in the United States, and no program material prepared by the United States Information Agency shall be distributed within the United States. This section shall not apply to programs carried out pursuant to the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2451 et seq.). The provisions of this section shall not prohibit the United States Information Agency from responding to inquiries from members of the public about its operations, policies, or programs.

(Pub. L. 99-93, title II, § 208, Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 431; Pub. L. 103-236, title II, § 232, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 424.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 87-256, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 527, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 33 (§ 2451 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2451 of this title and Tables.

#### CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1986 and 1987, and not as part of the United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948 which comprises this chapter.

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-236 inserted at end “The provisions of this section shall not prohibit the United States In-

formation Agency from responding to inquiries from members of the public about its operations, policies, or programs.”

### § 1461a. Omitted

#### CODIFICATION

Section, act Aug. 31, 1960, Pub. L. 86-678, title IV, 74 Stat. 569, which related to exchange of funds in connection with establishments abroad, was from the Departments of State and Justice, the Judiciary, and Related Agencies Appropriation Act, 1961, and was not repeated in subsequent appropriation acts. Similar provisions were contained in the following prior appropriation acts:

July 13, 1959, Pub. L. 86-84, title IV, 73 Stat. 194.  
 June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-474, title IV, 72 Stat. 257.  
 June 11, 1957, Pub. L. 85-49, title IV, 71 Stat. 68.  
 June 20, 1956, ch. 414, title IV, 70 Stat. 312.  
 July 7, 1955, ch. 279, title IV, 69 Stat. 279.  
 July 2, 1954, ch. 456, title IV, 68 Stat. 432.

### § 1461b. Indemnification of owners of short-wave radio facilities against loss or damage

Notwithstanding the provisions of sections 1341, 1342, 1349 to 1351 and subchapter II of chapter 15 of title 31, the United States Information Agency is authorized, in making contracts for the use of international shortwave radio stations and facilities, to agree on behalf of the United States to indemnify the owners and operators of said radio stations and facilities from such funds as may be hereafter appropriated for the purpose against loss or damage on account of injury to persons or property arising from such use of said radio stations and facilities.

(Oct. 10, 1978, Pub. L. 95-431, title V, § 501, 92 Stat. 1041; Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title III, § 303(b), 96 Stat. 291.)

#### CODIFICATION

“Sections 1341, 1342, and 1349 to 1351 and subchapter II of chapter 15 of title 31” substituted in text for “section 3679 of the Revised Statutes, as amended (31 U.S.C. 665)” on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, § 4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

Section was enacted as part of appropriation act, cited as the credit to this section, and not as part of the United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948 which comprises this chapter.

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

Provisions similar to those in this section were contained in the following prior appropriation acts:

Aug. 2, 1977, Pub. L. 95-86, title V, 91 Stat. 441.  
 July 14, 1976, Pub. L. 94-362, title V, 90 Stat. 960.  
 Oct. 21, 1975, Pub. L. 94-121, title V, 89 Stat. 639.  
 Oct. 5, 1974, Pub. L. 93-433, title V, 88 Stat. 1207.  
 Nov. 27, 1973, Pub. L. 93-162, title V, 87 Stat. 657.  
 Oct. 25, 1972, Pub. L. 92-544, title V, 86 Stat. 1132.  
 Aug. 10, 1971, Pub. L. 92-77, title V, 85 Stat. 269.  
 Oct. 21, 1970, Pub. L. 91-472, title V, 84 Stat. 1062.  
 Dec. 24, 1969, Pub. L. 91-153, title V, 83 Stat. 425.  
 Aug. 9, 1968, Pub. L. 90-470, title V, 82 Stat. 690.  
 Nov. 8, 1967, Pub. L. 90-133, title V, 81 Stat. 433.  
 Nov. 8, 1966, Pub. L. 89-797, title V, 80 Stat. 1504.  
 Sept. 2, 1965, Pub. L. 89-164, title V, 79 Stat. 643.  
 Aug. 31, 1964, Pub. L. 88-527, title V, 78 Stat. 734.  
 Dec. 30, 1963, Pub. L. 88-245, title V, 77 Stat. 800.  
 Oct. 18, 1962, Pub. L. 87-843, title V, 76 Stat. 1104.  
 Sept. 21, 1961, Pub. L. 87-264, title IV, 75 Stat. 557.  
 Aug. 31, 1960, Pub. L. 86-678, title IV, 74 Stat. 569.  
 July 13, 1959, Pub. L. 86-84, title IV, 73 Stat. 194.  
 June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-474, title IV, 72 Stat. 257.  
 June 11, 1957, Pub. L. 85-49, title IV, 71 Stat. 67.

June 20, 1956, ch. 414, title IV, 70 Stat. 312.  
 July 7, 1955, ch. 279, title IV, 69 Stat. 279.  
 July 2, 1954, ch. 456, title IV, 68 Stat. 432.

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“United States Information Agency” substituted in text for “International Communication Agency” pursuant to section 303(b) of Pub. L. 97-241, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title.

### § 1461c. Omitted

#### CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 90-470, title V, Aug. 9, 1968, 82 Stat. 690, which related to a one year extension to existing appointments and assignments to the Foreign Service Reserve for foreign information and educational activities which would otherwise have expired, was not repeated in subsequent appropriation acts. Similar provisions were contained in the following prior appropriation acts:

Nov. 8, 1967, Pub. L. 90-133, title V, 81 Stat. 433.  
 Nov. 8, 1966, Pub. L. 89-797, title V, 80 Stat. 1504, 1505.  
 Sept. 2, 1965, Pub. L. 89-164, title V, 79 Stat. 643.  
 Aug. 31, 1964, Pub. L. 88-527, title V, 78 Stat. 734.  
 Dec. 30, 1963, Pub. L. 88-245, title V, 77 Stat. 800.  
 Oct. 18, 1962, Pub. L. 87-843, title V, 76 Stat. 1104.  
 Sept. 21, 1961, Pub. L. 87-264, title IV, 75 Stat. 558.  
 Aug. 31, 1960, Pub. L. 86-678, title IV, 74 Stat. 569.  
 July 13, 1959, Pub. L. 86-84, title IV, 73 Stat. 194.  
 June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-474, title IV, 72 Stat. 258.  
 June 11, 1957, Pub. L. 85-49, title IV, 71 Stat. 68.  
 June 20, 1956, ch. 414, title IV, 70 Stat. 312.  
 July 7, 1955, ch. 279, title IV, 69 Stat. 279.  
 July 2, 1954, ch. 456, title IV, 68 Stat. 432.

### § 1462. Policies governing information activities

In authorizing international information activities under this chapter, it is the sense of the Congress (1) that the Director shall reduce such Government information activities whenever corresponding private information dissemination is found to be adequate; (2) that nothing in this chapter shall be construed to give the Agency a monopoly in the production or sponsorship on the air of short-wave broadcasting programs, or a monopoly in any other medium of information.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title V, § 502, 62 Stat. 10; 1977 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §§ 5, 7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1636, 1637.)

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“Director” substituted in text for “Secretary” pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, § 7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637, set out under section 1461 of this title, which transferred functions vested in President, Secretary of State, Department of State, United States Information Agency, and Director thereof, under this chapter, to Director of International Communication Agency, except to extent that such functions were vested in President under sections 1452, 1456, and 1467 of this title, effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by President. Director of International Communication Agency was authorized by section 5 of Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977 to delegate performance of such transferred functions to officers, employees, or units of International Communication Agency. Accordingly, “Agency” also substituted for “Department”. International Communication Agency, and Director thereof, redesignated United States Information Agency, and Director thereof, by section 303 of Pub. L. 97-241, title III, Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title.

Functions vested in Secretary of State by this section and section 1461 of this title, together with so

much of functions as is incidental to or is necessary for performance of such functions, transferred to Director of United States Information Agency by Reorg. Plan No. 8 of 1953, eff. Aug. 1, 1953, 18 F.R. 4542, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title.

**§ 1463. Repealed. Pub. L. 103-236, title III, § 315(a), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 445**

Section, act Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title V, § 503, as added July 12, 1976, Pub. L. 94-350, title II, § 206, 90 Stat. 831; amended 1977 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §§ 5, 7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1636, 1637; Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title III, § 303(b), 96 Stat. 291, related to principles governing communications of Voice of America broadcasts.

**§ 1464. Voice of America/Europe**

As part of its duties and programs under this subchapter, Voice of America/Europe shall—

- (1) target news and features in accordance with the findings and recommendations of the Young European Survey;
- (2) conduct periodic audience evaluations and measurements; and
- (3) promote and advertise Voice of America/Europe.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title V, § 504, as added Dec. 22, 1987, Pub. L. 100-204, title IV, § 402, 101 Stat. 1381.)

**§ 1464a. USIA satellite and television**

**(a) In general**

The Director of the United States Information Agency is authorized to lease or otherwise acquire time on commercial or United States Government satellites for the purpose of transmitting materials and programs to posts and other users abroad.

**(b) Broadcast principles**

The Congress finds that the long-term interests of the United States are served by communicating directly with the peoples of the world by television. To be effective, the United States Information Agency must win the attention and respect of viewers. These principles will therefore govern the Agency's television broadcasts (hereinafter in this section referred to as "USIA-TV"):

- (1) USIA-TV will serve as a consistently reliable and authoritative source of news. USIA-TV news will be accurate and objective.
- (2) USIA-TV will represent the United States, not any single segment of American society and will, therefore, present a balanced and comprehensive projection of significant American thought and institutions.
- (3) USIA-TV will present the policies of the United States clearly and effectively and will also present responsible discussions and opinion on these policies.

**(c) Programs**

The Director of the United States Information Agency is authorized to produce, acquire, or broadcast television programs, via satellite, only if such programs—

- (1) are interactive, consisting of interviews among participants in different locales;
- (2) cover news, public affairs, or other current events;

(3) cover official activities of government, Federal or State, including congressional proceedings and news briefings of any agency of the Executive branch; or

(4) are of an artistic or scientific character or are otherwise representative of American culture.

**(d) Costs**

When a comparable program produced by United States public or commercial broadcasters and producers is available at a cost which is equal to or less than the cost of production by USIA-TV, the Director of the United States Information Agency shall use such materials in preference to USIA-TV produced materials.

**(e) Allocation of funds**

(1) Of the funds authorized to be appropriated to the United States Information Agency not more than \$12,000,000 for the fiscal year 1990 and not more than \$12,480,000 for the fiscal year 1991 may be obligated or expended for USIA-TV.

(2) The United States Information Agency shall prepare and submit to the Congress quarterly reports which contain a detailed explanation of expenditures for USIA-TV during the fiscal years 1990 and 1991. Such reports shall contain specific justification and supporting information pertaining to all programs, particularly those described in subsection (c)(4) of this section, that were produced in-house by USIA-TV. Each such report shall include a statement by the Director of the United States Information Agency that, according to the best information available to the United States Information Agency, no comparable United States commercially-produced or public television program is available at a cost which is equal to or less than the cost of production by USIA-TV.

(3) Of the funds authorized to be appropriated to the United States Information Agency, \$1,500,000 for the fiscal year 1990 and \$1,500,000 for the fiscal year 1991 shall be available only for the purchase or use of programs produced with grants from the Corporation for Public Broadcasting or produced by United States public broadcasters.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title V, § 505, as added Feb. 16, 1990, Pub. L. 101-246, title II, § 205(a), 104 Stat. 50.)

TELEVISION SERVICE OF USIA

Pub. L. 100-204, title II, § 207, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1374, provided that: "The television and film service of the United States Information Agency, including Worldnet broadcasts, shall operate under the same criteria and conditions as are specified for the Voice of America by section 503 of the United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948 (22 U.S.C. 1463)."

**§ 1464b. Voice of America hiring practices**

**(a) Prohibition**

After February 16, 1990, the Voice of America shall not select candidates for employment who must be or are preapproved for employment at the Voice of America by a foreign government or an entity controlled by a foreign government.

**(b) Exception**

The prohibition referred to in this section shall not apply to—

(1) participants in the Voice of America's exchange programs; or

(2) clerical, technical, or maintenance staff at Voice of America offices in foreign countries.

**(c) Report**

If the Director of the United States Information Agency determines that the prohibition under subsection (a) of this section would require the termination of a specific Voice of America foreign language service, then, not less than 90 days before the Agency begins to recruit such candidates, the Director shall submit to the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives a report concerning—

(1) the number and location of speakers of the applicable foreign language who could be recruited by the Voice of America without violating this section; and

(2) the efforts made by the Voice of America to recruit such individuals for employment.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title V, § 506, as added Feb. 16, 1990, Pub. L. 101-246, title II, § 232, 104 Stat. 57.)

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

SUBCHAPTER V-A—RADIO BROADCASTING TO CUBA

SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in section 6204 of this title.

**§ 1465. Congressional findings and declaration of purposes**

The Congress finds and declares—

(1) that it is the policy of the United States to support the right of the people of Cuba to seek, receive, and impart information and ideas through any media and regardless of frontiers, in accordance with article 19 of Universal Declaration of Human Rights;

(2) that, consonant with this policy, radio broadcasting to Cuba may be effective in furthering the open communication of accurate information and ideas to the people of Cuba, in particular information about Cuba;

(3) that such broadcasting to Cuba, operated in a manner not inconsistent with the broad foreign policy of the United States and in accordance with high professional standards, would be in the national interest; and

(4) that the Voice of America already broadcasts to Cuba information that represents America, not any single segment of American society, and includes a balanced and comprehensive projection of significant American thought and institutions but that there is a need for broadcasts to Cuba which provide news, commentary and other information about events in Cuba and elsewhere to promote the cause of freedom in Cuba.

(Pub. L. 98-111, § 2, Oct. 4, 1983, 97 Stat. 749.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Radio Broadcasting to Cuba Act which comprises this subchapter, and not as part of the United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948 which comprises this chapter.

SHORT TITLE

Section 1 of Pub. L. 98-111 provided: "That this Act [enacting this subchapter] may be cited as the 'Radio Broadcasting to Cuba Act'."

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1465a, 1465d of this title.

**§ 1465a. Additional functions of United States Information Agency**

**(a) Radio broadcasting to Cuba**

In order to carry out the objectives set forth in section 1465 of this title, the United States Information Agency (hereafter in this subchapter referred to as the "Agency") shall provide for the open communication of information and ideas through the use of radio broadcasting to Cuba. Radio broadcasting to Cuba shall serve as a consistently reliable and authoritative source of accurate, objective, and comprehensive news.

**(b) Broadcasting as part of Voice of America**

Radio broadcasting in accordance with subsection (a) of this section shall be part of the Voice of America radio broadcasting to Cuba and shall be in accordance with all Voice of America standards to ensure the broadcast of programs which are objective, accurate, balanced, and which present a variety of views.

**(c) Location of broadcast facilities; frequency; leased time from nongovernmental short-wave stations**

Radio broadcasting to Cuba authorized by this subchapter shall utilize the broadcasting facilities located at Marathon, Florida, and the 1180 AM frequency that were used by the Voice of America prior to October 4, 1983. Other frequencies, not on the commercial Amplitude Modulation (AM) Band (535 kHz to 1605 kHz), may also be simultaneously utilized: *Provided*, That no frequency shall be used for radio broadcasts to Cuba in accordance with this subchapter which is not also used for all other Voice of America broadcasts to Cuba. Time leased from nongovernmental shortwave radio stations may be used to carry all or part of the Service programs and to rebroadcast Service programs: *Provided*, That not less than 30 per centum of the programs broadcast or rebroadcast shall be regular Voice of America broadcasts with particular emphasis on news and programs meeting the requirements of section 1463(2)<sup>1</sup> of this title.

**(d) Changes in frequencies to other AM bands; jamming and interference**

Notwithstanding subsection (c) of this section, in the event that broadcasts to Cuba on the 1180 AM frequency are subject to jamming or interference greater by 25 per centum or more than the average daily jamming or interference in the

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

twelve months preceding September 1, 1983, the Director of the United States Information Agency may lease time on commercial or non-commercial educational AM band radio broadcasting stations. The Federal Communications Commission shall determine levels of jamming and interference by conducting regular monitoring of the 1180 AM frequency. In the event that more than two hours a day of time is leased, not less than 30 per centum of the programing broadcast shall be regular Voice of America broadcasts with particular emphasis on news and programs meeting the requirements of section 1463(2)<sup>1</sup> of this title.

**(e) Voice of America: Cuba Service; Voice of America: Radio Marti program**

Any program of United States Government radio broadcasts to Cuba authorized by this section shall be designated "Voice of America: Cuba Service" or "Voice of America: Radio Marti program".

**(f) Use of other facilities**

In the event broadcasting facilities located at Marathon, Florida, are rendered inoperable by natural disaster or by unlawful destruction, the Director of the United States Information Agency may, for the period in which the facilities are inoperable but not to exceed one hundred and fifty days, use other United States Government-owned transmission facilities for Voice of America broadcasts to Cuba authorized by this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 98-111, § 3, Oct. 4, 1983, 97 Stat. 749.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 1463 of this title, referred to in subsecs. (c) and (d), was repealed by Pub. L. 103-236, title III, § 315(a), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 445.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Radio Broadcasting to Cuba Act which comprises this subchapter, and not as part of the United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948 which comprises this chapter.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1465b, 1465d, 1465f of this title.

**§ 1465b. Cuba Service of Voice of America**

The Director of the United States Information Agency shall establish within the Voice of America a Cuba Service (hereafter in this section referred to as the "Service"). The Service shall be responsible for all radio broadcasts to Cuba authorized by section 1465a of this title. The Director of the United States Information Agency shall appoint a head of the Service and shall employ such staff as the head of the Service may need to carry out his duties. The Cuba Service shall be administered separately from other Voice of America functions and the head of the Cuba Service shall report directly to the Director of the Voice of America.

(Pub. L. 98-111, § 4, Oct. 4, 1983, 97 Stat. 750; Pub. L. 103-236, title III, § 305(d)(1), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 436.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Radio Broadcasting to Cuba Act which comprises this subchapter, and

not as part of the United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948 which comprises this chapter.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-236 substituted "of the Voice of America" for "and the Associate Director for Broadcasting of the United States Information Agency".

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1465f of this title.

**§ 1465c. Advisory Board for Cuba Broadcasting**

**(a) Establishment; membership; chairperson**

There is established within the Office of the President the Advisory Board for Cuba Broadcasting (hereafter in this subchapter referred to as the "Board"). The Board shall consist of nine members, appointed by the President by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, of whom not more than five shall be members of the same political party. The President shall designate one member of the Board to serve as chairperson.

**(b) Review; recommendations**

The Board shall review the effectiveness of the activities carried out under this subchapter and the Television Broadcasting to Cuba Act [22 U.S.C. 1465aa et seq.] and shall make recommendations to the President and the Broadcasting Board of Governors as it may consider necessary.

**(c) Terms; vacancies**

In appointing the initial voting members of the Board, the President shall designate three members to serve for a term of three years, three members to serve for a term of two years, and three members to serve for a term of one year. Thereafter, the term of each member of the Board shall be three years. The President shall appoint, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, members to fill vacancies occurring prior to the expiration of a term, in which case the members so appointed shall serve for the remainder of such term. Any member whose term has expired may serve until his successor has been appointed and qualified.

**(d) Ex officio members**

The head of the Cuba Service and the head of the Television Marti Service shall serve, ex officio, as members of the Board.

**(e) Compensation; travel expenses**

Members of the Board appointed by the President shall, while attending meetings of the Board or while engaged in duties relating to such meetings or in other activities of the Board pursuant to this section, including traveltime, be entitled to receive compensation equal to the daily equivalent of the compensation prescribed for level V of the Executive Schedule under section 5316 of title 5. While away from their homes or regular places of business they may be allowed travel expenses, including per diem in lieu of subsistence, as authorized by law (5 U.S.C. 5703) for persons in the Government service employed intermittently. The ex officio members of the Board shall not be entitled to any compensation under this section, but may be al-

lowed travel expenses as provided in the preceding sentence.

**(f) Procurement powers of Board**

The Board may, to the extent it deems necessary to carry out its functions under this section, procure supplies, services, and other personal property, including specialized electronic equipment.

**(g) Indefinite life span of Board**

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Board shall remain in effect indefinitely.

**(h) Authorization of appropriations**

There are authorized to be appropriated \$130,000 to carry out the provisions of this section.

(Pub. L. 98-111, § 5, Oct. 4, 1983, 97 Stat. 750; Pub. L. 101-246, title II, § 245(a), Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 61; Pub. L. 103-236, title III, § 305(d)(2), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 436.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Television Broadcasting to Cuba Act, referred to in subsec. (b), is part D of title II of Pub. L. 101-246, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 58, as amended, which is classified principally to subchapter V-B (§1465aa et seq.) of this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1465aa of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Radio Broadcasting to Cuba Act which comprises this subchapter, and not as part of the United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948 which comprises this chapter.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 103-236 substituted “Broadcasting Board of Governors” for “Director and Associate Director for Broadcasting of the United States Information Agency”.

1990—Pub. L. 101-246, § 245(a)(1), substituted “Cuba Broadcasting” for “Radio Broadcasting to Cuba” in section catchline.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 101-246, § 245(a)(2), amended subsec. (a) generally, substituting “Cuba Broadcasting” for “Radio Broadcasting to Cuba” and “to serve as chairperson” for “to serve as Chairman”.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 101-246, § 245(a)(2), amended subsec. (b) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (b) read as follows: “The Board shall review the effectiveness of the activities carried out under this subchapter and shall make such recommendations to the President, the Director and the Associate Director for Broadcasting of the United States Information Agency as it may deem necessary.”

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 101-246, § 245(a)(3), amended subsec. (d) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (d) read as follows: “The head of the Service shall serve, ex officio, as a member of the Board.”

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 101-246, § 245(a)(4), substituted “The ex officio members” for “The ex officio member”.

FORMER REFERENCES TO ADVISORY BOARD FOR RADIO BROADCASTING TO CUBA

Section 245(b) of Pub. L. 101-246 provided that: “A reference in any provision of law to the ‘Advisory Board for Radio Broadcasting to Cuba’ shall be considered to be a reference to the ‘Advisory Board for Cuba Broadcasting’.”

CONTINUED SERVICE OF BOARD MEMBERS

Section 245(c) of Pub. L. 101-246 provided that: “Each member of the Advisory Board for Radio Broadcasting

to Cuba as in existence on the day before the effective date of the amendment made by subsection (a) [Feb. 16, 1990] shall continue to serve for the remainder of the term to which such member was appointed as a member of the Advisory Board for Cuba Broadcasting.”

STAFF DIRECTOR

Section 245(d) of Pub. L. 101-246 provided that: “The Board shall have a staff director who shall be appointed by the Chairperson of the Advisory Board for Cuba Broadcasting.”

**§ 1465d. Assistance from other government agencies**

(a) In order to assist the United States Information Agency in carrying out the purposes set forth in section 1465 of this title, any agency or instrumentality of the United States may sell, loan, lease, or grant property (including interests therein) and may perform administrative and technical support and services at the request of the Agency. Support and services shall be provided on a reimbursable basis. Any reimbursement shall be credited to the appropriation from which the property, support, or services was derived.

(b) The Agency may carry out the purposes of section 1465a of this title by means of grants, leases, or contracts (subject to the availability of appropriations), or such other means as the Agency determines will be most effective.

(Pub. L. 98-111, § 6, Oct. 4, 1983, 97 Stat. 751.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Radio Broadcasting to Cuba Act which comprises this subchapter, and not as part of the United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948 which comprises this chapter.

**§ 1465e. Compensation for Cuban interference with broadcasting in United States**

**(a) Interim assistance to United States broadcasters**

It is the intent of the Congress that the Secretary of State should seek prompt and full settlement of United States claims against the Government of Cuba arising from Cuban interference with broadcasting in the United States. Pending the settlement of these claims, it is appropriate to provide some interim assistance to the United States broadcasters who are adversely affected by Cuban radio interference and who seek to assert their right to measures to counteract the effects of such interference.

**(b) Money payments pursuant to authority from Federal Communications Commission**

Accordingly, the Agency may make payments to the United States radio broadcasting station licensees upon their application for expenses which they have incurred before, on, or after October 4, 1983, in mitigating, pursuant to special temporary authority from the Federal Communications Commission, the effects of activities by the Government of Cuba which directly interfere with the transmission or reception of broadcasts by these licensees. Such expenses shall be limited to the costs of equipment replaced (less depreciation) and associated technical and engineering costs.



**(c) Regulations and procedures**

The Federal Communications Commission shall issue such regulations and establish such procedures for carrying out this section as the Federal Communications Commission finds appropriate. Such regulations shall be issued no later than one hundred and eighty days after October 4, 1983.

**(d) Authorization of appropriations**

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Agency, \$5,000,000 for use in compensating United States radio broadcasting licensees pursuant to this section. Amounts appropriated under this section are authorized to be available until expended.

**(e) Four-year availability for appropriated funds**

Funds appropriated for implementation of this section shall be available for a period of no more than four years following the initial broadcast occurring as a result of programs described in this subchapter.

**(f) Presidential task force**

It is the sense of the Congress that the President should establish a task force to analyze the level of interference from the operation of Cuban radio stations experienced by broadcasters in the United States and to seek a practical political and technical solution to this problem.

**(g) Effective Date**

This section shall enter into effect on October 1, 1984.

(Pub. L. 98-111, § 7, Oct. 4, 1983, 97 Stat. 752; Pub. L. 98-411, title V, § 512, Aug. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 1574.)

## CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Radio Broadcasting to Cuba Act which comprises this subchapter, and not as part of the United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948 which comprises this chapter.

## AMENDMENTS

1984—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 98-411 substituted “replaced (less)” for “(replaced less)”.

**§ 1465f. Authorization of appropriations**

(a) There are authorized to be appropriated for the United States Information Agency \$14,000,000 for fiscal year 1984 and \$11,000,000 for fiscal year 1985 to carry out sections 1465a and 1465b of this title. The amount obligated by the United States Information Agency in ensuing fiscal years shall be sufficient to maintain broadcasts to Cuba under this subchapter at rates no less than the fiscal year 1985 level.

(b) In addition to amounts otherwise authorized to be appropriated to the Agency for the fiscal years 1984 and 1985, there are authorized to be appropriated to the Agency \$54,800,000 for the fiscal year 1984 and \$54,800,000 for the fiscal year 1985, which amounts shall be available only for expenses incurred by essential modernization of the facilities and operations of the Voice of America.

(c) Amounts appropriated under this section are authorized to be made available until expended.

(Pub. L. 98-111, § 8, Oct. 4, 1983, 97 Stat. 752.)

## CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Radio Broadcasting to Cuba Act which comprises this subchapter, and not as part of the United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948 which comprises this chapter.

**§ 1465g. Repealed. Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 139(9), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 398**

Section, Pub. L. 98-111, § 9, Oct. 4, 1983, 97 Stat. 753, directed United States Information Agency to arrange for independent evaluations of Cuba Service programming for submission to Congress.

SUBCHAPTER V-B—TELEVISION  
BROADCASTING TO CUBA

## SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in sections 1465c, 6204 of this title.

**§ 1465aa. Findings and purposes**

The Congress finds and declares that—

(1) it is the policy of the United States to support the right of the people of Cuba to seek, receive, and impart information and ideas through any media and regardless of frontiers, in accordance with article 19 of the Universal Declaration of Human Rights;

(2) consonant with this policy, television broadcasting to Cuba may be effective in furthering the open communication of accurate information and ideas to the people of Cuba and, in particular, information about Cuba;

(3) television broadcasting to Cuba, operated in a manner not inconsistent with the broad foreign policy of the United States and in accordance with high professional standards, would be in the national interest;

(4) facilities broadcasting television programming to Cuba must be operated in a manner consistent with applicable regulations of the Federal Communications Commission, and must not affect the quality of domestic broadcast transmission or reception; and

(5) that<sup>1</sup> the Voice of America already broadcasts to Cuba information that represents America, not any single segment of American society, and includes a balanced and comprehensive projection of significant American thought and institutions, but that there is a need for television broadcasts to Cuba which provide news, commentary, and other information about events in Cuba and elsewhere to promote the cause of freedom in Cuba.

(Pub. L. 101-246, title II, § 242, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 58.)

## CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Television Broadcasting to Cuba Act which comprises this subchapter, and not as part of the United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948 which comprises this chapter.

## SHORT TITLE

Section 241 of Pub. L. 101-246 provided that: “This part [part D (§§ 241-248)] of title II of Pub. L. 101-246, en-

<sup>1</sup> So in original. The word “that” probably should not appear.

acting this subchapter, amending section 1465c of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under section 1465c of this title] may be cited as the ‘Television Broadcasting to Cuba Act.’”

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1465bb of this title.

**§ 1465bb. Television broadcasting to Cuba**

**(a) Television broadcasting to Cuba**

In order to carry out the purposes set forth in section 1465aa of this title and notwithstanding the limitation of section 1461 of this title with respect to the dissemination in the United States of information prepared for dissemination abroad to the extent such dissemination is inadvertent, the United States Information Agency (hereafter in this subchapter referred to as the ‘‘Agency’’) shall provide for the open communication of information and ideas through the use of television broadcasting to Cuba. Television broadcasting to Cuba shall serve as a consistently reliable and authoritative source of accurate, objective, and comprehensive news.

**(b) Voice of America standards**

Television broadcasting to Cuba under this subchapter shall be in accordance with all Voice of America standards to ensure the broadcast of programs which are objective, accurate, balanced, and which present a variety of views.

**(c) USIA Television Marti**

Any program of United States Government television broadcasts to Cuba authorized by this section shall be designated ‘‘USIA Television Marti Program’’.

**(d) Frequency assignment**

(1) Subject to the Communications Act of 1934 [47 U.S.C. 151 et seq.], the Federal Communications Commission shall assign by order a suitable frequency to further the national interests expressed in this subchapter, except that no such assignment shall result in objectionable interference with the broadcasts of any domestic licensee.

(2) No Federal branch or agency shall compel an incumbent domestic licensee to change its frequency in order to eliminate objectionable interference caused by broadcasting of the Service.

(3) For purposes of section 305 of the Communications Act of 1934 [47 U.S.C. 305], a television broadcast station established for purposes of this subchapter shall be treated as a government station, but the Federal Communications Commission shall exercise the authority of the President under such section to assign a frequency to such station.

**(e) Interference with domestic broadcasting**

(1) Broadcasting by the Television Marti Service shall be conducted in accordance with such parameters as shall be prescribed by the Federal Communications Commission to preclude objectionable interference with the broadcasts of any domestic licensee. The Television Marti Service shall be governed by the same standards regarding objectionable interference as any domestic

licensee. The Federal Communications Commission shall monitor the operations of television broadcasting to Cuba pursuant to subsection (f) of this section. If, on the basis of such monitoring or a complaint from any person, the Federal Communications Commission determines, in its discretion, that broadcasting by the Television Marti Service is causing objectionable interference with the transmission or reception of the broadcasts of a domestic licensee, the Federal Communications Commission shall direct the Television Marti Service to cease broadcasting and to eliminate the objectionable interference. Broadcasts by the Service shall not be resumed until the Federal Communications Commission finds that the objectionable interference has been eliminated and should not recur.

(2) The Federal Communications Commission shall take such actions as are necessary and appropriate to assist domestic licensees in overcoming the adverse effects of objectionable interference caused by broadcasting by the Television Marti Service. Such assistance may include the authorization of nondirectional increases in the effective radiated power of a domestic television station so that its coverage is equivalent to the maximum allowable for such facilities, to avoid any adverse effect on such stations of the broadcasts of the Television Marti Service.

(3) If the Federal Communications Commission directs the Television Marti Service to cease broadcasting pursuant to paragraph (1), the Commission shall, as soon as practicable, notify the appropriate committees of Congress of such action and the reasons therefor. The Federal Communications Commission shall continue to notify the appropriate committees of Congress of progress in eliminating the objectionable interference and shall assure that Congress is fully informed about the operation of the Television Marti Service.

**(f) Monitoring of interference**

The Federal Communications Commission shall continually monitor and periodically report to the appropriate committees of the Congress interference to domestic broadcast licensees—

(1) from the operation of Cuban television and radio stations; and

(2) from the operations of the television broadcasting to Cuba.

**(g) Task force**

It is the sense of the Congress that the President should establish a task force to analyze the level of interference from the operation of Cuban television and radio stations experienced by broadcasters in the United States and to seek a practical political and technical solution to this problem.

(Pub. L. 101–246, title II, §243, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 59.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Communications Act of 1934, referred to in subsec. (d)(1), is act June 19, 1934, ch. 652, 48 Stat. 1064, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 5 (§151 et seq.) of Title 47, Telegraphs, Telephones, and Radiotelegraphs. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 609 of Title 47 and Tables.

## CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Television Broadcasting to Cuba Act which comprises this subchapter, and not as part of the United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948 which comprises this chapter.

**§ 1465cc. Television Marti Service of United States Information Agency**

**(a) Television Marti Service**

The Director of the United States Information Agency shall establish within the Voice of America a Television Marti Service. The Service shall be responsible for all television broadcasts to Cuba authorized by this subchapter. The Director of the United States Information Agency shall appoint a head of the Service who shall report directly to the Director of the Voice of America. The head of the Service shall employ such staff as the head of the Service may need to carry out the duties of the Service.

**(b) Use of existing facilities of USIA**

To assure consistency of presentation and efficiency of operations in conducting the activities authorized under this subchapter, the Television Marti Service shall make maximum feasible utilization of Agency facilities and management support, including Voice of America: Cuba Service, Voice of America, and the United States Information Agency Television Service.

**(c) USIA authority**

The Agency may carry out the purposes of this subchapter by means of grants, leases, or contracts (subject to the availability of appropriations), or such other means as the Agency determines will be most effective.

(Pub. L. 101-246, title II, §244, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 61.)

## CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Television Broadcasting to Cuba Act which comprises this subchapter, and not as part of the United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948 which comprises this chapter.

**§ 1465dd. Assistance from other Government agencies**

In order to assist the United States Information Agency in carrying out the provisions of this subchapter, any agency or instrumentality of the United States may sell, loan, lease, or grant property (including interests therein) and may perform administrative and technical support and services at the request of the Agency.

(Pub. L. 101-246, title II, §246, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 62.)

## CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Television Broadcasting to Cuba Act which comprises this subchapter, and not as part of the United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948 which comprises this chapter.

**§ 1465ee. Authorization of appropriations**

**(a) Authorization of appropriations**

In addition to amounts otherwise made available under section 201 for such purposes, there

are authorized to be appropriated to the United States Information Agency, \$16,000,000 for the fiscal year 1990 and \$16,000,000 for the fiscal year 1991 for television broadcasting to Cuba in accordance with the provisions of this subchapter.

**(b) Limitation**

(1) Subject to paragraph (2), no funds authorized to be appropriated under subsection (a) of this section may be obligated or expended unless the President determines and notifies the appropriate committees of Congress that the test of television broadcasting to Cuba (as authorized by title V of the Departments of Commerce, Justice, and State, the Judiciary, and Related Agencies Appropriations Act, 1989 (Public Law 100-459)) has demonstrated television broadcasting to Cuba is feasible and will not cause objectionable interference with the broadcasts of incumbent domestic licensees. The Federal Communications Commission shall furnish to the appropriate committees of Congress all interim and final reports and other appropriate documentation concerning objectionable interference from television broadcasting to Cuba to incumbent domestic licensees.

(2) Not less than 30 days before the President makes the determination under paragraph (1), the President shall submit a report to the appropriate committees of the Congress which includes the findings of the test of television broadcasting to Cuba. The period for the test of television broadcasting may be extended until—

- (A) the date of the determination and notification by the President under paragraph (1), or
- (B) 30 days,

whichever comes first.

**(c) Availability of funds**

Amounts appropriated to carry out the purposes of this subchapter are authorized to be available until expended.

(Pub. L. 101-246, title II, §247, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 62; Pub. L. 102-138, title II, §232, Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 703.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 201, referred to in subsec. (a), means section 201 of Pub. L. 101-246, title II, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 48, which was not classified to the Code.

Title V of the Departments of Commerce, Justice, and State, the Judiciary, and Related Agencies Appropriations Act, 1989 (Public Law 100-459), referred to in subsec. (b)(1), is title V of Pub. L. 100-459, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2213, which was not classified to the Code.

## CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Television Broadcasting to Cuba Act which comprises this subchapter, and not as part of the United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948 which comprises this chapter.

## AMENDMENTS

1991—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 102-138 added subsec. (c).

## TELEVISION BROADCASTING TO CUBA

Determination of President of the United States, No. 90-35, Aug. 26, 1990, 55 F.R. 38659, provided:

Pursuant to the authority vested in me by section 247 of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1990 and 1991 (Public Law 101-246) (the Act) [this section], I hereby determine that the test of television

broadcasting to Cuba (as authorized by title V of the Departments of Commerce, Justice, and State, the Judiciary and Related Agencies Appropriations Act, 1989 (Public Law 100-459) [Pub. L. 100-459, title V, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2213]), has demonstrated television broadcasting to Cuba is feasible and will not cause objectionable interference with the broadcasts of incumbent domestic licensees.

You are authorized and directed to transmit this determination to the appropriate committees of Congress (as defined in section 248 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 1465ff]) and to arrange for its publication in the Federal Register.

GEORGE BUSH.

#### § 1465ff. Definitions

As used in this subchapter—

(1) the term “licensee” has the meaning provided in section 153(c) of title 47;

(2) the term “incumbent domestic licensee” means a licensee as provided in section 153(c) of title 47 that was broadcasting a television signal as of January 1, 1989;

(3) the term “objectionable interference” shall be applied in the same manner as such term is applied under regulations of the Federal Communications Commission to other domestic broadcasters; and

(4) the term “appropriate committees of Congress” includes the Committee on Foreign Affairs and the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate.

(Pub. L. 101-246, title II, §248, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 62.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Television Broadcasting to Cuba Act which comprises this subchapter, and not as part of the United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948 which comprises this chapter.

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives and Committee on Energy and Commerce of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Commerce of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### SUBCHAPTER VI—ADVISORY COMMISSIONS TO FORMULATE POLICIES

#### §§ 1466 to 1468. Omitted

#### CODIFICATION

Sections 1466 to 1468 of this title, contained provisions relating to the United States Advisory Commission on Information, and the United States Advisory Commission on Educational Exchange. Public Law 87-256, §§ 106, 111(a)(2), Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 532, 538, replaced the Advisory Commission on Educational Exchange with the Advisory Commission on International Educational and Cultural Affairs and repealed these sections insofar as they related to the Advisory Commission on Educational Exchange. The Advisory Commission on International Educational and Cultural Affairs and the Advisory Commission on Information were both abolished by Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, §9(a)(3), (4), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1639, set out under section 1461 of this title, effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by the President.

Section 1466, acts Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, §601, 62 Stat. 10; Sept. 21, 1961, Pub. L. 87-256, §111(a)(2), 75 Stat. 538, created the United States Advisory Commission on Information, and the United States Advisory Commission on Educational Exchange and provided for the duties of the Commissions.

Section 1467, acts Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title VI, §602, 62 Stat. 10; Sept. 21, 1961, Pub. L. 87-256, §111(a)(2), 75 Stat. 538, provided for the composition, membership, terms of office, compensation, designation of chairmen, rules and regulations, and representation of the public interest, for the Commission on Information and the Commission on Educational Exchange.

Section 1468, acts Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title VI, §603, 62 Stat. 11; Sept. 21, 1961, Pub. L. 87-256, §111(a)(2), 75 Stat. 538, provided that the Commissions report to Congress on programs and activities carried out under this chapter, including recommendations for effectuating the purposes and objectives of this chapter.

#### § 1469. United States Advisory Commission on Public Diplomacy

##### (a) Establishment

(1) There is established an advisory commission to be known as the United States Advisory Commission on Public Diplomacy.

(2) The Commission shall consist of seven members appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate. The members of the Commission shall represent the public interest and shall be selected from a cross section of educational, communications, cultural, scientific, technical, public service, labor, business, and professional backgrounds. Not more than four members shall be from any one political party.

(3) The term of each member shall be 3 years, except that of the original seven appointments, two shall be for a term of 1 year and two shall be for a term of 2 years.

(4) Any member appointed to fill a vacancy occurring before the expiration of the term for which a predecessor was appointed shall be appointed for the remainder of such term. Upon the expiration of a member's term of office, such member may continue to serve until a successor is appointed and qualified.

(5) The President shall designate a member to chair the Commission.

##### (b) Staff

The Commission shall have a staff director who shall be appointed by the chairperson of the Commission. Subject to such rules and regulations as may be adopted by the Commission, the chairperson of the Commission may—

(1) appoint such additional personnel for the staff of the Commission as the chairperson considers necessary; and

(2) procure temporary and intermittent services to the same extent as is authorized by section 3109(b) of title 5, but at rates for individuals not to exceed the daily equivalent of the annual rate of basic pay payable for grade GS-18 of the General Schedule under section 5332 of title 5.

##### (c) Duties and responsibilities

(1) The Commission shall formulate and recommend to the Director of the United States Information Agency, the Secretary of State, and the President policies and programs to carry out the functions vested in the Director or the Agen-

cy, and shall appraise the effectiveness of policies and programs of the Agency.

(2) The Commission shall submit to the Congress, the President, the Secretary of State, and the Director of the United States Information Agency annual reports on programs and activities carried out by the Agency, including appraisals, where feasible, as to the effectiveness of the several programs. The Commission shall also include in such reports such recommendations as shall have been made by the Commission to the Director for effectuating the purposes of the Agency, and the action taken to carry out such recommendations.

(3) The Commission may also submit such other reports to the Congress as it considers appropriate, and shall make reports to the public in the United States and abroad to develop a better understanding of and support for the programs conducted by the Agency.

(4) The Commission's reports to the Congress shall include assessments of the degree to which the scholarly integrity and nonpolitical character of the educational and cultural exchange activities vested in the Director of the United States Information Agency have been maintained, and assessments of the attitudes of foreign scholars and governments regarding such activities.

**(d) Limitation on authority**

The Commission shall have no authority with respect to the J. William Fulbright Foreign Scholarship Board or the United States National Commission for UNESCO.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title VI, § 604, as added Aug. 15, 1979, Pub. L. 96-60, title II, § 203(f), 93 Stat. 399; amended Dec. 22, 1987, Pub. L. 100-204, title II, § 213, 101 Stat. 1376; Feb. 16, 1990, Pub. L. 101-246, title II, § 206(a), 104 Stat. 51.)

AMENDMENTS

1990—Pub. L. 101-246 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section consisted of subsecs. (a) to (d) relating to redesignation of United States Advisory Commission on International Communication, Cultural and Educational Affairs as United States Advisory Commission on Public Diplomacy, appointment of members, appointment of staff director and staff personnel, date of section entering into force as being Jan. 20, 1989, and repeal of prohibition limiting membership of individuals from same political party.

1987—Pub. L. 100-204 amended section generally, revising and restating as subsecs. (a) to (d) provisions of former subsecs. (a) and (b).

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 209 of Pub. L. 96-60 provided that: "The amendments made by sections 203 and 204 [enacting this section and section 1477b of this title, amending sections 1471, 1474, 1475a, 2454, 2458, and 2458a of this title, section 1304 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, and section 474 of Title 40, Public Buildings, Property, and Works, and repealing section 1434 of this title] shall take effect on October 1, 1979, and to the extent that they provide new authorities involving the expenditure of appropriated funds, shall apply only with respect to funds appropriated after the date of enactment of this Act [Aug. 15, 1979]."

TERMINATION OF ADVISORY COMMISSIONS

Advisory commissions established after Jan. 5, 1973, to terminate not later than the expiration of the 2-year period beginning on the date of their establishment,

unless, in the case of a commission established by the President or an officer of the Federal Government, such commission is renewed by appropriate action prior to the expiration of such 2-year period, or in the case of a commission established by Congress, its duration is otherwise provided for by law. See sections 3(2) and 14 of Pub. L. 92-463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 770, 776, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

REFERENCES IN OTHER LAWS TO GS-16, 17, OR 18 PAY RATES

References in laws to the rates of pay for GS-16, 17, or 18, or to maximum rates of pay under the General Schedule, to be considered references to rates payable under specified sections of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, see section 529 [title I, § 101(c)(1)] of Pub. L. 101-509, set out in a note under section 5376 of Title 5.

CONTINUED SERVICE OF COMMISSION MEMBERS

Section 206(b) of Pub. L. 101-246 provided that: "Each member of the United States Advisory Commission on Public Diplomacy as in existence on the day before the effective date of section 604 of the United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948 (as amended by section 213 of Public Law 100-204) [section entered into force on Jan. 20, 1989] shall continue to serve for the remainder of the term to which such member was appointed."

SUBCHAPTER VII—ADMINISTRATIVE PROCEDURE

SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in sections 2458, 6209 of this title.

**§ 1471. Authority of Director of United States Information Agency**

In carrying out the purposes of this chapter, the Director is authorized, in addition to and not in limitation of the authority otherwise vested in him—

(1) In carrying out subchapter II of this chapter, to make grants of money, services, or materials to State and local governmental institutions in the United States, to governmental institutions in other countries, and to individuals and public or private nonprofit organizations both in the United States and in other countries;

(2) to furnish, sell, or rent, by contract or otherwise, educational and information materials and equipment for dissemination to, or use by, peoples of foreign countries;

(3) whenever necessary in carrying out subchapter V of this chapter, to purchase, rent, construct, improve, maintain, and operate facilities for radio and television transmission and reception, including the leasing of associated real property (either within or outside the United States) for periods not to exceed forty years, or for longer periods if provided for by an appropriation Act, and the alteration, improvement, and repair of such property, without regard to section 278a<sup>1</sup> of title 40, and any such real property or interests therein which are outside the United States may be acquired without regard to section 255 of title 40 if the sufficiency of the title to such real property or interests therein is approved

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

by the Director of the United States Information Agency;

(4) to provide for printing and binding outside the continental limits of the United States, without regard to section 501 of title 44;

(5) to employ persons on a temporary basis without regard to the civil service and classification laws, when such employment is provided for by the pertinent appropriation Act;

(6) to create such advisory committees as the Director may decide to be of assistance in formulating his policies for carrying out the purposes of this chapter. No committee member shall be allowed any salary or other compensation for services; but he may be paid his transportation and other expenses, as authorized by section 5703 of title 5; and

(7) notwithstanding any other provision of law, to carry out projects involving security construction and related improvements for Agency facilities not physically located together with Department of State facilities abroad.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title VIII, §801, 62 Stat. 11; Aug. 14, 1961, Pub. L. 87-139, §11, 75 Stat. 341; 1977 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §§7(a)(1), 8(b), 9(a)(3), (4), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637-1639; Aug. 15, 1979, Pub. L. 96-60, title II, §§203(b)(1), (e), 204(a), 93 Stat. 398-400; Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title III, §303(b), 96 Stat. 291; Nov. 22, 1983, Pub. L. 98-164, title II, §217, 97 Stat. 1036; Dec. 22, 1987, Pub. L. 100-204, title II, §205, 101 Stat. 1374; Oct. 28, 1991, Pub. L. 102-138, title II, §203, 105 Stat. 692; Apr. 30, 1994, Pub. L. 103-236, title II, §222, 108 Stat. 421.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 278a of title 40, referred to in par. (3), was repealed by Pub. L. 100-678, §7, Nov. 17, 1988, 102 Stat. 4052.

The civil-service laws, referred to in par. (5), are set forth in Title 5, Government Organization and Employees. See, particularly, section 3301 et seq. of Title 5.

The classification laws, referred to in par. (5), are classified generally to chapter 51 (§5101 et seq.) and to subchapter III (§5331 et seq.) of chapter 53 of Title 5.

#### CODIFICATION

In par. (4), "section 501 of title 44" substituted for "section 11 of the Act of March 1, 1919 (44 U.S.C. 111)" on authority of Pub. L. 90-620, §2(b), Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1305, the first section of which enacted Title 44, Public Printing and Documents.

In par. (6), "with the approval of the Commission on Information and the Commission on Educational Exchange," was deleted pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, §9(a)(3), (4), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1639, set out under section 1461 of this title, which abolished both the United States Advisory Commission on Information, and the United States Advisory Commission on International Educational and Cultural Affairs [which replaced the Advisory Commission on Educational Exchange], effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by the President.

In par. (6), "section 5703 of title 5" substituted for "section 5 of the Administrative Expenses Act of 1946, as amended, (5 U.S.C. 73b-2)" on authority of Pub. L. 89-554, §7(b), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 631, the first section of which enacted Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Par. (7). Pub. L. 103-236 added par. (7).

1991—Par. (3). Pub. L. 102-138 inserted "and television" after "radio".

1987—Par. (3). Pub. L. 100-204 substituted "forty" for "twenty-five".

1983—Par. (3). Pub. L. 98-164 substituted "twenty-five" for "ten".

1979—Par. (1). Pub. L. 96-60, §204(a), struck out "within the limitation of such appropriations as the Congress may provide," after "chapter."

Par. (3). Pub. L. 96-60, §203(e), substituted "leasing of associated real property (either within or outside the United States)" for "leasing of real property both within and without the continental limits of the United States" and provided for alteration, improvement, and repair of such property, without regard to section 278a of title 40, and for acquisition of such property or interests therein which are outside the United States without regard to section 255 of title 40 if the sufficiency of the title to such property or interests therein is approved by the Director.

Par. (5). Pub. L. 96-60, §203(b)(1), struck out provision for employment of aliens within the United States limited to services related to the translation or narration of colloquial speech in foreign languages when suitably qualified United States citizens were not available, now covered in section 1474(1) of this title, and inserted "pertinent" before "appropriation".

1961—Par. (6). Pub. L. 87-139 substituted provisions authorizing payment of transportation and other expenses as authorized by section 73b-2 of title 5, for provisions which allowed payment of actual transportation expenses and a maximum of \$10 per diem.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1979 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-60 effective Oct. 1, 1979, and applicable only with respect to funds appropriated after Aug. 15, 1979, where new authorities provide for expenditure of appropriated funds, see section 209 of Pub. L. 96-60, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1469 of this title.

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

"Director of the United States Information Agency" substituted for "Director of the International Communication Agency" in par. (3) pursuant to section 303(b) of Pub. L. 97-241, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title, which redesignated International Communication Agency, and Director thereof, as United States Information Agency, and the Director thereof. Previously, "Director" substituted for "Secretary" in text preceding par. (1) and par. (6) pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, §7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637, set out under section 1461 of this title, which transferred functions vested in President, Secretary of State, Department of State, United States Information Agency, and Director thereof, under this chapter, to Director of International Communication Agency, except to extent that such functions were vested in President under sections 1452, 1456, and 1467 of this title, effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by President.

The Commission on Educational Exchange, created by section 1466 of this title, abolished pursuant to Pub. L. 87-256, §111(a)(2), Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 538.

#### TERMINATION OF ADVISORY COMMITTEES

Advisory committees in existence on Jan. 5, 1973, to terminate not later than the expiration of the 2-year period following Jan. 5, 1973, unless, in the case of a committee established by the President or an officer of the Federal Government, such committee is renewed by appropriate action prior to the expiration of such 2-year period, or in the case of a committee established by Congress, its duration is otherwise provided by law. See section 14 of Pub. L. 92-463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 776, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

#### CONTRACTOR REQUIREMENTS

Section 403 of Pub. L. 100-204 provided that:

“(a) FINDINGS.—The Congress finds that the overriding national security aspects of the \$1,300,000,000 facilities modernization program of the Voice of America require the assurance of uninterrupted logistic support under all circumstances for the program. Therefore, it is in the best interests of the United States to provide a preference for United States contractors bidding on the projects of this program.

“(b) RESPONSIVE BID.—A bid shall not be treated as a responsive bid for purposes of the facilities modernization program of the Voice of America unless the bidder can establish that the United States goods and services content, excluding consulting and management fees, of his proposal and the resulting contract will not be less than 55 percent of the value of his proposal and the resulting total contract.

“(c) PREFERENCE FOR UNITED STATES CONTRACTORS.—Notwithstanding any other provision of law, in any case where there are two or more qualified bidders on projects of the facilities modernization program of the Voice of America, including design and construction projects and projects with respect to transmitters, antennas, spare parts, and other technical equipment, all the responsive bids of United States persons and qualified United States joint venture persons shall be considered to be reduced by 10 percent.

“(d) EXCEPTION.—

“(1) Subsection (c) shall not apply with respect to any project of the facilities modernization program of the Voice of America when—

“(A) precluded by the terms of an international agreement with the host foreign country;

“(B) a foreign bidder can establish that he is a national of a country whose government permits United States contractors and suppliers the opportunity to bid on a competitive and nondiscriminatory basis with its national contractors and suppliers, on procurement and projects related to the construction, modernization, upgrading, or expansion of—

“(i) its national public radio and television sector, or

“(ii) its private radio and television sector, to the extent that such procurement or project is, in whole or in part, funded or otherwise under the control of a government agency or authority; or

“(C) the Secretary of Commerce certifies (in advance of the award of the contract for that project) to the Director of the United States Information Agency that the foreign bidder is not receiving any direct subsidy from any government, the effect of which would be to disadvantage the competitive position of United States persons who also bid on the project; or

“(D) the statutes of a host foreign country prohibit the use of United States contractors on such projects within that country.

“(2) An exception under paragraph (1)(D) shall only become effective with respect to a foreign country 30 days after the Secretary of State certifies to the Committee on Foreign Affairs and the Committee on Appropriations of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations and the Committee on Appropriations of the Senate what specific actions the Secretary has taken to urge the foreign country to permit the use of United States contractors on such projects.

“(d) [sic] DEFINITIONS.—For purposes of this section—

“(1) the term ‘United States person’ means a person that—

“(A) is incorporated or otherwise legally organized under the laws of the United States, including any State (and any political subdivision thereof) and the District of Columbia;

“(B) has its principal place of business in the United States;

“(C) has been incorporated or otherwise legally organized in the United States for more than 5 years before the issuance date of the Invitation For Bids or the Request For Proposals with respect to a modernization project under subsection (b);

“(D) has proven, as indicated by prior contracting experience, to possess the technical, managerial, and financial capability to successfully complete a project similar in nature and technical complexity to that being contracted for;

“(E)(i) employs United States citizens in at least 80 percent of its principal management positions in the United States;

“(ii) employs United States citizens in more than half of its permanent, full-time positions in the United States; and

“(iii) will employ United States citizens in at least 80 percent of the supervisory positions on the modernization project site; and

“(F) has the existing technical and financial resources in the United States to perform the contract; and

“(2) the term ‘qualified United States joint venture person’ means a joint venture in which a United States person or persons own at least 51 percent of the assets of the joint venture.

“(e) EFFECTIVE DATE.—The provisions of this section shall apply to any project with respect to which the Request For Proposals (commonly referred to as ‘RFP’) or the Invitation For Bids (commonly referred to as ‘IFB’) was issued after December 28, 1986.”

## § 1472. United States Information Agency and other Government agencies

### (a) Authority of agencies

In carrying on activities which further the purposes of this chapter, subject to approval of such activities by the Director, the Agency and the other Government agencies are authorized—

(1) to place orders and make purchases and rentals of materials and equipment;

(2) to make contracts, including contracts with governmental agencies, foreign or domestic, including subdivisions thereof, and intergovernmental organizations of which the United States is a member, and, with respect to contracts entered into in foreign countries, without regard to section 22 of title 41;

(3) under such regulations as the Director may prescribe, to pay the transportation expenses, and not to exceed \$10 per diem in lieu of subsistence and other expenses, of citizens or subjects of other countries, without regard to the Standardized Government Travel Regulations and the Subsistence Expense Act of 1926,<sup>1</sup> as amended; and

(4) to make grants for, and to pay expenses incident to, training and study.

### (b) Contracts for telecommunication activities, etc.; availability of appropriations; cancellation costs

(1) Any contract authorized by subsection (a) of this section and described in paragraph (3) of this subsection which is funded on the basis of annual appropriations may nevertheless be made for periods not in excess of 5 years when—

(A) appropriations are available and adequate for payment for the first fiscal year and for all potential cancellation costs; and

(B) the Director of the United States Information Agency determines that—

(i) the need of the Government for the property or service being acquired over the period of the contract is reasonably firm and continuing;

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

- (ii) such a contract will serve the best interests of the United States by encouraging effective competition or promoting economies in performance and operation; and
- (iii) such method of contracting will not inhibit small business participation.

(2) In the event that funds are not made available for the continuation of such a contract into a subsequent fiscal year, the contract shall be canceled and any cancellation costs incurred shall be paid from appropriations originally available for the performance of the contract, appropriations currently available for the acquisition of similar property or services and not otherwise obligated, or appropriations made for such cancellation payments.

(3) This subsection applies to contracts for the procurement of property or services, or both, for the operation, maintenance, and support of programs, facilities, and installations for or related to telecommunication activities, newswire services, and the distribution of books and other publications in foreign countries.

(4)(A) Notwithstanding the other provisions of this subsection, the United States Information Agency is authorized to enter into contracts for periods not to exceed 7 years for circuit capacity to distribute radio and television programs.

(B) The authority of this paragraph may be exercised for a fiscal year only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriations Acts.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title VIII, §802, 62 Stat. 12; 1977 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §§5, 7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1636, 1637; Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title III, §304(b), 96 Stat. 292; Apr. 30, 1994, Pub. L. 103-236, title II, §225, 108 Stat. 423.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Subsistence Expenses Act of 1926, as amended, referred to in subsec. (a)(3), was repealed and superseded by the Travel Expense Act of 1949, which is covered by subchapter I of chapter 57 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees. Section 9(a) of the 1949 Act provided in part: "All Acts . . . applicable to civilian officers or employees of the departments and establishments, providing for reimbursement of actual travel or transportation expense, and all other Acts, general or special, which are in conflict with the provisions of this Act . . . are hereby modified, but only to the extent of inconsistency or conflict with the provisions of this Act . . .".

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 103-236 added par. (4).  
1982—Pub. L. 97-241 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsec. (b).

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

"Director" substituted for "Secretary" in text preceding subsec. (a)(1) and in subsec. (a)(3), pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, §7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637, set out under section 1461 of this title, which transferred functions vested in President, Secretary of State, Department of State, United States Information Agency, and Director thereof, under this chapter, to Director of International Communication Agency, except to extent that such functions are vested in President under sections 1452, 1456, and 1467 of this title, effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by President. Director of International Communication Agency was authorized by section 5 of Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977 to delegate performance of any such trans-

ferred functions to any officer, employee, or unit of International Communication Agency. Accordingly, "Agency" also substituted for "Department", meaning Department of State, in text preceding par. (1) of this section. International Communication Agency, and Director thereof, redesignated United States Information Agency, and Director thereof, by section 303 of Pub. L. 97-241, title III, Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title.

#### EX. ORD. NO. 10477. AUTHORITY OF UNITED STATES INFORMATION AGENCY

Ex. Ord. No. 10477, Aug. 1, 1953, 18 F.R. 4540, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 10822, May 20, 1959, 24 F.R. 4159; Ex. Ord. No. 12292, Feb. 23, 1981, 46 F.R. 13967; provided:

SECTION 1. *Determination.* It is hereby determined that it is necessary, in order to carry out the functions transferred to the Director of the United States Information Agency (hereinafter referred to as the Director) by the provisions of subsections (a), (b), and (c) of section 2 of the said Reorganization Plan No. 8 of 1953, to authorize the Director to exercise, in relation to respective functions so transferred, the authority specified in sections 2 and 3 hereof.

SEC. 2. [Revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 12292, Feb. 23, 1981, 46 F.R. 13967.]

SEC. 3. *Authority under various other statutes.* The Director is authorized to exercise the authority available to the Secretary of State or the Director of the Foreign Operations Administration, as the case may be, under the following-described provisions of law:

(a) The Foreign Service Buildings Act of 1926, as amended [22 U.S.C. 292 et seq.], regarding the acquisition, construction, alteration, repair, furnishing, exchange, and disposal of buildings and grounds in foreign countries.

(b) The act of July 9, 1949 [see 22 U.S.C. 2681 to 2683], regarding the transfer, acquisition, use, and disposal of international broadcasting facilities.

(c) The act of August 3, 1950, regarding the importation of sound recordings.

(d) The provisions under the first heading "Salaries and Expenses" of the Department of State Appropriation Act, 1954, regarding (1) employment of aliens, by contract, for services abroad, (2) purchase of uniforms, (3) cost of transporting to and from a place of storage and the cost of storing the furniture and household effects of an employee of the Foreign Service who is assigned to a post at which he is unable to use his furniture and effects, under such regulations as the Secretary of State may prescribe, (4) dues for library membership in organizations which issue publications to members only, or to members at a price lower than to others, (5) examination of estimates of appropriations in the field, (6) purchase of ice and drinking water abroad, (7) payment of excise taxes on negotiable instruments abroad, and (8) procurement, by contract or otherwise, of services, supplies and facilities, as follows: (i) maintenance, improvement, and repair of properties used for international information activities in foreign countries, (ii) fuel and utilities for Government-owned or leased property abroad, and (iii) rental or lease for periods not exceeding ten years of offices, buildings, grounds, and living quarters, and the furnishing of living quarters to officers and employees engaged in international information activities abroad [22 U.S.C. 291].

(e) The provisions of the Department of State Appropriation Act, 1954, regarding (1) exchange of funds for payment of expenses in connection with the operation of information establishments abroad without regard to the provisions of section 3651 of the Revised Statutes [section 543 of former Title 31], (section 103 of the General Provisions of the Department of State Appropriation Act, 1954), (2) payment of travel expenses outside the continental limits of the United States from funds available in the fiscal year that such travel is authorized and actually begins (section 104 of the General Provisions of the Department of State Appropriation Act, 1954), (3) granting authority to the chief of each infor-



mation Field Staff to approve, with the concurrence of the Chief of Mission, use of Government-owned vehicles for travel under conditions described in section 105 of the General Provisions of the Department of State Appropriation Act, 1954, and (4) purchase with foreign currencies for use abroad of passenger motor vehicles (exclusive of buses, ambulances, and station wagons) at a cost not to exceed the equivalent of \$2,200 for each vehicle (section 106 of the General Provisions of the Department of State Appropriation Act, 1954).

(f) Section 202 of the Revised Statutes of the United States [see 22 U.S.C. 2656], so far as it authorizes the Secretary of State to keep the American public informed about the international information aspects of the United States foreign affairs.

(g) Section 504(d) of the Mutual Security Act of 1951, as amended (relating to reduction in personnel) [section 1655d of this title], with respect to personnel transferred from the Mutual Security Agency or the Foreign Operations Administration to the United States Information Agency.

(h) Section 161 of the Revised Statutes of the United States [see 5 U.S.C. 301], and section 4 of the act of May 26, 1949 [see 22 U.S.C. 2658], regarding the promulgation of rules and regulations and the delegation of authority.

SEC. 4. *Effective Date.* This order shall become effective on August 1, 1953.

#### § 1473. Use of existing Government property and facilities

In carrying on activities under this chapter which require the utilization of Government property and facilities, maximum use shall be made of existing Government property and facilities.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title VIII, § 803, 62 Stat. 12.)

#### § 1474. Additional authority of Director of United States Information Agency or other Government agency authorized to administer provisions

In carrying out the provisions of this chapter, the Director, or any Government agency authorized to administer such provisions, may—

(1) employ, without regard to the civil service and classification laws, aliens within the United States and abroad for service in the United States relating to the translation or narration of colloquial speech in foreign languages or the preparation and production of foreign language programs when suitably qualified United States citizens are not available when job vacancies occur, and aliens so employed abroad may be admitted to the United States, if otherwise qualified, as non-immigrants under section 1101(a)(15) of title 8 for such time and under such conditions and procedures as may be established by the Director of the United States Information Agency and the Attorney General;

(2) pay travel expenses of aliens employed abroad for service in the United States and their dependents to and from the United States;

(3) incur expenses for entertainment within the United States within such amounts as may be provided in appropriations Acts;

(4) obtain insurance on official motor vehicles operated by the Director or such agency in foreign countries, and pay the expenses incident thereto;

(5) notwithstanding the provisions of section 2680(k) of title 28, pay tort claims in the man-

ner authorized in the first paragraph of section 2672 of such title, when such claims arise in foreign countries in connection with operations conducted abroad under this chapter;

(6) employ aliens by contract for services abroad;

(7) provide ice and drinking water abroad;

(8) pay excise taxes on negotiable instruments abroad;

(9) pay to or for individuals, not United States Government employees, participating in activities conducted under this chapter, the costs of emergency medical expenses, preparation and transport to their former homes of the remains of such participants or their dependents who die while away from their homes during such participation, and health and accident insurance premiums for participants or health and accident benefits for participants by means of a program of self-insurance;

(10) rent or lease, for periods not exceeding ten years, offices, buildings, grounds, and living quarters abroad for employees carrying out this chapter, and make payments therefor in advance;

(11) maintain, improve, and repair properties used for information activities in foreign countries;

(12) furnish fuel and utilities for Government-owned or leased property abroad;

(13) pay travel expenses of employees attending official international conferences, without regard to sections 5701–5708 of title 5, and regulations issued thereunder, but at rates not in excess of comparable allowances approved for such conferences by the Director;

(14) purchase uniforms;

(15) hire passenger motor vehicles;

(16) purchase passenger motor vehicles for use abroad, and right-hand drive and security vehicles may be so purchased without regard to any maximum price limitation established by law;

(17) procure services of experts and consultants in accordance with section 3109 of title 5;

(18) make advances of funds;

(19) notwithstanding section 5946 of title 5, pay dues for library membership in organizations which issue publications to members only, or to members at a price lower than to others;

(20) subject to the availability of appropriated funds, purchase motion picture, radio and television producers' liability insurance to cover errors and omissions or similar insurance coverage for the protection of interests in intellectual property;

(21) incur expenses authorized by the Foreign Service Act of 1980 (22 U.S.C. 3901 et seq.);

(22) furnish living quarters as authorized by section 5912 of title 5; and

(23) provide allowances as authorized by sections 5921 through 5928 of title 5.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title VIII, § 804, as added July 13, 1972, Pub. L. 92–352, title II, § 202, 86 Stat. 493; amended July 12, 1976, Pub. L. 94–350, title II, § 203, 90 Stat. 830; 1977 Reorg. Plan No. 2, § 7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637; Aug. 15, 1979, Pub. L. 96–60, title II, §§ 203(b)(2), 204(b), 93 Stat. 398, 400; Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97–241, title III, §§ 303(b), 304(c), (d), 96 Stat. 291, 293; Feb. 16, 1990,

Pub. L. 101-246, title II, §207, 104 Stat. 53; Oct. 28, 1991, Pub. L. 102-138, title II, §§204, 205, 105 Stat. 692.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The civil service laws, referred to in par. (1), are set forth in Title 5, Government Organization and Employees. See, particularly, section 3301 et seq. of Title 5.

The classification laws, referred to in par. (1), are classified generally to chapter 51 (§5101 et seq.) and to subchapter III (§5331 et seq.) of chapter 53 of Title 5.

The Foreign Service Act of 1980, referred to in par. (21), is Pub. L. 96-465, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2071, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 52 (§3901 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3901 of this title and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1991—Par. (9). Pub. L. 102-138, §205, amended par. (9) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (9) read as follows: “pay the actual expenses of preparing and transporting to their former homes the remains of persons, not United States Government employees, who may die away from their homes while participating in activities conducted under this chapter;”.

Pars. (21) to (23). Pub. L. 102-138, §204, added pars. (21) to (23).

1990—Par. (1). Pub. L. 101-246 inserted “when job vacancies occur” after “available”.

1982—Par. (16). Pub. L. 97-241, §304(c), inserted “and security” after “right-hand drive”.

Par. (20). Pub. L. 97-241, §304(d), added par. (20).

1979—Par. (1). Pub. L. 96-60, §203(b)(2), authorized employment of aliens within the United States, previously covered in section 1471(5) of this title, extended services to include preparation and production of foreign language programs, and eliminated investigation-of-alien-employees requirement.

Par. (10). Pub. L. 96-60, §204(b)(1), substituted “ten” for “five” years.

Par. (14). Pub. L. 96-60, §204(b)(3), substituted a semicolon for “, when funds are appropriated therefor;”.

Pars. (15) to (19). Pub. L. 96-60, §204(b)(4), added pars. (15) to (19).

1976—Par. (14). Pub. L. 94-350 added par. (14).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1979 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-60 effective Oct. 1, 1979, and applicable only with respect to funds appropriated after Aug. 15, 1979, where new authorities provide for expenditure of appropriated funds, see section 209 of Pub. L. 96-60, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1469 of this title.

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“Director of the United States Information Agency” substituted for “Director of the International Communication Agency” in par. (1) pursuant to section 303(b) of Pub. L. 97-241, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title, which redesignated International Communication Agency, and Director thereof, as United States Information Agency, and Director thereof. Previously, “Director” substituted for “Secretary” in text preceding par. (1) and pars. (1), (4) and (13), pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, §7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637, set out under section 1461 of this title, which transferred functions vested in President, Secretary of State, Department of State, United States Information Agency, and Director thereof, under this chapter, to Director of International Communication Agency, except to extent that such functions were vested in President under sections 1452, 1456, and 1467 of this title, effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by President.

#### EMPLOYMENT AUTHORITY FOR FISCAL YEARS 1994 AND 1995

Pub. L. 103-236, title II, §223, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 422, provided that: “For fiscal years 1994 and 1995, the

Director of the United States Information Agency may, in carrying out the provisions of the United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948 [22 U.S.C. 1431 et seq.], employ individuals or organizations by contract for services to be performed in the United States or abroad, who shall not, by virtue of such employment, be considered to be employees of the United States Government for the purposes of any law administered by the Office of Personnel Management, except that the Director may determine the applicability to such individuals of section 804(5) of that Act [22 U.S.C. 1474(5)].”

#### § 1475. Travel expenses

Appropriated funds made available for any fiscal year to the Director or any Government agency, to carry out the provisions of this chapter, for expenses in connection with travel of personnel outside the continental United States, including travel of dependents and transportation of personal effects, household goods, or automobiles of such personnel, shall be available for all such expenses in connection with travel or transportation which begins in that fiscal year pursuant to travel orders issued in that year, notwithstanding the fact that such travel or transportation may not be completed until the following fiscal year.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title VIII, §805, as added July 13, 1972, Pub. L. 92-352, title II, §202, 86 Stat. 494; amended 1977 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637.)

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“Director” substituted in text for “Secretary” pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, §7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637, set out under section 1461 of this title, which transferred functions vested in President, Secretary of State, Department of State, United States Information Agency, and Director thereof, under this chapter, to Director of International Communication Agency, except to extent that such functions were vested in President under sections 1452, 1456, and 1467 of this title, effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by President. International Communication Agency, and Director thereof, redesignated United States Information Agency, and Director thereof, by section 303 of Pub. L. 97-241, title III, Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title.

#### § 1475a. Replacement of passenger motor vehicles

The exchange allowances or proceeds derived from the exchange or sale of passenger motor vehicles used abroad for purposes of this chapter or the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2451 et seq.] shall be available without fiscal year limitation for replacement of an equal number of such vehicles in accordance with section 481(c) of title 40.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title VIII, §806, as added July 12, 1976, Pub. L. 94-350, title II, §204, 90 Stat. 830; amended Aug. 15, 1979, Pub. L. 96-60, title II, §204(c), 93 Stat. 400.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 87-256, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 527, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 33 (§2451 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2451 of this title and Tables.

## AMENDMENTS

1979—Pub. L. 96-60 substituted “shall be available” for “are authorized to be made available”.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1979 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-60 effective Oct. 1, 1979, and applicable only with respect to funds appropriated after Aug. 15, 1979, where new authorities provide for expenditures of appropriated funds, see section 209 of Pub. L. 96-60, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1469 of this title.

**§ 1475b. Seal of United States Information Agency; judicial notice**

The seal of the United States Information Agency shall be the arms and crest of the United States, encircled by the words “United States Information Agency”. Judicial notice shall be taken of the seal.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title VIII, §807, as added Oct. 7, 1978, Pub. L. 95-426, title II, §204(c), 92 Stat. 974; amended Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title III, §303(b), 96 Stat. 291.)

## TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“United States Information Agency” substituted in text for “International Communication Agency” pursuant to section 303(b) of Pub. L. 97-241, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title.

**§ 1475c. Acting Associate Directors**

If an Associate Director of the United States Information Agency dies, resigns, or is sick or absent, the Associate Director’s principal assistant shall perform the duties of the office until a successor is appointed or the absence or sickness stops.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title VIII, §808, as added Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title III, §304(e), 96 Stat. 293.)

**§ 1475d. Compensation for disability or death**

A cultural exchange, international fair or exposition, or other exhibit or demonstration of United States economic accomplishments and cultural attainments, provided for under this chapter or the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2451 et seq.] shall not be considered a “public work” as that term is defined in section 1651 of title 42.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title VIII, §809, as added Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title III, §304(e), 96 Stat. 293.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 87-256, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 527, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 33 (§2451 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2451 of this title and Tables.

**§ 1475e. Use of certain fees and payments**

(a)<sup>1</sup> Notwithstanding section 3302 of title 31 or any other law or limitation of authority, fees received by or for the use of the United States Information Agency from or in connection with

English-teaching and library services, and Agency-produced publications, and not to exceed \$100,000 of payments from motion picture and television programs, produced or conducted by or on behalf of the Agency under the authority of this chapter or the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2451 et seq.] is authorized to be credited each fiscal year to the appropriate appropriation of the United States Information Agency to such extent as may be provided in advance in an appropriation Act.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title VIII, §810, as added Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title III, §304(e), 96 Stat. 293; amended Dec. 22, 1987, Pub. L. 100-204, title II, §203, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1373; Feb. 16, 1990, Pub. L. 101-246, title II, §208, 104 Stat. 53.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 87-256, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 527, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 33 (§2451 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2451 of this title and Tables.

## AMENDMENTS

1990—Pub. L. 101-246 amended section catchline and text generally. Prior to amendment, section read as follows: “Notwithstanding the provisions of section 3302(b) of title 31 or any other law or limitation of authority, all payments received by or for the use of the United States Information Agency from or in connection with English-teaching and library services conducted by or on behalf of the Agency under the authority of this chapter or the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961 may be credited to the Agency’s applicable appropriation to such extent as may be provided in advance in an appropriation Act.”

1987—Pub. L. 100-204 amended section generally, changing structure of section from one consisting of subssecs. (a) and (b) to one consisting of one paragraph.

**§ 1475f. Debt collection****(a) Contract authority**

(1) Subject to the availability of appropriations, the Director of the United States Information Agency shall enter into contracts for collection services to recover indebtedness owed by a person, other than a foreign country, to the United States which arises out of activities of the United States Information Agency and is delinquent by more than 90 days.

(2) Each contract entered into under this section shall provide that the person with whom the Director of the United States Information Agency enters into such contract shall submit to the Director at least once every 180 days a status report on the success of the person in collecting debts. Section 3718 of title 31 shall apply to any such contract to the extent that such section is not inconsistent with this subsection.

**(b) Disclosure of delinquent debt to credit reporting agencies**

The Director of the United States Information Agency shall, to the extent otherwise allowed by law, disclose to those credit reporting agencies to which the Director reports loan activity information concerning any debt of more than \$100 owed by a person, other than a foreign country, to the United States which arises out of activi-

<sup>1</sup> So in original. No subsec. (b) has been enacted.

ties of the United States Information Agency and is delinquent by more than 31 days.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title VIII, § 811, as added Feb. 16, 1990, Pub. L. 101-246, title II, § 209, 104 Stat. 53.)

#### § 1475g. USIA posts and personnel overseas

##### (a) Limitation

Except as provided under this section no funds authorized to be appropriated to the United States Information Agency may be used to pay any expense associated with the closing of any United States Information Agency post abroad.

##### (b) Notification

Not less than 45 days before the closing of any United States Information Agency post abroad the Director of the United States Information Agency shall notify the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate.

##### (c) Exceptions

This section shall not apply to any United States Information Agency post closed—

(1) because of a break or downgrading of diplomatic relations between the United States and the country in which the post is located; or

(2) where there is a real and present threat to United States diplomats in the city where the post is located and where a travel advisory warning against travel by United States citizens to the city has been issued by the Department of State.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title VIII, § 812, as added Oct. 28, 1991, Pub. L. 102-138, title II, § 206(a), 105 Stat. 693.)

##### PRIOR PROVISIONS

Provisions similar to this section were contained in Pub. L. 100-204, title II, § 204, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1373, which was set out as a note under section 1461 of this title prior to repeal by Pub. L. 102-138, title II, § 206(c), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 693.

##### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

##### REDUCTIONS IN AMERICAN EMPLOYEES

Section 206(b) of Pub. L. 102-138 provided that: “Reductions may not be made in the number of positions filled by American employees of the United States Information Agency stationed abroad until the number of such employees is the same percentage of the total number of American employees of the Agency as the number of American employees of the Agency stationed abroad in 1981 was to the total number of American employees at the Agency at the same time in 1981.”

#### § 1475h. USIA grants

##### (a) Competitive grant procedures

Except as provided in subsection (b) of this section, the United States Information Agency shall work to achieve full and open competition in the award of grants.

##### (b) Exceptions

The United States Information Agency may award a grant under procedures other than competitive procedures when—

(1) a grant is made under the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961 (commonly known as the Fulbright-Hays Act) [22 U.S.C. 2451 et seq.] or any statute which expressly authorizes or requires that a grant be made with a specified entity;

(2) the terms of an international agreement or treaty between the United States Government and a foreign government or international organization have the effect of requiring the use of procedures other than competitive procedures;

(3) a recipient organization has developed particular expertise in the planning and administration of longstanding exchange programs important to United States foreign policy; or

(4) introducing competition would increase costs.

##### (c) Compliance with grant guidelines

(1) After October 1, 1991, grants awarded by the United States Information Agency shall substantially comply with United States Information Agency grant guidelines and applicable circulars of the Office of Management and Budget.

(2) If the Agency determines that a grantee has not satisfied the requirement of paragraph (1), the United States Information Agency shall notify the grantee of the suspension of payments under a grant unless compliance is achieved within 90 days of such notice.

(3) The Agency shall suspend payments under any grant which remains in noncompliance 90 days after notification under paragraph (2).

##### (d) Report to Congress

Not later than 90 days after October 28, 1991, the Director of the United States Information Agency shall submit a detailed report to the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives on United States Information Agency action to comply with subsection (a) of this section.

(Pub. L. 102-138, title II, § 212, Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 695.)

##### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (b)(1), is Pub. L. 87-256, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 527, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 33 (§ 2451 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2451 of this title and Tables.

##### CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1992 and 1993, and not as part of the United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948 which comprises this chapter.

##### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

SUBCHAPTER VIII—APPROPRIATIONS AND  
OTHER FUNDS

**§ 1476. Prior authorizations by Congress**

(a) Notwithstanding any provision of law enacted before November 29, 1973, no money appropriated to carry out this chapter shall be available for obligation or expenditure—

- (1) unless the appropriation thereof has been previously authorized by law; or
- (2) in excess of an amount previously prescribed by law.

(b) To the extent that legislation enacted after the making of an appropriation to carry out this chapter authorizes the obligation or expenditure thereof, the limitation contained in subsection (a) of this section shall have no effect.

(c) The provisions of this section shall not be superseded except by a provision of law enacted after November 29, 1973, which specifically repeals, modifies, or supersedes the provisions of this section.

(d) The provisions of this section shall not apply with respect to appropriations made available under the joint resolution entitled “Joint resolution making continuing appropriations for the fiscal year 1974, and for other purposes”, approved July 1, 1973, and any provision of law specifically amending such joint resolution enacted through October 16, 1973.

(e) The provisions of this section shall not apply to, or affect in any manner, permanent appropriations, trust funds, and other similar accounts administered by the United States Information Agency as authorized by law.

(f)(1) Subject to paragraphs (2) and (3), funds authorized to be appropriated for any account of the United States Information Agency in the Department of State and Related Agencies Appropriations Act, for the second fiscal year of any 2-year authorization cycle may be appropriated for such second fiscal year for any other account of the United States Information Agency.

(2) Amounts appropriated for the “Salaries and Expenses” and “Educational and Cultural Exchange Programs” accounts may not exceed by more than 5 percent the amount specifically authorized to be appropriated for each such account for a fiscal year. No other appropriations account may exceed by more than 10 percent the amount specifically authorized to be appropriated for such account for a fiscal year.

(3) The requirements and limitations of subsection (a) of this section shall not apply to the appropriation of funds pursuant to this subsection.

(4) This subsection shall cease to have effect after September 30, 1995.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title VII, §701, 62 Stat. 11; Feb. 7, 1972, Pub. L. 92-226, pt. IV, §407(d), 86 Stat. 35; July 13, 1972, Pub. L. 92-352, title II, §203, 86 Stat. 494; Nov. 29, 1973, Pub. L. 93-168, §3, 87 Stat. 688; Oct. 26, 1974, Pub. L. 93-475, §6, 88 Stat. 1440; 1977 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §§5, 7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1636, 1637; Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title III, §303(b), 96 Stat. 291; Oct. 24, 1992, Pub. L. 102-499, §2, 106 Stat. 3264; Oct. 25, 1994, Pub. L. 103-415, §1(q), 108 Stat. 4301.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The joint resolution entitled “Joint resolution making continuing appropriations for the fiscal year 1974, and for other purposes”, approved July 1, 1973, referred to in subsec. (d), is Pub. L. 93-52, July 1, 1973, 87 Stat. 130, of which only section 111 of Pub. L. 93-52 was classified to the Code. Section 111 of Pub. L. 93-52 which was classified to section 665b of former Title 31 was repealed and reenacted as section 1502(b) of Title 31, Money and Finance, by Pub. L. 97-258, §4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (f)(4). Pub. L. 103-415 substituted “1995” for “1993”.

1992—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 102-499 added subsec. (f).

1974—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 93-475 added subsec. (e).

1973—Pub. L. 93-168 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a), substituted provisions that no appropriated moneys appropriated to carry out this chapter be available for obligation or expenditure if the appropriation thereof has not been previously authorized by law or if the appropriated moneys are in excess of the amount previously prescribed by law for provisions that no appropriation be made to the Secretary of State or to any Government agency authorized to administer the provisions of this chapter under any law for any fiscal year commencing on or after July 1, 1972, unless previously authorized by legislation enacted by the Congress after February 7, 1972, but with such provisions not to apply to or affect permanent appropriations, trust funds, and other similar accounts administered by the Secretary or such agency authorized by law, and added subsecs. (b) to (d).

1972—Pub. L. 92-352 inserted provisions that section not apply to, or affect in any manner, permanent appropriations, trust funds, and other similar accounts administered by the Secretary or such agency as authorized by law.

Pub. L. 92-226 substituted provision for prior authorizations by Congress for former general authorization.

SHORT TITLE OF 1973 AMENDMENT

Section 1 of Pub. L. 93-168 provided: “That this Act [amending this section] may be cited as the ‘United States Information Agency Appropriations Authorization Act of 1973.’”

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“United States Information Agency” substituted for “International Communication Agency” in subsec. (e) pursuant to section 303(b) of Pub. L. 97-241, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title. Previously, functions vested in President, Secretary of State, Department of State, United States Information Agency, and Director thereof, under this chapter, which agency was abolished by Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, §9(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1639, set out under section 1461 of this title, effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by President, transferred to Director of International Communication Agency, except to extent that such functions were vested in President under sections 1452, 1456, and 1467 of this title, by section 7(a)(1) of Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977. Director of International Communication Agency was authorized by section 5 of Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977 to delegate performance of any such transferred functions to any officer, employee, or unit of International Communication Agency. Accordingly, “International Communication Agency” substituted for “United States Information Agency” in subsec. (e).

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1442 of this title.

**§ 1477. Transfer of funds**

The Director shall authorize the transfer to other Government agencies for expenditure in

the United States and in other countries, in order to carry out the purposes of this chapter, any part of any appropriations available to the Agency for carrying out the purposes of this chapter, for direct expenditure or as a working fund, and any such expenditures may be made under the specific authority contained in this chapter or under the authority governing the activities of the Government agency to which a part of any such appropriation is transferred, provided the activities come within the scope of this chapter.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title VII, §702, 62 Stat. 11; 1977 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §§5, 7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1636, 1637.)

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“Director” substituted in text for “Secretary” pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, §7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637, set out under section 1461 of this title, which transferred functions vested in President, Secretary of State, Department of State, United States Information Agency, and Director thereof, under this chapter, to Director of International Communication Agency, except to extent that such functions were vested in President under sections 1452, 1456, and 1467 of this title, effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by President. Director of International Communication Agency authorized by section 5 of Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977 to delegate performance of such transferred functions by any officers, employees, or units of International Communication Agency. Accordingly, “Agency” also substituted for “Department”, meaning Department of State, International Communication Agency, and Director thereof, redesignated United States Information Agency, and Director thereof, by section 303 of Pub. L. 97-241, title III, Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title.

#### § 1477a. Omitted

Section, act Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title VII, §703, as added Mar. 30, 1972, Pub. L. 92-264, 86 Stat. 114; amended Aug. 20, 1972, Pub. L. 92-394, 86 Stat. 577; July 6, 1973, Pub. L. 93-59, 87 Stat. 142; 1977 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637, which authorized appropriations for Radio Free Europe and Radio Liberty for fiscal year 1973 in an amount of \$38,520,000, and also authorized an additional \$1,150,000 for non-discretionary costs, has been omitted in view of the authorization not being extended later than fiscal year 1973.

#### § 1477b. Nondiscretionary personnel costs and currency fluctuations

##### (a) Availability of appropriations until expended

Amounts appropriated for a fiscal year to carry out this chapter are authorized to be made available until expended.

##### (b) Additional appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated for the United States Information Agency, in addition to amounts otherwise authorized to be appropriated for the Agency, such sums as may be necessary for any fiscal year for increases in salary, pay, retirement, and other employee benefits authorized by law.

##### (c) Appropriations authorization based on currency fluctuations; Buying Power Maintenance account

(1) In order to maintain the levels of program activity provided for by the annual authorizing

legislation for the United States Information Agency, there are authorized to be appropriated for the Agency such sums as may be necessary for any fiscal year to offset adverse fluctuations in foreign currency exchange rates, or overseas wage and price changes, occurring after November 30 of the earlier of (A) the calendar year which ended during the fiscal year preceding such fiscal year, or (B) the calendar year which preceded the calendar year during which the authorization of appropriations for such fiscal year was enacted.

(2) In carrying out this subsection, there may be established a Buying Power Maintenance account.

(3) In order to eliminate substantial gains to the approved levels of overseas operations for the United States Information Agency, the Director shall transfer to the Buying Power Maintenance account such amounts appropriated for “Salaries and Expenses” as the Director determines are excessive to the needs of the approved level of operations under that appropriation account because of fluctuations in foreign currency exchange rates or changes in overseas wages and prices.

(4) In order to offset adverse fluctuations in foreign currency exchange rates or foreign wages and prices, the Director may transfer from the Buying Power Maintenance account to the “Salaries and Expenses” appropriations account such amounts as the Director determines are necessary to maintain the approved level of operations under that appropriation account.

(5) Funds transferred by the Director from the Buying Power Maintenance account to another account shall be merged with and be available for the same purpose, and for the same time period, as the funds in that other account. Funds transferred by the Director from another account to the Buying Power Maintenance account shall be merged with the funds in the Buying Power Maintenance account and shall be available for the purposes of that account until expended.

(6) Any restriction contained in an appropriation Act or other provision of law limiting the amounts that may be obligated or expended by the United States Information Agency shall be deemed to be adjusted to the extent necessary to offset the net effect of fluctuations in foreign currency exchange rates or overseas wage and price changes in order to maintain approved levels.

(7)(A) Subject to the limitations contained in this paragraph, not later than the end of the 5th fiscal year after the fiscal year for which funds are appropriated or otherwise made available for the “Salaries and Expenses” account, the Director may transfer any unobligated balance of such funds to the Buying Power Maintenance account.

(B) The balance of the Buying Power Maintenance account may not exceed \$50,000,000 as a result of any transfer under this paragraph.

(C) Any transfer pursuant to this paragraph shall be treated as a reprogramming of funds under section 1477c of this title and shall be available for obligation or expenditure only in accordance with the procedures under such section.

(D) The authorities contained in this section may only be exercised to such an extent and in such amounts as specifically provided in advance in appropriation Acts.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title VII, § 704, as added Aug. 15, 1979, Pub. L. 96-60, title II, § 204(e), 93 Stat. 400; amended Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title I, § 112(b), title III, § 303(b), 96 Stat. 278, 291; Apr. 30, 1994, Pub. L. 103-236, title II, § 224, 108 Stat. 422.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 103-236 designated existing provisions as par. (1), redesignated former cls. (1) and (2) as cls. (A) and (B), respectively, and added pars. (2) to (7).

1982—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 97-241, § 112(b), inserted “, or overseas wage and price changes,” after “exchange rates”, substituted “earlier of” for “preceding fiscal year”, and added cls. (1) and (2).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1979, and applicable only with respect to funds appropriated after Aug. 15, 1979, where new authorities provide for expenditure of appropriated funds, see section 209 of Pub. L. 96-60, set out as a note under section 1469 of this title.

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“United States Information Agency” substituted for “International Communication Agency” in subssecs. (b) and (c)(1), pursuant to section 303(b) of Pub. L. 97-241, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title.

### § 1477c. Notification of reprogramings and grants; covered programs, projects, or activities; award of program grants

#### (a) Availability of appropriated funds

Unless the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate are notified fifteen days in advance of a proposed reprogramming, funds appropriated for the United States Information Agency shall not be available for obligation or expenditure through any such reprogramming of funds—

- (1) which creates new programs;
- (2) which eliminates a program, project, or activity;
- (3) which increases funds or personnel by any means for any project or activity for which funds have been denied or restricted by the Congress;
- (4) which relocates an office or employees;
- (5) which reorganizes offices, programs, or activities;
- (6) which involves contracting out functions which had been performed by Federal employees; or
- (7) which involves a reprogramming in excess of \$500,000 or 10 per centum, whichever is less, and which (A) augments existing programs, projects, or activities, (B) reduces by 10 per centum or more the funding for any existing program, project, or activity, or personnel approved by the Congress, or (C) results from any general savings from a reduction in personnel which would result in a change in existing programs, activities, or projects approved by the Congress.

(7) which involves a reprogramming in excess of \$500,000 or 10 per centum, whichever is less, and which (A) augments existing programs, projects, or activities, (B) reduces by 10 per centum or more the funding for any existing program, project, or activity, or personnel approved by the Congress, or (C) results from any general savings from a reduction in personnel which would result in a change in existing programs, activities, or projects approved by the Congress.

#### (b) Notification to Congressional committees

In addition, the United States Information Agency may award program grants only if the

Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate are notified fifteen days in advance of the proposed grant.

#### (c) Period of availability of appropriated funds

Funds appropriated for the United States Information Agency may not be available for obligation or expenditure through any reprogramming described in subsection (a) of this section during the period which is the last 15 days in which such funds are available unless notice of such reprogramming is made before such period.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title VII, § 705, as added Nov. 22, 1983, Pub. L. 98-164, title II, § 214, 97 Stat. 1035; amended Aug. 16, 1985, Pub. L. 99-93, title II, § 214(a), 99 Stat. 434; Dec. 22, 1987, Pub. L. 100-204, title II, § 202, 101 Stat. 1372; Oct. 28, 1991, Pub. L. 102-138, title II, § 202, 105 Stat. 692.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1991—Subsec. (a)(7). Pub. L. 102-138 substituted “\$500,000” for “\$250,000”.

1987—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 100-204, § 202(a), struck out “for the fiscal years 1986 and 1987” after “may award program grants”.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 100-204, § 202(b), added subsec. (c). 1985—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 99-93 substituted “1986 and 1987” for “1984 and 1985”.

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Section 214(b) of Pub. L. 99-93 provided that: “The amendment made by subsection (a) [amending this section] shall take effect on October 1, 1985.”

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1477b of this title.

### § 1478. Reimbursement of program expenses from sources other than appropriations; disposition of receipts

The Director shall, when he finds it in the public interest, request and accept reimbursement from any cooperating governmental or private source in a foreign country, or from State or local governmental institutions or private sources in the United States, for all or part of the expenses of any portion of the program undertaken hereunder. The amounts so received shall be covered into the Treasury as miscellaneous receipts.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title IX, § 901, 62 Stat. 13; 1977 Reorg. Plan No. 2, § 7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637.)

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“Director” substituted in text for “Secretary” pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, § 7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637, set out under section 1461 of this title, which transferred functions vested in President, Secretary of State, Department of State, United States Information Agency, and Director thereof, under this chapter, to Director of International Communication Agency, except to extent that such functions were vested in President under sections 1452, 1456, and 1467 of this

title, effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by President. International Communication Agency, and Director thereof, redesignated United States Information Agency, and Director thereof, by section 303 of Pub. L. 97-241, title III, Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 965, 6209 of this title.

### § 1479. Advancement of funds, property, or services by foreign governments; disposition; availability; return of unexpended balances or property

If any other government shall express the desire to provide funds, property, or services to be used by this Government, in whole or in part, for the expenses of any specific part of the program undertaken pursuant to this chapter, the Director is authorized, when he finds it in the public interest, to accept such funds, property, or services. Funds so received may be established as a special deposit account in the Treasury of the United States, to be available for the specified purpose, and to be used for reimbursement of appropriations or direct expenditure, subject to the provisions of this chapter. Any unexpended balance of the special deposit account and other property received under this section and no longer required for the purposes for which provided shall be returned to the government providing the funds or property.

(Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, title IX, §902, 62 Stat. 13; 1977 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637.)

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“Director” substituted in text for “Secretary” pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, §7(a)(1), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637, set out under section 1461 of this title, which transferred functions vested in President, Secretary of State, Department of State, United States Information Agency, and Director thereof, under this chapter, to Director of International Communication Agency, except to extent that such functions were vested in President under sections 1452, 1456, and 1467 of this title, effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by President. International Communication Agency, and Director thereof, redesignated United States Information Agency, and Director thereof, by section 303 of Pub. L. 97-241, title III, Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1451, 6209 of this title.

### § 1480. Repealed. Pub. L. 89-554, §8(a), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 657, 658

Section, act June 20, 1956, ch. 414, title I, §107, 70 Stat. 304, related to maximum rates of per diem in lieu of subsistence payable to foreign participants. See section 2679 of this title.

Acts July 10, 1952, ch. 651, title I, §109, 66 Stat. 555; Aug. 5, 1953, ch. 328, title I, §108, 67 Stat. 371; July 2, 1954, ch. 456, title I, §107, 68 Stat. 418; July 7, 1955, ch. 279, title I, §107, 69 Stat. 270, which contained provision similar to section 1480 of this title, were repealed by Pub. L. 89-554, §8(a), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 657, 658.

## CHAPTER 19—FOREIGN ASSISTANCE PROGRAM

### SUBCHAPTER I—ASSISTANCE TO EUROPEAN COUNTRIES

#### §§ 1501, 1502. Repealed. Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §503(b)(1), as added June 20, 1952, ch. 449, §7(c), 66 Stat. 144

Section 1501, acts Apr. 3, 1948, ch. 169, title I, §102, 62 Stat. 137; Apr. 19, 1949, ch. 77, §1, 63 Stat. 50; June 5, 1950, ch. 220, title I, §102, 64 Stat. 198, related to congressional declarations and findings. See sections 2151 and 2301 of this title.

Section 1502, act Apr. 3, 1948, ch. 169, title I, §103, 62 Stat. 138, related to participating countries.

#### §§ 1503 to 1505. Repealed. Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title V, §542(a)(4), (10), 68 Stat. 861

Section 1503, acts Apr. 3, 1948, ch. 169, title I, §104, 62 Stat. 138; Apr. 19, 1949, ch. 77, §2, 63 Stat. 50; Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §503(b)(1), as added June 20, 1952, ch. 449, §7(c), 66 Stat. 144, related to Economic Cooperation Administration and provided for the creation of a corporation, its powers, duties, and liabilities, termination date, capital stock, employment of personnel and promulgation of rules and regulations.

Section 1504, acts Apr. 3, 1948, ch. 169, title I, §105, 62 Stat. 140; Apr. 19, 1949, ch. 77, §3, 63 Stat. 50; Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §503(b)(1), as added June 20, 1952, ch. 449, §7(c), 66 Stat. 144, related to general functions of Administrator.

Section 1505, act Apr. 3, 1948, ch. 169, title I, §107, 62 Stat. 141, related to creation of Public Advisory Board; composition; qualifications; appointment; compensation; expenses; meetings; and additional advisory committees.

#### § 1506. Repealed. Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §503(b)(1), as added June 20, 1952, ch. 449, §7(c), 66 Stat. 144

Section, acts Apr. 3, 1948, ch. 169, title I, §108, 62 Stat. 141; Apr. 19, 1949, ch. 77, §4, 63 Stat. 50, related to the United States Special Representative and Deputy Representative abroad; appointment and compensation; and rank. See section 2391 of this title.

#### §§ 1507 to 1513. Repealed. Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title V, §542(a)(4), (6), (9)–(11), 68 Stat. 861

Section 1507, acts Apr. 3, 1948, ch. 169, title I, §109, 62 Stat. 142; Apr. 19, 1949, ch. 77, §5, 63 Stat. 51; Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §503(b)(1), as added June 20, 1952, ch. 449, §7(c), 66 Stat. 144, related to special missions for each participating country. See sections 2382, 2391, and 2396 of this title.

Section 1508, acts Apr. 3, 1948, ch. 169, title I, §110, 62 Stat. 142; Apr. 5, 1952, ch. 159, §1, 66 Stat. 43; Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §503(b)(1), as added June 20, 1952, ch. 449, §7(c), 66 Stat. 144, related to personnel performing outside United States, their pay and allowances, assignment to Foreign Service Reserve or Staff, employment of aliens and loyalty and security investigation of employees. See section 2385 of this title.

Section 1509, acts Apr. 3, 1948, ch. 169, title I, §111, 62 Stat. 143; Apr. 19, 1949, ch. 77, §6, 63 Stat. 51; June 5, 1950, ch. 220, title I, §103, 64 Stat. 198; Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §522, 65 Stat. 384; June 20, 1952, ch. 449, §7(a), 66 Stat. 143; July 16, 1953, ch. 195, ch. VII, §708(a), 67 Stat. 161, related to assistance to participating countries, nature and methods, terms and conditions; utilization of private channels of trade, terms and conditions; assistance by grants, payments-in-cash or credit, maximum issuance of notes; and funds to promote liberalization of trade among participants. See sections 2351, 2353, 2395 and 2403 of this title.

Section 1510, acts Apr. 3, 1948, ch. 169, title I, §112, 62 Stat. 146; Apr. 19, 1949, ch. 77, §7, 63 Stat. 52; June 5,



1950, ch. 220, title I, §104, 64 Stat. 199; Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §538(c) as added June 20, 1952, ch. 449, §7(m), 66 Stat. 148, related to protection of domestic economy, minimization of procurement in United States, surplus agricultural commodity, definition, procurement, acquisition from Commodity Credit Corporation, payment and payments by Secretary of Agriculture, exclusion of nonparticipating countries, utilization of private channels of trade, assistance by Administrator to aid small business to participate in furnishing commodities and services to program, appointment and duties of special assistant, report to Congress, marine insurance, limitation on use of advertising funds and on purchase price of commodities, price-policy for wheat and wheat-flour, and discriminatory trade practices. See sections 2352, 2354, and 2403 of this title.

Section 1511 act Apr. 3, 1948, ch. 169, title I, §113, 62 Stat. 148, related to reimbursement to Government agencies for commodities, services, or facilities; and transfer of commodities to other Government agencies to prevent spoilage or waste. See sections 2355 and 2392 of this title.

Section 1512, acts Apr. 3, 1948, ch. 169, title I, §114, 62 Stat. 149; Apr. 19, 1949, ch. 77, §8, 63 Stat. 53; June 5, 1950, ch. 220, title I, §105, 64 Stat. 200; act Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §503(b)(1), as added June 20, 1952, ch. 449, §7(c), 66 Stat. 144, related to appropriations, interim advances and repayment, availability of certain unobligated funds, appropriation of funds until June 30, 1952, disbursement of funds, merger of certain deposits of participating countries, creation of Foreign Economic Cooperation Trust fund, advances by Reconstruction Finance Corporation, transfer of German assistance funds and payment of expenses of rehabilitation, and deposit of German currency into GARIOA special account and availability of deposited funds. See section 2151 et seq. of this title.

Section 1513, acts Apr. 3, 1948, ch. 169, title I, §115, 62 Stat. 150; Apr. 19, 1949, ch. 77, §9, 63 Stat. 53; June 5, 1950, ch. 220, title I, §106, 64 Stat. 201; Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §§523, 527, 65 Stat. 385; Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §503(b)(1), as added June 20, 1952, ch. 449, §7(c), 66 Stat. 144; June 20, 1952, ch. 449, §9, 66 Stat. 150; July 16, 1953, ch. 195, ch. VII, §§708(b), (c), 710(b), 67 Stat. 161, related to bilateral and multilateral undertakings; conclusion of basic agreements by Secretary of State and advisory function of Administrator; conditions precedent for assistance; interim assistance; encouragement of joint organization between participating countries and followup system; utilization of manpower; capital equipment; repatriation of prisoners of war; use of special local currency by United States; procurement of strategic, critical or deficient materials for United States; and publicity regarding American assistance. See section 2151 et seq. of this title.

**§ 1514. Repealed. Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §503(b)(1), as added June 20, 1952, ch. 449, §7(c), 66 Stat. 144**

Section, act Apr. 3, 1948, ch. 169, title I, §116, 62 Stat. 153, related to assistance by other Western Hemisphere countries.

**§§ 1515 to 1519. Repealed. Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title V, §542(a)(4), (10), 68 Stat. 861**

Section 1515, acts Apr. 3, 1948, ch. 169, title I, §117, 62 Stat. 153; Apr. 19, 1949, ch. 77, §10, 63 Stat. 54; Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §503(b)(1), as added June 20, 1952, ch. 449, §7(c), 66 Stat. 144; Oct. 26, 1951, ch. 575, title III, §305, 65 Stat. 647, prescribed additional duties of Administrator to promote production in participating countries and foreign travel by Americans and provided for payment of ocean freight charges on voluntary supplies, availability of ships for emigration from Italy, retention of title and return of ships. See section 2121 et seq. of this title.

Section 1516, acts Apr. 3, 1948, ch. 169, title I, §118, 62 Stat. 154; Apr. 19, 1949, ch. 77, §11, 63 Stat. 55, related to

termination of assistance. See section 2367 and 2370 of this title.

Section 1517, act Apr. 3, 1948, ch. 169, title I, §119, 62 Stat. 154, related to exemption of functions, respecting assistance to European countries, from contract and accounting laws. See section 2393 of this title.

Section 1518, act Apr. 3, 1948, ch. 169, title I, §120, 62 Stat. 155, related to exemption of personnel from certain employment laws. See section 2386 of this title.

Section 1519, acts Apr. 3, 1948, ch. 169, title I, §121, 62 Stat. 155; Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §503(b)(1), as added June 20, 1952, ch. 449, §7(c), 66 Stat. 144, related to utilization of services and facilities of United Nations and prohibitions, transmittal of copies of Congressional reports on operations to the Secretary-General of the United Nations and registration of agreements.

**§§ 1520 to 1522. Repealed. Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §503(b)(1), as added June 20, 1952, ch. 449, §7(c), 66 Stat. 144**

Section 1520, act Apr. 3, 1948, ch. 169, title I, §122, 62 Stat. 155, related to termination of program. See section 2367 of this title.

Section 1521, act Apr. 3, 1941, ch. 169, title I, §123, 62 Stat. 156, related to reports to Congress. See section 2394 of this title.

Section 1522, act Apr. 3, 1948, ch. 169, title I, §124, 62 Stat. 156, provided for a Joint Congressional Committee, its composition, vacancies, chairman, functions, committee hearings, attendance of witnesses, cost of stenographic services, penalties, employment of personnel, appropriations and disbursements.

**§ 1523. Repealed. Oct. 26, 1951, ch. 575, title III, §305, 65 Stat. 647**

Section, act June 2, 1951, ch. 121, Ch. XIII, §1302(a), 65 Stat. 63, related to assistance denied countries trading with Russia or satellite countries. See section 1611 et seq. of this title. Section 1302(b) of that act repealed section 1304 of act Sept. 27, 1950, ch. 1052, Ch. XIII, 64 Stat. 1066, which contained similar provisions.

**SUBCHAPTER II—ASSISTANCE TO INTERNATIONAL CHILDREN'S EMERGENCY FUND**

**§§ 1531 to 1536. Repealed. Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title V, §542(a)(4), (6), 68 Stat. 861**

Section 1531, act Apr. 3, 1948, ch. 169, title II, §202, 62 Stat. 157, related to purpose.

Section 1532, acts Apr. 3, 1948, ch. 169, title II, §203, 62 Stat. 157; July 14, 1949, ch. 336, §1, 63 Stat. 412, related to contributions.

Section 1533, act Apr. 3, 1948, ch. 169, title II, §204, 62 Stat. 157, related to limitations on contributions.

Section 1534, acts Apr. 3, 1948, ch. 169, title II, §205, 62 Stat. 157; July 14, 1949, ch. 336, §1, 63 Stat. 412, related to appropriations and availability thereof as relief aid to war devastated countries.

Section 1535, acts Apr. 3, 1948, ch. 169, title II, §206, 62 Stat. 157; July 1, 1949, ch. 336, §1, 63 Stat. 412, related to amount of appropriations in amount of \$60,000,000.

Section 1536, act June 5, 1950, ch. 220, title V, §501, 64 Stat. 209, related to additional appropriations in amount of \$15,000,000 and made certain funds appropriated by Foreign Aid Appropriation Act, 1949, available through June 30, 1951.

**REPEAL OF ADDITIONAL APPROPRIATIONS**

Acts June 20, 1952, ch. 449, §12, 66 Stat. 151; Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §545, as added by act July 16, 1953, ch. 195, ch. VI, §603, 67 Stat. 155, were repealed by act Aug. 26, 1954, §542(a)(9)-(11).

## SUBCHAPTER III—ASSISTANCE TO CHINA

**§§ 1541 to 1547. Repealed. Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title V, § 542(a)(4), (6), (9)–(11), 68 Stat. 861**

Sections 1541–1546, act Apr. 3, 1948, ch. 169, title IV, §§ 402–407, 62 Stat. 158, 159, related to Congressional findings and declaration of purpose; administration of assistance; appropriations; agreements; monetary advances by and reimbursement to R.F.C.; and Joint Commission on Rural Reconstruction in China, establishment, composition, duties, limitations, apportionment of funds.

Section 1547, acts June 5, 1950, ch. 220, title II, § 202, 64 Stat. 202; Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title III, § 302(b), 65 Stat. 376; June 20, 1952, ch. 449, § 5(c), 66 Stat. 143; July 16, 1953, ch. 195, ch. V, § 502, 67 Stat. 154, related to nature of assistance.

## ADDITIONAL APPROPRIATIONS

Section 12 of act Apr. 19, 1949, ch. 77, 63 Stat. 55, as amended by act Feb. 14, 1950, ch. 16, § 2, 64 Stat. 5, made available additional appropriations for assistance in China.

## SUBCHAPTER IV—ASSISTANCE TO KOREA

**§§ 1551, 1552. Repealed. Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title V, § 542(a)(6), (7), 68 Stat. 861**

Section 1551, acts Feb. 14, 1950, ch. 16, § 3, 64 Stat. 5; June 5, 1950, ch. 220, title I, § 107(a), (b), 64 Stat. 202, related to conditions governing furnishing and termination of aid; shipping made available; appropriations; advances; and repayment.

Section 1552, acts Feb. 14, 1950, ch. 16, § 4, 64 Stat. 6; June 5, 1950, ch. 220, title I, § 107(c), 64 Stat. 202, related to termination of appropriation authorization period.

## SUBCHAPTER V—AID TO PALESTINE REFUGEES

**§§ 1556 to 1556b. Repealed. Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title V, § 542(a)(6), 68 Stat. 861**

Sections, act June 5, 1950, ch. 220, title III, §§ 302–304, 64 Stat. 203, related to contributions to United Nations for assistance; authorization of appropriations and advances by R.F.C.; and nature of assistance. See section 2221 of this title.

## SUBCHAPTER VI—INTERNATIONAL DEVELOPMENT

**§§ 1557 to 1557k. Repealed. Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title V, § 542(a)(6), (9)–(11), 68 Stat. 861**

Section 1557, act June 5, 1950, ch. 220, title IV, § 402, 64 Stat. 204, related to Congressional declaration of findings. See section 2151 of this title.

Section 1557a, act June 5, 1950, ch. 220, title IV, § 403, 64 Stat. 204, related to Congressional declaration of policy. See section 2151 of this title.

Section 1557b, acts June 5, 1950, ch. 220, title IV, § 404, 64 Stat. 205; Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, § 528(a), 65 Stat. 386; June 20, 1952, ch. 449, § 10(a), 66 Stat. 150; July 16, 1953, ch. 195, ch. VII, § 709, 67 Stat. 161, related to United States participation in multilateral technical cooperation programs; contributions; and furnishing of services and facilities. See section 2357 of this title.

Section 1557c, act June 5, 1950, ch. 220, title IV, § 405, 64 Stat. 205, related to bilateral technical cooperation programs. See section 2171 of this title.

Section 1557d, act June 5, 1950, ch. 220, title IV, § 406, 64 Stat. 206, related to registration of agreements with Secretariat of the United Nations.

Section 1557e, acts June 5, 1950, ch. 220, title IV, § 407, 64 Stat. 206; Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, § 528(b), 65 Stat. 386, related to programs.

Section 1557f, act June 5, 1950, ch. 220, title IV, § 408, 64 Stat. 206, related to rules and regulations. See section 2381 of this title.

Section 1557g, act June 5, 1950, ch. 220, title IV, § 409, 64 Stat. 206, related to advisory board; creation; duties; composition; compensation; and appointment of special committees.

Section 1557h, act June 5, 1950, ch. 220, title IV, § 410, 64 Stat. 207, related to joint commission for economic development; appointment and compensation; duties; preparation of reports and studies; recommendations, and costs.

Section 1557i, act June 5, 1950, ch. 220, title IV, § 411, 64 Stat. 207, related to termination of assistance. See section 2367 of this title.

Section 1557j, act June 5, 1950, ch. 220, title IV, § 412, 64 Stat. 207, related to delegation of authority by President. See section 2381 of this title.

Section 1557k, acts June 5, 1950, ch. 220, title IV, § 413, 64 Stat. 207; June 20, 1952, ch. 449, § 10(b), 66 Stat. 150, related to employment of personnel. See sections 2385 to 2388 of this title.

## REPEAL OF APPROPRIATIONS

Act Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, § 544, as added by act July 16, 1953, ch. 195, ch. VI, § 602, 67 Stat. 155, which authorized appropriations for fiscal year 1954, was repealed by act Aug. 26, 1954, § 542(a)(9), (11).

**§ 1557l. Repealed. Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, § 528(c), 65 Stat. 386**

Section, act June 5, 1950, ch. 220, title IV, § 414, 64 Stat. 208, related to personnel investigations by the Federal Bureau of Investigation.

**§§ 1557m to 1557o. Repealed. Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title V, § 542(a)(6), 68 Stat. 861**

Section 1557m, act June 5, 1950, ch. 220, title IV, § 415, 64 Stat. 208, required the President to submit an annual report to Congress. See section 2394 of this title.

Section 1557n, act June 5, 1950, ch. 220, title IV, § 416, 64 Stat. 208, related to authorization for appropriations; original appropriation; and express or implied commitments. See section 2404 of this title.

Section 1557o, act June 5, 1950, ch. 220, title IV, § 418, 64 Stat. 209, defined the terms “technical cooperation programs,” “United States Government agency” and “international organization.” See section 2403 of this title.

## SUBCHAPTER VII—ASSISTANCE TO YUGOSLAVIA

**§§ 1558 to 1558h. Repealed. Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title V, § 542(a)(8), 68 Stat. 861**

Sections 1558 to 1558c, act Dec. 29, 1950, ch. 1182, §§ 2–5, 64 Stat. 1122, 1123, related to amount of funds available; agreement; terms; utilization of available funds; and nonendorsement of internal measures of Yugoslavian Government.

Section 1558d, act Dec. 29, 1950, ch. 1182, § 6, 64 Stat. 1123, required the Secretary of State to make quarterly reports to Congress. See section 2394 of this title.

Sections 1558e to 1558g, act Dec. 29, 1950, ch. 1182, §§ 7–9, 64 Stat. 1123, 1124, related to transfer of available funds to Federal departments or agencies; local currency made available to United States; and shipping regulations. See sections 2353 and 2360 of this title.

Section 1558h, act Dec. 29, 1950, ch. 1182, § 10, 64 Stat. 1124, related to termination of assistance. See section 2367 of this title.

## CHAPTER 20—MUTUAL DEFENSE ASSISTANCE PROGRAM

## SUBCHAPTER I—GENERAL PROVISIONS

**§§ 1571 to 1584. Repealed. Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title V, § 542(a)(5), (9)–(11), 68 Stat. 861**

Section 1571, act Oct. 6, 1949, ch. 626, § 1, 63 Stat. 714, related to Congressional declaration of findings and policy.

Section 1572, act Oct. 6, 1949, ch. 626, title IV, §401, 63 Stat. 716, related to furnishing of military assistance without payment and limitation. See section 2355 of this title.

Section 1573, act Oct. 6, 1949, ch. 626, title IV, §402, 63 Stat. 717, related to agreements with other nations prior to furnishing aid and provisions thereof.

Section 1574, acts Oct. 6, 1949, ch. 626, title IV, §403, 63 Stat. 717; July 26, 1950, ch. 491, §§9, 10, 64 Stat. 375; Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §526, 65 Stat. 385; June 20, 1952, ch. 449, §8(a), 66 Stat. 148; July 16, 1953, ch. 195, ch. VII, §707(a), 67 Stat. 160, related to funds.

Section 1575, acts Oct. 6, 1949, ch. 626, title IV, §404, 63 Stat. 718; July 26, 1950, ch. 491, §11, 64 Stat. 376, related to delegation of President's powers. See section 2381 of this title.

Section 1576, acts Oct. 6, 1949, ch. 626, title IV, §405, 63 Stat. 718; July 26, 1950, ch. 491, §13, 64 Stat. 377, related to termination of assistance. See section 2367 of this title.

Section 1577, act Oct. 6, 1949, ch. 626, title IV, §406, 63 Stat. 718, related to personnel.

Section 1578, act Oct. 6, 1949, ch. 626, title IV, §407, 63 Stat. 719, related to unaffected laws and performance of functions by President.

Section 1579, acts Oct. 6, 1949, ch. 626, title IV, §408(a)–(d), 63 Stat. 719; July 26, 1950, ch. 491, §12(b), 64 Stat. 376; Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, §101(a)(1), 65 Stat. 374, related to operational funds.

Section 1580, acts Oct. 6, 1949, ch. 626, title IV, §408(e), (f), 63 Stat. 720; July 26, 1950, ch. 491, §12(c), 64 Stat. 376; Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §525, 65 Stat. 385; June 20, 1952, ch. 449, §8(b), 66 Stat. 149; July 16, 1953, ch. 195, ch. VII, §707(b), (c), 67 Stat. 160, related to transfer of equipment, materials, or services to designated nations; reimbursement of "fair value" of goods to United States; limitation on outstanding contracts; and transfers disallowed.

Section 1581, act Oct. 6, 1949, ch. 626, title IV, §409, 63 Stat. 720, related to transportation of equipment, etc., on United States flag vessels; rates. See section 2353 of this title.

Section 1582, act Oct. 6, 1949, ch. 626, title IV, §410, 63 Stat. 720, required President to submit reports to Congress. See section 2353 of this title.

Section 1583, acts Oct. 6, 1949, ch. 626, title IV, §411, 63 Stat. 720; July 16, 1953, ch. 195, title VII, §707(d), 67 Stat. 161, defined "equipment" and "materials", "mobilization reserve", "excess", "services", "agency", "Armed Forces of the United States", and "nation". See section 2403 of this title.

Section 1584, act Oct. 6, 1949, ch. 626, title IV, §412, 63 Stat. 721, prescribed penalties for accepting commissions, etc., for procurement services by United States officers and employees.

#### § 1585. Omitted

##### CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as a part of the Supplemental Appropriation Act, 1951, act Sept. 27, 1950, ch. 1052, ch. X, §100, 64 Stat. 1063, and was not repeated in subsequent appropriation acts.

#### SUBCHAPTER II—NORTH ATLANTIC TREATY NATIONS

#### §§ 1591 to 1594. Repealed. Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title V, § 542(a)(5), 68 Stat. 861

Section 1591, acts Oct. 6, 1949, ch. 626, title I, §101, 63 Stat. 715; July 26, 1950, ch. 491, §1, 64 Stat. 373, related to form of assistance and agreements concerning use.

Section 1592, acts Oct. 6, 1949, ch. 626, title I, §102, 63 Stat. 715; July 26, 1950, ch. 491, §2, 64 Stat. 374, related to appropriations.

Section 1593, act Oct. 6, 1949, ch. 626, title I, §103, 63 Stat. 715, related to additional contract authorizations.

Section 1594, acts Oct. 6, 1949, ch. 626, title I, §104, 63 Stat. 715; July 26, 1950, ch. 491, §3, 64 Stat. 374, related to limitation on use of funds.

See section 2151 et seq. of this title.

#### SUBCHAPTER III—OTHER NATIONS

#### §§ 1601 to 1604. Repealed. Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title V, § 542(a)(5), 68 Stat. 861

Section 1601, acts Oct. 6, 1949, ch. 626, title II, §201, 63 Stat. 716; July 26, 1950, ch. 491, §5, 64 Stat. 375, related to appropriations for Greece, Turkey, and Iran.

Section 1602, act Oct. 6, 1949, ch. 626, title III, §301, 63 Stat. 716; July 26, 1950, ch. 491, §6, 64 Stat. 375, related to military assistance to Republics of Korea and Philippines.

Section 1603, acts Oct. 6, 1949, ch. 626, title III, §302, 63 Stat. 716; July 26, 1950, ch. 491, §7, 64 Stat. 375, related to appropriations for military assistance to Republics of Korea and Philippines.

Section 1604, acts Oct. 6, 1949, ch. 626, title III, §303, 63 Stat. 716; July 26, 1950, ch. 491, §8, 64 Stat. 375, related to appropriations for general area of China.

See section 2151 et seq. of this title.

#### CHAPTER 20A—MUTUAL DEFENSE ASSISTANCE CONTROL PROGRAM

##### SUBCHAPTER I—WAR MATERIALS

#### §§ 1611 to 1611d. Omitted

##### CODIFICATION

Sections, act Oct. 26, 1951, ch. 575, title I, §§101–105, 65 Stat. 645; H. Res. 163, Mar. 19, 1975, were superseded, effective October 1, 1979, by section 2416(e) of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense. See section 2401 et seq. of Title 50, Appendix.

Section 1611 set forth the Congressional declaration of policy.

Section 1611a related to responsibility for administration.

Section 1611b related to determinations respecting items to be embargoed.

Section 1611c related to resumption of assistance upon determination of compliance by the President.

Section 1611d defined "assistance" for purposes of this chapter.

##### SHORT TITLE

Act Oct. 26, 1951, ch. 575, §1, 65 Stat. 645, which provided that this chapter be cited as the "Mutual Defense Assistance Control Act of 1951", was superseded, effective October 1, 1979, by section 2416(e) of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense.

##### SUBCHAPTER II—OTHER MATERIALS

#### §§ 1612 to 1612b. Omitted

##### CODIFICATION

Sections, act Oct. 26, 1951, ch. 575, title II, §§201–203, 65 Stat. 646, were superseded, effective October 1, 1979, by section 2416(e) of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense. See section 2401 et seq. of Title 50, Appendix.

Section 1612 related to regulation of exports other than war materials.

Section 1612a related to negotiations with recipient countries for control of exports.

Section 1612b related to termination of assistance upon determination by the President.

##### SUBCHAPTER III—GENERAL PROVISIONS

#### §§ 1613 to 1613d. Omitted

##### CODIFICATION

Sections, acts Oct. 26, 1951, ch. 575, title III, §§301–305, 65 Stat. 647; Sept. 4, 1961, Pub. L. 87–195, pt. IV, §703(a), 75 Stat. 463; Oct. 19, 1980, Pub. L. 96–470, title I, §111(a),

94 Stat. 2239, were superseded, effective October 1, 1979, by section 2416(e) of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense. See section 2401 et seq. of Title 50, Appendix.

Section 1613 set forth provisions relating to cooperation in the program by non-recipient countries.

Section 1613a related to duties of the Administrator with respect to this chapter.

Section 1613b related to applicability of other Federal statutory provisions and to availability of funds.

Section 1613c related to charging expenses to local-currency funds.

Section 1613d authorized appropriations necessary to carry out the objectives of this chapter.

**CHAPTER 21—SETTLEMENT OF INTERNATIONAL CLAIMS**  
**SUBCHAPTER I—GENERAL PROVISIONS**

- Sec. 1621. Definitions.
- 1622. Establishment of Commission.
  - (a), (b) Repealed.
  - (c) Rules and regulations; termination date; removal of personnel; reports.
- 1622a. Transfer of Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States to Department of Justice.
- 1622b. Transfer of functions, powers, and duties of Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States.
- 1622c. Membership of Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States.
  - (a) Composition of Commission; appointment and compensation of Chairman.
  - (b) Appointment and compensation of members other than Chairman.
  - (c) Terms of office.
  - (d) Continuation in office of existing members.
- 1622d. Appointment and compensation of officers and employees of Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States; allowances and benefits; utilization of other Federal facilities.
- 1622e. Vesting of all non-adjudicatory functions, powers, and duties in Chairman of Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States.
- 1622f. Administrative support and services to Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States by Attorney General.
- 1622g. Independence of Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States; finality of Commission decisions.
- 1623. Claims.
  - (a) Jurisdiction of Commission; bases for determination; fair market value.
  - (b) Notice of filing time; publication; basis of decisions; finality of decision.
  - (c) Administration of oaths; examination of witnesses; subpoenas; reporting of hearings; witness fees; contempt.
  - (d) Depositions.
  - (e) Penalties.
  - (f) Attorney's fees; limitation.
  - (g) Representation by United States; payments.
  - (h) Notification of disposition of claims; right to hearing; finality of Commission's decision.
  - (i) Separation of awards.
  - (j) Compliance with administrative procedure law.
  - (k) Compliance with principles of international law, justice and equity; fair market value.

- Sec. 1624. Certification of awards; certification of claims.
- 1625. Omitted.
- 1626. Payments.
  - (a) Principal and interest; regulations.
  - (b) Deductions; coverage into Treasury; reimbursement for expenses.
  - (c) To whom made; exceptions.
  - (d) Erroneous payments as bar to further recovery.
  - (e) Acquiescence in conditions of subchapter.
  - (f) Non-assumption of liability by United States on claims against foreign governments.
- 1627. Creation of special funds in Treasury.
  - (a) Credits to, and payment from funds.
  - (b) Credits to Yugoslav Claims Fund; credits to other funds.
  - (c) Payment of awards.
  - (d) Payment of balance to Yugoslav Government; certification of adjudication costs; finality of certification.
  - (e) Payments; priorities.
  - (f) People's Republic of China; claim payment priorities.
  - (g) Authority to invest and recover expenses from funds.

**SUBCHAPTER II—VESTING AND LIQUIDATION OF BULGARIAN, HUNGARIAN, AND RUMANIAN PROPERTY**

- 1631. Definitions.
- 1631a. Property owned by Bulgaria, Hungary, and Rumania or any national thereof.
  - (a) Vesting of property; liquidation; disposition of net proceeds.
  - (b) Net proceeds of property vested in Alien Property Custodian or Attorney General.
  - (c) Determination of ownership by natural person of vested property.
  - (d) Furnishing of information; production of books and records.
- 1631b. Cancellation and issuance of shares of stock or other beneficial interest in corporation.
- 1631c. Filing of order of conveyance.
- 1631d. Acquittance and discharge of obligation.
- 1631e. Rules by district courts; appeals.
- 1631f. Claims to vested property.
  - (a) Action for return of property; jurisdiction; complaint; custody of property until final determination.
  - (b) Notice of claim; review of denial.
  - (c) Exclusiveness of relief.
  - (d) Recovery for conservation, preservation or maintenance of property.
- 1631g. Payment of debts.
  - (a) Claims allowable; defenses.
  - (b) Time limit for filing claims; extension; notice.
  - (c) Examination of claims; finality of determination.
  - (d) Fund for debt payments.
  - (e) Amount payable; disallowance; notice; review; additional evidence; judgment.
  - (f) Schedule of debt claims allowed; notice; review; additional evidence; intervention; judgment.
  - (g) Priority of claims.
  - (h) Priority as debt due United States.
  - (i) Exclusiveness of relief.
- 1631h. Hearings on claims; rules and regulations; delegation of powers.
- 1631i. Limitations.
- 1631j. Fees of agents, attorneys, or representatives.
- 1631k. Taxes.
  - (a) Liability.

|        |   |        |  |
|--------|---|--------|--|
| Sec.   |   | Sec.   |  |
| 1631l. | (b) Payment by designee; liability of former owner; enforcement of tax liability; transfer of property. | 1641q. | Applicability of administrative provisions of subchapter I.  |
| 1631m. | (c) Computation; suspension of limitations.   |        | SUBCHAPTER IV—CLAIMS AGAINST CZECHOSLOVAKIA  |
| 1631n. | (d) "Tax" defined.  | 1642.  | Definitions.   |
| 1631o. | Determination of expenses and time for filing suit, notice of claim and debt claim.                     | 1642a. | Financial provisions.  |
| 1631p. | Lien, attachment, garnishment, etc., of transferred property.   |        | (a) Deposit of proceeds of certain property.   |
| 1631q. | Penalties.  |        | (b) Creation of Czechoslovakian Claims Fund.   |
| 1631r. | Eligibility for return of interest in property.   |        | (c) Voluntary settlement and payment of claims of nationals of the United States.                                |
|        | (a) Persons eligible; determination; prerequisites.   |        | (d) Deposit of net proceeds into Fund.   |
|        | (b) Notice of claim; time of claim; fund for payment.   |        | (e) Deductions for expenses.   |
|        | (c) Finality of determination.  |        | (f) Disposition of balance of Fund.  |
|        | SUBCHAPTER III—CLAIMS AGAINST BULGARIA, HUNGARY, RUMANIA, ITALY, AND THE SOVIET UNION                   | 1642b. | Claims against United States; jurisdiction; limitation; preference; reserve fund.                                |
| 1641.  | Definitions.  | 1642c. | Determination of validity and amount of claims.  |
| 1641a. | Claims funds.   | 1642d. | Nationality requirements.  |
|        | (a) Establishment; coverage into Treasury; deduction.   | 1642e. | Claims based on ownership interest in corporations or other legal entities.                                      |
|        | (b) Bulgarian and Rumanian fund.  |        | (a) Nationals of United States.  |
|        | (c) Hungarian fund.   |        | (b) Direct ownership.  |
| 1641b. | Claims of nationals of the United States against Bulgaria, Hungary, and Rumania.                        |        | (c) Indirect ownership.  |
| 1641c. | Claims of nationals of the United States against Italy.   |        | (d) Computation of award.  |
|        | (a) Claims not provided for in peace treaty.  | 1642f. | Prevention of double benefits.   |
|        | (b) Individuals who fail to file claims.  | 1642g. | Consolidated awards.   |
|        | (c) Territory ceded by Italy.   | 1642h. | Prohibition against payment of award to certain persons.   |
|        | (d) Time within which to file; publication in Federal Register.   | 1642i. | Certification of awards.   |
|        | (e) Certification of awards.  | 1642j. | Time for filing of claims; notice.   |
|        | (f) Transfers from Italian Claims Fund to War Claims Fund.  | 1642k. | Time limitation on completion of affairs of Commission.  |
| 1641d. | Claims of nationals of the United States against the Soviet Union.                                      | 1642l. | Payment of awards.   |
|        | (a) Claims prior to November 16, 1933.  |        | (a) Manner of payment.   |
|        | (b) Federal and State court judgments.  |        | (b) Regulations.   |
|        | (c) Preferences.  |        | (c) "Award" defined.   |
| 1641e. | Filing of claims; notice in Federal Register.   |        | (d) Payment of interest of deceased persons or persons under legal disability.                                   |
|        | (a) Time period.  |        | (e) Partial payments.  |
|        | (b) Property taken in Bulgaria and Rumania.   | 1642m. | Fees of attorneys; limitation; penalty.  |
|        | (c) Property taken in Hungary.  | 1642n. | Transfer of records.   |
|        | (d) Failure to receive notice on Hungarian claims.  | 1642o. | Applicability of administrative provisions of subchapter I.  |
| 1641f. | Amount of award.  | 1642p. | Authorization of appropriations.   |
| 1641g. | Certification of awards.  |        | SUBCHAPTER V—CLAIMS AGAINST CUBA AND CHINA   |
| 1641h. | Funds for payment of claims.  | 1643.  | Congressional declaration of purpose.  |
| 1641i. | Payment of awards.  | 1643a. | Definitions.   |
|        | (a) Manner of payment.  | 1643b. | Receipt of claims; determination of amount and validity.   |
|        | (b) Regulations.  |        | (a) Claims for property loss.  |
|        | (c) "Award" defined.  |        | (b) Claims for disability or death.  |
|        | (d) Consolidated award.   | 1643c. | Ownership of claims by nationals.  |
| 1641j. | Claims by corporations or other legal entities.   |        | (a) Requirements for consideration of claims for property loss.  |
| 1641k. | Prohibition against payment of award to collaborators or disloyal persons.                              |        | (b) Requirements for consideration of claims for disability or death.  |
| 1641l. | Unpaid balance of claim; claims of United States unaffected.  | 1643d. | Claims based on ownership interest in or debt or other obligation owing by corporations or other legal entities. |
| 1641m. | Finality of action of Commission.   |        | (a) Nationals of the United States; charge on property.  |
| 1641n. | Appropriations.   |        | (b) Direct ownership.  |
| 1641o. | Time limitation on completion of affairs of Commission.   |        | (c) Indirect ownership.  |
|        | (a) Claims against Russian nationals.   |        | (d) Computation of award.  |
|        | (b) Property taken in Bulgaria and Rumania; claims against Italy.                                       | 1643e. | Offsets.   |
|        | (c) Property taken in Hungary.  | 1643f. | Action of Commission with respect to claims.   |
| 1641p. | Fees of agents, attorneys, or representatives.  |        | (a) Certification of amounts.  |
|        | (a) Maximum remuneration; penalty for violation.  |        | (b) Limitation on amount of claims of assignees.   |
|        | (b) Petition for payment in excess of maximum; determination by Commission not subject to review.       | 1643g. | Transfer of records.   |
|        |   | 1643h. | Applicability of administrative provisions of subchapter I.  |

- Sec.  
1643i. Time limitation on completion of affairs of Commission.  
1643j. Authorization of appropriations.  
1643k. Fees for services; limitation; penalty.

SUBCHAPTER VI—CLAIMS AGAINST GERMAN DEMOCRATIC REPUBLIC

1644. Congressional declaration of purpose.  
1644a. Definitions.  
1644b. Receipt and determination of claims; notice by publication in Federal Register.  
1644c. Ownership of claims by nationals.  
1644d. Claims based on ownership interest in or debt or other obligation owing by corporations or other legal entities.  
(a) Nationals of the United States; charge on property.  
(b) Direct ownership.  
(c) Indirect ownership.  
(d) Computation of award.  
1644e. Offsets.  
1644f. Consolidated awards.  
1644g. Claims Fund; establishment; deductions.  
1644h. Certification of amounts; priority of payments.  
1644i. Time limitation on completion of affairs of Commission.  
1644j. Transfer of records.  
1644k. Authorization of appropriations.  
1644l. Fees for services; limitation; penalty.  
1644m. Applicability of administrative provisions of subchapter I.

SUBCHAPTER VII—CLAIMS AGAINST VIETNAM

1645. Congressional declaration of purpose.  
1645a. Definitions.  
1645b. Receipt and determination of claims; notice by publication in Federal Register.  
1645c. Ownership of claims by nationals.  
1645d. Claims based on ownership interest in or debt or other obligation owing by corporations or other legal entities.  
(a) Nationals of United States; charge on property.  
(b) Direct ownership.  
(c) Indirect ownership.  
(d) Computation of award.  
1645e. Offsets.  
1645f. Certifications; assigned claims.  
1645g. Consolidated awards.  
1645h. Claims Fund; establishment; deductions.  
1645i. Award payment procedures.  
(a) Certification of amounts.  
(b) Priority of payments.  
(c) Regulations.  
1645j. Settlement period.  
1645k. Transfer of records.  
1645l. Authorization of appropriations.  
1645m. Fees for services; limitation; penalty.  
1645n. Applicability of other statutory provisions.  
1645o. Separability.

CHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This chapter is referred to in sections 1622b, 1622g of this title.

SUBCHAPTER I—GENERAL PROVISIONS

AMENDMENTS

1955—Sections 1621 to 1627 of this title which constituted the International Claims Settlement Act of 1949 were designated title I of such Act, herein referred to as subchapter I, for purposes of codification, by act Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, § 1, 69 Stat. 562.

SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in sections 1641q, 1642o, 1643h, 1644m, 1645n of this title; title 50 App. section 2017n.

§ 1621. Definitions

For the purposes of this subchapter—

(a) The term “person” shall include an individual, partnership, corporation, or the Government of the United States.

(b) The term “United States” when used in a geographical sense shall include the United States, its Territories and insular possessions, and the Canal Zone.

(c) The term “nationals of the United States” includes (1) persons who are citizens of the United States, and (2) persons who, though not citizens of the United States, owe permanent allegiance to the United States. It does not include aliens.

(d) The term “Yugoslav Claims Agreement of 1948” means the agreement between the Governments of the United States of America and of the Federal People’s Republic of Yugoslavia regarding pecuniary claims of the United States and its nationals, signed July 19, 1948.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title I, § 2, 64 Stat. 13; Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, §§ 1, 2, 69 Stat. 562.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

For definition of Canal Zone, referred to in subsec. (b), see section 3602(b) of this title.

AMENDMENTS

1955—Act Aug. 9, 1955, § 1, amended credit to section by designating act Mar. 10, 1950, as “title I”.

Act Aug. 9, 1955, § 2, substituted “subchapter” for “chapter” in opening phrase.

SHORT TITLE

Section 1 of act Mar. 10, 1950, provided that: “This Act [enacting this chapter] may be cited as the ‘International Claims Settlement Act of 1949.’”

TITLES OF ACT

Sections 1 and 3 of act Aug. 9, 1955, designated sections 1621 to 1627 of this title as “Title I” of act Mar. 10, 1950, which is classified to subchapter I of this chapter and added “Title II—Vesting and Liquidation of Bulgarian, Hungarian, and Rumanian Property” and “Title III—Claims Against Bulgaria, Hungary, Rumania, Italy, and the Soviet Union”, which are classified to subchapters II and III, respectively, of this chapter. Pub. L. 85-604 added Title IV, Claims Against Czechoslovakia, which is classified to subchapter IV of this chapter. Pub. L. 88-666 added Title V, Claims Against Cuba and China, which is classified to subchapter V of this chapter. Pub. L. 94-542 added Title VI, Claims Against German Democratic Republic, which is classified to subchapter VI of this chapter. Pub. L. 96-606 added Title VII, Claims Against Vietnam, which is classified to subchapter VII of this chapter.

ABOLITION OF INTERNATIONAL CLAIMS COMMISSION AND TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

International Claims Commission of the United States, including offices of its members, abolished and functions of Commission and of members, officers, and employees thereof transferred to Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States by Reorg. Plan No. 1 of 1954, §§ 2, 4, eff. July 1, 1954, 19 F.R. 3985, 68 Stat. 1279, set out as a note under section 1622 of this title.

APPROPRIATIONS

Section 9 of act Mar. 10, 1950, provided that: “There is hereby authorized to be appropriated, out of any money in the Treasury not otherwise appropriated, such sums as may be necessary to enable the Commis-

sion to carry out its functions under this Act [enacting this chapter].”

### § 1622. Establishment of Commission

(a), (b) Repealed. Pub. L. 89-554, §8(a), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 656

(c) Rules and regulations; termination date; removal of personnel; reports

The Commission may prescribe such rules and regulations as may be necessary to enable it to carry out its functions, and may delegate functions to any member, officer, or employee of the Commission. The President may fix a termination date for the authority of the Commission, and the terms of office of its members under this subchapter. Any member of the Commission may be removed by the Secretary of State, upon notice and hearing, for neglect of duty, or malfeasance in office, but for no other cause. Not later than six months after its organization, and every six months thereafter, the Commission shall make a report, through the Secretary of State, to the Congress concerning its operations under this subchapter. The Commission shall, upon completion of its work, certify in duplicate to the Secretary of State and to the Secretary of the Treasury the following: (1) A list of all claims disallowed; (2) a list of all claims allowed, in whole or in part, together with the amount of each claim and the amount awarded thereon; and (3) a copy of the decision rendered in each case.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title I, §3, 64 Stat. 13; Aug. 8, 1953, ch. 396, §3, 67 Stat. 506; 1954 Reorg. Plan No. 1, §§1, 2, 4, eff. July 1, 1954, 19 F.R. 3985, 68 Stat. 1279; Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, §§1, 2, 69 Stat. 562; Sept. 6, 1966, Pub. L. 89-554, §8(a), 80 Stat. 656, 657.)

#### ANNUAL SUBMISSION OF REPORT

*Pub. L. 89-348, §2(7), Nov. 8, 1965, 79 Stat. 1312, modified subsection (c) of this section to require annual submission instead of semi-annual submission to the Congress by the Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of its report concerning its operations under the International Claims Settlement Act of 1949.*

#### AMENDMENTS

1966—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 89-554 repealed subsec. (a) which related to the composition, appointment, chairman, quorum, and acting members of the Commission.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 89-554 repealed subsec. (b) which provided for the principal office of the Commission, and for the appointment and compensation of personnel.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 89-554 repealed subsec. (d) which related to a limitation on additional appointments to the Commission.

1955—Act Aug. 9, 1955, §1, amended credit to section by designating act Mar. 10, 1950, as “title I”.

Subsec. (c). Act Aug. 9, 1955, §2, substituted “subchapter” for “chapter”.

1953—Act Aug. 8, 1953, added par. at end which was editorially designated as subsec. (d).

#### ABOLITION OF INTERNATIONAL CLAIMS COMMISSION

International Claims Commission of the United States abolished by Reorg. Plan No. 1 of 1954, §4(a), eff. July 1, 1954, 19 F.R. 3985, 68 Stat. 1279, set out as a note below.

#### ABOLITION OF FUNCTIONS OF SECRETARY OF STATE

The functions of the Secretary of State under the third and fourth sentences of subsec. (c) of this section

were abolished by Reorg. Plan No. 1 of 1954, §4(b), eff. July 1, 1954, 19 F.R. 3985, 68 Stat. 1279, set out as a note below.

#### REORGANIZATION PLAN NO. 1 OF 1954

Eff. July 1, 1954, 19 F.R. 3985, 68 Stat. 1279

Prepared by the President and transmitted to the Senate and the House of Representatives in Congress assembled, April 29, 1954, pursuant to the provisions of the Reorganization Act of 1949, approved June 20, 1949, as amended [see 5 U.S.C. 901 et seq.].

#### FOREIGN CLAIMS SETTLEMENT COMMISSION OF THE UNITED STATES

##### SECTION 1. ESTABLISHMENT OF COMMISSION

There is hereby established the Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States, hereinafter referred to as the Commission. The Commission shall be composed of three members, who shall each be appointed by the President by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, hold office during the pleasure of the President, and receive compensation at the rate of \$15,000 per annum. The President shall from time to time designate one of the members of the Commission as the Chairman of the Commission, hereinafter referred to as the Chairman. Two members of the Commission shall constitute a quorum for the transaction of the business of the Commission.

##### SEC. 2. TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

(a) All functions of the War Claims Commission and of the members, officers, and employees thereof are hereby transferred to the Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States.

(b) All functions of the International Claims Commission of the United States (hereinafter referred to as the International Claims Commission) and the members, officers, and employees thereof are hereby transferred to the Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States.

(c) The functions of the Secretary of State and of the Department of State with respect to the International Claims Commission and its affairs, exclusive of the functions of the said Secretary and Department under sections 3(c), 4(b), and 5, and the first sentence of section 8(d), of the International Claims Settlement Act of 1949, 64 Stat. 12, as amended [22 U.S.C. 1622(c), 1623(b), 1624, and 1627(d)], are hereby transferred to the Commission.

(d) The functions of the Commissioner provided for in the Joint Resolution approved August 4, 1939, ch. 421, 53 Stat. 1199, together with the functions of the Secretary of State under section 2 thereof, are hereby transferred to the Commission.

##### SEC. 3. CERTAIN FUNCTIONS OF CHAIRMAN

There are hereby vested in the Chairman all functions of the Commission with respect to the internal management of the affairs of the Commission, including but not limited to functions with respect to: (a) the appointment of personnel employed under the Commission, (b) the direction of employees of the Commission and the supervision of their official activities, (c) the distribution of business among employees and organizational units under the Commission, (d) the preparation of budget estimates, and (e) the use and expenditure of funds of the Commission available for expenses of administration.

##### SEC. 4. ABOLITIONS

(a) The War Claims Commission provided for in the War Claims Act of 1948, 62, Stat. 1240, as amended [50 App. U.S.C. 2001 et seq.] and the International Claims Commission, provided for in the International Claims Settlement Act of 1949, as amended [22 U.S.C. 1621-1627], including the offices of the members of each of the said commissions, and the office of Commissioner provided

for in the aforesaid Joint Resolution of August 4, 1939, are hereby abolished.

(b) The functions of the Secretary of State under the third and fourth sentences of section 3(c) of the International Claims Settlement Act of 1949, as amended [22 U.S.C. 1622(c)], are hereby abolished.

#### SEC. 5. AUTHORIZATION TO DELEGATE

The Commission is hereby authorized to delegate any of its functions to one or more persons designated by the Commission from among the members of the Commission and the officers and employees serving under the Commission.

#### SEC. 6. TRANSITIONAL PROVISIONS

(a) Any person who is a member or acting member of the War Claims Commission or of the International Claims Commission immediately prior to the taking effect of the provisions of this reorganization plan may be designated by the President as an acting member of the Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States in respect of an office of member the initial appointment to which has not then been made under section 1 of this reorganization plan. Each such acting member of the said Foreign Claims Settlement Commission shall perform the duties and receive the compensation of member. Unless sooner terminated, the tenure of any acting member designated hereunder shall terminate when the office of member concerned is filled in pursuance of section 1 hereof, or 120 days after the effective date of this reorganization plan, whichever is earlier.

(b) The Chairman shall make such provisions as may be necessary with respect to winding up any affairs of the agencies abolished by the provisions of this reorganization plan not otherwise provided for herein.

(c) So much of the personnel, property, records, and unexpended balances of appropriations, allocations, and other funds employed, held, used, available, or to be made available, in connection with the functions transferred by section 2 of this reorganization plan as the Director of the Bureau of the Budget shall determine shall be transferred to the Commission at such time or times as the said Director shall direct.

(d) Such further measures and dispositions as the Director of the Bureau of the Budget shall deem to be necessary in order to effectuate the transfers provided for in subsection (c) of this section shall be carried out in such manner as he shall direct and by such agencies as he shall designate.

#### SEC. 7. EFFECTIVE DATE

The provisions of this reorganization plan shall take effect on the date determined under section 6(a) of the Reorganization Act of 1949, as amended or the first day of July, 1954, whichever is later.

[For provisions transferring the Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States as a separate agency within the Department of Justice, see 22 U.S.C. 1622a et seq.]

#### MESSAGE OF THE PRESIDENT

To the Congress of the United States:

I transmit herewith Reorganization Plan No. 1 of 1954, prepared in accordance with the Reorganization Act of 1949, as amended.

The reorganization plan establishes a new Government agency, the Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States; transfers to that Commission the functions of the War Claims Commission and of the International Claims Commission of the United States; and abolishes the latter two Commissions.

The Foreign Claims Settlement Commission will be composed of three members appointed by the President by and with the advice and consent of the Senate. The President will designate one of the members as Chairman of the Commission. The Chairman will be responsible for the internal management of the affairs of the Commission. The reorganization plan contains provi-

sions designed to assure smooth administration of functions during the period of transition to the new organization.

The War Claims Commission was created as a temporary agency by the War Claims Act of 1948. The Commission was made responsible for settling certain claims of former United States World War II prisoners of war, civilian internees captured or in hiding to avoid capture in the Philippines, Guam, Wake Island, and the Midway Islands, and certain religious organizations in the Philippines which had aided American forces during the war. In 1952, the Commission was assigned, additionally, the administration of claims of Philippine religious organizations which sustained losses of their educational, medical, and welfare facilities in the war, and of benefits to United States prisoners of war for inhumane treatment during internment by the enemy.

From its inception in 1949 to April 1, 1954, approximately 500,000 claims were filed with the War Claims Commission, and approximately \$134 million was paid to claimants. Approximately 96,000 remaining claims are in the process of settlement, and the Commission must complete action on them, together with such appeals as may be filed, by March 31, 1955.

The International Claims Commission was established within the Department of State by the International Claims Settlement Act of 1949. Its immediate function was to adjudicate claims covered by a settlement of \$17 million which was deposited with the Government of the United States by the Yugoslav Government primarily to compensate our nationals for losses sustained through nationalization of properties. The act also authorized the Commission to settle such claims as might be included later in any similar agreement between the United States and a foreign government. Subsequently, the Commission was assigned the administration of a \$400,000 settlement negotiated with the Government of Panama.

From its establishment in 1950 to April 1, 1954, the International Claims Commission has settled 531 claims out of a total of 1,622 filed. Of this total, 1,555 claims were against Yugoslavia and 67 were against Panama. Under the act, settlement of the remaining Yugoslav claims must be completed by December 31, 1954.

The accompanying reorganization plan has substantial potential advantages. The Foreign Claims Settlement Commission will be able to administer any additional claims programs financed by funds derived from foreign governments without the delay which has often characterized the initiation of past programs. Moreover, the use of an existing agency will be more economical than the establishment of a new commission to administer a given type of foreign claims program. Consolidation of the affairs of the two present Commissions will also permit the retention and use of the best experience gained during the last several years in the field of claims settlement. The declining workload of current programs can be meshed with the rising workload of new programs with maximum efficiency and effectiveness.

A proposed new claims program now pending before the Senate would provide benefits similar to those paid to World War II victims under the War Claims Act for losses and internments resulting from hostilities in Korea. The executive branch of the Government has recommended approval of this program by the Congress. I now suggest that this program be assigned by law to the Foreign Claims Settlement Commission.

There should also be assigned to this new Commission the settlement of such of the claims programs as may be authorized from among those recommended by the War Claims Commission in its report made pursuant to section 8 of the War Claims Act. That report, posing many complex policy, legal, and administrative problems, is now being reviewed by executive agencies; and recommendations will soon be sent to the Congress.

By peace treaties and an international agreement, the United States has acquired the right to utilize cer-



tain external assets and settlement funds of several countries. A total of about \$39 million is available to indemnify claims of United States nationals against the Governments of Rumania, Hungary, Bulgaria, and Italy, arising out of war damage or confiscations in those countries. In addition, claims growing out of United States losses from default on obligations and nationalization of properties may be settled by awards from \$9 million realized from an agreement made in 1933 with the Soviet Union, known as the Litvinov assignment. Action by the Congress is necessary before these various funds may be assigned for settlement, and recommendations of the executive branch in this connection will be transmitted at an early date.

In addition to the reorganizations I have described, the reorganization plan transfers to the Foreign Claims Settlement Commission the functions of the Commissioner provided for in the joint resolution of August 4, 1939. These functions involve the receipt and administration of claims covered by the Litvinov assignment. The office of Commissioner, for which funds have never been appropriated and which has never been filled, is abolished.

The reorganization plan does not transfer the war claims fund or the Yugoslav claims fund from the Department of the Treasury, or divest the Secretary of the Treasury of any functions under the War Claims Act of 1948, as amended, or under the International Claims Settlement Act of 1949, as amended. It does not limit the responsibility of the Secretary of State with respect to the conduct of foreign affairs. The reorganizations contained in the reorganization plan will not prejudice any interest or potential interest of any claimant.

After investigation, I have found and hereby declare that each reorganization included in the accompanying reorganization plan is necessary to accomplish one or more of the purposes set forth in section 2(a) of the Reorganization Act of 1949, as amended. I have also found and hereby declare that it is necessary to include in the accompanying reorganization plan, by reason of reorganizations made thereby, provisions for the appointment and compensation of officers specified in section 1 of the plan. The rate of compensation fixed for each of these officers is that which I have found to prevail in respect of comparable officers in the executive branch of the Government.

The statutory citation for certain functions of the Secretary of State with respect to the International Claims Commission which are abolished by the reorganization plan, is the third and fourth sentences of section 3(c) of the International Claims Settlement Act of 1949 (64 Stat. 13), as amended.

It is at this time impracticable to specify the reductions of expenditures which it is probable will be brought about by the taking effect of the reorganizations contained in the plan.

Reorganization Plan No. 1 of 1954 provides a single agency for the orderly completion of present claims programs. In addition, it provides an effective organization for the settlement of future authorized claims programs by utilizing the experience gained by present claims agencies. It provides unified administrative direction of the functions concerned, and it simplifies the organizational structure of the executive branch. I urge that the Congress allow the reorganization plan to become effective.

DWIGHT D. EISENHOWER.

THE WHITE HOUSE, April 29, 1954.

#### **§ 1622a. Transfer of Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States to Department of Justice**

The Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States, established under Reorganization Plan Numbered 1 of 1954, is hereby transferred to the Department of Justice as a separate agency within that Department.

(Pub. L. 96-209, title I, §101, Mar. 14, 1980, 94 Stat. 96.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Reorganization Plan Numbered 1 of 1954, referred to in text, is Reorg. Plan. No. 1 of 1954, July 1, 1954, 19 F.R. 3985, 68 Stat. 1279, which is set out as a note under section 1622 of this title.

#### CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as part of the International Claims Settlement Act of 1949 which comprises this chapter.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Title VI of Pub. L. 96-209 provided that: "This Act [enacting sections 1622a to 1622g of this title, amending sections 5316 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, and section 2001 of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense, and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section, section 363 of former Title 31, Money and Finance, and section 7546 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare] shall take effect on the date of enactment [Mar. 14, 1980]."

AUTHORITY OF DIRECTOR OF OFFICE OF MANAGEMENT AND BUDGET RELATING TO TRANSFER OF FOREIGN CLAIMS SETTLEMENT COMMISSION OF THE UNITED STATES AND TERMINATION OF AFFAIRS OF ANNUAL ASSAY COMMISSION, UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS MEMORIAL COMMISSION, AND LOW-EMISSION VEHICLE CERTIFICATION BOARD

Title V of Pub. L. 96-209 provided that: "The Director of the Office of Management and Budget is authorized and directed to make such determinations as may be necessary with regard to the transfer of functions, powers, and duties pursuant to this Act [enacting sections 1622a to 1622g of this title, amending sections 5316 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, and 2001 of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense, and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and sections 363 of former Title 31, Money and Finance, and 7546 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare], and to make such additional incidental dispositions of personnel, assets, liabilities, property, records, and unexpended balances of appropriations, authorizations, allocations, and other funds held, used, arising from, available to or to be made available in connection with the functions transferred by this Act, as the Director may deem necessary to accomplish the purposes of this Act. The Director is further authorized and directed to provide for terminating the affairs of each agency, board, or commission [Annual Assay Commission under section 363 of former Title 31, the Low-Emission Vehicle Certification Board under section 7546 of Title 42, and the United States Marine Corps Memorial Commission] abolished by this Act."

#### **§ 1622b. Transfer of functions, powers, and duties of Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States**

All functions, powers, and duties of the Foreign Claims Settlement Commission established by Reorganization Plan Numbered 1 of 1954 are hereby transferred with the Commission, together with personnel, assets, liabilities, unexpended balances of appropriations, authorizations, allocations, and other funds held, used, available, or to be made available in connection with the statutory functions of the Commission. The Commission shall continue to perform its functions as provided by the War Claims Act of 1948, as amended [50 App. U.S.C. 2001 et seq.], the International Claims Settlement Act of 1949, as amended [22 U.S.C. 1621 et seq.], and Reorganization Plan Numbered 1 of 1954.

(Pub. L. 96-209, title I, §102, Mar. 14, 1980, 94 Stat. 96.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

Reorganization Plan Numbered 1 of 1954, referred to in text, is Reorg. Plan. No. 1 of 1954, July 1, 1954, 19 F.R. 3985, 68 Stat. 1279, which is set out as a note under section 1622 of this title.

The War Claims Act of 1948, as amended, referred to in text, is act July 3, 1948, ch. 826, 62 Stat. 1240, as amended, which is classified generally to section 2001 et seq. of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2001 of Title 50, Appendix, and Tables.

The International Claims Settlement Act of 1949, as amended, referred to in text, is act Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, 64 Stat. 12, as amended, which is classified generally to this chapter (§1621 et seq.). For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1621 of this title and Tables.

## CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as part of the International Claims Settlement Act of 1949 which comprises this chapter.

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Mar. 14, 1980, see title VI of Pub. L. 96-209, set out as a note under section 1622a of this title.

### § 1622c. Membership of Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States

#### (a) Composition of Commission; appointment and compensation of Chairman

The Commission shall be composed of a Chairman and two members. The Chairman shall be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to serve on a full-time basis for a term of three years, and compensated at the rate provided for level V of the Executive Schedule under section 5316 of title 5.

#### (b) Appointment and compensation of members other than Chairman

The other members of the Commission shall be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, and serve on a part-time basis, and be compensated on a per diem basis at a rate of compensation equivalent to the daily rate for level V of the Executive Schedule under section 5316 of title 5 for each day that such member is employed in the actual performance of official business of the Commission as may be directed by the Chairman. Each member shall be reimbursed for travel expenses, including per diem in lieu of subsistence, as authorized by section 5703 of title 5 for persons in Government service employed intermittently.

#### (c) Terms of office

The terms of Office of the Chairman and members of the Commission shall be for three years, except the Chairman and members first appointed after the enactment of this subsection shall be appointed to terms ending respectively September 30, 1982, September 30, 1981, and September 30, 1980. The incumbent of any such office may continue to serve until a successor takes office.

#### (d) Continuation in office of existing members

Notwithstanding the provisions of subsections (a), (b), and (c) of this section, members of the

Foreign Claims Settlement Commission who are serving on March 14, 1980, shall continue to serve in their same capacities until the expiration of the terms to which they were appointed.

(Pub. L. 96-209, title I, §103, Mar. 14, 1980, 94 Stat. 96.)

## CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as part of the International Claims Settlement Act of 1949 which comprises this chapter.

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Mar. 14, 1980, see title VI of Pub. L. 96-209, set out as a note under section 1622a of this title.

### § 1622d. Appointment and compensation of officers and employees of Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States; allowances and benefits; utilization of other Federal facilities

The Commission is authorized, in accordance with civil service laws and in accordance with title 5 to appoint and fix the compensation of such officers and employees as may be necessary to carry out the functions of the Commission. The Commission is authorized to employ experts and consultants in accordance with section 3109 of title 5 without compensation or at rates of compensation not in excess of the maximum daily rate prescribed for GS-18 under section 5332 of title 5. Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Commission is further authorized to employ nationals of other countries who may possess special knowledge, languages, or other expertise necessary to assist the Commission. The Commission is authorized to pay expenses of packing, shipping, and storing personal effects of personnel of the Commission assigned abroad, and to pay allowances and benefits similar to those provided by title IX of the Foreign Service Act of 1946, as amended. The Commission is authorized, with the consent of the head of any other department or agency of the Federal Government, to utilize the facilities and services of such department or agency in carrying out the functions of the Commission. Officers and employees of any department and agency of the Federal Government may, with the consent of the head of such department or agency, be assigned to assist the Commission in carrying out its functions. The Commission shall reimburse such department and agency for the pay of such officers or employees.

(Pub. L. 96-209, title I, §104, Mar. 14, 1980, 94 Stat. 97.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The civil service laws, referred to in text, are set forth in Title 5, Government Organization and Employees. See, particularly, section 3301 et seq. of Title 5.

Title IX of the Foreign Service Act of 1946, as amended, referred to in text, is title IX of act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, 60 Stat. 1025, as amended, which was classified generally to subchapter IX (§§1131-1160) of chapter 14 of this title, and was repealed by section 2205(1) of the Foreign Service Act of 1980, Pub. L. 96-465, title II, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159. The Foreign Service Act of 1980 is classified principally to chapter 52 (§3901 et seq.) of this title. Section 2401(c) of the 1980 Act (22 U.S.C. 4172(c)) provides in part that references in law to provisions of the Foreign Service Act of 1946 shall be deemed

to include reference to the corresponding provisions of the 1980 Act. For provisions corresponding to title IX of the Foreign Service Act of 1946, see Table preceding section 801 of this title.

#### CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as part of the International Claims Settlement Act of 1949 which comprises this chapter.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Mar. 14, 1980, see title VI of Pub. L. 96-209, set out as a note under section 1622a of this title.

#### REFERENCES IN OTHER LAWS TO GS-16, 17, OR 18 PAY RATES

References in laws to the rates of pay for GS-16, 17, or 18, or to maximum rates of pay under the General Schedule, to be considered references to rates payable under specified sections of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, see section 529 [title I, § 101(c)(1)] of Pub. L. 101-509, set out in a note under section 5376 of Title 5.

#### SALARIES AND EXPENSES OF FOREIGN CLAIMS SETTLEMENT COMMISSION

Pub. L. 101-162, title II, Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 996, provided: "That for fiscal year 1990 and hereafter, funds appropriated under this heading ['SALARIES AND EXPENSES, FOREIGN CLAIMS SETTLEMENT COMMISSION'] shall be available for: allowances and benefits similar to those allowed under the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [22 U.S.C. 3901 et seq.] as determined by the [Foreign Claims Settlement] Commission; expenses of packing, shipping, and storing personal effects of personnel assigned abroad; rental or lease, for such periods as may be necessary, of office space and living quarters of personnel assigned abroad; maintenance, improvement, and repair of properties rented or leased abroad, and furnishing fuel, water, and utilities for such properties; insurance on official motor vehicles abroad; advances of funds abroad; advances or reimbursements to other Government agencies for use of their facilities and services in carrying out the functions of the Commission; hire of motor vehicles for field use only; and employment of aliens."

#### § 1622e. Vesting of all non-adjudicatory functions, powers, and duties in Chairman of Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States

All functions, powers, and duties not directly related to adjudicating claims are hereby vested in the Chairman, including the functions set forth in section 3 of Reorganization Plan Numbered 1 of 1954 and the authority to issue rules and regulations.

(Pub. L. 96-209, title I, § 105, Mar. 14, 1980, 94 Stat. 97.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Reorganization Plan Numbered 1 of 1954, referred to in text, is Reorg. Plan. No. 1 of 1954, July 1, 1954, 19 F.R. 3985, 68 Stat. 1279, which is set out as a note under section 1622 of this title.

#### CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as part of the International Claims Settlement Act of 1949 which comprises this chapter.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Mar. 14, 1980, see title VI of Pub. L. 96-209, set out as a note under section 1622a of this title.

#### § 1622f. Administrative support and services to Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States by Attorney General

The Attorney General shall provide necessary administrative support and services to the Commission. The Chairman shall prepare the budget requests, authorization documents, and legislative proposals for the Commission within the procedures established by the Department of Justice, and the Attorney General shall submit these items to the Director of the Office of Management and Budget as proposed by the Chairman.

(Pub. L. 96-209, title I, § 106, Mar. 14, 1980, 94 Stat. 97.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as part of the International Claims Settlement Act of 1949 which comprises this chapter.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Mar. 14, 1980, see title VI of Pub. L. 96-209, set out as a note under section 1622a of this title.

#### § 1622g. Independence of Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States; finality of Commission decisions

Nothing in this Act shall be construed to diminish the independence of the Commission in making its determinations on claims in programs that it is authorized to administer pursuant to the powers and responsibilities conferred upon the Commission by the War Claims Act of 1948, as amended [50 App. U.S.C. 2001 et seq.], the International Claims Settlement Act of 1949, as amended [22 U.S.C. 1621 et seq.], and Reorganization Plan Numbered 1 of 1954. The decisions of the Commission with respect to claims shall be final and conclusive on all questions of law and fact, and shall not be subject to review by the Attorney General or any other official of the United States or by any court by mandamus or otherwise.

(Pub. L. 96-209, title I, § 107, Mar. 14, 1980, 94 Stat. 97.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 96-209, Mar. 14, 1980, 94 Stat. 96, which enacted sections 1622a to 1622g of this title, amended section 5316 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, and section 2001 of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense, and enacted provisions set out as notes under section 1622a of this title, section 363 of former Title 31, Money and Finance, and section 7546 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

The War Claims Act of 1948, as amended, referred to in text, is act July 3, 1948, ch. 826, 62 Stat. 1240, as amended, which is classified generally to section 2001 et seq. of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2001 of Title 50, Appendix, and Tables.

The International Claims Settlement Act of 1949, as amended, referred to in text, is act Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, 64 Stat. 12, as amended, which is classified generally to this chapter (§ 1621 et seq.). For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1621 of this title and Tables.

Reorganization Plan Numbered 1 of 1954, referred to in text, is Reorg. Plan No. 1 of 1954, July 1, 1954, 19 F.R.

3985, 68 Stat. 1279, which is set out as a note under section 1622 of this title.

#### CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as part of the International Claims Settlement Act of 1949 which comprises this chapter.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Mar. 14, 1980, see title VI of Pub. L. 96-209, set out as a note under section 1622a of this title.

#### FEDERAL RULES OF CIVIL PROCEDURE

Writ of mandamus abolished in United States district courts, but relief available by appropriate action or motion, see rule 81, Title 28, Appendix, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

### § 1623. Claims

#### (a) Jurisdiction of Commission; bases for determination; fair market value

The Commission shall have jurisdiction to receive, examine, adjudicate, and render final decisions with respect to claims of the Government of the United States and of nationals of the United States included within the terms of the Yugoslav Claims Agreement of 1948, or included within the terms of any claims agreement on and after March 10, 1954 concluded between the Government of the United States and a foreign government (exclusive of governments against which the United States declared the existence of a state of war during World War II) similarly providing for the settlement and discharge of claims of the Government of the United States and of nationals of the United States against a foreign government, arising out of the nationalization or other taking of property, by the agreement of the Government of the United States to accept from that government a sum in en bloc settlement thereof. In the decision of claims under this subchapter, the Commission shall apply the following in the following order:

(1) The provisions of the applicable claims agreement as provided in this subsection.

(2) The applicable principles of international law, justice, and equity. In determining the value of a claim under international law, the Commission shall award the fair market value of the property as of the time of the taking by the foreign government involved (without regard to any action or event that occurs after the taking), except that the value of the claim shall not reflect any diminution in value attributable to actions which are carried out, or threats of action which are made, by the foreign government with respect to the property before the taking. Fair market value shall be ascertained in accordance with the method most appropriate to the property taken and equitable to the claimant, including—

(i) market value of outstanding equity securities;

(ii) replacement value;

(iii) going-concern value (which includes consideration of an enterprise's profitability); and

(iv) book value.

In the case of any claim for losses in a service industry, the appropriate basis of valuation

shall be presumed to be that referred to in clause (iii). For purposes of the preceding sentence, the term "service" means economic activity the output of which is other than tangible goods.

#### (b) Notice of filing time; publication; basis of decisions; finality of decision

The Commission shall give public notice of the time when, and the limit of time within which, claims may be filed, which notice shall be published in the Federal Register. In addition, the Commission is authorized and directed to mail a similar notice to the last known address of each person appearing in the records of the Department of State as having indicated an intention of filing a claim with respect to a matter concerning which the Commission has jurisdiction under this subchapter. All decisions shall be upon such evidence and written legal contentions as may be presented within such period as may be prescribed therefor by the Commission, and upon the results of any independent investigation of cases which the Commission may deem it advisable to make. Each decision by the Commission pursuant to this subchapter shall be by majority vote, and shall state the reason for such decision, and shall constitute a full and final disposition of the case in which the decision is rendered.

#### (c) Administration of oaths; examination of witnesses; subpoenas; reporting of hearings; witness fees; contempt

Any member of the Commission, or any employee of the Commission, designated in writing by the Chairman of the Commission, may administer oaths and examine witnesses. Any member of the Commission may require by subpoena the attendance and testimony of witnesses, and the production of all necessary books, papers, documents, records, correspondence, and other evidence, from any place in the United States at any designated place of inquiry or of hearing. The Commission is authorized to contract for the reporting of inquiries or of hearings. Witnesses summoned before the Commission shall be paid the same fees and mileage that are paid witnesses in the courts of the United States. In case of disobedience to a subpoena, the aid of any district court of the United States, as constituted by chapter 5 of title 28, and the United States court of any Territory or other place subject to the jurisdiction of the United States may be invoked in requiring the attendance and testimony of witnesses and the production of such books, papers, documents, records, correspondence, and other evidence. Any such court within the jurisdiction of which the inquiry or hearing is carried on may, in case of contumacy or refusal to obey a subpoena issued to any person, issue an order requiring such person to appear or to give evidence touching the matter in question; and any failure to obey such order of the court may be punished by such court as a contempt thereof.

#### (d) Depositions

The Commission may order testimony to be taken by deposition in any inquiry or hearing pending before it at any stage of such proceeding or hearing. Such depositions may be taken,

under such regulations as the Commission may prescribe, before any person designated by the Commission and having power to administer oaths. Any person may be compelled to appear and depose, and to produce books, papers, documents, records, correspondence, and other evidence in the same way as witnesses may be compelled to appear and testify and produce documentary evidence before the Commission, as hereinabove provided. If a witness whose testimony may be desired to be taken by deposition be in a foreign country, the deposition may be taken, provided the laws of the foreign country so permit, by a consular officer, or by an officer or employee of the Commission, or other person commissioned by the Commission, or under letters rogatory issued by the Commission. Witnesses whose depositions are taken as authorized in this subsection, and the persons taking the same, shall severally be entitled to the same fees as are paid for like services in the courts of the United States.

**(e) Penalties**

In addition to the penalties provided in section 1001 of title 18, any person guilty of any act, as provided therein, with respect to any matter under this subchapter, shall forfeit all rights under this subchapter, and, if payment shall have been made or granted, the Commission shall take such action as may be necessary to recover the same.

**(f) Attorney's fees; limitation**

No remuneration on account of services rendered on behalf of any claimant in connection with any claim filed with the Commission under this subchapter shall exceed 10 per centum of the total amount paid pursuant to any award certified under the provisions of this subchapter on account of such claim. Any agreement to the contrary shall be unlawful and void. Whoever, in the United States or elsewhere, demands or receives, on account of services so rendered, any remuneration in excess of the maximum permitted by this section, shall be fined not more than \$5,000 or imprisoned not more than twelve months, or both.

**(g) Representation by United States; payments**

The Attorney General shall assign such officers and employees of the Department of Justice as may be necessary to represent the United States as to any claims of the Government of the United States with respect to which the Commission has jurisdiction under this subchapter. Any and all payments required to be made by the Secretary of the Treasury under this subchapter pursuant to any award made by the Commission to the Government of the United States shall be covered into the Treasury to the credit of miscellaneous receipts.

**(h) Notification of disposition of claims; right to hearing; finality of Commission's decision**

The Commission shall notify all claimants of the approval or denial of their claims, stating the reasons and grounds therefor, and, if approved, shall notify such claimants of the amount for which such claims are approved. Any claimant whose claim is denied, or is approved for less than the full amount of such claim, shall

be entitled, under such regulations as the Commission may prescribe, to a hearing before the Commission, or its duly authorized representatives, with respect to such claim. Upon such hearing, the Commission may affirm, modify, or revise its former action with respect to such claim, including a denial or reduction in the amount theretofore allowed with respect to such claim. The action of the Commission in allowing or denying any claim under this subchapter shall be final and conclusive on all questions of law and fact and not subject to review by the Secretary of State or any other official, department, agency, or establishment of the United States or by any court by mandamus or otherwise.

**(i) Separation of awards**

The Commission may in its discretion enter an award with respect to one or more items deemed to have been clearly established in an individual claim while deferring consideration and action on other items of the same claim.

**(j) Compliance with administrative procedure law**

The Commission shall comply with the provisions of subchapter II of chapter 5, and chapter 7, of title 5 except as otherwise specifically provided by this subchapter.

**(k) Compliance with principles of international law, justice and equity; fair market value**

In exercising authority granted after October 8, 1986, under this chapter or any other Act, the Commission, in determining the value of claims of the Government of the United States or of nationals of the United States (as defined in this chapter or such other Act) against any foreign government for losses arising from the nationalization or other taking of property, shall comply with the principles set forth in subsection (a)(2) of this section.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title I, § 4, 64 Stat. 13; Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, §§ 1, 2, 69 Stat. 562; July 24, 1968, Pub. L. 90-421, § 1(1), 82 Stat. 420; Oct. 8, 1986, Pub. L. 99-451, § 1, 100 Stat. 1138.)

CODIFICATION

In subsec. (j), "subchapter II of chapter 5, and chapter 7, of title 5" substituted for "the Administrative Procedure Act of 1946" on authority of Pub. L. 89-554, § 7(b), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 631, the first section of which enacted Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

AMENDMENTS

1986—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99-451, § 1(a), amended second sentence generally. Prior to amendment, second sentence read as follows: "In the decision of claims under this subchapter, the Commission shall apply the following in the following order: (1) The provisions of the applicable claims agreement as provided in this subsection; and (2) the applicable principles of international law, justice, and equity."

Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 99-451, § 1(b), added subsec. (k).

1968—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 90-421 struck out provisions which authorized the Commission to determine the amount of attorney's fees, such fees not to exceed 10% of the award and any written agreement between attorney and claimant as to fees to be conclusive upon the Commission, if the agreed upon fees do not exceed 10% of the award, provisions which authorized the Secretary of the Treasury to deduct the fees from the

amount of the award and to pay it directly to the attorney, any agreement to the contrary to be unlawful and void, provisions which authorized the Commission to give notice by mail to each claimant of the provisions of this subsection, and provisions which authorized the Commission to recover any fees paid in contravention of this subsection, the recipient to forfeit all rights under this subchapter.

1955—Act Aug. 9, 1955, §1, amended credit to section by designating act Mar. 10, 1950, as “title I”.

Subsecs. (a), (b), (e) to (h) and (j). Act Aug. 9, 1955, §2, substituted “subchapter” for “chapter”.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Section 2 of Pub. L. 99-451 provided that: “The amendments made by this Act [amending this section] shall apply to any claim pending on the date of the enactment of this Act [Oct. 8, 1986] and to any other claim determined after such date.”

#### ABOLITION OF INTERNATIONAL CLAIMS COMMISSION AND TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

International Claims Commission of the United States, including offices of its members, abolished and functions of Commission and of members, officers, and employees thereof transferred to Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States by Reorg. Plan No. 1 of 1954, §§1, 2, 4, eff. July 1, 1954, 19 F.R. 3985, 68 Stat. 1279, set out as a note under section 1622 of this title.

For provisions transferring the Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States as a separate agency within the Department of Justice, see section 1622a et seq. of this title.

#### PROTESTS RELATING TO AWARDS BY COMMISSION; NOTICE BY PUBLICATION IN FEDERAL REGISTER

Act Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title VI, §615, as added Oct. 18, 1976, Pub. L. 94-542, 90 Stat. 2512, provided that: “Notwithstanding the provision of sections 210 and 211 of the War Claims Act of 1948 (Act of July 3, 1948), as amended by Public Law 87-846 [sections 2017i and 2017j] of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense], the Foreign Claims Settlement Commission established by Reorganization Plan No. 1 of 1954 (68 Stat. 1279) [set out under section 1622 of this title] is authorized and directed to receive and consider protests relating to awards made by the Commission during the ten calendar days immediately preceding the expiration of the Commission’s mandate to make such awards on May 17, 1967. Any such protests must be filed within ninety days after notice of the enactment of this provision is filed with and published in the Federal Register, which shall take place within thirty days of enactment [Oct. 18, 1976]. Such protests may include the submission of new evidence not previously before the Commission, and shall be acted upon within thirty days after receipt by the Commission. The Commission may modify awards made during the subject period in accordance with the procedures established by the War Claims Act of 1948, [section 2001 et seq. of Title 50, Appendix], and any increases in awards determined to be appropriated by the Commission shall be certified to and paid by the Secretary of the Treasury out of funds which are now or may hereafter become available in the War Claims Fund in accordance with section 213 of the Act [section 2017f of Title 50, Appendix].”

#### FEDERAL RULES OF CIVIL PROCEDURE

Relief by action or motion instead of relief by mandamus, see rule 81, Title 28, Appendix, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

Subpoena, see rule 45.

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Claims against Bulgaria, Hungary, Rumania, Italy, and the Soviet Union, subsecs. (b) to (e), (h), and (j) of section as applicable, see section 1641q of this title.

Claims against Cuba or China, subsecs. (b) to (e), (h), and (j) of section as applicable, see section 1643h of this title.

Claims against Czechoslovakia, subsecs. (b) to (e), (h), and (j) of section as applicable, see section 1642o of this title.

Claims against German Democratic Republic, subsecs. (b) to (e), (h), and (j) of section as applicable, see section 1644m of this title.

Claims against Vietnam, subsecs. (b) to (e) and (h) of section as applicable, see section 1645n of this title.

Contempt, punishment, see sections 401 and 402 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

Witnesses, fees, see chapter 119 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1624, 1627, 1641q, 1642o, 1643h, 1644m, 1645n of this title.

### § 1624. Certification of awards; certification of claims

The Commission shall, as soon as possible, and in the order of the making of such awards, certify to the Secretary of the Treasury and to the Secretary of State copies of the awards made in favor of the Government of the United States or of nationals of the United States under this subchapter. The Commission shall certify to the Secretary of State, upon his request, copies of the formal submissions of claims filed pursuant to subsection (b) of section 1623 of this title for transmission to the foreign government concerned.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title I, §5, 64 Stat. 16; Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, §§1, 2, 69 Stat. 562.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1955—Act Aug. 9, 1955, §1, amended credit to section by designating act Mar. 10, 1950, as “title I”.

Act Aug. 9, 1955, §2, substituted “subchapter” for “chapter”.

#### ABOLITION OF INTERNATIONAL CLAIMS COMMISSION AND TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

International Claims Commission of the United States, including offices of its members, abolished and functions of Commission and of members, officers, and employees thereof transferred to Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States by Reorg. Plan No. 1 of 1954, §§1, 2, 4, eff. July 1, 1954, 19 F.R. 3985, 68 Stat. 1279, set out as a note under section 1622 of this title.

For provisions transferring Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States as a separate agency within the Department of Justice, see section 1622a et seq. of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1626, 1627 of this title.

### § 1625. Omitted

#### CODIFICATION

Section, acts Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title 1, §6, 64 Stat. 16; Aug. 8, 1953, ch. 396, §1, 67 Stat. 506, provided that Commission complete its affairs in connection with settlement of all United States-Yugoslavian Claims arising under Yugoslav Claims Agreement of 1948, by December 31, 1954.

### § 1626. Payments

#### (a) Principal and interest; regulations

Subject to the limitations hereinafter provided, the Secretary of the Treasury is authorized and directed to pay, as prescribed by sec-

tion 1627 of this title, an amount not exceeding the principal of each award, plus accrued interest on such awards as bear interest, certified pursuant to section 1624 of this title, in accordance with the award. Such payments, and applications for such payments, shall be made in accordance with such regulations as the Secretary of the Treasury may prescribe.

**(b) Deductions; coverage into Treasury; reimbursement for expenses**

(1) There shall be deducted from the amount of each payment made pursuant to subsection (c) of section 1627 of this title, as reimbursement for the expenses incurred by the United States, an amount equal to 5 per centum of such payment. All amounts so deducted shall be covered into the Treasury to the credit of miscellaneous receipts.

(2) The Secretary of the Treasury shall deduct from any amounts covered, subsequent to July 24, 1968, into any special fund, created pursuant to section 1627 of this title, 5 per centum thereof as reimbursement to the Government of the United States for expenses incurred by the Commission and by the Treasury Department in the administration of this subchapter. The amounts so deducted shall be covered into the Treasury to the credit of miscellaneous receipts.

**(c) To whom made; exceptions**

Payments made pursuant to this subchapter shall be made only to the person or persons on behalf of whom the award is made, except that—

(1) if any person to whom any payment is to be made pursuant to this subchapter is deceased or is under a legal disability, payment shall be made to his legal representative, except that if any payment to be made is not over \$1,000 and there is no qualified executor or administrator, payment may be made to the person or persons found by the Comptroller General to be entitled thereto, without the necessity of compliance with the requirements of law with respect to the administration of estates;

(2) in the case of a partnership or corporation, the existence of which has been terminated and on behalf of which an award is made, payment shall be made, except as provided in paragraphs (3) and (4) of this subsection, to the person or persons found by the Comptroller General of the United States to be entitled thereto;

(3) if a receiver or trustee for any such partnership or corporation has been duly appointed by a court of competent jurisdiction in the United States and has not been discharged prior to the date of payment, payment shall be made to such receiver or trustee in accordance with the order of the court;

(4) if a receiver or trustee for any such partnership or corporation, duly appointed by a court of competent jurisdiction in the United States, makes an assignment of the claim, or any part thereof, with respect to which an award is made, or makes an assignment of such award, or any part thereof, payment shall be made to the assignee, as his interest may appear; and

(5) in the case of any assignment of an award, or any part thereof, which is made in

writing and duly acknowledged and filed, after such award is certified to the Secretary of the Treasury, payment may, in the discretion of the Secretary of the Treasury, be made to the assignee, as his interest may appear.

**(d) Erroneous payments as bar to further recovery**

Whenever the Secretary of the Treasury, or the Comptroller General of the United States, as the case may be, shall find that any person is entitled to any such payment, after such payment shall have been received by such person, it shall be an absolute bar to recovery by any other person against the United States, its officers, agents, or employees with respect to such payment.

**(e) Acquiescence in conditions of subchapter**

Any person who makes application for any such payment shall be held to have consented to all the provisions of this subchapter.

**(f) Non-assumption of liability by United States on claims against foreign governments**

Nothing in this subchapter shall be construed as the assumption of any liability by the United States for the payment or satisfaction, in whole or in part, of any claim on behalf of any national of the United States against any foreign government.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title I, § 7, 64 Stat. 16; Aug. 8, 1953, ch. 396, § 2, 67 Stat. 506; Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, §§ 1, 2, 69 Stat. 562; July 24, 1968, Pub. L. 90-421, § 1(2), (3), 82 Stat. 420.)

AMENDMENTS

1968—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 90-421, § 1(2), designated existing provisions as par. (1) and added par. (2).

Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 90-421, § 1(3), substituted “any person to whom any payment is to be made pursuant to this subchapter” for “such person” and “, except that if any payment to be made is not over \$1000” for “; *Provided*, That if the total award is not over \$500”, and struck out “of the United States” after “Comptroller General”.

1955—Act Aug. 9, 1955, § 1, amended credit to section by designating act Mar. 10, 1950, as “title I”.

Act Aug. 9, 1955, § 2, substituted “subchapter” for “chapter”.

1953—Subsec. (b). Act Aug. 8, 1953, increased the amount deductible to cover expenses from 3 to 5 per cent.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of Comptroller General under this section transferred, effective June 30, 1996, to Director of Office of Management and Budget, see section 211 of Pub. L. 104-53, set out as a note under section 501 of Title 31, Money and Finance.

ABOLITION OF INTERNATIONAL CLAIMS COMMISSION AND TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

International Claims Commission of the United States, including offices of its members, abolished and functions of Commission and of members, officers, and employees thereof transferred to Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States by Reorg. Plan No. 1, of 1954, §§ 1, 2, 4, eff. July 1, 1954, 19 F.R. 3985, 68 Stat. 1279, set out as a note under section 1622 of this title.

For provisions transferring Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States as a separate agency within the Department of Justice, see section 1622a et seq. of this title.

## CROSS REFERENCES

Claims against Bulgaria, Hungary, Rumania, Italy, and the Soviet Union, subsecs. (c) to (f) of section as applicable, see section 1641q of this title.

Claims against Cuba and China, subsec. (f) as applicable, see section 1643h of this title.

Claims against Czechoslovakia, subsecs. (c) to (f) of section as applicable, see section 1642o of this title.

Claims against German Democratic Republic, subsecs. (c) to (f) of section as applicable, see section 1644m of this title.

Claims against Vietnam, subsecs. (c) to (f) of section as applicable, see section 1645n of this title.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1627, 1641q, 1642o, 1643h, 1644m, 1645n of this title; title 50 App. section 2017n.

**§ 1627. Creation of special funds in Treasury****(a) Credits to, and payment from funds**

There are created in the Treasury of the United States (1) a special fund to be known as the Yugoslav Claims Fund; and (2) such other special funds as may, in the discretion of the Secretary of the Treasury, be required, each to be a claims fund to be known by the name of the foreign government which has entered into a settlement agreement with the Government of the United States as described in subsection (a) of section 1623 of this title. There shall be covered into the Treasury to the credit of the proper special fund all funds hereinafter specified. All payments authorized under section 1626 of this title shall be disbursed from the proper fund, as the case may be, and all amounts covered into the Treasury to the credit of the aforesaid funds are permanently appropriated for the making of the payments authorized by section 1626 of this title.

**(b) Credits to Yugoslav Claims Fund; credits to other funds**

The Secretary of the Treasury is authorized and directed to cover into—

(1) the Yugoslav Claims Fund the sum of \$17,000,000 being the amount paid by the Government of the Federal People's Republic of Yugoslavia pursuant to the Yugoslav Claims Agreement of 1948;

(2) a special fund created for that purpose pursuant to subsection (a) of this section any amounts hereafter paid, in United States dollars, by a foreign government which has entered into a claims settlement agreement with the Government of the United States as described in subsection (a) of section 1623 of this title.

**(c) Payment of awards**

The Secretary of the Treasury is authorized and directed out of the sums covered, prior to July 24, 1968, into any of the funds pursuant to subsection (b) of this section, and after making the deduction provided for in section 1626(b)(1) of this title—

(1) to make payments in full of the principal of awards of \$1,000 or less, certified pursuant to section 1624 of this title;

(2) to make payments of \$1,000 on the principal of each award of more than \$1,000 in principal amount, certified pursuant to section 1624 of this title;

(3) to make additional payment of not to exceed 25 per centum of the unpaid principal of awards in the principal amount of more than \$1,000;

(4) after completing the payments prescribed by paragraphs (2) and (3) of this subsection, to make payments, from time to time in ratable proportions, on account of the unpaid principal of all awards in the principal amount of more than \$1,000, according to the proportions which the unpaid principal of such awards bear to the total amount in the fund available for distribution at the time such payments are made; and

(5) after payment has been made of the principal amounts of all such awards, to make pro rata payments on account of accrued interest on such awards as bear interest.

**(d) Payment of balance to Yugoslav Government; certification of adjudication costs; finality of certification**

The Secretary of the Treasury, upon the concurrence of the Secretary of State, is authorized and directed, out of the sum covered into the Yugoslav Claims Fund pursuant to subsection (b) of this section, after completing the payments of such funds pursuant to subsection (c) of this section, to make payment of the balance of any sum remaining in such fund to the Government of the Federal People's Republic of Yugoslavia to the extent required under article 1(c) of the Yugoslav Claims Agreement of 1948. The Secretary of State shall certify to the Secretary of the Treasury the total cost of adjudication, not borne by the claimants, attributable to the Yugoslav Claims Agreement of 1948. Such certification shall be final and conclusive and shall not be subject to review by any other official, or department, agency, or establishment of the United States.

**(e) Payments; priorities**

Except as provided in subsection (f) of this section, the Secretary of the Treasury is authorized and directed out of sums covered, subsequent to July 24, 1968, into any special fund created pursuant to this section to make payment on account of awards certified by the Commission pursuant to this subchapter with respect to claims included within the terms of a claims settlement agreement concluded between the Government of the United States and a foreign government as described in section 1623(a) of this title, as follows and in the following order of priority:

(1) Payment in the amount of \$1,000 or the principal amount of the award, whichever is less;

(2) Thereafter, payments from time to time on account of the unpaid principal balance of each remaining award which shall bear to such unpaid principal balance the same proportion as the total amount available for distribution at the time such payments are made bears to the aggregate unpaid principal balance of all such awards; and

(3) Thereafter, payments from time to time on account of the unpaid balance of each award of interest which shall bear to such unpaid balance of interest, the same proportion as the total amount available for distribution



at the time such payments are made bears to the aggregate unpaid balance of interest of all such awards.

**(f) People's Republic of China; claim payment priorities**

(1) Out of sums covered after May 11, 1979, into the special fund created pursuant to this section to receive funds paid by the People's Republic of China, the Secretary of the Treasury is authorized and directed to make payments on account of awards certified by the Commission pursuant to subchapter V of this chapter with respect to claims included within the terms of the Agreement Between the Government of the United States of America and the Government of the People's Republic of China Concerning the Settlement of Claims, signed on May 11, 1979, in the following order of priority:

(A) Payment in the amount of \$1,000 or the principal amount of the award, whichever is less.

(B) Thereafter, except as provided in paragraph (2), to the extent there remain unpaid principal balances on awards, payments from time to time on account of the unpaid principal balance of each remaining award which bear to such unpaid principal balance the same proportion as the total amount available for distribution at the time such payments are made bears to the aggregate unpaid principal balance of all such awards.

(C) Thereafter, payments from time to time on account of the unpaid balance of each award of interest which bear to such unpaid balance of interest the same proportion as the total amount available for distribution at the time such payments are made bears to the aggregate unpaid balance of interest of all such awards.

(2)(A) For the purpose of computing the payments to be made under paragraph (1) to any claimant which was an incorporated business enterprise on the date of nationalization or other taking of property, the award certified by the Commission under subchapter V of this chapter shall be reduced by the amount of Federal tax benefits derived by such claimant on account of the losses upon which such claim was based, but in no case shall such payments be reduced below the amount paid to such claimant on account of such claim before October 13, 1980. For purposes of this subparagraph, such Federal tax benefits shall be the amount by which the claimant's taxes in any prior taxable year or years under chapters 1, 2A, 2B, 2D, and 2E of the Internal Revenue Code of 1939, or subtitle A of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, were decreased with respect to the loss or losses upon which the claim was based. The sum of the amounts which would otherwise be payable but for this paragraph which are not paid to any such claimant shall be aggregated, and the Secretary of the Treasury is authorized and directed to make payments out of such aggregated sums in accordance with subparagraph (B).

(B) To the extent that there remain unpaid principal balances on awards to claimants which were, on the date of nationalization or other taking of property, nonprofit organizations operated exclusively for the promotion of social

welfare, religious, charitable, or educational purposes (after payments made to such nonprofit organizations pursuant to subparagraphs (A) and (B) of paragraph (1) are taken into account), the Secretary of the Treasury is authorized and directed to make payments from time to time on account of the unpaid principal balance of each remaining award to such nonprofit organizations which bear to such unpaid principal balance the same proportion as the total sums aggregated pursuant to subparagraph (A) at the times such payments are made bear to the aggregate unpaid principal balance of all such awards to nonprofit organizations.

**(g) Authority to invest and recover expenses from funds**

The Secretary of the Treasury is authorized and directed to invest the amounts held respectively in the "special funds" established by this section in public debt securities with maturities suitable for the needs of the separate accounts and bearing interest at rates determined by the Secretary, taking into consideration the average market yield on outstanding marketable obligations of the United States of comparable maturities. The interest earned on the amounts in each special fund shall be used to make payments, in accordance with subsection (c) of this section, on awards payable from that special fund.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title I, § 8, 64 Stat. 17; Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, § 1, 69 Stat. 562; July 24, 1968, Pub. L. 90-421, § 1(4), (5), 82 Stat. 420; Oct. 13, 1980, Pub. L. 96-445, 94 Stat. 1891; Oct. 22, 1986, Pub. L. 99-514, § 2, 100 Stat. 2095; Dec. 22, 1987, Pub. L. 100-204, title I, § 142(a), 101 Stat. 1350.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Internal Revenue Code of 1939, referred to in subsec. (f)(2)(A), was generally repealed by section 7851 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1954, Title 26. The Internal Revenue Code of 1954 was redesignated the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 by Pub. L. 99-514, § 2, Oct. 22, 1986, 100 Stat. 2095. For table of comparisons of the 1939 Code to the 1986 Code, see Table I preceding section 1 of Title 26, Internal Revenue Code. See also section 7852(b) of Title 26, Internal Revenue Code, for provision that references in any other law to a provision of the 1939 Code, unless expressly incompatible with the intent thereof, shall be deemed a reference to the corresponding provision of the 1986 Code.

Chapter 1 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1939, referred to in subsec. (f)(2)(A), was comprised of sections 1 to 482 of former Title 26, Internal Revenue Code. Section 14 of former Title 26 was repealed by act Oct. 20, 1951, ch. 521, title I, pt. II, § 121(g), 65 Stat. 469. Sections 34 and 185 of former Title 26 were repealed by act Feb. 25, 1944, ch. 63, title I, §§ 106(c)(2), 107(a), 58 Stat. 31. Sections 264 and 363 of former Title 26 were repealed by act Oct. 21, 1942, ch. 619, title I, §§ 159(e), 170(a), 56 Stat. 860, 878. Sections 430 to 474 of former Title 26 were omitted, and subsequently, along with the remaining sections of former Title 26 comprising chapter 1, except sections 143 and 144, were repealed by sections 7851(a)(1)(A) of Title 26, Internal Revenue Code. Sections 143 and 144 of former Title 26 were repealed by section 7851(a)(1)(B) of Title 26.

Chapter 2A of the Internal Revenue Code of 1939, referred to in subsec. (f)(2)(A), was comprised of sections 500 to 511 of former Title 26, Internal Revenue Code. Sections 500 to 511 were repealed by section 7851(a)(1)(A) of Title 26, Internal Revenue Code.

Chapter 2B of the Internal Revenue Code of 1939, referred to in subsec. (f)(2)(A), was comprised of sections

600 to 605 of former Title 26, Internal Revenue Code. Sections 600 to 605 were repealed by act Nov. 8, 1945, ch. 453, title II, §202, 59 Stat. 574, eff. with respect to taxable years ending June 30, 1946.

Chapter 2D of the Internal Revenue Code of 1939, referred to in subsec. (f)(2)(A), was comprised of sections 700 to 706 of former Title 26, Internal Revenue Code. Sections 700 to 716 were repealed by section 7851(a)(1)(A) of Title 26, Internal Revenue Code.

Chapter 2E of the Internal Revenue Code of 1939, referred to in subsec. (f)(2)(A), was comprised of sections 710 to 784 of former Title 26, Internal Revenue Code. Sections 710 to 736, 740, 742 to 744, 750, 751, 760, 761 and 780 to 784 were repealed by act Nov. 8, 1945, ch. 453, title I, §122(a), 59 Stat. 568. Section 741 was repealed by act Oct. 21, 1942, ch. 619, title II, §§224(b), 228(b), 56 Stat. 920, 925. Section 752 was repealed by act Oct. 21, 1942, ch. 619, title II, §229(a)(1), 56 Stat. 931, eff. as of Oct. 8, 1940.

Subtitle A of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, referred to in subsec. (f)(2)(A), is subtitle A of act Aug. 16, 1954, ch. 736, 68A Stat. 4, as amended, which comprises Subtitle A (§1 et seq.) of Title 26, Internal Revenue Code.

#### AMENDMENTS

1987—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 100-204 added subsec. (g).

1986—Subsec. (f)(2)(A). Pub. L. 99-514 substituted “Internal Revenue Code of 1986” for “Internal Revenue Code of 1954”.

1980—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 96-445, §1(1), substituted “Except as provided in subsection (f) of this section, the Secretary of the Treasury” for “The Secretary of the Treasury”.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 96-445, §1(2), added subsec. (f).

1968—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 90-421, §1(4), inserted “, prior to July 24, 1968,” after “the sums covered” and substituted “section 1626(b)(1) of this title” for “section 1626(b) of this title”.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 90-421, §1(5), added subsec. (e).

1955—Act Aug. 9, 1955, amended credit to section by designating act Mar. 10, 1950, as “title I”.

#### ABOLITION OF INTERNATIONAL CLAIMS COMMISSION AND TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

International Claims Commission of the United States, including offices of its members, abolished and functions of Commission and of members, officers, and employees thereof transferred to Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States by Reorg. Plan No. 1 of 1954, §§1, 2, 4, eff. July 1, 1954, 19 F.R. 3985, 68 Stat. 1279, set out as a note under section 1622 of this title.

For provisions transferring Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States as a separate agency within the Department of Justice, see section 1622a et seq. of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1626 of this title.

#### SUBCHAPTER II—VESTING AND LIQUIDATION OF BULGARIAN, HUNGARIAN, AND RUMANIAN PROPERTY

##### § 1631. Definitions

As used in this subchapter the term—

(1) “Person” means a natural person, partnership, association, other unincorporated body, corporation, or body politic.

(2) “Property” means any property, right, or interest.

(3) “Treaty of peace”, with respect to a country, means the treaty of peace with that country signed at Paris, France, February 10, 1947, which came into force between that country and the United States on September 15, 1947.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title II, §201, as added Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, §3, 69 Stat. 562.)

##### § 1631a. Property owned by Bulgaria, Hungary, and Rumania or any national thereof

###### (a) Vesting of property; liquidation; disposition of net proceeds

In accordance with article 25 of the treaty of peace with Bulgaria, article 29 of the treaty of peace with Hungary, and article 27 of the treaty of peace with Rumania, any property which was blocked in accordance with Executive Order 8389 of April 10, 1940, as amended, and remains blocked on August 9, 1955, and which, as of September 15, 1947, was owned directly or indirectly by Bulgaria, Hungary, and Rumania or by any national thereof as defined in such Executive order, shall vest in such officer or agency as the President may from time to time designate and shall vest when, as, and upon such terms as the President or his designee shall direct. Such property shall be sold or otherwise liquidated as expeditiously as possible after vesting under such rules and regulations as the President or his designee may prescribe. The net proceeds remaining upon completion of the administration and liquidation thereof, including the adjudication of any suits or claims with respect thereto under sections 1631f and 1631g of this title, shall be covered into the Treasury. Notwithstanding the preceding provisions of this subsection, any such property determined by the President or his designee to be owned directly by a natural person shall not be vested under this subsection but shall remain blocked subject to release when, as, and upon such terms as the President or his designee may prescribe. If, at any time within one year from the date of the vesting of any property under this subsection, the President or his designee shall determine that it was directly owned at the date of vesting by a natural person, then the President or his designee shall divest such property and restore it to its blocked status prior to vesting, subject to release when, as, and upon such terms as the President or his designee may prescribe, or if such property has been liquidated, shall divest the net proceeds thereof and carry them in blocked accounts with the Treasury, bearing no interest, in the name of the owner thereof at the date of vesting, subject to release when, as, and upon such terms as the President or his designee may prescribe.

###### (b) Net proceeds of property vested in Alien Property Custodian or Attorney General

The net proceeds of any property which was vested in the Alien Property Custodian or the Attorney General after December 17, 1941, pursuant to the Trading With the Enemy Act, as amended, and which at the date of vesting was owned directly or indirectly by Bulgaria, Hungary, or Rumania, or any national thereof, shall after completion of the administration, liquidation, and disposition of such property pursuant to such Act, including the adjudication of any suits or claims with respect thereto under such Act, be covered into the Treasury, except that the net proceeds of any such property which the President or his designee shall determine was directly owned by a natural person at the date of

vesting shall be divested by the President or such officer or agency as he may designate and carried in blocked accounts with the Treasury, bearing no interest, in the name of the owner thereof at the date of vesting, subject to release when, as, and upon such terms as the President or his designee may prescribe.

**(c) Determination of ownership by natural person of vested property**

The determination under this section that any vested property was not directly owned by a natural person at the date of vesting shall be within the sole discretion of the President or his designee and shall not be subject to review by any court.

**(d) Furnishing of information; production of books and records**

The President or his designee may require any person to furnish, in the form of reports or otherwise, complete information, including information with regard to past transactions, relative to any property blocked under Executive Order 8389 of April 10, 1940, as amended, or as may be otherwise necessary to enforce the provisions of this section; and the President or his designee may require of any person the production of any books of account, records, contracts, letters, memoranda, or other papers relative to such property or as may be otherwise necessary to enforce the provisions of this section.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title II, §202, as added Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, §3, 69 Stat. 562.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Executive Order 8389 of April 10, 1940, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (d), is Ex. Ord. 8389, Apr. 10, 1940, 5 F.R. 1400, which is set out under section 95a of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

The Trading With the Enemy Act, as amended, and such Act, referred to in subsec. (b), is act Oct. 6, 1917, ch. 106, 40 Stat. 411, as amended, which is classified to sections 1 to 6, 7 to 39 and 41 to 44 of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

TRANSFER OF ALIEN PROPERTY CUSTODIAN FUNCTIONS

Functions of Alien Property Custodian and Office of Alien Property Custodian, except those relating to property or interests in Philippines, are now vested in Attorney General. See notes set out under section 6 of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense.

EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 10644

Ex. Ord. No. 10644, Nov. 8, 1955, 20 F.R. 8363, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 11281, May 13, 1966, 31 F.R. 7215, which designated the Attorney General to perform functions of the President under this subchapter and the Secretary of the Treasury to perform functions under this section with respect to the release of blocked property and accounts, was revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 12553, Feb. 25, 1986, 51 F.R. 7237.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1631g, 1631i, 1631o, 1641a of this title.

**§ 1631b. Cancellation and issuance of shares of stock or other beneficial interest in corporation**

Whenever shares of stock or other beneficial interest in any corporation, association, or company or trust are vested in any officer or agency

designated by the President under this subchapter, it shall be the duty of the corporation, association, or company or trustee or trustees issuing such shares or any certificates or other instruments representing the same or any other beneficial interest to cancel such shares of stock or other beneficial interest upon its, his, or their books and in lieu thereof to issue certificates or other instruments for such shares or other beneficial interest to the designee of the President, or otherwise as such designee shall require.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title II, §203, as added Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, §3, 69 Stat. 563.)

**§ 1631c. Filing of order of conveyance**

Any vesting order, or other order or requirement issued pursuant to this subchapter, or a duly certified copy thereof, may be filed, registered, or recorded in any office for the filing, registering, or recording of conveyances, transfers, or assignments of such property as may be covered by such order or requirement; and if so filed, registered, or recorded shall impart the same notice and have the same force and effect as a duly executed conveyance, transfer, or assignment so filed, registered, or recorded.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title II, §204, as added Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, §3, 69 Stat. 563.)

**§ 1631d. Acquittance and discharge of obligation**

Any payment, conveyance, transfer, assignment, or delivery of property made to the President or his designee pursuant to this subchapter, or any rule, regulation, instruction, or direction issued under this subchapter, shall to the extent thereof be a full acquittance and discharge for all purposes of the obligation of the person making the same; and no person shall be held liable in any court for or in respect of any such payment, conveyance, transfer, assignment, or delivery made in good faith in pursuance of and in reliance on the provisions of this subchapter, or of any rule, regulation, instruction, or direction issued thereunder.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title II, §205, as added Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, §3, 69 Stat. 563.)

**§ 1631e. Rules by district courts; appeals**

The district courts of the United States are given jurisdiction to make and enter all such rules as to notice and otherwise, and all such orders and decrees, and to issue such process as may be necessary and proper in the premises to enforce the provisions of this subchapter, with a right of appeal from the final order or decree of such court as provided in chapter 83 of title 28.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title II, §206, as added Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, §3, 69 Stat. 563; amended June 27, 1988, Pub. L. 100-352, §6(g), 102 Stat. 664.)

AMENDMENTS

1988—Pub. L. 100-352 substituted “chapter 83” for “sections 1252, 1254, 1291, and 1292”.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1988 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 100-352 effective ninety days after June 27, 1988, except that such amendment not to apply to cases pending in Supreme Court on such effective

tive date or affect right to review or manner of reviewing judgment or decree of court which was entered before such effective date, see section 7 of Pub. L. 100-352, set out as a note under section 1254 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

**§ 1631f. Claims to vested property**

**(a) Action for return of property; jurisdiction; complaint; custody of property until final determination**

Any person who has not filed a notice of claim under subsection (b) of this section may institute a suit in equity for the return of any property, or the net proceeds thereof, vested in a designee of the President pursuant to section 1631a(a) of this title and held by such designee. Such suit, to which said designee shall be made a party defendant, shall be instituted in the District Court of the United States for the District of Columbia or in the district court of the United States for the district in which the claimant resides, or, if a corporation, where it has its principal place of business, by the filing of a complaint which alleges—

(1) that the claimant is a person other than Bulgaria, Hungary, or Rumania, or a national thereof as defined in Executive Order 8389 of April 10, 1940, as amended; and

(2) that the claimant was the owner of such property immediately prior to its vesting, or is the successor in interest of such owner by inheritance, devise, or bequest.

If the court finds in favor of the claimant, it shall order the payment, conveyance, transfer, assignment, or delivery to said claimant of such property, or the net proceeds thereof, held by said designee or the portion thereof to which the court shall determine said claimant is entitled. If suit shall be so instituted, then such property, or, if liquidated, the net proceeds thereof, shall be retained in the custody of said designee until any final judgment or decree which shall be entered in favor of the claimant shall be fully satisfied, or until final judgment or decree shall be entered against the claimant or suit otherwise terminated.

**(b) Notice of claim; review of denial**

Any person who has not instituted a suit under the provisions of subsection (a) of this section may file a notice of claim under oath for the return of any property, or the net proceeds thereof, vested in a designee of the President pursuant to section 1631a(a) of this title and held by such designee. Such notice of claim shall be filed with said designee and in such form and containing such particulars as said designee shall require. Said designee may return any property so claimed, or the net proceeds thereof, whenever he shall determine—

(1) that the claimant is a person other than Bulgaria, Hungary, or Rumania, or a national thereof as defined in Executive Order 8389 of April 10, 1940, as amended; and

(2) that the claimant was the owner of such property immediately prior to its vesting, or is the successor in interest of such owner by inheritance, devise, or bequest.

Any person whose claim is finally denied in whole or in part by said designee may obtain re-

view of such denial by filing a petition therefor in the United States Court of Appeals for the District of Columbia Circuit. Such petition for review must be filed within sixty days after the date of mailing of the final order of denial by said designee and a copy shall forthwith be transmitted to the said designee by the clerk of the court. Within forty-five days after receipt of such petition for review, or within such further time as the court may grant for good cause shown, said designee shall file an answer thereto, and shall file with the court the record of the proceedings with respect to such claim, as provided in section 2112 of title 28. The court may enter judgment affirming the order of the designee; or, upon finding that such order is not in accordance with law or that any material findings upon which such order is based are unsupported by substantial evidence, may enter judgment modifying or setting aside the order in whole or in part, and (1) directing a return of all or part of the property claimed, or (2) remanding the claim for further administrative proceedings thereon. If a notice of claim is filed under this subsection, the property which is the subject of such claim, or, if liquidated, the net proceeds thereof, shall be retained in the custody of said designee until any final order of said designee or any final judgment or decree which shall be entered in favor of the claimant shall be fully satisfied, or until a final order of said designee or a final judgment or decree shall be entered against the claimant, or the claim or suit otherwise terminated.

**(c) Exclusiveness of relief**

The sole relief and remedy of any person having any claim to any property vested pursuant to section 1631a(a) of this title, except a person claiming under section 1631o of this title, shall be that provided by the terms of subsection (a) or (b) of this section, and in the event of the liquidation by sale or otherwise of such property, shall be limited to and enforced against the net proceeds received therefrom and held by the designee of the President. The claim of any person based on his ownership of shares of stock or other proprietary interest in a corporation which was the owner of property at the date of vesting thereof under section 1631a(a) of this title shall be allowable under subsection (a) or (b) of this section if 25 per centum or more of the outstanding capital stock or other proprietary interest in the corporation was owned at such date by nationals of countries other than Bulgaria, Hungary, Rumania, Germany, or Japan. But no such claim of a national of a foreign country shall be satisfied except after certification by the Department of State that the country of the national accords protection to nationals of the United States in similar types of cases.

**(d) Recovery for conservation, preservation or maintenance of property**

The designee of the President may retain or recover from any property, or the net proceeds thereof, returned pursuant to subsection (a) or (b) of this section an amount not exceeding that expended or incurred by him for the conservation, preservation, or maintenance of such property or proceeds.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title II, §207, as added Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, §3, 69 Stat. 564; amended Aug. 28, 1958, Pub. L. 85-791, §33, 72 Stat. 951; July 24, 1968, Pub. L. 90-421, §1(6), 82 Stat. 421.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Executive Order 8389 of April 10, 1940, referred to in subsecs. (a)(1) and (b)(1), is Ex. Ord. No. 8389, Apr. 10, 1940, 5 F.R. 1400, which is set out under section 95a of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

#### AMENDMENTS

1968—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 90-421 inserted “, except a person claiming under section 1631o of this title,” after “pursuant to section 1631a(a) of this title”.

1958—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 85-791, in fifth sentence, substituted “shall forthwith be transmitted to the said designee by the clerk of the court” for “must be served on the said designee”, and in sixth sentence, substituted “receipt” for “service” and substituted “file with the court the record of the proceedings with respect to such claim, as provided in section 2112 of title 28” for “certify and file with the court a transcript of the entire record of the proceedings with respect to such claim”.

#### FEDERAL RULES OF CIVIL PROCEDURE

One form of action, see rule 2, Title 28, Appendix, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1631a, 1631h, 1631i, 1631k, 1631l, 1631o of this title.

### § 1631g. Payment of debts

#### (a) Claims allowable; defenses

Any property vested in the designee of the President pursuant to section 1631a(a) of this title, or the net proceeds thereof, shall be equitably applied by such designee in accordance with this section to the payment of debts owed by the person who owned such property immediately prior to its vesting in such designee. No debt claim shall be allowed under this section—

(1) if it is asserted against Bulgaria, Hungary, or Rumania (including the government or any political subdivisions, agencies, or instrumentalities thereof); or

(2) if it is based upon an obligation expressed or payable in any currency other than the currency of the United States; or

(3) if it was not due and owing—

(A) on October 9, 1940, in the event the property in respect of which such debt claim is filed was owned immediately prior to vesting by a national of Rumania;

(B) on March 4, 1941, in the event the property in respect of which such debt claim is filed was owned immediately prior to vesting by a national of Bulgaria; or

(C) on March 13, 1941, in the event that the property in respect of which such debt claim is filed was owned immediately prior to vesting by a national of Hungary.

Any defense to the payment of such claim which would have been available to the debtor shall be available to the designee, except that the period from and after December 7, 1941, shall not be included for the purpose of determining the applicability of any statute of limitations. Debt claims allowable under this section shall include only those of natural persons who were citizens

of the United States at the dates their debtors became obligated to them; those of other natural persons who are and have been continuously since December 7, 1941, residents of the United States; those of corporations organized under the laws of the United States or any State, Territory, or possession thereof, or the District of Columbia; and those acquired by the designee of the President under this subchapter. Successors in interest by inheritance, devise, bequest, or operation of law of debt claimants, other than persons who would themselves be disqualified hereunder from allowance of a debt claim, shall be eligible for payment to the same extent as their principals or predecessors would have been.

#### (b) Time limit for filing claims; extension; notice

The designee of the President under this subchapter shall fix a date or dates after which the filing of debt claims in respect of any or all debtors shall be barred, and may extend the time so fixed, and shall give at least sixty days' notice thereof by publication in the Federal Register. In no event shall the time extend beyond the expiration of one year from the date of the last vesting in the designee of the President of any property of a debtor in respect to whose debts the date is fixed. No debt shall be paid prior to the expiration of one hundred and twenty days after publication of the first such notice in respect of the debtor, nor in any event shall any payment of a debt claim be made out of any property or proceeds in respect of which a suit or proceeding for return pursuant to this subchapter is pending.

#### (c) Examination of claims; finality of determination

The designee shall examine the claims, and such evidence in respect thereof as may be presented to him or as he may introduce into the record, and shall make a determination, with respect to each claim, of allowance or disallowance, in whole or in part. The determination of the designee that a claim is within either paragraph (1) or (2) of subsection (a) of this section shall be final and shall not be subject to judicial review, and such claim shall not be considered a debt claim for any purpose under this section.

#### (d) Fund for debt payments

Payment of debt claims shall be made only out of such money included in, or received as net proceeds from the sale, use, or other disposition of, any property owned by the debtor immediately prior to its vesting in the designee of the President, as shall remain after deduction of (1) the amount of the expenses of the designee (including both expenses in connection with such property or proceeds thereof, and such portion as the designee shall fix of his other expenses), and of taxes, as defined in section 1631k of this title, paid by the designee in respect of such property or proceeds; and (2) such amount, if any, as the designee may establish as a cash reserve for the future payment of such expenses and taxes. If the money available hereunder for the payment of debt claims against the debtor is insufficient for the satisfaction of all claims allowed by the designee, ratable payments shall be made in accordance with subsection (g) of this

section to the extent permitted by the money available and additional payments shall be made whenever the designee shall determine that substantial further money has become available, through liquidation of any such property or otherwise. The designee shall not be required, through any judgment of any court, levy of execution, or otherwise, to sell or liquidate any property vested in him, for the purpose of paying or satisfying any debt claim.

**(e) Amount payable; disallowance; notice; review; additional evidence; judgment**

If the aggregate of debt claims filed as prescribed does not exceed the money from which, in accordance with subsection (d) of this section, payment may be made, the designee shall pay each claim to the extent allowed, and shall serve by registered mail, on each claimant whose claim is disallowed in whole or in part, a notice of such disallowance. Within sixty days after the date of mailing of the designee's determination, any debt claimant whose claim has been disallowed in whole or in part may file in the District Court of the United States for the District of Columbia a complaint for review of such disallowance naming the designee as defendant. Such complaint shall be served on the designee. The designee, within forty-five days after service on him, shall certify and file in said court a transcript of the record of proceedings with respect to the claim in question. Upon good cause shown such time may be extended by the court. Such record shall include the claim as filed, such evidence with respect thereto as may have been presented to the designee or introduced into the record by him, and the determination of the designee with respect thereto, including any findings made by him. The court may, in its discretion, take additional evidence, upon a showing that such evidence was offered to and excluded by the designee, or could not reasonably have been adduced before him or was not available to him. The court shall enter judgment affirming, modifying, or reversing the designee's determination, and directing payment in the amount, if any, which it finds due.

**(f) Schedule of debt claims allowed; notice; review; additional evidence; intervention; judgment**

If the aggregate of debt claims filed as prescribed exceeds the money from which, in accordance with subsection (d) of this section, payment may be made, the designee shall prepare and serve by registered mail on all claimants a schedule of all debt claims allowed and the proposed payment to each claimant. In preparing such schedule, the designee shall assign priorities in accordance with subsection (g) of this section. Within sixty days after the date of mailing of such schedule, any claimant considering himself aggrieved may file in the District Court of the United States for the District of Columbia a complaint for review of such schedule, naming the designee as defendant. A copy of such complaint shall be served upon the designee and on each claimant named in the schedule. The designee within forty-five days after service on him, shall certify and file in said court a transcript of the record of proceedings with respect to such schedule. Upon good cause

shown such time may be extended by the court. Such record shall include the claims in question as filed, such evidence with respect thereto as may have been presented to the designee or introduced into the record by him, any findings or other determinations made by the designee with respect thereto, and the schedule prepared by the designee. The court may, in its discretion, take additional evidence, upon a showing that such evidence was offered to and excluded by the designee or could not reasonably have been adduced before him or was not available to him. Any interested debt claimant who has filed a claim with the designee pursuant to this section, upon timely application to the court, shall be permitted to intervene in such review proceedings. The court shall enter judgment affirming or modifying the schedule as prepared by the designee and directing payment, if any be found due, pursuant to the schedule as affirmed or modified and to the extent of the money from which, in accordance with subsection (d) of this section, payment may be made. Pending the decision of the court on such complaint for review, and pending final determination of any appeal from such decision, payment may be made only to an extent, if any, consistent with the contentions of all claimants for review.

**(g) Priority of claims**

Debt claims shall be paid in the following order of priority: (1) Wage and salary claims, not to exceed \$600; (2) claims entitled to priority under sections 3713(a) and 9309 of title 31, except as provided in subsection (h) of this section; (3) all other claims for services rendered; for expenses incurred in connection with such services, for rent, for goods and materials delivered to the debtor, and for payments made to the debtor for goods or services not received by the claimant; (4) all other debt claims. No payment shall be made to claimants within a subordinate class unless the money from which, in accordance with subsection (d) of this section, payment may be made permits payment in full of all allowed claims in every prior class.

**(h) Priority as debt due United States**

No debt of any kind shall be entitled to priority under any law of the United States or any State, Territory, or possession thereof, or the District of Columbia, solely by reason of becoming a debt due or owing to the United States as a result of its acquisition by the designee of the President under this subchapter.

**(i) Exclusiveness of relief**

The sole relief and remedy available to any person seeking satisfaction of a debt claim out of any property vested in the designee under section 1631a(a) of this title, or the proceeds thereof, shall be the relief and remedy provided in this section, and suits for the satisfaction of debt claims shall not be instituted, prosecuted, or further maintained except in conformity with this section. No person asserting any interest, right, or title in any property or proceeds acquired by the designee shall be barred from proceeding pursuant to this subchapter for the return thereof, by reason of any proceeding which he may have brought pursuant to this section; nor shall any security interest asserted by the

creditor in any such property or proceeds be deemed to have been waived solely by reason of such proceeding. Nothing contained in this section shall bar any person from the prosecution of any suit at law or in equity against the original debtor or against any other person who may be liable for the payment of any debt for which a claim might have been filed hereunder. No purchaser, lessee, licensee, or other transferee of any property from the designee shall, solely by reason of such purchase, lease, license, or transfer, become liable for the payment of any debt owed by the person who owned such property prior to its vesting in the designee. Payment by the designee to any debt claimant shall constitute, to the extent of payment, a discharge of the indebtedness represented by the claim.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title II, §208, as added Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, §3, 69 Stat. 565.)

#### CODIFICATION

In subsec. (g), "sections 3713(a) and 9309 of title 31" substituted for "sections 3466 and 3468 of the Revised Statutes (31 U.S.C., secs. 191 and 193)" on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, §4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

#### FEDERAL RULES OF CIVIL PROCEDURE

Intervention, see rule 24, Title 28, Appendix, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

One form of action, see rule 2.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1631a, 1631h, 1631f of this title.

### § 1631h. Hearings on claims; rules and regulations; delegation of powers

The officer or agency designated by the President under this subchapter to entertain claims under sections 1631f(b) and 1631g of this title shall have power to hold such hearings as may be deemed necessary; to prescribe rules and regulations governing the form and contents of claims, the proof thereof, and all other matters related to proceedings on such claims; and in connection with such proceedings to issue subpoenas, administer oaths, and examine witnesses. Such powers, and any other powers conferred upon such officer or agency by sections 1631f(b) and 1631g of this title may be exercised through subordinate officers designated by such officer or agency.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title II, §209, as added Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, §3, 69 Stat. 568.)

### § 1631i. Limitations

No suit may be instituted pursuant to section 1631f(a) of this title after the expiration of one year from the date of vesting of the property in respect of which relief is sought. No return may be made pursuant to section 1631f(b) of this title unless notice of claim has been filed within one year from the date of vesting of the property in respect of which the claim is filed.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title II, §210, as added Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, §3, 69 Stat. 568.)

### § 1631j. Fees of agents, attorneys, or representatives

No property or proceeds shall be returned under this subchapter, nor shall any payment be made or judgment awarded in respect of any property vested in any officer or agency designated by the President under this subchapter unless satisfactory evidence is furnished to said designee, or the court, as the case may be, that the aggregate of the fees to be paid to all agents, attorneys at law or in fact, or representatives, for services rendered in connection with such return or payment or judgment does not exceed 10 per centum of the value of such property or proceeds or of such payment. Any agent, attorney at law or in fact, or representative, believing that the aggregate of the fees should be in excess of such 10 per centum may, in the case of any return of, or the making of any payment in respect of, such property or proceeds by the President or such officer or agency as he may designate, petition the district court of the United States for the district in which he resides for an order authorizing fees in excess of 10 per centum and shall name such officer or agency as respondent. The court hearing such petition or a court awarding any judgment in respect of any such property or proceeds, as the case may be, shall approve an aggregate of fees in excess of 10 per centum of the value of such property or proceeds only upon a finding that there exist special circumstances of unusual hardship which require the payment of such excess. Any person accepting any fee in excess of an amount approved under this section, or retaining for more than thirty days any portion of a fee, accepted prior to such approval, in excess of the fee as approved, shall be guilty of a violation of this subchapter.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title II, §211, as added Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, §3, 69 Stat. 568.)

### § 1631k. Taxes

#### (a) Liability

The vesting in any officer or agency designated by the President under this subchapter of any property or the receipt by such designee of any earnings, increment, or proceeds thereof shall not render inapplicable any Federal, State, Territorial, or local tax for any period before or after such vesting.

#### (b) Payment by designee; liability of former owner; enforcement of tax liability; transfer of property

The officer or agency designated by the President under this subchapter shall, notwithstanding the filing of any claim or the institution of any suit under this subchapter, pay any tax incident to any such property, or the earnings, increment, or proceeds thereof, at the earliest time appearing to him to be not contrary to the interest of the United States. The former owner shall not be liable for any such tax accruing while such property, earnings, increment, or proceeds are held by such designee, unless they are returned pursuant to this subchapter without payment of such tax by the designee. Every such tax shall be paid by the designee to the same extent, as nearly as may be deemed prac-

licable, as though the property had not been vested, and shall be paid only out of the property, or earnings, increment, or proceeds thereof, to which they are incident or out of other property acquired from the same former owner, or earnings, increment, or proceeds thereof. No tax liability may be enforced from any property or the earnings, increment, or proceeds thereof while held by the designee except with his consent. Where any property is transferred, otherwise than pursuant to section 1631f(a) or 1631f(b) of this title, the designee may transfer the property free and clear of any tax, except to the extent of any lien for a tax existing and perfected at the date of vesting, and the proceeds of such transfer shall, for tax purposes, replace the property in the hands of the designee.

**(c) Computation; suspension of limitations**

Subject to the provisions of subsection (b) of this section, the manner of computing any Federal taxes, including without limitation by reason of this enumeration, the applicability in such computation of credits, deductions, and exemptions to which the former owner is or would be entitled, and the time and manner of any payment of such taxes and the extent of any compliance by the designee with provisions of Federal law and regulations applicable with respect to Federal taxes, shall be in accordance with regulations prescribed by the Secretary of the Treasury to effectuate this section. Statutes of limitations on assessments, collection, refund, or credit of Federal taxes shall be suspended with respect to any vested property or the earnings, increment, or proceeds thereof, while vested and for six months thereafter; but no interest shall be paid upon any refund with respect to any period during which the statute of limitations is so suspended.

**(d) "Tax" defined**

The word "tax" as used in this section shall include, without limitation by reason of this enumeration, any property, income, excess-profits, war-profits, excise, estate, and employment tax, import duty, and special assessment; and also any interest, penalty, additional amount, or addition thereto not arising from any act, omission, neglect, failure, or delay on the part of the designee.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title II, §212, as added Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, §3, 69 Stat. 569.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1631g of this title.

**§ 1631f. Determination of expenses and time for filing suit, notice of claim and debt claim**

Prior to covering the net proceeds of liquidation of any property into the Treasury pursuant to section 1631a(a) of this title, the designee of the President under this subchapter shall determine—

(1) the amount of his administrative expenses attributable to the performance of his functions under this subchapter with respect to such property and the proceeds thereof. The amount so determined, together with an amount not exceeding that expended or in-

curring for the conservation, preservation, or maintenance of such property and the proceeds thereof, and for taxes in respect of same, shall be deducted and retained by the designee from the proceeds otherwise covered into the Treasury; and

(2) that the time for the institution of a suit under section 1631f(a) of this title, for the filing of a notice of claim under section 1631f(b) of this title, and for the filing of debt claims under section 1631g of this title has elapsed.

The determinations of the designee under this section shall be final and conclusive.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title II, §213, as added Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, §3, 69 Stat. 570.)

**§ 1631m. Lien, attachment, garnishment, etc., of transferred property**

No property conveyed, transferred, assigned, delivered, or paid to the designee of the President under this subchapter, or the net proceeds thereof, shall be liable to lien, attachment, garnishment, trustee process, or execution, or subject to any order or decree of any court, except as provided in this subchapter.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title II, §214, as added Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, §3, 69 Stat. 570.)

**§ 1631n. Penalties**

Whoever shall willfully violate any provision of this subchapter or any rule or regulation issued hereunder, and whoever shall willfully violate, neglect, or refuse to comply with any order of the President or of a designee of the President under this subchapter, issued in compliance with the provisions of this subchapter shall be fined not more than \$5,000, or, if a natural person, imprisoned for not more than five years, or both; and the officer, director, or agent of any corporation who knowingly participates in such violation shall be punished by a like fine, imprisonment, or both.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title II, §215, as added Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, §3, 69 Stat. 570.)

**§ 1631o. Eligibility for return of interest in property**

**(a) Persons eligible; determination; prerequisites**

Notwithstanding any other provision of this chapter or any provision of the Trading With the Enemy Act, as amended, any person (1) who was formerly a national of Bulgaria, Hungary, or Rumania, and (2) who, as a consequence of any law, decree, or regulation of the nation of which he was a national discriminating against political, racial or religious groups, at no time between December 7, 1941, and the time when such law, decree, or regulation was abrogated enjoyed full rights of citizenship under the law of such nation, shall be eligible hereunder to receive the return of his interest in property which was vested under section 1631a(a) of this title or under the Trading With the Enemy Act, as amended, as the property of a corporation organized under the laws of Bulgaria, Hungary, or Rumania if 25 per centum or more of the outstanding capital stock of such corporation was owned at the date of vesting by such persons and



nationals of countries other than Bulgaria, Hungary, Rumania, Germany, or Japan, or if such corporation was subjected after December 7, 1941, under the laws of its country, to special wartime measures directed against it because of the enemy character of some or all of its stockholders; and no certificate by the Department of State as provided under section 1631f(c) of this title shall be required for such persons.

**(b) Notice of claim; time of claim; fund for payment**

An interest in property vested under the Trading With the Enemy Act, as amended, as the property of a corporation organized under the laws of Bulgaria, Hungary, or Rumania shall be subject to return under subsection (a) of this section only if a notice of claim for the return of any such interest has been timely filed under the provisions of section 33 of Title 50 Appendix, provided that application may be made therefore within six months after July 24, 1968. In the event such interest has been liquidated and the net proceeds thereof transferred to the Bulgarian Claims Fund, Hungarian Claims Fund, or Rumanian Claims Fund, the net proceeds of any other interest representing vested property held in the United States Treasury may be used for the purpose of making the return hereunder.

**(c) Finality of determination**

Determinations by the designee of the President or any other officer or agency with respect to claims under this section, including the allowance or disallowance thereof, shall be final and shall not be subject to review by any court.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title II, § 216, as added July 24, 1968, Pub. L. 90-421, § 1(7), 82 Stat. 421.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Trading With the Enemy Act, as amended, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (b), is act Oct. 6, 1917, ch. 106, 40 Stat. 411, as amended, which is classified to sections 1 to 6, 7 to 39 and 41 to 44 of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1631f of this title.

SUBCHAPTER III—CLAIMS AGAINST BULGARIA, HUNGARY, RUMANIA, ITALY, AND THE SOVIET UNION

SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in section 1642h of this title; title 50 App. section 2017g.

**§ 1641. Definitions**

As used in this subchapter the term—

(1) "Person" means a natural person, partnership, association, other unincorporated body, corporation, or body politic.

(2) "National of the United States" means (A) a natural person who is a citizen of the United States, or who owes permanent allegiance to the United States, and (B) a corporation or other legal entity which is organized under the laws of the United States, any State or Territory thereof, or the District of Columbia, if natural persons who are nationals of the

United States own, directly or indirectly, more than 50 per centum of the outstanding capital stock or other beneficial interest in such legal entity. It does not include aliens.

(3) "Treaty of peace", with respect to a country, means the treaty of peace with that country signed at Paris, France, February 10, 1947, which came into force between that country and the United States on September 15, 1947.

(4) "Memorandum of Understanding" means the Memorandum of Understanding between the United States and Italy regarding Italian assets in the United States and certain claims of nationals of the United States, signed at Washington, District of Columbia, August 14, 1947 (61 Stat. 3962).

(5) "Soviet Government" means the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics, including any of its present or former constituent republics, other political subdivisions, and any territories thereof, as constituted on or prior to November 16, 1933.

(6) "Litvinov Assignment" means (A) the communication dated November 16, 1933, from Maxim Litvinov to President Franklin D. Roosevelt, wherein the Soviet Government assigned to the Government of the United States amounts admitted or found to be due it as the successor of prior governments of Russia, or otherwise, preparatory to a final settlement of the claims outstanding between the two Governments and the claims of their nationals; (B) the communication dated November 16, 1933, from President Franklin D. Roosevelt to Maxim Litvinov, accepting such assignment; and (C) the assignments executed by Serge Ughet on August 25, 1933, and November 15, 1933, assigning certain assets to the Government of the United States.

(7) "Russian national" includes any corporation or business association organized under the laws, decrees, ordinances, or acts of the former Empire of Russia or of any government successor thereto, and subsequently nationalized or dissolved or whose assets were taken over by the Soviet Government or which was merged with any other corporation or organization by the Soviet Government.

(8) "Commission" means the Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States, established pursuant to Reorganization Plan Numbered 1 of 1954 (68 Stat. 1279).

(9) "Property" means any property, right, or interest.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title III, § 301, as added Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, § 3, 69 Stat. 570.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Reorganization Plan Numbered 1 of 1954, referred to in par. (8), is Reorg. Plan No. 1 of 1954, eff. July 1, 1954, 19 F.R. 3985, 68 Stat. 1279, which is set out as a note under section 1622 of this title.

TRANSFER OF FOREIGN CLAIMS SETTLEMENT COMMISSION OF THE UNITED STATES AS SEPARATE AGENCY WITHIN DEPARTMENT OF JUSTICE

For provisions transferring Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States as a separate agency within the Department of Justice, see section 1622a et seq. of this title.

**§ 1641a. Claims funds****(a) Establishment; coverage into Treasury; deduction**

There are created in the Treasury of the United States five funds to be known as the Bulgarian Claims Fund, the Hungarian Claims Fund, the Rumanian Claims Fund, the Italian Claims Fund, and the Soviet Claims Fund. The Secretary of the Treasury shall cover into each of the Hungarian, Rumanian, and Bulgarian Claims Funds, the funds attributable to the respective country or its nationals covered into the Treasury pursuant to subsections (a) and (b) of section 1631a of this title. The Secretary of the Treasury shall cover into the Italian Claims Fund the sum of \$5,000,000 paid to the United States by the Government of Italy pursuant to article II of the Memorandum of Understanding. The Secretary shall cover into the Treasury the funds collected by the United States pursuant to the Litvinov Assignment (including postal funds due prior to November 16, 1933, to the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics because of money orders certified to that country for payment) and shall cover into the Soviet Claims Fund the funds so covered into the Treasury. The Secretary shall deduct from each claims fund 5 per centum thereof as reimbursement to the Government of the United States for the expenses incurred by the Commission and by the Treasury Department in the administration of this subchapter. Such deduction shall be made before any payment is made out of such fund under section 1641i of this title. All amounts so deducted shall be covered into the Treasury to the credit of miscellaneous receipts.

**(b) Bulgarian and Rumanian fund**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall cover into each of the Bulgarian and Rumanian Claims Funds such sums as may be paid by the Government of the respective country pursuant to the terms of any claims settlement agreement between the Government of the United States and the Government of such country.

**(c) Hungarian fund**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall cover into the Hungarian Claims Fund, such sums as may be paid to the United States by the Government of Hungary pursuant to the terms of the United States Hungarian Claims Agreement of March 6, 1973.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title III, § 302, as added Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, § 3, 69 Stat. 571; amended July 24, 1968, Pub. L. 90-421, § 1(8), 82 Stat. 422; Oct. 20, 1974, Pub. L. 93-460, § 1(1), 88 Stat. 1386.)

## AMENDMENTS

1974—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 93-460 added subsec. (c).  
1968—Pub. L. 90-421 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsec. (b).

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1641c, 1641h of this title.

**§ 1641b. Claims of nationals of the United States against Bulgaria, Hungary, and Rumania**

The Commission shall receive and determine in accordance with applicable substantive law,

including international law, the validity and amounts of claims of nationals of the United States against the Governments of Bulgaria, Hungary, and Rumania, or any of them, arising out of the failure to—

(1) restore or pay compensation for property of nationals of the United States as required by article 23 of the treaty of peace with Bulgaria, articles 26 and 27 of the treaty of peace with Hungary, and articles 24 and 25 of the treaty of peace with Rumania. Awards under this paragraph shall be in amounts not to exceed two-thirds of the loss or damage actually sustained;

(2) pay effective compensation for the nationalization, compulsory liquidation, or other taking, prior to August 9, 1955, of property of nationals of the United States in Bulgaria, Hungary, and Rumania;

(3) meet obligations expressed in currency of the United States arising out of contractual or other rights acquired by nationals of the United States prior to April 24, 1941, in the case of Bulgaria, and prior to September 1, 1939, in the case of Hungary and Rumania, and which became payable prior to September 15, 1947;

(4) pay effective compensation for the nationalization, compulsory liquidation, or other taking of property of nationals of the United States in Bulgaria and Rumania, between August 9, 1955, and the effective date of the claims agreement between the respective country and the United States; and

(5) pay effective compensation for the nationalization, compulsory liquidation, or other taking of property of nationals of the United States in Hungary, between August 9, 1955, and the date the United States-Hungarian Claims Agreement of March 6, 1973, enters into force.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title III, § 303, as added Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, § 3, 69 Stat. 571; amended July 24, 1968, Pub. L. 90-421, § 1(9), (10), 82 Stat. 422; Oct. 20, 1974, Pub. L. 93-460, § 1(2), (3), 88 Stat. 1386.)

## AMENDMENTS

1974—Par. (5). Pub. L. 93-460, § 1(3), added par. (5).  
1968—Par. (4). Pub. L. 90-421, § 1(10), added par. (4).

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1641e, 1641i, 1641j, 1641o of this title; title 50 App. sections 2017g, 2017h, 2017i.

**§ 1641c. Claims of nationals of the United States against Italy****(a) Claims not provided for in peace treaty**

The Commission shall receive and determine, in accordance with the Memorandum of Understanding and applicable substantive law, including international law, the validity and amount of claims of nationals of the United States against the government of Italy arising out of the war in which Italy was engaged from June 10, 1940, to September 15, 1947, and with respect to which provision was not made in the treaty of peace with Italy. Upon payment of the principal amounts (without interest) of all awards from the Italian Claims Fund created pursuant to section 1641a of this title, the Commission shall de-

termine the validity and amount of any claim under this section by any natural person who was a citizen of the United States on August 9, 1955 and shall, in the event an award is issued pursuant to such claim, certify the same to the Secretary of the Treasury for payment out of remaining balances in the Italian Claims Fund in accordance with the provisions of section 1641i of this title, notwithstanding that the period of time prescribed in section 1641o of this title for the settlement of all claims under this section may have expired.

**(b) Individuals who fail to file claims**

The Commission shall receive and determine, or redetermine, as the case may be, in accordance with applicable substantive law, including international law, the validity and amounts of claims owned by person who were eligible to file claims under the first sentence of subsection (a) of this section on August 9, 1955, but failed to file such claims or, if they filed such claims, failed to file such claims within the limit of time required therefor: *Provided*, That no awards shall be made to persons who have received compensation in any amount pursuant to the treaty of peace with Italy, subsection (a) of this section, or section 2017a of title 50 Appendix.

**(c) Territory ceded by Italy**

The Commission shall receive and determine, or redetermine as the case may be, in accordance with applicable substantive law, including international law, the validity and amounts of claims owned by persons who were nationals of the United States on September 3, 1943, and July 24, 1968, against the Government of Italy which arose out of the war in which Italy was engaged from June 10, 1940, to September 15, 1947, in territory ceded by Italy pursuant to the treaty of peace with Italy: *Provided*, That no awards shall be made to persons who have received compensation in any amount pursuant to the treaty of peace with Italy or subsection (a) of this section.

**(d) Time within which to file; publication in Federal Register**

Within thirty days after July 24, 1968, or within thirty days after the date of enactment of legislation making appropriations to the Commission for payment of administrative expenses incurred in carrying out its functions under subsections (b) and (c) of this section, whichever date is later, the Commission shall publish in the Federal Register the time when and the limit of time within which claims may be filed with the Commission, which limit shall not be more than six months after such publication.

**(e) Certification of awards**

The Commission shall certify awards on claims determined pursuant to subsections (b) and (c) of this section to the Secretary of the Treasury for payment out of remaining balances in the Italian Claims Fund in accordance with the provisions of section 1641i of this title, after payment in full of all awards certified pursuant to subsection (a) of this section.

**(f) Transfers from Italian Claims Fund to War Claims Fund**

After payment in full of all awards certified to the Secretary of the Treasury pursuant to sub-

sections (a) and (e) of this section, the Secretary of the Treasury is authorized and directed to transfer the unobligated balance in the Italian Claims Fund into the War Claims Fund created by section 2012 of title 50 Appendix.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title III, §304, as added Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, §3, 69 Stat. 572; amended Aug. 8, 1958, Pub. L. 85-604, §2, 72 Stat. 531; July 24, 1968, Pub. L. 90-421, §1(11), 82 Stat. 422.)

AMENDMENTS

1968—Pub. L. 90-421 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsecs. (b) to (f).

1958—Pub. L. 85-604 authorized the Commission to determine the validity and amount of claims by natural persons who were citizens of the United States on Aug. 9, 1955.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1641i, 1641o of this title.

**§ 1641d. Claims of nationals of the United States against the Soviet Union**

**(a) Claims prior to November 16, 1933**

The Commission shall receive and determine in accordance with applicable substantive law, including international law, the validity and amounts of—

(1) claims of nationals of the United States against a Russian national originally accruing in favor of a national of the United States with respect to which a judgment was entered in, or a warrant of attachment issued from, any court of the United States or of a State of the United States in favor of a national of the United States, with which judgment or warrant of attachment a lien was obtained by a national of the United States, prior to November 16, 1933, upon any property in the United States which has been taken, collected, recovered, or liquidated by the Government of the United States pursuant to the Litvinov Assignment. Awards under this paragraph shall not exceed the proceeds of such property as may have been subject to the lien of the judgment or attachment; nor, in the event that such proceeds are less than the aggregate amount of all valid claims so related to the same property, exceed an amount equal to the proportion which each such claim bears to the total amount of such proceeds; and

(2) claims, arising prior to November 16, 1933, of nationals of the United States against the Soviet Government.

**(b) Federal and State court judgments**

Any judgment entered in any court of the United States or of a State of the United States shall be binding upon the Commission in its determination, under paragraph (1) of subsection (a) of this section, of any issue which was determined by the court in which the judgment was entered.

**(c) Preferences**

The Commission shall give preference to the disposition of the claims referred to in paragraph (1) of subsection (a) of this section, over all other claims presented to it under this subchapter.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title III, §305, as added Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, §3, 69 Stat. 572.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1641e, 1641i, 1641l, 1641o of this title.

**§ 1641e. Filing of claims; notice in Federal Register**

**(a) Time period**

Within sixty days after August 9, 1955, or within sixty days after the date of enactment of legislation making appropriations to the Commission for payment of administrative expenses incurred in carrying out its functions under paragraph (1), (2), or (3) of section 1641b of this title, whichever date is later, the Commission shall publish in the Federal Register the time when and the limit of time within which claims may be filed under paragraph (1), (2), or (3) of section 1641b of this title, which limit shall not be more than one year after such publication, except that with respect to claims under section 1641d of this title this limit shall not exceed six months.

**(b) Property taken in Bulgaria and Rumania**

Within thirty days after July 24, 1968, or the enactment of legislation making appropriations to the Commission for payment of administrative expenses incurred in carrying out its functions under paragraph (4) of section 1641b of this title, whichever is later, the Commission shall publish in the Federal Register the time when and the limit of time within which claims may be filed under paragraph (4) of section 1641b of this title, which limit shall not be more than six months after such publication.

**(c) Property taken in Hungary**

Within thirty days after October 20, 1974, or thirty days after enactment of legislation making appropriations to the Commission for payment of administrative expenses incurred in carrying out its functions under paragraph (5) of section 1641b of this title, whichever date is later, the Commission shall publish in the Federal Register the time when, and the limit of time within which, claims may be filed with the Commission under paragraph (5) of section 1641b of this title, which limit shall not be more than six months after such publication.

**(d) Failure to receive notice on Hungarian claims**

Notwithstanding any other provision of this section, any national of the United States who was mailed notice by any department or agency of the Government of the United States with respect to filing a claim against the Government of Hungary arising out of any of the failures referred to in paragraph (1), (2), or (3) of section 1641b of this title, and who did not receive the notice as the result of administrative error in placing a nonexistent address on the notice, may file with the Commission a claim under any such paragraph. The Commission shall publish in the Federal Register, within thirty days after October 20, 1974, when the limit of time within which any such claim may be filed with the Commission, which limit shall not be more than six months after such publication.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title III, §306, as added Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, §3, 69 Stat. 572; amended July 24, 1968, Pub. L. 90-421, §1(12), 82 Stat. 423; Oct. 20, 1974, Pub. L. 93-460, §1(4), 88 Stat. 1386.)

AMENDMENTS

1974—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 93-460, §1(4)(A), substituted “paragraph (1), (2), or (3) of section 1641b of this title” for “this subchapter”.

Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 93-460, §1(4)(B), added subsecs. (c) and (d).

1968—Pub. L. 90-421 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsec. (b).

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1641i, 1641o of this title.

**§ 1641f. Amount of award**

The amount of any award made pursuant to this subchapter based on a claim of a national of the United States other than the national of the United States to whom the claim originally accrued shall not exceed the amount of the actual consideration last paid therefor either prior to January 1, 1953, or between that date and the filing of the claim, whichever is less.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title III, §307, as added Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, §3, 69 Stat. 573.)

**§ 1641g. Certification of awards**

The Commission shall as soon as possible, and in the order of the making of such awards, certify to the Secretary of the Treasury, in terms of United States currency, each award made pursuant to this subchapter.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title III, §308, as added Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, §3, 69 Stat. 573.)

**§ 1641h. Funds for payment of claims**

All payments authorized under this subchapter shall be disbursed exclusively from the claims fund attributable to the country with respect to which the claims are allowed pursuant to this subchapter. All amounts covered into the Treasury to the credit of the claims funds created by section 1641a of this title are hereby permanently appropriated for the making of the payments authorized under this subchapter.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title III, §309, as added Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, §3, 69 Stat. 573.)

**§ 1641i. Payment of awards**

**(a) Manner of payment**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall make payments on account of awards certified by the Commission pursuant to this subchapter as follows:

(1) Payment in full of the principal amount of each award made pursuant to section 1641d(a)(1) of this title and each award of \$1,000 or less made pursuant to section 1641b or 1641c of this title;

(2) Payment in full of the principal amount of each award of \$1,000 or less made pursuant to section 1641d(a)(2) of this title;

(3) Payment in the amount of \$1,000 on account of the principal of each award of more than \$1,000 in amount made pursuant to section 1641b, 1641c, or 1641d(a)(2) of this title;

(4) After completing the payments under the preceding paragraphs of this subsection from any one fund, payments from time to time, in ratable proportions, on account of the then unpaid principal of all awards in the principal amount of more than \$1,000, according to the proportions which the unpaid principal of such awards bear to the total amount in the fund available for distribution on account of such awards at the time such payments are made;

(5) After payment has been made in full of the principal amounts of all awards from any one fund, pro rata payments from the remainder of such fund then available for distribution on account of accrued interest on such awards as bear interest;

(6) Whenever the Commission is authorized to settle claims by the enactment of paragraph (4) of section 1641b of this title with respect to Rumania and Bulgaria, no further payments shall be authorized by the Secretary of the Treasury on account of awards certified by the Commission pursuant to paragraph (1), (2), or (3) of section 1641b of this title of the Bulgarian or Rumanian Claims Funds, as the case may be, until payments on account of awards certified pursuant to paragraph (4) of section 1641b of this title with respect to such fund have been authorized in equal proportion to payments previously authorized on existing awards certified pursuant to paragraphs (1), (2), and (3) of section 1641b of this title.

(7)(A) Except as otherwise provided in subparagraph (D), whenever the Commission is authorized to settle claims by enactment of paragraph (5) of section 1641b of this title with respect to Hungary, no further payments shall be authorized by the Secretary of the Treasury on account of awards certified by the Commission under paragraphs (2) and (3) of section 1641b of this title out of the Hungarian Claims Fund until payments on account of awards certified under paragraph (5) of section 1641b of this title with respect to such fund have been authorized in equal proportions to payments previously authorized on existing awards certified under paragraphs (2) and (3) of section 1641b of this title.

(B) Except as otherwise provided in subparagraph (D), with respect to awards previously certified under paragraph (1) of section 1641b of this title, the Secretary of the Treasury shall not authorize any further payments until payments on account of awards certified under paragraphs (2), (3), and (5) of section 1641b of this title have been authorized in equal proportions to payments previously authorized on existing awards certified under paragraph (1) of section 1641b of this title.

(C) Except as otherwise provided in subparagraph (D), the Secretary of the Treasury shall not authorize any further payments on account of awards certified under paragraph (3) of section 1641b of this title based on Kingdom of Hungary bonds expressed in United States dollars or upon awards to Standstill creditors of Hungary that were the subject matter of the agreement of December 5, 1969, between the Government of Hungary and the American Committee for Standstill creditors of Hungary.

(D) No payments shall be authorized by the Secretary of the Treasury on account of awards certified by the Commission under paragraph (5) of section 1641b of this title, and no further payments shall be so authorized under paragraphs (1), (2), or (3) of section 1641b of this title (except payments certified as the result of claims filed under subsection (d) of section 1641e of this title), until payments on account of awards certified under such paragraphs (1), (2), and (3) as the result of a claim<sup>1</sup> filed under subsection (d) of section 1641e of this title have been authorized in equal proportions to payments previously authorized on existing awards certified under such paragraphs and arising out of claims filed other than under such subsection (d).

(E) The Secretary of the Treasury is authorized and directed to deduct the sum of \$125,000 from the Hungarian Claims Fund and cover such amount into the Treasury to the credit of miscellaneous receipts in satisfaction of the claim of the United States referred to in article 2, paragraph 4 of the United States-Hungarian Claims Agreement of March 6, 1973. Such amount shall be deducted in annual installments over the period during which the Government of Hungary makes payments to the Government of the United States as provided in article 4 of the agreement.

#### (b) Regulations

Such payments, and applications for such payments, shall be made in accordance with such regulations as the Secretary of the Treasury shall prescribe.

#### (c) "Award" defined

For the purposes of making any such payments, an "award" shall be deemed to mean the aggregate of all awards certified in favor of the same claimant and payable from the same fund.

#### (d) Consolidated award

With respect to any claim which, at the time of the award, is vested in persons other than the person to whom the claim originally accrued, the Commission may issue a consolidated award in favor of all claimants then entitled thereto, which award shall indicate the respective interests of such claimants therein; and all such claimants shall participate, in proportion to their indicated interests, in the payments provided by this section in all respects as if the award had been in favor of a single person.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title III, § 310, as added Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, § 3, 69 Stat. 573; amended July 24, 1968, Pub. L. 90-421, § 1(13), 82 Stat. 423; Oct. 20, 1974, Pub. L. 93-460, § 1(5), 88 Stat. 1386.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1974—Subsec. (a)(7). Pub. L. 93-460 added par. (7).

1968—Subsec. (a)(6). Pub. L. 90-421 added par. (6).

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1641a, 1641c of this title; title 50 App. section 20177.

#### § 1641j. Claims by corporations or other legal entities

(a) If a corporation or other legal entity has a claim on which an award may be made under

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be "claim".

this subchapter, no award may be made to any other person under this subchapter with respect to such claim.

(b) A claim based upon an interest, direct or indirect, in a corporation or other legal entity which directly suffered the loss with respect to which the claim is asserted, but which was not a national of the United States at the time of the loss, shall be acted upon without regard to the nationality of such legal entity if at the time of the loss at least 25 per centum of the outstanding capital stock or other beneficial interest in such entity was owned, directly or indirectly, by natural persons who were nationals of the United States. This subsection shall not be construed so as to exclude from eligibility a claim based upon a direct ownership interest in a corporation, association, or other entity, or the property thereof, for loss by reason of the nationalization, compulsory liquidation, or other taking of such corporation, association, or other entity by the Governments of Bulgaria, Hungary, Italy, Rumania, or the Soviet Government. Any such claim may be allowed without regard to the per centum of ownership vested in the claimant.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title III, § 311, as added Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, § 3, 69 Stat. 573; amended Aug. 8, 1958, Pub. L. 85-604, § 3(a), 72 Stat. 531.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1958—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 85-604 provided that it shall not be construed so as to exclude from eligibility a claim based upon a direct ownership interest in a corporation, association, or other entity, or the property thereof, for loss by reason of the nationalization, compulsory liquidation, or other taking, and permitted allowance of such claim without regard to the per centum of ownership vested in the claimant.

#### RECONSIDERATION OF CLAIMS

Section 3(b) of Pub. L. 85-604 provided that: "Any claim heretofore denied under subsection (b) of section 311 of the International Claims Settlement Act of 1949, as amended [subsec. (b) of this section], prior to the date of enactment of this section [Aug. 8, 1958], shall be reconsidered by the Foreign Claims Settlement Commission solely to redetermine its validity and amount by reason of the amendments made by this section [amending subsec. (b) of this section]."

#### § 1641k. Prohibition against payment of award to collaborators or disloyal persons

No award shall be made under this subchapter to or for the benefit of any person who voluntarily, knowingly, and without duress, gave aid to or collaborated with or in any manner served any government hostile to the United States during World War II, or who has been convicted of a violation of any provision of chapter 115, of title 18, or of any other crime involving disloyalty to the United States.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title III, § 312, as added Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, § 3, 69 Stat. 574.)

#### § 1641l. Unpaid balance of claim; claims of United States unaffected

Payment of any award made pursuant to section 1641b or 1641d of this title shall not, unless such payment is for the full amount of the claim, as determined by the Commission to be

valid, with respect to which the award is made, extinguish such claim, or be construed to have divested any claimant, or the United States on his behalf, of any rights against the appropriate foreign government or national for the unpaid balance of his claim or for restitution of his property. All awards or payments made pursuant to this subchapter shall be without prejudice to the claims of the United States against any foreign government.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title III, § 313, as added Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, § 3, 69 Stat. 574.)

#### § 1641m. Finality of action of Commission

The action of the Commission in allowing or denying any claim under this subchapter shall be final and conclusive on all questions of law and fact and not subject to review by any other official of the United States or by any court by mandamus or otherwise, and the Comptroller General shall allow credit in the accounts of any certifying or disbursing officer for payments in accordance with such action.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title III, § 314, as added Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, § 3, 69 Stat. 574.)

#### FEDERAL RULES OF CIVIL PROCEDURE

Relief by action or motion instead of relief by mandamus, see rule 81, Title 28, Appendix, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

#### § 1641n. Appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as may be necessary to enable the Commission and the Treasury Department to pay their administrative expenses incurred in carrying out their functions under this subchapter.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title III, § 315, as added Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, § 3, 69 Stat. 574.)

#### § 1641o. Time limitation on completion of affairs of Commission

##### (a) Claims against Russian nationals

The Commission shall complete its affairs in connection with the settlement of claims pursuant to section 1641d(a)(1) of this title not later than two years, and all other claims pursuant to this subchapter not later than four years, following August 9, 1955, or following the date of enactment of legislation making appropriations to the Commission for the payment of administrative expenses incurred in carrying out its functions under this subchapter, whichever date is later.

##### (b) Property taken in Bulgaria and Rumania; claims against Italy

The Commission shall complete its affairs in connection with the settlement of claims pursuant to paragraph (4) of section 1641b of this title and subsections (b) and (c) of section 1641c of this title not later than two years following July 24, 1968, or following the enactment of legislation making appropriations to the Commission for payment of administrative expenses incurred in carrying out its functions under paragraph (4) of section 1641b of this title and subsections (b) and (c) of section 1641c of this title, whichever is later.

**(c) Property taken in Hungary**

The Commission shall complete its affairs in connection with the settlement of claims pursuant to paragraph (5) of section 1641b of this title not later than two years following the deadline established under subsection (c) of section 1641e of this title.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title III, § 316, as added Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, § 3, 69 Stat. 574; amended July 24, 1968, Pub. L. 90-421, § 1(14), 82 Stat. 423; Oct. 20, 1974, Pub. L. 93-460, § 1(6), 88 Stat. 1387.)

## AMENDMENTS

1974—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 93-460 added subsec. (c).  
1968—Pub. L. 90-421 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsec. (b).

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1641c of this title.

**§ 1641p. Fees of agents, attorneys, or representatives****(a) Maximum remuneration; penalty for violation**

The total remuneration paid to all agents, attorneys-at-law or in fact, or representatives, for services rendered on behalf of any claimant in connection with any claim filed with the Commission shall not exceed 10 per centum of the total amount paid under this subchapter on account of such claim, or such greater amount as may be determined pursuant to subsection (b) of this section. Any agreement to the contrary shall be unlawful and void. Whoever, in the United States or elsewhere, demands or receives, on account of services so rendered, any remuneration which, together with all remuneration paid to other persons on account of such services and of which he has notice, is in excess of the maximum permitted by this section, shall be fined not more than \$5,000 or imprisoned not more than twelve months, or both.

**(b) Petition for payment in excess of maximum; determination by Commission not subject to review**

Not later than three months after the Commission has completed its affairs in connection with the settlement of all claims payable from the fund from which an award is payable, any agent, attorney-at-law or in fact, or representative who believes that the total remuneration for services rendered in connection with the claim upon which such award is made should exceed the maximum otherwise permitted by this section may, pursuant to such procedure as the Commission shall prescribe by regulation, petition the Commission for an order authorizing the payment of remuneration in excess of such maximum. The Commission shall issue such an order only upon a finding that there exist special circumstances of unusual hardship which require the payment of such excess; and such order shall state the amount of the excess which may so be paid. The determination of the Commission in ruling upon such petition shall be within the sole discretion of the Commission and shall not be subject to review by any court.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title III, § 317, as added Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, § 3, 69 Stat. 574.)

**§ 1641q. Applicability of administrative provisions of subchapter I**

The following provisions of subchapter I of this chapter shall be applicable to this subchapter: Subsections (b), (c), (d), (e), (h), and (j) of section 1623 of this title; and subsections (c), (d), (e), and (f) of section 1626 of this title.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title III, § 318, as added Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 645, § 3, 69 Stat. 575.)

SUBCHAPTER IV—CLAIMS AGAINST  
CZECHOSLOVAKIA

## CZECHOSLOVAKIAN CLAIMS SETTLEMENT ACT OF 1981

Pub. L. 97-127, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1675, provided:

## “SHORT TITLE

“SECTION 1. This Act may be cited as the ‘Czechoslovakian Claims Settlement Act of 1981’.

## “APPROVAL OF AGREEMENT

“SEC. 2. (a) The Congress hereby approves the Agreement between the Government of the United States of America and the Government of the Czechoslovak Socialist Republic on the Settlement of Certain Outstanding Claims and Financial Issues, initiated at Prague, Czechoslovakia on November 6, 1981.

“(b) The President may, without further approval by the Congress, execute such technical revisions of the Agreement approved by subsection (a) of this section as in his judgment may from time to time be required to facilitate the implementation of that Agreement. Nothing in this subsection shall be construed to authorize any revision of that Agreement to reduce any amount to be paid by the Government of the Czechoslovak Socialist Republic to the United States Government under the Agreement, or to defer the payment of any such amount.

## “DEFINITIONS

“SEC. 3. For the purposes of this Act—

“(1) ‘Agreement’ means the Agreement on the Settlement of Certain Outstanding Claims and Financial Issues approved by section 2(a) of this Act;

“(2) ‘national of the United States’ has the meaning given such term by section 401(1) of the International Claims Settlement Act of 1949 [22 U.S.C. 1642(1)];

“(3) ‘Commission’ means the Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States;

“(4) ‘Fund’ means the Czechoslovakian Claims Fund established by section 402(b) of the International Claims Settlement Act of 1949 [22 U.S.C. 1642a(b)];

“(5) ‘Secretary’ means the Secretary of the Treasury; and

“(6) ‘property’ means any property, right, or interest.

## “THE FUND

“SEC. 4. (a) The Secretary shall cover into the Fund the amount paid by the Government of the Czechoslovak Socialist Republic in settlement and discharge of claims of nationals of the United States pursuant to article 1(1) of the Agreement, and shall deduct from that amount \$50,000 for reimbursement to the United States Government for expenses incurred by the Department of the Treasury and the Commission in the administration of this Act and title IV of the International Claims Settlement Act of 1949 [this subchapter]. The amount so deducted shall be covered into the Treasury to the credit of miscellaneous receipts. The deduction required by this subsection shall be made in lieu of the deduction provided in section 402(e) of the International Claims Settlement Act of 1949 [22 U.S.C. 1642a(e)]; however, it is the sense of the Congress that the United States Government is entitled to a larger percentage of the total award (generally presumed to

be 5 percent) and that the ex gratia payment hereinafter provided to certain claimants, who were otherwise excluded from sharing in this claims settlement under generally-accepted principles of international law and United States practice, is justified only by the extraordinary circumstances of this case and does not establish any precedent for future claims negotiations or payments.

“(b) The Secretary shall establish three accounts in the Fund into which the amount covered into the Fund pursuant to subsection (a) of this section, less the deduction required by that subsection, shall be covered as follows:

“(1) An account into which \$74,550,000 shall be covered, to be available for payment in accordance with section 8 of this Act on account of awards certified pursuant to section 410 of the International Claims Settlement Act of 1949 [22 U.S.C. 1642i].

“(2) An account into which \$1,500,000 shall be covered, to be available for payment in accordance with section 8 of this Act on account of awards determined pursuant to section 5 of this Act.

“(3) An account into which the remainder of amounts in the Fund shall be covered, to be available for payment in accordance with section 8 of this Act on account of awards determined pursuant to section 6 of this Act.

#### “DETERMINATION OF CERTAIN CLAIMS

“SEC. 5. (a) The Commission shall receive and determine, in accordance with applicable substantive law, including international law, the validity and amount of claims by nationals of the United States against the Government of the Czechoslovak Socialist Republic for losses resulting from the nationalization or other taking of property owned at the time by nationals of the United States, which nationalization or other taking occurred between August 8, 1958, and the date on which the Agreement enters into force. In making the determination with respect to the validity and amount of any such claim and the value of the property taken, the Commission is authorized to accept the fair or proved value of such property as of the time when the property taken was last operated, used, managed, or controlled by the national or nationals of the United States asserting the claim, regardless of whether such time is prior to the actual date of nationalization or other taking by the Government of the Czechoslovak Socialist Republic.

“(b) The Commission shall certify to the Secretary the amount of any award determined pursuant to subsection (a).

#### “DETERMINATION OF OTHER CLAIMS

“SEC. 6. (a)(1) The Congress finds that—

“(A) in the case of certain persons holding claims against the Czechoslovakian Government who became nationals of the United States by February 26, 1948, the date on which the current Communist Government of Czechoslovakia assumed power; and

“(B) while the Commission had the authority to deny those claims described in subparagraph (A) on the basis that the properties involved had been taken by the Benes Government while the claimants were not yet nationals of the United States, the effect of that denial is to withhold compensation to persons who have been United States citizens for many years and whose expropriated property has benefited the Communist Government of Czechoslovakia no less than properties expropriated more directly and clearly by the Communist Government.

“(2)(A) It is therefore the purpose of this section, in accordance with the intent of the Congress in enacting title IV of the International Claims Settlement Act of 1949 [this subchapter] and in the interests of equity, to make ex gratia payments to the claimants described in paragraph (1) of this subsection.

“(B) The Congress reaffirms the principle and practice of the United States to seek compensation from

foreign governments on behalf only of persons who were nationals of the United States at the time they sustained losses by the nationalization or other taking of their property by those foreign governments. In making payments under this section, the Congress does not establish any precedent for future claims payments.

“(b) The Commission shall reopen and redetermine the validity and amount of any claim against the Government of Czechoslovakia which was filed with the Commission in accordance with the provisions of title IV of the International Claims Settlement Act of 1949 [this subchapter], which was based on property found by the Commission to have been nationalized or taken by the Government of Czechoslovakia on or after January 1, 1945, and before February 26, 1948, and which was denied by the Commission because such property was not owned by a person who was a national of the United States on the date of such nationalization or taking. The provisions of section 405 of the International Claims Settlement Act of 1949 [22 U.S.C. 1642d] requiring that the property upon which a claim is based must have been owned by a national of the United States on the date of nationalization or other taking by the Government of Czechoslovakia shall be deemed to be met if such property was owned on such date by a person who became a national of the United States on or before February 26, 1948. The Commission shall certify to the Secretary the amount of any award determined pursuant to this subsection.

#### “PROCEDURES

“SEC. 7. (a) The provisions of sections 401, 403, 405, 406, 407, 408, 409, 414, 415, and 416 of the International Claims Settlement Act of 1949 [22 U.S.C. 1642, 1642b, 1642d, 1642e, 1642f, 1642g, 1642h, 1642m, 1642n, and 1642o, respectively], to the extent that such provisions are not inconsistent with this Act, together with such regulations as the Commission may prescribe, shall apply with respect to any claim determined pursuant to section 5(a) of this Act or redetermined pursuant to section 6(b) of this Act.

“(b) Not later than sixty days after the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 29, 1981], the Commission shall establish and publish in the Federal Register a period of time within which claims described in section 5 of the Act must be filed with the Commission, and the date for the completion of the Commission's affairs in connection with the determination of those such claims and claims described in section 6 of this Act. Such filing period shall be not more than one year after the date of such publication in the Federal Register, and such completion date shall be not more than two years after the final date for the filing of claims under section 5. No person holding a claim to which section 6 of this Act applies shall be required to refile that claim before the Commission makes the redetermination required by that section.

#### “PAYMENT OF AWARDS

“SEC. 8. (a) As soon as practicable after the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 29, 1981], the Secretary shall make payments from amounts in the account established pursuant to section 4(b)(1) of this Act on the unpaid balance of each award certified by the Commission pursuant to section 410 of the International Claims Settlement Act of 1949 [22 U.S.C. 1642i].

“(b) As soon as practicable after the Commission has completed the certification of awards pursuant to section 5(b) of this Act, the Secretary shall make payments on account of each such award from the amounts in the account established pursuant to section 4(b)(2) of this Act.

“(c) As soon as practicable after the Commission has completed the certification of awards pursuant to section 6(b) of this Act, the Secretary shall make payments on account of each such award from the amounts in the account established pursuant to section 4(b)(3) of this Act.



“(d) In the event that—

“(1) the amounts in the account established pursuant to section 4(b)(2) of this Act exceed the aggregate total of all awards certified by the Commission pursuant to section 5(b) of this Act, or

“(2) the amounts in the account established pursuant to section 4(b)(3) of this Act exceed the aggregate total of all awards certified by the Commission pursuant to section 6(b) of this Act,

the Secretary shall cover such excess amounts into the account established pursuant to section 4(b)(1) of this Act. The Secretary shall make payments pursuant to subsection (a) of this section, from such excess amounts, on the unpaid balance of awards certified by the Commission pursuant to section 410 of the International Claims Settlement Act of 1949 [22 U.S.C. 1642i].

“(e) Payments under this section shall be made on the unpaid balance of each award which bear to such unpaid balance the same proportion as the total amount in the account in the Fund from which the payments are made bears to the aggregate unpaid balance of all awards payable from that account. Payments under this section, and applications for such payments, shall be made in accordance with such regulations as the Secretary may prescribe.

“(f) In the event that—

“(1) the Secretary is unable, within three years after the date of the establishment of the account prescribed by section 4(b)(1) of this Act, to locate any person entitled to receive payment under this section on account of an award certified by the Commission pursuant to section 410 of the International Claims Settlement Act of 1949 [22 U.S.C. 1642i] or to locate any lawful heirs, successors, or legal representatives of that person, or if no valid application for payment is made by or on behalf of that person within six months after the Secretary has located that person or that person's heirs, successors, or legal representatives; or

“(2) within six months after the Commission has completed the certification of awards pursuant to sections 5(b) and 6(b) of this Act, no valid application for payment is made by or on behalf of any person entitled to receive payment under this section on account of an award certified by the Commission pursuant to either such section,

the Secretary shall give notice by publication in the Federal Register and in such other publications as the Secretary may determine that, unless valid application for payment is made within sixty days after the date of such publication, that person's award under title IV of the International Claims Settlement Act of 1949 [this subchapter] or this Act, as the case may be, and that person's right to receive payment on account of such award, shall lapse. Upon the expiration of such sixty-day period that person's award and right to receive payment shall lapse, and the amounts payable to that person shall be paid pro rata by the Secretary on account of all other awards under title IV of the International Claims Settlement Act of 1949 [this subchapter] or this Act, as the case may be.

#### “INVESTMENT OF FUNDS

“SEC. 9. The Secretary shall invest and hold in separate accounts the amounts held respectively in the accounts established by section 4 of this Act. Such investment shall be in public debt securities with maturities suitable for the needs of the separate accounts and bearing interest at rates determined by the Secretary, taking into consideration the average market yield on outstanding marketable obligations of the United States of comparable maturities. The interest earned on the amounts in each account established by section 4 of this Act shall be used to make payments, in accordance with section 8(e) of this Act, on awards payable from that account.

#### “IMPLEMENTATION OF AGREEMENT

“SEC. 10. (a) If, within sixty days after the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 29, 1981]—

“(1) the Government of the Czechoslovak Socialist Republic does not make the payments to the United States Government described in article 6(2) of the Agreement, or

“(2) the Czechoslovak Government does not receive the gold provided in article 6(1) of the Agreement, the provisions of this Act shall cease to be effective, and the provisions of the Agreement may not be implemented unless the Congress approves the Agreement after the end of that sixty-day period.

“(b) The sixty-day period for implementation of the Agreement required by subsection (a) shall be extended by an additional period of thirty calendar days if, before the expiration of that sixty-day period, the Secretary of State certifies in writing that such extension is consistent with the purposes of this Act and reports that certification to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and to the Chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, together with a detailed statement of the reasons for the extension. If at the end of that additional thirty-day period the events set forth in paragraphs (1) and (2) of subsection (a) have not occurred, the provisions of this Act shall cease to be effective and the provisions of the Agreement may not be implemented unless the Congress approves the Agreement after the end of that thirty-day period or unless the Congress, before the expiration of that thirty-day period, authorizes by joint resolution a further extension of time for implementation of the Agreement. Such joint resolution shall be considered in the Senate in accordance with the provisions of section 601(b) of the International Security Assistance and Arms Export Control Act of 1976 [Pub. L. 94-329, title VI, §601(b), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 765], and in the House of Representatives a motion to proceed to the consideration of such joint resolution after it has been reported by the appropriate committee shall be treated as highly privileged.

#### “SOCIAL SECURITY AGREEMENT

“SEC. 11. The Secretary of State shall conduct a detailed review of the exchange of letters between the United States and Czechoslovakia providing for reciprocal social security payments to residents of the two countries. Such review should include an examination of the extent to which Czechoslovakia is complying with the spirit and provisions of the letters, a comparison of the benefits being realized by residents of Czechoslovakia and of the United States under the letters, and an evaluation of the basis of differences in such benefits. The Secretary of State, in consultation with the Department of Health and Human Services, shall report to the Congress, not later than six months after the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 29, 1981], the results of such review, together with any recommendations for legislation or changes in the agreement made by the letters that may be necessary to achieve greater comparability and equity of benefits for the residents of the two countries. Such report should include specific assessments of the feasibility, likely effects, and advisability of terminating United States social security payments to residents of Czechoslovakia in response to inequities and incomparabilities of benefits payments under the exchange of letters.”

#### § 1642. Definitions

As used in this subchapter—

(1) “National of the United States” means (A) a natural person who is a citizen of the United States, or who owes permanent allegiance to the United States, and (B) a corporation or other legal entity which is organized under the laws of the United States, any State or Territory thereof, or the District of Columbia, if natural persons who are nationals of the United States own, directly or indirectly, more than 50 per centum of the outstanding capital stock or other bene-

ficial interest in such legal entity. It does not include aliens. (2) "Commission" means the Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States, established, pursuant to Reorganization Plan Number 1 of 1954 (68 Stat. 1279). (3) "Property" means any property, right, or interest.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title IV, § 401, as added Aug. 8, 1958, Pub. L. 85-604, § 1, 72 Stat. 527.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Reorganization Plan Number 1 of 1954 (68 Stat. 1279), referred to in text, is Reorg. Plan No. 1 of 1954, eff. July 1, 1954, 19 F.R. 3985, 68 Stat. 1279, which is set out as a note under section 1622 of this title.

#### SEPARABILITY

Section 4 of Pub. L. 85-604 provided that: "If any provision of this Act [enacting this subchapter and amending sections 1641c and 1641j of this title], or the application thereof to any person or circumstances, shall be held invalid, the remainder of the Act, or the application of such provision to other persons or circumstances, shall not be affected."

#### TRANSFER OF FOREIGN CLAIMS SETTLEMENT COMMISSION OF THE UNITED STATES AS SEPARATE AGENCY WITHIN DEPARTMENT OF JUSTICE

For provisions transferring Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States as a separate agency within the Department of Justice, see section 1622a et seq. of this title.

### § 1642a. Financial provisions

#### (a) Deposit of proceeds of certain property

The Secretary of the Treasury is directed to hold, in an account in the Treasury of the United States, the net proceeds of the sale of certain Czechoslovakian steel mill equipment heretofore blocked and sold in the United States by order of the Secretary of the Treasury under authority of Executive Order Numbered 9193, dated July 6, 1942 (7 F.R. 5205, July 9, 1942).

#### (b) Creation of Czechoslovakian Claims Fund

There is created in the Treasury of the United States a fund to be designated the Czechoslovakian Claims Fund, for the payment of unsatisfied claims of nationals of the United States against Czechoslovakia as authorized in this subchapter.

#### (c) Voluntary settlement and payment of claims of nationals of the United States

If, within one year following August 8, 1958, the Government of Czechoslovakia voluntarily settles with and pays to the Government of the United States a sum in payment of claims of United States nationals against Czechoslovakia, all moneys held pursuant to subsection (a) of this section shall be disposed of in accordance with the terms of the settlement agreement with Czechoslovakia and applicable provisions of this subchapter and the sum paid by Czechoslovakia shall be covered into the Czechoslovakian Claims Fund.

#### (d) Deposit of net proceeds into Fund

Upon the expiration of one year after August 8, 1958 if no settlement with Czechoslovakia of the type specified in subsection (c) of this section has occurred, all moneys held pursuant to subsection (a) of this section except amounts

held in reserve pursuant to section 1642b of this title, shall be covered into the Czechoslovakian Claims Fund.

#### (e) Deductions for expenses

The Secretary of the Treasury shall deduct from the Czechoslovakian Claims Fund 5 per centum thereof as reimbursement to the Government of the United States for the expenses incurred by the Commission and by the Treasury Department in the administration of this subchapter. The amount so deducted shall be covered into the Treasury to the credit of miscellaneous receipts.

#### (f) Disposition of balance of Fund

After the deduction for administrative expenses pursuant to subsection (e) of this section, and after payment of awards certified pursuant to section 1642i of this title, the balance remaining in the Fund, if any, shall be paid to Czechoslovakia in accordance with instructions to be provided by the Secretary of State.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title IV, § 402, as added Aug. 8, 1958, Pub. L. 85-604, § 1, 72 Stat. 527.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Executive Order Numbered 9193, dated July 6, 1942 (7 F.R. 5205, July 9, 1942), referred to in subsec. (a), is Ex. Ord. No. 9193, July 6, 1942, 7 F.R. 5205, which amended Ex. Ord. No. 9095, formerly set out under section 6 of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense, which was revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 12553, Feb. 25, 1986, 51 F.R. 7237.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1642b of this title.

### § 1642b. Claims against United States; jurisdiction; limitation; preference; reserve fund

No judicial relief or remedy shall be available to any person asserting a claim against the United States or any officer or agent thereof with respect to any action taken under this subchapter, or any other claim for or on account of the property or proceeds described in section 1642a of this title, or for any other action taken with respect thereto except to the extent that the action complained of constitutes a taking of private property without just compensation, and to such extent the sole judicial relief and remedy available shall be an action brought against the United States in the United States Court of Federal Claims which action must be brought within one year of August 8, 1958, or it shall be forever barred; and any action so brought shall receive a preference over all actions which themselves are not given preference by statute. No other court shall have original jurisdiction to consider any such claim by mandamus or otherwise. If any action is brought pursuant to this section the Secretary of the Treasury shall set aside an appropriate reserve in the account containing the moneys held pursuant to subsection (a) of section 1642a of this title. Such reserve shall be retained pending a final determination of all issues raised in the action and recovery in any such action shall be limited to and paid out of the moneys so reserved. After a final determination of all issues raised in the action and payment of any judgment against the

United States entered pursuant thereto, any balance no longer required to be held in reserve shall be disposed of in accordance with the provisions of subsection (d) of section 1642a of this title. Nothing in this section shall be construed to create (1) any liability against the United States for any action taken pursuant to section 1642c of this title, (2) any liability against the United States in favor of the Government of Czechoslovakia, any agency or instrumentality thereof or any person who is an assignee or successor in interest thereto, or (3) any other liability against the United States.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title IV, § 403, as added Aug. 8, 1958, Pub. L. 85-604, § 1, 72 Stat. 528; amended Apr. 2, 1982, Pub. L. 97-164, title I, § 161(3), 96 Stat. 49; Oct. 29, 1992, Pub. L. 102-572, title IX, § 902(b)(1), 106 Stat. 4516.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1992—Pub. L. 102-572 substituted “United States Court of Federal Claims” for “United States Claims Court”.

1982—Pub. L. 97-164 substituted “Claims Court” for “Court of Claims”.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1992 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 102-572 effective Oct. 29, 1992, see section 911 of Pub. L. 102-572, set out as a note under section 171 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1982 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 97-164 effective Oct. 1, 1982, see section 402 of Pub. L. 97-164, set out as a note under section 171 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

#### FEDERAL RULES OF CIVIL PROCEDURE

Writ of mandamus abolished in United States district courts, but relief available by appropriate action or motion, see rule 81, Title 28, Appendix, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1642a of this title.

### § 1642c. Determination of validity and amount of claims

The Commission shall determine in accordance with applicable substantive law, including international law, the validity and amount of claims by nationals of the United States against the Government of Czechoslovakia for losses resulting from the nationalization or other taking on and after January 1, 1945, of property including any rights or interests therein owned at the time by nationals of the United States, subject, however, to the terms and conditions of an applicable claims agreement, if any, concluded between the Governments of Czechoslovakia and the United States within one year following August 8, 1958. In making the determination with respect to the validity and amount of claims and value of properties, rights, or interests taken, the Commission is authorized to accept the fair or proved value of the said property, right, or interest as of a time when the property or business enterprise taken, was last operated, used, managed or controlled by the national or nationals of the United States asserting the claim irre-

spective of whether such date is prior to the actual date of nationalization or taking by the Government of Czechoslovakia.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title IV, § 404, as added Aug. 8, 1958, Pub. L. 85-604, § 1, 72 Stat. 528.)

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1642b, 1642d, 1642e, 1642g, 1642h of this title.

### § 1642d. Nationality requirements

A claim under section 1642c of this title shall not be allowed unless the property upon which the claim is based was owned by a national of the United States on the date of nationalization or other taking thereof and unless the claim has been held by a national of the United States continuously thereafter until the date of filing with the Commission.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title IV, § 405, as added Aug. 8, 1958, Pub. L. 85-604, § 1, 72 Stat. 528.)

### § 1642e. Claims based on ownership interest in corporations or other legal entities

#### (a) Nationals of United States

A claim under section 1642c of this title, based upon an ownership interest in any corporation, association, or other entity which is a national of the United States shall be denied.

#### (b) Direct ownership

A claim under section 1642c of this title, based upon a direct ownership interest in a corporation, association, or other entity for loss by reason of the nationalization or other taking of such corporation, association, or other entity, or the property thereof, shall be allowed, subject to other provisions of this subchapter, if such corporation, association, or other entity on the date of the nationalization or other taking was not a national of the United States, without regard to the per centum of ownership vested in the claimant in any such claim.

#### (c) Indirect ownership

A claim under section 1642c of this title, based upon an indirect ownership interest in a corporation, association, or other entity for loss by reason of the nationalization or other taking of such corporation, association, or other entity, or the property thereof, shall be allowed, subject to other provisions of this subchapter, only if at least 25 per centum of the entire ownership interest thereof at the time of such nationalization or other taking was vested in nationals of the United States.

#### (d) Computation of award

Any award on a claim under subsection (b) or (c) of this section shall be calculated on the basis of the total loss suffered by such corporation, association, or other entity, and shall bear the same proportion to such loss as the ownership interest of the claimant bears to the entire ownership interest thereof.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title IV, § 406, as added Aug. 8, 1958, Pub. L. 85-604, § 1, 72 Stat. 529.)

### § 1642f. Prevention of double benefits

In determining the amount of any award by the Commission there shall be deducted all

amounts the claimant has received from any source on account of the same loss or losses with respect to which such award is made.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title, IV, §407, as added Aug. 8, 1958, Pub. L. 85-604, §1, 72 Stat. 529.)

#### § 1642g. Consolidated awards

With respect to any claim under section 1642c of this title which, at the time of the award, is vested in persons other than the person by whom the loss was sustained, the Commission may issue a consolidated award in favor of all claimants then entitled thereto, which award shall indicate the respective interests of such claimants therein, and all such claimants shall participate, in proportion to their indicated interests, in the payments authorized by this subchapter in all respects as if the award had been in favor of a single person.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title IV, §408, as added Aug. 8, 1958, Pub. L. 85-604, §1, 72 Stat. 529.)

#### § 1642h. Prohibition against payment of award to certain persons

No award shall be made on any claim under section 1642c of this title to or for the benefit of (1) any person who has been convicted of a violation of any provision of chapter 115 of title 18, or of any other crime involving disloyalty to the United States, or (2) any claimant whose claim under this subchapter is within the scope of subchapter III of this chapter.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title IV, §409, as added Aug. 8, 1958, Pub. L. 85-604, §1, 72 Stat. 529.)

#### § 1642i. Certification of awards

The Commission shall certify to the Secretary of the Treasury, in terms of United States currency, each award made pursuant to this subchapter.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title IV, §410, as added Aug. 8, 1958, Pub. L. 85-604, §1, 72 Stat. 529.)

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1642a of this title.

#### § 1642j. Time for filing of claims; notice

Within sixty days after August 8, 1958, or of legislation making appropriations to the Commission for payment of administrative expenses incurred in carrying out its functions under this subchapter, whichever date is later, the Commission shall give public notice by publication in the Federal Register of the time when, and the limit of time within which claims may be filed, which limit shall not be more than twelve months after such publication.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title IV, §411, as added Aug. 8, 1958, Pub. L. 85-604, §1, 72 Stat. 529.)

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1642k of this title.

#### § 1642k. Time limitation on completion of affairs of Commission

The Commission shall complete its affairs in connection with the settlement of claims pursu-

ant to this subchapter not later than three years following the final date for the filing of claims as provided in section 1642j of this title or following the enactment of legislation making appropriations to the Commission for payment of administrative expenses incurred in carrying out its functions under this subchapter, whichever date is later.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title IV, §412, as added Aug. 8, 1958, Pub. L. 85-604, §1, 72 Stat. 529.)

#### § 1642l. Payment of awards

##### (a) Manner of payment

The Secretary of the Treasury is authorized and directed, out of the sums covered into the Czechoslovakian Claims Fund, to make payments on account of awards certified by the Commission pursuant to this subchapter as follows and in the following order of priority:

(1) Payment in the amount of \$1,000 or in the amount of the award, whichever is less.

(2) Thereafter, payments from time to time on account of the unpaid balance of each remaining award made pursuant to this subchapter which shall bear to such unpaid balance the same proportion as the total amount in the fund available for distribution at the time such payments are made bears to the aggregate unpaid balance of all such awards.

##### (b) Regulations

Such payments, and applications for such payments, shall be made in accordance with such regulations as the Secretary of the Treasury shall prescribe.

##### (c) "Award" defined

For the purpose of making any such payments, an "award" shall be deemed to mean the aggregate of all awards certified in favor of the same claimant.

##### (d) Payment of interest of deceased persons or persons under legal disability

If any person to whom any payment is to be made pursuant to this subchapter is deceased or is under a legal disability, payment shall be made to his legal representative, except that if any payment to be made is not over \$1,000 and there is no qualified executor or administrator, payment may be made to the person or persons found by the Comptroller General to be entitled thereto, without the necessity of compliance with the requirements of law with respect to the administration of estates.

##### (e) Partial payments

Subject to the provisions of any claims agreement hereafter concluded between the Governments of Czechoslovakia and the United States, payment of any award pursuant to this subchapter shall not, unless such payment is for the full amount of the claim, as determined by the Commission to be valid, with respect to which the award is made, extinguish such claim, or be construed to have divested any claimant, or the United States on his behalf, of any rights against any foreign government for the unpaid balance of his claim.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title IV, §413, as added Aug. 8, 1958, Pub. L. 85-604, §1, 72 Stat. 530.)

**§ 1642m. Fees of attorneys; limitation; penalty**

No remuneration on account of services rendered on behalf of any claimant in connection with any claim filed with the Commission under this subchapter shall exceed 10 per centum of the total amount paid pursuant to any award certified under the provisions of this subchapter on account of such claim. Any agreement to the contrary shall be unlawful and void. Whoever, in the United States or elsewhere, demands or receives, on account of services so rendered, any remuneration in excess of the maximum permitted by this section, shall be guilty of a misdemeanor, and, upon conviction thereof, shall be fined not more than \$5,000 or imprisoned not more than twelve months, or both.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title IV, § 414, as added Aug. 8, 1958, Pub. L. 85-604, § 1, 72 Stat. 530.)

**§ 1642n. Transfer of records**

The Secretary of State is authorized and directed to transfer or otherwise make available to the Commission such records and documents relating to claims authorized by this subchapter as may be required by the Commission in carrying out its functions under this subchapter.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title IV, § 415, as added Aug. 8, 1958, Pub. L. 85-604, § 1, 72 Stat. 530.)

**§ 1642o. Applicability of administrative provisions of subchapter I**

To the extent they are not inconsistent with the provisions of this subchapter, the following provisions of subchapter I of this chapter shall be applicable to this subchapter: Subsections (b), (c), (d), (e), (h), and (j) of section 1623 of this title; subsections (c), (d), (e), and (f) of section 1626 of this title.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title IV, § 416, as added Aug. 8, 1958, Pub. L. 85-604, § 1, 72 Stat. 530.)

**§ 1642p. Authorization of appropriations**

There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as may be necessary to enable the Commission and the Treasury Department to pay their administrative expenses incurred in carrying out their functions under this subchapter.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title IV, § 417, as added Aug. 8, 1958, Pub. L. 85-604, § 1, 72 Stat. 530.)

SUBCHAPTER V—CLAIMS AGAINST CUBA  
AND CHINA

SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in section 1627 of this title.

**§ 1643. Congressional declaration of purpose**

It is the purpose of this subchapter to provide for the determination of the amount and validity of claims against the Government of Cuba, or the Chinese Communist regime, which have arisen since January 1, 1959, in the case of claims against the Government of Cuba, or since October 1, 1949, in the case of claims against the Chinese Communist regime, out of nationalization, expropriation, intervention, or other takings of, or special measures directed against,

property of nationals of the United States, and claims for disability or death of nationals of the United States arising out of violations of international law by the Government of Cuba, or the Chinese Communist regime, in order to obtain information concerning the total amount of such claims against the Government of Cuba, or the Chinese Communist regime, on behalf of nationals of the United States. This subchapter shall not be construed as authorizing an appropriation or as any intention to authorize an appropriation for the purpose of paying such claims.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title V, § 501, as added Oct. 16, 1964, Pub. L. 88-666, 78 Stat. 1110; amended Oct. 19, 1965, Pub. L. 89-262, § 1, 79 Stat. 988; Nov. 6, 1966, Pub. L. 89-780, § 1, 80 Stat. 1365.)

AMENDMENTS

1966—Pub. L. 89-780 provided for applicability of section to the Chinese Communist regime in the case of claims which have arisen since October 1, 1949.

1965—Pub. L. 89-262 struck out “which have arisen out of debts for merchandise furnished or services rendered by nationals of the United States without regard to the date on which such merchandise was furnished or services were rendered or” after “Government of Cuba” in first sentence.

SEPARABILITY

Section 513 of act Mar. 10, 1950, as added by Pub. L. 88-666, provided that: “If any provision of this Act [enacting this subchapter], or the application thereof to any person or circumstances, shall be held invalid, the remainder of the Act, or the application of such provision to other persons or circumstances, shall not be affected.”

**§ 1643a. Definitions**

For the purposes of this subchapter:

(1) The term “national of the United States” means (A) a natural person who is a citizen of the United States, or (B) a corporation or other legal entity which is organized under the laws of the United States, or of any State, the District of Columbia, or the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, if natural persons who are citizens of the United States own, directly or indirectly, 50 per centum or more of the outstanding capital stock or other beneficial interest of such corporation or entity. The term does not include aliens.

(2) The term “Commission” means the Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States.

(3) The term “property” means any property, right, or interest, including any leasehold interest, and debts owed by the Government of Cuba or the Chinese Communist regime or by enterprises which have been nationalized, expropriated, intervened, or taken by the Government of Cuba or the Chinese Communist regime and debts which are a charge on property which has been nationalized, expropriated, intervened, or taken by the Government of Cuba or the Chinese Communist regime.

(4) The term “Government of Cuba” includes the government of any political subdivision, agency, or instrumentality thereof.

(5) The term “Chinese Communist regime” means the so-called Peoples Republic of China, including any political subdivision, agency, or instrumentality thereof.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title V, § 502, as added Oct. 16, 1964, Pub. L. 88-666, 78 Stat. 1110; amended Nov. 6, 1966, Pub. L. 89-780, § 2, 80 Stat. 1365.)

AMENDMENTS

1966—Par. (3). Pub. L. 89-780, § 2(1), inserted reference to the Chinese Communist regime in three places.

Par. (5). Pub. L. 89-780, § 2(2), added par. (5).

TRANSFER OF FOREIGN CLAIMS SETTLEMENT COMMISSION OF THE UNITED STATES AS SEPARATE AGENCY WITHIN DEPARTMENT OF JUSTICE

For provisions transferring Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States as a separate agency within the Department of Justice, see section 1622a et seq. of this title.

**§ 1643b. Receipt of claims; determination of amount and validity**

**(a) Claims for property loss**

The Commission shall receive and determine in accordance with applicable substantive law, including international law, the amount and validity of claims by nationals of the United States against the Government of Cuba, or the Chinese Communist regime, arising since January 1, 1959, in the case of claims against the Government of Cuba, or since October 1, 1949, in the case of claims against the Chinese Communist regime, for losses resulting from the nationalization, expropriation, intervention, or other taking of, or special measures directed against, property including any rights or interests therein owned wholly or partially, directly or indirectly at the time by nationals of the United States, if such claims are submitted to the Commission within such period specified by the Commission by notice published in the Federal Register (which period shall not be more than eighteen months after such publication) within sixty days after October 16, 1964, or sixty days after November 6, 1966, with respect to claims against the Chinese Communist regime, or of legislation making appropriations to the Commission for payment of administrative expenses incurred in carrying out its functions with respect to each respective claims program authorized, under this subchapter, whichever date is later. In making the determination with respect to the validity and amount of claims and value of properties, rights, or interests taken, the Commission shall take into account the basis of valuation most appropriate to the property and equitable to the claimant, including but not limited to, (i) fair market value, (ii) book value, (iii) going concern value, or (iv) cost of replacement.

**(b) Claims for disability or death**

The Commission shall receive and determine in accordance with applicable substantive law, including international law, the amount and validity of claims by nationals of the United States against the Government of Cuba, or the Chinese Communist regime, arising since January 1, 1959, in the case of claims against the Government of Cuba, or since October 1, 1949, in the case of claims against the Chinese Communist regime, for disability or death resulting from actions taken by or under the authority of the Government of Cuba, or the Chinese Communist regime, if such claims are submitted to the

Commission within the period established by the Commission under subsection (a) of this section, or within six months after the date the claims first arose (as determined by the Commission), whichever date last occurs.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title V, § 503, as added Oct. 16, 1964, Pub. L. 88-666, 78 Stat. 1110; amended Oct. 19, 1965, Pub. L. 89-262, § 2, 79 Stat. 988; Nov. 6, 1966, Pub. L. 89-780, § 3, 80 Stat. 1365.)

AMENDMENTS

1966—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 89-780, § 3, empowered the Commission to receive claims against the Chinese Communist regime arising since October 1, 1949, if such claims are submitted within such period of time specified by the Commission by notice published in the Federal Register, which notice is required to be published within 60 days after November 6, 1966.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 89-780, § 3(1), (2), provided for applicability of subsection to the Chinese Communist regime in the case of claims arising since October 1, 1949.

1965—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 89-262 struck out “arising out of debts for merchandise furnished or services rendered by nationals of the United States without regard to the date on which such merchandise was furnished or services rendered or” after “Government of Cuba”.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1643c, 1643d of this title.

**§ 1643c. Ownership of claims by nationals**

**(a) Requirements for consideration of claims for property loss**

A claim shall not be considered under section 1643b(a) of this title unless the property on which the claim was based was owned wholly or partially, directly or indirectly by a national of the United States on the date of the loss and if considered shall be considered only to the extent the claim has been held by one or more nationals of the United States continuously thereafter until the date of filing with the Commission.

**(b) Requirements for consideration of claims for disability or death**

A claim for disability under section 1643b(b) of this title may be considered if it is filed by the disabled person or by his successors in interest; and a claim for death under section 1643b(b) of this title may be considered if filed by the personal representative of decedent's estate or by a person or persons for pecuniary losses and damage sustained on account of such death. A claim shall not be considered under this section unless the disabled or deceased person was a national of the United States at the time of injury or death and if considered, shall be considered only to the extent the claim has been held by a national or nationals of the United States continuously until the date of filing with the Commission.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title V, § 504, as added Oct. 16, 1964, Pub. L. 88-666, 78 Stat. 1111.)

**§ 1643d. Claims based on ownership interest in or debt or other obligations owing by corporations or other legal entities**

**(a) Nationals of the United States; charge on property**

A claim under section 1643b(a) of this title based upon an ownership interest in any cor-

poration, association, or other entity which is a national of the United States shall not be considered. A claim under section 1643b(a) of this title based upon a debt or other obligation owing by any corporation, association, or other entity organized under the laws of the United States, or of any State, the District of Columbia, or the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico shall be considered, only when such debt or other obligation is a charge on property which has been nationalized, expropriated, intervened, or taken by the Government of Cuba, or the Chinese Communist regime.

**(b) Direct ownership**

A claim under section 1643b(a) of this title based upon a direct ownership interest in a corporation, association, or other entity for loss shall be considered, subject to the other provisions of this subchapter, if such corporation, association, or other entity on the date of the loss was not a national of the United States, without regard to the per centum of ownership vested in the claimant.

**(c) Indirect ownership**

A claim under section 1643b(a) of this title based upon an indirect ownership interest in a corporation, association, or other entity for loss shall be considered, subject to the other provisions of this subchapter, only if at least 25 per centum of the entire ownership interest thereof at the time of such loss was vested in nationals of the United States.

**(d) Computation of award**

The amount of any claim covered by subsection (b) or (c) of this section shall be calculated on the basis of the total loss suffered by such corporation, association, or other entity, and shall bear the same proportion to such loss as the ownership interest of the claimant at the time of loss bears to the entire ownership interest thereof.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title V, § 505, as added Oct. 16, 1964, Pub. L. 88-666, 78 Stat. 1111; amended Oct. 19, 1965, Pub. L. 89-262, § 3, 79 Stat. 988; Nov. 6, 1966, Pub. L. 89-780, § 4, 80 Stat. 1365.)

AMENDMENTS

1966—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 89-780 provided for applicability of subsection to property nationalized or taken by the Chinese Communist regime.

1965—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 89-262 authorized consideration of claims based on debt or other obligation owing by corporations or other legal entities which is a charge on property nationalized, expropriated, intervened, or taken by Government of Cuba.

**§ 1643e. Offsets**

In determining the amount of any claim, the Commission shall deduct all amounts the claimant has received from any source on account of the same loss or losses.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title V, § 506, as added Oct. 16, 1964, Pub. L. 88-666, 78 Stat. 1112; amended Oct. 19, 1965, Pub. L. 89-262, § 4, 79 Stat. 988.)

AMENDMENTS

1965—Pub. L. 89-262 struck out proviso that the deduction of such amounts shall not be construed as divesting the United States of any rights against the Government of Cuba for the amounts so deducted.

**§ 1643f. Action of Commission with respect to claims**

**(a) Certification of amounts**

The Commission shall certify to each individual who has filed a claim under this subchapter the amount determined by the Commission to be the loss or damage suffered by the claimant which is covered by this subchapter. The Commission shall certify to the Secretary of State such amount and the basic information underlying that amount, together with a statement of the evidence relied upon and the reasoning employed in reaching its decision.

**(b) Limitation on amount of claims of assignees**

The amount determined to be due on any claim of an assignee who acquires the same by purchase shall not exceed (or, in the case of any such acquisition subsequent to the date of the determination, shall not be deemed to have exceeded) the amount of the actual consideration paid by such assignee, or in case of successive assignments of a claim by any assignee.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title V, § 507, as added Oct. 16, 1964, Pub. L. 88-666, 78 Stat. 1112.)

**§ 1643g. Transfer of records**

The Secretary of State shall transfer or otherwise make available to the Commission such records and documents relating to claims authorized by this subchapter as may be required by the Commission in carrying out its functions under this subchapter.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title V, § 508, as added Oct. 16, 1964, Pub. L. 88-666, 78 Stat. 1112.)

**§ 1643h. Applicability of administrative provisions of subchapter I**

To the extent they are not inconsistent with the provisions of this subchapter, the following provisions of subchapter I of this chapter shall be applicable to this subchapter: Subsections (b), (c), (d) (e), (h), and (j) of section 1623 of this title; subsection (f) of section 1626 of this title.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title V, § 509, as added Oct. 16, 1964, Pub. L. 88-666, 78 Stat. 1112.)

**§ 1643i. Time limitation on completion of affairs of Commission**

The Commission shall complete its affairs in connection with the settlement of claims pursuant to this subchapter not later than July 6, 1972.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title V, § 510, as added Oct. 16, 1964, Pub. L. 88-666, 78 Stat. 1112; amended Nov. 6, 1966, Pub. L. 89-780, § 5, 80 Stat. 1365; Dec. 24, 1969, Pub. L. 91-157, 83 Stat. 435.)

AMENDMENTS

1969—Pub. L. 91-157 set July 6, 1972, as the final date for the settlement of claims pursuant to this subchapter.

1966—Pub. L. 89-780 inserted “with respect to each respective claims program authorized” after “carrying out its functions”.

**§ 1643j. Authorization of appropriations**

There are hereby authorized to be appropriated such sums as may be necessary to enable

the Commission to pay its administrative expenses incurred in carrying out its functions under this subchapter.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title V, § 511, as added Oct. 16, 1964, Pub. L. 88-666, 78 Stat. 1113; amended Oct. 19, 1965, Pub. L. 89-262, § 5, 79 Stat. 988.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1965—Pub. L. 89-262 redesignated subsec. (a) as the complete section, struck out limitation of amount of appropriations to aggregate amount of net proceeds realized from sale or liquidation of property of Government of Cuba and use of funds to pay administrative expenses of the Treasury Department in carrying out its functions, and eliminated subsec. (b) providing for vesting and liquidation of Cuban property.

#### § 1643k. Fees for services; limitation; penalty

No remuneration on account of any services rendered on behalf of any claimant in connection with any claim filed with the Commission under this subchapter shall exceed 10 per centum of so much of the total amount of such claim, as determined under this subchapter, as does not exceed \$20,000, plus 5 per centum of so much of such amount, if any, as exceeds \$20,000. Any agreement to the contrary shall be unlawful and void. Whoever, in the United States or elsewhere, demands or receives on account of services so rendered, any remuneration in excess of the maximum permitted by this section, shall be fined not more than \$5,000 or imprisoned not more than twelve months, or both.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title V, § 512, as added Oct. 16, 1964, Pub. L. 88-666, 78 Stat. 1113.)

#### SUBCHAPTER VI—CLAIMS AGAINST GERMAN DEMOCRATIC REPUBLIC

#### § 1644. Congressional declaration of purpose

It is the purpose of this subchapter to provide for the determination of the validity and amounts of outstanding claims against the German Democratic Republic which arose out of the nationalization, expropriation, or other taking of (or special measures directed against) property interests of nationals of the United States. This subchapter shall not be construed as authorizing or as any intention to authorize an appropriation by the United States for the purpose of paying such claims.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title VI, § 600, as added Oct. 18, 1976, Pub. L. 94-542, 90 Stat. 2509.)

#### SEPARABILITY

Section 614 of act Mar. 10, 1950, as added by Pub. L. 94-542, provided that: "If any provisions of this Act [enacting this subchapter] or the application thereof to any person or circumstances shall be held invalid, the remainder of the Act or the application of such provision to other persons or circumstances shall not be affected."

#### § 1644a. Definitions

As used in this subchapter—

(1) The term "national of the United States" means—

(a) a natural person who is a citizen of the United States;

(b) a corporation or other legal entity which is organized under the laws of the United

States or of any State, the District of Columbia, or the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, if natural persons who are citizens of the United States own, directly or indirectly, 50 per centum or more of the outstanding capital stock or other beneficial interest of such corporation or entity. The term does not include aliens.

(2) The term "Commission" means the Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States.

(3) The term "property" means any property, right, or interest, including any leasehold interest, and debts owed by enterprises which have been nationalized, expropriated, or taken by the German Democratic Republic for which no restoration or no adequate compensation has been made to the former owners of such property.

(4) The term "German Democratic Republic" includes the government of any political subdivision, agency, or instrumentality thereof or under its control.

(5) The term "Claims Fund" is the special fund established in the Treasury of the United States composed of such sums as may be paid to the United States by the German Democratic Republic pursuant to the terms of any agreement settling such claims that may be entered into by the Governments of the United States and the German Democratic Republic.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title VI, § 601, as added Oct. 18, 1976, Pub. L. 94-542, 90 Stat. 2509.)

#### TRANSFER OF FOREIGN CLAIMS SETTLEMENT COMMISSION OF THE UNITED STATES AS SEPARATE AGENCY WITHIN DEPARTMENT OF JUSTICE

For provisions transferring Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States as a separate agency within the Department of Justice, see section 1622a et seq. of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1644g of this title.

#### § 1644b. Receipt and determination of claims; notice by publication in Federal Register

The Commission shall receive and determine in accordance with applicable substantive law, including international law, the validity and amounts of claims by nationals of the United States against the German Democratic Republic for losses arising as a result of the nationalization, expropriation, or other taking of (or special measures directed against) property, including any rights or interests therein, owned wholly or partially, directly or indirectly, at the time by nationals of the United States whether such losses occurred in the German Democratic Republic or in East Berlin. Such claims must be submitted to the Commission within the period specified by the Commission by notice published in the Federal Register (which period shall not be more than twelve months after such publication) within sixty days after October 18, 1976, or of legislation making appropriations to the Commission for payment of administrative expenses incurred in carrying out its functions under this subchapter, whichever date is later.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title VI, § 602, as added Oct. 18, 1976, Pub. L. 94-542, 90 Stat. 2510.)



## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1644c, 1644d, 1644f, 1644h, 1644i of this title.

**§ 1644c. Ownership of claims by nationals**

A claim shall not be favorably considered under section 1644b of this title unless the property right on which it is based was owned, wholly or partially, directly or indirectly, by a national of the United States on the date of loss and if favorably considered, the claim shall be considered only if it has been held by one or more nationals of the United States continuously from the date that the loss occurred until the date of filing with the Commission.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title VI, §603, as added Oct. 18, 1976, Pub. L. 94-542, 90 Stat. 2510.)

**§ 1644d. Claims based on ownership interest in or debt or other obligation owing by corporations or other legal entities****(a) Nationals of the United States; charge on property**

A claim under section 1644b of this title based upon an ownership interest in any corporation, association, or other entity which is a national of the United States, shall not be considered. A claim under section 1644b of this title based upon a debt or other obligation owing by any corporation, association, or other entity organized under the laws of the United States, or of any State, the District of Columbia, or the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico shall be considered only when such debt or other obligation is a charge on property which has been nationalized, expropriated, or taken by the German Democratic Republic.

**(b) Direct ownership**

A claim under section 1644b of this title based upon a direct ownership interest in a corporation, association, or other entity for loss, shall be considered subject to the provisions of this subchapter, if such corporation, association or other entity on the date of the loss was not a national of the United States, without regard to the per centum of ownership vested in the claimant.

**(c) Indirect ownership**

A claim under section 1644b of this title for losses based upon an indirect ownership interest in a corporation, association, or other entity, shall be considered, subject to the other provisions of this subchapter, only if at least 25 per centum of the entire ownership interest thereof, at the time of such loss, was vested in nationals of the United States.

**(d) Computation of award**

The amount of any claim covered by subsections (b) or (c) of this section shall be calculated on the basis of the total loss suffered by such corporation, association, or other entity, and shall bear the same proportion to such loss as the ownership interest of the claimant at the time of loss bears to the entire ownership interest thereof.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title VI, §604, as added Oct. 18, 1976, Pub. L. 94-542, 90 Stat. 2510.)

**§ 1644e. Offsets**

In determining the amount of any claim, the Commission shall deduct all amounts the claimant has received from any source on account of the same loss or losses, including any amount claimant received under section 2017a(a) of the Appendix to title 50, for losses which occurred as a direct consequence of special measures directed against such property in any area covered under this subchapter.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title VI, §605, as added Oct. 18, 1976, Pub. L. 94-542, 90 Stat. 2511.)

**§ 1644f. Consolidated awards**

With respect to any claim under section 1644b of this title which, at the time of the award, is vested in persons other than the person by whom the original loss was sustained, the Commission shall issue a consolidated award in favor of all claimants then entitled thereto, which award shall indicate the respective interests of such claimants therein, and all such claimants shall participate, in proportion to their indicated interests, in any payments that may be made under this subchapter in all respects as if the award had been in favor of a single person.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title VI, §606, as added Oct. 18, 1976, Pub. L. 94-542, 90 Stat. 2511.)

**§ 1644g. Claims Fund; establishment; deductions**

(a) The Secretary of the Treasury is hereby authorized to establish in the Treasury of the United States a fund to be designated the Claims Fund as defined under section 1644a(5) of this title for the payment of unsatisfied claims of nationals of the United States against the German Democratic Republic as authorized in this subchapter.

(b) The Secretary of the Treasury shall deduct from any amounts covered into the Claims Fund, an amount equal to 5 per centum thereof as reimbursement to the Government of the United States for expenses incurred by the Commission and by the Treasury Department in the administration of this subchapter. The amounts so deducted shall be covered into the Treasury to the credit of miscellaneous receipts.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title VI, §607, as added Oct. 18, 1976, Pub. L. 94-542, 90 Stat. 2511.)

**§ 1644h. Certification of amounts; priority of payments**

(a) The Commission shall certify to the Secretary of the Treasury, in terms of United States currency, each award made pursuant to section 1644b of this title.

(b) Upon certification of such award, the Secretary of the Treasury is authorized and directed, out of the sums covered into the Claims Fund, to make payments on account of such awards as follows, and in the following order of priority:

(1) payment in full of the principal amount of each award of \$1,000 or less;

(2) payment in the amount of \$1,000 on account of the principal amount of each award of more than \$1,000 in principal amount;

(3) thereafter, payments from time to time, in ratable proportions, on account of the un-

paid balance of the principal amounts of all awards according to the proportions which the unpaid balance of such awards bear to the total amount in the fund available for distribution at the time such payments are made;

(4) after payment has been made in full of the principal amounts of all awards, pro rata payments may be made on account of any interest that may be allowed on such awards;

(5) payments or applications for payments shall be made in accordance with such regulations as the Secretary of the Treasury may prescribe.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title VI, § 608, as added Oct. 18, 1976, Pub. L. 94-542, 90 Stat. 2511.)

**§ 1644i. Time limitation on completion of affairs of Commission**

The Commission shall complete its affairs in connection with the settlement of claims pursuant to this subchapter not later than three years following the final date for the filing of claims as provided in section 1644b of this title.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title VI, § 609, as added Oct. 18, 1976, Pub. L. 94-542, 90 Stat. 2512.)

**§ 1644j. Transfer of records**

The Secretary of State is authorized and directed to transfer or otherwise make available to the Commission such records and documents relating to claims authorized by this subchapter as may be required by the Commission in carrying out its functions under this subchapter.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title VI, § 610, as added Oct. 18, 1976, Pub. L. 94-542, 90 Stat. 2512.)

**§ 1644k. Authorization of appropriations**

There are hereby authorized to be appropriated such sums as may be necessary to enable the Commission and the Treasury Department of<sup>1</sup> pay their respective administrative expenses incurred in carrying out their functions under this subchapter.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title VI, § 611, as added Oct. 18, 1976, Pub. L. 94-542, 90 Stat. 2512.)

**§ 1644l. Fees for services; limitation; penalty**

No remuneration on account of services rendered on behalf of any claimant, in connection with any claim filed with the Commission under this subchapter, shall exceed 10 per centum of the total amount paid pursuant to any award certified under the provisions of this subchapter on account of such claims. Any agreement to the contrary shall be unlawful and void. Whoever, in the United States or elsewhere demands or receives, on account of services so rendered, any remuneration in excess of the maximum permitted by this section shall be guilty of a misdemeanor, and, upon conviction thereof, shall be fined not more than \$5,000 or imprisoned not more than twelve months, or both.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title VI, § 612, as added Oct. 18, 1976, Pub. L. 94-542, 90 Stat. 2512.)

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be "to".

**§ 1644m. Applicability of administrative provisions of subchapter I**

To the extent they are not inconsistent with the provisions of this subchapter, the following provisions of subchapter I of this chapter shall be applicable to this subchapter: subsections (b), (c), (d), (e), (h), and (j) of section 1623 of this title; subsections (c), (d), (e), and (f) of section 1626 of this title.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title VI, § 613, as added Oct. 18, 1976, Pub. L. 94-542, 90 Stat. 2512.)

SUBCHAPTER VII—CLAIMS AGAINST  
VIETNAM

**§ 1645. Congressional declaration of purpose**

It is the purpose of this subchapter to provide for the determination of the validity and amounts of outstanding claims against Vietnam which arose out of the nationalization, expropriation, or other taking of (or special measures directed against) property of nationals of the United States. This subchapter shall not be construed as authorizing or as any intention to authorize an appropriation by the United States for the purpose of paying such claims.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title VII, § 701, as added Dec. 28, 1980, Pub. L. 96-606, 94 Stat. 3534.)

**§ 1645a. Definitions**

As used in this subchapter—

(1) the term "National of the United States" means—

(A) a natural person who is a citizen of the United States; and

(B) a corporation or other legal entity which is organized under the laws of the United States or of any State, the District of Columbia, or the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, if natural persons who are citizens of the United States own, directly or indirectly, 50 per centum or more of the outstanding capital stock or other beneficial interest of such corporation or entity;

(2) the term "Commission" means the Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States;

(3) the term "property" means—

(A) any property, right, or interest, including any leasehold interest,

(B) any debt owed by Vietnam or by any enterprise which has been nationalized, expropriated, or otherwise taken by Vietnam, and

(C) any debt which is a charge on property which has been nationalized, expropriated, or otherwise taken by Vietnam;

(4) the term "Vietnam" means—

(A) the Government of the Socialist Republic of Vietnam,

(B) any predecessor governing authority operating in South Vietnam on or after April 29, 1975, including the Provisional Revolutionary Government of South Vietnam,

(C) the Government of the former Democratic Republic of Vietnam, and

(D) any political subdivision, agency, or instrumentality of any of the entities re-

ferred to in subparagraphs (A), (B), and (C); and

(5) the term “Claims Fund” means the special fund established in the Treasury of the United States composed of such sums as may be paid to or realized by the United States pursuant to the terms of any agreement settling those claims described in section 1645b of this title that may be entered into between the Governments of the United States and Vietnam.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title VII, §702, as added Dec. 28, 1980, Pub. L. 96-606, 94 Stat. 3534.)

**§ 1645b. Receipt and determination of claims; notice by publication in Federal Register**

The Commission shall receive and determine in accordance with applicable substantive law, including international law, the validity and amounts of claims by nationals of the United States against Vietnam arising on or after April 29, 1975, for losses incurred as a result of the nationalization, expropriation, or other taking of (or special measures directed against) property which, at the time of such nationalization, expropriation, or other taking, was owned wholly or partially, directly or indirectly, by nationals of the United States to whom no restoration or adequate compensation for such property has been made. Such claims must be submitted to the Commission within the period specified by the Commission by notice published in the Federal Register (which period shall not be more than a period of two years beginning on the date of such publication) within sixty days after December 28, 1980, or of legislation making appropriations to the Commission for payment of administrative expenses incurred in carrying out its functions under this subchapter, whichever date is later.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title VII, §703, as added Dec. 28, 1980, Pub. L. 96-606, 94 Stat. 3535.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1645a, 1645c, 1645d, 1645g, 1645i, 1645j of this title.

**§ 1645c. Ownership of claims by nationals**

A claim may be favorably considered under section 1645b of this title only if the property right on which it is based was owned, wholly or partially, directly or indirectly, by a national of the United States on the date of loss and only to the extent that the claim has been held by one or more nationals of the United States continuously from the date that the loss occurred until the date of filing with the Commission.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title VII, §704, as added Dec. 28, 1980, Pub. L. 96-606, 94 Stat. 3535.)

**§ 1645d. Claims based on ownership interest in or debt or other obligation owing by corporations or other legal entities**

**(a) Nationals of United States; charge on property**

A claim under section 1645b of this title based upon an ownership interest in any corporation, association, or other entity which is a national

of the United States may not be considered. A claim under section 1645b of this title based upon a debt or other obligation owing by any corporation, association, or other entity organized under the laws of the United States, or of any State, the District of Columbia, or the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico may be considered only if such debt or other obligation is a charge on property which has been nationalized, expropriated, or otherwise taken by Vietnam.

**(b) Direct ownership**

A claim under section 1645b of this title based upon a direct ownership interest in a corporation, association, or other entity may be considered, subject to the other provisions of this subchapter, if such corporation, association, or other entity on the date of the loss was not a national of the United States, without regard to the per centum of ownership vested in the claimant.

**(c) Indirect ownership**

A claim under section 1645b of this title based upon an indirect ownership interest in a corporation, association, or other entity may be considered, subject to the other provisions of this subchapter, only if at least 25 per centum of the entire ownership interest thereof, at the time of such loss, was vested in nationals of the United States or if, at the time of the loss, nationals of the United States in fact controlled the corporation, association, or entity, as determined by the Commission.

**(d) Computation of award**

The amount of any claim covered by subsection (b) or (c) of this section shall be calculated on the basis of the total loss suffered by the corporation, association, or other entity, with respect to which the claim is made, and shall bear the same proportion to such loss as the ownership interest of the claimant at the time of loss bears to the entire ownership interest thereof.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title VII, §705, as added Dec. 28, 1980, Pub. L. 96-606, 94 Stat. 3535.)

**§ 1645e. Offsets**

In determining the amount of any claim under this subchapter, the Commission shall deduct all amounts the claimant has received from any source on account of the same loss or losses for which the claim is filed.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title VII, §706, as added Dec. 28, 1980, Pub. L. 96-606, 94 Stat. 3536.)

**§ 1645f. Certifications; assigned claims**

(a) The Commission shall certify to each claimant who files a claim under this subchapter the amount determined by the Commission to be the loss suffered by the claimant which is covered by this subchapter. The Commission shall certify to the Secretary of State such amount and the basic information underlying that amount, together with a statement of the evidence relied upon and the reasoning employed in making that determination.

(b) In any case in which a claim under this subchapter is assigned by purchase before the

Commission determines the amount due on that claim, the amount so determined shall not exceed the amount of actual consideration paid by the last such assignee.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title VII, §707, as added Dec. 28, 1980, Pub. L. 96-606, 94 Stat. 3536.)

#### § 1645g. Consolidated awards

With respect to any claim under section 1645b of this title which, at the time of the award, is vested in persons other than the person by whom the original loss was sustained, the Commission shall issue a consolidated award in favor of all claimants then entitled to the award, which award shall indicate the respective interests of such claimants in the award, and all such claimants shall participate, in proportion to their indicated interests, in any payments that may be made under this subchapter in all respects as if the award had been in favor of a single person.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title VII, §708, as added Dec. 28, 1980, Pub. L. 96-606, 94 Stat. 3536.)

#### § 1645h. Claims Fund; establishment; deductions

(a) The Secretary of the Treasury may establish in the Treasury of the United States the Claims Fund for the payment of unsatisfied claims of nationals of the United States against Vietnam, as authorized by this subchapter.

(b) The Secretary of the Treasury shall deduct from any amounts covered into the Claims Fund an amount equal to 5 per centum thereof as reimbursement to the Government of the United States for expenses incurred by the Commission and by the Treasury Department in the administration of this subchapter. The amounts so deducted shall be covered into the Treasury as miscellaneous receipts.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title VII, §709, as added Dec. 28, 1980, Pub. L. 96-606, 94 Stat. 3536.)

#### § 1645i. Award payment procedures

##### (a) Certification of amounts

The Commission shall certify to the Secretary of the Treasury, in terms of United States currency, each award made pursuant to section 1645b of this title.

##### (b) Priority of payments

(1) Upon certification of each award made pursuant to section 1645b of this title, the Secretary of the Treasury shall, out of the sums covered into the Claims Fund, make payments on account of such awards as follows, and in the following order of priority:

(A) Payment in the amount of \$2,500 or the principal amount of the award, whichever is less.

(B) Thereafter, payments from time to time, in ratable proportions, on account of the unpaid balance of the principal amounts of all awards according to the proportions which the unpaid balance of such awards bear to the total amount in the Claims Fund available for distribution at the time such payments are made.

(2) After payment has been made in full of the principal amounts of all awards pursuant to

paragraph (1), pro rata payments may be made on account of any interest that may be allowed on such awards.

##### (c) Regulations

Payments or applications for payments under subsection (b) of this section shall be made in accordance with such regulations as the Secretary of the Treasury may prescribe.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title VII, §710, as added Dec. 28, 1980, Pub. L. 96-606, 94 Stat. 3537.)

#### § 1645j. Settlement period

The Commission shall complete its affairs in connection with the settlement of claims pursuant to this subchapter not later than three years after the final date for the filing of claims as provided in section 1645b of this title.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title VII, §711, as added Dec. 28, 1980, Pub. L. 96-606, 94 Stat. 3537.)

#### § 1645k. Transfer of records

The Secretary of State, the Secretary of the Treasury, and the Secretary of Defense shall transfer or otherwise make available to the Commission such records and documents relating to claims authorized by this subchapter as may be required by the Commission in carrying out its functions under this subchapter.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title VII, §712, as added Dec. 28, 1980, Pub. L. 96-606, 94 Stat. 3537.)

#### § 1645l. Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated for any fiscal year beginning on or after October 1, 1980, such sums as may be necessary to enable the Commission and the Treasury Department to pay their respective administrative expenses incurred in carrying out their functions under this subchapter. Amounts appropriated under this section may remain available until expended.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title VII, §713, as added Dec. 28, 1980, Pub. L. 96-606, 94 Stat. 3537.)

#### § 1645m. Fees for services; limitation; penalty

No remuneration on account of services rendered on behalf of any claimant, in connection with any claim filed with the Commission under this subchapter, shall exceed 10 per centum of the total amount paid pursuant to any award certified under the provisions of this subchapter on account of such claim. Any agreement to the contrary shall be unlawful and void. Whoever, in the United States or elsewhere, demands or receives, on account of services so rendered, any remuneration in excess of the maximum permitted by this section shall be guilty of a misdemeanor and, upon conviction thereof, shall be fined not more than \$5,000 or imprisoned not more than twelve months, or both.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title VII, §714, as added Dec. 28, 1980, Pub. L. 96-606, 94 Stat. 3537.)

#### § 1645n. Applicability of other statutory provisions

(a) To the extent they are not inconsistent with the provisions of this subchapter, the fol-

lowing provisions of subchapter I of this chapter shall be applicable to this subchapter; subsections (b), (c), (d), (e), and (h) of section 1623 of this title and subsections (c), (d), (e), and (f) of section 1626 of this title. Any reference in such provisions to “this subchapter” shall be deemed to be a reference to those provisions and to this subchapter.

(b) Except as otherwise provided in this subchapter and in those provisions of subchapter I of this chapter referred to in subsection (a) of this section, the Commission shall comply with the provisions of subchapter II of chapter 5, and the provisions of chapter 7, of title 5.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title VII, §715, as added Dec. 28, 1980, Pub. L. 96-606, 94 Stat. 3538.)

#### § 1645o. Separability

If any provision of this subchapter or the application thereof to any person or circumstances is held invalid, the remainder of this subchapter or the application of such provision to other persons or circumstances shall not be affected.

(Mar. 10, 1950, ch. 54, title VII, §716, as added Dec. 28, 1980, Pub. L. 96-606, 94 Stat. 3538.)

### CHAPTER 21A—SETTLEMENT OF INVESTMENT DISPUTES

- |        |  |
|--------|--|
| Sec.   |  |
| 1650.  | Appointments of representatives and panel members under Convention on the Settlement of Investment Disputes. |
| 1650a. | Arbitration awards under the Convention.   |
|        | (a) Treaty rights; enforcement; full faith and credit; nonapplication of Federal Arbitration Act.            |
|        | (b) Jurisdiction; amount in controversy.   |

#### § 1650. Appointments of representatives and panel members under Convention on the Settlement of Investment Disputes

The President may make such appointments of representatives and panel members as may be provided for under the convention.

(Pub. L. 89-532, §2, Aug. 11, 1966, 80 Stat. 344.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The convention, referred to in text, is the Convention on the Settlement of Investment Disputes Between States and Nationals of Other States which was signed on Aug. 27, 1965, approved by the Senate on May 16, 1966, and ratified by the President on June 1, 1966.

#### SHORT TITLE

Section 1 of Pub. L. 89-532 provided: “That this Act [enacting this chapter] may be cited as the ‘Convention on the Settlement of Investment Disputes Act of 1966.’”

#### § 1650a. Arbitration awards under the Convention

##### (a) Treaty rights; enforcement; full faith and credit; nonapplication of Federal Arbitration Act

An award of an arbitral tribunal rendered pursuant to chapter IV of the convention shall create a right arising under a treaty of the United States. The pecuniary obligations imposed by such an award shall be enforced and shall be given the same full faith and credit as if the award were a final judgment of a court of gen-

eral jurisdiction of one of the several States. The Federal Arbitration Act (9 U.S.C. 1 et seq.) shall not apply to enforcement of awards rendered pursuant to the convention.

##### (b) Jurisdiction; amount in controversy

The district courts of the United States (including the courts enumerated in section 460 of title 28) shall have exclusive jurisdiction over actions and proceedings under subsection (a) of this section, regardless of the amount in controversy.

(Pub. L. 89-532, §3, Aug. 11, 1966, 80 Stat. 344.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Chapter IV of the convention, referred to in subsection (a), contains the Arbitration provisions of the Convention on the Settlement of Investment Disputes Between States and Nationals of Other States, providing in Section 1 (Art. 36) for Request for Arbitration, Section 2 (Arts. 37 to 40) for Constitution of the Tribunal, Section 3 (Arts. 41 to 47) for powers and functions of the tribunal, Section 4 (Arts. 48, 49) for The Award, Section 5 (Arts. 50 to 52) for interpretation, revision and annulment of the award, and Section 6 (Arts. 53 to 55) for recognition and enforcement of the award.

The Federal Arbitration Act, referred to in subsection (a), is classified generally to Title 9, Arbitration.

### CHAPTER 22—MUTUAL SECURITY ASSISTANCE

#### SUBCHAPTER I—ORGANIZATION AND GENERAL PROVISIONS

#### §§ 1651 to 1675p. Repealed. Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title V, § 542(a)(9)-(11), 68 Stat. 861

Section 1651, acts Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, §2, 65 Stat. 373; June 20, 1952, ch. 449, §2, 66 Stat. 141. related to Congressional declaration of purpose.

Section 1652, acts Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §501(a)-(d), 65 Stat. 377; June 20, 1952, ch. 449, §7(b), 66 Stat. 143, related to uniform program for military, economic, and technical assistance.

Section 1653, act Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §502, 65 Stat. 378, related to administration.

Section 1654, acts Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §503, 65 Stat. 378; June 20, 1952, ch. 449, §7(c), 66 Stat. 144, related to additional primary responsibilities of director.

Section 1655, acts Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §504, 65 Stat. 379; June 20, 1952, ch. 449, §7(d)-(f), 66 Stat. 144, related to other agency personnel.

Section 1656, act Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §505, 65 Stat. 379, provided that powers of Secretary of State shall be unaffected by this chapter. See section 2382 of this title.

Section 1657, acts Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §506, 65 Stat. 379; June 20, 1952, ch. 449, §7(g), 66 Stat. 145, related to duties of Secretary of Defense. See section 2383 of this title.

Section 1658, act Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §507, 65 Stat. 380, related to coordination among representatives overseas. See section 2382 of this title.

Section 1659, act Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §508, 65 Stat. 380, provided that other laws shall be unaffected by this chapter.

Section 1660, act Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §509, 65 Stat. 380, related to detail of personnel to foreign governments and international organizations. See sections 2387 and 2388 of this title.

Section 1661, acts Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §510, 65 Stat. 381; Apr. 5, 1952, ch. 159, §1, 66 Stat. 43, related to loyalty and security investigation of employees.

Section 1662, acts Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §511, 65 Stat. 381; June 20, 1952, ch. 449, §7(h), 66 Stat. 145, related to eligibility of nations for assistance and cooperative action requirements.

Section 1663, act Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §512, 65 Stat. 382, related to future appropriation authorizations.

Section 1664, acts Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §513, 65 Stat. 382; June 20, 1952, ch. 449, §7(i), 66 Stat. 145; July 16, 1953, ch. 195, ch. VII, §§701(c), 706(b), 67 Stat. 155, 158, related to transferability of appropriations under this chapter and special use of funds. See section 2360 of this title.

Section 1665, acts Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §514, 65 Stat. 382; June 20, 1952, ch. 449, §7(j), 66 Stat. 146; July 16, 1953, ch. 195, ch. IV, §402, 67 Stat. 154, related to procurement and stimulation of production of strategic materials and appropriation.

Section 1666, act Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §515, 65 Stat. 382, related to protection of funds against attachment.

Section 1667, acts Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §516, 65 Stat. 382; June 20, 1952, ch. 449, §7(k), 66 Stat. 146; July 16, 1953, ch. 195, ch. VII, §710(a)(1), (2), 67 Stat. 161, related to encouragement of free enterprise and foreign investment, cooperation by agencies and departments, and reports. See section 2351 of this title.

Section 1668, act Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §518, 65 Stat. 383, related to patents and technical information. See section 2356 of this title.

Section 1669, act Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §518, 65 Stat. 383, required the President to transmit reports to Congress. See section 2394 of this title.

Section 1670, acts Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §519, 65 Stat. 383; June 20, 1952, ch. 449, §7(l), 66 Stat. 146, related to local currencies.

Section 1671, acts Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §520, 65 Stat. 384; July 16, 1953, ch. 195, ch. VII, §706(c), 67 Stat. 158, related to use of certain funds for investment guaranties. See section 2351 of this title.

Section 1672, acts Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §521, 65 Stat. 384; July 16, 1953, ch. 195, ch. VII, §706(f)(1), 67 Stat. 158, related to use of funds for acquisition of collective defense facilities and administrative expenses.

Section 1673, act Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §524, 65 Stat. 385, related to return of equipment and material to United States and its disposition. See section 2355 of this title.

Section 1674, act Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §529, 65 Stat. 386, related to termination of assistance by President. See section 2367 of this title.

Section 1675, acts Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §529, 65 Stat. 386; July 16, 1953, ch. VII, §706(d), 67 Stat. 158, related to expiration of program. See section 2367 of this title.

Section 1675a, act Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §532, as added June 20, 1952, ch. 449, §7(m), 66 Stat. 146, related to exemptions from contract, accounting and certain other laws. See section 2393 of this title.

Section 1675b, act Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §533, as added June 20, 1952, ch. 449, §7(m), 66 Stat. 146, related to employment of retired officers. See section 2386 of this title.

Section 1675c, act Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §534, as added June 20, 1952, ch. 449, §7(m), 66 Stat. 146; amended July 16, 1953, ch. 195, ch. VI, §601, 67 Stat. 145, related to authorization of appropriations for movement of migrants. See section 2601 of this title.

Section 1675d, act Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §535, as added June 20, 1952, ch. 449, §7(m), 66 Stat. 146; amended July 16, 1953, ch. 195, ch. VI, §604, 67 Stat. 155, related to authority to pay ocean freight charges on relief packages.

Section 1675e, act Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §536, as added June 20, 1952, ch. 449, §7(m), 66 Stat. 146, related to authority to make informational media guaranties.

Section 1675f, act Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §537, as added June 20, 1952, ch. 449, §7(m), 66 Stat. 146, related to limitations on the use of propaganda funds.

Section 1675g, act Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §538(a), (b), as added June 20, 1952, ch. 449, §7(m), 66 Stat. 146, related to participation of small business in the furnishing of commodities and services and continuation

of the Office of Small Business. See section 2352 of this title.

Section 1675h, act Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §539, as added June 20, 1952, ch. 449, §7(m), 66 Stat. 146, related to limitation on the use of counterpart funds.

Section 1675i, act Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §540, as added July 16, 1953, ch. 195, ch. I, §101, 67 Stat. 152, related to appropriations for military assistance generally.

Section 1675j, act Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §541, as added July 16, 1953, ch. 195, ch. II, §201(a), 67 Stat. 152, related to appropriations for defense, economic, and technical assistance to Europe, Nationalist China, and French Indo-China.

Section 1675k, act Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §542, as added July 16, 1953, ch. 195, ch. III, §301, 67 Stat. 153, related to appropriations for furnishing special weapons and determinations by President with respect to such weapons.

Section 1675l, act Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §543, as added July 16, 1953, ch. 195, ch. IV, §401, 67 Stat. 153, related to appropriations for defense, economic, and technical assistance in the Near East, Africa, Far East, and American Republics.

Section 1675m, act Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §546, as added July 16, 1953, ch. 195, ch. VII, §702, 67 Stat. 156, related to availability of unexpended balances. See section 2404 of this title.

Section 1675n, act Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §547, as added July 16, 1953, ch. 195, ch. VII, §706(e), 67 Stat. 158, related to use of funds in economically underdeveloped areas.

Section 1675o, act Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §548, as added July 16, 1953, ch. 195, ch. VII, §706(f)(2), 67 Stat. 159, related to increases in authorized amounts and use of foreign currency.

Section 1675p, act Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §550, as added July 16, 1953, ch. 195, ch. VII, §706(h), 67 Stat. 159, related to surplus agricultural commodities. See sections 1701 and 1704 of Title 7, Agriculture.

See section 2151 et seq. of this title.

#### SUBCHAPTER II—EUROPE; APPROPRIATIONS

#### §§ 1681, 1682. Repealed. Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title V, § 542(a)(9)–(11), 68 Stat. 861

Section 1681, acts Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title I, §101, 65 Stat. 373; June 20, 1952, ch. 449, §3, 66 Stat. 141; July 16, 1953, ch. 195, ch. VII, §§701(a), 703, 67 Stat. 155, 156, related to authorizations: amount, countries included; transfers between appropriations, notice to Congressional committees; and aid to Spain.

Section 1682, act Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, §102, as added July 16, 1953, ch. 195, ch. II, §201(b), 67 Stat. 153, related to authorization for manufacture of military equipment in France and the United Kingdom.

See section 2151 et seq. of this title.

#### SUBCHAPTER III—NEAR EAST AND AFRICA; APPROPRIATIONS

#### §§ 1691 to 1697. Repealed. Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title V, § 542(a)(9)–(11), 68 Stat. 861

Section 1691, acts Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title II, §201, 65 Stat. 374; June 20, 1952, ch. 449, §4(a), 66 Stat. 142, related to military assistance to Greece, Turkey and Iran, and authorization of amount.

Section 1692, acts Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title II, §202, 65 Stat. 375; July 16, 1953, ch. 195, ch. VII, §§701(b), 704, 67 Stat. 155, 156, related to other assistance in area of Near East and Africa and amount available.

Section 1693, acts Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title II, §203, 65 Stat. 375; June 20, 1952, ch. 449, §4(b), 66 Stat. 142, related to economic and technical assistance and authorization of amount.

Section 1694, act Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title II, §204, 65 Stat. 375, related to aid to Palestine refugees and amount available.

Section 1695, act Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title II, § 205, 65 Stat. 375, related to aid to refugees coming into Israel and amount available.

Section 1696, act Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title II, § 206, as added June 20, 1952, ch. 449, § 4(c), 66 Stat. 142; amended July 16, 1953, ch. 195, ch. V, § 501, 67 Stat. 154, related to special economic assistance.

Section 1697, act Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title V, § 549, as added July 16, 1953, ch. 195, ch. VII, § 706(g), 67 Stat. 159, related to making of a survey of refugee situation in Near East, report and recommendations.

See section 2151 et seq. of this title.

#### SUBCHAPTER IV—ASIA AND PACIFIC; APPROPRIATIONS

### §§ 1701 to 1705. Repealed. Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title V, § 542(a)(9)–(11), 68 Stat. 861

Section 1701, acts Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title III, § 301, 65 Stat. 375; June 20, 1952, ch. 449, § 5(a), 66 Stat. 142, related to authorization of amount for military assistance in general area of China, and Republics of Philippines and Korea.

Section 1702, acts Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title III, § 302(a), 65 Stat. 376; June 20, 1952, ch. 449, § 5(b), 66 Stat. 142; July 16, 1953, ch. 195, ch. VII, § 705, 67 Stat. 156, related to authorization of amount for economic and technical assistance in general area of China and Republics of Philippines and Korea.

Section 1703, acts Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 579, title III, § 303, 65 Stat. 376; June 20, 1952, ch. 449, § 5(d)–(g), 66 Stat. 143; July 16, 1953, ch. 195, ch. VI, § 605, 67 Stat. 155, related to rehabilitation of Korea.

Section 1704, act Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title III, § 304, as added July 16, 1953, ch. 195, ch. II, § 201(c), 67 Stat. 153, related to authorization of amount for aid to forces of French Indo-China.

Section 1705, act Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title III, § 302(b), as added July 16, 1953, ch. 195, ch. V, § 502, 67 Stat. 154, related to authorization of amount for economic assistance to India and Pakistan.

See section 2151 et seq. of this title.

#### SUBCHAPTER V—AMERICAN REPUBLICS AND NON-SELF-GOVERNING TERRITORIES OF THE WESTERN HEMISPHERE

### §§ 1711 to 1713. Repealed. Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title V, § 542(a)(9), (10), 68 Stat. 861

Section 1711, act Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title IV, § 401, 65 Stat. 377, related to authorization of amount for military assistance.

Section 1712, acts Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title IV, § 402, 65 Stat. 377; June 20, 1952, ch. 449, § 6, 66 Stat. 143, related to authorization of amount for technical assistance.

Section 1713, act Oct. 10, 1951, ch. 479, title IV, § 403, as added June 20, 1952, ch. 449, § 6, 66 Stat. 143, related to additional appropriations for Latin American countries

See section 2151 et seq. of this title.

#### CHAPTER 23—PROTECTION OF CITIZENS ABROAD

|       |  |
|-------|--|
| Sec.  |  |
| 1731. | Protection to naturalized citizens abroad.             |
| 1732. | Release of citizens imprisoned by foreign governments. |

### § 1731. Protection to naturalized citizens abroad

All naturalized citizens of the United States while in foreign countries are entitled to and shall receive from this Government the same protection of persons and property which is accorded to native-born citizens.

(R.S. § 2000.)

#### CODIFICATION

R.S. § 2000 derived from Act July 27, 1868, ch. 249, § 2, 15 Stat. 224.

Section was formerly classified to section 903a of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality.

#### EQUITABLE TREATMENT BY UNITED STATES OF ITS CITIZENS LIVING ABROAD

Pub. L. 95–426, title VI, § 611, Oct. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 989, as amended by Pub. L. 96–60, title IV, § 407, Aug. 15, 1979, 93 Stat. 405; Pub. L. 97–241, title V, § 505(a)(2), (b)(1), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 299, provided that: “The Congress finds that—

“(1) United States citizens living abroad should be provided fair and equitable treatment by the United States Government with regard to taxation, citizenship of progeny, veterans’ benefits, voting rights, Social Security benefits, and other obligations, rights, and benefits; and

“(2) United States statutes and regulations should be designed so as not to create competitive disadvantage for individual American citizens living abroad or working in international markets.”

### § 1732. Release of citizens imprisoned by foreign governments

Whenever it is made known to the President that any citizen of the United States has been unjustly deprived of his liberty by or under the authority of any foreign government, it shall be the duty of the President forthwith to demand of that government the reasons of such imprisonment; and if it appears to be wrongful and in violation of the rights of American citizenship, the President shall forthwith demand the release of such citizen, and if the release so demanded is unreasonably delayed or refused, the President shall use such means, not amounting to acts of war and not otherwise prohibited by law, as he may think necessary and proper to obtain or effectuate the release; and all the facts and proceedings relative thereto shall as soon as practicable be communicated by the President to Congress.

(R.S. § 2001; Pub. L. 101–222, § 9, Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1900.)

#### CODIFICATION

R.S. § 2001 derived from act July 27, 1868, ch. 249, § 3, 15 Stat. 224.

Section was formerly classified to section 903b of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality.

#### AMENDMENTS

1989—Pub. L. 101–222 inserted “and not otherwise prohibited by law” after “acts of war”.

#### RELEASE OF AMERICAN HOSTAGES IN IRAN

For Executive Order provisions relating to the release of the American hostages in Iran, see Ex. Ord. Nos. 12276 to 12285, Jan. 19, 1981, 46 F.R. 7913 to 7932, set out as notes under section 1701 of Title 50, War and National Defense.

### CHAPTER 24—MUTUAL SECURITY PROGRAM

#### SUBCHAPTER I—GENERAL AND ADMINISTRATIVE PROVISIONS

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| Sec.           |   |
| 1750 to 1753a. | Repealed.   |
| 1754.          | Foreign currencies.   |
|                | (a) Availability and use.   |
|                | (b) Availability to Members and employees of Congress; authorization requirements; reports. |

Sec.

1755 to 1782. Repealed or Omitted.

1783. Coordination with foreign policy.

1784 to 1795. Repealed.

1796. Participation in Joint Commission on Rural Reconstruction in China.

1797. Repealed.

#### SUBCHAPTER II—MILITARY ASSISTANCE

1811 to 1834. Repealed.

#### SUBCHAPTER III—ECONOMIC ASSISTANCE

##### PART A—DEFENSE SUPPORT

1841 to 1852. Repealed.

1853. Assistance to Yugoslavia.

1854. Repealed.

##### PART B—DEVELOPMENT LOAN FUND

1870 to 1876. Repealed.

##### PART C—TECHNICAL COOPERATION

1891 to 1896. Repealed.

1896a. Restriction on commitments for technical assistance.

1896b. Colombo Plan Council for Technical Cooperation; authorization.

1897, 1898. Repealed.

##### PART D—SPECIAL ASSISTANCE AND OTHER PROGRAMS

1920, 1921. Repealed.

1922. Surplus agricultural commodities; funds for shipments.

1923 to 1927. Repealed.

1928. North Atlantic Treaty Organization.

(a) Authorization for expenses.

(b) Appointment of personal representative.

(c) Duration of staff service.

1928a. North Atlantic Treaty Parliamentary Conference; participation; appointment of United States Group.

1928b. Authorization of appropriations.

1928c. Report to the Congress.

1928d. Auditing and accounting.

1928e. North Atlantic Assembly; appropriations for expenses of annual meeting.

1929 to 1936. Repealed.

1937. Irish counterpart account; approval of disposition.

1938 to 1941. Repealed.

1942. Development assistance in Latin America; Congressional declaration of policy.

1943. Authorization of appropriations; restrictions; reports to Congressional committees.

1944. Reconstruction assistance in Chile; authorization of appropriations.

1945. Utilization of funds for assistance in Latin America; availability for transportation of immigrants from Ryukyuan Archipelago.

#### SUBCHAPTER IV—CONTINGENCY FUND

1951. Repealed.

#### CHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This chapter is referred to in sections 1945, 2103 of this title; title 26 sections 995, 1441.

#### SUBCHAPTER I—GENERAL AND ADMINISTRATIVE PROVISIONS

### §§ 1750 to 1753a. Repealed. Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 642(a)(2), (5), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460

Section 1750, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, § 2, formerly ch. IV, § 549, as added July 8, 1955, ch. 301, § 11, 69 Stat. 289, renumbered and amended July 18, 1956, ch. 627, § 2, 70 Stat. 555; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, § 2, 73 Stat. 246; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, § 2, 74 Stat. 134, stated the

Congressional declaration of purpose for this chapter. See section 2151 et seq. of this title.

Section 1750a, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. V, § 503, June 30, 1958, 72 Stat. 275, related to strengthening cooperation in the Western Hemisphere.

Section 1750b, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, § 552, as added May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. IV, § 401(m), 74 Stat. 140, prohibited assistance to Cuba. See section 2370 of this title.

Section 1751, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, § 545, 68 Stat. 862; July 18, 1956, ch. 627, § 11(b), 70 Stat. 565; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. IV, § 401(i), ch. V, § 501(31)-(33), 72 Stat. 270, 272, defined terms used in this chapter. See section 2403 of this title.

Section 1752, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, § 546, 68 Stat. 863; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, § 11(c), 71 Stat. 365, related to construction and application of this chapter.

Section 1753, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, § 501, 68 Stat. 849; July 18, 1956, ch. 627, § 9(a), 70 Stat. 560, authorized transferability of funds. See section 2360 of this title.

Section 1753a, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, § 551, as added July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. IV, § 401(m), 73 Stat. 255; amended Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-735, § 4, 74 Stat. 870, provided for limitations on the use of the President's special authority.

#### TRANSFER OF FUNDS TO CARRY OUT INTERNATIONAL EDUCATIONAL EXCHANGE ACTIVITIES

Section 13 of act July 18, 1956, ch. 627, 70 Stat. 565, was repealed by Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 642(a)(4). Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460.

### § 1754. Foreign currencies

#### (a) Availability and use

Notwithstanding section 1306 of title 31, or any other provision of law, proceeds of sales made under section 1675p<sup>1</sup> of this title, shall remain available and shall be used for any of the purposes of this chapter, giving particular regard to the following purposes—

(1) for providing military assistance to nations or mutual defense organizations eligible to receive assistance under this chapter;

(2) for purchase of goods or services in friendly nations;

(3) for loans, under applicable provisions of this chapter, to increase production of goods or services, including strategic materials, needed in any nation with which an agreement was negotiated, or in other friendly nations, with the authority to use currencies received in repayment for the purposes stated in the section or for deposit to the general account of the Treasury of the United States;

(4) for developing new markets on a mutually beneficial basis;

(5) for grants-in-aid to increase production for domestic needs in friendly countries; and

(6) for purchasing materials for United States stockpiles.

#### (b) Availability to Members and employees of Congress; authorization requirements; reports

(1)(A) Notwithstanding section 1306 of title 31, or any other provision of law—

(i) local currencies owned by the United States which are in excess of the amounts reserved under section 2362(a) of this title and of the requirements of the United States Govern-

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.



ment in payment of its obligations outside of the United States, as such requirements may be determined from time to time by the President; and

(ii) any other local currencies owned by the United States in amounts not to exceed the equivalent of \$75 per day per person or the maximum per diem allowance established under the authority of subchapter I of chapter 57 of title 5 for employees of the United States Government while traveling in a foreign country, whichever is greater, exclusive of the actual cost of transportation;

shall be made available to Members and employees of the Congress for their local currency expenses when authorized as provided in subparagraph (B).

(B) The authorization required for purposes of subparagraph (A) may be provided—

(i) by the Speaker of the House of Representatives in the case of a Member or employee of the House;

(ii) by the chairman of a standing or select committee of the House of Representatives in the case of a member or employee of that committee;

(iii) by the President of the Senate, the President pro tempore of the Senate, the Majority Leader of the Senate, or the Minority Leader of the Senate, in the case of a Member or employee of the Senate;

(iv) by the chairman of a standing, select, or special committee of the Senate in the case of a member or employee of that committee or of an employee of a member of that committee; and

(v) by the chairman of a joint committee of the Congress in the case of a member or employee of that committee.

(C) Whenever local currencies owned by the United States are not otherwise available for purposes of this subsection, the Secretary of the Treasury shall purchase such local currencies as may be necessary for such purposes, using any funds in the Treasury not otherwise appropriated.

(2) On a quarterly basis, the chairman of each committee of the House of Representatives or the Senate and of each joint committee of the Congress (A) shall prepare a consolidated report (i) which itemizes the amounts and dollar equivalent values of each foreign currency expended and the amounts of dollar expenditures from appropriated funds in connection with travel outside the United States, stating the purposes of the expenditures including per diem (lodging and meals), transportation, and other purposes, and (ii) which shows the total itemized expenditures, by such committee and by each member or employee of such committee (including in the case of a committee of the Senate, each employee of a member of the committee who received an authorization under paragraph (1) from the chairman of the committee); and (B) shall forward such consolidated report to the Clerk of the House of Representatives (if the committee is a committee of the House of Representatives or a joint committee whose funds are disbursed by the Clerk of the House) or to the Secretary of the Senate (if the committee is

a committee of the Senate or a joint committee whose funds are disbursed by the Secretary of the Senate). Each such consolidated report shall be open to public inspection and shall be published in the Congressional Record within ten legislative days after the report is forwarded pursuant to this paragraph. In the case of the Select Committee on Intelligence of the Senate and the Permanent Select Committee on Intelligence of the House of Representatives, such consolidated report may, in the discretion of the chairman of the committee, omit such information as would identify the foreign countries in which members and employees of that committee traveled.

(3)(A) Each Member or employee who receives an authorization under paragraph (1) from the Speaker of the House of Representatives, the President of the Senate, the President pro tempore of the Senate, the Majority Leader of the Senate, or the Minority Leader of the Senate, shall within thirty days after the completion of the travel involved, submit a report setting forth the information specified in paragraph (2), to the extent applicable, to the Clerk of the House of Representatives (in the case of a Member of the House or an employee whose salary is disbursed by the Clerk of the House) or the Secretary of the Senate (in the case of a Member of the Senate or an employee whose salary is disbursed by the Secretary of the Senate). In the case of an authorization for a group of Members or employees, such reports shall be submitted for all Members of the group by its chairman, or if there is no designated chairman, by the ranking Member or if the group does not include a Member, by the senior employee in the group. Each report submitted pursuant to this subparagraph shall be open to public inspection.

(B) On a quarterly basis, the Clerk of the House of Representatives and the Secretary of the Senate shall each prepare a consolidation of the reports received by them under this paragraph with respect to expenditures during the preceding quarter by each Member and employee or by each group in the case of expenditures made on behalf of a group which are not allocable to individual members of the group. Each such consolidation shall be open to public inspection and shall be published in the Congressional Record within ten legislative days after its completion.

(Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, §502, 68 Stat. 849; Sept. 3, 1954, ch. 1262, §104, 68 Stat. 1223; July 8, 1955, ch. 301, §9(a), 69 Stat. 288; July 18, 1956, ch. 627, §9(b), 70 Stat. 560; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. IV, §401(a), 72 Stat. 268; Aug. 27, 1958, Pub. L. 85-766, ch. X, §1001, 72 Stat. 880; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. IV, §401(a), 74 Stat. 138; July 12, 1960, Pub. L. 86-628, title I, §105(a), 74 Stat. 460; Sept. 4, 1961, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §642(a)(2), 75 Stat. 460; Oct. 7, 1964, Pub. L. 88-633, pt. IV, §402, 78 Stat. 1015; Oct. 18, 1973, Pub. L. 93-126, §5, 87 Stat. 452; Aug. 13, 1974, Pub. L. 93-371, §107, 88 Stat. 444; July 25, 1975, Pub. L. 94-59, title XI, §1105, 89 Stat. 299; Dec. 18, 1975, Pub. L. 94-157, title I, ch. IV, 89 Stat. 837; July 12, 1976, Pub. L. 94-350, title IV, §402, 90 Stat. 833; Oct. 1, 1976, Pub. L. 94-440, title I, §109, 90 Stat. 1445; Sept. 26, 1978, Pub. L. 95-384, §22(a), 92 Stat. 742.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 1675p of this title, referred to in subsec. (a), was repealed by section 542(a)(9) of act Aug. 26, 1954, and is covered by section 1922 of this title.

## CODIFICATION

In subssecs. (a) and (b)(1)(A), “section 1306 of title 31” substituted for “section 1415 of the Supplemental Appropriation Act, 1953 [31 U.S.C. 724]” on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, §4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

## AMENDMENTS

1978—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 95-384, among other changes, inserted provisions requiring authorization by certain individuals of local currency expenses of members of employees of Congress and requiring each member or employee who has received an authorization for his local currency expenses to submit a report within 30 days setting forth certain specified information.

1976—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 94-440 inserted “and the Select Committee on Intelligence of the Senate” after “Joint Committee on Congressional Operations” and inserted provision authorizing chairman of the Select Committee on Intelligence of the Senate to omit information from the consolidated report that would identify the foreign countries in which members and employees of such committee traveled.

Pub. L. 94-350 required publication of each consolidated report in the Congressional Record within ten legislative days after being forwarded pursuant to subsec. (b).

1975—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 94-157 made local currencies available to Joint Committee on Congressional Operations.

Pub. L. 94-59 struck out provisions requiring each member or employee to make, to the chairman of the committee in accordance with regulations prescribed by the committee, an itemized report showing the amounts and dollar equivalent values of each foreign currency expended and the amounts of dollar expenditures made from appropriated funds in connection with travel outside the United States, together with the purposes of the expenditure, including lodging, meals, transportation, and other purposes, and, in the provision requiring a consolidated report by the chairman of each committee within the first sixty-days that Congress is in session in each calendar year, inserted requirement that such report itemize those items, struck out references to subcommittees, substituted “Committee on House Administration” for “Clerk”, and inserted provision for public inspection.

1974—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 93-371 inserted provisions requiring each member or employee of any committee to make to the chairman, in accordance with prescribed regulations, an itemized report showing the amounts of foreign currency expended and dollar expenditure made from appropriated funds in connection with travel outside the United States, and substituted provisions relating to the preparation and submission of a consolidated report by the chairman, within the first sixty days that Congress is in session in each calendar year, showing total itemized expenditures during the preceding calendar year of the committee, for provisions relating to the submission by the Department of State to the chairman of each committee, within the first ninety calendar days that Congress is in session in each calendar year, showing amounts and equivalent dollar values of foreign currency expended during the preceding calendar year for travel outside the United States.

1973—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 93-126 substituted “\$75” for “\$50” and “shall be made available to Members and employees of appropriate committees” for “shall be made available to appropriate committees” and substituted a reporting procedure under which the Department of State, within the first 90 calendar days that Congress is in session in each calendar year, submits a report cov-

ering the amounts and dollar equivalent values of each foreign currency expended by each Member and employee with respect to travel outside the United States, with such report to be available for public inspection, for a reporting procedure under which both the amounts and dollar equivalent values of each foreign currency expended and the amount of dollar expenditures made from appropriated funds with respect to travel outside the United States were reported within the first 60 days that Congress was in session in each calendar year, with each such report published in the Congressional Record.

1964—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 88-633 inserted “which are in excess of the amounts reserved under section 2362(a) of this title and of the requirements of the United States Government in payment of its obligations outside the United States, as such requirements may be determined from time to time by the President (and any other local currencies owned by the United States in amounts not to exceed the equivalent of \$50 per day per person exclusive of the actual cost of transportation)”.

1961—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 87-195 repealed subsec. (c) which related to the preservation of cultural monuments of the Upper Nile.

1960—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 86-628 required inclusion in the reports of expenditures of each member and employee of the committees and subcommittees.

Pub. L. 86-472, §401(a)(1), required members and employees of committees to report the amounts of dollar expenditures made from appropriated funds in connection with travel outside the United States, and provided that the consolidated report shall show the total itemized expenditures incurred as a result of official activities of members and employees of committees or subcommittees.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 86-472, §401(a)(2), added subsec. (c).

1958—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 85-766 required reports to the Select Committee on Astronautics and Space Exploration of the House of Representatives and the Special Committee on Space and Astronautics of the Senate.

Pub. L. 85-477 required each member or employee of the committees to make an itemized report to the chairman of his committee, provided that the chairman shall consolidate the reports and forward the consolidated report to the appropriate Congressional committee within the first 60 days that Congress is in session in each year, and required publication of each report in the Congressional Record.

1956—Subsec. (b). Act July 18, 1956, substituted “Joint Economic Committee and the Select Committees on Small Business of the Senate and House of Representatives” for “Joint Committee on the Economic Report”.

1955—Subsec. (b). Act July 8, 1955, authorized the use of local currencies by the Joint Committee on Atomic Energy and the Joint Committee on the Economic Report.

1954—Subsec. (b). Act Sept. 3, 1954, substituted “Committee on Appropriations of the Senate” for “Committee on Rules and Administration of the Senate”.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Section 22(b) of Pub. L. 95-384 provided that: “Notwithstanding section 30 of this Act [set out as a note below], the amendment made by subsection (a) of this section [amending this section] shall take effect on the date of enactment of this Act [Sept. 26, 1978].”

## SHORT TITLE OF 1960 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 86-735, Sept. 8, 1960, 74 Stat. 869, as amended, which enacted sections 1942 to 1945 of this title and amended section 1753a of this title, is known as the “Latin American Development Act”. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1942 of this title and Tables.

## SHORT TITLE

Section 1 of act Aug. 26, 1954, as amended by acts July 8, 1955, ch. 301, 69 Stat. 283; July 18, 1956, ch. 627, §§2-11,

70 Stat. 555; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, 71 Stat. 355; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. 1, §§101-103, ch. II, §§201-205, ch. III, §301, ch. IV, §401, ch. V, §501, 72 Stat. 261; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, §2, ch. 1, §101, ch. II, §§201-205(a)-(i), (k)-(n), ch. III, §301, ch. IV, §401(a)-(k), (m), 73 Stat. 246; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. I to V, 74 Stat. 134, provided: "That this act [enacting this chapter, section 281b-2 of this title, section 151c of former Title 5, Executive Departments and Government Officers and Employees, amending sections 279a, 281b, 290b, 1148, 1442, and 2658 of this title, section 1704 of Title 7, Agriculture, section 1441 of Title 26, Internal Revenue Code, and section 1641 of Title 50, App., War and National Defense, and enacting provisions set out as notes under section 1751 of this title] may be cited as the 'Mutual Security Act of 1954'."

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

Certain functions of Clerk of House of Representatives transferred to Director of Non-legislative and Financial Services by section 7 of House Resolution No. 423, One Hundred Second Congress, Apr. 9, 1992. Director of Non-legislative and Financial Services replaced by Chief Administrative Officer of House of Representatives by House Resolution No. 6, One Hundred Fourth Congress, Jan. 4, 1995.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of the Treasury pursuant to section 1-501(a)(3) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56675, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

#### INTERNATIONAL SECURITY ASSISTANCE ACT OF 1978 NOT TO AFFECT AUTHORIZATIONS OF APPROPRIATIONS AND LIMITATIONS OF AUTHORITY APPLICABLE TO FISCAL YEAR 1978

Section 30 of Pub. L. 95-384 provided that: "Enactment of this Act [see Short Title of 1978 Amendment note set out under section 2151 of this title] shall not affect the authorizations of appropriations and limitations of authority applicable to the fiscal year 1978 which are contained in provisions of law amended by this Act (other than sections 31(a), (b), and (d) of the Arms Export Control Act [section 2771(a), (b), and (d) of this title])."

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3007 of this title.

#### §§ 1755 to 1759. Repealed. Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 642(a)(2), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460

Section 1755, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, §503, 68 Stat. 850; July 8, 1955, ch. 301, §9(b), 69 Stat. 288; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, §9(a), 71 Stat. 363; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. V, §501(17), 72 Stat. 271; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. IV, §401(a), 73 Stat. 252, provided for termination of assistance under this chapter. See section 2367 of this title.

Section 1756, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, §504, 68 Stat. 851; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, §9(b), 71 Stat. 363; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. V, §501(18), 72 Stat. 271; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. IV, §401(b), 73 Stat. 252; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. IV, §401(b), 74 Stat. 139, related to small business participation in furnishing of commodities and services. See section 2352 of this title.

Section 1757, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, §505, 68 Stat. 851; July 8, 1955, ch. 301, §9(c), 69 Stat. 288; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, §9(c), 71 Stat. 363; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. IV, §401(c), 73 Stat. 252; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. IV, §401(c), 74 Stat. 139, provided for manner and terms of furnishing loan assistance and sales. See section 2395 of this title.

Section 1758, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, §506, 68 Stat. 852, related to patents and technical information. See section 2356 of this title.

Section 1759, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, §507, 68 Stat. 852; July 18, 1956, ch. 627, §9(c), 70 Stat. 560, related to availability of funds.

#### § 1759a. Repealed. Pub. L. 86-108, ch. IV, § 401(l), July 24, 1959, 73 Stat. 255

Section, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, §549, as added July 18, 1956, ch. 627, §1(d), 70 Stat. 565; amended Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, §11(e), 71 Stat. 365; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. V, §501(34), 72 Stat. 272, authorized an amount equal to 25 per centum of funds authorized to be appropriated for any fiscal year for purposes of sections 1891 to 1896, 1897, 1898, or 1923 of this title to be continued available for three months beyond end of fiscal year for which appropriated.

#### § 1760. Repealed. Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 642(a)(2), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460

Section, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, §508, 68 Stat. 853, prohibited use of funds for propaganda purposes.

#### § 1760a. Omitted

#### CODIFICATION

Section, which limited use of counterpart funds with respect to payment of debts of foreign countries, was enacted as a part of section 105 of the Mutual Security Appropriation Act, 1958, Pub. L. 85-279, §105, Sept. 3, 1957, 71 Stat. 603, and was not repeated in subsequent appropriation acts.

#### §§ 1761 to 1765. Repealed. Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 642(a)(2), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460

Section 1761, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, §509, 68 Stat. 853; July 8, 1955, ch. 301, §9(d), 69 Stat. 288; July 18, 1956, ch. 627, §9(d), 70 Stat. 560; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, §9(d), 71 Stat. 363; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. IV, §401(b), 72 Stat. 269, related to shipping on United States vessels. See section 2353 of this title.

Section 1762, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, §510, 68 Stat. 853; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. IV, §401(c), ch. V, §501(19), 72 Stat. 269, 271; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. IV, §401(d), 73 Stat. 253, related to purchase of commodities in bulk and to surplus agricultural commodities. See section 2354 of this title.

Section 1763, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, §511, 68 Stat. 853; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, §9(e), 71 Stat. 363; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. V, §501(20), (21), 72 Stat. 271, provided for preservation of military stock and retention and return of equipment. See section 2355 of this title.

Section 1764, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, §512, 68 Stat. 854, prescribed penalties for accepting commissions, etc., for procurement services by United States officers and employees.

Section 1765, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, §513, as added Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, §9(f), 71 Stat. 363; amended June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. V, §501(22), 72 Stat. 271; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. IV, §401(d), 74 Stat. 139, provided for notice to legislative committees. See section 2394(d) of this title.

#### § 1766. Omitted

#### CODIFICATION

Section, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, §514, 68 Stat. 854, related to reservation of foreign currencies or credits owed to or by the United States by the Secretary of the Treasury for sale to the Department of State for international educational exchange activities on basis of dollar value at time of reservation. See sections 2362 and 2455 of this title.

#### §§ 1766a to 1766c. Repealed. Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 642(a)(2), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460

Section 1766a, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, §515, as added July 18, 1956, ch. 627, §9(e), 70 Stat. 560, related

to authorization for grant of contract authority. See section 2365 of this title.

Section 1766b, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, § 516, as added June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. IV, § 401(d), 72 Stat. 269, prohibited use of funds for debt retirement.

Section 1766c, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, § 517, as added June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. IV, § 401(d), 72 Stat. 269; amended July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. IV, § 401(e), 73 Stat. 253; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. IV, § 401(e), 74 Stat. 139, related to completion of plans and cost estimates, and to computation of benefits and costs. See section 2361 of this title.

**§ 1767. Repealed. Pub. L. 85-141, § 11(d), Aug. 14, 1957, 71 Stat. 365**

Section, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title V, § 547, 68 Stat. 864, provided for a general limitation on authorizations.

**§§ 1767a, 1768. Repealed. Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 642(a)(2), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460**

Section 1767a, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, § 548, as added July 8, 1955, ch. 301, § 11, 69 Stat. 289; amended July 18, 1956, ch. 627, § 11(c), 70 Stat. 565, related to availability of unexpended balances of funds. See section 2404 of this title.

Section 1768, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, § 543, 68 Stat. 861; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, § 11(a), 71 Stat. 365; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. IV, § 401(g), 72 Stat. 270; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. IV, § 401(k), 73 Stat. 255, contained savings provisions. See section 2392 of this title.

**§§ 1781, 1782. Repealed. Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 642(a)(2), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460**

Section 1781, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, § 521, 68 Stat. 855; July 18, 1956, ch. 627, § 10(a), 70 Stat. 560; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, § 10(a), 71 Stat. 363; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. V, § 501(24), (25), 72 Stat. 271, empowered the President to delegate his authority and provided for the promulgation of rules and regulations. See section 2381 of this title.

Section 1782, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, § 522, 68 Stat. 855; July 18, 1956, ch. 627, § 10(b), 70 Stat. 560; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. V, § 501(26), 72 Stat. 272, related to allocation and transfer of funds among Government agencies, utilization of services and facilities, reimbursement for military assistance, commodities, services, and facilities, establishment of accounts, and to charge of expenses to appropriation. See section 2392 of this title.

**§ 1783. Coordination with foreign policy**

(a) to (c) Repealed. Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 642(a)(2), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460.

(d) Whenever the President determines that the prevention of improper currency transactions in a given country requires it, he may direct the chief of the United States diplomatic mission there to issue regulations applicable to members of the Armed Forces and officers and employees of the United States Government, and to contractors with the United States Government and their employees, governing the extent to which their pay and allowances received and to be used in that country shall be paid in local currency. Notwithstanding any other law, United States Government agencies are authorized and directed to comply with such regulations.

(Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, § 523, 68 Stat. 856; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, § 10(b), 71 Stat. 364; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. V, § 501(27), 72 Stat. 272; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. IV,

§ 401(f), 73 Stat. 253; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. IV, § 401(f), 74 Stat. 139; Sept. 4, 1961, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 642(a)(2), pt. IV, § 707, 75 Stat. 460, 464.)

AMENDMENTS

1961—Subsecs. (a) to (c). Pub. L. 87-195, § 642(a)(2), repealed subsecs. (a) to (c) which related to powers and functions of the Secretary of State, required the President to prescribe procedures to assure coordination among representatives of the Government, and made the Secretary of State responsible for the continuous supervision and general direction of the assistance programs. See section 2382 of this title.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 87-195, § 707, substituted “prevention of improper currency transactions” for “achievement of United States foreign policy objectives”.

1960—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 86-472 added subsec. (d).

1959—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 86-108, § 401(f)(1), required the chief of the diplomatic mission to make sure that recommendations of representatives pertaining to military assistance are coordinated with political and economic considerations.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 86-108, § 401(f)(2), substituted provisions making the Secretary of State responsible for the continuous supervision and general direction of the assistance programs for provisions which required the Secretary of State to coordinate the various forms of assistance and to determine the value of the program under subchapter II of this chapter for any country.

1958—Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 85-477 substituted “subchapter II of this chapter” for “sections 1811 to 1817 of this title”.

1957—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 85-141 added subsec. (c).

REPEALS

Section 707 of Pub. L. 87-195, cited as a credit to this section, was repealed by section 401 of Pub. L. 87-565, pt. IV, Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 263, except insofar as section 707 affected this section.

STUDY OF AGENCIES ENGAGED IN FOREIGN ECONOMIC ACTIVITIES

Section 604 of Pub. L. 86-472, ch. VI, May 14, 1960, 74 Stat. 141, which related to study of agencies engaged in foreign economic activities, was repealed by Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 642(a)(8), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460.

**§§ 1784 to 1795. Repealed. Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 642(a)(2), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460**

Section 1784, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, § 524, 68 Stat. 856; July 8, 1955, ch. 301, § 10(a), 69 Stat. 288; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, § 10(c), 71 Stat. 364; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. V, § 501(28), 72 Stat. 272, prescribed duties of Secretary of Defense. See section 2383 of this title.

Section 1785, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, § 525, 68 Stat. 856; July 8, 1955, ch. 301, § 10(b), 69 Stat. 288; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, § 10(d), 71 Stat. 364, authorized transfer of functions of Foreign Operations Administration.

Section 1786, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, § 526, 68 Stat. 857; July 8, 1955, ch. 301, § 10(c), 69 Stat. 289, authorized maintenance of special missions and staffs abroad. See section 2391 of this title.

Section 1787, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, § 527, 68 Stat. 857; July 31, 1956, ch. 804, title I, § 113, 70 Stat. 740; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, § 10(e), 71 Stat. 364; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. IV, § 401(e), 72 Stat. 269; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. IV, § 401(g), 73 Stat. 253; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. IV, § 401(g), ch. V, § 501(c), (d), 74 Stat. 139, 140, related to employment of personnel. See section 2385 of this title.

Section 1788, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, § 528, 68 Stat. 858, authorized detail of personnel to foreign governments. See section 2387 of this title.

Section 1789, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, § 529, 68 Stat. 858, authorized detail of personnel to international organizations. See section 2388 of this title.

Section 1790, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, § 530, 68 Stat. 859; July 8, 1955, ch. 301, § 10(d), 69 Stat. 289; July 18, 1956, ch. 627, § 10(c), 70 Stat. 561; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. V, § 501(e), 74 Stat. 140, authorized employment of experts and consultants. See section 2386 of this title.

Section 1791, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, § 531, 68 Stat. 859; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. IV, § 401(h), 74 Stat. 139, related to security clearance.

Section 1792, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, § 532, 68 Stat. 859; July 18, 1956, ch. 627, § 10(d), 70 Stat. 561, related to exemption of personnel from certain Federal laws. See section 2386 of this title.

Section 1793, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, § 533, 68 Stat. 860, provided for waiver of certain Federal laws. See section 2393 of this title.

Section 1793a, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, § 533A, as added July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. IV, § 401(h), 73 Stat. 253; amended May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. IV, § 401(i), 74 Stat. 140, established Office of Inspector General and Comptroller and transferred certain functions thereto. See section 2384 of this title.

Section 1794, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. V, § 534, 68 Stat. 860; July 8, 1955, ch. 301, § 10(e), 69 Stat. 289; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, § 10(f), 71 Stat. 364; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. IV, § 401(i), 73 Stat. 254; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. IV, § 401(j), 74 Stat. 140, provided for reports to Congress and for furnishing documents and other material to General Accounting Office and committees of Congress. See section 2394 of this title.

Section 1794a, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, § 550, as added July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. IV, § 401(m), 73 Stat. 255, required President to make public information concerning mutual security program not deemed to be incompatible with security of United States. See section 2394(b) of this title.

Section 1795, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, § 535, 68 Stat. 860; July 18, 1956, ch. 627, § 10(e), 70 Stat. 561; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, § 10(g), 71 Stat. 364, related to cooperation with nations and international organizations.

#### § 1796. Participation in Joint Commission on Rural Reconstruction in China

The President is authorized to continue to participate in the Joint Commission on Rural Reconstruction in China and to appoint citizens of the United States to the Commission.

(Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, § 536, 68 Stat. 861.)

#### § 1797. Repealed. Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 642(a)(2), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460

Section, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. IV, § 537, as added July 18, 1956, ch. 627, § 10(f), 70 Stat. 561; amended Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, § 6, 10(h), 71 Stat. 357, 364; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. IV, § 401(f), ch. V, § 501(29), 72 Stat. 270, 272; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. IV, § 401(j), 73 Stat. 255; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. IV, § 401(k), (l), ch. V, § 501(f), 74 Stat. 140, related to uses of funds under this chapter. See section 2396 of this title.

#### SUBCHAPTER II—MILITARY ASSISTANCE

#### §§ 1811 to 1817. Repealed. Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 642(a)(2), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460

Section 1811, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. I, § 101, 68 Stat. 833, stated the Congressional declaration of purpose for military assistance. See section 2301 of this title.

Section 1811a, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, § 2, formerly ch. IV, § 549, as added July 8, 1955, ch. 301, § 11, 69 Stat. 289, renumbered and amended July 18, 1956, ch. 627, § 2, 70 Stat. 555; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, § 2, 73 Stat. 246; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, § 2, 74 Stat. 134, stated the Congressional declaration of purpose for this chapter. See sections 2151 and 2301 of this title.

Section 1812, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. I, § 102, 68 Stat. 833, related to the basis and terms of military assistance. See section 2395 of this title.

Section 1813, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. I, § 103, 68 Stat. 833; July 8, 1955, ch. 301, § 2(a)–(c), 69 Stat. 283; July 18, 1956, ch. 627, § 3(a), 70 Stat. 555; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, § 2(a), 71 Stat. 355; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. I, § 101, 72 Stat. 261; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. I, § 101(a), 73 Stat. 247; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. I, § 101(a), 74 Stat. 134, authorized appropriations for military assistance. See section 2312 of this title.

Section 1814, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. I, § 104, 68 Stat. 834; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, § 2(b), 71 Stat. 356, authorized NATO infrastructure contributions.

Section 1815, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. I, § 105, 68 Stat. 834; July 8, 1955, ch. 301, § 2(d)–(f), 69 Stat. 284; July 18, 1956, ch. 627, § 3(b), 70 Stat. 555; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, § 2(c), 71 Stat. 356; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. I, §§ 102, 103, 72 Stat. 262; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. I, § 101(b), 73 Stat. 247; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. I, § 101(b), 74 Stat. 134, prescribed the conditions and eligibility for military assistance. See section 2314 of this title.

Section 1816, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. I, § 106, 68 Stat. 836, authorized the President to sell military equipment, materials and services and prescribed the manner of payment. See sections 2342 and 2343 of this title.

Section 1817, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. I, § 107, 68 Stat. 836; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, § 2(d), 71 Stat. 356, authorized the waiver of certain laws. See section 2393 of this title.

#### § 1818. Repealed. Pub. L. 85-141, § 2(e), Aug. 14, 1957, 71 Stat. 356

Section, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title I, § 108, 68 Stat. 837; July 8, 1955, ch. 301, § 2(g), 69 Stat. 284, authorized, until June 30, 1956, the transfer of military equipment and supplies to Japan.

#### § 1819. Repealed. Pub. L. 95-148, title I, Oct. 31, 1977, 91 Stat. 1232

Section, act Aug. 2, 1955, ch. 491, § 108, 69 Stat. 438, related to an accounting for military assistance funds.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Pub. L. 95-148 provided that the repeal of this section is effective Oct. 1, 1977.

#### §§ 1831 to 1834. Repealed. Pub. L. 85-141, § 3, Aug. 14, 1957, 71 Stat. 356

Section 1831, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title 1, § 121, 68 Stat. 837; July 8, 1955, ch. 301, § 3(a), 69 Stat. 284, authorized appropriations for assistance for Southeast Asia and Western Pacific for the fiscal year 1955.

Sections 1832, 1833, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title I, §§ 122, 123, 68 Stat. 837, 838, authorized appropriations for fiscal year 1955 for manufacture in United Kingdom of military aircraft, and for provision of any common-use equipment, materials, commodities, or services which are to be used by military forces of nations receiving assistance.

Section 1834, act Aug. 20, 1954, ch. 937, title I, § 124, as added July 8, 1955, ch. 301, § 3(b), 69 Stat. 284, authorized appropriations for fiscal year 1956 to provide assistance in form of direct forces support to be delivered or rendered directly to military forces of nations eligible for military assistance.

#### SUBCHAPTER III—ECONOMIC ASSISTANCE

#### PART A—DEFENSE SUPPORT

#### § 1841. Repealed. Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 642(a)(2), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460

Section, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. II, § 131, 68 Stat. 838; July 8, 1955, ch. 301, § 4, 69 Stat. 284; July 18, 1956,

ch. 627, § 4, 70 Stat. 556; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, § 4(a), 71 Stat. 356; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. II, § 201, ch. V, § 501(3), (4), 72 Stat. 262, 270; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. II, § 201, 73 Stat. 248; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. II, § 201(a), (b), 74 Stat. 134, authorized economic assistance to sustain and increase the military effort and provided for executive authority to furnish assistance, appropriations, marine insurance and assistance for Korea. See section 2354(d) of this title.

**§ 1842. Repealed. Pub. L. 85-141, § 4(b), Aug. 14, 1957, 71 Stat. 356**

Section, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title I, § 132, 68 Stat. 838, authorized appropriations for defense support, relief and rehabilitation, and other necessary assistance for those parts of Korea which the President determined to be not under Communist control.

**§§ 1851, 1852. Repealed. Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 642(a)(2), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460**

Section 1851, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. II, § 141, 68 Stat. 839; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. V, § 501(6), 72 Stat. 270; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. II, § 201(c), 74 Stat. 135, prescribed conditions of eligibility.

Section 1852, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. II, § 142, 68 Stat. 839; July 8, 1955, ch. 301, § 5, 69 Stat. 285; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, § 5(a), 71 Stat. 356; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. II, § 202, ch. V, § 501(7, 8), 72 Stat. 262, 271; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. II, § 202, 73 Stat. 248; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. II, § 201(d), 74 Stat. 135, related to agreements by recipient nations for furnishing of defense support or military equipment and materials.

**§ 1853. Assistance to Yugoslavia**

In furnishing assistance to Yugoslavia, the President shall continuously assure himself (1) that Yugoslavia continues to maintain its independence, (2) that Yugoslavia is not participating in any policy or program for the Communist conquest of the world, and (3) that the furnishing of such assistance is in the interest of the national security of the United States. The President shall keep the Foreign Relations Committee and the Appropriations Committee of the Senate and the Speaker of the House of Representatives fully and constantly informed of any assistance furnished to Yugoslavia under this chapter.

(Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. II, § 143, as added July 18, 1956, ch. 627, § 5, 70 Stat. 556; amended Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, § 5(b), 71 Stat. 356.)

AMENDMENTS

1957—Pub. L. 85-141 required the President to continuously assure himself that Yugoslavia continues to maintain its independence, that she is not participating in any policy or program for the Communist conquest of the world, and that the furnishing of assistance is in the interest of national security, and provided that certain committees of the Senate and the Speaker of the House of Representatives should be constantly informed of assistance furnished.

**§ 1854. Repealed. Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 642(a)(2), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460**

Section, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. II, § 144, as added Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, § 5(c), 71 Stat. 357; amended June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. V, § 501(9), 72 Stat. 271, authorized assistance to Southeast Asia.

PART B—DEVELOPMENT LOAN FUND

**§§ 1870 to 1876. Repealed. Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 642(a)(2), (4), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460**

Section 1870, act July 18, 1956, ch. 627, § 14, 70 Stat. 566, stated Congressional declaration of policy to promote economic development of underdeveloped countries. See section 2151 of this title.

Section 1871, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. II, § 201, as added Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, § 6, 71 Stat. 357; amended May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. II, § 202(a), 74 Stat. 135, stated Congressional declaration of purpose for development loan program. See section 2151 of this title.

Section 1872, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. II, § 202, as added Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, § 6, 71 Stat. 357; amended June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. II, § 203(a), ch. V, § 501(10), 72 Stat. 262, 271; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. II, § 203(a), 73 Stat. 248; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. II, § 202(b), 74 Stat. 135, created Development Loan Fund, authorized Fund to make loans, credits or guaranties, provided for repayment, administration, and reports, and restricted allocation, reservation, earmarking, commitment, or set-aside of funds.

Section 1873, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. II, § 203, as added Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, § 6, 71 Stat. 358; amended July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. II, § 203(b), 73 Stat. 248, authorized appropriations for capitalization of Fund.

Section 1874, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. II, § 204, as added Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, § 6, 71 Stat. 358; amended June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 86-477, ch. II, § 203(b), 72 Stat. 263; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. II, § 203(c), 73 Stat. 249, related to fiscal provisions for Fund.

Section 1875, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. II, § 205, as added Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, § 6, 71 Stat. 358; amended June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. II, § 203(c), 72 Stat. 263; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. II, § 203(d), 73 Stat. 249; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. II, § 202(c), ch. V, § 501(a), 74 Stat. 135, 140, related to management of Fund, and powers and authority of Board of Directors.

Section 1876, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. II, § 205, as added Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, § 6, 71 Stat. 359, provided for applicability of functions of National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Problems.

PART C—TECHNICAL COOPERATION

**§§ 1891 to 1896. Repealed. Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 642(a)(2), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460**

Section 1891, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. II, § 301, 68 Stat. 841, stated Congressional declaration of policy and purpose for technical cooperation.

Section 1892, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. II, § 302, 68 Stat. 841, related to authority of President and defined technical cooperation programs. See section 2171 of this title.

Section 1893, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. II, § 303, 68 Stat. 841, enumerated prerequisites to assistance. See section 2171 of this title.

Section 1894, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. II, § 304, 68 Stat. 842; July 8, 1955, ch. 301, § 7(a), 69 Stat. 285; July 18, 1956, ch. 627, § 7(a), 70 Stat. 557; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, § 7(a), 71 Stat. 359; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. II, § 204(a), 72 Stat. 265; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. II, § 204(a), 73 Stat. 249; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. II, § 203(a), 74 Stat. 136, authorized appropriations for technical cooperation programs. See section 2172 of this title.

Section 1895, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. II, § 305, 68 Stat. 842, related to limitation on use of funds.

Section 1896, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. II, § 306, 68 Stat. 842; July 8, 1955, ch. 301, § 7(b), 69 Stat. 285; July 18, 1956, ch. 627, § 7(b), 70 Stat. 557; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, § 7(b), 71 Stat. 359; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. II, § 204(b), 72 Stat. 265; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. II, § 204(b), 73 Stat. 249; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472,

ch. II, §203(b), 74 Stat. 136, authorized appropriations for multilateral technical cooperation and related programs.

**§ 1896a. Restriction on commitments for technical assistance**

No commitment for the calendar year 1955 or thereafter, with respect to contributions to the United Nations expanded program of technical assistance, shall be pledged on behalf of the United States until the Congress appropriates for said purpose.

(Sept. 3, 1954, ch. 1262, §101, 68 Stat. 1221.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as a part of section 101 of the Mutual Security Appropriation Act, 1955. No other part of section 101 of the Mutual Security Appropriation Act, 1955, was classified to the Code.

**§ 1896b. Colombo Plan Council for Technical Cooperation; authorization**

To enable the United States to maintain membership in the Colombo Plan Council for Technical Cooperation, there is authorized to be appropriated from time to time to the Department of State such sums as may be necessary for the payment by the United States of its share of the expenses of the Colombo Plan Council for Technical Cooperation.

(Pub. L. 86-108, ch. V, §502, July 24, 1959, 73 Stat. 256.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Mutual Security Act of 1959.

ANNUAL APPROPRIATIONS

Annual appropriations to meet the obligations of membership in various international organizations were contained in acts listed in a note set out under section 269a of this title.

**§ 1897. Repealed. Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 642(a)(2), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460**

Section, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. II, §307, 68 Stat. 842; July 18, 1956, ch. 627, §7(c), 70 Stat. 557; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. II, §203(c), 74 Stat. 136, authorized advances and grants-in-aid for technical cooperation program.

**§ 1898. Repealed. Pub. L. 86-472, ch. II, § 203(d), May 14, 1960, 74 Stat. 136**

Section, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. II, §308, 68 Stat. 842; July 8, 1955, ch. 301, §7(c), 69 Stat. 286; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. II, §204(c), 73 Stat. 249, created an advisory board and provided for its duties, membership, allowances, and expenses.

PART D—SPECIAL ASSISTANCE AND OTHER PROGRAMS

**§§ 1920, 1921. Repealed. Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 642(a)(2), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460**

Section 1920, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. II, §400, as added Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, §8(a), 71 Stat. 360; amended June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. II, §205(a), 72 Stat. 266; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. II, §205(a), 73 Stat. 249; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. II, §204(a), 74 Stat. 136, authorized assistance for special programs to maintain political or economic stability, for programs of economic development in Latin America and for

schools and libraries abroad. See section 2171 et seq. of this title.

Section 1921, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. II, §401, as added July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. II, §205(b), 73 Stat. 249; amended May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. II, §204(b), 74 Stat. 136, authorized contributions to the United Nations Emergency Fund. See section 2221 of this title.

**§ 1922. Surplus agricultural commodities; funds for shipments**

Of the funds authorized to be made available in the fiscal year 1961 pursuant to this chapter (other than funds made available pursuant to sections 1871 to 1876<sup>1</sup> of this title), not less than \$175,000,000 shall be used to finance the export and sale for foreign currencies or the grant of surplus agricultural commodities or products thereof produced in the United States, in addition to surplus agricultural commodities or products transferred pursuant to the Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954 [7 U.S.C. 1691 et seq.], and in accordance with the standards as to pricing and the use of private trade channels expressed in section 101<sup>1</sup> of said Act [7 U.S.C. 1701]. Foreign currency proceeds accruing from such sales shall be used for the purposes of this chapter and with particular emphasis on the purposes of section 104 of the Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954 [7 U.S.C. 1704] which are in harmony with the purposes of this chapter. Notwithstanding section 1306 of title 31, or any other provision of law, the President may use or enter into agreements with friendly nations or organizations of nations to use for such purposes the foreign currencies which accrue to the United States under this section. Surplus food commodities or products thereof made available for transfer under this chapter (or any other Act) as a grant or as a sale for foreign currencies may also be made available to the maximum extent practicable to eligible domestic recipients pursuant to section 1431 of title 7, or to needy persons within the United States pursuant to clause (2) of section 612c of title 7.

(Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title IV, §402, 68 Stat. 843; July 8, 1955, ch. 301, §8(b), 69 Stat. 286; July 18, 1956, ch. 627, §8(b), 70 Stat. 558; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, §8(c), 71 Stat. 361; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. II, §205(b), 72 Stat. 266; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. II, §205(c), 73 Stat. 250; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. II, §204(c), 74 Stat. 136.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Sections 1871 to 1876 of this title, referred to in text, were repealed by Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §642(a)(2), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460.

The Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954, referred to in text, is act July 10, 1954, ch. 469, 68 Stat. 454, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 41 (§1691 et seq.) of Title 7, Agriculture. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1691 of Title 7 and Tables.

Section 101 of said Act, referred to in text, was amended generally by Pub. L. 101-624, title XV, §1512, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 3633 and, as so amended, no longer contains provisions relating to the use of private trade channels. See section 1733(d) of Title 7.

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

## CODIFICATION

“Section 1306 of title 31” substituted in text for “section 1415 of the Supplemental Appropriation Act, 1953 [31 U.S.C. 724]” on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, § 4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

Provisions of this section [as amended by section 205(c) of Pub. L. 86-108] which amended section 1431 of Title 7, Agriculture, by substituting “waste of commodities whether in private stocks or acquired through price-support operations” for “waste of commodities acquired through price-support operations” were omitted.

## AMENDMENTS

1960—Pub. L. 86-472 substituted “1961” for “1960”.

1959—Pub. L. 86-108 substituted “1960” for “1959” and “foreign currencies or the grant of” for “foreign currencies of”, and inserted provisions permitting surplus food commodities or products thereof made available for transfer as a grant or as a sale for foreign currencies to be made available to eligible domestic recipients or to needy persons within the United States.

1958—Pub. L. 85-477 substituted “1959” for “1958”.

1957—Pub. L. 85-141 authorized use of not less than \$175,000,000 for fiscal year 1958, and struck out provisions which related to funds for fiscal years 1956 and 1957.

1956—Act July 18, 1956, authorized use of not less than \$250,000,000 for fiscal year 1957.

1955—Act July 8, 1955, substituted “for the fiscal year 1956, not less than \$300,000,000” for “not less than \$350,000,000”.

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, pursuant to section 1-102(a)(3) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

## INTERNATIONAL AGREEMENTS

The negotiation, conclusion, and termination of international agreements pursuant to this section, shall be subject to requirements of section 112b of Title 1, General Provisions, and to applicable regulations and procedures, see section 1-604 of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56677, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

## LIMITATION ON USE OF FOREIGN CURRENCIES

Pub. L. 85-853, § 108, Aug. 28, 1958, 72 Stat. 1102, which provided limitation on use of foreign currencies, was repealed by Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 642(a)(6), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460.

**§§ 1923, 1924. Repealed. Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 642(a)(2), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460**

Section 1923, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. II, § 403, as added June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. II, § 205(c), 72 Stat. 266; amended July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. II, § 205(d), 73 Stat. 250; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. II, § 204(d), 74 Stat. 136, authorized the use of funds to meet responsibilities in Germany. See section 2364(b) of this title.

Section 1924, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. II, § 404, as added May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. II, § 204(e), 74 Stat. 136, related to the Indus Basin Development. See section 2223 of this title.

**§ 1925. Repealed**

Subsecs. (a), (c), and (d), acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. II, § 405(a), (c), (d), 68 Stat. 844; July 8, 1955, ch. 301, § 8(d), 69 Stat. 286; July 18, 1956, ch. 627, § 8(d), 70 Stat. 558; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, § 8(e), 71 Stat. 361; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. II, § 205(d), ch. V, § 501(13), 72

Stat. 266, 271; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. II, § 205(e), 73 Stat. 250; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. II, § 204(f), 74 Stat. 137, related to movement of migrants, refugees, and escapees, and were repealed by Pub. L. 87-510, § 6, June 28, 1962, 76 Stat. 124. See section 2601(a), (b)(1) of this title.

Subsec. (b), act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. II, § 405(b), 68 Stat. 844, which related to the use of funds to facilitate migration of persons resident in Ryukyu Island Archipelago, was repealed by Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 642(a)(2), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460. See section 1945(b) of this title.

**§§ 1926, 1927. Repealed. Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 642(a)(2), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460**

Section 1926, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. II, § 406, 68 Stat. 844; July 8, 1955, ch. 301, § 8(e), 69 Stat. 286; July 18, 1956, ch. 627, § 8(e), 70 Stat. 558; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, § 8(f), 71 Stat. 361; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. II, § 205(e), 72 Stat. 266; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. II, § 205(f), 73 Stat. 250; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. II, § 204(g), 74 Stat. 137, authorized appropriations for United Nations Children's Fund.

Section 1927, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. II, § 407, 68 Stat. 844; July 8, 1955, ch. 301, § 8(f), 69 Stat. 286; July 18, 1956, ch. 627, § 8(f), 70 Stat. 558; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, § 8(g), 71 Stat. 361; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. II, § 205(f), 72 Stat. 266; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. II, § 205(g), 73 Stat. 250; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. II, § 204(h), 74 Stat. 137, authorized appropriations for contributions to Palestine refugees in Near East. See section 2221 of this title.

**§ 1928. North Atlantic Treaty Organization**

**(a) Authorization for expenses**

In order to provide for United States participation in the North Atlantic Treaty Organization, there is authorized to be appropriated such amounts as may be necessary from time to time for the payment by the United States of its share of the expenses of the Organization and all necessary salaries and expenses of the United States permanent representative to the Organization, of such persons as may be appointed to represent the United States in the subsidiary bodies of the Organization or in any multilateral organization which participates in achieving the aims of the North Atlantic Treaty, and of their appropriate staffs, and the expenses of participation in meetings of such organizations, including salaries, expenses, and allowances of personnel and dependents as authorized by the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [22 U.S.C. 3901 et seq.], and allowances and expenses as provided in section 287r of this title.

**(b) Appointment of personal representative**

The United States permanent representative to the North Atlantic Treaty Organization shall be appointed by the President by and with the advice and consent of the Senate and shall hold office at the pleasure of the President. Such representative shall have the rank and status of ambassador extraordinary and plenipotentiary and shall be a chief of mission under the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [22 U.S.C. 3901 et seq.].

**(c) Duration of staff service**

Persons detailed to the international staff of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization in accordance with section 2388 of this title who are members of the Foreign Service serving under limited appointments may serve for periods of more than five years notwithstanding the limi-



tation in section 309 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [22 U.S.C. 3949].

(Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title IV, § 408, 68 Stat. 845; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, § 8(h), 71 Stat. 361; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. II, § 205(h), 73 Stat. 250; Oct. 17, 1980, Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2206(a)(6), 94 Stat. 2161.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Service Act of 1980, referred to in subsections (a) and (b), is Pub. L. 96-465, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2071, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 52 (§ 3901 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3901 of this title and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1980—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 96-465, § 2206(a)(6)(A), substituted “Foreign Service Act of 1980” for “Foreign Service Act of 1946, as amended (22 U.S.C. 801).”

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 96-465, § 2206(a)(6)(B), substituted “chief of mission under the Foreign Service Act of 1980” for “chief of mission, class 1, within the meaning of the Foreign Service Act of 1946, as amended (22 U.S.C. 801)”.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 96-465, § 2206(a)(6)(C), among other changes, substituted references to sections 2388 and 3949 of this title for references to sections 1789 and 922 of this title, respectively, and reference to members of the Foreign Service for reference to Foreign Service Reserve officers.

1959—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 86-108 substituted “five years” for “four years”.

1957—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 85-141 struck out provisions authorizing appropriations of not more than \$3,200,000 for the fiscal year 1955.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-465 effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

#### ANNUAL APPROPRIATIONS

Annual appropriations to meet the obligations of membership in various international organizations were contained in acts listed in a note set out under section 269a of this title.

#### NATO PARTICIPATION

Pub. L. 103-447, title II, Nov. 2, 1994, 108 Stat. 4695, provided that:

##### “SEC. 201. SHORT TITLE.

“This title may be cited as the ‘NATO Participation Act of 1994’.

##### “SEC. 202. SENSE OF THE CONGRESS.

“It is the sense of the Congress that—

“(1) the leaders of the NATO member nations are to be commended for reaffirming that NATO membership remains open to Partnership for Peace countries emerging from communist domination and for welcoming eventual expansion of NATO to include such countries;

“(2) full and active participants in the Partnership for Peace in a position to further the principles of the North Atlantic Treaty and to contribute to the security of the North Atlantic area should be invited to become full NATO members in accordance with Article 10 of such Treaty at an early date, if such participants—

“(A) maintain their progress toward establishing democratic institutions, free market economies, civilian control of their armed forces, and the rule of law; and

“(B) remain committed to protecting the rights of all their citizens and respecting the territorial integrity of their neighbors;

“(3) the United States, other NATO member nations, and NATO itself should furnish appropriate assistance to facilitate the transition to full NATO membership at an early date of full and active participants in the Partnership for Peace; and

“(4) in particular, Poland, Hungary, the Czech Republic, and Slovakia have made significant progress toward establishing democratic institutions, free market economies, civilian control of their armed forces, and the rule of law since the fall of their previous communist governments.

##### “SEC. 203. AUTHORITY FOR PROGRAM TO FACILITATE TRANSITION TO NATO MEMBERSHIP.

“(a) IN GENERAL.—The President may establish a program to assist the transition to full NATO membership of Poland, Hungary, the Czech Republic, Slovakia, and other Partnership for Peace countries emerging from communist domination designated pursuant to subsection (d).

“(b) CONDUCT OF PROGRAM.—The program established under subsection (a) shall facilitate the transition to full NATO membership of the countries described in such subsection by supporting and encouraging, inter alia—

“(1) joint planning, training, and military exercises with NATO forces;

“(2) greater interoperability of military equipment, air defense systems, and command, control, and communications systems; and

“(3) conformity of military doctrine.

“(c) TYPE OF ASSISTANCE.—In carrying out the program established under subsection (a), the President may provide to the countries described in such subsection the following types of security assistance:

“(1) The transfer of excess defense articles under section 516 of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2321j], without regard to the restrictions in paragraphs (1) through (3) of subsection (a) of such section (relating to the eligibility of countries for such articles under such section).

“(2) The transfer of nonlethal excess defense articles under section 519 of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2321m], without regard to the restriction in subsection (a) of such section (relating to the justification of the foreign military financing program for the fiscal year in which a transfer is authorized).

“(3) Assistance under chapter 5 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2347 et seq.] (relating to international military education and training).

“(4) Assistance under section 23 of the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2763] (relating to the ‘Foreign Military Financing Program’).

“(d) DESIGNATION OF PARTNERSHIP FOR PEACE COUNTRIES EMERGING FROM COMMUNIST DOMINATION.—The President may designate countries emerging from communism and participating in the Partnership for Peace, especially Poland, Hungary, the Czech Republic, and Slovakia, to receive assistance under the program established under subsection (a) if the President determines and reports to the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives [now Committee on International Relations] and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate that such countries—

“(1) are full and active participants in the Partnership for Peace;

“(2) have made significant progress toward establishing democratic institutions, a free market economy, civilian control of their armed forces, and the rule of law;

“(3) are likely in the near future to be in a position to further the principles of the North Atlantic Treaty and to contribute to the security of the North Atlantic area; and

“(4) are not selling or transferring defense articles to a state that has repeatedly provided support for acts of international terrorism, as determined by the Secretary of State under section 6(j) of the Export Administration Act of 1979 [50 App. U.S.C. 2405(j)].

“(e) NOTIFICATION.—At least 15 days before designating any country pursuant to subsection (d), the President shall notify the appropriate congressional committees in accordance with the procedures applicable under section 634A of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2394–1].

“(f) DETERMINATION.—It is hereby determined that Poland, Hungary, the Czech Republic, and Slovakia meet the criteria required in paragraphs (1), (2), and (3) of subsection (d).

“SEC. 204. ADDITIONAL AUTHORITIES.

“(a) ARMS EXPORT CONTROL ACT.—The President is authorized to exercise the authority of sections 63 and 65 of the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2796b, 2796d] with respect to any country designated under section 203(d) of this title on the same basis authorized with respect to NATO countries.

“(b) OTHER NATO AUTHORITIES.—The President should designate any country designated under section 203(d) of this title as eligible under sections 2350c and 2350f of title 10, United States Code.

“(c) SENSE OF CONGRESS.—It is the sense of Congress that, in the interest of maintaining stability and promoting democracy in Poland, Hungary, the Czech Republic, Slovakia, and any other Partnership for Peace country designated under section 203(d) of this title, those countries should be included in all activities under section 2457 of title 10, United States Code, related to the increased standardization and enhanced interoperability of equipment and weapons systems, through coordinated training and procurement activities, as well as other means, undertaken by the North Atlantic Treaty Organization members and other allied countries.

“SEC. 205. REPORTING REQUIREMENT.

“The President shall include in the report required by section 514(a) of Public Law 103–236 (22 U.S.C. 1928 note) the following:

“(1) A description of all assistance provided under the program established under section 203(a), or otherwise provided by the United States Government to facilitate the transition to full NATO membership of Poland, Hungary, the Czech Republic, Slovakia, and other Partnership for Peace countries emerging from communist domination designated pursuant to section 203(d).

“(2) A description, on the basis of information received from the recipients and from NATO, of all assistance provided by other NATO member nations or NATO itself to facilitate the transition to full NATO membership of Poland, Hungary, the Czech Republic, Slovakia, and other Partnership for Peace countries emerging from communist domination designated pursuant to section 203(d).”

COST-SHARING POLICY AND REPORT

Pub. L. 103–337, div. A, title XIII, §1313(a)–(d), Oct. 5, 1994, 108 Stat. 2894, 2895, provided that:

“(a) POLICY.—It is the policy of the United States that the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) allies should assist the United States in paying the incremental costs incurred by the United States for maintaining members of the Armed Forces in assignments to permanent duty ashore in European member nations of NATO solely for support of NATO roles and missions.

“(b) IMPLEMENTATION.—The President shall take all necessary actions to ensure the effective implementation of the policy set forth in subsection (a).

“(c) REPORT.—The Secretary of Defense shall include in the annual report required by section 1002(d) of the Department of Defense Authorization Act, 1985 [Pub. L. 98–525] (22 U.S.C. 1928 note) the following:

“(1) A description of the United States military forces assigned to permanent duty ashore in European member nations of NATO and an analysis of the cost of providing and maintaining such forces in such assignment primarily for support of NATO roles and missions.

“(2) A description of the United States military forces assigned to permanent duty ashore in European member nations of NATO primarily in support of other United States interests in other regions of the world and an analysis of the cost of providing and maintaining such forces in such assignment primarily for that purpose.

“(3) A specific enumeration and description of the offsets to United States costs of providing and maintaining United States military forces in Europe that the United States received from other NATO member nations in the fiscal year covered by the report, set out by country and by type of assistance, including both in-kind assistance and direct cash reimbursement, and the projected offsets for the five fiscal years following the fiscal year covered by the report.

“(d) INCREMENTAL COSTS DEFINED.—For purposes of subsection (a), the definition provided for the term ‘incremental costs’ in section 1046 of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Years 1992 and 1993 [Pub. L. 102–190, set out below], as added by subsection (e), shall apply with respect to maintaining members of the Armed Forces in assignments to permanent duty ashore in European member nations of NATO in the same manner as such term applies with respect to permanent stationing ashore of United States forces in foreign nations for purposes of subsection (e)(4) of such section 1046.”

IMPLEMENTATION OF PARTNERSHIP FOR PEACE

Pub. L. 103–236, title V, §514, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 467, provided that:

“(a) REPORT TO CONGRESS.—The President shall submit annually, beginning 90 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Apr. 30, 1994], a detailed report to the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs [now Committee on International Relations] of the House of Representatives on the implementation of the ‘Partnership for Peace’ initiative, including an assessment of the progress made by former members of the Warsaw Treaty Organization in meeting the criteria for full membership articulated in Article 10 of the North Atlantic Treaty, wherein any other European state may, by unanimous agreement, be invited to accede to the North Atlantic Treaty if it is in a position to further the principles of the Treaty and to contribute to the security of the North Atlantic area.

“(b) AUTHORITY OF THE PRESIDENT.—The President is authorized to confer, pursuant to agreement with any country eligible to participate in the Partnership for Peace, rights in respect of the military and related civilian personnel (including dependents of any such personnel) and activities of that country in the United States comparable to the rights conferred by that country in respect of the military and related civilian personnel (including dependents of any such personnel) and activities of the United States in that country.”

[Functions of President under section 514(b) of Pub. L. 103–236, set out above, delegated to Secretary of State by Memorandum of President of the United States, July 26, 1994, 59 F.R. 40205, set out as a note under section 2370a of this title.]

DEFENSE COST-SHARING

Pub. L. 102–190, div. A, title X, §1046, Dec. 5, 1991, 105 Stat. 1466, as amended by Pub. L. 103–160, div. A, title XIV, §1412(b), Nov. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 1829; Pub. L. 103–337, div. A, title XIII, §1313(e), Oct. 5, 1994, 108 Stat. 2895, provided that:

“(a) DEFENSE COST-SHARING AGREEMENTS.—(1) The President shall consult with the foreign nations described in paragraph (2) to seek to achieve, within 12 months after the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 5, 1991], an agreement on equitable defense cost-sharing with each such nation.

“(2) The foreign nations referred to in paragraph (1) are—

“(A) each member nation of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (other than the United States); and

“(B) every other foreign nation with which the United States has a bilateral or multilateral defense agreement that provides for the assignment of combat units of the Armed Forces of the United States to permanent duty in the nation or the placement of combat equipment of the United States in the nation.

“(3) Each defense cost-sharing agreement entered into under paragraph (1) should provide that the foreign nation agrees to share equitably with the United States, through cash compensation or in-kind contributions, or a combination thereof, the costs to the United States that arise solely from the implementation of the provisions of the bilateral or multilateral defense agreement with that nation.

“(b) EXCEPTION.—The provisions of subsection (a) shall not apply to those foreign nations that receive assistance under section 23 of the Arms Export Control Act (22 U.S.C. 2763) relating to the foreign military financing program or under chapter 4 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2346 et seq.) relating to the Economic Support Fund.

“(c) CONSULTATIONS.—In conducting the consultations required under subsection (a), the President should make maximum feasible use of the Department of Defense and the post of Ambassador-at-Large created by section 8125(c) of the Department of Defense Appropriations Act, 1989 [Pub. L. 100-463] (10 U.S.C. 113 note).

“(d) ALLIES MUTUAL DEFENSE PAYMENTS ACCOUNT.—The Secretary of Defense shall maintain an accounting for defense cost-sharing under each agreement entered into with a foreign nation pursuant to subsection (a). The accounting shall show for each foreign nation the amount and nature of the—

“(1) cost-sharing contributions agreed to by the nation;

“(2) cost-sharing contributions delivered by the nation;

“(3) additional contributions by the nation to any commonly funded multilateral programs providing for United States participation in the common defense;

“(4) contributions by the United States to any such commonly funded multilateral programs;

“(5) contributions of all other nations to any such commonly funded multilateral programs; and

“(6) costs to the United States that arise solely from the implementation of the provisions of the bilateral or multilateral defense agreement with the nation.

“(e) REPORTING REQUIREMENTS.—The Secretary of Defense shall include in each Report on Allied Contributions to the Common Defense prepared under section 1003 of Public Law 98-525 (22 U.S.C. 1928 note) information, in classified and unclassified form—

“(1) describing the efforts undertaken and the progress made by the President in carrying out subsections (a) and (c) during the period covered by the report;

“(2) specifying the accounting of defense cost-sharing contributions maintained under subsection (d) during that period;

“(3) assessing how equitably foreign nations not described in subsection (a) or excepted under subsection (b) are sharing the costs and burdens of implementing defense agreements with the United States and how those defense agreements serve the national security interests of the United States; and

“(4) specifying the incremental costs to the United States associated with the permanent stationing ashore of United States forces in foreign nations.

“(f) INCREMENTAL COSTS DEFINED.—In this section, the term ‘incremental costs’, with respect to permanent stationing ashore of United States forces in foreign nations, means the difference between the costs associated with maintaining United States military forces in assignments to permanent duty ashore in the foreign nations and the costs associated with maintaining those same military forces at military bases in the United States.”

#### ACTIVE-DUTY FORCES IN EUROPE OF MEMBER NATIONS OF NATO

Pub. L. 101-189, div. A, title IX, §912, Nov. 29, 1989, 103 Stat. 1523, directed Secretary of Defense to ensure that, for the next three years, the current ratio (expressed as a percentage) of U.S. active duty forces in Europe to allied active duty forces in Europe does not increase by more than a specified amount.

#### SENSE OF CONGRESS ON NEED FOR MODERNIZATION OF THEATER NUCLEAR CAPABILITIES OF NATO

Pub. L. 100-456, div. A, title X, §1004, Sept. 29, 1988, 102 Stat. 2039, provided that:

“(a) FINDINGS.—Congress makes the following findings:

“(1) The security of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) alliance will continue for the foreseeable future to rely on a modern and credible nuclear deterrent.

“(2) NATO should make every effort to achieve the goal of raising the threshold for the use of nuclear weapons in the event of a conflict in Europe.

“(3) While recognizing that there is a critical need for improvements in conventional forces, Congress also recognizes that the United States will have to devote defense resources in the future to the continuing modernization of the theater nuclear capabilities of NATO.

“(4) The modernization of the theater nuclear capabilities of NATO is a continuing process and stems from the 1983 Montebello decision by NATO to reduce the stockpile of nuclear weapons in Europe while taking steps to ensure that the remaining nuclear weapons of the alliance are responsive, survivable, and effective.

“(5) Programs to modernize theater nuclear forces, which had a high priority for NATO before the ratification of the Intermediate-range Nuclear Forces (INF) Treaty, are at least as important following the ratification of that treaty in May 1988.

“(6) The NATO Nuclear Planning Group recently reaffirmed its endorsement of development by the United States of a new missile for delivery of theater nuclear weapons as a follow-on to the current Lance missile, with a view toward an eventual decision on deployment of such a follow-on missile.

“(b) SENSE OF CONGRESS.—In light of the findings in subsection (a), it is the sense of Congress that—

“(1) modernization of the theater nuclear capabilities of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization is essential to the deterrence strategy of the NATO alliance, particularly in light of the requirements of the Intermediate-range Nuclear Forces (INF) Treaty for the destruction of intermediate-range nuclear weapons;

“(2) continued modernization by the United States of theater nuclear capabilities should be undertaken in close consultation with other NATO member nations; and

“(3) the United States should proceed with ongoing activities to meet the identified requirement of the NATO alliance for development of a new missile for delivery of theater nuclear weapons as a follow-on to the Lance missile.”

#### REPORT ON OFFICIAL DEVELOPMENT ASSISTANCE PROGRAM OF JAPAN

Pub. L. 100-456, div. A, title X, §1009(b), Sept. 29, 1988, 102 Stat. 2041, provided that: “The Secretary of Defense shall include with the annual report submitted pursuant to section 1003 of Public Law 98-525 (22 U.S.C. 1928 note) a report on the Official Development Assistance program of the Government of Japan. Such report shall be prepared each year in coordination with the Secretary of State and the Administrator of the Agency for International Development and shall include a description of the amount and nature of spending under

such program by recipient, including distinguishing between grant aid, loans, and credits.”

**JAPAN-UNITED STATES SECURITY RELATIONSHIP AND EFFORTS BY JAPAN TO FULFILL SELF-DEFENSE RESPONSIBILITIES**

Pub. L. 99-93, title VIII, §812, Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 453, as amended by Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §139(14), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 398, provided that:

“(a) FINDINGS.—The Congress hereby finds—

“(1) the Japan-United States security relationship is the foundation of the peace and security of Japan and the Far East, as well as a major contributor to the protection of the United States and of the democratic freedoms and economic prosperity enjoyed by both the United States and Japan;

“(2) the threats to our two democracies have increased significantly since 1976, principally through the Soviet invasion of Afghanistan, the expansion of Soviet armed forces in the Far East, the invasion of Cambodia by Vietnam, and the instability in the Persian Gulf region as signified by the continuing Iran-Iraq conflict;

“(3) in recognition of these and other threats, the United States has greatly increased its annual defense spending through sustained real growth averaging 8.8 percent yearly between fiscal 1981 and 1985, and cumulative real growth of 50 percent in that period;

“(4) the United States Government appreciates the May 1981 commitment by the Prime Minister of Japan that, pursuant to the Treaty of Mutual Cooperation and Security of 1960 between Japan and the United States, Japan, on its own initiative, would seek to make even greater efforts for improving its defense capabilities, and pursuant to Japan’s own Constitution, it was national policy for his country to acquire and maintain the self-defense forces adequate for the defense of its land area and surrounding airspace and sealanes, out to a distance of 1,000 miles;

“(5) the United States Government applauds the policy of Japan to obtain the capabilities to defend its sea and air lanes out to 1,000 miles, expects that these capabilities should be acquired by the end of the decade, and recognizes that achieving those capabilities would significantly improve the national security of both Japan and the United States;

“(6) the United States Government appreciates the contribution already made by Japan through the Host Nation Support Program and its recent efforts to increase its defense spending; and

“(7) Japan, however, in recent years consistently has not provided sufficient funding and resources to meet its self-defense needs and to meet common United States-Japan defense objectives and alliance responsibilities.

“(b) SENSE OF CONGRESS.—It is the sense of the Congress that Japan, to fulfill its self-defense responsibilities pursuant to the 1960 Mutual Cooperation and Security Treaty with the United States, and in accordance with the national policy declaration made by its Prime Minister in May 1981, to develop a 1,000-mile airspace and sealanes defense capability, should implement a 1986-1990 Mid-Term Defense Plan containing sufficient funding, program acquisition, and force development resources to obtain the agreed-upon 1,000 mile self-defense capabilities by the end of the decade, including the allocation of sufficient budgetary resources annually to reduce substantially the ammunition, logistics, and sustainability shortfalls of its self-defense forces.”

**SENSE OF CONGRESS RELATING TO INCREASE IN DEFENSE SPENDING BY UNITED STATES ALLIES**

Pub. L. 98-525, title X, §1001, Oct. 19, 1984, 98 Stat. 2574, provided that: “It is the sense of Congress that the President—

“(1) should call on the pertinent member nations of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization to meet or

exceed their pledges for an annual increase in defense spending during fiscal years 1984 and 1985 of at least 3 percent real growth; and

“(2) should call on Japan to further increase its defense spending during fiscal years 1984 and 1985; in furtherance of increased unity, equitable sharing of the common defense burden, and international stability.”

Similar provisions were contained in Pub. L. 98-473, title I, §101(e) [§127], (h) [title VIII, §8105], Oct. 12, 1984, 98 Stat. 1877, 1883, 1904, 1943.

**IMPROVEMENTS TO NATO CONVENTIONAL CAPABILITY**

Pub. L. 98-525, title X, §1002, Oct. 19, 1984, 98 Stat. 2574, as amended by Pub. L. 99-145, title XI, §1101, Nov. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 707; Pub. L. 101-189, div. A, title IX, §911(a), Nov. 29, 1989, 103 Stat. 1523; Pub. L. 101-510, div. A, title IV, §406, title XIII, §1312(c)(1), (2), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1546, 1670; Pub. L. 102-25, title VII, §704(a)(2), Apr. 6, 1991, 105 Stat. 118; Pub. L. 102-190, div. A, title X, §1042, Dec. 5, 1991, 105 Stat. 1462; Pub. L. 102-484, div. A, title XIII, §1303(a), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2546; Pub. L. 103-160, div. A, title XIV, §1412(a), Nov. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 1828; Pub. L. 103-337, div. A, title XIII, §1303(a)-(c), Oct. 5, 1994, 108 Stat. 2889, 2890, provided that:

“(a) The Congress finds—

“(1) that the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) should improve its conventional defense capability so as to lengthen the period of time that Western Europe can be defended by conventional forces without the necessity of resorting to the early use of nuclear weapons in the event of a non-nuclear attack on any NATO member country;

“(2) that fulfillment by NATO member nations of their goals and commitments to increase defense spending, improve conventional sustainability, and provide support facilities in Western Europe for rapid reinforcements from the United States is crucial to accomplishing that objective; and

“(3) that an increase over current United States military personnel levels in European member nations of NATO can be justified only if these goals and commitments are substantially met by NATO member nations (other than the United States).

“(b) The Congress urges the President and the Secretary of Defense to continue to encourage member nations of NATO (other than the United States) to work expeditiously to fulfill the following commitments they have undertaken:

“(1) To achieve and maintain an annual increase in their defense spending of at least 3 percent, after inflation.

“(2) To acquire a 30-day supply of air and ground munitions among those NATO members which have committed forces to the Northern, Center, and Southern Regions.

“(3) To construct the number of minimum essential and emergency operating facilities and semihardened aircraft shelters in Western Europe required by NATO Ministerial Guidance to support, under NATO/SHAPE standards, as a minimum, the annual commitment of United States reinforcing tactical aircraft.

“(c)(1) The end strength level of members of the Armed Forces of the United States assigned to permanent duty ashore in European member nations of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization may not exceed a permanent ceiling of approximately 100,000 in any fiscal year.

“(2) If the Secretary of Defense certifies to the Congress in writing during any fiscal year after fiscal year 1985 that during the previous fiscal year the member nations of NATO (other than the United States) have undertaken significant measures to improve their conventional defense capacity consistent with the goals set forth in subsection (b) which contributes to lengthening the time period between an armed attack on any NATO country and the time the Supreme Allied Commander, Europe, would have to request the release and use of nuclear weapons, the Congress would give strong

consideration to authorizing an increase in the permanent ceiling prescribed in paragraph (1) for fiscal years after such fiscal year.

“(3) For purposes of this subsection, members of the Armed Forces of the United States assigned to permanent duty ashore in Iceland, Greenland, and the Azores are excluded in calculating the end strength level of members of the Armed Forces assigned to permanent duty ashore in European member nations of NATO.

“(d) Not later than April 1 of each even-numbered year, the Secretary of Defense shall submit to the Committees on Armed Services of the Senate and House of Representatives a report on the status, as of January 1 of the year in which the report is submitted, of the following matters:

“(1) The number of days of supply of the ground and aerial munitions in hand or on order of the member nations of NATO (other than the United States) which have committed forces to the Northern, Center, and Southern Regions.

“(2) The number of facilities and semihardened aircraft shelters completed or under construction as they relate to the United States commitment of reinforcing aircraft in the United States Defense Planning Questionnaire (DPQ) Response of the previous year.

“(e)(1) The Congress finds that a viable ‘two-way street’ of defense procurement improves NATO interoperability and therefore is important to overall improvements in conventional defense.

“(2) In addition to any funds appropriated pursuant to the authorization contained in this Act for the activities of the Director of Operational Test and Evaluation, Defense, the Director may use an additional amount, not to exceed \$50,000,000, to acquire certain types of weapons, subsystems, and munitions of European NATO manufacture for side-by-side testing with comparable United States manufactured items. Such additional amount shall be derived from any funds appropriated pursuant to an authorization contained in this Act. Items that may be acquired under this paragraph include submunitions and dispensers, anti-tank and anti-armor guided missiles, mines, runway-cratering devices, torpedoes, mortar systems, light armored vehicles, and high-velocity anti-tank guns.

“(f)(1) This section shall not apply in the event of a declaration of war or an armed attack on any NATO member country.

“(2) This section may be waived by the President if he declares an emergency and immediately informs the Congress of his action and the reasons therefor.”

[Section 1303(d) of Pub. L. 103-337 provided that: “The amendment made by subsection (a) [amending section 1002(c)(1) of Pub. L. 98-525, set out above] shall take effect on October 1, 1995.”]

[Section 1303(b) of Pub. L. 102-484, which provided that the amendment of section 1002(c)(1) of Pub. L. 98-525, set out above, by section 1303(a) of Pub. L. 102-484, take effect Oct. 1, 1995, was repealed by Pub. L. 103-337, div. A, title XIII, § 1303(c), Oct. 5, 1994, 108 Stat. 2890.]

[Pub. L. 101-189, div. A, title IX, § 911(b), Nov. 29, 1989, 103 Stat. 1523, which provided that the amendment of section 1002 of Pub. L. 98-525, set out above, by section 911(a) of Pub. L. 101-189, take effect on Sept. 30, 1991, was repealed by Pub. L. 101-510, div. A, title IV, § 406(c), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1546.]

#### REPORT ON ALLIED CONTRIBUTIONS TO THE COMMON DEFENSE

Pub. L. 98-525, title X, § 1003, Oct. 19, 1984, 98 Stat. 2576, as amended by Pub. L. 101-510, div. A, title XIII, § 1312(c)(3), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1670, provided that:

“(a) In recognition of the increasing military threat faced by the Western World and in view of the growth, relative to the United States, in the economic strength of Japan, Canada, and a number of Western European countries which has occurred since the signing of the North Atlantic Treaty on April 4, 1949, and the Mutual Cooperation and Security Treaty between Japan and

the United States on January 19, 1960, it is the sense of the Congress that—

“(1) the burdens of mutual defense now assumed by some of the countries allied with the United States under those agreements are not commensurate with their economic resources;

“(2) since May 1978, when each member nation of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) agreed to increase real defense spending annually in the range of 3 percent, most NATO members, except for the United States, have failed to meet the 3 percent real growth commitment consistently;

“(3) since May 1981, when the Government of Japan established its policy to defend the air and sea lines of communication out to 1,000 nautical miles from the coast of Japan, progress to develop the necessary self-defense capabilities to fulfill that pledge has been extremely disappointing;

“(4) Japan is the ally of the United States with the greatest potential for improving its self-defense capabilities and should, therefore, rapidly increase its annual defense spending to the levels required to fulfill that pledge and to enable Japan to be capable of an effective conventional self-defense capability by 1990, including the capability to carry out its 1,000-mile defense policy, a development that would be consonant not only with Japan’s current prominent position in the family of nations but also with its unique sensibilities on the issues of war and peace, sensibilities that are recognized and respected by the people of the United States; and

“(5) the continued unwillingness of such countries to increase their contributions to the common defense to more appropriate levels will endanger the vitality, effectiveness, and cohesion of the alliances between those countries and the United States.

“(b) It is further the sense of the Congress that the President should seek from each signatory country (other than the United States) of the two treaties referred to in subsection (a) acceptance of international security responsibilities and an agreement to make contributions to the common defense which are commensurate with the economic resources of such country, including, when appropriate, an increase in host nation support.

“(c) The Secretary of Defense shall submit to the Congress each year, not later than April 1, a classified report containing—

“(1) a comparison of the fair and equitable shares of the mutual defense burdens of these alliances that should be borne by the United States, by other member nations of NATO, and by Japan, based upon economic strength and other relevant factors, and the actual defense efforts of each nation together with an explanation of disparities that currently exist and their impact on mutual defense efforts;

“(2) a description of efforts by the United States and the efforts of other members of the alliances to eliminate any existing disparities;

“(3) projected estimates of the real growth in defense spending for the fiscal year in which the report is submitted for each NATO member nation;

“(4) a description of the defense-related initiatives undertaken by each NATO member nation within the real growth in defense spending of such nation in the fiscal year immediately preceding the fiscal year in which the report is submitted;

“(5) an explanation of those instances in which the commitments to real growth in defense spending have not been realized and a description of efforts being made by the United States to ensure fulfillment of these important NATO commitments;

“(6) a description of the activities of each NATO member and Japan to enhance the security and stability of the Southwest Asia region and to assume additional missions for their own defense as the United States allocates additional resources to the mission of protecting Western interests in world areas not covered by the system of Western Alliances; and

“(7) a description of what additional actions the executive branch plans to take should the efforts by the

United States referred to in clauses (2) and (5) fail, and, in those instances where such additional actions do not include consideration of the repositioning of American troops, a detailed explanation as to why such repositioning is not being so considered.

“(d) The Secretary of Defense shall also submit to the Congress not more than 30 days after the submission of the report required under subsection (a) an unclassified report containing the matters set forth in clauses (1) through (7) of such subsection.”

Similar provisions were contained in the following prior authorization act:

Pub. L. 98-94, title XI, §1102, Sept. 24, 1983, 97 Stat. 673.

#### NATO DEFENSE INDUSTRIAL COOPERATION

Pub. L. 97-252, title XI, §1122, Sept. 8, 1982, 96 Stat. 755, provided that:

“(a) The Congress finds that—

“(1) the United States remains firmly committed to cooperating closely with its North Atlantic Treaty Organization (hereinafter in this section referred to as ‘NATO’) allies in protecting liberty and maintaining world peace;

“(2) the financial burden of providing for the defense of Western Europe and for the protection of the interests of NATO member countries in areas outside the NATO treaty area has reached such proportions that new cooperative approaches among the United States and its NATO allies are required to achieve and maintain an adequate collective defense at acceptable costs;

“(3) the need for a credible conventional deterrent in Western Europe has long been recognized in theory but has never been fully addressed in practice;

“(4) a more equitable sharing by NATO member countries of both the burdens and the technological and economic benefits of the common defense would do much to reinvigorate the North Atlantic Treaty Organization alliance with a restored sense of unity and common purpose;

“(5) a decision to coordinate more effectively the enormous technological, industrial, and economic resources of NATO member countries will not only increase the efficiency and effectiveness of NATO military expenditures but also provide inducement for the Soviet Union to enter into a meaningful arms reduction agreement so that both Warsaw Pact countries and NATO member countries can devote more of their energies and resources to peaceful and economically more beneficial pursuits.

“(b) It is the sense of the Congress that the President should propose to the heads of government of the NATO member countries that the NATO allies of the United States join the United States in agreeing—

“(1) to coordinate more effectively their defense efforts and resources to create, at acceptable costs, a credible, collective, conventional force for the defense of the North Atlantic Treaty area;

“(2) to establish a cooperative defense-industrial effort within Western Europe and between Western Europe and North America that would increase the efficiency and effectiveness of NATO expenditures by providing a larger production base while eliminating unnecessary duplication of defense-industrial efforts;

“(3) to share more equitably and efficiently the financial burdens, as well as the economic benefits (including jobs, technology, and trade) of NATO defense; and

“(4) to intensify consultations promptly for the early achievement of the objectives described in clauses (1) through (3).”

NORTH ATLANTIC TREATY ORGANIZATION COUNTRIES AND JAPAN; CONTRIBUTIONS OF ALLIES OF UNITED STATES TO COMMON DEFENSE COMMENSURATE WITH ECONOMIC RESOURCES; REPORT TO CONGRESS

Pub. L. 96-342, title X, §1006, Sept. 8, 1980, 94 Stat. 1120, as amended by Pub. L. 97-86, title IX, §919, Dec. 1,

1981, 95 Stat. 1132; Pub. L. 97-252, title XI, §1120, Sept. 8, 1982, 96 Stat. 754, provided that:

“(a) In recognition of the growth, relative to the United States, in the economic strength of Japan, Canada, and Western European countries which has occurred since the signing of the North Atlantic Treaty on April 4, 1949, and the Mutual Cooperation and Security Treaty between Japan and the United States on January 19, 1960, it is the sense of Congress that—

“(1) the burdens of mutual defense now assumed by the countries allied with the United States under those agreements are not commensurate with their economic resources; and

“(2) the continued unwillingness of those countries to increase their contributions to the common defense to more appropriate levels would endanger the vitality, effectiveness, and cohesiveness of the alliances between those countries and the United States.

“(b) It is further the sense of Congress that the President should seek from each signatory country (other than the United States) of the two treaties referred to in subsection (a) acceptance of international security responsibilities and agreement to make contributions to the common defense which are commensurate with the economic resources of such country, including, when appropriate, an increase in host nation support.

“(c)(1) The Secretary of Defense shall submit to the Congress not later than March 1, 1983, a report providing—

“(A) a comparison of the fair and equitable shares of the mutual defense burdens of these alliances that should be borne by the United States, by other member nations of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO), and by Japan, based upon economic strength and other relevant factors, and the actual defense efforts of each nation together with an explanation of disparities that currently exist and their impact on mutual defense efforts;

“(B) a description of efforts by the United States and of other efforts to eliminate existing disparities;

“(C) estimates of the real growth in defense spending in fiscal year 1983 projected for each NATO member nation compared to the annual real growth goal in the range of 3 percent set in May 1978;

“(D) a description of the defense-related initiatives undertaken by each NATO member nation within the real growth in defense spending of such nation in fiscal year 1983;

“(E) an explanation of those instances in which the commitments to real growth in defense spending and to the Long-Term Defense Program have not been realized and a description of efforts being made by the United States to ensure fulfillment of these important NATO commitments; and

“(F) a description of what additional actions the President plans to take should the efforts by the United States referred to in clauses (B) and (E) fail and, in those instances where such additional actions do not include consideration of the repositioning of elements of the Armed Forces of the United States, a detailed explanation as to why such repositioning is not being so considered.

“(2) If the report required by paragraph (1) as submitted to Congress is designated as having been classified, pursuant to Executive order, as requiring protection against unauthorized disclosure in the interest of national defense or foreign policy, then not later than thirty days after the submission of such report the Secretary shall submit to Congress a further report containing all the information in the initial report that does not require such protection.”

NORTH ATLANTIC TREATY ORGANIZATION; BALANCE-OF-PAYMENTS DEFICIT; EQUITABLE COST SHARING; REPORT TO CONGRESS

Pub. L. 93-155, title VIII, §812, Nov. 16, 1973, 87 Stat. 619, provided that:

“(a) The Congress finds that in order to achieve a more equitable sharing of the costs and expenses arising from commitments and obligations under the North

Atlantic Treaty, the President should seek, through appropriate bilateral and multilateral arrangements, payments sufficient in amount to offset fully any balance-of-payment deficit incurred by the United States during the fiscal year ending June 30, 1974, as the result of the deployment of forces in Europe in fulfillment of the treaty commitments and obligations of the United States. This balance-of-payment deficit shall be determined by the Secretary of Commerce in consultation with the Secretary of Defense and the Comptroller General of the United States.

“(b) In the event that the North Atlantic Treaty Organization members (other than the United States) fail to offset the net balance-of-payment deficit described in subsection (a) prior to the expiration of eighteen months after the date of enactment of this section [Nov. 16, 1973], no funds may be expended after the expiration of twenty-four months following the date of enactment of this section [Nov. 16, 1973] for the purpose of maintaining or supporting United States forces in Europe in any number greater than a number equal to the average monthly number of United States forces assigned to duty in Europe during the fiscal year ending June 30, 1974, reduced by a percentage figure equal to the percentage figure by which such balance-of-payment deficit during such fiscal year was not offset.

“(c) The Congress further finds (1) that the other members of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization should, in order to achieve a more equitable sharing of the cost burden under the treaty, substantially increase their contributions to assist the United States in meeting those added budgeting expenses incurred as the result of maintaining and supporting United States forces in Europe, including, but not limited to, wages paid to local personnel by the United States, recurring expenses incurred in connection with the maintenance and operation of real property, maintenance facilities, supply depots, cold storage facilities, communications systems, and standby operations, and nonrecurring expenses such as the construction and rehabilitation of plants and facilities; (2) that the amount paid by the United States in connection with the North Atlantic Treaty infrastructure program should be reduced to a more equitable amount; and (3) that the President should seek, through appropriate bilateral and multilateral arrangements, a substantial reduction of the amounts paid by the United States in connection with those matters described in (1) and (2) above.

“(d) The President shall submit to the Congress within ninety days after the date of enactment of this Act [Nov. 16, 1973], and at the end of each ninety-day period thereafter, a written report informing the Congress of the progress that has been made in implementing the provisions of this section.”

#### UNITED STATES CITIZENS COMMISSION ON NATO

Pub. L. 86-719, Sept. 7, 1960, 74 Stat. 818, as amended by Pub. L. 87-116, July 31, 1961, 75 Stat. 242, provided for a United States Citizens Commission on NATO to terminate on June 30, 1962, including the appointment of the Commission, vacancies, chairman and vice chairman, statement of purpose, conferences in NATO countries, representative status, authority of Commission, compensation and expenses, appropriations, and reports to Congress.

#### EX. ORD. NO. 11633. SECURITY CLEARANCE PROGRAM FOR UNITED STATES CITIZENS EMPLOYED DIRECTLY BY NATO, SEATO, AND CENTO

Ex. Ord. No. 11633, Dec. 3, 1971, 36 F.R. 23197, provided: The United States now participates in the activities of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO), the South-East Asia Treaty Organization (SEATO), and the Central Treaty Organization (CENTO). The Security regulations of these three treaty organizations provide that each participating nation shall be responsible for the security screening and security clearance of its own citizens before they are authorized access to the Organization's TOP SECRET, SECRET, or CONFIDENTIAL

information. There is no existing program, however, under which United States civilians who are hired directly by these organizations can be screened and cleared for access to such Organization's TOP SECRET, SECRET, or CONFIDENTIAL information while so employed. It is, of course, in the interest of the United States that United States citizens who participate in the activities of NATO, SEATO, and CENTO as direct hire employees of the civil or military agencies of those organizations be reliable, trustworthy, of good conduct and character, and of complete and unswerving loyalty to the United States. At the same time, it is a fundamental principle of our Government to protect against unreasonable or unwarranted encroachment on the freedom and privacy of individuals.

I have determined that the provisions and procedures prescribed by this Order are necessary to assure the preservation of the integrity of the classified information of NATO, SEATO, and CENTO, and to protect the national interest. I have also determined that these provisions and procedures recognize the rights of individuals affected thereby and provide maximum possible safeguards to protect such rights.

NOW, THEREFORE, by virtue of the authority vested in me by the Constitution and statutes of the United States, and as Commander-in-Chief of the Armed Forces of the United States, it is ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. The Secretary of Defense shall establish a program and, by regulation, shall prescribe such specific requirements, restrictions, and other safeguards as he considers necessary for the administration of procedures whereby “Certificates of Security Clearance” for the United States citizens directly employed by civil or military agencies of NATO, SEATO, or CENTO may be provided to these international organizations when they so request. Such program shall also provide for the denial, revocation, or suspension of such “Certificates.”

SEC. 2. Subject to the provisions of applicable international agreements, the procedures established by the Secretary of Defense shall, insofar as is practical, be similar to those established by him pursuant to the authority vested in him by Executive Order No. 10865 of February 20, 1960, as amended [set out as a note under section 435 of Title 50, War and National Defense].

SEC. 3. The substance of the criteria, safeguards, and procedures provided in Sections 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, and 9 of Executive Order No. 10865, as amended [set out as a note under section 435 of Title 50, War and National Defense], shall be incorporated in the regulations of the Secretary of Defense governing the program established hereunder.

SEC. 4. Any authority vested in the Secretary of Defense by this Order may be delegated to the Deputy Secretary of Defense or an Assistant Secretary of Defense.

RICHARD NIXON.

#### DETERMINATION REGARDING END STRENGTH LEVEL OF U.S. ARMED FORCES IN EUROPE FOR FISCAL YEAR 1991

Determination of President of the United States, No. 91-37, May 29, 1991, 56 F.R. 25611, provided:

#### Memorandum for the Secretary of Defense

Consistent with section 406(b) of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 1991 (Public Law 101-510; 104 Stat. 1546) [amending section 1002 of Pub. L. 98-525, set out as a note above], I hereby authorize an end strength level of members of the Armed Forces assigned to permanent duty ashore in European member nations of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization in excess of 261,855 for fiscal year 1991, and determine that the national security interests of the United States require such authorization.

You are authorized and directed to notify the Congress of this determination and of the necessity therefor contained in the attached justification [not set out in the Code], and to publish this determination in the Federal Register.

GEORGE BUSH.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2390 of this title.

**§ 1928a. North Atlantic Treaty Parliamentary Conference; participation; appointment of United States Group**

Not to exceed twenty-four Members of Congress shall be appointed to meet jointly and annually with representative parliamentary groups from other NATO (North Atlantic Treaty Organization) members, for discussion of common problems in the interests of the maintenance of peace and security in the North Atlantic area. Of the Members of the Congress to be appointed for the purposes of this resolution (hereinafter designated as the "United States Group"), half shall be appointed by the Speaker of the House from Members of the House (not less than four of whom shall be from the Committee on Foreign Affairs), and half shall be appointed by the President of the Senate upon recommendations of the majority and minority leaders of the Senate from Members of the Senate. Not more than seven of the appointees from the Senate shall be of the same political party. The Chairman or Vice Chairman of the House delegation shall be a Member from the Foreign Affairs Committee, and, unless the President of the Senate, upon the recommendation of the Majority Leader, determines otherwise, the Chairman or Vice Chairman of the Senate delegation shall be a Member from the Foreign Relations Committee. Each delegation shall have a secretary. The secretaries of the Senate and House delegations shall be appointed, respectively, by the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives.

(July 11, 1956, ch. 562, § 1, 70 Stat. 523; Dec. 16, 1963, Pub. L. 88-205, pt. IV, § 406, 77 Stat. 392; June 15, 1977, Pub. L. 95-45, § 4(c), 91 Stat. 222; Dec. 22, 1987, Pub. L. 100-204, title VII, § 744(a), 101 Stat. 1396; Pub. L. 103-437, § 9(a)(5), Nov. 2, 1994, 108 Stat. 4588.)

## CODIFICATION

This section was not enacted as part of the Mutual Security Act of 1954 which comprises this chapter.

## AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-437 substituted "Foreign Affairs" for "International Relations" wherever appearing.

1987—Pub. L. 100-204 inserted at end "Each delegation shall have a secretary. The secretaries of the Senate and House delegations shall be appointed, respectively, by the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives."

1977—Pub. L. 95-45 increased the size of the United States Group from eighteen to twenty-four, inserted requirement that not less than four of the appointees from the House of Representatives be from the Committee on International Relations, inserted requirement that the appointment of the Senate appointees by the President of the Senate be made upon recommendations of the majority and minority leaders of the Senate, substituted requirement that not more than seven of the appointees from the Senate be of the same political party for requirement which had provided that not more than five of the appointees from each of the respective Houses be of the same political party, and inserted provision that the Chairman or Vice Chairman

of the House delegation be a Member from the International Relations Committee, and, unless the President of the Senate, upon the recommendation of the Majority Leader, determines otherwise, the Chairman or Vice Chairman of the Senate delegation be a Member from the Foreign Relations Committee.

1963—Pub. L. 88-205 struck out "and when Congress is not in session" after "to meet jointly and annually".

## CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

**§ 1928b. Authorization of appropriations**

There is authorized to be appropriated annually (1) for the annual contribution of the United States toward the maintenance of the North Atlantic Assembly, such sum as may be agreed upon by the United States Group and approved by such Assembly, but in no event to exceed for any year an amount equal to 25 per centum of the total annual contributions made for that year by all members of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization toward the maintenance of such Assembly, and (2) \$100,000, \$50,000 for the House delegation and \$50,000 for the Senate delegation, or so much thereof as may be necessary, to assist in meeting the expenses of the United States Group of the North Atlantic Assembly for each fiscal year for which an appropriation is made, such appropriation to be dispersed on voucher to be approved by the Chairman of the House delegation and the Chairman of the Senate delegation.

(July 11, 1956, ch. 562, § 2, 70 Stat. 523; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. V, § 502(d), 72 Stat. 273; Nov. 14, 1967, Pub. L. 90-137, pt. IV, § 401(a), 81 Stat. 463; Feb. 7, 1972, Pub. L. 92-226, pt. IV, § 405, 86 Stat. 34; Dec. 22, 1987, Pub. L. 100-202, § 101(a) [title III, § 303], 101 Stat. 1329, 1329-23; Dec. 22, 1987, Pub. L. 100-204, title VII, § 744(b), 101 Stat. 1396.)

## CODIFICATION

This section was not enacted as part of the Mutual Security Act of 1954 which comprises this chapter.

## AMENDMENTS

1987—Pub. L. 100-204 which directed amendment of this section by increasing appropriation authorization to \$75,000, with \$50,000 for House delegation and \$25,000 for Senate delegation, could not be executed because of prior amendment by Pub. L. 100-202.

Pub. L. 100-202 substituted "annually (1)" for "annually," "(2) \$100,000, \$50,000" for "\$50,000, \$25,000", and "and \$50,000" for "and \$25,000".

1972—Pub. L. 92-226 increased annual appropriations authorization for expenses of the United States Group of the North Atlantic Assembly, including the amount for the House and Senate delegations from \$15,000 to \$25,000.

1967—Pub. L. 90-137 substituted "North Atlantic Assembly" for "North Atlantic Treaty Organization Parliamentary Conference" and "North Atlantic Treaty Parliamentary Conference" and "Assembly" for "Conference" in two places, respectively.

1958—Pub. L. 85-477 substituted provisions authorizing an annual contribution towards the maintenance of the Conference of such sum as may be agreed upon but in no event to exceed for any year an amount equal to 25 per centum of the total annual contributions made



for that year for maintenance, for provisions which authorized an annual contribution of \$6,000 for maintenance.

PERMANENT APPROPRIATION FOR DELEGATION EXPENSES

A permanent appropriation to carry out cl. (2) of this section is contained in section 101(a) [title III, §303] of Pub. L. 100-202, set out as a note under section 276 of this title.

ANNUAL APPROPRIATIONS

Annual appropriations to meet the obligations of membership in various international organizations were contained in acts listed in a note set out under section 269a of this title.

AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS FOR EXPENSES OF 1959 ANNUAL MEETING OF NORTH ATLANTIC TREATY PARLIAMENTARY CONFERENCE

Section 702 of Pub. L. 86-108, ch. VII, July 24, 1959, 73 Stat. 258, authorized appropriations for expenses of 1959 annual meeting of North Atlantic Treaty Parliamentary Conference, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §642(a)(7), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460.

CROSS REFERENCES

Reports of expenditures by members of United States group, and by employees of the Senate or House of Representatives, see section 276c-1 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1928e of this title.

**§ 1928c. Report to the Congress**

The United States Group of the North Atlantic Assembly shall submit to the Congress a report for each fiscal year for which an appropriation is made, including its expenditures under such appropriation.

(July 11, 1956, ch. 562, §3, 70 Stat. 524; Nov. 14, 1967, Pub. L. 90-137, pt. IV, §401(a)(2), 81 Stat. 463.)

CODIFICATION

This section was not enacted as part of the Mutual Security Act of 1954 which comprises this chapter.

AMENDMENTS

1967—Pub. L. 90-137 substituted “North Atlantic Assembly” for “North Atlantic Treaty Parliamentary Conference”.

**§ 1928d. Auditing and accounting**

The certificate of the Chairman of the House delegation and the Senate delegation of the North Atlantic Assembly shall on and after July 11, 1956, be final and conclusive upon the accounting officers in the auditing of the accounts of the United States Group of the North Atlantic Assembly.

(July 11, 1956, ch. 562, §4, 70 Stat. 524; Nov. 14, 1967, Pub. L. 90-137, pt. IV, §401(a)(2), 81 Stat. 463.)

CODIFICATION

This section was not enacted as part of the Mutual Security Act of 1954 which comprises this chapter.

AMENDMENTS

1967—Pub. L. 90-137 substituted “North Atlantic Assembly” for “North Atlantic Treaty Parliamentary Conference” in two places.

**§ 1928e. North Atlantic Assembly; appropriations for expenses of annual meeting**

In addition to the amounts authorized by section 1928b of this title, there is authorized to be appropriated \$50,000 for fiscal year 1977 to meet the expenses incurred by the United States group in hosting the twenty-second annual meeting of the North Atlantic Assembly. In addition to amounts authorized by section 1928b of this title, there is authorized to be appropriated \$550,000 for fiscal year 1994 to meet the expenses incurred by the United States group in hosting the fortieth annual meeting of the North Atlantic Assembly. In addition to the amounts authorized by section 1928b of this title, there is authorized to be appropriated \$450,000 for fiscal year 1984 to meet the expenses incurred by the United States group in hosting the thirty-first annual meeting of the North Atlantic Assembly. Amounts appropriated under this section are authorized to remain available until expended.

(July 11, 1956, ch. 562, §5, as added July 12, 1976, Pub. L. 94-350, title I, §107, 90 Stat. 824; amended Nov. 22, 1983, Pub. L. 98-164, title I, §109(a), 97 Stat. 1019; Oct. 28, 1991, Pub. L. 102-138, title I, §168(g), 105 Stat. 677.)

CODIFICATION

This section was not enacted as part of the Mutual Security Act of 1954 which comprises this chapter.

AMENDMENTS

1991—Pub. L. 102-138 inserted after first sentence provisions authorizing appropriation of \$550,000 for fiscal year 1994 to meet expenses of the United States group in hosting the fortieth annual meeting of the North Atlantic Assembly.

1983—Pub. L. 98-164 inserted provisions authorizing additional appropriations for fiscal year 1984 to meet the expenses of hosting the annual meeting.

**§ 1929. Repealed. Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 642(a)(2), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460**

Section, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. II, §409, 68 Stat. 845; July 8, 1955, ch. 301, §8(g), 69 Stat. 286; July 18, 1956, ch. 627, §8(g), 70 Stat. 558; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, §8(i), 71 Stat. 361; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. II, §205(g), 72 Stat. 267; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. II, §205(i), 73 Stat. 250; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. II, §204(i), 74 Stat. 137, authorized payment of ocean freight charges and provided for arrangements for free entry.

**§ 1930. Repealed. Pub. L. 86-108, ch. II, § 205(j), July 24, 1959, 73 Stat. 250**

Section, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. II, §410, 68 Stat. 846; July 8, 1955, ch. 301, §8(h), 69 Stat. 287; July 18, 1956, ch. 627, §8(h), 70 Stat. 558; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, §8(j), 71 Stat. 361; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. II, §205(h), ch. V, §501(14), 72 Stat. 267, 271, authorized appropriations for carrying out objectives of Mutual Defense Assistance Control Act of 1951, section 1611 et seq. of this title.

**§ 1931. Repealed. Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 642(a)(2), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460**

Section, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. II, §411, 68 Stat. 846; July 8, 1955, ch. 301, §8(i), 69 Stat. 287; July 18, 1956, ch. 627, §8(i), 70 Stat. 558; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, §8(k), 71 Stat. 362; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. II, §205(i), ch. V, §501(15), 72 Stat. 267, 271; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. II, §205(k), 73 Stat. 250; May 14, 1960,

Pub. L. 86-472, ch. II, § 204(j), ch. V, § 501(b), 74 Stat. 137, 140, related to payment of administrative and other expenses. See sections 2396(b), (f) and 2397 of this title.

**§ 1932. Repealed. Pub. L. 86-472, ch. II, § 204(k), May 14, 1960, 74 Stat. 138**

Section, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. II, § 412, as added July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. II, § 205(l), 73 Stat. 250, authorized appropriations for President's special education and training fund.

A prior section 412 of act Aug. 26, 1954, which authorized assistance to selected Chinese and Korean students for studying or teaching, or for research and related academic and technical activities in the United States, was repealed by Pub. L. 85-141, § 8(l), Aug. 14, 1957, 71 Stat. 362.

**§ 1933. Repealed. Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 642(a)(2), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460**

Section, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. II, § 413, 68 Stat. 846; July 18, 1956, ch. 627, § 8(j), (k), 70 Stat. 558; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. II, § 205(j), 72 Stat. 267; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. II, § 205(m), 73 Stat. 251, related to encouragement of free enterprise and private participation. See section 2351 of this title.

**§ 1934. Repealed. Pub. L. 94-329, title II, § 212(b)(1), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 745**

Section, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. II, § 414, 68 Stat. 848; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. II, § 205(k), 72 Stat. 267; Oct. 18, 1962, Pub. L. 87-845, § 5, 76A Stat. 698; Nov. 14, 1967, Pub. L. 90-137, pt. IV, § 403, 81 Stat. 463; Dec. 17, 1973, Pub. L. 93-189, § 27, 87 Stat. 732; Nov. 29, 1975, Pub. L. 94-141, title I, § 150(a), 89 Stat. 760, related to authority of President to control export and import of arms, ammunition, and implements of war.

REFERENCE TO FORMER SECTION 1934 OF THIS TITLE  
DEEMED REFERENCE TO SECTION 2778

Section 212(b)(1) of Pub. L. 94-329 provided in part that: "Any reference to such section [this section] shall be deemed to be a reference to section 38 of the Arms Export Control Act [section 2778 of this title] and any reference to licenses issued under section 38 of the Arms Export Control Act shall be deemed to include a reference to licenses issued under section 414 of the Mutual Security Act of 1954."

SAVING PROVISION

Section 212(b)(2) of Pub. L. 94-329 provided that: "All determinations, authorizations, regulations, orders, contracts, agreements, and other actions issued, undertaken, or entered into under section 414 of the Mutual Security Act of 1954 [this section] shall continue in full force and effect until modified, revoked, or superseded by appropriate authority."

EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 11432

Ex. Ord. No. 11432, Oct. 22, 1968, 33 F.R. 15701, which amended section 301 of Ex. Ord. No. 10973, Nov. 6, 1961, 26 F.R. 10469, in regard to delegation of certain functions concerning arms control to the Department of the Treasury, was omitted in view of the subsequent amendment to section 301 by Ex. Ord. No. 11959, Jan. 18, 1977, 42 F.R. 4315.

**§§ 1935, 1936. Repealed. Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 642(a)(2), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460**

Section 1935, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. II, § 415, 68 Stat. 849; July 18, 1956, ch. 627, § 8(l), 70 Stat. 559, related to stockpiling of supplies.

Section 1936, acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. II, § 416, 68 Stat. 849; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, § 8(m), 71 Stat. 362, provided for facilitation and encouragement of travel.

**§ 1937. Irish counterpart account; approval of disposition**

Pursuant to section 1513(b)(6)<sup>1</sup> of this title, the disposition within Ireland of the unencumbered balance, in the amount of approximately 6,000,000 Irish pounds, of the special account of Irish funds established under article IV of the Economic Cooperation Agreement between the United States of America and Ireland, dated June 28, 1948, for the purposes of—

(1) scholarship exchange between the United States and Ireland;

(2) other programs and projects (including the establishment of an Agricultural Institute) to improve and develop the agricultural production and marketing potential of Ireland and to increase the production and efficiency of Irish industry; and

(3) development programs and projects in aid of the foregoing objectives,

is approved, as provided in the agreement between the Government of the United States of America and the Government of Ireland, dated June 17, 1954.

(Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. II, § 417, 68 Stat. 849.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 1513(b)(6) of this title, referred to in text, was repealed by section 542(a)(4) of act Aug. 26, 1954.

**§ 1938. Repealed. July 18, 1956, ch. 627, § 8(m), 70 Stat. 559**

Section, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title IV, § 418, as added July 8, 1955, ch. 301, § 8(j), 69 Stat. 287, authorized the establishment of President's Fund for Asian Economic Development.

**§§ 1939 to 1941. Repealed. Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 642(a)(2), (7), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460**

Section 1939, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. II, § 419, as added Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, § 8(n), 71 Stat. 362; amended June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. II, § 205(l), 72 Stat. 267; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. II, § 205(n), 73 Stat. 251; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. II, § 204(l), 74 Stat. 138, related to atoms for peace. See section 2171(c) of this title.

Act July 18, 1956, ch. 627, § 12, 70 Stat. 565, which was formerly classified to section 1939 of this title and authorized appropriations for atoms for peace, was repealed by Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 642(a)(4) Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460.

Section 1940, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. II, § 420, as added Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, § 8(n), 71 Stat. 362; amended June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. II, § 205(m), 72 Stat. 267, provided for a program of malaria eradication.

Section 1940a, act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. II, § 421, as added May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. II, § 204(m), 74 Stat. 138, related to loans to small farmers. See section 2175 of this title.

Section 1941, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. V, § 501, July 24, 1959, 73 Stat. 255, provided for international cooperation in health. Subsec. (b) of section 501 of Pub. L. 86-108 was previously repealed by Pub. L. 86-472, ch. IV, § 602, May 14, 1960, 74 Stat. 141.

**§ 1942. Development assistance in Latin America; Congressional declaration of policy**

(a) It is the sense of the Congress that—

(1) the historic, economic, political, and geographic relationships among the American Re-

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

publics are unique and of special significance and, as appropriate, should be so recognized in future legislation;

(2) although governmental forms differ among the American Republics, the peoples of all the Americas are dedicated to the creation and maintenance of governments which will promote individual freedom;

(3) the interests of the American Republics are so interrelated that sound social and economic progress in each is of importance to all and that lack of it in any American Republic may have serious repercussions in others;

(4) for the peoples of Latin America to continue to progress within the framework of our common heritage of democratic ideals, there is a compelling need for the achievement of social and economic advance adequate to meet the legitimate aspirations of the individual citizens of the countries of Latin America for a better way of life;

(5) there is a need for a plan of hemispheric development, open to all American Republics which cooperate in such plan, based upon a strong production effort, the expansion of foreign trade, the creation and maintenance of internal financial stability, the growth of free economic and social institutions, and the development of economic cooperation, including all possible steps to establish and maintain equitable rates of exchange and to bring about the progressive elimination of trade barriers;

(6) mindful of the advantages which the United States has enjoyed through the existence of a large domestic market with no internal trade barriers, and believing that similar advantages can accrue to all countries, it is the hope of the people of the United States that all American Republics will jointly exert sustained common efforts which will speedily achieve that economic cooperation in the Western Hemisphere which is essential for lasting peace and prosperity; and

(7) accordingly, it is declared to be the policy of the people of the United States to sustain and strengthen principles of individual liberty, free institutions, private enterprise, and genuine independence in the Western Hemisphere through cooperation with all American Republics which participate in a joint development program based upon self-help and mutual efforts.

(b) In order to carry forward the above policy, the Congress hereby—

(1) urges the President through our constitutional processes to develop cooperative programs on a bilateral or multilateral basis which will set forth specific plans of action designed to foster economic progress and improvements in the welfare and level of living of all the peoples of the American Republics on the basis of joint aid, mutual effort, and common sacrifice;

(2) proposes the development of workable procedures to expand hemispheric trade and to moderate extreme price fluctuations in commodities which are of exceptional importance in the economies of the American Republics, and encourages the development of regional economic cooperation among the American Republics;

(3) supports the development of a more accurate and sympathetic understanding among the peoples of the American Republics through a greater interchange of persons, ideas, techniques, and educational, scientific, and cultural achievements;

(4) supports the strengthening of free democratic trade unions to raise standards of living through improved management-labor relations;

(5) favors the progressive development of common standards with respect to the rights and the responsibilities of private investment which flows across national boundaries within the Western Hemisphere;

(6) supports the consolidation of the public institutions and agencies of inter-American cooperation, insofar as feasible, within the structure of the Organization of American States and the strengthening of the personnel resources and authority of the Organization in order that it may play a role of increasing importance in all aspects of hemispheric cooperation; and

(7) declares that it is prepared to give careful and sympathetic consideration to programs which the President may develop for the purpose of promoting these policies.

(Pub. L. 86-735, § 1, Sept. 8, 1960, 74 Stat. 869.)

#### CODIFICATION

This section was not enacted as part of the Mutual Security Act of 1954 which comprises this chapter.

#### SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 88-205, pt. IV, § 401(a), Dec. 16, 1963, 77 Stat. 390, amended Pub. L. 86-735 to provide: "That this Act [enacting this section and sections 1943 to 1945 of this title and amending section 1753a of this title] may be cited as the 'Latin American Development Act.'"

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, pursuant to section 1-102(a)(2) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

#### REVISION OF SOCIAL PROGRESS TRUST FUND AGREEMENT

Pub. L. 93-189, § 36, Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 734, as amended by Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(9), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560, provided that:

"(a) The President or his delegate shall seek, as soon as possible a revision of the Social Progress Trust Fund Agreement (dated June 19, 1961) between the United States and the Inter-American Development Bank. Such revision should provide for the—

"(1) periodic transfer of unencumbered capital resources of such trust fund, and of any future repayments or other accruals otherwise payable to such trust fund, to the Inter-American Foundation, to be administered by the Foundation for purposes of part IV of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1969 (22 U.S.C. 290f and following);

"(2) utilization of such unencumbered capital resources, future repayments, and other accruals by the Inter-American Development Bank for purposes of sections 1 and 2 of the Latin American Development Act (22 U.S.C. 1942 and 1943) in such a way that the resources received in the currencies of the more developed member countries are utilized to the extent possible for the benefit of the lesser developed member countries; or

“(3) both the transfer described in paragraph (1) and the utilization described in paragraph (2).

“(b) Any transfer or utilization under this section shall be in such proportions as may be agreed to between the United States and the Inter-American Development Bank.

“(c) Any transfer under subsection (a)(1) shall be in the amounts, and in available currencies, determined in consultation with the Inter-American Foundation, to be required for its program purposes.

“(d) The revision of the Social Progress Trust Fund Agreement pursuant to this section shall provide that the President or his delegate shall specify, from time to time, after consultation with the Inter-American Development Bank, the particular currencies to be used in making the transfer or utilization described in this section.

“(e) [Repealed. Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, §734(a)(9), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560].”

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1943, 1945 of this title.

### § 1943. Authorization of appropriations; restrictions; reports to Congressional committees

In order to carry out the purposes of section 1942 of this title, there is authorized to be appropriated to the President not to exceed \$680,000,000, which shall remain available until expended, and which the President may use, subject to such further legislative provisions as may be enacted, in addition to other funds available for such purposes, on such terms and conditions as he may specify: *Provided*, That none of the funds made available pursuant to this section shall be used to furnish assistance to any country in Latin America being subjected to economic or diplomatic sanctions by the Organization of American States. The Secretary of State shall keep the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House currently informed about plans and programs for the utilization of such funds.

(Pub. L. 86-735, §2, Sept. 8, 1960, 74 Stat. 870; Pub. L. 88-205, pt. IV, §401(b), Dec. 16, 1963, 77 Stat. 390.)

#### CODIFICATION

This section was not enacted as part of the Mutual Security Act of 1954 which comprises this chapter.

#### AMENDMENTS

1963—Pub. L. 88-205 substituted “\$680,000,000” for “\$500,000,000”.

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, pursuant to section 1-102(a)(2) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1945 of this title.

### § 1944. Reconstruction assistance in Chile; authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to the President not to exceed \$100,000,000, which shall remain available until expended, for use, in addition to other funds available for such purposes, in the reconstruction and rehabilitation of Chile on such terms and conditions as the President may specify.

(Pub. L. 86-735, §3, Sept. 8, 1960, 74 Stat. 870.)

#### CODIFICATION

This section was not enacted as part of the Mutual Security Act of 1954 which comprises this chapter.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, pursuant to section 1-102(a)(2) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1945 of this title.

### § 1945. Utilization of funds for assistance in Latin America; availability for transportation of immigrants from Ryukyuan Archipelago

(a) Funds appropriated under sections 1943 and 1944 of this title may be used for assistance under sections 1942 to 1945 of this title pursuant to such provisions applicable to the furnishing of such assistance contained in any successor Act to the Mutual Security Act of 1954, as amended, as the President determines to be necessary to carry out the purposes for which such funds are appropriated.

(b) Of the funds appropriated under section 1943 of this title not more than \$800,000 shall be available only for assisting in transporting to and settling in Latin America selected immigrants from that portion of the Ryukyuan Archipelago under United States administration.

(Pub. L. 86-735, §4, as added Pub. L. 87-195, pt. IV, §706, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 463.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Mutual Security Act of 1954, referred to in text, is act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, 68 Stat. 832, as amended by acts July 8, 1955, ch. 301, 69 Stat. 283; July 18, 1956, ch. 627, §§2 to 11, 70 Stat. 555; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, 71 Stat. 355; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. 1, §§101 to 103, ch. II, §§201 to 205, ch. III, §301, ch. IV, §401, ch. V, §501, 72 Stat. 261; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, §2, ch. 1, §101, ch. II, §§201 to 205(a) to (i), (k) to (n), ch. III, §301, ch. IV, §401(a) to (k), (m), 73 Stat. 246; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. I to V, 74 Stat. 134, which was principally classified to chapter 24 (§1750 et seq.) of this title and which was repealed by act July 18, 1956, ch. 627, §8(m), 70 Stat. 559, Pub. L. 85-141, §§2(e), 3, 4(b), 11(d), Aug. 14, 1957, 71 Stat. 356, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. II, §§205(j), ch. IV, 401(1), July 24, 1959, 73 Stat. 250, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. II, §§203(d), 204(k), May 14, 1960, 74 Stat. 138, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §642(a)(2), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460, Pub. L. 94-329, title II, §212(b)(1), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 745, except for sections 1754, 1783, 1796, 1853, 1922, 1928, and 1937 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1754 of this title and Tables.

#### CODIFICATION

This section was not enacted as part of the Mutual Security Act of 1954 which comprises this chapter.

## REPEALS

Section 706 of Pub. L. 87-195, cited as a credit to this section was repealed by section 401 of Pub. L. 87-565, pt. IV, Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 263, except insofar as section 706 affected this section.

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, pursuant to section 1-102(a)(2) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

## SUBCHAPTER IV—CONTINGENCY FUND

## § 1951. Repealed

Subsecs. (a) and (b), acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. III, § 451(a), (b), 68 Stat. 843; July 8, 1955, ch. 301, § 8(a), 69 Stat. 286; July 18, 1956, ch. 627, § 8(a), 70 Stat. 557; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, § 8(b), 71 Stat. 360; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. III, § 301, ch. V, § 501(12)(B), 72 Stat. 268, 271; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. III, § 301, 73 Stat. 252; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. III, § 301, 74 Stat. 138, which related to the creation of the President's special authority and contingency fund authorized appropriations, were repealed by Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 642(a)(2), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460. See section 2261 of this title.

Subsec. (c), acts Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, ch. III, § 451(c), 68 Stat. 843; July 8, 1955, ch. 301, § 8(a), 69 Stat. 286; July 18, 1956, ch. 627, § 8(a), 70 Stat. 557; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, § 8(b), 71 Stat. 360; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. III, § 301, ch. V, § 501(12)(B), 72 Stat. 268, 271; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. III, § 301, 73 Stat. 252; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. III, § 301, 74 Stat. 138, related to declaration of purpose and use of funds in connection with right of self-determination for people subject to captivity of Communist despotism, and was repealed by Pub. L. 87-510, § 6, June 28, 1962, 76 Stat. 124.

## CHAPTER 24A—MIDDLE EAST PEACE AND STABILITY

|       |   |
|-------|---|
| Sec.  |   |
| 1961. | Economic assistance.                      |
| 1962. | Military assistance; use of armed forces. |
| 1963. | United Nations Emergency Force.           |
| 1964. | Report to Congress.                       |
| 1965. | Expiration.                               |

## § 1961. Economic assistance

The President is authorized to cooperate with and assist any nation or group of nations in the general area of the Middle East desiring such assistance in the development of economic strength dedicated to the maintenance of national independence.

(Pub. L. 85-7, § 1, Mar. 9, 1957, 71 Stat. 5.)

## APPROPRIATIONS, FISCAL YEAR 1957; RESTRICTION; REPORT TO CONGRESS

Pub. L. 85-7, § 3, Mar. 9, 1957, 71 Stat. 5, authorized President to use, for balance of fiscal year 1957, funds not to exceed \$200,000,000 for military and economic assistance for Middle East from appropriations available under Mutual Security Act of 1954, restricted availability of funds for military assistance to funds appropriated for military assistance and for economic assistance to funds appropriated for other than military assistance, and required that funds not be available until 15 days after reports on proposed use of funds be supplied to appropriate Congressional committees.

## § 1962. Military assistance; use of armed forces

The President is authorized to undertake, in the general area of the Middle East, military as-

sistance programs with any nation or group of nations of that area desiring such assistance. Furthermore, the United States regards as vital to the national interest and world peace the preservation of the independence and integrity of the nations of the Middle East. To this end, if the President determines the necessity thereof, the United States is prepared to use armed forces to assist any such nation or group of such nations requesting assistance against armed aggression from any country controlled by international communism: *Provided*, That such employment shall be consonant with the treaty obligations of the United States and with the Constitution of the United States.

(Pub. L. 85-7, § 2, Mar. 9, 1957, 71 Stat. 5.)

## § 1963. United Nations Emergency Force

The President should continue to furnish facilities and military assistance, within the provisions of applicable law and established policies, to the United Nations Emergency Force in the Middle East, with a view to maintaining the truce in that region.

(Pub. L. 85-7, § 4, Mar. 9, 1957, 71 Stat. 6.)

## § 1964. Report to Congress

The President shall whenever appropriate report to the Congress his action hereunder.

(Pub. L. 85-7, § 5, Mar. 9, 1957, 71 Stat. 6; Pub. L. 87-195, pt. IV, § 705, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 463.)

## AMENDMENTS

1961—Pub. L. 87-195 substituted “whenever appropriate” for “within the months of January and July of each year”.

## REPEALS

Section 705 of Pub. L. 87-195, cited as a credit to this section, was repealed by section 401 of Pub. L. 87-565, pt. IV, Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 263, except insofar as section 705 affected this section.

## § 1965. Expiration

This chapter shall expire when the President shall determine that the peace and security of the nations in the general area of the Middle East are reasonably assured by international conditions created by action of the United Nations or otherwise except that it may be terminated earlier by a concurrent resolution of the two Houses of Congress.

(Pub. L. 85-7, § 6, Mar. 9, 1957, 71 Stat. 6.)

## CHAPTER 25—PROTECTION OF VESSELS ON THE HIGH SEAS AND IN TERRITORIAL WATERS OF FOREIGN COUNTRIES

|       |  |
|-------|--|
| Sec.  |  |
| 1971. | “Vessel of the United States” defined.   |
| 1972. | Action by Secretary of State upon seizure of vessel by foreign country; preconditions.   |
| 1973. | Reimbursement of owner for any direct charges paid to secure release of vessel and crew. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Reimbursement by Secretary of State; “other direct charge” defined; source of reimbursement.</li> <li>(b) Determination and certification of charges by Secretary of State; reimbursement as lien on vessel; termination of lien.</li> </ol> |

- Sec.  
1974. Inapplicability of chapter to certain seizures.  
1975. Claims for amounts expended because of seizure.  
(a) Action by Secretary.  
(b) Withholding amount of unpaid claim from foreign assistance funds.
1976. Authorization of appropriations.  
1977. Reimbursement for seized commercial fishermen.  
(a) Agreement to reimburse for actual costs, confiscation or spoilage of fish, and loss of income.  
(b) Distribution of payments according to commercial fishing practices and procedures.  
(c) Establishment of fees; amount of fees; credit of fees to separate Treasury account; payment from collected fees; authorization of appropriations.  
(d) Finality of determinations; insured losses.  
(e) Effective date.  
(f) Definitions.
1978. Restriction on importation of fishery or wildlife products from countries which violate international fishery or endangered or threatened species programs.  
(a) Certification to President.  
(b) Notification to Congress.  
(c) Importation of fish products from offending country prohibited.  
(d) Periodic review by Secretary of Commerce or Secretary of the Interior; termination of certification; notice.  
(e) Penalties; forfeiture; customs laws.  
(f) Enforcement.  
(g) Regulations.  
(h) Definitions.
1979. Fishermen's Protective Fund.  
1980. Compensation for loss or destruction of commercial fishing vessel or gear.  
(a) Definitions.  
(b) Causes of loss or destruction.  
(c) Eligibility for compensation.  
(d) Application for compensation; initial determination of eligibility; amount of compensation; review of initial determination; subrogation of United States upon payment.  
(e) Surcharge on foreign fishing vessels.  
(f) Fishing Vessel and Gear Damage Compensation Fund; requirements, etc.  
(g) Penalty for false or misleading statements.
- 1980a. Reimbursement of owner for fee paid to navigate foreign waters if fee inconsistent with international law.  
(a) Reimbursable fees.  
(b) Documentation.  
(c) Timeliness.  
(d) Funding; appropriations.  
(e) Claim against foreign government.  
(f) "Owner" defined.
- 1980b. Sanctions for imposition of conditions on U.S. fishing vessel found inconsistent with international law.  
(a) Certification.  
(b) Sanctions.  
(c) "Fishing vessel" defined.  
(d) Sanctions commensurate with conditions certified.

## CHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This chapter is referred to in title 16 section 972c; title 48 section 1904.

**§ 1971. "Vessel of the United States" defined**

For the purposes of this chapter the term "vessel of the United States" shall mean any

private vessel documented or certificated under the laws of the United States. Notwithstanding any other law, the documentation or certification of any such vessel shall not be considered to be affected, for the purposes of this chapter, in any manner or to any extent if at any time during any voyage for the purpose of fishing beyond the fishery conservation zone (as defined in section 1802(8)<sup>1</sup> of title 16), the vessel is commanded by other than a citizen of the United States.

(Aug. 27, 1954, ch. 1018, §1, 68 Stat. 883; Oct. 28, 1978, Pub. L. 95-541, §14(a), 92 Stat. 2057.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 1802(8) of title 16, referred to in text, which defined "fishery conservation zone", was repealed and section 1802(6) of Title 16, Conservation, defining "exclusive economic zone", was added by Pub. L. 99-659, title I, §101(a), Nov. 14, 1986, 100 Stat. 3706.

## AMENDMENTS

1978—Pub. L. 95-541 provided that the documentation or certification of a vessel of the United States not be affected if at any time during the voyage for the purpose of fishing beyond the fishery conservation zone, the vessel is commanded by other than a citizen of the United States.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Section 14(b) of Pub. L. 95-541 provided that: "The amendment made by subsection (a) [amending this section] shall take effect January 1, 1978."

## SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 90-482, §4, Aug. 12, 1968, 82 Stat. 730, provided that: "The Act of August 27, 1954 (68 Stat. 883; 22 U.S.C. 1971-1976), as amended by this Act [this chapter], may be cited as the 'Fishermen's Protective Act of 1967'."

## CROSS REFERENCES

Documentation of vessels, see section 12101 et seq. of Title 46, Shipping.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 48 section 1904.

**§ 1972. Action by Secretary of State upon seizure of vessel by foreign country; preconditions**

If—

(1) any vessel of the United States is seized by a foreign country on the basis of claims to jurisdiction that are not recognized by the United States, or on the basis of claims to jurisdiction recognized by the United States but exercised in a manner inconsistent with international law as recognized by the United States;<sup>1</sup>

(2) any general claim of any foreign country to exclusive fishery management authority is recognized by the United States, and any vessel of the United States is seized by such foreign country on the basis of conditions and restrictions under such claim, if such conditions and restrictions—

(A) are unrelated to fishery conservation and management,

(B) fail to consider and take into account traditional fishing practices of vessels of the United States,

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be followed by "or".

(C) are greater or more onerous than the conditions and restrictions which the United States applies to foreign fishing vessels subject to the exclusive fishery management authority of the United States (as established in title I of the Magnuson Fishery Conservation and Management Act [16 U.S.C. 1811 et seq.]), or

(D) fail to allow fishing vessels of the United States equitable access to fish subject to such country's exclusive fishery management authority;

the Secretary of State, unless there is clear and convincing credible evidence that the seizure did not meet the requirements under paragraph (1) or (2), as the case may be, shall immediately take such steps as are necessary—

(i) for the protection of such vessel and for the health and welfare of its crew;

(ii) to secure the release of such vessel and its crew; and

(iii) to determine the amount of any fine, license, fee, registration fee, or other direct charge reimbursable under section 1973(a) of this title.

(Aug. 27, 1954, ch. 1018, § 2, 68 Stat. 883; Oct. 26, 1972, Pub. L. 92-569, § 1, 86 Stat. 1182; Apr. 13, 1976, Pub. L. 94-265, title IV, § 403(a)(1), 90 Stat. 360; Dec. 22, 1980, Pub. L. 96-561, title II, § 238(b), 94 Stat. 3300; July 17, 1984, Pub. L. 98-364, title III, § 303(a), 98 Stat. 444.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Magnuson Fishery Conservation and Management Act, referred to in par. (2)(C), is Pub. L. 94-265, Apr. 13, 1976, 90 Stat. 331, as amended. Title I of the Act is classified generally to subchapter II (§ 1811 et seq.) of chapter 38 of Title 16, Conservation. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1801 of Title 16 and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1984—Pub. L. 98-364, in par. (1), substituted “any vessel of the United States is seized by a foreign country on the basis of claims to jurisdiction that are not recognized by the United States, or on the basis of claims to jurisdiction recognized by the United States but exercised in a manner inconsistent with international law as recognized by the United States;” for “any vessel of the United States is seized by a foreign country on the basis of claims in territorial waters or the high seas which are not recognized by the United States; or”, and in provisions following par. (2)(D), substituted “the Secretary of State, unless there is clear and convincing credible evidence that the seizure did not meet the requirements under paragraph (1) or (2), as the case may be, shall immediately take such steps as are necessary” for “and there is no dispute as to the material facts with respect to the location or activity of such vessel at the time of such seizure, the Secretary of State shall immediately take such steps as are necessary”.

1980—Par. (2)(C). Pub. L. 96-561 substituted “Magnuson Fishery Conservation and Management Act” for “Fishery Conservation and Management Act of 1976”.

1976—Pub. L. 94-265 redesignated existing subsecs. (a) and (b) as pars. (1) and (2), respectively, and, in par. (1) struck out reference to rights in territorial waters, and in par. (2) substituted provisions relating to any general claim of any foreign country, conditions, and restrictions of seizure, lack of dispute as to material facts, and steps authorized for Secretary of State upon seizure, for provisions relating to lack of dispute as to material facts and actions authorized for Secretary of State upon seizure.

1972—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 92-569 required the Secretary of State to take appropriate action to immediately ascertain the fees, fines, and other direct charges paid by a United States vessel owner to the seizing foreign country for the release of the vessel and its crew.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1984 AMENDMENT

Section 303(c) of Pub. L. 98-364 provided that: “The amendments made by subsections (a) and (b) [amending this section and section 1974 of this title] apply with respect to seizures made after April 1, 1983, by foreign countries of vessels of the United States.”

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-561 effective 15 days after Dec. 22, 1980, see section 238 of Pub. L. 96-561, set out as a Short Title note under section 1801 of Title 16, Conservation.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1976 AMENDMENT

Section 403(b) of Pub. L. 94-265 provided in part that: “The amendment made by subsection (a)(1) [amending this section] shall take effect March 1, 1977.”

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1972 AMENDMENT

Section 6 of Pub. L. 92-569 provided that: “The amendments made by this Act [enacting section 1979 of this title and amending this section and sections 1973, 1975, and 1977 of this title] shall apply with respect to seizures of vessels of the United States occurring on or after the date of the enactment of this Act [Oct. 26, 1972]; except that reimbursements under section 3 of the Fishermen's Protective Act of 1967 [section 1973 of this title] (as in effect before such date of enactment [Oct. 26, 1972]) may be made from the fund established by the amendment made by section 5 of this Act [enacting section 1979 of this title] with respect to any seizure of a vessel occurring before such date of enactment [Oct. 26, 1972] and after December 31, 1970, if no reimbursement was made before such date of enactment [Oct. 26, 1972].”

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1973, 1977 of this title; title 16 section 973a.

### § 1973. Reimbursement of owner for any direct charges paid to secure release of vessel and crew

#### (a) Reimbursement by Secretary of State; “other direct charge” defined; source of reimbursement

In any case where a vessel of the United States is seized by a foreign country under the conditions of section 1972 of this title and a fine, license fee, registration fee, or any other direct charge must be paid in order to secure the prompt release of the vessel and crew, the owners of the vessel shall be reimbursed by the Secretary of State in the amount determined and certified by him as being the amount of the fine, license fee, registration fee, or any other direct charge actually paid. For purposes of this section, the term “other direct charge” means any levy, however characterized or computed (including, but not limited to, any computation based on the value of a vessel or the value of fish or other property on board a vessel), which is imposed in addition to any fine, license fee, or registration fee. Any reimbursement under this section shall be made from the Fishermen's Protective Fund established pursuant to section 1979 of this title.

**(b) Determination and certification of charges by Secretary of State; reimbursement as lien on vessel; termination of lien**

The Secretary of State shall make a determination and certification under subsection (a) of this section as soon as possible after he is notified pursuant to section 1972(b) of this title of the amounts of the fines, fees, and other direct charges which were paid by the owners to secure the release of their vessel and crew. The amount of reimbursement made by the Secretary of State to the owners of any vessel under subsection (a) of this section shall constitute a lien on the vessel which may be recovered in proceedings by libel in rem in the district court of the United States for any district within which the vessel may be. Any such lien shall terminate on the ninetieth day after the date on which the Secretary of State reimburses the owners under this section unless before such ninetieth day the United States initiates action to enforce the lien.

(Aug. 27, 1954, ch. 1018, § 3, 68 Stat. 883; Aug. 12, 1968, Pub. L. 90-482, § 2, 82 Stat. 730; Oct. 26, 1972, Pub. L. 92-569, § 2, 86 Stat. 1182; Apr. 13, 1976, Pub. L. 94-265, title IV, § 403(a)(2), 90 Stat. 360; July 17, 1984, Pub. L. 98-364, title III, § 302(a), 98 Stat. 444.)

AMENDMENTS

1984—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 98-364, § 302(a)(1), substituted “Secretary of State in the amount determined and certified by him” for “Secretary of the Treasury in the amount certified to him by the Secretary of State”.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 98-364, § 302(a)(2), inserted “determination and” before “certification” in first sentence, and substituted “State” for “the Treasury” in second and third sentences.

1976—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94-265 inserted definition of “other direct charge”.

1972—Pub. L. 92-569 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a), inserted provision that reimbursement under this section shall be made from the Fishermen’s Protective Fund, and added subsec. (b).

1968—Pub. L. 90-482 inserted “, license fee, registration fee, or any other direct charge” after “fine” wherever appearing.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1976 AMENDMENT

Section 403(b) of Pub. L. 94-265 provided in part that: “The amendment made by subsection (a)(2) [amending this section] shall apply with respect to seizures of vessels of the United States occurring on or after December 31, 1974.”

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1972 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 92-569 applicable with respect to seizure of vessels of the United States occurring on or after Oct. 26, 1972, except that reimbursements under this section may be made from the fund established by section 1979 of this title with respect to seizure of vessels occurring after Dec. 31, 1970 and before Oct. 26, 1972 if no reimbursement was made before Oct. 26, 1972, see section 6 of Pub. L. 92-569, set out as a note under section 1972 of this title.

FEDERAL RULES OF CIVIL PROCEDURE

Admiralty and maritime rules of practice (which included libel procedures) were superseded, and civil and admiralty procedures in United States district courts were unified, effective July 1, 1966, see rule 1 and Supplemental Rules for Certain Admiralty and Maritime Claims, Title 28, Appendix, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1972, 1975, 1977, 1979 of this title.

**§ 1974. Inapplicability of chapter to certain seizures**

The provisions of this chapter shall not apply with respect to a seizure made by a country at war with the United States or a seizure made in accordance with the provisions of any applicable convention or treaty, if that treaty or convention was made with advice and consent to<sup>1</sup> the Senate and was in force and effect for the United States and the seizing country at the time of the seizure.

(Aug. 27, 1954, ch. 1018, § 4, 68 Stat. 883; July 17, 1984, Pub. L. 98-364, title III, § 303(b), 98 Stat. 444.)

AMENDMENTS

1984—Pub. L. 98-364 substituted “any applicable convention or treaty, if that treaty or convention was made with advice and consent to the Senate and was in force and effect for the United States and the seizing country at the time of the seizure” for “any fishery convention or treaty to which the United States is a party”.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1984 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 98-364 applicable with respect to seizures made after Apr. 1, 1983, by foreign countries of vessels of the United States, see section 303(c) of Pub. L. 98-364, set out as a note under section 1972 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 16 section 972c.

**§ 1975. Claims for amounts expended because of seizure**

**(a) Action by Secretary**

The Secretary of State shall—

(1) immediately notify a foreign country of—

(A) any reimbursement made by him under section 1973 of this title as a result of the seizure of a vessel of the United States by such country,

(B) any payment made pursuant to section 1977 of this title in connection with such seizure, and

(2) take such action as he deems appropriate to make and collect claims against such foreign country for the amounts so reimbursed and payments so made.

**(b) Withholding amount of unpaid claim from foreign assistance funds**

If a foreign country fails or refuses to make payment in full on any claim made under subsection (a)(2) of this section within one hundred and twenty days after the date on which such country is notified pursuant to subsection (a)(1) of this section, the Secretary of State shall transfer an amount equal to such unpaid claim or unpaid portion thereof from any funds appropriated by Congress and programed for the current fiscal year for assistance to the government of such country under the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.] unless the

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be “of”.



President certifies to the Congress that it is in the national interest not to do so in the particular instance (and if such funds are insufficient to cover such claim, transfer shall be made from any funds so appropriated and programed for the next and any succeeding fiscal year) to (1) the Fishermen's Protective Fund established pursuant to section 1979 of this title if the amount is transferred with respect to an unpaid claim for a reimbursement made under section 1973 of this title, or (2) the separate account established in the Treasury of the United States pursuant to section 1977(c) of this title if the amount is transferred with respect to an unpaid claim for a payment made under section 1977(a) of this title. Amounts transferred under this section shall not constitute satisfaction of any such claim of the United States against such foreign country.

(Aug. 27, 1954, ch. 1018, § 5, 68 Stat. 883; Aug. 12, 1968, Pub. L. 90-482, § 3, 82 Stat. 730; Oct. 26, 1972, Pub. L. 92-569, § 3, 86 Stat. 1182; July 17, 1984, Pub. L. 98-364, title III, § 302(b), 98 Stat. 444.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (b), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 32 (§ 2151 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1984—Subsec. (a)(1)(A). Pub. L. 98-364 substituted "him" for "the Secretary of the Treasury".

1972—Pub. L. 92-569 substituted provisions that the Secretary of State notify the foreign country of reimbursements made under section 1973 of this title and payments made under section 1977 of this title, take appropriate action to make and collect claims against such foreign country and on failure to receive payment or on refusal to pay within 120 days after the notification, transfer an amount equal to the unpaid amount from funds programed for assistance to that country to the Fishermen's Protective Fund or the separate account in the Treasury as the case may be, and in the case of inadequate funds programed in the current fiscal year make the deduction from succeeding fiscal years, with exception that no such transfer be made when the President certifies to Congress that it is in the national interest not to do so, for provisions that the Secretary of State take appropriate action to collect claims against such foreign country and withhold amounts equal to the unpaid claims from the foreign assistance programed for that fiscal year when such country fails or refuses to pay within 120 days of receipt of notice of claim.

1968—Pub. L. 90-482 inserted provisions authorizing the Secretary to act when payments are made pursuant to section 1977 of this title, and provisions authorizing the Secretary to withhold the amount of any unpaid claim against the foreign country from the foreign assistance funds programed for that country, such amounts withheld not to constitute satisfaction of any unpaid claim.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1972 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 92-569 applicable with respect to seizures of vessels of the United States occurring on or after Oct. 26, 1972, see section 6 of Pub. L. 92-569, set out as a note under section 1972 of this title.

#### EX. ORD. NO. 11772. DELEGATION OF CERTAIN AUTHORITY OF PRESIDENT TO SECRETARY OF STATE

Ex. Ord. No. 11772, Mar. 21, 1974, 39 F.R. 10879, provided:

By virtue of the authority vested in me by the Fishermen's Protective Act of 1967, as amended (22 U.S.C. 1971, et seq.), and Section 301 of Title 3 of the United States Code, and as President of the United States of America, the Secretary of State is hereby designated and empowered to exercise, without ratification, or other action of the President, the function conferred upon the President by Section 5(b) of the Fishermen's Protective Act of 1967, as amended [22 U.S.C. 1975(b)], of certifying to the Congress that it is in the national interest not to transfer to the Fishermen's Protective Fund or to the separate account established under the Act, pursuant to that Section, amounts appropriated by the Congress and programed for assistance under the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.].

RICHARD NIXON.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1977, 1979 of this title; title 48 section 1904.

#### § 1976. Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated such amounts as may be necessary to carry out the provisions of this chapter.

(Aug. 27, 1954, ch. 1018, § 6, 68 Stat. 883.)

#### § 1977. Reimbursement for seized commercial fishermen

##### (a) Agreement to reimburse for actual costs, confiscation or spoilage of fish, and loss of income

The Secretary, upon receipt of an application filed with him at any time after the effective date of this section by the owner of any vessel of the United States which is documented or certificated as a commercial fishing vessel, shall enter into an agreement with such owner subject to the provision of this section and such other terms and conditions as the Secretary deems appropriate. Such agreement shall provide that, if said vessel is seized by a foreign country and detained under the conditions of section 1972 of this title, the Secretary shall guarantee—

(1) the owner of such vessel for all actual costs, except those covered by section 1973 of this title, incurred by the owner during the seizure and detention period and as a direct result thereof, as determined by the Secretary, resulting (A) from any damage to, or destruction of, such vessel, or its fishing gear or other equipment, (B) from the loss or confiscation of such vessel, gear, or equipment, or (C) from dockage fees or utilities;

(2) the owner of such vessel and its crew for the market value of fish caught before seizure of such vessel and confiscated or spoiled during the period of detention; and

(3) the owner of such vessel and its crew for not to exceed 50 per centum of the gross income lost as a direct result of such seizure and detention, as determined by the Secretary of the Interior, based on the value of the average catch per day's fishing during the three most recent calendar years immediately preceding such seizure and detention of the vessel seized, or, if such experience is not available, then of all commercial fishing vessels of the United States engaged in the same fishery as that of the type and size of the seized vessel.

**(b) Distribution of payments according to commercial fishing practices and procedures**

Payments made by the Secretary under paragraphs (2) and (3) of subsection (a) of this section shall be distributed by the Secretary in accordance with the usual practices and procedures of the particular segment of the United States commercial fishing industry to which the seized vessel belongs relative to the sale of fish caught and the distribution of the proceeds of such sale.

**(c) Establishment of fees; amount of fees; credit of fees to separate Treasury account; payment from collected fees; authorization of appropriations**

The Secretary shall from time to time establish by regulation fees which shall be paid by the owners of vessels entering into agreements under this section. Such fees shall be adequate (1) to recover the costs of administering this section, and (2) to cover a reasonable portion of any payments made by the Secretary under this section. All fees collected by the Secretary shall be credited to a separate account established in the Treasury of the United States which shall remain available without fiscal year limitation to carry out the provisions of this section. Those fees not currently needed for payments under this section shall be kept on deposit or invested in obligations of, or guaranteed by, the United States and all revenues accruing from such deposits or investments shall be credited to such separate account. If a transfer of funds is made to the separate account under section 1975(b)(2) of this title with respect to an unpaid claim and such claim is later paid, the amount so paid shall be covered into the Treasury as miscellaneous receipts. All payments under this section shall be made first out of such fees so long as they are available and thereafter out of funds which are hereby authorized to be appropriated to such account to carry out the provisions of this section.

**(d) Finality of determinations; insured losses**

All determinations made under this section shall be final. No payment under this section shall be made with respect to any losses covered by any policy of insurance or other provision of law.

**(e) Effective date**

The provisions of this section shall be effective until October 1, 2000; except that payments may be made under this section only to such extent and in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriation Acts.

**(f) Definitions**

For the purposes of this section—

(1) the term “Secretary” means the Secretary of State.

(2) the term “owner” includes any charterer of a commercial fishing vessel.

(Aug. 27, 1954, ch. 1018, § 7, as added Aug. 12, 1968, Pub. L. 90-482, § 1, 82 Stat. 729; amended Oct. 26, 1972, Pub. L. 92-569, § 4, 86 Stat. 1183; Oct. 27, 1972, Pub. L. 92-594, §§ 1, 2, 86 Stat. 1313; Apr. 21, 1976, Pub. L. 94-273, § 3(17), 90 Stat. 377; Nov. 18, 1977, Pub. L. 95-194, § 1, 91 Stat. 1413; Sept. 18, 1978, Pub. L. 95-376, § 1, 92 Stat. 714; Oct. 26, 1981, Pub. L. 97-68, § 1, 95 Stat. 1040; July 17, 1984, Pub. L.

98-364, title III, § 301, 98 Stat. 444; Nov. 14, 1986, Pub. L. 99-659, title IV, § 408, 100 Stat. 3740; Nov. 3, 1987, Pub. L. 100-151, § 1, 101 Stat. 884; June 27, 1988, Pub. L. 100-350, § 2, 102 Stat. 660; Nov. 28, 1990, Pub. L. 101-627, title III, § 301, 104 Stat. 4462; Nov. 3, 1995, Pub. L. 104-43, title IV, § 403, 109 Stat. 390.)

AMENDMENTS

1995—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 104-43, § 403(a), struck out after second sentence “The amount fixed by the Secretary shall be predicated upon at least 33½ per centum of the contribution by the Government.”

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 104-43, § 403(b), substituted “October 1, 2000” for “October 1, 1993”.

1990—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 101-627 substituted “October 1, 1993” for “October 1, 1989”.

1988—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 100-350 substituted “October 1, 1989” for “October 1, 1988”.

1987—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 100-151 substituted “October 1, 1988” for “October 1, 1987”.

1986—Subsec. (f)(1). Pub. L. 99-659 substituted “Secretary of State” for “Secretary of Commerce”.

1984—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 98-364 substituted “October 1, 1987” for “October 1, 1984”.

1981—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 97-68, § 1(1), inserted provision that fees not currently needed for payments under this section be kept on deposit or invested in obligations of, or guaranteed by, the United States and that all revenues accruing from such deposits or investments be credited to the separate account established in the Treasury of the United States to carry out the provisions of this section.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 97-68, § 1(2), substituted “October 1, 1984” for “October 1, 1981”.

1978—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 95-376 substituted “October 1, 1981; except that payments may be made under this section only to such extent and in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriation Acts” for “October 1, 1978”.

1977—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 95-194 substituted “October 1, 1978” for “October 1, 1977”.

1976—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 94-273 substituted “October” for “July”.

1972—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 92-569 inserted provision that amounts paid subsequent to transfer to the separate account be covered into the Treasury as miscellaneous receipts.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 92-594, § 1, extended provisions of this section until July 1, 1977, and struck out provisions relating to issuance of regulations.

Subsec. (f)(1). Pub. L. 92-594, § 2, substituted “Secretary of Commerce” for “Secretary of the Interior”.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Section 408 of Pub. L. 99-659 provided that the amendment made by that section is effective Oct. 1, 1986.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1972 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 92-569 applicable with respect to seizure of vessels of the United States occurring on or after Oct. 26, 1972, see section 6 of Pub. L. 92-569, set out as a note under section 1972 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1975 of this title.

**§ 1978. Restriction on importation of fishery or wildlife products from countries which violate international fishery or endangered or threatened species programs**

**(a) Certification to President**

(1) When the Secretary of Commerce determines that nationals of a foreign country, directly or indirectly, are conducting fishing operations in a manner or under circumstances

which diminish the effectiveness of an international fishery conservation program, the Secretary of Commerce shall certify such fact to the President.

(2) When the Secretary of Commerce or the Secretary of the Interior finds that nationals of a foreign country, directly or indirectly, are engaging in trade or taking which diminishes the effectiveness of any international program for endangered or threatened species, the Secretary making such finding shall certify such fact to the President.

(3) In administering this subsection, the Secretary of Commerce or the Secretary of the Interior, as appropriate, shall—

(A) periodically monitor the activities of foreign nationals that may affect the international programs referred to in paragraphs (1) and (2);

(B) promptly investigate any activity by foreign nationals that, in the opinion of the Secretary, may be cause for certification under paragraph (1) or (2); and

(C) promptly conclude; and reach a decision with respect to; any investigation commenced under subparagraph (B).

(4) Upon receipt of any certification made under paragraph (1) or (2), the President may direct the Secretary of the Treasury to prohibit the bringing or the importation into the United States of any products from the offending country for any duration as the President determines appropriate and to the extent that such prohibition is sanctioned by the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade.

**(b) Notification to Congress**

Within sixty days following certification by the Secretary of Commerce or the Secretary of the Interior, the President shall notify the Congress of any action taken by him pursuant to such certification. In the event the President fails to direct the Secretary of the Treasury to prohibit the importation of fish products or wildlife products of the offending country, or if such prohibition does not cover all fish products or wildlife products of the offending country, the President shall inform the Congress of the reasons therefor.

**(c) Importation of fish products from offending country prohibited**

It shall be unlawful for any person subject to the jurisdiction of the United States knowingly to bring or import into, or cause to be imported into, the United States any products prohibited by the Secretary of the Treasury pursuant to this section.

**(d) Periodic review by Secretary of Commerce or Secretary of the Interior; termination of certification; notice**

After making a certification to the President under subsection (a) of this section, the Secretary of Commerce or the Secretary of the Interior, as the case may be, shall periodically review the activities of the nationals of the offending country to determine if the reasons for which the certification was made no longer prevail. Upon determining that such reasons no longer prevail, the Secretary concerned shall terminate the certification and publish notice

thereof, together with a statement of the facts on which such determination is based, in the Federal Register.

**(e) Penalties; forfeiture; customs laws**

(1) Any person violating the provisions of this section shall be fined not more than \$10,000 for the first violation, and not more than \$25,000 for each subsequent violation.

(2) All products brought or imported into the United States in violation of this section, or the monetary value thereof, may be forfeited.

(3) All provisions of law relating to the seizure, judicial forfeiture, and condemnation of a cargo for violation of the customs laws, the disposition of such cargo or the proceeds from the sale thereof, and the remission or mitigation of such forfeitures shall apply to seizures and forfeitures incurred, or alleged to have been incurred, under the provisions of this section, insofar as such provisions of law are applicable and not inconsistent with this section.

**(f) Enforcement**

(1) Enforcement of the provisions of this section prohibiting the bringing or importation of products into the United States shall be the responsibility of the Secretary of the Treasury.

(2) The judges of the United States district courts, and United States magistrate judges may, within their respective jurisdictions, upon proper oath or affirmation showing probable cause, issue such warrants or other process as may be required for enforcement of this chapter and regulations issued thereunder.

(3) Any person authorized to carry out enforcement activities hereunder shall have the power to execute any warrant or process issued by any officer or court of competent jurisdiction for the enforcement of this section.

(4) Such person so authorized shall have the power—

(A) with or without a warrant or other process, to arrest any persons subject to the jurisdiction of the United States committing in his presence or view a violation of this section or the regulations issued thereunder;

(B) with or without a warrant or other process, to search any vessel or other conveyance subject to the jurisdiction of the United States, and, if as a result of such search he has reasonable cause to believe that such vessel or other conveyance or any person on board is engaging in operations in violation of this section or the regulations issued thereunder, then to arrest such person.

(5) Such person so authorized, may seize, whenever and wherever lawfully found, all products brought or imported into the United States in violation of this section or the regulations issued thereunder. Products so seized may be disposed of pursuant to the order of a court of competent jurisdiction, or, if perishable, in a manner prescribed by regulations promulgated by the Secretary of the Treasury after consultation with the Secretary of Health and Human Services.

**(g) Regulations**

The Secretary of the Treasury, the Secretary of Commerce, and the Secretary of the Interior are each authorized to prescribe such regula-

tions as he determines necessary to carry out the provisions of this section.

#### (h) Definitions

As used in this section—

(1) The term “person” means any individual, partnership, corporation, or association.

(2) The term “United States” means the several States, the District of Columbia, Puerto Rico, the Northern Mariana Islands, American Samoa, Guam, the Virgin Islands, and every other territory and possession of the United States.

(3) The term “international fishery conservation program” means any ban, restriction, regulation, or other measure in effect pursuant to a bilateral or multilateral agreement which is in force with respect to the United States, the purpose of which is to conserve or protect the living resources of the sea, including marine mammals.

(4) The term “international program for endangered or threatened species” means any ban, restriction, regulation, or other measure in effect pursuant to a multilateral agreement which is in force with respect to the United States, the purpose of which is to protect endangered or threatened species of animals.

(5) The term “taking”, as used with respect to animals to which an international program for endangered or threatened species applies, means to—

(A) harass, harm, pursue, hunt, shoot, wound, kill, trap, capture, or collect; or

(B) attempt to harass, harm, pursue, hunt, shoot, wound, kill, trap, capture, or collect.

(Aug. 27, 1954, ch. 1018, § 8, as added Dec. 23, 1971, Pub. L. 92-219, 85 Stat. 786; amended Pub. L. 90-578, title IV, § 402(b)(2), Oct. 17, 1968, 82 Stat. 1118; Sept. 18, 1978, Pub. L. 95-376, § 2, 92 Stat. 714; Aug. 15, 1979, Pub. L. 96-61, § 3(b), 93 Stat. 408; Oct. 17, 1979, Pub. L. 96-88, title V, § 509(b), 93 Stat. 695; Nov. 23, 1988, Pub. L. 100-711, § 8, 102 Stat. 4772; Dec. 1, 1990, Pub. L. 101-650, title III, § 321, 104 Stat. 5117; Nov. 2, 1992, Pub. L. 102-582, title II, § 201, 106 Stat. 4904.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The customs laws, referred to in subsec. (e)(3), are classified generally to Title 19, Customs Duties.

#### AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 102-582, § 201(a)(1), substituted “any products from the offending country for any duration” for “fish products (if the certification is made under paragraph (1)) or wildlife products (if the certification is made under paragraph (2)) from the offending country for such duration”.

Subsecs. (c), (e)(2). Pub. L. 102-582, § 201(a)(2), (3), substituted “products” for “fish products or wildlife products”.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 102-582, § 201(a)(4), substituted “products” for “fish products and wildlife products” in pars. (1) and (5) and “Products” for “Fish products and wildlife products” in par. (5).

Subsec. (h)(2). Pub. L. 102-582, § 201(b)(1), amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) read as follows: “The term ‘United States’, when used in a geographical sense, means the continental United States, Alaska, Hawaii, Puerto Rico, and the United States Virgin Islands.”

Subsec. (h)(3). Pub. L. 102-582, § 201(b)(2), inserted “bilateral or” before “multilateral” and “, including marine mammals” before period at end.

Subsec. (h)(4). Pub. L. 102-582, § 201(b)(3), (4), redesignated par. (5) as (4) and struck out former par. (4) which read as follows: “The term ‘fish products’ means any aquatic species (including marine mammals and plants) and all products thereof exported from an offending country, whether or not taken by fishing vessels of such country, or packed, processed, or otherwise prepared for export in such country or within the jurisdiction thereof.”

Subsec. (h)(5). Pub. L. 102-582, § 201(b)(5), amended par. (5) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (5) read as follows: “The term ‘taking’ means—

“(A) for purposes of subsection (a)(2) of this section—

“(i) to harass, harm, pursue, hunt, shoot, wound, kill, trap, capture, or collect, or

“(ii) to attempt to engage in any such conduct with respect to,

animals to which an international program for endangered or threatened species applies; and

“(B) for purposes of paragraph (6), any conduct described in subparagraph (A)(i), whether or not such conduct is legal under the laws of the offending country, undertaken with respect to any wild animal.”

Pub. L. 102-582, § 201(b)(4), redesignated par. (7) as (5). Former par. (5) redesignated (4).

Subsec. (h)(6). Pub. L. 102-582, § 201(b)(3), struck out par. (6) which read as follows: “The term ‘wildlife products’ means fish (other than those to which paragraph (4) applies) and wild animals, and parts (including eggs) thereof, taken within an offending country and all products of any such fish and wild animals, or parts thereof, whether or not such products are packed, processed, or otherwise prepared for export in such country or within the jurisdiction thereof. Such term does not include any wild animal or fish if brought or imported into the United States for scientific research.”

Subsec. (h)(7). Pub. L. 102-582, § 201(b)(4), redesignated par. (7) as (5).

1988—Subsec. (h)(4). Pub. L. 100-711 amended par. (4) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (4) read as follows: “The term ‘fish products’ means fish and marine mammals and all products thereof taken by fishing vessels of an offending country whether or not packed, processed, or otherwise prepared for export in such country or within the jurisdiction thereof.”

1979—Subsec. (a)(3), (4). Pub. L. 96-61, § 3(b)(1), added par. (3) and redesignated former par. (3) as (4).

Subsecs. (d) to (h). Pub. L. 96-61, § 3(b)(2), (3), added subsec. (d) and redesignated subsecs. (d) to (g) as (e) to (h), respectively.

1978—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 95-376, § 2(1), designated existing provisions as par. (1), struck out a provision enabling the President, upon receipt of certification, to direct the Secretary of the Treasury to prohibit importation of fish products of the offending country for as long as he determines appropriate and to the extent such prohibition is sanctioned by the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade, and added pars. (2) and (3).

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 95-376, § 2(2), inserted “or the Secretary of the Interior” after “Secretary of Commerce” and inserted “or wildlife products” after “fish products” in two places.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 95-376, § 2(3), inserted “or wildlife products” after “fish products”.

Subsecs. (d)(2), (e)(1). Pub. L. 95-376, § 2(4), (5)(A), inserted “and wildlife products” after “fish products”.

Subsec. (e)(4)(B). Pub. L. 95-376, § 2(5)(B), inserted “or other conveyance” after “vessel” wherever appearing.

Subsec. (e)(5). Pub. L. 95-376, § 2(5)(A), (C), inserted “and wildlife products” after “all fish products”, and substituted “Fish products and wildlife products” for “Any fish products”.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 95-376, § 2(6), inserted references to the Secretary of Commerce and the Secretary of the Interior.

Subsec. (g)(3). Pub. L. 95-376, § 2(7)(A), (B), substituted “in effect” for “in force”, and “which is in force with respect to the United States” for “to which the United States is a signatory party”.

Subsec. (g)(5) to (7). Pub. L. 95-376, §2(7)(C), added pars. (5) to (7).

#### CHANGE OF NAME

“United States magistrate judges” substituted for “United States magistrates” in subsec. (f)(2) pursuant to section 321 of Pub. L. 101-650, set out as a note under section 631 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure. Previously “United States magistrates” substituted for “United States commissioners” pursuant to Pub. L. 90-578. See chapter 43 (§631 et seq.) of Title 28.

“Secretary of Health and Human Services” substituted for “Secretary of Health, Education, and Welfare” in subsec. (f)(5) pursuant to section 509(b) of Pub. L. 96-88, which is classified to section 3508(b) of Title 20, Education.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 16 sections 1371, 1821, 1826, 1826a, 4242, 5301.

### § 1979. Fishermen's Protective Fund

There is created a Fishermen's Protective Fund which shall be used by the Secretary of State to reimburse owners of vessels for amounts determined and certified by him under section 1973 of this title. The amount of any claim or portion thereof collected by the Secretary of State from any foreign country pursuant to section 1975(a) of this title shall be deposited in the fund and shall be available for the purpose of reimbursing vessel owners under section 1973 of this title; except that if a transfer to the fund was made pursuant to section 1975(b)(1) of this title with respect to any such claim, an amount from the fund equal to the amount so collected shall be covered into the Treasury as miscellaneous receipts. There is authorized to be appropriated to the fund (1) the sum of \$3,000,000 to provide initial capital, and (2) such additional sums as may be necessary from time to time to supplement the fund in order to meet the requirements of the fund.

(Aug. 27, 1954, ch. 1018, §9, as added Oct. 26, 1972, Pub. L. 92-569, §5, 86 Stat. 1183; amended July 17, 1984, Pub. L. 98-364, title III, §302(c), 98 Stat. 444.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1984—Pub. L. 98-364 substituted “Secretary of State” for “Secretary of the Treasury” and “determined and certified by him” for “certified to him by the Secretary of State”.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section applicable with respect to seizure of vessels of the United States occurring on or after Oct. 26, 1972, except that reimbursements under section 1973 of this title may be made from the fund established by this section with respect to seizure of vessels occurring after Dec. 31, 1970 and before Oct. 26, 1972, if no reimbursement was made before Oct. 26, 1972, see section 6 of Pub. L. 92-569, set out as an Effective Date of 1972 Amendment note under section 1972 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1973, 1975, 1980, 1980a of this title.

### § 1980. Compensation for loss or destruction of commercial fishing vessel or gear

#### (a) Definitions

For purposes of this section—

(1) The terms “fishery”, “fishery conservation zone”, “fishing”, “fishing vessel”, “Secretary”, and “vessel of the United States” shall each have the same respective meaning as is given to such terms in section 3 of the Magnuson Fishery Conservation and Management Act (16 U.S.C. 1802).<sup>1</sup>

(2) The term “fishing gear” means any equipment or appurtenance which is necessary for the carrying out of fishing operations by a fishing vessel, whether or not such equipment or appurtenance is attached to such vessel.

(3) The term “fund” means the Fishing Vessel and Gear Damage Compensation Fund established under subsection (f) of this section.

(4) The term “resulting economic loss” means the gross income, as estimated by the Secretary, that a fishing vessel owner or operator who is eligible for compensation under this section for damage to, loss of, or destruction of, a fishing vessel or the fishing gear used with such vessel will lose by reason of not being able to engage in fishing, or having to reduce his fishing effort, during the period before the vessel or gear, or both, are repaired or replaced and available for use.

#### (b) Causes of loss or destruction

Subject to the provisions of this section, the owner or operator (hereinafter referred to as the “vessel owner”) of any fishing vessel which is a vessel of the United States is eligible for monetary compensation under this section for any damage to, loss of, or destruction of such vessel, or any fishing gear used with such vessel, or both, and for any resulting economic loss, if the damage, loss, or destruction—

(1) in the case of such vessel—

(A) occurs when such vessel is engaged in any fishery subject to the exclusive fishery management authority of the United States under the Magnuson Fishery Conservation and Management Act [16 U.S.C. 1801 et seq.], and

(B) is attributable to any vessel (or its crew or fishing gear) other than a vessel of the United States; or

(2) in the case of such fishing gear—

(A) occurs when such fishing gear is being used for fishing in any fishery subject to such exclusive management authority, and

(B) is attributable to any other vessel, whether or not such vessel is a vessel of the United States.

For purposes of subparagraph (B), there shall be a rebuttable presumption that any damage, loss, or destruction of fishing gear is attributable to another vessel.

#### (c) Eligibility for compensation

A vessel owner is not eligible for compensation under this section with respect to fishing vessel or fishing gear damage, loss, or destruction and resulting economic loss unless such owner—

(1) makes application to the Secretary for compensation under this section within 90 days after the day on which the damage, loss, or destruction occurred or was first noticed by the owner;

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

(2) pays upon making such application a reasonable administrative fee which the Secretary shall deposit into the fund;

(3) has, in such form as the Secretary shall prescribe by regulation, a current inventory or other evidence of possession of the fishery vessel or fishing gear concerned;

(4) has complied with all applicable regulations, if any, relating to the marking of, and (if appropriate) the notification of the location of, the fishing gear concerned; and

(5) is in compliance with such other regulations as may be prescribed by the Secretary to carry out this section.

**(d) Application for compensation; initial determination of eligibility; amount of compensation; review of initial determination; subrogation of United States upon payment**

(1) Application for compensation under this section shall be made in such form and manner, and include such documentation and other evidence relating to the cause and extent of the damage, loss, or destruction, and resulting economic loss, claimed, as the Secretary shall prescribe by regulation. The Secretary shall promptly, but not later than sixty days after receipt of an application, consider, and issue an initial determination with respect to, the application.

(2) The amount of compensation awarded to any vessel owner under this section shall be—

(A) the depreciated replacement cost, or the repair cost, whichever cost is less, of the fishing vessel or the fishing gear concerned; and

(B) 25 percent of any resulting economic loss.

Any amount determined pursuant to subparagraph (A) or (B) shall be reduced to the extent that evidence indicates that negligence by the vessel owner or operator contributed to the cause or the extent of the damage, loss, or destruction and shall be further reduced by the amount of compensation, if any, that the vessel owner or operator has received or will receive with respect to the damage, loss, destruction, or resulting economic loss through insurance, pursuant to any other provision of law, or otherwise.

(3) The initial determination made by the Secretary under paragraph (1) with respect to any application shall—

(A) if the application is disapproved, set forth the reasons therefor; or

(B) if the application is approved, set forth the amount of compensation to which the applicant is entitled and the basis on which such amount was determined.

(4) Any vessel owner who is aggrieved by any decision of the Secretary contained in the initial determination of the Secretary regarding such owner's application may, within thirty days after the date of issue of the initial determination, petition the Secretary for a review of the decision. If petition for review is not made to the Secretary within such thirty-day period regarding the initial determination, the initial determination shall be deemed to be the final determination on the application. Before undertaking any such review, the Secretary shall pro-

vide to the vessel owner opportunity to submit additional written or oral evidence relating to the decision. After review the Secretary shall issue a final determination with respect to the application.

(5) If compensation is awarded under the final determination on any application, the Secretary shall promptly pay from the fund to such owner the amount of compensation stated in the final determination. Upon the acceptance of such payment by the vessel owner, the United States shall be subrogated to all rights of the vessel owner with respect to which the payment is made.

**(e) Surcharge on foreign fishing vessels**

In addition to any fee imposed under section 204(b)(10) of the Magnuson Fishery Conservation and Management Act (16 U.S.C. 1824(b)(10)) with respect to any foreign fishing vessel for any year after 1978, the Secretary shall impose a surcharge in an amount not to exceed 20 percent of the amount of the fee imposed under such section for such year. The failure to pay any surcharge imposed under this subsection with respect to any foreign fishing vessel shall be treated by the Secretary as a failure to pay the fee for such vessel under such section 204(b)(10).

**(f) Fishing Vessel and Gear Damage Compensation Fund; requirements, etc.**

(1) There is established in the Treasury of the United States the Fishing Vessel and Gear Damage Compensation Fund. The fund shall be available without fiscal year limitation as a revolving fund for the purposes of administering, and paying compensation awarded under, this section.

(2) The fund shall consist of—

(A) all sums recovered by the United States in the exercise of rights subrogated to it under subsection (d)(5) of this section;

(B) all administrative fees collected under subsection (c)(2) of this section;

(C) all surcharges collected under subsection (e) of this section;

(D) revenues received from deposits or investments made under the last sentence of this paragraph; and

(E) any revenue acquired through the issuance of obligations under paragraph (3).

Sums may be expended from the fund only to such extent and in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriation Acts. Sums in the fund which are not currently needed for the purpose of paying such awards shall be kept on deposit or invested in obligations of, or guaranteed by, the United States.

(3) Whenever the amount in the fund is not sufficient to pay compensation under this section, the Secretary may issue, in an amount not to exceed \$5,000,000, notes or other obligations to the Secretary of the Treasury, in such forms and denominations, bearing such maturities, and subject to such terms and conditions as the Secretary of the Treasury may prescribe. Such notices<sup>2</sup> or other obligations shall bear interest at a rate to be determined by the Secretary of the Treasury on the basis of the current average

<sup>2</sup> So in original. Probably should be "notes".

market yield on outstanding marketable obligations of the United States of comparable maturities during the month preceding the issuance of such notices<sup>2</sup> or other obligations. Moneys obtained by the Secretary under this paragraph shall be deposited in the fund and redemptions of any such notices<sup>2</sup> or other obligations shall be made from the fund. The Secretary of the Treasury shall purchase any such notes or other obligations, and for such purpose he may use as a public debt transaction the proceeds from the sale of any securities issued under chapter 31 of title 31. The Secretary of the Treasury may sell any such notices<sup>2</sup> or other obligations at such times and prices and upon such terms and conditions as he shall determine. All purchases, redemptions, and sales of such notes or other obligations by the Secretary of the Treasury shall be treated as public debt transactions of the United States. All borrowing authority contained herein shall be effective only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriation Acts.

**(g) Penalty for false or misleading statements**

Any person who willfully makes any false or misleading statement or representation for the purpose of obtaining compensation under this section is guilty of a criminal offense and, upon conviction thereof, shall be punished by a fine of not more than \$25,000, or by imprisonment for not more than one year, or both.

(Aug. 27, 1954, ch. 1018, § 10, as added Nov. 18, 1977, Pub. L. 95-194, § 2, 91 Stat. 1413; amended Sept. 18, 1978, Pub. L. 95-376, § 3(a), 92 Stat. 715; June 28, 1980, Pub. L. 96-289, § 4(b), 94 Stat. 606; Dec. 22, 1980, Pub. L. 96-561, title II, §§ 238(b), 241, 94 Stat. 3300, 3301.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 3 of the Magnuson Fishery Conservation and Management Act (16 U.S.C. 1802), referred to in subsec. (a)(1), contained a prior par. (8) defining "fishery conservation zone" which was repealed and a new par. (6) defining "exclusive economic zone" was added by Pub. L. 99-659, title I, § 101(a), Nov. 14, 1986, 100 Stat. 3706.

The Magnuson Fishery Conservation and Management Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(1)(A), is Pub. L. 94-265, Apr. 13, 1976, 90 Stat. 331, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 38 (§1801 et seq.) of Title 16, Conservation. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1801 of Title 16 and Tables.

CODIFICATION

In subsec. (f)(3), "chapter 31 of title 31" substituted for "the Second Liberty Bond Act" on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, § 4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

AMENDMENTS

1980—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 96-561, § 238(b), substituted "Magnuson Fishery Conservation and Management Act" for "Fishery Conservation and Management Act of 1976".

Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 96-561, § 241(1), added par. (4).

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 96-561, §§ 238(b), 241(2), inserted in provision preceding par. (1) "and for any resulting economic loss" after "or both," substituted "Magnuson Fishery Conservation and Management Act" for "Fishery Conservation and Management Act of 1976", struck out provision in par. (2)(B) permitting compensation in the case of fishing gear lost, damaged, or destroyed by

an act of God, and inserted provision following par. (2)(B) establishing for purposes of subpar. (B) a rebuttable presumption that any damage, loss, or destruction of fishing gear is attributable to another vessel.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 96-561, § 241(3), inserted in provision preceding par. (1) "and resulting economic loss" after "destruction".

Pub. L. 96-289 substituted "90" for "sixty" in par. (1).

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 96-561, § 241(4), inserted in par. (1) "and resulting economic loss," after "destruction" and in par. (2) included within the amount of compensation awarded to any vessel owner 25 percent of any resulting economic loss.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 96-561, § 238(b), substituted "Magnuson Fishery Conservation and Management Act" for "Fishery Conservation and Management Act of 1976".

1978—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 95-376 substituted provisions defining "fishery", "fishing conservation zone", "fishing", "fishing vessel", "Secretary", "vessel of the United States", "fishing gear" and "fund" for provisions authorizing the Secretary to make a loan to an owner or operator whose commercial fishing vessel or its fishing gear was lost, damaged or destroyed by any vessel of a foreign nation.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 95-376 substituted provisions setting forth the causes of the damage, loss, or destruction of the vessel or its gear for which compensation is payable for provisions authorizing the Secretary to conduct an investigation of each incident of loss, damage or destruction for which the owner received a loan and allowing for repayment or cancellation of such loan depending on fault or nonfault of owner.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 95-376 substituted provisions setting forth the administrative provisions for making a claim for compensation for provisions directing the Secretary, with the assistance of the Attorney General, the Secretary of State, and the claimant, to take appropriate action to collect on any rights assigned to him, and directing how any sums recovered shall be dispensed.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 95-376 substituted provisions setting forth the form, manner and documentation of the application, the amount of compensation payable, procedure for review of the initial determination of eligibility and prompt payment upon finding of such eligibility for provisions defining "Secretary" as the "Secretary of Commerce".

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 95-376 substituted provisions authorizing the imposition of a maximum 20 per cent surcharge in addition to any fee imposed under section 1824(b)(10) of title 16 for provisions authorizing the Secretary to establish by regulation fees to recover the cost of administering this section.

Subsecs. (f), (g). Pub. L. 95-376 added subsecs. (f) and (g).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 238(b) of Pub. L. 96-561 effective 15 days after Dec. 15, 1980, see section 238 of Pub. L. 96-561, set out as a Short Title note under section 1801 of Title 16, Conservation.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Section 3(b) of Pub. L. 95-376 provided that: "The amendment made by subsection (a) [amending this section] shall take effect January 1, 1979."

SAVINGS PROVISION

Section 3(c) of Pub. L. 95-376 provided that: "Nothing in the amendment made by subsection (a) [amending this section] shall be construed as affecting in any manner or to any extent any loan made under section 10 of the Fishermen's Protective Act of 1967 (as in effect before January 1, 1979) [this section], and, for purposes of the consideration by the Secretary of Commerce of any application for a loan under such section which was filed, but not acted on, before January 1, 1979, the amendment made by subsection (a) shall not be deemed to have been enacted."

COMPENSATION FOR CERTAIN FISHING VESSEL AND GEAR  
DAMAGE; APPLICATION

Section 240(a), (b)(1) of Pub. L. 96-561 provided that:  
“(a) IN GENERAL.—If—

“(1) any owner or operator of a fishing vessel who suffered, after September 17, 1978, and before the date of the enactment of this title [Dec. 22, 1980], damage to, or loss or destruction of, such vessel or fishing gear used with such vessel, but did not apply for compensation therefor under section 10 of the Fishermen’s Protective Act of 1967 (22 U.S.C. 1980) within the 60-day period prescribed in subsection (c)(1) of such section; or

“(2) any commercial fisherman who suffered, after September 17, 1978, and before the date of the enactment of this title, damages compensable under title IV of the Outer Continental Shelf Lands Act of 1978 (43 U.S.C. 1841 et seq.), but who did not timely file a claim therefor within the 60-day period prescribed in section 405(a) of such Act [43 U.S.C. 1845(a)];

such owner or operator may make application for compensation with respect to such damage, loss or destruction under such section 10 [this section], and such commercial fisherman may file a claim for, compensation for such damages under such title IV [43 U.S.C. 1841 et seq.], to the Secretary of Commerce, within the 60-day period beginning on the date of the enactment of this title [Dec. 22, 1980].

“(b) SPECIAL PROVISIONS.—(1) Notwithstanding any other provision of law—

“(A) any application or filing timely made under subsection (a) shall be treated by the Secretary of Commerce as an application timely made under such section 10(c)(1) [subsec. (c)(1) of this section], or as a filing timely made under such section 405(a) [43 U.S.C. 1845(a)], as the case may be, with respect to the damage, loss, or destruction claimed; and

“(B) any claim for fishing gear loss that was pending on June 1, 1980, before the United States-Union of Soviet Socialist Republics Fisheries Claims Board or the American-Spanish Fisheries Board shall be treated by the Secretary of Commerce as a timely application made, on the date of the enactment of this title [Dec. 22, 1980], under such section 10(c)(1) [subsec. (c)(1) of this section] for compensation for such loss.”

TIMELY APPLICATIONS FOR COMPENSATION

Section 4(a) of Pub. L. 96-289 provided that: “Notwithstanding the provisions of section 10(c)(1) of the Fishermen’s Protective Act of 1967 (22 U.S.C. 1980) [subsec. (c)(1) of this section] applications for compensation under such Act [this chapter], filed within 90 days after the date of enactment of this subsection [June 28, 1980] shall be deemed to be timely filed.”

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 16 section 1821.

**§ 1980a. Reimbursement of owner for fee paid to navigate foreign waters if fee inconsistent with international law**

**(a) Reimbursable fees**

In any case on or after June 15, 1994, in which a vessel of the United States exercising its right of passage is charged a fee by the government of a foreign country to engage in transit passage between points in the United States (including a point in the exclusive economic zone or in an area over which jurisdiction is in dispute), and such fee is regarded by the United States as being inconsistent with international law, the Secretary of State shall, subject to the availability of appropriated funds, reimburse the vessel owner for the amount of any such fee paid under protest.

**(b) Documentation**

In seeking such reimbursement, the vessel owner shall provide, together with such other information as the Secretary of State may require—

- (1) a copy of the receipt for payment;
- (2) an affidavit attesting that the owner or the owner’s agent paid the fee under protest; and
- (3) a copy of the vessel’s certificate of documentation.

**(c) Timeliness**

Requests for reimbursement shall be made to the Secretary of State within 120 days after the date of payment of the fee, or within 90 days after November 3, 1995, whichever is later.

**(d) Funding; appropriations**

Such funds as may be necessary to meet the requirements of this section may be made available from the unobligated balance of previously appropriated funds remaining in the Fishermen’s Protective Fund established under section 1979 of this title. To the extent that requests for reimbursement under this section exceed such funds, there are authorized to be appropriated such sums as may be needed for reimbursements authorized under subsection (a) of this section, which shall be deposited in the Fishermen’s Protective Fund established under section 1979 of this title.

**(e) Claim against foreign government**

The Secretary of State shall take such action as the Secretary deems appropriate to make and collect claims against the foreign country imposing such fee for any amounts reimbursed under this section.

**(f) “Owner” defined**

For purposes of this section, the term “owner” includes any charterer of a vessel of the United States.

(Aug. 27, 1954, ch. 1018, §11, as added Nov. 3, 1995, Pub. L. 104-43, title IV, §402(a), 109 Stat. 389.)

CONGRESSIONAL FINDINGS

Section 401 of Pub. L. 104-43 provided that: “The Congress finds that—

“(1) customary international law and the United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea guarantee the right of passage, including innocent passage, to vessels through the waters commonly referred to as the ‘Inside Passage’ off the Pacific Coast of Canada;

“(2) in 1994 Canada required all commercial fishing vessels of the United States to pay 1,500 Canadian dollars to obtain a ‘license which authorizes transit’ through the Inside Passage;

“(3) this action was inconsistent with international law, including the United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea, and, in particular, Article 26 of that Convention, which specifically prohibits such fees, and threatened the safety of United States commercial fishermen who sought to avoid the fee by traveling in less protected waters;

“(4) the Fishermen’s Protective Act of 1967 [22 U.S.C. 1971 et seq.] provides for the reimbursement of vessel owners who are forced to pay a license fee to secure the release of a vessel which has been seized, but does not permit reimbursement of a fee paid by the owner in advance in order to prevent a seizure;

“(5) Canada required that the license fee be paid in person in 2 ports on the Pacific Coast of Canada, or in advance by mail;



“(6) significant expense and delay was incurred by commercial fishing vessels of the United States that had to travel from the point of seizure back to one of those ports in order to pay the license fee required by Canada, and the costs of that travel and delay cannot be reimbursed under the Fishermen’s Protective Act;

“(7) the Fishermen’s Protective Act of 1967 should be amended to permit vessel owners to be reimbursed for fees required by a foreign government to be paid in advance in order to navigate in the waters of that foreign country if the United States considers that fee to be inconsistent with international law;

“(8) the Secretary of State should seek to recover from Canada any amounts paid by the United States to reimburse vessel owners who paid the transit license fee;

“(9) the United States should review its current policy with respect to anchorage by commercial fishing vessels of Canada in waters of the United States off Alaska, including waters in and near the Dixon Entrance, and should accord such vessels the same treatment that commercial fishing vessels of the United States are accorded for anchorage in the waters of Canada off British Columbia;

“(10) the President should ensure that, consistent with international law, the United States Coast Guard has available adequate resources in the Pacific Northwest and Alaska to provide for the safety of United States citizens, the enforcement of United States law, and to protect the rights of the United States and keep the peace among vessels operating in disputed waters;

“(11) the President should continue to review all agreements between the United States and Canada to identify other actions that may be taken to convince Canada that any reinstatement of the transit license fee would be against Canada’s long-term interests, and should immediately implement any actions which the President deems appropriate if Canada reinstates the fee;

“(12) the President should continue to convey to Canada in the strongest terms that the United States will not now, nor at any time in the future, tolerate any action by Canada which would impede or otherwise restrict the right of passage of vessels of the United States in a manner inconsistent with international law; and

“(13) the United States should continue its efforts to seek expeditious agreement with Canada on appropriate fishery conservation and management measures that can be implemented through the Pacific Salmon Treaty to address issues of mutual concern.”

**§ 1980b. Sanctions for imposition of conditions on U.S. fishing vessel found inconsistent with international law**

**(a) Certification**

If the Secretary of State finds that the government of any nation imposes conditions on the operation or transit of United States fishing vessels which the United States regards as being inconsistent with international law or an international agreement, the Secretary of State shall certify that fact to the President.

**(b) Sanctions**

Upon receipt of a certification under subsection (a) of this section, the President shall direct the heads of Federal agencies to impose similar conditions on the operation or transit of fishing vessels registered under the laws of the nation which has imposed conditions on United States fishing vessels.

**(c) “Fishing vessel” defined**

For the purposes of this section, the term “fishing vessel” has the meaning given that term in section 2101(11a) of title 46.

**(d) Sanctions commensurate with conditions certified**

It is the sense of the Congress that any action taken by any Federal agency under subsection (b) of this section should be commensurate with any conditions certified by the Secretary of State under subsection (a) of this section.

(Aug. 27, 1954, ch. 1018, §12, as added Nov. 3, 1995, Pub. L. 104–43, title IV, §402(b), 109 Stat. 390.)

**CHAPTER 26—ARMED FORCES PARTICIPATION IN INTERNATIONAL AMATEUR SPORTS COMPETITIONS**

**§§ 1981 to 1985. Repealed. Pub. L. 85–861, §36A, Sept. 2, 1958, 72 Stat. 1569**

Section 1981, acts July 1, 1947, ch. 203, §1, 61 Stat. 243; Mar. 14, 1955, ch. 11, 69 Stat. 11, defined terms used in sections 1981 to 1985 of this title. See section 716 of Title 10, Armed Forces.

Section 1982, act July 1, 1947, ch. 203, §2, as added Mar. 14, 1955, ch. 11, 69 Stat. 11, related to training, attendance, and participation, report to Congress, and to funds and equipment. See section 716 of Title 10.

Section 1983, act July 1, 1947, ch. 203, §3, as added Mar. 14, 1955, ch. 11, 69 Stat. 11, prescribed limitations on expenditure of funds, and related to use of appropriations. See section 716 of Title 10.

Sections 1984, 1985, act July 1, 1947, ch. 203, §§4, 5, as added Mar. 14, 1955, ch. 11, 69 Stat. 11, authorized payment of allowances, travel and transportation, and subsistence and quarters. See section 419 of Title 37, Pay and Allowances of the Uniformed Services.

**CHAPTER 27—INTERNATIONAL CULTURAL EXCHANGE AND TRADE FAIR PARTICIPATION**

**§§ 1991 to 2001. Repealed. Pub. L. 87–256, §111(a)(3), Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 538**

Sections, act Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 811, §§2–12, 70 Stat. 778–780, related to international cultural exchange and trade fair participation. See section 2451 et seq. of this title.

Section 1991 stated purpose of chapter.

Section 1992 prescribed authority of President, and appointment and compensation of Commissioner General and principal representatives.

Section 1993 encouraged private participation and contributions of funds, property, and services.

Section 1994 authorized appropriations.

Section 1995 permitted utilization of other laws in carrying out chapter.

Section 1996 authorized expenditures for acquisition of exhibits.

Section 1997 related to performance of functions without regard to other laws.

Section 1998 required reports to Congress.

Section 1999 created Advisory Committee on Arts; prescribed qualifications, duties, terms of office and compensation of members; and provided for staff and secretarial services.

Section 2000 authorized creation of interagency committees.

Section 2001 prescribed extent of cultural program.

**CONTINUATION OF CERTAIN EXECUTIVE ORDERS, AGREEMENTS, DETERMINATION, REGULATIONS, CONTRACTS, APPOINTMENTS, AND OTHER ACTIONS**

Continuation in full force and effect, and applicability to the appropriate provisions of the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961, set out as section 2451 et seq. of this title, until modified or superseded by appropriate authority, of all Executive orders, agreements, determinations, regulations, contracts, ap-

pointments, and other actions issued, concluded; or taken under authority of these sections, see section 111(b) of Pub. L. 87-256, set out as a note under section 2451 of this title.

### CHAPTER 28—INTERNATIONAL ATOMIC ENERGY AGENCY PARTICIPATION

|       |  |
|-------|--|
| Sec.  |  |
| 2021. | Agency appointments by President.<br>(a) Representative and deputy representative; terms; functions.<br>(b) Specified sessions.<br>(c) Designation of other persons.<br>(d) Compensation; allowances and benefits. |
| 2022. | Purpose of participation; reports to Congress.   |
| 2023. | Actions and votes of representatives.  |
| 2024. | Authorization of appropriations for payment of expenses.   |
| 2025. | Effect of employment on retirement, insurance, and other civil service rights and privileges.<br>(a) Federal employees.<br>(b) Presidential appointees or elected officers.<br>(c) Regulations.                    |
| 2026. | Termination of authority and participation in Agency.  |

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Atomic Energy Act of 1954, see section 2011 et seq. of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare.

#### § 2021. Agency appointments by President

##### (a) Representative and deputy representative; terms; functions

The President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint a representative and a deputy representative of the United States to the International Atomic Energy Agency (referred to in this chapter as the "Agency"), who shall hold office at the pleasure of the President. Such representative and deputy representative shall represent the United States on the Board of Governors of the Agency, may represent the United States at the General Conference, and may serve ex officio as United States representative on any organ of that Agency, and shall perform such other functions in connection with the participation of the United States in the Agency as the President may from time to time direct.

##### (b) Specified sessions

The President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, may appoint or designate from time to time to attend a specified session or specified sessions of the General Conference of the Agency a representative of the United States and such number of alternates as he may determine consistent with the rules of procedure of the General Conference.

##### (c) Designation of other persons

The President may also appoint or designate from time to time such other persons as he may deem necessary to represent the United States in the organs of the Agency. The President may designate any officer of the United States Government, whose appointment is subject to confirmation by the Senate, to act, without additional compensation, for temporary periods as the representative of the United States on the Board of Governors or to the General Conference

of the Agency in the absence or disability of the representative and deputy representative appointed under subsection (a) of this section or in lieu of such representatives in connection with a specified subject matter.

##### (d) Compensation; allowances and benefits

All persons appointed or designated in pursuance of authority contained in this section shall receive compensation at rates determined by the President upon the basis of duties to be performed but not in excess of rates authorized by sections 401, 402, and 403 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [22 U.S.C. 3961, 3962, and 3963] for chiefs of mission, members of the Senior Foreign Service, and Foreign Service officers occupying positions of equivalent importance, except that no Member of the Senate or House of Representatives or officer of the United States who is designated under subsection (b) or subsection (c) of this section as a delegate or representative of the United States or as an alternate to attend any specified session or specified sessions of the General Conference shall be entitled to receive such compensation. Any person who receives compensation pursuant to the provisions of this subsection may be granted allowances and benefits not to exceed those received under the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [22 U.S.C. 3901 et seq.] by chiefs of mission, members of the Senior Foreign Service, and Foreign Service officers occupying positions of equivalent importance.

(Pub. L. 85-177, §2, Aug. 28, 1957, 71 Stat. 453; Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2206(a)(7)(A), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2161.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Service Act of 1980, referred to in subsec. (d), is Pub. L. 96-465, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2071, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 52 (§3901 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3901 of this title and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1980—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 96-465 substituted "sections 401, 402, and 403 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 for chiefs of mission, members of the Senior Foreign Service," for "sections 866 and 867 of this title, for Chiefs of Mission" and "under the Foreign Service Act of 1980 by chiefs of mission, members of the Senior Foreign Service," for "by Chiefs of Mission".

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-465 effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

#### SHORT TITLE

Section 1 of Pub. L. 85-177 provided that: "This Act [enacting this chapter and amending section 2074 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare] may be cited as the 'International Atomic Energy Agency Participation Act of 1957.'"

#### PRIVILEGES, EXEMPTIONS, AND IMMUNITIES

Entitlement of Agency to privileges, exemptions, and immunities as an international organization, see note set out under section 288 of this title.

#### TERMINATION OF AUTHORITY UNDER THIS SECTION

Authority under this section to terminate if Senate refuses its advice and consent by a formal vote to an

amendment to the Statute of the Agency, see section 2026 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2023, 2024, 2026 of this title.

### § 2022. Purpose of participation; reports to Congress

The participation of the United States in the International Atomic Energy Agency shall be consistent with and in furtherance of the purposes of the Agency set forth in its Statute and the policy concerning the development, use, and control of atomic energy set forth in the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended [42 U.S.C. 2011 et seq.]. The President shall, from time to time as occasion may require, but not less than once each year, make reports to the Congress on the activities of the International Atomic Energy Agency and on the participation of the United States therein. In addition to any other requirements of law, the Department of State and the Atomic Energy Commission shall keep the Committees on Energy and Commerce and on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committees on Energy and Natural Resources and on Foreign Relations of the Senate, as appropriate, currently informed with respect to the activities of the Agency and the participation of the United States therein.

(Pub. L. 85-177, §3, Aug. 28, 1957, 71 Stat. 453; Pub. L. 103-437, §9(b), Nov. 2, 1994, 108 Stat. 4588.)

#### REPEAL OF REPORTING REQUIREMENT

*Pub. L. 89-348, §1(20), Nov. 8, 1965, 79 Stat. 1311, repealed provisions of this section which directed President to report to Congress not less than once each year on activities of International Atomic Energy Agency and on participation of United States therein.*

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-437 substituted “Committees on Energy and Commerce and on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committees on Energy and Natural Resources and on Foreign Relations of the Senate” for “Joint Committee on Atomic Energy, the House Committee on Foreign Affairs, and the Senate Committee on Foreign Relations”.

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Energy and Commerce of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Commerce of House of Representatives and Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Statute, referred to in text, is the “Statute of the International Atomic Energy Agency”.

The Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended, referred to in text, is act Aug. 30, 1954, ch. 1073, 68 Stat. 921, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 23 (§2011 et seq.) of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2011 of Title 42 and Tables.

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

Atomic Energy Commission abolished and functions transferred by sections 5814 and 5841 of Title 42, The

Public Health and Welfare. See, also, Transfer of Functions notes set out under those sections.

#### TERMINATION OF AUTHORITY UNDER THIS SECTION

Authority under this section to terminate if Senate refuses its advice and consent by a formal vote to an amendment to the Statute of the Agency, see section 2026 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2026 of this title.

### § 2023. Actions and votes of representatives

The representatives provided for in section 2021 of this title, when representing the United States in the organs of the Agency, shall, at all times, act in accordance with the instructions of the President, and such representatives shall, in accordance with such instructions, cast any and all votes under the Statute of the International Atomic Energy Agency.

(Pub. L. 85-177, §4, Aug. 28, 1957, 71 Stat. 454.)

#### TERMINATION OF AUTHORITY UNDER THIS SECTION

Authority under this section to terminate if Senate refuses its advice and consent by a formal vote to an amendment to the Statute of the Agency, see section 2026 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2026 of this title.

### § 2024. Authorization of appropriations for payment of expenses

There is authorized to be appropriated annually to the Department of State, out of any money in the Treasury not otherwise appropriated, such sums as may be necessary for the payment by the United States of its share of the expenses of the International Atomic Energy Agency as apportioned by the Agency in accordance with paragraph (D) of article XIV of the Statute of the Agency, and for all necessary salaries and expenses of the representatives provided for in section 2021 of this title and of their appropriate staffs, including personal services without regard to the civil service laws and chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of title 5; travel expenses without regard to the Standardized Government Travel Regulations, as amended, subchapter I of chapter 57 of title 5, and section 5731 of title 5, as amended; salaries as authorized by the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [22 U.S.C. 3901 et seq.], or as authorized by the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended [42 U.S.C. 2011 et seq.], and expenses and allowances of personnel and dependents as authorized by the Foreign Service Act of 1980; services as authorized by section 3109 of title 5; translating and other services, by contract; hire of passenger motor vehicles and other local transportation; printing and binding without regard to section 501 of title 44; official functions and courtesies; such sums as may be necessary to defray the expenses of United States participation in the Preparatory Commission for the Agency, established pursuant to annex I of the Statute of the Agency; and such other expenses as may be authorized by the Secretary of State.

(Pub. L. 85-177, §5, Aug. 28, 1957, 71 Stat. 454; Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2206(a)(7)(B), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2161.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

Paragraph (D) of article XIV of the Statute of the Agency, referred to in text, provides “The Board of Governors shall apportion the expenses referred to in subparagraph B-1 above, among members in accordance with a scale to be fixed by the General Conference. In fixing the scale the General Conference shall be guided by the principles adopted by the United Nations in assessing contributions of Member States to the regular budget of the United Nations”.

The civil service laws, referred to in text, are set forth in Title 5, Government Organization and Employees. See, particularly, section 3301 et seq. of Title 5.

The Foreign Service Act of 1980, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 96-465, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2071, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 52 (§3901 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3901 of this title and Tables.

The Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended, referred to in text, is act Aug. 30, 1954, ch. 1073, 68 Stat. 921, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 23 (§2011 et seq.) of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2011 of Title 42 and Tables.

## CODIFICATION

“Chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of title 5”, “subchapter I of chapter 57 of title 5”, “section 5731 of title 5”, and “section 3109 of title 5” substituted in text for “the Classification Act of 1949, as amended”, “the Travel Expense Act of 1949, as amended”, “section 10 of the Act of March 3, 1933, as amended [5 U.S.C. 73b]”, and “section 15 of the Act of August 2, 1946 (5 U.S.C. 55a)”, respectively, on authority of Pub. L. 89-554, §7(b), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 631, the first section of which enacted Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

“Section 501 of title 44” substituted in text for “section II of the Act of March 1, 1919 (44 U.S.C. 111)” on authority of Pub. L. 90-620, §2(b), Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1305, the first section of which enacted Title 44, Public Printing and Documents.

## AMENDMENTS

1980—Pub. L. 96-465 substituted references to the Foreign Service Act of 1980 for references to the Foreign Service Act of 1946.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-465 effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

## TERMINATION OF AUTHORITY UNDER THIS SECTION

Authority under this section to terminate if Senate refuses its advice and consent by a formal vote to an amendment to the Statute of the Agency, see section 2026 of this title.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2026 of this title.

## § 2025. Effect of employment on retirement, insurance, and other civil service rights and privileges

### (a) Federal employees

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, Executive order or regulation, a Federal employee who, with the approval of the Federal agency or the head of the department by which he is employed, leaves his position to enter the employ of the Agency shall not be considered for the purposes of subchapter III of chapter 83 of

title 5, and chapter 87 of title 5, as separated from his Federal position during such employment with the Agency but not to extend beyond the first three consecutive years of his entering the employ of the Agency: *Provided*, (1) That he shall pay to the Director of the Office of Personnel Management within ninety days from the date he is separated without prejudice from the Agency all necessary deductions and agency contributions for coverage under subchapter III of chapter 83 of title 5 for the period of his employment by the Agency, and (2) That all deductions and agency contributions necessary for continued coverage under chapter 87 of title 5, shall be made during the term of his employment with the International Atomic Energy Agency. If such employee, within three years from the date of his employment with the Agency, and within ninety days from the date he is separated without prejudice from the Agency, applies to be restored to his Federal position, he shall within thirty days of such application be restored to such position or to a position of like seniority, status and pay.

### (b) Presidential appointees or elected officers

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, Executive order or regulation, any Presidential appointee or elected officer who leaves his position to enter, or who within ninety days after the termination of his position enters, the employ of the Agency, shall be entitled to the coverage and benefits of subchapter III of chapter 83 of title 5, and chapter 87 of title 5, but not beyond the earlier of either the termination of his employment with the Agency or the expiration of three years from the date he entered employment with the Agency: *Provided*, (1) That he shall pay to the Director of the Office of Personnel Management within ninety days from the date he is separated without prejudice from the Agency all necessary deductions and agency contributions for coverage under subchapter III of chapter 83 of title 5 for the period of his employment by the Agency, and (2) That all deductions and agency contributions necessary for continued coverage under chapter 87 of title 5, shall be made during the term of his employment with the Agency.

### (c) Regulations

The President is authorized to prescribe such regulations as may be necessary to carry out the provisions of this section and to protect the retirement, insurance and such other civil service rights and privileges as the President may find appropriate.

(Pub. L. 85-177, §6, Aug. 28, 1957, 71 Stat. 454; 1978 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §102, eff. Jan. 1, 1979, 43 F.R. 36037, 92 Stat. 3783.)

## REPEALS

*Section 7 of Pub. L. 85-795, Aug. 28, 1958, 72 Stat. 962, provided that: “Section 6(a) of the International Atomic Energy Agency Participation Act of 1957 [subsec. (a) of this section], is repealed except that it shall be considered to remain in effect with respect to any employee subject thereto who is serving as an employee of the International Atomic Energy Agency on the date of enactment of this Act [Aug. 28, 1958] and*

who does not make the election referred to in section 6, and for the purposes of any rights and benefits vested thereunder prior to such date.”

Section 7 of Pub. L. 85-795, Aug. 28, 1958, 72 Stat. 962, was repealed by Pub. L. 89-554, § 8(a), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 660. See section 8 of Pub. L. 89-554, set out as a note preceding section 101 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

#### CODIFICATION

In subsecs. (a) and (b), “subchapter III of chapter 83 of title 5” substituted for “the Civil Service Retirement Act, as amended” and “the Civil Service Retirement Act” in each subsection and “chapter 87 of title 5” substituted for “the Federal Employees’ Group Life Insurance Act of 1954, as amended” on authority of Pub. L. 89-554, § 7(b), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 631, the first section of which enacted Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“Director of the Office of Personnel Management” substituted for “Civil Service Commission” in subsecs. (a) and (b), pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1978, § 102, 43 F.R. 36037, 92 Stat. 3783, set out under section 1101 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, which transferred all functions vested by statute in the United States Civil Service Commission to the Director of the Office of Personnel Management (except as otherwise specified), effective Jan. 1, 1979, as provided by section 1-102 of Ex. Ord. No. 12107, Dec. 28, 1978, 44 F.R. 1055, set out under section 1101 of Title 5.

#### EXECUTIVE ORDER No. 10774

Ex. Ord. No. 10774, July 25, 1958, 23 F.R. 5681, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 12107, Dec. 28, 1978, 44 F.R. 1055, which provided for protection of civil-service rights of Federal personnel who transfer to the International Atomic Energy Agency, was revoked in part by section 2 of Ex. Ord. No. 10804, Feb. 12, 1959, 24 F.R. 1147, and subsequently revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 12553, Feb. 25, 1986, 51 F.R. 7237.

#### § 2026. Termination of authority and participation in Agency

In the event of an amendment to the Statute of the Agency being adopted in accordance with article XVIII-C of the Statute to which the Senate by formal vote shall refuse its advice and consent, upon notification by the Senate to the President of such refusal to advise and consent, all further authority under section 2021, 2022, 2023 and 2024 of this title, as amended, shall terminate: *Provided, however*, That the Secretary of State, under such regulations as the President shall promulgate, shall have the necessary authority to complete the prompt and orderly settlement of obligations and commitments to the Agency already incurred and pay salaries, allowances, travel expenses, and other expenses required for a prompt and orderly termination of United States participation in the Agency: *And provided further*, That the representative and the deputy representative of the United States to the Agency, and such other officers or employees representing the United States in the Agency, under such regulations as the President shall promulgate, shall retain their authority under this chapter for such time as may be necessary to complete the settlement of matters arising out of the United States participation in the Agency.

(Pub. L. 85-177, § 8, Aug. 28, 1957, 71 Stat. 455.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Article XVIII-C of the Statute, referred to in text, provides: “C. Amendments shall come into force for all members when: (i) Approved by the General Conference by a two-thirds majority of those present and voting after consideration of observations submitted by the Board of Governors on each proposed amendment, and (ii) Accepted by two-thirds of all the members in accordance with their respective constitutional processes. Acceptance by a member shall be effected by the deposit of an instrument of acceptance with the depositary Government referred to in paragraph C of Article XXI.”

### CHAPTER 29—CULTURAL, TECHNICAL, AND EDUCATIONAL CENTERS

#### SUBCHAPTER I—CENTER BETWEEN EAST AND WEST

- Sec.  
2051 to 2053. Repealed.  
2054. Statement of purpose.  
2055. Duties of Director of United States Information Agency; establishment and operation of educational institution; grants, fellowships, and scholarships; availability of facilities.  
2056. Administration.  
(a) Authority.  
(b) Gifts, bequests, and devises.  
(c) Report to Congress.  
2057. Authorization of appropriations.

#### SUBCHAPTER II—WESTERN HEMISPHERIC CENTER

2071, 2072. Repealed.

#### SUBCHAPTER III—NORTH/SOUTH CENTER

2075. Center for Cultural and Technical Interchange Between North and South.  
(a) Short title.  
(b) Purpose.  
(c) North/South Center.  
(d) Authorities.  
(e) Authorization of appropriations.

#### SUBCHAPTER IV—INTERNATIONAL UNIVERSITY

2077. International University for the Americas.  
(a) Purpose.  
(b) Establishment.  
(c) Faculty, students, and curriculum.  
(d) Annual report.  
(e) Funding.

#### SUBCHAPTER I—CENTER BETWEEN EAST AND WEST

#### §§ 2051 to 2053. Repealed. Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 642(a)(7), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460

Sections, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. VI, §§ 601-603, July 24, 1959, 73 Stat. 256, 257, which directed the Secretary of State to submit to Congress before Jan. 3, 1960, a plan and program for the establishment in Hawaii of an educational institution, for grants, fellowships, and other payments to outstanding scholars and to qualified students from the nations of the East and West. See sections 2054 to 2057 of this title.

#### § 2054. Statement of purpose

The purpose of this subchapter is to promote better relations and understanding between the United States and the nations of Asia and the Pacific (hereinafter referred to as “the East”) through cooperative study, training, and research, by establishing in Hawaii a Center for

Cultural and Technical Interchange Between East and West where scholars and students in various fields from the nations of the East and West may study, give and receive training, exchange ideas and views, and conduct other activities primarily in support of the objectives of the United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948, as amended [22 U.S.C. 1431 et seq.], title III of chapter II of the Mutual Security Act of 1954, and other Acts promoting the international, educational, cultural, and related activities of the United States.

(Pub. L. 86-472, ch. VII, §702, May 14, 1960, 74 Stat. 141.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948, as amended, referred to in text, is act Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, 62 Stat. 6, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 18 (§1431 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1431 of this title and Tables.

The Mutual Security Act of 1954, referred to in text, is act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, 68 Stat. 832, as amended by acts July 8, 1955, ch. 301, 69 Stat. 283; July 18, 1956, ch. 627, §§2 to 11, 70 Stat. 555; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, 71 Stat. 355; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. 1, §§101 to 103, ch. II, §§201 to 205, ch. III, §301, ch. IV, §401, ch. V, §501, 72 Stat. 261; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, §2, ch. 1, §101, ch. II, §§201 to 205(a) to (i), (k) to (n), ch. III, §301, ch. IV, §401(a) to (k), (m), 73 Stat. 246; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. I to V, 74 Stat. 134. Title III of chapter II of the Act was classified to sections 1891 to 1896, 1897, and 1898 of this title and was repealed by Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §642(a)(2), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460 and Pub. L. 86-472, ch. II, §203(d), May 14, 1960, 74 Stat. 136. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1754 of this title and Tables.

#### SHORT TITLE

Section 701 of Pub. L. 86-472 provided that: "This chapter [enacting this subchapter] may be cited as the 'Center for Cultural and Technical Interchange Between East and West Act of 1960'."

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

All functions vested in the President, the Secretary of State, the Department of State, the United States Information Agency, or the Director thereof, under this chapter, were transferred to the Director of the International Communication Agency by Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, §7(a)(7), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637, set out under section 1461 of this title, effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by the President. The International Communication Agency, and the Director thereof, were redesignated the United States Information Agency, and the Director thereof, by section 303 of Pub. L. 97-241, title III, Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title.

#### § 2055. Duties of Director of United States Information Agency; establishment and operation of educational institution; grants, fellowships, and scholarships; availability of facilities

In order to carry out the purpose of this subchapter the Director of the United States Information Agency (hereinafter referred to as the "Director") shall provide for—

(1) the establishment and operation in Hawaii of an educational institution to be known as the Center for Cultural and Technical Interchange Between East and West, through ar-

rangements with public, educational, or other nonprofit institutions;

(2) grants, fellowships, and other payments to outstanding scholars and authorities from the nations of the East and West as may be necessary to attract such scholars and authorities to the Center;

(3) grants, scholarships, and other payments to qualified students from the nations of the East and West as may be necessary to enable such students to engage in study or training at the Center; and

(4) making the facilities of the Center available for study or training to other qualified persons.

(Pub. L. 86-472, ch. VII, §703, May 14, 1960, 74 Stat. 141; 1977 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §7(a)(7), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637; Pub. L. 97-241, title III, §303(b), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291.)

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

"Director of the United States Information Agency" substituted in text for "Director of the International Communication Agency" pursuant to section 303(b) of Pub. L. 97-241, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title. Previously, "Director of the International Communication Agency" and "Director" substituted for "Secretary of State" and "Secretary", respectively pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, §7(a)(7), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637, set out under section 1461 of this title, effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by President, which transferred functions vested in President, Secretary of State, Department of State, United States Information Agency or Director thereof, under this chapter, to Director of International Communication Agency.

#### § 2056. Administration

##### (a) Authority

In carrying out the provisions of this subchapter, the Director may utilize his authority under the provisions of the United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948, as amended [22 U.S.C. 1431 et seq.].

##### (b) Gifts, bequests, and devises

The Director may, in administering the provisions of this subchapter, accept from public and private sources money and property to be utilized in carrying out the purposes and functions of the Center. In utilizing any gifts, bequests, or devises accepted there shall be available to the Director the same authorities as are available to him in accepting and utilizing gifts, bequests, and devises to the Foreign Service Institute under the provisions of section 2697 of this title. For the purposes of Federal income, estate, and gift taxes, any gift, devise, or bequest accepted by the Director under the authority of this subchapter shall be deemed to be a gift, devise, or bequest to or for the use of the United States.

##### (c) Report to Congress

The Director of the United States Information Agency shall make periodic reports, as he deems necessary, to the Congress with respect to his activities under the provisions of this subchapter, and such reports shall include any recommendations for needed revisions in this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 86-472, ch. VII, §704, May 14, 1960, 74 Stat. 141; 1977 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §7(a)(7), 42 F.R.

62461, 91 Stat. 1637; Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2206(a)(8), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2162; Pub. L. 96-470, title II, § 212(b), Oct. 19, 1980, 94 Stat. 2246; Pub. L. 97-241, title III, § 303(b), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948, as amended, referred to in subsec. (a), is act Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, 62 Stat. 6, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 18 (§1431 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1431 of this title and Tables.

## AMENDMENTS

1980—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 96-465 substituted reference to section 2697 of this title for reference to section 809 of this title.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 96-470 substituted provision requiring the Director to make periodic reports, as he deems necessary, for provision requiring the Director to make an annual report.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-465 effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

## TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“Director of the United States Information Agency” substituted for “Director of the International Communication Agency” in subsec. (c), pursuant to section 303(b) of Pub. L. 97-241, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title which redesignated International Communication Agency, and Director thereof, as United States Information Agency, and Director thereof. Previously, “Director” substituted for “Secretary” in subsecs. (a) and (b) pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, §7(a)(7), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637, set out under section 1461 of this title, effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by President, which transferred functions vested in President, Secretary of State, Department of State, United States Information Agency, or Director thereof, under this chapter, to Director of International Communication Agency.

## AUTHORITY OF SECRETARY OF STATE

Except as otherwise provided, Secretary of State to have and exercise any authority vested by law in any official or office of Department of State and references to such officials or offices deemed to refer to Secretary of State or Department of State, as appropriate, see section 2651a of this title and section 161(d) of Pub. L. 103-236, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2075 of this title.

**§ 2057. Authorization of appropriations**

There are authorized to be appropriated, to remain available until expended, such amounts as may be necessary to carry out the provisions of this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 86-472, ch. VII, §705, May 14, 1960, 74 Stat. 142.)

## SUBCHAPTER II—WESTERN HEMISPHERIC CENTER

**§§ 2071, 2072. Repealed. Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 642(a)(8), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460**

Sections, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. VIII, §§801, 802, May 14, 1960, 75 Stat. 142, related to Western Hemispheric Cen-

ter, stated Congressional declaration of purpose and authorized preparation and submission of plan to Congress.

## SUBCHAPTER III—NORTH/SOUTH CENTER

**§ 2075. Center for Cultural and Technical Interchange Between North and South****(a) Short title**

This section may be cited as the “North/South Center Act of 1991”.

**(b) Purpose**

The purpose of this section is to promote better relations between the United States and the nations of Latin America and the Caribbean and Canada through cooperative study, training, and research, by supporting in Florida a Center for Cultural and Technical Interchange Between North and South where scholars and students in various fields from the nations of the hemisphere may study, give and receive training, exchange ideas and views, and conduct other activities consistent with the objectives of the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2451 et seq.] and other Acts promoting international, educational, cultural, scientific, and related activities of the United States.

**(c) North/South Center**

In order to carry out the purpose of this section, the Director of the United States Information Agency shall provide for the operation in Florida of an educational institution known as the North/South Center, through arrangements with public, educational, or other nonprofit institutions.

**(d) Authorities**

The Director of the United States Information Agency, in carrying out this section, may utilize the authorities of the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2451 et seq.]. Section 2056(b) of this title shall apply in the administration of this section. In order to carry out the purposes of this section, the North/South Center is authorized to use funds made available under this section to acquire property and facilities, by construction, lease, or purchase.

**(e) Authorization of appropriations**

There are authorized to be appropriated \$5,000,000 for fiscal year 1992 and \$10,000,000 for each subsequent fiscal year to carry out this section. Amounts appropriated under this section are authorized to be available until expended.

(Pub. L. 102-138, title II, § 208, Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 694.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961, referred to in subsecs. (b) and (d), is Pub. L. 87-256, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 527, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 33 (§2451 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2451 of this title and Tables.

## CODIFICATION

Section is comprised of section 208 of Pub. L. 102-138. Subsec. (f) of section 208 of Pub. L. 102-138 repealed a

prior section 2075 of this title. See Prior Provisions note below.

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 2075, Pub. L. 101-513, title II, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1984, was based on section 206 of title II of the House engrossed amendment (as passed the House of Representatives on May 24, 1990) to S. 2364, One Hundred First Congress, which was enacted into law by Pub. L. 101-513, and which was cited as the “Center for Cultural and Technical Interchange between North and South Act of 1990”, established a North-South Center in Florida to promote better relations between the United States and the nations of Latin America and the Caribbean and Canada through study, training, exchange of ideas and views, and other activities in support of the objectives of the United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948, prior to repeal, effective Oct. 1, 1991, by Pub. L. 102-138, title II, § 208(f), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 694.

#### SUBCHAPTER IV—INTERNATIONAL UNIVERSITY

### § 2077. International University for the Americas

#### (a) Purpose

The purpose of this section is to promote economic integration and the consolidation and strengthening of democratic institutions in the Western Hemisphere, and to commemorate the 500th anniversary of the discovery of the Americas by Christopher Columbus through the establishment of an institution of higher education, which shall be known as the “International University for the Americas”.

#### (b) Establishment

The Secretary of State, in consultation with other governments in the Western Hemisphere, shall determine the most appropriate location for the International University for the Americas. In making that determination, the Secretary shall ensure that—

- (1) the location chosen is in the Americas and is easily accessible to all peoples in the region; and
- (2) the relevant government—
  - (A) has demonstrated a commitment to economic integration and democratic values though<sup>1</sup> its policies and programs; and
  - (B) has expressed an interest in that location being chosen as a site and has agreed to contribute some amount of assistance, either in cash or kind, toward the costs of developing the institution.

#### (c) Faculty, students, and curriculum

In developing the bylaws of the International University for the Americas, the Secretary of State shall ensure that they contain provisions to ensure that faculty and students are drawn from all the nations in the Western Hemisphere, and that the curriculum is designed to develop expertise in fields that will promote the economic integration of the Americas and the consolidation of democracy throughout the Hemisphere.

#### (d) Annual report

The annual reports submitted pursuant to section 1738m of title 7 shall include a progress re-

port on the selection of a site and design for the establishment of the International University for the Americas.

#### (e) Funding

Of the funds that are allocated for assistance for Latin America and the Caribbean under chapter 1 of part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.] (relating to development assistance) and chapter 4 of part II of that Act [22 U.S.C. 2346 et seq.] (relating to the economic support fund), \$500,000 may be made available to carry out the site location and design phase of the International University for the Americas.

(Pub. L. 102-549, title VI, § 604, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3669.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (e), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended. Chapter 1 of part I and chapter 4 of part II of the Act are classified generally to part I (§2151 et seq.) of subchapter I and part IV (§2346 et seq.) of subchapter II, respectively, of chapter 32 of this title. For provisions deeming references to part I of subchapter I to include a reference to section 2293 of this title, see section 2293(d)(1) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

### CHAPTER 29A—INTER-AMERICAN CULTURAL AND TRADE CENTER

| Sec.  |  |
|-------|--|
| 2081. | United States participation in Inter-American Cultural and Trade Center; purposes of Interama. |
| 2082. | Participation in Interama by States and foreign countries.                                     |
| 2083. | Commissioner for Interama; procurement and appointment of personnel; powers and duties.        |
| 2084. | Cooperation of other Federal departments, agencies, and instrumentalities.                     |
| 2085. | Authorization of appropriations.   |

#### § 2081. United States participation in Inter-American Cultural and Trade Center; purposes of Interama

The President is authorized, through such department or agency in the executive branch of the Government as he may designate, to provide for United States participation in the Inter-American Cultural and Trade Center (hereinafter in this chapter referred to as “Interama”). In providing for United States participation, the President shall cooperate with the Inter-American Center Authority (an agency of the State of Florida). The purposes of Interama are—

- (1) to provide a permanent international center which will serve as a meeting ground for the governments and industries of the Western Hemisphere and of other areas of the world;
- (2) to facilitate broad and continuous exchanges of ideas, persons, and products through cultural, educational, and other exchanges; and
- (3) by other appropriate means, to promote mutual understanding between the peoples of the Western Hemisphere and to strengthen the ties which unite the United States with other nations of the free world.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be “through”.



(Pub. L. 89-355, §1, Feb. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 5.)

**§ 2082. Participation in Interama by States and foreign countries**

The President is authorized, by proclamation or in such other manner as he may deem proper, to invite the several States of the United States and foreign countries to take part in Interama, except that no Communist de facto government holding any people in subjugation shall be invited to participate.

(Pub. L. 89-355, §2(a), Feb. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 6.)

REPORT TO CONGRESS BY MAY 15, 1966

Section 2(b) of Pub. L. 89-355 provided that the department or agency, designated by the President pursuant to section 2081 of this title, submit a report to the Senate Committees on Foreign Relations and Appropriations and the Speaker of the House, on the proposed nature, extent and cost of United States participation in Interama and of the extent of participation of foreign countries and private industries.

**§ 2083. Commissioner for Interama; procurement and appointment of personnel; powers and duties**

(a) There shall be in the designated department or agency a Commissioner for Interama who shall be appointed by the President. Subject to the direction of the head of the designated department or agency, the Commissioner for Interama shall perform such duties as the President may prescribe to carry out this chapter.

(b) In order to carry out the provisions of this chapter, the head of the designated department or agency is authorized—

(1) to appoint and fix the compensation of such persons as he deems necessary without regard to the civil service laws and chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of title 5; except that no person so appointed shall receive compensation at a rate in excess of that received by persons under chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of title 5 for the performance of comparable duties;

(2) to procure temporary and intermittent services in accordance with the provisions of section 3109 of title 5;

(3) to enter into contracts;

(4) to select, purchase, rent, construct, or otherwise acquire exhibits, including materials and equipment therefor, and to provide for the transportation, insurance, display, maintenance, and dismantling thereof;

(5) to incur such other expenses as may be necessary; and

(6) to accept donations of money, property, and services and the loan of property.

(Pub. L. 89-355, §3, Feb. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 6; Pub. L. 90-83, §10(b), Sept. 11, 1967, 81 Stat. 224.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The civil service laws, referred to in subsec. (b)(1), are set forth in Title 5, Government Organization and Employees. See, particularly, section 3301 et seq. of Title 5.

CODIFICATION

In subsec. (b)(1), (2), “chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of title 5” and “section 3109 of title 5” substituted for “the Classification Act of 1949” and “sec-

tion 15 of the Administrative Expenses Act of 1946 (5 U.S.C. 55a)”, respectively, on authority of Pub. L. 89-554, §7(b), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 631, the first section of which enacted Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

AMENDMENTS

1967—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 90-83 struck out provision that Commissioner of Interama receive compensation at a rate prescribed for level IV of the Federal Executive Salary Schedule.

**§ 2084. Cooperation of other Federal departments, agencies, and instrumentalities**

The head of each department, agency, or instrumentality of the Federal Government is authorized—

(1) to cooperate with the head of the designated department or agency with respect to determining the manner in which and the extent to which the United States shall be a participant in and an exhibitor at Interama; and

(2) to make available to the head of the designated department or agency, on a reimbursable basis, such personnel as may be necessary to assist him in carrying out his functions under this chapter.

(Pub. L. 89-355, §4, Feb. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 6.)

**§ 2085. Authorization of appropriations**

(a) There is authorized to be appropriated not to exceed \$7,500,000 to provide for United States participation in Interama under this chapter, of which not to exceed \$250,000 shall be available for expenditure in connection with the preparation of the report required to be submitted to the Congress under section 2(b) of this Act. Sums appropriated under this subsection shall remain available until expended.

(b) In addition to the amount authorized in subsection (a) of this section, there is authorized to be appropriated not to exceed \$1,000,000 annually for each of the fiscal years 1968 and 1969 for the maintenance of United States installations and activities at Interama.

(Pub. L. 89-355, §5, Feb. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 7.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 2(b) of this Act, referred to in subsec. (a), means section 2(b) of Pub. L. 89-355, which was set out as a note under section 2082 of this title.

**CHAPTER 30—INTERNATIONAL COOPERATION IN HEALTH AND MEDICAL RESEARCH**

|       |   |
|-------|---|
| Sec.  |   |
| 2101. | Statement of purpose.   |
| 2102. | Authority of Secretary.   |
|       | (a) Use of health research and research training resources.   |
|       | (b) Fellowships; equipment, meetings and conferences; interchange of scientists and experts; consultants; compensation and travel expenses. |
|       | (c) Definitions.  |
| 2103. | Authority of President.   |
|       | (a) Use of foreign currencies and credits.  |
|       | (b) Disease and health deficiency investigations, experiments, and studies; rehabilitation.   |

Sec.

- (c) Fellowships; equipment; technical assistance; interchange of scientists and experts; compensation and travel expenses; health science programs and projects; meetings and conferences; scientific publications.
  - (d) Programs of an operational nature excepted from assistance.
  - (e) Consultants; advisory committees; compensation and travel expenses.
  - (f) Delegation of authority; regulations.
  - (g) Use of foreign currencies and credits.
  - (h) Report to Congress.
  - (i) Definitions.
2104. Authority of Federal officers and agencies unaffected.

### § 2101. Statement of purpose

It is the purpose of this chapter—

- (1) to advance the status of the health sciences in the United States and thereby the health of the American people through cooperative endeavors with other countries in health research, and research training; and
- (2) to advance the international status of the health sciences through cooperative enterprises in health research, research planning, and research training.

(Pub. L. 86-610, § 2, July 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 364.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this joint resolution”, which enacted this chapter and section 308 of the Public Health Service Act (act July 1, 1944, ch. 373, 58 Stat. 682). Such section 308 was redesignated section 307 by Pub. L. 93-353, July 23, 1974, title I, § 106, 88 Stat. 367, and is classified to section 242f of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare.

#### RECITAL

Pub. L. 86-610 provided that:

“Whereas it is recognized that disease and disability are the common enemies of all nations and peoples, and that the means, methods, and techniques for combating and abating the ravages of disease and disability and for improving the health and health standards of man should be sought and shared, without regard to national boundaries and divisions; and

“Whereas advances in combating and abating disease and in the positive promotion of human health can be stimulated by supporting and encouraging cooperation among scientists, research workers, and teachers on an international basis, with consequent benefit to the health of our people and of all peoples; and

“Whereas there already exist tested means for international cooperation in matters relating to health, including the World Health Organization, the Pan American Health Organization, and the United Nations Children’s Fund (UNICEF), with which the United States is identified and associated, and it is highly desirable that the United States establish domestic machinery for the maximum mobilization of its health research resources, the more efficiently to cooperate with and support the research, research-training and research-planning endeavors of such international organizations: Therefore be it \* \* \*

#### SHORT TITLE

Section 1 of Pub. L. 86-610 provided that: “This joint resolution [enacting this chapter and section 242f of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare] may be cited as the ‘International Health Research Act of 1960’.”

#### SWINE INFLUENZA STUDY

Pub. L. 94-302, title III, § 301, May 31, 1976, 90 Stat. 596, provided that:

“(a) The Congress finds and declares that—

- “(1) the problems posed by swine influenza transcend national and political boundaries;
  - “(2) no one country, or even one portion of the world, can singularly undertake the search for a worldwide solution to the problems posed by swine influenza;
  - “(3) the global nature of swine influenza demands international cooperation and coordination in the investigation and planning for effective control of swine influenza;
  - “(4) the Public Health Service of the United States has invited the World Health Organization of the United Nations and its International Influenza Reference Centers to participate in the investigation and planning for the control of swine influenza;
  - “(5) special collaboration has already been established among the United States, the United Kingdom, and Canada for mutual participation in the investigation and planning for the control of swine influenza;
  - “(6) the United States Department of State and the Public Health Service of the United States have joint programs to provide information to foreign countries on the nature and extent of swine influenza and the methods necessary to control it; and
  - “(7) the technology of the United States for the surveillance of virus disease and vaccine production should be made available to foreign countries.
- “(b) It is the sense of the Congress that the President should furnish assistance to foreign countries and international organizations for the investigation and planning for the control of swine influenza.”

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2102, 2103 of this title.

### § 2102. Authority of Secretary

#### (a) Use of health research and research training resources

To carry out the purposes of clause (1) of section 2101 of this title, the Secretary of Health, Education, and Welfare (hereafter referred to as the “Secretary”) may in the exercise of his responsibilities under the Vocational Rehabilitation Act, sections 191 to 194 of title 42, and any other provision of law, to conduct and support health research and research training, including research and research training relating to the rehabilitation of the handicapped, make such use of health research and research training resources in participating foreign countries as he may deem necessary and desirable.

#### (b) Fellowships; equipment, meetings and conferences; interchange of scientists and experts; consultants; compensation and travel expenses

To carry out his responsibilities under this section the Secretary may—

- (1) establish and maintain fellowships in the United States and in participating foreign countries;
- (2) make grants to public institutions or agencies and to nonprofit private institutions or agencies in the United States and in participating foreign countries for the purpose of establishing and maintaining fellowships;
- (3) make grants or loans of equipment, medical, biological, physical, or chemical substances or other materials, for use by public institutions or agencies, or nonprofit private institutions or agencies, or by individuals, in participating foreign countries;

(4) participate and otherwise cooperate in any international health or medical research or research training meetings, conferences, or other activities;

(5) facilitate the interchange between the United States and participating foreign countries, and among participating foreign countries, of research scientists and experts who are engaged in experiments and programs of research or research training, and in carrying out such purpose may pay per diem compensation, subsistence, and travel for such scientists and experts when away from their places of residence at rates not to exceed those provided in section 5703 of title 5 for persons in the Government service intermittently employed; and

(6) procure, in accordance with the provisions of section 3109 of title 5, the temporary or intermittent services of experts or consultants; individuals so employed shall receive compensation at a rate to be fixed by the Secretary, but not in excess of \$50 per diem, including travel time, and while away from their homes or regular places of business may be allowed travel expenses, including per diem in lieu of subsistence, as authorized by section 5703 of title 5 for persons in the Government service employed intermittently.

#### (c) Definitions

For the purposes of this section—

(1) The term “health research” shall include, but not be limited to, research, investigations, and studies relating to causes and methods of prevention of accidents, including but not limited to highway and aviation accidents.

(2) The term “participating foreign countries” means those foreign countries which cooperate with the United States in carrying out the purposes of this section.

(Pub. L. 86-610, § 4, July 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 365.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Vocational Rehabilitation Act, referred to in subsec. (a), is act June 2, 1920, ch. 219, 41 Stat. 735, as amended, which was classified generally to chapter 4 (§31 et seq.) of Title 29, Labor, and was repealed by §500(a) of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, Pub. L. 93-112, title V, Sept. 26, 1973, 87 Stat. 355. The Rehabilitation Act of 1973 is classified generally to chapter 16 (§701 et seq.) of Title 29. Section 500(a), classified to section 790 of Title 29, in part provided that references to the Vocational Rehabilitation Act in any other provision of law be deemed reference to the Rehabilitation Act of 1973.

#### CODIFICATION

In subsec. (b)(5), (6), “section 5703 of title 5” and “section 3109 of title 5” substituted for “section 5 of the Administrative Expenses Act of 1946 (5 U.S.C. 73b-2)” and “section 15 of the Administrative Expenses Act of 1946 (5 U.S.C. 55a)” respectively, on authority of Pub. L. 89-554, §7(b), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 631, the first section of which enacted Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions and offices relating to the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 [see References in Text note above] of Secretary and Department of Health, Education, and Welfare to Secretary and Department of Education and redesignation of Secretary of Health, Education, and Welfare as Secretary of Health and

Human Services, see sections 3441 and 3508 of Title 20, Education.

### § 2103. Authority of President

#### (a) Use of foreign currencies and credits

It is the sense of Congress that the President should use his authority under the Constitution and laws of the United States to accomplish the purposes of section 2101 of this title and in accomplishing such purposes (1) use to the fullest extent practicable foreign currencies or credits available for utilization by the United States, (2) enter into agreements to use foreign currencies and credits available to other nations for use with the agreement of the United States, and (3) use any other foreign currencies and credits which may be made available by participating foreign countries.

#### (b) Disease and health deficiency investigations, experiments, and studies; rehabilitation

To carry out the purposes of section 2101 of this title the President, in cooperation with participating foreign countries, is authorized to encourage, support, and promote the planning and conduct of, and training for, research investigations, experiments, and studies in the United States and in participating foreign countries relating to the causes, diagnosis, treatment, control, and prevention of diseases and impairments of mankind (including nutritional and other health deficiencies) or to the rehabilitation of the handicapped.

#### (c) Fellowships; equipment; technical assistance; interchange of scientists and experts; compensation and travel expenses; health science programs and projects; meetings and conferences; scientific publications

To carry out his responsibilities under this chapter the President may—

(1) establish and maintain fellowships in participating foreign countries;

(2) make financial grants to establish and maintain fellowships, and for other purposes, to public institutions and agencies and to non-profit private institutions and agencies, and to individuals in participating foreign countries, or contract with such institutions, agencies, or individuals without regard to section 3324(a) and (b) of title 31 and section 5 of title 41;

(3) make grants or loans of equipment, medical, biological, physical, or chemical substances or other materials, for use by such institutions, agencies, or individuals;

(4) furnish technical assistance and advice to such institutions or agencies and in carrying out such purposes may pay the compensation and expenses of scientists and experts from the United States and other participating foreign countries;

(5) facilitate the interchange among participating foreign countries of scientists and experts (including the payment of travel and subsistence for such scientists and experts when away from their places of residence);

(6) cooperate and assist in the planning and conduct of research, research planning, and research training programs and projects by groups engaged in, or concerned with, research

or research training endeavors in the health sciences, and, through financial grants or other appropriate means, assist in special research, research planning, or research training projects conducted by or under the auspices of such groups where they can effectively carry out such activities contemplated by this joint resolution;

(7) encourage and support international communication in the sciences relating to health by means of calling or cooperating in the convening, and financing or contributing to the financing of the expenses of, international scientific meetings and conferences; and provide, or arrange for the provision of, translating and other services, and issue or finance publications, leading to a more effective dissemination of relevant scientific information with respect to research conducted in the United States or participating foreign countries.

**(d) Programs of an operational nature excepted from assistance**

The activities authorized in this section shall not extend to the support of public health, medical care, or other programs of an operational nature as contrasted with research and research training nor shall any of the grants authorized by this section include grants for the improvement or extension of public health administration in other countries except for necessary research and research training in the science of public health and public health administration.

**(e) Consultants; advisory committees; compensation and travel expenses**

The President is authorized, to the extent he deems it necessary to carry out the purposes of section 2101 of this title, to employ experts and consultants or organizations thereof, as authorized by section 3109 of title 5 and create a committee or committees to be composed entirely of persons who are citizens of the United States to advise him in the administration of this chapter, individuals so employed and members of committees shall be entitled to receive compensation at a rate to be fixed by the President, but not to exceed \$50 per diem, including travel time, and while away from their homes or regular places of business they may be allowed travel expenses, including per diem in lieu of subsistence, as authorized by section 5703 of title 5 for persons in the Government service employed intermittently.

**(f) Delegation of authority; regulations**

The President may delegate any authority vested in him by this section to the Secretary of Health, Education, and Welfare. The Secretary may from time to time issue such regulations as may be necessary to carry out any authority which is delegated to him under this section, and may delegate performance of any such authority to the Surgeon General of the Public Health Service, the Director of the Office of Vocational Rehabilitation, the Chief of the Children's Bureau, or other subordinates acting under his direction.

**(g) Use of foreign currencies and credits**

In order to carry out the purposes of section 2101 of this title, and subject to section 1306 of

title 31, the President may use or enter into agreements with foreign nations or organizations of nations to use the foreign currencies which accrue under title I of the Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954 [7 U.S.C. 1701 et seq.], and the Mutual Security Act of 1954, or which are otherwise available for utilization by the United States. The President is authorized to agree to the utilization by foreign nations, for programs designed to carry out the purposes of section 2101 of this title in cooperation with the United States, of amounts deposited in special accounts pursuant to section 142(b)<sup>1</sup> of the Mutual Security Act of 1954, to the extent that the amounts in such accounts exceed the requirements of other programs covered by such section 142(b). Such utilization of amounts in special accounts shall be without regard to the second proviso in clause (iii) of such section 142(b).

**(h) Report to Congress**

The President shall transmit to the Congress at the beginning of each regular session, a report summarizing activities under this section and making such recommendations as he may deem appropriate.

**(i) Definitions**

For the purposes of this section—

(1) the term "health research" shall include, but not be limited to, research, investigations, and studies relating to causes and methods of prevention of accidents, including but not limited to highway and aviation accidents.

(2) the term "participating foreign countries" means those foreign countries which cooperate with the United States in carrying out the purposes of this section.

(Pub. L. 86-610, § 5, July 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 366.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (c) and (e), was in the original "this joint resolution", which enacted this chapter and section 308 of the Public Health Service Act (act July 1, 1944, ch. 373, 58 Stat. 682). Such section 308 was redesignated section 307 by Pub. L. 93-353, July 23, 1974, title I, §106, 88 Stat. 367, and is classified to section 2427 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare.

The Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954, referred to in subsec. (g), is act July 10, 1954, ch. 469, 68 Stat. 454, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 41 (§1691 et seq.) of Title 7, Agriculture. Title I of the Act is classified to subchapter II (§1701 et seq.) of chapter 41 of Title 7. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1691 of Title 7 and Tables.

The Mutual Security Act of 1954, referred to in subsec. (g), is act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, 68 Stat. 832, as amended by acts July 8, 1955, ch. 301, 69 Stat. 283; July 18, 1956, ch. 627, §§2 to 11, 70 Stat. 555; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, 71 Stat. 355; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. 1, §§101 to 103, ch. II, §§201 to 205, ch. III, §301, ch. IV, §401, ch. V, §501, 72 Stat. 261; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, §2, ch. 1, §101, ch. II, §§201 to 205(a) to (i), (k) to (n), ch. III, §301, ch. IV, §401(a) to (k), (m), 73 Stat. 246; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. I to V, 74 Stat. 134, which was principally classified to chapter 24 (§1750 et seq.) of this title and which was repealed by act July 18, 1956, ch. 627, §8(m), 70 Stat. 559, Pub. L. 85-141, §§2(e), 3, 4(b), 11(d), Aug. 14, 1957, 71 Stat. 356, Pub. L. 86-108, ch.

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

II, §§ 205(j), ch. IV, 401(1), July 24, 1959, 73 Stat. 250, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. II, §§ 203(d), 204(k), May 14, 1960, 74 Stat. 138, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 642(a)(2), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460, Pub. L. 94-329, title II, § 212(b)(1), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 745, except for sections 1754, 1783, 1796, 1853, 1922, 1928, and 1937 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1754 of this title and Tables.

Section 142(b) of the Mutual Security Act of 1954, referred to in subsec. (g), was classified to section 1852 of this title, and was repealed by Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 642(a)(2), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460.

#### CODIFICATION

In subsecs. (c)(2) and (g), “section 3324(a) and (b) of title 31” was substituted for reference to section 3648 of the Revised Statutes of the United States [31 U.S.C. 529], and “section 1306 of title 31” was substituted for “section 1415 of the Supplemental Appropriation Act, 1953 [31 U.S.C. 724]”, respectively, on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, § 4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

In subsec. (e), “section 3109 of title 5” and “section 5703 of title 5” were substituted for “section 15 of the Administrative Expenses Act of 1946 (5 U.S.C. 55a)” and “section 5 of the Administrative Expenses Act of 1946 (5 U.S.C. 73b-2)”, respectively, on authority of Pub. L. 89-554, § 7(b), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 631, the first section of which enacted Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

Office of Vocational Rehabilitation redesignated Vocational Rehabilitation Administration which by Department of Health, Education, and Welfare reorganization became Rehabilitation Services Administration. The Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (29 U.S.C. § 701 et seq.) established Rehabilitation Services Administration in Office of Secretary of Health, Education, and Welfare. Functions and offices of Secretary and Department of Health, Education, and Welfare relating to Rehabilitation Act of 1973 transferred to Secretary and Department of Education by section 3441 of Title 20, Education. The Secretary and Department of Health, Education, and Welfare redesignated Secretary and Department of Health and Human Services by section 3508(b) of Title 20, Education.

### § 2104. Authority of Federal officers and agencies unaffected

Nothing in this chapter shall be construed to repeal or restrict authority vested in the President, the Secretary of State, the Secretary of Health, Education, and Welfare, the Surgeon General of the Public Health Service, or any other officer or agency of the United States by any other provision of law.

(Pub. L. 86-610, § 6, July 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 369.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this joint resolution”, which enacted this chapter and section 308 of the Public Health Service Act (act July 1, 1944, ch. 373, 58 Stat. 682). Such section 308 was redesignated section 307 by Pub. L. 93-353, July 23, 1974, title I, § 106, 88 Stat. 367, and is classified to section 242f of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare.

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

See Transfer of Functions notes set out under sections 2102 and 2103 of this title.

## CHAPTER 31—INTERNATIONAL TRAVEL

### SUBCHAPTER I—NATIONAL TOURISM POLICY

Sec.  
2121. Congressional findings; establishment of policy.

Sec.

#### SUBCHAPTER II—DUTIES

2122. Powers and duties of Secretary of Commerce.  
2123. Performance of duties by Secretary of Commerce.
- (a) Methods which may be used in performing Secretary's statutory duties.
  - (b) Prohibition on providing or arranging transportation or accommodations for persons traveling between foreign countries and United States.
  - (c) Matching funds requirement; record-keeping by recipient of financial assistance; contents.
  - (d) Audit and examination of books, etc., by Secretary and Comptroller of United States, or duly authorized representatives.
  - (e) Tourism trade development.
- 2123a. Tourism marketing programs.
- (a) Financial assistance.
  - (b) Requisite showing of applicants for assistance.
  - (c) Permitted uses of financial assistance.
  - (d) Agreements with individuals and private profit and nonprofit businesses and organizations.
  - (e) Issuance of rules and guidelines.
  - (f) Limitations on financial assistance.
- 2123b. Tourism trade barriers.  
2123c. Action to facilitate entry of foreign tourists.  
2123d. Performance of United States Travel and Tourism Administration.
- (a) Goals and measures of performance; annual report to Congress.
  - (b) Evaluation; annual report to Congress.
  - (c) Collection of information.

#### SUBCHAPTER III—ADMINISTRATION

2124. United States Travel and Tourism Administration.
- (a) Establishment; duties and responsibilities.
  - (b) Number of foreign offices; amount of funds.
  - (c) Coordination.
  - (d) Limitation on certain expenditures.
- 2124a. Tourism Policy Council.
- (a) Establishment.
  - (b) Membership; expenses; alternates.
  - (c) Outside participation; meetings.
  - (d) Powers and duties; administrative support.
  - (e) Policy committees.
  - (f) Annual report to President and Congress.
- 2124b. Travel and Tourism Advisory Board.
- (a) Establishment; membership.
  - (b) Term of office.
  - (c) Election of officers.
  - (d) Expenses.
  - (e) Meetings.
  - (f) Functions and duties; annual report.
- 2124c. Rural Tourism Development Foundation.
- (a) Establishment of Foundation.
  - (b) Functions.
  - (c) Board of Directors.
  - (d) Compensation and expenses.
  - (e) Acceptance of gifts, devises, and bequests.
  - (f) Investments.
  - (g) Perpetual succession; liability of Board members.
  - (h) Contractual power.
  - (i) Administration.
  - (j) Exemption from taxes; contributions.

- Sec.
- (k) Liability of United States.
  - (l) Annual report.
  - (m) Definitions.
2125. Transferred.
2126. Authorization of appropriations.
2127. Definitions.
2128. United States Travel and Tourism Administration Facilitation Fee.
- (a) Collection.
  - (b) Amount.
  - (c) Payment.
  - (d) Disposition of payments.
  - (e) Aggregate amounts collected.
  - (f) Rules and regulations.
2129. Civil penalties for nonpayment of Travel and Tourism Administration Facilitation Fee.
- (a) Amount.
  - (b) Civil action for recovery of penalty.
  - (c) Compromise, modification, or remittance of civil penalty.
  - (d) Subpoenas.

#### SUBCHAPTER I—NATIONAL TOURISM POLICY

### § 2121. Congressional findings; establishment of policy

(a) The Congress finds that—

(1) the tourism and recreation industries are important to the United States, not only because of the numbers of people they serve and the vast human, financial, and physical resources they employ, but because of the great benefits tourism, recreation, and related activities confer on individuals and on society as a whole;

(2) the Federal Government for many years has encouraged tourism and recreation implicitly in its statutory commitments to the shorter workyear and to the national passenger transportation system, and explicitly in a number of legislative enactments to promote tourism and support development of outdoor recreation, cultural attractions, and historic and natural heritage resources;

(3) as incomes and leisure time continue to increase, and as our economic and political systems develop more complex global relationships, tourism and recreation will become ever more important aspects of our daily lives; and

(4) the existing extensive Federal Government involvement in tourism, recreation, and other related activities needs to be better coordinated to effectively respond to the national interest in tourism and recreation and, where appropriate, to meet the needs of State and local governments and the private sector.

(b) There is established a national tourism policy to—

(1) optimize the contributions of the tourism and recreation industries to the position of the United States with respect to international competitiveness, economic prosperity, full employment, and the balance of payments;

(2) increase United States export earnings from United States tourism and transportation services traded internationally;

(3) ensure the orderly growth and development of tourism;

(4) coordinate and encourage the development of the tourism industry in rural communities which—

(A) have been severely affected by the decline of agriculture, family farming, or the extraction or manufacturing industries, or by the closing of military bases; and

(B) have the potential necessary to support and sustain an economy based on tourism;

(5) promote increased and more effective investment in international tourism by the States, local governments, and cooperative tourism marketing programs;

(6) make the opportunity for and benefits of tourism and recreation in the United States universally accessible to residents of the United States and foreign countries and insure that present and future generations are afforded adequate tourism and recreation resources;

(7) contribute to personal growth, health, education, and intercultural appreciation of the geography, history, and ethnicity of the United States;

(8) encourage the free and welcome entry of individuals traveling to the United States, in order to enhance international understanding and goodwill, consistent with immigration laws, the laws protecting the public health, and laws governing the importation of goods into the United States;

(9) eliminate unnecessary trade barriers to the United States tourism industry operating throughout the world;

(10) encourage competition in the tourism industry and maximum consumer choice through the continued viability of the retail travel agent industry and the independent tour operator industry;

(11) promote the continued development and availability of alternative personal payment mechanisms which facilitate national and international travel;

(12) promote quality, integrity, and reliability in all tourism and tourism-related services offered to visitors to the United States;

(13) preserve the historical and cultural foundations of the Nation as a living part of community life and development, and insure future generations an opportunity to appreciate and enjoy the rich heritage of the Nation;

(14) insure the compatibility of tourism and recreation with other national interests in energy development and conservation, environmental protection, and the judicious use of natural resources;

(15) assist in the collection, analysis, and dissemination of data which accurately measure the economic and social impact of tourism to and within the United States, in order to facilitate planning in the public and private sectors; and

(16) harmonize, to the maximum extent possible, all Federal activities in support of tourism and recreation with the needs of the general public and the States, territories, local governments, and the tourism and recreation industry, and to give leadership to all concerned with tourism, recreation, and national heritage preservation in the United States.

(Pub. L. 87-63, title I, § 101, formerly § 1, June 29, 1961, 75 Stat. 129; renumbered and amended Pub.

L. 97-63, §2(a), Oct. 16, 1981, 95 Stat. 1011; Pub. L. 102-372, §5, Sept. 30, 1992, 106 Stat. 1175.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 102-372, §5(1), amended par. (1) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (1) read as follows: “optimize the contribution of the tourism and recreation industries to economic prosperity, full employment, and the international balance of payments of the United States;”.

Subsec. (b)(2) to (16). Pub. L. 102-372, §5(2), (3), added pars. (2) to (5) and redesignated former pars. (2) to (12) as (6) to (16), respectively.

1981—Pub. L. 97-63 substituted provisions setting out a detailed 4-point recital of Congressional findings and establishing a 12-point national tourism policy for provisions setting out the former declaration of purpose of this chapter which was to strengthen the domestic and foreign commerce of the United States, and promote friendly understanding and appreciation of the United States by encouraging foreign residents to visit the United States and by facilitating international travel generally.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1981 AMENDMENT

Section 6 of Pub. L. 97-63 provided that: “The amendments made by this Act [see Short Title of 1981 Amendment note below] shall take effect October 1, 1981.”

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1992 AMENDMENT

Section 1(a) of Pub. L. 102-372 provided that: “This Act [enacting sections 2123a to 2123d and 2124c of this title, amending this section and sections 2122, 2123, 2123a, 2124b, and 2126 of this title, repealing sections 2123a and 2123b of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and sections 2122 and 2124 of this title] may be cited as the ‘Tourism Policy and Export Promotion Act of 1992.’”

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1981 AMENDMENT

Section 1 of Pub. L. 97-63 provided that: “This Act [enacting sections 2123b, 2124a, and 2124b of this title, amending this section and sections 2122, 2123, 2123a, 2124, and 2126 of this title, repealing section 2128 of this title, and enacting, amending, and repealing provisions set out as notes under this section] may be cited as the ‘National Tourism Policy Act.’”

#### SHORT TITLE

Section 1 of Pub. L. 87-63, as amended by Pub. L. 97-63, §2(a), Oct. 16, 1981, 95 Stat. 1011, provided: “That this Act [enacting this chapter] may be cited as the ‘International Travel Act of 1961.’”

Section 8, formerly §7, of Pub. L. 87-63, as renumbered Pub. L. 91-477, §5, Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1072, which had formerly authorized the citation of Pub. L. 87-63 as the “International Travel Act of 1961”, was repealed by Pub. L. 97-63, §5(b), Oct. 16, 1981, 95 Stat. 1018.

#### TOURISM POLICY AND EXPORT PROMOTION; CONGRESSIONAL STATEMENT OF FINDINGS

Section 2 of Pub. L. 102-372 provided that: “The Congress finds that—

“(1) the travel and tourism industry is the second largest retail or service industry in the United States;

“(2) travel and tourism receipts make up over 6.7 percent of the United States gross national product;

“(3) in 1991, the travel and tourism industry generated about six million jobs directly and about two million five hundred thousand indirectly;

“(4) travel and tourism expenditures in 1991 were approximately \$352,000,000,000;

“(5) forty-two million international visitors spent approximately \$64,700,000,000 in the United States in 1991;

“(6) travel and tourism services ranked as the largest United States business services export in 1991,

providing a United States travel trade balance of \$16,800,000,000;

“(7) many local communities with significant tourism potential are unable to realize the economic and employment opportunities that tourism provides because they lack the necessary local resources and expertise needed to induce tourism trade;

“(8) increased efforts directed at the promotion of rural tourism will contribute to the economic development of rural America and further the conservation and promotion of natural, scenic, historic, scientific, educational, inspirational, and recreational resources for future generations of Americans and foreign visitors;

“(9) foreign tourists entering the United States are frequently faced with unnecessary delays at the United States border;

“(10) advanced technologies, industrial targeting, the industrialization of the Third World, and the flight of some United States manufacturing capacity to overseas locations have affected the international competitiveness of the United States;

“(11) exporting those goods and services which United States industry can produce at a comparative cost advantage, such as travel and tourism services, will be in the Nation’s long-term strategic interest; and

“(12) the emergence of democratic governments in the formerly Communist nations of Eastern Europe and in the former Soviet Union provide new opportunities for United States firms engaged in both the inbound and outbound tourism markets.”

#### NATIONAL TOURISM RESOURCES REVIEW COMMISSION

Pub. L. 91-477, §6, Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1073, provided that:

“(a) [Establishment; membership]. There is established a commission to be known as the National Tourism Resources Review Commission (hereafter in this section referred to as the ‘Commission’) composed of fifteen members as follows:

“(1) One representative of the Department of Commerce designated by the Secretary of Commerce.

“(2) One representative of the Department of the Interior designated by the Secretary of the Interior.

“(3) One representative of the Department of State designated by the Secretary of State.

“(4) One representative of the Department of Transportation designated by the Secretary of Transportation.

“(5) Eleven individuals appointed by the President from private life who are informed about and concerned with the improvement, development, and promotion of United States tourism resources and opportunities or who are otherwise experienced in tourism research, promotion, or planning. The President shall designate one of the individuals appointed by him to serve as Chairman of the Commission.

“(b) [Study and investigation; report to President and Congress; recommendations; termination]. The Commission shall make a full and complete study and investigation for the purpose of—

“(1) determining the domestic travel needs of the people of the United States and of visitors from other countries at the present time and to the year 1980;

“(2) determining the travel resources of the United States available to satisfy such needs now and to the year 1980;

“(3) determining policies and programs which will insure that the domestic travel needs of the present and the future are adequately and efficiently met;

“(4) determining a recommended program of Federal assistance to the States in promoting domestic travel; and

“(5) determining whether a separate agency of the Government should be established, or whether an existing department, agency, or instrumentality within the Government should be designated, to consolidate and coordinate tourism research, planning, and development activities presently performed by different existing agencies of the Government.

The Commission shall submit a comprehensive report of its activities and the results of such study and investigation, together with its recommendations with respect thereto, to the President and to the Congress not later than two years after the first meeting of the Commission. The Commission shall cease to exist sixty days after the date of the submission of its comprehensive report. The comprehensive report of the Commission shall propose such legislative enactments and administrative actions as in its judgment are necessary to carry out its recommendations.

“(c) [Secretarial, clerical, and other assistance by Secretary of Commerce; information and assistance by Governmental departments and agencies]. The Secretary of Commerce shall make available to the Commission such secretarial, clerical, and other assistance as the Commission may require to carry out its functions under this section. The Commission is authorized to request from any department, agency, or independent instrumentality of the Government any information and assistance it deems necessary to carry out its functions under this section; and each such department, agency, and instrumentality is authorized to cooperate with the Commission and, to the extent permitted by law, to furnish such information and assistance to the Commission upon request made by its Chairman.

“(d) [Powers of Commission]. In order to carry out the provisions of this section, the Commission is authorized—

“(1) to make, promulgate, issue, rescind, and amend rules and regulations governing the manner of the operations of the Commission;

“(2) to appoint and fix the compensation of such officers and employees as are necessary to carry out the provisions of this section and to prescribe their authority and duties; and

“(3) to obtain the services of experts and consultants in accordance with section 3109 of title 5, United States Code.

“(e) [Compensation and travel expenses]. (1) Members of the Commission from private life, while engaged in the performance of their duties as members of the Commission, shall receive compensation at a rate to be fixed by the President, not to exceed \$100 each day, including traveltime, and shall, while so serving away from their homes or regular places of business, be entitled to travel expenses, including per diem in lieu of subsistence, as authorized by section 5703 of title 5, United States Code, for persons in the Government service employed intermittently.

“(2) Members of the Commission who are officers or employees of the United States shall serve without additional compensation, but shall be entitled to travel expenses, including per diem in lieu of subsistence, as authorized by section 5703 of title 5, United States Code, for persons in the Government service employed intermittently.

“(f) [Authorization of appropriations]. There are authorized to be appropriated such sums, not to exceed \$750,000, as may be necessary to carry out the provisions of this section.”

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2122 of this title.

### SUBCHAPTER II—DUTIES

#### § 2122. Powers and duties of Secretary of Commerce

In order to carry out the national tourism policy established by section 2121(b) of this title the Secretary of Commerce (hereafter in this chapter referred to as the “Secretary”) shall—

(1) develop, plan, and carry out a comprehensive program designed to stimulate and encourage travel to the United States by residents of foreign countries for the purpose of study, culture, recreation, business, and other

activities as a means of promoting friendly understanding and good will among peoples of foreign countries and of the United States;

(2) provide export promotion services that will increase the number of States, local governments (as defined in section 3371(2) of title 5), and companies in the United States that sell their tourism services in the international market, expand the number of foreign markets in which exporting States, cities, and companies are active, and inform States, cities, and companies in the United States regarding the specialized services the international market requires;

(3) encourage the development of receptive, linguistic, informational, currency exchange, meal, and package tour services required by the international market;

(4) foster and encourage the widest possible distribution of the benefits of travel at the cheapest rates between foreign countries and the United States consistent with sound economic principles;

(5) encourage the simplification, reduction, or elimination of barriers to travel, and the facilitation of international travel generally;

(6) collect, publish, and provide for the exchange of statistics and technical information, including schedules of meetings, fairs, and other attractions, relating to international travel and tourism;

(7) encourage to the maximum extent feasible travel to and from the United States on United States carriers and the use of other United States providers of travel products and services; and

(8) advise and provide information and technical assistance to United States firms seeking to facilitate travel to and from the emerging democracies of Eastern Europe and the former Soviet Union and compile statistics, as available, regarding such travel.

(Pub. L. 87-63, title II, §201, formerly §2, June 29, 1961, 75 Stat. 129; Pub. L. 93-623, §6, Jan. 3, 1975, 88 Stat. 2105; renumbered and amended Pub. L. 97-63, §3(b), (e)(1), Oct. 16, 1981, 95 Stat. 1012, 1013; Pub. L. 102-372, §6(a), Sept. 30, 1992, 106 Stat. 1175.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1992—Par. (2). Pub. L. 102-372, §6(3), added par. (2). Former par. (2) redesignated (3).

Par. (3). Pub. L. 102-372, §6(a)(1), (2), redesignated former par. (2) as (3) and substituted “receptive, linguistic, informational, currency exchange, meal, and package tour services required by the international market” for “tourist facilities, low cost unit tours, and other arrangements within the United States for meeting the requirements of foreign visitors”. Former par. (3) redesignated (4).

Pars. (4) to (6). Pub. L. 102-372, §6(a)(1), redesignated former pars. (3) to (5) as (4) to (6), respectively. Former par. (6) redesignated (7).

Par. (7). Pub. L. 102-372, §6(1), (4), redesignated former par. (6) as (7) and substituted “and the use of other United States providers of travel products and services; and” for period at end.

Par. (8). Pub. L. 102-372, §6(5), added par. (8).

1981—Pub. L. 97-63, §3(b), substituted “In order to carry out the national tourism policy established by section 2121(b) of this title” for “In order to carry out the purpose of this chapter”.

1975—Par. (6). Pub. L. 93-623 added par. (6).



## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1981 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 97-63 effective Oct. 1, 1981, see section 6 of Pub. L. 97-63, set out as a note under section 2121 of this title.

## SURVEY OF INTERNATIONAL AIR TRAVELERS

Section 3 of Pub. L. 102-372 provided that: "The Secretary of Commerce, to the extent available resources permit, shall improve the survey of international air travelers conducted to provide the data needed to estimate the Nation's balance of payments in international travel by—

"(1) expanding the survey to cover travel to and from the Middle East, Africa, South America, and the Caribbean and enhancing coverage for Mexico, Oceania, the Far East, and Europe; and

"(2) improving the methodology for conducting on-board surveys by (A) enhancing communications, training, and liaison activities in cooperation with participating air carriers, (B) providing for the continuation of needed data bases, and (C) utilizing improved sampling procedures.

The Secretary of Commerce shall seek to increase the reporting frequency of the data provided by Statistics Canada and the Bank of Mexico on international travel trade between the United States and both Canada and Mexico. The Secretary shall improve the quarterly statistical report on United States international travel receipts and payments published in the Bureau of Economic Analysis document known as 'The Survey of Current Services' and heighten its visibility."

## REPORT ON TOURISM AND TRAVEL ACTIVITIES

Section 18 of Pub. L. 102-372 directed Secretary of Commerce, within 18 months after Sept. 30, 1992, to report to Congress on (1) status of actions required by section 3 of Pub. L. 102-372 and desirability and feasibility of publishing international travel receipts and payments on a monthly basis, (2) Secretary's actions under 22 U.S.C. 2122(8) regarding the inbound and outbound tourism trade between United States and emerging democracies of Eastern Europe and the former Soviet Union, (3) activities of Department of Commerce and other Federal agencies to increase tourism opportunities for, and encourage travel by, disabled persons, and (4) efforts undertaken under 22 U.S.C. 2123c to improve visitor facilitation and effect on United States travel and tourism as a result of those improvements.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2123 of this title.

**§ 2123. Performance of duties by Secretary of Commerce****(a) Methods which may be used in performing Secretary's statutory duties**

In performing the duties set forth in section 2122 of this title, the Secretary—

(1) shall utilize the facilities and services of existing agencies of the Federal Government to the fullest extent possible including the maximum utilization of counterpart funds; and, to the fullest extent consistent with the performance of their own duties and functions, such agencies shall permit such utilization of facilities and services;

(2) may consult and cooperate with individuals, businesses, and organizations engaged in or concerned with international travel, including local, State, Federal, and foreign governments, and international agencies;

(3) may obtain by contract and otherwise the advice and services of qualified professional organizations and personnel;

(4) after consultation with the Secretary of State, may establish such branches in foreign

countries, as he deems to be necessary and desirable;

(5) shall provide financial assistance under section 2123a of this title to cooperative tourism marketing programs;

(6) may enter into contracts with private profit- or non-profit-making individuals, businesses, and organizations for projects designed to carry out the purposes of this chapter whenever he determines that such projects cannot be accomplished under the authority of paragraph (5) of this subsection;

(7) may make awards of merchandise manufactured and purchased in the United States to travel agents and tour operators in foreign countries as an incentive for their promotion of travel to the United States by residents of foreign countries; and the Secretary may establish such policies, standards, criteria, and procedures as he may deem necessary or appropriate for the administration of this paragraph;

(8) shall establish facilitation services at major ports-of-entry of the United States;

(9) shall consult with foreign governments on travel and tourism matters and, in accordance with applicable law, represent the United States national tourism interest before international and intergovernmental meetings;

(10) shall develop and administer a comprehensive program relating to travel industry information, data service, training and education, and technical assistance;

(11) shall develop a program to seek and to receive information on a continuing basis from the tourism industry, including consumer and travel trade associations, regarding needs and interests which should be met by a Federal agency or program and to direct that information to the appropriate agency or program;

(12) shall encourage to the maximum extent feasible travel to and from the United States on United States carriers and the use of other United States providers of travel products and services;

(13) shall assure coordination within the Department of Commerce so that, to the extent practicable, all the resources of the Department are used to effectively and efficiently carry out the national tourism policy;

(14) may only promulgate, issue, rescind, and amend such interpretive rules, general statements of policy, and rules of agency organization, procedure, and practice as may be necessary to carry out this chapter; and

(15) may assist the Rural Tourism Development Foundation, established under section 2124c of this title, in the development and promotion of rural tourism.

**(b) Prohibition on providing or arranging transportation or accommodations for persons traveling between foreign countries and United States**

The Secretary, under the authority of this chapter, shall not provide or arrange for transportation for, or accommodations to, persons traveling between foreign countries and the United States in competition with business engaged in providing or arranging for such transportation or accommodations.

**(c) Matching funds requirement; recordkeeping by recipient of financial assistance; contents**

No financial assistance will be made available under section 2123a of this title unless the Secretary determines that matching funds will be available from State or other non-Federal sources. Any recipient of financial assistance under section 2123a of this title shall provide matching funds (consisting of actual dollar expenditures on the program for which such financial assistance is provided) equal to at least 25 percent of such financial assistance. The Secretary is authorized to establish such policies, standards, criteria, and procedures and to prescribe such rules and regulations as he may deem necessary or appropriate for the administration of this subsection. Each recipient of assistance under section 2123a of this title shall keep such records as the Secretary shall prescribe, including records which fully disclose the amount and disposition by such recipient of the proceeds of such assistance, the total cost of the project or undertaking in connection with which such assistance is given or used, and the amount of that portion of the cost of the project or undertaking supplied by other sources, and such other records as will facilitate an effective audit.

**(d) Audit and examination of books, etc., by Secretary and Comptroller of United States, or duly authorized representatives**

The Secretary and the Comptroller General of the United States, or any of their duly authorized representatives shall have access for the purpose of audit and examination to any books, documents, papers, and records of the recipients that are pertinent to the assistance received under section 2123a of this title.

**(e) Tourism trade development**

(1) The Secretary's tourism trade development efforts shall focus on the markets which have the greatest potential for increasing travel and tourism revenues.

(2) By October 1 of each year (commencing October 1, 1993), the Secretary shall publish a notice in the Federal Register soliciting comment, from persons interested in tourism trade, concerning markets that would be an appropriate focus of tourism trade development efforts to be carried out in the twelve-month period that begins twelve months after the notice is published.

(3) Not later than three months after the notice is published under paragraph (2), the Secretary shall select the markets that the Secretary determines are an appropriate focus of tourism trade development efforts to be carried out in the twelve-month period described in paragraph (2). The selection shall be announced by publication in the Federal Register.

(4) At the same time the Secretary announces the selection of markets under paragraph (3), the Secretary shall issue a request for proposals from cooperative tourism marketing programs to develop and implement tourism trade development programs applicable to the markets so selected. The Secretary shall provide financial assistance in accordance with section 2123a of this title to carry out proposals submitted under this subparagraph.<sup>1</sup> Such financial assistance

shall be provided on or before September 30 of the year in which the markets are selected under paragraph (3).

(5) During each twelve-month period described in paragraph (2), tourism trade development efforts shall be directed at the markets selected under paragraph (3).

(Pub. L. 87-63, title II, §202, formerly §3, June 29, 1961, 75 Stat. 130; Pub. L. 91-477, §§1, 2, Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1071, 1072; renumbered and amended Pub. L. 97-63, §3(c), (d), (e)(1), Oct. 16, 1981, 95 Stat. 1012, 1013; Pub. L. 102-372, §§4(n), 6(b), (c), 7, 8(b), Sept. 30, 1992, 106 Stat. 1174, 1176, 1178.)

AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (a)(5). Pub. L. 102-372, §6(b)(1), amended par. (5) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (5) read as follows: "upon the application of any State or political subdivision or combination thereof, or private or public nonprofit organization or association, may make grants for projects designed to carry out the purpose of this chapter if he finds that such projects will facilitate and encourage travel to any State or political subdivision or combination thereof by residents of foreign countries;"

Subsec. (a)(9). Pub. L. 102-372, §6(b)(2), substituted "the United States national tourism interest" for "United States travel and tourism interests".

Subsec. (a)(12). Pub. L. 102-372, §6(b)(3), inserted "and the use of other United States providers of travel products and services" before semicolon at end.

Subsec. (a)(15). Pub. L. 102-372, §4(n), added par. (15) and struck out former par. (15), which read as follows: "shall develop and submit annually to the Congress, within six weeks of transmittal to the Congress of the President's recommended budget for implementing this chapter, a detailed marketing plan to stimulate and encourage travel to the United States during the fiscal year for which such budget is submitted and include in the plan the estimated funding and personnel levels required to implement the plan and alternate means of funding activities under this chapter."

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 102-372, §§6(c)(1)-(3), 8(b), substituted "section 2123a of this title" for "paragraph (5) of subsection (a) of this section" after "available under" and after "assistance under", substituted "sources. Any recipient of financial assistance under section 2123a of this title shall provide matching funds (consisting of actual dollar expenditures on the program for which such financial assistance is provided) equal to at least 25 percent of such financial assistance" for "sources and in no event will the amount of any grant under paragraph (5) of subsection (a) of this section for any project exceed 50 per centum of the cost of such project", and substituted "administration of this subsection" for "administration of this paragraph".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 102-372, §6(c)(4), substituted "section 2123a of this title" for "paragraph (5) of subsection (a) of this section".

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 102-372, §7, added subsec. (e).

1981—Subsec. (a)(5). Pub. L. 97-63, §3(d)(1), transferred to subsec. (c) provisions that no financial assistance be made available unless the Secretary determines that matching funds will be available from State or other non-Federal sources, that grants may not exceed 50 per centum of project costs, and that the Secretary is authorized to establish policies, standards, criteria, and procedures and to prescribe appropriate and necessary rules and regulations.

Subsec. (a)(6). Pub. L. 97-63, §3(c), (d)(3), substituted "paragraph (5) of this subsection;" for "clause (5) of this subsection; and".

Subsec. (a)(7). Pub. L. 97-63, §3(c), (d)(2), substituted "foreign countries; and the Secretary may establish such policies, standards, criteria, and procedures as he may deem necessary or appropriate for the administra-

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be "paragraph."

tion of this paragraph;" for "foreign countries. The Secretary is authorized to establish such policies, standards, criteria, and procedures as he may deem necessary or appropriate for the administration of this clause."

Subsec. (a)(8) to (15). Pub. L. 97-63, §3(c), added pars. (8) to (15).

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 97-63, §3(d)(1), (3), substituted "paragraph (5)" for "clause (5)" in existing provisions, transferred from subsec. (a)(5) provisions that no financial assistance be made available unless the Secretary determines that matching funds will be available from State or other non-Federal sources, that grants may not exceed 50 per centum of project costs, and that the Secretary is authorized to establish policies, standards, criteria, and procedures and to prescribe appropriate and necessary rules and regulations, substituted references to "paragraph (5) of subsection (a) of this section" for references to "this clause" in provisions thus transferred, and substituted a period for a semicolon at end of the transferred provisions.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 97-63, §3(d)(3), substituted "paragraph (5)" for "clause (5)".

1970—Subsecs. (a)(5) to (7). Pub. L. 91-477, §1, added pars. (5) to (7).

Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 91-477, §2, added subsecs. (c) and (d).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1981 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 97-63 effective Oct. 1, 1981, see section 6 of Pub. L. 97-63, set out as a note under section 2121 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2123a, 2123d, 2124 of this title.

### § 2123a. Tourism marketing programs

#### (a) Financial assistance

The Secretary shall provide financial assistance to cooperative tourism marketing programs in accordance with this section.

#### (b) Requisite showing of applicants for assistance

(1) To be eligible for financial assistance under subsection (a) of this section, a cooperative tourism marketing program shall, at a minimum—

(A) involve the participation of—

- (i) two or more States;
- (ii) one or more States and one or more political subdivisions of States; or
- (iii) one or more States and one or more nonprofit organizations;

(B) be established for the purpose of increasing the number of foreign visitors to the region in which such States or local governments are located; and

(C) have a written regional tourism marketing plan which includes advertising, publication of promotional materials, or other promotional or market research activities designed to increase the number of foreign visitors to such region.

(2) Financial assistance may be provided under subsection (a) of this section if the applicant for the assistance demonstrates to the satisfaction of the Secretary that the assistance will be used for a purpose described in subsection (c) of this section and that—

(A) such cooperative tourism marketing program for which the financial assistance will be

provided will increase the travel of foreign visitors to the region for which the assistance is sought;

(B) such program will contribute to the economic well-being of such region;

(C) such region is developing or has developed a regional transportation system that will enhance travel to the facilities and attractions in such region; and

(D) such program will focus its efforts on the countries in the markets selected by the Secretary under section 2123(e)(3) of this title.

#### (c) Permitted uses of financial assistance

Financial assistance provided under subsection (a) of this section may be used for the purpose of—

(1) promoting or marketing to foreign visitors or potential foreign visitors the tourism and recreational opportunities in the region for which such financial assistance is sought;

(2) targeting foreign visitors to develop or enhance their interest in tourism and recreational opportunities in such region;

(3) encouraging the development by such cooperative tourism marketing program of regional strategies for international tourism promotion and marketing; or

(4) developing and implementing tourism trade development programs applicable to markets selected under section 2123(e)(3) of this title.

#### (d) Agreements with individuals and private profit and nonprofit businesses and organizations

In connection with financial assistance provided under subsection (a) of this section, a cooperative tourism marketing program may enter into agreements with individuals and private profit and nonprofit businesses and organizations who will assist in carrying out the purposes for which such financial assistance is provided. Such an agreement shall be disclosed in any application for financial assistance under subsection (a) of this section and such an application may be approved by the Secretary only if the Secretary finds that such agreement meets all applicable legal requirements and is consistent with the purposes of this chapter.

#### (e) Issuance of rules and guidelines

After notice and opportunity for public comment and within one hundred and eighty days after September 30, 1992, the Secretary shall issue rules and guidelines to carry out this section. Proposed rules and guidelines shall be issued within ninety days after September 30, 1992.

#### (f) Limitations on financial assistance

(1) The total amount of financial assistance that may be provided under subsection (a) of this section shall, in each of the fiscal years 1994, 1995, and 1996, be not less than 25 percent of the amount appropriated to the Secretary for such fiscal year under section 2126 of this title.

(2) Not more than 50 percent of the financial assistance provided under subsection (a) of this section for any fiscal year may be used for tourism trade development designed to promote travel and tourism in the United States generally without promotion of a particular area of

the United States. Cooperative tourism marketing programs receiving financial assistance under subsection (a) of this section shall pool 50 percent of their financial assistance for such general tourism trade development in each market selected by the Secretary under section 2123(e)(3) of this title. The Secretary shall provide technical assistance to recipients of such financial assistance and coordinate such efforts.

(Pub. L. 87-63, title II, §203, as added Pub. L. 102-372, §8(a), Sept. 30, 1992, 106 Stat. 1177.)

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 2123a, Pub. L. 87-63, title II, §203, formerly §5, June 29, 1961, 75 Stat. 130; renumbered title II, §203, and amended Pub. L. 97-63, §3(e), Oct. 16, 1981, 95 Stat. 1013, directed Secretary to submit annual reports to President and Congress on activities under this chapter, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 102-372, §8(a), Sept. 30, 1992, 106 Stat. 1177. Section was formerly classified to section 2125 of this title prior to its renumbering by Pub. L. 97-63.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2123, 2123d, 2124 of this title.

### § 2123b. Tourism trade barriers

For each calendar year beginning with calendar year 1994, the Secretary shall—

- (1) identify and analyze acts, policies, or practices of each foreign country that constitute significant barriers to, or distortions of, United States travel and tourism exports;
- (2) make an estimate of the trade-distorting impact on United States commerce of any act, policy, or practice identified under paragraph (1); and
- (3) make an estimate, if feasible, of the value of additional United States travel and tourism exports that would have been exported to each foreign country during such calendar year if each of such acts, policies, and practices of such country did not exist.

(Pub. L. 87-63, title II, §204, as added Pub. L. 102-372, §9, Sept. 30, 1992, 106 Stat. 1178.)

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 2123b, Pub. L. 87-63, title II, §204, as added Pub. L. 97-63, §3(f), Oct. 16, 1981, 95 Stat. 1013, related to a regional tourism promotional and marketing program, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 102-372, §8(a), Sept. 30, 1992, 106 Stat. 1177.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2123d of this title.

### § 2123c. Action to facilitate entry of foreign tourists

The Secretary shall, in coordination with appropriate Federal agencies, take appropriate action to ensure that foreign tourists are not unnecessarily delayed when entering the United States and to ensure that the international processing standard of the International Civil Aviation Organization is met.

(Pub. L. 87-63, title II, §205, as added Pub. L. 102-372, §10, Sept. 30, 1992, 106 Stat. 1178.)

### § 2123d. Performance of United States Travel and Tourism Administration

#### (a) Goals and measures of performance; annual report to Congress

Beginning October 1, 1994, and annually thereafter, the Secretary shall submit to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives the goals of the United States Travel and Tourism Administration for the applicable forthcoming fiscal year, including quantifiable measures on which such Administration's performance can be evaluated. Such goals shall include—

- (1) the number of written and telephone inquiries regarding the possibility of foreign travel to the United States expected to be generated by the financial assistance provided to cooperative tourism marketing programs under section 2123a of this title;
- (2) the number of tour packages for foreign visitors to the United States expected to be sold in connection with such financial assistance;
- (3) the number of tourists from countries in markets selected under section 2123(e)(3) of this title expected to visit the United States destinations being promoted in such countries in connection with such financial assistance; and
- (4) the actions recommended to eliminate acts, policies, and practices of foreign countries identified under section 2123b of this title that constitute significant barriers to or distortions of United States travel and tourism exports.

#### (b) Evaluation; annual report to Congress

By December 31, 1995, and annually thereafter, the Secretary shall submit to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives a report outlining the degree to which the goals set forth for the prior fiscal year have been attained. Such report shall include—

- (1) the number of written and telephone inquiries regarding the possibility of foreign travel to the United States actually received by the Secretary and by persons receiving financial assistance under section 2123a of this title;
- (2) the number of tour packages for foreign visitors to the United States actually sold in connection with such financial assistance;
- (3) the number of tourists from countries in markets selected under section 2123(e)(3) of this title that actually visited the United States destinations being promoted in such countries in connection with such financial assistance;
- (4) an evaluation of the effectiveness of such financial assistance; and
- (5) an evaluation of the effectiveness of any actions recommended under subsection (a)(4) of this section which were taken to eliminate acts, policies, and practices that constitute significant barriers to, or distortions of, United States travel and tourism exports.

**(c) Collection of information**

The Secretary shall collect from persons receiving financial assistance under section 2123a of this title such information as may be necessary to enable the Secretary to comply with subsections (a) and (b) of this section. The Secretary may condition the receipt of such financial assistance on the agreement of the recipient to provide such information to the Secretary at such times and in such manner and form as the Secretary deems appropriate.

(Pub. L. 87-63, title II, §206, as added Pub. L. 102-372, §11, Sept. 30, 1992, 106 Stat. 1179.)

## CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Energy and Commerce of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Commerce of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

## SUBCHAPTER III—ADMINISTRATION

**§ 2124. United States Travel and Tourism Administration****(a) Establishment; duties and responsibilities**

(1) There is established in the Department of Commerce a United States Travel and Tourism Administration which shall be headed by an Under Secretary of Commerce for Travel and Tourism who shall be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, and who shall report directly to the Secretary. All the duties and responsibilities of the Secretary under this chapter shall be exercised directly by the Secretary or by the Secretary through the Under Secretary of Commerce for Travel and Tourism.

(2) The Secretary shall designate a Deputy Under Secretary for Tourism Trade Development who shall be drawn from, and serve as a member of, the career service. The Deputy Under Secretary shall have responsibility for—

- (A) facilitating the interaction between industry and government concerning tourism trade development;
- (B) directing and managing field operations;
- (C) directing program evaluation research and industry statistical research;
- (D) developing an outreach program to those communities with underutilized tourism potential to assist them in development of strategies for expansion of tourism trade;
- (E) implementing the program to provide financial assistance under section 2123a of this title in support of non-Federal tourism trade development activities; and
- (F) performing such other functions as the Under Secretary may assign.

**(b) Number of foreign offices; amount of funds**

(1) The Secretary may not reduce the total number of foreign offices of the United States Travel and Tourism Administration or the number of employees assigned to the offices of the Administration in foreign countries to a number which is less than the total number of employees of the United States Travel Service assigned to offices of the Service in foreign countries in fiscal year 1979.

(2) In any fiscal year the amount of funds which shall be made available from appropria-

tions under this chapter for obligation for the activities of the offices of the United States Travel and Tourism Administration in foreign countries shall not be less than the amount obligated in fiscal year 1980 for the activities of the offices of the United States Travel Service in foreign countries.

**(c) Coordination**

The Under Secretary of Commerce for Travel and Tourism shall continue to seek the assistance of the United States and Foreign Commercial Service and shall continue to be available to assist the United States Travel and Tourism Administration at locations identified by the Under Secretary, in consultation with the Director General of the United States and Foreign Commercial Service, as necessary to assist the Administration's foreign offices in stimulating and encouraging travel to the United States by foreign residents and in carrying out other powers and duties of the Secretary specified in section 2123 of this title.

**(d) Limitation on certain expenditures**

The expenditures for personnel compensation, rental payments, communications, utilities, miscellaneous charges, and equipment shall not exceed—

- (1) in fiscal year 1993, 55 percent of the amount appropriated to the Secretary under section 2126 of this title;
- (2) in fiscal year 1994, 52.5 percent of the amount appropriated to the Secretary under section 2126 of this title; and
- (3) in fiscal year 1995 and in subsequent fiscal years, 50 percent of the amount appropriated to the Secretary under section 2126 of this title.

(Pub. L. 87-63, title III, §301, formerly §4, June 29, 1961, 75 Stat. 130; Pub. L. 88-426, title III, §305(29), Aug. 14, 1964, 78 Stat. 426; Pub. L. 91-477, §3(a), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1072; renumbered and amended Pub. L. 97-63, §4(a)(1)-(3), (b), (c)(2), Oct. 16, 1981, 95 Stat. 1014, 1015; Pub. L. 102-372, §§12-14, Sept. 30, 1992, 106 Stat. 1180.)

## AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 102-372, §12(1), (2), designated existing provisions as par. (1) and struck out at end “The Secretary shall designate an Assistant Secretary of Commerce for Tourism Marketing who shall be under the supervision of the Under Secretary of Commerce for Travel and Tourism. The Secretary shall delegate to the Assistant Secretary responsibility for the development and submission of the marketing plan required by section 2123(a)(15) of this title.”

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 102-372, §12(3), added par. (2).

Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 102-372, §§13, 14, added subsecs. (c) and (d).

1981—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 97-63, §4(a)(1)-(3), (b), designated existing provisions as subsec. (a), substituted “United States Travel and Tourism Administration” for “United States Travel Service” and “Under Secretary of Commerce for Travel and Tourism” for “Assistant Secretary of Commerce for Tourism” in first sentence, “Under Secretary of Commerce for Travel and Tourism” for “Assistant Secretary of Commerce for Tourism” in second sentence, “The Secretary shall designate an Assistant Secretary of Commerce for Tourism Marketing who shall be under the supervision of the Under Secretary of Commerce for Travel and Tourism” for “In addition, the Secretary shall designate at least one individual to serve as Deputy As-

sistant Secretary of Commerce for Tourism who shall be under the supervision of the Assistant Secretary of Commerce for Tourism” as third sentence, and inserted fourth sentence directing the Secretary to delegate to the Assistant Secretary responsibility for the development and submission of the marketing plan required by section 2123(a)(15) of this title.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 97-63, §4(b), added subsec. (b).

1970—Pub. L. 91-477 substituted provisions which authorized the Service to be headed by an Assistant Secretary of Commerce for Tourism for provisions which authorized the Service to be headed by a Director, authorized such Assistant Secretary to exercise the duties and responsibilities of the Secretary under this chapter, and inserted provisions which authorized the Secretary to designate a Deputy Assistant Secretary of Commerce for Tourism.

1964—Pub. L. 88-426 repealed provisions which prescribed the compensation of the Director.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1981 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 97-63 effective Oct. 1, 1981, see section 6 of Pub. L. 97-63, set out as a note under section 2121 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1964 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 88-426 effective on first day of first pay period which begins on or after July 1, 1964, except to the extent provided in section 501(c) of Pub. L. 88-426, see section 501 of Pub. L. 88-426.

#### REPORT ON FOREIGN OFFICES

Section 19 of Pub. L. 102-372 directed Secretary of Commerce, within one year after Sept. 30, 1992, to transmit to Congress a report on the offices of the United States Travel and Tourism Administration located in foreign countries and provided that at offices of the United States Travel and Tourism Administration located in foreign countries no new foreign national employees nor contract personnel could be hired, except for employees or contract personnel that directly replaced foreign national employees or contract personnel, and no new leases of office space, nor renewals of existing leases for longer than two years, could be executed, until six months after the report was received.

### § 2124a. Tourism Policy Council

#### (a) Establishment

In order to assure that the national interest in tourism is fully considered in Federal decision-making, there is established an interagency coordinating council to be known as the Tourism Policy Council (hereinafter in this section referred to as the “Council”).

#### (b) Membership; expenses; alternates

(1) The Council shall consist of—

(A) the Secretary of Commerce who shall serve as Chairman of the Council;

(B) the Under Secretary for Travel and Tourism who shall serve as the Vice Chairman of the Council and who shall act as Chairman of the Council in the absence of the Chairman;

(C) the Director of the Office of Management and Budget or the individual designated by the Director from the Office;

(D) an individual designated by the Secretary of Commerce from the International Trade Administration of the Department of Commerce;

(E) the Secretary of Energy or the individual designated by such Secretary from the Department of Energy;

(F) the Secretary of State or the individual designated by such Secretary from the Department of State;

(G) the Secretary of the Interior or the individual designated by such Secretary from the National Park Service or the Heritage Conservation and Recreation Service of the Department of the Interior;

(H) the Secretary of Agriculture;

(I) the Chairman of the Tennessee Valley Authority;

(J) the Commanding General of the Corps of Engineers of the Army, within the Department of Defense;

(K) the Administrator of the Small Business Administration;

(L) the Commissioner of the Immigration and Naturalization Service;

(M) the Chief Executive Officer of the National Railroad Passenger Corporation;

(N) the Commissioner of Customs;

(O) the Secretary of Labor or the individual designated by such Secretary from the Department of Labor; and

(P) the Secretary of Transportation or the individual designated by such Secretary from the Department of Transportation.

(2) Members of the Council shall serve without additional compensation, but shall be reimbursed for actual and necessary expenses, including travel expenses, incurred by them in carrying out the duties of the Council.

(3) Each member of the Council, other than the Vice Chairman, may designate an alternate, who shall serve as a member of the Council whenever the regular member is unable to attend a meeting of the Council or any committee of the Council. The designation by a member of the Council of an alternate under the preceding sentence shall be made for the duration of the member's term on the Council. Any such designated alternate shall be selected from individuals who exercise significant decisionmaking authority in the Federal agency involved and shall be authorized to make decisions on behalf of the member for whom he or she is serving.

#### (c) Outside participation; meetings

(1) Whenever the Council, or a committee of the Council, considers matters that affect the interests of Federal agencies that are not represented on the Council or the committee, the Chairman may invite the heads of such agencies, or their alternates, to participate in the deliberations of the Council or committee.

(2) The Council shall conduct its first meeting not later than ninety days after October 16, 1981. Thereafter the Council shall meet not less than four times each year.

#### (d) Powers and duties; administrative support

(1) The Council shall coordinate policies, programs, and issues relating to tourism, recreation, or national heritage resources involving Federal departments, agencies, or other entities. Among other things, the Council shall—

(A) coordinate the policies and programs of member agencies that have a significant effect on tourism, recreation, and national heritage preservation;

(B) develop areas of cooperative program activity;

(C) assist in resolving interagency program and policy conflicts; and

(D) seek and receive concerns and views of State and local governments and the Travel and Tourism Advisory Board with respect to Federal programs and policies deemed to conflict with the orderly growth and development of tourism.

(2) To enable the Council to carry out its functions—

(A) the Council may request directly from any Federal department or agency such personnel, information, services, or facilities, on a compensated or uncompensated basis, as he determines necessary to carry out the functions of the Council;

(B) each Federal department or agency shall furnish the Council with such information, services, and facilities as it may request to the extent permitted by law and within the limits of available funds; and

(C) Federal agencies and departments may, in their discretion, detail to temporary duty with the Council, such personnel as the Council may request for carrying out the functions of the Council, each such detail to be without loss of seniority, pay, or other employee status.

(3) The Administrator of the General Services Administration shall provide administrative support services for the Council on a reimbursable basis.

(4)(A) Every year, upon designation by the Secretary in accordance with subparagraph (B), up to three Federal departments and agencies represented on the Council shall each detail to the Council for that year one staff person and associated resources.

(B) In making the designation referred to in subparagraph (A), the Secretary shall designate a different group of agencies and departments each year and shall not redesignate any agency or department until all the other agencies and departments represented on the Council have been designated the same number of years.

**(e) Policy committees**

The Council shall establish such policy committees as it considers necessary and appropriate, each of which shall be comprised of any or all of the members of the Council and representatives from Federal departments, agencies, and instrumentalities not represented on the Council. Each such policy committee shall be designed—

(1) to monitor a specific area of Federal Government activity, such as transportation, energy and natural resources, economic development, or other such activities related to tourism; and

(2) to review and evaluate the relation of the policies and activities of the Federal Government in that specific area to tourism, recreation, and national heritage conservation in the United States.

**(f) Annual report to President and Congress**

The Council shall submit an annual report for the preceding fiscal year to the President for transmittal to Congress on or before the thirty-first day of December of each year. The report shall include—

(1) a comprehensive and detailed report of the activities and accomplishments of the Council and its policy committees;

(2) the results of Council efforts to coordinate the policies and programs of member agencies that have a significant effect on tourism, recreation, and national heritage preservation, resolve interagency conflicts, and develop areas of cooperative program activity;

(3) an analysis of problems referred to the Council by State and local governments, the tourism industry, the Secretary of Commerce, or any of the Council's policy committees along with a detailed statement of any actions taken or anticipated to be taken to resolve such problems; and

(4) such recommendations as the Council deems appropriate.

(Pub. L. 87-63, title III, §302, as added Pub. L. 97-63, §4(c)(2), Oct. 16, 1981, 95 Stat. 1015; amended Pub. L. 102-372, §15, Sept. 30, 1992, 106 Stat. 1181.)

AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (b)(1)(H) to (P). Pub. L. 102-372, §15(a), added subpars. (H) to (N) and redesignated former subpars. (H) and (I) as (O) and (P), respectively.

Subsec. (d)(4). Pub. L. 102-372, §15(b), added par. (4).

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1981, see section 6 of Pub. L. 97-63, set out as an Effective Date of 1981 Amendment note under section 2121 of this title.

**§ 2124b. Travel and Tourism Advisory Board**

**(a) Establishment; membership**

There is established the Travel and Tourism Advisory Board (hereinafter in this section referred to as the "Board") to be composed of fifteen members appointed by the Secretary. The members of the Board shall be appointed as follows:

(1) Not more than eight members of the Board shall be appointed from the same political party.

(2) The members of the Board shall be appointed from among citizens of the United States who are not regular full-time employees of the United States and shall be selected for appointment so as to provide as nearly as practicable a broad representation of different geographical regions within the United States and of the diverse and varied segments of the tourism industry.

(3) Twelve of the members shall be appointed from senior executive officers of organizations engaged in the travel and tourism industry. Of such members—

(A) at least one shall be a senior representative from a labor organization representing employees of the tourism industry;

(B) at least two shall be representatives of the States who are knowledgeable of tourism promotion; and

(C) at least one shall be a representative of a city who is knowledgeable of tourism promotion.

(4) Of the remaining three members of the Board—

(A) one member shall be a consumer advocate or ombudsman from the organized public interest community;

(B) one member shall be an economist, statistician, or accountant; and

(C) one member shall be an individual from the academic community who is knowledgeable in tourism, recreation, or national heritage conservation.

The Secretary shall serve as an ex officio member of the Board. The duration of the Board shall not be subject to the Federal Advisory Committee Act. A list of the members appointed to the Board shall be forwarded by the Secretary to the Senate Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation and the House Committee on Energy and Commerce.

**(b) Term of office**

The members of the Board shall be appointed for a term of office of three years, except that of the members first appointed—

- (1) four members shall be appointed for terms of one year, and
- (2) four members shall be appointed for terms of two years,

as designated by the Secretary at the time of appointment. Any member appointed to fill a vacancy occurring before the expiration of the term for which the member's predecessor was appointed shall be appointed only for the remainder of such term. A member may serve after the expiration of his term until his successor has taken office. Vacancies on the Board shall be filled in the same manner in which the original appointments were made. No member of the Board shall be eligible to serve in excess of six consecutive years or nine years in the aggregate.

**(c) Election of officers**

The Chairman and Vice Chairman and other appropriate officers of the Board shall be elected by and from members of the Board other than the Secretary.

**(d) Expenses**

The members of the Board shall receive no compensation for their services as such, but shall be allowed such necessary travel expenses and per diem as are authorized by section 5703 of title 5. The Secretary shall pay the reasonable and necessary expenses incurred by the Board in connection with the coordination of Board activities, announcement and reporting of meetings, and preparation of such reports as are required by subsection (f) of this section.

**(e) Meetings**

The Board shall meet at least semi-annually and shall hold such other meetings at the call of the Chairman, the Vice Chairman, or a majority of its members.

**(f) Functions and duties; annual report**

The Board shall advise the Secretary with respect to the implementation of this chapter. The Board shall prepare an annual report concerning its activities and include therein such recommendations as it deems appropriate with respect to the performance of the Secretary under this chapter and the operation and effectiveness of programs under this chapter. Each annual report shall cover a fiscal year and shall be submitted on or before the thirty-first day of December following the close of the fiscal year.

(Pub. L. 87-63, title III, §303, as added Pub. L. 97-63, §4(c)(2), Oct. 16, 1981, 95 Stat. 1017; amend-

ed Pub. L. 102-372, §16, Sept. 30, 1992, 106 Stat. 1181.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Federal Advisory Committee Act, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 92-463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 770, as amended, which is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 102-372, §16(a), substituted “two shall be representatives of the States who are” for “one shall be a representative of the States who is” in subpar. (B) and added subpar. (C).

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 102-372, §16(b), substituted “six consecutive years or nine years in the aggregate” for “two consecutive terms of three years each”.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 102-372, §16(c), struck out “and shall advise the Assistant Secretary for Tourism Marketing with respect to the preparation of the marketing plan under section 2123(a)(15) of this title” after “implementation of this chapter”.

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Energy and Commerce of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Commerce of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1981, see section 6 of Pub. L. 97-63, set out as an Effective Date of 1981 Amendment note under section 2121 of this title.

**§ 2124c. Rural Tourism Development Foundation**

**(a) Establishment of Foundation**

In order to assist in the development and promotion of rural tourism, there is established a charitable and nonprofit corporation to be known as the Rural Tourism Development Foundation (hereafter in this section referred to as the “Foundation”).

**(b) Functions**

The functions of the Foundation shall be the planning, development, and implementation of projects and programs which have the potential to increase travel and tourism export revenues by attracting foreign visitors to rural America. Initially, such projects and programs shall include—

(1) participation in the development and distribution of educational and promotional materials pertaining to both private and public attractions located in rural areas of the United States, including Federal parks and recreational lands, which can be used by foreign visitors;

(2) development of educational resources to assist in private and public rural tourism development; and

(3) participation in Federal agency outreach efforts to make such resources available to private enterprises, State and local governments, and other persons and entities interested in rural tourism development.

**(c) Board of Directors**

**(1) Composition**

(A) The Foundation shall have a Board of Directors (hereafter in this section referred to as the “Board”) that—



(i) during its first two years shall consist of nine voting members; and

(ii) thereafter shall consist of those nine members plus up to six additional voting members as determined in accordance with the bylaws of the Foundation.

(B)(i) The Under Secretary of Commerce for Travel and Tourism shall, within six months after September 30, 1992, appoint the initial nine voting members of the Board and thereafter shall appoint the successors of each of three such members, as provided by such bylaws.

(ii) The voting members of the Board, other than those referred to in clause (i), shall be appointed in accordance with procedures established by such bylaws.

(C) The voting members of the Board shall be individuals who are not Federal officers or employees and who have demonstrated an interest in rural tourism development. Of such voting members, at least a majority shall have experience and expertise in tourism trade promotion, at least one shall have experience and expertise in resource conservation, at least one shall have experience and expertise in financial administration in a fiduciary capacity, at least one shall be a representative of an Indian tribe who has experience and expertise in rural tourism on an Indian reservation, at least one shall represent a regional or national organization or association with a major interest in rural tourism development or promotion, and at least one shall be a representative of a State who is responsible for tourism promotion.

(D) Voting members of the Board shall each serve a term of six years, except that—

(i) initial terms shall be staggered to assure continuity of administration;

(ii) if a person is appointed to fill a vacancy occurring prior to the expiration of the term of the person's predecessor, that person shall serve only for the remainder of the predecessor's term; and

(iii) any such appointment to fill a vacancy shall be made within sixty days after the vacancy occurs.

### **(2) Ex-officio members**

The Under Secretary of Commerce for Travel and Tourism and representatives of Federal agencies with responsibility for Federal recreational sites in rural areas (including the National Park Service, Bureau of Land Management, Forest Service, Corps of Engineers, Bureau of Indian Affairs, Tennessee Valley Authority, and such other Federal agencies as the Board determines appropriate) shall be nonvoting ex-officio members of the Board.

### **(3) Chair**

The Chairman and Vice Chairman of the Board shall be elected by the voting members of the Board for terms of two years.

### **(4) Meetings**

The Board shall meet at the call of the Chairman and there shall be at least two meetings each year. A majority of the voting members of the Board serving at any one time shall constitute a quorum for the transaction

of business. The Foundation shall have an official seal, which shall be judicially noticed. Voting membership on the Board shall not be deemed to be an office within the meaning of the laws of the United States.

### **(d) Compensation and expenses**

No compensation shall be paid to the members of the Board for their services as members, but they may be reimbursed for actual and necessary traveling and subsistence expenses incurred by them in the performance of their duties as such members out of Foundation funds available to the Board for such purposes.

### **(e) Acceptance of gifts, devises, and bequests**

#### **(1) In general**

The Foundation is authorized to accept, receive, solicit, hold, administer, and use any gifts, devises, or bequests, either absolutely or in trust, of real or personal property or any income therefrom or other interest therein for the benefit of or in connection with rural tourism, except that the Foundation may not accept any such gift, devise, or bequest which entails any expenditure other than from the resources of the Foundation. A gift, devise, or bequest may be accepted by the Foundation even though it is encumbered, restricted, or subject to beneficial interests of private persons if any current or future interest therein is for the benefit of rural tourism.

#### **(2) Indians**

A gift, devise, or bequest accepted by the Foundation for the benefit of or in connection with rural tourism on Indian reservations, pursuant to section 451 of title 25, shall be maintained in a separate accounting for the benefit of Indian tribes in the development of tourism on Indian reservations.

### **(f) Investments**

Except as otherwise required by the instrument of transfer, the Foundation may sell, lease, invest, reinvest, retain, or otherwise dispose of or deal with any property or income thereof as the Board may from time to time determine. The Foundation shall not engage in any business, nor shall the Foundation make any investment that may not lawfully be made by a trust company in the District of Columbia, except that the Foundation may make any investment authorized by the instrument of transfer and may retain any property accepted by the Foundation.

### **(g) Perpetual succession; liability of Board members**

The Foundation shall have perpetual succession, with all the usual powers and obligations of a corporation acting as a trustee, including the power to sue and to be sued in its own name, but the members of the Board shall not be personally liable, except for malfeasance.

### **(h) Contractual power**

The Foundation shall have the power to enter into contracts, to execute instruments, and generally to do any and all lawful acts necessary or appropriate to its purposes.

**(i) Administration****(1) In general**

In carrying out the provisions of this section, the Board may adopt bylaws, rules, and regulations necessary for the administration of its functions and may hire officers and employees and contract for any other necessary services. Such officers and employees shall be appointed without regard to the provisions of title 5 governing appointments in the competitive service and may be paid without regard to the provisions of chapters 51 and 53 of such title relating to classification and General Schedule pay rates.

**(2) Services**

The Secretary of Commerce may accept the voluntary and uncompensated services of the Foundation, the Board, and the officers and employees of the Foundation in the performance of the functions authorized under this section, without regard to section 1342 of title 31 or the civil service classification laws, rules, or regulations.

**(3) Construction**

Neither an officer or employee hired under paragraph (1) nor an individual who provides services under paragraph (2) shall be considered a Federal employee for any purpose other than for purposes of chapter 81 of title 5, relating to compensation for work injuries, and chapter 171 of title 28, relating to tort claims.

**(j) Exemption from taxes; contributions**

The Foundation and any income or property received or owned by it, and all transactions relating to such income or property, shall be exempt from all Federal, State, and local taxation with respect thereto. The Foundation may, however, in the discretion of the Board, contribute toward the costs of local government in amounts not in excess of those which it would be obligated to pay such government if it were not exempt from taxation by virtue of this subsection or by virtue of its being a charitable and nonprofit corporation and may agree so to contribute with respect to property transferred to it and the income derived therefrom if such agreement is a condition of the transfer. Contributions, gifts, and other transfers made to or for the use of the Foundation shall be regarded as contributions, gifts, or transfers to or for the use of the United States.

**(k) Liability of United States**

The United States shall not be liable for any debts, defaults, acts, or omissions of the Foundation.

**(l) Annual report**

The Foundation shall, as soon as practicable after the end of each fiscal year, transmit to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives an annual report of its proceedings and activities, including a full and complete statement of its receipts, expenditures, and investments.

**(m) Definitions**

As used in this section—

(1) the term “Indian reservation” has the meaning given the term “reservation” in section 1452(d) of title 25;

(2) the term “Indian tribe” has the meaning given that term in section 450b(e) of title 25;

(3) the term “local government” has the meaning given that term in section 3371(2) of title 5; and

(4) the term “rural tourism” has the meaning given that term by the Secretary of Commerce and shall include activities related to travel and tourism that occur on Federal recreational sites, on Indian reservations, and in the territories, possessions, and commonwealths of the United States.

(Pub. L. 102-372, § 4, Sept. 30, 1992, 106 Stat. 1171.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The provisions of title 5 governing appointments in the competitive service, referred to in subsec. (i)(1), are classified to section 3301 et seq. of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

The civil service classification laws, referred to in subsec. (i)(2), probably should refer to civil service and classification laws. The civil service laws are set forth in Title 5. See, particularly, section 3301 et seq. of Title 5. The classification laws are set forth in chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of Title 5.

## CODIFICATION

Section is comprised of section 4 of Pub. L. 102-372. Subsec. (n) of section 4 of Pub. L. 102-372 amended section 2123(a) of this title.

Section was enacted as part of the Tourism Policy and Export Promotion Act of 1992, and not as part of the International Travel Act of 1961 which comprises this chapter.

## CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Energy and Commerce of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Commerce of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2123 of this title.

**§ 2125. Transferred**

## CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 87-63, title II, § 203, formerly § 5, June 29, 1961, 75 Stat. 130, which related to annual reports to the President and Congress, was renumbered by Pub. L. 97-63, § 3(e), Oct. 16, 1981, 95 Stat. 1013, transferred to section 2123a of this title, and subsequently repealed by Pub. L. 102-372, § 8(a), Sept. 30, 1992, 106 Stat. 1177.

**§ 2126. Authorization of appropriations**

For the purpose of carrying out this chapter there is authorized to be appropriated an amount not to exceed \$8,600,000 for the fiscal year ending September 30, 1982, not to exceed \$21,000,000 for fiscal year 1993, not to exceed \$22,500,000 for fiscal year 1994, not to exceed \$24,000,000 for fiscal year 1995, and not to exceed \$26,000,000 for fiscal year 1996. Funds appropriated under this section may be expended by the Secretary without regard to sections 501 and 3702 of title 44. Funds appropriated under this section for the printing of travel promotional materials shall remain available for 2 fiscal years.

(Pub. L. 87-63, title III, § 304, formerly § 6, June 29, 1961, 75 Stat. 130; Pub. L. 91-477, § 4, Oct. 21,

1970, 84 Stat. 1072; Pub. L. 93-193, §1(a), Dec. 19, 1973, 87 Stat. 765; Pub. L. 94-55, §1, July 9, 1975, 89 Stat. 262; Pub. L. 96-85, §1, Oct. 10, 1979, 93 Stat. 655; renumbered and amended Pub. L. 97-63, §5(a), Oct. 16, 1981, 95 Stat. 1018; Pub. L. 102-372, §17, Sept. 30, 1992, 106 Stat. 1181.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1992—Pub. L. 102-372 inserted “, not to exceed \$21,000,000 for fiscal year 1993, not to exceed \$22,500,000 for fiscal year 1994, not to exceed \$24,000,000 for fiscal year 1995, and not to exceed \$26,000,000 for fiscal year 1996” before period at end of first sentence and substituted “Funds appropriated under this section may be expended by the Secretary without regard to sections 501 and 3702 of title 44. Funds appropriated under this section for the printing of travel promotional materials shall remain available for 2 fiscal years” for “Funds appropriated under this section shall be available without regard to the provisions of section 501 and 3702 of title 44. Funds appropriated under this section for printing of travel promotion materials are authorized to be made available for two fiscal years”.

1981—Pub. L. 97-63 substituted provisions authorizing appropriations of not to exceed \$8,600,000 for the fiscal year ending Sept. 30, 1982, for provisions that had authorized appropriations of not to exceed \$15,000,000 for the fiscal year ending June 30, 1974, \$20,000,000 for the fiscal year ending June 30, 1975, \$25,000,000 for the fiscal year ending June 30, 1976, \$5,000,000 for the transition period of July 1, 1976, through September 30, 1976, \$25,000,000 for the fiscal year ending September 30, 1977, \$30,000,000 for the fiscal year ending September 30, 1978, \$30,000,000 for the fiscal year ending September 30, 1979, and \$8,000,000 for the fiscal year ending September 30, 1980.

1979—Pub. L. 96-85 inserted provision authorizing an appropriation of an aggregate amount not in excess of \$8,000,000 for the fiscal year ending Sept. 30, 1980.

1975—Pub. L. 94-55 inserted provisions authorizing the appropriations of \$5,000,000 for the transition period of July 1, 1976 through Sept. 30, 1976, \$25,000,000 for the fiscal year ending Sept. 30, 1977, \$30,000,000 for the fiscal year ending Sept. 30, 1978, and \$30,000,000 for the fiscal year ending Sept. 30, 1979.

1973—Pub. L. 93-193 substituted provisions authorizing to be appropriated an aggregate amount not to exceed \$15,000,000 for the fiscal year ending June 30, 1974, \$20,000,000 for the fiscal year ending June 30, 1975, and \$25,000,000 for the fiscal year ending June 30, 1976, for provisions authorizing to be appropriated not to exceed \$15,000,000 for each of the fiscal years ending June 30, 1971, June 30, 1972, and June 30, 1973.

1970—Pub. L. 91-477 substituted provisions authorizing to be appropriated not to exceed \$15,000,000 for each of the fiscal years ending June 30, 1971, June 30, 1972, and June 30, 1973, for provisions authorizing to be appropriated not to exceed \$3,000,000 for the fiscal year ending June 30, 1962, and not to exceed \$4,700,000 for each fiscal year thereafter, and inserted provisions regarding availability of funds appropriated under this section.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1981 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 97-63 effective Oct. 1, 1981, see section 6 of Pub. L. 97-63, set out as a note under section 2121 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2123a, 2124 of this title.

### § 2127. Definitions

As used in this chapter, the term “United States” and the term “State” are defined to include the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands,

Guam, American Samoa, and the Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands.

(Pub. L. 87-63, title III, §305, formerly §7, as added Pub. L. 91-477, §5, Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1072, and renumbered Pub. L. 97-63, §5(b), Oct. 16, 1981, 95 Stat. 1018.)

#### TERMINATION OF TRUST TERRITORY OF THE PACIFIC ISLANDS

For termination of Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands, see note set out preceding section 1681 of Title 48, Territories and Insular Possessions.

### § 2128. United States Travel and Tourism Administration Facilitation Fee

#### (a) Collection

To the extent not inconsistent with treaties or international agreements entered into by the United States, the Secretary, on a calendar quarterly basis beginning January 1, 1991, shall charge and collect from each commercial airline and passenger cruise ship line transporting passengers to the United States, a United States Travel and Tourism Administration Facilitation Fee, in an amount determined under subsection (b) of this section.

#### (b) Amount

(1) During the period from January 1, 1991, through December 31, 1991, the Secretary shall charge each commercial airline and passenger cruise ship line an amount equal to one dollar multiplied by the number of aliens described in section 1101(a)(15)(B) of title 8 arriving at any port within the United States aboard a commercial aircraft or cruise ship of such airline or passenger cruise ship line during that calendar quarter.

(2) Commencing in 1991, the Secretary shall each year determine and publish the amount of the fee described in subsection (a) of this section for the 12-month period commencing on January 1 of the succeeding calendar year, as follows:

(A) The Secretary (in consultation with the Attorney General and the Secretary of State) shall estimate the number of aliens described in section 1101(a)(15)(B) of title 8 expected to enter the United States during such succeeding calendar year, based upon the number of such aliens who entered the United States during the previous calendar year (as reported or estimated by the Attorney General) and such other available information as the Secretary deems reliable.

(B) The Secretary shall divide the amount appropriated to the United States Travel and Tourism Administration for the fiscal year during which such determination is made by the number of aliens described in subparagraph (A) expected by the Secretary to enter the United States during the calendar year described in such subparagraph, as estimated by the Secretary under such subparagraph, and shall round the result up to the nearest quarter-dollar.

(C) The Secretary shall publish in the Federal Register the estimate required by subparagraph (A), together with a description of the information supporting such estimate, and the amount of the fee determined under subparagraph (B) which shall be applicable during

the 12-month period commencing on January 1 of the succeeding calendar year.

(D) For each calendar quarter beginning after December 31, 1991, the Secretary shall charge each commercial airline and passenger cruise ship line an amount equal to the fee amount determined under subparagraph (B) and applicable under subparagraph (C) multiplied by the number of aliens described in section 1101(a)(15)(B) of title 8 arriving at any port within the United States aboard a commercial aircraft or cruise ship of such airline or passenger cruise ship line during that calendar quarter.

(3) Neither the estimate of the Secretary under paragraph (2)(A) nor the amount determined by the Secretary under paragraph (2)(B) shall be subject to judicial review.

**(c) Payment**

Each commercial airline and passenger cruise ship line shall remit the fee charged by the Secretary under subsection (b) of this section, in United States dollars, no later than 31 days after the close of the calendar quarter of the arrival of the aliens on which the calculation of the fee is based.

**(d) Disposition of payments**

The Secretary shall deposit the fees received pursuant to subsection (c) of this section in the general fund of the Treasury as offsetting receipts and ascribed to the travel and tourism activities of the Secretary.

**(e) Aggregate amounts collected**

Beginning on October 1, 1992, the aggregate amounts collected for the fee charged under this section shall at least equal the appropriations made for the travel and tourism activities of the Secretary under this chapter, but at no time shall the aggregate of amounts collected for any fiscal year under this section exceed 105 percent of the aggregate of appropriations made for such fiscal year for activities to be funded by such fees.

**(f) Rules and regulations**

The Secretary may prescribe such rules and regulations as may be necessary to carry out the provisions of this section.

(Pub. L. 87-63, title III, §306, as added Pub. L. 101-508, title X, §10301(a), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1388-395.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 2128, Pub. L. 87-63, §9, as added Pub. L. 96-85, §2, Oct. 10, 1979, 93 Stat. 655, related to reduction in number of employees of United States Travel Service in District of Columbia offices, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 97-63, §5(b), Oct. 16, 1981, 95 Stat. 1018, effective Oct. 1, 1981.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2129 of this title.

**§ 2129. Civil penalties for nonpayment of Travel and Tourism Administration Facilitation Fee**

**(a) Amount**

Any commercial airline or commercial cruise ship line which is found by the Secretary or the Secretary's designee, after notice and an oppor-

tunity for a hearing, to have failed to pay to the Secretary, by the due date, the fee charged by the Secretary under section 2128(a) of this title, may be ordered by the Secretary or the Secretary's designee to pay any fee amount outstanding plus interest on any late payment and, in addition, to pay a civil penalty not to exceed \$5,000 for each day payment to the Secretary is not made or was made late. The amount of such civil penalty shall be assessed by the Secretary or the Secretary's designee by written notice. In determining the amount of such penalty, the Secretary or the Secretary's designee shall take into account the nature, circumstances, extent, and gravity of the violation, and, with respect to the violator, the degree of culpability, and history of prior offenses, ability to pay, and such other matters as justice may require. Each day a payment to the Secretary required by this chapter is late shall constitute a separate violation of this chapter.

**(b) Civil action for recovery of penalty**

If any commercial airline or cruise ship line fails to pay as ordered by the Secretary or the Secretary's designee, the Attorney General may, upon request of the Secretary, bring a civil action in any appropriate United States district court for the recovery of the amount ordered to be paid.

**(c) Compromise, modification, or remittance of civil penalty**

Before requesting the Attorney General to bring a civil action, the Secretary may compromise, modify, or remit, with or without conditions, any civil penalty which is subject to imposition or which has been imposed under subsection (a) of this section.

**(d) Subpoenas**

For the purpose of conducting any hearing under subsection (a) of this section, the Secretary or the Secretary's designee may issue subpoenas for the attendance and testimony of witnesses and the production of relevant papers, books, and documents, and may administer oaths. Witnesses summoned shall be paid the same fees and mileage that are paid to witnesses in the courts of the United States. In case of contempt or refusal to obey a subpoena served upon any person pursuant to this subsection, the United States district court for any district in which such person is found, resides, or transacts business, upon application by the United States and after notice to such person, shall have jurisdiction to issue an order requiring such person to appear and give testimony before the Secretary or the Secretary's designee or to appear and produce papers, books, and documents before the Secretary or the Secretary's designee, or both, and any failure to obey such order of the court may be punished by such court as a contempt thereof.

(Pub. L. 87-63, title III, §307, as added Pub. L. 101-508, title X, §10301(b), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1388-396.)

| Sec.     | Text   | Sec.            | Text  |
|----------|--|-----------------|---|
|          | <b>CHAPTER 32—FOREIGN ASSISTANCE</b>   |                 |   |
|          | <b>SUBCHAPTER I—INTERNATIONAL DEVELOPMENT</b>  |                 |   |
|          | <b>PART I—DECLARATION OF POLICY; DEVELOPMENT ASSISTANCE AUTHORIZATIONS</b>   |                 |   |
| 2151.    | Congressional findings and declaration of policy.  |                 | (c) Administrative coordination of planning and implementation of programs.   |
|          | (a) United States development cooperation policy.  |                 | (d) Assistance for programs of technical cooperation and development, research, etc.  |
|          | (b) Coordination of development-related activities.  |                 | (e) Authorization of appropriations.  |
| 2151-1.  | Development assistance policy.   | 2151e.          | (f) Financing cooperative projects among United States, Israel, and developing countries.   |
|          | (a) Principal purpose of bilateral development assistance.   | 2151f.          | Appropriate technology.   |
|          | (b) Form of assistance; principles governing assistance.   |                 | Private sector revolving fund.  |
|          | (c) Worldwide cooperative effort to overcome aspects of absolute poverty.  |                 | (a) Establishment.  |
| 2151a.   | Agricultural development in rural areas.   |                 | (b) Funding.  |
|          | (a) Authorization to President to furnish assistance; appropriations.  |                 | (c) Authorized uses; determination of small business enterprise; maximum amounts available; interest rate.                                |
|          | (b) Use of assistance primarily in aid of rural poor; multilateral infrastructure projects; forestry projects.   |                 | (d) Remittance of excess assets.  |
|          | (c) Increased agricultural production in least developed countries.  |                 | (e) Fee for carrying out activities.  |
|          | (d) Coordination with population planning and health programs.   |                 | (f) Transfer of unobligated funds upon termination.   |
|          | (e) Use of local currency proceeds from sales of commodities.  | 2151g.          | (g) Inclusion of proposed projects in annual congressional presentation documents.  |
|          | (f) National food security policies and programs; bilateral and multilateral assistance.   | 2151h.          | (h) Annual report to Congress.  |
|          | (g) International Fund for Agricultural Development; participation and contributions; availability of appropriations.                                  | 2151i.          | (i) Loan guarantees.  |
| 2151a-1. | Agricultural research.   | 2151j.          | Transfer of funds.  |
| 2151b.   | Population planning and health programs.   | 2151k.          | Cost-sharing.   |
|          | (a) Congressional declaration of policy.   |                 | Development and use of cooperatives.  |
|          | (b) Assistance for voluntary population planning.  |                 | Repealed.   |
|          | (c) Assistance for health programs; special health needs of children and mothers; Child Survival Fund; promotion of immunization and oral rehydration. | 2151l, 2151m.   | Integrating women into national economies; report.  |
|          | (d) Administration of assistance.  |                 | (a) Particular programs, projects, and activities.  |
|          | (e) Research and analysis.   |                 | (b) Assistance to encourage participation and integration of women; prohibition against separate assistance program for women.            |
|          | (f) Prohibition on use of funds for performance or research respecting abortions or involuntary sterilization.   | 2151n, 2151o.   | (c) Funds for United Nations Decade for Women.  |
|          | (g) Authorization of appropriations.   | 2151n.          | Repealed.   |
| 2151c.   | Education and human resources development.   |                 | Human rights and development assistance.  |
|          | (a) General authority.   |                 | (a) Violations barring assistance; assistance for needy people.   |
|          | (b) Scope of assistance programs.  |                 | (b) Information to Congressional committees for realization of assistance for needy people; concurrent resolution terminating assistance. |
| 2151d.   | Development of indigenous energy resources.  |                 | (b) Protection of children from exploitation.   |
|          | (a) Congressional statement of findings.   |                 | (c) Factors considered.   |
|          | (b) General assistance authority; cooperative programs in energy production and conservation; program goals.   | 2151n-1, 2151o. | (d) Report to Speaker of House and Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate.  |
|          |  | 2151p.          | (e) Promotion of civil and political rights.  |
|          |  |                 | Repealed.   |
|          |  |                 | Environmental and natural resources.  |
|          |  |                 | (a) Congressional statement of findings.  |
|          |  |                 | (b) Assistance authority and emphasis.  |
|          |  |                 | (c) Implementation considerations applicable to programs and projects.  |
|          |  | 2151p-1.        | Tropical forests.   |
|          |  |                 | (a) Importance of forests and tree cover.   |
|          |  |                 | (b) Priorities.   |
|          |  |                 | (c) Assistance to developing countries.   |

|          |  |               |  |
|----------|--|---------------|--|
| Sec.     |  | Sec.          |  |
|          | (d) PVOs and other nongovernmental organizations.  |               | (e) Waiver of time limitations on aid.   |
|          | (e) Country analysis requirements.   | 2151w.        | Project and program evaluations.   |
|          | (f) Annual report.   | 2151x.        | Development and illicit narcotics production.  |
| 2151q.   | Endangered species.  |               | (a) Congressional statement of findings.   |
|          | (a) Congressional findings and purposes.   |               | (b) Program planning priorities; resource utilization.   |
|          | (b) Remedial measures.   |               | (c) Administrative requirements.   |
|          | (c) Funding level.   | 2151x-1.      | Assistance for agricultural and industrial alternatives to narcotics production.   |
|          | (d) Country analysis requirements.   |               | (a) Waiver of restrictions.  |
|          | (e) Local involvement.   |               | (b) Effective date.  |
|          | (f) PVOs and other nongovernmental organizations.  | 2151x-2.      | Assistance in furtherance of narcotics control objectives of United States.  |
|          | (g) Actions by AID.  |               | (a) Waiver of certain restrictions.  |
|          | (h) Annual reports.  |               | (b) Description of restrictions waived.  |
| 2151r.   | Sahel development program; planning.   |               | (c) "Economic assistance" defined.   |
|          | (a) Congressional support.   | 2151y.        | Accelerated loan repayments; annual review of countries with bilateral concessional loan balances; priority of determinations respecting negotiations with countries having balances; criteria for determinations. |
|          | (b) Presidential authorization.  |               | Targeted assistance.   |
|          | (c) Presidential guidelines.   | 2151z.        | (a) Determination of target populations and strengthening United States assistance.  |
| 2151s.   | Repealed.  |               | (b) Ultimate beneficiaries of activities.  |
| 2151t.   | Development assistance authority.  |               |  |
|          | (a) Authority of President to furnish assistance.  |               |  |
|          | (b) Authority of President to make loans; terms and conditions.  |               |  |
|          | (c) Dollar receipts from loans to be paid into Treasury.   |               |  |
|          | (d) Assistance to research and educational institutions in United States; limitation on amounts.   |               |  |
|          | (e) Development Loan Committee; establishment; duties; appointment of officers.  |               |  |
| 2151t-1. | Establishment of program.  |               |  |
|          | (a) In general.  |               |  |
|          | (b) Participation of other agencies.   |               |  |
| 2151u.   | Private and voluntary organizations and cooperatives in overseas development.  | 2161 to 2165. | Repealed.  |
|          | (a) Congressional finding of importance of participation by private and voluntary organizations.   | 2166.         | Regional development in Africa.  |
|          | (b) Payment of transportation charges on shipments by American National Red Cross and United States voluntary agencies.                            | 2167, 2168.   | Repealed.  |
|          | (c) Reimbursement for transportation charges.  | 2169.         | Multilateral, regional, and bilateral programs.  |
|          | (d) Arrangements with receiving country for free entry of shipments and for availability of local currency to defray transportation costs.         |               | (a) Multilateral programs.   |
|          | (e) Continuation of support for programs in countries antedating prohibitions on assistance; national interest considerations; report to Congress. |               | (b) Regional programs.   |
|          | (f) Funds for private and voluntary organizations.   |               | (c) Federal funds to multilateral lending institutions and multilateral organizations for loans to foreign countries; increase.  |
|          | (g) Additional and future funding for private and voluntary organizations.   |               | (d) Transfer of funds; use of international or multilateral lending organizations.   |
|          | (h) Promotion of democratic cooperatives.  |               |  |
| 2151v.   | Aid to relatively least developed countries.   | 2171 to 2173. | Repealed.  |
|          | (a) Characterization of least developed countries.   | 2174.         | American schools, libraries, and hospital centers abroad.  |
|          | (b) Assistance on grant basis.   |               | (a) Assistance for schools and libraries.  |
|          | (c) Waiver of principal and interest on prior liability.   |               | (b) Assistance for hospital centers.   |
|          | (d) Waiver of requirement of contribution.   |               | (c) Authorization of appropriations.   |
|          |  |               | (d) Pediatric plastic and reconstructive surgery centers.  |
|          |  | 2175 to 2178. | Repealed.  |
|          |  | 2179.         | Prototype desalting plant.   |
|          |  |               | (a) Assistance in development.   |
|          |  |               | (b) Terms and conditions.  |
|          |  |               | (c) Contracts.   |
|          |  |               | (d) Patents.   |
|          |  |               | (e) Federal agencies.  |
|          |  |               | (f) Authorization of appropriations.   |
|          |  |               | (g) Restrictions on appropriations.  |

## PART II—OTHER PROGRAMS

## SUBPART I—MULTILATERAL AND REGIONAL DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMS

|               |   |
|---------------|---|
| 2161 to 2165. | Repealed.   |
| 2166.         | Regional development in Africa.   |
| 2167, 2168.   | Repealed.   |
| 2169.         | Multilateral, regional, and bilateral programs.   |
|               | (a) Multilateral programs.  |
|               | (b) Regional programs.  |
|               | (c) Federal funds to multilateral lending institutions and multilateral organizations for loans to foreign countries; increase. |
|               | (d) Transfer of funds; use of international or multilateral lending organizations.  |

## SUBPART II—AMERICAN SCHOOLS AND HOSPITALS ABROAD; PROTOTYPE DESALTING PLANTS

|               |   |
|---------------|---|
| 2171 to 2173. | Repealed.   |
| 2174.         | American schools, libraries, and hospital centers abroad. |
|               | (a) Assistance for schools and libraries.                 |
|               | (b) Assistance for hospital centers.                      |
|               | (c) Authorization of appropriations.                      |
|               | (d) Pediatric plastic and reconstructive surgery centers. |

|               |                                      |
|---------------|--------------------------------------|
| 2175 to 2178. | Repealed.                            |
| 2179.         | Prototype desalting plant.           |
|               | (a) Assistance in development.       |
|               | (b) Terms and conditions.            |
|               | (c) Contracts.                       |
|               | (d) Patents.                         |
|               | (e) Federal agencies.                |
|               | (f) Authorization of appropriations. |
|               | (g) Restrictions on appropriations.  |

|                      |  |               |   |
|----------------------|--|---------------|---|
| Sec.<br>2180, 2180a. | Repealed.  | Sec.<br>2185. | Trade credit insurance program for Poland.  |
|                      | SUBPART III—SHELTER AND OTHER CREDIT GUARANTY PROGRAMS   |               | (a) General authority.  |
| 2181.                | Policy.  |               | (b) Guarantees available only for short-term guarantees and insurance.                    |
| 2182.                | Authorization for worldwide shelter guaranties.  |               | (c) Agreement on criteria and procedures.   |
|                      | (a) Authorization to issue guaranties to eligible investors.   |               | (d) Reserve fund.   |
|                      | (b) Emphasis on certain activities.  |               | (e) Discharge of liabilities.   |
|                      | (c) Use of solar energy technology.  |               | (f) Appropriations action required.   |
|                      | (k) Minimum annual program levels.   |               | (g) Limitation on outstanding commitments.  |
| 2182a.               | Agricultural and productive credit and self-help community development programs.   |               | (h) Biannual reports to Congress.   |
|                      | (a) Financing pilot programs; scope.   |               | (i) Administrative and technical assistance.  |
|                      | (b) Guaranties; percentage limitation.   |               | (j) Fees and premiums.  |
|                      | (c) Total and individual amount of guaranties.   |               | (k) Restrictions not applicable.  |
|                      | (d) Inter-American Foundation consultations.   |               | (l) Expiration of authority.  |
|                      | (e) Guaranty reserve.  |               | (m) Definitions.  |
|                      | (f) Administrative and operating expenses; funds.  | 2186.         | Loan guaranties to Israel program.  |
|                      | (g) Transfer of Overseas Private Investment Corporation's obligations and assets.  |               | (a) In general.   |
|                      | (h) Termination of authority.  |               | (b) Fiscal year levels.   |
|                      | (i) Excess foreign currencies; use.  |               | (c) Use of guaranties.  |
| 2183.                | General provisions.  |               | (d) Limitation on guaranty amount.  |
|                      | (a) Fees; determination by President; reduction.   |               | (e) Fees.   |
|                      | (b) Accumulated and existing fees; expenditure of fees; revolving fund account; investments; use of investment income.   |               | (f) Authority to suspend.   |
|                      | (c) Priorities of funds for guaranty payments.   |               | (g) Procedures for suspension or termination.   |
|                      | (d) Guaranties as obligations backed by full faith and credit of United States.  |               | (h) Economic context.   |
|                      | (e) Authorization of appropriations; borrowing authority.  |               | (i) Consultations.  |
|                      | (f) Agency determination of maximum rate of interest.  |               | (j) Goods and services.   |
|                      | (g) Guaranties under prior acts.   |               | (k) Reports.  |
|                      | (h) Fraud or misrepresentation.  |               | (l) Applicability of certain sections.  |
|                      | (i) Repealed.  |               | (m) Terms and conditions.   |
|                      | (j) Guaranties for housing projects; percentage requirement for families with income below median income; face value and average face value fiscal year limitations; face amount for Israel and Egypt. |               | SUBPART IV—OVERSEAS PRIVATE INVESTMENT CORPORATION  |
| 2184.                | Trade credit insurance program for Central America.  | 2191.         | Congressional statement of purpose; creation and functions of Corporation.                |
|                      | (a) Guaranties to Export-Import Bank; financial transactions with private sector in Central American countries.  | 2191a.        | Additional requirements.  |
|                      | (b) Extent of guaranties; agreements; reserve fund.  |               | (a) Worker rights.  |
|                      | (c) Deadline for guaranty commitments.   |               | (b) Public hearings.  |
|                      | (d) Availability of appropriated funds.  | 2192.         | Capital of the Corporation.   |
|                      | (e) Guaranty commitments limit.  | 2193.         | Organization and management.  |
|                      | (f) Credits to reserve fund.   |               | (a) Structure.  |
|                      | (g) Reports to Congress.   |               | (b) Board of directors.   |
|                      | (h) Administrative and technical assistance.   |               | (c) President.  |
|                      |  |               | (d) Officers and staff.   |
|                      |  | 2194.         | Investment insurance and other programs.  |
|                      |  |               | (a) Investment insurance.   |
|                      |  |               | (b) Investment guaranties.  |
|                      |  |               | (c) Direct investment.  |
|                      |  |               | (d) Investment encouragement.   |
|                      |  |               | (e) Special projects and programs.  |
|                      |  |               | (f) Additional insurance functions.   |
|                      |  |               | (g) Pilot equity finance program.   |
|                      |  | 2194a.        | Contract authority of Corporation; specific authorization in appropriation Acts required. |
|                      |  | 2194b.        | Enhancing private political risk insurance industry.                                      |
|                      |  |               | (a) Cooperative programs.   |
|                      |  |               | (b) Advisory group.   |
|                      |  | 2195.         | Issuing authority, direct investment authority and reserves.                              |
|                      |  |               | (a) Issuing authority.  |
|                      |  |               | (b) Repealed.   |
|                      |  |               | (c) Insurance Reserve; Guaranty Reserve.  |

- |       |   |                |   |
|-------|---|----------------|---|
| Sec.  |   | Sec.           |   |
|       | (d) Priority of funds used to discharge liabilities.  | 2200a.         | Reports to Congress.  |
|       | (e) Reserves from predecessor guaranty authority.   |                | (a) Annual report.  |
|       | (f) Authorization of appropriations; issuance, etc., of obligations by Corporation for purchase by Secretary of the Treasury.   |                | (b) Effect of all projects on employment in United States to be included in annual report.                      |
| 2196. | Income and revenues.  |                | (c) Repealed.   |
| 2197. | General provisions relating to insurance, guaranty, financing, and reinsurance programs.  |                | (d) Maintenance of records.   |
|       | (a) Scope.  |                | (e) Assessment of cooperative political risk insurance program.   |
|       | (b) Protection of interest.   | 2200b.         | (f) Information not required to be made available to public excluded from reports.                              |
|       | (c) Guaranties as obligations backed by full faith and credit of United States.   |                | Prohibition on noncompetitive awarding of insurance contracts on OPIC supported exports.                        |
|       | (d) Fees.   |                | (a) Requirement for certification.  |
|       | (e) Maximum term of obligation.   |                | (b) Reports by United States Trade Representative.  |
|       | (f) Limitations on amounts.   |                | (c) Definitions.  |
|       | (g) Fraud or misrepresentation.   |                | SUBPART V—DISADVANTAGED CHILDREN IN ASIA  |
|       | (h) Limits of obligation.   | 2201.          | Assistance to disadvantaged children in Asia.   |
|       | (i) Claims settlement.  |                | (a) Congressional findings.   |
|       | (j) Presumption of compliance.  |                | (b) Authority of President.   |
|       | (k) Balance of payments.  |                | SUBPART VI—ALLIANCE FOR PROGRESS  |
|       | (l) Convictions under Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977; prohibition on payments for losses resulting from unlawful activities; suspension from eligibility of receipt of financial support.                                    | 2211 to 2213.  | Repealed.   |
|       | (m) Notification of countries of environmental restrictions on certain activities.  |                | SUBPART VII—EVALUATION OF PROGRAMS  |
|       | (n) Penalties for fraud.  | 2216.          | Repealed.   |
|       | (o) Use of local currencies.  |                | SUBPART VIII—SOUTHEAST ASIA MULTILATERAL AND REGIONAL PROGRAMS  |
| 2198. | Definitions.  | 2217 to 2217b. | Repealed.   |
| 2199. | General provisions and powers.  |                | SUBPART IX—UTILIZATION OF DEMOCRATIC INSTITUTIONS IN DEVELOPMENT  |
|       | (a) Place of residence.   | 2218.          | Utilization of democratic institutions in development.  |
|       | (b) Transfer of prior obligations, etc.; administration prior to transfer.  |                | (a) Popular participation through encouragement of democratic institutions.                                     |
|       | (c) Audits of the Corporation.  |                | (b) Human and intellectual resources; self-government through civic education and training in requisite skills. |
|       | (d) Powers of Corporation.  |                | (c) Political, social, and related obstacles to development; democratic social and political trends.            |
|       | (e) Reviews, investigations, and inspections by Inspector General of Agency for International Development.  |                | (d) Implementation of objectives through application of experience gained from program evaluation.              |
|       | (f) Programs for Yugoslavia, Poland, Hungary, Romania and the People's Republic of China; national interest.  |                | (e) Inservice training programs.  |
|       | (g) Environmental impact assessments.   |                | SUBPART X—PROGRAMS RELATING TO POPULATION GROWTH AND FAMILY PLANNING  |
|       | (h) Preparation, maintenance, and contents of development impact profile for investment projects; development of criteria for evaluating projects.  | 2219, 2219a.   | Repealed.   |
|       | (i) Observance of and respect for human rights and fundamental freedoms as considerations for conduct of assistance programs, etc.; provisions applicable for determinations; exceptions.   |                | SUBPART XI—FOOD PRODUCTION TARGETS AND REPORTS  |
|       | (j) Exemption from taxation.  | 2220.          | Repealed.   |
|       | (k) Publication of policy guidelines.   |                | SUBPART XII—FAMINE PREVENTION AND FREEDOM FROM HUNGER   |
| 2200. | Small business development in less developed friendly countries or areas; encouragement by other Federal departments, etc., of broadened participation by United States small business cooperatives and investors; project funding. | 2220a.         | General provisions.   |
|       |   |                | (a) Congressional objectives and findings.  |
|       |   |                | (b) Congressional objectives and declaration for collation of components to increase world food production.     |
|       |   |                | (c) University involvement, participation, and cooperation.   |





|         |  |  |  |
|---------|--|--|--|
| Sec.    |  | Sec.   |  |
| 2286.   | (c) Prohibition against acceptance of title or interest in land as condition on debt exchange.<br>Pilot program for sub-Saharan Africa.<br>(a) List of areas of severely degraded national resources or of biological or ecological importance.<br>(b) Assessment of list; agreement for future use of areas.<br>(c) Grants for purchase of discounted commercial debt on open market; retention of interest by grantee. | 2291h.<br>2291i.<br>2291j.   | Reporting requirements.<br>(a) International narcotics control strategy report.<br>(b) Annual reports on assistance.<br>Repealed.<br>Annual certification procedures.<br>(a) Withholding of bilateral assistance and opposition to multilateral development assistance.<br>(b) Certification procedures.<br>(c) Licit opium producing countries.<br>(d) Congressional review.<br>(e) Denial of assistance for countries decertified.<br>(f) Recertification.<br>(g) Senate procedures.<br>(h) Determining major drug-transit and major illicit drug producing countries.   |
|         | PART VIII—INTERNATIONAL NARCOTICS CONTROL  |  |  |
| 2291.   | Policy, general authorities, coordination, foreign police actions, definitions, and other provisions.<br>(a) Policy and general authorities.<br>(b) Coordination of all United States antinarcotics assistance to foreign countries.<br>(c) Participation in foreign police actions.<br>(d) Use of herbicides for aerial eradication.<br>(e) Definitions.  | 2291k.   | Repealed.  |
|         | 2291-1 to 2291-3. Repealed.  |  | PART IX—INTERNATIONAL DISASTER ASSISTANCE  |
| 2291-4. | Official immunity for authorized employees and agents of United States and foreign countries engaged in interdiction of aircraft used in illicit drug trafficking.<br>(a) Employees and agents of foreign countries.<br>(b) Employees and agents of United States.<br>(c) Definitions.   | 2292.<br>2292a.<br>2292a-1.<br>2292b.<br>2292c.<br>2292d, 2292e.<br>2292f. | General provisions.<br>(a) Congressional policy.<br>(b) General authority.<br>(c) Specific direction.<br>Authorization of appropriations.<br>(a) Fiscal year authorization.<br>(b) Subsequent appropriations for reimbursement of additional fiscal year obligations charged against appropriation account.<br>Appropriated funds; Presidential reports to Committees on Appropriations of the Senate and the House.<br>Disaster assistance coordination through a Special Coordinator for International Disaster Assistance; Presidential appointment and duties.<br>Authorization of appropriations for disaster relief and emergency recovery needs in Pakistan and Nicaragua.<br>Repealed or Transferred.<br>Cyprus: relief and rehabilitation; terms and conditions; authorization of appropriations; section 2292 policy and general authority applicable. |
| 2291a.  | Authorization of appropriations.<br>(a) Fiscal year authorization; availability of funds.<br>(b) Procurement of weapons and ammunition.<br>(c) Contribution by recipient country.<br>(d) Administrative assistance.<br>(e) Advance notification of transfer of seized assets.  | 2292g.<br>2292h.<br>2292i.   | Repealed.<br>Italy: relief, rehabilitation and reconstruction assistance.<br>Lebanon: relief and rehabilitation.<br>(a) General authority.<br>(b) Authorization of appropriations.<br>(c) Section 2292 policy and general authority applicable.<br>(d) Obligations charged to appropriations.  |
| 2291b.  | Prohibition on use of foreign assistance for reimbursements for drug crop eradications.  | 2292j.   | Romania: relief and rehabilitation.<br>(a) Authorization of assistance.<br>(b) Authorization of appropriations.<br>(c) Policies and general authority.<br>(d) Obligations charged against appropriations.<br>(e) Repealed.<br>(f) Human rights.  |
| 2291c.  | Requirements relating to aircraft and other equipment.<br>(a) Retention of title to aircraft.<br>(b) Permissible uses of aircraft and other equipment.<br>(c) Reports.   | 2292k.<br>2292l.   | Turkey: relief, rehabilitation, and reconstruction.<br>Africa: rehabilitation and resettlement.<br>(a) Congressional policy; general authority.  |
| 2291d.  | Records of aircraft use.<br>(a) Requirement to maintain records.<br>(b) Congressional access to records.   |  |  |
| 2291e.  | Reallocation of funds withheld from countries which fail to take adequate steps to halt illicit drug production or trafficking.  |  |  |
| 2291f.  | Prohibition on assistance to drug traffickers.<br>(a) Prohibition.<br>(b) Regulations.<br>(c) Congressional review of regulations.   |  |  |
| 2291g.  | Limitations on acquisition of real property and construction of facilities.<br>(a) Acquisition of real property.<br>(b) Construction of facilities.  |  |  |

|        |  |        |  |
|--------|--|--------|--|
| Sec.   | (b) Authorization of appropriations.   | Sec.   | 2294. Authorizations of appropriations for Development Fund for Africa.  |
|        | (c) Provisions of section 2292 of this title applicable to this section.   |        | PART XI—SUPPORT FOR ECONOMIC AND DEMOCRATIC DEVELOPMENT OF THE INDEPENDENT STATES OF THE FORMER SOVIET UNION   |
| 2292m. | Special Caribbean hurricane relief assistance.   | 2295.  | Assistance for the independent states.   |
| 2292n. | Cambodia: disaster relief assistance.  | 2295a. | Criteria for assistance to governments of the independent states.  |
|        | (a) Congressional recognition and statement of purpose; authority of President; scope of assistance.   |        | (a) In general.  |
|        | (b) Assistance through international agencies and private voluntary organizations.   |        | (b) Ineligibility for assistance.  |
|        | (c) Assistance procedures; monitoring of deliveries.   | 2295b. | Authorities relating to assistance and other provisions.   |
|        | (d) Authorization of appropriations; charges for obligations incurred under other appropriations or accounts; authority for transfer of funds; agricultural commodity assistance priorities. |        | (a) Assistance through governments and nongovernmental organizations.  |
|        | (e) Section 2292 policies and general authorities applicable.  |        | (b) Technical and managerial assistance.   |
| 2292o. | Assistance for displaced persons in Central America.   |        | (c) Enterprise funds.  |
|        | (a) Nature and scope of assistance.  |        | (d) Cooperative development and research projects.   |
|        | (b) Authorization of appropriations.   |        | (e) Administration of justice programs.  |
|        | (c) Applicable policies and authorities.   |        | (f) Use of economic support funds.   |
| 2292p. | Lebanon: emergency relief, rehabilitation, and reconstruction assistance.  | 2295c. | Authorization of appropriations.   |
|        | (a) Congressional policy and authorization.  |        | (a) In general.  |
|        | (b) Authorization of appropriations.   |        | (b) Operating expenses.  |
|        | (c) Policies and general authority.  |        | PART XII—ENTERPRISE FOR THE AMERICAS INITIATIVE  |
| 2292q. | African famine assistance.   | 2296.  | Repealed.  |
|        | (a) Authorization of assistance.   |        | SUBCHAPTER II—MILITARY ASSISTANCE AND SALES  |
|        | (b) Uses of funds.   |        | PART I—DECLARATION OF POLICY   |
|        | (c) Authorization of appropriations.   | 2301.  | Congressional statement of policy.   |
|        | (d) Policies and authorities to be applied.  | 2302.  | Utilization of defense articles and defense services.  |
|        |  | 2303.  | Excess defense articles.   |
|        |  | 2304.  | Human rights and security assistance.  |
|        |  |        | (a) Observance of human rights as principal goal of foreign policy; implementation requirements.   |
|        |  |        | (b) Report by Secretary of State on practices of proposed recipient countries; considerations.   |
|        |  |        | (c) Congressional request for information; information required; 30-day period; failure to supply information; termination or restriction of assistance. |
|        |  |        | (d) Definitions.   |
|        |  |        | (e) Removal of prohibition on assistance.  |
|        |  |        | (f) Allocations concerned with performance record of recipient countries without contravention of other provisions.                                      |
|        |  |        | (g) Report to Congress on use of certain authorities relating to human rights conditions.  |
|        |  |        | PART II—MILITARY ASSISTANCE  |
|        |  | 2311.  | General authority.   |
|        |  |        | (a) Defense articles and services; noncombatant personnel; transfer of funds.  |
|        |  |        | PART X—DEVELOPMENT FUND FOR AFRICA   |
| 2293.  | Long-term development assistance for sub-Saharan Africa.   |        |  |
|        | (a) Findings.  |        |  |
|        | (b) Authority to furnish assistance.   |        |  |
|        | (c) Purpose of assistance.   |        |  |
|        | (d) Application of development assistance general authorities and policies.  |        |  |
|        | (e) Private and voluntary organizations.   |        |  |
|        | (f) Local involvement in project implementation.   |        |  |
|        | (g) Participation of African women.  |        |  |
|        | (h) Types of assistance.   |        |  |
|        | (i) Critical sectoral priorities.  |        |  |
|        | (j) Minimum levels of assistance for certain critical sectors.   |        |  |
|        | (k) Effective use of assistance.   |        |  |
|        | (l) Promotion of regional integration.   |        |  |
|        | (m) Donor coordination mechanism.  |        |  |
|        | (n) Relation to other authorities.   |        |  |
|        | (o) Support for SADCC projects.  |        |  |

|                 |  |               |  |
|-----------------|--|---------------|--|
| Sec.            |  | Sec.          |  |
|                 | (b) Terms and conditions.<br>(c) Appropriation charges; exceptions.  |               | (e) Direction and supervision of assigned personnel.<br>(f) Presidential directive respecting purchase by foreign country of United States-made military equipment.  |
| 2312.           | Authorization of appropriations.<br>(a) Authorization and availability of amounts.<br>(b) Programing and budgeting procedures.   | 2321j.        | Modernization of defense capabilities of countries of NATO's southern flank.<br>(a) Authority to transfer excess defense articles.<br>(b) Limitations on transfers.<br>(c) Notification to committees of Congress.<br>(d) Waiver of requirement for reimbursement of DOD expenses.<br>(e) Definition.<br>(f) Duration of authority.  |
| 2313.           | Transferred.   |               |  |
| 2314.           | Furnishing of defense articles or related training or other defense service on grant basis.<br>(a) Conditions of eligibility.<br>(b) Limitation on amount; exceptions.<br>(c) Reduction and termination of grants to countries able to maintain adequate military forces without undue economic strain.<br>(d) Termination of assistance; report of violation by President; conditions for reinstatement.<br>(e) Consent by President to transfer.<br>(f) Disposition of defense articles furnished on a grant basis; net proceeds to be paid over to the United States.<br>(g) Discrimination on basis of race, religion, national origin, or sex prohibited. | 2321k.        | Modernization of counternarcotics capabilities of certain countries.<br>(a) Authority to transfer excess defense articles.<br>(b) Purpose.<br>(c) Uses of excess defense articles.<br>(d) Role of the Secretary of State.<br>(e) Dollar limitation.<br>(f) Conditions on transfers.<br>(g) Terms of transfers.<br>(h) Waiver of requirement for reimbursement of DOD expenses.<br>(i) Notification to Congress.<br>(j) Limitation on use of other authorities to transfer excess defense articles.<br>(k) Excess Coast Guard property. |
| 2314a to 2317.  | Repealed or Transferred.   |               |  |
| 2318.           | Special authority.<br>(a) Unforeseen emergency; national interest; determinations and reports to Congress; limitation of defense articles, defense services, and military education and training furnished.<br>(b) Notification and information to Congress of assistance furnished.<br>(c) Authorization of appropriations for reimbursement of applicable funds.   | 2321l.        | Natural resources and wildlife management.<br>(a) Authority to transfer nonlethal excess defense articles and small arms.<br>(b) Limitation on transfers.<br>(c) Transportation.<br>(d) Waiver of requirements for reimbursement of DOD expenses.<br>(e) Notification to committees of Congress.   |
| 2319 to 2321a.  | Repealed.  |               |  |
| 2321b.          | Excess defense article.<br>(a) to (c) Repealed.<br>(d) Reports to Congress.  | 2321m.        | Additional authorities relating to modernization of military capabilities.<br>(a) Authority to transfer excess defense articles.<br>(b) Limitations on transfers.<br>(c) Notification to Congress.<br>(d) Waiver of requirement for reimbursement of DOD expenses.<br>(e) Annual report.<br>(f) Transportation and related costs.  |
| 2321c.          | Definitions.   |               |  |
| 2321d.          | Considerations in furnishing military assistance.  |               |  |
| 2321e to 2321g. | Repealed.  |               |  |
| 2321h.          | Stockpiling of defense articles for foreign countries.<br>(a) Transfer of defense articles.<br>(b) Fiscal year limits on new stockpiles or additions to existing stockpiles located in foreign countries.<br>(c) Location of stockpiles.<br>(d) Transferred articles not to be considered excess articles in determining value.  | 2321n.        | Transfers of excess defense articles for international peacekeeping operations.<br>(a) General authority.<br>(b) Conditionality of authority.<br>(c) Limitations on transfers.<br>(d) Notification to Congress.<br>(e) Transportation and related costs.<br>(f) Waiver of requirement for reimbursement of DOD expenses.   |
| 2321i.          | Overseas management of assistance and sales programs.<br>(a) Assignment of military personnel for performance of enumerated functions.<br>(b) Furnishing of advisory and training assistance.<br>(c) Number of personnel assigned; waiver; procedures applicable.<br>(d) Costs.  | 2322.         | Transferred.   |
|                 |  |               | PART III—FOREIGN MILITARY SALES  |
|                 |  | 2341 to 2343. | Repealed.  |
|                 |  | 2344.         | Reimbursements.<br>(a) Separate fund account; transfers to such account.   |

|                 |  |   |   |
|-----------------|--|---|---|
| Sec.            |  | Sec.  |   |
|                 | (b) Termination of account; special account for discharge of Federal liabilities and obligations; general fund for excess moneys.  | 2349aa-2.   | Specific authorities and limitations.<br>(a) Services and commodities; reimbursement.<br>(b) Services and commodities furnished by agency of United States Government; advance payment.<br>(c) Consultation in development and implementation of assistance.<br>(d) Location for training and advice; law enforcement personnel training; availability of items on Munition List and services, personnel, etc., involved in collection of intelligence.<br>(e) Information exchange activities.<br>(f) Personnel compensation or benefits.  |
| 2345.           | Repealed.  |   |   |
|                 | PART IV—ECONOMIC SUPPORT FUND  |   |   |
| 2346.           | Authority.<br>(a) Policy requirements for assistance.<br>(b) Responsibility for policy decisions and justifications.<br>(c) Detailed justification for uses and purposes of funds.<br>(d) Funds for commodity import programs or other program assistance.<br>(e) Availability of funds. |   |   |
| 2346a.          | Authorizations of appropriations.<br>(a) Recipients and purposes of funds.<br>(b) Availability of amounts.   | 2349aa-3.<br>2349aa-4.<br>2349aa-5.<br>2349aa-6.<br>2349aa-7. | Reports to Congress.<br>Authorization of appropriations.<br>Administrative authorities.<br>Repealed.<br>Coordination of all United States terrorism-related assistance to foreign countries.<br>(a) Responsibility.<br>(b) Reports.<br>(c) Rule of construction.  |
| 2346b.          | Emergency assistance.  |   |   |
| 2346c.          | Administration of justice.<br>(a) Authorization of assistance; purposes.<br>(b) Scope of assistance.<br>(c) Availability of funds.<br>(d) Obligation of funds.<br>(e) Participation of Defense personnel in training prohibited; availability of funds; expiration of authority.         | 2349aa-8.   | Prohibition on imports from and exports to Libya.<br>(a) Prohibition on imports.<br>(b) Prohibition on exports.<br>(c) "United States" defined.   |
| 2346d to 2346i. | Repealed or Transferred.   |   |   |
|                 | PART V—INTERNATIONAL MILITARY EDUCATION AND TRAINING   | 2349aa-9.   | Ban on importing goods and services from countries supporting terrorism.<br>(a) Authority.<br>(b) Consultation.<br>(c) Reports.<br>(d) "United States" defined.   |
| 2347.           | General authority.   |   |   |
| 2347a.          | Authorization of appropriations.   |   |   |
| 2347b.          | Congressional declaration of purpose.  |   |   |
| 2347c.          | Exchange training; reciprocity agreement.  |   |   |
| 2347d.          | Training in maritime skills.   |   |   |
|                 | PART VI—PEACEKEEPING OPERATIONS  |   |   |
| 2348.           | General authorization.   |   |   |
| 2348a.          | Authorization of appropriations.<br>(a) Fiscal years 1986 and 1987.<br>(b) Availability of funds.<br>(c) Emergency transfer of funds.<br>(d) Reimbursement of applicable appropriation, fund, or account.  | 2351.   | Encouragement of free enterprise and private participation.<br>(a) Policy of United States.<br>(b) Action by President to facilitate participation to maximum extent.<br>(c) International Private Investment Advisory Council on Foreign Aid; establishment; composition; selection of members by Director; duration of service; Chairman; duties of Council; compensation; travel and other expenses; funds for payment of expenses of Council.<br>(d) Engineering and professional services of United States firms.<br>(e) Contracts on basis of competitive selection procedures. |
| 2348b.          | Repealed.  |   |   |
| 2348c.          | Administrative authorities.  |   |   |
|                 | PART VII—AIR BASE CONSTRUCTION IN ISRAEL   |   |   |
| 2349.           | General authority.   |   |   |
| 2349a.          | Authorization and utilization of funds.<br>(a) Authorization of appropriation.<br>(b) Presidential authority to incur obligations and enter into contracts.<br>(c) Crediting of funds to proper appropriation account.   |   |   |
| 2349b.          | Waiver authorities.<br>(a) Efficient and timely completion of authorized construction.<br>(b) Use of funds to pay for personal services abroad.  | 2352.   | Small business.<br>(a) Assistance for participation in furnishing of commodities, defense articles, and services.<br>(b) Office of Small Business.<br>(c) Information with respect to certain purchases by Department of Defense.   |
|                 | PART VIII—ANTITERRORISM ASSISTANCE   |   |   |
| 2349aa.         | General authority.   |   |   |
| 2349aa-1.       | Purposes.  |   |   |

- |                        |  |             |  |
|------------------------|--|-------------|--|
| Sec.<br>2353.<br>2354. | Shipping on United States vessels.<br>Procurement.   | Sec.        | (b) Plans for water or related land resource construction projects; computation of benefits and costs.   |
|                        | (a) Limitations on procurement outside United States.  |             | (c) Contracts for construction outside United States; competitive basis.   |
|                        | (b) Purchases in bulk.   |             | (d) Engineering, financial, and other plans.   |
|                        | (c) Agricultural commodities or products thereof available for disposition under Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954.                    |             | (e) Certification of country capability to maintain and utilize projects as prerequisite to assistance for capital projects exceeding cost limitations.  |
|                        | (d) Marine insurance.  | 2362.       | Use of foreign currencies.   |
|                        | (e) Parity for domestic commodities prior to use of funds outside United States.   |             | (a) Currencies received in payment for non-military assistance; foreign obligations.   |
|                        | (f) Commodity eligibility.   |             | (b) United States operations abroad; excess foreign currencies.  |
|                        | (g) Construction or engineering services; applicability to advanced developing country.  |             | (c) Voluntary family planning programs; limitation.  |
| 2355.                  | Retention and use of certain items and funds.  |             | (d) Reciprocal release of dollar value equivalents.  |
|                        | (a) Commodities and defense articles; disposal to prevent spoilage or wastage or to conserve usefulness; funds realized from disposal or transfer.             | 2363.       | Accounting, valuation, reporting, and administration of foreign currencies.  |
|                        | (b) Commodities transferred as repayment of assistance.  |             | (a) Responsibility of Secretary of the Treasury; regulations.  |
|                        | (c) Funds realized as result of illegal transactions.  |             | (b) Establishment of exchange rates.   |
|                        | (d) Funds realized from sale, transfer, or disposal of returned defense articles.  |             | (c) Repealed.  |
| 2356.                  | Patents and technical information.   |             | (d) Interest income on foreign currency proceeds; regulations; waiver; report to Congress.   |
|                        | (a) Practice of invention or disclosure of information; suits against United States for reasonable compensation; jurisdiction; limitation of action; defenses. | 2364.       | Special authorities.   |
|                        | (b) Settlement of claims.  |             | (a) Furnishing of assistance and arms export sales, credits, and guaranties upon determination and notification of Congress of importance and vitality of such action to security interests and national security interests of United States; policy justification; fiscal year limitations; transfers between accounts. |
|                        | (c) Drug products manufactured outside the United States.  |             | (b) United States obligations in West Germany.   |
| 2357.                  | Furnishing of services and commodities.  |             | (c) Certification by President of inadvisability to specify nature of use of funds; reports to Congress.   |
|                        | (a) Advance-of-funds or reimbursement basis.   | 2365.       | Contract authority.  |
|                        | (b) Agency contracts with individuals to perform services.   | 2366.       | Availability of funds.   |
|                        | (c) Excess property.   | 2367.       | Termination of assistance; availability of funds for winding up programs; participant training.  |
|                        | (d) Transfer of Government-owned excess property to enhance environmental protection in foreign countries.   | 2368, 2369. | Repealed.  |
| 2358.                  | Foreign and domestic excess property.  | 2370.       | Prohibitions against furnishing assistance.  |
|                        | (a) Advance acquisition of property; special account for payment of costs; limitation; use of property.  |             | (a) Cuba; embargo on all trade.  |
|                        | (b) Transfer of domestic excess property.  |             | (b) Repealed.  |
| 2359.                  | Special accounts.  |             | (c) Indebtedness of foreign country to United States citizen or person.  |
|                        | (a) Establishment by recipient countries; deposits; availability and utilization.  |             | (d) Productive enterprises competing with United States enterprise; conditions on assistance; import controls; waiver of restriction by President.   |
|                        | (b) Disposition of unencumbered balances.  |             |  |
| 2360.                  | Transfer of funds between accounts.  |             |  |
|                        | (a) Necessity of transfer; limitations.  |             |  |
|                        | (b) Augmentation of other appropriations.  |             |  |
|                        | (c) Military and development assistance purposes.  |             |  |
| 2361.                  | Completion of plans and cost estimates.  |             |  |
|                        | (a) Restriction on agreements or grants.   |             |  |

| Sec.   |  | Sec.   |   |
|--------|--|--------|---|
|        | (e) Nationalization, expropriation or seizure of property of United States citizens, or taxation or other exaction having same effect; failure to compensate or to provide relief from taxes, exactions, or conditions; report on full value of property by Foreign Claims Settlement Commission; act of state doctrine. |        | (a) Prohibition.<br>(b) Publication of determinations.<br>(c) Rescission.<br>(d) Waiver.  |
|        | (f) Prohibition against assistance to Communist countries; conditions for waiver of restriction by President; enumeration of Communist countries; removal from application of provisions; preconditions.   | 2372.  | Repealed.   |
|        | (g) Use of assistance funds to compensate owners for expropriated or nationalized property; waiver for land reform programs.   | 2372a. | Renewal, reissuance, etc., of export licenses to or for Argentina.  |
|        | (h) Regulations and procedures to insure aid is not used contrary to the best interests of the United States.  | 2373.  | Eastern Mediterranean policy requirements.<br>(a) Congressional declaration and statement of findings.<br>(b) Governing principles.<br>(c) Review of policy; report to Congress.<br>(d) Certification by President to Congress of assistance to Greece and Turkey.<br>(e) Arms sales agreements to prohibit transfer to Cyprus.                                 |
|        | (i) Repealed.  | 2374.  | Prohibition on assistance to Afghanistan.<br>(a) Prohibition; conditions for resumption of assistance.<br>(b) Substantially changed circumstances.  |
|        | (j) Damage or destruction by mob action of United States property; termination of assistance.  | 2375.  | Assistance to Pakistan.<br>(a) Congressional policy, findings, and goals.<br>(b) Reaffirmation of 1959 bilateral agreement.<br>(c) Availability; defensive aspects of assistance.<br>(d) Waiver of limitations respecting nuclear transfers.<br>(e) Nuclear non-proliferation conditions on assistance.   |
|        | (k) Maximum amount of assistance, including military assistance to individual countries without approval of or presentation to Congress.   | 2376.  | Nuclear non-proliferation policy in South Asia.<br>(a) Findings.<br>(b) Policy.<br>(c) Report on progress toward regional non-proliferation.  |
|        | (l) Institution of investment guaranty program.  |        |   |
|        | (m), (n) Repealed.   |        |   |
|        | (o) Exclusion from assistance of countries seizing or imposing penalties or sanctions against United States fishing vessels.   |        |   |
|        | (p) Repealed.  |        |   |
|        | (q) Defaults in principal or interest payments on loans; meeting obligations under loans; notice to Congressional committees.  |        |   |
|        | (r) Liability for repayment of principal or interest on loans outstanding after September 19, 1966.  | 2381.  | Exercise of functions.<br>(a) Delegation by President; rules and regulations; utilization of goods and services from private enterprise, and facilities and resources of Federal agencies when not competitive with private enterprise.<br>(b) Eligibility of suppliers; debarment period; causes for debarment; conditions for reinstatement; periodic review. |
|        | (s) Restraint of arms races and proliferation of sophisticated weapons.  | 2381a. | Strengthened management practices.<br>(a) Declaration of beliefs.<br>(b) Management system; establishment; scope.   |
|        | (t) Diplomatic relations; severance, resumption, and negotiation of agreements.  | 2382.  | Coordination with foreign policy.<br>(a) Powers or functions of Secretary of State.<br>(b) Coordination among representatives of United States.<br>(c) Responsibility for supervision and general direction of assistance programs.   |
|        | (u) Status of country with respect to obligations to the United Nations; report to Congress.   | 2383.  | Responsibilities of the Secretary of Defense; priorities in procurement, delivery, and allocation of military equipment.  |
| 2370a. | Expropriation of United States property.<br>(a) Prohibition.<br>(b) Other actions.<br>(c) Period for settlement of claims.<br>(d) Excepted countries and territories.<br>(e) Resumption of assistance.<br>(f) Reporting requirement.<br>(g) Waiver.<br>(h) "United States person" defined.                               | 2384.  | Statutory officers.<br>(a) Appointment.<br>(b) Rate of compensation; title of officers; order of succession.  |
| 2371.  | Prohibition on assistance to governments supporting international terrorism.   |        |   |

## PART II—ADMINISTRATIVE PROVISIONS

|        |  |          |  |
|--------|--|----------|--|
| Sec.   |  | Sec.     |  |
|        | (c) Appointment of certain statutory officers to comparable positions.                                       | 2393.    | Waiver of certain laws.  |
|        | (d) Repealed.  |          | (a) Contracts and expenditure of funds.  |
|        | (e) Coordinator for security assistance.   |          | (b) Neutrality laws.   |
| 2385.  | Employment of personnel.   | 2393a.   | (c) Assignment of personnel.   |
|        | (a) Authorization.   |          | Requests by General Accounting Office and Congressional committees for documents and materials.  |
|        | (b) Appointments excepted from civil-service laws; supergrade positions; reinstatement.                      | 2394.    | Reports and information; definitions.  |
|        | (c) Additional supergrade positions.   |          | (a) Annual report to Congress on programs having impact on developing countries; contents.   |
|        | (d) Employment or assignment of officers and employees to perform functions outside United States.           |          | (b) "Foreign assistance" and "provided by the United States Government" defined.   |
|        | (e) Repealed.  | 2394-1.  | Notification of program changes.   |
|        | (f) Funds for personnel services.  |          | (a) Covered programs; content of notifications.  |
|        | (g) Repealed.  |          | (b) Exceptions.  |
|        | (h) Acceptance of compensation or other benefits from foreign countries; arrangements for reimbursement.     |          | (c) Funds in the International Affairs Budget Function; re-programming.  |
|        | (i) Assignment based on competency.  | 2394-1a. | Classification of reports.   |
| 2385a. | Unified personnel system.  | 2394a.   | Extortion and illegal payments to officials of foreign countries receiving international security assistance.                          |
|        | (a) Establishment by regulations.  | 2395.    | General authorities.   |
|        | (b) Effective date of regulations.   |          | (a) Manner of furnishing assistance; emphasis on loans.  |
|        | (c) Force and effect of regulations.   |          | (b) Authority of the President.  |
| 2386.  | Experts, consultants, and retired officers.  |          | (c) Utilization of services and facilities of voluntary, non-profit organizations.   |
|        | (a) Employment; compensation; renewal of contracts of employment.  |          | (d) Acceptance of gifts, devises, bequests, grants, etc.   |
|        | (b) Exemption from certain Federal laws.   |          | (e) Health and accident insurance for foreign participants and foreign employees.  |
|        | (c) Employment without compensation of persons of outstanding experience and ability.                        |          | (f) Admission of alien participants.   |
| 2387.  | Detail of personnel to foreign governments.  |          | (g) Powers and authorities of the President with respect to loans.   |
| 2388.  | Detail of personnel to international organizations.  |          | (h) Term of contracts and agreements.  |
| 2389.  | Status and benefits of personnel assigned or detailed to foreign governments or international organizations. |          | (i) Settlement and arbitration of claims arising under investment guaranty operations.   |
|        | (a) Allowances, privileges, rights, seniority, and other benefits.   |          | (j) Financial transactions with foreign governments; exemption.  |
|        | (b) Representation allowances.   |          | (k) Cost-type contracts with educational institutions; payment of reimbursable indirect costs.   |
| 2390.  | Terms of detail or assignment of personnel.  |          |  |
| 2391.  | Missions and staffs abroad.  | 2395a.   | International agreements concerning debt relief; transmittal to Congressional committees.  |
|        | (a) Authorization.   | 2396.    | Availability of funds.   |
|        | (b) Appointment of mission chief and deputy; compensation.   |          | (a) General expenditures.  |
|        | (c) Appointment of Chairman of Development Assistance Committee; compensation.                               |          | (b) Compensation, allowances, and travel of personnel; printing and binding; expenditures outside United States.                       |
|        | (d) Administration of assistance.  |          | (c) Construction of living quarters, office space, and supporting facilities.  |
| 2392.  | Government agencies.   |          | (d) Education of dependents.   |
|        | (a) Allocation and transfer of funds.  |          | (e) Training costs.  |
|        | (b) Utilization of services and facilities of other agencies.  |          | (f) Assistance in carrying out functions under certain laws.   |
|        | (c) Reimbursement for commodities, services, and facilities.   |          | (g) Administrative, extraordinary, and operating expenses; reimbursement of military officers; training of foreign military personnel. |
|        | (d) Reimbursement for military assistance.   |          |  |
|        | (e) Establishment of accounts.   |          |  |
|        | (f) Credits made by Export-Import Bank of the United States.   |          |  |
|        | (g) Charge of expenses to appropriation or account.  |          |  |



| Sec.                              |  | Sec.          |   |
|-----------------------------------|--|---------------|---|
|                                   | (h) Recipient countries to contribute local currencies; utilization of foreign currencies owned by United States.      |               | (c) Publication in Federal Register.  |
|                                   | (i) Financing motor vehicle transactions; waiver of domestic manufacturing restriction.                                |               | (d) Information accessible to Congress prior to transmission of report.   |
| 2396a.                            | Property Management Fund.  | 2414a.        | Annual report to Congress on voting practices at United Nations.  |
| 2397.                             | Administrative expenses.   |               | (a) In general.   |
| 2398.                             | Assistance to countries pursuant to other statutes.  |               | (b) Information on voting practices in United Nations.  |
| 2399 to 2399a.                    | Repealed or Transferred.   |               | (c) Format.   |
| 2399b.                            | False claims and ineligible commodities.   |               | (d) Statement by Secretary of State.  |
|                                   | (a) Penalties; costs.  | 2415 to 2419. | Repealed.   |
|                                   | (b) Recovery of penalties; procedure; finality of withholding of funds; recovery of withheld funds; limitation period. | 2420.         | Police training prohibition.  |
|                                   | (c) "Person" defined.  |               | (a) Effective date of prohibition.  |
| 2399c.                            | Coordination of policies and programs.   |               | (b) Exception; qualification.   |
|                                   | (a) Development Coordination Committee established.  |               | (c) Country with longstanding democratic tradition, etc.  |
|                                   | (b) Procedures to assure coordination.   |               | (d) Assistance to Honduras or El Salvador.  |
|                                   | (c) Guidance of Secretary of State.  | 2421.         | Trade and Development Agency.   |
|                                   | (d) Repealed.  |               | (a) Purpose.  |
|                                   | (e) Temporary assignment of employees.   |               | (b) Authority to provide assistance.  |
|                                   | (f) Studies.   |               | (c) Director and personnel.   |
| 2399d.                            | Shipping differential.   |               | (d) Annual report.  |
|                                   |  |               | (e) Audits.   |
|                                   |  | 2421a.        | (f) Funding.  |
|                                   |  |               | Capital projects office within Agency for International Development.  |
|                                   |  |               | (a) Establishment of office.  |
|                                   |  |               | (b) Purposes of office.   |
|                                   |  |               | (c) Activities of AID.  |
| PART III—MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS |  | 2421b.        | Capital projects for poverty alleviation and environmental safety and sustainability.   |
| 2401.                             | Effective date; identification of programs.  |               | (a) Purposes.   |
| 2402.                             | Saving provisions.   |               | (b) Activities of AID.  |
|                                   | (a) Determinations, authorizations, regulations, orders, contracts, agreements, etc., under prior law.                 | 2421c.        | Coordination.   |
|                                   | (b) Compliance with similar provisions of prior law as compliance with this chapter.                                   | 2421d.        | Funding for capital projects.   |
|                                   | (c) Continued availability of funds appropriated pursuant to prior law.  |               | (a) Funding level.  |
| 2403.                             | Definitions.   |               | (b) Development assistance capital projects.  |
| 2404.                             | Unexpended balances.   | 2421e.        | Definitions.  |
| 2405.                             | Separability.  | 2422.         | Repealed.   |
| 2406.                             | Development programs for dependable fuel supplies.   | 2423.         | Exchanges of certain materials.   |
| 2407.                             | Special authorization for use of foreign currencies.   |               | (a) Agreement for necessary or strategic raw material; definition.  |
| 2408.                             | Repealed.  |               | (b) Allocation of raw materials to Federal agencies.  |
| 2409.                             | Use of United States Armed Forces.   |               | (c) Deposits in United States Treasury of funds from disposal of materials.   |
| 2410, 2410a.                      | Repealed.  | 2424, 2425.   | Repealed.   |
| 2411.                             | Limitation upon exercise of special authorities.   | 2426.         | Discrimination against United States personnel.   |
| 2412.                             | Limitation on foreign assistance appropriations.   |               | (a) Assignment of personnel on basis of ability and experience.   |
|                                   | (a) Restrictions on appropriations in absence of or in excess of prior authorizations.                                 |               | (b) Prohibition on use of funds in country practicing discrimination.   |
|                                   | (b) Exception.   |               | (c) Rules and regulations.  |
|                                   | (c) Specific repeal or modification of section.  | 2427.         | Operating expenses.   |
| 2413.                             | Changes in allocation of foreign assistance.   |               | (a) Authorization of appropriations.  |
|                                   | (a) Notification by President to foreign country.  |               | (b) Continuing availability of funds.   |
|                                   | (b) Application of provisions to continuing appropriations; waiver of provisions.                                      | 2428.         | Repealed.   |
| 2414.                             | Presidential findings and determinations.  | 2428a.        | Congressional declaration of policy toward Korea; transmittal of report to Speaker of the House and Congressional committees. |
|                                   | (a) Report to Congress.  |               | Special security assistance for modernization of Armed Forces of Korea.   |
|                                   | (b) Action prohibition prior to execution of report.   | 2428b.        |   |

Sec.

- (a) Transfer authority of President of defense articles and services located in Korea; applicable terms and conditions; reimbursement.
- (b) Additional transfer authority of President of defense articles located outside of Korea; prerequisites for determinations respecting transfers; report by President to Congress of determinations.
- (c) Report by President to Congress of types, etc., of transferred defense articles.
- (d) Repealed.
- (e) Congressional policy respecting further troop withdrawals.

- 2429, 2429a. Repealed.
- 2429a-1. Annual report on nuclear transfer activities.
- 2429a-2. Enforcement of nonproliferation treaties.
  - (a) Policy.
  - (b) Prohibition.
  - (c) Waiver.
- 2429b. Transferred.

SUBCHAPTER III-A—ENTERPRISE FOR THE AMERICAS INITIATIVE

- 2430. Purpose.
- 2430a. Definitions.
- 2430b. Eligibility for benefits.
  - (a) Requirements.
  - (b) Eligibility determinations.
- 2430c. Reduction of certain debt.
  - (a) Authority to reduce debt.
  - (b) Implementation of debt reduction.
- 2430d. Repayment of principal.
  - (a) Currency of payment.
  - (b) Deposit of payments.
- 2430e. Interest on new obligations.
  - (a) Rate of interest.
  - (b) Currency of payment; deposits.
  - (c) Interest already paid.
- 2430f. Enterprise for the Americas Funds.
  - (a) Establishment.
  - (b) Deposits.
  - (c) Investment.
  - (d) Disbursements.
- 2430g. Americas Framework Agreements.
  - (a) Authority.
  - (b) Contents of agreements.
  - (c) Administering body.
  - (d) Eligible activities.
  - (e) Grant recipients.
  - (f) Review of larger grants.
  - (g) Eligibility criteria.
- 2430h. Enterprise for the Americas Board.
- 2430i. Annual reports to Congress.

SUBCHAPTER IV—INDOCHINA POSTWAR RECONSTRUCTION

- 2431 to 2435. Repealed.

SUBCHAPTER V—MIDDLE EAST ASSISTANCE

- 2441 to 2443. Repealed.

CHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This chapter is referred to in sections 1975, 2370a, 2428b, 2429a-2, 2601, 2751, 2761, 2765, 2771, 2775, 2780, 2795, 2795a, 2799aa, 2799aa-1, 3501, 3503, 5401, 5476, 5605, 5813, 6003, 6006 of this title; title 13 section 301; title 16 section 973r; title 40 section 483; title 48 section 1904; title 49 section 44908.

SUBCHAPTER I—INTERNATIONAL DEVELOPMENT

SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in sections 290f, 2151-1, 2151a, 2151b, 2151c, 2151d, 2151f, 2151k, 2151n, 2151p, 2151q, 2151t, 2151t-1, 2151u, 2151v, 2151x, 2151y, 2169, 2179, 2182a, 2183, 2184, 2191, 2192, 2199, 2218, 2221, 2261, 2274, 2275, 2292a, 2304, 2346, 2348c, 2349aa-5, 2351, 2354, 2355, 2357, 2358, 2361, 2362, 2384, 2385, 2385a, 2391, 2392, 2395, 2396, 2421, 2421b, 2427, 2430c, 4706, 4709, 5423, 5495 of this title.

PART I—DECLARATION OF POLICY; DEVELOPMENT ASSISTANCE AUTHORIZATIONS

PART REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This part is referred to in sections 2077, 2151x-1, 2151x-2, 2183, 2201, 2218, 2261, 2293, 2346, 2354, 2357, 2358, 2361, 2370, 2394, 2394-1, 2395, 2396, 2399d, 2421d, 5423, 5442, 5452 of this title; title 20 section 226.

**§ 2151. Congressional findings and declaration of policy**

**(a) United States development cooperation policy**

The Congress finds that fundamental political, economic, and technological changes have resulted in the interdependence of nations. The Congress declares that the individual liberties, economic prosperity, and security of the people of the United States are best sustained and enhanced in a community of nations which respect individual civil and economic rights and freedoms and which work together to use wisely the world's limited resources in an open and equitable international economic system. Furthermore, the Congress reaffirms the traditional humanitarian ideals of the American people and renews its commitment to assist people in developing countries to eliminate hunger, poverty, illness, and ignorance.

Therefore, the Congress declares that a principal objective of the foreign policy of the United States is the encouragement and sustained support of the people of developing countries in their efforts to acquire the knowledge and resources essential to development and to build the economic, political, and social institutions which will improve the quality of their lives.

United States development cooperation policy should emphasize four principal goals:

- (1) the alleviation of the worst physical manifestations of poverty among the world's poor majority;
- (2) the promotion of conditions enabling developing countries to achieve self-sustaining economic growth with equitable distribution of benefits;
- (3) the encouragement of development processes in which individual civil and economic rights are respected and enhanced; and
- (4) the integration of the developing countries into an open and equitable international economic system.

The Congress declares that pursuit of these goals requires that development concerns be fully reflected in United States foreign policy and that United States development resources be effectively and efficiently utilized.

**(b) Coordination of development-related activities**

Under the policy guidance of the Secretary of State, the Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency should have the responsibility for coordinating all United States development-related activities.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 101, formerly § 102, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424; Pub. L. 87-565, pt. I, § 101, Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 255; Pub. L. 88-205, pt. I, § 101(c), Dec. 16, 1963, 77 Stat. 379; Pub. L. 89-171, pt. I, § 101, Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 653; Pub. L. 89-583, pt. I, § 101, Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 796; Pub. L. 90-137, pt. I, § 101, Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 445; Pub. L. 93-189, § 2(2), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 714; Pub. L. 94-161, title III, § 301, Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 855; Pub. L. 95-88, title I, §§ 101, 113(b), Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 533, 538; renumbered and amended Pub. L. 95-424, title I, § 101, Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 937; 1979 Reorg. Plan No. 2, § 6(b)(1), eff. Oct. 1, 1979, 44 F.R. 41166, 93 Stat. 1379.)

**AMENDMENTS**

1978—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 95-424, in setting forth a new declaration of policy generally substituted four principal goals of development cooperation policy, they being (1) the alleviation of the worst manifestations of poverty, (2) self-sustained economic growth, (3) respect for civil and economic rights, and (4) the integration of the developing countries into an open and equitable economic system, for former seven pars. relating to: (1) primary responsibility for development being in the less developed countries themselves; (2) the active involvement of many countries; (3) the encouragement of regional cooperation; (5) assistance being of such nature as to help United States balance of payments; (6) furnishing of assistance in such manner as to promote efficiency, and (7) the furnishing of agricultural commodities, etc., to complement assistance under this subchapter.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 95-424 substituted provisions relating to the responsibility of the agency primarily responsible for administering the program for coordination of all development related activities, for former seven criteria for restructuring relationships with less developed countries, those criteria being: (1) sharing of technical expertise; (2) focusing on critical problems affecting the majority of the people; (3) use of the private sector; (4) development goals as the responsibility of each sovereign nation; (5) priority to undertakings directly improving the lives of the poorest people; (6) private investment in development programs; and (7) responsibility for coordination of activities with the agency having primary responsibility for administering this part.

Subsecs. (c) to (e). Pub. L. 95-424 struck out subsecs. (c) to (e).

1977—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 95-88, § 113(b)(1), inserted "environment and natural resources" to enumeration of fundamental needs of the people of less developed countries which development assistance must be used in meeting.

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 95-88, § 113(b)(2), inserted "environment and natural resources;" after "population planning and health;"

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 95-88, § 101(a), substituted provisions under which the President developed the criteria and factors to be used in assessing the commitment and progress of countries in meeting the objectives set forth in subsec. (c) and transmitted a report by Jan. 31, 1978, to the Speaker of the House and to the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate for provisions under which the President had established the criteria without Congressional involvement.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 95-88, § 101(b), added subsec. (e).

1975—Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 94-161 added subsecs. (c) and (d).

1973—Pub. L. 93-189 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsec. (b).

1967—Pub. L. 90-137, in providing a new statement of policy, reaffirming basic foreign assistance principles, and recognizing new problems and need for new priorities, substituted five pars. concerned with (1) freedom, security, prosperity, aggression, subversion, ignorance, want, despair, and national security; (2) economic cooperation and trade among countries, etc. (a reenactment of former sixth par. less provision for resort to international law procedures in adjudication of issues among friendly countries in support of such economic cooperation, etc.); (3) seven principles pertaining to: self-help efforts and responsibility of the country, multilateral basis of involvement and cooperation, regional cooperation, food production and voluntary family planning, balance of payments, maximum dollar effectiveness, and coordination of overall assistance; (4) Permanent Peace in the Middle East; and (5) suspension of assistance after severance of diplomatic relations for former sixteen pars. relating to: (1) dignity and interdependence of man, and freedom; (2) resources development, living standards improvement, and aspirations for justice, education, etc., now covered in par. (1); (4) free economic institutions and flow of private investment capital; (5) investment guaranties; (6) economic cooperation and trade among countries, etc., as described for par. (2); (7) long-range continuity and disposal of surplus property and agricultural crops; (8) world peace, national security, and dangers of international communism; (9) countries sharing United States views on world crisis; (10) loan guarantees and related technical assistance and development program; (11) regional organizations for mutual assistance; (12) prohibition of assistance for short-term emergency purposes; (13) common undertaking of countries to meet goals; (14) discretionary assistance by the President to South Vietnam to gain victory in the war against communism and return to homeland of Americans from that struggle; (15) damage or destruction by mob action of United States property and termination of assistance, now covered in section 2370(j) of this title; and (16) use of United States Armed Forces, now covered in section 2409 of this title.

1966—Pub. L. 89-583 provided for termination of assistance to any foreign country which does not take appropriate measures to provide compensation for damage or destruction by mob action of United States property within such country and declared that furnishing assistance shall not be construed as creating a new commitment or as affecting any existing commitment to use armed forces of the United States for the defense of any foreign country.

1965—Pub. L. 89-171 added expressions of the sense of Congress that in furnishing assistance under this subchapter excess personal property shall be utilized wherever practicable in lieu of the procurement of new items for United States-assisted projects and programs and that assistance under this chapter and other statutes should be terminated to any country permitting damage to or destruction of U.S. property within such country by mob action or by failing to take adequate preventive measures.

1963—Pub. L. 88-205 declared that institution of full investment guaranty programs with all recipient countries would be regarded as a significant measure of self-help by such countries improving investment climate, that assistance to maintain freedom from communism "shall" rather than "should" emphasize long-range development, that in the administration of programs of assistance, every precaution be taken to assure that assistance is not diverted to any short-term emergency purpose or any purpose not essential to long-range economic development, that other industrialized free-world countries increase their contributions and assistance to more equitably share the burden, and the President should in his discretion, extend or withhold assistance from South Vietnam to further victory and the return home of Americans involved in the struggle there.

1962—Pub. L. 87-565 declared distinctions made by foreign nations between American citizens because of race, color, or religion, relating to rights available to such citizens, to be repugnant to our principals, required in the administration of these funds, that consideration be given those countries sharing our world views and which do not divert their resources to military or propaganda efforts, supported by the Soviet Union or Communist China, against the United States or countries receiving aid under this chapter, that the highest emphasis be given to programs for loans or loan guarantees for use by organizations in making low-interest loans to individuals in friendly countries for the purchase of small farms, purchase of homes, aiding or establishing small businesses, purchase of tools and equipment for an occupation or trade, or to obtain practical education in vocational skills, and to programs of technical assistance and development, each assisted country should be encouraged to recognize needs of the people in the preparation of national development programs, and declared that friendly nations are to be invited, where possible, to join in missions to consult with countries receiving assistance on the possibilities of joint action to assure effective development of economic development plans and effective use of assistance provided them, and that the President may request international financial institutions to assist in establishing such missions.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1979 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 96-53, title V, §512, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 380, provided that:

“(a) Except as provided in subsection (b) of this section and in section 503(b) [set out as an Effective Date of 1979 Amendment note under section 2385a of this title] this Act [see Short Title of 1979 Amendments note below] shall take effect on October 1, 1979.

“(b) Sections 114(b) [not classified to the Code], 123 [amending a provision set out as a note below], 501 [not classified to the Code], and 509 [set out as a note below] of this Act shall take effect on the date of enactment of this Act [Aug. 14, 1979].”

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424 provided that: “The amendments made by this Act [see Short Title of 1978 Amendment note below] shall take effect on October 1, 1978.”

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1994 AMENDMENTS

Pub. L. 103-447, §1, Nov. 2, 1994, 108 Stat. 4691, provided that: “This Act [amending sections 2291, 2291a, 2291e, 2291f, 2291h to 2291k of this title, section 635 of Title 12, Banks and Banking, section 981 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, section 1616a of Title 19, Customs Duties, and section 881 of Title 21, Food and Drugs, repealing section 2291-2 of this title, enacting provisions set out as notes under this section, sections 1928 and 2420 of this title, and section 1182 of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality, amending provisions set out as a note under section 5311 of Title 31, Money and Finance, and repealing provisions set out as notes under this section, sections 2291, 2291h, and 2420 of this title, section 701 of Title 41, Public Contracts, and section 1902 of Title 46, Appendix, Shipping] may be cited as the ‘International Narcotics Control Corrections Act of 1994.’”

Pub. L. 103-392, §1, Oct. 22, 1994, 108 Stat. 4098, provided that: “This Act [enacting section 2151t-1 of this title, amending sections 2191, 2195, and 2421 of this title and sections 4052 and 4728 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 4701 of Title 15] may be cited as the ‘Jobs Through Trade Expansion Act of 1994.’”

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1992 AMENDMENTS

Pub. L. 102-583, §1, Nov. 2, 1992, 106 Stat. 4914, provided that Pub. L. 102-583 could be cited as the “International Narcotics Control Act of 1992”, prior to repeal

by Pub. L. 103-447, title I, §103(a), Nov. 2, 1994, 108 Stat. 4693.

Pub. L. 102-549, §1, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3651, provided that: “This Act [enacting sections 2077, 2200b, 2421a to 2421e, and 2430 to 2430i of this title and section 4723a of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, amending sections 2191, 2191a, 2194, 2195, 2197 to 2199, 2200a, 2421, and 5401 of this title, section 5314 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, section 1738i of Title 7, Agriculture, and sections 635q to 635s of Title 12, Banks and Banking, repealing section 2296 of this title, enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and sections 262s-2, 2296, 2421, and 2421a of this title, and amending provisions set out as a note under this section] may be cited as the ‘Jobs Through Exports Act of 1992.’”

Pub. L. 102-549, title VI, §601, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3664, provided that: “This title [enacting sections 2077 and 2430 to 2430i of this title, amending section 1738i of Title 7, Agriculture, repealing section 2296 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 2296 of this title] may be cited as the ‘Enterprise for the Americas Act of 1992.’”

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 101-623, §1(a), Nov. 21, 1990, 104 Stat. 3350, provided that: “This Act [enacting section 2151x-1 of this title and section 3196 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, amending sections 2291c, 2321k, 2346c, and 2360 of this title and section 635 of Title 12, Banks and Banking, and enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 2291, 2291h, and 2360 of this title] may be cited as the ‘International Narcotics Control Act of 1990.’”

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1989 AMENDMENTS

Pub. L. 101-240, §1(a), Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2492, provided that: “This Act [enacting sections 262m-7, 262p-4g to 262p-4k, 262r to 262r-2, 262s-1, 262t, 283z-5 to 283z-8, 286e-12, 286kk, and 2281 to 2286 of this title and section 3904a of Title 12, Banks and Banking, amending sections 262d, 262m-7, 262p-1, 262p-5, 262s-2, 282b, 283b, 283cc, 284b, 285b, 286b, 286e-9, 286k-1, 286s, 290g-2, 290i-3, and 290k-5 of this title and sections 635 and 635i-3 of Title 12, transferring former section 262q of this title to section 262s of this title, and former section 4722 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, to section 262s-2 of this title, repealing sections 262i, 262m-6, 276c-3, 283i, 286b-1, and 286b-2 of this title, enacting provisions set out as notes under this section, sections 262d, 283z-6, and 2291 of this title, and sections 635, 3901, and 3904a of Title 12, amending provisions set out as a note under section 262l of this title, and repealing provisions set out as notes under sections 262g-2 and 283 of this title] may be cited as the ‘International Development and Finance Act of 1989.’”

Pub. L. 101-240, title VII, §701, Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2521, provided that: “This title [enacting sections 2281 to 2286 of this title] may be cited as the ‘Global Environmental Protection Assistance Act of 1989.’”

Pub. L. 101-231, §1(a), Dec. 13, 1989, 103 Stat. 1954, provided that: “This Act [enacting section 2321k of this title, amending sections 2291, 2291a, 2708, and 2795 of this title and sections 2492 and 2495 of Title 19, Customs Duties, and enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 2291 and 2708 of this title] may be cited as the ‘International Narcotics Control Act of 1989.’”

Pub. L. 101-222, §1(a), Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1892, provided that: “This Act [amending sections 1732, 2364, 2371, 2753, 2776, 2778, and 2780 of this title and section 2405 of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 2371 of this title] may be cited as the ‘Anti-Terrorism and Arms Export Amendments Act of 1989.’”

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1988 AMENDMENTS

Pub. L. 100-690, title IV, §4001, Nov. 18, 1988, 102 Stat. 4261, provided that title IV of Pub. L. 100-690 could be cited as the “International Narcotics Control Act of

1988", prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103-447, title I, §103(b), Nov. 2, 1994, 108 Stat. 4693.

Pub. L. 100-461, title V, §555 [H.R. 5263, title I, §101, and S. 2757, title I, §101], Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-36, provided that: "This title [amending sections 2191, 2194, 2194b, 2195, 2197, 2199, and 2200a of this title] may be cited as the 'Overseas Private Investment Corporation Amendments Act of 1988'."

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1986 AMENDMENTS

Pub. L. 99-570, title II, §2001, Oct. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 3207-60, provided that title II of Pub. L. 99-570 could be cited as the "International Narcotics Control Act of 1986", prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103-447, title I, §103(c), Nov. 2, 1994, 108 Stat. 4694.

Pub. L. 99-529, §1, Oct. 24, 1986, 100 Stat. 3010, provided that: "This Act [enacting section 2151p-1 of this title, amending sections 290f, 2151b, 2151p, 2151q, 2222, 2291a, 2427, and 3929 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 290f of this title] may be cited as the 'Special Foreign Assistance Act of 1986'."

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1985 AMENDMENTS

Pub. L. 99-204, §1, Dec. 23, 1985, 99 Stat. 1669, provided that: "This Act [enacting sections 2191a and 2194b of this title, amending sections 2191, 2194, 2195, and 2197 to 2200a of this title and section 709 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, repealing section 2200b of this title, enacting provisions set out as a note under section 2191a of this title, and repealing provisions set out as a note under section 2200a of this title] may be cited as the 'Overseas Private Investment Corporation Amendments Act of 1985'."

Pub. L. 99-83, §1(a), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 190, provided that: "This Act [enacting sections 2227, 2271 to 2276, 2291b, 2346 to 2346c, 2347c, 2347d, 2349aa-7 to 2349aa-9, 2511, 2521a, and 2770a of this title, section 469j of Title 16, Conservation, and sections 1356b and 1515a of former Title 49, Transportation, amending sections 290f, 290h-8, 290h-9, 2151-1, 2151a to 2151d, 2151f, 2151h, 2151s, 2151u, 2151x, 2151z, 2174, 2182, 2182a, 2184, 2201, 2222, 2291, 2291a, 2292a, 2304, 2311, 2312, 2314, 2321h, 2321i, 2346b, 2347a, 2348a, 2349aa-2, 2349aa-4, 2354, 2361, 2364, 2370, 2371, 2375, 2394, 2394-1, 2396, 2411, 2413, 2420, 2421, 2427, 2429a, 2501, 2502, 2504, 2506, 2510, 2522, 2523, 2752, 2753, 2761, 2763 to 2767, 2771, 2776, 2778, 2791, 2792, 2794, and 2795 of this title, sections 1431, 1721, 1722, 1727a, and 1736b of Title 7, Agriculture, section 7307 of Title 10, Armed Forces, and sections 1356, 1471, and 1515 of former Title 49, repealing sections 2293, 2294, 2346 to 2346c, 2346e to 2346i, and 2349aa-6 of this title, enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and sections 2151-1, 2151b, 2151u, 2291, 2346, 2374, 2429a, 2506, 2511, 2751, and 2778 of this title, section 4011 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, and section 1515 of former Title 49, amending provisions set out as notes under sections 2370 and 2501 of this title, and repealing provisions set out as a note under section 2293 of this title] may be cited as the 'International Security and Development Cooperation Act of 1985'."

Pub. L. 99-83, title VI, §601, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 228, provided that: "This title [enacting section 2291b of this title, amending sections 2151x, 2291, and 2291a of this title, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 2291 of this title] may be cited as the 'International Narcotics Control Act of 1985'."

Pub. L. 99-8 which enacted section 2292q of this title and provisions set out as a note under that section is known as the "African Famine Relief and Recovery Act of 1985", see section 1 of Pub. L. 99-8, set out as a note under section 2292q of this title.

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1983 AMENDMENTS

Pub. L. 98-164, title VII, §701, Nov. 22, 1984, 97 Stat. 1045, provided that: "This title [enacting section 2151q of this title and amending section 2452 of this title] may be cited as the 'International Environment Protection Act of 1983'."

Pub. L. 98-151, §101(b)(2), Nov. 14, 1983, 97 Stat. 968, provided in part that: "Section 101(b)(2) of this joint

resolution [enacting sections 2151f, and 2349aa to 2349aa-6 of this title, amending sections 2304, 2346a, 2403, and 2771 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 2349aa of this title] may be cited as the 'International Security and Development Assistance Authorizations Act of 1983'."

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1981 AMENDMENTS

Pub. L. 97-113, §1, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1519, provided that: "This Act [see Tables for classification] may be cited as the 'International Security and Development Cooperation Act of 1981'."

Pub. L. 97-65, §1, Oct. 16, 1981, 95 Stat. 1021, provided that: "This Act [enacting sections 2194a and 2200b of this title, amending sections 2191, 2193, 2194, 2195, 2197, 2198, 2199, and 2200a of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 2193 and 2200a of this title] may be cited as the 'Overseas Private Investment Corporation Amendments Act of 1981'."

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1980 AMENDMENTS

Pub. L. 96-533, §1, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3131, provided: "This Act [enacting sections 290h to 290h-9, 2226, 2346a, 2346b, 2769, and 2778a of this title, amending sections 2151a to 2151d, 2151n, 2151s, 2151u, 2151v, 2174, 2221, 2222, 2291a, 2292, 2292a, 2292i, 2304, 2311, 2312, 2318, 2321h to 2321j, 2346, 2347a, 2348a, 2354, 2364, 2367, 2370, 2384, 2394, 2399d, 2403, 2411, 2421, 2427, 2502, 2514, 2753, 2761 to 2765, 2771, 2776 to 2779, 2791, 2794, and 3510 of this title, sections 1712 and 1733 of Title 7, Agriculture, sections 5041 and 5045 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare, and section 2405 of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense, repealing sections 2151q, 2346c to 2346e, and 2348b of this title, enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and sections 290h, 2151a, 2291a, 2293, 2370, and 3401 of this title, section 1522 of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality, and section 2667 of Title 10, Armed Forces, and repealing a provision set out as a note under section 2293 of this title] may be cited as the 'International Security and Development Cooperation Act of 1980'."

Pub. L. 96-257, §1, May 31, 1980, 94 Stat. 422, provided: "That this Act [enacting section 2346e of this title] may be cited as the 'Special Central American Assistance Act of 1979'."

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1979 AMENDMENTS

Pub. L. 96-92, §1, Oct. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 701, provided that: "This Act [enacting sections 2346d, 2767, and 2768 of this title, amending sections 2261, 2291, 2291a, 2304, 2312, 2318, 2321h to 2321j, 2346 to 2346c, 2347a, 2348, 2348a, 2403, 2753, 2761, 2765, 2771, 2773, 2776, 2778, 2792, and 2794 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and sections 2321h, 2346c, 2771, 2776, and 3302 of this title] may be cited as the 'International Security Assistance Act of 1979'."

Pub. L. 96-53, §1, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 359, provided that: "This Act [enacting sections 2151x, 2151y, 2374, and 3501 to 3513 of this title, and sections 1736g of Title 7, Agriculture, amending sections 2151-1, 2151a to 2151d, 2151i, 2151k, 2151n, 2151p, 2151q, 2151s, 2151u, 2151v, 2174, 2182, 2182a, 2183, 2220b, 2222, 2292a, 2292i, 2304, 2357, 2361, 2385a, 2395, 2399c, 2421, 2427, 2502, and 2506 of this title, sections 5314 to 5316 and 5924 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, and sections 1703, 1704, 1722, 1726, 1727, 1727a, 1727b, 1727d to 1727f, 1731, and 1734 of Title 7, and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and sections 2151n, 2151y, 2312, 2385a, and 3201 of this title] may be cited as the 'International Development Cooperation Act of 1979'."

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1978 AMENDMENTS

Section 1 of Pub. L. 95-424 provided that: "This Act [enacting sections 2151-1, 2151t, 2151u, 2151v, 2151w, 2201, 2292i, 2335a, 2393a, 2394-1, 2394-1a and 2395a of this title, amending this section and sections 2151a, 2151a-1, 2151b, 2151c, 2151d, 2151e, 2151g, 2151h, 2151k, 2151n, 2151p, 2151q, 2151r, 2174, 2181, 2182, 2182a, 2183, 2213, 2220a, 2220d, 2221, 2222, 2292, 2292a, 2292i, 2292k, 2351, 2357, 2358, 2361, 2370,

2381a, 2384, 2394, 2395, 2396, 2397, 2399c, 2403, 2421, and 2427 of this title and sections 1703, 1706, 1727c, and 1727d of Title 7, Agriculture, repealing sections 2151f, 2151l, 2151m, 2151o, 2161, 2162, 2164, 2167, 2168, 2171, 2172, 2175, 2176, 2177, 2178, 2180, 2180a, 2211, 2212, 2213, 2216, 2217, 2217a, 2219, 2219a, 2220, 2224, 2271, 2281, 2292d, 2292g, 2368, 2369, 2408, 2410, 2415, 2416, 2417, 2418, and 2425 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and sections 2151v, 2151u, 2222, 2292d, and 2395 of this title and section 1711 of Title 7] may be cited as the 'International Development and Food Assistance Act of 1978'."

Pub. L. 95-384, §1, Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 730, provided that: "This Act [enacting sections 2348 to 2348c, 2373, 2417, 2428b, and 2766 of this title, amending sections 1754, 2261, 2291, 2291a, 2304, 2312, 2321b, 2321h to 2321j, 2346 to 2346c, 2347a, 2347b, 2360, 2372, 2413, 2429, 2429a, 2751, 2761, 2762, 2765, 2771, and 2776 of this title and section 2403 of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense, repealing sections 2441 to 2443 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and sections 287c, 1754, 2291, 2311, 2346, 2346a, 2370, and 2751 of this title] may be cited as the 'International Security Assistance Act of 1978'."

Pub. L. 95-268, §1, Apr. 24, 1978, 92 Stat. 213, provided that: "This Act [enacting section 2200 of this title and amending sections 2191, 2194, 2195, 2197, 2199, and 2200a of this title] may be cited as the 'Overseas Private Investment Corporation Amendments Act of 1978'."

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1977 AMENDMENTS

Pub. L. 95-92, §1, Aug. 4, 1977, 91 Stat. 614, provided that: "This Act [enacting sections 2294, 2346b, 2372, and 2429a of this title, amending sections 2261, 2291a, 2312, 2321h to 2321j, 2346, 2346a, 2347a, 2370, 2391, 2429, 2443, 2753, 2771, 2778, and 2792 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and sections 2346, 2370, 2406, 2431, and 2751 of this title] may be cited as the 'International Security Assistance Act of 1977'."

Section 1 of Pub. L. 95-88 provided that: "This Act [enacting sections 2151o to 2151s, 2292k, and 2429b of this title and sections 1712, 1713, 1714, and 1727 to 1727f of Title 7, Agriculture, amending this section and sections 2151a, 2151b, 2151c, 2151d, 2151g, 2151h, 2151i, 2151k, 2151l, 2151m, 2151n, 2174, 2181, 2182, 2182a, 2183, 2222, 2225, 2292a, 2292h, 2357, 2370, 2384, 2385, 2386, 2399c, 2421, and 2427 of this title, section 5315 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, and sections 1427, 1431, 1692, 1702, 1703, 1706, 1711, 1721, 1722, 1723, 1726, 1731, and 1736b of Title 7, repealing section 2424 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and sections 2151b, 2151i, 2174, 2357, and 2384 of this title and sections 1702, 1708, and 1722 of Title 7] may be cited as the 'International Development and Food Assistance Act of 1977'."

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1976 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 94-329, §1, June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 729, provided: "That this Act [enacting sections 2292h, 2292i, 2321j, 2347, 2347a, 2347b, 2371, 2394a, 2428, 2429, 2755, 2765, 2778, and 2779 of this title, amending sections 2183, 2222, 2261, 2291, 2291a, 2292f, 2304, 2312, 2314, 2318, 2321b, 2321h, 2321i, 2346a, 2370, 2382, 2383, 2384, 2386, 2392, 2394, 2396, 2403, 2415, 2416, 2417, 2441, 2443, 2751, 2751 note, 2752, 2753, 2761, 2762, 2763, 2771, 2776, 2791, 2792, and 2794 of this title, repealing sections 2321a, 2415 note, 2431, 2431 notes, 2432, 2432 note, 2433, 2433 note, 2434, and 2435, and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and sections 2291, 2292, 2314, 2321a, 2321b, 2347, 2352, 2370, 2428, 2431, 2441, 2751, 2753, 2763, 2776, and 2778 of this title] may be cited as the 'International Security Assistance and Arms Export Control Act of 1976'."

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1975 AMENDMENT

Section 1 of Pub. L. 94-161 provided: "That this Act [redesignating as sections 2292c to 2292e former sections 2262, 2399-1a, and 2399-1b of this title, enacting sections 2151a-1, 2151d, 2151e, 2151n, 2220a to 2220e, 2292 to 2292b, 2292f, and 2425 to 2427 of this title and sections 1691a,

1711, 1726, and 1736f of Title 7, Agriculture, amending this section and sections 2151a, 2151b, 2151c, 2151h, 2151i, 2151k, 2169, 2174, 2181 to 2183, 2221, 2222, 2225, 2293, 2357 and 2421 of this title and sections 1691, 1703, 1706, 1709, 1721, 1736, 1736a, and 1736b of Title 7, repealing sections 2151d, 2151e, 2201, 2292, and 2399 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 2220a of this title and as a note under section 1691a of Title 7] may be cited as the 'International Development and Food Assistance Act of 1975'."

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1974 AMENDMENTS

Pub. L. 93-559, §1, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1795, provided: "That this Act [enacting sections 2151m, 2175a, 2182a, 2225, 2293, 2304, 2321h, 2321i, 2419 to 2424, 2435, and 2441 to 2443 of this title, amending sections 278, 2151a to 2151c, 2163, 2181, 2183, 2219a, 2222, 2261, 2312, 2318, 2321b, 2321f, 2346a, 2360, 2364, 2370, 2394, 2399, 2413, 2415, 2416, 2753, 2763, 2764, 2771, 2773, 2775, and 2776 of this title, repealing sections 2151j and 2200 of this title, enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 2166, 2175, 2311, 2370, 2399, 2406, 2415, 2431 to 2433, 2551, and 2764 of this title, and repealing provisions set out as a note under this section] may be cited as the 'Foreign Assistance Act of 1974'."

Pub. L. 93-390, §1, Aug. 27, 1974, 88 Stat. 763, provided: "That this Act [amending sections 2191, 2194, 2195, 2197, 2199, 2200 and 2200a of this title] may be cited as the 'Overseas Private Investment Corporation Amendments Act of 1974'."

Pub. L. 93-333, §1, July 8, 1974, 88 Stat. 290, provided: "That this Act [enacting section 2292c of this title, amending section 2292d of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and section 2395 of this title] may be cited as the 'Foreign Disaster Assistance Act of 1974'."

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1973 AMENDMENT

Section 1 of Pub. L. 93-189 provided: "That this Act [enacting sections 2151a to 2151l, 2303, 2399-1a, 2399-1b, 2399c, 2399d, 2431 to 2434 and 2794 of this title, amending this section and sections 285n, 1934, 2163, 2171, 2174, 2181, 2183, 2195, 2199, 2200, 2212, 2219a, 2221, 2222, 2261, 2291, 2291a, 2311, 2312, 2314, 2318, 2321b, 2321f, 2346a, 2367, 2370, 2385, 2394, and section 2397 of this title, repealing sections 2314a, 2319 to 2321, 2321e, 2321g, and 2346a, of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and sections 1942, 2163, 2220, 2415, and 2431 of this title] may be cited as the 'Foreign Assistance Act of 1973'."

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1972 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 92-226, §1, Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 20, provided: "That this Act [enacting sections 2180a, 2291, 2292, 2321d to 2321g, 2346 to 2346b, and 2413 to 2418 of this title, amending sections 276, 290f, 1476, 1928b, 2162, 2163, 2169, 2172, 2174, 2181, 2183, 2198, 2199, 2200, 2212, 2219a, 2222, 2261, 2312, 2314, 2318, 2319, 2321b, 2370, 2384, 2394, 2397, 2403, 2411, 2684, 2771, 2773, and 2791 of this title and section 5314 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, repealing sections 2165 and 2241 to 2243 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and sections 287e, 2411, 2417, and 2680 of this title] may be cited as the 'Foreign Assistance Act of 1971'."

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1971 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 91-652, §1, Jan. 5, 1971, 84 Stat. 1942, provided: "That this Act [enacting section 2411 of this title, amending sections 2261 and 2242 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 2261, 2302, and 2411 of this title] may be cited as the 'Special Foreign Assistance Act of 1971'."

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1969 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 91-175, §1, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 805, provided that: "This Act [enacting sections 290f, 2179, 2180, 2194 to 2200a and 2321a of this title, amending sections 2162, 2163, 2172, 2174, 2181 to 2183, 2191 to 2193, 2212, 2219a, 2221, 2222, 2242, 2261, 2312, 2318, 2360, 2362, 2370, 2384, 2394, 2396, 2397 and 2402 of this title, section 846 of former Title 31,

Money and Finance, and sections 3343, 3581, 3582 and 5314 to 5316 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, and enacting provision set out as a note under this section], may be cited as the 'Foreign Assistance Act of 1969'."

SHORT TITLE OF 1968 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 90-554, §1, Oct. 8, 1968, 82 Stat. 960, provided: "That this Act [enacting sections 2381a, 2399b, and 2410 of this title and section 617 of Title 16, Conservation, amending sections 2161, 2162, 2171, 2172, 2174, 2181, 2184, 2212, 2218, 2219a, 2222, 2242, 2261, 2312, 2318-2320, 2354, 2357, 2370, 2381, 2385, 2396, and 2397 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as a note under this section] may be cited as the 'Foreign Assistance Act of 1968'."

SHORT TITLE OF 1967 AMENDMENT

Section 1 of Pub. L. 90-137 provided: "That this Act [enacting sections 2167 to 2169, 2178, 2219, 2219a, 2220, 2224, 2243, 2302, 2341 to 2345, and 2409 of this title, amending this section and sections 276, 276c-1, 1928b to 1928d, 1934, 2161, 2162, 2165, 2171, 2172, 2174, 2181 to 2184, 2192, 2211, 2212, 2218, 2221, 2222, 2241, 2242, 2261, 2271, 2301, 2302, 2311, 2312, 2314, 2318 to 2321, 2341 to 2345, 2351, 2358, 2360, 2361, 2364, 2384 to 2386, 2389, 2392, 2394 to 2397, 2399a, and 2403 of this title, repealing sections 2217b and 2317(a) of this title, and enacting provision set out as a note under section 2395 of this title] may be cited as the 'Foreign Assistance Act of 1967'."

SHORT TITLE OF 1966 AMENDMENT

Section 1 of Pub. L. 89-583 provided: "That this Act [enacting sections 2217 to 2217b, 2218, 2281, and 2322 of this title and amending this section and sections 2161, 2162, 2165, 2171, 2172, 2174, 2181, 2182, 2184, 2211, 2212, 2221, 2222, 2241, 2242, 2261, 2312, 2314, 2316, 2318, 2320, 2351, 2354, 2358, 2360, 2362, 2364, 2370, 2382, 2384, 2394, 2395, and 2397 of this title] may be cited as the 'Foreign Assistance Act of 1966'."

SHORT TITLE OF 1965 AMENDMENT

Section 1 of Pub. L. 89-171 provided: "That this Act [enacting sections 2166, 2399, 2399a and 2408 of this title, and amending this section and sections 2165, 2172, 2174, 2181 to 2184, 2212, 2221, 2222, 2242, 2261, 2311 to 2313, 2315 to 2320, 2355, 2362, 2363, 2370, 2382, 2384 to 2386, 2390, 2391, 2395 to 2398, 2403, and 2404 of this title, section 1707 of Title 7, Agriculture, and provisions set out as a note under this section] may be cited as the 'Foreign Assistance Act of 1965'."

SHORT TITLE OF 1964 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 88-633, §1, Oct. 7, 1964, 78 Stat. 1009, provided: "That this Act [enacting sections 2177, 2321, and 2407 of this title, amending sections 276, 1754, 2161, 2172, 2174, 2176, 2181, 2184, 2192, 2212, 2222, 2242, 2261, 2311, 2312, 2315, 2317, 2318, 2320, 2351, 2362, 2370, 2385, 2386, and 2397 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as a note under this section] may be cited as the 'Foreign Assistance Act of 1964'."

SHORT TITLE OF 1963 AMENDMENT

Section 1 of Pub. L. 88-205 provided that: "This Act [enacting sections 816, 1138a, 2216, 2320, 2398, and 2684 of this title, amending sections 961, 1136, 1139, 1251, 1928a, 1943, 2161, 2162, 2172, 2174, 2181, 2182, 2184, 2201, 2211 to 2213, 2222, 2242, 2261, 2312, 2313, 2318, 2319, 2351, 2361, 2362, 2370, 2381, 2384, 2386, 2391, 2395 to 2397, 2403, and 2404 of this title, sections 1701, 1705, 1706, and 1722 of Title 7, Agriculture, and section 1861 of Title 19, Customs Duties, enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and section 1942 of this title, and section 1706 of Title 7, and repealing provisions set out as notes under this section and section 2301 of this title], may be cited as the 'Foreign Assistance Act of 1963'."

SHORT TITLE OF 1962 AMENDMENT

Section 1 of Pub. L. 87-565 provided: "That this Act [enacting sections 2211 to 2213 of this title, amending

this section and sections 276, 2161, 2171, 2172, 2181, 2182, 2184, 2192, 2222, 2242, 2261, 2271, 2314, 2315, 2318, 2360, 2361, 2368, 2370, 2381, 2384, 2385, 2389, 2394, 2395, 2397, 2402 to 2404, 2452, and 2669 of this title, repealing section 2173 of this title, enacting provisions set out as a note under section 2452 of this title, and repealing Part IV of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961] may be cited as the 'Foreign Assistance Act of 1962'."

SHORT TITLE

Section 1 of Pub. L. 87-195, as added by Pub. L. 87-329, title I, §111, Sept. 30, 1961, 75 Stat. 719, provided: "That this Act [enacting this chapter and sections 1613d and 1945 of this title, amending sections 276, 279a, 1041, 1112, 1136, 1148, 1157, 1754, 1783, 1925, 1951 and 1964 of this title, section 1704 of Title 7, Agriculture, and sections 1651 and 1701 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare, enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and sections 276, 1613d, and 1925 of this title, and repealing sections 1750, 1750a, 1750b to 1753a, 1755 to 1759, 1760, 1761 to 1765, 1766a to 1766c, 1767a, 1768, 1781, 1782, 1784 to 1795, 1797, 1811, 1812 to 1817, 1841, 1851, 1852, 1854, 1870, 1871 to 1876, 1891 to 1896, 1897, 1920, 1921, 1923, 1924, 1926, 1927, 1929, 1931, 1933, 1935, 1936, 1939 to 1940a, 1941, 2051 to 2053, 2071 and 2072 of this title, Reorganization Plan No. 7 of 1953, and provisions set out as notes under sections 1753, 1783, 1922, 1928b, 1939 and 1951 of this title] may be cited as 'The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961'."

Section 101 of Pub. L. 87-195 which provided that this subchapter should be cited as the "Act for International Development of 1961" was repealed by section 101(b) of Pub. L. 88-205.

REPEALS

Section 642 of Pub. L. 87-195, as amended by Pub. L. 89-171, pt. III, §303(a), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 661, provided that:

"(a) There are hereby repealed—

"(1) Reorganization Plan Numbered 7 of 1953 [formerly set out as a note under section 1785 of this title].

"(2) the Mutual Security Act of 1954, as amended [section 1750 et seq. of this title] (except sections 402, 405(a), 405(c), 405(d), 408, 414, 417, 451(c), 502(a), 502(b), 514, 523(d), and 536 [sections 1922, 1925(a), 1925(c), 1925(d), 1928, 1934, 1937, 1951(c), 1754(a), (b), 1766, 1783(d) and 1796 of this title]);

"(3) section 12 of the Mutual Security Act of 1955 [formerly set out as a note under section 1811 of this title];

"(4) sections 12, 13, and 14 of the Mutual Security Act of 1956 [section 1870 of this title and notes formerly set out under sections 1753 and 1939 of this title];

"(5) section 503 of the Mutual Security Act of 1958 [section 1750a of this title];

"(6) section 108 of the Mutual Security Appropriation Act, 1959 [formerly set out as a note under section 1922 of this title];

"(7) section 501(a), chapter VI, and sections 702 and 703 of the Mutual Security Act of 1959, as amended [sections 1941, and 2051 to 2053 of this title and notes formerly set out under sections 1928b and 1951 of this title]; and

"(8) section 604 and chapter VII of the Mutual Security Act of 1960 [sections 2071 and 2072 of this title and note formerly set out under section 1783 of this title].

"(b) References in law to the Acts, or provisions of such Acts, repealed by subsection (a) of this section shall hereafter be deemed to be references to this Act [see Short Title note for the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 above] or appropriate provisions of this Act.

"(c) The repeal of the Acts listed in subsection (a) of this section shall not be deemed to affect amendments contained in such Acts to Acts not named in that subsection."

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

"Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency" substituted for "agency pri-

marily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter” in subsec. (b), pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1979, §6(b), 44 F.R. 41166, 93 Stat. 1379, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, as provided by section 1-101 of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, set out as notes under section 2381 of this title, which transferred functions and authorities of agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter under subsec. (b) of this section to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency.

Functions and authorities vested in Secretary of State pursuant to subsec. (b) of this section insofar as it relates to policy guidance other than foreign policy guidance transferred to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency by section 6(c)(1) of Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1979, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

#### AUTHORITY FOR ANTICRIME ASSISTANCE

Pub. L. 103-447, title I, §106, Nov. 2, 1994, 108 Stat. 4694, provided that:

“(a) POLICY.—International criminal activities, including international narcotics trafficking, money laundering, smuggling, and corruption, endanger political and economic stability and democratic development, and assistance for the prevention and suppression of international criminal activities should be a priority for the United States.

“(b) AUTHORITY.—

“(1) IN GENERAL.—For fiscal year 1995, the President is authorized to furnish assistance to any country or international organization, on such terms and conditions as he may determine, for the prevention and suppression of international criminal activities.

“(2) WAIVER OF PROHIBITION OF POLICE TRAINING.—Section 660 of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2420) shall not apply with respect to assistance furnished under paragraph (1).”

[Functions of President under section 106 of Pub. L. 103-447, set out above, delegated to Secretary of State by Memorandum of President of the United States, Apr. 4, 1995, 60 F.R. 19153.]

#### AFRICAN CONFLICT RESOLUTION

Pub. L. 103-381, Oct. 19, 1994, 108 Stat. 3513, provided that:

“SECTION. 1. SHORT TITLE.

“This Act may be cited as the ‘African Conflict Resolution Act’.

“SEC. 2. FINDINGS AND STATEMENT OF POLICY.

“(a) FINDINGS.—The Congress makes the following findings:

“(1) It is in the national interest of the United States to help build African capability in conflict resolution. A relatively small investment of assistance in promoting African conflict resolution—

“(A) would reduce the enormous human suffering which is caused by wars in Africa;

“(B) would help the United States avoid huge future expenditures necessitated by Somalia-like humanitarian disasters; and

“(C) would reduce the need for United Nations intervention as African institutions develop the ability to resolve African conflicts.

“(2) Africa, to a greater extent than any other continent, is afflicted by war. Africa has been marred by more than 20 major civil wars since 1960. Rwanda, Somalia, Angola, Sudan, Liberia, and Burundi are among those countries that have recently suffered serious armed conflict.

“(3) In the last decade alone, between 2,000,000 and 4,000,000 Africans have died because of war. There were 5,200,000 refugees and 13,100,000 displaced people in Africa in 1993.

“(4) Millions more Africans are currently at risk of war-related death. Looming or ongoing conflicts in Zaire, Angola, Sudan, Rwanda, and other countries threaten Africa’s future.

“(5) War has caused untold economic and social damage to the countries of Africa. Food production is impossible in conflict areas, and famine often results. Widespread conflict has condemned many of Africa’s children to lives of misery and, in certain cases, has threatened the existence of traditional African cultures.

“(6) Conflict and instability in Africa, particularly in large, potentially rich countries such as Angola, Sudan, and Zaire, deprive the global economy of resources and opportunities for trade and investment. Peace in these countries could make a significant contribution to global economic growth, while creating new opportunities for United States businesses.

“(7) Excessive military expenditures threaten political and economic stability in Africa while diverting scarce resources from development needs. Demobilization and other measures to reduce the size of African armies, and civilian control of the military under the rule of law are in the interest of international security and economic development.

“(8) Conflict prevention, mediation, and demobilization are prerequisites to the success of development assistance programs. Nutrition and education programs, for example, cannot succeed in a nation at war. Billions of dollars of development assistance have been virtually wasted in war-ravaged countries such as Liberia, Somalia, and Sudan.

“(9) Africans have a long tradition of informal mediation. This tradition should be built upon to create effective institutions through which Africans can resolve African conflicts.

“(10) The effectiveness of U.S. support for conflict resolution programs requires coordination and collaboration with multilateral institutions and other bilateral donors.

“(11) African institutions are playing an active role in conflict resolution and mediation utilizing the experience of elder statesmen. Groups such as the All African Council of Churches have assisted in defusing conflicts. The Economic Community of West African States (ECOWAS) has sought to address the conflict in Liberia by deploying an African peacekeeping force. The Southern African states have been working to prevent a crisis in Lesotho. The Intergovernmental Authority on Desertification and Drought (IGADD) has been engaged in attempting to resolve the conflict in Sudan.

“(12) The Organization of African Unity, under the leadership of Secretary General Salim Salim, has established a conflict resolution mechanism and has been active in mediation and conflict resolution in several African countries.

“(b) UNITED STATES POLICY.—The Congress declares, therefore, that a key goal for United States foreign policy should be to help institutionalize conflict resolution capability in Africa.

“SEC. 3. IMPROVING THE CONFLICT RESOLUTION CAPABILITIES OF THE ORGANIZATION OF AFRICAN UNITY.

“(a) AUTHORIZATION OF ASSISTANCE.—The President is authorized to provide assistance to strengthen the conflict resolution capability of the Organization of African Unity, as follows:

“(1) Funds may be provided to the Organization of African Unity for use in supporting its conflict resolution capability, including providing technical assistance.

“(2) Funds may be used for expenses of sending individuals with expertise in conflict resolution to work with the Organization of African Unity.

“(b) FUNDING.—Of the foreign assistance funds that are allocated for sub-Saharan Africa, not less than \$1,500,000 for each of the fiscal years 1995 through 1998 should be used to carry out subsection (a).

“SEC. 4. IMPROVING CONFLICT RESOLUTION CAPABILITIES OF MULTILATERAL SUBREGIONAL ORGANIZATIONS IN AFRICA.

“(a) AUTHORIZATION OF ASSISTANCE.—The President is authorized to provide assistance to strengthen the con-



flict resolution capabilities of subregional organizations established by countries in sub-Saharan Africa, as follows:

“(1) Funds may be provided to such organizations for use in supporting their conflict resolution capability, including providing technical assistance.

“(2) Funds may be used for the expenses of sending individuals with expertise in conflict resolution to work with such organizations.

“(b) FUNDING.—Of the foreign assistance funds that are allocated for sub-Saharan Africa, such sums as may be necessary for each of the fiscal years 1995 through 1998 may be used to carry out subsection (a).

“SEC. 5. IMPROVING CONFLICT RESOLUTION CAPABILITIES OF NON-GOVERNMENTAL ORGANIZATIONS.

“(a) AUTHORIZATION OF ASSISTANCE.—The President is authorized to provide assistance to nongovernmental organizations that are engaged in mediation and reconciliation efforts in sub-Saharan Africa.

“(b) FUNDING.—Of the foreign assistance funds that are allocated for sub-Saharan Africa, such sums as may be necessary for each of the fiscal years 1995 and 1996 should be used to carry out subsection (a).

“SEC. 6. AFRICAN DEMOBILIZATION AND RETRAINING PROGRAM.

“(a) AUTHORIZATION OF ASSISTANCE.—In order to facilitate reductions in the size of the armed forces of countries of sub-Saharan Africa, the President is authorized to—

“(1) provide assistance for the encampment and related activities for the purpose of demobilization of such forces; and

“(2) provide assistance for the reintegration of demobilized military personnel into civilian society through activities such as retraining for civilian occupations, creation of income-generating opportunities, their reintegration into agricultural activities, and the transportation to the home areas of such personnel.

“(b) FUNDING.—Of the foreign assistance funds that are allocated for sub-Saharan Africa, \$25,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 1995 and 1996 should be used for the assistance described in subsection (a), if conditions permit.

“(c) CIVILIAN INVOLVEMENT.—The President is also authorized to promote civilian involvement in the planning and organization of demobilization and reintegration activities.

“SEC. 7. TRAINING FOR AFRICANS IN CONFLICT RESOLUTION AND PEACEKEEPING.

“(a) AUTHORIZATION.—The President is authorized to establish a program to provide education and training in conflict resolution and peacekeeping for civilian and military personnel of countries in sub-Saharan Africa.

“(b) FUNDING.—Of the funds made available under chapter 5 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2347 et seq.], such sums as may be necessary for each of the fiscal years 1995 and 1996 should be used for the purposes of subsection (a).

“SEC. 8. PLAN FOR UNITED STATES SUPPORT FOR CONFLICT RESOLUTION AND DEMOBILIZATION IN SUB-SAHARAN AFRICA.

“(a) IN GENERAL.—Pursuant to the provisions of sections 3 through 7, the President should develop an integrated long-term plan, which incorporates local perspectives, to provide support for the enhancement of conflict resolution capabilities and demobilization activities in sub-Saharan Africa.

“(b) CONTENTS OF PLAN.—Such plan should include:

“(1) The type, purpose, amount, and duration of assistance that is planned to be provided to conflict resolution units in sub-Saharan Africa.

“(2) The type and amount of assistance that is planned to be provided for the demobilization of military personnel of countries of sub-Saharan Africa, including—

“(A) a list of which countries will receive such assistance and an explanation of why such countries were chosen for such assistance; and

“(B) a list of other countries and international organizations that are providing assistance for such demobilization.

“(3) The type and amount of assistance that is planned to be provided to nongovernmental organizations that are engaged in mediation and reconciliation efforts in sub-Saharan Africa.

“(4) A description of proposed training programs for Africans in conflict resolution and peacekeeping under section 7, including a list of prospective participants and plans to expand such programs.

“(5) The mechanisms to be used to coordinate inter-agency efforts to administer the plan.

“(6) Efforts to seek the participation of other countries and international organizations to achieve the objectives of the plan.

“(c) REPORT.—Not later than 180 days after the date of the enactment of this Act [Oct. 19, 1994], the President shall submit to the appropriate congressional committees a report containing a description of the plan developed under this section.

“SEC. 9. REPORTING REQUIREMENT.

“(a) REQUIREMENT.—The President shall submit to the appropriate congressional committees a report describing the efforts and progress made in carrying out the provisions of this Act.

“(b) DATE OF SUBMISSION.—The first report submitted under subsection (a) shall be submitted no later than 180 days after the date of the enactment of this Act [Oct. 19, 1994], and shall be submitted annually thereafter.

“SEC. 10. CONSULTATION REQUIREMENT.

“The President shall consult with the appropriate congressional committees prior to providing assistance under sections 3 through 7.

“SEC. 11. APPROPRIATE CONGRESSIONAL COMMITTEES DEFINED.

“For purposes of this Act, the term ‘appropriate congressional committees’ means the Committee on Foreign Affairs [now Committee on International Relations] and the Committee on Appropriations of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations and the Committee on Appropriations of the Senate.”

[Functions of President under sections 8 and 9 of Pub. L. 103-381, set out above, delegated to Administrator of the Agency for International Development by Memorandum of President of the United States, June 6, 1995, 60 F.R. 30771.]

WAIVER OF RESTRICTIONS FOR NARCOTICS-RELATED ECONOMIC ASSISTANCE

Pub. L. 103-447, title I, §105, Nov. 2, 1994, 108 Stat. 4694, provided that: “For fiscal year 1995, narcotics-related assistance under part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.] may be provided notwithstanding any other provision of law that restricts assistance to foreign countries (other than section 490(e) of that Act [22 U.S.C. 2291j(e)]) if, at least 15 days before obligating funds for such assistance, the President notifies the appropriate congressional committees (as defined in section 481(e) of that Act [22 U.S.C. 2291(e)] in accordance with the procedures applicable to reprogramming notifications under section 634A of that Act [22 U.S.C. 2394] [22 U.S.C. 2394-1].”

Pub. L. 102-583, §8, Nov. 2, 1992, 106 Stat. 4933, provided that for fiscal years 1992 through 1994, narcotics-related assistance under part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.) be provided notwithstanding any provision of law that restricts assistance to foreign countries (other than section 490(e) of that Act) if, at least 15 days before obligating funds for such assistance, the President notified appropriate congressional committees in accordance with procedures applicable to reprogramming notifications under sec-

tion 634A of that Act, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103-447, title I, § 103(a), Nov. 2, 1994, 108 Stat. 4693.

“APPROPRIATE CONGRESSIONAL COMMITTEES” DEFINED  
FOR PURPOSES OF PUB. L. 102-583

Pub. L. 102-583, § 11(b), Nov. 2, 1992, 106 Stat. 4935, provided that as used in Pub. L. 102-583, the term “appropriate congressional committees” had the definition given that term by section 481(e)(6) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2291(e)(6)), prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103-447, title I, § 103(a), Nov. 2, 1994, 108 Stat. 4693.

IMPACT ON EMPLOYMENT IN UNITED STATES

Pub. L. 102-549, title VIII, § 801, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3671, provided that: “No funds made available to carry out any provision of this Act [see Short Title of 1992 Amendments note above] or the amendments made by this Act may be obligated or expended for any financial incentive to a business enterprise currently located in the United States for the purpose of inducing such an enterprise to relocate outside the United States, if such incentive or inducement is likely to reduce the number of employees in the United States because United States production is being replaced by such enterprise outside the United States.”

INTERNATIONALLY RECOGNIZED WORKER RIGHTS

Pub. L. 102-549, title VIII, § 802, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3671, provided that: “No funds made available to carry out any provision of this Act [see Short Title of 1992 Amendments note above] or the amendments made by this Act may be obligated or expended for any project or activity that contributes to the violation of internationally recognized workers rights, as defined in section 502(a)(4) of the Trade Act of 1974 [19 U.S.C. 2462(a)(4)], of workers in the recipient country, including any designated zone in that country.”

HORN OF AFRICA RECOVERY AND FOOD SECURITY

Pub. L. 102-274, Apr. 21, 1992, 106 Stat. 115, known as the Horn of Africa Recovery and Food Security Act, provided findings of Congress concerning the Horn of Africa (the region comprised of Ethiopia, Somalia, Sudan, and Djibouti), stated policy regarding individual countries, authorized a relief and rehabilitation program, provided for a peace initiative and a food security and recovery strategy, prohibited security assistance to Ethiopia, Somalia, or Sudan for fiscal year 1992 or 1993 absent a certification by the President, and required the President to submit a report to Congress on the efforts and progress in carrying out Pub. L. 102-274 not later than 180 days after Apr. 21, 1992, and each 180 days thereafter.

PEACE PROCESS IN LIBERIA

Pub. L. 102-270, Apr. 16, 1992, 106 Stat. 106, provided: That (a) the Congress—

“(1) strongly supports the peace process for Liberia initiated by the Yamoussoukro peace accord;

“(2) urges all parties to abide by the terms of the Yamoussoukro agreement;

“(3) commends and congratulates the governments of the Economic Community of West African States (ECOWAS) for their leadership in seeking peace in Liberia; and

“(4) extends particularly praise to President Babangida of Nigeria, President Houphouet-Boigny of Cote d’Ivoire, and President Diouf of Senegal for their efforts to resolve this conflict.

“(b) AUTHORIZATION OF LIMITED ASSISTANCE.—Notwithstanding section 620(q) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2370(q)] or any similar provision, the President is authorized to provide—

“(1) nonpartisan election and democracy-building assistance to support democratic institutions in Liberia, and

“(2) assistance for the resettlement of refugees, the demobilization and retraining of troops, and the pro-

vision of other appropriate assistance to implement the Yamoussoukro peace accord:

*Provided*, That the President determines and so certifies to the Committee on Foreign Relations and the Committee on Appropriations of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs [now Committee on International Relations] and the Committee on Appropriations of the House of Representatives that Liberia has made significant progress toward democratization and that the provision of such assistance will assist that country in making further progress and is otherwise in the national interest of the United States. A separate determination and certification shall be required for each fiscal year in which such assistance is to be provided.”

SUSPENSION OF CERTAIN PROGRAMS AND ACTIVITIES  
RELATING TO THE PEOPLE’S REPUBLIC OF CHINA

Pub. L. 101-246, title IX, § 902, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 83, as amended by Pub. L. 102-549, title II, § 202(e), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3658, provided that:

“(a) SUSPENSIONS.—

“(1) OVERSEAS PRIVATE INVESTMENT CORPORATION.—The Overseas Private Investment Corporation shall continue to suspend the issuance of any new insurance, reinsurance, guarantees, financing, or other financial support with respect to the People’s Republic of China, unless the President makes a report under subsection (b)(1) or (2) of this section.

“(2) TRADE AND DEVELOPMENT AGENCY.—The President shall suspend the obligation of funds under the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [see Short Title note above] for any new activities of the Trade and Development Agency with respect to the People’s Republic of China, unless the President makes a report under subsection (b)(1) or (2) of this section.

“(3) MUNITIONS EXPORT LICENSES.—(A) The issuance of licenses under section 38 of the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2778] for the export to the People’s Republic of China of any defense article on the United States Munitions List, including helicopters and helicopter parts, shall continue to be suspended, subject to subparagraph (B), unless the President makes a report under subsection (b)(1) or (2) of this section.

“(B) The suspension set forth in subparagraph (A) shall not apply to systems and components designed specifically for inclusion in civil products and controlled as defense articles only for purposes of export to a controlled country, unless the President determines that the intended recipient of such items is the military or security forces of the People’s Republic of China.

“(4) CRIME CONTROL AND DETECTION INSTRUMENTS AND EQUIPMENT.—The issuance of any license under section 6(k) of the Export Administration Act of 1979 [50 App. U.S.C. 2405(k)] for the export to the People’s Republic of China of any crime control or detection instruments or equipment shall be suspended, unless the President makes a report under subsection (b)(1) or (2) of this section.

“(5) EXPORT OF SATELLITES FOR LAUNCH BY THE PEOPLE’S REPUBLIC OF CHINA.—Exports of any satellite of United States origin that is intended for launch from a launch vehicle owned by the People’s Republic of China shall remain suspended, unless the President makes a report under subsection (b)(1) or (2) of this section.

“(6) NUCLEAR COOPERATION WITH THE PEOPLE’S REPUBLIC OF CHINA.—(A) Any—

“(i) application for a license under the Export Administration Act of 1979 [50 App. U.S.C. 2401 et seq.] for the export to the People’s Republic of China for use in a nuclear production or utilization facility of any goods or technology which, as determined under section 309(c) of the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Act of 1978 [42 U.S.C. 2139a(c)], could be of significance for nuclear explosive purposes, or which, in the judgment of the President, is likely to be diverted for use in such a facility, for any nuclear ex-

plosive device, or for research on or development of any nuclear explosive device, shall be suspended.

“(ii) application for a license for the export to the People’s Republic of China of any nuclear material, facilities, or components subject to the Agreement shall be suspended.

“(iii) approval for the transfer or retransfer to the People’s Republic of China of any nuclear material, facilities, or components subject to the Agreement shall not be given, and

“(iv) specific authorization for assistance in any activities with respect to the People’s Republic of China relating to the use of nuclear energy under section 57b.(2) of the Atomic Energy Act of 1954 [42 U.S.C. 2077(b)(2)] shall not be given,

until the conditions specified in subparagraph (B) are met.

“(B) Subparagraph (A) applies until—

“(i) the President certifies to the Congress that the People’s Republic of China has provided clear and unequivocal assurances to the United States that it is not assisting and will not assist any non-nuclear-weapon state, either directly or indirectly, in acquiring nuclear explosive devices or the materials and components for such devices;

“(ii) the President makes the certifications and submits the report required by Public Law 99-183 [Dec. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 1174]; and

“(iii) the President makes a report under subsection (b)(1) or (2) of this section.

“(C) For purposes of this paragraph, the term ‘Agreement’ means the Agreement for Cooperation Between the Government of the United States of America and the Government of the People’s Republic of China Concerning Peaceful Uses of Nuclear Energy (done on July 23, 1985).

“(7) LIBERALIZATION OF EXPORT CONTROLS.—(A) The President shall negotiate with the governments participating in the group known as the Coordinating Committee (COCOM) to suspend, on a multilateral basis, any liberalization by the Coordinating Committee of controls on exports of goods and technology to the People’s Republic of China under section 5 of the Export Administration Act of 1979 [50 App. U.S.C. 2404], including—

“(i) the implementation of bulk licenses for exports to the People’s Republic of China; and

“(ii) the raising of the performance levels of goods or technology below which no authority or permission to export to the People’s Republic of China would be required.

“(B) The President shall oppose any liberalization by the Coordinating Committee of controls which is described in subparagraph (A)(ii), until the end of the 6-month period beginning on the date of enactment of this Act [Feb. 16, 1990] or until the President makes a report under subsection (b)(1) or (2) of this section, whichever occurs first.

“(b) TERMINATION OF SUSPENSIONS.—A report referred to in subsection (a) is a report by the President to the Congress either—

“(1) that the Government of the People’s Republic of China has made progress on a program of political reform throughout the country, including Tibet, which includes—

“(A) lifting of martial law;

“(B) halting of executions and other reprisals against individuals for the nonviolent expression of their political beliefs;

“(C) release of political prisoners;

“(D) increased respect for internationally recognized human rights, including freedom of expression, the press, assembly, and association; and

“(E) permitting a freer flow of information, including an end to the jamming of Voice of America and greater access for foreign journalists; or

“(2) that it is in the national interest of the United States to terminate a suspension under subsection (a)(1), (2), (3), (4), or (5), to terminate a suspension or disapproval under subsection (a)(6), or to terminate

the opposition required by subsection (a)(7), as the case may be.

“(c) REPORTING REQUIREMENT.—Sixty days after the date of enactment of this Act [Feb. 16, 1990], the President shall submit to the Congress a report on—

“(1) any steps taken by the Government of China to achieve the objectives described in subsection (b)(1);

“(2) the effect of multilateral sanctions on political and economic developments in China and on China’s international economic relations;

“(3) the impact of the President’s actions described in section 901(a)(9) [Pub. L. 101-246, title IX, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 80] and of the suspensions under subsection (a) of this section on—

“(A) political and economic developments in China;

“(B) the standard of living of the Chinese people;

“(C) relations between the United States and China; and

“(D) the actions taken by China to promote a settlement in Cambodia which will ensure Cambodian independence, facilitate an act of self-determination by the Cambodian people, and prevent the Khmer Rouge from returning to exclusive power;

“(4) the status of programs and activities suspended under subsection (a); and

“(5) the additional measures taken by the President under section 901(c) if repression in China deepens.”

#### LIMITATION ON ASSISTANCE TO PANAMANIAN DEFENSE FORCE

Pub. L. 100-456, div. A, title XIII, §1302, Sept. 29, 1988, 102 Stat. 2060, provided that:

“(a) LIMITATION.—The President may not use any funds appropriated to or for the use of any department, agency, or other entity of the United States for the purpose of providing assistance to the Panamanian Defense Force. The limitation in the preceding sentence shall cease to apply upon the submission by the President to Congress of a certification by the President—

“(1) that no armed forces of the Soviet Union, the Republic of Cuba, or the Republic of Nicaragua are present in the Republic of Panama (other than military attachés accredited to the Republic of Panama); and

“(2) that General Manuel Noriega has relinquished command of the Panamanian Defense Force and no longer holds any official position of leadership (either military or civilian) in the Republic of Panama.

“(b) CLARIFICATION.—Subsection (a) does not prohibit the President from obligating or expending any funds necessary for—

“(1) the defense of the Panama Canal,

“(2) the collection of intelligence,

“(3) the maintenance of United States Armed Forces in the Republic of Panama, or

“(4) the protection of United States interests in the Republic of Panama.

“(c) REPORT.—Not later than 30 days after the date of the enactment of this Act [Sept. 29, 1988], the President shall submit to Congress a detailed report, in both classified and unclassified form, indicating—

“(1) whether (and to what extent) military, paramilitary, or intelligence personnel of the Soviet Union, Cuba, or Nicaragua are present in the Republic of Panama; and

“(2) whether (and to what extent) the Panamanian Defense Force has coordinated with, cooperated with, supported, or received support from, any such personnel.”

#### CODIFICATION OF POLICY PROHIBITING NEGOTIATIONS WITH THE PALESTINE LIBERATION ORGANIZATION

Pub. L. 99-83, title XIII, §1302, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 280, as amended by Pub. L. 101-246, title I, §108, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 21, provided that:

“(a) UNITED STATES POLICY.—The United States in 1975 declared in a memorandum of agreement with Israel, and has reaffirmed since, that ‘The United States

will continue to adhere to its present policy with respect to the Palestine Liberation Organization, whereby it will not recognize or negotiate with the Palestine Liberation Organization so long as the Palestine Liberation Organization does not recognize Israel's right to exist and does not accept Security Council Resolutions 242 and 338.

“(b) REAFFIRMATION AND CODIFICATION OF POLICY.—The United States hereby reaffirms that policy. In accordance with that policy, no officer or employee of the United States Government and no agent or other individual acting on behalf of the United States Government shall negotiate with the Palestine Liberation Organization or any representatives thereof (except in emergency or humanitarian situations) unless and until the Palestine Liberation Organization recognizes Israel's right to exist, accepts United Nations Security Council Resolutions 242 and 338, and renounces the use of terrorism, except that no funds authorized to be appropriated by this or any other Act may be obligated or made available for the conduct of the current dialogue on the Middle East peace process with any representative of the Palestine Liberation Organization if the President knows and advises the Congress that that representative directly participated in the planning or execution of a particular terrorist activity which resulted in the death or kidnapping of a United States citizen.”

OBLIGATION OR EXPENDITURE OF FUNDS FOR PLANNING, ETC., MINING OF THE PORTS OR TERRITORIAL WATERS OF NICARAGUA

Pub. L. 98-369, div. B, title IX, § 2907, July 18, 1984, 98 Stat. 1210, provided that: “It is the sense of the Congress that no funds heretofore or hereafter appropriated in any Act of Congress shall be obligated or expended for the purpose of planning, directing, executing, or supporting the mining of the ports or territorial waters of Nicaragua.”

PROHIBITION ON CERTAIN ASSISTANCE TO THE KHMER ROUGE IN KAMPUCHEA

Pub. L. 98-164, title X, § 1005, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1058, provided that:

“(a) Notwithstanding any other provision of law, none of the funds authorized to be appropriated by this Act or any other Act may be obligated or expended for the purpose or with the effect of promoting, sustaining, or augmenting, directly or indirectly, the capacity of the Khmer Rouge or any of its members to conduct military or paramilitary operations in Kampuchea or elsewhere in Indochina.

“(b) All funds appropriated before the date of enactment of this section [Nov. 22, 1983] which were obligated but not expended for activities having the purpose or effect described in subsection (a) shall be deobligated and shall be deposited in the Treasury of the United States as miscellaneous receipts.

“(c) This section shall not be construed as limiting the provision of food, medicine, or other humanitarian assistance to the Kampuchean people.”

TERMINATION OF NONRECURRING ACTIVITIES UNDER FOREIGN ASSISTANCE ACT OF 1961 AND REMOVAL FROM LAW

Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(c), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1561, provided that: “Except as otherwise explicitly provided by their terms, amendments to the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [see Short Title note above] and the Arms Export Control Act [see Short Title note set out under section 2751 of this title] which are applicable only to a single fiscal or calendar year or which require reports or other actions on a nonrecurring basis shall be deemed to have expired and shall be removed from law upon the expiration of the applicable time periods for the fulfillment of the required actions.”

ASSISTANCE FOR PANAMA

Pub. L. 101-167, title V, § 561, Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1239, provided that:

“(a) Unless the President certifies to Congress that—

“(1) the Government of Panama has demonstrated substantial progress in assuring civilian control of the armed forces and that the Panama Defense Forces and its leaders have been removed from non-military activities and institutions;

“(2) an impartial investigation into allegations of illegal actions by members of the Panama Defense Force is being conducted;

“(3) a satisfactory agreement has been reached between the governing authorities and representatives of the opposition forces on conditions for free and fair elections; and

“(4) freedom of the press and other constitutional guarantees, including due process of law, are being restored to the Panamanian people;

then no United States assistance (including any such assistance appropriated and previously obligated) shall be obligated or expended for programs, projects, or activities which assist or lend support for the Noriega regime, or ministries of government under the control of the Noriega regime, or any successor regime that does not meet the criteria specified in subsection (a) of this section in this fiscal year and any fiscal year thereafter, and none of the funds appropriated or otherwise made available in this Act, or any other Act, shall be used to finance any participation of the United States in joint military exercises conducted in Panama during the fiscal year 1990.

“(b) It is the sense of the Congress that if the conditions described in paragraphs (1) through (4) of subsection (a) have been certified as having been met, then not only will United States assistance be restored, but increased levels of such assistance should be considered for Panama.

“(c) For purposes of this section, the term ‘United States assistance’ means assistance of any kind which is provided by grant, sale, loan, lease, credit, guaranty, or insurance, or by any other means, by any agency or instrumentality of the United States Government, including—

“(1) assistance under the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [see Short Title note above] (including programs under title IV of chapter 2 of part I of such Act [22 U.S.C. 2191 et seq.]);

“(2) sales, credits, and guarantees under the Arms Export Control Act [see Short Title note set out under section 2751 of this title];

“(3) sales under title I [7 U.S.C. 1701 et seq.] or III [7 U.S.C. 1727 et seq.] and donations under title II [7 U.S.C. 1721 et seq.] of the Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954 of nonfood commodities;

“(4) other financing programs of the Commodity Credit Corporation for export sales of nonfood commodities;

“(5) financing under the Export-Import Bank Act of 1945 [12 U.S.C. 635 et seq.]; and

“(6) assistance provided by the Central Intelligence Agency or assistance provided by any other entity or component of the United States Government if such assistance is carried out in connection with, or for purposes of conducting, intelligence or intelligence-related activities except that this shall not include activities undertaken solely to collect necessary intelligence;

except that the term ‘United States assistance’ does not include (A) assistance under chapter 1 of part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.] insofar as such assistance is provided through private and voluntary organizations or other nongovernmental agencies, (B) assistance which involves the donations of food or medicine, (C) disaster relief assistance (including any assistance under chapter 9 of part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2292 et seq.]), (D) assistance for refugees, (E) assistance under the Inter-American Foundation Act [22 U.S.C. 290f], (F) assistance necessary for the purpose of continuing participant training programs (including scholarships) already being supported as of the date of any prohibition

of assistance otherwise applicable to Panama, or (G) assistance made available for termination costs arising from the requirements of this section.

“(d) The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Directors to the International Financial Institutions (the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, the International Finance Corporation, and the Inter-American Development Bank) to vote against any loan to Panama, unless the President has certified in advance that the conditions set forth in subsection (a) of this section have been met.”

[Functions of President under this note were delegated to Secretary of State by section 1-201(a)(28) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.]

Similar provisions were contained in the following prior appropriation acts:

Pub. L. 100-461, title V, § 564, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-40.

Pub. L. 100-202, § 101(e) [title V, § 570], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-174.

Pub. L. 96-92, § 28, Oct. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 711. [Repealed by Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(11), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.]

#### FINAL ACCOUNTING OF AMERICANS MISSING IN ACTION IN VIETNAM

Pub. L. 95-426, title VII, § 705, Oct. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 992, as amended by Pub. L. 97-241, title V, § 505(a)(2), (b)(2), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 299, provided that: “The President shall continue to take all possible steps to obtain a final accounting of all Americans missing in action in Vietnam.” Similar provisions were contained in the following acts:

Pub. L. 95-105, title V, § 505, Aug. 17, 1977, 91 Stat. 858, as amended by Pub. L. 97-241, title V, § 505(a)(3), (b)(2), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 299.

Pub. L. 95-88, title I, § 132, Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 544, as amended by Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(6), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.

#### PLAN FOR INCREASED MINORITY BUSINESS PARTICIPATION IN FOREIGN ASSISTANCE ACTIVITIES; MINORITY RESOURCE CENTER SECTION AS IMPLEMENTING ADMINISTRATIVE UNIT; FUNCTIONS, DUTIES, ETC., OF CENTER

Section 133 of Pub. L. 95-88, as amended by Pub. L. 96-53, title I, § 123, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 366; Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(6), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560, provided that:

“(a) The Administrator of the agency primarily responsible for administering part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [this subchapter] shall prepare and transmit to the Congress, not later than 30 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Aug. 3, 1977], a detailed plan for the establishment of a section on minority business within such agency.

“(b) Such plan shall include, but shall not be limited to—

“(1) a description of where the section on minority business will be located in such agency’s organizational structure and what relevant lines of authority will be established;

“(2) a listing of the specific responsibilities that will be assigned to the section on minority business to enable it to increase, in a rational and effective manner, participation of minority business enterprises in activities funded by such agency;

“(3) a design for a time-phase system for bringing about expanded minority business enterprise participation, including specific recommendations for percentage allocations of contracts by such agency to minority business enterprises;

“(4) a proposed reporting system that will permit objective measuring of the degree of participation of minority business enterprises in comparison to the total activities funded by such agency;

“(5) a detailed projection of the administrative budgetary impact of the establishment of the section on minority business; and

“(6) a detailed set of objective criteria upon which determinations will be made as to the qualifications of minority business enterprises to receive contracts funded by such agency.

“(c)(1) Upon the enactment of the International Development Cooperation Act of 1979 [Aug. 14, 1979], the section on minority business established pursuant to subsection (a) shall be redesignated as the Minority Resource Center (hereafter in this section referred to as the ‘Center’) which shall be responsible for increasing the participation of economically and socially disadvantaged business enterprises in contract, procurement, grant, and research and development activities funded by the agency primarily responsible for administering part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [this subchapter] (hereafter in this section referred to as the ‘agency’).

“(2) The Center shall—

“(A) establish, maintain, and disseminate information to, and otherwise serve as an information clearinghouse for, economically and socially disadvantaged business enterprises regarding business opportunities in development assistance programs funded by the agency;

“(B) design and conduct programs to encourage, promote, and assist economically and socially disadvantaged business enterprises to secure direct contracts, host country contracts, operation expatriate contracts, indefinite quantity contracts, subcontracts, projects, grants, and research and development contracts in order for such enterprises to participate in such development assistance programs;

“(C) conduct market research, planning, economic and business analyses, and feasibility studies to identify business opportunities in such development assistance programs;

“(D) develop support mechanisms which will enable socially and economically disadvantaged businesses to take advantage of business opportunities in such development assistance programs; and

“(E) enter into such contracts (to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in appropriation Acts), cooperative agreements, or other transactions as may be necessary in the conduct of its functions under this section.

“(3) The Administrator of the agency and the Secretary of State shall provide the Center with such relevant information, including procurement schedules, bids, and specifications with respect to development assistance programs funded by the agency, as may be requested by the Center in connection with the performance of its functions under this section.

“(4) There shall be a Director of the Center who shall be the chief executive officer of the Center. The Director shall be appointed by the Administrator of the agency.

“(5)(A) For the purposes of this section, the term ‘economically and socially disadvantaged enterprise’ means a business—

“(i) which is at least 51 percent owned by one or more socially and economically disadvantaged individuals or, in the case of a publicly owned business, at least 51 percent of the stock of which is owned by one or more socially and economically disadvantaged individuals; and

“(ii) whose management and daily business operations are controlled by one or more such individuals.

“(B) Socially disadvantaged individuals are those who have been subjected to racial or ethnic prejudice or cultural bias because of their identity as a member of a group without regard to their individual qualities.

“(C) Economically disadvantaged individuals are those socially disadvantaged individuals whose ability to compete in the free enterprise system has been impaired due to diminished capital and credit opportunities as compared to others in the same business area who are not socially disadvantaged. In determining the

degree of diminished credit and capital opportunities, the Administrator of the agency shall consider, but not be limited to, the assets and net worth of the socially disadvantaged individual.

“(6) [Repealed. Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, §734(a)(6), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.]

“(7) Of the funds available to the agency for operating expenses, up to \$950,000 for fiscal year 1980 may be allocated to the Center to carry out its functions under this section.

“(8) If the Administrator of the agency determines that such a consolidation would significantly further the purposes of this section and would eliminate unnecessary duplication of activity, the Administrator may consolidate the Center with the Office of Small and Disadvantaged Business Utilization established in the agency by section 15(k) of the Small Business Act [section 644(k) of Title 15, Commerce and Trade]. Any such consolidation shall ensure that all the functions specified in paragraph (2) of this subsection continue to be carried out. Before implementing any such consolidation, the Administrator shall submit to the Congress a detailed report setting forth the reasons for the proposed consolidation.”

[Amendment by Pub. L. 96-53 (adding subsec. (c) to section 133 of Pub. L. 95-88) effective Aug. 14, 1979, see section 512(b) of Pub. L. 96-53, set out as an Effective Date of 1979 Amendment note above.]

#### USE OF ACCRUED FOREIGN CURRENCIES

Section 40 of Pub. L. 93-189 provided that: “Effective July 1, 1974, no amount of any foreign currency (including principal and interest from loan repayments) which accrues in connection with any sale for foreign currency under any provision of law may be used under any agreement entered into after the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 17, 1973], or any revision or extension entered into after such date of any prior or subsequent agreement, to provide any assistance to any foreign country to procure equipment, materials, facilities, or services for the common defense, including internal security, unless such agreement is specifically authorized by legislation enacted after such date.”

#### RELIGIOUS FREEDOM AND PERSECUTION

Pub. L. 88-633, pt. V, §501, Oct. 7, 1964, 78 Stat. 1015, provided that: “It is the sense of the Congress that the United States deeply believes in the freedom of religion for all people and is opposed to infringement of this freedom anywhere in the world. The Congress condemns the persecution of any persons because of their religion. It is further the sense of Congress that all persons should be permitted the free exercise of religion and the pursuit of their culture.”

#### COMMUNIST REGIME IN CHINA

Pub. L. 91-194, title I, §105, Feb. 9, 1970, 84 Stat. 7, related to Congressional opposition to the seating in the United Nations of the Communist regime in China as the representative of China, and requested the President, in the event of the seating of representatives of the Chinese Communist regime in the Security Council or the General Assembly of the United Nations, to inform the Congress of the implications of the seating upon the foreign policy of the United States. Similar provisions were contained in the following prior acts:

Oct. 17, 1968, Pub. L. 90-581, title I, §105, 82 Stat. 1139.  
 Jan. 2, 1968, Pub. L. 90-249, title I, §105, 81 Stat. 938.  
 Oct. 15, 1966, Pub. L. 89-691, title I, §105, 80 Stat. 1020.  
 Oct. 20, 1965, Pub. L. 89-273, title I, §105, 79 Stat. 1003.  
 Oct. 7, 1964, Pub. L. 88-634, title I, §105, 78 Stat. 1017.  
 Jan. 6, 1964, Pub. L. 88-258, title I, §105, 77 Stat. 858.  
 Oct. 23, 1962, Pub. L. 87-872, title I, §105, 76 Stat. 1164.  
 Sept. 30, 1961, Pub. L. 87-329, title I, §107, 75 Stat. 718.  
 Sept. 2, 1960, Pub. L. 86-704, title I, §107, 74 Stat. 779.  
 Sept. 28, 1959, Pub. L. 86-383, title I, §112, 73 Stat. 720.  
 Aug. 28, 1958, Pub. L. 85-853, §105, 72 Stat. 1101.  
 Sept. 3, 1957, Pub. L. 85-279, §109, 71 Stat. 604.  
 July 31, 1956, ch. 803, §108, 70 Stat. 735.

July 8, 1955, ch. 301, §12, 69 Stat. 290 (repealed by Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §642(a)(3), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460).

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2151-1, 2151v, 2162, 2399c, 3502 of this title.

### § 2151-1. Development assistance policy

#### (a) Principal purpose of bilateral development assistance

The Congress finds that the efforts of developing countries to build and maintain the social and economic institutions necessary to achieve self-sustaining growth and to provide opportunities to improve the quality of life for their people depend primarily upon successfully marshaling their own economic and human resources. The Congress recognizes that the magnitude of these efforts exceeds the resources of developing countries and therefore accepts that there will be a long-term need for wealthy countries to contribute additional resources for development purposes. The United States should take the lead in concert with other nations to mobilize such resources from public and private sources.

Provision of development resources must be adapted to the needs and capabilities of specific developing countries. United States assistance to countries with low per capita incomes which have limited access to private external resources should primarily be provided on concessional terms. Assistance to other developing countries should generally consist of programs which facilitate their access to private capital markets, investment, and technical skills, whether directly through guarantee or reimbursable programs by the United States Government or indirectly through callable capital provided to the international financial institutions.

Bilateral assistance and United States participation in multilateral institutions shall emphasize programs in support of countries which pursue development strategies designed to meet basic human needs and achieve self-sustaining growth with equity.

The Congress declares that the principal purpose of United States bilateral development assistance is to help the poor majority of people in developing countries to participate in a process of equitable growth through productive work and to influence decisions that shape their lives, with the goal of increasing their incomes and their access to public services which will enable them to satisfy their basic needs and lead lives of decency, dignity, and hope. Activities shall be emphasized that effectively involve the poor in development by expanding their access to the economy through services and institutions at the local level, increasing their participation in the making of decisions that affect their lives, increasing labor-intensive production and the use of appropriate technology, expanding productive investment and services out from major cities to small towns and rural areas, and otherwise providing opportunities for the poor to improve their lives through their own efforts. Participation of the United States in multilateral institutions shall also place appropriate emphasis on these principles.

**(b) Form of assistance; principles governing assistance**

Assistance under this part should be used not only for the purpose of transferring financial resources to developing countries, but also to help countries solve development problems in accordance with a strategy that aims to insure wide participation of the poor in the benefits of development on a sustained basis. Moreover, assistance shall be provided in a prompt and effective manner, using appropriate United States institutions for carrying out this strategy. In order to achieve these objectives and the broad objectives set forth in section 2151 of this title and in subsection (a) of this section, bilateral development assistance authorized by this chapter shall be carried out in accordance with the following principles:

(1) Development is primarily the responsibility of the people of the developing countries themselves. Assistance from the United States shall be used in support of, rather than substitution for, the self-help efforts that are essential to successful development programs and shall be concentrated in those countries that take positive steps to help themselves. Maximum effort shall be made, in the administration of subchapter I of this chapter, to stimulate the involvement of the people in the development process through the encouragement of democratic participation in private and local governmental activities and institution building appropriate to the requirements of the recipient countries.

(2) Development planning must be the responsibility of each sovereign country. United States assistance should be administered in a collaborative style to support the development goals chosen by each country receiving assistance.

(3) United States bilateral development assistance should give high priority to undertakings submitted by host governments which directly improve the lives of the poorest of their people and their capacity to participate in the development of their countries, while also helping such governments enhance their planning, technical, and administrative capabilities needed to insure the success of such undertakings.

(4) Development assistance provided under this part shall be concentrated in countries which will make the most effective use of such assistance to help satisfy basic human needs of poor people through equitable growth, especially in those countries having the greatest need for outside assistance. In order to make possible consistent and informed judgments in this respect, the President shall assess the commitment and progress of countries in moving toward the objectives and purposes of this part by utilizing criteria, including but not limited to the following:

(A) increase in agricultural productivity per unit of land through small-farm, labor-intensive agriculture;

(B) reduction of infant mortality;

(C) control of population growth;

(D) promotion of greater equality of income distribution, including measures such as more progressive taxation and more equitable returns to small farmers;

(E) reduction of rates of unemployment and underemployment; and

(F) increase in literacy.

(5) United States development assistance should focus on critical problems in those functional sectors which affect the lives of the majority of the people in the developing countries; food production and nutrition; rural development and generation of gainful employment; population planning and health; environment and natural resources; education, development administration, and human resource development; and energy development and production.

(6) United States assistance shall encourage and promote the participation of women in the national economies of developing countries and the improvement of women's status as an important means of promoting the total development effort.

(7) United States bilateral assistance shall recognize that the prosperity of developing countries and effective development efforts require the adoption of an overall strategy that promotes the development, production, and efficient utilization of energy and, therefore, consideration shall be given to the full implications of such assistance on the price, availability, and consumption of energy in recipient countries.

(8) United States cooperation in development should be carried out to the maximum extent possible through the private sector, including those institutions which already have ties in the developing areas, such as educational institutions, cooperatives, credit unions, free labor unions, and private and voluntary agencies.

(9) To the maximum extent practicable, United States private investment should be encouraged in economic and social development programs to which the United States lends support.

(10) Assistance shall be planned and utilized to encourage regional cooperation by developing countries in the solution of common problems and the development of shared resources.

(11) Assistance efforts of the United States shall be planned and furnished to the maximum extent practicable in coordination and cooperation with assistance efforts of other countries, including the planning and implementation of programs and projects on a multilateral and multidonor basis.

(12) United States bilateral development assistance should be concentrated on projects which do not involve large-scale capital transfers. However, to the extent that such assistance does involve large-scale capital transfers, it should be furnished in association with contributions from other countries working together in a multilateral framework.

(13) United States encouragement of policy reforms is necessary if developing countries are to achieve economic growth with equity.

(14) Development assistance should, as a fundamental objective, promote private sector activity in open and competitive markets in developing countries, recognizing such activity to be a productive and efficient means of achieving equitable and long term economic growth.

(15) United States cooperation in development should recognize as essential the need of developing countries to have access to appropriate technology in order to improve food and water, health and housing, education and employment, and agriculture and industry.

(16) United States assistance should focus on establishing and upgrading the institutional capacities of developing countries in order to promote long term development. An important component of institution building involves training to expand the human resource potential of people in developing countries.

**(c) Worldwide cooperative effort to overcome aspects of absolute poverty**

The Congress, recognizing the desirability of overcoming the worst aspects of absolute poverty by the end of this century by, among other measures, substantially lowering infant mortality and birth rates, and increasing life expectancy, food production, literacy, and employment, encourages the President to explore with other countries, through all appropriate channels, the feasibility of a worldwide cooperative effort to overcome the worst aspects of absolute poverty and to assure self-reliant growth in the developing countries by the year 2000.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §102, as added Pub. L. 95-424, title I, §101, Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 938; amended Pub. L. 96-53, title I, §104(a), Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 360; Pub. L. 99-83, title III, §301, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 213.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (b), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

1985—Subsec. (b)(13) to (16). Pub. L. 99-83 added pars. (13) to (16).

1979—Subsec. (b)(5). Pub. L. 96-53, §104(a)(1), inserted applicability to energy development and production.

Subsec. (b)(7). Pub. L. 96-53, §104(a)(2), inserted applicability to promotion of development and production of energy.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83 provided that: "Except as otherwise provided in this Act, this Act [see Short Title of 1985 Amendment note set out under section 2151 of this title] shall take effect on October 1, 1985."

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1979 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-53 effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 512(a) of Pub. L. 96-53, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as an Effective Date of 1978 Amendment note under section 2151 of this title.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by section 1-102(a)(1), (e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2151f, 2151u, 2151v, 2293, 3502 of this title.

**§2151a. Agricultural development in rural areas**

**(a) Authorization to President to furnish assistance; appropriations**

(1) In recognition of the fact that the great majority of the people of developing countries live in rural areas and are dependent on agriculture and agricultural-related pursuits for their livelihood, the President is authorized to furnish assistance, on such terms and conditions as he may determine, for agriculture, rural development, and nutrition—

(A) to alleviate starvation, hunger, and malnutrition;

(B) to expand significantly the provision of basic services to rural poor people to enhance their capacity for self-help; and

(C) to help create productive farm and off-farm employment in rural areas to provide a more viable economic base and enhance opportunities for improved incomes, living standards, and contributions by rural poor people to the economic and social development of their countries.

(2) There are authorized to be appropriated to the President for purposes of this section, in addition to funds otherwise available for such purposes, \$760,000,000 for fiscal year 1986 and \$760,000,000 for fiscal year 1987. Of these amounts, the President may use such amounts as he deems appropriate to carry out the provisions of section 316 of the International Security and Development Cooperation Act of 1980. Amounts appropriated under this section are authorized to remain available until expended.

(3) Of the amounts authorized to be appropriated in paragraph (2) for the fiscal year 1987, not less than \$2,000,000 shall be available only for the purpose of controlling and eradicating amblyomma variegatum (heartwater) in bovine animals in the Caribbean.

**(b) Use of assistance primarily in aid of rural poor; multilateral infrastructure projects; forestry projects**

(1) Assistance provided under this section shall be used primarily for activities which are specifically designed to increase the productivity and income of the rural poor, through such means as creation and strengthening of local institutions linked to the regional and national levels; organization of a system of financial institutions which provide both savings and credit services to the poor; stimulation of small, labor-intensive enterprises in rural towns; improvement of marketing facilities and systems; expansion of rural infrastructure and utilities such as farm-to-market roads, water management systems, land improvement, energy, and storage facilities; establishment of more equi-



table and more secure land tenure arrangements; and creation and strengthening of systems to provide other services and supplies needed by farmers, such as extension, research, training, fertilizer, water, forestry, soil conservation, and improved seed, in ways which assure access to them by small farmers.

(2) In circumstances where development of major infrastructure is necessary to achieve the objectives set forth in this section, assistance for that purpose should be furnished under this part in association with significant contributions from other countries working together in a multilateral framework. Infrastructure projects so assisted should be complemented by other measures to ensure that the benefits of the infrastructure reach the poor.

(3) The Congress recognizes that the accelerating loss of forests and tree cover in developing countries undermines and offsets efforts to improve agricultural production and nutrition and otherwise to meet the basic human needs of the poor. Deforestation results in increased flooding, reduction in water supply for agricultural capacity, loss of firewood and needed wood products, and loss of valuable plants and animals. In order to maintain and increase forest resources, the President is authorized to provide assistance under this section for forestry projects which are essential to fulfill the fundamental purposes of this section. Emphasis shall be given to community woodlots, agroforestry, reforestation, protection of watershed forests, and more effective forest management.

**(c) Increased agricultural production in least developed countries**

The Congress finds that the greatest potential for significantly expanding availability of food for people in rural areas and augmenting world food production at relatively low cost lies in increasing the productivity of small farmers who constitute a majority of the agricultural producers in developing countries. Increasing the emphasis on rural development and expanded food production in the poorest nations of the developing world is a matter of social justice and a principal element contributing to broadly based economic growth, as well as an important factor in alleviating inflation in the industrialized countries. In the allocation of funds under this section, special attention shall be given to increasing agricultural production in countries which have been designated as "least developed" by the United Nations General Assembly.

**(d) Coordination with population planning and health programs**

Assistance provided under this section shall also be used in coordination with programs carried out under section 2151b of this title to help improve nutrition of the people of developing countries through encouragement of increased production of crops with greater nutritional value; improvement of planning, research, and education with respect to nutrition, particularly with reference to improvement and expanded use of indigenously produced foodstuffs; and the undertaking of pilot or demonstration programs explicitly addressing the problem of malnutrition of poor and vulnerable people. In particular, the President is encouraged—

(1) to devise and carry out in partnership with developing countries a strategy for programs of nutrition and health improvement for mothers and children, including breast feeding; and

(2) to provide technical, financial, and material support to individuals or groups at the local level for such programs.

**(e) Use of local currency proceeds from sales of commodities**

Local currency proceeds from sales of commodities provided under the Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954 [7 U.S.C. 1691 et seq.] which are owned by foreign governments shall be used whenever practicable to carry out the provisions of this section.

**(f) National food security policies and programs; bilateral and multilateral assistance**

The Congress finds that the efforts of developing countries to enhance their national food security deserves encouragement as a matter of United States development assistance policy. Measures complementary to assistance for expanding food production in developing countries are needed to help assure that food becomes increasingly available on a regular basis to the poor in such countries. Therefore, United States bilateral assistance under this chapter and the Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954 [7 U.S.C. 1691 et seq.], and United States participation in multilateral institutions, shall emphasize policies and programs which assist developing countries to increase their national food security by improving their food policies and management and by strengthening national food reserves, with particular concern for the needs of the poor, through measures encouraging domestic production, building national food reserves, expanding available storage facilities, reducing postharvest food losses, and improving food distribution.

**(g) International Fund for Agricultural Development; participation and contributions; availability of appropriations**

(1) In order to carry out the purposes of this section, the President may continue United States participation in and may make contributions to the International Fund for Agricultural Development.

(2) Of the aggregate amount authorized to be appropriated to carry out subchapter I of this chapter, up to \$50,000,000 for fiscal year 1986 and up to \$50,000,000 for fiscal year 1987 may be made available, by appropriation or by transfer, for United States contributions to the second replenishment of the International Fund for Agricultural Development.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §103, as added Pub. L. 93-189, §2(3), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 715; amended Pub. L. 93-559, §2, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1795; Pub. L. 94-161, title III, §302, Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 856; Pub. L. 95-88, title I, §102, Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 534; Pub. L. 95-424, title I, §103(a), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 943; Pub. L. 96-53, title I, §101, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 359; Pub. L. 96-533, title III, §301, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3145; Pub. L. 97-113, title III, §301(a), (c), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1531, 1532; Pub. L. 99-83, title III, §302, title X, §1001, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 214, 270; Pub. L. 99-399, title XIII, §1304, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 898.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 316 of the International Security and Development Cooperation Act of 1980, referred to in subsec. (a)(2), is section 316 of Pub. L. 96-533, title III, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3149, set out as a note below.

The Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954, referred to in subssecs. (e) and (f), is act July 10, 1954, ch. 469, 68 Stat. 454, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 41 (§ 1691 et seq.) of Title 7, Agriculture. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1691 of Title 7 and Tables.

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (f), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

## REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§ 2346 et seq.), VI (§ 2348 et seq.), and VIII (§ 2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

## AMENDMENTS

1986—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 99-399 added par. (3).

1985—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 99-83, § 302, substituted "\$760,000,000 for fiscal year 1986 and \$760,000,000 for fiscal year 1987. Of these amounts, the President may use such amounts as he deems appropriate to carry out the provisions of section 316 of the International Security and Development Cooperation Act of 1980." for "\$700,000,000 for the fiscal year 1982 and \$700,000,000 for the fiscal year 1983, of which up to \$1,000,000 for each such fiscal year shall be available only to carry out section 316 of the International Security and Development Cooperation Act of 1980."

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 99-83, § 1001, amended subsec. (g) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (g) read as follows: "In order to carry out the purposes of this section, the President may continue to participate in and may provide, on such terms and conditions as he may determine, up to \$180,000,000 to the International Fund for Agricultural Development. There are authorized to be appropriated to the President for the purposes of this subsection \$180,000,000, except that not more than \$40,500,000 may be appropriated under this subsection for the fiscal year 1982. Amounts appropriated under this subsection are authorized to remain available until expended."

1981—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 97-113, § 301(a), substituted "\$700,000,000 for the fiscal year 1982 and \$700,000,000 for the fiscal year 1983, of which up to \$1,000,000 for each such fiscal year shall be available only to carry out section 316 of the International Security and Development Cooperation Act of 1980" for "\$713,500,000 for the fiscal year 1981".

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 97-113, § 301(c), added subsec. (g).

1980—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 96-533 substituted appropriations authorization of \$713,500,000 for fiscal year 1981 for such authorization of \$659,000,000 for fiscal year 1980.

1979—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 96-53, § 101(a), substituted provisions authorizing appropriations of \$659,000,000 for fiscal year 1980, for provisions authorizing appropriations of \$665,213,000 for fiscal year 1979.

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 96-53, § 101(b), added par. (3).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 96-53, § 101(c), added subsec. (f).

1978—Pub. L. 95-424 amended section generally, updating and clarifying the purposes of assistance to more accurately reflect the range of activities authorized by this section.

1977—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 95-88, § 102(a), struck out provisions authorizing appropriations of \$291,000,000 for

the fiscal year 1974, \$500,000,000 for the fiscal year 1975, and \$618,800,000 for the fiscal year 1976, and inserted provisions authorizing the appropriation of \$580,000,000 for the fiscal year 1978.

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 95-88, § 102(b), added subsec. (h).

1975—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94-161, § 302(1), authorized appropriation of \$618,800,000 and \$745,000,000 for fiscal years 1976 and 1977, respectively.

Subsecs. (c) to (g). Pub. L. 94-161, § 302(2), added subssecs. (c) to (g).

1974—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 93-559, § 2(1), (2), designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and increased appropriations authorization for fiscal year 1975 to \$500,000,000 from \$291,000,000.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 93-559, § 2(3), added subsec. (b).

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1979 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-53 effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 512(a) of Pub. L. 96-53, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS; ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Functions of President under this section delegated and funds available under this chapter allocated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by sections 1-102(a)(1), (e) and 1-801(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

## WORLD HUNGER

Section 316 of Pub. L. 96-533 provided:

"(a) In order to further the purposes of section 103 of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [this section], the Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency shall encourage the ongoing work of private and voluntary organizations to deal with world hunger problems abroad. To this end, the Director shall help facilitate widespread public discussion, analysis, and review of the issues raised by the Report of the Presidential Commission on World Hunger of March 1980, especially the issues raised by the Commission's call for increased public awareness of the political, economic, technical, and social factors relating to hunger and poverty.

"(b) As a means of carrying out subsection (a), and to ensure the effectiveness of private and voluntary organizations in dealing with world hunger abroad, the Director is urged to provide assistance to private and voluntary organizations engaged in facilitating public discussion of hunger and other related issues."

## REDUCTION OF POSTHARVEST LOSSES OF FOOD

Section 317 of Pub. L. 96-533 provided: "It is the sense of the Congress that—

"(1) the President should reaffirm the policy of the United States Government to support the goal established by the United Nations General Assembly of reducing by 50 percent postharvest losses of food in developing countries; and

"(2) the President, acting through the Agency for International Development, should increase substantially the proportion of funds made available under the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title] for the purpose of assisting, together with other donor countries and with developing countries, in the reduction of postharvest losses of food in developing countries."

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2151b, 2151d, 2151f, 2151h, 2151p-1, 2151u, 2220a, 2220d, 2293, 2346, 3262 of this title.

**§ 2151a-1. Agricultural research**

Agricultural research carried out under this chapter shall (1) take account of the special needs of small farmers in the determination of research priorities, (2) include research on the interrelationships among technology, institutions, and economic, social, environmental, and cultural factors affecting small-farm agriculture, and (3) make extensive use of field testing to adapt basic research to local conditions. Special emphasis shall be placed on disseminating research results to the farms on which they can be put to use, and especially on institutional and other arrangements needed to assure that small farmers have effective access to both new and existing improved technology.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §103A, as added Pub. L. 94-161, title III, §303, Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 857; amended Pub. L. 95-424, title I, §103(d), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 945.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

## AMENDMENTS

1978—Pub. L. 95-424 inserted "environmental" after "social" in cl. 2.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2151f, 2151h, 2220a, 2293, 2346 of this title.

**§ 2151b. Population planning and health programs****(a) Congressional declaration of policy**

The Congress recognizes that poor health conditions and uncontrolled population growth can vitiate otherwise successful development efforts.

Large families in developing countries are the result of complex social and economic factors which change relatively slowly among the poor majority least affected by economic progress, as well as the result of a lack of effective birth control. Therefore, effective family planning depends upon economic and social change as well as the delivery of services and is often a matter of political and religious sensitivity. While every country has the right to determine its own policies with respect to population growth, voluntary population planning programs can make a substantial contribution to economic development, higher living standards, and improved health and nutrition.

Good health conditions are a principal element in improved quality of life and contribute

to the individual's capacity to participate in the development process, while poor health and debilitating disease can limit productivity.

**(b) Assistance for voluntary population planning**

In order to increase the opportunities and motivation for family planning and to reduce the rate of population growth, the President is authorized to furnish assistance, on such terms and conditions as he may determine, for voluntary population planning. In addition to the provision of family planning information and services, including also information and services which relate to and support natural family planning methods, and the conduct of directly relevant demographic research, population planning programs shall emphasize motivation for small families.

**(c) Assistance for health programs; special health needs of children and mothers; Child Survival Fund; promotion of immunization and oral rehydration**

(1) In order to contribute to improvements in the health of the greatest number of poor people in developing countries, the President is authorized to furnish assistance, on such terms and conditions as he may determine, for health programs. Assistance under this subsection shall be used primarily for basic integrated health services, safe water and sanitation, disease prevention and control, and related health planning and research. This assistance shall emphasize self-sustaining community-based health programs by means such as training of health auxiliary and other appropriate personnel, support for the establishment and evaluation of projects that can be replicated on a broader scale, measures to improve management of health programs, and other services and supplies to support health and disease prevention programs.

(2)(A) In carrying out the purposes of this subsection, the President shall promote, encourage, and undertake activities designed to deal directly with the special health needs of children and mothers. Such activities should utilize simple, available technologies which can significantly reduce childhood mortality, such as improved and expanded immunization programs, oral rehydration to combat diarrhoeal diseases, and education programs aimed at improving nutrition and sanitation and at promoting child spacing. In carrying out this paragraph, guidance shall be sought from knowledgeable health professionals from outside the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter. In addition to government-to-government programs, activities pursuant to this paragraph should include support for appropriate activities of the types described in this paragraph which are carried out by international organizations (which may include international organizations receiving funds under part III of this subchapter) and by private and voluntary organizations, and should include encouragement to other donors to support such types of activities.

(B) In addition to amounts otherwise available for such purpose, there are authorized to be appropriated to the President \$25,000,000 for fiscal year 1986 and \$75,000,000 for fiscal year 1987 for use in carrying out this paragraph. Amounts ap-

propriated under this subparagraph are authorized to remain available until expended.

(C) Appropriations pursuant to subparagraph (B) may be referred to as the “Child Survival Fund”.

(3) The Congress recognizes that the promotion of primary health care is a major objective of the foreign assistance program. The Congress further recognizes that simple, relatively low cost means already exist to reduce incidence of communicable diseases among children, mothers, and infants. The promotion of vaccines for immunization, and salts for oral rehydration, therefore, is an essential feature of the health assistance program. To this end, the Congress expects the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter to set as a goal the protection of not less than 80 percent of all children, in those countries in which such agency has established development programs, from immunizable diseases by January 1, 1991. Of the aggregate amounts made available for fiscal year 1987 to carry out paragraph (2) of this subsection (relating to the Child Survival Fund) and to carry out subsection (c) of this section (relating to development assistance for health), \$50,000,000 shall be used to carry out this paragraph.

**(d) Administration of assistance**

(1) Assistance under this part shall be administered so as to give particular attention to the interrelationship between (A) population growth, and (B) development and overall improvement in living standards in developing countries, and to the impact of all programs, projects, and activities on population growth. All appropriate activities proposed for financing under this part shall be designed to build motivation for smaller families through modification of economic and social conditions supportive of the desire for large families, in programs such as education in and out of school, nutrition, disease control, maternal and child health services, improvements in the status and employment of women, agricultural production, rural development, and assistance to the urban poor, and through community-based development programs which give recognition to people motivated to limit the size of their families. Population planning programs shall be coordinated with other programs aimed at reducing the infant mortality rate, providing better nutrition for pregnant women and infants, and raising the standard of living of the poor.

(2) Since the problems of malnutrition, disease, and rapid population growth are closely related, planning for assistance to be provided under subsections (b) and (c) of this section and under section 2151a of this title shall be coordinated to the maximum extent practicable.

(3) Assistance provided under this section shall emphasize low-cost integrated delivery systems for health, nutrition, and family planning for the poorest people, with particular attention to the needs of mothers and young children, using paramedical and auxiliary medical personnel, clinics and health posts, commercial distribution systems, and other modes of community outreach.

**(e) Research and analysis**

(1) Health and population research and analysis carried out under this chapter shall—

(A) be undertaken to the maximum extent practicable in developing countries by developing country personnel, linked as appropriate with private and governmental biomedical research facilities within the United States;

(B) take account of the special needs of the poor people of developing countries in the determination of research priorities; and

(C) make extensive use of field testing to adapt basic research to local conditions.

(2) The President is authorized to study the complex factors affecting population growth in developing countries and to identify factors which might motivate people to plan family size or to space their children.

**(f) Prohibition on use of funds for performance or research respecting abortions or involuntary sterilization**

(1) None of the funds made available to carry out subchapter I of this chapter may be used to pay for the performance of abortions as a method of family planning or to motivate or coerce any person to practice abortions.

(2) None of the funds made available to carry out subchapter I of this chapter may be used to pay for the performance of involuntary sterilizations as a method of family planning or to coerce or provide any financial incentive to any person to undergo sterilizations.

(3) None of the funds made available to carry out subchapter I of this chapter may be used to pay for any biomedical research which relates, in whole or in part, to methods of, or the performance of, abortions or involuntary sterilization as a means of family planning.

**(g) Authorization of appropriations**

(1) There are authorized to be appropriated to the President, in addition to funds otherwise available for such purposes—

(A) \$290,000,000 for fiscal year 1986 and \$290,000,000 for fiscal year 1987 to carry out subsection (b) of this section; and

(B) \$205,000,000 for fiscal year 1986 and \$180,000,000 for fiscal year 1987 to carry out subsection (c) of this section.

(2) Funds appropriated under this subsection are authorized to remain available until expended.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §104, as added Pub. L. 93-189, §2(3), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 715; amended Pub. L. 93-559, §4(1), Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1795; Pub. L. 94-161, title III, §304, Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 857; Pub. L. 95-88, title I, §103(a)-(c), Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 534; Pub. L. 95-424, title I, §104(a), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 945; Pub. L. 96-53, title I, §102, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 360; Pub. L. 96-533, title III, §302, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3145; Pub. L. 97-113, title III, §302, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1532; Pub. L. 98-473, title I, §101(1) [title V, §541(a)], Oct. 12, 1984, 98 Stat. 1884, 1903; Pub. L. 99-83, title III, §§303-305(a), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 214; Pub. L. 99-529, title I, §103, title IV, §404(1), Oct. 24, 1986, 100 Stat. 3011, 3019.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (e)(1), was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4,

1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§ 2346 et seq.), VI (§ 2348 et seq.), and VIII (§ 2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

CODIFICATION

Amendment by Pub. L. 98-473 is based on section 303 of H.R. 5119, Ninety-eighth Congress, as passed by the House of Representatives May 10, 1984, which was enacted into permanent law by Pub. L. 98-473.

AMENDMENTS

1986—Subsec. (c)(2)(B). Pub. L. 99-529, § 103(b), substituted “\$75,000,000 for fiscal year 1987” for “\$25,000,000 for fiscal year 1987”.

Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 99-529, § 103(a), inserted provision allocating \$50,000,000 of the amounts available for fiscal year 1987 for carrying out par. (3).

Subsec. (g)(1)(B). Pub. L. 99-529, § 404(1), substituted “\$180,000,000 for fiscal year 1987” for “\$205,000,000 for fiscal year 1987”.

1985—Subsec. (c)(2)(B). Pub. L. 99-83, § 304, inserted provisions authorizing specific appropriations for fiscal years 1986 and 1987.

Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 99-83, § 305(a), added par. (3).

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 99-83, § 303, in amending subsec. (g) generally, substituted in par. (1) provision authorizing appropriations of \$290,000,000 and \$205,000,000 to carry out subsecs. (b) and (c), respectively, for fiscal years 1986 and 1987 for provisions authorizing \$211,000,000 and \$133,405,000 to carry out such subsecs. for fiscal years 1982 and 1983, and in par. (2) struck out provision that not less than 16 percent of available subsec. (b) appropriations or \$38,000,000, whichever amount is less, be available in fiscal years 1982 and 1983 only for the United Nations Fund for Population Activities.

1984—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 98-473 designated existing provisions as par. (1) and added par. (2).

1981—Subsec. (f)(3). Pub. L. 97-113, § 302(b), added par. (3).

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 97-113, § 302(a), substituted provision authorizing appropriations of \$211,000,000 and \$133,405,000 to carry out subsecs. (b) and (c) for fiscal years 1982 and 1983 for provision authorizing \$238,000,000 and \$145,300,000 to carry out such subsections for fiscal year 1981 and provision that not less than 16 percent of available subsec. (b) appropriations or \$38,000,000, whichever amount is less, be available in fiscal years 1982 and 1983 only for the United Nations Fund for Population Activities for provision making minimum of \$3,000,000 available in fiscal year 1981 only to support the World Health Organization's Special Program of Research, Development and Research Training in Human Reproduction.

1980—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 96-533, § 302(a), made provision for information and services relating to and supporting natural family planning methods.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 96-533, § 302(b), substituted in par. (1) appropriations authorization of \$238,000,000 for fiscal year 1981 for authorization of \$201,000,000 for fiscal year 1980 and made \$3,000,000 available for World Health Organization's Special Human Reproduction Program, and in par. (2) appropriations authorization of \$145,300,000 for fiscal year 1981 for authorization of \$141,000,000 for fiscal year 1980, which made \$4,000,000 available for development of John Sparkman Center for International Public Health Education at University of Alabama at Birmingham.

1979—Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 96-53, § 102(b), inserted provisions respecting use of community-based development programs.

Subsec. (g)(1). Pub. L. 96-53, § 102(a), substituted provisions authorizing appropriations of \$201,000,000 for fiscal year 1980, for provisions authorizing appropriations of \$224,745,000 for fiscal year 1979.

Subsec. (g)(2). Pub. L. 96-53, § 102(a), substituted provisions authorizing appropriations of \$141,000,000 for fiscal year 1980, for provisions authorizing appropriations of \$148,494,000 for fiscal year 1979, and inserted provisions relating to the Sparkman Center for International Public Health Education.

1978—Pub. L. 95-424 amended section generally placing greater emphasis on programs and efforts to change social and economic conditions which produce high birth rates.

1977—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 95-88, § 103(a), transferred to subsec. (b) provisions covering the President's authority to furnish assistance for health purpose and, in the provisions covering population planning remaining in subsec. (a), struck out provisions authorizing the appropriations of \$145,000,000 for fiscal year 1974, \$165,000,000 for fiscal year 1975, \$243,100,000 for fiscal year 1976, and \$275,600,000 for fiscal year 1977, struck out provisions requiring that not less than 67 percent of the funds made available under this section be used for population planning, and inserted provisions authorizing an appropriation of \$167,000,000 for fiscal year 1978.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 95-88, § 103(a), added subsec. (b), consisting of provisions transferred from subsec. (a) covering the President's authority to furnish assistance for health purposes, inserted references to disease prevention and environmental sanitation, and inserted provisions authorizing an appropriation of \$107,700,000 for fiscal year 1978. Former subsec. (b) redesignated (c).

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 95-88, § 103(b), redesignated former subsec. (b) as (c).

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 95-88, § 103(c), added subsec. (d).

1975—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94-161, § 304(1)-(3), designated existing provisions as subsec. (a), authorized appropriations of \$243,100,000 and \$275,600,000 for fiscal years 1976 and 1977, and prescribed minimum percentage (67) of funds available for any fiscal year to be used for population planning, either in separate programs or as an element of health programs.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 94-161, § 304(4), added subsec. (b).

1974—Pub. L. 93-559 increased appropriations authorization for fiscal year 1975 to \$165,000,000 from \$145,000,000.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1979 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-53 effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 512(a) of Pub. L. 96-53, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1977 AMENDMENT

Section 103(d) of Pub. L. 95-88 provided that: “The amendment made by subsection (a) of this section [amending this section] shall take effect on October 1, 1977.”

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS; ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Functions of President under this section delegated and funds available under this chapter allocated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by sections 1-102(a)(1), (e) and 1-801(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept.

29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

PROGRESS REPORT ON IMPLEMENTATION OF IMMUNIZATION AND ORAL REHYDRATION PROMOTION PROGRAMS

Section 305(b) of Pub. L. 99-83 provided that: "Each annual report required by section 634 of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2394] shall describe the progress achieved during the preceding fiscal year in carrying out section 104(c)(3) of such Act [22 U.S.C. 2151b(c)(3)]."

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1727c, 1727e, 2151a, 2151d, 2151f, 2151q, 2151u, 2293, 2346, 5453 of this title.

**§ 2151c. Education and human resources development**

**(a) General authority**

In order to reduce illiteracy, to extend basic education and to increase manpower training in skills related to development, the President is authorized to furnish assistance on such terms and conditions as he may determine, for education, public administration, and human resource development. There are authorized to be appropriated to the President for the purposes of this section, in addition to funds otherwise available for such purposes, \$180,000,000 for fiscal year 1986 and \$180,000,000 for fiscal year 1987, which are authorized to remain available until expended.

**(b) Scope of assistance programs**

Assistance provided under this section shall be used primarily to expand and strengthen nonformal education methods, especially those designed to improve productive skills of rural families and the urban poor and to provide them with useful information; to increase the relevance of formal education systems to the needs of the poor, especially at the primary level, through reform of curricula, teaching materials, and teaching methods, and improved teacher training; and to strengthen the management capabilities of institutions which enable the poor to participate in development. Assistance under this section shall also be provided for advanced education and training of people of developing countries in such disciplines as are required for planning and implementation of public and private development activities.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §105, as added Pub. L. 93-189, §2(3), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 715; amended Pub. L. 93-559, §5, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1796; Pub. L. 94-161, title III, §305, Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 858; Pub. L. 95-88, title I, §104, Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 535; Pub. L. 95-424, title I, §105, Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 947; Pub. L. 96-53, title I, §§103, 122, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 360, 366; Pub. L. 96-533, title III, §303, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3145; Pub. L. 97-113, title III, §303, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1532; Pub. L. 99-83, title III, §306, title XII, §1211(a)(1), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 215, 279; Pub. L. 99-440, title II, §201(a), Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1094; Pub. L. 99-631, §1(b)(1), Nov. 7, 1986, 100 Stat. 3519; Pub. L. 101-513, title V, §562(d)(1), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2031.)

AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 101-513 struck out par. (1) designation and par. (2) which authorized use of appro-

priations to finance education and training for victims of apartheid, for scholarships for students pursuing secondary school education in South Africa, and to provide in-service teacher training programs in South Africa.

1986—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 99-440, §201(a), designated existing provisions as par. (1) and added par. (2).

Subsec. (b)(2)(C)(i). Pub. L. 99-631 substituted "in-service" for "inservice".

1985—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99-83, §306, substituted "for the purposes of this section, in addition to funds otherwise available for such purposes, \$180,000,000 for fiscal year 1986 and \$180,000,000 for fiscal year 1987" for "for purposes of this section, in addition to funds otherwise available for such purposes, \$103,600,000 for the fiscal year 1982 and \$103,600,000 for the fiscal year 1983".

Pub. L. 99-83, §1211(a)(1), struck out provisions relating to scholarships for South African students for fiscal years 1982 and 1983.

1981—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 97-113 substituted appropriations authorizations of \$103,600,000 for fiscal years 1982 and 1983 for such authorization of \$101,000,000 for fiscal year 1981 and inserted provision for financing of South African scholarships for education in the United States.

1980—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 96-533 substituted appropriations authorization of \$101,000,000 for fiscal year 1981 for such authorization of \$105,000,000 for fiscal year 1980.

1979—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 96-53, §103(a), substituted provisions authorizing appropriations of \$105,000,000 for fiscal year 1980, for provisions authorizing appropriations of \$109,036,000 for fiscal year 1979.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 96-53, §103(b), inserted provisions relating to assistance for advanced education and training.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 96-53, §122, struck out subsec. (c) which authorized availability of appropriations for fiscal years 1977, and 1978 for educational assistance for southern Africa.

1978—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 95-424 substituted "\$109,036,000 for the fiscal year 1979, which amount is" for "\$101,800,000 for the fiscal year 1977 and \$84,900,000 for the fiscal year 1978, which amounts are".

1977—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 95-88, §104(a), struck out provisions authorizing appropriations of \$90,000,000 for fiscal year 1974, \$92,000,000 for fiscal year 1975, and \$89,200,000 for fiscal year 1976, and inserted provisions authorizing an appropriation of \$84,900,000 for fiscal year 1978.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 95-88, §104(b), inserted "for the fiscal year 1977, and not less than \$1,647,000 shall be available for the fiscal year 1978," after "shall be available".

1975—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94-161, §305(a)(1), (2), designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and authorized appropriation of \$89,200,000 and \$101,800,000 for fiscal years 1976 and 1977, respectively.

Subsecs. (b), (c), Pub. L. 94-161, §305(a)(3), added subsecs. (b) and (c).

1974—Pub. L. 93-559 increased appropriations authorization for fiscal year 1975 to \$92,000,000 from \$90,000,000.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Section 1(c) of Pub. L. 99-631 provided that: "The amendments made by subsections (a) and (b) [amending this section and sections 2151n, 2346d, 5001, 5012 to 5016, 5019, 5034, 5035, 5039, 5053, 5056, 5059, 5062 to 5064, 5067 to 5072, 5081, 5082, 5091, 5092, 5095, 5100, 5101, and 5112 of this title] shall be deemed to have taken effect upon the enactment of the Comprehensive Anti-Apartheid Act of 1986 [Oct. 2, 1986]."

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1979 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-53 effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 512(a) of Pub. L. 96-53, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS; ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Functions of President under this section delegated and funds available under this chapter allocated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by sections 1-102(a)(1), (e) and 1-801(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2151d, 2151f, 2151h, 2151u, 2293, 2346 of this title.

### § 2151d. Development of indigenous energy resources

#### (a) Congressional statement of findings

(1)(A) The Congress finds that energy development and production are vital elements in the development process, that energy shortages in developing countries severely limit the development process in such countries, that two-thirds of the developing countries which import oil depend on it for at least 90 percent of the energy which their economies require, and that the dramatic increase in world oil prices since 1973 has resulted in considerable economic hardship for many developing countries. The Congress is concerned that the value and purpose of much of the assistance provided to developing countries under sections 2151a, 2151b, and 2151c of this title are undermined by the inability of many developing countries to satisfy their energy requirements. Unless the energy deficit of the developing countries can be narrowed by more fully exploiting indigenous sources of energy such as oil, natural gas, and coal, scarce foreign exchange will increasingly have to be diverted to oil imports, primarily to the detriment of long-term development and economic growth.

(B) The Congress recognizes that many developing countries lack access to the financial resources and technology necessary to locate, explore, and develop indigenous energy resources.

(C) The Congress declares that there is potential for at least a moderate increase by 1990 in the production of energy for commercial use in the developing countries which are not members of the Organization of Petroleum Exporting Countries. In addition, there is a compelling need for vigorous efforts to improve the available data on the location, scale, and commercial exploitability of potential oil, natural gas, and coal reserves in developing countries, especially those which are not members of the Organization of Petroleum Exporting Countries. The Congress further declares that there are many benefits to be gained by the developing countries and by the United States and other developed countries through expanded efforts to expedite the location, exploration, and development of potential sources of energy in developing countries. These benefits include, but are not limited to, the following:

(i) The world's energy supply would be increased and the fear of abrupt depletion would be lessened with new energy production. This

could have a positive impact upon energy prices in international markets as well as a positive effect upon the balance of payments problems of many developing countries.

(ii) Diversification of the world's supplies of energy from fossil fuels would make all countries, developing and developed, less susceptible to supply interruptions and arbitrary production and pricing policies.

(iii) Even a moderate increase in energy production in the developing countries would improve their ability to expand commercial trade, foreign investment, and technology transfer possibilities with the United States and other developed countries.

(D) Assistance for the production of energy from indigenous resources, as authorized by subsection (b) of this section, would be of direct benefit to the poor in developing countries because of the overwhelming impact of imported energy costs upon the lives of the poor and their ability to participate in development.

(2) The Congress also finds that energy production from renewable, decentralized sources and energy conservation are vital elements in the development process. Inadequate access by the poor to energy sources as well as the prospect of depleted fossil fuel reserves and higher energy prices require an enhanced effort to expand the energy resources of developing countries through greater emphasis on renewable sources. Renewable and decentralized energy technologies have particular applicability for the poor, especially in rural areas.

#### (b) General assistance authority; cooperative programs in energy production and conservation; program goals

(1) In order to help developing countries alleviate their energy problems by improving their ability to use indigenous energy resources to produce the energy needed by their economies, the President is authorized to furnish assistance, on such terms and conditions as he may determine, to enable such countries to prepare for and undertake development of their energy resources. Such assistance may include data collection and analysis, the training of skilled personnel, research on and development of suitable energy sources, and pilot projects to test new methods of energy production.

(2) The President is authorized to furnish assistance under this part for cooperative programs with developing countries in energy production and conservation, through research on and development and use of small-scale, decentralized, renewable energy sources for rural areas carried out as integral parts of rural development efforts in accordance with section 2151a of this title. Such programs shall also be directed toward the earliest practicable development and use of energy technologies which are environmentally acceptable, require minimum capital investment, are most acceptable to and affordable by the people using them, are simple and inexpensive to use and maintain, and are transferable from one region of the world to another. Such programs may include research on and the development, demonstration, and application of suitable energy technologies (including use of wood); analysis of energy uses, needs,

and resources; training and institutional development; and scientific interchange.

**(c) Administrative coordination of planning and implementation of programs**

The agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter and the Department of Energy shall coordinate with one another, to the maximum extent possible, the planning and implementation of energy programs under this part.

**(d) Assistance for programs of technical cooperation and development, research, etc.**

The President is authorized to furnish assistance, on such terms and conditions as he may determine, for the following activities, to the extent that such activities are not authorized by sections 2151a, 2151b, and 2151c of this title:

(1) programs of technical cooperation and development, particularly the development efforts of United States private and voluntary agencies and regional and international development organizations;

(2) programs of research into, and evaluation of, the process of economic development in less developed countries and areas, into the factors affecting the relative success and costs of development activities, and into the means, techniques, and such other aspects of development assistance as the President may determine in order to render such assistance of increasing value and benefit;

(3) programs of reconstruction following natural or manmade disasters and programs of disaster preparedness, including the prediction of and contingency planning for natural disasters abroad;

(4) programs designed to help solve special development problems in the poorest countries and to make possible proper utilization of infrastructure and related projects funded with earlier United States assistance; and

(5) programs of urban development, with particular emphasis on small, labor intensive enterprises, marketing systems for small producers, and financial and other institutions which enable the urban poor to participate in the economic and social development of their country.

**(e) Authorization of appropriations**

(1) There are authorized to be appropriated to the President for purposes of this section, in addition to funds otherwise available for such purposes, \$207,000,000 for fiscal year 1986 and \$207,000,000 for fiscal year 1987.

(2) Amounts appropriated under this section are authorized to remain available until expended.

**(f) Financing cooperative projects among United States, Israel, and developing countries**

Of the amounts authorized to be appropriated to carry out this part, \$5,000,000 for fiscal year 1986 and \$5,000,000 for fiscal year 1987 shall be used to finance cooperative projects among the United States, Israel, and developing countries.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §106, as added Pub. L. 94-161, title III, §306(2), Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 858; amended Pub. L. 95-88, title I, §105, Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 535; Pub. L. 95-424, title I, §106, Oct. 6,

1978, 92 Stat. 947; Pub. L. 96-53, title I, §§104(b), 105, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 360, 362; Pub. L. 96-533, title III, §304(b)-(f), Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3146; Pub. L. 97-113, title III, §304, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1533; Pub. L. 99-83, title III, §307, title XII, §1211(a)(2), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 215, 279.)

REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 2151d, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §106, as added Pub. L. 93-189, §2(3), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 715, authorized additional appropriations of \$53,000,000 for fiscal years 1974, and 1975, for assistance to solve selected development problems in such fields as transportation, power, industry, urban development, and export development, prior to repeal by section 306(1) of Pub. L. 94-161.

AMENDMENTS

1985—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 99-83, §1211(a)(2), struck out par. (A) designation, and struck out par. (B) which related to use of funds in fiscal year 1981 for geological and geophysical survey work.

Subsec. (e)(1). Pub. L. 99-83, §307(a), amended par. (1) generally, substituting provisions authorizing appropriations of \$207,000,000 for fiscal years 1986 and 1987 for provisions authorizing appropriations of \$147,200,000 for fiscal years 1982 and 1983.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 99-83, §307(b), added subsec. (f).

1981—Subsec. (d)(3). Pub. L. 97-113, §304(a), authorized assistance for programs of disaster preparedness, including the prediction of and contingency planning for natural disasters abroad.

Subsec. (e)(1). Pub. L. 97-113, §304(b), substituted appropriations of \$147,200,000 for fiscal years 1982 and 1983, for appropriations of \$140,000,000 for fiscal year 1981.

1980—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 96-533, §304(b), designated existing provisions as subpar. (1)(A), substituted subpar. (B), (C), and (D) for par. (2), (3), and (4) designations, substituted in subpar. (C), cl. (i), (ii), and (iii) for (A), (B), and (C) designations, and added par. (2).

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 96-533, §304(c), (d), designated existing provisions as subpar. (1)(A), substituted subpar. (B) for par. (2) designation, substituted in subpar. (1)(B) “fiscal year 1981 shall be used for purposes of subparagraph (A)” for “fiscal year 1980 shall be used for purposes of paragraph (1)” and added par. (2).

Subsecs. (c) to (e). Pub. L. 96-533, §304(d)-(f), added subsec. (c), redesignated former subsecs. (c) and (d) as (d) and (e), respectively, and in subsec. (e) designated text as pars. (1) and (2), and in par. (1) as so designated, substituted appropriations authorization of “\$140,000,000 for the fiscal year 1981” for such appropriation of “\$125,000,000 for the fiscal year 1980”.

1979—Subsecs. (a), (b). Pub. L. 96-53, §104(b)(2), (3), added subsecs. (a) and (b). Former subsecs. (a) and (b) redesignated (c) and (d), respectively.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 96-53, §104(b)(1), (2), redesignated former subsec. (a) as (c), struck out par. (2), relating to programs to increase energy production and conservation, and redesignated pars. (3) to (6) as (2) to (5), respectively.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 96-53, §§104(b)(2), 105, redesignated former subsec. (b) as (d) and substituted provisions authorizing appropriations for fiscal year 1980 of \$125,000,000, for provisions authorizing appropriations for fiscal year 1979 of \$126,244,000, and setting forth requirements for appropriations available to private voluntary agencies of the United States.



1978—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 95-424 substituted “\$126,244,000 for the fiscal year 1979, which amount is” for “\$104,500,000 for the fiscal year 1977 and \$105,000,000 for the fiscal year 1978, which amounts are”.

1977—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 95-88 struck out provisions authorizing an appropriation of \$99,550,000 for fiscal year 1976 and inserted provisions authorizing an appropriation of \$105,000,000 for fiscal year 1978.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1979 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-53 effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 512(a) of Pub. L. 96-53, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS; ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Functions of President under this section delegated and funds available under this chapter allocated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by sections 1-102(a)(1), (e) and 1-801(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2151f, 2151u, 2293, 2346, 3262 of this title.

### § 2151e. Appropriate technology

(a) In carrying out activities under this part, the President shall place special emphasis on the use of relatively smaller, cost-saving, labor-using technologies that are generally most appropriate for the small farms, small businesses, and small incomes of the poor.

(b) Funds made available to carry out this part should be used to the extent practicable for activities in the field of appropriate technology, including support of an expanded and coordinated private effort to promote the development and dissemination of appropriate technology in developing countries.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §107, as added Pub. L. 94-161, title III, §306(2), Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 859; amended Pub. L. 95-424, title I, §107, Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 947.)

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 2151e, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §107, as added Pub. L. 93-189, §2(3), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 715, authorized additional appropriations of \$39,000,000 for fiscal years 1974, and 1975, for assistance to select countries and organizations in support of general economy of recipient countries as for development programs conducted by private international organizations, prior to repeal by section 306(1) of Pub. L. 94-161. See section 2151d of this title.

#### AMENDMENTS

1978—Pub. L. 95-424 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a), substituted provisions mandating that the President place special emphasis on the use of relatively smaller, cost-saving, labor-using technologies generally more appropriate for small farms, small businesses and small incomes of the poor, for provisions authorizing the use of \$20,000,000 for activities in the field

of intermediate technology, directing the Agency for International Development to prepare a proposal to carry out this section and to keep Congress informed, and to implement such proposal, and added subsec. (b).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by section 1-102(a)(1), (e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

### § 2151f. Private sector revolving fund

#### (a) Establishment

The Congress finds that the development of private enterprise, including cooperatives, is a vital factor in the stable growth of developing countries and in the development and stability of a free, open, and equitable international economic system. It is therefore in the best interests of the United States to assist the development of the private sector in developing countries and to engage the United States private sector in that process. In order to promote such private sector development, the President is authorized to establish a revolving fund account in the United States Treasury. All funds deposited in such account shall, notwithstanding any provision in an appropriation Act to the contrary, be free from fiscal year limitations.

#### (b) Funding

Of the funds made available under this part in each of the fiscal years 1986 and 1987, up to \$18,000,000 may be deposited in this account. Such funds used in accordance with the policies and authorities of this section shall be in addition to other funds available for private sector activities under other authorities in this chapter. Any reflows and income arising from activities carried out pursuant to this section, including loan repayments and fee income (as provided in subsection (e) of this section), shall be deposited into the revolving fund and remain available to carry out the purposes of this section. All funds in such account may be invested in obligations of the United States.

#### (c) Authorized uses; determination of small business enterprise; maximum amounts available; interest rate

(1) The agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter is authorized to use the funds maintained in this revolving fund account to furnish assistance in furtherance of the policy of subsection (a) of this section on such terms and conditions as it may determine. Amounts in the revolving fund account shall be available for obligation for assistance under this section only to such extent as may be provided in advance in appropriation Acts. Assistance may be provided under this section without regard to section<sup>1</sup> 2354(a) and 2370(r) of this title.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be “sections”.

(2) Assistance under this section may be provided only to support private sector activities which—

(A) are consistent with the United States development assistance policies set forth in section 2151-1 of this title and with the development priorities of the host country;

(B) are the types of activities for which assistance may be provided under sections 2151a through 2151d of this title;

(C) will have a demonstration effect;

(D) will be innovative;

(E) are financially viable;

(F) will maximize the development impact appropriate to the host country, particularly in employment and the use of appropriate technology; and

(G) are primarily directed to making available to small business enterprises and cooperatives necessary support and services which are not otherwise generally available.

In determining whether an enterprise is a small business enterprise, the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter shall take into consideration the enterprise's total net fixed assets and number of employees, together with the relevant definition utilized by the host country government and the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development and other international organizations.

(3)(A) Not more than \$3,000,000 may be made available under this section to support any one project.

(B) Not more than 50 per centum of the financial support for any project may be provided under this section, and a substantial portion of the financial support for a project assisted under this section must be provided by sources within the host country.

(C) Not more than 20 per centum of the assets of the revolving fund account under this section may be used to support projects in any one country.

(D) In order to maximize the impact on institution building, loans under this section shall be made primarily to intermediary entities which provide necessary support and services for private sector activities.

(E) Loans under this section shall be at or near the interest rate otherwise available to the recipient.

**(d) Remittance of excess assets**

(1) If at any time the assets of the revolving fund account exceeds \$100,000,000, the President shall remit the amount in excess of \$100,000,000 to the United States Treasury.

(2) As used in this section, "assets" includes amounts in the revolving fund account plus the value of investments made with amounts from the fund plus the current value of outstanding obligations under loans under this section.

(3) In addition to the requirement of paragraph (1), at the end of any fiscal year, the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter may determine that amounts in the revolving fund are sufficient to permit the remittance to the United States Treasury of an amount equal to a portion or the total amount of appropriated funds deposited in

the revolving fund. Any such remittance shall be deemed to be a decrease in the appropriated funds in the revolving fund. After remittance has been made of an amount equal to the total amount of appropriated funds, the revolving fund shall consist and be deemed to consist entirely of nonappropriated funds.

**(e) Fee for carrying out activities**

A fee may be charged, where appropriate, in carrying out activities with funds from the revolving fund authorized in this section. The amount of any such fee shall be determined by the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter.

**(f) Transfer of unobligated funds upon termination**

In the event the revolving fund is terminated, all unobligated money in the fund at the time of such termination shall be transferred to and become part of the miscellaneous receipts account of the Treasury.

**(g) Inclusion of proposed projects in annual congressional presentation documents**

As part of its annual congressional presentation documents submitted to the Congress, the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter shall include a description of projects proposed to be funded from the revolving fund account for that fiscal year. To the extent that projects are proposed for funding which are not contained in the annual congressional presentation documents, at least fifteen days advance notification shall be provided to the Congress in accordance with section 2394-1 of this title.

**(h) Annual report to Congress**

Not later than December 31 of each year, the President shall submit to the Congress a comprehensive report which details all projects funded under this section during the previous fiscal year, all reflows to the revolving fund account, a status report on all projects currently contained in the fund's portfolio. Such reports shall include, but not be limited to, information regarding numbers and kinds of beneficiaries reached, amounts and kinds of benefits provided by the funded projects to targeted populations, and a justification for projects within the context of the goals and objectives of the United States development assistance program.

**(i) Loan guarantees**

(1) To carry out the purposes of subsection (a) of this section, in addition to the other authorities set forth in this section, the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter is authorized to issue guarantees on such terms and conditions as it shall determine assuring against losses incurred in connection with loans made to projects that meet the criteria set forth in subsection (c) of this section. The full faith and credit of the United States is hereby pledged for the full payment and performance of such guarantees.

(2) Loans guaranteed under this subsection shall be on such terms and conditions as the agency may prescribe, except for the following:

(A) The agency shall issue guarantees only when it is necessary to alleviate a credit market imperfection.

(B) Loans guaranteed shall provide for complete amortization within a period not to exceed ten years or, if the principal purpose of the guaranteed loan is to finance the construction or purchase of a physical asset with a useful life of less than ten years, within a period not to exceed such useful life.

(C) No loan guaranteed to any one borrower may exceed 50 percent of the cost of the activity to be financed, or \$3,000,000, whichever is less, as determined by the agency.

(D) No loan may be guaranteed unless the agency determines that the lender is responsible and that adequate provision is made for servicing the loan on reasonable terms and protecting the financial interest of the United States.

(E) The fees earned from the loan guarantees issued under this subsection shall be deposited in the revolving fund account as part of the guarantee reserve established under paragraph (5) of this subsection. Fees shall be assessed at a level such that the fees received, plus the funds from the revolving fund account placed in the guarantee reserve, satisfy the requirements of paragraph (5). Fees shall be reviewed every twelve months to ensure that the fees assessed on new loan guarantees are at the required level.

(F) Any guarantee shall be conclusive evidence that such guarantee has been properly obtained, and that the underlying loan as contracted qualifies for such guarantee. Except for fraud or material misrepresentation for which the parties seeking payment under such guarantee are responsible, such guarantee shall be presumed to be valid, legal, and enforceable.

(G) The agency shall determine that the standards used by the lender for assessing the credit risk of new and existing guaranteed loans are reasonable. The agency shall require that there be a reasonable assurance of repayment before credit assistance is extended.

(H) Commitments to guarantee loans may be made by the agency only to the extent that the total loan principal, any part of which is guaranteed, will not exceed the amount specified in annual appropriations Acts.

(3) To the extent that fees are not sufficient as specified under paragraph (2)(E) to cover expected future liabilities, appropriations are authorized to maintain an appropriate reserve.

(4) The losses guaranteed under this subsection may be in dollars or in other currencies. In the case of loans in currencies other than dollars, the guarantees issued shall be subject to an overall payment limitation expressed in dollars.

(5) The agency shall segregate in the revolving fund account and hold as a reserve an amount estimated to be sufficient to cover the agency's expected net liabilities on the loan guarantees outstanding under this subsection; except that the amount held in reserve shall not be less than 25 percent of the principal amount of the agency's outstanding contingent liabilities on such guarantees. Any payments made to discharge liabilities arising from the loan guarantees shall be paid first out of the assets in the revolving fund account and next out of other funds made available for this purpose.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §108, as added Pub. L. 98-151, §101(b)(2), Nov. 14, 1983, 97 Stat. 972; amended Pub. L. 99-83, title III, §308, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 215; Pub. L. 100-418, title II, §2211, Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1335.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (b), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

#### REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226 set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

#### REFERENCES TO SECTIONS 2151a THROUGH 2151d DEEMED TO INCLUDE SECTION 2293

References to sections 2151a through 2151d of this title are deemed to include a reference to section 2293 of this title. See section 2293(d)(1) of this title.

#### CODIFICATION

Section 108 of Pub. L. 87-195 is based on section 407 of title IV of H.R. 2992, Ninety-eighth Congress, as reported May 17, 1983, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 98-151.

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 2151f, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §108, as added Pub. L. 93-189, §2(3), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 715, related to application of subpart I, II, or X of part II of this subchapter to assistance under this part, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 95-424, title I, §102(g)(2)(K)(i), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 943, eff. Oct. 1, 1978.

#### AMENDMENTS

1988—Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 100-418 added subsec. (i).

1985—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 99-83 substituted "each of the fiscal years 1986 and 1987, up to \$18,000,000" for "fiscal year 1984, up to \$20,000,000".

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

#### § 2151g. Transfer of funds

Whenever the President determines it to be necessary for the purposes of this part, not to exceed 15 per centum of the funds made available for any provision of this part may be transferred to, and consolidated with, the funds made available for any other provision of this part, and may be used for any of the purposes for which such funds may be used, except that the total in the provision for the benefit of which the transfer is made shall not be increased by more than 25 per centum of the amount of funds made available for such provision. The authority of sections 2360(a) and 2364(a) of this title may not be used to transfer funds made available under this part for use for purposes of any other provision of this chapter, except that the authority of such sections may be used to transfer for the purposes of section 2427 of this title not to exceed five per centum of the amount of

funds made available for section 2427(a)(1) of this title.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §109, as added Pub. L. 93-189, §2(3), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 716; amended Pub. L. 95-88, title I, §129(b), Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 543; Pub. L. 95-424, title I, §102(g)(2)(K)(ii), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 943.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1978—Pub. L. 95-424 substituted “Whenever” for “Notwithstanding section 2151f of this title, whenever”.

1977—Pub. L. 95-88 provided that the authority under sections 2360(a) and 2364(a) of this title may be used to transfer for the purposes of section 2427 of this title not to exceed five per centum of the amount of funds made available for section 2427(a)(1) of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by section 1-102(a)(1), (e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2293 of this title.

### § 2151h. Cost-sharing

No assistance shall be furnished by the United States Government to a country under sections 2151a through 2151d of this title until the country provides assurances to the President, and the President is satisfied, that such country will provide at least 25 per centum of the costs of the entire program, project, or activity with respect to which such assistance is to be furnished, except that such costs borne by such country may be provided on an “inkind” basis.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §110, as added Pub. L. 93-189, §2(3), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 716; amended Pub. L. 94-161, title III, §307, Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 859; Pub. L. 95-88, title I, §106, Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 535; Pub. L. 95-424, title I, §112(b), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 949; Pub. L. 99-83, title XII, §1211(a)(3), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 279.)

#### REFERENCES TO SECTIONS 2151a THROUGH 2151d DEEMED TO INCLUDE SECTION 2293

References to sections 2151a through 2151d of this title are deemed to include a reference to section 2293 of this title. See section 2293(d)(1) of this title.

#### AMENDMENTS

1985—Pub. L. 99-83 struck out subsec. (a) designation, and struck out subsec. (b) which set forth funding limits for grant assistance under sections 2151a to 2151d of this title.

1978—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94-424 struck out provision, following “on an ‘in-kind’ basis”, relating to waiver by

the President of cost-sharing requirement in case of a project or activity in a country determined to be relatively least developed by the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 95-424 substituted “No” for “Except for grants to countries determined to be relatively least developed based on the United Nations Conference on Trade and Development list of ‘relatively least developed countries’, no”.

1977—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 95-88, §106(1), substituted “sections 2151a through 2151d” for “sections 2151a through 2151e”.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 95-88, §106(2), inserted provisions creating an exception for grants to countries determined to be relatively least developed based on the United Nations Conference on Trade and Development list of “relatively least developed countries” and substituted “sections 2151a through 2151d” for “sections 2151a through 2151e”.

1975—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94-161 authorized Presidential waiver of cost-sharing as a condition for being furnished project or activity assistance in the case of a relatively least developed country.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by section 1-102(a)(1), (e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2151v, 2220d of this title.

### § 2151i. Development and use of cooperatives

In order to strengthen the participation of the rural and urban poor in their country’s development, high priority shall be given to increasing the use of funds made available under this chapter for technical and capital assistance in the development and use of cooperatives in the less developed countries which will enable and encourage greater numbers of the poor to help themselves toward a better life.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §111, as added Pub. L. 93-189, §2(3), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 716; amended Pub. L. 94-161, title III, §308, Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 859; Pub. L. 95-88, title I, §107(a), Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 535; Pub. L. 96-53, title I, §122, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 366.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1979—Pub. L. 96-53 struck out provisions relating to availability of funds for fiscal year 1978 for technical assistance.

1977—Pub. L. 95-88 substituted “technical and capital assistance in the development and use of cooperatives” for “assistance in the development of cooperatives” and “\$10,000,000 of the funds made available under this chapter for the fiscal year 1978 may be used only for technical assistance” for “\$20,000,000 of such funds shall be used during the fiscal years 1976 and 1977, including the period from July 1, 1976, through September 30, 1976, only for technical assistance”.

1975—Pub. L. 94-161 earmarked not less than \$20,000,000 for technical assistance during fiscal years 1976 and 1977, including period from July 1, 1976, through Sept. 30, 1976, and deleted similar provision making such minimum sum available for use during fiscal years 1974 and 1975.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1979 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-53 effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 512(a) of Pub. L. 96-53, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1977 AMENDMENT

Section 107(b) of Pub. L. 95-88 provided that: “The amendments made by subsection (a) [amending this section] shall take effect on October 1, 1977.”

### § 2151j. Repealed. Pub. L. 93-559, § 30(b), Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1804

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §112, as added Pub. L. 93-189, §2(3), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 716, related to police training prohibition. See section 2420 of this title.

### § 2151k. Integrating women into national economies; report

#### (a) Particular programs, projects, and activities

In recognition of the fact that women in developing countries play a significant role in economic production, family support, and the overall development process of the national economies of such countries, subchapter I of this chapter shall be administered so as to give particular attention to those programs, projects, and activities which tend to integrate women into the national economies of developing countries, thus improving their status and assisting the total development effort.

#### (b) Assistance to encourage participation and integration of women; prohibition against separate assistance program for women

(1) Up to \$10,000,000 of the funds made available each fiscal year under this part and part X of this subchapter shall be used, in addition to funds otherwise available for such purposes, for assistance on such terms and conditions as the President may determine to encourage and promote the participation and integration of women as equal partners in the development process in the developing countries. These funds shall be used primarily to support activities which will increase the economic productivity and income earning capacity of women.

(2) Nothing in this section shall be construed to authorize the establishment of a separate development assistance program for women.

#### (c) Funds for United Nations Decade for Women

Not less than \$500,000 of the funds made available under this part for the fiscal year 1982 shall be expended on international programs which support the original goals of the United Nations Decade for Women.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §113, as added Pub. L. 93-189, §2(3), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 716; amended

Pub. L. 94-161, title III, §309, Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 860; Pub. L. 95-88, title I, §108, Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 536; Pub. L. 95-424, title I, §108, Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 947; Pub. L. 96-53, title I, §122, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 366; Pub. L. 97-113, title III, §305, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1533; Pub. L. 101-513, title V, §562(d)(2), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2031.)

#### REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

#### AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 101-513 inserted “and part X of this subchapter” after “this part”.

1981—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 97-113 added subsec. (c).

1979—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 96-53 redesignated subsec. (d) as (b), and repealed former subsec. (b) which related to Presidential report to Congress on the impact of development programs, etc., on the economic integration of women.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 96-53 repealed subsec. (c) which required the report under former subsec. (b) to be submitted not later than one year after Aug. 3, 1977.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 96-53 redesignated subsec. (d) as (b).

1978—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 95-424 added subsec. (d).

1977—Pub. L. 95-88 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a), inserted provisions relating to a recognition of the fact that women in developing countries play a significant role in economic production, family support, and the overall development process of the national economies of such countries, and added subsecs. (b) and (c).

1975—Pub. L. 94-161 substituted “This subchapter” for “Sections 2151a through 2151e of this title”.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1979 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-53 effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 512(a) of Pub. L. 96-53, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS; ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Functions of President under this section delegated and funds available under this chapter allocated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by sections 1-102(a)(1), (e) and 1-801(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

### §§ 2151l, 2151m. Repealed. Pub. L. 95-424, title I, §§ 102(f), 104(b), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 942, 947

Section 2151l, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §114, as added Pub. L. 93-189, §2(3), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 716; amended Pub. L. 95-88, title I, §109, Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 536, prohibited use of funds for performance of abortions or involuntary sterilizations.

Section 2151m, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §115, as added Pub. L. 93-559, §20, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1800; amended Pub. L. 95-88, title I, §110, Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 536, prohibited use of funds available under this part for any countries to which assistance is furnished under part IV of subchapter II of this chapter or under subchapter V of this chapter without specific authorization from Congress.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as an Effective Date of 1978 Amendment note under section 2151 of this title.

**§ 2151n. Human rights and development assistance**

**(a) Violations barring assistance; assistance for needy people**

No assistance may be provided under subchapter I of this chapter to the government of any country which engages in a consistent pattern of gross violations of internationally recognized human rights, including torture or cruel, inhuman, or degrading treatment or punishment, prolonged detention without charges, causing the disappearance of persons by the abduction and clandestine detention of those persons, or other flagrant denial of the right to life, liberty, and the security of person, unless such assistance will directly benefit the needy people in such country.

**(b)<sup>1</sup> Information to Congressional committees for realization of assistance for needy people; concurrent resolution terminating assistance**

In determining whether this standard is being met with regard to funds allocated under subchapter I of this chapter, the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate or the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives may require the Administrator primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter to submit in writing information demonstrating that such assistance will directly benefit the needy people in such country, together with a detailed explanation of the assistance to be provided (including the dollar amounts of such assistance) and an explanation of how such assistance will directly benefit the needy people in such country. If either committee or either House of Congress disagrees with the Administrator's justification it may initiate action to terminate assistance to any country by a concurrent resolution under section 2367 of this title.

**(b)<sup>1</sup> Protection of children from exploitation**

No assistance may be provided to any government failing to take appropriate and adequate measures, within their means, to protect children from exploitation, abuse or forced conscription into military or paramilitary services.

**(c) Factors considered**

In determining whether or not a government falls within the provisions of subsection (a) of this section and in formulating development assistance programs under subchapter I of this chapter, the Administrator shall consider, in consultation with the Assistant Secretary of State for Democracy, Human Rights, and Labor—

- (1) the extent of cooperation of such government in permitting an unimpeded investigation of alleged violations of internationally recognized human rights by appropriate international organizations, including the International Committee of the Red Cross, or

groups or persons acting under the authority of the United Nations or of the Organization of American States; and

- (2) specific actions which have been taken by the President or the Congress relating to multilateral or security assistance to a less developed country because of the human rights practices or policies of such country.

**(d) Report to Speaker of House and Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate**

The Secretary of State shall transmit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, by January 31 of each year, a full and complete report regarding—

- (1) the status of internationally recognized human rights, within the meaning of subsection (a) of this section—

(A) in countries that receive assistance under subchapter I of this chapter, and

(B) in all other foreign countries which are members of the United Nations and which are not otherwise the subject of a human rights report under this chapter;

- (2) wherever applicable, practices regarding coercion in population control, including coerced abortion and involuntary sterilization; and

- (3) the steps the Administrator has taken to alter United States programs under subchapter I of this chapter in any country because of human rights considerations.

**(e) Promotion of civil and political rights**

The President is authorized and encouraged to use not less than \$3,000,000 of the funds made available under this part, part X of this subchapter, and part IV of subchapter II of this chapter for each fiscal year for studies to identify, and for openly carrying out programs and activities which will encourage or promote increased adherence to civil and political rights, as set forth in the Universal Declaration of Human Rights, in countries eligible for assistance under this part or under part X of this subchapter, except that funds made available under part X of this subchapter may only be used under this subsection with respect to countries in sub-Saharan Africa. None of these funds may be used, directly or indirectly, to influence the outcome of any election in any country.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §116, as added Pub. L. 94-161, title III, §310, Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 860; amended Pub. L. 95-88, title I, §111, Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 537; Pub. L. 95-105, title I, §109(a)(2), Aug. 17, 1977, 91 Stat. 846; Pub. L. 95-424, title I, §109, Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 947; Pub. L. 96-53, title I, §106, title V, §504(a), Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 362, 378; Pub. L. 96-533, title III, §305, title VII, §701(a), Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3147, 3156; Pub. L. 97-113, title III, §306, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1533; Pub. L. 98-164, title X, §1002(a), Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1052; Pub. L. 99-440, title II, §202, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1095; Pub. L. 99-631, §1(b)(2), Nov. 7, 1986, 100 Stat. 3519; Pub. L. 100-204, title I, §127(1), Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1342; Pub. L. 101-513, title V, §§562(d)(3), 599D, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2031, 2066; Pub. L. 103-149, §4(a)(3)(B), Nov. 23, 1993, 107 Stat. 1505; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §162(e)(1), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 405; Pub. L. 103-437, §9(a)(6), Nov. 2, 1994, 108 Stat. 4588.)

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Two subssecs. (b) have been enacted.

REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE  
CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 103-437 substituted “Foreign Affairs” for “International Relations” in subsec. (b) relating to submittal of information to Congress.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 103-236 substituted “Assistant Secretary of State for Democracy, Human Rights, and Labor” for “Assistant Secretary for Human Rights and Humanitarian Affairs” in introductory provisions.

1993—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 103-149 struck out “(1)” before “The President is authorized” and struck out par. (2) which authorized grants to nongovernmental organizations in South Africa promoting political, economic, social, juridical, and humanitarian efforts to foster a just society and to help victims of apartheid.

Subsecs. (f), (g). Pub. L. 103-149 struck out subsec. (f) which authorized assistance to political detainees and prisoners and support for black-led community organizations in South Africa and subsec. (g) which authorized assistance to families of victims of violence in South Africa.

1990—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 101-513, §599D, added subsec. (b) prohibiting assistance to governments failing to protect children from exploitation, abuse or conscription.

Subsec. (e)(1). Pub. L. 101-513, §562(d)(3), inserted “, part X of this subchapter,” after “available under this part” and “or under part X of this subchapter, except that funds made available under part X of this subchapter may only be used under this subsection with respect to countries in sub-Saharan Africa” before period at end of first sentence.

1987—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 100-204 added par. (2) and redesignated former par. (2) as (3).

1986—Subsec. (e)(2)(A). Pub. L. 99-440, §202(a), inserted authorization of appropriations of \$1,500,000 for fiscal year 1986 and for each fiscal year thereafter.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 99-440, §202(b), added subsec. (f).

Subsec. (f)(2)(B). Pub. L. 99-631 substituted “subsection” for “paragraph”.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 99-440, §202(b), added subsec. (g).

1983—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 98-164, §1002(a), designated existing provisions as par. (1), substituted “\$3,000,000 of the funds made available under this part and part IV of subchapter II of this chapter for each fiscal year” for “\$1,500,000 of the funds made available under this part for each of the fiscal years 1982 and 1983”, and added par. (2).

1981—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 97-113 substituted “each of the fiscal years 1982 and 1983” for “the fiscal year 1981”.

1980—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 96-533, §701(a), prohibited assistance for government of any country causing the disappearance of persons by the abduction and clandestine detention of those persons.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 96-533, §305, substituted “1981” for “1980”.

1979—Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 96-53, §504(a), designated existing provisions as cl. (A) and added cl. (B).

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 96-53, §106, substituted “1980” for “1979”.

1978—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 95-424 substituted “The President is authorized and encouraged to use not less than \$1,500,000 of” for “Of”, and “1979” for “1978, not less than \$750,000 may be used only”.

1977—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 95-105 substituted “Assistant Secretary” for “Coordinator”.

Pub. L. 95-88, §111(a), inserted references to the formulation of development assistance programs under this subchapter and the consultation of the Administrator with the Coordinator for Human Rights and Hu-

manitarian Affairs in the introductory provisions, designated the remainder of the existing provisions as par. (1), and added par. (2).

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 95-88, §111(a), substituted provisions directing the Secretary of State to transmit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, by January 31 of each year, a full and complete report regarding the status of internationally recognized human rights in countries that receive development assistance and the steps which the Administrator has taken to alter United States development assistance programs in any country because of human rights considerations for provisions directing the President to transmit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, in the annual presentation materials on proposed economic development assistance programs, a full and complete report regarding the steps he has taken to carry out the provisions of this section.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 95-88, §111(b), added subsec. (e).

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103-236 applicable with respect to officials, offices, and bureaus of Department of State when executive orders, regulations, or departmental directives implementing the amendments by sections 161 and 162 of Pub. L. 103-236 become effective, or 90 days after Apr. 30, 1994, whichever comes earlier, see section 161(b) of Pub. L. 103-236, as amended, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-631 effective Oct. 2, 1986, see section 1(c) of Pub. L. 99-631, set out as a note under section 2151c of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1979 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-53 effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 512(a) of Pub. L. 96-53, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under subsec. (e) delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, to be exercised in consultation with Secretary of State, by section 1-102(a)(1), (e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

REPORT ON HUMAN RIGHTS TO COMMITTEES ON  
APPROPRIATIONS

Pub. L. 102-391, title V, §511(b), Oct. 6, 1992, 106 Stat. 1658, provided that: “The Secretary of State shall also transmit the report required by section 116(d) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151n(d)] to the Committees on Appropriations each year by the date specified in that section: *Provided*, That each such report submitted pursuant to such section shall (1) include a review of each country’s commitment to children’s rights and welfare as called for by the Declaration of the World Summit for Children; (2) a description of the military expenditures of each country receiving United States foreign assistance, and the efforts each country is making to reduce those expenditures; and (3) describe the extent to which indigenous people are able

to participate in decisions affecting their lands, cultures, traditions and the allocation of natural resources, and assess the extent of protection of their civil and political rights.”

REPORT ON IMPACT ON FOREIGN RELATIONS OF UNITED STATES OF REPORTS ON HUMAN RIGHTS PRACTICES OF FOREIGN GOVERNMENTS

Section 504(b) of Pub. L. 96-53, which required Secretary of State to report by Nov. 15, 1979, foreign relations impact made by reports of human rights violations of foreign governments, was repealed by Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(3), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.

CROSS REFERENCES

Advancement of human rights by United States assistance policies with international financial institutions, see section 262d of this title.

Implementation of United States policy opposing the practice of torture by foreign governments, see Pub. L. 98-447, set out as a note under section 2656 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2199, 2398, 2651a, 5732 of this title; title 48 section 1904.

**§ 2151n-1. Repealed. Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 139(4), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 397**

Section, Pub. L. 95-105, title I, § 108, Aug. 17, 1977, 91 Stat. 846, directed Secretary of State to report annually to Congress about American citizens in foreign jails.

**§ 2151o. Repealed. Pub. L. 103-149, § 4(a)(3)(B), Nov. 23, 1993, 107 Stat. 1505**

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 117, as added Pub. L. 99-440, title II, § 201(b), Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1094, related to assistance for disadvantaged South Africans.

A prior section 2151o, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. 1, § 117, as added Pub. L. 95-88, title I, § 112, Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 537, related to a strategy for programs of nutrition and health improvement for mothers and children, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 95-424, title I, § 103(c), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 945, eff. Oct. 1, 1978.

**§ 2151p. Environmental and natural resources**

**(a) Congressional statement of findings**

The Congress finds that if current trends in the degradation of natural resources in developing countries continue, they will severely undermine the best efforts to meet basic human needs, to achieve sustained economic growth, and to prevent international tension and conflict. The Congress also finds that the world faces enormous, urgent, and complex problems, with respect to natural resources, which require new forms of cooperation between the United States and developing countries to prevent such problems from becoming unmanageable. It is, therefore, in the economic and security interest of the United States to provide leadership both in thoroughly reassessing policies relating to natural resources and the environment, and in cooperating extensively with developing countries in order to achieve environmentally sound development.

**(b) Assistance authority and emphasis**

In order to address the serious problems described in subsection (a) of this section, the President is authorized to furnish assistance under subchapter I of this chapter for developing and strengthening the capacity of developing

countries to protect and manage their environment and natural resources. Special efforts shall be made to maintain and where possible to restore the land, vegetation, water, wildlife, and other resources upon which depend economic growth and human well-being, especially of the poor.

**(c) Implementation considerations applicable to programs and projects**

(1) The President, in implementing programs and projects under this part and part X of this subchapter, shall take fully into account the impact of such programs and projects upon the environment and natural resources of developing countries. Subject to such procedures as the President considers appropriate, the President shall require all agencies and officials responsible for programs or projects under this part and part X of this subchapter—

(A) to prepare and take fully into account an environmental impact statement for any program or project under this part and part X of this subchapter significantly affecting the environment of the global commons outside the jurisdiction of any country, the environment of the United States, or other aspects of the environment which the President may specify; and

(B) to prepare and take fully into account an environmental assessment of any proposed program or project under this part and part X of this subchapter significantly affecting the environment of any foreign country.

Such agencies and officials should, where appropriate, use local technical resources in preparing environmental impact statements and environmental assessments pursuant to this subsection.

(2) The President may establish exceptions from the requirements of this subsection for emergency conditions and for cases in which compliance with those requirements would be seriously detrimental to the foreign policy interests of the United States.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 117, formerly § 118, as added Pub. L. 95-88, title I, § 113(a), Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 537; amended Pub. L. 95-424, title I, § 110, Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 948; Pub. L. 96-53, title I, § 122, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 366; Pub. L. 97-113, title III, § 307, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1533; renumbered § 117 and amended Pub. L. 99-529, title III, § 301(1), (2), Oct. 24, 1986, 100 Stat. 3014; Pub. L. 101-513, title V, § 562(d)(4), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2031.)

REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§ 2346 et seq.), VI (§ 2348 et seq.), and VIII (§ 2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

CODIFICATION

Other sections 117 of Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, were classified to section 2151o of this title prior to repeal by Pub. L. 95-424 and Pub. L. 103-149.

AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 101-513 inserted “and part X of this subchapter” after “this part” wherever appearing.



1986—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 99-529, §301(2), struck out subsec. (d) relating to loss of tropical forests in developing countries. See section 2151p-1 of this title.

1981—Pub. L. 97-113 amended section generally, substituting subssecs. (a) to (d) for former subssecs. (a) and (b) which authorized President to furnish assistance under this subchapter for developing and strengthening capacity of less developed countries to protect and manage their environment and natural resources and directed President to take into consideration environmental consequences of development actions in carrying out this part.

1979—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 96-53 repealed subsec. (c) which related to studies and report to Congress by the President on the identification of major environmental and natural resource problems.

1978—Pub. L. 95-424 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subssecs. (b) and (c).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1979 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-53 effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 512(a) of Pub. L. 96-53, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by section 1-102(a)(1), (e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2191, 2199 of this title.

### § 2151p-1. Tropical forests

#### (a) Importance of forests and tree cover

In enacting section 2151a(b)(3) of this title the Congress recognized the importance of forests and tree cover to the developing countries. The Congress is particularly concerned about the continuing and accelerating alteration, destruction, and loss of tropical forests in developing countries, which pose a serious threat to development and the environment. Tropical forest destruction and loss—

(1) result in shortages of wood, especially wood for fuel; loss of biologically productive wetlands; siltation of lakes, reservoirs, and irrigation systems; floods; destruction of indigenous peoples; extinction of plant and animal species; reduced capacity for food production; and loss of genetic resources; and

(2) can result in desertification and destabilization of the earth's climate.

Properly managed tropical forests provide a sustained flow of resources essential to the economic growth of developing countries, as well as genetic resources of value to developed and developing countries alike.

#### (b) Priorities

The concerns expressed in subsection (a) of this section and the recommendations of the United States Interagency Task Force on Tropical Forests shall be given high priority by the President—

(1) in formulating and carrying out programs and policies with respect to developing coun-

tries, including those relating to bilateral and multilateral assistance and those relating to private sector activities; and

(2) in seeking opportunities to coordinate public and private development and investment activities which affect forests in developing countries.

#### (c) Assistance to developing countries

In providing assistance to developing countries, the President shall do the following:

(1) Place a high priority on conservation and sustainable management of tropical forests.

(2) To the fullest extent feasible, engage in dialogues and exchanges of information with recipient countries—

(A) which stress the importance of conserving and sustainably managing forest resources for the long-term economic benefit of those countries, as well as the irreversible losses associated with forest destruction, and

(B) which identify and focus on policies of those countries which directly or indirectly contribute to deforestation.

(3) To the fullest extent feasible, support projects and activities—

(A) which offer employment and income alternatives to those who otherwise would cause destruction and loss of forests, and

(B) which help developing countries identify and implement alternatives to colonizing forested areas.

(4) To the fullest extent feasible, support training programs, educational efforts, and the establishment or strengthening of institutions which increase the capacity of developing countries to formulate forest policies, engage in relevant land-use planning, and otherwise improve the management of their forests.

(5) To the fullest extent feasible, help end destructive slash-and-burn agriculture by supporting stable and productive farming practices in areas already cleared or degraded and on lands which inevitably will be settled, with special emphasis on demonstrating the feasibility of agroforestry and other techniques which use technologies and methods suited to the local environment and traditional agricultural techniques and feature close consultation with and involvement of local people.

(6) To the fullest extent feasible, help conserve forests which have not yet been degraded, by helping to increase production on lands already cleared or degraded through support of reforestation, fuelwood, and other sustainable forestry projects and practices, making sure that local people are involved at all stages of project design and implementation.

(7) To the fullest extent feasible, support projects and other activities to conserve forested watersheds and rehabilitate those which have been deforested, making sure that local people are involved at all stages of project design and implementation.

(8) To the fullest extent feasible, support training, research, and other actions which lead to sustainable and more environmentally sound practices for timber harvesting, removal, and processing, including reforest-

ation, soil conservation, and other activities to rehabilitate degraded forest lands.

(9) To the fullest extent feasible, support research to expand knowledge of tropical forests and identify alternatives which will prevent forest destruction, loss, or degradation, including research in agroforestry, sustainable management of natural forests, small-scale farms and gardens, small-scale animal husbandry, wider application of adopted traditional practices, and suitable crops and crop combinations.

(10) To the fullest extent feasible, conserve biological diversity in forest areas by—

(A) supporting and cooperating with United States Government agencies, other donors (both bilateral and multilateral), and other appropriate governmental, intergovernmental, and nongovernmental organizations in efforts to identify, establish, and maintain a representative network of protected tropical forest ecosystems on a worldwide basis;

(B) whenever appropriate, making the establishment of protected areas a condition of support for activities involving forest clearance or degradation; and

(C) helping developing countries identify tropical forest ecosystems and species in need of protection and establish and maintain appropriate protected areas.

(11) To the fullest extent feasible, engage in efforts to increase the awareness of United States Government agencies and other donors, both bilateral and multilateral, of the immediate and long-term value of tropical forests.

(12) To the fullest extent feasible, utilize the resources and abilities of all relevant United States Government agencies.

(13) Require that any program or project under this part significantly affecting tropical forests (including projects involving the planting of exotic plant species)—

(A) be based upon careful analysis of the alternatives available to achieve the best sustainable use of the land, and

(B) take full account of the environmental impacts of the proposed activities on biological diversity,

as provided for in the environmental procedures of the Agency for International Development.

(14) Deny assistance under this part for—

(A) the procurement or use of logging equipment, unless an environmental assessment indicates that all timber harvesting operations involved will be conducted in an environmentally sound manner which minimizes forest destruction and that the proposed activity will produce positive economic benefits and sustainable forest management systems; and

(B) actions which significantly degrade national parks or similar protected areas which contain tropical forests or introduce exotic plants or animals into such areas.

(15) Deny assistance under this part for the following activities unless an environmental assessment indicates that the proposed activity will contribute significantly and directly

to improving the livelihood of the rural poor and will be conducted in an environmentally sound manner which supports sustainable development:

(A) Activities which would result in the conversion of forest lands to the rearing of livestock.

(B) The construction, upgrading, or maintenance of roads (including temporary haul roads for logging or other extractive industries) which pass through relatively undegraded forest lands.

(C) The colonization of forest lands.

(D) The construction of dams or other water control structures which flood relatively undegraded forest lands.

**(d) PVOs and other nongovernmental organizations**

Whenever feasible, the President shall accomplish the objectives of this section through projects managed by private and voluntary organizations or international, regional, or national nongovernmental organizations which are active in the region or country where the project is located.

**(e) Country analysis requirements**

Each country development strategy statement or other country plan prepared by the Agency for International Development shall include an analysis of—

(1) the actions necessary in that country to achieve conservation and sustainable management of tropical forests, and

(2) the extent to which the actions proposed for support by the Agency meet the needs thus identified.

**(f) Annual report**

Each annual report required by section 2394(a) of this title shall include a report on the implementation of this section.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §118, as added Pub. L. 99-529, title III, §301(3), Oct. 24, 1986, 100 Stat. 3014.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 118 of Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, was renumbered section 117 and is classified to section 2151p of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2191 of this title.

**§ 2151q. Endangered species**

**(a) Congressional findings and purposes**

The Congress finds the survival of many animal and plant species is endangered by overhunting, by the presence of toxic chemicals in water, air and soil, and by the destruction of habitats. The Congress further finds that the extinction of animal and plant species is an irreparable loss with potentially serious environmental and economic consequences for developing and developed countries alike. Accordingly, the preservation of animal and plant species through the regulation of the hunting and trade in endangered species, through limitations on the pollution of natural ecosystems, and through the protection of wildlife habitats

should be an important objective of the United States development assistance.

**(b) Remedial measures**

In order to preserve biological diversity, the President is authorized to furnish assistance under subchapter I of this chapter, notwithstanding section 2420 of this title, to assist countries in protecting and maintaining wildlife habitats and in developing sound wildlife management and plant conservation programs. Special efforts should be made to establish and maintain wildlife sanctuaries, reserves, and parks; to enact and enforce anti-poaching measures; and to identify, study, and catalog animal and plant species, especially in tropical environments.

**(c) Funding level**

For fiscal year 1987, not less than \$2,500,000 of the funds available to carry out subchapter I of this chapter (excluding funds made available to carry out section 2151b(c)(2) of this title, relating to the Child Survival Fund) shall be allocated for assistance pursuant to subsection (b) of this section for activities which were not funded prior to fiscal year 1987. In addition, the Agency for International Development shall, to the fullest extent possible, continue and increase assistance pursuant to subsection (b) of this section for activities for which assistance was provided in fiscal years prior to fiscal year 1987.

**(d) Country analysis requirements**

Each country development strategy statement or other country plan prepared by the Agency for International Development shall include an analysis of—

- (1) the actions necessary in that country to conserve biological diversity, and
- (2) the extent to which the actions proposed for support by the Agency meet the needs thus identified.

**(e) Local involvement**

To the fullest extent possible, projects supported under this section shall include close consultation with and involvement of local people at all stages of design and implementation.

**(f) PVOs and other nongovernmental organizations**

Whenever feasible, the objectives of this section shall be accomplished through projects managed by appropriate private and voluntary organizations, or international, regional, or national nongovernmental organizations, which are active in the region or country where the project is located.

**(g) Actions by AID**

The Administrator of the Agency for International Development shall—

- (1) cooperate with appropriate international organizations, both governmental and nongovernmental;
- (2) look to the World Conservation Strategy as an overall guide for actions to conserve biological diversity;
- (3) engage in dialogues and exchanges of information with recipient countries which stress the importance of conserving biological

diversity for the long-term economic benefit of those countries and which identify and focus on policies of those countries which directly or indirectly contribute to loss of biological diversity;

(4) support training and education efforts which improve the capacity of recipient countries to prevent loss of biological diversity;

(5) whenever possible, enter into long-term agreements in which the recipient country agrees to protect ecosystems or other wildlife habitats recommended for protection by relevant governmental or nongovernmental organizations or as a result of activities undertaken pursuant to paragraph (6), and the United States agrees to provide, subject to obtaining the necessary appropriations, additional assistance necessary for the establishment and maintenance of such protected areas;

(6) support, as necessary and in cooperation with the appropriate governmental and nongovernmental organizations, efforts to identify and survey ecosystems in recipient countries worthy of protection;

(7) cooperate with and support the relevant efforts of other agencies of the United States Government, including the United States Fish and Wildlife Service, the National Park Service, the Forest Service, and the Peace Corps;

(8) review the Agency's environmental regulations and revise them as necessary to ensure that ongoing and proposed actions by the Agency do not inadvertently endanger wildlife species or their critical habitats, harm protected areas, or have other adverse impacts on biological diversity (and shall report to the Congress within a year after October 24, 1986, on the actions taken pursuant to this paragraph);

(9) ensure that environmental profiles sponsored by the Agency include information needed for conservation of biological diversity; and

(10) deny any direct or indirect assistance under this part for actions which significantly degrade national parks or similar protected areas or introduce exotic plants or animals into such areas.

**(h) Annual reports**

Each annual report required by section 2394(a) of this title shall include, in a separate volume, a report on the implementation of this section.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §119, as added Pub. L. 98-164, title VII, §702, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1045; amended Pub. L. 99-529, title III, §302, Oct. 24, 1986, 100 Stat. 3017; Pub. L. 101-167, title V, §533(d)(4)(A), Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1227.)

REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 2151q, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §119, as added Pub. L. 95-88, title I, §114, Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat.

538; amended Pub. L. 95-424, title I, § 111, Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 948; Pub. L. 96-53, title I, §§ 104(c), 107, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 362, related to renewable and unconventional energy technologies, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 96-533, title III, § 304(g), Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3147.

#### AMENDMENTS

1989—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 101-167 inserted “, notwithstanding section 2420 of this title,” after “subchapter I of this chapter”.

1986—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 99-529 added subsec. (c) and struck out former subsec. (c) which read as follows: “The Administrator of the Agency for International Development, in conjunction with the Secretary of State, the Secretary of the Interior, the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency, the Chairman of the Council on Environmental Quality, and the heads of other appropriate Government agencies, shall develop a United States strategy, including specific policies and programs, to protect and conserve biological diversity in developing countries.”

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 99-529 added subsec. (d) and struck out former subsec. (d) which read as follows: “Each annual report required by section 2394(a) of this title shall include, in a separate volume, a report on the implementation of this subsection. Not later than one year after November 22, 1983, the President shall submit a comprehensive report to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate on the United States strategy to protect and conserve biological diversity in developing countries.”

Subsecs. (e) to (h). Pub. L. 99-529 added subsecs. (e) to (h).

#### SHORT TITLE

For short title of title VII of Pub. L. 98-164, which enacted this section and amended section 2452 of this title, as the “International Environment Protection Act of 1983”, see section 701 of Pub. L. 98-164, set out as a Short Title of 1983 Amendment note under section 2151 of this title.

#### INCREASED INTERNATIONAL COOPERATION TO PROTECT BIOLOGICAL DIVERSITY

Pub. L. 100-530, Oct. 25, 1988, 102 Stat. 2651, provided that Congress supports United States efforts, consistent with 22 U.S.C. 2151q(g), to initiate discussions to develop an international agreement to preserve biological diversity and calls upon the President to continue exerting United States leadership in order to achieve the earliest possible negotiation of an international convention to conserve biological diversity, and directed the President to submit a report to Congress on progress toward goal of negotiating such convention not later than one year after Oct. 25, 1988.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2191, 2321f of this title.

### § 2151r. Sahel development program; planning

#### (a) Congressional support

The Congress reaffirms its support of the initiative of the United States Government in undertaking consultations and planning with the countries concerned, with other nations providing assistance, with the United Nations, and with other concerned international and regional organizations, toward the development and support of a comprehensive long-term African Sahel development program.

#### (b) Presidential authorization

The President is authorized to develop a long-term comprehensive development program for

the Sahel and other drought-stricken nations in Africa.

#### (c) Presidential guidelines

In developing this long-term program, the President shall—

(1) consider international coordination for the planning and implementation of such program;

(2) seek greater participation and support by African countries and organizations in determining development priorities; and

(3) begin such planning immediately.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 120, formerly pt. III, § 639B, as added Pub. L. 93-189, § 20, Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 725; renumbered pt. I, § 494B and amended Pub. L. 94-161, title I, § 101(5), (7), Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 850; renumbered pt. I, § 120 and amended Pub. L. 95-88, title I, § 115(1), (2), Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 539; Pub. L. 95-424, title V, § 502(d)(1), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 959.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to sections 2292e and 2399-1b of this title.

#### AMENDMENTS

1978—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 95-424 struck out subsec. (d) authorizing appropriations for development of a long-term African Sahel development program.

1977—Pub. L. 95-88, § 115(2), substituted “Sahel” for “African” in section catchline.

1975—Pub. L. 94-161, § 101(7)(A), struck out “Sahel” after “African” in section catchline.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94-161, § 101(7)(B), (C), designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and substituted “Congress reaffirms its support of” for “Congress supports”.

Subsecs. (b) to (d). Pub. L. 94-161, § 101(7)(D), added subsecs. (b) to (d).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by section 1-102(a)(1), (e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

### § 2151s. Repealed. Pub. L. 101-513, title V, § 562(d)(5), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2031

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 121, as added Pub. L. 95-88, title I, § 115(3), Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 539; amended Pub. L. 96-53, title I, § 108, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 363; Pub. L. 96-533, title III, § 306, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3147; Pub. L. 97-113, title III, § 308, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1535; Pub. L. 99-83, title VIII, § 809, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 263, related to Sahel development program.

### § 2151t. Development assistance authority

#### (a) Authority of President to furnish assistance

In order to carry out the purposes of this part, the President is authorized to furnish assistance, on such terms and conditions as he may determine, to countries and areas through programs of grant and loan assistance, bilaterally or through regional, multilateral, or private entities.

**(b) Authority of President to make loans; terms and conditions**

The President is authorized to make loans payable as to principal and interest in United States dollars on such terms and conditions as he may determine, in order to promote the economic development of countries and areas, with emphasis upon assisting long-range plans and programs designed to develop economic resources and increase productive capacities. The President shall determine the interest payable on any loan. In making loans under this part, the President shall consider the economic circumstances of the borrower and other relevant factors, including the capacity of the recipient country to repay the loan at a reasonable rate of interest, except that loans may not be made at a rate of interest of less than 3 per centum per annum commencing not later than ten years following the date on which the funds are initially made available under the loan, during which ten-year period the rate of interest shall not be lower than 2 per centum per annum, nor higher than the applicable legal rate of interest of the country in which the loan is made.

**(c) Dollar receipts from loans to be paid into Treasury**

Dollar receipts paid during any fiscal year from loans made under subchapter I of this chapter or from loans made under predecessor foreign assistance legislation shall be deposited in the Treasury as miscellaneous receipts.

**(d) Assistance to research and educational institutions in United States; limitation on amounts**

Not to exceed \$10,000,000 of the funds made available each fiscal year for the purposes of this part may be used for assistance, on such terms and conditions as the President may determine, to research and educational institutions in the United States for the purpose of strengthening their capacity to develop and carry out programs concerned with the economic and social development of developing countries.

**(e) Development Loan Committee; establishment; duties; appointment of officers**

The President shall establish an interagency Development Loan Committee, consisting of such officers from such agencies of the United States Government as he may determine, which shall, under the direction of the President, establish standards and criteria for lending operations under this part in accordance with the foreign and financial policies of the United States. Except in the case of officers serving in positions to which they were appointed by the President by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, officers assigned to the Committee shall be so assigned by the President by and with the advice and consent of the Senate.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §122, as added Pub. L. 95-424, title I, §102(a), (b)(1), (c)(1), (d), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 940, 941.)

REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and

VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

Subsec. (b) of this section consists of provisions formerly contained in subsections (b), (c), and (d) of section 2161 of this title. Subsec. (e) of this section consists of provisions formerly contained in section 2164 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as an Effective Date of 1978 Amendment note under section 2151 of this title.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS; ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Functions of President under this section delegated and funds available under this chapter allocated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with the exception of those functions in subsec. (e) of this section and certain other exceptions, by sections 1-102(a)(1), (e), 1-701(a), and 1-801(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

DEVELOPMENT LOAN COMMITTEE

For establishment and composition of the Development Loan Committee required to be established by subsec. (e) of this section, see section 1-505 of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56676, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2220d, 2221, 2351 of this title.

**§ 2151t-1. Establishment of program**

**(a) In general**

In carrying out part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.] and other relevant foreign assistance laws, the President, acting through the Administrator of the United States Agency for International Development, shall establish a program of training and other technical assistance to assist foreign countries in—

- (1) developing and strengthening laws and regulations to protect intellectual property; and
- (2) developing the infrastructure necessary to implement and enforce such laws and regulations.

**(b) Participation of other agencies**

The Administrator of the United States Agency for International Development—

- (1) shall utilize the expertise of the Patent and Trademark Office and other agencies of the United States Government in designing and implementing the program of assistance provided for in this section;
- (2) shall coordinate assistance under this section with efforts of other agencies of the United States Government to increase international protection of intellectual property, including implementation of international agreements containing high levels of protection of intellectual property; and
- (3) shall consult with the heads of such other agencies in determining which foreign countries will receive assistance under this section.

(Pub. L. 103-392, title V, §501, Oct. 22, 1994, 108 Stat. 4103.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended. Part I of the Act is classified generally to subchapter I (§2151 et seq.) of this chapter. For provisions deeming references to subchapter I to include parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, see section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-228, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

## CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Jobs Through Trade Expansion Act of 1994, and not as part of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 which comprises this chapter.

**§ 2151u. Private and voluntary organizations and cooperatives in overseas development**

**(a) Congressional finding of importance of participation by private and voluntary organizations**

The Congress finds that the participation of rural and urban poor people in their countries' development can be assisted and accelerated in an effective manner through an increase in activities planned and carried out by private and voluntary organizations and cooperatives. Such organizations and cooperatives, embodying the American spirit of self-help and assistance to others to improve their lives and incomes, constitute an important means of mobilizing private American financial and human resources to benefit poor people in developing countries. The Congress declares that it is in the interest of the United States that such organizations and cooperatives expand their overseas development efforts without compromising their private and independent nature. The Congress further declares that the financial resources of such organizations and cooperatives should be supplemented by the contribution of public funds for the purpose of undertaking development activities in accordance with the principles set forth in section 2151-1 of this title and, if necessary and determined on a case-by-case basis, for the purpose of sharing the cost of developing programs related to such activities. The Congress urges the Administrator of the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter, in implementing programs authorized under subchapter I of this chapter, to draw on the resource of private and voluntary organizations and cooperatives to plan and carry out development activities and to establish simplified procedures for the development and approval of programs to be carried out by such private and voluntary organizations and cooperatives as have demonstrated a capacity to undertake effective development activities.

**(b) Payment of transportation charges on shipments by American National Red Cross and United States voluntary agencies**

In order to further the efficient use of United States voluntary contributions for development,

relief, and rehabilitation of friendly peoples, the President is authorized to use funds made available for the purposes of this part and part X of this subchapter to pay transportation charges on shipments by the American National Red Cross and by United States voluntary agencies registered with the Agency for International Development.

**(c) Reimbursement for transportation charges**

Reimbursement under this section may be provided for transportation charges on shipments from United States ports, or in the case of excess or surplus property supplied by the United States from foreign ports, to ports of entry abroad or to points of entry abroad in cases (1) of landlocked countries, (2) where ports cannot be used effectively because of natural or other disturbances, (3) where carriers to a specified country are unavailable, or (4) where a substantial savings in costs or time can be effected by the utilization of points of entry other than ports.

**(d) Arrangements with receiving country for free entry of shipments and for availability of local currency to defray transportation costs**

Where practicable, the President shall make arrangements with the receiving country for free entry of such shipments and for the making available by the country of local currencies for the purpose of defraying the transportation costs of such shipments from the port or point of entry of the receiving country to the designated shipping point of the consignee.

**(e) Continuation of support for programs in countries antedating prohibitions on assistance; national interest considerations; report to Congress**

Prohibitions on assistance to countries contained in this chapter or any other Act shall not be construed to prohibit assistance by the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter in support of programs of private and voluntary organizations and cooperatives already being supported prior to the date such prohibition becomes applicable. The President shall take into consideration, in any case in which statutory prohibitions on assistance would be applicable but for this subsection, whether continuation of support for such programs is in the national interest of the United States. If the President continues such support after such date, he shall prepare and transmit, not later than one year after such date, to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and to the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate a report setting forth the reasons for such continuation.

**(f) Funds for private and voluntary organizations**

For each of the fiscal years 1986 through 1989, funds in an amount not less than thirteen and one half percent of the aggregate amount appropriated for that fiscal year to carry out sections 2151a(a), 2151b(b), 2151b(c), 2151c, 2151d, 2151s,<sup>1</sup> and 2292 of this title shall be made available for the activities of private and voluntary organiza-

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

tions, and the President shall seek to channel funds in an amount not less than 16 percent of such aggregate amount for the activities of private and voluntary organizations. Funds made available under part IV of subchapter II of this chapter for the activities of private and voluntary organizations may be considered in determining compliance with the requirements of this subsection.

**(g) Additional and future funding for private and voluntary organizations**

After December 31, 1984, funds made available to carry out section 2151a(a), 2151b(b), 2151b(c), 2151c, 2151d, 2292, or 2293 of this title may not be made available for programs of any United States private and voluntary organization which does not obtain at least 20 percent of its total annual financial support for its international activities from sources other than the United States Government, except that this restriction does not apply with respect to programs which, as of that date, are receiving financial support from the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter. The Administrator of the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter may, on a case-by-case basis, waive the restriction established by this subsection, after taking into account the effectiveness of the overseas development activities of the organization, its level of volunteer support, its financial viability and stability, and the degree of its dependence for its financial support on the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter.

**(h) Promotion of democratic cooperatives**

The Congress recognizes that, in addition to their role in social and economic development, cooperatives provide an opportunity for people to participate directly in democratic decision-making. Therefore, assistance under this part shall be provided to rural and urban cooperatives which offer large numbers of low- and middle-income people in developing countries an opportunity to participate directly in democratic decisionmaking. Such assistance shall be designed to encourage the adoption of self-help, private sector cooperative techniques and practices which have been successful in the United States.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §123, as added Pub. L. 95-424, title I, §102(e), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 941; amended Pub. L. 96-53, title I, §121, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 366; Pub. L. 96-533, title III, §307, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3147; Pub. L. 97-113, title III, §309, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1535; Pub. L. 99-83, title III, §§309, 310, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 215; Pub. L. 101-513, title V, §562(d)(6), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2031.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (e), was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

Section 2151s of this title, referred to in subsec. (f), was repealed by Pub. L. 101-513, title V, §562(d)(5), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2031.

REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 101-513, §562(d)(6)(A), inserted “and part X of this subchapter” after “this part”.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 101-513, §562(d)(6)(B), substituted “2292, or 2293” for “2191s, or 2292”.

1985—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 99-83, §309(a), substituted “one year” for “thirty days”.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 99-83, §309(b)(1), substituted “1986 through 1989” for “1982, 1983, and 1984”.

Pub. L. 99-83, §309(b)(2), which directed the substitution of “thirteen and one half” for “twelve” was executed by making the substitution for “12” as the probable intent of Congress because “twelve” did not appear in text.

Pub. L. 99-83, §309(b)(3), inserted provisions relating to funds for determining compliance with subsec. (f).

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 99-83, §310, added subsec. (h).

1981—Subsecs. (f), (g). Pub. L. 97-113, §309, added subsecs. (f) and (g).

1980—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 96-533, §307(1), (2), provided for contribution of public funds to private and voluntary organizations and cooperatives for purpose of sharing cost of developing programs related to development activities and encouraged establishment of simplified procedures for development of programs to be carried out by such entities having a capacity for undertaking effective development programs.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 96-533, §307(3), added subsec. (e).

1979—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 96-53 substituted “Agency for International Development” for “Advisory Committee on Voluntary Foreign Aid”.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1979 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-53 effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 512(a) of Pub. L. 96-53, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as an Effective Date of 1978 Amendment note under section 2151 of this title.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by section 1-102(a)(1), (e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

PRIVATE AND VOLUNTEER ORGANIZATIONS

Pub. L. 103-306, title II, Aug. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 1612, provided in part that: “None of the funds appropriated or otherwise made available by this Act for development assistance may be made available to any United States private and voluntary organization, except any cooperative development organization, which obtains less than 20 per centum of its total annual funding for international activities from sources other than the United States Government: *Provided*, That the requirements of the provisions of section 123(g) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151u(g)] and the provi-

sions on private and voluntary organizations in title II of the 'Foreign Assistance and Related Programs Appropriations Act, 1985' (as enacted in Public Law 98-473) shall be superseded by the provisions of this section."

Similar provisions were contained in the following prior appropriations acts:

- Pub. L. 103-87, title II, Sept. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 935.
- Pub. L. 102-391, title II, Oct. 6, 1992, 106 Stat. 1642.
- Pub. L. 101-513, title II, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1987.
- Pub. L. 101-167, title II, Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1204.
- Pub. L. 100-461, title II, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-9.
- Pub. L. 100-202, § 101(e) [title II], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-139.
- Pub. L. 99-500, § 101(f) [title II], Oct. 18, 1986, 100 Stat. 1783-213, 1783-218, and Pub. L. 99-591, § 101(f) [title II], Oct. 30, 1986, 100 Stat. 3341-214, 3341-218.
- Pub. L. 99-190, § 101(i) [title II], Dec. 19, 1985, 99 Stat. 1291, 1296.
- Pub. L. 98-473, title I, § 101(1) [title II], Oct. 12, 1984, 98 Stat. 1884, 1889.

STUDY AND REPORT CONCERNING USE OF PRIVATE AND VOLUNTARY ORGANIZATIONS, COOPERATIVES, AND PRIVATE SECTOR

Section 311 of Pub. L. 99-83 provided that:

"(a) STUDY.—The Administrator of the Agency for International Development shall undertake a comprehensive study of additional ways to provide development assistance through nongovernmental organizations, including United States and indigenous private and voluntary organizations, cooperatives, the business community, and other private entities. Such study shall include—

"(1) an analysis of the percentage of development assistance allocated to governmental and nongovernmental programs;

"(2) an analysis of structural impediments, within both the United States and foreign governments, to additional use of nongovernmental programs; and

"(3) an analysis of the comparative economic benefits of governmental and nongovernmental programs.

"(b) REPORT.—The Administrator shall report the results of this study to the Congress no later than September 30, 1986."

AFRICAN DEVELOPMENT FOUNDATION

Section 122 of Pub. L. 95-424, as amended by Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(5), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560, provided that:

"(a) The Congress declares that the United States should place higher priority on the formulation and implementation of policies and programs to enable the people of African nations to develop their potential, fulfill their aspirations, and enjoy better, more productive lives. In furtherance of these objectives, the Congress finds that additional support is needed for community-based self-help activities in Africa and that an African Development Foundation, organized to further the purposes set forth in section 123 of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [this section], can complement current United States development programs in Africa.

"(b) [Repealed. Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(5), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.]"

**§ 2151v. Aid to relatively least developed countries**

**(a) Characterization of least developed countries**

Relatively least developed countries (as determined on the basis of criteria comparable to those used for the United Nations General Assembly list of "least developed countries") are characterized by extreme poverty, very limited infrastructure, and limited administrative capacity to implement basic human needs growth strategies. In such countries special measures may be necessary to insure the full effectiveness of assistance furnished under subchapter I of this chapter.

**(b) Assistance on grant basis**

For the purpose of promoting economic growth in these countries, the President is authorized and encouraged to make assistance under this part available on a grant basis to the maximum extent that is consistent with the attainment of United States development objectives.

**(c) Waiver of principal and interest on prior liability**

(1) The Congress recognizes that the relatively least developed countries have virtually no access to private international capital markets. Insofar as possible, prior assistance terms should be consistent with present grant assistance terms for relatively least developed countries. Therefore, notwithstanding section 2370(r) of this title and section 321 of the International Development and Food Assistance Act of 1975 but subject to paragraph (2) of this subsection, the President on a case-by-case basis, taking into account the needs of the country for financial resources and the commitment of the country to the development objectives set forth in sections 2151 and 2151-1 of this title—

(A) may permit a relatively least developed country to place amounts, which would otherwise be paid to the United States as payments on principal or interest on liability incurred by that country under subchapter I of this chapter (or any predecessor legislation) into local currency accounts (in equivalent amounts of local currencies as determined by the official exchange rate for United States dollars) for use by the relatively least developed country, with the concurrence of the Administrator of the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter, for activities which are consistent with section 2151-1 of this title; and

(B) may waive interest payments on liability incurred by a relatively least developed country under subchapter I of this chapter (or any predecessor legislation) if the President determines that that country would be unable to use for development purposes the equivalent amounts of local currencies which could be made available under subparagraph (A).

(2) The aggregate amount of interest waived and interest and principal paid into local currency accounts under this subsection in any fiscal year may not exceed the amount approved for such purpose in an Act appropriating funds to carry out this part for that fiscal year, which amount may not exceed the amount authorized to be so approved by the annual authorizing legislation for development assistance programs. Amounts due and payable during fiscal year 1981 to the United States from relatively least developed countries on loans made under this subchapter (or any predecessor legislation) are authorized to be approved for use, in accordance with the provisions of paragraph (1) of this subsection, in an amount not to exceed \$10,845,000.

(3) In exercising the authority granted by this subsection, the President should act in concert with other creditor countries.

**(d) Waiver of requirement of contribution**

The President may on a case-by-case basis waive the requirement of section 2151h(a) of this



title for financial or “in kind” contributions in the case of programs, projects, or activities in relatively least developed countries.

**(e) Waiver of time limitations on aid**

Section 2151h(b) of this title shall not apply with respect to grants to relatively least developed countries.

(Pub. L. 87–195, pt. I, §124, as added Pub. L. 95–424, title I, §112(a)(1), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 948; amended Pub. L. 96–53, title I, §109, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 363; Pub. L. 96–533, title III, §308, Oct. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3147.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 321 of the International Development and Food Assistance Act of 1975, referred to in subsec. (c)(1), is section 321 of Pub. L. 94–161, Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 868, which is set out as a note under section 2220a of this title.

REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92–226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa–5 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

1980—Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 96–533 substituted “fiscal year 1981” and “\$10,845,000” for “fiscal year 1980” and “\$18,800,000”, respectively.

1979—Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 96–53 inserted provisions respecting use of funds due and payable during fiscal year 1980 to the United States.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1979 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96–53 effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 512(a) of Pub. L. 96–53, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 112(a)(2) of Pub. L. 94–424 provided that: “The authority granted by section 124(c) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [subsec. (c) of this section] shall not become effective until October 1, 1979.”

Section effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95–424, set out as an Effective Date of 1978 Amendment note under section 2151 of this title.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by section 1–102(a)(1), (e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

PRESIDENTIAL AUTHORITY DURING FISCAL YEARS 1990 AND 1991

Pub. L. 100–461, title V, §572, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268–44, provided that: “During fiscal years 1990 and 1991, the President may use the authority of paragraphs (A) and (B) of section 124(c)(1) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151v(c)(1)(A), (B)] with respect to such aggregate amounts of principal and interest payable during each of these fiscal years as the President may determine, or at any time after September 30, 1989, the President may, if he determines it is in the national interest to do so, use the authority of those paragraphs with respect to such aggregate amounts of outstanding principal and interest payable at any time after that date as the President may determine. The

authority provided in this section may be exercised with respect to any country described in the last sentence of this section and may be exercised notwithstanding section 124(c)(2) of that Act. In exercising the authority provided in this section, the President may waive the requirement that equivalent amounts of local currencies be deposited into local currency accounts in accordance with paragraph (A) of section 124(c)(1) of that Act, to the extent that the President determines that sufficient local currencies are otherwise available to achieve development objectives. This section applies with respect to any relatively least developed country, or any country in Sub-Saharan Africa (without regard to whether that country is a relatively least developed country within the meaning of section 124(a) of that Act), if—

“(1) an International Monetary Fund standby agreement is in effect with respect to that country; or

“(2) a structural adjustment program of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development or of the International Development Association is in effect with respect to that country; or

“(3) a structural adjustment facility or enhanced structural adjustment facility with the International Monetary Fund is in effect with respect to that country.”

[Functions of President under section 572 of Pub. L. 100–461, set out above, delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, pursuant to section 1–102(a)(8), (e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.]

**§ 2151w. Project and program evaluations**

(a) The Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency is directed to improve the assessment and evaluation of the programs and projects carried out by that agency under this part. The Director shall consult with the appropriate committees of the Congress in establishing standards for such evaluations.

(b) Repealed. Pub. L. 97–113, title VII, §734(a)(1), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.

(Pub. L. 87–195, pt. I, §125, as added Pub. L. 95–424, title I, §113, Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 950; amended 1979 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §6(b)(1), eff. Oct. 1, 1979, 44 F.R. 41166, 93 Stat. 1379; Pub. L. 97–113, title VII, §734(a)(1), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.)

AMENDMENTS

1981—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 97–113 struck out subsec. (b) which required an annual Presidential report on actions taken by the international financial institutions and the United Nations Development Program to improve the evaluation of their own programs.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95–424, set out as an Effective Date of 1978 Amendment note under section 2151 of this title.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“The Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency” and “Director” substituted for “The Administrator of the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter” and “Administrator”, respectively, in subsec. (a), pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1979, §6(b)(1), 44 F.R. 41166, 93 Stat. 1379, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, as provided by section 1–101 of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, set out as notes under section 2381 of this title, which transferred all functions and authorities vested in the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter or in its Ad-

ministrator under this section to the Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by section 1-102(a)(1), (e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

### § 2151x. Development and illicit narcotics production

#### (a) Congressional statement of findings

The Congress recognizes that illicit narcotics cultivation is related to overall development problems and that the vast majority of all individuals employed in the cultivation of illicit narcotics reside in the developing countries and are among the poorest of the poor in those countries and that therefore the ultimate success of any effort to eliminate illicit narcotics production depends upon the availability of alternative economic opportunities for those individuals, upon other factors which assistance under this part could address, as well as upon direct narcotics control efforts.

#### (b) Program planning priorities; resource utilization

(1) In planning programs of assistance under this part, and part X of this subchapter, and under part IV of subchapter II of this chapter for countries in which there is illicit narcotics cultivation, the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter should give priority consideration to programs which would help reduce illicit narcotics cultivation by stimulating broader development opportunities.

(2) The agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter may utilize resources for activities aimed at increasing awareness of the effects of production and trafficking of illicit narcotics on source and transit countries.

#### (c) Administrative requirements

In furtherance of the purposes of this section, the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter shall cooperate fully with, and share its expertise in development matters with, other agencies of the United States Government involved in narcotics control activities abroad.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 126, as added Pub. L. 96-53, title I, § 110, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 363; amended Pub. L. 99-83, title VI, § 603, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 228; Pub. L. 101-513, title V, § 562(d)(7), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2031.)

#### REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§ 2346 et seq.), VI (§ 2348 et seq.), and VIII (§ 2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

#### AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 101-513 inserted “, and part X of this subchapter,” after “this part”.

1985—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 99-83 designated existing provisions as par. (1), inserted reference to part IV of subchapter II of this chapter, and added par. (2).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 512(a) of Pub. L. 96-53, set out as an Effective Date of 1979 Amendment note under section 2151 of this title.

### § 2151x-1. Assistance for agricultural and industrial alternatives to narcotics production

#### (a) Waiver of restrictions

For the purpose of reducing dependence upon the production of crops from which narcotic and psychotropic drugs are derived, the President may provide assistance to a foreign country under chapter 1 of part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2151 and following; relating to development assistance) and chapter 4 of part II of that Act (22 U.S.C. 2346 and following; relating to the economic support fund) to promote the production, processing, or the marketing of products or commodities, notwithstanding any other provision of law that would otherwise prohibit the provision of assistance to promote the production, processing, or the marketing of such products or commodities.

#### (b) Effective date

Subsection (a) of this section applies with respect to funds made available for fiscal year 1991 or any fiscal year thereafter.

(Pub. L. 101-623, § 6, Nov. 21, 1990, 104 Stat. 3355.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended. Chapter 1 of part I and chapter 4 of part II of the Act are classified generally to part I (§ 2151 et seq.) of subchapter I and part IV (§ 2346 et seq.) of subchapter II, respectively, of this chapter. For provisions deeming references to part I of subchapter I to include a reference to section 2293 of this title, see section 2293(d)(1) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

#### CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the International Narcotics Control Act of 1990, and not as part of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 which comprises this chapter.

### § 2151x-2. Assistance in furtherance of narcotics control objectives of United States

#### (a) Waiver of certain restrictions

For the purpose of reducing dependence upon the production of crops from which narcotic and psychotropic drugs are derived, the President may provide economic assistance for a country which, because of its coca production, is a major illicit drug producing country (as defined in section 481(i)(2)<sup>1</sup> of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2291(i)(2))) to promote the production, processing, or the marketing of products

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

which can be economically produced in such country, notwithstanding the provisions of law described in subsection (b) of this section.

**(b) Description of restrictions waived**

The provisions of law made inapplicable by subsection (a) of this section are any other provisions of law that would otherwise restrict the use of economic assistance funds with respect to the production, processing, or marketing of agricultural commodities (or the products thereof) or other products, including sections 521, 546, and 547 (but excluding section 510) of the Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Act, 1990, and comparable provisions of subsequent Acts appropriating funds for foreign operations, export financing, and related programs.

**(c) “Economic assistance” defined**

As used in this section, the term “economic assistance” means assistance under chapter 1 of part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2151 and following; relating to development assistance) and assistance under chapter 4 of part II of that Act (22 U.S.C. 2346 and following; relating to the economic support fund).

(Pub. L. 101–624, title XV, § 1544, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 3695.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Act, 1990, referred to in subsec. (b), is Pub. L. 101–167, Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1195. Sections 510, 521, 546, and 547 of that Act are not classified to the Code.

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (c), is Pub. L. 87–195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended. Chapter 1 of part I and chapter 4 of part II of the Act are classified generally to part I (§ 2151 et seq.) of subchapter I and part IV (§ 2346 et seq.) of subchapter II, respectively, of this chapter. For provisions deeming references to part I of subchapter I to include a reference to section 2293 of this title, see section 2293(d)(1) of this title. Subsec. (i) of section 481 of the Act was redesignated (e) by Pub. L. 102–583, § 6(b)(3), Nov. 2, 1992, 106 Stat. 4932. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Agricultural Development and Trade Act of 1990, and also as part of the Food, Agriculture, Conservation, and Trade Act of 1990, and not as part of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 which comprises this chapter.

**§ 2151y. Accelerated loan repayments; annual review of countries with bilateral concessional loan balances; priority of determinations respecting negotiations with countries having balances; criteria for determinations**

The Administrator of the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter shall conduct an annual review of bilateral concessional loan balances and shall determine and identify those countries whose financial resources make possible accelerated loan repayments. In particular, European countries that were recipients of concessional loans by predecessor agencies to the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter shall be contacted to negotiate acceler-

ated repayments. The criteria used by the Administrator in making these determinations shall be established in conjunction with the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate.

(Pub. L. 87–195, pt. I, § 127, as added Pub. L. 96–53, title V, § 508(a), Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 379.)

REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§ 2346 et seq.), VI (§ 2348 et seq.), and VIII (§ 2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92–226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa–5 of this title.

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104–14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 512(a) of Pub. L. 96–53, set out as an Effective Date of 1979 Amendment note under section 2151 of this title.

NEGOTIATING EFFORTS CONCERNING ACCELERATED LOAN REPAYMENTS TO BE INCLUDED IN ANNUAL REPORTS ON FOREIGN ASSISTANCE FOR 1980 AND 1981

Section 508(b) of Pub. L. 96–53, which related to loan repayment provisions in reports, was repealed by Pub. L. 97–113, title VII, § 734(a)(3), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.

**§ 2151z. Targeted assistance**

**(a) Determination of target populations and strengthening United States assistance**

The President shall use poverty measurement standards, such as those developed by the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, and other appropriate measurements in determining target populations for United States development assistance, and shall strengthen United States efforts to assure that a substantial percentage of development assistance under this part directly improves the lives of the poor majority, with special emphasis on those individuals living in absolute poverty.

**(b) Ultimate beneficiaries of activities**

To the maximum extent possible, activities under this part that attempt to increase the institutional capabilities of private organizations or governments, or that attempt to stimulate scientific and technological research, shall be designed and monitored to ensure that the ultimate beneficiaries of these activities are the poor majority.

(Pub. L. 87–195, pt. I, § 128, as added Pub. L. 97–377, title I, § 101(b)(2), Dec. 21, 1982, 96 Stat. 1832; amended Pub. L. 99–83, title III, § 312(a), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 216.)

AMENDMENTS

1985—Pub. L. 99–83, in amending section generally, designated existing provisions as subsec. (a), substituted provisions setting overall guidelines and principles for determination of target populations and strengthening United States assistance, for provisions

relating to Presidential responsibility in carrying out this part in fiscal year 1983 for targeting assistance for those living in absolute poverty, and added subsec. (b).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

REPORT OF ADMINISTRATOR OF AGENCY FOR INTERNATIONAL DEVELOPMENT TO CONGRESS BY JUNE 21, 1983, ON IMPLEMENTATION OF SECTION

Section 101(b)(2) of Pub. L. 97-377 provided in part: "That within six months after the date of approval of this joint resolution [Dec. 21, 1982], the Administrator of the Agency for International Development shall report to Congress on the implementation of this provision [this section], the types of projects determined to meet these requirements, and the effect on the overall United States foreign assistance program."

PART II—OTHER PROGRAMS

SUBPART I—MULTILATERAL AND REGIONAL DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMS

**§§ 2161, 2162. Repealed. Pub. L. 95-424, title I, § 102(g)(1)(A), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 942**

Section 2161, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 201, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 426; Pub. L. 87-565, pt. I, § 102, Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 256; Pub. L. 88-205, pt. I, § 102(a), Dec. 16, 1963, 77 Stat. 380; Pub. L. 88-633, pt. I, § 101, Oct. 7, 1964, 78 Stat. 1009; Pub. L. 89-583, pt. I, § 102(a), Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 796; Pub. L. 90-137, pt. I, § 102(a), (b), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 447; Pub. L. 90-554, pt. I, § 101(a), Oct. 8, 1968, 82 Stat. 960, related to the establishment by the President of the Development Loan Fund. See section 2151(b) of this title.

Section 2162, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 202, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 426; Pub. L. 88-205, pt. I, § 102(b), Dec. 16, 1963, 77 Stat. 380; Pub. L. 89-583, pt. I, § 102(b), Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 796; Pub. L. 90-137, pt. I, § 102(c), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 447; Pub. L. 90-554, pt. I, § 101(b), Oct. 8, 1968, 82 Stat. 960; Pub. L. 91-175, pt. I, § 101(a), Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 805; Pub. L. 92-226, pt. I, § 101(a), Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 21, related to authorization of appropriations, availability of funds, and encouragement of development through private enterprise.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as an Effective Date of 1978 Amendment note under section 2151 of this title.

**§ 2163. Repealed. Pub. L. 93-189, § 3(b), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 717**

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 203, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 427; Pub. L. 91-175, pt. I, § 101(b), Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 805; Pub. L. 92-226, pt. I, § 101(b), Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 21; Pub. L. 93-189, § 3(a), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 717; Pub. L. 93-559, § 6, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1796, authorized use of not more than 50 per centum of dollar receipts scheduled to be paid during each of the fiscal years 1974 and 1975 from loans made under this subchapter and predecessor foreign assistance legislation for making loans under part I of this subchapter for each such fiscal year, and disposition of dollar receipts paid on and after July 1, 1975.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective July 1, 1975, see section 3(b) of Pub. L. 93-189.

**§ 2164. Repealed. Pub. L. 95-424, title I, § 102(g)(1)(A), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 942**

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 204, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 427, related to the establishment, duties and ap-

pointment of officers of the Development Loan Committee. The provisions of this section were redesignated as subsec. (e) of section 2151t of this title by section 102(d)(1), (2) of Pub. L. 95-424.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as an Effective Date of 1978 Amendment note under section 2151 of this title.

**§ 2165. Repealed. Pub. L. 92-226, pt. I, § 101(d), Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 21**

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 205, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 427; Pub. L. 89-171, pt. I, § 102(a), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 653; Pub. L. 89-583, pt. I, § 102(c), Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 797; Pub. L. 90-137, pt. I, § 102(d), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 447, provided for use of international lending organizations. See section 2169(d) of this title.

**§ 2166. Regional development in Africa**

The President is requested to seek and to take appropriate action, in cooperation and consultation with African and other interested nations and with international development organizations, to further and assist in the advancement of African regional development institutions, including the African Development Bank, with the view toward promoting African economic development.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 206, as added Pub. L. 89-171, pt. I, § 102(b), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 653.)

AFRICAN ASSISTANCE POLICY; PRESIDENTIAL REPORT TO CONGRESS

Pub. L. 93-559, § 49, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1816, which related to Presidential review and report on African assistance policy, was repealed by Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(8), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.

PORTUGUESE AFRICAN TERRITORIES OF ANGOLA, MOZAMBIQUE, AND GUINEA-BISSAU: INDEPENDENCE POLICY

Pub. L. 93-559, § 50, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1816, as amended by Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(8), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560, provided that:

"(a)(1) Congress finds that the Government of Portugal's recognition of the right to independence of the African territories of Angola, Mozambique, and Guinea-Bissau marks a significant advance toward the goal of self-determination for all the peoples of Africa, without which peace on the continent is not secure.

"(2) Congress finds that progress toward independence for the Portuguese African territories will have a significant impact on the international organizations and the community of nations.

"(3) Congress commends the Portuguese Government's initiatives on these fronts as evidence of a reaffirmation of that Government's support for her obligations under both the United Nations Charter and the North Atlantic Treaty Organization.

"(b) Therefore, Congress calls upon the President and the Secretary of State to take the following actions designed to make clear United States support for a peaceful and orderly transition to independence in the Portuguese African territories:

"(1) An official statement should be issued of United States support for the independence of Angola, Mozambique and Guinea-Bissau, and of our desire to have good relations with the future governments of the countries.

"(2) It should be made clear to the Government of Portugal that we view the efforts toward a peaceful and just settlement of the conflict in the African territories as consistent with Portugal's obligations under the North Atlantic Treaty Organization partnership.

"(3) The United States should encourage United Nations support for a peaceful transition to independ-

ence, negotiated settlement of all differences, and the protection of human rights of all citizens of the three territories.

“(4) The United States should open a dialog with potential leaders of Angola, Mozambique, and Guinea-Bissau and assure them of our commitment to their genuine political and economic independence.

“(5) The economic development needs of the three territories will be immense when independence is achieved. Therefore, it is urged that the United States Agency for International Development devote attention to assessing the economic situation in Angola, Mozambique, and Guinea-Bissau and be ready to cooperate with the future governments in providing the kind of assistance that will help make their independence viable. In addition, the United States Government should take the initiative among other donors, both bilateral and multilateral, in seeking significant contribution of development assistance for the three territories.

“(6) In light of the need of Angola, Mozambique, and Guinea-Bissau for skilled and educated manpower, a priority consideration should be given to expanding current United States programs of educational assistance to the territories as a timely and substantive contribution to their independence.

“(c) [Repealed. Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(8), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.]”

EX. ORD. NO. 12599. COORDINATION OF ECONOMIC POLICIES FOR SUB-SAHARAN AFRICA

Ex. Ord. No. 12599, June 23, 1987, 52 F.R. 23779, provided:

By the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and statutes of the United States of America, including the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.], as amended, and in order to establish procedures for development of a common long-term goal for all United States economic programs and policies in Sub-Saharan Africa, it is hereby ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. *Establishment of the Coordinating Committee for Sub-Saharan Africa.* (a) There is hereby established a Coordinating Committee for Sub-Saharan Africa (“the Committee”).

(b) The Committee shall consist of the Administrator of the Agency for International Development, who shall be Chairman; the Assistant Secretary of the Treasury for International Affairs, who shall be Co-Chairman; representatives designated by the Secretaries of State, Defense, Agriculture, and Commerce; and representatives of the Office of Management and Budget, the Central Intelligence Agency, the United States Information Agency, the Peace Corps, the Overseas Private Investment Corporation, the United States Trade Representative, the African Development Foundation, the Assistant to the President for National Security Affairs, and the Assistant to the President for Policy Development.

(c) Whenever matters being considered by the Committee may be of interest to Federal agencies not represented on the Committee, the Chairman may invite the head of such agencies to designate representatives to participate in meetings and deliberations of the Committee.

(d) The Committee shall operate under the policy direction of the Secretaries of State and the Treasury.

(e) All Executive departments and agencies shall keep the Committee informed in necessary detail as to the policies, programs, and activities relating to the functions of the Committee described in section 2.

(f) Nothing herein shall be deemed to derogate from the responsibilities of the head of any agency in exercising the responsibilities vested in that person by law.

SEC. 2. *Functions of the Committee.* (a) The Committee shall operate in a manner best deemed appropriate by its Chairman in order to ensure the following:

(1) that all United States economic programs and policies for Sub-Saharan Africa are consistent with the goal of ending hunger in the region through economic growth, policy reform, and private sector development;

(2) United States economic programs and policies for each country of Sub-Saharan Africa are tailored to the specific needs of that country, consistent with the goal presented in subsection (a)(1) of this section;

(3) United States economic programs and policies for Sub-Saharan Africa are fully coordinated within the United States Government prior to implementation with other donors and potential recipients; and,

(4) the overall level of aid the United States offers a country of Sub-Saharan Africa is related to continued performance of that country toward the goal presented in subsection (a)(1) of this section or willingness to undertake economic reform.

(b) The Committee shall support the Secretaries of State and the Treasury in preparing the annual report to the President required in section 3 of this Order.

(c) The Committee shall coordinate the preparation annually of a unified budget justification for transmittal to the Congress. This justification shall encompass all United States economic activities, strategies, and policies for Sub-Saharan Africa. Nothing in this subsection shall be deemed to affect the statutory authorities of the Director of the Office of Management and Budget.

(d) The Committee shall encourage and coordinate the alignment of United States food assistance programs in accordance with the goals presented in subsection 2(a) of this Order.

(e) The Committee shall encourage and coordinate efforts to mobilize expanded humanitarian and business involvement in Africa, both United States and international, through an outreach effort with appropriate Federal agencies.

(f) The Committee shall encourage and coordinate efforts of Federal agencies to expand United States business involvement in Sub-Saharan Africa by targeting trade and investment missions, prefeasibility and feasibility studies, sector and regional analyses, access to credit, and information on trade and investment opportunities in countries undertaking economic reform.

SEC. 3. *Annual Report to the President.* (a) The Secretary of State and the Secretary of the Treasury shall make a joint report to the President annually on Sub-Saharan Africa.

(b) The annual report shall discuss the economic condition of Sub-Saharan Africa and highlight progress being made in the region toward achieving the goal presented in section 2(a)(1). The annual report shall also affirm that all United States economic programs and policies conform with and support the goal of ending hunger in Sub-Saharan Africa through economic growth and private enterprise development.

RONALD REAGAN.

**§§ 2167, 2168. Repealed. Pub. L. 95-424, title I, § 102(g)(1)(A), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 942**

Section 2167, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 207, as added Pub. L. 90-137, pt. I, § 102(e), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 448, related to placement of emphasis on democratic institutions, agriculture, education, public health and other needs, in the furnishing of development assistance.

Section 2168, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 208, as added Pub. L. 90-137, pt. I, § 102(e), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 448, related to the taking into account, in determining to what extent United States should furnish assistance, of country's own efforts to aid itself.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as an Effective Date of 1978 Amendment note under section 2151 of this title.

**§ 2169. Multilateral, regional, and bilateral programs**

**(a) Multilateral programs**

The Congress recognizes that the planning and administration of development assistance by, or

under the sponsorship of the United Nations, multilateral lending institutions, and other multilateral organizations may contribute to the efficiency and effectiveness of that assistance through participation of other donors in the development effort, improved coordination of policies and programs, pooling of knowledge, avoidance of duplication of facilities and manpower, and greater encouragement of self-help performance.

**(b) Regional programs**

It is further the sense of the Congress (1) that where problems or opportunities are common to two or more countries in a region, in such fields as agriculture, education, transportation, communications, power, watershed development, disease control, and establishment of development banks, these countries often can more effectively resolve such problems and exploit such opportunities by joining together in regional organizations or working together on regional programs, (2) that assistance often can be utilized more efficiently in regional programs than in separate country programs, and (3) that to the maximum extent practicable consistent with the purposes of this chapter assistance under this chapter should be furnished so as to encourage less developed countries to cooperate with each other in regional development programs.

**(c) Federal funds to multilateral lending institutions and multilateral organizations for loans to foreign countries; increase**

It is the sense of the Congress that the President should increase, to the extent practicable, the funds provided by the United States to multilateral lending institutions and multilateral organizations in which the United States participates for use by such institutions and organizations in making loans to foreign countries.

**(d) Transfer of funds; use of international or multilateral lending organizations**

In furtherance of the provisions of subsection (a) of this section, any funds appropriated under subchapter I of this chapter may be transferred by the President to the International Development Association, the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, the International Finance Corporation, the Asian Development Bank or other multilateral lending institutions and multilateral organizations in which the United States participates for the purpose of providing funds to enable any such institution or organization to make loans to foreign countries.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §209, as added Pub. L. 90-137, pt. I, §102(e), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 449; amended Pub. L. 92-226, pt. I, §101(c), Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 21; Pub. L. 94-161, title III, §311(1), Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 860.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (b), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

1975—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 94-161 substituted provision for increase of Federal funds to multilateral lending institutions and multilateral organizations for making loans to foreign countries for prior provision for reduction of loans under the bilateral lending programs to attain a total amount not to exceed \$100,000,000 not later than June 30, 1975.

1972—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 92-226, §101(c)(1), in amending subsec. (a) generally, provided for United Nations sponsorship of development assistance and substituted "may contribute" for "may, in some instances, contribute".

Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 92-226, §101(c)(2), added subsecs. (c) and (d).

ESTABLISHMENT OF STANDARD GOVERNING ALLOCATION OF DEVELOPMENT ASSISTANCE FOR PRODUCTION AND EXPORT OF COMMODITIES IN SURPLUS IN WORLD MARKET; PRESIDENTIAL INITIATION OF INTERNATIONAL CONSULTATIONS; REPORT BY PRESIDENT TO CONGRESS

Pub. L. 95-481, title VI, §610, Oct. 18, 1978, 92 Stat. 1602, provided that: "The President shall initiate wide international consultations beginning with the member nations of the Organization of Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD), designed to develop a viable standard governing the allocation of development assistance for the production and export of commodities. Such consultations shall relate to commodities which are in surplus in the world market and if produced for export would cause substantial harm to producers of the same, similar or competing products. Not later than one year after the enactment of this Act [Oct. 18, 1978] the President shall report to the President of the Senate, the Speaker of the House of Representatives, and the Chairmen of the House and Senate Appropriations Committees on the progress made in carrying out this section."

POLICY WITH RESPECT TO COUNTRIES MOST SERIOUSLY AFFECTED BY FOOD SHORTAGES; PRESIDENTIAL REPORTS TO CONGRESS

Pub. L. 93-559, §55(a), Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1819, provided that: "The United Nations has designated thirty-two countries as 'Most Seriously Affected' by the current economic crisis. These are countries without the internal food production capability or the foreign exchange availability to secure food to meet their immediate food requirements. The Congress calls upon the President and Secretary of State to take the following actions designed to mobilize appropriate resources to meet the food emergency:

"(1) Review and make appropriate adjustments in the level of programming of our food and fertilizer assistance programs with the aim of increasing to the maximum extent feasible the volume of food and fertilizer available to those countries most seriously affected by current food shortages.

"(2) Call upon all traditional and potential new donors of food, fertilizer, or the means of financing these commodities to immediately increase their participation in efforts to address the emergency food needs of the developing world.

"(3) Make available to these most seriously affected countries the maximum feasible volume of food commodities, with appropriate regard to the current domestic price and supply situations.

"(4) Maintain regular and full consultation with the appropriate committees of the Congress and report to

the Congress and the Nation on steps which are being taken to help meet this food emergency. In accordance with this provision, the President shall report to the Congress on a global assessment of food needs for fiscal year 1975, specifying expected food grain deficits and currently planned programming of food assistance, and steps which are being taken to encourage other countries to increase their participation in food assistance or the financing of food assistance. Such report should reach the Congress promptly and should be supplemented quarterly for the remainder of fiscal year 1975.

“(5) The Congress directs that during the fiscal year ending June 30, 1975, not more than 30 percent of concessional food aid should be allocated to countries other than those which are most seriously affected by current food shortages, unless the President demonstrates to the appropriate Committees of the Congress that the use of such food assistance is solely for humanitarian food purposes.

“(6) The Congress calls upon the President to proceed with the implementation of resolutions and recommendations adopted by the World Food Conference. The Congress believes that it is incumbent upon the United States to take a leading role in assisting in the development of a viable and coherent world food policy which would begin the task of alleviating widespread hunger and suffering prevalent in famine-stricken nations. The President shall report to the Congress within 120 days of enactment of this Act [Dec. 30, 1974] on the implementation of the resolutions and the extent to which the United States is participating in the implementation of resolutions adopted at the World Food Conference.”

SUBPART II—AMERICAN SCHOOLS AND HOSPITALS ABROAD; PROTOTYPE DESALTING PLANTS

SUBPART REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subpart is referred to in sections 2361, 2395 of this title.

**§§ 2171, 2172. Repealed. Pub. L. 95-424, title I, § 102(g)(1)(A), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 942**

Section 2171, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 211, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 427; Pub. L. 87-565, pt. I, § 103(a), Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 256; Pub. L. 89-583, pt. I, § 103(a), Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 797; Pub. L. 90-554, pt. I, § 102(a), Oct. 8, 1968, 82 Stat. 960; Pub. L. 93-189, § 4(1), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 717, related to general authority of President to furnish assistance and considerations to be taken into account.

Section 2172, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 212, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 428; Pub. L. 87-565, pt. I, § 103(b), Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 256; Pub. L. 88-205, pt. I, § 103(a), Dec. 16, 1963, 77 Stat. 381; Pub. L. 88-633, pt. I, § 102(b), Oct. 7, 1964, 78 Stat. 1009; Pub. L. 89-171, pt. I, § 103(a), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 654; Pub. L. 89-583, pt. I, § 103(b), Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 797; Pub. L. 90-137, pt. I, § 103(b), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 449; Pub. L. 90-554, pt. I, § 102(b), Oct. 8, 1968, 82 Stat. 960; Pub. L. 91-175, pt. I, § 102, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 805; Pub. L. 92-226, pt. I, § 102(a), Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 22, related to authorization of appropriations.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as an Effective Date of 1978 Amendment note under section 2151 of this title.

**§ 2173. Repealed. Pub. L. 87-565, pt. I, § 103(c), Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 256**

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 213, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 428, related to peaceful use of atomic energy outside United States. See section 2171 of this title.

**§ 2174. American schools, libraries, and hospital centers abroad**

**(a) Assistance for schools and libraries**

The President is authorized to furnish assistance, on such terms and conditions as he may

specify, to schools and libraries outside the United States founded or sponsored by United States citizens and serving as study and demonstration centers for ideas and practices of the United States.

**(b) Assistance for hospital centers**

The President is authorized, notwithstanding the provisions of the Mutual Defense Assistance Control Act of 1951 [22 U.S.C. 1611 et seq.], to furnish assistance, on such terms and conditions as he may specify, to institutions referred to in subsection (a) of this section, and to hospital centers for medical education and research outside the United States, founded or sponsored by United States citizens.

**(c) Authorization of appropriations**

(1) To carry out the purposes of this section, there are authorized to be appropriated to the President \$35,000,000 for fiscal year 1986 and \$35,000,000 for fiscal year 1987.

(2) Amounts appropriated under paragraph (1) are authorized to remain available until expended.

**(d) Pediatric plastic and reconstructive surgery centers**

Notwithstanding the provisions of subsection (b) of this section, funds appropriated under this section may be used for assistance to centers for pediatric plastic and reconstructive surgery established by Children's Medical Relief International, except that assistance may not be furnished for the domestic operations of any such center located in the United States, its territories or possessions.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 214, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 428; Pub. L. 88-205, pt. I, § 103(b), Dec. 16, 1963, 77 Stat. 381; Pub. L. 88-633, pt. I, § 102(c), Oct. 7, 1964, 78 Stat. 1009; Pub. L. 89-171, pt. I, § 103(b), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 654; Pub. L. 89-583, pt. I, § 103(c), Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 798; Pub. L. 90-137, pt. I, § 103(c), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 450; Pub. L. 90-554, pt. I, § 102(c), Oct. 8, 1968, 82 Stat. 960; Pub. L. 91-175, pt. I, § 103, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 805; Pub. L. 92-226, pt. I, § 102(b), Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 22; Pub. L. 93-189, § 4(2), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 717; Pub. L. 94-161, title III, § 311(2), Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 861; Pub. L. 95-88, title I, § 116(a), Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 539; Pub. L. 95-424, title I, § 114, Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 950; Pub. L. 96-53, title I, § 111, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 363; Pub. L. 96-533, title IV, § 401, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3149; Pub. L. 97-113, title V, § 501, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1538; Pub. L. 99-83, title IV, § 401, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 217.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Mutual Defense Assistance Control Act of 1951, referred to in subsec. (b), is act Oct. 26, 1951, ch. 575, 65 Stat. 644, as amended, which was classified generally to chapter 20A (§1611 et seq.) of this title prior to its superseding by section 2416(e) of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1985—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 99-83 amended subsec. (c) generally, designating existing provisions as pars. (1) and (2) and substituting provisions authorizing appropriations of \$35,000,000 for fiscal years 1986 and 1987 for provisions authorizing appropriations of \$20,000,000 for fiscal years 1982 and 1983.

1981—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 97-113 substituted appropriations of \$20,000,000 for fiscal years 1982 and 1983, for appropriation of \$30,000,000 for fiscal year 1981.

1980—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 96-533 substituted appropriations authorization of \$30,000,000 for the fiscal year 1981 for such authorization of \$25,000,000 for the fiscal year 1980.

1979—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 96-53 extended authorization of appropriations from fiscal year 1979 to fiscal year 1980.

1978—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 95-424 substituted “\$25,000,000 for the fiscal year 1979, which amount is” for “for the fiscal year 1977, \$25,000,000, and for the fiscal year 1978, \$25,000,000, which amounts are”.

Subsecs. (d) to (f). Pub. L. 95-424 struck out subsec. (d) relating to authorization of appropriations, and subsec. (e) relating to submission of recommendations to Congress by the Secretary of State concerning assistance, and redesignated former subsec. (f) as (d).

1977—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 95-88, § 116(a)(1), struck out provisions authorizing appropriations of \$19,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 1974 and 1975 and \$25,000,000 for fiscal year 1976 and inserted provisions authorizing an appropriation of \$25,000,000 for fiscal year 1978.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 95-88, § 116(a)(2), struck out provisions authorizing appropriations of \$6,500,000 for each of the fiscal years 1974 and 1975 and an appropriation of \$7,000,000 for fiscal year 1976 and inserted provisions authorizing an appropriation of \$7,000,000 for fiscal year 1978.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 95-88, § 116(b), added subsec. (f).

1975—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 94-161, § 311(2)(A), authorized appropriation of \$25,000,000 for fiscal years 1976 and 1977.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 94-161, § 311(2)(B), authorized additional appropriation of \$7,000,000 for fiscal years 1976 and 1977.

1973—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 93-189 substituted provisions authorizing appropriations for the fiscal years 1974 and 1975, for provisions authorizing appropriations for the fiscal years 1972 and 1973 and directing that any amounts appropriated for the fiscal year 1970 be available for expenditure solely in accordance with the allocations set forth on pages 25 and 26 of House Report No. 91-611 and on page 23 of Senate Report No. 91-603.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 93-189 substituted provisions authorizing the appropriation in fiscal years 1974 and 1975 of \$6,500,000 in foreign currencies which the Secretary of the Treasury determines to be in excess to the normal requirements of the United States, for provisions authorizing the appropriation for the purposes of subsec. (b) of this section, in addition to funds otherwise available for such purposes, for the fiscal year 1970, of \$3,000,000 in foreign currencies which the Secretary of the Treasury determines to be in excess of the normal requirement of the United States and directing that foreign currencies thus appropriated be available for expenditure solely in accordance with the allocation set forth on page 23 of Senate Report No. 91-603.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 93-189 added subsec. (e).

1972—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 92-226 authorized appropriations of \$30,000,000 for fiscal years 1972 and 1973, and struck out provision for authorization of \$25,900,000 for fiscal year 1970, and \$12,900,000 for fiscal year 1971.

1969—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 91-175, § 103(1), substituted authorization of \$25,900,000 for the fiscal year 1970 and \$12,900,000 for the fiscal year 1971, for sum of \$14,600,000 for the fiscal year 1969, and inserted provision making amounts appropriated under this subsection for the fiscal year 1970 available for expenditure solely in accordance with the allocations set forth on pages 25 and 26 of House Report No. 91-611 and on page 23 of Senate Report No. 91-603.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 91-175, § 103(2), (3), substituted authorization of \$3,000,000 for fiscal year 1970, for sum of \$5,100,000 for fiscal year 1969, and inserted provision making foreign currencies appropriated under this subsection available for expenditure solely in accordance with the allocation set forth on page 23 of Senate Report No. 91-603.

1968—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 90-554, § 102(c)(1), substituted authorization of \$14,600,000 for fiscal year 1969, for sum of \$14,000,000 for fiscal year 1968.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 90-554, § 102(c)(2), substituted authorization of \$5,100,000 for fiscal year 1969, for sum of \$2,986,000 for fiscal year 1968.

1967—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 90-137, § 103(c)(1), substituted authorization of \$14,000,000 for fiscal year 1968 for sum of \$10,989,000 for fiscal year 1967.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 90-137, § 103(c)(2), substituted authorization of \$2,986,000 for fiscal year 1968 for sum of \$1,000,000 for fiscal year 1967.

1966—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 89-583, § 103(c)(1), substituted “to institutions referred to in subsection (a) of this section, and to hospital centers for medical education and research outside the United States, founded or sponsored by United States citizens” for “to hospitals outside the United States founded or sponsored by United States citizens and serving as centers for medical education and research”.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 89-583, § 103(c)(2), substituted authorization of \$10,989,000 for fiscal year 1967 for sum of \$7,000,000 for fiscal year 1966.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 89-583, § 103(c)(3), added subsec. (d).

1965—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 89-171, § 103(b)(1), substituted “medical education and research” for “medical treatment, education, and research”.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 89-171, § 103(b)(2), substituted “1966, \$7,000,000” for “1965, \$18,000,000”.

1964—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 88-633 substituted “1965, \$18,000,000” for “1964, \$19,000,000” and struck out “Of the sums authorized to be appropriated under this subsection, not to exceed \$2,200,000 shall be available for direct dollar costs in carrying out subsection (b) of this section and \$4,700,000 shall be available solely for the purchase of foreign currencies accruing to the United States Government under any Act.”

1963—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 88-205, § 103(b)(1), substituted “furnish” for “use, in addition to other funds available for such purposes, funds made available for the purpose of section 2171 of this title for”.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 88-205, § 103(b)(2), substituted “to furnish” for “foreign currencies accruing to the United States Government under any Act, for purposes of subsection (a) of this section and for”, and struck out “to use” before “notwithstanding”.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 88-205, § 103(b)(3), added subsec. (c).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1979 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-53 effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 512(a) of Pub. L. 96-53, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1977 AMENDMENT

Section 116(b) of Pub. L. 95-88 provided that: “The amendment made by subsection (a)(3) [amending this section] shall not apply to funds appropriated before the date of enactment of this Act [Aug. 3, 1977].”

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS; ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Functions of President under this section delegated and funds available under this chapter allocated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by sections 1-102(a)(1), (e) and 1-801(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2370 of this title; title 40 section 512.



**§ 2175. Repealed. Pub. L. 95-424, title I, § 102(g)(1)(A), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 942**

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 215, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 428, related to loans to small farmers.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as an Effective Date of 1978 Amendment note under section 2151 of this title.

**§ 2175a. Repealed. Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(8), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560**

Section, Pub. L. 93-559, § 3, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1795, imposed a ceiling on aid to South Vietnam for procurement of fertilizers. See section 2370(f) of this title.

**§§ 2176 to 2178. Repealed. Pub. L. 95-424, title I, § 102(g)(1)(A), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 942**

Section 2176, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 216, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 429; Pub. L. 88-633, pt. I, § 102(d), Oct. 7, 1964, 78 Stat. 1009, related to payment by the United States of transportation charges of the American Red Cross and United States voluntary nonprofit relief agencies.

Section 2177, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 217, as added Pub. L. 88-633, pt. I, § 102(e), Oct. 7, 1964, 78 Stat. 1009, related to a determination of the feasibility of establishing programs for the furnishing to less developed countries of used tools, machinery, etc., to be donated by private enterprise.

Section 2178, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 218, as added Pub. L. 90-137, pt. I, § 103(a), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 450, related to the demonstration of the use of fish and other protein concentrates as a means of reducing nutritional deficiencies in less developed countries.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as an Effective Date of 1978 Amendment note under section 2151 of this title.

**§ 2179. Prototype desalting plant**

**(a) Assistance in development**

In furtherance of the purposes of subchapter I of this chapter and for the purpose of improving existing, and developing and advancing new, technology and experience in the design, construction, and operation of large-scale desalting plants of advanced concepts which will contribute materially to low-cost desalination in all countries, including the United States, the President, if he determines it to be feasible, is authorized to participate in the development of a large-scale water treatment and desalting prototype plant and necessary appurtenances to be constructed in Israel as an integral part of a dual-purpose power generating and desalting project. Such participation shall include financial, technical, and such other assistance as the President deems appropriate to provide for the study, design, construction, and, for a limited demonstration period of not to exceed five years, operation and maintenance of the water treatment and desalting facilities of the dual-purpose project.

**(b) Terms and conditions**

Any agreement entered into under subsection (a) of this section shall include such terms and conditions as the President deems appropriate to insure, among other things, that all information, products, uses, processes, patents, and other developments obtained or utilized in the

development of this prototype plant will be available without further cost to the United States for the use and benefit of the United States throughout the world, and to insure that the United States, its officers, and employees have a permanent right to review data and have access to such plant for the purpose of observing its operations and improving science and technology in the field of desalination.

**(c) Contracts**

In carrying out the provisions of this section, the President may enter into contracts with public or private agencies and with any person without regard to section 3324(a) and (b) of title 31 and section 5 of title 41.

**(d) Patents**

Nothing in this section shall be construed as intending to deprive the owner of any background patent or any right which such owner may have under that patent.

**(e) Federal agencies**

In carrying out the provisions of this section, the President may utilize the personnel, services, and facilities of any Federal agency.

**(f) Authorization of appropriations**

The United States costs, other than its administrative costs, for the study, design, construction, and operation of a prototype plant under this section shall not exceed either 50 per centum of the total capital costs of the facilities associated with the production of water, and 50 per centum of the operation and maintenance costs for the demonstration period, or \$20,000,000, whichever is less. There are authorized to be appropriated, subject to the limitations of this subsection, such sums as may be necessary to carry out the provisions of this section, including administrative costs thereof. Such sums are authorized to remain available until expended.

**(g) Restrictions on appropriations**

No funds appropriated for the Office of Water Research and Technology pursuant to the appropriation authorized by the Act of July 11, 1969 (83 Stat. 45, Public Law 91-43), or prior authorization Acts, shall be used to carry out the purposes of this section.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 219, as added Pub. L. 91-175, pt. I, § 104, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 806.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Act of July 11, 1969, referred to in subsec. (g), is Pub. L. 91-43, July 11, 1969, 83 Stat. 45, which is not classified to the Code.

REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§ 2346 et seq.), VI (§ 2348 et seq.), and VIII (§ 2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

CODIFICATION

In subsec. (c), "section 3324(a) and (b) of title 31" substituted for reference to section 3648 of the Revised Statutes (31 U.S.C. 529) on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, § 4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

## CHANGE OF NAME

Office of Water Research and Technology formed through merger of Office of Saline Water and Office of Water Resources Research by order of Secretary of Interior, Ord. No. 2966, July 26, 1974.

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS; ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Functions of President under this section delegated and funds available under this chapter allocated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by sections 1-102(a)(1), (e) and 1-801(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 35 section 210.

**§§ 2180, 2180a. Repealed. Pub. L. 95-424, title I, § 102(g)(1)(A), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 942**

Section 2180, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 220, as added Pub. L. 91-175, pt. I, § 104, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 807, related to programs for peaceful communications using television, etc., for educational, health, etc., purposes.

Section 2180a, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 220A, as added Pub. L. 92-226, pt. I, § 102(c), Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 22, related to assistance in the reopening of the Suez Canal.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as an Effective Date of 1978 Amendment note under section 2151 of this title.

SUBPART III—SHELTER AND OTHER CREDIT  
GUARANTY PROGRAMS

## SUBPART REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subpart is referred to in section 2394-1 of this title.

**§ 2181. Policy**

The Congress recognizes that shelter, including essential urban development services, is among the most fundamental of human needs. Shelter for most people in the developing countries consists largely of domestic materials assembled by local labor. While recognizing that most financing for such shelter must come from domestic resources, the Congress finds that carefully designed programs involving United States capital and expertise can increase the availability of domestic financing for improved shelter and related services for low-income people by demonstrating to local entrepreneurs and institutions that providing low-cost shelter can be financially viable. The Congress reaffirms, therefore, that the United States should continue to assist developing countries in marshaling resources for low-cost shelter. Particular attention should be given to programs which will support pilot projects for low-cost shelter or which will have a maximum demonstration impact on local institutions and national policy. The Congress declares that the long run goal of all such programs should be to develop domestic construction capabilities and to stimulate local credit institutions to make available domestic capital and other management and technological resources required for effective low-cost shelter programs and policies.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 221, as added Pub. L. 91-175, pt. I, § 105, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 807;

amended Pub. L. 92-226, pt. I, § 103(a), Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 22; Pub. L. 93-189, § 5(1), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 717; Pub. L. 93-559, § 7(1), Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1796; Pub. L. 94-161, title III, § 311(3), Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 861; Pub. L. 95-88, title I, § 117(a)(1), Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 540; Pub. L. 95-424, title I, § 115(a), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 950; Pub. L. 98-473, title I, § 101(1) [title V, § 541(a)], Oct. 12, 1984, 98 Stat. 1884, 1903.)

## CODIFICATION

Amendment by Pub. L. 98-473 is based on section 311(a) of H.R. 5119, Ninety-eighth Congress, as passed by the House of Representatives May 10, 1984, which was enacted into permanent law by Pub. L. 98-473.

## PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 221 of Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 429, as amended by Pub. L. 87-565, pt. I, § 104(a), Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 256; Pub. L. 88-205, pt. I, § 104(a), Dec. 16, 1963, 77 Stat. 381; Pub. L. 88-633, pt. I, § 103(a), Oct. 7, 1964, 78 Stat. 1009; Pub. L. 89-171, pt. I, § 104(a), (b), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 654; Pub. L. 89-583, pt. I, § 104(a), Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 798; Pub. L. 90-137, pt. I, § 104(a), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 450; Pub. L. 90-554, pt. I, § 103, Oct. 8, 1968, 82 Stat. 960, related to general authority for foreign investment guaranties by the President, prior to the general reorganization of this subpart by Pub. L. 91-175, pt. I, § 105, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 807.

## AMENDMENTS

1984—Pub. L. 98-473 substituted “, including essential urban development services, is” for “requirements are” after “The Congress recognizes that shelter” and, in the remainder of the section substituted “shelter” for “housing” wherever appearing.

1978—Pub. L. 95-424 generally revised the statement of policy to clarify that in developing countries, financing, materials and labor for most housing must be obtained from local sources, while United States capital and technical expertise can increase the availability of housing and related services for low-income people by demonstrating financial viability of credit systems for low-cost housing.

1977—Pub. L. 95-88 struck out provisions that the total face amount of guaranties issued under this section outstanding at any one time not exceed \$430,000,000 and added section 2182(c) of this title to the enumeration of sections setting out the conditions under which guaranties shall be issued.

1975—Pub. L. 94-161 substituted “\$430,000,000” for “\$355,000,000”.

1974—Pub. L. 93-559 substituted “\$355,000,000” for “\$305,000,000”.

1973—Pub. L. 93-189 substituted “\$305,000,000” for “\$205,000,000”.

1972—Pub. L. 92-226 substituted “\$205,000,000” for “\$130,000,000”.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

USE OF FUNDS FROM SALE OF NOTES FOR DISCHARGE  
OF LIABILITIES UNDER GUARANTIES; TRANSFER OF  
FUNDS AND CANCELLATION OF NOTES AND INTEREST

Pub. L. 90-249, title I, § 120, Jan. 2, 1968, 81 Stat. 941, provided that: “Hereafter, none of the funds obtained or authorized to be obtained from the sale of notes under authority of paragraph 111(c)(2) of the Economic Cooperation Act of 1948 [section 1509(c)(2) of this title] or paragraph 413(b)(4)(F) of the Mutual Security Act of 1954 [section 1933(b)(4)(F) of this title] may be used for the purposes of discharging liabilities under any guaranties (exclusive of informational media guaranties) issued under sections 221(b) and 224 of the Foreign Assist-

ance Act of 1961 [subsec. (b) of this section and section 2184 of this title], sections 202(b) and 413(b)(4) of the Mutual Security Act of 1954 [sections 1872(b) and 1933(b)(4) of this title] and section 111(b)(3) of the Economic Cooperation Act of 1948 [section 1509(b)(3) of this title]. Any portion of the funds in the reserve established pursuant to section 222(e) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [section 2182(e) of this title] which are attributable to the funds realized from the sale of notes specified in the preceding sentence shall be transferred to the general fund of the Treasury. The Secretary of the Treasury shall cancel all such notes and sums owing and unpaid thereon, including interest to date of cancellation.”

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2182, 2186 of this title; title 12 sections 1432, 1464.

### § 2182. Authorization for worldwide shelter guarantees

#### (a) Authorization to issue guarantees to eligible investors

To carry out the policy of section 2181 of this title, the President is authorized to issue guaranties to eligible investors (as defined in section 2198(c) of this title) assuring against losses incurred in connection with loans made for projects meeting the criteria set forth in section 2181 of this title. The total principal amount of guaranties issued under this subpart or heretofore issued under prior housing guaranty authorities, which are outstanding at any one time, shall not exceed \$2,558,000,000. The authority of this section shall continue through September 30, 1992. The President may issue regulations from time to time with regard to the terms and conditions upon which such guaranties shall be issued and the eligibility of lenders.

#### (b) Emphasis on certain activities

Activities carried out under this section shall emphasize—

- (1) projects which provide improved home sites to poor families on which to build shelter, and related services;
- (2) projects comprised of expandable core shelter units on serviced sites;
- (3) slum upgrading projects designed to conserve and improve existing shelter;
- (4) shelter projects for low-income people designed for demonstration or institution building purposes; and
- (5) community facilities and services in support of projects authorized under this section to improve the shelter occupied by the poor.

#### (c) Use of solar energy technology

In issuing guaranties under this section with respect to projects in a country which require the use or conservation of energy, the President shall give consideration to the use of solar energy technologies, where such technologies are economically and technically feasible. Technologies which may be used include solar hot water systems, solar heating and cooling, passive solar heating, biomass conversion, photovoltaic and wind applications, and community-scale solar thermal applications.

#### (k)<sup>1</sup> Minimum annual program levels

The total principal amount of guaranties issued under this section for each of the fiscal

years 1986 and 1987 shall be comparable to the total principal amount of such guaranties issued for fiscal year 1984, subject to the dollar limitations on the issuance of guaranties under this section which are contained in subsection (a) of this section and in appropriation Acts.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §222, as added Pub. L. 91-175, pt. I, §105, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 807; amended Pub. L. 94-161, title III, §311(4), Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 861; Pub. L. 95-88, title I, §117(a)(2), Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 540; Pub. L. 95-424, title I, §115(a), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 950; Pub. L. 96-53, title I, §112(a), Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 363; Pub. L. 97-113, title III, §310(a), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1535; Pub. L. 98-473, title I, §101(1)[title V, §541(a)], Oct. 12, 1984, 98 Stat. 1884, 1903; Pub. L. 99-83, title III, §313(a)-(c), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 216, 217; Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title II, §201], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-142; Pub. L. 101-167, title II, Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1205; Pub. L. 101-302, title II, May 25, 1990, 104 Stat. 224; Pub. L. 101-513, title II, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1989.)

#### CODIFICATION

Amendment by Pub. L. 98-473 is based on section 311(b) of H.R. 5119, Ninety-eighth Congress, as passed by the House of Representatives May 10, 1984, which was enacted into permanent law by Pub. L. 98-473.

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 222 of Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 430, as amended by Pub. L. 87-565, pt. I, §104(b), Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 257; Pub. L. 88-205, pt. I, §104(b)-(f), Dec. 16, 1963, 77 Stat. 381, 382; Pub. L. 89-171, pt. I, §104(c), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 654; Pub. L. 89-583, pt. I, §104(b), Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 798; Pub. L. 90-137, pt. I, §104(b), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 451, contained general provisions concerning foreign investment guaranties, prior to the general reorganization of this subpart by Pub. L. 91-175, pt. I, §105, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 807.

#### AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 101-513 substituted “1992” for “1991”.

Pub. L. 101-302 substituted “\$2,558,000,000” for “\$2,158,000,000”.

1989—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 101-167 substituted “1991” for “1990”.

1987—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 100-202 substituted “1990” for “1988”.

1985—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99-83, §313(a), (b), substituted “\$2,158,000,000” for “\$1,958,000,000” and “1988” for “1986”.

Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 99-83, §313(c), added subsec. (k).

1984—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 98-473 substituted “\$1,958,000,000” for “\$1,718,000,000” and “1986” for “1984”.

1981—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 97-113 increased limitation on total principal amount of outstanding guaranties to \$1,718,000,000 from \$1,555,000,000 and extended termination date for exercise of guarantee authority to Sept. 30, 1984, from Sept. 30, 1982.

1979—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 96-53 substituted “\$1,555,000,000” for “\$1,180,000,000”, and “through September 30, 1982” for “until September 30, 1980”.

1978—Pub. L. 95-424 amended section generally to provide a new consolidated section which provides a single authorization for the worldwide housing guarantee program, a new list of the types of programs to be emphasized, increased the worldwide authorization to \$1,180,000,000, and encourages officials and governments in developing countries to consider the use of solar energy in housing projects.

1977—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 95-88 inserted “or under section 2181 of this title” after “Latin American housing guaranty authority repealed by the Foreign Assistance

<sup>1</sup> So in original. No subssecs. (d) to (j) have been enacted.

Act of 1969” and substituted “\$1,030,000,000” for “\$600,000,000”.

1975—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 94-161 substituted “\$600,000,000” for “\$550,000,000”.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1979 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-53 effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 512(a) of Pub. L. 96-53, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS; ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Functions of President under this section delegated and funds available under this chapter allocated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by sections 1-102(a)(1), (e) and 1-801(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2181, 2183, 2186 of this title.

**§ 2182a. Agricultural and productive credit and self-help community development programs**

**(a) Financing pilot programs; scope**

It is the sense of the Congress that in order to stimulate the participation of the private sector in the economic development of less-developed countries, the authority conferred by this section should be used to establish pilot programs to encourage private banks, credit institutions, similar private lending organizations, cooperatives, and private nonprofit development organizations to make loans on reasonable terms to organized groups and individuals residing in a community for the purpose of enabling such groups and individuals to carry out agricultural credit and self-help community development projects for which they are unable to obtain financial assistance on reasonable terms. Agricultural credit and assistance for self-help community development projects should include, but not be limited to, material and such projects as wells, pumps, farm machinery, improved seed, fertilizer, pesticides, vocational training, food industry development, nutrition projects, improved breeding stock for farm animals, sanitation facilities, and looms and other handicraft aids.

**(b) Guaranties; percentage limitation**

To carry out the purposes of subsection (a) of this section, the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter is authorized to issue guaranties, on such terms and conditions as it shall determine, to private lending institutions, cooperatives, and private nonprofit development organizations assuring against loss of not to exceed 50 per centum of the portfolio of such loans made by any lender to organized groups or individuals residing in a community to enable such groups or individuals

to carry out agricultural credit and self-help community development projects for which they are unable to obtain financial assistance on reasonable terms. In no event shall the liability of the United States exceed 75 per centum of any one loan.

**(c) Total and individual amount of guaranties**

The total face amount of guaranties issued under this section outstanding at any one time shall not exceed \$20,000,000. Not more than 10 per centum of such sum shall be provided for any one institution, cooperative, or organization.

**(d) Inter-American Foundation consultations**

The Inter-American Foundation shall be consulted in developing criteria for making loans eligible for guaranty coverage in Latin America under this section.

**(e) Guaranty reserve**

Not to exceed \$3,000,000 of the guaranty reserve established under section 2183(b) of this title shall be available to make such payments as may be necessary to discharge liabilities under guaranties issued under this section or any guaranties previously issued under section 2200 of this title.

**(f) Administrative and operating expenses; funds**

Funds held by the Overseas Private Investment Corporation pursuant to section 2196 of this title may be available for meeting necessary administrative and operating expenses for carrying out the provisions of this section through June 30, 1976.

**(g) Transfer of Overseas Private Investment Corporation's obligations and assets**

The Overseas Private Investment Corporation shall, upon enactment of this subsection, transfer to the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter all obligations, assets, and related rights and responsibilities arising out of, or related to the predecessor program provided for in section 2200 of this title.

**(h) Termination of authority**

The authority of this section shall continue through September 30, 1988.

**(i) Excess foreign currencies; use**

Notwithstanding the limitation in subsection (c) of this section, foreign currencies owned by the United States and determined by the Secretary of the Treasury to be excess to the needs of the United States may be utilized to carry out the purposes of this section, including the discharge of liabilities under this subsection. The authority conferred by this subsection shall be in addition to authority conferred by any other provision of law to implement guaranty programs utilizing excess local currency.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 222A, as added Pub. L. 93-559, § 8(a)(2), Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1796; amended Pub. L. 95-88, title I, § 117(b)(1), Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 540; Pub. L. 95-424, title I, § 115(b), title V, § 502(d)(1), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 951, 959; Pub. L. 96-53, title I, § 112(b), Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 364; Pub. L. 97-438, Jan. 8, 1983, 96 Stat. 2286; Pub. L. 98-473, title I, § 101(1)[title V, § 541(a)], Oct. 12, 1984, 98 Stat. 1884, 1903; Pub. L. 99-83, title III, § 313(d), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 217.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 2200 of this title, referred to in subsecs. (e) and (g), was in the original a reference to section 240 of this Act, meaning section 240 of Pub. L. 87-195, as added by section 105 of Pub. L. 91-175, which was repealed by section 8(b) of Pub. L. 93-559, and was replaced by this section. Another section 240 of Pub. L. 87-195, as added by section 9 of Pub. L. 95-268, was enacted Apr. 24, 1978, and is classified to section 2200 of this title.

## REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§ 2346 et seq.), VI (§ 2348 et seq.), and VIII (§ 2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

## CODIFICATION

Amendment by Pub. L. 98-473 is based on section 312 of H.R. 5119, Ninety-eighth Congress, as passed by the House of Representatives May 10, 1984, which was enacted into permanent law by Pub. L. 98-473.

## AMENDMENTS

1985—Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 99-83 substituted “1988” for “1986”.

1984—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 98-473 struck out “in Latin America,” after “economic development of less-developed countries” and “in not more than six Latin American countries” after “establish pilot programs”.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 98-473 struck out “in not more than five Latin American countries” after “nonprofit development organizations”.

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 98-473 substituted “1986” for “1983”.

1983—Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 97-438 substituted “1983” for “1982”.

1979—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 96-53, § 112(b)(1), substituted “six” for “five”.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 96-53, § 112(b)(2), substituted “\$20,000,000” for “\$15,000,000”.

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 96-53, § 112(b)(3), substituted “through September 30, 1982” for “until September 30, 1979”.

1978—Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 95-424, § 115(b), substituted “September 30, 1979” for “September 30, 1978”.

Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 95-424, § 502(d)(1), struck out subsec. (j) relating to a Presidential report to Congress on the results of the program established under this section.

1977—Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 95-88 substituted “September 30, 1978” for “December 31, 1977”.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1979 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-53 effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 512(a) of Pub. L. 96-53, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2183 of this title.

## § 2183. General provisions

## (a) Fees; determination by President; reduction

A fee shall be charged for each guaranty issued under section 2182 or 2182a of this title in

an amount to be determined by the President. In the event the fee to be charged for such type of guaranty is reduced, fees to be paid under existing contracts for the same type of guaranty may be similarly reduced.

## (b) Accumulated and existing fees; expenditure of fees; revolving fund account; investments; use of investment income

The amount of \$50,000,000 of fees accumulated under prior investment guaranty provisions repealed by the Foreign Assistance Act of 1969, together with all fees collected in connection with guaranties issued under section 2182 of this title or under prior housing guaranty authorities, shall be available for meeting necessary administrative and operating expenses of carrying out the provisions of section 2182 of this title and administering housing guaranties heretofore authorized under this subpart and under prior housing guaranty provisions repealed by the Foreign Assistance Act of 1969 (including, but not limited to expenses pertaining to personnel, supplies, and printing), subject to such limitations as may be imposed in annual appropriation Acts; for meeting management and custodial costs incurred with respect to currencies or other assets acquired under guaranties made pursuant to section 2182 of this title or heretofore pursuant to this subpart or prior Latin American and other housing guaranty authorities repealed by the Foreign Assistance Act of 1969; and to pay the cost of investigating and adjusting (including costs of arbitration) claims under such guaranties; and shall be available for expenditure in discharge of liabilities under such guaranties until such time as all such property has been disposed of and all such liabilities have been discharged or have expired, or until all such fees have been expended in accordance with the provisions of this subsection. Fees collected in connection with guaranties issued under section 2182a of this title shall likewise be available to meet similar expenses, costs, or liabilities incurred in connection with the programs authorized by that section. All of the foregoing fees referred to in this section together with earnings thereon and other income arising from guaranty operations under this subpart shall be held in a revolving fund account maintained in the Treasury of the United States. All funds in such account may be invested in obligations of the United States. Any interest or other receipts derived from such investments shall be credited to such account and may be used for the purposes cited in this section.

## (c) Priorities of funds for guaranty payments

Any payments made to discharge liabilities under guaranties issued under section 2182 of this title or heretofore under this subpart or under prior Latin American or other housing guaranty authorities repealed by the Foreign Assistance Act of 1969, shall be paid first out of fees referred to in subsection (b) of this section (excluding amounts required for purposes other than the discharge of liabilities under guaranties) as long as such fees are available, and thereafter shall be paid out of funds, if any, realized from the sale of currencies or other assets acquired in connection with any payment made

to discharge liabilities under such guaranties as long as funds are available, and finally out of funds hereafter made available pursuant to subsection (e) of this section.

**(d) Guaranties as obligations backed by full faith and credit of United States**

All guaranties issued under section 2182 or 2182a, or previously under section 2200 of this title or heretofore under this subpart or under prior Latin American or other housing guaranty authority repealed by the Foreign Assistance Act of 1969 shall constitute obligations, in accordance with the terms of such guaranties, of the United States of America and the full faith and credit of the United States of America is hereby pledged for the full payment and performance of such obligations.

**(e) Authorization of appropriations; borrowing authority**

(1) There is hereby authorized to be appropriated to the President such amounts, to remain available until expended, as may be necessary from time to time to carry out the purposes of this subpart.

(2)(A) In order to meet obligations incurred for the payment of claims pursuant to loan guaranties described in subsection (d) of this section, the Administrator of the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter may, to the extent that reserves are not sufficient, borrow from time to time from the Treasury, except that—

(i) the Administrator may exercise the authority to borrow under this paragraph only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriation Acts; and

(ii) the amount borrowed under this paragraph which is outstanding at any one time may not exceed \$100,000,000.

(B) Any such borrowing shall bear interest at a rate determined by the Secretary of the Treasury, taking into account the current average market yield on outstanding marketable obligations of the United States of comparable maturities. The Secretary of the Treasury shall make loans under this paragraph and for such purpose may borrow on the credit of the United States in accordance with subchapter I of chapter 31 of title 31.

**(f) Agency determination of maximum rate of interest**

In the case of any loan investment guaranteed under section 2182 of this title, the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter shall prescribe the maximum rate of interest allowable to the eligible investor, which maximum rate shall not exceed by more than 1 per centum the then current rate of interest applicable to housing mortgages insured by the Department of Housing and Urban Development. The maximum allowable rate of interest under this subsection shall be prescribed by the agency as of the date the project covered by the investment is officially authorized and, prior to the execution of the contract, the agency may amend such rate at its discretion, consistent with the provisions of this subsection.

**(g) Guaranties under prior acts**

Housing guaranties committed, authorized, or outstanding heretofore under this subpart or under prior housing guaranty authorities repealed by the Foreign Assistance Act of 1969 shall continue subject to provisions of law originally applicable thereto and fees collected hereafter with respect to such guaranties shall be available for the purposes specified in subsection (b) of this section.

**(h) Fraud or misrepresentation**

No payment may be made under any guaranty issued pursuant to this subpart for any loss arising out of fraud or misrepresentation for which the party seeking payment is responsible.

**(i) Repealed. Pub. L. 95-424, title I, § 115(i), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 952**

**(j) Guaranties for housing projects; percentage requirement for families with income below median income; face value and average face value fiscal year limitations; face amount for Israel and Egypt**

Guaranties shall be issued under section 2182 of this title only for housing projects which are coordinated with and complementary to any development assistance being furnished under part I of this subchapter and which are specifically designed to demonstrate the feasibility and suitability of particular kinds of housing or of financial or other institutional arrangements. Of the aggregate face value of housing guaranties hereafter issued under this subpart, not less than 90 per centum shall be issued for housing suitable for families with income below the median income (below the median urban income for housing in urban areas) in the country in which the housing is located. The face value of guaranties issued with respect to housing in any country shall not exceed \$25,000,000 in any fiscal year, and the average face value of guaranties issued in any fiscal year shall not exceed \$15,000,000. Of the total amount of housing guaranties authorized to be issued under section 2182 of this title through September 30, 1982, not less than a face amount of \$25,000,000 shall be issued for projects in Israel and not less than a face amount of \$25,000,000 shall be issued for projects in Egypt.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 223, as added Pub. L. 91-175, pt. I, § 105, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 808; amended Pub. L. 92-226, pt. I, § 103(b) Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 22; Pub. L. 93-189, § 5(2), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 717; Pub. L. 93-559, §§ 7(2), 8(a)(3)-(5), Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1796, 1797; Pub. L. 94-161, title III, § 311(5), Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 861; Pub. L. 94-329, title IV, § 414, June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 761; Pub. L. 95-88, title I, § 117(a)(3), (b)(2), (c), Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 540; Pub. L. 95-424, title I, § 115(c)-(j), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 951, 952; Pub. L. 96-53, title I, § 112(c), (d), Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 364; Pub. L. 97-113, title III, § 310(b), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1535; Pub. L. 98-473, title I, § 101(1)[title V, § 541(a)], Oct. 12, 1984, 98 Stat. 1884, 1903; Pub. L. 100-202, § 101(e) [title II, § 201], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-142.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1969, referred to in subsections (b), (c), (d), and (g), is Pub. L. 91-175, Dec. 30, 1969,

83 Stat. 805, as amended. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables. The guaranty authorities repealed by the 1969 Act were the guaranty authorities contained in sections 2181 to 2184 prior to the general reorganization of this subpart by the 1969 Act.

Section 2200 of this title, referred to in subsec. (d), was in the original a reference to section 240 of this Act, meaning section 240 of Pub. L. 87-195, as added by section 105 of Pub. L. 91-175, which was repealed by section 8(b) of Pub. L. 93-559, and was replaced by section 2182a of this title. Another section 240 of Pub. L. 87-195, as added by section 9 of Pub. L. 95-268, was enacted Apr. 24, 1978, and is classified to section 2200 of this title.

#### REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§ 2346 et seq.), VI (§ 2348 et seq.), and VIII (§ 2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

#### REFERENCES TO PART I DEEMED TO INCLUDE SECTION 2293

References to part I of this subchapter are deemed to include a reference to section 2293 of this title. See section 2293(d)(1) of this title.

#### CODIFICATION

Amendment by Pub. L. 98-473 is based on section 311(c) of H.R. 5119, Ninety-eighth Congress, as passed by the House of Representatives May 10, 1984, which was enacted into permanent law by Pub. L. 98-473.

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 223 of Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 431, as amended by Pub. L. 89-171, pt. I, § 104(d), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 654; Pub. L. 90-137, pt. I, § 104(c), Nov. 4, 1967, 81 Stat. 451, contained definitions, prior to the general reorganization of this subpart by Pub. L. 91-175, pt. I, § 105, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 807.

#### AMENDMENTS

1987—Subsec. (e)(2)(A)(ii). Pub. L. 100-202 substituted “\$100,000,000” for “\$40,000,000”.

1984—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 98-473 designated existing provisions as par. (1) and added par. (2).

1981—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 97-113 provided for maintenance of a revolving fund account in the Treasury consisting of fees, earnings from fees, and income from guaranty operations and authorized investment of account funds in obligations of the United States and use of investment income.

1979—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 96-53, § 112(c), substituted “the Department of Housing and Urban Development” for “such Department”, and struck out provisions setting forth minimum rate of interest as not less than one-half of one per centum above the then current rate on mortgages insured by the Department of Housing and Urban Development.

Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 96-53, § 112(d), struck out requirement that except for regional projects, guarantees for housing projects be granted to countries receiving or which have received in the two previous years assistance under part I of this subchapter and substituted provisions authorizing face amounts of housing guarantees through September 30, 1982 of not less than \$25,000,000 for Israel and Egypt for provisions authorizing face amounts of housing guarantees until September 30, 1978 of an amount not to exceed \$75,000,000 in Israel and \$30,000,000 in Portugal and Lebanon.

1978—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 95-424, § 115(c), substituted “section 2182 or 2182a” for “section 2181, 2182, or 2182a”.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 95-424, § 115(d), struck out “2181 or” after “guarantees issued under section”; sub-

stituted “section 2182 of this title and administering housing guaranties heretofore authorized under this subpart and under” for “section 2181 and section 2182 of this title and of”; struck out “2181 or” after “made pursuant to section”, and inserted “this subpart” after “heretofore pursuant to”.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 95-424, § 115(e), struck out “section 2181 or” after “guaranties issued under”, and inserted “under this subpart or” after “heretofore”.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 95-424, § 115(f), substituted “section 2182 or 2182a” for “section 2181, 2182, 2182a”, and inserted “under this subpart” after “heretofore”.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 95-424, § 115(g), substituted “section 2182” for “section 2181 or 2182”.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 95-424, § 115(h), inserted “heretofore under this subpart” after “outstanding”.

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 95-424, § 115(i), struck out subsec. (i) directing that the authority of sections 2181 and 2182 of this title shall continue until Sept. 30, 1979.

Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 95-424, § 115(j), substituted “section 2182” for “sections 2181 and 2182”.

1977—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 95-88, § 117(b)(2), substituted “together with all fees collected in connection with guaranties issued under section 2181 or 2182 of this title or under prior housing guaranty authorities” for “together with all fees collected in connection with guaranties issued hereunder” and inserted provision that fees collected in connection with guaranties issued under section 2182a of this title shall likewise be available to meet similar expenses, costs, or liabilities incurred in connection with the programs authorized by that section.

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 95-88, § 117(a)(3), substituted “September 30, 1979” for “September 30, 1978”.

Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 95-88, § 117(c), substituted “September 30, 1978” for “September 30, 1977”, “\$75,000,000” for “\$50,000,000” in provisions relating to housing guaranties in Israel, “\$30,000,000” for “\$20,000,000” in provisions relating to housing guaranties in Portugal, and “\$30,000,000” for “\$15,000,000” in provisions relating to housing guaranties in Lebanon.

1976—Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 94-329 authorized President to issue housing guaranties until September 30, 1977, in Lebanon, not exceeding a face amount of \$15,000,000.

1975—Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 94-161, § 311(5)(A), substituted “September 30, 1978” for “June 30, 1976”.

Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 94-161, § 311(5)(B), added subsec. (j). 1974—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 93-559, § 8(a)(3), inserted reference to section 2182a of this title.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 93-559, § 8(a)(4), substituted in first sentence “section 2181 and section 2182 of this title” for “this subpart”.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 93-559, § 8(a)(5), substituted “section 2181, 2182, 2182a, or previously under section 2200 of this title” for “section 2181 or section 2182 of this title”.

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 93-559, § 7(2), substituted “June 30, 1976” for “June 30, 1975”.

1973—Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 93-189 substituted “June 30, 1975” for “June 30, 1974”.

1972—Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 92-226 substituted “June 30, 1974” for “June 30, 1972”.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1984 AMENDMENT

Section 311(d) of H.R. 5119, as passed by the House of Representatives on May 10, 1984, and enacted into permanent law by section 101(1) [title V, § 541(a)] of Pub. L. 98-473 provided that: “The amendment made by subsection (c) of this section [amending this section] shall take effect on the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 12, 1984].”

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1979 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-53 effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 512(a) of Pub. L. 96-53, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS; ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Functions of President under this section delegated and funds available under this chapter allocated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by sections 1-102(a)(1), (e) and 1-801(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2182a, 2186, 2195 of this title.

**§ 2184. Trade credit insurance program for Central America****(a) Guarantees to Export-Import Bank; financial transactions with private sector in Central American countries**

In order to enable the Export-Import Bank of the United States (hereafter in this section referred to as the "Bank") to determine that there exists reasonable assurance of repayment as required under section 2(b)(1)(B) of the Export-Import Bank Act of 1945 [12 U.S.C. 635(b)(1)(B)], the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter (hereafter in this section referred to as the "Agency") is authorized to provide guarantees to the Bank for liabilities to be incurred by the Bank in connection with guarantees or insurance provided under the Export-Import Bank Act of 1945 [12 U.S.C. 635 et seq.] for financing for transactions involving the export of goods and services for the use of the private sector in Central American countries.

**(b) Extent of guarantees; agreements; reserve fund**

(1) Guarantees provided by the Agency pursuant to the authority of subsection (a) of this section shall be for short-term guarantees and insurance extended by the Bank which shall be repayable within a period not to exceed one year from the date of arrival at the port of importation of the goods and services covered by such guarantees or insurance. Guarantees or insurance extended by the Bank and guaranteed by the Agency pursuant to subsection (a) of this section shall be provided by the Bank in accordance with criteria and procedures agreed to by the Agency and the Bank. Such agreement shall also provide for the establishment of a reserve fund by the Agency, with such funds made available to the reserve as the Agency deems necessary to discharge liabilities under guarantees provided by the Agency pursuant to subsection (a) of this section.

(2) The Administrator of such agency shall transmit a copy of such agreement to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and to the Committee on Foreign Relations and the Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs of the Senate.

**(c) Deadline for guarantee commitments**

The Agency shall not enter into any commitments to guarantee under subsection (a) of this section after September 30, 1991.

**(d) Availability of appropriated funds**

Of the funds authorized to be appropriated for part IV of subchapter II of this chapter, there

are authorized to be made available such sums as may be deemed necessary by the Agency to discharge liabilities under guarantees entered into under subsection (a) of this section.

**(e) Guarantee commitments limit**

Commitments to guarantee under subsection (a) of this section are authorized only to the extent and in the amounts provided in appropriations Acts, except that the aggregate amount of outstanding commitments under subsection (a) of this section may not exceed \$300,000,000 of contingent liability for loan principal during fiscal year 1986 and may not exceed \$400,000,000 of contingent liability for loan principal during fiscal year 1987.

**(f) Credits to reserve fund**

To the extent that any of the funds made available pursuant to subsection (d) of this section are paid out for a claim arising out of liabilities guaranteed under subsection (a) of this section, amounts received after the date of such payment, with respect to such claim, shall be credited to the reserve fund referred to in subsection (b) of this section, shall be merged with the funds in such reserve, and shall be available for the purpose of payments by the Agency to the Bank for guarantees under subsection (a) of this section.

**(g) Reports to Congress**

Beginning on a date six months after October 12, 1984, and at intervals of six months thereafter, the administrator of the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter and the President of the Export-Import Bank of the United States shall prepare and transmit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the Chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate a report on the amount and extension of credits during the preceding six-month period.

**(h) Administrative and technical assistance**

The Export-Import Bank shall provide without reimbursement such administrative and technical assistance to the Agency as the Bank and the Agency deem appropriate to assist the Agency in carrying out this section.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §224, as added Pub. L. 98-473, title I, §101(1) [title V, §541(a)], Oct. 12, 1984, 98 Stat. 1884, 1903; amended Pub. L. 99-83, title III, §314, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 217; Pub. L. 101-167, title IV, Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1216; Pub. L. 101-179, title III, §304(b), Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1313; Pub. L. 101-513, title IV, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2001.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Export-Import Bank Act of 1945, referred to in subsec. (a), is act July 31, 1945, ch. 341, 59 Stat. 526, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§635 et seq.) of chapter 6A of Title 12, Banks and Banking. For complete classification of the Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 635 of Title 12 and Tables.

## REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter,



and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

#### CODIFICATION

Section 224 of Pub. L. 87-195 is based on section 1011 of title X of H.R. 5119, Ninety-eighth Congress, as passed by the House of Representatives May 10, 1984, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 98-473.

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 224 of Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 432, as amended by Pub. L. 87-565, pt. I, § 104(c), Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 257; Pub. L. 88-205, pt. I, § 104(g), Dec. 16, 1963, 77 Stat. 382; Pub. L. 88-633, pt. I, § 103(b), Oct. 7, 1964, 78 Stat. 1010; Pub. L. 89-171, pt. I, § 104(e), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 655; Pub. L. 89-583, pt. I, § 104(c), Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 798; Pub. L. 90-137, pt. I, § 104(d), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 451; Pub. L. 90-554, pt. I, § 104, Oct. 8, 1968, 82 Stat. 961, related to housing projects in Latin America, prior to the general reorganization of this subpart by Pub. L. 91-175, pt. I, § 105, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 807. See section 2182 of this title.

#### AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 101-513 substituted “1991” for “1990”.

1989—Pub. L. 101-179 inserted “for Central America” after “program” in section catchline.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 101-167 substituted “1990” for “1989”.

1985—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 99-83 substituted “except that the aggregate amount of outstanding commitments under subsection (a) of this section may not exceed \$300,000,000 of contingent liability for loan principal during fiscal year 1986 and may not exceed \$400,000,000 of contingent liability for loan principal during fiscal year 1987” for “not to exceed \$300,000,000 in the fiscal year 1985”.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

### § 2185. Trade credit insurance program for Poland

#### (a) General authority

##### (1) Assurance to Export-Import Bank of repayment

The President is authorized to provide guarantees to the Bank for liabilities described in paragraph (2) in order to satisfy the requirement of section 2(b)(1)(B) of the Export-Import Bank Act of 1945 (12 U.S.C. 635(b)(1)(B)) that the Bank have<sup>1</sup> reasonable assurance of repayment.

##### (2) Liabilities which may be guaranteed

The liabilities that may be guaranteed under paragraph (1) are liabilities incurred by the Bank in connection with guarantees or insurance provided under the Export-Import Bank Act of 1945 [12 U.S.C. 635 et seq.] for financing for transactions involving the export of goods and services for the use of the private sector in Poland.

#### (b) Guarantees available only for short-term guarantees and insurance

Guarantees provided under subsection (a) of this section shall be for short-term guarantees

and insurance extended by the Bank which shall be repayable within a period not to exceed one year from the date of arrival at the port of importation of the goods and services covered by such guarantees or insurance.

#### (c) Agreement on criteria and procedures

Guarantees or insurance extended by the Bank and guaranteed pursuant to subsection (a) of this section shall be provided by the Bank in accordance with criteria and procedures agreed to by the Administrator and the Bank.

#### (d) Reserve fund

The agreement referred to in subsection (c) of this section shall also provide for the establishment of a reserve fund by the administering agency, with such funds made available to the reserve as the Administrator deems necessary to discharge liabilities under guarantees provided under subsection (a) of this section.

#### (e) Discharge of liabilities

##### (1) Funds which may be used

Such amounts of the funds made available to carry out part IV of subchapter II of this chapter (relating to the economic support fund) as the President determines are necessary may be made available to discharge liabilities under guarantees entered into under subsection (a) of this section.

##### (2) Crediting of subsequent payments

To the extent that any of the funds made available pursuant to paragraph (1) are paid out for a claim arising out of liabilities guaranteed under subsection (a) of this section, amounts received after the date of such payment, with respect to such claim, shall be credited to the reserve fund established pursuant to subsection (d) of this section, shall be merged with the funds in such reserve, and shall be available for the purpose of payments by the Administrator to the Bank for guarantees under subsection (a) of this section.

#### (f) Appropriations action required

Commitments to guarantee under subsection (a) of this section are authorized only to the extent and in the amounts provided in advance in appropriations Acts.

#### (g) Limitation on outstanding commitments

The aggregate amount of outstanding commitments under subsection (a) of this section may not exceed \$200,000,000 of contingent liability for loan principal during any fiscal year.

#### (h) Biannual reports to Congress

Every 6 months, the Administrator and the President of the Bank shall prepare and transmit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the Chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate a report on the amount and extension of guarantees and insurance provided by the Bank and guaranteed under this section during the preceding 6-month period.

#### (i) Administrative and technical assistance

The Bank shall provide, without reimbursement, such administrative and technical assistance to the administering agency as the Bank

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be “has”.

and the Administrator determine appropriate to assist the administering agency in carrying out this section.

**(j) Fees and premiums**

The Bank is authorized to charge fees and premiums, in connection with guarantees or insurance guaranteed by the administering agency under subsection (a) of this section, that are commensurate (in the judgment of the Bank) with the Bank's administrative costs and the risks covered by the agency's guarantees. Any amounts received by the Bank in excess of the estimated costs incurred by the Bank in administering such guarantees or insurance—

(1) shall be credited to the reserve fund established pursuant to subsection (d) of this section,

(2) shall be merged with the funds in such reserve, and

(3) shall be available for the purpose of payments by the administering agency to the Bank for guarantees under subsection (a) of this section.

**(k) Restrictions not applicable**

Prohibitions on the use of foreign assistance funds for assistance for Poland shall not apply with respect to the funds made available to carry out this section.

**(l) Expiration of authority**

The President may not enter into any commitments to guarantee under subsection (a) of this section after September 30, 1992.

**(m) Definitions**

For purposes of this section—

(1) the term "administering agency" means the Agency for International Development;

(2) the term "Administrator" means the Administrator of the Agency for International Development; and

(3) the term "Bank" means the Export-Import Bank of the United States.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 225, as added Pub. L. 101-179, title III, § 304(a), Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1312.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Export-Import Bank Act of 1945, referred to in subsec. (a)(2), is act July 31, 1945, ch. 341, 59 Stat. 526, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§ 635 et seq.) of chapter 6A of Title 12, Banks and Banking. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 635 of Title 12 and Tables.

CONFORMING REFERENCE

Section 304(c) of Pub. L. 101-179 provided that: "With respect to Poland, any reference in the Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Act, 1990 [Pub. L. 101-167, Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1195], to section 224 of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2184] shall be deemed to be a reference to section 225 of that Act [22 U.S.C. 2185] (as enacted by this section)."

**§ 2186. Loan guarantees to Israel program**

**(a) In general**

Subject to the terms and conditions of this section, during the period beginning October 1, 1992, and ending September 30, 1997, the Presi-

dent is authorized to issue guarantees against losses incurred in connection with loans to Israel made as a result of Israel's extraordinary humanitarian effort to resettle and absorb immigrants into Israel from the republics of the former Soviet Union, Ethiopia and other countries. In the event that less than the full amount authorized to be issued under subsection (b) of this section is issued in such period, the authority to issue the balance of such guarantees shall be available in the fiscal year ending on September 30, 1998.

**(b) Fiscal year levels**

The President is authorized to issue guarantees in furtherance of the purposes of this section. Subject to subsection (d) of this section, the total principal amount of guarantees which may be issued by the President under this section shall be up to \$10,000,000,000 which may be issued as follows:

(1) in fiscal year 1993, up to \$2,000,000,000 may be issued on October 1, 1992 or thereafter;

(2) subject to subsection (d) of this section, in fiscal years 1994 through 1997, up to \$2,000,000,000 in each fiscal year may be issued on October 1 or thereafter.

(3) If less than the full amount of guarantees authorized to be made available in a fiscal year pursuant to paragraphs (1) and (2) of this subsection is issued to Israel during that fiscal year, the authority to issue the balance of such guarantees shall extend to any subsequent fiscal year ending on or before September 30, 1998.

(4)(A) Not later than September 1 of each year during the period in which the President is authorized to issue loan guarantees under subsection (a) of this section, beginning in fiscal year 1993, the President shall notify the appropriate congressional committees in writing of his intentions regarding the exercise of that authority for the fiscal year beginning on October 1 of that year, including a statement of the total principal amount of guarantees, if any, that the President proposes to issue for that fiscal year.

(B) For purposes of this paragraph, the term "appropriate congressional committees" means the Committee on Appropriations and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Committee on Appropriations and the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives.

**(c) Use of guarantees**

Guarantees may be issued under this section only to support activities in the geographic areas which were subject to the administration of the Government of Israel before June 5, 1967.

**(d) Limitation on guarantee amount**

The amount of authorized but unissued guarantees that the President is authorized to issue as specified in subsection (b) of this section shall be reduced by an amount equal to the amount extended or estimated to have been extended by the Government of Israel during the previous year for activities which the President determines are inconsistent with the objectives of this section or understandings reached between the United States Government and the Govern-

ment of Israel regarding the implementation of the loan program. The President shall submit a report to Congress no later than September 30 of each fiscal year during the pendency of the program specifying the amount calculated under this subsection and that will be deducted from the amount of guarantees authorized to be issued in the next fiscal year.

**(e) Fees**

(1) Fees charged for the loan guarantee program under this section each year shall be an aggregate annual origination fee equal to the estimated subsidy cost of the guarantees issued under this section for that year, calculated by the Office of Management and Budget for the Federal Credit Reform Act of 1990 [2 U.S.C. 661 et seq.]. This shall also include an amount for the administrative expenses of the Agency for International Development in administering the program under this section. All such fees shall be paid by the Government of Israel to the Government of the United States. Funds made available for Israel under part 4 of subchapter II of this chapter, may be utilized by the Government of Israel to pay such fees to the United States Government. No further appropriations of subsidy cost are needed for the loan guarantee authorized hereunder for fiscal year 1993 and the four succeeding fiscal years.

(2) The origination fee shall be payable to the United States Government on a pro rata basis as each guarantee for each loan or increment is issued.

**(f) Authority to suspend**

Except as provided in subsections (l) and (m) of this section, the President shall determine the terms and conditions for issuing guarantees. If the President determines that these terms and conditions have been breached, the President may suspend or terminate the provision of all or part of the additional loan guarantees not yet issued under this section. Upon making such a determination to suspend or terminate the provision of loan guarantees, the President shall submit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the President Pro Tempore of the Senate his determination to do so, including the basis for such suspension or termination.

**(g) Procedures for suspension or termination**

Any suspension or termination pursuant to subsection (f) of this section shall be in accordance with the following procedures:

(1) Upon making a determination to suspend or terminate the provision of loan guarantees, the President shall submit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the President Pro Tempore of the Senate his determination to do so, including the basis for such suspension or termination.

(2) Such a suspension or termination shall cease to be effective if Congress enacts, within 30 days of submission, a joint resolution authorizing the assistance notwithstanding the suspension.

(3) Any such joint resolution shall be considered in the Senate in accordance with the provisions of section 601(b) of the International Security Assistance and Arms Export Control Act of 1976.

(4) For the purpose of expediting the consideration and enactment of joint resolutions under this subsection, a motion to proceed to the consideration of any such joint resolution after it has been reported by the appropriate committee shall be treated as highly privileged in the House of Representatives.

(5) In the event that the President suspends the provision of additional loan guarantees under subsection (f) of this section and Congress does not enact a joint resolution pursuant to this subsection, the provision of additional loan guarantees under the program established by this section may be resumed only if the President determines and so reports to Congress that the reasons for the suspension have been resolved or that the resumption is otherwise in the national interest.

**(h) Economic context**

The effective absorption of immigrants into Israel from the republics of the former Soviet Union and Ethiopia within the private sector requires large investment and economic restructuring to promote market efficiency and thereby contribute to productive employment and sustainable growth. Congress recognizes that the Government of Israel is developing an economic strategy designed to achieve these goals, and that the Government of Israel intends to adopt a comprehensive, multi-year economic strategy based on prudent macroeconomic policies and structural reforms. Congress also recognizes that these policies are being designed to reduce direct involvement of the government in the economic system and to promote private enterprise, important prerequisites for economic stability and sustainable growth.

**(i) Consultations**

It is the sense of the Congress that, as agreed between the two Governments and in order to further the policies specified in subsection (h) of this section, Israel and the United States should continue to engage in consultations concerning economic and financial measures, including structural and other reforms, that Israel should undertake during the pendency of this program to enable its economy to absorb and resettle immigrants and to accommodate the increased debt burden that will result from loans guaranteed pursuant to this section. It is the sense of the Congress that these consultations on economic measures should address progress and plans in the areas of budget policies, privatization, trade liberalization, financial and capital markets, labor markets, competition policy, and deregulation.

**(j) Goods and services**

During the pendency of the loan program authorized under this section, it is anticipated that, in the context of the economic reforms undertaken pursuant to subsections (h) and (i) of this section, Israel's increased population due to its absorption of immigrants, and the liberalization by the Government of Israel of its trade policy with the United States, the amount of United States investment goods and services purchased for use in or with respect to the country of Israel will substantially increase.

**(k) Reports**

The President shall report to Congress by December 31 of each fiscal year until December 31, 1999, regarding the implementation of this section.

**(l) Applicability of certain sections**

Section 2183 of this title shall apply to guarantees issued under subsection (a) of this section in the same manner as such section applies to guarantees issued under section 2182 of this title, except that subsections (a), (e)(1), (g), and (j) of section 2183 of this title shall not apply to such guarantees and except that, to the extent section 2183 of this title is inconsistent with the Federal Credit Reform Act of 1990 [2 U.S.C. 661 et seq.], that Act shall apply. Loans shall be guaranteed under this section without regard to sections 2181, 2182, and 2198(c) of this title. Notwithstanding section 2183(f) of this title, the interest rate for loans guaranteed under this section may include a reasonable fee to cover the costs and fees incurred by the borrower in connection with this program or financing under this section in the event the borrower elects not to finance such costs or fees out of loan principal. Guarantees once issued hereunder shall be unconditional and fully and freely transferable.

**(m) Terms and conditions**

(1) Each loan guarantee issued under this section shall guarantee 100 percent of the principal and interest payable on such loans.

(2) The standard terms of any loan or increment guaranteed under this section shall be 30 years with semiannual payments of interest only over the first 10 years, and with semiannual payments of principal and interest on a level payment basis, over the last 20 years thereof, except that the guaranteed loan or any increments issued in a single transaction may include obligations having different maturities, interest rates, and payment terms if the aggregate scheduled debt service for all obligations issued in a single transaction equals the debt service for a single loan or increment of like amount having the standard terms described in this sentence. The guarantor shall not have the right to accelerate any guaranteed loan or increment or to pay any amounts in respect of the guarantees issued other than in accordance with the original payment terms of the loan. For purposes of determining the maximum principal amount of any loan or increment to be guaranteed under this section, the principal amount of each such loan or increment shall be—

(A) in the case of any loan issued on a discount basis, the original issue price (excluding any transaction costs) thereof; or

(B) in the case of any loan issue<sup>1</sup> on an interest-bearing basis, the stated principal amount thereof.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 226, as added Pub. L. 102-391, title VI, § 601, Oct. 6, 1992, 106 Stat. 1699.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Federal Credit Reform Act of 1990, referred to in subsections (e)(1) and (l), is title V of Pub. L. 93-344 as added by Pub. L. 101-508, title XIII, § 13201(a), Nov. 5,

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be “issued”.

1990, 104 Stat. 1388-609, which is classified generally to subchapter III (§ 661 et seq.) of chapter 17A of Title 2, The Congress. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 621 of Title 2 and Tables.

Section 601(b) of the International Security Assistance and Arms Export Control Act of 1976, referred to in subsec. (g)(3), is section 601(b) of Pub. L. 94-329, title VI, June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 765, which is not classified to the Code.

## CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 2 section 901.

## SUBPART IV—OVERSEAS PRIVATE INVESTMENT CORPORATION

## SUBPART REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subpart is referred to in sections 2291, 2360, 2396, 2394-1, 5828 of this title.

**§ 2191. Congressional statement of purpose; creation and functions of Corporation**

To mobilize and facilitate the participation of United States private capital and skills in the economic and social development of less developed countries and areas, and countries in transition from nonmarket to market economies, thereby complementing the development assistance objectives of the United States, there is hereby created the Overseas Private Investment Corporation (hereinafter called the “Corporation”), which shall be an agency of the United States under the policy guidance of the Secretary of State.

The Corporation, in determining whether to provide insurance, financing, or reinsurance for a project, shall especially—

(1) be guided by the economic and social development impact and benefits of such a project and the ways in which such a project complements, or is compatible with, other development assistance programs or projects of the United States or other donors;

(2) give preferential consideration to investment projects in less developed countries that have per capita incomes of \$984 or less in 1986 United States dollars, and restrict its activities with respect to investment projects in less developed countries that have per capita incomes of \$4,269 or more in 1986 United States dollars (other than countries designated as beneficiary countries under section 2702 of title 19, Ireland, and Northern Ireland); and

(3) ensure that the project is consistent with the provisions of section 2151p of this title, section 2151p-1 of this title, and section 2151q of this title relating to the environment and natural resources of, and tropical forests and endangered species in, developing countries, and consistent with the intent of regulations issued pursuant to section 2151p of this title, section 2151p-1 of this title, and section 2151q of this title.

In carrying out its purpose, the Corporation, utilizing broad criteria, shall undertake—

(a) to conduct financing, insurance, and reinsurance operations on a self-sustaining basis, taking into account in its financing operations the economic and financial soundness of projects;

(b) to utilize private credit and investment institutions and the Corporation's guaranty authority as the principal means of mobilizing capital investment funds;

(c) to broaden private participation and revolve its funds through selling its direct investments to private investors whenever it can appropriately do so on satisfactory terms;

(d) to conduct its insurance operations with due regard to principles of risk management including efforts to share its insurance and reinsurance risks;

(e) to the maximum degree possible consistent with its purposes—

(1) to give preferential consideration in its investment insurance, reinsurance, and guaranty activities to investment projects sponsored by or involving United States small business; and

(2) to increase the proportion of projects sponsored by or significantly involving United States small business to at least 30 percent of all projects insured, reinsured, or guaranteed by the Corporation;

(f) to consider in the conduct of its operations the extent to which less developed country governments are receptive to private enterprise, domestic and foreign, and their willingness and ability to maintain conditions which enable private enterprise to make its full contribution to the development process;

(g) to foster private initiative and competition and discourage monopolistic practices;

(h) to further to the greatest degree possible, in a manner consistent with its goals, the balance-of-payments and employment objectives of the United States;

(i) to conduct its activities in consonance with the activities of the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter and the international trade, investment, and financial policies of the United States Government, and to seek to support those developmental projects having positive trade benefits for the United States;

(j) to advise and assist, within its field of competence, interested agencies of the United States and other organizations, both public and private, national and international, with respect to projects and programs relating to the development of private enterprise in less developed countries and areas;

(k)(1) to decline to issue any contract of insurance or reinsurance, or any guaranty, or to enter into any agreement to provide financing for an eligible investor's proposed investment if the Corporation determines that such investment is likely to cause such investor (or the sponsor of an investment project in which such investor is involved) significantly to reduce the number of his employees in the United States production he is replacing his United States production with production from such investment which involves substantially the same product for substantially the same market as his United States production;

and (2) to monitor conformance with the representations of the investor on which the Corporation relied in making the determination required by clause (1);

(l) to decline to issue any contract of insurance or reinsurance, or any guaranty, or to enter into any agreement to provide financing for an eligible investor's proposed investment if the Corporation determines that such investment is likely to cause a significant reduction in the number of employees in the United States;

(m) to refuse to insure, reinsure, or finance any investment subject to performance requirements which would reduce substantially the positive trade benefits likely to accrue to the United States from the investment; and

(n) to refuse to insure, reinsure, guarantee, or finance any investment in connection with a project which the Corporation determines will pose an unreasonable or major environmental, health, or safety hazard, or will result in the significant degradation of national parks or similar protected areas.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §231, as added Pub. L. 91-175, pt. I, §105, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 809; amended Pub. L. 93-390, §2(1), Aug. 27, 1974, 88 Stat. 763; Pub. L. 95-268, §2, Apr. 24, 1978, 92 Stat. 213; Pub. L. 97-65, §2, Oct. 16, 1981, 95 Stat. 1021; Pub. L. 99-204, §§3, 4(a), Dec. 23, 1985, 99 Stat. 1669; Pub. L. 100-461, title V, §555, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-36; Pub. L. 102-549, title I, §101, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3651; Pub. L. 103-392, title I, §105, Oct. 22, 1994, 108 Stat. 4099.)

#### REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

#### CODIFICATION

Amendment by Pub. L. 100-461 is based on sections 102 and 110(a)(1) of title I of H.R. 5263, One Hundredth Congress, as passed by the House of Representatives on Sept. 20, 1988, and sections 102 and 110(a)(1) of title I of S. 2757, One Hundredth Congress, as reported Sept. 7, 1988, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-461.

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 231 of Pub. L. 87-195, pt. 1, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 432, related to general authority of President to participate in financing of surveys of investment opportunities in less developed friendly countries, prior to the general reorganization of this subpart by Pub. L. 91-175, pt. I, §105, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 807.

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-392 inserted “, Ireland, and Northern Ireland” after “title 19” in par. (2) of second undesignated par.

1992—Pub. L. 102-549, in first undesignated par., substituted “countries and areas, and countries in transition from nonmarket to market economies,” for “friendly countries and areas,”.

1988—Pub. L. 100-461, in par. (2) of second undesignated par., substituted “984 or less in 1986 United States dollars” for “\$896 or less in 1983 United States dollars” and “\$4,269 or more in 1986 United States dollars (other than countries designated as beneficiary

countries under section 2702 of title 19)" for "\$3,887 or more in 1983 United States dollars".

Pub. L. 100-461, in par. (3) of second undesignated par., substituted "section 2151p of this title, section 2151p-1 of this title, and section" for "sections 2151p of this title and" and "tropical forests and endangered species" for "biological diversity".

1985—Pub. L. 99-204, in second undesignated par., substituted "\$896 or less in 1983 United States dollars" for "\$680 or less in 1979 United States dollars" and "\$3,887 or more in 1983 United States dollars" for "\$2,950 or more in 1979 United States dollars" in par. (2), added par. (3), and added cl. (n).

1981—Pub. L. 97-65 substituted "\$680 or less in 1979 United States dollars" for "\$520 or less in 1975 United States dollars" and "\$2,950 or more in 1979 United States dollars" for "\$1,000 or more in 1975 United States dollars" in par. (2) of undesignated paragraph covering the guidelines to be used with regard to operations in less developed countries, inserted ", and to seek to support those developmental projects having positive trade benefits for the United States" in cl. (i) of undesignated paragraph enumerating the activities of the Corporation, and, in that unnumbered paragraph, added cl. (m), relating to investments which would reduce positive trade benefits.

1978—Pub. L. 95-268 inserted undesignated par. relating to determinations by the Corporation respecting insurance, financing, or reinsurance for a project, in cl. (e) designated existing provisions as subcl. (1) and, as so designated, substituted reference to guaranty activities for reference to financing activities and reference to small businesses for reference to businesses with a net worth of not more than \$2,500,000 or with total assets of not more than \$7,500,000, and added subcl. (2), struck out cl. (f) relating to encouragement and support of private investments for certain less developed friendly countries, redesignated former cls. (g) to (k) as (f) to (j), respectively, struck out former cl. (l) relating to preference by the Corporation for projects in countries having a per capita income of \$450 or less in 1973 United States dollars, redesignated former cl. (m) as (k), and added cl. (n) which, as added, was redesignated as (l).

1974—Pub. L. 93-390, in introductory par., substituted "social development" for "social progress", in cl. (a) inserted provisions for conducting insurance and reinsurance operations and substituted provisions requiring in financial operations consideration of economic and financial soundness of projects for provisions requiring consideration of economic and financial soundness of projects and availability of financing from other sources on appropriate terms, in cl. (d) substituted "efforts to share its insurance and reinsurance" for "when appropriate, efforts to share its insurance", in cl. (e) substituted provisions requiring preferential treatment to investment projects involving businesses with enumerated net worth or total assets for provisions requiring utilization and encouragement for full participation in Corporation programs of small businesses, in cl. (i) inserted "and employment" before "objectives", and added cls. (l) and (m).

OVERSEAS PRIVATE INVESTMENT CORPORATION;  
REAFFIRMATION OF SUPPORT

Pub. L. 100-418, title II, §2203(a), Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1328, provided that: "The Congress reaffirms its support for the Overseas Private Investment Corporation as a United States Government agency serving important development assistance goals. In order to enhance the Corporation's ability to meet these goals, the Overseas Private Investment Corporation should increase its loan guaranty and direct investment programs."

EX. ORD. NO. 11579. OVERSEAS PRIVATE INVESTMENT  
CORPORATION

Ex. Ord. No. 11579, Jan. 19, 1971, 36 F.R. 969, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 12107, Dec. 28, 1978, 44 F.R. 1055; Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, provided:

By virtue of the authority vested in me by the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (75 Stat. 424), as amended (hereinafter the "Act") [section 2151 et seq. of this title] and section 301 of title 3 of the United States Code, and as President of the United States, it is ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. *Transfer to Overseas Private Investment Corporation.* All obligations, assets and related rights and responsibilities arising out of, or related to, predecessor programs and authorities similar to those provided for in sections 234(a), (b) and (d) of the Act [section 2194(a), (b) and (d) of this title] are hereby transferred to the Overseas Private Investment Corporation (hereinafter the "Corporation").

SEC. 2. *Delegation of functions.* (a) [Revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673.]

(b) The function of prescribing regulations relating to the reinstatement or restoration of officers and employees of the Corporation to other government positions, when their appointment to a position in the Corporation was made from another government position and their separation from the Corporation was not made for cause, is hereby delegated to the Office of Personnel Management.

SEC. 3. *Allocation and transfer of funds.* Funds made available under section 232 of the Act (repealed by section 105 of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1969) [section 2192 of this title] which are obligated but unexpended are hereby transferred to the Corporation.

SEC. 4. *General provisions.* (a) As used in this order, the words "function" or "functions" include any duty, obligation, power, authority, responsibility, right, privilege, discretion, or activity.

(b) The Corporation shall be deemed to be the successor of the Agency for International Development and the Administrator thereof, with respect to all functions vested in the Corporation pursuant to law.

(c) Except to the extent that they may be inconsistent with this order, all determinations, authorizations, regulations, rulings, certificates, orders, directives, contracts, agreements, and other actions made, issued, or entered into with respect to any function affected by this order and not revoked, superseded or otherwise made inapplicable before the date of this order, shall continue in full force and effect until amended, modified, or terminated by appropriate authority.

(d) Executive Order No. 10973 of November 3, 1961, as amended [set out as a note under this section], is hereby superseded insofar as any provision therein is in conflict with any provision herein.

(e) The provisions of this order shall become effective upon adoption by the Board of Directors of bylaws for the Corporation.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2191a, 2194, 2200, 3304 of this title.

**§ 2191a. Additional requirements**

**(a) Worker rights**

**(1) Limitation on OPIC activities**

The Corporation may insure, reinsure, guarantee, or finance a project only if the country in which the project is to be undertaken is taking steps to adopt and implement laws that extend internationally recognized worker rights, as defined in section 2462(a)(4) of title 19, to workers in that country (including any designated zone in that country). The Corporation shall also include the following language, in substantially the following form, in all contracts which the Corporation enters into with eligible investors to provide financial support under this subpart:

"The investor agrees not to take actions to prevent employees of the foreign enter-

prise from lawfully exercising their right of association and their right to organize and bargain collectively. The investor further agrees to observe applicable laws relating to a minimum age for employment of children, acceptable conditions of work with respect to minimum wages, hours of work, and occupational health and safety, and not to use forced labor. The investor is not responsible under this paragraph for the actions of a foreign government.”

**(2) Use of annual reports on workers rights**

The Corporation shall, in making its determinations under paragraph (1), use the reports submitted to the Congress pursuant to section 2465(c) of title 19. The restriction set forth in paragraph (1) shall not apply until the first such report is submitted to the Congress.

**(3) Waiver**

Paragraph (1) shall not prohibit the Corporation from providing any insurance, reinsurance, guaranty, or financing with respect to a country if the President determines that such activities by the Corporation would be in the national economic interests of the United States. Any such determination shall be reported in writing to the Congress, together with the reasons for the determination.

**(4) Operations of OPIC in the People's Republic of China**

In making a determination under this section for the People's Republic of China, the Corporation shall discuss fully and completely the justification for making such determination with respect to each item set forth in subparagraphs (A) through (E) of section 2462(a)(4) of title 19.

**(b) Public hearings**

The Board shall hold at least one public hearing each year in order to afford an opportunity for any person to present views as to whether the Corporation is carrying out its activities in accordance with section 2191 of this title and this section or whether any investment in a particular country should have been or should be extended insurance, reinsurance, guarantees, or financing under this subpart.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §231A, as added Pub. L. 99-204, §5(a), Dec. 23, 1985, 99 Stat. 1670; amended Pub. L. 100-418, title II, §2203(c), Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1328; Pub. L. 102-549, title I, §102(a), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3651.)

AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 102-549 inserted at end provisions requiring Corporation to include certain language about employee rights in all contracts with eligible investors.

1988—Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 100-418 added par. (4).

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 5(b) of Pub. L. 99-204 provided that: “Subsection (a) of section 231A [subsec. (a) of this section], as added by subsection (a) of this section, shall not apply to projects insured, reinsured, guaranteed, or financed before the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 23, 1985].”

**§ 2192. Capital of the Corporation**

The President is authorized to pay in as capital of the Corporation, out of dollar receipts

made available through the appropriation process from loans made pursuant to subchapter I of this chapter and from loans made under the Mutual Security Act of 1954, as amended, for the fiscal year 1970 not to exceed \$20,000,000 and for the fiscal year 1971 not to exceed \$20,000,000. Upon the payment of such capital by the President, the Corporation shall issue an equivalent amount of capital stock to the Secretary of the Treasury.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §232, as added Pub. L. 91-175, pt. I, §105, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 810.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Mutual Security Act of 1954, referred to in text, is act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, 68 Stat. 832, as amended by acts July 8, 1955, ch. 301, 69 Stat. 283; July 18, 1956, ch. 627, §§2 to 11, 70 Stat. 555; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, 71 Stat. 355; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. 1, §§101 to 103, ch. II, §§201 to 205, ch. III, §301, ch. IV, §401, ch. V, §501, 72 Stat. 261; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, §2, ch. 1, §101, ch. II, §§201 to 205(a) to (i), (k) to (n), ch. III, §301, ch. IV, §401(a) to (k), (m), 73 Stat. 246; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. I to V, 74 Stat. 134, which was principally classified to chapter 24 (§1750 et seq.) of this title and which was repealed by act July 18, 1956, ch. 627, §8(m), 70 Stat. 559, Pub. L. 85-141, §§2(e), 3, 4(b), 11(d), Aug. 14, 1957, 71 Stat. 356, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. II, §§205(j), ch. IV, 401(1), July 24, 1959, 73 Stat. 250, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. II, §§203(d), 204(k), May 14, 1960, 74 Stat. 138, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §642(a)(2), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460, Pub. L. 94-329, title II, §212(b)(1), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 745, except for sections 1754, 1783, 1796, 1853, 1922, 1928, and 1937 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1754 of this title and Tables.

REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 232 of Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 432 as amended by Pub. L. 87-565, pt. I, §105, Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 257; Pub. L. 88-633, pt. I, §104, Oct. 7, 1964, 78 Stat. 1010; Pub. L. 90-137, pt. I, §105, Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 451, authorized appropriations for surveys of investment opportunities, prior to the general reorganization of this subpart by Pub. L. 91-175, pt. I, §105, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 807.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS; ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Functions of President under this section delegated and funds available under this chapter allocated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by sections 1-102(a)(1), (e) and 1-801(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

**§ 2193. Organization and management**

**(a) Structure**

The Corporation shall have a Board of Directors, a President, an Executive Vice President, and such other officers and staff as the Board of Directors may determine.

**(b) Board of directors**

All powers of the Corporation shall vest in and be exercised by or under the authority of its

Board of Directors (“the Board”) which shall consist of fifteen Directors, including the Chairman, with eight Directors constituting a quorum for the transaction of business. The Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency shall be the Chairman of the Board, ex officio. The United States Trade Representative shall be the Vice Chairman of the Board, ex officio, except that the United States Trade Representative may designate the Deputy United States Trade Representative to serve as Vice Chairman of the Board in place of the United States Trade Representative. Eight Directors (other than the President of the Corporation, appointed pursuant to subsection (c) of this section who shall serve as a Director, ex officio) shall be appointed by the President of the United States, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, and shall not be officials or employees of the Government of the United States. At least two of the eight Directors appointed under the preceding sentence shall be experienced in small business, one in organized labor, and one in cooperatives. Each such Director shall be appointed for a term of no more than three years. The terms of no more than three such Directors shall expire in any one year. Such Directors shall serve until their successors are appointed and qualified and may be reappointed.

The other Directors shall be officials of the Government of the United States, including an official of the Department of Labor, designated by and serving at the pleasure of the President of the United States.

All Directors who are not officers of the Corporation or officials of the Government of the United States shall be compensated at a rate equivalent to that of level IV of the Executive Schedule when actually engaged in the business of the Corporation and may be paid per diem in lieu of subsistence at the applicable rate prescribed in the standardized Government travel regulations, as amended from time to time, while away from their homes or usual places of business.

**(c) President**

The President of the Corporation shall be appointed by the President of the United States, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, and shall serve at the pleasure of the President. In making such appointment, the President shall take into account private business experience of the appointee. The President of the Corporation shall be its Chief Executive Officer and responsible for the operations and management of the Corporation, subject to bylaws and policies established by the Board.

**(d) Officers and staff**

The Executive Vice President of the Corporation shall be appointed by the President of the United States, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, and shall serve at the pleasure of the President. Other officers, attorneys, employees, and agents shall be selected and appointed by the Corporation, and shall be vested with such powers and duties as the Corporation may determine. Of such persons employed by the Corporation, not to exceed twenty may be appointed, compensated, or removed without re-

gard to the civil service laws and regulations: *Provided*, That under such regulations as the President of the United States may prescribe, officers and employees of the United States Government who are appointed to any of the above positions may be entitled, upon removal from such position, except for cause, to reinstatement to the position occupied at the time of appointment or to a position of comparable grade and salary. Such positions shall be in addition to those otherwise authorized by law, including those authorized by section 5108 of title 5.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §233, as added Pub. L. 91-175, pt. I, §105, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 810; amended 1979 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §6(a)(1), eff. Oct. 1, 1979, 44 F.R. 41166, 93 Stat. 1379; Pub. L. 97-65, §3(a), (b), Oct. 16, 1981, 95 Stat. 1021, 1022.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Level IV of the Executive Schedule, referred to in subsec. (b), is set out in section 5315 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

The civil service laws, referred to in subsec. (d), are set out in Title 5. See, particularly, section 3301 et seq. of Title 5.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 233 of Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 432, contained definitions, prior to the general reorganization of this subpart by Pub. L. 91-175, pt. I, §105, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 807.

AMENDMENTS

1981—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 97-65 expanded to 15 the number of Directors on the Board, raised to 8 the number required to constitute a quorum and made other technical changes in connection with the increased size of the Board, inserted provision directing that the United States Trade Representative be the Vice Chairman of the Board, ex officio, but authorizing the United States Trade Representative to designate the Deputy United States Trade Representative to serve as Vice Chairman of the Board in place of the United States Trade Representative, provided that the President of the Corporation serve as a Director, ex officio, and inserted provision that an official of the Department of Labor be added to the Board as a Director.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1981 AMENDMENT

Section 3(c) of Pub. L. 97-65 provided that: “The amendments made by this section [amending this section] shall take effect on October 1, 1981.”

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“The Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency” substituted for “The Administrator of the Agency for International Development” in subsec. (b), pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1979, §6(a)(1), 44 F.R. 41166, 93 Stat. 1379, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, as provided by section 1-101 of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, set out as notes under section 2381 of this title, which transferred all functions and authorities of the Administrator of the Agency for International Development under subsec. (b) of this section to the Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS; ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with exception of functions under subsec. (b) of this section and certain other exceptions, by sections 1-102(a)(1), (e) and 1-701(c) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.



MEMBERS OF BOARD OF DIRECTORS OF OVERSEAS  
PRIVATE INVESTMENT CORPORATION

For provisions directing that the United States Trade Representative serve, ex officio, as an additional voting member of the Board of Directors of the Overseas Private Investment Corporation and to serve as the Vice Chair of that Board and authorizing and directing the appointment of an additional member of the Board of Directors of the Overseas Private Investment Corporation as part of the consolidation of the trade functions of the Federal government, see Reorg. Plan No. 3 of 1979, § 4, 44 F.R. 69274, 93 Stat. 1381, eff. Jan. 2, 1980, as provided in section 1-107(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12188, 45 F.R. 993, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

**§ 2194. Investment insurance and other programs**

The Corporation is hereby authorized to do the following:

**(a) Investment insurance**

(1) To issue insurance, upon such terms and conditions as the Corporation may determine, to eligible investors assuring protection in whole or in part against any or all of the following risks with respect to projects which the Corporation has approved—

(A) inability to convert into United States dollars other currencies, or credits in such currencies, received as earnings or profits from the approved project, as repayment or return of the investment therein, in whole or in part, or as compensation for the sale or disposition of all or any part thereof;

(B) loss of investment, in whole or in part, in the approved project due to expropriation or confiscation by action of a foreign government;

(C) loss due to war, revolution, insurrection, or civil strife; and

(D) loss due to business interruption caused by any of the risks set forth in subparagraphs (A), (B), and (C).

(2) Recognizing that major private investments in less developed friendly countries or areas are often made by enterprises in which there is multinational participation, including significant United States private participation, the Corporation may make arrangements with foreign governments (including agencies, instrumentalities, or political subdivisions thereof) or with multilateral organizations and institutions for sharing liabilities assumed under investment insurance for such investments and may in connection therewith issue insurance to investors not otherwise eligible hereunder, except that liabilities assumed by the Corporation under the authority of this subsection shall be consistent with the purposes of this subpart and that the maximum share of liabilities so assumed shall not exceed the proportionate participation by eligible investors in the project.

(3) Not more than 10 per centum of the maximum contingent liability of investment insurance which the Corporation is permitted to have outstanding under section 2195(a)(1) of this title shall be issued to a single investor.

(4) Before issuing insurance for the first time for loss due to business interruption, and in each subsequent instance in which a significant expansion is proposed in the type of risk to be insured under the definition of “civil strife” or

“business interruption”, the Corporation shall, at least sixty days before such insurance is issued, submit to the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives a report with respect to such insurance, including a thorough analysis of the risks to be covered, anticipated losses, and proposed rates and reserves and, in the case of insurance for loss due to business interruption, an explanation of the underwriting basis upon which the insurance is to be offered. Any such report with respect to insurance for loss due to business interruption shall be considered in accordance with the procedures applicable to reprogramming notifications pursuant to section 2394-1 of this title.

**(b) Investment guaranties**

To issue to eligible investors guaranties of loans and other investments made by such investors assuring against loss due to such risks and upon such terms and conditions as the Corporation may determine: *Provided, however*, That such guaranties on other than loan investments shall not exceed 75 per centum of such investment: *Provided further*, That except for loan investments for credit unions made by eligible credit unions or credit union associations, the aggregate amount of investment (exclusive of interest and earnings) so guaranteed with respect to any project shall not exceed, at the time of issuance of any such guaranty, 75 per centum of the total investment committed to any such project as determined by the Corporation, which determination shall be conclusive for purposes of the Corporation’s authority to issue any such guaranty: *Provided further*, That not more than 15 per centum of the maximum contingent liability of investment guaranties which the Corporation is permitted to have outstanding under section 2195(a)(2) of this title shall be issued to a single investor.

**(c) Direct investment**

To make loans in United States dollars repayable in dollars or loans in foreign currencies (including, without regard to section 1306 of title 31, such foreign currencies which the Secretary of the Treasury may determine to be excess to the normal requirements of the United States and the Director of the Office of Management and Budget may allocate) to firms privately owned or of mixed private and public ownership upon such terms and conditions as the Corporation may determine. Loans may be made under this subsection only for projects that are sponsored by or significantly involve United States small business or cooperatives.

The Corporation may designate up to 25 per cent of any loan under this subsection for use in the development or adaptation in the United States of new technologies or new products or services that are to be used in the project for which the loan is made and are likely to contribute to the economic or social development of less developed countries.

No loan may be made under this subsection to finance any operation for the extraction of oil or gas. The aggregate amount of loans under this subsection to finance operations for the mining or other extraction of any deposit of ore or other nonfuel minerals may not in any fiscal year exceed \$4,000,000.

**(d) Investment encouragement**

To initiate and support through financial participation, incentive grant, or otherwise, and on such terms and conditions as the Corporation may determine, the identification, assessment, surveying and promotion of private investment opportunities, utilizing wherever feasible and effective the facilities of private organizations or private investors, except that—

(1) the Corporation shall not finance any survey to ascertain the existence, location, extent, or quality of, or to determine the feasibility of undertaking operations for the extraction of, oil or gas; and

(2) expenditures financed by the Corporation during any fiscal year on surveys to ascertain the existence, location, extent, or quality of, or to determine the feasibility of undertaking operations for the extraction of nonfuel minerals may not exceed \$200,000.

**(e) Special projects and programs**

To administer and manage special projects and programs, including programs of financial and advisory support which provide private technical, professional, or managerial assistance in the development of human resources, skills, technology, capital savings and intermediate financial and investment institutions and cooperatives and including the initiation of incentives, grants, and studies for renewable energy and other small business activities. The funds for these projects and programs may, with the Corporation's concurrence, be transferred to it for such purposes under the authority of section 2392(a) of this title or from other sources, public or private. Administrative funds may not be made available for incentives, grants, and studies for renewable energy and other small business activities.

**(f) Additional insurance functions**

(1) To make and carry out contracts of insurance or reinsurance, or agreements to associate or share risks, with insurance companies, financial institutions, any other persons, or groups thereof, and employing the same, where appropriate, as its agent, or acting as their agent, in the issuance and servicing of insurance, the adjustment of claims, the exercise of subrogation rights, the ceding and accepting of reinsurance, and in any other matter incident to an insurance business; except that such agreements and contracts shall be consistent with the purposes of the Corporation set forth in section 2191 of this title and shall be on equitable terms.

(2) To enter into pooling or other risk-sharing arrangements with multinational insurance or financing agencies or groups of such agencies.

(3) To hold an ownership interest in any association or other entity established for the purposes of sharing risks under investment insurance.

(4) To issue, upon such terms and conditions as it may determine, reinsurance of liabilities assumed by other insurers or groups thereof in respect of risks referred to in subsection (a)(1) of this section.

The amount of reinsurance of liabilities under this subpart which the Corporation may issue shall not in the aggregate exceed at any one

time an amount equal to the amount authorized for the maximum contingent liability outstanding at any one time under section 2195(a)(1) of this title. All reinsurance issued by the Corporation under this subsection shall require that the reinsured party retain for his own account specified portions of liability, whether first loss or otherwise.

**(g) Pilot equity finance program****(1) Authority for pilot program**

In order to study the feasibility and desirability of a program of equity financing, the Corporation is authorized to establish a 4-year pilot program under which it may, on the limited basis prescribed in paragraphs (2) through (5), purchase, invest in, or otherwise acquire equity or quasi-equity securities of any firm or entity, upon such terms and conditions as the Corporation may determine, for the purpose of providing capital for any project which is consistent with the provisions of this subpart, except that—

(A) the aggregate amount of the Corporation's equity investment with respect to any project shall not exceed 30 percent of the aggregate amount of all equity investment made with respect to such project at the time that the Corporation's equity investment is made, except for securities acquired through the enforcement of any lien, pledge, or contractual arrangement as a result of a default by any party under any agreement relating to the terms of the Corporation's investment; and

(B) the Corporation's equity investment under this subsection with respect to any project, when added to any other investments made or guaranteed by the Corporation under subsection (b) or (c) of this section with respect to such project, shall not cause the aggregate amount of all such investment to exceed, at the time any such investment is made or guaranteed by the Corporation, 75 percent of the total investment committed to such project as determined by the Corporation.

The determination of the Corporation under subparagraph (B) shall be conclusive for purposes of the Corporation's authority to make or guarantee any such investment.

**(2) Limitation to projects in sub-Saharan Africa and Caribbean basin**

Equity investments may be made under this subsection only in projects in countries eligible for financing under this subpart that are countries in sub-Saharan Africa or countries designated as beneficiary countries under section 2702 of title 19.

**(3) Additional criteria**

In making investment decisions under this subsection, the Corporation shall give preferential consideration to projects sponsored by or significantly involving United States small business or cooperatives. The Corporation shall also consider the extent to which the Corporation's equity investment will assist in obtaining the financing required for the project.

**(4) Disposition of equity interest**

Taking into consideration, among other things, the Corporation's financial interests and the desirability of fostering the development of local capital markets in less developed countries, the Corporation shall endeavor to dispose of any equity interest it may acquire under this subsection within a period of 10 years from the date of acquisition of such interest.

**(c)<sup>1</sup> Creation of fund for acquisition of equity**

The Corporation is authorized to establish a revolving fund to be available solely for the purposes specified in this subsection and to make transfers to the fund of a total of \$10,000,000 (less amounts transferred to the fund before October 28, 1992) from its noncredit account revolving fund. The Corporation shall transfer to the fund in each fiscal year all amounts received by the Corporation during the preceding fiscal year as income on securities acquired under this subsection, and from the proceeds on the disposition of such securities. Purchases of, investments in, and other acquisitions of equity from the fund are authorized for any fiscal year only to the extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriations Acts or are transferred to the Corporation pursuant to section 2392(a) of this title.

**(6) Consultations with Congress**

The Corporation shall consult annually with the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate on the implementation of the pilot equity finance program established under this subsection.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 234, as added Pub. L. 91-175, pt. I, § 105, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 811; amended 1970 Reorg. Plan No. 2, § 102, eff. July 1, 1970, 35 F.R. 7959, 84 Stat. 2085; Pub. L. 93-390, § 2(2), Aug. 27, 1974, 88 Stat. 764; Pub. L. 95-268, § 3, Apr. 24, 1978, 92 Stat. 214; Pub. L. 97-65, § 4, Oct. 16, 1981, 95 Stat. 1022; Pub. L. 99-204, §§ 6(a), 7, 8, Dec. 23, 1985, 99 Stat. 1671, 1672; Pub. L. 100-461, title V, § 555, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-36; Pub. L. 101-218, § 8(c), Dec. 11, 1989, 103 Stat. 1868; Pub. L. 102-549, title I, § 103, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3651.)

## CODIFICATION

Amendment by Pub. L. 100-461 is based on sections 103 and 104 of title I of H.R. 5263, One Hundredth Congress, as passed by the House of Representatives on Sept. 20, 1988, and sections 103 and 104 of title I of S. 2757, One Hundredth Congress, as reported Sept. 7, 1988, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-461.

In subsec. (c), "section 1306 of title 31" substituted for "section 1415 of the Supplemental Appropriation Act, 1953, [31 U.S.C. 724]" on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, § 4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

## AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (g)(5). Pub. L. 102-549 amended par. (5) generally, substituting designation "(c)" for "(5)". Prior to amendment, par. (5) read as follows: "CREATION OF FUND FROM CORPORATE REVENUES.—The Corporation

is authorized to establish a fund to be available solely for the purposes specified in this subsection and to make a one-time transfer to the fund of \$10,000,000 from its income and revenues."

1989—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 101-218 inserted "and including the initiation of incentives, grants, and studies for renewable energy and other small business activities" after "cooperatives" and inserted at end "Administrative funds may not be made available for incentives, grants, and studies for renewable energy and other small business activities."

1988—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 100-461, at end of first undesignated par., struck out "The Corporation may not purchase or invest in any stock in any other corporation, except that it may (1) accept as evidence of indebtedness debt securities convertible to stock, but such debt securities shall not be converted to stock while held by the Corporation, and (2) acquire stock through the enforcement of any lien or pledge or otherwise to satisfy a previously contracted indebtedness which would otherwise be in default, or as the result of any payment under any contract of insurance or guaranty. The Corporation shall dispose of any stock it may so acquire as soon as reasonably feasible under the circumstances then pertaining." and added second undesignated par. relating to designation of up to 25 percent of loan for use in development or adaptation of new technologies or new products or services.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 100-461, which directed that first sentence of last par. be struck out, was executed as probable intent of Congress by striking out first sentence of concluding provisions, before "The amount of reinsurance", which read as follows: "The authority granted by paragraph (3) may be exercised notwithstanding the prohibition under subsection (c) of this section against the Corporation purchasing or investing in any stock in any other corporation."

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 100-461 added subsec. (g).

1985—Subsec. (a)(1)(D). Pub. L. 99-204, § 6(a)(1), added subpar. (D).

Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 99-204, § 6(a)(2), substituted "insurance for the first time for loss due to business interruption" for "civil strife insurance for the first time" and "definition of 'civil strife' or 'business interruption'" for "definition of civil strife" and inserted provision that in the case of insurance for loss due to business interruption an explanation of the underwriting basis upon which the insurance is to be offered be submitted and provision that any report with respect to insurance for loss due to business interruption be considered in accordance with procedures applicable to reprogramming notifications pursuant to section 2394-1 of this title.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 99-204, § 7, substituted "15" for "10".

Subsec. (f)(2). Pub. L. 99-204, § 8, struck out "other national or" after "arrangements with".

1981—Subsec. (a)(1)(C). Pub. L. 97-65, § 4(a)(1), inserted reference to civil strife.

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 97-65, § 4(a)(2), substituted "eligible investors in the project" for "eligible investors in the total project financing".

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 97-65, § 4(a)(3), substituted "which the Corporation is permitted to have outstanding under section 2195(a)(1) of this title" for "which the Corporation is authorized to issue under this subsection".

Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 97-65, § 4(a)(4), added par. (4).

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 97-65, § 4(b)(1), substituted "which the Corporation is permitted to have outstanding under section 2195(a)(2) of this title" for "which the Corporation is authorized to issue under this subsection".

Subsec. (f)(1). Pub. L. 97-65, § 4(b)(2), struck out provisions under which the Corporation was prohibited from making or carrying out any association or risk-sharing agreement for the direct underwriting of insurance by the Corporation with others, other than on an individual basis where such direct underwriting facilitated the purposes of the Corporation as set forth in section 2191 of this title.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be "(5)".

Subsec. (f)(4). Pub. L. 97-65, §4(b)(3), struck out provisions which had placed a \$600,000,000 limit in any one year on the amount of reinsurance which the Corporation may issue and which had directed the Corporation to endeavor to increase to the maximum extent possible the specified portions of liability, whether first loss or otherwise, which a reinsured party must retain for his own account.

1978—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 95-268, §3(1), struck out provisions relating to limitations on maximum share of liabilities assumed under par. (1) of this subsection.

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 95-268, §3(2), substituted “maximum contingent liability” for “total face amount”.

Subsec. (a)(4) to (7). Pub. L. 95-268, §3(3), struck out pars. (4) to (7) which set forth requirements for participation by private insurance companies, multilateral organizations, or others in insurance programs, and limitations respecting participation by the Corporation as insurer under contracts of insurance.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 95-268, §3(2), substituted “maximum contingent liability” for “total face amount”.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 95-268, §3(4), (5), inserted provisions setting forth requirements respecting United States small businesses or cooperatives, and substituted provisions relating to aggregate amount of loans for mining or other extraction of ores or other nonfuel minerals, for provisions prohibiting loans for mining or other extraction of ores or other minerals.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 95-268, §3(6), substituted provisions setting forth exception for financing surveys relating to oil and gas and limitation on amount of expenditures for surveys relating to nonfuel minerals, for provisions setting forth proviso relating to surveys for mining of any deposit of ore, oil, gas, or other mineral.

Subsec. (f)(1). Pub. L. 95-268, §3(7), inserted provisions setting forth exceptions for agreements and contracts.

1974—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 93-390, §2(2)(B), inserted “and institutions” after “multilateral organizations” and provisions relating to the maximum share of liabilities assumed under par. (1)(A) to (C) of this subsection.

Subsec. (a)(4) to (7). Pub. L. 93-390, §2(2)(C), added pars. (4) to (7).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 93-390, §2(2)(D), added subsec. (f).

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

Functions vested by law (including reorganization plan) in Bureau of the Budget or Director of Bureau of the Budget transferred to President of the United States by section 101 of 1970 Reorg. Plan No. 2, eff. July 1, 1970, 35 F.R. 7959, 84 Stat. 2085, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees. Section 102 of 1970 Reorg. Plan No. 2 redesignated Bureau of the Budget as Office of Management and Budget.

#### APPROPRIATION OF MONEYS IN ADVANCE AS REQUISITE TO PURCHASES, INVESTMENTS, OR OTHER ACQUISITIONS OF EQUITY BY FUND CREATED UNDER PILOT EQUITY FINANCE PROGRAM

Section 555 of Pub. L. 100-461 provided in part: “That purchases, investments or other acquisitions of equity by the fund created by section 104 of H.R. 5263 as hereby enacted [22 U.S.C. 2194(g)(5)] are limited to such amounts as may be provided in advance in appropriations Acts”, and further provided “That purchases, investments or other acquisitions of equity by the fund created by section 104 of S. 2757 as hereby enacted [22 U.S.C. 2194(g)(5)] are limited to such amounts as may be provided in advance in appropriations Acts”.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2194a, 2195, 2197, 2198, 2199, 2200, 2370 of this title.

#### § 2194a. Contract authority of Corporation; specific authorization in appropriation Acts required

The authority of the Overseas Private Investment Corporation to enter into contracts under section 2194(a) of this title shall be effective for any fiscal year beginning after September 30, 1981, only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in appropriation Acts.

(Pub. L. 97-65, §5(b)(2), Oct. 16, 1981, 95 Stat. 1023.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Overseas Private Investment Corporation Amendments of 1981, and not as part of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 which comprises this chapter.

#### § 2194b. Enhancing private political risk insurance industry

##### (a) Cooperative programs

In order to encourage greater availability of political risk insurance for eligible investors by enhancing the private political risk insurance industry in the United States, and to the extent consistent with this subpart, the Corporation shall undertake programs of cooperation with such industry, and in connection with such programs may engage in the following activities:

(1) Utilizing its statutory authorities, encourage the development of associations, pools, or consortia of United States private political risk insurers.

(2) Share insurance risks (through coinsurance, contingent insurance, or other means) in a manner that is conducive to the growth and development of the private political risk insurance industry in the United States.

(3) Notwithstanding section 2197(e) of this title, upon the expiration of insurance provided by the Corporation for an investment, enter into risk-sharing agreements with United States private political risk insurers to insure any such investment; except that, in cooperating in the offering of insurance under this paragraph, the Corporation shall not assume responsibility for more than 50 percent of the insurance being offered in each separate transaction.

##### (b) Advisory group

###### (1) Establishment and membership

The Corporation shall establish a group to advise the Corporation on the development and implementation of the cooperative programs under this section. The group shall be appointed by the Board and shall be composed of up to 12 members, including the following:

(A) Up to seven persons from the private political risk insurance industry, of whom no fewer than two shall represent private political risk insurers, one shall represent private political risk reinsurers, and one shall represent insurance or reinsurance brokerage firms.

(B) Up to four persons, other than persons described in subparagraph (A), who are purchasers of political risk insurance.

###### (2) Functions

The Corporation shall call upon members of the advisory group, either collectively or indi-

vidually, to advise it regarding the capability of the private political risk insurance industry to meet the political risk insurance needs of United States investors, and regarding the development of cooperative programs to enhance such capability.

**(3) Meetings**

The advisory group shall meet not later than September 30, 1989, and at least annually thereafter. The Corporation may from time to time convene meetings of selected members of the advisory group to address particular questions requiring their specialized knowledge.

**(4) Federal Advisory Committee Act**

The advisory group shall not be subject to the Federal Advisory Committee Act (5 U.S.C. App.).

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §234A, as added Pub. L. 99-204, §9(a), Dec. 23, 1985, 99 Stat. 1672; amended Pub. L. 100-461, title V, §555, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-36.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Federal Advisory Committee Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(4), is Pub. L. 92-463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 770, as amended, which is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

CODIFICATION

Amendment by Pub. L. 100-461 is based on section 105(a) of title I of H.R. 5263, One Hundredth Congress, as passed by the House of Representatives on Sept. 20, 1988, and section 105(a) of title I of S. 2757, One Hundredth Congress, as reported Sept. 7, 1988, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-461.

AMENDMENTS

1988—Pub. L. 100-461 amended section generally, substituting provisions relating to enhancing private political risk insurance industry for provisions which related to facultative reinsurance program.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2195, 2197, 2200, 2200a of this title.

**§ 2195. Issuing authority, direct investment authority and reserves**

**(a) Issuing authority**

**(1) Insurance**

The maximum contingent liability outstanding at any one time pursuant to insurance issued under section 2194(a) of this title shall not exceed in the aggregate \$13,500,000,000.

**(2) Financing**

(A) The maximum contingent liability outstanding at any one time pursuant to financing issued under subsections (b) and (c) of section 2194 of this title shall not exceed in the aggregate \$9,500,000,000.

(B) Subject to spending authority provided in appropriations Acts pursuant to section 661c(b) of title 2, the Corporation is authorized to transfer such sums as are necessary from its noncredit activities to pay for the subsidy cost of the investment guaranties and direct loan programs under subsections (b) and (c) of section 2194 of this title.

**(3) Termination of authority**

The authority of subsections (a) and (b) of section 2194 of this title shall continue until September 30, 1996.

**(b) Repealed. Pub. L. 102-549, title I, § 104(a)(3), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3652**

**(c) Insurance Reserve; Guaranty Reserve**

There shall be established in the Treasury of the United States an insurance and guaranty fund, which shall have separate accounts to be known as the Insurance Reserve and the Guaranty Reserve, which reserves shall be available for discharge of liabilities, as provided in subsection (d) of this section, until such time as all such liabilities have been discharged or have expired or until all such reserves have been expended in accordance with the provisions of this section. Such fund shall be funded by: (1) the funds heretofore available to discharge liabilities under predecessor guaranty authority (including housing guaranty authorities), less both the amount made available for housing guaranty programs pursuant to section 2183(b) of this title and the amount made available to the Corporation pursuant to subsection (e) of this section; and (2) such sums as shall be appropriated pursuant to subsection (f) of this section for such purpose. The allocation of such funds to each such reserve shall be determined by the Board after consultation with the Secretary of the Treasury. Additional amounts may thereafter be transferred to such reserves pursuant to section 2196 of this title.

**(d) Priority of funds used to discharge liabilities**

Any payments made to discharge liabilities under investment insurance or reinsurance issued under section 2194 of this title, under similar predecessor guaranty authority, or under section 2194b of this title shall be paid first out of the Insurance Reserve, as long as such reserve remains available, and thereafter out of funds made available pursuant to subsection (f) of this section. Any payments made to discharge liabilities under guaranties issued under section 2194(b) of this title or under similar predecessor guaranty authority shall be paid first out of the Guaranty Reserve as long as such reserve remains available, and thereafter out of funds made available pursuant to subsection (f) of this section.

**(e) Reserves from predecessor guaranty authority**

There is hereby authorized to be transferred to the Corporation at its call, for the purposes specified in section 2196 of this title, all fees and other revenues collected under predecessor guaranty authority from December 31, 1968, available as of the date of such transfer.

**(f) Authorization of appropriations; issuance, etc., of obligations by Corporation for purchase by Secretary of the Treasury**

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Corporation, to remain available until expended, such amounts as may be necessary from time to time to replenish or increase the insurance and guaranty fund, to discharge the liabilities under insurance, reinsurance, or guaranties issued by the Corporation or issued under predecessor guaranty authority, or to discharge obligations of the Corporation purchased by the Secretary of the Treasury pursuant to this subsection. However, no appropriations shall be made to

augment the Insurance Reserve until the amount of funds in the Insurance Reserve is less than \$25,000,000. Any appropriations to augment the Insurance Reserve shall then only be made either pursuant to specific authorization enacted after August 27, 1974, or to satisfy the full faith and credit provision of section 2197(c) of this title. In order to discharge liabilities under investment insurance or reinsurance, the Corporation is authorized to issue from time to time for purchase by the Secretary of the Treasury its notes, debentures, bonds, or other obligations; but the aggregate amount of such obligations outstanding at any one time shall not exceed \$100,000,000. Any such obligation shall be repaid to the Treasury within one year after the date of issue of such obligation. Any such obligation shall bear interest at a rate determined by the Secretary of the Treasury, taking into consideration the current average market yield on outstanding marketable obligations of the United States of comparable maturities during the month preceding the issuance of any obligation authorized by this subsection. The Secretary of the Treasury shall purchase any obligation of the Corporation issued under this subsection, and for such purchase he may use as a public debt transaction the proceeds of the sale of any securities issued under chapter 31 of title 31 after August 27, 1974. The purpose for which securities may be issued under such chapter shall include any such purchase.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 235, as added Pub. L. 91-175, pt. I, § 105, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 813; amended Pub. L. 93-189, § 6(1), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 717; Pub. L. 93-390, § 2(3), Aug. 27, 1974, 88 Stat. 766; Pub. L. 95-268, § 4, Apr. 24, 1978, 92 Stat. 214; Pub. L. 97-65, § 5(a), (b)(1), (c), Oct. 16, 1981, 95 Stat. 1022, 1023; Pub. L. 99-204, §§ 9(b)(1), 10, 17(b), Dec. 23, 1985, 99 Stat. 1673, 1676; Pub. L. 100-418, title II, § 2203(b), Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1328; Pub. L. 100-461, title V, § 555, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-36; Pub. L. 102-549, title I, § 104, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3652; Pub. L. 103-392, title I, §§ 101-104, Oct. 22, 1994, 108 Stat. 4098.)

#### CODIFICATION

Amendment by Pub. L. 100-461 is based on sections 106 and 107 of title I of H.R. 5263, One Hundredth Congress, as passed by the House of Representatives on Sept. 20, 1988, and sections 106 and 107 of title I of S. 2757, One Hundredth Congress, as reported Sept. 7, 1988, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-461.

In subsec. (f), "chapter 31 of title 31" and "such chapter" substituted for "the Second Liberty Bond Act" and "such Bond Act", respectively, on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, § 4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 103-392, § 101, substituted "\$13,500,000,000" for "\$9,000,000,000".

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 103-392, § 102, amended heading and text of par. (2). Prior to amendment, text read as follows:

"(A) The maximum contingent liability outstanding at any one time pursuant to guarantees issued under section 2194(b) of this title shall not exceed in the aggregate \$2,500,000,000.

"(B) Subject to spending authority provided in appropriations Acts, pursuant to section 661c(b) of title 2, the Corporation is authorized—

"(i) to transfer \$9,800,000, or such sums as are necessary, from its noncredit account revolving fund to pay for the subsidy cost of a program level for the loan and loan guarantee program under subsections (b) and (c) of section 2194 of this title of \$650,000,000 for fiscal year 1993; and

"(ii) to transfer such sums as are necessary from its noncredit account revolving fund to pay for the subsidy cost of a program level for the loan and loan guarantee program under subsections (b) and (c) of section 2194 of this title of \$850,000,000 for fiscal year 1994."

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 103-392, § 103, substituted "1996" for "1994".

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 103-392, § 104, struck out heading and text of subsec. (g). Text read as follows: "Subject to spending authority provided in appropriations Acts, the Corporation is authorized to draw from its noncredit account revolving fund for the administrative costs of its direct loan and loan guarantee programs—

"(1) \$8,128,000 for fiscal year 1993; and

"(2) \$11,000,000 for fiscal year 1994."

1992—Pub. L. 102-549, § 104(a)(1), amended section catchline.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 102-549, § 104(a)(2), amended subsec. (a) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (a) read as follows:

"(1) The maximum contingent liability outstanding at any one time pursuant to insurance issued under section 2194(a) of this title shall not exceed \$7,500,000,000.

"(2) The maximum contingent liability outstanding at any one time pursuant to guaranties issued under section 2194(b) of this title shall not exceed in the aggregate \$1,500,000,000. Commitments to guarantee loans are authorized for any fiscal year only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in appropriation Acts.

"(3) The Corporation shall not make any commitment to issue any guaranty which would result in a reserve less than 25 per centum of the maximum contingent liability then outstanding against guaranties issued or commitments made pursuant to section 2194(b) of this title or similar predecessor guaranty authority.

"(4) The Congress, in considering the budget programs transmitted by the President for the Corporation, pursuant to section 9104 of title 31, may limit the obligations and contingent liabilities to be undertaken under section 2194(a) and (b) of this title as well as the use of funds for operating and administrative expenses.

"(5) Subject to paragraphs (2), (3), and (4), the Corporation shall issue guaranties under section 2194(b) of this title having an aggregate contingent liability with respect to principal of not less than \$200,000,000 in each fiscal year, to the extent that there are eligible projects which meet the Corporation's criteria for such guaranties.

"(6) The authority of section 2194(a) and (b) of this title shall continue until September 30, 1992."

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 102-549, § 104(a)(3), struck out subsec. (b) which provided for establishment of a revolving fund, known as the Direct Investment Fund, to be held by the Corporation.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 102-549, § 104(b), added subsec. (g). 1988—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 100-461 substituted "\$1,500,000,000" for "\$1,000,000,000".

Pub. L. 100-418, § 2203(b)(1)(A), substituted "\$1,000,000,000" for "\$750,000,000".

Subsec. (a)(5). Pub. L. 100-418, § 2203(b)(1)(C), added par. (5). Former par. (5) redesignated (6).

Subsec. (a)(6). Pub. L. 100-461 substituted "1992" for "1988".

Pub. L. 100-418, § 2203(b)(1)(B), redesignated par. (5) as (6).

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 100-418, § 2203(b)(2), in cl. (2), substituted "1981." for "1981.", and in closing provisions substituted "The Corporation shall make loans under section 2194(c) of this title in an aggregate amount of not less than \$25,000,000 in each fiscal year, to the extent that there are eligible projects which meet the

Corporation's criteria for such loans" for "and the Corporation shall use the funds so transferred to make loans under section 2194(c) of this title to the extent that there are eligible projects which meet the Corporation's criteria for funding".

1985—Subsec. (a)(5). Pub. L. 99-204, § 10, substituted "1988" for "1985".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 99-204, § 17(b)(1), substituted references to subssecs. (d), (e), and (f) of this section for references to sections 2195(d), 2194(e), and 2195(f), respectively, of this title.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 99-204, § 9(b)(1), substituted "under similar predecessor guaranty authority, or under section 2194b of this title" for "or under similar predecessor guaranty authority".

Pub. L. 99-204, § 17(b)(2), substituted reference to subsec. (f) of this section for reference to section 2195(f) of this title wherever appearing.

1981—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 97-65, § 5(a)(1), substituted provisions that commitments to guarantee loans are authorized for any fiscal year only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in appropriation Acts for provisions that the Corporation not make any commitment to issue any guaranty which would result in a fractional reserve less than 25 per centum of the maximum contingent liability then outstanding against guaranties issued or commitments made pursuant to section 2194(b) of this title or similar predecessor guaranty authority. See par. (3).

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 97-65, § 5(a)(2), added par. (3) which consisted of provisions formerly contained in par. (2). Former par. (3) redesignated (4).

Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 97-65, § 5(a)(2)(A), redesignated par. (3) as (4). Former par. (4) redesignated (5).

Subsec. (a)(5). Pub. L. 97-65, § 5(a)(2)(A), (b)(1), redesignated former par. (4) as (5) and substituted "September 30, 1985" for "September 30, 1981".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 97-65, § 5(c), inserted provisions relating to the transfer to the Fund of certain moneys in fiscal year 1982 and in each fiscal year thereafter and the making of loans from those moneys under section 2194(c) of this title to the extent that there are eligible projects which meet the Corporation's criteria for funding.

1978—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 95-268, § 4(1), struck out limitation on guaranties by credit unions of not to exceed \$1,250,000.

Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 95-268, § 4(2), substituted "September 30, 1981" for "December 31, 1977".

1974—Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 93-390, § 2(3)(A), substituted "December 31, 1977" for "December 31, 1974".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 93-390, § 2(3)(B), substituted "insurance or reinsurance issued under section 2194 of this title" for "insurance issued under section 2194(a) of this title".

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 93-390, § 2(3)(C), inserted provisions authorizing appropriations to discharge liabilities under reinsurance or obligations of the Corporation purchased by the Secretary of the Treasury, provisions relating to appropriations to augment the Insurance Reserve, and provisions relating to the issuance, sale, etc., of notes, debentures, bonds, or other obligations by the Corporation for purchase by the Secretary of the Treasury.

1973—Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 93-189 substituted "December 31, 1974" for "June 30, 1974".

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2194, 2196 of this title.

### § 2196. Income and revenues

In order to carry out the purposes of the Corporation, all revenues and income transferred to or earned by the Corporation, from whatever source derived, shall be held by the Corporation and shall be available to carry out its purposes, including without limitation—

(a) payment of all expenses of the Corporation, including investment promotion expenses;

(b) transfers and additions to the insurance or guaranty reserves, the Direct Investment Fund established pursuant to section 2195 of this title, and such other funds or reserves as the Corporation may establish, at such time and in such amounts as the Board may determine; and

(c) payment of dividends, on capital stock, which shall consist of and be paid from net earnings of the Corporation after payments, transfers, and additions under subsections (a) and (b) hereof.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 236, as added Pub. L. 91-175, pt. I, § 105, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 814.)

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2182a, 2195, 2198 of this title.

### § 2197. General provisions relating to insurance, guaranty, financing, and reinsurance programs

#### (a) Scope

Insurance, guaranties, and reinsurance issued under this subpart shall cover investment made in connection with projects in any less developed friendly country or area with the government of which the President of the United States has agreed to institute a program for insurance, guaranties, or reinsurance.

#### (b) Protection of interest

The Corporation shall determine that suitable arrangements exist for protecting the interest of the Corporation in connection with any insurance, guaranty or reinsurance issued under this subpart, including arrangements concerning ownership, use, and disposition of the currency, credits, assets, or investments on account of which payment under such insurance, guaranty or reinsurance is to be made, and any right, title, claim, or cause of action existing in connection therewith.

#### (c) Guaranties as obligations backed by full faith and credit of United States

All guaranties issued prior to July 1, 1956, all guaranties issued under sections 1872(b)<sup>1</sup> and 1933(b)<sup>1</sup> of this title, all guaranties heretofore issued pursuant to prior guaranty authorities repealed by the Foreign Assistance Act of 1969, and all insurance, reinsurance and guaranties issued pursuant to this subpart shall constitute obligations, in accordance with the terms of such insurance, reinsurance or guaranties, of the United States of America and the full faith and credit of the United States of America is hereby pledged for the full payment and performance of such obligations.

#### (d) Fees

##### (1) In general

Fees may be charged for providing insurance, reinsurance, financing, and other services under this subpart in amounts to be determined by the Corporation. In the event fees

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

charged for insurance, reinsurance, financing, or other services are reduced, fees to be paid under existing contracts for the same type of insurance, reinsurance, financing, or services and for similar guarantees issued under predecessor guaranty authority may be reduced.

**(2) Credit transaction costs**

Project-specific transaction costs incurred by the Corporation relating to loan obligations or loan guaranty commitments covered by the provisions of the Federal Credit Reform Act of 1990 [2 U.S.C. 661 et seq.], including the costs of project-related travel and expenses for legal representation provided by persons outside the Corporation and other similar expenses which are charged to the borrower, shall be paid out of the appropriate finance account established pursuant to section 505(b) of such Act [2 U.S.C. 661d(b)].

**(3) Noncredit transaction costs**

Fees paid for the project-specific transaction costs and other direct costs associated with services provided to specific investors or potential investors pursuant to section 2194 of this title (other than those covered in paragraph (2)), including financing, insurance, reinsurance, missions, seminars, conferences, and other preinvestment services, shall be available for obligation for the purposes for which they were collected, notwithstanding any other provision of law.

**(e) Maximum term of obligation**

No insurance, guaranty, or reinsurance of any equity investment shall extend beyond twenty years from the date of issuance.

**(f) Limitations on amounts**

Compensation for insurance, reinsurance, or guaranties issued under this subpart shall not exceed the dollar value, as of the date of the investment, of the investment made in the project with the approval of the Corporation plus interest, earnings, or profits actually accrued on such investment to the extent provided by such insurance, reinsurance, or guaranty, except that the Corporation may provide that (1) appropriate adjustments in the insured dollar value be made to reflect the replacement cost of project assets, (2) compensation for a claim of loss under insurance of an equity investment may be computed on the basis of the net book value attributable to such equity investment on the date of loss, and (3) compensation for loss due to business interruption may be computed on a basis to be determined by the Corporation which reflects amounts lost. Notwithstanding the preceding sentence, the Corporation shall limit the amount of direct insurance and reinsurance issued by it under section 2194 or 2194b of this title so that risk of loss as to at least 10 per centum of the total investment of the insured and its affiliates in the project is borne by the insured and such affiliates, except that such limitation shall not apply to direct insurance or reinsurance of loans by banks or other financial institutions to unrelated parties.

**(g) Fraud or misrepresentation**

No payment may be made under any guaranty, insurance, or reinsurance issued pursuant to

this subpart for any loss arising out of fraud or misrepresentation for which the party seeking payment is responsible.

**(h) Limits of obligation**

Insurance, guaranties, or reinsurance of a loan or equity investment of an eligible investor in a foreign bank, finance company, or other credit institution shall extend only to such loan or equity investment and not to any individual loan or equity investment made by such foreign bank, finance company, or other credit institution.

**(i) Claims settlement**

Claims arising as a result of insurance, reinsurance, or guaranty operations under this subpart or under predecessor guaranty authority may be settled, and disputes arising as a result thereof may be arbitrated with the consent of the parties, on such terms and conditions as the Corporation may determine. Payment made pursuant to any such settlement, or as a result of an arbitration award, shall be final and conclusive notwithstanding any other provision of law.

**(j) Presumption of compliance**

Each guaranty contract executed by such officer or officers as may be designated by the Board shall be conclusively presumed to be issued in compliance with the requirements of this chapter.

**(k) Balance of payments**

In making a determination to issue insurance, guaranties, or reinsurance under this subpart, the Corporation shall consider the possible adverse effect of the dollar investment under such insurance, guaranty, or reinsurance upon the balance of payments of the United States.

**(l) Convictions under Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977; prohibition on payments for losses resulting from unlawful activities; suspension from eligibility of receipt of financial support**

(1) No payment may be made under any insurance or reinsurance which is issued under this subpart on or after April 24, 1978, for any loss occurring with respect to a project, if the preponderant cause of such loss was an act by the investor seeking payment under this subpart, by a person possessing majority ownership and control of the investor at the time of the act, or by any agent of such investor or controlling person, and a court of the United States has entered a final judgment that such act constituted a violation under the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977.

(2) Not later than 120 days after April 24, 1978, the Corporation shall adopt regulations setting forth appropriate conditions under which any person convicted under the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977 for an offense related to a project insured or otherwise supported by the Corporation shall be suspended, for a period of not more than five years, from eligibility to receive any insurance, reinsurance, guaranty, loan, or other financial support authorized by this subpart.

**(m) Notification of countries of environmental restrictions on certain activities**

(1) Before finally providing insurance, reinsurance, guaranties, or financing under this sub-



part for any environmentally sensitive investment in connection with a project in a country, the Corporation shall notify appropriate government officials of that country of—

(A) all guidelines and other standards adopted by the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development and any other international organization relating to the public health or safety or the environment which are applicable to the project; and

(B) to the maximum extent practicable, any restriction under any law of the United States relating to public health or safety or the environment that would apply to the project if the project were undertaken in the United States.

The notification under the preceding sentence shall include a summary of the guidelines, standards, and restrictions referred to in subparagraphs (A) and (B), and may include any environmental impact statement, assessment, review, or study prepared with respect to the investment pursuant to section 2199(g) of this title.

(2) Before finally providing insurance, reinsurance, guarantees, or financing for any investment subject to paragraph (1), the Corporation shall take into account any comments it receives on the project involved.

(3) On or before September 30, 1986, the Corporation shall notify appropriate government officials of a country of the guidelines, standards, and legal restrictions described in paragraph (1) that apply to any project in that country—

(A) which the Corporation identifies as potentially posing major hazards to public health and safety or the environment; and

(B) for which the Corporation provided insurance, reinsurance, guarantees, or financing under this subpart before December 23, 1985, and which is in the Corporation's portfolio on that date.

#### (n) Penalties for fraud

Whoever knowingly makes any false statement or report, or willfully overvalues any land, property, or security, for the purpose of influencing in any way the action of the Corporation with respect to any insurance, reinsurance, guarantee, loan, equity investment, or other activity of the Corporation under section 2194 of this title or any change or extension of any such insurance, reinsurance, guarantee, loan, equity investment, or activity, by renewal, deferment of action or otherwise, or the acceptance, release, or substitution of security therefor, shall be fined not more than \$1,000,000 or imprisoned not more than 30 years, or both.

#### (o) Use of local currencies

Direct loans or investments made in order to preserve the value of funds received in inconvertible foreign currency by the Corporation as a result of activities conducted pursuant to section 2194(a) of this title shall not be considered in determining whether the Corporation has made or has outstanding loans or investments to the extent of any limitation on obligations and equity investment imposed by or pursuant to this subpart. The provisions of section 504(b) of the Federal Credit Reform Act of 1990 [2 U.S.C. 661c(b)] shall not apply to direct loan obliga-

tions made with funds described in this subsection.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §237, as added Pub. L. 91-175, pt. I, §105, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 814; amended Pub. L. 93-390, §2(4), Aug. 27, 1974, 88 Stat. 767; Pub. L. 95-268, §§5, 6, Apr. 24, 1978, 92 Stat. 215; Pub. L. 97-65, §6, Oct. 16, 1981, 95 Stat. 1023; Pub. L. 99-204, §§4(b), 6(b), 9(b)(2), Dec. 23, 1985, 99 Stat. 1670, 1671, 1673; Pub. L. 100-461, title V, §555, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-36; Pub. L. 102-549, title I, §105, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3652.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Sections 1872(b) and 1933(b) of this title, referred to in subsec. (c), were repealed by Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §642(a)(2), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460. Section 642(b) of Pub. L. 87-195 provided that references to provisions of law repealed by subsec. (a) were to be deemed references to the appropriate provisions of Pub. L. 87-195. See sections 2163 and 2351 of this title.

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1969, referred to in subsec. (c), is Pub. L. 91-175, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 805, as amended. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables. The guaranty authorities repealed by the 1969 Act were the guaranty authorities contained in sections 2181 to 2184 prior to the general reorganization of subpart III by the 1969 Act.

The Federal Credit Reform Act of 1990, referred to in subsec. (d)(2), is title V of Pub. L. 93-344, as added by Pub. L. 101-508, title XIII, §13201(a), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1388-609, which is classified generally to subchapter III (§661 et seq.) of chapter 17A of Title 2, The Congress. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 621 of Title 2 and Tables.

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (j), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

The Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977, referred to in subsec. (l), is title I of Pub. L. 95-213, Dec. 19, 1977, 91 Stat. 1494, as amended, which enacted sections 78dd-1 and 78dd-2 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, and amended sections 78m and 78ff of Title 15. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1977 Amendment note set out under section 78a of Title 15 and Tables.

#### CODIFICATION

Amendment by Pub. L. 100-461 is based on section 110(c) of title I of H.R. 5263, One Hundredth Congress, as passed by the House of Representatives on Sept. 20, 1988, and section 110(c) of title I of S. 2757, One Hundredth Congress, as reported Sept. 7, 1988, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-461.

#### AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 102-549, §105(a), amended subsec. (d) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (d) read as follows: "Fees shall be charged for insurance, guaranty, and reinsurance coverage in amounts to be determined by the Corporation. In the event fees charged for investment insurance, guaranties, or reinsurance are reduced, fees to be paid under existing contracts for the same type of insurance, guaranties, or reinsurance and for similar guaranties issued under predecessor guaranty authority may be reduced."

Subsecs. (n), (o). Pub. L. 102-549, §105(b), (c), added subsecs. (n) and (o).

1988—Pub. L. 100-461 inserted reference to financing in section catchline.

1985—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 99-204, §6(b), added cl. (3).

Pub. L. 99-204, §9(b)(2), inserted "or 2194b" after "section 2194".

Subsec. (m). Pub. L. 99-204, §4(b), added subsec. (m).  
 1981—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 97-65 substituted “Compensation for insurance, reinsurance, or guaranties issued under this subpart shall not exceed the dollar value, as of the date of the investment, of the investment made in the project with the approval of the Corporation plus interest, earnings, or profits actually accrued on such investment to the extent provided by such insurance, reinsurance, or guaranty, except that the Corporation may provide that (1) appropriate adjustments in the insured dollar value be made to reflect the replacement cost of project assets, and (2) compensation for a claim of loss under insurance of an equity investment may be computed on the basis of the net book value attributable to such equity investment on the date of loss” for “No insurance, reinsurance, or guaranty issued under this subpart shall exceed the dollar value, as of the date of the investment, of the investment made in the project with the approval of the Corporation plus interest, earnings or profits actually accrued on said investment to the extent provided by such insurance, reinsurance, or guaranty, except that the Corporation may provide for appropriate adjustments in the insured dollar value to reflect the replacement cost of project assets”, and struck out provision that the preceding sentence not apply to the extent not permitted by State law.

1978—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 95-268, §5, inserted provisions excepting from dollar amounts adjustments in the insured dollar amounts to reflect replacement cost of project assets, and provisions excepting from limitations loans by banks or other financial institutions to unrelated parties.

Subsec. (l). Pub. L. 95-268, §6, added subsec. (l).

1974—Subsecs. (a) to (c). Pub. L. 93-390, §2(4)(A)-(C), inserted references to reinsurance wherever appearing.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 93-390, §2(4)(D), inserted provisions authorizing fees to be charged for reinsurance and reduction of reinsurance fees under existing contracts in the event fees charged for reinsurance are reduced.

Subsec. (e). Pub. 93-390, §2(4)(E), inserted reference to reinsurance.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 93-390, §2(4)(F), (G), inserted “reinsurance” before “or guaranty” wherever appearing and provisions relating to limitations on the amount of direct insurance or reinsurance.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 93-390, §2(4)(H), inserted applicability to insurance and reinsurance.

Subsecs. (h) to (k). Pub. L. 93-390, §2(4)(I)-(K), inserted reference to reinsurance wherever appearing.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by sections 1-102(a)(1), (e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2194b, 2195, 2199 of this title.

#### § 2198. Definitions

As used in this subpart—

(a) the term “investment” includes any contribution or commitment of funds, commodities, services, patents, processes, or techniques, in the form of (1) a loan or loans to an approved project, (2) the purchase of a share of ownership in any such project, (3) participation in royalties, earnings, or profits of any such project, and (4) the furnishing of commodities or services pursuant to a lease or other contract;

(b) the term “expropriation” includes, but is not limited to, any abrogation, repudiation, or

impairment by a foreign government of its own contract with an investor with respect to a project, where such abrogation, repudiation, or impairment is not caused by the investor's own fault or misconduct, and materially adversely affects the continued operation of the project;

(c) the term “eligible investor” means: (1) United States citizens; (2) corporations, partnerships, or other associations including non-profit associations, created under the laws of the United States, any State or territory thereof, or the District of Columbia, and substantially beneficially owned by United States citizens; and (3) foreign corporations, partnerships, or other associations wholly owned by one or more such United States citizens, corporations, partnerships, or other associations: *Provided, however*, That the eligibility of such foreign corporation shall be determined without regard to any shares, in aggregate less than 5 per centum of the total of issued and subscribed share capital, held by other than the United States owners: *Provided further*, That in the case of any loan investment a final determination of eligibility may be made at the time the insurance or guaranty is issued; in all other cases, the investor must be eligible at the time a claim arises as well as at the time the insurance or guaranty is issued;

(d) the term “noncredit account revolving fund” means the account in which funds under section 2196 of this title and all funds from noncredit activities are held; and<sup>1</sup>

(e) the term “noncredit activities” means all activities of the Corporation other than its loan guarantee program under section 2194(b) of this title and its direct loan program under section 2194(c) of this title;<sup>2</sup>

(f) the term “predecessor guaranty authority” means prior guaranty authorities (other than housing guaranty authorities) repealed by the Foreign Assistance Act of 1969, and sections 1509(b)(3), 1872(b), and 1933(b)<sup>3</sup> of this title (exclusive of authority relating to informational media guaranties).

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §238, as added Pub. L. 91-175, pt. I, §105, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 815; amended Pub. L. 92-226, pt. I, §104(a), Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 22; Pub. L. 97-65, §7, Oct. 16, 1981, 95 Stat. 1024; Pub. L. 99-204, §17(a), Dec. 23, 1985, 99 Stat. 1676; Pub. L. 102-549, title I, §106, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3653.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1969, referred to in subsec. (f), is Pub. L. 91-175, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 805, as amended. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1969 Amendment note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables. The guaranty authorities repealed by the 1969 Act were the guaranty authorities contained in sections 2181 to 2184 prior to the general reorganization of subpart III by the 1969 Act.

Section 1509(b)(3) of this title, referred to in subsec. (f), was repealed by act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title V, §542(a)(4), 68 Stat. 861.

Sections 1872(b) and 1933(b) of this title, referred to in subsec. (f), were repealed by Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III,

<sup>1</sup> So in original. The word “and” probably should not appear.

<sup>2</sup> So in original. Probably should be followed by “and”.

<sup>3</sup> See References in Text note below.

§642(a)(2), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460. Section 642(b) of Pub. L. 87-195 provided that references to provisions of law repealed by subsec. (a) were to be deemed references to the appropriate provisions of Pub. L. 87-195. See sections 2163 and 2351 of this title.

#### AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsecs. (c) to (f). Pub. L. 102-549 struck out “and” at end of subsec. (c), added subsecs. (d) and (e), and redesignated former subsec. (d) as (f).

1985—Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 99-204 inserted reference to the District of Columbia.

1981—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 97-65 substituted “contribution or commitment of funds” for “contribution of funds”.

1972—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 92-226 struck out “required by law to be” after “share capital,” in first proviso.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2182, 2186 of this title.

### § 2199. General provisions and powers

#### (a) Place of residence

The Corporation shall have its principal office in the District of Columbia and shall be deemed, for purposes of venue in civil actions, to be a resident thereof.

#### (b) Transfer of prior obligations, etc.; administration prior to transfer

The President shall transfer to the Corporation, at such time as he may determine, all obligations, assets and related rights and responsibilities arising out of, or related to, predecessor programs and authorities similar to those provided for in section 2194(a), (b), and (d) of this title. Until such transfer, the agency heretofore responsible for such predecessor programs shall continue to administer such assets and obligations, and such programs and activities authorized under this subpart as may be determined by the President.

#### (c) Audits of the Corporation

(1) The Corporation shall be subject to the applicable provisions of chapter 91 of title 31, except as otherwise provided in this subpart.

(2) An independent certified public accountant shall perform a financial and compliance audit of the financial statements of the Corporation at least once every three years, in accordance with generally accepted Government auditing standards for a financial and compliance audit, as issued by the Comptroller General. The independent certified public accountant shall report the results of such audit to the Board. The financial statements of the Corporation shall be presented in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. These financial statements and the report of the accountant shall be included in a report which contains, to the extent applicable, the information identified in section 9106 of title 31, and which the Corporation shall submit to the Congress not later than six and one-half months after the end of the last fiscal year covered by the audit. The General Accounting Office may review the audit conducted by the accountant and the report to the Congress in the manner and at such times as the General Accounting Office considers necessary.

(3) In lieu of the financial and compliance audit required by paragraph (2), the General Ac-

counting Office shall, if the Office considers it necessary or upon the request of the Congress, audit the financial statements of the Corporation in the manner provided in paragraph (2). The Corporation shall reimburse the General Accounting Office for the full cost of any audit conducted under this paragraph.

(4) All books, accounts, financial records, reports, files, workpapers, and property belonging to or in use by the Corporation and the accountant who conducts the audit under paragraph (2), which are necessary for purposes of this subsection, shall be made available to the representatives of the General Accounting Office.

#### (d) Powers of Corporation

To carry out the purposes of this subpart, the Corporation is authorized to adopt and use a corporate seal, which shall be judicially noticed; to sue and be sued in its corporate name; to adopt, amend, and repeal bylaws governing the conduct of its business and the performance of the powers and duties granted to or imposed upon it by law; to acquire, hold or dispose of, upon such terms and conditions as the Corporation may determine, any property, real, personal, or mixed, tangible or intangible, or any interest therein; to invest funds derived from fees and other revenues in obligations of the United States and to use the proceeds therefrom, including earnings and profits, as it shall deem appropriate; to indemnify directors, officers, employees and agents of the Corporation for liabilities and expenses incurred in connection with their Corporation activities; notwithstanding any other provision of law, to represent itself or to contract for representation in all legal and arbitral proceedings; to enter into limited-term contracts with nationals of the United States for personal services to carry out activities in the United States and abroad under subsections (d) and (e) of section 2194 of this title; to purchase, discount, rediscount, sell, and negotiate, with or without its endorsement or guaranty, and guarantee notes, participation certificates, and other evidence of indebtedness (provided that the Corporation shall not issue its own securities, except participation certificates for the purpose of carrying out section 2191(c) or participation certificates as evidence of indebtedness held by the Corporation in connection with settlement of claims under section 2197(i) of this title); to make and carry out such contracts and agreements as are necessary and advisable in the conduct of its business; to exercise any priority of the Government of the United States in collecting debts from bankrupt, insolvent, or decedents' estates; to determine the character of and the necessity for its obligations and expenditures, and the manner in which they shall be incurred, allowed, and paid, subject to provisions of law specifically applicable to Government corporations; to collect or compromise any obligations assigned to or held by the Corporation, including any legal or equitable rights accruing to the Corporation; and to take such actions as may be necessary or appropriate to carry out the powers herein or hereafter specifically conferred upon it.

**(e) Reviews, investigations, and inspections by Inspector General of Agency for International Development**

The Inspector General of the Agency for International Development (1) may conduct reviews, investigations, and inspections of all phases of the Corporation's operations and activities and (2) shall conduct all security activities of the Corporation relating to personnel and the control of classified material. With respect to his responsibilities under this subsection, the Inspector General shall report to the Board. The agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter shall be reimbursed by the Corporation for all expenses incurred by the Inspector General in connection with his responsibilities under this subsection.

**(f) Programs for Yugoslavia, Poland, Hungary, Romania and the People's Republic of China; national interest**

Except for the provisions of this subpart, no other provision of this chapter or any other law shall be construed to prohibit the operation in Yugoslavia, Poland, Hungary, or any other East European country, or the People's Republic of China of the programs authorized by this subpart, if the President determines that the operation of such program in such country is important to the national interest.

**(g) Environmental impact assessments**

The requirements of section 2151p(c) of this title relating to environmental impact statements and environmental assessments shall apply to any investment which the Corporation insures, reinsures, guarantees, or finances under this subpart in connection with a project in a country.

**(h) Preparation, maintenance, and contents of development impact profile for investment projects; development of criteria for evaluating projects**

In order to carry out the policy set forth in paragraph (1) of the second undesignated paragraph of section 2191 of this title, the Corporation shall prepare and maintain for each investment project it insures, finances, or reinsures, a development impact profile consisting of data appropriate to measure the projected and actual effects of such project on development. Criteria for evaluating projects shall be developed in consultation with the Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency.

**(i) Observance of and respect for human rights and fundamental freedoms as considerations for conduct of assistance programs, etc.; provisions applicable for determinations; exceptions**

The Corporation shall take into account in the conduct of its programs in a country, in consultation with the Secretary of State, all available information about observance of and respect for human rights and fundamental freedoms in such country and the effect the operation of such programs will have on human rights and fundamental freedoms in such country. The provisions of section 2151n of this title shall apply to any insurance, reinsurance, guar-

anty, or loan issued by the Corporation for projects in a country, except that in addition to the exception (with respect to benefiting needy people) set forth in subsection (a) of such section, the Corporation may support a project if the national security interest so requires.

**(j) Exemption from taxation**

The Corporation, including its franchise, capital, reserves, surplus, advances, intangible property, and income, shall be exempt from all taxation at any time imposed by the United States, by any territory, dependency, or possession of the United States, or by any State, the District of Columbia, or any county, municipality, or local taxing authority.

**(k) Publication of policy guidelines**

The Corporation shall publish, and make available to applicants for insurance, reinsurance, guarantees, financing, or other assistance made available by the Corporation under this subpart, the policy guidelines of the Corporation relating to its programs.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §239, as added Pub. L. 91-175, pt. I, §105, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 816; amended Pub. L. 92-226, pt. I, §104(b), Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 22; Pub. L. 92-310, title II, §227(d), June 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 207; Pub. L. 93-390, §2(5), Aug. 27, 1974, 88 Stat. 768; Pub. L. 95-268, §§ 7, 8, Apr. 24, 1978, 92 Stat. 215, 216; Pub. L. 95-598, title III, §318, Nov. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 2678; 1979 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §6(a)(1), eff. Oct. 1, 1979, 44 F.R. 41166, 93 Stat. 1379; Pub. L. 96-327, Aug. 8, 1980, 94 Stat. 1026; Pub. L. 97-65, §8, Oct. 16, 1981, 95 Stat. 1024; Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, §705(b)(2), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1545; Pub. L. 99-204, §§4(c), 11-13, Dec. 23, 1985, 99 Stat. 1670, 1673, 1674; Pub. L. 100-461, title V, §555, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-36; Pub. L. 101-167, title V, §597(a), Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1257; Pub. L. 101-179, title III, §302(a), Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1311; Pub. L. 101-513, title V, §576(a), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2044; Pub. L. 102-549, title I, §107, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3654.)

REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

CODIFICATION

Amendment by Pub. L. 100-461 is based on sections 108 and 110(a)(2) of title I of H.R. 5263, One Hundredth Congress, as passed by the House of Representatives on Sept. 20, 1988, and sections 108 and 110(a)(2) of title I of S. 2757, One Hundredth Congress, as reported Sept. 7, 1988, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-461.

AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 102-549, after "legal and arbitral proceedings;" inserted "to enter into limited-term contracts with nationals of the United States for personal services to carry out activities in the United States and abroad under subsections (d) and (e) of section 2194 of this title;"

1990—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 101-513 inserted "or any other East European country," after "Hungary,"

1989—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 101-179 inserted "Poland, Hungary," after "Yugoslavia".

Pub. L. 101-167, which directed amendment of subsec. (f) by inserting “Poland, Hungary,” after “Yugoslavia,” did not take effect due to similar amendment by section 302(a) of Pub. L. 101-179. See amendment note above and section 302(c) of Pub. L. 101-179, set out below.

1988—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 100-461, which directed that “, Romania,” be struck out, was executed by striking out “, Romania” after “Yugoslavia”, as the probable intent of Congress, because no comma followed “Romania” in original.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 100-461 made technical amendment to reference to section 2151p(c) of this title to reflect renumbering of corresponding section of original act.

1985—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 99-204, §11, amended subsec. (c) generally, designating existing provisions as par. (1), substituting “chapter 91 of title 31” for “the Government Corporation Control Act”, and adding pars. (2) to (4).

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 99-204, §4(c), amended subsec. (g) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (g) read as follows: “Within six months after August 27, 1974, the Corporation shall develop and implement specific criteria intended to minimize the potential environmental implications of projects undertaken by investors abroad in accordance with any of the programs authorized by this subpart.”

Subsecs. (j), (k). Pub. L. 99-204, §§12, 13, added subsecs. (j) and (k).

1981—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 97-65, §8(1), inserted provision authorizing the Corporation to collect or compromise any obligations assigned to or held by the Corporation, including any legal or equitable rights accruing to the Corporation.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 97-65, §8(2)(A), and Pub. L. 97-113, §705(b)(2), made identical amendments by substituting references to Inspector General for references to Auditor-General wherever appearing.

Pub. L. 97-65, §8(2)(B), substituted language referring to Inspector General’s authority to reviews, investigate, and conduct inspections of all phases of the Corporation’s operations and activities for provisions which had formerly placed upon that official the responsibility for planning and directing the execution of audits, reviews, investigations, and inspections of all phases of the Corporation’s operations and activities.

Subsecs. (f) to (l). Pub. L. 97-65, §8(3), redesignated subsecs. (g), (h), (i), and (l) as (f), (g), (h), and (i), respectively. Former subsec. (f) providing for the establishment of an Advisory Council, (j) providing limits for projects involving the exploration for or the mining of or other extraction of copper, and (k) prohibiting the granting of insurance, reinsurance, guaranty, financing, or other financial support for projects to establish or expand production or processing of palm oil, sugar, or citrus crops for export, were struck out.

1980—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 96-327 substituted “Yugoslavia, Romania or the People’s Republic of China” for “Yugoslavia or Romania”.

1978—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 95-268, §7(1), struck out provisions relating to the cessation on Dec. 31, 1979, of programs operated by the Corporation under sections 2194(b) to (e) and 2200 of this title and transfer by the President of such programs and all obligations, etc., arising out of such programs to other agencies of the United States.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 95-598 substituted “any priority” for “the priority”.

Pub. L. 95-268, §7(2), inserted provision relating to participation certificates as evidence of indebtedness held by Corporation for settlement of claims under section 2197(i) of this title.

Subsecs. (i) to (k). Pub. L. 95-268, §7(3), added subsecs. (i) to (k).

Subsec. (l). Pub. L. 95-268, §8, added subsec. (l).

1974—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 93-390, §2(5)(A), inserted provisions relating to the cessation on Dec. 31, 1979, of programs operated by the Corporation under sections 2194(b) to (e) and 2200 of this title and transfer by the

President of such programs and all obligations, etc., arising out of such programs to other agencies of the United States.

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 93-390, §2(5)(B), added subsec. (h). 1972—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 92-310 struck out provisions which authorized the Corporation to require bonds of officers and employees and to pay premiums therefor.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 92-226 added subsec. (g).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-598 effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 402(a) of Pub. L. 95-598, set out as an Effective Date note preceding section 101 of Title 11, Bankruptcy.

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency” substituted for “Agency for International Development” in subsec. (h), pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1979, §6(a)(1), 44 F.R. 41166, 93 Stat. 1379, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, as provided by section 1-101 of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, set out as notes under section 2381 of this title, which transferred all functions and authorities of Agency for International Development under subsec. (i) of this section to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by sections 1-102(a)(1), (e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

Functions of President under subsec. (g) [redesignated (f) by Pub. L. 97-65], as they relate to Presidential certification concerning United Nations Relief and Works Agency, were delegated to Secretary of State, to be exercised in consultation with Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency by section 1-201(a)(1), (b) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163.

#### TERMINATION OF ADVISORY COUNCILS

Advisory councils in existence on Jan. 5, 1973, to terminate not later than the expiration of the 2-year period following Jan. 5, 1973, unless, in the case of a council established by the President or an officer of the Federal Government, such council is renewed by appropriate action prior to the expiration of such 2-year period, or in the case of a council established by the Congress, its duration is otherwise provided by law. See sections 3(2) and 14 of Pub. L. 92-463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 770, 776, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

#### ENHANCEMENT OF NONGOVERNMENTAL SECTOR IN POLAND AND HUNGARY

Section 302(b) of Pub. L. 101-179 provided that: “In accordance with its mandate to foster private initiative and competition and enhance the ability of private enterprise to make its full contribution to the development process, the Overseas Private Investment Corporation shall support projects in Poland and Hungary which will result in enhancement of the nongovernmental sector and reduction of state involvement in the economy.”

#### AVOIDANCE OF DUPLICATIVE AMENDMENTS

Section 302(c) of Pub. L. 101-179 provided that: “If the Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Act, 1990 [Pub. L. 101-167], contains the same amendment that is made by subsection (a) of this section [see 1989 Amendment note set out above], the amendment made by that Act shall not be effective.”

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2197, 2200a of this title.

**§ 2200. Small business development in less developed friendly countries or areas; encouragement by other Federal departments, etc., of broadened participation by United States small business cooperatives and investors; project funding**

The Corporation shall undertake, in cooperation with appropriate departments, agencies, and instrumentalities of the United States as well as private entities and others, to broaden the participation of United States small business, cooperatives, and other small United States investors in the development of small private enterprise in less developed friendly countries or areas. The Corporation shall allocate up to 50 per cent of its annual net income, after making suitable provision for transfers and additions to reserves, to assist and facilitate the development of projects consistent with the provisions of this section. Such funds may be expended, notwithstanding the requirements of section 2191(a) of this title, on such terms and conditions as the Corporation may determine, through loans, grants, or other programs authorized by section 2194 of this title and section 2194b of this title.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §240, as added Pub. L. 95-268, §9, Apr. 24, 1978, 92 Stat. 216; amended Pub. L. 99-204, §9(b)(3), Dec. 23, 1985, 99 Stat. 1673.)

**PRIOR PROVISIONS**

A prior section 2200, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §240, as added Pub. L. 91-175, pt. I, §105, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 817; amended Pub. L. 92-226, pt. I, §104(c), Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 22; Pub. L. 93-189, §6(2), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 717; Pub. L. 93-390, §2(6), Aug. 27, 1974, 88 Stat. 768, provided for agricultural credit and self-help community development projects in Latin America, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 93-559, §8(b), Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1797. See section 2182a of this title.

**AMENDMENTS**

1985—Pub. L. 99-204 inserted reference to section 2194b of this title.

**§ 2200a. Report to Congress**

**(a) Annual report**

After the end of each fiscal year, the Corporation shall submit to the Congress a complete and detailed report of its operations during such fiscal year. Such report shall include—

(1) an assessment, based upon the development impact profiles required by section 2199(h) of this title, of the economic and social development impact and benefits of the projects with respect to which such profiles are prepared, and of the extent to which the operations of the Corporation complement or are compatible with the development assistance programs of the United States and other donors; and

(2) a description of any project for which the Corporation—

(A) refused to provide any insurance, reinsurance, guaranty, financing, or other financial support, on account of violations of human rights referred to in section 2199(i) of this title; or

(B) notwithstanding such violations, provided such insurance, reinsurance, guaranty,

financing, or financial support, on the basis of a determination (i) that the project will directly benefit the needy people in the country in which the project is located, or (ii) that the national security interest so requires.

**(b) Effect of all projects on employment in United States to be included in annual report**

(1) Each annual report required by subsection (a) of this section shall contain projections of the effects on employment in the United States of all projects for which, during the preceding fiscal year, the Corporation initially issued any insurance, reinsurance, or guaranty or made any direct loan. Each such report shall include projections of—

(A) the amount of United States exports to be generated by those projects, both during the start-up phase and over a period of years;

(B) the final destination of the products to be produced as a result of those projects; and

(C) the impact such production will have on the production of similar products in the United States with regard to both domestic sales and exports.

(2) The projections required by this subsection shall be based on an analysis of each of the projects described in paragraph (1).

(3) In reporting the projections on employment required by this subsection, the Corporation shall specify, with respect to each project—

(A) any loss of jobs in the United States caused by the project, whether or not the project itself creates other jobs;

(B) any jobs created by the project; and

(C) the country in which the project is located, and the economic sector involved in the project.

No proprietary information may be disclosed under this paragraph.

**(c) Repealed. Pub. L. 100-461, title V, § 555, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-36**

**(d) Maintenance of records**

The Corporation shall maintain as part of its records—

(1) all information collected in preparing the report required by subsection (c) of this section (as in effect before October 1, 1988), whether the information was collected by the Corporation itself or by a contractor; and

(2) a copy of the analysis of each project analyzed in preparing the reports required either by subsection (b) of this section, or by subsection (c) of this section (as in effect before October 1, 1988).

**(e) Assessment of cooperative political risk insurance program**

Each annual report required by subsection (a) of this section shall include an assessment of programs implemented by the Corporation under section 2194b(a) of this title, including the following information, to the extent such information is available to the Corporation:

(1) The nature and dollar value of political risk insurance provided by private insurers in conjunction with the Corporation, which the Corporation was not permitted to provide under this subpart.

(2) The nature and dollar value of political risk insurance provided by private insurers in conjunction with the Corporation, which the Corporation was permitted to provide under this subpart.

(3) The manner in which such private insurers and the Corporation cooperated in recovery efforts and claims management.

**(f) Information not required to be made available to public excluded from reports**

Subsections (b) and (e) of this section do not require the inclusion in any report submitted pursuant to those subsections of any information which would not be required to be made available to the public pursuant to section 552 of title 5 (relating to freedom of information).

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §240A, as added Pub. L. 91-175, pt. I, §105, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 818; amended Pub. L. 93-390, §2(7), Aug. 27, 1974, 88 Stat. 768; Pub. L. 95-268, §10, Apr. 24, 1978, 92 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 97-65, §9, formerly §9(a), Oct. 16, 1981, 95 Stat. 1024, renumbered §9, Pub. L. 99-204, §17(c)(1), Dec. 23, 1985, 99 Stat. 1677; Pub. L. 99-204, §14(a), Dec. 23, 1985, 99 Stat. 1674; Pub. L. 100-461, title V, §555, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-36; Pub. L. 102-549, title I, §108, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3654.)

CODIFICATION

Amendment by Pub. L. 100-461 is based on sections 105(b) and 110(b) of title I of H.R. 5263, One Hundredth Congress, as passed by the House of Representatives on Sept. 20, 1988, and sections 105(b) and 110(b) of title I of S. 2757, One Hundredth Congress, as reported Sept. 7, 1988, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 100-461.

AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (b)(2), (3). Pub. L. 102-549 added pars. (2) and (3) and struck out former par. (2) which read as follows: “Each report required by this subsection shall be based on an analysis of each of the projects described in paragraph (1). The reports may, however, present information and analysis in aggregate form, but only if—

“(A) those projects which are projected to have a positive effect on employment in the United States and those projects which are projected to have a negative effect on employment in the United States are grouped separately; and

“(B) there is set forth for each such grouping the key characteristics of the projects within that grouping, including the number of projects in each economic sector, the countries in which the projects in each economic sector are located, and the projected level of the impact of the projects in each economic sector on employment in the United States and on United States trade.”

1988—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 100-461 repealed subsec. (c) which related to actual effect of all projects on employment in United States as of Sept. 30, 1986, presentation of information, and methodology used in acquiring information and making analysis.

Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 100-461 inserted “(as in effect before October 1, 1988)” after “subsection (c) of this section”.

Subsec. (d)(2). Pub. L. 100-461 substituted “either by subsection (b) of this section, or by subsection (c) of this section (as in effect before October 1, 1988)” for “by either subsection (b) or (c) of this section”.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 100-461 added subsec. (e). Former subsec. (e) redesignated (f).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 100-461 redesignated subsec. (e) as (f) and substituted “(e)” for “(c)”.

1985—Pub. L. 99-204, §14(a), designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsections (b) to (e).

1981—Pub. L. 97-65 struck out designation “(a)” before “After the end of each fiscal year”, substituted ref-

erences to section 2199(h) and (i) of this title for references to section 2199(i) and (l) of this title, respectively, in pars. (1) and (2)(A), and struck out subsec. (b) which had provided that, not later than Sept. 30, 1980, the Corporation was to submit to the Congress a report on the development of private and multilateral programs for investment insurance and any reinsurance arrangements the Corporation had made with private insurance companies, multilateral organizations and institutions or other entities.

1978—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 95-268 added cls. (1) and (2) setting forth required contents of report.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 95-268 substituted provisions relating to report to be submitted not later than Sept. 30, 1980 involving the development and any arrangements by the Corporation with private insurance companies, etc., for provisions relating to report submitted not later than Jan. 1, 1976 involving the possibilities of the Corporation transferring all of its activities to private insurance companies, etc.

1974—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 93-390 substituted “January 1, 1976” for “March 1, 1974” and “of its activities to private insurance companies, multilateral organizations and institutions, or other entities” for “or part of its activities to private United States citizens, corporations, or other associations”.

REPORT TO CONGRESS NOT LATER THAN JUNE 30, 1982, ON METHODS FOR ESTIMATING THE IMPACT ON INVESTMENTS IF INSURANCE OR OTHER SUPPORT IS NOT PROVIDED

Section 9(b) of Pub. L. 97-65, which provided for a report to Congress by the Overseas Private Investment Corporation on the effect on investments of lack of insurance, was repealed by Pub. L. 99-204, §17(c)(2), Dec. 23, 1985, 99 Stat. 1677.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2194b of this title.

**§ 2200b. Prohibition on noncompetitive awarding of insurance contracts on OPIC supported exports**

**(a) Requirement for certification**

**(1) In general**

Except as provided in paragraph (3), the investor on whose behalf insurance, reinsurance, guaranties, or other financing is provided under this subpart with respect to a project shall be required to certify to the Corporation that any contract for the export of goods as part of that project will include a clause requiring that United States insurance companies have a fair and open competitive opportunity to provide insurance against risk of loss of such export.

**(2) When certification must be made**

The investor shall be required, in every practicable case, to so certify before the insurance, reinsurance, guarantee, or other financing is provided. In any case in which such a certification is not made in advance, the investor shall include in the certification the reasons for the failure to make a certification in advance.

**(3) Exception**

Paragraph (1) does not apply with respect to an investor who does not, because of the nature of the investment, have a controlling interest in fact in the project in question.

**(b) Reports by United States Trade Representative**

The United States Trade Representative shall review the actions of the Corporation under subsection (a) of this section and, after consultation with representatives of United States insurance companies, shall report to the Congress in the report required by section 2241(b) of title 19 with respect to such actions.

**(c) Definitions**

For purposes of this section—

(1) the term “United States insurance company” includes—

(A) an individual, partnership, corporation, holding company, or other legal entity which is authorized, or in the case of a holding company, subsidiaries of which are authorized, by a State to engage in the business of issuing insurance contracts or reinsuring the risk underwritten by insurance companies; and

(B) foreign operations, branches, agencies, subsidiaries, affiliates, or joint ventures of any entity described in subparagraph (A);

(2) United States insurance companies shall be considered to have had a “fair and open competitive opportunity to provide insurance” if they—

(A) have received notice of the opportunity to provide insurance; and

(B) have been evaluated on a nondiscriminatory basis; and

(3) the term “State” includes the District of Columbia and any commonwealth, territory, or possession of the United States.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §240B, as added Pub. L. 102-549, title I, §109, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3654.)

**PRIOR PROVISIONS**

A prior section 2200b, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §240B, as added Pub. L. 97-65, §10, Oct. 16, 1981, 95 Stat. 1024, related to return of appropriated funds, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 99-204, §15, Dec. 23, 1985, 99 Stat. 1676.

**SUBPART V—DISADVANTAGED CHILDREN IN ASIA****§ 2201. Assistance to disadvantaged children in Asia****(a) Congressional findings**

The Congress recognizes the humanitarian needs of disadvantaged children in Asian countries where there has been or continues to be a heavy presence of United States military and related personnel in recent years. Moreover, the Congress finds that inadequate provision has been made for the care and welfare of such disadvantaged children, particularly those fathered by the<sup>1</sup> United States citizens.

**(b) Authority of President**

Accordingly, the President is authorized to expend up to \$3,000,000 of funds made available under part I of this subchapter, in addition to funds otherwise available for such purposes, to help meet the needs of these disadvantaged children in Asia by assisting in the expansion and improvement of orphanages, hostels, day care

centers, school feeding programs, and health, education, and welfare programs. Assistance provided under this section shall be furnished under the auspices of and by international organizations or private voluntary agencies operating within, and in cooperation with, the countries of Asia where these disadvantaged children reside.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §241, as added Pub. L. 95-424, title I, §116, Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 952; amended Pub. L. 99-83, title IX, §903(a), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 268.)

**REFERENCES TO PART I DEEMED TO INCLUDE SECTION 2293**

References to part I of this subchapter are deemed to include a reference to section 2293 of this title. See section 2293(d)(1) of this title.

**PRIOR PROVISIONS**

A prior section 2201, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §241, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 433; Pub. L. 88-205, pt. I, §105, Dec. 16, 1963, 77 Stat. 382, related to general authority of President respecting development research and use of funds for research into problems of population growth, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 94-161, title III, §306(1), Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 858.

**AMENDMENTS**

1985—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 99-83 substituted “\$3,000,000” for “\$2,000,000”.

**EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

**EFFECTIVE DATE**

Section effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as an Effective Date of 1978 Amendment note under section 2151 of this title.

**DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS; ALLOCATION OF FUNDS**

Functions of President under this section delegated and funds available under this chapter allocated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by sections 1-102(a)(1), (e) and 1-801(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

**SUBPART VI—ALLIANCE FOR PROGRESS****§§ 2211 to 2213. Repealed. Pub. L. 95-424, title I, § 102(g)(1)(A), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 942**

Section 2211, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §251, as added Pub. L. 87-565, pt. I, §106, Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 257; amended Pub. L. 88-205, pt. I, §106(a), Dec. 16, 1963, 77 Stat. 382; Pub. L. 89-583, pt. I, §105(a), Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 799; Pub. L. 90-137, pt. I, §106(a), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 451, related to assistance in order to promote the economic development of countries and areas in Latin America.

Section 2212, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §252, as added Pub. L. 87-565, pt. I, §106, Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 258; amended Pub. L. 88-205, pt. I, §106(b), Dec. 16, 1963, 77 Stat. 383; Pub. L. 88-633, pt. I, §105, Oct. 7, 1964, 78 Stat. 1010; Pub. L. 89-171, pt. I, §105, Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 655; Pub. L. 89-583, pt. I, §105(b), Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 799; Pub. L. 90-137, pt. I, §106(b), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 451; Pub. L. 90-554, pt. I, §105, Oct. 8, 1968, 82 Stat. 961; Pub. L. 91-175, pt. I, §106, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 818; Pub. L. 92-226, pt. I, §105, Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 23; Pub. L. 93-189, §7, Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 718, related to authorization of appropriations for Alliance for Progress.

Section 2213, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §253, as added Pub. L. 87-565, pt. I, §106, Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 258; amended

<sup>1</sup> So in original.



Pub. L. 88-205, pt. I, §106(c), Dec. 16, 1963, 77 Stat. 383, related to availability of receipts from loans for Alliance for Progress.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as an Effective Date of 1978 Amendment note under section 2151 of this title.

SUBPART VII—EVALUATION OF PROGRAMS

**§ 2216. Repealed. Pub. L. 95-424, title I, § 102(g)(1)(A), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 942**

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §261, as added Pub. L. 88-205, pt. I, §107, Dec. 16, 1963, 77 Stat. 383, related to appointment of a committee to review and evaluate economic development program for less developed countries.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as an Effective Date of 1978 Amendment note under section 2151 of this title.

SUBPART VIII—SOUTHEAST ASIA MULTILATERAL AND REGIONAL PROGRAMS

**§§ 2217, 2217a. Repealed. Pub. L. 95-424, title I, § 102(g)(1)(A), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 942**

Section 2217, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §271, as added Pub. L. 89-583, pt. I, §106, Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 799, set forth sense of Congress that acceleration of social and economic progress would be served by an expanded effort by countries of southeast Asia and other interested countries in cooperative programs.

Section 2217a, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §272, as added Pub. L. 89-583, pt. I, §106, Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 800, related to a number of criteria to be taken into account in providing assistance under the Southeast Asia Multilateral and Regional Programs.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as an Effective Date of 1978 Amendment note under section 2151 of this title.

**§ 2217b. Repealed. Pub. L. 90-137, pt. I, § 107, Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 452**

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §273, as added Pub. L. 89-583, pt. I, §106, Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 800, prescribed a \$10,000,000 limitation on use of funds for promotion of social and economic development and stability in southeast Asia.

SUBPART IX—UTILIZATION OF DEMOCRATIC INSTITUTIONS IN DEVELOPMENT

SUBPART REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subpart is referred to in section 290h of this title.

**§ 2218. Utilization of democratic institutions in development**

**(a) Popular participation through encouragement of democratic institutions**

In carrying out programs authorized in this part and part I of this subchapter, emphasis shall be placed on assuring maximum participation in the task of economic development on the part of the people of the developing countries, through the encouragement of democratic private and local governmental institutions.

**(b) Human and intellectual resources; self-government through civic education and training in requisite skills**

In order to carry out the purposes of this section programs under this part and part I of this subchapter shall—

(1) recognize the differing needs, desires, and capacities of the people of the respective developing countries and areas;

(2) use the intellectual resources of such countries and areas in conjunction with assistance provided under this chapter so as to encourage the development of indigenous institutions that meet their particular requirements for sustained economic and social progress; and

(3) support civic education and training in skills required for effective participation in governmental and political processes essential to self-government.

**(c) Political, social, and related obstacles to development; democratic social and political trends**

In the allocation of funds for research under this part and part I of this subchapter, emphasis shall be given to research designed to examine the political, social, and related obstacles to development in countries receiving assistance under subchapter I of this chapter. In particular, emphasis should be given to research designed to increase understanding of the ways in which development assistance can support democratic social and political trends in recipient countries.

**(d) Implementation of objectives through application of experience gained from program evaluation**

Emphasis shall also be given to the evaluation of relevant past and current programs under subchapter I of this chapter and to applying this experience so as to strengthen their effectiveness in implementing the objectives of this section.

**(e) Inservice training programs**

In order to carry out the purposes of this section, the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter shall develop systematic programs of inservice training to familiarize its personnel with the objectives of this section and to increase their knowledge of the political and social aspects of development. In addition to other funds available for such purposes, not to exceed 1 per centum of the funds authorized to be appropriated for grant assistance under this part and part I of this subchapter may be used for carrying out the objectives of this subsection.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §281, as added Pub. L. 89-583, pt. I, §106, Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 800; amended Pub. L. 90-137, pt. I, §108, Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 452; Pub. L. 90-554, pt. I, §106, Oct. 8, 1968, 82 Stat. 961; Pub. L. 95-424, title I, §102(g)(2)(A), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 942.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (b)(2), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this

Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE  
CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§ 2346 et seq.), VI (§ 2348 et seq.), and VIII (§ 2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

REFERENCES TO PART I DEEMED TO INCLUDE  
SECTION 2293

References to part I of this subchapter are deemed to include a reference to section 2293 of this title. See section 2293(d)(1) of this title.

AMENDMENTS

1978—Subsecs. (a), (b), (c), (e). Pub. L. 95-424 inserted “and part 1 of this subchapter” after “this part”.

1968—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 90-554, § 106(a), emphasized research designed to increase understanding of ways in which development assistance can support democratic social and political trends in recipient countries.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 90-554, § 106(b), added subsec. (e).

1967—Pub. L. 90-137 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsecs. (b) to (d).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

SUBPART X—PROGRAMS RELATING TO POPULATION  
GROWTH AND FAMILY PLANNING

**§§ 2219, 2219a. Repealed. Pub. L. 95-424, title I, § 104(b), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 947**

Section 2219, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 291, as added Pub. L. 90-137, pt. I, § 109, Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 452, set forth a general statement of policy concerning population growth and family planning.

Section 2219a, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 292, as added Pub. L. 90-137, pt. I, § 109, Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 453; amended Pub. L. 90-554, pt. I, § 107, Oct. 8, 1968, 82 Stat. 962; Pub. L. 91-175, pt. I, § 107, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 818; Pub. L. 92-226, pt. I, § 106, Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 23; Pub. L. 93-189, § 8, Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 718; Pub. L. 93-559, § 4(2), Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1795, related to the availability of funds on a loan or grant basis to carry out the purposes of this subpart.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as an Effective Date of 1978 Amendment note under section 2151 of this title.

SUBPART XI—FOOD PRODUCTION TARGETS AND  
REPORTS

**§ 2220. Repealed. Pub. L. 95-424, title V, § 502(d)(1), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 959**

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 295, as added Pub. L. 90-137, pt. I, § 109, Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 453, related to reports and recommendations to Congress by the President for each country receiving assistance under this chapter which the President finds has a substantial food deficit.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as an Effective Date of 1978 Amendment note under section 2151 of this title.

SUBPART XII—FAMINE PREVENTION AND FREEDOM  
FROM HUNGER

SUBPART REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subpart is referred to in title 7 section 3124a.

**§ 2220a. General provisions**

**(a) Congressional objectives and findings**

The Congress declares that, in order to prevent famine and establish freedom from hunger, the United States should strengthen the capacities of the United States land-grant and other eligible universities in program-related agricultural institutional development and research, consistent with sections 2151a and 2151a-1 of this title, should improve their participation in the United States Government's international efforts to apply more effective agricultural sciences to the goal of increasing world food production, and in general should provide increased and longer term support to the application of science to solving food and nutrition problems of the developing countries.

The Congress so declares because it finds—

(1) that the establishment, endowment, and continuing support of land-grant universities in the United States by Federal, State, and county governments has led to agricultural progress in this country;

(2) that land-grant and other universities in the United States have demonstrated over many years their ability to cooperate with foreign agricultural institutions in expanding indigenous food production for both domestic and international markets;

(3) that, in a world of growing population with rising expectations, increased food production and improved distribution, storage, and marketing in the developing countries is necessary not only to prevent hunger but to build the economic base for growth, and moreover, that the greatest potential for increasing world food supplies is in the developing countries where the gap between food need and food supply is the greatest and current yields are lowest;

(4) that increasing and making more secure the supply of food is of greatest benefit to the poorest majority in the developing world;

(5) that research, teaching, and extension activities, and appropriate institutional development therefor are prime factors in increasing agricultural production abroad (as well as in the United States) and in improving food distribution, storage, and marketing;

(6) moreover, that agricultural research abroad has in the past and will continue in the future to provide benefits for agriculture in the United States and that increasing the availability of food of higher nutritional quality is of benefit to all; and

(7) that universities need a dependable source of Federal funding, as well as other financing, in order to expand, or in some cases to continue, their efforts to assist in increasing agricultural production in developing countries.

**(b) Congressional objectives and declaration for collation of components to increase world food production**

Accordingly, the Congress declares that, in order to prevent famine and establish freedom

from hunger, various components must be brought together in order to increase world food production, including—

- (1) strengthening the capabilities of universities to assist in increasing agricultural production in developing countries;
- (2) institution-building programs for development of national and regional agricultural research and extension capacities in developing countries which need assistance;
- (3) international agricultural research centers;
- (4) contract research; and
- (5) research program grants.

**(c) University involvement, participation, and cooperation**

The United States should—

- (1) effectively involve the United States land-grant and other eligible universities more extensively in each component;
- (2) provide mechanisms for the universities to participate and advise in the planning, development, implementation, and administration of each component; and
- (3) assist such universities in cooperative joint efforts with—
  - (A) agricultural institutions in developing nations, and
  - (B) regional and international agricultural research centers,

directed to strengthening their joint and respective capabilities and to engage them more effectively in research, teaching, and extension activities for solving problems in food production, distribution, storage, marketing, and consumption in agriculturally underdeveloped nations.

**(d) Universities**

As used in this subpart, the term “universities” means those colleges or universities in each State, territory, or possession of the United States, or the District of Columbia, now receiving, or which may hereafter receive, benefits under the Act of July 2, 1862 (known as the First Morrill Act) [7 U.S.C. 301 et seq.], or the Act of August 30, 1890 (known as the Second Morrill Act) [7 U.S.C. 321 et seq.], which are commonly known as “land-grant” universities; institutions now designated or which may hereafter be designated as sea-grant colleges under the Act of October 15, 1966 (known as the National Sea Grant College and Program Act) [33 U.S.C. 1121 et seq.], which are commonly known as sea-grant colleges; and other United States colleges and universities which—

- (1) have demonstrable capacity in teaching, research, and extension activities in the agricultural sciences; and
- (2) can contribute effectively to the attainment of the objectives of this subpart.

**(e) Director**

As used in this subpart, the term “Director” means the Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §296, as added Pub. L. 94-161, title III, §312, Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 861; amended Pub. L. 95-424, title I, §103(c), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 945; 1979 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §6(a)(1), eff. Oct. 1, 1979, 44 F.R. 41166, 93 Stat. 1379.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The First Morrill Act and the Second Morrill Act, referred to in subsec. (d), refer to acts July 2, 1862, ch. 130, 12 Stat. 503, and Aug. 30, 1890, ch. 841, 26 Stat. 417, as amended, which are classified generally to subchapters I (§301 et seq.) and II (§321 et seq.), respectively, of chapter 13 of Title 7, Agriculture. For complete classification of these Acts to the Code, see Short Title notes set out under sections 301 and 321 of Title 7 and Tables.

The National Sea Grant College and Program Act, referred to in subsec. (d), is title II of Pub. L. 89-454, as added Pub. L. 89-688, §1, Oct. 15, 1966, 80 Stat. 998, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter II (§1121 et seq.) of chapter 22 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1121 of Title 33 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1978—Subsecs. (f), (g). Pub. L. 95-424 struck out subsecs. (f) defining “agriculture”, and (g) defining “farmers”.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“Director” and “Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency” substituted for “Administrator” and “Administrator of the Agency for International Development”, respectively, in subsec. (e), pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1979, §6(a)(1), 44 F.R. 41166, 93 Stat. 1379, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, as provided by section 1-101 of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, set out as notes under section 2381 of this title, which transferred functions and authorities of Administrator of Agency for International Development under subsec. (e) of this section to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency.

INTERNATIONAL FOOD RESERVE

Pub. L. 95-426, title VI, §604, Oct. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 986, provided that:

“(a) The Congress finds that—

“(1) half a billion people suffer regularly from malnutrition or undernutrition;

“(2) even very modest shortfalls in crop production can result in greatly increased human suffering, and undercut the benefits of bilateral and multilateral assistance programs, in poor developing countries with chronic food deficits;

“(3) increasing variability in world food production and trade presents a serious threat not only to consumers but also to producers;

“(4) the World Food Conference recognized the urgent need for an international undertaking to achieve a system of world food security based largely upon strategic food reserves;

“(5) the Congress through legislation has repeatedly urged the President to negotiate with other nations to establish such a system of reserves;

“(6) although the nations of the world have agreed to begin discussions on a system of grain reserves to regulate food availability, agreement on a global network of nationally held reserves still eludes the international community;

“(7) while some progress has taken place in the United States in creating domestic farmer held reserves, the scale of such reserves does not insure adequate protection against fluctuations in world production and price; and

“(8) the United States, as the world’s leading producer of foodstuffs, remains in a unique position to provide the leadership necessary to make world food security a reality.

“(b) It is therefore the sense of the Congress that the President should continue his efforts directed toward achievement of an agreement establishing an international network of nationally held grain reserves which provides for supply assurance to consumers and income security to producers.”

Similar provisions were contained in the following prior authorization act:

Pub. L. 95-105, title V, § 510, Aug. 17, 1977, 91 Stat. 860.

#### COMMISSION ON HUNGER AND MALNUTRITION

Pub. L. 95-426, title VII, § 711, Oct. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 994, which authorized funds to be appropriated for fiscal years 1979 and 1980 for a commission to conduct studies on global hunger and malnutrition, which commission was to make recommendations to the President and Congress on policies to increase the capacity of the United States to reduce hunger and malnutrition, was repealed by Pub. L. 97-241, title V, § 505(a)(2), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 299.

#### SETTLEMENT OF DEBT OWED THE UNITED STATES

Section 321 of Pub. L. 94-161 provided that: “No debt owed to the United States by any foreign country with respect to the payment of any loan made under any program funded under this Act [see Short Title of 1975 Amendment note set out under section 2151 of this title] may be settled in an amount less than the full amount of such debt unless the Congress by concurrent resolution approves of such settlement.”

#### COOPERATION WITH OTHER COUNTRIES IN ALLEVIATING WORLD FOOD SHORTAGE; EMERGENCY AND HUMANITARIAN REQUIREMENTS

Pub. L. 93-189, § 39, Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 735, provided that:

“(a) It is the sense of the Congress that the United States should participate fully in efforts to alleviate current and future food shortages which threaten the world. To this end, the President shall—

“(1) encourage, support, and expedite, studies relating to the long-range implications of the world food situation (including studies of national and world production, distribution, and utilization of agricultural commodities and other foodstuffs) and support the organizing of a world food conference under United Nations auspices in 1974;

“(2) request the member nations of the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade to explore the means for assuring equitable access by all nations to national markets and mineral and agricultural resources;

“(3) consult and cooperate with appropriate international agencies, such as the Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, in determining the need for, the feasibility of, and cost on an equitably-shared basis of, establishing an international system of strategic food reserves; and

“(4) report his findings and recommendations to the Congress on the implementation of this section no later than December 31, 1974.

“(b) It is further the sense of the Congress that—

“(1) in making assessments which would affect or relate to the level of domestic production, the Executive Branch should include in the estimates of overall utilization the expected demands for humanitarian food assistance through such programs as are carried out under the Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954 (Public Law 480) [section 1691 et seq. of Title 7, Agriculture]; and

“(2) legislation providing increased flexibility for responding to emergency and humanitarian requirements for food assistance should be considered as promptly as possible to the end that the last sentence of section 401 of the Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954 (Public Law 480) [section 1731 of title 7], may be amended by striking the period and inserting in lieu thereof a comma and the following: ‘unless the Secretary determines that

some part of the exportable supply should be used to carry out the national interest and humanitarian objectives of this Act [see Short Title of 1973 Amendment note set out under section 2151 of this title].’”

#### § 2220b. General authority

##### (a) Programs and activities affecting universities, agriculturally developing countries, and research

To carry out the purposes of this subpart, the President is authorized to provide assistance on such terms and conditions as he shall determine—

(1) to strengthen the capabilities of universities in teaching, research, and extension work to enable them to implement current programs authorized by paragraphs (2), (3), (4), and (5) of this subsection, and those proposed in the report required by section 2220e of this title;

(2) to build and strengthen the institutional capacity and human resource skills of agriculturally developing countries so that these countries may participate more fully in the international agricultural problem-solving effort and to introduce and adapt new solutions to local circumstances;

(3) to provide program support for long-term collaborative university research, in the developing countries themselves to the maximum extent practicable, on food production, distribution, storage, marketing, and consumption;

(4) to involve universities more fully in the international network of agricultural science, including the international research centers, the activities of international organizations such as the United Nations Development Program and the Food and Agriculture Organization, and the institutions of agriculturally developing nations; and

(5) to provide program support for international agricultural research centers, to provide support for research projects identified for specific problem-solving needs, and to develop and strengthen national research systems in the developing countries.

##### (b) Programs and activities respecting university capabilities, benefiting domestic and non-domestic agriculture, and based on existing programs and institutions

Programs under this subpart shall be carried out so as to—

(1) utilize and strengthen the capabilities of universities in—

(A) developing capacity in the cooperating nation for classroom teaching in agriculture, plant and animal sciences, human nutrition, and vocational and domestic arts and other relevant fields appropriate to local needs;

(B) agricultural research to be conducted in the cooperating nations, at international agricultural research centers, or in the United States;

(C) the planning, initiation, and development of extension services through which information concerning agriculture and related subjects will be made available directly to farmers and farm families in the agri-

culturally developing nations by means of education and demonstration; or

(D) the exchange of educators, scientists, and students for the purpose of assisting in successful development in the cooperating nations;

(2) take into account the value to United States agriculture of such programs, integrating to the extent practicable the programs and financing authorized under this subpart with those supported by other Federal or State resources so as to maximize the contribution to the development of agriculture in the United States and in agriculturally developing nations; and

(3) whenever practicable, build on existing programs and institutions including those of the universities and the United States Department of Agriculture and the United States Department of Commerce.

**(c) Activity objectives**

To the maximum extent practicable, activities under this section shall—

(1) be directly related to the food and agricultural needs of developing countries;

(2) be carried out within the developing countries;

(3) be adapted to local circumstances;

(4) provide for the most effective interrelationship between research, education, and extension in promoting agricultural development in developing countries; and

(5) emphasize the improvement of local systems for delivering the best available knowledge to the small farmers of such countries.

**(d) Function of Director**

The President shall exercise his authority under this section through the Director.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 297, as added Pub. L. 94-161, title III, § 312, Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 863; amended Pub. L. 96-53, title I, § 113, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 364; 1979 Reorg. Plan No. 2, § 6(a)(1), eff. Oct. 1, 1979, 44 F.R. 41166, 93 Stat. 1379.)

AMENDMENTS

1979—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 96-53, § 113(1), inserted provision relating to the scope of effort in developing countries.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 96-53, § 113(2), reworked activity objectives through revising terminology and structure and expanding such objectives to include requirement for a direct relationship between activities and the food and agricultural needs of developing countries.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1979 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-53 effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 512(a) of Pub. L. 96-53, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“Director”, meaning Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency, substituted for “Administrator”, meaning Administrator of the Agency for International Development, in subsec. (d), pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1979, § 6(a)(1), 44 F.R. 41166, 93 Stat. 1379, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, as provided by section 1-101 of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, set out as notes under section 2381 of this title, which transferred functions and authorities of Administrator of Agency for International Development under subsec. (d) of this section to Director of

United States International Development Cooperation Agency.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by sections 1-102(a)(1), (e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2220c of this title.

**§ 2220c. Board for International Food and Agricultural Development**

**(a) Establishment; terms and expenses of members**

To assist in the administration of the programs authorized by this subpart, the President shall establish a permanent Board for International Food and Agricultural Development (hereafter in this subpart referred to as the “Board”) consisting of seven members, not less than four to be selected from the universities. Terms of members shall be set by the President at the time of appointment. Members of the Board shall be entitled to such reimbursement for expenses incurred in the performance of their duties (including per diem in lieu of subsistence while away from their homes or regular place of business) as the President deems appropriate.

**(b) General areas of responsibility**

The Board’s general areas of responsibility shall include, but not be limited to—

(1) participating in the planning, development, and implementation of,

(2) initiating recommendations for, and

(3) monitoring of,

the activities described in section 2220b of this title.

**(c) Specific, but not exclusive, duties**

The Board’s duties shall include, but not necessarily be limited to—

(1) participating in the formulation of basic policy, procedures, and criteria for project proposal review, selection, and monitoring;

(2) developing and keeping current a roster of universities—

(A) interested in exploring their potential for collaborative relationships with agricultural institutions, and with scientists working on significant programs designed to increase food production in developing countries,

(B) having capacity in the agricultural sciences,

(C) able to maintain an appropriate balance of teaching, research, and extension functions,

(D) having capacity, experience, and commitment with respect to international agricultural efforts, and

(E) able to contribute to solving the problems addressed by this subpart;

(3) recommending which developing nations could benefit from programs carried out under

this subpart, and identifying those nations which have an interest in establishing or developing agricultural institutions which engage in teaching, research, or extension activities;

(4) reviewing and evaluating memorandums of understanding or other documents that detail the terms and conditions between the Administrator and universities participating in programs under this subpart;

(5) reviewing and evaluating agreements and activities authorized by this subpart and undertaken by universities to assure compliance with the purposes of this subpart;

(6) recommending to the Director the apportionment of funds under section 2220b of this title; and

(7) assessing the impact of programs carried out under this subpart in solving agricultural problems in the developing nations.

**(d) Subordinate units; creation of Joint Research Committee, Joint Committee on Country Programs, and other units**

The President may authorize the Board to create such subordinate units as may be necessary for the performance of its duties, including but not limited to the following:

(1) a Joint Research Committee to participate in the administration and development of the collaborative activities described in section 2220b(a)(3) of this title; and

(2) a Joint Committee on Country Programs which shall assist in the implementation of the bilateral activities described in sections 2220b(a)(2), 2220b(a)(4), and 2220b(a)(5) of this title.

**(e) Consultations in preparation of annual report and on agricultural development activities**

In addition to any other functions assigned to and agreed to by the Board, the Board shall be consulted in the preparation of the annual report required by section 2220e of this title and on other agricultural development activities related to programs under this subpart.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §298, as added Pub. L. 94-161, title III, §312, Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 864; amended 1979 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §6(a)(1), eff. Oct. 1, 1979, 44 F.R. 41166, 93 Stat. 1379.)

**TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS**

“Director”, meaning Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency, substituted for “Administrator”, meaning Administrator of the Agency for International Development, in subsec. (c)(6), pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1979, §6(a)(1), 44 F.R. 41166, 93 Stat. 1379, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, as provided by section 1-101 of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, set out as notes under section 2381 of this title, which transferred functions and authorities of Administrator of Agency for International Development under subsec. (c)(6) of this section to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency.

**DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS**

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with exception of functions under subsec. (a) and certain other exceptions, by sections 1-102(a)(1), (e) and 1-701(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

**SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS**

This section is referred to in section 2220e of this title.

**§ 2220d. Funds for programs and activities**

**(a) Funds available under section 2151a of this title unaffected by other provisions**

The President is authorized to use any of the funds hereafter made available under section 2151a of this title to carry out the purposes of this subpart. Funds made available for such purposes may be used without regard to the provisions of sections 2151h(b) and 2151t(d) of this title.

**(b) Foreign currencies**

Foreign currencies owned by the United States and determined by the Secretary of the Treasury to be excess to the needs of the United States shall be used to the maximum extent possible in lieu of dollars in carrying out the provisions of this subpart.

**(c) Other authorizations**

Assistance authorized under this subpart shall be in addition to any allotments or grants that may be made under other authorizations.

**(d) Disclosure of funds to Director; annual report**

Universities may accept and expend funds from other sources, public and private, in order to carry out the purposes of this subpart. All such funds, both prospective and in hand, shall be periodically disclosed to the Director as he shall by regulation require, but no less often than in an annual report.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §299, as added Pub. L. 94-161, title III, §312, Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 865; amended Pub. L. 95-424, title I, §102(c)(2), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 941; 1979 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §6(a)(1), eff. Oct. 1, 1979, 44 F.R. 41166, 93 Stat. 1379.)

**AMENDMENTS**

1978—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 95-424 substituted “sections 2151h(b) and 2151t(d) of this title” for “sections 2151h(b), 2171(a), and 2171(d) of this title”.

**EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

**TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS**

“Director”, meaning Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency, substituted for “Administrator”, meaning Administrator of the Agency for International Development, in subsec. (d), pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1979, §6(a)(1), 44 F.R. 41166, 93 Stat. 1379, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, as provided by section 1-101 of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, set out as notes under section 2381 of this title, which transferred functions and authorities of Administrator of Agency for International Development under subsec. (d) of this section to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency.

**DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS; ALLOCATION OF FUNDS**

Functions of President under this section delegated and funds available under this chapter allocated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by sections 1-102(a)(1), (e) and 1-801(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept.

29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

#### § 2220e. Presidential report to Congress

The President shall transmit to the Congress, not later than April 1 of each year, a report detailing the activities carried out pursuant to this subpart during the preceding fiscal year and containing a projection of programs and activities to be conducted during the subsequent five fiscal years. Each report shall contain a summary of the activities of the Board established pursuant to section 2220c of this title and may include the separate views of the Board with respect to any aspect of the programs conducted or proposed to be conducted under this subpart.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §300, as added Pub. L. 94-161, title III, §312, Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 866.)

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by sections 1-102(a)(1), (e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2220b, 2220c of this title.

#### PART III—INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATIONS AND PROGRAMS

#### PART REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This part is referred to in section 2151b of this title.

#### § 2221. General authority

##### (a) Voluntary contributions; grants and loans in case of the Indus Basin Development Fund

When he determines it to be in the national interest, the President is authorized to make voluntary contributions on a grant basis to international organizations and to programs administered by such organizations, and in the case of the Indus Basin Development Fund administered by the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development to make grants and loans payable as to principal and interest in United States dollars and subject to the provisions of section 2151t(b) of this title, on such terms and conditions as he may determine, in order to further the purposes of subchapter I of this chapter.

##### (b) Repealed. Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(1), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560

##### (c) Palestine refugees; considerations and conditions for furnishing assistance

No contributions by the United States shall be made to the United Nations Relief and Works Agency for Palestine Refugees in the Near East except on the condition that the United Nations Relief and Works Agency take all possible measures to assure that no part of the United States contribution shall be used to furnish assistance to any refugee who is receiving military training as a member of the so-called Palestine Liberation Army or any other guerrilla type organization or who has engaged in any act of terrorism.

##### (d) Audit of funds; report to Congress and the President

In any case in which a fund established solely by United States contributions under this chapter or any other Act is administered by an international organization under the terms of an agreement between the United States and such international organization, such agreement shall provide that the Comptroller General of the United States shall conduct such audits as are necessary to assure that such fund is administered in accordance with such agreement. The President shall undertake to modify any existing agreement entered into before November 14, 1967, to conform to the requirements of the preceding sentence. The Comptroller General shall report simultaneously to the Congress and the President the results of the audits conducted under this subsection.

##### (e) Evaluation of United Nations and its affiliated organizations; International Bank for Reconstruction and Development; Asian Development Bank

(1) In the case of the United Nations and its affiliated organizations, including the International Atomic Energy Agency, the President shall, acting through the United States representative to such organizations, propose and actively seek the establishment by the governing authorities of such organizations of external, professionally qualified groups of appropriate size for the purpose of providing an independent and continuous program of selective examination, review, evaluation, and audits of the programs and activities of such organizations. Such proposal shall provide that such groups shall be established in accordance with such terms of reference as such governing authority may prescribe and that the reports of such groups on each examination, review, evaluation, or audit shall be submitted directly to such governing authority for transmittal to the representative of each individual member nation. Such proposal shall further include a statement of auditing and reporting standards, as prepared by the Comptroller General of the United States, for the consideration of the governing authority of the international organization concerned to assist in formulating terms of reference for such review and evaluation groups.

(2) In the case of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development and the Asian Development Bank, the President shall, acting through the United States representative to such organizations, propose and actively seek the establishment by the governing authorities of such organizations professionally qualified groups of appropriate size for the purpose of providing an independent and continuous program of selective examination, review, evaluation, and audit of the programs and activities of such organizations. Such proposal shall provide that such groups shall be established in accordance with such terms of reference as such governing authorities may prescribe, and that the reports of such groups on each examination, review, evaluation, or audit shall be submitted directly to such governing authority for transmittal to the representative of each individual member nation. Such proposal shall further include a

statement of auditing and reporting standards, as prepared by the Comptroller General of the United States, for the consideration of the governing authority of the international organization concerned to assist in formulating terms of reference for such review and evaluation groups.

**(f) International Fertilizer Development Center; United States participation and assistance**

The President is hereby authorized to permit United States participation in the International Fertilizer Development Center and is authorized to use any of the funds made available under this part for the purpose of furnishing assistance to the Center on such terms and conditions as he may determine.

**(g) Transfer of funding of technological assistance programs to United Nations Development Program**

It is the sense of the Congress that the President should instruct the appropriate representatives of the United States to the United Nations to encourage the specialized agencies of the United Nations to transfer the funding of technical assistance programs carried out by such agencies to the United Nations Development Program.

**(h) International Food Policy Research Institute; availability of funds, etc.**

The President is authorized to permit the United States to participate in and to use any of the funds made available under subchapter I of this chapter after December 29, 1981, for the purpose of furnishing assistance (on such terms and conditions as the President may determine) to the International Food Policy Research Institute.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §301, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 433; Pub. L. 89-171, pt. I, §106 (a), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 656; Pub. L. 89-583, pt. I, §107(a)-(c), Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 800; Pub. L. 90-137, pt. I, §110(a), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 453; Pub. L. 91-175, pt. I, §108(a), Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 819; Pub. L. 93-189, §9(1), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 718; Pub. L. 94-161, title III, §313(c), Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 866; Pub. L. 95-424, title I, §§102(b)(2)(A), 117(d), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 941, 953; Pub. L. 96-533, title VII, §702, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3156; Pub. L. 97-113, title III, §311(a), title VII, §734(a)(1), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1536, 1560.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (d), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

1981—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 97-113, §734(a)(1), struck out subsec. (b) which limited contributions to United Na-

tions Development Program and restricted assistance to Cuba. See section 2370(f) of this title.

Subsec. (e)(3). Pub. L. 97-113, §734(a)(1), struck out par. (3) which required reports by the President and the General Accounting Office of their evaluation of reports of international organizations to United States representatives on those organizations. See section 2394 of this title.

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 97-113, §311(a), added subsec. (h). 1980—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 96-533, §702(a), required the Comptroller General to report to Congress and the President the results of the audits.

Subsec. (e)(1). Pub. L. 96-533, §702(b)(1)-(3), substituted "organizations of external, professionally" for "organizations a single professionally", "groups" for "group" in three places, "evaluation, and audits" for "and evaluation", and "evaluation, or audit" for "and evaluation".

Subsec. (e)(2). Pub. L. 96-533, §702(b)(4), (5), required audits of programs and activities and reports of professionally qualified groups to include such audits.

Subsec. (e)(3). Pub. L. 96-533, §702(b)(6), required the Comptroller General to include in the reports to Congress and the President his evaluation of the reports received by the United States representatives to the international organizations and related information.

1978—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 95-424 substituted "section 2151t(b) of this title" for "section 2161(d) of this title".

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 95-424 added subsec. (g).

1975—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 94-161 added subsec. (f).

1973—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 93-189 added subsec. (e).

1969—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 91-175 omitted provisions dealing with Israel and Arab governments taking steps toward repatriation of refugees and the extent and success of the United Nations and Arab governments to rectify refugees relief rolls, as criteria for the President to use in determining whether to furnish assistance for such refugees through contributions to the United Nations, omitted provisions dealing with amount of contribution for the fiscal year 1967, and expanded prohibition against the inclusion of members of other guerrilla type organizations or refugees engaged in any act of terrorism.

1967—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 90-137 added subsec. (d).

1966—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 89-583, §107(a), authorized in the case of the Indus Basin Development Executive grants and loans payable as to principal and interest in United States dollars and subject to the provisions of section 2161(d) of this title.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 89-583, §107(b), substituted "United Nations Development Program" for "United Nations Expanded Program of Technical Assistance and the United States Special Fund" and restricted economic or technical assistance to Cuba.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 89-583, §107(c), substituted provisions limiting contributions by the United States for fiscal year 1967 to \$13,300,000, for provisions limiting contributions for calendar year 1966 to \$15,200,000 and prohibited the making of contributions assisting any refugee who is receiving military training as a member of the Palestine Liberation Army.

1965—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 89-171 limited contributions by the United States to the United Nations Relief and Works Agency for Palestine Refugees in the Near East to \$15,200,000 for the calendar year 1966.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under subssecs. (a) and (e)(1) delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency to be exercised only insofar as they pertain to international developmental programs by section 1-102(b) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.



Functions of President under subsecs. (a), (c), and (e)(1), as they relate to Presidential certification concerning United Nations Relief and Works Agency, delegated to Secretary of State by section 1-201(a)(1) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163.

#### USE OF CONTRIBUTIONS FOR PROJECTS IN CUBA

Pub. L. 91-194, title I, §100, Feb. 9, 1970, 84 Stat. 5, provided in part: "That the President shall seek to assure that no contribution to the United Nations Development Program authorized by the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as amended [section 2151 et seq. of this title], shall be used for projects for economic or technical assistance to the Government of Cuba, so long as Cuba is governed by the Castro regime."

Similar provisions were contained in Pub. L. 89-691, title I, §100, Oct. 15, 1966, 80 Stat. 1018; Pub. L. 90-249, title I, §100, Jan. 2, 1968, 81 Stat. 936; Pub. L. 90-581, title I, §100, Oct. 17, 1968, 82 Stat. 1137.

### § 2222. Authorization of appropriations

#### (a) Grants

(1) There are authorized to be appropriated to the President \$270,000,000 for fiscal year 1986 and \$236,084,000 for fiscal year 1987 for grants to carry out the purposes of this part, in addition to funds available under other Acts for such purposes. Of the amount appropriated for each of the fiscal years 1986 and 1987 pursuant to these authorizations—

(A) 59.65 percent shall be for the United Nations Development Program;

(B) 19.30 percent shall be for the United Nations Children's Fund;

(C) 7.20 percent shall be for the International Atomic Energy Agency, except that these funds may be contributed to that Agency only if the Secretary of State determines (and so reports to the Congress) that Israel is not being denied its right to participate in the activities of that Agency;

(D) 5.44 percent shall be for Organization of American States development assistance programs;

(E) 3.51 percent shall be for the United Nations Environment Program;

(F) 0.70 percent shall be for the World Meteorological Organization;

(G) 0.70 percent shall be for the United Nations Capital Development Fund;

(H) 0.35 percent shall be for the United Nations Education and Training Program for Southern Africa;

(I) 0.18 percent shall be for the United Nations Voluntary Fund for the Decade for Women;

(J) 0.07 percent shall be for the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species;

(K) 0.70 percent shall be for the World Food Program;

(L) 0.18 percent shall be for the United Nations Institute for Namibia;

(M) 0.12 percent shall be for the United Nations Trust Fund for South Africa;

(N) 0.04 percent shall be for the United Nations Voluntary Fund for Victims of Torture;

(O) 0.07 percent shall be for the United Nations Industrial Development Organization;

(P) 0.55 percent shall be for the United Nations Development Program Trust Fund to Combat Poverty and Hunger in Africa;

(Q) 0.97 percent shall be for contributions to international conventions and scientific organizations;

(R) 0.18 percent for the United Nations Centre on Human Settlements (Habitat); and

(S) 0.09 percent shall be for the World Heritage Fund.

(2) The Congress reaffirms its support for the work of the Inter-American Commission on Human Rights. To permit such Commission to better fulfill its function of insuring observance and respect for human rights within this hemisphere, not less than \$357,000 of the amount appropriated for fiscal year 1976 and \$358,000 of the amount appropriated for fiscal year 1977, for contributions to the Organization of American States, shall be used only for budgetary support for the Inter-American Commission on Human Rights.

#### (b) Indus Basin Development

(1) There is authorized to be appropriated to the President for loans for Indus Basin Development to carry out the purposes of this section, in addition to funds available under this chapter or any other Act for such purposes, for use beginning in the fiscal year 1969, \$61,220,000. Such amounts are authorized to remain available until expended.

(2) There is authorized to be appropriated to the President for grants for Indus Basin Development, in addition to any other funds available for such purposes, for use in the fiscal year 1974, \$14,500,000, and for use in the fiscal year 1975, \$14,500,000, and for use beginning in the fiscal year 1976, \$27,000,000, which amounts shall remain available until expended. The President shall not exercise any special authority granted to him under section 2360(a) or 2364(a) of this title to transfer any amount appropriated under this paragraph to, and to consolidate such amount with, any funds made available under any other provision of this chapter.

#### (c) Prohibition against contributions for volunteer manpower programs

None of the funds available to carry out this part shall be contributed to any international organization or to any foreign government or agency thereof to pay the costs of developing or operating any volunteer program of such organization, government, or agency relating to the selection, training, and programing of volunteer manpower.

#### (d) to (h) Repealed. Pub. L. 95-424, title VI, § 604, Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 961

#### (i) International Atomic Energy Agency; safeguards and inspections of nuclear fissile facilities and materials

In addition to amounts otherwise available under this section, there are authorized to be appropriated for fiscal year 1976 \$1,000,000 and for fiscal year 1977 \$2,000,000 to be available only for the International Atomic Energy Agency to be used for the purpose of strengthening safeguards and inspections relating to nuclear fissile facilities and materials. Amounts appropriated under this subsection are authorized to remain available until expended.

#### (j) Authorization of appropriations for multilateral and regional drug abuse control programs

In addition to amounts otherwise available under this section for such purposes, there are

authorized to be appropriated to the President \$3,000,000 for fiscal year 1989 to be available only for United States contributions to multilateral and regional drug abuse control programs. Of the amount authorized to be appropriated by this subsection—

(1) \$2,000,000 shall be for a United States contribution to the United Nations Fund for Drug Abuse Control;

(2) \$600,000 shall be for the Organization of American States (OAS) Inter-American Drug Abuse Control Commission (CICAD) Legal Development Project, except that the proportion which such amount bears to the total amount of contributions to this specific project may not exceed the proportion which the United States contribution to the budget of the Organization of American States for that fiscal year bears to the total contributions to the budget of the Organization of American States for that fiscal year; and

(3) \$400,000 shall be for the Organization of American States (OAS) Inter-American Drug Abuse Control Commission (CICAD) Law Enforcement Training Project, except that the proportion which such amount bears to the total amount of contributions to this specific project may not exceed the proportion which the United States contribution to the budget of the Organization of American States for that fiscal year bears to the total contributions to the budget of the Organization of American States for that fiscal year.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 302, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 433; Pub. L. 87-565, pt. I, § 107, Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 259; Pub. L. 88-205, pt. I, § 108, Dec. 16, 1963, 77 Stat. 383; Pub. L. 88-633, pt. I, § 106, Oct. 7, 1964, 78 Stat. 1010; Pub. L. 89-171, pt. I, § 106(b), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 656; Pub. L. 89-583, pt. I, § 107(d), Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 801; Pub. L. 90-137, pt. I, § 110(b), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 454; Pub. L. 90-554, pt. I, § 108, Oct. 8, 1968, 82 Stat. 962; Pub. L. 91-175, pt. I, § 108(b)-(d), Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 819; Pub. L. 92-226, pt. I, § 107, Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 23; Pub. L. 93-189, § 9(2)-(5), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 719; Pub. L. 93-559, § 9, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1798; Pub. L. 94-161, title III, § 313(a), Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 866; Pub. L. 94-329, title V, § 505, June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 764; Pub. L. 95-88, title I, § 118(a), Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 540; Pub. L. 95-424, title I, § 117(a), (b)(1), (c), title VI, § 604, Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 952, 953, 961; Pub. L. 96-53, title I, § 114(a), Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 364; Pub. L. 96-533, title III, § 309, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3148; Pub. L. 97-113, title III, § 311(b), title VII, § 734(a)(1), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1536, 1560; Pub. L. 99-83, title IV, § 402(a), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 217; Pub. L. 99-529, title IV, § 404(2), Oct. 24, 1986, 100 Stat. 3019; Pub. L. 100-690, title IV, § 4107, Nov. 18, 1988, 102 Stat. 4266.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (b), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1988—Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 100-690 added subsec. (j).

1986—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 99-529 substituted "\$236,084,000 for fiscal year 1987" for "\$270,000,000 for fiscal year 1987".

1985—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 99-83 substituted provisions relating to amounts authorized, percentages, and covered programs for fiscal years 1986 and 1987, for provisions relating to amounts authorized, percentages, and covered programs for fiscal years 1982 and 1983.

1981—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 97-113 substituted appropriations of \$218,600,000 for fiscal years 1982 and 1983 for appropriation of \$233,350,000 for fiscal year 1981 and added cls. (A) to (E).

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 97-113 struck out par. (3) which prohibited, for fiscal year 1979, funding of the United Nations Institute for Namibia unless the President found that the money would not be used for Southwest African Peoples Organization.

1980—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 96-533 substituted appropriations authorization of \$233,350,000 for fiscal year 1981 for prior authorization of \$267,280,000 for fiscal year 1980, including \$42,500,000 of this amount for voluntary contributions to the United Nations Relief and Works Agency for Palestine Refugees, increasable to \$52,000,000 upon certification of the President to Congress that members of Organization of Petroleum Exporting Countries have made equivalent matching contributions.

1979—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 96-53 substituted provisions authorizing appropriations of \$267,280,000 for fiscal year 1980, for provisions authorizing appropriations of \$285,450,000 for fiscal year 1979 and provisions respecting availability of funds for United Nations Trust Fund on South Africa, and the Namibia Institute, and availability of appropriations for fiscal year 1978.

1978—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 95-424, § 117(a), (b)(1), substituted "\$285,450,000 for the fiscal year 1979 of which not to exceed \$300,000 shall be available for contributions to the United Nations Trust Fund on South Africa" for "for the fiscal year 1977, \$219,900,000 and for the fiscal year 1978, \$252,000,000"; substituted "fiscal year 1978, not to exceed \$52,000,000" for "fiscal year 1978, not to exceed \$42,500,000", and inserted provision relating to voluntary contributions to the United Nations Relief and Works Agency for Palestine Refugees.

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 95-424, § 117(c), added par. (3).

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 95-424, § 604, struck out subsec. (d) which related to contributions to the United Nations Children's Fund for fiscal years 1976 and 1977.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 95-424, § 604, struck out subsec. (e) which related to added contributions for expansion of technical and vocational training of Arab refugees.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 95-424, § 604, struck out subsec. (f) which related to appropriation of Egyptian pounds for technical and vocational training and other assistance to Arab refugees.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 95-424, § 604, struck out subsec. (g) which related to availability of funds for the International Atomic Energy Agency.

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 95-424, § 604, struck out subsec. (h) which related to prohibition of expenditures for the United Nations Educational, Scientific, and Cultural Organization.

1977—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 95-88 struck out provisions which authorized appropriations of \$127,822,000 for fiscal year 1974, \$165,000,000 for fiscal year 1975, and \$194,500,000 for fiscal year 1976, inserted provisions authorizing an appropriation of \$252,000,000 for fiscal year 1978, and inserted requirement that, of the funds authorized to be appropriated under subsec. (a) for fiscal year 1978, not to exceed \$42,500,000 be available for voluntary contributions to the United Nations Relief and Works Agency for Palestine Refugees.

1976—Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 94-329 added subsec. (i).

1975—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 94-161, § 313(a)(1)(A), (B), authorized appropriations of \$194,500,000 and \$219,900,000 for fiscal years 1976 and 1977, required maximum contribution of \$250,000 to be made to the Namibia Institute, and designated existing provisions as par. (1).

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 94-161, § 313(a)(1)(C), added par. (2).

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 94-161, §313(a)(2), substituted “\$61,220,000” for “\$51,220,000”.

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 94-161, §313(a)(3), authorized appropriations of \$27,000,000 for use beginning in fiscal year 1976.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 94-161, §313(a)(4), substituted appropriations authorization of \$20,000,000 for fiscal years 1976 and 1977, for prior appropriations authorization of \$18,000,000 for fiscal years 1974 and 1975.

1974—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 93-559, §9(a)(1), increased appropriations authorization for fiscal year 1975 to \$165,000,000 from \$150,000,000.

Subsecs. (g), (h). Pub. L. 93-559, §9(a)(2), added subsecs. (g) and (h).

1973—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 93-189, §9(2), substituted “for the fiscal year 1974, \$127,822,000 and for the fiscal year 1975, \$150,000,000”, for “for the fiscal year 1972, \$138,000,000 and for the fiscal year 1973, \$138,000,000”.

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 93-189, §9(3), substituted “for use in the fiscal year 1974, \$14,500,000, and for use in the fiscal year 1975, \$14,500,000”, for “for use in the fiscal year 1972, \$15,000,000, and for use in the fiscal year 1973, \$15,000,000”.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 93-189, §9(4), substituted provisions directing that out of the funds made available for carrying out this part \$18,000,000 be available in each of fiscal years 1974 and 1975 for contributions to the United Nations Children’s Fund, for provisions authorizing the appropriation of \$1,000,000 for fiscal year 1969 for contributions to the United Nations Children’s Fund during the calendar year 1969 and directing that funds made thus available be in addition to funds available under this chapter or any other Act for such contributions and not be taken into account in computing the aggregate amount of United States contributions to such fund for the calendar year 1969.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 93-189, §9(5), substituted “\$2,000,000 for the fiscal year 1974 and \$2,000,000 for the fiscal year 1975”, for “\$1,000,000 for the fiscal year 1972 and \$1,000,000 for the fiscal year 1973”.

1972—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 92-226, §107(a), authorized appropriations of \$138,000,000 for fiscal years 1972 and 1973, and struck out provisions for authorization of \$122,620,000 for fiscal years 1970 and 1971.

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 92-226, §107(b), authorized appropriations of \$15,000,000 for fiscal years 1972 and 1973, and struck out provision for authorization of \$7,530,000 for fiscal years 1970 and 1971; and prohibited the President from exercising any special authority to transfer any amount appropriated under par. (2) to, and to consolidate such amount with, any funds made available under any other provision of this chapter.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 92-226, §107(c), authorized appropriations of \$1,000,000 for fiscal years 1972 and 1973, and struck out provision for authorization of \$1,000,000 for fiscal years 1970 and 1971.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 92-226, §107(d), added subsec. (f).

1969—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 91-175, §108(b), substituted “fiscal year 1970, \$122,620,000, and for the fiscal year 1971, \$122,620,000” for “fiscal year 1969, \$135,000,000”.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 91-175, §108(c), designated existing provisions as par. (1) and added par. (2).

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 91-175, §108(d), added subsec. (e).

1968—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 90-554, §108(a), substituted authorization of \$135,000,000 for fiscal year 1969, for authorization of \$141,000,000 for fiscal year 1968.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 90-554, §108(b), added subsec. (d).

1967—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 90-137, §110(b)(1), substituted authorization of \$141,000,000 for fiscal year 1968, for authorization of \$140,433,000, for fiscal year 1967.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 90-137, §110(b)(2), substituted appropriation authorization of \$51,220,000 for fiscal year 1969, for Indus Basin Development for appropriations authorization of \$1,000,000 for fiscal year 1967, for contributions to United Nations Children’s Fund during calendar year 1967 and for exclusion of such contributions from computation of aggregate amount of United States contributions to the fund during calendar year 1967.

1966—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 89-583 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and (c), substituted in subsec.

(a) “grants” for “use” and authorization of \$140,433,000 for fiscal year 1967 for authorization of \$144,755,000 for fiscal year 1966, and added subsec. (b).

1965—Pub. L. 89-171 substituted “1966” and “\$144,755,000” for “1965” and “\$134,272,400”, respectively.

1964—Pub. L. 88-633 substituted “1965” and “\$134,272,400” for “1964” and “\$136,050,000”, respectively, and prohibited contribution of funds for payment of costs of volunteer manpower programs.

1963—Pub. L. 88-205 substituted “1964” and “\$136,050,000” for “1963” and “\$148,900,000”, respectively.

1962—Pub. L. 87-565 substituted “1963” and “\$148,900,000” for “1962” and “\$153,500,000”, respectively.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1979 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-53 effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 512(a) of Pub. L. 96-53, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under subsec. (a)(1), as they relate to Presidential certification concerning United Nations Relief and Works Agency, delegated to Secretary of State by section 1-201(a)(1) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

#### REPORT TO CONGRESS ON PALESTINE REFUGEE RATION DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM

Section 117(b)(2) of Pub. L. 95-424 which provided that, not later than Jan. 31, 1979, the Secretary of State provide the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Committee on International Relations of the House of Representatives with a full and detailed report on the progress made by the Commissioner-General of the United Nations Relief and Works Agency to improve the ration distribution system so that food to Palestine refugees can be more equitably distributed on the basis of need, rather than entitlement, was repealed by Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, §734(a)(5), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.

#### AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS FOR CONTRIBUTIONS TO THE WORLD ASSEMBLY ON AGING

Section 117(e) of Pub. L. 95-424 provided that: “In addition to amounts otherwise available for such purpose, there are authorized to be appropriated to the President not to exceed \$1,000,000 for contributions to the World Assembly on Aging to be convened under the auspices of the United Nations, except that the amount so contributed may not exceed 25 percent of the expenditures of such Assembly. Amounts appropriated under this subsection [this note] are authorized to remain available until expended.”

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 42 section 13388.

### § 2223. Indus Basin development

In the event that funds made available under this chapter (other than subchapter II of this chapter) are used by or under the supervision of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development in furtherance of the development of the Indus Basin through the program of cooperation among South Asian and other countries of the free world, which is designed to pro-

mote economic growth and political stability in South Asia, such funds may be used in accordance with requirements, standards, or procedures established by the Bank concerning completion of plans and cost estimates and determination of feasibility, rather than with requirements, standards, or procedures, concerning such matters set forth in this chapter or other Acts; and such funds may also be used without regard to the provisions of section 1241(b) of title 46, Appendix, whenever the President determines that such provisions cannot be fully satisfied without seriously impeding or preventing accomplishment of the purposes of such programs: *Provided*, That compensating allowances are made in the administration of other programs to the same or other areas to which the requirements of said section 1241(b) of title 46, Appendix, are applicable.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 303, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 433.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

#### REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER II DEEMED TO EXCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter II of this chapter are deemed to exclude parts IV (§ 2346 et seq.), VI (§ 2348 et seq.), and VIII (§ 2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II, and references to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2394 of this title.

### § 2224. Repealed. Pub. L. 95-424, title VI, § 604, Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 961

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 304, as added Pub. L. 90-137, pt. I, § 110(c), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 454, related to exploration by the President of means and prospects of establishing improved peacekeeping arrangements for standby forces maintained by the United Nations.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as an Effective Date of 1978 Amendment note under section 2151 of this title.

### § 2225. Integration of women

The President is requested to instruct each representative of the United States to each international organization of which the United States is a member (including but not limited to the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, the Asian Development Bank, the Inter-American Development Bank, the International Monetary Fund, the United Nations, and the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development) to carry out their duties with respect to such organizations in such a manner as to encourage and promote the integration of women into the national economies of member and recipient countries and into professional and policy-making positions within such organi-

zations, thereby improving the status of women. The President is further requested, in making United States contributions to such organizations, to take into account the progress, or lack of progress, of such organizations in adopting and implementing policies and practices which encourage and promote the integration of women into the national economies of member and recipient countries, and into professional and policy-making positions within such organizations, in accordance with the World Plan of Action of the Decade for Women.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 305, as added Pub. L. 93-559, § 54, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1818; amended Pub. L. 94-161, title III, § 313(b), Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 866; Pub. L. 95-88, title I, § 118(b), Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 540.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1977—Pub. L. 95-88 inserted request that President, in making United States contributions, take into account the progress, or lack of progress, of organizations in adopting and implementing policies and practices which encourage and promote the integration of women into the national economies of member and recipient countries, and into professional and policy-making positions within such organizations, in accordance with the World Plan of Action of the Decade for Women.

1975—Pub. L. 94-161 corrected the credit to read “pt. I” rather than “pt. III”.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency to be exercised only insofar as they pertain to international developmental programs by section 1-102(b) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of State, with certain exceptions, by section 1-201(a)(1) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163.

Functions of President under this section, insofar as it relates to certain financial institutions, delegated to Secretary of the Treasury to be exercised in consultation with Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency by section 1-501(a)(1), (c) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163.

### § 2226. Reports on international organizations

#### (a) Annual reports to Congress; time of submission

The annual reports to the Congress under section 262a of this title, shall be submitted within nine months after the end of the fiscal year to which they relate.

#### (b) Semiannual reports to Congress; time of submission; agency and organization lists; prompt reports of agency heads to Director of Office of Management and Budget; “contribution” defined

(1) The President shall submit semiannual reports to the Congress listing all voluntary contributions by the United States Government to international organizations. One of the semiannual reports shall be submitted no later than July 1 and shall list all contributions made during the first six months of the then current fiscal year. The other semiannual report shall be submitted no later than January 1 and shall list all contributions made during the last six months of the preceding fiscal year. Each such

report shall specify the Government agency making the voluntary contribution, the international organization to which the contribution was made, the amount and form of the contribution, and the purpose of the contribution. Contributions shall be listed on both an agency-by-agency basis and an organization-by-organization basis.

(2) In order to facilitate the preparation of the reports required by paragraph (1), the head of any Government agency which makes a voluntary contribution to any international organization shall promptly report that contribution to the Director of the Office of Management and Budget.

(3) As used in this subsection, the term “contribution” means any contribution of any kind, including the furnishing of funds or other financial support, services of any kind (including the use of experts or other personnel), or commodities, equipment, supplies, or other materiel.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §306, as added Pub. L. 96-533, title VII, §703, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3157.)

#### EX. ORD. NO. 12374. DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Ex. Ord. No. 12374, July 28, 1982, 47 F.R. 32903, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 12408, Feb. 23, 1983, 48 F.R. 8035; Ex. Ord. No. 12553, Feb. 25, 1986, 51 F.R. 7237, provided:

By the authority vested in me as President of the United States of America by Section 306 of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as amended (22 U.S.C. 2226), and Section 301 of Title 3 of the United States Code, and to provide for reports to the Congress on United States contributions to international organizations, it is hereby ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. The functions vested in the President by Section 306(b)(1) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as amended (22 U.S.C. 2226(b)(1)), are delegated to the Secretary of State.

SEC. 2. The Director of the Office of Management and Budget shall furnish to the Secretary of State those reports which the Director receives from agencies pursuant to the provisions of Section 306(b)(2) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as amended (22 U.S.C. 2226(b)(2)).

SEC. 3. [Revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 12553, Feb. 25, 1986, 51 F.R. 7237.]

RONALD REAGAN.

### § 2227. Withholding of United States proportionate share for certain programs of international organizations

#### (a) Covered programs

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, none of the funds authorized to be appropriated by this part shall be available for the United States proportionate share for programs for Burma, Iraq, North Korea, Syria, Libya, Iran, Cuba, or the Palestine Liberation Organization or for projects whose purpose is to provide benefits to the Palestine Liberation Organization or entities associated with it.

#### (b) Review and report by Secretary of State

The Secretary of State—

(1) shall review, at least annually, the budgets and accounts of all international organizations receiving payments of any funds authorized to be appropriated by this part; and

(2) shall report to the appropriate committees of the Congress the amounts of funds expended by each such organization for the purposes described in subsection (a) of this sec-

tion and the amount contributed by the United States to each such organization.

### (c) Exceptions for International Atomic Energy Agency and United Nations Children's Fund

The limitations of subsection (a) of this section shall not apply to contributions to the International Atomic Energy Agency or the United Nations Children's Fund (UNICEF).

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §307, as added Pub. L. 99-83, title IV, §403, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 219; amended Pub. L. 103-236, title IV, §431(a), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 459.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103-236, §431(a)(1), substituted “Burma, Iraq, North Korea, Syria” for “the South-West Africa People's Organization”.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 103-236, §431(a)(2), added subsec. (c).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as an Effective Date of 1985 Amendment note under section 2151-1 of this title.

### PART IV—SUPPORTING ASSISTANCE

#### REFERENCES TO PART IV OF SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED REFERENCES TO PART IV OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to part IV of subchapter I of this chapter, or any sections thereof, are deemed references to part IV of subchapter II (§2346 et seq.) of this chapter, or to appropriate sections thereof. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title.

### §§ 2241 to 2243. Repealed. Pub. L. 92-226, pt. II, § 202(b), Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 27

Section 2241, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §401, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 434; Pub. L. 89-583, pt. I, §108(a), Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 801; Pub. L. 90-137, pt. I, §111(a), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 454, provided for general authority and limitation on countries to receive assistance.

Section 2242, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §402, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 434; Pub. L. 87-565, pt. I, §108, Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 259; Pub. L. 88-205, pt. I, §109, Dec. 16, 1963, 77 Stat. 383; Pub. L. 88-633, pt. I, §107, Oct. 7, 1964, 78 Stat. 1010; Pub. L. 89-171, pt. I, §107, Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 656; Pub. L. 89-371, §1, Mar. 18, 1966, 80 Stat. 74; Pub. L. 89-583, pt. I, §108(b), Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 801; Pub. L. 90-137, pt. I, §111(b), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 454; Pub. L. 90-554, pt. I, §109, Oct. 8, 1968, 82 Stat. 962; Pub. L. 91-175, pt. I, §109, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 819; Pub. L. 91-652, §5, Jan. 5, 1971, 84 Stat. 1942, provided for authorization of appropriations, executive approval of budgeting of proceeds by Vietnam for economic assistance projects or programs, and executive approval of accommodation rate of exchange between United States and Vietnam.

Section 2243, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §403, as added Pub. L. 90-137, pt. I, §111(c), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 454, provided for United States refund claims.

For subject matters of sections 2241 to 2243 of this title, see sections 2346, 2346a, and 2346b of this title, respectively.

### PART V—CONTINGENCIES

#### PART REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This part is referred to in section 2394-1 of this title.

### § 2261. Authorization of appropriations

#### (a) Emergency assistance; reports to Speaker of House and committees of Senate

(1) Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the President is authorized to use funds

made available to carry out any provision of this chapter (other than the provisions of part I of this subchapter) in order to provide, for any unanticipated contingencies, assistance authorized by subchapter I of this chapter in accordance with the provisions applicable to the furnishing of such assistance, except that the authority of this subsection may not be used to authorize the use of more than \$25,000,000 during any fiscal year.

(2) The President shall report promptly to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and to the Committee on Foreign Relations and to the Committee on Appropriations of the Senate each time he exercises the authority contained in this subsection.

**(b) Repealed. Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(1), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560**

**(c) Prohibition against payment of gifts to foreign officials**

No part of this fund shall be used to pay for any gifts to any officials of any foreign government made heretofore or hereafter.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 451, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 434; Pub. L. 87-565, pt. I, § 109, Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 259; Pub. L. 88-205, pt. I, § 110, Dec. 16, 1963, 77 Stat. 384; Pub. L. 88-633, pt. I, § 108, Oct. 7, 1964, 78 Stat. 1010; Pub. L. 89-171, pt. I, § 108, Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 656; Pub. L. 89-371, § 2, Mar. 18, 1966, 80 Stat. 74; Pub. L. 89-583, pt. I, § 109, Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 801; Pub. L. 90-137, pt. I, § 112, Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 455; Pub. L. 90-554, pt. I, § 110, Oct. 8, 1968, 82 Stat. 962; Pub. L. 91-175, pt. I, § 110, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 819; Pub. L. 91-652, § 6(a), Jan. 5, 1971, 84 Stat. 1942; Pub. L. 92-226, pt. I, § 108, Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 24; Pub. L. 93-189, § 10, Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 719; Pub. L. 93-559, § 28(c), Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1803; Pub. L. 94-329, title V, § 503(2), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 763; Pub. L. 95-92, § 2, Aug. 4, 1977, 91 Stat. 614; Pub. L. 95-384, § 2, Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 730; Pub. L. 96-92, § 2(b), Oct. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 701; Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(1), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560; Pub. L. 101-513, title V, § 588, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2056.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a)(1), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

#### REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§ 2346 et seq.), VI (§ 2348 et seq.), and VIII (§ 2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

#### REFERENCES TO PART I DEEMED TO INCLUDE SECTION 2293

References to part I of this subchapter are deemed to include a reference to section 2293 of this title. See section 2293(d)(1) of this title.

#### AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 101-513 struck out "not to exceed \$10,000,000 of" after "authorized to use" and "in

any fiscal year" after "funds made available", substituted "unanticipated contingencies" for "emergency purposes", and directed the amendment of subsec. (a) by inserting before the period " , except that the authority of this subsection may not be used to authorize the use of more than \$25,000,000 during any fiscal year", which was executed by making the insertion before the period in par. (1) to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

1981—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 97-113 struck out subsec. (b) which required quarterly Presidential reports to Committees of Senate and Speaker of House on the programming and obligation of funds under this section.

1979—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 96-92 designated existing provisions as par. (1), substituted authorization of \$10,000,000 when made available in any fiscal year for emergency purposes for appropriation authorization of \$5,000,000 for emergency purposes in fiscal year 1979, and deleted provision making appropriated amounts available until expended.

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 96-92 added par. (2).

1978—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 95-384 substituted "fiscal year 1979 not to exceed \$5,000,000" for "fiscal year 1978 not to exceed \$5,000,000".

1977—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 95-92 substituted provisions authorizing appropriations of not to exceed \$5,000,000 for fiscal year 1978, for provisions authorizing appropriations of not to exceed \$5,000,000 for fiscal years 1976 and 1977.

1976—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94-329 substituted "fiscal year 1976 not to exceed \$5,000,000 and for the fiscal year 1977 not to exceed \$5,000,000" for "fiscal year 1975 not to exceed \$5,000,000," and "authorized by subchapter I of this chapter for any emergency" for "authorized by this subchapter or by section 2399 of this title for any emergency" and inserted provision authorizing that funds appropriated remain available until expended.

1974—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 93-559 substituted appropriations authorization of \$5,000,000 for fiscal year 1975 for prior authorization of \$30,000,000 for fiscal years 1974, and 1975, and authorized assistance under section 2399 of this title and for any emergency purpose.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 93-559 substantially reenacted subsec. (b) provisions, substituting "submit" for "provide".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 93-559 added subsec. (c).

1973—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 93-189 substituted provisions authorizing the appropriation of not to exceed \$30,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 1974 and 1975, for provisions authorizing the appropriation of not to exceed \$30,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 1972 and 1973, substituted "to provide assistance authorized by this subchapter primarily for disaster relief purposes, in accordance with the provisions applicable to the furnishing of such assistance", for "for use by the President for assistance authorized by this subchapter in accordance with the provisions applicable to the furnishing of such assistance, when he determines such use to be important to the national interest", and struck out a proviso for the use of \$15,000,000, in addition to any other available funds, out of the funds appropriated for fiscal year 1971 for the flood victims of the East Pakistan flood.

1972—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 92-226 authorized appropriations not to exceed \$30,000,000 for fiscal years 1972 and 1973, and struck out provision for authorization of not to exceed \$15,000,000 for fiscal year 1970, and not to exceed \$30,000,000 for fiscal year 1971.

1971—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 91-652 substituted "1971 not to exceed \$30,000,000" for "1971 not to exceed \$15,000,000", and inserted proviso which required \$15,000,000 of the amount authorized for the fiscal year 1971 to be used for the relief of cyclone, etc., victims in East Pakistan.

1969—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 91-175 substituted "fiscal year 1970 not to exceed \$15,000,000, and for the fiscal year 1971 not to exceed \$15,000,000" for "fiscal year 1968 not to exceed \$50,000,000, and for the fiscal year 1969 not to exceed \$10,000,000".

1968—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 90-554 authorized an appropriation of \$10,000,000 for fiscal year 1969.

1967—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 90-137 substituted “1968” and “\$50,000,000” for “1967” and “\$110,000,000”, respectively.

1966—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 89-583, §109(a), substituted “1967” and “\$110,000,000” for “1966” and “\$150,000,000”, respectively, and struck out second and third sentences which authorized withholding of assistance, from fiscal year 1966 funds, to any country permitting transportation of equipment, materials, or commodities to or from North Vietnam unless contrary to national interest of United States and authorized the appropriation of such sums, not to exceed \$89,000,000, as may be necessary in the fiscal year 1966 for programs authorized by subchapters I and II of this chapter, to the President for use in Southeast Asia.

Pub. L. 89-371 substituted “\$150,000,000” for “\$50,000,000” and authorized withholding of assistance, from fiscal 1966 funds, to any country permitting transportation of equipment, materials, or commodities to or from North Vietnam unless contrary to national interest of United States.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 89-583, §109(b), struck out “the first sentence of” before “subsection (a)”.

1965—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 89-171, §108(a), substituted “1966” and “\$50,000,000” for “1965” and “\$150,000,000”, respectively, and authorized the appropriation of such sums, not to exceed \$89,000,000, as may be necessary in the fiscal year 1966 for programs authorized by subchapters I and II of this chapter, to the President for use in Southeast Asia.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 89-171, §108(b), substituted “the first sentence of subsection (a) of this section” for “this section”.

1964—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 88-633 substituted “1965” and “\$150,000,000” for “1964” and “\$160,000,000”, respectively.

1963—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 88-205 substituted “1964” and “\$160,000,000” for “1963” and “\$300,000,000”, respectively.

1962—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 87-565, §109(a), substituted “1963” for “1962”.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 87-565, §109(b), substituted “provide quarterly reports to” for “keep”, and “on the programming and the obligation” for “currently informed of the use”.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of State by section 1-201(a)(2) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

#### APPROPRIATION FOR DISASTER RELIEF OF UNALLOCATED EXCESS FOREIGN CURRENCIES HELD IN PAKISTAN

Section 6(b) of Pub. L. 91-652 authorized the appropriation of excess foreign currencies held in Pakistan not allocated on Jan. 5, 1971, for a period of one year from such date to help Pakistan withstand the disaster which had occurred.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2360, 2413 of this title.

### § 2262. Transferred

#### CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §494, formerly §452, as added Pub. L. 93-333, §2(2), July 8, 1974, 88 Stat. 290; renumbered Pub. L. 94-161, title I, §101(4), Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 850, authorizing appropriations for disaster relief in Pakistan and Nicaragua, was transferred to section 2292c of this title.

#### PART VI—CENTRAL AMERICA DEMOCRACY, PEACE, AND DEVELOPMENT INITIATIVE

### § 2271. Statement of policy

#### (a) Congressional findings

The Congress finds that—

(1) the building of democracy, the restoration of peace, the improvement of living conditions, and the application of equal justice under law in Central America are important to the interests of the United States and the community of American States; and

(2) the interrelated issues of social and human progress, economic growth, political reform, and regional security must be effectively dealt with to assure a democratic and economically and politically secure Central America.

#### (b) Policy requirements

(1) The achievement of democracy, respect for human rights, peace, and equitable economic growth depends primarily on the cooperation and the human and economic resources of the people and governments of Central America. The Congress recognizes that the United States can make a significant contribution to such peaceful and democratic development through a consistent and coherent policy which includes a long-term commitment of assistance. This policy should be designed to support actively—

(A) democracy and political reform, including opening the political process to all members of society;

(B) full observance of internationally recognized human rights, including free elections, freedom of the press, freedom of association, and the elimination of all human rights abuses;

(C) leadership development, including training and educational programs to improve public administration and the administration of justice;

(D) land reform, reform in tax systems, encouragement of private enterprise and individual initiative, creation of favorable investment climates, curbing corruption where it exists, and spurring balanced trade;

(E) the establishment of the rule of law and an effective judicial system; and

(F) the termination of extremist violence by both the left and the right as well as vigorous action to prosecute those guilty of crimes and the prosecution to the extent possible of past offenders.

(2) The policy described in paragraph (1) should also promote equitable economic growth and development, including controlling the flight of capital and the effective use of foreign assistance and adhering to approved programs for economic stabilization and fiscal responsibility. Finally, this policy should foster dialog and negotiations—

(A) to achieve peace based upon the objectives of democratization, reduction of armament, an end to subversion, and the withdrawal of foreign military forces and advisers; and

(B) to provide a security shield against violence and intimidation.

(3) It is the purpose of this part to establish the statutory framework and to authorize the appropriations and financing necessary to carry out the policy described in this section.

#### (c) Additional Congressional findings

The Congress finds, therefore, that the people of the United States are willing to sustain and

expand a program of economic and military assistance in Central America if the recipient countries can demonstrate progress toward and a commitment to these goals.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 461, as added Pub. L. 99-83, title VII, § 701, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 234.)

#### CODIFICATION

Another section 461 of Pub. L. 87-195 is classified to section 2281 of this title.

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 2271, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 461, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 434; Pub. L. 87-565, pt. I, § 110, Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 259; Pub. L. 90-137, pt. I, § 113, Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 455, related to emphasis on programs in agrarian countries which reach people who are engaged in agrarian pursuits, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 95-424, title VI, § 604, Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 961, eff. Oct. 1, 1978.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Part effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as an Effective Date of 1985 Amendment note under section 2151-1 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2272 of this title.

### § 2272. Conditions on furnishing assistance

The President shall ensure that assistance authorized by this chapter and the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.] to Central American countries is furnished in a manner which fosters demonstrated progress toward and commitment to the objectives set forth in section 2271 of this title. Where necessary to achieve this purpose, the President shall impose conditions on the furnishing of such assistance. In carrying out this section, the President shall consult with the Congress in regard to progress toward the objectives set forth in section 2271 of this title, and any conditions imposed on the furnishing of assistance in furtherance of those objectives.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 462, as added Pub. L. 99-83, title VII, § 701, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 235.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

The Arms Export Control Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 90-629, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1320, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 39 (§ 2751 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2751 of this title and Tables.

#### CODIFICATION

Another section 462 of Pub. L. 87-195 is classified to section 2282 of this title.

### § 2273. Peace process in Central America

The Congress—

(1) strongly supports the initiatives taken by the Contadora group and the resulting Document of Objectives which has been agreed to by Costa Rica, El Salvador, Guatemala, Honduras, and Nicaragua and which sets forth a

framework for negotiating a peaceful settlement to the conflict and turmoil in the region; and

(2) finds that the United States should provide such assistance and support as may be appropriate in helping to reach comprehensive and verifiable final agreements, based on the Document of Objectives, which will ensure peaceful and enduring solutions to the Central American conflicts.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 463, as added Pub. L. 99-83, title VII, § 701, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 235.)

#### CODIFICATION

Another section 463 of Pub. L. 87-195 is classified to section 2283 of this title.

### § 2274. Economic assistance coordination

#### (a) Congressional findings

The Congress finds that participation by Central American countries in an effective forum for dialog on, and the continuous review and advancement of, Central America’s political, economic, and social development would foster cooperation between the United States and Central American countries.

#### (b) Sense of Congress; Central American Development Organization; establishment, etc.

It is the sense of the Congress that—

(1) the President should enter into negotiations with the countries of Central America to establish a Central American Development Organization (hereafter in this section referred to as the “Organization”) to help provide a continuous and coherent approach to the development of the Central American region; and

(2) the establishment of the Organization should be based upon the following principles:

(A) Participation in the Organization should be open to the United States, other donors, and those Central American countries that commit themselves to, among other things, respecting internationally recognized human rights, building democracy, and encouraging equitable economic growth through policy reforms.

(B) The Organization should be structured to include representatives from both the public and private sectors, including representatives from the labor, agriculture, and business communities.

(C) The Organization should meet periodically to carry out the functions described in subparagraphs (D) and (E) of this paragraph and should be supported by a limited professional secretariat.

(D) The Organization should make recommendations affecting Central American countries on such matters as—

(i) political, economic, and social development objectives, including the strengthening of democratic pluralism and the safeguarding of internationally recognized human rights;

(ii) mobilization of resources and external assistance needs; and

(iii) reform of economic policies and structures.



(E) The Organization should have the capacity for monitoring country performance on recommendations issued in accordance with subparagraph (D) of this paragraph and for evaluating progress toward meeting such country objectives.

(F) To the maximum extent practicable, the United States should follow the recommendations of the Organization in disbursing bilateral economic assistance for any Central American country. No more than 75 percent of such United States assistance in any fiscal year should be disbursed until the recommendations of the Organization for that fiscal year have been made final and communicated to the donor countries. The limitation on disbursements contained in the preceding sentence should apply only to recommendations made final and communicated to donor countries prior to the fourth quarter of such fiscal year. The United States representative to the Organization should urge other donor countries to similarly implement the recommendations of the Organization.

(G) The administrator of the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter, or his designee, should represent the United States Government in the Organization and should carry out his functions in that capacity under the continuous supervision and general direction of the Secretary of State.

**(c) Participation of President in Organization**

Subject to subsection (d)(2) of this section, the President is authorized to participate in the Organization.

**(d) Preparation and transmission of proposal for implementation of provisions**

(1) The administrator of the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter, under the supervision and direction of the Secretary of State, shall prepare a detailed proposal to carry out this section and shall keep the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate fully and currently informed concerning the development of this proposal.

(2) The President shall transmit to the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate a copy of the text of any agreement, which he proposes to sign, that would provide for the establishment of and United States participation in the Organization no less than sixty days prior to his signature. During that sixty-day period there shall be full and formal consultations with and review by those committees in accordance with procedures applicable to reprogramming notifications pursuant to section 2394-1 of this title.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 464, as added Pub. L. 99-83, title VII, § 701, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 235.)

REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§ 2346 et seq.), VI (§ 2348 et seq.), and VIII (§ 2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter,

and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

CODIFICATION

Another section 464 of Pub. L. 87-195 is classified to section 2284 of this title.

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

**§ 2275. Authorization of appropriations**

**(a) Fiscal years 1988 and 1989**

In addition to amounts otherwise available for such purposes, there are authorized to be appropriated to the President, for the purpose of furnishing nonmilitary assistance for Central American countries, \$1,200,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 1988 and 1989, which are authorized to remain available until expended.

**(b) Transfer of funds**

For the purpose of providing the assistance described in subsection (a) of this section, funds appropriated pursuant to the authorizations in that subsection may be transferred by the President for obligation in accordance with the authorities of subchapter I of this chapter (including part IV of subchapter II of this chapter), the Peace Corps Act [22 U.S.C. 2501 et seq.], the Migration and Refugee Assistance Act of 1962 [22 U.S.C. 2601 et seq.], the United States Information and Education Exchange Act of 1948 [22 U.S.C. 1431 et seq.], the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2451 et seq.], the National Endowment for Democracy Act [22 U.S.C. 4411 et seq.], and the State Department Basic Authorities Act of 1956.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 465, as added Pub. L. 99-83, title VII, § 701, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 237.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Peace Corps Act, referred to in subsec. (b), is Pub. L. 87-293, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 612, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 34 (§ 2501 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2501 of this title and Tables.

The Migration and Refugee Assistance Act of 1962, referred to in subsec. (b), is Pub. L. 87-510, June 28, 1962, 76 Stat. 121, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 36 (§ 2601 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2601 of this title and Tables.

The United States Information and Education Exchange Act of 1948, referred to in subsec. (b), probably means the United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948, which is act Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, 62 Stat. 6, as amended, and is classified generally to chapter 18 (§ 1431 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1431 of this title and Tables.

The Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (b), is Pub. L. 87-256, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 527, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 33 (§ 2451 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2451 of this title and Tables.

The National Endowment for Democracy Act, referred to in subsec. (b), is title V of Pub. L. 98-164, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1039, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter II (§4411 et seq.) of chapter 54 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4411 of this title and Tables.

The State Department Basic Authorities Act of 1956, referred to in subsec. (b), is act Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, 70 Stat. 890, as amended, which enacted sections 2651a, 2669 to 2672, 2673 to 2679a, 2680, 2680a, 2684, 2687 to 2690, 2692, 2695, and 2696 to 2724 of this title and chapters 53 (§4301 et seq.), 53A (§4341 et seq.), and 53B (§4351 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1956 Amendment note set out under section 2651 of this title and Tables.

REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE  
CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

CODIFICATION

Another section 465 of Pub. L. 87-195 is classified to section 2285 of this title.

**§ 2276. “Central American countries” defined**

For the purposes of this part, the term “Central American countries” includes Belize, Costa Rica, El Salvador, Guatemala, Honduras, Nicaragua, Panama, and regional programs which benefit such countries.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §466, as added Pub. L. 99-83, title VII, §701, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 237.)

CODIFICATION

Another section 466 of Pub. L. 87-195 is classified to section 2286 of this title.

PART VII—DEBT-FOR-NATURE EXCHANGES

PART REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This part is referred to in title 7 section 1738k.

**§ 2281. “Debt-for-nature exchange” defined**

For purpose of this part, the term “debt-for-nature exchange” means the cancellation or redemption of the foreign debt of the government of a country in exchange for—

- (1) that government’s making available local currencies (including through the issuance of bonds) which are used only for eligible projects involving the conservation or protection of the environment in that country (as described in section 2283 of this title); or
- (2) that government’s financial resource or policy commitment to take certain specified actions to ensure the restoration, protection, or sustainable use of natural resources within that country; or
- (3) a combination of assets and actions under both paragraphs (1) and (2).

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §461 [471], as added Pub. L. 101-240, title VII, §711, Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2521.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 2283 of this title, referred to in par. (1), was in the original “section 463”, meaning section 463 of

Pub. L. 87-195, which has been translated as meaning section 463 of Pub. L. 87-195 relating to eligible projects rather than section 463 of Pub. L. 87-195, relating to the peace process in Central America, which is classified to section 2273 of this title.

CODIFICATION

Another section 461 of Pub. L. 87-195 is classified to section 2271 of this title.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 2281, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §471, as added Pub. L. 89-583, pt. I, §110, Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 802, related to agreements with less developed countries for establishment of Joint Commissions on Rural Development, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 95-424, title VI, §604, Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 961, effective Oct. 1, 1978.

**§ 2282. Assistance for commercial debt exchanges**

(a) The Administrator of the Agency for International Development is authorized to furnish assistance, in the form of grants on such terms and conditions as may be necessary, to non-governmental organizations for the purchase on the open market of discounted commercial debt of a foreign government of an eligible country which will be canceled or redeemed under the terms of an agreement with that government as part of a debt-for-nature exchange.

(b) Notwithstanding any other provision of law, a grantee (or any subgrantee) of the grants referred to in subsection (a) of this section may retain, without deposit in the Treasury of the United States and without further appropriation by Congress, interest earned on the proceeds of any resulting debt-for-nature exchange pending the disbursements of such proceeds and interest for approved program purposes, which may include the establishment of an endowment, the income of which is used for such purposes.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §462 [472], as added Pub. L. 101-240, title VII, §711, Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2521.)

CODIFICATION

Another section 462 of Pub. L. 87-195 is classified to section 2272 of this title.

**§ 2283. Eligible projects**

(a) The Administrator of the Agency for International Development shall seek to ensure that debt-for-nature exchanges under this part support one or more of the following activities by either the host government, a local private conservation group, or a combination thereof:

- (1) restoration, protection, or sustainable use of the world’s oceans and atmosphere;
- (2) restoration, protection, or sustainable use of diverse animal and plant species;
- (3) establishment, restoration, protection, and maintenance of parks and reserves;
- (4) development and implementation of sound systems of natural resource management;
- (5) development and support of local conservation programs;
- (6) training programs to strengthen conservation institutions and increase scientific, technical, and managerial capabilities of individuals and organizations involved in conservation efforts;
- (7) efforts to generate knowledge, increase understanding, and enhance public commitment to conservation;

(8) design and implementation of sound programs of land and ecosystem management; and

(9) promotion of regenerative approaches in farming, forestry, fishing, and watershed management.

(b)(1) In cooperation with nongovernmental organizations, the Administrator of the Agency for International Development shall seek to identify those areas, which because of an imminent threat, are in particular need of immediate attention to prevent the loss of unique biological life or valuable ecosystem.

(2) The Administrator of the Agency for International Development shall encourage as many eligible countries as possible to propose such exchanges with the purpose of demonstrating to a large number of governments the feasibility and benefits of sustainable development.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 463 [473], as added Pub. L. 101-240, title VII, § 711, Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2522.)

#### CODIFICATION

Another section 463 of Pub. L. 87-195 is classified to section 2273 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2281 of this title.

### § 2284. Eligible countries

In order for a foreign country to be eligible to participate in a debt-for-nature exchange under this part, the Administrator of the Agency for International Development shall determine that—

(1) the host country is fully committed to the long-term viability of the program or project that is to be undertaken through the debt-for-nature exchange;

(2) a long-term plan has been prepared by the host country, or private conservation group, which adequately provides for the long-term viability of the program or project that is to be undertaken through the debt-for-nature exchange or that such a plan will be prepared in a timely manner; and

(3) there is a government agency or a local nongovernmental organization, or combination thereof, in the host country with the capability, commitment, and record of environmental concern to oversee the long-term viability of the program or project that is to be undertaken through the debt-for-nature exchange.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 464 [474], as added Pub. L. 101-240, title VII, § 711, Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2522.)

#### CODIFICATION

Another section 464 of Pub. L. 87-195 is classified to section 2274 of this title.

### § 2285. Terms and conditions

#### (a) Fulfillment upon final approval by Administrator

The terms and conditions for making grants under this part shall be deemed to be fulfilled upon final approval by the Administrator of the

Agency for International Development of the debt-for-nature exchange, a certification by the nongovernmental organization that the host government has accepted the terms of the exchange, and that an agreement has been reached to cancel the commercial debt in an agreed upon fashion.

#### (b) Grants intended to complement assistance otherwise available

Grants made under this section are intended to complement, and not substitute for, assistance otherwise available to a foreign country under this chapter or any other provision of law.

#### (c) Prohibition against acceptance of title or interest in land as condition on debt exchange

The United States Government is prohibited from accepting title or interest in any land in a foreign country as a condition on the debt exchange.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 465 [475], as added Pub. L. 101-240, title VII, § 711, Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2522.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (b), was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

#### CODIFICATION

Another section 465 of Pub. L. 87-195 is classified to section 2275 of this title.

### § 2286. Pilot program for sub-Saharan Africa

#### (a) List of areas of severely degraded national resources or of biological or ecological importance

The Administrator of the Agency for International Development, in cooperation with nongovernmental conservation organizations, shall invite the government of each country in sub-Saharan Africa to submit a list of those areas of severely degraded national resources which threaten human survival and well-being and the opportunity for future economic growth or those areas of biological or ecological importance within the territory of that country.

#### (b) Assessment of list; agreement for future use of areas

The Administrator of the Agency for International Development shall assess the list submitted by each country under subsection (a) of this section and shall seek to reach agreement with the host country for the restoration and future sustainable use of those areas.

#### (c) Grants for purchase of discounted commercial debt on open market; retention of interest by grantee

(1) The Administrator of the Agency for International Development is authorized to make grants, on such terms and conditions as may be necessary, to nongovernmental organizations for the purchase on the open market of discounted commercial debt of a foreign government of an eligible sub-Saharan country in exchange for commitments by that government to

restore natural resources identified by the host country under subsection (a) of this section or for commitments to develop plans for sustainable use of such resources.

(2) Notwithstanding any other provision of law, a grantee (or any subgrantee) of the grants referred to in section (a)<sup>1</sup> may retain, without deposit in the Treasury of the United States and without further appropriation by Congress, interest earned on the proceeds of any resulting debt-for-nature exchange pending the disbursements of such proceeds and interest for approved program purposes, which may include the establishment of an endowment, the income of which is used for such purposes.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 466 [476], as added Pub. L. 101-240, title VII, § 711, Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2523.)

#### CODIFICATION

Another section 466 of Pub. L. 87-195 is classified to section 2276 of this title.

### PART VIII—INTERNATIONAL NARCOTICS CONTROL

#### PART REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This part is referred to in sections 2318, 2357, 2392, 2394-1 of this title.

### § 2291. Policy, general authorities, coordination, foreign police actions, definitions, and other provisions

#### (a) Policy and general authorities

##### (1) Statements of policy

(A) International narcotics trafficking poses an unparalleled transnational threat in today's world, and its suppression is among the most important foreign policy objectives of the United States.

(B) Under the Single Convention on Narcotic Drugs, 1961, and under the United Nations Convention Against Illicit Traffic in Narcotic Drugs and Psychotropic Substances, the parties are required to criminalize certain drug-related activities, provide appropriately severe penalties, and cooperate in the extradition of accused offenders.

(C) International narcotics control programs should include, as priority goals, the suppression of the illicit manufacture of and trafficking in narcotic and psychotropic drugs, money laundering, and precursor chemical diversion, and the progressive elimination of the illicit cultivation of the crops from which narcotic and psychotropic drugs are derived.

(D) The international community should provide assistance, where appropriate, to those producer and transit countries which require assistance in discharging these primary obligations.

(E) The objective of the United States in dealing with the problem of international money laundering is to ensure that countries adopt comprehensive domestic measures against money laundering and cooperate with each other in narcotics money laundering investigations, prosecutions, and related forfeiture actions.

(F) Effective international cooperation is necessary to control the illicit cultivation, production, and smuggling of, trafficking in, and abuse of narcotic and psychotropic drugs.

(2) In order to promote such cooperation, the President is authorized to conclude agreements, including reciprocal maritime agreements, with other countries to facilitate control of the production, processing, transportation, and distribution of narcotics analgesics, including opium and its derivatives, other narcotic and psychotropic drugs, and other controlled substances.

(3) In order to promote international cooperation in combatting international trafficking in illicit narcotics, it shall be the policy of the United States to use its voice and vote in multilateral development banks to promote the development and implementation in the major illicit drug producing countries of programs for the reduction and eventual eradication of narcotic drugs and other controlled substances, including appropriate assistance in conjunction with effective programs of illicit crop eradication.

(4) Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the President is authorized to furnish assistance to any country or international organization, on such terms and conditions as he may determine, for the control of narcotic and psychotropic drugs and other controlled substances.

#### (b) Coordination of all United States anti-narcotics assistance to foreign countries

##### (1) Responsibility of Secretary of State

Consistent with subtitle A of title I of the Anti-Drug Abuse Act of 1988 [21 U.S.C. 1501 et seq.], the Secretary of State shall be responsible for coordinating all assistance provided by the United States Government to support international efforts to combat illicit narcotics production or trafficking.

##### (2) Rule of construction

Nothing contained in this subsection or section 2291h(b) of this title shall be construed to limit or impair the authority or responsibility of any other Federal agency with respect to law enforcement, domestic security operations, or intelligence activities as defined in Executive Order 12333.

#### (c) Participation in foreign police actions

##### (1) Prohibition on effecting an arrest

No officer or employee of the United States may directly effect an arrest in any foreign country as part of any foreign police action with respect to narcotics control efforts, notwithstanding any other provision of law.

##### (2) Participation in arrest actions

Paragraph (1) does not prohibit an officer or employee of the United States, with the approval of the United States chief of mission, from being present when foreign officers are effecting an arrest or from assisting foreign officers who are effecting an arrest.

##### (3) Exception for exigent, threatening circumstances

Paragraph (1) does not prohibit an officer or employee from taking direct action to protect life or safety if exigent circumstances arise

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be "paragraph (1)".

which are unanticipated and which pose an immediate threat to United States officers or employees, officers or employees of a foreign government, or members of the public.

**(4) Exception for maritime law enforcement**

With the agreement of a foreign country, paragraph (1) does not apply with respect to maritime law enforcement operations in the territorial sea or archipelagic waters of that country.

**(5) Interrogations**

No officer or employee of the United States may interrogate or be present during the interrogation of any United States person arrested in any foreign country with respect to narcotics control efforts without the written consent of such person.

**(6) Exception for Status of Forces arrangements**

This subsection does not apply to the activities of the United States Armed Forces in carrying out their responsibilities under applicable Status of Forces arrangements.

**(d) Use of herbicides for aerial eradication**

**(1) Monitoring**

The President, with the assistance of appropriate Federal agencies, shall monitor any use under this part of a herbicide for aerial eradication in order to determine the impact of such use on the environment and on the health of individuals.

**(2) Annual reports**

In the annual report required by section 2291h(a) of this title, the President shall report on the impact on the environment and the health of individuals of the use under this part of a herbicide for aerial eradication.

**(3) Report upon determination of harm to environment or health**

If the President determines that any such use is harmful to the environment or the health of individuals, the President shall immediately report that determination to the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, together with such recommendations as the President deems appropriate.

**(e) Definitions**

For purposes of this part and other provisions of this chapter relating specifically to international narcotics matters—

(1) the term “legal and law enforcement measures” means—

(A) the enactment and implementation of laws and regulations or the implementation of existing laws and regulations to provide for the progressive control, reduction, and gradual elimination of the illicit cultivation, production, processing, transportation, and distribution of narcotic drugs and other controlled substances; and

(B) the effective organization, staffing, equipping, funding, and activation of those governmental authorities responsible for narcotics control;

(2) the term “major illicit drug producing country” means a country in which—

(A) 1,000 hectares or more of illicit opium poppy is cultivated or harvested during a year;

(B) 1,000 hectares or more of illicit coca is cultivated or harvested during a year; or

(C) 5,000 hectares or more of illicit cannabis is cultivated or harvested during a year, unless the President determines that such illicit cannabis production does not significantly affect the United States;

(3) the term “narcotic and psychotropic drugs and other controlled substances” has the same meaning as is given by any applicable international narcotics control agreement or domestic law of the country or countries concerned;

(4) the term “United States assistance” means—

(A) any assistance under this chapter (including programs under subpart IV of part II of this subchapter, relating to the Overseas Private Investment Corporation), other than—

(i) assistance under this part,

(ii) any other narcotics-related assistance under this subchapter (including part IV of subchapter II of this chapter), but any such assistance provided under this clause shall be subject to the prior notification procedures applicable to reprogrammings pursuant to section 2394-1 of this title,

(iii) disaster relief assistance, including any assistance under part IX of this subchapter,

(iv) assistance which involves the provision of food (including monetization of food) or medicine, and

(v) assistance for refugees;

(B) sales, or financing on any terms, under the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.];

(C) the provision of agricultural commodities, other than food, under the Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954 [7 U.S.C. 1691 et seq.]; and

(D) financing under the Export-Import Bank Act of 1945 [12 U.S.C. 635 et seq.];

(5) the term “major drug-transit country” means a country—

(A) that is a significant direct source of illicit narcotic or psychotropic drugs or other controlled substances significantly affecting the United States; or

(B) through which are transported such drugs or substances; and

(6) the term “precursor chemical” has the same meaning as the term “listed chemical” has under paragraph (33) of section 802 of title 21;

(7) the term “major money laundering country” means a country whose financial institutions engage in currency transactions involving significant amounts of proceeds from international narcotics trafficking; and

(8) the term “appropriate congressional committees” means the Committee on Foreign Af-

fairs and the Committee on Appropriations of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations and the Committee on Appropriations of the Senate.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §481, as added Pub. L. 92-352, title V, §503, July 13, 1972, 86 Stat. 496; amended Pub. L. 93-189, §11(a), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 719; Pub. L. 94-329, title V, §504(b), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 764; Pub. L. 95-384, §§3, 4, Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 730; Pub. L. 96-92, §3(b), Oct. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 702; Pub. L. 97-113, title V, §502(a)(1), (b), title VII, §734(a)(1), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1538, 1539, 1560; Pub. L. 98-164, title X, §1003, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1053; Pub. L. 99-83, title VI, §§604-606, 618, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 228, 229, 233; Pub. L. 99-570, title II, §§2005, 2008, 2009, 2017, Oct. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 3207-61, 3207-64, 3207-68; Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title V, §585(a)], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-184; Pub. L. 100-204, title VIII, §805, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1397; Pub. L. 100-461, title V, §578(e)(2), (g)(1), (3), (h), (i), Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-47, 2268-48; Pub. L. 100-690, title IV, §4202(b), 4401-4403, 4405(a), 4407(a), (b)(1), 4502, 4802(b), Nov. 18, 1988, 102 Stat. 4267, 4275-4277, 4281, 4285, 4294; Pub. L. 101-231, §§15, 17(a)-(f), Dec. 13, 1989, 103 Stat. 1963-1965; Pub. L. 102-550, title XV, §1519, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 4060; Pub. L. 102-583, §§4(a)-(d), 5(b), 6(b)(1)-(3), 11(a), Nov. 2, 1992, 106 Stat. 4914, 4915, 4931, 4932, 4934; Pub. L. 103-447, title I, §101(a), (b), Nov. 2, 1994, 108 Stat. 4691.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Anti-Drug Abuse Act of 1988, referred to in subsec. (b)(1), is Pub. L. 100-690, Nov. 18, 1988, 102 Stat. 4181. Subtitle A of title I of the Act, known as the National Narcotics Leadership Act of 1988, is classified principally to chapter 20 (§1501 et seq.) of Title 21, Food and Drugs. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1501 of Title 21 and Tables.

Executive Order Number 12333, referred to in subsec. (b)(2), is set out as a note under section 401 of Title 50, War and National Defense.

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (e)(4)(A), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

The Arms Export Control Act, referred to in subsec. (e)(4)(B), is Pub. L. 90-629, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1320, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 39 (§2751 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2751 of this title and Tables.

The Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954, referred to in subsec. (e)(4)(C), is act July 10, 1954, ch. 469, 68 Stat. 454, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 41 (§1691 et seq.) of Title 7, Agriculture. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1691 of Title 7 and Tables.

The Export-Import Bank Act of 1945, referred to in subsec. (e)(4)(D), is act July 31, 1945, ch. 341, 59 Stat. 526, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§635 et seq.) of chapter 6A of Title 12, Banks and Banking. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 635 of Title 12 and Tables.

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 481 of Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, as added Pub. L. 92-226, pt. I, §109, Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 24, contained similar subject matter, prior to repeal by section 503 of Pub. L. 92-352.

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (d)(2) to (4). Pub. L. 103-447, §101(a), redesignated pars. (3) and (4) as (2) and (3), respectively, and struck out heading and text of former par. (2). Text read as follows: "The Secretary of State shall inform the Secretary of Health and Human Services and the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency of the use or intended use by any country or international organization of any herbicide for aerial eradication in a program receiving assistance under this part."

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 103-447, §101(b)(1), substituted "For" for "Except as provided in sections 2291j(h) and (i) of this title with respect to the definition of major illicit drug producing country and major drug-transit country, for".

Subsec. (e)(2). Pub. L. 103-447, §101(b)(2), amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) read as follows: "the term 'major illicit drug producing country' means a country that illicitly produces during a fiscal year 5 metric tons or more of opium or opium derivative, 500 metric tons or more of coca, or 500 metric tons or more of marijuana;"

Subsec. (e)(6) to (8). Pub. L. 103-447, §101(b)(3)-(5), added pars. (6) and (7) and redesignated former par. (6) as (8).

1992—Pub. L. 102-583, §4(a), added section catchline and struck out former catchline which read as follows: "International narcotics control".

Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 102-583, §4(a), added par. (1) and struck out former par. (1) which read as follows: "It is the sense of the Congress that—

"(A) under the Single Convention on Narcotic Drugs, 1961, each signatory country has the responsibility of limiting to licit purposes the cultivation, production, manufacture, sale, and other distribution of scheduled drugs;

"(B) suppression of international narcotics trafficking is among the most important foreign policy objectives of the United States;

"(C) the international community should provide assistance, where appropriate, to those producer and transit countries which require assistance in discharging these primary obligations;

"(D) international narcotics control programs should include, as a priority, the progressive elimination of the illicit cultivation of the crops from which narcotic and psychotropic drugs are derived, and should also include the suppression of the illicit manufacture of and traffic in narcotic and psychotropic drugs;

"(E) the objective of the United States in dealing with the problem of international money laundering should be to ensure that countries adopt comprehensive domestic measures against money laundering and cooperative with each other in narcotics money laundering investigations, prosecutions, and related forfeiture actions; and

"(F) effective international cooperation is necessary to control the illicit cultivation, production, and smuggling of, trafficking in, and abuse of narcotic and psychotropic drugs."

Subsec. (a)(1)(D) to (F). Pub. L. 102-550, §1519(a), struck out "and" at end of subpar. (D), added subpar. (E), and redesignated former subpar. (E) as (F).

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 102-583, §4(b), inserted "including reciprocal maritime agreements," after "agreements".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 102-583, §4(c), amended subsec. (b) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (b) read as follows: "Not later than September 1 of each year, the President shall transmit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives, and to the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, a complete and detailed midyear report on the activities and operations carried out under this part prior to such date. Such midyear report shall include, but not be limited to, the status of each agreement concluded prior to such date with other countries to carry out the purposes of this part."

Subsec. (c)(4). Pub. L. 102-583, §4(d), inserted “or archipelagic waters” after “sea”.

Subsec. (d)(3). Pub. L. 102-583, §6(b)(1), substituted “section 2291h(a) of this title” for “subsection (e) of this section”.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 102-583, §§6(b)(2), (3), 11(a), redesignated subsec. (i) as (e), substituted “Except as provided in sections 2291j(h) and (i) of this title with respect to the definition of major illicit drug producing country and major drug-transit country, for purposes of this part and other provisions of this chapter relating specifically to international narcotics matters” for “As used in this section” in introductory provisions, substituted “; and” for period at end of par. (5), added par. (6), and struck out former subsec. (e) which directed President to make annual reports to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate related to United States policy to promote an international strategy against the cultivation, and manufacture of and traffic in controlled substances, and described contents of those reports.

Pub. L. 102-550, §1519(b), added par. (7) and redesignated former pars. (7) and (8) as (8) and (9), respectively. As added, par. (7) read as follows:

“(A) Each report pursuant to this subsection shall include a report on major money laundering countries. This report shall specify—

“(i) which countries are major money laundering countries;

“(ii) which countries identified pursuant to clause (i) have financial institutions engaging in currency transactions involving international narcotics trafficking proceeds that include significant amounts of United States currency or currency derived from illegal drug sales in the United States or that otherwise significantly affect the United States;

“(iii) which countries identified pursuant to clause (ii) have not reached agreement with the United States authorities on a mechanism for exchanging adequate records in connection with narcotics investigations and proceedings;

“(iv) which countries identified pursuant to clause (iii)—

“(I) are negotiating in good faith with the United States to establish such a record-exchange mechanism, or

“(II) have adopted laws or regulations that ensure the availability to appropriate United States Government personnel and those of other governments of adequate records in connection with narcotics investigations and proceedings; and

“(v) which countries identified pursuant to clause (i)—

“(I) have ratified the United Nations Convention Against Illicit Traffic in Narcotic Drugs and Psychotropic Substances and are taking steps to implement that Convention and other applicable agreements and conventions such as the recommendations of the Financial Action Task Force, the policy directive of the European Community, the legislative guidelines of the Organization of American States, and other similar declarations, and

“(II) have entered into bilateral agreements for the exchange of information on money-laundering with countries other than the United States,

“(B) In addition, for each major money laundering country, the report shall include findings on the country’s adoption of law and regulations considered essential to prevent narcotics-related money laundering. Such findings shall include whether a country has—

“(i) criminalized narcotics money laundering;

“(ii) required banks and other financial institutions to know and record the identity of customers engaging in significant transactions, including the recording of large currency transactions at thresholds appropriate to that country’s economic situation;

“(iii) required banks and other financial institutions to maintain, for an adequate time, records necessary to reconstruct significant transactions

through financial institutions in order to be able to respond quickly to information requests from appropriate government authorities in narcotics-related money laundering cases;

“(iv) required or allowed financial institutions to report suspicious transactions;

“(v) established systems for identifying, tracing, freezing, seizing, and forfeiting narcotics-related assets;

“(vi) enacted laws for the sharing of seized narcotics assets with other governments;

“(vii) cooperated, when requested, with appropriate law enforcement agencies of other governments investigating financial crimes related to narcotics; and

“(viii) addressed the problem on international transportation of illegal-source currency and monetary instruments.

The report shall also detail instances of refusals to cooperate with foreign governments, and any actions taken by the United States Government and any international organization to address such obstacles, including the imposition of sanctions or penalties.

“(C) The report shall also include information on multilateral and bilateral strategies pursued by the Department of State, the Department of Justice, the Department of the Treasury, and other relevant United States Government agencies, either collectively or individually, to ensure the cooperation of foreign governments with respect to narcotics-related money laundering.

“(D) The report shall include specific detail to demonstrate that all United States Government agencies are pursuing a common strategy with respect to achieving international cooperation against money laundering and are pursuing a common strategy with respect to major money laundering countries, including a summary of United States objectives on a country-by-country basis.

“(E) As used in this paragraph, the term ‘major money laundering country’ means a country whose financial institutions engage in currency transactions involving significant amounts of proceeds from international narcotics trafficking.”

Subsecs. (f) to (h). Pub. L. 102-583, §6(b)(2), struck out subsec. (f) relating to consultation with members of Congress, subsec. (g) relating to congressional committee hearings, and subsec. (h) relating to annual certification procedures.

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 102-583, §6(b)(3), redesignated subsec. (i) as (e).

Subsec. (1)(4). Pub. L. 102-583, §5(b), amended par. (4) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (4) consisted of subpars. (A) to (E) and concluding provisions, which defined “United States assistance”.

Subsec. (1)(5). Pub. L. 102-550, §1519(c), inserted “or” at end of subpar. (A), substituted a period for “or” at end of subpar. (B), and struck out subpar. (C) which read as follows: “through which significant sums of drug-related profits or monies are laundered with the knowledge or complicity of the government.”

Subsecs. (j), (k). Pub. L. 102-583, §6(b)(2), struck out subsec. (j) relating to actions by international bodies and subsec. (k) relating to procedures for determining major drug-transit countries.

1989—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 101-231, §17(a), struck out at end “This cooperation should include the development and transmittal of plans by each signatory country to the Single Convention on Narcotic Drugs, 1961, in which illicit narcotics and psychotropic crop cultivation exists, which would advise the International Narcotics Control Board, the United Nations Commission on Narcotic Drugs, and the international community of the strategy, programs, and timetable such country has established for the progressive elimination of that cultivation.”

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 101-231, §17(b), inserted “Mid-year report” as heading, struck out par. (1) which required quarterly reports on the programming and obligation of funds under this part, redesignated former par. (2) as subsec. (b), and substituted “Not later than September” for “Not later than August”.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 101-231, §15, inserted "Participation in foreign police actions" as heading and amended text generally, inserting par. headings, redesignating provisions comprising former par. (1) as pars. (1) and (2) and, in par. (2), inserting provision not prohibiting presence of officers and employees when foreign officers are effecting an arrest, and striking out former par. (2) which prohibited officers or employees from engaging or participating in direct police action in a foreign country with respect to narcotics control efforts.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 101-231, §17(c), inserted "Use of herbicides for aerial eradication" as heading and amended text generally, substituting pars. (1) to (4) for former pars. (1) to (5).

Subsec. (h)(2)(A)(i)(IV). Pub. L. 101-231, §17(d)(1), substituted "illicit production" for "production".

Subsec. (h)(2)(B)(iii). Pub. L. 101-231, §17(d)(2), substituted "education and treatment programs" for "treatment".

Subsec. (h)(2)(B)(v). Pub. L. 101-231, §17(d)(3), substituted "essential precursor chemicals" for "precursor chemicals".

Subsec. (h)(3)(D). Pub. L. 101-231, §17(d)(4), substituted "illicit production" for "production".

Subsec. (i)(2). Pub. L. 101-231, §17(e), amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) read as follows: "the term 'major illicit drug producing country' means a country producing five metric tons or more of opium or opium derivative during a fiscal year or producing five hundred metric tons or more of coca or marijuana (as the case may be) during a fiscal year;"

Subsec. (k)(4). Pub. L. 101-231, §17(f), struck out par. (4) which required that reports under subsec. (e) discuss changes made since notification provided pursuant to subsec. (k)(2) and (3).

1988—Subsec. (a)(1)(B) to (E). Pub. L. 100-690, §4502, added subpar. (B), and redesignated former subpars. (B) to (D) as (C) to (E), respectively.

Subsec. (d)(5). Pub. L. 100-690, §4202(b), added par. (5).

Subsec. (e)(4). Pub. L. 100-690, §4401, inserted provisions after first sentence requiring each determination of President to be expressed in numerical terms.

Subsec. (e)(8). Pub. L. 100-690, §4402, added par. (8).

Subsec. (h)(1). Pub. L. 100-690, §4407(a), added par. (1) and struck out former par. (1) which related to withholding of assistance to major illicit drug producing countries or major drug-transit countries.

Pub. L. 100-461, §578(h), inserted before "Subject" the following: "Not later than October 1 of each year, the Secretary of State shall submit a report to the Congress of those countries identified by the Secretary as being major drug producing or major drug transit countries (including the definition used to determine such drug transit countries) for purposes of the withholding requirements contained in subparagraph (A) of this paragraph and the certification requirements contained in paragraph (2) of this subsection."

Subsec. (h)(2). Pub. L. 100-690, §4407(a), added par. (2) and struck out former par. (2) which related to removal of restrictions imposed under par. (1).

Subsec. (h)(2)(A)(i)(I). Pub. L. 100-461, §578(g)(3), inserted "or multilateral agreement which achieves the objectives of this subsection," after "(i)".

Subsec. (h)(2)(A)(ii). Pub. L. 100-461, §578(g)(1), amended cl. (ii) generally, substituting "A bilateral narcotics agreement referred to in clause (i)(I) is an agreement between the United States and a foreign country whereby the foreign country agrees to undertake specific activities including, where applicable, efforts to reduce drug production, drug consumption, and drug trafficking within its territory, including activities to address illicit crop eradication and crop substitution; drug interdiction and enforcement; drug consumption and treatment; identification and elimination of illicit drug laboratories; identification and elimination of the trafficking of precursor chemicals for the use in production of illegal drugs; cooperation with United States drug enforcement officials; and, where applicable, participation in extradition treaties, mutual legal assistance provisions directed at money

laundering, sharing of evidence, and other initiatives for cooperative drug enforcement." for "A bilateral narcotics agreement referred to in clause (i)(I) is an agreement between the United States and a foreign country whereby the foreign country agrees to take specific activities including but not limited to, efforts to reduce drug production, drug consumption, and drug trafficking within its territory, including activities to address illicit crop eradication and crop substitution; drug interdiction and enforcement; drug consumption and treatment; identification of and elimination of illicit drug laboratories; identification and elimination of the trafficking of precursor chemicals for the use in production of illegal drugs; cooperation with United States drug enforcement officials; and, where applicable, participation in extradition treaties, mutual legal assistance provisions directed at money laundering, sharing of evidence, and other initiatives for cooperative drug enforcement."

Subsec. (h)(2)(B). Pub. L. 100-461, §578(i), substituted "subparagraph (A)(i)(II)" for "clause (A)(ii)".

Subsec. (h)(3). Pub. L. 100-690, §4407(a), added par. (3) and struck out former par. (3) which related to certification by President.

Subsec. (h)(4). Pub. L. 100-690, §4407(a), added par. (4). Subpar. (A) of former par. (4), which related to Congressional disapproval of certification, was struck out and subpar. (B) of former par. (4) redesignated par. (6)(B).

Subsec. (h)(5). Pub. L. 100-690, §4407(a), (b)(1)(A), added par. (5) and struck out former par. (5) which related to prohibition of assistance or financing to any country for which President has not made certification under par. (2) or with respect to which Congress has enacted a joint resolution disapproving such certification unless President makes certification or Congress enacts joint resolution approving certification.

Subsec. (h)(6)(A). Pub. L. 100-690, §4407(a), added subpar. (A).

Subsec. (h)(6)(B). Pub. L. 100-690, §4407(a), (b)(1)(B)(i), (ii), redesignated par. (4)(B) as (6)(B) and substituted "Any joint resolution under this subsection" for "Any such joint resolution" in cl. (i).

Subsec. (h)(6)(B)(ii). Pub. L. 100-690, §4407(b)(1)(B)(iii), which directed substitution of "resolutions" for "resolution" was executed by making the substitution the first place it appears, thus correcting grammatical error, as the probable intent of Congress.

Subsec. (i)(4)(vi). Pub. L. 100-690, §4802(b), made technical amendment to reference to section 2151b(c)(2) of this title to correct reference to corresponding section of original act.

Subsec. (i)(4)(vii). Pub. L. 100-690, §4403, substituted "2151x(b)(2) of this title (but any such assistance shall be subject to the prior notification procedures applicable to reprogrammings pursuant to section 2394-1 of this title)," for "2151x of this title;"

Pub. L. 100-461, §578(e)(2)(A), added cl. (vii). Former cl. (vii) redesignated cl. (viii).

Subsec. (i)(4)(viii). Pub. L. 100-461, §578(e)(2)(B), redesignated cl. (vii) as (viii).

Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 100-690, §4405(a), added subsec. (k).

1987—Subsec. (e)(7). Pub. L. 100-204, §805(a), added par. (7).

Subsec. (h)(2)(A). Pub. L. 100-202 designated existing provisions of subpar. (A) as cl. (i), redesignated former cls. (i) and (ii) as subcls. (I) and (II), respectively, and in subcl. (I) inserted "in satisfying the goals agreed to in an applicable bilateral narcotics agreement with the United States, (as described in (ii)) and," after "on its own," and added cl. (ii).

Subsec. (h)(4)(A). Pub. L. 100-204, §805(b), which directed that subpar. (A) of subsec. (h) of this section be amended by substituting "45" for "30", was executed by making the substitution in subpar. (A) of subsec. (h)(4) of this section to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

1986—Subsec. (a)(3), (4). Pub. L. 99-570, §2017, added par. (3) and redesignated former par. (3) as (4).

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 99-570, §2009, amended subsec. (c) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (c) read as follows:



“(1) Notwithstanding any other provision of law, no officer or employee of the United States may engage or participate in any direct police arrest action in any foreign country with respect to narcotics control efforts. No such officer or employee may interrogate or be present during the interrogation of any United States person arrested in any foreign country with respect to narcotics control efforts without the written consent of such person. The provisions of this paragraph shall not apply to the activities of the United States Armed Forces in carrying out their responsibilities under applicable Status of Forces arrangements.

“(2) Paragraph (1) of this subsection shall not prohibit officers and employees of the United States from being present during direct police arrest actions with respect to narcotic control efforts in a foreign country to the extent that the Secretary of State and the government of that country agree to such an exemption. The Secretary of State shall report any such agreement to the Congress before the agreement takes effect.”

Subsec. (e)(1). Pub. L. 99-570, §2005(b), substituted “March” for “February”.

Subsec. (e)(3)(D). Pub. L. 99-570, §2008, added subpar. (D).

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 99-570, §2005(a), amended subsec. (h) generally, revising and restating as pars. (1) to (5) provisions of former pars. (1) to (4).

Subsec. (i)(4). Pub. L. 99-570, §2005(d), in concluding provisions, added cl. (vi), and redesignated former cl. (vi) as (vii).

Subsec. (i)(5). Pub. L. 99-570, §2005(c), added par. (5). 1985—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 99-83, §604, amended subsec. (b) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (b) read as follows:

“(1) Not later than forty-five days after the date on which each calendar quarter of each year ends, the President shall transmit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives, and to the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, a report on the programing and obligation, on a calendar quarter basis, of funds under this part prior to such date.

“(2) Not later than forty-five days after the date on which the second calendar quarter of each year ends and not later than forty-five days after the date on which the fourth calendar quarter of each year ends, the President shall transmit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives, and to the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, a complete and detailed semiannual report on the activities and operations carried out under this part prior to such date. Such semiannual report shall include, but shall not be limited to—

“(A) the status of each agreement concluded prior to such date with other countries to carry out the purposes of this part; and

“(B) the aggregate of obligations and expenditures made, and the types and quantity of equipment provided, on a calendar quarter basis, prior to such date—

“(i) to carry out the purposes of this part with respect to each country and each international organization receiving assistance under this part, including the costs of United States personnel engaged in carrying out such purposes in each such country and with each such international organization;

“(ii) to carry out each program conducted under this part in each country and by each international organization, including the cost of United States personnel engaged in carrying out each such program; and

“(iii) for administrative support services within the United States to carry out the purposes of this part, including the cost of United States personnel engaged in carrying out such purposes in the United States.”

Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 99-83, §605, added par. (2).

Subsec. (e)(6). Pub. L. 99-83, §606, added par. (6).

Subsec. (h)(4). Pub. L. 99-83, §618, added par. (4).

1983—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 98-164, §1003(a), amended subsec. (a) generally, substituting provisions relating

to applicability and implementation of Single Convention on Narcotic Drugs, 1961, and development, promotion and assistance respecting international narcotics control, for provisions relating to agreements, assistance, sanctions, etc., to facilitate international narcotics control.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 98-164, §1003(b), amended subsec. (e) generally, substituting requirements for annual reports on cultivation and manufacture of and traffic in narcotic and psychotropic drugs and other controlled substances and the specific contents of the reports for requirements for annual reports on the status of United States policy regarding production, interdiction, and interception of trafficking in narcotics.

Subsecs. (f) to (j). Pub. L. 98-164, §1003(b), added subsecs. (f) to (j).

1981—Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 97-113, §734(a)(1), struck out par. (2) which provided for a Presidential study of multilateral narcotics control activities and transmission of this study to the Speaker of the House and the President of the Senate no later than June 30, 1977.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 97-113, §502(a)(1), substituted provisions requiring the Secretary of State to inform the Secretary of Health and Human Services of any use of herbicides to eradicate marihuana in a program receiving assistance under this part, directing the Secretary of Health and Human Services to monitor the impact on the health of persons using such marihuana and if he determines their exposure to the herbicide harms their health, report to Congress such determination with any recommendations, urging the President to use not less than \$100,000 to develop a substance that clearly and readily warns potential marihuana users that the marihuana has been sprayed with paraquat or other herbicide harmful to the health of the persons using it, and directing the Secretary of Agriculture, if such a substance is developed, to use such substance in conjunction with the spraying of paraquat or other herbicide for provisions prohibiting the use of funds under this part for spraying a herbicide to eradicate marihuana if that practice is likely to seriously harm the health of users of the sprayed marihuana, except if the substance is used with a substance that will clearly and readily warn potential users of the sprayed marihuana of the use of herbicide, and requiring the Secretary of State to submit a report to Congress not later than January 1 of each year detailing efforts taken to ensure compliance with this subsection.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 97-113, §502(b), added subsec. (e).

1979—Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 96-92 substituted “for the purpose of” for “or used for any program involving”.

1978—Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 95-384, §3, inserted provisions prohibiting any agent or employee of the United States Government from interrogating, or from being present at the interrogation of, any United States person arrested in any foreign country in the absence of the written consent of the person arrested and provisions relating to the applicability of this paragraph to the activities of the United States Armed Forces.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 95-384, §4, added subsec. (d).

1976—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 94-329 added subsec. (c).

1973—Pub. L. 93-189 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsec. (b).

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1987 AMENDMENT

Section 101(e) [title V, §585(b)] of Pub. L. 100-202 provided that: “The amendments made by paragraph (1) [probably means subsec. (a) which amended this section] shall apply with respect to any certification of the President under section 481(h)(2)(A) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2291(h)(2)(A)] made on or after March 1, 1989.”

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this part delegated and funds available to President under this section allocated to Secretary of State by sections 1-201(a)(26), 1-701(d), and 1-801(c) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56674, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

## REPORT ON ARMED FORCES STATIONED IN ANDEAN COUNTRIES

Pub. L. 101-623, § 8, Nov. 21, 1990, 104 Stat. 3355, provided that: "Within 15 days after the end of each month, the President shall submit to the Congress a report listing the number of members of the United States Armed Forces who were assigned or detailed to, or otherwise performed functions in, each Andean country at any time during that month."

## PRECURSOR CHEMICALS

Pub. L. 101-513, title V, § 999H, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2068, provided that:

"(a) NEGOTIATIONS.—(1) The Attorney General shall enter into negotiations with the appropriate law enforcement and judicial agencies and any other officials of any foreign country with jurisdiction over companies who manufacture, market, sell or purchase certain precursor and/or essential chemicals used in the production of illicit narcotics. The priority of negotiations should be determined based on an assessment by the Attorney General which countries have jurisdiction over companies that may be knowingly or unknowingly supplying chemicals for the illicit manufacture of controlled substances.

"(2) The purposes of the negotiations shall be to (a) establish a list of precursor and essential chemicals contributing to the illicit manufacture of controlled substances, as defined in section 102 of the Controlled Substances Act (21 USC 802); (b) reach one or more international agreements on a method for maintaining records of transactions of these listed chemicals; (c) establish a procedure by which such records may be made available to (and kept confidential as necessary by) United States law enforcement authorities for the exclusive purpose of conducting an investigation relative to precursor chemicals, essential chemicals and/or controlled substances contributing to the manufacture of illicit narcotics; and (d) encourage chemical source countries to enact national chemical control legislation which would (i) impose specific record keeping and reporting requirements for domestic transactions involving listed chemicals; (ii) establish a system of permits or declarations for imports and exports of listed chemicals; and (iii) authorize government officials to seize or suspend shipments of listed chemicals based on evidence that they may be destined for the illicit manufacture of controlled substances.

"(b) REPORTS.—Not later than one year after the date of enactment of this Act [Nov. 5, 1990], the Attorney General shall submit an interim report to the Judiciary Committee and the Foreign Relations Committee of the Senate on progress in the negotiations. Not later than eighteen months from the date of enactment, the Attorney General shall submit a final report to the aforementioned Senate Committees on the result of negotiations identifying countries with which agreements have not been reached and which have jurisdiction over companies believed to be engaged in the manufacture, marketing, sale or purchase of precursor and/or essential chemicals used in illicit manufacture of controlled substances.

"(c) PENALTIES.—After consulting with the Attorney General and the Director of the Office of National Drug Control Policy, the President shall impose penalties or sanctions including temporarily or permanently pro-

hibiting any corporation, partnership, individual or business association (i) refusing to maintain records for the purpose of monitoring and regulating transactions of listed precursor chemicals, or (ii) refusing to make such records available to United States law enforcement authorities for investigative purposes (in coordination with the local law enforcement agency in which such corporation, partnership, individual, or business association resides, is created or has its principal place of business) from engaging in any or all transactions, in goods or services, within the commerce of the United States.

"(d) DEFINITIONS.—A record under subsection (a) shall be retrievable and include the date of the transaction, the identity of each party to the transaction, including the ultimate consignee, and accounting of the quantity and form of listed chemical(s) and a description of the method of transfer.

"(e) This section shall not apply to the manufacture, distribution, sale, import or export of any drug which may, under the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act [21 U.S.C. 301 et seq.] be lawfully sold over-the-counter without prescription."

## LINKAGE OF DEBT REDUCTION LOANS TO REDUCTION IN DRUG TRAFFICKING; REPORT TO CONGRESS

Pub. L. 101-240, title IV, § 407, Dec. 19, 1989, 103 Stat. 2504, provided that:

"(a) FINDINGS.—The Congress finds that—

"(1) the Brady Initiative is a positive step, recognizing as it does the need for reducing the debt and debt service burdens of the indebted developing countries;

"(2) the multilateral development banks should, as part of this debt reduction process, encourage such countries to further reform their economies by reducing their dependence on production and trafficking of illicit narcotics; and

"(3) reduction of debt should relieve some of the financial burden on these countries, and thereby enable them to rely on legal income-generating activities.

"(b) INSTRUCTION OF UNITED STATES EXECUTIVE DIRECTORS.—The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of each multilateral development bank that, in voting with respect to loans from the multilateral development bank to reduce the debt and debt burden of borrowing countries which are major producers, processors, traffickers, or exporters of illegal drugs to the United States, the Executive Director shall give preference to those countries which show marked improvement in reducing the volume of cultivation, processing, trafficking, and export to the United States of illegal drugs. In making a determination under the preceding sentence with respect to a country's improvement, the Secretary of the Treasury shall consult with the heads of the relevant agencies.

"(c) REPORT TO CONGRESS.—The Secretary of the Treasury shall include, in the detailed accounting required by section 2018(c) of the International Narcotics Control Act of 1986 (22 U.S.C. 2191 note) [section 2018(c) of Pub. L. 99-570 set out below], relating to multilateral development bank assistance for drug eradication and crop substitution programs, an additional discussion of the steps taken and the progress made in implementing the goals set forth in subsection (b) of this section, and further steps needed to secure the achievement of these goals.

"(d) DEFINITIONS.—As used in this section—

"(1) the term 'multilateral development bank' includes the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, the International Development Association, the International Finance Corporation, the Inter-American Development Bank, the Inter-American Investment Corporation, the Asian Development Bank, the African Development Bank, and the African Development Fund; and

"(2) the term 'illegal drugs' means 'narcotic and psychotropic drugs and other controlled substances', as defined in section 481(i)(3) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2291(i)(3))."

## DEBT-FOR-DRUGS EXCHANGES

Section 10 of Pub. L. 101-231 provided that:

“(a) AUTHORITY.—The President may release Bolivia, Colombia, or Peru from its obligation to make payments to the United States Government of principal and interest on account of a loan made to that country under the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2151 and following; relating to foreign assistance programs) or credits extended for that country under section 23 of the Arms Export Control Act (22 U.S.C. 2763; relating to foreign military sales credits) if the President determines that that country is implementing programs to reduce the flow of cocaine to the United States in accordance with a formal bilateral or multilateral agreement, to which the United States is a party, that contains specific, quantitative and qualitative, performance criteria with respect to those programs.

“(b) CONGRESSIONAL REVIEW OF AGREEMENTS.—The President shall submit any such agreement with Bolivia, Colombia, or Peru to the Committee on Foreign Affairs [now Committee on International Relations] of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate at least 15 days before exercising the authority of [sub]section (a) with respect to that country.

“(b) [(c)] COORDINATION WITH MULTILATERAL DEBT RELIEF ACTIVITIES.—The authority provided in subsection (a) shall be exercised in coordination with multilateral debt relief activities.

“(c) [(d)] EFFECTIVE DATE.—Subsection (a) takes effect on October 1, 1990.”

## ADDITIONAL ASSISTANCE TO COUNTRIES MEETING DRUG ERADICATION TARGETS OR TAKING SIGNIFICANT STEPS AGAINST DRUG PRODUCTION OR TRAFFICKING

Pub. L. 101-167, title V, § 569(d), Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1244, provided that:

“(1) If any funds made available for any fiscal year for security assistance are not used for assistance for the country for which those funds were allocated because of any provision of law requiring the withholding of assistance for countries that have not taken adequate steps to halt illicit drug production of [or] trafficking, the President shall use those funds for additional assistance for those countries which have met their illicit drug eradication targets or have otherwise taken significant steps to halt illicit drug production or trafficking, as follows:

“(A) Those funds may be transferred to and consolidated with the funds made available to carry out section 481 of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2291] in order to provide additional narcotics control assistance for those countries. Funds transferred under this paragraph may only be used to provide increased funds for activities previously justified to the Congress. Transfers may be made under this paragraph without regard to the 20-percent increase limitation contained in section 610 of the Foreign Assistance Act [22 U.S.C. 2360].

“(B) Any such funds not used under subparagraph (A) shall be reprogrammed within the account for which they were appropriated (subject to the regular reprogramming procedures of the Committees on Appropriations) in order to provide additional security assistance for those countries.

“(2) As used in this section, the term ‘security assistance’ means economic support fund assistance, foreign military financing, and international military education and training.”

## DEFINITION OF TERMS USED IN INTERNATIONAL NARCOTICS CONTROL ACT OF 1988

Section 4003 of title IV of Pub. L. 100-690 defined terms “drug” and “narcotic” to mean narcotic and psychotropic drugs and other controlled substances as defined in subsec. (i)(3) of this section for purposes of title IV of Pub. L. 100-690, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 102-583, § 6(e)(1), Nov. 2, 1992, 106 Stat. 4933.

## REGIONAL ANTI-NARCOTICS FORCES

Section 4101 of Pub. L. 100-690 stated need for anti-narcotics multinational force in Western Hemisphere and authorized diplomatic efforts toward creation of such a force, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 102-583, § 6(e)(1), Nov. 2, 1992, 106 Stat. 4933.

## DETERMINING MAJOR DRUG-TRANSIT COUNTRIES WITH RESPECT TO FISCAL YEAR 1989

Section 4405(b) of Pub. L. 100-690 directed Secretary of State to make determination of major drug-transit countries with respect to fiscal year 1989, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 102-583, § 6(e)(1), Nov. 2, 1992, 106 Stat. 4933.

## BILATERAL NARCOTICS AGREEMENTS REQUIRED FOR CERTIFICATIONS FOR FISCAL YEAR 1989 AND THEREAFTER

Section 101(e) [title V, § 585(c)] of Pub. L. 100-202, as amended by Pub. L. 100-461, title V, § 578(g)(2), Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-47, provided that beginning with certifications with respect to fiscal year 1989 and each subsequent year, a country which in the previous year had been designated a major drug producing or drug transit country would not be deemed as cooperating fully unless it had in place a bilateral narcotics agreement with the United States, or a multilateral agreement which achieves the objectives of this section, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 100-690, title IV, § 4407(b)(2), Nov. 18, 1988, 102 Stat. 4281.

## REVIEW OF EFFECTIVENESS OF INTERNATIONAL NARCOTICS CONTROL ASSISTANCE PROGRAM

Section 2007 of Pub. L. 99-570 directed Comptroller General to review effectiveness of assistance provided under this part, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 102-583, § 6(e)(2), Nov. 2, 1992, 106 Stat. 4933.

## MULTILATERAL DEVELOPMENT BANK ASSISTANCE FOR DRUG ERADICATION AND CROP SUBSTITUTION PROGRAMS

Section 2018 of Pub. L. 99-570 provided that:

“(a) MDB ASSISTANCE FOR DEVELOPMENT AND IMPLEMENTATION OF DRUG ERADICATION PROGRAM.—The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Directors of the multilateral development banks to initiate discussions with other Directors of their respective banks and to propose that all possible assistance be provided to each major illicit drug producing country for the development and implementation of a drug eradication program, including technical assistance, assistance in conducting feasibility studies and economic analyses, and assistance for alternate economic activities.

“(b) INCREASES IN MULTILATERAL DEVELOPMENT BANK LENDING FOR CROP SUBSTITUTION PROJECTS.—The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Directors of the multilateral development banks to initiate discussions with other Directors of their respective banks and to propose that each such bank increase the amount of lending by such bank for crop substitution programs which will provide an economic alternative for the cultivation or production of illicit narcotic drugs or other controlled substances in major illicit drug producing countries, to the extent such countries develop and maintain adequate drug eradication programs.

“(c) NATIONAL ADVISORY COUNCIL REPORT.—The Secretary of the Treasury shall include in the annual report to the Congress by the National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Policies a detailed accounting of the manner in which and the extent to which the provisions of this section have been carried out.

“(d) DEFINITIONS.—For purposes of this section—

“(1) MULTILATERAL DEVELOPMENT BANK.—The term ‘multilateral development bank’ means the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, the International Development Association, the

Inter-American Development Bank, the African Development Bank, and the Asian Development Bank.

“(2) MAJOR ILLICIT DRUG PRODUCING COUNTRY.—The term ‘major illicit drug producing country’ has the meaning provided in section 481(i)(2) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2291(i)(2)).

“(3) NARCOTIC DRUG AND CONTROLLED SUBSTANCE.—The terms ‘narcotic drug’ and ‘controlled substance’ have the meanings given to such terms in section 102 of the Controlled Substances Act (21 U.S.C. 802).”

#### REPORTS TO CONGRESS ON DRUG EDUCATION PROGRAMS ABROAD

Section 2029 of Pub. L. 99-570 directed Director of United States Information Agency and Administrator of Agency for International Development to include in their annual reports to Congress a description of drug education programs carried out by their respective agencies, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103-447, title I, § 103(c), Nov. 2, 1994, 108 Stat. 4694.

#### UNITED STATES SENATE CAUCUS ON INTERNATIONAL NARCOTICS CONTROL

Pub. L. 99-93, title VIII, § 814, Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 455, as amended by Pub. L. 99-151, title III, § 306, Nov. 13, 1985, 99 Stat. 808; Pub. L. 100-202, § 101(i) [title I, § 5], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-290, 1329-294; Pub. L. 102-392, title III, § 323, Oct. 6, 1992, 106 Stat. 1726, provided that:

“(a) ESTABLISHMENT.—There is established the United States Senate Caucus on International Narcotics Control (hereafter in this section referred to as the ‘Caucus’).

“(b) DUTIES.—The Caucus is authorized and directed—

“(1) to monitor and promote international compliance with narcotics control treaties, including eradication and other relevant issues; and

“(2) to monitor and encourage United States Government and private programs seeking to expand international cooperation against drug abuse and narcotics trafficking.

“(c) MEMBERSHIP.—(1) The Caucus shall be composed of 12 members as follows:

“(A) 7 Members of the Senate appointed by the President of the Senate, 4 of whom (including the member designated as Chairman) shall be selected from the majority party of the Senate, after consultation with the majority leader, and 3 of whom (including the member designated as Cochairman) shall be selected from the minority party of the Senate, after consultation with the minority leader.

“(B) 5 members of the public to be appointed by the President after consultation with the members of the appropriate congressional committees.

“(2) There shall be a Chairman and a Cochairman of the Caucus.

“(d) POWERS.—In carrying out this section, the Caucus may require, by subpoena or otherwise, the attendance and testimony of such witnesses and the production of such books, records, correspondence, memorandums, papers, and documents as it deems necessary. Subpoenas may be issued over the signature of the Chairman of the Caucus or any member designated by him, and may be served by any person designated by the Chairman or such member. The Chairman of the Caucus, or any member designated by him, may administer oaths to any witness.

“(e) REPORT BY PRESIDENT TO CAUCUS.—In order to assist the Caucus in carrying out its duties, the President shall submit to the Caucus a copy of the report required by section 481(e) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2991(e)) [22 U.S.C. 2291(e)].

“(f) REPORT TO SENATE.—The Caucus is authorized and directed to report to the Senate with respect to the matters covered by this section on a periodic basis and to provide information to Members of the Senate as requested. For each fiscal year for which an appropriation is made the Caucus shall submit to the Congress a report on its expenditures under such appropriation.

“(g) AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.—(1) There are authorized to be appropriated to the Caucus \$325,000

for each fiscal year, to remain available until expended, to assist in meeting the expenses of the Caucus for the purpose of carrying out the provisions of this section.

“(2) For purposes of section 502(b) of the Mutual Security Act of 1954 (22 U.S.C. 1754(b)), the Caucus shall be deemed to be a standing committee of the Senate and shall be entitled to the use of funds in accordance with such section.

“(h) STAFF.—The Caucus may appoint and fix the pay of such staff personnel as it deems desirable, without regard to the provisions of title 5, United States Code, governing appointments in the competitive service, and without regard to the provisions of chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of such title relating to classification and General Schedule pay rates.

“(i) TERMINATION.—The Caucus shall cease to exist on September 30, 1997.”

Pub. L. 99-151, title III, § 306, Nov. 13, 1985, 99 Stat. 808, provided that:

“(a) Notwithstanding the provisions of this or any other Act, the United States International Narcotics Control Commission, established by section 814 of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1986 and 1987 [section 814 of Pub. L. 99-93, set out as a note above], is hereby redesignated and shall hereafter be known as the United States Senate Caucus on International Narcotics Control.

“(b) Any reference to the United States International Narcotics Control Commission in any law, regulation, document, record, or other official paper of the United States shall be deemed to be a reference to the United States Senate Caucus on International Narcotics Control.”

#### DRUG TRAFFICKING AND PROBLEM OF TOTAL CONFIDENTIALITY OF CERTAIN FOREIGN BANK ACCOUNTS

Section 619 of Pub. L. 99-83 provided that:

“(a) FINDINGS.—The Congress finds that—

“(1) several banks in Latin America and the Caribbean are used by narcotics traffickers as depositories for money obtained in providing illicit drugs to the United States and other countries of the region;

“(2) offshore banks which provide total confidentiality provide a service which materially assists the operations of illicit drug traffickers; and

“(3) cooperation in gaining access to the bank accounts of such narcotics traffickers would materially assist United States authorities in controlling the activities of such traffickers.

“(b) POLICY.—The Congress—

“(1) requests the President to negotiate treaties or appropriate international agreements with all countries providing confidential banking services (giving high priority to countries in the Caribbean region) to provide disclosure to the United States Government of information contained in official records, and in records of bank accounts, concerning persons under investigation for violations of United States law, in particular those regarding international drug trafficking;

“(2) directs the President to include reports on the results of such efforts in the annual International Narcotics Control Strategy Report; and

“(3) reaffirms its intention to obtain maximum cooperation on the part of all governments for the purpose of halting international drug trafficking, and constantly to evaluate the cooperation of those governments receiving assistance from the United States.”

#### USE OF FUNDS APPROPRIATED PRIOR TO DECEMBER 29, 1981, FOR HERBICIDE ERADICATION OF MARIJUANA AND COLOMBIAN ANTI-NARCOTICS ENFORCEMENT PROGRAM

Section 502(a)(2)-(4) of Pub. L. 97-113 provided that:

“(2) Assistance provided from funds appropriated, before the enactment of this Act [Dec. 29, 1981], to carry out section 481 of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [this section] may be made available for purposes prohibited by subsection (d) of such section as in effect im-

mediately before the enactment of this subsection [Dec. 29, 1981].

“(3) Funds appropriated for the fiscal year 1980 to carry out section 481 of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [this section] which were obligated for assistance for the Republic of Colombia may be used for purposes other than those set forth in section 482(a)(2) of that Act [22 U.S.C. 2291a] as in effect immediately before the enactment of the International Security and Development Cooperation Act of 1980 [Dec. 16, 1980].

“(4) Paragraphs (2) and (3) of this subsection shall apply only to the extent provided in advance in an appropriations Act. For such purpose, the funds described in those paragraphs are authorized to be made available for the purposes specified in those paragraphs.”

#### UNITED STATES CITIZENS IMPRISONED IN MEXICO

Section 408 of Pub. L. 94-329, title IV, June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 759, as amended by Pub. L. 95-384, § 29(b), Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 747, provided that:

“(a) The Congress, while sharing the concern of the President over the urgent need for international cooperation to restrict traffic in dangerous drugs, is convinced that such efforts must be consistent with respect for fundamental human rights. The Congress, therefore, calls upon the President to take steps to insure that United States efforts to secure stringent international law enforcement measures are combined with efforts to secure fair and humane treatment for citizens of all countries.

“(b) The Congress requests that the President communicate directly to the President and Government of the Republic of Mexico, a nation with which we have friendly and cooperative relations, the continuing desire of the United States for such relations between our two countries and the concern of the United States over treatment of United States citizens arrested in Mexico.”

#### DELEGATION OF PRESIDENTIAL AUTHORITIES UNDER INTERNATIONAL NARCOTICS CONTROL ACT OF 1990

Determination of President of the United States, No. 91-20, Jan. 25, 1991, 56 F.R. 8681, provided:

Memorandum for the Secretary of State [and] the Secretary of Defense

By virtue of the authority vested in me by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of America, including the provisions of the International Narcotics Control Act of 1990 (the INCA), Public Law 101-623 [see Short Title of 1990 Amendment note set out under section 2151 of this title], and 3 U.S.C. section 301, I hereby:

(1) Delegate to the Secretary of State the functions conferred upon me by the following sections of the INCA:

Section 4(a) [Nov. 21, 1990, 104 Stat. 3353]; section 4(e); and, in consultation with the Secretary of Defense, section 13 [22 U.S.C. 2291h note].

(2) Delegate to the Secretary of Defense the functions conferred upon me by section 8 of the INCA [set out as a note above].

(3) Delegate to the heads of executive departments and agencies those functions under the INCA relating to notifications to the Congress insofar as such functions relate to programs for which those heads of departments and agencies have responsibilities for notifications to the Congress under Executive Order No. 12163, as amended [22 U.S.C. 2381 note]; provided that the heads of departments and agencies shall consult with the Secretary of State before exercising the functions delegated by this paragraph with regard to narcotics-related assistance.

The Secretary of State is authorized and directed to publish this memorandum in the Federal Register.

GEORGE BUSH.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2151x-2, 2291a, 2321k of this title; title 7 section 1736g-1; title 12 section 635; title 48 sections 1902, 1903.

#### § 2291-1. Repealed. Pub. L. 102-583, § 6(e)(2), Nov. 2, 1992, 106 Stat. 4933

Section, Pub. L. 99-570, title II, § 2013, Oct. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 3207-66; Pub. L. 100-690, title IV, § 4404, Nov. 18, 1988, 102 Stat. 4276, related to reports and restrictions concerning major illicit drug producing and major drug-transit countries.

#### § 2291-2. Repealed. Pub. L. 103-447, title I, § 103(b), Nov. 2, 1994, 108 Stat. 4693

Section, Pub. L. 100-690, title IV, § 4501, Nov. 18, 1988, 102 Stat. 4284; Pub. L. 102-583, § 6(e)(1), Nov. 2, 1992, 106 Stat. 4933, provided for reporting on transfer of United States assets.

#### § 2291-3. Repealed. Pub. L. 102-583, § 6(e)(1), Nov. 2, 1992, 106 Stat. 4933

Section, Pub. L. 100-690, title IV, § 4601, Nov. 18, 1988, 102 Stat. 4286, provided for the coordination of all United States anti-narcotics assistance to foreign countries. See section 2291(b) of this title.

#### § 2291-4. Official immunity for authorized employees and agents of United States and foreign countries engaged in interdiction of aircraft used in illicit drug trafficking

##### (a) Employees and agents of foreign countries

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, it shall not be unlawful for authorized employees or agents of a foreign country (including members of the armed forces of that country) to interdict or attempt to interdict an aircraft in that country's territory or airspace if—

(1) that aircraft is reasonably suspected to be primarily engaged in illicit drug trafficking; and

(2) the President of the United States, before the interdiction occurs, has determined with respect to that country that—

(A) interdiction is necessary because of the extraordinary threat posed by illicit drug trafficking to the national security of that country; and

(B) the country has appropriate procedures in place to protect against innocent loss of life in the air and on the ground in connection with interdiction, which shall at a minimum include effective means to identify and warn an aircraft before the use of force directed against the aircraft.

##### (b) Employees and agents of United States

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, it shall not be unlawful for authorized employees or agents of the United States (including members of the Armed Forces of the United States) to provide assistance for the interdiction actions of foreign countries authorized under subsection (a) of this section. The provision of such assistance shall not give rise to any civil action seeking money damages or any other form of relief against the United States or its employees or agents (including members of the Armed Forces of the United States).

##### (c) Definitions

For purposes of this section:

(1) The terms “interdict” and “interdiction”, with respect to an aircraft, mean to damage, render inoperative, or destroy the aircraft.

(2) The term “illicit drug trafficking” means illicit trafficking in narcotic drugs, psychotropic substances, and other controlled substances, as such activities are described by any international narcotics control agreement to which the United States is a signatory, or by the domestic law of the country in whose territory or airspace the interdiction is occurring.

(3) The term “assistance” includes operational, training, intelligence, logistical, technical, and administrative assistance.

(Pub. L. 103-337, div. A, title X, §1012, Oct. 5, 1994, 108 Stat. 2837.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 1995, and not as part of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 which comprises this chapter.

#### PRESIDENTIAL DETERMINATIONS RELATING TO INTERDICTION

The President made the determination required by subsec. (a)(2) of this section for the following countries: Columbia, Determination No. 95-7, Dec. 1, 1994, 59 F.R. 64835.

Peru, Determination No. 95-9, Dec. 8, 1994, 59 F.R. 65231.

#### § 2291a. Authorization of appropriations

##### (a) Fiscal year authorization; availability of funds

(1) To carry out the purposes of section 2291 of this title, there are authorized to be appropriated to the President \$147,783,000 for fiscal year 1993 and \$171,500,000 for fiscal year 1994.

(2) Amounts appropriated under this subsection are authorized to remain available until expended.

##### (b) Procurement of weapons and ammunition

###### (1) Prohibition

Except as provided in paragraph (2), funds made available to carry out this part shall not be made available for the procurement of weapons or ammunition.

###### (2) Exceptions

Paragraph (1) shall not apply with respect to funds for the procurement of—

(A) weapons or ammunition provided only for the defensive arming of aircraft used for narcotics-related purposes, or

(B) firearms and related ammunition provided only for defensive purposes to employees or contract personnel of the Department of State engaged in activities under this part,

if, at least 15 days before obligating those funds, the President notifies the appropriate congressional committees in accordance with the procedures applicable to reprogramming notifications under section 2394-1 of this title.

##### (c) Contribution by recipient country

To ensure local commitment to the activities assisted under this part, a country receiving assistance under this part should bear an appropriate share of the costs of any narcotics control program, project, or activity for which such as-

stance is to be provided. A country may bear such costs on an “in kind” basis.

##### (d) Administrative assistance

(1) Except as provided in paragraph (2), personnel funded pursuant to this section are authorized to provide administrative assistance to personnel assigned to the bureau designated by the Secretary of State to replace the Bureau for International Narcotics Matters.

(2) Paragraph (1) shall not apply to the extent that it would result in a reduction in funds available for antinarcotics assistance to foreign countries.

##### (e) Advance notification of transfer of seized assets

The President shall notify the appropriate congressional committees at least 10 days prior to any transfer by the United States Government to a foreign country for narcotics control purposes of any property or funds seized by or otherwise forfeited to the United States Government in connection with narcotics-related activity.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §482, as added Pub. L. 92-352, title V, §503, July 13, 1972, 86 Stat. 497; amended Pub. L. 93-189, §11(b), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 720; Pub. L. 94-329, title V, §504(a), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 764; Pub. L. 95-92, §3, Aug. 4, 1977, 91 Stat. 614; Pub. L. 95-384, §5, Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 731; Pub. L. 96-92, §3(a), Oct. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 701; Pub. L. 96-533, title IV, §402(a), (b), Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3149; Pub. L. 97-113, title V, §502(c), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1539; Pub. L. 99-83, title VI, §§602, 608, 614, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 228, 229, 231; Pub. L. 99-529, title IV, §401, Oct. 24, 1986, 100 Stat. 3019; Pub. L. 99-570, title II, §2002, Oct. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 3207-60; Pub. L. 100-690, title IV, §4201, Nov. 18, 1988, 102 Stat. 4267; Pub. L. 101-231, §§16, 17(g), Dec. 13, 1989, 103 Stat. 1964, 1965; Pub. L. 102-583, §§3, 4(e), 6(b)(4), Nov. 2, 1992, 106 Stat. 4914, 4915, 4932; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §164(a), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 411; Pub. L. 103-447, title I, §101(c), Nov. 2, 1994, 108 Stat. 4692.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 103-236 added subsec. (d).

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 103-447 added subsec. (e).

1992—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 102-583, §3, substituted “\$147,783,000 for fiscal year 1993 and \$171,500,000 for fiscal year 1994” for “\$115,000,000 for fiscal year 1990”.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 102-583, §4(e), amended subsec. (b) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (b) read as follows: “Funds authorized to be appropriated by this section shall not be made available for the procurement of weapons or ammunition under this part.”

Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 102-583, §6(b)(4), redesignated subsec. (d) as (c) and struck out former subsec. (c) which read as follows: “Notwithstanding section 1306 of title 31, section 508 of the General Government Matters, Department of Commerce, and Related Agencies Appropriation Act, 1962, and section 1705 of title 7, up to the equivalent of \$10,000,000 in currencies or credits of the Government of Pakistan held by the United States shall, to such extent as may be provided in an appropriation Act, be available to the President for the fiscal year 1981 (and shall remain available until expended) to carry out the purposes of section 2291 of this title through assistance to the Government of Pakistan. Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the availability or expenditure of such foreign currencies shall not affect or reduce appropriations otherwise available

to carry out the administration of the international narcotics control program.”

1989—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 101-231, §16, substituted “\$115,000,000 for fiscal year 1990” for “\$101,000,000 for fiscal year 1989”.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 101-231, §17(g), inserted “Contribution by recipient country” as heading and amended text generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: “Assistance may be provided under this part to a foreign country only if the country provides assurances to the President, and the President is satisfied, that the country will provide at least 25 percent of the costs of any narcotics control program, project, or activity for which such assistance is to be provided. The costs borne by the country may include ‘in-kind’ contributions.”

1988—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 100-690 added par. (1) and struck out former pars. (1) and (3) which related to authorization for fiscal years 1986 and 1987, and to contribution to United Nations Fund for Drug Abuse Control.

1986—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 99-570, §2002(1), which directed that “\$75,445,000 for the fiscal year 1987” be substituted for “\$57,529,000 for the fiscal year 1987”, was executed by making the substitution for “\$65,445,000 for the fiscal year 1987” to reflect the probable intent of Congress and the intervening amendment by Pub. L. 99-529. See Amendment note for Pub. L. 99-529 below.

Pub. L. 99-570, §2002(2), inserted provisions that if the President submits a detailed plan for use of the money, an additional \$45,000,000 may be appropriated to carry out the purpose of section 2291 of this title, of which at least \$10,000,000 shall be used primarily for helicopters or other aircraft based in Latin America for use for narcotics control, eradication, and interdiction efforts throughout the region.

Pub. L. 99-529, which directed the substitution of “\$65,445,000 for the fiscal year 1987” for “\$57,529,000 for the fiscal year 1987”, was executed by substituting the new phrase for “\$57,529,000 for fiscal year 1987” to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

1985—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 99-83, §602, amended par. (1) generally, substituting provisions authorizing appropriations of \$57,529,000 for fiscal years 1986 and 1987, for provisions authorizing appropriations of \$37,700,000 for fiscal years 1982 and 1983.

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 99-83, §614, added par. (3).

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 99-83, §608, added subsec. (d).

1981—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 97-113, in par. (1), substituted appropriations authorization of \$37,700,000 for fiscal years 1982 and 1983 for appropriation of \$38,573,000 for fiscal year 1981, redesignated par. (3) as (2), and deleted former par. (2) which limited the contribution to the United Nations Fund for Drug Abuse Control from fiscal year 1981 appropriated funds to lesser of \$3,000,000 or 50 percent of the total contributions by all countries to such Fund for the calendar year with respect to which the United States contribution is made.

1980—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 96-533, §402(a), in par. (1), substituted appropriations authorization of \$38,573,000 for fiscal year 1981 for such authorization of \$51,758,000 for fiscal year 1980, redesignated as par. (3) as (2), substituting therein “1981” and “50 percent” for “1980” and “25 percent”, and deleted former par. (2) authorization of \$16,000,000 for interdiction of drug traffic by Republic of Colombia to be used only for helicopters, patrol vessels, fixed radar equipment, transport vehicles, fuel, and for training personnel, and redesignated par. (4) as (3).

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 96-533, §402(b), added subsec. (c).

1979—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 96-92 designated existing provisions as par. (1), substituted appropriations authorization of \$51,758,000 for fiscal year 1980 for authorization of \$40,000,000 for fiscal year 1979, and designated provision respecting availability of funds as par. (4).

Subsec. (a)(2), (3). Pub. L. 96-92 added pars. (2) and (3).

Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 96-92 designated existing provision respecting availability of funds as par. (4) and substituted “subsection” for “section”.

1978—Pub. L. 95-384 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a), substituted “\$40,000,000 for the fiscal year

1979” for “\$39,000,000 for the fiscal year 1978”, and added subsec. (b).

1977—Pub. L. 95-92 substituted provisions authorizing appropriations for fiscal year 1978 and providing for availability of amounts appropriated until expended, for provisions authorizing appropriations for fiscal years 1974 through 1977, provisions prohibiting obligation of appropriation for fiscal year 1976 for any country illegally trafficking in opiates unless such appropriation aids in reducing the amount of illegal opiates entering the international market, and provisions authorizing availability of amounts appropriated until expended.

1976—Pub. L. 94-329 inserted provision that authorized \$40,000,000 for the fiscal year 1976, no part of which can be obligated to any country where illegal opiate traffic is a significant problem unless the President certifies in writing to the Speaker of the House and chairman of the Senate Committee on Foreign Relations that the assistance furnished is significantly the amount of illegal opiates entering the international market, and authorized \$34,000,000 for the fiscal year 1977.

1973—Pub. L. 93-189 substituted “\$42,500,000 for each of the fiscal years 1974 and 1975. Amounts appropriated under this section are authorized to remain available until expended”, for “\$42,500,000 for the fiscal year 1973, which amount is authorized to remain available until expended”.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

#### COLOMBIAN ANTI-NARCOTICS ENFORCEMENT PROGRAM

Section 402(c) of Pub. L. 96-533 provided: “Notwithstanding the provisions of section 482(a)(2) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [subsec. (a)(2) of this section] as in effect immediately prior to the enactment of this Act [Dec. 16, 1980], funds appropriated for the fiscal year 1980 to carry out the purposes of section 481 of that Act [section 2291 of this title] which were obligated for assistance for Colombia may be used for fixed-wing aircraft, communications equipment, and such other equipment and operational support, including aviation services, as are essential to the Colombian anti-narcotics enforcement program.”

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2291, 2420 of this title.

#### § 2291b. Prohibition on use of foreign assistance for reimbursements for drug crop eradications

Funds made available to carry out this chapter may not be used to reimburse persons whose illicit drug crops are eradicated.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §483, as added Pub. L. 99-83, title VI, §609, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 230.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as an Effective Date of 1985 Amendment note under section 2151-1 of this title.

**§ 2291c. Requirements relating to aircraft and other equipment**

**(a) Retention of title to aircraft**

**(1) In general**

(A) Except as provided in paragraph (2), any aircraft made available to a foreign country under this part, or made available to a foreign country primarily for narcotics-related purposes under any other provision of law, shall be provided only on a lease or loan basis.

(B) Subparagraph (A) applies to aircraft made available at any time after October 27, 1986 (which was the date of enactment of the International Narcotics Control Act of 1986).

**(2) Exceptions**

(A) Paragraph (1) shall not apply to the extent that—

(i) the application of that paragraph with respect to particular aircraft would be contrary to the national interest of the United States; and

(ii) the President notifies the appropriate congressional committees in accordance with the procedures applicable to re-programming notifications under section 2394-1 of this title.

(B) Paragraph (1) does not apply with respect to aircraft made available to a foreign country under any provision of law that authorizes property that has been civilly or criminally forfeited to the United States to be made available to foreign countries.

**(3) Assistance for leasing of aircraft**

(A) For purposes of satisfying the requirement of paragraph (1), funds made available for the “Foreign Military Financing Program” under section 23 of the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2763] may be used to finance the leasing of aircraft under chapter 6 of that Act [22 U.S.C. 2796 et seq.].

(B) Section 61(a)(3)<sup>1</sup> of that Act [22 U.S.C. 2796(a)(3)] shall not apply with respect to leases so financed; rather the entire cost of any such lease (including any renewals) shall be an initial, one time payment of the amount which would be the sales price for the aircraft if they were sold under section 21(a)(1)(B) or section 22 of that Act [22 U.S.C. 2761(a)(1)(B), 2762] (as appropriate).

(C) To the extent that aircraft so leased were acquired under chapter 5 of that Act [22 U.S.C. 2795 et seq.], funds used pursuant to this paragraph to finance such leases shall be credited to the Special Defense Acquisition Fund under chapter 5 of that Act (excluding the amount of funds that reflects the charges described in section 21(e)(1) of that Act [22 U.S.C. 2761(e)(1)]). The funds described in the parenthetical clause of the preceding sentence shall be available for payments consistent with sections 37(a) and 43(b) of that Act [22 U.S.C. 2777(a), 2792(b)].

**(b) Permissible uses of aircraft and other equipment**

The President shall take all reasonable steps to ensure that aircraft and other equipment

made available to foreign countries under this part are used only in ways that are consistent with the purposes for which such equipment was made available.

**(c) Reports**

In the reports submitted pursuant to section 2291h(a) of this title, the President shall discuss—

(1) any evidence indicating misuse by a foreign country of aircraft or other equipment made available under this part, and

(2) the actions taken by the United States Government to prevent future misuse of such equipment by that foreign country.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §484, as added Pub. L. 99-570, title II, §2003, Oct. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 3207-61; amended Pub. L. 101-623, §7, Nov. 21, 1990, 104 Stat. 3355; Pub. L. 102-583, §4(f)(1), (2)(D), Nov. 2, 1992, 106 Stat. 4916, 4917.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Arms Export Control Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(3), is Pub. L. 90-629, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1320, as amended. Chapters 5 and 6 of the Act are classified generally to subchapters V (§2795 et seq.) and VI (§2796 et seq.), respectively, of chapter 39 of this title. Section 61(a)(3) of the Act was redesignated section 61(a)(4), and a new section 61(a)(3) was added, by Pub. L. 103-236, title VII, §731(e)(2), (3), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 503. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2751 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

The text of subsecs. (a) and (b) of section 2291h of this title, which were redesignated as subsecs. (b) and (c) of this section by Pub. L. 102-583, §4(f)(2)(D), was based on section 489(a) and (b) of Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, as added Pub. L. 100-690, title IV, §4507, Nov. 18, 1988, 102 Stat. 4286; amended Pub. L. 102-583, §4(f)(2)(B), (C), Nov. 2, 1992, 106 Stat. 4917.

AMENDMENTS

1992—Pub. L. 102-583, §4(f)(1), amended section generally, substituting subsec. (a) for former text which read as follows: “Any aircraft which, at any time after October 27, 1986, are made available to a foreign country under this part, or are made available to a foreign country primarily for narcotics-related purposes under any other provision of law, shall be provided only on a lease or loan basis. The requirement of this section does not apply with respect to aircraft made available to a foreign country under section 635(b)(6)(B) of title 12 or under any provision of law that authorizes property that has been civilly or criminally forfeited to the United States to be made available to foreign countries.”

Subsecs. (b), (c). Pub. L. 102-583, §4(f)(2)(D), redesignated subsecs. (a) and (b) of section 2291h of this title as subsecs. (b) and (c), respectively, of this section. See Codification note above.

1990—Pub. L. 101-623 inserted at end “The requirement of this section does not apply with respect to aircraft made available to a foreign country under section 635(b)(6)(B) of title 12 or under any provision of law that authorizes property that has been civilly or criminally forfeited to the United States to be made available to foreign countries.”

TRAINING OF HOST COUNTRY PILOTS

Pub. L. 101-623, §13, Nov. 21, 1990, 104 Stat. 3356, provided that:

“(a) INSTRUCTION PROGRAM.—Not less than 90 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Nov. 21, 1990], the President shall implement, under chapter 8 of part

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.



I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2291 and following; relating to international narcotics control assistance), a detailed program of instruction to train host country pilots, and other flight crew members, to fly host country aircraft involved in counternarcotics efforts in Andean countries. Such program shall be designed to eliminate direct participation of the United States Government (including participation through the use of either direct hire or contract personnel) in the operation of such aircraft.

“(b) REQUIREMENT FOR REPLACEMENT OF UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT PILOTS BY HOST COUNTRY PILOTS.—The President shall ensure that, within 18 months after the date of enactment of this Act [Nov. 21, 1990], flight crews composed of host country personnel replace all United States Government pilots and other flight crew members (including both direct hire or contract personnel) for host country aircraft involved in airborne counternarcotics operations in the Andean countries.

“(c) AIRCRAFT SUBJECT TO REQUIREMENTS.—As used in this section, the term ‘host country aircraft’ means any aircraft made available to an Andean country by the United States Government under chapter 8 of part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2291 et seq.], or any other provision of law, for use by that country for narcotics-related purposes.”

[Functions of President under section 13 of Pub. L. 101-623, set out above, delegated to Secretary of State in consultation with Secretary of Defense by Determination of President of the United States, No. 91-20, Jan. 25, 1991, 56 F.R. 8681, set out as a note under section 2291 of this title.]

#### § 2291d. Records of aircraft use

##### (a) Requirement to maintain records

The President shall maintain detailed records on the use of any aircraft made available to a foreign country under this part, including aircraft made available before October 27, 1986.

##### (b) Congressional access to records

The President shall make the records maintained pursuant to subsection (a) of this section available to the Congress upon a request of the Chairman of the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives or the Chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 485, as added Pub. L. 99-570, title II, § 2003, Oct. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 3207-61; amended Pub. L. 102-583, § 4(f)(3), Nov. 2, 1992, 106 Stat. 4917.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1992—Pub. L. 102-583 substituted “President” for “Secretary of State” in subsecs. (a) and (b).

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### § 2291e. Reallocation of funds withheld from countries which fail to take adequate steps to halt illicit drug production or trafficking

If any funds authorized to be appropriated for any fiscal year for assistance under this chapter are not used for assistance for the country for which those funds were allocated because of the requirements of section 2291j of this title or any other provision of law requiring the withholding

of assistance for countries that have not taken adequate steps to halt illicit drug production or trafficking, the President shall use those funds for additional assistance for those countries which have met their illicit drug eradication targets or have otherwise taken significant steps to halt illicit drug production or trafficking, as follows:

##### (1) International narcotics control assistance

Those funds may be transferred to and consolidated with the funds appropriated to carry out this part in order to provide additional narcotics control assistance for those countries. Funds transferred under this paragraph may only be used to provide increased funding for activities previously justified to the Congress. Transfers may be made under this paragraph without regard to the 20-percent increase limitation contained in section 2360(a) of this title. This paragraph does not apply with respect to funds made available for assistance under the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.].

##### (2) Other assistance

Any such funds not used under paragraph (1) shall be reprogrammed within the account for which they were appropriated (subject to the regular reprogramming procedures under section 2394-1 of this title) in order to provide additional assistance for those countries.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 486, as added Pub. L. 100-690, title IV, § 4206(a), Nov. 18, 1988, 102 Stat. 4270; amended Pub. L. 102-583, § 6(b)(5), Nov. 2, 1992, 106 Stat. 4932; Pub. L. 103-447, title I, § 101(d), Nov. 2, 1994, 108 Stat. 4692.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Arms Export Control Act, referred to in par. (1), is Pub. L. 90-629, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1320, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 39 (§ 2751 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2751 of this title and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-447 struck out subsec. (a) designation and heading which read “Additional assistance for countries taking significant steps”, substituted “assistance under this chapter” for “security assistance” in provisions before par. (1), “Other assistance” for “Security assistance” in par. (2) heading, and “additional assistance” for “additional security assistance” in par. (2) text, and struck out heading and text of subsec. (b). Text read as follows: “As used in this section, the term ‘security assistance’ means assistance under part II of subchapter II of this chapter (relating to the grant military assistance program), part IV of subchapter II of this chapter (relating to the Economic Support Fund), part V of subchapter II of this chapter (relating to international military education and training), or the Arms Export Control Act (relating to the ‘Foreign Military Financing Program’).”

1992—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 102-583, § 6(b)(5)(A), substituted “section 2291j of this title” for “section 2291(h) of this title”.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 102-583, § 6(b)(5)(B), substituted “(relating to the ‘Foreign Military Financing Program’)” for “(relating to foreign military sales financing)”.

SUPERSEDURE OF FOREIGN OPERATIONS, EXPORT FINANCING, AND RELATED PROGRAMS APPROPRIATIONS ACT, 1989

Section 4206(b) of Pub. L. 100-690, which provided that the enactment of this section superseded section 578(d)

of Pub. L. 100-461, 102 Stat. 2268-46, and that funds could be transferred under subsec. (a)(1) of this section notwithstanding section 514 of Pub. L. 100-461, 102 Stat. 2268-23, was repealed by Pub. L. 102-583, §6(e)(1), Nov. 2, 1992, 106 Stat. 4933.

**§ 2291f. Prohibition on assistance to drug traffickers**

**(a) Prohibition**

The President shall take all reasonable steps to ensure that assistance under this chapter and the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.] is not provided to or through any individual or entity that the President knows or has reason to believe—

(1) has been convicted of a violation of, or a conspiracy to violate, any law or regulation of the United States, a State or the District of Columbia, or a foreign country relating to narcotic or psychotropic drugs or other controlled substances; or

(2) is or has been an illicit trafficker in any such controlled substance or is or has been a knowing assister, abettor, conspirator, or coluder with others in the illicit trafficking in any such substance.

**(b) Regulations**

The President shall issue regulations specifying the steps to be taken in carrying out this section.

**(c) Congressional review of regulations**

Regulations issued pursuant to subsection (b) of this section shall be submitted to the Congress before they take effect.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §487, as added Pub. L. 100-690, title IV, §4503, Nov. 18, 1988, 102 Stat. 4285; amended Pub. L. 102-583, §6(b)(6), Nov. 2, 1992, 106 Stat. 4932; Pub. L. 103-447, title I, §101(e), Nov. 2, 1994, 108 Stat. 4692.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

The Arms Export Control Act, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 90-629, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1320, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 39 (§2751 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2751 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 103-447 inserted “to” after “relating”.

1992—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 102-583 struck out “(as defined in section 2291(i)(3) of this title)” after “controlled substances”.

**§ 2291g. Limitations on acquisition of real property and construction of facilities**

**(a) Acquisition of real property**

**(1) Prohibition**

Funds made available to carry out this part may not be used to acquire (by purchase or other means) any land or other real property for use by foreign military, paramilitary, or law enforcement forces.

**(2) Exception for certain leases**

Paragraph (1) shall not apply to the acquisition of real property by lease of a duration not to exceed 2 years.

**(3) Report**

The Secretary of State shall provide to the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate within 30 days after the end of each quarter of the fiscal year a detailed report on all leases entered into pursuant to paragraph (2), including the cost and duration of such lease, a description of the property leased, and the purpose for which such lease was entered into.

**(b) Construction of facilities**

**(1) Limitation**

Funds made available to carry out this part may not be used for construction of facilities for use by foreign military, paramilitary, or law enforcement forces unless, at least 15 days before obligating funds for such construction, the President notifies the appropriate congressional committees in accordance with procedures applicable to reprogramming notifications under section 2394-1 of this title.

**(2) Exception**

Paragraph (1) shall not apply to the construction of facilities which would require the obligation of less than \$750,000 under this part.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §488, as added Pub. L. 100-690, title IV, §4505, Nov. 18, 1988, 102 Stat. 4285; amended Pub. L. 102-583, §4(g), Nov. 2, 1992, 106 Stat. 4917.)

AMENDMENTS

1992—Pub. L. 102-583 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section read as follows: “Funds made available to carry out this part may not be used to acquire (by purchase, lease, or other means) any real property for use by foreign military, paramilitary, or law enforcement forces”.

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

**§ 2291h. Reporting requirements**

**(a) International narcotics control strategy report**

Not later than March 1 of each year, the President shall transmit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives, and to the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, a report containing the following:

(1) For each country that received assistance under this part for either of the 2 preceding fiscal years, a report on the extent to which the country has—

(A) met the goals and objectives of the United Nations Convention Against Illicit Traffic in Narcotic Drugs and Psychotropic Substances, including action on such issues as illicit cultivation, production, distribution, sale, transport, and financing, and

money laundering, asset seizure, extradition, mutual legal assistance, law enforcement and transit cooperation, precursor chemical control, and demand reduction;

(B) accomplished the goals described in an applicable bilateral narcotics agreement with the United States or a multilateral agreement; and

(C) taken legal and law enforcement measures to prevent and punish public corruption, especially by senior government officials, that facilitates the production, processing, or shipment of narcotic and psychotropic drugs and other controlled substances, or that discourages the investigation or prosecution of such acts.

(2)(A) A description of the policies adopted, agreements concluded, and programs implemented by the Department of State in pursuit of its delegated responsibilities for international narcotics control, including appropriate information on the status of negotiations between the United States and other countries on updated extradition treaties, mutual legal assistance treaties, precursor chemical controls, money laundering, and agreements pursuant to section 2015 of the International Narcotics Act of 1986 (relating to interdiction procedures for vessels of foreign registry).

(B) Information on multilateral and bilateral strategies with respect to money laundering pursued by the Department of State, the Department of Justice, the Department of the Treasury, and other relevant United States Government agencies, either collectively or individually, to ensure the cooperation of foreign governments with respect to narcotics-related money laundering and to demonstrate that all United States Government agencies are pursuing a common strategy with respect to major money laundering countries. The report shall include specific detail to demonstrate that all United States Government agencies are pursuing a common strategy with respect to achieving international cooperation against money laundering and are pursuing a common strategy with respect to major money laundering countries, including a summary of United States objectives on a country-by-country basis.

(3) The identity of those countries which are—

(A) major illicit drug producing countries or major drug-transit countries as determined under section 2291j(h) of this title;

(B) major sources of precursor chemicals used in the production of illicit narcotics; or

(C) major money laundering countries.

(4) In addition, for each country identified pursuant to paragraph (3), the following:

(A) A description of the plans, programs, and timetables adopted by such country, including efforts to meet the objectives of the United Nations Convention Against Illicit Traffic in Narcotic Drugs and Psychotropic Substances, and a discussion of the adequacy of the legal and law enforcement measures taken and the accomplishments achieved in accord with those plans.

(B) Whether as a matter of government policy or practice, such country encourages or facilitates the illicit production or distribution of narcotic or psychotropic drugs or other controlled substances or the laundering of proceeds from illegal drug transactions; and whether any senior official of the government of such country engages in, encourages, or facilitates the illicit production or distribution of such drugs or substances, or the laundering of proceeds from illegal drug transactions.

(5) In addition, for each country identified pursuant to paragraph (3)(A) or (3)(B), a detailed status report, with such information as can be reliably obtained, on the narcotic or psychotropic drugs or other controlled substances which are being cultivated, produced, or processed in or transported through such country, noting significant changes in conditions, such as increases or decreases in the illicit cultivation and manufacture of and traffic in such drugs and substances.

(6) In addition, for those countries identified pursuant to paragraph (3)(C)—

(A) which countries are parties to international agreements on a method for maintaining records of transactions of an established list of precursor and essential chemicals;

(B) which countries have established a procedure by which such records may be made available to United States law enforcement authorities; and

(C) which countries have enacted national chemical control legislation which would impose specific recordkeeping and reporting requirements for listed chemicals, establish a system of permits or declarations for imports and exports of listed chemicals, and authorize government officials to seize or suspend shipments of listed chemicals.

(7) In addition, for those countries identified pursuant to paragraph (3)(D) the following:

(A)(i) Which countries have financial institutions engaging in currency transactions involving international narcotics trafficking proceeds that include significant amounts of United States currency or currency derived from illegal drug sales in the United States or that otherwise significantly affect the United States;

(ii) which countries identified pursuant to clause (i) have not reached agreement with the United States authorities on a mechanism for exchanging adequate records in connection with narcotics investigations and proceedings; and

(iii) which countries identified pursuant to clause (ii)—

(I) are negotiating in good faith with the United States to establish such a record-exchange mechanism, or

(II) have adopted laws or regulations that ensure the availability to appropriate United States Government personnel and those of other governments of adequate records in connection with narcotics investigations and proceedings.

(B) Which countries—

(i) have ratified the United Nations Convention Against Illicit Traffic in Narcotic Drugs and Psychotropic Substances and are taking steps to implement that Convention and other applicable agreements and conventions such as the recommendations of the Financial Action Task Force, the policy directive of the European Community, the legislative guidelines of the Organization of American States, and other similar declarations; and

(ii) have entered into bilateral agreements for the exchange of information on money-laundering with countries other than the United States.

(C) Findings on each country's adoption of law and regulations considered essential to prevent narcotics-related money laundering. Such findings shall include whether a country has—

(i) criminalized narcotics money laundering;

(ii) required banks and other financial institutions to know and record the identity of customers engaging in significant transactions, including the recording of large currency transactions at thresholds appropriate to that country's economic situation;

(iii) required banks and other financial institutions to maintain, for an adequate time, records necessary to reconstruct significant transactions through financial institutions in order to be able to respond quickly to information requests from appropriate government authorities in narcotics-related money laundering cases;

(iv) required or allowed financial institutions to report suspicious transactions;

(v) established systems for identifying, tracing, freezing, seizing, and forfeiting narcotics-related assets;

(vi) enacted laws for the sharing of seized narcotics assets with other governments;

(vii) cooperated, when requested, with appropriate law enforcement agencies of other governments investigating financial crimes related to narcotics; and

(viii) addressed the problem on international transportation of illegal-source currency and monetary instruments.

The report shall also detail instances of refusals to cooperate with foreign governments, and any actions taken by the United States Government and any international organization to address such obstacles, including the imposition of sanctions or penalties.

**(b) Annual reports on assistance**

**(1) In general**

At the time that the report required by subsection (a) of this section is submitted each year, the Secretary of State, in consultation with appropriate United States Government agencies, shall report to the appropriate committees of the Congress on the assistance provided or proposed to be provided by the United States Government during the preceding fiscal year, the current fiscal year, and the next fis-

cal year to support international efforts to combat illicit narcotics production or trafficking.

**(2) Information to be included**

Each report pursuant to this subsection shall—

(A) specify the amount and nature of the assistance provided or to be provided;

(B) include, for each country identified in subsection (a)(3)(A) of this section, information from the Drug Enforcement Administration, the Customs Service, and the Coast Guard describing in detail—

(i) the assistance provided or to be provided to such country by that agency, and

(ii) the assistance provided or to be provided to that agency by such country,

with respect to narcotic control efforts during the preceding fiscal year, the current fiscal year, and the next fiscal year; and

(C) list all transfers, which were made by the United States Government during the preceding fiscal year, to a foreign country for narcotics control purposes of any property seized by or otherwise forfeited to the United States Government in connection with narcotics-related activity, including an estimate of the fair market value and physical condition of each item of property transferred.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §489, as added Pub. L. 102-583, §5(a), Nov. 2, 1992, 106 Stat. 4917; amended Pub. L. 103-447, title I, §101(f)(1), Nov. 2, 1994, 108 Stat. 4692; Pub. L. 104-66, title I, §1112(c), Dec. 21, 1995, 109 Stat. 724.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 2015 of the International Narcotics Act of 1986, referred to in subsec. (a)(2)(A), probably means section 2015 of the International Narcotics Control Act of 1986, Pub. L. 99-570, which is set out as a note under section 1902 of Title 46, Appendix, Shipping.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 2291h, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §489, as added Pub. L. 100-690, title IV, §4507, Nov. 18, 1988, 102 Stat. 4286, related to permissible uses of aircraft and other equipment, prior to amendment by Pub. L. 102-583, §4(f)(2), Nov. 2, 1992, 106 Stat. 4917, which also transferred subsecs. (a) and (b) to section 2291c(b) and (c) of this title, respectively, and repealed the designation, heading, and subsecs. (c) and (d).

AMENDMENTS

1995—Pub. L. 104-66, §1112(c)(1), struck out “for fiscal year 1995” after “Reporting requirements” in section catchline.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 104-66, §1112(c)(2), struck out heading and text of subsec. (c). Text read as follows: “This section applies only during fiscal year 1995. Section 2291i of this title does not apply during that fiscal year.”

1994—Pub. L. 103-447, §101(f)(1)(A), substituted “for fiscal year 1995” for “for fiscal years 1993 and 1994” in section catchline.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103-447, §101(f)(1)(B)(i), substituted “March 1” for “April 1” in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (a)(3)(B) to (D). Pub. L. 103-447, §101(f)(1)(B)(ii), redesignated subpars. (C) and (D) as (B) and (C), respectively, and struck out former subpar. (B) which read as follows: “the significant direct or indirect sources of narcotics and psychotropic drugs and

other controlled substances significantly affecting the United States;”.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 103-447, §101(f)(1)(D), (E), redesignated subsec. (d) as (c) and amended heading and text generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: “This section applies only during fiscal years 1993 and 1994. Section 2291i of this title does not apply during those fiscal years.”

Pub. L. 103-447, §101(f)(1)(C), struck out heading and text of subsec. (c). Text read as follows: “As used in this section—

“(1) the term ‘precursor chemical’ has the same meaning as the term ‘listed chemical’ has under paragraph (33) of section 802 of title 21; and

“(2) the term ‘major money laundering country’ means a country whose financial institutions engage in currency transactions involving significant amounts of proceeds from international narcotics trafficking.”

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 103-447, §101(f)(1)(D), redesignated subsec. (d) as (c).

#### STATUTORY REFERENCES TO ANNUAL REPORTS, CERTIFICATIONS, AND DEFINITIONS

Section 6(a) of Pub. L. 102-583 provided that after Sept. 30, 1994, any reference in any provision of law to section 2291h or 2291j of this title would be deemed a reference to the corresponding provision of section 2291i or 2291k of this title, respectively, unless the context required otherwise; any reference in any provision of law enacted before Nov. 2, 1992, to section 2291(e) or (i) of this title be deemed a reference to section 2291h or 2291(e) of this title, respectively; and that any reference in any provision of law enacted before Nov. 2, 1992, to section 2291(h) of this title be deemed, as of Oct. 1, 1992, to be a reference to section 2291j of this title, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103-447, title I, §103(a), Nov. 2, 1994, 108 Stat. 4693.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2291, 2291c, 2291j of this title; title 19 sections 2492, 2494.

#### § 2291i. Repealed. Pub. L. 104-66, title I, § 1112(a), Dec. 21, 1995, 109 Stat. 723

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §489A, as added Pub. L. 102-583, §5(a), Nov. 2, 1992, 106 Stat. 4921; amended Pub. L. 103-447, title I, §101(f)(2), Nov. 2, 1994, 108 Stat. 4692, related to reporting requirements applicable after Sept. 30, 1995.

#### § 2291j. Annual certification procedures

##### (a) Withholding of bilateral assistance and opposition to multilateral development assistance

###### (1) Bilateral assistance

Fifty percent of the United States assistance allocated each fiscal year in the report required by section 2413 of this title for each major illicit drug producing country or major drug-transit country shall be withheld from obligation and expenditure, except as provided in subsection (b) of this section. This paragraph shall not apply with respect to a country if the President determines that its application to that country would be contrary to the national interest of the United States, except that any such determination shall not take effect until at least 15 days after the President submits written notification of that determination to the appropriate congressional committees in accordance with the procedures applicable to reprogramming notifications under section 2394-1 of this title.

###### (2) Multilateral assistance

The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of each

multilateral development bank to vote, on and after March 1 of each year, against any loan or other utilization of the funds of their respective institution to or for any major illicit drug producing country or major drug-transit country (as determined under subsection (h) of this section), except as provided in subsection (b) of this section. For purposes of this paragraph, the term “multilateral development bank” means the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, the International Development Association, the Inter-American Development Bank, the Asian Development Bank, the African Development Bank, and the European Bank for Reconstruction and Development.

##### (b) Certification procedures

###### (1) What must be certified

Subject to subsection (d) of this section, the assistance withheld from a country pursuant to subsection (a)(1) of this section may be obligated and expended, and the requirement of subsection (a)(2) of this section to vote against multilateral development bank assistance to a country shall not apply, if the President determines and certifies to the Congress, at the time of the submission of the report required by section 2291h(a) of this title, that—

(A) during the previous year the country has cooperated fully with the United States, or has taken adequate steps on its own, to achieve full compliance with the goals and objectives established by the United Nations Convention Against Illicit Traffic in Narcotic Drugs and Psychotropic Substances; or

(B) for a country that would not otherwise qualify for certification under subparagraph (A), the vital national interests of the United States require that the assistance withheld pursuant to subsection (a)(1) of this section be provided and that the United States not vote against multilateral development bank assistance for that country pursuant to subsection (a)(2) of this section.

###### (2) Considerations regarding cooperation

In making the determination described in paragraph (1)(A), the President shall consider the extent to which the country has—

(A) met the goals and objectives of the United Nations Convention Against Illicit Traffic in Narcotic Drugs and Psychotropic Substances, including action on such issues as illicit cultivation, production, distribution, sale, transport and financing, and money laundering, asset seizure, extradition, mutual legal assistance, law enforcement and transit cooperation, precursor chemical control, and demand reduction;

(B) accomplished the goals described in an applicable bilateral narcotics agreement with the United States or a multilateral agreement; and

(C) taken legal and law enforcement measures to prevent and punish public corruption, especially by senior government officials, that facilitates the production, processing, or shipment of narcotic and psychotropic drugs and other controlled substances, or that discourages the investigation or prosecution of such acts.

**(3) Information to be included in national interest certification**

If the President makes a certification with respect to a country pursuant to paragraph (1)(B), the President shall include in such certification—

(A) a full and complete description of the vital national interests placed at risk if United States bilateral assistance to that country is terminated pursuant to this section and multilateral development bank assistance is not provided to such country; and

(B) a statement weighing the risk described in subparagraph (A) against the risks posed to the vital national interests of the United States by the failure of such country to cooperate fully with the United States in combating narcotics or to take adequate steps to combat narcotics on its own.

**(c) Licit opium producing countries**

The President may make a certification under subsection (b)(1)(A) of this section with respect to a major illicit drug producing country, or major drug-transit country, that is a producer of licit opium only if the President determines that such country maintains licit production and stockpiles at levels no higher than those consistent with licit market demand, and has taken adequate steps to prevent significant diversion of its licit cultivation and production into the illicit markets and to prevent illicit cultivation and production.

**(d) Congressional review**

Subsection (e) of this section shall apply if, within 30 calendar days after receipt of a certification submitted under subsection (b) of this section at the time of submission of the report required by section 2291h(a) of this title, the Congress enacts a joint resolution disapproving the determination of the President contained in such certification.

**(e) Denial of assistance for countries decertified**

If the President does not make a certification under subsection (b) of this section with respect to a country or the Congress enacts a joint resolution disapproving such certification, then until such time as the conditions specified in subsection (f) of this section are satisfied—

(1) funds may not be obligated for United States assistance for that country, and funds previously obligated for United States assistance for that country may not be expended for the purpose of providing assistance for that country; and

(2) the requirement to vote against multilateral development bank assistance pursuant to subsection (a)(2) of this section shall apply with respect to that country, without regard to the date specified in that subsection.

**(f) Recertification**

Subsection (e) of this section shall apply to a country described in that subsection until—

(1) the President, at the time of submission of the report required by section 2291h(a) of this title, makes a certification under subsection (b)(1)(A) or (b)(1)(B) of this section with respect to that country, and the Congress does not enact a joint resolution under sub-

section (d) of this section disapproving the determination of the President contained in that certification; or

(2) the President, at any other time, makes the certification described in subsection (b)(1)(B) of this section with respect to that country, except that this paragraph applies only if either—

(A) the President also certifies that—

(i) that country has undergone a fundamental change in government, or

(ii) there has been a fundamental change in the conditions that were the reason—

(I) why the President had not made a certification with respect to that country under subsection (b)(1)(A) of this section, or

(II) if he had made such a certification and the Congress enacted a joint resolution disapproving the determination contained in the certification, why the Congress enacted that joint resolution; or

(B) the Congress enacts a joint resolution approving the determination contained in the certification under subsection (b)(1)(B) of this section.

Any certification under subparagraph (A) of paragraph (2) shall discuss the justification for the certification.

**(g) Senate procedures**

Any joint resolution under this section shall be considered in the Senate in accordance with the provisions of section 601(b) of the International Security Assistance and Arms Export Control Act of 1976.

**(h) Determining major drug-transit and major illicit drug producing countries**

Not later than November 1 of each year, the President shall notify the appropriate committees of the Congress of which countries have been determined to be major drug-transit countries, and which countries have been determined to be major illicit drug producing countries, for purposes of this chapter.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 490, as added Pub. L. 102-583, § 5(a), Nov. 2, 1992, 106 Stat. 4924; amended Pub. L. 103-447, title I, § 101(g)(1), Nov. 2, 1994, 108 Stat. 4692; Pub. L. 104-66, title I, § 1112(d), Dec. 21, 1995, 109 Stat. 724.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 601(b) of the International Security Assistance and Arms Export Control Act of 1976, referred to in subsec. (g), is section 601(b) of Pub. L. 94-329, title VI, June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 765, which is not classified to the Code.

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (h), was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1995—Pub. L. 104-66, § 1112(d)(1), struck out “for fiscal year 1995” after “certification procedures” in section catchline.

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 104-66, § 1112(d)(2), struck out heading and text of subsec. (i). Text read as follows: “This section applies only during fiscal year 1995. Sec-

tion 2291k of this title does not apply during that fiscal year.”

1994—Pub. L. 103-447, §101(g)(1)(A), substituted “for fiscal year 1995” for “for fiscal years 1993 and 1994” in section catchline.

Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 103-447, §101(g)(1)(B), struck out “(as determined under subsection (h) of this section)” after “drug-transit country”.

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 103-447, §101(g)(1)(C), substituted “March 1” for “April 1”.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 103-447, §101(g)(1)(D), substituted “that such country maintains licit production and stockpiles at levels no higher than those consistent with licit market demand, and has taken adequate steps to prevent significant diversion of its licit cultivation and production into the illicit markets and to prevent illicit cultivation and production.” for “that such country has taken adequate steps to prevent significant diversion of its licit cultivation and production into the illicit market, maintains production and stockpiles at levels no higher than those consistent with licit market demand, and prevents illicit cultivation and production.”

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 103-447, §101(g)(1)(E), substituted “30 calendar days” for “45 calendar days”.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 103-447, §101(g)(1)(F), substituted “Senate procedures” for “Congressional review procedures” in heading, struck out designation and heading of par. (1), and struck out heading and text of par. (2). Text read as follows: “For the purpose of expediting the consideration and enactment of joint resolutions under this section, a motion to proceed to the consideration of any such joint resolution after it has been reported by the appropriate committee shall be treated as highly privileged in the House of Representatives.”

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 103-447, §101(g)(1)(G), struck out “for fiscal years 1993 and 1994” after “drug producing countries” in heading and substituted “November 1” for “January 1” in text.

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 103-447, §101(g)(1)(H), amended heading and text of subsec. (i) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: “This section applies only during fiscal years 1993 and 1994. During those fiscal years, section 2291k of this title does not apply and the definitions provided in section 2291(e)(2) and (5) of this title do not apply.”

#### CERTIFICATIONS FOR MAJOR NARCOTICS PRODUCING AND TRANSIT COUNTRIES

Determination of President of the United States, No. 95-15, Feb. 28, 1995, 60 F.R. 12859, provided:

By virtue of the authority vested in me by section 490(b)(1)(A) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as amended [22 U.S.C. 2291j(b)(1)(A)], (“the Act”), I hereby determine and certify that the following major drug producing and/or major drug transit countries/dependent territories have cooperated fully with the United States, or taken adequate steps on their own, to achieve full compliance with the goals and objectives of the 1988 United Nations Convention Against Illicit Traffic in Narcotic Drugs and Psychotropic Substances:

The Bahamas, Brazil, China, Dominican Republic, Ecuador, Guatemala, Haiti, Hong Kong, India, Jamaica, Laos, Malaysia, Mexico, Panama, Taiwan, Thailand, Venezuela, and Vietnam.

By virtue of the authority vested in my [sic] by section 490(b)(1)(B) of the Act, I hereby determine that it is in the vital national interests of the United States to certify the following countries:

Bolivia, Colombia, Lebanon, Pakistan, Paraguay, and Peru.

Information on these countries, as required under section 490(b)(3) of the Act, is attached [not set out in the Code].

I have determined that the following major producing and/or major transit countries do not meet the standards set forth in section 490(b):

Afghanistan, Burma, Iran, Nigeria, and Syria.

I have made these determinations, taking into account the factors set forth in section 490 of the Act, and

based on the information contained in the International Narcotics Control Strategy Report of 1995. Because the performance of these countries varies, I have attached an explanatory statement in each case [not set out in the Code].

You are hereby authorized and directed to report this determination to the Congress immediately and to publish it in the Federal Register.

WILLIAM J. CLINTON.

Prior certifications for major narcotics producing and transit countries were contained in the following:

Determination of President of the United States, No. 94-22, Apr. 1, 1994, 59 F.R. 17231.

Determination of President of the United States, No. 93-18, Mar. 31, 1993, 58 F.R. 19033.

Determination of President of the United States, No. 92-18, Feb. 28, 1992, 57 F.R. 8571.

Determination of President of the United States, No. 91-22, Mar. 1, 1991, 56 F.R. 10773.

Determination of President of the United States, No. 90-12, Feb. 28, 1990, 55 F.R. 10597.

Determination of President of the United States, No. 89-11, Feb. 28, 1989, 54 F.R. 9413.

Determination of President of the United States, No. 88-10, Feb. 29, 1988, 53 F.R. 11487.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2291e, 2291h of this title; title 12 section 635; title 18 section 981; title 19 sections 1616a, 3202; title 21 section 881.

#### § 2291k. Repealed. Pub. L. 104-66, title I, § 1112(b), Dec. 21, 1995, 109 Stat. 724

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 490A, as added Pub. L. 102-583, § 5(a), Nov. 2, 1992, 106 Stat. 4927; amended Pub. L. 103-447, title I, § 101(g)(2), Nov. 2, 1994, 108 Stat. 4693, related to annual certification procedures after Sept. 30, 1995.

#### PART IX—INTERNATIONAL DISASTER ASSISTANCE

##### PART REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This part is referred to in sections 2291, 2318 of this title.

#### § 2292. General provisions

##### (a) Congressional policy

The Congress, recognizing that prompt United States assistance to alleviate human suffering caused by natural and manmade disasters is an important expression of the humanitarian concern and tradition of the people of the United States, affirms the willingness of the United States to provide assistance for the relief and rehabilitation of people and countries affected by such disasters.

##### (b) General authority

Subject to limitations in section 2292a of this title, and notwithstanding any other provision of this chapter or any other Act, the President is authorized to furnish assistance to any foreign country, international organization, or private voluntary organization, on such terms and conditions as he may determine, for international disaster relief and rehabilitation, including assistance relating to disaster preparedness, and to the prediction of, and contingency planning for, natural disasters abroad.

##### (c) Specific direction

In carrying out the provisions of this section the President shall insure that the assistance provided by the United States shall, to the

greatest extent possible, reach those most in need of relief and rehabilitation as a result of natural and manmade disasters.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §491, as added Pub. L. 94-161, title I, §101(3), Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 849; amended Pub. L. 95-424, title I, §118(a), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 953; Pub. L. 96-533, title IV, §404(b), Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3150.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (b), was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 491 of Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, as added Pub. L. 92-226, pt. I, §109, Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 24, provided for East Pakistan refugee relief assistance, including appropriations authorization of \$250,000,000 for fiscal year 1972, prior to repeal by section 101(2) of Pub. L. 94-161.

#### AMENDMENTS

1980—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 96-533 substituted “limitations” for “limitation on appropriations”.

1978—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 95-424 substituted “, international organization, or private voluntary organization” for “or international organization”.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under subsec. (b) and (c) delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, to be exercised in consultation with the Secretary of State, with certain exceptions, by section 1-102(a)(1), (e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2151u, 2292a, 2292f, 2292g, 2292h, 2292i, 2292j, 2292l, 2292m, 2292n, 2292o, 2292p, 2292q of this title.

### § 2292a. Authorization of appropriations

#### (a) Fiscal year authorization

There are authorized to be appropriated to the President to carry out section 2292 of this title, \$25,000,000 for fiscal year 1986 and \$25,000,000 for fiscal year 1987. Amounts appropriated under this section are authorized to remain available until expended.

#### (b) Subsequent appropriations for reimbursement of additional fiscal year obligations charged against appropriation account

In addition to amounts otherwise available to carry out this part, up to \$50,000,000 in any fiscal year may be obligated against appropriations under subchapter I of this chapter (other than this part) for use in providing assistance in accordance with the authorities and general policies of section 2292 of this title. Amounts subsequently appropriated under this part with respect to a disaster may be used to reimburse any appropriation account against which obligations were incurred under this subsection with respect to that disaster.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §492, as added Pub. L. 94-161, title I, §101(3), Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 849; amended Pub. L. 95-88, title I, §119, Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 541; Pub. L. 95-424, title I, §118(b), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 953; Pub. L. 96-53, title I, §115, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 365; Pub. L. 96-533, title IV, §§403, 404(a), Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3150; Pub. L. 97-113, title V, §503, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1539; Pub. L. 99-83, title IV, §404, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 219.)

#### REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

#### AMENDMENTS

1985—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99-83 substituted provisions authorizing appropriations of \$25,000,000 for fiscal years 1986 and 1987, for provisions authorizing appropriations of \$27,000,000 for fiscal years 1982 and 1983.

1981—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 97-113 substituted appropriations authorization of \$27,000,000 for fiscal years 1982 and 1983, for appropriation of \$25,000,000 for fiscal year 1981.

1980—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 96-533, §§403, 404(a)(1), substituted appropriations authorization of “\$25,000,000 for the fiscal year 1981” for such authorization of “\$21,800,000 for the fiscal year 1980” and designated existing provisions as subsec. (a).

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 96-533, §404(a)(2), added subsec. (b).

1979—Pub. L. 96-53 substituted “\$21,800,000” for “\$25,000,000” and “1980” for “1979”.

1978—Pub. L. 95-424 substituted “the fiscal year 1979” for “each of the fiscal years 1977 and 1978” and struck out provision requiring the President to submit quarterly reports to the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and to the Speaker of the House of Representatives on the programming and obligation of funds.

1977—Pub. L. 95-88 substituted “fiscal years 1977 and 1978” for “fiscal years 1976 and 1977”.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1979 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-53 effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 512(a) of Pub. L. 96-53, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

#### ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Funds available to President for carrying out this chapter, with specified exceptions, allocated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency by section 1-801(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56678, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2292, 2292k of this title.



**§ 2292a-1. Appropriated funds; Presidential reports to Committees on Appropriations of the Senate and the House**

The President shall submit quarterly reports to the Committee on Appropriations of the United States Senate and to the Committee on Appropriations of the House of Representatives on the programing and obligation of funds appropriated for International Disaster Assistance.

(Pub. L. 94-330, title I, §100, June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 773.)

CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as part of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 which comprises this chapter.

**§ 2292b. Disaster assistance coordination through a Special Coordinator for International Disaster Assistance; Presidential appointment and duties**

The President is authorized to appoint a Special Coordinator for International Disaster Assistance whose responsibility shall be to promote maximum effectiveness and coordination in responses to foreign disasters by United States agencies and between the United States and other donors. Included among the Special Coordinator's responsibilities shall be the formulation and updating of contingency plans for providing disaster relief.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §493, as added Pub. L. 94-161, title I, §101(3), Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 849.)

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by section 1-102(a)(1), (e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

**§ 2292c. Authorization of appropriations for disaster relief and emergency recovery needs in Pakistan and Nicaragua**

There are authorized to be appropriated, in addition to other sums available for such purposes, \$65,000,000 for use by the President for disaster relief and emergency recovery needs in Pakistan and Nicaragua, under such terms and conditions as he may determine, such sums to remain available until expended.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §494, formerly §452, as added Pub. L. 93-333, §2(2), July 8, 1974, 88 Stat. 290; renumbered §494, Pub. L. 94-161, title I, §101(4), Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 850.)

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 2262 of this title.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS; ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Functions of President under this section delegated and funds available under this chapter allocated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by sections 1-102(a)(1), (e) and 1-801(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

**§ 2292d. Repealed. Pub. L. 95-424, title VI, § 604, Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 961**

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §494A, formerly pt. III, §639A, as added Pub. L. 93-189, §20, Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 725, amended Pub. L. 93-333, §3(2)-(5), July 8, 1974, 88 Stat. 290; renumbered pt. I, §494A, Pub. L. 94-161, title I, §101(5), Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 850, related to famine and disaster relief to drought-stricken African nations.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as an Effective Date of 1978 Amendment note under section 2151 of this title.

ASSISTANCE IN CONTROLLING LOCUST PLAGUES IN AFRICA; AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS

Pub. L. 95-424, title I, §120, Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 954, provided that: "In order to assist in attempts to control locust plagues in Africa, especially in the Horn of Africa, there is authorized to be appropriated to the President, in addition to amounts otherwise authorized for disaster relief purposes, \$2,000,000, which amount is authorized to remain available until expended."

**§ 2292e. Transferred**

CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §120, formerly pt. III, §639B, as added Pub. L. 93-189, §20, Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 725; renumbered pt. I, §494B, and amended Pub. L. 94-161, title I, §101(5), (7), Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 850; renumbered pt. I, §120; amended Pub. L. 95-88, title I, §115(1), (2), Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 539, which related to the Sahel development program and had been classified to section 2399-1b of this title, has been transferred to section 2151r of this title.

**§ 2292f. Cyprus: relief and rehabilitation; terms and conditions; authorization of appropriations; section 2292 policy and general authority applicable**

The President is authorized to furnish assistance, on such terms and conditions as he may determine, for the relief and rehabilitation of refugees and other needy people in Cyprus. There is authorized to be appropriated for the purposes of this section, in addition to amounts otherwise available for such purposes, \$40,000,000. Such amount is authorized to remain available until expended. Assistance under this section shall be provided in accordance with the policy and general authority contained in section 2292 of this title.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §495, as added Pub. L. 94-161, title I, §101(8), Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 850; amended Pub. L. 94-329, title IV, §402, June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 757.)

AMENDMENTS

1976—Pub. L. 94-329 substituted "\$40,000,000" for "\$30,000,000".

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS; ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Functions of President under this section delegated and funds available under this chapter allocated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by sections 1-102(a)(1), (e) and 1-801(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

**§ 2292g. Repealed. Pub. L. 95-424, title VI, § 604, Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 961**

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §495A, as added Pub. L. 94-276, §2, Apr. 21, 1976, 90 Stat. 397, related to relief and

rehabilitation for people victimized by recent earthquakes in Guatemala.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as an Effective Date of 1978 Amendment note under section 2151 of this title.

**§ 2292h. Italy: relief, rehabilitation and reconstruction assistance**

(a) In addition to amounts otherwise available for such purpose, there is authorized to be appropriated \$25,000,000 for the fiscal year 1976 to furnish assistance under this part for the relief and rehabilitation of the people who have been victimized by the recent earthquake in Italy. Amounts appropriated under this section are authorized to remain available until expended.

(b) There are authorized to be appropriated to the President \$30,000,000 for the fiscal year 1978 for relief, rehabilitation, and reconstruction assistance, in accordance with the provisions of section 2292 of this title and on such terms and conditions as he may determine, for the people who have been victimized by the recent earthquakes in Italy. Amounts appropriated under this subsection are authorized to remain available until expended.

(c) Obligations incurred prior to June 30, 1976, against other appropriations or accounts for the purpose of providing relief and rehabilitation assistance to the people of Italy may be charged to the appropriations authorized under this section.

(d)(1) The Congress recognizes that prompt United States assistance is necessary to alleviate the human suffering arising from the earthquakes in southern Italy in late 1980. Accordingly, there are authorized to be appropriated to the President, in addition to amounts otherwise available for such purpose, \$50,000,000 for the fiscal year 1981 for relief, rehabilitation, and reconstruction assistance for the victims of those earthquakes. Such assistance shall be provided in accordance with the policies and general authorities of section 2292 of this title and on such terms and conditions as the President may determine.

(2) Amounts appropriated under this subsection are authorized to remain available until expended.

(3) Obligations incurred against other appropriations or accounts for the purpose of providing relief, rehabilitation, and reconstruction assistance for the victims of the late 1980 earthquakes in southern Italy may be charged to appropriations, enacted after those obligations were incurred, for assistance for that purpose under this part.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 495B, as added Pub. L. 94-329, title IV, § 415, June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 761; amended Pub. L. 95-88, title I, § 120, Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 541; Pub. L. 96-525, Dec. 12, 1980, 94 Stat. 3043.)

AMENDMENTS

1980—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 96-525 added subsec. (d).  
1977—Subsecs. (b), (c). Pub. L. 95-88 added subsec. (b) and redesignated subsec. (b) as (c).

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS; ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Functions of President under this section delegated and funds available under this chapter allocated to Di-

rector of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by sections 1-102(a)(1), (e) and 1-801(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

**§ 2292i. Lebanon: relief and rehabilitation**

**(a) General authority**

The Congress, recognizing that prompt United States assistance is necessary to alleviate the human suffering arising from civil strife in Lebanon and to restore the confidence of the people of Lebanon, authorizes the President to furnish assistance, on such terms and conditions as he may determine, for the relief and rehabilitation of refugees and other needy people in Lebanon.

**(b) Authorization of appropriations**

There is authorized to be appropriated to the President for the purposes of this section, in addition to amounts otherwise available for such purposes, \$20,000,000, which amount is authorized to remain available until expended.

**(c) Section 2292 policy and general authority applicable**

Assistance under this section shall be provided in accordance with the policies and general authority contained in section 2292 of this title.

**(d) Obligations charged to appropriations**

Obligations incurred prior to June 30, 1976, against other appropriations or accounts for the purpose of providing relief and rehabilitation assistance to the people of Lebanon may be charged to the appropriations authorized under this section.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 495C, as added Pub. L. 94-329, title IV, § 416, June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 762; amended Pub. L. 95-424, title V, § 502(d)(1), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 959.)

AMENDMENTS

1978—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 95-424 struck out subsec. (e) relating to reports to Congress by the President regarding the programing and obligation of funds under this section.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS; ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Functions of President under this section delegated and funds available under this chapter allocated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by sections 1-102(a)(1), (e) and 1-801(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

**§ 2292j. Romania: relief and rehabilitation**

**(a) Authorization of assistance**

The Congress, recognizing that prompt United States assistance is necessary to alleviate the human suffering arising from recent earthquakes in Romania, authorizes the President to furnish assistance, on such terms and conditions as he may determine, for the relief and rehabilitation of refugees and other earthquake victims in Romania.

**(b) Authorization of appropriations**

There are hereby authorized to be appropriated to the President for the fiscal year 1977, notwithstanding any other provisions of this chapter, in addition to amounts otherwise available for such purposes, not to exceed \$20,000,000, which amount is authorized to remain available until expended.

**(c) Policies and general authority**

Assistance under this section shall be provided in accordance with the policies and general authority contained in section 2292 of this title.

**(d) Obligations charged against appropriations**

Obligations incurred prior to April 18, 1977, against other appropriations or accounts for the purpose of providing relief and rehabilitation assistance to the people of Romania may be charged to the appropriations authorized under this section.

**(e) Repealed. Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(1), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560****(f) Human rights**

Nothing in this section shall be interpreted as endorsing any measure undertaken by the Government of Romania which would suppress human rights as defined in the Conference on Security and Co-operation in Europe (Helsinki) Final Act and the United Nations Declaration on Human Rights, or as constituting a precedent for or commitment to provide United States development assistance to Romania, and the Romanian Government shall be so notified when aid is furnished under this section.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 495D, as added Pub. L. 95-21, Apr. 18, 1977, 91 Stat. 48; amended Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(1), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (b), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

## AMENDMENTS

1981—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 97-113 repealed subsec. (e) which required quarterly reports on the programming and obligation of funds under this section.

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS; ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Functions of President under this section delegated and funds available under this chapter allocated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by sections 1-102(a)(1), (e) and 1-801(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

**§ 2292k. Turkey: relief, rehabilitation, and reconstruction**

The President is requested to use up to \$10,000,000 of the funds made available under section 2292a of this title to provide relief, rehabilitation, and reconstruction assistance to the victims of the recent earthquakes in Turkey.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 495E, formerly § 495D, as added Pub. L. 95-88, title I, § 121, Aug. 3, 1977, 91

Stat. 541; renumbered § 495E, Pub. L. 95-424, title I, § 119(1), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 953.)

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS; ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Functions of President under this section delegated and funds available under this chapter allocated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by sections 1-102(a)(1), (e) and 1-801(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

**§ 2292l. Africa: rehabilitation and resettlement****(a) Congressional policy; general authority**

The Congress recognizes that United States assistance is necessary to help developing countries in Africa meet the longer term rehabilitation and resettlement needs of displaced persons and other innocent victims of civil strife. Therefore, the President is authorized to furnish assistance, on such terms and conditions as he may determine, for the longer term rehabilitation and resettlement needs of such victims. Funds for this purpose should be used to assist African governments in providing semi-permanent housing, potable water supply systems, and sanitary facilities which are generally not provided by existing refugee relief agencies.

**(b) Authorization of appropriations**

There are authorized to be appropriated to the President for the purposes of this section, in addition to amounts otherwise available for such purposes, \$15,000,000 for the fiscal year 1981. Amounts appropriated under this subsection are authorized to remain available until expended.

**(c) Provisions of section 2292 of this title applicable to this section**

Assistance under this section shall be provided in accordance with the policies and general authorities contained in section 2292 of this title.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 495F, as added Pub. L. 95-424, title I, § 119(2), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 953; amended Pub. L. 96-53, title I, § 116, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 365; Pub. L. 96-533, title IV, § 405, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3150.)

## AMENDMENTS

1980—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 96-533 substituted subsec. (a) for prior first sentence authorization of the President to furnish assistance, on such terms and conditions as he may determine, exclusively for the relief and rehabilitation of African refugees and other needy people located in Africa.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 96-533 incorporated existing second sentence in provisions designated subsec. (b) and increased appropriations authorization to \$15,000,000 for fiscal year 1981 for such authorization of \$14,920,000 for fiscal year 1980.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 96-533 designated third sentence as subsec. (c).

1979—Pub. L. 96-53 substituted "1980" for "1979" and "\$14,920,000" for "\$15,000,000".

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1979 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-53 effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 512(a) of Pub. L. 96-53, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as an Effective Date of 1978 Amendment note under section 2151 of this title.

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS; ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Functions of President under this section delegated and funds available under this chapter allocated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by sections 1-102(a)(1), (e) and 1-801(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

Functions of President relating to policy decisions pertaining to refugee programs delegated to Secretary of State by section 1-201(a)(3) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163.

**§ 2292m. Special Caribbean hurricane relief assistance**

The President is authorized to furnish assistance, on such terms and conditions as he may determine, for disaster relief and reconstruction in the Caribbean to assist in alleviating the human suffering caused by recent hurricanes in that region. In addition to amounts otherwise available for such purposes, there is authorized to be appropriated for purposes of this section \$25,000,000 for the fiscal year 1980, which amount is authorized to remain available until expended. Assistance under this section shall be provided in accordance with the policies and general authorities contained in section 2292 of this title.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §495G, as added Pub. L. 96-109, §1, Nov. 9, 1979, 93 Stat. 842.)

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS; ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Functions of President under this section delegated and funds available under this chapter allocated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by sections 1-102(a)(1), (e) and 1-801(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

**§ 2292n. Cambodia: disaster relief assistance****(a) Congressional recognition and statement of purpose; authority of President; scope of assistance**

The Congress recognizes that prompt United States assistance is necessary to alleviate the human suffering arising from famine and disease in Cambodia. Accordingly, the President is authorized to furnish assistance, on such terms and conditions as he may determine, for disaster relief to alleviate the suffering of the victims of famine and disease in Cambodia. Assistance provided under this section shall be for humanitarian purposes and limited to the civilian population, with emphasis on providing food, medicine and medical care, clothing, temporary shelter, transportation for emergency supplies and personnel, and similar assistance to save human lives.

**(b) Assistance through international agencies and private voluntary organizations**

Assistance provided under this section or any other provision of law to alleviate the human suffering caused by famine and disease in Cambodia shall be provided, to the maximum extent practicable, through international agencies and

private voluntary organizations such as (among others) the World Relief Committee, World Medical Missions, Inc., Cama Services, World Vision, Food for the Hungry, Thailand Baptist Mission, Catholic Relief Services, Oxfam, and the International Rescue Committee.

**(c) Assistance procedures; monitoring of deliveries**

(1) In providing assistance under this section, the President shall satisfy himself that adequate procedures have been established to ensure that such assistance reaches the innocent victims of famine and disease for whom it is intended. Such procedures shall include end use monitoring of deliveries on a periodic basis by individuals having freedom of movement where the assistance is being distributed within Cambodia.

(2) Repealed. Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, §734(a)(1), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.

**(d) Authorization of appropriations; charges for obligations incurred under other appropriations or accounts; authority for transfer of funds; agricultural commodity assistance priorities**

(1) In addition to amounts otherwise available for such purposes, there is authorized to be appropriated for purposes of this section \$30,000,000 for the fiscal year 1980, which amount is authorized to remain available until expended.

(2) Obligations incurred, prior to the enactment of appropriations to carry out this section, against other appropriations or accounts for the purpose of alleviating the human suffering caused by famine and disease in Cambodia may be charged to the appropriations authorized by paragraph (1) of this subsection.

(3) The President may exercise the authority of section 2360(a) of this title (without regard to the 20 percent limitation contained in that section on increases in accounts) in order to transfer, for use in carrying out this section, up to \$30,000,000 of the funds made available for the fiscal year 1980 to carry out other provisions of this chapter.

(4) Priority shall be given in allocating assistance under the Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954 [7 U.S.C. 1691 et seq.] to furnishing agricultural commodities for use in carrying out this section.

**(e) Section 2292 policies and general authorities applicable**

Assistance under this section shall be provided in accordance with the policies and utilizing the general authorities provided in section 2292 of this title.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §495H, as added Pub. L. 96-110, §2, Nov. 13, 1979, 93 Stat. 843; amended Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, §734(a)(1), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (d)(3), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

The Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954, referred to in subsec. (d)(4), is act July 10,

1954, ch. 469, 68 Stat. 454, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 41 (§1691 et seq.) of Title 7, Agriculture. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1691 of Title 7, and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1981—Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 97-113 repealed par. (2) which required a Presidential report to Congress no later than 90 days after Nov. 13, 1979, on provision of Cambodian Disaster Relief Assistance.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS; ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Functions of President under this section delegated and funds available under this chapter allocated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by sections 1-102(a)(1), (e) and 1-801(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

### § 2292o. Assistance for displaced persons in Central America

#### (a) Nature and scope of assistance

(1) The Congress recognizes that prompt United States assistance is necessary to help meet the basic human needs of persons displaced by strife in El Salvador. Therefore, the President is authorized to furnish assistance, on such terms and conditions as he may determine, to help alleviate the suffering of these displaced persons. Assistance provided under this section shall be for humanitarian purposes, with emphasis on the provision of food, medicine, medical care, and shelter and, where possible, implementation of other relief and rehabilitation activities. The Congress encourages the use, where appropriate, of the services of private and voluntary organizations and international relief agencies in the provision of assistance under this section.

(2) The Congress understands that the country of Belize has expressed interest and willingness in the resettlement in its territory of Haitian nationals who desire to settle in Belize. Therefore, the President is authorized to furnish assistance, on such terms and conditions as he may determine, to assist the Government of Belize in the resettlement of Haitian nationals in the national territory of Belize.

#### (b) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the President for the purposes of this section, in addition to amounts otherwise available for such purposes, \$5,000,000 for the fiscal year 1982 and \$5,000,000 for the fiscal year 1983. Amounts appropriated under this section are authorized to remain available until expended.

#### (c) Applicable policies and authorities

Assistance under this section shall be provided in accordance with the policies and utilizing the general authorities provided in section 2292 of this title.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §495I, as added Pub. L. 97-113, title V, §504, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1540.)

### § 2292p. Lebanon: emergency relief, rehabilitation, and reconstruction assistance

#### (a) Congressional policy and authorization

The Congress recognizes that prompt United States assistance is necessary to alleviate the

human suffering and resettlement needs of the innocent victims of recent strife in Lebanon. Therefore, the President is authorized to furnish assistance, on such terms and conditions as he may determine, for the relief, rehabilitation, and reconstruction needs of such victims. Assistance provided under this section shall emphasize the provision of food, medicine, clothing, shelter, and water supply systems, and similar efforts to ameliorate the suffering of the people in Lebanon.

#### (b) Authorization of appropriations

In addition to amounts otherwise available for such purpose, there is authorized to be appropriated to the President \$50,000,000 to carry out this section. Amounts appropriated under this subsection are authorized to remain available until expended.

#### (c) Policies and general authority

Assistance under this section shall be furnished in accordance with the policies and general authorities contained in section 2292 of this title.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §495J, as added Pub. L. 97-208, June 30, 1982, 96 Stat. 138.)

### § 2292q. African famine assistance

#### (a) Authorization of assistance

The President is authorized to provide assistance for famine relief, rehabilitation, and recovery in Africa. Assistance under this section shall be provided for humanitarian purposes and shall be provided on a grant basis. Such assistance shall include—

(1) relief, rehabilitation, and recovery projects to benefit the poorest people, including the furnishing of seeds for planting, fertilizer, pesticides, farm implements, farm animals and vaccine and veterinary services to protect livestock upon which people depend, blankets, clothing, and shelter, disease prevention and health care projects, water projects (including water purification and well-drilling), small-scale agricultural projects, and food protection and preservation projects; and

(2) projects to meet emergency health needs, including vaccinations.

#### (b) Uses of funds

##### (1) Private and voluntary organizations and international organizations

Funds authorized to be appropriated by this section shall be used primarily for grants to private and voluntary organizations and international organizations.

##### (2) Emergency health projects

A significant portion of the funds authorized to be appropriated by this section shall be used for emergency health projects pursuant to subsection (a)(2) of this section.

##### (3) Management support activities

Of the amount authorized to be appropriated by this section, \$2,500,000 shall be transferred to the "Operating Expenses of the Agency for International Development" account. These funds shall be used for management support

activities associated with the planning, monitoring, and supervision of emergency food and disaster assistance provided in those countries in Africa described in section 5(a) of the African Famine Relief and Recovery Act of 1985.

**(c) Authorization of appropriations**

In addition to the amounts otherwise available for such purpose, there are authorized to be appropriated \$137,500,000 for the fiscal year 1985 for use in providing assistance under this section.

**(d) Policies and authorities to be applied**

Assistance under this section shall be furnished in accordance with the policies and general authorities contained in section 2292 of this title.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §495K, as added Pub. L. 99-8, §2, Apr. 2, 1985, 99 Stat. 21.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 5(a) of the African Famine Relief and Recovery Act of 1985, referred to in subsec. (b)(3), is section 5(a) of Pub. L. 99-8, formerly set out below.

AFRICAN FAMINE RELIEF AND RECOVERY ACT OF 1985

Pub. L. 99-8, §§1, 3-6, Apr. 2, 1985, 99 Stat. 21-23, authorized appropriations of \$37,500,000 for fiscal year 1985 for assisting refugees and displaced persons in Africa, in addition to amounts otherwise available for such purpose, with such amount available only for assistance in those countries in Africa that suffered during calendar years 1984 and 1985 from exceptional food supply problems due to drought and other calamities and directed the President to report to Congress not later than June 30, 1985, with respect to the United States contribution to meet emergency needs, including food needs, for African famine assistance, and to report to Congress not later than Sept. 30, 1985, on assistance provided pursuant to this Act.

PART X—DEVELOPMENT FUND FOR AFRICA

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior part X, consisting of sections 2293 and 2294, related to assistance to Portugal and Portuguese colonies in Africa gaining independence, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 99-83, title XII, §1211(a)(4), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 279.

PART REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This part is referred to in sections 2151k, 2151n, 2151p, 2151u, 2151x, 2346, 2421d of this title.

**§ 2293. Long-term development assistance for sub-Saharan Africa**

**(a) Findings**

The Congress finds that—

(1) drought and famine have caused countless deaths and untold suffering among the people of sub-Saharan Africa;

(2) drought and famine in combination with other factors such as desertification, government neglect of the agricultural sector, and inappropriate economic policies have severely affected long-term development in sub-Saharan Africa; and

(3) the most cost-effective and efficient way of overcoming Africa's vulnerability to drought and famine is to address Africa's long-term development needs through a process that builds upon the needs and capabilities of the African people, promotes sustained and

equitable economic growth, preserves the environment, and protects the rights of the individual.

**(b) Authority to furnish assistance**

The President is authorized to furnish project and program assistance, on such terms and conditions as he may determine in accordance with the policies contained in this section, for long-term development in sub-Saharan Africa.

**(c) Purpose of assistance**

**(1) Purpose**

The purpose of assistance under this section shall be to help the poor majority of men and women in sub-Saharan Africa to participate in a process of long-term development through economic growth that is equitable, participatory, environmentally sustainable, and self-reliant.

**(2) Use of assistance to encourage private sector development**

Assistance under this section should, in a manner consistent with paragraph (1), be used to promote sustained economic growth, encourage private sector development, promote individual initiatives, and help to reduce the role of central governments in areas more appropriate for the private sector.

**(d) Application of development assistance general authorities and policies**

Except to the extent inconsistent with this section—

(1) any reference in any law to part I of this subchapter (including references to sections 2151a through 2151d of this title) shall be deemed to include a reference to this section; and

(2) assistance under this section shall be provided consistent with the policies contained in section 2151-1 of this title.

**(e) Private and voluntary organizations**

**(1) Consultation to ensure local perspectives**

The Agency for International Development shall take into account the local-level perspectives of the rural and urban poor in sub-Saharan Africa, including women, during the planning process for project and program assistance under this section. In order to gain that perspective the Agency for International Development should consult closely with African, United States, and other private and voluntary organizations that have demonstrated effectiveness in or commitment to the promotion of local, grassroots activities on behalf of long-term development in sub-Saharan Africa as described in subsection (c) of this section.

**(2) "Private and voluntary organization" defined**

For purposes of this section, the term "private and voluntary organization" includes (in addition to entities traditionally considered to be private and voluntary organizations) cooperatives, credit unions, trade unions, women's groups, nonprofit development research institutions, and indigenous local organizations, which are private and nonprofit.

**(f) Local involvement in project implementation**

Local people, including women, shall be closely consulted and involved in the implementation of every project under this section which as<sup>1</sup> a local focus.

**(g) Participation of African women**

The Agency for International Development shall ensure that development activities assisted under this section incorporate a significant expansion of the participation (including decisionmaking) and integration of African women in each of the critical sectors described in subsection (i) of this section.

**(h) Types of assistance****(1) Projects and programs to address critical sectoral priorities**

Assistance under this section shall emphasize primarily projects and programs to address critical sectoral priorities for long-term development described in subsection (i) of this section.

**(2) Reform of economic policies****(A) Use of program assistance**

Assistance under this section may also include program assistance to promote reform of sectoral economic policies affecting long-term development in sub-Saharan Africa as described in subsection (c) of this section, with primary emphasis on reform of economic policies to support the critical sectoral priorities described in subsection (i) of this section.

**(B) Protection of vulnerable groups**

Assisted policy reforms shall also include provisions to protect vulnerable groups (especially poor, isolated, and female farmers, the urban poor, and children including displaced children) and long-term environmental interests from possible negative consequences of the reforms.

**(3) Other assistance**

Funds made available to carry out this section shall be used almost exclusively for assistance in accordance with paragraphs (1) and (2). Assistance consistent with the purpose of subsection (c) of this section may also be furnished under this section to carry out the provisions of sections 2151a through 2151d of this title.

**(i) Critical sectoral priorities**

The critical sectoral priorities for long-term development, as described in subsection (c) of this section, are the following:

**(1) Agricultural production and natural resources****(A) Agricultural production**

Increasing agricultural production in ways which protect and restore the natural resource base, especially food production, through agricultural policy changes, agricultural research (including participatory research directly involving small farmers) and extension, development and promotion

of agriculture marketing activities, credit facilities, and appropriate production packages, and the construction and improvement of needed production-related infrastructure such as farm-to-market roads, small-scale irrigation, and rural electrification. Within this process, emphasis shall be given to promoting increased equity in rural income distribution, recognizing the role of small farmers.

**(B) Natural resource base**

Maintaining and restoring the renewable natural resource base primarily in ways which increase agricultural production, through the following:

(i) Small-scale, affordable, resource-conserving, low-risk local projects, using appropriate technologies (including traditional agricultural methods) suited to local environmental, resource, and climatic conditions, and featuring close consultation with and involvement of local people at all stages of project design and implementation. Emphasis shall be given to grants for African local government organizations, international or African non-governmental organizations, and United States private and voluntary organizations.

(ii) Support for efforts at national and regional levels to provide technical and other support for projects of the kinds described in clause (i) and to strengthen the capacities of African countries to provide effective extension and other services in support of environmentally sustainable increases in food production.

(iii) Support for special training and education efforts to improve the capacity of countries in sub-Saharan Africa to manage their own environments and natural resources.

(iv) Support for low-cost desalination activities in order to increase the availability of fresh water sources in sub-Saharan Africa.

**(2) Health**

Improving health conditions, with special emphasis on meeting the health needs of mothers and children (including displaced children) through the establishment of primary health care systems that give priority to preventive health and that will be ultimately self-sustaining.

**(3) Voluntary family planning services**

Providing increased access to voluntary family planning services, including encouragement of private, community, and local government initiatives.

**(4) Education**

Improving the relevance, equity, and efficiency of education, with special emphasis on improving primary education.

**(5) Income-generating opportunities**

Developing income-generating opportunities for the unemployed and underemployed in urban and rural areas through, among other things, support for off-farm employment op-

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be "has".

portunities in micro- and small-scale labor-intensive enterprises.

**(j) Minimum levels of assistance for certain critical sectors**

The Agency for International Development should target the equivalent of 10 percent of the amount authorized to be appropriated for each fiscal year to carry out this part for each of the following:

(1) The activities described in subsection (i)(1)(B) of this section, including identifiable components of agricultural production projects.

(2) The activities described in subsection (i)(2) of this section.

(3) The activities described in subsection (i)(3) of this section.

**(k) Effective use of assistance**

Assistance provided under this section shall be concentrated in countries which will make the most effective use of such assistance in order to fulfill the purpose specified in subsection (c) of this section, especially those countries (including those of the Sahel region) having the greatest need for outside assistance.

**(l) Promotion of regional integration**

Assistance under this section shall, to the extent consistent with this section, include assistance to promote the regional and subregional integration of African production structures, markets, and infrastructure.

**(m) Donor coordination mechanism**

Funds made available to carry out this section may be used to assist the governments of countries in sub-Saharan Africa to increase their capacity to participate effectively in donor coordination mechanisms at the country, regional, and sector levels.

**(n) Relation to other authorities**

**(1) Assistance under other authorities**

The authority granted by this section to provide assistance for long-term development in sub-Saharan Africa is not intended to preclude the use of other authorities for that purpose. Centrally funded programs which benefit sub-Saharan Africa shall continue to be funded under part I of this subchapter.

**(2) Transfer authorities**

(A) The transfer authority contained in section 2151g of this title shall not apply with respect to this section.

(B) The transfer authority contained in section 2360(a) of this title may not be used to transfer funds made available to carry out this section in order to allow them to be used in carrying out any other provision of this chapter.

**(3) Reprogramming notifications**

Section 2394-1 of this title does not apply with respect to funds made available to carry out this section.

**(4) Procurement of goods and services**

In order to allow the assistance authorized by this section to be furnished as effectively and expeditiously as possible, section 2354(a) of

this title, and similar provisions relating to the procurement of goods and services, shall not apply with respect to goods and services procured for use in carrying out this section. The exemption provided by this paragraph shall not be construed to apply to the Comprehensive Anti/Apartheid Act of 1986.

**(o) Support for SADCC projects**

**(1) Authority to provide assistance**

To the extent funds are provided for such purpose in the annual Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Act, funds made available to carry out this part may be used to assist sector projects, in the sectors specified in paragraph (2), that are supported by the Southern Africa Development Coordination Conference (SADCC) to enhance the economic development of the member states forming that regional institution.

**(2) Sectors**

The sectors with respect to which assistance may be provided under this subsection are the following: transportation; manpower development; agriculture and natural resources; energy (including the improved utilization of electrical power sources which already exist in the member states and offer the potential to swiftly reduce the dependence of those states on South Africa for electricity); and industrial development and trade (including private sector initiatives).

**(3) Relation to DFA policies and authorities**

To the maximum extent feasible, the assistance authorized by this subsection shall be provided consistent with the policies and authorities contained in the preceding subsection of this section.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §496, as added Pub. L. 101-513, title V, §562(a), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2026.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (n)(2)(B), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

The Comprehensive Anti/Apartheid Act of 1986, referred to in subsec. (n)(4), probably means the Comprehensive Anti-Apartheid Act of 1986, which is Pub. L. 99-440, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1086, as amended, and was classified principally to chapter 60 (§5001 et seq.) of this title, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103-149, §4(a)(1), (2), Nov. 23, 1993, 107 Stat. 1504, 1505. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 2293, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §496, as added Pub. L. 93-559, §53, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1818; amended Pub. L. 94-161, title III, §314, Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 866, related to economic assistance, etc., to Portugal and Portuguese colonies in Africa gaining independence, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 99-83, title XII, §1211(a)(4), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 279, effective Oct. 1, 1985.

REPORTS TO CONGRESS

Section 562(c) of Pub. L. 101-513 provided that: "As part of the annual Congressional Presentation mate-



rials for economic assistance, the Administrator of the Agency for International Development shall include a description of the progress made during the previous fiscal year in carrying out chapter 10 of part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [this part] in three countries in sub-Saharan Africa which represent differing economic situations and levels of progress. The description shall include—

“(1) the nature and extent of consultation to ensure local perspectives, as described in subsections (e)(1) and (f) of section 496 [22 U.S.C. 2293(e)(1), (f)];

“(2) the degree of involvement of local people in the implementation of projects having a local focus;

“(3) the extent to which there has been expansion of the participation and integration of African women in each of the critical sectors specified in section 496(i);

“(4) program assistance provided, including the amounts obligated, the criteria used for assisting reforms, and the provisions made pursuant to section 496(h)(2)(B) to protect vulnerable groups from possible negative consequences of the reforms; and

“(5) a description of the assistance for the critical sector priorities specified in section 496(i), by sector, including the amounts obligated.”

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2151u, 2294 of this title.

### § 2294. Authorizations of appropriations for Development Fund for Africa

Funds appropriated to carry out this part are authorized to be made available until expended. It is the sense of the Congress that the authority of this subsection<sup>1</sup> should be used to extend the period of availability of those funds whenever appropriate to improve the quality of assistance provided under section 2293 of this title.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §497, as added Pub. L. 101-513, title V, §562(a), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2030.)

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 2294, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §497, as added Pub. L. 95-92, §4, Aug. 4, 1977, 91 Stat. 614, related to balance of payments loan for Portugal, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 99-83, title XII, §1211(a)(4), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 279, effective Oct. 1, 1985.

#### PART XI—SUPPORT FOR ECONOMIC AND DEMOCRATIC DEVELOPMENT OF THE INDEPENDENT STATES OF THE FORMER SOVIET UNION

##### PART REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This part is referred to in sections 5813, 5821, 5823, 5828, 5841 of this title.

### § 2295. Assistance for the independent states

The President is authorized to provide assistance to the independent states of the former Soviet Union under this part for the following activities:

#### (1) Urgent humanitarian needs

Meeting urgent humanitarian needs (including those arising from the health effects of exposure to radiation in the Chernobyl region), in particular—

(A) meeting needs for medicine, medical supplies and equipment, and food, including the nutritional needs of infants such as processed baby food; and

(B) continuing efforts to rebuild from the earthquake in Armenia.

#### (2) Democracy

Establishing a democratic and free society by fostering—

(A) political, social, and economic pluralism;

(B) respect for internationally recognized human rights and the rule of law;

(C) the development of institutions of democratic governance, including electoral and legislative processes;

(D) the institution and improvement of public administration at the national, inter-governmental, regional, and local level;

(E) the development of a free and independent media;

(F) the development of effective control by elected civilian officials over, and the development of a nonpolitical officer corps in, the military and security forces; and

(G) strengthened administration of justice through programs and activities carried out in accordance with section 2295b(e) of this title.

#### (3) Free market systems

Creating and developing private enterprise and free market systems based on the principle of private ownership of property, including—

(A) the development of private cooperatives, credit unions, and labor unions;

(B) the improvement in the collection and analysis of statistical information;

(C) the reform and restructuring of banking and financial systems; and

(D) the protection of intellectual property.

#### (4) Trade and investment

Creating conditions that promote trade and investment, and encouraging participation of the United States private sector in the development of the private sector in the independent states of the former Soviet Union.

#### (5) Food distribution and production

Promoting market-based mechanisms for the distribution of the inputs necessary to agricultural production and for the handling, marketing, storage, and processing of agricultural commodities; encouraging policies that provide incentives for agricultural production; and creating institutions that provide technical and financial support for the agricultural sector.

#### (6) Health and human services

Promoting programs to strengthen and build institutions that provide quality health care and voluntary family planning services, housing, and other services and policies that are components of a social safety net, particularly for infants, children, and people with disabilities.

#### (7) Education and educational television

Promoting broad-based educational reform at all levels, in particular—

(A) by assisting the development of curricula and by making available textbooks, other educational materials, and appropriate

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be “section”.

telecommunications technologies for the delivery of educational and instructional programming; and

(B) by assisting the development of the skills necessary to produce educational television programs aimed at promoting basic skills and the human values associated with a democratic society and a free market economy.

**(8) Energy efficiency and production**

Promoting market-based pricing policies and the transfer of technologies that reduce energy wastage and harmful emissions; supporting developmentally sound capital energy projects that utilize United States advanced coal technologies; and promoting efficient production, use, and transportation of oil, gas, coal, and other sources of energy.

**(9) Civilian nuclear reactor safety**

Implementing—

(A) a program of short-term safety upgrade of civilian nuclear power plants, including the training of power plant personnel, implementation of improved procedures for nuclear power plant operation, the development of effective and independent regulatory authorities, and cost-effective hardware upgrades; and

(B) a program to retire those civilian nuclear power plants whose capacity could be more cost-effectively replaced through energy efficiency.

**(10) Environment**

Enhancing the human and natural environment and conserving environmental resources, including through—

(A) facilitation of the adoption of environmentally-sound policies and technologies, environmental restoration, and sustainable use of natural resources;

(B) promotion of the provision of environmental technology, education, and training by United States businesses, not-for-profit organizations, and institutions of higher education; and

(C) promotion of cooperative research efforts to validate and improve environmental monitoring of protracted radiation exposure.

**(11) Transportation and telecommunications**

Improving transportation and telecommunications infrastructure and management, including intermodal transportation systems to ensure the safe and efficient movement of people, products, and materials.

**(12) Drug education, interdiction, and eradication**

Promoting drug education, interdiction, and eradication programs.

**(13) Migration**

Protecting and caring for refugees, displaced persons, and other migrants; addressing the root causes of migration; and promoting the development of appropriate immigration and emigration laws and procedures.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §498, as added Pub. L. 102-511, title II, §201, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3324.)

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to United States International Development Cooperation Agency by section 3(b) of Ex. Ord. No. 12884, Dec. 1, 1993, 58 F.R. 64099, set out as a note under section 5812 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2295b, 5813, 5821 of this title.

**§ 2295a. Criteria for assistance to governments of the independent states**

**(a) In general**

In providing assistance under this part for the government of any independent state of the former Soviet Union, the President shall take into account not only relative need but also the extent to which that independent state is acting to—

(1) make significant progress toward, and is committed to the comprehensive implementation of, a democratic system based on principles of the rule of law, individual freedoms, and representative government determined by free and fair elections;

(2) make significant progress in, and is committed to the comprehensive implementation of, economic reform based on market principles, private ownership, and integration into the world economy, including implementation of the legal and policy frameworks necessary for such reform (including protection of intellectual property and respect for contracts);

(3) respect internationally recognized human rights, including the rights of minorities and the rights to freedom of religion and emigration;

(4) respect international law and obligations and adhere to the Helsinki Final Act of the Conference on Security and Cooperation in Europe and the Charter of Paris, including the obligations to refrain from the threat or use of force and to settle disputes peacefully;

(5) cooperate in seeking peaceful resolution of ethnic and regional conflicts;

(6) implement responsible security policies, including—

(A) adhering to arms control obligations derived from agreements signed by the former Soviet Union;

(B) reducing military forces and expenditures to a level consistent with legitimate defense requirements;

(C) not proliferating nuclear, biological, or chemical weapons, their delivery systems, or related technologies; and

(D) restraining conventional weapons transfers;

(7) take constructive actions to protect the international environment, prevent significant transborder pollution, and promote sustainable use of natural resources;

(8) deny support for acts of international terrorism;

(9) accept responsibility for paying an equitable portion of the indebtedness to United States firms incurred by the former Soviet Union;

(10) cooperate with the United States Government in uncovering all evidence regarding

Americans listed as prisoners-of-war, or otherwise missing during American operations, who were detained in the former Soviet Union during the Cold War; and

(1) terminate support for the communist regime in Cuba, including removal of troops, closing of military facilities, and ceasing trade subsidies and economic, nuclear, and other assistance.

**(b) Ineligibility for assistance**

The President shall not provide assistance under this part—

(1) for the government of any independent state that the President determines is engaged in a consistent pattern of gross violations of internationally recognized human rights or of international law;

(2) for the government of any independent state that the President determines has failed to take constructive actions to facilitate the effective implementation of applicable arms control obligations derived from agreements signed by the former Soviet Union;

(3) for the government of any independent state that the President determines has, on or after October 24, 1992, knowingly transferred to another country—

(A) missiles or missile technology inconsistent with the guidelines and parameters of the Missile Technology Control Regime; or

(B) any material, equipment, or technology that would contribute significantly to the ability of such country to manufacture any weapon of mass destruction (including nuclear, chemical, and biological weapons) if the President determines that the material, equipment, or technology was to be used by such country in the manufacture of such weapon;

(4) for the government of any independent state that is prohibited from receiving such assistance by section 2799aa or 2799aa-1 of this title or sections 5604(a)(1) and 5605 of this title; or

(5) for the Government of Russia if it has failed to make significant progress on the removal of Russian or Commonwealth of Independent States troops from Estonia, Latvia, and Lithuania or if it has failed to undertake good faith efforts, such as negotiations, to end other military practices that violate the sovereignty of the Baltics<sup>1</sup> states.

**(c) Exceptions to ineligibility**

Assistance prohibited by subsection (b) of this section or any similar provision of law, other than assistance prohibited by the provisions referred to in subsection (b)(4) of this section, may be furnished under any of the following circumstances:

(1) The President determines that furnishing such assistance is important to the national interest of the United States.

(2) The President determines that furnishing such assistance will foster respect for internationally recognized human rights and the rule of law or the development of institutions of democratic governance.

(3) The assistance is furnished for the alleviation of suffering resulting from a natural or man-made disaster.

The President shall immediately report to the Congress any determination under paragraph (1) or (2) or any decision to provide assistance under paragraph (3).

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §498A, as added Pub. L. 102-511, title II, §201, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3326; amended Pub. L. 103-236, title VIII, §826(c), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 519.)

AMENDMENT OF SECTION

*For termination of amendment by section 851 of Pub. L. 103-236, see Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note below.*

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 103-236 temporarily substituted “section 2799aa or 2799aa-1” for “section 2429 or 2429a”. See Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note below.

EFFECTIVE AND TERMINATION DATES OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103-236 effective 60 days after Apr. 30, 1994, and ceases to be effective and is repealed on date of enactment of first Foreign Relations Authorization Act enacted after Apr. 30, 1994, and any provision repealed by that amendment shall be reenacted, see sections 831 and 851 of Pub. L. 103-236, set out in the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention; Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note under section 3201 of this title.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under subsecs. (a) and (c)(2) of this section delegated to Coordinator by section 2(c), (d) of Ex. Ord. No. 12884, Dec. 1, 1993, 58 F.R. 64099, set out as a note under section 5812 of this title.

Functions of President under subsecs. (b)(1)-(3) and (c)(1) of this section delegated to Secretary of State by section 1(2), (3) of Ex. Ord. No. 12884.

Functions of President under subsec. (c)(3) of this section delegated to United States International Development Cooperation Agency by section 3(c) of Ex. Ord. No. 12884.

INELIGIBILITY FOR ASSISTANCE OF INSTITUTIONS WITHHOLDING CERTAIN DOCUMENTS OF UNITED STATES NATIONALS

Section 202 of Pub. L. 102-511 provided that:

“(a) PROHIBITION.—Except as provided in subsections (b) and (c), an agency, instrumentality, or other governmental entity of an independent state of the former Soviet Union shall not be eligible to receive assistance under chapter 11 of part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2295 et seq.] if—

“(1) on the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 24, 1992], there is outstanding a final judgment by a court of competent jurisdiction in that independent state that that governmental entity is withholding unlawfully books or other documents of religious or historical significance that are the property of United States persons; and

“(2) within 90 days of a request by such United States persons, the Secretary of State determines that execution of the court’s judgment is blocked as the result of extrajudicial causes such as any of the following:

“(A) A declared refusal of the defendant to comply.

“(B) The unwillingness or failure of local authorities to enforce compliance.

“(C) The issuance of an administrative decree nullifying a court’s judgment or forbidding compliance.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be “Baltic”.

“(D) The passage of legislation, after a court’s judgment, nullifying that judgment or forbidding compliance with that judgment.

“(b) EXCEPTION FOR HUMANITARIAN ASSISTANCE.—The prohibition contained in subsection (a) shall not apply to the provision of assistance to alleviate suffering resulting from a natural or man-made disaster.

“(c) WAIVER AUTHORITY.—The Secretary of State may waive the application of subsection (a) whenever the Secretary finds that—

“(1) the court’s judgment has been executed; or

“(2) it is important to the national interest of the United States to do so.

“(d) REPORT.—Nine months after the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 24, 1992], the Secretary of State shall report to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the Chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate on the status of final judgments described in subsection (a)(1).

“(e) UNITED STATES PERSON.—For purposes of this section, the term ‘United States person’ means—

“(1) any citizen, national, or permanent resident alien of the United States; and

“(2) any corporation, partnership, or other juridical entity which is 50 percent or more beneficially owned by individuals described in paragraph (1).”

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 5814 of this title.

### § 2295b. Authorities relating to assistance and other provisions

#### (a) Assistance through governments and non-governmental organizations

Assistance under this part may be provided to governments or through nongovernmental organizations.

#### (b) Technical and managerial assistance

Technical assistance under this part shall, to the maximum extent feasible, be provided on a long term, on-site basis and shall emphasize the provision of practical, management and other problem-solving advice, particularly advice on private enterprise provided by United States business volunteers.

#### (c) Enterprise funds

Activities supported pursuant to this part may include the establishment of and the provision of support for one or more enterprise funds for the independent states of the former Soviet Union. If the President determines that an enterprise fund should be established and supported under this part, the provisions contained in section 201 of the Support for East European Democracy (SEED) Act of 1989 [22 U.S.C. 5421] (excluding the authorizations of appropriations provided in subsection (b) of that section) shall be deemed to apply with respect to such enterprise fund and to funds made available to such enterprise fund pursuant to this part.

#### (d) Cooperative development and research projects

Assistance under this part may include support for cooperative development projects, including cooperative development research projects, among the United States, other countries, and independent states of the former Soviet Union.

#### (e) Administration of justice programs

In order to strengthen the administration of justice in the independent states of the former

Soviet Union under paragraph (2)(G) of section 2295 of this title, the President may exercise the same authorities as are available under section 2346c of this title, subject to the limitations and requirements of that section, other than subsection (c) and the last two sentences of subsection (e).

#### (f) Use of economic support funds

Any funds that have been allocated under part 4 of subchapter II of this chapter for assistance for the independent states of the former Soviet Union may be used in accordance with the provisions of this part.

#### (g) Use of SEED agency funds and administrative authorities

The President may authorize any agency of the United States Government that has authority to conduct activities under the Support for East European Democracy (SEED) Act of 1989 [22 U.S.C. 5401 et seq.] to use—

(1) any funds that are available to it for activities related to international affairs outside Eastern Europe, and

(2) any administrative authorities that are available to it for activities with respect to Eastern Europe,

to conduct activities authorized by section 2295 of this title with respect to the independent states of the former Soviet Union.

#### (h) Procurement restrictions

Funds made available for assistance under this part may be used for procurement—

(1) in the United States, the independent states of the former Soviet Union, or a developing country; or

(2) in any other country but only if—

(A) the provision of such assistance requires commodities or services of a type that are not produced in and available for purchase in any country specified in paragraph (1); or

(B) the President determines, on a case-by-case basis, that procurement in such other country is necessary—

(i) to meet unforeseen<sup>1</sup> circumstances, such as emergency situations, where it is important to permit procurement in a country not specified in paragraph (1), or

(ii) to promote efficiency in the use of United States foreign assistance resources, including to avoid impairment of foreign assistance objectives.

#### (i) Terms and conditions

Assistance under this part shall be provided on such terms and conditions as the President may determine, consistent with applicable provisions of law (except as otherwise provided in subsection (j) of this section).

#### (j) Waiver of certain provisions

##### (1) In general

Funds authorized to be appropriated for fiscal year 1993 by this part, and any other funds appropriated for fiscal year 1993 that are used under the authority of subsection (f) or (g) of this section, may be used to provide assistance

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be “unforeseen”.

under this part notwithstanding any other provision of law, except for—

(A) this part;

(B) section 2394-1 of this title and comparable notification requirements contained in sections of the annual foreign operations, export financing, and related programs Act;

(C) sections 2799aa and 2799aa-1 of this title and sections 5604 and 5605 of this title, to the extent that they apply to assistance to governments; and

(D) section 1341 of title 31 (commonly referred to as the “Anti-Deficiency Act”), the Congressional Budget and Impoundment Control Act of 1974, the Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985, and the Budget Enforcement Act of 1990.

**(2) Nuclear reactor safety and related activities**

Any provision that corresponds to section 510 of the Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Act, 1991 (relating to the prohibition on financing exports of nuclear equipment, fuel, and technology) shall not apply with respect to funds used pursuant to this part.

**(k) Definitions**

**(1) Appropriate congressional committees**

As used in this part, the term “appropriate congressional committees” means the Committee on Foreign Affairs and the Committee on Appropriations of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations and the Committee on Appropriations of the Senate.

**(2) Independent states of the former Soviet Union**

As used in this part, the terms “independent states of the former Soviet Union” and “independent states” have the meaning given those terms by section 5801 of this title.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 498B, as added Pub. L. 102-511, title II, § 201, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3328; amended Pub. L. 103-236, title VIII, § 826(c), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 519.)

**AMENDMENT OF SECTION**

*For termination of amendment by section 851 of Pub. L. 103-236, see Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note below.*

**REFERENCES IN TEXT**

The Support for East European Democracy (SEED) Act of 1989, referred to in subsec. (g), is Pub. L. 101-179, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1298, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 63 (§ 5401 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 5401 of this title and Tables.

The Congressional Budget and Impoundment Control Act of 1974, referred to in subsec. (j)(1)(D), is Pub. L. 93-344, July 12, 1974, 88 Stat. 297, as amended. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 621 of Title 2, The Congress, and Tables.

The Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985, referred to in subsec. (j)(1)(D), is title II of Pub. L. 99-177, Dec. 12, 1985, 99 Stat. 1038, as amended, which enacted chapter 20 (§ 900 et seq.) and sections 654 to 656 of Title 2, amended sections 602, 622, 631 to 642,

and 651 to 653 of Title 2, sections 1104 to 1106 and 1109 of Title 31, Money and Finance, and section 911 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare, repealed section 661 of Title 2, enacted provisions set out as notes under section 900 of Title 2 and section 911 of Title 42, and amended provisions set out as a note under section 621 of Title 2. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 900 of Title 2 and Tables.

The Budget Enforcement Act of 1990, referred to in subsec. (j)(1)(D), is title XIII of Pub. L. 101-508, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1388-573. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1990 Amendment note set out under section 900 of Title 2 and Tables.

Section 510 of the Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Act, 1991, referred to in subsec. (j)(2), is section 510 of Pub. L. 101-513, title V, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2003, which is not classified to the Code.

**AMENDMENTS**

1994—Subsec. (j)(1)(C). Pub. L. 103-236 temporarily substituted “sections 2799aa and 2799aa-1” for “sections 2429 and 2429a”. See Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note below.

**CHANGE OF NAME**

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

**EFFECTIVE AND TERMINATION DATES OF 1994 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by Pub. L. 103-236 effective 60 days after Apr. 30, 1994, and ceases to be effective and is repealed on date of enactment of first Foreign Relations Authorization Act enacted after Apr. 30, 1994, and any provision repealed by that amendment shall be reenacted, see sections 831 and 851 of Pub. L. 103-236, set out in the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention; Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note under section 3201 of this title.

**DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS**

Functions of President under subsecs. (c) and (g) of this section delegated to Coordinator by section 2(c) of Ex. Ord. No. 12884, Dec. 1, 1993, 58 F.R. 64099, set out as a note under section 5812 of this title.

Functions of President under subsecs. (h) and (i) of this section delegated by section 5(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12884 to head of agency responsible for administering the particular program or activity with respect to which the authority is to be exercised.

**SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS**

This section is referred to in sections 2295, 5814 of this title.

**§ 2295c. Authorization of appropriations**

**(a) In general**

To carry out this part, there are authorized to be appropriated to the President for fiscal year 1993 \$410,000,000, in addition to amounts otherwise available for assistance for the independent states of the former Soviet Union. Amounts appropriated pursuant to this subsection are authorized to remain available until expended.

**(b) Operating expenses**

**(1) Authority to transfer program funds**

Subject to paragraph (2), funds made available under subsection (a) of this section may be transferred to, and merged with, funds ap-

propriated for “Operating Expenses of the Agency for International Development”. Funds so transferred may be expended for administrative costs in carrying out this part, including reimbursement of the Department of State for its incremental costs associated with assistance provided under this part.

**(2) Limitation on amount transferred**

Not more than 2 percent of the funds made available for a fiscal year under subsection (a) of this section may be transferred pursuant to paragraph (1) unless, at least 15 days before transferring any additional amount, the President notifies the appropriate congressional committees in accordance with the procedures applicable to reprogramming notifications under section 2394-1 of this title.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 498C, as added Pub. L. 102-511, title II, § 201, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3330.)

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under subsec. (b)(2) of this section delegated to United States International Development Cooperation Agency by section 3(b) of Ex. Ord. No. 12884, Dec. 1, 1993, 58 F.R. 64099, set out as a note under section 5812 of this title.

PART XII—ENTERPRISE FOR THE AMERICAS  
INITIATIVE

**§ 2296. Repealed. Pub. L. 102-549, title VI, § 602(b), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3669**

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, § 499, as added Pub. L. 102-391, title V, § 594(a), Oct. 6, 1992, 106 Stat. 1692, authorized reduction of certain debts owed to the United States.

EXERCISE OF AUTHORITIES UNDER REPEALED PROVISION

Section 602(b) of Pub. L. 102-549 provided that: “Chapter 12 of part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2296] (as enacted by the Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Act, 1993 [Pub. L. 102-391]), relating to the Enterprise for the Americas Initiative, is repealed. Any exercise of the authorities provided in that chapter prior to its repeal by this subsection shall be deemed to be an exercise of the authorities of part IV of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2430 et seq.] (as enacted by subsection (a) of this section) and shall be carried out, after the enactment of this section [Oct. 28, 1992], in accordance with that part.”

SUBCHAPTER II—MILITARY ASSISTANCE  
AND SALES

SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in sections 2223, 2301, 2318, 2321d, 2344, 2346, 2348c, 2349aa-5, 2352, 2371, 2383, 2385, 2392, 2393, 2395, 2396, of this title; title 10 section 2552; title 50 section 415.

PART I—DECLARATION OF POLICY

**§ 2301. Congressional statement of policy**

The Congress of the United States reaffirms the policy of the United States to achieve international peace and security through the United Nations so that armed force shall not be used except for individual or collective self-defense. The Congress finds that the efforts of the United States and other friendly countries to promote peace and security continue to require measures of support based upon the principle of effective

self-help and mutual aid. It is the purpose of subchapter II of this chapter to authorize measures in the common defense against internal and external aggression, including the furnishing of military assistance, upon request, to friendly countries and international organizations. In furnishing such military assistance, it remains the policy of the United States to continue to exert maximum efforts to achieve universal control of weapons of mass destruction and universal regulation and reduction of armaments, including armed forces, under adequate safeguards to protect complying countries against violation and evasion.

The Congress recognizes that the peace of the world and the security of the United States are endangered so long as hostile countries continue by threat of military action, by the use of economic pressure, and by internal subversion, or other means to attempt to bring under their domination peoples now free and independent and continue to deny the rights of freedom and self-government to peoples and countries once free but now subject to such domination.

It is the sense of the Congress that an important contribution toward peace would be made by the establishment under the Organization of American States of an international military force.

In enacting this legislation, it is therefore the intention of the Congress to promote the peace of the world and the foreign policy, security, and general welfare of the United States by fostering an improved climate of political independence and individual liberty, improving the ability of friendly countries and international organizations to deter or, if necessary, defeat aggression, facilitating arrangements for individual and collective security, assisting friendly countries to maintain internal security, and creating an environment of security and stability in the developing friendly countries essential to their more rapid social, economic, and political progress. The Congress urges that all other countries able to contribute join in a common undertaking to meet the goals stated in subchapter II of this chapter.

It is the sense of the Congress that in the administration of subchapter II of this chapter priority shall be given to the needs of those countries in danger of becoming victims of aggression or in which the internal security is threatened by internal subversion inspired or supported by hostile countries.

Finally, the Congress reaffirms its full support of the progress of the members of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization toward increased cooperation in political, military, and economic affairs. In particular, the Congress welcomes the steps which have been taken to promote multilateral programs of coordinated procurement, research, development, and production of defense articles and urges that such programs be expanded to the fullest extent possible to further the defense of the North Atlantic Area.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, § 501, formerly § 502, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 434, renumbered § 501 and amended Pub. L. 90-137, pt. II, § 201(a), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 455; Pub. L. 103-199, title VII, § 705(1), Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2328.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This legislation, referred to in fourth paragraph, means Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

## REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER II DEEMED TO EXCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter II of this chapter are deemed to exclude parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II, and references to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

## PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 501 of Pub. L. 87-195, provided that part II of Pub. L. 87-195 [subchapter II of this chapter] should be cited as the "International Peace and Security Act of 1961", prior to repeal by Pub. L. 88-205, pt. II, §201(b), Dec. 16, 1963, 77 Stat. 384.

## AMENDMENTS

1993—Pub. L. 103-199, §705(1)(A), in second par., substituted "hostile countries" for "international communism and the countries it controls".

Pub. L. 103-199, §705(1)(B), in fourth par., struck out "Communist or Communist-supported" after "if necessary, defeat".

Pub. L. 103-199, §705(1)(C), in fifth par., substituted "aggression or in which the internal security is threatened by internal subversion inspired or supported by hostile countries." for "active Communist or Communist-supported aggression or those countries in which the internal security is threatened by Communist-inspired or Communist-supported internal subversion."

1967—Pub. L. 90-137 inserted par. to indicate that priority shall be given in the use of the funds available to defend against Communist aggression or Communist-inspired internal subversion.

**§ 2302. Utilization of defense articles and defense services**

Defense articles and defense services to any country shall be furnished solely for internal security, for legitimate self-defense, to permit the recipient country to participate in regional or collective arrangements or measures consistent with the Charter of the United Nations, or otherwise to permit the recipient country to participate in collective measures requested by the United Nations for the purpose of maintaining or restoring international peace and security, or for the purpose of assisting foreign military forces in less developed friendly countries (or the voluntary efforts of personnel of the Armed Forces of the United States in such countries) to construct public works and to engage in other activities helpful to the economic and social development of such friendly countries. It is the sense of the Congress that such foreign military forces should not be maintained or established solely for civic action activities and that such civic action activities not significantly detract from the capability of the military forces to perform their military missions and be coordinated with and form part of the total economic and social development effort.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §502, formerly §505(a), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 436; Pub. L. 88-205, pt. II,

§202(b), Dec. 16, 1963, 77 Stat. 384; Pub. L. 89-171, pt. II, §201(c), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 656; renumbered and amended Pub. L. 90-137, pt. II, §201(d), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 456.)

## CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 2313 of this title.

## AMENDMENTS

1967—Pub. L. 90-137 substituted "Defense articles and defense services" for "Military assistance".

1965—Pub. L. 89-171 authorized military assistance to any country for the purpose of assisting foreign military forces in less developed friendly countries (or the voluntary efforts of personnel of the Armed Forces of the United States in such countries) to construct public works and to engage in other activities helpful to the economic and social development of such friendly countries, expressed the sense of Congress that such foreign military forces should not be maintained or established solely for civic action activities, and that such civic action activities should not significantly detract from the capability of the military forces to perform their military missions, and should be coordinated with and from part of the total economic and social development effort, and struck out prohibition against further assistance to Latin American countries, now incorporated in section 2319(c) of this title.

1963—Pub. L. 88-205 inserted proviso stopping further military assistance under this chapter to Latin American countries except to the extent necessary to fulfill prior commitments or to safeguard the security of the United States or of a country associated with the United States in the Alliance for Progress against the overthrow of a duly constituted government, now incorporated in section 2319(c) of this title.

## TRANSFER TO REPUBLIC OF KOREA OF DEFENSE ARTICLES; REIMBURSEMENT FOR TRANSFER

Pub. L. 91-652, §3, Jan. 5, 1971, 84 Stat. 1942, authorized the President until June 30, 1972, to transfer to the Republic of Korea such Armed Forces defense articles located in Korea on July 1, 1970 as he determined appropriate and provided that no funds appropriated under Pub. L. 91-652 or this chapter were to be available for reimbursement to any Government agency for any such transfers of defense articles.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2314 of this title.

**§ 2303. Excess defense articles**

Excess defense articles shall be provided whenever possible rather than providing such articles by the procurement of new items.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §502A, as added Pub. L. 93-189, §12(a), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 720.)

**§ 2304. Human rights and security assistance****(a) Observance of human rights as principal goal of foreign policy; implementation requirements**

(1) The United States shall, in accordance with its international obligations as set forth in the Charter of the United Nations and in keeping with the constitutional heritage and traditions of the United States, promote and encourage increased respect for human rights and fundamental freedoms throughout the world without distinction as to race, sex, language, or religion. Accordingly, a principal goal of the foreign policy of the United States shall be to promote the increased observance of internationally recognized human rights by all countries.

(2) Except under circumstances specified in this section, no security assistance may be provided to any country the government of which engages in a consistent pattern of gross violations of internationally recognized human rights. Security assistance may not be provided to the police, domestic intelligence, or similar law enforcement forces of a country, and licenses may not be issued under the Export Administration Act of 1979 [50 App. U.S.C. 2401 et seq.] for the export of crime control and detection instruments and equipment to a country, the government of which engages in a consistent pattern of gross violations of internationally recognized human rights unless the President certifies in writing to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the chairman of the Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs of the Senate (when licenses are to be issued pursuant to the Export Administration Act of 1979),<sup>1</sup> that extraordinary circumstances exist warranting provision of such assistance and issuance of such licenses. Assistance may not be provided under part V of this subchapter to a country the government of which engages in a consistent pattern of gross violations of internationally recognized human rights unless the President certifies in writing to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate that extraordinary circumstances exist warranting provision of such assistance.

(3) In furtherance of paragraphs (1) and (2), the President is directed to formulate and conduct international security assistance programs of the United States in a manner which will promote and advance human rights and avoid identification of the United States, through such programs, with governments which deny to their people internationally recognized human rights and fundamental freedoms, in violation of international law or in contravention of the policy of the United States as expressed in this section or otherwise.

**(b) Report by Secretary of State on practices of proposed recipient countries; considerations**

The Secretary of State shall transmit to the Congress, as part of the presentation materials for security assistance programs proposed for each fiscal year, a full and complete report, prepared with the assistance of the Assistant Secretary of State for Democracy, Human Rights, and Labor, with respect to practices regarding the observance of and respect for internationally recognized human rights in each country proposed as a recipient of security assistance. Wherever applicable, such report shall include information on practices regarding coercion in population control, including coerced abortion and involuntary sterilization. In determining whether a government falls within the provisions of subsection (a)(3) of this section and in the preparation of any report or statement required under this section, consideration shall be given to—

- (1) the relevant findings of appropriate international organizations, including nongovern-

mental organizations, such as the International Committee of the Red Cross; and

(2) the extent of cooperation by such government in permitting an unimpeded investigation by any such organization of alleged violations of internationally recognized human rights.

**(c) Congressional request for information; information required; 30-day period; failure to supply information; termination or restriction of assistance**

(1) Upon the request of the Senate or the House of Representatives by resolution of either such House, or upon the request of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate or the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives, the Secretary of State shall, within thirty days after receipt of such request, transmit to both such committees a statement, prepared with the assistance of the Assistant Secretary of State for Democracy, Human Rights, and Labor, with respect to the country designated in such request, setting forth—

(A) all the available information about observance of and respect for human rights and fundamental freedom in that country, and a detailed description of practices by the recipient government with respect thereto;

(B) the steps the United States has taken to—

(i) promote respect for and observance of human rights in that country and discourage any practices which are inimical to internationally recognized human rights, and

(ii) publicly or privately call attention to, and disassociate the United States and any security assistance provided for such country from, such practices;

(C) whether, in the opinion of the Secretary of State, notwithstanding any such practices—

(i) extraordinary circumstances exist which necessitate a continuation of security assistance for such country, and, if so, a description of such circumstances and the extent to which such assistance should be continued (subject to such conditions as Congress may impose under this section), and

(ii) on all the facts it is in the national interest of the United States to provide such assistance; and

(D) such other information as such committee or such House may request.

(2)(A) A resolution of request under paragraph (1) of this subsection shall be considered in the Senate in accordance with the provisions of section 601(b) of the International Security Assistance and Arms Export Control Act of 1976.

(B) The term “certification”, as used in section 601 of such Act, means, for the purposes of this subsection, a resolution of request of the Senate under paragraph (1) of this subsection.

(3) In the event a statement with respect to a country is requested pursuant to paragraph (1) of this subsection but is not transmitted in accordance therewith within thirty days after receipt of such request, no security assistance shall be delivered to such country except as may thereafter be specifically authorized by law from such country unless and until such statement is transmitted.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. The period probably should not appear.



(4)(A) In the event a statement with respect to a country is transmitted under paragraph (1) of this subsection, the Congress may at any time thereafter adopt a joint resolution terminating, restricting, or continuing security assistance for such country. In the event such a joint resolution is adopted, such assistance shall be so terminated, so restricted, or so continued, as the case may be.

(B) Any such resolution shall be considered in the Senate in accordance with the provisions of section 601(b) of the International Security Assistance and Arms Export Control Act of 1976.

(C) The term “certification”, as used in section 601 of such Act, means, for the purposes of this paragraph, a statement transmitted under paragraph (1) of this subsection.

**(d) Definitions**

For the purposes of this section—

(1) the term “gross violations of internationally recognized human rights” includes torture or cruel, inhuman, or degrading treatment or punishment, prolonged detention without charges and trial, causing the disappearance of persons by the abduction and clandestine detention of those persons, and other flagrant denial of the right to life, liberty, or the security of person; and

(2) the term “security assistance” means—

(A) assistance under part II (military assistance) or part IV (economic support fund) or part V (military education and training) or part VI (peacekeeping operations) or part VIII (antiterrorism assistance) of this subchapter.

(B) sales of defense articles or services, extensions of credits (including participations in credits, and guaranties of loans under the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.]); or

(C) any license in effect with respect to the export of defense articles or defense services to or for the armed forces, police, intelligence, or other internal security forces of a foreign country under section 38 of the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2778].

**(e) Removal of prohibition on assistance**

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, funds authorized to be appropriated under subchapter I of this chapter may be made available for the furnishing of assistance to any country with respect to which the President finds that such a significant improvement in its human rights record has occurred as to warrant lifting the prohibition on furnishing such assistance in the national interest of the United States.

**(f) Allocations concerned with performance record of recipient countries without contravention of other provisions**

In allocating the funds authorized to be appropriated by this chapter and the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.], the President shall take into account significant improvements in the human rights records of recipient countries, except that such allocations may not contravene any other provision of law.

**(g) Report to Congress on use of certain authorities relating to human rights conditions**

Whenever the provisions of subsection (e) or (f) of this section are applied, the President shall

report to the Congress before making any funds available pursuant to those subsections. The report shall specify the country involved, the amount and kinds of assistance to be provided, and the justification for providing the assistance, including a description of the significant improvements which have occurred in the country’s human rights record.

(Pub. L. 87–195, pt. II, §502B, as added Pub. L. 93–559, §46, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1815; amended Pub. L. 94–329, title III, §301(a), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 748; Pub. L. 95–105, title I, §109(a)(3), Aug. 17, 1977, 91 Stat. 846; Pub. L. 95–384, §§6(a)–(d)(1), (e), 10(b)(1), 12(b), Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 731, 732, 735, 737; Pub. L. 96–53, title V, §511, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 380; Pub. L. 96–92, §4, Oct. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 702; Pub. L. 96–533, title VII, §§701(b), 704, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3156, 3157; Pub. L. 98–151, §101(b)(2), Nov. 14, 1983, 97 Stat. 972; Pub. L. 99–64, title I, §124, July 12, 1985, 99 Stat. 156; Pub. L. 99–83, title XII, §1201, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 276; Pub. L. 100–204, title I, §127(2), Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1343; Pub. L. 103–236, title I, §162(e)(2), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 405; Pub. L. 103–437, §9(a)(6), Nov. 2, 1994, 108 Stat. 4588.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Export Administration Act of 1979, referred to in subsec. (a)(2), is Pub. L. 96–72, Sept. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 503, as amended, which is classified principally to section 2401 et seq. of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2401 of Title 50, Appendix, and Tables.

Section 601 of the International Security Assistance and Arms Export Control Act of 1976, referred to in subsec. (c)(2)(A), (4)(B), is section 601 of Pub. L. 94–329, which was not classified to the Code.

The Arms Export Control Act, referred to in subsecs. (d)(2)(B) and (f), is Pub. L. 90–629, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1320, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 39 (§2751 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2751 of this title and Tables.

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (f), was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87–195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92–226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa–5 of this title.

CODIFICATION

The 1983 amendment by Pub. L. 98–151 is based on section 202(a) of H.R. 2992, Ninety-eighth Congress, 1st Session, as reported May 17, 1983, which was enacted into permanent law by Pub. L. 98–151.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 103–236 substituted “Democracy, Human Rights, and Labor” for “Human Rights and Humanitarian Affairs” in introductory provisions. Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 103–437 substituted “Foreign Affairs” for “International Relations” in introductory provisions.

Pub. L. 103–236 substituted “Democracy, Human Rights, and Labor” for “Human Rights and Humanitarian Affairs” in introductory provisions.

1987—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 100-204 inserted after first sentence “Wherever applicable, such report shall include information on practices regarding coercion in population control, including coerced abortion and involuntary sterilization.”

1985—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 99-64 inserted “and the chairman of the Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs of the Senate (when licenses are to be issued pursuant to the Export Administration Act of 1979).”

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 99-83 added subsec. (g).

1983—Subsec. (d)(2)(A). Pub. L. 98-151 inserted “or part VIII (antiterrorism assistance)”.

1980—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 96-533, § 704, substituted “Export Administration Act of 1979” for “Export Administration Act of 1969”.

Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 96-533, § 701(b), defined “gross violations of internationally recognized human rights” to include causing the disappearance of persons by the abduction and clandestine detention of those persons.

1979—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 96-53 added subsec. (e).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 96-92 added subsec. (f).

1978—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 95-384, § 6(a), substituted “The United States shall” for “It is the policy of the United States”, “throughout the world” for “for all”, and “Accordingly” for “To this end”.

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 95-384, § 6(b), (d)(1), (e), substituted “Except” for “It is further the policy of the United States that, except” and inserted provisions prohibiting security assistance, including crime control and detection instruments, from being provided to police, domestic intelligence, or other police forces of governments which the executive branch determines are guilty of a consistent pattern of gross violations of internationally recognized human rights and prohibiting assistance under part V of this subchapter to a country the government of which, as determined by the executive branch, is engaged in a consistent pattern of gross violations of internationally recognized human rights.

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 95-384, § 6(c), substituted “paragraphs (1) and (2),” for “the foregoing policy”.

Subsec. (d)(2)(A). Pub. L. 95-384, §§ 10(b)(1), 12(b), substituted “(economic support fund)” for “(security supporting operations)”, inserted “or part VI (peacekeeping operations)” after “and training)”, and struck out “or subchapter V (assistance to the Middle East) of this chapter” after “of this subchapter”.

1977—Subsecs. (b), (c)(1). Pub. L. 95-105 substituted “Assistant Secretary of State” for “Coordinator”.

1976—Pub. L. 94-329 restricted the power of the President by eliminating the extraordinary circumstances exception to termination of assistance for gross violations of recognized human rights, directed the Secretary of State, as part of the presentation materials for an assistance program, to transmit a full and complete report to Congress on the human rights practices of the proposed recipient country and, within 30 days of a request by Congress, to supply information concerning the human rights practices of a country receiving assistance for determination as to whether the assistance should be continued, restricted, or terminated, and defined “security assistance”.

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103-236 applicable with respect to officials, offices, and bureaus of Department of State when executive orders, regulations, or departmental directives implementing the amendments by sections 161 and 162 of Pub. L. 103-236 become effective, or 90 days after Apr. 30, 1994, whichever comes earlier, see section 161(b) of Pub. L. 103-236, as amended, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1979 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-53 effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 512(a) of Pub. L. 96-53, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS; ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of State and funds available to President under this subchapter allocated to Secretary of Defense by sections 1-201(a)(27) and 1-801(b) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56674, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2321, 2398, 2651a, 5732 of this title; title 12 section 635; title 48 section 1904; title 50 App. section 2405.

### PART II—MILITARY ASSISTANCE

#### PART REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This part is referred to in sections 2304, 2349aa-2, 2360, 2428b, 2776, 2796, 2796a, 2796b of this title; title 10 section 7307.

### § 2311. General authority

#### (a) Defense articles and services; noncombatant personnel; transfer of funds

The President is authorized to furnish military assistance, on such terms and conditions as he may determine, to any friendly country or international organization, the assisting of which the President finds will strengthen the security of the United States and promote world peace and which is otherwise eligible to receive such assistance, by—

(1) acquiring for any source and providing (by loan or grant) any defense article or defense service;

(2) assigning or detailing members of the Armed Forces of the United States and other personnel of the Department of Defense to perform duties of a noncombatant nature; or

(3) transferring such of the funds appropriated or otherwise made available under this part as the President may determine for assistance to a recipient country, to the account in which funds for the procurement of defense articles and defense services under section 21 and section 22 of the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2761 and 2762] have been deposited for such recipient, to be merged with such deposited funds, and to be used solely to meet obligations of the recipient for payment for sales under that Act [22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.].

Sales which are wholly paid from funds transferred under paragraph (3) or from funds made available on a non-repayable basis under section 23 of the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2763] shall be priced to exclude the costs of salaries of members of the Armed Forces of the United States (other than the Coast Guard).

#### (b) Terms and conditions

In addition to such other terms and conditions as the President may determine pursuant to subsection (a) of this section, defense articles may be loaned thereunder only if—

(1) there is a bona fide reason, other than the shortage of funds, for providing such articles on a loan basis rather than on a grant basis;

(2) there is a reasonable expectation that such articles will be returned to the agency making the loan at the end of the loan period, unless the loan is then renewed;

(3) the loan period is of fixed duration not exceeding five years, during which such article may be recalled for any reason by the United States;

(4) the agency making the loan is reimbursed for the loan based on the amount charged to the appropriation for military assistance under subsection (c) of this section; and

(5) the loan agreement provides that (A) if the defense article is damaged while on loan, the country or international organization to which it was loaned will reimburse the United States for the cost of restoring or replacing the defense article, and (B) if the defense article is lost or destroyed while on loan, the country or international organization to which it was loaned will pay to the United States an amount equal to the replacement cost (less any depreciation in the value) of the defense article.

**(c) Appropriation charges; exceptions**

(1) In the case of any loan of a defense article or defense service made under this section, there shall be a charge to the appropriation for military assistance for any fiscal year while the article or service is on loan in an amount based on—

(A) the out-of-pocket expenses authorized to be incurred in connection with such loan during such fiscal year; and

(B) the depreciation which occurs during such year while such article is on loan.

(2) The provisions of this subsection shall not apply—

(A) to any particular defense article or defense service which the United States Government agreed, prior to December 17, 1973, to lend; and

(B) to any defense article or defense service, or portion thereof, acquired with funds appropriated for military assistance under this chapter.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §503, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 435; Pub. L. 88-633, §201(a), Oct. 7, 1964, 78 Stat. 1011; Pub. L. 89-171, pt. II, §201(a), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 656; Pub. L. 90-137, pt. II, §201(b), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 455; Pub. L. 93-189, §12(b)(1), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 720; Pub. L. 96-533, title I, §112(a), Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3138; Pub. L. 97-113, title I, §§109(c), 110(c), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1526; Pub. L. 99-83, title I, §123(a), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 205; Pub. L. 100-461, title V, §586(a), Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-50.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Arms Export Control Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(3), is Pub. L. 90-629, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1320, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 39 (§2751 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2751 of this title and Tables.

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (c)(2)(B), was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept.

4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

A guaranty provision, formerly subsec. (e) of this section, was renumbered section 525(a) of Pub. L. 87-195 by Pub. L. 90-137, pt. II, §201(b)(3), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 455, and classified to section 2345(a) of this title and repealed by Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 4, §45(a), Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1327.

AMENDMENTS

1988—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 100-461 inserted in last sentence “or from funds made available on a non-repayable basis under section 23 of the Arms Export Control Act” after “under paragraph (3)” and “(other than the Coast Guard)” after “Armed Forces of the United States”.

1985—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99-83 inserted sentence relating to pricing of sales wholly paid from transferred funds.

1981—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 97-113, §110(c), substituted “country” for “specified in section 2312(a)(1) of this title, within the dollar limitations of that section”.

Subsec. (b)(5). Pub. L. 97-113 substituted provision respecting payment of restoration or replacement costs for defense articles on loan for provision for making such a loan only if arrangements were made with the agency making the loan for reimbursement in the event the article was lost or destroyed while on loan, the reimbursement of which was to be made first out of any funds available to carry out this part and based on the depreciated value of the article at the time of loss or destruction.

1980—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 96-533 added par. (3).

1973—Pub. L. 93-189 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a), struck out references to making financial contributions to multilateral programs for the acquisition or construction of facilities for collective defense and providing financial assistance for expenses incident to participation by the United States government in regional or collective defense organizations, and added subsecs. (b) and (c).

1967—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 90-137, §201(b)(1), substituted “or grant” for “, lease, sale, exchange, grant, or any other means”.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 90-137, §201(b)(2), substituted a period for “; and”.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 90-137, §201(b)(3), struck out subsec. (e) which related to the guaranty and insuring against political and credit risks in connection with credit sales for defense articles and services procured in the United States. See Codification note above.

1965—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 89-171 struck out “in foreign countries” after “facilities”.

1964—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 88-633 added subsec. (e).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1988 AMENDMENT

Section 586(c) of Pub. L. 100-461 provided that: “This section [amending this section] shall be effective on October 1, 1989.”

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section, except those functions under subsec. (a) relating to findings, delegated to Secretary of Defense by sections 1-301(a) and 1-701(e)(1) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56675, 56677, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

REPORTS TO CONGRESSIONAL COMMITTEES

Section 301 of Pub. L. 100-461 provided: “That the Committees on Appropriations shall be furnished on

March 1 of each year a complete report of the status of military assistance funds appropriated by this or any future Act committed for the payment of any sales under the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.] as regards the individual sale, item description, and estimated sales price.”

#### FINDINGS BY SECRETARY OF STATE

The Secretary of State, in the implementation of the functions delegated to him under section 2314(a)(1), (4), and (e) of this title, was authorized by section 1-701(e)(1) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56678, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title, to find, in the case of a proposed transfer of a defense article or a related training or a related defense service by a foreign country or international organization to a foreign country or international organization not otherwise eligible under subsec. (a) of this section, whether the proposed transfer would strengthen the security of the United States and promote world peace.

#### REVIEW OF MILITARY ASSISTANCE PROGRAM; REDUCTION AND ELIMINATION PLAN; SUBMITTAL TO CONGRESS

Pub. L. 93-559, §17, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1800, which set forth provisions respecting review of military assistance program and submittal to Congress of plan for reduction and elimination, was repealed by Pub. L. 95-384, §29(c)(4), Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 747.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2321j, 2394, 2761, 2764, 2765 of this title.

### § 2312. Authorization of appropriations

#### (a) Authorization and availability of amounts

(1) There are authorized to be appropriated to the President to carry out the purposes of this part \$805,100,000 for fiscal year 1986 and \$805,100,000 for fiscal year 1987.

(2) Amounts appropriated under this subsection are authorized to remain available until expended.

#### (b) Programing and budgeting procedures

In order to make sure that a dollar spent on military assistance to foreign countries is as necessary as a dollar spent for the United States military establishment, the President shall establish procedures for programing and budgeting so that programs of military assistance come into direct competition for financial support with other activities and programs of the Department of Defense.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §504, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 436; Pub. L. 88-205, pt. II, §202(a), Dec. 16, 1963, 77 Stat. 384; Pub. L. 88-633, pt. II, §201(b), Oct. 7, 1964, 78 Stat. 1011; Pub. L. 89-171, pt. II, §201(b), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 656; Pub. L. 89-583, pt. II, §201(a), Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 802; Pub. L. 90-137, pt. II, §201(c), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 455; Pub. L. 90-554, pt. II, §201(a), Oct. 8, 1968, 82 Stat. 962; Pub. L. 91-175, pt. II, §201, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 819; Pub. L. 92-226, pt. II, §201(a), Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 25; Pub. L. 93-189, §12(b)(2), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 721; Pub. L. 93-559, §10, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1798; Pub. L. 94-329, title I, §101, June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 729; Pub. L. 95-23, Apr. 30, 1977, 91 Stat. 54; Pub. L. 95-92, §5(a), Aug. 4, 1977, 91 Stat. 614; Pub. L. 95-384, §7(a), Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 732; Pub. L. 96-92, §5(a), Oct. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 702; Pub. L. 96-533, title I, §112(b), Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3139; Pub. L. 97-113, title I, §110(a), Dec. 29,

1981, 95 Stat. 1526; Pub. L. 99-83, title I, §103, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 195.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1985—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 99-83 amended par. (1) generally, substituting provisions authorizing appropriations of \$805,100,000 for fiscal years 1986 and 1987, for provisions authorizing appropriations of not to exceed \$238,500,000 for fiscal years 1982 and 1983.

1981—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 97-113 in par. (1) substituted appropriations of \$238,500,000 for fiscal years 1982 and 1983 for appropriation of \$106,100,000 for fiscal year 1981 and struck out provision limiting assistance in listed amounts to Portugal (\$51,000,000), Spain (\$3,600,000), Philippines (\$25,000,000), and Sudan (\$1,700,000) for fiscal year 1981 and authorization of a 10-percent increase in any such amount when deemed necessary by the President, redesignated former par. (4) as (2), struck out former pars. (2), which limited assistance to those countries listed in par. (1), and par. (3), which provided that the authority contained in sections 2360(a) and 2364(a) of this title not be used to increase the amounts specified in par. (1) or the limitations in par. (2).

1980—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 96-533 substituted appropriations authorization of \$106,100,000 for fiscal year 1981 with allocations of specified amounts for certain countries for fiscal year 1981 for such authorization of \$110,200,000 for fiscal year 1980 with similar allocations for fiscal year 1980, included an allocation for The Sudan and deleted Jordan from the list.

1979—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 96-92 substituted appropriations authorization of \$110,200,000 for fiscal year 1980 for prior authorization of \$133,500,000 for fiscal year 1979, made the allocations available in specified amounts to Portugal, Spain, Jordan and the Philippines, struck out from the listing Greece, and struck out “for the fiscal year 1979” after “any such country” in provision limiting the percentage increment in an allotment to such fiscal year.

1978—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 95-384 substituted provisions authorizing appropriations of \$133,500,000 to the President for fiscal year 1979 to carry out the purposes of this part with specified amounts allocated to Portugal, Spain, Jordan, the Philippines, and Greece for provisions authorizing appropriations of \$228,900,000 to the President for fiscal year 1978 to carry out the purposes of this part with specified amounts allocated to Greece, Portugal, Spain, Turkey, Jordan, Indonesia, the Philippines, and Thailand.

1977—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 95-92 substituted provisions authorizing appropriations for fiscal year 1978 to carry out the purposes of this part with specified amounts allocated to Greece, Portugal, Spain, Turkey, Jordan, Indonesia, Philippines, and Thailand, for provisions authorizing appropriations for fiscal years 1976 and 1977 to carry out the purposes of this part with specified amounts allocated to Greece, Indonesia, Jordan, Republic of Korea, Philippines, Thailand, Turkey, Ethiopia, and Portugal.

Pub. L. 95-23 substituted “\$179,550,000” for “\$177,300,000” and added Portugal, with a fiscal year 1977 limit of \$32,250,000, to the table of countries.

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 95-92 substituted provisions prohibiting assistance to countries other than the countries specified in par. (1) except with respect to costs incurred under section 2321j(b) of this title or as otherwise required by law, for provisions setting forth limitations on amounts available for fiscal years 1976 and 1977 to carry out the purposes of this part with respect to assistance to international organizations and countries not designated in former par. (1).

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 95-92 substituted provisions relating to the authority of sections 2360(a) and 2364(a) of this title, for provisions setting forth limitations on the number of countries eligible for assistance under this part in fiscal years 1976 and 1977.

Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 95-92 substituted provisions authorizing availability until expended of amounts appropriated under this subsection, for provisions relating to

the authority of sections 2360(a) and 2364(a) of this title to increase appropriated amounts and making inapplicable to emergency assistance under section 2314(a) of this title limitations on appropriated funds under this section.

Subsec. (a)(5) to (8). Pub. L. 95-92 struck out pars. (5) to (8) which provided for appropriations for administrative and related expenses for fiscal years 1976 and 1977, restricted use of funds with respect to sophisticated weapons systems, authorized appropriated amounts to remain available until expended, and required assistance to Turkey under this part to be subject to section 2370(x) of this title, respectively.

1976—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94-329 designated existing provisions as par. (1), substituted provisions authorizing appropriations for the purpose of this part of \$196,700,000 for fiscal 1976 and \$177,300,000 for fiscal 1977, with limitations in expenditures for the specified countries, and authorizing an increase of not more than 10% of the specified amounts if the President finds it necessary for the purpose of this part, for provisions authorizing appropriations not to exceed \$600,000,000 for fiscal 1975 with provisos limiting assistance under this part to thirty-one countries except for training in the United States, and prohibiting the furnishing of sophisticated weapons systems to underdeveloped countries unless the President determined that such systems were important to national security, and added pars. (2) to (8).

1974—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 93-559 substituted “\$600,000,000 for the fiscal year 1975” for “\$512,500,000 for the fiscal year 1974” and designated existing provision as item (1) and added item (2).

1973—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 93-189 substituted “\$512,500,000 for the fiscal year 1974”, for “\$500,000,000 for the fiscal year 1972” and “thirty-one countries” for “forty countries”.

1972—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 92-226 substituted “\$500,000,000 for the fiscal year 1972” for “\$350,000,000 for the fiscal year 1970, and \$350,000,000 for the fiscal year 1971”.

1969—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 91-175 substituted “\$350,000,000 for the fiscal year 1970, and \$350,000,000 for the fiscal year 1971” for “\$375,000,000 for the fiscal year 1969,” and inserted provisions cost-sharing expenses of United States participation in the military headquarters and related agencies program.

1968—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 90-554 substituted “1969” and “\$375,000,000” for “1968” and “\$510,000,000”, respectively, struck out provisions which made \$24,100,000 of authorization available for fiscal year 1968, for cost-sharing expenses, and which prohibited other available funds from being used for cost-sharing expenses, and prohibited use of appropriated funds for weapons systems expenditures without Presidential determination of importance to national security and report to Congress, respectively.

1967—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 90-137 substituted provisions authorizing appropriation of \$510,000,000 for fiscal year 1968 for provisions authorizing appropriation of \$875,000,000 for fiscal year 1967 in addition to such amounts as may be otherwise authorized to support Vietnamese forces and other free world forces in Vietnam, made \$24,100,000 of such authorization available for fiscal year 1968 for cost-sharing expenses, and prohibited other available funds from being used for such cost-sharing expenses.

1966—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 89-583 substituted provisions authorizing appropriation of \$875,000,000 for fiscal year 1967 in addition to such amounts as may be otherwise authorized to support Vietnamese forces and other free world forces in Vietnam and limiting assistance to forty countries in any fiscal year for provisions authorizing appropriation of \$1,170,000,000 for fiscal year 1966 and prescribing availability of minimum of \$200,000,000 for use in Vietnam for fiscal year 1965 unless otherwise determined by the President and so reported to Committees on Foreign Relations and Appropriations of the Senate and to the Speaker of the House.

1965—Pub. L. 89-171 substituted “1966” and “\$1,170,000,000” for “1965” and “\$1,055,000,000”, respectively.

1964—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 88-633 substituted “1965” and “\$1,055,000,000” for “1964” and “\$1,000,000,000”, respectively, and required not less than \$200,000,000 to be available for fiscal year 1965 for use in Vietnam unless the President determined and reported otherwise to Congressional committees.

1963—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 88-205 substituted “fiscal year 1964” and “\$1,000,000,000, which”, for “the fiscal years 1962 and 1963” and “\$1,700,000,000 for each such fiscal year, which sum”, respectively.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

#### ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Funds available to President for carrying out this part allocated to Secretary of Defense by section 1-801(b) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56674, 56678, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2321i, 2321j of this title.

### § 2313. Transferred

#### CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, § 505(a), (b), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 436, as amended, was renumbered §§ 502, 507(c) of Pub. L. 87-195 by Pub. L. 90-137, pt. II, § 201(d)(1), (l), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 456, 457, and transferred to sections 2302 and 2319 of this title.

### § 2314. Furnishing of defense articles or related training or other defense service on grant basis

#### (a) Conditions of eligibility

In addition to such other provisions as the President may require, no defense articles or related training or other defense service shall be furnished to any country on a grant basis unless it shall have agreed that—

(1) it will not, without the consent of the President—

(A) permit any use of such articles or related training or other defense service by anyone not an officer, employee, or agent of that country,

(B) transfer, or permit any officer, employee, or agent of that country to transfer such articles or related training or other defense service by gift, sale, or otherwise, or

(C) use or permit the use of such articles or related training or other defense service for purposes other than those for which furnished;

(2) it will maintain the security of such articles or related training or other defense service, and will provide substantially the same degree of security protection afforded to such articles or related training or other defense service by the United States Government;

(3) it will, as the President may require, permit continuous observation and review by, and furnish necessary information to, representatives of the United States Government with regard to the use of such articles or related training or other defense service; and

(4) unless the President consents to other disposition, it will return to the United States

Government for such use or disposition as the President considers in the best interests of the United States, such articles or related training or other defense service which are no longer needed for the purposes for which furnished.

**(b) Limitation on amount; exceptions**

No defense articles shall be furnished on a grant basis to any country at a cost in excess of \$3,000,000 in any fiscal year unless the President determines—

(1) that such country conforms to the purposes and principles of the Charter of the United Nations;

(2) that such defense articles will be utilized by such country for the maintenance of its own defensive strength, or the defensive strength of the free world;

(3) that such country is taking all reasonable measures, consistent with its political and economic stability, which may be needed to develop its defense capacities; and

(4) that the increased ability of such country to defend itself is important to the security of the United States.

**(c) Reduction and termination of grants to countries able to maintain adequate military forces without undue economic strain**

The President shall regularly reduce and, with such deliberate speed as orderly procedure and other relevant considerations, including prior commitments, will permit, shall terminate all further grants of military equipment and supplies to any country having sufficient wealth to enable it, in the judgment of the President, to maintain and equip its own military forces at adequate strength, without undue burden to its economy.

**(d) Termination of assistance; report of violation by President; conditions for reinstatement**

(1) Assistance and deliveries of assistance under this part to any country shall be terminated as hereinafter provided, if such country uses defense articles or defense services furnished under this chapter, the Mutual Security Act of 1954, or any predecessor Foreign Assistance Act, in substantial violation (either in terms of quantities or in terms of the gravity of the consequences regardless of the quantities involved) of any agreement entered into pursuant to any such Act (A) by using such articles or services for a purpose not authorized under section 2302 of this title or, if such agreement provides that such articles or services may only be used for purposes more limited than those authorized under section 2302 of this title, for a purpose not authorized under such agreement; (B) by transferring such articles or services to, or permitting any use of such articles or services by, anyone not an officer, employee, or agent of the recipient country without the consent of the President; or (C) by failing to maintain the security of such articles or services.

(2)(A) Assistance and deliveries of assistance shall be terminated pursuant to paragraph (1) of this subsection if the President so determines and so states in writing to the Congress, or if the Congress so finds by joint resolution.

(B) The President shall report to the Congress promptly upon the receipt of information that a

violation described in paragraph (1) of this subsection may have occurred.

(3) Assistance to a country shall remain terminated in accordance with paragraph (1) of this subsection until such time as—

(A) the President determines that the violation has ceased; and

(B) the country concerned has given assurances satisfactory to the President that such violation will not recur.

(4) The authority contained in section 2364(a) of this title may not be used to waive the provisions of this section with respect to further assistance under this part.

**(e) Consent by President to transfer**

In considering a request for approval of any transfer of any weapon, weapons system, munitions, aircraft, military boat, military vessel, or other implement of war to another country, the President shall not give his consent under subsection (a)(1) or (a)(4) of this section to the transfer unless the United States itself would transfer the defense article under consideration to that country. In addition, the President shall not give his consent under subsection (a)(1) or (a)(4) of this section to the transfer of any significant defense articles on the United States Munitions List unless the foreign country requesting consent to transfer agrees to demilitarize such defense articles prior to transfer, or the proposed recipient foreign country provides a commitment in writing to the United States Government that it will not transfer such defense articles, if not demilitarized, to any other foreign country or person without first obtaining the consent of the President.

**(f) Disposition of defense articles furnished on a grant basis; net proceeds to be paid over to the United States**

Effective July 1, 1974, no defense article shall be furnished to any country on a grant basis unless such country shall have agreed that the net proceeds of sale received by such country in disposing of any weapon, weapons system, munition, aircraft, military boat, military vessel, or other implement of war received under this part will be paid to the United States Government and shall be available to pay all official costs of the United States Government payable in the currency of that country, including all costs relating to the financing of international educational and cultural exchange activities in which that country participates under the programs authorized by the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2451 et seq.]. In the case of items which were delivered prior to 1985, the President may waive the requirement that such net proceeds be paid to the United States Government if he determines that to do so is in the national interest of the United States.

**(g) Discrimination on basis of race, religion, national origin, or sex prohibited**

(1) It is the policy of the United States that no assistance under this part should be furnished to any foreign country, the laws, regulations, official policies, or governmental practices of which prevent any United States person (as defined in section 7701(a)(30) of title 26) from participating

in the furnishing of defense articles or defense services under this part on the basis of race, religion, national origin, or sex.

(2)(A) No agency performing functions under this part shall, in employing or assigning personnel to participate in the performance of any such function, whether in the United States or abroad, take into account the exclusionary policies or practices of any foreign government where such policies or practices are based upon race, religion, national origin, or sex.

(B) Each contract entered into by any such agency for the performance of any function under this part shall contain a provision to the effect that no person, partnership, corporation, or other entity performing functions pursuant to such contract, shall, in employing or assigning personnel to participate in the performance of any such function, whether in the United States or abroad, take into account the exclusionary policies or practices of any foreign government where such policies or practices are based upon race, religion, national origin, or sex.

(3) The President shall promptly transmit reports to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate concerning any transaction in which any United States person (as defined in section 7701(a)(30) of title 26) is prevented by a foreign government on the basis of race, religion, national origin, or sex, from participating in the furnishing of assistance under this part, or education and training under part V of this subchapter, to any foreign country. Such reports shall include (A) a description of the facts and circumstances of any such discrimination, (B) the response thereto on the part of the United States or any agency or employee thereof, and (C) the result of such response, if any.

(4)(A) Upon the request of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate or the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives, the President shall, within 60 days after receipt of such request, transmit to both such committees a statement, prepared with the assistance of the Assistant Secretary of State for Democracy, Human Rights, and Labor, with respect to the country designated in such request, setting forth—

(i) all the available information about the exclusionary policies or practices of the government of such country when such policies or practices are based upon race, religion, national origin, or sex and prevent any such person from participating in a transaction involving the furnishing of any assistance under this part or any education and training under part V of this subchapter;

(ii) the response of the United States thereto and the results of such response;

(iii) whether, in the opinion of the President, notwithstanding any such policies or practices—

(I) extraordinary circumstances exist which necessitate a continuation of such assistance or education and training transaction, and, if so, a description of such circumstances and the extent to which such assistance or education and training trans-

action should be continued (subject to such conditions as Congress may impose under this section), and

(II) on all the facts it is in the national interest of the United States to continue such assistance or education and training transaction; and

(iv) such other information as such committee may request.

(B) In the event a statement with respect to an assistance or training transaction is requested pursuant to subparagraph (A) of this paragraph but is not transmitted in accordance therewith within 60 days after receipt of such request, such assistance or training transaction shall be suspended unless and until such statement is transmitted.

(C)(i) In the event a statement with respect to an assistance or training transaction is transmitted under subparagraph (A) of this paragraph, the Congress may at any time thereafter adopt a joint resolution terminating or restricting such assistance or training transaction.

(ii) Any such resolution shall be considered in the Senate in accordance with the provisions of section 601(b) of the International Security Assistance and Arms Export Control Act of 1976.

(iii) The term “certification”, as used in section 601 of such Act, means, for the purposes of this paragraph, a statement transmitted under subparagraph (A) of this paragraph.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, § 505, formerly § 506, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 436; Pub. L. 87-565, pt. II, § 201(a), Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 259; Pub. L. 89-583, pt. II, § 201(b), Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 803; renumbered § 505, Pub. L. 90-137, pt. II, § 201(e), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 456 and amended Pub. L. 92-226, pt. II, § 201(b), (c), Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 25; Pub. L. 93-189, § 12(b)(3), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 721; Pub. L. 94-329, title II, §§ 203(b), 204(b)(2), title III, §§ 302(a), 304(a), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 735, 736, 751, 754; Pub. L. 95-105, title I, § 109(a)(4), Aug. 17, 1977, 91 Stat. 846; Pub. L. 99-83, title I, § 123(b), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 205; Pub. L. 99-514, § 2, Oct. 22, 1986, 100 Stat. 2095; Pub. L. 101-513, title III, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1998; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 162(e)(2), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 405; Pub. L. 103-437, § 9(a)(6), Nov. 2, 1994, 108 Stat. 4588.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (d)(1), was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

The Mutual Security Act of 1954, referred to in subsec. (d)(1), is act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, 68 Stat. 832, as amended by acts July 8, 1955, ch. 301, 69 Stat. 283; July 18, 1956, ch. 627, §§ 2-11, 70 Stat. 555; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, 71 Stat. 355; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. I, §§ 101-103, ch. II, §§ 201-205, ch. III, § 301, ch. IV, § 401, ch. V, § 501, 72 Stat. 261; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, § 2, ch. I, § 101, ch. II, §§ 201-205(a)-(i), (k)-(n), ch. III, § 301, ch. IV, § 401(a)-(k), (m), 73 Stat. 246; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. I to V, 74 Stat. 134, which was principally classified to chapter 24 (§ 1750 et seq.) of this title and which was repealed by act July 18, 1956, ch. 627, § 8(m), 70 Stat. 559, Pub. L. 85-141, §§ 2(e) 3, 4(b), 11(d), Aug. 14, 1957, 71 Stat. 356, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. II, §§ 205(j), ch. IV, 401(1), July 24, 1959, 73 Stat. 250, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. II, §§ 203(d), 204(k), May 14, 1960, 74 Stat. 138, Pub. L. 87-195,

pt. III, §642(a)(2), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460, Pub. L. 94-329, title II, §212(b)(1), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 745, except for sections 1754, 1783, 1796, 1853, 1922, 1928, and 1937 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1754 of this title and Tables.

The Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (f), is Pub. L. 87-256, Sept. 21, 1961, 5 Stat. 527, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 33 (§2451 et. seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2451 of this title and Tables.

Section 601 of the International Security Assistance and Arms Export Control Act of 1976, referred to in subsec. (g)(4)(C)(ii), is section 601 of Pub. L. 94-329, which was not classified to the Code.

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (g)(4)(A). Pub. L. 103-437 substituted “Foreign Affairs” for “International Relations” in introductory provisions.

Pub. L. 103-236 substituted “Democracy, Human Rights, and Labor” for “Human Rights and Humanitarian Affairs” in introductory provisions.

1990—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 101-513 substituted “1985” for “1975” in second sentence.

1986—Subsec. (g)(1), (3). Pub. L. 99-514 substituted “Internal Revenue Code of 1986” for “Internal Revenue Code of 1954”, which for purposes of codification was translated as “title 26” thus requiring no change in text.

1985—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 99-83 inserted provisions relating to waiver for items delivered prior to 1975.

1977—Subsec. (g)(4)(A). Pub. L. 95-105 substituted “Assistant Secretary of State” for “Coordinator” in provisions preceding cl. (i).

1976—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94-329, §203(b), inserted “or related training or other defense service” after “articles” wherever appearing.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 94-329, §304(a), provided that either the President, by so stating in a writing to Congress, or Congress, by joint resolution, terminate assistance upon determining a violation, specified conditions for reinstatement of assistance, and denied the President the power, where a violation has been determined, of granting assistance on the basis of national security.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 94-329, §204(b)(2), struck out provisions relating to the President’s notification of his consent to transfer war implements to another country, in writing, to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate indicating his justification for the transfer and the particular war implement transferred.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 94-329 added subsec. (g).

1973—Subsecs. (e), (f). Pub. L. 93-189 added subsecs. (e) and (f).

1972—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 92-226, §201(b), substituted “or” for “and”.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 92-226, §201(c), repealed provisions respecting conditions of eligibility requiring agreements for use of foreign currencies from sale of surplus commodities for common defense including internal security.

1966—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 89-583 added subsec. (e).

1962—Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 87-565 added subsecs. (c) and (d).

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103-236 applicable with respect to officials, offices, and bureaus of Department of

State when executive orders, regulations, or departmental directives implementing the amendments by sections 161 and 162 of Pub. L. 103-236 become effective, or 90 days after Apr. 30, 1994, whichever comes earlier, see section 161(b) of Pub. L. 103-236, as amended, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1976 AMENDMENT

Section 203(b) of Pub. L. 94-329 provided that the amendment made by that section is effective July 1, 1976.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section, with exception of those under subsec. (b) respecting countries that do not agree to conditions set forth in subsec. (b), those respecting determinations under subsec. (d)(2)(A), (3), and certain other specified exceptions, delegated to Secretary of Defense by sections 1-301(a) and 1-701(d), (e)(2) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56675, 56677, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

Functions of President under subsec. (a) relating to other provisions which may be required by President, subsec. (a)(1) and (4) relating to consent, subsec. (b) to the extent it pertains to countries agreeing to conditions set forth therein, and subsecs. (d) to (g) delegated to Secretary of State, with authorization to find whether proposed transfer of defense article or related training or related defense service would strengthen United States security and promote world peace, by sections 1-201(a)(4)-(6) and 1-701(e)(1) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2321n, 2753, 2776, 2780 of this title.

#### § 2314a. Repealed. Pub. L. 93-189, § 26(4), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 731

Section, Pub. L. 91-672, §9, Jan. 12, 1971, 84 Stat. 2055, related to transfer of defense articles to other countries under sections 2314(a)(1), (4) and 2753(a)(2) of this title and prerequisites for consent of President to transfer.

#### §§ 2315 to 2317. Transferred

##### CODIFICATION

Section 2315, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §507, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 437, as amended, which related to sale of defense articles and services, manner of payment, price of non-excess defense articles, value of excess defense articles, contracts for procurement, undertakings, and fixed-price sales agreements, was renumbered §§522, 523 of Pub. L. 87-195 by Pub. L. 90-137, pt. II, §201(f), (g), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 456, and transferred to sections 2342 and 2343 of this title, respectively, which sections were subsequently repealed.

Section 2316, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §508, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 437, as amended, which related to reimbursements and transfers to separate fund account, was renumbered §524 of Pub. L. 87-195 by Pub. L. 90-137, pt. II, §201(h), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 456, and transferred to section 2344 of this title.

Section 2317(a), Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §509(a), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 437; Pub. L. 88-633, pt. II, §201(d), Oct. 7, 1964, 78 Stat. 1011, related to exchanges, and was repealed by Pub. L. 90-137, pt. II, §201(i)(1), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 457.

Section 2317(b), Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §509(b), as added Pub. L. 88-633, pt. II, §201(d), Oct. 7, 1964, 78 Stat. 1011, which related to guaranties, was renumbered §525(b) of Pub. L. 87-195 by Pub. L. 90-137, pt. II, §201(i)(2), Nov. 14,



1967, 81 Stat. 457, transferred to section 2345(b) of this title, and subsequently repealed.

### § 2318. Special authority

#### (a) Unforeseen emergency; national interest; de-terminations and reports to Congress; limita-tion of defense articles, defense services, and military education and training furnished

(1) If the President determines and reports to the Congress in accordance with section 2411 of this title that—

(A) an unforeseen emergency exists which requires immediate military assistance to a foreign country or international organization; and

(B) the emergency requirement cannot be met under the authority of the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.] or any other law except this section;

he may direct, for the purposes of subchapter II of this chapter, the drawdown of defense articles from the stocks of the Department of Defense, defense services of the Department of Defense, and military education and training, of an aggregate value of not to exceed \$75,000,000 in any fiscal year.

(2)(A) If the President determines and reports to the Congress in accordance with section 2411 of this title that it is in the national interest of the United States to draw down defense articles from the stocks of the Department of Defense, defense services of the Department of Defense, and military education and training, he may direct—

(i) the drawdown of such articles, services, and the provision of such training for the purposes and under the authorities of parts VIII and IX of subchapter I of this chapter, as the case may be; and

(ii) the drawdown of defense services for the purposes and under the authorities of the Migration and Refugee Assistance Act of 1962 [22 U.S.C. 2601 et seq.].

(B) An aggregate value of not to exceed \$75,000,000 in any fiscal year of defense articles, defense services, and military education and training may be provided pursuant to subparagraph (A) of this paragraph.

#### (b) Notification and information to Congress of assistance furnished

(1) The authority contained in this section shall be effective for any such emergency only upon prior notification to the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives, the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, and the Committee on Appropriations of each House of Congress.

(2) The President shall keep the Congress fully and currently informed of all defense articles, defense services, and military education and training provided under this section.

#### (c) Authorization of appropriations for reimbursement of applicable funds

There are authorized to be appropriated to the President such sums as may be necessary to reimburse the applicable appropriation, fund, or account for defense articles, defense services, and military education and training provided under this section.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §506, formerly §510, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 437; Pub. L. 87-565, pt. II, §201(d), Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 260; Pub. L. 88-205, pt. II, §202(c), Dec. 16, 1963, 77 Stat. 384; Pub. L. 88-633, pt. II, §201(e), Oct. 7, 1964, 78 Stat. 1012; Pub. L. 89-171, pt. II, §201(g), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 658; Pub. L. 89-583, pt. II, §201(d), Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 803; renumbered §506 and amended Pub. L. 90-137, pt. II, §201(j), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 457; Pub. L. 90-554, pt. II, §201(b), Oct. 8, 1968, 82 Stat. 962; Pub. L. 91-175, pt. II, §202, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 820; Pub. L. 92-226, pt. II, §201(d), pt. III, §304(a)(2), Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 25, 28; Pub. L. 93-189, §12(b)(4), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 721; Pub. L. 93-559, §11, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1798; Pub. L. 94-329, title I, §102, June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 730; Pub. L. 96-92, §5(b), Oct. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 702; Pub. L. 96-533, title I, §112(c), Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3139; Pub. L. 97-113, title I, §110(b), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1526; Pub. L. 101-167, title V, §551(b), Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1236.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Arms Export Control Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(1)(B), is Pub. L. 90-629, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1320, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 39 (§2751 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2751 of this title and Tables.

The Migration and Refugee Assistance Act of 1962, referred to in subsec. (a)(2)(A)(ii), is Pub. L. 87-510, June 28, 1962, 76 Stat. 121, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 36 (§2601 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2601 of this title and Tables.

#### REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER II DEEMED TO EXCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter II of this chapter are deemed to exclude parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II, and references to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

#### AMENDMENTS

1989—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 101-167 designated existing provisions as par. (1), redesignated former pars. (1) and (2) as subpars. (A) and (B), respectively, and added par. (2).

1981—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 97-113 increased fiscal year limitation to \$75,000,000 from \$50,000,000 on aggregate value of assistance furnished.

1980—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 96-533 increased to \$50,000,000 from \$10,000,000 fiscal year limitation on aggregate value of assistance furnished.

1979—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 96-92 authorized military education and training assistance, substituted \$10,000,000 fiscal year limitation on aggregate value of assistance furnished for \$67,500,000 fiscal year limitation on total value of defense articles and defense services ordered, and eliminated requirement for determination that failure to respond immediately to the emergency would result in serious harm to vital United States security interests, deleted provision authorizing reimbursement from subsequent appropriations which is covered in subsec. (c), provision for effectiveness of authority only as provided in an appropriation Act, and requirement of information to Congress which is covered in subsec. (b)(2).

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 96-92 required notification of Congressional Committees, reenacted former subsec. (a) provision for information to Congress respecting assistance furnished, included military education and train-

ing, and deleted authorization of Defense Department, in applicable appropriations, to incur obligations in anticipation of reimbursements, and authorization of appropriations for reimbursement purposes.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 96-92 incorporated reimbursement provision of former subsec. (b) and expanded section to include military education and training.

1976—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94-329 redesignated existing provisions as pars. (1) to (3), limited the President's authority to act by inserting requirements that he act only in cases of unforeseen emergencies requiring immediate military assistance to a foreign country or international organization where vital United States security interests are concerned when such emergency requirement cannot be met under authority of the Arms Export Control Act or any other law, reduced the President's authority from \$150 million to \$67.5 million in any fiscal year, and required current reporting to Congress on the use of such authority.

1974—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 93-559 substituted "fiscal year 1975" for "fiscal year 1974" wherever appearing and "\$150,000,000" for "\$250,000,000".

1973—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 93-189 substituted "the fiscal year 1974", "in the security interests", and "\$250,000,000" for "the fiscal year 1972", "vital to the security", and "\$300,000,000", respectively.

1972—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 92-226 substituted "1972" for "1970 and the fiscal year 1971" and "the fiscal year 1972" for "each of the fiscal years 1970 and 1971", and repealed last sentence providing for prompt notice of action taken to Committees on Foreign Relations, Appropriations, and Armed Services of the Senate and Speaker of the House.

1969—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 91-175 substituted "1970 and the fiscal year 1971" for "1969" in first sentence, and substituted "in each of the fiscal years 1970 and 1971" for "in the fiscal year 1969" in second sentence.

1968—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 90-554 substituted "1969" for "1968" wherever appearing.

1967—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 90-137 substituted "1968" for "1967" wherever appearing.

1966—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 89-583 substituted "1967" for "1966" wherever appearing.

1965—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 89-171 substituted "1966" for "1965" wherever appearing.

1964—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 88-633 substituted "1965" for "1964" wherever appearing.

1963—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 88-205 substituted "1964" for "1963" wherever appearing.

1962—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 87-565 substituted "1963" for "1962" wherever appearing.

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Funds available to President for carrying out this subchapter, with specified exceptions, allocated to Secretary of Defense by section 1-801(b) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56678, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2312, 2360, 2370, 2392, 2411, 2415 of this title.

### §§ 2319 to 2321. Repealed. Pub. L. 93-189, § 12(b)(5), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 722

Section 2319, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, § 507, formerly §§ 505(b), 511, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 436, 438; amended Pub. L. 88-205, pt. II, § 202(d), Dec. 16, 1963, 77 Stat. 384; Pub. L. 89-171, pt. II, § 201(c), (h), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 656, 658; renumbered § 507 and amended Pub. L. 90-137, pt. II § 201(k), (l), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 457; Pub. L.

90-554, pt. II, § 201(c), Oct. 8, 1968, 82 Stat. 963; Pub. L. 92-226, pt. II, § 201(e), Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 25, placed certain restrictions on military aid to Latin America.

Section 2320, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, § 508, formerly § 512, as added Pub. L. 88-205, pt. II, § 202(e), Dec. 16, 1963, 77 Stat. 384; amended Pub. L. 86-633, pt. II, § 201(f), Oct. 7, 1964, 78 Stat. 1012; Pub. L. 89-171, pt. II, § 201(i), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 658; Pub. L. 89-583, pt. II, § 201(e), Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 803; renumbered § 508 and amended Pub. L. 90-137, pt. II, § 201(m), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 457; Pub. L. 90-554, pt. II, § 201(d), Oct. 8, 1968, 82 Stat. 963, placed certain restrictions on military aid to African countries.

Section 2321, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, § 509, formerly § 513, as added Pub. L. 88-633, pt. II, § 201(g), Oct. 7, 1964, 78 Stat. 1012; renumbered § 509 and amended Pub. L. 90-137, pt. II, § 201(n), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 457, provided for the giving of certification of recipients' capabilities to utilize defense articles effectively and for the making of a report to the Speaker of the House and the Senate's Foreign Relations and Appropriations Committees whenever articles are furnished without such certification.

### § 2321a. Repealed. Pub. L. 94-329, title I, § 106(b)(1), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 733

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, § 510, as added Pub. L. 91-175, pt. II, § 203, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 820, limited the number of foreign military students to be trained in the United States out of funds appropriated under this subchapter, to not more than the number of foreign civilians brought to the United States under the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2451 et seq.) in the immediately preceding year.

#### SAVINGS PROVISION

Section 106(c) of Pub. L. 94-329 provided that: "Except as may be expressly provided to the contrary in this Act [see Short Title of 1976 Amendment note under section 2151 of this title], all determinations, authorizations, regulations, orders, contracts, agreements, and other actions issued, undertaken, or entered into under authority of any provision of law amended or repealed by this section [repealing this section and amending sections 2382, 2383, 2392, 2396, and 2403 of this title] shall continue in full force and effect until modified, revoked, or superseded by appropriate authority."

### § 2321b. Excess defense article

#### (a) to (c) Repealed. Pub. L. 94-329, title II, § 210(c)(2), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 740

#### (d) Reports to Congress

The President shall promptly and fully inform the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations and the Committee on Appropriations of the Senate of each decision to furnish on a grant basis to any country excess defense articles which are major weapons systems to the extent such major weapons system was not included in the presentation material previously submitted to the Congress. The annual presentation materials for security assistance programs shall include a table listing by country the total value of all deliveries of excess defense articles, disclosing both the aggregate original acquisition cost and the aggregate value at the time of delivery.

(Pub. L. 91-672, § 8, Jan. 12, 1971, 84 Stat. 2054; Pub. L. 92-226, pt. IV, § 402, Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 33; Pub. L. 93-189, § 26(1)-(3), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 731; Pub. L. 93-559, § 13, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1799; Pub. L. 94-329, title II, § 210(c)(2), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 740; Pub. L. 95-384, § 29(a), Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 747.)

## CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as part of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 which comprises this chapter.

## AMENDMENTS

1978—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 95-384 substituted “The annual presentation materials for security assistance programs shall include a table” for “Additionally, the President shall also submit a quarterly report to the Congress”.

1976—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94-329 struck out subsec. (a) which provided that the value of excess defense article granted to a foreign country or international organization shall be considered to be an expenditure from the funds of this chapter for military assistance, and established accounting procedure when an order for excess defense article was placed.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 94-329 struck out subsec. (b) which provided that in the case of excess defense articles that were generated abroad, provisions of former subsec. (a) shall apply during any fiscal year only to the extent that the aggregate value of excess defense articles ordered during that year exceeded \$100,000,000.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 94-329 struck out subsec. (c) which defined “value” as that meaning found in section 2403m of this title, except the term shall not include a value for any excess defense article which was less than 33½ percent of the amount the United States paid for such article when it was acquired.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 94-329 struck out subsec. (e) which provided that except for excess defense articles granted under this subchapter, the provisions of this section did not apply to grants of such articles to South Vietnam prior to July 1, 1972.

1974—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 93-559, §13(a)(1), substituted “\$100,000,000” for “\$150,000,000”.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 93-559, §13(a)(2), inserted exception provision respecting definitions of value for excess defense articles.

1973—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 93-189, §26(1), inserted provision preceding cl. (1) relating to the subtraction of amounts to be transferred under section 2392(d) of this title.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 93-189, §26(2), substituted “In the case of excess defense articles which are generated abroad, the provisions”, for “The provisions” and “\$150,000,000” for “\$185,000,000”.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 93-189, §26(3), substituted provisions defining “value” as that meaning given it in section 2403(m) of this title, for provisions defining such term as not less than 33½ per centum of the amount the United States paid at the time the excess defense articles were acquired by the United States.

1972—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 92-226, §402(1), substituted in first sentence “by any department, agency, or independent establishment of the United States Government (other than the Agency for International Development)” for “subchapter II of this chapter” and “the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961” for “that Act”, codified in the text as “this chapter” and in second sentence “Unless such department, agency, or establishment certifies to the Comptroller General of the United States that the excess defense article it is ordering is not to be transferred by any means to a foreign country or international organization, when an order is placed for a defense article” for “When an order is placed under the military assistance program with the military departments for a defense article”.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 92-226, §402(2), substituted “\$185,000,000” for “\$100,000,000”.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 92-226, §402(3), added subsec. (e).

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1976 AMENDMENT

Section 210(c)(2) of Pub. L. 94-329 provided in part that the amendment of subsecs. (a) to (c) and (e) by Pub. L. 94-329 is effective July 1, 1976.

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under subsec. (d) delegated to Secretary of State by section 1-201(a)(19) of Ex. Ord.

No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56674, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

## TRANSFER OF SUSPENSE ACCOUNT FUNDS TO GENERAL FUND OF TREASURY

Section 210(c)(2) of Pub. L. 94-329 provided in part that all funds in the suspense account referred to in former subsec. (a) of this section on July 1, 1976, shall be transferred to the general fund of the Treasury.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2321c of this title.

## § 2321c. Definitions

For purposes of sections 2321b and 2314a<sup>1</sup> of this title—

(1) “defense article” and “excess defense articles” have the same meanings as given them in subsections (d) and (g), respectively, of section 2403 of this title; and

(2) “foreign country” includes any department, agency, or independent establishment of the foreign country.

(Pub. L. 91-672, §11, Jan. 12, 1971, 84 Stat. 2055.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 2314a, referred to in text, was repealed by Pub. L. 93-189, §26(4), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 731.

## § 2321d. Considerations in furnishing military assistance

Decisions to furnish military assistance made under subchapter II of this chapter shall be made in coordination with the Director of the United States Arms Control and Disarmament Agency and shall take into account his opinion as to whether such assistance will—

(1) contribute to an arms race;

(2) increase the possibility of outbreak or escalation of conflict; or

(3) prejudice the development of bilateral or multilateral arms control arrangements.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §511, as added Pub. L. 92-226, pt. II, §201(f), Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 25; amended Pub. L. 94-141, title I, §150(c), Nov. 29, 1975, 89 Stat. 760.)

## REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER II DEEMED TO EXCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter II of this chapter are deemed to exclude parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II, and references to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

## AMENDMENTS

1975—Pub. L. 94-141 substituted “be made in coordination with the Director of the United States Arms Control and Disarmament Agency and shall take into account his opinion as to” for “take into account”.

## § 2321e. Repealed. Pub. L. 93-189, § 12(b)(5), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 722

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §512, as added Pub. L. 92-226, pt. II, §201(f), Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 25, provided for the diminution and consolidation of military assistance advisory groups and missions in foreign countries.

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

**§ 2321f. Repealed. Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(1), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560**

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, § 513, as added Pub. L. 92-226, pt. II, § 201(f), Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 25; amended Pub. L. 93-189, § 12(b)(6), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 722; Pub. L. 93-559, § 12, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1798, prohibited military assistance to Thailand, Laos, and South Vietnam after June 30, 1972, 1974, and 1976, respectively, without prior authorization.

**§ 2321g. Repealed. Pub. L. 93-189, § 12(b)(5), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 722**

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, § 514, as added Pub. L. 92-226, pt. II, § 201(f), Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 26, covered special foreign country accounts, the deposit of currencies, use of special accounts for payments of certain costs, Presidential waiver authority, the nonapplicability of provisions for special accounts, and the limitations on the amount of deposits.

SPECIAL FOREIGN COUNTRY ACCOUNTS

Section 1-501(b) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56675, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title, authorized the Secretary of the Treasury to continue to administer any open special foreign country accounts established pursuant to this section prior to its repeal by Pub. L. 93-189.

**§ 2321h. Stockpiling of defense articles for foreign countries**

**(a) Transfer of defense articles**

No defense article in the inventory of the Department of Defense which is set aside, reserved, or in any way earmarked or intended for future use by any foreign country may be made available to or for use by any foreign country unless such transfer is authorized under this chapter or the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.] or any subsequent corresponding legislation, and the value of such transfer is charged against funds authorized under such legislation or against the limitations specified in such legislation, as appropriate, for the fiscal period in which such defense article is transferred. For purposes of this subsection, "value" means the acquisition cost plus crating, packing, handling, and transportation costs incurred in carrying out this section.

**(b) Fiscal year limits on new stockpiles or additions to existing stockpiles located in foreign countries**

(1) The value of defense articles to be set aside, earmarked, reserved, or intended for use as war reserve stocks for allied or other foreign countries (other than for purposes of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization) in stockpiles located in foreign countries may not exceed in any fiscal year an amount that is specified in security assistance authorizing legislation for that fiscal year.

(2) The value of such additions to stockpiles in foreign countries shall not exceed a total of \$200,000,000 for stockpiles in Israel for fiscal years 1994 and 1995, up to \$40,000,000 may be made available for stockpiles in the Republic of Korea, and up to \$10,000,000 may be made available for stockpiles in Thailand for fiscal year 1995, up to \$72,000,000 may be made available for stockpiles in the Republic of Korea, and up to \$20,000,000 may be made available for stockpiles in Thailand.

**(c) Location of stockpiles**

Except for stockpiles in existence on June 30, 1976 and for stockpiles located in the Republic of Korea, Thailand, or countries which are members of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization, or major non-NATO allies, no stockpile may be located outside the boundaries of a United States military base or a military base used primarily by the United States.

**(d) Transferred articles not to be considered excess articles in determining value**

No defense article transferred from any stockpile which is made available to or for use by any foreign country may be considered an excess defense article for the purpose of determining the value thereof.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, § 514, as added Pub. L. 93-559, § 15, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1799; amended Pub. L. 94-329, title I, § 103, June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 730; Pub. L. 95-92, § 6, Aug. 4, 1977, 91 Stat. 615; Pub. L. 95-384, § 8, Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 732; Pub. L. 96-92, § 6(a), Oct. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 703; Pub. L. 96-533, title I, § 113, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3139; Pub. L. 97-113, title I, § 111, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1527; Pub. L. 98-473, title I, § 101(1) [title V, § 541(a)], Oct. 12, 1984, 98 Stat. 1884, 1903; Pub. L. 99-83, title I, § 124, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 205; Pub. L. 100-202, § 101(e) [title III, § 301], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-147; Pub. L. 100-461, title V, § 555, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-36; Pub. L. 101-167, title V, § 587(b), Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1253; Pub. L. 101-510, div. A, title XIII, § 1303(b), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1669; Pub. L. 101-513, title V, § 573, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2042; Pub. L. 102-391, title V, § 569, Oct. 6, 1992, 106 Stat. 1681; Pub. L. 103-87, title V, § 535, Sept. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 955; Pub. L. 103-306, title V, § 535, Aug. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 1637.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

The Arms Export Control Act, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 90-629, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1320, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 39 (§ 2751 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2751 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Amendment by Pub. L. 98-473 is based on section 116(a) of H.R. 5119, Ninety-eighth Congress, as passed by the House of Representatives May 10, 1984, which was enacted into permanent law by Pub. L. 98-473.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 103-306 substituted "a total of \$200,000,000 for stockpiles in Israel for fiscal years 1994 and 1995, up to \$40,000,000 may be made available for stockpiles in the Republic of Korea, and up to \$10,000,000 may be made available for stockpiles in Thailand for fiscal year 1995" for "\$200,000,000 for stockpiles in Israel for fiscal year 1994".

1993—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 103-87 which directed amendment of par. (2) "by striking out '\$389,000,000 for fiscal year 1993, of which amount not less than \$200,000,000 shall be available for stockpiles in Israel, and up to \$189,000,000 may be available for stockpiles in the Republic of Korea' and inserting in lieu thereof

“\$200,000,000 for stockpiles in Israel for fiscal year 1994”, up to \$72,000,000 may be made available for stockpiles in the Republic of Korea, and up to \$20,000,000 may be made available for stockpiles in Thailand.” was executed as if the end quotation mark for the inserted material followed “Thailand” rather than following “1994” to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

1992—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 102-391, which directed the substitution of “\$389,000,000 for fiscal year 1993, of which amount not less than \$200,000,000 shall be available for stockpiles in Israel, and up to \$189,000,000 may be available for stockpiles in the Republic of Korea” for “\$378,000,000 for fiscal year 1991, of which amount not less than \$300,000,000 shall be available for stockpiles in Israel”, was executed by making such substitution for “\$378,000,000 for fiscal year 1991, of which amount not less than \$300,000,000 shall be for stockpiles in Israel”, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

1990—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 101-513, § 573(b), substituted “\$378,000,000 for fiscal year 1991, of which amount not less than \$300,000,000 shall be for stockpiles in Israel” for “\$165,000,000 for fiscal year 1990”.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 101-513, § 573(a), inserted “or major non-NATO allies,” after “Organization,”.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 101-510 struck out subsec. (e) which read as follows: “The President shall promptly report to the Congress each new stockpile, or addition to an existing stockpile, described in this section of defense articles valued in excess of \$10,000,000 in any fiscal year.”

1989—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 101-167, § 587(b)(1), substituted “an amount that is specified” for “an amount greater than is specified”.

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 101-167, § 587(b)(2), substituted “\$165,000,000 for fiscal year 1990” for “\$77,000,000 for fiscal year 1989”.

1988—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 100-461 amended par. (2) generally, substituting “\$77,000,000 for fiscal year 1989” for “\$116,000,000 for fiscal year 1988”.

1987—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 100-202 amended par. (2) generally, substituting “\$116,000,000 for fiscal year 1988” for “\$360,000,000 for fiscal year 1986 and shall not exceed \$125,000,000 for fiscal year 1987”.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 100-202 inserted “, Thailand,” after “Korea”.

1985—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 99-83 amended par. (2) generally, substituting provisions authorizing appropriations of not to exceed \$360,000,000 for fiscal year 1986 and \$125,000,000 for fiscal year 1987, for provisions authorizing appropriations of \$125,000,000 for fiscal year 1984 and \$248,000,000 for fiscal year 1985.

1984—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 98-473 substituted “\$125,000,000 for the fiscal year 1984 and \$248,000,000 for the fiscal year 1985” for “\$130,000,000 for the fiscal year 1982 and \$125,000,000 for the fiscal year 1983”.

1981—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 97-113 substituted “\$130,000,000 for the fiscal year 1982 and \$125,000,000 for the fiscal year 1983” for “\$85,000,000 for the fiscal year 1981”.

1980—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 96-533 substituted “\$85,000,000 for the fiscal year 1981” for “\$95,000,000 for the fiscal year 1980”.

1979—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 96-92, § 6(a)(1), substituted “\$95,000,000 for the fiscal year 1980” for “\$90,000,000 for the fiscal year 1979”.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 96-92, § 6(a)(2), inserted reference to stockpiles in Republic of Korea.

1978—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 95-384 substituted “\$90,000,000 for the fiscal year 1979” for “\$270,000,000 for the fiscal year 1978”.

1977—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 95-92 substituted “\$270,000,000 for the fiscal year 1978” for “\$93,750,000 for the period beginning July 1, 1975, and ending September 30, 1976, and \$125,000,000 for the fiscal year 1977”.

1976—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 93-329 substituted provisions prohibiting the transfer of any defense article earmarked for foreign use unless such transfer is authorized under this chapter or the Arms Export Control Act or subsequent legislation, requiring the charge-off of such transfer against funds authorized under such

legislation, and defining “value”, for provisions that no funds, other than funds made available under this part or section 401(a) of Pub. L. 89-367 (80 Stat. 37) be obligated for purposes of stockpiling any defense article or war reserve material if such article is earmarked for future foreign use.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 94-329 substituted provisions limiting the value of earmarked defense articles for allied or foreign use to an amount not greater than is specified in security assistance legislation for that fiscal year and limiting the value of additions to stockpiles in foreign countries not to exceed \$93,750,000 for the period beginning July 1, 1975 and ending Sept. 30, 1976, and \$125,000,000 for fiscal 1977 for provisions specifying a charge-off of the cost of any such article earmarked for use by or on behalf of the country referred to in section 401(a)(1) of Pub. L. 89-367 (80 Stat. 37) against the limitations specified in such section or subsequent legislation and against funds authorized under this part.

Subsecs. (c) to (e). Pub. L. 94-329 added subsecs. (c) to (e).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1984 AMENDMENT

Section 116(b) of H.R. 5119, as passed by the House of Representatives May 10, 1984, and enacted into permanent law by 101(1) [title V, § 541(a)], of Pub. L. 98-473 provided that: “The amendment made by subsection (a) [amending this section] shall take effect on the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 12, 1984].”

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of Defense to be carried out by Secretary in consultation with Secretary of State by sections 1-301(a) and 1-302 of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56675, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

#### FISCAL YEAR 1992 ADDITIONS TO STOCKPILES IN ISRAEL

Pub. L. 102-145, § 118, as added by Pub. L. 102-266, § 102, Apr. 1, 1992, 106 Stat. 93, provided in part that the authority and conditions provided in section 571 of H.R. 2621, One Hundred Second Congress, 1st Session, as passed by the House on June 19, 1991, shall be applicable to funds appropriated by Pub. L. 102-145 (and are hereby enacted) in lieu of the authority and conditions provided in section 573 of Pub. L. 101-513 [amending this section]. Section 571 of H.R. 2621, as referred to above, provided that: “Notwithstanding section 514(b) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [subsec. (b) of this section], additions may be made to stockpiles in Israel during fiscal year 1992 having a value of \$300,000,000: *Provided*, That the word ‘value’ as used in this section shall have the same meaning as in section 514 of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [this section].”

#### REPUBLIC OF KOREA STOCKPILING AUTHORITIES; REPORT TO CONGRESS

Section 6(b) of Pub. L. 96-92 directed President to transmit to Congress, not later than Dec. 31, 1979, a report regarding stockpiling authorities for Republic of Korea, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(11), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2321j of this title.

### § 2321i. Overseas management of assistance and sales programs

#### (a) Assignment of military personnel for performance of enumerated functions

In order to carry out his responsibilities for the management of international security as-

sistance programs conducted under this part, part V of this subchapter, and the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.], the President may assign members of the Armed Forces of the United States to a foreign country to perform one or more of the following functions:

- (1) equipment and services case management;
- (2) training management;
- (3) program monitoring;
- (4) evaluation and planning of the host government's military capabilities and requirements;
- (5) administrative support;
- (6) promoting rationalization, standardization, interoperability, and other defense cooperation measures among members of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization and with the Armed Forces of Japan, Australia, and New Zealand; and
- (7) liaison functions exclusive of advisory and training assistance.

**(b) Furnishing of advisory and training assistance**

Advisory and training assistance conducted by military personnel assigned under this section shall be kept to an absolute minimum. It is the sense of the Congress that advising and training assistance in countries to which military personnel are assigned under this section shall be provided primarily by other personnel who are not assigned under this section and who are detailed for limited periods to perform specific tasks.

**(c) Number of personnel assigned; waiver; procedures applicable**

(1) The number of members of the Armed Forces assigned to a foreign country under this section may not exceed six unless specifically authorized by the Congress. The president may waive this limitation if he determines and reports to the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives, 30 days prior to the introduction of the additional military personnel, that United States national interests require that more than six members of the Armed Forces be assigned under this section to carry out international security assistance programs in a country not specified in this paragraph. Pakistan, Tunisia, El Salvador, Honduras, Colombia, Indonesia, the Republic of Korea, the Philippines, Thailand, Egypt, Jordan, Morocco, Saudi Arabia, Greece, Portugal, Spain, and Turkey are authorized to have military personnel strengths larger than six under this section to carry out international security assistance programs.

(2) The total number of members of the Armed Forces assigned under this section to a foreign country in a fiscal year may not exceed the number justified to the Congress for that country in the congressional presentation materials for that fiscal year, unless the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives are notified 30 days in advance of the introduction of the additional military personnel.

**(d) Costs**

Effective October 1, 1989, the entire costs (excluding salaries of the United States military personnel other than the Coast Guard) of overseas management of international security assistance programs under this section shall be charged to or reimbursed from funds made available to carry out this part or the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.], other than any such costs which are either paid directly for such defense services under section 21(a) of the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2761(a)] or reimbursed from charges for services collected from foreign governments pursuant to section 21(e) [22 U.S.C. 2761(e)] and section 43(b) [22 U.S.C. 2792(b)] of that Act.

**(e) Direction and supervision of assigned personnel**

Members of the Armed Forces assigned to a foreign country under this section shall serve under the direction and supervision of the Chief of the United States Diplomatic Mission to that country.

**(f) Presidential directive respecting purchase by foreign country of United States-made military equipment**

The President shall continue to instruct United States diplomatic and military personnel in the United States missions abroad that they should not encourage, promote, or influence the purchase by any foreign country of United States-made military equipment, unless they are specifically instructed to do so by an appropriate official of the executive branch.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §515, as added Pub. L. 93-559, §16, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1799; amended Pub. L. 94-329, title I, §104, June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 731; Pub. L. 95-92, §7(a), Aug. 4, 1977, 91 Stat. 615; Pub. L. 95-384, §9, Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 732; Pub. L. 96-92, §7, Oct. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 703; Pub. L. 96-533, title I, §114, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3139; Pub. L. 97-113, title I, §112, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1527; Pub. L. 99-83, title I, §125, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 205; Pub. L. 100-690, title IV, §4305(a), Nov. 18, 1988, 102 Stat. 4273; Pub. L. 101-165, title IX, §9104(a), Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1152; Pub. L. 101-167, title III, Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1213; Pub. L. 102-391, title V, §556(c), Oct. 6, 1992, 106 Stat. 1675.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Arms Export Control Act, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (d), is Pub. L. 90-629, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1320, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 39 (§2751 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2751 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 102-391, which directed the substitution of “(excluding salaries of the United States military personnel other than the Coast Guard)” for “(excluding salaries of the United States military personnel)”, was executed by making the substitution for “(excluding salaries of United States military personnel)”, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

1989—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 101-167 inserted “or the Arms Export Control Act” after “this part”.

Pub. L. 101-165 changed effective date from Oct. 1, 1982, to Oct. 1, 1989, and provided that costs would exclude rather than include salaries of U.S. military personnel.

1988—Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 100-690 inserted “Colombia,” after “Honduras.”

1985—Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 99-83 substituted “Pakistan, Tunisia, El Salvador, Honduras” for “For the fiscal year 1982 and the fiscal year 1983”.

1981—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 97-113 substituted provision authorizing the President to assign members of the Armed Forces of the United States to a foreign country to perform one or more enumerated functions for provision requiring specific Congressional authorization for military assistance groups, etc., to operate in a foreign country, with exception of regular units of the Armed Forces of the United States engaged in routine functions designed to bring about standardization of military operation and procedures between United States forces and defense treaty allies.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 97-113 substituted provision directing that advisory and training assistance conducted by military personnel assigned under this section be kept to an absolute minimum for provision authorizing the President to assign military personnel under international security programs to Portugal, Spain, Jordan, the Philippines, the Republic of Korea, Panama, Greece, Turkey, Indonesia, Thailand, Morocco, Egypt, and Saudi Arabia to perform logistics management, transportation, fiscal management, and contract administration of country programs, designated the maximum number assignable, and provided for reimbursement from Saudi Arabia. See subsec. (a) of this section.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 97-113 substituted provision designating the maximum number of personnel assignable, waiver of this limitation, and the procedures applicable for provision relating to assignment of military personnel to countries not specified in former subsec. (b) of this section for performance of accounting and other management functions, the maximum number assignable, and an exception to that number if the Chief of the Diplomatic Mission so requests.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 97-113 substituted provision directing that, effective Oct. 1, 1982, the entire costs of overseas management of international security assistance programs be charged or reimbursed from funds made available to carry out this part, other than costs paid directly for defense services under section 2761(a) of this title or reimbursed from charges for services collected from foreign governments pursuant to sections 2761(e) and 2792(b) of this title, for provision that the maximum number of members of the Armed Forces assignable for fiscal year 1979 to all countries not exceed 790.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 97-113 substituted “under this section” for “under subsection (b) or (c) of this section” and “to that country” for “in that country”.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 97-113 redesignated subsec. (h) as (f). Former subsec. (f), relating to performance of management functions by defense attachés if that President determined it was the most economic and efficient means of performing those functions, was struck out.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 97-113 struck out subsec. (g) which provided that the entire cost of overseas management of international security assistance programs under this section be charged or reimbursed from funds made available to carry out this part, including costs reimbursed from charges for services collected from foreign governments pursuant to sections 2761(e) and 2792(b) of this title, and that the prohibition of former subsec. (a) of this section and the numerical limitations of former subssecs. (b), (c), and (d) of this section not apply to Armed Forces members performing services for specific purposes and for fixed periods of time on a fully reimbursable basis under section 2761(a) of this title. See subsec. (d) of this section.

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 97-113 redesignated subsec. (h) as (f).

1980—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 96-533, §114(1), substituted “fiscal year 1981” for “fiscal year 1980”, substituted “Portugal, Spain, Jordan, the Philippines,” for “the countries specified in section 2312(a) of this title and in”, authorized assignment of military personnel for

programs in Egypt, and deleted from the list of countries eligible for such programs Iran and Kuwait.

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 96-533, §114(2), substituted “assigned to Saudi Arabia” for “assigned to Iran, Kuwait, and Saudi Arabia”, “assigned to such country” for “assigned to such countries” and “assigned to such country exceeds” for “assigned to each such country exceeds”.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 96-533, §114(3), substituted “may not exceed six more than the number of defense attachés” for “may not exceed the number of defense attachés” and “December 31, 1979” for “December 31, 1978”, and inserted “such countries and countries to which military personnel have been assigned pursuant to subsection (c) of this section” after “such countries”.

1979—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 96-92, §7(1), substituted “fiscal year 1980” for “fiscal year 1979” and authorized assignment of military personnel for programs in Greece.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 96-92, §7(2), substituted “December 31, 1978” for “December 31, 1977”.

1978—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 95-384, §9(a), substituted “fiscal year 1979” for “fiscal year 1978” and “Turkey, Indonesia, Thailand” for “Brazil”.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 95-384, §9(b), substituted “, including any such members serving on a reimbursable basis pursuant to subsection (b)(3) of this section, may not exceed 790 for the fiscal year 1979” for “may not exceed 865 for the fiscal year 1978”.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 95-384, §9(c), substituted “December 31, 1977, except that the President may assign an aggregate total of not to exceed eight additional defense attachés to such countries in order to perform overseas management functions under this subsection” for “December 31, 1976”.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 95-384, §9(d), inserted “for fixed” after “for specific purposes and”.

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 95-384, §9(e), added subsec. (h).

1977—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 95-92 substituted provisions requiring specific Congressional authorization for a military assistance advisory group, etc., to operate in any foreign country and set forth exceptions to such requirement, for provisions authorizing deductions of expenditures from military assistance appropriations during the period beginning July 1, 1976, and ending Sept. 30, 1977, under section 2312 of this title where under this section reimbursement is requested by the expending government agency or if the available funds are deposited in the Treasury as miscellaneous receipts.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 95-92 substituted provisions relating to assignment of military personnel to specified countries by President for implementation of management responsibilities during fiscal year 1978 under international security assistance programs, for provisions requiring specific Congressional authority for assignment of any military assistance advisory group, etc., to operate in any foreign country after Sept. 30, 1977, and provisions relating to assignment by the President of military personnel to diplomatic missions of the United States.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 95-92 substituted provisions relating to assignment of military personnel to nonspecified countries by President for performance of accounting and other management functions under international security assistance programs, for provisions limiting after Sept. 30, 1976, the number of military missions and groups to not more than 34.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 95-92 substituted provisions setting forth maximum number of military personnel assignable under subssecs. (b) and (c) of this section for fiscal year 1978 as 865, for provisions defining “military assistance advisory group, military mission, or other organization of United States military personnel performing similar military advisory functions under this chapter”.

Subsecs. (e) to (g). Pub. L. 95-92 added subssecs. (e) to (g).

1976—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94-329, §104(1), designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and substituted “Dur-

ing the period beginning July 1, 1976, and ending September 30, 1977” for “Effective July 1, 1976”.

Subsecs. (b) to (d). Pub. L. 94-329, §104(2), added subsecs. (b) to (d).

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of Defense by section 1-301(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56675, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2321j of this title.

### § 2321j. Modernization of defense capabilities of countries of NATO's southern flank

#### (a) Authority to transfer excess defense articles

Notwithstanding any other provision of law and subject to subsection (b) of this section, the President may transfer (1) to those member countries of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) on the southern flank of NATO which are eligible for United States security assistance and which are integrated into NATO's military structure, (2) to major non-NATO allies on the southern and southeastern flank of NATO which are eligible for United States security assistance, and (3) to those countries which, as of October 1, 1990, contributed armed forces to deter Iraqi aggression in the Arabian Gulf, and which either received Foreign Military Financing (FMF) assistance in fiscal year 1990 or are in the Near East Region and received Foreign Military Financing (FMF) assistance in fiscal year 1991 or fiscal year 1992, such excess defense articles as the President determines necessary to help modernize the defense capabilities of such countries. Such excess defense articles may be transferred without cost to the recipient countries. Transfers to recipient countries under this subsection shall be consistent with the policy framework for the Eastern Mediterranean region established in section 2373 of this title.

#### (b) Limitations on transfers

The President may transfer excess defense articles under this section only if—

- (1) the equipment is drawn from existing stocks of the Department of Defense;
- (2) no funds available to the Department of Defense for the procurement of defense equipment are expended in connection with the transfer;
- (3) the President determines that the transfer of the excess defense articles will not have an adverse impact on the military readiness of the United States; and
- (4) the President first considers the effects of the transfer of the excess defense articles on the national technology and industrial base,

particularly the extent, if any, to which the transfer reduces the opportunities of entities in the national technology and industrial base to sell new equipment to the country or countries to which the excess defense articles are transferred.

#### (c) Notification to committees of Congress

The President may not transfer excess defense articles under this section until 30 days after he has notified the Committees on Armed Services and Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Committees on Armed Services and Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives of the proposed transfer. This notification shall include a certification of the need for the transfer and an assessment of the impact of the transfer on the military readiness of the United States.

#### (d) Waiver of requirement for reimbursement of DOD expenses

Section 2392(d) of this title shall not apply with respect to transfers of excess defense articles under this section.

#### (e) Definition

As used in subsection (a) of this section, the term “member countries of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) on the southern flank of NATO” means Greece, Italy, Portugal, Spain, and Turkey.

#### (f) Duration of authority

The authority of this section shall be effective during fiscal years 1992 through 1996.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §516, as added Pub. L. 99-661, div. A, title XI, §1101, Nov. 14, 1986, 100 Stat. 3960; amended Pub. L. 100-202, §101(b) [title VIII, §8143], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1321-43, 1329-89; Pub. L. 101-189, div. A, title IX, §934, Nov. 29, 1989, 103 Stat. 1538; Pub. L. 101-513, title V, §589, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2057; Pub. L. 102-190, div. A, title X, §1049(a), Dec. 5, 1991, 105 Stat. 1469; Pub. L. 102-391, title V, §574, Oct. 6, 1992, 106 Stat. 1683; Pub. L. 102-484, div. A, title XIII, §1313, Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2548; Pub. L. 103-160, div. A, title XI, §1182(c)(2), title XIV, §1421, Nov. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 1772, 1829; Pub. L. 103-236, title VII, §731(a), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 502.)

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 2321j, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §516, as added Pub. L. 94-329, title I, §105, June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 732; amended Pub. L. 95-92, §§5(b), 7(b), Aug. 4, 1977, 91 Stat. 615, 617; Pub. L. 95-384, §7(b), Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 732; Pub. L. 96-92, §5(c), Oct. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 703; Pub. L. 96-533, title I, §112(d), Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3139, provided for termination of authorities contained in this part other than the authorities contained in sections 2318, 2321h, and 2321i of this title, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 97-113, title I, §110(d), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1526.

#### AMENDMENTS

- 1994—Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 103-236 added par. (4).  
 1993—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103-160, §1182(c)(2), made technical amendment to Pub. L. 102-484, §1313(2). See 1992 Amendment note below.  
 Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 103-160, §1421, inserted “or fiscal year 1992” after “fiscal year 1991”.  
 1992—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 102-484, §1313(4), which directed the amendment of subsec. (a) by striking “and those countries which received Foreign Military Fi-



nancing (FMF) assistance in fiscal year 1990 and which, as of October 1, 1990, contributed armed forces to deter Iraqi aggression in the Arabian Gulf,” could not be executed because that language did not appear subsequent to amendment by Pub. L. 102-391. See below.

Pub. L. 102-484, §1313(3), inserted “and (3) to those countries which, as of October 1, 1990, contributed armed forces to deter Iraqi aggression in the Arabian Gulf, and which either received Foreign Military Financing (FMF) assistance in fiscal year 1990 or are in the Near East Region and received Foreign Military Financing (FMF) assistance in fiscal year 1991,” after “southeastern flank of NATO which are eligible for United States security assistance.”

Pub. L. 102-484, §1313(2), as amended by Pub. L. 103-160, §1182(c)(2), substituted “structure, (2)” for “structure, and”.

Pub. L. 102-484, §1313(1), inserted “(1)” after “may transfer”.

Pub. L. 102-391 repealed the amendment by Pub. L. 101-513. See 1990 Amendment note below.

1991—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 102-190, §1049(a)(1), struck out “during the fiscal years 1987 through 1991,” before “the President may transfer”.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 102-190, §1049(a)(2), added subsec. (f).

1990—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 101-513, which directed amendment of subsec. (a) by inserting “and those countries which received Foreign Military Financing (FMF) assistance in fiscal year 1990 and which, as of October 1, 1990, contributed armed forces to deter Iraqi aggression in the Arabian Gulf,” after the second occurrence of the words “United States security assistance,” was repealed by Pub. L. 102-391. See 1992 Amendment note above.

1989—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 101-189 substituted “during the fiscal years 1987 through 1991” for “during the fiscal years 1987, 1988, and 1989” and inserted at end “Transfers to recipient countries under this subsection shall be consistent with the policy framework for the Eastern Mediterranean region established in section 2373 of this title.”

1987—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 100-202, §101(b) [title VIII, §8143(a), (b), (c)(1)], in first sentence substituted “, 1988, and 1989,” for “and 1988”, inserted “, and to major non-NATO allies on the southern and southeastern flank of NATO which are eligible for United States security assistance,” after “military structure”, and inserted “excess” before “defense articles”, and in second sentence inserted “excess defense” before “articles”.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 100-202, §101(b) [title VIII, §8143(c)(2)], in introductory text, inserted “excess” before “defense articles”.

Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 100-202, §101(b) [title VIII, §8143(c)(2)], inserted “excess” before “defense articles”.

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Armed Services of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on National Security of House of Representatives and Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Section 1182(c)(2) of Pub. L. 103-160 provided in part that the amendment made by that section is effective as of Oct. 23, 1992.

#### AVOIDING DUPLICATIVE AMENDMENTS

Section 1049(b) of Pub. L. 102-190, which provided that if the International Cooperation Act of 1991 was enacted and made the same amendments to this section as did section 1049(a) of Pub. L. 102-190, then the duplicative amendments enacted by section 1049(a) would not take effect, was repealed by Pub. L. 102-484, div. A, title X, §1053(7), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2502.

#### MODERNIZATION OF MILITARY CAPABILITIES OF CERTAIN COUNTRIES

Pub. L. 101-167, title V, §573, Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1246, as amended by Pub. L. 102-391, title V, §578(a), Oct. 6, 1992, 106 Stat. 1685, provided that:

“(a) AUTHORITY TO TRANSFER EXCESS DEFENSE ARTICLES.—

“(1) NATO SOUTHERN FLANK COUNTRIES.—The President may transfer—

“(A) to any NATO southern flank country which is eligible for United States security assistance and which is integrated into NATO’s military structure; and

“(B) to any major non-NATO ally on the southern and southeastern flank of NATO which is eligible for United States security assistance, such excess defense articles as may be necessary to help modernize the defense capabilities of such country.

“(2) MAJOR ILLICIT DRUG PRODUCING COUNTRIES.—Subject to subsection (f), the President may transfer to any country—

“(A) which is a major illicit drug producing country,

“(B) which has a democratic government, and

“(C) whose armed forces do not engage in a consistent pattern of gross violations of internationally recognized human rights, such excess defense articles as may be necessary to carry out subsection (f)(1).

“(3) TERMS OF TRANSFERS.—Excess defense articles may be transferred under this section without cost to the recipient country.

“(b) LIMITATIONS ON TRANSFERS.—The President may transfer excess defense articles under this section only if—

“(1) they are drawn from existing stocks of the Department of Defense;

“(2) funds available to the Department of Defense for the procurement of defense equipment are not expended in connection with the transfer; and

“(3) the President determines that the transfer of the excess defense articles will not have an adverse impact on the military readiness of the United States.

“(c) NOTIFICATION TO CONGRESS.—

“(1) ADVANCE NOTICE.—The President may not transfer excess defense articles under this section until thirty days after the President has provided notice of the proposed transfer to the committees specified in paragraph (2). This notification shall include—

“(A) a certification of the need for the transfer;

“(B) an assessment of the impact of the transfer on the military readiness of the United States; and

“(C) the value of the excess defense articles to be transferred.

“(2) COMMITTEES TO BE NOTIFIED.—Notice shall be provided pursuant to paragraph (1) to the Committee on Foreign Affairs [now Committee on International Relations], and the Committee on Appropriations of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Armed Services, the Committee on Foreign Relations, and the Committee on Appropriations of the Senate.

“(d) WAIVER OF REQUIREMENT FOR REIMBURSEMENT OF DOD EXPENSES.—Section 632(d) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2392(d)] does not apply with respect to transfers of excess defense articles under this section.

“(e) MAINTENANCE OF MILITARY BALANCE IN EASTERN MEDITERRANEAN.—

“(1) UNITED STATES POLICY.—The Congress intends that excess defense articles be made available under this section consistent with the United States policy, established by section 841 of the International Cooperation Act of 1989 [probably means section 841 of H.R. 2655, 101st Congress, which was not enacted], of maintaining the military balance in the Eastern Mediterranean.

“(2) MAINTENANCE OF BALANCE.—Accordingly, the President shall ensure that, over the four-year period beginning on October 1, 1992, the ratio of—

“(A) the value of excess defense articles made available for Turkey under this section, to

“(B) the value of excess defense articles made available for Greece under this section, closely approximates the ratio of—

“(i) the amount of foreign military financing provided for Turkey, to

“(ii) the amount of foreign military financing provided for Greece.

“(3) EXCEPTION TO REQUIREMENT.—This subsection shall not apply if either Greece or Turkey ceases to be eligible to receive excess defense articles under subsection (a).

“(f) MAJOR ILLICIT DRUG PRODUCING COUNTRIES IN LATIN AMERICA AND THE CARIBBEAN.—

“(1) PURPOSE.—Excess defense articles shall be transferred under subsection (a)(2) for the purpose of encouraging the military forces of an eligible country in Latin America and the Caribbean to participate with local law enforcement agencies in a comprehensive national antinarcotics program, conceived and developed by the government of that country, by conducting activities within that country and on the high seas to prevent the production, processing, trafficking, transportation, and consumption of illicit narcotic or psychotropic [sic] drugs or other controlled substances.

“(2) USES OF EXCESS DEFENSE ARTICLES.—Excess defense articles may be furnished to a country under subsection (a)(2) only if that country ensures that those excess defense articles will be used only in support of antinarcotics activities.

“(3) ROLE OF THE SECRETARY OF STATE.—The Secretary of State shall determine the eligibility of countries to receive excess defense articles under subsection (a)(2) and insure that any transfer is coordinated with other antinarcotics enforcement programs assisted by the United States Government.

“(4) LIMITATION.—The aggregate value of excess defense articles transferred to a country under subsection (a)(2) in any fiscal year may not exceed \$10,000,000.

“(g) DEFINITIONS.—As used in this section—

“(1) the term ‘excess defense article’ has the meaning given that term by section 644(g) [probably means section 644(g) of Pub. L. 87-195, which is classified to section 2403(g) of this title];

“(2) the term ‘made available’ means that a good faith offer is made by the United States to furnish the excess defense articles to a country;

“(3) the term ‘major non-NATO ally’ includes Australia, Egypt, Israel, Japan, and New Zealand;

“(4) the term ‘NATO’ means the North Atlantic Treaty Organization; and

“(5) the term ‘NATO southern flank countries’ means Greece, Italy, Portugal, Spain, and Turkey.”

[Functions of President under section 573 of Pub. L. 101-167, set out above, delegated to Secretary of Defense, see section 1-301(f) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.]

Provisions similar to those appearing in section 573(e) of Pub. L. 101-167, set out above, were contained in the following prior appropriation acts:

Pub. L. 100-461, title V, §569, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-43.

Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title V, §582], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-182.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2321l of this title.

### § 2321k. Modernization of counternarcotics capabilities of certain countries

#### (a) Authority to transfer excess defense articles

Subject to the limitations in this section, the President may transfer to a country—

(1) which is a major illicit drug producing country or a major drug-transit country in Latin America and the Caribbean,

(2) which has a democratic government, and

(3) whose armed forces do not engage in a consistent pattern of gross violations of internationally recognized human rights (as defined in section 2304(d)(1) of this title),

such excess defense articles as may be necessary to carry out subsection (b) of this section.

#### (b) Purpose

Excess defense articles may be transferred under subsection (a) of this section only for the purpose of encouraging the military forces and local law enforcement agencies of an eligible country in Latin America and the Caribbean to participate cooperatively in a comprehensive national antinarcotics program, conceived and developed by the government of that country, by conducting activities within that country and on the high seas to prevent the production, processing, trafficking, transportation, and consumption of illicit narcotic or psychotropic drugs or other controlled substances.

#### (c) Uses of excess defense articles

Excess defense articles may be furnished to a country under subsection (a) of this section only if that country ensures that those excess defense articles will be used primarily in support of antinarcotics activities.

#### (d) Role of the Secretary of State

The Secretary of State shall determine the eligibility of countries to receive excess defense articles under subsection (a) of this section. In accordance with section 2291(b) of this title, the Secretary shall ensure that the transfer of excess defense articles under subsection (a) of this section is coordinated with other antinarcotics enforcement programs assisted by the United States Government.

#### (e) Dollar limitation

The aggregate value of excess defense articles transferred to a country under subsection (a) of this section in any fiscal year may not exceed \$10,000,000.

#### (f) Conditions on transfers

The President may transfer excess defense articles under this section only if—

(1) they are drawn from existing stocks of the Department of Defense;

(2) funds available to the Department of Defense for the procurement of defense equipment are not expended in connection with the transfer;

(3) the President determines that the transfer of the excess defense articles will not have an adverse impact on the military readiness of the United States; and

(4) the President first considers the effects of the transfer of the excess defense articles on the national technology and industrial base, particularly the extent, if any, to which the transfer reduces the opportunities of entities in the national technology and industrial base to sell new equipment to the country or countries to which the excess defense articles are transferred.

**(g) Terms of transfers**

Excess defense articles may be transferred under this section without cost to the recipient country.

**(h) Waiver of requirement for reimbursement of DOD expenses**

Section 2392(d) of this title does not apply with respect to transfers of excess defense articles under this section.

**(i) Notification to Congress****(1) Advance notice**

The President may not transfer excess defense articles under this section until 15 days after the President has provided notice of the proposed transfer to the committees specified in paragraph (2). This notification shall include—

(A) a certification of the need for the transfer;

(B) an assessment of the impact of the transfer on the military readiness of the United States; and

(C) a statement of the value of the excess defense articles to be transferred.

**(2) Committees to be notified**

Notice shall be provided pursuant to paragraph (1) to the Committee on Armed Services, the Committee on Foreign Affairs, and the Committee on Appropriations of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Armed Services, the Committee on Foreign Relations, and the Committee on Appropriations of the Senate.

**(j) Limitation on use of other authorities to transfer excess defense articles**

The transfer authority provided in sections 2321l and 2321m of this title may not be exercised with respect to any major illicit drug producing country or major drug-transit country in Latin America or the Caribbean.

**(k) Excess Coast Guard property**

As used in this section, the term “excess defense articles” shall be deemed to include excess property of the Coast Guard, and the term “Department of Defense” shall be deemed, with respect to such excess property, to include the Coast Guard.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §517, as added Pub. L. 101-231, §5, Dec. 13, 1989, 103 Stat. 1957; amended Pub. L. 101-623, §15, Nov. 21, 1990, 104 Stat. 3357; Pub. L. 102-583, §9(a), Nov. 2, 1992, 106 Stat. 4934; Pub. L. 103-236, title VII, §731(b), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 502.)

## AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (f)(4). Pub. L. 103-236 added par. (4).

1992—Pub. L. 102-583, §9(a)(1), substituted “counter-narcotics capabilities of certain” for “military capabilities of certain major illicit drug producing” in section catchline.

Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 102-583, §9(a)(2), substituted “or a major drug-transit country” for “(as defined in section 2291(i)(2) of this title)”.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 102-583, §9(a)(3), inserted “and local law enforcement agencies” after “military forces”, substituted “cooperatively” for “with local law enforcement agencies”, and struck out “(as defined in section 2291(i)(3) of this title)” after “controlled substances”.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 102-583, §9(a)(4), substituted “section 2291(b) of this title” for “section 2291-3 of this title”.

Subsec. (i)(1). Pub. L. 102-583, §9(a)(5), substituted “15” for “30” before “days”.

Subsecs. (j), (k). Pub. L. 102-583, §9(a)(6), added subsecs. (j) and (k).

1990—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 101-623 substituted “primarily” for second reference to “only”.

## CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Armed Services of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on National Security of House of Representatives and Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

**§ 2321l. Natural resources and wildlife management****(a) Authority to transfer nonlethal excess defense articles and small arms**

Subject to the limitations in this section, the President may transfer nonlethal excess defense articles and small arms to friendly countries and to international organizations and private and voluntary organizations for the purposes contained in section 2151q of this title.

**(b) Limitation on transfers**

Transfers under this section shall be subject to the limitations contained in section 2321j(b) of this title.

**(c) Transportation**

The Department is authorized to transport nonlethal excess defense articles and small arms made available pursuant to this section without charge on a space available basis.

**(d) Waiver of requirements for reimbursement of DOD expenses**

Section 2392(d) of this title shall not apply with respect to transfers of nonlethal excess defense articles and small arms under this section or the transportation of such articles as authorized by subsection (c) of this section.

**(e) Notification to committees of Congress**

The President may not transfer nonlethal excess defense articles and small arms under this section until 30 days after he has notified the Committees on Appropriations of the proposed transfer. This notification shall include a certification of the need for the transfer and an assessment of the impact of the transfer on the military readiness of the United States. Transfers under this section shall also be subject to the notification requirements of section 2321j(c) of this title.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §518, as added Pub. L. 101-513, title V, §533(f), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2015.)

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2321k of this title.

**§ 2321m. Additional authorities relating to modernization of military capabilities****(a) Authority to transfer excess defense articles**

Notwithstanding any other provision of law (except title V of the National Security Act of

1947 [50 U.S.C. 413 et seq.] and subject to subsection (b) of this section, the President may transfer to countries for whom a foreign military financing program was justified for the fiscal year in which the transfer is authorized, such nonlethal excess defense articles as the President determines necessary to help modernize the defense capabilities of such countries, in accordance with the provisions of this section.

**(b) Limitations on transfers**

The President may transfer nonlethal excess defense articles under this section only if—

(1) the equipment is drawn from existing stocks of the Department of Defense;

(2) no funds available to the Department of Defense for the procurement of defense equipment are expended in connection with the transfer;

(3) the President determines that the transfer of the nonlethal excess defense articles will not have an adverse impact on the military readiness of the United States;

(4) the President determines that transferring the articles under the authority of this section is preferable to selling them, after taking into account the potential proceeds from, and likelihood of, such sales, and the comparative foreign policy benefits that may accrue to the United States as the result of either a transfer or sale; and

(5) the President first considers the effects of the transfer of the excess defense articles on the national technology and industrial base, particularly the extent, if any, to which the transfer reduces the opportunities of entities in the national technology and industrial base to sell new equipment to the country or countries to which the excess defense articles are transferred.

**(c) Notification to Congress**

The President shall notify the Committees on Appropriations, Armed Services, and Foreign Relations of the Senate, and the Committees on Appropriations, Armed Services, and Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives fifteen days before transferring nonlethal excess defense articles under subsection (a) of this section, in accordance with the regular notification procedures of those committees.

**(d) Waiver of requirement for reimbursement of DOD expenses**

Section 2392(d) of this title shall not apply with respect to transfers of nonlethal excess defense articles under this section.

**(e) Annual report**

Commencing in 1991, not later than December 15 of each year, the President shall transmit to the committees described in subsection (c) of this section a report with respect to the previous fiscal year which contains—

(1) a list of the countries to which the President has furnished nonlethal excess defense articles under the authority of this section; and

(2) the value of the excess nonlethal defense articles that were furnished to each such country.

**(f) Transportation and related costs**

(1) Except as provided in paragraph (2), funds available to the Department of Defense shall not

be expended for crating, packing, handling and transportation of nonlethal excess defense articles transferred under the authority of this section.

(2) Notwithstanding section 2392(d) of this title or any other provision of law, the President may direct the crating, packing, handling and transport of nonlethal excess defense articles without charge to a country if—

(A) that country has an agreement providing the United States with base rights in that country;

(B) that country is eligible for assistance from the International Development Association; and

(C) the nonlethal excess defense articles are being provided to that country under the authority of this section.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §519, as added Pub. L. 101-513, title V, §596(b), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2061; amended Pub. L. 103-236, title VII, §731(c), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 502.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The National Security Act of 1947, referred to in subsec. (a), is act July 26, 1947, ch. 343, 61 Stat. 495, as amended. Title V of the Act is classified generally to subchapter III (§413 et seq.) of chapter 15 of Title 50, War and National Defense. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 401 of Title 50 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (b)(5). Pub. L. 103-236 added par. (5).

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Armed Services of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on National Security of House of Representatives and Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

CONGRESSIONAL FINDINGS

Section 596(a) of Pub. L. 101-513 provided in part that: “The Congress finds that impending changes in the United States armed forces are likely to result in increased availability of excess defense articles to meet security assistance requirements. The Congress urges the President to make maximum use of available excess defense articles as a cost-effective supplement to funded security assistance programs to meet the legitimate defense requirements of eligible allies and friends. Accordingly, the President is urged to establish policies and procedures to ensure that excess assets are applied against such requirements.”

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2321k of this title.

**§ 2321n. Transfers of excess defense articles for international peacekeeping operations**

**(a) General authority**

The President may transfer to international and regional organizations of which the United States is a member such excess defense articles as the President determines necessary to support international peacekeeping operations and other activities and operations to maintain and restore international peace and security. Such

transfers shall be on such terms and conditions as the President may determine, consistent with this section.

**(b) Conditionality of authority**

**(1) In general**

The authority of subsection (a) of this section may not be exercised with respect to an international or regional organization until the United States has entered into a written agreement with that organization providing that the value of any excess defense articles transferred under this section shall be credited against United States assessed contributions to that organization. For purposes of this paragraph, the term “value” means such amount as may be agreed upon by the United States and the recipient organization, except that such amount may not be less than the value (as defined in section 2403(m)(1) of this title) of the articles transferred.

**(2) Crediting of transfers**

(A) The credit provided for pursuant to paragraph (1) shall be counted against United States assessed contributions to the recipient organization that are payable from the “Contribution to International Peacekeeping Activities” account of the Department of State, except to the extent such credit is counted, in accordance with subparagraph (B), against an assessed contribution payable from an account established within the Department of Defense.

(B) If—

- (i) an account is established within the Department of Defense for payment of a portion of United States assessed contributions for United Nations operations,
- (ii) excess defense articles are transferred under this section for a United Nations operation, and
- (iii) the United States assessed contribution for that operation is payable from that account,

the credit for those excess defense articles shall be counted against the assessed contribution payable from that account, but only to the extent that the value of the excess defense articles so transferred for that operation during a fiscal year does not exceed the total United States assessed contribution payable for that operation from that account during that fiscal year.

**(c) Limitations on transfers**

The President may transfer excess defense articles under this section only if—

- (1) they are drawn from existing stocks of the Department of Defense (or the Coast Guard);
- (2) funds available to the Department of Defense (or the Coast Guard) for the procurement of defense equipment are not expended in connection with the transfer;
- (3) the transfer of the excess defense articles will not have an adverse impact on the military readiness of the United States; and
- (4) the President has established procedures and requirements, comparable to those applicable under section 2314 of this title, to ensure that such excess defense articles will be used

only for purposes that have been agreed to by the United States.

**(d) Notification to Congress**

**(1) In general**

The President shall notify the designated congressional committees regarding any transfer of excess defense articles under this section in accordance with paragraph (2). This notification shall include—

- (A) a discussion of the need for the transfer;
- (B) an assessment of the impact of the transfer on the military readiness of the United States; and
- (C) a statement of—

- (i) the acquisition cost and the value (as defined in section 2403(m)(1) of this title) of the excess defense articles to be transferred, and
- (ii) the aggregate acquisition cost and the aggregate value (as so defined) of all excess defense articles for which notification has been provided under this subsection during that fiscal year with respect to transfers to the same organization under this section.

**(2) Timing of notice**

(A) The President shall notify the designated congressional committees pursuant to paragraph (1) at least 15 days before the excess defense articles are transferred under this section, except as provided in subparagraph (B).

(B) If the President determines that an unforeseen emergency requires the immediate transfer of excess defense articles under this section, the President—

- (i) may waive the requirement of subparagraph (A) that notice be provided at least 15 days in advance of the transfer; and
- (ii) shall promptly notify the designated congressional committees of such waiver and transfer.

**(3) Designated committees**

As used in this subsection, the term “designated congressional committees” means the Committee on Foreign Affairs, the Committee on Armed Services, and the Committee on Appropriations of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations, the Committee on Armed Services, and the Committee on Appropriations of the Senate.

**(e) Transportation and related costs**

**(1) In general**

Except as provided in paragraph (2), funds available to the Department of Defense shall not be expended for crating, packing, handling, and transporting excess defense articles transferred under the authority of this section.

**(2) Exception**

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the President may direct the crating, packing, handling, and transporting of excess defense articles without charge to an international or regional organization if the President determines that waiving such costs advances the foreign policy interests of the United States.

**(f) Waiver of requirement for reimbursement of DOD expenses**

Section 2392(d) of this title shall not apply with respect to transfers of excess defense articles under this section and to any costs of crating, packing, handling, and transporting incurred under subsection (e)(2) of this section.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §520, as added Pub. L. 103-236, title IV, §408, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 452.)

**CHANGE OF NAME**

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives and Committee on Armed Services of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on National Security of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

**§ 2322. Transferred**

**CODIFICATION**

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §521, formerly §514, as added Pub. L. 89-583, pt. II, §201(f), Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 803; renumbered §521, Pub. L. 90-137, pt. II, §201(o)(1), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 457, which related to administration of sales programs, was transferred to section 2341 of this title and subsequently repealed by Pub. L. 90-629, §45(a), Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1327.

**PART III—FOREIGN MILITARY SALES**

**§§ 2341 to 2343. Repealed. Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 4, §45(a), Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1327**

Section 2341, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §521, formerly §514, as added Pub. L. 89-583, pt. II, §201(f), Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 803; renumbered §521 and amended Pub. L. 90-137, pt. II, §201(o)(1), (3)-(7), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 457, provided for administration of sales programs involving defense articles and services. Subsec. (a) related to encouragement of regional arms control and disarmament agreements and discouragement of arms races; reimbursable basis of acquisitions; domestic procurement; and considerations. Subsec. (b) related to limitation on military assistance and sales for American Republics; and inclusion of assistance to inter-American military force under control of Organization of American States. Subsec. (c) related to furnishing of defense articles and services; conditions; and report to Congress. For subject matter of subsecs. (a) to (c), see sections 2751 and 2791, 2773, and 2753 of this title, respectively.

Section 2342, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §522, formerly §507 (a), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 437; amended Pub. L. 87-565, pt. II, §201(b), Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 259; Pub. L. 89-171, pt. II, §201(d)(1), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 657; renumbered §522 and amended Pub. L. 90-137, pt. II, §201(f), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 456, provided for sales of defense articles from stock and services, manner of payment, price of non-excess defense articles, and value of excess defense articles. See section 2761 of this title.

Section 2343, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §523, formerly §507(b), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 437; amended Pub. L. 87-565, pt. II, §201(c), Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 259; Pub. L. 88-633, pt. II, §201(c), Oct. 7, 1964, 78 Stat. 1011; Pub. L. 89-171, pt. II, §201(d)(2), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 657; renumbered §523 and amended Pub. L. 90-137, pt. II, §201(g), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 456, related to contracts for procurement for sales; undertakings; reimbursements; fixed-price sales agreements; prohibition against sales of articles available from commercial sources; and waiver of restrictions. See section 2762 of this title.

**EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL**

Repeal effective July 1, 1968, see section 41 of Pub. L. 90-629, set out as an Effective Date note under section 2751 of this title.

**SAVINGS PROVISION**

Section 46 of Pub. L. 90-629 provided that: "Except as may be expressly provided to the contrary in this Act [see Short Title note set out under section 2751 of this title], all determinations, authorizations, regulations, orders, contracts, agreements, and other actions issued, undertaken, or entered into under authority of any provision of law repealed by section 45(a) [repealing sections 2341 to 2343, 2344(b)(3), 2345, 2394(g), and 2399a of this title] shall continue in full force and effect until modified by appropriate authority."

**§ 2344. Reimbursements**

**(a) Separate fund account; transfers to such account**

Whenever funds made available for use under subchapter II of this chapter have been or are used to furnish military assistance on cash or credit terms, United States dollar repayments, including dollar proceeds derived from the sale of foreign currency repayments to any agency or program of the United States Government, receipts received from the disposition of evidences of indebtedness and charges (including fees and premiums) or interest collected shall be credited to a separate fund account, and shall be available until expended solely for the purpose of financing sales and guaranties, including the overhead costs thereof, and, notwithstanding any provision of law relating to receipts and credits accruing to the United States Government, repayments in foreign currency may be used to carry out subchapter II of this chapter. Such amounts of the appropriations made available under subchapter II of this chapter (including unliquidated balances of funds heretofore obligated for financing sales and guaranties) as may be determined by the President shall be transferred to, and merged with, the separate fund account.

**(b) Termination of account; special account for discharge of Federal liabilities and obligations; general fund for excess moneys**

(1) The special fund account established under subsection (a) of this section shall terminate as of the end of June 30, 1968, or on such earlier date as may be selected by the President.

(2) Upon the termination of such fund account pursuant to paragraph (1), all of the assets of such fund account (including loans and other payments receivable) shall be transferred to a special account in the Treasury, which special account shall be available solely for the purpose of discharging outstanding liabilities and obligations of the United States arising out of credit sales agreements entered into, and guaranties issued, under subchapter II of this chapter prior to June 30, 1968. Any moneys in such special account in excess of the aggregate United States dollar amount of such liabilities and obligations shall be transferred from time to time to the general fund of the Treasury.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §524, formerly §508, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 437; Pub. L. 89-171, pt. II, §201(e), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 657; Pub. L. 89-583, pt. II, §201(c), Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 803; renumbered §524 and amended Pub. L. 90-137, pt. II, §201(h), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 456; Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 4, §45(a), Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1327.)

REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER II DEEMED TO EXCLUDE  
CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter II of this chapter are deemed to exclude parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II, and references to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 2316 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

1968—Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 90-629 repealed provisions of par. (3) which related to appropriations for financing sales, dollar value payments, general fund for payments, and exempt transactions, and is now covered by section 2763 of this title.

1967—Pub. L. 90-137 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsec. (b).

1966—Pub. L. 89-583 provided for transfer to and merger with the separate fund account of such amounts of available appropriations (including unliquidated balances of funds heretofore obligated for financing sales and guarantees) as is determined by the President.

1965—Pub. L. 89-171 inserted “receipts received from the disposition of evidences of indebtedness and charges (including fees and premiums) or interest collected” and substituted “have been or are used” for “are used” and “financing sales and guaranties, including the overhead costs thereof” for “furnishing further military assistance on cash or credit terms.”

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1968 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 90-629 effective July 1, 1968, see section 41 of Pub. L. 90-629, set out as an Effective Date note under section 2751 of this title.

SAVINGS PROVISION

Determinations, authorizations, regulations, orders, contracts, agreements, and other actions issued, undertaken, or entered into under authority of any provision of former subsec. (b)(3) of this section as continuing in full force and effect until modified by appropriate authority, see section 46 of Pub. L. 90-629, set out as a note under former section 2341 of this title.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of Defense pursuant to section 1-301(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56675, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

INCREASES IN MILITARY ASSISTANCE PROGRAMS; REPORTS TO CONGRESS ON PRESIDENTIAL DETERMINATIONS

Pub. L. 91-194, title I, §100, Feb. 9, 1970, 84 Stat. 7, in part, limited increases in the military assistance program for any country to twenty per cent of the amount justified to Congress unless the President determined that such an increase was essential to the national interest of the United States and reported such determination to the Congress within thirty days after each such determination.

Similar provisions were contained in Pub. L. 90-249, title I, §100, Jan. 2, 1968, 81 Stat. 937; Pub. L. 90-581, title I, §100, Oct. 17, 1968, 82 Stat. 1138.

EXPENDITURES BY UNDERDEVELOPED COUNTRIES FOR WEAPONS SYSTEMS; PRESIDENTIAL DETERMINATION; REPORT TO CONGRESS

Pub. L. 91-194, title I, §119, Feb. 9, 1970, 84 Stat. 10, directed the President to withhold economic assistance in an amount equivalent to the amount spent by any underdeveloped country for the purchase of sophisticated weapons systems from any country other than

certain enumerated countries, unless the President determined that such a purchase was important to the national security of the United States and reported such determination to Congress within thirty days after each such determination.

Similar provisions were contained in Pub. L. 90-249, title I, §119, Jan. 2, 1968, 81 Stat. 940; Pub. L. 90-581, title I, §119, Oct. 17, 1968, 82 Stat. 1141.

ARMS RACES AND WEAPONS SYSTEMS RESTRAINTS; PROHIBITIONS AGAINST DIVERSION OF RESOURCES FOR ECONOMIC AND AGRICULTURAL DEVELOPMENT TO MILITARY PURPOSES

Pub. L. 91-194, title I, §120, Feb. 9, 1970, 84 Stat. 10, provided that:

“(a) In order to restrain arms races and proliferation of sophisticated weapons, and to ensure that resources intended for economic development are not diverted to military purposes, the President shall take into account before furnishing development loans, Alliance loans, or supporting assistance to any country under this Act [Pub. L. 91-194], and before making sales under the Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954, as amended [section 1691 et seq. of Title 7, Agriculture]:

“(1) the percentage of the recipient or purchasing country’s budget which is devoted to military purposes,

“(2) the degree to which the recipient or purchasing country is using its foreign exchange resources to acquire military equipment; and

“(3) the amount spent by the recipient or purchasing country for the purchase of sophisticated weapons systems, such as missile systems and jet aircraft for military purposes, from any country.

“(b) The President shall report annually to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate his actions in carrying out this provision.”

**§ 2345. Repealed. Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 4, § 45(a), Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1327**

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §525, formerly §§503(e), 509(b), as added Pub. L. 88-633, pt. II, §201(a), (d), Oct. 7, 1964, 78 Stat. 1011; amended Pub. L. 89-171, pt. II, §201(f), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 657; renumbered §525 and amended Pub. L. 90-137, pt. II, §201(b)(3), (i)(2), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 455, 457, provided for guaranties until June 30, 1968. See section 2764 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective July 1, 1968, see section 41 of Pub. L. 90-629, set out as an Effective Date note under section 2751 of this title.

SAVINGS PROVISION

Determinations, authorizations, regulations, orders, contracts, agreements, and other actions issued, undertaken, or entered into under authority of any provision of former section 2345 of this title as continuing in full force and effect until modified by appropriate authority, see section 46 of Pub. L. 90-629, set out as a note under former section 2341 of this title.

PART IV—ECONOMIC SUPPORT FUND

PART REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This part is referred to in sections 290f, 2077, 2151n, 2151u, 2151x, 2151x-1, 2151x-2, 2184, 2185, 2186, 2275, 2291, 2295b, 2304, 2348a, 2354, 2355, 2357, 2358, 2361, 2362, 2368, 2369, 2371, 2385, 2395, 2397, 2399c, 2399d, 2421, 2421d, 2427, 2430c, 2799aa, 2799aa-1, 3403, 5412, 5442, 5451, 5452, 5453, 5854 of this title; title 12 section 635r; title 20 section 226.

**§ 2346. Authority**

**(a) Policy requirements for assistance**

The Congress recognizes that, under special economic, political, or security conditions, the

national interests of the United States may require economic support for countries or in amounts which could not be justified solely under part I of subchapter I of this chapter or, in the case of countries in sub-Saharan Africa, part X of subchapter I of this chapter. In such cases, the President is authorized to furnish assistance to countries and organizations, on such terms and conditions as he may determine, in order to promote economic or political stability. To the maximum extent feasible, the President shall provide assistance under this part consistent with the policy directions, purposes, and programs of subchapter I of this chapter.

**(b) Responsibility for policy decisions and justifications**

The Secretary of State shall be responsible for policy decisions and justifications for economic support programs under this part, including determinations of whether there will be an economic support program for a country and the amount of the program for each country. The Secretary shall exercise this responsibility in cooperation with the Administrator of the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter.

**(c) Detailed justification for uses and purposes of funds**

As part of the annual presentation materials for foreign assistance submitted to the Congress, the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter II of this chapter shall provide a detailed justification for the uses and the purposes of the funds provided under this part. Such material shall include, but not be limited to, information concerning the amounts and kinds of cash grant transfers, the amounts and kinds of budgetary and balance-of-payments support provided, and the amounts and kinds of project assistance provided with funds made available under this part.

**(d) Funds for commodity import programs or other program assistance**

To the maximum extent feasible, funds made available pursuant to this part for commodity import programs or other program assistance shall be used to generate local currencies, not less than 50 percent of which shall be available to support activities consistent with the objectives of sections 2151a through 2151d of this title, and administered by the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter.

**(e) Availability of funds**

Amounts appropriated to carry out this part shall be available for economic programs only and may not be used for military or paramilitary purposes.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, § 531, as added Pub. L. 99-83, title II, § 201(a), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 210; amended Pub. L. 101-513, title V, § 562(d)(8), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2031.)

SUPERSEDURE OF SUBSECTION (d)

*Pub. L. 103-87, title V, § 537(a)(5), Sept. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 956, provided that subsection (d) of this section is superseded by section 537(a) of*

*Pub. L. 103-87, set out as a note under section 2359 of this title.*

REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE THIS AND CERTAIN OTHER PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II, AND REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER II DEEMED TO EXCLUDE SUCH PARTS

Pub. L. 92-226, pt. II, § 202(b), Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 27, provided that: "Chapter 4 of part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [part IV of subchapter I of this chapter (sections 2241 to 2243 of this title)] is hereby repealed. References to such chapter [4 of part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (former sections 2241 to 2243 of this title)] or any sections thereof shall hereafter [on and after Feb. 7, 1972] be deemed to be references to chapter 4 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as added by subsection (a) of this section [this part], or to appropriate sections thereof. All references to part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [subchapter I of this chapter] shall hereafter be deemed to be references also to chapter 4 of part II [this part], and all references to part II of such Act [subchapter II of this chapter] shall be deemed not to include chapter 4 of such part II [this part]".

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts VI (§ 2348 et seq.) and VIII (§ 2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

REFERENCES TO PART I DEEMED TO INCLUDE SECTION 2293

References to part I of subchapter I of this chapter, including references to sections 2151a through 2151d of this title, deemed to include a reference to section 2293 of this title. See section 2293(d)(1) of this title.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 2346, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, § 531, as added Pub. L. 92-226, pt. II, § 202(a), Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 26; amended Pub. L. 95-92, § 8(a), Aug. 4, 1977, 91 Stat. 617; Pub. L. 95-384, § 10(a), Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 733; 1979 Reorg. Plan No. 2, § 6(b)(1), eff. Oct. 1, 1979, 44 F.R. 41166, 93 Stat. 1379; Pub. L. 96-92, § 8(a), Oct. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 703; Pub. L. 96-533, title II, § 201, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3142; Pub. L. 97-113, title II, § 201, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1528, authorized President to furnish assistance to countries and organizations to promote economic or political stability, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 99-83, title II, § 201(a), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 210.

AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 101-513 inserted "or, in the case of countries in sub-Saharan Africa, part X of subchapter I of this chapter" after "part I of subchapter I of this chapter".

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as an Effective Date of 1985 Amendment note under section 2151-1 of this title.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS; ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Functions of President under this part, insofar as they relate to policy decisions and justifications for economic support programs under this part, delegated to Secretary of State to be exercised in cooperation with Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency by section 1-201(a)(7) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56674, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title, and funds available to President for carrying out this part, with specified exceptions, allocated to Director by section 1-801(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, 44 F.R. 56678.

REPORTS ON ECONOMIC CONDITIONS PREVAILING IN EGYPT, ISRAEL, TURKEY, AND PORTUGAL

Section 1205 of Pub. L. 99-83 provided that:



“(a) EXTERNAL DEBT BURDEN OF CERTAIN COUNTRIES RECEIVING UNITED STATES ASSISTANCE.—The Congress finds that the Governments of Egypt, Israel, Turkey, and Portugal each have an enormous external debt burden which may be made more difficult by virtue of financing provided for those governments under various United States assistance programs.

“(b) ANNUAL REPORTS ON ECONOMIC CONDITIONS.—In order to assist the Congress in examining United States assistance for these countries, the President shall report to Speaker of the House of Representatives and to the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, not later than January 15 of each year, regarding economic conditions prevailing in Egypt, Israel, Turkey, and Portugal which may affect their respective ability to meet their international debt obligations and to stabilize their economies.”

[Functions of the President under section 1205(b) of Pub. L. 99-83, set out above, delegated to the Director of the International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, see section 1-102(a)(5), (e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.]

REFERENCES TO SECURITY SUPPORTING ASSISTANCE AS REFERENCES TO ASSISTANCE UNDER PART IV OF SUBCHAPTER II OF THIS CHAPTER

Section 10(b)(6) of Pub. L. 95-384 provided that: “After September 30, 1978, any reference in any law to security supporting assistance shall be deemed to be a reference to assistance under chapter 4 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [this part].”

SECURITY SUPPORTING ASSISTANCE PROGRAM FOR EGYPT

Section 9 of Pub. L. 95-92, as amended by Pub. L. 95-384, §29(c)(2)(A), Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 747, provided that: “It is the sense of the Congress that the security supporting assistance program for Egypt plays an important role in the Middle East peace effort and that the Executive branch should concentrate its efforts in order to make the program a success.”

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 5854 of this title; title 12 section 635r.

**§ 2346a. Authorizations of appropriations**

**(a) Recipients and purposes of funds**

There are authorized to be appropriated to the President to carry out the purposes of this part—

(1) \$2,015,000,000 for the fiscal year 1986 and \$2,015,000,000 for the fiscal year 1987 for the following countries signing the Camp David agreement: Israel and Egypt; and

(2) \$1,785,000,000 for the fiscal year 1986 and \$1,785,000,000 for the fiscal year 1987 for assistance under this part for recipients or purposes other than the countries referred to in paragraph (1).

**(b) Availability of amounts**

Amounts appropriated to carry out this part are authorized to remain available until expended.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §532, as added Pub. L. 99-83, title II, §201(a), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 211.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 2346a, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, 532, as added Pub. L. 97-113, title II, §202, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1529; amended Pub. L. 98-151, §101(b)(2), Nov. 14, 1983, 97 Stat. 970, earmarked specific funds for Israel and

Egypt, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 99-83, title II, §201(a), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 210.

Another prior section 2346a, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §532, as added Pub. L. 96-533, title II, §202, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3142, related to Middle East programs and use of fiscal year funds, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 97-113, title II, §202, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1529.

Another prior section 2346a, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §532, as added Pub. L. 92-226, pt. II, §202(a), Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 26; amended Pub. L. 93-189, §13(1), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 722; Pub. L. 93-559, §18, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1800; Pub. L. 94-329, title V, §501(a), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 762; Pub. L. 95-92, §8(b), Aug. 4, 1977, 91 Stat. 617; Pub. L. 95-384, §10(a), Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 733; Pub. L. 96-92, §8(b), Oct. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 703, related to Middle East program, providing policy requirements, availability of funds, amount of grants, and cash transfers, regional programs, comprehensive peace settlement and process of peace, and assistance to Syria, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 96-533, title II, §202, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3142.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as an Effective Date of 1985 Amendment note under section 2151-1 of this title.

TERMINATION OF ASSISTANCE PROGRAMS TO SYRIA

Pub. L. 98-164, title X, §1004, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1057, provided that:

“(a) After the enactment of this section [Nov. 22, 1983], funds available to the Agency for International Development may not be used for any payment or reimbursement of any kind to the Government of Syria or for the delivery of any goods or services of any kind to the Government of Syria.

“(b) The Administrator of the Agency for International Development shall deobligate all funds which have been obligated for Syria under the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [this chapter] prior to the enactment of this section [Nov. 22, 1983], except that—

“(1) such funds may continue to be used to finance the training or studies outside of Syria of students whose course of study began before the enactment of this section;

“(2) the Administrator may adopt as a contract of the United States Government any contract with a United States or third-country contractor which would otherwise be terminated pursuant to this subsection, and may assume in whole or in part any liabilities arising under such contract, except that the authority provided by this paragraph may be exercised only to the extent that budget authority is available to meet the obligations of the United States under such contracts; and

“(3) amounts certified pursuant to section 1311 of the Supplemental Appropriation Act, 1955 [31 U.S.C. 1108(c), 1501, 1502(a)], as having been obligated for Syria under chapter 4 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [this part] shall continue to be available until expended to meet necessary expenses arising from the termination of assistance programs for Syria pursuant to this subsection.”

Section 101(b)(1) of Pub. L. 98-151 provided that: “None of the funds heretofore appropriated or otherwise made available for Syria for the purposes of carrying out the provisions of chapter 4 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [this part] shall be expended after the date of enactment of this joint resolution [Nov. 14, 1983]. The Administrator of the Agency for International Development is directed to terminate the economic assistance program to Syria and to deobligate all funds heretofore obligated for assistance to Syria, except that such funds may continue to be available to finance the training or studies outside of Syria of students whose course of study or training program began before enactment of this joint resolution. The Administrator of the Agency for International Development is authorized to adopt as a contract of the United

States Government, and assume any liabilities arising thereunder (in whole or in part), any contract with a United States contractor which had been funded by the Agency for International Development prior to the date of enactment of this joint resolution. Amounts certified pursuant to section 1311 of the Supplemental Appropriations Act, 1955 [31 U.S.C. 1108(c), 1501, 1502(a)], as having been obligated against appropriations heretofore made pursuant to chapter 4 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (and predecessor legislation) for Syria are hereby continued available until expended to meet necessary expenses arising from the termination under this subsection of assistance programs for Syria authorized by such chapter: *Provided*, That this shall not be construed as permitting payments or reimbursements of any kind to the Government of Syria."

NEGOTIATIONS BETWEEN ISRAEL AND EGYPT;  
PROMOTION, ETC.

Section 28 of Pub. L. 95-384 provided that:

"(a) The Congress finds that—

"(1) a lasting settlement of the Arab-Israel conflict is vital to United States national interests as well as to the interests of the countries of the region;

"(2) support for a strong and secure Israel and the maintenance for this purpose of Israel's effective defense capabilities as essential to peace remains a fundamental tenet of United States foreign policy;

"(3) direct, face-to-face negotiations between Israel and Egypt without preconditions is an historic opening for peace, and the support of such negotiations by other moderate Arab countries, can best promote a peace settlement based on mutual concessions and accommodations;

"(4) the establishment of secure, recognized, and defensible borders between Israel and its neighbors will discourage hostilities; and

"(5) full, normalized relations between Israel and its Arab neighbors, including trade, travel, tourism, communications, and diplomatic relations are vital for peace.

"(b) It is the sense of the Congress that the Government of the United States should continue to promote direct negotiations between Israel and Egypt and to encourage other Arab countries to enter into negotiations leading to peace treaties with Israel.

"(c) It is further the sense of the Congress that the United States should be responsive to Israel's economic needs and defense requirements, including the provision of additional advanced aircraft, in order to maintain Israel's defense capability which is essential to peace."

**§ 2346b. Emergency assistance**

(a) Of the funds appropriated to carry out this part, up to \$75,000,000 for the fiscal year 1986 and up to \$75,000,000 for the fiscal year 1987 may be made available for emergency use under this part when the national interests of the United States urgently require economic support to promote economic or political stability.

(b) Notwithstanding any provision of this part or of an appropriations Act (including a joint resolution making continuing appropriations) which earmarks funds available to carry out this part for a specific country or purpose, up to 5 percent of each amount so earmarked may be used to carry out this section.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, § 533, formerly § 535, as added Pub. L. 97-113, title II, § 202, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1530; renumbered § 533 and amended Pub. L. 99-83, title II, § 201(b), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 211.)

CODIFICATION

Section was classified to section 2346d of this title prior to renumbering by Pub. L. 99-83.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 2346b, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, § 533, as added Pub. L. 97-113, title II, § 202, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1530, related to grants for eastern Mediterranean programs, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 99-83, title II, § 201(a), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 210.

Another prior section 2346b, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, § 533, as added Pub. L. 96-533, title II, § 202, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3143, related to Central American economic support, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 97-113, § 202, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1529.

Another prior section 2346b, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, § 533, as added Pub. L. 95-92, § 8(c), Aug. 4, 1977, 91 Stat. 618; amended Pub. L. 95-384, § 10(a), Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 735; Pub. L. 96-92, § 8(c), Oct. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 704, provided for a Southern Africa economic support program, including availability of funds and assistance requirements and limitations, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 96-533, title II, § 202, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3142.

Another prior section 2346b, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, § 533, as added Pub. L. 92-226, pt. II, § 202(a), Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 27, provided for a Vietnam special dollar account for coverage of United States refund claims, amount in account, and maintenance of dollar level, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 93-189, § 13(2), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 722.

AMENDMENTS

1985—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99-83, § 202(b)(1), substituted "1986" and "1987" for "1982" and "1983", respectively.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

**§ 2346c. Administration of justice**

**(a) Authorization of assistance; purposes**

The President may furnish assistance under this part to countries and organizations, including national and regional institutions, in order to strengthen the administration of justice in countries in Latin America and the Caribbean.

**(b) Scope of assistance**

Assistance under this section may only include—

(1) support for specialized professional training, scholarships, and exchanges for continuing legal education;

(2) programs to enhance prosecutorial and judicial capabilities and protection for participants in judicial cases;

(3) notwithstanding section 2420 of this title—

(A) programs to enhance professional capabilities to carry out investigative and forensic functions conducted under judicial or prosecutorial control;

(B) programs to assist in the development of academic instruction and curricula for training law enforcement personnel;

(C) programs to improve the administrative and management capabilities of law enforcement agencies, especially their capabilities relating to career development, personnel evaluation, and internal discipline procedures; and

(D) programs, conducted through multi-lateral or regional institutions, to improve penal institutions and the rehabilitation of offenders;

(4) strengthening professional organizations in order to promote services to members and

the role of the bar in judicial selection, enforcement of ethical standards, and legal reform;

(5) increasing the availability of legal materials and publications;

(6) seminars, conferences, and training and educational programs to improve the administration of justice and to strengthen respect for the rule of law and internationally recognized human rights; and

(7) revision and modernization of legal codes and procedures.

**(c) Availability of funds**

Not more than \$20,000,000 of the funds made available to carry out this part for any fiscal year shall be available to carry out this section, in addition to amounts otherwise available for such purposes.

**(d) Obligation of funds**

Funds may not be obligated for assistance under this section unless the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate are notified of the amount and nature of the proposed assistance at least 15 days in advance in accordance with the procedures applicable to reprogrammings pursuant to section 2394-1 of this title.

**(e) Participation of Defense personnel in training prohibited; availability of funds; expiration of authority**

Personnel of the Department of Defense and members of the United States Armed Forces may not participate in the provision of training under this section. Of the funds made available to carry out this section, not more than \$10,000,000 may be made available in fiscal year 1991 to carry out the provisions of subsection (b)(3) of this section. The authority of this section shall expire on September 30, 1991.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §534, as added Pub. L. 99-83, title VII, §712, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 244; amended Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title V, §579], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-181; Pub. L. 101-167, title II, Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1206; Pub. L. 101-513, title II, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1990; Pub. L. 101-623, §2(b)(6), Nov. 21, 1990, 104 Stat. 3351.)

**PRIOR PROVISIONS**

A prior section 2346c, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §534, as added Pub. L. 97-113, title II, §202, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1530, prohibited the use of funds for nuclear facilities in foreign countries except under certain circumstances, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 99-83, title II, §201(a), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 210.

Another prior section 2346c, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §534, as added Pub. L. 95-384, §10(a), Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 735; amended Pub. L. 96-92, §8(d), Oct. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 704, provided economic support for Turkey and Cyprus in amounts of \$98,000,000 and \$15,000,000 for fiscal year 1980, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 96-533, title II, §202, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3142.

**AMENDMENTS**

1990—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 101-623, §2(b)(6)(A), which directed the substitution of “\$10,000,000 may be made available in fiscal year 1991” for “\$7,000,000 may be made available in fiscal year 1990”, was executed by making the substitution for “\$7,000,000 may be made available in fiscal year 1991” to reflect the probable in-

tent of Congress and the intervening substitution of “fiscal year 1991” for “fiscal year 1990” by Pub. L. 101-513. See below.

Pub. L. 101-623, §2(b)(6)(B), and Pub. L. 101-513, amended subsec. (e) identically, substituting “September 30, 1991” for “September 30, 1990”.

Pub. L. 101-513 substituted “fiscal year 1991” for “fiscal year 1990”.

1989—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 101-167 substituted “fiscal year 1990” for “each of fiscal years 1988 and 1989” and “September 30, 1990” for “September 30, 1989”.

1987—Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title V, §579(a)], amended par. (3) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (3) read as follows: “notwithstanding section 2420 of this title, programs to enhance investigative capabilities, conducted under judicial or prosecutorial control;”.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title V, §579(b)], amended subsec. (e) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (e) read as follows: “The authority of this section shall expire on September 30, 1987.”

**CHANGE OF NAME**

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

**EFFECTIVE DATE**

Section effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as an Effective Date of 1985 Amendment note under section 2151-1 of this title.

**DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS**

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of State to be exercised in cooperation with Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency by section 1-201(a)(7) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56674, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

**ANTI-NARCOTICS UPDATE**

Pub. L. 102-145, §124, as added by Pub. L. 102-266, §102, Apr. 1, 1992, 106 Stat. 97, provided that: “The program authorized by section 534 of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2346c] may continue from funds appropriated by this joint resolution for foreign operations, export financing, and related programs, notwithstanding the last sentence of section 534(e) of that Act: *Provided*, That such programs may include the protection of participants in judicial cases, notwithstanding section 660 of that Act [22 U.S.C. 2420]: *Provided further*, That, notwithstanding sections 534(c) and 660 of that Act, (1) up to \$10,000,000 to provide support for a professional civilian police force for Panama, except that such assistance shall not include more than \$5,000,000 for the procurement of equipment for law enforcement purposes, and shall not include lethal equipment, and (2) up to \$16,000,000 for Bolivia, Colombia, and Peru.”

**SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS**

This section is referred to in sections 2295b, 5402 of this title.

**§2346d. Repealed. Pub. L. 103-149, §4(a)(3)(B), Nov. 23, 1993, 107 Stat. 1505**

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §535, as added Pub. L. 99-440, title V, §511(a), Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1111; amended Pub. L. 99-631, §1(b)(3), Nov. 7, 1986, 100 Stat. 3519, related to economic support for disadvantaged South Africans.

**§§ 2346e to 2346i. Repealed. Pub. L. 99-83, title II, §201(a), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 210**

Section 2346e, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §536, as added Pub. L. 97-113, title II, §202, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1531, related to special requirements fund.

A prior section 2346e, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §536, as added Pub. L. 96-257, §2, May 31, 1980, 94 Stat. 422, provided for Central American economic support for fiscal year 1980, in amount of \$80,000,000, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 96-533, title II, §202, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3142.

Section 2346f, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §537, as added Pub. L. 97-113, title II, §202, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1531, related to programs for Tunisia.

Section 2346g, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §538, as added Pub. L. 97-113, title II, §202, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1531, related to programs for Costa Rica.

Section 2346h, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §539, as added Pub. L. 97-113, title II, §202, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1531, related to programs for Nicaragua.

Section 2346i, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §540, as added Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, §708(c), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1546, related to programs for Poland.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as an Effective Date of 1985 Amendment note under section 2151-1 of this title.

### PART V—INTERNATIONAL MILITARY EDUCATION AND TRAINING

#### PART REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This part is referred to in sections 2304, 2314, 2321i, 2349aa-2, 2394-1, 2403, 2761, 2776 of this title; title 10 sections 168, 9415.

#### § 2347. General authority

The President is authorized to furnish, on such terms and conditions consistent with this chapter as the President may determine (but whenever feasible on a reimbursable basis), military education and training to military and related civilian personnel of foreign countries. Such civilian personnel shall include foreign governmental personnel of ministries other than ministries of defense, and may also include legislators, if the military education and training would (i) contribute to responsible defense resource management, (ii) foster greater respect for and understanding of the principle of civilian control of the military, (iii) contribute to cooperation between military and law enforcement personnel with respect to counternarcotics law enforcement efforts, or (iv) improve military justice systems and procedures in accordance with internationally recognized human rights. Such training and education may be provided through—

- (1) attendance at military educational and training facilities in the United States (other than Service academies) and abroad;
- (2) attendance in special courses of instruction at schools and institutions of learning or research in the United States and abroad; and
- (3) observation and orientation visits to military facilities and related activities in the United States and abroad.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §541, as added Pub. L. 94-329, title I, §106(a), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 732; amended Pub. L. 101-513, title III, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1997; Pub. L. 102-583, §10, Nov. 2, 1992, 106 Stat. 4934.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to

the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1992—Pub. L. 102-583, in introductory provisions, inserted “, and may also include legislators,” after “ministries of defense” and substituted “(iii) contribute to cooperation between military and law enforcement personnel with respect to counternarcotics law enforcement efforts, or (iv)” for “or (iii)”.

1990—Pub. L. 101-513 inserted after first sentence “Such civilian personnel shall include foreign governmental personnel of ministries other than ministries of defense if the military education and training would (i) contribute to responsible defense resource management, (ii) foster greater respect for and understanding of the principle of civilian control of the military, or (iii) improve military justice systems and procedures in accordance with internationally recognized human rights.”

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS; ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of Defense and funds available to President for carrying out this subchapter, with specified exceptions, allocated to Secretary by sections 1-301(a) and 1-801(b) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56675, 56678, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

#### FUNDS MADE AVAILABLE PURSUANT TO OTHER PROVISIONS OF LAW

Section 106(d) of Pub. L. 94-329 provided that: “Funds made available pursuant to other provisions of law for foreign military educational and training activities shall remain available for obligation and expenditure for their original purposes in accordance with the provisions of law originally applicable to those purposes or in accordance with the provisions of law currently applicable to those purposes.”

#### § 2347a. Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the President to carry out the purposes of this part \$56,221,000 for fiscal year 1986 and \$56,221,000 for fiscal year 1987.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §542, as added Pub. L. 94-329, title I, §106(a), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 732; amended Pub. L. 95-92, §10, Aug. 4, 1977, 91 Stat. 619; Pub. L. 95-384, §11(a), Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 736; Pub. L. 96-92, §9, Oct. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 705; Pub. L. 96-533, title I, §115(a), Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3140; Pub. L. 97-113, title I, §113, title VII, §734(a)(1), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1528, 1560; Pub. L. 99-83, title I, §104, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 195.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1985—Pub. L. 99-83 amended section generally, substituting provisions authorizing appropriations of \$56,221,000 for fiscal years 1986 and 1987, for provisions authorizing appropriations of \$42,000,000 for fiscal years 1982 and 1983.

1981—Pub. L. 97-113, §§113, 734(a)(1), substituted appropriations authorization of \$42,000,000 for fiscal years 1982 and 1983 for appropriation of \$34,000,000 for fiscal year 1981 and deleted prohibition against any training after June 30, 1976, outside the United States without a prior Presidential report to the Speaker of the House and the Senate Foreign Relations Committee and justification for the training.

1980—Pub. L. 96-533 substituted appropriations authorization of \$34,000,000 for fiscal year 1981 for authorization of \$31,800,000 for fiscal year 1980, including prohibition against availability of any amount for Inter-American regional programs unless the foreign country participants collectively contribute an equivalent amount to carry out the programs.

1979—Pub. L. 96–92 substituted appropriations authorization of \$31,800,000 for fiscal year 1980, for identical authorization for fiscal year 1979, and required collective contribution of an equivalent amount by the foreign countries participating in Inter-American regional programs before such amount became available from the appropriation for such programs.

1978—Pub. L. 95–384 substituted “\$31,800,000 for the fiscal year 1979” for “\$31,000,000 for the fiscal year 1978”.

1977—Pub. L. 95–92 substituted “\$31,000,000 for the fiscal year 1978” for “\$27,000,000 for the fiscal year 1976 and \$30,200,000 for the fiscal year 1977”.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99–83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99–83, set out as a note under section 2151–1 of this title.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS; ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of Defense and funds available to President for carrying out this subchapter, with specified exceptions, allocated to Secretary by sections 1–301(a) and 1–801(b) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56675, 56678, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

#### § 2347b. Congressional declaration of purpose

Education and training activities conducted under this part shall be designed—

(1) to encourage effective and mutually beneficial relations and increased understanding between the United States and foreign countries in furtherance of the goals of international peace and security;

(2) to improve the ability of participating foreign countries to utilize their resources, including defense articles and defense services obtained by them from the United States, with maximum effectiveness, thereby contributing to greater self-reliance by such countries; and

(3) to increase the awareness of nationals of foreign countries participating in such activities of basic issues involving internationally recognized human rights.

(Pub. L. 87–195, pt. II, §543, as added Pub. L. 94–329, title I, §106(a), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 733; amended Pub. L. 95–384, §11(b), Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 736.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1978—Pub. L. 95–384 added par. (3).

#### § 2347c. Exchange training; reciprocity agreement

In carrying out this part, the President is authorized to provide for attendance of foreign military personnel at professional military education institutions in the United States (other than service academies) without charge, and without charge to funds available to carry out this part (notwithstanding section 2392(d) of this title), if such attendance is pursuant to an agreement providing for the exchange of students on a one-for-one, reciprocal basis each fiscal year between those United States professional military education institutions and comparable institutions of foreign countries and international organizations.

(Pub. L. 87–195, pt. II, §544, as added Pub. L. 99–83, title I, §126, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 205.)

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99–83, set out as an Effective Date of 1985 Amendment note under section 2151–1 of this title.

#### AUTHORITY FOR EXCHANGE TRAINING THROUGH SPECIFIED PROFESSIONAL MILITARY EDUCATION INSTITUTION OUTSIDE UNITED STATES

Pub. L. 101–189, div. A, title IX, §935, Nov. 29, 1989, 103 Stat. 1538, provided that:

“(a) AUTHORITY.—The United States Army Russian Institute in Garmisch-Partenkirchen, Federal Republic of Germany, shall be treated for purposes of section 544 of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2347c) as if it were located in the United States.

“(b) EXPIRATION OF AUTHORITY.—Subsection (a) shall cease to be in effect upon the enactment in foreign assistance authorizing legislation of an amendment to section 544 of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 that provides the same authority as is provided by subsection (a).”

#### § 2347d. Training in maritime skills

The President is encouraged to allocate a portion of the funds made available each fiscal year to carry out this part for use in providing education and training in maritime search and rescue, operation and maintenance of aids to navigation, port security, at-sea law enforcement, international maritime law, and general maritime skills.

(Pub. L. 87–195, pt. II, §545, as added Pub. L. 99–83, title I, §127(a), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 205.)

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99–83, set out as an Effective Date of 1985 Amendment note under section 2151–1 of this title.

### PART VI—PEACEKEEPING OPERATIONS

#### PART REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This part is referred to in sections 2304, 2371, 2776, 2799aa, 2799aa–1, 3423 of this title.

#### § 2348. General authorization

The President is authorized to furnish assistance to friendly countries and international organizations, on such terms and conditions as he may determine, for peacekeeping operations and other programs carried out in furtherance of the national security interests of the United States. Such assistance may include reimbursement to the Department of Defense for expenses incurred pursuant to section 287d–1 of this title, except that such reimbursements may not exceed \$5,000,000 in any fiscal year unless a greater amount is specifically authorized by this section.

(Pub. L. 87–195, pt. II, §551, as added Pub. L. 95–384, §12(a), Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 736; amended Pub. L. 96–92, §10(b), Oct. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 705.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1979—Pub. L. 96–92 authorized reimbursement of Department of Defense for expenses incurred in furnishing assistance to the United States limited to \$5,000,000 per fiscal year unless specifically authorized.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this part delegated to Secretary of State by section 1–201(a)(8) of Ex. Ord. No.

12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56674, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

UNITED STATES PROPOSAL FOR THE EARLY WARNING SYSTEM IN SINAI

Pub. L. 94-110, Oct. 13, 1975, 89 Stat. 572, provided that:

“Whereas an agreement signed on September 4, 1975, by the Government of the Arab Republic of Egypt and the Government of Israel may, when it enters into force, constitute a significant step toward peace in the Middle East;

“Whereas the President of the United States on September 1, 1975, transmitted to the Government of the Arab Republic of Egypt and to the Government of Israel identical proposals for United States participation in an early-warning system, the text of which has been submitted to the Congress, providing for the assignment of no more than two hundred United States civilian personnel to carry out certain specified noncombat functions and setting forth the terms and conditions thereof;

“Whereas that proposal would permit the Government of the United States to withdraw such personnel if it concludes that their safety is jeopardized or that continuation of their role is no longer necessary; and

“Whereas the implementation of the United States proposals for the early-warning system in Sinai may enhance the prospect of compliance in good faith with the terms of the Egyptian-Israeli agreements and thereby promote the cause of peace: Now, therefore, be it

“Resolved by the Senate and House of Representatives of the United States of America in Congress assembled, That the President is authorized to implement the ‘United States Proposal for the Early Warning System in Sinai’: *Provided, however,* That United States civilian personnel assigned to Sinai under such proposal shall be removed immediately in the event of an outbreak of hostilities between Egypt and Israel or if the Congress by concurrent resolution determines that the safety of such personnel is jeopardized or that continuation of their role is no longer necessary. Nothing contained in this resolution shall be construed as granting any authority to the President with respect to the introduction of United States Armed Forces into hostilities or into situations wherein involvement in hostilities is clearly indicated by the circumstances which authority he would not have had in the absence of this joint resolution.

“SEC. 2. Any concurrent resolution of the type described in the first section of this resolution which is introduced in either House of Congress shall be privileged in the same manner and to the same extent as a concurrent resolution of the type described in section 5(c) of Public Law 93-148 [section 1544(c) of Title 50, War and National Defense] is privileged under section 7 of such law [section 1546 of title 50, War and National Defense].

“SEC. 3. The United States civilian personnel participating in the early warning system in Sinai shall include only individuals who have volunteered to participate in such system.

“SEC. 4. Whenever United States civilian personnel, pursuant to this resolution, participate in an early warning system, the President shall, so long as the participation of such personnel continues, submit written reports to the Congress periodically, but no less frequently than once every six months, on (1) the status, scope, and anticipated duration of their participation, and (2) the feasibility of ending or reducing as soon as possible their participation by substituting nationals of other countries or by making technological changes. The appropriate committees of the Congress shall promptly hold hearings on each report of the President and report to the Congress any findings, conclusions, and recommendations.

“SEC. 5. The authority contained in this joint resolution to implement the ‘United States Proposal for the Early Warning System in Sinai’ does not signify ap-

proval of the Congress of any other agreement, understanding, or commitment made by the executive branch.”

EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 11896

Ex. Ord. No. 11896, Jan. 13, 1976, 41 F.R. 2067, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 12150, July 23, 1979, 44 F.R. 43455; Ex. Ord. No. 12227, July 22, 1980, 45 F.R. 49237; Ex. Ord. No. 12357, Apr. 6, 1982, 47 F.R. 15093, which established the United States Sinai Support Mission, was revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 12553, Feb. 25, 1986, 51 F.R. 7237.

§ 2348a. Authorization of appropriations

(a) Fiscal years 1986 and 1987

There are authorized to be appropriated to the President to carry out the purposes of this part, in addition to amounts otherwise available for such purposes, \$37,000,000 for fiscal year 1986 and \$37,000,000 for fiscal year 1987.

(b) Availability of funds

Amounts appropriated under this section are authorized to remain available until expended.

(c) Emergency transfer of funds

If the President determines that, as the result of an unforeseen emergency, the provision of assistance under this part in amounts in excess of funds otherwise available for such assistance is important to the national interests of the United States, the President may (1) exercise the authority of section 2360(a) of this title to transfer funds available to carry out part IV of this subchapter for use under this part without regard to the 20-percent increase limitation contained in such section, except that the total amount so transferred in any fiscal year may not exceed \$15,000,000; and (2) in the event the President also determines that such unforeseen emergency requires the immediate provision of assistance under this part, direct the drawdown of commodities and services from the inventory and resources of any agency of the United States Government of an aggregate value not to exceed \$25,000,000 in any fiscal year.

(d) Reimbursement of applicable appropriation, fund, or account

There are authorized to be appropriated to the President such sums as may be necessary to reimburse the applicable appropriation, fund, or account for commodities and services provided under subsection (c)(2) of this section.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, § 552, as added Pub. L. 95-384, § 12(a), Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 736; amended Pub. L. 96-92, § 10(a), (c), Oct. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 705; Pub. L. 96-533, title I, § 116(a), Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3140; Pub. L. 97-113, title I, § 114, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1528; Pub. L. 99-83, title I, § 105(a), (b)(1), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 195.)

AMENDMENTS

1985—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99-83, § 105(a), amended subsec. (a) generally, substituting provisions authorizing appropriations of \$37,000,000 for fiscal years 1986 and 1987, for provisions authorizing appropriations of \$19,000,000 for fiscal years 1982 and 1983.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 99-83, § 105(b)(1)(A), (B), designated existing provisions as cl. (1) and added cl. (2).

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 99-83, § 105(b)(1)(C), added subsec. (d).

1981—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 97-113, § 114(a), substituted “\$19,000,000 for the fiscal year 1982 and \$19,000,000 for the

fiscal year 1983” for “\$25,000,000 for the fiscal year 1981”.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 97-113, §114(b), increased to \$15,000,000 from \$10,000,000 amount of funds authorized to be transferred in any fiscal year and deleted restriction on transfer of earmarked funds.

1980—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 96-533 substituted “\$25,000,000 for the fiscal year 1981” for “\$21,100,000 for the fiscal year 1980”.

1979—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 96-92, §10(a), substituted “\$21,100,000 for the fiscal year 1980” for “\$30,900,000 for the fiscal year 1979”.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 96-92, §10(c), added subsec. (c).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS; ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Functions of President under this part, except those with respect to determinations, certifications, directives, or transfers of funds under subsecs. (c) and (e) of this section, delegated to Secretary of State and funds available to President for carrying out this part allocated to Secretary by sections 1-201(a)(8), 1-701(d), and 1-801(c) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, 56678, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2411 of this title.

#### § 2348b. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-533, title I, § 116(b), Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3140

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §553, as added Pub. L. 95-384, §12(a), Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 736, provided for Middle East special requirements fund and funding limitations and requirements, including use of \$3,500,000 for fiscal year 1979 for international peacekeeping in the Middle East.

#### § 2348c. Administrative authorities

Except where expressly provided to the contrary, any reference in any law to subchapter I of this chapter shall be deemed to include reference to this part and any reference in any law to subchapter II of this chapter shall be deemed to exclude reference to this part.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §553, formerly §554, as added Pub. L. 95-384, §12(a), Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 737; renumbered §553, Pub. L. 96-533, title I, §116(b), Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3140.)

#### REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II, AND REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER II DEEMED TO EXCLUDE SUCH PARTS

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§2346 et seq.) and VIII (§2349a et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and section 2349aa-5 of this title.

#### PART VII—AIR BASE CONSTRUCTION IN ISRAEL

#### § 2349. General authority

The President is authorized—

(1) to construct such air bases in Israel for the Government of Israel as may be agreed upon between the Government of Israel and the Government of the United States to replace the Israeli air bases located at Etzion

and Etam on the Sinai peninsula that are to be evacuated by the Government of Israel; and

(2) for purposes of such construction, to furnish as a grant to the Government of Israel, on such terms and conditions as the President may determine, defense articles and defense services, which he may acquire from any source, of a value not to exceed the amount appropriated pursuant to section 2349a(a) of this title.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §561, as added Pub. L. 96-35, §3, July 20, 1979, 93 Stat. 89.)

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of Defense by section 1-301(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56675, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

#### § 2349a. Authorization and utilization of funds

##### (a) Authorization of appropriation

There is authorized to be appropriated to the President to carry out this part not to exceed \$800,000,000, which may be made available until expended.

##### (b) Presidential authority to incur obligations and enter into contracts

Upon agreement by the Government of Israel to provide to the Government of the United States funds equal to the difference between the amount required to complete the agreed construction work and the amount appropriated pursuant to subsection (a) of this section, and to make those funds available, in advance of the time when payments are due, in such amounts and at such times as may be required by the Government of the United States to meet those additional costs of construction, the President may incur obligations and enter into contracts to the extent necessary to complete the agreed construction work, except that this authority shall be effective only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriation Acts.

##### (c) Crediting of funds to proper appropriation account

Funds made available by the Government of Israel pursuant to subsection (b) of this section may be credited to the appropriation account established to carry out the purposes of this section for the payment of obligations incurred and for refund to the Government of Israel if they are unnecessary for that purpose, as determined by the President. Credits and the proceeds of guaranteed loans made available to the Government of Israel pursuant to the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.], as well as any other source of financing available to it, may be used by Israel to carry out its undertaking to provide such additional funds.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §562, as added Pub. L. 96-35, §3, July 20, 1979, 93 Stat. 90.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Arms Export Control Act, referred to in subsec. (c), is Pub. L. 90-629, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1320, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 39 (§2751 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2751 of this title and Tables.

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS; ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of Defense and funds available to President for carrying out this subchapter, with specified exceptions, allocated to Secretary by sections 1-301(a) and 1-801(b) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56675, 56678, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2349 of this title.

**§ 2349b. Waiver authorities****(a) Efficient and timely completion of authorized construction**

It is the sense of the Congress that the President should take all necessary measures consistent with law to insure the efficient and timely completion of the construction authorized by this part, including the exercise of authority vested in him by section 2393(a) of this title.

**(b) Use of funds to pay for personal services abroad**

The provisions of paragraph (3) of section 2396(a) of this title shall be applicable to the use of funds available to carry out this part, except that no more than sixty persons may be engaged at any one time under that paragraph for purposes of this part.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §563, as added Pub. L. 96-35, §3, July 20, 1979, 93 Stat. 90.)

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of Defense by section 1-301(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56675, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

## PART VIII—ANTITERRORISM ASSISTANCE

## PART REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This part is referred to in sections 2304, 2371, 2403, 2776, 4802, 4858 of this title; title 46 App. section 1803.

**§ 2349aa. General authority**

Subject to the provisions of this part, the President is authorized to furnish, on such terms and conditions as the President may determine, assistance to foreign countries in order to enhance the ability of their law enforcement personnel to deter terrorists and terrorist groups from engaging in international terrorist acts such as bombing, kidnapping, assassination, hostage taking, and hijacking. Such assistance may include training services and the provision of equipment and other commodities related to bomb detection and disposal, management of hostage situations, physical security, and other matters relating to the detection, deterrence, and prevention of acts of terrorism, the resolution of terrorist incidents, and the apprehension of those involved in such acts.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §571, as added Pub. L. 98-151, §101(b)(2), Nov. 14, 1983, 97 Stat. 972.)

## CODIFICATION

Section 571 of Pub. L. 87-195 is based on section 201 of title II of H.R. 2992, Ninety-eighth Congress, as reported May 17, 1983, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 98-151.

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 203 of title II of H.R. 2992, as enacted into permanent law by section 101(b)(2) of Pub. L. 98-151, provided that: "This title [enacting this part and amending sections 2304 and 2403 of this title] shall take effect on the date of enactment of this Act [Nov. 14, 1983]."

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this part, except sections 2349aa-8 and 2349aa-9, delegated to Secretary of State, to be exercised consistent with section 2349aa-2(d)(3) of this title, by sections 1-201(a)(23), 1-701(g) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56674, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

**§ 2349aa-1. Purposes**

Activities conducted under this part shall be designed—

(1) to enhance the antiterrorism skills of friendly countries by providing training and equipment to deter and counter terrorism;

(2) to strengthen the bilateral ties of the United States with friendly governments by offering concrete assistance in this area of great mutual concern; and

(3) to increase respect for human rights by sharing with foreign civil authorities modern, humane, and effective antiterrorism techniques.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §572, as added Pub. L. 98-151, §101(b)(2), Nov. 14, 1983, 97 Stat. 972.)

## CODIFICATION

Section 572 of Pub. L. 87-195 is based on section 201 of title II of H.R. 2992, Ninety-eighth Congress, as reported May 17, 1983, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 98-151.

**§ 2349aa-2. Specific authorities and limitations****(a) Services and commodities; reimbursement**

Notwithstanding section 2420 of this title, services and commodities may be granted for the purposes of this part to eligible foreign countries, subject to reimbursement of the value thereof (within the meaning of section 2403(m) of this title) pursuant to section 2392 of this title from funds available to carry out this part.

**(b) Services and commodities furnished by agency of United States Government; advance payment**

Whenever the President determines it to be consistent with and in furtherance of the purposes of this part, and on such terms and conditions consistent with this chapter as he may determine, any agency of the United States Government is authorized to furnish services and commodities, without charge to funds available to carry out this part, to an eligible foreign country, subject to payment in advance of the value thereof (within the meaning of section 2403(m) of this title) in United States dollars by the foreign country. Credits and the proceeds of guaranteed loans made available to such countries pursuant to the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.] shall not be used for such payments. Collections under this part shall be credited to the currently applicable appropriation, account, or fund of the agency providing such services and commodities and shall be



available for the purposes for which such appropriation, account, or fund is authorized to be used.

**(c) Consultation in development and implementation of assistance**

The Assistant Secretary of State for Democracy, Human Rights, and Labor shall be consulted in the development and implementation of the antiterrorism assistance program under this part, including determinations of the foreign countries that will be furnished assistance under this part and determinations of the nature of assistance to be furnished to each such country.

**(d) Location for training and advice; law enforcement personnel training; availability of items on Munition List and services, personnel, etc., involved in collection of intelligence**

(1) Training services (including short term refresher training) provided pursuant to this part may be conducted outside the United States only if—

(A) the training to be conducted outside the United States will be provided during a period of not more than 30 days;

(B) such training relates to—

- (i) aviation security;
- (ii) crisis management;
- (iii) document screening techniques;
- (iv) facility security;
- (v) maritime security;
- (vi) VIP protection; or
- (vii) the handling of detector dogs, except that only short term refresher training may be provided under this clause; and

(C) at least 15 days before such training is to begin, the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate are notified in accordance with the procedures applicable to reprogramming notifications.

(2) Personnel of the United States Government authorized to advise eligible foreign countries on antiterrorism matters shall carry out their responsibilities, to the maximum extent possible, within the United States. Such personnel may provide advice outside the United States on antiterrorism matters to eligible foreign countries for periods not to exceed 30 consecutive calendar days.

(3)(A) Except as provided in subparagraph (B), employees of the Department of State shall not engage in the training of law enforcement personnel or the provision of services under this part.

(B) Subparagraph (A) does not apply to training (including short term refresher training) or services provided to law enforcement personnel by employees of the Bureau of Diplomatic Security with regard to crisis management, facility security, or VIP protection.

(4)(A) Articles on the United States Munitions List may be made available under this part only if—

(i) they are small arms in category I (relating to firearms), ammunition in category III (relating to ammunition) for small arms in category I, articles in category IV(c) or VI(c) (relating to detection and handling of explo-

sive devices), articles in category X (relating to protective personnel equipment), or articles in paragraph (b), (c), or (d) of category XIII (relating to speech privacy devices, underwater breathing apparatus and armor plating), and they are directly related to antiterrorism training under this part;

(ii) the recipient country is not prohibited by law from receiving assistance under one or more of the following provisions: part II of this subchapter (relating to grant military assistance), part V of this subchapter (relating to international military education and training), or the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.] (relating to foreign military sales financing); and

(iii) at least 15 days before the articles are made available to the foreign country, the President notifies the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate of the proposed transfer, in accordance with the procedures applicable to reprogramming notifications pursuant to section 2394-1 of this title.

(B) The value (in terms of original acquisition cost) of all equipment and commodities provided under subsection (a) of this section in any fiscal year may not exceed 25 percent of the funds made available to carry out this part for that fiscal year.

(C) No shock batons or similar devices may be provided under this part.

(5) Assistance under this part shall not include provision of services, equipment, personnel, or facilities involved in the collection of intelligence as defined in Executive Order 12333 of December 4, 1981, other than limited training in the organization of intelligence for anti-terrorism purposes.

**(e) Information exchange activities**

This part does not apply to information exchange activities conducted by agencies of the United States Government under other authority for such purposes.

**(f) Personnel compensation or benefits**

Funds made available to carry out this part may not be used for personnel compensation or benefits.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §573, as added Pub. L. 98-151, §101(b)(2), Nov. 14, 1983, 97 Stat. 972; amended Pub. L. 99-83, title V, §501(b), (c), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 220; Pub. L. 99-399, title V, §507, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 873; Pub. L. 101-604, title II, §213(b), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3086; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §162(e)(3), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 405.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (b), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

The Arms Export Control Act, referred to in subsecs. (b) and (d)(4)(A)(ii), is Pub. L. 90-629, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1320, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 39 (§2751 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2751 of this title and Tables.

Executive Order 12333 of December 4, 1981, referred to in subsec. (d)(5), is set out as a note under section 401 of Title 50, War and National Defense.

#### CODIFICATION

Section 573 of Pub. L. 87-195 is based on section 201 of title II of H.R. 2992, Ninety-eighth Congress, as reported May 17, 1983, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 98-151.

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 103-236 substituted “Democracy, Human Rights, and Labor” for “Human Rights and Humanitarian Affairs”.

1990—Subsec. (d)(1) to (3). Pub. L. 101-604 added pars. (1) to (3) and struck out former pars. (1) to (3) which read as follows:

“(1) Training services provided pursuant to this part shall not be conducted outside the United States.

“(2) Personnel of the United States Government authorized to advise eligible foreign countries on anti-terrorism matters shall carry out their responsibilities, to the maximum extent possible, within the United States. Such personnel may provide advice outside the United States on antiterrorism matters to eligible foreign countries for periods not to exceed thirty consecutive calendar days.

“(3) Employees of the Department of State shall not engage in the training of law enforcement personnel or provision of services under this part, except that employees of the Office of Security of the Department of State may provide training and services to law enforcement personnel for the physical protection of internationally protected persons and related facilities.”

1986—Subsec. (d)(4). Pub. L. 99-399, in amending par. (4) generally, included articles in category X and articles in par. (b), (c), or (d) of category XIII as articles on the United States Munitions List which could be made available, struck out availability of articles only for fiscal years 1986 and 1987, substituted provision that the value in any fiscal year not exceed 25 percent of the funds available to carry out this part for that fiscal year for provision that the value not exceed \$325,000 in fiscal year 1986 or 1987, and provided that no shock batons or similar devices be provided under this part.

1985—Subsec. (d)(4). Pub. L. 99-83, §501(b), in amending par. (4) generally, designated existing provisions as subpar. (A), inserted provisions excepting subpar. (B), and added subpars. (B) and (C).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 99-83, §501(c), added subsec. (f).

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103-236 applicable with respect to officials, offices, and bureaus of Department of State when executive orders, regulations, or departmental directives implementing the amendments by sections 161 and 162 of Pub. L. 103-236 become effective, or 90 days after Apr. 30, 1994, whichever comes earlier, see section 161(b) of Pub. L. 103-236, as amended, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

#### AUTHORITY OF SECRETARY OF STATE

Except as otherwise provided, Secretary of State to have and exercise any authority vested by law in any official or office of Department of State and references to such officials or offices deemed to refer to Secretary

of State or Department of State, as appropriate, see section 2651a of this title and section 161(d) of Pub. L. 103-236, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this part delegated to Secretary of State, to be exercised consistent with subsec. (d)(3) of this section, by section 1-201(a)(23) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56674, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

#### § 2349aa-3. Reports to Congress

(a)(1) Not less than thirty days before providing assistance to a foreign country under this part, the President shall transmit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate a written notification which specifies—

(A) the country to which such assistance is to be provided;

(B) the type and value of the assistance to be provided;

(C) the terms and duration of assistance; and

(D) an explanation of how the proposed assistance will further the objectives of this part to assist eligible foreign countries in deterring terrorism.

(2) The chairman of either the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives or the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate may request, as deemed necessary, a current report on the state of observance of and respect for internationally recognized human rights in the country to which assistance is to be provided. In the event that a report is requested, no assistance under subsection (a) of this section shall be provided to the country specified prior to transmittal of the report to the requesting committee.

(b) The annual congressional presentation materials shall include—

(1) a list of the countries which received assistance under this part for the preceding fiscal year, a list of the countries which are programmed to receive assistance under this part for the current fiscal year, and a list of the countries which are proposed as recipients of assistance under this part for the next fiscal year; and

(2) with respect to each country listed pursuant to paragraph (1) and for each such fiscal year, a description of the assistance under this part furnished, programmed, or proposed, including—

(A) the place where training or other services under this part were or will be furnished, the duration of such training or other services, and the number of personnel from that country which were or will receive training under this part;

(B) the types of equipment or other commodities which were or will be furnished under this part; and

(C) whether the assistance was furnished on a grant basis, on an advance payment basis, or on some other basis.

Each report shall also describe the ways in which the provision of such assistance has furthered the objective of enhancing the ability of

foreign law enforcement authorities to deter acts of terrorism.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §574, as added Pub. L. 98-151, §101(b)(2), Nov. 14, 1983, 97 Stat. 972.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section 574 of Pub. L. 87-195 is based on section 201 of title II of H.R. 2992, Ninety-eighth Congress, as reported May 17, 1983, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 98-151.

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this part delegated to Secretary of State, to be exercised consistent with section 2349aa-2(d)(3) of this title, by section 1-201(a)(23) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56674, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

### § 2349aa-4. Authorization of appropriations

(a) There are authorized to be appropriated to the President to carry out this part \$9,840,000 for fiscal year 1986 and \$14,680,000 for fiscal year 1987.

(b) Amounts appropriated under this section are authorized to remain available until expended.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §575, as added Pub. L. 98-151, §101(b)(2), Nov. 14, 1983, 97 Stat. 972; amended Pub. L. 99-83, title V, §501(a), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 219; Pub. L. 99-399, title IV, §401(a)(2), Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 862.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1986—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99-399 substituted “\$14,680,000 for the fiscal year 1987” for “\$9,840,000 for the fiscal year 1987”.

1985—Pub. L. 99-83, in amending section generally, designated existing provisions as subsecs. (a) and (b), and in subsec. (a) as so designated, substituted provisions appropriating \$9,840,000 for fiscal years 1986 and 1987 for provisions appropriating \$5,000,000 for fiscal year 1984.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

#### ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Funds available to President for carrying out this part allocated to Secretary of State by section 1-801(c) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56674, 56678, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

### § 2349aa-5. Administrative authorities

Except where expressly provided to the contrary, any reference in any law to subchapter I of this chapter shall be deemed to include reference to this part and any reference in any law to subchapter II of this chapter shall be deemed to exclude reference to this part.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §576, as added Pub. L. 98-151, §101(b)(2), Nov. 14, 1983, 97 Stat. 972.)

REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II, AND REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER II DEEMED TO EXCLUDE SUCH PARTS

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§2346 et seq.) and VI (§2348 et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and section 2348c of this title.

#### CODIFICATION

Section 576 of Pub. L. 87-195 is based on section 201 of title II of H.R. 2992, Ninety-eighth Congress, as reported May 17, 1983, and enacted into law by Pub. L. 98-151.

### § 2349aa-6. Repealed. Pub. L. 99-83, title V, § 501(d), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 220

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. II, §577, as added Pub. L. 98-151, §101(b)(2), Nov. 14, 1983, 97 Stat. 972, provided for expiration of authorities of this part on Sept. 30, 1985.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as an Effective Date of 1985 Amendment note under section 2151-1 of this title.

### § 2349aa-7. Coordination of all United States terrorism-related assistance to foreign countries

#### (a) Responsibility

The Secretary of State shall be responsible for coordinating all assistance related to international terrorism which is provided by the United States Government to foreign countries.

#### (b) Reports

Not later than February 1 each year, the Secretary of State, in consultation with appropriate United States Government agencies, shall report to the appropriate committees of the Congress on the assistance related to international terrorism which was provided by the United States Government during the preceding fiscal year. Such reports may be provided on a classified basis to the extent necessary, and shall specify the amount and nature of the assistance provided.

#### (c) Rule of construction

Nothing contained in this section shall be construed to limit or impair the authority or responsibility of any other Federal agency with respect to law enforcement, domestic security operations, or intelligence activities as defined in Executive Order 12333.

(Pub. L. 99-83, title V, §502, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 220; Pub. L. 99-399, title V, §503, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 871.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Executive Order 12333, referred to in subsec. (c), is set out as a note under section 401 of Title 50, War and National Defense.

#### CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the International Security and Development Cooperation Act of 1985, and not as part of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 which comprises this chapter.

## AMENDMENTS

1986—Pub. L. 99-399, §503(1), substituted “terrorism-related” for “anti-terrorism” in section catchline.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99-399, §503(2), substituted “assistance related to international terrorism which is provided by the United States Government to foreign countries” for “anti-terrorism assistance to foreign countries provided by the United States Government”.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 99-399, §503(3), substituted “assistance related to international terrorism which was” for “anti-terrorism assistance”.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 99-399, §503(4), added subsec. (c).

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as an Effective Date of 1985 Amendment note under section 2151-1 of this title.

### § 2349aa-8. Prohibition on imports from and exports to Libya

#### (a) Prohibition on imports

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the President may prohibit any article grown, produced, extracted, or manufactured in Libya from being imported into the United States.

#### (b) Prohibition on exports

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the President may prohibit any goods or technology, including technical data or other information, subject to the jurisdiction of the United States or exported by any person subject to the jurisdiction of the United States, from being exported to Libya.

#### (c) “United States” defined

For purposes of this section, the term “United States”, when used in a geographical sense, includes territories and possessions of the United States.

(Pub. L. 99-83, title V, §504, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 221.)

## CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the International Security and Development Cooperation Act of 1985, and not as part of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 which comprises this chapter.

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as an Effective Date of 1985 Amendment note under section 2151-1 of this title.

### § 2349aa-9. Ban on importing goods and services from countries supporting terrorism

#### (a) Authority

The President may ban the importation into the United States of any good or service from any country which supports terrorism or terrorist organizations or harbors terrorists or terrorist organizations.

#### (b) Consultation

The President, in every possible instance, shall consult with the Congress before exercising the authority granted by this section and shall consult regularly with the Congress so long as that authority is being exercised.

#### (c) Reports

Whenever the President exercises the authority granted by this section, he shall imme-

diately transmit to the Congress a report specifying—

(1) the country with respect to which the authority is to be exercised and the imports to be prohibited;

(2) the circumstances which necessitate the exercise of such authority;

(3) why the President believes those circumstances justify the exercise of such authority; and

(4) why the President believes the prohibitions are necessary to deal with those circumstances.

At least once during each succeeding 6-month period after transmitting a report pursuant to this subsection, the President shall report to the Congress with respect to the actions taken, since the last such report, pursuant to this section and with respect to any changes which have occurred concerning any information previously furnished pursuant to this subsection.

#### (d) “United States” defined

For purposes of this section, the term “United States” includes territories and possessions of the United States.

(Pub. L. 99-83, title V, §505, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 221.)

## CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the International Security and Development Cooperation Act of 1985, and not as part of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 which comprises this chapter.

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as an Effective Date of 1985 Amendment note under section 2151-1 of this title.

## SUBCHAPTER III—GENERAL AND ADMINISTRATIVE PROVISIONS

### PART I—GENERAL PROVISIONS

### § 2351. Encouragement of free enterprise and private participation

#### (a) Policy of United States

The Congress of the United States recognizes the vital role of free enterprise in achieving rising levels of production and standards of living essential to economic progress and development. Accordingly, it is declared to be the policy of the United States to encourage the efforts of other countries to increase the flow of international trade, to foster private initiative and competition, to encourage the development and use of cooperatives, credit unions, and savings and loan associations, to discourage monopolistic practices, to improve the technical efficiency of their industry, agriculture, and commerce, and to strengthen free labor unions; and to encourage the contribution of United States enterprise toward economic strength of less developed friendly countries, through private trade and investment abroad, private participation in programs carried out under this chapter (including the use of private trade channels to the maximum extent practicable in carrying out such programs), and exchange of ideas and technical information on the matters covered by this subsection.

**(b) Action by President to facilitate participation to maximum extent**

In order to encourage and facilitate participation by private enterprise to the maximum extent practicable in achieving any of the purposes of this chapter, the President shall—

(1) make arrangements to find, and draw the attention of private enterprise to, opportunities for investment and development in less-developed friendly countries and areas;

(2) establish an effective system for obtaining adequate information with respect to the activities of, and opportunities for, nongovernmental participation in the development process, and for utilizing such information in the planning, direction, and execution of programs carried out under this chapter, and in the coordination of such programs with the ever-increasing developmental activities of nongovernmental United States institutions;

(3) accelerate a program of negotiating treaties for commerce and trade, including tax treaties, which shall include provisions to encourage and facilitate the flow of private investment to, and its equitable treatment in, friendly countries and areas participating in programs under this chapter;

(4) seek, consistent with the national interest, compliance by other countries or areas with all treaties for commerce and trade and taxes, and take all reasonable measures under this chapter or other authority to secure compliance therewith and to assist United States citizens in obtaining just compensation for losses sustained by them or payments exacted from them as a result of measures taken or imposed by any country or area thereof in violation of any such treaty;

(5) to the maximum extent practicable carry out programs of assistance through private channels and to the extent practicable in conjunction with local private or governmental participation, including loans under the authority of section 2151t of this title to any individual, corporation, or other body of persons;

(6) take appropriate steps to discourage nationalization, expropriation, confiscation, seizure of ownership or control, of private investment and discriminatory or other actions having the effect thereof, undertaken by countries receiving assistance under this chapter, which divert available resources essential to create new wealth, employment, and productivity in those countries and otherwise impair the climate for new private investment essential to the stable economic growth and development of those countries;

(7) utilize wherever practicable the services of United States private enterprise (including, but not limited to, the services of experts and consultants in technical fields such as engineering); and

(8) utilize wherever practicable the services of United States private enterprise on a cost-plus incentive fee contract basis to provide the necessary skills to develop and operate a specific project or program of assistance in a less developed friendly country or area in any case in which direct private investment is not readily encouraged, and provide where appropriate

for the transfer of equity ownership in such project or program to private investors at the earliest feasible time.

**(c) International Private Investment Advisory Council on Foreign Aid; establishment; composition; selection of members by Director; duration of service; Chairman; duties of Council; compensation; travel and other expenses; funds for payment of expenses of Council**

(1) There is hereby established an International Private Investment Advisory Council on Foreign Aid to be composed of such number of leading American business specialists as may be selected, from time to time, by the Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency for the purpose of carrying out the provisions of this subsection. The members of the Council shall serve at the pleasure of the Director, who shall designate one member to serve as Chairman.

(2) It shall be the duty of the Council, at the request of the Director, to make recommendations to the Director with respect to particular aspects of programs and activities under this chapter where private enterprise can play a contributing role and to act as liaison for the Director to involve specific private enterprises in such programs and activities.

(3) The members of the Advisory Council shall receive no compensation for their services but shall be entitled to reimbursement in accordance with section 5703 of title 5 for travel and other expenses incurred by them in the performance of their functions under this subsection.

(4) The expenses of the Advisory Council shall be paid by the Director from funds otherwise available under this chapter.

**(d) Engineering and professional services of United States firms**

It is the sense of Congress that the Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency should continue to encourage, to the maximum extent consistent with the national interest, the utilization of engineering and professional services of United States firms (including, but not limited to, any corporation, company, partnership, or other association) or by an affiliate of such United States firms in connection with capital projects financed by funds authorized under this chapter.

**(e) Contracts on basis of competitive selection procedures**

(1) The Congress finds that significantly greater effort must be made in carrying out programs under subchapter I of this chapter to award contracts on the basis of competitive selection procedures. All such contracts should be let on the basis of competitive selection procedures except in those limited cases in which the procurement regulations governing the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter allow noncompetitive procedures to be used.

(2) Repealed. Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, §734(a)(1), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §601, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 438; Pub. L. 88-205, pt. III, §301(a), (b), Dec. 16, 1963, 77 Stat. 385; Pub. L. 88-633, pt. III, §301(a),

(b), Oct. 7, 1964, 78 Stat. 1012; Pub. L. 89-583, pt. III, §301(a), Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 803; Pub. L. 90-137, pt. III, §301(a), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 458; Pub. L. 95-424, title I, §102(g)(2)(B), title V, §501, Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 942, 956; 1979 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §6(a)(1), (b)(1), eff. Oct. 1, 1979, 44 F.R. 41166, 93 Stat. 1379; Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, §734(a)(1), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (b) and (d), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

#### REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

#### AMENDMENTS

1981—Subsec. (e)(2). Pub. L. 97-113 struck out par. (2) which required reports to Congress on Agency for International Development contracts over \$100,000 entered into without competitive selection. See section 2394(a)(2)(F) of this title.

1978—Subsec. (b)(5). Pub. L. 95-424 substituted "section 2151t" for "section 2161".

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 95-424 added subsec. (e).

1967—Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 90-137 substituted reference to section 5703 for former section 73b-2 of title 5.

1966—Subsec. (b)(2) to (8). Pub. L. 89-583, §301(a)(1)-(3), added par. (2), redesignated former pars. (2) to (6) as (3) to (7), respectively, and added par. (8).

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 89-583, §301(a)(4), substituted provisions relating to International Private Investment Advisory Council on Foreign Aid for former provisions relating to Advisory Committee on Private Enterprise in Foreign Aid.

1964—Subsec. (c)(4). Pub. L. 88-633, §301(a), substituted "June 30, 1965" for "December 31, 1964".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 88-633, §301(b), added subsec. (d).

1963—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 88-205, §301(a), substituted "to the maximum extent practicable" for "wherever appropriate" in par. (4), and added pars. (5) and (6).

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 88-205, §301(b), added subsec. (c).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

In subsec. (c)(1), (2), and (4), "Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency" and "Director" substituted for "Administrator of the Agency for International Development" and "Administrator", respectively; in subsec. (d), "Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency" substituted for "Agency for International Development"; and in subsec. (e)(2), "Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency" and "Director" substituted for "the Agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter" and "administrator" or "agency", respectively, by Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1979, §6(a)(1), (b)(1), 44 F.R. 41166, 93 Stat. 1379, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, as provided in Ex. Ord. No. 12163, §1-101, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, set out as notes under section 2381 of this title, which transferred the functions and authorities vested in such

agency or its administrator under subsecs. (a) to (d) and (e)(2) of this section to the Director.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by sections 1-102(a)(1), (e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

Functions of President under subsec. (b)(1) of this section, as they relate to drawing attention of private enterprise to opportunities for investment and development in less developed friendly countries and areas, delegated to Secretary of Commerce pursuant to section 1-502 of Ex. Ord. No. 12163.

Functions of President under subsec. (b)(3), (4), and (6) delegated to Secretary of State pursuant to section 1-201(a)(9) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163.

#### TERMINATION OF ADVISORY COUNCIL

Advisory council in existence on Jan. 5, 1973, to terminate not later than the expiration of the 2-year period following Jan. 5, 1973, unless, in the case of a council established by the President or an officer of the Federal Government, such council is renewed by appropriate action prior to the expiration of such 2-year period, or in the case of a council established by the Congress, its duration is otherwise provided by law. See sections 3(2) and 14 of Pub. L. 92-463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 770, 776, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

#### § 2352. Small business

##### (a) Assistance for participation in furnishing of commodities, defense articles, and services

Insofar as practicable and to the maximum extent consistent with the accomplishment of the purposes of this chapter, the President shall assist American small business to participate equitably in the furnishing of commodities, defense articles, and services (including defense services) financed with funds made available under this chapter—

(1) by causing to be made available to suppliers in the United States, and particularly to small independent enterprises, information, as far in advance as possible, with respect to purchases proposed to be financed with such funds;

(2) by causing to be made available to prospective purchasers in the countries and areas receiving assistance under this chapter information as to such commodities, articles, and services produced by small independent enterprises in the United States; and

(3) by providing for additional services to give small business better opportunities to participate in the furnishing of such commodities, articles, and services financed with such funds.

##### (b) Office of Small Business

There shall be an Office of Small Business, headed by a Special Assistant for Small Business, in such agency of the United States Government as the President may direct, to assist in carrying out the provisions of subsection (a) of this section.

##### (c) Information with respect to certain purchases by Department of Defense

The Secretary of Defense shall assure that there is made available to suppliers in the

United States, and particularly to small independent enterprises, information with respect to purchases made by the Department of Defense pursuant to subchapter II of this chapter, such information to be furnished as far in advance as possible.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 602, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 439.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

#### REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER II DEEMED TO EXCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter II of this chapter are deemed to exclude parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II, and references to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by sections 1-102(a)(1), (e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

Functions of President under subsec. (a), to extent they relate to other functions under this chapter administered by Department of Defense, delegated to Secretary of Defense by section 1-301(b) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163.

#### OFFICE IN AGENCY FOR INTERNATIONAL DEVELOPMENT

For location of the Office of Small Business, provided for in subsec. (b), in the Agency for International Development, see section 1-104 of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56674, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

#### PROCUREMENTS FROM SMALL BUSINESSES

Pub. L. 94-329, title VI, §602, June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 766, provided that: "In order to encourage procurements from small business concerns under chapter 4 of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [part IV of subchapter II of this chapter], the Administrator of the Agency for International Development [now Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency] shall report to the Congress every six months on the extent to which small businesses have participated in procurements under such chapter [part] and on what efforts the Agency has made to foster such procurements from small business concerns. The Small Business Administration shall lend all available assistance to the Agency for the purposes of carrying out this section."

[Functions vested in the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter or in its Administrator by section 602 of Pub. L. 94-329 were transferred to the Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency by Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1979, §6(b)(2), 44 F.R. 41166, 93 Stat. 1379, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, pursuant to Ex. Ord. No. 12163, §1-101, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, set out as notes under section 2381 of this title.]

### § 2353. Shipping on United States vessels

The ocean transportation between foreign countries of commodities and defense articles

purchased with foreign currencies made available or derived from funds made available under this chapter or the Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954, as amended [7 U.S.C. 1691 et seq.], and transfers of fresh fruit and products thereof under this chapter, shall not be governed by the provisions of section 1241(b) of title 46, Appendix, or any other law relating to the ocean transportation of commodities on United States flag vessels.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §603, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 439.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

The Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954, as amended, referred to in text, is act July 10, 1954, ch. 469, 68 Stat. 454, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 41 (§1691 et seq.) of Title 7, Agriculture. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1691 of Title 7 and Tables.

### § 2354. Procurement

#### (a) Limitations on procurement outside United States

(1) Funds made available for assistance under this chapter may be used by the President for procurement—

(A) only in the United States, the recipient country, or developing countries; or

(B) in any other country but only if—

(i) the provision of such assistance requires commodities or services of a type that are not produced in and available for purchase in any country specified in subparagraph (A); or

(ii) the President determines, on a case-by-case basis, that procurement in such other country is necessary—

(I) to meet unforeseen circumstances, such as emergency situations, where it is important to permit procurement in a country not specified in subparagraph (A); or

(II) to promote efficiency in the use of United States foreign assistance resources, including to avoid impairment of foreign assistance objectives.

(2) For purposes of this subsection, the term "developing countries" shall not include advanced developing countries.

#### (b) Purchases in bulk

No funds made available under this chapter shall be used for the purchase in bulk of any commodities at prices higher than the market price prevailing in the United States at the time of purchase, adjusted for differences in the cost of transportation to destination, quality, and terms of payment.

#### (c) Agricultural commodities or products thereof available for disposition under Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954

In providing for the procurement of any agricultural commodity or product thereof available

for disposition under the Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954, as amended [7 U.S.C. 1691 et seq.], for transfer by grant under this chapter to any recipient country in accordance with its requirements, the President shall, insofar as practicable and when in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter, authorize the procurement of such agricultural commodity only within the United States except to the extent that such agricultural commodity is not available in the United States in sufficient quantities to supply emergency requirements of recipients under this chapter.

**(d) Marine insurance**

In providing assistance in the procurement of commodities in the United States, United States dollars shall be made available for marine insurance on such commodities where such insurance is placed on a competitive basis in accordance with normal trade practice prevailing prior to the outbreak of World War II: *Provided*, That in the event a participating country, by statute, decree, rule, or regulation, discriminates against any marine insurance company authorized to do business in any State of the United States, then commodities purchased with funds provided hereunder and destined for such country shall be insured in the United States against marine risk with a company or companies authorized to do a marine insurance business in any State of the United States.

**(e) Parity for domestic commodities prior to use of funds outside United States**

No funds made available under this chapter shall be used for the procurement of any agricultural commodity or product thereof outside the United States when the domestic price of such commodity is less than parity, unless the commodity to be financed could not reasonably be procured in the United States in fulfillment of the objectives of a particular assistance program under which such commodity procurement is to be financed.

**(f) Commodity eligibility**

No funds authorized to be made available to carry out subchapter I of this chapter shall be used under any commodity import program to make any payment to a supplier unless the supplier has certified to the agency primarily responsible for administering such subchapter I, such information as such agency shall by regulation prescribe, including but not limited to, a description of the commodity supplied by him and its condition, and, on the basis of such information such agency shall have approved such commodity as eligible and suitable for financing under this chapter.

**(g) Construction or engineering services; applicability to advanced developing country**

(1) None of the funds authorized to be appropriated or made available for obligation or expenditure under this chapter may be made available for the procurement of construction or engineering services from advanced developing countries, eligible under the Geographic Code 941, which have attained a competitive capability in international markets for construction services or engineering services.

(2) Paragraph (1) does not apply with respect to an advanced developing country which—

(A) is receiving direct economic assistance under part I of subchapter I of this chapter or part IV of subchapter II of this chapter, and

(B) if the country has its own foreign assistance programs which finance the procurement of construction or engineering services, permits United States firms to compete for those services.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §604, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 439; Pub. L. 89-583, pt. III, §301(b), Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 804; Pub. L. 90-554, pt. III, §301(a), Oct. 8, 1968, 82 Stat. 963; Pub. L. 96-533, title VII, §705, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3157; Pub. L. 99-83, title XII, §1207, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 278; Pub. L. 102-391, title V, §597, Oct. 6, 1992, 106 Stat. 1694.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a) to (c) and (e) to (g)(1), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

The Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954, as amended, referred to in subsec. (c), is act July 10, 1954, ch. 469, 68 Stat. 454, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 41 (§1691 et seq.) of Title 7, Agriculture. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1691 of Title 7 and Tables.

REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

REFERENCES TO PART I DEEMED TO INCLUDE SECTION 2293

References to part I of subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include a reference to section 2293 of this title. See section 2293(d)(1) of this title.

AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 102-391 amended subsec. (a) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (a) read as follows: "Funds made available under this chapter may be used for procurement outside the United States only if the President determines that such procurement will not result in adverse effects upon the economy of the United States or the industrial mobilization base, with special reference to any areas of labor surplus or to the net position of the United States in its balance of payments with the rest of the world, which outweigh the economic or other advantages to the United States of less costly procurement outside the United States, and only if the price of any commodity procured in bulk is lower than the market price prevailing in the United States at the time of procurement, adjusted for differences in the cost of transportation to destination, quality, and terms of payment."

1985—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 99-83 designated existing provisions as par. (1) and added par. (2).

1980—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 96-533, §705(a), authorized use of funds for procurement of a commodity outside the United States when the commodity to be financed could not reasonably be procured in the United States in fulfillment of objectives of a particular assistance program under which such commodity procurement is to be financed.



Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 96-533, §705(b), added subsec. (g). 1968—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 90-554 added subsec. (f).

1966—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 89-583, §301(b)(1), struck out “surplus” before “agricultural commodity” in three places and inserted “or products thereof available for disposition under the Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954, as amended,” after “commodity” where first appearing.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 89-583, §301(b)(2), added subsec. (e).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with exceptions specified below and certain other exceptions, by section 1-102(a)(1), (e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

Functions of President under subsec. (a), insofar as they related to procurement under part I of subchapter I and part IV of subchapter II of this chapter, delegated to Secretary of State by section 1-201(a)(10) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163.

Functions of President under subsec. (a), except insofar as they related to procurement under part I of subchapter I and part IV of subchapter II of this chapter, excluded from foregoing delegations of functions by section 1-701(d) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2151f, 2293 of this title.

### § 2355. Retention and use of certain items and funds

#### (a) Commodities and defense articles; disposal to prevent spoilage or wastage or to conserve usefulness; funds realized from disposal or transfer

Any commodities and defense articles procured to carry out this chapter shall be retained by, or upon reimbursement, transferred to, and for the use of, such agency of the United States Government as the President may determine in lieu of being disposed of to a foreign country or international organization, whenever in the judgment of the President the best interests of the United States will be served thereby, or whenever such retention is called for by concurrent resolution. Any commodities or defense articles so retained may be disposed of without regard to provisions of law relating to the disposal of property owned by the United States Government, when necessary to prevent spoilage or wastage of such commodities or defense articles or to conserve the usefulness thereof. Funds realized from any disposal or transfer shall revert to the respective appropriation, fund, or account used to procure such commodities or defense articles or to the appropriation, fund, or account currently available for the same general purpose.

#### (b) Commodities transferred as repayment of assistance

Whenever commodities are transferred to the United States Government as repayment of assistance under this chapter, such commodities

may be used in furtherance of the purposes and within the limitations of this chapter.

#### (c) Funds realized as result of illegal transactions

Funds realized as a result of any failure of a transaction financed under authority of subchapter I of this chapter to conform to the requirements of this chapter, or to applicable rules and regulations of the United States Government, or to the terms of any agreement or contract entered into under authority of subchapter I of this chapter, shall revert to the respective appropriation, fund, or account used to finance such transaction or to the appropriation, fund, or account currently available for the same general purpose.

#### (d) Funds realized from sale, transfer, or disposal of returned defense articles

Funds realized by the United States Government from the sale, transfer, or disposal of defense articles returned to the United States Government by a recipient country or international organization as no longer needed for the purpose for which furnished shall be credited to the respective appropriation, fund, or account used to procure such defense articles or to the appropriation, fund, or account currently available for the same general purpose.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §605, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 440; Pub. L. 89-171, pt. III, §301(a), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 658.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subssecs. (a) to (c), was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

#### REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

#### AMENDMENTS

1965—Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 89-171 added subssecs. (c) and (d).

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by section 1-102(a)(1), (e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

Functions of President under subsec. (a), to the extent they relate to other functions under this chapter administered by Department of Defense, delegated to Secretary of Defense by section 1-301(b) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163.

### § 2356. Patents and technical information

#### (a) Practice of invention or disclosure of information; suits against United States for reasonable compensation; jurisdiction; limitation of action; defenses

Whenever, in connection with the furnishing of assistance under this chapter—

(1) an invention or discovery covered by a patent issued by the United States Government is practiced within the United States without the authorization of the owner, or

(2) information, which is (A) protected by law, and (B) held by the United States Government subject to restrictions imposed by the owner, is disclosed by the United States Government or any of its officers, employees, or agents in violation of such restrictions,

the exclusive remedy of the owner, except as provided in subsection (b) of this section, is to sue the United States Government for reasonable and entire compensation for such practice or disclosure in the district court of the United States for the district in which such owner is a resident, or in the United States Court of Federal Claims, within six years after the cause of action arises. Any period during which the United States Government is in possession of a written claim under subsection (b) of this section before mailing a notice of denial of that claim does not count in computing the six years. In any such suit, the United States Government may plead any defense that may be pleaded by a private person in such an action. The last paragraph of section 1498(a) of title 28 shall apply to inventions and information covered by this section.

**(b) Settlement of claims**

Before suit against the United States Government has been instituted, the head of the agency of the United States Government concerned may settle and pay any claim arising under the circumstances described in subsection (a) of this section. No claim may be paid under this subsection unless the amount tendered is accepted by the claimant in full satisfaction.

**(c) Drug products manufactured outside the United States**

Funds appropriated pursuant to this chapter shall not be expended by the United States Government for the acquisition of any drug product or pharmaceutical product manufactured outside the United States if the manufacture of such drug product or pharmaceutical product in the United States would involve the use of, or be covered by, an unexpired patent of the United States which has not previously been held invalid by an unappealed or unappealable judgment or decree of a court of competent jurisdiction, unless such manufacture is expressly authorized by the owner of such patent.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 606, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 440; Pub. L. 97-164, title I, § 160(a)(6), Apr. 2, 1982, 96 Stat. 48; Pub. L. 102-572, title IX, § 902(b)(1), Oct. 29, 1992, 106 Stat. 4516.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (c), was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 102-572 substituted “United States Court of Federal Claims” for “United States Claims Court”.

1982—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 97-164 substituted “United States Claims Court” for “Court of Claims”.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1992 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 102-572 effective Oct. 29, 1992, see section 911 of Pub. L. 102-572, set out as a note under section 171 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1982 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 97-164 effective Oct. 1, 1982, see section 402 of Pub. L. 97-164, set out as a note under section 171 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

**§ 2357. Furnishing of services and commodities**

**(a) Advance-of-funds or reimbursement basis**

Whenever the President determines it to be consistent with and in furtherance of the purposes of subchapter I of this chapter and within the limitations of this chapter, any agency of the United States Government is authorized to furnish services and commodities on an advance-of-funds or reimbursement basis to friendly countries, international organizations, the American Red Cross, and voluntary nonprofit relief agencies registered with and approved by the Agency for International Development (including foreign voluntary nonprofit relief agencies so registered and approved when no United States voluntary nonprofit relief agency is available). Such advances or reimbursements may be credited to the currently applicable appropriation, account, or fund of the agency concerned and shall be available for the purposes for which such appropriation, account, or fund is authorized to be used, under the following circumstances:

(1) Advances or reimbursements which are received under this section within one hundred and eighty days after the close of the fiscal year in which such services and commodities are delivered.

(2) Advances or reimbursements received pursuant to agreements executed under this section in which reimbursement will not be completed within one hundred and eighty days after the close of the fiscal year in which such services and commodities are delivered: *Provided*, That such agreements require the payment of interest at the current rate established pursuant to section 635(b)(1)(B) of title 12, and repayment of such principal and interest does not exceed a period of three years from the date of signing of the agreement to provide the service: *Provided further*, That funds available for this paragraph in any fiscal year shall not exceed \$1,000,000 of the total funds authorized for use in such fiscal year by part I of subchapter I of this chapter, and shall be available only to the extent provided in appropriation Acts. Interest shall accrue as of the date of disbursement to the agency or organization providing such services.

**(b) Agency contracts with individuals to perform services**

When any agency of the United States Government provides services on an advance-of-funds or reimbursable basis under this section, such agency may contract with individuals for personal service abroad or in the United States to

perform such services or to replace officers or employees of the United States Government who are assigned by the agency to provide such services. Such individuals shall not be regarded as employees of the United States Government for the purpose of any law administered by the Director of the Office of Personnel Management.

**(c) Excess property**

(1) Except as provided in subsection (d) of this section, no Government-owned excess property shall be made available under this section, section 2358 of this title, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of subchapter I of this chapter, unless, before the shipment of such property for use in a specified country (or transfer, if the property is already in such country), the agency administering such subchapter I has approved such shipment (or transfer) and made a written determination—

(A) that there is a need for such property in the quantity requested and that such property is suitable for the purpose requested;

(B) as to the status and responsibility of the designated end-user and his ability effectively to use and maintain such property; and

(C) that the residual value, serviceability, and appearance of such property would not reflect unfavorably on the image of the United States and would justify the costs of packing, crating, handling, transportation, and other accessorial costs, and that the residual value at least equals the total of these costs.

(2) For purposes of transferring property described in this subsection in furtherance of the provisions of part VIII of subchapter I of this chapter, the phrase “the agency administering such subchapter I” shall be considered to refer to the Department of State.

**(d) Transfer of Government-owned excess property to enhance environmental protection in foreign countries**

The Secretary of State, acting through the Assistant Secretary of State for Oceans and International Environmental and Scientific Affairs, is authorized to transfer to any friendly country, international organization, the American Red Cross, or other voluntary nonprofit relief agency described in subsection (a) of this section, Government-owned excess property made available under this section or section 2358 of this title in order to support activities carried out under subchapter I of this chapter which are designed to enhance environmental protection in foreign countries if the Secretary of State makes a written determination—

(1) that there is a need for such property in the quantity requested and that such property is suitable for the purpose requested;

(2) as to the status and responsibility of the designated end-user and his ability effectively to use and maintain such property; and

(3) that the residual value, serviceability, and appearance of such property would not reflect unfavorably on the image of the United States and would justify the costs of packing, crating, handling, transportation, and other accessorial costs, and that the residual value at least equals the total of these costs.

(Pub. L. 87–195, pt. III, § 607, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 441; Pub. L. 90–554, pt. III, § 301(b), Oct. 8, 1968, 82

Stat. 963; Pub. L. 94–161, title III, § 315, Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 867; Pub. L. 95–88, title I, § 122(a), Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 541; Pub. L. 95–424, title V, § 503, Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 959; 1978 Reorg. Plan No. 2, § 102, eff. Jan. 1, 1979, 43 F.R. 36037, 92 Stat. 3783; Pub. L. 96–53, title I, § 121, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 366; Pub. L. 99–93, title I, § 129, Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 419.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87–195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§ 2346 et seq.), VI (§ 2348 et seq.), and VIII (§ 2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92–226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa–5 of this title.

REFERENCES TO PART I DEEMED TO INCLUDE SECTION 2293

References to part I of subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include a reference to section 2293 of this title. See section 2293(d)(1) of this title.

AMENDMENTS

1985—Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 99–93, § 129(1)(A), (B), designated existing provisions of subsec. (c) as par. (1), redesignated existing pars. (1), (2), and (3) as subpars. (A), (B), and (C), respectively, and in introductory provisions of par. (1) as so designated substituted “Except as provided in subsection (d) of this section, no” for “No”.

Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 99–93, § 129(1)(C), added par. (2).

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 99–93, § 129(2), added subsec. (d).

1979—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 96–53 substituted “Agency for International Development” for “Advisory Committee on Voluntary Foreign Aid”.

1978—Subsecs. (b), (c). Pub. L. 95–424 added subsec. (b) and redesignated former subsec. (b) as (c).

1977—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 95–88 inserted “(including foreign voluntary nonprofit relief agencies so registered and approved when no United States voluntary nonprofit relief agency is available)” after “and voluntary nonprofit relief agencies registered with and approved by the Advisory Committee on Voluntary Foreign Aid” in provisions preceding par. (1).

1975—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94–161 substituted “currently” for “current”, incorporated text following “Such advances or reimbursements” in provisions designated cl. (1) and added cl. (2).

1968—Pub. L. 90–554 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsec. (b).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1979 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96–53 effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 512(a) of Pub. L. 96–53, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95–424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95–424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

REGULATIONS

Section 122(b) of Pub. L. 95–88 provided that: “For purposes of implementing the amendment made by subsection (a) [amending this section], the President shall issue regulations governing registration with and approval by the Advisory Committee on Voluntary Foreign Aid of foreign voluntary nonprofit agencies.”

## TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“Director of the Office of Personnel Management” substituted for “Civil Service Commission” in subsec. (b) pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1978, §102, 43 F.R. 36037, 92 Stat. 3783, set out under section 1101 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, which transferred all functions vested by statute in the United States Civil Service Commission to the Director of the Office of Personnel Management (except as otherwise specified), effective Jan. 1, 1979, as provided by section 1-102 of Ex. Ord. No. 12107, Dec. 28, 1978, 44 F.R. 1055, set out under section 1101 of Title 5.

## AUTHORITY OF SECRETARY OF STATE

Except as otherwise provided, Secretary of State to have and exercise any authority vested by law in any official or office of Department of State and references to such officials or offices deemed to refer to Secretary of State or Department of State, as appropriate, see section 2651a of this title and section 161(d) of Pub. L. 103-236, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, to be exercised in consultation with Secretary of State, with certain exceptions, by section 1-102(a)(1), (e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

## DELEGATION OF AUTHORITY

Memorandum of President of the United States, Feb. 16, 1995, 60 F.R. 10793, provided:

Memorandum for the Secretary of State [and] the Administrator of the Agency for International Development

By virtue of the authority vested in me by the Constitution and laws of the United States of America, including section 301 of title 3 of the United States Code, I hereby delegate as follows certain authorities vested in the President:

(A) the functions under section 607 of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as amended (FAA) [22 U.S.C. 2357], to the Secretary of State and to the Administrator of the Agency for International Development, respectively, for matters within their respective areas of responsibility; and

(B) the functions in the first proviso under the heading “Population, Development Assistance,” contained in title II of the Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Act, 1995 (Public Law 103-306) [108 Stat. 1611], and in comparable provisions in successor legislation, to the Secretary of State relating to those organizations and programs for which the Secretary of State has funding responsibility.

The delegations of authority described in subparagraph (A) are in addition to other delegations of such authority to the International Development Cooperation Agency.

The delegation of authority described above in subparagraph (B) shall be exercised in lieu of the delegation of the comparable authority to the Administrator of the Agency for International Development by section 1-102(a)(7) of Executive Order No. 12163, as amended [22 U.S.C. 2381 note].

Any reference in this memorandum to any Act, order, determination, or delegation of authority shall be deemed to be a reference to such Act, order, determination, or delegation of authority as amended from time to time.

The functions delegated by this memorandum may be redelegated within the Department of State or the Agency for International Development, as appropriate.

The Secretary of State is authorized and directed to publish this memorandum in the Federal Register.

WILLIAM J. CLINTON.

## TERMINATION OF ADVISORY COMMITTEES

Advisory committees in existence on Jan. 5, 1973, to terminate not later than the expiration of the 2-year period following Jan. 5, 1973, unless, in the case of a committee established by the President or an officer of the Federal Government, such committee is renewed by appropriate action prior to the expiration of such 2-year period, or in the case of a committee established by the Congress, its duration is otherwise provided by law. See section 14 of Pub. L. 92-463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 776, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2358 of this title; title 40 section 512.

## § 2358. Foreign and domestic excess property

**(a) Advance acquisition of property; special account for payment of costs; limitation; use of property**

It is the sense of the Congress that in furnishing assistance under subchapter I of this chapter excess personal property, or (if a substantial savings would occur) other property already owned by an agency of the United States Government, shall be utilized wherever practicable in lieu of or supplementary to the procurement of new items for United States-assisted projects and programs. The President is authorized to maintain in a separate account, which shall, notwithstanding section 1535(d) of title 31, be free from fiscal year limitation, \$5,000,000 of funds made available under part I of subchapter I of this chapter, which may be used to pay costs (including personnel costs) of acquisition, storage, renovation and rehabilitation, packing, crating, handling, transportation, and related costs of property classified as domestic or foreign excess property pursuant to the Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949, as amended (40 U.S.C. 471 et seq.), any property available from an agency of the United States Government, or other property, in advance of known requirements therefor for use in furtherance of the purposes of subchapter I of this chapter: *Provided*, That the amount of property classified as domestic excess property pursuant to the Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949, as amended, held at any one time pursuant to this section shall not exceed \$15,000,000 in total original acquisition cost. Property acquired pursuant to the preceding sentence may be furnished (1) pursuant to any provision of subchapter I of this chapter for which funds are authorized for the furnishing of assistance, in which case the separate account established pursuant to this section shall be repaid from funds made available for such provision for all costs incurred, or (2) pursuant to section 2357 of this title, in which case such separate account shall be repaid in accordance with the provisions of that section for all costs incurred.

**(b) Transfer of domestic excess property**

Property classified as domestic excess property under the Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949, as amended [40 U.S.C. 471 et seq.], shall not be transferred to the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter for use pursuant to

the provisions of subchapter I of this chapter or section 2357 of this title unless (1) such property is transferred for use exclusively by an agency of the United States Government, or (2) it has been determined in the same manner as provided for surplus property in section 203(j) of the Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949, as amended [40 U.S.C. 484(j)], that such property is not needed for donation pursuant to that subsection. The foregoing restrictions shall not apply to the transfer in any fiscal year for use pursuant to the provisions of subchapter I of this chapter of amounts of such property with a total original acquisition cost to the United States Government not exceeding \$45,000,000.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 608, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 441; Pub. L. 89-583, pt. III, § 301(c), Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 804; Pub. L. 90-137, pt. III, § 301(b), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 458; Pub. L. 95-424, title I, § 102(g)(2)(C), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 942; Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 701, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1543.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949, as amended, referred to in text, is act June 30, 1949, ch. 288, 63 Stat. 377, as amended. The excess property provisions of that Act are classified to chapter 10 (§ 471 et seq.) of Title 40, Public Buildings, Property, and Works. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 471 of Title 40 and Tables.

#### REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§ 2346 et seq.), VI (§ 2348 et seq.), and VIII (§ 2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

#### REFERENCES TO PART I DEEMED TO INCLUDE SECTION 2293

References to part I of subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include a reference to section 2293 of this title. See section 2293(d)(1) of this title.

#### CODIFICATION

In subsec. (a), "section 1535(d) of title 31" substituted for "section 1210 of the General Appropriation Act, 1951 (64 Stat. 765) [31 U.S.C. 686-1]" on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, § 4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

#### AMENDMENTS

1981—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 97-113 authorized for subchapter I assistance use of property already owned by an agency of the United States (if a substantial savings would occur) as supplementary to procurement of new items for United States-assisted projects and programs and use of separate account funds for payment of costs of any property available from an agency of the United States.

1978—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 95-424 substituted "part 1 of subchapter 1 of this chapter" for "section 2172 of this title".

1967—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 90-137 required, in furnishing assistance under subchapter I of this chapter, utilization of excess personal property wherever practicable in lieu of new items for United States-assisted projects and programs.

1966—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 89-583 permitted personnel costs attributable to the excess property program to be charged to the separate account for the advance acquisition of property.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS; ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Functions of President under this section delegated and funds available under this chapter allocated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by sections 1-102(a)(1), (e) and 1-801(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2357 of this title; title 40 section 483.

### § 2359. Special accounts

#### (a) Establishment by recipient countries; deposits; availability and utilization

In cases where any commodity is to be furnished on a grant basis under part IV of subchapter I of this chapter under arrangements which will result in the accrual of proceeds to the recipient country from the sale thereof, the President shall require the recipient country to establish a Special Account, and

(1) deposit in the Special Account, under such terms and conditions as may be agreed upon, currency of the recipient country in amounts equal to such proceeds;

(2) make available to the United States Government such portion of the Special Account as may be determined by the President to be necessary for the requirements of the United States Government: *Provided*, That such portion shall not be less than 10 per centum in the case of any country to which such minimum requirement has been applicable under any Act repealed by this chapter; and

(3) utilize the remainder of the Special Account for programs agreed to by the United States Government to carry out the purposes for which new funds authorized by this chapter would themselves be available: *Provided*, That whenever funds from such Special Account are used by a country to make loans, all funds received in repayment of such loans prior to termination of assistance to such country shall be reused only for such purposes as shall have been agreed to between the country and the United States Government.

#### (b) Disposition of unencumbered balances

Any unencumbered balances of funds which remain in the Account upon termination of assistance to such country under this chapter shall be disposed of for such purposes as may, subject to approval by Act of the Congress, be agreed to between such country and the United States Government.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 609, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 442.)

#### SUPERSEDURE OF SECTION

*Pub. L. 103-306, title V, § 536(a)(5), Aug. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 1637, provided that this section is superseded by section 536(a) of Pub. L. 103-306, set out below.*

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75

Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

REFERENCES TO PART IV OF SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED  
REFERENCES TO PART IV OF SUBCHAPTER II

Part IV of subchapter I (§2241 et seq.) of this chapter has been repealed. References to part IV of subchapter I, or any sections thereof, are deemed references to part IV of subchapter II (§2346 et seq.) of this chapter, or to appropriate sections thereof. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 98-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS; ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Functions of President under this section delegated and funds available under this chapter allocated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by sections 1-102(a)(1), (e) and 1-801(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

SEPARATE ACCOUNTS FOR LOCAL CURRENCIES;  
SUPERSEDITION OF SECTION

Pub. L. 103-306, title V, §536, Aug. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 1637, provided that:

“(a) SEPARATE ACCOUNTS FOR LOCAL CURRENCIES.—(1) If assistance is furnished to the government of a foreign country under chapters 1 and 10 of part I [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq., 2293 et seq.] (including the Philippines Multilateral Assistance Initiative) or chapter 4 of part II [22 U.S.C. 2346 et seq.] of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 under agreements which result in the generation of local currencies of that country, the Administrator of the Agency for International Development shall—

“(A) require that local currencies be deposited in a separate account established by that government;

“(B) enter into an agreement with that government which sets forth—

“(i) the amount of the local currencies to be generated, and

“(ii) the terms and conditions under which the currencies so deposited may be utilized, consistent with this section; and

“(C) establish by agreement with that government the responsibilities of the Agency for International Development and that government to monitor and account for deposits into and disbursements from the separate account.

“(2) USES OF LOCAL CURRENCIES.—As may be agreed upon with the foreign government, local currencies deposited in a separate account pursuant to subsection (a), or an equivalent amount of local currencies, shall be used only—

“(A) to carry out chapters 1 or 10 of part I or chapter 4 of part II (as the case may be), for such purposes as—

“(i) project and sector assistance activities, or

“(ii) debt and deficit financing; or

“(B) for the administrative requirements of the United States Government.

“(3) PROGRAMMING ACCOUNTABILITY.—The Agency for International Development shall take all appropriate steps to ensure that the equivalent of the local currencies disbursed pursuant to subsection (a)(2)(A) from the separate account established pursuant to subsection (a)(1) are used for the purposes agreed upon pursuant to subsection (a)(2).

“(4) TERMINATION OF ASSISTANCE PROGRAMS.—Upon termination of assistance to a country under chapters 1 or 10 of part I or chapter 4 of part II (as the case may be), any unencumbered balances of funds which remain in a separate account established pursuant to subsection (a) shall be disposed of for such purposes as may be agreed to by the government of that country and the United States Government.

“(5) CONFORMING AMENDMENTS.—The provisions of this subsection shall supersede the tenth and eleventh

provisos contained under the heading ‘Sub-Saharan Africa, Development Assistance’ as included in the Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Act, 1989 [Pub. L. 100-461, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-7] and sections 531(d) and 609 of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2346(d), 2359].

“(b) SEPARATE ACCOUNTS FOR CASH TRANSFERS.—(1) If assistance is made available to the government of a foreign country, under chapters 1 or 10 of part I [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq., 2293 et seq.] (including the Philippines Multilateral Assistance Initiative) or chapter 4 of part II [22 U.S.C. 2346 et seq.] of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as cash transfer assistance or as nonproject sector assistance, that country shall be required to maintain such funds in a separate account and not commingle them with any other funds.

“(2) APPLICABILITY OF OTHER PROVISIONS OF LAW.—Such funds may be obligated and expended notwithstanding provisions of law which are inconsistent with the nature of this assistance including provisions which are referenced in the Joint Explanatory Statement of the Committee of Conference accompanying House Joint Resolution 648 (H. Report No. 98-1159).

“(3) NOTIFICATION.—At least fifteen days prior to obligating any such cash transfer or nonproject sector assistance, the President shall submit a notification through the regular notification procedures of the Committees on Appropriations, which shall include a detailed description of how the funds proposed to be made available will be used, with a discussion of the United States interests that will be served by the assistance (including, as appropriate, a description of the economic policy reforms that will be promoted by such assistance).

“(4) EXEMPTION.—Nonproject sector assistance funds may be exempt from the requirements of subsection (b)(1) only through the notification procedures of the Committees on Appropriations.”

Similar provisions were contained in the following prior appropriation acts:

Pub. L. 103-87, title V, §537, Sept. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 955.

Pub. L. 102-391, title V, §571, Oct. 6, 1992, 106 Stat. 1681.

Pub. L. 101-513, title V, §575, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2042.

Pub. L. 101-167, title II, title V, §592, Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1207, 1253.

Pub. L. 100-461, title II, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-12.

Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title II], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-143.

Pub. L. 99-500, §101(f) [title II], Oct. 18, 1986, 100 Stat. 1783-213, 1783-221, and Pub. L. 99-591, §101(f) [title II], Oct. 30, 1986, 100 Stat. 3341-214, 3341-221.

**§ 2360. Transfer of funds between accounts**

**(a) Necessity of transfer; limitations**

Whenever the President determines it to be necessary for the purposes of this chapter, not to exceed 10 per centum of the funds made available for any provision of this chapter (except funds made available pursuant to subpart IV of part II of subchapter I of this chapter or for section 2763 of this title) may be transferred to, and consolidated with, the funds made available for any provision of this chapter (except funds made available under part II of subchapter II of this chapter), and may be used for any of the purposes for which such funds may be used, except that the total in the provision for the benefit of which the transfer is made shall not be increased by more than 20 per centum of the amount of funds made available for such provision.

**(b) Augmentation of other appropriations**

The authority contained in this section and in sections 2261, 2318 and 2364 of this title, shall not

be used to augment appropriations made available pursuant to sections 2396(g)(1) and 2397 of this title or used otherwise to finance activities which normally would be financed from appropriations for administrative expenses.

**(c) Military and development assistance purposes**

Any funds which the President has notified Congress pursuant to section 2413 of this title that he intends to provide in military assistance to any country may be transferred to, and consolidated with, any other funds he has notified Congress pursuant to such section that he intends to provide to that country for development assistance purposes.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 610, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 442; Pub. L. 87-565, pt. III, § 301(a), Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 260; Pub. L. 89-371, § 3, Mar. 18, 1966, 80 Stat. 74; Pub. L. 89-583, pt. III, § 301(d), Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 804; Pub. L. 90-137, pt. III, § 301(c), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 458; Pub. L. 91-175, pt. III, § 301, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 820; Pub. L. 93-559, § 19(a), Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1800; Pub. L. 95-384, § 10(b)(2), Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 735; Pub. L. 101-623, § 10(a), Nov. 21, 1990, 104 Stat. 3356.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 101-623 inserted "or for section 2763 of this title" after "subchapter I of this chapter" and struck out "other" after second reference to "funds made available for any".

1978—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 95-384 struck out provisions authorizing transfer and consolidation of not to exceed \$9,000,000 of the funds appropriated under section 2242 of this title with the funds appropriated under section 2397(a) of this title to be available solely for additional administrative expenses incurred in connection with programs in Vietnam.

1974—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 93-559, § 19(a)(1), inserted provisions excepting funds made available under part II of subchapter II of this chapter from the designation of funds subject to consolidation.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 93-559, § 19(a)(2), added subsec. (c).  
1969—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 91-175 inserted provision excepting funds made available pursuant to subpart IV of part II of subchapter I of this chapter from the designation of funds subject to consolidation.

1967—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 90-137 increased limitation on funds available for transfer from \$5,000,000 to \$9,000,000.

1966—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 89-583 substituted provisions authorizing transfer of \$5,000,000 for administrative expenses for any fiscal year incurred in connection with programs in Vietnam for provisions authorizing transfer of \$1,400,000 for administrative expenses for fiscal year 1966 incurred in connection with programs in the Republic of Vietnam.

Pub. L. 89-371 authorized transfer of \$1,400,000 for administrative expenses for fiscal year 1966 incurred in connection with programs in the Republic of Vietnam.

1962—Pub. L. 87-565 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsec. (b).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Section 10(b) of Pub. L. 101-623 provided that: "The amendments made by subsection (a) [amending this section] apply with respect to funds made available for fiscal year 1991 or any fiscal year thereafter."

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2151g, 2161, 2222, 2291e, 2292n, 2293, 2348a, 2364, 2394, 2411 of this title.

**§ 2361. Completion of plans and cost estimates**

**(a) Restriction on agreements or grants**

No agreement or grant which constitutes an obligation of the United States Government in excess of \$500,000 under section 1501 of title 31 shall be made for any assistance authorized under part I of subchapter I of this chapter, subpart II of part II of subchapter I of this chapter, or part IV of subchapter II of this chapter—

(1) if such agreement or grant requires substantive technical or financial planning, until engineering, financial, and other plans necessary to carry out such assistance, and a reasonably firm estimate of the cost to the United States Government of providing such assistance, have been completed; and

(2) if such agreement or grant requires legislative action within the recipient country, unless such legislative action may reasonably be anticipated to be completed in time to permit the orderly accomplishment of the purposes of such agreement or grant.

**(b) Plans for water or related land resource construction projects; computation of benefits and costs**

Plans required under subsection (a) of this section for any water or related land resource construction project or program shall include a computation of benefits and costs made insofar as practicable in accordance with the principles, standards, and procedures established pursuant to the Water Resources Planning Act (42 U.S.C. 1962, et seq.) or acts amendatory or supplementary thereto.

**(c) Contracts for construction outside United States; competitive basis**

To the maximum extent practicable, all contracts for construction outside the United States made in connection with any agreement or grant subject to subsection (a) of this section shall be made on a competitive basis.

**(d) Engineering, financial, and other plans**

Subsection (a) of this section shall not apply to any assistance furnished for the sole purpose of preparation of engineering, financial, and other plans.

**(e) Certification of country capability to maintain and utilize projects as prerequisite to assistance for capital projects exceeding cost limitations**

In addition to any other requirements of this section, no assistance authorized under part I of subchapter I of this chapter, subpart II of part II of subchapter I of this chapter, or part IV of subchapter II of this chapter shall be furnished with respect to any capital assistance project estimated to cost in excess of \$1,000,000 until the head of the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter has received and taken into consideration a certification from the principal officer of such agency in the country in which the project is located as to the capability of the country (both financial and human resources) to effectively maintain

and utilize the project taking into account among other things the maintenance and utilization of projects in such country previously financed or assisted by the United States.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 611, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 442; Pub. L. 87-565, pt. III, § 301(b), Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 260; Pub. L. 88-205, pt. III, § 301(c), Dec. 16, 1963, 77 Stat. 385; Pub. L. 90-137, pt. II, § 301(d), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 458; Pub. L. 95-424, title I, § 102(g)(2)(D), (E), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 943; Pub. L. 96-53, title I, § 117, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 365; Pub. L. 99-83, title XII, §§ 1208, 1211(b)(2), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 278, 279.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Water Resources Planning Act, referred to in subsec. (b), is Pub. L. 89-80, July 22, 1965, 79 Stat. 244, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 19B (§1962 et seq.) of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1962 of Title 42 and Tables.

#### REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§ 2346 et seq.), VI (§ 2348 et seq.), and VIII (§ 2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

#### REFERENCES TO PART I DEEMED TO INCLUDE SECTION 2293

References to part I of subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include a reference to section 2293 of this title. See section 2293(d)(1) of this title.

#### AMENDMENTS

1985—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99-83, § 1208(1), substituted “\$500,000” for “\$100,000”.

Pub. L. 99-83, § 1211(b)(2), substituted reference to section 1501 of title 31, for reference to section 1311 of the Supplemental Appropriation Act, 1955.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 99-83, § 1208(2), substituted “the principles, standards, and procedures established pursuant to the Water Resources Planning Act (42 U.S.C. 1962, et seq.) or acts amendatory or supplementary thereto” for “the procedures set forth in the Principles and Standards for Planning Water and Related Land Resources, dated October 25, 1973, with respect to such computations”.

1979—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 96-53 substituted “Principles and Standards for Planning Water and Related Land Resources, dated October 25, 1973” for “Memorandum of the President dated May 15, 1962”.

1978—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 95-424, § 102(g)(2)(D), substituted “part I of subchapter I of this chapter, subpart II of part II of subchapter I of this chapter, or part IV of subchapter II of this chapter” for “subparts I, II, and VI of part II and part IV of subchapter I of this chapter”.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 95-424, § 102(g)(2)(E), substituted “part I of subchapter I of this chapter, subpart II of part II of subchapter I of this chapter, or part IV of subchapter II of this chapter” for “subparts I, II, or VI of part II or part IV of subchapter I of this chapter”.

1967—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 90-137 added subsec. (e).

1963—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 88-205 substituted “the Memorandum of the President dated May 15, 1962,” for “circular A-47 of the Bureau of the Budget.”

1962—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 87-565 included subpart VI of part II of subchapter I of this chapter within the restriction.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1979 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-53 effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 512(a) of Pub. L. 96-53, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

### § 2362. Use of foreign currencies

#### (a) Currencies received in payment for non-military assistance; foreign obligations

Except as otherwise provided in this chapter or other Acts, foreign currencies received either (1) as a result of the furnishing of nonmilitary assistance under the Mutual Security Act of 1954, as amended, or any Act repealed thereby, and unobligated on September 3, 1961, or (2) on or after September 4, 1961, as a result of the furnishing of nonmilitary assistance under the Mutual Security Act of 1954, as amended, or any Act repealed thereby, or (3) as a result of the furnishing of assistance under subchapter I of this chapter, which are in excess of amounts reserved under authority of section 2455(d) of this title or any other Act relating to educational and cultural exchanges, may be sold by the Secretary of the Treasury to agencies of the United States Government for payment of their obligations outside the United States, and the United States dollars received as reimbursement shall be deposited into miscellaneous receipts of the Treasury. Foreign currencies so received which are in excess of the amounts so reserved and of the requirements of the United States Government in payment of its obligations outside the United States, as such requirements may be determined from time to time by the President, shall be available for the authorized purposes of subchapter I of this chapter in such amounts as may be specified from time to time in appropriation Acts.

#### (b) United States operations abroad; excess foreign currencies

Any Act of the Congress making appropriations to carry out programs under this chapter or any other Act for United States operations abroad is hereby authorized to provide for the utilization of United States-owned excess foreign currencies to carry out any such operations authorized by law.

As used in this subsection, the term “excess foreign currencies” means foreign currencies or credits owned by or owed to the United States which are, under applicable agreements with the foreign country concerned, available for the use of the United States Government and are determined by the President to be excess to the normal requirements of departments and agencies of the United States for such currencies or credits and are not prohibited from use under this subsection by an agreement entered into with the foreign country concerned.

The President shall take all appropriate steps to assure that, to the maximum extent possible,



United States-owned foreign currencies are utilized in lieu of dollars. Dollar funds made available pursuant to this chapter shall not be expended for goods and services when United States-owned foreign currencies are available for such purposes unless the administrative official approving the voucher certifies as to the reason for the use of dollars in each case.

**(c) Voluntary family planning programs; limitation**

In addition to funds otherwise available, excess foreign currencies, as defined in subsection (b) of this section, may be made available to friendly foreign governments and to private, nonprofit United States organizations to carry out voluntary family planning programs in countries which request such assistance. No such program shall be assisted unless the President has received assurances that in the administration of such program the recipient will take reasonable precautions to insure that no person receives any family planning assistance or supplies unless he desires such services. The excess foreign currencies made available under this subsection shall not, in any one year, exceed 5 per centum of the aggregate of all excess foreign currencies. As used in this subsection, the term "voluntary family planning program" includes, but is not limited to, demographic studies, medical and psychological research, personnel training, the construction and staffing of clinics and rural health centers, specialized training of doctors and paramedical personnel, the manufacture of medical supplies, and the dissemination of family planning information, medical assistance, and supplies to individuals who desire such assistance.

**(d) Reciprocal release of dollar value equivalents**

In furnishing assistance under this chapter to the government of any country in which the United States owns excess foreign currencies as defined in subsection (b) of this section, except those currencies generated under the Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954, as amended [7 U.S.C. 1691 et seq.], the President shall endeavor to obtain from the recipient country an agreement for the release, on such terms and conditions as the President shall determine, of an amount of such currencies up to the equivalent of the dollar value of assistance furnished by the United States for programs as may be mutually agreed upon by the recipient country and the United States to carry out the purposes for which new funds authorized by this chapter would themselves be available.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 612, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 443; Pub. L. 88-205, pt. III, § 301(d), Dec. 16, 1963, 77 Stat. 385; Pub. L. 88-633, pt. III, § 301(c), Oct. 7, 1964, 78 Stat. 1012; Pub. L. 88-638, § 2(1), Oct. 8, 1964, 78 Stat. 1037; Pub. L. 89-171, pt. III, § 301(b), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 659; Pub. L. 89-583, pt. III, § 301(e), Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 805; Pub. L. 91-175, pt. III, § 302, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 820.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a), (b), and (d), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

The Mutual Security Act of 1954, referred to in subsection (a), is act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, 68 Stat. 832, as amended by acts July 8, 1955, ch. 301, 69 Stat. 283; July 18, 1956, ch. 627, §§ 2 to 11, 70 Stat. 555; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, 71 Stat. 355; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. I, §§ 101 to 103, ch. II, §§ 201 to 205, ch. III, § 301, ch. IV, § 401, ch. V, § 501, 72 Stat. 261; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, § 2, ch. I, § 101, ch. II, §§ 201 to 205(a) to (i), (k) to (n), ch. III, § 301, ch. IV, § 401(a) to (k), (m), 73 Stat. 246; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. I to V, 74 Stat. 134, which was principally classified to chapter 24 (§ 1750 et seq.) of this title and which was repealed by act July 18, 1956, ch. 627, § 8(m), 70 Stat. 559, Pub. L. 85-141, §§ 2(e), 3, 4(b), 11(d), Aug. 14, 1957, 71 Stat. 356, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. II, §§ 205(j), ch. IV, 401(1), July 24, 1959, 73 Stat. 250, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. II, §§ 203(d), 204(k), May 14, 1960, 74 Stat. 138, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 642(a)(2), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460, Pub. L. 94-329, title II, § 212(b)(1), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 745, except for sections 1754, 1783, 1796, 1853, 1922, 1928, and 1937 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1754 of this title and Tables.

The Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954, as amended, referred to in subsection (d), is act July 10, 1954, ch. 469, 68 Stat. 454, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 41 (§ 1691 et seq.) of Title 7, Agriculture. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1691 of Title 7 and Tables.

REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§ 2346 et seq.), VI (§ 2348 et seq.), and VIII (§ 2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

1969—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 91-175 added subsec. (d).  
 1966—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 89-583 added subsec. (c).  
 1965—Subsecs. (b), (c). Pub. L. 89-171 redesignated subsec. (c) as (b) and prohibited dollar funds made available pursuant to this chapter from being expended for goods and services when United States-owned foreign currencies are available for such purposes unless the administrative official approving the voucher certifies as to the reason for the use of dollars in each case.  
 1964—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 88-638 redesignated subsec. (b), as added by Pub. L. 88-205, as subsec. (t) of section 1704 of Title 7, Agriculture.  
 Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 88-633 added subsec. (c).  
 1963—Pub. L. 88-205 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsec. (b).

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by sections 1-102(a)(1), (e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

Functions of President under the second sentence of subsec. (a) of this section in relation to determination of excess foreign currencies delegated to Secretary of the Treasury, pursuant to section 1-501(a)(2) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1754 of this title.

**§ 2363. Accounting, valuation, reporting, and administration of foreign currencies**

**(a) Responsibility of Secretary of the Treasury; regulations**

Under the direction of the President, the Secretary of the Treasury shall have responsibility

for valuation and central accounting with respect to foreign credits (including currencies) owed to or owned by the United States. In order to carry out such responsibility the Secretary shall issue regulations binding upon all agencies of the Government.

**(b) Establishment of exchange rates**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall have sole authority to establish for all foreign currencies or credits the exchange rates at which such currencies are to be reported by all agencies of the Government.

**(c) Repealed. Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(1), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560**

**(d) Interest income on foreign currency proceeds; regulations; waiver; report to Congress**

In cases where assistance is to be furnished to any recipient country in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter or any other Act on a basis which will result in the accrual of foreign currency proceeds to the United States, the Secretary of the Treasury shall issue regulations requiring that agreements, in respect of such assistance, include provisions for the receipt of interest income on the foreign currency proceeds deposited in authorized depositories: *Provided*, That whenever the Secretary of State determines it not to be in the national interest to conclude arrangements for the receipt of interest income he may waive the requirement thereof: *Provided further*, That the Secretary of State, or his delegate, shall promptly make a complete report to the Congress on each such determination and the reasons therefor.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 613, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 443; Pub. L. 89-171, pt. III, § 301(c), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 659; Pub. L. 94-273, § 46, Apr. 21, 1976, 90 Stat. 382; Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(1), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (d), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1981—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 97-113 struck out subsec. (c) which provided for semi-annual reports on foreign currencies acquired without payment of dollars by the United States. See section 2394(a)(8) of this title.

1976—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 94-273 inserted provision relating to reports after Dec. 31, 1975.

1965—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 89-171 added subsec. (d).

**§ 2364. Special authorities**

**(a) Furnishing of assistance and arms export sales, credits, and guaranties upon determination and notification of Congress of importance and vitality of such action to security interests and national security interests of United States; policy justification; fiscal year limitations; transfers between accounts**

(1) The President may authorize the furnishing of assistance under this chapter without regard to any provision of this chapter, the Arms

Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.], any law relating to receipts and credits accruing to the United States, and any Act authorizing or appropriating funds for use under this chapter, in furtherance of any of the purposes of this chapter, when the President determines, and so notifies in writing the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, that to do so is important to the security interests of the United States.

(2) The President may make sales, extend credit, and issue guaranties under the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.], without regard to any provision of this chapter, the Arms Export Control Act, any law relating to receipts and credits accruing to the United States, and any Act authorizing or appropriating funds for use under the Arms Export Control Act, in furtherance of any of the purposes of such Act, when the President determines, and so notifies in writing the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, that to do so is vital to the national security interests of the United States.

(3) Before exercising the authority granted in this subsection, the President shall consult with, and shall provide a written policy justification to, the Committee on Foreign Affairs and the Committee on Appropriations of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations and the Committee on Appropriations of the Senate.

(4)(A) The authority of this subsection may not be used in any fiscal year to authorize—

(i) more than \$750,000,000 in sales to be made under the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.];

(ii) the use of more than \$250,000,000 of funds made available for use under this chapter or the Arms Export Control Act; and

(iii) the use of more than \$100,000,000 of foreign currencies accruing under this chapter or any other law.

(B) If the authority of this subsection is used both to authorize a sale under the Arms Export Control Act and to authorize funds to be used under the Arms Export Control Act or under this chapter with respect to the financing of that sale, then the use of the funds shall be counted against the limitation in subparagraph (A)(i) and the portion, if any, of the sale which is not so financed shall be counted against the limitation in subparagraph (A)(i).

(C) Not more than \$50,000,000 of the \$250,000,000 limitation provided in subparagraph (A)(ii) may be allocated to any one country in any fiscal year unless that country is a victim of active aggression, and not more than \$500,000,000 of the aggregate limitation of \$1,000,000,000 provided in subparagraphs (A)(i) and (A)(ii) may be allocated to any one country in any fiscal year.

(5) The authority of this section may not be used to waive the limitations on transfers contained in section 2360(a) of this title.

**(b) United States obligations in West Germany**

Whenever the President determines it to be important to the national interest, he may use funds available for the purposes of part IV of

subchapter I of this chapter in order to meet the responsibilities or objectives of the United States in Germany, including West Berlin, and without regard to such provisions of law as he determines should be disregarded to achieve this purpose.

**(c) Certification by President of inadvisability to specify nature of use of funds; reports to Congress**

The President is authorized to use amounts not to exceed \$50,000,000 of the funds made available under this chapter pursuant to his certification that it is inadvisable to specify the nature of the use of such funds, which certification shall be deemed to be a sufficient voucher for such amounts. The President shall fully inform the chairman and ranking minority member of the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and the chairman and ranking minority member of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate of each use of funds under this subsection prior to the use of such funds.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 614, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 444; Pub. L. 89-583, pt. III, § 301(f), (g), Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 805; Pub. L. 90-137, pt. III, § 301(e), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 459; Pub. L. 93-559, § 19(b), Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1800; Pub. L. 96-533, title I, § 117(a), Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3140; Pub. L. 99-83, title I, § 128, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 206; Pub. L. 101-222, § 8, Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1899; Pub. L. 103-199, title VII, § 705(2), Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2328.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (c), was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

The Arms Export Control Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(1), (2), (4)(A), (B), is Pub. L. 90-629, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1320, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 39 (§ 2751 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2751 of this title and Tables.

REFERENCES TO PART IV OF SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED  
REFERENCES TO PART IV OF SUBCHAPTER II

Part IV of subchapter I (§ 2241 et seq.) of this chapter has been repealed. References to part IV of subchapter I, or any sections thereof, are deemed references to part IV of subchapter II (§ 2346 et seq.) of this chapter, or to appropriate sections thereof. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

1993—Subsec. (a)(4)(C). Pub. L. 103-199 struck out “Communist or Communist-supported” after “victim of active”.

1989—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 101-222 amended second sentence generally. Prior to amendment, second sentence read as follows: “The President shall promptly and fully inform the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the chairman and ranking minority member of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate of each use of funds under this subsection.”

1985—Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 99-83 designated existing provisions as subpar. (A), added cl. (i) and designations “(ii)” and “(iii)”, struck out fiscal year limitation for any one country, and added subpars. (B) and (C).

1980—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 96-533, in revising subsec. (a), incorporated part of existing first sentence in pro-

visions designated par. (1), inserted reference to Arms Export Control Act, struck out reference to Mutual Defense Assistance Control Act of 1951, required notification of the Speaker of the House and chairman of the Senate Committee on Foreign Relations, and substituted “security interests” for “security”; inserted pars. (2) and (3); incorporated part of existing first sentence, second sentence, and substance of third sentence in provisions designated par. (4) and inserted reference to the Arms Export Control Act; and designated fourth sentence as par. (5) and substituted therein “may not” for “shall not”.

1974—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 93-559 provided that the authority of the section shall not be used to waive the limitations on transfers contained in section 2360(a) of this title.

1967—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 90-137 substituted “506” for “510”, classified to the Code as section 2318 of this title.

1966—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 89-583, § 301(f), provided that the \$50,000,000 limitation on allocation of funds to any country in any one fiscal year shall not apply to any country which is a victim of active Communist or Communist-supported aggression.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 89-583, § 301(g), inserted provision for reports to Congress of use of funds under this subsec.

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under subsec. (b), except the function of determining which provisions of law should be disregarded, delegated to Secretary of State by sections 1-201(a)(11) and 1-701(e)(3) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56674, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2151g, 2161, 2222, 2314, 2360, 2394, 2413, 2780, 3281 of this title.

**§ 2365. Contract authority**

Provisions of this chapter authorizing the appropriation of funds shall be construed to authorize the granting in any appropriation Act of authority to enter into contracts, within the amounts so authorized to be appropriated, creating obligations in advance of appropriations.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 615, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 444.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

**§ 2366. Availability of funds**

Except as otherwise provided in this chapter, funds shall be available to carry out the provisions of this chapter as authorized and appropriated to the President each fiscal year.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 616, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 444.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

## ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Funds available to President for carrying out this chapter, with specified exceptions, allocated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency by section 1-801(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56678, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

## ADMINISTRATION OF FUNDS

Pub. L. 87-329, title I, §112, Sept. 30, 1961, 75 Stat. 719, provided that funds appropriated under Pub. L. 87-329, popularly known as the Foreign Assistance and Related Agencies Appropriation Act, 1962, should be administered with a favorable view toward those recipient nations which share the view of the United States on the world crisis.

**§ 2367. Termination of assistance; availability of funds for winding up programs; participant training**

Assistance under any provision of this chapter may, unless sooner terminated by the President, be terminated by concurrent resolution. Funds made available under this chapter shall remain available for a period not to exceed eight months from the date of termination of assistance under this chapter for the necessary expenses of winding up programs related thereto. In order to ensure the effectiveness of assistance under this chapter, such expenses for orderly termination of programs may include the obligation and expenditure of funds to complete the training or studies outside their countries of origin of students whose course of study or training program began before assistance was terminated.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §617, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 444; Pub. L. 93-189, §14, Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 722; Pub. L. 96-533, title III, §310, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3148.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

## AMENDMENTS

1980—Pub. L. 96-533 authorized expenses for termination of programs to include completion of training or studies for students commenced outside their countries of origin prior to such termination.

1973—Pub. L. 93-189 substituted “eight months” for “twelve months”.

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by sections 1-102(a)(1), (e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

Functions of President under this section, insofar as they relate to part VIII of subchapter I of this chapter

(§2291 et seq. of this title) and subchapter II of this chapter (§2301 et seq. of this title) delegated to Secretary of State pursuant to section 1-201(a)(17) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2151n of this title.

**§§ 2368, 2369. Repealed. Pub. L. 95-424, title VI, § 604, Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 961**

Section 2368, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §618, as added Pub. L. 87-565, pt. III, §301(c), Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 260, related to payment to the United States regarding the Settlement of Postwar Economic Assistance to Japan.

A prior section 618 of Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 444, relating to economic assistance to Latin America, was repealed by Pub. L. 87-565, pt. III, §301(c), Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 260.

Section 2369, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §619, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 444, related to assistance to newly independent countries.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as an Effective Date of 1978 Amendment note under section 2151 of this title.

**§ 2370. Prohibitions against furnishing assistance**

**(a) Cuba; embargo on all trade**

(1) No assistance shall be furnished under this chapter to the present government of Cuba. As an additional means of implementing and carrying into effect the policy of the preceding sentence, the President is authorized to establish and maintain a total embargo upon all trade between the United States and Cuba.

(2) Except as may be deemed necessary by the President in the interest of the United States, no assistance shall be furnished under this chapter to any government of Cuba, nor shall Cuba be entitled to receive any quota authorizing the importation of Cuban sugar into the United States or to receive any other benefit under any law of the United States, until the President determines that such government has taken appropriate steps according to international law standards to return to United States citizens, and to entities not less than 50 per centum beneficially owned by United States citizens, or to provide equitable compensation to such citizens and entities for property taken from such citizens and entities on or after January 1, 1959, by the Government of Cuba.

**(b) Repealed. Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(1), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560**

**(c) Indebtedness of foreign country to United States citizen or person**

No assistance shall be provided under this chapter to the government of any country which is indebted to any United States citizen or person for goods or services furnished or ordered where (i) such citizen or person has exhausted available legal remedies, which shall include arbitration, or (ii) the debt is not denied or contested by such government, or (iii) such indebtedness arises under an unconditional guaranty of payment given by such government, or any predecessor government, directly or indirectly, through any controlled entity: *Provided*, That the President does not find such action contrary to the national security.

**(d) Productive enterprises competing with United States enterprise; conditions on assistance; import controls; waiver of restriction by President**

No assistance shall be furnished on a loan basis under part I of subchapter I of this chapter for construction or operation of any productive enterprise in any country where such enterprise will compete with United States enterprise unless such country has agreed that it will establish appropriate procedures to prevent the exportation for use or consumption in the United States of more than twenty per centum of the annual production of such facility during the life of the loan. In case of failure to implement such agreement by the other contracting party, the President is authorized to establish necessary import controls to effectuate the agreement. The restrictions imposed by or pursuant to this subsection may be waived by the President where he determines that such waiver is in the national security interest.

**(e) Nationalization, expropriation or seizure of property of United States citizens, or taxation or other exaction having same effect; failure to compensate or to provide relief from taxes, exactions, or conditions; report on full value of property by Foreign Claims Settlement Commission; act of state doctrine**

(1) The President shall suspend assistance to the government of any country to which assistance is provided under this chapter or any other Act when the government of such country or any government agency or subdivision within such country on or after January 1, 1962—

(A) has nationalized or expropriated or seized ownership or control of property owned by any United States citizen or by any corporation, partnership, or association not less than 50 per centum beneficially owned by United States citizens, or

(B) has taken steps to repudiate or nullify existing contracts or agreements with any United States citizen or any corporation, partnership, or association not less than 50 per centum beneficially owned by United States citizens, or

(C) has imposed or enforced discriminatory taxes or other exactions, or restrictive maintenance or operational conditions, or has taken other actions, which have the effect of nationalizing, expropriating, or otherwise seizing ownership or control of property so owned,

and such country, government agency, or government subdivision fails within a reasonable time (not more than six months after such action, or, in the event of a referral to the Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States within such period as provided herein, not more than twenty days after the report of the Commission is received) to take appropriate steps, which may include arbitration, to discharge its obligations under international law toward such citizen or entity, including speedy compensation for such property in convertible foreign exchange, equivalent to the full value thereof, as required by international law, or fails to take steps designed to provide relief from such taxes, exactions, or conditions, as the case may be; and such suspension shall continue

until the President is satisfied that appropriate steps are being taken, and provisions of this subsection shall not be waived with respect to any country unless the President determines and certifies that such a waiver is important to the national interests of the United States. Such certification shall be reported immediately to Congress.

Upon request of the President (within seventy days after such action referred to in subparagraphs (A), (B), or (C) of this paragraph, the Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States (established pursuant to Reorganization Plan No. 1 of 1954, 68 Stat. 1279) is hereby authorized to evaluate expropriated property, determining the full value of any property nationalized, expropriated, or seized, or subjected to discriminatory or other actions as aforesaid, for purposes of this subsection and to render an advisory report to the President within ninety days after such request. Unless authorized by the President, the Commission shall not publish its advisory report except to the citizen or entity owning such property. There is hereby authorized to be appropriated such amount, to remain available until expended, as may be necessary from time to time to enable the Commission to carry out expeditiously its functions under this subsection.

(2) Notwithstanding any other provision of law, no court in the United States shall decline on the ground of the federal act of state doctrine to make a determination on the merits giving effect to the principles of international law in a case in which a claim of title or other rights to property is asserted by any party including a foreign state (or a party claiming through such state) based upon (or traced through) a confiscation or other taking after January 1, 1959, by an act of that state in violation of the principles of international law, including the principles of compensation and the other standards set out in this subsection: *Provided*, That this subparagraph shall not be applicable (1) in any case in which an act of a foreign state is not contrary to international law or with respect to a claim of title or other right to property acquired pursuant to an irrevocable letter of credit of not more than 180 days duration issued in good faith prior to the time of the confiscation or other taking, or (2) in any case with respect to which the President determines that application of the act of state doctrine is required in that particular case by the foreign policy interests of the United States and a suggestion to this effect is filed on his behalf in that case with the court.

**(f) Prohibition against assistance to Communist countries; conditions for waiver of restriction by President; enumeration of Communist countries; removal from application of provisions; preconditions**

(1) No assistance shall be furnished under this chapter, (except section 2174(b) of this title) to any Communist country. This restriction may not be waived pursuant to any authority contained in this chapter unless the President finds and promptly reports to Congress that: (A) such assistance is vital to the security of the United States; (B) the recipient country is not controlled by the international Communist conspir-

acy; and (C) such assistance will further promote the independence of the recipient country from international communism. For the purposes of this subsection, the phrase “Communist country” includes specifically, but is not limited to, the following countries:

Democratic People’s Republic of Korea,  
 People’s Republic of China,  
 Republic of Cuba,  
 Socialist Republic of Vietnam,  
 Tibet,<sup>1</sup>

(2) Notwithstanding the provisions of paragraph (1) of this subsection, the President may remove a country, for such period as the President determines, from the application of this subsection, and other provisions which reference this subsection, if the President determines and reports to the Congress that such action is important to the national interest of the United States. It is the sense of the Congress that when consideration is given to authorizing assistance to a country removed from the application of this subsection, one of the factors to be weighed, among others, is whether the country in question is giving evidence of fostering the establishment of a genuinely democratic system, with respect for internationally recognized human rights.

**(g) Use of assistance funds to compensate owners for expropriated or nationalized property; waiver for land reform programs**

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, no monetary assistance shall be made available under this chapter to any government or political subdivision or agency of such government which will be used to compensate owners for expropriated or nationalized property and, upon finding by the President that such assistance has been used by any government for such purpose, no further assistance under this chapter shall be furnished to such government until appropriate reimbursement is made to the United States for sums so diverted. This prohibition shall not apply to monetary assistance made available for use by a government (or a political subdivision or agency of a government) to compensate nationals of that country in accordance with a land reform program, if the President determines that monetary assistance for such land reform program will further the national interests of the United States.

**(h) Regulations and procedures to insure aid is not used contrary to the best interests of the United States**

The President shall adopt regulations and establish procedures to insure that United States foreign aid is not used in a manner which, contrary to the best interests of the United States, promotes or assists the foreign aid projects or activities of any country that is a Communist country for purposes of subsection (f) of this section.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. The comma probably should be a period.

**(i) Repealed. Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(1), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560**

**(j) Damage or destruction by mob action of United States property; termination of assistance**

The President shall consider terminating assistance under this chapter or any other Act to any country which permits, or fails to take adequate measures to prevent, the damage or destruction by mob action of United States property within such country, and fails to take appropriate measures to prevent a recurrence thereof and to provide adequate compensation for such damage or destruction.

**(k) Maximum amount of assistance, including military assistance to individual countries without approval of or presentation to Congress**

Without the express approval of Congress, no assistance shall be furnished under this chapter to any country for construction of any productive enterprise with respect to which the aggregate value of assistance to be furnished by the United States will exceed \$100,000,000, except that this sentence does not apply with respect to assistance for construction of any productive enterprise in Egypt which is described in the presentation materials to Congress. Except as otherwise provided in section 2318 of this title, no military assistance shall be furnished to any country under this chapter for carrying out any program, with respect to which the aggregate value of assistance to be furnished beginning July 1, 1966, by the United States will exceed \$100,000,000 unless such program has been included in the presentation to the Congress during its consideration of authorizations for appropriations under this chapter or of appropriations pursuant to authorizations contained in this chapter. No provision of this chapter or any other Act shall be construed to authorize the President to waive the provisions of this subsection.

**(l) Institution of investment guaranty program**

The President shall consider denying assistance under this chapter to the government of any less developed country which, after December 31, 1966, has failed to enter into an agreement with the President to institute the investment guaranty program under section 2194(a)(1) of this title, providing protection against the specific risks of inconvertibility under subparagraph (A), and expropriation or confiscation under subparagraph (B), of such section 2194(a)(1).

**(m) Repealed. Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(1), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560**

**(n) Repealed. Pub. L. 95-88, title I, § 123(b), Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 541**

**(o) Exclusion from assistance of countries seizing or imposing penalties or sanctions against United States fishing vessels**

In determining whether or not to furnish assistance under this chapter, consideration shall be given to excluding from such assistance any country which hereafter seizes, or imposes any

penalty or sanction against, any United States fishing vessel on account of its fishing activities in international waters. The provisions of this subsection shall not be applicable in any case governed by international agreement to which the United States is a party.

**(p) Repealed. Pub. L. 93-559, § 44, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1813**

**(q) Defaults in principal or interest payments on loans; meeting obligations under loans; notice to Congressional committees**

No assistance shall be furnished under this chapter to any country which is in default, during a period in excess of six calendar months, in payment to the United States of principal or interest on any loan made to such country under this chapter, unless such country meets its obligations under the loan or unless the President determines that assistance to such country is in the national interest and notifies the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate of such determination.

**(r) Liability for repayment of principal or interest on loans outstanding after September 19, 1966**

No recipient of a loan made under the authority of this chapter, any part of which is outstanding on or after September 19, 1966, shall be relieved of liability for the repayment of any part of the principal or of interest on such loan.

**(s) Restraint of arms races and proliferation of sophisticated weapons**

(1) In order to restrain arms races and proliferation of sophisticated weapons, and to ensure that resources intended for economic development are not diverted to military purposes, the President shall take into account before furnishing development loans, Alliance loans or supporting assistance to any country under this chapter, and before making sales under the Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954, as amended [7 U.S.C. 1691 et seq.]:

(A) the percentage of the recipient or purchasing country's budget which is devoted to military purposes; and

(B) the degree to which the recipient or purchasing country is using its foreign exchange or other resources to acquire military equipment.

(2) The President shall report annually to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate his actions in carrying out this provision.

**(t) Diplomatic relations; severance, resumption, and negotiation of agreements**

No assistance shall be furnished under this chapter or any other Act, and no sales shall be made under the Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954 [7 U.S.C. 1691 et seq.], in or to any country which has severed or hereafter severs diplomatic relations with the United States or with which the United States has severed or hereafter severs diplomatic relations, unless (1) diplomatic relations have been resumed with such country and (2) agreements for the furnishing of such assistance or the mak-

ing of such sales, as the case may be, have been negotiated and entered into after the resumption of diplomatic relations with such country.

**(u) Status of country with respect to obligations to the United Nations; report to Congress**

In any decision to provide or continue to provide any program of assistance to any country under this chapter, there shall be taken into account the status of the country with respect to its dues, assessments, and other obligations to the United Nations; and where such country is delinquent with respect to any such obligations for the purposes of the first sentence of Article 19 of the United Nations Charter, the President shall furnish the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Speaker of the House of Representatives a report setting forth the assurance given by the government of the country concerned of paying all of its arrearages and of placing its payments of such obligations on a current basis, or a full explanation of the unusual or exceptional circumstances which render it economically incapable of giving such assurance.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 620, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 444; Pub. L. 87-565, pt. III, § 301(d), Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 260; Pub. L. 88-205, pt. III, § 301(e), Dec. 16, 1963, 77 Stat. 386; Pub. L. 88-633, pt. III, § 301(d)-(g), Oct. 7, 1964, 78 Stat. 1013; Pub. L. 89-171, pt. III, § 301(d), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 659; Pub. L. 89-583, pt. III, § 301(h), Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 805, 806; Pub. L. 90-137, pt. III, § 301(f), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 459; Pub. L. 90-554, pt. III, § 301(c), Oct. 8, 1968, 82 Stat. 963; Pub. L. 91-175, pt. III, § 303, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 83 Stat. 92-226, pt. III, § 301, Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 27; Pub. L. 93-189, § 15, Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 722; Pub. L. 93-559, §§ 22-24, 44, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1801, 1802, 1813; Pub. L. 94-104, § 2(c)(1), (2), Oct. 6, 1975, 89 Stat. 509; Pub. L. 94-329, title IV, § 403, title VI, § 606, June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 757, 768; Pub. L. 95-88, title I, § 123(a), (b), Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 541; Pub. L. 95-92, § 22(d), Aug. 4, 1977, 91 Stat. 624; Pub. L. 95-384, § 13(a), Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 737; Pub. L. 95-424, title I, §§ 102(g)(2)(F), 115(k), title V, § 502(d)(1), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 943, 952, 959; Pub. L. 96-533, title II, § 203, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3145; Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, §§ 702, 707, 734(a)(1), (13), (b), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1544, 1546, 1560; Pub. L. 99-83, title XII, §§ 1202, 1203, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 276, 277; Pub. L. 102-511, title IX, § 901, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3355; Pub. L. 103-199, title VII, § 705(3), Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2328; Pub. L. 103-306, title V, § 573, Aug. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 1653.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsections. (a), (c), (e), (f)(1), (g), (j) to (l), (o), (q) to (t), and (u), was in the original "this Act", except in subsec. (u), where it was "the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

Reorganization Plan No. 1 of 1954, 68 Stat. 1279, referred to in subsec. (e)(1), is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

The Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954, as amended, referred to in subsections. (s)(1) and (t), is act July 10, 1954, ch. 469, 68 Stat. 454, which is classified principally to chapter 41 (§ 1691 et seq.) of Title 7, Agriculture. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1691 of Title 7 and Tables.

REFERENCES TO PART I DEEMED TO INCLUDE  
SECTION 2293

References to part I of subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include a reference to section 2293 of this title. See section 2293(d)(1) of this title.

## CODIFICATION

Subsec. (x) was omitted pursuant to Pub. L. 95-384, §13(a), Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 737, which provided that subsec. (x) be of no further force and effect upon the President's determination and certification of certain conditions precedent which was made by Presidential Memorandum dated Sept. 26, 1978. See notes set out below.

## AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (f)(1). Pub. L. 103-306, which directed the amendment of par. (1) by striking out from the list of countries "Mongolian People's Republic.", was executed by striking out "Mongolian People's Republic." to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

1993—Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 103-199 substituted "any country that is a Communist country for purposes of subsection (f) of this section" for "the Communist-bloc countries".

1992—Subsec. (f)(1). Pub. L. 102-511, which directed the amendment of par. (1) by striking out from the list of countries "Czechoslovak Socialist Republic.", "Estonia.", "German Democratic Republic.", "Hungarian People's Republic.", "Latvia.", "Lithuania.", "People's Republic of Albania.", "People's Republic of Bulgaria.", "Polish People's Republic.", "Socialist Federal Republic of Yugoslavia.", "Socialist Republic of Romania.", and "Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (including its captive constituent republics).", was executed by striking out those countries and the comma which followed each country in the original and not a period as shown in the directory language.

1985—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 99-83, §1202, designated existing provisions as par. (1) and redesignated cls. (1), (2), and (3) as (A), (B), and (C), respectively, and added par. (2).

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 99-83, §1203, inserted provisions relating to waiver of prohibitions in cases of land reform programs.

1981—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 97-113, §734(a)(1), struck out subsec. (b) which prohibited aid to countries unless the President determined that they were not dominated by the international Communist movement. See subsec. (f) of this section.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 97-113, §707, substituted "includes specifically, but is not limited to" for "shall include specifically, but not be limited to", repeated in a different sequence the list of countries included within the phrase "Communist country", and substituted "Democratic People's Republic of Korea" for "North Korean Peoples Republic", "German Democratic Republic" for "German Democratic Republic (East Germany)", "Mongolian People's Republic" for "Outer Mongolia-Mongolian Peoples Republic", "Republic of Cuba" for "Cuba", "Socialist Federal Republic of Yugoslavia" for "Federal Peoples Republic of Yugoslavia", "Socialist Republic of Romania" for "Rumanian Peoples Republic", and "Socialist Republic of Vietnam" for "North Vietnam".

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 97-113, §734(a)(1), struck out subsec. (i) which prohibited aid to countries determined by the President to be engaging in or prepared for aggressive military efforts, insurrection, or subversion against the United States or any country receiving United States aid.

Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 97-113, §702, struck out "for fiscal year 1977, fiscal year 1980, or fiscal year 1981" after "presentation materials to Congress".

Subsec. (m). Pub. L. 97-113, §734(a)(1), struck out subsec. (m) which prohibited grant assistance, except for International Military Education and Training, to any economically developed nation capable of sustaining its own defense burden and economic growth.

Subsec. (s)(1). Pub. L. 97-113, §734(b), substituted in subpar. (B) "foreign exchange or other resources" for "foreign exchange resources" and struck out subpar. (C), which directed the President to take into account the amount spent by the recipient or purchasing country for the purchase of sophisticated weapons systems, such as missile systems and jet aircraft for military purposes, from any country.

1980—Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 96-533 exempted from express Congressional approval productive enterprises in Egypt described in the presentation to Congress for fiscal years 1980 and 1981.

1978—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 95-424, §102(g)(2)(F), substituted "on a loan basis under part I of subchapter I of this chapter" for "under section 2161 of this title".

Subsec. (l). Pub. L. 95-424, §115(k), substituted "2194(a)(1)" for "2181(b)(1)" in two places.

Subsec. (w). Pub. L. 95-424, §502(d)(1), struck out subsec. (w) relating to suspension and future resumption of military, economic, etc., assistance to the Government of Pakistan.

1977—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 95-88, §123(a)(1), struck out provision that no assistance be furnished to any country which furnished assistance to the government of Cuba unless the President determined that assistance to the supplying country was in the national interest of the United States.

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 95-88, §123(a)(2), struck out par. (3) which had directed that no funds be used to furnish assistance to countries which had not taken steps to prevent ships or aircraft of their registry from transporting equipment, materials, or commodities to Cuba.

Subsec. (n). Pub. L. 95-88, §123(b), struck out subsec. (n) which had prohibited the giving of aid to countries that sold or furnished to North Vietnam, or permitted their ships or aircraft to carry to or from North Vietnam, equipment, materials, or commodities, unless the President determined that the giving of aid was in the national interest.

Subsec. (x)(1). Pub. L. 95-92 substituted "1978" for "1976, the period beginning July 1, 1976, and ending September 30, 1976, and the fiscal year 1977," and provisions authorizing \$175,000,000 during the fiscal year 1978 for Turkey as the total value of defense articles and services sold to such country, for provisions authorizing \$125,000,000 during the fiscal year 1976, and the period beginning July 1, 1976, and ending Sept. 30, 1976, and \$125,000,000 during the fiscal year 1977 for Turkey as the total value of defense articles and services sold to such country.

1976—Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 94-329, §606, inserted provision exempting from the condition of express approval of Congress any productive enterprise in Egypt which is described in the presentation to Congress for fiscal year 1977.

Subsec. (x)(1). Pub. L. 94-329, §403, further modified existing restrictions on assistance to Turkey by allowing the procurement under specified conditions of \$125 million in defense articles and defense services by Turkey, provided that the President determines that such articles and services are necessary to enable Turkey to fulfill her defense responsibilities as a member of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization.

1975—Subsec. (x). Pub. L. 94-104 redesignated existing provisions as par. (1), substituted provisions authorizing the President to suspend the provisions of this section and of section 2753(c) of this title with respect to sales, credits, and guaranties under the Foreign Military Sales Act, for the procurement of defense articles and services certified by the President to be necessary to enable Turkey to fulfill her defense responsibilities as a member of NATO and that such suspension shall be effective only while Turkey observes the cease-fire and neither increases its forces on Cyprus nor transfers to Cyprus any United States supplied arms, ammunition, and implements of war for provisions authorizing the President to suspend the provisions of this section and certain other Acts if he determined that such suspension would further negotiations for a peaceful solution of the Cyprus conflict and that such suspension shall be



effective only until Feb. 5, 1975, and if, during that time, Turkey observed cease-fire and neither increased its forces on Cyprus nor transferred to Cyprus any United States supplied implements of war, and added par. (2).

1974—Subsec. (n). Pub. L. 93-559, §23, authorized assistance when determined by the President to be in the national interest of the United States.

Subsec. (p). Pub. L. 93-559, §44, repealed subsec. (p) relating to assistance to United Arab Republic if essential to national interest of United States, and without any aid to aggressive actions by the United Arab Republic, and reports to Congressional committees.

Subsec. (v). Pub. L. 93-559, §24, repealed subsec. (v) relating to prohibition against assistance to Greece, waiver of the restriction by the President, report to Congress, and fiscal year limitation of assistance made available to Greece.

Subsec. (x). Pub. L. 93-559, §22, added subsec. (x).

1973—Subsec. (e)(1). Pub. L. 93-189 substituted “the provisions of this subsection shall not be waived with respect to any country unless the President determines and certifies that such a waiver is important to the national interest of the United States. Such certification shall be reported immediately to Congress”, for “no other provision of this chapter shall be so construed to authorize the President to waive the provisions of this subsection”.

1972—Subsecs. (v), (w). Pub. L. 92-226 added subsecs. (v) and (w).

1969—Subsec. (s). Pub. L. 91-175, §303(a), struck out provision empowering President to terminate assistance when he finds it is being diverted to military expenditures, continued provision requiring President to take military expenditures into account when furnishing assistance under this chapter and under the Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954, as amended, inserted provision requiring President to take into account amount spent by recipient on sophisticated weapons systems, and inserted provision requiring President to report annually to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate his actions in carrying out this section.

Subsec. (v). Pub. L. 91-175, §303(b), repealed subsec. (v) covering the withholding of assistance to countries with expenditures for weapons systems. See subsec. (s) of this section.

1968—Subsec. (v). Pub. L. 90-554, added subsec. (v).

1967—Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 90-137, §301(f)(1), substituted provisions for termination of assistance to countries because of damage or destruction by mob action of United States property (incorporated from former penultimate paragraph of section 2151 of this title) for former provisions for assistance to Indonesia if essential to national interests of United States and reports thereof to Congress.

Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 90-137, §301(f)(2), substituted “506” for “510”, classified to the Code as section 2318 of this title.

Subsec. (n). Pub. L. 90-137, §301(f)(3), restated the prohibition against assistance to define the kind of assistance meant, that is, loans, credits, guarantees, or grants or other assistance, to extend the prohibition to assistance under any other Act and to sales under the Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954, and to eliminate specific reference to such items of transportation as items of economic assistance, and war materials, such as arms, ammunition and implements of war, atomic energy materials, petroleum, transportation materials of strategic value, and items of primary strategic significance used in production of arms, ammunition, and implements of war.

Subsecs. (s) to (u). Pub. L. 90-137, §301(f)(4), added subsecs. (s) to (u).

1966—Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 89-583, §301(h)(1), provided for denial of assistance to any country which hereafter is officially represented at any international conference when that representation includes planning of activities involving insurrection or subversion, which

military efforts, insurrection, or subversion are directed as described in the subsec., for Executive determination that such representation has ceased and for report to Congress that such representation will not be renewed or repeated.

Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 89-583, §301(h)(2), made permanent the temporary (calendar year 1965) prohibition against the initiation of projects exceeding \$100,000,000 without the express approval of Congress and included military assistance amounting in the aggregate to more than \$100,000,000.

Subsec. (l). Pub. L. 89-583, §301(h)(3), substituted “The President shall consider denying assistance under this chapter to the government of any less developed country which, after December 31, 1966,” for “No assistance shall be provided under this chapter after December 31, 1966, to the government of any less developed country which”.

Subsec. (n). Pub. L. 89-583, §301(h)(4), substituted “no assistance shall be furnished” and “September 19, 1966” for “the President shall consider denying assistance” and “September 6, 1965”, respectively.

Subsecs. (p) to (r). Pub. L. 89-583, §301(h)(5), added subsecs. (p) to (r).

1965—Subsec. (e)(2). Pub. L. 89-171, §301(d)(2), substituted “other right to property” for “other right” in two places and deleted cl. (3) which made this subparagraph inapplicable in any case in which the proceedings are commenced after Jan. 1, 1966.

Subsec. (l). Pub. L. 89-171, §301(d)(3), substituted “December 31, 1966” for “December 31, 1965”.

Subsecs. (n), (o). Pub. L. 89-171, §301(d)(4), added subsecs. (n) and (o).

1964—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 88-633, §301(d), designated existing provisions as par. (1), redesignated subpars. (1) to (3) thereof as subpars. (A) to (C), substituted therein “subparagraphs (A), (B), or (C) of this paragraph” for “paragraphs (1), (2), or (3) of this subsection”, and added par. (2).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 88-633, §301(e), inserted “(including its captive constituent republics)” after “Union of Soviet Socialist Republics”.

Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 88-633, §301(f), substituted “1965” for “1964” in two places.

Subsec. (m). Pub. L. 88-633, §301(g), substituted “during each fiscal year” for “during fiscal year 1964” and “\$500,000” for “\$1,000,000”.

1963—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 88-205, §301(e)(1), designated existing provisions as par. (1) and added pars. (2) and (3).

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 88-205, §301(e)(2), empowered the President to suspend assistance provided under any other act as well as under this chapter, inserted references to the repudiation or nullification of existing contracts or agreements with U.S. citizens or corporations, partnerships or associations not less than 50 percent beneficially owned by U.S. citizens, substituted “in the event of a referral to the Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States within such period as provided herein, not more than twenty days after the report of the Commission is received” for “after August 1, 1962, whichever is later”, required compensation for property to be “equivalent to the full value thereof”, and authorized the Foreign Claims Settlement Commission to determine the full value of property nationalized, expropriated, or seized upon the President’s request, and to render an advisory report to him thereon.

Subsecs. (i) to (m). Pub. L. 88-205, §301(e)(3), added subsecs. (i) to (m).

1962—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 87-565, §301(d)(1), prohibited assistance to any country which furnishes assistance to the present government of Cuba unless the President determines that such assistance is in the national interest of the United States.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 87-565, §301(d)(2), extended the prohibition against providing assistance to cases where the goods or services have been ordered, and where the indebtedness arises under an unconditional guaranty of payment, provided the President does not find such ac-

tion contrary to the national security, and inserted “which shall include arbitration” after “exhausted available legal remedies”.

Subsecs. (e) to (h). Pub. L. 87-565, §301(d)(3), added subsecs. (e) to (h).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1975 AMENDMENT

Section 2(c)(5) of Pub. L. 94-104 provided that: “This subsection [amending this section] shall become effective only upon enactment of foreign assistance legislation authorizing sales, credits, and guaranties under the Foreign Military Sales Act [section 2751 et seq. of this title] for fiscal year 1976.”

#### REPEALS

Pub. L. 95-92, §22(d), Aug. 4, 1977, 91 Stat. 624, cited as a credit to this section, was repealed by Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, §734(a)(13), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with the exception of subsecs. (a), (d), and (x) and certain other exceptions, by sections 1-102(a)(1), (e) and 1-701(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

Functions of President under subsecs. (c), (e) to (g), (j), (q), and (s) delegated to Secretary of State with those under subsecs. (e), (g), (j), (q), and (s) to be exercised in consultation with Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency by section 1-201(a)(12), (b) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163.

#### ASSISTANCE AND SALES TO ARGENTINA

Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, §725(b), (c), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1553, related to the provision of assistance and credits, loan guarantees, defense articles and services, export licenses, etc., by United States to Argentina, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 101-162, title V, Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1030.

#### LIMITATIONS ON ASSISTANCE, SALES, CREDITS, AND EXPORT LICENSES TO CHILE

Section 726(b), (c) of Pub. L. 97-113, as amended by Pub. L. 99-83, title VII, §715, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 247; Pub. L. 101-513, title V, §544(b), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2019, provided that:

“(b) Notwithstanding any other provision of law—

“(1) no assistance may be furnished under chapter 2, 4, 5, or 6 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2311 et seq., 2346 et seq., 2347 et seq., 2348 et seq.] to Chile;

“(2) no sale of defense articles or services may be made under the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.] to Chile;

“(3) no credits (including participation in credits) may be extended and no loan may be guaranteed under the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.] with respect to Chile; and

“(4) no export licenses may be issued under section 38 of the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2778] to or for the Government of Chile; unless and until the President submits to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate a detailed report certifying—

“(A) that the Government of Chile has made significant progress in complying with internationally recognized principles of human rights;

“(B) that the provision of such assistance, articles or services is in the national interest of the United States; and

“(C) that the Government of Chile is not aiding or abetting international terrorism and has taken appropriate steps to cooperate to bring to justice by all legal means available in the United States or Chile those indicted by a United States grand jury in connection with the murders of Orlando Letelier and Ronni Moffitt.

“(c) The prohibition contained in subsection (b) does not prohibit the sale, or the licensing for export, of cartridge actuated devices, propellant actuated devices, components, parts, tools, technical manuals, time compliance to technical orders (TCTOs), or TCTO retrofits for aircraft of the F-5E/F, A/T-37, or C-130E/H type owned by the Chilean Air Force, so long as the items are provided only for purposes of enhancing the safety of the aircraft crew.”

[Functions of President under section 726(b) of Pub. L. 97-113, set out above, delegated to Secretary of State, see section 1-201(a)(22) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.]

Section 406 of Pub. L. 94-329, as amended by Pub. L. 95-384, §§10(b)(5), 12(c)(5), Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 735, 737, set forth limitations with respect to assistance, sales and credit for Chile, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, §726(a), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1554.

Section 25 of Pub. L. 93-559 provided that notwithstanding any other provision of law, the total amount of assistance that was to be made available for Chile under this chapter, and the Foreign Military Sales Act, section 2751 et seq. of this title, during fiscal year 1975, was not to exceed \$25,000,000, none of which was to be made available for the purpose of providing military assistance (including security supporting assistance, sales, credit sales, or guaranties or the furnishing by any means of excess defense articles or items from stockpiles of the Department of Defense), prior to repeal by Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, §734(a)(8), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.

#### ASSISTANCE FOR EL SALVADOR

Pub. L. 101-513, title V, §531, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2009, as amended by Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §139(22), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 399, provided that:

“(a) STATEMENT OF POLICY.—United States military assistance to the Government of El Salvador shall seek three principal foreign policy objectives, as follows: (1) to promote a permanent settlement and cease-fire to the conflict in El Salvador, with the Secretary General of the United Nations serving as an active mediator between the opposing parties; (2) to foster greater respect for basic human rights, and the rule of law; and (3) to advance political accommodation and national reconciliation.

“(b) MAXIMUM LEVEL OF MILITARY ASSISTANCE.—Of the funds available for United States military assistance for fiscal year 1991, not more than \$85,000,000 shall be made available for El Salvador.

“(c) PROHIBITION OF MILITARY ASSISTANCE.—(1) PROHIBITION.—Subject to paragraph (2), no United States military assistance may be furnished to the Government of El Salvador if the President determines and reports in writing to the Congress that—

“(A) after he has consulted with the Secretary General of the United Nations, the Government of El Salvador has declined to participate in good faith in negotiations for a permanent settlement and cease-fire to the armed conflict of El Salvador;

“(B) the Government of El Salvador has rejected or otherwise failed to support an active role for the Secretary General of the United Nations in mediating that settlement;

“(C) the Government of El Salvador has rejected a plan for the settlement of the conflict which—

“(i) has been put forward by the Secretary General of the United Nations in accordance with the terms and procedures in the April 4, 1990 Geneva

Communique and the May 21, 1990 Caracas Accord between the Government of El Salvador and the FMLN;

“(i) includes a proposal for an internationally monitored cease-fire; and

“(iii) has been accepted, within 15 days from its announcement, by the FMLN and is being complied with by the FMLN;

“(D) the Government of El Salvador has failed to conduct a thorough and professional investigation into, and prosecution of those responsible for the eight murders at the University of Central America on November 16, 1989; or

“(E) the military and security forces of El Salvador are assassinating or abducting civilian noncombatants, are engaging in other acts of violence directed at civilian targets, or are failing to control such activities by elements subject to the control of those forces; or

“(F) the Government of El Salvador has failed to actively seek and encourage a law enforcement service from outside El Salvador, such as Scotland Yard or INTERPOL, to accompany and monitor investigators of the Government of El Salvador in their investigation into the eight murders at the University of Central America on November 16, 1989.

“(2) REQUIREMENT FOR RESUMPTION OF ASSISTANCE.—Assistance prohibited under paragraph (1) may only be resumed pursuant to a law subsequently enacted by the Congress.

“(d) WITHHOLDING OF MILITARY ASSISTANCE.—(1) IN GENERAL.—Fifty per centum of the total United States military assistance allocated for El Salvador for fiscal year 1991 shall be withheld from obligation or expenditure (as the case may be) except as provided in paragraphs (2) and (3).

“(2) RELEASE OF ASSISTANCE.—The United States military assistance withheld pursuant to paragraph (1) may be obligated and expended only if the President determines and reports in writing to the Congress that—

“(A) after he has consulted with the Secretary General of the United Nations, the representatives of the FMLN—

“(i) have declined to participate in good faith in negotiations for a permanent settlement and cease-fire to the armed conflict in El Salvador, or

“(ii) have rejected or otherwise failed to support an active role for the Secretary General of the United Nations in mediating that settlement;

“(B) the FMLN has rejected a plan for the settlement of the conflict which—

“(i) has been put forward by the Secretary General of the United Nations in accordance with the terms and procedures in the April 4, 1990 Geneva Communique and the May 21, 1990 Caracas Accord between the Government of El Salvador and the FMLN;

“(ii) includes a proposal for an internationally monitored cease-fire; and

“(iii) has been accepted, within 15 days from its announcement, by the Government of El Salvador and is being complied with by the Government of El Salvador;

“(C) the survival of the constitutional Government of El Salvador is being jeopardized by substantial and sustained offensive military actions or operations by the FMLN;

“(D) proof exists that the FMLN is continuing to acquire or receive significant shipments of lethal military assistance from outside El Salvador, and this proof has been shared with the Congress; or

“(E) the FMLN is assassinating or abducting civilian noncombatants, is engaging in other acts of violence directed at civilian targets, or is failing to control such activities by elements subject to FMLN control.

“(3) EXCEPTION.—Notwithstanding any other provision of law, funds withheld pursuant to paragraph (1) of this subsection may be disbursed to pay the cost of any

contract penalties which may be incurred as a result of such withholding of funds under this subsection.

“(e) CONDITION FOR TERMINATION OF ALL UNITED STATES ASSISTANCE.—(1) PROHIBITION.—Subject to paragraph (2), no United States assistance may be furnished to El Salvador if the duly-elected head of Government of El Salvador is deposed by military coup or decree.

“(2) REQUIREMENT FOR RESUMPTION OF ASSISTANCE.—Assistance prohibited under paragraph (1) may only be resumed pursuant to a law subsequently enacted by the Congress.

“(f) ESTABLISHMENT OF A FUND FOR CEASE-FIRE MONITORING, DEMOBILIZATION, AND TRANSITION TO PEACE.—(1) ESTABLISHMENT OF FUND.—There is hereby established in the Treasury of the United States a fund to assist with the costs of monitoring a permanent settlement of the conflict, including a cease-fire, and the demobilization of combatants in the conflict in El Salvador, and their transition to peaceful pursuits, which shall be known as the ‘Demobilization and Transition Fund’ (hereafter in this section referred to as the ‘Fund’). Amounts in this Fund shall be available for obligation and expenditure only upon notification by the President to the Congress that the Government of El Salvador and representatives of the FMLN have reached a permanent settlement of the conflict, including a final agreement on a cease-fire.

“(2) TRANSFER OF CERTAIN MILITARY ASSISTANCE FUNDS.—Upon notification of the Congress of a permanent settlement of the conflict, including an agreement on a cease-fire, or on September 30, 1991, if no such notification has occurred prior to that date, the President shall transfer to the Fund any United States military assistance funds withheld pursuant to subsection (d) of this section.

“(3) USE OF THE FUND.—Notwithstanding any other provision of law, amounts in the Fund shall be available for El Salvador solely to support costs of demobilization, retraining, relocation, and reemployment in civilian pursuits of former combatants in the conflict in El Salvador, and of the monitoring of the permanent settlement and cease-fire.

“(4) DURATION OF AVAILABILITY OF FUNDS.—Notwithstanding any other provision of law, amounts transferred to the Fund shall remain available until expended.

“(g) STRENGTHENING CIVILIAN CONTROL OVER THE MILITARY.—In order to strengthen the control of the democratically-elected civilian Government of El Salvador over the armed forces of that country, United States military assistance for any fiscal year may be delivered to the armed forces of El Salvador only with the prior approval of the duly elected President of El Salvador.

“(h) SUPPORT FOR DEMOCRACY.—(1) ESTABLISHING A PROGRAM.—The Secretary of State, through agreement with the National Endowment for Democracy or other qualified organizations, shall establish and carry out a program of education, training, and dialogue for the purpose of strengthening democratic political and legal institutions in El Salvador.

“(2) ELECTION MONITORING.—Of the amounts made available to carry out this subsection, up to \$2,000,000 may be used for support for monitoring the 1991 municipal and National Assembly elections in El Salvador, and for monitoring the registration and campaign processes leading up to those elections, by appropriate organizations such as the United Nations, the Organization of American States, the Carter Center, the National Democratic Institute for International Affairs, the National Republican Institute for International Affairs, and the Center for Electoral Assistance and Promotion (CAPEL) of San Jose, Costa Rica.

“(3) ASSISTANCE.—Up to \$10,000,000 of funds appropriated under the heading ‘Economic Support Fund’ for fiscal year 1991 may be used to carry out this subsection.

“(i) [Repealed. Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §139(22), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 399.]

“(j) DEFINITIONS.—For purposes of this section—

“(1) the term ‘United States assistance’ has the same meaning as is given to such term by section 481(i)(4) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2291(i)(4)) and includes United States military assistance as defined in paragraph (2); and

“(2) the term ‘United States military assistance’ means—

“(A) assistance to carry out chapter 2 (relating to grant military assistance) or chapter 5 (relating to international military education and training) of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2311 et seq., 2347 et seq.]; and

“(B) assistance to carry out section 23 of the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2763].”

[For Presidential determination required by section 531(d) of Pub. L. 101-513, set out above, and for delegation of functions of President under section 531(i) of Pub. L. 101-513, see Determination of President, No. 91-15, Jan. 15, 1991, 56 F.R. 4713.]

Section 728 of Pub. L. 97-113, as amended by Pub. L. 97-233, Aug. 10, 1982, 96 Stat. 260; Pub. L. 98-53, July 15, 1983, 97 Stat. 287, set forth findings of Congress concerning recent civil strife in El Salvador and need for substantial assistance to El Salvador and for fiscal years 1982 and 1983, restricted funds that could be obligated for assistance for El Salvador under chapter 2 or 5 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2311 et seq., 2347 et seq.), letters of offer that could be issued and credits and guarantees that could be extended for El Salvador under the Arms Export Control Act (22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.), and members of the Armed Forces that could be assigned or detailed to El Salvador to carry out functions under the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (this chapter) or the Arms Export Control Act, only if not later than thirty days after Dec. 29, 1981, and every one hundred and eighty days thereafter, the President makes a specific certification.

#### CARIBBEAN DEVELOPMENT BANK; ASSUMPTION OF MEMBER LOANS

Section 315 of Pub. L. 96-533 provided: “Notwithstanding section 620(r) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [subsec. (r) of this section], the President may, after consultation with the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs [now Committee on International Relations] of the House of Representatives, make arrangements at his discretion for the assumption by the recipient members of the Caribbean Development Bank of any loans made to the Bank under the authority of that Act [this chapter].”

#### SOVIET MILITARY PERSONNEL AND ACTIVITIES IN CUBA; REPORTS TO CONGRESS

Section 714 of Pub. L. 96-533, required reports respecting Soviet military activity in Cuba, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(2), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.

#### CUBAN PRESENCE IN AFRICA

Pub. L. 95-426, title VI, § 613, Oct. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 990, as amended by Pub. L. 97-241, title V, § 505(a)(2), (b)(1), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 299, provided that: “The Congress finds that—

“(1) the President authorized the exchange of notes of May 30, 1977, between the Governments of the United States and Cuba which established an Interests Section for the United States in the Embassy of Switzerland in Havana and an Interests Section for Cuba in the Embassy of Czechoslovakia in Washington;

“(2) the President has the authority under the Export Administration Act of 1969 [section 2401 et seq. of the Appendix to Title 50, War and National Defense] to limit trade with Cuba being conducted by subsidiaries of American firms operating in third countries;

“(3) the President has the power to sever all diplomatic and economic relations with Cuba; and

“(4) there has been a sharp increase in the number of Cuban military personnel serving in Africa in the past year.”

#### RESUMPTION OF MILITARY ASSISTANCE TO TURKEY; DETERMINATION AND CERTIFICATION TO CONGRESS BY PRESIDENT OF MILITARY COOPERATION AS IN BEST INTERESTS OF UNITED STATES AND NATO

Pub. L. 95-384, § 13(a), Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 737, provided that: “Section 620(x) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [subsec. (x) of this section] shall be of no further force and effect upon the President’s determination and certification to the Congress that the resumption of full military cooperation with Turkey is in the national interest of the United States and in the interest of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization and that the Government of Turkey is acting in good faith to achieve a just and peaceful settlement of the Cyprus problem, the early peaceable return of refugees to their homes and properties, and continued removal of Turkish military troops from Cyprus in the context of a solution to the Cyprus problem, and the early serious resumption of inter-communal talks aimed at a just, negotiated settlement.”

#### DETERMINATION AND CERTIFICATION REGARDING RESUMPTION OF FULL MILITARY COOPERATION WITH TURKEY

Memorandum of the President of the United States, dated Sept. 26, 1978, provided:

Pursuant to the authority vested in me by Section 13(a) of the International Security Assistance Act of 1978, I hereby determine and certify:

(1) that the resumption of full military cooperation with Turkey is in the national interest of the United States and in the interest of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization; and

(2) that the Government of Turkey is acting in good faith to achieve a just and peaceful settlement of the Cyprus problem, the early peaceable return of refugees to their homes and properties, and continued removal of Turkish military troops from Cyprus in the context of a solution to the Cyprus problem, and the early serious resumption of inter-communal talks aimed at a just, negotiated settlement.

You are requested on my behalf to report this determination and certification to the Congress.

This determination and certification shall be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

JIMMY CARTER.

#### RESTRICTIONS ON ASSISTANCE DURING FISCAL YEAR 1978 INVOLVING MILITARY OR PARAMILITARY OPERATIONS IN ZAIRE

Section 25 of Pub. L. 95-92 required a Presidential determination that furnishing aid to Zaire during fiscal year 1978 was in the national interest and submission to the Congress of a Presidential certification for such aid, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(13), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.

#### RESTRICTIONS ON ASSISTANCE TO INDIA

Section 27 of Pub. L. 93-559 provided that the total amount of assistance provided under this chapter and of credit sales made or guaranteed under the Foreign Military Sales Act, section 2751 et seq. of this title, for India was not to exceed \$50,000,000 in fiscal year 1975, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(8), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.

#### RESTRICTIONS ON MILITARY ASSISTANCE AND EXCESS DEFENSE ARTICLES TO KOREA

Section 26 of Pub. L. 93-559 provided that the aggregated amount of funds obligated or reserved for military assistance, including supply operations, under part II of subchapter II of this chapter, the acquisition cost of excess defense articles, if any, ordered under subchapter II of this chapter and not charged against

appropriations for military assistance, credits including participations in credits, extended pursuant to section 2763 of this title, and the principal amount of loans guaranteed pursuant to section 2764(a) of this title, with respect to South Korea was not to exceed \$145,000,000 for fiscal year 1975 until the President submitted a report to the Congress after Dec. 30, 1974, stating that the government of South Korea was making substantial progress in the observance of internationally recognized standards of human rights, after which the aggregate amount described above, with respect to South Korea, was not to exceed \$165,000,000 for fiscal year 1975, with provisions of sections 2318 and 2364 of this title, or of any other law, not to be used to exceed these limitations, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(8), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.

#### REPAYMENT OF LOANS IN DEFAULT

Section 56 of Pub. L. 93-559 provided that: "It is the sense of the Congress that any country receiving assistance under the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [this chapter] which is in default, at least 90 days prior to the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 30, 1974], of any payment of principal or interest due on any loan or credit received from the United States shall promptly pay all such principal and interest. It is further the sense of the Congress that the President shall promptly enter into negotiations with each such country to help effectuate the payment of such principal and interest, or to effectuate the transfer by such country to the United States of goods, services, concessions, or actions beneficial to the United States, in lieu of the payment of such principal and interest."

#### RESTRICTIONS ON ASSISTANCE TO NATIONS WHOSE GOVERNMENT IS BASED UPON COMMUNISM

Pub. L. 91-194, title I, § 109, Feb. 9, 1970, 84 Stat. 8, provided that:

"(a) No assistance shall be furnished to any nation, whose government is based upon that theory of government known as communism under the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as amended [this chapter], for any arms, ammunition, implements of war, atomic energy materials, or any articles, materials, or supplies, such as petroleum, transportation materials of strategic value, and items of primary strategic significance used in the production of arms, ammunition, and implements of war, contained on the list maintained by the Administrator pursuant to title I of the Mutual Defense Assistance Control Act of 1951, as amended [section 1611 et seq. of this title].

"(b) No economic assistance shall be furnished to any nation whose government is based upon that theory of government known as communism under the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as amended [this chapter] except section 214(b) [section 2174(b) of this title], unless the President determines that the withholding of such assistance would be contrary to the national interest and reports such determination to the House of Representatives and the Senate. Reports made pursuant to this subsection shall be published in the Federal Register within seven days of submission to the committees and shall contain a statement by the President of the reasons for such determination."

Similar provisions were contained in the following prior acts:

Pub. L. 90-581, title I, § 109, Oct. 17, 1968, 82 Stat. 1140.  
 Pub. L. 90-249, title I, § 109, Jan. 2, 1968, 81 Stat. 939.  
 Pub. L. 89-691, title I, § 109, Oct. 15, 1966, 80 Stat. 1020.  
 Pub. L. 89-273, title I, § 109, Oct. 20, 1965, 79 Stat. 1004.  
 Pub. L. 88-634, title I, § 109, Oct. 7, 1964, 78 Stat. 1018.  
 Pub. L. 88-272, title I, § 109, Jan. 6, 1964, 77 Stat. 859.  
 Pub. L. 87-872, title I, § 109, Oct. 23, 1962, 76 Stat. 1165.

#### RESTRICTIONS ON ASSISTANCE TO COUNTRIES SELLING, FURNISHING, OR PERMITTING SHIPS TO CARRY CERTAIN ITEMS TO CUBA OR TO NORTH VIETNAM

Pub. L. 91-194, title I, § 107, Feb. 9, 1970, 84 Stat. 8, provided that:

"(a) No assistance shall be furnished under the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as amended [this chapter], to any country which sells, furnishes, or permits any ships under its registry to carry to Cuba, so long as it is governed by the Castro regime, in addition to those items contained on the list maintained by the Administrator pursuant to title I of the Mutual Defense Assistance Control Act of 1951, as amended [section 1611 et seq. of this title], any arms, ammunition, implements of war, atomic energy materials, or any other articles, materials, or supplies of primary strategic significance used in the production of arms, ammunition, and implements of war or of strategic significance to the conduct of war, including petroleum products.

"(b) No economic assistance shall be furnished under the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as amended [this chapter], to any country which sells, furnishes, or permits any ships under its registry to carry items of economic assistance to Cuba, so long as it is governed by the Castro regime, or to North Vietnam."

Similar provisions were contained in the following prior acts:

Pub. L. 90-581, title I, § 107, Oct. 17, 1968, 82 Stat. 1139.  
 Pub. L. 90-249, title I, § 107, Jan. 2, 1968, 81 Stat. 938.  
 Pub. L. 89-691, title I, § 107, Oct. 15, 1966, 80 Stat. 1020.  
 Pub. L. 89-273, title I, § 107, Oct. 20, 1965, 79 Stat. 1004.  
 Pub. L. 88-634, title I, § 107, Oct. 7, 1964, 78 Stat. 1018.  
 Pub. L. 88-258, title I, § 107, Jan. 6, 1964, 77 Stat. 859.  
 Pub. L. 87-872, title I, § 107, Oct. 23, 1962, 76 Stat. 1165.

#### RESTRICTIONS ON ASSISTANCE TO COUNTRIES SELLING, FURNISHING OR PERMITTING SHIPS TO CARRY CERTAIN ITEMS TO NORTH VIETNAM

Pub. L. 91-194, title I, § 116, Feb. 9, 1970, 84 Stat. 10, forbid assistance under the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as amended, to any country that sold, furnished or permitted any ships under its registry to carry to North Vietnam certain enumerated items unless the President determined that the withholding of such assistance was contrary to the national interest of the United States and reported such determination to Congress.

Similar provisions were contained in the following prior acts:

Pub. L. 90-581, title I, § 116, Oct. 17, 1968, 82 Stat. 1141.  
 Pub. L. 90-249, title I, § 116, Jan. 2, 1968, 81 Stat. 940.  
 Pub. L. 89-691, title I, § 116, Oct. 15, 1966, 80 Stat. 1022.  
 Pub. L. 89-273, title I, § 116, Oct. 20, 1965, 79 Stat. 1005.

#### INTERDICTION OF THE DELIVERY OF OFFENSIVE WEAPONS TO CUBA

For Presidential proclamation prohibiting the delivery of offensive weapons to Cuba, see Proc. No. 3504, Oct. 23, 1962, 27 F.R. 10401, set out as a note preceding section 1 of the Appendix to Title 50, War and National Defense.

#### PROC. NO. 3447. EMBARGO ON TRADE WITH CUBA

Proc. No. 3447, Feb. 3, 1962, 27 F.R. 1085, provided:

WHEREAS the Eighth Meeting of Consultation of Ministers of Foreign Affairs, Serving as Organ of Consultation in Application of the Inter-American Treaty of Reciprocal Assistance, in its Final Act resolved that the present Government of Cuba is incompatible with the principles and objectives of the Inter-American system; and, in light of the subversive offensive of Sino-Soviet Communism with which the Government of Cuba is publicly aligned, urged the member states to take those steps that they may consider appropriate for their individual and collective self-defense;

WHEREAS the Congress of the United States, in section 620(a) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (75 Stat. 445), as amended [subsection (a) of this section], has authorized the President to establish and maintain an embargo upon all trade between the United States and Cuba; and

WHEREAS the United States, in accordance with its international obligations, is prepared to take all necessary actions to promote national and hemispheric se-

curity by isolating the present Government of Cuba and thereby reducing the threat posed by its alignment with the communist powers:

NOW, THEREFORE, I, JOHN F. KENNEDY, President of the United States of America, acting under the authority of section 620(a) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (75 Stat. 445), as amended [subsection (a) of this section], do

1. Hereby proclaim an embargo upon trade between the United States and Cuba in accordance with paragraphs 2 and 3 of this proclamation.

2. Hereby prohibit, effective 12:01 A.M., Eastern Standard Time, February 7, 1962, the importation into the United States of all goods of Cuban origin and all goods imported from or through Cuba; and I hereby authorize and direct the Secretary of the Treasury to carry out such prohibition, to make such exceptions thereto, by license or otherwise, as he determines to be consistent with the effective operation of the embargo hereby proclaimed, and to promulgate such rules and regulations as may be necessary to perform such functions.

3. AND FURTHER, I do hereby direct the Secretary of Commerce, under the provisions of the Export Control Act of 1949, as amended (50 U.S.C. App. 2021-2032), to continue to carry out the prohibition of all exports from the United States to Cuba, and I hereby authorize him, under that Act, to continue, make, modify or revoke exceptions from such prohibition.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, I have hereunto set my hand and caused the seal of the United States of America to be affixed.

DONE at the City of Washington this third day of February, in the year of our Lord nineteen hundred and sixty-two, and of the Independence of the United States of America the one hundred and eighty-sixth.

[SEAL]

JOHN F. KENNEDY.

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Inter-American Development Bank increase in resources, loan disapproval by United States during suspension of assistance under subsec. (e)(1)(A) to (C) of this section, see section 283*l* of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 283*l*, 2151*f*, 2151*v*, 2312, 2373, 2398, 2430*c*, 4305, 6004, 6008 of this title; title 50 App. section 2304.

### § 2370a. Expropriation of United States property

#### (a) Prohibition

None of the funds made available to carry out this Act, the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.], or the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.] may be provided to a government or any agency or instrumentality thereof, if the government of such country (other than a country described in<sup>1</sup> subsection (d) of this section)—

(1) has on or after January 1, 1956—

(A) nationalized or expropriated the property of any United States person,

(B) repudiated or nullified any contract with any United States person, or

(C) taken any other action (such as the imposition of discriminatory taxes or other exactions) which has the effect of seizing ownership or control of the property of any United States person, and

(2) has not, within the period specified in subsection (c) of this section, either—

(A) returned the property,

(B) provided adequate and effective compensation for such property in convertible foreign exchange or other mutually acceptable compensation equivalent to the full value thereof, as required by international law,

(C) offered a domestic procedure providing prompt, adequate and effective compensation in accordance with international law, or

(D) submitted the dispute to arbitration under the rules of the Convention for the Settlement of Investment Disputes or other mutually agreeable binding international arbitration procedure.

#### (b) Other actions

The President shall instruct the United States Executive Directors of each multilateral development bank and international financial institution to vote against any loan or other utilization of the funds of such bank or institution for the benefit of any country to which assistance is prohibited under subsection (a) of this section, unless such assistance is directed specifically to programs which serve the basic human needs of the citizens of that country.

#### (c) Period for settlement of claims

The period of time described in subsection (a)(2) of this section is the latest of the following—

(1) 3 years after the date on which a claim was filed,

(2) in the case of a country that has a totalitarian or authoritarian government at the time of the action described in subsection (a)(1) of this section, 3 years after the date of installation of a democratically elected government, or

(3) 90 days after April 30, 1994.

#### (d) Excepted countries and territories

This section shall not apply to any country established by international mandate through the United Nations or to any territory recognized by the United States Government to be in dispute.

#### (e) Resumption of assistance

A prohibition or termination of assistance under subsection (a) of this section and an instruction to vote against loans under subsection (b) of this section shall cease to be effective when the President certifies in writing to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and to the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate that such government has taken one of the steps described in subsection (a)(2) of this section.

#### (f) Reporting requirement

Not later than 90 days after April 30, 1994, and at the beginning of each fiscal year thereafter, the Secretary of State shall transmit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, a report containing the following:

(1) A list of every country in which the United States Government is aware that a United States person has an outstanding expropriation claim.

(2) The total number of such outstanding expropriation claims made by United States persons against each such country.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be "in".

(3) The period of time in which each such claim has been outstanding.

(4) The status of each case and efforts made by the United States Government and the government of the country in which such claim has been made, to take one or more of the steps described in subsection (a)(2) of this section.

(5) Each project a United States Executive Director voted against as a result of the action described in subsection (b) of this section.

**(g) Waiver**

The President may waive the prohibitions in subsections (a) and (b) of this section for a country, on an annual basis, if the President determines and so notifies Congress that it is in the national interest to do so.

**(h) “United States person” defined**

For the purpose of this section, the term “United States person” means a United States citizen or corporation, partnership, or association at least 50 percent beneficially owned by United States citizens.

(Pub. L. 103-236, title V, § 527, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 475.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 103-236, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 382, known as the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1994 and 1995. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1994 Amendment note set out under section 2651 of this title and Tables.

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as amended, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, which is classified principally to this chapter (§ 2151 et seq.). For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

The Arms Export Control Act, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 90-629, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1320, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 39 (§ 2751 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2751 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1994 and 1995, and not as part of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 which comprises this chapter.

DELEGATION OF RESPONSIBILITIES UNDER FOREIGN RELATIONS AUTHORIZATION ACT, FISCAL YEARS 1994 AND 1995

Memorandum of President of the United States, July 26, 1994, 59 F.R. 40205, provided:

Memorandum for the Secretary of State

By the authority vested in me by the Constitution and laws of the United States of America, including section 301 of title 3 of the United States Code, I hereby delegate to the Secretary of State the functions vested in the President by the following provisions of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1994 and 1995 (Public Law 103-236) (the “Act”): sections 102(g) [22 U.S.C. 287e note], 161(c) [22 U.S.C. 2651a note], 401(b) [108 Stat. 446], 407(a) [22 U.S.C. 287b note], 409 [22 U.S.C. 287e note], 431(b) [108 Stat. 459], 514(b) [22 U.S.C. 1928 note], 523 [108 Stat. 473], 527(e) and (g) [22 U.S.C. 2370a(e), (g)], 528 [108 Stat. 477], 532(a) [108 Stat. 480], 574 [22 U.S.C. 2656 note], 583(b)(1) and (b)(6) [108 Stat. 489, 490], 733 [22 U.S.C. 2779a] and 735(d) [22 U.S.C. 2797b-1].

The functions under section 407(a) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 287b note] shall be exercised in coordination with the Secretary of Defense.

The functions under section 527(e) and (g) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2370a(e), (g)] shall be exercised in consultation with the Secretary of the Treasury and the heads of other departments and agencies, as appropriate.

Any reference in this memorandum to any act, order, determination, or delegation of authority shall be deemed to be a reference to such act, order, determination, or delegation of authority as amended from time to time.

The functions delegated by this memorandum may be redelegated within the Department of State.

You are authorized and directed to publish this memorandum in the Federal Register.

WILLIAM J. CLINTON.

Memorandum of President of the United States, Jan. 4, 1995, 60 F.R. 3335, provided:

Memorandum for the Secretary of the Treasury

By the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of America, including section 301 of title 3, United States Code, I hereby delegate to the Secretary of the Treasury the functions under section 527(b) of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1994 and 1995 (Public Law 103-236) [22 U.S.C. 2370a(b)].

Any reference in this memorandum to any Act, order, determination, or delegation of authority shall be deemed to be a reference to such Act, order, determination, or delegation of authority as amended.

The functions delegated by this memorandum may be redelegated within the Department of the Treasury.

You are authorized and directed to publish this memorandum in the Federal Register.

WILLIAM J. CLINTON.

**§ 2371. Prohibition on assistance to governments supporting international terrorism**

**(a) Prohibition**

The United States shall not provide any assistance under this chapter, the Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954 [7 U.S.C. 1691 et seq.], the Peace Corps Act [22 U.S.C. 2501 et seq.], or the Export-Import Bank Act of 1945 [12 U.S.C. 635 et seq.] to any country if the Secretary of State determines that the government of that country has repeatedly provided support for acts of international terrorism.

**(b) Publication of determinations**

Each determination of the Secretary of State under subsection (a) of this section, including each determination in effect on December 12, 1989, shall be published in the Federal Register.

**(c) Rescission**

A determination made by the Secretary of State under subsection (a) of this section may not be rescinded unless the President submits to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate—

(1) before the proposed rescission would take effect, a report certifying that—

(A) there has been a fundamental change in the leadership and policies of the government of the country concerned;

(B) that government is not supporting acts of international terrorism; and

(C) that government has provided assurances that it will not support acts of international terrorism in the future; or

(2) at least 45 days before the proposed rescission would take effect, a report justifying the rescission and certifying that—

(A) the government concerned has not provided any support for international terrorism during the preceding 6-month period; and

(B) the government concerned has provided assurances that it will not support acts of international terrorism in the future.

**(d) Waiver**

Assistance prohibited by subsection (a) of this section may be provided to a country described in that subsection if—

(1) the President determines that national security interests or humanitarian reasons justify a waiver of subsection (a) of this section, except that humanitarian reasons may not be used to justify assistance under subchapter II of this chapter (including part IV, part VI, and part VIII), or the Export-Import Bank Act of 1945 [12 U.S.C. 635 et seq.]; and

(2) at least 15 days before the waiver takes effect, the President consults with the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate regarding the proposed waiver and submits a report to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate containing—

(A) the name of the recipient country;

(B) a description of the national security interests or humanitarian reasons which require the waiver;

(C) the type and amount of and the justification for the assistance to be provided pursuant to the waiver; and

(D) the period of time during which such waiver will be effective.

The waiver authority granted in this subsection may not be used to provide any assistance under this chapter which is also prohibited by section 2780 of this title.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 620A, as added Pub. L. 94-329, title III, § 303, June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 753; amended Pub. L. 99-83, title V, § 503(a), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 220; Pub. L. 99-190, § 101(i) [title V, § 521], Dec. 19, 1985, 99 Stat. 1291, 1305; Pub. L. 101-222, § 5, Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1897.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (d), was in the original “this Act” and “the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961”, respectively, meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

The Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954, referred to in subsec. (a), is act July 10, 1954, ch. 469, 68 Stat. 454, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 41 (§ 1691 et seq.) of Title 7, Agriculture. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1691 of Title 7 and Tables.

The Peace Corps Act, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 87-293, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 612, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 34 (§ 2501 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2501 of this title and Tables.

The Export-Import Bank Act of 1945, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (d)(1), is act July 31, 1945, ch. 341, 59 Stat. 526, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 6A (§ 635 et seq.) of Title 12, Banks and Bank-

ing. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 635 of Title 12 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1989—Pub. L. 101-222 amended section generally, in subsec. (a) substituting provisions prohibiting assistance if Secretary of State determines country has repeatedly supported terrorism, for provisions prohibiting assistance if President determines country grants sanctuary to terrorists or otherwise supports terrorism; redesignating subsec. (b) as (d) and inserting provisions prohibiting justification of waiver of assistance under specified Acts and provisions describing contents of report on proposed waiver; adding subsecs. (b) and (c); and striking out subsec. (c) which related to imposition of sanction by other countries.

1985—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99-190 inserted reference to the Export-Import Bank Act of 1945.

Pub. L. 99-83 amended subsec. (a) generally, substituting provisions relating to covered programs and Presidential determinations respecting termination of assistance, for provisions relating to termination of assistance to countries granting sanctuary to international terrorists and period of ineligibility.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 99-83 amended subsec. (b) generally, substituting provisions relating to waiver of application of subsec. (a), for provisions relating to reports respecting continuation of assistance to any country falling within provisions of former subsec. (a) of this section.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 99-83, in amending section generally, added subsec. (c).

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

SELF-DEFENSE IN ACCORDANCE WITH INTERNATIONAL LAW

Section 10 of Pub. L. 101-222 provided that: “The use by any government of armed force in the exercise of individual or collective self-defense in accordance with applicable international agreements and customary international law shall not be considered an act of international terrorism for purposes of the amendments made by this Act [see Short Title of 1989 Amendment note, set out under section 2151 of this title].”

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2398 of this title.

**§ 2372. Repealed. Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 725(a), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1553**

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 620B, as added Pub. L. 95-92, § 11, Aug. 4, 1977, 91 Stat. 619; amended Pub. L. 95-384, § 12(c)(1), Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 737, prohibited assistance and sales to Argentina.

**§ 2372a. Renewal, reissuance, etc., of export licenses to or for Argentina**

Any export license referred to in section 2372<sup>1</sup> of this title which is issued initially on or before September 30, 1978 may from time to time thereafter be renewed, reissued or modified (or in the event of lapse of such license, replacement li-

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.



censes may be issued), provided that any such renewal, reissuance or modification (or any such replacement license) does not change significantly any such license as initially issued.

(Pub. L. 95-240, title II, §210, Mar. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 118.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 2372 of this title, referred to in text, was in the original "Section 11 of Public Law 95-92", meaning section 11 of Pub. L. 95-92, Aug. 4, 1977, 91 Stat. 619, which added section 620B of Pub. L. 87-195. Section 620B of Pub. L. 87-195 was classified to section 2372 of this title and was repealed by Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, §725(a), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1553.

#### CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Supplemental Appropriations Act, 1978, and not as part of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 which comprises this chapter.

### § 2373. Eastern Mediterranean policy requirements

#### (a) Congressional declaration and statement of findings

The Congress declares that the achievement of a just and lasting Cyprus settlement is and will remain a central objective of United States foreign policy. The Congress further declares that any action of the United States with respect to section 2370(x)<sup>1</sup> of this title shall not signify a lessening of the United States commitment to a just solution to the conflict on Cyprus but is authorized in the expectation that this action will be conducive to achievement of a Cyprus solution and a general improvement in relations among Greece, Turkey, and Cyprus and between those countries and the United States. The Congress finds that—

(1) a just settlement on Cyprus must involve the establishment of a free and independent government on Cyprus and must guarantee that the human rights of all of the people of Cyprus are fully protected;

(2) a just settlement on Cyprus must include the withdrawal of Turkish military forces from Cyprus;

(3) the guidelines for inter-communal talks agreed to in Nicosia in February 1977 and the United Nations resolutions regarding Cyprus provide a sound basis for negotiation of a just settlement on Cyprus;

(4) serious negotiations, under United Nations auspices, will be necessary to achieve agreement on, and implementation of, constitutional and territorial terms within such guidelines; and

(5) the recent proposals by both Cypriot communities regarding the return of the refugees to the city of New Famagusta (Varosha) constitute a positive step and the United States should actively support the efforts of the Secretary General of the United Nations with respect to this issue.

#### (b) Governing principles

United States policy regarding Cyprus, Greece, and Turkey shall be directed toward the restoration of a stable and peaceful atmosphere

in the Eastern Mediterranean region and shall therefore be governed by the following principles:

(1) The United States shall actively support the resolution of differences through negotiations and internationally established peaceful procedures, shall encourage all parties to avoid provocative actions, and shall strongly oppose any attempt to resolve disputes through force or threat of force.

(2) The United States will accord full support and high priority to efforts, particularly those of the United Nations, to bring about a prompt, peaceful settlement on Cyprus.

(3) All defense articles furnished by the United States to countries in the Eastern Mediterranean region will be used only in accordance with the requirements of this chapter, the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.], and the agreements under which those defense articles were furnished.

(4) The United States will furnish security assistance for Greece and Turkey only when furnishing that assistance is intended solely for defensive purposes, including when necessary to enable the recipient country to fulfill its responsibilities as a member of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization, and shall be designed to ensure that the present balance of military strength among countries of the region, including between Greece and Turkey, is preserved. Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to prohibit the transfer of defense articles to Greece or Turkey for legitimate self defense or to enable Greece or Turkey to fulfill their North Atlantic Treaty Organization obligations.

(5) The United States shall use its influence to ensure the continuation of the ceasefire on Cyprus until an equitable negotiated settlement is reached.

(6) The United States shall use its influence to achieve the withdrawal of Turkish military forces from Cyprus in the context of a solution to the Cyprus problem.

#### (c) Review of policy; report to Congress

Because progress toward a Cyprus settlement is a high priority of United States policy in the Eastern Mediterranean, the President and the Congress shall continually review that progress and shall determine United States policy in the region accordingly. To facilitate such a review the President shall, within 60 days after the date of enactment of this section and at the end of each succeeding 60-day period, transmit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate a report on progress made toward the conclusion of a negotiated solution of the Cyprus problem. Such transmissions shall include any relevant reports prepared by the Secretary General of the United Nations for the Security Council.

#### (d) Certification by President to Congress of assistance to Greece and Turkey

In order to ensure that United States assistance is furnished consistent with the policies established in this section, the President shall, whenever requesting any funds for security assistance under this chapter or the Arms Export

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.] for Greece and Turkey, transmit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate his certification, with a full explanation thereof, that the furnishing of such assistance will be consistent with the principles set forth in subsection (b). The President shall also submit such a certification with any notification to the Congress, pursuant to section 36(b) of the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2776(b)], of a proposed sale of defense articles or services to Greece or Turkey.

**(e) Arms sales agreements to prohibit transfer to Cyprus**

(1) Any agreement for the sale or provision of any article on the United States Munitions List (established pursuant to section 38 of the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2778]) entered into by the United States after December 22, 1987, shall expressly state that the article is being provided by the United States only with the understanding that it will not be transferred to Cyprus or otherwise used to further the severance or division of Cyprus.

(2) The President shall report to Congress any substantial evidence that equipment provided under any such agreement has been used in a manner inconsistent with the purposes of this subsection.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §620C, as added Pub. L. 95-384, §13(b), Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 737; amended Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title V, §562], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-171.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 2370(x) of this title, referred to in subsec. (a), was omitted. See Codification note set out under section 2370 of this title.

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (b)(3) and (d), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

The Arms Export Control Act, referred to in subsecs. (b)(3) and (d), is Pub. L. 90-629, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1320, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 39 (§2751 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2751 of this title and Tables.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

Provisions similar to those in subsec. (e) of this section were contained in the following appropriation acts:

Pub. L. 102-391, title V, §557, Oct. 6, 1992, 106 Stat. 1676.

Pub. L. 101-513, title V, §560, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2026.

Pub. L. 101-167, title V, §570, Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1245.

Pub. L. 100-461, title V, §579, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-48.

AMENDMENTS

1987—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 100-202 added subsec. (e).

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under subsecs. (d) and (e) delegated to Secretary of State by section 1-201(a)(13) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

SPECIAL AMBASSADORIAL COMMISSION FOR CYPRUS AND THE AEGEAN

Section 101(e) [title V, §586] of Pub. L. 100-202 provided that:

“(a) FINDINGS.—The Congress finds that—

“(1) the inability to achieve a just and lasting Cyprus settlement will continue to affect relations among the United States and its close NATO allies, Greece and Turkey, to the detriment of larger, mutually shared, security interests in the Eastern Mediterranean region;

“(2) it is of paramount importance that Cyprus, Greece, and Turkey resolve their differences through negotiations and otherwise peaceful procedures, and that the United States should support the resolution of these differences through all the diplomatic means at its disposal;

“(3) it is in the national interest of the United States that the President make a significant new diplomatic demarche towards bringing this dispute to a resolution; and

“(4) it is also in the national interest of the United States to undertake a diplomatic initiative to promote the peaceful and equitable resolution of differences between Greece and Turkey in the Aegean by fostering a renewed and sustained bilateral dialogue between those countries on such issues as: the delineation of the continental shelf, the definition of the territorial seas, air traffic control over the Aegean, NATO command and control arrangements in the Aegean, and the status of Lemnos and NATO exercises in the Aegean.

“(b) APPOINTMENT OF SPECIAL AMBASSADOR.—The President is authorized to appoint a special ambassadorial level envoy who shall be responsible for representing the United States in direct negotiations with the parties to the Cyprus dispute, for representing the United States in negotiations through international intermediaries and, generally, lending the good offices of the United States to the parties in this dispute in order to facilitate a peaceful settlement on Cyprus. As agreed to by Greece and Turkey, the special envoy shall also represent the United States in promoting mutual discussions between those countries concerning their differences on Aegean issues. The special ambassador appointed under this section shall have available the services of two deputies (one to specialize on the Cyprus question, the other on general Aegean issues) and such senior level Department of State personnel as may be required by the special ambassador in order to carry out his responsibilities.

“(c) REPORT.—Not later than June 1, 1988, the President shall submit a report to the Congress describing in detail the activities being undertaken by the special ambassador, the progress being made toward achievement of a peaceful resolution of the Cyprus dispute, an assessment of the obstacles to achievement of such a resolution and of the future role of the United States in achieving [sic] a settlement on Cyprus, and an assessment of the progress being made toward resolution of issues affecting the Aegean region.

“(d) FUNDING.—Up to \$500,000 of the funds appropriated under any heading of this Act [Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Act, 1988, as enacted by section 101(e) of Pub. L. 101-202] which are allocated for Greece and up to \$500,000 of the funds appropriated under any heading of this Act which are allocated for Turkey, may be used by the Department of State for any administrative costs associated with the activities of the special ambassador and supporting personnel, including transportation, salaries and per diem.”

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2321j, 2799b of this title.

**§ 2374. Prohibition on assistance to Afghanistan****(a) Prohibition; conditions for resumption of assistance**

None of the funds authorized to be appropriated under this chapter may be used to furnish assistance to Afghanistan nor may funds authorized to be appropriated under this chapter before October 1, 1979, be expended for assistance to Afghanistan until the President certifies to the Congress that—

(1) the Government of Afghanistan has apologized officially and assumes responsibility for the death of Ambassador Adolph Dubs; and

(2) the Government of Afghanistan agrees to provide adequate protection for all personnel of the United States Government in Afghanistan.

**(b) Substantially changed circumstances**

The provisions of subsection (a) of this section shall not apply if the President determines that such assistance is in the national interest of the United States because of substantially changed circumstances in Afghanistan.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 620D, as added Pub. L. 96-53, title V, § 505, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 378.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 512(a) of Pub. L. 96-53, set out as an Effective Date of 1979 Amendment note under section 2151 of this title.

## HUMANITARIAN ASSISTANCE

Pub. L. 99-83, title IX, § 904, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 268, provided that:

“(a) AUTHORIZATION.—The President may make available funds authorized to be appropriated to carry out chapter 4 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [part IV of subchapter II of this chapter] (relating to the economic support fund) for the provision of food, medicine, or other humanitarian assistance to the Afghan people, notwithstanding any other provision of law.

“(b) EARMARKING OF FUNDS.—Each fiscal year, not less than \$15,000,000 of the aggregate amount of funds available to carry out chapter 4 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 shall be available only for humanitarian assistance to the Afghan people pursuant to subsection (a) of this section.

“(c) EFFECTIVE DATES.—This section shall take effect on the date of enactment of this Act [Aug. 8, 1985], except that subsection (b) shall not apply to fiscal year 1985.”

## ASSISTANCE TO AND TRADE WITH AFGHANISTAN

Determination of President of the United States, No. 93-3, Oct. 7, 1992, 57 F.R. 47557, provided:

Memorandum for the Secretary of State

By virtue of the authority vested in me by section 620D(b) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as amended (22 U.S.C. 2374(b)), I hereby determine that furnishing assistance to Afghanistan with funds authorized to be appropriated under that Act is in the national interest of the United States because of substantially changed circumstances in Afghanistan.

By virtue of the authority vested in me by section 2(b)(2)(C) of the Export-Import Bank Act of 1945, as amended (12 U.S.C. 635(b)(2)(C)), I hereby determine that Afghanistan has ceased to be a Marxist-Leninist country within the definition of such term in subparagraph (B)(i) of section 2(b)(2) of that Act (12 U.S.C. 635(b)(2)(B)(i)).

In accordance with section 118(c)(1) of Public Law 99-190 (99 Stat. 1319), I hereby provide notice of my intention to restore nondiscriminatory trade treatment to the products of Afghanistan no sooner than 30 days following receipt by the Congress of this memorandum.

Attached to this determination is a Statement of Justification for these actions, setting forth, among other things, a description of U.S. national interests in resuming assistance and normal trade ties with Afghanistan. [Text of Statement of Justification appears at 57 F.R. 47557.]

You are authorized and directed to report these actions to the Congress and to publish this memorandum in the Federal Register.

GEORGE BUSH.

**§ 2375. Assistance to Pakistan****(a) Congressional policy, findings, and goals**

The Congress recognizes that Soviet forces occupying Afghanistan pose a security threat to Pakistan. The Congress also recognizes that an independent and democratic Pakistan with continued friendly ties with the United States is in the interest of both nations. The Congress finds that United States assistance will help Pakistan maintain its independence. Assistance to Pakistan is intended to benefit the people of Pakistan by helping them meet the burdens imposed by the presence of Soviet forces in Afghanistan and by promoting economic development. In authorizing assistance to Pakistan, it is the intent of Congress to promote the expeditious restoration of full civil liberties and representative government in Pakistan. The Congress further recognizes that it is in the mutual interest of Pakistan and the United States to avoid the profoundly destabilizing effects of the proliferation of nuclear explosive devices or the capacity to manufacture or otherwise acquire nuclear devices.

**(b) Reaffirmation of 1959 bilateral agreement**

The United States reaffirms the commitment made in its 1959 bilateral agreement with Pakistan relating to aggression from a Communist or Communist-dominated state.

**(c) Availability; defensive aspects of assistance**

Security assistance for Pakistan shall be made available in order to assist Pakistan in dealing with the threat to its security posed by the Soviet presence in Afghanistan. The United States will take appropriate steps to ensure that defense articles provided by the United States to Pakistan are used for defensive purposes.

**(d) Waiver of limitations respecting nuclear transfers**

The President may waive the prohibitions of section 2799aa of this title with respect to any grounds for the prohibition of assistance under that section arising before the effective date of part B of the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention Act of 1994 to provide assistance to Pakistan if he determines that to do so is in the national interest of the United States.

**(e) Nuclear non-proliferation conditions on assistance**

No assistance shall be furnished to Pakistan and no military equipment or technology shall be sold or transferred to Pakistan, pursuant to the authorities contained in this chapter or any other Act, unless the President shall have certified in writing to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, during the fiscal year in which assistance is to be furnished or military equipment or technology is to be sold or transferred, that Pakistan does not possess a nuclear explosive device and that the proposed United States assistance program will reduce significantly the risk that Pakistan will possess a nuclear explosive device.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 620E, as added Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 736, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1561; amended Pub. L. 99-83, title IX, § 902, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 267; Pub. L. 100-202, § 101(e) [title V, § 557], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-170; Pub. L. 101-167, title V, § 591, Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1253; Pub. L. 101-513, title V, § 574(a), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2042; Pub. L. 102-145, § 118, as added Pub. L. 102-266, § 102, Apr. 1, 1992, 106 Stat. 93; Pub. L. 102-391, title V, § 570(a), Oct. 6, 1992, 106 Stat. 1681; Pub. L. 103-87, title V, § 536(a), Sept. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 955; Pub. L. 103-236, title VIII, § 822(b)(2), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 512.)

**AMENDMENT OF SECTION**

*For termination of amendment by section 851 of Pub. L. 103-236, see Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note below.*

**REFERENCES IN TEXT**

The effective date of part B of the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention Act of 1994, referred to in subsec. (d), is the date 60 days after Apr. 30, 1994. See section 831 of Pub. L. 103-236, set out in the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention; Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note under section 3201 of this title.

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (e), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

**CODIFICATION**

Amendment by Pub. L. 102-145 is based on section 572(a) of H.R. 2621, One Hundred Second Congress, 1st Session, as passed by the House of Representatives on June 19, 1991, which was enacted into law by Pub. L. 102-145, § 118, as added by Pub. L. 102-266, § 102, Apr. 1, 1992, 106 Stat. 93. Section 118 of Pub. L. 102-145 provided that the authority and conditions provided in such section 572 shall be applicable to funds appropriated by Pub. L. 102-145 (and are hereby enacted) in lieu of the authority and conditions provided in section 574 of Pub. L. 101-513. See 1990, 1991, and 1992 Amendment notes below.

**AMENDMENTS**

1994—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 103-236 temporarily amended subsec. (d) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (d) read as follows: "The President may waive the prohibitions of section 2429 of this title at any time during the period beginning on December 29, 1981, and ending on September 30, 1994, to provide assistance to Pakistan during that period if he determines that to do so is in the national interest of the United States." See Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note below.

1993—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 103-87, which directed the substitution of "September 30, 1994" for the date specified in subsec. (d), was executed by substituting "September 30, 1994" for "September 30, 1993". See 1992 Amendment note below.

1992—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 102-391, which directed the substitution of "September 30, 1993" for the date specified in subsec. (d), was executed by substituting "September 30, 1993" for "April 1, 1993". See 1991 Amendment note below.

Pub. L. 102-266 added Pub. L. 102-145, § 118. See 1991 Amendment note below.

1991—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 102-145, § 118, as added by Pub. L. 102-266, which directed the amendment of subsec. (d) by substituting "April 1, 1993" for "April 1, 1991" in lieu of amendment by Pub. L. 101-513, § 574(a), was executed by substituting "April 1, 1993" for "April 1, 1992" to reflect the probable intent of Congress. See Codification note above and 1990 Amendment note below.

1990—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 101-513 substituted "April 1, 1992" for "April 1, 1991".

1989—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 101-167 substituted "April 1, 1991" for "April 1, 1990".

1987—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 100-202 substituted "April 1, 1990" for "September 30, 1987".

1985—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 99-83 added subsec. (e).

**EFFECTIVE AND TERMINATION DATES OF 1994 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by Pub. L. 103-236 effective 60 days after Apr. 30, 1994, and ceases to be effective and is repealed on date of enactment of first Foreign Relations Authorization Act enacted after Apr. 30, 1994, and any provision repealed by that amendment shall be reenacted, see sections 831 and 851 of Pub. L. 103-236, set out in the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention; Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note under section 3201 of this title.

**EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

**NUCLEAR NON-PROLIFERATION CONDITIONS ON ASSISTANCE FOR PAKISTAN**

Determination of the President of the United States, No. 90-15, Mar. 28, 1990, 55 F.R. 17417, provided:

Memorandum for the Secretary of State

By the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and laws of the United States of America, including section 620E(d) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as amended ("the Act") (22 U.S.C. 2375(d)), I hereby determine, pursuant to section 620E(d) of the Act, that provision of assistance to Pakistan under the Act [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.] through April 1, 1991, is in the national interest of the United States, and therefore waive the prohibitions of section 669 of the Act (22 U.S.C. 2429) with respect to that period.

You are authorized and directed to transmit this determination, together with the statement setting forth specific reasons therefor, to the Congress immediately.

This determination shall be published in the Federal Register.

GEORGE BUSH.

Prior determinations and certifications were contained in the following:

Determination of the President of the United States, No. 90-1, Oct. 5, 1989, 54 F.R. 43797.

Determination of the President of the United States, No. 89-7, Nov. 18, 1988, 53 F.R. 49111.

Determination of the President of the United States, No. 88-5, Jan. 15, 1988, 53 F.R. 3325.

Determination of the President of the United States, No. 88-4, Dec. 17, 1987, 53 F.R. 773.

Determination of the President of the United States, No. 87-3, Oct. 27, 1986, 51 F.R. 40301.

Determination of the President of the United States, No. 86-03, Nov. 25, 1985, 50 F.R. 50273.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3281 of this title.

**§ 2376. Nuclear non-proliferation policy in South Asia**

**(a) Findings**

The Congress finds that—

(1) the proliferation of weapons of mass destruction remains one of the most serious threats to international peace and stability;

(2) South Asia, in particular, is an area where the threat of a regional nuclear exchange remains high due to continued Indo-Pakistani tensions over issues such as Kashmir;

(3) to date, United States efforts to halt proliferation in South Asia have failed;

(4) although global disarmament is a desirable goal which should be vigorously pursued, both regional and sub-regional security arrangements can serve to decrease tensions and promote non-proliferation in certain areas;

(5) thus far, there has been some success on a regional basis, such as the South Pacific Nuclear Weapons Free Zone and the Treaty of Tlatelolco in Latin America;

(6) in particular, in Latin America, the Treaty of Tlatelolco has been signed by all the nuclear powers;

(7) a critical part of this treaty is Protocol II which prohibits nuclear attacks by nuclear weapons states on signatories to the treaty;

(8) in 1991, a proposal was made for a regional conference on non-proliferation in South Asia which would include Pakistan, India, the People's Republic of China, the Soviet Union, and the United States; and

(9) thus far, Pakistan, China, Russia, and the United States have expressed interest in attending such a conference, whereas India has refused to attend.

**(b) Policy**

It is the sense of the Congress that the President should pursue a policy which seeks a regional negotiated solution to the issue of nuclear non-proliferation in South Asia at the earliest possible time, including a protocol to be signed by all nuclear weapons states, prohibiting nuclear attacks by nuclear weapons states on countries in the region. Such a policy should have as its ultimate goal concurrent accession by Pakistan and India to the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty, and should also include as needed a phased approach to that goal through a series of agreements among the parties on nuclear issues, such as the agreement reached by Pakistan and India not to attack one another's nuclear facilities.

**(c) Report on progress toward regional non-proliferation**

Not later than April 1, 1993, and every six months thereafter, the President shall submit a report to the Committees on Appropriations, the Speaker of the House of Representatives, and the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, on nuclear proliferation in

South Asia, including efforts taken by the United States to achieve a regional agreement on nuclear non-proliferation, and including a comprehensive list of the obstacles to concluding such a regional agreement.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 620F, as added Pub. L. 102-391, title V, § 585(a), Oct. 6, 1992, 106 Stat. 1688.)

DELEGATION OF AUTHORITY WITH RESPECT TO REPORTS TO CONGRESS CONCERNING PROGRESS TOWARD NON-PROLIFERATION IN SOUTH ASIA

Memorandum of President of the United States, Mar. 30, 1994, 59 F.R. 17229, provided:

Memorandum for the Secretary of State

By virtue of the authority vested in me by the Constitution and laws of the United States, including section 301 of title 3 of the United States Code, I hereby delegate to the Secretary of State the functions vested in the President by section 620F(c) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as amended (22 U.S.C. 2376(c)).

Any report prepared pursuant to this delegation of authority shall be coordinated with other agencies, as appropriate, and the Assistant to the President for National Security Affairs, before submission to the Congress.

The Secretary of State is authorized and directed to publish this memorandum in the Federal Register.

WILLIAM J. CLINTON.

PART II—ADMINISTRATIVE PROVISIONS

**§ 2381. Exercise of functions**

**(a) Delegation by President; rules and regulations; utilization of goods and services from private enterprise, and facilities and resources of Federal agencies when not competitive with private enterprise**

The President may exercise any functions conferred upon him by this chapter through such agency or officer of the United States Government as he shall direct. The head of any such agency or such officer may from time to time promulgate such rules and regulations as may be necessary to carry out such functions, and may delegate authority to perform any such functions, including, if he shall so specify, the authority successively to redelegate any of such functions to any of his subordinates. In providing technical assistance under this chapter, the head of any such agency or such officer shall utilize, to the fullest extent practicable, goods and professional and other services from private enterprise on a contract basis. In such fields as education, health, housing, or agriculture, the facilities and resources of other Federal agencies shall be utilized when such facilities are particularly or uniquely suitable for technical assistance, are not competitive with private enterprise, and can be made available without interfering unduly with domestic programs.

**(b) Eligibility of suppliers; debarment period; causes for debarment; conditions for reinstatement; periodic review**

The President shall issue and enforce regulations determining the eligibility of any person to receive funds made available under this chapter. A person may be suspended under such regulations for a temporary period pending the completion of an investigation and any resulting judicial or debarment proceedings, upon cause for

belief that such person or an affiliate thereof probably has undertaken conduct which constitutes a cause for debarment; and, after an opportunity has been afforded to such person for a hearing, he may be debarred for an additional period, not to exceed three years. Among the causes for debarment shall be (1) offering or accepting a bribe or other illegal payment or credit in connection with any transaction financed with funds made available under this chapter; or (2) committing a fraud in the procurement or performance of any contract financed with funds made available under this chapter; or (3) acting in any other manner which shows a lack of integrity or honesty in connection with any transaction financed with funds made available under this chapter. Reinstatement of eligibility in each particular case shall be subject to such conditions as the President shall direct. Each person whose eligibility is denied or suspended under this subsection shall, upon request, be entitled to a review of his eligibility not less often than once every two years.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 621, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 445; Pub. L. 87-565, pt. III, § 302(a), Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 262; Pub. L. 88-205, pt. III, § 302(a), Dec. 16, 1963, 77 Stat. 388; Pub. L. 90-554, pt. III, § 302(a), Oct. 8, 1968, 82 Stat. 964.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1968—Pub. L. 90-554 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsec. (b).

1963—Pub. L. 88-205 provided that goods and professional and other services from private enterprise should be utilized on a contract basis, and that Federal agencies be utilized only when not competitive with private enterprise and available without interfering unduly with domestic programs.

1962—Pub. L. 87-565 struck out designation "(a)" from provisions of subsec. (a), and repealed subsections (b) to (e) which related to the abolition of the Development Loan Fund, International Cooperation Administration, and the Office of Inspector General and Comptroller, the transfer of their functions, and the transfer of the function of the Export-Import Bank under section 1704(e) of title 7.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS; ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Functions of President under this section delegated and funds available under this chapter allocated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by sections 1-102(a)(1), (e) and 1-801(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out below.

Section 2(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 11579, Jan. 19, 1971, 36 F.R. 969, set out as a note under section 2191 of this title, which delegated functions of President under subsec. (b) of this section to Overseas Private Investment Corporation, was revoked by section 1-903(a)(2) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 27, 1979, 44 F.R. 56679, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, set out below.

#### AGENCY FOR INTERNATIONAL DEVELOPMENT BUDGET SUBMISSION

Pub. L. 102-391, title V, § 599E, Oct. 6, 1992, 106 Stat. 1698, provided that: "The President shall include with each budget for a fiscal year submitted to the Congress

under section 1105 of title 31, United States Code, materials that shall identify clearly and separately the amounts requested in the budget for appropriation for that fiscal year for salaries and expenses related to administrative activities of the Agency for International Development."

#### REORGANIZATION PLAN NO. 2 OF 1979

44 F.R. 41165, 93 Stat. 1378

Prepared by the President and transmitted to the Senate and the House of Representatives in Congress assembled, April 10, 1979, pursuant to the provisions of chapter 9 of title 5 of the United States Code.<sup>1</sup>

#### UNITED STATES INTERNATIONAL DEVELOPMENT COOPERATION AGENCY

##### SECTION 1. ESTABLISHMENT OF THE UNITED STATES INTERNATIONAL DEVELOPMENT COOPERATION AGENCY

There is hereby established in the executive branch an independent agency to be known as the United States International Development Cooperation Agency (hereinafter referred to as the "Agency").

##### SEC. 2. DIRECTOR

The Agency shall be headed by the Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency (hereinafter referred to as the "Director"), who shall be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, and shall receive compensation at the rate prescribed by law for Level II of the Executive Schedule [5 U.S.C. 5315]. The Director shall have primary responsibility for establishing overall development assistance policy and coordinating international development activities supported by the United States. The Director shall serve as the principal advisor to the President and the Secretary of State on international development matters and also shall advise the President on all trade, science and technology, and other matters significantly affecting the developing nations. The Director shall report to the President and, on matters relating to foreign policy, to the Secretary of State. The Director shall designate the order in which other officials shall act for and exercise the powers of the Director during the absence or disability of the Director and the Deputy Director or in the event of vacancies in both such offices.

##### SEC. 3. DEPUTY DIRECTOR

The President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, may appoint a Deputy Director of the Agency, who shall receive compensation at the rate prescribed by law for Level III of the Executive Schedule [5 U.S.C. 5314]. The Deputy Director shall perform such duties and exercise such powers as the Director may from time to time prescribe and, in addition, shall act for and exercise the powers of the Director during the absence or disability of the Director or during a vacancy in such office.

##### SEC. 4. ASSOCIATE DIRECTORS

The President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, may appoint two Associate Directors of the Agency, who shall perform such duties and exercise such powers as the Director may from time to time prescribe and who shall receive compensation at the rate prescribed by law for Level IV of the Executive Schedule [5 U.S.C. 5315].

##### SEC. 5. PERFORMANCE OF FUNCTIONS

The Director may from time to time establish, alter, consolidate, or discontinue organizational units within the Agency (other than units expressly established by statute or reorganization plan). The Director may from time to time delegate responsibility for carrying out any function or authority of the Director of the Agency

<sup>1</sup> As amended May 21, 1979.

to any officer, employee, or unit of the Agency, or any other officer or agency of the executive branch.

#### SEC. 6. TRANSFERS OF FUNCTIONS

(a) There are hereby transferred to the Director all functions and authorities vested in the Agency for International Development or in its administrator pursuant to the following:

(1) sections 233(b), 239(i), 296(e), 297(d), 298(c)(6), 299(d), 601(a) through (d), and 624(f)(2)(C) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as amended (22 U.S.C. 2193(b), 2199(i), 2220a(e), 2220b(d), 2220c(c)(6), 2220d(d), 2351(a) through (d), and 2384(f)(2)(C));

(2) section 407 of the Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954, as amended (7 U.S.C. 1736a); and

(3) section 706 of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Year 1979 (49 U.S.C. 1518).

(b) There are hereby transferred to the Director all functions and authorities vested in the agency primarily responsible for administering part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as amended [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.], or in its Administrator pursuant to the following:

(1) sections 101(b), 119, 125, 531(a)(2), 601(e)(2), and 640B of such Act (22 U.S.C. 2151(b), 2151q, 2151w, 2346(a)(2), 2351(e)(2), and 2399c); and

(2) section 602 of the International Security Assistance and Arms Control Act of 1976 (22 U.S.C. 2352 note).

(c) There are hereby transferred to the Director all functions and authorities vested in the Secretary of State pursuant to the following:

(1) section 101(b) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as amended (22 U.S.C. 2151(b)), insofar as it relates to policy guidance other than foreign policy guidance, and section 622(c) of such Act (22 U.S.C. 2382(c)), insofar as it relates to development assistance; and

(2) section 901 of Public Law 95-118 (22 U.S.C. 262g).

#### SEC. 7. ABOLITION

One of the positions that the President may appoint under section 624(a) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2384(a), 5 U.S.C. 5315(5)) is hereby abolished.

#### SEC. 8. OTHER TRANSFERS; INTERIM OFFICERS

(a) So much of the personnel, property, records, and unexpended balances of appropriations, allocations and other funds employed, used, held, available, or to be made available in connection with the functions and authorities affected by the establishment of the Agency, as the Director of the Office of Management and Budget shall determine, shall be transferred to the appropriate agency or component at such time or times as the Director of the Office of Management and Budget shall provide, except that no such unexpended balances transferred shall be used for purposes other than those for which the appropriation was originally made. The Director of the Office of Management and Budget shall provide for terminating the affairs of any agency abolished herein and for such further measures and dispositions as such Director deems necessary to effectuate the purposes of this reorganization plan.

(b) Pending the initial appointment of the Director, Deputy Director, and Associate Directors of the Agency, their functions and authorities may be performed, for up to 60 days after section 1 of this reorganization plan becomes effective [Oct. 1, 1979], by such individuals as the President may designate. Any individual so designated shall be compensated at the rate provided herein for the position whose functions and authorities such individual performs.

#### SEC. 9. EFFECTIVE DATE

This reorganization plan shall become effective on July 1, 1980, or at such earlier time or times as the President shall specify, but not sooner than the earliest

time allowable under section 906 of title 5 of the United States Code.

[Sections 1, 5, 6, and 8 of Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1979 were effective Oct. 1, 1979, pursuant to Ex. Ord. No. 12163, § 1-101, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, set out below.]

[Sections 2, 3, and 4 of Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1979 were effective July 19, 1979, pursuant to Ex. Ord. No. 12147, July 19, 1979, 44 F.R. 42957, set out below.]

#### MESSAGE OF THE PRESIDENT

To the Congress of the United States:

I transmit herewith Reorganization Plan No. 2 of 1979, to consolidate certain foreign assistance activities of the United States Government. I am acting under the authority vested in me by the Reorganization Act, chapter 9 of title 5 of the United States Code, and pursuant to title III of the International Development and Food Assistance Act of 1978 [Pub. L. 95-424, Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 955, set out as a note under 22 U.S.C. 2151], which requires that I report to the Congress my decisions on reorganization in this area. The purposes of this reorganization are to make more coherent our economic policies and programs affecting the developing nations and to improve the effectiveness of United States foreign development activities.

This Nation is committed—not only in the interest of the people of developing countries, but in our own interest as well—to help those countries in their efforts to achieve better lives for their citizens. To this end, we conduct a number of bilateral development assistance programs, participate in a number of multilateral development assistance programs, and engage in a variety of other economic activities that affect developing countries.

When this Administration took office, United States support of international development suffered from four major problems. First, no single U.S. official was charged with responsibility for establishing a comprehensive and coherent strategy for our Nation's efforts in this field. Second, no agency or official had the authority to ensure that the various U.S. programs affecting development were consistent with each other or complemented the programs of the multilateral organizations to which we contribute. Third, none of the agency heads testifying before the Congress about his particular portion of our foreign assistance efforts was able to speak authoritatively for the program as a whole or for the Administration's overall development policies and priorities. Finally, because there was no authoritative spokesperson, developmental concerns were at times accorded insufficient weight in executive branch decision-making on trade, monetary, and other non-aid economic issues that affect developing nations.

Just before his death a year ago, Senator Hubert H. Humphrey prepared a bill intended to solve these problems. Congressman Clement Zablocki introduced a similar measure in the House. Although the Congress took no action last year on the organizational provisions of the Humphrey-Zablocki bill, it directed me, in title III of the 1978 development assistance authorization act, to institute a strengthened system of coordination of U.S. economic policies affecting the developing countries, and urged me to create an agency with primary responsibility for coordination of international development-related activities.

In response to the Humphrey-Zablocki bill and the Administration's own analyses, I took a number of steps last year to strengthen aid coordination and improve the effectiveness of our development assistance programs. The Reorganization Plan transmitted with this message continues that process. It will provide stronger direction of U.S. policies toward the developing world, ensure a more coherent development strategy, promote the more effective use of the various U.S. bilateral instruments by which the U.S. can encourage economic and social progress in developing countries, and ensure that U.S. bilateral programs and the multilateral programs to which we contribute better complement each other.

This reorganization would create a new agency, to be known as the International Development Cooperation

Agency (IDCA). IDCA would become a focal point within the U.S. Government for economic matters affecting U.S. relations with developing countries. Subject to guidance concerning the foreign policy of the United States from the Secretary of State, the IDCA Director would be the principal international development advisor to the President and to the Secretary of State. The Director would replace the AID Administrator in chairing the Development Coordination Committee. The IDCA Director would make recommendations to me concerning the appointment and tenure of senior officials of each component of IDCA, and would establish and control the budgets and policies of the Agency for International Development and the bilateral foreign assistance programs it administers, and of the Institute For Technological Cooperation, proposed in legislation transmitted to the Congress on February 26, 1979, which would support research and technological innovation to reduce obstacles to economic development.

The Overseas Private Investment Corporation, which insures and guarantees U.S. private investments in developing countries against certain hazards, would also be a component of IDCA, but OPIC's Board of Directors, which the IDCA Director would chair, would continue to set OPIC policy.

Each of these agencies would retain its individual identity and substantial day-to-day operating autonomy. A principal responsibility of the IDCA Director—who would be supported by a small staff—would be the achievement of consistency and balance among the policies, major programs, and budgets of the component agencies.

To help insure that U.S. bilateral efforts and the programs of major multilateral development institutions better complement each other, the IDCA Director would participate in the selection of U.S. Executive Directors of multilateral development banks (World Bank Group, Inter-American Development Bank, Asian Development Bank and African Development Fund), and would advise these Executive Directors on development policy and proposed projects and programs. Additionally, IDCA would assume lead responsibility for budget support and policy concerning United States participation in those organizations and programs of the United Nations and the Organization of American States whose purpose is primarily developmental. These are the UN Development Program, UNICEF, the Organization of American States Technical Assistance Funds, the UN Capital Development Fund, the UN Educational and Training Program for Southern Africa, the UN/Food and Agriculture Organization (FAO) World Food Program, the FAO Post-Harvest Losses Fund, and the UN Disaster Relief Organization.

The IDCA Director would be responsible for insuring that development goals are taken fully into account in all executive branch decision-making on trade, technology, and other economic policy issues affecting the less developed nations, and would submit an annual development policy statement to the Congress. The Director would also prepare a comprehensive foreign assistance budget, which he would submit to the Office of Management and Budget after consulting with the Secretary of State, and would lead the Administration's presentation of that budget to the Congress.

When IDCA is established, I intend to delegate to it the principal authority for the bilateral development assistance program administered by AID (now vested in me by law, delegated to the Secretary of State, and re-delegated to the Administrator of AID). Certain functions vested in me under the Foreign Assistance Act will continue to be delegated to the Secretary of State, Secretary of the Treasury, Secretary of Defense, or elsewhere; but most functions relating to the assistance program will be delegated directly to the IDCA Director, who will in turn redelegate these functions, as appropriate, to the Administrator of AID. I also intend to delegate to the Director of IDCA authority proposed to be vested in me to establish an Institute For Technological Cooperation; the IDCA Director would redelegate these functions, as appropriate, to IFTC.

The reorganization would increase program effectiveness through improved coordination, as requested in the 1978 authorization act. I estimate that it would achieve that goal with no increase in expenditures or personnel. After investigation, I have found that this reorganization is necessary to carry out the policy set forth in section 901(a) of title 5 of the United States Code. This plan abolishes one of the statutory officers that the President may appoint under section 624(a) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2384(a)). No statutory functions are abolished by the plan. The provisions in this plan for the appointment and pay of the Director, Deputy Director, and Associate Directors of IDCA have been found by me to be necessary by reason of the reorganization and are at rates applicable to comparable officers in the executive branch.

This proposal constitutes the first major restructuring of the U.S. foreign aid program since the creation of the Agency for International Development in 1961. It will provide the United States with governmental machinery far better able to fulfill our commitment to assist people in developing countries to eliminate hunger, poverty, illness and ignorance. It responds to the mandate of the Congress. Let us work together to insure its successful and effective implementation.

JIMMY CARTER.

THE WHITE HOUSE, April 10, 1979.

#### EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 10973

Ex. Ord. No. 10973, Nov. 3, 1961, 26 F.R. 10469, as amended, which related to the administration of foreign assistance and related functions, was revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 12163, §1-903(a)(1), Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56679, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, set out below.

Ex. Ord. No. 10973, Nov. 3, 1961, 26 F.R. 10469, as amended, was superseded insofar as any provision therein was in conflict with any provision of Ex. Ord. No. 11579, Jan. 19, 1971, 36 F.R. 969, set out as a note under section 2191 of this title.

#### EX. ORD. NO. 12147. EFFECTIVE DATE OF CERTAIN SECTIONS OF REORGANIZATION PLAN NO. 2 OF 1979 RESPECTING UNITED STATES INTERNATIONAL DEVELOPMENT COOPERATION AGENCY

Ex. Ord. No. 12147, July 19, 1979, 44 F.R. 42957, provided:

By the authority vested in me as President of the United States of America by Section 9 of Reorganization Plan No. 2 of 1979 [set out above], both Houses of Congress having defeated a resolution of disapproval (S. Res. 140, 125 Cong. Rec. S. 8829 (July 9, 1979); H. Res. 231, 125 Cong. Rec. H. 5729 (July 11, 1979)), it is hereby ordered that Sections 2, 3, and 4 of that Plan, providing for the offices of Director, Deputy Director, and Associate Directors, are effective immediately.

JIMMY CARTER.

#### EX. ORD. NO. 12163. ADMINISTRATION OF FOREIGN ASSISTANCE AND RELATED FUNCTIONS

Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 12226, July 22, 1980, 45 F.R. 49235; Ex. Ord. No. 12292, Feb. 23, 1981, 46 F.R. 13968; Ex. Ord. No. 12321, Sept. 14, 1981, 46 F.R. 46109; Ex. Ord. No. 12365, May 24, 1982, 47 F.R. 22933; Ex. Ord. No. 12423, May 26, 1983, 48 F.R. 24025; Ex. Ord. No. 12458, Jan. 14, 1984, 49 F.R. 1977; Ex. Ord. No. 12500, Jan. 24, 1985, 50 F.R. 3733; Ex. Ord. No. 12560, May 24, 1986, 51 F.R. 19159; Ex. Ord. No. 12608, Sept. 9, 1987, 52 F.R. 34617; Ex. Ord. No. 12620, Dec. 24, 1987, 52 F.R. 49135; Ex. Ord. No. 12639, May 6, 1988, 53 F.R. 16691; Ex. Ord. No. 12680, July 5, 1989, 54 F.R. 28995; Ex. Ord. No. 12695, Nov. 1, 1989, 54 F.R. 46589; Ex. Ord. No. 12738, §§1-6, Dec. 14, 1990, 55 F.R. 52033, provided:

By virtue of the authority vested in me by the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [this chapter], Reorganization Plan No. 2 of 1979 [set out above], the International Development Cooperation Act of 1979 [see Short Title of 1979 Amendment note set out under section 2151 of this title], and section 301 of title 3 of the



United States Code, and as President of the United States, it is hereby ordered as follows:

1-1. UNITED STATES INTERNATIONAL DEVELOPMENT  
COOPERATION AGENCY

1-101. *Establishment of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency.* Sections 1, 5, 6, and 8 of Reorganization Plan No. 2 of 1979 [set out above] are declared effective and the United States International Development Cooperation Agency (hereinafter referred to as "IDCA") is hereby established.

1-102. *Delegation of Functions.* (a) Exclusive of the functions otherwise delegated, or reserved to the President, by this order, and subject to the provisions of this order, there are hereby delegated to the Director of IDCA (hereinafter referred to as the "Director") all functions conferred upon the President by:

(1) the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2151 *et seq.*) (hereinafter referred to as the "Act"), except that the delegated functions under sections 116(e), 491(b), 491(c), 607, 627, 628, 630(3), and 666 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2151n(e), 2292(b), (c), 2357, 2387, 2388, 2390(3), 2426] shall be exercised in consultation with the Secretary of State;

(2) the Latin American Development Act (22 U.S.C. 1942 *et seq.*);

(3) section 402 of the Mutual Security Act of 1954 (22 U.S.C. 1922);

(4) section 413(b) of the International Security Assistance and Arms Export Control Act of 1976 (22 U.S.C. 2431 [note]); and [sic]

(5) section 1205(b) of the International Security and Development Cooperation Act of 1985 (hereinafter referred to as the "ISDCA of 1985") [set out as a note under 22 U.S.C. 2346];

(6) section 535 of the Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Act, 1990 (Public Law 101-167) [Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1231], to be exercised by the Administrator of the Agency for International Development within IDCA;

(7) the first proviso under the heading "Population Development Assistance" contained in title II of the Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Act, 1990 (Public Law 101-167) [Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1200], to be exercised by the Administrator of the Agency for International Development within IDCA;

(8) section 572 of the Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Act, 1989 (Public Law 100-461) [22 U.S.C. 2151v note], to be exercised by the Administrator of the Agency for International Development within IDCA, with the concurrence of the Development Coordination Committee, as established by section 640B of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2399c] and as provided for herein.[: and]

(9) section 514 of the Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Act, 1990 (Public Law 101-167) [Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1219], insofar as they relate to the authority contained in section 109 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2151g], to be exercised by the Administrator of the Agency for International Development within IDCA.

(b) The Director shall exercise the functions of the President under sections 301(a), 301(e)(1), and 305 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2221(a), (e)(1) and 2225] only insofar as they pertain to the United Nations Development Program, UNICEF, the Organization of American States Technical Assistance Funds, the United Nations Capital Development Fund, the United Nations Educational and Training Program for Southern Africa, the United Nations/Food and Agriculture Organization World Food Program, the Food and Agriculture Organization Post-Harvest Losses Fund, the United Nations Disaster Relief Organization, and any other international programs whose purpose is primarily developmental.

(c) In carrying out the functions under section 653 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2413] that are delegated to the Director, the Director shall consult with the Director of the Office of Management and Budget.

(d) To the extent practicable, the Director will exercise functions relating to Foreign Service personnel in a manner that will assure maximum compatibility among agencies authorized by law to utilize the Foreign Service personnel system. To this end he shall consult regularly with the Secretary of State.

(e) In exercising functions under the Act [this chapter] arising from later-enacted amendments to any law specified in subsection (a) of this section that relate directly to matters of foreign policy, the Director shall consult with the Secretary of State to determine whether such function should more appropriately be exercised by the Secretary or reserved to the President.

1-103. *Agency for International Development.*

(a) The Director shall continue within IDCA the Agency for International Development, heretofore established in the Department of State.

(b) The Agency for International Development shall be headed by an Administrator appointed pursuant to section 624(a) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2384(a)].

(c) The officers provided for in section 624(a) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2384(a)] shall serve in the Agency for International Development.

1-104. *Office of Small Business.* The Office of Small Business provided for in section 602(b) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2352(b)] shall be in the Agency for International Development.

1-2. DEPARTMENT OF STATE

1-201. *Delegation of Functions.* (a) Subject to the provisions of this order, there are hereby delegated to the Secretary of State (hereafter in this Part referred to as the "Secretary") all functions conferred upon the President by:

(1) sections 239(g), 301(a), 301(c), 301(e)(1), 302(a)(1) as it relates to the Presidential certification concerning the United Nations Relief and Works Agency, 305, section 305 [sic] of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2199(g), 2221(a), (c), (e)(1), 2222(a)(1), and 2225];

(2) section 451 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2261];

(3) section 495F of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2292], insofar as they relate to policy decisions pertaining to refugee programs under such section;

(4) section 505(a) [22 U.S.C. 2314(a)] relating to other provisions which may be required by the President, and sections 505(d), (e), (f) and (g) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2314(d), (e), (f), (g)].

(5) sections 505(a)(1) and (4) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2314(a)(1), (4)] relating to consent;

(6) section 505(b) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2314(b)] to the extent that it pertains to countries that agree to the conditions set forth therein;

(7) chapter 4 of Part II of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2346 *et seq.*], insofar as they relate to policy decisions and justifications for economic support programs under such chapter, including determinations of whether there will be an economic support program for a country and the amount of the program for each country, and all functions conferred by Section 534 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2346c]. Such functions shall be exercised in cooperation with the Director;

(8) chapter 6 of part II of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2348 *et seq.*];

(9) section 601(b)(3), (4), and (6) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2351(b)(3), (4), and (6)];

(10) section 604(a) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2354(a)], insofar as they related to procurement under chapter 1 of part I and chapter 4 of part II of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2151 *et seq.*, 2346 *et seq.*];

(11) section 614(b) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2364(b)], except that the function of determining which provisions of law should be disregarded to achieve the purpose of the provision is reserved to the President;

(12) section 620(c), (e), (f), (g), (j), (q), and (s) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2370(c), (e), (f), (g), (j), (q), and (s)];

(13) section 620C(d) and (e) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2373(d), (e)];

(14) section 625(d) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2385(d)], insofar as it relates to personnel in the Department of State;

(15) [Revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 12292, Feb. 23, 1981, 46 F.R. 13968.]

(16) section 634B of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2394-1a], insofar as it relates to functions delegated to the Secretary under this order;

(17) section 617 and 653 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2367, 2413], insofar as they relate to chapter 8 of part I [22 U.S.C. 2291 et seq.] and part II of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2301 et seq.];

(18) other provisions of the Act [this chapter] that relate directly and necessarily to the conduct of programs and activities vested in or delegated to the Secretary;

(19) section 8(d) of the Act of January 12, 1971 (22 U.S.C. 2321b (d)); and

(20) section 607 of the International Security Assistance and Arms Export Control Act of 1976 (22 U.S.C. 2394a).

(21) Section 725 of the International Security and Development Cooperation Act of 1981 [probably means section 725(b), (c) of Pub. L. 97-113, formerly set out as a note under 22 U.S.C. 2370];

(22) Section 726 of the International Security and Development Cooperation Act of 1981 [probably means section 726(b) of Pub. L. 97-113, set out as a note under 22 U.S.C. 2370];

(23) Chapter 8 of Part II of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2349aa et seq.] except that such functions shall be exercised consistent with Section 573(d)(3) [22 U.S.C. 2349aa-2(d)(3)] thereof;

(24) Section 402(b)(2) of Title 10 of the United States Code, which shall be exercised in consultation with the Secretary of Defense;

(25) sections 207, 552(b) [former 49 U.S.C. 1515a(b)], 611, 612(a), 617(c), 702(c), 703(a), 705(b) and (c), 706, 722(j), 813(b) and 1008 of the ISDCA of 1985 [Pub. L. 99-83, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 213, 226, 230, 231, 233, 238, 239, 241, 242, 255, 266, and 271];

(26) chapter 8 of part I of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2291 et seq.], except for section 481(h) [22 U.S.C. 2291(h)], which is reserved to the President;

(27) section 502B of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2304];

(28) sections 513, 538, 554, 559, 560, 561 [22 U.S.C. 2151 note], 562 [7 U.S.C. 3602 note], 564(a), 599C, and 599G(a)(3) of the Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Act, 1990 (Public Law 101-167) [Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1219, 1232, 1237-1239, 1241, 1242, 1261, 1265];

(29) the second and third provisos under the sub-heading "Contribution to the International Development Association" under the heading "Annual Contributions to International Financial Institutions" contained in title I of the Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Act, 1990 (Public Law 101-167) [Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1197], and section 548 of such Act [Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1235], each of which shall be exercised in consultation with the Secretary of the Treasury;

(30) the proviso relating to certain expropriation claims of U.S. citizens in El Salvador under the heading "Economic Support Fund" contained in title II of the Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Act, 1990 (Public Law 101-167) [Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1207];

(31) the proviso relating to tied aid credits under the heading "Economic Support Fund" contained in title II of the Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Act, 1990 (Public Law 101-167) [Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1207], which shall be exercised in consultation with the Administrator of the Agency for International Development within IDCA;

(32) subsection (c)(2) under the heading "Foreign Military Sales Debt Reforms" contained in title III of the Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Act, 1988 (Public Law 100-202) [22 U.S.C. 2764 note], which shall be exercised in consultation with the Secretary of Defense;

(33) sections 4101(b) [former 22 U.S.C. 2291 note], 4205(d), 4307(a), and 4309 of the Anti-Drug Abuse Act of

1988 (Public Law 100-690) [Nov. 18, 1988, 102 Stat. 4264, 4269, 4274, 4275]. The Secretary of State in implementing the functions delegated to him under section 4205(d) shall consult with the Secretary of Defense;

(34) section 512 of the Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Act, 1990 (Public Law 101-167) [Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1219], which shall be exercised in consultation with the President of the Export-Import Bank of the United States;

(35) section 581(a) and 581(c) of the Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Act, 1990 (Public Law 101-167) [Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1250], which shall be exercised in consultation with the Secretary of Defense; and

(36) section 12 of the International Narcotics Control Act of 1989 (Public Law 101-231) [Dec. 13, 1989, 103 Stat. 1962].

(b) The functions under sections 239(g), 620(e), 620(g), 620(j), 620(q), and 620(s) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2199(g), 2370(e), (g), (j), (q), and (s)] delegated to the Secretary shall be exercised in consultation with the Director.

(c) The functions under section 653 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2413] delegated to the Secretary shall be exercised in consultation with the Secretary of Defense, insofar as they relate to functions under the Act [this chapter] administered by the Department of Defense, and the Director of the Office of Management and Budget.

(d) The Secretary may redelegate to the Director or to any other officer or agency of the Executive branch functions delegated to the Secretary by this order.

### 1-3. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE

1-301. *Delegation of Functions.* Subject to the provisions of this order, there are hereby delegated to the Secretary of Defense:

(a) The functions conferred upon the President by Part II [22 U.S.C. 2301 et seq.] (except chapters 4, 6 and 8 thereof) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2346 et seq., 2348 et seq., 2349aa et seq.] not otherwise delegated or reserved to the President.

(b) To the extent that they relate to other functions under the Act [this chapter] administered by the Department of Defense, the functions conferred upon the President by sections 602(a), 605(a), 625(a), 625(d)(1), 625(h), 627, 628, 630(3), 631(a), 634(B), 635(b) (except with respect to negotiation, conclusion, and termination of international agreements), 635(d), 635(g), and 636(i) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2352(a), 2355(a), 2385(a), (d)(1), (h), 2387, 2388, 2390(3), 2391(a), 2394-1a, 2395(b), (d), (g), and 2396(i)].

(c) Those functions under section 634A of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2394-1], to the extent they relate to notifications to the Congress concerning changes in programs under part II of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2301 et seq.] (except chapters 4, 6, and 8 thereof [22 U.S.C. 2346 et seq., 2348 et seq., 2349aa et seq.]) and under the Arms Export Control Act, as amended [22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.], subject to prior consultation with the Secretary of State.

(d) The functions under sections 627, 628, and 630(3) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2387, 2388, and 2390(3)] delegated to the Secretary of Defense shall be exercised in consultation with the Secretary of State.

(e) Those functions conferred upon the President under section 616 of the ISDCA of 1985 [Pub. L. 99-83, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 232].

(f) The functions conferred upon the President under section 573 [22 U.S.C. 2321j note] and section 581(b)(2) of the Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Act, 1990 (Public Law 101-167) [Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1246, 1250].

(g) The functions conferred upon the President under section 3 of the International Narcotics Control Act of 1989 (Public Law 101-231) [Dec. 13, 1989, 103 Stat. 1955], which shall be exercised in consultation with the Secretary of State.

1-302. *Reports and Information.* In carrying out the functions under section 514 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2321h] delegated to him by section 301 of this order, the Sec-

retary of Defense shall consult with the Secretary of State.

#### 1-4. INSTITUTE FOR SCIENTIFIC AND TECHNOLOGICAL COOPERATION

1-401. *Establishment of Institute for Scientific and Technological Cooperation.* There is established within IDCA the Institute for Scientific and Technological Cooperation (hereinafter referred to as the Institute).

1-402. *Establishment of the Council on International Scientific and Technological Cooperation.* There is established the Council on International Scientific and Technological Cooperation pursuant to section 407(a) of the IDC Act of 1979 [22 U.S.C. 3507(a)].

1-403. There are hereby established two additional positions in the Institute pursuant to section 406(c) of the IDC Act of 1979 [22 U.S.C. 3506(c)]. The officers appointed to these positions shall perform such duties and exercise such powers as the Director of the Institute may prescribe.

#### 1-5. OTHER AGENCIES

1-501. *Department of the Treasury.* (a) There are delegated to the Secretary of the Treasury the functions conferred upon the President by:

(1) section 305 [22 U.S.C. 2225], insofar as it relates to the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, the International Development Association, the International Finance Corporation, the Inter-American Development Bank, the Asian Development Bank, the African Development Fund, and the International Monetary Fund;

(2) the second sentence of section 612(a) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2362(a)]; and

(3) section 502 of the Mutual Security Act of 1954 (22 U.S.C. 1754).

(b) The Secretary of the Treasury shall continue to administer any open special foreign country accounts established pursuant to former section 514 of the Act as enacted by section 201(f) of Public Law 92-226 (86 Stat. 25) and repealed by Section 12(b)(5) of Public Law 93-189 (87 Stat. 722) [22 U.S.C. 2321g].

(c) The functions under section 305 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2225] delegated to the Secretary of the Treasury shall be exercised in consultation with the Director, as provided in Executive Order No. 11269 of February 14, 1966, as amended [set out as a note under section 286b of this title].

1-502. *Department of Commerce.* There is hereby delegated to the Secretary of Commerce so much of the functions conferred upon the President by section 601(b)(1) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2351(b)(1)] as consists of drawing the attention of private enterprise to opportunities for investment and development in less developed friendly countries and areas.

1-503. *Office of Personnel Management.* There is hereby delegated to the Director of the Office of Personnel Management the function of prescribing regulations conferred upon the President by the proviso contained in section 625(b) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2385(b)].

1-504. *International Communication Agency [now United States Information Agency].* The International Communication Agency [now United States Information Agency] shall perform all public information functions abroad with respect to the foreign assistance, aid, and development programs of the United States Government.

1-505. *Development Loan Committee.* There is hereby established a Development Loan Committee in accordance with section 122(e) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2151t(e)] which shall consist of the Director of IDCA, who shall be Chair, the Administrator of the Agency for International Development, the Chairman of the Board of Directors of the Export-Import Bank of the United States, the Assistant Secretary of State for Economic Affairs, the Assistant Secretary of the Treasury dealing with international finance, the Assistant Secretary of Commerce for Industry and Trade, and the officer of the Agency for International Development dealing with development financing.

1-506. *Development Coordination Committee.* (a) In accordance with section 640B of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2399c], there is hereby established a Development Coordination Committee (hereinafter referred to as the Committee). The Committee shall consist of the Director of IDCA, who shall be Chair; the Administrator of the Agency for International Development, the Director of the Institute for Scientific and Technological Cooperation; the Under Secretary of State for Economic Affairs; the Under Secretary of the Treasury for Monetary Affairs; the Under Secretary of Commerce; the Under Secretary of Agriculture; the Under [Deputy] Secretary of Labor; the Under Secretary of Energy; a Deputy Special Representative for Trade Negotiations; an Associate Director of the Office of Management and Budget; a representative of the Assistant to the President for National Security Affairs; the President of the Export-Import Bank of the United States; the Director of the Peace Corps; and the President of the Overseas Private Investment Corporation.

(b) Whenever matters within the jurisdiction of the Committee may be of interest to Federal agencies not represented on the Committee under subsection (a) of this section, the Chair of the Committee may consult with such agencies and may invite them to designate representatives to participate in meetings and deliberations of the Committee.

(c) The Chair of the Committee may establish subcommittees of the Committee and designate the chairs thereof.

(d) Subject to the foreign policy guidance of the Secretary of State, the Committee shall advise the President with respect to coordination of United States policy and programs affecting the development of developing countries, including programs of bilateral and multilateral development assistance.

(e) All agencies and officers of the Government shall keep the Committee informed in necessary detail as to the policies, programs and activities referred to in subsection (d) of this section.

(f) Nothing herein shall be deemed to derogate from the responsibilities of the Secretary of State or the Secretary of the Treasury, or from responsibilities vested elsewhere by law or other Executive orders.

#### 1-6. ADDITIONAL DELEGATIONS AND LIMITATIONS OF AUTHORITY; CONSULTATION

1-601. *General Delegation of Functions.* There are hereby delegated to the heads of agencies having responsibilities for carrying out the provisions of the Act [this chapter] all functions conferred upon the President by:

(a) section 654 [22 U.S.C. 2414] (except as reserved to the President); and

(b) those provisions of acts appropriating funds under the authority of the Act [this chapter] that relate to the Act, or other acts authorizing such funds, insofar as they relate to the functions delegated by this order.

1-602. *Personnel.* (a) In carrying out the functions conferred upon the President by the provisions of section 625(d) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2385(d)], and by this order delegated to the Director of IDCA, the Director shall authorize such of the agencies that administer programs under the Act [this chapter] as he may deem appropriate to perform any of the functions under section 625(d) of the Act to the extent that the said functions relate to the programs administered by the respective agencies.

(b) Persons appointed, employed, or assigned after May 19, 1959, under section 527(c) of the Mutual Security Act of 1954 [former 22 U.S.C. 1787(c)] or section 625(d) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2385(d)] for the purpose of performing functions under such Acts outside the United States shall not, unless otherwise agreed by the agency in which such benefits may be exercised, be entitled to the benefits provided by section 310 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 (22 U.S.C. 3950) in cases in which their service under the appointment, employment, or assignment exceeds thirty months.

1-603. *Special Missions and Staffs Abroad.* The maintenance of special missions or staffs abroad, the fixing of

the ranks of the chiefs thereof after the chiefs of the United States diplomatic missions, and the authorization of the same compensation and allowances authorized for a chief of mission as defined in section 102(a)(3) of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 (22 U.S.C. 3902(a)(3)), all under section 631 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2391], shall be subject to the approval of the Secretary of State.

1-604. *International Agreements.* The negotiation, conclusion, and termination of international agreements pursuant to the Act [this chapter], title IV of the IDC Act of 1979 [22 U.S.C. 3501 et seq.] or section 402 of the Mutual Security Act of 1954 [22 U.S.C. 1922] shall be subject to the requirements of 1 U.S.C. 112b and to applicable regulations and procedures.

1-605. *Interagency Consultation.* Each officer to whom functions are delegated by this order, shall, in carrying out such functions, consult with the heads of other departments and agencies, including the Director of the Office of Management and Budget, on matters pertaining to the responsibilities of departments and agencies other than his or her own.

#### 1-7. RESERVED FUNCTIONS

1-701. *Reservation of Functions to the President.* There are hereby excluded from the functions delegated by the foregoing provisions of this order:

(a) The functions conferred upon the President by sections 122(e), 298(a), 504(b), 613(a), 614(a), 620(a), 620(d), 620(x), 620A, 620C(c), 621(a), 622(b), 622(c), 633(a), 633(b), 640B, 662(a), and 663(b) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2151t(e), 2220c(a), 2312(b), 2363(a), 2364(a), 2370(a), (d), (x), 2371, 2373(c), 2381(a), 2382(b), (c), 2393(a), (b), 2399c, 2422(a), and 2423(b)].

(b) The functions conferred upon the President by sections 402, 405(a), 406 and 407 of the IDC Act of 1979 [22 U.S.C. 3502, 3505(a), 3506, 3507].

(c) The functions conferred upon the President by the Act [this chapter] and section 408(b) of the Mutual Security Act of 1954 [22 U.S.C. 1928] with respect to the appointment of officers required to be appointed by and with the advice and consent of the Senate and with respect to the appointment of officers pursuant to sections 233(b) and 624(c) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2193(b), 2384(c)].

(d) The functions conferred upon the President with respect to determinations, certifications, directives, or transfers of funds, as the case may be, by sections 303, 465(b), 481(h), 505(d)(2)(A), 505(d)(3), 506(a), 552(c), 552(e), 610, 614(c), 620E, 632(b), 633A, 663(a), 669(b)(1), 670(a), 670(b)(2), and 670(b)(3) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2223, 2275(b), 2291(h), 2314(d)(2)(A), (d)(3), 2318(a), 2348a(c), (e), 2360, 2364(c), 2375, 2392(b), 2393a, 2423(a), 2429(b)(1), and 2429a(a), (b)(2), and (b)(3)]; those under section 604(a) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2354(a)] except insofar as they relate to procurement under chapter 1 of part I and chapter 4 of part II [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq., 2346 et seq.].

(e) The following-described functions conferred upon the President:

(1) Those under section 503(a) [22 U.S.C. 2311(a)] that relate to findings: *Provided*, that the Secretary of State, in the implementation of the functions delegated to him under section 505(a)(1), (a)(4), and (e) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2314(a)(1), (a)(4), and (e)], is authorized to find, in the case of a proposed transfer of a defense article or related training or a related defense service by a foreign country or international organization to a foreign country or international organization not otherwise eligible under section 503(a) of the Act, whether the proposed transfer will strengthen the security of the United States and promote world peace.

(2) Those under section 505(b) [22 U.S.C. 2314(b)] in respect of countries that do not agree to the conditions set forth therein.

(3) That under section 614(b) [22 U.S.C. 2364(b)] with respect to determining any provisions of law to be disregarded to achieve the purpose of that section.

(4) That under the second sentence of section 654(c) [22 U.S.C. 2414(c)] with respect to the publication in the Federal Register of any findings or determination

reserved to the President: *Provided*, that any officer to whom there is delegated the function of making any finding or determination within the purview of section 654(a) [22 U.S.C. 2414(a)] is also authorized to reach the conclusion specified in performance of the function delegated to him.

(f) That under section 523(d) of the Mutual Security Act of 1954 (22 U.S.C. 1783(d)).

(g) Those under sections 130, 131 [Pub. L. 99-83, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 207], 504 and 505 [22 U.S.C. 2349aa-8, 2349aa-9] of the ISDCA of 1985[.]

1-702. *Subsequent Amendments.* Functions conferred upon the President by subsequent amendments to the Act [this chapter] are delegated to the Director only insofar as they do not relate directly and necessarily to the conduct of programs and activities that either the President or an agency other than IDCA is authorized to administer pursuant to express reservation or delegation of authorities in a statute or in this or another Executive order.

#### 1-8. FUNDS

1-801. *Allocation of Funds.* Funds appropriated or otherwise made available to the President for carrying out the Act [this chapter] shall be deemed to be allocated without any further action of the President, as follows:

(a) There are allocated to the Director (1) all funds made available for carrying out the Act [this chapter] except those made available for carrying out Part II of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2301 et seq.] (other than chapter 4 thereof [22 U.S.C. 2346 et seq.], section 481 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2291], and section 637(b) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2397(b)], and (2) all funds made available for carrying out title IV of the IDC Act of 1979 [22 U.S.C. 3501 et seq.].

(b) There are allocated to the Secretary of Defense funds made available for carrying out Part II of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2301 et seq.] (except chapters 4, 6 and 8 thereof [22 U.S.C. 2346 et seq., 2348 et seq., 2349aa et seq.]).

(c) There are allocated to the Secretary of State funds made available for carrying out sections 481 and 637(b) [22 U.S.C. 2291, 2397(b)] and chapters 6 and 8 of Part II of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2348 et seq., 2349aa et seq.].

1-802. *Reallocation of Funds.* The Director of IDCA, the Secretary of Defense, and the Secretary of State may allocate or transfer as appropriate any funds received under subsections (a), (b), and (c), respectively of section 1-801 of this order, to any agency or part thereof for obligation or expenditure thereby consistent with applicable law.

#### 1-9. GENERAL PROVISIONS

1-901. *Definition.* As used in this order, the word "function" includes any duty, obligation, power, authority, responsibility, right, privilege, discretion, or activity.

1-902. *References to Orders and Acts.* Except as may for any reason be inappropriate:

(a) References in this order or in any other Executive order to (1) the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [this chapter] (including references herein to "the Act"), (2) unrepealed provisions of the Mutual Security Act of 1954 [act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, 68 Stat. 832, as amended], or (3) any other act that relates to the subject of this order shall be deemed to include references to any subsequent amendments thereto.

(b) References in any prior Executive order to the Mutual Security Act of 1954 [act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, 68 Stat. 832, as amended] or any provisions thereof shall be deemed to be references to the Act [this chapter] or the corresponding provision, if any, thereof.

(c) References in this order to provisions of any Act, and references in any other Executive order or in any memorandum delegation to provisions of any Act related to the subject of this order shall be deemed to include references to any hereafter-enacted provision of law that is the same or substantially the same as such provisions, respectively.

(d) References in this order or in any other Executive order to this order or to any provision thereof shall be deemed to include references thereto, respectively, as amended from time to time.

(e) References in any prior Executive order not superseded by this order to any provisions of any Executive order so superseded shall hereafter be deemed to be references to the corresponding provisions, if any, of this order.

1-903. *Prior Executive Orders.* (a) The following are revoked:

(1) Executive Order No. 10973 [22 U.S.C. 2381 note] of November 3, 1961, as amended;

(2) section 2(a) of Executive Order No. 11579 [22 U.S.C. 2191 note], of January 19, 1971; and

(3) Executive Order No. 10893 [22 U.S.C. 2382 note] of November 8, 1960.

(b) The following are amended:

(1) section 3(a) of Executive Order No. 11846 of March 27, 1975, as amended [19 U.S.C. 2111 note], by adding the following new paragraph (12) after paragraph (11):

“(12) The Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency”;

(2) section 1-202 of Executive Order 12065 of June 28, 1978 [50 U.S.C. 435 note], by striking out “The Administrator, Agency for International Development” and inserting in lieu thereof “The Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency”;

(3) section 2(a) of Executive Order No. 11958 of January 18, 1977 [22 U.S.C. 2751 note], by striking out “the Administrator of the Agency for International Development” and inserting in lieu thereof “the Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency”;

(4) section 3 of Executive Order 10900 of January 5, 1961 [7 U.S.C. 1691 note], by adding thereto the following new subsection:

“(d) The Secretary of State may redelegate to the Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency, or to any other officer or agency of the Executive branch, functions delegated to such Secretary by this order.”;

(5) section 4 of Executive Order 11223 of May 12, 1965 [22 U.S.C. 2393 note], by inserting immediately following “the Secretary of State” the words “or the Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency (with respect to functions vested in or delegated to the Director)”;

(6) the President’s memorandum of October 18, 1961, entitled “Determination Under Section 604(a) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961” (26 FR 10543) is amended by inserting after “the Secretary of State” each time it appears in such memorandum the words “or the Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency (with respect to non-military programs administered by such Agency)”.

(c) Any reference in any other Executive order to the Agency for International Development or the Administrator thereof shall be deemed to refer also to the International Development Cooperation Agency or the Director thereof, respectively.

(d) As authorized by section 403(c) of the IDC Act of 1979 [22 U.S.C. 3503(c)], the reference in Executive Order No. 11223 of May 12, 1965 [22 U.S.C. 2393 note] to “the performance of functions authorized by this Act” shall be deemed to include the performance of functions authorized by section 403 of the IDC Act of 1979 [22 U.S.C. 3503].

1-904. *Saving Provisions.* Except to the extent inconsistent with this order, all delegations of authority, determinations, authorizations, regulations, rulings, certificates, orders, directives, contracts, agreements, and other actions made, issued, or entered into with respect to any function affected by this order and not revoked, superseded, or otherwise made inapplicable before the date of this order, shall continue in full force and effect until amended, modified, or terminated by appropriate authority.

1-905. *Effective Date.* The provisions of this order shall become effective as of October 1, 1979.

[Ex. Ord. No. 12884, §6(c), Dec. 1, 1993, 58 F.R. 64100, set out as a note under section 5812 of this title, excluded certain functions of President delegated under section 1-102(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, set out above.]

[Memorandum of President of the United States, Feb. 16, 1995, 60 F.R. 10793, set out as a note under section 2357 of this title, delegated certain authority of President to Secretary of State in lieu of delegation of comparable authority by section 1-102(a)(7) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, set out above.]

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2384 of this title.

### § 2381a. Strengthened management practices

#### (a) Declaration of beliefs

The Congress believes that United States foreign aid funds could be utilized more effectively by the application of advanced management decisionmaking, information and analysis techniques such as systems analysis, automatic data processing, benefit-cost studies, and information retrieval.

#### (b) Management system; establishment; scope

To meet this need, the President shall establish a management system that includes: the definition of objectives and programs for United States foreign assistance; the development of quantitative indicators of progress toward these objectives; the orderly consideration of alternative means for accomplishing such objectives; and the adoption of methods for comparing actual results of programs and projects with those anticipated when they were undertaken. The system should provide information to the agency and to Congress that relates agency resources, expenditures, and budget projections to such objectives and results in order to assist in the evaluation of program performance, the review of budgetary requests, and the setting of program priorities.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §621A, as added Pub. L. 90-554, pt. III, §302(b), Oct. 8, 1968, 82 Stat. 964; amended Pub. L. 95-424, title V, §502(d)(1), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 959.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1978—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 95-424 struck out subsec. (c) relating to annual reports to Congress by the President evaluating the progress made toward implementation of this section.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by sections 1-102(a)(1), (e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

### § 2382. Coordination with foreign policy

#### (a) Powers or functions of Secretary of State

Nothing contained in this chapter shall be construed to infringe upon the powers or functions of the Secretary of State.

**(b) Coordination among representatives of United States**

The President shall prescribe appropriate procedures to assure coordination among representatives of the United States Government in each country, under the leadership of the Chief of the United States Diplomatic Mission. The Chief of the diplomatic mission shall make sure that recommendations of such representatives pertaining to military assistance (including civic action) and military education and training programs are coordinated with political and economic considerations, and his comments shall accompany such recommendations if he so desires.

**(c) Responsibility for supervision and general direction of assistance programs**

Under the direction of the President, the Secretary of State shall be responsible for the continuous supervision and general direction of economic assistance, military assistance, and military education and training programs, including but not limited to determining whether there shall be a military assistance (including civic action) or a military education and training program for a country and the value thereof, to the end that such programs are effectively integrated both at home and abroad and the foreign policy of the United States is best served thereby.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 622, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 446; Pub. L. 89-171, pt. III, § 302(a), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 660; Pub. L. 89-583, pt. III, § 302(a), Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 807; Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 4, § 45(b)(1), (2), Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1327; Pub. L. 94-329, title I, § 106(b)(2), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 733.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1976—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 94-329, § 106(b)(2)(A), inserted "and military education and training" after "(including civic action)".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 94-329, § 106(b)(2)(B), inserted reference to military education and training programs in two places.

1968—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 90-629, § 45(b)(1), struck out "or sales" before "programs".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 90-629, § 45(b)(2), struck out "and sales" and "or sales" before "programs" and "program", respectively.

1966—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 89-583, § 302(a)(1), substituted "(including civic action) or sales programs" for "(including any civic action and sales program)".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 89-583, § 302(a)(2), substituted "economic assistance and military assistance and sales programs" and "military assistance (including civic action) or sales program" for "the assistance programs authorized by this chapter" and "military assistance program (including civic action and sales program)", respectively.

1965—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 89-171, § 302(a)(1), inserted "(including any civic action and sales program)".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 89-171, § 302(a)(2), inserted "including any civic action and sales program".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1968 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 90-629 effective July 1, 1968, see section 41 of Pub. L. 90-629, set out as an Effective Date note under section 2751 of this title.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

Functions and authorities vested in Secretary of State pursuant to subsec. (c) of this section insofar as they relate to development assistance transferred to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency by Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1979, § 6(c)(1), 44 F.R. 41166, 93 Stat. 1379, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, pursuant to Ex. Ord. No. 12163, § 1-101, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, set out as notes under section 2381 of this title.

EX. ORD. NO. 10338. COORDINATION PROCEDURES

Ex. Ord. No. 10338, Apr. 4, 1952, 17 F.R. 3009, provided: SECTION 1. *Functions of the Chief of the United States Diplomatic Mission.* (a) The Chief of the United States Diplomatic Mission in each country, as the representative of the President and acting on his behalf, shall coordinate the activities of the United States representatives (including the chiefs of economic missions, military assistance advisory groups, and other representatives of agencies of the United States Government) in such country engaged in carrying out programs under the Mutual Security Act of 1951 (hereinafter referred to as the Act) [section 1509 et seq. of this title], and he shall assume responsibility for assuring the unified development and execution of the said programs in such country. More particularly, the functions of each Chief of United States Diplomatic Mission shall include, with respect to the programs and country concerned:

(1) Exercising general direction and leadership of the entire effort.

(2) Assuring that recommendations and prospective plans and actions of the United States representatives are effectively coordinated and are consistent with and in furtherance of the established policy of the United States.

(3) Assuring that the interpretations and application of instructions received by the United States representatives from higher authority are in accordance with the established policy of the United States.

(4) Guiding the United States representatives in working out measures to prevent duplication in their efforts and to promote the most effective and efficient use of all United States officers and employees having mutual security responsibilities.

(5) Keeping the United States representatives fully informed as to current and prospective United States policies.

(6) Prescribing procedures governing the coordination of the activities of the United States representatives, and assuring that these representatives shall have access to all available information essential to the accomplishment of their prescribed duties.

(7) Preparing and submitting such reports on the operation and status of the programs under the Act as may be directed by the Director for Mutual Security.

(b) Each Chief of United States Diplomatic Mission shall perform his functions under this order in accordance with instructions from higher authority and subject to established policies and programs of the United States.

(c) No Chief of United States Diplomatic Mission shall delegate any function conferred upon him by the provisions of this order which directly involves the exercise of direction, coordination, or authority.

SEC. 2. *Referral of unresolved matters.* The Chief of the United States Diplomatic Mission in each country shall initiate steps to reconcile any divergent views arising in the country concerned with respect to programs under the Act. If agreement cannot be reached the Chief of the United States Diplomatic Mission shall recommend a course of action, and such course of action shall be followed unless a United States representative requests that the issue be referred to higher au-

thority for decision. If such a request is made, the parties concerned shall promptly refer the issue to higher authority for resolution prior to taking action at the country level. The Director for Mutual Security shall assure expeditious decisions on matters so submitted.

SEC. 3. *Effect of order on United States representatives.* (a) All United States representatives in each country shall be subject to the responsibilities imposed upon the Chief of the United States Diplomatic Mission in such country by section 507 of the Mutual Security Act of 1951 [section 1658 of this title] and by this order.

(b) Subject to compliance with the provisions of this order and with the prescribed procedures of their respective agencies, all United States representatives affected by this order (1) shall have direct communication with their respective agencies and with such other parties and in such manner as may be authorized by their respective agencies, (2) shall keep the respective Chiefs of United States Diplomatic Missions and each other fully and currently informed on all matters, including prospective plans, recommendations, and actions, relating to programs under the Act, and (3) shall furnish to the respective Chiefs of United States Diplomatic Missions, upon their request, documents and information concerning the said programs.

SEC. 4. *Further coordination procedures.* The Director for Mutual Security shall be responsible for assuring the carrying out of the provisions of this order. He is authorized to prescribe, after consultation with the interested Government agencies, any additional procedures he may find necessary to carry out the provisions of this order.

SEC. 5. *Prior orders.* (a) To the extent that provisions of any prior order are inconsistent with the provisions of this order, the latter shall control, and any such prior provisions are amended accordingly. All orders, regulations, rulings, certificates, directives, and other actions relating to any function affected by this order shall remain in effect except as they are inconsistent herewith or are hereafter amended or revoked under proper authority.

(b) Nothing in this order shall affect Executive Orders Nos. 10062, 10063, and 10144 of June 6, 1949, June 13, 1949, and July 21, 1950, respectively.

(c) Executive Orders Nos. 9857, 9862, 9864, 9914, 9944, 9960, 10208, and 10259 of May 22, 1947, May 31, 1947, December 26, 1947, April 9, 1948, May 19, 1948, January 25, 1951, and June 27, 1951, respectively, are hereby revoked.

#### EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 10893

Ex. Ord. No. 10893, Nov. 8, 1960, 25 F.R. 10731, as amended, which related to the administration of mutual security and related functions, was revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 12163, §1-903(a)(3), Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56679, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title. Ex. Ord. No. 10893 was also revoked, except section 201 thereof, by section 1-501(h) of Ex. Ord. No. 12220, June 27, 1980, 45 F.R. 44247, formerly set out as a note under section 1691 of Title 7, Agriculture.

#### EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 12066

Ex. Ord. No. 12066, June 29, 1978, 43 F.R. 28965, which related to the inspection of foreign assistance programs, was revoked by section 10(k) of Ex. Ord. No. 12292, Feb. 23, 1981, 46 F.R. 13968, set out as a note under section 3901 of this title.

### § 2383. Responsibilities of the Secretary of Defense; priorities in procurement, delivery, and allocation of military equipment

(a) In the case of assistance under subchapter II of this chapter, the Secretary of Defense shall have primary responsibility for—

- (1) the determination of military end-item requirements;
- (2) the procurement of military equipment in a manner which permits its integration with service programs;

(3) the supervision of end-item use by the recipient countries;

(4) the supervision of the training of foreign military and related civilian personnel;

(5) the movement and delivery of military end-items; and

(6) within the Department of Defense, the performance of any other functions with respect to the furnishing of military assistance, education and training.

(b) The establishment of priorities in the procurement, delivery, and allocation of military equipment shall be determined by the Secretary of Defense.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §623, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 446; Pub. L. 94-329, title I, §106(b)(3), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 733.)

#### REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER II DEEMED TO EXCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter II of this chapter are deemed to exclude parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II, and references to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

#### AMENDMENTS

1976—Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 94-329, §106(b)(3)(A), inserted “and related civilian” after “military”.

Subsec. (a)(6). Pub. L. 94-329, §106(b)(3)(B), inserted “education and training” after “assistance”.

### § 2384. Statutory officers

#### (a) Appointment

The President may appoint, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, twelve officers in the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter, and in the selection of one of such persons due consideration shall be given to persons qualified as professional engineers.

#### (b) Rate of compensation; title of officers; order of succession

Within the limitations established by subsection (a) of this section, the President may fix the rate of compensation, and may designate the title of, any officer appointed pursuant to the authority contained in that subsection. The President may also fix the order of succession among the officers provided for in subsection (a) of this section in the event of the absence, death, resignation, or disability of one or more of said officers.

#### (c) Appointment of certain statutory officers to comparable positions

Any person who was appointed by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to any statutory position authorized by any provision of law repealed by section 642(a) and who is serving in one of such positions at the time of transfer of functions pursuant to subsections (c) and (d) of section 2381 of this title, may be appointed by the President to a comparable position authorized by subsection (a) of this section on the date of the establishment of the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter, without further action by the Senate.

**(d) Repealed. Pub. L. 95-88, title I, § 124(a)(1), Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 541**

**(e) Coordinator for security assistance**

In addition to the officers otherwise provided for in this section, the President shall appoint, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, one officer for the purpose of coordinating security assistance programs.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 624, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 447; Pub. L. 87-565, pt. III, § 302(b), Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 262; Pub. L. 88-205, pt. III, § 302(b), Dec. 16, 1963, 77 Stat. 388; Pub. L. 88-426, title III, § 305(33), (42), Aug. 14, 1964, 78 Stat. 426, 428; Pub. L. 89-171, pt. III, § 302(b), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 660; Pub. L. 89-583, pt. III, § 302(b), Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 807; Pub. L. 90-137, pt. III, § 302(a), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 460; Pub. L. 91-175, pt. III, § 304, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 821; Pub. L. 92-226, pt. III, § 302, Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 28; Pub. L. 94-329, title III, § 301(b), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 750; Pub. L. 95-88, title I, § 124(a)(1), Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 541; Pub. L. 95-105, title I, § 109(a)(1), Aug. 17, 1977, 91 Stat. 846; Pub. L. 95-424, title V, § 504, Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 959; Pub. L. 96-533, title VII, § 706, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3158; Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 705(b)(1), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1545; Pub. L. 98-164, title X, § 1002(b), Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1052; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 162(e)(4), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 405.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 642(a), referred to in subsec. (c), means section 642(a) of Pub. L. 87-195, which is set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§ 2346 et seq.), VI (§ 2348 et seq.), and VIII (§ 2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 103-236 struck out subsec. (f) which provided for an Assistant Secretary of State for Human Rights and Humanitarian Affairs and prescribed the Assistant Secretary's duties.

1983—Subsec. (f)(2)(C). Pub. L. 98-164 inserted provisions relating to providing advice to the Administrator of the Agency for International Development on policy framework.

1981—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 97-113 struck out subsec. (g) which related to the Inspector General and the duties, responsibilities, and compensation of such official. See sections 2, 8A, and 11 of the Inspector General Act of 1978, Pub. L. 95-452, Oct. 12, 1978, 92 Stat. 1101, as amended, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

1980—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 96-533 substituted in pars. (1) to (5) "Inspector General" for "Auditor General" wherever appearing; in par. (3), imposed upon the Inspector General requirement of supervising, directing, and controlling security activities, including audit, investigative, and security activities relating to programs and operations within the United States International Development Cooperation Agency; in par. (4) required submission of an annual report to the Director; and added pars. (6) to (9).

1978—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 95-424 added subsec. (g).

1977—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 95-88 struck out subsec. (d) which provided for an Inspector General, Foreign Assistance.

Subsec. (f)(1). Pub. L. 95-105, § 109(a)(1)(A), substituted references to the Assistant Secretary of State for Human Rights and Humanitarian Affairs for references to the Coordinator for Human Rights and Humanitarian Affairs.

Subsec. (f)(2). Pub. L. 95-105, § 109(a)(1)(B), substituted "Assistant Secretary of State" for "Coordinator".

1976—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 94-329 added subsec. (f).

1972—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 92-226 added subsec. (e).

1969—Subsec. (d)(2)(A). Pub. L. 91-175, § 304(1), inserted provision including the Overseas Private Investment Corporation in Inspector General's reviews and audits, and inserted provision authorizing the conduct of such reviews and audits for programs under section 290f of this title.

Subsec. (d)(5), (7). Pub. L. 91-175, § 304(2), (3), included section 290f of this title within provisions of this section.

1967—Subsec. (d)(2)(B). Pub. L. 90-137 struck out "of assistance" after "programs" in two places.

1966—Subsec. (d)(8). Pub. L. 89-583 added par. (8).

1965—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 89-171, § 302(b)(1), struck out "paragraph (3) of" before "subsection (a) of this section" the second time it appears and substituted "of one or more of said officers" for "of the officers provided for in paragraphs (1) and (2) of that subsection".

Subsec. (d)(2)(A), (5), (7). Pub. L. 89-171, § 302(b)(2), substituted "the Latin American Development Act, as amended" for "Public Law 86-735".

1964—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 88-426, § 305(42), repealed provisions which related to the appointment of an Under Secretary, Deputy Under Secretary and ten Assistant Secretaries and prescribed their rates of compensation.

Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 88-426, § 305(33), repealed provisions which prescribed the compensation of the Inspector General, Deputy Inspector General and Assistant Inspector Generals. See section 5315 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

1963—Subsecs. (a)(2), (3). Pub. L. 88-205, § 302(b)(1), (2), reduced the number of Deputy Under Secretaries from two to one in par. (2), and increased the number of Assistant Secretaries from 9 to 10 in par. (3).

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 88-205, § 302(b)(3), made conforming changes in language to reflect that only one Deputy Under Secretary may now be appointed.

Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 88-205, § 302(b)(4), inserted "who shall be appointed by the President by and with the advice and consent of the Senate," and increased the salary of the Deputy Inspector General, Foreign Assistance, from \$19,500 to \$20,000.

1962—Subsecs. (d), (e). Pub. L. 87-565 redesignated subsec. (e) as (d), inserted "and programs being conducted by United States Government Agencies under sections 1942 to 1945 of this title," in par. 2(A), and "and sections 1942 to 1945 of this title," in pars. (5) and (7), and repealed former subsec. (d) which related to the temporary continuation of certain statutory positions.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103-236 applicable with respect to officials, offices, and bureaus of Department of State when executive orders, regulations, or departmental directives implementing the amendments by sections 161 and 162 of Pub. L. 103-236 become effective, or 90 days after Apr. 30, 1994, whichever comes earlier, see section 161(b) of Pub. L. 103-236, as amended, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1977 AMENDMENT

Section 124(c) of Pub. L. 95-88 provided that: "The amendments made by this section [amending this section and section 5315 of Title 5, Government Organiza-



tion and Employees, and enacting provisions set out as a note under this section] shall take effect on July 1, 1978."

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1964 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 88-426 effective on first day of first pay period which begins on or after July 1, 1964, except to the extent provided in section 501(c) of Pub. L. 88-426, see section 501 of Pub. L. 88-426.

#### ABOLITION OF POSITION

For abolition of one of the positions that the President may appoint under subsec. (a), see Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1979, §7, 44 F.R. 41166, 93 Stat. 1379, eff. July 1, 1980, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

#### AGENCY FOR INTERNATIONAL DEVELOPMENT

For service of the officers provided for in subsec. (a) in the Agency for International Development and appointment of the Administrator of such Agency pursuant to subsec. (a), see section 1-103(b) and (c) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

#### ASSUMPTION OF DUTIES BY COORDINATOR FOR HUMAN RIGHTS AND HUMANITARIAN AFFAIRS

Section 109(a)(6) of Pub. L. 95-105 provided that: "The individual holding the position of Coordinator for Human Rights and Humanitarian Affairs on the date of enactment of this section [Aug. 17, 1977] shall assume the duties of the Assistant Secretary of State for Human Rights and Humanitarian Affairs and shall not be required to be reappointed by reason of the enactment of this section."

#### REPORT TO SPEAKER OF THE HOUSE AND CONGRESSIONAL COMMITTEES ON OFFICE OF ASSISTANT SECRETARY FOR HUMAN RIGHTS AND HUMANITARIAN AFFAIRS

Section 109(a)(7) of Pub. L. 95-105, which required the Secretary of State, not later than Jan. 31, 1978, to transmit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the chairmen of the Senate Committee on Foreign Relations and the Senate Committee on the Judiciary a comprehensive report on the Office of the Assistant Secretary for Human Rights and Humanitarian Affairs, including its current mandate and operations, the mandate and operations of its predecessor offices, and proposals for the reorganization of the Department of State that would strengthen human rights and humanitarian considerations in the conduct of United States foreign policy and promote the ability of the United States to participate effectively in international humanitarian efforts, was repealed by Pub. L. 97-241, title V, §505(a)(3), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 299, and Pub. L. 98-164, title X, §1011(a)(5), Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1061.

#### ASSIGNMENT OF DUTIES AND RESPONSIBILITIES TO INSPECTOR GENERAL, FOREIGN SERVICE

Section 124(a)(2) of Pub. L. 95-88, which provided that the President (A) may assign to the Inspector General, Foreign Service, any of the duties and responsibilities vested by such section 624(d) [subsec. (d) of this section] in the Inspector General, Foreign Assistance, and (B) may authorize the Inspector General, Foreign Service, to exercise such of the authorities granted by such section 624(d) [subsec. (d) of this section] to the Inspector General, Foreign Assistance, as the President determines are necessary to carry out any duties or responsibilities so assigned, was repealed by Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2205(11), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2160. See section 3929 of this title.

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Compensation of officers, see chapter 53 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2389 of this title.

## § 2385. Employment of personnel

### (a) Authorization

Any agency or officer of the United States Government carrying out functions under this chapter is authorized to employ such personnel as the President deems necessary to carry out the provisions and purposes of this chapter.

### (b) Appointments excepted from civil-service laws; supergrade positions; reinstatement

Of the personnel employed in the United States to carry out subchapter I of this chapter or coordinate subchapter I and subchapter II of this chapter, not to exceed one hundred and ten may be appointed, compensated, or removed without regard to the provisions of any law, of whom not to exceed fifty-one may be compensated at rates higher than those provided for grade 15 of the general schedule established by section 5332 of title 5, but not in excess of the highest rate of grade 18 of such general schedule: *Provided*, That, under such regulations as the President shall prescribe, officers and employees of the United States Government who are appointed to any of the above positions may be entitled, upon removal from such position, to reinstatement to the position occupied at the time of appointment or to a position of comparable grade and salary. Such positions shall be in addition to those authorized by law to be filled by Presidential appointment, and in addition to the number authorized by section 5108 of title 5.

### (c) Additional supergrade positions

Of the personnel employed in the United States to carry out subchapter II of this chapter, or any Act superseding subchapter II of this chapter in whole or in part, not to exceed eight may be compensated at rates higher than those provided for grade 15 of the general schedule established by section 5332 of title 5, but not in excess of the highest rate of grade 18 of such general schedule. Such positions shall be in addition to those authorized by law to be filled by Presidential appointment, and in addition to the number authorized by section 5108 of title 5.

### (d) Employment or assignment of officers and employees to perform functions outside United States

For the purpose of performing functions under this chapter outside the United States, the President may employ or assign individuals, or may authorize the employment or assignment of officers or employees by agencies of the United States Government which are not authorized to utilize the Foreign Service personnel system, who shall receive compensation at any of the rates provided for under section 402 or section 403 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [22 U.S.C. 3962, 3963], or under chapter 53 of title 5, or at any other rate authorized by law, together with allowances and benefits under the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [22 U.S.C. 3901 et seq.]. Individuals so employed or assigned shall be entitled, except to the extent that the President may specify otherwise in cases in which the period of employment or assignment exceeds thirty months, to the same benefits as are provided by section 310 of that Act [22 U.S.C. 3950] for individuals appointed to the Foreign Service.

(e) **Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(8), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2160**

**(f) Funds for personnel services**

Funds provided for in agreements with foreign countries for the furnishing of services under this chapter with respect to specific projects shall be deemed to be obligated for the services of personnel employed by agencies of the United States Government (other than the agencies primarily responsible for administering subchapter I or II of this chapter) as well as personnel not employed by the United States Government.

(g) **Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(8), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2160**

**(h) Acceptance of compensation or other benefits from foreign countries; arrangements for reimbursement**

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, officers and employees of the United States Government performing functions under this chapter shall not accept from any foreign country any compensation or other benefits. Arrangements may be made by the President with such countries for reimbursement to the United States Government or other sharing of the cost of performing such functions.

**(i) Assignment based on competency**

To the maximum extent practicable officers and employees performing functions under this chapter abroad shall be assigned to countries and positions for which they have special competence, such as appropriate language and practical experience.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 625, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 449; Pub. L. 87-565, pt. III, § 302(c), Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 262; Pub. L. 87-793, § 1001(k), Oct. 11, 1962, 76 Stat. 865; Pub. L. 88-663, pt. III, § 302(a), Oct. 7, 1964, 78 Stat. 1014; Pub. L. 89-171, pt. III, § 302(c), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 660; Pub. L. 90-137, pt. III, § 302(b)-(d), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 460; Pub. L. 90-554, title III, § 302(c), Oct. 8, 1968, 82 Stat. 965; Pub. L. 93-189, § 16, Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 722; Pub. L. 95-88, title I, § 125, Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 542; Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §§ 2203(a), 2205(8), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2158, 2160; Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 703, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1544.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a), (d), (f), (h), and (i), was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

The Foreign Service Act of 1980, referred to in subsec. (d), is Pub. L. 96-465, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2071, which is classified principally to chapter 52 (§ 3901 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3901 of this title and Tables.

REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II, AND REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER II DEEMED TO EXCLUDE SUCH PARTS

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§ 2346 et seq.), VI (§ 2348 et seq.), and VIII (§ 2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out

as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

1981—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 97-113 substituted “or under chapter 53 of title 5, or at any other rate authorized by law, together with allowances and benefits under the Foreign Service Act of 1980” for “together with allowances and benefits under that Act”.

1980—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 96-465, § 2203(a), substituted references to the Foreign Service Act of 1980, for references to the Foreign Service Act of 1946, and struck out provisions relating to the applicability of section 1005 of the Foreign Service Act of 1946 and relating to the utilization of Presidential authority under the Foreign Service Act of 1946 to carry out the functions of this chapter.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 96-465, § 2205(8), struck out subsec. (e) which set forth requirement of standards or other criteria for maintenance of adequate performance levels for personnel. See sections 4007 and 4008 of this title.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 96-465, § 2205(8), struck out subsec. (g) which related to competency in foreign languages. See section 4022 of this title.

Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 96-465, § 2205(8), struck out subsec. (j) which related to appointment and compensation of an Inter-American Committee representative.

Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 96-465, § 2205(8), struck out subsec. (k) which related to applicability, etc., of Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System. See sections 3922 and 4043 of this title.

1977—Subsec. (d)(2). Pub. L. 95-88 struck out a numerical limitation of fifty on the number of persons which the President may assign, at any one time, to duty within the United States for the purpose of preparation for assignments outside the United States.

1973—Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 93-189 added subsec. (k).

1968—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 90-554 inserted “or any Act superseding subchapter II of this chapter in whole or in part” after “to carry out subchapter II of this chapter”.

1967—Subsecs. (b), (c). Pub. L. 90-137, § 302(b), (c), substituted references to section 5332 of title 5 for former references to the Classification Act of 1949, as amended, and to section 5108 for former section 1105 of title 5.

Subsec. (d)(2). Pub. L. 90-137, § 302(d), authorized an increase in the assignment of foreign personnel from forty to fifty persons.

1965—Subsec. (d)(2). Pub. L. 89-171 substituted “forty” for “twenty”.

1964—Subsec. (d)(2). Pub. L. 88-633, § 302(a)(1), substituted “the assignment to such duty of more than twenty persons at any one time” for “more than thirty persons in the aggregate”.

Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 88-633, § 302(a)(2), added subsec. (j). 1962—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 87-793, § 1001(k)(1), substituted “but not in excess of the highest rate of grade 18 of such general schedule” for “and of these, not to exceed eight may be compensated at a rate in excess of the highest rate provided for grades of such general schedule but not in excess of \$19,000 per year”.

Pub. L. 87-565, § 302(c)(1), substituted “one hundred and ten” for “seventy-six”.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 87-793, § 1001(k)(2), substituted “but not in excess of the highest rate of grade 18 of such general schedule” for “and of these, not to exceed three may be compensated at a rate in excess of the highest rate provided for grades of such general schedule but not in excess of \$19,000 per year”.

Subsec. (d)(2). Pub. L. 87-565, § 302(c)(2), authorized the President to initially assign personnel, not exceeding 30 persons in the aggregate, for duty within the United States for a period not exceeding two years for preparation for duty outside the United States.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 87-565, § 302(c)(3), inserted “with respect to specific projects”, and “agencies of”, and excluded services of employees of agencies primarily responsible for administering subchapter I or II of this chapter from the purview of this subsection.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment of subsec. (d) and repeal of subsecs. (e), (g), and (j) by Pub. L. 96-465 effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

Repeal of subsec. (k) by Pub. L. 96-465 effective Oct. 17, 1980, see section 2403(d)(1) of Pub. L. 96-465.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1962 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 87-793 effective on first day of first pay period which begins on or after Oct. 11, 1962, see section 1008 of Pub. L. 87-793.

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by sections 1-102(a)(1), (e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

Functions of President under subsecs. (a), (d)(1), and (h), to the extent they relate to other functions under this chapter administered by Department of Defense, delegated to Secretary of Defense, by section 1-301(b) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163.

Function of prescribing regulations conferred upon President by proviso contained in subsec. (b) delegated to Director of Office of Personnel Management by section 1-503 of Ex. Ord. No. 12163.

Functions of President under subsec. (d), insofar as they relate to personnel in Department of State, delegated to Secretary of State by section 1-201(a)(14) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163.

## REFERENCES IN OTHER LAWS TO GS-16, 17, OR 18 PAY RATES

References in laws to the rates of pay for GS-16, 17, or 18, or to maximum rates of pay under the General Schedule, to be considered references to rates payable under specified sections of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, see section 529 [title I, §101(c)(1)] of Pub. L. 101-509, set out in a note under section 5376 of Title 5.

## AUTHORITY OF DIRECTOR OF UNITED STATES INTERNATIONAL DEVELOPMENT COOPERATION AGENCY

In carrying out functions of President under subsec. (d), and delegated to the Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency (see Delegation of Functions note above), the Director shall authorize such agencies that administer programs under this chapter as he may deem appropriate to perform any of the functions under subsec. (d) to the extent that said functions relate to the programs administered by the respective agencies, see section 1-602(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56677, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

## ENTITLEMENT TO BENEFITS FOR SERVICES PERFORMED OUTSIDE UNITED STATES; SERVICE EXCEEDING THIRTY MONTHS

Persons appointed, employed, or assigned after May 19, 1959, under former section 1787(c) of this title or subsec. (d) of this section for the purpose of performing functions under the Mutual Security Act of 1954 (see Short Title note set out under section 1754 of this title) and this chapter, outside the United States, shall not, unless otherwise agreed by the agency in which such benefits may be exercised, be entitled to the benefits provided for by section 3950 of this title in cases in which their service under the appointment, employment, or assignment exceeds thirty months, see Ex. Ord. No. 12163, §1-602(b), Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56677, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2396 of this title; title 37 section 306a.

## § 2385a. Unified personnel system

## (a) Establishment by regulations

Not later than May 1, 1979, the President shall submit to the Congress, and publish in the Federal Register, regulations establishing a unified personnel system for all employees of the agency primarily responsible for administering part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.]. In preparing such regulations, the President shall keep the appropriate committees of the Congress fully and currently informed, and shall consult with them on a regular basis, concerning the nature of the unified personnel system to be established.

## (b) Effective date of regulations

The regulations submitted to the Congress pursuant to subsection (a)—

(1) may not become effective until after the end of the 90-day period beginning on the date of such submission in order to provide the appropriate committees of the Congress an opportunity to review them; and

(2) shall not become effective then if, during such 90-day period, either House of Congress adopts a resolution stating in substance that it disapproves the personnel system proposed to be established by the regulations.

## (c) Force and effect of regulations

Regulations which take effect pursuant to this section shall have the force and effect of law and shall apply with respect to the personnel of the agency primarily responsible for administering part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.], notwithstanding and<sup>1</sup> inconsistent provision of law unless that provision of law specifically states that it supersedes regulations issued under this section.

(Pub. L. 95-424, title IV, §401, Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 956; Pub. L. 96-53, title V, §503(a), Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 378.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (c), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended. Part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 is classified generally to subchapter I (§2151 et seq.) of this chapter. For provisions deeming references to subchapter I to include parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, see section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-228, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

## CODIFICATION

Section enacted as part of the International Development and Food Assistance Act of 1978, and not as part of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 which comprises this chapter.

## AMENDMENTS

1979—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 96-53 substituted “May 1” for “March 15”.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1979 AMENDMENT

Section 503(b) of Pub. L. 96-53 provided that: “The amendment made by subsection (a) [amending this section] shall be effective as of March 15, 1979.”

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be “any”.

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as an Effective Date of 1978 Amendment note under section 2151 of this title.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3503 of this title.

**§ 2386. Experts, consultants, and retired officers****(a) Employment; compensation; renewal of contracts of employment**

Experts and consultants or organizations thereof may as authorized by section 3109 of title 5 be employed for the performance of functions under this chapter, and individuals so employed may be compensated at rates not in excess of the daily equivalent of the highest rate which may be paid to an employee under the General Schedule established by section 5332 of title 5, and while away from their homes or regular places of business, they may be paid actual travel expenses and per diem in lieu of subsistence at the applicable rate prescribed in the standardized Government travel regulations, as amended from time to time. Contracts for such employment with such organizations, employment of personnel as experts and consultants, not to exceed ten in number, contracts for such employment of retired military personnel with specialized research and development experience, not to exceed ten in number, and contracts for such employment of retired military personnel with specialized experience of a broad politico-military nature, not to exceed five in number, may be renewed annually.

**(b) Exemption from certain Federal laws**

Service of an individual as an expert or consultant under subsection (a) of this section shall not be considered as employment or holding of office or position bringing such individual within the provisions of section 3323(a) of title 5.

**(c) Employment without compensation of persons of outstanding experience and ability**

Persons of outstanding experience and ability may be employed without compensation by any agency of the United States Government for the performance of functions under this chapter in accordance with the provisions of section 2160(b) of Appendix to title 50, and regulations issued thereunder.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 626, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 451; Pub. L. 88-205, pt. III, § 302(c), Dec. 16, 1963, 77 Stat. 389; Pub. L. 88-448, title IV, §§ 401(e), 402(a)(35), Aug. 19, 1964, 78 Stat. 490, 495; Pub. L. 88-633, pt. III, § 302(b), Oct. 7, 1964, 78 Stat. 1014; Pub. L. 89-171, pt. III, § 302(d), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 660; Pub. L. 90-137, pt. III, § 302(e), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 460; Pub. L. 94-329, title VI, § 603, June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 766; Pub. L. 95-88, title I, § 126, Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 542.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subssecs. (a) and (c), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

## AMENDMENTS

1977—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 95-88 struck out provisions under which service of an individual as an expert or

consultant under subsec. (a) would not be considered employment as would bring a person under section 8344 of title 5, section 1112 of this title, and any other law limiting the reemployment of retired officers or employees or governing the simultaneous receipt of compensation and retired pay or annuities subject to section 5532 of title 5.

1976—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94-329 substituted "the daily equivalent of the highest rate which may be paid to an employee under the General Schedule established by section 5332 of title 5" for "\$100 per diem".

1967—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 90-137, § 302(e)(1), substituted reference to section 3109 for former section 55a of title 5.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 90-137, § 302(e)(2), substituted references to sections 3323(a) and 8344 of title 5 for former section 2263 of title 5 and to section 5532 of title 5 for former section 3102 of title 5.

1965—Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 89-171 redesignated subsec. (d) as (c). Former subsec. (c) was repealed by Pub. L. 88-448, title IV, § 402(a)(35), Aug. 19, 1964, 78 Stat. 495.

1964—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 88-633, § 302(b)(1), increased compensation limits from \$75 to \$100 per diem.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 88-448, § 401(e), struck out provisions which stated that service as an expert or consultant under subsection (a) of this section shall not be considered as employment or holding of office or position bringing such individual within the provisions of section 59a of title 5, and inserted ", subject to section 3102 of title 5".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 88-448, § 402(a)(35), repealed subsec. (c) which related to compensation of retired officers.

Pub. L. 88-633, § 302(b)(2), substituted "section 101(3) of Title 37" for "Career Compensation Act of 1949, as amended," in subsec. (c) subsequent to the repeal of such subsection by Pub. L. 88-448.

1963—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 88-205 substituted "Service of an individual as an expert or consultant under subsection (a) of this section shall not" for "Nor shall such service", and struck out provisions exempting individuals serving under subsec. (a) of this section from coverage of sections 281, 283, or 284 of title 18, section 99 of title 5, or any Federal law imposing restrictions, requirements, or penalties in connection with claims or matters involving the U.S. Government, except insofar as such provisions prohibited such individuals from receiving compensation in respect of any matter in which such individual was directly involved in the performance of such service.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1964 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 88-448 effective on first day of first month which begins later than ninetieth day of following Aug. 19, 1964, see section 403 of Pub. L. 88-448.

## REFERENCES IN OTHER LAWS TO GS-16, 17, OR 18 PAY RATES

References in laws to the rates of pay for GS-16, 17, or 18, or to maximum rates of pay under the General Schedule, to be considered references to rates payable under specified sections of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, see section 529 [title I, § 101(c)(1)] of Pub. L. 101-509, set out in a note under section 5376 of Title 5.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2396 of this title.

**§ 2387. Detail of personnel to foreign governments**

Whenever the President determines it to be in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter, the head of any agency of the United States Government is authorized to detail or assign any officer or employee of his agency to any office or position with any foreign government or foreign

government agency, where acceptance of such office or position does not involve the taking of an oath of allegiance to another government or the acceptance of compensation or other benefits from any foreign country by such officer or employee.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 627, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 452.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, to be exercised in consultation with Secretary of State, with certain exceptions, by section 1-102(a)(1), (e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

Functions of President under this section, to extent they relate to other functions under this chapter administered by Department of Defense, delegated to Secretary of Defense, to be exercised in consultation with Secretary of State, by section 1-301(b) and (d) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2389 of this title.

### § 2388. Detail of personnel to international organizations

Whenever the President determines it to be consistent with and in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter, the head of any agency of the United States Government is authorized to detail, assign, or otherwise make available to any international organization any officer or employee of his agency to serve with, or as a member of, the international staff of such organization, or to render any technical, scientific, or professional advice or service to, or in cooperation with, such organization.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 628, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 452.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, to be exercised in consultation with Secretary of State, with certain exceptions, by section 1-102(a)(1), (e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

Functions of President under this section, to extent they relate to other functions under this chapter administered by Department of Defense, delegated to Secretary of Defense, to be exercised in consultation with Secretary of State, by section 1-301(b) and (d) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1928, 2389 of this title.

### § 2389. Status and benefits of personnel assigned or detailed to foreign governments or international organizations

#### (a) Allowances, privileges, rights, seniority, and other benefits

Any officer or employee, while assigned or detailed under section 2387 or 2388 of this title shall be considered, for the purpose of preserving his allowances, privileges, rights, seniority, and other benefits as such, an officer or employee of the United States Government and of the agency of the United States Government from which detailed or assigned, and he shall continue to receive compensation, allowances, and benefits from funds appropriated to that agency or made available to that agency under this chapter.

#### (b) Representation allowances

Any officer or employee assigned, detailed, or appointed under section 2387, 2388, 2391, or 2384(d)<sup>1</sup> of this title is authorized to receive under such regulations as the President may prescribe, representation allowances similar to those allowed under section 4085 of this title. The authorization of such allowances and other benefits and the payment thereof out of any appropriations available therefor shall be considered as meeting all the requirements of section 5536 of title 5.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 629, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 452; Pub. L. 87-565, pt. III, § 302(d), Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 262; Pub. L. 90-137, pt. III, § 302(f), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 460; Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2203(b), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

Section 2384(d) of this title, referred to in subsec. (b), was repealed by Pub. L. 95-88, title I, § 124(a)(1), Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 541.

#### AMENDMENTS

1980—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 96-465 substituted "section 4085 of this title" for "section 1131 of this title".

1967—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 90-137 substituted reference to section 5536 of title 5 for former section 70 of title 5. 1962—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 87-565 substituted "2384(d)" for "2384(e)".

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-465 effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2390, 3422 of this title.

### § 2390. Terms of detail or assignment of personnel

Details or assignments may be made under section 2387 or 2388 of this title or section 1928 of this title—

- (1) without reimbursement to the United States Government by the foreign government or international organization;

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

(2) upon agreement by the foreign government or international organization to reimburse the United States Government for compensation, travel expenses, benefits and allowances, or any part thereof, payable to the officer or employee concerned during the period of assignment or detail; and such reimbursements (including foreign currencies) shall be credited to the appropriation, fund, or account utilized for paying such compensation, travel expenses, benefits or allowances, or to the appropriation, fund, or account currently available for such purposes;

(3) upon an advance of funds, property, or services by the foreign government or international organization to the United States Government accepted with the approval of the President for specified uses in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter; and funds so advanced may be established as a separate fund in the Treasury of the United States Government, to be available for the specified uses, and to be used for reimbursement of appropriations or direct expenditure subject to the provisions of this chapter, any unexpended balance of such account to be returned to the foreign government or international organization; or

(4) subject to the receipt by the United States Government of a credit to be applied against the payment by the United States Government of its share of the expenses of the international organization to which the officer or employee is detailed or assigned, such credit to be based upon the compensation, travel expenses, benefits and allowances, or any part thereof, payable to such officer or employee during the period of detail or assignment in accordance with section 2389 of this title.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 630, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 452; Pub. L. 89-171, pt. III, § 302(e), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 660.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in par. (3), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1965—Pub. L. 89-171 inserted "benefits" in pars. (2) and (4).

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under par. (3) delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, to be exercised in consultation with Secretary of State, with certain exceptions, by section 1-102(a)(1), (e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

Functions of President under par. (3), to extent they relate to other functions under this chapter administered by Department of Defense, delegated to Secretary of Defense, to be exercised in consultation with Secretary of State, by section 1-301(b) and (d) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163.

### § 2391. Missions and staffs abroad

#### (a) Authorization

The President may maintain special missions or staffs outside the United States in such coun-

tries and for such periods of time as may be necessary to carry out the purposes of this chapter. Each such special mission or staff shall be under the direction of a chief.

#### (b) Appointment of mission chief and deputy; compensation

The chief and his deputy of each special mission or staff carrying out the purposes of subchapter I of this chapter shall be appointed by the President, and may, notwithstanding any other law, be removed by the President at his discretion. Such chief shall be entitled to receive such compensation and allowances as are authorized by the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [22 U.S.C. 3901 et seq.], not to exceed those authorized for a chief of mission (as defined in section 102(a)(3)<sup>1</sup> of that Act [22 U.S.C. 3902(a)(3)]), as the President shall determine to be appropriate.

#### (c) Appointment of Chairman of Development Assistance Committee; compensation

The President may appoint any United States citizen who is not an employee of the United States Government or may assign any United States citizen who is a United States Government employee to serve as Chairman of the Development Assistance Committee or any successor committee thereto of the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development upon election thereto by members of said Committee, and, in his discretion, may terminate such appointment or assignment, notwithstanding any other provision of law. Such person may receive such compensation and allowances as are authorized by the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [22 U.S.C. 3901 et seq.], not to exceed those authorized for a chief of mission (as defined in section 102(a)(3)<sup>1</sup> of that Act [22 U.S.C. 3902(a)(3)]), as the President shall determine to be appropriate. Such person (if not a United States Government employee who is assigned to serve as Chairman) shall be deemed to be an employee of the United States Government for purposes of chapters 81, 83, 87, and 89 of title 5. Such person may also, in the President's discretion, receive any other benefits and perquisites available under this chapter to chiefs of special missions or staffs outside the United States established under this section.

#### (d) Administration of assistance

Wherever practicable, especially in the case of the smaller programs, assistance under subchapter I of this chapter shall be administered under the direction of the Chief of the United States Diplomatic Mission by the principal economic officer of the mission.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 631, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 453; Pub. L. 88-205, pt. III, § 302(d), Dec. 16, 1963, 77 Stat. 389; Pub. L. 89-171, pt. III, § 302(f), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 660; Pub. L. 95-92, § 7(c), Aug. 4, 1977, 91 Stat. 617; Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2203(c), (d), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (c), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classifica-

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

tion of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

The Foreign Service Act of 1980, referred to in subsecs. (b) and (c), is Pub. L. 96-465, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2071, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 52 (§3901 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3901 of this title and Tables.

Section 103(a)(3) of that Act, referred to in subsecs. (b) and (c), was redesignated section 103(3) pursuant to Pub. L. 98-164, which struck out designation "(a)" and struck out subsec. (b) of section 103.

#### REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

#### AMENDMENTS

1980—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 96-465, §2203(c), among other changes, substituted references to the Foreign Service Act of 1980 for references to the Foreign Service Act of 1946 and section 2385(d) of this title.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 96-465, §2203(d), among other changes, substituted references to the Foreign Service Act of 1980, for references to the Foreign Service Act of 1946, and inserted provisions relating to employee status for purposes of chapters 81, 83, 87 and 89 of title 5.

1977—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 95-92 substituted reference to subchapter I of this chapter for reference to this chapter and struck out provisions requiring administration of assistance by the senior military officer of the mission for assistance under subchapter II of this chapter.

1965—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 89-171 added subsec. (d).

1963—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 88-205 added subsec. (c).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-465 effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by section 1-102(a)(1), (e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

Functions of President under subsec. (a) delegated to Secretary of Defense to extent they relate to other functions under this chapter administered by Department of Defense by section 1-301(b) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163.

#### FLAG AND GENERAL OFFICERS

Pub. L. 94-11, title I, §100, Mar. 26, 1975, 89 Stat. 20, provided in part that: "The total number of flag and general officers of the United States Armed Forces assigned or detailed to military assistance advisory groups, military missions, or similar organizations, or performing duties primarily with respect to the Military Assistance Program and the Foreign Military Sales Program shall not exceed twenty after May 1, 1975."

#### APPROVAL OF SECRETARY OF STATE

The maintenance of special missions or staffs abroad, the fixing of ranks of chiefs thereof after the chiefs of United States diplomatic missions, and authorization of same compensation and allowances as chief of mis-

sion, as defined in section 3902(3) of this title, all under this section, shall be subject to approval of Secretary of State, see section 1-603 of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56677, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2389, 2396 of this title.

### § 2392. Government agencies

#### (a) Allocation and transfer of funds

The President may allocate or transfer to any agency of the United States Government any part of any funds available for carrying out the purposes of this chapter, including any advance to the United States Government by any country or international organization for the procurement of commodities, defense articles, military education and training, or services (including defense services). Such funds shall be available for obligation and expenditure for the purposes for which authorized, in accordance with authority granted in this chapter or under authority governing the activities of the agencies of the United States Government to which such funds are allocated or transferred.

#### (b) Utilization of services and facilities of other agencies

Any officer of the United States Government carrying out functions under this chapter may utilize the services (including defense services) and facilities of, or procure commodities, defense articles, or military education and training from, any agency of the United States Government as the President shall direct, or with the consent of the head of such agency, and funds allocated pursuant to this subsection to any such agency may be established in separate appropriation accounts on the books of the Treasury.

#### (c) Reimbursement for commodities, services, and facilities

In the case of any commodity, service, or facility procured from any agency of the United States Government to carry out subchapter I of this chapter, reimbursement or payment shall be made to such agency from funds available to carry out such subchapter. Such reimbursement or payment shall be at replacement cost, or, if required by law, at actual cost, or, in the case of services procured from the Department of Defense to carry out part VIII of subchapter I of this chapter, the amount of the additional costs incurred by the Department of Defense in providing such services, or at any other price authorized by law and agreed to by the owning or disposing agency. The amount of any such reimbursement or payment shall be credited to current applicable appropriations, funds, or accounts, from which there may be procured replacements of similar commodities, services, or facilities, except that where such appropriations, funds, or accounts are not reimbursable except by reason of this subsection, and when the owning or disposing agency determines that such replacement is not necessary, any funds received in payment therefor shall be deposited into the Treasury as miscellaneous receipts.

**(d) Reimbursement for military assistance**

Except as otherwise provided in section 2318 of this title, reimbursement shall be made to any United States Government agency, from funds available for use under subchapter II of this chapter, for any assistance furnished under subchapter II of this chapter, from, by, or through such agency. Such reimbursement shall be in an amount equal to the value (as defined in section 2403(m) of this title) of the defense articles or of the defense services (other than salaries of members of the Armed Forces of the United States), or other assistance furnished, plus expenses arising from or incident to operations under subchapter II of this chapter (other than salaries of the Armed Forces of the United States and unfunded estimated costs of civilian retirement and other benefits). The amount of such reimbursement shall be credited to the current applicable appropriations, funds, or accounts of such agency.

**(e) Establishment of accounts**

In furnishing assistance under this chapter, accounts may be established on the books of any agency of the United States Government or, on terms and conditions approved by the Secretary of the Treasury, in banking institutions in the United States, (1) against which letters of commitment may be issued which shall constitute recordable obligations of the United States Government, and moneys due or to become due under such letters of commitment shall be assignable under the Assignment of Claims Act of 1940, as amended (second and third paragraphs of 31 U.S.C. 203<sup>1</sup> and 41 U.S.C. 15), and (2) from which disbursements may be made to, or withdrawals may be made by, recipient countries or agencies, organizations, or persons upon presentation of contracts, invoices, or other appropriate documentation. Expenditure of funds which have been made available through accounts so established shall be accounted for on standard documentation required for expenditure of funds of the United States Government: *Provided*, That such expenditures for commodities, defense articles, military education and training, services (including defense services), or facilities procured outside the United States may be accounted for exclusively on such certification as may be prescribed in regulations approved by the Comptroller General of the United States.

**(f) Credits made by Export-Import Bank of the United States**

Credits made by the Export-Import Bank of the United States with funds allocated thereto under subsection (a) of this section or under section 1782(a)<sup>1</sup> of this title, shall not be considered in determining whether the Bank has outstanding at any one time loans and guaranties to the extent of the limitation imposed by section 635e of title 12.

**(g) Charge of expenses to appropriation or account**

Any appropriation or account available to carry out provisions of subchapter I of this chapter may initially be charged in any fiscal year,

within the limit of available funds, to finance expenses for which funds are available in other appropriations or accounts under subchapter I of this chapter: *Provided*, That as of the end of such fiscal year such expenses shall be finally charged to applicable appropriations or accounts with proper credit to the appropriations or accounts initially utilized for financing purposes: *Provided further*, That such final charge to applicable appropriations or accounts shall not be required in the case of expenses (other than those provided for under section 2397(a) of this title) incurred in furnishing assistance by the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter where it is determined that the accounting costs of identifying the applicable appropriation or account to which such expenses should be charged would be disproportionate to the advantage to be gained.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §632, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 453; Pub. L. 90-137, pt. III, §302(g), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 460; Pub. L. 90-267, §1(a), Mar. 13, 1968, 82 Stat. 47; Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 4, §45(b)(3), Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1327; Pub. L. 94-329, title I, §106(b)(4), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 733; Pub. L. 100-690, title IV, §4506, Nov. 18, 1988, 102 Stat. 4286; Pub. L. 101-165, title IX, §9104(b)(2), Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1152.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a), (b), and (e), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

The Assignment of Claims Act of 1940, as amended, referred to in subsec. (e), is act Oct. 9, 1940, ch. 779, 54 Stat. 1029, as amended, which added the second and third pars. to section 203 of former Title 31, Money and Finance, and the second and third pars. to section 15 of Title 41, Public Contracts. Section 203 of former Title 31 was repealed by Pub. L. 97-258, §5(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1068, and reenacted by the first section thereof as section 3727 of Title 31, Money and Finance. Such second and third pars. were restated in section 3727(b) (last sentence) and (c) of Title 31. The second and third pars. of section 15 of Title 41 were redesignated subsecs. (b) and (c), respectively, of that section by Pub. L. 103-355, title II, §2451, Oct. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 3324.

Section 1782(a) of this title, referred to in subsec. (f), was repealed by Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §642(a)(2), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460.

## REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II, AND REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER II DEEMED TO EXCLUDE SUCH PARTS

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

## AMENDMENTS

1989—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 101-165 inserted at end of second sentence "(other than salaries of the Armed Forces of the United States and unfunded estimated costs of civilian retirement and other benefits)".

1988—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 100-690 inserted "or, in the case of services procured from the Department of Defense to carry out part VIII of subchapter I of this chapter, the amount of the additional costs incurred by the Department of Defense in providing such services," after "at actual cost,".

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.



1976—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94-329, §106(b)(4)(A), inserted “military education and training” after “articles”.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 94-329, §106(b)(4)(B), substituted “defense articles, or military education and training” for “and defense articles”.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 94-329, §106(b)(4)(A), inserted “military education and training” after “articles”.

1968—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 90-629 struck out references to sections 2342 and 2343 of this title in the exception provision.

1967—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 90-137 substituted reference to sections 2318, 2342, and 2343 for former reference to sections 2315 and 2318 of this title.

#### CHANGE OF NAME

“Export-Import Bank of Washington” changed to “Export-Import Bank of the United States” in text to conform to such change in name in the Export-Import Bank Act of 1945, section 635 et seq. of Title 12, Banks and Banking, provided for in section 1(a) of Pub. L. 90-267, Mar. 13, 1968, 82 Stat. 47.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1968 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 90-629 effective July 1, 1968, see section 41 of Pub. L. 90-629, set out as an Effective Date note under section 2751 of this title.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with exception of those functions relating to directives under subsec. (b) and certain other exceptions, by section 1-102(a)(1), (e) and 1-701(d) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

#### ACCOUNTING ADJUSTMENTS BETWEEN APPROPRIATIONS

Charge of expenses to appropriation or account not affected by provisions for accounting adjustments between appropriations, see section 3 of Pub. L. 89-473, June 29, 1966, 80 Stat. 221, set out as a note under section 628a of Title 31, Money and Finance.

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Reimbursement for equipment, material, or services furnished members of the United Nations, see section 2211 of Title 10, Armed Forces.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2194, 2321j, 2321k, 2321l, 2321m, 2321n, 2347c, 2349aa-2, 2403 of this title; title 10 section 2211.

### § 2393. Waiver of certain laws

#### (a) Contracts and expenditure of funds

Whenever the President determines it to be in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter, the functions authorized under this chapter may be performed without regard to such provisions of law (other than the Renegotiation Act of 1951, as amended (50 U.S.C. App. 1211 et seq.) regulating the making, performance, amendment, or modification of contracts and the expenditure of funds of the United States Government as the President may specify.

#### (b) Neutrality laws

The functions authorized under subchapter II of this chapter may be performed without regard to such provisions as the President may specify of subchapter II of chapter 9 of this title.

#### (c) Assignment of personnel

Notwithstanding the provisions of sections 3544(b) and 8544(b)<sup>1</sup> of title 10, personnel of the

Department of Defense may be assigned or detailed to any civil office to carry out this chapter.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §633, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 454.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

The Renegotiation Act of 1951, as amended, referred to in subsec. (a), is act Mar. 23, 1951, ch. 15, 65 Stat. 7, as amended, which was classified principally to section 1211 et seq. of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense, prior to its omission from the Code. See note preceding section 1211 of Title 50, Appendix.

Sections 3544 and 8544 of title 10, referred to in subsec. (c), were repealed by Pub. L. 90-235, §4(a)(6), Jan. 2, 1968, 81 Stat. 759.

#### REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER II DEEMED TO EXCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter II of this chapter are deemed to exclude parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II, and references to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

#### EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 10784

Ex. Ord. No. 10784, Oct. 1, 1958, 23 F.R. 7691, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 10845, Oct. 12, 1959, 24 F.R. 8317, which specified laws from which functions authorized by this chapter shall be exempt, was superseded by Ex. Ord. No. 11223, May 12, 1965, 30 F.R. 6635, set out below.

#### EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 10845

Ex. Ord. No. 10845 of Oct. 12, 1959, setting out laws from which authorized functions were exempt, was superseded by Ex. Ord. No. 11223, May 12, 1965, 30 F.R. 6635, set out below.

#### EX. ORD. NO. 11223. SPECIFICATION OF LAWS FROM WHICH FUNCTIONS AUTHORIZED BY THIS CHAPTER SHALL BE EXEMPT

Ex. Ord. No. 11223, May 12, 1965, 30 F.R. 6635, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673; Ex. Ord. No. 12178, Dec. 10, 1979, 44 F.R. 71807, provided:

By virtue of the authority vested in me by Section 633 of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as amended, 75 Stat. 454 (22 U.S.C. 2393), it is hereby determined that, to the extent hereinafter indicated, the performance of functions authorized by that Act, as amended, and any predecessor legislation, without regard to the laws specified in the numbered subdivisions of Sections 1 and 2 of this order and without regard to consideration as specified in Sections 3 and 4 of this order will further the purposes of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as amended [this chapter]:

SECTION 1. With respect to functions authorized by the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as amended (22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.), and any predecessor legislation except those functions exercised by the Department of Defense under authority of Sections 621 and 623 of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2381 and 2383):

(1) The Act of March 26, 1934, 48 Stat. 500, as amended (15 U.S.C. 616a).

(2) Section 3648 of the Revised Statutes, as amended, 60 Stat. 809 (31 U.S.C. 529) [31 U.S.C. 3324].

(3) Section 305 of the Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949, 63 Stat. 396, as amended (41 U.S.C. 255).

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

(4) Section 3709 of the Revised Statutes, as amended (41 U.S.C. 5).

(5) Section 3710 of the Revised Statutes (41 U.S.C. 8).

(6) Section 2 of title III of the Act of March 3, 1933, 47 Stat. 1520 (41 U.S.C. 10a).

(7) Section 3735 of the Revised Statutes (41 U.S.C. 13).

(8) Section 304(c) of the Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949, as added by the Act of October 31, 1951, 65 Stat. 700 (41 U.S.C. 254(c)), but only with respect to contracts entered into with foreign governments or agencies thereof for the rendering of services to the United States or an agency thereof within the continental limits of the United States.

(9) Section 901(a) of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936, 49 Stat. 2015 as amended (46 U.S.C. 1241(a)).

SEC. 2. With respect to purchases authorized to be made outside the limits of the United States or the District of Columbia under the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as amended [this chapter], and any predecessor legislation:

(1) [Former] Section 2276(a) of title 10 of the United States Code.

(2) Section 2313(b) of title 10 of the United States Code.

(3) Section 304(c) of the Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949, as added by the Act of October 31, 1951, 65 Stat. 700 (41 U.S.C. 254(c)).

(4) Section 1301 of the Second War Powers Act, 1942, 56 Stat. 185 (50 U.S.C. App. 643), as extended by the provisions of the Act of June 30, 1953, 67 Stat. 120.

(5) Section 3(b) of the Act of August 28, 1958, 72 Stat. 972 (50 U.S.C. 1433(b)), but only with respect to contracts in which the inclusion of the clause required by Section 3(b), or the compliance with that clause, if included in a contract, is deemed by the executive or military department concerned to be impracticable.

SEC. 3. With respect to cost-type contracts heretofore or hereafter made with non-profit institutions under which no fee is charged or paid, amendments and modifications of such contracts may be made with or without consideration and may be utilized to accomplish the same things as any original contract could have accomplished, irrespective of the time or circumstances of the making, or the form of the contract amended or modified, or of the amending or modifying contract and irrespective of rights which may have accrued under the contract or the amendments or modifications thereof.

SEC. 4. With respect to contracts heretofore or hereafter made, other than those described in Section 3 of this order, amendments and modifications of such contracts may be made with or without consideration and may be utilized to accomplish the same things as any original contract could have accomplished, irrespective of the time or circumstances of the making, or the form of the contract amended or modified, or of the amending or modifying contract, and irrespective of rights which may have accrued under the contract or the amendments or modifications thereof, if the Secretary of State or the Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency (with respect to functions vested in or delegated to the Director) determines in each case that such action is necessary to protect the foreign policy interests of the United States.

SEC. 5. Executive Order No. 10784 of October 1, 1958, and Executive Order No. 10845 of October 12, 1959, are hereby superseded.

SEC. 6. I determine it to be in furtherance of the purposes of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as amended [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.], and in the national security interest of the United States that the functions authorized by chapter 7 of Part II of that Act [22 U.S.C. 2349 et seq.], relating to air base construction in Israel, be performed without regard to the following additional specified provisions of law:

(1) Title IX of the Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949, as amended (40 U.S.C. 541-544);

(2) Section 612 of the Military Construction Authorization Act, 1967, as amended (31 U.S.C. 723a) [10 U.S.C. 2661a(b)];

(3) Section 719 of the Defense Production Act of 1950, as amended (50 U.S.C. App. 2168); and

(4) Section 111 of the Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949, as amended (40 U.S.C. 759).

#### DETERMINATION UNDER THIS SECTION WAIVING REQUIREMENTS WITH RESPECT TO CLOSE OUT OF PRIOR YEAR APPROPRIATIONS ACCOUNTS

Determination of President of the United States, No. 91-21, Feb. 27, 1991, 56 F.R. 10771, provided:

Memorandum for the Secretary of State

Pursuant to the authority vested in me by section 633(a) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as amended (the "Act"), 22 U.S.C. 2393(a), I hereby determine it to be in furtherance of the purposes of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.] that the functions authorized by the Act be performed without regard to section 1405 of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 1991 (Public Law 101-510) [amending sections 1551 to 1557 of Title 31, Money and Finance, repealing section 2782 of Title 10, Armed Forces, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 1551 of Title 31], and amendments contained therein.

This determination shall apply only to funds appropriated to carry out the provisions of the Act that were appropriated for fiscal year 1984 and for prior fiscal years, and shall suspend the application of the provisions of section 1405 of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 1991, and amendments contained therein, through September 30, 1992.

You are authorized and directed to publish this determination in the Federal Register.

GEORGE BUSH.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2349b of this title.

#### § 2393a. Requests by General Accounting Office and Congressional committees for documents and materials

None of the funds made available pursuant to the provisions of this chapter shall be used to carry out any provision of this chapter in any country or with respect to any project or activity, after the expiration of the thirty-five-day period which begins on the date the General Accounting Office or any committee of the Congress charged with considering legislation, appropriations or expenditures under this chapter, has delivered to the office of the head of any agency carrying out such provision, a written request that it be furnished any document, paper, communication, audit, review, finding, recommendation, report, or other material in its custody or control relating to the administration of such provision in such country or with respect to such project or activity, unless and until there has been furnished to the General Accounting Office, or to such committee, as the case may be, (1) the document, paper, communication, audit, review, finding, recommendation, report, or other material so requested, or (2) a certification by the President that he has forbidden the furnishing thereof pursuant to request and his reason for so doing.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §633A, as added Pub. L. 95-424, title V, §502(a)(1), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 957.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance

Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

#### CODIFICATION

This section was formerly classified to subsec. (c) of section 2394 of this title prior to the complete revision of section 2394 of this title by Pub. L. 95-424, title V, § 502(a)(2), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 957.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as an Effective Date of 1978 Amendment note under section 2151 of this title.

### § 2394. Reports and information; definitions

#### (a) Annual report to Congress on programs having impact on developing countries; contents

In order that the Congress and the American people may be better and more currently informed regarding American foreign policy and the effectiveness of assistance provided by the United States Government to other countries and to international organizations, the Chairman of the Development Coordination Committee shall prepare and transmit to the Congress, no later than February 1 of each year, as a part of the annual presentation materials for foreign assistance, a report as described in this subsection. This report shall include—

(1)(A) a comprehensive and coordinated review of all United States policies and programs having a major impact on the development of developing countries, including but not limited to bilateral and multilateral assistance, trade, debt, employment, food, energy, technology, population, oceans, environment, human settlements, natural resources, and participation in international agencies concerned with development;

(B) an assessment of the impact of such policies and programs on the well-being of the poor majority in developing countries in accordance with the policy objectives of part I of subchapter I of this chapter, including increasing life expectancy and literacy, lowering infant mortality and birth rates, and increasing food production and employment, such assessment to include an evaluation of the extent to which programs under part I of subchapter I of this chapter directly benefit the poor majority; and

(C) an assessment of the impact of such policies and programs on economic conditions in the United States, including but not limited to employment, wages, and working conditions;

(2) the dollar value of all foreign assistance and guaranties by category and by country provided or made by the United States Government by any means to all foreign countries and international organizations—

(A) from 1946 to the fiscal year immediately preceding the fiscal year for which the report is required;

(B) as presented to Congress for the immediate preceding fiscal year;

(C) as obligated during the immediately preceding fiscal year;

(D) as planned for the fiscal year in which the report is presented;

(E) as proposed for the fiscal year following the year in which the report is presented; and

(F) of any contract in excess of \$100,000 administered by the Agency for International Development which was entered into in the preceding fiscal year without competitive selection procedures, and the reasons for doing so;

(3) a summary of repayments, by country, to the United States from previous foreign assistance loans;

(4) the status of each sale of agricultural commodities on credit terms theretofore made under the Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954 [7 U.S.C. 1691 et seq.] with respect to which there remains outstanding any unpaid obligation; and the status of each transaction with respect to a loan, contract or guarantee of insurance, or extension of credit (or participation therein) was theretofore made under the Export-Import Bank Act of 1945 [12 U.S.C. 635 et seq.] with respect to which there remains outstanding any unpaid obligation or potential liability; except that such report shall include individually only any loan, contract, sale, extension of credit, or other transactions listed in this paragraph which is in excess of \$1,000,000;

(5)(A) the status of the debt servicing capacity of each country receiving assistance under this chapter;

(B) all forms of debt relief granted by the United States with respect to such countries, together with a detailed statement of the specific debt relief granted with respect to each such country and the purpose for which it was granted; and

(C) a summary of the net aid flow from the United States to such countries, taking into consideration the debt relief granted by the United States;

(6) the dollar value of all official development assistance, security assistance, international disaster assistance, refugee assistance, and international narcotics control assistance provided by each government of a country which is a member of the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development or of the Organization of Petroleum Exporting Countries;

(7) the percentage which each type of assistance described in paragraph (6) represents of (A) the gross national product of each country referred to in paragraph (6), and (B) the budget of the government of such country, as well as the per capita contribution for each country for each type of assistance described in paragraph (6);

(8) the amount of all foreign currencies acquired without payment of dollars on hand of each foreign country as of September 30 of the preceding fiscal year;

(9) the Development Coordination Committee's operations pursuant to section 2399c(f) of this title;

(10) the aggregate dollar value and quantity of grant military assistance, military education and training, and any other defense articles and services furnished under this chapter by the United States to each foreign coun-

try and international organization for the preceding fiscal year;

(11) information concerning the activities of the Minority Resource Center during the preceding fiscal year; and

(12) other information appropriate to the conduct of the foreign assistance program of the United States Government.

**(b) “Foreign assistance” and “provided by the United States Government” defined**

For purposes of this section—

(1) “foreign assistance” means any tangible or intangible item provided by the United States Government to a foreign country or international organization under this chapter or any other Act, including but not limited to any training, service, or technical advice, any item of real, personal, or mixed property, any agricultural commodity, United States dollars, and any currencies of any foreign country which are owned by the United States Government; and

(2) “provided by the United States Government” includes, but is not limited to, foreign assistance provided by means of gift, loan, sale, credit, or guaranty.

(Pub. L. 87–195, pt. III, § 634, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 455; Pub. L. 87–565, pt. III, § 302(e), (f), Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 262; Pub. L. 89–583, pt. III, § 302(c), Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 807; Pub. L. 90–137, pt. III, § 302(h), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 460; Pub. L. 90–629, ch. 4, § 45(a), (b)(4), Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1327; Pub. L. 91–175, pt. III, § 305, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 821; Pub. L. 92–226, pt. III, § 304(a)(3), (c)(2), Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 28, 32; Pub. L. 93–189, § 17, Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 724; Pub. L. 93–559, § 14, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1799; Pub. L. 94–273, § 6(1), Apr. 21, 1976, 90 Stat. 377; Pub. L. 94–329, title II, § 209(b), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 739; Pub. L. 95–424, title V, § 502(a)(1), (2), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 957; Pub. L. 96–533, title VII, § 707, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3159; Pub. L. 97–113, title VII, § 733, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1559; Pub. L. 99–83, title III, § 312(b), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 216.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954, referred to in subsec. (a)(4), is act July 10, 1954, ch. 469, 68 Stat. 454, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 41 (§ 1691 et seq.) of Title 7, Agriculture. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1691 of Title 7 and Tables.

The Export-Import Bank Act of 1945, referred to in subsec. (a)(4), is act July 31, 1945, ch. 341, 59 Stat. 526, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§ 635 et seq.) of chapter 6A of Title 12, Banks and Banking. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 635 of Title 12 and Tables.

This chapter, referred to in subssecs. (a)(5)(A), (10), (b)(1), was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87–195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

REFERENCES TO PART I DEEMED TO INCLUDE  
SECTION 2293

References to part I of subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include a reference to section 2293 of this title. See section 2293(d)(1) of this title.

CODIFICATION

Prior to the complete revision of this section by section 502(a)(2) of Pub. L. 95–424, section 501(a)(1) of Pub. L. 95–424 redesignated former subsec. (c), relating to requests by the General Accounting Office and Congressional committees for documents and other material, as section 2393a of this title.

AMENDMENTS

1985—Subsec. (a)(1)(B). Pub. L. 99–83 inserted provisions relating to evaluation of whether programs are benefiting the poor majority.

1981—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 97–113, § 733(1), substituted provision requiring information regarding American foreign policy and effectiveness of assistance to other countries for provision requiring information regarding United States development policy and effectiveness of assistance to developing countries and provision directing the Chairman prepare and transmit to Congress as part of the annual presentation materials for foreign assistance a report as described in this subsection for provision directing the Chairman to transmit a report on foreign assistance for the fiscal year ending the previous Sept. 30.

Subsec. (a)(1)(B). Pub. L. 97–113, § 733(2), struck out “the progress developing countries are making toward achieving those objectives which are indicative of improved well-being of the poor majority, which objectives shall include but not be limited to” before “increasing life expectancy and literacy”.

Subsec. (a)(2)(F). Pub. L. 97–113, § 733(3), added subpar. (F).

Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 97–113, § 733(4), struck out requirement that the report include the status of each loan and each contract of guaranty or insurance theretofore made under this chapter, predecessor Acts, or any Act authorizing international security assistance, with respect to which there remained outstanding any unpaid obligation or potential liability, and the status of each extension of credit for the procurement of defense articles or defense services, and of each contract of guarantee in connection with any such procurement, theretofore made under the Arms Export Control Act with respect to which there remained outstanding any unpaid obligation or potential liability.

Subsec. (a)(7). Pub. L. 97–113, § 733(5), struck out “and” after the semicolon.

Subsec. (a)(8). Pub. L. 97–113, § 733(6), substituted provision that the report contain the amount of all foreign currencies acquired without payment of dollars on hand of each foreign country as of Sept. 30 of the preceding fiscal year for provision that the report contain such other matters relating to foreign assistance provided under subchapter I of this chapter as the Chairman of the Development Coordination Committee considers appropriate.

Subsec. (a)(9) to (12). Pub. L. 97–113, § 733(6), added pars. (9) to (12).

1980—Subsec. (a)(6) to (8). Pub. L. 96–533 added pars. (6) and (7) and redesignated former par. (6) as (8).

1978—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 95–424, § 502(a)(2), added subsec. (a).

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 95–424, § 502(a)(2), substituted definitions of “foreign assistance” and “provided by the United States Government” for provisions requiring public disclosure of all information concerning operations under this chapter except that which is deemed incompatible with the Security of the United States.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 95–424, § 502(a)(1), struck out “(c)” at beginning of subsection and transferred the remainder of subsection to section 2393a of this title.

Subsecs. (d) to (h). Pub. L. 95–424, § 502(a)(2), struck out subssecs. (d), relating to presentation of programs to Congressional committees; (e), relating to inclusion of a specific plan in the President’s recommendations to Congress; (f), relating to a report by the President to Congress showing the status of each outstanding loan; (g), relating to a report by the President to Congress showing debt-servicing problems; and (h), relating to

military assistance to South Vietnam, Thailand, and Laos.

1976—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 94-329 struck out provisions under which sales pursuant to the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 or any other Act were included in the enumeration of factors used in developing, for purpose of presentation material, a chart showing the full extent of United States assistance planned or expected for each such country for the next fiscal year.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 94-273 substituted “September” for “June” and “March” for “December”.

1974—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 93-559 substituted in item (1) respecting presentation material “economic assistance, military grants (and including for any such grant of any excess defense article, the value of such article expressed in terms of its acquisition cost to the United States), and military sales” for “economic assistance and military grants and sales”.

1973—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 93-189 inserted references to contracts of guarantee or insurance, the status of sales of defense articles or defense services on credit terms, the status of sales of agricultural commodities on credit terms, and the status of loans, contracts of guarantee or insurance, or extensions of credit (or participations therein) made under the Export-Import Bank Act of 1945, and inserted provisions limiting the reporting requirement of the subsection so as to include only loans, contracts, sales, extensions of credit, or other transactions in excess of \$1,000,000.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 93-189 added subsec. (g).

1972—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 92-226, § 304(c)(2), struck out provisions for annual report to Congress concerning operations under this chapter, including information on the progress of the freedom of navigation and non-discrimination declaration. See annual foreign assistance report provisions of section 2417 of this title.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 92-226, § 304(a)(3), substituted in last sentence reference to section “2360(b)” for prior reference to sections “2360, 2364(a)”.

1969—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 91-175 excluded operations reported to Congress pursuant to section 2200a of this title from report required by this section, and struck out of last sentence reference to the operation of the investment guaranty program.

1968—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 90-629, § 45(b)(4), required the presentation material to include in the chart foreign assistance data under any other Act.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 90-629, § 45(a), repealed provisions of subsec. (g) which related to exports of defense articles, contents of reports, and utilization of statistics and information of Government agencies, and is now covered by section 2776(a) of this title.

1967—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 90-137, § 302(h)(1), inserted introductory provision for presentation of programs to Congressional Committees in connection with requests for appropriations for fiscal year 1969, penultimate provision for inclusion of foreign assistance data (an assistance chart, contribution details, and a statement of projects), and provision for notification as to findings and reasons therefor under section 2311 or 2341(c) of this title.

Subsecs. (g), (h). Pub. L. 90-137, § 302(h)(2), added subsecs. (g) and (h).

1966—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 89-583 added subsec. (f).

1962—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 87-565, § 302(e), required reports to include information on progress under the freedom of navigation and nondiscriminatory declaration contained in section 2151 of this title.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 87-565, § 302(f), substituted “At the end of each fiscal year” and “fiscal year” for “In January of each year” and “preceding twelve months”, respectively, and provided that the presentation material submitted to Congress during its consideration of amendments to this chapter, or of any Act appropriating funds pursuant to authorizations contained in this chapter, should include a comparison of the current fiscal year programs and activities with those presented to Congress in the previous year and an explanation of any substantial changes.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1972 AMENDMENT

Section 304(c)(3) of Pub. L. 92-226 provided that: “The provisions of this subsection [amending this section and section 2403 of this title] and section 657 of such Act [section 2417 of this title], as added by subsection (b) of this Act [this section], shall apply with respect to each fiscal year commencing on or after July 1, 1971.”

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1968 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 90-629 effective July 1, 1968, see section 41 of Pub. L. 90-629, set out as an Effective Date note under section 2751 of this title.

#### SAVINGS PROVISION

Determinations, authorizations, regulations, orders, contracts, agreements, and other actions issued, undertaken, or entered into under authority of any provision of former subsec. (g) of this section as continuing in full force and effect until modified by appropriate authority, see section 46 of Pub. L. 90-629, set out as a note under former section 2341 of this title.

#### PROGRESS REPORT OF IMPLEMENTATION OF IMMUNIZATION AND ORAL REHYDRATION PROMOTION PROGRAMS

Annual report under this section to describe progress achieved during preceding fiscal year in carrying out section 2151b(c)(3) of this title, see section 305(b) of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151b of this title.

#### NEGOTIATING EFFORTS CONCERNING ACCELERATED LOAN REPAYMENTS TO BE INCLUDED IN ANNUAL REPORTS FOR FOREIGN ASSISTANCE FOR 1980 AND 1981

Annual reports on foreign assistance submitted in 1980 and 1981 pursuant to this section to contain negotiating efforts respecting accelerated loan repayments under section 2151y of this title, see section 508(b) of Pub. L. 96-53, set out as a note under section 2151y of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2151p-1, 2151q, 2765 of this title.

### § 2394-1. Notification of program changes

#### (a) Covered programs; content of notifications

None of the funds appropriated to carry out the purposes of this chapter (except for programs under subpart III or subpart IV of part II of subchapter I of this chapter, part V of subchapter I of this chapter, and programs of disaster relief and rehabilitation) or the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.] may be obligated for any activities, programs, projects, types of materiel assistance, countries, or other operations not justified, or in excess of the amount justified, to the Congress for obligation under this chapter or the Arms Export Control Act for any fiscal year unless the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives, and the Committee on Appropriations of each House of the Congress are notified fifteen days in advance of such obligation. Whenever a

proposed reprogramming exceeds \$1,000,000 and the total amount proposed for obligation for a country under this chapter in a fiscal year exceeds by more than \$5,000,000 the amount specified for that country in the report required by section 2413(a) of this title, notifications of such proposed reprogramings shall specify—

(1) the nature and purpose of such proposed obligation, and

(2) to the extent possible at the time of the proposed obligation, the country for which such funds would otherwise have been obligated.

#### (b) Exceptions

The notification requirement of this section does not apply to the reprogramming—

(1) of funds to be used for an activity, program, or project under part I of subchapter I of this chapter if the amounts to be obligated for that activity, program, or project for that fiscal year do not exceed by more than 10 percent the amount justified to the Congress for that activity, program, or project for that fiscal year; or

(2) of less than \$25,000 to be used under part VIII of subchapter I of this chapter, or under part V of subchapter II of this chapter, for a country for which a program under that part for that fiscal year was justified to the Congress.

#### (c) Funds in the International Affairs Budget Function; reprogramming

The President shall notify the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives concerning any reprogramming of funds in the International Affairs Budget Function, the authorizations of appropriations for which are in their respective jurisdictions, to the same degree and with the same conditions as the President notifies the Committees on Appropriations. The requirements of this subsection are in addition to, and not in lieu of, other notification requirements.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 634A, formerly § 671, as added Pub. L. 95-88, title I, § 130, Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 543; renumbered § 634A, Pub. L. 95-424, title V, § 502(b), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 959; amended Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 704, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1544; Pub. L. 99-83, title XII, § 1209(a), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 278; Pub. L. 103-437, § 9(a)(6), Nov. 2, 1994, 108 Stat. 4588.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

The Arms Export Control Act, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 90-629, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1320, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 39 (§ 2751 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2751 of this title and Tables.

#### REFERENCES TO PART I DEEMED TO INCLUDE SECTION 2293

References to part I of subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include a reference to section 2293 of this title. See section 2293(d)(1) of this title.

#### CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 2429b of this title.

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103-437 substituted “Foreign Affairs” for “International Relations” in introductory provisions.

1985—Pub. L. 99-83 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a), inserted references to the Arms Export Control Act in two places, and added subsecs. (b) and (c).

1981—Pub. L. 97-113 inserted provision respecting notification of proposed reprogramming of assistance.

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section, to extent they relate to notifications to Congress concerning changes in programs under subchapter II of this chapter, except parts IV, VI, and VIII thereof, and under Arms Export Control Act (§ 2751 et seq.), delegated to Secretary of Defense, subject to prior consultation with Secretary of State, by section 1-301(c) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56675, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2151f, 2194, 2274, 2291, 2291a, 2291c, 2291e, 2291g, 2291j, 2293, 2295b, 2295c, 2346c, 2394aa-2, 2420, 2799c, 5476, 5605 of this title.

#### § 2394-1a. Classification of reports

All information contained in any report transmitted under this chapter shall be public information. However, in the case of any item of information to be included in any such report that the President, on an extraordinary basis, determines is clearly detrimental to the security of the United States, he shall explain in a supplemental report why publication of each specific item would be detrimental to the security of the United States. A supplemental report shall be transmitted to the Congress at the time the report is transmitted.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 634B, as added Pub. L. 95-424, title V, § 502(c), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 959.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as an Effective Date of 1978 Amendment note under section 2151 of this title.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Develop-

ment Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by section 1-102(a)(1), (e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

Functions of President under this section, insofar as they relate to other functions delegated to Secretary of State by Ex. Ord. No. 12163, delegated to Secretary of State by section 1-201(a)(16) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163.

Functions of President, to extent they relate to other functions under this chapter administered by Department of Defense, delegated to Secretary of Defense by section 1-301(b) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163.

**§ 2394a. Extortion and illegal payments to officials of foreign countries receiving international security assistance**

Within 60 days after receiving information which substantiates that officials of a foreign country receiving international security assistance have (1) received illegal or otherwise improper payments from a United States corporation in return for a contract to purchase defense articles or services from such corporation, or (2) extorted, or attempted to extort, money or other things of value in return for actions by officials of that country that permit a United States citizen or corporation to conduct business in that country, the President shall submit to Congress a report outlining the circumstances of such payment or extortion. The report shall contain a recommendation from the President as to whether the United States should continue a security assistance program for that country.

(Pub. L. 94-329, title VI, §607, June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 768.)

CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as part of Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, which comprises this chapter.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of State by section 1-201(a)(20) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56674, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

**§ 2395. General authorities**

**(a) Manner of furnishing assistance; emphasis on loans**

Except as otherwise specifically provided in this chapter, assistance under this chapter may be furnished on a grant basis or on such terms, including cash, credit, or other terms of repayment (including repayment in foreign currencies or by transfer to the United States Government of commodities) as may be determined to be best suited to the achievement of the purposes of this chapter, and shall emphasize loans rather than grants wherever possible.

**(b) Authority of the President**

The President may make loans, advances, and grants to, make and perform agreements and contracts with, or enter into other transactions with, any individual, corporation, or other body of persons, friendly government or government agency, whether within or without the United States, and international organizations in furtherance of the purposes and within the limitations of this chapter.

**(c) Utilization of services and facilities of voluntary, nonprofit organizations**

It is the sense of Congress that the President, in furthering the purposes of this chapter, shall use to the maximum extent practicable the services and facilities of voluntary, nonprofit organizations registered with, and approved by, the Agency for International Development.

**(d) Acceptance of gifts, devises, bequests, grants, etc.**

The President may accept and use in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter, money, funds, property, and services of any kind made available by gift, devise, bequest, grant, or otherwise for such purpose.

**(e) Health and accident insurance for foreign participants and foreign employees**

(1) Any agency of the United States Government is authorized to pay the cost of health and accident insurance for foreign participants in any program of furnishing technical information and assistance administered by such agency while such participants are absent from their homes for the purpose of participation in such program.

(2) Any agency of the United States Government is authorized to pay the cost of health and accident insurance for foreign employees of that agency while those employees are absent from their place of employment abroad for purposes of training or other official duties.

**(f) Admission of alien participants**

Alien participants in any program of furnishing technical information and assistance under this chapter may be admitted to the United States if otherwise qualified as nonimmigrants under section 1101(a)(15) of title 8, for such time and under such conditions as may be prescribed by regulations promulgated by the Secretary of State and the Attorney General.

**(g) Powers and authorities of the President with respect to loans**

In making loans under this chapter, the President—

(1) may issue letters of credit and letters of commitment;

(2) may collect or compromise any obligations assigned to, or held by, and any legal or equitable rights accruing to him, and, as he may determine, refer any such obligations or rights to the Attorney General for suit or collection;

(3) may acquire and dispose of, upon such terms and conditions as he may determine, any property, including any instrument evidencing indebtedness or ownership (provided that equity securities may not be directly purchased although such securities may be acquired by other means such as by exercise of conversion rights or through enforcement of liens or pledges or otherwise to satisfy a previously incurred indebtedness), and guarantee payment against any such instrument;

(4) may determine the character of, and necessity for, obligations and expenditures of funds used in making such loans and the manner in which they shall be incurred, allowed, and paid, subject to provisions of law speci-

cally applicable to corporations of the United States Government; and

(5) shall cause to be maintained an integral set of accounts which shall be audited by the General Accounting Office in accordance with principles and procedures applicable to commercial corporate transactions as provided by chapter 91 of title 31.

**(h) Term of contracts and agreements**

A contract or agreement which entails commitments for the expenditure of funds made available under part I (except development loans) and subpart II of part II of subchapter I and under subchapter II of this chapter, may, subject to any future action of the Congress, extend at any time for not more than five years.

**(i) Settlement and arbitration of claims arising under investment guaranty operations**

Claims arising as a result of investment guaranty operations may be settled, and disputes arising as a result thereof may be arbitrated with the consent of the parties, on such terms and conditions as the President may direct. Payment made pursuant to any such settlement, or as a result of an arbitration award, shall be final and conclusive notwithstanding any other provision of law.

**(j) Financial transactions with foreign governments; exemption**

The provisions of section 955 of title 18 shall not apply to prevent any person, including any individual, partnership, corporation, or association, from acting for, or participating in, any operation or transaction arising under this chapter, or from acquiring any obligation issued in connection with any operation or transaction arising under this chapter.

**(k) Cost-type contracts with educational institutions; payment of reimbursable indirect costs**

Any cost-type contract or agreement (including grants) entered into with a university, college, or other educational institution for the purpose of carrying out programs authorized by subchapter I of this chapter may provide for the payment of the reimbursable indirect costs of said university, college, or other educational institution on the basis of predetermined fixed-percentage rates applied to the total, or an element thereof, of the reimbursable direct costs incurred.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 635, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 456; Pub. L. 87-565, pt. III, § 302(g), Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 262; Pub. L. 88-205, pt. III, § 302(e), Dec. 16, 1963, 77 Stat. 389; Pub. L. 89-171, pt. III, § 302(g), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 660; Pub. L. 89-583, pt. III, § 302(d), Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 807; Pub. L. 90-137, pt. III, § 302(i), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 461; Pub. L. 95-424, title I, § 102(g)(2)(G), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 943; Pub. L. 96-53, title I, § 121, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 366.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a) to (d), (g), and (j), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classi-

fication of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II, AND REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER II DEEMED TO EXCLUDE SUCH PARTS

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

REFERENCES TO PART I DEEMED TO INCLUDE SECTION 2293

References to part I of subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include a reference to section 2293 of this title. See section 2293(d)(1) of this title.

CODIFICATION

In subsec. (g)(5), "chapter 91 of title 31" substituted for "the Government Corporation Control Act, as amended (31 U.S.C. 841 et seq.)" on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, §4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

AMENDMENTS

1979—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 96-53 substituted "Agency for International Development" for "Advisory Committee on Voluntary Foreign Aid".

1978—Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 95-424 substituted "part I (except development loans) and subpart II of part II of subchapter I" for "subparts II, V, and VI of part II of subchapter I (except development loans)".

1967—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 90-137, §302(i)(1), designated existing provisions as par. (1) and added par. (2).

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 90-137, §302(i)(2), struck out "and sales" after "loans" in introductory clause.

1966—Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 89-583 excluded development loans under the Alliance for Progress from the provision that contracts or agreements which entail commitments for the expenditure of funds may not extend for more than five years.

1965—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 89-171 inserted "and sales" in introductory clause.

1963—Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 88-205 added subsec. (k).

1962—Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 87-565 included sections 2211 to 2213 of this title within the limitation on the duration of contracts and agreements.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1979 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-53 effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 512(a) of Pub. L. 96-53, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1967 AMENDMENT

Section 302(i)(2) of Pub. L. 90-137 provided in part that amendment of subsec. (g) by such section 302(i)(2) shall take effect on June 30, 1968.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by section 1-102(a)(1), (e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

Functions of President, to extent they relate to other functions under this chapter administered by Department of Defense, under subsec. (b) (except with respect to negotiation, conclusion, and termination of international agreements) and under subsecs. (d) and (g) del-



egated to Secretary of Defense by section 1-301(b) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163.

#### INTERNATIONAL AGREEMENTS

The negotiation, conclusion, and termination of international agreements pursuant to this chapter shall be subject to requirements of section 112b of Title 1, General Provisions, and to applicable regulations and procedures, see section 1-604 of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56677, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

#### INFORMATION TO CONGRESSIONAL COMMITTEES ON NEGOTIATIONS REGARDING DEBTS OWED UNITED STATES BY FOREIGN GOVERNMENTS; TRANSMITTAL TO CONGRESS OF DEBT MODIFICATION PROPOSALS

Pub. L. 93-333, § 4, July 8, 1974, 88 Stat. 290, relating to cancellation, renegotiation, etc., of any debt owed by a foreign government, was repealed by Pub. L. 95-424, title VI, § 603(b), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 961.

#### TERMINATION OF ADVISORY COMMITTEES

Advisory committees in existence on Jan. 5, 1973, to terminate not later than the expiration of the 2-year period following Jan. 5, 1973, unless, in the case of a committee established by the President or an officer of the Federal Government, such committee is renewed by appropriate action prior to the expiration of such 2-year period, or in the case of a committee established by the Congress, its duration is otherwise provided by law. See section 14 of Pub. L. 92-463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 776, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

#### § 2395a. International agreements concerning debt relief; transmittal to Congressional committees

(1) Repealed. Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(5), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.

(2) The Secretary of State shall transmit to such committees a copy of the text of any agreement with any foreign government which would result in any such debt relief no less than thirty days prior to its entry into force, together with a detailed justification of the interest of the United States in the proposed debt relief. The requirements of this paragraph shall not apply with respect to an agreement if a statutory requirement exists that the amount of the debt relief provided by the agreement may not exceed the amount approved for such purposes in advance in an appropriation Act.

(Pub. L. 95-424, title VI, § 603(a), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 960; H. Res. 89, Feb. 5, 1979; Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(5), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

“Such committees” and “such debt relief”, referred to in par. (2), mean the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives, and the Committee on Appropriations of the each House of Congress named as the ongoing recipients of any information respecting debt relief negotiations with foreign governments regarding any debts owing to the United States in par. (1) provisions prior to repeal thereof by section 734(a)(1) of Pub. L. 97-113.

#### CODIFICATION

Section enacted as part of the International Development and Food Assistance Act of 1978, and not as part of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 which comprises this chapter.

#### AMENDMENTS

1981—Par. (1). Pub. L. 97-113 struck out par. (1) which required Secretary of State keep the Committee on

Foreign Relations of the Senate, the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives, and the Committee on Appropriations of each House of Congress informed respecting any debt relief negotiations with foreign governments regarding any debts owing to the United States.

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives changed to Committee on Foreign Affairs, on Feb. 5, 1979, by House Resolution No. 89, 96th Congress.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as an Effective Date of 1978 Amendment note under section 2151 of this title.

#### NOTIFICATION TO CONGRESS ON DEBT RELIEF AGREEMENTS

Pub. L. 102-391, title V, § 548, Oct. 6, 1992, 106 Stat. 1673, provided that: “The Secretary of State shall transmit to the Appropriations Committees of the Congress and to such other Committees as appropriate, a copy of the text of any agreement with any foreign government which would result in any debt relief no less than thirty days prior to its entry into force, other than one entered into pursuant to this Act, together with a detailed justification of the interest of the United States in the proposed debt relief: *Provided*, That the term ‘debt relief’ shall include any and all debt prepayment, debt rescheduling, and debt restructuring proposals and agreements: *Provided further*, That the Secretary of State and the Secretary of the Treasury should in every feasible instance notify the Appropriations Committees of the Congress and such other Committees as appropriate not less than 15 days prior to any formal multilateral or bilateral negotiation for official debt restructuring, rescheduling, or relief: *Provided further*, That the Secretary of State or the Secretary of the Treasury, as appropriate, shall report not later than February 1 of each year a consolidated statement of the budgetary implications of all debt-related agreements entered into force during the preceding fiscal year.”

Similar provisions were contained in the following prior appropriation acts:

Pub. L. 101-513, title V, § 550, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2020.

Pub. L. 101-167, title V, § 555, Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1237.

Pub. L. 100-461, title V, § 557, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-38.

Pub. L. 100-202, § 101(e) [title V, § 563], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-172.

#### § 2396. Availability of funds

##### (a) General expenditures

Appropriations for the purposes of or pursuant to this chapter (except for subchapter II of this chapter), allocations to any agency of the United States Government, from other appropriations, for functions directly related to the purposes of this chapter, and funds made available for other purposes to the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter, shall be available for:

(1) rent of buildings and space in buildings in the United States, and for repair, alteration, and improvement of such leased properties;

(2) expenses of attendance at meetings concerned with the purposes of such appropriations or of this chapter, including (notwithstanding the provisions of section 1346(a) and (c) of title 31) expenses in connection with meetings of persons whose employment is authorized by section 2386 of this title;

(3) contracting with individuals for personal services abroad: *Provided*, That such individuals shall not be regarded as employees of the United States Government for the purpose of any law administered by the Civil Service Commission;

(4) purchase, maintenance, operation, and hire of aircraft: *Provided*, That aircraft for administrative purposes may be purchased only as specifically provided for in an appropriation or other Act;

(5) purchase and hire of passenger motor vehicles: *Provided*, That, except as may otherwise be provided in an appropriation or other Act, passenger motor vehicles for administrative purposes outside the United States may be purchased for replacement only, and such vehicles may be exchanged or sold and replaced by an equal number of such vehicles, and the cost, including exchange allowance, of each such replacement shall not exceed the current market price in the United States of a mid-sized sedan or station wagon meeting the requirements established by the General Services Administration for a Class III vehicle of United States manufacture (or, if the replacement vehicle is a right-hand drive vehicle, 120 percent of that price) in the case of an automobile for the chief of any special mission or staff outside the United States established under section 2391 of this title: *Provided further*, That passenger motor vehicles, other than one for the official use of the head of the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter, may be purchased for use in the United States only as may be specifically provided in an appropriation or other Act;

(6) entertainment (not to exceed \$25,000 in any fiscal year except as may otherwise be provided in an appropriation or other Act);

(7) exchange of funds without regard to section 3651<sup>1</sup> of the Revised Statutes (31 U.S.C. 543) and loss by exchange;

(8) expenditures (not to exceed \$50,000 in any fiscal year except as may otherwise be provided in an appropriation or other Act) of a confidential character other than entertainment: *Provided*, That a certificate of the amount of each such expenditure, the nature of which it is considered inadvisable to specify, shall be made by the head of the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter or such person as he may designate, and every such certificate shall be deemed a sufficient voucher for the amount therein specified;

(9) insurance of official motor vehicles or aircraft acquired for use in foreign countries;

(10) rent or lease outside the United States for not to exceed ten years of offices, buildings, grounds, and quarters, including living quarters to house personnel, and payments therefor in advance; maintenance, furnishings, necessary repairs, improvements, and alterations to properties owned or rented by the United States Government or made available for use to the United States Government outside the United States; and costs of fuel, water, and utilities for such properties;

(11) expenses of preparing and transporting to their former homes, or, with respect to foreign participants engaged in any program under subchapter I of this chapter, to their former homes or places of burial, and of care and disposition of, the remains of persons or members of the families of persons who may die while such persons are away from their homes participating in activities carried out with funds covered by this subsection;

(12) purchase of uniforms;

(13) payment of per diem in lieu of subsistence to foreign participants engaged in any program under subchapter I of this chapter while such participants are away from their homes in countries other than the United States, at rates not in excess of those prescribed by the standardized Government travel regulations, notwithstanding any other provision of law;

(14) use in accordance with authorities of the Foreign Service Act of 1980, as amended (22 U.S.C. 3901 et seq.), not otherwise provided for;

(15) ice and drinking water for use outside the United States;

(16) services of commissioned officers of the Environmental Science Services Administration, and for the purposes of providing such services the Environmental Science Services Administration may appoint not to exceed twenty commissioned officers in addition to those otherwise authorized;

(17) expenses in connection with travel of personnel outside the United States, including travel expenses of dependents (including expenses during necessary stopovers while engaged in such travel), and transportation of personal effects, household goods, and automobiles of such personnel when any part of such travel or transportation begins in one fiscal year pursuant to travel orders issued in that fiscal year, notwithstanding the fact that such travel or transportation may not be completed during the same fiscal year, and cost of transporting automobiles to and from a place of storage, and the cost of storing automobiles of such personnel when it is in the public interest or more economical to authorize storage.

**(b) Compensation, allowances, and travel of personnel; printing and binding; expenditures outside United States**

Funds made available for the purposes of this chapter may be used for compensation, allowances, and travel of personnel including Foreign Service personnel whose services are utilized primarily for the purposes of this chapter, for printing and binding without regard to the provisions of any other law, and for expenditures outside the United States for the procurement of supplies and services and for other administrative and operating purposes (other than compensation of personnel) without regard to such laws and regulations governing the obligation and expenditure of funds of the United States Government as may be necessary to accomplish the purposes of this chapter.

**(c) Construction of living quarters, office space, and supporting facilities**

Notwithstanding any other law, not to exceed \$6,000,000 of the funds available for assistance

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

under this chapter may be used in any fiscal year (in addition to funds available for such use under other authorities in this chapter) to construct or otherwise acquire outside the United States (1) essential living quarters, office space, and necessary supporting facilities for use of personnel carrying out activities authorized by this chapter, and (2) schools (including dormitories and boarding facilities) and hospitals for use of personnel carrying out activities authorized by this chapter, United States Government personnel, and their dependents. In addition, funds made available for assistance under this chapter may be used, notwithstanding any other law, to equip, staff, operate, and maintain such schools and hospitals.

**(d) Education of dependents**

Not to exceed \$2,500,000 of the funds available for assistance under this chapter may be used in any fiscal year to provide assistance, on such terms and conditions as are deemed appropriate, to schools established, or to be established, outside the United States whenever it is determined that such action would be more economical or would best serve the interests of the United States in providing for the education of dependents of personnel carrying out activities authorized by this chapter and dependents of United States Government personnel, in lieu of acquisition or construction pursuant to subsection (c) of this section.

**(e) Training costs**

Funds available under this chapter may be used to pay costs of training United States citizen personnel employed or assigned pursuant to section 2385(d)(2)<sup>2</sup> of this title (through interchange or otherwise) at any State or local unit of government, public or private nonprofit institution, trade, labor, agricultural, or scientific association or organization, or commercial firm; and the provisions of sections 1881 to 1888<sup>2</sup> of title 7 may be used to carry out the foregoing authority notwithstanding that interchange of personnel may not be involved or that the training may not take place at the institutions specified in sections 1881 to 1888<sup>2</sup> of title 7. Such training shall not be considered employment or holding of office under section 5533 of title 5, and any payments or contributions in connection therewith may, as deemed appropriate by the head of the agency of the United States Government authorizing such training, be made by private or public sources and be accepted by any trainee, or may be accepted by and credited to the current applicable appropriation of such agency: *Provided, however,* That any such payments to any employee in the nature of compensation shall be in lieu, or in reduction, of compensation received from the United States Government.

**(f) Assistance in carrying out functions under certain laws**

Funds made available under part I of subchapter I of this chapter may be used for expenses (other than those provided for under section 2397(a) of this title) to assist in carrying out functions under part I of subchapter I of this

chapter, under the Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954, as amended [7 U.S.C. 1691 et seq.], and under the Latin American Development Act, as amended, performed by the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter or by the Corporation established under subpart IV of part II of subchapter I of this chapter with respect to loan activities which it carries out under the provisions of the Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954, as amended.

**(g) Administrative, extraordinary, and operating expenses; reimbursement of military officers; training of foreign military personnel**

Funds made available for the purposes of subchapter II of this chapter or the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.] shall be available for—

(1) administrative, extraordinary (not to exceed \$300,000 in any fiscal year), and operating expenses incurred in furnishing defense articles, military education and training and defense services on a grant or sales basis by the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter II of this chapter;

(2) reimbursement of actual expenses of military officers detailed or assigned as tour directors in connection with orientation visits of foreign military and related civilian personnel, in accordance with provisions of section 5702 of title 5, applicable to civilian officers and employees; and

(3) maintenance, repair, alteration and furnishing of United States-owned facilities in the District of Columbia or elsewhere for the training of foreign military and related civilian personnel, without regard to the provisions of section 12 of title 41 or other provision of law requiring a specific authorization or specific appropriation for such public contracts.

**(h) Recipient countries to contribute local currencies; utilization of foreign currencies owned by United States**

In carrying out programs under this chapter, the President shall take all appropriate steps to assure that, to the maximum extent possible, (1) countries receiving assistance under this chapter contribute local currencies to meet the cost of contractual and other services rendered in conjunction with such programs, and (2) foreign currencies owned by the United States are utilized to meet the costs of such contractual and other services.

**(i) Financing motor vehicle transactions; waiver of domestic manufacturing restriction**

Notwithstanding section 2399a<sup>3</sup> of this title or any other provision of this chapter, none of the funds made available to carry out this chapter shall be used to finance the purchase, sale, long-term lease, exchange, or guaranty of a sale of motor vehicles unless such motor vehicles are manufactured in the United States: *Provided,* That where special circumstances exist the President is authorized to waive the provisions

<sup>2</sup> See References in Text note below.

<sup>3</sup> See References in Text note below.

of this section in order to carry out the purposes of this chapter.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 636, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 457; Pub. L. 88-205, pt. III, § 302(f), Dec. 16, 1963, 77 Stat. 389; Pub. L. 89-171, pt. III, § 302(h), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 660; Pub. L. 90-137, pt. III, § 302(j)-(o), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 461, 462; Pub. L. 90-554, pt. III, § 302(d), Oct. 8, 1968, 82 Stat. 965; Pub. L. 91-175, pt. III, § 306, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 821; Pub. L. 94-329, title I, § 106(b)(5), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 733; Pub. L. 95-424, title I, § 102(g)(2)(H)-(J), title V, § 505, Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 943, 960; Pub. L. 99-83, title XII, § 1211(b)(1), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 279; Pub. L. 99-234, title I, § 107(b), Jan. 2, 1986, 99 Stat. 1759; Pub. L. 99-550, § 2(b), Oct. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 3070; Pub. L. 100-202, § 101(e) [title II, § 201], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-141; Pub. L. 101-167, title III, Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1214.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a) to (e), (h), and (i), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

Section 3651 of the Revised Statutes (31 U.S.C. 543), referred to in subsec. (a)(7), was repealed by Pub. L. 97-258, § 4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

The Foreign Service Act of 1980, referred to in subsec. (a)(14), is Pub. L. 96-465, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2071, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 52 (§ 3901 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3901 of this title and Tables.

Section 2385(d) of this title, referred to in subsec. (e), was amended by Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2203(a), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2158, and as so amended does not contain a par. (2).

Sections 1881 to 1888 of title 7, referred to in subsec. (e), which related to the interchange of Department of Agriculture and State employees, were repealed by Pub. L. 91-648, title IV, § 403, Jan. 5, 1971, 84 Stat. 1925. See section 3371 et seq. of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

The Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954, as amended, referred to in subsec. (f), is act July 10, 1954, ch. 469, 68 Stat. 454, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 41 (§ 1691 et seq.) of Title 7, Agriculture. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1691 of Title 7, and Tables.

The Latin American Development Act, as amended, referred to in subsec. (f), is Pub. L. 86-735, Sept. 8, 1960, 74 Stat. 869, as amended, which enacted sections 1942 to 1945 of this title and amended section 1753a of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1942 of this title and Tables.

The Arms Export Control Act, referred to in subsec. (g), is Pub. L. 90-629, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1320, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 39 (§ 2751 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2751 of this title and Tables.

Section 2399a of this title, referred to in subsec. (i), was repealed by Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 4, § 45(a), Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1327. See section 2753(a)(1) of this title.

#### REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II, AND REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER II DEEMED TO EXCLUDE SUCH PARTS

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§ 2346 et seq.), VI (§ 2348 et seq.), and

VIII (§ 2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

#### REFERENCES TO PART I DEEMED TO INCLUDE SECTION 2293

References to part I of subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include a reference to section 2293 of this title. See section 2293(d)(1) of this title.

#### CODIFICATION

In subsec. (a)(2), "section 1346(a) and (c) of title 31" substituted for "section 9 of Public Law 60-328 (31 U.S.C. 673)" on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, § 4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

#### AMENDMENTS

1989—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 101-167 inserted "or the Arms Export Control Act" after "subchapter II of this chapter" in introductory provisions.

1987—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 100-202 substituted "\$6,000,000" for "\$3,000,000".

1986—Subsec. (a)(5). Pub. L. 99-550 struck out "(with-out regard to the limitations contained in section 5 of Public Law 63-127, as amended (31 U.S.C. 638a(c)(2)), and section 201 of Public Law 85-468 (31 U.S.C. 638c))" after "official use".

Subsec. (g)(2). Pub. L. 99-234 substituted "5702" for "5702(c)".

1985—Subsec. (a)(14). Pub. L. 99-83 substituted reference to Foreign Service Act of 1980 for reference to Foreign Service Act of 1946.

1978—Subsec. (a)(5). Pub. L. 95-424, § 505, substituted "the current market price in the United States of a mid-sized sedan or station wagon meeting the requirements established by the General Services Administration for a Class III vehicle of United States manufacture (or, if the replacement vehicle is a right hand drive vehicle, 120 percent of that price)" for "\$3,500".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 95-424, § 102(g)(2)(H), struck out "(other than subpart I of part II of subchapter I of this chapter)" after "under this chapter" in two places.

Subsecs. (d), (e). Pub. L. 95-424, § 102(g)(2)(I), struck out "(other than subpart I of part II of subchapter I of this chapter)" after "under this chapter".

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 95-424, § 102(g)(2)(J), substituted "available under part I of subchapter I of this chapter" for "section 2172 of this title", and "functions under part I" for "functions under subpart I of part II".

1976—Subsec. (g)(1). Pub. L. 94-329, § 106(b)(5)(A), inserted "military education and training" after "articles".

Subsec. (g)(2), (3). Pub. L. 94-329, § 106(b)(5)(B), substituted "and related civilian personnel" for "personnel".

1969—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 91-175 added Corporation established under sections 2191 to 2200a of this title to the enumeration of agencies administering programs.

1968—Subsec. (g)(1). Pub. L. 90-554 required that when funds are made available for operating expenses, such expenses be incurred in furnishing defense articles and defense services on a grant or sales basis by the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter II of this chapter.

1967—Subsec. (a)(5). Pub. L. 90-137, § 302(j), substituted "section 638a(c)(2) and section 638c of title 31" for "section 78a(c)(2) and section 78a-1 of title 5".

Subsec. (a)(16). Pub. L. 90-137, § 302(k), substituted "Environmental Science Services Administration" for "Coast and Geodetic Survey" in two places.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 90-137, § 302(l), increased limitation on funds available for education of dependents from \$1,500,000 to \$2,500,000.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 90-137, § 302(m), substituted reference to section 5533 of title 5 for section 301 of the Dual Compensation Act (5 U.S.C. 3105).

Subsec. (g)(2). Pub. L. 90-137, §302(n), substituted reference to section 5702(c) of title 5 for former section 836 of title 5.

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 90-137, §302(o), added subsec. (i).  
1965—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 89-171, §302(h)(1), substituted “section 301 of the Dual Compensation Act (5 U.S.C. 3105)” for “section 2 of the Act of July 31, 1894, as amended (5 U.S.C. 62)”.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 89-171, §302(h)(2), substituted “Latin American Development Act, as amended” for “Act to provide for assistance in the development of Latin America and in the reconstruction of Chile, and for other purposes”.

1963—Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 88-205 added subsec. (h).

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Commissioned Officer Corps of the Environmental Science Services Administration changed to Commissioned Officer Corps of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, see 1970 Reorg Plan No. 4, §4(d), eff. Oct. 3, 1970, 35 F.R. 15627, 84 Stat. 2090, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-234 effective (1) on effective date of regulations to be promulgated not later than 150 days after Jan. 2, 1986, or (2) 180 days after Jan. 2, 1986, whichever occurs first, see section 301(a) of Pub. L. 99-234, set out as a note under section 5701 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by section 1-102(a)(1), (e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

Functions of President under subsec. (i), to extent they relate to other functions under this chapter administered by Department of Defense, delegated to Secretary of Defense by section 1-301(b) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2349b, 2360, 2396a, 2514, 4341 of this title; title 2 section 143a.

### § 2396a. Property Management Fund

(a) The proceeds of overseas property acquired by the Agency for International Development under the authority of section 2396(c) of this title may be deposited in a separate fund, which shall be known as the Property Management Fund. Such proceeds shall be available for use only for the purposes of section 2396(c) of this title, and shall remain available until expended. The Administrator of the Agency for International Development shall report all uses of funds deposited into the Property Management Fund as part of the annual Congressional Presentation materials submitted by the Agency for International Development.

(b) The provisions of subsection (a) of this section shall be applicable to property acquired

prior to November 5, 1990, and at any time thereafter.

(Pub. L. 101-513, title V, §585, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2047.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Act, 1991, and not as part of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 which comprises this chapter.

### § 2397. Administrative expenses

(a) Repealed. Pub. L. 95-424, title VI, §604, Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 961.

(b) There is authorized to be appropriated such amounts as may be necessary from time to time for administrative expenses which are incurred for functions of the Department of State under this chapter and unrepealed provisions of the Mutual Security Act of 1954, as amended, or for normal functions of the Department of State which relate to such functions.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §637, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460; Pub. L. 87-565, pt. III, §302(h), Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 262; Pub. L. 88-205, pt. III, §302(g), Dec. 16, 1963, 77 Stat. 389; Pub. L. 88-633, pt. III, §302(c), Oct. 7, 1964, 78 Stat. 1014; Pub. L. 89-171, pt. III, §302(i), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 661; Pub. L. 89-583, pt. III, §302(e), Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 808; Pub. L. 90-137, pt. III, §302(p), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 462; Pub. L. 90-554, pt. III, §302(e), Oct. 8, 1968, 82 Stat. 965; Pub. L. 91-175, pt. III, §307, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 821; Pub. L. 92-226, pt. III, §303, Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 28; Pub. L. 93-189, §18, Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 724; Pub. L. 95-424, title VI, §604, Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 961.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (b), was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

The Mutual Security Act of 1954, referred to in subsec. (b), is act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, 68 Stat. 832, as amended by acts July 8, 1955, ch. 301, 69 Stat. 283; July 18, 1956, ch. 627, §§2-11, 70 Stat. 555; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, 71 Stat. 355; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. 1, §§101-103, ch. II, §§201-205, ch. III, §301, ch. IV, §401, ch. V, §501, 72 Stat. 261; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, §2, ch. 1, §101, ch. II, §§201-205(a)-(i), (k)-(n), ch. III, §301, ch. IV, §401(a)-(k), (m), 73 Stat. 246; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. I to V, 74 Stat. 134, which was principally classified to chapter 24 (§1750 et seq.) of this title and which was repealed by act July 18, 1956, ch. 627, §8(m), 70 Stat. 559, Pub. L. 85-141, §§2(e), 3, 4(b), 11(d), Aug. 14, 1957, 71 Stat. 356, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. II, §§205(j), ch. IV, 401(1), July 24, 1959, 73 Stat. 250, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. II, §§203(d), 204(k), May 14, 1960, 74 Stat. 138, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §642(a)(2), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460, Pub. L. 94-329, title II, §212(b)(1), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 745, except for sections 1754, 1783, 1796, 1853, 1922, 1928, and 1937 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1754 of this title and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1978—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 95-424 struck out subsec. (a) which authorized appropriations for necessary administrative expenses of the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter.

1973—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 93-189 substituted “for each of the fiscal years 1974 and 1975, \$45,000,000”, for “for the

fiscal year 1972, \$50,000,000, and for the fiscal year 1973, \$50,000,000”.

1972—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 92-226 authorized appropriations of \$50,000,000 for fiscal years 1972 and 1973, and struck out appropriation authorization of \$51,125,000 for fiscal years 1970 and 1971.

1969—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 91-175 substituted “fiscal year 1970, \$51,125,000, and for the fiscal year 1971, \$51,125,000” for “fiscal year 1969, \$53,000,000”.

1968—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 90-554 substituted “1969” and “\$53,000,000” for “1968” and “\$55,814,000”, respectively, and required a reduction in number of personnel, particularly administrative personnel, to keep within reduced funds for fiscal year 1969, excepting therefrom auditing or training activities.

1967—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 90-137 substituted “1968” and “\$55,814,000” for “1967” and “\$55,813,500”, respectively.

1966—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 89-583 substituted “1967” and “\$55,813,500” for “1966” and “\$4,240,000,” respectively.

1965—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 89-171 substituted “1966” and “\$54,200,000” for “1965” and “\$52,500,000”, respectively.

1964—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 88-633 substituted “1965” and “\$52,500,000” for “1964” and “\$54,000,000”, respectively.

1963—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 88-205 substituted “1964” and “\$54,000,000” for “1963” and “\$53,000,000”, respectively.

1962—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 87-565, §302(h)(1), substituted “1963” and “\$53,000,000” for “1962” and “\$50,000,000”, respectively.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 87-565, §302(h)(2), struck out “to the Secretary of State” after “authorized to be appropriated.”

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

#### ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Funds available to the President under this chapter allocated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by section 1-801(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

Funds available to President for carrying out subsec. (b) of this section allocated to Secretary of State by section 1-801(c) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2360, 2392, 2396, 2413 of this title.

### § 2398. Assistance to countries pursuant to other statutes

(a) No provision of this chapter shall be construed to prohibit assistance to any country pursuant to the Peace Corps Act, as amended [22 U.S.C. 2501 et seq.]; the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961, as amended [22 U.S.C. 2451 et seq.]; or the Export-Import Bank Act of 1945, as amended [12 U.S.C. 635 et seq.].

(b) No provision of this chapter or any other provision of law shall be construed to prohibit assistance for any training activity which is funded under this chapter for Brazil or Argentina as long as such country continues to have a democratically<sup>1</sup> elected government and the assistance is otherwise consistent with sections 2151n, 2304, 2370(f), 2371, and 2420 of this title.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §638, as added Pub. L. 88-205, pt. III, §302(h), Dec. 16, 1963, 77 Stat. 389;

amended Pub. L. 89-171, pt. III, §302(j), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 661; Pub. L. 93-189, §19, Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 725; Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title V, §588(a)], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-186.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

The Peace Corps Act, as amended, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 87-293, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 612, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 34 (§2501 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2501 of this title and Tables.

The Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961, as amended, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 87-256, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 527, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 33 (§2451 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2451 of this title and Tables.

The Export-Import Bank Act of 1945, as amended, referred to in subsec. (a), is act July 31, 1945, ch. 341, 59 Stat. 526, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 6A (§635 et seq.) of Title 12, Banks and Banking. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 635 of Title 12 and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1987—Pub. L. 100-202 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsec. (b).

1973—Pub. L. 93-189 amended section catchline.

1965—Pub. L. 89-171 struck out provisions which prohibited any provision of this chapter from being construed to prohibit famine or disaster relief, including such relief through voluntary agencies, under sections 1721 to 1724 of title 7.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1987 AMENDMENT

Section 101(e) [title V, §588(b)] of Pub. L. 100-202 provided that: “The amendment made by subsection (a)(2) [amending this section] does not apply with respect to funds appropriated prior to the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 22, 1987].”

### § 2399. Repealed. Pub. L. 94-161, title I, § 101(6), Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 850

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §639, as added Pub. L. 80-171, pt. III, §302(k), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 661; amended Pub. L. 93-559, §28(a), Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1803, provided for famine or disaster relief, authorized appropriation of \$40,000,000 for fiscal year 1975, and required Presidential reports to Committees of the Senate and Speaker of the House. See sections 2292 and 2292a of this title.

### §§ 2399-1a, 2399-1b. Transferred

#### CODIFICATION

Section 2399-1a, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. 1, §494A, formerly pt. III, §639A, as added Pub. L. 93-189, §20, Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 725; amended Pub. L. 93-333, §3, July 8, 1974, 88 Stat. 290 renumbered pt. 1, §494A, Pub. L. 94-161, title I, §101(5), Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 850, which related to famine and disaster relief to drought stricken African nations, was transferred to section 2292d of this title.

Section 2399-1b, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. I, §494B, formerly pt. III, §639B, as added Pub. L. 93-189, §20, Dec. 13, 1973, 87 Stat. 725; renumbered pt. 1, §494B, and amended Pub. L. 94-161, title I, §101(5), (7), Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 850, which related to an African Development program, was transferred to section 2292e of this title.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be “democratically”.

**§ 2399a. Repealed. Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 4, § 45(a), Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1327**

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 640, as added Pub. L. 89-171, pt. III, § 302(k), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 661; amended Pub. L. 90-137, pt. III, § 302(q), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 462, related to military sales. See section 2753(a)(1) of this title.

**EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL**

Repeal effective July 1, 1968, see section 41 of Pub. L. 90-629, set out as an Effective Date note under section 2751 of this title.

**SAVINGS PROVISION**

Determinations, authorizations, regulations, orders, contracts, agreements, and other actions issued, undertaken, or entered into under authority of any provision of former section 2399a of this title as continuing in full force and effect until modified by appropriate authority, see section 46 of Pub. L. 90-629, set out as a note under section 2341 of this title.

**§ 2399b. False claims and ineligible commodities**

**(a) Penalties; costs**

Any person who makes or causes to be made or presents or causes to be presented to any bank or other financial institution or to any officer, agent, or employee of any agency of the United States Government a claim for payment from funds made available under this chapter for the purposes of furnishing assistance and who knows the claim to be false, fraudulent, or fictitious or to cover a commodity or commodity-related service determined by the President to be ineligible for payment from funds made available under this chapter, or who uses to support his claim any certification, statement, or entry on any contract, abstract, bill of lading, Government or commercial invoice, or Government form, which he knows, or in the exercise of prudent business management should know, to contain false, fraudulent, or fictitious information, or who uses or engages in any other fraudulent trick, scheme, or device for the purpose of securing or obtaining, or aiding to secure or obtain, for any person any benefit or payment from funds so made available under this chapter in connection with the negotiation, procurement, award, or performance of a contract financed with funds so made available under this chapter, and any person who enters into an agreement, combination, or conspiracy so to do, (1) shall pay to the United States an amount equal to 25 per centum of any amount thereby sought to be wrongfully secured or obtained but not actually received, and (2) shall forfeit and refund any payment, compensation, loan, commission, or advance received as a result thereof, and (3) shall, in addition, pay to the United States for each such act (A) the sum of \$2,000 and double the amount of any damage which the United States may have sustained by reason thereof, or (B) an amount equal to 50 per centum of any such payment, compensation, loan, commission, or advance so received, whichever is the greater, together with the costs of suit.

**(b) Recovery of penalties; procedure; finality of withholding of funds; recovery of withheld funds; limitation period**

In order to secure recovery under this section, the President may, as he deems appropriate, (1)

institute suit in the United States district court for any judicial district in which the person alleged to have performed or participated in an act described by this section may reside or may be found, and (2) upon posting by registered mail to such person a notice of claim describing the basis therefor and identifying the funds to be withheld, withhold from funds owed by any agency of the United States Government to such person an amount equal to the refund, damages, liquidated damages, and exemplary damages claimed by the United States under this section. Any such withholding of funds from any person shall constitute a final determination of the rights and liabilities of such person under this section with respect to the amount so withheld, unless within one year of receiving the notice of claim such person brings suit for recovery, which is hereby authorized, against the United States in any United States district court.

**(c) "Person" defined**

For purposes of this section, the term "person" includes any individual, corporation, partnership, association, or other legal entity.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 640A, as added Pub. L. 90-554, pt. III, § 302(f), Oct. 8, 1968, 82 Stat. 965.)

**REFERENCES IN TEXT**

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

**DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS**

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by section 1-102(a)(1), (e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

**§ 2399c. Coordination of policies and programs**

**(a) Development Coordination Committee established**

The President shall establish a system for coordination of United States policies and programs which affect United States interests in the development of low-income countries. To that end, the President shall establish a Development Coordination Committee which shall advise him with respect to coordination of United States policies and programs affecting the development of the developing countries, including programs of bilateral and multilateral development assistance. The Committee shall include Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency, Chairman, and representatives of the Departments of State, Treasury, Commerce, Agriculture, Energy, and Labor, the Executive Office of the President, and other executive departments and agencies, as the President shall designate. The Committee shall advise the President concerning the degree to which bilateral and multilateral development assistance should focus on critical problems in those functional sectors which affect the lives of the majority of people in the developing countries: food production; rural development and nutrition; population planning and health; and

education, public administration, and human resource development.

**(b) Procedures to assure coordination**

The President shall prescribe appropriate procedures to assure coordination among—

(1) the various departments and agencies of the United States Government having representatives in diplomatic missions abroad; and

(2) representatives of the United States Government in each country, under the direction of the Chief of the United States Diplomatic Mission.

The President shall keep the Congress advised of his actions under this subsection.

**(c) Guidance of Secretary of State**

Programs authorized by this chapter shall be undertaken with the foreign policy guidance of the Secretary of State.

**(d) Repealed. Pub. L. 95-424, title V, § 502(d)(1), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 959**

**(e) Temporary assignment of employees**

The head of any of the departments or agencies referred to in subsection (a) of this section may temporarily assign, upon the request of the Chairman, any employee from such department or agency to the staff of the Committee.

**(f) Studies**

To carry out the purposes of subsection (a) of this section, the Committee shall—

(1) prepare studies on various development problems;

(2) devise implementation strategies on developmental problems appropriate to each such department or agency;

(3) monitor and evaluate the results of the development activities of each such department or agency; and

(4) arrange for the exchange of information and studies between such agencies and departments.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 640B, as added Pub. L. 93-189, § 21, Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 725; amended Pub. L. 95-88, title I, § 127, Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 542; Pub. L. 95-424, title V, § 502(d), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 959; Pub. L. 96-53, title I, § 118, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 365; 1979 Reorg. Plan No. 2, § 6(b)(1), eff. Oct. 1, 1979, 44 F.R. 41166, 93 Stat. 1379; Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(1), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.)

AMENDMENTS

1981—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 97-113 struck our subsec. (g) which required annual reports to Congress by the Chairman of the Development Coordination Committee on the activities of the Committee respecting aid to low-income countries. See section 2394(a) of this title.

1979—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 96-53 inserted reference to Department of Energy.

1978—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 95-424, § 502(d)(1), struck out subsec. (d) relating to annual reports to Congress by the President on United States actions affecting the development of less developed countries.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 95-424, § 502(d)(2), substituted “section 2394 of this title, the Chairman of the Committee” for “subsection (d) of this section, the President”.

1977—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 95-88, § 127(a), provided that the Committee advise the President concerning the de-

gree to which bilateral and multilateral development assistance should focus on critical problems in those functional sectors which affect the lives of the majority of people in the developing countries: food production; rural development and nutrition; population planning and health; and education, public administration, and human resource development.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 95-88, § 127(b), substituted “less developed countries” for “low-income countries” in the description of the subject matter of the Presidential reports to Congress, designated existing provisions setting out the subject matter of the reports as cl. (2)(A), and added cls. (1) and (2)(B).

Subsecs. (e) to (g). Pub. L. 95-88, § 127(c), added subsecs. (e) to (g).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1979 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-53 effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 512(a) of Pub. L. 96-53, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency” substituted for “head of the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter” in subsec. (a), pursuant to section 6(b)(1) of Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1979, 44 F.R. 41166, 93 Stat. 1379, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, as provided in Ex. Ord. No. 12163, § 1-101, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, set out as notes under section 2381 of this title, which transferred the functions and authorities vested in the head of such agency under this section to the Director.

DEVELOPMENT COORDINATION COMMITTEE

For establishment, composition, and functions of the Development Coordination Committee required to be established by this section, see section 1-506 of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56676, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

TERMINATION OF ADVISORY COMMITTEES

Advisory committees established after Jan. 5, 1973, to terminate not later than the expiration of the 2-year period beginning on the date of their establishment, unless, in the case of a committee established by the President or an officer of the Federal Government, such committee is renewed by appropriate action prior to the expiration of such 2-year period, or in the case of a committee established by the Congress, its duration is otherwise provided for by law. See section 14 of Pub. L. 92-463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 776, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2394 of this title.

**§ 2399d. Shipping differential**

For the purpose of facilitating implementation of section 1241(b) of title 46, Appendix, funds made available for the purposes of part I of subchapter I of this chapter or for purposes of part IV of subchapter II of this chapter may be used to make grants to recipients to pay all or any portion of such differential as is determined by the Secretary of Commerce to exist between United States and foreign-flag vessel charter or freight rates. Grants made under this section shall be paid with United States-owned foreign currencies wherever feasible.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 640C, as added Pub. L. 93-189, § 21, Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 726; amended



Pub. L. 96-533, title VII, §708, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3159.)

REFERENCES TO PART I DEEMED TO INCLUDE  
SECTION 2293

References to part I of subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include a reference to section 2293 of this title. See section 2293(d)(1) of this title.

AMENDMENTS

1980—Pub. L. 96-533 substituted “part IV of subchapter II of this chapter” for “subchapter IV of this chapter”.

PART III—MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

**§ 2401. Effective date; identification of programs**

This chapter shall take effect on September 4, 1961. Programs under this chapter shall be identified appropriately overseas as “American Aid”.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §641, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

**§ 2402. Saving provisions**

**(a) Determinations, authorizations, regulations, orders, contracts, agreements, etc., under prior law**

Except as may be expressly provided to the contrary in this chapter, all determinations, authorizations, regulations, orders, contracts, agreements, and other actions issued, undertaken, or entered into under authority of any provision of law repealed by section 642(a) and the Foreign Assistance Act of 1969 shall continue in full force and effect until modified by appropriate authority.

**(b) Compliance with similar provisions of prior law as compliance with this chapter**

Wherever provisions of this chapter establish conditions which must be complied with before use may be made of authority contained in, or funds authorized by, this chapter, compliance with, or satisfaction of, substantially similar conditions under Acts listed in section 642(a) and the Foreign Assistance Act of 1969 or Acts repealed by those Acts shall be deemed to constitute compliance with the conditions established by this chapter.

**(c) Continued availability of funds appropriated pursuant to prior law**

Funds made available pursuant to provisions of law repealed by section 642(a)(2) and the Foreign Assistance Act of 1969 shall, unless otherwise authorized or provided by law, remain available for their original purposes in accordance with the provisions of law originally applicable thereto, or in accordance with the provisions of law currently applicable to those purposes.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §643, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460; Pub. L. 87-565, pt. III, §303(a), Aug. 1, 1962, 76

Stat. 263; Pub. L. 91-175, pt. III, §308, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 821.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (b), was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

Section 642(a), referred to in text, means section 642(a) of Pub. L. 87-195, which is set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1969, referred to in subsecs. (a) to (c), is Pub. L. 91-175, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 805, as amended. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1969—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 91-175 inserted “and Foreign Assistance Act of 1969” after “section 642(a),” and “section 642(a)(2)”.

1962—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 87-565 repealed subsec. (d) which provided that nothing in the chapter was to affect the Peace Corps pending enactment of the Peace Corps Act or adjournment of the first session of the 87th Congress, whichever was earlier.

**§ 2403. Definitions**

As used in this chapter—

(a) “Agency of the United States Government” includes any agency, department, board, wholly or partly owned corporation, instrumentality, commission, or establishment of the United States Government.

(b) “Armed Forces” of the United States means the Army, Navy, Air Force, Marine Corps, and Coast Guard.

(c) “Commodity” includes any material, article, supply, goods, or equipment used for the purposes of furnishing nonmilitary assistance.

(d) “Defense article” includes—

(1) any weapon, weapons system, munition, aircraft, vessel, boat or other implement of war;

(2) any property, installation, commodity, material, equipment, supply, or goods used for the purposes of furnishing military assistance;

(3) any machinery, facility, tool, material supply, or other item necessary for the manufacture, production, processing repair, servicing, storage, construction, transportation, operation, or use of any article listed in this subsection; or

(4) any component or part of any article listed in this subsection; but

shall not include merchant vessels or, as defined by the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended (42 U.S.C. 2011), source material (except uranium depleted in the isotope 235 which is incorporated in defense articles solely to take advantage of high density or pyrophoric characteristics unrelated to radioactivity), by-product material, special nuclear material, production facilities, utilization facilities, or atomic weapons or articles involving Restricted Data.

(e) “Defense information” includes any document, writing, sketch, photograph, plan, model, specification, design, prototype, or other recorded or oral information relating to any defense article or defense service, but shall not include Restricted Data as defined by the Atomic

Energy Act of 1954, as amended [42 U.S.C. 2011 et seq.], and data removed from the Restricted Data category under section 142d of that Act [42 U.S.C. 2162(d)].

(f) “Defense service” includes any service, test, inspection, repair, publication, or technical or other assistance or defense information used for the purposes of furnishing military assistance, but does not include military educational and training activities under part V of subchapter II of this chapter.

(g) “Excess defense articles” means the quantity of defense articles (other than construction equipment, including tractors, scrapers, loaders, graders, bulldozers, dump trucks, generators, and compressors) owned by the United States Government, and not procured in anticipation of military assistance or sales requirements, or pursuant to a military assistance or sales order, which is in excess of the Approved Force Acquisition Objective and Approved Force Retention Stock of all Department of Defense Components at the time such articles are dropped from inventory by the supplying agency for delivery to countries or international organizations under this chapter.

(h) “Function” includes any duty, obligation, power, authority, responsibility, right, privilege, discretion, or activity.

(i) Repealed. Pub. L. 93-189, §22(2), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 726.

(j) “Officer or employee” means civilian personnel and members of the Armed Forces of the United States Government.

(k) “Services” include any service, repair, training of personnel, or technical or other assistance or information used for the purposes of furnishing nonmilitary assistance.

(l) “Surplus agricultural commodity” means any agricultural commodity or product thereof, class, kind, type, or other specification thereof, produced in the United States, either publicly or privately owned, which is in excess of domestic requirements, adequate carryover, and anticipated exports for United States dollars, as determined by the Secretary of Agriculture.

(m) “Value” means—

(1) with respect to an excess defense article, the actual value of the article plus the gross cost incurred by the United States Government in repairing, rehabilitating, or modifying the article, except that for purposes of section 2392(d) of this title such actual value shall not be taken into account;

(2) with respect to a nonexcess defense article delivered from inventory to foreign countries or international organizations under this chapter, the acquisition cost to the United States Government, adjusted as appropriate for condition and market value;

(3) with respect to a nonexcess defense article delivered from new procurement to foreign countries or international organizations under this chapter, the contract or production costs of such article;

(4) with respect to a defense service, the cost to the United States Government of such service; and

(5) with respect to military education and training or services provided under part VIII of subchapter II of this chapter, the additional

costs that are incurred by the United States Government in furnishing such assistance.

(n) “Military education and training” includes formal or informal instruction of foreign students in the United States or overseas by officers or employees of the United States, contract technicians, contractors (including instruction at civilian institutions), or by correspondence courses, technical, educational, or information publications and media of all kinds, training aids, orientation, and military advice to foreign military units and forces.

(o) “Agriculture” includes aquaculture and fisheries.

(p) “Farmers” includes fishermen and other persons employed in cultivating and harvesting food resources from salt and fresh waters.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §644, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 461; Pub. L. 87-565, pt. III, §303(b), Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 263; Pub. L. 88-205, pt. III, §303, Dec. 16, 1963, 77 Stat. 389; Pub. L. 89-171, pt. III, §303(b), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 661; Pub. L. 90-137, pt. III, §303(a), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 462; Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 4, §45(b)(5), Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1327; Pub. L. 92-226, pt. III, §304(c)(1), Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 32; Pub. L. 93-189, §22, Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 726; Pub. L. 94-329, title I, §106(b)(6), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 733; Pub. L. 95-424, title I, §103(b), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 944; Pub. L. 96-92, §22, Oct. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 710; Pub. L. 96-533, title I, §115(b)(1), Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3140; Pub. L. 98-151, §101(b)(2), Nov. 14, 1983, 97 Stat. 972; Pub. L. 102-583, §9(b), Nov. 2, 1992, 106 Stat. 4934.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

The Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended, referred to in subsecs. (d) and (e), is act Aug. 30, 1954, ch. 1073, §1, 68 Stat. 921, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 23 (§2011 et seq.) of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2011 of Title 42 and Tables.

#### CODIFICATION

The 1983 amendment by Pub. L. 98-151 is based on section 202(b) of H.R. 2992, Ninety-eighth Congress, 1st Session, as reported May 17, 1983, which was enacted into permanent law by Pub. L. 98-151.

#### AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 102-583 inserted “(other than construction equipment, including tractors, scrapers, loaders, graders, bulldozers, dump trucks, generators, and compressors)” after second reference to “articles”.

1983—Subsec. (m)(5). Pub. L. 98-151 inserted “or services provided under part VIII of subchapter II of this chapter”.

1980—Subsec. (m)(5). Pub. L. 96-533 added par. (5).

1979—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 96-92 defined “defense article” to include uranium depleted in the isotope 235 which is incorporated in defense articles solely to take advantage of high density or pyrophoric characteristics unrelated to radioactivity.

1978—Subsecs. (o), (p). Pub. L. 95-424 added subsecs. (o) and (p).

1976—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 94-329, §106(b)(6)(A), struck out “training” after “inspection, repair”, inserted “but

does not include military educational and training activities under part V of subchapter II", and struck out definition of "Training".

Subsec. (n). Pub. L. 94-329, §106(b)(6)(B), added subsec. (n).

1973—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 93-189, §22(1), substituted "Approved Force Acquisition Objective and Approved Force Retention Stock of all Department of Defense Components" for "mobilization reserve".

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 93-189, §22(2), struck out subsec. (i) which defined "mobilization reserve".

Subsec. (m). Pub. L. 93-189, §22(3), amended subsec. (m) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (m) read as follows: "'Value' means, other than in section 2417 of this title—

"(1) with respect to excess defense articles, the gross cost incurred by the United States Government in repairing, rehabilitating, or modifying such articles;

"(2) with respect to nonexcess defense articles delivered from inventory to countries or international organizations under this chapter, the standard price in effect at the time such articles are dropped from inventory by the supplying agency. Such standard price shall be the same price (including authorized reduced prices) used for transfers or sales of such articles in or between the Armed Forces of the United States Government, or, where such articles are not transferred or sold in or between the Armed Forces of the United States, the gross cost to the United States Government adjusted as appropriate for condition and market value; and

"(3) with respect to nonexcess defense articles delivered from new procurement to countries or international organizations under this chapter, the contract or production costs of such articles.

Military assistance programs and orders shall be based upon the best estimates of stock status and prevailing prices; reimbursements to the supplying agency shall be made on the basis of the stock status and prices determined pursuant to this section. Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this section, the Secretary of Defense may prescribe regulations authorizing reimbursements to the supplying agency based on negotiated prices for aircraft, vessels, plant equipment, and such other major items as he may specify: *Provided*, That such articles are not excess at the time such prices are negotiated: *Provided further*, That such prices are negotiated at the time firm orders are placed with the supplying agency."

1972—Subsec. (m). Pub. L. 92-226 substituted "'Value' means, other than in section 2417 of this title" for "'Value' means".

1968—Subsec. (m). Pub. L. 90-629 struck out "and sales" before "programs" in text following par. (3).

1967—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 90-137, §303(a)(1), excluded production facilities, utilization facilities, and articles involving Restricted Data from definition of "defense articles".

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 90-137, §303(a)(2), struck out "and formerly Restricted Data" before "as defined" and excluded data removed from the Restricted Data category under section 142d of the Atomic Energy Act of 1954 (classified to section 2162(d) of Title 42) from definition of "defense information".

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 90-137, §303(a)(3), excluded the transfer of limited quantities of defense articles for test, evaluation, or standardization purposes from definition of "defense service" and defined "training", incorporating existing references to orientation and training aid.

1965—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 89-171, §303(b)(1), inserted "and not procured in anticipation of military assistance or sales requirements, or pursuant to a military assistance or sales order", and struck out "as grant assistance" after "international organizations".

Subsec. (m). Pub. L. 89-171, §303(b)(2), (3), in par. (2) substituted "Such standard price shall be the same price (including authorized reduced prices)" for "Such price shall be the same standard price", and in unnum-

bered par. after par. (3) substituted "Military Assistance and sales programs" for "Military assistance programs" and struck out "by the military assistance program" after "supplying agency".

1963—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 88-205 inserted "including orientation".

1962—Subsec. (m)(2), (3). Pub. L. 87-565 struck out "as grant assistance" after "international organizations".

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1972 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 92-226 applicable with respect to each fiscal year commencing on or after July 1, 1971, see section 304(c)(3) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2394 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1968 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 90-629 effective on July 1, 1968, see section 41 of Pub. L. 90-629, set out as an Effective Date note under section 2751 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2321c, 2321n, 2349aa-2, 2392, 2794, 2795 of this title.

### § 2404. Unexpended balances

Unexpended balances of funds made available pursuant to this chapter, the Mutual Security Act of 1954, as amended, or the Latin American Development Act, as amended, are hereby authorized to be continued available for the general purposes for which appropriated, and may at any time be consolidated, and, in addition, may be consolidated with appropriations made available for the same general purposes under the authority of this chapter.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §645, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 462; Pub. L. 87-565, pt. III, §303(c), Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 263; Pub. L. 88-205, pt. III, §304, Dec. 16, 1963, 77 Stat. 390; Pub. L. 89-171, pt. III, §303(c), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 661.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

The Mutual Security Act of 1954, referred to in text, is act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, 68 Stat. 832, as amended by acts July 8, 1955, ch. 301, 69 Stat. 283; July 18, 1956, ch. 627, §§2-11, 70 Stat. 555; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, 71 Stat. 355; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. 1, §§101-103, ch. II, §§201-205, ch. III, §301, ch. IV, §401, ch. V, §501, 72 Stat. 261; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, §2, ch. 1, §101, ch. II, §§201-205(a)-(i), (k)-(n), ch. III, §301, ch. IV, §401(a)-(k), (m), 73 Stat. 246; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. I to V, 74 Stat. 134, which was principally classified to chapter 24 (§1750 et seq.) of this title and which was repealed by act July 18, 1956, ch. 627, §8(m), 70 Stat. 559, Pub. L. 85-141, §§2(e), 3, 4(b), 11(d), Aug. 14, 1957, 71 Stat. 356, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. II, §§205(j), ch. IV, 401(1), July 24, 1959, 73 Stat. 250, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. II, §§203(d), 204(k), May 14, 1960, 74 Stat. 138, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §642(a)(2), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460, Pub. L. 94-329, title II, §212(b)(1), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 745, except for sections 1754, 1783, 1796, 1853, 1922, 1928, and 1937 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1754 of this title and Tables.

The Latin American Development Act, as amended, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 86-735, Sept. 8, 1960, 74

Stat. 869, as amended, which enacted sections 1942 to 1945 of this title and amended section 1753a of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1942 of this title and Tables.

## AMENDMENTS

1965—Pub. L. 89-171 substituted “the Latin American Development Act, as amended” for “Public Law 86-735”.

1963—Pub. L. 88-205 included balances of funds made available under Public Law 86-735.

1962—Pub. L. 87-565 inserted “this chapter” after “pursuant to”.

**§ 2405. Separability**

If any provision of this chapter or the application of any provision to any circumstances or persons shall be held invalid, the validity of the remainder of this chapter, and of the applicability of such provision to other circumstances or persons shall not be affected thereby.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 646, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 462.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

**§ 2406. Development programs for dependable fuel supplies**

It is of paramount importance that long-range economic plans take cognizance of the need for a dependable supply of fuels, which is necessary to orderly and stable development and growth, and that dependence not be placed upon sources which are inherently hostile to free countries and the ultimate well-being of economically underdeveloped countries and which might exploit such dependence for ultimate political domination. The agencies of government in the United States are directed to work with other countries in developing plans for basing development programs on the use of the large and stable supply of relatively low cost fuels available in the free world.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 647, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 462.)

## PROHIBITION ON ASSISTANCE FOR NUCLEAR POWERPLANTS FOR FISCAL YEAR 1978

Pub. L. 95-92, § 14, Aug. 4, 1977, 91 Stat. 622, which prohibited any funds made available to carry out this chapter for fiscal year 1978 from being used to finance the construction of, the operation or maintenance of, or the supply of fuel for any nuclear powerplant under an agreement of cooperation between the United States and any other country, was repealed by Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(13), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.

## NUCLEAR POWERPLANTS IN ISRAEL OR EGYPT

Pub. L. 93-559, § 43, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1813, which prohibited any funds authorized under Pub. L. 93-559 from being used to finance the construction of, the operation or maintenance of, or the supply of fuel for any nuclear powerplant in Israel or Egypt, was repealed by Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(8), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.

**§ 2407. Special authorization for use of foreign currencies**

Subject to the provisions of section 1306 of title 31, the President is authorized, as a demonstration of good will on the part of the people of the United States for the Polish and Italian people, to use foreign currencies accruing to the United States Government under this chapter or any other Act, for assistance on such terms and conditions as he may specify, in the repair, rehabilitation, improvement, and maintenance of cemeteries in Italy serving as the burial place of members of the armed forces of Poland who died in combat in Italy during World War II.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 648, as added Pub. L. 88-633, pt. III, § 303, Oct. 7, 1964, 78 Stat. 1014.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

## CODIFICATION

“Section 1306 of title 31” substituted in text for “section 1415 of the Supplemental Appropriation Act, 1953, [31 U.S.C. 724]” on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, § 4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by section 1-102(a)(1), (e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

**§ 2408. Repealed. Pub. L. 95-424, title VI, § 604, Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 961**

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 649, as added Pub. L. 89-171, pt. III, § 303(d), Sept. 6, 1965, 79 Stat. 661, related to aggregate of total amounts authorized to be appropriated under this chapter.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as an Effective Date of 1978 Amendment note under section 2151 of this title.

**§ 2409. Use of United States Armed Forces**

The furnishing of economic, military, or other assistance under this chapter shall not be construed as creating a new commitment or as affecting any existing commitment to use Armed Forces of the United States for the defense of any foreign country.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 650, as added Pub. L. 90-137, pt. III, § 303(b), Nov. 14, 1967, 81 Stat. 462.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

**§ 2410. Repealed. Pub. L. 95-424, title VI, § 604, Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 961**

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 651, as added Pub. L. 90-554, pt. III, § 303, Oct. 8, 1968, 82 Stat. 966, related to sale of supersonic planes to Israel.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as an Effective Date of 1978 Amendment note under section 2151 of this title.

**§ 2410a. Repealed. Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(15), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560**

Section, Pub. L. 91-672, § 7, Jan. 12, 1971, 84 Stat. 2054, restricted sale, grant, loan, or transfer of International Fighter aircraft to any foreign country, or agency thereof, other than South Vietnam.

**§ 2411. Limitation upon exercise of special authorities**

The President shall not exercise any special authority granted to him under section 2318(a), 2348a(c)(2), or 2360(a) of this title unless the President, prior to the date he intends to exercise any such authority, notifies the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate in writing of each such intended exercise, the section of this chapter under which such authority is to be exercised, and the justification for, and the extent of, the exercise of such authority.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 652, as added Pub. L. 91-652, § 8, Jan. 5, 1971, 84 Stat. 1943; amended Pub. L. 92-226, pt. III, § 304(a)(1), Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 28; Pub. L. 96-533, title I, § 117(b), Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3141; Pub. L. 99-83, title I, § 105(b)(2), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 196.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

## AMENDMENTS

1985—Pub. L. 99-83 inserted reference to section 2348a(c)(2) of this title.

1980—Pub. L. 96-533 struck out reference to section 2364(a) of this title.

1972—Pub. L. 92-226 struck out provision which limited exercise of special authority for purpose of providing additional assistance to Cambodia and which required thirty days notice to congressional committee (ten days in emergencies requiring immediate assistance) of intention to exercise such authority.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

FUNDS NOT TO BE USED TO FINANCE INTRODUCTION OF UNITED STATES GROUND COMBAT TROOPS INTO CAMBODIA OR PROVIDE ADVISERS FOR SECURITY OR INTELLIGENCE FORCES IN CAMBODIA; ASSISTANCE TO CAMBODIA NOT TO BE CONSTRUED AS COMMITMENT BY UNITED STATES TO CAMBODIA FOR ITS DEFENSE

Section 7 of Pub. L. 91-652, as amended by Pub. L. 92-226, pt. IV, § 408, Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 35, provided that:

"(a) In line with the expressed intention of the President of the United States, none of the funds authorized or appropriated pursuant to this or any other Act may be used to finance the introduction of United States ground combat troops into Cambodia, or to provide United States advisers to or for military, paramilitary, police, or other security or intelligence forces in Cambodia.

"(b) Military and economic assistance provided by the United States to Cambodia and authorized or appropriated pursuant to this or any other Act shall not be construed as a commitment by the United States to Cambodia for its defense."

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2318 of this title.

**§ 2412. Limitation on foreign assistance appropriations**

**(a) Restrictions on appropriations in absence of or in excess of prior authorizations**

Notwithstanding any provision of law enacted before January 12, 1971, no money appropriated for foreign assistance (including foreign military sales) shall be available for obligation or expenditure—

(1) unless the appropriation thereof has been previously authorized by law; or

(2) in excess of an amount previously prescribed by law.

**(b) Exception**

To the extent that legislation enacted after the making of an appropriation for foreign assistance (including foreign military sales) authorizes the obligation or expenditure thereof, the limitation contained in subsection (a) of this section shall have no effect.

**(c) Specific repeal or modification of section**

The provisions of this section shall not be superseded except by a provision of law enacted after January 12, 1971, which specifically repeals or modifies the provisions of this section.

(Pub. L. 91-672, § 10, Jan. 12, 1971, 84 Stat. 2055.)

## CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as part of Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, which comprises this chapter.

**§ 2413. Changes in allocation of foreign assistance**

**(a) Notification by President to foreign country**

Not later than thirty days after the enactment of any law appropriating funds to carry out any provision of this chapter (other than section 2261 or 2397 of this title) or the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.], the President shall notify the Congress of each foreign country and international organization to which the United States Government intends to provide any portion of the funds under such law and of the amount of funds under that law, by category of assistance, that the United States Government intends to provide to each.

**(b) Application of provisions to continuing appropriations; waiver of provisions**

The provisions of this section shall not apply in the case of any law making continuing appropriations and may not be waived under the provisions of section 2364(a) of this title.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 653, as added Pub. L. 92-226, pt. III, § 304(b), Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 28; amended Pub. L. 93-559, § 21, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1801; Pub. L. 95-384, §§ 10(b)(3), 12(c)(2), Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 735, 737; Pub. L. 99-83, title XII, § 1209(b), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 279.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

The Arms Export Control Act, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 90-629, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1320, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 39 (§2751 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2751 of this title and Tables.

## AMENDMENTS

1985—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99-83, §1209(b)(1), inserted reference to the Arms Export Control Act.

Subsecs. (b), (c). Pub. L. 99-83, §1209(b)(2), (3), redesignated subsec. (c) as (b). Former subsec. (b), relating to report to Congress prior to grant of assistance with excess funds, was struck out.

1978—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 95-384 substituted in provisions preceding par. (1) in two places and in par. (2) “assistance under part IV of subchapter II of this chapter” for “security supporting assistance” and in provisions preceding par. (1) in two places “part VI of subchapter II” for “subchapter IV” and inserted in par. (2) “or assistance under part VI of subchapter II of this chapter” before “, the President includes”.

1974—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 93-559, §21(1), struck out provisions limiting the military grant assistance or security supporting assistance to any foreign country or international organization to an amount not more than 10 percent of funds authorized under any law unless the President determines that it would be in the security interests of the United States to provide excess funds and reports to Congress the identity of the recipient, the amount of excess funds provided, and the justification for additional assistance. See subsec. (b) of this section.

Subsecs. (b), (c). Pub. L. 93-559, §21(2), added subsec. (b) and redesignated former subsec. (b) as (c).

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, in consultation with Director of Office of Management and Budget, by section 1-102(a)(1), (c), (e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

Functions of President under this section, insofar as they relate to part VIII of subchapter I of this chapter (§2291 et seq. of this title) and subchapter II of this chapter (§2301 et seq. of this title) delegated to Secretary of State, to be exercised in consultation with Secretary of Defense (insofar as they relate to functions under this chapter administered by Department of Defense) and Director of Office of Management and Budget, by section 1-201(a)(17), (c) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2291j, 2360, 2394-1 of this title.

**§ 2414. Presidential findings and determinations****(a) Report to Congress**

In any case in which the President is required to make a report to the Congress, or to any committee or officer of either House of Congress, concerning any finding or determination under any provision of this chapter, the Foreign Military

Sales Act [22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.], or the Foreign Assistance and Related Programs Appropriation Act for each fiscal year, that finding or determination shall be reduced to writing and signed by the President.

**(b) Action prohibition prior to execution of report**

No action shall be taken pursuant to any such finding or determination prior to the date on which that finding or determination has been reduced to writing and signed by the President.

**(c) Publication in Federal Register**

Each such finding or determination shall be published in the Federal Register as soon as practicable after it has been reduced to writing and signed by the President. In any case in which the President concludes that such publication would be harmful to the national security of the United States, only a statement that a determination or finding has been made by the President, including the name and section of the Act under which it was made, shall be published.

**(d) Information accessible to Congress prior to transmission of report**

No committee or officer of either House of Congress shall be denied any requested information relating to any finding or determination which the President is required to report to the Congress, or to any committee or officer of either House of Congress, under any provision of this chapter, the Foreign Military Sales Act [22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.], or the Foreign Assistance and Related Programs Appropriation Act for each fiscal year, even though such report has not yet been transmitted to the appropriate committee or officer of either House of Congress.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §654, as added Pub. L. 92-226, pt. III, §304(b), Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 29.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (d), was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

The Foreign Military Sales Act, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (d), is Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 1, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1320, as amended, known as the Arms Export Control Act, on authority of section 201(b) of Pub. L. 94-329, title II, June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 734, and is classified principally to chapter 39 (§2751 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2751 of this title and Tables.

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to heads of agencies having responsibilities for carrying out provisions of this chapter by section 1-601(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56677, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title, except that function under second sentence of subsec. (c) of this section, with respect to publication in Federal Register of any findings or determination reserved to President, provided that any officer to whom there is delegated function of making any finding or determination within purview of subsec. (a) of this section is also authorized to reach conclusion specified in performance of any functions delegated to him, by section 1-701(e)(4) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163 (44 F.R. 56677).

**§ 2414a. Annual report to Congress on voting practices at United Nations**

**(a) In general**

Not later than March 31 of each year, the Secretary of State shall transmit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate a full and complete annual report which assesses for the preceding calendar year, with respect to each foreign country member of the United Nations, the voting practices of the governments of such countries at the United Nations, and which evaluates General Assembly and Security Council actions and the responsiveness of those governments to United States policy on issues of special importance to the United States.

**(b) Information on voting practices in United Nations**

Such report shall include, with respect to voting practices and plenary actions in the United Nations during the preceding calendar year, information to be compiled and supplied by the Permanent Representative of the United States to the United Nations, consisting of—

(1) an analysis and discussion, prepared in consultation with the Secretary of State, of the extent to which member countries supported United States policy objectives at the United Nations;

(2) an analysis and discussion, prepared in consultation with the Secretary of State, of actions taken by the United Nations by consensus;

(3) with respect to plenary votes of the United Nations General Assembly—

(A) a listing of all such votes on issues which directly affected important United States interests and on which the United States lobbied extensively and a brief description of the issues involved in each such vote;

(B) a listing of the votes described in subparagraph (A) which provides a comparison of the vote cast by each member country with the vote cast by the United States;

(C) a country-by-country listing of votes described in subparagraph (A); and

(D) a listing of votes described in subparagraph (A) displayed in terms of United Nations regional caucus groups;

(4) a listing of all plenary votes cast by member countries of the United Nations in the General Assembly which provides a comparison of the votes cast by each member country with the vote cast by the United States;

(5) an analysis and discussion, prepared in consultation with the Secretary of State, of the extent to which other members supported United States policy objectives in the Security Council and a separate listing of all Security Council votes of each member country in comparison with the United States; and

(6) a side-by-side comparison of agreement on important and overall votes for each member country and the United States.

**(c) Format**

Information required pursuant to subsection (b)(3) of this section shall also be submitted, to-

gether with an explanation of the statistical methodology, in a format identical to that contained in chapter II of the Report to Congress on Voting Practices in the United Nations, dated March 14, 1988.

**(d) Statement by Secretary of State**

Each report under subsection (a) of this section shall contain a statement by the Secretary of State discussing the measures which have been taken to inform United States diplomatic missions of United Nations General Assembly and Security Council activities.

(Pub. L. 101-246, title IV, § 406, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 66.)

CODIFICATION

Section is comprised of section 406 of Pub. L. 101-246. Subsec. (e) of section 406 of Pub. L. 101-246 repealed provisions contained in prior appropriation acts which had been formerly set out as this section. See Similar Provisions note below.

Section was enacted as part of the appropriation act cited as the credit to this section, and not as part of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 which comprises this chapter.

SIMILAR PROVISIONS

Similar provisions were contained in the following prior appropriation acts:

Pub. L. 101-167, title V, § 527, Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1223.

Pub. L. 100-461, title V, § 527, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-26; repealed by Pub. L. 101-167, title V, § 527(e)(6), Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1224, and Pub. L. 101-246, title IV, § 406(e)(5), Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 67.

Pub. L. 100-202, § 101(e) [title V, § 528], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-158; repealed by Pub. L. 101-167, title V, § 527(e)(5), Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1224, and Pub. L. 101-246, title IV, § 406(e)(4), Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 67.

Pub. L. 99-500, § 101(f) [title V, § 528], Oct. 18, 1986, 100 Stat. 1783-213, 1783-230, and Pub. L. 99-591, § 101(f) [title V, § 528], Oct. 30, 1986, 100 Stat. 3341-214, 3341-230; repealed by Pub. L. 101-167, title V, § 527(e)(4), Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1224, and Pub. L. 101-246, title IV, § 406(e)(3), Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 67.

Pub. L. 99-190, § 101(i) [title V, § 529], Dec. 19, 1985, 99 Stat. 1291, 1307; repealed by Pub. L. 101-167, title V, § 527(e)(3), Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1224, and Pub. L. 101-246, title IV, § 406(e)(2), Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 67.

Pub. L. 98-473, title I, § 101(1) [title V, § 530], Oct. 12, 1984, 98 Stat. 1884, 1900; repealed by Pub. L. 101-167, title V, § 527(e)(2), Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1224.

Pub. L. 98-151, § 101(b)(1), Nov. 14, 1983, 97 Stat. 967; repealed by Pub. L. 101-167, title V, § 527(e)(1), Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1224, and Pub. L. 101-246, title IV, § 406(e)(1), Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 67.

**§§ 2415, 2416. Repealed. Pub. L. 95-424, title VI, § 604, Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 961**

Section 2415, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 655, as added Pub. L. 92-226, pt. III, § 304(b), Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 29; amended Pub. L. 93-559, § 39(a), Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1810; Pub. L. 94-329, title IV, § 413(a), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 761, related to limitation in amounts to be expended for assistance to Cambodia.

Section 2416, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 656, as added Pub. L. 92-226, pt. III, § 304(b), Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 30; amended Pub. L. 93-559, § 39(b), Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1810; Pub. L. 94-329, title IV, § 413(a), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 761, related to limitation on number of United States personnel in Cambodia.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as an Effective Date of 1978 Amendment note under section 2151 of this title.

CAMBODIAN ASSISTANCE; FUNDS ALLOCATION AND RESTRICTIONS; COMMITMENT FOR DEFENSE

Pub. L. 93-559, §39(c)-(f), Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1810, providing for the allocation of \$100,000,000 for the relief and reconstruction of Cambodia, was repealed by Pub. L. 94-329, title IV, §413(a), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 761.

**§ 2417. Repealed. Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(1), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560**

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §657, as added Pub. L. 95-384, §14, Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 739, required annual Presidential reports for fiscal year ending previous Sept. 30 respecting military assistance, military education and training assistance, foreign military sales, and commercial military sales. See sections 2394 and 2765 of this title.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 2417, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §657, as added Pub. L. 92-226, pt. III, §304(b), Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 30; amended Pub. L. 93-189, §23, Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 726; Pub. L. 94-273, §5(2), Apr. 21, 1976, 90 Stat. 377; Pub. L. 94-329, title II, §216, June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 747, related to an annual report by the President to Congress showing the dollar value of foreign assistance including military sales, education and training, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 95-424, title V, §502(d)(1), Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 959, effective Oct. 1, 1978.

**§ 2418. Repealed. Pub. L. 95-424, title VI, § 604, Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 961**

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §658, as added Pub. L. 92-226, pt. III, §304(b), Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 32, related to certification by the Comptroller General of the release of previously impounded funds prior to the expenditure of funds appropriated to carry out the purposes of this chapter.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as an Effective Date of 1978 Amendment note under section 2151 of this title.

**§ 2419. Repealed. Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(1), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560**

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §659, as added Pub. L. 93-559, §29(a), Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1803, prohibited aid to any country containing a military base constructed, maintained, or used by the United States if access to such base was denied unduly to bona fide media correspondents of the United States by the country in question.

**§ 2420. Police training prohibition**

**(a) Effective date of prohibition**

On and after July 1, 1975, none of the funds made available to carry out this chapter, and none of the local currencies generated under this chapter, shall be used to provide training or advice, or provide any financial support, for police, prisons, or other law enforcement forces for any foreign government or any program of internal intelligence or surveillance on behalf of any foreign government within the United States or abroad.

**(b) Exception; qualification**

Subsection (a) of this section shall not apply—

(1) with respect to assistance rendered under section 3763(c)<sup>1</sup> of title 42, with respect to any authority of the Drug Enforcement Adminis-

tration or the Federal Bureau of Investigation which relates to crimes of the nature which are unlawful under the laws of the United States, or with respect to assistance authorized under section 2291a of this title;

(2) to any contract entered into prior to December 30, 1974, with any person, organization, or agency of the United States Government to provide personnel to conduct, or assist in conducting, any such program;

(3) with respect to assistance, including training, in maritime law enforcement and other maritime skills; or

(4) with respect to assistance provided to police forces in connection with their participation in the regional security system of the Eastern Caribbean states.

Notwithstanding clause (2), subsection (a) of this section shall apply to any renewal or extension of any contract referred to in such paragraph entered into on or after December 30, 1974.

**(c) Country with longstanding democratic tradition, etc.**

Subsection (a) of this section shall not apply with respect to a country which has a longstanding democratic tradition, does not have standing armed forces, and does not engage in a consistent pattern of gross violations of internationally recognized human rights.

**(d) Assistance to Honduras or El Salvador**

Notwithstanding the prohibition contained in subsection (a) of this section assistance may be provided to Honduras or El Salvador for fiscal years 1986 and 1987 if, at least 30 days before providing assistance, the President notifies the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, in accordance with the procedures applicable to reprogramming notifications pursuant to section 2394-1 of this title, that he has determined that the government of the recipient country has made significant progress, during the preceding six months, in eliminating any human rights violations including torture, incommunicado detention, detention of persons solely for the nonviolent expression of their political views, or prolonged detention without trial. Any such notification shall include a full description of the assistance which is proposed to be provided and of the purposes to which it is to be directed.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §660, as added Pub. L. 93-559, §30(a), Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1803; amended Pub. L. 99-83, title I, §127(b), title VII, §711, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 205, 243; Pub. L. 101-513, title V, §594, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2060.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

Section 3763(c) of title 42, referred to in subsec. (b)(1), was in the original section 515(c) of the Omnibus Crime Control and Safe Streets Act of 1968 [title I of Pub. L. 90-351, June 19, 1968, 82 Stat. 207]. Section 515 was omitted in the general revision of title I of Pub. L. 90-351 by Pub. L. 96-157, §2, Dec. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 1167.

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.



## AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 101-513, which directed the amendment of this section by adding par. (4) at “the end of the subsection”, was executed by adding par. (4) after par. (3) in subsec. (b) to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

1985—Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 99-83, §127(b), added par. (3).

Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 99-83, §711, added subsecs. (c) and (d).

## CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

## EXEMPTION OF NARCOTICS-RELATED MILITARY ASSISTANCE FOR SPECIFIC FISCAL YEARS FROM PROHIBITION ON ASSISTANCE FOR LAW ENFORCEMENT AGENCIES

Pub. L. 103-447, title I, §104, Nov. 2, 1994, 108 Stat. 4694, provided that:

“(a) EXEMPTION.—For fiscal year 1995, section 660 of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2420) shall not apply with respect to—

“(1) transfers of excess defense articles under section 517 of that Act (22 U.S.C. 2321k);

“(2) funds made available for the ‘Foreign Military Financing Program’ under section 23 of the Arms Export Control Act (22 U.S.C. 2763) that are used for assistance provided for narcotics-related purposes; or

“(3) international military education and training under chapter 5 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2347 and following) that is provided for narcotics-related purposes.

“(b) NOTIFICATION TO CONGRESS.—At least 15 days before any transfer under subsection (a)(1) or any obligation of funds under subsection (a)(2) or (a)(3), the President shall notify the appropriate congressional committees (as defined in section 481(e) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2291(e))[] in accordance with the procedures applicable to reprogramming notifications under section 634A of that Act (22 U.S.C. 2394) [22 U.S.C. 2394-1].

“(c) COORDINATION WITH INTERNATIONAL NARCOTICS CONTROL ASSISTANCE PROGRAM.—Assistance provided pursuant to this section shall be coordinated with international narcotics control assistance under chapter 8 of part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2291 et seq.)”

Pub. L. 102-583, §7, Nov. 2, 1992, 106 Stat. 4933, provided for exemption of narcotics-related military assistance for fiscal years 1993 and 1994 from prohibition on assistance for law enforcement agencies, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103-447, title I, §103(a), Nov. 2, 1994, 108 Stat. 4693.

## ASSISTANCE TO PUBLIC SECURITY FORCES OF EL SALVADOR; DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Determination of the President of the United States, No. 86-2, Oct. 29, 1985, 50 F.R. 48073, provided:

Memorandum for the Honorable George P. Shultz, the Secretary of State

Pursuant to Section 660(d) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as amended [22 U.S.C. 2420(d)], I hereby determine that the Government of El Salvador has made significant progress, during the six month period preceding this determination, in eliminating any human rights violations including torture, incommunicado detention, detention of persons solely for the non-violent expression of their political views, or prolonged detention without trial.

You are requested to report this determination to the Congress immediately, together with a full description of the assistance to be provided and of the purposes to which it is to be directed. None of the assistance so provided shall be furnished until 30 days after such a report has been made, as required by law.

I hereby delegate to the Secretary of State authority to make such determinations and reports as called for in the future under Section 660(d).

This determination shall be published in the Federal Register.

RONALD REAGAN.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2151q, 2346c, 2349aa-2, 2398 of this title.

## § 2421. Trade and Development Agency

## (a) Purpose

The Trade and Development Agency shall be an agency of the United States under the foreign policy guidance of the Secretary of State. The purpose of the Trade and Development Agency is to promote United States private sector participation in development projects in developing and middle-income countries.

## (b) Authority to provide assistance

## (1) Authority

The Director of the Trade and Development Agency is authorized to work with foreign countries, including those in which the United States development programs have been concluded or those not receiving assistance under subchapter I of this chapter, to carry out the purpose of this section by providing funds for feasibility studies, architectural and engineering design, and other activities related to development projects which provide opportunities for the use of United States exports.

## (2) Use of funds

Funds under this section may be used to provide support for feasibility studies for the planning, development, and management of, and procurement for, bilateral and multilateral development projects, including training activities undertaken in connection with a project, for the purpose of promoting the use of United States goods and services in such projects. Funds under this section may also be used for architectural and engineering design, including—

(A) concept design, which establishes the basic technical and operational criteria for a project, such as architectural drawings for a proposed facility, evaluation of site constraints, procurement requirements, and equipment specifications; and

(B) detail design, which sets forth specific dimensions and criteria for structural, mechanical, electrical, and architectural operations, and identifies other resources required for project operations.

## (3) Information dissemination

(A) The Trade and Development Agency shall disseminate information about its project activities to the private sector.

(B) Other agencies of the United States Government shall cooperate with the Trade and Development Agency in order for the Agency

to provide more effectively informational services to persons in the private sector concerning trade development and export promotion related to development projects.

**(4) Nonapplicability of other provisions**

Any funds used for purposes of this section may be used notwithstanding any other provision of law.

**(c) Director and personnel**

**(1) Director**

There shall be at the head of the Trade and Development Agency a Director who shall be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate.

**(2) Officers and employees**

(A) The Director may appoint such officers and employees of the Trade and Development Agency as the Director considers appropriate.

(B) The officers and employees appointed under this paragraph shall have such functions as the Director may determine.

(C) Of the officers and employees appointed under this paragraph, 2 may be appointed without regard to the provisions of title 5, governing appointments in the competitive service, and may be compensated without regard to the provisions of chapter 51 or subchapter III of chapter 53 of such title.

(D) Under such regulations as the President may prescribe, any individual appointed under subparagraph (C) may be entitled, upon removal (except for cause) from the position to which the appointment was made, to reinstatement to the position occupied by that individual at the time of appointment or to a position of comparable grade and pay.

**(d) Annual report**

The President shall, not later than December 31 of each year, submit to the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate a report on the activities of the Trade and Development Agency in the preceding fiscal year.

**(e) Audits**

**(1) In general**

The Trade and Development Agency shall be subject to the provisions of chapter 35 of title 31, except as otherwise provided in this section.

**(2) Independent audit**

An independent certified public accountant shall perform a financial and compliance audit of the financial statements of the Trade and Development Agency each year, in accordance with generally accepted Government auditing standards for a financial and compliance audit, taking into consideration any standards recommended by the Comptroller General. The independent certified public accountant shall report the results of such audit to the Director of the Trade and Development Agency. The financial statements of the Trade and Development Agency shall be presented in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. These financial statements and the report of

the accountant shall be included in a report which contains, to the extent applicable, the information identified in section 3512 of title 31, and which the Trade and Development Agency shall submit to the Congress not later than 6½ months after the end of the last fiscal year covered by the audit. The Comptroller General may review the audit conducted by the accountant and the report to the Congress in the manner and at such times as the Comptroller General considers necessary.

**(3) Audit by Comptroller General**

In lieu of the financial and compliance audit required by paragraph (2), the Comptroller General shall, if the Comptroller General considers it necessary or upon the request of the Congress, audit the financial statements of the Trade and Development Agency in the manner provided in paragraph (2).

**(4) Availability of information**

All books, accounts, financial records, reports, files, workpapers, and property belonging to or in use by the Trade and Development Agency and the accountant who conducts the audit under paragraph (2), which are necessary for purposes of this subsection, shall be made available to the representatives of the General Accounting Office designated by the Comptroller General.

**(f) Funding**

**(1) Authorization**

(A) There are authorized to be appropriated for purposes of this section, in addition to funds otherwise available for such purposes, \$77,000,000 for fiscal year 1995 and such sums as are necessary for fiscal year 1996.

(B) Amounts appropriated pursuant to the authorization of appropriations under subparagraph (A) are authorized to remain available until expended.

**(2) Funding for technical assistance grants by multilateral development banks**

(A) The Trade and Development Agency should, in fiscal years 1993 and 1994, substantially increase the amount of funds it provides to multilateral development banks for technical assistance grants.

(B) As used in subparagraph (A)—

(i) the term “technical assistance grants” means funding by multilateral development banks of services from the United States in connection with projects and programs supported by such banks, including, but not limited to, engineering, design, and consulting services; and

(ii) the term “multilateral development bank” has the meaning given that term in section 262r(c) of this title.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §661, as added Pub. L. 93-559, §31, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1804; amended Pub. L. 94-161, title III, §316, Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 867; Pub. L. 95-88, title I, §128, Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 543; Pub. L. 95-424, title I, §121, Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 954; Pub. L. 96-53, title I, §119, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 365; Pub. L. 96-533, title III, §311, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3148; Pub. L. 97-113, title III, §312, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1536; Pub. L. 99-83, title IV, §405, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 219; Pub. L.

100-418, title II, § 2204(b)(1), (2), Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1329; Pub. L. 102-549, title II, § 201, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3655; Pub. L. 103-392, title II, § 201, Oct. 22, 1994, 108 Stat. 4099.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The provisions of title 5 governing appointments in the competitive service, referred to in subsec. (c)(2)(C), are classified generally to section 3301 et seq. of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

#### REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§ 2346 et seq.), VI (§ 2348 et seq.), and VIII (§ 2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (f)(1). Pub. L. 103-392 redesignated existing provisions as subpar. (A), substituted “\$77,000,000 for fiscal year 1995 and such sums as are necessary for fiscal year 1996.” for “\$55,000,000 for fiscal year 1993 and \$65,000,000 for fiscal year 1994.”, and added subpar. (B).

1992—Pub. L. 102-549 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section consisted of subssecs. (a) to (d) which authorized a trade and development program to facilitate access to natural resources of interest to the United States and to stimulate reimbursable aid programs, established an agency called the Trade and Development Program to carry out the program, established an advisory board, and authorized appropriations for purposes of section.

1988—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 100-418, § 2204(b)(1), inserted sentence providing for use of funds for project planning, development, management, and procurement for bilateral and multilateral projects, for purpose of promoting use of United States exports in such projects.

Subsecs. (b) to (d). Pub. L. 100-418, § 2204(b)(2), added subssecs. (b) and (c) and redesignated former subsec. (b) as (d).

1985—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 99-83 amended subsec. (b) generally, substituting provisions authorizing appropriations of \$20,000,000 for fiscal years 1986 and 1987, for provisions authorizing appropriations of \$6,907,000 for fiscal years 1982 and 1983.

1981—Pub. L. 97-113, § 312(b), designated existing provisions as subsec. (a), struck out provision for use of \$4,000,000 of funds made available for fiscal year 1981 for purposes of this chapter, and added subsec. (b).

1980—Pub. L. 96-533 substituted authorization for use of \$4,000,000 of available funds for fiscal year 1981 for such authorization for use of \$3,800,000 of available funds for fiscal year 1980 for reimbursable development programs.

1979—Pub. L. 96-53 substituted “\$3,800,000” for “\$3,000,000” and “1980” for “1979”.

1978—Pub. L. 95-424 substituted “\$3,000,000 of the funds made available for the purposes of this chapter for the fiscal year 1979” for “\$2,000,000 of the funds made available for the purposes of this chapter. In the fiscal year 1977 and \$2,000,000 of the funds made available for the purposes of this chapter in the fiscal year 1978.”

1977—Pub. L. 95-88 struck out provisions authorizing the President to use up to \$1,000,000 of the funds made available for the purposes of this chapter in the fiscal year 1975 and \$2,000,000 in the fiscal year 1976, and inserted provisions authorizing the President to use \$2,000,000 of the funds made available for the purposes of this chapter in the fiscal year 1978.

1975—Pub. L. 94-161 increased usable funds in fiscal year 1976 to \$2,000,000 from \$1,000,000 and authorized use of \$2,000,000 in fiscal year 1977.

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Inter-

national Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

Section 202(a), (e) of Pub. L. 102-549 provided that:

“(a) RENAMING OF TRADE AND DEVELOPMENT PROGRAM.—The Trade and Development Program shall, on or after the effective date of this section [Oct. 28, 1992], be known as the Trade and Development Agency.

“(e) REFERENCE IN OTHER LAWS.—Any reference in any law to the Trade and Development Program shall be deemed to be a reference to the Trade and Development Agency.”

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1979 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-53 effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 512(a) of Pub. L. 96-53, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS; ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Functions of President under this section delegated and funds available under this chapter allocated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by sections 1-102(a)(1), (e) and 1-801(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

#### APPOINTMENT OF PRESENT DIRECTOR NOT AFFECTED

Section 202(b) of title II of Pub. L. 102-549 provided that: “The enactment of this title [amending this section and section 5401 of this title, section 5314 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, and sections 635q to 635s of Title 12, Banks and Banking, enacting provisions set out as a note above, and amending provisions set out as a note under section 2151 of this title] shall not affect the appointment of the individual who is the Director of the Trade and Development Program on the effective date of this section [Oct. 28, 1992].”

#### TRADE AND DEVELOPMENT PROGRAM ACTIVITIES FOR POLAND AND HUNGARY

Pub. L. 101-179, title III, § 305, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1314, authorized appropriation of an additional \$6,000,000 for the 3-year period beginning Oct. 1, 1989, to carry out this section, in order to permit expansion of the Trade and Development Program [now Agency] into Poland and Hungary.

#### TRADE AND DEVELOPMENT PROGRAM; REAFFIRMATION OF SUPPORT

Section 2204(a) of Pub. L. 100-418 provided that: “The Congress reaffirms its support for the Trade and Development Program [now Trade and Development Agency], and believes that the Program’s [Agency’s] ability to support high priority development projects in developing countries would be enhanced by an increase in the funds authorized for the Program as well as by a clarification of the Program’s status as a separate component of the International Development Cooperation Agency.”

### § 2421a. Capital projects office within Agency for International Development

#### (a) Establishment of office

The Administrator of AID shall establish a capital projects office to carry out the purposes described in subsection (b) of this section.

**(b) Purposes of office**

The purposes referred to in subsection (a) of this section are—

(1) to develop an AID program that would focus solely on developmentally sound capital projects, taking into consideration development needs of the host country and the export opportunities for the United States; and

(2) to consider specifically opportunities for United States high-technology firms, including small- and medium-sized firms, in supporting capital projects for developing countries and for countries making the transition from nonmarket to market economies.

**(c) Activities of AID**

The Administrator of AID (acting through the capital projects office), in coordination with the appropriate members of the Trade Promotion Coordination Committee—

(1) shall support capital projects in developing countries and in countries making the transition from nonmarket to market economies;

(2) shall periodically review infrastructure needs in developing countries and countries making the transition from nonmarket to market economies and shall explore opportunities for United States firms in the development of new capital projects in these countries, keeping both United States firms and the Congress informed of these reviews;

(3) shall ensure that each capital project for which AID provides funding is developmentally sound, as determined under the criteria developed by the Development Assistance Committee of the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development;

(4) shall coordinate its activities with other AID offices, and work with AID country missions, in developing capital projects that provide opportunities for United States firms consistent with AID's primary mission to help developing countries with traditional development projects;

(5) shall coordinate, where appropriate, funds available to AID for tied-aid purposes; and

(6) shall play a special role in helping to meet the infrastructure needs of countries making the transition from nonmarket to market economies by meeting the challenge of infrastructure assistance provided by foreign governments to those countries, including by undertaking a comprehensive study of the infrastructure needs of the various countries making the transition from nonmarket to market economies—

(A) to identify those sectors in the economies of these countries that are most in need of rebuilding, and

(B) to identify the state of technology in these countries and the opportunity for United States high technology firms to help develop a technological infrastructure in these countries, including an assessment of export opportunities for United States high technology companies.

The results of the study conducted pursuant to paragraph (6) shall be reported to the appropriate congressional committees within 12 months after October 28, 1992.

(Pub. L. 102-549, title III, §302, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3658.)

## CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Aid, Trade, and Competitiveness Act of 1992 and also as part of the Jobs Through Exports Act of 1992, and not as part of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 which comprises this chapter.

## SHORT TITLE OF 1992 AMENDMENT

Section 301 of title III of Pub. L. 102-549 provided that: "This title [enacting this section and sections 2421b to 2421e of this title and provisions set out as notes below] may be cited as the 'Aid, Trade, and Competitiveness Act of 1992'."

## REPORTS TO CONGRESS ON CAPITAL PROJECTS

Section 305 of title III of Pub. L. 102-549 directed President, not later than May 1, 1993, to submit to Congress a report describing the extent to which United States Government resources have been expended specifically to support specified projects in developing countries and countries making the transition from nonmarket to market economies, the extent to which the activities of the United States Government have been coordinated, and the extent to which United States Government capital projects and tied-aid credit programs have affected United States exports.

## REPORT ON FEASIBILITY OF AID CREDIT GUARANTEES TO FINANCE CAPITAL PROJECTS

Section 307 of Pub. L. 102-549 directed President, not later than May 1, 1993, to submit to Committee on Foreign Affairs and Committee on Appropriations of House of Representatives and Committee on Foreign Relations and Committee on Appropriations of Senate a report on feasibility of allowing AID to offer credit guarantees for financing of capital projects.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2421c, 2421e of this title.

**§ 2421b. Capital projects for poverty alleviation and environmental safety and sustainability****(a) Purposes**

The Administrator of AID shall develop a program, in accordance with subsection (b) of this section, that focuses on developmentally sound capital projects for basic infrastructure that will measurably alleviate the worst manifestations of poverty or directly promote environmental safety and sustainability at the community level, taking into consideration development needs of the host country and export opportunities for services and goods from the United States.

**(b) Activities of AID**

In order to carry out subsection (a) of this section, the Administrator of AID shall, working with AID technical support staff, regional bureau staff, and country missions, identify and provide funding for capital projects to alleviate the worst manifestations of poverty or to promote environmental safety and sustainability at the community level in countries receiving assistance under part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.]. Such projects may include basic sanitation systems, basic water supply and treatment, pollution control, and rural infrastructure benefiting poor communities or establishing environmentally sustain-

able patterns of rural development. Such projects should have measurable positive effects on indicators of human and environmental health.

(Pub. L. 102-549, title III, §303, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3659.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (b), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended. Part I of the Act is classified generally to subchapter I (§2151 et seq.) of chapter 32 of this title. For provisions deeming references to subchapter I to include parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of chapter 32, see section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-228, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

#### CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Aid, Trade, and Competitiveness Act of 1992 and also as part of the Jobs Through Exports Act of 1992, and not as part of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 which comprises this chapter.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2421c, 2421d, 2421e of this title.

### § 2421c. Coordination

The President shall use the Trade Promotion Coordination Committee to coordinate activities under sections 2421a to 2421e of this title with other relevant activities of the United States Government.

(Pub. L. 102-549, title III, §304, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3659.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Sections 2421a to 2421e of this title, referred to in text, was in the original “this title” meaning title III of Pub. L. 102-549, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3658, known as the Aid, Trade, and Competitiveness Act of 1992, which enacted sections 2421a to 2421e of this title and provisions set out as notes under section 2421a of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2421a of this title and Tables.

#### CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Aid, Trade, and Competitiveness Act of 1992 and also as part of the Jobs Through Exports Act of 1992, and not as part of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 which comprises this chapter.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2421e of this title.

### § 2421d. Funding for capital projects

#### (a) Funding level

The Congress strongly urges the President to use at least \$650,000,000 for fiscal year 1993 and at least \$700,000,000 for fiscal year 1994 of the total amounts made available for assistance under chapter 4 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2346 et seq.] (relating to the economic support fund), assistance under the Support for East European Democracy (SEED)

Act of 1989 [22 U.S.C. 5401 et seq.], assistance under the Freedom for Russia and Emerging Eurasian Democracies and Open Markets Support Act of 1992, and assistance under the Multilateral Assistance Initiative for the Philippines, for grants for developmentally sound capital projects. Such grants may be combined with financing offered by private financial entities or other entities.

#### (b) Development assistance capital projects

Funds appropriated to carry out chapter 1 or chapter 10 of part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq., 2293 et seq.] (relating to development assistance and the Development Fund for Africa) may not be used for capital projects that do not meet the criteria contained in section 2421b of this title. This subsection does not apply with respect to capital projects for which funds have been obligated or expended before October 28, 1992.

(Pub. L. 102-549, title III, §306, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3660.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (b), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended. Chapter 10 of part I of the Act is classified generally to part X (§2293 et seq.) of subchapter I of chapter 32 of this title. Chapter 4 of part II of the Act is classified generally to part IV (§2346 et seq.) of subchapter II of chapter 32 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

The Support for East European Democracy (SEED) Act of 1989, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 101-179, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1298, which is classified principally to chapter 63 (§5401 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 5401 of this title and Tables.

The Freedom for Russia and Emerging Eurasian Democracies and Open Markets Support Act of 1992, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 102-511, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3320. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 5801 of this title and Tables.

#### CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Aid, Trade, and Competitiveness Act of 1992 and also as part of the Jobs Through Exports Act of 1992, and not as part of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 which comprises this chapter.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2421c, 2421e of this title.

### § 2421e. Definitions

For purposes of sections 2421a to 2421e of this title—

(1) the term “AID” means the Agency for International Development; and

(2) the term “capital project” means a project involving the construction, expansion, alteration of, or the acquisition of equipment for, a physical facility or physical infrastructure, including related engineering design (concept and detail) and other services, the procurement of equipment (including any related services), and feasibility studies or similar engineering and economic services.

(Pub. L. 102-549, title III, §308, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3660.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

Sections 2421a to 2421e of this title, referred to in text, was in the original “this title” meaning title III of Pub. L. 102-549, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3658, known as the Aid, Trade, and Competitiveness Act of 1992, which enacted sections 2421a to 2421e of this title and provisions set out as notes under section 2421a of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2421a of this title and Tables.

## CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Aid, Trade, and Competitiveness Act of 1992 and also as part of the Jobs Through Exports Act of 1992, and not as part of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 which comprises this chapter.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2421c of this title.

**§ 2422. Repealed. Pub. L. 102-88, title VI, § 601, Aug. 14, 1991, 105 Stat. 441**

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 662, as added Pub. L. 93-559, § 32, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1804, and amended Pub. L. 96-450, title IV, § 407(a), Oct. 14, 1980, 94 Stat. 1981, prohibited funding of activities of the Central Intelligence Agency, other than intelligence gathering, without Presidential finding of importance to national security of United States and defined such activities as significant anticipated intelligence activities for purpose of section 413 of Title 50, War and National Defense. See section 414 of Title 50.

**§ 2423. Exchanges of certain materials**

**(a) Agreement for necessary or strategic raw material; definition**

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, whenever the President determines it is in the United States national interest, he shall furnish assistance under this chapter or shall furnish defense articles or services under the Foreign Military Sales Act [22 U.S.C. 2751 et. seq.], pursuant to an agreement with the recipient of such assistance, articles, or services which provides that such recipient may only obtain such assistance, articles, or services in exchange for any necessary or strategic raw material controlled by such recipient. For the purposes of this section, the term “necessary or strategic raw material” includes petroleum, other fossil fuels, metals, minerals, or any other natural substance which the President determines is in short supply in the United States.

**(b) Allocation of raw materials to Federal agencies**

The President shall allocate any necessary or strategic raw material transferred to the United States under this section to any appropriate agency of the United States Government for stockpiling, sale, transfer, disposal, or any other purpose authorized by law.

**(c) Deposits in United States Treasury of funds from disposal of materials**

Funds received from any disposal of materials under subsection (b) of this section shall be deposited as miscellaneous receipts in the United States Treasury.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 663, as added Pub. L. 93-559, § 32, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1805.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

The Foreign Military Sales Act, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 1, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1320, as amended, known as the Arms Export Control Act, on authority of section 201(b) of Pub. L. 94-329, title II, June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 734, and is classified principally to chapter 39 (§ 2751 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2751 of this title and Tables.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 50 section 98c.

**§ 2424. Repealed. Pub. L. 95-88, title I, § 123(c), Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 541**

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 664, as added Pub. L. 93-559, § 33, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1805, authorized the President to waive provisions which prohibited assistance to countries trading with designated countries.

**§ 2425. Repealed. Pub. L. 95-424, title VI, § 604, Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 961**

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 665, as added Pub. L. 94-161, title III, § 317, Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 867, authorized appropriations for the interim period July 1, 1976 through Sept. 30, 1976 of such amounts as were necessary to conduct programs for which funding was authorized for fiscal year 1976 by the International Development and Food Assistance Act of 1975 provided the total amount authorized not exceed one-fourth of the total authorized for fiscal year 1976 for such programs and activities.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as an Effective Date of 1978 Amendment note under section 2151 of this title.

**§ 2426. Discrimination against United States personnel**

**(a) Assignment of personnel on basis of ability and experience**

The President shall not take into account, in assigning officers and employees of the United States to carry out any economic development assistance programs funded under this chapter in any foreign country, the race, religion, national origin, or sex of any such officer or employee. Such assignments shall be made solely on the basis of ability and relevant experience.

**(b) Prohibition on use of funds in country practicing discrimination**

Effective six months after December 20, 1975, or on such earlier date as the President may determine, none of the funds made available under this chapter may be used to provide economic development assistance to any country which objects to the presence of any officer or employee of the United States who is present in such country for the purpose of carrying out any program of economic development assistance authorized by the provisions of this chapter on the basis of the race, religion, national origin, or sex of such officer or employee.

**(c) Rules and regulations**

The Secretary of State shall promulgate such rules and regulations as he may deem necessary to carry out the provisions of this section.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §666, as added Pub. L. 94-161, title III, §318, Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 868.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (b), was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, known as the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, to be exercised in consultation with Secretary of State, with certain exceptions, by section 1-102(a)(1), (e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

### § 2427. Operating expenses

#### (a) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the President, in addition to funds otherwise available for such purposes—

(1) \$387,000,000 for fiscal year 1986 and \$387,000,000 for fiscal year 1987 for necessary operating expenses of the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter, of which \$21,750,000 for the fiscal year 1987 is authorized for the necessary operating expenses of the Office of the Inspector General of the Agency for International Development and the remaining amount for the fiscal year is authorized for other necessary operating expenses of that agency; and

(2) such amounts as may be necessary for increases in salary, pay, retirement, and other employee benefits authorized by law, and for other nondiscretionary costs of such agency.

#### (b) Continuing availability of funds

Amounts appropriated under this section are authorized to remain available until expended.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §667, as added Pub. L. 94-161, title III, §319, Dec. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 868; amended Pub. L. 95-88, title I, §129(a), Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 543; Pub. L. 95-424, title V, §506, Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 960; Pub. L. 96-53, title I, §120, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 365; Pub. L. 96-533, title VII, §709, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3159; Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, §706, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1545; Pub. L. 99-83, title IV, §406, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 219; Pub. L. 99-529, title IV, §402, Oct. 24, 1986, 100 Stat. 3019.)

#### REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-226, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

#### AMENDMENTS

1986—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 99-529 inserted “, of which \$21,750,000 for the fiscal year 1987 is authorized for the necessary operating expenses of the Office of the Inspector General of the Agency for International Development and the remaining amount for the fiscal year is authorized for other necessary operating expenses of that agency”.

1985—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 99-83 amended par. (1) generally, substituting provisions authorizing appropriations of \$387,000,000 for fiscal years 1986 and 1987, for provisions authorizing appropriations of \$335,600,000 for fiscal years 1982 and 1983.

1981—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 97-113 struck out from provision preceding par. (1) “, for the fiscal year 1981” after “for such purposes” and substituted in par. (1) “\$335,600,000 for the fiscal year 1982 and \$335,600,000 for the fiscal year 1983” for “\$293,800,000”.

1980—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 96-533 substituted in provisions preceding par. (1) “1981” for “1980” and in par. (1) “\$293,800,000” for “\$263,000,000”.

1979—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 96-53 substituted in provisions preceding par. (1) “1980” for “1979” and in par. (1) “\$263,000,000” for “\$261,000,000”.

1978—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 95-424 substituted in provisions preceding par. (1) “1979” for “1978” and in par. (1) “\$261,000,000” for “\$220,200,000”.

1977—Pub. L. 95-88 substituted provisions authorizing appropriations for fiscal year 1978 for provisions stating that nothing in this chapter was intended to preclude the Committees on Appropriations from setting a ceiling on operating expenses of the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter or limiting the availability of other sums thereof.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1979 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-53 effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 512(a) of Pub. L. 96-53, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-424 effective Oct. 1, 1978, see section 605 of Pub. L. 95-424, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

#### ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Funds available to President for carrying out this chapter, with specified exceptions, allocated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency by section 1-801(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56678, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2151g of this title.

### § 2428. Repealed. Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(1), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §668, as added Pub. L. 94-329, title IV, §411, June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 760, required annual reports respecting the Republic of Korea's armed forces modernization and self-sufficiency program, the role of the United States in the security of the Republic of Korea, and prospects for a withdrawal of United States forces from the country. See section 2375 of this title.

### § 2428a. Congressional declaration of policy toward Korea; transmittal of report to Speaker of the House and Congressional committees

(a) The Congress declares that—

(1) United States policy toward Korea should continue to be arrived at by joint decision of the President and the Congress;

(2) in any implementation of the President's policy of gradual and phased reduction of United States ground forces from the Republic of Korea, the United States should seek to ac-

comply with such reduction in stages consistent with United States interests in Asia, notably Japan, and with the security interests of the Republic of Korea;

(3) any implementation of this policy should be carried out with a careful regard to the interest of the United States in continuing its close relationship with the people and government of Japan, in fostering democratic practices in the Republic of Korea, and in maintaining stable relations among the countries of East Asia; and

(4) these interests can be served most effectively by a policy which involves consultations by the United States Government, as appropriate, with the governments of the region, particularly those directly involved.

(b)(1) Any implementation of the foregoing policy shall be carried out in regular consultation with the Congress.

(2) Repealed. Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 139(5), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 398.

(Pub. L. 95-105, title V, § 512, Aug. 17, 1977, 91 Stat. 861; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 139(5), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 398.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Year 1978, and not as part of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 which comprises this chapter.

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 103-236 struck out par. (2) which read as follows: “Not later than February 15, 1978, and not later than February 15 of each year thereafter until any such withdrawal is completed, the President shall transmit a report in writing to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the Committees on Foreign Relations, Armed Services, and Intelligence of the Senate assessing the implementation of the foregoing policy.”

#### § 2428b. Special security assistance for modernization of Armed Forces of Korea

##### (a) Transfer authority of President of defense articles and services located in Korea; applicable terms and conditions; reimbursement

(1) The President is authorized until December 31, 1982—

(A) to transfer, without reimbursement, to the Republic of Korea, only in conjunction with the withdrawal of the 2d Infantry Division and support forces from Korea, such United States Government-owned defense articles as he may determine which are located in Korea in the custody of units of the United States Army scheduled to depart from Korea; and

(B) to furnish to the Republic of Korea, without reimbursement, defense services (including technical and operational training) in Korea directly related to the United States Government-owned defense articles transferred to the Republic of Korea under this subsection.

(2) Any transfer under the authority of this section shall be made in accordance with all the terms and conditions of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.] applicable to

the furnishing of defense articles and defense services under chapter 2 of part II of that Act [22 U.S.C. 2311 et seq.], except that no funds heretofore or hereafter appropriated under that Act shall be available to reimburse any agency of the United States Government for any such transfer or related services.

##### (b) Additional transfer authority of President of defense articles located outside of Korea; prerequisites for determinations respecting transfers; report by President to Congress of determinations

In order that transfers of defense articles under subsection (a) of this section will not cause significant adverse impact on the readiness of the Armed Forces of the United States, the President is authorized, in lieu of such transfers, to transfer additional defense articles from the stocks of the Department of Defense, wherever located, to the Republic of Korea to compensate for the military capability of defense articles withdrawn from Korea in any case where he determines that—

(1) the transfer of specific defense articles located in Korea would have a significant adverse impact on the readiness of the United States Armed Forces;

(2) the defense capability provided by those defense articles is needed by the Armed Forces of the Republic of Korea in order to maintain the military balance on the Korean peninsula; and

(3) a comparable defense capability could be provided by less advanced defense articles in the stocks of the Department of Defense which could be transferred without significant adverse impact on the readiness of the United States Armed Forces.

The President shall report to the Congress each determination made under this subsection prior to the transfer of the defense articles described in such determination.

##### (c) Report by President to Congress of types, etc., of transferred defense articles

The President shall transmit to the Congress, together with the presentation materials for security assistance programs proposed for each fiscal year through and including the fiscal year 1983, a report describing the types, quantities, and value of defense articles furnished or intended to be furnished to the Republic of Korea under this section.

##### (d) Repealed. Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(12), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560

##### (e) Congressional policy respecting further troop withdrawals

(1) It is the sense of the Congress that further withdrawal of ground forces of the United States from the Republic of Korea may seriously risk upsetting the military balance in that region and requires full advance consultation with the Congress.

(2) Repealed. Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(12), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.

(Pub. L. 95-384, § 23, Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 743; Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(12), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.)



## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (a)(2), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, which is classified principally to this chapter (§2151 et seq.). Chapter 2 of part II of that Act is classified generally to part II (§2311 et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

## CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the International Security Assistance Act of 1978, and not as part of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 which comprises this chapter.

## AMENDMENTS

1981—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 97-113 struck out subsec. (d) which required Presidential reports to Congress respecting viability of troop withdrawals from Korea.

Subsec. (e)(2). Pub. L. 97-113 struck out par. (2) which required Presidential reports to Congress respecting effect of further troop withdrawals from Korea.

**§§ 2429, 2429a. Repealed. Pub. L. 103-236, title VIII, § 826(b), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 519**

Section 2429, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §669, as added Pub. L. 94-329, title III, §305, June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 755; amended Pub. L. 95-92, §12, Aug. 4, 1977, 91 Stat. 620; Pub. L. 95-384, §§10(b)(4), 12(c)(3), Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 735, 737; Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, §737(b), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1562, related to nuclear enrichment transfers by or to recipients of economic, military or security supporting assistance from the United States. See section 2799aa of this title.

Section 2429a, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §670, as added Pub. L. 95-92, §12, Aug. 4, 1977, 91 Stat. 620; amended Pub. L. 95-384, §§10(b)(4), 12(c)(3), Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 735, 737; Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, §737(c), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1562; Pub. L. 99-83, title XII, §1204(a), (b), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 277, prohibited assistance to countries involved in transfer of nuclear reprocessing equipment, materials, or technology. See section 2799aa-1 of this title.

**TERMINATION OF REPEAL AND REENACTMENT OF SECTIONS**

*For termination of repeal and reenactment of sections by section 851 of Pub. L. 103-236, see Effective and Termination Dates of Repeal note below.*

## EFFECTIVE AND TERMINATION DATES OF REPEAL

Repeal by section 826(b) of Pub. L. 103-236 effective 60 days after Apr. 30, 1994, and ceases to be effective and is repealed on date of enactment of first Foreign Relations Authorization Act enacted after Apr. 30, 1994, and any provision repealed by section 826(b) of Pub. L. 103-236 shall be reenacted, see sections 831 and 851 of Pub. L. 103-236, set out in the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention; Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note under section 3201 of this title.

**§ 2429a-1. Annual report on nuclear transfer activities**

Beginning with the fiscal year 1983 and for each fiscal year thereafter, the President shall prepare and transmit to the Congress, as part of the presentation materials for foreign assistance programs proposed for that fiscal year, a classified report describing the nuclear programs and related activities of any country for which a waiver of section 2799aa or 2799aa-1 of this title is in effect, including an assessment of—

(1) the extent and effectiveness of International Atomic Energy Agency safeguards at that country's nuclear facilities; and

(2) the capability, actions, and intentions of the government of that country with respect to the manufacture or acquisition of a nuclear explosive device.

(Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, §735, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1561; Pub. L. 103-236, title VIII, §826(c), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 519.)

## AMENDMENT OF SECTION

*For termination of amendment by section 851 of Pub. L. 103-236, see Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note below.*

## CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the International Security and Development Cooperation Act of 1981, and not as part of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 which comprises this chapter.

## AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-236 temporarily substituted “section 2799aa or 2799aa-1” for “section 2429 or 2429a”. See Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note below.

**EFFECTIVE AND TERMINATION DATES OF 1994 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by Pub. L. 103-236 effective 60 days after Apr. 30, 1994, and ceases to be effective and is repealed on date of enactment of first Foreign Relations Authorization Act enacted after Apr. 30, 1994, and any provision repealed by that amendment shall be reenacted, see sections 831 and 851 of Pub. L. 103-236, set out in the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention; Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note under section 3201 of this title.

**§ 2429a-2. Enforcement of nonproliferation treaties**

**(a) Policy**

It is the sense of the Congress that the President should instruct the United States Permanent Representative to the United Nations to enhance the role of that institution in the enforcement of nonproliferation treaties through the passage of a United Nations Security Council resolution which would state that, any non-nuclear weapon state that is found by the United Nations Security Council, in consultation with the International Atomic Energy Agency (IAEA), to have terminated, abrogated, or materially violated an IAEA full-scope safeguards agreement would be subjected to international economic sanctions, the scope of which to be determined by the United Nations Security Council.

**(b) Prohibition**

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, no United States assistance under the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.] shall be provided to any non-nuclear weapon state that is found by the President to have terminated, abrogated, or materially violated an IAEA full-scope safeguard agreement or materially violated a bilateral United States nuclear cooperation agreement entered into after March 10, 1978.

**(c) Waiver**

The President may waive the application of subsection (b) of this section if—

(1) the President determines that the termination of such assistance would be seriously

prejudicial to the achievement of United States nonproliferation objectives or otherwise jeopardize the common defense and security; and

(2) the President reports such determination to the Congress at least 15 days in advance of any resumption of assistance to that state.

(Pub. L. 103-236, title V, §530, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 479.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (b), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, which is classified principally to this chapter (§2151 et seq.). For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

#### CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1994 and 1995, and not as part of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 which comprises this chapter.

#### § 2429b. Transferred

#### CODIFICATION

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, §671, as added Pub. L. 95-88, title I, §130, Aug. 3, 1977, 91 Stat. 543, which related to notification of program changes, was transferred to section 2394-1 of this title.

### SUBCHAPTER III-A—ENTERPRISE FOR THE AMERICAS INITIATIVE

#### § 2430. Purpose

The purpose of this subchapter is to encourage and support improvement in the lives of the people of Latin America and the Caribbean through market-oriented reforms and economic growth with interrelated actions to promote debt reduction, investment reforms, community based conservation, and sustainable use of the environment, and child survival and child development. The Facility will support these objectives through administration of debt reduction operations under this subchapter for those countries with democratically elected governments that meet investment reforms and other policy conditions.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. IV, §701, as added Pub. L. 102-549, title VI, §602(a), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3664.)

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 701 of Pub. L. 87-195, pt. IV, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 463, amended section 1651 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 87-565, pt. IV, §401, Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 263, except insofar as section 701 affected section 1651.

#### § 2430a. Definitions

For purposes of this subchapter—

(1) the term “administering body” means the entity provided for in section 2430g(c) of this title;

(2) the term “Americas Framework Agreement” means an Americas Framework Agreement provided for in section 2430g of this title;

(3) the term “Americas Fund” means an Enterprise for the Americas Fund provided for in section 2430f(a) of this title;

(4) the term “appropriate congressional committees” means the Committee on Foreign Affairs and the Committee on Appropriations of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations and the Committee on Appropriations of the Senate;

(5) the term “beneficiary country” means an eligible country with respect to which the authority of section 2430c(a)(1) of this title is exercised;

(6) the term “eligible country” means a country designated by the President in accordance with section 2430b of this title;

(7) the term “Enterprise for the Americas Board” or “Board” means the board established by section 1738i of title 7; and

(8) the term “Facility” means the Enterprise for the Americas Facility established in the Department of the Treasury by section 1738 of title 7.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. IV, §702, as added Pub. L. 102-549, title VI, §602(a), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3664.)

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 702 of Pub. L. 87-195, pt. IV, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 463, amended section 1701 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 87-565, pt. IV, §401, Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 263, except insofar as section 702 affected section 1701.

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### § 2430b. Eligibility for benefits

##### (a) Requirements

To be eligible for benefits from the Facility under this subchapter, a country must be a Latin American or Caribbean country—

(1) whose government is democratically elected;

(2) whose government has not repeatedly provided support for acts of international terrorism;

(3) whose government is not failing to cooperate on international narcotics control matters;

(4) whose government (including its military or other security forces) does not engage in a consistent pattern of gross violations of internationally recognized human rights;

(5) that has in effect, has received approval for, or, as appropriate in exceptional circumstances, is making significant progress toward—

(A) an International Monetary Fund stand-by arrangement, extended Fund arrangement, or an arrangement under the structural adjustment facility or enhanced structural adjustment facility, or in exceptional circumstances, a Fund monitored program or its equivalent, unless the President determines (after consultation with the Enterprise for the Americas Board) that such an arrangement or program (or its equivalent) could reasonably be expected to have significant adverse social or environmental effects; and

(B) as appropriate, structural or sectoral adjustment loans from the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development or the International Development Association, unless the President determines (after consultation with the Enterprise for the Americas Board) that the resulting adjustment requirements could reasonably be expected to have significant adverse social or environmental effects;

(6) has put in place major investment reforms in conjunction with an Inter-American Development Bank loan or otherwise is implementing, or is making significant progress toward, an open investment regime; and

(7) if appropriate, has agreed with its commercial bank lenders on a satisfactory financing program, including, as appropriate, debt or debt service reduction.

**(b) Eligibility determinations**

Consistent with subsection (a) of this section, the President shall determine whether a country is eligible to receive benefits under this subchapter. The President shall notify the appropriate congressional committees of his intention to designate a country as an eligible country at least 15 days in advance of any formal determination.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. IV, §703, as added Pub. L. 102-549, title VI, §602(a), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3664.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 703 of Pub. L. 87-195, pt. IV, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 463, amended section 1613d of this title and enacted provisions set out as a note under section 1613d of this title, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 87-565, pt. IV, §401, Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 263, except insofar as section 703 affected section 1613d.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of the Treasury by section 1 of Ex. Ord. No. 12757, Mar. 19, 1991, 56 F.R. 12107, set out as a note under section 1738 of Title 7, Agriculture.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2430a, 2430g of this title.

**§ 2430c. Reduction of certain debt**

**(a) Authority to reduce debt**

**(1) Authority**

The President may reduce the amount owed to the United States (or any agency of the United States) that is outstanding as of January 1, 1992, as a result of concessional loans made to an eligible country by the United States under subchapter I of this chapter, part IV of subchapter II of this chapter, or predecessor foreign economic assistance legislation.

**(2) Appropriations requirement**

The authority provided by this section may be exercised only in such amounts or to such extent as is provided in advance by appropriations Acts.

**(3) Certain prohibitions inapplicable**

(A) A reduction of debt pursuant to this section shall not be considered assistance for pur-

poses of any provision of law limiting assistance to a country.

(B) The authority of this section may be exercised notwithstanding section 2370(r) of this title or section 321 of the International Development and Food Assistance Act of 1975.

**(b) Implementation of debt reduction**

**(1) In general**

Any debt reduction pursuant to subsection (a) of this section shall be accomplished at the direction of the Facility by the exchange of a new obligation for obligations outstanding as of the date specified in subsection (a)(1) of this section.

**(2) Exchange of obligations**

The Facility shall notify the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter of the agreement with an eligible country to exchange a new obligation for outstanding obligations pursuant to this subsection. At the direction of the Facility, the old obligations shall be canceled and a new debt obligation for the country shall be established, and the agency primarily responsible for administering subchapter I of this chapter shall make an adjustment in its accounts to reflect the debt reduction.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. IV, §704, as added Pub. L. 102-549, title VI, §602(a), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3665.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 321 of the International Development and Food Assistance Act of 1975, referred to in subsec. (a)(3)(B), is section 321 of Pub. L. 94-161, which is set out as a note under section 2220a of this title.

REFERENCES TO SUBCHAPTER I DEEMED TO INCLUDE CERTAIN PARTS OF SUBCHAPTER II

References to subchapter I of this chapter are deemed to include parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter, and references to subchapter II are deemed to exclude such parts. See section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-228, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 704 of Pub. L. 87-195, pt. IV, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 463, amended section 1704 of Title 7, Agriculture, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 87-565, pt. IV, §401, Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 263, except insofar as section 704 affected section 1704.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of the Treasury by section 1 of Ex. Ord. No. 12757, Mar. 19, 1991, 56 F.R. 12107, set out as a note under section 1738 of Title 7, Agriculture.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2430a, 2430d, 2430e of this title.

**§ 2430d. Repayment of principal**

**(a) Currency of payment**

The principal amount of each new obligation issued pursuant to section 2430c(b) of this title shall be repaid in United States dollars.

**(b) Deposit of payments**

Principal repayments of new obligations shall be deposited in the United States Government

account established for principal repayments of the obligations for which those obligations were exchanged.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. IV, §705, as added Pub. L. 102-549, title VI, §602(a), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3666.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 705 of Pub. L. 87-195, pt. IV, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 463, amended section 1964 of this title, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 87-565, pt. IV, §401, Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 263, except insofar as section 705 affected section 1964.

**§ 2430e. Interest on new obligations**

**(a) Rate of interest**

New obligations issued by a beneficiary country pursuant to section 2430c(b) of this title shall bear interest at a concessional rate.

**(b) Currency of payment; deposits**

**(1) Local currency**

If the beneficiary country has entered into an Americas Framework Agreement, interest shall be paid in the local currency of the beneficiary country and deposited in an Americas Fund. Such interest shall be the property of the beneficiary country, until such time as it is disbursed pursuant to section 2430f(d) of this title. Such local currencies shall be used for the purposes specified in the Americas Framework Agreement.

**(2) United States dollars**

If the beneficiary country has not entered into an Americas Framework Agreement, interest shall be paid in United States dollars and deposited in the United States Government account established for interest payments of the obligations for which the new obligations were exchanged.

**(c) Interest already paid**

If a beneficiary country enters into an Americas Framework Agreement subsequent to the date on which interest first became due on the newly issued obligation, any interest already paid on such new obligation shall not be redeposited into the Americas Fund established for that country.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. IV, §706, as added Pub. L. 102-549, title VI, §602(a), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3666.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 706 of Pub. L. 87-195, pt. IV, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 463, enacted section 1945 of this title, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 87-565, pt. IV, §401, Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 263, except insofar as section 706 affected section 1945.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2430f, 2430g of this title.

**§ 2430f. Enterprise for the Americas Funds**

**(a) Establishment**

Each beneficiary country that enters into an Americas Framework Agreement shall be required to establish an Enterprise for the Americas Fund to receive payments in local currency pursuant to section 2430e(b)(1) of this title.

**(b) Deposits**

Local currencies deposited in an Americas Fund shall not be considered assistance for purposes of any provision of law limiting assistance to a country.

**(c) Investment**

Deposits made in an Americas Fund shall be invested until disbursed. Any return on such investment may be retained by the Americas Fund, without deposit in the Treasury of the United States and without further appropriation by the Congress.

**(d) Disbursements**

Funds in an Americas Fund shall be disbursed only pursuant to an Americas Framework Agreement.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. IV, §707, as added Pub. L. 102-549, title VI, §602(a), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3666.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 707 of Pub. L. 87-195, pt. IV, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 464, amended section 1783 of this title, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 87-565, pt. IV, §401, Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 263, except insofar as section 707 affected section 1783.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2430a, 2430e of this title.

**§ 2430g. Americas Framework Agreements**

**(a) Authority**

The Secretary of State is authorized, in consultation with other appropriate Government officials, to enter into an Americas Framework Agreement with any eligible country concerning the operation and use of the Americas Fund for that country. In the negotiation of such Agreements, the Secretary shall consult with the Enterprise for the Americas Board in accordance with section 2430h of this title.

**(b) Contents of Agreements**

An Americas Framework Agreement with an eligible country shall—

(1) require that country to establish an Americas Fund;

(2) require that country to make interest payments under section 2430e(b)(1) of this title into an Americas Fund;

(3) require that country to make prompt disbursements from the Americas Fund to the administering body described in subsection (c) of this section;

(4) when appropriate, seek to maintain the value of the local currency resources of the Americas Fund in terms of United States dollars;

(5) specify, in accordance with subsection (d) of this section, the purposes for which amounts in an Americas Fund may be used; and

(6) contain reasonable provisions for the enforcement of the terms of the agreement.

**(c) Administering body**

**(1) In general**

Funds disbursed from the Americas Fund in each beneficiary country shall be administered

by a body constituted under the laws of that country.

**(2) Composition**

The administering body shall consist of—

(A) one or more individuals appointed by the United States Government,

(B) one or more individuals appointed by the government of the beneficiary country, and

(C) individuals who represent a broad range of—

(i) environmental nongovernmental organizations of the beneficiary country,

(ii) child survival and child development nongovernmental organizations of the beneficiary country,

(iii) local community development nongovernmental organizations of the beneficiary country, and

(iv) scientific or academic organizations or institutions of the beneficiary country.

A majority of the members of the administering body shall be individuals described in subparagraph (C).

**(3) Responsibilities**

The administering body—

(A) shall receive proposals for grant assistance from eligible grant recipients (as determined under subsection (e) of this section) and make grants to eligible grant recipients in accordance with the priorities agreed upon in the Americas Framework Agreement, consistent with subsection (d) of this section;

(B) shall be responsible for the management of the program and oversight of grant activities funded from resources of the Americas Fund;

(C) shall be subject, on an annual basis, to an audit of financial statements conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards by an independent auditor;

(D) shall be required to grant to representatives of the United States General Accounting Office such access to books and records associated with operations of the Americas Fund as the Comptroller General of the United States may request;

(E) shall present an annual program for review each year by the Enterprise for the Americas Board; and

(F) shall submit a report each year on the activities that it undertook during the previous year to the Chair of the Enterprise for the Americas Board and to the government of the beneficiary country.

**(d) Eligible activities**

Grants from an Americas Fund shall be used for—

(1) activities that link the conservation and sustainable use of natural resources with local community development; and

(2) child survival and other child development activities.

**(e) Grant recipients**

Grants made from an Americas Fund shall be made to—

(1) nongovernmental environmental, conservation, child survival and child develop-

ment, development, and indigenous peoples organizations of the beneficiary country;

(2) other appropriate local or regional entities; and

(3) in exceptional circumstances, the government of the beneficiary country.

**(f) Review of larger grants**

Any grant of more than \$100,000 from an Americas Fund shall be subject to veto by the Government of the United States or the government of the beneficiary country.

**(g) Eligibility criteria**

In the event that a country ceases to meet the eligibility requirements set forth in section 2430b(a) of this title, as determined by the President pursuant to section 2430b(b) of this title, then grants from the Americas Fund for that country may only be made to nongovernmental organizations until such time as the President determines that such country meets the eligibility requirements set forth in section 2430b(a) of this title.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. IV, § 708, as added Pub. L. 102-549, title VI, § 602(a), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3667.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 708 of Pub. L. 87-195, pt. IV, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 464, amended sections 1041, 1112, 1136, 1148, and 1157 of this title, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 87-565, pt. IV, § 401, Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 263, except insofar as section 708 affected sections 1041, 1112, 1136, 1148, and 1157.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2430a of this title.

**§ 2430h. Enterprise for the Americas Board**

For purposes of this subchapter, the Enterprise for the Americas Board shall—

(1) advise the Secretary of State on the negotiations of Americas Framework Agreements;

(2) ensure, in consultation with—

(A) the government of the beneficiary country,

(B) nongovernmental organizations of the beneficiary country,

(C) nongovernmental organizations of the region (if appropriate),

(D) environmental, scientific, child survival and child development, and academic leaders of the beneficiary country, and

(E) environmental, scientific, child survival and child development, and academic leaders of the region (as appropriate),

that a suitable administering body is identified for each Americas Fund; and

(3) review the programs, operations, and fiscal audits of each administering body.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. IV, § 709, as added Pub. L. 102-549, title VI, § 602(a), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3668.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 709 of Pub. L. 87-195, pt. IV, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 465, amended section 279a of this title, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 87-565, pt. IV, § 401, Aug. 1,

1962, 76 Stat. 263, except insofar as section 709 affected section 279a.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2430g of this title.

#### § 2430i. Annual reports to Congress

The annual reports submitted pursuant to section 1738m of title 7 shall include a description of each Americas Framework Agreement and a description of any grants that have been extended by administering bodies pursuant to an Americas Framework Agreement.

(Pub. L. 87-195, pt. IV, §710, as added Pub. L. 102-549, title VI, §602(a), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3669.)

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 710 of Pub. L. 87-195, pt. IV, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 465, amended section 276 of this title and enacted provisions set out as a note under section 276 of this title, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 87-565, pt. IV, §401, Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 263, except insofar as section 710 affected section 276.

#### SUBCHAPTER IV—INDOCHINA POSTWAR RECONSTRUCTION

##### SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in section 2399d of this title.

#### § 2431. Repealed. Pub. L. 94-329, title IV, § 413(a), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 761

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. V, §801, as added Pub. L. 93-189, §24, Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 728, authorized the President to furnish assistance for relief and reconstruction of South Vietnam, Cambodia, and Laos.

#### SAVINGS PROVISION

Pub. L. 94-329, title IV, § 413(a), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 761, provided in part that: "All determinations, authorizations, regulations, orders, contracts, agreements, and other actions issued, undertaken, or entered into under authority of any provision of law repealed by this section, [which repealed this section and sections 2432 to 2435 of this title and provisions formerly set out as notes under this section and sections 2415, 2432, and 2433 of this title] shall continue in full force and effect until modified, revoked, or superseded by appropriate authority."

#### PIASTER CONVERSION FOR FORMER AND PRESENT VIETNAMESE EMPLOYEES OF AGENCY FOR INTERNATIONAL DEVELOPMENT

Pub. L. 95-92, §29, Aug. 4, 1977, 91 Stat. 626, provided that: "No provision of law shall be construed to prevent payment of claims of former and present Vietnamese employees of the Agency for International Development, who presently reside in the United States, for the conversion of Vietnamese piasters to dollars because such conversion cannot take place in the territory of the former Republic of Vietnam or because the official with whom such piasters were deposited was not a United States disbursing officer."

#### ADOPTION OF CONTRACTS FUNDED OR APPROVED FOR FUNDING BY AGENCY FOR INTERNATIONAL DEVELOPMENT PRIOR TO JUNE 30, 1975, COVERING TRANSACTIONS INVOLVING FORMER GOVERNMENTS OF VIETNAM OR CAMBODIA OR GOVERNMENT OF LAOS

Pub. L. 94-329, title IV, §413(b), (c), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 761, provided that:

"(b) Subject to the availability of appropriations therefor, the President [now the Director of the United

States International Development Cooperation Agency] is authorized to adopt as a contract of the United States Government, and assume any liabilities arising thereunder (in whole or in part), any contract which had been funded or approved for funding by the Agency for International Development prior to June 30, 1975, for financing with funds made available under the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [this chapter] or the Foreign Assistance Act of 1974 [Pub. L. 93-559, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1795], or any equitable claim based upon a letter of intent issued prior to April 30, 1975, in which the Agency had expressed its intention to finance a transaction subject to the availability of funds, between the former Governments of Vietnam or Cambodia (including any of their agencies) or the Government of Laos (or any of its agencies) and any person and to apply with respect to any such contract the authorities of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [this chapter].

"(c) Funds made available for the purposes of part V of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [sections 2431 to 2435 of this title] and of section 36 of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1974 [section 36 of Pub. L. 93-559, formerly set out as a note under section 2432 of this title] (including amounts certified pursuant to section 1311 of the Supplemental Appropriation Act, 1955 (31 U.S.C. 200), as having been obligated against appropriations heretofore made) are authorized to be appropriated, and thereafter, to remain available until expended, to meet necessary expenses arising from the actions authorized by subsection (b) of this section and such funds are authorized to remain available until expended to meet necessary expenses arising from the termination of assistance programs authorized by such part and such section 36, which expenses may include but need not be limited to the settlement of claims and associated personnel costs."

[Functions of President under section 413(b) of Pub. L. 94-329, set out above, delegated to Director of United States International Development Cooperation Agency, with certain exceptions, by section 1-102(a)(4), (e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.]

#### INDOCHINA POLICY; REPORT TO CONGRESS

Pub. L. 93-559, §34, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1805, set out the Congressional findings and Congressional directives with reference to the negotiations to be conducted to terminate the fighting in South Vietnam and Cambodia and which directed that the President and Secretary of State report to Congress at regular intervals regarding progress towards the cessation of hostilities in Indochina, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 94-329, title IV, § 413(a), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 761.

#### INDOCHINA ECONOMIC AID; GOVERNING PRINCIPLES

Pub. L. 93-559, §35, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1806, set out the governing principles for the giving of economic aid to Indochina, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 94-329, title IV, § 413(a), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 761.

#### SOUTH VIETNAMESE ASSISTANCE; LIMITATIONS; TRANSFER OF FUNDS; NOTIFICATION OF SPEAKER OF HOUSE AND SENATE FOREIGN RELATIONS COMMITTEE; PRESIDENTIAL REPORTS TO CONGRESS; UNITED STATES CIVILIAN OFFICERS AND EMPLOYEES IN SOUTH VIETNAM; LIMITATION; "EXECUTIVE AGENCY OF THE UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT" DEFINED; NONAPPLICABILITY

Pub. L. 93-559, §38, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1808, set limits on the allocation and uses of funds appropriated for the relief and reconstruction of South Vietnam, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 94-329, title IV, § 413(a), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 761.

#### LAOTIAN ASSISTANCE; LIMITATIONS; TRANSFER OF FUNDS; "VALUE" DEFINED; PRESIDENTIAL REPORTS TO CONGRESS

Pub. L. 93-559, §40, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1811, set limits on the uses of funds appropriated for Laotian assist-

ance, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 94-329, title IV, § 413(a), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 761.

INTERNATIONAL COMMISSION OF CONTROL AND SUPERVISION IN VIETNAM; AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS

Pub. L. 93-559, § 48, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1816, provided that:

“(a) There are authorized to be appropriated to the Department of State for fiscal year 1975 not to exceed \$16,526,000 for payments by the United States to help meet expenses of the International Commission of Control and Supervision in Vietnam. Funds appropriated under this subsection are authorized to be made available for reimbursement to the Agency for International Development of amounts expended by the Agency during fiscal year 1975 as interim United States payments to help meet expenses of the International Commission of Control and Supervision.

“(b) There are authorized to be appropriated to the Department of State not to exceed \$11,200,000 for reimbursement to the Agency for International Development of amounts expended by the Agency for International Development to help meet expenses of the International Commission on Control and Supervision in fiscal year 1974.

“(c) Reimbursements received by the Agency for International Development under this section may be credited to applicable appropriations of the Agency and shall be available for the purposes for which such appropriations are authorized to be used during fiscal year 1975.”

**§ 2432. Repealed. Pub. L. 94-329, title IV, § 413(a), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 761**

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. V, § 802, as added Pub. L. 93-189, § 24, Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 728, authorized appropriation of \$504,000,000 for fiscal year 1974 to remain available until expended for relief and reconstruction of South Vietnam, Cambodia, and Laos.

INDOCHINA POSTWAR RECONSTRUCTION; LIMITATIONS; AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS FOR FISCAL YEAR 1975; TRANSFER OF FUNDS

Pub. L. 93-559, § 36, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1807, placed limitations on Indochina postwar reconstruction, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 94-329, title IV, § 413(a), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 761.

**§ 2433. Repealed. Pub. L. 94-329, title IV, § 413(a), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 761**

Section, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. V, § 803, as added Pub. L. 93-189, § 24, Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 728, provided for assistance to South Vietnamese children.

FUNDS AVAILABLE FROM APPROPRIATIONS  
AUTHORIZATION FOR FISCAL YEAR 1975

Pub. L. 93-559, § 37, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1808, made provision for day care centers, orphanages, hostels, school feeding programs, health and welfare programs, and training related thereto for the benefit of Vietnamese children, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 94-329, title IV, § 413(a), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 761.

**§§ 2434, 2435. Repealed. Pub. L. 94-329, title IV, § 413(a), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 761**

Section 2434, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. V, § 804, as added Pub. L. 93-189, § 24, Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 729, made provision for assistance to the Center for Plastic and Reconstructive Surgery in Saigon.

Section 2435, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. V, § 806, as added Pub. L. 93-559, § 41, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1812, directed that provisions covering special programs for relief of South Vietnam, Cambodia, and Laos not apply to programs related to population growth, narcotics control, humanitarian programs by international organizations, and regional programs.

SUBCHAPTER V—MIDDLE EAST  
ASSISTANCE

**§§ 2441 to 2443. Repealed. Pub. L. 95-384, § 12(c)(4), Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 737**

Section 2441, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. VI, § 901, as added Pub. L. 93-559, § 42, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1812; amended Pub. L. 94-329, title IV, § 401, June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 756, related to Congressional statement of policy with regard to Middle East assistance.

Section 2442, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. VI, § 902, as added Pub. L. 93-559, § 42, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1812, related to allocations of funds with regard to Middle East assistance.

Section 2443, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. VI, § 903, as added Pub. L. 93-559, § 42, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1812; amended Pub. L. 94-329, title V, § 502, June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 763; Pub. L. 95-92, § 13, Aug. 4, 1977, 91 Stat. 621, related to a special requirements fund with regard to Middle East assistance.

**CHAPTER 33—MUTUAL EDUCATIONAL AND  
CULTURAL EXCHANGE PROGRAM**

- Sec.  
2451. Congressional statement of purpose.  
2451a. Repealed.  
2452. Authorization of activities.  
    (a) Grants or contracts for educational or cultural exchanges; participation in international fairs and expositions abroad.  
    (b) Other exchanges.  
2452a. Exchange program with countries in transition from totalitarianism to democracy.  
    (a) Authorization of activities; grants or contracts for exchanges with foreign countries.  
    (b) Transfer of funds.  
2453. Agreements with foreign governments and international organizations.  
    (a) Authorization.  
    (b) Creation or continuation of binational or multinational educational and cultural foundations and commissions.  
    (c) United States participation in programs.  
2454. Administration.  
    (a) Delegation of powers; submission of proposal for delegation to Congress.  
    (b) Employment of personnel.  
    (c) Repealed.  
    (d) Extension of benefits  
    (e) Grants; use of funds, counseling service; publicity and promotion abroad.  
    (f) Repealed.  
    (g) Currency exchange for foreign students and teachers coming temporarily to the United States.  
2455. Appropriations.  
    (a) Availability.  
    (b) Acquisition of foreign currencies.  
    (c) Transfer of funds.  
    (d) Reserve and use of certain funds.  
    (e) Reservation and use of sums due or paid by the Republic of Finland.  
    (f) Contribution of funds, property, and services by foreign governments, international organizations, and private individuals, firms, associations, and agencies.  
    (g) Currency exchanges.  
2456. J. William Fulbright Foreign Scholarship Board.  
    (a) Appointment; members; considerations for selection.  
    (b), (c) Omitted.  
    (d) Creation of interagency and other advisory committees; conferences of persons.

- Sec. (e) Availability of appropriations for expenses; transportation expenses and per diem; compensation of members of Board and Committees.
- (f) Secretarial and staff assistance.
2457. Reports by Board.
2458. Authority of President.
- (a) Performance of certain functions without regard to other laws; appropriation credits upon reimbursement for services in connection with exchange activities.
- (b) Periodic reports of activities and expenditures.
- (c) Expenditures in selection, purchase, rental, construction, or other acquisition of exhibits and materials and equipment therefor.
- (d) Utilization of provisions of other laws.
- 2458a. Federal employee participation in cultural exchange programs.
- (a) Grants and other foreign government assistance; family or household expense assistance prohibited; "Federal employee" defined.
- (b) Foreign grants and other assistance not gifts for purposes of section 7342 of title 5.
- (c) Regulations.
2459. Immunity from seizure under judicial process of cultural objects imported for temporary exhibition or display.
- (a) Agreements; Presidential determination; publication in Federal Register.
- (b) Intervention of United States attorney in pending judicial proceedings.
- (c) Enforcement of agreements and obligations of carriers under transportation contracts.
2460. Bureau of Educational and Cultural Affairs.
- (a) Establishment; responsibilities.
- (b) Revocation or diminution of grants.
- (c) Program requirements.
- (d) Administration of programs.
- (e) Office of Citizen Exchanges.
- (f) Coordination of exchange program; reports.
2461. Exchanges between United States and independent states of the former Soviet Union.
- (a) Financing of exchanges with repayments on Lend-Lease debts.
- (b) Limitation on availability of funds.

## CHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This chapter is referred to in sections 1461-1a, 1475d, 1475e, 1475h, 2075, 2275, 2314, 2398, 2452a of this title; title 26 section 1441.

## § 2451. Congressional statement of purpose

The purpose of this chapter is to enable the Government of the United States to increase mutual understanding between the people of the United States and the people of other countries by means of educational and cultural exchange; to strengthen the ties which unite us with other nations by demonstrating the educational and cultural interests, developments, and achievements of the people of the United States and other nations, and the contributions being made toward a peaceful and more fruitful life for people throughout the world; to promote international cooperation for educational and cultural advancement; and thus to assist in the development of friendly, sympathetic, and peace-

ful relations between the United States and the other countries of the world.

(Pub. L. 87-256, §101, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 527.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-256, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 527, as amended, known as the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out below and Tables.

## SHORT TITLE

Section 1 of Pub. L. 87-256 provided: "That this Act [enacting this chapter, amending sections 1101, 1182 and 1258 of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality, sections 117, 871, 872, 1441, 3121, 3306, 3401 and 3402 of Title 26, Internal Revenue Code, and section 410 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare, repealing sections 1431(2), 1434, 1439, 1440, 1446, 1448, 1466 to 1468 and 1991 to 2001 of this title, sections 222 to 224 of Title 20, Education, and section 1641(b)(2) of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense, and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and under sections 117, 1441, 3121 and 3401 of Title 26] may be cited as the 'Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961'."

## TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

Functions vested in President, Secretary of State, Department of State, United States Information Agency or Director thereof under this chapter transferred to Director of International Communication Agency by Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, §7(a)(2), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637, set out under section 1461 of this title, effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by President, except (A) for such functions as are vested by sections 2452(b)(6), (10), 2454(a), (e)(1), (2), (f), (g), 2455(a), (b), (c), 2456(a) and 2458 of this title, (B) for such functions as are vested by sections 2454(b), 2455(d)(2), (f), and 2456(d), (f) of this title, to extent that such functions were assigned to Secretary of Health, Education, and Welfare [now Secretary of Education] immediately prior to effective date of Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, and (C) for such functions as are vested by section 2456(b), (c) of this title to extent that any such function therein is vested in President or Secretary of State, International Communication Agency, and Director thereof, redesignated United States Information Agency, and Director thereof, by section 303 of Pub. L. 97-241, title III, Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title.

## CONTINUATION OF CERTAIN EXECUTIVE ORDERS, AGREEMENTS, DETERMINATIONS, REGULATIONS, CONTRACTS, APPOINTMENTS, AND OTHER ACTIONS

Section 111(b) of Pub. L. 87-256 provided that: "All Executive orders, agreements, determinations, regulations, contracts, appointments, and other actions issued, concluded, or taken under authority of any provisions of law repealed by subsection (a) of this section [repealing sections 1431(2), 1434, 1439, 1440, 1446, 1448, 1466 to 1468, and 1991 to 2001 of this title, sections 222 to 224 of Title 20, Education, and section 1641(b)(2) of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense] shall continue in full force and effect, and shall be applicable to the appropriate provisions of this Act [this chapter] until modified or superseded by appropriate authority."

## REFERENCES IN OTHER LAWS TO REPEALED PROVISIONS

Section 111(c) of Pub. L. 87-256 provided that: "Any reference in any other Act to the provisions of law listed in subsection (a) [repealing sections 1431(2), 1434, 1439, 1440, 1446, 1448, 1466 to 1468, and 1991 to 2001 of this title, sections 222 to 224 of Title 20, Education, and section 1641(b)(2) of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense] shall hereafter be considered to be references to the appropriate provisions of this Act [this chapter]."



## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2458a of this title.

**§ 2451a. Repealed. Pub. L. 91-269, § 7, May 27, 1970, 84 Stat. 272**

Section, Pub. L. 89-685, § 8, Oct. 15, 1966, 80 Stat. 974, required registration of international fair, exposition, celebration or other international exhibition with an international organization for participation by the United States. See section 2801 et seq. of this title.

**§ 2452. Authorization of activities**

**(a) Grants or contracts for educational or cultural exchanges; participation in international fairs and expositions abroad**

The Director of the United States Information Agency is authorized, when he considers that it would strengthen international cooperative relations, to provide, by grant, contract, or otherwise, for—

(1) educational exchanges, (i) by financing studies, research, instruction, and other educational activities—

(A) of or for American citizens and nationals in foreign countries, and

(B) of or for citizens and nationals of foreign countries in American schools and institutions of learning located in or outside the United States;

and (ii) by financing visits and interchanges between the United States and other countries of students, trainees, teachers, instructors, and professors;

(2) cultural exchanges, by financing—

(i) visits and interchanges between the United States and other countries of leaders, experts in fields of specialized knowledge or skill, and other influential or distinguished persons;

(ii) tours in countries abroad by creative and performing artists and athletes from the United States, individually and in groups, representing any field of the arts, sports, or any other form of cultural attainment;

(iii) United States representation in international artistic, dramatic, musical, sports, and other cultural festivals, competitions, meetings, and like exhibitions and assemblies;

(iv) participation by groups and individuals from other countries in nonprofit activities in the United States similar to those described in subparagraphs (ii) and (iii) of this paragraph, when the Director of the United States Information Agency determines that such participation is in the national interest.<sup>1</sup>

(3) United States participation in international fairs and expositions abroad, including trade and industrial fairs and other public or private demonstrations of United States economic accomplishments and cultural attainments.

**(b) Other exchanges**

In furtherance of the purposes of this chapter, the President is further authorized to provide for—

(1) interchanges between the United States and other countries of handicrafts, scientific, technical, and scholarly books, books of literature, periodicals, and Government publications, and the reproduction and translation of such writings, and the preparation, distribution, and interchange of other educational and research materials, including laboratory and technical equipment for education and research;

(2) establishing and operating in the United States and abroad centers for cultural and technical interchanges to promote better relations and understanding between the United States and other nations through cooperative study, training, and research;

(3) assistance in the establishment, expansion, maintenance, and operation of schools and institutions of learning abroad, founded, operated, or sponsored by citizens or nonprofit institutions of the United States, including such schools and institutions serving as demonstration centers for methods and practices employed in the United States;

(4) fostering and supporting American studies in foreign countries through professorships, lectureships, institutes, seminars, and courses in such subjects as American history, government, economics, language and literature, and other subjects related to American civilization and culture, including financing the attendance at such studies by persons from other countries;

(5) promoting and supporting medical, scientific, cultural, and educational research and development;

(6) promoting modern foreign language training and area studies in United States schools, colleges, and universities by supporting visits and study in foreign countries by teachers and prospective teachers in such schools, colleges, and universities for the purpose of improving their skill in languages and their knowledge of the culture of the people of those countries, and by financing visits by teachers from those countries to the United States for the purpose of participating in foreign language training and area studies in United States schools, colleges, and universities;

(7) United States representation at international nongovernmental educational, scientific, and technical meetings;

(8) participation by groups and individuals from other countries in educational, scientific, and technical meetings held under American auspices in or outside the United States;

(9) encouraging independent research into the problems of educational and cultural exchange;

(10) promoting studies, research, instruction, and other educational activities of citizens and nationals of foreign countries in American schools, colleges, and universities located in the United States by making available to citizens and nationals of less developed friendly foreign countries for exchange for currencies of their respective countries (other than excess foreign currencies), at United States embassies, United States dollars in such amounts as may be necessary to enable such foreign

<sup>1</sup> So in original. The period probably should be a semicolon.

citizens or nationals who are coming temporarily to the United States as students, trainees, teachers, instructors, or professors to meet expenses of the kind described in section 2454(e)(1) of this title; and

(11) interchanges and visits between the United States and other countries of scientists, scholars, leaders, and other experts in the fields of environmental science and environmental management.

(Pub. L. 87-256, § 102, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 527; Pub. L. 87-565, pt. IV, § 403, Aug. 1, 1962, 76 Stat. 263; Pub. L. 89-698, title II, § 203(a), Oct. 29, 1966, 80 Stat. 1071; 1977 Reorg. Plan No. 2, § 7(a)(2), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637; Pub. L. 97-241, title III, § 303(b), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291; Pub. L. 98-164, title VII, § 703(a), Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1045.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (b), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-256, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 527, as amended, known as the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2451 of this title and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1983—Subsec. (b)(11). Pub. L. 98-164 added par. (11).  
1966—Subsec. (b)(10). Pub. L. 89-698 added par. (10).  
1962—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 87-565 inserted "abroad" after "expositions".

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1962 AMENDMENT

Section 403 of Pub. L. 87-565 provided in part that: "The amendment made by this section [amending this section] shall not be applicable with respect to any fair or exposition within the United States for which an appropriation has been provided."

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

"Director of the United States Information Agency" substituted for "Director of the International Communication Agency" in subsec. (a), opening par. and par. (2)(iv), pursuant to section 303(b) of Pub. L. 97-241, title III, Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title. Previously, "Director of the International Communication Agency" substituted for "President" in subsec. (a), opening par. and par. (2)(iv), pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, § 7(a)(2), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637, set out under section 1461 of this title, effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by President, which transferred functions vested in President, Secretary of State, Department of State, United States Information Agency, or Director thereof, under this chapter, to Director of International Communication Agency, except (A) for such functions as are vested by subsec. (b)(6), (10) of this section, and sections 2454(a), (e)(1), (2), (f), (g), 2455(a), (b), (c), 2456(a) and 2458 of this title, (B) for such functions as are vested by sections 2454(b), 2455(d)(2), (f), and 2456(d), (f) of this title, to the extent that such functions were assigned to Secretary of Health, Education, and Welfare [now Secretary of Education] immediately prior to effective date of Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, and (C) for such functions as are vested by section 2456(b), (c) of this title to the extent that any such function therein is vested in President or Secretary of State.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of State, Director of United States Information Agency, Secretary of Commerce, and Secretary of Education, see Ex. Ord. No. 11034, June 25, 1962, 27 F.R. 6071, as amended, set out as a note under section 2454 of this title.

#### PERFORMANCE OF FUNCTIONS

Authorization of performance of functions under subsec. (a)(2) and (3) of this section by departments or other executive agencies, see Ex. Ord. No. 11380, § 2, Nov. 8, 1967, 32 F.R. 15627, set out as a note under section 2454 of this title.

#### LIMITATION ON PARTICIPATION IN INTERNATIONAL EXPOSITIONS OR FAIRS

Pub. L. 103-236, title II, § 230, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 424, provided that: "Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the United States Information Agency shall not obligate or expend any funds for a United States Government funded pavilion or other major exhibit at any international exposition or world's fair registered by the Bureau of International Expositions in excess of amounts expressly authorized and appropriated for such purpose."

#### INTERNATIONAL EXCHANGE, SCHOLARSHIP, AND TRAINING PROGRAMS

Pub. L. 103-236, title II, § 235, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 425, authorized establishment and maintenance of American studies collections at appropriate foreign university libraries to further the study of the United States.

Pub. L. 103-236, title II, § 236, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 425, authorized establishment of educational and cultural exchange programs between United States and Tibet.

Pub. L. 103-236, title II, § 237, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 426, established a scholarship program for East Timorese students qualified to study in United States.

Pub. L. 103-236, title II, § 238, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 426, related to establishment and expansion of Cambodian scholarship and exchange programs.

Pub. L. 103-236, title II, § 239, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 426, related to expansion of exchange program allocations to Africa.

Pub. L. 103-236, title II, § 240, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 426, established a program to promote academic exchanges in disciplines relevant to environment and sustainable development.

Pub. L. 103-236, title II, § 241, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 427, authorized scholarships to qualified students from South Pacific nations.

Pub. L. 103-236, title II, § 242, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 427, provided for international exchange programs involving disability related matters.

Pub. L. 102-511, title VIII, § 807, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3353, authorized exchange and training programs between United States and independent states of former Soviet Union.

Pub. L. 102-138, title II, § 210, Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 694, authorized grants to Claude and Mildred Pepper Scholarship Program of the Washington Workshops Foundation to enable foreign visiting students to observe workings and operations of democratic form of government of United States.

Pub. L. 102-138, title II, § 214, Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 696, established Israeli Arab Scholarship Fund within United States Information Agency to finance attendance of Israeli Arabs at United States institutions of higher education.

Pub. L. 102-138, title II, § 225, Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 699, authorized establishment of an endowment fund to support an exchange program among secondary school students from United States and former Warsaw Pact countries, prior to repeal, eff. 6 months after Oct. 24, 1992, by Pub. L. 102-511, title VIII, § 807(c), Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3354.

Pub. L. 102-138, title II, § 226, Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 699, authorized scholarships for foreign and United States students and scholars awarded by Bureau of Educational and Cultural Affairs of United States Information Agency to facilitate study, research, and teaching within United States.

Pub. L. 102-138, title II, § 227, Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 700, as amended by Pub. L. 102-511, title VIII, § 801, Oct.

24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3352, established Muskie Fellowship Program to award scholarships to graduate students from Soviet Union, Lithuania, Latvia, and Estonia for study within United States.

Pub. L. 102-138, title II, §228, Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 702, as amended by Pub. L. 103-236, title II, §233, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 424, authorized assistance to United States graduate and postdoctoral students researching Near and Middle East.

Pub. L. 102-138, title II, §229, Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 702, authorized scholarships for Vietnamese residents qualified to study in United States.

STUDY AND REPORT ON WAYS TO REDUCE THE DRAIN FROM DEVELOPING COUNTRIES OF PROFESSIONAL PERSONS AND SKILLED SPECIALISTS

Pub. L. 89-698, title III, §301, Oct. 29, 1966, 80 Stat. 1072, authorized Secretary of Health, Education, and Welfare to conduct an investigation to determine number of individuals from developing countries who enter United States annually to further their education and fail to return to their homeland and to report to President and to Congress findings and conclusions together with recommendations for any legislation deemed necessary to encourage these individuals to return and use their education and training in service of their homeland.

EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 10716

Ex. Ord. No. 10716, June 18, 1957, 22 F.R. 4345, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 10912, Jan. 19, 1961, 26 F.R. 509, which related to administration of programs under this chapter, was superseded by Ex. Ord. No. 11034, June 25, 1962, 27 F.R. 6071, set out as a note under section 2454 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2453, 2454, 2455, 2456, 2458, 2458a, 2460, 4712 of this title.

**§ 2452a. Exchange program with countries in transition from totalitarianism to democracy**

**(a) Authorization of activities; grants or contracts for exchanges with foreign countries**

Pursuant to the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2451 et seq.] and using the authorities contained therein, the President is authorized, when the President considers that it would strengthen international cooperative relations, to provide, by grant, contract, or otherwise, for exchanges with countries that are in transition from totalitarianism to democracy, which include, but are not limited to Poland, Hungary, Czechoslovakia, Bulgaria, and Romania—

(1) by financing studies, research, instruction, and related activities—

(A) of or for American citizens and nationals in foreign countries; and

(B) of or for citizens and nationals of foreign countries in American private businesses, trade associations, unions, chambers of commerce, and local, State, and Federal Government agencies, located in or outside the United States; and

(2) by financing visits and interchanges between the United States and countries in transition from totalitarianism to democracy.

The program under this section shall be coordinated by the United States Information Agency.

**(b) Transfer of funds**

The President is authorized to transfer to the appropriations account of the United States In-

formation Agency such sums as the President shall determine to be necessary out of the travel accounts of the departments and agencies of the United States, except for the Department of State and the United States Information Agency, as the President shall designate. Such transfers shall be subject to the approval of the Committee on Appropriations of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Appropriations of the Senate. In addition, the President is authorized to accept such gifts or cost-sharing arrangements as may be proffered to sustain the program under this section.

(Pub. L. 101-610, title VI, §602, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3186.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 87-256, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 527, as amended, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2451 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the National and Community Service Act of 1990, and not as part of the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961 which comprises this chapter.

**§ 2453. Agreements with foreign governments and international organizations**

**(a) Authorization**

The Director of the United States Information Agency is authorized to enter into agreements with foreign governments and international organizations, in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter. In such agreements the Director of the United States Information Agency is authorized, when he deems it in the public interest, to seek the agreement of the other governments concerned to cooperate and assist, including making use of funds placed in special accounts pursuant to agreements concluded in accordance with section 1513(b)(6)<sup>1</sup> of this title, or any similar agreements, in providing for the activities authorized in section 2452 of this title, and particularly those authorized in subsection (a)(1) of said section 2452, with respect to the expenses of international transportation of their own citizens and nationals and of activities in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter carried on within the borders of such other nations.

**(b) Creation or continuation of binational or multinational educational and cultural foundations and commissions**

Such agreements may also provide for the creation or continuation of binational or multinational educational and cultural foundations and commissions for the purpose of administering programs in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter.

**(c) United States participation in programs**

In such agreements with international organizations, the Director of the United States Information Agency may provide for equitable United States participation in and support for, including a reasonable share of the cost of, edu-

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

cational and cultural programs to be administered by such organizations.

(Pub. L. 87-256, §103, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 529; 1977 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §7(a)(2), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637; Pub. L. 97-241, title III, §303(b), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (b), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-256, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 527, as amended, known as the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2451 of this title and Tables.

Section 1513(b)(6) of this title, referred to in subsec. (a), was repealed by act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title V, §542(a), 68 Stat. 861.

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

"Director of the United States Information Agency" substituted for "Director of the International Communication Agency" in subsecs. (a) and (c), pursuant to section 303(b) of Pub. L. 97-241, title III, Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title. Previously, "Director of the International Communication Agency" substituted for "President" in subsecs. (a) and (c), pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, §7(a)(2), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637, set out under section 1461 of this title, effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by President, which transferred functions vested in President, Secretary of State, Department of State, United States Information Agency or Director thereof, under this chapter, to Director of International Communication Agency, except (A) for such functions as are vested by sections 2452(b)(6), (10), 2454(a), (e)(1), (2), (f), (g), 2455(a), (b), (c), 2456(a) and 2458 of this title, (B) for such functions as are vested by sections 2454(b), 2455(d)(2), (f), and 2456(d), (f) of this title, to the extent that such functions were assigned to Secretary of Health, Education, and Welfare [now Secretary of Education] immediately prior to effective date of Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, and (C) for such functions as are vested by section 2456(b), (c) of this title to the extent that any such function therein is vested in President or Secretary of State.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of State, see Ex. Ord. No. 11034, June 25, 1962, 27 F.R. 6071, set out as a note under section 2454 of this title.

### § 2454. Administration

#### (a) Delegation of powers; submission of proposal for delegation to Congress

The President may delegate, to such officers of the Government as he determines to be appropriate, any of the powers conferred upon him by this chapter to the extent that he finds such delegation to be in the interest of the purposes expressed in this chapter and the efficient administration of the programs undertaken pursuant to this chapter: *Provided*, That where the President has delegated any of such powers to any officer, before the President implements any proposal for the delegation of any of such powers to another officer, that proposal shall be submitted to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and to the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, and thereafter a period of not less than sixty days shall have elapsed while Congress is in session. In computing such sixty days, there shall be excluded the days on

which either House is not in session because of an adjournment of more than three days.

#### (b) Employment of personnel

The President is authorized to employ such other personnel as he deems necessary to carry out the provisions and purposes of this chapter, and of such personnel not to exceed ten may be compensated without regard to the provisions of chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of title 5, but not in excess of the highest rate of grade 18 of the General Schedule. Such positions shall be in addition to the number authorized by section 5108 of title 5.

#### (c) Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2205(7), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2160

#### (d) Extension of benefits

For the purpose of performing functions under this chapter outside the United States, the Director of the United States Information Agency is authorized to provide that any person employed or assigned by a United States Government agency shall be entitled, except to the extent that the Director of the United States Information Agency may specify otherwise in cases in which the period of employment or assignment exceeds thirty months, to the same benefits as are provided by section 3950 of this title for individuals appointed to the Foreign Service.

#### (e) Grants; use of funds, counseling service; publicity and promotion abroad

(1) In providing for the activities and interchanges authorized by section 2452 of this title, grants may be made to or for individuals, either directly or through foundations or educational or other institutions, which foundations or institutions are public or private nonprofit, and may include funds for tuition and other necessary incidental expenses, for travel expenses from their places of residence and return for themselves, and, whenever it would further the purposes of this chapter, for the dependent members of their immediate families, for health and accident insurance premiums, emergency medical expenses, costs of preparing and transporting to their former homes the remains of any of such persons who may die while away from their homes as participants or dependents of participants in any program under this chapter, and for per diem in lieu of subsistence at rates prescribed by the Director of the United States Information Agency, for all such persons, and for such other expenses as are necessary for the successful accomplishment of the purposes of this chapter.

(2) Funds available for programs under this chapter may be used (i) to provide for orientation courses, language training, or other appropriate services and materials for persons traveling out of the countries of their residence for educational and cultural purposes which further the purposes of this chapter, whether or not they are receiving other financial support from the Government, and (ii) to provide or continue services to increase the effectiveness of such programs following the return of such persons to the countries of their residence.

(3) For the purpose of assisting foreign students in making the best use of their opportuni-

ties while attending colleges and universities in the United States, and assisting such students in directing their talents and initiative into channels which will make them more effective leaders upon return to their native lands, the Director of the United States Information Agency may make suitable arrangements, by contract or otherwise, for the establishment and maintenance at colleges and universities in the United States attended by foreign students of an adequate counseling service.

(4) The Director of the United States Information Agency is authorized to provide for publicity and promotion (including representation) abroad of activities of the type provided for in this chapter, and of similar services and opportunities for interchange not supported by the United States Government.

**(f) Repealed. Pub. L. 96-60, title II, § 203(a)(1), Aug. 15, 1979, 93 Stat. 398**

**(g) Currency exchange for foreign students and teachers coming temporarily to the United States**

(1) For the purpose of performing functions authorized by section 2452(b)(10) of this title, the President is authorized to establish the exchange rates at which all foreign currencies may be acquired through operations under such section, and shall issue regulations binding upon all embassies with respect to the exchange rates to be applicable in each of the respective countries where currency exchanges are authorized under such section.

(2) In performing the functions authorized under section 2452(b)(10) of this title, the President shall make suitable arrangements for protecting the interests of the United States Government in connection with the ownership, use, and disposition of all foreign currencies acquired pursuant to exchanges made under such section.

(3) The total amount of United States dollars acquired by any individual through currency exchanges under the authority of section 2452(b)(10) of this title shall in no event exceed \$3,000 during any academic year.

(4) An individual shall be eligible to exchange foreign currency for United States dollars at United States embassies under section 2452(b)(10) of this title only if he gives satisfactory assurances that (A) he will devote essentially full time to his proposed educational activity in the United States and will maintain good standing in relation to such program; (B) he will return to the country of his citizenship or nationality prior to coming to the United States and will render such public service as is determined acceptable for a period of time determined reasonable and necessary by the government of such country; and (C) he will not apply for an immigrant visa or for permanent residence or for a nonimmigrant visa under the Immigration and Nationality Act [8 U.S.C. 1101 et seq.] after having received any benefits under such section for a period of time equal to the period of study, research, instruction, or other educational activity he performed pursuant to such section.

(5) As used in section 2452(b)(10) of this title, the term "excess foreign currencies" means foreign currencies, which if acquired by the United

States (A) would be in excess of the normal requirements of departments, agencies, and embassies of the United States for such currencies, as determined by the President, and (B) would be available for the use of the United States Government under applicable agreements with the foreign country concerned.

(Pub. L. 87-256, § 104, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 529; Pub. L. 87-793, § 1001(j), Oct. 11, 1962, 76 Stat. 865; Pub. L. 89-698, title II, § 203(b), Oct. 29, 1966, 80 Stat. 1071; 1977 Reorg. Plan No. 2, § 7(a)(2), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637; Pub. L. 95-426, title II, § 204(a), Oct. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 973; Pub. L. 96-60, title II, § 203(a)(1), Aug. 15, 1979, 93 Stat. 398; Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §§ 2205(7), 2206(a)(9), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2160, 2162; Pub. L. 97-241, title III, § 303(b), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291; Pub. L. 103-236, title II, § 231, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 424.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a), (b), (d), (e)(1), (2), (4), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-256, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 527, as amended, known as the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2451 of this title and Tables.

The Immigration and Nationality Act, referred to in subsec. (g)(4), is act June 27, 1952, ch. 477, 66 Stat. 163, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 12 (§ 1101 et seq.) of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1101 of Title 8 and Tables.

CODIFICATION

In subsec. (b), "chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of title 5" and "section 5108 of title 5" substituted for "the Classification Act of 1949, as amended" and "section 505 of the Classification Act of 1949, as amended", respectively, on authority of Pub. L. 89-554, § 7(b), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 631, the first section of which enacted Title 5, Government Organization and Employees. In the original, section 1105 of title 5 read section 505 of the Classification Act of 1949, as amended.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (e)(4). Pub. L. 103-236 inserted before period at end "", and of similar services and opportunities for interchange not supported by the United States Government".

1980—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 96-465, § 2205(7), struck out subsec. (c) which related to employment or assignment of persons in or to Foreign Service Reserve or Foreign Service Staff and alien clerks and employees.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 96-465, § 2206(a)(9), among other changes, substituted reference to section 3950 of this title for reference to section 928 of this title and struck out provisions relating to the applicability of section 807 of this title.

1979—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 96-60 struck out subsec. (f) relating to investigation-of-employees requirement.

1978—Subsec. (e)(1). Pub. L. 95-426 substituted "Director of the International Communication Agency" for "President".

1966—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 89-698 added subsec. (g).

1962—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 87-793 substituted "but not in excess of the highest rate of grade 18 of the General Schedule for "and of these not to exceed five may be compensated at a rate in excess of the highest rate provided for grades of the general schedule established by the Classification Act of 1949, as amended, but not in excess of \$1,000 per annum more than such highest rate".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-465 effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L.

96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1979 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-60 effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 209 of Pub. L. 96-60, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1469 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1962 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 87-793 effective on first day of first pay period which begins on or after Oct. 11, 1962, see section 1008 of Pub. L. 87-793.

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“Director of the United States Information Agency” substituted for “Director of the International Communication Agency” in subsecs. (d) and (e)(1), (3), and (4), pursuant to section 303(b) of Pub. L. 97-241, title III, Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title. Previously, “Director of the International Communication Agency” substituted for “Secretary of State” in subsec. (c) and for “President” in subsecs. (d), (e)(3), (4), pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, §7(a)(2), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637, set out under section 1461 of this title, effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by President, which transferred functions vested in President, Secretary of State, Department of State, United States Information Agency or Director thereof, under this chapter, to Director of International Communication Agency, except (A) for such functions as are vested by subsecs. (a), (e)(1), (2), (f), (g) of this section, sections 2452(b)(6), (10), 2455(a), (b), (c), 2456(a) and 2458 of this title, (B) for such functions as are vested by subsec. (b) of this section and sections 2455(d)(2), (f), and 2456(d), (f) of this title, to the extent that such functions were assigned to Secretary of Health, Education, and Welfare [now Secretary of Education] immediately prior to effective date of Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, and (C) for such functions as are vested by section 2456(b), (c) of this title to the extent that any such function therein is vested in President or Secretary of State.

For transfer of functions and offices (relating to education) of Secretary and Department of Health, Education, and Welfare to Secretary and Department of Education, and termination of certain offices and positions under Ex. Ord. No. 11034, June 25, 1962, as amended, set out under this section, see sections 3441 and 3503 of Title 20, Education.

#### REFERENCES IN OTHER LAWS TO GS-16, 17, OR 18 PAY RATES

References in laws to the rates of pay for GS-16, 17, or 18, or to maximum rates of pay under the General Schedule, to be considered references to rates payable under specified sections of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, see section 529 [title I, §101(c)(1)] of Pub. L. 101-509, set out in a note under section 5376 of Title 5.

#### EX. ORD. NO. 11034. ADMINISTRATION OF PROGRAMS

Ex. Ord. No. 11034, June 25, 1962, 27 F.R. 6071, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 11380, Nov. 8, 1967, 32 F.R. 15627; Ex. Ord. No. 12292, Feb. 23, 1981, 46 F.R. 13967; Ex. Ord. No. 12608, Sept. 9, 1987, 52 F.R. 34617, provided:

By virtue of the authority vested in me by the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961 (Public Law 87-256; 75 Stat. 527; hereinafter referred to as the Act) [this chapter] and as President of the United States, I find that the delegations set forth in this order are in the interest of the purposes expressed in the said Act and the efficient administration of the programs undertaken pursuant to that Act and determine that the delegates specified in the order are appropriate and I hereby order as follows:

SECTION 1. *Department of State.* (a) The following functions conferred upon the President by the Act are hereby delegated to the Secretary of State:

(1) The functions so conferred by Sections 102(a)(1), 102(a)(2)(i), (ii), and (iv), 102(b)(3), (5) and (9), 103,

104(e)(3), and 105(d)(1) and (e) of the Act [sections 2452(a)(1), (2)(i), (ii), (iv), (b)(3), (5), (9), 2453, subsec. (e)(3) of this section, and 2455(d)(1), (e) of this title].

(2) The functions so conferred by Sections 102(a)(2)(iii) and (b)(1), (2), (4), (7) and (8) of the Act (the provisions of Section 2(a) of this order notwithstanding) [section 2452(a)(2)(iii), (b)(1), (2), (4), (7), (8) of this title].

(3) The functions so conferred by Section 102(a)(3) of the Act [section 2452(a)(3) of this title] to the extent that they pertain to liquidation of affairs respecting the Universal and International Exhibition of Brussels, 1958.

(4) The functions so conferred by Sections 104(d) and (e)(4) and 108(c) and (d) of the Act [subsecs. (d), (e)(4) of this section and section 2458(c), (d) of this title] to the extent that they pertain to the functions delegated by the foregoing provisions of this section.

(5) The function so conferred by Section 104(e)(1) of the Act [subsec. (e)(1) of this section] of prescribing rates for per diem in lieu of subsistence; but in carrying out the said function as it relates to functions herein delegated to the Director of the United States Information Agency or the Secretary of Education, the Secretary of State shall consult with them.

(b) The Secretary of State, in collaboration with the Director of the United States Information Agency, the Secretary of Commerce, and the Secretary of Education with respect to the functions delegated by Sections 2, 3, and 4, respectively, of this order, shall prepare and transmit to the President the reports which the President is required to submit to the Congress by Section 108(b) of the Act [section 2458(b) of this title], excluding, however, the reports for which the Director of the United States Information Agency is responsible under section 2(b) of this order.

(c) With respect to the carrying out of functions under Section 102(a)(2)(ii) of the Act [section 2452(a)(2)(ii) of this title] hereinabove delegated to the Secretary of State, the Director of the United States Information Agency shall participate in the planning of cultural and other attractions. Such participation shall include consultation in connection with (1) the selection and scheduling of such attractions, and (2) the designation of the areas where the attractions will be presented.

SEC. 2. *United States Information Agency.* (a) Subject to the provisions of Section 6 of this order, the following functions conferred upon the President by the Act are hereby delegated to the Director of the United States Information Agency:

(1) The functions so conferred by Sections 102(a)(2)(iii) and (b)(1) [section 2452(a)(2)(iii), (b)(1) of this title]; Section 102(b)(2) [section 2452(b)(2) of this title] to the extent that it authorizes the type of centers now supported by the United States Information Agency abroad and designated as binational, community, or student centers; section 102(b)(4) [section 2452(b)(4) of this title] exclusive of professorships and lectureships; and Sections 102(b)(7) and (8) of the Act [section 2452(b)(7), (8) of this title]; all of the foregoing notwithstanding the provisions of Section 1(a)(2) of this order.

(2) The functions so conferred by Section 104(e)(4) of the Act [subsec. (e)(4) of this section] (the provisions of Sections 1(a)(4) and 3(b) of this order notwithstanding).

(3) The functions so conferred by Section 102(a)(3) of the Act [section 2452(a)(3) of this title] to the extent that they are in respect of fairs, expositions, and demonstrations held outside of the United States, but exclusive of the functions delegated by the provisions of Section 1(a)(3) of this order.

(4) The functions so conferred by Sections 104(d) and 108(c) and (d) of the Act [subsec. (d) of this section and section 2458(c), (d) of this title] to the extent that they pertain to the functions delegated by the foregoing provisions of this section.

(b) The Director of the United States Information Agency shall prepare and transmit to the President the reports which the President is required to submit to

the Congress by section 108(b) of the Act [section 2458(b) of this title] to the extent that they are with respect to activities carried out by the United States Information Agency pursuant to section 102(a)(2)(iii) and section 102(a)(3) of the Act [section 2452(a)(2)(iii) and (a)(3) of this title].

(c) The functions so conferred by Section 102(a)(3) of the Act [section 2452(a)(3) of this title] to the extent that they are in respect of fairs, expositions, and demonstrations held outside of the United States, but exclusive of the functions delegated by the provisions of Section 1(a)(3) of this order.

(d) The functions so conferred by Sections 104(d) and 108(c) and (d) of the Act [subsec. (d) of this section and section 2458(c), (d) of this title] to the extent that they pertain to the functions delegated by the foregoing provisions of this section.

SEC. 3. *Department of Commerce.* Subject to the provisions of Section 6 of this order, the following functions conferred upon the President by the Act are hereby delegated to the Secretary of Commerce:

(a) The functions so conferred by Section 102(a)(3) of the Act [section 2452(a)(3) of this title] to the extent that they are in respect of fairs, expositions, and demonstrations held in the United States.

(b) The functions so conferred by Sections 104(e)(4) and 108(c) of the Act [subsec. (e)(4) of this section and section 2458(c) of this title] to the extent that they pertain to the functions delegated by the foregoing provisions of this section.

SEC. 4. *Department of Education.* Subject to the provisions of Section 6 of this order, the functions conferred upon the President by Section 102(b)(6) of the Act [section 2452(b)(6) of this title] are hereby delegated to the Secretary of Education.

SEC. 5. *Certain incidental matters.* (a) In respect of functions hereinabove delegated to them, there is hereby delegated to the Secretary of State, the Director of the United States Information Agency, the Secretary of Commerce, and the Secretary of Education, respectively:

(1) The authority conferred upon the President by Sections 105(d)(2) and (f) and 106(d) and (f) of the Act [sections 2455(d)(2), (f) and 2456(d), (f) of this title].

(2) Subject to the provisions of Section 5(b) and (c) of this order, the authority conferred upon the President by Section 104(b) of the Act [subsec. (b) of this section] to employ personnel.

(b) The employment, by any department or other executive agency under Section 5(a)(2) of this order, of any of the not to exceed ten persons who may be compensated with regard to the Classification Act of 1949 [chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees] under Section 104(b) of the Act [subsec. (b) of this section] shall require prior authorization by the Secretary of State concurred in by the Director of the Office of Management and Budget.

(c) Persons employed or assigned by a department or other executive agency for the purpose of performing functions under the Act outside the United States shall be entitled, except in cases in which the period of employment or assignment exceeds thirty months, to the same benefits as are provided by section 310 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 (22 U.S.C. 3950). In cases in which the period of employment or assignment exceeds thirty months, persons so employed or assigned shall be entitled to such benefits if agreed by the agency in which such benefits may be exercised.

(d) Pursuant to Section 104(f) of the Act [subsec. (f) of this section], Executive Order No. 10450 of April 27, 1953 (18 F.R. 2489) [set out as a note under section 7311 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees] is hereby established as the standards and procedures for the employment or assignment to duties of persons under the Act.

(e) Any officer to whom functions vested in the President by the Act are hereinabove delegated may (1) allocate to any other officer of the executive branch of the Government any funds appropriated or otherwise made

available for the functions so delegated to him as he may deem appropriate for the best carrying out of the functions and (2) make available, for use in connection with any funds so allocated by him, any authority he has under this order.

SEC. 6. *Policy guidance.* In order to assure appropriate coordination of programs, and taking into account the statutory functions of the departments and other executive agencies concerned, the Secretary of State shall exercise primary responsibility for Government-wide leadership and policy guidance with regard to international educational and cultural affairs.

SEC. 7. *Functions reserved to the President.* (a) There are hereby excluded from the functions delegated by the provisions of this order the functions conferred upon the President with respect to (1) the delegation of powers under Section 104(a) of the Act [subsec. (a) of this section], (2) the establishment of standards and procedures for the investigation of personnel under Section 104(f) of the Act [subsec. (f) of this section], (3) the transfer of appropriations under Section 105(c) of the Act [section 2455(c) of this title], (4) the appointment of members of the Board of Foreign Scholarships under Section 106(a)(1) of the Act [section 2456(a)(1) of this title], (5) the appointment of members, the designation of a chairman, and the receipt of recommendations of the United States Advisory Commission on International Educational and Cultural Affairs under Section 106(b) of the Act [section 2456(b) of this title], (6) the waiver of provisions of law or limitations of authority under Section 108(a) of the Act [section 2458(a) of this title], and (7) the submission of annual reports to the Congress under Section 108(b) of the Act [section 2458(b) of this title].

(b) Notwithstanding the delegations made by this order, the President may in his discretion exercise any function comprehended by such delegations.

SEC. 8. *Waivers.* (a) It is hereby determined that the performance by any department or other executive agency of functions authorized by Sections 102(a)(2) and 102(a)(3) of the Act (22 U.S.C. 2452(a)(2) and (3)) without regard to prohibitions and limitations of authority contained in the following-specified provisions of law is in furtherance of the purposes of the Act:

(1) Section 15 of the Administrative Expenses Act of 1946 (c. 744, August 2, 1946; 60 Stat. 810), as amended (5 U.S.C. 55a) [section 3109(b) of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees] (experts and consultants; but the compensation paid individuals in pursuance of this paragraph shall not exceed the rate of \$100.00 per diem).

(2) Section 16(a) of the Administrative Expenses Act of 1946 (c. 744, August 2, 1946; 60 Stat. 810; 5 U.S.C. 78) [section 1343, 1344, and 1349(b) of Title 31, Money and Finance] to the extent that it pertains to hiring automobiles and aircraft.

(3) Section 3648 of the Revised Statutes, as amended (31 U.S.C. 529) [section 3324(a) and (b) of Title 31] (advance of funds).

(4) Section 322 of the Act of June 30, 1932, c. 314, 47 Stat. 412 (40 U.S.C. 278a) (maximum charges).

(5) Section 3709 of the Revised Statutes, as amended (41 U.S.C. 5) (competitive bids).

(6) Section 3710 of the Revised Statutes (41 U.S.C. 8) (opening of bids).

(7) Section 2 of the Act of March 3, 1933, c. 212, 47 Stat. 1520 (41 U.S.C. 10a) (Buy American Act).

(8) Section 3735 of the Revised Statutes (41 U.S.C. 13) (contracts limited to one year).

(9) Sections 302-305 of the Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949 (June 30, 1949, c. 288, 63 Stat. 393 et seq.), as amended (41 U.S.C. 252-255) (competitive bids; negotiated contracts; advances).

(10) Section 87 of the Act of January 12, 1895, c. 23, 28 Stat. 622, and the second proviso of Section 11 of the Act of March 1, 1919, c. 86, 40 Stat. 1270, as amended (44 U.S.C. 111) [section 501 of Title 44, Public Printing and Documents] to the extent that they pertain to printing by the Government Printing Office.

(11) Section 1 of the Act of June 20, 1978, c. 359, 20 Stat. 216, as amended (44 U.S.C. 322) [section 3703 of Title 44] (advertising).

(12) Section 3828 of the Revised Statutes (44 U.S.C. 324) [section 3702 of Title 44] (advertising).

(13) Section 901(a) of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936 (June 29, 1936, c. 858, 49 Stat. 2015, as amended; 46 U.S.C. 1241(a)) (official travel overseas of United States officers and employees, and transportation of their personal effects, on ships registered under the laws of the United States).

(14) Any provision of law or limitation of authority to the extent that such provision or limitation would limit or prohibit construction of buildings by the United States on property not owned by it.

(15) Any provision of law or limitation of authority to the extent that such provision or limitation would limit or prohibit (i) receipt of admission fees or payments under contracts through advances or otherwise, for concessions, services, space, or other consideration, and the credit of such receipts to the applicable appropriation, and (ii) rental or lease for periods not exceeding ten years of buildings and grounds.

(b) It is directed (1) that all waivers of statutes and limitations of authority effected by the foregoing provisions of this section shall be utilized in a prudent manner and as sparingly as may be practical, and (2) that suitable steps shall be taken by the administrative agencies concerned to insure that result, including, as may be appropriate, the imposition of administrative limitations in lieu of waived statutory requirements and limitations of authority.

SEC. 9. *Definition.* As used in this order, the word "function" or "functions" includes any duty, obligation, power, authority, responsibility, right, privilege, discretion, or activity.

SEC. 10. *References to orders and acts.* Except as may for any reason be inappropriate:

(a) References in this order to the Act or any provision of the Act shall be deemed to include references thereto as amended from time to time.

(b) References in this order to any prior Executive order not superseded by this order shall be deemed to include references thereto as amended from time to time.

(c) References in this order to this order shall be deemed to include references thereto as amended from time to time.

SEC. 11. *Prior directives and actions.* (a) This order supersedes Executive Order No. 10716 of June 17, 1957, and Executive Order No. 10912 of January 18, 1961. Except to the extent that they may be inconsistent with law or with this order, other directives, regulations, and actions relating to the functions delegated by this order and in force immediately prior to the issuance of this order shall remain in effect until amended, modified, or revoked by appropriate authority.

(b) This order shall neither limit nor be limited by Executive Order No. 11014 of April 17, 1962 [formerly set out under this section].

(c) To the extent not heretofore superseded, there are hereby superseded the provisions of the letters of the President to the Director of the United States Information Agency dated August 16, 1955, and August 21, 1956 (22 F.R. 101-103).

SEC. 12. *Effective date.* The provisions of this order shall be effective immediately.

EX. ORD. NO. 11380. AMENDING PRIOR EXECUTIVE ORDERS RELATING TO MUTUAL EDUCATIONAL AND CULTURAL EXCHANGE AND TO ALLOWANCES AND BENEFITS FOR GOVERNMENT PERSONNEL ON OVERSEAS DUTY

Ex. Ord. No. 11380, Nov. 8, 1967, 32 F.R. 15627, provided: By virtue of the authority vested in me by the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961 (75 Stat. 527; 22 U.S.C. 2451 et seq.) and section 301 of title 3 of the United States Code, and as President of the United States, it is ordered as follows:

PART I—MUTUAL EDUCATIONAL AND CULTURAL EXCHANGE

SECTION 101. Executive Order No. 11034 of June 25, 1962 [set out as a note above], is hereby amended as follows:

(1) By changing the period at the end of section 1(b) to a comma and by inserting after that comma the following: "excluding, however, the reports for which the Director of the United States Information Agency is responsible under section 2(b) of this order."

(2) By substituting for the paragraph designations (a), (b), (c), and (d) in section 2 new paragraph designations (1), (2), (3), and (4), respectively; by inserting the subsection designation (a) after the catchline of section 2; and by adding a new subsection (b) of section 2, reading as follows:

(b) The Director of the United States Information Agency shall prepare and transmit to the President the reports which the President is required to submit to the Congress by section 108(b) of the Act [section 2458(b) of this title] to the extent that they are with respect to activities carried out by the United States Information Agency pursuant to section 102(a)(2)(iii) and section 102(a)(3) of the Act [section 2452(a)(2)(iii) and (a)(3) of this title].

(3) By adding a new paragraph at the end of section 8(a), reading as follows:

"(15) Any provision of law or limitation of authority to the extent that such provision or limitation would limit or prohibit (i) receipt of admission fees or payments under contracts through advances or otherwise, for concessions, services, space, or other consideration, and the credit of such receipts to the applicable appropriation, and (ii) rental or lease for periods not exceeding ten years of buildings and grounds."

(4) By adding a new paragraph at the end of section 10, reading as follows:

"(c) References in this order to this order shall be deemed to include references thereto as amended from time to time."

SEC. 2. It is hereby determined that the performance by any department or other executive agency of functions authorized by sections 102(a)(2) and 102(a)(3) of the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2452(a)(2) and (3)) without regard to the provisions and limitations referred to in section (8)(a)(15) of Executive Order No. 11034 of June 25, 1962 (to the extent set forth in the latter section) is in furtherance of the purposes of that Act.

PART II—APPROVAL OF CERTAIN REGULATIONS RELATING TO LIVING QUARTERS

SEC. 201. Executive Order No. 10903 of January 9, 1961, as amended [set out as a note under section 5921 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees], is hereby further amended by inserting at the end of section 1 thereof a new paragraph (g), reading as follows:

"(g) The authority vested in the President by section 5912 of title 5 of the United States Code to approve regulations prescribed by heads of agencies (under which employees who are citizens of the United States permanently stationed in foreign countries may be furnished, without cost to them, living quarters, including heat, fuel, and light, in government-owned or rented buildings)."

LYNDON B. JOHNSON.

EX. ORD. NO. 11770. DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS RESPECTING INTERNATIONAL SYMPOSIUM ON GEOTHERMAL ENERGY—1975

Ex. Ord. No. 11770, Feb. 21, 1974, 39 F.R. 7127, provided: By virtue of the authority vested in me by section 104 of the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2454; hereinafter referred to as the act), and section 301 of Title 3 of the United States Code, and as President of the United States, it is hereby ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. The Secretary of the Interior is authorized, with respect to the International Symposium on Geothermal Energy to be held in San Francisco, California, in May 1975, to perform the functions conferred by section 102(b)(5), (7), and (8) of the act [section 2452(b)(5), (7) and (8) of this title].

SEC. 2. I find that the delegation made by section 1 of this order is in the interest of the purposes expressed in



the act and the efficient administration of the International Symposium on Geothermal Energy.

SEC. 3. The delegation made by this order shall become effective upon the expiration of sixty days while the Congress is in session. In computing that sixty days, there shall be excluded days on which either House is not in session because of an adjournment of more than three days.

RICHARD NIXON.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2452 of this title.

**§ 2455. Appropriations**

**(a) Availability**

Amounts appropriated to carry out the purposes of this chapter are authorized to be made available until expended.

**(b) Acquisition of foreign currencies**

Funds appropriated for programs under this chapter may, without regard to section 3651<sup>1</sup> of the Revised Statutes (31 U.S.C. 543), be used for the acquisition from any source of foreign currencies in such amounts as may be necessary for current expenditures and for grants, including grants to foundations and commissions in accordance with international agreements providing for the accomplishment of the purposes of this chapter.

**(c) Transfer of funds**

Moneys appropriated to any department or agency of the Government in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter for research, technical aid, and educational and cultural programs, may be transferred by the President to any other appropriation available for like purposes, but no appropriation authorized by this chapter shall be increased or decreased by more than 10 per centum by reason of transfers pursuant to this subsection.

**(d) Reserve and use of certain funds**

The President is authorized—

(1) to reserve in such amounts and for such periods as he shall determine to be necessary to provide for the programs authorized by subsections (a)(1), (2)(i) of section 2452 of this title, and

(2) notwithstanding the provisions of any other law, to use in such amounts as may from time to time be specified in appropriation Acts, to the extent that such use is not restricted by agreement with the foreign nations concerned, for any programs authorized by this chapter,

any currencies of foreign nations received or to be received by the United States or any agency thereof—

(i) under agreements disposing of surplus property or settling lend-lease and other war accounts concluded after World War II;

(ii) as the proceeds of sales or loan repayments, including interest, for transactions heretofore or hereafter effected under the Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954, as amended [7 U.S.C. 1691 et seq.];

(iii) in repayment of principal or interest on any other credit extended or loan heretofore

or hereafter made by the United States or any agency thereof; or

(iv) as deposits to the account of the United States pursuant to section 1513(b)(6)<sup>1</sup> or section 1513(h)<sup>1</sup> of this title, or any similar provision of any other law.

**(e) Reservation and use of sums due or paid by the Republic of Finland**

The Director of the United States Information Agency is further authorized to reserve and use for educational and cultural exchange programs and other activities authorized in subsections (a) and (b) of section 2452 of this title, in relation to Finland and the people of Finland, all sums due or paid on and after August 24, 1949, by the Republic of Finland to the United States as interest on or in retirement of the principal of the debt incurred under the Act of February 25, 1919, as refunded by the agreement dated May 1, 1923, pursuant to the authority contained in the Act of February 9, 1922, or of any other indebtedness incurred by that Republic and owing to the United States as a result of World War I.

**(f) Contribution of funds, property, and services by foreign governments, international organizations, and private individuals, firms, associations, and agencies**

Foreign governments, international organizations and private individuals, firms, associations, agencies, and other groups shall be encouraged to participate to the maximum extent feasible in carrying out this chapter and to make contributions of funds, property, and services which the President is authorized to accept, to be utilized to carry out the purposes of this chapter. Funds made available for the purposes of this chapter may be used to contribute toward meeting the expenses of activities carried out through normal private channels, by private means, and through foreign governments and international organizations.

**(g) Currency exchanges**

Notwithstanding any other provision of this chapter, there are authorized to be appropriated for the purposes of making currency exchanges under section 2452(b)(10) of this title, not to exceed \$10,000,000 for the fiscal year ending June 30, 1968, and not to exceed \$15,000,000 for the fiscal year ending June 30, 1969.

(Pub. L. 87-256, §105, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 531; Pub. L. 89-698, title II, §203(c), Oct. 29, 1966, 80 Stat. 1072; 1977 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §7(a)(2), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637; Pub. L. 97-241, title III, §303(b), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291; Pub. L. 103-236, title II, §227, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 423.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a) to (d), (f), and (g), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-256, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 527, as amended, known as the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2451 of this title and Tables.

Section 3651 of the Revised Statutes (31 U.S.C. 543), referred to in subsec. (b), was repealed by Pub. L. 97-258, §4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

The Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954, as amended, referred to in subsec. (d)(2)(ii),

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

is act July 10, 1954, ch. 469, 68 Stat. 454, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 41 (§1691 et seq.) of Title 7, Agriculture. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1691 of Title 7 and Tables.

Sections 1513(b)(6) and 1513(h) of this title, referred to in subsec. (d)(2)(iv), were repealed by act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, title V, §542(a), 68 Stat. 861.

The acts of February 25, 1919, and February 9, 1922, referred to in subsec. (e), are not classified to the Code.

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103-236 amended subsec. (a) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (a) read as follows: "Appropriations to carry out the purposes of this chapter, to remain available until expended, are authorized, and this authorization includes the authority to grant, in any appropriation Act, the authority to enter into contracts, within the amounts so authorized, creating obligations in advance of appropriations."

1966—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 89-698 added subsec. (g).

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

"Director of the United States Information Agency" substituted for "Director of the International Communication Agency" in subsec. (e), pursuant to section 303(b) of Pub. L. 97-241, title III, Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title. Previously, "Director of the International Communication Agency" substituted for "President" in subsec. (e), pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, §7(a)(2), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637, set out under section 1461 of this title, effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by President, which transferred functions vested in President, Secretary of State, Department of State, United States Information Agency or Director thereof, under this chapter, to Director of International Communication Agency, except (A) for such functions as are vested by subsecs. (a), (b), and (c) of this section, sections 2452(b)(6), (10), 2454(a), (e)(1), (2), (f), (g), 2456(a) and 2458 of this title, (B) for such functions as are vested by subsecs. (d)(2) and (f) of this section, sections 2454(b) and 2456(d), (f) of this title, to the extent that such functions were assigned to Secretary of Health, Education, and Welfare [now Secretary of Education] immediately prior to effective date of Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, and (C) for such functions as are vested by section 2456(b), (c) of this title to the extent that any such function therein is vested in President or Secretary of State.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of State, Director of United States Information Agency, Secretary of Commerce, and Secretary of Education, see Ex. Ord. No. 11034, June 25, 1962, 27 F.R. 6071, set out as a note under section 2454 of this title.

#### INCREASE IN GRANTS FOR EXCHANGE-OF-PERSONS ACTIVITIES; FUNDS FOR SPECIFIC PROGRAMS, REDUCTIONS, OTHER USE OF FUNDS, REPORT TO CONGRESSIONAL COMMITTEES

Pub. L. 97-241, title III, §305(c), (d), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 294, provided that the amount obligated by United States Information Agency each fiscal year for grants for exchange-of-persons activities should be increased, through regular annual increases, so that by fiscal year 1986 the amount obligated for such grants would at least double (in terms of constant dollars) the amount obligated for such grants for fiscal year 1982 and in furtherance of this purpose provided for appropriations for the United States Information Agency for fiscal year 1983.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2362 of this title.

### § 2456. J. William Fulbright Foreign Scholarship Board

#### (a) Appointment; members; considerations for selection

(1) For the purpose of selecting students, scholars, teachers, trainees, and other persons to participate in the programs authorized under section 2452(a)(1) of this title, and of supervising such programs and the programs authorized under section 2452(b)(4) and (6) of this title, there is continued the authority of the President to appoint a board of foreign scholarships which shall be known as the "J. William Fulbright Foreign Scholarship Board" (hereinafter referred to as the "Board") consisting of twelve members. In connection with appointments to such Board, due consideration shall be given to the selection of distinguished representatives of cultural, educational, student advisory, and war veterans groups, and representatives of the United States Department of Education, the United States Department of Veterans Affairs, public and private nonprofit educational institutions.

(2) In the selection of American citizens for participation in programs under this chapter, preference shall be given to those who have served in the Armed Forces of the United States, and due consideration shall be given to applicants from all geographical areas of the United States.

#### (b), (c) Omitted

#### (d) Creation of interagency and other advisory committees; conferences of persons

The President is authorized to create such interagency and other advisory committees as in his judgment may be of assistance in carrying out the purposes of this chapter, and from time to time to convene conferences of persons interested in educational and cultural affairs to consider matters relating to the purposes of this chapter.

#### (e) Availability of appropriations for expenses; transportation expenses and per diem; compensation of members of Board and Committees

The provisions of section 1346(b) of title 31 shall be applicable to any interagency committee created pursuant to the provisions of this chapter. Members of the committees provided for in this section shall be entitled (i) to transportation expenses and per diem in lieu of subsistence at the rate prescribed by or established pursuant to section 5703 of title 5 while away from home in connection with attendance at meetings or in consultation with officials of the Government or otherwise carrying out duties as authorized, and (ii) if not otherwise in the employ of the United States Government, to compensation at rates not in excess of \$50 per diem while performing services for such committees. Members of the Board shall be entitled to such expenses and per diem in lieu of subsistence as provided for under clause (i) of the preceding sentence and, while performing services for the Board, to compensation at a rate, prescribed by the Director of the United States Information Agency, not in excess of the daily rate for the

first step of GS-15 of the General Schedule under section 5332 of title 5.

**(f) Secretarial and staff assistance**

The President is authorized to provide for necessary secretarial and staff assistance for the Board and such committees as may be created under this section.

(Pub. L. 87-256, §106, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 532; 1977 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §§8(b), 9(a)(3), (6), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1638, 1639; Pub. L. 96-60, title II, §205(a), Aug. 15, 1979, 93 Stat. 401; Pub. L. 96-88, title III, §301(b)(2), title V, §507, Oct. 17, 1979, 93 Stat. 678, 692; Pub. L. 97-241, title III, §303(b), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291; Pub. L. 101-246, title II, §204(a)(1), Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 49; Pub. L. 102-54, §13(h)(1), June 13, 1991, 105 Stat. 275.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a), (d), and (e), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-256, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 527, as amended, known as the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2451 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Subsec. (b), which established the United States Advisory Commission on International Educational and Cultural Affairs to replace the United States Advisory Commission on Educational Exchange, and provided for its functions and the appointment and terms of its members, and the provisions of subsecs. (e) and (f) referring to the "Commission", were omitted pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, §9(a)(3), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1639, set out under section 1461 of this title, which abolished that Commission effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by the President.

Subsec. (c), which related to the continuation of the Advisory Committee on the Arts and the appointment, qualifications, and terms of office of its members, and the provisions of subsecs. (e) and (f) referring to the "Committee", were omitted pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, §9(a)(6), set out under section 1461 of this title, which abolished the Committee, all functions thereof, and all functions relating thereto, effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by the President.

In subsec. (e), "section 1346(b) of title 31" substituted for "section 214 of the Act of May 3, 1945 (59 Stat. 134; 31 U.S.C. 691)" on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, §4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

In subsec. (e), "section 5703 of title 5" substituted for "section 5 of the Administrative Expense Act of 1946, as amended (5 U.S.C. 73b-2)" on authority of Pub. L. 89-554, §7(b), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 631, the first section of which enacted Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

AMENDMENTS

1991—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 102-54 substituted "Department of Veterans Affairs" for "Veterans' Administration".

1990—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 101-246 substituted "board of foreign scholarships which shall be known as the 'J. William Fulbright Foreign Scholarship Board'" for "Board of Foreign Scholarships".

1979—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 96-60 struck from second sentence "the Board," before "the Commission" and from cl. (ii) thereof "such Board," before "Commission" and provided for entitlement of members of the Board to expenses and per diem in lieu of subsistence and to compensation for services not exceeding a daily rate for first step, GS-15 of General Schedule.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1979 AMENDMENT

Section 205(b) of Pub. L. 96-60 provided that: "The amendments made by subsection (a) [to subsec. (e) of this section] shall take effect on October 1, 1979."

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

"Department of Education" substituted for "Office of Education" in subsec. (a), pursuant to sections 301(b)(2) and 507 of Pub. L. 96-88, which are classified to sections 3441(b)(2) and 3507 of this title and which transferred the Office of Education to the Department of Education.

"Director of the United States Information Agency" substituted for "Director of the International Communication Agency" in subsec. (e), pursuant to section 303(b) of Pub. L. 97-241, title III, Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title.

Functions vested in President, Secretary of State, Department of State, United States Information Agency or Director thereof under this chapter transferred to Director of International Communication Agency by section 7(a)(2) of Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, set out under section 1461 of this title, effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by President, except (A) for such functions as are vested by subsec. (a) of this section, sections 2452(b)(6), (10), 2454(a), (e)(1), (2), (f), (g), 2455(a), (b), (c) and 2458 of this title, (B) for such functions as are vested by subsecs. (d) and (f) of this section, sections 2454(b) and 2455(d)(2), (f) of this title, to extent that such functions were assigned to Secretary of Health, Education, and Welfare [now Secretary of Education] immediately prior to effective date of Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, and (C) for such functions as are vested by subsecs. (b) and (c) of this section to extent that any function therein is vested in President or Secretary of State.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of State, Director of United States Information Agency, Secretary of Commerce, and Secretary of Education, see Ex. Ord. No. 11034, June 25, 1962, 27 F.R. 6071, set out as a note under section 2454 of this title.

TERMINATION OF ADVISORY COMMISSIONS AND COMMITTEES

Advisory commissions or committees in existence on Jan. 5, 1973, to terminate not later than the expiration of the 2-year period following Jan. 5, 1973, unless, in the case of a commission or committee established by the President or an officer of the Federal Government, such commission or committee is renewed by appropriate action prior to the expiration of such 2-year period, or in the case of a commission or committee established by the Congress, its duration is otherwise provided for by law. See sections 3(2) and 14 of Pub. L. 92-463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 770, 776, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

CONTINUED SERVICE OF BOARD MEMBERS

Section 204(b) of Pub. L. 101-246 provided that: "Each member appointed to the Board of Foreign Scholarships before the date of the enactment of this Act [Feb. 16, 1990] shall continue to serve for the remainder of the term to which each such member was appointed."

REFERENCES TO BOARD OF FOREIGN SCHOLARSHIPS

Section 204(c) of Pub. L. 101-246 provided that: "Any reference in any provision of law to the Board of Foreign Scholarships shall, on and after the date of enactment of this Act [Feb. 16, 1990], be deemed to be a reference to the J. William Fulbright Foreign Scholarship Board."

**§ 2457. Reports by Board**

The Board shall submit annual reports to the Congress and such other reports to the Congress

as it deems appropriate, and shall make reports to the public in the United States and abroad to develop a better understanding of and support for the programs authorized by this chapter.

(Pub. L. 87-256, §107, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 534; 1977 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §9(a)(3), (6), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1639.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-256, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 527, as amended, known as the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2451 of this title and Tables.

#### CODIFICATION

Provisions relating to the submission of reports to Congress by the United States Advisory Commission on International Educational and Cultural Affairs [which replaced the United States Advisory Commission on Educational Exchange], and the Advisory Committee on the Arts, were omitted pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, §9(a)(3), (6), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1639, set out under section 1461 of this title, which abolished the Commission and the Committee effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by the President.

#### TERMINATION OF ADVISORY COMMISSIONS AND COMMITTEES

Advisory commissions or committees in existence on Jan. 5, 1973, to terminate not later than the expiration of the 2-year period following Jan. 5, 1973, unless, in the case of a commission or committee established by the President or an officer of the Federal Government, such commission or committee is renewed by appropriate action prior to the expiration of such 2-year period, or in the case of a commission or committee established by the Congress, its duration is otherwise provided for by law. See sections 3(2) and 14 of Pub. L. 92-463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 770, 776, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

### § 2458. Authority of President

#### (a) Performance of certain functions without regard to other laws; appropriation credits upon reimbursement for services in connection with exchange activities

(1) Whenever the President determines it to be in furtherance of this chapter, the functions authorized in section 2452(a)(2) and (3) of this title may be performed without regard to such provisions of law or limitations of authority regulating or relating to the making, performance, amendment, or modification of contracts, the acquisition and disposition of property, and the expenditure of Government funds, as he may specify.

(2) Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Director of the United States Information Agency may provide, on a reimbursable basis, services within the United States in connection with exchange activities otherwise authorized by this chapter when such services are requested by a department or executive agency. Reimbursements under this paragraph shall be credited to the applicable appropriation of the Agency.

#### (b) Periodic reports of activities and expenditures

The President shall submit periodic reports to the Congress of activities carried on and expend-

itures made in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter and of the United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948, as amended [22 U.S.C. 1431 et seq.].

#### (c) Expenditures in selection, purchase, rental, construction, or other acquisition of exhibits and materials and equipment therefor

In connection with activities authorized by section 2452(a)(2) and (3) of this title, the President is authorized to provide for all necessary expenditures involved in the selection, purchase, rental, construction, or other acquisition of exhibits and materials and equipment therefor, and the actual display thereof, including but not limited to costs of transportation, insurance, installation, safekeeping and storage, maintenance and operation, rental of space, and dismantling.

#### (d) Utilization of provisions of other laws

The President is authorized to utilize the provisions of title VIII of the United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948, as amended [22 U.S.C. 1471 et seq.], to the extent he deems necessary in carrying out the provisions and purposes of this chapter.

(Pub. L. 87-256, §108, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 534; Pub. L. 96-60, title II, §203(d), Aug. 15, 1979, 93 Stat. 399; Pub. L. 96-470, title II, §212(a), Oct. 19, 1980, 94 Stat. 2246; Pub. L. 97-241, title III, §303(b), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a), (b), and (d), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-256, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 527, as amended, known as the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2451 of this title and Tables.

The United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948, as amended, referred to in subsecs. (b) and (d), is act Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, 62 Stat. 6, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 18 (§1431 et seq.) of this title. Title VIII of the Act, referred to in subsec. (d), is classified generally to subchapter VII (§1471 et seq.) of chapter 18 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1431 of this title and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1980—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 96-470 substituted provision requiring periodic reports on activities and expenditures made under this chapter and the United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948 for provision requiring an annual report be made on activities and expenditures under this chapter.

1979—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 96-60 designated existing provisions as par. (1) and added par. (2).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1979 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-60 effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 209 of Pub. L. 96-60, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1469 of this title.

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

"Director of the United States Information Agency" substituted for "Director of the International Communication Agency" in subsec. (a)(2), pursuant to section 303(b) of Pub. L. 97-241, title III, Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title.

Functions vested in President, Secretary of State, Department of State, United States Information Agen-

cy or Director thereof under this chapter transferred to Director of International Communication Agency by Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, §7(a)(2), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637, set out under section 1461 of this title, effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by President, except (A) for such functions as are vested by this section, and sections 2452(b)(6), (10), 2454(a), (e)(1), (2), (f), (g), 2455(a), (b), (c), 2456(a) of this title, (B) for such functions as are vested by sections 2454(b), 2455(d)(2), (f), and 2456(d), (f) of this title, to the extent that such functions were assigned to Secretary of Health, Education, and Welfare [now Secretary of Education] immediately prior to effective date of Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, and (C) for such functions as are vested by section 2456(b), (c) of this title to the extent that any such function therein is vested in President or Secretary of State.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of State, Director of United States Information Agency, and Secretary of Commerce, see Ex. Ord. No. 11034, June 25, 1962, 27 F.R. 6071, set out as a note under section 2454 of this title.

#### SOVIET NATIONALS PARTICIPATING IN EXCHANGE PROGRAMS; TOPICS AND LOCATION OF STUDY; NATIONAL SECURITY INTERESTS; REPORT TO CONGRESS

Pub. L. 97-241, title I, §126(c), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 282, directed Secretary of State to submit annually to Congress a list of Soviet nationals participating during the upcoming academic year in the United States-Union of Soviet Socialist Republics graduate student/young faculty exchange or in the United States-Union of Soviet Socialist Republics senior scholar exchange, their topics of study, and where they were to study, such report to also include a determination by Secretary of State, in consultation with heads of other agencies involved in these exchange programs, that these exchange programs would not jeopardize United States national security interests, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103-199, title III, §306, Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2324.

#### § 2458a. Federal employee participation in cultural exchange programs

##### (a) Grants and other foreign government assistance; family or household expense assistance prohibited; "Federal employee" defined

(1) Congress consents to the acceptance by a Federal employee of grants and other forms of assistance provided by a foreign government to facilitate the participation of such Federal employee in a cultural exchange—

(A) which is of the type described in section 2452(a)(2)(i) of this title,

(B) which is conducted for a purpose comparable to the purpose stated in section 2451 of this title, and

(C) which is specifically approved by the Director of the United States Information Agency for purposes of this section;

but the Congress does not consent to the acceptance by any Federal employee of any portion of any such grant or other form of assistance which provides assistance with respect to any expenses incurred by or for any member of the family or household of such Federal employee.

(2) For purposes of this section, the term "Federal employee" means any employee as defined in subparagraphs (A) through (F) of section 7342(a)(1) of title 5, but does not include a person described in subparagraph (G) of such section.

##### (b) Foreign grants and other assistance not gifts for purposes of section 7342 of title 5

The grants and other forms of assistance with respect to which the consent of Congress is given in subsection (a) of this section shall not constitute gifts for purposes of section 7342 of title 5.

##### (c) Regulations

The Director of the United States Information Agency is authorized to promulgate regulations for purposes of this section.

(Pub. L. 87-256, §108A, as added Pub. L. 94-350, title I, §111, July 12, 1976, 90 Stat. 825; amended 1977 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §7(a)(2), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637; Pub. L. 96-60, title II, §204(d), Aug. 15, 1979, 93 Stat. 400; Pub. L. 97-241, title III, §303(b) Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1979—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 96-60 substituted "(F)" for "(E)" and "(G)" for "(F)".

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1979 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-60 effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 209 of Pub. L. 96-60, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1469 of this title.

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

"Director of the United States Information Agency" substituted for "Director of the International Communication Agency" in subsecs. (a)(1)(C) and (c), pursuant to section 303(b) of Pub. L. 97-241, title III, Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title. Previously, "Director of the International Communication Agency" substituted for "Secretary of State" in subsecs. (a)(1)(C) and (c), pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, §7(a)(2), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637, set out under section 1461 of this title, effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by President, which transferred functions vested in President, Secretary of State, Department of State, United States Information Agency or Director thereof, under this chapter, to Director of the International Communication Agency, except for such functions as are vested by sections 2452(b)(6), (10), 2454(a), (e)(1), (2), (f), (g), 2455(a), (b), (c), 2456(a) and 2458 of this title, (B) for such functions as are vested by sections 2454(b), 2455(d)(2), (f), and 2456(d), (f) of this title, to the extent that such functions were assigned to Secretary of Health, Education, and Welfare [now Secretary of Education] immediately prior to effective date of Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, and (C) for such functions as are vested by section 2456(b), (c) of this title to the extent that any such function therein is vested in President or Secretary of State.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 5 section 7342.

#### § 2459. Immunity from seizure under judicial process of cultural objects imported for temporary exhibition or display

##### (a) Agreements; Presidential determination; publication in Federal Register

Whenever any work of art or other object of cultural significance is imported into the United States from any foreign country, pursuant to an agreement entered into between the foreign owner or custodian thereof and the United States or one or more cultural or educational institutions within the United States providing for the temporary exhibition or display thereof within the United States at any cultural exhi-

bition, assembly, activity, or festival administered, operated, or sponsored, without profit, by any such cultural or educational institution, no court of the United States, any State, the District of Columbia, or any territory or possession of the United States may issue or enforce any judicial process, or enter any judgment, decree, or order, for the purpose or having the effect of depriving such institution, or any carrier engaged in transporting such work or object within the United States, of custody or control of such object if before the importation of such object the President or his designee has determined that such object is of cultural significance and that the temporary exhibition or display thereof within the United States is in the national interest, and a notice to that effect has been published in the Federal Register.

**(b) Intervention of United States attorney in pending judicial proceedings**

If in any judicial proceeding in any such court any such process, judgment, decree, or order is sought, issued, or entered, the United States attorney for the judicial district within which such proceeding is pending shall be entitled as of right to intervene as a party to that proceeding, and upon request made by either the institution adversely affected, or upon direction by the Attorney General if the United States is adversely affected, shall apply to such court for the denial, quashing, or vacating thereof.

**(c) Enforcement of agreements and obligations of carriers under transportation contracts**

Nothing contained in this section shall preclude (1) any judicial action for or in aid of the enforcement of the terms of any such agreement or the enforcement of the obligation of any carrier under any contract for the transportation of any such object of cultural significance; or (2) the institution or prosecution by or on behalf of any such institution or the United States of any action for or in aid of the fulfillment of any obligation assumed by such institution or the United States pursuant to any such agreement.

(Pub. L. 89-259, Oct. 19, 1965, 79 Stat. 985.)

CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as a part of the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961, which comprises this chapter.

EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 11312

Ex. Ord. No. 11312, Oct. 14, 1966, 31 F.R. 13415, which related to the delegation of functions to the Secretary of State, was revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 12047, Mar. 27, 1978, 43 F.R. 13359, set out below.

EX. ORD. NO. 12047. IMPORTED OBJECTS OF CULTURAL SIGNIFICANCE

Ex. Ord. No. 12047, Mar. 27, 1978, 43 F.R. 13359, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 12388, Oct. 14, 1982, 47 F.R. 46245, provided:

By virtue of the authority vested in me by the Act of October 19, 1965, entitled "An Act to render immune from seizure under judicial process certain objects of cultural significance imported into the United States for temporary display or exhibition, and for other purposes" (79 Stat. 985, 22 U.S.C. 2459), and as President of the United States of America, it is hereby ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. The Director of the United States Information Agency is designated and empowered to perform

the functions conferred upon the President by the above-mentioned Act and shall be deemed to be authorized, without the approval, ratification, or other action of the President, (1) to determine that any work of art or other object to be imported into the United States within the meaning of the Act is of cultural significance, (2) to determine that the temporary exhibition or display of any such work of art or other object in the United States is in the national interest, and (3) to cause public notices of the determinations referred to above to be published in the Federal Register.

SEC. 2. The Director of the United States Information Agency, in carrying out this Order, shall consult with the Secretary of State with respect to the determination of national interest, and may consult with the Secretary of the Smithsonian Institution, the Director of the National Gallery of Art, and with such other officers and agencies of the Government as may be appropriate, with respect to the determination of cultural significance.

SEC. 3. The Director of the United States Information Agency is authorized to delegate within the Agency the functions conferred upon him by this Order.

SEC. 4. Executive Order No. 11312 of October 14, 1966 is revoked.

SEC. 5. Any order, regulation, determination or other action which was in effect pursuant to the provisions of Executive Order No. 11312 shall remain in effect until changed pursuant to the authority provided in this Order.

SEC. 6. This Order shall be effective on April 1, 1978.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2611 of title 19.

**§ 2460. Bureau of Educational and Cultural Affairs**

**(a) Establishment; responsibilities**

In order to carry out the purposes of this chapter, there is established in the United States Information Agency, or in such appropriate agency of the United States as the President shall determine, a Bureau of Educational and Cultural Affairs (hereinafter in this section referred to as the "Bureau"). The Bureau shall be responsible for managing, coordinating, and overseeing programs established pursuant to this chapter, including but not limited to—

(1) the J. William Fulbright Educational Exchange Program which, by promoting the exchange of scholars, researchers, students, trainees, teachers, instructors, and professors, between the United States and foreign countries, accomplishes the purposes of section 2452(a)(1) of this title;

(2) the Hubert H. Humphrey Fellowship Program which finances (A) study at American universities and institutions of higher learning, including study in degree granting programs, and (B) participation in fellowships, internships, or other programs in American governmental and nongovernmental institutions for public managers and other individuals from developing countries;

(3) the International Visitors Program which provides grants for short-term visits to the United States for foreign nationals who are, or have the potential to be, leaders in their respective fields in their own countries;

(4) the American Cultural Centers and Libraries which make available at selected foreign locations, books, films, sound recordings, and other materials about the United States, its people and culture, and about other topics;

(5) the American Overseas Schools Program which provides financial assistance to the operations of American-sponsored schools overseas;

(6) the American Studies Program which fosters and supports the study of the United States, and its people and culture, in foreign countries;

(7) a program of working with private, not-for-profit groups through contracts, grants, or cooperative agreements, as authorized by section 2452 of this title, so as to provide financial assistance to nongovernmental organizations engaged in implementing and enhancing exchange-of-persons programs;

(8) the Samantha Smith Memorial Exchange Program which advances understanding between the United States and the independent states of the former Soviet Union and between the United States and Eastern European countries through the exchange of persons under the age of 21 years and of students at an institution of higher education (as defined in section 1141(a) of title 20) who have not received their initial baccalaureate degree or through other programs designed to promote contact between the young peoples of the United States, the independent states of the former Soviet Union, and Eastern European countries; and

(9) the Arts America program which promotes a greater appreciation and understanding of American art abroad by supporting exhibitions and tours by American artists in other countries.

#### (b) Revocation or diminution of grants

(1) All recipients of Fulbright Academic Exchange and Humphrey Fellowship awards shall have full academic and artistic freedom, including freedom to write, publish, and create. No award granted pursuant to this chapter may be revoked or diminished on account of the political views expressed by the recipient or on account of any scholarly or artistic activity that would be subject to the protections of academic and artistic freedom normally observed in universities in the United States. The Board shall ensure that the academic and artistic freedoms of all persons receiving grants are protected.

(2) The J. William Fulbright Foreign Scholarship Board shall formulate a policy on revocation of Fulbright grants which shall be made known to all grantees. Such policy shall fully protect the right to due process as well as the academic and artistic freedom of all grantees.

#### (c) Program requirements

The President shall insure that all programs under the authority of the Bureau shall maintain their nonpolitical character and shall be balanced and representative of the diversity of American political, social, and cultural life. The President shall insure that academic and cultural programs under the authority of the Bureau shall maintain their scholarly integrity and shall meet the highest standards of academic excellence or artistic achievement.

#### (d) Administration of programs

The Bureau shall administer no programs except those operating under the authority of this chapter and consistent with its purposes.

#### (e) Office of Citizen Exchanges

There is established in the Bureau of Educational and Cultural Affairs an Office of Citizen Exchanges. The Office shall support private not-for-profit organizations engaged in the exchange of persons between the United States and other countries.

#### (f) Coordination of exchange programs; reports

(1) The President shall ensure that all exchange programs conducted by the United States Government, its departments and agencies, directly or through agreements with other parties, are reported at a time and in a format prescribed by the Director. The President shall ensure that such exchanges are consistent with United States foreign policy and avoid duplication of effort.

(2) Not later than 90 days after April 30, 1994, and annually thereafter, the President shall submit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the Chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate a report pursuant to paragraph (1). Such report shall include information for each exchange program supported by the United States on the objectives of such exchange, the number of exchange participants supported, the types of exchange activities conducted, the total amount of Federal expenditures for such exchanges, and the extent to which such exchanges are duplicative.

(Pub. L. 87-256, §112, as added Pub. L. 98-164, title II, §213, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1034; amended Pub. L. 100-204, title III, §§302(a), 303, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1378, 1379; Pub. L. 101-246, title II, §§204(a)(2), 222(a), 223, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 50, 55, 56; Pub. L. 103-199, title III, §301(1), Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2322; Pub. L. 103-236, title II, §229(a), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 423.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a), (b)(1), and (d), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-256, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 527, as amended, known as the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2451 of this title and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 103-236 added subsec. (f).

1993—Subsec. (a)(8). Pub. L. 103-199 substituted "independent states of the former Soviet Union" for "Soviet Union" in two places.

1990—Subsec. (a)(8). Pub. L. 101-246, §223, inserted "or through other programs designed to promote contact between the young peoples of the United States, the Soviet Union, and Eastern European countries" after "degree".

Subsecs. (b) to (d). Pub. L. 101-246, §204(a)(2), added subsec. (b) and redesignated former subsecs. (b) and (c) as (c) and (d), respectively.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 101-246, §222(a), added subsec. (e).  
1987—Subsec. (a)(8), (9). Pub. L. 100-204 added pars. (8) and (9).

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

Section 222(b) of Pub. L. 101-246 provided that: "There are hereby transferred to the Office of Citizen Exchanges on the date of enactment of this Act [Feb. 16, 1990] all functions carried out by the Office of Private Sector Programs on the day before such date."

PRIVATE SECTOR PROGRAM; RESTRICTIONS ON FUNDS  
FOR FOREIGN TRAVEL; WAIVER; REPORTS

Section 207 of Pub. L. 98-164, as amended by Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §139(11), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 398, provided that:

“(a) No funds authorized to be appropriated for the Private Sector Program shall be used to pay for foreign travel by any United States citizen who, in the five years preceding the date of the proposed foreign travel, made two or more trips financed in whole or in substantial part by grants from the Private Sector Program. This limitation shall not apply to escort interpreters accompanying delegations, to artists accompanying exhibitions, to persons engaging in theatrical or musical performances, or to the full-time staff of the grantee organization. In addition, the Director of the Bureau of Educational and Cultural Affairs may waive this limitation in exceptional cases if he determines that foreign travel is essential to the successful completion of the grant program and so certifies in writing to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate at least fifteen days prior to the commencement of the proposed foreign travel.

“[(b) Repealed. Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §139(11), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 398.]”

DEFINITIONS

In subsec. (a)(8), independent states of the former Soviet Union has the meaning given in section 5801 of this title, see section 3 of Pub. L. 103-199, set out as a note under section 5801 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4704 of this title.

**§ 2461. Exchanges between United States and independent states of the former Soviet Union**

**(a) Financing of exchanges with repayments on Lend-Lease debts**

The President is authorized to negotiate and implement agreements with the independent states of the former Soviet Union under which repayments made by the independent states on Lend-Lease debts to the United States would be used to finance the exchange of persons between the United States and the independent states for educational, cultural, and artistic purposes. Exchanges authorized pursuant to this section shall be administered subject to the provisions of this chapter. Part of the funds repaid to the United States shall be in convertible currency for the purpose of paying the expenses associated with study and other exchange activities in the United States by citizens of the independent states.

**(b) Limitation on availability of funds**

Funds made available for the purposes of this section shall be available only to the extent and in the amounts provided for in an appropriation Act.

(Pub. L. 87-256, §113, as added Pub. L. 101-246, title II, §224, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 56; amended Pub. L. 103-199, title III, §301(2), Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2322.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-256, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 527, as amended, known as the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see

Short Title note set out under section 2451 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1993—Pub. L. 103-199, §301(2)(A), substituted “Exchanges between United States and independent states of the former Soviet Union” for “United States-Soviet exchanges” in section catchline.

Subsec. (a), Pub. L. 103-199, §301(2)(B)–(E), substituted “agreements with the independent states of the former Soviet Union” for “an agreement with the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics”, “made by the independent states” for “made by the Soviet Union”, “and the independent states” for “and the Soviet Union”, and “in the United States by citizens of the independent states” for “by Soviet citizens in the United States”.

DEFINITIONS

In subsec. (a), independent states of the former Soviet Union and independent states have the meanings given in section 5801 of this title, see section 3 of Pub. L. 103-199, set out as a note under section 5801 of this title.

**CHAPTER 34—THE PEACE CORPS**

- Sec.  
2501. Congressional declaration of purpose.  
2501-1. Independent agency status of Peace Corps.  
2501a. Voluntary service programs.  
    (a) Congressional declaration of policy of encouragement.  
    (b) Limitations on executive activities and use of funds.  
    (c) Compromise of national character.  
2502. Presidential authorization; appropriations and financial readjustments.  
    (a) Terms and conditions of authorization.  
    (b) Authorization of appropriations.  
    (c) Appropriations for increases in salary, pay, etc.  
    (d) Integration of women into national economics.  
    (e), (f) Repealed.  
    (g) Redesignated (d).  
    (h) Integration of disabled people.  
2503. Director and Deputy Director; delegation of functions.  
    (a) Appointment.  
    (b) Exercise of functions by Director.  
    (c) Powers and functions of Secretary of State; coordination of activities; responsibility for supervision and direction of programs.  
    (d) Prohibition on performance of services more usefully performed by other agencies.  
2504. Peace Corps volunteers.  
    (a) Persons eligible; terms and conditions of service; Federal employee status; racial, sex, religious, or color discrimination.  
    (b) Living allowances, travel, leave and related items; transfers of supplies and equipment.  
    (c) Readjustment allowances.  
    (d) Repealed.  
    (e) Health care.  
    (f) Retirement and other credits based upon length of service.  
    (g) Assignment to other entities.  
    (h) Tort claims; absentee voting; general average contributions for transportation of baggage; check cashing and currency exchange; claims for overpayment of pay; passport fees.  
    (i) Termination of service.  
    (j) Oath of office.  
    (k) Counseling programs for returned volunteers.



- Sec.
- (l) Legal expenses of defendant in judicial or administrative proceedings.
- (m) Allowances and expenses of minor children.
- (n) Moving expenses.
2505. Peace Corps volunteer leaders; number; applicability of chapter; benefits.
2506. Peace Corps employees.
- (a) Foreign employment; compensation, allowances, and benefits; utilization of Presidential authority respecting Foreign Service; additional compensation and differentials; additional governmental employment by person receiving Foreign Service Reserve or staff appointment or assignment; limitation on length of employment.
- (b) Repealed.
- (c) Peace Corps representatives; terms and conditions of service; removal.
2507. Training program.
- (a) Applicants for enrollment and enrolled volunteers.
- (b) Citizen trainees for voluntary programs; foreign nationals as trainees; advances of funds or reimbursement basis; use of credits.
2508. Foreign participants; admission into the United States as nonimmigrants; deportation.
2509. Presidential powers and authorities.
- (a) Contract authority; assignment of volunteers; acceptance of voluntary services and gifts and transfers of property; personal service contracts.
- (b) Claim settlements.
- (c) Five-year contract authority.
- (d) Waiver of certain Federal laws.
- (e) Allocation of funds.
- (f) Utilization of other Government agency services and facilities.
- (g) Reimbursement for commodities, services, and facilities.
- (h) Hospitalization and medical treatment for Foreign Service local employees.
- (i) Procurement of legal services.
- (j) Malpractice protection.
2510. Reports to Congress.
2511. Peace Corps National Advisory Council.
- (a) Establishment.
- (b) Functions.
- (c) Membership.
- (d) Compensation.
- (e) Quorum.
- (f) Financial interests of members.
- (g) Chair and Vice Chair.
- (h) Meetings, bylaws, and regulations.
- (i) Reports to the President and the Director.
- (j) Administrative assistance.
2512. Experts and consultants.
- (a) Employment; compensation, travel expenses and per diem; renewal of contracts.
- (b) Exemption from restrictions upon receipt of retirement benefits.
2513. Assignment of personnel to foreign governments or international organizations.
- (a) Authority; oath of allegiance.
- (b) Benefits of detailed personnel.
- (c) Reimbursement provisions.
2514. Use of funds.
- (a) Administrative and other expenses.
- (b) Travel expenses abroad; transportation of personal effects, household goods and automobiles; storage.

- Sec.
- (c) Costs of training personnel employed or assigned overseas.
- (d) Payment of expenses.
2515. Foreign Currency Fluctuations Account.
- (a) Establishment.
- (b) Use of funds in account.
- (c) Exchange rates applicable to obligations.
- (d) Transfers back to account.
- (e) Limitation on transfers back.
- (f) Transfers to account from regular appropriations.
- (g) Authorization of appropriations.
- (h) Reports.
2516. Use of foreign currencies.
2517. Activities promoting Americans' understanding of other peoples.
2518. Seal and name.
- (a) Judicial notice.
- (b) Exclusiveness of use; penalties for violations; injunctions.
2519. Security investigations.
2520. Military training and service exemption.
2521. Foreign language proficiency.
- 2521a. Nonpartisan appointments.
2522. Definitions.
2523. Separability.

## CHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This chapter is referred to in sections 2275, 2371, 2398, 4071c, 5424 of this title; title 5 sections 8332, 8334, 8411, 8422; title 20 sections 1078-10, 1087ee, 1092; title 26 sections 912, 3121, 3122, 6051; title 42 sections 292d, 292r, 297b, 405, 409, 410, 12639.

## § 2501. Congressional declaration of purpose

(a) The Congress of the United States declares that it is the policy of the United States and the purpose of this chapter to promote world peace and friendship through a Peace Corps, which shall make available to interested countries and areas men and women of the United States qualified for service abroad and willing to serve, under conditions of hardship if necessary, to help the peoples of such countries and areas in meeting their needs for trained manpower, particularly in meeting the basic needs of those living in the poorest areas of such countries, and to help promote a better understanding of the American people on the part of the peoples served and a better understanding of other peoples on the part of the American people.

(b) The Congress declares that it is the policy of the United States and a purpose of the Peace Corps to maintain, to the maximum extent appropriate and consistent with programmatic and fiscal considerations, a volunteer corps of at least 10,000 individuals.

(Pub. L. 87-293, title I, §2, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 612; Pub. L. 95-331, §2, Aug. 2, 1978, 92 Stat. 414; Pub. L. 99-83, title XI, §1102(a), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 272.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-293, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 612, as amended, known as the Peace Corps Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out below and Tables.

## AMENDMENTS

1985—Pub. L. 99-83 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsec. (b).

1978—Pub. L. 95-331 inserted "particularly in meeting the basic needs of those living in the poorest areas of such countries" after "manpower".

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 28, formerly section 27, of Pub. L. 87-293, as renumbered by Pub. L. 99-83, title XI, §1105(a)(1), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 276, provided that: "This Act [see Short Title note below] shall take effect on the date of its enactment [Sept. 22, 1961]."

## SHORT TITLE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Section 1 of Pub. L. 95-331 provided: "That this Act [amending this section and sections 2501a, 2502, 2504, 2509, and 2510 of this title and enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 2501a and 2509 of this title] may be cited as the 'Peace Corps Act Amendments of 1978'."

## SHORT TITLE

Section 1 of Pub. L. 87-293 provided that: "This Act [enacting this chapter, amending section 2253 of former Title 5, Executive Departments and Government Officers and Employees, section 425 of Title 20, Education, sections 912, 1303, 3121, 3122, 3401, and 6051 of Title 26, Internal Revenue Code, and sections 405, 409, and 410 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare, and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and sections 912 and 3121 of Title 26] may be cited as the 'Peace Corps Act'."

## EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 10924

Ex. Ord. No. 10924, Mar. 1, 1961, 26 F.R. 1789, relating to the establishment and administration of the Peace Corps, was superseded by Ex. Ord. No. 11041, Aug. 6, 1962, 27 F.R. 7859, set out below.

## EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 11041

Ex. Ord. No. 11041, Aug. 7, 1962, 27 F.R. 7859, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 11250, Oct. 10, 1965, 30 F.R. 13003, which provided for the continuance and administration of the Peace Corps in the Department of State, was superseded by Ex. Ord. No. 11603, June 30, 1971, 36 F.R. 12675, set out below.

## EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 11603

Ex. Ord. No. 11603, June 30, 1971, 36 F.R. 12675, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 12107, Dec. 28, 1978, 44 F.R. 1055, which provided for the continuance and administration of the Peace Corps within ACTION, was superseded by Ex. Ord. No. 12137, May 16, 1979, 44 F.R. 29023, set out below.

## EX. ORD. NO. 12137. ADMINISTRATION OF PEACE CORPS AS AN AGENCY WITHIN ACTION

Ex. Ord. No. 12137, May 16, 1979, 44 F.R. 29023, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 12245, Oct. 6, 1980, 45 F.R. 66769; Ex. Ord. No. 12292, Feb. 23, 1981, 46 F.R. 13968; Ex. Ord. No. 12399, Dec. 31, 1982, 48 F.R. 379, provided:

By virtue of the authority vested in me by the Peace Corps Act, as amended (22 U.S.C. 2501-2523) and Section 301 of Title 3 of the United States Code, and as President of the United States of America, it is hereby ordered as follows:

## 1-1. PEACE CORPS

1-101. The Peace Corps, which was established as an agency in the Department of State pursuant to Executive Order No. 10924 of March 1, 1961 (26 FR 1789) [formerly set out under this section], which was continued in existence in that Department under the Peace Corps Act (the "Act") [this chapter] pursuant to Section 102 of Executive Order No. 11041 of August 6, 1962 (27 FR 7859) [formerly set out under this section], and which was transferred to and continued as a component of ACTION [now Corporation for National and Community

Service] by Executive Order No. 11603 of June 30, 1971 (36 FR 12675) [formerly set out under this section], shall be an agency within ACTION pursuant to the provisions of this Order.

1-102. All references to the "Director" in Part 1-1 of this Order shall refer to the Director of the Peace Corps for whom provision is made in Section 4(a) of the Act (22 U.S.C. 2503).

1-103. Exclusive of the functions otherwise delegated by or reserved to the President by this Order, and subject to the provisions of this Order, there are hereby delegated to the Director all functions conferred upon the President by the Act [this chapter] and by Section 2(b) of Reorganization Plan No. 1 of 1971 [5 U.S.C. App.].

1-104. The function of determining the portion of living allowances constituting basic compensation, conferred upon the President by Section 201(a) of Public Law 87-293 (26 U.S.C. 912(3)), is hereby delegated to the Director and shall be performed in consultation with the Secretary of the Treasury.

1-105. The functions of prescribing regulations and making determinations (relating to appointment of Peace Corps employees in the Foreign Service System), conferred upon the President by Section 5 of Public Law 89-135 (79 Stat. 551) [probably means section 5(b) of Pub. L. 89-134, Aug. 24, 1965, 79 Stat. 551, set out as a note under section 2506 of this title], are hereby delegated to the Director.

1-106. The functions of prescribing conditions, conferred upon the President by the second sentence of Section 5(e), as amended (22 U.S.C. 2504(e)), and the third proviso of Section 6 of the Act (22 U.S.C. 2505) (relating to providing health care in Government facilities) and hereinabove delegated to the Director, shall be exercised in consultation with the head of the United States Government agency responsible for the facility.

1-107. The reports required by Section 11 of the Act, as amended (22 U.S.C. 2510), shall be prepared by the Director and submitted to the Congress through the President.

1-108. Subject to applicable provisions of law, all funds appropriated or otherwise made available to the President for carrying out the provisions of the Act [this chapter] shall be deemed to be allocated without any further action of the President to the Director or to such subordinate officer as the Director may designate. The Director or such officer may allocate or transfer, as appropriate, any of such funds to any United States Government agency or part thereof for obligation or expenditures thereby consistent with applicable law.

1-109. Nothing in this Order shall be deemed to impair or limit the powers or functions vested in the Secretary of State by the Act [this chapter].

1-110. The negotiation, conclusion, and termination of international agreements pursuant to the Act [this chapter] shall be under the direction of the Secretary of State.

1-111. Any substantial change in policies in effect on the date of this Order for the utilization of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [22 U.S.C. 3901 et seq.], pursuant to Section 7 of the Act (22 U.S.C. 2506), shall be coordinated with the Secretary of State.

1-112. The Director shall consult and coordinate with the Director of ACTION to assure that the functions delegated to the Director by this Order are carried out consistently with the functions conferred upon the Director of ACTION by the Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973 (42 U.S.C. 4951 et seq.), ("Volunteer Service Act"), Reorganization Plan No. 1 of 1971 [5 U.S.C. App.] and this Order.

1-2. THE PEACE CORPS ADVISORY COUNCIL [REVOKED BY EX. ORD. NO. 12399, DEC. 31, 1982, 48 F.R. 379]

1-3. RESERVATION OF FUNCTIONS TO THE PRESIDENT

1-301. There are hereby excluded from the delegations made by Section 1-1 of this Order the following powers and functions of the President:

(a) All authority conferred by Sections 4(b), 4(c)(2), 4(c)(3), 10(d), and 18 of the Act (22 U.S.C. 2503(b), (c)(2), (c)(3), 2509(d), and 2517).

(b) The authority conferred by Section 4(a) of the Act (22 U.S.C. 2503(a)) to appoint the Director and the Deputy Director of the Peace Corps.

(c) The authority conferred on the President by Section 5(f)(1)(B) of the Act (22 U.S.C. 2504(f)(1)(B)).

(d) The authority conferred by Section 10(f) of the Act (22 U.S.C. 2509(f)) to direct any agency of the United States Government to provide services, facilities, and commodities to officers carrying out functions under the Act [this chapter].

(e) The authority conferred by Section 19 of the Act (22 U.S.C. 2518) to adopt and alter an official seal or emblem of the Peace Corps.

#### 1-4. INCIDENTAL PROVISIONS

1-401. Persons appointed, employed, or assigned under Section 7(a) of the Act (22 U.S.C. 2506(a)) shall not, unless otherwise agreed by the agency in which such benefits may be exercised, be entitled to the benefits provided by Section 310 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 (22 U.S.C. 3950) in cases in which their service under the appointment, employment, or assignment exceeds thirty months.

1-402. Pursuant to Section 10(d) of the Act (22 U.S.C. 2509(d)), it is hereby determined to be in furtherance of the purposes of the Act [this chapter] that functions authorized thereby may be performed without regard to the applicable laws specified in Section 1 and 2 of Executive Order No. 11223 of May 12, 1965 [22 U.S.C. 2393 note], and with or without consideration as specified in Section 3 of that Order, but subject to the limitations set forth in that Order.

1-403. As used in this Order, the words "Volunteers," "functions," "United States," and "United States Government agency" shall have the same meanings, respectively, as they have under the Act [this chapter].

#### 1-5. NATIONAL VOLUNTARY ACTION PROGRAM

1-501. The National Voluntary Action Program to encourage and stimulate more widespread and effective voluntary action for solving public domestic problems, established in the Executive Branch of the Government by Section 1 of Executive Order No. 11470 of May 26, 1969 [formerly set out as a note under section 2701 of Title 42, the Public Health and Welfare], is continued in ACTION. That program shall supplement corresponding action by private and other non-Federal organizations such as the National Center for Voluntary Action. As used in this Order, the term "voluntary action" means the contribution or application of non-governmental resources of all kinds (time, money, goods, services, and skills) by private and other organizations of all types (profit and nonprofit, national and local, occupational, and altruistic) and by individual citizens.

#### 1-6. DIRECTOR OF ACTION

1-601. In addition to the functions vested in the Director of ACTION by the Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973 (42 U.S.C., Section 4951 et seq.), Reorganization Plan No. 1 of 1971 [5 U.S.C. App.], and Section 1-401 of this Order, the Director of ACTION shall:

(a) Encourage local, national and international voluntary activities directed toward the solution or mitigation of community problems.

(b) Provide for the development and operation of a clearinghouse for information on Government programs designed to foster voluntary action.

(c) Initiate proposals for the greater and more effective application of voluntary action in connection with Federal programs, and coordinate, as consistent with law, Federal activities involving such action.

(d) Make grants of seed money, as authorized by law, for stimulating the development or deployment of innovative voluntary action programs directed toward community problems.

1-602. The head of each Federal department and agency, or a designated representative, when so requested

by the Director of ACTION or the Director of the Peace Corps, shall, to the extent permitted by law and funds available, furnish information and assistance, and participate in all ways appropriate to carry out the objectives of this Order, the Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973 [42 U.S.C. 4951 et seq.] and Reorganization Plan No. 1 of 1971 [5 U.S.C. App.].

1-603. The head of each Federal department or agency shall, when so requested by the Director of ACTION, designate a senior official to have primary and continuing responsibility for the participation and cooperation of that department or agency in matters concerning voluntary action.

1-604. The head of each Federal department or agency, or a designated representative, shall keep the Director of ACTION informed of proposed budgets, plans, and programs of that department or agency affecting voluntary action programs.

1-605. Under the direction of the President and subject to the responsibilities of the Secretary of State, the Director of ACTION shall be responsible for the general direction of those ACTION functions, which jointly serve ACTION domestic volunteer components and the Peace Corps, and for advising the Director of the Peace Corps to ensure that the functions delegated under this Order to the Director of the Peace Corps are carried out.

#### 1-7. GENERAL PROVISIONS

1-701. Except to the extent that they may be inconsistent with this Order, all determinations, authorizations, regulations, rulings, certifications, orders, directives, contracts, agreements, and other actions made, issued or entered into with respect to any function affected by this Order and not revoked, superseded, or otherwise made inapplicable before the effective date of this Order shall continue in full force and effect until amended, modified, or terminated by appropriate authority.

1-702. Except as otherwise expressly provided herein, nothing in this Order shall be construed as subjecting any department, establishment, or other instrumentality of the Executive Branch of the Federal Government or the head thereof, or any function vested by law in or assigned pursuant to law to any such agency or head, to the authority of any other agency or head or as abrogating, modifying, or restricting any such function in any manner.

1-703. So much of the personnel, property, records, and unexpended balances or appropriations, allocations, and other funds employed, used, held, available, or to be made available in connection with the functions assigned to the Director of the Peace Corps or to the Director of ACTION by this Order as the Director of the Office of Management and Budget shall determine, shall be transferred to the Director of the Peace Corps or the Director of ACTION at such time or times as the Director of the Office of Management and Budget shall direct.

1-704. To the extent permitted by law, such further measures and dispositions as the Director of the Office of Management and Budget shall deem to be necessary in order to effectuate the provisions of this Order shall be carried out by such agencies as the Director of the Office of Management and Budget shall specify.

1-705. The authority conferred by Sections 1-703 and 1-704 of this Order shall supplement, not limit, the provisions of Section 1-108 of this Order.

1-706. Executive Order Nos. 11041, 11250, 11470 and 11603 are hereby superseded.

1-707. This Order shall become effective May 16, 1979.

#### EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 12468

Ex. Ord. No. 12468, Mar. 22, 1984, 49 F.R. 11139, which established the Presidential Advisory Council on the Peace Corps and provided for its membership, functions, etc., was revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 12534, Sept. 30, 1985, 50 F.R. 40319, formerly set out as a note under section 14 of the Federal Advisory Committee Act in the

Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2510, 2517 of this title.

**§ 2501-1. Independent agency status of Peace Corps**

Effective on December 29, 1981, the Peace Corps shall be an independent agency within the executive branch and shall not be an agency within the ACTION Agency, the successor to the ACTION Agency, or any other department or agency of the United States.

(Pub. L. 87-293, title I, §2A as added Pub. L. 97-113, title VI, §601(a), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1540; amended Pub. L. 103-82, title IV, §405(e), Sept. 21, 1993, 107 Stat. 921.)

AMENDMENTS

1993—Pub. L. 103-82 inserted “, the successor to the ACTION Agency,”.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103-82 effective Apr. 4, 1994, see section 406(b) of Pub. L. 103-82, set out as a note under section 8332 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS, PERSONNEL, ETC., TO PEACE CORPS

Section 601(b), (c) of Pub. L. 97-113 provided that:

“(b) There are transferred to the Director of the Peace Corps all functions relating to the Peace Corps which were vested in the Director of the ACTION Agency [now Corporation for National and Community Service] on the day before the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 29, 1981].

“(c)(1) All personnel, assets liabilities, contracts, property, records, and unexpended balances of appropriations, authorizations, allocations, and other funds are determined by the Director of the Office of Management and Budget, after consultation with the Comptroller General of the United States, the Director of the Peace Corps, and the Director of the ACTION Agency, to be employed, held, used, or assumed primarily in connection with any function relating to the Peace Corps before the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 29, 1981] are transferred to the Peace Corps. The transfer of unexpended balances pursuant to the preceding sentence shall be subject to section 202 of the Budget and Accounting Procedures Act of 1950 (31 U.S.C. 581c) [31 U.S.C. 1531].

“(2)(A) The transfer pursuant to this subsection of full-time personnel (except special Government employees) and part-time personnel holding permanent positions shall not cause any employee to be separated or reduced in rank, class, grade, or compensation, or otherwise suffer a loss of employment benefits for one year after—

“(i) the date on which the director of the Office of Management and Budget submits the report required by subsection (f)(1) of this section, or

“(ii) the effective date of the transfer of such employee, whichever occurs later.

“(B) The personnel transferred pursuant to this subsection shall, to the maximum extent feasible, be assigned to such related functions and organizational units in the Peace Corps as such personnel were assigned to immediately before the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 29, 1981].

“(C) Collective-bargaining agreements in effect on the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 29, 1981] covering personnel transferred pursuant to this sub-

section or employed on such date of enactment [Dec. 29, 1981] by the Peace Corps shall continue to be recognized by the Peace Corps until the termination date of such agreements or until such agreements are modified in accordance with applicable procedures.

“(3) Under such regulations as the President may prescribe, each person who, immediately before the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 29, 1981], does not hold an appointment under section 7(a)(2) of the Peace Corps Act [22 U.S.C. 2506(a)(2)] and who is determined under paragraph (1) of this subsection to be employed primarily in connection with any function relating to the Peace Corps shall, effective on the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 29, 1981], and notwithstanding subparagraph (B) of section 7(a)(2) of the Peace Corps Act, be appointed a member of the Foreign Service under section 7(a)(2) of the Peace Corps Act [22 U.S.C. 2506(a)(2)], and be appointed or assigned to an appropriate class of the Foreign Service, except that—

“(A) any person who, immediately before such date of enactment [Dec. 29, 1981], holds a career or career-conditional appointment shall not, without the consent of such person, be so appointed until three years after such date of enactment [Dec. 29, 1981], during which period any such person not consenting to be so appointed may continue to hold such career or career-conditional appointment; and

“(B) each person so appointed who, immediately before such date of enactment [Dec. 29, 1981], held a career or career-conditional appointment at grade GS-8 or lower of the General Schedule established by section 5332 of title 5, United States Code, shall be appointed a member of the Foreign Service for the duration of operations under the Peace Corps Act [this chapter].

Each person appointed under this paragraph shall receive basic compensation at the rate of such person's class determined by the President to be appropriate, except that the rate of basic compensation received by such person immediately before the effective date of such person's appointment under this paragraph shall not be reduced as a result of the provisions of this paragraph.”

REFERENCES TO ACTION AGENCY OR DIRECTOR OF ACTION AGENCY WITH RESPECT TO PEACE CORPS OR DIRECTOR FUNCTIONS OR ACTIVITIES

Section 601(g) of Pub. L. 97-113 provided that: “References in any statute, reorganization plan, Executive order, regulation, or other official document or proceeding to the ACTION Agency [now Corporation for National and Community Service] or the Director of the ACTION Agency with respect to functions or activities relating to the Peace Corps shall be deemed to refer to the Peace Corps or the Director of the Peace Corps, respectively.”

**§ 2501a. Voluntary service programs**

**(a) Congressional declaration of policy of encouragement**

The Congress declares that it is the policy of the United States and a further purpose of this chapter (1) to encourage countries and areas to establish programs under which their citizens and nationals would volunteer to serve in order to help meet the needs of less developed countries or areas for trained manpower; (2) to encourage less developed countries or areas to establish programs under which their citizens and nationals would volunteer to serve in order to meet their needs for trained manpower; and (3) to encourage the development of, and participation in, international voluntary service programs and activities.

**(b) Limitations on executive activities and use of funds**

(1) Activities carried out by the President in furtherance of the purposes of clauses (1) and (2) of subsection (a) of this section shall be limited to—

(A) furnishing technical assistance, materials, tools, supplies, and training appropriate to the support of volunteer programs in such countries or areas; and

(B) conducting demonstration projects in such countries or areas.

None of the funds made available to carry out the purposes of clauses (1) and (2) of subsection (a) of this section may be used to pay the administrative costs of any program or project, other than a demonstration project, or to assist any program or project of a paramilitary or military nature. Funds allocated for activities set forth in this paragraph should be kept to a minimum so that such allocation will not be detrimental to other Peace Corps programs and activities.

(2) Not more than 2 per centum of the amount appropriated to the Peace Corps for a fiscal year may be used in such fiscal year to carry out the provisions of clause (3) of subsection (a) of this section. Such funds may be contributed to educational institutions, private voluntary organizations, international organizations, and foreign governments or agencies thereof, to pay a fair and proportionate share of the costs of encouraging the development of, and participation in, international voluntary programs and activities.

**(c) Compromise of national character**

Such activities shall not compromise the national character of the Peace Corps.

(Pub. L. 87-293, title III, §301, as added Pub. L. 88-200, §8, Dec. 13, 1963, 77 Stat. 360; amended Pub. L. 91-99, §3, Oct. 29, 1969, 83 Stat. 166; Pub. L. 91-352, §9, July 24, 1970, 84 Stat. 465; Pub. L. 92-352, title IV, §402, July 13, 1972, 86 Stat. 495; Pub. L. 95-331, §§7, 8(a), Aug. 2, 1978, 92 Stat. 415, 416.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-293, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 612, as amended, known as the Peace Corps Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2501 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1978—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 95-331, §7, substituted provisions limiting activities to furnishing technical assistance, etc., in support of volunteer programs, and conducting demonstration projects and provisions relating to payment of costs of any program or project for provisions limiting activities to furnishing of knowledge and skills relating to the selection, training, and programming of voluntary manpower and provisions relating to use of available funds.

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 95-331, §8(a), substituted provisions authorizing use of 2 per centum of amount appropriated in a fiscal year for provisions authorizing use of \$350,000 in a fiscal year.

1972—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 92-352 substituted "\$350,000" for "\$300,000" and "in any fiscal year to carry" for "in fiscal year 1971 to carry".

1970—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 91-352, §9(a), changed the policy objective from encouragement of participation

in any international register which seeks to provide volunteers to serve in less developed countries or areas, training, or other assistance in order to help such countries or areas to meet their needs for trained manpower to encouragement of participation in international voluntary service programs and activities.

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 91-352, §9(b), substituted fiscal year 1971 for fiscal year 1970 and changed the authorization of the contribution of funds from a fair and proportionate share of the costs of the international registers to a fair and proportionate share of the costs of encouraging the development of and participation in international voluntary programs and activities.

1969—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 91-99, §3(1), redesignated existing provisions as cls. (1) and (2), and added cl. (3).

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 91-99, §3(2), redesignated existing provisions as cl. (1), struck out the provision which authorized the use of not more than \$300,000 in carrying out the purposes of this section in fiscal year 1964 and inserted references to cls. (1) and (2) of subsec. (a) of this section, and added cl. (2).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Section 8(b) of Pub. L. 95-331 provided that: "The amendment made by subsection (a) [amending this section] shall take effect on October 1, 1978."

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of Peace Corps by section 1-103 of Ex. Ord. No. 12137, May 16, 1979, 44 F.R. 29023, eff. May 16, 1979, set out as a note under section 2501 of this title.

**§ 2502. Presidential authorization; appropriations and financial readjustments**

**(a) Terms and conditions of authorization**

The President is authorized to carry out programs in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter, on such terms and conditions as he may determine.

**(b) Authorization of appropriations**

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out the purposes of this chapter \$218,146,000 for fiscal year 1993, which are authorized to remain available until September 30, 1994.

**(c) Appropriations for increases in salary, pay, etc.**

In addition to the amount authorized to be appropriated by subsection (b) of this section to carry out the purposes of this chapter, there are authorized to be appropriated for increases in salary, pay, retirement, or other employee benefits authorized by law, for each fiscal year, such sums as may be necessary.

**(d) Integration of women into national economics**

In recognition of the fact that women in developing countries play a significant role in economic production, family support, and the overall development process, the Peace Corps shall be administered so as to give particular attention to those programs, projects, and activities which tend to integrate women into the national economics of developing countries, thus improving their status and assisting the total development effort.

(e), (f) **Repealed.** Pub. L. 97-113, title VI, § 601(e)(1), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1542

(g) **Redesignated (d)**

(h) **Integration of disabled people**

In recognition of the fact that there are over 400,000,000 disabled people in the world, 95 percent of whom are among the poorest of the poor, the Peace Corps shall be administered so as to give particular attention to programs, projects, and activities which tend to integrate disabled people into the national economies of developing countries, thus improving their status and assisting the total development effort.

(Pub. L. 87-293, title I, § 3, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 612; Pub. L. 87-442, Apr. 27, 1962, 76 Stat. 62; Pub. L. 88-200, § 1, Dec. 13, 1963, 77 Stat. 359; Pub. L. 88-285, Mar. 17, 1964, 78 Stat. 166; Pub. L. 89-134, § 1, Aug. 24, 1965, 79 Stat. 549; Pub. L. 89-572, § 1, Sept. 13, 1966, 80 Stat. 764; Pub. L. 90-175, Dec. 5, 1967, 81 Stat. 542; Pub. L. 90-362, June 27, 1968, 82 Stat. 250; Pub. L. 91-99, § 1, Oct. 29, 1969, 83 Stat. 166; Pub. L. 91-352, § 1, July 24, 1970, 84 Stat. 464; Pub. L. 92-135, Oct. 8, 1971, 85 Stat. 376; Pub. L. 92-352, title IV, § 401, July 13, 1972, 86 Stat. 495; Pub. L. 93-49, § 1, June 25, 1973, 87 Stat. 99; Pub. L. 93-302, §§ 1, 2, June 1, 1974, 88 Stat. 191; Pub. L. 94-130, §§ 1-3, Nov. 14, 1975, 89 Stat. 684; Pub. L. 94-281, §§ 1, 2, May 7, 1976, 90 Stat. 458; Pub. L. 95-102, §§ 1, 2, Aug. 15, 1977, 91 Stat. 841; Pub. L. 95-331, § 3, Aug. 2, 1978, 92 Stat. 414; Pub. L. 96-53, title III, § 301, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 370; Pub. L. 96-533, title VI, § 601(a), (b), Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3155; Pub. L. 97-113, title VI, §§ 601(e)(1), 602, 603, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1542; Pub. L. 99-83, title XI, § 1101, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 272; Pub. L. 99-399, title XIII, § 1301, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 897; Pub. L. 102-565, § 1, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 4265.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsections (a) to (c), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-293, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 612, as amended, known as the Peace Corps Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2501 of this title and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 102-565 amended subsec. (b) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (b) read as follows: "There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out the purposes of this chapter \$130,000,000 for the fiscal year 1986 and \$137,200,000 for the fiscal year 1987."

1986—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 99-399 in amending subsec. (b) generally, substituted provision authorizing appropriations of \$130,000,000 for fiscal year 1986 and \$137,200,000 for fiscal year 1987 for provision authorizing appropriations of \$130,000,000 for fiscal years 1986 and 1987, providing that unobligated balances continue to be made available for the general purposes for which appropriated, and prohibiting the use of funds to carry out this chapter for the Volunteers to America Program or any similar program involving the service or training of foreign nationals in the United States.

1985—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 99-83 substituted provisions authorizing appropriations of \$130,000,000 for fiscal years 1986 and 1987 for provisions authorizing appropriations of not to exceed \$105,000,000 for fiscal years 1982 and 1983, and struck out provisions limiting use of funds in fiscal year 1967, and limiting contracts and agreements for research.

1981—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 97-113, § 602(a), substituted "the fiscal year 1982 not to exceed \$105,000,000 and for

the fiscal year 1983 not to exceed \$105,000,000" for "fiscal year 1981 not to exceed \$118,000,000".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 97-113, § 602(b), substituted "each fiscal year" for "fiscal year 1981".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 97-113, § 601(e)(1), redesignated subsec. (g) as (d) and struck out former subsec. (d) which provided for rectification of imbalance in readjustment allowance for the period Mar. 1, 1961, to Feb. 28, 1973.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 97-113, § 601(e)(1), struck out subsec. (e) which related to waiver of claims resulting from erroneous payments to volunteers who terminated their volunteer service between Mar. 1, 1961, and Feb. 28, 1973.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 97-113, § 601(e)(1), struck out subsec. (f) which related to relief from liability for improper payment of readjustment allowances made to volunteers between Mar. 1, 1961, and Feb. 28, 1973.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 97-113, § 601(e)(1), redesignated subsec. (g) as (d).

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 97-113, § 603, added subsec. (h).

1980—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 96-533, § 601(a), substituted appropriations authorization of \$118,000,000 for fiscal year 1981 for such authorization of \$105,404,000 for fiscal year 1980.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 96-533, § 601(b), substituted "1981" for "1980".

1979—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 96-53, § 301(1), substituted provisions authorizing to be appropriated for fiscal year 1980 not to exceed \$105,404,000, for provisions authorizing to be appropriated for fiscal year 1978 not to exceed \$86,544,000, and for fiscal year 1979 not to exceed \$112,424,000, and setting forth availability of funds for the United Nations contributions by the Corps.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 96-53, § 301(2), substituted "1980" for "1978, \$1,069,000, and for fiscal year 1979".

1978—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 95-331, § 3(1), substituted provisions authorizing to be appropriated for fiscal year 1978 not to exceed \$86,544,000 and for fiscal year 1979 not to exceed \$112,424,000 and limitation with respect to volunteer program, for provisions authorizing to be appropriated for fiscal year 1978 not to exceed \$82,900,000.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 95-331, § 3(2), inserted provisions increasing 1978 appropriation from \$1,000,000 to \$1,069,000, and provisions authorizing to be appropriated such sums as necessary for fiscal year 1979.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 95-331, § 3(3), added subsec. (g).

1977—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 95-102, § 1, substituted provisions authorizing appropriations for fiscal year 1978 not to exceed \$82,900,000 for provisions authorizing appropriations for fiscal year 1976 not to exceed \$88,468,000, for the period July 1, 1976, through Sept. 30, 1976, not to exceed \$27,887,800, for fiscal year 1977 not to exceed \$81,000,000.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 95-102, § 2, substituted provisions authorizing additional appropriations for fiscal year 1978 of \$1,000,000 for increases in salary, pay, etc., for provisions authorizing additional appropriations for fiscal year 1976 and the period July 1, 1976, through Sept. 30, 1976, not in excess of \$1,000,000, and for fiscal year 1977 such sums as may be necessary for increases in salary, pay, etc.

1976—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 94-281, § 1, authorized appropriation of not to exceed \$81,000,000 for fiscal year 1977.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 94-281, § 2, inserted provisions relating to fiscal year 1977 and authorization of such sums as may be necessary for such year.

1975—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 94-130, § 1, authorized appropriation of \$88,468,000 for fiscal year 1976, and \$27,887,800 for period July 1, 1976, through Sept. 30, 1976, and struck out appropriation authorization of \$82,256,000 for fiscal year 1975.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 94-130, § 2, authorized appropriation of \$1,000,000 for fiscal year 1976, for increase in employee benefits, in addition to amounts authorized for fiscal year 1976, and for period July 1, 1976, through Sept. 30, 1976, and deleted prior appropriation authorization of \$1,000,000 for fiscal year 1975, for increase in employee benefits, in addition to amounts authorized for fiscal year 1975.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 94-130, §3, substituted "shall transfer", "no later than December 31, 1975, not to exceed \$315,000 from any sums available to carry out the purposes of this chapter in fiscal year 1976" for "is authorized to transfer" and "from any sums appropriated to carry out the purposes of this chapter in fiscal year 1975 not to exceed \$315,000".

1974—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 93-302, §1, substituted "There are authorized to be appropriated for fiscal year 1975 not to exceed \$82,256,000 to carry out the purposes of this chapter" for "There are authorized to be appropriated to the President for the fiscal year 1974 not to exceed \$77,001,000 to carry out the purposes of this chapter".

Subsecs. (c) to (f). Pub. L. 93-302, §2, added subsecs. (c) to (f).

1973—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 93-49 substituted "1974" for "1973" and "\$77,001,000" for "\$88,027,000".

1972—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 92-352 substituted "1973" for "1972" and "\$88,027,000" for "\$77,200,000".

1971—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 92-135 substituted "1972" for "1971" and "\$77,200,000" for "\$98,800,000".

1970—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 91-352 substituted "1971" for "1970" and "\$98,800,000" for "\$98,450,000".

1969—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 91-99 substituted "1970" for "1969" and "\$98,450,000" for "\$112,800,000", and inserted provision prohibiting funds authorized to carry out the purposes of this chapter to be used to carry out the Volunteers to America Program conducted under the Mutual Educational and Cultural Exchange Act of 1961, or any similar program.

1968—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 90-362 substituted "1969" for "1968" and "\$112,800,000" for "\$115,700,000".

1967—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 90-175 substituted "1968" for "1967" and "\$115,700,000" for "\$110,000,000".

1966—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 89-572 authorized an appropriation of \$110,000,000 for the fiscal year 1967 and provided for obligation of limited amount of funds under contracts or agreements to carry out research relating to the basic responsibilities of the Peace Corps and for continuing availability of unobligated balances of funds.

1965—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 89-134 substituted "1966" for "1965" and inserted \$500,000 limit on funds available for research.

1964—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 88-285 authorized an appropriation of \$115,000,000 for fiscal year 1965.

1963—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 88-200 substituted "1964" and "\$102,000,000" for "1963" and "\$63,750,000", respectively.

1962—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 87-442 authorized an appropriation of \$63,750,000 for the fiscal year 1963.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1979 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-53 effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 512(a) of Pub. L. 96-53, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1977 AMENDMENT

Section 3 of Pub. L. 95-102 provided that: "The amendments made by this Act [amending this section] shall take effect on October 1, 1977."

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS; ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Functions of President under this section delegated to and funds available to President under this chapter allocated to Director of Peace Corps by sections 1-103 and 1-108 of Ex. Ord. No. 12137, May 16, 1979, 44 F.R. 29023, eff. May 16, 1979, set out as a note under section 2501 of this title.

#### APPLICABILITY OF PUB. L. 97-113 TO ACTIONS PRIOR TO DECEMBER 29, 1981

Section 601(e)(2) of Pub. L. 97-113 provided that: "The amendment made by paragraph (1) of this subsection

[redesignating former subsec. (g) as (d) and striking out subsecs. (d) to (f) of this section] shall not alter or affect (A) the validity of any action taken before the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 29, 1981] under those provisions of law repealed by that amendment, or (B) the liability of any person for any payment described in section 3(f) of the Peace Corps Act [former subsec. (f) of this section] as in effect immediately before the date of the enactment of this Act."

#### PAYMENT OF READJUSTMENT ALLOWANCES FROM AMOUNT APPROPRIATED FOR FISCAL YEAR 1977; LIMITATION ON AMOUNT AVAILABLE

Section 3 of Pub. L. 94-281 provided that: "Of the amount appropriated for fiscal year 1977 to carry out the purposes of the Peace Corps Act [see Short Title note set out under section 2501 of this title], \$10,100,000 shall be available only for payment of the readjustment allowances authorized by sections 5(c) and 6(1) of such Act [sections 2504(c) and 2505(1) of this title]."

### § 2503. Director and Deputy Director; delegation of functions

#### (a) Appointment

The President may appoint, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, a Director of the Peace Corps and a Deputy Director of the Peace Corps.

#### (b) Exercise of functions by Director

The President may exercise any functions vested in him by this chapter through the Director of the Peace Corps. The Director of the Peace Corps may promulgate such rules and regulations as he may deem necessary or appropriate to carry out such functions, and may delegate to any of his subordinates authority to perform any of such functions.

#### (c) Powers and functions of Secretary of State; coordination of activities; responsibility for supervision and direction of programs

(1) Nothing contained in this chapter shall be construed to infringe upon the powers or functions of the Secretary of State.

(2) The President shall prescribe appropriate procedures to assure coordination of Peace Corps activities with other activities of the United States Government in each country, under the leadership of the chief of the United States diplomatic mission.

(3) Under the direction of the President, the Secretary of State shall be responsible for the continuous supervision and general direction of the programs authorized by this chapter, to the end that such programs are effectively integrated both at home and abroad and the foreign policy of the United States is best served thereby.

(4) The Director of the Peace Corps may prescribe such regulations as may be necessary to assure that no individual performing service for the Peace Corps under any authority contained in this chapter shall engage in any activity determined by the Director to be detrimental to the best interests of the United States.

#### (d) Prohibition on performance of services more usefully performed by other agencies

Except with the approval of the Secretary of State, the Peace Corps shall not be assigned to perform services which could more usefully be performed by other available agencies of the

United States Government in the country concerned.

(Pub. L. 87-293, title I, § 4, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 612; Pub. L. 88-426, title III, § 305(27), Aug. 14, 1964, 78 Stat. 426; Pub. L. 91-352, § 2, July 24, 1970, 84 Stat. 464; Pub. L. 97-113, title VI, § 601(d)(1), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1541.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subssecs. (b) and (c), was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-293, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 612, as amended, known as the Peace Corps Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2501 of this title and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1981—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 97-113 substituted provision authorizing the President to exercise functions vested in him under this chapter through the Director of the Peace Corps and the Director of the Peace Corps to promulgate rules and regulations as deemed appropriate for provision authorizing the President to exercise functions vested in him under this chapter through such agency or officer of the United States Government as he directs and the head of such agency or such officer to promulgate rules and regulations as deemed appropriate.

1970—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 91-352 added par. (4).

1964—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 88-426 repealed provisions which prescribed the compensation of the Director and Deputy Director. See sections 5314 and 5315 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1964 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 88-426 effective on first day of first pay period which begins on or after July 1, 1964, except to extent provided in section 501(c) of Pub. L. 88-426, see section 501 of Pub. L. 88-426.

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

Transfer to President of the United States of functions conferred upon Director of Peace Corps by subsec. (c)(4) of this section, see section 2(b) of Reorg. Plan No. 1 of 1971, eff. July 1, 1971, 36 F.R. 11181, 85 Stat. 819, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under subssecs. (c)(1), (4), (d) delegated to Director of Peace Corps by sections 1-103 and 1-301(a), (b) of Ex. Ord. No. 12137, May 16, 1979, 44 F.R. 29023, eff. May 16, 1979, set out as a note under section 2501 of this title.

#### CONTINUING FUNCTIONS OF DIRECTOR OF PEACE CORPS FROM DECEMBER 14, 1981

Section 601(d)(2) of Pub. L. 97-113 provided: “The Director of the Peace Corps shall continue to exercise all the functions under the Peace Corps Act [this chapter] or any other law or authority which the Director was performing on December 14, 1981.”

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Compensation of Director and Deputy Director of Peace Corps, see sections 5314 and 5315 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

### § 2504. Peace Corps volunteers

#### (a) Persons eligible; terms and conditions of service; Federal employee status; racial, sex, religious, or color discrimination

The President may enroll in the Peace Corps for service abroad qualified citizens and nationals of the United States (referred to in this

chapter as “volunteers”). The terms and conditions of the enrollment, training, compensation, hours of work, benefits, leave, termination, and all other terms and conditions of the service of volunteers shall be exclusively those set forth in this chapter and those consistent therewith which the President may prescribe; and, except as provided in this chapter, volunteers shall not be deemed officers or employees or otherwise in the service or employment of, or holding office under, the United States for any purpose. In carrying out this subsection, there shall be no discrimination against any person on account of race, sex, creed, or color.

#### (b) Living allowances, travel, leave and related items; transfers of supplies and equipment

Volunteers shall be provided with such living, travel, and leave allowances, and such housing, transportation, supplies, equipment, subsistence, and clothing as the President may determine to be necessary for their maintenance and to insure their health and their capacity to serve effectively. Supplies or equipment provided volunteers to insure their capacity to serve effectively may be transferred to the government or to other entities of the country or area with which they have been serving, when no longer necessary for such purpose, and when such transfers would further the purposes of this chapter. Transportation and travel allowances may also be provided, in such circumstances as the President may determine, for applicants for enrollment to or from places of training and places of enrollment, and for former volunteers from places of termination to their homes in the United States.

#### (c) Readjustment allowances

Volunteers shall be entitled to receive a readjustment allowance at a rate not less than \$125 for each month of satisfactory service as determined by the President. The readjustment allowance of each volunteer shall be payable on his return to the United States: *Provided, however*, That, under such circumstances as the President may determine, the accrued readjustment allowance, or any part thereof, may be paid to the volunteer, members of his family or others, during the period of his service, or prior to his return to the United States. In the event of the volunteer's death during the period of his service, the amount of any unpaid readjustment allowance shall be paid in accordance with the provisions of section 5582(b) of title 5. For purposes of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, a volunteer shall be deemed to be paid and to receive each amount of a readjustment allowance to which he is entitled after December 31, 1964, when such amount is transferred from funds made available under this chapter to the fund from which such readjustment allowance is payable.

#### (d) Repealed. Pub. L. 89-554, § 8(a), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 661

#### (e) Health care

Volunteers shall receive such health care during their service, applicants for enrollment shall receive such health examinations preparatory to their service, applicants for enrollment who



have accepted an invitation to begin a period of training under section 2507(a) of this title shall receive such immunization and dental care preparatory to their service, and former volunteers shall receive such health examinations within six months after termination of their service, as the President may deem necessary or appropriate. Subject to such conditions as the President may prescribe, such health care may be provided in any facility of any agency of the United States Government, and in such cases the appropriation for maintaining and operating such facility shall be reimbursed from appropriations available under this chapter.

**(f) Retirement and other credits based upon length of service**

(1) Any period of satisfactory service of a volunteer under this chapter shall be credited in connection with subsequent employment in the same manner as a like period of civilian employment by the United States Government—

(A) for the purposes of section 816(a) of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [22 U.S.C. 4056(a)] and every other Act establishing a retirement system for civilian employees of any United States Government agency; and

(B) except as otherwise determined by the President, for the purposes of determining seniority, reduction in force, and layoff rights, leave entitlement, and other rights and privileges based upon length of service under the laws administered by the Director of the Office of Personnel Management, the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [22 U.S.C. 3901 et seq.], and every other Act establishing or governing terms and conditions of service of civilian employees of the United States Government: *Provided*, That service of a volunteer shall not be credited toward completion of any probationary or trial period or completion of any service requirement for career appointment.

(2) For the purposes of paragraph (1)(A) of this subsection, volunteers and volunteer leaders shall be deemed to be receiving compensation during their service at the respective rates of readjustment allowances payable under subsection (c) of this section and section 2505(1) of this title.

**(g) Assignment to other entities**

The President may detail or assign volunteers or otherwise make them available to any entity referred to in paragraph (1) of section 2509(a) of this title on such terms and conditions as he may determine: *Provided*, That not to exceed two hundred volunteers may be assigned to carry out secretarial or clerical duties on the staffs of the Peace Corps representatives abroad: *Provided, however*, That any volunteer so detailed or assigned shall continue to be entitled to the allowances, benefits and privileges of volunteers authorized under or pursuant to this chapter.

**(h) Tort claims; absentee voting; general average contributions for transportation of baggage; check cashing and currency exchange; claims for overpayment of pay; passport fees**

Volunteers shall be deemed employees of the United States Government for the purposes of the Federal Tort Claims Act and any other Fed-

eral tort liability statute, the Federal Voting Assistance Act of 1955<sup>1</sup> [42 U.S.C. 1973cc et seq.], section 3342(a), (b), and (c)(1) of title 31, section 5584 of title 5 (and readjustment allowances paid under this chapter shall be considered as pay for purposes of such section), and section 214 of this title.

**(i) Termination of service**

The service of a volunteer may be terminated at any time at the pleasure of the President.

**(j) Oath of office**

Upon enrollment in the Peace Corps, every volunteer shall take the oath prescribed for persons appointed to any office of honor or profit by section 3331 of title 5, and shall swear (or affirm) that he does not advocate the overthrow of our constitutional form of government in the United States, and that he is not a member of an organization that advocates the overthrow of our constitutional form of government in the United States, knowing that such organization so advocates.

**(k) Counseling programs for returned volunteers**

In order to assure that the skills and experience which former volunteers have derived from their training and their service abroad are best utilized in the national interest, the President may, in cooperation with agencies of the United States, private employers, educational institutions and other entities of the United States, undertake programs under which volunteers would be counseled with respect to opportunities for further education and employment.

**(l) Legal expenses of defendant in judicial or administrative proceedings**

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, counsel may be employed and counsel fees, court costs, bail, and other expenses incident to the defense of volunteers may be paid in foreign judicial or administrative proceedings to which volunteers have been made parties.

**(m) Allowances and expenses of minor children**

The minor children of a volunteer living with the volunteer may receive—

(1) such living, travel, education, and leave allowances, such housing, transportation, subsistence, and essential special items of clothing as the President may determine;

(2) such health care, including health care following the volunteer's service for illness or injury incurred during such service, and health and accident insurance, as the President may determine and upon such terms as he may determine, including health care in any facility referred to in subsection (e) of this section, subject to such conditions as the President may prescribe and subject to reimbursement of appropriations as provided in such subsection (e);

(3) such orientation, language, and other training necessary to accomplish the purposes of this chapter as the President may determine; and

(4) the benefits of subsection (l) of this section on the same basis as volunteers.

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

**(n) Moving expenses**

The costs of packing and unpacking, transporting to and from a place of storage, and storing the furniture and household and personal effects of a volunteer who has one or more minor children at the time of his entering a period of pre-enrollment training may be paid from the date of his departure from his place of residence to enter training until no later than three months after termination of his service.

(Pub. L. 87-293, title I, § 5, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 613; Pub. L. 88-200, § 2, Dec. 13, 1963, 77 Stat. 359; Pub. L. 89-134, § 2, Aug. 24, 1965, 79 Stat. 549; Pub. L. 89-554, § 8(a), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 661, 662; Pub. L. 89-572, § 2(a), Sept. 13, 1966, 80 Stat. 765; Pub. L. 91-99, § 2, Oct. 29, 1969, 83 Stat. 166; Pub. L. 91-352, § 3, July 24, 1970, 84 Stat. 464; Pub. L. 94-130, §§ 4, 6, Nov. 14, 1975, 89 Stat. 684; Pub. L. 95-331, § 4, Aug. 2, 1978, 92 Stat. 414; 1978 Reorg. Plan No. 2, § 102, eff. Jan. 1, 1979, 43 F.R. 36037, 92 Stat. 3783; Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2202(a), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2157; Pub. L. 97-113, title VI, §§ 604(b), 606, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1543; Pub. L. 99-83, title XI, § 1105(b), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 276; Pub. L. 99-514, § 2, Oct. 22, 1986, 100 Stat. 2095.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a), (e) to (h), and (m), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-293, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 612, as amended, known as the Peace Corps Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2501 of this title and Tables.

The Internal Revenue Code of 1986, referred to in subsec. (c), is classified generally to Title 26, Internal Revenue Code.

The Foreign Service Act of 1980, referred to in subsec. (f)(1), is Pub. L. 96-465, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2071, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 52 (§ 3901 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3901 of this title and Tables.

The Federal Tort Claims Act, referred to in subsec. (h), is classified generally to section 1346(b) and chapter 171 (§ 2671 et seq.) of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

The Federal Voting Assistance Act of 1955, referred to in subsec. (h), is act Aug. 9, 1955, ch. 656, 69 Stat. 584, as amended, which was classified principally to subchapter I-D (§ 1973cc et seq.) of chapter 20 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare, and which was repealed by Pub. L. 99-410, title II, § 203, Aug. 28, 1986, 100 Stat. 930. See section 1973ff et seq. of Title 42.

## CODIFICATION

In subsec. (h), "section 3342(a), (b), and (c)(1) of title 31" substituted for "the Act of December 23, 1944, chapter 716, section 1, as amended (31 U.S.C. 492a)" on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, § 4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

In subsec. (j), "section 3331 of title 5" substituted for "section 1757 of the Revised Statutes of the United States, as amended (5 U.S.C. 16)" on authority of Pub. L. 89-554, § 7(b), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 631, the first section of which enacted Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

## AMENDMENTS

1986—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 99-514 substituted "Internal Revenue Code of 1986" for "Internal Revenue Code of 1954".

1985—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99-83 in amending last sentence generally, struck out provisions prohibiting political tests.

1981—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 97-113, § 606, substituted "not less than \$125" for "not to exceed \$125".

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 97-113, § 604(b), struck out provision making section 2702 of this title, relating to malpractice protection, applicable to volunteers and vesting the President with the authority reposed in the Secretary of State in section 2702(f) of this title, and deeming a Peace Corps representative to be a principal representative of the United States for purposes of section 2702(g) of this title. See section 2509(i) and (j) of this title.

1980—Subsec. (f)(1)(A). Pub. L. 96-465, § 2202-(a)(1)(A), substituted "section 816(a) of the Foreign Service Act of 1980" for "section 852(a)(1) of the Foreign Service Act of 1946, as amended (22 U.S.C. 1092(a)(1))."

Subsec. (f)(1)(B). Pub. L. 96-465, § 2202(a)(1)(B), substituted "Foreign Service Act of 1980" for "Foreign Service Act of 1946".

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 96-465, § 2202(a)(2), substituted "section 2702 of this title" for "section 817 of this title" and "President" for "Director of ACTION".

1978—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 95-331, § 4(1), struck out provisions relating to allowances for volunteers with minor children at the time of their entering a period of pre-enrollment training.

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 95-331, § 4(2), inserted provisions relating to applicability of malpractice protection.

1975—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94-130, § 4, prohibited discrimination against any person on account of sex.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 94-130, § 6, substituted \$125 for \$75 in initial clause of first sentence.

1970—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 91-352, § 3(a), inserted exception that in case of volunteers having one or more children at time of entering a period of pre-enrollment training, one parent would be entitled to receive a readjustment allowance not exceeding \$125 for each month of satisfactory service as determined by the President, and substituted "section 5582(b) of title 5" for "section 61f of title 5".

Subsecs. (m), (n). Pub. L. 91-352, § 3(b), added subsecs. (m) and (n).

1969—Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 91-99 inserted provision that for purposes of section 5584 of title 5 (and readjustment allowances made thereto) volunteers are to be deemed employees of the United States Government.

1966—Subsec. (d). Repealed by Pub. L. 89-554, and now covered by section 8142 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

Subsec. (f). Repealed, as applicable to the Civil Service Retirement Act, as amended, by Pub. L. 89-554, and now covered by section 8332(b) of Title 5.

Subsec. (h). Repealed, as applicable to act June 4, 1954, chapter 264, section 5 (5 U.S.C. 73b-5), by Pub. L. 89-554, and now covered by section 5732 of Title 5.

Subsec. (l). Pub. L. 89-572 added subsec. (l).

1965—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 89-134, § 2(a), provided that, for purposes of the Internal Revenue Code of 1954, a volunteer is deemed to be paid and to receive readjustment allowance to which he is entitled after December 31, 1964, when the amount is transferred from funds made available under this chapter to the fund from which the readjustment allowance is paid.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 89-134, § 2(b), extended health care provisions to include health examinations for applicants for enrollment preparatory to their service, immunization and dental care for applicants who have accepted an invitation to begin a period of training under section 2507(a) of this title, and health examinations to former volunteers within six months after termination of their service.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 89-134, § 2(c), authorized an increase from 100 to 200 in the number of volunteer secretaries and clerical workers permitted to serve on the staffs of Peace Corps representatives abroad.

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 89-134, § 2(d), extended check cashing and currency exchange transaction privileges of government employees to Peace Corps volunteers.

1963—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 88-200, § 2(a), inserted provision for transfer of supplies and equipment.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 88-200, § 2(b), substituted "a readjustment allowance" for "termination payments" in

first sentence, the second sentence reading “The readjustment allowance of each volunteer shall be payable on his return to the United States: *Provided, however*, That, under such circumstances as the President may determine, the accrued readjustment allowance, or any part thereof, may be paid to the volunteer, members of his family or others, during the period of his service, or prior to his return to the United States” for “The termination payment of each volunteer shall be payable at the termination of his service, or may be paid during the course of his service to the volunteer, to members of his family or to others, under such circumstances as the President may determine” and “readjustment allowance” for “termination payment” in third sentence.

Subsec. (f)(2), Pub. L. 88-200, §2(c), substituted “readjustment allowances” for “termination payments.”

Subsec. (g), Pub. L. 88-200, §2(d), provided for assignment of volunteers to duties on staffs of Peace Corps representatives abroad.

Subsec. (h), Pub. L. 88-200, §2(e), provided that volunteers shall be deemed employees of the U.S. Government for the purposes of absentee voting assistance and payment of general average contributions for transportation of baggage.

Subsec. (k), Pub. L. 88-200, §2(f), added subsec. (k).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-465 effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“Director of the Office of Personnel Management” substituted for “Civil Service Commission” in subsec. (f)(1)(B), pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1978, §102, 43 F.R. 36037, 92 Stat. 3783, set out under section 1101 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, which transferred all functions vested by statute in United States Civil Service Commission to Director of Office of Personnel Management (except as otherwise specified), effective Jan. 1, 1979, as provided by section 1-102 of Ex. Ord. No. 12107, Dec. 28, 1978, 44 F.R. 1055, set out under section 1101 of Title 5.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section, except those under subsec. (f)(1)(B), delegated to Director of Peace Corps, with function of prescribing conditions in subsec. (e) to be exercised in consultation with head of agency responsible for facility, by sections 1-103, 1-106, and 1-301(c) of Ex. Ord. No. 12137, May 16, 1979, 44 F.R. 29023, eff. May 16, 1979, set out as a note under section 2501 of this title.

#### EVALUATION OF HEALTH-CARE SERVICES PROVIDED TO PEACE CORPS VOLUNTEERS

Pub. L. 102-565, §3, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 4266, provided that:

“(a) **IN GENERAL.**—The Director of the Peace Corps shall contract with an eligible organization or organizations to conduct before January 1, 1997, a total of three evaluations of the health-care needs of the Peace Corps volunteers and the adequacy of the system through which the Peace Corps provides health-care services in meeting those needs.

“(b) **REQUIREMENTS OF THE EVALUATIONS.**—Each evaluation shall include an assessment of the adequacy of the Peace Corps health-care system—

“(1) to provide diagnostic, treatment, and referral services to meet the health-care needs of Peace Corps volunteers, and

“(2) to conduct health examinations of applicants for enrollment as Peace Corps volunteers and to pro-

vide immunization and dental care preparatory to service of applicants for enrollment who have accepted an invitation to begin a period of training for service as a Peace Corps volunteer.

“(c) **REPORTS TO THE PEACE CORPS.**—An organization making an evaluation under this section shall submit to the Director of the Peace Corps a report containing its findings and recommendations not later than May 31, 1993, December 31, 1994, and December 31, 1996, as the case may be. Each report shall include recommendations regarding appropriate standards and procedures for ensuring the furnishing of quality medical care and for measuring the quality of care provided to Peace Corps volunteers.

“(d) **REPORT TO CONGRESS.**—Not later than 90 days after receipt of a report required by subsection (c), the Director of the Peace Corps shall transmit the report, together with the Director’s comments, to the appropriate congressional committees.

“(e) **DEFINITIONS.**—For purposes of this section—

“(1) the term ‘appropriate congressional committees’ means the Committee on Foreign Relations and the Committee on Appropriations of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs [now Committee on International Relations] and the Committee on Appropriations of the House of Representatives; and

“(2) the term ‘eligible organization’ means an independent health-care accreditation organization or other independent organization with expertise in evaluating health-care systems similar to that of the Peace Corps.”

#### LEGAL EXPENSES INCURRED PRIOR TO SEPT. 13, 1966

Section 2(b) of Pub. L. 89-572 provided that: “The authority contained in subsection (a) [adding subsec. (l) to this section] shall extend to counsels fees, costs, and other expenses of the types specified therein that were incurred prior to the date of enactment of this Act [Sept. 13, 1966].”

#### EX. ORD. NO. 11103. APPOINTMENT OF FORMER VOLUNTEERS TO CIVILIAN CAREER SERVICES

Ex. Ord. No. 11103, Apr. 10, 1963, 28 F.R. 3571, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 12107, Dec. 28, 1978, 44 F.R. 1055, provided:

By virtue of the authority vested in me by the Civil Service Act (22 Stat. 403) [see, generally, section 1101 et seq. of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees], and section 1753 of the Revised Statutes [section 3301 of Title 5], and as President of the United States, it is hereby ordered as follows:

**SECTION 1.** Under such regulations as the Office of Personnel Management may prescribe, the head of any agency in the Executive Branch may appoint in the competitive service any person who is certified by the Director of the Peace Corps as having served satisfactorily as a Volunteer or Volunteer Leader under the Peace Corps Act [see Short Title note set out under section 2501 of this title] and who passes such examination as the Office of Personnel Management may prescribe. Any person so appointed shall, upon completion of the prescribed probationary period, acquire a competitive status.

**SEC. 2.** The head of any agency in the Executive Branch having an established merit system in the excepted service may appoint in such service any person who is certified by the Director of the Peace Corps as having served satisfactorily as a Volunteer or Volunteer Leader under the Peace Corps Act [see Short Title note set out under section 2501 of this title] and who passes such examination as such agency head may prescribe.

**SEC. 3.** Certificates of satisfactory service for the purposes of this order shall be issued only to persons who have completed a full term of service (approximately two years) under the Peace Corps Act [see Short Title note set out under section 2501 of this title]: *Provided*, That such certificates may be issued to persons who have completed a lesser period of satisfactory service

if, in the judgment of the Director of the Peace Corps, (1) their service was of sufficient duration to demonstrate their capability to complete satisfactorily a full term, and (2) their failure to complete a full term was due to circumstances beyond their control.

SEC. 4. Any appointment under this order shall be effected within a period of one year after completion of the appointee's service under the Peace Corps Act [see Short Title note set out under section 2501 of this title]: *Provided*, That such period may be extended to not more than three years in the case of persons who, following such service, are engaged in military service, in the pursuit of studies at a recognized institution of higher learning, or in other activities which, in the view of the appointing authority, warrant an extension of such period.

SEC. 5. Any law, Executive Order, or regulation which would disqualify an applicant for appointment in the competitive service or in the excepted service concerned shall also disqualify an applicant for appointment under this order.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2505, 2509 of this title; title 5 sections 8142, 8332, 8334, 8422; title 26 sections 912, 3401; title 42 section 409.

### § 2505. Peace Corps volunteer leaders; number; applicability of chapter; benefits

The President may enroll in the Peace Corps qualified citizens or nationals of the United States whose services are required for supervisory or other special duties or responsibilities in connection with programs under this chapter (referred to in this chapter as "volunteer leaders"). The ratio of the total number of volunteer leaders to the total number of volunteers in service at any one time shall not exceed one to twenty-five. Except as otherwise provided in this chapter, all of the provisions of this chapter applicable to volunteers shall be applicable to volunteer leaders, and the term "volunteers" shall include "volunteer leaders": *Provided, however, That—*

(1) volunteer leaders shall be entitled to receive a readjustment allowance at a rate not less than \$125 for each month of satisfactory service as determined by the President;

(2) spouses and minor children of volunteer leaders may receive such living, travel, and leave allowances, and such housing, transportation, subsistence, and essential special items of clothing, as the President may determine, but the authority contained in this paragraph shall be exercised only under exceptional circumstances;

(3) spouses and minor children of volunteer leaders accompanying them may receive such health care as the President may determine and upon such terms as he may determine, including health care in any facility referred to in section 2504(e) of this title, subject to such conditions as the President may prescribe and subject to reimbursement of appropriations as provided in section 2504(e) of this title; and

(4) spouses and minor children of volunteer leaders accompanying them may receive such orientation, language, and other training necessary to accomplish the purposes of this chapter as the President may determine.

(Pub. L. 87-293, title I, § 6, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 615; Pub. L. 88-200, § 3, Dec. 13, 1963, 77 Stat. 360; Pub. L. 89-134, § 3, Aug. 24, 1965, 79 Stat. 549; Pub.

L. 91-352, § 4, July 24, 1970, 84 Stat. 465; Pub. L. 97-387, § 1(a), Dec. 23, 1982, 96 Stat. 1947.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-293, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 612, as amended, known as the Peace Corps Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2501 of this title and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1982—Par. (1). Pub. L. 97-387 substituted "not less than \$125" for "not to exceed \$125".

1970—Pub. L. 91-352 struck out provisions extending health care under cl. (3) to a married volunteer's child if born during the volunteer's service.

1965—Pub. L. 89-134 extended the health care provisions of cl. (3) to a married volunteer's child if born during the volunteer's service.

1963—Pub. L. 88-200 substituted "a readjustment allowance" for "termination payments" in cl. (1).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1982 AMENDMENT

Section 1(b) of Pub. L. 97-387 provided that: "This amendment [amending this section] shall be effective as of December 29, 1981."

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of Peace Corps with functions relating to providing health care in government facilities under clause (3) to be exercised in consultation with head of agency responsible for facility by sections 1-103 and 1-106 of Ex. Ord. No. 12137, May 16, 1979, 44 F.R. 29023, eff. May 16, 1979, set out as a note under section 2501 of this title.

#### APPOINTMENT TO CIVILIAN CAREER SERVICES

Appointment of former volunteer leaders to civilian career services, see Ex. Ord. No. 11103, Apr. 10, 1963, 28 F.R. 3571, set out as a note under section 2504 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2504, 2509, 2522 of this title; title 5 sections 8142, 8331, 8332, 8334, 8422; title 26 sections 912, 3401; title 42 section 409.

### § 2506. Peace Corps employees

(a) **Foreign employment; compensation, allowances, and benefits; utilization of Presidential authority respecting Foreign Service; additional compensation and differentials; additional governmental employment by person receiving Foreign Service Reserve or staff appointment or assignment; limitation on length of employment**

(1) For the purpose of performing functions under this chapter outside the United States, the President may employ or assign persons, or authorize the employment or assignment of officers or employees of agencies of the United States Government which are not authorized to utilize the Foreign Service personnel system, who shall receive compensation at any of the rates established under section 402 or 403 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [22 U.S.C. 3962, 3963], together with allowances and benefits thereunder; and persons so employed or assigned shall be entitled, except to the extent that the President may specify otherwise in cases in which the period of the employment or assignment exceeds thirty months, to the same benefits as are pro-

vided by section 310 of that Act [22 U.S.C. 3950] for persons appointed to the Foreign Service.

(2) The President may utilize such authority contained in the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [22 U.S.C. 3901 et seq.] relating to members of the Foreign Service and other United States Government officers and employees as the President deems necessary to carry out functions under this chapter, except that—

(A) no Foreign Service appointment or assignment under this paragraph shall be for a period of more than seven and one-half years, subject to paragraph (5) and except as provided in paragraph (6); and

(B) no individual whose Foreign Service appointment or assignment under this paragraph has been terminated shall be reappointed or reassigned under this paragraph before the expiration of a period of time equal to the preceding tour of duty of that individual.

Subparagraphs (A) and (B) do not apply with respect to foreign national employees. Such provisions of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [22 U.S.C. 3901 et seq.] (other than the provisions of section 309 [22 U.S.C. 3949]) as the President deems appropriate shall apply to individuals appointed or assigned under this paragraph, including in all cases, the provisions of section 310 of that Act [22 U.S.C. 3950], except that (i) the President may by regulation make exceptions to the application of section 310 [22 U.S.C. 3950] in cases in which the period of the appointment or assignment exceeds thirty months, (ii) members of the Foreign Service appointed or assigned pursuant to this paragraph shall receive within-class salary increases in accordance with such regulations as the President may prescribe, and (iii) under such regulations as the President may prescribe, individuals who are to perform duties of a more routine nature than are generally performed by members of the Foreign Service assigned to class 9 in the Foreign Service Schedule may be appointed to an unenumerated class ranking below class 9 in the Foreign Service Schedule and be paid basic compensation at rates lower than those for class 9, except that such rates may be no less than the then applicable minimum wage rate specified in section 206(a)(1) of title 29.

(3) The President may specify what additional allowance authorized by section 5941 of title 5 and which of the allowances and differentials authorized by sections 5923 through 5925 of such title 5, may be granted to any person employed, appointed, or assigned under this subsection and may determine the rates thereof not to exceed the rates otherwise granted to employees under the sections of title 5 referred to in this paragraph.

(4) An individual who has received an appointment or assignment in the Foreign Service under this subsection may, not later than September 30, 1982, or three years after separation from such appointment or assignment, whichever is later, be appointed to a position in any United States department, agency, or establishment—

(A) in the competitive service under title 5 without competitive examination and in accordance with such regulations and conditions consistent with this subsection as may be pre-

scribed by the Director of the Office of Personnel Management, or

(B) in an established merit system in the excepted service,

if such individual (i) served satisfactorily under the authority of this subsection, as certified by the President, for not less than thirty-six months on a continuous basis without a break in service of more than three days, and (ii) is qualified for the position in question.

(5) Except as provided in paragraph (6), the Director of the Peace Corps may make appointments or assignments of United States citizens under paragraph (2) for periods of more than five years only in the case of individuals whose performance as employees of the Peace Corps has been exceptional and only in order to achieve one or more of the following purposes:

(A) To permit individuals who have served at least two and one-half years of such an appointment or assignment abroad to serve in the United States thereafter.

(B) To permit individuals who have served at least two and one-half years of such an appointment or assignment in the United States to serve abroad thereafter.

(C) To permit individuals who have served at least two and one-half years of such an appointment or assignment in a recruitment, selection, or training activity to be reassigned to an activity other than the one in which they have most recently so served.

(D) To promote the continuity of functions in administering the Peace Corps.

At no time may the number of appointments or assignments of United States citizens in effect under paragraph (2) for periods in excess of five years exceed fifteen percent of the total of all appointments and assignments of United States citizens then in effect under paragraph (2).

(6) Notwithstanding the limitation set forth in paragraph (2)(A) on the length of an appointment or assignment under paragraph (2) and notwithstanding the limitations set forth in paragraph (5) on the circumstances under which such an appointment or assignment may exceed five years, the Director of the Peace Corps, under special circumstances, may personally approve an extension of an appointment or assignment under paragraph (2) for not more than one year on an individual basis.

**(b) Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2205(9), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2160**

**(c) Peace Corps representatives; terms and conditions of service; removal**

In each country or area in which volunteers serve abroad, the President may appoint an employee or a volunteer as a Peace Corps representative to have direction of other employees of the Peace Corps abroad and to oversee the activities carried on under this chapter in such country or area. Unless a representative is a volunteer, the compensation, allowances and benefits, and other terms and conditions of service of each such representative, shall be the same as those of a person appointed, or assigned pursuant to paragraph (1) or (2) of subsection (a) of this section, except that any such representative may, notwithstanding any provision of law, be removed by the President in his discretion.

(Pub. L. 87-293, title I, § 7, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 615; Pub. L. 87-793, § 1001(7), Oct. 11, 1962, 76 Stat. 865; Pub. L. 88-200, § 4, Dec. 13, 1963, 77 Stat. 360; Pub. L. 89-134, § 4, Aug. 24, 1965, 79 Stat. 549; Pub. L. 91-352, § 5, July 24, 1970, 84 Stat. 465; Pub. L. 96-53, title III, § 302, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 371; Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §§ 2202(b), 2205(9), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2157, 2160; Pub. L. 98-473, title I, § 101(1)[title V, § 541(a)], Oct. 12, 1984, 98 Stat. 1884, 1903; Pub. L. 99-83, title XI, § 1103(a), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 272.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-293, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 612, as amended, known as the Peace Corps Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2501 of this title and Tables.

The Foreign Service Act of 1980, referred to in subsec. (a)(1), (2), is Pub. L. 96-465, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2071, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 52 (§ 3901 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3901 of this title and Tables.

The effective date of this paragraph, referred to in subsec. (a)(4), probably means the effective date of Pub. L. 96-53, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 359, section 302 of which added subsec. (a)(4) and which became effective Oct. 1, 1979, see Effective Date of 1979 Amendment note below.

## CODIFICATION

Amendment by Pub. L. 98-473 is based on section 703 of H.R. 5119, Ninety-eighth Congress, as passed by the House of Representatives May 10, 1984, which was enacted into permanent law by Pub. L. 98-473.

## AMENDMENTS

1985—Subsec. (a)(2)(A). Pub. L. 99-83, § 1103(a)(1), substituted "seven and one-half" for "five", substituted ", subject to paragraph (5) and except as provided in paragraph (6)" for "unless the Director of the Peace Corps, under special circumstances, personally approves an extension of not more than one year on an individual basis", and inserted reference to section 309 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980.

Subsec. (a)(5), (6). Pub. L. 99-83, § 1103(a)(2), added pars. (5) and (6).

1984—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 98-473 inserted provision that subparagraphs (A) and (B) do not apply with respect to foreign national employees.

1980—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 96-465, § 2202(b)(1)(A), substituted "which are not authorized to utilize the Foreign Service personnel system, who shall receive compensation at any of the rates established under section 402 or 403 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980" for " , who shall receive compensation at any of the rates provided for persons appointed to the Foreign Service Reserve and Staff under the Foreign Service Act of 1946, as amended (22 U.S.C. 801 et seq.)" and "section 310" for "section 528" and struck out reference to the applicability of section 1005 of the Foreign Service Act of 1946.

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 96-465, § 2202(b)(1)(B), among other changes, substituted references to the Foreign Service Act of 1980 for references to the Foreign Service Act of 1946 and references to class 9 for class 10, and inserted provision relating to section 206(a)(1) of title 29.

Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 96-465, § 2202(b)(2), among other changes, struck out provisions relating to the time Congress enacts Foreign Service personnel reform legislation, inserted reference to September 30, 1982, and substituted "such individual" for "such person" and "continuous basis without a break in service of more than three days" for "substantially continuous basis".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 96-465, § 2205(9), struck out subsec. (b) which related to criteria for performance of foreign employment, separation, and severance benefits. See sections 3922 and 4007 to 4009 of this title.

1979—Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 96-53 added par. (4).

1970—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 91-352 substantially reenacted provisions and substituted references to section 5941 of title 5, and sections 5923 through 5925 of such title 5, for references to section 118h of title 5 and title II of the Overseas Differentials and Allowances Act.

1965—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 89-134, § 4(a), (b), redesignated subsec. (c) as (a), incorporated into par. (1) material formerly set out as introductory material, spelled out the authority of the President to utilize his authority to appoint and assign persons under the Foreign Service Act of 1946 by making specific reference to his authority as it related to Foreign Service Reserve Officers, Foreign Service Staff officers and employees, alien clerks and employees and other Government officers and employees apart from the Foreign Service, limited to five-year duration all Foreign Service Reserve or Staff appointments and assignments unless the Director of the Peace Corps personally approved one-year extensions on an individual basis, prohibited reappointment or reassignment under this par. before expiration of a period of time equal to the length of the appointee's preceding tour of duty, inserted proviso in par. (2) allowing appointment of an unenumerated class of Foreign Service staff officers and employees ranking below class 10 to be paid basic compensation at rates lower than those of class 10 to perform duties of a more routine nature than are usually performed by Foreign Service staff officers and employees of class 10, and, in par. (3), inserted reference to section 118h of title 5 and substituted reference to subsec. (a) for reference to subsec. (c). Former subsec. (a), relating to domestic employment, was repealed.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 89-134, § 4(c), redesignated subsec. (d) as (b), inserted "for the purpose of performing functions under this chapter outside the United States" after "or assigned", and substituted reference to subsec. (a)(2) for reference to subsec. (c)(2). Former subsec. (b), relating to compensation for domestic employment, was repealed.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 89-134, § 4(d), redesignated subsec. (e) as (c) and substituted reference to subsec. (a) of this section for reference to subsec. (c) of this section. Former subsec. (c) redesignated (a).

Subsecs. (d), (e). Pub. L. 89-134, § 4(c), (d), redesignated subsecs. (d) and (e) as (b) and (c), respectively.

1963—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 88-200 struck out "so" before "employed".

1962—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 87-793 substituted "but not in excess of the highest grade 18 of such general schedule" for "and of these not to exceed two may be compensated at a rate in excess of the highest rate provided for grades of such general schedule but not in excess of \$19,000 per year".

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-465 effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1979 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-53 effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 512(a) of Pub. L. 96-53, set out as a note under section 2151 of this title.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1965 AMENDMENT

Section 5(a) of Pub. L. 89-134 provided that: "Section 4 of this Act [amending this section] shall not become effective until the first day of the fourth pay period which begins after the date this Act becomes law. [Aug. 24, 1965]."

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1962 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 87-793 effective on first day of first pay period which begins on or after Oct. 11, 1962, see section 1008 of Pub. L. 87-793.

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of Peace Corps by section 1-103 of Ex. Ord. No. 12137, May 16, 1979, 44 F.R. 29023, eff. May 16, 1979, set out as a note under section 2501 of this title.

## COORDINATION OF CHANGES IN POLICY WITH SECRETARY OF STATE

Any substantial changes in policies in effect on May 16, 1979, for the utilization of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 (§3901 et seq. of this title) pursuant to this section are to be coordinated with the Secretary of State, see section 1-111 of Ex. Ord. No. 12137, May 16, 1979, 44 F.R. 29023, set out as a note under section 2501 of this title.

## REPORTS TO CONGRESS

Section 1103(b) of Pub. L. 99-83 provided that: "The Director of the Peace Corps shall, not later than January 1, 1986, submit to the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs [now Committee on International Relations] of the House of Representatives a report describing the criteria to be applied by the Director in exercising the authority provided by the amendments made by subsection (a) [amending subsec. (a) of this section] to make appointments or assignments of individuals for periods of more than five years. Not later than each January 1 thereafter, the Director shall submit to the Committees referred to in the preceding sentence a report on—

"(1) the exercise of such authority during the preceding fiscal year for each of the purposes specified in paragraph (5) of section 7(a) of the Peace Corps Act, as added by subsection (a) of this section [22 U.S.C. 2506(a)(5)]; and

"(2) the exercise during that fiscal year of the authority under paragraph (6) of such section 7(a), as added by subsection (a) of this section [22 U.S.C. 2506(a)(6)]."

## BENEFITS FOR PERSONS APPOINTED OR ASSIGNED UNDER SUBSEC. (a)

Persons appointed, employed, or assigned under subsec. (a) of this section are not, unless otherwise agreed by the agency in which such benefits may be exercised, entitled to the benefits provided by section 928 of this title in cases in which their service under the appointment, employment, or assignment exceeds thirty months, see section 1-401 of Ex. Ord. No. 12137, May 16, 1979, 44 F.R. 29023, set out as a note under section 2501 of this title.

## TRANSFER OF WASHINGTON HEADQUARTERS PERSONNEL FROM CIVIL SERVICE TO FOREIGN SERVICE APPOINTMENTS

Section 5(b) of Pub. L. 89-134 provided that: "Under such regulations as the President may prescribe, each person employed under authorities repealed by section 4(a) of this Act [which repealed former subsecs. (a) and (b) of this section providing for employment of Washington headquarters personnel in accordance with standard civil service laws] immediately prior to the effective date of that section [see Effective Date of 1965 Amendment note above] shall effective on that date be appointed a Foreign Service Reserve officer or Foreign Service staff officer or employee under the authority of section 7(a)(2) of the Peace Corps Act [subsec. (a)(2) of this section], as amended, and appointed or assigned to an appropriate class thereof; except that—

"(1) no person who holds a career or career-conditional appointment immediately prior to the effective date of section 4(a) of this Act [see effective date

of 1965 Amendment note above] shall, without his consent, be so appointed until three years after such effective date; and

"(2) each person so appointed who, immediately prior to the effective date of section 4(a) of this Act [see effective date of 1965 Amendment note above], held a career or career-conditional appointment at grade 8 or below of the General Schedule established by the Classification Act of 1949, as amended [see §5101 et seq. of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees], shall receive an appointment for the duration of operations under the Peace Corps Act, as amended [see Short Title note set out under section 2501 of this title].

Each person appointed under this subsection shall receive basic compensation at the rate of his class determined by the President to be appropriate, but the rate of basic compensation received by such person immediately prior to the effective date of his appointment under this subsection shall not be reduced by the provisions of this subsection."

[Functions of the President conferred by section 5(b) of Pub. L. 89-134, set out above, to prescribe regulations and make determinations (relating to appointment of Peace Corps Employees in the Foreign Service System) were delegated to the Director of the Peace Corps, by section 1-105 of Ex. Ord. No. 12137, May 16, 1976, 44 F.R. 29023, set out as a note under section 2501 of this title. Such functions were previously transferred from the President to the Director of ACTION [now Corporation for National and Community Service] by section 102(c) of Ex. Ord. No. 11603, June 30, 1971, 36 F.R. 12675, set out as a note under section 2501 of this title, which was superseded by section 1-707 of Ex. Ord. No. 12137.]

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2514 of this title.

**§ 2507. Training program****(a) Applicants for enrollment and enrolled volunteers**

The President shall make provision for such training as he deems appropriate for each applicant for enrollment as a volunteer and each enrolled volunteer. All of the provisions of this chapter applicable respectively to volunteers and volunteer leaders shall be applicable to applicants for enrollment as such during any period of training occurring prior to enrollment, and the respective terms "volunteers" and "volunteer leaders" shall include such applicants during any such period of training.

**(b) Citizen trainees for voluntary programs; foreign nationals as trainees; advances of funds or reimbursement basis; use of credits**

The President may also make provision, on the basis of advances of funds or reimbursement to the United States, for training for citizens of the United States, other than those referred to in subsection (a) of this section, who have been selected for service abroad in programs not carried out under authority of this chapter which are similar to those authorized by this chapter. The provisions of section 2508 of this title shall apply, on a similar advance of funds or a reimbursement basis, with respect to persons while within the United States for training under authority of this subsection. Advances or reimbursements received under this subsection may be credited to the current applicable appropriation, fund, or account and shall be available for the purposes for which such appropriation, fund, or account is authorized to be used.

(Pub. L. 87-293, title I, § 8, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 616; Pub. L. 102-511, title IX, § 904, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3356.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (b), was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-293, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 612, as amended, known as the Peace Corps Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2501 of this title and Tables.

## AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 102-511 struck out subsec. (c) which read as follows: “Training hereinabove provided for shall include instruction in the philosophy, strategy, tactics, and menace of communism.”

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of Peace Corps by section 1-103 of Ex. Ord. No. 12137, May 16, 1979, 44 F.R. 29023, eff. May 16, 1979, set out as a note under section 2501 of this title.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2504 of this title; title 5 section 8142.

### § 2508. Foreign participants; admission into the United States as nonimmigrants; deportation

In order to provide for assistance by foreign nationals in the training of volunteers, and to permit effective implementation of Peace Corps projects with due regard for the desirability of cost-sharing arrangements, where appropriate, the President may make provision for transportation, housing, subsistence, or per diem in lieu thereof, and health care or health and accident insurance for foreign nationals engaged in activities authorized by this chapter while they are away from their homes, without regard to the provisions of any other law: *Provided, however*, That per diem in lieu of subsistence furnished to such persons shall not be at rates higher than those prescribed by the Secretary of State pursuant to section 2679 of title 22. Such persons, and persons coming to the United States under contract pursuant to section 2509(a)(5) of this title, may be admitted to the United States, if otherwise qualified, as nonimmigrants under section 1101(a)(15) of title 8 for such time and under such conditions as may be prescribed by regulations promulgated by the Secretary of State and the Attorney General. A person admitted under this section who fails to maintain the status under which he was admitted or who fails to depart from the United States at the expiration of the time for which he was admitted, or who engages in activities of a political nature detrimental to the interests of the United States, or in activities not consistent with the security of the United States, shall, upon the warrant of the Attorney General, be taken into custody and promptly deported pursuant to sections 1251, 1252, and 1253 of title 8. Deportation proceedings under this section shall be summary and the findings of the Attorney General as to matters of fact shall be conclusive.

(Pub. L. 87-293, title I, § 9, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 617; Pub. L. 97-113, title VI, § 605(a), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1543.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-293, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 612, as amended, known as the Peace Corps Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2501 of this title and Tables.

## AMENDMENTS

1981—Pub. L. 97-113 substituted reference to section “2509(a)(5)” for “2509(a)(4)” of this title.

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of Peace Corps by section 1-103 of Ex. Ord. No. 12137, May 16, 1979, 44 F.R. 29023, eff. May 16, 1979, set out as a note under section 2501 of this title.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2507 of this title.

### § 2509. Presidential powers and authorities

#### (a) Contract authority; assignment of volunteers; acceptance of voluntary services and gifts and transfers of property; personal service contracts

In furtherance of the purposes of this chapter, the President may—

(1) enter into, perform, and modify contracts and agreements and otherwise cooperate with any agency of the United States Government or of any State or any subdivision thereof, other governments and departments and agencies thereof, and educational institutions, voluntary agencies, farm organizations, labor unions, and other organizations, individuals and firms;

(2) assign volunteers in special cases to temporary duty with international organizations and agencies when the Secretary of State determines that such assignment would serve the purposes of this chapter;

(3) assign volunteers to duty or otherwise make them available to any entity referred to in paragraph (1), in order to assist such organizations and agencies in providing development or other relief assistance to displaced persons and refugees in any country, if the government of the country agrees to such assignment;

(4) accept in the name of the Peace Corps and employ or transfer in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter (A) voluntary services notwithstanding the provisions of section 1342 of title 31, and (B) any money or property (real, personal or mixed, tangible or intangible) received by gift, devise, bequest, or otherwise; and

(5) contract with individuals for personal services abroad, and with aliens (abroad or within the United States) for personal services within the United States: *Provided*, That no such person shall be deemed an officer or employee or otherwise in the service or employment of the United States Government for any purpose.

#### (b) Claim settlements

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, whenever the President determines that it will further the purposes of this chapter, the President, under such regulations as he may pre-



scribe, may settle and pay, in an amount not exceeding \$20,000, any claim against the United States, for loss of or damage to real or personal property (including loss of occupancy or use thereof) belonging to, or for personal injury or death of, any person not a citizen or resident of the United States, where such claim arises abroad out of the act or omission of any Peace Corps employee or out of the act or omission of any volunteer, but only if such claim is presented in writing within one year after it accrues. Any amount paid in settlement of any claim under this subsection shall be accepted by the claimant in full satisfaction thereof and shall bar any further action or proceeding thereon.

**(c) Five-year contract authority**

Subject to any future action of the Congress, a contract or agreement which entails commitments for the expenditure of funds available for the purposes of this chapter, including commitments for the purpose of paying or providing for allowances and other benefits of volunteers authorized by sections 2504 and 2505 of this title, may extend at any time for not more than five years.

**(d) Waiver of certain Federal laws**

Whenever the President determines it to be in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter, functions authorized by this chapter may be performed without regard to such provisions of law (other than section 5 of title 41, section 252 of title 41, and the Renegotiation Act of 1951, as amended [50 App. U.S.C. 1211 et seq.]) regulating the making, performance, amendment, or modification of contracts and the expenditure of Government funds as the President may specify.

**(e) Allocation of funds**

The President may allocate or transfer to any agency of the United States Government any funds available for carrying out the purposes of this chapter including any advance received by the United States from any country or international organization under authority of this chapter, but not to exceed 20 per centum in the aggregate of such funds may be allocated or transferred to agencies other than the Peace Corps. Such funds shall be available for obligation and expenditure for the purposes of this chapter in accordance with authority granted in this chapter or under authority governing the activities of the agencies of the United States Government to which such funds are allocated or transferred.

**(f) Utilization of other Government agency services and facilities**

Any officer of the United States Government carrying out functions under this chapter may utilize the services and facilities of, or procure commodities from, any agency of the United States Government as the President shall direct, or with the consent of the head of such agency, and funds allocated pursuant to this subsection to any such agency may be established in separate appropriation accounts on the books of the Treasury.

**(g) Reimbursement for commodities, services, and facilities**

In the case of any commodity, service, or facility procured from any agency of the United States Government under this chapter, reimbursement or payment shall be made to such agency from funds available under this chapter. Such reimbursement or payment shall be at replacement cost, or, if required by law, at actual cost, or at any other price authorized by law and agreed to by the owning or disposing agency. The amount of any such reimbursement or payment shall be credited to current applicable appropriations, funds, or accounts from which there may be procured replacements of similar commodities, services, or facilities, except that where such appropriations, funds, or accounts are not reimbursable except by reason of this subsection, and when the owning or disposing agency determines that such replacement is not necessary, any funds received in payment therefor shall be covered into the Treasury as miscellaneous receipts.

**(h) Hospitalization and medical treatment for Foreign Service local employees**

The President may provide hospitalization and medical treatment to Foreign Service local employees who are within the United States for training related to their employment under this chapter, for illnesses, injuries, or conditions other than those arising out of and in the course of employment, which, in the judgment of the President, began during such employee's travel related to such training or so near to the beginning of such travel that the onset of the illness, injury, or condition could not have been known, and for which immediate medical treatment or hospitalization is reasonably required.

**(i) Procurement of legal services**

The Director of the Peace Corps shall have the same authority as is available to the Secretary of State under section 2698(a) of this title. For purposes of this subsection, the reference in such section 2698(a) of this title to a principal officer of the Foreign Service shall be deemed to be a reference to a Peace Corps representative and the reference in such section to a member of the Foreign Service shall be deemed to be a reference to a person employed, appointed, or assigned under this chapter.

**(j) Malpractice protection**

The provisions of section 2702 of this title shall apply to volunteers and persons employed, appointed, or assigned under this chapter, and to individuals employed under personal services contracts to furnish medical services abroad pursuant to subsection (a)(5) of this section.<sup>1</sup> For purposes of this subsection, references to the Secretary in subsection (b) of such section shall be deemed to be references to the Director of the Peace Corps, references to the Secretary in subsection (f) of such section shall be deemed to be references to the President, and the reference in subsection (g) of such section to a principal representative of the United States

<sup>1</sup> So in original.

shall be deemed to be a reference to a Peace Corps representative.

(Pub. L. 87-293, title I, § 10, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 617; Pub. L. 88-200, § 5, Dec. 13, 1963, 77 Stat. 360; Pub. L. 89-134, § 6, Aug. 24, 1965, 79 Stat. 551; Pub. L. 89-572, § 6, Sept. 13, 1966, 80 Stat. 765; Pub. L. 93-49, § 2, June 25, 1973, 87 Stat. 99; Pub. L. 95-331, § 5(a), (c), Aug. 2, 1978, 92 Stat. 414, 415; Pub. L. 97-113, title VI, § 604(a), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1543; Pub. L. 103-236, title VI, § 602, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 491.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-293, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 612, as amended, known as the Peace Corps Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2501 of this title and Tables.

The Renegotiation Act of 1951, as amended, referred to in subsec. (d), is act Mar. 23, 1951, ch. 15, 65 Stat. 7, as amended, which was classified principally to section 1211 et seq. of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense, prior to its omission from the Code. See Codification note preceding section 1211 of Title 50, Appendix.

#### CODIFICATION

In subsec. (a)(4), “section 1342 of title 31” substituted for “31 U.S.C. 665(b)” on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, § 4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 103-236, § 602(a), which directed amendment of subsec. (c) by substituting “five years” for “thirty six months”, was executed by making the substitution for “thirty-six months” to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 103-236, § 602(b), inserted before period at end of first sentence “, and to individuals employed under personal services contracts to furnish medical services abroad pursuant to subsection (a)(5) of this section.”

1981—Subsecs. (i), (j). Pub. L. 97-113 added subsecs. (i) and (j).

1978—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 95-331, § 5(a)(1), struck out proviso limiting to no more than 125 Peace Corps volunteers or volunteer leaders the number assignable to the described organizations.

Subsec. (a)(3) to (5). Pub. L. 95-331, § 5(c), added par. (3) and redesignated former pars. (3) and (4) as (4) and (5), respectively.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 95-331, § 5(a)(2), substituted “\$20,000” for “\$10,000”.

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 95-331, § 5(a)(3), added subsec. (h).

1973—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 93-49 excepted from waiver of Federal laws the application of sections 5 and 252 of title 41.

1966—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 89-572 inserted “or transfer” after “and employ” and struck out “, and transfer such money or property to the government or other entities of the country or area with which the volunteers are serving, when such transfers would further the general purposes of the chapter”.

1965—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 89-134 inserted “money or” after “and transfer such”.

1963—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 88-200 inserted provision for transfer of property.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Section 5(b) of Pub. L. 95-331 provided that: “The amendment made by paragraph (2) of subsection (a) [amending this section] shall apply to claims made after the date of the enactment of this Act [Aug. 2, 1978].”

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS; ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Funds available to President under this chapter allocated to and functions of President under this section,

except subsec. (d) and those functions under subsec. (f) relating to directing agencies to provide services, facilities, and commodities to officers carrying out functions under this chapter, were delegated to Director of Peace Corps by sections 1-103 and 1-301(a), (d) of Ex. Ord. No. 12137, May 16, 1979, 44 F.R. 29203, eff. May 16, 1979, set out as a note under section 2501 of this title.

PROHIBITION AGAINST USE OF FUNDS APPROPRIATED AFTER FEBRUARY 15, 1981, AND BEFORE DECEMBER 29, 1981, FOR LEGAL SERVICES OR MALPRACTICE PROTECTION

Section 604(c) of Pub. L. 97-113 provided: “To the extent that the authorities provided by the amendments made by subsection (a) [enacting subsecs. (i) and (j) of this section] are authorities which are not applicable with respect to the Peace Corps immediately before the enactment of this Act [Dec. 29, 1981] and which require the expenditure of funds, those authorities may not be exercised using any funds appropriated after February 15, 1981, and before the date of the enactment of this Act.”

#### WAIVER OF CERTAIN LAWS BY PRESIDENT UNDER SUBSEC. (d)

For determination under subsec. (d) of this section that it is in the furtherance of the purposes of this chapter and that the functions under this chapter may be performed without regard to the applicable laws specified in section 1 and 2 of Ex. Ord. No. 11223, May 12, 1965, 30 F.R. 6635, set out as a note under section 2393 of this title, with certain limitations see section 1-402 of Ex. Ord. No. 12137, May 16, 1979, 44 F.R. 29203, set out as a note under section 2501 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2504, 2517 of this title.

### § 2510. Reports to Congress

The President shall transmit to the Congress, at least once in each fiscal year, a report on operations under this chapter. Each report shall contain information describing efforts undertaken to improve coordination of activities of the Peace Corps with activities of international voluntary service organizations, such as the United Nations volunteer program, and of host country voluntary service organizations, including—

(1) a description of the purpose and scope of any development project which the Peace Corps undertook during the preceding fiscal year as a joint venture with any such international or host country voluntary service organization; and

(2) recommendations for improving coordination of development projects between the Peace Corps and any such international or host country voluntary service organization.

The President shall also include in the report a description of any plans to carry out the policy set forth in section 2501(b) of this title.

(Pub. L. 87-293, title I, § 11, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 619; Pub. L. 95-331, § 6, Aug. 2, 1978, 92 Stat. 415; Pub. L. 99-83, title XI, § 1102(b), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 272.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-293, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 612, as amended, known as the Peace Corps Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2501 of this title and Tables.

## AMENDMENTS

1985—Pub. L. 99-83 inserted provisions requiring the President to include in the report a description of any plans to carry out the policy set forth in section 2501(b) of this title.

1978—Pub. L. 95-331 inserted provisions relating to reporting requirements for efforts undertaken to improve coordination of Peace Corps activities with voluntary service organizations.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of Peace Corps with reports to be prepared by Director and submitted through President by sections 1-103 and 1-107 of Ex. Ord. No. 12137, May 16, 1979, 44 F.R. 29023, eff. May 16, 1979, set out as a note under section 2501 of this title.

**§ 2511. Peace Corps National Advisory Council****(a) Establishment**

A Peace Corps National Advisory Council (hereinafter in this section referred to as the "Council") shall be established in accordance with the provisions of this section.

**(b) Functions**

(1) The Council shall advise and consult with the President and the Director of the Peace Corps with regard to policies and programs designed to further the purposes of this chapter and shall, as the Council considers appropriate, periodically report to the Congress with regard to the Peace Corps.

(2) Members of the Council shall (subject to subsection (d)(1) of this section) conduct on-site inspections, and make examinations, of the activities of the Peace Corps in the United States and in other countries in order to—

(A) evaluate the accomplishments of the Peace Corps;

(B) assess the potential capabilities and the future role of the Peace Corps;

(C) make recommendations to the President, the Director of the Peace Corps, and, as the Council considers appropriate, the Congress, for the purpose of guiding the future direction of the Peace Corps and of helping to ensure that the purposes and programs of the Peace Corps are carried out in ways that are economical, efficient, responsive to changing needs in developing countries and to changing relationships among people, and in accordance with law; and

(D) make such other evaluations, assessments, and recommendations as the Council considers appropriate.

(3) The Council may provide for public participation in its activities.

**(c) Membership**

(1) Persons appointed as members of the Council shall be broadly representative of the general public, including educational institutions, private volunteer agencies, private industry, farm organizations, labor unions, different regions of the United States, different educational, economic, racial, and national backgrounds and age groupings, and both sexes.

(2)(A) The Council shall consist of fifteen voting members who shall be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate. At least seven of such members shall be former Peace Corps volunteers, and not more than eight of such members shall be members of the same political party.

(B) The first appointments of members of the Council under this paragraph shall be made not more than sixty days after August 8, 1985, and, solely for purposes of determining the expiration of their terms, shall be deemed to take effect on the sixtieth day after August 8, 1985.

(C) No member appointed under this paragraph may be an officer or employee of the United States Government.

(D) Of the members initially appointed under this paragraph, eight shall be appointed to 1-year terms and seven shall be appointed to 2-year terms. Thereafter, all appointed members shall be appointed to 2-year terms.

(E) A member of the Council appointed to fill a vacancy occurring before the expiration of the term for which the member's predecessor was appointed shall be appointed only for the remainder of that term.

(F) No member of the Council may serve for more than two consecutive 2-year terms.

(G) Members of the Council shall serve at the pleasure of the President.

(H) An appointed member of the Council may be removed by a vote of nine members for malfeasance in office, for persistent neglect of or inability to discharge duties, or for offenses involving moral turpitude, and for no other cause.

(I) Within thirty days after any vacancy occurs in the office of an appointed member of the Council, the President shall nominate an individual to fill the vacancy.

(3) In addition to the voting members of the Council, the Secretary of State and the Administrator of the Agency for International Development, or their designees, and the Director and Deputy Director of the Peace Corps, shall be non-voting members, ex officio, of the Council.

**(d) Compensation**

(1) Except as provided in paragraph (2), a member of the Council who is not an officer or employee of the United States Government—

(A) shall be paid compensation out of funds made available for the purposes of this chapter at the daily equivalent of the highest rate payable under section 5332 of title 5 for each day (including travel time) during which the member is engaged in the actual performance of duties as a Council member, and

(B) while away from his or her home or regular place of business on necessary travel, as determined by the Director of the Peace Corps, in the actual performance of duties as a Council member, shall be paid per diem, travel, and transportation expenses in the same manner as is provided under subchapter I of chapter 57 of title 5.

(2) A member of the Council may not be paid compensation under paragraph (1)(A) for more than twenty days in any calendar year.

**(e) Quorum**

A majority of the voting members of the Council shall constitute a quorum for the purposes of transacting any business.

**(f) Financial interests of members**

A member of the Council shall disclose to the Council the existence of any direct or indirect financial interest of that member in any particular matter before the Council and may not vote or otherwise participate as a Council member with respect to that particular matter.

**(g) Chair and Vice Chair**

At its first meeting and at its first regular meeting in each calendar year thereafter, the Council shall elect a Chair and Vice Chair from among its appointed members who are citizens of the United States. The Chair and Vice Chair may not both be members of the same political party.

**(h) Meetings, bylaws, and regulations**

(1) The Council shall hold a regular meeting during each calendar quarter and shall meet at the call of the President, the Director of the Peace Corps, the Council's Chair, or one-fourth of its members.

(2) The Council shall prescribe such bylaws and regulations as it considers necessary to carry out its functions. Such bylaws and regulations shall include procedures for fixing the time and place of meetings, giving or waiving of notice of meetings, and keeping of minutes of meetings.

**(i) Reports to the President and the Director**

Not later than January 1, 1988, and not later than January 1 of each second year thereafter, the Council shall submit to the President and the Director of the Peace Corps a report on its views on the programs and activities of the Peace Corps. Each report shall contain a summary of the advice and recommendations provided by the Council to the President and the Director during the period covered by the report and such recommendations (including recommendations for administrative or legislative action) as the Council considers appropriate to make to the Congress. Within ninety days after receiving each such report, the President shall submit to the Congress a copy of the report, together with any comments concerning the report that the President or the Director considers appropriate.

**(j) Administrative assistance**

The Director of the Peace Corps shall make available to the Council such personnel, administrative support services, and technical assistance as are necessary to carry out its functions effectively.

(Pub. L. 87-293, title I, §12, as added Pub. L. 99-83, title XI, §1104(a), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 273.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (b)(1) and (d)(1)(A), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-293, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 612, as amended, known as the Peace Corps Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2501 of this title and Tables.

## PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 2511, Pub. L. 87-293, title I, §12, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 619, established Peace Corps National Advisory Council and set forth its composition, functions, and terms of members, prior to repeal by Pub. L.

92-352, title IV, §403, July 13, 1972, 86 Stat. 495, effective 90 days after July 13, 1972.

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as an Effective Date of 1985 Amendment note under section 2151-1 of this title.

## TERMINATION OF ADVISORY COUNCILS

Advisory councils established after Jan. 5, 1973, to terminate not later than the expiration of the 2-year period beginning on the date of their establishment, unless, in the case of a council established by the President or an officer of the Federal Government, such council is renewed by appropriate action prior to the expiration of such 2-year period, or in the case of a council established by the Congress, its duration is otherwise provided for by law. See sections 3(2) and 14 of Pub. L. 92-463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 770, 776, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

## TERMINATION OF SIMILAR ADVISORY BODY

Section 1104(b) of Pub. L. 99-83 provided that: "Any advisory body carrying out functions similar to those assigned to the Peace Corps National Advisory Council provided for in subsection (a) [enacting this section] shall cease to exist sixty days after the date of the enactment of this Act [Aug. 8, 1985]."

**§ 2512. Experts and consultants****(a) Employment; compensation, travel expenses and per diem; renewal of contracts**

Experts and consultants or organizations thereof may, as authorized by section 3109 of title 5, be employed by the President for the performance of functions under this chapter, and individuals so employed may be compensated at rates not in excess of the per diem equivalent of the highest rate payable under section 5332 of title 5, and while away from their homes or regular places of business, they may be paid actual travel expenses and per diem in lieu of subsistence and other expenses at the applicable rate prescribed in the Standardized Government Travel Regulations, as amended from time to time, while so employed: *Provided*, That contracts for such employment may be renewed annually.

**(b) Exemption from restrictions upon receipt of retirement benefits**

Service of an individual as a member of the Council authorized to be established by section 2511<sup>1</sup> of this title or as an expert or consultant under subsection (a) of this section shall not be considered as employment or holding of office or position bringing such individual within the provisions of sections 3323(b) and 8344 of title 5, section 4064 of this title, or any other law limiting the reemployment of retired officers or employees or governing the simultaneous receipt of compensation and retired pay or annuities, subject to section 5532 of title 5.

(Pub. L. 87-293, title I, §13, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 619; Pub. L. 88-200, §6, Dec. 13, 1963, 77 Stat. 360; Pub. L. 88-448, title IV, §401(c), Aug. 19, 1964, 78 Stat. 490; Pub. L. 91-352, §6, July 24, 1970, 84 Stat. 465; Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2202(c), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2158.)

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-293, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 612, as amended, known as the Peace Corps Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2501 of this title and Tables.

Section 2511 of this title, referred to in subsec. (b), was repealed by Pub. L. 92-352, title IV, § 403, July 13, 1972, 86 Stat. 495.

## AMENDMENTS

1980—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 96-465 substituted “section 4064 of this title” for “section 1112 of this title”.

1970—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 91-352, § 6(a), substituted “section 3109 of title 5” for “section 55a of title 5” and “the per diem equivalent of the highest rate payable under section 5332 of title 5” for “\$75 per diem”.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 91-352, § 6(b), substituted “sections 3323(b) and 8344 of title 5” and “section 5532 of title 5” for “section 2263 of title 5” and “section 3102 of title 5”, respectively.

1964—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 88-448 struck out provisions providing that such service shall not be considered as employment or holding of office or position bringing such individual within the provisions of section 59a of title 5, and inserted “, subject to section 3102 of title 5”.

1963—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 88-200, § 6(a), substituted “President” for “Peace Corps”.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 88-200, § 6(b), struck out provisions for exemption from conflict-of-interest laws and restrictions upon receipt of compensation.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-465 effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1964 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 88-448 effective on first day of first month which begins later than ninetieth day following Aug. 19, 1964, see section 403 of Pub. L. 88-448.

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of Peace Corps by section 1-103 of Ex. Ord. No. 12137, May 16, 1979, 44 F.R. 29023, eff. May 16, 1979, set out as a note under section 2501 of this title.

## PEACE CORPS NATIONAL ADVISORY COUNCIL

Abolition of Peace Corps National Advisory Council, see section 2511 of this title.

### § 2513. Assignment of personnel to foreign governments or international organizations

#### (a) Authority; oath of allegiance

In furtherance of the purposes of this chapter, the head of any agency of the United States Government is authorized to detail, assign, or otherwise make available any officer or employee of his agency (1) to serve with, or as a member of, the international staff of any international organization, or (2) to any office or position to which no compensation is attached with any foreign government or agency thereof: *Provided*, That such acceptance of such office or position shall in no case involve the taking of an oath of allegiance to another government.

#### (b) Benefits of detailed personnel

Any such officer or employee, while so detailed or assigned, shall be considered, for the purpose of preserving his allowances, privileges,

rights, seniority, and other benefits as such, an officer or employee of the United States Government and of the agency of the United States Government from which detailed or assigned, and he shall continue to receive compensation, allowances, and benefits from funds authorized by this chapter. He may also receive, under such regulations as the President may prescribe, representation allowances similar to those allowed under section 4085 of this title. The authorization of such allowances and other benefits, and the payment thereof out of any appropriations available therefor, shall be considered as meeting all of the requirements of section 5536 of title 5.

#### (c) Reimbursement provisions

Details or assignments may be made under this section—

(1) without reimbursement to the United States Government by the international organization or foreign government;

(2) upon agreement by the international organization or foreign government to reimburse the United States Government for compensation, travel expenses, and allowances, or any part thereof, payable to such officer or employee during the period of assignment or detail in accordance with subsection (b) of this section; and such reimbursement shall be credited to the appropriation, fund, or account utilized for paying such compensation, travel expenses, or allowances, or to the appropriation, fund, or account currently available for such purpose; or

(3) upon an advance of funds, property or services to the United States Government accepted with the approval of the President for specified uses in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter; and funds so advanced may be established as a separate fund in the Treasury of the United States Government, to be available for the specified uses, and to be used for reimbursement of appropriations or direct expenditure subject to the provisions of this chapter, any unexpended balance of such account to be returned to the foreign government or international organization.

(Pub. L. 87-293, title I, § 14, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 620; Pub. L. 91-352, § 7, July 24, 1970, 84 Stat. 465; Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2202(d), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2158.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-293, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 612, as amended, known as the Peace Corps Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2501 of this title and Tables.

## AMENDMENTS

1980—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 96-465 substituted “section 4085 of this title” for “section 1131 of this title”.

1970—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 91-352 substituted “section 5536 of title 5” for “section 70 of title 5”.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-465 effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of Peace Corps by section 1-103 of Ex. Ord. No. 12137, May 16, 1979, 44 F.R. 29023, eff. May 16, 1979, set out as a note under section 2501 of this title.

**§ 2514. Use of funds****(a) Administrative and other expenses**

Funds made available for the purposes of this chapter may be used for compensation, allowances and travel of employees, including members of the Foreign Service whose services are utilized primarily for the purposes of this chapter, for printing and binding without regard to the provisions of any other law, and for expenditures outside the United States for the procurement of supplies and services and for other administrative and operating purposes (other than compensation of employees) without regard to such laws and regulations governing the obligation and expenditure of Government funds as may be necessary to accomplish the purposes of this chapter.

**(b) Travel expenses abroad; transportation of personal effects, household goods and automobiles; storage**

Funds made available for the purposes of this chapter may be used to pay expenses in connection with travel abroad of employees and, to the extent otherwise authorized by this chapter, of volunteers, including travel expenses of dependents (including expenses during necessary stopovers while engaged in such travel), and transportation of personal effects, household goods, and automobiles when any part of such travel or transportation begins in one fiscal year pursuant to travel orders issued in that fiscal year, notwithstanding the fact that such travel or transportation may not be completed during the same fiscal year, and cost of transporting to and from a place of storage, and the cost of storing automobiles of employees when it is in the public interest or more economical to authorize storage.

**(c) Costs of training personnel employed or assigned overseas**

Funds available under this chapter may be used to pay costs of training employees employed or assigned pursuant to section 2506(a)(2) of this title (through interchange or otherwise) at any State or local unit of government, public or private nonprofit institution, trade, labor, agricultural, or scientific association or organization, or commercial firm; and the provisions of sections 1881 to 1888<sup>1</sup> of title 7 may be used to carry out the foregoing authority notwithstanding that interchange of personnel may not be involved or that the training may not take place at the institutions specified in sections 1881 to 1888<sup>1</sup> of title 7. Any payments or contributions in connection therewith may, as deemed appropriate by the head of the agency of the United States Government authorizing such training, be made by private or public sources and be accepted by any trainee, or may be accepted by and credited to the current applicable appropriation of such agency: *Provided, however*, That any

such payments to an employee in the nature of compensation shall be in lieu, or in reduction, of compensation received from the United States Government.

**(d) Payment of expenses**

Funds available for the purposes of this chapter shall be available for—

(1) rent of buildings and space in buildings in the United States, and for repair, alteration, and improvement of such leased properties;

(2) expenses of attendance at meetings concerned with the purposes of this chapter, including (notwithstanding the provisions of section 1346(a) and (c) of title 31) expenses in connection with meetings of persons whose employment is authorized by section 2512(a) of this title;

(3) rental and hire of aircraft;

(4) purchase and hire of passenger motor vehicles: *Provided*, That, except as may otherwise be provided in an appropriation or other Act, passenger motor vehicles for administrative purposes abroad may be purchased for replacement only, and such vehicles may be exchanged or sold and replaced by an equal number of such vehicles, and the cost, including exchange allowance, of each such replacement shall not exceed the applicable cost limitation described in section 2396(a)(5) of this title in the case of an automobile for any Peace Corps country representative appointed under section 2506(c) of this title: *Provided further*, That the provisions of section 1343 of title 31 shall not apply to the purchase of vehicles for the transportation, maintenance, or direct support of volunteers overseas: *Provided further*, That passenger motor vehicles may be purchased for use in the United States only as may be specifically provided in an appropriation or other Act;

(5) entertainment (not to exceed \$5,000 in any fiscal year except as may otherwise be provided in an appropriation or other Act);

(6) exchange of funds without regard to section 3561<sup>2</sup> of the Revised Statutes (31 U.S.C. 543) and loss by exchange;

(7) expenditures (not to exceed \$20,000 in any fiscal year except as may be otherwise provided in an appropriation or other Act) not otherwise authorized by law to meet unforeseen emergencies or contingencies arising in the Peace Corps: *Provided*, That a certificate of the amount only of each such expenditure and that such expenditure was necessary to meet an unforeseen emergency or contingency, made by the Director of the Peace Corps or his designee, shall be deemed a sufficient voucher for the amount therein specified;

(8) insurance of official motor vehicles acquired for use abroad;

(9) rent or lease abroad for not to exceed five years of offices, health facilities, buildings, grounds, and living quarters, and payments therefor in advance; maintenance, furnishings, necessary repairs, improvements, and alterations to properties owned or rented by the United States Government or made available for its use abroad; and costs of fuel, water, and utilities for such properties;

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

<sup>2</sup> See References in Text note below.

(10) expenses of preparing and transporting to their former homes, or, with respect to foreign participants engaged in activities under this chapter, to their former homes or places of burial, and of care and disposition of, the remains of persons or members of the families of persons who may die while such persons are away from their homes participating in activities under this chapter;

(11) use in accordance with authorities of the Foreign Service Act of 1946, as amended [22 U.S.C. 801 et seq.], not otherwise provided for; and

(12) ice and drinking water for use abroad.

(Pub. L. 87-293, title I, §15, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 621; Pub. L. 89-134, §7, Aug. 24, 1965, 79 Stat. 551; Pub. L. 89-572, §3, Sept. 13, 1966, 80 Stat. 765; Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2202(e), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2158; Pub. L. 96-533, title VI, §601(c), Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3155; Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title II, §201], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-145.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-293, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 612, as amended, known as the Peace Corps Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2501 of this title and Tables.

Sections 1881 to 1888 of title 7, referred to in subsec. (c), were repealed by Pub. L. 91-648, title IV, §403, Jan. 5, 1971, 84 Stat. 1925. See section 3371 et seq. of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

Section 3561 of the Revised Statutes (31 U.S.C. 543), referred to in subsec. (d)(6), probably was meant to be a reference to section 3651 of the Revised Statutes, which was classified to section 543 of former Title 31 and which was repealed by Pub. L. 97-258, §4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

The Foreign Service Act of 1946, referred to in subsec. (d)(11), is act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, titles I to X, 60 Stat. 999, as amended, which was classified principally to chapter 14 (§801 et seq.) of this title, and was repealed by Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159, the Foreign Service Act of 1980. The Foreign Service Act of 1980 is classified principally to chapter 52 (§3901 et seq.) of this title. Section 2401(c) of the 1980 Act (22 U.S.C. 4172(c)) provides in part that references in law to provisions of the Foreign Service Act of 1946 shall be deemed to include reference to the corresponding provisions of the 1980 Act. For provisions corresponding to the Foreign Service Act of 1946, see Table preceding section 801 of this title. For complete classification of the 1946 Act to the Code prior to its repeal, see Tables.

#### CODIFICATION

In subsec. (d)(2), “sections 1346(a) and (c) of title 31” substituted for “section 9 of Public Law 60-328 (31 U.S.C. 673)” on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, §4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

#### AMENDMENTS

1987—Subsec. (d)(4). Pub. L. 100-202 substituted “the applicable cost limitation described in section 2396(a)(5) of this title” for “\$2,500” and inserted proviso that section 1343 of title 31 not apply to the purchase of vehicles for the transportation, maintenance, or direct support of volunteers overseas.

1980—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 96-465 substituted “members of the Foreign Service” for “Foreign Service personnel”.

Subsec. (d)(7). Pub. L. 96-533 increased to \$20,000 from \$5,000 fiscal year expenditures limitation.

1966—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 89-572, §3(a), substituted “2506(a)(2)” for “2506(c)(2)”.

Subsec. (d)(4). Pub. L. 89-572, §3(b), substituted “2506(c)” for “2506(e)”.

1965—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 89-134 struck out provision that training not be considered employment or holding of office under section 2 of the Act of July 31, 1894, as amended (5 U.S.C. 62).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-465 effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

### § 2515. Foreign Currency Fluctuations Account

#### (a) Establishment

(1) There is established in the Treasury of the United States an account to be known as the “Foreign Currency Fluctuations, Peace Corps, Account”. The account shall be used for the purpose of providing funds to pay expenses for operations of the Peace Corps outside the United States which, as a result of fluctuations in currency exchange rates, exceed the amount appropriated for such expenses.

(2) Funds in the account may be transferred, upon the certification of the Director of the Peace Corps (or the Director’s designee) that the transfer is necessary for the purpose specified in paragraph (1), to the account containing funds appropriated for the expenses of the Peace Corps.

#### (b) Use of funds in account

Funds transferred under subsection (a) of this section shall be merged with, and be available for the same time period, as the appropriation to which they are applied. Notwithstanding any provision of law limiting the amount of funds the Peace Corps may obligate in any fiscal year, such amount shall be increased to the extent necessary to reflect fluctuations in exchange rates from those used in preparing the budget submission.

#### (c) Exchange rates applicable to obligations

An obligation of the Peace Corps payable in the currency of a foreign country may be recorded as an obligation based upon exchange rates used in preparing a budget submission. A change reflecting fluctuations in exchange rates may be recorded as a disbursement is made.

#### (d) Transfers back to account

Funds transferred from the Foreign Currency Fluctuations, Peace Corps, Account may be transferred back to that account—

(1) if the funds are not needed to pay obligations incurred because of fluctuations in currency exchange rates of foreign countries in the appropriation to which the funds were originally transferred; or

(2) because of subsequent favorable fluctuations in the rates or because other funds are, or become, available to pay such obligations.

#### (e) Limitation on transfers back

A transfer of funds back to the account under subsection (d) of this section may not be made after the end of the fiscal year or other period for which the appropriation, to which the funds were originally transferred, is available for obligation.

**(f) Transfers to account from regular appropriations**

(1) At the end of the fiscal year or other period for which appropriations for the expenses of the Peace Corps are made available, unobligated balances of such appropriation may be transferred into the Foreign Currency Fluctuations, Peace Corps, Account, to be merged with, and to be available for the same period and purposes as, that account.

(2) The authority of this subsection shall be exercised only to the extent that specific amounts are provided in advance in an appropriation Act.

**(g) Authorization of appropriations**

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Foreign Currency Fluctuations, Peace Corps, Account for each fiscal year such sums as may be necessary to maintain a balance of \$5,000,000 in such account at the beginning of such fiscal year.

**(h) Reports**

Each year the Director of the Peace Corps shall submit to the Committee on Foreign Affairs and the Committee on Appropriations of the House of Representatives, and to the Committee on Foreign Relations and the Committee on Appropriations of the Senate, a report on funds transferred under this section.

(Pub. L. 87-293, title I, §16, as added Pub. L. 102-565, §2(a), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 4265.)

## PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 2515, Pub. L. 87-293, title I, §16, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 622, related to appointment of persons serving under prior law, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 89-572, §5(a), Sept. 13, 1966, 80 Stat. 765.

## CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 2(b) of Pub. L. 102-565 provided that: "The amendment made by subsection (a) [enacting this section] applies with respect to each fiscal year after fiscal year 1992."

REPEALS; AMENDMENTS AND APPLICATION OF AMENDMENTS UNAFFECTED; CONTINUATION OF DETERMINATIONS, AUTHORIZATION, REGULATIONS, ORDERS, CONTRACTS, AGREEMENTS, AND OTHER ACTIONS

Section 5 of Pub. L. 89-572, Sept. 13, 1966, 80 Stat. 765, provided that:

"(a) Section 16 of the Peace Corps Act, as amended [former section 2515 of this title], which relates to appointment of persons serving under prior law, section 20 of the Peace Corps Act, as amended, which relates to moratorium on student loans [amending section 425 of Title 20, Education], section 21 of the Peace Corps Act, as amended, which amends the Civil Service Retirement Act [section 8301 et seq. of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees], and title II of the Act, which relates to Internal Revenue Code and Social Security Act amendments [amending sections 912, 1303, 3121, 3122, 3401 and 6051 of Title 26, Internal Revenue Code, and sections 405, 409 and 410 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare, and notes under sections 912 and 3121 of Title 26] are hereby repealed.

"(b) Such repeal shall not be deemed to affect amendments contained in such provisions and the application

of the amendments contained in the title. All determinations, authorizations, regulations, orders, contracts, agreements, and other actions issued, undertaken, or entered into under authority of the provisions of law repealed by subsection (a) shall continue in full force and effect until modified by appropriate authority."

**§ 2516. Use of foreign currencies**

Whenever possible, expenditures incurred in carrying out functions under this chapter shall be paid for in such currency of the country or area where the expense is incurred as may be available to the United States.

(Pub. L. 87-293, title I, §17, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 623.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-293, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 612, as amended, known as the Peace Corps Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2501 of this title and Tables.

**§ 2517. Activities promoting Americans' understanding of other peoples**

In order to further the goal of the Peace Corps, as set forth in section 2501 of this title, relating to the promotion of a better understanding of other peoples on the part of the American people, the Director, utilizing the authorities under section 2509(a)(1) of this title and other provisions of law, shall, as appropriate, encourage, facilitate, and assist activities carried out by former volunteers in furtherance of such goal and the efforts of agencies, organizations, and other individuals to support or assist in former volunteers' carrying out such activities.

(Pub. L. 87-293, title I, §18, as added Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title II, §201], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-145.)

## PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 2517, Pub. L. 87-293, title I, §18, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 623, provided that Mutual Defense Assistance Control Act of 1951 (22 U.S.C. 1611 et seq.) applied, subject to an exception, to functions carried out under this chapter, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 97-113, title VI, §605(b), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1543. The 1951 Act was superseded by the Export Administration Act of 1979 (50 U.S.C. App. 2401 et seq.).

**§ 2518. Seal and name****(a) Judicial notice**

The President may adopt, alter, and use an official seal or emblem of the Peace Corps of such design as he shall determine, which shall be judicially noticed.

**(b) Exclusiveness of use; penalties for violations; injunctions**

(1) The use of the official seal or emblem and the use of the name "Peace Corps" shall be restricted exclusively to designate programs authorized under this chapter.

(2) Whoever, whether an individual, partnership, corporation, or association, uses the seal for which provision is made in this section, or any sign, insignia, or symbol in colorable imitation thereof, or the words "Peace Corps" or any



combination of these or other words or characters in colorable imitation thereof, other than to designate programs authorized under this chapter, shall be fined not more than \$500 or imprisoned not more than six months, or both. A violation of this subsection may be enjoined at the suit of the Attorney General, United States attorneys, or other persons duly authorized to represent the United States.

(Pub. L. 87-293, title I, § 19, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 623; Pub. L. 88-200, § 7, Dec. 13, 1963, 77 Stat. 360.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (b), was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-293, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 612, as amended, known as the Peace Corps Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2501 of this title and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1963—Pub. L. 88-200 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsec. (b).

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section, except authority to adopt and alter an official seal or emblem, delegated to Director of Peace Corps by section 1-103 of Ex. Ord. No. 12137, May 16, 1979, 44 F.R. 29023, eff. May 16, 1979, set out as a note under section 2501 of this title.

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Emblems, insignia and names, unauthorized use, see section 701 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

### § 2519. Security investigations

All persons employed or assigned to duties under this chapter shall be investigated to insure that the employment or assignment is consistent with the national interest in accordance with standards and procedures established by the President. If an investigation made pursuant to this section develops any data reflecting that the person who is the subject of the investigation is of questionable loyalty or is a questionable security risk, the investigating agency shall refer the matter to the Federal Bureau of Investigation for the conduct of a full field investigation. The results of that full field investigation shall be furnished to the initial investigating agency, and to the agency by which the subject person is employed, for information and appropriate action. Volunteers shall be deemed employees of the United States Government for the purpose of this section.

(Pub. L. 87-293, title I, § 22, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 624.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-293, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 612, as amended, known as the Peace Corps Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2501 of this title and Tables.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Director of Peace Corps by section 1-103 of Ex. Ord. No. 12137, May 16, 1979, 44 F.R. 29023, eff. May 16, 1979, set out as a note under section 2501 of this title.

### § 2520. Military training and service exemption

Notwithstanding the provisions of any other law or regulation, service in the Peace Corps as a volunteer shall not in any way exempt such volunteer from the performance of any obligations or duties under the provisions of the Universal Military Training and Service Act [50 App. U.S.C. 451 et seq.].

(Pub. L. 87-293, title I, § 23, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 624.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Universal Military Training and Service Act, referred to in text, subsequently renamed the Military Selective Service Act, is act June 24, 1948, ch. 625, 62 Stat. 604, as amended, which is classified principally to section 451 et seq. of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see References in Text note set out under section 451 of Title 50, Appendix, and Tables.

### § 2521. Foreign language proficiency

No person shall be assigned to duty as a volunteer under this chapter in any foreign country or area unless at the time of such assignment he possesses such reasonable proficiency as his assignment requires in speaking the language of the country or area to which he is assigned.

(Pub. L. 87-293, title I, § 24, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 624.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-293, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 612, as amended, known as the Peace Corps Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2501 of this title and Tables.

### § 2521a. Nonpartisan appointments

In carrying out this chapter, no political test or political qualification may be used in—

- (1) selecting any person for enrollment as a volunteer or for appointment to a position at, or for assignment to (or for employment for assignment to), a duty station located abroad, or
- (2) promoting or taking any other action with respect to any volunteer or any person assigned to such a duty station.

(Pub. L. 87-293, title I, § 25, as added Pub. L. 99-83, title XI, § 1105(a)(2), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 276.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-293, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 612, as amended, known as the Peace Corps Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2501 of this title and Tables.

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 25 of Pub. L. 87-293 was renumbered section 26 and is classified to section 2522 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as an Effective Date of 1985 Amendment note under section 2151-1 of this title.

### § 2522. Definitions

(a) The term “abroad” means any area outside the United States.

(b) The term “United States” means the several States and the District of Columbia.

(c) The term “function” includes any duty, obligation, right, power, authority, responsibility, privilege, discretion, activity, and program.

(d) The term “health care” includes all appropriate examinations, preventive, curative and restorative health and medical care, and supplementary services when necessary.

(e) For the purposes of this chapter or any other Act, the period of any individual’s service as a volunteer under this chapter shall include—

(i) except for the purposes of section 2504(f) of this title, any period of training under section 2507(a) of this title prior to enrollment as a volunteer under this chapter; and

(ii) the period between enrollment as a volunteer and the termination of service as such volunteer by the President or by death or resignation.

(f) The term “United States Government agency” includes any department, board, wholly or partly owned corporation, or instrumentality, commission, or establishment of the United States Government.

(g) The word “transportation” in sections 2504(b), 2504(m), and 2505(2) of this title includes transportation of not to exceed three hundred pounds per person of unaccompanied necessary personal and household effects.

(Pub. L. 87–293, title I, §26, formerly §25, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 624; Pub. L. 89–572, §4, Sept. 13, 1966, 80 Stat. 765; Pub. L. 91–352, §8, July 24, 1970, 84 Stat. 465; renumbered §26, Pub. L. 99–83, title XI, §1105(a)(1), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 276.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (e), was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87–293, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 612, as amended, known as the Peace Corps Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2501 of this title and Tables.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 26 of Pub. L. 87–293 was renumbered section 27 and is classified to section 2523 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

1970—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 91–352 inserted reference to section 2504(m) of this title.

1966—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 89–572 struck out territories from definition of “United States”.

CROSS REFERENCES

Volunteers, see section 2505 of this title.

§ 2523. Separability

If any provision of this chapter or the application of any provision to any circumstances or persons shall be held invalid, the validity of the remainder of this chapter and the applicability of such provision to other circumstances or persons shall not be affected thereby.

(Pub. L. 87–293, title I, §27, formerly §26, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 625; renumbered §27, Pub. L. 99–83, title XI, §1105(a)(1), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 276.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87–293, Sept. 22, 1961, 75

Stat. 612, as amended, known as the Peace Corps Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2501 of this title and Tables.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 27 of Pub. L. 87–293 was renumbered section 28 and is set out as an Effective Date note under section 2501 of this title.

CHAPTER 35—ARMS CONTROL AND DISARMAMENT

SUBCHAPTER I—GENERAL PROVISIONS

Sec. 2551. Congressional statement of purpose.  
2552. Definitions.

SUBCHAPTER II—ORGANIZATION

2561. United States Arms Control and Disarmament Agency.  
2562. Director.  
(a) Appointment.  
(b) Duties.  
2563. Deputy Director; appointment; powers and duties.  
2564. Assistant Directors; number; appointment; powers and duties.  
2565. Bureaus, offices, and divisions.  
2566. Scientific and Policy Advisory Committee.  
(a) Establishment.  
(b) Function.  
(c) Reimbursement of expenses.  
(d) Termination.  
(e) “Scientist” defined.

2567. Presidential Special Representatives.  
2568. Program for visiting scholars.

SUBCHAPTER III—FUNCTIONS

2571. Research, development and other studies.  
(a) Control, reduction and elimination of armed forces and armaments.  
(b) Weapon detection and identification tests.  
(c) Analysis of national budgets and economic indicators.  
(d) Space, earth’s surface and underwater regions.  
(e) Structure and operation of international control.  
(f) Training of control system personnel.  
(g) Danger of war from accident, miscalculation, or surprise attack.  
(h) Economic and political consequences of disarmament.  
(i) Disarmament implications of foreign and national security policies of United States.  
(j) National security and foreign policy implications of disarmament.  
(k) Methods for maintenance of peace and security during stages of disarmament.  
(l) War prevention factors.  
(m) Other related problems.  
2572. Patents; availability to general public; protection of background rights.  
2573. Policy formulation.  
(a) Formulation.  
(b) Prohibition.  
2574. Negotiation management.  
(a) Responsibilities.  
(b) Functions with respect to United States Information Agency.  
(c) Authority.  
2575. Coordination of Government agencies and resolution of policy differences.  
2576. Arms control information.  
2577. Verification of compliance.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>Sec.</p> <p>(a) In general.</p> <p>(b) Standard for verification of compliance.</p> <p>(c) Rule of construction.</p> <p>(d) Participation of Agency.</p> <p>2577a. Arms control verification.</p> <p>(a) Establishment of working group.</p> <p>(b) Information and data base.</p> <p>2578. Negotiating records.</p> <p>(a) Preparation of records.</p> <p>(b) Negotiating and implementation records.</p> <p>(c) Participation of Agency personnel.</p> <p>2579. Comprehensive compilation of arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament studies.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">SUBCHAPTER IV—ADDITIONAL GENERAL PROVISIONS</p> <p>2581. General authority of Director.</p> <p>(a) Utilization of other Federal agencies; general administrative services; transfers of supplies, equipment, and surplus property.</p> <p>(b) Employment of personnel.</p> <p>(c) Detail of other agency personnel without prejudice to status or advancement.</p> <p>(d) Experts and consultants; stenographic reporting services; compensation and travel expenses; limitation on period of employment; renewal of employment contracts.</p> <p>(e) Employment of outstanding personnel.</p> <p>(f) Establishment of advisory boards; compensation and expenses.</p> <p>(g) Travel and subsistence expenses from private sources; reimbursement.</p> <p>(h) Oaths and sworn statements.</p> <p>(i) Delegation of functions.</p> <p>(j) Rules and regulations.</p> <p>2582. Foreign Service personnel.</p> <p>(a) Delegation of authority by Secretary of State to Director.</p> <p>(b) Extension or renewal of limited appointments of Foreign Service members.</p> <p>2583. Contracts or expenditures.</p> <p>2584. Conflict of interest and dual compensation exemption.</p> <p>2585. Security requirements.</p> <p>(a) Establishment of security and loyalty requirements, restrictions, and safeguards; investigation of personnel; standards of clearance.</p> <p>(b) Acceptance of investigation and clearance granted by other Government agencies to contractor personnel; access to confidential information.</p> <p>(c) Atomic Energy Commission Restricted Data; access; personnel security procedures and standards of Commission and Agency; interim clearance; exchanges.</p> <p>(d) Waiver of required investigation and determination with respect to consultants; procedure.</p> <p>2586. Comptroller General audit.</p> <p>2587. Transfer of activities and facilities to Agency.</p> <p>(a) Transfer of United States Disarmament Administration.</p> <p>(b) Transfer of activities, facilities, etc., to Director; report to Congress; approval.</p> <p>2588. Use of funds.</p> <p>2589, 2590. Repealed.</p> <p>2591. Specialists fluent in Russian or other languages of the independent states of the former Soviet Union.</p> | <p>Sec.</p> <p>2592 to 2592b. Repealed.</p> <p>2593. ACDA Inspector General.</p> <p>(a) Establishment and duties.</p> <p>(b) Duality of appointment.</p> <p>(c) Utilization of staff.</p> <p>(d) References.</p> <p>2593a. Annual report to Congress.</p> <p>(a) In general.</p> <p>(b) Classification of report.</p> <p>(c) Reporting consecutive noncompliance.</p> <p>2593b. Public annual report on world military expenditures and arms transfers.</p> <p>2593c. Requirement for authorization of appropriations.</p> <p>(a) Limitation on obligation and expenditure of funds.</p> <p>(b) Subsequent authorization.</p> <p>(c) Application.</p> <p>2593d. Transfers and reprogrammings.</p> <p>(a) Transfer of funds.</p> <p>(b) Limitation.</p> <p>(c) Congressional notification of certain reprogrammings.</p> <p>(d) Limitation on end-of-year reprogrammings.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">SUBCHAPTER V—ON-SITE INSPECTION ACTIVITIES</p> <p>2595. Findings.</p> <p>2595a. Policy coordination concerning implementation of on-site inspection provisions.</p> <p>(a) Interagency coordination.</p> <p>(b) Role of Secretary of Defense.</p> <p>(c) Role of Director.</p> <p>2595b. Authorizations of appropriations for On-Site Inspection Agency.</p> <p>2595b-1. Improving congressional oversight of on-site inspection activities.</p> <p>(a) Report from President.</p> <p>(b) Review of certain reprogramming notifications.</p> <p>2595c. Definitions.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">SUBCHAPTER I—GENERAL PROVISIONS</p> <p><b>§ 2551. Congressional statement of purpose</b></p> <p>An ultimate goal of the United States is a world which is free from the scourge of war and the dangers and burdens of armaments; in which the use of force has been subordinated to the rule of law; and in which international adjustments to a changing world are achieved peacefully. It is the purpose of this chapter to provide impetus toward this goal by creating a new agency of peace to deal with the problem of reduction and control of armaments looking toward ultimate world disarmament.</p> <p>Arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament policy, being an important aspect of foreign policy, must be consistent with national security policy as a whole. The formulation and implementation of United States arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament policy in a manner which will promote the national security can best be insured by a central organization charged by statute with primary responsibility for this field. This organization must have such a position within the Government that it can provide the President, the Secretary of State, other officials of the executive branch, and the Congress with recommendations concerning United States arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament policy, and can assess the effect of these recommendations upon</p> |
|--|--|

our foreign policies, our national security policies, and our economy.

This organization must have the capacity to provide the essential scientific, economic, political, military, psychological, and technological information upon which realistic arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament policy must be based. It shall have the authority, under the direction of the President and the Secretary of State, to carry out the following primary functions:

(1) The preparation for and management of United States participation in international negotiations and implementation fora in the arms control and disarmament field.

(2) When directed by the President, the preparation for, and management of, United States participation in international negotiations and implementation fora in the nonproliferation field.

(3) The conduct, support, and coordination of research for arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament policy formulation.

(4) The preparation for, operation of, or, as appropriate, direction of, United States participation in such control systems as may become part of United States arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament activities.

(5) The dissemination and coordination of public information concerning arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament.

(Pub. L. 87-297, title I, § 2, Sept. 26, 1961, 75 Stat. 631; Pub. L. 94-141, title I, § 144, Nov. 29, 1975, 89 Stat. 758; Pub. L. 103-236, title VII, §§ 703, 719(a), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 491, 501.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-236, § 719(a), inserted “, nonproliferation,” after “Arms control” in second undesignated par. and after “arms control” wherever appearing in second and third undesignated pars.

Pub. L. 103-236, § 703, substituted pars. (1) to (5) for former pars. (a) to (d) which read as follows:

“(a) The conduct, support, and coordination of research for arms control and disarmament policy formulation;

“(b) The preparation for and management of United States participation in international negotiations in the arms control and disarmament field;

“(c) The dissemination and coordination of public information concerning arms control and disarmament; and

“(d) The preparation for, operation of, or as appropriate, direction of United States participation in such control systems as may become part of United States arms control and disarmament activities.”

1975—Pub. L. 94-141 substituted “It shall have the authority, under the direction of the President and the Secretary of State,” for “It must be able”.

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Section 701(a) of Pub. L. 103-236 provided that: “This part [part A (§§ 701-719) of title VII of Pub. L. 103-236, enacting sections 2578 and 2593a to 2593d of this title, amending this section, sections 2562, 2565 to 2568, 2571, 2573 to 2577, 2579, 2581, 2585, 2591, 2593, 2791, 2797, and 2797b of this title, section 5315 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, and section 2139a of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare, repealing sections 2578, 2589, 2590, and 2592 of this title, enacting provisions set out as notes under this section, and repealing provisions set out as notes under this section] may be cited as the ‘Arms Control and Nonproliferation Act of 1994.’”

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1989 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 101-216, § 1, Dec. 11, 1989, 103 Stat. 1853, provided that: “This Act [enacting sections 2577a and 2595 to 2595c of this title, amending sections 2563, 2567, 2588, and 2589 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 2565 and 2567 of this title] may be cited as the ‘Arms Control and Disarmament Amendments Act of 1989.’”

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1987 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 100-213, § 1, Dec. 24, 1987, 101 Stat. 1444, provided that: “This Act [enacting sections 2578, 2579, and 2593 of this title, amending sections 2589 and 2592 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 2578 of this title] may be cited as the ‘Arms Control and Disarmament Amendments Act of 1987.’”

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1982 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 97-339, § 1, Oct. 15, 1982, 96 Stat. 1635, provided: “That this Act [amending sections 2571, 2585, and 2589 of this title] may be cited as the ‘Arms Control and Disarmament Amendments Act of 1982.’”

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1977 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 95-108, § 1, Aug. 17, 1977, 91 Stat. 871, provided that: “This Act [enacting sections 2567 and 2577 of this title and amending sections 2571, 2581, and 2589 of this title and section 5315 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees] may be cited as the ‘Arms Control and Disarmament Act Amendments of 1977.’”

#### SHORT TITLE

Section 1 of Pub. L. 87-297 provided that: “This Act [enacting this chapter] may be cited as the ‘Arms Control and Disarmament Act.’”

#### CONGRESSIONAL DECLARATIONS; PURPOSES OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Section 702 of Pub. L. 103-236 provided that: “(a) CONGRESSIONAL DECLARATIONS.—The Congress declares that—

“(1) a fundamental goal of the United States, particularly in the wake of the highly turbulent and uncertain international situation fostered by the end of the Cold War, the disintegration of the Soviet Union and the resulting emergence of fifteen new independent states, and the revolutionary changes in Eastern Europe, is to prevent the proliferation of nuclear weapons and their means of delivery and of advanced conventional armaments, to eliminate chemical and biological weapons, and to reduce and limit the large numbers of nuclear weapons in the former Soviet Union, as well as to prevent regional conflicts and conventional arms races; and

“(2) an ultimate goal of the United States continues to be a world in which the use of force is subordinated to the rule of law and international change is achieved peacefully without the danger and burden of destabilizing and costly armaments.

“(b) PURPOSE.—The purpose of this part [part A of title VII of Pub. L. 103-236, see Short Title of 1994 Amendment note above] is—

“(1) to strengthen the United States Arms Control and Disarmament Agency; and

“(2) to improve congressional oversight of the arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament activities of the United States Arms Control and Disarmament Agency, and of the Agency’s operating budget.”

#### REPORT ON REVITALIZATION OF ACDA

Section 717(b) of Pub. L. 103-236 provided that: “Not later than December 31, 1995, the Director of the United States Arms Control and Disarmament Agency shall submit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate a detailed report describing the actions that have been taken and that are underway to revitalize the United States Arms Control and Dis-

armament Agency pursuant to the provisions of this part [part A of title VII of Pub. L. 103-236, see Short Title of 1994 Amendment note above] and the amendments made by this part.”

#### SOVIET WEAPONS DESTRUCTION

Pub. L. 102-228, title II, Dec. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 1693, as amended by Pub. L. 102-484, div. A, title XIV, §1421(a)(2), (3), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2565; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §139(17), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 398, provided that:

#### “PART A—SHORT TITLE

##### “SEC. 201. SHORT TITLE.

“This title may be cited as the ‘Soviet Nuclear Threat Reduction Act of 1991.’”

#### “PART B—FINDINGS AND PROGRAM AUTHORITY

##### “SEC. 211. NATIONAL DEFENSE AND SOVIET WEAPONS DESTRUCTION.

“(a) FINDINGS.—The Congress finds—

“(1) that Soviet President Gorbachev has requested Western help in dismantling nuclear weapons, and President Bush has proposed United States cooperation on the storage, transportation, dismantling, and destruction of Soviet nuclear weapons;

“(2) that the profound changes underway in the Soviet Union pose three types of danger to nuclear safety and stability, as follows: (A) ultimate disposition of nuclear weapons among the Soviet Union, its republics, and any successor entities that is not conducive to weapons safety or to international stability; (B) seizure, theft, sale, or use of nuclear weapons or components; and (C) transfers of weapons, weapons components, or weapons know-how outside of the territory of the Soviet Union, its republics, and any successor entities, that contribute to worldwide proliferation; and

“(3) that it is in the national security interests of the United States (A) to facilitate on a priority basis the transportation, storage, safeguarding, and destruction of nuclear and other weapons in the Soviet Union, its republics, and any successor entities, and (B) to assist in the prevention of weapons proliferation.

“(b) EXCLUSIONS.—United States assistance in destroying nuclear and other weapons under this title may not be provided to the Soviet Union, any of its republics, or any successor entity unless the President certifies to the Congress that the proposed recipient is committed to—

“(1) making a substantial investment of its resources for dismantling or destroying such weapons;

“(2) forgoing any military modernization program that exceeds legitimate defense requirements and forgoing the replacement of destroyed weapons of mass destruction;

“(3) forgoing any use of fissionable and other components of destroyed nuclear weapons in new nuclear weapons;

“(4) facilitating United States verification of weapons destruction carried out under section 212;

“(5) complying with all relevant arms control agreements; and

“(6) observing internationally recognized human rights, including the protection of minorities.

##### “SEC. 212. AUTHORITY FOR PROGRAM TO FACILITATE SOVIET WEAPONS DESTRUCTION.

“(a) IN GENERAL.—Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the President, consistent with the findings stated in section 211, may establish a program as authorized in subsection (b) to assist Soviet weapons destruction. Funds for carrying out this program shall be provided as specified in part C.

“(b) TYPE OF PROGRAM.—The program under this section shall be limited to cooperation among the United States, the Soviet Union, its republics, and any successor entities to (1) destroy nuclear weapons, chemical

weapons, and other weapons, (2) transport, store, disable, and safeguard weapons in connection with their destruction, and (3) establish verifiable safeguards against the proliferation of such weapons. Such cooperation may involve assistance in planning and in resolving technical problems associated with weapons destruction and proliferation. Such cooperation may also involve the funding of critical short-term requirements related to weapons destruction and should, to the extent feasible, draw upon United States technology and United States technicians.

#### “PART C—ADMINISTRATIVE AND FUNDING AUTHORITIES

##### “SEC. 221. ADMINISTRATION OF NUCLEAR THREAT REDUCTION PROGRAMS.

“(a) FUNDING.—

“(1) TRANSFER AUTHORITY.—The President may, to the extent provided in an appropriations Act or joint resolution, transfer to the appropriate defense accounts from amounts appropriated to the Department of Defense for fiscal years 1992 and 1993 for operation and maintenance or from balances in working capital accounts established under section 2208 of title 10, United States Code, not to exceed \$800,000,000 for use in reducing the Soviet military threat under part B.

“(2) LIMITATION.—Amounts for transfers under paragraph (1) may not be derived from amounts appropriated for any activity of the Department of Defense that the Secretary of Defense determines essential for the readiness of the Armed Forces, including amounts for—

“(A) training activities; and

“(B) depot maintenance activities.

“(b) DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE.—The Department of Defense shall serve as the executive agent for any program established under part B.

“(c) REIMBURSEMENT OF OTHER AGENCIES.—The Secretary of Defense may reimburse other United States Government departments and agencies under this section for costs of participation, as directed by the President, only in a program established under part B.

“(d) CHARGES AGAINST FUNDS.—The value of any material from existing stocks and inventories of the Department of Defense, or any other United States Government department or agency, that is used in providing assistance under part B to reduce the Soviet military threat may not be charged against funds available pursuant to subsection (a) to the extent that the material contributed is directed by the President to be contributed without subsequent replacement.

“(e) DETERMINATION BY DIRECTOR OF OMB.—No amount may be obligated for the program under part B for fiscal year 1992 or fiscal year 1993 unless expenditures for that program for that fiscal year have been determined by the Director of the Office of Management and Budget to be counted against the defense category of the discretionary spending limits for that fiscal year (as defined in section 601(a)(2) of the Congressional Budget Act of 1974 [2 U.S.C. 665(a)(2)]) for purposes of part C of the Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985 [2 U.S.C. 900 et seq.].

##### “SEC. 222. REPAYMENT ARRANGEMENTS.

“(a) REIMBURSEMENT ARRANGEMENTS.—Assistance provided under part B to the Soviet Union, any of its republics, or any successor entity shall be conditioned, to the extent that the President determines to be appropriate after consultation with the recipient government, upon the agreement of the recipient government to reimburse the United States Government for the cost of such assistance from natural resources or other materials available to the recipient government.

“(b) NATURAL RESOURCES, ETC.—The President shall encourage the satisfaction of such reimbursement arrangements through the provision of natural resources, such as oil and petroleum products and critical and strategic materials, and industrial goods. Materials received by the United States Government pursuant to this section that are suitable for inclusion in the Strategic Petroleum Reserve or the National Defense

Stockpile may be deposited in the reserve or stockpile without reimbursement. Other material and services received may be sold or traded on the domestic or international market with the proceeds to be deposited in the General Fund of the Treasury.

“SEC. 223. DIRE EMERGENCY SUPPLEMENTAL APPROPRIATIONS.

“It is the sense of the Senate that the committee of conference on House Joint Resolution 157 [enacted into law as Pub. L. 102-229] should consider providing the necessary authority in the conference agreement for the President to transfer funds pursuant to this title.

“PART D—REPORTING REQUIREMENTS

“SEC. 231. PRIOR NOTICE OF OBLIGATIONS TO CONGRESS.

“Not less than 15 days before obligating any funds for a program under part B, the President shall transmit to the Congress a report on the proposed obligation. Each such report shall specify—

“(1) the account, budget activity, and particular program or programs from which the funds proposed to be obligated are to be derived and the amount of the proposed obligation; and

“(2) the activities and forms of assistance under part B for which the President plans to obligate such funds.”

REPORT ON FULFILLMENT OF PRIMARY FUNCTIONS

Pub. L. 102-228, title IV, §401(c), Dec. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 1699, directed Inspector General of Arms Control and Disarmament Agency to submit, not later than Dec. 15, 1992, to President, Speaker of House of Representatives, and chairman of Committee on Foreign Relations of Senate a report on Agency's fulfillment of primary functions described in section 2551 of this title and directed President to submit comments on any recommendations contained in the report dealing with executive branch organization and direction, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §139(18), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 398.

CONVENTIONAL ARMS TRADE

Pub. L. 93-559, §51, Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1817, as amended by Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, §734(a)(8), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560, provided that:

“(a) It is the sense of the Congress that the recent growth in international transfers of conventional arms to developing nations—

“(1) is a cause for grave concern for the United States and other nations in that in particular areas of the world it increases the danger of potential violence among nations, and diverts scarce world resources from more peaceful uses; and

“(2) could be controlled progressively through negotiations and agreements among supplier and recipient nations.

“(b) Therefore, the President is urged to propose to the Geneva Conference of the Committee on Disarmament that it consider as a high priority agenda item discussions among participating nations of that Conference for the purposes of—

“(1) agreeing to workable limitations on conventional arms transfers; and

“(2) establishing a mechanism through which such limitations could be effectively monitored.

“(c) [Repealed. Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, §734(a)(8), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.]”

EX. ORD. NO. 12946. PRESIDENT'S ADVISORY BOARD ON ARMS PROLIFERATION POLICY

Ex. Ord. No. 12946, Jan. 20, 1995, 60 F.R. 4829, provided: By the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of America, including section 1601 of the National Defense Authorization Act, Fiscal Year 1994 (Public Law 103-160) [107 Stat. 1841], and the Federal Advisory Committee Act, as amended (5 U.S.C. App.) (“Act”), except

that subsections (e) and (f) of section 10 of such Act do not apply, and section 301 of title 3, United States Code, it is hereby ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. *Establishment.* There is established within the Department of Defense the “President's Advisory Board on Arms Proliferation Policy” (“Board”). The Board shall consist of five members who shall be appointed by the President from among persons in private life who are noted for their stature and expertise regarding the proliferation of strategic and advanced conventional weapons and are from diverse backgrounds. The President shall designate one of the members as Chairperson of the Board.

SEC. 2. *Functions.* The Board shall advise the President on implementation of United States conventional arms transfer policy, other issues related to arms proliferation policy, and on other matters deemed appropriate by the President. The Board shall report to the President through the Assistant to the President for National Security Affairs.

SEC. 3. *Administration.* (a) The heads of executive agencies shall, to the extent permitted by law, provide to the Board such information as it may require for the purpose of carrying out its functions.

(b) Members of the Board shall serve without compensation, but shall be allowed travel expenses, including per diem in lieu of subsistence, as authorized by law, including 5 U.S.C. 5701-5707 and section 7(d) of the Act, for persons serving intermittently in government service.

(c) The Department of Defense or the head of any other Federal department or agency may detail to the Board, upon request of the Chairperson of the Board, any of the personnel of the department or agency to assist the Board in carrying out its duties.

(d) The Secretary of Defense shall designate a federally funded research and development center with expertise in the matters covered by the Board to provide the Board with such support services as the Board may need to carry out its duties.

(e) The Department of Defense shall provide the Board with administrative services, facilities, staff, and other support services necessary for the performance of its functions.

SEC. 4. *General.* (a) The Board shall terminate 30 days after the date on which the President submits the final report of the Board to the Congress.

(b) For reasons of national security or for such other reasons as specified in section 552(b) of title 5, United States Code, the Board shall not provide public notice or access to meetings at which national security information will be discussed. Authority to make such determinations shall reside with the Secretary of Defense or his designee who must be an official required to be appointed by and with the advice and consent of the Senate.

(c) Information made available to the Board shall be given all necessary security protection in accordance with applicable laws and regulations.

(d) Each member of the Board and each member of the Board's staff shall execute an agreement not to reveal any classified information obtained by virtue of his or her service with the Board except as authorized by applicable law and regulations.

WILLIAM J. CLINTON.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2595a of this title.

§ 2552. Definitions

As used in this chapter—

(a) The terms “arms control” and “disarmament” mean the identification, verification, inspection, limitation, control, reduction, or elimination, of armed forces and armaments of all kinds under international agreement including the necessary steps taken under such

an agreement to establish an effective system of international control, or to create and strengthen international organizations for the maintenance of peace.

(b) The term “Government agency” means any executive department, commission, agency, independent establishment, corporation wholly or partly owned by the United States which is an instrumentality of the United States, or any board, bureau, division, service, office, officer, authority, administration, or other establishment in the executive branch of Government.

(c) The term “Agency” means the United States Arms Control and Disarmament Agency.

(Pub. L. 87-297, title I, § 3, Sept. 26, 1961, 75 Stat. 631.)

#### SUBCHAPTER II—ORGANIZATION

##### § 2561. United States Arms Control and Disarmament Agency

There is established an agency to be known as the “United States Arms Control and Disarmament Agency”.

(Pub. L. 87-297, title II, § 21, Sept. 26, 1961, 75 Stat. 632.)

##### § 2562. Director

###### (a) Appointment

The Agency shall be headed by a Director appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate. No person serving on active duty as a commissioned officer of the Armed Forces of the United States may be appointed Director.

###### (b) Duties

(1) The Director shall serve as the principal adviser to the Secretary of State, the National Security Council, and the President and other executive branch Government officials on matters relating to arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament. In carrying out his duties under this chapter, the Director, under the direction of the President and the Secretary of State, shall have primary responsibility within the Government for matters relating to arms control and disarmament, and, whenever directed by the President, primary responsibility within the Government for matters relating to nonproliferation.

(2) The Director shall attend all meetings of the National Security Council involving weapons procurement, arms sales, consideration of the defense budget, and all arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament matters.

(Pub. L. 87-297, title II, § 22, Sept. 26, 1961, 75 Stat. 632; Pub. L. 88-426, title III, § 305(17)(A), Aug. 14, 1964, 78 Stat. 424; Pub. L. 94-141, title I, § 145, Nov. 29, 1975, 89 Stat. 758; Pub. L. 96-66, § 1(a), Sept. 21, 1979, 93 Stat. 414; Pub. L. 98-202, § 2, Dec. 2, 1983, 97 Stat. 1381; Pub. L. 103-236, title VII, § 705, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 492.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-236 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section read as follows: “The Agency

shall be headed by a Director, who shall serve as the principal adviser to the Secretary of State, the National Security Council, and the President on arms control and disarmament matters. In carrying out his duties under this chapter the Director shall, under the direction of the Secretary of State, have primary responsibility within the Government for arms control and disarmament matters, as defined in this chapter. The Director shall attend all meetings of the National Security Council involving weapons procurement, arms sales, consideration of the defense budget, and all arms control and disarmament matters. The Director shall be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate. No person serving on active duty as a commissioned officer of the Armed Forces of the United States may be appointed Director.”

1983—Pub. L. 98-202 required attendance of Director at prescribed National Security Council meetings and substituted “The Director” for “He” before “shall be appointed”.

1979—Pub. L. 96-66 barred appointment of an active duty commissioned officer of the Armed Forces as the Director.

1975—Pub. L. 94-141 inserted “the National Security Council,” after “Secretary of State” in first sentence.

1964—Pub. L. 88-426 repealed provisions which prescribed compensation of Director.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1964 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 88-426 effective on first day of first pay period which begins on or after July 1, 1964, except to extent provided in section 501(c) of Pub. L. 88-426, see section 501 of Pub. L. 88-416.

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Compensation of Director, see section 5313 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2595a of this title.

##### § 2563. Deputy Director; appointment; powers and duties

A Deputy Director of the Agency shall be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate. The Deputy Director shall have direct responsibility, under the supervision of the Director, for the administrative management of the Agency, intelligence-related activities, security, and the Special Compartmental Intelligence Facility, and shall perform such other duties and exercise such other powers as the Director may prescribe. He shall act for, and exercise the powers of, the Director during his absence or disability or during a vacancy in said office. No person serving on active duty as a commissioned officer of the Armed Forces of the United States may be appointed Deputy Director.

(Pub. L. 87-297, title II, § 23, Sept. 26, 1961, 75 Stat. 632; Pub. L. 88-426, title III, § 305(17)(B), Aug. 14, 1964, 78 Stat. 424; Pub. L. 96-66, § 1(b), Sept. 21, 1979, 93 Stat. 414; Pub. L. 101-216, title I, § 102, Dec. 11, 1989, 103 Stat. 1853.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1989—Pub. L. 101-216 amended second sentence generally. Prior to amendment, second sentence read as follows: “The Deputy Director shall perform such duties and exercise such powers as the Director may prescribe.”

1979—Pub. L. 96-66 barred appointment of an active duty commissioned officer of Armed Forces as Deputy Director.

1964—Pub. L. 88-426 repealed provisions which prescribed compensation of Deputy Director.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1964 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 88-426 effective on first day of first pay period which begins on or after July 1, 1964, except to extent provided in section 501(c) of Pub. L. 88-426, see section 501 of Pub. L. 88-426.

CROSS REFERENCES

Compensation of Deputy Director, see section 5315 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

**§ 2564. Assistant Directors; number; appointment; powers and duties**

Not to exceed four Assistant Directors may be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate. They shall perform such duties and exercise such powers as the Director may prescribe.

(Pub. L. 87-297, title II, §24, Sept. 26, 1961, 75 Stat. 632; Pub. L. 88-426, title III, §305(17)(C), Aug. 14, 1964, 78 Stat. 424.)

AMENDMENTS

1964—Pub. L. 88-426 repealed provisions which prescribed compensation of Assistant Directors.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1964 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 88-426 effective on first day of first pay period which begins on or after July 1, 1964, except to extent provided in section 501(c) of Pub. L. 88-426, see section 501 of Pub. L. 88-426.

CROSS REFERENCES

Compensation of Assistant Directors, see section 5316 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

**§ 2565. Bureaus, offices, and divisions**

The Director may establish within the Agency such bureaus, offices, and divisions as he may determine to be necessary to discharge his responsibilities pursuant to this chapter, including a bureau of intelligence and information support and an office to perform legal services for the Agency.

(Pub. L. 87-297, title II, §25, Sept. 26, 1961, 75 Stat. 632; Pub. L. 103-236, title VII, §706, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 492.)

AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-236 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section read as follows: "The Director, under the direction of the Secretary of State, may establish within the Agency such bureaus, offices, and divisions as he may determine to be necessary to discharge his responsibilities under this chapter, including, but not limited to, an Office of the General Counsel."

ARMS CONTROL IMPLEMENTATION AND COMPLIANCE  
RESOLUTION

Pub. L. 101-216, title I, §104, Dec. 11, 1989, 103 Stat. 1854, provided that: "The Director of the United States Arms Control and Disarmament Agency should study, and report to the Congress on, the advisability of establishing in the Agency an arms control implementation and compliance resolution bureau, or other organizational unit, that would be responsible for—

"(1) managing the implementation of existing and future arms control agreements;

"(2) coordinating the activities of the Special Verification Commission and the Standing Consultative Commission; and

"(3) preparing comprehensive analyses and policy positions regarding the effective resolution of arms control compliance questions."

CROSS REFERENCES

Compensation of General Counsel, see section 5316 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

**§ 2566. Scientific and Policy Advisory Committee**

**(a) Establishment**

(1) The President may appoint a Scientific and Policy Advisory Committee (in this section referred to as the "Committee") of not to exceed 15 members, not less than eight of whom shall be scientists.

(2) The members of the Committee shall be appointed as follows:

(A) One member, who shall be a person of renown and distinction, shall be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, as Chairman of the Committee.

(B) Fourteen other members shall be appointed by the President.

(3) The Committee shall meet at least twice each year.

**(b) Function**

It shall be the responsibility of the Committee to advise the President, the Secretary of State, and the Director respecting scientific, technical, and policy matters affecting arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament.

**(c) Reimbursement of expenses**

The members of the Committee may receive reimbursement of expenses only in accordance with the provisions applicable to the reimbursement of experts and consultants under section 2581(d) of this title.

**(d) Termination**

The Committee shall terminate two years after April 30, 1994.

**(e) "Scientist" defined**

As used in this section, the term "scientist" means an individual who has a demonstrated knowledge and technical expertise with respect to arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament matters and who has distinguished himself or herself in any of the fields of physics, chemistry, mathematics, biology, or engineering, including weapons engineering.

(Pub. L. 87-297, title II, §26, Sept. 26, 1961, 75 Stat. 632; Pub. L. 103-236, title VII, §707, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 493.)

AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-236 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section read as follows: "The President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, may appoint a General Advisory Committee of not to exceed fifteen members to advise the Director on arms control and disarmament policy and activities. The President shall designate one of the members as Chairman. The members of the committee may receive the compensation and reimbursement for expenses specified for consultants by section 2581(d) of this title. The Committee shall meet at least twice each year. It shall from time to time advise the President, the Secretary of State, and the Disarmament Director respecting matters affecting arms control, disarmament, and world peace."



## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2584 of this title.

**§ 2567. Presidential Special Representatives**

The President may appoint, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, Special Representatives of the President for arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament matters. Each Presidential Special Representative shall hold the rank of ambassador. One such Representative may serve in the Agency as Chief Science Advisor. Presidential Special Representatives appointed under this section shall perform their duties and exercise their powers under the direction of the President and the Secretary of State, acting through the Director. The Agency shall be the Government agency responsible for providing administrative support, including funding, staff, and office space, to all Presidential Special Representatives.

(Pub. L. 87-297, title II, §27, as added Pub. L. 95-108, §2(a), Aug. 17, 1977, 91 Stat. 871; amended Pub. L. 98-202, §6(a), Dec. 2, 1983, 97 Stat. 1382; Pub. L. 101-216, title I, §103(a), Dec. 11, 1989, 103 Stat. 1853; Pub. L. 103-236, title VII, §708(a), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 493.)

## AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-236 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section read as follows: “The President may appoint, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, two Special Representatives for Arms Control and Disarmament Negotiations, one of whom should serve as special representative for conventional arms control negotiations, and the other should serve as special representative and chief science advisor to the Director. The two Special Representatives shall perform their duties and exercise their powers under the direction of the President and the Secretary of State, acting through the Director.”

1989—Pub. L. 101-216 substituted “, one of whom should serve as special representative for conventional arms control negotiations, and the other should serve as special representative and chief science advisor to the Director. The two Special Representatives shall perform their duties and exercise their powers under the direction of the President and the Secretary of State, acting through the Director” for “who shall perform such duties and exercise such powers (under the direction of the President and the Secretary of State, acting through the Director) as the Director may prescribe with respect to international arms control and disarmament negotiations and matters relating thereto”.

1983—Pub. L. 98-202 substituted “two Special Representatives” for “a Special Representative”.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1989 AMENDMENT

Section 103(b) of Pub. L. 101-216 provided that: “The amendment made by subsection (a) [amending this section] shall apply with respect to individuals who are appointed as Special Representatives on or after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 11, 1989].”

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2574 of this title.

**§ 2568. Program for visiting scholars**

A program for visiting scholars in the fields of arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament shall be established by the Director in order to obtain the services of scholars from the faculties of recognized institutions of higher

learning. The purpose of the program will be to give specialists in the physical sciences and other disciplines relevant to the Agency’s activities an opportunity for active participation in the arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament activities of the Agency and to gain for the Agency the perspective and expertise such persons can offer. Each fellow in the program shall be appointed for a term of one year, except that such term may be extended for a 1-year period. Fellows shall be chosen by a board consisting of the Director, who shall be the chairperson, and all former Directors of the Agency.

(Pub. L. 87-297, title II, §28, as added Pub. L. 98-202, §3, Dec. 2, 1983, 97 Stat. 1381; amended Pub. L. 103-236, title VII, §719(b), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 501.)

## AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-236 substituted “fields of arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament” for “field of arms control and disarmament” in first sentence and inserted “, nonproliferation,” after “participation in the arms control” in second sentence.

## SUBCHAPTER III—FUNCTIONS

**§ 2571. Research, development and other studies**

The Director is authorized and directed to exercise his powers in such manner as to insure the acquisition of a fund of theoretical and practical knowledge concerning disarmament and nonproliferation. To this end, the Director is authorized and directed, under the direction of the President, (1) to insure the conduct of research, development, and other studies in the fields of arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament; (2) to make arrangements (including contracts, agreements, and grants) for the conduct of research, development, and other studies in the fields of arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament by private or public institutions or persons; and (3) to coordinate the research, development, and other studies conducted in the fields of arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament by or for other Government agencies in accordance with procedures established under section 2575 of this title. In carrying out his responsibilities under this chapter, the Director shall, to the maximum extent feasible, make full use of available facilities, Government and private. The authority of the Director with respect to research, development, and other studies shall be limited to participation in the following insofar as they relate to arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament:

**(a) Control, reduction and elimination of armed forces and armaments**

the detection, identification, inspection, monitoring, limitation, reduction, control, and elimination of armed forces and armaments, including thermonuclear, nuclear, missile, conventional, bacteriological, chemical, and radiological weapons:

**(b) Weapon detection and identification tests**

the techniques and systems of detecting, identifying, inspecting, and monitoring of tests of nuclear, thermonuclear, and other weapons;

**(c) Analysis of national budgets and economic indicators**

the analysis of national budgets, levels of industrial production, and economic indicators to determine the amounts spent by various countries for armaments<sup>1</sup> and of all aspects of anti-satellite activities;

**(d) Space, earth's surface and underwater regions**

the control, reduction, and elimination of armed forces and armaments in space, in areas on and beneath the earth's surface, and in underwater regions;

**(e) Structure and operation of international control**

the structure and operation of international control and other organizations useful for arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament;

**(f) Training of control system personnel**

the training of scientists, technicians, and other personnel for manning the control systems which may be created by international arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament agreements;

**(g) Danger of war from accident, miscalculation, or surprise attack**

the reduction and elimination of the danger of war resulting from accident, miscalculation, or possible surprise attack, including (but not limited to) improvements in the methods of communications between nations;

**(h) Economic and political consequences of disarmament**

the economic and political consequences of arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament, including the problems of readjustment arising in industry and the reallocation of national resources;

**(i) Disarmament implications of foreign and national security policies of United States**

the arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament implications of foreign and national security policies of the United States with a view to a better understanding of the significance of such policies for the achievement of arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament;

**(j) National security and foreign policy implications of disarmament**

the national security and foreign policy implications of arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament proposals with a view to a better understanding of the effect of such proposals upon national security and foreign policy;

**(k) Methods for maintenance of peace and security during stages of disarmament**

methods for the maintenance of peace and security during different stages of arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament;

**(l) War prevention factors**

the scientific, economic, political, legal, social, psychological, military, and technological factors related to the prevention of war with a

view to a better understanding of how the basic structure of a lasting peace may be established;

**(m) Other related problems**

such related problems as the Director may determine to be in need of research, development, or study in order to carry out the provisions of this chapter.

(Pub. L. 87-297, title III, §31, Sept. 26, 1961, 75 Stat. 633; Pub. L. 88-186, §5, Nov. 26, 1963, 77 Stat. 342; Pub. L. 95-108, §3, Aug. 17, 1977, 91 Stat. 871; Pub. L. 97-339, §4, Oct. 15, 1982, 96 Stat. 1636; Pub. L. 103-236, title VII, §719(c), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 501.)

## AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-236, in introductory provisions, substituted “fields of arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament” for “field of arms control and disarmament” in three places, in first sentence, inserted “and nonproliferation” after “disarmament”, and in fourth sentence, inserted “, nonproliferation,” after “arms control” wherever appearing.

1982—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 97-339 inserted “and of all aspects of antisatellite activities”.

1977—Pub. L. 95-108 struck out “United States” before “private” in cl. (2) of opening par.

1963—Pub. L. 88-186 inserted “United States” before “private” in cl. (2) of opening par.

REPORT ON INTERNATIONAL TRANSFER OF  
CONVENTIONAL ARMS

Pub. L. 92-352, title III, §302, July 13, 1972, 86 Stat. 495, directed Arms Control and Disarmament Agency, with cooperation of other agencies, to prepare a comprehensive report on international transfer of conventional arms and submit this report no later than one year after July 13, 1972, with an interim report submitted no later than six months after July 13, 1972.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2579 of this title.

**§ 2572. Patents; availability to general public; protection of background rights**

All research within the United States contracted for, sponsored, cosponsored, or authorized under authority of this chapter, shall be provided for in such manner that all information as to uses, products, processes, patents, and other developments resulting from such research developed by Government expenditure will (with such exceptions and limitations, if any, as the Director may find to be necessary in the public interest) be available to the general public. This section shall not be so construed as to deprive the owner of any background patent relating thereto of such rights as he may have thereunder.

(Pub. L. 87-297, title III, §32, Sept. 26, 1961, 75 Stat. 634.)

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 35 section 210.

**§ 2573. Policy formulation****(a) Formulation**

The Director shall prepare for the President, the Secretary of State, and the heads of such other Government agencies as the President may determine, recommendations and advice concerning United States arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament policy.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be followed by a comma.

**(b) Prohibition**

No action shall be taken pursuant to this chapter or any other Act that would obligate the United States to reduce or limit the Armed Forces or armaments of the United States in a militarily significant manner, except pursuant to the treaty-making power of the President set forth in Article II, Section 2, Clause 2 of the Constitution or unless authorized by the enactment of further affirmative legislation by the Congress of the United States.

(Pub. L. 87-297, title III, §33, Sept. 26, 1961, 75 Stat. 634; Pub. L. 88-186, §3, Nov. 26, 1963, 77 Stat. 342; Pub. L. 103-236, title VII, §709, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 494.)

## AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-236 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section read as follows: “The Director is authorized and directed to prepare for the President, the Secretary of State, and the heads of such other Government agencies, as the President may determine, recommendations concerning United States arms control and disarmament policy: *Provided, however,* That no action shall be taken under this chapter or any other law that will obligate the United States to disarm or to reduce or to limit the Armed Forces or armaments of the United States, except pursuant to the treaty making power of the President under the Constitution or unless authorized by further affirmative legislation by the Congress of the United States. Nothing contained in this chapter shall be construed to authorize any policy or action by any Government agency which would interfere with, restrict, or prohibit the acquisition, possession, or use of firearms by an individual for the lawful purpose of personal defense, sport, recreation, education, or training.”

1963—Pub. L. 88-186 inserted provision precluding construction of this chapter to authorize the regulation of the possession of firearms by an individual.

**§ 2574. Negotiation management****(a) Responsibilities**

The Director, under the direction of the President and the Secretary of State, shall have primary responsibility for the preparation, conduct, and management of United States participation in all international negotiations and implementation fora in the field of arms control and disarmament and shall have primary responsibility, whenever directed by the President, for the preparation, conduct, and management of United States participation in international negotiations and implementation fora in the field of nonproliferation. In furtherance of these responsibilities, Special Representatives of the President appointed pursuant to section 2567 of this title, shall, as directed by the President, serve as the United States Government representatives to international organizations, conferences, and activities relating to the field of nonproliferation, such as the preparations for and conduct of the review relating to the Treaty on the Non-Proliferation of Nuclear Weapons.

**(b) Functions with respect to United States Information Agency**

The Director shall perform functions pursuant to section 2(c) of the Reorganization Plan 8 of 1953 with respect to providing to the United States Information Agency official United States positions and policy on arms control,

nonproliferation, and disarmament matters for dissemination abroad.

**(c) Authority**

The Director is authorized—

(1) for the purpose of conducting negotiations concerning arms control, nonproliferation, or disarmament or for the purpose of exercising any other authority given him by this chapter—

(A) to consult and communicate with, or to direct the consultation and communication with, representatives of other nations or of international organizations, and

(B) to communicate in the name of the Secretary of State with diplomatic representatives of the United States in the United States or abroad;

(2) to formulate plans and make preparations for the establishment, operation, and funding of inspections and control systems which may become part of the United States arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament activities; and

(3) as authorized by law, to put into effect, direct, or otherwise assume United States responsibility for such systems.

(Pub. L. 87-297, title III, §34, Sept. 26, 1961, 75 Stat. 634; Pub. L. 103-236, title VII, §710, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 494.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

Reorganization Plan 8 of 1953, referred to in subsec. (b), is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

## AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-236 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section related to powers and duties of Director to consult with representatives of the United States and other nations, to provide official United States positions on arms control and disarmament matters to the United States Information Agency, and to formulate and implement plans for arms control inspection and control systems.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2595a of this title.

**§ 2575. Coordination of Government agencies and resolution of policy differences**

The President is authorized to establish procedures to (1) assure cooperation, consultation, and a continuing exchange of information between the Agency and the Department of Defense, the Atomic Energy Commission, the National Aeronautics and Space Administration and other affected Government agencies, in all significant aspects of United States arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament policy and related matters, including current and prospective policies, plans, and programs, (2) resolve differences of opinion between the Director and such other agencies which cannot be resolved through consultation, and (3) provide for presentation to the President of recommendations of the Director with respect to such differences, when such differences involve major matters of policy and cannot be resolved through consultation.

(Pub. L. 87-297, title III, §35, Sept. 26, 1961, 75 Stat. 635; Pub. L. 103-236, title VII, §719(d), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 501.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-236 inserted “, nonproliferation,” after “arms control”.

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

Atomic Energy Commission abolished and functions transferred by sections 5814 and 5841 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare. See, also, Transfer of Functions notes set out under those sections.

#### EX. ORD. NO. 11044. INTERAGENCY COORDINATION

Ex. Ord. No. 11044, Aug. 20, 1962, 27 F.R. 8341, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 12608, Sept. 9, 1987, 52 F.R. 34617, provided:

WHEREAS there has been established by law the United States Arms Control and Disarmament Agency; and

WHEREAS the Arms Control and Disarmament Act [this chapter] provides that the Director of that Agency shall be the principal adviser to the Secretary of State and the President on Arms control and disarmament matters and requires the Director to assume primary responsibility within the Government for such matters under the direction of the Secretary of State; and

WHEREAS the Act [this chapter] authorizes and directs the said Director to coordinate significant aspects of the United States arms control and disarmament policy and related matters; and

WHEREAS it is desirable that the President establish procedures for coordination, and for the resolution of differences of opinion between the United States Arms Control and Disarmament Agency and other affected Government agencies, concerning all significant aspects of arms control and disarmament policy and related matters:

NOW, THEREFORE, by virtue of the authority vested in me by the Arms Control and Disarmament Act (75 Stat. 631; 50 U.S.C. 1501 et seq.) [now classified to this chapter], and as President of the United States, it is hereby ordered as follows:

##### SECTION 1. *Definitions.* As used hereinafter:

(a) The word “Director” means the Director of the United States Arms Control and Disarmament Agency.

(b) The term “affected agencies” shall include the Department of Defense, the Atomic Energy Commission, the Central Intelligence Agency, the National Aeronautics and Space Administration, and, when not inappropriate in the context, the United States Arms Control and Disarmament Agency, and shall include also such other agencies as the Director may designate hereunder.

(c) The terms “arms control” and “disarmament” shall be defined as they are defined in section 3(a) of the Arms Control and Disarmament Act [section 2552(a) of this title].

(d) The term “related matters” shall include those matters which are necessary to, desirable for, or otherwise directly connected with the functions described in sections 3 and 4 of this order.

SEC. 2. *Cooperation.* The Director and the heads of affected agencies shall keep each other fully and currently informed on all significant aspects of United States arms control and disarmament policy and related matters, including current and prospective policies, plans and programs. Differences of opinion concerning arms control and disarmament policy and related matters arising between the United States Arms Control and Disarmament Agency and other affected agencies with respect to such subjects which involve major matters of policy and cannot be resolved through consultation shall be promptly referred to the President for decision. In such instances the head of an agency presenting recommendations with respect to such differences to the President shall give the heads of affected agen-

cies notice of the occasion for and substance of his recommendations.

SEC. 3. *Policy coordination.* (a) The Director shall establish procedures consistent with this order and the Arms Control and Disarmament Act [this chapter] to assure coordination of:

(1) his recommendations to the Secretary of State and the President and to the heads of affected agencies relating to United States arms control and disarmament policy;

(2) Government planning for the conduct and support of research for arms control and disarmament policy formulation, including the comprehensive and balanced plan provided for in Section 4 of this order;

(3) Government planning for the dissemination of public information concerning arms control and disarmament;

(4) the preparation for and management of United States participation in international negotiations in the arms control and disarmament field; and

(5) the preparation for, operation of or, as appropriate, direction of United States participation in such control systems as may become part of United States arms control and disarmament activities.

(b) The Director shall exercise leadership in assuring that differences of opinion concerning arms control and disarmament policy and related matters are resolved expeditiously and shall take such steps as may be appropriate in order to produce common or harmonious action among the agencies concerned.

SEC. 4. *Research.* With the advice and assistance of affected agencies, the Director shall develop and keep current a comprehensive and balanced program of research, development and other studies needed to be conducted by or for the Government for arms control and disarmament policy formulation. The Director shall maintain a continuing inventory of Federal activities related to the planned program and advise the affected agencies as to their respective participations in the planned program in order to produce harmonious action and prevent duplication of effort. The Director shall periodically submit to the Director of the Office of Management and Budget a consolidated schedule of such activities with assessments of their respective programs by the responsible agencies, together with his evaluations regarding these activities.

SEC. 5. *Force and armament levels.* The Secretary of Defense shall keep the Director informed with respect to the planning of armed forces levels and armaments and, for consideration in connection with such planning, the Director shall furnish the Secretary of Defense statements of existing and projected arms control and disarmament policies.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2571, 2576 of this title.

### § 2576. Arms control information

In order to assist the Director in the performance of his duties with respect to arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament policy and negotiations, any Government agency preparing any legislative or budgetary proposal for—

(1) any program of research, development, testing, engineering, construction, deployment, or modernization with respect to nuclear armaments, nuclear implements of war, military facilities or military vehicles designed or intended primarily for the delivery of nuclear weapons,

(2) any program of research, development, testing, engineering, construction, deployment, or modernization with respect to armaments, ammunition, implements of war, or military facilities, having—

(A) an estimated total program cost in excess of \$250,000,000, or

(B) an estimated annual program cost in excess of \$50,000,000, or

(3) any other program involving technology with potential military application or weapons systems which such Government agency or the Director believes may have a significant impact on arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament policy or negotiations,

shall, on a continuing basis, provide the Director with full and timely access to detailed information, in accordance with the procedures established pursuant to section 2575 of this title, with respect to the nature, scope, and purpose of such proposal.

(Pub. L. 87-297, title III, §36, as added Pub. L. 94-141, title I, §146, Nov. 29, 1975, 89 Stat. 758; amended Pub. L. 95-338, §1, Aug. 8, 1978, 92 Stat. 458; Pub. L. 103-236, title VII, §§704(1), 719(e), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 492, 501.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-236, §719(e), substituted “information” for “impact information and analysis” in section catchline, redesignated subsec. (a) as entire section, and inserted “, nonproliferation,” after “arms control” in introductory provisions and par. (3).

Subsecs. (b), (c). Pub. L. 103-236, §704(1), struck out subsec. (b) which required the Director to assess and analyze certain legislative and budgetary proposals with respect to their impact on arms control and disarmament policy and negotiations and subsec. (c) which prohibited courts from compelling performance of any requirement under this section.

1978—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 95-338, §1(1), substituted “technology with potential military application or weapons systems” for “weapons systems or technology”.

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 95-338, §1(2), inserted provisions requiring requests to be transmitted either as an individual program or as an aggregation of related programs, and classification requirements for transmitted statements.

### § 2577. Verification of compliance

#### (a) In general

In order to ensure that arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament agreements can be adequately verified, the Director shall report to Congress, on a timely basis, or upon request by an appropriate committee of the Congress—

(1) in the case of any arms control, nonproliferation, or disarmament agreement that has been concluded by the United States, the determination of the Director as to the degree to which the components of such agreement can be verified;

(2) in the case of any arms control, nonproliferation, or disarmament agreement that has entered into force, any significant degradation or alteration in the capacity of the United States to verify compliance of the components of such agreement;

(3) the amount and percentage of research funds expended by the Agency for the purpose of analyzing issues relating to arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament verification; and

(4) the number of professional personnel assigned to arms control verification on a full-time basis by each Government agency.

#### (b) Standard for verification of compliance

In making determinations under paragraphs (1) and (2) of subsection (a) of this section, the

Director shall assume that all measures of concealment not expressly prohibited could be employed and that standard practices could be altered so as to impede verification.

#### (c) Rule of construction

Except as otherwise provided for by law, nothing in this section may be construed as requiring the disclosure of sensitive information relating to intelligence sources or methods or persons employed in the verification of compliance with arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament agreements.

#### (d) Participation of Agency

In order to ensure adherence of the United States to obligations or commitments undertaken in arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament agreements, and in order for the Director to make the assessment required by section 2593a(a)(5) of this title, the Director, or the Director's designee, shall participate in all interagency groups or organizations within the executive branch of Government that assess, analyze, or review United States planned or ongoing policies, programs, or actions that have a direct bearing on United States adherence to obligations undertaken in arms control, nonproliferation, or disarmament agreements.

(Pub. L. 87-297, title III, §37, as added Pub. L. 95-108, §4, Aug. 17, 1977, 91 Stat. 871; amended Pub. L. 103-236, title VII, §712, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 495.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-236 substituted “Verification of compliance” for “Verification of Arms Control Agreements” as section catchline and amended text generally. Prior to amendment, text consisted of subsecs. (a) to (c) requiring the Director to report to Congress relating to verification of arms control proposals and agreements.

### § 2577a. Arms control verification

#### (a) Establishment of working group

The President should establish a working group—

(1) to examine verification approaches to a strategic arms reduction agreement and other arms control agreements; and

(2) to assess the relevance for such agreements of the verification provisions of the Treaty Between the United States and the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics on the Elimination of Their Intermediate-Range and Shorter-Range Missiles (signed at Washington, December 8, 1987).

#### (b) Information and data base

(1) The Agency shall allocate sufficient resources to develop and maintain a comprehensive information and data base on verification concepts, research, technologies, and systems. The Agency shall collect, maintain, analyze, and disseminate information pertaining to arms control verification and monitoring, including information regarding—

(A) all current United States bilateral and multilateral arms treaties; and

(B) proposed, prospective, and potential bilateral or multilateral arms treaties in the areas of nuclear, conventional, chemical, and space weapons.

(2) The Agency shall seek to improve United States verification and monitoring activities through the monitoring and support of relevant research and analysis.

(3) The Agency shall provide detailed information on the activities pursuant to this section in its annual report to the Congress.

(Pub. L. 101-216, title I, § 105, Dec. 11, 1989, 103 Stat. 1854.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Arms Control and Disarmament Amendments Act of 1989, and not as part of the Arms Control and Disarmament Act which comprises this chapter.

### § 2578. Negotiating records

#### (a) Preparation of records

The Director shall establish and maintain records for each arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament agreement to which the United States is a party and which was under negotiation or in force on or after January 1, 1990, which shall include classified and unclassified materials such as instructions and guidance, position papers, reporting cables and memoranda of conversation, working papers, draft texts of the agreement, diplomatic notes, notes verbal, and other internal and external correspondence.

#### (b) Negotiating and implementation records

In particular, the Director shall establish and maintain a negotiating and implementation record for each such agreement, which shall be comprehensive and detailed, and shall document all communications between the parties with respect to such agreement. Such records shall be maintained both in hard copy and magnetic media.

#### (c) Participation of Agency personnel

In order to implement effectively this section, the Director shall ensure that Agency personnel participate throughout the negotiation and implementation phases of all arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament agreements.

(Pub. L. 87-297, title III, § 38, as added Pub. L. 103-236, title VII, § 713(a), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 496.)

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 2578, Pub. L. 87-297, title III, § 38, as added Pub. L. 100-213, § 3(b), Dec. 24, 1987, 101 Stat. 1445; amended Pub. L. 103-199, title IV, § 401(a), Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2324, related to reports on activities of Standing Consultative Commission, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103-236, title VII, § 704(2), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 492.

### § 2579. Comprehensive compilation of arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament studies

Pursuant to his responsibilities under section 2571 of this title, and in order to enhance Congressional and public understanding of arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament issues, the Director shall provide to the Congress not later than June 30 of each year a report setting forth—

(1) a comprehensive list of studies relating to arms control, nonproliferation, and dis-

armament issues concluded during the previous calendar year by government agencies or for government agencies by private or public institutions or persons; and

(2) a brief description of each such study.

This report shall be unclassified, with a classified addendum if necessary.

(Pub. L. 87-297, title III, § 39, as added Pub. L. 100-213, § 4, Dec. 24, 1987, 101 Stat. 1445; amended Pub. L. 103-236, title VII, § 719(f), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 502.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-236 inserted “, nonproliferation,” after “arms control” in introductory provisions and in par. (1).

#### SUBCHAPTER IV—ADDITIONAL GENERAL PROVISIONS

### § 2581. General authority of Director

In the performance of his functions, the Director is authorized to—

#### (a) Utilization of other Federal agencies; general administrative services; transfers of supplies, equipment, and surplus property

utilize or employ the services, personnel, equipment, or facilities of any other Government agency, with the consent of the agency concerned, to perform such functions on behalf of the Agency as may appear desirable. It is the intent of this section that the Director rely upon the Department of State for general administrative services in the United States and abroad to the extent agreed upon between the Secretary of State and the Director. Any Government agency is authorized, not withstanding any other provision of law, to transfer to or to receive from the Director, without reimbursement, supplies and equipment other than administrative supplies or equipment. Transfer or receipt of excess property shall be in accordance with the provisions of the Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949, as amended [40 U.S.C. 471 et seq.];

#### (b) Employment of personnel

appoint officers and employees, including attorneys, for the Agency in accordance with the provisions of title 5 governing appointment in the competitive service, and fix their compensation in accordance with chapter 51 and with subchapter III of chapter 53 of such title, relating to classification and General Schedule pay rates, except that the Director may, to the extent the Director determines necessary to the discharge of his responsibilities, appoint and fix the compensation of employees possessing specialized technical expertise without regard to the provisions of title 5 governing appointments in the competitive service and the provisions of chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of such title relating to classification and General Schedule pay rates, if the Director ensures that—

(1) any employee who is appointed under this exception is not paid at a rate—

(A) in excess of the rate payable for positions of equivalent difficulty or responsibility, or

(B) exceeding the maximum rate payable for grade 15 of the General Schedule; and

(2) the number of employees appointed under this exception shall not exceed 10 percent of the Agency's full-time-equivalent ceiling.<sup>1</sup>

**(c) Detail of other agency personnel without prejudice to status or advancement**

enter into agreements with other Government agencies, including the military departments through the Secretary of Defense, under which officers or employees of such agencies may be detailed to the Agency for the performance of service pursuant to this chapter without prejudice to the status or advancement of such officers or employees within their own agencies;

**(d) Experts and consultants; stenographic reporting services; compensation and travel expenses; limitation on period of employment; renewal of employment contracts**

procure services of experts and consultants or organizations thereof, including stenographic reporting services, as authorized by section 3109 of title 5 and to pay in connection therewith travel expenses of individuals, including transportation and per diem in lieu of subsistence while away from their homes or regular places of business, as authorized by section 5703 of such title: *Provided*, That no such individual shall be employed for more than 130 days in any fiscal year unless the President certifies that employment of such individual in excess of such number of days is necessary in the national interest: *And provided further*, That such contracts may be renewed annually;

**(e) Employment of outstanding personnel**

employ individuals of outstanding ability without compensation in accordance with the provisions of section 2160(b) of the Appendix to title 50 and regulations issued thereunder;

**(f) Establishment of advisory boards; compensation and expenses**

establish advisory boards to advise with and make recommendations to the Director on United States arms control and disarmament policy and activities. The members of such boards may receive the compensation and reimbursement for expenses specified for consultants by subsection (d) of this section;

**(g) Travel and subsistence expenses from private sources; reimbursement**

permit, under such terms and conditions as he may prescribe, any officer or employee of the Agency, in connection with the attendance by such officer or employee at meetings or in performing advisory services concerned with the functions or activities of the Agency, to accept payment, in cash or in kind, from any private agency or organization, or from any individual affiliated with such agency or organization, for travel and subsistence expenses, such payment to be retained by such officer or employee to cover the cost thereof or to be deposited to the credit of the appropriation from which the cost thereof is paid;

<sup>1</sup> So in original. The period probably should be a semicolon.

**(h) Oaths and sworn statements**

administer oaths and take sworn statements in the course of an investigation made pursuant to the Director's responsibilities under this chapter;

**(i) Delegation of functions**

delegate, as appropriate, to the Deputy Director or other officers of the Agency, any authority conferred upon the Director by the provisions of this chapter; and

**(j) Rules and regulations**

make, promulgate, issue, rescind, and amend such rules and regulations as may be necessary or desirable to the exercise of any authority conferred upon the Director by the provisions of this chapter.

(Pub. L. 87-297, title IV, §41, Sept. 26, 1961, 75 Stat. 635; Pub. L. 93-332, §1(a), July 8, 1974, 88 Stat. 289; Pub. L. 95-108, §5, Aug. 17, 1977, 91 Stat. 872; Pub. L. 102-228, title IV, §401(b), Dec. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 1698; Pub. L. 103-236, title VII, §715, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 498.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949, as amended, referred to in subsec. (a), is act June 30, 1949, ch. 288, 63 Stat. 377, as amended. The excess property provisions of that Act are classified to chapter 10 (§471 et seq.) of Title 40, Public Buildings, Property, and Works. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 471 of Title 40 and Tables.

The provisions of title 5 governing appointment to the competitive service, referred to in subsec. (b), are classified to section 3301 et seq. of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

The General Schedule, referred to in subsec. (b), is set out under section 5332 of Title 5.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 103-236 substituted "except that the Director may, to the extent the Director determines necessary to the discharge of his responsibilities, appoint and fix the compensation of employees possessing specialized technical expertise without regard to the provisions of title 5 governing appointments in the competitive service and the provisions of chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of such title relating to classification and General Schedule pay rates, if the Director ensures that—" for "except that during the 2-year period beginning on August 17, 1977, the Director may, to the extent he deems necessary to the discharge of his responsibilities, appoint and fix the compensation of officers and employees for the Agency without regard to such provisions, subject to the following requirements:"; added pars. (1) and (2), and struck out former pars. (1) to (3) which read as follows:

"(1) an officer or employee whose compensation is fixed under the foregoing exception may not be paid a salary at a rate in excess of the rate payable under such chapter 51 and such subchapter III for positions of equivalent difficulty or responsibility except for (A) those officers and employees whose compensation is fixed by law, and (B) scientific and technical personnel who may be compensated at a rate not to exceed the rate in effect for grade GS-18 of the General Schedule;

"(2) the Director shall make adequate provision for administrative review of any determination to suspend or dismiss any officer or employee appointed under the foregoing exception; and

"(3) an officer or employee of the Agency serving under a career or career conditional appointment on August 17, 1977, may not be involuntarily deprived, while employed by the Agency, of any rights normally

granted such officer or employee in the competitive service:".

1991—Subsecs. (h) to (j). Pub. L. 102-228 added subsec. (h) and redesignated former subsecs. (h) and (i) as (i) and (j), respectively.

1977—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 95-108, §5(a), incorporated existing provisions into introductory paragraph, and as so incorporated, revised terminology to reflect current classification of civil service laws, etc., and inserted provisions authorizing the Director to appoint and fix compensation of officers and employees of the agency, without regard to the provisions of title 5, during a two-year period beginning Aug. 17, 1977, and added pars. (1) to (3).

Subsecs. (g) to (i). Pub. L. 95-108, §5(b), added subsec. (g) and redesignated former subsecs. (g) and (h) as (h) and (i), respectively.

1974—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 93-332 substituted "as authorized by section 3109 of title 5" for "as authorized by section 55a of title 5, at rates not to exceed \$100 per diem for individuals", "section 5703 of such title" for "section 73b-2 of title 5" and "130 days" for "one hundred days".

#### DELEGATION OF AUTHORITY TO MAKE CERTIFICATIONS UNDER SECTION 41(d) OF THE ARMS CONTROL AND DISARMAMENT ACT

Memorandum of the President of the United States, Aug. 18, 1990, 55 F.R. 37693, provided:

Memorandum for the Director of the United States Arms Control and Disarmament Agency

By virtue of the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and laws of the United States, including section 301 of title 3 of the United States Code, you are hereby delegated the authority set forth in section 41(d) of the Arms Control and Disarmament Act (22 U.S.C. 2581(d)) to certify that the employment of persons referred to in that section in excess of the number of days set forth in that section is necessary in the national interest.

You are authorized and directed to publish this memorandum in the Federal Register.

GEORGE BUSH.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2566, 2584, 2585 of this title.

### § 2582. Foreign Service personnel

#### (a) Delegation of authority by Secretary of State to Director

The Secretary of State may authorize the Director to exercise, with respect to members of the Foreign Service appointed or employed for the Agency—

(1) the authority available to the Secretary under the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [22 U.S.C. 3901 et seq.], and

(2) the authority available to the Secretary under any other provisions of law pertaining specifically or applicable generally to members of the Foreign Service.

#### (b) Extension or renewal of limited appointments of Foreign Service members

Limited appointments of members of the Foreign Service for the Agency may be extended or renewed, notwithstanding section 309 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [22 U.S.C. 3949], so long as the service of the individual under such appointment does not exceed ten consecutive years without a break in service of at least one year.

(Pub. L. 87-297, title IV, §42, Sept. 26, 1961, 75 Stat. 636; Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2204(a), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Service Act of 1980, referred to in subsec. (a)(1), is Pub. L. 96-465, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2071, which is classified principally to chapter 52 (§3901 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3901 of this title and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1980—Pub. L. 96-465 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a), among other changes, substituted reference to members of the Foreign Service for reference to Foreign Service Reserve officers and Foreign Service Staff officers and employees and reference to the Foreign Service Act of 1980 for reference to Foreign Service Act of 1946, and struck out provisions relating to the authority of Board of Foreign Service pursuant to the Foreign Service Act of 1946, and added subsec. (b).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-465 effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

### § 2583. Contracts or expenditures

The President may, in advance, exempt actions of the Director from the provisions of law relating to contracts or expenditures of Government funds whenever he determines that such action is essential in the interest of United States arms control and disarmament and security policy.

(Pub. L. 87-297, title IV, §43, Sept. 26, 1961, 75 Stat. 636.)

### § 2584. Conflict of interest and dual compensation exemption

The members of the General Advisory Committee created by section 2566 of this title, and the members of the advisory boards, the consultants, and the individuals of outstanding ability employed without compensation, all of which are provided in section 2581 of this title, may serve as such without regard to the provisions of section 281, 283, 284, or 1914<sup>1</sup> of title 18, or of section 190<sup>1</sup> of the Revised Statutes (5 U.S.C. 99), or of any other Federal law imposing restrictions, requirements, or penalties in relation to the employment of individuals, the performance of services, or the payment or receipt of compensation in connection with any claim, proceeding or matter involving the United States Government, except insofar as such provisions of law may prohibit any such individual from receiving compensation from a source other than a nonprofit educational institution in respect of any particular matter in which the Agency is directly interested. Nor shall such service be considered as employment or holding of office or position bringing such individual within the provisions of sections 3323(b) and 8344 of title 5, or any other Federal law limiting the reemployment of retired officers or employees or governing the simultaneous receipt of compensation and retired pay or annuities, subject to section 5532 of title 5.

(Pub. L. 87-297, title IV, §44, Sept. 26, 1961, 75 Stat. 636; Pub. L. 88-448, title IV, §401(d), Aug. 19, 1964, 78 Stat. 490.)

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.



## REFERENCES IN TEXT

Sections 281 and 283 of title 18, referred to in text, were repealed by Pub. L. 87-849, §2, Oct. 23, 1962, 76 Stat. 1126, except as they may apply to retired officers of the armed forces of the United States, and were supplanted by sections 203 and 205 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure. For further details, see "Exemptions" note set out under section 281 of Title 18.

Sections 284 and 1914 of title 18, referred to in text, were repealed by Pub. L. 87-849, §2, Oct. 23, 1962, 76 Stat. 1126, and were supplanted by sections 207 and 209 of Title 18.

Section 190 of the Revised Statutes (5 U.S.C. 99), referred to in text, was repealed by Pub. L. 87-849, §3, Oct. 23, 1962, 76 Stat. 1126. See section 207 of Title 18.

## CODIFICATION

"Sections 3323(b) and 8344 of title 5" and "section 5532 of title 5" substituted in text for "section 13 of the Civil Service Retirement Act (5 U.S.C. 2263)" and "section 201 of the Dual Compensation Act" [5 U.S.C. 3102], respectively, on authority of section 7(b) of Pub. L. 89-554, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 631, section 1 of which enacted Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

## AMENDMENTS

1964—Pub. L. 88-448 struck out provisions which stated that such service shall not be considered as employment or holding of office or position bringing such individual within the provisions of section 59a of title 5, and inserted ", subject to section 3102 of title 5".

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1964 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 88-448 effective on first day of first month which begins later than ninetieth day following Aug. 19, 1964, see section 403 of Pub. L. 88-448.

## TERMINATION OF ADVISORY COMMITTEES AND BOARDS

Advisory committees and boards, in existence on Jan. 5, 1973, to terminate not later than the expiration of the 2-year period following Jan. 5, 1973, unless, in the case of a committee or board established by the President or an officer of the Federal Government, such committee or board is renewed by appropriate action prior to the expiration of such 2-year period, or in the case of a committee or board established by the Congress, its duration is otherwise provided by law. See sections 3(2) and 14 of Pub. L. 92-463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 770, 776, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

**§ 2585. Security requirements****(a) Establishment of security and loyalty requirements, restrictions, and safeguards; investigation of personnel; standards of clearance**

The Director shall establish such security and loyalty requirements, restrictions, and safeguards as he deems necessary in the interest of the national security and to carry out the provisions of this chapter. Except as provided in subsection (d) of this section, the Director shall arrange with the Director of the Office of Personnel Management for the conduct of full-field background security and loyalty investigations of all the Agency's officers, employees, consultants, persons detailed from other Government agencies, members of its General Advisory Committee, advisory boards, contractors, and subcontractors, and their officers and employees, actual or prospective. In the case of persons detailed from other Government agencies or employed directly from other Government agencies, the Director may accept the results of full-field background security and loyalty investiga-

tions conducted by such agencies as the basis for the determination required by this subsection that the person is not a security risk or of doubtful loyalty. In the event the investigation discloses information indicating that the person investigated may be or may become a security risk, or may be of doubtful loyalty, the report of the investigation shall be turned over to the Federal Bureau of Investigation for a full-field investigation. The final results of all such investigations shall be turned over to the Director for final determination. Except as provided in subsection (d) of this section, no person shall be permitted to enter on duty as such an officer, employee, consultant, or member of advisory committee or board, or pursuant to any such detail, and no contractor or subcontractor, or officer or employee thereof shall be permitted to have access to any classified information, until he shall have been investigated in accordance with this subsection and the report of such investigations made to the Director, and the Director shall have determined that such person is not a security risk or of doubtful loyalty. Standards applicable with respect to the security clearance of persons within any category referred to in this subsection shall not be less stringent, and the investigation of such persons for such purposes shall not be less intensive or complete, than in the case of such clearance of persons in a corresponding category under the security procedures of the Government agency or agencies having the highest security restrictions with respect to persons in such category.

**(b) Acceptance of investigation and clearance granted by other Government agencies to contractor personnel; access to confidential information**

In the case of contractors or subcontractors and their officers or employees, actual or prospective, the Director may accept, in lieu of the investigation prescribed in subsection (a) of this section, a report of investigation conducted by a Government agency, other than the Director of the Office of Personnel Management or the Federal Bureau of Investigation, when it is determined by the Director that the completed investigation meets the standards established in subsection (a) of this section: *Provided*, That security clearance had been granted to the individual concerned by another Government agency based upon such investigation and report. The Director may also grant access for information classified no higher than "confidential" to contractors or subcontractors and their officers and employees, actual or prospective, on the basis of reports on less than full-field investigations: *Provided*, That such investigations shall each include a current national agency check. Notwithstanding the foregoing and the provisions of subsection (a) of this section, the Director may also grant access to classified information to contractors or subcontractors and their officers and employees, actual or prospective, on the basis of a security clearance granted by the Department of Defense, or any agency thereof, to the individual concerned; except that any access to Restricted Data shall be subject to the provisions of subsection (c) of this section.

**(c) Atomic Energy Commission Restricted Data; access; personnel security procedures and standards of Commission and Agency; interim clearance; exchanges**

The Atomic Energy Commission may authorize any of its employees, or employees of any contractor, prospective contractor, licensee, or prospective licensee of the Atomic Energy Commission or any other person authorized to have access to Restricted Data by the Atomic Energy Commission under section 2165 of title 42, to permit the Director or any officer, employee, consultant, person detailed from other Government agencies, member of the General Advisory Committee or of an advisory board established pursuant to section 2581(f) of this title, contractor, subcontractor, prospective contractor, or prospective subcontractor, or officer or employee of such contractor, subcontractor, prospective contractor, or prospective subcontractor, to have access to Restricted Data which is required in the performance of his duties and so certified by the Director, but only if (1) the Atomic Energy Commission has determined, in accordance with the established personnel security procedures and standards of the Commission, that permitting such individual to have access to such Restricted Data will not endanger the common defense and security, and (2) the Atomic Energy Commission finds that the established personnel and other security procedures and standards of the Agency are adequate and in reasonable conformity to the standards established by the Atomic Energy Commission under section 2165 of title 42, including those for interim clearance in subsection (b) thereof. Any individual granted access to such Restricted Data pursuant to this subsection may exchange such data with any individual who (A) is an officer or employee of the Department of Defense, or any department or agency thereof, or a member of the Armed Forces, or an officer or employee of the National Aeronautics and Space Administration, or a contractor or subcontractor of any such department, agency, or armed force, or an officer or employee of any such contractor or subcontractor, and (B) has been authorized to have access to Restricted Data under the provisions of sections 2163 or 2455 of title 42.

**(d) Waiver of required investigation and determination with respect to consultants; procedure**

The investigations and determination required under subsection (a) of this section may be waived by the Director in the case of any consultant who will not be permitted to have access to classified information if the Director determines and certifies in writing that such waiver is in the best interests of the United States.

(Pub. L. 87-297, title IV, §45, Sept. 26, 1961, 75 Stat. 637; Pub. L. 88-186, §2, Nov. 26, 1963, 77 Stat. 341; Pub. L. 94-141, title I, §147, Nov. 29, 1975, 89 Stat. 759; 1978 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §102, eff. Jan. 1, 1979, 43 F.R. 36037, 92 Stat. 3783; Pub. L. 97-339, §3, Oct. 15, 1982, 96 Stat. 1635; Pub. L. 103-236, title VII, §716, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 498.)

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103-236 in third sentence inserted “or employed directly from other Government

agencies” after “persons detailed from other Government agencies” and substituted “by such agencies” for “by the Department of Defense or the Department of State”.

1982—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 97-339 inserted provision relating to acceptance by the Director, in the case of persons detailed from other agencies, of the results of full-field background security and loyalty investigations conducted by the Department of Defense or Department of State.

1975—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94-141, §147(a)(1), (2), substituted “Except as provided in subsection (d) of this section, the Director shall arrange with the Civil Service Commission” for “The Director shall arrange with the Civil Service Commissioner” and “Except as provided in subsection (d) of this section, no person” for “No person”.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 94-141, §147(b), inserted provisions that notwithstanding security requirements of subsec. (a) of this section, the Director may grant access to classified information to individuals with a security clearance from Department of Defense subject only to provisions of subsec. (c) of this section.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 94-141, §147(a)(3), added subsec. (d).

1963—Subsecs. (b), (c). Pub. L. 88-186 added subsec. (b) and redesignated former subsec. (b) as (c).

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“Director of the Office of Personnel Management” substituted for “Civil Service Commission” in subsecs. (a) and (b), pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1978, §102, 43 F.R. 36037, 92 Stat. 3783, set out under section 1101 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, which transferred functions vested by statute in Civil Service Commission to Director of Office of Personnel Management (except as otherwise specified), effective Jan. 1, 1979, as provided by section 1-102 of Ex. Ord. No. 12107, Dec. 28, 1978, 44 F.R. 1055, set out under section 1101 of Title 5.

Atomic Energy Commission abolished and functions transferred by sections 5814 and 5841 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare. See, also, Transfer of Functions notes set out under those sections.

TERMINATION OF ADVISORY COMMITTEES AND BOARDS

Advisory committees and boards, in existence on Jan. 5, 1973, to terminate not later than the expiration of the 2-year period following Jan. 5, 1973, unless, in the case of a committee or board established by the President or an officer of the Federal Government, such committee or board is renewed by appropriate action prior to the expiration of such 2-year period, or in the case of a committee or board established by the Congress, its duration is otherwise provided by law. See sections 3(2) and 14 of Pub. L. 92-463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 770, 776, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

**§ 2586. Comptroller General audit**

No moneys appropriated for the purpose of this chapter shall be available for payment under any contract with the Director, negotiated without advertising, except contracts with any foreign government, international organization or any agency thereof, unless such contract includes a clause to the effect that the Comptroller General of the United States or any of his duly authorized representatives shall, until the expiration of three years after final payment, have access to and the right to examine any directly pertinent books, documents, papers, and records of the contractor or any of his subcontractors engaged in the performance of, and involving transactions related to such contracts or subcontracts: *Provided, however*, That no moneys so appropriated shall be available for

payment under such contract which includes any provisions precluding an audit by the General Accounting Office of any transaction under such contract: *And provided further*, That nothing in this section shall preclude the earlier disposal of contractor and subcontractor records in accordance with records disposal schedules agreed upon between the Director and the General Accounting Office.

(Pub. L. 87-297, title IV, §46, Sept. 26, 1961, 75 Stat. 638.)

**§ 2587. Transfer of activities and facilities to Agency**

**(a) Transfer of United States Disarmament Administration**

The United States Disarmament Administration, together with its records, property, personnel, and funds, is transferred to the Agency. The appropriations and unexpended balances of appropriations transferred pursuant to this subsection shall be available for expenditure for any and all objects of expenditure authorized by this chapter, without regard to the requirements of apportionment under subchapter II of chapter 15 of title 31.

**(b) Transfer of activities, facilities, etc., to Director; report to Congress; approval**

The President, by Executive order, may transfer to the Director any activities or facilities of any Government agency which relate primarily to arms control and disarmament. In connection with any such transfer, the President may under this section or other applicable authority, provide for appropriate transfers of records, property, civilian personnel, and funds. No transfer shall be made under this subsection until (1) a full and complete report concerning the nature and effect of such proposed transfer has been transmitted by the President to the Congress, and (2) the first period of sixty calendar days of regular session of the Congress following the date of receipt of such report by the Congress has expired without adoption by either House of the Congress of a resolution stating that such House does not favor such transfer. The procedures prescribed in sections 908 to 912 of title 5 shall apply to any such resolution.

(Pub. L. 87-297, title IV, §47, Sept. 26, 1961, 75 Stat. 638.)

CODIFICATION

In subsec. (a), “subchapter II of chapter 15 of title 31” substituted for “section 665 of title 31” on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, §4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

In subsec. (b), “sections 908-912 of title 5” substituted for “title II of the Reorganization Act of 1949 [5 U.S.C. 133z-10 to 133z-15]” on authority of Pub. L. 89-554, §7(b), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 631, the first section of which enacted Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, and the general amendment of chapter 9 (§901 et seq.) of Title 5 by Pub. L. 95-17, Apr. 6, 1977, 91 Stat. 29.

**§ 2588. Use of funds**

Appropriations made to the Director for the purposes of this chapter, and transfers of funds to him by other Government agencies for such purposes, shall be available to him to exercise

any authority granted him by this chapter, including, without limitation, expenses of printing and binding without regard to the provisions of section 501 of title 44; purchase or hire of one passenger motor vehicle for the official use of the Director; entertainment and official courtesies to the extent authorized by appropriation; expenditures for training and study; expenditures in connection with participation in international conferences for the purposes of this chapter; and expenses in connection with travel of personnel outside the United States, including transportation expenses of dependents, household goods, and personal effects (including any such travel or transportation any part of which begins in one fiscal year pursuant to travel orders issued in that fiscal year, but which is completed after the end of that fiscal year), and expenses authorized by the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [22 U.S.C. 3901 et seq.], not otherwise provided for.

(Pub. L. 87-297, title IV, §48, Sept. 26, 1961, 75 Stat. 638; Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2204(b), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159; Pub. L. 99-550, §2(c), Oct. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 3070; Pub. L. 101-216, title I, §106, Dec. 11, 1989, 103 Stat. 1854.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Service Act of 1980, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 96-465, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2071, which is classified principally to chapter 52 (§3901 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3901 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

“Section 501 of title 44” substituted in text for “section 11 of the Act of March 1, 1919 (44 U.S.C. 111)” on authority of section 2(b) of Pub. L. 90-620, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1238, section 1 of which enacted Title 44, Public Printing and Documents.

AMENDMENTS

1989—Pub. L. 101-216 inserted “(including any such travel or transportation any part of which begins in one fiscal year pursuant to travel orders issued in that fiscal year, but which is completed after the end of that fiscal year)” after “personal effects”.

1986—Pub. L. 99-550 struck out “without regard to the limitations contained in section 78(c) of title 5 of the United States Code” after “official use of the Director”.

1980—Pub. L. 96-465 substituted “Foreign Service Act of 1980” for “Foreign Service Act of 1946, as amended”.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-465 effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

**§§ 2589, 2590. Repealed. Pub. L. 103-236, title VII, § 717(a)(1), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 498**

Section 2589, Pub. L. 87-297, title IV, §49, Sept. 26, 1961, 75 Stat. 639; Pub. L. 88-186, §§1, 4, Nov. 26, 1963, 77 Stat. 341, 342; Pub. L. 89-27, May 27, 1965, 79 Stat. 118; Pub. L. 90-314, May 23, 1968, 82 Stat. 129; Pub. L. 91-246, May 12, 1970, 84 Stat. 207; Pub. L. 92-352, title III, §301, July 13, 1972, 86 Stat. 494; Pub. L. 93-332, §1(b), July 8, 1974, 88 Stat. 289; Pub. L. 94-141, title I, §§141, 148, Nov. 29, 1975, 89 Stat. 757, 760; Pub. L. 95-108, §6, Aug. 17, 1977, 91 Stat. 873; Pub. L. 95-338, §§2, 3, Aug. 8, 1978, 92 Stat. 458, 459; Pub. L. 96-66, §2(a), Sept. 21, 1979, 93 Stat. 414; Pub. L. 97-339, §2(a), Oct. 15, 1982, 96 Stat. 1635; Pub. L.

98-202, §1, Dec. 2, 1983, 97 Stat. 1381; Pub. L. 99-93, title VII, §§ 701, 702, Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 444; Pub. L. 100-213, §2, Dec. 24, 1987, 101 Stat. 1444; Pub. L. 101-216, title I, §101, Dec. 11, 1989, 103 Stat. 1853; Pub. L. 102-228, title IV, §401(a), Dec. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 1698; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §106(b), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 391, authorized appropriations to carry out purposes of this chapter.

Section 2590, Pub. L. 87-297, title IV, §50, Sept. 26, 1961, 75 Stat. 639; Pub. L. 94-141, title I, §149, Nov. 29, 1975, 89 Stat. 760, required submission of reports to Congress on Agency activities.

**§ 2591. Specialists fluent in Russian or other languages of the independent states of the former Soviet Union**

The Director is authorized to create up to eight additional permanent personnel positions at both junior and more senior levels for specialists in the foreign and military policies of the independent states of the former Union,<sup>1</sup> arms control, or strategic affairs of the former Soviet Union, who also demonstrate fluency in the Russian language or another language of the independent states of the former Soviet Union.

(Pub. L. 87-297, title IV, §49, formerly §51, as added Pub. L. 98-202, §4, Dec. 2, 1983, 97 Stat. 1382; amended Pub. L. 103-199, title IV, §401(b), Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2324; renumbered §49 and amended Pub. L. 103-236, title VII, §§717(a)(2), 719(g), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 498, 502.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 49 of Pub. L. 87-297 was classified to section 2589 of this title prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103-236.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-236, §719(g)(2), inserted “of the former Soviet Union” after “affairs”.

Pub. L. 103-236, §719(g)(1), which directed amendment of section by striking “Soviet”, was executed by striking “Soviet” after “military policies of the independent states of the former”.

1993—Pub. L. 103-199 in section catchline substituted “Specialists fluent in Russian or other languages of the independent states of the former Soviet Union” for “Specialists fluent in Russian language” and in text substituted “the foreign and military policies of the independent states of the former Soviet Union” for “Soviet foreign and military policies” and inserted at end “or another language of the independent states of the former Soviet Union”.

DEFINITIONS

Independent states of the former Soviet Union has the meaning given in section 5801 of this title, see section 3 of Pub. L. 103-199, set out as a note under section 5801 of this title.

**§ 2592. Repealed. Pub. L. 103-236, title VII, § 704(3), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 492**

Section, Pub. L. 87-297, title IV, §52, as added Pub. L. 99-93, title VII, §703, Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 444; amended Pub. L. 100-213, §5, Dec. 24, 1987, 101 Stat. 1446; Pub. L. 103-199, title IV, §401(c), Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2324, related to reports on adherence to and compliance with arms control agreements.

**§§ 2592a, 2592b. Repealed. Pub. L. 103-199, title IV, § 403(a)(1), (b)(1), Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2325**

Section 2592a, Pub. L. 99-145, title X, §1002, Nov. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 705; Pub. L. 100-456, div. A, title IX,

§905(a), Sept. 29, 1988, 102 Stat. 2032, related to submission by President of annual report to Congress on Soviet compliance with arms control commitments.

Section 2592b, Pub. L. 100-456, div. A, title IX, §906, Sept. 29, 1988, 102 Stat. 2033, related to submission by President of annual report to Congress on arms control strategy of the United States.

**§ 2593. ACDA Inspector General**

**(a) Establishment and duties**

There shall be an Office of the Inspector General at the Agency headed by the Inspector General of the Agency who shall have the duties, responsibilities, and authorities specified in the Inspector General Act of 1978.

**(b) Duality of appointment**

An individual appointed to the position of Inspector General of the Department of State shall, by virtue of such appointment, also hold the position of Inspector General of the Agency.

**(c) Utilization of staff**

The Inspector General of the Agency shall utilize personnel of the Office of the Inspector General of the Department of State in performing the duties of the Inspector General of the Agency, and shall not appoint any individuals to positions within the Agency.

**(d) References**

For purposes of this section, references in the Inspector General Act of 1978 to the establishment involved, to the head of the establishment, and to an Inspector General shall be deemed to be references to the Agency, the Director of the Agency, and Inspector General of the Agency, respectively, except to the extent inconsistent with this section.

(Pub. L. 87-297, title IV, §50, formerly §53, as added Pub. L. 100-213, §6(a), Dec. 24, 1987, 101 Stat. 1446; renumbered §50 Pub. L. 103-236, title VII, §717(a)(2), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 498.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Inspector General Act of 1978, referred to in subssecs. (a) and (d), is Pub. L. 95-452, Oct. 12, 1978, 92 Stat. 1101, as amended, which is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 50 of Pub. L. 87-297 was classified to section 2590 of this title prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103-236.

**§ 2593a. Annual report to Congress**

**(a) In general**

Not later than January 31 of each year, the President shall submit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and to the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate a report prepared by the Director, in consultation with the Secretary of State, the Secretary of Defense, the Secretary of Energy, the Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff, and the Director of Central Intelligence, on the status of United States policy and actions with respect to arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament. Such report shall include—

(1) a detailed statement concerning the arms control and disarmament objectives of the executive branch of Government for the forthcoming year;

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be “former Soviet Union.”

(2) a detailed statement concerning the nonproliferation objectives of the executive branch of Government for the forthcoming year;

(3) a detailed assessment of the status of any ongoing arms control or disarmament negotiations, including a comprehensive description of negotiations or other activities during the preceding year and an appraisal of the status and prospects for the forthcoming year;

(4) a detailed assessment of the status of any ongoing nonproliferation negotiations or other activities, including a comprehensive description of the negotiations or other activities during the preceding year and an appraisal of the status and prospects for the forthcoming year;

(5) a detailed assessment of adherence of the United States to obligations undertaken in arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament agreements, including information on the policies and organization of each relevant agency or department of the United States to ensure adherence to such obligations, a description of national security programs with a direct bearing on questions of adherence to such obligations and of steps being taken to ensure adherence, and a compilation of any substantive questions raised during the preceding year and any corrective action taken;

(6) a detailed assessment of the adherence of other nations to obligations undertaken in all arms control, nonproliferation, and disarmament agreements to which the United States is a participating state, including information on actions taken by each nation with regard to the size, structure, and disposition of its military forces in order to comply with arms control, nonproliferation, or disarmament agreements, and shall include, in the case of each agreement about which compliance questions exist—

(A) a description of each significant issue raised and efforts made and contemplated with the other participating state to seek resolution of the difficulty;

(B) an assessment of damage, if any, to the United States security and other interests; and

(C) recommendations as to any steps that should be considered to redress any damage to United States national security and to reduce compliance problems; and

(7) a discussion of any material noncompliance by foreign governments with their binding commitments to the United States with respect to the prevention of the spread of nuclear explosive devices (as defined in section 830(4) of the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention Act of 1994) by non-nuclear-weapon states (as defined in section 830(5) of that Act) or the acquisition by such states of unsafeguarded special nuclear material (as defined in section 830(8) of that Act), including—

(A) a net assessment of the aggregate military significance of all such violations;

(B) a statement of the compliance policy of the United States with respect to violations of those commitments; and

(C) what actions, if any, the President has taken or proposes to take to bring any na-

tion committing such a violation into compliance with those commitments.

**(b) Classification of report**

The report required by this section shall be submitted in unclassified form, with classified annexes, as appropriate.

**(c) Reporting consecutive noncompliance**

If the President in consecutive reports submitted to the Congress under this section reports that any designated nation is not in full compliance with its binding nonproliferation commitments to the United States, then the President shall include in the second such report an assessment of what actions are necessary to compensate for such violations.

(Pub. L. 87-297, title IV, §51, as added and amended Pub. L. 103-236, title VII, §717(a)(3), title VIII, §828(a), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 498, 520.)

AMENDMENT OF SECTION

*For termination of amendment by section 851 of Pub. L. 103-236, see Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note below.*

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 830 of the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention Act of 1994, referred to in subsec. (a)(7), is section 830 of Pub. L. 103-236 which is set out in the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention; Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note under section 3201 of this title.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 51 of Pub. L. 87-297 was renumbered section 49 and is classified to section 2591 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (a)(5) to (7). Pub. L. 103-236, §§828(a)(1)-(3), 851, temporarily struck out “and” at end of par. (5), substituted “; and” for period at end of par. (6), and added par. (7). See Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note below.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 103-236, §§828(a)(4), 851, temporarily added subsec. (c). See Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note below.

EFFECTIVE AND TERMINATION DATES OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 828(a) of Pub. L. 103-236 effective 60 days after Apr. 30, 1994, and ceases to be effective and is repealed on date of enactment of first Foreign Relations Authorization Act enacted after Apr. 30, 1994, and any provision repealed by that amendment shall be reenacted, see sections 831 and 851 of Pub. L. 103-236, set out in the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention; Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note under section 3201 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2577 of this title.

**§ 2593b. Public annual report on world military expenditures and arms transfers**

Not later than December 31 of each year, the Director shall publish an unclassified report on world military expenditures and arms transfers. Such report shall provide detailed, comprehensive, and statistical information regarding military expenditures, arms transfers, armed forces, and related economic data for each country of the world. In addition, such report shall include pertinent in-depth analyses as well as highlights with respect to arms transfers and proliferation

trends and initiatives affecting such developments.

(Pub. L. 87-297, title IV, §52, as added Pub. L. 103-236, title VII, §717(a)(3), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 499.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 52 of Pub. L. 87-297 was classified to section 2592 of this title prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103-236.

**§ 2593c. Requirement for authorization of appropriations**

**(a) Limitation on obligation and expenditure of funds**

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, for the fiscal year 1994 and for each subsequent year, any funds appropriated for the Agency shall not be available for obligation or expenditure—

- (1) unless such funds are appropriated pursuant to an authorization of appropriations; or
- (2) in excess of the authorized level of appropriations.

**(b) Subsequent authorization**

The limitation under subsection (a) of this section shall not apply to the extent that an authorization of appropriations is enacted after such funds are appropriated.

**(c) Application**

The provisions of this section—

- (1) may not be superseded, except by a provision of law which specifically repeals, modifies, or supersedes the provisions of this section; and
- (2) shall not apply to, or affect in any manner, permanent appropriations, trust funds, and other similar accounts which are authorized by law and administered by the Agency.

(Pub. L. 87-297, title IV, §53, as added Pub. L. 103-236, title VII, §718(a), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 500.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 53 of Pub. L. 87-297 was renumbered section 50 and is classified to section 2593 of this title.

**§ 2593d. Transfers and reprogrammings**

**(a) Transfer of funds**

Funds appropriated for the purpose of carrying out this chapter may be allocated or transferred to any agency for such purpose. Such funds shall be available for obligation and expenditure in accordance with the authorities of this chapter or in accordance with the authorities governing the activities of the agencies to which such funds are allocated or transferred.

**(b) Limitation**

Not more than 12 percent of any appropriation made for the purpose of carrying out this chapter shall be obligated or reserved during the last month of the fiscal year.

**(c) Congressional notification of certain reprogrammings**

Unless the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate are noti-

fied at least 15 days in advance of the proposed reprogramming, funds appropriated to carry out this chapter (other than funds to carry out subchapter V) shall not be available for obligation or expenditure through any reprogramming of funds that—

- (1) would create or eliminate a program, project, or activity;
- (2) would increase funds or personnel by any means for any program, project, or activity for which funds have been denied or restricted by the Congress;
- (3) would relocate an office or employees;
- (4) would reorganize offices, programs, projects, or activities;
- (5) would involve contracting out functions which had been performed by Federal employees; or
- (6) would involve a reprogramming in excess of \$1,000,000 or 10 percent (whichever is less) and would—
  - (A) augment existing programs, projects, or activities,
  - (B) reduce by 10 percent or more the funding for any existing program, project, activity, or personnel approved by the Congress, or
  - (C) result from any general savings from a reduction in personnel that would result in a change in existing programs, activities, or projects approved by the Congress.

**(d) Limitation on end-of-year reprogrammings**

Funds appropriated to carry out this chapter (other than funds to carry out subchapter V) shall not be available for obligation or expenditure through any reprogramming described in paragraph (1) during the last 15 days in which such funds are available for obligation or expenditure (as the case may be) unless the notification required by that paragraph was submitted before that 15-day period.

(Pub. L. 87-297, title IV, §54, as added Pub. L. 103-236, title VII, §718(a), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 500.)

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

SUBCHAPTER V—ON-SITE INSPECTION ACTIVITIES

SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in section 2593d of this title.

**§ 2595. Findings**

The Congress finds that—

- (1) under this chapter, the United States Arms Control and Disarmament Agency is charged with the “formulation and implementation of United States arms control and disarmament policy in a manner which will promote the national security”;
- (2) as defined in this chapter, the terms “arms control” and “disarmament” mean “the identification, verification, inspection, limitation, control, reduction, or elimination,

of armed forces and armaments of all kinds under international agreement to establish an effective system of international control”;

(3) the On-Site Inspection Agency was established in 1988 pursuant to the INF Treaty to implement, on behalf of the United States, the inspection provisions of the INF Treaty;

(4) on-site inspection activities under the INF Treaty include—

(A) inspections in Russia, Ukraine, Kazakhstan, Belarus, Turkmenistan, Uzbekistan, the Czech Republic, and Germany,

(B) escort duties for teams visiting the United States and the Basing Countries,

(C) establishment and operation of the Portal Monitoring Facility in Russia, and

(D) support for the inspectors at the Portal Monitoring Facility in Utah;

(5) the On-Site Inspection Agency has additional responsibilities to those specified in paragraph (4), including the monitoring of nuclear tests pursuant to the Threshold Test Ban Treaty and the Peaceful Nuclear Explosions Treaty and the monitoring of the inspection provisions of such additional arms control agreements as the President may direct;

(6) the personnel of the On-Site Inspection Agency include civilian technical experts, civilian support personnel, and members of the Armed Forces; and

(7) the senior officials of the On-Site Inspection Agency include representatives from the United States Arms Control and Disarmament Agency and the Department of State.

(Pub. L. 87-297, title V, § 61, as added Pub. L. 101-216, title II, § 201, Dec. 11, 1989, 103 Stat. 1855; amended Pub. L. 102-228, title IV, § 402(a)(1), Dec. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 1699; Pub. L. 103-199, title IV, § 401(d), Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2324.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1993—Par. (4)(A). Pub. L. 103-199, § 401(d)(1), substituted “Russia, Ukraine, Kazakhstan, Belarus, Turkmenistan, Uzbekistan, the Czech Republic, and Germany” for “the Soviet Union, Czechoslovakia, and the German Democratic Republic”.

Par. (4)(B). Pub. L. 103-199, § 401(d)(2), struck out “Soviet” before “teams”.

Par. (4)(C). Pub. L. 103-199, § 401(d)(3), substituted “Russia” for “the Soviet Union”.

Par. (4)(D). Pub. L. 103-199, § 401(d)(4), struck out “Soviet” before “inspectors”.

1991—Pars. (5) to (7). Pub. L. 102-228 added par. (5) and redesignated former pars. (5) and (6) as (6) and (7), respectively.

#### ACCOUNTING FOR REIMBURSABLE EXPENSES INCURRED BY DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE ON BEHALF OF SOVIET UNION OR SUCCESSOR ENTITIES IN MONITORING INF TREATY

Pub. L. 103-139, title VIII, § 8033, Nov. 11, 1993, 107 Stat. 1447, provided that: “During the current fiscal year and thereafter, of the funds appropriated, reimbursable expenses incurred by the Department of Defense on behalf of the Soviet Union or its successor entities in monitoring United States implementation of the Treaty Between the United States of America and the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics on the Elimination of Their Intermediate-Range or Shorter-Range Missiles (‘INF Treaty’), concluded December 8, 1987, may be treated as orders received and obligation authority for the applicable appropriation, account, or

fund increased accordingly. Likewise, any reimbursements received for such costs may be credited to the same appropriation, account, or fund to which the expenses were charged: *Provided*, That reimbursements which are not received within one hundred and eighty days after submission of an appropriate request for payment shall be subject to interest at the current rate established pursuant to section 2(b)(1)(B) of the Export-Import Bank Act of 1945 (59 Stat. 526) [12 U.S.C. 635(b)(1)(B)]. Interest shall begin to accrue on the one hundred and eighty-first day following submission of an appropriate request for payment: *Provided further*, That funds appropriated in this Act [see Tables for classification] may be used to reimburse United States military personnel for reasonable costs of subsistence, at rates to be determined by the Secretary of Defense, incurred while accompanying Soviet Inspection Team members or inspection team members of the successor entities of the Soviet Union engaged in activities related to the INF Treaty: *Provided further*, That this provision includes only the in-country period (referred to in the INF Treaty) and is effective whether such duty is performed at, near, or away from an individual’s permanent duty station.”

Similar provisions were contained in the following prior appropriation acts:

Pub. L. 102-396, title IX, § 9045, Oct. 6, 1992, 106 Stat. 1912.

Pub. L. 102-172, title VIII, § 8045, Nov. 26, 1991, 105 Stat. 1182.

Pub. L. 101-511, title VIII, § 8049, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1885.

Pub. L. 101-165, title IX, § 9062, Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1142.

Pub. L. 100-463, title VIII, § 8138, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2270-46.

#### UNITED STATES PROGRAM FOR ON-SITE INSPECTIONS UNDER ARMS CONTROL AGREEMENTS

Pub. L. 101-189, div. A, title X, § 1014, Nov. 29, 1989, 103 Stat. 1547, provided that:

“(a) FINDINGS CONCERNING ON-SITE INSPECTION PERSONNEL.—Congress makes the following findings:

“(1) The United States is currently engaged in multilateral and bilateral negotiations seeking to achieve treaties or agreements to reduce or eliminate various types of military weapons and to make certain reductions in military personnel levels. These negotiations include negotiations for (A) reductions in strategic forces, conventional armaments, and military personnel levels, (B) regimes for monitoring nuclear testing, and (C) the complete elimination of chemical weapons.

“(2) Requirements for monitoring these possible treaties or agreements will be extensive and will place severe stress on the monitoring capabilities of United States national technical means.

“(3) In the case of the INF Treaty, the United States and the Soviet Union negotiated, and are currently using, on-site inspection procedures to complement and support monitoring by national technical means. Similar on-site inspection procedures are being negotiated for inclusion in possible future treaties and agreements referred to in paragraph (1).

“(4) During initial implementation of the provisions of the INF Treaty, the United States was not fully prepared for the personnel requirements for the conduct of on-site inspections. The Director of Central Intelligence has stated that on-site inspection requirements for any strategic arms reduction treaty or agreement will be far more extensive than those for the INF Treaty. The number of locations within the Soviet Union that would possibly be subject to on-site inspections under a START agreement have been estimated to be approximately 2,500 (compared to 120 for the INF Treaty).

“(5) On-site inspection procedures are likely to be an integral part of any future arms control treaty or agreement.

“(6) Personnel requirements will be extensive for such on-site inspection procedures, both in terms of

numbers of personnel and technical and linguistic skills. Since verification requirements for the INF Treaty are already placing severe stress on current personnel resources, the requirements for verification under START and other possible future treaties and agreements may quickly exceed the current number of verification personnel having necessary technical and language skills.

“(7) There is a clear need for a database of the names of individuals who are members of the Armed Forces or civilian employees of the United States Government, or of other citizens and nationals of the United States, who are qualified (by reason of technical or language skills) to participate in on-site inspections under an arms control treaty or agreement.

“(8) The organization best suited to establish such a database is the On-Site Inspection Agency (OSIA) of the Department of Defense, which was created by the President to implement (for the United States) the on-site inspection provisions of the INF Treaty.

“(b) STATUS OF THE OSIA.—(1) Congress finds that—

“(A) the Director of the OSIA (currently a brigadier general of the Army) is appointed by the Secretary of Defense with the concurrence of the Secretary of State and the approval of the President;

“(B) the Secretary of Defense provides to the Director appropriate policy guidance formulated by the interagency arms control mechanism established by the President;

“(C) most of the personnel of the OSIA are members of the Armed Forces (who are trained and paid by the military departments within the Department of Defense) and include linguists, weapons specialists, and foreign area specialists;

“(D) the Department of Defense provides the OSIA with substantially all of its administrative and logistic support (including military air transportation for inspections in the Soviet Union and Eastern Europe); and

“(E) the facilities in Europe and the United States at which OSIA personnel escort personnel of the Soviet Union conducting inspections under the on-site inspection terms of the INF Treaty are under the jurisdiction of the Department of Defense (or under the jurisdiction of entities that are contractors with the Department of Defense).

“(2) In light of the findings in paragraph (1) and the report submitted pursuant to section 909 of Public Law 100-456 [div. A, title IX, Sept. 29, 1988, 102 Stat. 2036] entitled ‘Report to the Congress on U.S. Monitoring and Verification Activities Related to the INF Treaty’ (submitted on July 27, 1989), Congress hereby determines that by locating the On-Site Inspection Agency within the Department of Defense for the purposes of administrative and logistic support and operational guidance, and integrating on-site inspection responsibilities under the INF Treaty with existing organizational activities of that Department, the President has been able to ensure that sensitive national security assets are protected and that obligations of the United States under that treaty are fulfilled in an efficient and cost-effective manner.

“(c) ESTABLISHMENT OF PERSONNEL DATABASE.—(1) In light of the findings in subsection (a), the Director of the On-Site Inspection Agency shall establish a database consisting of the names of individuals who could be assigned or detailed (in the case of Government personnel) or employed (in the case of non-Government personnel) to participate in the conduct of on-site inspections under any future arms control treaty or agreement that includes provisions for such inspections.

“(2) The database should be composed of the names of individuals with skills (including linguistic and technical skills) necessary for the conduct of on-site inspections.

“(d) INF TREATY DEFINED.—For purposes of this section, the term ‘INF Treaty’ means the Treaty Between the United States and the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics on the Elimination of Their Intermediate-

Range and Shorter-Range Missiles, signed in Washington, DC, on December 8, 1987.”

### § 2595a. Policy coordination concerning implementation of on-site inspection provisions

#### (a) Interagency coordination

OSIA should receive policy guidance which is formulated through an interagency mechanism established by the President.

#### (b) Role of Secretary of Defense

The Secretary of Defense should provide to OSIA appropriate policy guidance formulated through the interagency mechanism described in subsection (a) of this section and operational direction, consistent with section 113(b) of title 10.

#### (c) Role of Director

The Director should provide to the interagency mechanism described in subsection (a) of this section appropriate recommendations for policy guidance to OSIA consistent with sections 2551(d),<sup>1</sup> 2562, and 2574(c) of this title.

(Pub. L. 87-297, title V, § 62, as added Pub. L. 101-216, title II, § 201, Dec. 11, 1989, 103 Stat. 1855.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 2551 of this title, referred to in subsec. (c), was amended by Pub. L. 103-236, title VII, § 703, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 491, and, as so amended, no longer contains a par. (d). See section 2551(4) of this title.

### § 2595b. Authorizations of appropriations for On-Site Inspection Agency

There are authorized to be appropriated \$49,830,000 for fiscal year 1990 and \$48,831,000 for fiscal year 1991 for the expenses of the On-Site Inspection Agency in carrying out on-site inspection activities pursuant to the INF Treaty.

(Pub. L. 87-297, title V, § 63, as added Pub. L. 101-216, title II, § 201, Dec. 11, 1989, 103 Stat. 1856.)

### § 2595b-1. Improving congressional oversight of on-site inspection activities

#### (a) Report from President

Concurrent with the submission to the Congress of the request for authorization of appropriations for OSIA for fiscal year 1993, the President shall submit a report on OSIA to the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives, the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, and the Committees on Armed Services of the House of Representatives and Senate. The report shall include a review of—

(1) the history of OSIA, including how, when, and under what auspices it was established, including the applicable texts of the relevant executive orders;

(2) the missions and tasks assigned to OSIA to date;

(3) any additional missions and tasks likely to be assigned to OSIA during fiscal year 1993;

(4) the budgetary history of OSIA; and

(5) the extent to which OSIA plays a role in arms control policy formulation and operational implementation.

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.



**(b) Review of certain reprogramming notifications**

Any notification submitted to the Congress with respect to a proposed transfer, reprogramming, or reallocation of funds from or within the budget of OSIA shall also be submitted to the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, and shall be subject to review by those committees.

(Pub. L. 87-297, title V, § 64, as added Pub. L. 102-228, title IV, § 402(b)(2), Dec. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 1699.)

**PRIOR PROVISIONS**

A prior section 64 of Pub. L. 87-297 was renumbered section 65 by section 402(b)(1) of Pub. L. 102-228 and is classified to section 2595c of this title.

**CHANGE OF NAME**

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives and Committee on Armed Services of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on National Security of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

**§ 2595c. Definitions**

As used in this subchapter—

(1) the term “INF Treaty” means the Treaty Between the United States and the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics on the Elimination of Their Intermediate-Range and Shorter-Range Missiles (signed at Washington, December 8, 1987);

(2) the term “OSIA” means the On-Site Inspection Agency established by the President, or such other agency as may be designated by the President to carry out the on-site inspection provisions of the INF Treaty;

(3) the term “Peaceful Nuclear Explosions Treaty” means the Treaty Between the United States of America and the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics on Underground Nuclear Explosions for Peaceful Purposes (signed at Washington and Moscow, May 28, 1976); and

(4) the term “Threshold Test Ban Treaty” means the Treaty Between the United States of America and the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics on the Limitation of Underground Nuclear Weapons Tests (signed at Moscow, July 3, 1974).

(Pub. L. 87-297, title V, § 65, formerly § 64, as added Pub. L. 101-216, title II, § 201, Dec. 11, 1989, 103 Stat. 1856; renumbered § 65 and amended Pub. L. 102-228, title IV, § 402(a)(2), (b)(1), Dec. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 1699.)

**AMENDMENTS**

1991—Pars. (3), (4). Pub. L. 102-228, § 402(a)(2), added pars. (3) and (4).

**CHAPTER 36—MIGRATION AND REFUGEE ASSISTANCE**

Sec.

2601.

Refugees and migration.

(a) United States membership in International Organization for Migration; contributions to Organization.

Sec.

(b) Appropriations for assistance to refugees.

(c) United States Emergency Refugee and Migration Assistance Fund; appropriations.

(d) Information to Congressional committees.

(e) Continued availability of certain funds.

(f) Restrictions on foreign assistance not applicable to migration and refugee assistance.

2602.

Presidential authorization.

(a) Authority of President to make loans, advances, grants, contracts, etc.; authority to use money, funds, property, services, etc.

(b) Performance of functions without regard to specified provisions of law.

2603.

Delegation of powers.

2604.

Allocation, transfer and availability of funds; separate appropriation accounts on Treasury books.

2605.

Use of funds and personnel; savings provision.

(a) Use of funds.

(b) Savings provision.

(c) Use of personnel.

2606.

Audits of U.S. funds received by the United Nations High Commissioner for Refugees.

(a) Program audits.

(b) First program audit.

**CHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS**

This chapter is referred to in sections 2275, 2318 of this title.

**§ 2601. Refugees and migration****(a) United States membership in International Organization for Migration; contributions to Organization**

The President is authorized to continue membership for the United States in the International Organization for Migration in accordance with its constitution approved in Venice, Italy, on October 19, 1953, as amended in Geneva, Switzerland, on May 20, 1987. For the purpose of assisting in the movement of refugees and migrants and to enhance the economic progress of the developing countries by providing for a coordinated supply of selected manpower, there are authorized to be appropriated such amounts as may be necessary from time to time for the payment by the United States of its contributions to the Organization and all necessary salaries and expenses incident to United States participation in the Organization.

**(b) Appropriations for assistance to refugees**

There are authorized to be appropriated such amounts as may be necessary from time to time—

(1) for contributions to the activities of the United Nations High Commissioner for Refugees for assistance to refugees under his mandate or persons on behalf of whom he is exercising his good offices, and for contributions to the International Organization for Migration, the International Committee of the Red Cross, and to other relevant international organizations; and

(2) for assistance to or on behalf of refugees who are outside the United States designated by the President (by class, group, or designation of their respective countries of origin or

areas of residence) when the President determines that such assistance will contribute to the foreign policy interests of the United States.

**(c) United States Emergency Refugee and Migration Assistance Fund; appropriations**

(1) Whenever the President determines it to be important to the national interest he is authorized to furnish on such terms and conditions as he may determine assistance under this chapter for the purpose of meeting unexpected urgent refugee and migration needs.

(2) There is established a United States Emergency Refugee and Migration Assistance Fund to carry out the purposes of this section. There is authorized to be appropriated to the President from time to time such amounts as may be necessary for the fund to carry out the purposes of this section, except that no amount of funds may be appropriated which, when added to amounts previously appropriated but not yet obligated, would cause such amounts to exceed \$100,000,000. Amounts appropriated hereunder shall remain available until expended.

(3) Whenever the President requests appropriations pursuant to this authorization he shall justify such requests to the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and to the Speaker of the House of Representatives, as well as to the Committees on Appropriations.

**(d) Information to Congressional committees**

The President shall keep the appropriate committees of Congress currently informed of the use of funds and the exercise of functions authorized in this chapter.

**(e) Continued availability of certain funds**

Unexpended balances of funds made available under authority of the Mutual Security Act of 1954, as amended, and of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as amended, [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.], and allocated or transferred for the purposes of sections 405(a), 405(c), 405(d) and 451(c)<sup>1</sup> of the Mutual Security Act of 1954, as amended [22 U.S.C. 1925(a), (c), (d), 1951(c)], are authorized to be continued available for the purposes of this section and may be consolidated with appropriations authorized by this section.

**(f) Restrictions on foreign assistance not applicable to migration and refugee assistance**

The President may furnish assistance and make contributions under this chapter notwithstanding any provision of law which restricts assistance to foreign countries.

(Pub. L. 87-510, § 2, June 28, 1962, 76 Stat. 121; Pub. L. 88-634, title II, § 201, Oct. 7, 1964, 78 Stat. 1021; Pub. L. 94-141, title V, § 501(a), Nov. 29, 1975, 89 Stat. 771; Pub. L. 96-212, title III, § 312(b), Mar. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 116; Pub. L. 99-93, title I, § 111, Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 410; Pub. L. 103-236, title IV, § 430(a), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 459.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (c)(1), (d), and (f), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 87-510, June 28, 1962, 76 Stat. 121, as amended, known as the Migration and Refugee Assistance Act of 1962, which

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

enacted this chapter, amended section 1404 of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality, repealed sections 1925(a), (c), (d), and 1951(c) of this title, enacted a provision set out as a note under this section, and amended a provision set out as a note under section 1182 of Title 8. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out below and Tables.

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as amended, referred to in subsec. (e), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 32 (§ 2151 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

The Mutual Security Act of 1954, as amended, referred to in subsec. (e), is act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, 68 Stat. 832, as amended by acts July 8, 1955, ch. 301, 69 Stat. 283; July 18, 1956, ch. 627, §§ 2-11, 70 Stat. 555; Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, 71 Stat. 355; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. 1, §§ 101-103, ch. II, §§ 201-205, ch. III, § 301, ch. IV, § 401, ch. V, § 501, 72 Stat. 261; July 24, 1959, Pub. L. 86-108, § 2, ch. 1, § 101, ch. II, §§ 201-205(a)-(i), (k)-(n), ch. III, § 301, ch. IV, § 401(a)-(k), (m), 73 Stat. 246; May 14, 1960, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. I to V, 74 Stat. 134, which was principally classified to chapter 24 (§ 1750 et seq.) of this title and which was repealed by act July 18, 1956, ch. 627, § 8(m), 70 Stat. 559, Pub. L. 85-141, §§ 2(e), 3, 4(b), 11(d), Aug. 14, 1957, 71 Stat. 356, Pub. L. 86-108, ch. II, §§ 205(j), ch. IV, 401(1), July 24, 1959, 73 Stat. 250, Pub. L. 86-472, ch. II, §§ 203(d), 204(k), May 14, 1960, 74 Stat. 138, Pub. L. 87-195, pt. III, § 642(a)(2), Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 460, Pub. L. 94-329, title II, § 212(b)(1), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 745, except for sections 1754, 1783, 1796, 1853, 1922, 1928, and 1937 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1754 of this title and Tables.

Sections 405(a), 405(c), 405(d), and 451(c) of the Mutual Security Act of 1954, as amended, referred to in subsec. (e), were sections of act Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, 68 Stat. 832, and were repealed by section 6 of Pub. L. 87-510.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103-236, § 430(a)(1)-(3), substituted "the International Organization for Migration" for "the Intergovernmental Committee for European Migration", inserted ", as amended in Geneva, Switzerland, on May 20, 1987" before period at end of first sentence, and substituted "the Organization" for "the Committee" in two places.

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 103-236, § 430(a)(1), substituted "the International Organization for Migration" for "the Intergovernmental Committee for European Migration".

Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 103-236, § 430(a)(4), substituted "\$100,000,000" for "\$50,000,000".

1985—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 99-93 added subsec. (f).

1980—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 96-212, § 312(b)(1), in par. (1) inserted provisions respecting contributions to the Intergovernmental Committee for European Migration, etc., in par. (2) inserted provisions requiring refugees to be outside of the United States, and struck out requirement that the assistance contribute to the defense or security of the United States, and struck out pars. (3) to (6), which related to assistance when determined by the President to be in the interest of the United States, assistance to State and local agencies, assistance for transportation and resettlement, and assistance for employment and professional refresher training projects, respectively.

Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 96-212, § 312(b)(2), inserted provisions increasing amount from \$25,000,000 to \$50,000,000.

1975—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 94-141 designated existing provision as par. (1), substituted provisions authorizing the President to furnish assistance on such terms and conditions as he determines, for provisions authorizing President to transfer not more than \$10,000,000 in any fiscal year of the funds made available under the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 for the purposes of this chapter, and added pars. (2) and (3).

1964—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 88-634 struck out last sentence "Funds appropriated for the purposes of this section shall remain available until expended."

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-212 effective with respect to fiscal years beginning on and after Oct. 1, 1979, see section 313 of Pub. L. 96-212, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1522 of Title 8, Immigration and Nationality.

## SHORT TITLE

Section 1 of Pub. L. 87-510 provided: "That this Act [enacting this chapter, amending sections 1925 and 1951 of this title and section 1104 of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality, enacting provisions set out as a note under this section, and amending provisions set out as a note under section 1182 of Title 8] may be cited as the 'Migration and Refugee Assistance Act of 1962'."

## UNITED STATES POLICY CONCERNING OVERSEAS ASSISTANCE TO REFUGEES AND DISPLACED PERSONS

Section 501 of Pub. L. 103-236 provided that:

"(a) STANDARDS FOR REFUGEE WOMEN AND CHILDREN.—The United States Government, in providing for overseas assistance and protection of refugees and displaced persons, shall seek to address the protection and provision of basic needs of refugee women and children who represent 80 percent of the world's refugee population. As called for in the 1991 United Nations High Commissioner for Refugees (UNHCR) 'Guidelines on the Protection of Refugee Women', whether directly, or through international organizations and nongovernmental voluntary organizations, the Secretary of State shall seek to ensure—

"(1) specific attention on the part of the United Nations and relief organizations to recruit and employ female protection officers;

"(2) implementation of gender awareness training for field staff including, but not limited to, security personnel;

"(3) the protection of refugee women and children from violence and other abuses on the part of governments or insurgent groups;

"(4) full involvement of women refugees in the planning and implementation of (A) the delivery of services and assistance, and (B) the repatriation process;

"(5) incorporation of maternal and child health needs into refugee health services and education, specifically to include education on and access to services in reproductive health and birth spacing;

"(6) the availability of counseling and other services, grievance processes, and protective services to victims of violence and abuse, including but not limited to rape and domestic violence;

"(7) the provision of educational programs, particularly literacy and numeracy, vocational and income-generation skills training, and other training efforts promoting self-sufficiency for refugee women, with special emphasis on women heads of household;

"(8) education for all refugee children, ensuring equal access for girls, and special services and family tracing for unaccompanied refugee minors;

"(9) the collection of data that clearly enumerate age and gender so that appropriate health, education, and assistance programs can be planned;

"(10) the recruitment, hiring, and training of more women program professionals in the international humanitarian field; and

"(11) gender-awareness training for program staff of the United Nations High Commissioner for Refugees (UNHCR) and nongovernmental voluntary organizations on implementation of the 1991 UNHCR 'Guidelines on the Protection of Refugee Women'.

"(b) PROCEDURES.—The Secretary of State should adopt specific procedures to ensure that all recipients of United States Government refugee and migration assistance funds implement the standards outlined in subsection (a).

"(c) REQUIREMENTS FOR REFUGEE AND MIGRATION ASSISTANCE.—The Secretary of State, in providing migration and refugee assistance, should support the protec-

tion efforts set forth under this section by raising at the highest levels of government the issue of abuses against refugee women and children by governments or insurgent groups that engage in, permit, or condone—

"(1) a pattern of gross violations of internationally recognized human rights, such as torture or cruel, inhumane, or degrading treatment or punishment, prolonged detention without charges, or other flagrant denial to life, liberty, and the security of person;

"(2) the blockage of humanitarian relief assistance;

"(3) gender-specific persecution such as systematic individual or mass rape, forced pregnancy, forced abortion, enforced prostitution, any form of indecent assault or act of violence against refugee women, girls, and children; or

"(4) continuing violations of the integrity of the person against refugee women and children on the part of armed insurgents, local security forces, or camp guards.

"(d) INVESTIGATION OF REPORTS.—Upon receipt of credible reports of abuses under subsection (c), the Secretary of State should immediately investigate such reports through emergency fact-finding missions or other means of investigating such reports and help identify appropriate remedial measures.

"(e) MULTILATERAL IMPLEMENTATION OF THE 1991 UNHCR 'GUIDELINES ON THE PROTECTION OF REFUGEE WOMEN'.—The Secretary of State should work to ensure that multilateral organizations fully incorporate the needs of refugee women and children into all elements of refugee assistance programs and work to encourage other governments that provide refugee assistance to adopt refugee assistance policies designed to encourage full implementation of the 1991 UNHCR's 'Guidelines on the Protection of Refugee Women'."

## UNITED STATES MEMBERSHIP IN INTERGOVERNMENTAL COMMITTEE FOR EUROPEAN MIGRATION

Pub. L. 100-204, title VII, §745, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1396, authorized President to continue United States membership in Intergovernmental Committee for European Migration and, upon entry into force of amendments to constitution of such body approved May 20, 1987, to continue membership under the name International Organization for Migration in accordance with such constitution and amendments, and authorized appropriation of necessary amounts for payment of United States contributions to such body and salaries and expenses incidental to United States participation in such body, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103-236, title IV, §430(b), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 459.

## INDOCHINA MIGRATION AND REFUGEE ASSISTANCE

Pub. L. 94-23, May 23, 1975, 89 Stat. 87, as amended by Pub. L. 94-313, June 21, 1976, 90 Stat. 691; Pub. L. 95-145, title II, §§201, 202, Oct. 28, 1977, 91 Stat. 1224, 1225; Pub. L. 95-549, title II, §201, Oct. 30, 1978, 92 Stat. 2066; Pub. L. 96-110, §3(a), Nov. 13, 1979, 93 Stat. 844, which set forth provisions respecting appropriations, etc., for migration and refugee assistance for aliens who fled from Cambodia, Laos, and Vietnam, was repealed by Pub. L. 96-212, title III, §312(c), Mar. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 117.

## AVAILABILITY OF FUNDS FOR CONTINUATION OF ACTIVITIES

Section 7 of Pub. L. 87-510 provided that: "Until the enactment of legislation appropriating funds for activities under this Act [see Short Title note above], such activities may be conducted with funds made available under section 451(a) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as amended [section 2261(a) of this title]."

## EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 12244

Ex. Ord. No. 12244, Oct. 3, 1980, 45 F.R. 66443, which provided exemptions from certain statutory requirements for temporary housing for Haitian and Cuban refugees at Fort Allen in Puerto Rico for the period beginning Oct. 2, 1980, and ending Oct. 1, 1981, was revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 12553, Feb. 25, 1986, 51 F.R. 7237.

## EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 12327

Ex. Ord. No. 12327, Oct. 1, 1981, 46 F.R. 48893, which provided for temporary housing of Haitian refugees at Fort Allen in Puerto Rico and exempted Fort Allen from certain statutory requirements, was revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 12553, Feb. 25, 1986, 51 F.R. 7237.

**§ 2602. Presidential authorization****(a) Authority of President to make loans, advances, grants, contracts, etc.; authority to use money, funds, property, services, etc.**

In carrying out the purpose of this chapter, the President is authorized—

(1) to make loans, advances, and grants to, make and perform agreements and contracts with, or enter into other transactions with, any individual, corporation, or other body of persons, government or government agency, whether within or without the United States, and international and intergovernmental organizations;

(2) to accept and use money, funds, property, and services of any kind made available by gift, devise, bequest, grant, or otherwise for such purposes.

**(b) Performance of functions without regard to specified provisions of law**

Whenever the President determines it to be in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter, the functions authorized under this chapter may be performed without regard to such provisions of law (other than the Renegotiation Act of 1951), as amended [50 App. U.S.C. 1211 et seq.], regulating the making, performance, amendment, or modification of contracts and the expenditure of funds of the United States Government as the President may specify.

(Pub. L. 87-510, § 3, June 28, 1962, 76 Stat. 123.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-510, June 28, 1962, 76 Stat. 121, as amended, known as the Migration and Refugee Assistance Act of 1962, which enacted this chapter, amended section 1104 of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality, repealed sections 1925(a), (c), (d), and 1951(c) of this title, enacted a provision set out as a note under section 2601 of this title, and amended a provision set out as a note under section 1182 of Title 8. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2601 of this title and Tables.

The Renegotiation Act of 1951, as amended, referred to in subsec. (b), is act Mar. 23, 1951, ch. 15, 65 Stat. 7, as amended, which was classified principally to section 1211 et seq. of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense, prior to its omission from the Code. See Codification note preceding section 1211 of Title 50, Appendix.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2603 of this title; title 26 section 6103.

**§ 2603. Delegation of powers**

The President is authorized to designate the head of any department or agency of the United States Government, or any official thereof who is required to be appointed by the President by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to perform any functions conferred upon the President by this chapter. If the President shall so specify, any individual so designated under

this section is authorized to redelegate to any of his subordinates any functions authorized to be performed by him under this section, except the function of exercising the waiver authority specified in section 2602(b) of this title.

(Pub. L. 87-510, § 4(a)(1), June 28, 1962, 76 Stat. 123.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-510, June 28, 1962, 76 Stat. 121, as amended, known as the Migration and Refugee Assistance Act of 1962, which enacted this chapter, amended section 1104 of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality, repealed sections 1925(a), (c), (d), and 1951(c) of this title, enacted a provision set out as a note under section 2601 of this title, and amended a provision set out as a note under section 1182 of Title 8. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2601 of this title and Tables.

## EX. ORD. NO. 11077. ADMINISTRATION OF CHAPTER

Ex. Ord. No. 11077, Jan. 22, 1963, 28 F.R. 629, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 11922, June 16, 1976, 41 F.R. 24573; Ex. Ord. No. 12608, Sept. 9, 1987, 52 F.R. 34617, provided:

By virtue of the authority vested in me by the Migration and Refugee Assistance Act of 1962 (76 Stat. 121-124; hereinafter referred to as the Act) [this chapter], and as President of the United States, it is ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. *Department of State.* (a) The Secretary of State is hereby designated to perform the following:

(1) The functions provided for in Sections 2(a) and 2(b)(1) of the Act [section 2601(a), (b)(1) of this title].

(2) The functions provided for in Section 2(b)(2) of the Act [section 2601(b)(2) of this title], exclusive of so much thereof as is assigned or reserved by the provisions of Section 2(1) of this order.

(3) In connection with functions under the Act assigned to the Secretary of State, the functions provided for in Sections 3(a), 4(b), and 5(a) of the Act [sections 2602(a), 2604, and 2605(a) of this title].

(b) The Secretary of State shall from time to time furnish the President documents appropriate for the discharge by the President of his responsibilities under Section 2(d) of the Act [section 2601(d) of this title].

(c) With due regard for other relevant considerations (including the interests of any other executive agencies which may be concerned), the Secretary of State shall assume the leadership and provide the guidance for assuring that programs authorized under the Act best serve the foreign policy objectives of the United States.

(d) Funds appropriated or otherwise made available to the President for the United States Emergency Refugee and Migration Assistance Fund established by Section 2(c) of the act (22 U.S.C. 2601) shall be deemed to be allocated without further action of the President to the Secretary of State, and the Secretary may allocate or transfer, as appropriate, such funds to any agency, or part thereof, for obligation or expenditure consistent with the provisions of this order, the act, and other applicable law: *Provided*, That such funds may not be transferred, obligated, or expended until the President shall have made the determinations provided for in Section 2(c)(1) of the act [section 2601(c)(1) of this title], which determinations are reserved to the President, and the designations and determinations provided for in Section 2(b)(2) of the act [section 2601(b)(2) of this title].

SEC. 2. *Redelegation.* (a) The Secretary of State may redelegate any of his functions under this order to any of his subordinates.

(b) The Secretary of State may assign to the head of any executive department or to the head of any other agency of the executive branch of the Government, with the consent of the head of the department or agency concerned, the performance of any function of the Secretary under this order whenever he deems that such action would be advantageous to the Government.

SEC. 3. *Waivers.* (a) In accordance with Section 3(b) of the Act [section 2602(b) of this title], it is hereby determined that it is in furtherance of the purposes of the Act that the functions authorized under the Act may be performed (by any department or agency of the Government authorized to perform those functions) without regard to the following-specified provisions of law:

(1) The Act of March 26, 1934, c. 90, 47 Stat. 500, as amended (15 U.S.C. 616a) (shipment of certain exports in United States vessels.)

(2) Section 3648 of the Revised Statutes, as amended (31 U.S.C. 529) (advance of funds).

(3) Section 3709 of the Revised Statutes, as amended (41 U.S.C. 5) (competitive bids).

(4) Section 3710 of the Revised Statutes (41 U.S.C. 8) (opening of bids).

(5) Section 2 of the Act of March 3, 1933, c. 212, 47 Stat. 1520 (41 U.S.C. 10a) (Buy American Act).

(6) Section 3735 of the Revised Statutes (41 U.S.C. 13) (contracts limited to one year).

(7) Sections 302–305 of the Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949 (June 30, 1949, c. 288, 63 Stat. 393 et seq.), as amended (41 U.S.C. 252–255) (competitive bids; negotiated contracts; advances).

(8) Section 901(a) of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936 (June 29, 1936, c. 858, 49 Stat. 2015, as amended; 46 U.S.C. 1241(a) (official travel overseas of United States officers and employees, and transportation of their personal effects, on ships registered under the laws of the United States).

(b) It is directed (1) that all waivers of statutes and limitations of authority effected by the foregoing provisions of this section shall be utilized in a prudent manner and as sparingly as may be practical, and (2) that suitable steps shall be taken by the administrative agencies concerned to insure that result, including, as may be appropriate, the imposition of administrative limitations in lieu of waived statutory requirements and limitations of authority.

SEC. 4. *Definition.* As used in this order, the word “function” or “functions” includes any executive duty, obligation, power, authority, responsibility, right, privilege, discretion, or activity.

SEC. 5. *Saving provisions.* Except to the extent that they may be inconsistent with law or with this order, all determinations, authorizations, regulations, orders, contracts, agreements and other actions issued, undertaken, or entered into with respect to any function affected by this order and not revoked, superseded, or otherwise made inapplicable before the date of this order, shall continue in full force and effect until amended, modified, or terminated by appropriate authority.

SEC. 6. *Effective date.* The provisions of this order shall be effective as of July 1, 1962.

#### § 2604. Allocation, transfer and availability of funds; separate appropriation accounts on Treasury books

The President may allocate or transfer to any agency of the United States Government any part of any funds available for carrying out the purposes of this chapter. Such funds shall be available for obligation and expenditure for the purposes for which authorized in accordance with authority granted in this chapter or under authority governing the activities of the agencies of the United States Government to which such funds are allocated or transferred. Funds allocated or transferred pursuant to this section to any such agency may be established in separate appropriation accounts on the books of the Treasury.

(Pub. L. 87–510, § 4(b), June 28, 1962, 76 Stat. 123.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87–510, June 28, 1962, 76

Stat. 121, as amended, known as the Migration and Refugee Assistance Act of 1962, which enacted this chapter, amended section 1104 of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality, repealed sections 1925(a), (c), (d), and 1951(c) of this title, enacted a provision set out as a note under section 2601 of this title, and amended a provision set out as a note under section 1182 of title 8. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2601 of this title and Tables.

#### § 2605. Use of funds and personnel; savings provision

##### (a) Use of funds

Funds made available for the purposes of this chapter shall be available for—

(1) compensation, allowances, and travel of personnel, including members of the Foreign Service whose services are utilized primarily for the purpose of this chapter, and without regard to the provisions of any other law, for printing and binding, and for expenditures outside the United States for the procurement of supplies and services and for other administrative and operating purposes (other than compensation of personnel) without regard to such laws and regulations governing the obligation and expenditure of Government funds as may be necessary to accomplish the purposes of this chapter;

(2) employment or assignment of members of the Foreign Service serving under limited appointments for the duration of operations under this chapter;

(3) exchange of funds without regard to section 3651<sup>1</sup> of the Revised Statutes (31 U.S.C. 543), and loss by exchanges;

(4) expenses authorized by the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [22 U.S.C. 3901 et seq.], not otherwise provided for;

(5) expenses authorized by the Act of August 1, 1956 (70 Stat. 890–892), as amended;

(6) contracting for personal services abroad, and individuals employed by contract to perform such services shall not be considered to be employees of the United States for purposes of any law administered by the Office of Personnel Management, except that the Secretary of State may determine the applicability to such individuals of section 2(f) of the State Department Basic Authorities Act of 1956 (22 U.S.C. 2669(f)) and of any other law administered by the Secretary concerning the employment of such individuals abroad; and

(7) all other expenses determined by the President to be necessary to carry out the purposes of this chapter.

##### (b) Savings provision

Except as may be expressly provided to the contrary in this chapter, all determinations, authorizations, regulations, orders, contracts, agreements and other actions issued, undertaken, or entered into under authority of any provision of law repealed by this chapter shall continue in full force and effect until modified, revoked, or superseded under the authority of this chapter.

##### (c) Use of personnel

Personnel funded pursuant to this section are authorized to provide administrative assistance

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

to personnel assigned to the bureau charged with carrying out this chapter.

(Pub. L. 87-510, § 5, June 28, 1962, 76 Stat. 123; Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2206(a)(10), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2162; Pub. L. 99-93, title I, §112(a), Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 410; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §164(b), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 411; Pub. L. 103-415, §1(ff), Oct. 25, 1994, 108 Stat. 4303.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-510, June 28, 1962, 76 Stat. 121, as amended, known as the Migration and Refugee Assistance Act of 1962, which enacted this chapter, amended section 1104 of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality, repealed sections 1925(a), (c), (d), and 1951(c) of this title, enacted a provision set out as a note under section 2601 of this title, and amended a provision set out as a note under section 1182 of title 8. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2601 of this title and Tables.

Section 3651 of the Revised Statutes (31 U.S.C. 543), referred to in subsec. (a)(3), was repealed by Pub. L. 97-258, §4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

The Foreign Service Act of 1980, referred to in subsec. (a)(4), is Pub. L. 96-465, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2071, which is classified principally to chapter 52 (§3901 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3901 of this title and Tables.

Act of August 1, 1956, as amended, referred to in subsec. (a)(5), is act Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, 70 Stat. 890, as amended, known as the State Department Basic Authorities Act of 1956, which enacted sections 2651a, 2669 to 2672, 2673 to 2679a, 2680, 2680a, 2684, 2687 to 2690, 2692, 2695, and 2696 to 2724 of this title and chapters 53 (§4301 et seq.), 53A (§4341 et seq.), and 53B (§4351 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1956 Amendment note set out under section 2651 of this title and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 103-236, as amended by Pub. L. 103-415, added subsec. (c).

1985—Subsec. (a)(6), (7). Pub. L. 99-93, §112(a), added par. (6) and redesignated former par. (6) as (7).

1980—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 96-465, §2206(a)(10)(A), substituted “members of the Foreign Service” for “Foreign Service personnel”.

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 96-465, §2206(a)(10)(B), substituted “members of the Foreign Service serving under limited appointments” for “Foreign Service Reserve officers”.

Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 96-465, §2206(a)(10)(C), substituted reference to the Foreign Service Act of 1980 for reference to the Foreign Service Act of 1946.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Section 112(b) of Pub. L. 99-93 provided that: “Authority provided by the amendment made by subsection (a) [amending this section] shall only apply with respect to funds appropriated after the date of the enactment of this Act [Aug. 16, 1985].”

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-465 effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

### § 2606. Audits of U.S. funds received by the United Nations High Commissioner for Refugees

#### (a) Program audits

Funds may not be available to the United Nations High Commissioner for Refugees (UNHCR)

under this chapter or any other Act unless provision is made for—

(1) annual program audits to determine the use of UNHCR funds, including the use of such funds by implementing partners; and

(2) such audits are made available through the Department of State for inspection by the Comptroller General of the United States.

#### (b) First program audit

The first program audit pursuant to subsection (a)(1) of this section shall begin not later than June 1, 1986.

(Pub. L. 87-510, §8, as added Pub. L. 99-93, title I, §113, Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 411; amended Pub. L. 101-246, title VII, §701, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 74; Pub. L. 104-66, title I, §1111(a), Dec. 21, 1995, 109 Stat. 723.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 87-510, June 28, 1962, 76 Stat. 121, as amended, known as the Migration and Refugee Assistance Act of 1962, which enacted this chapter, amended section 1104 of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality, repealed sections 1925(a), (c), (d), and 1951(c) of this title, enacted a provision set out as a note under section 2601 of this title, and amended a provision set out as a note under section 1182 of Title 8. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2601 of this title and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1995—Subsecs. (b), (c). Pub. L. 104-66 redesignated subsec. (c) as (b) and struck out heading and text of former subsec. (b). Text read as follows: “The Comptroller General of the United States shall inspect each such audit and submit a report of that inspection to the Congress.”

1990—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 101-246 amended subsec. (a) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (a) read as follows: “Funds may not be made available to the United Nations High Commissioner for Refugees under this chapter or any other Act unless by June 1, 1986, the High Commissioner provides for—

“(1) annual program audits by an independent consultant, as selected by the Executive Committee of the United Nations High Commissioner for Refugees, to determine the use of such funds, including audits of the use of such funds by private and voluntary organizations; and

“(2) such audits to be made available through the Executive Committee to the Department of State and for inspection by the Comptroller General of the United States.”

### CHAPTER 37—FOREIGN GIFTS AND DECORATIONS

#### Sec.

2621. Definitions.

2622 to 2624. Repealed.

2625. Gifts or decorations on deposit with State Department.

2626. Repealed.

#### § 2621. Definitions

In this chapter—

(1) The term “person” includes every person who occupies an office or a position in the Government of the United States, its territories and possessions, the Canal Zone government, and the government of the District of Columbia, or is a member of the Armed Forces of the United States, or a member of the family and household of any such person.

(2) The term “foreign government” includes every foreign government and every official, agent, or representative thereof.

(3) The term “gift” includes any present or thing, other than a decoration, tendered by or received from a foreign government.

(4) The term “decoration” includes any order, device, medal, badge, insignia, or emblem tendered by or received from a foreign government.

(Pub. L. 89-673, §2, Oct. 15, 1966, 80 Stat. 952.)

#### REPEAL

*Section was repealed by Pub. L. 90-83, §10(b), Sept. 11, 1967, 81 Stat. 224, except insofar as it applies to section 2625 of this title.*

#### SHORT TITLE

Section 1 of Pub. L. 89-673, which provided that Pub. L. 89-673, enacting this chapter, amending section 804 of this title, and repealing sections 114, 115, and 115a of former Title 5, Executive Departments and Government Officers and Employees, could be cited as the “Foreign Gifts and Decorations Act of 1966”, was repealed by Pub. L. 90-83, §10(b), Sept. 11, 1967, 81 Stat. 224. See section 7342 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

#### §§ 2622 to 2624. Repealed. Pub. L. 90-83, §10(b), Sept. 11, 1967, 81 Stat. 224

Section 2622, Pub. L. 89-673, §3, Oct. 15, 1966, 80 Stat. 952, prohibited request for or encouragement of a tender of a gift or decoration. See section 7342(b) of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

Section 2623, Pub. L. 89-673, §4, Oct. 15, 1966, 80 Stat. 952, permitted acceptance of a gift of minimal value. See section 7342(c) of Title 5.

Section 2624, Pub. L. 89-673, §5, Oct. 15, 1966, 80 Stat. 952, permitted acceptance of decorations tendered in recognition of active field service in time of combat operations. See section 7342(d) of Title 5.

#### § 2625. Gifts or decorations on deposit with State Department

Any gift or decoration on deposit with the Department of State on October 15, 1966, shall, when approved by the Secretary of State and the appropriate department, agency, office, or other entity, be released to the donee or his legal representative. Such donee may, if authorized, be entitled to wear any decoration so approved. A gift or decoration not approved for release, because of any special or unusual circumstances involved, shall be deemed a gift to the United States and shall be deposited by the donee in accordance with the rules and regulations issued pursuant to this chapter.

(Pub. L. 89-673, §6, Oct. 15, 1966, 80 Stat. 952.)

#### § 2626. Repealed. Pub. L. 90-83, §10(b), Sept. 11, 1967, 81 Stat. 224

Section, Pub. L. 89-673, §7, Oct. 15, 1966, 80 Stat. 952, authorized President to prescribe rules and regulations to carry out purposes of this chapter. See section 7342(e) of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

### CHAPTER 38—DEPARTMENT OF STATE

- Sec.  
2651. Establishment of Department.  
2651a. Organization of Department of State.  
(a) Secretary of State.

- Sec.  
(b) Under Secretaries.  
(c) Assistant Secretaries.  
(d) Deputy Assistant Secretaries.  
(e) Other senior officials.
- 2652, 2652a. Repealed.  
2652b. Assistant Secretary of State for South Asian Affairs.  
(a) Establishment of position.  
(b) Appointment.  
(c) Repealed.  
(d) Repealed and omitted.  
(e) Implementation.
- 2653 to 2655. Repealed.  
2655a. Bureau of Oceans and International Environmental and Scientific Affairs within Department of State; Assistant Secretary of State as head of Bureau.  
2656. Management of foreign affairs.  
2656a. Congressional declaration of findings of major significance of modern scientific and technological advances in foreign policy.  
2656b. Congressional declaration of policy regarding consequences of science and technology on conduct of foreign policy.  
2656c. Responsibilities of President.  
(a) Identification, evaluation and initiation of scientific and technological developments.  
(b) Repealed.  
(c) Disclosure of sensitive information.  
(d) Availability to United States Trade Representative of information and recommendations.  
2656d. Responsibilities of Secretary of State.  
(a) Coordination and oversight over science and technology agreements between United States and foreign countries, etc.  
(b) Long-term contracts, grants, to obtain studies, etc., with respect to application of science and technology to foreign policy.  
(c) Long-term and short-term contracts, grants, to train officers and employees in application of science and technology to problems of foreign policy.  
(d) Detached service for graduate studies.  
2656e. Terrorism-related travel advisories.  
2656f. Annual country reports on terrorism.  
(a) Requirement of annual country reports on terrorism.  
(b) Provisions to be included in report.  
(c) Classification of report.  
(d) Definitions.  
(e) Reporting period.  
2656g. Report on terrorist assets in United States.  
(a) Reports to Congress.  
(b) Definitions.  
2656h. International credit reports.  
(a) Report on loan criteria.  
(b) Reports on loans.  
2657. Custody of seals and property.  
2658. Repealed.  
2659. State statutes to be procured.  
2660. Copies of treaties furnished to Public Printer.  
2661. Procurement of information for corporations, firms and individuals; expense of cablegrams and telephone service involved; appropriation.  
2661a. Foreign contracts or arrangements; discrimination.  
2662, 2663. Transferred or Omitted.  
2664. Distribution of duties of officers, clerks, and employees.  
2664a. Protection of Civil Service employees.  
(a) Findings.  
(b) Equitable reduction of budget.  
(c) Establishment of Office of the Ombudsman for Civil Service Employees.

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>Sec.<br/>2665. Personal services other than those provided for.<br/>2665a. Foreign Service fellowships.<br/>2666, 2667. Repealed.<br/>2668. Requisitions for advances to pay lawful obligations.<br/>    (a) Authorization; accounting.<br/>    (b) Removal of outstanding charges.<br/>    (c) Financial liability of disbursing agent or official.<br/>2668a. Disposition of trust funds received from foreign governments for citizens of United States.<br/>2669. Printing and binding outside continental United States; settlement and payment of claims by foreign governments; employment of aliens; official functions and courtesies; purchase of uniforms; payment of tort claims; payment of assumed obligations in Germany; telecommunications services; security.<br/>2669a. Diplomatic Telecommunications Service.<br/>    (a) Diplomatic Telecommunications Service financial management.<br/>    (b) DTS Policy Board.<br/>    (c) DTS consolidation pilot program.<br/>    (d) DTS planning report.<br/>2670. Insurance on motor vehicles in foreign countries; tie lines and teletype equipment; ice and drinking water; excise taxes on negotiable instruments; remains of deceased persons; relief, protection, and burial of seamen; acknowledgment of services of foreign vessels and aircraft; rentals and leases.<br/>2671. Emergency expenditures.<br/>    (a) Delegation of authority pertaining to certification of expenditures.<br/>    (b) Activities subject to expenditures.<br/>    (c) Annual confidential audit and report.<br/>    (d) Repatriation loan program.<br/>2672. Participation in international activities; restriction; expenses.<br/>2672a. Alternate United States Commissioners for international fisheries commissions.<br/>2672b. Compensation of Alternate United States Commissioners; travel expenses and other allowances.<br/>2673. International Civil Aviation Organization; availability of funds for participation.<br/>2674. Availability of exchange allowances or proceeds derived from exchange or sale of motor vehicles.<br/>2675. Allocation or transfer to other agencies of funds appropriated to Department of State; authority for expenditure of funds.<br/>2676. Contracts in foreign countries.<br/>2677. Availability of funds for travel expenses and transportation of personal effects, household goods, or automobiles.<br/>2678. Reduction in earmarks if appropriations are less than authorizations.<br/>2679. Maximum rates of per diem in lieu of subsistence payable to foreign participants in exchange of persons program or in program of furnishing technical information and assistance.<br/>2679a. Procurement contracts.<br/>    (a) Funding for periods not in excess of five years; conditions.<br/>    (b) Cancellation of contracts.<br/>2679b. Prohibition against fraudulent use of "Made in America" labels.<br/>2679c. Prohibition on discriminatory contracts.<br/>    (a) Prohibition.<br/>    (b) Waiver by Secretary of State.<br/>    (c) Responses to contract solicitations.<br/>    (d) Review and termination.<br/>    (e) United States Information Agency.</p> | <p>Sec.<br/>2680. Appropriations for State Department; information to Congressional committees.<br/>2680-1. Deadline for responses to questions from Congressional committees.<br/>    (a) In general.<br/>    (b) Specified committees.<br/>2680-2. Facilitating access to Department of State building.<br/>    (a) Procedures to facilitate access.<br/>    (b) Parking.<br/>2680a. Compensation for disability or death.<br/>2681. International broadcasting facilities; transfer to Department of State; acquisition of property.<br/>2682. Liquidation and disposal of broadcasting facilities.<br/>2683. Assumption of obligations of operation of broadcasting facilities.<br/>2684. Capital fund for Department of State to centralize reproduction, editorial, data processing, audiovisual and other services; maximum amount; operation of fund.<br/>    (a) Establishment of fund.<br/>    (b) Charges to fund; credit to appropriations.<br/>2684a. Capital Investment Fund.<br/>    (a) Establishment.<br/>    (b) Funding.<br/>    (c) Availability.<br/>    (d) Expenditures from Fund.<br/>    (e) Reprogramming procedures.<br/>2685. Reimbursement for detailed State Department personnel.<br/>2686. Review of world-wide supply, demand, and price of basic raw and processed materials.<br/>2686a. Appointment of Special Coordinator for water policy negotiations and water resources policy.<br/>    (a) Designation.<br/>    (b) Other responsibilities.<br/>2687. Use of appropriated funds for unusual expenses of United States Representative to Organization of American States.<br/>2688. Ambassadors; criteria regarding selection and confirmation.<br/>2689. American Sections, International Joint Commission, United States and Canada; funds for representation expenses and official entertainment within the United States.<br/>2690. Foreign gifts; audit; reports to Congress.<br/>2691. Repealed.<br/>2692. Compensation for persons participating in State Department proceedings; availability of funds.<br/>2693. Repealed.<br/>2694. Limitation on purchase of gifts for foreign individuals; report to Speaker of the House and chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate.<br/>2695. Administrative services.<br/>    (a) Agreements.<br/>    (b) Payment.<br/>2695a. Foreign language services.<br/>    (a) Surcharge for certain foreign language services.<br/>    (b) Use of funds.<br/>2696. Nondiscretionary personnel costs, currency fluctuations, and other contingencies.<br/>    (a) Additional appropriations.<br/>    (b) Appropriations authorization based on currency fluctuations.<br/>    (c) Availability of appropriations until expended.<br/>    (d) Accounts subject to percentage limitation.<br/>    (e) Availability of funds for twelve-month contracts to be performed in two fiscal years.<br/>2697. Acceptance of gifts on behalf of United States.</p> |
|---|--|



|       |   |  |  |
|-------|---|--|--|
| Sec.  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Unconditional and conditional gifts.</li> <li>(b) Disposition.</li> <li>(c) Evidences of unconditional gift of intangible personal property.</li> <li>(d) Use of real property or tangible personal property received unconditionally.</li> <li>(e) Taxation.</li> <li>(f) Availability of statutory authorities to Directors of other agencies.</li> </ul>  | Sec.   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(b) Services subject to control.</li> <li>(c) Persons subject of controls.</li> <li>(d) Licenses.</li> <li>(e) Definitions.</li> <li>(f) Violations.</li> <li>(g) Congressional oversight.</li> <li>(h) Relationship to other laws.</li> </ul>            |
| 2698. | Procurement of legal services.  | 2713.  | Protection of historic and artistic furnishings of reception areas of the Department of State Building. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) In general.</li> <li>(b) Disposition of historic and artistic items.</li> <li>(c) "Reception areas" defined.</li> </ul>                       |
| 2699. | Employment opportunities for family members.  | 2714.  | Denial of passports to certain convicted drug traffickers. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Ineligibility for passport.</li> <li>(b) Drug law offenses.</li> <li>(c) Period of ineligibility.</li> <li>(d) Emergency and humanitarian exceptions.</li> <li>(e) Definitions.</li> </ul> |
| 2700. | Use of vehicles.  | 2715.  | Procedures regarding major disasters and incidents abroad affecting United States citizens.  |
| 2701. | Educational facilities.   | 2716.  | Debt collection. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Contract authority.</li> <li>(b) Disclosure of delinquent debt to credit reporting agencies.</li> </ul>  |
| 2702. | Malpractice protection. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Exclusiveness of designated remedies.</li> <li>(b) Defense of civil actions by United States; delivery of process; furnishing of copies of pleadings.</li> <li>(c) Removal of actions; remand or dismissal; suspension of limitations.</li> <li>(d) Compromise or settlement of claims.</li> <li>(e) Inapplicability of section 2680(h) of title 28.</li> <li>(f) Holding harmless or providing for liability insurance.</li> <li>(g) Medical care or related service within scope of employment.</li> </ul> | 2717.  | Defense trade controls registration fees. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Defense trade controls registration fees.</li> <li>(b) Budget Act compliance.</li> </ul>  |
| 2703. | Services and facilities for employees at posts abroad. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Non-Government-operated services; applicability of other provisions of law.</li> <li>(b) Emergency commissary and mess services.</li> <li>(c) Availability; duplication of facilities and services.</li> <li>(d) Charges.</li> <li>(e) Child care facilities.</li> </ul>  | 2718.  | Fees received for use of Blair House. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Use of fees.</li> <li>(b) Compliance with Budget Act.</li> </ul>  |
| 2704. | Subsistence expenses.   | 2719.  | Grants for training and education in international affairs.  |
| 2705. | Documentation of citizenship.   | 2720.  | Closing of consular and diplomatic posts abroad. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Prohibited uses of funds.</li> <li>(b) Post closing notification.</li> <li>(c) Reprogramming treatment.</li> <li>(d) Exceptions.</li> <li>(e) "Consular or diplomatic post" defined.</li> </ul>      |
| 2706. | Reprogramming of funds; notice requirements.  | 2721.  | Impermissible basis for denial of passports.   |
| 2707. | International communications and information policy; duties of Secretary of State.  | 2722.  | International meetings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Authority to pay expenses.</li> <li>(b) Retention of reimbursements.</li> </ul>   |
| 2708. | Reward; information; international terrorism. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Authorization of reward.</li> <li>(b) Rewards for information relating to international narcoterrorism and drug trafficking.</li> <li>(c) Reward limitation; Presidential approval.</li> <li>(d) Advice; consultation; Attorney General.</li> <li>(e) Certification; payment.</li> <li>(f) Officers or employees of government ineligible for reward.</li> <li>(g) Authorization of appropriations.</li> <li>(h) Report to Congress.</li> <li>(i) Definitions.</li> </ul>              | 2723.  | Denial of visas. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Report to Congress.</li> <li>(b) Limitation.</li> <li>(c) Appropriate committees.</li> </ul>   |
| 2709. | Special agents. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) General authority.</li> <li>(b) Agreement with Attorney General and firearms regulations.</li> <li>(c) Secret Service not affected.</li> </ul>   | 2724.  | Fees for commercial services. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Authority to charge fee.</li> <li>(b) Use of fees.</li> </ul>   |
| 2710. | Expenses relating to participation in arbitrations of certain disputes. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) International agreements.</li> <li>(b) Contracts abroad.</li> <li>(c) Procurement of services.</li> <li>(d) International Litigation Fund.</li> </ul>  | <b>§ 2651. Establishment of Department</b>   |  |
| 2711. | Counterterrorism Protection Fund. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Authority.</li> <li>(b) Authorization of appropriations.</li> <li>(c) Designation of Fund.</li> </ul>  | <p>There shall be at the seat of government an executive department to be known as the "Department of State", and a Secretary of State, who shall be the head thereof.</p> <p>(R.S. § 199.)</p>  |  |
| 2712. | Authority to control certain terrorism-related services. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Authority.</li> </ul>   | <p style="text-align: center;">CODIFICATION</p> <p>R.S. § 199 derived from acts July 27, 1789, ch. 4, § 1, 1 Stat. 28; Sept. 15, 1789, ch. 14, § 1, 1 Stat. 68.</p> <p>Section was formerly classified to section 151 of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, § 1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1987 AMENDMENT</p> <p>Pub. L. 100-204, title XIII, § 1301, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1432, provided that: "Except as otherwise provided in this Act [see Short Title of 1987 Amendment note</p> |  |

below], this Act shall take effect on the date of its enactment [Dec. 22, 1987].”

SHORT TITLE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 103-236, §1, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 382, provided that: “This Act [see Tables for classification] may be cited as the ‘Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1994 and 1995.’”

SHORT TITLE OF 1991 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 102-138, §1, Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 647, provided that: “This Act [enacting sections 269, 276c-4, 276f, 276m, 296a, 1475g, 1475h, 2075, 2652b, 2656g, 2656h, 2679b, 2680-1, 2686a, 2720, 2721, 2722, 2723, 2798, 4012a, 4351 to 4357, and 5601 to 5606 of this title and section 2410c of the Appendix to Title 50, War and National Defense, amending sections 277d-3, 290f, 294, 301, 1465ee, 1471, 1474, 1477c, 1928e, 2669, 2670, 2695, 2696, 2703, 2706, 2717, 2718, 2780, 2797b, 2797c, 2877, 2905, 3005, 3942, 3961, 3968, 4010, 4053, 4081, 4115, 4131, 4134, 4136, 4137, 4139, 4140, 4413, and 4852 of this title, sections 202 and 208 of Title 3, The President, sections 5315, 5523, 5551, 5922, 5923, and 5924 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, section 2051 of Title 19, Customs Duties, and section 2405 of the Appendix to Title 50, repealing section 4509 of this title and former sections 269 and 2075 of this title, enacting provisions set out as notes under this section, sections 287e, 290f, 1475g, 2452, 2778, 4001, 4115, 4351, 4354, 4356, and 5601 of this title, sections 202 and 208 of Title 3, sections 5315, 5551, and 5561 of Title 5, and section 1182 of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality, amending provisions set out as notes under sections 287e, 2680, and 4021 of this title and section 5561 of Title 5, and repealing provisions set out as notes under this section and sections 287e, 1461, 2656, and 4010 of this title] may be cited as the ‘Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1992 and 1993.’”

SHORT TITLE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 101-246, §1(a), Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 15, provided that: “This Act [enacting sections 1464a, 1464b, 1465aa to 1465ff, 1475f, 2414a, 2461, 2665a, 2678, 2715 to 2719, 2877a, 4027, 4141, 4141a to 4141c, 4863, and 4864 of this title, amending sections 277a, 277b, 277d-12, 290f, 300, 1461, 1465c, 1469, 1474, 1475e, 2456, 2460, 2606, 2656f, 2669, 2684, 2696, 2698, 2703, 2708, 2709, 2871, 2877, 3905, 3968, 4002, 4010, 4056, 4057, 4069a to 4069c, 4081, 4303, 4304, 4403, 4801, 4802, and 4852 of this title, sections 8345 and 9101 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, and section 1101 and 1182 of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality, repealing section 4192 of this title, enacting provisions set out as notes under this section, sections 287e, 1461, 1463, 1465aa, 1465c, 1469, 2151, 2456, 2460, 2656, 2715, 3941, 3968, 4001, 4140, 4171, 4301, and 4852 of this title, sections 5921 and 5928 of Title 5, and section 1102 of Title 8, amending provisions set out as notes under this section and sections 287, 2151, and 4851 of this title and section 1182 of Title 8, and repealing provisions set out as notes under sections 2414a and 2656 of this title] may be cited as the ‘Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1990 and 1991.’”

SHORT TITLE OF 1987 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 100-204, §1(a), Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1331, provided that: “This Act [enacting sections 288f-3, 1464, 2656f, 2664a, 2713, 4069a to 4069c, 4315, 4316, 4341 to 4343, and 5201 to 5203 of this title, amending sections 288h, 290j-1, 1469, 1471, 1475e, 1477c, 1627, 1928a, 1928b, 2151n, 2291, 2304, 2460, 2661, 2670, 2697, 2706, 2707, 2778, 2877, 3905, 3922a, 3927, 3941, 3942, 3946, 3949, 3961, 3965, 4001, 4010, 4023, 4137, 4173, 4302, 4303, 4305, 4403, 4412, 4413, 4831, 4834, 4851, 4861, and 4904 of this title, sections 5313, 5315, and 8332 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, section 1182 of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality, sections 2492 and 2605 of Title 19, Customs Duties, and section 1364 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure, enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 287, 287e, 1461, 1463, 1471, 2601, 2651, 2656, 2680, 2697, 2707, 3922a, 3941 to 3943, 3946, 3965, 4041, 4301, 4315, 4316, 4341,

4802, 4851, and 5201 of this title, section 112b of Title 1, General Provisions, section 5313 of Title 5, sections 1182, 1201, and 1255a of Title 8, section 2901 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, section 3181 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, section 2605 of Title 19, and section 1364 of Title 28, and amending provisions set out as notes under sections 287, 287b, 287e, 2651, and 4021 of this title] may be cited as the ‘Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1988 and 1989.’”

SHORT TITLE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 99-93, §1(a), Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 405, provided that: “This Act [enacting sections 1461-1a, 2592, 2606, 2709, 2710, 2883, 3922a, 3929a, 4309a, 4314, 4414, 4415, and 4701 to 4715 of this title, amending sections 290j-1, 1477c, 2357, 2589, 2601, 2605, 2652, 2669, 2685, 2704, 2871, 2875, 2877, 3930, 3945, 4084, 4301, 4302, 4304, 4305, 4403, and 4413 of this title, section 208 of Title 3, The President, sections 5314, 5315, and 5316 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, sections 2 and 11 of the Appendix to Title 5, section 1622 of Title 50, War and National Defense, and section 39 of Title 50, Appendix, repealing sections 2666 and 2667 of this title, enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 287e, 1477c, 1928, 2291, 2605, 2656, 2669, 2697, 2875, 2877, 3943, 3945, 4021, and 4314 of this title, section 1182 of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality, section 3181 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, section 701 of Title 47, Telegraphs, Telephones, and Radiotelegraphs, and section 1701 of Title 50, amending provisions set out as notes under sections 287, 287e, and 2651 of this title, and repealing provisions set out as a note under section 3901 of this title] may be cited as the ‘Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1986 and 1987.’”

SHORT TITLE OF 1976 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 94-350, §1, July 12, 1976, 90 Stat. 823, provided: “That this Act [enacting sections 817, 1065, 1076a, 1463, 1475a, 1928e, 2458a, 2661a, 2689, and 2690 of this title, amending sections 276e, 2761, 295, 889, 915, 1001, 1002, 1004, 1007, 1063, 1064, 1071, 1076, 1081, 1082, 1084, 1086, 1091, 1105, 1111, 1116, 1121, 1229, 1474, 1754, 2872, 2873, 2877, 2902, 2905, and 2906 of this title, repealing sections 1083, 1092, and 1094 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 801, 915, 1001, 1063, 1064, 1076, 1076a, 1086, 1091, 1121, 1229, and 2871 of this title] may be cited as the ‘Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Year 1977.’”

SHORT TITLE OF 1975 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 94-141, §1, Nov. 29, 1975, 89 Stat. 756, provided: “That this Act [enacting sections 276a-1, 1037 to 1037c, 2576, 2687, and 2688 of this title, amending sections 276, 276c, 295, 966, 991, 995, 1934, 2321d, 2551, 2562, 2585, 2589, 2590, 2601, 2666, 2679a, and 2791 of this title and section 5924 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 1037a and 2679a of this title, amending provision set out as a note under section 287e, and repealing provision set out as a note under section 966 of this title] may be cited as the ‘Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Year 1976.’”

SHORT TITLE OF 1974 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 93-475, §1, Oct. 26, 1974, 88 Stat. 1439, provided: “That this Act [enacting sections 966, 2679a, 2680a, and 2686 of this title, amending sections 901a, 1439, 1476, and 2680 of this title, and section 5924 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 901a, 966, and 2151 of this title and amending provisions set out as notes preceding section 1 of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense] may be cited as the ‘State Department/USIA Authorization Act, Fiscal Year 1975.’”

SHORT TITLE OF 1973 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 93-126, §1, Oct. 18, 1973, 87 Stat. 451, provided: “That this Act [enacting sections 287e-1, 901a, 2655a, and 2685 of this title and amending sections 276, 277d-28,

277d-29, 277d-31, 993, 1754, and 2823 of this title, section 194a of Title 2, The Congress, section 5924 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, and provisions set out as a note under section 214 of this title] may be cited as the ‘Department of State Appropriations Authorization Act of 1973’.”

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1972 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 92-352, § 1, July 13, 1972, 86 Stat. 489, provided: “That this Act [enacting sections 1474, 1475, 2291a, and 2821 to 2826 of this title and section 194a of Title 2, The Congress, amending sections 901, 1461, 1476, 2291, 2501a, 2502, 2589, 2652, 2653, and 2680 of this title, sections 5313, 5314, 5315, and 8331 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, and section 241 of former Title 31, Money and Finance, repealing section 2511 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 2511, 2571, and 2652 of this title, section 8331 of Title 5, and section 241 of former Title 31] may be cited as the ‘Foreign Relations Authorization Act of 1972’.”

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1956 AMENDMENT

Act Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, § 1 [part], as added by Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 111(2), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 654, provided: “That this Act [enacting sections 2662, 2669 to 2672, 2673 to 2680a, 2684, 2687 to 2692, 2695 to 2723, 4301 to 4316, 4341 to 4343, and 4351 to 4357 of this title] may be cited as the ‘State Department Basic Authorities Act of 1956’.”

Act Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, § 48, formerly § 33, as added Oct. 17, 1980, Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2201(a), 94 Stat. 2157, and renumbered § 34 and redesignated title I, Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title I, § 117, title II, § 202(a), 96 Stat. 279, 282; renumbered § 35 and § 36, Nov. 22, 1983, Pub. L. 98-164, title I, §§ 123, 124, 97 Stat. 1025; renumbered § 37, Oct. 19, 1984, Pub. L. 98-533, title I, § 102, 98 Stat. 2708; renumbered § 38 and § 39, Aug. 16, 1985, Pub. L. 99-93, title I, §§ 125(a), 128, 99 Stat. 415, 419; renumbered § 40 and § 41, Aug. 27, 1986, Pub. L. 99-399, title V, §§ 504(1), 506(1), 100 Stat. 871; renumbered § 42, Dec. 22, 1987, Pub. L. 100-204, title I, § 126(a)(1), 101 Stat. 1341; renumbered § 43, Nov. 18, 1988, Pub. L. 100-690, title IV, § 4603(1), 102 Stat. 4287; renumbered § 44, § 45, § 46, § 47, and § 48, Feb. 16, 1990, Pub. L. 101-246, title I, §§ 115(c)(1), 117(1), 118(1), 119(1), 150(1), 104 Stat. 23, 25, 26, 42, which provided that act Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, was to be cited as the “State Department Basic Authorities Act of 1956”, was repealed by Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 111(1), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 654.

#### EMERGENCY PREPAREDNESS FUNCTIONS

For assignment of certain emergency preparedness functions to Secretary of State, see Parts 1, 2, and 13 of Ex. Ord. No. 12656, Nov. 18, 1988, 53 F.R. 47491, set out as a note under section 5195 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare.

#### ORDER OF SUCCESSION

For order of succession in case of death, resignation, absence, or sickness of Secretary, see Ex. Ord. No. 10839, Sept. 30, 1959, 24 F.R. 7939, set out as a note under section 3347 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

#### COMPLIANCE WITH CONGRESSIONAL BUDGET ACT

Pub. L. 101-246, title XI, § 1101, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 90, provided that:

“(a) LIMITATION ON SPENDING AUTHORITY.—Any new spending authority (within the meaning of section 401 of the Congressional Budget Act of 1974 [2 U.S.C. 651]) which is provided under this Act [see Short Title of 1990 Amendment note above] shall be effective for any fiscal year only to the extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriation Acts.

“(b) LIMITATION ON CONTRACT AUTHORITY.—Any authority provided by this Act to enter into contracts shall be effective only—

“(1) to the extent that the budget authority for the obligation to make outlays, which is created by the

contract, has been provided in advance by an appropriation Act; or

“(2) to the extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriation Acts.”

#### CHALLENGES TO APPOINTMENT AND CONTINUANCE IN OFFICE OF SECRETARY OF STATE FIRST APPOINTED AFTER MAY 3, 1980; CONSTITUTIONAL PROVISIONS GOVERNING COMPENSATION AND EMOLUMENTS

Pub. L. 96-241, § 2, May 3, 1980, 94 Stat. 343, provided that:

“(a) Any person aggrieved by an action of the Secretary of State may bring a civil action in an appropriate United States district court to contest the constitutionality of the appointment and continuance in office of the Secretary of State on the ground that such appointment and continuance in office is in violation of article I, section 6, clause 2, of the Constitution. The United States district courts shall have exclusive jurisdiction, without regard to the sum or value of the matter in controversy, to determine the validity of such appointment and continuance in office.

“(b) Any action brought under this section shall be heard and determined by a panel of three judges in accordance with section 2284 of title 28, United States Code. Any review of the action of a court convened pursuant to such section shall be by petition of certiorari to the Supreme Court.

“(c) Any judge designated to hear any action brought under this section shall cause such action to be in every way expedited.

“(d) This section applies only with respect to the Secretary of State who is first appointed to that office after the enactment of this Act [May 3, 1980].”

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Compensation of Secretary, see section 5312 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

Immigration and Nationality Act, powers and duties of Secretary of State with respect to administration and enforcement, see section 1104 of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality.

### § 2651a. Organization of Department of State

#### (a) Secretary of State

(1) The Department of State shall be administered, in accordance with this Act and other provisions of law, under the supervision and direction of the Secretary of State (hereinafter referred to as the “Secretary”).

(2) The Secretary and the Deputy Secretary of State shall be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate.

(3)(A) Notwithstanding any other provision of law and except as provided in this section, the Secretary shall have and exercise any authority vested by law in any office or official of the Department of State. The Secretary shall administer, coordinate, and direct the Foreign Service of the United States and the personnel of the Department of State, except where authority is inherent in or vested in the President.

(B)(i) The Secretary shall not have the authority of the Inspector General or the Chief Financial Officer.

(ii) The Secretary shall not have any authority given expressly to diplomatic or consular officers.

(4) The Secretary is authorized to promulgate such rules and regulations as may be necessary to carry out the functions of the Secretary of State and the Department of State. Unless otherwise specified in law, the Secretary may delegate authority to perform any of the functions of the Secretary or the Department to offi-

cers and employees under the direction and supervision of the Secretary. The Secretary may delegate the authority to redelegate any such functions.

**(b) Under Secretaries**

There shall be in the Department of State not more than 5 Under Secretaries of State, who shall be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, and who shall be compensated at the rate provided for at level III of the Executive Schedule under section 5314 of title 5.

**(c) Assistant Secretaries**

**(1) In general**

There shall be in the Department of State not more than 20 Assistant Secretaries of State, each of whom shall be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, and who shall be compensated at the rate provided for at level IV of the Executive Schedule under section 5315 of title 5.

**(2) Assistant Secretary of State for Democracy, Human Rights, and Labor**

(A) There shall be in the Department of State an Assistant Secretary of State for Democracy, Human Rights, and Labor who shall be responsible to the Secretary of State for matters pertaining to human rights and humanitarian affairs (including matters relating to prisoners of war and members of the United States Armed Forces missing in action) in the conduct of foreign policy and such other related duties as the Secretary may from time to time designate. The Secretary of State shall carry out the Secretary's responsibility under section 2304 of this title through the Assistant Secretary.

(B) The Assistant Secretary of State for Democracy, Human Rights, and Labor shall maintain continuous observation and review all matters pertaining to human rights and humanitarian affairs (including matters relating to prisoners of war and members of the United States Armed Forces missing in action) in the conduct of foreign policy including the following:

(i) Gathering detailed information regarding humanitarian affairs and the observance of and respect for internationally recognized human rights in each country to which requirements of sections 2151n and 2304 of this title are relevant.

(ii) Preparing the statements and reports to Congress required under section 2304 of this title.

(iii) Making recommendations to the Secretary of State and the Administrator of the Agency for International Development regarding compliance with sections 2151n and 2304 of this title, and as part of the Assistant Secretary's overall policy responsibility for the creation of United States Government human rights policy, advising the Administrator of the Agency for International Development on the policy framework under which section 2151n(e) projects are developed and consulting with the Administrator on the selection and implementation of such projects.

(iv) Performing other responsibilities which serve to promote increased observance of internationally recognized human rights by all countries.

**(d) Deputy Assistant Secretaries**

There shall be in the Department of State not more than 66 Deputy Assistant Secretaries of State.

**(e) Other senior officials**

In addition to officials of the Department of State who are otherwise authorized to be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, and to be compensated at level IV of the Executive Schedule of<sup>1</sup> section 5315 of title 5 four other such appointments are authorized.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, §1 [part], 70 Stat. 890; renumbered title I and amended Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, §202(a), 96 Stat. 282; Apr. 30, 1994, Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §161(a), 108 Stat. 402; Oct. 25, 1994, Pub. L. 103-415, §1(f)(1), 108 Stat. 4299.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(1), is act Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, 70 Stat. 890, as amended, known as the State Department Basic Authorities Act of 1956, which enacted sections 2651a, 2669 to 2672, 2673 to 2679a, 2680, 2680a, 2684, 2687 to 2690, 2692, 2695, and 2696 to 2724 of this title and chapters 53 (§4301 et seq.), 53A (§4341 et seq.), and 53B (§4351 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1956 Amendment note set out under section 2651 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 2662 of this title.

Section was also formerly classified to section 170f of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, §1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-236 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section read as follows: "The Secretary of State is authorized to establish, maintain, and operate passport and despatch agencies."

Subsec. (a)(2), Pub. L. 103-415 inserted "and the Deputy Secretary of State" after "Secretary".

1982—Pub. L. 97-241 substituted "The Secretary" for "That the Secretary".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Section 161(b) of Pub. L. 103-236, as amended by Pub. L. 103-415, §1(f)(2), Oct. 25, 1994, 108 Stat. 4300, provided that: "The amendments made by this section and section 162 [amending this section, sections 2151n, 2304, 2314, 2349aa-2, 2384, 2652b, 2655a, 2669, 2670, 2707, 2755, 4302 to 4305, 4308, 4801, 4802, 4806, 4821 to 4823, and 4852 of this title, sections 5314 and 5315 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, sections 1101, 1104, 1105, and 1521 to 1523 of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality, repealing sections 811a, 2652, 2652a, 2653 to 2655, 2658, 4803, and 4804 of this title and section 1525 of Title 8, and amending provisions set out as a note under section 113 of Title 10, Armed Forces] shall apply with respect to officials, offices, and bureaus of the Department of State when executive orders, regulations, or departmental directives implementing such amendments become effective, or 90 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Apr. 30, 1994], whichever comes earlier."

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be "under".

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1982 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 97-241, effective Oct. 1, 1982, see section 204 of Pub. L. 97-241, set out as an Effective Date note under section 4301 of this title.

## TRANSITION; REAPPOINTMENT OF OFFICERS HOLDING OFFICE AS OF APRIL 30, 1994, NOT REQUIRED

Section 161(c) of Pub. L. 103-236 provided that: "Any officer of the Department of State holding office on the date of the enactment of this Act [Apr. 30, 1994] shall not be required to be reappointed to any other office, at the Department of State at the same level performing similar functions, as determined by the President, by reason of the enactment of the amendments made by this section and section 162 [see Effective Date of 1994 Amendment note above for classification]."

[Functions of President under section 161(c) of Pub. L. 103-236, set out above, delegated to Secretary of State by Memorandum of President of the United States, July 26, 1994, 59 F.R. 40205, set out as a note under section 2370a of this title.]

## REFERENCES TO OFFICIALS AND OFFICES OF DEPARTMENT OF STATE WHOSE AUTHORITY IS VESTED IN SECRETARY OF STATE DEEMED REFERENCES TO SECRETARY OF STATE OR DEPARTMENT OF STATE

Section 161(d) of Pub. L. 103-236 provided that: "Except as specifically provided in this Act [see Tables for classification], or the amendments made by this Act, a reference in any other provision of law to an official or office of the Department of State affected by the amendment made by subsection (a) [amending this section] (other than the Inspector General of the Department of State and the Chief Financial Officer of the Department of State) shall be deemed to be a reference to the Secretary of State or the Department of State, as may be appropriate."

## OFFICE OF COORDINATOR FOR COUNTERTERRORISM

Section 161(e) of Pub. L. 103-236 provided that: "Notwithstanding any other provision of this section [amending this section and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section], for not less than one year after the date of the enactment of this Act [Apr. 30, 1994] there shall be in the Department of State an Office of the Coordinator for Counterterrorism which shall be headed by a Coordinator for Counterterrorism. The office shall have the same responsibilities and functions as the Office of the Coordinator for Counterterrorism at the Department of State had as of January 20, 1993."

## DEPUTY ASSISTANT SECRETARY FOR BURDENSARING

Section 161(f) of Pub. L. 103-236, as amended by Pub. L. 103-415, §1(f)(3), Oct. 25, 1994, 108 Stat. 4300, provided that:

"(1) ESTABLISHMENT.—None of the funds authorized to be appropriated by this Act [see Tables for classification] shall be available for obligation or expenditure during fiscal year 1995 unless, not later than 90 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Apr. 30, 1994], the Secretary of State has established within the Department of State the position of Deputy Assistant Secretary for Burdensharing, the incumbent of which shall be an official of ambassadorial rank, appointed by the President by and with the advice and consent of the Senate.

"(2) RESPONSIBILITIES.—The Deputy Assistant Secretary for Burdensharing shall perform such duties and exercise such authorities as the Secretary of State shall prescribe, including the following:

"(A) The principal duty of negotiating increased in-kind and financial support (including increased payment of basing costs) by countries allied to the United States for Department of Defense military units and personnel assigned to permanent duty ashore outside the United States in support of the security of such countries.

"(B) In consultation with the Department of Defense, assist in negotiations with the host governments for the recoupment of funds associated with financial commitments from such countries for paying the United States the residual value of United States facilities in such countries that the United States relinquishes to such countries upon the termination of the use of such facilities by the United States."

**§§ 2652, 2652a. Repealed. Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 162(a), (b), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 405**

Section 2652, May 26, 1949, ch. 143, §1, 63 Stat. 111; Feb. 7, 1953, ch. 2, 67 Stat. 4; Aug. 5, 1955, ch. 576, §1, 69 Stat. 536; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. V, §502(j)(1), 72 Stat. 274; July 18, 1958, Pub. L. 85-524, §1, 72 Stat. 363; July 13, 1972, Pub. L. 92-352, title I, §103(a)(1), 86 Stat. 490; Aug. 17, 1977, Pub. L. 95-105, title I, §109(c), 91 Stat. 847; Oct. 7, 1978, Pub. L. 95-426, title I, §114(a)(1), 92 Stat. 968; Aug. 16, 1985, Pub. L. 99-93, title I, §§115(a), 116(a), 99 Stat. 411; Aug. 27, 1986, Pub. L. 99-399, title I, §104(b), 100 Stat. 856, established positions in Department of State of Deputy Secretary of State, Under Secretary of State for Political Affairs, Under Secretary of State for Economic and Agricultural Affairs, Under Secretary of State for Management, and Assistant Secretaries of State.

Section 2652a, Pub. L. 95-426, title I, §115(a), Oct. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 969, established position in Department of State of Assistant Secretary of State for International Narcotics Matters.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal applicable with respect to officials, offices, and bureaus of Department of State when executive orders, regulations, or departmental directives implementing the amendments by sections 161 and 162 of Pub. L. 103-236 become effective, or 90 days after Apr. 30, 1994, whichever comes earlier, see section 161(b) of Pub. L. 103-236, as amended, set out as an Effective Date of 1994 Amendment note under section 2651a of this title.

**§ 2652b. Assistant Secretary of State for South Asian Affairs****(a) Establishment of position**

There is established in the Department of State the position of Assistant Secretary of State for South Asian Affairs.

**(b) Appointment**

The Assistant Secretary shall be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate.

**(c) Repealed. Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 162(c)(1), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 405****(d) Repealed and omitted**

(1) Repealed. Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §162(c)(3), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 405.

(2) Omitted.

**(e) Implementation**

In order to carry out this section, the Secretary of State shall reprogram the position of Deputy Assistant Secretary for South Asian Affairs.

(Pub. L. 102-138, title I, §122, Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 658; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §162(c), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 405.)

## CODIFICATION

Section is comprised of section 122 of Pub. L. 102-138. Subsec. (d)(2) of section 122 of Pub. L. 102-138 enacted provisions set out as a note under section 5315 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

## AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103-236, §162(c)(2), struck out “, which is in addition to the positions provided under section 2652 of this title” after “Asian Affairs”.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 103-236, §162(c)(1), struck out subsec. (c) which read as follows: “The Assistant Secretary shall have responsibility within the Department of State with respect to India, Pakistan, Bangladesh, Sri Lanka, Nepal, Bhutan, Afghanistan, and the Maldives.”

Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 103-236, §162(c)(3), struck out par. (1) which amended section 5315 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103-236 applicable with respect to officials, offices, and bureaus of Department of State when executive orders, regulations, or departmental directives implementing the amendments by sections 161 and 162 of Pub. L. 103-236 become effective, or 90 days after Apr. 30, 1994, whichever comes earlier, see section 161(b) of Pub. L. 103-236, as amended, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

## AUTHORITY OF SECRETARY OF STATE

Except as otherwise provided, Secretary of State to have and exercise any authority vested by law in any official or office of Department of State and references to such officials or offices deemed to refer to Secretary of State or Department of State, as appropriate, see section 2651a of this title and section 161(d) of Pub. L. 103-236, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

**§§ 2653 to 2655. Repealed. Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 162(a), (p), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 405, 410**

Section 2653, acts May 26, 1949, ch. 143, § 2, 63 Stat. 111; Aug. 5, 1955, ch. 576, § 2, 69 Stat. 536; June 30, 1958, Pub. L. 85-477, ch. V, §502(j)(2), 72 Stat. 274; July 30, 1959, Pub. L. 86-117, 73 Stat. 265; Aug. 14, 1964, Pub. L. 88-426, title III, §305(14), 78 Stat. 424; July 13, 1972, Pub. L. 92-352, title I, §103(a)(2), 86 Stat. 490; Nov. 22, 1983, Pub. L. 98-164, title I, §125(a), 97 Stat. 1026, related to appointment and rank of Secretary of State and other officers of Department of State.

Section 2654, act May 24, 1924, ch. 182, § 30, as added Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, § 7, 46 Stat. 1214; amended Oct. 15, 1949, ch. 695, § 6(d), 63 Stat. 881, related to office and appointment of legal adviser in Department of State.

Section 2655, act May 18, 1937, ch. 220, 50 Stat. 169, related to position and appointment of Counselor of Department of State.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal applicable with respect to officials, offices, and bureaus of Department of State when executive orders, regulations, or departmental directives implementing the amendments by sections 161 and 162 of Pub. L. 103-236 become effective, or 90 days after Apr. 30, 1994, whichever comes earlier, see section 161(b) of Pub. L. 103-236, as amended, set out as an Effective Date of 1994 Amendment note under section 2651a of this title.

**§ 2655a. Bureau of Oceans and International Environmental and Scientific Affairs within Department of State; Assistant Secretary of State as head of Bureau**

There is established within the Department of State a Bureau of Oceans and International Environmental and Scientific Affairs. There shall be an Assistant Secretary of State for Oceans and International Environmental and Scientific Affairs, appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, who shall be the head of the Bureau and who shall have responsibility for matters relating to oceans, envi-

ronmental, scientific, fisheries, wildlife, and conservation affairs and for such other related duties as the Secretary may from time to time designate.

(Pub. L. 93-126, §9(a), formerly §9, Oct. 18, 1973, 87 Stat. 453, renumbered Pub. L. 93-312, §9, June 8, 1974, 88 Stat. 238; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §162(q)(1), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 410; Pub. L. 103-415, §1(f)(4)(B), Oct. 25, 1994, 108 Stat. 4300.)

## AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-236, as amended by Pub. L. 103-415, substituted “There shall” for “In addition to the positions provided under section 2652 of this title, there shall” and inserted before period at end “and for such other related duties as the Secretary may from time to time designate”.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103-236 applicable with respect to officials, offices, and bureaus of Department of State when executive orders, regulations, or departmental directives implementing the amendments by sections 161 and 162 of Pub. L. 103-236 become effective, or 90 days after Apr. 30, 1994, whichever comes earlier, see section 161(b) of Pub. L. 103-236, as amended, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

## AUTHORITY OF SECRETARY OF STATE

Except as otherwise provided, Secretary of State to have and exercise any authority vested by law in any official or office of Department of State and references to such officials or offices deemed to refer to Secretary of State or Department of State, as appropriate, see section 2651a of this title and section 161(d) of Pub. L. 103-236, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

**§ 2656. Management of foreign affairs**

The Secretary of State shall perform such duties as shall from time to time be enjoined on or intrusted to him by the President relative to correspondences, commissions, or instructions to or with public ministers or consuls from the United States, or to negotiations with public ministers from foreign states or princes, or to memorials or other applications from foreign public ministers or other foreigners, or to such other matters respecting foreign affairs as the President of the United States shall assign to the Department, and he shall conduct the business of the Department in such manner as the President shall direct.

(R.S. § 202.)

## CODIFICATION

R.S. §202 derived from acts July 27, 1789, ch. 4, §1, 1 Stat. 28; Sept. 15, 1789, ch. 14, §1, 1 Stat. 68.

Section was formerly classified to section 156 of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, §1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President respecting certain facilities constructed and maintained on United States borders delegated to Secretary of State, see Ex. Ord. No. 11423, Aug. 16, 1968, 33 F.R. 11741, set out as a note under section 301 of Title 3, The President.

AUTHORITY OF DIRECTOR OF UNITED STATES  
INFORMATION AGENCY

Exercise of authority available under this section by Director of United States Information Agency, see Ex.

Ord. No. 10477, Aug. 1, 1953, 18 F.R. 4540, set out as a note under section 1472 of this title.

PRESIDENTIAL DIRECTIVE

National Intelligence Authority and Central Intelligence Group, established by Presidential Directive, Feb. 1, 1946, 11 F.R. 1337, to coordinate Federal foreign intelligence activities, ceased to exist upon creation of Central Intelligence Agency; personnel, property and records of the group were transferred to the Agency; and unexpended funds of the group were made available to the Agency, by act July 26, 1947, ch. 343, title I, § 102, 61 Stat. 497, set out as section 403 of Title 50, War and National Defense.

REPORTS TO WAR CRIMES TRIBUNAL FOR FORMER YUGOSLAVIA

Pub. L. 103-306, title V, § 575, Aug. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 1653, provided in part: "That 60 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Aug. 23, 1994], and every 180 days thereafter, the Secretary of State shall submit a report to the Committees on Appropriations describing the steps the United States Government is taking to collect information regarding allegations of genocide or other violations of international law in the former Yugoslavia and to furnish that information to the United Nations War Crimes Tribunal for the former Yugoslavia."

REPORTING REQUIREMENTS ON OCCUPIED TIBET

Pub. L. 103-236, title V, § 536, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 481, provided that:

"(a) REPORT ON UNITED STATES-TIBET RELATIONS.—Because Congress has determined that Tibet is an occupied sovereign country under international law and that its true representatives are the Dalai Lama and the Tibetan Government in exile—

"(1) it is the sense of the Congress that the United States should seek to establish a dialogue with those recognized by Congress as the true representatives of the Tibetan people, the Dalai Lama, his representatives and the Tibetan Government in exile, concerning the situation in Tibet and the future of the Tibetan people and to expand and strengthen United States-Tibet cultural and educational relations, including promoting bilateral exchanges arranged directly with the Tibetan Government in exile; and

"(2) not later than 6 months after the date of enactment of this Act [Apr. 30, 1994], and every 12 months thereafter, the Secretary of State shall transmit to the Chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations and the Speaker of the House of Representatives a report on the state of relations between the United States and those recognized by Congress as the true representatives of the Tibetan people, the Dalai Lama, his representatives and the Tibetan Government in exile, and on conditions in Tibet.

"(b) SEPARATE TIBET REPORTS.—

"(1) It is the sense of the Congress that whenever a report is transmitted to the Congress on a country-by-country basis there should be included in such report, where applicable, a separate report on Tibet listed alphabetically with its own state heading.

"(2) The reports referred to in paragraph (1) include, but are not limited to, reports transmitted under sections 116(d) and 502B(b) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151n(d), 2304(b)] (relating to human rights)."

CAMBODIAN GENOCIDE

Pub. L. 103-236, title V, part D, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 486, provided that:

"SEC. 571. SHORT TITLE.

"This part may be cited as the 'Cambodian Genocide Justice Act'.

"SEC. 572. POLICY.

"(a) IN GENERAL.—Consistent with international law, it is the policy of the United States to support efforts

to bring to justice members of the Khmer Rouge for their crimes against humanity committed in Cambodia between April 17, 1975, and January 7, 1979.

"(b) SPECIFIC ACTIONS URGED.—To that end, the Congress urges the President—

"(1) to collect, or assist appropriate organizations and individuals to collect relevant data on crimes of genocide committed in Cambodia;

"(2) in circumstances which the President deems appropriate, to encourage the establishment of a national or international criminal tribunal for the prosecution of those accused of genocide in Cambodia; and

"(3) as necessary, to provide such national or international tribunal with information collected pursuant to paragraph (1).

"SEC. 573. ESTABLISHMENT OF STATE DEPARTMENT OFFICE.

"(a) ESTABLISHMENT.—(1) None of the funds authorized to be appropriated by this Act for 'Diplomatic and Consular Programs' shall be available for obligation or expenditure during fiscal years 1994 and 1995 unless, not later than 90 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Apr. 30, 1994], the Secretary of State has established within the Department of State under the Assistant Secretary for East Asia and Pacific Affairs (or any successor Assistant Secretary) the Office of Cambodian Genocide Investigation (hereafter in this part referred to as the 'Office').

"(2) The Office may carry out its activities inside or outside of Cambodia, except that not less than 75 percent of the funds made available for the Office and its activities shall be used to carry out activities within Cambodia.

"(b) PURPOSE.—The purpose of the Office shall be to support, through organizations and individuals with whom the Secretary of State may contract to carry out the operations of the Office, as appropriate, efforts to bring to justice members of the Khmer Rouge for their crimes against humanity committed in Cambodia between April 17, 1975, and January 7, 1979, including—

"(1) to investigate crimes against humanity committed by national Khmer Rouge leaders during that period;

"(2) to provide the people of Cambodia with access to documents, records, and other evidence held by the Office as a result of such investigation;

"(3) to submit the relevant data to a national or international penal tribunal that may be convened to formally hear and judge the genocidal acts committed by the Khmer Rouge; and

"(4) to develop the United States proposal for the establishment of an international criminal tribunal for the prosecution of those accused of genocide in Cambodia.

"(c) CONTRACTING AUTHORITY.—The Secretary of State shall, subject to the availability of appropriations, contract with appropriate individuals and organizations to carry out the purpose of the Office.

"(d) NOTIFICATION TO CONGRESS.—The Committee on Foreign Relations and the Committee on Appropriations of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs [now Committee on International Relations] and the Committee on Appropriations of the House of Representatives shall be notified of any exercise of the authority of section 34 of the State Department Basic Authorities Act of 1956 [22 U.S.C. 2706] with respect to the Office or any of its programs, projects, or activities at least 15 days in advance in accordance with procedures applicable to notifications under that section.

"SEC. 574. REPORTING REQUIREMENT.

"(a) IN GENERAL.—Beginning 6 months after the date of enactment of this Act [Apr. 30, 1994], and every 6 months thereafter, the President shall submit a report to the appropriate congressional committees—

"(1) that describes the activities of the Office, and sets forth new facts learned about past Khmer Rouge practices, during the preceding 6-month period; and

"(2) that describes the steps the President has taken during the preceding 6-month period to pro-

mote human rights, to support efforts to bring to justice the national political and military leadership of the Khmer Rouge, and to prevent the recurrence of human rights abuses in Cambodia through actions which are not related to United Nations activities in Cambodia.

“(b) DEFINITION.—For purposes of this section, the term ‘appropriate congressional committees’ means the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs [now Committee on International Relations] of the House of Representatives.”

[Functions of President under section 574 of Pub. L. 103-236, set out above, delegated to Secretary of State by Memorandum of President of the United States, July 26, 1994, 59 F.R. 40205, set out as a note under section 2370a of this title.]

#### BROADENING CULTURAL, GEOGRAPHIC, AND ETHNIC REPRESENTATION OF FOREIGN SERVICE AND DEPARTMENT OF STATE; PLAN

Pub. L. 101-246, title I, §153(a), (b), Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 43, as amended by Pub. L. 101-302, title III, §320(b)(2), May 25, 1990, 104 Stat. 247, provided that:

“(a) FINDINGS.—The Congress finds that a primary role of the Department of State is to represent the interests of the American people in foreign affairs and, as such, should strive to represent and include, among its policy and professional employees, the great diversity of the American people.

“(b) RECRUITMENT.—(1) Not later than 120 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Feb. 16, 1990], the Secretary of State shall provide the Congress with a plan to assure that equal efforts are undertaken in each of the regions of the United States to recruit policy and professional Government Service employees and Foreign Service officers for the Department of State and each of its affiliated agencies.

“(2) Not later than January 1, 1991, the Secretary of State shall implement the plan provided for in paragraph (1).”

#### PROHIBITION ON USE OF FUNDS FOR POLITICAL PURPOSES

Pub. L. 100-204, title I, §109, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1339, provided that: “No funds authorized to be appropriated by this Act or by any other Act authorizing funds for any entity engaged in any activity concerning the foreign affairs of the United States shall be used—

“(1) for publicity or propaganda purposes designed to support or defeat legislation pending before Congress;

“(2) to influence in any way the outcome of a political election in the United States; or

“(3) for any publicity or propaganda purposes not authorized by Congress.”

#### CONSULAR AND DIPLOMATIC POSTS ABROAD

Pub. L. 100-204, title I, §122, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1339, prohibited use of appropriated funds for closing United States consular or diplomatic posts abroad, or for paying expenses related to Bureau of Administration of Department of State if a post was closed after Jan. 1, 1987, and not reopened, provided funding for certain consulates, provided exceptions for prohibition on use of appropriated funds, permitted Secretary of State, in case of a sequestration order, to submit a report proposing a list of consular posts to be downgraded or closed in order to comply with sequestration order, and provided that the prohibitions were to be effective 180 days after Dec. 22, 1987, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 102-138, title I, §112(b), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 655. See section 2720 of this title.

#### CLOSING OF DIPLOMATIC AND CONSULAR POSTS IN ANTIGUA AND BARBUDA

Pub. L. 100-204, title I, §123, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1339, directed that none of the funds made available for the Department of State for any fiscal year be used for

expenses of maintaining a United States diplomatic or consular post in Antigua and Barbuda and provided that such prohibition take effect 60 days after Dec. 22, 1987, unless the President made a determination that such closing would not be in the national security interest of the United States and informed both the Chairman of the Senate Foreign Relations Committee and the House Foreign Affairs Committee of such determination, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 101-246, title I, §121, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 27.

#### CLOSURE OF MISSION IN ANTIGUA AND BARBUDA NOT IN UNITED STATES INTERESTS

Determination of the President of the United States, No. 88-9, Feb. 9, 1988, 53 F.R. 5749, provided:

Memorandum for the Secretary of State

In accordance with Section 123 of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1988 and 1989 (Public Law 100-204) [set out above], I have determined that closure of the U.S. Diplomatic and Consular Mission in Antigua and Barbuda is not in the national security interests of the United States.

You are hereby authorized and directed to report this determination to the Congress, as required by law. This determination shall be published in the Federal Register.

RONALD REAGAN.

#### ASSIGNMENT OF DRUG ENFORCEMENT ADMINISTRATION AGENTS ABROAD

Pub. L. 100-204, title VIII, §801, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1397, provided that: “If the Secretary of State, in exercising his authority to establish overseas staffing levels for Federal agencies with activities abroad, authorizes the assignment of any Drug Enforcement Administration agent to a particular United States mission abroad, the Secretary shall authorize the assignment of at least two such agents to that mission.”

#### WAIVER OF PROVISIONS OF PUBLIC LAW 100-204 DURING FISCAL YEARS 1988 AND 1989

Pub. L. 100-202, §101(a) [title III, §305], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329, 1329-23, provided that: “The following sections of H.R. 1777 (the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1988 and 1989 [Pub. L. 100-204]) are waived during Fiscal Years 1988 and 1989 in the event that H.R. 1777 is enacted into law: Sec. 122 [set out above], Sec. 151, and Sec. 204 [22 U.S.C. 1461 note].”

#### REPORT TO CONGRESS ON SOVIET BREACH OF DUTIES OBLIGATIONS TO UNITED STATES DIPLOMATS OR MISSIONS

Pub. L. 99-500, §101(b) [title III, §300], Oct. 18, 1986, 100 Stat. 1783-39, 1783-58, and Pub. L. 99-591, §101(b) [title III, §300], Oct. 30, 1986, 100 Stat. 3341-39, 3341-58, provided: “That beginning on February 1, 1987, the Secretary of State shall report every six months to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the President of the Senate on any failures during the past six months by Soviet agencies to perform obligations to United States diplomats or United States missions to the Soviet Union and the actions undertaken by the Department of State to redress these failures.”

#### RESPONSIBILITY OF UNITED STATES MISSIONS TO PROMOTE FREEDOM OF PRESS ABROAD

Pub. L. 99-93, title I, §138, Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 422, provided that:

“(a) RESPONSIBILITY.—The United States chief of mission to a foreign country in which there is not respect for freedom of the press shall actively promote respect for freedom of the press in that country.

“(b) DEFINITION.—As used in this section, the term ‘respect for freedom of the press’ means that a government—

“(1) allows foreign news correspondents into the country and does not subject them to harassment or restrictions;



“(2) allows nongovernment-owned press to operate in the country; and

“(3) does not subject the press in the country to systematic censorship.”

EMERGENCY TELEPHONE SERVICE AT UNITED STATES  
CONSULAR OFFICES

Pub. L. 99-93, title I, §139, Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 422, provided that: “It is the sense of the Congress that the Secretary of State should ensure that all United States consular offices are equipped with 24-hour emergency telephone service through which United States citizens can contact a member of the staff of any such office. The Secretary should publicize the telephone number of each such service for the information of United States citizens. Not more than 90 days after the date of the enactment of this Act [Aug. 16, 1985], the Secretary shall submit a report to the Congress on steps taken in accordance with this section.”

TORTURE BY FOREIGN GOVERNMENTS; UNITED STATES  
POLICY IN OPPOSITION; IMPLEMENTATION

Pub. L. 98-447, Oct. 4, 1984, 98 Stat. 1721, provided: “That the Congress reaffirms that it is the continuing policy of the United States Government to oppose the practice of torture by foreign governments through public and private diplomacy and, when necessary and appropriate, through the enactment and vigorous implementation of laws intended to reinforce United States policies with respect to torture. The United States Government opposes acts of torture wherever they occur, without regard to ideological or regional considerations, and will make every effort to work cooperatively with other governments and with nongovernmental organizations to combat the practice of torture worldwide.

“SEC. 2. (a) The President is requested—

“(1) to instruct the Permanent Representative of the United States to the United Nations to continue to raise the issue of torture practiced by governments; and

“(2) to continue to involve the United States Government in the formulation of international standards and effective implementing mechanisms, particularly the draft Convention Against Torture and Other Cruel, Inhuman or Degrading Treatment or Punishment.

“(b) In order to implement the policy expressed in the first section of this resolution, the Secretary of State is requested to issue formal instructions to each United States chief of mission regarding United States policy with respect to torture, including—

“(1) instructions—

“(A) to examine allegations of the practice of torture, particularly allegations concerning the existence of secret detention, extended incommunicado detention, and restrictions on access by family members, lawyers, and independent medical personnel to detainees; and

“(B) to forward such information as may be gathered, including information regarding any efforts made by the host government to reduce and eliminate the practice of torture, to the Assistant Secretary of State for Human Rights and Humanitarian Affairs for analysis in preparing the Department’s annual country reports on human rights practices;

“(2) in the case of a chief of mission assigned to a country where torture is regularly practiced, instructions to report on a periodic basis as circumstances require to the Assistant Secretary of State for Human Rights and Humanitarian Affairs regarding efforts made by the respective United States diplomatic mission to implement United States policy with respect to combating torture;

“(3) instructions to meet with indigenous human rights monitoring groups knowledgeable about the practice of torture for the purpose of gathering information about such practice; and

“(4) instructions to express concern in individual cases of torture brought to the attention of a United States diplomatic mission including, whenever feasible, sending United States observers to trials when there is reason to believe that torture has been used against the accused.

“(c) The Secretary of Commerce should continue to enforce vigorously the current restrictions on the export of crime control equipment pursuant to the Export Administration Act of 1979 [50 App. U.S.C. 2401 et seq.].

“(d) The heads of the appropriate departments of the United States Government that furnish military and law enforcement training to foreign personnel, particularly personnel from countries where the practice of torture has been a documented concern, shall include in such training, when relevant, instruction regarding international human rights standards and the policy of the United States with respect to torture.”

[Except as otherwise provided, Secretary of State to have and exercise any authority vested by law in any official or office of Department of State and references to such officials or offices deemed to refer to Secretary of State or Department of State, as appropriate, see section 2651a of this title and section 161(d) of Pub. L. 103-236, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.]

UNITED STATES DIPLOMATIC RELATIONS WITH THE  
VATICAN

Pub. L. 98-164, title I, §134, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1029, provided that: “In order to provide for the establishment of United States diplomatic relations with the Vatican, the Act entitled ‘An Act making Appropriations for the Consular and Diplomatic Expenses of the Government for the Year ending thirtieth June, eighteen hundred and sixty-eight, and for other purposes’, approved February 28, 1867, is amended by repealing the following sentence (14 Stat. 413): ‘And no money hereby or otherwise appropriated shall be paid for the support of an American legation at Rome, from and after the thirtieth day of June, eighteen hundred and sixty-seven.’”

REOPENING CERTAIN UNITED STATES CONSULATES

Pub. L. 97-241, title I, §103(b), (c), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 273, as amended by Pub. L. 98-164, title I, §137, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1030; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §139(8), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 398, provided that:

“(b) None of the funds made available under this [Pub. L. 97-241] or any other Act for ‘Administration of Foreign Affairs’ may be used for the establishment or operation of any United States consulate that did not exist on the date of enactment of this Act [Aug. 24, 1982] (other than the consulates specified in subsection (c)) until all the United States consulates specified in subsection (c) have been reopened as required by section 108 of the Department of State Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1980 and 1981 [section 108 of Pub. L. 96-60, set out as a note below], to the extent such reopening is authorized by the foreign government involved.

“(c) The consulates referred to in subsections (a) [section 103(a) of Pub. L. 97-241, which was not classified to the Code] and (b) of this section are the consulates in the following locations: Turin, Italy; Salzburg, Austria; Goteborg, Sweden; Bremen, Germany; Nice, France; Mandalay, Burma; and Brisbane, Australia.”

UNITED STATES CONSULATES

Pub. L. 96-60, title I, §108, Aug. 15, 1979, 93 Stat. 397, provided that:

“(a) The following United States consulates shall not be closed or, if closed on the date of enactment of this Act [Aug. 15, 1979], shall be reopened as soon as possible after such date: Salzburg, Austria; Bremen, Germany; Nice, France; Turin, Italy; Goteborg, Sweden; Adana, Turkey; Tangier, Morocco; Mandalay, Burma; Brisbane, Australia; and Surabaya, Indonesia.

“(b) Personnel assigned to the consulates described in subsection (a) shall not be counted toward any person-

nel ceiling for the Department of State established by the Director of the Office of Management and Budget.”

ACTION WITH REGARD TO INTERNATIONAL JOURNALISTIC FREEDOM

Pub. L. 95-426, title VI, § 603, Oct. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 985, as amended by Pub. L. 97-241, title V, § 505(a)(2), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 299, provided that:

“(a) The Congress finds that—

“(1) news dissemination and the free flow of information across national boundaries are vital to international understanding and to healthy relations among countries; and

“(2) recurring and reliable reports strongly indicate that in many countries foreign news correspondents are subject to governmental harassment and restriction, including the denial of access to legitimate news sources, the imposition of censorship, and detention, incarceration, and expulsion.

“(b) It is therefore the sense of the Congress that the President should—

“(1) advise the appropriate officials of any foreign government which subjects foreign news correspondents to harassment and restrictions that the United States considers such mistreatment a significant and potentially damaging factor in overall relations of the United States with such country; and

“(2) raise in appropriate international forums the issue of the treatment of foreign news correspondents, with a view toward gaining multilateral support for the legitimate rights of such correspondents.

“(c) [Repealed. Pub. L. 97-241, title V, § 505(a)(2), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 299.]”

DIPLOMATIC RELATIONS WITH FOREIGN GOVERNMENT NOT INDICATION OF APPROVAL OF SUCH GOVERNMENT

Pub. L. 95-426, title VI, § 607, Oct. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 988, provided that: “The Congress finds that the conduct of diplomatic relations with a foreign government has as its principal purpose the discussion and negotiation with that government of outstanding issues and, like the recognition of a foreign government, does not in itself imply approval of that government or of the political-economic system it represents.”

**§ 2656a. Congressional declaration of findings of major significance of modern scientific and technological advances in foreign policy**

The Congress finds that—

(1) the consequences of modern scientific and technological advances are of such major significance in United States foreign policy that understanding and appropriate knowledge of modern science and technology by officers and employees of the United States Government are essential in the conduct of modern diplomacy;

(2) many problems and opportunities for development in modern diplomacy lie in scientific and technological fields;

(3) in the formulation, implementation, and evaluation of the technological aspects of United States foreign policy, the United States Government should seek out and consult with both public and private industrial, academic, and research institutions concerned with modern technology; and

(4) the effective use of science and technology in international relations for the mutual benefit of all countries requires the development and use of the skills and methods of long-range planning.

(Pub. L. 95-426, title V, § 501, Oct. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 982.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3503 of this title.

**§ 2656b. Congressional declaration of policy regarding consequences of science and technology on conduct of foreign policy**

In order to maximize the benefits and to minimize the adverse consequences of science and technology in the conduct of foreign policy, the Congress declares the following to be the policy of the United States:

(1) Technological opportunities, impacts, changes, and threats should be anticipated and assessed, and appropriate measures should be implemented to influence such technological developments in ways beneficial to the United States and other countries.

(2) The mutually beneficial applications of technology in bilateral and multilateral agreements and activities involving the United States and foreign countries or international organizations should be recognized and supported as an important element of United States foreign policy.

(3) The United States Government should implement appropriate measures to insure that individuals are trained in the use of science and technology as an instrument in international relations and that officers and employees of the United States Government engaged in formal and informal exchanges of scientific and technical information, personnel, and hardware are knowledgeable in international affairs.

(4) In recognition of the environmental and technological factors that change relations among countries and in recognition of the growing interdependence between the domestic and foreign policies and programs of the United States, United States foreign policy should be continually reviewed by the executive and legislative branches of the Government to insure appropriate and timely application of science and technology to the conduct of United States foreign policy.

(5) Federally supported international science and technology agreements should be negotiated to ensure that—

(A) intellectual property rights are properly protected; and

(B) access to research and development opportunities and facilities, and the flow of scientific and technological information, are, to the maximum extent practicable, equitable and reciprocal.

(Pub. L. 95-426, title V, § 502, Oct. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 982; Pub. L. 100-418, title V, § 5171(a), Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1452.)

AMENDMENTS

1988—Par. (5). Pub. L. 100-418 added par. (5).

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2656d, 3503 of this title.

**§ 2656c. Responsibilities of President**

**(a) Identification, evaluation and initiation of scientific and technological developments**

The President, in consultation with the Director of the Office of Science and Technology Policy and other officials whom the President considers appropriate, shall—

(1) notwithstanding any other provision of law, insure that the Secretary of State is informed and consulted before any agency of the United States Government takes any major action, primarily involving science or technology, with respect to any foreign government or international organization;

(2) identify and evaluate elements of major domestic science and technology programs and activities of the United States Government with significant international implications;

(3) identify and evaluate international scientific or technological developments with significant implications for domestic programs and activities of the United States Government; and

(4) assess and initiate appropriate international scientific and technological activities which are based upon domestic scientific and technological activities of the United States Government and which are beneficial to the United States and foreign countries.

**(b) Repealed. Pub. L. 104-66, title I, § 1111(b), Dec. 21, 1995, 109 Stat. 723**

**(c) Disclosure of sensitive information**

Except as otherwise provided by law, nothing in this section shall be construed as requiring the public disclosure of sensitive information relating to intelligence sources or methods or to persons engaged in monitoring scientific or technological developments for intelligence purposes.

**(d) Availability to United States Trade Representative of information and recommendations**

(1) The information and recommendations developed under subsection (b)(3) of this section shall be made available to the United States Trade Representative for use in his consultations with Federal agencies pursuant to Executive orders pertaining to the transfer of science and technology.

(2) In providing such information and recommendations, the President shall utilize information developed by any Federal departments, agencies, or interagency committees as he may consider necessary.

(Pub. L. 95-426, title V, § 503, Oct. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 983; Pub. L. 100-418, title V, § 5171(b), (c), Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1453; Pub. L. 104-66, title I, § 1111(b), Dec. 21, 1995, 109 Stat. 723.)

AMENDMENTS

1995—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 104-66 struck out subsec. (b) which related to reports to Congress.

1988—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 100-418, § 5171(b)(1), (2), substituted “the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the Committees on Foreign Relations and Governmental Affairs of the Senate a report containing information and recommendations” for “Congress a report containing recommendations”.

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 100-418, § 5171(b)(3)-(5), added par. (3).

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 100-418, § 5171(c), added subsec. (d).

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2656d, 3503 of this title.

**§ 2656d. Responsibilities of Secretary of State**

**(a) Coordination and oversight over science and technology agreements between United States and foreign countries, etc.**

(1) In order to implement the policies set forth in section 2656b of this title, the Secretary of State (hereafter in this section referred to as the “Secretary”) shall have primary responsibility for coordination and oversight with respect to all major science or science and technology agreements and activities between the United States and foreign countries, international organizations, or commissions of which the United States and one or more foreign countries are members.

(2) In coordinating and overseeing such agreements and activities, the Secretary shall consider (A) scientific merit; (B) equity of access as described in section 2656c(b) of this title; (C) possible commercial or trade linkages with the United States which may flow from the agreement or activity; (D) national security concerns; and (E) any other factors deemed appropriate.

(3) Prior to entering into negotiations on such an agreement or activity, the Secretary shall provide Federal agencies which have primary responsibility for, or substantial interest in, the subject matter of the agreement or activity, including those agencies responsible for—

(A) Federal technology management policies set forth by Public Law 96-517 and the Stevenson-Wydler Technology Innovation Act of 1980 [15 U.S.C. 3701 et seq.];

(B) national security policies;

(C) United States trade policies; and

(D) relevant Executive orders,

with an opportunity to review the proposed agreement or activity to ensure its consistency with such policies and Executive orders, and to ensure effective interagency coordination.

**(b) Long-term contracts, grants, to obtain studies, etc., with respect to application of science and technology to foreign policy**

The Secretary shall, to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in appropriation Acts, enter into long-term contracts, including contracts for the services of consultants, and shall make grants and take other appropriate measures in order to obtain studies, analyses, and recommendations from knowledgeable persons and organizations with respect to the application of science or technology to problems of foreign policy.

**(c) Long-term and short-term contracts, grants, to train officers and employees in application of science and technology to problems of foreign policy**

The Secretary shall, to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in appropriation Acts, enter into short-term and long-term contracts, including contracts for the services of consultants, and shall make grants and take other appropriate measures in order to obtain assistance from knowledgeable persons and organizations in training officers and employees of the United States Government, at all levels of the Foreign Service and Civil Service—

(1) in the application of science and technology to problems of United States foreign

policy and international relations generally; and

(2) in the skills of long-range planning and analysis with respect to the scientific and technological aspects of United States foreign policy.

**(d) Detached service for graduate studies**

In obtaining assistance pursuant to subsection (c) of this section in training personnel who are officers or employees of the Department of State, the Secretary may provide for detached service for graduate study at accredited colleges and universities.

(Pub. L. 95-426, title V, §504, Oct. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 983; Pub. L. 97-241, title V, §505(a)(2), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 299; Pub. L. 100-418, title V, §5171(d), Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1453.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Public Law 96-517, referred to in subsec. (a)(3)(A), is Pub. L. 96-517, Dec. 12, 1980, 94 Stat. 3015, which enacted sections 200 to 211 and 301 to 307 of Title 35, Patents, amended section 1113 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, sections 101 and 117 of Title 17, Copyrights, sections 41, 42, and 154 of Title 35, and sections 2186, 2457, and 5908 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare, and enacted provisions set out as notes under sections 14 and 41 of Title 35. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1980 Amendment note set out under section 41 of Title 35 and Tables.

The Stevenson-Wydler Technology Innovation Act of 1980, referred to in subsec. (a)(3)(A), is Pub. L. 96-480, Oct. 21, 1980, 94 Stat. 2311, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 63 (§3701 et seq.) of Title 15, Commerce and Trade. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3701 of Title 15 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1988—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 100-418 amended subsec. (a) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (a) read as follows: “In order to implement the policy set forth in section 2656b of this title, the Secretary of State (hereafter in this section referred to as the ‘Secretary’) shall have primary responsibility for coordination and oversight with respect to all major science or science and technology agreements and activities between the United States and foreign countries, international organizations, or commissions of which the United States and one or more foreign countries are members.”

1982—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 97-241 struck out subsec. (e) which provided that not later than Jan. 20, 1979, the Secretary transmit to the Committee on Appropriations and the Committee on International Relations of the House of Representatives, and to the Committee on Appropriations and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, a report on the implementation of his responsibilities under this title, which report was to include an assessment of the personnel required in order to carry out such responsibilities, existing and planned programs for research and analysis to support long-range planning for the application of science and technology to foreign policy, existing and planned programs for training officers and employees of the United States Government pursuant to subsec. (c) of this section, and existing and planned programs to enter into long-term contracts with academic and other organizations for assistance in training and in obtaining studies, analyses, and recommendations with respect to the application of science or technology to problems of foreign policy.

MULTILATERAL AGREEMENT GOVERNING USE OF  
NUCLEAR-POWERED SATELLITES

Section 608 of Pub. L. 95-426, as amended by Pub. L. 97-241, title V, §505(a)(2), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 299, provided that:

“(a) The Congress finds that—

“(1) no international regime governs the use of nuclear-powered satellites in space;

“(2) the unregulated use of such technology poses the possibility of catastrophic damage to human life and the global environment; and

“(3) this danger has been evidenced by mishaps encountered, despite certain precautions, by nuclear-powered satellites of both the United States and the Soviet Union.

“(b) It is therefore the sense of the Congress that the United States should take the initiative immediately in seeking a multilateral agreement governing the use of nuclear-powered satellites in space.

“(c) [Repealed. Pub. L. 97-241, title V, §505(a)(2), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 299.]”

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3503 of this title.

**§ 2656e. Terrorism-related travel advisories**

The Secretary of State shall promptly advise the Congress whenever the Department of State issues a travel advisory, or other public warning notice for United States citizens traveling abroad, because of a terrorist threat or other security concern.

(Pub. L. 99-399, title V, §505, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 871.)

**§ 2656f. Annual country reports on terrorism**

**(a) Requirement of annual country reports on terrorism**

The Secretary of State shall transmit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, by April 30 of each year, a full and complete report providing—

(1) detailed assessments with respect to each foreign country—

(A) in which acts of international terrorism occurred which were, in the opinion of the Secretary, of major significance;

(B) about which the Congress was notified during the preceding five years pursuant to section 2405(j) of the Appendix to title 50; and

(C) which the Secretary determines should be the subject of such report; and

(2) all relevant information about the activities during the preceding year of any terrorist group, and any umbrella group under which such terrorist group falls, known to be responsible for the kidnapping or death of an American citizen during the preceding five years, any terrorist group known to be financed by countries about which Congress was notified during the preceding year pursuant to section 2405(j) of the Appendix to title 50, and any other known international terrorist group which the Secretary determines should be the subject of such report.

**(b) Provisions to be included in report**

The report required under subsection (a) of this section should to the extent feasible include (but not be limited to)—

(1) with respect to subsection (a)(1)—

(A) a review of major counterterrorism efforts undertaken by countries which are the subject of such report, including, as appropriate, steps taken in international fora;

(B) the response of the judicial system of each country which is the subject of such report with respect to matters relating to terrorism affecting American citizens or facilities, or which have, in the opinion of the Secretary, a significant impact on United States counterterrorism efforts, including responses to extradition requests; and

(C) significant support, if any, for international terrorism by each country which is the subject of such report, including (but not limited to)—

- (i) political and financial support;
- (ii) diplomatic support through diplomatic recognition and use of the diplomatic pouch;
- (iii) providing sanctuary to terrorists or terrorist groups; and
- (iv) the positions (including voting records) on matters relating to terrorism in the General Assembly of the United Nations and other international bodies and fora of each country which is the subject of such report; and

(2) with respect to subsection (a)(2) of this section, any—

(A) significant financial support provided by foreign governments to those groups directly, or provided in support of their activities;

(B) provisions of significant military or paramilitary training or transfer of weapons by foreign governments to those groups;

(C) provision of diplomatic recognition or privileges by foreign governments to those groups;

(D) provision by foreign governments of sanctuary from prosecution to these groups or their members responsible for the commission, attempt, or planning of an act of international terrorism; and

(E) efforts by the United States to eliminate international financial support provided to those groups directly or provided in support of their activities.

#### (c) Classification of report

The report required under subsection (a) of this section shall, to the extent practicable, be submitted in an unclassified form and may be accompanied by a classified appendix.

#### (d) Definitions

As used in this section—

(1) the term “international terrorism” means terrorism involving citizens or the territory of more than 1 country;

(2) the term “terrorism” means premeditated, politically motivated violence perpetrated against noncombatant targets by subnational groups or clandestine agents; and

(3) the term “terrorist group” means any group practicing, or which has significant subgroups which practice, international terrorism.

#### (e) Reporting period

(1) The report required under subsection (a) of this section shall cover the events of the calendar year preceding the year in which the report is submitted.

(2) The report required by subsection (a) of this section to be submitted by March 31, 1988, may be submitted no later than August 31, 1988.

(Pub. L. 100-204, title I, §140, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1347; Pub. L. 101-246, title I, §122, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 27; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §133(b)(1), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 395.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (b)(2)(E). Pub. L. 103-236 added subpar. (E).

1990—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 101-246 substituted “April 30” for “March 31”.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2656g of this title.

### § 2656g. Report on terrorist assets in United States

#### (a) Reports to Congress

Beginning 90 days after October 28, 1991, and every 365 days thereafter, the Secretary of the Treasury, in consultation with the Attorney General and appropriate investigative agencies, shall submit to the Committee on Foreign Relations and the Committee on Finance of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs and the Committee on Ways and Means of the House of Representatives a report describing the nature and extent of assets held in the United States by terrorist countries and any organization engaged in international terrorism. Each such report shall provide a detailed list and description of specific assets.

#### (b) Definitions

For purposes of this section—

(1) the term “terrorist countries”, refers to countries designated by the Secretary of State under section 2780(d) of this title; and

(2) the term “international terrorism” has the meaning given such term in section 2656f(d) of this title.

(Pub. L. 102-138, title III, §304, Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 710; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §133(b)(2), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 396.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103-236 substituted “Secretary of the Treasury, in consultation with the Attorney General and appropriate investigative agencies,” for “Secretary of the Treasury” and inserted at end “Each such report shall provide a detailed list and description of specific assets.”

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

### § 2656h. International credit reports

#### (a) Report on loan criteria

Not later than 90 days after October 28, 1991, the Assistant Secretary of State for Economic and Business Affairs, in consultation with the Secretary of the Treasury, shall submit to the Chairman of the Foreign Relations Committee of the Senate and the Speaker of the House of Representatives a report setting forth clear criteria for bilateral loans by which the United States can determine the likelihood of repay-

ment by a country seeking to receive United States loans. The report should include the criteria used for—

- (1) assessing country risk;
- (2) projecting loan repayments; and
- (3) estimating subsidy levels.

**(b) Reports on loans**

Beginning 180 days after the submission of the report in subsection (a) of this section and annually thereafter, the Secretary of State, in consultation with the Secretary of the Treasury, shall submit a report to the Chairman of the Foreign Relations Committee of the Senate and the Speaker of the House of Representatives showing actual repayments by country and by program to the United States Government for the previous 5 years and the scheduled repayments to the United States Government for the next 5 years.

(Pub. L. 102-138, title I, §197, Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 684.)

AUTHORITY OF SECRETARY OF STATE

Except as otherwise provided, Secretary of State to have and exercise any authority vested by law in any official or office of Department of State and references to such officials or offices deemed to refer to Secretary of State or Department of State, as appropriate, see section 2651a of this title and section 161(d) of Pub. L. 103-236, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

**§ 2657. Custody of seals and property**

The Secretary of State shall have the custody and charge of the seal of the Department of State, and of all the books, records, papers, furniture, fixtures, and other property which on June 22, 1874, remained in and appertained to the Department, or were thereafter acquired for it.

(R.S. §203.)

CODIFICATION

R.S. §203 derived from acts July 27, 1789, ch. 4, §§2, 4, 1 Stat. 29; Sept. 15, 1789, ch. 14, §7, 1 Stat. 69.

Section was formerly classified to section 158 of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, §1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

CROSS REFERENCES

Postal Service, seal to be filed by the Board of Governors of the Postal Service in office of Secretary of State, see section 207 of Title 39, Postal Service.

**§ 2658. Repealed. Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 162(a), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 405**

Section, acts May 26, 1949, ch. 143, §4, 63 Stat. 111; Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 937, §544(c), as added July 18, 1956, ch. 627, §11(a), 70 Stat. 563; amended Aug. 14, 1957, Pub. L. 85-141, §11(b)(1), 71 Stat. 365, authorized Secretary of State to promulgate rules and regulations and delegate authority.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal applicable with respect to officials, offices, and bureaus of Department of State when executive orders, regulations, or departmental directives implementing the amendments by sections 161 and 162 of Pub. L. 103-236 become effective, or 90 days after Apr. 30, 1994, whichever comes earlier, see section 161(b) of Pub. L. 103-236, as amended, set out as an Effective Date of 1994 Amendment note under section 2651a of this title.

**§ 2659. State statutes to be procured**

The Secretary of State shall procure from time to time such of the statutes of the several States as may not be in his office.

(R.S. §206.)

CODIFICATION

R.S. §206 derived from act Sept. 23, 1789, No. 3, 1 Stat. 97.

Section was formerly classified to section 161 of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, §1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

ABOLITION OF FUNCTIONS

Section 161 of former Title 5, Executive Departments and Government Officers and Employees [now this section], under which the Secretary of State was required to procure, from time to time, such of the statutes of the several States as might not be in his office, was affected by Reorg. Plan No. 20 of 1950, 2(a), eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3178, 64 Stat. 1272, set out in Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, which abolished such prescribed duty. Such section 2(a) further provided, however, that such abolition should not limit the authority of the Secretary of State to procure copies of such State statutes as may be needed in the performance of his functions.

**§ 2660. Copies of treaties furnished to Public Printer**

The Secretary of State shall furnish to the Public Printer a correct copy of every treaty between the United States and any foreign government as soon as possible after it has been duly ratified and has been proclaimed by the President; and also of every postal convention made between the United States Postal Service, by and with the advice and consent of the President, on the part of the United States and foreign countries, as soon as possible after copies of such conventions have been transmitted to him by the United States Postal Service.

(R.S. §210; June 20, 1874, ch. 328, 18 Stat. 88; 1950 Reorg. Plan No. 20, §1, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3178, 64 Stat. 1272; Aug. 12, 1970, Pub. L. 91-375, §4(a), 84 Stat. 773.)

CODIFICATION

R.S. §210 derived from acts Mar. 9, 1868, ch. 22, §1, 15 Stat. 40; June 8, 1872, ch. 335, §20, 17 Stat. 287.

Section was formerly classified to section 165 of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, §1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

REPEALS

R.S. §210 and act June 20, 1874, cited as credits to this section, were also cited as credits for section 191a of former Title 44 (enacted as section 710 of Title 44 by Pub. L. 90-620, which enacted Title 44), and were repealed by section 3 of Pub. L. 90-620. Section 2(a) of Pub. L. 90-620 provided that the legislative purpose in enacting Title 44 was to restate without substantive change the laws replaced by revised Title 44. Because revised section 710 of Title 44 did not restate those provisions of R.S. §210 and act June 20, 1874 which appear in this section, this section is not listed as having been repealed by section 3 of Pub. L. 90-620.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

Functions under the former provisions of this section which required the Secretary of State to furnish to the Public Printer a correct copy of every act and joint res-

olution, as soon as possible after its approval by the President, or after it has become a law in accordance with the Constitution without such approval, were transferred to the Administrator of General Services by Reorg. Plan No. 20 of 1950, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees. Those provisions, as so amended, are set out as section 710 of Title 44, Public Printing and Documents. The Reorg. Plan excepted, from the transfer, those functions of the Secretary of State under this section with respect to treaties and other international agreements.

“United States Postal Service” substituted in text for “Postmaster General” pursuant to section 4(a) of Pub. L. 91-375, set out as a note under section 201 of Title 39, Postal Service, which abolished office of Postmaster General of Post Office Department and transferred its functions to United States Postal Service.

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Duty of the Postal Service to transmit copies of postal conventions to Secretary of State, see section 407 of Title 39, Postal Service.

### § 2661. Procurement of information for corporations, firms and individuals; expense of cablegrams and telephone service involved; appropriation

On and after May 15, 1936, whenever the Secretary of State, in his discretion, procures information on behalf of corporations, firms, and individuals, the expense of cablegrams and telephone service involved may be charged against the respective appropriations for the service utilized; and reimbursement therefor shall be required from those for whom the information was procured and, when made, be credited to the appropriation under which the expenditure was charged.

The Secretary of State is authorized to accept reimbursement from corporations, firms, and individuals for the expenses of travel, translation, printing, special experts, and other extraordinary expenses incurred in pursuing a claim on their behalf against a foreign government or other foreign entity. Such reimbursements shall be credited to the appropriation account against which the expense was initially charged.

(May 15, 1936, ch. 405, 49 Stat. 1321; Dec. 22, 1987, Pub. L. 100-204, title I, § 142(b), 101 Stat. 1350.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 169 of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, § 1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

Section is from the Department of State Appropriation Act, 1937, act May 15, 1936.

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

Provisions similar to those in this section were contained in the following prior appropriation acts:

Mar. 22, 1935, ch. 39, 49 Stat. 76.  
Apr. 7, 1934, ch. 104, title I, 48 Stat. 536.  
Mar. 1, 1933, ch. 144, title I, 47 Stat. 1379.  
July 1, 1932, ch. 361, title I, 47 Stat. 487.  
Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 280, title I, 46 Stat. 1321.  
Apr. 18, 1930, ch. 184, title I, 46 Stat. 174.

#### AMENDMENTS

1987—Pub. L. 100-204 inserted second par.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2710 of this title.

### § 2661a. Foreign contracts or arrangements; discrimination

Information should not be disseminated about opportunities for, and there should be no participation or other assistance by any officer or employee of the Department of State (including the Agency for International Development) in, the negotiation of any contract or arrangement with a foreign country, individual, or entity, if—

(1) any United States person (as defined in section 7701(a)(30) of title 26) is prohibited from entering into such contract or arrangement, or

(2) such contract or arrangement requires that any such person be excluded from participating in the implementation of such contract or arrangement,

on account of the race, religion, national origin, or sex of such person in the case of an individual or, in the case of a partnership, corporation, association, or other entity, any officer, employee, agent, director, or owner thereof.

(Pub. L. 94-350, title I, § 121, July 12, 1976, 90 Stat. 829; Pub. L. 99-514, § 2, Oct. 22, 1986, 100 Stat. 2095.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1986—Par. (1). Pub. L. 99-514 substituted “Internal Revenue Code of 1986” for “Internal Revenue Code of 1954”, which for purposes of codification was translated as “title 26” thus requiring no change in text.

### § 2662. Transferred

#### CODIFICATION

Section 2662, act Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, § 1 [part], 70 Stat. 890; as renumbered title I and amended Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, § 202(a), 96 Stat. 282, which related to establishment, maintenance, and operation of passport and despatch agencies, was amended generally by Pub. L. 103-236 and transferred to section 2651a of this title.

Section was formerly classified to section 170f of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, § 1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

Similar provisions were contained in the following prior Department of State Appropriation Acts:

June 20, 1956, ch. 414, title I, 70 Stat. 299.  
July 7, 1955, ch. 279, title I, 69 Stat. 264.  
July 2, 1954, ch. 456, title I, 68 Stat. 413.  
Aug. 5, 1953, ch. 328, title I, 67 Stat. 367.  
July 10, 1952, ch. 651, title I, 66 Stat. 549.  
Oct. 22, 1951, ch. 533, title I, 65 Stat. 576.  
Sept. 6, 1950, ch. 896, title I, 64 Stat. 609.  
July 20, 1949, ch. 354, title I, 63 Stat. 448.  
June 3, 1948, ch. 400, title I, 62 Stat. 306.  
July 9, 1947, ch. 211, title I, 61 Stat. 279.

See, also, the Codification note set out under section 2663 of this title.

### § 2663. Omitted

#### CODIFICATION

Section, act July 5, 1946, ch. 541, title I, 60 Stat. 450, 451, the Department of State Appropriation Act, 1947, related to compensation of personnel and rent and expenses of despatch agencies established by Secretary of State. See section 2662 of this title.

Section was formerly classified to section 153a of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, § 1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

Similar provisions were contained in the following prior Department of State Appropriation Acts:

May 21, 1945, ch. 129, title I, 59 Stat. 173.  
 June 28, 1944, ch. 294, title I, 58 Stat. 399.  
 July 1, 1943, ch. 182, title I, 57 Stat. 275.  
 July 2, 1942, ch. 472, title I, 56 Stat. 473.  
 June 28, 1941, ch. 258, title I, 55 Stat. 268.  
 May 14, 1940, ch. 189, title I, 54 Stat. 185.

**§ 2664. Distribution of duties of officers, clerks, and employees**

The Secretary of State may prescribe duties for the Assistant Secretaries and the clerks of bureaus, as well as for all the other employees in the department, and may make changes and transfers therein when, in his judgment, it becomes necessary.

(June 20, 1874, ch. 328, 18 Stat. 90; May 24, 1924, ch. 182, § 30, as added Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, § 7, 46 Stat. 1214.)

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 154 of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, § 1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

Provisions of this section which related to the Solicitor of the Department were omitted in view of act May 24, 1924, which abolished the office.

**§ 2664a. Protection of Civil Service employees**

**(a) Findings**

The Congress finds that—

(1) the effectiveness and efficiency of the Department of State is dependent not only on the contribution of Foreign Service employees but equally on the contribution of the 42 percent of the Department's employees who are employed under the Civil Service personnel system;

(2) the contribution of these Civil Service employees has been overlooked in the management of the Department and greater equality of promotion, training, and career enhancement opportunities should be accorded to the Civil Service employees of the Department; and

(3) a goal of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [22 U.S.C. 3901 et seq.] was to strengthen the contribution made by Civil Service employees of the Department of State by creating a cadre of experienced specialists and managers in the Department to provide essential continuity.

**(b) Equitable reduction of budget**

The Secretary of State shall take all appropriate steps to assure that the burden of cuts in the budget for the Department is not imposed disproportionately or inequitably upon its Civil Service employees.

**(c) Establishment of Office of the Ombudsman for Civil Service Employees**

There is established in the Office of the Secretary of State the position of Ombudsman for Civil Service Employees. The position of Ombudsman for Civil Service Employees shall be a career reserved position within the Senior Executive Service. The Ombudsman for Civil Service Employees shall report directly to the Secretary of State and shall have the right to participate in all Management Council meetings to assure that the ability of the Civil Service employees to contribute to the achievement of the Depart-

ment's mandated responsibilities and the career interests of those employees are adequately represented. The position of Ombudsman for Civil Service Employees shall be designated from one of the Senior Executive Service positions (as defined in section 3132(a)(2) of title 5) in existence on December 22, 1987.

**(d) "Civil Service employees" defined**

For purposes of this section, the term "Civil Service employees" means employees of the Federal Government except for members of the Foreign Service (as defined in section 103 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [22 U.S.C. 3903]).

(Pub. L. 100-204, title I, § 172, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1359.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Service Act of 1980, referred to in subsec. (a)(3), is Pub. L. 96-465, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2071, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 52 (§ 3901 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3901 of this title and Tables.

AUTHORITY OF SECRETARY OF STATE

Except as otherwise provided, Secretary of State to have and exercise any authority vested by law in any official or office of Department of State and references to such officials or offices deemed to refer to Secretary of State or Department of State, as appropriate, see section 2651a of this title and section 161(d) of Pub. L. 103-236, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

**§ 2665. Personal services other than those provided for**

There shall not be employed in the Department of State or in connection with said Department in the District of Columbia any personal services other than those which shall be specifically authorized or appropriated for.

(June 22, 1906, ch. 3514, 34 Stat. 402.)

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 155 of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, § 1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

**§ 2665a. Foreign Service fellowships**

The Secretary of State is authorized to establish a Foreign Service fellowship program at the Department of State. The Foreign Service fellowship program shall provide a fellowship, for not less than 4 months, for academics in the area of international affairs who are members of the faculty of institutions of higher education. Such program shall give priority consideration in the award of fellowships to individuals teaching in programs in international affairs which serve significant numbers of students who are from cultural and ethnic groups which are underrepresented in the Foreign Service.

(Pub. L. 101-246, title I, § 153(h), Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 44.)

**§§ 2666, 2667. Repealed. Pub. L. 99-93, title I, § 125(c), Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 417**

Section 2666, acts June 28, 1955, ch. 199, § 1, 69 Stat. 188; Nov. 29, 1975, Pub. L. 94-141, title IV, § 406, 89 Stat.



770, authorized security officers of Department of State and Foreign Service to carry firearms. See section 2709 of this title.

Section 2667, act June 28, 1955, ch. 199, §2, as added Aug. 27, 1964, Pub. L. 88-493, §4, 78 Stat. 610, empowered security officers of Department of State and Foreign Service to make arrests without warrant. See section 2709(a)(5) of this title.

**§ 2668. Requisitions for advances to pay lawful obligations**

**(a) Authorization; accounting**

Notwithstanding the provisions of any other law the Secretary of State is authorized in his discretion to issue under the limitations and restrictions hereinafter established requisitions for advances of funds to disbursing officers of the Fiscal Service of the Treasury Department, under a "State account of advances" not to exceed the total amount of appropriations for the Department of State, the amounts so advanced to be used exclusively to pay upon proper vouchers obligations lawfully payable under the respective appropriations: *Provided*, That a separate "State account of advances" shall be established on the books of the Treasury Department relating to appropriations made to the Department of State for each fiscal year and that a "State account of advances" relating to the appropriations for one fiscal year shall not be used to pay vouchers pertaining to the appropriations of any other fiscal year. Expenditures from the amounts requisitioned under the "State account of advances" shall be charged to applicable appropriations on the books of the Treasury Department on the basis of transfer and counter warrants prepared in the State Department as of the close of each month and prior to audit, certification, or adjustment by the General Accounting Office. The General Accounting Office shall subsequently declare the sums finally due from the several appropriations upon audited vouchers according to law and shall certify the same to the Treasury Department which shall make the necessary adjustments between appropriations upon the basis of such audited settlements of the General Accounting Office: *Provided further*, That such adjustments shall be reflected on the books of the Government in the month and fiscal year during which the audited settlements are certified to the Treasury.

**(b) Removal of outstanding charges**

A charge outstanding in the "State account of advances" shall be removed by crediting the account of advances and deducting the amount of the charge from an appropriation made available for advances to the Department of State when—

(1) relief has been granted or may be granted later to a disbursing official or agent of the Department operating under the account of advances and under a law having no provision for removing charges outstanding in the account of advances; or

(2) the charge has been—

(A) outstanding in the account of advances for 2 complete fiscal years; and

(B) certified by the Secretary of State to the Comptroller General as uncollectable.

**(c) Financial liability of disbursing agent or official**

Subsection (b) of this section does not affect the financial liability of a disbursing official or agent.

(Apr. 25, 1940, ch. 154, 54 Stat. 163; 1940 Reorg. Plan No. III, §1(a)(1), eff. June 30, 1940, 5 F.R. 2107, 54 Stat. 1231; Sept. 13, 1982, Pub. L. 97-258, §2(e), 96 Stat. 1059.)

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 170 of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, §1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

In subsec. (a), "Fiscal Service of the Treasury Department" substituted for "Division of Disbursement, Treasury Department" on authority of section 1(a)(1) of Reorg. Plan No. III of 1940, eff. June 30, 1940, 5 F.R. 2107, 54 Stat. 1231, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, which consolidated such division into the Fiscal Service of the Treasury Department. See section 306 of Title 31, Money and Finance.

AMENDMENTS

1982—Pub. L. 97-258 redesignated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsecs. (b) and (c).

**§ 2668a. Disposition of trust funds received from foreign governments for citizens of United States**

All moneys received by the Secretary of State from foreign governments and other sources, in trust for citizens of the United States or others, shall be deposited and covered into the Treasury.

The Secretary of State shall determine the amounts due claimants, respectively, from each of such trust funds, and certify the same to the Secretary of the Treasury, who shall, upon the presentation of the certificates of the Secretary of State, pay the amounts so found to be due.

Each of the trust funds covered into the Treasury as aforesaid is appropriated for the payment to the ascertained beneficiaries thereof of the certificates provided for in this section.

(Feb. 27, 1896, ch. 34, 29 Stat. 32.)

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 547 of Title 31 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 31, Money and Finance, by Pub. L. 97-258, §1, Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 877.

CROSS REFERENCES

Funds to be classified on books of Treasury as trust funds, see section 1321 of Title 31, Money and Finance.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 20 section 225.

**§ 2669. Printing and binding outside continental United States; settlement and payment of claims by foreign governments; employment of aliens; official functions and courtesies; purchase of uniforms; payment of tort claims; payment of assumed obligations in Germany; telecommunications services; security**

The Secretary of State may use funds appropriated or otherwise available to the Secretary to—

(a) provide for printing and binding outside the States of the United States and the District of Columbia without regard to section 501 of title 44;

(b) for the purpose of promoting and maintaining friendly relations with foreign countries through the prompt settlement of certain claims, settle and pay any meritorious claim against the United States which is presented by a government of a foreign country for damage to or loss of real or personal property of, or personal injury to or death of, any national of such foreign country: *Provided*, That such claim is not cognizable under any other statute or international agreement of the United States and can be settled for not more than \$15,000 or the foreign currency equivalent thereof;

(c) employ individuals or organizations, by contract, for services abroad, and individuals employed by contract to perform such services shall not by virtue of such employment be considered to be employees of the United States Government for purposes of any law administered by the Office of Personnel Management (except that the Secretary may determine the applicability to such individuals of subsection (f) of this section and of any other law administered by the Secretary concerning the employment of such individuals abroad); and such contracts are authorized to be negotiated, the terms of the contracts to be prescribed, and the work to be performed, where necessary, without regard to such statutory provisions as relate to the negotiation, making, and performance of contracts and performance of work in the United States;

(d) provide for official functions and courtesies;

(e) purchase uniforms;

(f) pay tort claims, in the manner authorized in the first paragraph of section 2672, as amended, of title 28, when such claims arise in foreign countries in connection with Department of State operations abroad;

(g) obtain services as authorized by section 3109 of title 5 at a rate not to exceed the maximum rate payable for GS-18 under section 5332 of such title 5;

(h) directly procure goods and services in the United States or abroad, solely for use by United States Foreign Service posts abroad when the Secretary of State, in accordance with guidelines established in consultation with the Administrator of General Services, determines that use of the Federal Supply Service or otherwise applicable Federal goods and services acquisition authority would not meet emergency overseas security require-

ments determined necessary by the Secretary, taking into account overseas delivery, installation, maintenance, or replacement requirements, except that the authority granted by this paragraph shall cease to be effective when the amendment made by section 2711 of the Competition in Contracting Act of 1984 takes effect and thereafter procurement by the Secretary of State for the purposes described in this paragraph shall be in accordance with section 253(c)(2) of title 41;

(i) pay obligations assumed in Germany on or after June 5, 1945;

(j) provide telecommunications services;

(k) provide maximum physical security in Government-owned and leased properties and vehicles abroad; and

(l) purchase special purpose passenger motor vehicles without regard to any price limitation otherwise established by law.

(m) pay obligations arising under international agreements, conventions, and binational contracts to the extent otherwise authorized by law.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, § 2, 70 Stat. 890; July 12, 1960, Pub. L. 86-624, § 2, 74 Stat. 411; Sept. 6, 1960, Pub. L. 86-707, title V, § 511(a)(2), 74 Stat. 800; Aug. 1, 1962, Pub. L. 87-565, pt. IV, § 402, 76 Stat. 263; renumbered title I, Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, § 202(a), 96 Stat. 282; Oct. 19, 1984, Pub. L. 98-533, title III, § 303(a), 98 Stat. 2710; Aug. 16, 1985, Pub. L. 99-93, title I, §§ 114, 118(a) 99 Stat. 411, 412; Feb. 16, 1990, Pub. L. 101-246, title I, § 111, 104 Stat. 21; Mar. 27, 1991, Pub. L. 102-20, § 4, 105 Stat. 68; Oct. 28, 1991, Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 120, 105 Stat. 658; Apr. 30, 1994, Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §§ 137, 162(k)(4), 180(b), 108 Stat. 397, 409, 416.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The effective date of the amendment made by section 2711 of the Competition in Contracting Act of 1984, referred to in subsec. (h), is the effective date of section 2711 of title VII of Pub. L. 98-369, div. B, July 18, 1984, 98 Stat. 1175, 1203, which amended section 253 of Title 41, Public Contracts, applicable with respect to any solicitation for bids or proposals issued after Mar. 31, 1985. See section 2751(a) of Pub. L. 98-369, set out as an Effective Date of 1984 Amendment note under section 251 of Title 41.

#### CODIFICATION

In subsec. (a), “section 501 of title 44” substituted for “section 11 of the Act of March 1, 1919 (44 U.S.C. 111)” on authority of Pub. L. 90-620, § 2(b), Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1305, the first section of which enacted Title 44, Public Printing and Documents.

Section was formerly classified to section 170g of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, § 1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 103-236, §§ 137, 180(b), which identically directed amendment of subsec. (c) by inserting before the period “;” and such contracts are authorized to be negotiated, the terms of the contracts to be prescribed, and the work to be performed, where necessary, without regard to such statutory provisions as relate to the negotiation, making, and performance of contracts and performance of work in the United States”, were executed by making the insertion before the semicolon at end to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Subsecs. (l), (m). Pub. L. 103-236, §162(k)(4), redesignated subsec. (l) relating to paying obligations arising under international agreements, conventions, and binational contracts as (m).

1991—Subsec. (l). Pub. L. 102-138 added subsec. (l) relating to paying obligations arising under international agreements, conventions, and binational contracts.

Pub. L. 102-20 added subsec. (l) relating to purchase of special purpose passenger motor vehicles.

1990—Subsecs. (i) to (k). Pub. L. 101-246 added subsecs. (i) to (k).

1985—Pub. L. 99-93, §114, in provision preceding subsec. (a) substituted “may use funds appropriated or otherwise available to the Secretary to” for “, when funds are appropriated therefor, may”.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 99-93, §118(a), inserted “for purposes of any law administered by the Office of Personnel Management (except that the Secretary may determine the applicability to such individuals of subsection (f) of this section and of any other law administered by the Secretary concerning the employment of such individuals abroad)”.

1984—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 98-533, §303(a)(1), substituted “individuals or organizations” for “aliens” after “employ”, and “, and individuals employed by contract to perform such services shall not by virtue of such employment be considered to be employees of the United States Government”.

Subsecs. (g), (h). Pub. L. 98-533, §303(a)(2), added subsecs. (g) and (h).

1962—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 87-565 added subsec. (b). A prior subsec. (b) was repealed by section 511(a)(2) of Pub. L. 86-707.

1960—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 86-624 substituted “the States of the United States and the District of Columbia” for “the continental United States”.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 86-707 repealed subsec. (b) which authorized the Secretary to pay the cost of transportation to and from a place of storage and the cost of storing the furniture and household and personal effects of an employee who is assigned to a post at which he is unable to use his furniture and effects, and is now covered by section 1136(4) of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 162(k)(4) of Pub. L. 103-236 applicable with respect to officials, offices, and bureaus of Department of State when executive orders, regulations, or departmental directives implementing the amendments by sections 161 and 162 of Pub. L. 103-236 become effective, or 90 days after Apr. 30, 1994, whichever comes earlier, see section 161(b) of Pub. L. 103-236, as amended, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Section 118(b) of Pub. L. 99-93 provided that: “Authority provided by the amendment made by subsection (a) [amending this section] shall only apply with respect to funds appropriated after the date of the enactment of this Act [Aug. 16, 1985].”

#### REFERENCES IN OTHER LAWS TO GS-16, 17, OR 18 PAY RATES

References in laws to the rates of pay for GS-16, 17, or 18, or to maximum rates of pay under the General Schedule, to be considered references to rates payable under specified sections of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, see section 529 [title I, §101(c)(1)] of Pub. L. 101-509, set out in a note under section 5376 of Title 5.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2605, 4341, 4904 of this title; title 15 section 4723.

## § 2669a. Diplomatic Telecommunications Service

### (a) Diplomatic Telecommunications Service financial management

In fiscal year 1995 and each succeeding fiscal year—

(1) the Secretary of State shall provide funds for the operation of the Diplomatic Telecommunications Service (DTS) in a sufficient amount to sustain the current level of support services being provided by the DTS, and no portion of such amount may be reprogrammed or transferred for any other purpose;

(2) all funds for the operation and enhancement of the DTS shall be directly available for use by the Diplomatic Telecommunications Service Program Office (DTS-PO); and

(3) the DTS-PO financial management officer shall be provided direct access to the Department of State financial management system to independently monitor and control the obligation and expenditure of all funds for the operation and enhancement of the DTS.

### (b) DTS Policy Board

Within 60 days after August 26, 1994, the Secretary of State and the Director of the DTS-PO shall restructure the DTS Policy Board to provide for representation on the Board, during fiscal year 1995 and each succeeding fiscal year, by—

(1) the Director of the DTS-PO;

(2) the senior information management official from each agency currently serving on the Board;

(3) a senior career information management official from each of the Department of Commerce, the United States Information Agency, and the Defense Intelligence Agency; and

(4) a senior career information management official from each of 2 other Federal agencies served by the DTS, each of whom shall be appointed on a rotating basis by the Secretary of State and the Director of the DTS-PO for a 2-year term.

### (c) DTS consolidation pilot program

#### (1) In general

The Secretary of State and the Director of the DTS-PO shall carry out a program under which total DTS consolidation will be completed before October 1, 1995, at not less than five embassies of medium to large size.

#### (2) Pilot program requirements

Under the program required in paragraph (1)—

(A) each participating embassy shall be provided with a full range of integrated information services, including message, data, and voice, without additional charge;

(B) a combined transmission facility shall be established and jointly operated, with open access to all unclassified transmission equipment;

(C) an unclassified packet switch communication system shall be installed and shall serve all foreign affairs agencies associated with the embassy;

(D) separate classified transmission systems (including MERCURY) shall be terminated; and

(E) all foreign affairs agency systems requiring international communications capability shall obtain such capability solely through the DTS.

**(3) Pilot program report**

Not later than January 15, 1996, the Secretary of State and the Director of the DTS-PO shall submit to the Committees on Appropriations of the House and Senate a report describing the actions taken under the program required by this subsection. The report shall include a cost-benefit analysis for each embassy participating in the program.

**(d) DTS planning report**

Not later than January 15, 1995, the Secretary of State and the Director of the DTS-PO shall submit to the Committees on Appropriations a DTS planning report. The report shall include—

(1) a detailed plan for carrying out the pilot program required by subsection (c) of this section, including an estimate of the funds required for such purpose; and

(2) a comprehensive DTS strategy plan that contains detailed plans and schedules for—

(A) an overall DTS network configuration and security strategy;

(B) transition of the existing dedicated circuits and classified transmission systems to the unclassified packet switch communications system;

(C) provision of a basic level of voice service for all DTS customers;

(D) funding of new initiatives and of replacement of current systems;

(E) combining existing DTS network control centers, relay facilities, and overseas operations; and

(F) reducing the extensive reliance of DTS-PO on the full-time services of contractors.

(Pub. L. 103-317, title V, § 507, Aug. 26, 1994, 108 Stat. 1766.)

**§ 2670. Insurance on motor vehicles in foreign countries; tie lines and teletype equipment; ice and drinking water; excise taxes on negotiable instruments; remains of deceased persons; relief, protection, and burial of seamen; acknowledgment of services of foreign vessels and aircraft; rentals and leases**

The Secretary of State is authorized to—

(a) obtain insurance on official motor vehicles operated by the Department of State in foreign countries, and pay the expenses incident thereto;

(b) rent tie lines and teletype equipment;

(c) provide ice and drinking water for United States Embassies and Consulates abroad;

(d) pay excise taxes on negotiable instruments which are negotiated by the Department of State abroad;

(e) Omitted;

(f) pay expenses incident to the relief, protection, and burial of American seamen, and alien seamen from United States vessels in foreign countries and in the United States Territories and possessions;

(g) pay the expenses incurred in the acknowledgment of the services of officers and

crews of foreign vessels and aircraft in rescuing American seamen, airmen, or citizens from shipwreck or other catastrophe abroad or at sea;

(h) rent or lease, for periods of less than ten years, such offices, buildings, grounds, and living quarters for the use of the Foreign Service abroad as he may deem necessary, and make payments therefor in advance;

(i) maintain, improve, and repair properties rented or leased pursuant to authority contained in subsection (h) of this section and furnish fuel, water, and utilities for such properties;

(j) provide emergency medical attention and dietary supplements, and other emergency assistance, for United States citizens incarcerated abroad or destitute United States citizens abroad who are unable to obtain such services otherwise, such assistance to be provided on a reimbursable basis to the extent feasible;

(k) subject to the availability of appropriated funds, obtain insurance on the historic and artistic articles of furniture, fixtures, and decorative objects which may from time-to-time be within the responsibility of the Fine Arts Committee of the Department of State for the Diplomatic Rooms of the Department;

(l) make payments in advance, of the United States share of necessary expenses for international fisheries commissions, from appropriations available for such purpose; and

(m) establish, maintain, and operate passport and dispatch agencies.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, § 3, 70 Stat. 890; June 15, 1977, Pub. L. 95-45, § 2, 91 Stat. 221; 1977 Reorg. Plan No. 2, § 9(a)(7), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1639; Oct. 7, 1978, Pub. L. 95-426, title I, § 108(a), 92 Stat. 966; renumbered title I, Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, § 202(a), 96 Stat. 282; Dec. 22, 1987, Pub. L. 100-204, title I, § 126(b), 101 Stat. 1342; Oct. 28, 1991, Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 166, 105 Stat. 676; Apr. 30, 1994, Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 162(k)(3), 108 Stat. 409.)

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 170h of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, § 1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

Subsec. (e) of this section, relating to the payment of the actual expenses of preparing and transporting to their former homes the remains of persons, not United States Government employees, who die away from their homes while participating in international educational exchange activities under the jurisdiction of the Department of State, was omitted pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, § 9(a)(7), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1639, set out under section 1461 of this title, effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by the President, which abolished the functions of the Secretary of State under subsec. (e).

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (m). Pub. L. 103-236 added subsec. (m).

1991—Subsec. (l). Pub. L. 102-138 added subsec. (l).

1987—Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 100-204 added subsec. (k).

1978—Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 95-426 inserted “or destitute United States citizens abroad” after “incarcerated abroad”.

1977—Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 95-45 added subsec. (j).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103-236 applicable with respect to officials, offices, and bureaus of Department of

State when executive orders, regulations, or departmental directives implementing the amendments by sections 161 and 162 of Pub. L. 103-236 become effective, or 90 days after Apr. 30, 1994, whichever comes earlier, see section 161(b) of Pub. L. 103-236, as amended, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Section 108(b) of Pub. L. 95-426 provided that: "The amendment made by this section [amending this section] shall take effect on October 1, 1978."

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2701 of this title.

**§ 2671. Emergency expenditures**

**(a) Delegation of authority pertaining to certification of expenditures**

The Secretary of State is authorized to—

(1) subject to subsection (b) of this section, make expenditures, from such amounts as may be specifically appropriated therefor, for unforeseen emergencies arising in the diplomatic and consular service and, to the extent authorized in appropriation Acts, funds expended for such purposes may be accounted for in accordance with section 3526(e) of title 31; and

(2) delegate to subordinate officials the authority vested in him by section 3526(e) of title 31 pertaining to certification of expenditures.

**(b) Activities subject to expenditures**

(1) Expenditures described under subsection (a) of this section shall be made only for such activities as—

(A) serve to further the realization of foreign policy objectives;

(B) are a matter of urgency to implement;

(C) with respect to activities the expenditures for which are required to be certified under subsection (a) of this section, require confidentiality in the best interests of the conduct of foreign policy by the United States; and

(D) are not otherwise prohibited by law.

(2) Activities described in paragraph (1) include—

(A) the evacuation of United States Government employees and their dependents and private United States citizens when their lives are endangered by war, civil unrest, or natural disaster;

(B) loans made to destitute citizens of the United States who are outside the United States and made to provide for the return to the United States of its citizens;

(C) visits by foreign chiefs of state or heads of government to the United States;

(D) travel of delegations representing the President at any inauguration or funeral of a foreign dignitary;

(E) travel of the President, the Vice President, or a Member of Congress to a foreign country, including advance arrangements, escort, and official entertainment;

(F) travel of the Secretary of State within the United States and outside the United States, including official entertainment;

(G) official representational functions of the Secretary of State and other principal officers of the Department of State;

(H) official functions outside the United States the expenses for which are not otherwise covered by amounts appropriated for representation allowances;

(I) investigations and apprehension of groups or individuals involved in fraudulent issuance of United States passports and visas; and

(J) gifts of nominal value given by the President, Vice President, or Secretary of State to a foreign dignitary.

**(c) Annual confidential audit and report**

The Inspector General of the Department of State shall conduct a periodic audit of the Department of State's emergency expenditures and prepare and transmit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate an annual report indicating whether such expenditures were made in accordance with subsections (a) and (b) of this section.

**(d) Repatriation loan program**

With regard to the repatriation loan program, the Secretary of State shall—

(1) require the borrower to provide a verifiable address and social security number at the time of application;

(2) require a written loan agreement which includes a repayment schedule;

(3) bar passports from being issued or renewed for those individuals who are in default;

(4) refer any loan more than one year past due to the Department of Justice for litigation;

(5) obtain addresses from the Internal Revenue Service for all delinquent accounts which have social security numbers;

(6) report defaults to commercial credit bureaus as provided in section 3711(f) of title 31;

(7) be permitted to use any funds necessary to contract with commercial collection agencies, notwithstanding section 3718(c)<sup>1</sup> of title 31;

(8) charge interest on all loans as of May 1, 1983, with the rate of interest to be that set forth in section 3717(a) of title 31;

(9) assess charges, in addition to the interest provided for in paragraph (8), to cover the costs of processing and handling delinquent claims, as of May 1, 1983;

(10) assess a penalty charge, in addition to the interest provided for in paragraphs (8) and (9), of 6 per centum per year for failure to pay any portion of a debt more than ninety days past due; and

(11) implement the interest and penalty provisions in paragraphs (8), (9), and (10) for all current and future loans, regardless of whether the debts were incurred before or after May 1, 1983.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, § 4, 70 Stat. 890; renumbered title I, Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, § 202(a), 96 Stat. 282; Nov. 22, 1983, Pub. L. 98-164, title I, § 122(a), 97 Stat. 1023; Apr. 30, 1994, Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 125, 108 Stat. 393.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 3718(c) of title 31, referred to in subsec. (d)(7), was temporarily renumbered section 3718(e) of title 31 by Pub. L. 99-578, § 1(1), Oct. 28, 1986, 100 Stat. 3305.

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

## CODIFICATION

In subsec. (a), “section 3526(e) of title 31” substituted for “section 291 of the Revised Statutes (31 U.S.C. 107)” on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, §4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

Section was formerly classified to section 170i of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, §1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

## AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 103-236 struck out “and the Foreign Service” after “Department of State” and substituted “a periodic” for “an annual confidential”.

1983—Pub. L. 98-164 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a), redesignated former pars. (a) and (b) as pars. (1) and (2), respectively, in par. (1) inserted reference to subsec. (b), and added subsecs. (b) to (d).

**§ 2672. Participation in international activities; restriction; expenses**

The Secretary of State is authorized to—

(a) provide for participation by the United States in international activities which arise from time to time in the conduct of foreign affairs for which provision has not been made by the terms of any treaty, convention, or special Act of Congress: *Provided*, That this subsection shall not be construed as granting authority to accept membership for the United States in any international organization, or to participate in the activities of any international organization for more than one year without approval by the Congress; and

(b) pay the expenses of participation in activities in which the United States participates by authority of subsection (a) of this section, including, but not limited to the following:

(1) Employment of aliens;

(2) Travel expenses without regard to the Standardized Government Travel Regulations and to the rates of per diem allowances in lieu of subsistence expenses under subchapter I of chapter 57 of title 5;

(3) Travel expenses of persons serving without compensation in an advisory capacity while away from their homes or regular places of business not in excess of those authorized for regular officers and employees traveling in connection with said international activities; and

(4) Rental of quarters by contract or otherwise.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, §5, 70 Stat. 891; renumbered title I, Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, §202(a), 96 Stat. 282.)

## CODIFICATION

In subsec. (b)(2), “subchapter I of chapter 57 of title 5” substituted for “the Travel Expense Act of 1949, as amended (5 U.S.C. 835-842),” on authority of Pub. L. 89-554, §7(b), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 631, the first section of which enacted Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

Section was formerly classified to section 170j of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, §1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

**§ 2672a. Alternate United States Commissioners for international fisheries commissions**

In order to insure appropriate representation at meetings of international fisheries commis-

sions, the Secretary of State, in consultation with the Secretary of Commerce or of the Interior as appropriate may designate from time to time Alternate United States Commissioners to the North Pacific Fur Seal Commission, the Inter-American Tropical Tuna Commission, the International Pacific Halibut Commission, the International Whaling Commission, the Commission for the Conservation of Shrimp in the Eastern Gulf of Mexico, the International Commission for the Conservation of Atlantic Tunas, and any similar commission (other than the International Commission for the Northwest Atlantic Fisheries and the International North Pacific Fisheries Commission) established pursuant to a convention between the United States and other governments. Alternate United States Commissioners may exercise, at any meeting of the respective Commission or of the United States Section thereof, all powers and duties of a United States Commissioner in the absence of a duly designated Commissioner for whatever reason. The number of such Alternate United States Commissioners that may be designated for any such meeting shall be limited to the number of authorized United States Commissioners that will not be present. In the event that there are Deputy United States Commissioners pursuant to the convention or statute, such Deputy United States Commissioners shall have precedence over any Alternate Commissioners so designated pursuant to this section.

(Pub. L. 92-471, title II, §201, Oct. 9, 1972, 86 Stat. 787; Pub. L. 99-659, title IV, §405(c), Nov. 14, 1986, 100 Stat. 3738.)

## AMENDMENTS

1986—Pub. L. 99-659 struck out “the Great Lakes Fishery Commission,” after “the International Pacific Halibut Commission,”.

**§ 2672b. Compensation of Alternate United States Commissioners; travel expenses and other allowances**

Alternate United States Commissioners shall receive no compensation for their services. They may be paid travel expenses and per diem in lieu of subsistence at the rates authorized by section 5703 of title 5 when engaged in the performance of their duties.

(Pub. L. 92-471, title II, §202, Oct. 9, 1972, 86 Stat. 787.)

**§ 2673. International Civil Aviation Organization; availability of funds for participation**

The provisions of section 287e of this title, and regulations thereunder, applicable to expenses incurred pursuant to sections 287 to 287e of this title, may be applicable to the obligation and expenditure of funds in connection with United States participation in the International Civil Aviation Organization.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, §6, 70 Stat. 891; renumbered title I, Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, §202(a), 96 Stat. 282.)

## CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 170k of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, §1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

## ANNUAL APPROPRIATIONS

Annual appropriations to meet the obligations of membership in various international organizations were contained in acts listed in a note set out under section 269a of this title.

**§ 2674. Availability of exchange allowances or proceeds derived from exchange or sale of motor vehicles**

The exchange allowances or proceeds derived from the exchange or sale of passenger motor vehicles in possession of the Foreign Service abroad, in accordance with section 481(c) of title 40, shall be available without fiscal year limitation for replacement of an equal number of such vehicles.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, § 7, 70 Stat. 891; renumbered title I, Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, § 202(a), 96 Stat. 282.)

## CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 170l of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, § 1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

**§ 2675. Allocation or transfer to other agencies of funds appropriated to Department of State; authority for expenditure of funds**

The Secretary of State may allocate or transfer to any department, agency, or independent establishment of the United States Government (with the consent of the head of such department, agency, or establishment) any funds appropriated to the Department of State, for direct expenditure by such department, agency, or independent establishment for the purposes for which the funds were appropriated in accordance with authority granted in this Act or under authority governing the activities of such department, agency, or independent establishment.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, § 8, 70 Stat. 891; renumbered title I, Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, § 202(a), 96 Stat. 282; Nov. 22, 1983, Pub. L. 98-164, title I, § 121, 97 Stat. 1023.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, is act Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, 70 Stat. 890, as amended, known as the State Department Basic Authorities Act of 1956, which enacted sections 2651a, 2669 to 2672, 2673 to 2679a, 2680, 2680a, 2684, 2687 to 2690, 2692, 2695, and 2696 to 2724 of this title and chapters 53 (§ 4301 et seq.), 53A (§ 4341 et seq.), and 53B (§ 4351 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1956 Amendment note set out under section 2651 of this title and Tables.

## CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 170m of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, § 1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

## AMENDMENTS

1983—Pub. L. 98-164 amended section generally, substituting provisions relating to allocation or transfer of funds and authority for expenditure of funds for provisions relating to transfer of funds.

**§ 2676. Contracts in foreign countries**

The Secretary of State is authorized to enter into contracts in foreign countries involving ex-

penditures from funds appropriated or otherwise made available to the Department of State, without regard to the provisions of section 22 of title 41: *Provided*, That nothing in this section shall be construed to waive the provisions of section 431 of title 18.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, § 9, 70 Stat. 891; renumbered title I, Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, § 202(a), 96 Stat. 282.)

## CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 170n of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, § 1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

**§ 2677. Availability of funds for travel expenses and transportation of personal effects, household goods, or automobiles**

Appropriated funds made available to the Department of State for expenses in connection with travel of personnel outside the continental United States, including travel of dependents and transportation of personal effects, household goods, or automobiles of such personnel shall be available for such expenses when any part of such travel or transportation begins in one fiscal year pursuant to travel orders issued in that year, notwithstanding the fact that such travel or transportation may not be completed during that same fiscal year.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, § 10, 70 Stat. 891; renumbered title I, Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, § 202(a), 96 Stat. 282.)

## CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 170o of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, § 1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

**§ 2678. Reduction in earmarks if appropriations are less than authorizations**

If the amount appropriated (or made available in the event of a sequestration order issued pursuant to the Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985 (Public Law 99-177; [2 U.S.C. 900 et seq.]) for a fiscal year pursuant to any authorization of appropriations provided by an Act other than an appropriation Act is less than the authorization amount and a provision of that Act provides that a specified amount of the authorization amount shall be available only for a certain purpose, then the amount so specified shall be deemed to be reduced for that fiscal year to the amount which bears the same ratio to the specified amount as the amount appropriated (or made available in the event of sequestration) bears to the authorization amount.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, § 11, as added Feb. 16, 1990, Pub. L. 101-246, title I, § 106, 104 Stat. 20.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985, referred to in text, is title II of Pub. L. 99-177, Dec. 12, 1985, 99 Stat. 1038, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 20 (§ 900 et seq.) of Title 2, The Congress. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 900 of Title 2 and Tables.

## PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 2678, acts Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, §11, 70 Stat. 892; Sept. 8, 1960, Pub. L. 86-723, §50, 74 Stat. 847; renumbered title I, Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, §202(a), 96 Stat. 282; Oct. 19, 1984, Pub. L. 98-533, title III, §303(b), 98 Stat. 2711, related to use of Government-owned vehicles for security purposes for travel by the Deputy Secretary of State, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 99-550, §2(d), Oct. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 3070.

**§ 2679. Maximum rates of per diem in lieu of subsistence payable to foreign participants in exchange of persons program or in program of furnishing technical information and assistance**

The Secretary of State, with the approval of the Office of Management and Budget, shall prescribe the maximum rates of per diem in lieu of subsistence (or of similar allowances therefor) payable while away from their own countries to foreign participants in any exchange of persons program, or in any program of furnishing technical information and assistance, under the jurisdiction of any Government agency, and said rates may be fixed without regard to any provision of law in limitation thereof.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, §12, 70 Stat. 892; 1970 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §102, eff. July 1, 1970, 35 F.R. 7959, 84 Stat. 2085; renumbered title I, Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, §202(a), 96 Stat. 282.)

## CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 170q of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, §1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

## TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

Functions vested by law (including reorganization plan) in Bureau of the Budget or Director of Bureau of the Budget transferred to President by section 101 of Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1970, eff. July 1, 1970, 35 F.R. 7959, 84 Stat. 2085. Section 102 of Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1970 redesignated Bureau of the Budget as Office of Management and Budget and offices of Director, Deputy Director, and Assistant Directors of Bureau of the Budget as Director, Deputy Director, and Assistant Directors, respectively, of Office of Management and Budget. Section 103 of Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1970 transferred all records, property, personnel, and funds of Bureau to Office of Management and Budget. See Part I of Reorganization Plan No. 2 of 1970, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Authority of Secretary of State under this section to prescribe certain maximum rates of per diem in lieu of subsistence (or of similar allowances therefor), without the approval, ratification, or other action of President, delegated to Secretary of State, see section 4 of Ex. Ord. No. 11609, July 22, 1971, 36 F.R. 13747, set out as a note under section 301 of Title 3, The President.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2508 of this title.

**§ 2679a. Procurement contracts****(a) Funding for periods not in excess of five years; conditions**

Any contract for the procurement of property or services, or both, for the Department of State or the Foreign Service which is funded on the basis of annual appropriations may nevertheless

be made for periods not in excess of 5 years when—

(1) appropriations are available and adequate for payment for the first fiscal year and for all potential cancellation costs; and

(2) the Secretary of State determines that—

(A) the need of the Government for the property or service being acquired over the period of the contract is reasonably firm and continuing;

(B) such a contract will serve the best interests of the United States by encouraging effective competition or promoting economies in performance and operation; and

(C) such a method of contracting will not inhibit small business participation.

**(b) Cancellation of contracts**

In the event that funds are not made available for the continuation of such a contract into a subsequent fiscal year, the contract shall be cancelled and any cancellation costs incurred shall be paid from appropriations originally available for the performance of the contract, appropriations currently available for the acquisition of similar property or services and not otherwise obligated, or appropriations made for such cancellation payments.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, §14, as added and renumbered title I, Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title I, §121, title II, §202(a), 96 Stat. 280, 282.)

## PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 2679a, acts Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, §14, as added Oct. 26, 1974, Pub. L. 93-475, §10(a)-(d), 88 Stat. 1441; amended Nov. 29, 1975, Pub. L. 94-141, title IV, §407(a), 89 Stat. 771; Aug. 17, 1977, Pub. L. 95-105, title IV, §410(a), 91 Stat. 854, set forth provisions respecting death guaranties for certain Foreign Service personnel, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2205(10), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2160. Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title. See section 3973 of this title.

Another prior section 14 of act Aug. 1, 1956, was classified to section 170s of former Title 5, Executive Departments and Government Officers and Employees, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 86-707, title V, §511(a)(2), Sept. 6, 1960, 74 Stat. 800. See section 5922(b) of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

**§ 2679b. Prohibition against fraudulent use of “Made in America” labels**

If it has been finally determined by a court or Federal agency that a person intentionally affixed a label bearing a “Made in America” inscription, or any inscription with the same meaning, to any product sold in or shipped to the United States that is not made in the United States, that person shall be ineligible to receive any contract or subcontract from the Department of State, pursuant to the debarment, suspension, and ineligibility procedures in subpart 9.4 of chapter 1 of title 48, Code of Federal Regulations.

(Pub. L. 102-138, title I, §195, Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 684.)

**§ 2679c. Prohibition on discriminatory contracts****(a) Prohibition**

(1) Except for real estate leases and as provided in subsection (b) of this section, the De-



partment of State may not enter into any contract that expends funds appropriated to the Department of State for an amount in excess of the small purchase threshold (as defined in section 403(11) of title 41)—

(A) with a foreign person that complies with the Arab League boycott of Israel, or

(B) with any foreign or United States person that discriminates in the award of subcontracts on the basis of religion.

(2) For purposes of this section—

(A) a foreign person complies with the boycott of Israel by Arab League countries when that foreign person takes or knowingly agrees to take any action, with respect to the boycott of Israel by Arab League countries, which section 2407(a) of title 50, Appendix, prohibits a United States person from taking, except that for purposes of this paragraph, the term “United States person” as used in subparagraphs (B) and (C) of section 2407(a)(1) of title 50, Appendix, shall be deemed to mean “person”; and

(B) the term “foreign person” means any person other than a United States person as defined in section 2415(2) of title 50, Appendix.

(3) For purposes of paragraph (1), a foreign person shall be deemed not to comply with the boycott of Israel by Arab League countries if that person, or the Secretary of State or his designee on the basis of available information, certifies that the person violates or otherwise does not comply with the boycott of Israel by Arab League countries by taking any actions prohibited by section 2407(a) of title 50, Appendix. Certification by the Secretary of State or his designee may occur only 30 days after notice has been given to the Congress that this certification procedure will be utilized at a specific overseas mission.

**(b) Waiver by Secretary of State**

The Secretary of State may waive the requirements of this section on a country-by-country basis for a period not to exceed one year upon certification to the Congress by the Secretary that such waiver is in the national interest and is necessary to carry on diplomatic functions of the United States. Each such certification shall include a detailed justification for the waiver with respect to each such country.

**(c) Responses to contract solicitations**

(1) Except as provided in paragraph (2) of this subsection, the Secretary of State shall ensure that any response to a solicitation for a bid or a request for a proposal, with respect to a contract covered by subsection (a) of this section, includes the following clause, in substantially the following form:

“ARAB LEAGUE BOYCOTT OF ISRAEL

“(a) DEFINITIONS.—As used in this clause—

“(1) the term ‘foreign person’ means any person other than a United States person as defined in paragraph (2); and

“(2) the term ‘United States person’ means any United States resident or national (other than an individual resident outside the United States and employed by other than a United

States person), any domestic concern (including any permanent domestic establishment of any foreign concern), and any foreign subsidiary or affiliate (including any permanent foreign establishment) of any domestic concern which is controlled in fact by such domestic concern, as determined under regulations of the President.

“(b) CERTIFICATION.—By submitting this offer, the Offeror certifies that it is not—

“(1) taking or knowingly agreeing to take any action, with respect to the boycott of Israel by Arab League countries, which section 8(a) of the Export Administration Act of 1979 (50 U.S.C. App. 2407(a)) prohibits a United States person from taking; or

“(2) discriminating in the award of subcontracts on the basis of religion.”

(2) An Offeror would not be required to include the certification required by paragraph (1), if the Offeror is deemed not to comply with the Arab League boycott of Israel by the Secretary of State or a designee on the basis of available information. Certification by the Secretary of State or a designee may occur only 30 days after notice has been given to the Congress that this certification procedure will be utilized at a specific overseas mission.

(3) The Secretary of State shall ensure that all State Department contract solicitations include a detailed explanation of the requirements of section 2407(a) of title 50, Appendix.

**(d) Review and termination**

(1) The Department of State shall conduct reviews of the certifications submitted pursuant to this section for the purpose of assessing the accuracy of the certifications.

(2) Upon complaint of any foreign or United States person of a violation of the certification as required by this section, filed with the Secretary of State, the Department of State shall investigate such complaint, and if such complaint is found to be correct and a violation of the certification has been found, all contracts with such violator shall be terminated for default as soon as practicable, and, for a period of two years thereafter, the State Department shall not enter into any contracts with such a violator.

**(e) United States Information Agency**

The provisions of this section shall apply to the United States Information Agency in the same manner and extent to which such provisions apply to the Department of State. In the application of this section to the United States Information Agency, the Director of the United States Information Agency or a designee shall have the authorities and responsibilities of the Secretary of State.

(Pub. L. 103-236, title V, §565, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 484.)

SHORT TITLE

Section 561 of Pub. L. 103-236 provided that: “This part [part C (§§561-565) of title V of Pub. L. 103-236, enacting this section and provisions set out as a note under section 2751 of this title] may be cited as the ‘Anti-Economic Discrimination Act of 1994.’”

**§ 2680. Appropriations for State Department; information to Congressional committees**

(a)(1) Notwithstanding any provision of law enacted before October 26, 1974, no money appropriated to the Department of State under any law shall be available for obligation or expenditure with respect to any fiscal year commencing on or after July 1, 1972—

(A) unless the appropriation thereof has been authorized by law enacted on or after February 7, 1972; or

(B) in excess of an amount prescribed by law enacted on or after such date.

(2) To the extent that legislation enacted after the making of an appropriation to the Department of State authorizes the obligation or expenditure thereof the limitation contained in paragraph (1) shall have no effect.

(3) The provisions of this section—

(A) shall not be superseded except by a provision of law enacted after February 7, 1972, which specifically repeals, modifies, or supercedes the provisions of this section; and

(B) shall not apply to, or affect in any manner, permanent appropriations, trust funds, and other similar accounts administered by the Department as authorized by law.

(b) The Department of State shall keep the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives fully and currently informed with respect to all activities and responsibilities within the jurisdiction of these committees. Any Federal department, agency, or independent establishment shall furnish any information requested by either such committee relating to any such activity or responsibility.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, §15, 70 Stat. 892; Feb. 7, 1972, Pub. L. 92-226, pt. IV, §407(b), 86 Stat. 35; July 13, 1972, Pub. L. 92-352, title I, §102, 86 Stat. 490; Oct. 26, 1974, Pub. L. 93-475, §11, 88 Stat. 1442; H. Res. 163, Mar. 19, 1975; renumbered title I, Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, §202(a), 96 Stat. 282.)

**CODIFICATION**

Section was formerly classified to section 170t of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, §1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

**AMENDMENTS**

1974—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 93-475 incorporated existing provisions into par. (1) preceding subpar. (A), and par. 3(B), added pars. (1)(A), (B), (2), and (3)(A), and substituted “enacted before October 26, 1974, no money appropriated to the Department of State under any law shall be available for obligation or expenditure with respect to any fiscal year commencing on or after July 1, 1972” of “no appropriation shall be made to the Department of State under any law for any fiscal year commencing on or after July 1, 1972, unless previously authorized by legislation hereafter enacted by the Congress”, in par. (1) preceding subpar. (A), and “section” for “subsection” in par. (3).

1972—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 92-352 inserted provisions that this subsection shall not apply to, or affect in any manner, permanent appropriations, trust funds, and other similar accounts administered by the Department as authorized by law.

Pub. L. 92-226 substituted provisions constituting subssecs. (a) and (b) and prohibiting any State Depart-

ment appropriation on and after July 1, 1972, without a prior congressional legislative authorization, and requiring the State Department and Federal agencies to furnish information to congressional committees for former provisions constituting the entire section and authorizing and making appropriations available for the State Department.

**CHANGE OF NAME**

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

**FUTURE ASSISTANCE PROJECTIONS**

Pub. L. 101-513, title V, §581, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2046, directed that the Congressional Presentation Documents of departments and agencies included within this Act should contain funding projections for each of its major program components for each of the three years following the year for which new budget or other authority was being requested and provided that the requirements of this section were effective for Congressional Presentation Documents submitted for fiscal year 1992.

**REPORT ON EXPENDITURES MADE FROM APPROPRIATION FOR EMERGENCIES IN DIPLOMATIC AND CONSULAR SERVICE**

Pub. L. 100-204, title I, §124, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1341, as amended by Pub. L. 102-138, title I, §114, Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 655, provided that: “The Secretary of State shall provide to the Committee on Foreign Relations and the Committee on Appropriations of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs [now Committee on International Relations] and the Committee on Appropriations of the House of Representatives within 30 days after the end of each quarter of the fiscal year a complete report, including amount, payee, and purpose, of all expenditures made from the appropriation for ‘Emergencies in the Diplomatic and Consular Service’ for that quarter. Items included in each such report concerning representation, official travel, and gifts shall be submitted in unclassified form.”

**INFORMATION-SHARING ARRANGEMENT BETWEEN DEPARTMENT OF STATE AND CONGRESSIONAL COMMITTEES**

Pub. L. 95-426, title I, §122, Oct. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 970, as amended by Pub. L. 97-241, title V, §505(a)(2), (b)(1), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 299, provided that: “The Congress finds that—

“(1) international political, economic, and other studies prepared systematically by analysts of the Department of State as needed background information for executive branch policymakers could be similarly valuable to the Committee on International Relations [now Foreign Affairs] of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate in fulfilling their responsibilities; and

“(2) a formal information-sharing arrangement between the Department of State and such congressional committees could therefore serve the national interest, provided that controls on dissemination are established which insure that neither the process of analysis nor necessary confidentiality is jeopardized.”

**CONGRESSIONAL PURPOSE RESPECTING LAWS RELATING TO DEPARTMENT OF STATE AND UNITED STATES INFORMATION AGENCY; FOREIGN RELATIONS; AND AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS**

Section 407(a) of Pub. L. 92-226 provided that: “It is the purpose of this section [amending sections 1476, 2680, and 2684 of this title] to enable the Congress generally, and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives in particular, to carry out the

purposes and intent of the Legislative Reorganization Act of 1946 and 1970 [see Short Title notes set out under section 72a of Title 2, The Congress], with respect to—

“(1) the analysis, appraisal, and evaluation of the application, administration, and execution of the laws relating to the Department of State and the United States Information Agency and of matters relating to the foreign relations of the United States; and

“(2) providing periodic authorizations of appropriations for that Department and Agency.”

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2696 of this title.

### § 2680-1. Deadline for responses to questions from Congressional committees

#### (a) In general

An officer or employee of the Department of State to whom a written or oral question is addressed by any member of a committee specified in subsection (b) of this section, acting within his official capacity, shall respond to such question within 21 days unless the Secretary of State submits a letter to such member explaining why a timely response cannot be made.

#### (b) Specified committees

The committees referred to in subsection (a) of this section are the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives.

(Pub. L. 102-138, title I, §196, Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 684.)

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

### § 2680-2. Facilitating access to Department of State building

#### (a) Procedures to facilitate access

The Department of State shall maintain procedures to ensure that the members and staff of the congressional committees of jurisdiction are granted easy access to the Department of State in the conduct of their duties.

#### (b) Parking

The Department of State shall also make available adequate parking for members and staff of the congressional committees of jurisdiction in order to facilitate attendance of meetings at the Department of State.

(Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §129, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 394.)

### § 2680a. Compensation for disability or death

Section 1651 of title 42 shall not apply with respect to such contracts as the Secretary of State may determine which are contracts with persons employed to perform work for the Department of State or the Foreign Service on an intermittent basis for not more than 90 days in a calendar year.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, §16, as added and renumbered title I, Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title I, §122, title II, §202(a), 96 Stat. 281, 282.)

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 2680a, acts Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, §16, as added Oct. 26, 1974, Pub. L. 93-475, §12, 88 Stat. 1442; amended Oct. 7, 1978, Pub. L. 95-426, title I, §117, 92 Stat. 969, related to authority and responsibility of chiefs of mission, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2205(10), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2160. Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title. See section 3927 of this title.

### § 2681. International broadcasting facilities; transfer to Department of State; acquisition of property

For the purpose of assuring continued operation of the facilities hereinafter described for international broadcasting as a means of achieving the objectives of the United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948 [22 U.S.C. 1431 et seq.] under authority of that Act, the Reconstruction Finance Corporation, as successor to Defense Plant Corporation, shall transfer, without regard to the provisions of the Surplus Property Act of 1944, as amended, and without reimbursement or transfer of funds, to the Secretary of State (hereinafter referred to as the “Secretary”) all of its right, title, and interest in and to the facilities known as Plancors 1805, 1985, and 1986 located in Butler County, Ohio, in the vicinity of Delano, California, and Dixon, California, respectively, together with the equipment and other property appurtenant thereto. For the purposes of sections 2681 to 2683 of this title, the Director of the United States Information Agency is authorized to acquire property or rights or interests therein necessary or desirable for the operation of such facilities by purchase, lease, gift, transfer, condemnation, or otherwise.

(July 9, 1949, ch. 301, §1, 63 Stat. 408; 1977 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §7(a)(19), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637; Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title III, §303(b), 96 Stat. 291.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948, referred to in text, is act Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, 62 Stat. 6, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 18 (§1431 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1431 of this title, and Tables.

The Surplus Property Act of 1944, referred to in text, is act Oct. 3, 1944, ch. 479, 58 Stat. 765, which was classified principally to sections 1611 to 1646 of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense, and was repealed effective July 1, 1949, with the exception of sections 1622, 1631, 1637, and 1641 of Title 50, Appendix, by act June 30, 1949, ch. 288, title VI, §602(a)(1), 63 Stat. 399, renumbered Sept. 5, 1950, ch. 849, §6(a), (b), 64 Stat. 583. Sections 1622 and 1641 were partially repealed by the 1949 act, and section 1622 is still set out in part in Title 50, Appendix. Section 1622(g) was repealed and reenacted as sections 47151 to 47153 of Title 49, Transportation, by Pub. L. 103-272, §1(d), 7(b), July 5, 1994, 108 Stat. 1278-1280, 1379. Section 1631 was repealed by act June 7, 1939, ch. 190, §6(e), as added by act July 23, 1946, ch. 590, 60 Stat. 599, and is covered by sections 98 et seq. of Title 50. Section 1637 was repealed by act June 25, 1948, ch. 645, §21, 62 Stat. 862, eff. Sept. 1, 1948, and is covered by section 3287 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure. Provisions of section 1641 not repealed by the the 1949 act were repealed by Pub. L. 87-256, §111(a)(1), Sept. 21, 1961,

75 Stat. 538, and are covered by chapter 33 (§2451 et seq.) of this title. The provisions of the Surplus Property Act of 1944 originally repealed by the the 1949 act are covered by chapter 10 (§471 et seq.) of Title 40, Public Buildings, Property, and Works.

#### CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 170a of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, §1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“Director of the United States Information Agency” substituted in text for “Director of the International Communication Agency” pursuant to section 303(b) of Pub. L. 97-241, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title. Previously, “Director of the International Communication Agency” substituted for “Secretary” pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, §7(a)(19), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637, set out under section 1461 of this title, effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by President, which transferred functions vested in Secretary of State, Department of State, or Director of United States Information Agency under sections 2681, 2682, and 2683 of this title to Director of International Communication Agency.

#### ABOLITION OF RECONSTRUCTION FINANCE CORPORATION

Section 6(a) of Reorg. Plan No. 1 of 1957, eff. June 30, 1957, 22 F.R. 4633, 71 Stat. 647, set out as a note under section 601 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, abolished the Reconstruction Finance Corporation.

#### AUTHORITY OF DIRECTOR OF UNITED STATES INFORMATION AGENCY

Exercise of authority available under sections 2681 to 2683 of this title by Director of United States Information Agency, see Ex. Ord. No. 10477, Aug. 1, 1953, 18 F.R. 4540, set out as a note under section 1472 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2682 of this title.

### § 2682. Liquidation and disposal of broadcasting facilities

Whenever the Director of the United States Information Agency finds that the operation of the facilities authorized by sections 2681 to 2683 of this title to be transferred is no longer necessary or desirable, he shall report such fact to Congress with his recommendations for the disposition of such facilities.

(July 9, 1949, ch. 301, §2, 63 Stat. 408; 1977 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §7(a)(19), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637; Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title III, §303(b), 96 Stat. 291.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 170b of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, §1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“Director of the United States Information Agency” substituted in text for “Director of the International Communication Agency” pursuant to section 303(b) of Pub. L. 97-241, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title. Previously, “Director of the International Communication Agency” substituted for “Secretary” pursuant to Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, §7(a)(19), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637, set out under section 1461 of this title, effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by President, which transferred functions

vested in Secretary of State, Department of State, or Director of United States Information Agency under sections 2681, 2682, and 2683 of this title to Director of International Communication Agency.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2681 of this title.

### § 2683. Assumption of obligations of operation of broadcasting facilities

The United States Information Agency shall assume all obligations of the Reconstruction Finance Corporation covering operations of said facilities, equipment, and appurtenant property outstanding at the date of transfer.

(July 9, 1949, ch. 301, §3, 63 Stat. 408; 1977 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §7(a)(19), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637; Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title III, §303(b), 96 Stat. 291.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 170c of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, §1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“United States Information Agency” substituted in text for “International Communication Agency” pursuant to section 303(b) of Pub. L. 97-241, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title. Previously, functions vested in Secretary of State, Department of State, or Director of United States Information Agency under sections 2681, 2682, and 2683 of this title transferred to Director of International Communication Agency by Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977, §7(a)(19), 42 F.R. 62461, 91 Stat. 1637, set out under section 1461 of this title, effective on or before July 1, 1978, at such time as specified by President. Section 5 of Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1977 authorized Director of International Communication Agency to delegate performance of any such transferred functions to any officer, employee, or unit of International Communication Agency. Accordingly, “International Communication Agency” was substituted for “Department of State”.

#### ABOLITION OF RECONSTRUCTION FINANCE CORPORATION

Section 6(a) of Reorg. Plan No. 1 of 1957, eff. June 30, 1957, 22 F.R. 4633, 71 Stat. 647, set out as a note under section 601 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, abolished the Reconstruction Finance Corporation.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2681, 2682 of this title.

### § 2684. Capital fund for Department of State to centralize reproduction, editorial, data processing, audiovisual and other services; maximum amount; operation of fund

#### (a) Establishment of fund

There is hereby established a working capital fund for the Department of State, which shall be available without fiscal year limitation, for expenses (including those authorized by the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [22 U.S.C. 3901 et seq.]) and equipment, necessary for maintenance and operation in the city of Washington and elsewhere of (1) central reproduction, editorial, data processing, audiovisual, library and administrative support services; (2) central services for supplies and equipment (including repairs); (3) such other administrative services as the Sec-

retary, with the approval of the Office of Management and Budget, determines may be performed more advantageously and more economically as central services; and (4) medical and health care services. Such fund shall also be available without fiscal year limitation to carry out the purposes of title II of this Act [22 U.S.C. 4301 et seq.]<sup>1</sup> The capital of the fund shall consist of the amount of the fair and reasonable value of such supply inventories, equipment, and other assets and inventories on order, pertaining to the services to be carried on by the fund, as the Secretary may transfer to the fund, less the related liabilities and unpaid obligations, together with any appropriations made for the purpose of providing capital. The fund shall be reimbursed, or credited with advance payments, from applicable appropriations and funds of the Department of State, other Federal agencies, and other sources authorized by law, for supplies and services at rates which will approximate the expense of operations, including accrual of annual leave and depreciation of plant and equipment of the fund. The fund shall also be credited with other receipts from sale or exchange of property or in payment for loss or damage to property held by the fund. There shall be transferred into the Treasury as miscellaneous receipts, as of the close of each fiscal year, earnings which the Secretary determines to be excess to the needs of the fund.

**(b) Charges to fund; credit to appropriations**

The current value of supplies returned to the working capital fund by a post, activity, or agency may be charged to the fund. The proceeds thereof shall, if otherwise authorized, be credited to current applicable appropriations and shall remain available for expenditures for the same purposes for which those appropriations are available. Credits may not be made to appropriations under this subsection as the result of capitalization of inventories.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, §13, as added Dec. 16, 1963, Pub. L. 88-205, pt. IV, §405, 77 Stat. 391; amended 1970 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §102, eff. July 1, 1970 35 F.R. 7959, 84 Stat. 2085; Feb. 7, 1972, Pub. L. 92-226, pt. IV, §407(c), 86 Stat. 35; Oct. 7, 1978, Pub. L. 95-426, title I, §109(a), 92 Stat. 966; Oct. 17, 1980, Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2201(b), 94 Stat. 2157; renumbered title I and amended Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, §§202(a), 203(a), 96 Stat. 282, 290; Feb. 16, 1990, Pub. L. 101-246, title I, §112, 104 Stat. 21.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Service Act of 1980, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 96-465, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2071, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 52 (§3901 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3901 of this title and Tables.

Title II of this Act, referred to in subsec. (a), is title II of act Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, as added Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, §202(b), 96 Stat. 283, known as the Foreign Missions Act, which is classified principally to chapter 53 (§4301 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of title II to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4301 of this title and Tables.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be followed by a period.

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 170u of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, §1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 101-246 inserted “and” before “(4)”, struck out “; and (5) services and supplies to carry out title II of this Act”, and inserted provision that the fund also be available without fiscal year limitation to carry out the purposes of title II of this Act.

1982—Subsec. (a)(5). Pub. L. 97-241, §203(a), added cl. (5).

1980—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 96-465 substituted “Foreign Service Act of 1980” for “Foreign Service Act of 1946, as amended”.

1978—Pub. L. 95-426 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a), substituted “central services” for “central supply services” in cl. (2), struck out “and” at end of cl. (2), inserted “; and (4) medical and health care services”, struck out “Not to exceed \$750,000 in net assets shall be transferred to the fund for purposes of providing capital” after “for the purpose of providing capital”, and added subsec. (b).

1972—Pub. L. 92-226 struck out last sentence authorizing appropriation of amounts necessary to provide capital for the fund. See section 2680 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1982 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 97-241 effective Oct. 1, 1982, see section 204 of Pub. L. 97-241, set out as an Effective Date note under section 4301 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-465 effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Section 109(b) of Pub. L. 95-426 provided that: “The amendments made by this section [amending this section] shall take effect on October 1, 1978.”

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

Functions vested by law (including reorganization plan) in Bureau of the Budget or Director of Bureau of the Budget transferred to President by section 101 of Reorg. Plan No. 2, of 1970, eff. July 1, 1970, 35 F.R. 7959, 84 Stat. 2085. Section 102 of Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1970 redesignated Bureau of the Budget as Office of Management and Budget and offices of Director, Deputy Director, and Assistant Directors of Bureau of the Budget as Director, Deputy Director, and Assistant Directors, respectively, of Office of Management and Budget. Section 103 of Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1970 transferred all records, property, personnel, and funds of Bureau of Office of Management and Budget. See Part I of Reorganization Plan No. 2 of 1970, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2703, 4308 of this title.

**§ 2684a. Capital Investment Fund**

**(a) Establishment**

There is established within the Department of State a Capital Investment Fund to provide for the procurement of information technology and other related capital investments for the Department of State and to ensure the efficient management, coordination, operation, and utilization of such resources.

**(b) Funding**

Funds otherwise available for the purposes of subsection (a) of this section may be deposited in such Fund.

**(c) Availability**

Amounts deposited into the Fund are authorized to remain available until expended.

**(d) Expenditures from Fund**

Amounts deposited in the Fund shall be available for expenditure to procure capital equipment and information technology.

**(e) Reprogramming procedures**

Funds credited to the Capital Investment Fund shall be treated as a reprogramming of funds under section 2706 of this title and shall not be available for obligation or expenditure except in compliance with the procedures applicable to such reprogrammings.

(Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §135, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 396.)

**§ 2685. Reimbursement for detailed State Department personnel**

(a) An Executive agency to which any officer or employee of the Department of State is detailed, assigned, or otherwise made available, shall reimburse the Department for the salary and allowances of each such officer or employee for the period the officer or employee is so detailed, assigned, or otherwise made available. However, if the Department of State has an agreement with an Executive agency or agencies providing for the detailing, assigning, or otherwise making available, of substantially the same numbers of officers and employees between the Department and the Executive agency or agencies, and such numbers with respect to a fiscal year are so detailed, assigned, or otherwise made available, or if the period for which the officer or employee is so detailed, assigned, or otherwise made available does not exceed one year, or if the number of officers and employees so detailed, assigned, or otherwise made available at any one time does not exceed fifteen and the period of any such detail, assignment, or availability of an officer or employee does not exceed two years, no reimbursement shall be required to be made under this section. Officers and employees of the Department of State who are detailed, assigned, or otherwise made available to another Executive agency for a period of not to exceed one year shall not be counted toward any personnel ceiling for the Department of State established by the Director of the Office of Management and Budget.

(b) For purposes of this section, "Executive agency" has the same meaning given that term by section 105 of title 5.

(Pub. L. 93-126, §11, Oct. 18, 1973, 87 Stat. 453; Pub. L. 95-426, title I, §118, Oct. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 969; Pub. L. 99-93, title I, §117, Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 412.)

## AMENDMENTS

1985—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99-93 inserted "or if the number of officers and employees so detailed, assigned, or otherwise made available at any one time does not exceed fifteen and the period of any such detail, assign-

ment, or availability of an officer or employee does not exceed two years," after "does not exceed one year,".

1978—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 95-426 substituted "does not exceed one year" for "does not exceed ninety days", and inserted provision excepting from any personnel ceiling for the Department of State any officers and employees who are detailed, etc., to another Executive agency for a period of not to exceed one year.

**§ 2686. Review of world-wide supply, demand, and price of basic raw and processed materials**

It is the sense of the Congress that the Secretary of State should, and he is authorized to, establish within the Department of State a bureau which shall be responsible for continuously reviewing (1) the supply, demand, and price, throughout the world, of basic raw and processed materials (including agricultural commodities), and (2) the effect of United States Government programs and policies (including tax policy) in creating or alleviating, or assisting in creating or alleviating, shortages of such materials. In conducting such review, the bureau should obtain information with respect to—

(A) the supply, demand, and price of each such material in each major importing, exporting, and producing country and region of the world in order to understand long-term and short-term trends in the supply, demand, and price of such materials;

(B) projected imports and exports of such materials on a country-by-country basis;

(C) unusual patterns or changes in connection with the purchase or sale of such materials;

(D) a list of such materials in short supply and an estimate of the amount of shortage;

(E) international geological, geophysical, and political conditions which may affect the supply of such materials; and

(F) other matters that the Secretary considers appropriate in carrying out this section.

(Pub. L. 93-475, §14, Oct. 26, 1974, 88 Stat. 1443.)

**§ 2686a. Appointment of Special Coordinator for water policy negotiations and water resources policy****(a) Designation**

The Secretary of State shall designate a Special Coordinator—

(1) to coordinate the United States Government response to international water resource disputes and needs;

(2) to represent the United States Government, whenever appropriate, in multilateral fora in discussions concerning access to fresh water; and

(3) to formulate United States policy to assist in the resolution of international problems posed by the lack of fresh water supplies.

**(b) Other responsibilities**

The individual designated under subsection (a) of this section may carry out the functions of subsection (a) of this section in addition to other assigned responsibilities.

(Pub. L. 102-138, title I, §180, Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 682.)

## AUTHORITY OF SECRETARY OF STATE

Except as otherwise provided, Secretary of State to have and exercise any authority vested by law in any

official or office of Department of State and references to such officials or offices deemed to refer to Secretary of State or Department of State, as appropriate, see section 2651a of this title and section 161(d) of Pub. L. 103-236, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

**§ 2687. Use of appropriated funds for unusual expenses of United States Representative to Organization of American States**

The Secretary of State is authorized to use appropriated funds for unusual expenses similar to those authorized by section 5913 of title 5 incident to the operation and maintenance of the living quarters of the United States Representative to the Organization of American States.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, §17, as added Nov. 29, 1975, Pub. L. 94-141, title I, §101(c), 89 Stat. 756; renumbered title I, Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, §202(a), 96 Stat. 282.)

**§ 2688. Ambassadors; criteria regarding selection and confirmation**

It is the sense of the Congress that the position of United States ambassador to a foreign country should be accorded to men and women possessing clearly demonstrated competence to perform ambassadorial duties. No individual should be accorded the position of United States ambassador to a foreign country primarily because of financial contributions to political campaigns.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, §18, as added Nov. 29, 1975, Pub. L. 94-141, title I, §104, 89 Stat. 757; renumbered title I, Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, §202(a), 96 Stat. 282.)

**§ 2689. American Sections, International Joint Commission, United States and Canada; funds for representation expenses and official entertainment within the United States**

Each fiscal year (beginning with fiscal year 1977), the Secretary of State may use funds appropriated for the American Sections, International Joint Commission, United States and Canada, for representation expenses and official entertainment within the United States for such American Sections.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, §19, as added July 12, 1976, Pub. L. 94-350, title I, §104, 90 Stat. 824; amended Oct. 7, 1978, Pub. L. 95-426, title I, §110(a), 92 Stat. 967; renumbered title I, Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, §202(a), 96 Stat. 282.)

AMENDMENTS

1978—Pub. L. 95-426 struck out “not to exceed \$1,500 of the” after “the Secretary of State may use”.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Section 110(b) of Pub. L. 95-426 provided that: “The amendment made by this section [amending this section] shall take effect on October 1, 1978.”

**§ 2690. Foreign gifts; audit; reports to Congress**

Any expenditure for any gift for any person of any foreign country which involves any funds made available to meet unforeseen emergencies arising in the Diplomatic and Consular Service shall be audited by the Comptroller General and reports thereon made to the Congress to such

extent and at such times as he may determine necessary. The representatives of the General Accounting Office shall have access to all books, accounts, records, reports, files, and all other papers, things, or property pertaining to such expenditure and necessary to facilitate the audit.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, §20, as added July 12, 1976, Pub. L. 94-350, title I, §116(a), 90 Stat. 827; renumbered title I, Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, §202(a), 96 Stat. 282.)

**§ 2691. Repealed. Pub. L. 101-649, title VI, § 603(a)(18), Nov. 29, 1990, 104 Stat. 5084**

Section, act Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, §21, as added Aug. 17, 1977, Pub. L. 95-105, title I, §112, 91 Stat. 848; amended Oct. 7, 1978, Pub. L. 95-426, title I, §119, 92 Stat. 970; Aug. 15, 1979, Pub. L. 96-60, title I, §109, 93 Stat. 397; renumbered title I, Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, §202(a), 96 Stat. 282, related to compliance with the Helsinki Final Act in the granting of nonimmigrant visas to aliens who are excludible from the United States by reason of membership in or affiliation with a proscribed organization but who are otherwise admissible, and provided that this section not apply to representatives of labor organizations that are instruments of a totalitarian state or aliens connected with the Palestine Liberation Organization.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Section repealed applicable to individuals entering United States on or after June 1, 1991, see section 601(e)(1) of Pub. L. 101-649, set out as an Effective Date of 1990 Amendment note under section 1101 of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality.

**§ 2692. Compensation for persons participating in State Department proceedings; availability of funds**

(a) The Secretary of State may compensate, pursuant to regulations which he shall prescribe, for the cost of participating in any proceeding or on any advisory committee or delegation of the Department of State, any organization or person—

(1) who is representing an interest which would not otherwise be adequately represented and whose participation is necessary for a fair determination of the issues taken as a whole; and

(2) who would otherwise be unable to participate in such proceeding or on such committee or delegation because such organization or person cannot afford to pay the costs of such participation.

(b) Of the funds appropriated for salaries and expenses for the Department of State, not to exceed \$250,000 shall be available in any fiscal year for compensation under this section to such organizations and persons.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, §22, as added Aug. 17, 1977, Pub. L. 95-105, title I, §113(a), 91 Stat. 848; renumbered title I, Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, §202(a), 96 Stat. 282.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 113(b) of Pub. L. 95-105 provided that: “Subsection (a) [enacting this section] shall become effective on October 1, 1977.”

**§ 2693. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(3), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2160**

Section, Pub. L. 95-105, title IV, § 413, Aug. 17, 1977, 91 Stat. 856, related to employment of family members abroad in non-career positions. See sections 3951, 3968, and 4026 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

**§ 2694. Limitation on purchase of gifts for foreign individuals; report to Speaker of the House and chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate**

(1) After September 30, 1977, no appropriated funds, other than funds from the "Emergencies in the Diplomatic and Consular Service" account of the Department of State, may be used to purchase any tangible gift of more than minimal value (as defined in section 7342(a)(5) of title 5) for any foreign individual unless such gift has been approved by the Congress.

(2) Beginning October 1, 1977, the Secretary of State shall annually transmit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate a report containing details on (1) any gifts of more than minimal value purchased with appropriated funds which were given to a foreign individual during the previous fiscal year, and (2) any other gifts of more than minimal value given by the United States Government to a foreign individual which were not obtained using appropriated funds.

(Pub. L. 95-105, title V, § 515(b), Aug. 17, 1977, 91 Stat. 866.)

**§ 2695. Administrative services**

**(a) Agreements**

Whenever the head of any Federal agency performing any foreign affairs functions (including, but not limited to, the Department of State, the United States Information Agency, the Agency for International Development, and the Arms Control and Disarmament Agency) determines that administrative services performed in common by the Department of State and one or more other such agencies may be performed more advantageously and more economically on a consolidated basis, the Secretary of State and the heads of the other agencies concerned may, subject to the approval of the Director of the Office of Management and Budget, conclude an agreement which provides for the transfer to and consolidation within the Department or within one of the other agencies concerned of so much of the functions, personnel, property, records, and funds of the Department and of the other agencies concerned as may be necessary to enable the performance of those administrative services on a consolidated basis for the benefit of all agencies concerned. Agreements for consolidation of administrative services under this section shall provide for reimbursement or advances of funds from the agency receiving the service to the agency performing the service in amounts which will approximate the expense of providing administrative services for the serviced agency.

**(b) Payment**

(1) A Federal agency which obtains administrative services from the Department of State pursuant to an agreement authorized under subsection (a) of this section shall make full and prompt payment for such services through advance of funds or reimbursement.

(2) The Secretary of State shall bill each Federal agency for amounts due for services provided pursuant to subsection (a) of this section. The Secretary shall notify a Federal agency which has not made full payment for services within 90 days after billing that services to the agency will be suspended or terminated if full payment is not made within 180 days after the date of notification. Except as provided under paragraph (3), the Secretary shall suspend or terminate services to a Federal agency which has not made full payment for services under this section 180 days after the date of notification. Any costs associated with a suspension or termination of services shall be the responsibility of, and shall be billed to, the Federal agency.

(3) The Secretary of State may waive the requirement for suspension or termination under paragraph (2) with respect to such services as the Secretary determines are necessary to ensure the protection of life and the safety of United States Government property. A waiver may be issued for a period not to exceed one year and may be renewed.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, § 23, as added Oct. 7, 1978, Pub. L. 95-426, title I, § 111(a), 92 Stat. 967; renumbered title I and amended Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, § 202(a), title III, § 303(b), 96 Stat. 282, 291; Oct. 28, 1991, Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 118, 105 Stat. 657.)

AMENDMENTS

1991—Pub. L. 102-138 inserted section catchline, designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and inserted heading, and added subsec. (b).

CHANGE OF NAME

"United States Information Agency" substituted in subsec. (a) for "International Communication Agency" pursuant to section 303(b) of Pub. L. 97-241, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 111(b) of Pub. L. 95-426 provided that: "The amendment made by this section [enacting this section] shall take effect on October 1, 1978."

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3924 of this title.

**§ 2695a. Foreign language services**

**(a) Surcharge for certain foreign language services**

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Secretary of State is authorized to require the payment of an appropriate fee, surcharge, or reimbursement for providing other Federal agencies with foreign language translation and interpretation services.

**(b) Use of funds**

Funds collected under the authority of subsection (a) of this section shall be deposited as an offsetting collection to any Department of



State appropriation to recover the cost of providing translation or interpretation services in any foreign language. Such funds may remain available until expended.

(Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §193, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 419.)

**§ 2696. Nondiscretionary personnel costs, currency fluctuations, and other contingencies**

**(a) Additional appropriations**

There are authorized to be appropriated for the Department of State, in addition to amounts otherwise authorized to be appropriated for the Department, such sums as may be necessary for any fiscal year for increases in salary, pay, retirement, and other employee benefits authorized by law.

**(b) Appropriations authorization based on currency fluctuations**

(1) In order to maintain the levels of program activity for the Department of State provided for each fiscal year by the annual authorizing legislation, there are authorized to be appropriated for the Department of State such sums as may be necessary to offset adverse fluctuations in foreign currency exchange rates, or overseas wage and price changes, which occur after November 30 of the earlier of—

(A) the calendar year which ended during the fiscal year preceding such fiscal year, or

(B) the calendar year which preceded the calendar year during which the authorization of appropriations for such fiscal year was enacted.

(2) In carrying out this subsection, there may be established a Buying Power Maintenance account.

(3) In order to eliminate substantial gains to the approved levels of overseas operations for the Department of State, the Secretary of State shall transfer to the Buying Power Maintenance account such amounts in any appropriation account under the heading "Administration of Foreign Affairs" as the Secretary determines are excessive to the needs of the approved level of operations under that appropriation account because of fluctuations in foreign currency exchange rates or changes in overseas wages and prices.

(4) In order to offset adverse fluctuations in foreign currency exchange rates or overseas wage and price changes, the Secretary of State may transfer from the Buying Power Maintenance account to any appropriation account under the heading "Administration of Foreign Affairs" such amounts as the Secretary determines are necessary to maintain the approved level of operations under that appropriation account.

(5) Funds transferred by the Secretary of State from the Buying Power Maintenance account to another account shall be merged with and be available for the same purpose, and for the same time period, as the funds in that other account. Funds transferred by the Secretary from another account to the Buying Power Maintenance account shall be merged with the funds in the Buying Power Maintenance account and shall be available for the purposes of that account until expended.

(6) Any restriction contained in an appropriation Act or other provision of law limiting the amounts available for the Department of State that may be obligated or expended shall be deemed to be adjusted to the extent necessary to offset the net effect of fluctuations in foreign currency exchange rates or overseas wage and price changes in order to maintain approved levels.

(7)(A) Subject to the limitations contained in this paragraph, not later than the end of the fifth fiscal year after the fiscal year for which funds are appropriated or otherwise made available for an account under "Administration of Foreign Affairs", the Secretary of State may transfer any unobligated balance of such funds to the Buying Power Maintenance account.

(B) The balance of the Buying Power Maintenance account may not exceed \$100,000,000 as a result of any transfer under this paragraph.

(C) Any transfer pursuant to this paragraph shall be treated as a reprogramming of funds under section 2706 of this title and shall be available for obligation or expenditure only in accordance with the procedures under such section.

(D) The authorities contained in this section may only be exercised to such an extent and in such amounts as specifically provided for in advance in appropriations Acts.

**(c) Availability of appropriations until expended**

Amounts authorized to be appropriated for a fiscal year for the Department of State or to the Secretary of State are authorized to be made available until expended.

**(d) Accounts subject to percentage limitation**

(1) Subject to paragraphs (2) and (3), funds authorized to be appropriated for any account of the Department of State in the Department of State Appropriations Act, for either fiscal year of any two-year authorization cycle may be appropriated for such fiscal year for any other account of the Department of State.

(2) Amounts appropriated for the "Diplomatic and Consular Programs" account may not exceed by more than 5 percent the amount specifically authorized to be appropriated for such account for a fiscal year. No other appropriations account may exceed by more than 10 percent the amount specifically authorized to be appropriated for such account for a fiscal year.

(3) The requirements and limitations of section 2680 of this title shall not apply to the appropriation of funds pursuant to this subsection.

**(e) Availability of funds for twelve-month contracts to be performed in two fiscal years**

Amounts authorized to be appropriated for a fiscal year for the Department of State or to the Secretary of State are authorized to be obligated for twelve-month contracts which are to be performed in two fiscal years, if the total amount for such contracts is obligated in the earlier fiscal year.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, §24, as added Aug. 15, 1979, Pub. L. 96-60, title I, §105(a), 93 Stat. 396; renumbered title I and amended Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title I, §112(a), title II, §202(a), 96 Stat. 277, 282; Feb. 16, 1990, Pub. L. 101-246, title I, §107, 104 Stat. 21; Oct. 28, 1991, Pub. L. 102-138,

title I, § 117(a), (c), 105 Stat. 656, 657; Apr. 30, 1994, Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 122(a), 108 Stat. 392.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (b)(7)(E). Pub. L. 103-236, § 122(a)(1), struck out subpar. (E) which read as follows: “This paragraph shall cease to have effect after September 30, 1993.”

Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 103-236, § 122(a)(2), substituted “either fiscal year” for “the second fiscal year” and “such fiscal year” for “such second fiscal year”.

Subsec. (d)(2). Pub. L. 103-236, § 122(a)(3), amended first sentence generally. Prior to amendment, first sentence read as follows: “Amounts appropriated for the ‘Salaries and Expenses’ and ‘Acquisition and Maintenance of Buildings Abroad’ accounts may not exceed by more than 5 percent the amounts specifically authorized to be appropriated for each such account for a fiscal year.”

Subsec. (d)(4). Pub. L. 103-236, § 122(a)(4), struck out par. (4) which read as follows: “This subsection shall cease to have effect after September 30, 1993.”

1991—Subsec. (b)(7). Pub. L. 102-138, § 117(a), added par. (7).

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 102-138, § 117(c), amended subsec. (d) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (d) read as follows: “Amounts authorized to be appropriated for the Department of State for a fiscal year for the ‘Administration of Foreign Affairs’ account, the ‘International Organizations and Conferences’ account, the ‘International Commissions’ account, or the ‘Migration and Refugee Assistance’ account may be appropriated for that fiscal year for any other such account, except that the total amount appropriated for a fiscal year for any such account may not exceed by more than 10 percent the amount specifically authorized to be appropriated for that account for that fiscal year.”

1990—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 101-246 added subsec. (e).

1982—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 97-241, § 112(a), designated existing provision as par. (1), substituted provision authorizing appropriations to offset adverse fluctuations in foreign currency exchange rates and overseas wage and price changes which occur after Nov. 30 of the earlier of the calendar year which ended during the fiscal year preceding such fiscal year or the calendar year which preceded the calendar year during which the authorization of appropriations for such fiscal year was enacted, for provision authorizing appropriations to offset adverse fluctuations in foreign currency exchange rates occurring after Nov. 30 of the preceding fiscal year, and added pars. (2) to (6).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 105(b) of Pub. L. 96-60 provided that: “The amendment made by subsection (a) [enacting this section] shall take effect on October 1, 1979.”

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4851 of this title.

### § 2697. Acceptance of gifts on behalf of United States

#### (a) Unconditional and conditional gifts

The Secretary of State may accept on behalf of the United States gifts made unconditionally by will or otherwise for the benefit of the Department of State (including the Foreign Service) or for the carrying out of any of its functions. Conditional gifts may be so accepted at the discretion of the Secretary, and the principal of and income from any such conditional gift shall be held, invested, reinvested, and used in accordance with its conditions, except that no gift shall be accepted which is conditioned upon any expenditure which will not be met by the gift or the income from the gift unless such

expenditure has been approved by Act of Congress.

#### (b) Disposition

Any unconditional gift of money accepted under subsection (a) of this section, the income from any gift property held under subsection (c) or (d) of this section (except income made available for expenditure under subsection (d)(2) of this section), the net proceeds from the liquidation of gift property under subsection (c) or (d) of this section, and the proceeds of insurance on any gift property which are not used for its restoration, shall be deposited in the Treasury of the United States. Such funds are hereby appropriated and shall be held in trust by the Secretary of the Treasury for the benefit of the Department of State (including the Foreign Service). The Secretary of the Treasury may invest and reinvest such funds in interest-bearing obligations of the United States or in obligations guaranteed as to both principal and interest by the United States. Such funds and the income from such investments shall be available for expenditure in the operation of the Department of State (including the Foreign Service) and the performance of its functions, subject to the same examination and audit as is provided for appropriations made for the Foreign Service by the Congress, but shall not be expended for representational purposes at United States missions except in accordance with the conditions that apply to appropriated funds.

#### (c) Evidences of unconditional gift of intangible personal property

The evidences of any unconditional gift of intangible personal property (other than money) accepted under subsection (a) of this section, shall be deposited with the Secretary of the Treasury who may hold or liquidate them, except that they shall be liquidated upon the request of the Secretary of State whenever necessary to meet payments required in the operation of the Department of State (including the Foreign Service) or the performance of its functions.

#### (d) Use of real property or tangible personal property received unconditionally

(1) The Secretary of State shall hold any real property or any tangible personal property accepted unconditionally pursuant to subsection (a) of this section and shall either use such property for the operation of the Department of State (including the Foreign Service) and the performance of its functions or lease or hire such property, except that any such property not required for the operation of the Department of State (including the Foreign Service) or the performance of its functions may be liquidated by the Secretary of State whenever in the judgment of the Secretary of State the purposes of the gift will be served thereby. The Secretary of State may insure any property held under this subsection. Except as provided in paragraph (2), the Secretary shall deposit the income from any property held under this subsection with the Secretary of the Treasury as provided in subsection (b) of this section.

(2) The income from any real property or tangible personal property held under this sub-

section shall be available for expenditure at the discretion of the Secretary of State for the maintenance, preservation, or repair and insurance of such property and any proceeds from insurance may be used to restore the property insured.

**(e) Taxation**

For the purpose of Federal income, estate, and gift taxes, any gift, devise, or bequest accepted under this section shall be deemed to be a gift, devise, or bequest to and for the use of the United States.

**(f) Availability of statutory authorities to Directors of other agencies**

The authorities available to the Secretary of State under this section with respect to the Department of State shall be available to the Director of the United States Information Agency and the Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency with respect to their respective agencies.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, § 25, as added Oct. 17, 1980, Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2201(a), 94 Stat. 2153; renumbered title I and amended Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, § 202(a), title III, § 303(b), 96 Stat. 282, 291; Dec. 22, 1987, Pub. L. 100-204, title I, § 125, 101 Stat. 1341.)

AMENDMENTS

1987—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 100-204 inserted “, but shall not be expended for representational purposes at United States missions except in accordance with the conditions that apply to appropriated funds” before period at end of last sentence.

CHANGE OF NAME

“Director of the United States Information Agency” substituted for “Director of the International Communication Agency” in subsec. (f), pursuant to section 303(b) of Pub. L. 97-241, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as a note under section 3901 of this title.

OFFICIAL RESIDENCE OF SECRETARY OF STATE

Section 132 of Pub. L. 100-204 provided that: “The Department of State shall not solicit or receive funds for the construction, purchase, lease or rental of, nor any gift or bequest of real property or any other property for the purpose of providing living quarters for the Secretary of State.”

Pub. L. 99-93, title I, § 130, Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 420, provided that:

“(a) CONGRESSIONAL REVIEW.—It is the sense of the Congress that the United States should not accept a gift of any house or other place of residence for the purpose of providing an official residence for the Secretary of State unless the Congress has had an opportunity to review the proposed gift.

“(b) STUDY AND REPORT.—The Secretary of State shall conduct a study of any offer of a gift for the purpose of providing a place of official residence for the Secretary of State. Such study shall include an examination of the costs to the United States associated with accepting such gift, including the costs of acquisition, maintenance, security, and daily operation of a residence. The Secretary shall report the results of any study conducted under this section to the Committee on Foreign Affairs [now Committee on International Relations] and the Committee on Public Works and

Transportation [now Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure] of the House of Representatives and to the Committee on Foreign Relations and the Committee on Environment and Public Works of the Senate.”

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2056 of this title; title 26 sections 170, 2055.

**§ 2698. Procurement of legal services**

(a) The Secretary of State may, without regard to section 3106 of title 5, authorize a principal officer of the Foreign Service to procure legal services whenever such services are required for the protection of the interests of the Government or to enable a member of the Service to carry on the member’s work efficiently.

(b) The authority available to the Secretary of State under this section shall be available to the Director of the United States Information Agency, the chairman of the Board for International Broadcasting, and the Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency with respect to their respective agencies.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, § 26, as added Oct. 17, 1980, Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2201(a), 94 Stat. 2154; renumbered title I, Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, § 202(a), 96 Stat. 282; Feb. 16, 1990, Pub. L. 101-246, title III, § 303, 104 Stat. 64.)

AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 101-246 substituted “United States Information Agency, the chairman of the Board for International Broadcasting,” for “International Communication Agency”.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as a note under section 3901 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2509 of this title.

**§ 2699. Employment opportunities for family members**

(a) In order to expand employment opportunities for family members of United States Government personnel assigned abroad, the Secretary of State shall seek to conclude such bilateral and multilateral agreements as will facilitate the employment of such family members in foreign economies.

(b) Any member of a family of a member of the Foreign Service may accept gainful employment in a foreign country unless such employment—

(1) would violate any law of such country or of the United States; or

(2) could, as certified in writing by the United States chief of mission to such country, damage the interests of the United States.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, § 27, as added Oct. 17, 1980, Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2201(a), 94 Stat. 2154; renumbered title I, Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, § 202(a), 96 Stat. 282.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as a note under section 3901 of this title.

**§ 2700. Use of vehicles**

The Secretary of State may authorize the principal officer of a Foreign Service post to provide for the use of Government owned or leased vehicles located at that post for transportation of United States Government employees and their families when public transportation is unsafe or not available or when such use is advantageous to the Government.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, § 28, as added Oct. 17, 1980, Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2201(a), 94 Stat. 2154; renumbered title I, Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, § 202(a), 96 Stat. 282.)

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as a note under section 3901 of this title.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 31 section 1344.

**§ 2701. Educational facilities**

Whenever the Secretary of State determines that educational facilities are not available, or that existing educational facilities are inadequate, to meet the needs of children of United States citizens stationed outside the United States who are engaged in carrying out Government activities, the Secretary may, in such manner as he deems appropriate and under such regulations as he may prescribe, establish, operate, and maintain primary schools, and school dormitories and related educational facilities for primary and secondary schools, outside the United States, make grants of funds for such purposes, or otherwise provide for such educational facilities. The authorities of the Foreign Service Buildings Act, 1926 [22 U.S.C. 292 et seq.], and of paragraphs (h) and (i) of section 2670 of this title, may be utilized by the Secretary in providing assistance for educational facilities. Such assistance may include hiring, transporting, and payment of teachers and other necessary personnel.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, § 29, as added Oct. 17, 1980, Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2201(a), 94 Stat. 2154; renumbered title I, Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, § 202(a), 96 Stat. 282.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Service Buildings Act, 1926, referred to in text, is act May 7, 1926, ch. 250, 44 Stat. 403, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 8 (§ 292 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 299 of this title and Tables.

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as a note under section 3901 of this title.

**§ 2702. Malpractice protection****(a) Exclusiveness of designated remedies**

The remedy—

(1) against the United States provided by sections 1346(b) and 2672 of title 28, or

(2) through proceedings for compensation or other benefits from the United States as pro-

vided by any other law, where the availability of such benefits precludes a remedy under such sections,

for damages for personal injury, including death, allegedly arising from malpractice or negligence of a physician, dentist, nurse, pharmacist, or paramedical (including medical and dental assistants and technicians, nursing assistants, and therapists) or other supporting personnel of the Department of State in furnishing medical care or related services, including the conducting of clinical studies or investigations, while in the exercise of his or her duties in or for the Department of State or any other Federal department, agency, or instrumentality shall be exclusive of any other civil action or proceeding by reason of the same subject matter against such physician, dentist, nurse, pharmacist, or paramedical or other supporting personnel (or his or her estate) whose act or omission gave rise to such claim.

**(b) Defense of civil actions by United States; delivery of process; furnishing of copies of pleadings**

The United States Government shall defend any civil action or proceeding brought in any court against any person referred to in subsection (a) of this section (or his or her estate) for any such damage or injury. Any such person against whom such civil action or proceeding is brought shall deliver, within such time after date of service or knowledge of service as may be determined by the Attorney General, all process served upon him or her or an attested true copy thereof to whomever was designated by the Secretary to receive such papers. Such person shall promptly furnish copies of the pleading and process therein to the United States attorney for the district embracing the place wherein the proceeding is brought, to the Attorney General, and to the Secretary.

**(c) Removal of actions; remand or dismissal; suspension of limitations**

Upon a certification by the Attorney General that the defendant was acting within the scope of his or her employment in or for the Department of State or any other Federal department, agency, or instrumentality at the time of the incident out of which the suit arose, any such civil action or proceeding commenced in a State court shall be removed without bond at any time before trial by the Attorney General to the district court of the United States of the district and division embracing the place wherein it is pending and the proceeding deemed a tort action brought against the United States under the provisions of title 28, and all references thereto. Should a United States district court determine on a hearing on a motion to remand held before a trial on the merits that the case so removed is one in which a remedy by suit within the meaning of subsection (a) of this section is not available against the United States, the case shall be remanded to the State court except that where such remedy is precluded because of the availability of a remedy through proceedings for compensation or other benefits from the United States as provided by any other law, the case shall be dismissed, but in that event, the run-

ning of any limitation of time for commencing, or filing an application or claim in, such proceedings for compensation or other benefits shall be deemed to have been suspended during the pendency of the civil action or proceeding under this section.

**(d) Compromise or settlement of claims**

The Attorney General may compromise or settle any claim asserted in such civil action or proceeding in the manner provided in section 2677 of title 28, and with the same effect.

**(e) Inapplicability of section 2680(h) of title 28**

For purposes of this section, the provisions of section 2680(h) of title 28, shall not apply to any tort enumerated therein arising out of negligence in the furnishing of medical care or related services, including the conducting of clinical studies or investigations.

**(f) Holding harmless or providing for liability insurance**

The Secretary may, to the extent he deems appropriate, hold harmless or provide liability insurance for any person to whom the immunity provisions of subsection (a) of this section apply, for damages for personal injury, including death, negligently caused by any such person while acting within the scope of his or her office or employment and as a result of the furnishing of medical care or related services, including the conducting of clinical studies or investigations, if such person is assigned to a foreign area or detailed for service with other than a Federal agency or institution, or if the circumstances are such as are likely to preclude the remedies of third persons against the United States provided by sections 1346(b) and 2672 of title 28, for such damage or injury.

**(g) Medical care or related service within scope of employment**

For purposes of this section, any medical care or related service covered by this section and performed abroad by a covered person at the direction or with the approval of the United States chief of mission or other principal representative of the United States in the area shall be deemed to be within the scope of employment of the individual performing the service.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, § 30, as added Oct. 17, 1980, Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2201(a), 94 Stat. 2155; renumbered title I, Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, § 202(a), 96 Stat. 282.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as a note under section 3901 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2509 of this title.

**§ 2703. Services and facilities for employees at posts abroad**

**(a) Non-Government-operated services; applicability of other provisions of law**

The Secretary of State may authorize and assist in the establishment, maintenance, and operation by civilian officers and employees of the

Government of non-Government-operated services and facilities at posts abroad, including the furnishing of space, utilities, and properties owned or leased by the Government for use by its diplomatic, consular, and other missions and posts abroad. The provisions of the Foreign Service Buildings Act, 1926 (22 U.S.C. 292-300) and section 2684 of this title may be utilized by the Secretary in providing such assistance.

**(b) Emergency commissary and mess services**

The Secretary may establish and maintain emergency commissary or mess services in places abroad where, in the judgment of the Secretary, such services are necessary temporarily to insure the effective and efficient performance of official duties and responsibilities. Reimbursements incident to the maintenance and operation of commissary or mess service under this subsection shall be at not less than cost as determined by the Secretary and shall be used as working funds, except that an amount equal to the amount expended for such services shall be covered into the Treasury as miscellaneous receipts.

**(c) Availability; duplication of facilities and services**

Services and facilities established under this section shall be made available, insofar as practicable, to officers and employees of all agencies and their dependents who are stationed in the locality abroad, and, where determined by the Secretary to be appropriate due to exceptional circumstances, to United States citizens hired outside of the host country to serve as teaching staff for such dependents abroad. Such services and facilities shall not be established in localities where another agency operates similar services or facilities unless the Secretary determines that additional services or facilities are necessary. Other agencies shall to the extent practicable avoid duplicating the facilities and services provided or assisted by the Secretary under this section.

**(d) Charges**

Charges at any post abroad for a service or facility provided, authorized or assisted under this section shall be at the same rate for all civilian personnel of the Government serviced thereby, and all charges for supplies furnished to such a service or facility abroad by any agency shall be at the same rate as that charged by the furnishing agency to its comparable civilian services and facilities.

**(e) Child care facilities**

The Secretary of State may make grants to child care facilities, to offset in part the cost of such care, in Moscow and at no more than five other posts abroad where the Secretary determines that due to extraordinary circumstances such facilities are necessary to the efficient operation of the post. In making that determination, the Secretary shall take into account factors such as—

(1) whether Foreign Service spouses are encouraged to work at the post because—

(A) the number of members of the post is subject to a ceiling imposed by the receiving country; and

(B) Foreign Service nationals are not employed at the post; and

(2) whether local child care is available.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, §31, as added Oct. 17, 1980, Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2201(a), 94 Stat. 2156; renumbered title I, Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, §202(a), 96 Stat. 282; amended Feb. 16, 1990, Pub. L. 101-246, title I, §147, 104 Stat. 38; Oct. 28, 1991, Pub. L. 102-138, title I, §§121, 144, 105 Stat. 658, 668; Apr. 30, 1994, Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §124, 108 Stat. 393.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Service Buildings Act, 1926, referred to in subsec. (a), is act May 7, 1926, ch. 250, 44 Stat. 403, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 8 (§292 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 299 of this title and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 103-236 substituted “The” for “For the fiscal years 1992 and 1993, the” in introductory provisions.

1991—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 102-138, §144, inserted before period at end of first sentence “, and, where determined by the Secretary to be appropriate due to exceptional circumstances, to United States citizens hired outside of the host country to serve as teaching staff for such dependents abroad”.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 102-138, §121, substituted “1992 and 1993” for “1990 and 1991” in introductory provisions.

1990—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 101-246 added subsec. (e).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as a note under section 3901 of this title.

### § 2704. Subsistence expenses

The Secretary of State may pay, without regard to section 5702 of title 5, subsistence expenses of (1) special agents of the Department of State who are on authorized protective missions, and (2) members of the Foreign Service and employees of the Department who are required to spend extraordinary amounts of time in travel status. The authorities available to the Secretary of State under this section with respect to the Department of State shall be available to the Director of the United States Information Agency and the Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency with respect to their respective agencies, except that the authority of clause (2) shall be available with respect to those agencies only in the case of members of the Foreign Service and employees of the agency who are performing security-related functions abroad.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, §32, as added Oct. 17, 1980, Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2201(a), 94 Stat. 2157; renumbered title I, Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, §202(a), 96 Stat. 282; Oct. 19, 1984, Pub. L. 98-533, title III, §303(c), 98 Stat. 2711; Aug. 16, 1985, Pub. L. 99-93, title I, §125(b), 99 Stat. 417.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1985—Pub. L. 99-93 substituted “special agents” for “security officers”.

1984—Pub. L. 98-533 inserted “The authorities available to the Secretary of State under this section with

respect to the Department of State shall be available to the Director of the United States Information Agency and the Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency with respect to their respective agencies, except that the authority of clause (2) shall be available with respect to those agencies only in the case of members of the Foreign Service and employees of the agency who are performing security-related functions abroad.”

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as a note under section 3901 of this title.

### § 2705. Documentation of citizenship

The following documents shall have the same force and effect as proof of United States citizenship as certificates of naturalization or of citizenship issued by the Attorney General or by a court having naturalization jurisdiction:

(1) A passport, during its period of validity (if such period is the maximum period authorized by law), issued by the Secretary of State to a citizen of the United States.

(2) The report, designated as a “Report of Birth Abroad of a Citizen of the United States”, issued by a consular officer to document a citizen born abroad.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, §33, as added and renumbered title I, Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title I, §117, title II, §202(a), 96 Stat. 279, 282.)

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 33 of act Aug. 1, 1956, was renumbered section 34 by section 117 of Pub. L. 97-241, and subsequently renumbered, and set out as a Short Title of 1956 Amendment note under section 2651 of this title, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 102-138, title I, §111(1), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 654.

#### RECORD OF PLACE OF BIRTH FOR TAIWANESE-AMERICANS

Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §132, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 395, as amended by Pub. L. 103-415, §1(r), Oct. 25, 1994, 108 Stat. 4302, provided that: “For purposes of the registration of birth or certification of nationality or issuance of a passport of a United States citizen born in Taiwan, the Secretary of State shall permit the place of birth to be recorded as Taiwan.”

### § 2706. Reprograming of funds; notice requirements

(a) Unless the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate are notified fifteen days in advance of the proposed reprogramming, funds appropriated for the Department of State shall not be available for obligation or expenditure through any reprogramming of funds—

- (1) which creates new programs;
- (2) which eliminates a program, project, or activity;
- (3) which increases funds or personnel by any means for any project or activity for which funds have been denied or restricted by the Congress;
- (4) which relocates an office or employees;
- (5) which reorganizes offices, programs, or activities;
- (6) which involves contracting out functions which had been performed by Federal employees; or

(7) which involves a reprogramming in excess of \$1,000,000 or 10 per centum, whichever is less, and which (A) augments existing programs, projects, or activities, (B) reduces by 10 per centum or more the funding for any existing program, project, activity, or personnel approved by the Congress, or (C) results from any general savings from a reduction in personnel which would result in a change in existing programs, activities, or projects approved by the Congress.

(b) Funds appropriated for the Department of State may not be available for obligation or expenditure through any reprogramming described in subsection (a) of this section during the period which is the last 15 days in which such funds are available unless notice of such reprogramming is made before such period.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, § 34, as added Nov. 22, 1983, Pub. L. 98-164, title I, § 123, 97 Stat. 1025; amended Dec. 22, 1987, Pub. L. 100-204, title I, § 121, 101 Stat. 1339; Oct. 28, 1991, Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 117(b), 105 Stat. 657; Apr. 30, 1994, Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 122(c), 108 Stat. 392.)

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 34 of act Aug. 1, 1956, was renumbered sections 35 and 36 by sections 123 and 124 of Pub. L. 98-164, and subsequently renumbered, and set out as a Short Title of 1956 Amendment note under section 2651 of this title, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 111(1), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 654.

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (a)(7). Pub. L. 103-236 substituted “\$1,000,000” for “\$500,000”.

1991—Subsec. (a)(7). Pub. L. 102-138 substituted “\$500,000” for “\$250,000”.

1987—Pub. L. 100-204 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsec. (b).

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2684a, 2696, 2710, 2720, 4855 of this title.

### § 2707. International communications and information policy; duties of Secretary of State

(a) Repealed. Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 162(k)(1)(A), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 408.

(b) The Secretary of State shall be responsible for formulation, coordination, and oversight of foreign policy related to international communications and information policy. The Secretary of State shall—

(1) exercise primary authority for the conduct of foreign policy with respect to such telecommunications functions, including the determination of United States positions and the conduct of United States participation in negotiations with foreign governments and international bodies. In exercising this responsibility, the Secretary shall coordinate with other agencies as appropriate, and, in particular, shall give full consideration to the authority vested by law or Executive order in the

Federal Communications Commission, the Department of Commerce and the Office of the United States Trade Representative in this area;

(2) maintain continuing liaison with other executive branch agencies concerned with international communications and information policy and with the Federal Communications Commission, as appropriate;

(3) in accordance with such authority as may be delegated by the President pursuant to Executive order, supervise and coordinate the activities of any senior interagency policy-making group on international telecommunications and information policy and chair such interagency meetings as may be necessary to coordinate actions on pending issues;<sup>1</sup>

(4) coordinate the activities of, and assist as appropriate, interagency working level task forces and committees concerned with specific aspects of international communications and information policy;

(5) maintain liaison with the members and staffs of committees of the Congress concerned with international communications and information policy and provide testimony before such committees;

(6) maintain appropriate liaison with representatives of the private sector to keep informed of their interests and problems, meet with them, and provide such assistance as may be needed to ensure that matters of concern to the private sector are promptly considered by the Department or other executive branch agencies; and

(7) assist in arranging meetings of such public sector advisory groups as may be established to advise the Department of State and other executive branch agencies in connection with international communications and information policy issues.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, § 35, as added Nov. 22, 1983, Pub. L. 98-164, title I, § 124, 97 Stat. 1025; amended Dec. 22, 1987, Pub. L. 100-204, title I, § 173(a)(1), 101 Stat. 1360; Apr. 30, 1994, Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 162(k)(1), 108 Stat. 408.)

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 35 of act Aug. 1, 1956, was renumbered section 36 by section 124 of Pub. L. 98-164, and subsequently renumbered, and set out as a Short Title of 1956 Amendment note under section 2651 of this title, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 111(1), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 654.

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103-236, § 162(k)(1)(A), struck out subsec. (a) which read as follows: “The Secretary of State shall assign responsibility for international communications and information policy matters within the Department of State to an appropriate Under Secretary of State (hereafter in this section referred to as the ‘Under Secretary’).”

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 103-236, § 162(k)(1)(B)(i), inserted introductory provisions and struck out former introductory provisions which read as follows: “The Secretary of State shall establish, within the Department of State, an Office of the Coordinator for International Communications and Information Policy, headed by a Coordinator who shall be responsible to the Under Secretary. The Coordinator shall be appointed by the

<sup>1</sup> So in original.

President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, and shall have the rank of ambassador. The Coordinator shall be compensated at the annual rate of pay for positions authorized by section 5315 of title 5. The Coordinator shall be responsible, on behalf of the Under Secretary, for formulation, coordination, and oversight of international communications and information policy assigned to the Under Secretary. On behalf of the Under Secretary, the Coordinator shall—”.

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 103-236, §162(k)(1)(B)(iv), added par. (1). Former par. (1) redesignated (2).

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 103-236, §162(k)(1)(B)(ii), (iii), (v), redesignated par. (1) as (2), struck out “with the bureaus and offices of the Department of State and” after “continuing liaison”, inserted “and with the Federal Communications Commission, as appropriate” before semicolon, and struck out former par. (2) which read as follows: “in accordance with such authority as may be delegated by the President pursuant to Executive order, chair such agency and interagency meetings as may be necessary to coordinate actions on pending issues to ensure proper policy coordination;”.

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 103-236, §162(k)(1)(B)(vi), substituted “any senior interagency policymaking group on international telecommunications and information policy and chair such interagency meetings as may be necessary to coordinate actions on pending issues;” for “the Senior Interagency Group on International Communications and Information Policy”.

1987—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 100-204 inserted after second sentence “The Coordinator shall be compensated at the annual rate of pay for positions authorized by section 5315 of title 5.”

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103-236 applicable with respect to officials, offices, and bureaus of Department of State when executive orders, regulations, or departmental directives implementing the amendments by sections 161 and 162 of Pub. L. 103-236 become effective, or 90 days after Apr. 30, 1994, whichever comes earlier, see section 161(b) of Pub. L. 103-236, as amended, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1987 AMENDMENT

Section 173(b) of Pub. L. 100-204 provided that: “The amendments made by subsection (a) [amending this section and section 4303 of this title] shall take effect 30 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 22, 1987].”

#### EFFECT OF 1994 AMENDMENTS ON SCOPE OF AUTHORITY VESTED AS OF APRIL 30, 1994

Section 162(k)(2) of Pub. L. 103-236 provided that: “Nothing in the amendments made by paragraph (1) [amending this section] affects the nature or scope of the authority that is on the date of enactment of this Act [Apr. 30, 1994] vested by law or Executive order in the Department of Commerce, the Office of the United States Trade Representative, the Federal Communications Commission, or any officer thereof.”

#### NEW SPENDING AUTHORITY

Section 173(c) of Pub. L. 100-204 provided that: “Any new spending authority (as defined in section 401(c) of the Congressional Budget Act of 1974 [2 U.S.C. 651(c)]) provided by this section [amending sections 2707 and 4303 of this title] shall be effective for any fiscal year only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriation Acts.”

### § 2708. Reward; information; international terrorism

#### (a) Authorization of reward

(1) The Secretary of State may pay a reward to any individual who furnishes information—

(A) leading to the arrest or conviction, in any country, of any individual for the commission of an act of international terrorism, or

(B) leading to the arrest or conviction, in any country, of any individual for conspiring or attempting to commit an act of international terrorism, or

(C) leading to the prevention, frustration, or favorable resolution of an act of international terrorism,

if the act of international terrorism is against a United States person or United States property.

(2) For purposes of this subsection, the term “act of international terrorism” includes any act substantially contributing to the acquisition of unsafeguarded special nuclear material (as defined in section 830(8) of the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention Act of 1994) or any nuclear explosive device (as defined in section 830(4) of that Act) by an individual, group, or non-nuclear-weapon state (as defined in section 830(5) of that Act).

#### (b) Rewards for information relating to international narcoterrorism and drug trafficking

(1) The Secretary of State, upon the request of a chief of mission and with the concurrence of the Attorney General, may pay a reward to any individual who furnishes information leading to—

(A) the arrest or conviction in any country of any individual for committing, primarily outside the territorial jurisdiction of the United States, any narcotics-related offense if that offense involves or is a significant part of conduct that involves—

(i) a violation of United States drug laws which occurs primarily outside the territorial jurisdiction of the United States and which is such that the individual would be a major violator of such laws; or

(ii) the killing or kidnapping outside the territorial jurisdiction of the United States of—

(I) any officer, employee, or contract employee of the United States Government while such individual is engaged in official duties, or on account of that individual's official duties, in connection with the enforcement of United States drug laws or the implementing of United States drug control objectives; or

(II) a member of the immediate family of any such individual on account of that individual's official duties in connection with the enforcement of United States drug laws or the implementation of United States drug control objectives; or

(iii) an attempt or conspiracy to do any of the acts described in clause (i) or (ii); or

(B) the prevention or frustration of an act described in subparagraph (A).

(2) The purpose of the rewards under this subsection is to assist narcotics law enforcement in the effective arrest and prosecution of major narcotics traffickers and, wherever appropriate, to offer rewards in connection with the killing of, or the attempt to kill, any United States officer or employee, in connection with the performance of narcotics control duties by such of—



ficer or employee, or any member of the family of such officer or employee. To ensure that the rewards program authorized by this subsection, especially paragraph (1)(A)(i), does not duplicate or interfere with the payment of informants or the purchase of evidence or information, as authorized to the Department of Justice, the offering, administration, and payment of rewards under this subsection, including procedures for—

(A) identifying individuals, organizations, and offenses with respect to which rewards will be offered,

(B) the publication of rewards,

(C) offering of joint rewards with foreign governments,

(D) the receipt and analysis of data,

(E) the payment and the approval of payment, and

(F) the recommendations of rewards by chiefs of mission to the Secretary of State and the Attorney General,

shall be governed by procedures approved by the Secretary of State and the Attorney General.

**(c) Reward limitation; Presidential approval**

A reward under this section may not exceed \$2,000,000. A reward of \$100,000 or more may not be made without the approval of the President or the Secretary of State personally.

**(d) Advice; consultation; Attorney General**

Before making a reward under subsection (a) of this section in a matter over which there is Federal criminal jurisdiction, the Secretary of State shall advise and consult with the Attorney General.

**(e) Certification; payment**

Any reward granted under this section shall be certified for payment by the Secretary of State. If the Secretary determines that the identity of the recipient of a reward or of the members of the recipient's immediate family must be protected, the Secretary may take such measures in connection with the payment of the reward as he deems necessary to effect such protection.

**(f) Officers or employees of government ineligible for reward**

An officer or employee of any governmental entity who, while in the performance of his or her official duties, furnishes information described in subsection (a) or (b) of this section shall not be eligible for a reward under this section.

**(g) Authorization of appropriations**

There are authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, \$5,000,000 for use in paying rewards under this section, up to \$2,000,000 of which may be used for rewards for information described in subsection (b)(1) of this section. In addition to the amount authorized to be appropriated by the preceding sentence, there are authorized to be appropriated, without fiscal year limitation, \$5,000,000 for "Administration of Foreign Affairs" for use in paying rewards for information described in subsection (b)(1) of this section. Additional funds to pay rewards under this section shall be authorized to be appropriated in the annual authorizing legislation for the Department of State.

**(h) Report to Congress**

Not later than 30 days after paying any reward under this section, the Secretary of State shall submit a report to the Congress with respect to that reward. The report, which may be submitted on a classified basis if necessary, shall specify the amount of the reward paid, to whom the reward was paid, and the acts with respect to which the reward was paid, and shall discuss the significance of the information for which the reward was paid in dealing with those acts.

**(i) Definitions**

As used in this section—

(1) the term "United States drug laws" means the laws of the United States for the prevention and control of illicit traffic in controlled substances (as such term is defined for purposes of the Controlled Substances Act [21 U.S.C. 801 et seq.]); and

(2) the term "member of the immediate family" includes—

(A) a spouse, parent, brother, sister, or child of the individual;

(B) a person to whom the individual stands in loco parentis; and

(C) any other person living in the individual's household and related to the individual by blood or marriage.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, § 36, as added Oct. 19, 1984, Pub. L. 98-533, title I, § 102, 98 Stat. 2708; amended Aug. 27, 1986, Pub. L. 99-399, title V, § 502, 100 Stat. 869; Nov. 18, 1988, Pub. L. 100-690, title IV, § 4602, 102 Stat. 4287; Dec. 13, 1989, Pub. L. 101-231, § 13(a), 103 Stat. 1963; Feb. 16, 1990, Pub. L. 101-246, title X, § 1001, 104 Stat. 86; Apr. 30, 1994, Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 133(a)(1), title VIII, § 827, 108 Stat. 395, 519.)

AMENDMENT OF SECTION

*For termination of amendment by section 851 of Pub. L. 103-236, see Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note below.*

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 830 of the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention Act of 1994, referred to in subsec. (a)(2), is section 830 of Pub. L. 103-236 which is set out in the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention; Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note under section 3201 of this title.

The Controlled Substances Act, referred to in subsec. (i), is title II of Pub. L. 91-513, Oct. 27, 1970, 84 Stat. 1242, as amended, which is classified principally to subchapter I (§ 801 et seq.) of chapter 13 of Title 21, Food and Drugs. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 801 of Title 21 and Tables.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 36 of act Aug. 1, 1956, was renumbered section 37 by section 102 of Pub. L. 98-533, and subsequently renumbered, and set out as a Short Title of 1956 Amendment note under section 2651 of this title, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 111(1), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 654.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103-236, §§ 827, 851, temporarily designated existing provisions as par. (1), redesignated former pars. (1) to (3) as subpars. (A) to (C), respectively, and added par. (2). See Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note below.

Pub. L. 103-236, § 133(a)(1), struck out "and is primarily outside the territorial jurisdiction of the United

States” after “United States property” in concluding provisions.

1990—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 101-246, which directed amendment of subsec. (c) by substituting “\$2,000,000” for “\$500,000”, could not be executed because “\$500,000” did not appear after execution of the amendment by Pub. L. 101-231. See 1989 Amendment note below.

1989—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 101-231 substituted “\$2,000,000” for “\$500,000”.

1988—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 100-690 amended second sentence generally. Prior to amendment, second sentence read as follows: “In addition to the amount authorized by the preceding sentence, there are authorized to be appropriated \$10,000,000 for fiscal year 1987 for ‘Administration of Foreign Affairs’ for use in paying rewards under this section, up to \$5,000,000 of which may be used for rewards for information described in subsection (b)(1) of this section.”

1986—Subsecs. (b), (c). Pub. L. 99-399, §502(a), added subsec. (b) and redesignated former subsec. (b) as (c). Former subsec. (c) redesignated (d).

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 99-399, §502(a)(1), (c)(1), redesignated former subsec. (c) as (d), and substituted “subsection (a) of this section” for “this section”. Former subsec. (d) redesignated (e).

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 99-399, §502(a)(1), redesignated former subsec. (d) as (e). Former subsec. (e) redesignated (f).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 99-399, §502(a)(1), (c)(2), redesignated former subsec. (e) as (f), and inserted “or (b)”. Former subsec. (f) redesignated (g).

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 99-399, §502(a)(1), (b), redesignated former subsec. (f) as (g), and inserted provision authorizing up to \$2,000,000 for rewards for information described in subsec. (b)(1) of this section and appropriating \$10,000,000 for fiscal year 1987, of which up to \$5,000,000 may be used for rewards for information described in subsec. (b)(1) of this section.

Subsecs. (h), (i). Pub. L. 99-399, §502(d), added subsecs. (h) and (i).

#### EFFECTIVE AND TERMINATION DATES OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 827 of Pub. L. 103-236 effective 60 days after Apr. 30, 1994, and ceases to be effective and is repealed on date of enactment of first Foreign Relations Authorization Act enacted after Apr. 30, 1994, and any provision repealed by that amendment shall be re-enacted, see sections 831 and 851 of Pub. L. 103-236, set out in the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention; Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note under section 3201 of this title.

#### AVOIDING DUPLICATIVE AMENDMENTS

Section 13(b) of Pub. L. 101-231 provided that: “If the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1990 and 1991 [Pub. L. 101-246, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 87], is enacted before this Act [Dec. 13, 1989], and that Act makes the same amendment as is described in subsection (a) [amending this section], then subsection (a) shall not take effect. If, however, this Act is enacted before the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1990 and 1991, and that Act would make the same amendment as is made by subsection (a), then that amendment as proposed to be made by that Act shall not take effect.”

#### REWARDS FOR INTERNATIONAL TERRORISTS

Section 501 of Pub. L. 99-399 provided that: “It is the sense of the Congress that the Secretary of State should more vigorously utilize the moneys available under section 36(a) of the State Department Basic Authorities Act of 1956 (22 U.S.C. 2708(a); relating to rewards for information on international terrorism) to more effectively apprehend and prosecute international terrorists. It is further the sense of the Congress that the Secretary of State should consider widely publicizing the sizable rewards available under present law so that major international terrorist figures may be brought to justice.”

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4802, 5512 of this title; title 8 sections 1101, 1255; title 18 section 3076.

### § 2709. Special agents

#### (a) General authority

Under such regulations as the Secretary of State may prescribe, special agents of the Department of State and the Foreign Service may—

(1) conduct investigations concerning illegal passport or visa issuance or use;

(2) for the purpose of conducting such investigations—

(A) obtain and execute search and arrest warrants,

(B) make arrests without warrant for any offense concerning passport or visa issuance or use if the special agent has reasonable grounds to believe that the person has committed or is committing such offense, and

(C) obtain and serve subpoenas and summonses issued under the authority of the United States;

(3) protect and perform protective functions directly related to maintaining the security and safety of—

(A) heads of a foreign state, official representatives of a foreign government, and other distinguished visitors to the United States, while in the United States;

(B) the Secretary of State, Deputy Secretary of State, and official representatives of the United States Government, in the United States or abroad;

(C) members of the immediate family of persons described in subparagraph (A) or (B); and

(D) foreign missions (as defined in section 4302(a)(4)<sup>1</sup> of this title) and international organizations (as defined in section 4309(b) of this title), within the United States;

(4) if designated by the Secretary and qualified, under regulations approved by the Attorney General, for the use of firearms, carry firearms for the purpose of performing the duties authorized by this section; and

(5) arrest without warrant any person for a violation of section 111, 112, 351, 970, or 1028 of title 18—

(A) in the case of a felony violation, if the special agent has reasonable grounds to believe that such person—

(i) has committed or is committing such violation; and

(ii) is in or is fleeing from the immediate area of such violation; and

(B) in the case of a felony or misdemeanor violation, if the violation is committed in the presence of the special agent.

#### (b) Agreement with Attorney General and firearms regulations

##### (1) Agreement with Attorney General

The authority conferred by paragraphs (1), (2), (4), and (5) of subsection (a) of this section shall be exercised subject to an agreement

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

with the Attorney General and shall not be construed to affect the investigative authority of any other Federal law enforcement agency.

**(2) Firearms regulations**

The Secretary of State shall prescribe regulations, which shall be approved by the Attorney General, with respect to the carrying and use of firearms by special agents under this section.

**(c) Secret Service not affected**

Nothing in subsection (a)(3) of this section shall be construed to preclude or limit in any way the authority of the United States Secret Service to provide protective services pursuant to section 202 of title 3 or section 3056 of title 18 at a level commensurate with protective requirements as determined by the United States Secret Service. The Secretary of State, the Attorney General, and the Secretary of the Treasury shall enter into an interagency agreement with respect to their law enforcement functions.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, § 37, as added Aug. 16, 1985, Pub. L. 99-93, title I, § 125(a), 99 Stat. 415; amended Feb. 16, 1990, Pub. L. 101-246, title I, § 113, 104 Stat. 22; Apr. 30, 1994, Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 139(1), 108 Stat. 397.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 4302 of this title, referred to in subsec. (a)(3)(D), was subsequently amended, and section 4302(a)(4) no longer defines the term "foreign mission". However, such term is defined elsewhere in that section.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 37 of act Aug. 1, 1956, was renumbered section 38 by section 125(a) of Pub. L. 99-93, and subsequently renumbered, and was set out as a Short Title of 1956 Amendment note under section 2651 of this title, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 111(1), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 654.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (d), Pub. L. 103-236 struck out subsec. (d) which read as follows: "The Secretary of State shall transmit the regulations prescribed under this section to the Committee on Foreign Affairs and the Committee on the Judiciary of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate not less than 20 days before the date on which such regulations take effect."

1990—Subsec. (a)(2), Pub. L. 101-246, § 113(1), added subpar. (B) and redesignated former subpar. (B) as (C).

Subsec. (a)(5), Pub. L. 101-246, § 113(2), amended introductory provisions generally, substituting "970, or 1028" for "911, 970, 1001, 1028, 1541, 1542, 1543, 1544, 1545, or 1546".

**§ 2710. Expenses relating to participation in arbitrations of certain disputes**

**(a) International agreements**

The Secretary of State may use funds available to the Secretary for the expenses of United States participation in arbitrations and other proceedings for the peaceful resolution of disputes under treaties or other international agreements.

**(b) Contracts abroad**

The Secretary of State may use funds available to the Secretary for the expenses of United States participation in arbitrations arising

under contracts authorized by law for the performance of services or acquisition of property, real or personal, abroad.

**(c) Procurement of services**

The Secretary of State may use competitive procedures or procedures other than competitive procedures to procure the services of experts for use in preparing or prosecuting a proceeding before an international tribunal or a claim by or against a foreign government or other foreign entity, whether or not the expert is expected to testify, or to procure other support services for such proceedings or claims. The Secretary need not provide any written justification for the use of procedures other than competitive procedures when procuring such services under this subsection and need not furnish for publication in the Commerce Business Daily or otherwise any notice of solicitation or synopsis with respect to such procurement.

**(d) International Litigation Fund**

**(1) Establishment**

In order to provide the Department of State with a dependable, flexible, and adequate source of funding for the expenses of the Department related to preparing or prosecuting a proceeding before an international tribunal, or a claim by or against a foreign government or other foreign entity, there is established an International Litigation Fund (hereafter in this subsection referred to as the "ILF"). The ILF may be available without fiscal year limitation. Funds otherwise available to the Department for the purposes of this paragraph may be credited to the ILF.

**(2) Reprogramming procedures**

Funds credited to the ILF shall be treated as a reprogramming of funds under section 2706 of this title and shall not be available for obligation or expenditure except in compliance with the procedures applicable to such reprogrammings. This paragraph shall not apply to the transfer of funds under paragraph (3).

**(3) Transfers of funds**

Funds received by the Department of State from another agency of the United States Government or pursuant to the Department of State Appropriations Act of 1937 (49 Stat. 1321, 22 U.S.C. 2661) to meet costs of preparing or prosecuting a proceeding before an international tribunal, or a claim by or against a foreign government or other foreign entity, shall be credited to the ILF.

**(4) Use of funds**

Funds deposited in the ILF shall be available only for the purposes of paragraph (1).

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, § 38, as added Aug. 16, 1985, Pub. L. 99-93, title I, § 128, 99 Stat. 419; amended Apr. 30, 1994, Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 123, 108 Stat. 392.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Department of State Appropriations Act of 1937, referred to in subsec. (d)(3), probably means the Department of State Appropriation Act, 1937, which is title I of act May 15, 1936, ch. 405, 49 Stat. 1309. Provisions re-

lating to acceptance by the Secretary of State of reimbursement for expenses incurred in pursuing certain private claims against foreign governments were added to that act by Pub. L. 100-204, title I, §142(b), Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1350, and are classified to section 2661 of this title.

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 38 of act Aug. 1, 1956, was renumbered section 39 by section 128 of Pub. L. 99-93, and subsequently renumbered, and set out as a Short Title of 1956 Amendment note under section 2651 of this title, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 102-138, title I, §111(1), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 654.

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 103-236 added subsecs. (c) and (d).

### § 2711. Counterterrorism Protection Fund

#### (a) Authority

The Secretary of State may reimburse domestic and foreign persons, agencies, or governments for the protection of judges or other persons who provide assistance or information relating to terrorist incidents primarily outside the territorial jurisdiction of the United States. Before making a payment under this section in a matter over which there is Federal criminal jurisdiction, the Secretary shall advise and consult with the Attorney General.

#### (b) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary of State for "Administration of Foreign Affairs" \$1,000,000 for fiscal year 1986 and \$1,000,000 for fiscal year 1987 for use in reimbursing persons, agencies, or governments under this section.

#### (c) Designation of Fund

Amounts made available under this section may be referred to as the "Counterterrorism Protection Fund".

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, §39, as added Aug. 27, 1986, Pub. L. 99-399, title V, §504(2), 100 Stat. 871.)

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 39 of act Aug. 1, 1956, was renumbered section 40 by section 504(1) of Pub. L. 99-399, and subsequently renumbered, and set out as a Short Title of 1956 Amendment note under section 2651 of this title, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 102-138, title I, §111(1), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 654.

### § 2712. Authority to control certain terrorism-related services

#### (a) Authority

The Secretary of State may, by regulation, impose controls on the provision of the services described in subsection (b) of this section if the Secretary determines that provision of such services would aid and abet international terrorism.

#### (b) Services subject to control

The services subject to control under subsection (a) of this section are the following:

- (1) Serving in or with the security forces of a designated foreign government.
- (2) Providing training or other technical services having a direct military, law enforce-

ment, or intelligence application, to or for the security forces of a designated foreign government.

Any regulations issued to impose controls on services described in paragraph (2) shall list the specific types of training and other services subject to the controls.

#### (c) Persons subject of controls

These services may be controlled under subsection (a) of this section when they are provided within the United States by any individual or entity and when they are provided anywhere in the world by a United States person.

#### (d) Licenses

In carrying out subsection (a) of this section, the Secretary of State may require licenses, which may be revoked, suspended, or amended, without prior notice, whenever such action is deemed to be advisable.

#### (e) Definitions

##### (1) Designated foreign government

As used in this section, the term "designated foreign government" means a foreign government that the Secretary of State has determined, for purposes of section 2405(j)(1) of title 50, Appendix, has repeatedly provided support for acts of international terrorism.

##### (2) Security forces

As used in this section, the term "security forces" means any military or paramilitary forces, any police or other law enforcement agency (including any police or other law enforcement agency at the regional or local level), and any intelligence agency of a foreign government.

##### (3) United States

As used in this section, the term "United States" includes any State, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, and any territory or possession of the United States.

##### (4) United States person

As used in this section, the term "United States person" means any United States national, any permanent resident alien, and any sole proprietorship, partnership, company, association, or corporation organized under the laws of or having its principal place of business within the United States.

#### (f) Violations

##### (1) Penalties

Whoever willfully violates any regulation issued under this section shall be fined not more than \$100,000 or five times the total compensation received for the conduct which constitutes the violation, whichever is greater, or imprisoned for not more than ten years, or both, for each such offense.

##### (2) Investigations

The Attorney General and the Secretary of the Treasury shall have authority to investigate violations of regulations issued under this section.

**(g) Congressional oversight****(1) Review of regulations**

Not less than 30 days before issuing any regulations under this section (including any amendments thereto), the Secretary of State shall transmit the proposed regulations to the Congress.

**(2) Reports**

Not less than once every six months, the Secretary of State shall report to the Congress concerning the number and character of licenses granted and denied during the previous reporting period, and such other information as the Secretary may find to be relevant to the accomplishment of the objectives of this section.

**(h) Relationship to other laws**

The authority granted by this section is in addition to the authorities granted by any other provision of law.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, § 40, as added Aug. 27, 1986, Pub. L. 99-399, title V, § 506(2), 100 Stat. 871.)

## PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 40 of act Aug. 1, 1956, was renumbered section 41 by section 506(1) of Pub. L. 99-399, and subsequently renumbered, and set out as a Short Title of 1956 Amendment note under section 2651 of this title, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 111(1), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 654.

**§ 2713. Protection of historic and artistic furnishings of reception areas of the Department of State Building****(a) In general**

The Secretary of State shall administer the historic and artistic articles of furniture, fixtures, and decorative objects of the reception areas of the Department of State by such means and measures as conform to the purposes of the reception areas, which include conserving those articles, fixtures, and objects and providing for their enjoyment in such manner and by such means as will leave them for the use of the American people. Nothing shall be done under this subsection which conflicts with the administration of the Department of State or with the use of the reception areas for official purposes of the United States Government.

**(b) Disposition of historic and artistic items****(1) Items covered**

Articles of furniture, fixtures, and decorative objects of the reception areas (and similar articles, fixtures, and objects acquired by the Secretary of State), when declared by the Secretary of State to be of historic or artistic interest, shall thereafter be considered to be the property of the Secretary in his or her official capacity and shall be subject to disposition solely in accordance with this subsection.

**(2) Sale or trade**

Whenever the Secretary of State determines that—

(A) any item covered by paragraph (1) is no longer needed for use or display in the reception areas, or

(B) in order to upgrade the reception areas, a better use of that article would be its sale or exchange,

the Secretary may, with the advice and concurrence of the Director of the National Gallery of Art, sell the item at fair market value or trade it, without regard to the requirements of the Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949 [40 U.S.C. 471 et seq.]. The proceeds of any such sale may be credited to the unconditional gift account of the Department of State, and items obtained in trade shall be the property of the Secretary of State under this subsection.

**(3) Smithsonian Institution**

The Secretary of State may also lend items covered by paragraph (1), when not needed for use or display in the reception areas, to the Smithsonian Institution or a similar institution for care, repair, study, storage, or exhibition.

**(c) “Reception areas” defined**

For purposes of this section, the term “reception areas” means the areas of the Department of State Building, located at 2201 C Street, Northwest, Washington, District of Columbia, known as the Diplomatic Reception Rooms (eighth floor), the Secretary of State’s offices (seventh floor), the Deputy Secretary of State’s offices (seventh floor), and the seventh floor reception area.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, § 41, as added Dec. 22, 1987, Pub. L. 100-204, title I, § 126(a)(2), 101 Stat. 1341.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949, referred to in subsec. (b)(2), is act June 30, 1949, ch. 288, 63 Stat. 377, as amended. Provisions of that Act relating to management and disposal of Government property are classified to chapter 10 (§ 471 et seq.) of Title 40, Public Buildings, Property, and Works. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 471 of Title 40 and Tables.

## PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 41 of act Aug. 1, 1956, was renumbered section 42 by section 126(a)(1) of Pub. L. 100-204, and subsequently renumbered, and set out as a Short Title of 1956 Amendment note under section 2651 of this title, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 111(1), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 654.

**§ 2714. Denial of passports to certain convicted drug traffickers****(a) Ineligibility for passport****(1) In general**

A passport may not be issued to an individual who is convicted of an offense described in subsection (b) of this section during the period described in subsection (c) of this section if the individual used a passport or otherwise crossed an international border in committing the offense.

**(2) Passport revocation**

The Secretary of State shall revoke a passport previously issued to an individual who is ineligible to receive a passport under paragraph (1).

**(b) Drug law offenses****(1) Felonies**

Subsection (a) of this section applies with respect to any individual convicted of a Federal drug offense, or a State drug offense, if the offense is a felony.

**(2) Certain misdemeanors**

Subsection (a) of this section also applies with respect to an individual convicted of a Federal drug offense, or a State drug offense, if the offense is<sup>1</sup> misdemeanor, but only if the Secretary of State determines that subsection (a) of this section should apply with respect to that individual on account of that offense. This paragraph does not apply to an individual's first conviction for a misdemeanor which involves only possession of a controlled substance.

**(c) Period of ineligibility**

Subsection (a) of this section applies during the period that the individual—

(1) is imprisoned, or is legally required to be imprisoned, as the result of the conviction for the offense described in subsection (b) of this section; or

(2) is on parole or other supervised release after having been imprisoned as the result of that conviction.

**(d) Emergency and humanitarian exceptions**

Notwithstanding subsection (a) of this section, the Secretary of State may issue a passport, in emergency circumstances or for humanitarian reasons, to an individual with respect to whom that subsection applies.

**(e) Definitions**

As used in this section—

(1) the term “controlled substance” has the same meaning as is provided in section 102 of the Controlled Substances Act (21 U.S.C. 802);

(2) the term “Federal drug offense” means a violation of—

(A) the Controlled Substances Act (21 U.S.C. 801 et seq.) or the Controlled Substances Import and Export Act (21 U.S.C. 951 et seq.);

(B) any other Federal law involving controlled substances; or

(C) subchapter II of chapter 53 of title 31 (commonly referred to as the “Bank Secrecy Act”), or section 1956 or section 1957 of title 18 (commonly referred to as the “Money Laundering Act”), if the Secretary of State determines that the violation is related to illicit production of or trafficking in a controlled substance;

(3) the term “felony” means a criminal offense punishable by death or imprisonment for more than one year;

(4) the term “imprisoned” means an individual is confined in or otherwise restricted to a jail-type institution, a half-way house, a treatment facility, or another institution, on a full or part-time basis, pursuant to the sentence imposed as the result of a conviction;

(5) the term “misdemeanor” means a criminal offense other than a felony;

(6) the term “State drug offense” means a violation of State law involving the manufacture, distribution, or possession of a controlled substance; and

(7) the term “State law” means the law of a State of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, or a territory or possession of the United States.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, §42, as added Nov. 18, 1988, Pub. L. 100-690, title IV, §4603(2), 102 Stat. 4287.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Controlled Substances Act, referred to in subsec. (e)(2)(A), is title II of Pub. L. 91-513, Oct. 27, 1970, 84 Stat. 1242, as amended, which is classified principally to subchapter I (§801 et seq.) of chapter 13 of Title 21, Food and Drugs. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 801 of Title 21 and Tables.

The Controlled Substances Import and Export Act, referred to in subsec. (e)(2)(A), is title III of Pub. L. 91-513, Oct. 27, 1970, 84 Stat. 1285, as amended, which is classified principally to subchapter II (§951 et seq.) of chapter 13 of Title 21. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 951 of Title 21 and Tables.

## PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 42 of act Aug. 1, 1956, was renumbered section 43 by section 4603(1) of Pub. L. 100-690, and subsequently renumbered, and set out as a Short Title of 1956 Amendment note under section 2651 of this title, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 102-138, title I, §111(1), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 654.

**§ 2715. Procedures regarding major disasters and incidents abroad affecting United States citizens**

In the case of a major disaster or incident abroad which affects the health and safety of citizens of the United States residing or traveling abroad, the Secretary of State shall provide prompt and thorough notification of all appropriate information concerning such disaster or incident and its effect on United States citizens to the next-of-kin of such individuals. Notification shall be provided through the most expeditious means available, including telephone communications, and shall include timely written notice. The Secretary, through the appropriate offices of the Department of State, shall act as a clearinghouse for up-to-date information for the next-of-kin and shall provide other services and assistance. Assistance shall include liaison with foreign governments and persons and with United States air carriers concerning arrangements for the preparation and transport to the United States of the remains of citizens who die abroad, as well as disposition of personal effects.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, §43, as added Feb. 16, 1990, Pub. L. 101-246, title I, §115(c)(2), 104 Stat. 23.)

## PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 43 of act Aug. 1, 1956, was renumbered section 44 by section 115(c)(1) of Pub. L. 101-246, and subsequently renumbered, and set out as a Short Title of 1956 Amendment note under section 2651 of this title, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 102-138, title I, §111(1), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 654.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be followed by “a”.

## DEVELOPMENT OF STANDARDIZED PROCEDURES

Section 115(d) of Pub. L. 101-246 provided that:

“(1) The Secretary of State shall enter into discussions with international air carriers and other appropriate entities to develop standardized procedures which will assist the Secretary in implementing the provisions of section 43 of the State Department Basic Authorities Act of 1956, as amended by subsection (c) [22 U.S.C. 2715].

“(2) The Secretary of State shall consider the feasibility of establishing a toll-free telephone number to facilitate inquiries by the next-of-kin in cases of major disasters or incidents abroad which affect the health and safety of citizens of the United States residing or traveling abroad.”

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 5503, 5507 of this title.

**§ 2716. Debt collection****(a) Contract authority**

(1) Subject to the availability of appropriations, the Secretary of State shall enter into contracts for collection services to recover indebtedness owed by a person, other than a foreign country, to the United States which arises out of activities of the Department of State and is delinquent by more than 90 days.

(2) Each contract entered into under this section shall provide that the person with whom the Secretary enters into such contract shall submit to the Secretary at least once every 180 days a status report on the success of the person in collecting debts. Section 3718 of title 31 shall apply to any such contract to the extent that such section is not inconsistent with this subsection.

**(b) Disclosure of delinquent debt to credit reporting agencies**

The Secretary of State shall, to the extent otherwise allowed by law, disclose to those credit reporting agencies to which the Secretary reports loan activity information concerning any debt of more than \$100 owed by a person, other than a foreign country, to the United States which arises out of activities of the Department of State and is delinquent by more than 31 days.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, § 44, as added Feb. 16, 1990, Pub. L. 101-246, title I, § 117(2), 104 Stat. 25.)

## PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 44 of act Aug. 1, 1956, was renumbered section 45 by section 117(1) of Pub. L. 101-246, and subsequently renumbered, and set out as a Short Title of 1956 Amendment note under section 2651 of this title, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 111(1), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 654.

**§ 2717. Defense trade controls registration fees****(a) Defense trade controls registration fees**

For each fiscal year, \$700,000 of the registration fees collected by the Office of Defense Trade Controls of the Department of State shall be credited to a Department of State account, to be available without fiscal year limitation. Fees credited to that account shall be available only for payment of expenses incurred for—

- (1) contract personnel to assist in the evaluation of defense trade controls license applications, reduction in processing time for li-

cense applications, and improved monitoring of compliance with the terms of licenses; and

(2) the automation of defense trade controls functions and the processing of defense trade controls license applications, including the development, procurement, and utilization of computer equipment and related software.

**(b) Budget Act compliance**

The authority contained in subsection (a) of this section shall be exercised to such extent and in such amounts as are to be provided in an appropriation Act.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, § 45, as added Feb. 16, 1990, Pub. L. 101-246, title I, § 118(2), 104 Stat. 25; amended Oct. 28, 1991, Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 126, 105 Stat. 659.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Budget Act, referred to in subsec. (b) heading, probably means the Congressional Budget Act of 1974, titles I through IX of Pub. L. 93-344, July 12, 1974, 88 Stat. 297, as amended. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 621 of Title 2, The Congress, and Tables.

## PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 45 of act Aug. 1, 1956, was renumbered section 46 by section 118(1) of Pub. L. 101-246, and subsequently renumbered, and set out as a Short Title of 1956 Amendment note under section 2651 of this title, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 111(1), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 654.

## AMENDMENTS

1991—Pub. L. 102-138, § 126(1), substituted “Defense trade controls registration fees” for “Munitions control registration fees” in section catchline.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 102-138, § 126, substituted in heading “Defense trade controls registration fees” for “Munitions control registration fees” and in text “\$700,000” for “\$500,000”, “Defense Trade Controls” for “Munitions Control”, and “defense trade controls” for “munitions control” wherever appearing.

## AUTHORITY OF SECRETARY OF STATE

Except as otherwise provided, Secretary of State to have and exercise any authority vested by law in any official or office of Department of State and references to such officials or offices deemed to refer to Secretary of State or Department of State, as appropriate, see section 2651a of this title and section 161(d) of Pub. L. 103-236, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

**§ 2718. Fees received for use of Blair House****(a) Use of fees**

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, funds received by the Department of State in connection with use of Blair House (including reimbursements and surcharges for services and goods provided and fees for use of Blair House facilities) may be credited to the appropriate appropriation account of the Department of State which is currently available. Such funds shall be available only for maintenance and other expenses of Blair House.

**(b) Compliance with Budget Act**

The authority of this section may be exercised only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in an appropriation Act.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, § 46, as added Feb. 16, 1990, Pub. L. 101-246, title I, § 119(2), 104 Stat. 26;

amended Oct. 28, 1991, Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 123, 105 Stat. 659.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Budget Act, referred to in subsec. (b) heading, probably means the Congressional Budget Act of 1974, titles I through IX of Pub. L. 93-344, July 12, 1974, 88 Stat. 297, as amended. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 621 of Title 2, The Congress, and Tables.

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 46 of act Aug. 1, 1956, was renumbered section 47 by section 119(1) of Pub. L. 101-246, and subsequently renumbered, and set out as a Short Title of 1956 Amendment note under section 2651 of this title, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 111(1), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 654.

#### AMENDMENTS

1991—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 102-138 struck out “for the fiscal years 1990 and 1991,” after “provision of law,”.

### § 2719. Grants for training and education in international affairs

The Secretary of State may make grants to postsecondary educational institutions or students for the purpose of increasing the level of knowledge and awareness of and interest in employment with the Foreign Service, consistent with section 3905 of this title. To the extent possible, the Secretary shall give special emphasis to promoting such knowledge and awareness of, and interest in employment with, the Foreign Service among minority students. Any grants awarded shall be made pursuant to regulations to be established by the Secretary of State, which shall provide for a limit on the size of any specific grant and, regarding any grants to individuals, shall ensure that no grant recipient receives an amount of grants from one or more Federal programs which in the aggregate would exceed the cost of his or her education, and shall require satisfactory educational progress by grantees as a condition of eligibility for continued receipt of grant funds.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, § 47, as added Feb. 16, 1990, Pub. L. 101-246, title I, § 150(2), 104 Stat. 42.)

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 47 of act Aug. 1, 1956, was renumbered section 48 by section 150(1) of Pub. L. 101-246, and set out as a Short Title of 1956 Amendment note under section 2651 of this title, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 111(1), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 654.

### § 2720. Closing of consular and diplomatic posts abroad

#### (a) Prohibited uses of funds

Except as provided under subsection (d) of this section or in accordance with the procedures under subsections (b) and (c) of this section—

(1) no funds authorized to be appropriated to the Department of State shall be available to pay any expense related to the closing of any United States consular or diplomatic post abroad; and

(2) no funds authorized to be appropriated to the Department of State may be used to pay for any expense related to the Bureau of Administration of the Department of State (or to carrying out any of its functions) if any

United States consular or diplomatic post is closed.

#### (b) Post closing notification

Not less than 45 days before the closing of any United States consular or diplomatic post abroad, the Secretary of State shall notify the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate.

#### (c) Reprogramming treatment

Amounts made available to pay any expense related to the closing of a consular or diplomatic post abroad shall be treated as a reprogramming of funds under section 2706 of this title and shall not be available for obligation or expenditure except in compliance with the procedures applicable to such reprogramming.

#### (d) Exceptions

The provisions of this section do not apply with respect to—

(1) any post closed because of a break or downgrading of diplomatic relations between the United States and the country in which the post is located; or

(2) any post closed because there is a real and present threat to United States diplomatic or consular personnel in the city where the post is located, and a travel advisory warning against travel by United States citizens to that city has been issued by the Department of State.

#### (e) “Consular or diplomatic post” defined

As used in this section, the term “consular or diplomatic post” does not include a post to which only personnel of agencies other than the Department of State are assigned.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, § 48, as added Oct. 28, 1991, Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 112(a)(1), 105 Stat. 654.)

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 48 of act Aug. 1, 1956, was set out as a Short Title of 1956 Amendment note under section 2651 of this title, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 111(1), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 654.

Provisions similar to this section were contained in Pub. L. 100-204, title I, § 122, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1339, and set out as a note under section 2656 of this title, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 112(b), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 655.

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### AUTHORITY OF SECRETARY OF STATE

Except as otherwise provided, Secretary of State to have and exercise any authority vested by law in any official or office of Department of State and references to such officials or offices deemed to refer to Secretary of State or Department of State, as appropriate, see section 2651a of this title and section 161(d) of Pub. L. 103-236, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

### § 2721. Impermissible basis for denial of passports

A passport may not be denied issuance, revoked, restricted, or otherwise limited because



of any speech, activity, belief, affiliation, or membership, within or outside the United States, which, if held or conducted within the United States, would be protected by the first amendment to the Constitution of the United States.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, § 49, as added Oct. 28, 1991, Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 113, 105 Stat. 655.)

### § 2722. International meetings

#### (a) Authority to pay expenses

If the United States Government hosts an international meeting or conference in the United States, the Secretary of State is authorized to pay all reasonable expenses of such meeting or conference. Such expenses may include rental of quarters (by contract or otherwise) and personal services.

#### (b) Retention of reimbursements

To the extent provided in an appropriation Act, transfers of funds or other reimbursements for payments under subsection (a) of this section are authorized to be retained and credited to the appropriate appropriation account of the Department of State which is available.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, § 50, as added Oct. 28, 1991, Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 119, 105 Stat. 658.)

### § 2723. Denial of visas

#### (a) Report to Congress

The Secretary shall report, on a timely basis, to the appropriate committees of the Congress each time a consular post denies a visa on the grounds of terrorist activities or foreign policy. Such report shall set forth the name and nationality of each such person and a factual statement of the basis for such denial.

#### (b) Limitation

Information contained in such report may be classified to the extent necessary and shall protect intelligence sources and methods.

#### (c) Appropriate committees

For the purposes of this section the term “appropriate committees of the Congress” means the Committee on the Judiciary and the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committee on the Judiciary and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, § 51, as added Oct. 28, 1991, Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 127(a), 105 Stat. 660.)

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

### § 2724. Fees for commercial services

#### (a) Authority to charge fee

(1) Subject to paragraph (2), the Secretary of State is authorized to charge a fee to cover the actual or estimated cost of providing any person, firm or organization (other than agencies of

the United States Government) with commercial services at posts abroad on matters within the authority of the Department of State.

(2) The authority of this section may be exercised only in countries where the Department of Commerce does not perform commercial services for which it collects fees.

#### (b) Use of fees

Funds collected under the authority of subsection (a) of this section shall be deposited as an offsetting collection to any Department of State appropriation to recover the costs of providing commercial services.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title I, § 52, as added Apr. 30, 1994, Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 136, 108 Stat. 396.)

## CHAPTER 39—ARMS EXPORT CONTROL

### SUBCHAPTER I—FOREIGN AND NATIONAL SECURITY POLICY OBJECTIVES AND RESTRAINTS

- |               |  |
|---------------|--|
| Sec.<br>2751. | Need for international defense cooperation and military export controls; Presidential waiver; report to Congress; arms sales policy.   |
| 2752.         | Coordination with foreign policy. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Noninfringement of powers or functions of Secretary of State.</li> <li>(b) Responsibility for supervision and direction of sales, leases, financing, cooperative projects, and exports.</li> <li>(c) Coordination among representatives of United States.</li> </ul>  |
| 2753.         | Eligibility for defense services or defense articles. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Prerequisites for consent by President; report to Congress.</li> <li>(b) Repealed.</li> <li>(c) Termination of credits, guarantees or sales; report of violation by President; national security exception; conditions for reinstatement.</li> <li>(d) Submission of written certification to Congress; contents; classified material; effective date of consent; report to Congress; transfers not subject to procedures.</li> <li>(e) Transfers without consent of President; report to Congress.</li> <li>(f) Sales and leases to countries in breach of nuclear non-proliferation agreements and treaties.</li> </ul> |
| 2754.         | Purposes for which military sales or leases by the United States are authorized; report to Congress.   |
| 2755.         | Discrimination prohibited if based on race, religion, national origin, or sex. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Congressional declaration of policy.</li> <li>(b) Employment of personnel; required contractual provision.</li> <li>(c) Report by President; contents.</li> <li>(d) Congressional request for information from President; information required; 60 day period; failure to supply information; termination or restriction of sale.</li> </ul>   |
| 2756.         | Foreign intimidation and harassment of individuals in United States.   |

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>Sec.<br/>SUBCHAPTER II—FOREIGN MILITARY SALES<br/>AUTHORIZATIONS</p> <p>2761. Sales from stocks.</p> <p>(a) Eligible countries or international organizations; basis of payment; valuation of certain defense articles.</p> <p>(b) Time of payment.</p> <p>(c) Personnel performing defense services sold as prohibited from performing combat activities.</p> <p>(d) Billings; interest after due date, rates of interest and extension of due date.</p> <p>(e) Charges; reduction or waiver.</p> <p>(f) Public inspection of contracts.</p> <p>(g) North Atlantic Treaty Organization standardization agreements, similar agreements; reimbursement for costs; transmittal to Congress.</p> <p>(h) Reciprocal quality assurance, inspection, contract administrative services, and contract audit defense services; catalog data and services.</p> <p>(i) Sales affecting combat readiness of Armed Forces; statement to Congress; limitation on delivery.</p> <p>(j) Tank and infantry vehicle upgrades.</p> <p>(k) Effect of sales of excess defense articles on national technology and industrial base.</p> <p>2762. Procurement for cash sales.</p> <p>(a) Authority of President; dependable undertaking by foreign country or international organization; interest rates.</p> <p>(b) Issuance of letters of offer under emergency determination; availability of appropriations for payment.</p> <p>(c) Applicability of Renegotiation Act of 1951.</p> <p>2763. Credit sales.</p> <p>(a) Financing procurement of defense articles and services, and design and construction services.</p> <p>(b) Repayment period.</p> <p>(c) Interest rate; definitions.</p> <p>(d) Participations in credits.</p> <p>(e) Payments on account of prior credits or loans.</p> <p>2764. Guaranties.</p> <p>(a) Guaranty against political and credit risks of nonpayment.</p> <p>(b) Sale of promissory notes of friendly countries and international organizations; guaranty of payment.</p> <p>(c) Guaranty Reserve Fund; payment of guaranties; guaranty reserve below prescribed amount.</p> <p>2765. Annual estimate and justification for sales program.</p> <p>(a) Report to Congress; contents.</p> <p>(b) Congressional request for additional information.</p> <p>(c) Submission of information in unclassified form or classified addendum with unclassified summary.</p> | <p>Sec.</p> <p>(d) "Cash flow financing" defined.</p> <p>(d) Transmission of information to Congress.</p> <p>2766. Security assistance surveys.</p> <p>(a) Statement of findings and policy.</p> <p>(b) Reporting requirements.</p> <p>(c) Submission of surveys to Congress.</p> <p>(d) "Security assistance surveys" defined.</p> <p>2767. Authority of President to enter into cooperative projects with friendly foreign countries.</p> <p>(a) Authority of President.</p> <p>(b) Definitions.</p> <p>(c) Agreements for equitable share of costs; limiting nature of agreements.</p> <p>(d) Contractual or other obligation; preconditions.</p> <p>(e) Waiver of charges; administrative surcharges.</p> <p>(f) Transmission of numbered certification to Congress respecting proposed agreement; contents.</p> <p>(g) Reporting and certification requirements applicable.</p> <p>(h) Statutory provisions applicable to sales.</p> <p>(i) Agreements entered into before October 1, 1985.</p> <p>(j) Cooperative project agreements with friendly foreign countries not members of NATO; reporting requirements.</p> <p>2767a. Repealed.</p> <p>2768. Reports on price and availability estimates.</p> <p>(a) Estimates to foreign countries respecting defense articles or services.</p> <p>(b) Requests from foreign countries respecting offers to sell defense articles or services.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">SUBCHAPTER II—A—FOREIGN MILITARY<br/>CONSTRUCTION SALES</p> <p>2769. Foreign military construction sales.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">SUBCHAPTER II—B—SALES TO UNITED STATES<br/>COMPANIES FOR INCORPORATION INTO END<br/>ITEMS</p> <p>2770. General authority.</p> <p>(a) Sale of defense articles and services by President to United States companies; restriction on performance of services; reimbursement credited to selling agency.</p> <p>(b) Conditions of sale.</p> <p>(c) "Defense articles" and "defense services" defined.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">SUBCHAPTER II—C—EXCHANGE OF TRAINING AND<br/>RELATED SUPPORT</p> <p>2770a. Exchange of training and related support.</p> <p>(a) Authorization; eligibility; scope.</p> <p>(b) Reciprocal arrangements; reimbursement.</p> <p>(c) Regulations.</p> <p>(d) Report to Congress.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">SUBCHAPTER III—MILITARY EXPORT CONTROLS</p> <p>2771. Military sales authorizations and ceilings.</p> |
|---|--|

|       |   |   |   |
|-------|---|---|---|
| Sec.  |   | Sec.  |   |
|       | (a) Authorization for foreign military sales credit and guarantee program.  |   | (g) Identification of persons convicted or subject to indictment for violations of certain provisions.          |
|       | (b) Aggregate ceilings on credit sales; availability at concessional rates of interest.   |   | (h) Judicial review of designation of items as defense articles or services.                                    |
|       | (c) Extended repayment terms.   | 2778a.  | Exportation of uranium depleted in the isotope 235.   |
|       | (d) Aggregate acquisition cost ceiling for ordered excess defense articles.   | 2779.   | Fees of military sales agents.  |
| 2772. | Repealed.   |   | (a) Adequate and timely reports to Secretary of State; maintenance of records.                                  |
| 2773. | Restraint in arms sales to Sub-Saharan Africa.  |   | (b) Presidential regulation.  |
| 2774. | Foreign military sales credit standards.  |   | (c) Allocation to contract; improper influence.   |
| 2775. | Foreign military sales to less developed countries.   |   | (d) Availability of records to Congress and Federal agencies.   |
| 2776. | Reports and certifications to Congress on military exports.   | 2779a.  | Prohibition on incentive payments.  |
|       | (a) Report by President; contents.  |   | (a) In general.   |
|       | (b) Letter of offer to sell defense articles, services, design and construction services, or major equipment; submission of numbered Presidential certification and additional statement; contents; emergency justification statement; enhancements or upgrades in sensitivity of technology or capability of major defense articles, equipment, or services. |   | (b) Civil penalties.  |
|       | (c) Application for export license; submission of numbered Presidential certification and statement to Congress; contents; emergency circumstances; joint resolution; exception.  | 2780.   | (c) Presidential authority.   |
|       | (d) Commercial technical assistance or manufacturing licensing agreements with non-North Atlantic Treaty Organization member countries; submission of Presidential certification; contents.   |   | (d) Definitions.  |
|       | (e) Definitions.  |   | Transactions with countries supporting acts of international terrorism.   |
| 2777. | Fiscal provisions relating to foreign military sales credits.   |   | (a) Prohibited transactions by United States Government.  |
|       | (a) Permissible uses of cash payments under sections 2761, 2762, 2763, and 2769.  |   | (b) Prohibited transactions by United States persons.   |
|       | (b) Transfer of funds to miscellaneous receipts of Treasury.  |   | (c) Transfers to governments and persons covered.   |
|       | (c) Credit of funds to reserve under section 2764(c).   |   | (d) Countries covered by prohibition.   |
| 2778. | Control of arms exports and imports.  |   | (e) Publication of determinations.  |
|       | (a) Presidential control of exports and imports of defense articles and services, guidance of policy, etc.; designation of United States Munitions List; issuance of export licenses; condition for export; negotiations information.   |   | (f) Rescission.   |
|       | (b) Registration and licensing requirements for manufacturers, exporters, or importers of designated defense articles and defense services.   |   | (g) Waiver.   |
|       | (c) Criminal violations; punishment.  |   | (h) Exemption for transactions subject to National Security Act reporting requirements.                         |
|       | (d) Repealed.   |   | (i) Relation to other laws.   |
|       | (e) Enforcement powers of President.  |   | (j) Criminal penalty.   |
|       | (f) Periodic review of items on Munitions List.   |   | (k) Civil penalties; enforcement.   |
|       |   |   | (l) Definitions.  |
|       |   | SUBCHAPTER IV—GENERAL, ADMINISTRATIVE, AND MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS |   |
|       |   | 2791.   | General provisions.   |
|       |   |   | (a) Considerations in procurement outside United States.  |
|       |   |   | (b) Information to Congress on credit sales and guaranties.   |
|       |   |   | (c) Availability of funds for procurement outside United States.  |
|       |   |   | (d) Responsibility of Secretary of Defense with respect to sales and guaranties.                                |
|       |   |   | (e) Revocation and suspension provisions of contracts for sale and export licenses; appropriations for refunds. |
|       |   |   | (f) Use of civilian contract personnel in foreign countries.  |
|       |   | 2792.   | Administrative expenses.  |
|       |   |   | (a) Availability of funds.  |
|       |   |   | (b) Charges for administrative expenses and official reception and representation expenses.                     |
|       |   |   | (c) Limitations on funds used for official reception and representation expenses.                               |
|       |   | 2793.   | Other provisions unaffected.  |
|       |   | 2794.   | Definitions.  |
|       |   | SUBCHAPTER V—SPECIAL DEFENSE ACQUISITION FUND                       |   |
|       |   | 2795.   | Fund.   |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>Sec.</p> <p>(a) Establishment; purposes; special requirements and responsibilities; continuous orders for certain articles and services; articles for narcotics control purposes.</p> <p>(b) Collections in Fund.</p> <p>(c) Amounts.</p> <p>2795a. Use and transfer of items procured by Fund.</p> <p>(a) Authorization.</p> <p>(b) Temporary use.</p> <p>(c) Storage, maintenance and other costs.</p> <p>2795b. Annual reports to Congress.</p> <p>(a) Comprehensive report on acquisitions of defense articles and services.</p> <p>(b) Estimate of likely procurements to be made through Fund.</p> <p>SUBCHAPTER VI—LEASES OF DEFENSE ARTICLES AND LOAN AUTHORITY FOR COOPERATIVE RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT PURPOSES</p> <p>2796. Leasing authority.</p> <p>(a) Preconditions.</p> <p>(b) Duration; termination.</p> <p>(c) Applicable statutory authorities.</p> <p>2796a. Reports to Congress.</p> <p>(a) Written certification to Speaker of the House and chairmen of Congressional committees.</p> <p>(b) Waiver; determination of emergency.</p> <p>2796b. Legislative review procedures.</p> <p>(a) Applicability.</p> <p>(b) Consideration of resolution.</p> <p>(c) Highly privileged nature of resolution.</p> <p>2796c. Applicability of other statutory provisions.</p> <p>2796d. Loan of materials, supplies, and equipment for research and development purposes.</p> <p>(a) Loan or gift transactions; written agreement; covered programs.</p> <p>(b) Reimbursement of consumed materials, etc.</p> <p>(c) Prohibitions.</p> <p>(d) "NATO or major non-NATO ally" defined.</p> <p>SUBCHAPTER VII—CONTROL OF MISSILES AND MISSILE EQUIPMENT OR TECHNOLOGY</p> <p>2797. Licensing.</p> <p>(a) Establishment of list of controlled items.</p> <p>(b) Referral of license applications.</p> <p>(c) Information sharing.</p> <p>(d) Exports to space launch vehicle programs.</p> <p>2797a. Denial of transfer of missile equipment or technology by United States persons.</p> <p>(a) Sanctions.</p> <p>(b) Discretionary sanctions.</p> <p>(c) Presumption.</p> <p>(d) Waiver.</p> <p>2797b. Transfers of missile equipment or technology by foreign persons.</p> <p>(a) Sanctions.</p> | <p>Sec.</p> <p>(b) Inapplicability with respect to MTCR adherents.</p> <p>(c) Effect of enforcement actions by MTCR adherents.</p> <p>(d) Advisory opinions.</p> <p>(e) Waiver and report to Congress.</p> <p>(f) Presumption.</p> <p>(g) Additional waiver.</p> <p>(h) Exceptions.</p> <p>2797b-1. Notification of admittance of MTCR adherents.</p> <p>2797c. Definitions.</p> <p>SUBCHAPTER VIII—CHEMICAL OR BIOLOGICAL WEAPONS PROLIFERATION</p> <p>2798. Sanctions against certain foreign persons.</p> <p>(a) Imposition of sanctions.</p> <p>(b) Consultations with and actions by foreign government of jurisdiction.</p> <p>(c) Sanctions.</p> <p>(d) Termination of sanctions.</p> <p>(e) Waiver.</p> <p>(f) "Foreign person" defined.</p> <p>SUBCHAPTER IX—TRANSFER OF CERTAIN CFE TREATY-LIMITED EQUIPMENT TO NATO MEMBERS</p> <p>2799. Purpose.</p> <p>2799a. CFE Treaty obligations.</p> <p>2799b. Authorities.</p> <p>(a) General authority.</p> <p>(b) Acceptance of NATO assistance in eliminating direct costs of transfers.</p> <p>(c) Acceptance of NATO assistance in meeting certain United States obligations.</p> <p>(d) Authority to transfer on grant basis.</p> <p>(e) Third country transfers restrictions.</p> <p>(f) Maintenance of military balance in Eastern Mediterranean.</p> <p>(g) Expiration of authority.</p> <p>2799c. Notifications and reports to Congress.</p> <p>(a) Notifications.</p> <p>(b) Annual reports.</p> <p>2799d. Definitions.</p> <p>SUBCHAPTER X—NUCLEAR NONPROLIFERATION CONTROLS</p> <p>2799aa. Nuclear enrichment transfers.</p> <p>(a) Prohibitions; safeguards and management.</p> <p>(b) Certification by President of necessity of continued assistance; disapproval by Congress.</p> <p>2799aa-1. Nuclear reprocessing transfers, illegal exports for nuclear explosive devices, transfers of nuclear explosive devices, and nuclear detonations.</p> <p>(a) Prohibitions on assistance to countries involved in transfer of nuclear reprocessing equipment, materials, or technology; exceptions; procedures applicable.</p> <p>(b) Prohibitions on assistance to countries involved in transfer or use of nuclear explosive devices; exceptions; procedures applicable.</p> <p>(c) "Non-nuclear-weapon state" defined.</p> <p>2799aa-2. "Nuclear explosive device" defined.</p> |
|--|--|

## CHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This chapter is referred to sections 2272, 2291, 2291e, 2291f, 2304, 2311, 2318, 2321h, 2321i, 2349a, 2349aa-2, 2364, 2370a, 2373, 2394-1, 2413, 2414, 2423, 2778a, 3402, 5603, 5605, 6003 of this title; title 10 sections 130, 2344, 2350b, 2350c; title 12 section 635; title 15 section 4605; title 18 section 2516; title 26 section 901; title 29 sections 1662d, 1662d-1; title 49 section 44908; title 50 section 415.

## SUBCHAPTER I—FOREIGN AND NATIONAL SECURITY POLICY OBJECTIVES AND RESTRAINTS

**§ 2751. Need for international defense cooperation and military export controls; Presidential waiver; report to Congress; arms sales policy**

As declared by the Congress in the Arms Control and Disarmament Act [22 U.S.C. 2551 et seq.], an ultimate goal of the United States continues to be a world which is free from the scourge of war and the dangers and burdens of armaments; in which the use of force has been subordinated to the rule of law; and in which international adjustments to a changing world are achieved peacefully. In furtherance of that goal, it remains the policy of the United States to encourage regional arms control and disarmament agreements and to discourage arms races.

The Congress recognizes, however, that the United States and other free and independent countries continue to have valid requirements for effective and mutually beneficial defense relationships in order to maintain and foster the environment of international peace and security essential to social, economic, and political progress. Because of the growing cost and complexity of defense equipment, it is increasingly difficult and uneconomic for any country, particularly a developing country, to fill all of its legitimate defense requirements from its own design and production base. The need for international defense cooperation among the United States and those friendly countries to which it is allied by mutual defense treaties is especially important, since the effectiveness of their armed forces to act in concert to deter or defeat aggression is directly related to the operational compatibility of their defense equipment.

Accordingly, it remains the policy of the United States to facilitate the common defense by entering into international arrangements with friendly countries which further the objective of applying agreed resources of each country to programs and projects of cooperative exchange of data, research, development, production, procurement, and logistics support to achieve specific national defense requirements and objectives of mutual concern. To this end, this chapter authorizes sales by the United States Government to friendly countries having sufficient wealth to maintain and equip their own military forces at adequate strength, or to assume progressively larger shares of the costs thereof, without undue burden to their economies, in accordance with the restraints and control measures specified herein and in furtherance of the security objectives of the United States and of the purposes and principles of the United Nations Charter.

It is the sense of the Congress that all such sales be approved only when they are consistent

with the foreign policy interests of the United States, the purposes of the foreign assistance program of the United States as embodied in the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as amended [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.], the extent and character of the military requirement, and the economic and financial capability of the recipient country, with particular regard being given, where appropriate, to proper balance among such sales, grant military assistance, and economic assistance as well as to the impact of the sales on programs of social and economic development and on existing or incipient arms races.

It shall be the policy of the United States to exert leadership in the world community to bring about arrangements for reducing the international trade in implements of war and to lessen the danger of outbreak of regional conflict and the burdens of armaments. United States programs for or procedures governing the export, sale, and grant of defense articles and defense services to foreign countries and international organizations shall be administered in a manner which will carry out this policy.

It is the sense of the Congress that the President should seek to initiate multilateral discussions for the purpose of reaching agreements among the principal arms suppliers and arms purchasers and other countries with respect to the control of the international trade in armaments. It is further the sense of Congress that the President should work actively with all nations to check and control the international sale and distribution of conventional weapons of death and destruction and to encourage regional arms control arrangements. In furtherance of this policy, the President should undertake a concerted effort to convene an international conference of major arms-supplying and arms-purchasing nations which shall consider measures to limit conventional arms transfers in the interest of international peace and stability.

It is the sense of the Congress that the aggregate value of defense articles and defense services—

(1) which are sold under section 2761 or section 2762 of this title; or

(2) which are licensed or approved for export under section 2778 of this title to, for the use, or for benefit of the armed forces, police, intelligence, or other internal security forces of a foreign country or international organization under a commercial sales contract;

in any fiscal year should not exceed current levels.

It is the sense of the Congress that the President maintain adherence to a policy of restraint in conventional arms transfers and that, in implementing this policy worldwide, a balanced approach should be taken and full regard given to the security interests of the United States in all regions of the world and that particular attention should be paid to controlling the flow of conventional arms to the nations of the developing world. To this end, the President is encouraged to continue discussions with other arms suppliers in order to restrain the flow of conventional arms to less developed countries.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 1, §1, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1321; Pub. L. 91-672, §4, Jan. 12, 1971, 84 Stat. 2053;

Pub. L. 93-189, §25(1), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 729; Pub. L. 94-329, title II, §202, formerly §202(a), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 734, renumbered and amended Pub. L. 95-384, §§15(a), 29(c)(1)(A), Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 739, 747; Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, §734(a)(10), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Arms Control and Disarmament Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 87-297, Sept. 26, 1961, 75 Stat. 631, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 35 (§2551 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2551 of this title, and Tables.

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as amended, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 32 (§2151 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

## REFERENCES TO FOREIGN MILITARY SALES ACT DEEMED REFERENCE TO ARMS EXPORT CONTROL ACT

Section 201(b) of Pub. L. 94-329 provided that: "Any reference to the Foreign Military Sales Act [see Short Title note above] shall be deemed to be a reference to the Arms Export Control Act."

## REFERENCES TO PRESENT INSTEAD OF PAST PROVISIONS; SPECIFIC APPLICATION OF OTHER PROVISIONS TO THIS CHAPTER

Section 45(c) of Pub. L. 90-629 provided that: "References in law to the provisions of law repealed by subsection (a) of this section [repealing sections 2341 to 2343, 2344(b)(3), 2345, 2394(g), and 2399a of this title] shall hereafter [on and after Oct. 22, 1968] be deemed to be references to this Act [this chapter] or appropriate provisions of this Act. Except for the laws specified in section 44 [section 2793 of this title], no other provision of law shall be deemed to apply to this Act unless it refers specifically to this Act or refers generally to sales of defense articles and defense services under any Act."

## AMENDMENTS

1981—Pub. L. 97-113 struck out paragraph which provided that it was the sense of Congress that sales and guaranties under sections 2761, 2762, 2763, and 2764 of this title not be approved where they would have had the effect of arming military dictators who were denying the growth of fundamental rights or social progress to their own people but allowing the President to waive this limitation when he determined it would be important to the security of the United States, and promptly so reported to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations in the Senate.

1978—Pub. L. 95-384, §15(a), inserted paragraph relating to adherence to a policy of restraint in conventional arms transfer.

1976—Pub. L. 94-329 substituted in last paragraph provision relating to a new statement of policy whereby the United States shall exert leadership in the reduction of international trade in arms, and in that regard, the President to initiate discussions and actively work with other nations with a view towards control of international trade in arms, for provisions relating to a reduction in the role of the United States in furnishing of defense articles and defense services to foreign countries and international organizations by decreasing sales, credit sales and guarantees of such articles and services.

1973—Pub. L. 93-189 inserted last paragraph relating to a reduction by the United States in the furnishing of defense articles and defense services to foreign countries.

1971—Pub. L. 91-672 substituted "denying the growth of fundamental rights or social progress" for "denying social progress" in last par.

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 41 of Pub. L. 90-629 provided that: "This Act [enacting this chapter, amending sections 2344, 2382, 2392, 2394, and 2403 of this title, repealing sections 2341 to 2343, 2345, and 2399a of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and section 2341 of this title] shall take effect on July 1, 1968."

## SHORT TITLE OF 1991 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 102-228, §1, Dec. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 1691, provided that: "This Act [enacting sections 2595b-1 and 2799 to 2799d of this title, amending sections 2581, 2589, 2595, and 2595c of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under section 2551 of this title] may be cited as the 'Conventional Forces in Europe Treaty Implementation Act of 1991'."

## SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 90-629, as amended by section 201(a) of Pub. L. 94-329, provided: "That this Act [enacting this chapter, amending sections 2382, 2392, 2394, and 2403 of this title, repealing sections 2341 to 2343, 2344, 2345, 2394, and 2399 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and section 2341 of this title] may be cited as the 'Arms Export Control Act'."

## REPORTS ON COUNTERPROLIFERATION ACTIVITIES AND PROGRAMS

Pub. L. 103-337, div. A, title XV, §1503, Oct. 5, 1994, 108 Stat. 2916, provided that:

"(a) REPORT REQUIRED.—(1) Not later than May 1, 1995, and May 1, 1996, the Secretary of Defense shall submit to Congress a report of the findings of the Counterproliferation Program Review Committee established by subsection (a) of the Review Committee charter.

"(2) For purposes of this section, the term 'Review Committee charter' means section 1605 of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 1994 (Public Law 103-160) [set out below], as amended by section 1502.

"(b) CONTENT OF REPORT.—Each report under subsection (a) shall include the following:

"(1) A complete list, by specific program element, of the existing, planned, or newly proposed capabilities and technologies reviewed by the Review Committee pursuant to subsection (c) of the Review Committee charter.

"(2) A complete description of the requirements and priorities established by the Review Committee.

"(3) A comprehensive discussion of the near-term, mid-term, and long-term programmatic options formulated by the Review Committee for meeting requirements prescribed by the Review Committee and for eliminating deficiencies identified by the Review Committee, including the annual funding requirements and completion dates established for each such option.

"(4) An explanation of the recommendations made pursuant to subsection (c) of the Review Committee charter, together with a full discussion of the actions taken to implement such recommendations or otherwise taken on the recommendations.

"(5) A discussion and assessment of the status of each Review Committee recommendation during the fiscal year preceding the fiscal year in which the report is submitted, including, particularly, the status of recommendations made during such preceding fiscal year that were reflected in the budget submitted to Congress pursuant to section 1105(a) of title 31, United States Code, in the fiscal year of the report.

"(6) Each specific Department of Energy program that the Secretary of Energy plans to develop to initial operating capability and each such program that the Secretary does not plan to develop to initial operating capability.

"(7) For each technology program scheduled to reach initial operational capability, a recommendation from the Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff

that represents the views of the commanders of the unified and specified commands regarding the utility and requirement of the program.

“(c) FORMS OF REPORT.—Each such report shall be submitted in both unclassified and classified forms, including an annex to the classified report for special compartmented information programs, special access programs, and special activities programs.”

#### ARAB LEAGUE BOYCOTT OF ISRAEL

Pub. L. 103-236, title V, §564, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 484, as amended by Pub. L. 103-415, §1(l), Oct. 25, 1994, 108 Stat. 4301, provided that:

“(a) PROHIBITION.—No defense article or defense service may be sold or leased by the United States Government to any country or international organization that, as a matter of policy or practice, is known to have sent letters to United States firms requesting compliance with, or soliciting information regarding compliance with, the Arab League secondary or tertiary boycott of Israel, unless the President determines, and so certifies to the appropriate congressional committees, that that country or organization does not currently maintain a policy or practice of making such requests or solicitations.

“(b) WAIVER.—

“(1) 1-YEAR WAIVER.—On or after the effective date of this section, the President may waive, for a period of 1 year, the application of subsection (a) with respect to any country or organization if the President determines, and reports to the appropriate congressional committees, that—

“(A) such waiver is in the national interest of the United States, and such waiver will promote the objectives of this section to eliminate the Arab boycott; or

“(B) such waiver is in the national security interest of the United States.

“(2) EXTENSION OF WAIVER.—If the President determines that the further extension of a waiver will promote the objectives of this section, the President, upon notification of the appropriate congressional committees, may grant further extensions of such waiver for successive 12-month periods.

“(3) TERMINATION OF WAIVER.—The President may, at any time, terminate any waiver granted under this subsection.

“(c) DEFINITIONS.—As used in this section—

“(1) the term ‘appropriate congressional committees’ means the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs [now Committee on International Relations] of the House of Representatives; and

“(2) the terms ‘defense article’ and ‘defense service’ have the meanings given to such terms by paragraphs (3) and (4), respectively, of section 47 of the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2794(3), (4)].

“(d) EFFECTIVE DATE.—This section shall take effect 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act [Apr. 30, 1994].”

[Certifications and determinations relating to suspension of application by President under section 564 of Pub. L. 103-236, set out above, were contained in the following:

[Determination of President of the United States, No. 95-20, May 1, 1995, 60 F.R. 22245.]

#### COUNTERPROLIFERATION POLICY AND PROGRAMS OF UNITED STATES

Pub. L. 103-160, div. A, title XVI, §§1603, 1605, 1607, Nov. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 1843, 1845, 1847, as amended by Pub. L. 103-337, div. A, title XV, §§1502, 1505(a), (b), Oct. 5, 1994, 108 Stat. 2914, 2919, provided that:

“SEC. 1603. STUDIES RELATING TO UNITED STATES COUNTERPROLIFERATION POLICY.

“(a) AUTHORIZATION TO CONDUCT STUDIES.—The Secretary of Defense may conduct studies and analysis programs in support of the counterproliferation policy of the United States.

“(b) COUNTERPROLIFERATION STUDIES.—Studies and analysis programs under this section may include programs intended to explore defense policy issues that might be involved in efforts to prevent and counter the proliferation of weapons of mass destruction and their delivery systems. Such efforts include—

“(1) enhancing United States military capabilities to deter and respond to terrorism, theft, and proliferation involving weapons of mass destruction;

“(2) cooperating in international programs to enhance military capabilities to deter and respond to terrorism, theft, and proliferation involving weapons of mass destruction; and

“(3) otherwise contributing to Department of Defense capabilities to deter, identify, monitor, and respond to such terrorism, theft, and proliferation involving weapons of mass destruction.

“(c) DESIGNATION OF COORDINATOR.—The Under Secretary of Defense for Policy, subject to the supervision and control of the Secretary of Defense, shall coordinate the policy studies and analysis of the Department of Defense on countering proliferation of weapons of mass destruction and their delivery systems.

“(d) REPORT.—Not later than April 30 of each year, [sic] the Secretary of Defense shall submit to the appropriate congressional committees a report on the activities carried out under subsection (a). Each report shall set forth for the twelve-month period ending on the last day of the month preceding the month in which the report is due the following:

“(1) A description of the studies and analysis carried out.

“(2) The amounts spent for such studies and analysis.

“(3) The organizations that conducted the studies and analysis.

“(4) An explanation of the extent to which such studies and analysis contributes [sic] to the counterproliferation policy of the United States and United States military capabilities to deter and respond to terrorism, theft, and proliferation involving weapons of mass destruction.

“(5) A description of the measures being taken to ensure that such studies and analysis within the Department of Defense is [sic] managed effectively and coordinated comprehensively.

“SEC. 1605. JOINT COMMITTEE FOR REVIEW OF COUNTERPROLIFERATION PROGRAMS OF THE UNITED STATES.

“(a) ESTABLISHMENT.—(1) There is hereby established a Counterproliferation Program Review Committee composed of the following members:

“(A) The Secretary of Defense.

“(B) The Secretary of Energy.

“(C) The Director of Central Intelligence.

“(D) The Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff.

“(2) The Secretary of Defense shall chair the committee. The Secretary of Energy shall serve as the Vice Chairman of the committee.

“(3) A member of the committee may designate a representative to perform routinely the duties of the member. A representative shall be in a position of Deputy Assistant Secretary or a position equivalent to or above the level of Deputy Assistant Secretary. A representative of the Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff shall be a person in a grade equivalent to that of Deputy Assistant Secretary of Defense.

“(4) The Secretary of Defense may delegate to the Under Secretary of Defense for Acquisition and Technology the performance of the duties of the Chairman of the committee. The Secretary of Energy may delegate to the Under Secretary of Energy responsible for national security programs of the Department of Energy the performance of the duties of the Vice Chairman of the committee.

“(b) PURPOSES OF THE COMMITTEE.—The purposes of the committee are as follows:

“(1) To optimize funding for, and ensure the development and deployment of—

“(A) highly effective technologies and capabilities for the detection, monitoring, collection, processing, analysis, and dissemination of information in support of United States counterproliferation policy; and

“(B) disabling technologies in support of such policy.

“(2) To identify and eliminate undesirable redundancies or uncoordinated efforts in the development and deployment of such technologies and capabilities.

“(3) To establish priorities for programs and funding.

“(4) To encourage and facilitate interagency and interdepartmental funding of programs in order to ensure necessary levels of funding to develop, operate, and field highly-capable systems.

“(5) To ensure that Department of Energy programs are integrated with the operational needs of other departments and agencies of the Government.

“(6) To ensure that Department of Energy national security programs include technology demonstrations and prototype development of equipment.

“(c) DUTIES.—The committee shall—

“(1) identify and review existing and proposed capabilities and technologies for support of United States nonproliferation policy and counterproliferation policy with regard to—

“(A) intelligence;

“(B) battlefield surveillance;

“(C) passive defenses;

“(D) active defenses; and

“(E) counterforce capabilities;

“(2) prescribe requirements and priorities for the development and deployment of highly effective capabilities and technologies;

“(3) identify deficiencies in existing capabilities and technologies;

“(4) formulate near-term, mid-term, and long-term programmatic options for meeting requirements established by the committee and eliminating deficiencies identified by the committee; and

“(5) assess each fiscal year the effectiveness of the committee actions during the preceding fiscal year, including, particularly, the status of recommendations made during such preceding fiscal year that were reflected in the budget submitted to Congress pursuant to section 1105(a) of title 31, United States Code, for the fiscal year following the fiscal year in which the assessment is made.

“(d) ACCESS TO INFORMATION.—The committee shall have access to information on all programs, projects, and activities of the Department of Defense, the Department of State, the Department of Energy, the intelligence community, and the Arms Control and Disarmament Agency that are pertinent to the purposes and duties of the committee.

“(e) RECOMMENDATIONS.—The committee shall submit to the President and the heads of all appropriate departments and agencies of the Government such programmatic recommendations regarding existing, planned, or new programs as the committee considers appropriate to encourage funding for capabilities and technologies at the level necessary to support United States counterproliferation policy.

“(f) TERMINATION OF COMMITTEE.—The committee shall cease to exist at the end of September 30, 1996.

“SEC. 1607. DEFINITIONS.

“For purposes of this subtitle [subtitle A, §§ 1601–1607, of title XVI of div. A of Pub. L. 103–160, amending section 5859a of this title and enacting this note]:

“(1) The term ‘appropriate congressional committees’ means—

“(A) the Committee on Armed Services, the Committee on Appropriations, the Committee on Foreign Relations, and the Select Committee on Intelligence of the Senate; and

“(B) the Committee on Armed Services [now Committee on National Security], the Committee

on Appropriations, the Committee on Foreign Affairs [now Committee on International Relations], and the Permanent Select Committee on Intelligence of the House of Representatives.

“(2) The term ‘intelligence community’ has the meaning given such term in section 3 of the National Security Act of 1947 (50 U.S.C. 401a).”

RESTRICTION ON ARMS SALES TO SAUDI ARABIA AND KUWAIT

Pub. L. 102–229, title I, § 104, Dec. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 1707, provided that:

“(a) No funds appropriated or otherwise made available by this or any other Act may be used in any fiscal year to conduct, support, or administer any sale of defense articles or defense services to Saudi Arabia or Kuwait until that country has paid in full, either in cash or in mutually agreed in-kind contributions, the following commitments made to the United States to support Operation Desert Shield/Desert Storm:

“(1) In the case of Saudi Arabia, \$16,839,000,000.

“(2) In the case of Kuwait, \$16,006,000,000.

“(b) For purposes of this section, the term ‘any sale’ means any sale with respect to which the President is required to submit a numbered certification to the Congress pursuant to the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.] on or after the effective date of this section.

“(c) This section shall take effect 120 days after the date of enactment of this joint resolution [Dec. 12, 1991].

“(d) Any military equipment of the United States, including battle tanks, armored combat vehicles, and artillery, included within the Conventional Forces in Europe Treaty definition of ‘conventional armaments and equipment limited by the Treaty’, which may be transferred to any other NATO country shall be subject to the notification procedures stated in section 523 of Public Law 101–513 [104 Stat. 2007] and in section 634A of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2394–1].”

ANNUAL REPORT ON PROLIFERATION OF MISSILES AND ESSENTIAL COMPONENTS OF NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL WEAPONS

Pub. L. 102–190, div. A, title X, § 1097, Dec. 5, 1991, 105 Stat. 1489, provided that:

“(a) REPORT REQUIRED.—(1) The President shall submit to the Committees on Armed Services and Foreign Affairs [now Committees on National Security and International Relations] of the House of Representatives and the Committees on Armed Services and Foreign Relations of the Senate an annual report on the transfer by any country of weapons, technology, or materials that can be used to deliver, manufacture, or weaponize nuclear, biological, or chemical weapons (hereinafter in this section referred to as ‘NBC weapons’) to any country other than a country referred to in subsection (d) that is seeking to acquire such weapons, technology, or materials, or other system that the Secretary of Defense has reason to believe could be used to deliver NBC weapons.

“(2) The first such report shall be submitted not later than 90 days after the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 5, 1991].

“(b) MATTERS TO BE COVERED.—Each such report shall cover—

“(1) the transfer of all aircraft, cruise missiles, artillery weapons, unguided rockets and multiple rocket systems, and related bombs, shells, warheads and other weaponization technology and materials that the Secretary has reason to believe may be intended for the delivery of NBC weapons;

“(2) international transfers of MTCR equipment or technology to any country that is seeking to acquire such equipment or any other system that the Secretary has reason to believe may be used to deliver NBC weapons; and

“(3) the transfer of technology, test equipment, radioactive materials, feedstocks and cultures, and



all other specialized materials that the Secretary has reason to believe could be used to manufacture NBC weapons.

“(c) CONTENT OF REPORT.—Each such report shall include the following:

“(1) The status of missile, aircraft, and other weapons delivery and weaponization programs in any such country, including efforts by such country to acquire MTCR equipment, NBC-capable aircraft, or any other weapon or major weapon component which is dedicated to the delivery of NBC weapons, whose primary use is the delivery of NBC weapons, or that the Secretary has reason to believe could be used to deliver NBC weapons.

“(2) The status of NBC weapons development, manufacture, and deployment programs in any such country, including efforts to acquire essential test equipment, manufacturing equipment and technology, weaponization equipment and technology, and radioactive material, feedstocks or components of feedstocks, and biological cultures and toxins.

“(3) A description of assistance provided by any person or government, after the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 5, 1991], to any such country in the development of—

“(A) missile systems, as defined in the MTCR or that the Secretary has reason to believe may be used to deliver NBC weapons;

“(B) aircraft and other delivery systems and weapons that the Secretary has reason to believe could be used to deliver NBC weapons; and

“(C) NBC weapons.

“(4) A listing of those persons and countries which continue to provide such equipment or technology described in paragraph (3) to any country as of the date of submission of the report.

“(5) A description of the diplomatic measures that the United States, and that other adherents to the MTCR and other agreements affecting the acquisition and delivery of NBC weapons, have made with respect to activities and private persons and governments suspected of violating the MTCR and such other agreements.

“(6) An analysis of the effectiveness of the regulatory and enforcement regimes of the United States and other countries that adhere to the MTCR and other agreements affecting the acquisition and delivery of NBC weapons in controlling the export of MTCR and other NBC weapons and delivery system equipment or technology.

“(7) A summary of advisory opinions issued under section 11B(b)(4) of the Export Administration Act of 1979 (50 U.S.C. App. 2401b(b)(4)) [50 App. U.S.C. 2410b(b)(4)] and under section 73(d) of the Arms Export Control Act (22 U.S.C. 2797b(d)).

“(8) An explanation of United States policy regarding the transfer of MTCR equipment or technology to foreign missile programs, including programs involving launches of space vehicles.

“(d) EXCLUSIONS.—The countries excluded under subsection (a) are Australia, Belgium, Canada, Denmark, the Federal Republic of Germany, France, Greece, Iceland, Israel, Italy, Japan, Luxembourg, the Netherlands, Norway, Portugal, Spain, Turkey, the United Kingdom, and the United States.

“(e) CLASSIFICATION OF REPORT.—The President shall make every effort to submit all of the information required by this section in unclassified form. Whenever the President submits any such information in classified form, he shall submit such classified information in an addendum and shall also submit concurrently a detailed summary, in unclassified form, of that classified information.

“(f) DEFINITIONS.—For purposes of this section:

“(1) The terms ‘missile’, ‘MTCR’, and ‘MTCR equipment or technology’ have the meanings given those terms in section 74 of the Arms Export Control Act (22 U.S.C. 2797c).

“(2) The term ‘weaponize’ or ‘weaponization’ means to incorporate into, or the incorporation into, usable ordnance or other militarily useful means of delivery.

“(g) REPEAL OF SUPERSEDED LAW.—Section 1704 of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 1991 (Public Law 101-510; 104 Stat. 1749; 22 U.S.C. 2797 [22 U.S.C. 2797 note]) is repealed.”

[Ex. Ord. No. 12851, §2(c), June 11, 1993, 58 F.R. 33181, set out as a note under section 2797 of this title, delegated to Secretary of State authority and duties of the President to make certain reports to Congress as provided in section 1097 of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Years 1992 and 1993, Pub. L. 102-190, set out above.]

#### CONVENTIONAL ARMS TRANSFERS

Pub. L. 99-83, title I, §129, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 206, directed President, at the earliest possible date, in consultation with United States allies, to initiate discussions with the Soviet Union and France aimed at beginning multilateral negotiations to limit and control the transfer of conventional arms to less developed countries, and, within one year after Aug. 8, 1985, submit to Speaker of House of Representatives and chairman of Committee on Foreign Relations of Senate a report which specifies steps being taken to fulfill such requirements and which examines and analyzes, among specified matters, United States policies concerning the export of conventional arms, especially sophisticated weapons, and possible approaches to developing multilateral limitations on conventional arms sales.

#### TERMINATION OF NONRECURRING ACTIVITIES UNDER FOREIGN ASSISTANCE ACT OF 1961 AND THIS CHAPTER AND REMOVAL FROM LAW

Section 734(c) of Pub. L. 97-113 provided that: “Except as otherwise explicitly provided by their terms, amendments to the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.] and the Arms Export Control Act [this chapter] which are applicable only to a single fiscal or calendar year or which require reports or other actions on a nonrecurring basis shall be deemed to have expired and shall be removed from law upon the expiration of the applicable time periods for the fulfillment of the required actions.”

#### REPORT TO CONGRESS BY PRESIDENT ON MULTILATERAL DISCUSSIONS CONCERNING ARMS TRANSFER POLICY

Section 15(b) of Pub. L. 95-384 directed President, not later than Dec. 31, 1979, to transmit to Congress a detailed report assessing results and commenting on implications of multilateral discussion referred to in paragraph added to this section by section 15(a) of Pub. L. 95-384, relating to adherence to a policy of restraint in conventional arms transfer, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, §734(a)(12), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.

#### REPORT BY PRESIDENT ON REVIEW OF ARMS SALES CONTROLS ON NON-LETHAL ITEMS

Section 25 of Pub. L. 95-384 directed President, within 120 days after Sept. 26, 1978, to report in writing to Speaker of House of Representatives and chairman of Committee on Foreign Relations of Senate the results of the review conducted pursuant to Pub. L. 95-92, §27, Aug. 4, 1977, 91 Stat. 626, set out below, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, §734(a)(12), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.

#### REPORT BY PRESIDENT ON IMPACT OF FOREIGN ARMS SALES AND TRANSFERS TO FOREIGN GOVERNMENTS ON DEFENSE READINESS AND NATIONAL SECURITY OF UNITED STATES

Pub. L. 95-92, §23, Aug. 4, 1977, 91 Stat. 624, set forth provisions respecting Presidential report on impact of United States foreign arms sales and transfers on de-

fense readiness and national security, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 95-384, §29(c)(2)(B), Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 747.

STUDY BY PRESIDENT OF NATIONAL SECURITY AND MILITARY IMPLICATIONS OF INTERNATIONAL TRANSFERS OF TECHNOLOGY; SCOPE OF STUDY; UTILIZATION OF EXECUTIVE DEPARTMENTS AND AGENCIES

Pub. L. 95-92, §24, Aug. 4, 1977, 91 Stat. 624, as amended by Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, §734(a)(13), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560, directed President to conduct a comprehensive study of policies and practices of United States Government with respect to national security and military implications of international transfers of technology in order to determine whether such policies and practices should be changed, with President to utilize resources and expertise of Arms Control and Disarmament Agency, Department of State, Department of Defense, Department of Commerce, National Science Foundation, Office of Science and Technology Policy, and such other entities within the Executive branch as he deemed necessary.

STATEMENT OF POLICY REGARDING UNITED STATES ARMS SALES TO ISRAEL

Pub. L. 95-92, §26, Aug. 4, 1977, 91 Stat. 625, provided that: "In accordance with the historic special relationship between the United States and Israel and previous agreements and continuing understandings, the Congress joins with the President in reaffirming that a policy of restraint in United States arms transfers, including arms sales ceilings, shall not impair Israel's deterrent strength or undermine the military balance in the Middle East."

REVIEW BY PRESIDENT OF CATEGORIES AND ARMS SALES CONTROLS ON LETHAL AND NON-LETHAL ITEMS

Pub. L. 95-92, §27, Aug. 4, 1977, 91 Stat. 626, directed President to undertake a review of all regulations relating to arms control for the purpose of defining and categorizing lethal and non-lethal products and establishing the appropriate level of control for each category.

STUDY OF UNITED STATES ARMS SALES POLICIES AND PRACTICES BY PRESIDENT; REPORT TO CONGRESS

Section 202(b) of Pub. L. 94-329 set forth provisions respecting study and report to Congress of United States arms sales policies and practices, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 95-384, §29(c)(1)(A), Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 747.

PRESIDENTIAL REPORT REGARDING SALES OF EXCESS DEFENSE ARTICLES TO FOREIGN GOVERNMENTS AND INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATIONS

Section 217 of Pub. L. 94-329 set forth provisions respecting report by the President of all sales under this chapter of excess defense articles to foreign governments and international organizations, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 95-384, §29(c)(1)(B), Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 747.

STUDY BY SECRETARIES OF STATE AND DEFENSE ON CONSEQUENCES OF ENACTMENT OF ARMS EXPORT CONTROL PROVISIONS

Section 218 of Pub. L. 94-329 set forth provisions respecting study by the Secretaries of State and Defense on consequences of enactment of arms export control provisions by title II of Pub. L. 94-329, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 95-384, §29(c)(1)(C), Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 747.

TOTAL NUMBER OF CREDITS TO BE EXTENDED BETWEEN JULY 1, 1976, AND SEPTEMBER 30, 1976

Section 506(b) of Pub. L. 94-329 provided that the total number of credits extended pursuant to this chapter, between July 1, 1976, and Sept. 30, 1976, not exceed an amount equal to one-fourth of the total amount of credits extended and guaranteed for fiscal year 1976.

ADDITIONAL MILITARY AND CIVILIAN PERSONNEL FOR DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE

Pub. L. 94-329, title VI, §605(a), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 768, provided that: "Nothing in this Act [see Short Title

of 1976 Amendment note set out under section 2151 of the title] is intended to authorize any additional military or civilian personnel for the Department of Defense for the purposes of this Act, the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [section 2151 et seq. of this title], or the Arms Export Control Act [this chapter]. Personnel levels authorized in statutes authorizing appropriations for military and civilian personnel of the Department of Defense shall be controlling over all military and civilian personnel of the Department of Defense assigned to carry out functions under the Arms Export Control Act and the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961."

SALES TO THE MIDDLE EAST; REQUESTS FOR ADDITIONAL APPROPRIATIONS

Section 5 of Pub. L. 91-672 provided that: "It is the sense of Congress that (1) the President should continue to press forward urgently with his efforts to negotiate with the Soviet Union and other powers a limitation on arms shipments to the Middle East, (2) the President should be supported in his position that arms will be made available and credits provided to Israel and other friendly states, to the extent that the President determines such assistance to be needed in order to meet threats to the security and independence of such states, and (3) if the authorization provided in the Foreign Military Sales Act, as amended [this chapter], should prove to be insufficient to effectuate this stated policy, the President should promptly submit to the Congress requests for an appropriate supplementary authorization and appropriation."

REVIEW OF MILITARY AID PROGRAMS AND EFFORTS FOR REGULATION OF CONVENTIONAL ARMS TRADE

Section 6 of Pub. L. 91-672 provided that: "It is the sense of the Congress that—

"(1) the President should immediately institute a thorough and comprehensive review of the military aid programs of the United States, particularly with respect to the military assistance and sales operations of the Department of Defense, and

"(2) the President should take such actions as may be appropriate—

"(A) to initiate multilateral discussions among the United States, the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics, Great Britain, France, West Germany, Italy and other countries on the control of the worldwide trade in armaments,

"(B) to commence a general debate in the United Nations with respect to the control of the conventional arms trade, and

"(C) to use the power and prestige of his office to signify the intention of the United States to work actively with all nations to check and control the international sales and distribution of conventional weapons of death and destruction."

EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 11501

Ex. Ord. No. 11501, Dec. 22, 1969, 34 F.R. 20169, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 11685, Sept. 25, 1972, 37 F.R. 20155, which related to the administration of this chapter, was revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 11958, Jan. 18, 1977, 42 F.R. 4311, set out below.

EX. ORD. NO. 11958. ADMINISTRATION OF CHAPTER

Ex. Ord. No. 11958, Jan. 18, 1977, 42 F.R. 4311, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 12118, Feb. 6, 1979, 44 F.R. 7939; Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673; Ex. Ord. No. 12210, Apr. 16, 1980, 45 F.R. 26313; Ex. Ord. No. 12321, Sept. 14, 1981, 46 F.R. 46109; Ex. Ord. No. 12365, May 24, 1982, 47 F.R. 22933; Ex. Ord. No. 12423, May 26, 1983, 48 F.R. 24025; Ex. Ord. No. 12560, May 24, 1986, 51 F.R. 19159; Ex. Ord. No. 12680, July 5, 1989, 54 F.R. 28995; Ex. Ord. No. 12738, §7, Dec. 14, 1990, 55 F.R. 52035, provided:

By virtue of the authority vested in me by the Constitution and statutes of the United States of America, including the Arms Export Control Act, as amended (22 U.S.C. 2751 *et seq.*), and Section 301 of Title 3 of the United States Code, and as President of the United States of America, it is hereby ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. *Delegation of Functions.* The following functions conferred upon the President by the Arms Export Control Act (22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.), hereinafter referred to as the Act, and related legislation, are delegated as follows:

(a) Those under Section 3 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2753], with the exception of subsections (a)(1), (b), (c)(3), (c)(4), and (f) to the Secretary of State: *Provided*, That the Secretary of State, in the implementation of the functions delegated to him under Sections 3(a) and (d) of the Act, is authorized to find, in the case of a proposed transfer of a defense article or related training or other defense service by a foreign country or international organization not otherwise eligible under Section 3(a)(1) of the Act, whether the proposed transfer will strengthen the security of the United States and promote world peace.

(b) Those under Section 5 [22 U.S.C. 2755] to the Secretary of State.

(c) Those under Section 21 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2761], with the exception of the last sentence of subsection (d) and all of subsection (i) [22 U.S.C. 2761(d), (i)], to the Secretary of Defense.

(d) Those under Sections 22(a), 29, 30 and 30A of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2762(a), 2769, 2770, 2770a] to the Secretary of Defense.

(e) Those under Section 23 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2763] and section 571 of the Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Act, 1990 (Public Law 101-167) [22 U.S.C. 2763 note], to the Secretary of Defense, to be exercised in consultation with the Secretary of State and the Secretary of the Treasury, except that the President shall determine any rate of interest to be charged which is less than the market rate of interest.

(f) Those under Sections 24, 27, and 28 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2764, 2767, 2768] to the Secretary of Defense. The Secretary of Defense, in implementing the functions delegated to him under Sections 24 and 27 [22 U.S.C. 2764, 2767], shall consult with the Secretary of State and the Secretary of the Treasury.

(g) Those under Section 25 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2765] to the Secretary of State. The Secretary of Defense and the Director of the Arms Control and Disarmament Agency, within their respective areas of responsibility, shall assist the Secretary of State in the preparation of materials for presentation to the Congress under that Section.

(h) Those under Section 34 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2774] to the Secretary of State. To the extent the standards and criteria for credit and guaranty transactions are based upon national security and financial policies, the Secretary of State shall obtain the prior concurrence of the Secretary of Defense and the Secretary of the Treasury, respectively.

(i) Those under Section 35(a) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2775(a)] to the Secretary of State.

(j) Those under Sections 36(a) and 36(b)(1) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2776(a), (b)(1)], except with respect to the certification of an emergency as provided by subsection (b)(1), to the Secretary of Defense. The Secretary of Defense, in the implementation of the functions delegated to him under Sections 36(a) and (b)(1) shall consult with the Secretary of State, who shall, with respect to matters related to subparagraphs (D) and (I) of Section 36(b)(1), consult with the Director of the Arms Control and Disarmament Agency. With respect to those functions under Sections 36(a)(5) and (6), the Secretary of Defense shall consult with the Director of the Office of Management and Budget.

(k) Those under Sections 36(c) and (d) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2776(c), (d)] to the Secretary of State.

(l) Those under Section 38 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2778]:

(1) to the Secretary of State, except as otherwise provided in this subsection. Designations, including changes in designations, by the Secretary of State of items or categories of items which shall be considered as defense articles and defense services subject to export control under Section 38 shall have the concurrence of the Secretary of Defense. The authority to un-

dertake activities to ensure compliance with established export conditions may be redelegated to the Secretary of Defense, or to the head of another department or agency as appropriate, which shall exercise such functions in consultation with the Secretary of State;

(2) to the Secretary of the Treasury, to the extent they relate to the control of the import of defense articles and defense services. In carrying out such functions, the Secretary of the Treasury shall be guided by the views of the Secretary of State on matters affecting world peace, and the external security and foreign policy of the United States. Designations including changes in designations, by the Secretary of the Treasury of items or categories of items which shall be considered as defense articles and defense services subject to import control under Section 38 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2778] shall have the concurrence of the Secretary of State and the Secretary of Defense;

(3) to the Secretary of Commerce, to carry out on behalf of the Secretary of State, to the extent such functions involve Section 38(e) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2778(e)] and are agreed to by the Secretary of State and the Secretary of Commerce.

(m) Those under Section 39(b) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2779(b)] to the Secretary of State. In carrying out such functions, the Secretary of State shall consult with the Secretary of Defense as may be necessary to avoid interference in the application of Department of Defense regulations to sales made under Section 22 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2762].

(n) Those under Sections 42(c) and (f) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2791(c), (f)] to the Secretary of Defense. The Secretary of Defense shall obtain the concurrence of the Secretary of State and the Secretary of the Treasury on any determination proposed under the authority of Section 42(c) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2791(c)].

(o) Those under Sections 52(b) and 53 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2795a(b), 2795b] to the Secretary of Defense.

(p) Those under Sections 61 and 62(a) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2796, 2796a(a)] to the Secretary of Defense.

(q) Those under Section 2(b)(6) of the Export-Import Bank Act of 1945 (12 U.S.C. 635(b)(6)) to the Secretary of State.

(r) Those under Section 588(b) of the Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Act, 1989 (Public Law 100-461) [Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-51], to the Secretary of Defense, except with respect to the determination of an emergency as provided by subsection (b)(3). The Secretary of Defense in implementation of the functions delegated to him under section 588(b) shall consult with the Secretary of State.

SEC. 2. *Coordination.* (a) In addition to the specific provisions of Section 1 of this Order, the Secretary of State and the Secretary of Defense, in carrying out the functions delegated to them under this Order, shall consult with each other and with the heads of other departments and agencies, including the Secretary of the Treasury, the Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency, the Director of the Arms Control and Disarmament Agency, and the Chairman of the Export-Import Bank, on matters pertaining to their responsibilities.

(b) In accordance with Section 2(b) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2752(b)] and under the directions of the President, the Secretary of State, taking into account other United States activities abroad, shall be responsible for the continuous supervision and general direction of sales and exports under the Act, including but not limited to, the negotiation, conclusion, and termination of international agreements, and determining whether there shall be a sale to a country and the amount thereof, and whether there shall be delivery or other performance under such sale or export, to the end that sales and exports are integrated with other United States activities and the foreign policy of the United States is best served thereby.

SEC. 3. *Allocation of Funds.* Funds appropriated to the President for carrying out the Act shall be deemed to be allocated to the Secretary of Defense without any further action of the President.

SEC. 4. *Revocation.* Executive Order No. 11501, as amended, is revoked; except that, to the extent consistent with this Order, all determinations, authorizations, regulations, rulings, certificates, orders, directives, contracts, agreements, and other actions made, issued, taken or entered into under the provisions of Executive Order No. 11501, as amended, and not revoked, superseded or otherwise made inapplicable, shall continue in full force and effect until amended, modified or terminated by appropriate authority.

### § 2752. Coordination with foreign policy

#### (a) Noninfringement of powers or functions of Secretary of State

Nothing contained in this chapter shall be construed to infringe upon the powers or functions of the Secretary of State.

#### (b) Responsibility for supervision and direction of sales, leases, financing, cooperative projects, and exports

Under the direction of the President, the Secretary of State (taking into account other United States activities abroad, such as military assistance, economic assistance, and the food for peace program) shall be responsible for the continuous supervision and general direction of sales, leases, financing, cooperative projects, and exports under this chapter, including, but not limited to, determining—

- (1) whether there will be a sale to or financing for a country and the amount thereof;
- (2) whether there will be a lease to a country;
- (3) whether there will be a cooperative project and the scope thereof; and
- (4) whether there will be delivery or other performance under such sale, lease, cooperative project, or export,

to the end that sales, financing, leases, cooperative projects, and exports will be integrated with other United States activities and to the end that the foreign policy of the United States would be best served thereby.

#### (c) Coordination among representatives of United States

The President shall prescribe appropriate procedures to assure coordination among representatives of the United States Government in each country, under the leadership of the Chief of the United States Diplomatic Mission. The Chief of the diplomatic mission shall make sure that recommendations of such representatives pertaining to sales are coordinated with political and economic considerations, and his comments shall accompany such recommendations if he so desires.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 1, § 2, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1322; Pub. L. 94-329, title II, § 212(a)(2), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 745; Pub. L. 97-113, title I, § 109(b)(1), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1526; Pub. L. 99-83, title I, § 115(b)(1), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 201; Pub. L. 99-145, title XI, § 1102(a)(2), (5), Nov. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 710; Pub. L. 99-661, div. A, title XIII, § 1342(e), Nov. 14, 1986, 100 Stat. 3991.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1986—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 99-661 repealed section 1102(a)(2) of Pub. L. 99-145 and the amendments made by that section, and provided that this section shall apply as if that section had never been enacted. See 1985 Amendments note below.

1985—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 99-83 amended subsec. (b) generally, substituting reference to the food for peace program for reference to food for freedom and adding financing and cooperative projects under this chapter to the list of responsibilities of the Secretary of State.

Pub. L. 99-145, § 1102(a)(2), which enacted amendments similar to those provided in Pub. L. 99-83, was repealed. See 1986 Amendments note above and Repeals; Effective Date note below.

1981—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 97-113 substituted “sales, leases,” for “sales” in two places and “such sale, lease,” for “such sale” and inserted “whether there shall be a lease to a country,” after “whether there shall be a sale to a country and the amount thereof.”

1976—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 94-329 inserted “and exports” after “sales” wherever appearing and “and whether there shall be delivery or other performance under such sale or export,” after “thereof.”

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

#### REPEALS; EFFECTIVE DATE

Pub. L. 99-145, title XI, § 1102(a)(5), Nov. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 710, which provided for the repeal of the amendments made by § 1102(a) of Pub. L. 99-145, effective as of the effective date of similar amendments by Pub. L. 99-83, was repealed by Pub. L. 99-661, div. A, title XIII, § 1342(e), Nov. 14, 1986, 100 Stat. 3991.

### § 2753. Eligibility for defense services or defense articles

#### (a) Prerequisites for consent by President; report to Congress

No defense article or defense service shall be sold or leased by the United States Government under this chapter to any country or international organization, and no agreement shall be entered into for a cooperative project (as defined in section 2767 of this title), unless—

(1) the President finds that the furnishing of defense articles and defense services to such country or international organization will strengthen the security of the United States and promote world peace;

(2) the country or international organization shall have agreed not to transfer title to, or possession of, any defense article or related training or other defense service so furnished to it, or produced in a cooperative project (as defined in section 2767 of this title), to anyone not an officer, employee, or agent of that country or international organization (or the North Atlantic Treaty Organization or the specified member countries (other than the United States) in the case of a cooperative project) and not to use or permit the use of such article or related training or other defense service for purposes other than those for which furnished unless the consent of the President has first been obtained;

(3) the country or international organization shall have agreed that it will maintain the security of such article or service and will provide substantially the same degree of security protection afforded to such article or service by the United States Government; and

(4) the country or international organization is otherwise eligible to purchase or lease defense articles or defense services.

In considering a request for approval of any transfer of any weapon, weapons system, muni-

tions, aircraft, military boat, military vessel, or other implement of war to another country, the President shall not give his consent under paragraph (2) to the transfer unless the United States itself would transfer the defense article under consideration to that country. In addition, the President shall not give his consent under paragraph (2) to the transfer of any significant defense articles on the United States Munitions List unless the foreign country requesting consent to transfer agrees to demilitarize such defense articles prior to transfer, or the proposed recipient foreign country provides a commitment in writing to the United States Government that it will not transfer such defense articles, if not demilitarized, to any other foreign country or person without first obtaining the consent of the President. The President shall promptly submit a report to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and to the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate on the implementation of each agreement entered into pursuant to clause (2) of this subsection.

**(b) Repealed. Pub. L. 95-92, § 15, Aug. 4, 1977, 91 Stat. 622**

**(c) Termination of credits, guaranties or sales; report of violation by President; national security exception; conditions for reinstatement**

(1)(A) No credits (including participations in credits) may be issued and no guaranties may be extended for any foreign country under this chapter as hereinafter provided, if such country uses defense articles or defense services furnished under this chapter, or any predecessor Act, in substantial violation (either in terms of quantities or in terms of the gravity of the consequences regardless of the quantities involved) of any agreement entered into pursuant to any such Act (i) by using such articles or services for a purpose not authorized under section 2754 of this title or, if such agreement provides that such articles or services may only be used for purposes more limited than those authorized under section 2754 of this title for a purpose not authorized under such agreement; (ii) by transferring such articles or services to, or permitting any use of such articles or services by, anyone not an officer, employee, or agent of the recipient country without the consent of the President; or (iii) by failing to maintain the security of such articles or services.

(B) No cash sales or deliveries pursuant to previous sales may be made with respect to any foreign country under this chapter as hereinafter provided, if such country uses defense articles or defense services furnished under this chapter, or any predecessor Act, in substantial violation (either in terms of quantity or in terms of the gravity of the consequences regardless of the quantities involved) of any agreement entered into pursuant to any such Act by using such articles or services for a purpose not authorized under section 2754 of this title or, if such agreement provides that such articles or services may only be used for purposes more limited than those authorized under section 2754 of this title, for a purpose not authorized under such agreement.

(2) The President shall report to the Congress promptly upon the receipt of information that a

violation described in paragraph (1) of this subsection may have occurred.

(3)(A) A country shall be deemed to be ineligible under subparagraph (A) of paragraph (1) of this subsection, or both subparagraphs (A) and (B) of such paragraph in the case of a violation described in both such paragraphs, if the President so determines and so reports in writing to the Congress, or if the Congress so determines by joint resolution.

(B) Notwithstanding a determination by the President of ineligibility under subparagraph (B) of paragraph (1) of this subsection, cash sales and deliveries pursuant to previous sales may be made if the President certifies in writing to the Congress that a termination thereof would have significant adverse impact on United States security, unless the Congress adopts or has adopted a joint resolution pursuant to subparagraph (A) of this paragraph with respect to such ineligibility.

(4) A country shall remain ineligible in accordance with paragraph (1) of this subsection until such time as—

(A) the President determines that the violation has ceased; and

(B) the country concerned has given assurances satisfactory to the President that such violation will not recur.

**(d) Submission of written certification to Congress; contents; classified material; effective date of consent; report to Congress; transfers not subject to procedures**

(1) The President may not give his consent under paragraph (2) of subsection (a) of this section or under the third sentence of such subsection, or under section 2314(a)(1) or 2314(a)(4) of this title, to a transfer of any major defense equipment valued (in terms of its original acquisition cost) at \$14,000,000 or more, or any defense article or related training or other defense service valued (in terms of its original acquisition cost) at \$50,000,000 or more, unless the President submits to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate a written certification with respect to such proposed transfer containing—

(A) the name of the country or international organization proposing to make such transfer,

(B) a description of the article or service proposed to be transferred, including its acquisition cost,

(C) the name of the proposed recipient of such article or service,

(D) the reasons for such proposed transfer, and

(E) the date on which such transfer is proposed to be made.

Any certification submitted to Congress pursuant to this paragraph shall be unclassified, except that information regarding the dollar value and number of articles or services proposed to be transferred may be classified if public disclosure thereof would be clearly detrimental to the security of the United States.

(2)(A) Except as provided in subparagraph (B), unless the President states in the certification submitted pursuant to paragraph (1) of this subsection that an emergency exists which requires

that consent to the proposed transfer become effective immediately in the national security interests of the United States, such consent shall not become effective until 30 calendar days after the date of such submission and such consent shall become effective then only if the Congress does not enact, within such 30-day period, a joint resolution, as provided for in sections 2776(b)(2) and 2776(b)(3) of this title prohibiting the proposed transfer.

(B) In the case of a proposed transfer to the North Atlantic Treaty Organization, or any member country of such Organization, Japan, Australia, or New Zealand, unless the President states in the certification submitted pursuant to paragraph (1) of this subsection that an emergency exists which requires that consent to the proposed transfer become effective immediately in the national security interests of the United States, such consent shall not become effective until fifteen calendar days after the date of such submission and such consent shall become effective then only if the Congress does not enact, within such fifteen-day period, a law prohibiting the proposed transfer.

(3) The President may not give his consent to the transfer of any major defense equipment valued (in terms of its original acquisition cost) at \$14,000,000 or more, or of any defense article or defense service valued (in terms of its original acquisition cost) at \$50,000,000 or more, the export of which has been licensed or approved under section 2778 of this title, unless at least 30 calendar days before giving such consent the President submits to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the Chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate a report containing the information specified in subparagraphs (A) through (E) of paragraph (1). Such consent shall become effective then only if the Congress does not enact, within a 30-day period, a joint resolution, as provided for in sections 2776(c)(2) and 2776(c)(3) of this title prohibiting the proposed transfer.

(4) This subsection shall not apply—

(A) to transfers of maintenance, repair, or overhaul defense services, or of the repair parts or other defense articles used in furnishing such services, if the transfer will not result in any increase, relative to the original specifications, in the military capability of the defense articles and services to be maintained, repaired, or overhauled;

(B) to temporary transfers of defense articles for the sole purpose of receiving maintenance, repair, or overhaul; or

(C) to arrangements among members of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization or between the North Atlantic Treaty Organization and any of its member countries—

- (i) for cooperative cross servicing, or
- (ii) for lead-nation procurement if the certification transmitted to the Congress pursuant to section 2776(b) of this title with regard to such lead-nation procurement identified the transferees on whose behalf the lead-nation procurement was proposed.

**(e) Transfers without consent of President; report to Congress**

If the President receives any information that a transfer of any defense article, or related

training or other defense service, has been made without his consent as required under this section or under section 2314 of this title, he shall report such information immediately to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate.

**(f) Sales and leases to countries in breach of nuclear nonproliferation agreements and treaties**

No sales or leases shall be made to any country that the President has determined is in material breach of its binding commitments to the United States under international treaties or agreements concerning the nonproliferation of nuclear explosive devices (as defined in section 830(4) of the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention Act of 1994) and unsafeguarded special nuclear material (as defined in section 830(8) of that Act).

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 1, §3, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1322; Pub. L. 91-672, §1, Jan. 12, 1971, 84 Stat. 2053; Pub. L. 93-189, §25(2), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 729; Pub. L. 93-559, §45(a)(1), Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1813; Pub. L. 94-329, title II, §§203(a), 204(a), (b)(1), title III, §304(b), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 735, 736, 754, 755; Pub. L. 95-92, §§15-18, Aug. 4, 1977, 91 Stat. 622; Pub. L. 96-92, §11, Oct. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 705; Pub. L. 96-533, title I, §101, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3131; Pub. L. 97-113, title I, §§101(a), 102(a), 109(b)(2), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1519, 1520, 1526; Pub. L. 99-83, title I, §115(b)(2), title V, §503(b), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 201, 221; Pub. L. 99-145, title XI, §1102(a)(3), (5), Nov. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 710; Pub. L. 99-247, §1(a), Feb. 12, 1986, 100 Stat. 9; Pub. L. 99-661, div. A, title XIII, §1342(e), Nov. 14, 1986, 100 Stat. 3991; Pub. L. 100-461, title V, §577, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-45; Pub. L. 101-222, §2(b), Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1896; Pub. L. 103-236, title VIII, §822(a)(1), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 511.)

AMENDMENT OF SECTION

*For termination of amendment by section 851 of Pub. L. 103-236, see Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note below.*

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 830 of the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention Act of 1994, referred to in subsec. (f), is section 830 of Pub. L. 103-236 which is set out in the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention; Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note under section 3201 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 103-236 temporarily added subsec. (f). See Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note below.

1989—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 101-222 struck out subsec. (f) which directed termination of sales under this chapter to countries granting sanctuary to international terrorists. See section 2780 of this title.

1988—Subsec. (d)(2)(A). Pub. L. 100-461, §577(1), substituted “joint resolution, as provided for in sections 2776(b)(2) and 2776(b)(3) of this title” for “law”.

Subsec. (d)(3). Pub. L. 100-461, §577(2), inserted at end “Such consent shall become effective then only if the Congress does not enact, within a 30-day period, a joint resolution, as provided for in sections 2776(c)(2) and 2776(c)(3) of this title prohibiting the proposed transfer.”

1986—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99-661 repealed section 1102(a)(3) of Pub. L. 99-145 and the amendments made by that section, and provided that this section shall apply as if that section had never been enacted. See 1985 Amendments note below.

Subsec. (d)(2)(A). Pub. L. 99-247, §1(a)(1), substituted “enact, within such 30-day period, a law prohibiting” for “adopt, within such 30-day period, a concurrent resolution disapproving”.

Subsec. (d)(2)(B). Pub. L. 99-247, §1(a)(2), substituted “enact, within such fifteen-day period, a law prohibiting” for “adopt, within such fifteen-day period, a concurrent resolution disapproving”.

1985—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99-83, §115(b)(2), in introductory text and in par. (2) inserted provisions relating to cooperative projects, and in par. (3) inserted “or service” after “such article” in two places.

Pub. L. 99-145, §1102(a)(3), which enacted amendments similar to those provided in Pub. L. 99-83, §115(b)(2), was repealed. See 1986 Amendments note above and former section 1105(a)(5) of Pub. L. 99-145 set out as a Repeals; Effective Date note under section 2752 of this title.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 99-83, §503(b), struck out “, credits, and guaranties” and “, credits, or guaranties” wherever appearing in pars. (1) and (2).

1981—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 97-113, §109(b)(2), substituted in introductory text “sold or leased” for “sold”, and in par. (4) “purchase or lease” for “purchase”.

Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 97-113, §101(a)(1), substituted in introductory text “, or under section 2314(a)(1) or 2314(a)(4) of this title, to a transfer of any major defense equipment valued (in terms of its original acquisition cost) at \$14,000,000 or more, or any defense article or related training or other defense service valued (in terms of its original acquisition cost) at \$50,000,000 or more,” for “to a transfer of a defense article, or related training or other defense service, sold under this chapter and may not give his consent to such a transfer under section 2314(a)(1) or (a)(4) of this title”, in subpar. (B) “a description of the article or service proposed to be transferred, including its acquisition cost” for “a description of the defense article or related training or other defense service proposed to be transferred, including the original acquisition cost of such defense article or related training or other defense service”, in subpar. (C) “article or service” for “defense article or related training or other defense service”, and in provision following subpar. (E) “articles or services” for “defense articles, or related training or other defense services”.

Subsec. (d)(2). Pub. L. 97-113, §102(a), designated existing provisions as subpar. (A), substituted “Except as provided in subparagraph (B), unless” for “Unless”, and added subpar. (B).

Subsec. (d)(3). Pub. L. 97-113, §101(a)(2), substituted “transfer of any major defense equipment valued (in terms of its original acquisition cost) at \$14,000,000 or more, or of any defense article or defense service valued (in terms of its original acquisition cost) at \$50,000,000 or more” for “transfer to a third country of a defense article or a defense service valued (in terms of its original acquisition costs) at \$25,000,000 or more, or of major defense equipment valued (in terms of its original acquisition costs) at \$7,000,000 or more”.

Subsec. (d)(4). Pub. L. 97-113, §101(a)(3), struck out subpar. (D), which provided that subsec. (d) of this section not apply to transfers to the North Atlantic Treaty Organization, any member country of such organization, Japan, Australia, or New Zealand, of any major defense equipment valued (in terms of its original acquisition cost) at less than \$7,000,000 or of any defense article or related training or other defense service valued (in terms of its original acquisition cost) at less than \$25,000,000.

1980—Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 96-533, §101(a)(2)(A), substituted “pursuant to this paragraph” for “pursuant to this subsection”.

Subsec. (d)(2). Pub. L. 96-533, §101(a)(2)(B), substituted “paragraph (1) of this subsection” for “this subsection”.

Subsec. (d)(3). Pub. L. 96-533, §101(a)(1)(B), added par. (3). Former par. (3) redesignated (4).

Subsec. (d)(4). Pub. L. 96-533, §101(a)(1)(A), (b), redesignated former par. (3) as (4) and, in par. (4) as so redesignated, added subpar. (D).

1979—Subsec. (d)(3)(C). Pub. L. 96-92 made subsec. (d) of this section inapplicable to arrangements between the North Atlantic Treaty Organization and any of its member countries, incorporated existing text in provisions designated cl. (i) and added cl. (ii).

1977—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 95-92, §15, struck out subsec. (b) which related to prohibitions on sales, etc., to countries seizing or fining American fishing vessels for fishing in waters more than twelve miles from their coastlines.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 95-92, §§16, 17, redesignated existing provisions as par. (1), struck out “, 30 days prior to giving such consent,” before “the President submits”, redesignated pars. (1) to (5) as subpars. (A) to (E), respectively, and added pars. (2) and (3).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 95-92, §18, added subsec. (f).

1976—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94-329, §§203(a), 204(b)(1), inserted in par. (2) “or related training or other defense service” after “article” wherever appearing and struck out provisions following par. (4) relating to the President’s notification of his consent to transfer war implements to another country, in writing, to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate indicating his justification for the transfer and the particular war implement transferred.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 94-329, §304(b)(1), provided that the President, by so stating in writing to Congress, or Congress, by joint resolution, terminate credits, guaranties or sales upon determining a violation, permitted cash sales and deliveries pursuant to previous sales to be made if the President certifies in writing to Congress that termination thereof would be adverse to national security unless Congress adopts or has adopted a joint resolution determining such eligibility, and specified conditions for reinstatement of eligibility.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 94-329, §§204(a), 304(b)(2), added subsec. (d). Former subsec. (d), which related to conditions for reinstatement after a determination of ineligibility, was repealed and is now covered by subsec. (c).

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 94-329, §§204(a), 304(b)(2), added subsec. (e).

1974—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 93-559 struck out first sentence provision respecting furnishing of sophisticated weapons to countries in violation of agreements pursuant to subsec. (a)(2) of this section, section 2314(a) of this title, or other similar provisions and substituted “in accordance with subsection (c) of this section” for “in accordance with this subsection”.

1973—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 93-189, §25(2)(A)–(C), in par. (2) inserted requirement not to use or permit the use of such articles for purposes other than those for which furnished, redesignated former par. (3) as (4), added a new par. (3), and following par. (4), as so redesignated, inserted provisions relating to Presidential consideration of requests prior to consent under par. (2).

Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 93-189, §25(2)(D), added subsecs. (c) and (d).

1971—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 91-672 extended the retaliatory measures against countries seizing, taking custody or fining American vessels for fishing outside of twelve miles of their coast, to sales, credits, guaranties, and laid down a period of one year as the extent of such prohibition, and added assurances of future restraint received from such countries as an additional ground for waiver, and provided exception that the prohibition will not apply in cases governed by international agreements to which the United States is a party.

#### EFFECTIVE AND TERMINATION DATES OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103-236 effective 60 days after Apr. 30, 1994, and ceases to be effective and is repealed on date of enactment of first Foreign Relations Authorization Act enacted after Apr. 30, 1994, and any provision repealed by that amendment shall be reenacted, see sections 831 and 851 of Pub. L. 103-236, set out in the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention; Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note under section 3201 of this title.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1976 AMENDMENT

Section 203(a) of Pub. L. 94-329 provided that the amendment made by that section is effective July 1, 1976.

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section, except subsecs. (a)(1), (b), (c)(3), (4), and (f), delegated to Secretary of State, with Secretary authorized to make certain findings under subsec. (a)(1) in implementing functions delegated under subsecs. (a) and (d), by section 1(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 11958, Jan. 18, 1977, 42 F.R. 4311, as amended, set out as a note under section 2751 of this title.

## ELIGIBILITY OF BALTIC STATES FOR NONLETHAL DEFENSE ARTICLES

Pub. L. 102-511, title IX, §906, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3356, provided that:

“(a) ELIGIBILITY.—Estonia, Latvia, and Lithuania shall each be eligible—

“(1) to purchase, or to receive financing for the purchase of, nonlethal defense articles—

“(A) under the Arms Export Control Act (22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.), without regard to section 3(a)(1) of that Act [22 U.S.C. 2753(a)(1)], or

“(B) under section 503 of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2311), without regard to the requirement in subsection (a) of that section for a Presidential finding; and

“(2) to receive nonlethal excess defense articles transferred under section 519 of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2321m), without regard to the restrictions in subsection (a) of that section.

“(b) DEFINITIONS.—As used in this section—

“(1) the term ‘defense article’ has the same meaning given to that term in section 47(3) of the Arms Export Control Act (22 U.S.C. 2794(3)); and

“(2) the term ‘excess defense article’ has the same meaning given to that term in section 644(g) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2403(g)).”

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2765, 2776, 2780, 2799b, 3281 of this title; title 10 section 4542.

**§ 2754. Purposes for which military sales or leases by the United States are authorized; report to Congress**

Defense articles and defense services shall be sold or leased by the United States Government under this chapter to friendly countries solely for internal security, for legitimate self-defense, to permit the recipient country to participate in regional or collective arrangements or measures consistent with the Charter of the United Nations, or otherwise to permit the recipient country to participate in collective measures requested by the United Nations for the purpose of maintaining or restoring international peace and security, or for the purpose of enabling foreign military forces in less developed friendly countries to construct public works and to engage in other activities helpful to the economic and social development of such friendly countries. It is the sense of the Congress that such foreign military forces should not be maintained or established solely for civic action activities and that such civic action activities not significantly detract from the capability of the military forces to perform their military missions

and be coordinated with and form part of the total economic and social development effort: *Provided*, That none of the funds contained in this authorization shall be used to guarantee, or extend credit, or participate in an extension of credit in connection with any sale of sophisticated weapons systems, such as missile systems and jet aircraft for military purposes, to any underdeveloped country other than Greece, Turkey, Iran, Israel, the Republic of China, the Philippines and Korea unless the President determines that such financing is important to the national security of the United States and reports within thirty days each such determination to the Congress.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 1, §4, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1322; Pub. L. 97-113, title I, §109(b)(3), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1526.)

## AMENDMENTS

1981—Pub. L. 97-113 substituted “sold or leased” for “sold” in first sentence.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2753 of this title; title 12 section 635.

**§ 2755. Discrimination prohibited if based on race, religion, national origin, or sex**

**(a) Congressional declaration of policy**

It is the policy of the United States that no sales should be made, and no credits (including participations in credits) or guaranties extended to or for any foreign country, the laws, regulations, official policies, or governmental practices of which prevent any United States person (as defined in section 7701(a)(30) of title 26) from participating in the furnishing of defense articles or defense services under this chapter on the basis of race, religion, national origin, or sex.

**(b) Employment of personnel; required contractual provision**

(1) No agency performing functions under this chapter shall, in employing or assigning personnel to participate in the performance of any such function, whether in the United States or abroad, take into account the exclusionary policies or practices of any foreign government where such policies or practices are based upon race, religion, national origin, or sex.

(2) Each contract entered into by any such agency for the performance of any function under this chapter shall contain a provision to the effect that no person, partnership, corporation, or other entity performing functions pursuant to such contract, shall, in employing or assigning personnel to participate in the performance of any such function, whether in the United States or abroad, take into account the exclusionary policies or practices of any foreign government where such policies or practices are based upon race, religion, national origin, or sex.

**(c) Report by President; contents**

The President shall promptly transmit reports to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate concerning any instance



in which any United States person (as defined in section 7701(a)(30) of title 26) is prevented by a foreign government on the basis of race, religion, national origin, or sex, from participating in the performance of any sale or licensed transaction under this chapter. Such reports shall include (1) a description of the facts and circumstances of any such discrimination, (2) the response thereto on the part of the United States or any agency or employee thereof, and (3) the result of such response, if any.

**(d) Congressional request for information from President; information required; 60 day period; failure to supply information; termination or restriction of sale**

(1) Upon the request of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate or the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives, the President shall, within 60 days after receipt of such request, transmit to both such committees a statement, prepared with the assistance of the Secretary of State, with respect to the country designated in such request, setting forth—

(A) all the available information about the exclusionary policies or practices of the government of such country when such policies or practices are based upon race, religion, national origin or sex and prevent any such person from participating in the performance of any sale or licensed transaction under this chapter;

(B) the response of the United States thereto and the results of such response;

(C) whether, in the opinion of the President, notwithstanding any such policies or practices—

(i) extraordinary circumstances exist which necessitate a continuation of such sale or licensed transaction, and, if so, a description of such circumstances and the extent to which such sale or licensed transaction should be continued (subject to such conditions as Congress may impose under this section), and

(ii) on all the facts it is in the national interest of the United States to continue such sale or licensed transaction; and

(D) such other information as such committee may request.

(2) In the event a statement with respect to a sale or licensed transaction is requested pursuant to paragraph (1) of this subsection but is not transmitted in accordance therewith within 60 days after receipt of such request, such sale or licensed transaction shall be suspended unless and until such statement is transmitted.

(3)(A) In the event a statement with respect to a sale or licensed transaction is transmitted under paragraph (1) of this subsection, the Congress may at any time thereafter adopt a joint resolution terminating or restricting such sale or licensed transaction.

(B) Any such resolution shall be considered in the Senate in accordance with the provisions of section 601(b) of the International Security Assistance and Arms Export Control Act of 1976.

(C) The term “certification”, as used in section 601 of such Act, means, for the purposes of

this paragraph, a statement transmitted under paragraph (1) of this subsection.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 1, § 5, as added Pub. L. 94-329, title III, § 302(b), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 752; amended Pub. L. 95-105, title I, § 109(a)(5), Aug. 17, 1977, 91 Stat. 846; Pub. L. 99-514, § 2, Oct. 22, 1986, 100 Stat. 2095; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 162(f), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 405; Pub. L. 103-437, § 9(a)(7), Nov. 2, 1994, 108 Stat. 4588.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 601(b) of the International Security Assistance and Arms Export Control Act of 1976, referred to in subsec. (d)(3)(B), (C), is section 601(b) of Pub. L. 94-329, June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 729, which made provision for expedited procedures in the Senate, and was not classified to the Code.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 103-437 substituted “Foreign Affairs” for “International Relations” in introductory provisions.

Pub. L. 103-236 substituted “Secretary of State” for “Assistant Secretary of State for Human Rights and Humanitarian Affairs” in introductory provisions.

1986—Subsecs. (a), (c). Pub. L. 99-514 substituted “Internal Revenue Code of 1986” for “Internal Revenue Code of 1954”, which for purposes of codification was translated as “title 26” thus requiring no change in text.

1977—Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 95-105 substituted “Assistant Secretary of State” for “Coordinator” in introductory provisions.

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103-236 applicable with respect to officials, offices, and bureaus of Department of State when executive orders, regulations, or departmental directives implementing the amendments by sections 161 and 162 of Pub. L. 103-236 become effective, or 90 days after Apr. 30, 1994, whichever comes earlier, see section 161(b) of Pub. L. 103-236, as amended, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of State by section 1(b) of Ex. Ord. No. 11958, Jan. 18, 1977, 42 F.R. 4311, as amended, set out as a note under section 2751 of this title.

**§ 2756. Foreign intimidation and harassment of individuals in United States**

No letters of offer may be issued, no credits or guarantees may be extended, and no export licenses may be issued under this chapter with respect to any country determined by the President to be engaged in a consistent pattern of acts of intimidation or harassment directed against individuals in the United States. The President shall report any such determination promptly to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and to the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 1, § 6, as added Pub. L. 97-113, title I, § 115, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1528.)

SUBCHAPTER II—FOREIGN MILITARY  
SALES AUTHORIZATIONS

§ 2761. Sales from stocks

(a) **Eligible countries or international organizations; basis of payment; valuation of certain defense articles**

(1) The President may sell defense articles and defense services from the stocks of the Department of Defense to any eligible country or international organization if such country or international organization agrees to pay in United States dollars—

(A) in the case of a defense article not intended to be replaced at the time such agreement is entered into, not less than the actual value thereof;

(B) in the case of a defense article intended to be replaced at the time such agreement is entered into, the estimated cost of replacement of such article, including the contract or production costs less any depreciation in the value of such article; or

(C) in the case of the sale of a defense service, the full cost to the United States Government of furnishing such service, except that in the case of training sold to a purchaser who is concurrently receiving assistance under chapter 5 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2347 et seq.], only those additional costs that are incurred by the United States Government in furnishing such assistance.

(2) For purposes of subparagraph (A) of paragraph (1), the actual value of a naval vessel of 3,000 tons or less and 20 years or more of age shall be considered to be not less than the greater of the scrap value or fair value (including conversion costs) of such vessel, as determined by the Secretary of Defense.

(b) **Time of payment**

Except as provided by subsection (d) of this section, payment shall be made in advance or, if the President determines it to be in the national interest, upon delivery of the defense article or rendering of the defense service.

(c) **Personnel performing defense services sold as prohibited from performing combat activities**

(1) Personnel performing defense services sold under this chapter may not perform any duties of a combatant nature, including any duties related to training and advising that may engage United States personnel in combat activities, outside the United States in connection with the performance of those defense services.

(2) Within forty-eight hours of the existence of, or a change in status of significant hostilities or terrorist acts or a series of such acts, which may endanger American lives or property, involving a country in which United States personnel are performing defense services pursuant to this chapter or the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.], the President shall submit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and to the President pro tempore of the Senate a report, in writing, classified if necessary, setting forth—

(A) the identity of such country;

(B) a description of such hostilities or terrorist acts; and

(C) the number of members of the United States Armed Forces and the number of United States civilian personnel that may be endangered by such hostilities or terrorist acts.

(d) **Billings; interest after due date, rates of interest and extension of due date**

If the President determines it to be in the national interest pursuant to subsection (b) of this section, billings for sales made under letters of offer issued under this section after June 30, 1976, may be dated and issued upon delivery of the defense article or rendering of the defense service and shall be due and payable upon receipt thereof by the purchasing country or international organization. Interest shall be charged on any net amount due and payable which is not paid within sixty days after the date of such billing. The rate of interest charged shall be a rate not less than a rate determined by the Secretary of the Treasury taking into consideration the current average market yield on outstanding short-term obligations of the United States as of the last day of the month preceding the billing and shall be computed from the date of billing. The President may extend such sixty-day period to one hundred and twenty days if he determines that emergency requirements of the purchaser for acquisition of such defense articles or defense services exceed the ready availability to the purchaser of funds sufficient to pay the United States in full for them within such sixty-day period and submits that determination to the Congress together with a special emergency request for the authorization and appropriation of additional funds to finance such purchases under this chapter.

(e) **Charges; reduction or waiver**

(1) After September 30, 1976, letters of offer for the sale of defense articles or for the sale of defense services that are issued pursuant to this section or pursuant to section 2762 of this title shall include appropriate charges for—

(A) administrative services, calculated on an average percentage basis to recover the full estimated costs (excluding a pro rata share of fixed base operation costs) of administration of sales made under this chapter to all purchasers of such articles and services as specified in section 2792(b) of this title and section 2792(c) of this title;

(B) a proportionate amount of any non-recurring costs of research, development, and production of major defense equipment (except for equipment wholly paid for either from funds transferred under section 503(a)(3) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2311(a)(3)] or from funds made available on a nonrepayable basis under section 2763 of this title); and

(C) the recovery of ordinary inventory losses associated with the sale from stock of defense articles that are being stored at the expense of the purchaser of such articles.

(2) The President may reduce or waive the charge or charges which would otherwise be considered appropriate under paragraph (1)(B) for

particular sales that would, if made, significantly advance United States Government interests in North Atlantic Treaty Organization standardization, standardization with the Armed Forces of Japan, Australia, or New Zealand in furtherance of the mutual defense treaties between the United States and those countries, or foreign procurement in the United States under coproduction arrangements.

(3)(A) The President may waive the charges for administrative services that would otherwise be required by paragraph (1)(A) in connection with any sale to the Maintenance and Supply Agency of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization in support of—

- (i) a weapon system partnership agreement;
- or
- (ii) a NATO/SHAPE project.

(B) The Secretary of Defense may reimburse the fund established to carry out section 2792(b) of this title in the amount of the charges waived under subparagraph (A) of this paragraph. Any such reimbursement may be made from any funds available to the Department of Defense.

(C) As used in this paragraph—

(i) the term “weapon system partnership agreement” means an agreement between two or more member countries of the Maintenance and Supply Agency of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization that—

- (I) is entered into pursuant to the terms of the charter of that organization; and
- (II) is for the common logistic support of a specific weapon system common to the participating countries; and

(ii) the term “NATO/SHAPE project” means a common-funded project supported by allocated credits from North Atlantic Treaty Organization bodies or by host nations with NATO Infrastructure funds.

**(f) Public inspection of contracts**

Any contracts entered into between the United States and a foreign country under the authority of this section or section 2762 of this title shall be prepared in a manner which will permit them to be made available for public inspection to the fullest extent possible consistent with the national security of the United States.

**(g) North Atlantic Treaty Organization standardization agreements, similar agreements; reimbursement for costs; transmittal to Congress**

The President may enter into North Atlantic Treaty Organization standardization agreements in carrying out section 814 of the Act of October 7, 1975 (Public Law 94-106), and may enter into similar agreements with Japan, Australia, and New Zealand, and with other countries which are major non-NATO allies, for the cooperative furnishing of training on bilateral or multilateral basis, if the financial principles of such agreements are based on reciprocity. Such agreements shall include reimbursement for all direct costs but may exclude reimbursement for indirect costs, administrative surcharges, and costs of billeting of trainees (except to the extent that members of the United States Armed Forces occupying comparable accommodations are charged for such accommoda-

tions by the United States). Each such agreement shall be transmitted promptly to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the Committees on Appropriations, Armed Services, and Foreign Relations of the Senate. As used in this subsection, the term “major non-NATO allies” means those countries designated as major non-NATO allies for purposes of section 2350a(i)(3) of title 10.

**(h) Reciprocal quality assurance, inspection, contract administrative services, and contract audit defense services; catalog data and services**

(1) The President is authorized to provide (without charge) quality assurance, inspection, contract administration services, and contract audit defense services under this section—

(A) in connection with the placement or administration of any contract or subcontract for defense articles, defense services, or design and construction services entered into after October 29, 1979, by, or under this chapter on behalf of, a foreign government which is a member of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization, if such government provides such services in accordance with an agreement on a reciprocal basis, without charge, to the United States Government; or

(B) in connection with the placement or administration of any contract or subcontract for defense articles, defense services, or design and construction services pursuant to the North Atlantic Treaty Organization Infrastructure Program in accordance with an agreement under which the foreign governments participating in such program provide such services, without charge, in connection with similar contracts or subcontracts.

(2) In carrying out the objectives of this section, the President is authorized to provide cataloging data and cataloging services, without charge, to the North Atlantic Treaty Organization or to any member government of that Organization if that Organization or member government provides such data and services in accordance with an agreement on a reciprocal basis, without charge, to the United States Government.

**(i) Sales affecting combat readiness of Armed Forces; statement to Congress; limitation on delivery**

(1) Sales of defense articles and defense services which could have significant adverse effect on the combat readiness of the Armed Forces of the United States shall be kept to an absolute minimum. The President shall transmit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the Committees on Armed Services and Foreign Relations of the Senate on the same day a written statement giving a complete explanation with respect to any proposal to sell, under this section or under authority of subchapter II-B of this chapter, any defense articles or defense services if such sale could have a significant adverse effect on the combat readiness of the Armed Forces of the United States. Each such statement shall be unclassified except to the extent that public disclosure of any item of information contained therein would be clearly det-

rimental to the security of the United States. Any necessarily classified information shall be confined to a supplemental report. Each such statement shall include an explanation relating to only one such proposal to sell and shall set forth—

- (A) the country or international organization to which the sale is proposed to be made;
- (B) the amount of the proposed sale;
- (C) a description of the defense article or service proposed to be sold;
- (D) a full description of the impact which the proposed sale will have on the Armed Forces of the United States; and
- (E) a justification for such proposed sale, including a certification that such sale is important to the security of the United States.

A certification described in subparagraph (E) shall take effect on the date on which such certification is transmitted and shall remain in effect for not to exceed one year.

(2) No delivery may be made under any sale which is required to be reported under paragraph (1) of this subsection unless the certification required to be transmitted by paragraph<sup>1</sup> (E) of paragraph (1) is in effect.

**(j) Tank and infantry vehicle upgrades**

(1) Funds received from the sale of tanks under this section shall be available for the upgrading of tanks for fielding to the Army.

(2) Funds received from the sale of infantry fighting vehicles or armored personnel carriers under this section shall be available for the upgrading of infantry fighting vehicles or armored personnel carriers for fielding to the Army.

(3) Paragraphs (1) and (2) apply only to the extent provided in advance in appropriations Acts.

(4) This subsection applies with respect to funds received from sales occurring after September 30, 1989.

**(k) Effect of sales of excess defense articles on national technology and industrial base**

Before entering into the sale under this chapter of defense articles that are excess to the stocks of the Department of Defense, the President shall first consider the effects of the sale of the articles on the national technology and industrial base, particularly the extent, if any, to which the sale reduces the opportunities of entities in the national technology and industrial base to sell new equipment to the country or countries to which the excess defense articles are sold.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 2, § 21, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1323; Pub. L. 94-329, title II, §§ 205, 206, June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 736, 738; Pub. L. 95-384, § 16, Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 740; Pub. L. 96-92, § 12, Oct. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 705; Pub. L. 96-533, title I, §§ 102, 103, 105(b)(1), 115(b)(2), Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3132, 3134, 3140; Pub. L. 97-113, title I, §§ 103, 104, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1521; Pub. L. 97-392, § 3, Dec. 29, 1982, 96 Stat. 1963; Pub. L. 98-473, title I, § 101(1) [title III, § 301], Oct. 12, 1984, 98 Stat. 1884, 1895; Pub. L. 99-83, title I, §§ 107(a), 108-111, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 196, 197; Pub. L. 100-202, § 101(e) [title V, § 580], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-181; Pub. L. 100-456, div. A, title X, § 1002,

Sept. 29, 1988, 102 Stat. 2037; Pub. L. 101-165, title IX, § 9104(c), Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1152; Pub. L. 102-25, title VII, § 705(d)(1), Apr. 6, 1991, 105 Stat. 120; Pub. L. 102-484, div. A, title I, § 114, Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2333; Pub. L. 103-236, title VII, § 731(d), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 503.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsecs. (a)(1)(C) and (c)(2), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 32 (§ 2151 et seq.) of this title. Chapter 5 of part II of such Act is classified generally to part V of subchapter II (§ 2347 et seq.) of chapter 32 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

Section 814 of the act of October 7, 1975 (Public Law 94-106), referred to in subsec. (g), is not classified to the Code.

CODIFICATION

Amendment by Pub. L. 98-473 is based on section 102 of S. 2346, Ninety-eighth Congress, as introduced in the Senate Feb. 27, 1984, which was enacted into permanent law by Pub. L. 98-473.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 103-236 added subsec. (k).

1992—Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 102-484 added subsec. (j).

1991—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 102-25 substituted “section 2350a(i)(3) of title 10” for “section 2767a of this title”.

1989—Subsec. (e)(1)(A). Pub. L. 101-165, § 9104(c)(1), inserted reference to section 2792(b) and (c) of this title.

Subsec. (e)(1)(B). Pub. L. 101-165, § 9104(c)(2), (3), redesignated subpar. (C) as (B) and inserted exception for equipment wholly paid for from funds transferred under the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 or from funds made available under section 2763 of this title. Former subpar. (B), which included charges for any use of plant and production equipment in connection with defense articles, was struck out.

Subsec. (e)(1)(C), (D). Pub. L. 101-165, § 9104(c)(3), redesignated subpar. (D) as (C). Former subpar. (C) redesignated (B).

Subsec. (e)(2). Pub. L. 101-165, § 9104(c)(4), substituted reference to par. (1)(B) for reference to pars. (1)(B) and (1)(C).

1988—Subsec. (e)(3). Pub. L. 100-456 added par. (3).

1987—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 100-202 inserted “and with other countries which are major non-NATO allies,” after “New Zealand,” and inserted last sentence defining “major non-NATO allies”.

1985—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 99-83, § 107(a)(1), (2), designated existing provisions as par. (1), and substituted “(A)”, “(B)”, and “(C)” for “(1)”, “(2)”, and “(3)”, respectively.

Subsec. (a)(1)(C). Pub. L. 99-83, § 108(a), inserted provisions relating to training sold to a purchaser receiving assistance under chapter 5 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961.

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 99-83, § 107(a)(3), added par. (2).

Subsec. (e)(1)(A). Pub. L. 99-83, § 109, inserted provisions excluding pro rata share of fixed base operation costs.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 99-83, § 108(b), added subsec. (g).

Subsec. (h)(1). Pub. L. 99-83, §§ 110, 111(1), (2), designated existing provisions as par. (1), inserted applicability to contract administrative services, and substituted “(A)” and “(B)” for “(1)” and “(2)”, respectively.

Subsec. (h)(2). Pub. L. 99-83, § 111(3), added par. (2).

1984—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 98-473 struck out “sold to a purchaser who is concurrently receiving assistance under chapter 5 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961” after “in the case of training”.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 98-473 struck out subsec. (g) which related to NATO standardization agreements and

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be “subparagraph”.

similar agreements with Japan, Australia, and New Zealand.

1982—Subsec. (i)(1). Pub. L. 97-392 inserted reference to proposals to sell under the authority of subchapter II-B of this chapter.

1981—Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 97-113, §103, substituted provision for a report within forty-eight hours of existence of or change in status of significant hostilities or terrorist acts or series of such acts, which may endanger American lives or property for provision for a report within 48 hours after outbreak of significant hostilities and omitted provision for statement of relation between the defense services and hostilities in the country, the location and precise nature of personnel activities, and likelihood of personnel engagement in the hostilities.

Subsec. (e)(2). Pub. L. 97-113, §104, authorized reduction or waiver of charges for use and nonrecurring research, development, and production costs respecting sales significantly advancing United States interests in standardization with Armed Forces of Japan, Australia, or New Zealand in furtherance of the mutual defense treaties between the United States and those countries.

1980—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 96-533, §115(b)(2), included payment, in case of training sold to a purchaser currently receiving international military education and training assistance, of additional costs incurred by the United States Government in furnishing the training.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 96-533, §102, designated existing provision as par. (1), substituted “training and advising that may engage United States personnel in combat activities” for “training, advising, or otherwise providing assistance regarding combat activities”, and added par. (2).

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 96-533, §103, authorized the President to enter into standardization agreements with Japan, Australia, and New Zealand.

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 96-533, §105(b)(1), substituted “defense articles, defense services, or design and construction services” for “defense articles or defense services” in two places.

1979—Subsecs. (h), (i). Pub. L. 96-92 added subsec. (h) and redesignated former subsec. (h) as (i).

1978—Subsec. (e)(1)(D). Pub. L. 95-384 added subpar. (D).

1976—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94-329, §205, designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and substituted provisions authorizing President to sell defense articles and defense services from Department of Defense stocks to eligible countries and international organizations who agree to pay specified values for such articles and services in United States dollars, for provisions requiring that payment for defense articles and defense services from stocks be made in advance, or if in the best interest of the United States as determined by the President, within a reasonable period not to exceed 120 days after delivery of the articles or rendering of the services.

Subsecs. (b) to (h). Pub. L. 94-329, §§205, 206, added subsecs. (b) to (h).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section, except the last sentence of subsec. (d) and subsec. (i), delegated to Secretary of Defense by section 1(c) of Ex. Ord. No. 11958, Jan. 18, 1977, 42 F.R. 4311, as amended, set out as a note under section 2751 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2291c, 2311, 23211, 2751, 2765, 2767, 2775, 2776, 2777, 2791, 2792, 2794, 2795 of this title; title 10 sections 114, 2350c, 2552.

### § 2762. Procurement for cash sales

#### (a) Authority of President; dependable undertaking by foreign country or international organization; interest rates

Except as otherwise provided in this section, the President may, without requirement for charge to any appropriation or contract authorization otherwise provided, enter into contracts for the procurement of defense articles or defense services for sale for United States dollars to any foreign country or international organization if such country or international organization provides the United States Government with a dependable undertaking (1) to pay the full amount of such contract which will assure the United States Government against any loss on the contract, and (2) to make funds available in such amounts and at such times as may be required to meet the payments required by the contract, and any damages and costs that may accrue from the cancellation of such contract, in advance of the time such payments, damages, or costs are due. Interest shall be charged on any net amount by which any such country or international organization is in arrears under all of its outstanding unliquidated dependable undertakings, considered collectively. The rate of interest charged shall be a rate not less than a rate determined by the Secretary of the Treasury taking into consideration the current average market yield on outstanding short-term obligations of the United States as of the last day of the month preceding the net arrearage and shall be computed from the date of net arrearage.

#### (b) Issuance of letters of offer under emergency determination; availability of appropriations for payment

The President may, if he determines it to be in the national interest, issue letters of offer under this section which provide for billing upon delivery of the defense article or rendering of the defense service and for payment within one hundred and twenty days after the date of billing. This authority may be exercised, however, only if the President also determines that the emergency requirements of the purchaser for acquisition of such defense articles and services exceed the ready availability to the purchaser of funds sufficient to make payments on a dependable undertaking basis and submits both determinations to the Congress together with a special emergency request for authorization and appropriation of additional funds to finance such purchases under this chapter. Appropriations available to the Department of Defense may be used to meet the payments required by the contracts for the procurement of defense articles and defense services and shall be reimbursed by the amounts subsequently received from the country or international organization to whom articles or services are sold.

#### (c) Applicability of Renegotiation Act of 1951

The provisions of the Renegotiation Act of 1951 [50 App. U.S.C. 1211 et seq.] do not apply to procurement contracts heretofore or hereafter entered into under this section, section 2769 of this title, or predecessor provisions of law.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 2, §22, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1323; Pub. L. 93-189, §25(3), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat.

730; Pub. L. 94-329, title II, §207, June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 738; Pub. L. 95-384, §17, Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 740; Pub. L. 96-533, title I, §105(b)(2), Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3134.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Renegotiation Act of 1951, referred to in subsec. (c), is act Mar. 23, 1951, ch. 15, 65 Stat. 7, as amended, which was classified principally to section 1211 et seq. of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense, prior to its omission from the Code. See Codification note set out under section 1211 of Title 50, Appendix.

#### AMENDMENTS

1980—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 96-533 substituted “procurement contracts” for “contracts for the procurement of defense articles and defense services” and inserted reference to contracts entered into under section 2769 of this title.

1978—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 95-384 added subsec. (c).

1976—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94-329, §207(a), inserted provisions requiring interest to be charged on any net amount a country or international organization is in arrears and the rate of interest to be determined by the Secretary of Treasury considering current average market yield of short-term obligations of United States on a particular day.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 94-329, §207(b), substituted provisions authorizing President to issue letters of offer with provisions for billing on delivery of article or rendering of service and payment within 120 days after billing date where President determines that emergency conditions exist, for provisions authorizing President to accept a dependable undertaking of a foreign country or international organization with respect to sales of defense articles and services and to make payment within 120 days of delivery of article or rendering of service.

1973—Pub. L. 93-189 designated text preceding first proviso as subsec. (a) and inserted “Except as otherwise provided in this section,” before “the President”, designated first proviso as subsec. (b) and inserted reference to acceptance of a dependable undertaking of a foreign country or international organization, and struck out further provisions setting forth Presidential powers with respect to sales agreements with and payments by purchasing countries or international organizations.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under subsec. (a) of this section delegated to Secretary of Defense by section 1(d) of Ex. Ord. No. 11958, Jan. 18, 1977, 42 F.R. 4311, as amended, set out as a note under section 2751 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2291c, 2311, 2751, 2767, 2775, 2776, 2777, 2779, 2791, 2795 of this title.

### § 2763. Credit sales

#### (a) Financing procurement of defense articles and services, and design and construction services

The President is authorized to finance the procurement of defense articles, defense services, and design and construction services by friendly foreign countries and international organizations, on such terms and conditions as he may determine consistent with the requirements of this section. Notwithstanding any other provision of law, and subject to the regular notification requirements of the Committees on Appropriations, the authority of this section may be used to provide financing to Israel and Egypt for the procurement by leasing (including leasing

with an option to purchase) of defense articles from United States commercial suppliers, not including Major Defense Equipment (other than helicopters and other types of aircraft having possible civilian application), if the President determines that there are compelling foreign policy or national security reasons for those defense articles being provided by commercial lease rather than by government-to-government sale under this chapter.

#### (b) Repayment period

The President shall require repayment in United States dollars within a period not to exceed twelve years after the loan agreement with the country or international organization is signed on behalf of the United States Government, unless a longer period is specifically authorized by statute for that country or international organization.

#### (c) Interest rate; definitions

(1) The President shall charge interest under this section at such rate as he may determine, except that such rate may not be less than 5 percent per year.

(2) For purposes of financing provided under this section—

(A) the term “concessional rate of interest” means any rate of interest which is less than market rates of interest; and

(B) the term “market rate of interest” means any rate of interest which is equal to or greater than the current average interest rate (as of the last day of the month preceding the financing of the procurement under this section) that the United States Government pays on outstanding marketable obligations of comparable maturity.

#### (d) Participations in credits

References in any law to credits extended under this section shall be deemed to include reference to participations in credits.

#### (e) Payments on account of prior credits or loans

(1) Funds made available to carry out this section may be used by a foreign country to make payments of principal and interest which it owes to the United States Government on account of credits previously extended under this section or loans previously guaranteed under section 2764 of this title, subject to paragraph (2).

(2) Funds made available to carry out this section may not be used for prepayment of principal or interest pursuant to the authority of paragraph (1).

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 2, §23, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1324; Pub. L. 93-559, §45(a)(2), Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1813; Pub. L. 94-329, title II, §208(a), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 739; Pub. L. 96-533, title I, §105(b)(3), Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3134; Pub. L. 99-83, title I, §102, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 195; Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title V, §572], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-176; Pub. L. 101-513, title V, §580, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2045.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 101-513 added subsec. (e).

1987—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 100-202 inserted sentence at end authorizing financing to Israel and Egypt for commercial leasing of defense articles, not including Major

Defense Equipment, with exception for certain aircraft, upon a Presidential determination that there are compelling foreign policy or national defense reasons for such leasing.

1985—Pub. L. 99-83 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section read as follows: “The President is authorized to finance procurements of defense articles, defense services, and design and construction services by friendly foreign countries and international organizations on terms requiring the payment to the United States Government in United States dollars of—

“(1) the value of such articles or services within a period not to exceed twelve years after the delivery of such articles or the rendering of such services; and

“(2) interest on the unpaid balance of that obligation for payment of the value of such articles or services, at a rate equivalent to the current average interest rate, as of the last day of the month preceding the financing of such procurement, that the United States Government pays on outstanding marketable obligations of comparable maturity, unless the President certifies to Congress that the national interest requires a lesser rate of interest and states in the certification the lesser rate so required and the justification therefor.”

1980—Pub. L. 96-533 substituted “defense articles, defense services, and design and construction services” for “defense articles and defense services”.

1976—Par. (1). Pub. L. 94-329 substituted “twelve years” for “ten years”.

1974—Pub. L. 93-559 incorporated existing provisions in cl. (1) and added cl. (2).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1976 AMENDMENT

Section 208(b) of Pub. L. 94-329 provided that: “The amendment made by subsection (a) [amending this section] shall apply with respect to financing under agreements entered into on or after the date of enactment of this Act [June 30, 1976] for the procurement of defense articles to be delivered, or defense services to be rendered, after such date.”

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section and section 580 of Pub. L. 100-461, see Similar Provisions note below, except those functions relating to determinations of a rate of interest which is less than the market rate, delegated to Secretary of Defense, to be exercised in consultation with Secretary of State and Secretary of the Treasury, by section 1(e) of Ex. Ord. No. 11958, Jan. 18, 1977, 42 F.R. 4311, as amended, set out as a note under section 2751 of this title.

#### SIMILAR PROVISIONS

Provisions similar to those in last sentence of subsec. (a) of this section are contained in the following appropriation acts:

Pub. L. 103-306, title V, § 530, Aug. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 1635.

Pub. L. 103-87, title V, § 530, Sept. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 954.

Pub. L. 102-391, title V, § 558, Oct. 6, 1992, 106 Stat. 1676.

Pub. L. 101-513, title V, § 561, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2026.

Pub. L. 101-167, title V, § 571, Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1245.

Pub. L. 100-461, title V, § 580, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-48.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2291c, 2311, 2360, 2761, 2764, 2771, 2774, 2775, 2776, 2777, 2791, 5854 of this title.

## § 2764. Guaranties

### (a) Guaranty against political and credit risks of nonpayment

The President may guarantee any individual, corporation, partnership, or other juridical entity doing business in the United States (excluding United States Government agencies other than the Federal Financing Bank) against political and credit risks of nonpayment arising out of their financing of credit sales of defense articles, defense services, and design and construction services to friendly countries and international organizations. Fees shall be charged for such guaranties.

### (b) Sale of promissory notes of friendly countries and international organizations; guaranty of payment

The President may sell to any individual, corporation, partnership, or other juridical entity (excluding United States Government agencies other than the Federal Financing Bank) promissory notes issued by friendly countries and international organizations as evidence of their obligations to make repayments to the United States on account of credit sales financed under section 2763 of this title, and may guarantee payment thereof.

### (c) Guaranty Reserve Fund; payment of guaranties; guaranty reserve below prescribed amount

Funds obligated under this section before December 16, 1980, which constitute a single reserve for the payment of claims under guaranties issued under this section shall remain available for expenditure for the purposes of this section on and after that date. That single reserve may, on and after August 8, 1985, be referred to as the “Guaranty Reserve Fund”. Funds provided for necessary expenses to carry out the provisions of section 2763 of this title and of section 2311 of this title may be used to pay claims on the Guaranty Reserve Fund to the extent that funds in the Guaranty Reserve Fund are inadequate for that purpose. For purposes of any provision in this chapter or any other Act relating to a prohibition or limitation on the availability of funds under this chapter, whenever a guaranty is issued under this section, the principal amount of the loan so guaranteed shall be deemed to be funds made available for use under this chapter. Any guaranties issued hereunder shall be backed by the full faith and credit of the United States.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 2, § 24, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1324; Pub. L. 93-189, § 25(4), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 730; Pub. L. 93-559, § 45(a)(3), (4), Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1814; Pub. L. 96-533, title I, §§ 104(a), 105(b)(3), Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3132, 3134; Pub. L. 99-83, title I, § 106(b), (c), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 196; Pub. L. 100-71, title I, July 11, 1987, 101 Stat. 409.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1987—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 100-71, which directed that the second par. be struck out and a new one-sentence par. be inserted, was executed to reflect the probable intent of Congress by substituting the new sentence for the third sentence which read as follows: “Funds authorized to be appropriated by section 2771(a) of this

title to carry out this chapter which are allocated for credits at market rates of interest may be used to pay claims under such guarantees to the extent funds in the Guaranty Reserve Fund are inadequate for that purpose.”

1985—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 99-83 inserted provisions authorizing the single reserve to be termed the “Guaranty Reserve Fund”, and substituted provisions relating to payment of claims under guarantees, for provisions relating to report to Congress respecting any payment of claims reducing the single reserve.

1980—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 96-533, §105(b)(3), substituted “defense articles, defense services, and design and construction services” for “defense articles and defense services”.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 96-533, §104(a), substituted provisions making funds obligated before Dec. 16, 1980 available for expenditure after such date for payment of guaranteed claims, requiring the President to report to Congress the reduction of the single reserve below \$750,000,000 with recommendation for an appropriations authorization of additional funds and deeming the principal amount of a guaranteed loan to be funds made available for use under this chapter for purposes of any limitation on availability of funds for prior provisions for obligation of available funds in an amount equal to 10 per centum of principal amount of contractual liability related to a guaranty under this section, making such funds a single reserve for payment of guaranteed claims, and providing for transfer of any funds deobligated during any current fiscal year to the general fund of the Treasury.

1974—Subsecs. (a), (b). Pub. L. 93-559, §45(a)(3), inserted “other than the Federal Financing Bank” in parenthetical text.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 93-559, §45(a)(4), substituted “10” for “25” in two places.

1973—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 93-189 substituted “to carry out this chapter” for “pursuant to section 2771 of this title” and inserted “principal amount of” before “contractual liability” wherever appearing.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1974 AMENDMENT; ADJUSTMENT OF OBLIGATIONS CHARGED AGAINST APPROPRIATIONS; CREDIT FOR FISCAL YEAR 1975 APPROPRIATIONS

Section 45(b) of Pub. L. 93-559 provided that: “The amendment made by paragraph (4) of subsection (a) [amending this section] shall take effect on July 1, 1974. Obligations initially charged against appropriations made available for purposes authorized by section 31(a) of the Foreign Military Sales Act [section 2771(a) of this title] after June 30, 1974, and prior to the enactment of this section [Dec. 30, 1974] in an amount equal to 25 per centum of the principal amount of contractual liability related to guaranties issued pursuant to section 24(a) of that Act [subsec. (a) of this section] shall be adjusted to reflect such amendment with proper credit to the appropriations made available in the fiscal year 1975 to carry out that Act [this chapter].”

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of Defense, with Secretary of Defense required to consult with Secretary of State and Secretary of the Treasury in implementing delegated functions, by section 1(f) of Ex. Ord. No. 11958, Jan. 18, 1977, 42 F.R. 4311, as amended, set out as a note under section 2751 of this title.

#### FOREIGN MILITARY SALES DEBT REFORM

Pub. L. 102-145, §118, as added by Pub. L. 102-266, §102, Apr. 1, 1992, 106 Stat. 93, provided that the authority and conditions provided under the heading “Foreign Military Sales Debt Reform” in H.R. 2621, One Hundred

Second Congress, 1st session, as passed by the House of Representatives on June 19, 1991, shall be applicable to funds appropriated by Pub. L. 102-145 (and are hereby enacted) in lieu of the authority and conditions provided under the heading “Foreign Military Sales Debt Reform” in Pub. L. 101-513 [set out below]. Provisions under the heading “Foreign Military Sales Debt Reform” in H.R. 2621, as referred to above, provided that: “Subsection (b) under the heading ‘Foreign Military Sales Debt Reform’ in the Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Act, 1988 [Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title III, §301], set out below], is hereby repealed.”

Pub. L. 101-513, title III, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1999, provided that: “Funds made available by the Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Act, 1988 [Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title III], set out below], for obligation and expenditure after October 1, 1988, subject to a Presidential budget request, under the heading ‘Foreign Military Sales Debt Reform’, subsection (b) ‘Interest Rate Reduction’ shall be available, subject to the same conditions and provisos, only after October 1, 1991.” Similar provisions were contained in the following prior appropriation acts:

Pub. L. 101-167, title III, Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1214.

Pub. L. 100-461, title III, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-18.

Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title III], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-148, as amended by Pub. L. 101-167, title III, Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1214; Pub. L. 102-145, §118, as added by Pub. L. 102-266, §102, Apr. 1, 1992, 106 Stat. 93, provided in part that:

“(a) REFINANCING.—Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the President is authorized during fiscal years 1988 through 1991 to transfer existing United States guaranties of outstanding Foreign Military Sales (FMS) credit debt, or to issue new guaranties, either of which would be applied to loans, bonds, notes or other obligations made or issued (as the case may be) by private United States financial institutions (the private lender) to finance the prepayment at par of the principal amounts maturing after September 30, 1989 of existing FMS loans bearing interest rates of eight percent or higher, and arrearages thereon. The loans, bonds, notes or other obligations are hereinafter referred to as the ‘private loan’. *Provided*, That such guaranties which are transferred or are made pursuant to paragraph (a) shall cover no more and no less than ninety percent of the private loan or any portion or derivative thereof plus unpaid accrued interest and arrearages, if any, outstanding at the time of guaranty transfer or extension: *Provided further*, That the total amount of the guaranty of the private loan cannot exceed ninety percent of the outstanding principal, unpaid accrued interest and arrearages, if any, at any time: *Provided further*, That of the total amount of the private loan, the ninety percent guaranteed portion of the private loan cannot be separated from the private loan at any time: *Provided further*, That no sums in addition to the payment of the outstanding principal amounts maturing after September 30, 1989 of the loan (or advance), plus unpaid accrued interest thereon, and arrearages, if any, shall be charged by the private lender or the Federal Financing Bank as a result of such prepayment against the borrower, the guarantor, or the Guaranty Reserve Fund (GRF), except that the private lender may include, in the interest rate charged, a standard fee to cover costs, such fee which will be set at prevailing market rates, and no guaranty fee shall be charged on guaranties transferred or issued pursuant to this provision: *Provided further*, That the terms of guaranties transferred or issued under this paragraph shall be exactly the same as the existing loans or guaranties, except as modified by this paragraph and including but not limited to the final maturity and principal and interest payment structure of the existing loans which shall not be altered, except that the repayments of the private loan issued debt may be consolidated into two payments per year: *Provided further*, That the private loan or guaranties transferred or is-



sued pursuant to this paragraph shall be fully and freely transferable, except that any guaranty transferred or extended shall cease to be effective if the private loan or any derivative thereof is to be used to provide significant support for any non-registered obligation: *Provided further*, That for purposes of sections 23 and 24 of the Arms Export Control Act (AECA) [22 U.S.C. 2763, 2764], the term 'defense services' shall be deemed to include the refinancing of FMS debt outstanding at the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 22, 1987]: *Provided further*, That not later than ninety days after the enactment of this Act, the Secretary of the Treasury (Secretary) shall issue regulations to carry out the purposes of this heading and that in issuing such regulations, the Secretary shall (1) facilitate the prepayment of loans and loan advances hereunder, (2) provide for full processing of each application within thirty days of its submission to the Secretary, and (3) except as provided in section 24(a) of the AECA, impose no restriction that increases the cost to borrowers of obtaining private financing for prepayment hereunder or that inhibits the ability of the borrower to enter into prepayment arrangements hereunder: *Provided further*, That the Secretary of State shall transmit to the Committee on Foreign Affairs [now Committee on International Relations] of the House of Representatives, the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, and the Committees on Appropriations of the House of Representatives and Senate, a copy of the text of any agreement entered into pursuant to this section not more than thirty days after its entry into force, together with a description of the transaction.

“(b) Repealed. Pub. L. 102-145, § 118, as added by Pub. L. 102-266, § 102, Apr. 1, 1992, 106 Stat. 93.]

“(c) ARREARAGES.—(1) None of the funds provided pursuant to the Arms Export Control Act (relating to Foreign Military Sales credits) [22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.] or pursuant to chapter 2 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act (relating to the Military Assistance program) [22 U.S.C. 2311 et seq.] shall be made available to any country for which one or more loans is refinanced pursuant to paragraph (a) of this heading and which is in default for a period in excess of ninety days in payment of principal or interest on (A) any loan made to such country guaranteed by the United States pursuant to paragraph (a) of this heading, and (B) any other loan issued pursuant to the Arms Export Control Act outstanding on the date of enactment of this provision [Dec. 22, 1987].

“(2) In conjunction with any interest rate reduction pursuant to the authority provided in paragraph (b) of this heading, the President shall require the country to commit in writing that within two years of the effective date of the interest rate reduction it will be no more than ninety days in arrears on the repayment of principal and interest on all loans for which the interest rate is thus reduced and will remain no more than ninety days in arrears for the remaining life of all such loans. None of the funds provided pursuant to the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.] or chapter 2 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act [22 U.S.C. 2311 et seq.] shall be made available to any country during any period in which it fails to comply with such commitment.

“(d) PURPOSES AND REPORTS.—The authorities of paragraphs (a) and (b) of this heading may be utilized by the President in efforts to negotiate base rights and base access agreements, and for other bilateral foreign policy matters: *Provided further*, That the Secretaries of Defense, State, and Treasury shall transmit to the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives, the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, and the Committees on Appropriations of the House of Representatives and Senate a joint report detailing the United States financial and foreign policy purposes served by implementation of this authority on a country by country basis not later than March 1, 1989, and a second joint report not later than August 1, 1989.”

[Functions of President under subsec. (c)(2) of provisions of Pub. L. 100-202 set out above, delegated to Sec-

retary of State, to be exercised in consultation with Secretary of Defense, see section 1-201(a)(32) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.]

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2763, 2765, 2771, 2774, 2775, 2776, 2777, 2791, 3402 of this title.

### § 2765. Annual estimate and justification for sales program

#### (a) Report to Congress; contents

Except as provided in subsection (d)<sup>1</sup> of this section, no later than February 1 of each year, the President shall transmit to the Congress, as a part of the annual presentation materials for security assistance programs proposed for the next fiscal year, a report which sets forth—

(1) an arms sales proposal covering all sales and licensed commercial exports under this chapter of major weapons or weapons-related defense equipment for \$7,000,000 or more, or of any other weapons or weapons-related defense equipment for \$25,000,000 or more, which are considered eligible for approval during the current calendar year, together with an indication of which sales and licensed commercial exports are deemed most likely actually to result in the issuance of a letter of offer or of an export license during such year;

(2) an estimate of the total amount of sales and licensed commercial exports expected to be made to each foreign nation from the United States;

(3) the United States national security considerations involved in expected sales or licensed commercial exports to each country, an analysis of the relationship between anticipated sales to each country and arms control efforts concerning such country and an analysis of the impact of such anticipated sales on the stability of the region that includes such country;

(4) an estimate with regard to the international volume of arms traffic to and from nations purchasing arms as set forth in paragraphs (1) and (2) of this subsection, together with best estimates of the sale and delivery of weapons and weapons-related defense equipment by all major arms suppliers to all major recipient countries during the preceding fiscal year;

(5)(A) an estimate of the aggregate dollar value and quantity of defense articles and defense services, military education and training, grant military assistance, and credits and guarantees, to be furnished by the United States to each foreign country and international organization in the next fiscal year; and

(B) for each country that is proposed to be furnished credits or guaranties under this chapter in the next fiscal year and that has been approved for cash flow financing (as defined in subsection (d)<sup>1</sup> of this section) in excess of \$100,000,000 as of October 1 of the current fiscal year—

(i) the amount of such approved cash flow financing,

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

(ii) a description of administrative ceilings and controls applied, and

(iii) a description of the financial resources otherwise available to such country to pay such approved cash flow financing;

(6) an analysis and description of the services performed during the preceding fiscal year by officers and employees of the United States Government carrying out functions on a full-time basis under this chapter for which reimbursement is provided under section 2792(b) of this title or section 2761(a) of this title, including the number of personnel involved in performing such services;

(7) the total amount of funds in the reserve under section 2764(c) of this title at the end of the fiscal year immediately preceding the fiscal year in which a report under this section is made, together with an assessment of the adequacy of such total amount of funds as a reserve for the payment of claims under guarantees issued pursuant to section 2764 of this title in view of the current debt servicing capacity of borrowing countries, as reported to the Congress pursuant to section 634(a)(5) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2394(a)(5)];

(8) a list of all countries with respect to which findings made by the President pursuant to section 2753(a)(1) of this title are in effect on the date of such transmission;

(9) the progress made under the program of the Republic of Korea to modernize its armed forces, the role of the United States in mutual security efforts in the Republic of Korea and the military balance between the People's Republic of Korea and the Republic of Korea;

(10) the amount and nature of Soviet military assistance to the armed forces of Cuba during the preceding fiscal year and the military capabilities of those armed forces;

(11) the status of each loan and each contract of guaranty or insurance theretofore made under the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.], predecessor Acts, or any Act authorizing international security assistance, with respect to which there remains outstanding any unpaid obligation or potential liability; the status of each extension of credit for the procurement of defense articles or defense services, and of each contract of guaranty in connection with any such procurement, theretofore made under this chapter with respect to which there remains outstanding any unpaid obligation or potential liability; and

(12) such other information as the President may deem necessary.

**(b) Congressional request for additional information**

Not later than thirty days following the receipt of a request made by the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate or the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives for additional information with respect to any information submitted pursuant to subsection (a) of this section, the President shall submit such information to such committee.

**(c) Submission of information in unclassified form or classified addendum with unclassified summary**

The President shall make every effort to submit all of the information required by subsection (a) or (b) of this section wholly in unclassified form. Whenever the President submits any such information in classified form, he shall submit such classified information in an addendum and shall also submit simultaneously a detailed summary, in unclassified form, of such classified information.

**(d)<sup>2</sup> "Cash flow financing" defined**

For the purposes of subsection (a)(5)(B) of this section, the term "cash flow financing" means the dollar amount of the difference between the total estimated price of a Letter of Offer and Acceptance or other purchase agreement that has been approved for financing under this chapter or under section 503(a)(3) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2311(a)(3)] and the amount of the financing that has been approved therefor;<sup>3</sup>

**(d)<sup>2</sup> Transmission of information to Congress**

The information required by subsection (a)(4) of this section shall be transmitted to the Congress no later than April 1 of each year.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 2, § 25, as added Pub. L. 94-329, title II, § 209(a), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 739; amended Pub. L. 95-384, § 18, Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 740; Pub. L. 96-92, §§ 13, 14, Oct. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 706; Pub. L. 96-533, title I, §§ 104(c), 107(d), Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3133, 3137; Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 732, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1557; Pub. L. 99-83, title I, §§ 112, 113, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 198.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Subsection (d) of this section, referred to in subsec. (a), preceding par. (1), probably means the subsec. (d) added by section 113(2) of Pub. L. 99-83, relating to transmittal of information to Congress.

Subsection (d) of this section, referred to in subsec. (a)(5)(B), probably means the subsec. (d) added by section 112(b) of Pub. L. 99-83, defining cash flow financing.

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (a)(11), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 32 (§ 2151 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1985—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99-83, § 113(1), substituted "Except as provided in subsection (d) of this section, no" for "No".

Subsec. (a)(5). Pub. L. 99-83, § 112(a), designated existing provisions as subpar. (A) and added subpar. (B).

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 99-83, § 112(b), added subsec. (d) defining "cash flow financing".

Pub. L. 99-83, § 113(2), added subsec. (d) relating to transmittal of information to Congress.

1981—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 97-113, in provision preceding par. (1), required transmission of the report no later than Feb. 1 of each year and substituted provision for annual presentation materials for programs proposed for next fiscal year for provision for presentation materials for programs proposed for each fiscal year.

Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 97-113 added par. (1) which incorporated provisions of former subsec. (d)(1) of this

<sup>2</sup> So in original. Two subsecs. (d) have been enacted.

<sup>3</sup> So in original. The semicolon probably should be a period.

section. See subsec. (d) amendment note. Former par. (1) covered in par. (3).

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 97-113 added par. (2). Former par. (2), which required the report to contain an estimate of amount of credits and guaranties expected to be extended to each country under sections 2763 and 2764 of this title, covered in par. (5).

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 97-113 added par. (3) which incorporated provisions of former par. (1) requiring the report to contain an estimate of amounts of expected sales to each country under sections 2761 and 2762 of this title, including detailed explanations of foreign policy and United States national security considerations in expected sales to each country, and (5) requiring inclusion of an arms control impact statement for each purchasing country, covering (A) an analysis of the relationship between expected sales to each country and arms control efforts relating to that country, and (B) the impact of such expected sales on the stability of the region that included the purchasing country. Former par. (3) redesignated (7).

Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 97-113 added par. (4) which incorporated provisions of former subsec. (e), which had required executive estimates of international arms traffic, including estimates on an annual basis of the sale and delivery of weapons and weapons-related defense equipment by all major arms suppliers to all major recipient countries during the preceding three years. Former par. (4) covered in par. (8).

Subsec. (a)(5). Pub. L. 97-113 added par. (5) which incorporated provisions of former par. (2) requiring the report to contain an estimate of amount of credits and guaranties expected to be extended to each country under sections 2763 and 2764 of this title. Former par. (5) covered in par. (3).

Subsec. (a)(6). Pub. L. 97-113 added par. (6).

Subsec. (a)(7). Pub. L. 97-113 redesignated former par. (3) as (7).

Subsec. (a)(8). Pub. L. 97-113 added par. (8), which incorporated provisions of former par. (4), requiring the report to contain a list of all findings in effect on date of its transmission made by the President pursuant to section 2753(a)(1) of this title, together with a full and complete justification for each finding, explaining how sales to each country with respect to which findings were made would strengthen the security of the United States and promote world peace.

Subsecs. (a)(9) to (12). Pub. L. 97-113 added pars. (9) to (12).

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 97-113 substituted "Committee on Foreign Affairs" for "Committee on International Relations", and "with respect to any information" for "with respect to any estimate".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 97-113 substituted "Whenever the President" for "In the event the President".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 97-113 incorporated in subsec. (a) introductory text and subsec. (a)(1), provisions of former subsec. (d)(1) which had required transmission to the Speaker of the House and the chairman of the Senate Foreign Relations Committee the Arms Sales Proposal covering sales and licensed commercial exports under this chapter (other than such transactions to members of North Atlantic Treaty Organization, Japan, Australia, and New Zealand) of major weapons or weapons-related defense equipment for \$7,000,000 or more, or of any other weapons or similar equipment for \$25,000,000 or more, which were eligible for approval during fiscal year beginning October 1 of such year and had required identification in the reports of sales and licensed commercial exports deemed most likely actually to result in issuance of a letter of offer or of an export license during such fiscal year, and subsec. (d)(2) which had required Presidential six month written notifications of Congress of any change in the Arms Sales Proposal for such fiscal year, together with reasons therefor.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 97-113 incorporated, in subsec. (a) introductory text and subsec. (a)(4), provisions of former subsec. (e) which had required transmission to Congress on or before Nov. 15 of each year executive es-

timates of international arms traffic, including estimates on an annual basis of the sale and delivery of weapons and weapons-related defense equipment by all major arms suppliers to all major recipient countries during the preceding three years.

1980—Subsec. (a)(3) to (5). Pub. L. 96-533, §104(c), added par. (3) and redesignated former pars. (3) and (4) as (4) and (5), respectively.

Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 96-533, §107(d), included coverage of licensed commercial exports and substituted "letter of offer or of an export license" for "letter of offer".

1979—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 96-92, §13(1)-(4), designated existing provision as par. (1), substituted "major weapons or weapons-related defense equipment" for "major defense equipment" and "weapons or weapons-related defense equipment" for "defense articles or defense services", required identification of sales likely to result in issuance of a letter of offer in the furnished reports, and added par. (2).

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 96-92, §14, added subsec. (e).

1978—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 95-384, §18(b), substituted "subsection (a) or (b) of this section" for "this section".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 95-384, §18(a), added subsec. (d).

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of State, with Secretary of Defense and Director of Arms Control and Disarmament Agency required to assist in preparation of materials for presentation to Congress, by section 1(g) of Ex. Ord. No. 11958, Jan. 18, 1977, 42 F.R. 4311, as amended, set out as a note under section 2751 of this title.

### § 2766. Security assistance surveys

#### (a) Statement of findings and policy

The Congress finds that security assistance surveys prepared by the United States for foreign countries have had a significant impact on subsequent military procurement decisions of those countries. It is the policy of the United States that the results of security assistance surveys conducted by the United States clearly do not represent a commitment by the United States to provide any military equipment to any foreign country. Further, recommendations in such surveys should be consistent with the arms export control policy provided for in this chapter.

#### (b) Reporting requirements

As part of the quarterly report required by section 2776(a) of this title, the President shall include a list of all security assistance surveys authorized during the preceding calendar quarter, specifying the country with respect to which the survey was or will be conducted, the purpose of the survey, and the number of United States Government personnel who participated or will participate in the survey.

#### (c) Submission of surveys to Congress

Upon a request of the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Rep-

representatives or the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, the President shall submit to that committee copies of security assistance surveys conducted by United States Government personnel.

**(d) “Security assistance surveys” defined**

As used in this section, the term “security assistance surveys” means any survey or study conducted in a foreign country by United States Government personnel for the purpose of assessing the needs of that country for security assistance, and includes defense requirement surveys, site surveys, general surveys or studies, and engineering assessment surveys.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 2, § 26, as added Pub. L. 95-384, § 19, Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 740; amended Pub. L. 99-83, title I, § 114, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 198; Pub. L. 103-437, § 9(a)(7), Nov. 2, 1994, 108 Stat. 4588.)

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 103-437 substituted “Foreign Affairs” for “International Relations”.

1985—Pub. L. 99-83, § 114(a)(1), substituted “Security assistance” for “Defense requirement” in section catchline.

Subsecs. (a), (b). Pub. L. 99-83, § 114(a)(2), substituted “security assistance” for “defense requirement” wherever appearing.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 99-83, § 114(a)(2), (b), substituted “submit to that committee copies of security assistance surveys” for “grant that committee access to defense requirement surveys”.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 99-83, § 114(a)(3), added subsec. (d).

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

**§ 2767. Authority of President to enter into cooperative projects with friendly foreign countries**

**(a) Authority of President**

The President may enter into a cooperative project agreement with the North Atlantic Treaty Organization or with one or more member countries of that Organization.

**(b) Definitions**

As used in this section—

(1) the term “cooperative project”, in the case of an agreement with the North Atlantic Treaty Organization or with one or more member countries of that Organization, means a jointly managed arrangement, described in a written agreement among the parties, which is undertaken in order to further the objectives of standardization, rationalization, and interoperability of the armed forces of North Atlantic Treaty Organization member countries and which provides—

(A) for one or more of the other participants to share with the United States the costs of research on and development, testing, evaluation, or joint production (includ-

ing follow-on support) of certain defense articles;

(B) for concurrent production in the United States and in another member country of a defense article jointly developed in accordance with subparagraph (A); or

(C) for procurement by the United States of a defense article or defense service from another member country or for procurement by the United States of munitions from the North Atlantic Treaty Organization or a subsidiary of such organization;

(2) the term “cooperative project”, in the case of an agreement entered into under subsection (j) of this section, means a jointly managed arrangement, described in a written agreement among the parties, which is undertaken in order to enhance the ongoing multinational effort of the participants to improve the conventional defense capabilities of the participants and which provides—

(A) for one or more of the other participants to share with the United States the costs of research on and development, testing, evaluation, or joint production (including follow-on support) of certain defense articles;

(B) for concurrent production in the United States and in the country of another participant of a defense article jointly developed in accordance with subparagraph (A); or

(C) for procurement by the United States of a defense article or defense service from another participant to the agreement; and

(3) the term “other participant” means a participant in a cooperative project other than the United States.

**(c) Agreements for equitable share of costs; limiting nature of agreements**

Each agreement for a cooperative project shall provide that the United States and each of the other participants will contribute to the cooperative project its equitable share of the full cost of such cooperative project and will receive an equitable share of the results of such cooperative project. The full costs of such cooperative project shall include overhead costs, administrative costs, and costs of claims. The United States and the other participants may contribute their equitable shares of the full cost of such cooperative project in funds or in defense articles or defense services needed for such cooperative project. Military assistance and financing received from the United States Government may not be used by any other participant to provide its share of the cost of such cooperative project. Such agreements shall provide that no requirement shall be imposed by a participant for worksharing or other industrial or commercial compensation in connection with such agreement that is not in accordance with such agreement.

**(d) Contractual or other obligation; pre-conditions**

The President may enter into contracts or incur other obligations for a cooperative project on behalf of the other participants, without charge to any appropriation or contract author-

ization, if each of the other participants in the cooperative project agrees (1) to pay its equitable share of the contract or other obligation, and (2) to make such funds available in such amounts and at such times as may be required by the contract or other obligation and to pay any damages and costs that may accrue from the performance of or cancellation of the contract or other obligation in advance of the time such payments, damages, or costs are due.

**(e) Waiver of charges; administrative surcharges**

(1) For those cooperative projects entered into on or after the effective date<sup>1</sup> of the International Security and Development Cooperation Act of 1985, the President may reduce or waive the charge or charges which would otherwise be considered appropriate under section 2761(e) of this title in connection with sales under sections 2761 and 2762 of this title when such sales are made as part of such cooperative project, if the other participants agree to reduce or waive corresponding charges.

(2) Notwithstanding provisions of section 2761(e)(1)(A) and section 2792(b) of this title, administrative surcharges shall not be increased on other sales made under this chapter in order to compensate for reductions or waivers of such surcharges under this section. Funds received pursuant to such other sales shall not be available to reimburse the costs incurred by the United States Government for which reduction or waiver is approved by the President under this section.

**(f) Transmission of numbered certification to Congress respecting proposed agreement; contents**

Not less than 30 days before a cooperative project agreement is signed on behalf of the United States, the President shall transmit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives, the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, and the chairman of the Committee on Armed Services of the Senate, a numbered certification with respect to such proposed agreement, setting forth—

(1) a detailed description of the cooperative project with respect to which the certification is made;

(2) an estimate of the quantity of the defense articles expected to be produced in furtherance of such cooperative project;

(3) an estimate of the full cost of the cooperative project, with an estimate of the part of the full cost to be incurred by the United States Government, including an estimate of the costs as a result of waivers of section<sup>2</sup> 2761(e)(1)(A) and 2792(b) of this title, for its participation in such cooperative project and an estimate of that part of the full costs to be incurred by the other participants;

(4) an estimate of the dollar value of the funds to be contributed by the United States and each of the other participants on behalf of such cooperative project;

(5) a description of the defense articles and defense services expected to be contributed by the United States and each of the other par-

ticipants on behalf of such cooperative project;

(6) a statement of the foreign policy and national security benefits anticipated to be derived from such cooperative project; and

(7) to the extent known, whether it is likely that prime contracts will be awarded to particular prime contractors or that subcontracts will be awarded to particular subcontractors to comply with the proposed agreement.

**(g) Reporting and certification requirements applicable**

In the case of a cooperative project with a North Atlantic Treaty Organization country, section<sup>3</sup> 2776(b) of this title shall not apply to sales made under section 2761 or 2762 of this title and to production and exports made pursuant to cooperative projects under this section, and section 2776(c) of this title shall not apply to the issuance of licenses or other approvals under section 2778 of this title, if such sales are made, such production and exports ensue, or such licenses or approvals are issued, as part of a cooperative project.

**(h) Statutory provisions applicable to sales**

The authority under this section is in addition to the authority under sections 2761 and 2762 of this title and under any other provision of law.

**(i) Agreements entered into before October 1, 1985**

(1) With the approval of the Secretary of State and the Secretary of Defense, a cooperative agreement which was entered into by the United States before the effective date<sup>4</sup> of the amendment to this section made by the International Security and Development Cooperation Act of 1985 and which meets the requirements of this section as so amended may be treated on and after such date as having been made under this section as so amended.

(2) Notwithstanding the amendment made<sup>5</sup> to this section made by the International Security and Development Cooperation Act of 1985, projects entered into under the authority of this section before the effective date<sup>4</sup> of that amendment may be carried through to conclusion in accordance with the terms of this section as in effect immediately before the effective date<sup>4</sup> of that amendment.

**(j) Cooperative project agreements with friendly foreign countries not members of NATO; reporting requirements**

(1) The President may enter into a cooperative project agreement with any friendly foreign country not a member of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization under the same general terms and conditions as the President is authorized to enter into such an agreement with one or more member countries of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization if the President determines that the cooperative project agreement with such country would be in the foreign policy or national security interests of the United States.

(2) Not later than January 1 of each year, the President shall submit to the Committees on

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

<sup>2</sup> So in original. Probably should be "sections".

<sup>3</sup> So in original. The comma probably should not appear.

<sup>4</sup> See References in Text note below.

<sup>5</sup> So in original. The word "made" probably should not appear.

Armed Services and Foreign Relations of the Senate and to the Committees on Armed Services and Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives a report specifying (A) the countries eligible for participation in such a cooperative project agreement under this subsection, and (B) the criteria used to determine the eligibility of such countries.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 2, § 27, as added Pub. L. 96-92, § 15, Oct. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 706; amended Pub. L. 99-83, title I, § 115(a), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 199; Pub. L. 99-145, title XI, § 1102(a)(1), (5), Nov. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 708, 710; Pub. L. 99-661, div. A, title XI, § 1103(a), title XIII, § 1342(e), Nov. 14, 1986, 100 Stat. 3962, 3991; Pub. L. 100-180, div. A, title X, § 1022, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1144; Pub. L. 102-484, div. A, title VIII, § 843(a), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2468.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The effective date of the International Security and Development Cooperation Act of 1985 and the effective date of the amendment to this section made by the International Security and Development Cooperation Act of 1985, referred to in subsecs. (e)(1) and (i), respectively, is October 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as an Effective Date of 1985 Amendment note under section 2151-1 of this title.

The amendment made to this section made by the International Security and Development Cooperation Act of 1985, referred to in subsec. (i), means the general amendment of this section by section 115(a) of Pub. L. 99-83. See 1985 Amendment note below.

#### AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 102-484 substituted “costs, administrative costs, and costs of claims” for “and administrative costs”.

1987—Subsec. (b)(1)(C). Pub. L. 100-180 inserted “or for procurement by the United States of munitions from the North Atlantic Treaty Organization or a subsidiary of such organization” after “member country”.

1986—Pub. L. 99-661, § 1342(e), repealed section 1102(a)(1) of Pub. L. 99-145 and the amendments made by that section, and provided that this section shall apply as if that section had never been enacted. See 1985 Amendments note below.

Pub. L. 99-661, § 1103(a)(2), substituted “Authority of President to enter into cooperative projects with friendly foreign countries” for “North Atlantic Treaty Organization cooperative projects” in section catchline.

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 99-661, § 1103(a)(1)(A)(i), inserted “, in the case of an agreement with the North Atlantic Treaty Organization or with one or more member countries of that Organization,” in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (b)(2), (3). Pub. L. 99-661, § 1103(a)(1)(A)(ii)-(iv), added par. (2) and redesignated former par. (2) as (3).

Subsec. (f)(3). Pub. L. 99-661, § 1103(a)(1)(B), inserted “, including an estimate of the costs as a result of waivers of section 2761(e)(1)(A) and 2792(b) of this title,”.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 99-661, § 1103(a)(1)(C), substituted “In the case of a cooperative project with a North Atlantic Treaty Organization country, section,” for “Section”.

Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 99-661, § 1103(a)(1)(D), added subsec. (j).

1985—Pub. L. 99-83 amended section generally, substituting in subsec. (a) provisions relating to authority of the President, for provisions defining “cooperative project”, substituting in subsec. (b) provisions defining “cooperative project” and “other participant”, for provisions relating to reduction or waiver of charges, sales not subject to compensatory increases in administrative surcharges, and contribution requirements, sub-

stituting in subsec. (c) provisions relating to agreements for equitable share of costs and limiting the nature of such agreements, for provisions relating to transmission of numbered certification of proposed agreement, contents of such certification, and statutory provisions applicable to sales, and adding subsecs. (d) to (i).

Pub. L. 99-145, § 1102(a)(1), which enacted a general amendment of this section similar to that provided in Pub. L. 99-83 was repealed. See 1986 Amendments note above and former section 1105(a)(5) of Pub. L. 99-145 set out as a Repeals; Effective Date note under section 2752 of this title.

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Armed Services of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on National Security of House of Representatives and Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of Defense, with Secretary of Defense required to consult with Secretary of State in implementing delegated functions, by section 1(f) of Ex. Ord. No. 11958, Jan. 18, 1977, 42 F.R. 4311, as amended, set out as a note under section 2751 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2753, 2791 of this title; title 10 sections 2350b, 4542.

#### § 2767a. Repealed. Pub. L. 101-189, div. A, title IX, § 931(d)(2), Nov. 29, 1989, 103 Stat. 1535

Section, Pub. L. 99-661, div. A, title XI, § 1105, Nov. 14, 1986, 100 Stat. 3965; Pub. L. 100-456, div. A, title X, § 1007, Sept. 29, 1988, 102 Stat. 2040, related to cooperative research and development with major non-NATO allies. See section 2350a of Title 10, Armed Forces.

#### § 2768. Reports on price and availability estimates

##### (a) Estimates to foreign countries respecting defense articles or services

The President shall transmit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, within fifteen days after the end of each calendar quarter, a report listing each price and availability estimate provided by the United States Government during such quarter to a foreign country with respect to a possible sale under this chapter of major defense equipment for \$7,000,000 or more, of any other defense articles or defense services for \$25,000,000 or more, or of any Air-to-Ground or Ground-to-Air missiles, or associated launchers (without regard to the amount of the possible sale).<sup>1</sup> Each such listing shall specify the name of the country to which the estimate was provided, the defense articles or services involved, the quantity involved, and the price estimate provided.

<sup>1</sup> So in original.

**(b) Requests from foreign countries respecting offers to sell defense articles or services**

Such reports shall also list each request received by the United States Government from a foreign country, during the quarter in question, for the issuance of a letter of offer to sell defense articles or defense services if (1) the proposed sale has not been the subject of a listing pursuant to subsection (a) of this section, and (2) the request involves a proposed sale of major defense equipment for \$7,000,000 or more, of any other defense articles or defense services for \$25,000,000 or more, or of any Air-to-Ground or Ground-to-Air missiles or associated launchers (without regard to the amount of the proposed sale),<sup>1</sup> Each such listing shall include the name of the country making the request, the date of the request, the defense articles or services involved, the quantity involved, and the price and availability terms requested.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 2, § 28, as added Pub. L. 96-92, § 16(a), Oct. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 708; amended Pub. L. 97-113, title I, § 101(b), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1520; Pub. L. 100-461, title V, § 588(a), Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-51.)

AMENDMENTS

1988—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 100-461, § 588(a)(1), substituted comma for “or” after “\$7,000,000 or more” and inserted “, or of any Air-to-Ground or Ground-to-Air missiles, or associated launchers (without regard to the amount of the possible sale),” after “\$25,000,000 or more”.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 100-461, § 588(a)(2), substituted comma for “or” after “\$7,000,000 or more” and inserted “, or of any Air-to-Ground or Ground-to-Air missiles or associated launchers (without regard to the amount of the proposed sale),” after “\$25,000,000 or more”.

1981—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 97-113, § 101(b)(1), increased time for transmission of report from five to fifteen days after the end of the calendar quarter.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 97-113, § 101(b)(2), substituted “the request involves a proposed sale of major defense equipment for \$7,000,000 or more or of any other defense articles or defense services for \$25,000,000 or more” for “the issuance of a letter of offer in accordance with such request would be subject to the requirements of section 2776(b) of this title”.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of Defense by section 1(f) of Ex. Ord. No. 11958, Jan. 18, 1977, 42 F.R. 4311, as amended, set out as a note under section 2751 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2776 of this title.

SUBCHAPTER II-A—FOREIGN MILITARY CONSTRUCTION SALES

**§ 2769. Foreign military construction sales**

The President may sell design and construction services to any eligible foreign country or international organization if such country or international organization agrees to pay in United States dollars not less than the full cost to the United States Government of furnishing such services. Payment shall be made to the United States Government in advance of the performance of such services by officers or employees of the United States Government. The President may, without requirement for charge

to any appropriation or contract authorization otherwise provided, enter into contracts for the procurement of design and construction services for sale under this section if such country or international organization provides the United States Government with a dependable undertaking (1) to pay the full amount of such contract which will assure the United States Government against any loss on the contract, and (2) to make funds available in such amounts and at such time as may be required to meet the payments required by the contract and any damages and costs that may accrue from the cancellation of such contract, in advance of the time such payments, damages, or costs are due.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 2A, § 29, as added Pub. L. 96-533, title I, § 105(a), Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3133.)

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of Defense by section 1(d) of Ex. Ord. No. 11958, Jan. 18, 1977, 42 F.R. 4311, as amended, set out as a note under section 2751 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2762, 2776, 2777, 2779, 2791, 2794 of this title.

SUBCHAPTER II-B—SALES TO UNITED STATES COMPANIES FOR INCORPORATION INTO END ITEMS

SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in section 2761 of this title.

**§ 2770. General authority**

**(a) Sale of defense articles and services by President to United States companies; restriction on performance of services; reimbursement credited to selling agency**

Subject to the conditions specified in subsection (b) of this section, the President may, on a negotiated contract basis, under cash terms (1) sell defense articles at not less than their estimated replacement cost (or actual cost in the case of services), or (2) procure or manufacture and sell defense articles at not less than their contract or manufacturing cost to the United States Government, to any United States company for incorporation into end items (and for concurrent or follow-on support) to be sold by such a company either (i) on a direct commercial basis to a friendly foreign country or international organization pursuant to an export license or approval under section 2778 of this title or (ii) in the case of ammunition parts subject to subsection (b) of this section, using commercial practices which restrict actual delivery directly to a friendly foreign country or international organization pursuant to approval under section 2778 of this title. The President may also sell defense services in support of such sales of defense articles, subject to the requirements of this chapter: *Provided, however,* That such services may be performed only in the United States. The amount of reimbursement received from such sales shall be credited to the current applicable appropriation, fund, or account of the selling agency of the United States Government.

**(b) Conditions of sale**

Defense articles and defense services may be sold, procured and sold, or manufactured and sold, pursuant to subsection (a) of this section only if (1) the end item to which the articles apply is to be procured for the armed forces of a friendly country or international organization, (2) the articles would be supplied to the prime contractor as government-furnished equipment or materials if the end item were being procured for the use of the United States Armed Forces, and (3) the articles and services are available only from United States Government sources or are not available to the prime contractor directly from United States commercial sources at such times as may be required to meet the prime contractor's delivery schedule.

**(c) "Defense articles" and "defense services" defined**

For the purpose of this section, the terms "defense articles" and "defense services" mean defense articles and defense services as defined in section 2794(3) and (4) of this title.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 2B, §30, as added Pub. L. 97-392, §1, Dec. 29, 1982, 96 Stat. 1962; amended Pub. L. 101-165, title IX, §9097, Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1150.)

## AMENDMENTS

1989—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 101-165 inserted "either (i)" after "such a company" in first sentence and inserted before period at end of first sentence "or (ii) in the case of ammunition parts subject to subsection (b) of this section, using commercial practices which restrict actual delivery directly to a friendly foreign country or international organization pursuant to approval under section 2778 of this title".

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of Defense by section 1(d) of Ex. Ord. No. 11958, Jan. 18, 1977, 42 F.R. 4311, as amended, set out as a note under section 2751 of this title.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2791 of this title.

## SUBCHAPTER II-C—EXCHANGE OF TRAINING AND RELATED SUPPORT

**§ 2770a. Exchange of training and related support****(a) Authorization; eligibility; scope**

Subject to subsection (b) of this section, the President may provide training and related support to military and civilian defense personnel of a friendly foreign country or an international organization. Such training and related support shall be provided by a Secretary of a military department and may include the provision of transportation, food services, health services, and logistics and the use of facilities and equipment.

**(b) Reciprocal arrangements; reimbursement**

Training and related support may be provided under this section only pursuant to an agreement or other arrangement providing for the provision by the recipient foreign country or international organization, on a reciprocal basis, of comparable training and related sup-

port to military and civilian personnel under the jurisdiction of the Secretary of the military department providing the training and related support under this section. Such reciprocal training and related support must be provided within a reasonable period of time (which may not be more than one year) of the provision of training and related support by the United States. To the extent that a foreign country or international organization to which training and related support is provided under this section does not provide such comparable training and related support to the United States within a reasonable period of time, that country or international organization shall be required to reimburse the United States for the full costs of the training and related support provided by the United States.

**(c) Regulations**

Training and related support under this section shall be provided under regulations prescribed by the President.

**(d) Report to Congress**

Not later than February 1 of each year, the President shall submit to the Congress a report on the activities conducted pursuant to this section during the preceding fiscal year, including the estimated full costs of the training and related support provided by the United States to each country and international organization and the estimated value of the training and related support provided to the United States by that country or international organization.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 2C, §30A, as added Pub. L. 99-83, title I, §116, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 201.)

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as an Effective Date of 1985 Amendment note under section 2151-1 of this title.

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of Defense by section 1(d) of Ex. Ord. No. 11958, Jan. 18, 1977, 42 F.R. 4311, as amended, set out as a note under section 2751 of this title.

## SUBCHAPTER III—MILITARY EXPORT CONTROLS

**§ 2771. Military sales authorizations and ceilings****(a) Authorization for foreign military sales credit and guarantee program**

There are authorized to be appropriated to the President to carry out this chapter \$5,371,000,000 for fiscal year 1986 and \$5,371,000,000 for fiscal year 1987. Credits may not be extended under section 2763 of this title in an amount, and loans may not be guaranteed under section 2764(a) of this title in a principal amount, which exceeds any maximum amount which may be established with respect to such credits or such loan guarantees in legislation appropriating funds to carry out this chapter. Unobligated balances of funds made available pursuant to this section are hereby authorized to be continued available by appropriations legislation to carry out this chapter.



**(b) Aggregate ceilings on credit sales; availability at concessional rates of interest**

(1) The total amount of credits extended under section 2763 of this title shall not exceed \$5,371,000,000 for fiscal year 1986 and \$5,371,000,000 for fiscal year 1987.

(2) Of the aggregate amount of financing provided under this section, not more than \$553,900,000 for fiscal year 1986 and not more than \$553,900,000 for fiscal year 1987 may be made available at concessional rates of interest. If a country is released from its contractual liability to repay the United States Government with respect to financing provided under this section, such financing shall not be considered to be financing provided at concessional rates of interest for purposes of the limitation established by this paragraph.

**(c) Extended repayment terms**

For fiscal year 1986 and fiscal year 1987, the principal amount of credits provided under section 2763 of this title at market rates of interest with respect to Greece, the Republic of Korea, the Philippines, Portugal, Spain, Thailand, and Turkey shall (if and to the extent each country so desires) be repaid in not more than twenty years, following a grace period of ten years on repayment of principal.

**(d) Aggregate acquisition cost ceiling for ordered excess defense articles**

The aggregate acquisition cost to the United States of excess defense articles ordered by the President in any fiscal year after fiscal year 1976 for delivery to foreign countries or international organizations under the authority of chapter 2 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2311] or pursuant to sales under this chapter may not exceed \$250,000,000 (exclusive of ships and their onboard stores and supplies transferred in accordance with law, and of any defense articles with respect to which the President submits a certification under section 2776(b) of this title.)<sup>1</sup>

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 3, § 31, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1324; Pub. L. 91-672, § 2, Jan. 12, 1971, 84 Stat. 2053; Pub. L. 92-226, pt. IV, § 401(a), (b), Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 32; Pub. L. 93-189, § 25(5), (6), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 730; Pub. L. 93-559, § 45(a)(6), (7), Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1815; Pub. L. 94-329, title II, § 210(a)-(c)(1), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 740; Pub. L. 95-92, § 19, Aug. 4, 1977, 91 Stat. 623; Pub. L. 95-384, § 20, Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 741; Pub. L. 96-92, § 17(a), Oct. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 708; Pub. L. 96-533, title I, §§ 104(d), 105(b)(3), 106(a)-(c), Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3133-3136; Pub. L. 97-113, title I, § 105, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1521; Pub. L. 98-151, § 101(b)(2), Nov. 14, 1983, 97 Stat. 969, 970; Pub. L. 99-83, title I, § 101(a), (b), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 193; Pub. L. 101-513, title V, § 596(c), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2062.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (d), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended. Chapter 2 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, is classified generally to part 2 of sub-

chapter II (§ 2311 et seq.) of chapter 32 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

## AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 101-513 inserted “, and of any defense articles with respect to which the President submits a certification under section 2776(b) of this title.” after “law”.

1985—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99-83, § 101(a), substituted provisions authorizing appropriations of \$5,371,000,000 for fiscal years 1986 and 1987, for provisions authorizing appropriations of \$800,000,000 for fiscal years 1982 and 1983.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 99-83, § 101(b), amended subsec. (b) generally, substituting provisions relating to maximum amount of credits authorized for fiscal years 1986 and 1987 and maximum amounts of such credits available at concessional rates of interest for such years, for provisions relating to maximum amounts of credits (or participations in credits) and loans guaranteed for fiscal years 1982 and 1983, and credit, etc., programs with respect to specific countries.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 99-83, § 101(b), amended subsec. (c) generally, substituting provisions relating to extended repayment terms for credits provided for fiscal years 1986 and 1987, for provisions relating to funds made available for fiscal year 1984 to finance procurement of defense articles, etc., by Israel.

1983—Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 98-151 amended par. (3) generally, substituting provisions authorizing not less than \$1,700,000,000 for fiscal year 1984 as available to Israel, of which not less than \$850,000,000 shall be available as credits under section 2763 of this title, and provisions relating to availability of funds part of the total aggregate credit ceiling made available to Israel, for provisions authorizing not less than \$1,400,000,000 for the fiscal years 1982 and 1983 as available to Israel, of which not less than \$550,000,000 for each year shall be available as credits.

Subsec. (b)(5). Pub. L. 98-151 substituted “1984” for “1982 and for the fiscal year 1983”.

Subsec. (b)(6). Pub. L. 98-151 amended par. (6) generally, inserting provisions relating to availability to Egypt for fiscal year 1984 of not less than \$900,000,000 of the total principal amount of loans guaranteed, and substituting provisions authorizing not less than \$465,000,000 for fiscal year 1984, for provisions authorizing not less than \$200,000,000 for fiscal years 1982 and 1983.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 98-151 substituted provisions relating to applicability to fiscal year 1984, for provisions relating to applicability to fiscal years 1982 and 1983, and substituted “\$850,000,000” for “\$550,000,000”.

1981—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 97-113, § 105(a), substituted “\$800,000,000 for the fiscal year 1982 and \$800,000,000 for the fiscal year 1983” for “\$500,000,000 for the fiscal year 1981”.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 97-113, § 105(b), prescribed in par. (1) \$800,000,000 limit on credits for fiscal years 1982 and 1983, striking out \$500,000,000 limit for fiscal year 1981, in par. (2) \$3,269,525,000 limit on total principal amount of guaranteed loans for fiscal years 1982 and 1983, striking out \$2,616,000,000 limit for fiscal year 1981, and in par. (3) \$1,400,000,000 minimum for Israel in fiscal years 1982 and 1983, the same sum made available for fiscal year 1981, including requirement of \$550,000,000 minimum of such funds for such fiscal years as credits under section 2763 of this title, striking out requirement for Israeli use of \$200,000,000 of available funds only for relocation costs from the Sinai, and added pars. (4) to (7).

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 97-113, § 105(c)(1)-(3), substituted “fiscal year 1982 and for the fiscal year 1983” for “fiscal year 1981”, “\$550,000,000” for “\$500,000,000”, and “each such year” for “such year”.

1980—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 96-533, §§ 104(d), 106(a), placed a limit on extension of credits and loan guarantees not to exceed amount established in appropriation

<sup>1</sup> So in original. The period after “title” probably should not appear.

of funds to carry out this chapter and substituted “\$500,000,000 for the fiscal year 1981” for “\$673,500,000 for the fiscal year 1980”.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 96-533, §106(b), in revising subsec. (b), substituted par. (1) and (2) limits on amount of credits or participations in credits and loan guaranties for fiscal year 1981 in amounts of \$500,000,000 and \$2,616,000,000 for prior combined sum limited to \$2,235,000,000 for fiscal year 1980 and substituted par. (3) earmarking minimum of \$1,400,000,000 only for Israel for fiscal year 1981, including availability of \$200,000,000 for costs associated with relocation of Israeli forces from the Sinai for prior prescription of minimum sum of \$1,000,000,000 as available only for Israel.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 96-533, §§105(b)(3), 106(c), substituted “defense articles, defense services, and design and construction services” for “defense articles and defense services” in two places, “1981” for “1980” in two places, and “\$500,000,000” for “one-half”.

1979—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 96-92, §17(a)(1), substituted “\$673,500,000 for the fiscal year 1980” for “\$682,000,000 for the fiscal year 1978 and \$674,300,000 for the fiscal year 1979”.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 96-92, §17(a)(2), substituted “\$2,235,000,000 for the fiscal year 1980, of which” for “\$2,152,350,000 for the fiscal year 1978 and \$2,085,500,000 for the fiscal year 1979, of which amount for each such year”.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 96-92, §17(a)(3), substituted “fiscal year 1980” for “fiscal year 1979”.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 96-92, §17(a)(4), substituted “\$250,000,000” for “\$150,000,000”.

1978—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 95-384, §20(a), substituted “\$682,000,000 for the fiscal year 1978 and \$674,300,000 for the fiscal year 1979” for “\$677,000,000 for the fiscal year 1978”.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 95-384, §20(b), substituted “\$2,152,350,000 for the fiscal year 1978 and \$2,085,500,000 for the fiscal year 1979, of which amount for each such year” for “\$2,102,350,000 for the fiscal year 1978, of which”.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 95-384, §20(c), substituted “fiscal year 1979” for “fiscal year 1978”.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 95-384, §20(d), substituted “\$150,000,000” for “\$100,000,000”.

1977—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 95-92, §19(1), substituted “\$677,000,000 for the fiscal year 1978” for “\$1,039,000,000 for the fiscal year 1976 and not to exceed \$740,000,000 for the fiscal year 1977”.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 95-92, §19(2), substituted “\$2,102,350,000 for the fiscal year 1978” for “\$2,374,700,000 for the fiscal year 1976, of which not less than \$1,500,000,000 shall be available only for Israel, and shall not exceed \$2,022,100,000 for the fiscal year 1977”.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 95-92, §19(3), substituted “year 1978” for “years 1976 and 1977” and struck out “each” before “such year”.

1976—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94-329, §210(a), substituted provisions authorizing appropriations not to exceed \$1,039,000,000 for the fiscal year 1976 and not to exceed \$740,000,000 for the fiscal year 1977, for provisions authorizing appropriations not to exceed \$405,000,000 for the fiscal year 1975.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 94-329, §210(b), substituted provisions setting out the foreign military sales credit ceiling of \$2,374,700,000 for the fiscal year 1976, of which not less than \$1,500,000,000 shall be available only for Israel, and \$2,022,100,000 for the fiscal year 1977, of which not less than \$1,000,000,000 shall be available only for Israel, for provisions setting out such ceiling of \$872,500,000 for the fiscal year 1975, of which amount not less than \$300,000,000 shall be available to Israel only, and struck out provisions relating to obligation of \$100,000,000 for financing procurement of defense articles and services by Israel and for release of Israel from contractual liability to repay United States Government for the defense article and services so financed.

Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 94-329, §210(c)(1), added subsecs. (c) and (d).

1974—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 93-559, §45(a)(6), substituted “\$405,000,000 for the fiscal year 1975” for “\$325,000,000 for the fiscal year 1974”.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 93-559, §45(a)(7), substituted “\$872,500,000 for the fiscal year 1975” for “\$730,000,000 for the fiscal year 1974” and provided for obligation of \$100,000,000 for financing procurement of defense articles and defense services by Israel and for release of Israel from contractual liability to repay the United States Government for the defense articles and defense services so financed.

1973—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 93-189, §25(5), substituted provision authorizing appropriation of not more than \$325,000,000 for the fiscal year 1974, for provision authorizing appropriation of not more than \$400,000,000 for the fiscal year 1972.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 93-189, §25(6), substituted provisions setting out the foreign military sales credit ceiling of \$730,000,000 for the fiscal year 1974, of which amount not less than \$300,000,000 shall be made available to Israel, for provisions setting out such ceiling of \$550,000,000 for the fiscal year 1972, of which amount not less than \$300,000,000 shall be made available to Israel, and such amount to exclude credits covered by guaranties issued under section 2764(b) of this title.

1972—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 92-226, §401(a), substituted provision authorizing appropriation of not more than \$400,000,000 for the fiscal year 1972, for provisions authorizing appropriation of not more than \$250,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 1970 and 1971.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 92-226, §401(b), substituted provisions setting out the foreign military sales credit ceiling of \$550,000,000 for the fiscal year 1972, of which amount not less than \$300,000,000 shall be made available to Israel, for provisions setting out such ceiling of \$340,000,000 for the fiscal years 1970 and 1971.

1971—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 91-672, §2(1), substituted provisions authorizing appropriation of not more than \$250,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 1970 and 1971 for provisions authorizing appropriation of not more than \$296,000,000 for the fiscal year 1969.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 91-672, §2(2), substituted provisions setting out the foreign military sales credit ceiling of \$340,000,000 for the fiscal years 1970 and 1971 for provisions setting out such ceiling of \$296,000,000 for the fiscal year 1969.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

#### CEILINGS ON LOANS FOR GREECE, SUDAN, AND TURKEY, FISCAL YEAR 1980; REPAYMENT PERIOD; GRACE PERIOD FOR REPAYMENT OF PRINCIPAL

Section 17(b) of Pub. L. 96-92 provided that: “Of the principal amount of loans guaranteed for the fiscal year 1980 under section 24 of the Arms Export Control Act [section 2764 of this title]—

“(1) with respect to Turkey, not to exceed \$50,000,000,

“(2) with respect to Greece, not to exceed \$42,000,000, and

“(3) with respect to Sudan, not to exceed \$25,000,000, shall be repaid in not less than 20 years, following a grace period of 10 years on repayment of principal.”

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2442, 3402 of this title.

#### § 2772. Repealed. Pub. L. 102-429, title I, § 112(e), Oct. 21, 1992, 106 Stat. 2195

Section, Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 3, §32, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1325, prohibited certain military export financing by Export-Import Bank.

#### § 2773. Restraint in arms sales to Sub-Saharan Africa

It is the sense of the Congress that the problems of Sub-Saharan Africa are primarily those

of economic development and that United States policy should assist in limiting the development of costly military conflict in that region. Therefore, the President shall exercise restraint in selling defense articles and defense services, and in providing financing for sales of defense articles and defense services, to countries in Sub-Saharan Africa.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 3, §33, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1325; Pub. L. 91-672, §3, Jan. 12, 1971, 84 Stat. 2053; Pub. L. 92-226, pt. IV, §401(c), (d), Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 32; Pub. L. 93-189, §25(7)-(9), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 731; Pub. L. 93-559, §45(a)(8), Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1815; Pub. L. 96-92, §18, Oct. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 709.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1979—Pub. L. 96-92 substituted provisions respecting restraint in arms sales to Sub-Saharan Africa for provisions imposing regional ceilings on foreign military sales to African countries and Presidential waiver and report thereof to Congress.

1974—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 93-559, §45(a)(8)(A), (B), repealed subsec. (a) which prescribed a ceiling of \$150,000,000 in each fiscal year on the total amount of military assistance, credits, participations in credits, guaranteed loans, and loans and sales under section 7307 of Title 10, for Latin American countries, and redesignated subsec. (b) as (a).

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 93-559, §45(a)(8)(B), (C), added subsec. (b) and redesignated former subsec. (b) as (a).

1973—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 93-189, §25(7), struck out reference to cash sales pursuant to sections 2761 and 2762 of this title reference to exclusion of credits covered by guaranties issued under section 2764(b) of this title, and reference to the face amount of contracts of guaranty issued under section 2764(a) and (b) of this title, inserted reference to the principal amount of loans guaranteed under section 2764(a) of this title, and substituted “\$150,000,000” for “\$100,000,000”.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 93-189, §25(8), struck out reference to cash sales pursuant to sections 2761 and 2762 of this title, reference to exclusion of credits covered by guaranties issued under section 2764(b) of this title, and reference to the face amount of contracts of guaranty issued under section 2764(a) and (b) of this title, and inserted reference to the principal amount of loans guaranteed under section 2764(a) of this title.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 93-189, §25(9), struck out subsec. (c) which provided for Presidential waiver of limitations on amounts authorized under this section and set forth geographical limitations on the aggregate amounts of military assistance to be made available and percentage deviations from such ceiling amounts.

1972—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 92-226, §401(c), substituted “\$100,000,000” for “\$75,000,000”.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 92-226, §401(d), substituted provisions for waiver of limitations when overriding requirements of the national security of the United States justify waiver for prior provisions for such a waiver when important to the security of the United States, required a written report with reasons for findings and statement in detail of expenditures when in excess of applicable geographical limitations, and prescribed percentage limitation for exceeding aggregate of geographical ceiling limitation.

1971—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 91-672, §3(1), made fiscal year 1969 ceiling of \$75,000,000 for Latin American countries a continuing ceiling applicable in each fiscal year.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 91-672, §3(2), made fiscal year 1969 ceiling of \$40,000,000 for African countries a continuing ceiling applicable in each fiscal year.

#### § 2774. Foreign military sales credit standards

The President shall establish standards and criteria for credit and guaranty transactions

under sections 2763 and 2764 of this title in accordance with the foreign, national security, and financial policies of the United States.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 3, §34, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1325.)

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of State, with prior concurrence of Secretary of Defense and Secretary of the Treasury required to extent standards and criteria for credit and guaranty transactions are based upon national security or financial policies, by section 1(h) of Ex. Ord. No. 11958, Jan. 18, 1977, 42 F.R. 4311, as amended, set out as a note under section 2751 of this title.

#### § 2775. Foreign military sales to less developed countries

(a) When the President finds that any economically less developed country is diverting development assistance furnished pursuant to the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as amended [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.], or sales under the Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954, as amended [7 U.S.C. 1691 et seq.], to military expenditures, or is diverting its own resources to unnecessary military expenditures, to a degree which materially interferes with its development, such country shall be immediately ineligible for further sales and guarantees under sections 2761, 2762, 2763, and 2764 of this title, until the President is assured that such diversion will no longer take place.

(b) Repealed. Pub. L. 93-559, §45(a)(5), Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1814.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 3, §35, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1325; Pub. L. 93-559, §45(a)(5), Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1814.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as amended, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 32 (§2151 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

The Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954, as amended, referred to in subsec. (a), is act July 10, 1954, ch. 469, 68 Stat. 454, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 41 (§1691 et seq.) of Title 7, Agriculture. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1691 of Title 7, and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1974—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 93-559 repealed subsec. (b) which provided for Presidential reports to Congress respecting sales and guaranties to less developed countries.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under subsec. (a) of this section delegated to Secretary of State by section 1(i) of Ex. Ord. No. 11958, Jan. 18, 1977, 42 F.R. 4311, as amended, set out as a note under section 2751 of this title.

#### § 2776. Reports and certifications to Congress on military exports

##### (a) Report by President; contents

The President shall transmit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and to the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of

the Senate not more than sixty days after the end of each quarter an unclassified report (except that any material which was transmitted in classified form under subsection (b)(1) or (c)(1) of this section may be contained in a classified addendum to such report, and any letter of offer referred to in paragraph (1) of this subsection may be listed in such addendum unless such letter of offer has been the subject of an unclassified certification pursuant to subsection (b)(1) of this section, and any information provided under paragraph (11) of this subsection may also be provided in a classified addendum) containing—

(1) a listing of all letters of offer to sell any major defense equipment for \$1,000,000 or more under this chapter to each foreign country and international organization, by category, if such letters of offer have not been accepted or canceled;

(2) a listing of all such letters of offer that have been accepted during the fiscal year in which such report is submitted, together with the total value of all defense articles and defense services sold to each foreign country and international organization during such fiscal year;

(3) the cumulative dollar amounts, by foreign country and international organization, of sales credit agreements under section 2763 of this title and guaranty agreements under section 2764 of this title made during the fiscal year in which such report is submitted;

(4) a numbered listing of all licenses and approvals for the export to each foreign country and international organization during such fiscal year of commercially sold major defense equipment, by category, sold for \$1,000,000 or more, together with the total value of all defense articles and defense services so licensed for each foreign country and international organization, setting forth with respect to the listed major defense equipment—

(A) the items to be exported under the license,

(B) the quantity and contract price of each such item to be furnished, and

(C) the name and address of the ultimate user of each such item;

(5) projections of the dollar amounts, by foreign country and international organization, of sales expected to be made under sections 2761 and 2762 of this title in the quarter of the fiscal year immediately following the quarter for which such report is submitted;

(6) a projection with respect to all sales expected to be made to each country and organization for the remainder of the fiscal year in which such report is transmitted;

(7) an estimate of—

(A) the number of United States military personnel, the number of United States Government civilian personnel, and the number of United States civilian contract personnel, who were in each foreign country at the end of that quarter, and

(B) the number of members of each such category of personnel who were in each foreign country at any time during that quarter,

in implementation of sales and commercial exports under this chapter or of assistance under

chapter 2, 5, 6, or 8 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2311 et seq., 2347 et seq., 2348 et seq., 2349aa et seq.], including both personnel assigned to the country and personnel temporarily in the country by detail or otherwise;

(8) a description of each payment, contribution, gift, commission, or fee reported to the Secretary of State under section 2779 of this title, including (A) the name of the person who made such payment, contribution, gift, commission, or fee; (B) the name of any sales agent or other person to whom such payment, contribution, gift, commission, or fee was paid; (C) the date and amount of such payment, contribution, gift, commission, or fee; (D) a description of the sale in connection with which such payment, contribution, gift, commission, or fee was paid; and (E) the identification of any business information considered confidential by the person submitting it which is included in the report;

(9) a listing of each sale under section 2769 of this title during the quarter for which such report is made, specifying (A) the purchaser, (B) the United States Government department or agency responsible for implementing the sale, (C) an estimate of the dollar amount of the sale, and (D) a general description of the real property facilities to be constructed pursuant to such sale;

(10) a listing of the consents to third-party transfers of defense articles or defense services which were granted, during the quarter for which such report is submitted, for purposes of section 2753(a)(2) of this title, the regulations issued under section 2778 of this title, or section 505(a)(1)(B) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2314(a)(1)(B)], if the value (in terms of original acquisition cost) of the defense articles or defense services to be transferred is \$1,000,000 or more; and

(11) a listing of all munitions items (as defined in section 2780(l)(1) of this title) which were sold, leased, or otherwise transferred by the Department of Defense to any other department, agency, or other entity of the United States Government during the quarter for which such report is submitted (including the name of the recipient Government entity and a discussion of what that entity will do with those munitions items) if—

(A) the value of the munitions items was \$250,000 or more; or

(B) the value of all munitions items transferred to that Government department, agency, or other entity during that quarter was \$250,000 or more;

excluding munitions items transferred (i) for disposition or use solely within the United States, or (ii) for use in connection with intelligence activities subject to reporting requirements under title V of the National Security Act of 1947 (50 U.S.C. 413 et seq.; relating to congressional oversight of intelligence activities).

For each letter of offer to sell under paragraphs (1) and (2), the report shall specify (i) the foreign country or international organization to which the defense article or service is offered or was

sold, as the case may be; (ii) the dollar amount of the offer to sell or the sale and the number of defense articles offered or sold, as the case may be; (iii) a description of the defense article or service offered or sold, as the case may be; and (iv) the United States Armed Force or other agency of the United States which is making the offer to sell or the sale, as the case may be.

**(b) Letter of offer to sell defense articles, services, design and construction services, or major equipment; submission of numbered Presidential certification and additional statement; contents; emergency justification statement; enhancements or upgrades in sensitivity of technology or capability of major defense articles, equipment, or services**

(1) In the case of any letter of offer to sell any defense articles or services under this chapter for \$50,000,000 or more, any design and construction services for \$200,000,000 or more, or any major defense equipment for \$14,000,000 or more, before such letter of offer is issued, the President shall submit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and to the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate a numbered certification with respect to such offer to sell containing the information specified in clauses (i) through (iv) of subsection (a) of this section, or (in the case of a sale of design and construction services) the information specified in clauses (A) through (D) of paragraph (9) of subsection (a) of this section, and a description, containing the information specified in paragraph (8) of subsection (a) of this section, of any contribution, gift, commission, or fee paid or offered or agreed to be paid in order to solicit, promote, or otherwise to secure such letter of offer. Such numbered certifications shall also contain an item, classified if necessary, identifying the sensitivity of technology contained in the defense articles, defense services, or design and construction services, proposed to be sold, and a detailed justification of the reasons necessitating the sale of such articles or services in view of the sensitivity of such technology. In a case in which such articles or services listed on the Missile Technology Control Regime Annex are intended to support the design, development, or production of a Category I space launch vehicle system (as defined in section 2797c of this title), such report shall include a description of the proposed export and rationale for approving such export, including the consistency of such export with United States missile nonproliferation policy. Each such numbered certification shall contain an item indicating whether any offset agreement is proposed to be entered into in connection with such letter of offer to sell (if known on the date of transmittal of such certification). In addition, the President shall, upon the request of such committee or the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives, transmit promptly to both such committees a statement setting forth, to the extent specified in such request—

(A) a detailed description of the defense articles, defense services, or design and construction services to be offered, including a brief description of the capabilities of any defense article to be offered;

(B) an estimate of the number of officers and employees of the United States Government and of United States civilian contract personnel expected to be needed in such country to carry out the proposed sale;

(C) the name of each contractor expected to provide the defense article, defense service, or design and construction service proposed to be sold and a description from such contractor of any offset agreements proposed to be entered into in connection with such sale (if known on the date of transmittal of such statement);

(D) an evaluation, prepared by the Director of the Arms Control and Disarmament Agency in consultation with the Secretary of State and the Secretary of Defense, of the manner, if any, in which the proposed sale would—

- (i) contribute to an arms race;
- (ii) support international terrorism;
- (iii) increase the possibility of an outbreak or escalation of conflict;
- (iv) prejudice the negotiation of any arms controls; or
- (v) adversely affect the arms control policy of the United States;

(E) the reasons why the foreign country or international organization to which the sale is proposed to be made needs the defense articles, defense services, or design and construction services which are the subject of such sale and a description of how such country or organization intends to use such defense articles, defense services, or design and construction services;

(F) an analysis by the President of the impact of the proposed sale on the military stocks and the military preparedness of the United States;

(G) the reasons why the proposed sale is in the national interest of the United States;

(H) an analysis by the President of the impact of the proposed sale on the military capabilities of the foreign country or international organization to which such sale would be made;

(I) an analysis by the President of how the proposed sale would affect the relative military strengths of countries in the region to which the defense articles, defense services, or design and construction services which are the subject of such sale would be delivered and whether other countries in the region have comparable kinds and amounts of defense articles, defense services, or design and construction services;

(J) an estimate of the levels of trained personnel and maintenance facilities of the foreign country or international organization to which the sale would be made which are needed and available to utilize effectively the defense articles, defense services, or design and construction services proposed to be sold;

(K) an analysis of the extent to which comparable kinds and amounts of defense articles, defense services, or design and construction services are available from other countries;

(L) an analysis of the impact of the proposed sale on United States relations with the countries in the region to which the defense articles, defense services, or design and construction services which are the subject of such sale would be delivered;

(M) a detailed description of any agreement proposed to be entered into by the United States for the purchase or acquisition by the United States of defense articles, defense services, design and construction services, or defense equipment, or other articles, services, or equipment of the foreign country or international organization in connection with, or as consideration for, such letter of offer, including an analysis of the impact of such proposed agreement upon United States business concerns which might otherwise have provided such articles, services, or equipment to the United States, an estimate of the costs to be incurred by the United States in connection with such agreement compared with costs which would otherwise have been incurred, an estimate of the economic impact and unemployment which would result from entering into such proposed agreement, and an analysis of whether such costs and such domestic economic impact justify entering into such proposed agreement;

(N) the projected delivery dates of the defense articles, defense services, or design and construction services to be offered;

(O) a detailed description of weapons and levels of munitions that may be required as support for the proposed sale; and

(P) an analysis of the relationship of the proposed sale to projected procurements of the same item.

A certification transmitted pursuant to this subsection shall be unclassified, except that the information specified in clause (i) and the details of the description specified in clause (iii) of subsection (a) of this section may be classified if the public disclosure thereof would be clearly detrimental to the security of the United States. The letter of offer shall not be issued, with respect to a proposed sale to the North Atlantic Treaty Organization, any member country of such Organization, Japan, Australia, or New Zealand, if the Congress, within fifteen calendar days after receiving such certification, or with respect to a proposed sale to any other country or organization, if the Congress within thirty calendar days after receiving such certification, enacts a joint resolution prohibiting the proposed sale, unless the President states in his certification that an emergency exists which requires such sale in the national security interests of the United States. If the President states in his certification that an emergency exists which requires the proposed sale in the national security interest of the United States, thus waiving the congressional review requirements of this subsection, he shall set forth in the certification a detailed justification for his determination, including a description of the emergency circumstances which necessitate the immediate issuance of the letter of offer and a discussion of the national security interests involved.

(2) Any such joint resolution shall be considered in the Senate in accordance with the provisions of section 601(b) of the International Security Assistance and Arms Export Control Act of 1976, except that for purposes of consideration of any joint resolution with respect to the North Atlantic Treaty Organization, any member

country of such Organization, Japan, Australia, or New Zealand, it shall be in order in the Senate to move to discharge a committee to which such joint resolution was referred if such committee has not reported such joint resolution at the end of five calendar days after its introduction.

(3) For the purpose of expediting the consideration and enactment of joint resolutions under this subsection, a motion to proceed to the consideration of any such joint resolution after it has been reported by the appropriate committee shall be treated as highly privileged in the House of Representatives.

(4) In addition to the other information required to be contained in a certification submitted to the Congress under this subsection, each such certification shall cite any quarterly report submitted pursuant to section 2768 of this title which listed a price and availability estimate, or a request for the issuance of a letter of offer, which was a basis for the proposed sale which is the subject of such certification.

(5)(A) If, before the delivery of any major defense article or major defense equipment, or the furnishing of any defense service or design and construction service, sold pursuant to a letter of offer described in paragraph (1), the sensitivity of technology or the capability of the article, equipment, or service is enhanced or upgraded from the level of sensitivity or capability described in the numbered certification with respect to an offer to sell such article, equipment, or service, then, at least 45 days before the delivery of such article or equipment or the furnishing of such service, the President shall prepare and transmit to the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate a report—

(i) describing the manner in which the technology or capability has been enhanced or upgraded and describing the significance of such enhancement or upgrade; and

(ii) setting forth a detailed justification for such enhancement or upgrade.

(B) The provisions of subparagraph (A) apply to an article or equipment delivered, or a service furnished, within ten years after the transmittal to the Congress of a numbered certification with respect to the sale of such article, equipment, or service.

(C) If the enhancement or upgrade in the sensitivity of technology or the capability of major defense equipment, defense articles, defense services, or design and construction services described in a numbered certification submitted under this subsection costs \$14,000,000 or more in the case of any major defense equipment, \$50,000,000 or more in the case of defense articles or defense services, or \$200,000,000 or more in the case of design or construction services, then the President shall submit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate a new numbered certification which relates to such enhancement or upgrade and which shall be considered for purposes of this subsection as if it were a separate letter of offer to sell defense equipment, articles, or services, subject to all of the requirements, restrictions, and conditions

set forth in this subsection. For purposes of this subparagraph, references in this subsection to sales shall be deemed to be references to enhancements or upgrades in the sensitivity of technology or the capability of major defense equipment, articles, or services, as the case may be.

(D) For the purposes of subparagraph (A), the term “major defense article” shall be construed to include electronic devices, which if upgraded, would enhance the mission capability of a weapons system.

**(c) Application for export license; submission of numbered Presidential certification and statement to Congress; contents; emergency circumstances; joint resolution; exception**

(1) In the case of an application by a person (other than with regard to a sale under section 2761 or section 2762 of this title) for a license for the export of any major defense equipment sold under a contract in the amount of \$14,000,000 or more or of defense articles or defense services sold under a contract in the amount of \$50,000,000 or more, before issuing such license the President shall transmit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and to the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate an unclassified numbered certification with respect to such application specifying (A) the foreign country or international organization to which such export will be made, (B) the dollar amount of the items to be exported, and (C) a description of the items to be exported. Each such numbered certification shall also contain an item indicating whether any offset agreement is proposed to be entered into in connection with such export (if known on the date of transmittal of such certification). In addition, the President shall, upon the request of such committee or the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives, transmit promptly to both such committees a statement setting forth, to the extent specified in such request, a description of the capabilities of the items to be exported, an estimate of the total number of United States personnel expected to be needed in the foreign country concerned in connection with the items to be exported and an analysis of the arms control impact pertinent to such application, prepared in consultation with the Secretary of Defense and a description from the person who has submitted the license application of any offset agreement proposed to be entered into in connection with such export (if known on the date of transmittal of such statement). In a case in which such articles or services are listed on the Missile Technology Control Regime Annex and are intended to support the design, development, or production of a Category I space launch vehicle system (as defined in section 2797c of this title), such report shall include a description of the proposed export and rationale for approving such export, including the consistency of such export with United States missile nonproliferation policy. A certification transmitted pursuant to this subsection shall be unclassified, except that the information specified in clause (B) and the details of the description specified in clause (C) may be classified if the public disclosure thereof would

be clearly detrimental to the security of the United States.

(2) Unless the President states in his certification that an emergency exists which requires the proposed export in the national security interests of the United States, a license for export described in paragraph (1)—

(A) shall not be issued until at least 30 calendar days after the Congress receives such certification; and

(B) shall not be issued then if the Congress, within such 30-day period, enacts a joint resolution prohibiting the proposed export, except that this subparagraph does not apply with respect to a license issued for an export to the North Atlantic Treaty Organization, any member country of that Organization, Japan, Australia, or New Zealand.

If the President states in his certification that an emergency exists which requires the proposed export in the national security interests of the United States, thus waiving the requirements of subparagraphs (A) and (B) of this paragraph, he shall set forth in the certification a detailed justification for his determination, including a description of the emergency circumstances which necessitate the immediate issuance of the export license and a discussion of the national security interests involved.

(3)(A) Any joint resolution under this subsection shall be considered in the Senate in accordance with the provisions of section 601(b) of the International Security Assistance and Arms Export Control Act of 1976.

(B) For the purpose of expediting the consideration and enactment of joint resolutions under this subsection, a motion to proceed to the consideration of any such joint resolution after it has been reported by the appropriate committee shall be treated as highly privileged in the House of Representatives.

**(d) Commercial technical assistance or manufacturing licensing agreements with non-North Atlantic Treaty Organization member countries; submission of Presidential certification; contents**

In the case of an approval under section 2778 of this title of a United States commercial technical assistance or manufacturing licensing agreement for or in a country not a member of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization which involves the manufacture abroad of any item of significant combat equipment on the United States Munitions List, before such approval is given, the President shall submit a certification with respect to such proposed commercial agreement in a manner similar to the certification required under subsection (c)(1) of this section containing comparable information, except that the last sentence of such subsection shall not apply to certifications submitted pursuant to this subsection.

**(e) Definitions**

For purposes of this section—

(1) the term “offset agreement” means an agreement, arrangement, or understanding between a United States supplier of defense articles or defense services and a foreign country under which the supplier agrees to purchase or

acquire, or to promote the purchase or acquisition by other United States persons of, goods or services produced, manufactured, grown, or extracted, in whole or in part, in that foreign country in consideration for the purchase by the foreign country of defense articles or defense service from the supplier; and

(2) the term “United States person” means—

(A) an individual who is a national or permanent resident alien of the United States; and

(B) any corporation, business association, partnership, trust, or other juridical entity—

(i) organized under the laws of the United States or any State, district, territory, or possession thereof; or

(ii) owned or controlled in fact by individuals described in subparagraph (A).

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 3, §36, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1326; Pub. L. 93-189, §25(10), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 731; Pub. L. 93-559, §45(a)(5), Dec. 30, 1974, 88 Stat. 1814; Pub. L. 94-329, title II, §211(a), title VI, §604(a), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 740, 766; Pub. L. 95-384, §21, Sept. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 741; Pub. L. 96-92, §§16(b), 19(a), (c), 20(b), Oct. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 708-710; Pub. L. 96-533, title I, §§105(c), (d), 107(b), 109(f), Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3134, 3136, 3138; Pub. L. 97-113, title I, §§101(c)-(e), 102(b), 109(d)(2), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1520, 1526; Pub. L. 99-83, title I, §§117, 118, title XII, §1209(c), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 202, 203, 279; Pub. L. 99-247, §1(b), (c), Feb. 12, 1986, 100 Stat. 9; Pub. L. 101-222, §§3(b), 7, Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1896, 1899; Pub. L. 103-236, title VII, §§732, 735(a), (b), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 503, 505, 506; Pub. L. 103-437, §9(a)(7), Nov. 2, 1994, 108 Stat. 4588.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (a)(7), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended. Chapters 2, 5, 6, or 8 of part II of that Act are classified generally to parts II (§2311 et seq.), V (§2347 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.), respectively, of subchapter II of chapter 32 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

The National Security Act of 1947, referred to in subsec. (a)(11), is act July 26, 1947, ch. 343, 61 Stat. 495, as amended. Title V of the National Security Act of 1947 is classified generally to subchapter III (§413 et seq.) of chapter 15 of Title 50, War and National Defense. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 401 of Title 50 and Tables.

Section 601(b) of the International Security Assistance and Arms Export Control Act of 1976, referred to in subssecs. (b)(2) and (c)(3)(A), is section 601(b) of Pub. L. 94-329, June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 729, which made provision for expedited procedures in the Senate, and was not classified to the Code.

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 103-437 substituted “Foreign Affairs” for “International Relations”.

Pub. L. 103-236, §§732(a)(1), 735(a), inserted after second sentence “In a case in which such articles or services listed on the Missile Technology Control Regime Annex are intended to support the design, development, or production of a Category I space launch vehicle system (as defined in section 2797c of this title), such report shall include a description of the proposed export and rationale for approving such export, including the

consistency of such export with United States missile nonproliferation policy. Each such numbered certification shall contain an item indicating whether any offset agreement is proposed to be entered into in connection with such letter of offer to sell (if known on the date of transmittal of such certification).”

Subsec. (b)(1)(C). Pub. L. 103-236, §732(a)(2), inserted “and a description from such contractor of any offset agreements proposed to be entered into in connection with such sale” after “sold”.

Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 103-437 substituted “Foreign Affairs” for “International Relations”.

Pub. L. 103-236, §735(b), which directed amendment of par. (1) by inserting after “in consultation with the Secretary of Defense.” the following new sentence: “In a case in which such articles or services are listed on the Missile Technology Control Regime Annex and are intended to support the design, development, or production of a Category I space launch vehicle system (as defined in section 2797c of this title), such report shall include a description of the proposed export and rationale for approving such export, including the consistency of such export with United States missile nonproliferation policy.”, was executed by making the insertion after “in consultation with the Secretary of Defense and a description from the person who has submitted the license application of any offset agreement proposed to be entered into in connection with such export (if known on the date of transmittal of such statement).” to reflect the probable intent of Congress and the intervening amendment by Pub. L. 103-236, §732(b)(2). See below.

Pub. L. 103-236, §732(b)(2), inserted “and a description from the person who has submitted the license application of any offset agreement proposed to be entered into in connection with such export (if known on the date of transmittal of such statement)” after “Secretary of Defense”.

Pub. L. 103-236, §732(b)(1), inserted after first sentence “Each such numbered certification shall also contain an item indicating whether any offset agreement is proposed to be entered into in connection with such export (if known on the date of transmittal of such certification).”

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 103-236, §732(c), added subsec. (e). 1989—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 101-222, §7(b), inserted “, and any information provided under paragraph (11) of this subsection may also be provided in a classified addendum” after “(b)(1) of this section” in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (a)(10), (11). Pub. L. 101-222, §7(a), added pars. (10) and (11).

Subsec. (b)(1)(D)(ii) to (v). Pub. L. 101-222, §3(b), added cl. (ii) and redesignated former cls. (ii) through (iv) as (iii) through (v), respectively.

1986—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 99-247, §1(b)(1), substituted “enacts a joint resolution prohibiting” for “adopts a concurrent resolution stating that it objects to” in concluding provisions.

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 99-247, §1(b)(2), inserted “joint” before “resolution” in four places.

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 99-247, §1(b)(3), substituted “enactment of joint resolutions” for “adoption of concurrent resolutions” and “such joint resolution” for “such resolution”.

Subsec. (c)(2)(B). Pub. L. 99-247, §1(c)(1), substituted “enacts a joint resolution prohibiting” for “adopts a concurrent resolution stating that it objects to”.

Subsec. (c)(3)(A). Pub. L. 99-247, §1(c)(2), inserted “joint” before “resolution”.

Subsec. (c)(3)(B). Pub. L. 99-247, §1(c)(3), substituted “enactment of joint resolutions” for “adoption of concurrent resolutions” and “such joint resolution” for “such resolution”.

1985—Subsec. (a)(5). Pub. L. 99-83, §1209(c)(1), substituted “sales” for “cash sales” and struck out provisions relating to credits under section 2763 of this title and guaranty agreements under section 2764 of this title.

Subsec. (a)(6). Pub. L. 99-83, §1209(c)(2), substituted “sales expected to be made to” for “cash sales expected to be made and credits expected to be extended to”.



Subsec. (a)(7). Pub. L. 99-83, §117, amended par. (7) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (7) read as follows: "an estimate of the number of officers and employees of the United States Government and of United States civilian contract personnel present in each such country at the end of that quarter for assignments in implementation of sales and commercial exports under this chapter:".

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 99-83, §118(1), inserted requirement respecting detailed justification of reasons for sale of sensitive articles or services.

Subsec. (b)(5). Pub. L. 99-83, §118(2), added par. (5).

1981—Subsec. (a)(10). Pub. L. 97-113, §109(d)(2), struck out par. (10) which required that Presidential report to Congress contain a listing (classified if necessary) of property valued at \$1,000,000 or more which was leased, during the quarter for which a report was required, to a foreign government for a period of more than six months under section 2667 of title 10. See section 2796 et seq. of this title.

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 97-113, §§101(c), 102(b)(1), increased the certification requirement limits to \$50,000,000 and \$14,000,000 from \$25,000,000 and \$7,000,000 respecting offers to sell defense articles or services, and major defense equipment; and prescribed a fifteen-calendar-day period after receiving a certification for a concurrent resolution objecting to a proposed sale to the North Atlantic Treaty Organization, any member country of such Organization, Japan, Australia, or New Zealand, and made the existing thirty-calendar-day period applicable only with respect to a proposed sale to any other country or organization.

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 97-113, §102(b)(2), authorized a motion in the Senate for the discharge of the committee to which a resolution respecting the North Atlantic Treaty Organization, any member country of such Organization, Japan, Australia, or New Zealand was referred for failure to report the resolution at end of five calendar days after its introduction.

Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 97-113, §101(d), increased sales contract limits to \$14,000,000 and \$50,000,000 from \$7,000,000 and \$25,000,000 respecting sales of major defense equipment and defense articles or services.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 97-113, §101(e), substituted reference to subsec. "(c)(1)" for "(c)" of this section.

1980—Subsec. (a)(9), (10). Pub. L. 96-533, §§105(c), 109(f), added pars. (9) and (10).

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 96-533, §105(d), required certification respecting offer to sell any design and construction services for \$200,000,000 or more, required such certification to contain the information specified in subsec. (a)(9)(A)-(D) of this section, required such certification to contain an item identifying the sensitivity of technology contained in the design and construction services, and made subpar. (A), (C), (E), (I)-(N) provisions applicable to design and construction services.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 96-533, §107(b), designated existing provisions as par. (1), struck out "not less than 30 days" before "before issuing such license", redesignated as cls. (A) to (C) former pars. (1) to (3), and substituted "clause (B)" and "clause (C)" for "paragraph (1)" and "paragraph (2)", respectively, and added pars. (2) and (3).

1979—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 96-92, §19(a), increased to sixty from thirty days the period for submission of the President's report at end of each quarter and struck out par. (9) which required that the report contain an analysis and description of the services of Federal personnel under provisions relating to sales from stock, including numbers employed.

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 96-92, §§19(c), 20(b), required executive emergency justification statement and the numbered certifications to contain an item, classified if necessary, identifying the sensitivity of technology contained in the defense articles or defense services proposed to be sold.

Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 96-92, §16(b), added par. (4).

1978—Subsec. (b)(1)(D), (N) to (P). Pub. L. 95-384 in subpar. (D) substituted provisions requiring an evaluation relating to the proposed sale to be prepared by the

Director of the Arms Control and Disarmament Agency in consultation with the Secretary of State and the Secretary of Defense for provisions requiring an analysis of the arms control impact pertinent to the offer to sell prepared in consultation with the Secretary of Defense and added subpars. (N) to (P).

1976—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94-329, §§211(a), 604(a)(1), expanded existing provisions to provide for increased comprehensiveness of the quarterly reports on sales of defense articles or defense services, whether through governmental channels or commercial channels.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 94-329, §§211(a), 604(a)(2), increased from 20 days to 30 days the period allowed Congress to reject a proposed offer to sell defense articles or defense services and inserted provisions covering any major defense equipment for \$7,000,000 or more, requiring additional information with respect to any letter of offer to sell defense articles or defense services if requested by Congress and requiring that a certification be transmitted pursuant to this subsection in unclassified form unless public disclosure would be detrimental to the United States.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 94-329, §211(a), substituted provisions relating to application by person for license for export of any major defense equipment sold and contracted for \$7,000,000 or more or defense articles or defense services for \$25,000,000 or more, requiring the President to transmit to Congress an unclassified numbered certification with respect to such application, for provisions construing this section as not modifying in any way section 1934 of this title.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 94-329, §211(a), added subsec. (d).

1974—Subsecs. (a), (b). Pub. L. 93-559 added subsecs. (a) and (b).

1973—Pub. L. 93-189 struck out subsec. (a) which required the Secretary of State to transmit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate semiannual reports of all exports of significant defense articles on the United States munitions list to foreign governments, etc., and subsec. (b) which provided for the inclusion in the presentation material submitted to the Congress during consideration of amendments to this chapter or Acts appropriating funds under authority of this chapter annual tables showing the dollar value of cash and credit foreign military sales orders, commitments to order, etc.

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1976 AMENDMENT

Section 211(b) of Pub. L. 94-329 provided that: "The amendment made by subsection (a) of this section [amending this section] shall apply with respect to letters of offer for which a certification is transmitted pursuant to section 36(b) of the Arms Export Control Act [subsec. (b) of this section] on or after the date of enactment of this Act [June 30, 1976] and to export licenses for which an application is filed under section 38 of such Act [section 2778 of this title] on or after such date."

Section 604(c) of Pub. L. 94-329 provided that: "The amendments made by this section [amending this section and enacting section 2779 of this title] shall take effect sixty days after the date of enactment of this Act [June 30, 1976]."

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under subsecs. (a) and (b)(1) of this section, except with respect to certification of an

emergency under subsec. (b)(1), delegated to Secretary of Defense, with Secretary of Defense required to consult with other specific agencies in implementing certain delegated functions, by section 1(j) of Ex. Ord. No. 11958, Jan. 18, 1977, 42 F.R. 4311, as amended, set out as a note under section 2751 of this title.

Functions of President under subssecs. (c) and (d) of this section delegated to Secretary of State by section 1(k) of Ex. Ord. No. 11958.

NATIONAL DISCLOSURE POLICY FOR SENSITIVE WEAPONS TECHNOLOGY; REPORT TO CONGRESS

Section 20(a) of Pub. L. 96-92 directed President to undertake a thorough review of interagency procedures and disclosure criteria used by United States in determining whether sensitive weapons technology will be transferred to other countries, and not later than Feb. 15, 1980 to transmit a report to Congress setting forth the results of such review, together with such recommendations as are necessary to improve the current disclosure system, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(11), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2373, 2753, 2766, 2767, 2771, 3402 of this title.

**§ 2777. Fiscal provisions relating to foreign military sales credits**

**(a) Permissible uses of cash payments under sections 2761, 2762, 2763, and 2769**

Cash payments received under sections 2761, 2762, and 2769 of this title and advances received under section 2763 of this title shall be available solely for payments to suppliers (including the military departments) and refunds to purchasers and shall not be available for financing credits and guaranties.

**(b) Transfer of funds to miscellaneous receipts of Treasury**

Amounts received from foreign governments and international organizations as repayments for credits extended pursuant to section 2763 of this title, amounts received from the disposition of instruments evidencing indebtedness under section 2764(b) of this title (excluding such portion of the sales proceeds as may be required at the time of disposition to be obligated as a reserve for payment of claims under guaranties issued pursuant to section 2764(b) of this title, which sums are made available for such obligations), and other collections (including fees and interest) shall be transferred to the miscellaneous receipts of the Treasury.

**(c) Credit of funds to reserve under section 2764(c)**

Notwithstanding the provisions of subsection (b) of this section, to the extent that any of the funds constituting the reserve under section 2764(c) of this title are paid out for a claim arising out of a loan guaranteed under section 2764 of this title, amounts received from a foreign government or international organization after the date of such payment, with respect to such claim, shall be credited to such reserve, shall be merged with the funds in such reserve, and shall be available for any purpose for which funds in such reserve are available.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 3, § 37, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1326; Pub. L. 93-189, § 25(11), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 731; Pub. L. 96-533, title I, §§ 104(b), 105(e)(1), Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3133, 3135.)

AMENDMENTS

1980—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 96-533, § 105(e)(1), inserted reference to section 2769 of this title.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 96-533, § 104(b), added subsec. (c).

1973—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 93-189 inserted provisions relating to indebtedness under section 2764(b) of this title and exclusions of portions of the sales proceeds required at the time of disposition as a reserve for payment of claims under guaranties issued under section 2764(b) of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2291c of this title; title 10 section 114.

**§ 2778. Control of arms exports and imports**

**(a) Presidential control of exports and imports of defense articles and services, guidance of policy, etc.; designation of United States Munitions List; issuance of export licenses; condition for export; negotiations information**

(1) In furtherance of world peace and the security and foreign policy of the United States, the President is authorized to control the import and the export of defense articles and defense services and to provide foreign policy guidance to persons of the United States involved in the export and import of such articles and services. The President is authorized to designate those items which shall be considered as defense articles and defense services for the purposes of this section and to promulgate regulations for the import and export of such articles and services. The items so designated shall constitute the United States Munitions List.

(2) Decisions on issuing export licenses under this section shall be made in coordination with the Director of the United States Arms Control and Disarmament Agency, taking into account the Director's assessment as to whether the export of an article would contribute to an arms race, aid in the development of weapons of mass destruction, support international terrorism, increase the possibility of outbreak or escalation of conflict, or prejudice the development of bilateral or multilateral arms control or non-proliferation agreements or other arrangements. The Director of the Arms Control and Disarmament Agency is authorized, whenever the Director determines that the issuance of an export license under this section would be detrimental to the national security of the United States, to recommend to the President that such export license be disapproved.

(3) In exercising the authorities conferred by this section, the President may require that any defense article or defense service be sold under this chapter as a condition of its eligibility for export, and may require that persons engaged in the negotiation for the export of defense articles and services keep the President fully and currently informed of the progress and future prospects of such negotiations.

**(b) Registration and licensing requirements for manufacturers, exporters, or importers of designated defense articles and defense services**

(1)(A) As prescribed in regulations issued under this section, every person (other than an officer or employee of the United States Government acting in an official capacity) who engages

in the business of manufacturing, exporting, or importing any defense articles or defense services designated by the President under subsection (a)(1) of this section shall register with the United States Government agency charged with the administration of this section, and shall pay a registration fee which shall be prescribed by such regulations. Such regulations shall prohibit the return to the United States for sale in the United States (other than for the Armed Forces of the United States and its allies or for any State or local law enforcement agency) of any military firearms or ammunition of United States manufacture furnished to foreign governments by the United States under this chapter or any other foreign assistance or sales program of the United States, whether or not enhanced in value or improved in condition in a foreign country. This prohibition shall not extend to similar firearms that have been so substantially transformed as to become, in effect, articles of foreign manufacture.

(B)<sup>1</sup> The prohibition under such regulations required by the second sentence of subparagraph (A) shall not extend to any military firearms (or ammunition, components, parts, accessories, and attachments for such firearms) of United States manufacture furnished to any foreign government by the United States under this chapter or any other foreign assistance or sales program of the United States if—

(i) such firearms are among those firearms that the Secretary of the Treasury is, or was at any time, required to authorize the importation of by reason of the provisions of section 925(e) of title 18 (including the requirement for the listing of such firearms as curios or relics under section 921(a)(13) of that title); and

(ii) such foreign government certifies to the United States Government that such firearms are owned by such foreign government.

(B)<sup>1</sup> A copy of each registration made under this paragraph shall be transmitted to the Secretary of the Treasury for review regarding law enforcement concerns. The Secretary shall report to the President regarding such concerns as necessary.

(2) Except as otherwise specifically provided in regulations issued under subsection (a)(1) of this section, no defense articles or defense services designated by the President under subsection (a)(1) of this section may be exported or imported without a license for such export or import, issued in accordance with this chapter and regulations issued under this chapter, except that no license shall be required for exports or imports made by or for an agency of the United States Government (A) for official use by a department or agency of the United States Government, or (B) for carrying out any foreign assistance or sales program authorized by law and subject to the control of the President by other means.

(3)(A) For each of the fiscal years 1988 and 1989, \$250,000 of registration fees collected pursuant to paragraph (1) shall be credited to a Department of State account, to be available without fiscal year limitation. Fees credited to that account

shall be available only for the payment of expenses incurred for—

(i) contract personnel to assist in the evaluation of munitions control license applications, reduce processing time for license applications, and improve monitoring of compliance with the terms of licenses; and

(ii) the automation of munitions control functions and the processing of munitions control license applications, including the development, procurement, and utilization of computer equipment and related software.

(B) The authority of this paragraph may be exercised only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriation Acts.

**(c) Criminal violations; punishment**

Any person who willfully violates any provision of this section or section 2779 of this title, or any rule or regulation issued under either section, or who willfully, in a registration or license application or required report, makes any untrue statement of a material fact or omits to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading, shall upon conviction be fined for each violation not more than \$1,000,000 or imprisoned not more than ten years, or both.

**(d) Repealed. Pub. L. 96-70, title III, § 3303(a)(4), Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 499**

**(e) Enforcement powers of President**

In carrying out functions under this section with respect to the export of defense articles and defense services, the President is authorized to exercise the same powers concerning violations and enforcement which are conferred upon departments, agencies and officials by subsections (c), (d), (e), and (g) of section 11 of the Export Administration Act of 1979 [50 App. U.S.C. 2410(c), (d), (e), and (g)], and by subsections (a) and (c) of section 12 of such Act [50 App. U.S.C. 2411(a) and (c)], subject to the same terms and conditions as are applicable to such powers under such Act [50 App. U.S.C. 2401 et seq.]. Nothing in this subsection shall be construed as authorizing the withholding of information from the Congress. Notwithstanding section 11(c) of the Export Administration Act of 1979, the civil penalty for each violation involving controls imposed on the export of defense articles and defense services under this section may not exceed \$500,000.

**(f) Periodic review of items on Munitions List**

The President shall periodically review the items on the United States Munitions List to determine what items, if any, no longer warrant export controls under this section. The results of such reviews shall be reported to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and to the Committee on Foreign Relations and the Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs of the Senate. Such a report shall be submitted at least 30 days before any item is removed from the Munitions List and shall describe the nature of any controls to be imposed on that item under the Export Administration Act of 1979 [50 App. U.S.C. 2401 et seq.].

<sup>1</sup> So in original. There are two subpars. designated "(B)".

**(g) Identification of persons convicted or subject to indictment for violations of certain provisions**

(1) The President shall develop appropriate mechanisms to identify, in connection with the export licensing process under this section—

(A) persons who are the subject of an indictment for, or have been convicted of, a violation under—

- (i) this section,
- (ii) section 11 of the Export Administration Act of 1979 (50 U.S.C. App. 2410),
- (iii) section 793, 794, or 798 of title 18 (relating to espionage involving defense or classified information),
- (iv) section 16 of the Trading with the Enemy Act (50 U.S.C. App. 16),
- (v) section 206 of the International Emergency Economic Powers Act (relating to foreign assets controls; 50 U.S.C. App. 1705) [50 U.S.C. 1705],
- (vi) section 30A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78dd-1) or section 104 of the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (15 U.S.C. 78dd-2),
- (vii) chapter 105 of title 18 (relating to sabotage),
- (viii) section 4(b) of the Internal Security Act of 1950 (relating to communication of classified information; 50 U.S.C. 783(b)),
- (ix) section 57, 92, 101, 104, 222, 224, 225, or 226 of the Atomic Energy Act of 1954 (42 U.S.C. 2077, 2122, 2131, 2134, 2272, 2274, 2275, and 2276),
- (x) section 601 of the National Security Act of 1947 (relating to intelligence identities protection; 50 U.S.C. 421), or
- (xi) section 603(b) or (c) of the Comprehensive Anti-Apartheid Act of 1986 (22 U.S.C. 5113(b) and (c));

(B) persons who are the subject of an indictment or have been convicted under section 371 of title 18 for conspiracy to violate any of the statutes cited in subparagraph (A); and

(C) persons who are ineligible—

- (i) to contract with,
- (ii) to receive a license or other form of authorization to export from, or
- (iii) to receive a license or other form of authorization to import defense articles or defense services from,

any agency of the United States Government.

(2) The President shall require that each applicant for a license to export an item on the United States Munitions List identify in the application all consignees and freight forwarders involved in the proposed export.

(3) If the President determines—

(A) that an applicant for a license to export under this section is the subject of an indictment for a violation of any of the statutes cited in paragraph (1),

(B) that there is reasonable cause to believe that an applicant for a license to export under this section has violated any of the statutes cited in paragraph (1), or

(C) that an applicant for a license to export under this section is ineligible to contract with, or to receive a license or other form of

authorization to import defense articles or defense services from, any agency of the United States Government,

the President may disapprove the application. The President shall consider requests by the Secretary of the Treasury to disapprove any export license application based on these criteria.

(4) A license to export an item on the United States Munitions List may not be issued to a person—

(A) if that person, or any party to the export, has been convicted of violating a statute cited in paragraph (1), or

(B) if that person, or any party to the export, is at the time of the license review ineligible to receive export licenses (or other forms of authorization to export) from any agency of the United States Government,

except as may be determined on a case-by-case basis by the President, after consultation with the Secretary of the Treasury, after a thorough review of the circumstances surrounding the conviction or ineligibility to export and a finding by the President that appropriate steps have been taken to mitigate any law enforcement concerns.

(5) A license to export an item on the United States Munitions List may not be issued to a foreign person (other than a foreign government).

(6) The President may require a license (or other form of authorization) before any item on the United States Munitions List is sold or otherwise transferred to the control or possession of a foreign person or a person acting on behalf of a foreign person.

(7) The President shall, in coordination with law enforcement and national security agencies, develop standards for identifying high-risk exports for regular end-use verification. These standards shall be published in the Federal Register and the initial standards shall be published not later than October 1, 1988.

(8) Upon request of the Secretary of State, the Secretary of Defense and the Secretary of the Treasury shall detail to the office primarily responsible for export licensing functions under this section, on a nonreimbursable basis, personnel with appropriate expertise to assist in the initial screening of applications for export licenses under this section in order to determine the need for further review of those applications for foreign policy, national security, and law enforcement concerns.

(9) For purposes of this subsection—

(A) the term “foreign corporation” means a corporation that is not incorporated in the United States;

(B) the term “foreign government” includes any agency or subdivision of a foreign government, including an official mission of a foreign government;

(C) the term “foreign person” means any person who is not a citizen or national of the United States or lawfully admitted to the United States for permanent residence under the Immigration and Nationality Act [8 U.S.C. 1101 et seq.], and includes foreign corporations, international organizations, and foreign governments;

(D) the term “party to the export” means—

(i) the president, the chief executive officer, and other senior officers of the license applicant;

(ii) the freight forwarders or designated exporting agent of the license application; and

(iii) any consignee or end user of any item to be exported; and

(E) the term “person” means a natural person as well as a corporation, business association, partnership, society, trust, or any other entity, organization, or group, including governmental entities.

**(h) Judicial review of designation of items as defense articles or services**

The designation by the President (or by an official to whom the President’s functions under subsection (a) of this section have been duly delegated), in regulations issued under this section, of items as defense articles or defense services for purposes of this section shall not be subject to judicial review.

(Pub. L. 90–629, ch. 3, § 38, as added Pub. L. 94–329, title II, § 212(a)(1), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 744; amended Pub. L. 95–92, § 20, Aug. 4, 1977, 91 Stat. 623; Pub. L. 96–70, title III, § 3303(a)(4), Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 499; Pub. L. 96–72, § 22(a), Sept. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 535; Pub. L. 96–92, § 21, Oct. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 710; Pub. L. 96–533, title I, § 107(a), (c), Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3136; Pub. L. 97–113, title I, §§ 106, 107, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1522; Pub. L. 99–64, title I, § 123(a), July 12, 1985, 99 Stat. 156; Pub. L. 99–83, title I, § 119(a), (b), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 203, 204; Pub. L. 100–202, § 101(b) [title VIII, § 8142(a)], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329–43, 1329–88; Pub. L. 100–204, title XII, § 1255, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1429; Pub. L. 101–222, §§ 3(a), 6, Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1896, 1899; Pub. L. 103–236, title VII, § 714(a)(1), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 497.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Export Administration Act of 1979, referred to in subsections (e) and (f), is Pub. L. 96–72, Sept. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 503, as amended, which is classified principally to section 2401 et seq. of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2401 of Title 50, Appendix, and Tables.

Section 104 of the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (15 U.S.C. 78dd–2), referred to in subsection (g)(1)(A)(vi), probably means section 104 of the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977, which is classified to section 78dd–2 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade.

The Immigration and Nationality Act, referred to in subsection (g)(9)(C), is act June 27, 1952, ch. 477, 66 Stat. 163, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 12 (§ 1101 et seq.) of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1101 of Title 8 and Tables.

REFERENCE TO SECTION 1934 OF THIS TITLE DEEMED  
REFERENCE TO THIS SECTION

Section 212(b)(1) of Pub. L. 94–329 provided in part that: “Any reference to such section [section 1934 of this title] shall be deemed to be a reference to section 38 of the Arms Export Control Act [this section] and any reference to licenses issued under section 38 of the Arms Export Control Act [this section] shall be deemed to include a reference to licenses issued under section 414 of the Mutual Security Act of 1954.”

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 103–236 amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) read as follows: “Decisions on issuing export licenses under this section shall be made in coordination with the Director of the United States Arms Control and Disarmament Agency and shall take into account the Director’s opinion as to whether the export of an article will contribute to an arms race, support international terrorism, increase the possibility of outbreak or escalation of conflict, or prejudice the development of bilateral or multilateral arms control arrangements.”

1989—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 101–222, § 3(a), inserted “support international terrorism,” after “arms race.”

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 101–222, § 6, added subsec. (h).

1987—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 100–204, § 1255(b), designated existing provisions as subpar. (A) and added subpar. (B) relating to review by Secretary of the Treasury of munitions control registrations.

Pub. L. 100–202 designated existing provisions as subpar. (A) and added subpar. (B) relating to allowance of return to United States of certain military firearms, etc., under certain circumstances.

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 100–204, § 1255(c), added par. (3).

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 100–204, § 1255(a), added subsec. (g).

1985—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 99–83, § 119(a), inserted “for each violation” before “not more” and substituted “\$1,000,000” for “\$100,000” and “ten” for “two”.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 99–83, § 119(b), inserted provisions relating to civil penalty for each violation.

Pub. L. 99–64 substituted “(g)” for “(f)”.

1981—Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 97–113, § 106, struck out par. (3) which placed a \$100,000,000 ceiling on commercial arms exports of major defense equipment to all countries other than NATO countries, Japan, Australia, and New Zealand.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 97–113, § 107, added subsec. (f).

1980—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 96–533, § 107(c), added par. (3).

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 96–533, § 107(a), increased the limitation in the sale of major defense equipment exports to \$100,000,000 from \$35,000,000.

1979—Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 96–92 increased the limitation in the sale of major defense equipment exports to \$35,000,000 from \$25,000,000.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 96–70 struck out subsec. (d) which provided that this section applies to and within the Canal Zone.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 96–72 substituted “subsections (c), (d), (e), and (f) of section 11 of the Export Administration Act of 1979, and by subsections (a) and (c) of section 12 of such Act” for “sections 6(c), (d), (e), and (f) and 7(a) and (c) of the Export Administration Act of 1969”.

1977—Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 95–92 inserted provisions relating to exceptions to prohibitions against issuance of licenses under this section and procedures applicable for implementation of such exceptions.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1987 AMENDMENT

Section 101(b) [title VIII, § 8142(b)] of Pub. L. 100–202 provided that:

“(1) Except as provided in paragraphs (2) and (3), subparagraph (B) of section 38(b)(1) of the Arms Export Control Act [subsec. (b)(1)(B) of this section], as added by subsection (a), shall take effect at the end of the ninety-day period beginning on the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 22, 1987].

“(2)(A) Such subparagraph shall take effect on the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 22, 1987] with respect to any military firearms or ammunition (or components, parts, accessories and attachments for such firearms) with respect to which an import permit was issued by the Secretary of the Treasury on or after July 1, 1986, irrespective of whether such import permit was subsequently suspended, revoked, or withdrawn by the Secretary of the Treasury based on the application of section 38(b)(1) of the Arms Export Control Act [subsec. (b)(1) of this section] as in effect on the day before the date of the enactment of this Act.

“(B) In the case of an import permit described in subparagraph (A) which was suspended, revoked, or withdrawn by the Secretary of the Treasury during the period beginning on July 1, 1986, and ending on the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 22, 1987] under the conditions described in such subparagraph, such import permit shall be reinstated and reissued immediately upon the enactment of this Act, and in any event not later than ten days after the date of the enactment of this Act.

“(3) During the period preceding the revision of regulations issued under section 38(b)(1) of the Arms Export Control Act [subsec. (b)(1) of this section] to reflect the provisions of subparagraph (B) of such section, as added by subsection (a), such regulations may not be applied with respect to matters covered by paragraph (2) of this subsection so as to prohibit or otherwise restrict the importation of firearms described in that paragraph or in any other manner inconsistent with that paragraph, notwithstanding that such regulations have not yet been so revised: *Provided*, That this section shall not take effect if during the twenty day period beginning on the date of enactment of this section [Dec. 22, 1987] the Secretary of State, the Secretary of Defense, or the Secretary of the Treasury notifies Congress that he has an objection to the intent of this section: *Provided further*, That the Attorney General shall, within the period of time stated in the first proviso, submit a certification to Congress indicating whether the enactment of this section will interfere with any ongoing criminal investigation with respect to this section. If a certification of criminal investigative interference or an objection to the intent of this section is made, as herein provided, no permit shall be issued to anyone.”

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Section 119(c) of Pub. L. 99-83 provided that: “This section [amending this section] shall take effect upon the date of enactment of this Act [Aug. 8, 1985] or October 1, 1985, whichever is later. The amendments made by this section apply with respect to violations occurring after the effective date of this section.”

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1979 AMENDMENTS

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-72 effective upon the expiration of the Export Administration Act of 1969, which terminated on Sept. 30, 1979, or upon any prior date which the Congress by concurrent resolution or the President by proclamation designated, see section 2418 and Prior Provisions note set out under section 2413 of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense.

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-70 effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 3304 of Pub. L. 96-70, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3601 of this title.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section, with certain exceptions, delegated to Secretary of State, with concurrence of Secretary of Defense required for designations of items or categories of items which are considered as defense articles or services subject to export control under this section, by section 1(l)(1) of Ex. Ord. No. 11958, Jan. 18, 1977, 42 F.R. 4311, as amended, set out as a note under section 2751 of this title.

Functions of President under this section relating to the control of import of defense articles and services transferred to Secretary of the Treasury, with certain requirements for considering the views of Secretary of State and for receiving concurrence of Secretary of State and Secretary of Defense for designations of items or categories of items which are considered as defense articles and services subject to import control under this section, by section 1(l)(2) of Ex. Ord. No. 11958.

Functions of President which involve subsec. (e) of this section and are agreed to by Secretary of State and Secretary of Commerce delegated to Secretary of Commerce to be carried out on behalf of Secretary of State by section 1(l)(3) of Ex. Ord. No. 11958.

#### LANDMINE EXPORT MORATORIUM

Pub. L. 102-484, div. A, title XIII, § 1365, Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2561, as amended by Pub. L. 103-160, div. A, title XI, § 1182(c)(3), title XIV, § 1423(c), Nov. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 1772, 1832, provided that:

“(a) FINDINGS.—The Congress makes the following findings:

“(1) Anti-personnel landmines, which are specifically designed to maim and kill people, have been used indiscriminately in dramatically increasing numbers, primarily in insurgencies in poor developing countries. Noncombatant civilians, including tens of thousands of children, have been the primary victims.

“(2) Unlike other military weapons, landmines often remain implanted and undiscovered after conflict has ended, causing untold suffering to civilian populations. In Afghanistan, Cambodia, Laos, Vietnam, and Angola, tens of millions of unexploded landmines have rendered whole areas uninhabitable. In Afghanistan, an estimated hundreds of thousands of people have been maimed and killed by landmines during the 14-year civil war. In Cambodia, more than 20,000 civilians have lost limbs and another 60 are being maimed each month from landmines.

“(3) Over 35 countries are known to manufacture landmines, including the United States. However, the United States is not a major exporter of landmines. During the past ten years the Department of State has approved ten licenses for the commercial export of anti-personnel landmines valued at \$980,000, and during the past five years the Department of Defense has approved the sale of 13,156 anti-personnel landmines valued at \$841,145.

“(4) The United States signed, but has not ratified, the 1981 Convention on Prohibitions or Restrictions on the Use of Certain Conventional Weapons Which May Be Deemed To Be Excessively Injurious or To Have Indiscriminate Effects. The Convention prohibits the indiscriminate use of landmines.

“(5) When it signed the Convention, the United States stated: ‘We believe that the Convention represents a positive step forward in efforts to minimize injury or damage to the civilian population in time of armed conflict. Our signature of the Convention reflects the general willingness of the United States to adopt practical and reasonable provisions concerning the conduct of military operations, for the purpose of protecting noncombatants.’

“(6) The President should submit the Convention to the Senate for its advice and consent to ratification, and the President should actively negotiate under United Nations auspices or other auspices an international agreement, or a modification of the Convention, to prohibit the sale, transfer or export of anti-personnel landmines. Such an agreement or modification would be an appropriate response to the end of the Cold War and the promotion of arms control agreements to reduce the indiscriminate killing and maiming of civilians.

“(7) The United States should set an example for other countries in such negotiations, by implementing a one-year moratorium on the sale, transfer or export of anti-personnel landmines.

“(b) STATEMENT OF POLICY.—(1) It shall be the policy of the United States to seek verifiable international agreements prohibiting the sale, transfer, or export, and further limiting the use, production, possession, and deployment of anti-personnel landmines.

“(2) It is the sense of the Congress that the President should actively seek to negotiate under United Nations auspices or other auspices an international agreement, or a modification of the Convention, to prohibit the sale, transfer, or export of anti-personnel landmines.

“(c) MORATORIUM ON TRANSFERS OF ANTI-PERSONNEL LANDMINES ABROAD.—During the four-year period beginning on October 23, 1992—

“(1) no sale may be made or financed, no transfer may be made, and no license for export may be is-

sued, under the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.], with respect to any anti-personnel landmine; and

“(2) no assistance may be provided under the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.], with respect to the provision of any anti-personnel landmine.

“(d) DEFINITION.—For purposes of this section, the term ‘anti-personnel landmine’ means—

“(1) any munition placed under, on, or near the ground or other surface area, or delivered by artillery, rocket, mortar, or similar means or dropped from an aircraft and which is designed to be detonated or exploded by the presence, proximity, or contact of a person;

“(2) any device or material which is designed, constructed, or adapted to kill or injure and which functions unexpectedly when a person disturbs or approaches an apparently harmless object or performs an apparently safe act;

“(3) any manually-emplaced munition or device designed to kill, injure, or damage and which is actuated by remote control or automatically after a lapse of time.”

#### ARMS TRANSFERS RESTRAINT POLICY FOR MIDDLE EAST AND PERSIAN GULF REGION

Pub. L. 102-138, title IV, Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 718, provided that:

##### “SEC. 401. FINDINGS.

“The Congress finds that—

“(1) nations in the Middle East and Persian Gulf region, which accounted for over 40 percent of the international trade in weapons and related equipment and services during the decade of the 1980’s, are the principal market for the worldwide arms trade;

“(2) regional instability, large financial resources, and the desire of arms-supplying governments to gain influence in the Middle East and Persian Gulf region, contribute to a regional arms race;

“(3) the continued proliferation of weapons and related equipment and services contribute further to a regional arms race in the Middle East and Persian Gulf region that is politically, economically, and militarily destabilizing;

“(4) the continued proliferation of unconventional weapons, including nuclear, biological, and chemical weapons, as well as delivery systems associated with those weapons, poses an urgent threat to security and stability in the Middle East and Persian Gulf region;

“(5) the continued proliferation of ballistic missile technologies and ballistic missile systems that are capable of delivering conventional, nuclear, biological, or chemical warheads undermines security and stability in the Middle East and Persian Gulf region;

“(6) future security and stability in the Middle East and Persian Gulf region would be enhanced by establishing a stable military balance among regional powers by restraining and reducing both conventional and unconventional weapons;

“(7) security, stability, peace, and prosperity in the Middle East and Persian Gulf region are important to the welfare of the international economy and to the national security interests of the United States;

“(8) future security and stability in the Middle East and Persian Gulf region would be enhanced through the development of a multilateral arms transfer and control regime similar to those of the Nuclear Suppliers’ Group, the Missile Technology Control Regime, and the Australia Chemical Weapons Suppliers Group;

“(9) such a regime should be developed, implemented, and agreed to through multilateral negotiations, including under the auspices of the 5 permanent members of the United Nations Security Council;

“(10) confidence-building arms control measures such as the establishment of a centralized arms trade registry at the United Nations, greater multinational

transparency on the transfer of defense articles and services prior to agreement or transfer, cooperative verification measures, advanced notification of military exercises, information exchanges, on-site inspections, and creation of a Middle East and Persian Gulf Conflict Prevention Center, are important to implement an effective multilateral arms transfer and control regime;

“(11) as an interim step, the United States should consider introducing, during the ongoing negotiations on confidence security-building measures at the Conference on Security and Cooperation in Europe (CSCE), a proposal regarding the international exchange of information, on an annual basis, on the sale and transfer of major military equipment, particularly to the Middle East and Persian Gulf region; and

“(12) such a regime should be applied to other regions with the ultimate objective of achieving an effective global arms transfer and control regime, implemented and enforced through the United Nations Security Council, that—

“(A) includes a linkage of humanitarian and developmental objectives with security objectives in Third World countries, particularly the poorest of the poor countries; and

“(B) encourages countries selling military equipment and services to consider the following factors before making conventional arms sales: the security needs of the purchasing countries, the level of defense expenditures by the purchasing countries, and the level of indigenous production of the purchasing countries.

##### “SEC. 402. MULTILATERAL ARMS TRANSFER AND CONTROL REGIME.

“(a) IMPLEMENTATION OF THE REGIME.—

“(1) CONTINUING NEGOTIATIONS.—The President shall continue negotiations among the 5 permanent members of the United Nations Security Council and commit the United States to a multilateral arms transfer and control regime for the Middle East and Persian Gulf region.

“(2) PROPOSING A TEMPORARY MORATORIUM DURING NEGOTIATIONS.—In the context of these negotiations, the President should propose to the 5 permanent members of the United Nations Security Council a temporary moratorium on the sale and transfer of major military equipment to nations in the Middle East and Persian Gulf region until such time as the 5 permanent members agree to a multilateral arms transfer and control regime.

“(b) PURPOSE OF THE REGIME.—The purpose of the multilateral arms transfer and control regime should be—

“(1) to slow and limit the proliferation of conventional weapons in the Middle East and Persian Gulf region with the aim of preventing destabilizing transfers by—

“(A) controlling the transfer of conventional major military equipment;

“(B) achieving transparency among arms suppliers nations through advanced notification of agreement to, or transfer of, conventional major military equipment; and

“(C) developing and adopting common and comprehensive control guidelines on the sale and transfer of conventional major military equipment to the region;

“(2) to halt the proliferation of unconventional weapons, including nuclear, biological, and chemical weapons, as well as delivery systems associated with those weapons and the technologies necessary to produce or assemble such weapons;

“(3) to limit and halt the proliferation of ballistic missile technologies and ballistic missile systems that are capable of delivering conventional, nuclear, biological, or chemical warheads;

“(4) to maintain the military balance in the Middle East and Persian Gulf region through reductions of

conventional weapons and the elimination of unconventional weapons; and

“(5) to promote regional arms control in the Middle East and Persian Gulf region.

“(c) ACHIEVING THE PURPOSES OF THE REGIME.—

“(1) CONTROLLING PROLIFERATION OF CONVENTIONAL WEAPONS.—In order to achieve the purposes described in subsection (b)(1), the United States should pursue the development of a multilateral arms transfer and control regime which includes—

“(A) greater information-sharing practices among supplier nations regarding potential arms sales to all nations of the Middle East and Persian Gulf region;

“(B) applying, for the control of conventional major military equipment, procedures already developed by the International Atomic Energy Agency, the Multilateral Coordinating Committee on Export Controls (COCOM), and the Missile Technology Control Regime (MTCR); and

“(C) other strict controls on the proliferation of conventional major military equipment to the Middle East and Persian Gulf region.

“(2) HALTING PROLIFERATION OF UNCONVENTIONAL WEAPONS.—In order to achieve the purposes described in subsections (b)(2) and (3), the United States should build on existing and future agreements among supplier nations by pursuing the development of a multilateral arms transfer and control regime which includes—

“(A) limitations and controls contained in the Enhanced Proliferation Control Initiative;

“(B) limitations and controls contained in the Missile Technology Control Regime (MTCR);

“(C) guidelines followed by the Australia Group on chemical and biological arms proliferation;

“(D) guidelines adopted by the Nuclear Suppliers Group (the London Group); and

“(E) other appropriate controls that serve to halt the flow of unconditional [unconventional] weapons to the Middle East and Persian Gulf region.

“(3) PROMOTION OF REGIONAL ARMS CONTROL AGREEMENTS.—In order to achieve the purposes described in subsections (b)(4) and (5), the United States should pursue with nations in the Middle East and Persian Gulf region—

“(A) the maintenance of the military balance within the region, while eliminating nuclear, biological, and chemical weapons and associated delivery systems, and ballistic missiles;

“(B) the implementation of confidence-building and security-building measures, including advance notification of certain ground and aerial military exercises in the Middle East and the Persian Gulf; and

“(C) other useful arms control measures.

“(d) MAJOR MILITARY EQUIPMENT.—As used in this title, the term ‘major military equipment’ means—

“(1) air-to-air, air-to-surface, and surface-to-surface missiles and rockets;

“(2) turbine-powered military aircraft;

“(3) attack helicopters;

“(4) main battle tanks;

“(5) submarines and major naval surface combatants;

“(6) nuclear, biological, and chemical weapons; and

“(7) such other defense articles and defense services as the President may determine.

“SEC. 403. LIMITATION ON UNITED STATES ARMS SALES TO THE REGION.

“Beginning 60 days after the date of enactment of the International Cooperation Act of 1991 [probably means H.R. 2508, which had not been enacted into law by the end of the first session of the 102d Congress] or the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1992 and 1993 [Oct. 28, 1991], whichever is enacted first, no sale of any defense article or defense service may be made to any nation in the Middle East and Persian Gulf region, and no license may be issued for the export of any de-

fense article or defense service to any nation in the Middle East and Persian Gulf region, unless the President—

“(1) certifies in writing to the relevant congressional committees that the President has undertaken good faith efforts to convene a conference for the establishment of an arms suppliers regime having elements described in section 402; and

“(2) submits to the relevant congressional committees a report setting forth a United States plan for leading the world community in establishing such a multilateral regime to restrict transfers of advanced conventional and unconventional arms to the Middle East and Persian Gulf region.

“SEC. 404. REPORTS TO THE CONGRESS.

“(a) QUARTERLY REPORTS.—Beginning on January 15, 1992, and quarterly thereafter through October 15, 1993, the President shall submit to the relevant congressional committees a report—

“(1) describing the progress in implementing the purposes of the multilateral arms transfer and control regime as described in section 402(b); and

“(2) describing efforts by the United States and progress made to induce other countries to curtail significantly the volume of their arms sales to the Middle East and Persian Gulf region, and if such efforts were not made, the justification for not making such efforts.

“(b) INITIAL REPORT ON TRANSFERS AND REGIONAL MILITARY BALANCE.—Not later than 60 days after the date of enactment of the International Cooperation Act of 1991 or the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1992 and 1993, whichever is enacted first, the President shall submit to the relevant congressional committee a report—

“(1) documenting all transfers of conventional and unconventional arms by any nation to the Middle East and Persian Gulf region over the previous calendar year and the previous 5 calendar years, including sources, types, and recipient nations of weapons;

“(2) analyzing the current military balance in the region, including the effect on the balance of transfers documented under paragraph (1);

“(3) describing the progress in implementing the purposes of the multilateral arms transfer and control regime as described in section 402(b);

“(4) describing any agreements establishing such a regime; and

“(5) identifying supplier nations that have refused to participate in such a regime or that have engaged in conduct that violates or undermines such a regime.

“(c) ANNUAL REPORTS ON TRANSFERS AND REGIONAL MILITARY BALANCE.—Beginning July 15, 1992, and every 12 months thereafter, the President shall submit to the relevant congressional committees a report—

“(1) documenting all transfers of conventional and unconventional arms by any nation to the Middle East and Persian Gulf region over the previous calendar year, including sources, types, and recipient nations of weapons;

“(2) analyzing the current military balance in the region, including the effect on the balance of transfer documented under paragraph (1);

“(3) describing the progress in implementing the purposes of the multilateral arms transfer and control regime as described in section 402(b); and

“(4) identifying supplier nations that have refused to participate in such a regime or that have engaged in conduct that violates or undermines such a regime.

“SEC. 405. RELEVANT CONGRESSIONAL COMMITTEES DEFINED.

“As used in this title, the term ‘relevant congressional committees’ means the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate.”

[Ex. Ord. No. 12851, §3, June 11, 1993, 58 F.R. 33181, set out as a note under section 2797 of this title, delegated



to Secretary of State, in consultation with Secretary of Defense and other agencies, certification and reporting functions of the President under sections 403 and 404 of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1992 and 1993, Public Law 102-138, set out above.]

[Memorandum of President of the United States, Dec. 27, 1991, 56 F.R. 1069, delegated to Secretary of State, in consultation with heads of other executive agencies and departments, certification and reporting obligations of the President under sections 403 and 404 of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1992 and 1993, Public Law 102-138, set out above.]

#### CONTINUATION OF EXPORT CONTROL REGULATIONS

Section 3 of Ex. Ord. No. 12924, Aug. 19, 1994, 59 F.R. 43437, set out as a note under section 1701 of Title 50, War and National Defense, provided that: "Provisions for administration of section 38(e) of the Arms Export Control Act (22 U.S.C. 2778(e)) may be made and shall continue in full force and effect until amended or revoked under the authority of section 203 of the Act (50 U.S.C. 1702). To the extent permitted by law, this order also shall constitute authority for the issuance and continuation in full force and effect of all rules and regulations by the President or his delegate, and all orders, licenses, and other forms of administrative actions issued, taken, or continued in effect pursuant thereto, relating to the administration of section 38(e)."

Prior provisions relating to issuance and continued effect of rules, regulations, orders, licenses, and other forms of administrative action relating to administration of subsec. (e) of this section were contained in the following:

Ex. Ord. No. 12923, §3, June 30, 1994, 59 F.R. 34551, formerly set out as a note under section 1701 of Title 50, prior to revocation by Ex. Ord. No. 12924, §4, Aug. 19, 1994, 59 F.R. 43438.

Ex. Ord. No. 12867, §3, Sept. 30, 1993, 58 F.R. 51747, set out as a note under section 1701 of Title 50.

Ex. Ord. No. 12730, §3, Sept. 30, 1990, 55 F.R. 40373, formerly set out as a note under section 1701 of Title 50, prior to revocation by Ex. Ord. No. 12867, Sept. 30, 1993, 58 F.R. 51747.

Ex. Ord. No. 12525, §3, July 12, 1985, 50 F.R. 28757, set out as a note under section 1701 of Title 50.

Ex. Ord. No. 12470, §3, Mar. 30, 1984, 49 F.R. 13099, formerly set out as a note under section 1701 of Title 50, prior to revocation by Ex. Ord. No. 12525, July 12, 1985, 50 F.R. 28757.

Ex. Ord. No. 12451, §3, Dec. 20, 1983, 48 F.R. 56563, set out as a note under section 1701 of Title 50.

Ex. Ord. No. 12444, §3, Oct. 14, 1983, 48 F.R. 48215, formerly set out as a note under section 1701 of Title 50, prior to revocation by Ex. Ord. No. 12451, Dec. 20, 1983, 48 F.R. 56563.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2304, 2373, 2751, 2753, 2767, 2770, 2776, 2779, 2780, 2791, 2794, 2797a of this title; title 10 sections 2350, 2553, 4543; title 12 section 635; title 18 sections 1956, 2516; title 26 section 5847; title 29 sections 1662d, 1662d-1; title 50 section 415; title 50 App. sections 2410, 2410b, 2416.

#### § 2778a. Exportation of uranium depleted in the isotope 235

Upon a finding that an export of uranium depleted in the isotope 235 is incorporated in defense articles or commodities solely to take advantage of high density or pyrophoric characteristics unrelated to its radioactivity, such exports shall be exempt from the provisions of the Atomic Energy Act of 1954 [42 U.S.C. 2011 et seq.] and of the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Act of 1978 [22 U.S.C. 3201 et seq.] when such exports are subject to the controls established under the

Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.] or the Export Administration Act of 1979 [50 App. U.S.C. 2401 et seq.].

(Pub. L. 96-533, title I, §110, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3138.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Atomic Energy Act of 1954, referred to in text, is act Aug. 30, 1954, ch. 1073, 68 Stat. 921, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 23 (§2011 et seq.) of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2011 of Title 42 and Tables.

The Nuclear Non-Proliferation Act of 1978, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 95-242, Mar. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 120, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 47 (§3201 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3201 of this title and Tables.

The Arms Export Control Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 90-629, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1320, as amended, which is classified principally to this chapter (§2751 et seq.). For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2751 of this title and Tables.

The Export Administration Act of 1979, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 96-72, Sept. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 503, as amended, which is classified principally to sections 2401 et seq. of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2401 of Title 50, Appendix, and Tables.

#### CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the International Security and Development Cooperation Act of 1980, and not as part of the Arms Export Control Act which comprises this chapter.

#### § 2779. Fees of military sales agents

##### (a) Adequate and timely reports to Secretary of State; maintenance of records

In accordance with such regulations as he may prescribe, the Secretary of State shall require adequate and timely reporting on political contributions, gifts, commissions and fees paid, or offered or agreed to be paid, by any person in connection with—

(1) sales of defense articles or defense services under section 2762 of this title, or of design and construction services under section 2769 of this title; or

(2) commercial sales of defense articles or defense services licensed or approved under section 2778 of this title;

to or for the armed forces of a foreign country or international organization in order to solicit, promote, or otherwise to secure the conclusion of such sales. Such regulations shall specify the amounts and the kinds of payments, offers, and agreements to be reported, and the form and timing of reports, and shall require reports on the names of sales agents and other persons receiving such payments. The Secretary of State shall by regulation require such recordkeeping as he determines is necessary.

##### (b) Presidential regulation

The President may, by regulation, prohibit, limit, or prescribe conditions with respect to such contributions, gifts, commissions, and fees as he determines will be in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter.

**(c) Allocation to contract; improper influence**

No such contribution, gift, commission, or fee may be included, in whole or in part, in the amount paid under any procurement contract entered into under section 2762 or section 2769 of this title, unless the amount thereof is reasonable, allocable to such contract, and not made to a person who has solicited, promoted, or otherwise secured such sale, or has held himself out as being able to do so, through improper influence. For the purposes of this section, “improper influence” means influence, direct or indirect, which induces or attempts to induce consideration or action by any employee or officer of a purchasing foreign government or international organization with respect to such purchase on any basis other than such consideration of merit as are involved in comparable United States procurements.

**(d) Availability of records to Congress and Federal agencies**

(1) All information reported to the Secretary of State and all records maintained by any person pursuant to regulations prescribed under this section shall be available, upon request, to any standing committee of the Congress or any subcommittee thereof and to any agency of the United States Government authorized by law to have access to the books and records of the person required to submit reports or to maintain records under this section.

(2) Access by an agency of the United States Government to records maintained under this section shall be on the same terms and conditions which govern the access by such agency to the books and records of the person concerned.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 3, § 39, as added Pub. L. 94-329, title VI, § 604(b), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 767; amended Pub. L. 96-533, title I, § 105(e)(2), Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3135.)

## AMENDMENTS

1980—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 96-533, § 105(e)(2)(A), inserted reference to sales of design and construction services under section 2769 of this title.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 96-533, § 105(e)(2)(B), inserted reference to section 2769 of this title.

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective 60 days after June 30, 1976, see section 604(c) of Pub. L. 94-329, set out as note under section 2776 of this title.

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under subsec. (b) of this section delegated to Secretary of State, with Secretary of State required to consult with Secretary of Defense to avoid interference in application of Department of Defense regulations to sales made under section 2762 of this title, by section 1(m) of Ex. Ord. No. 11958, Jan. 18, 1977, 42 F.R. 4311, as amended, set out as a note under section 2751 of this title.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2776, 2778 of this title.

**§ 2779a. Prohibition on incentive payments****(a) In general**

No United States supplier of defense articles or services sold under this chapter, nor any em-

ployee, agent, or subcontractor thereof, shall, with respect to the sale of any such defense article or defense service to a foreign country, make any incentive payments for the purpose of satisfying, in whole or in part, any offset agreement with that country.

**(b) Civil penalties**

Any person who violates the provisions of this section shall be subject to the imposition of civil penalties as provided for in this section.

**(c) Presidential authority**

In the enforcement of this section, the President is authorized to exercise the same powers concerning violations and enforcement and imposition of civil penalties which are conferred upon departments, agencies and officials by subsections (c), (d), (e), and (f) of section 11 of the Export Administration Act of 1979 [50 App. U.S.C. 2410(c), (d), (e), (f)], and section 12(a) of such Act [50 App. U.S.C. 2411(a)], subject to the same terms and conditions as are applicable to such powers under that Act [50 App. U.S.C. 2401 et seq.], except that notwithstanding section 11(c) of that Act [50 App. U.S.C. 2410(c)], the civil penalty for each violation of this section may not exceed \$500,000 or five times the amount of the prohibited incentive payment, whichever is greater.

**(d) Definitions**

For purposes of this section—

(1) the term “offset agreement” means an agreement, arrangement, or understanding between a United States supplier of defense articles or defense services and a foreign country under which the supplier agrees to purchase or acquire, or to promote the purchase or acquisition by other United States persons of, goods or services produced, manufactured, grown, or extracted, in whole or in part, in that foreign country in consideration for the purchase by the foreign country of defense articles or defense services from the supplier;

(2) the term “incentive payments” means direct monetary compensation made by a United States supplier of defense articles or defense services or by any employee, agent or subcontractor thereof to any other United States person to induce or persuade that United States person to purchase or acquire goods or services produced, manufactured, grown, or extracted, in whole or in part, in the foreign country which is purchasing those defense articles or services from the United States supplier; and

(3) the term “United States person” means—

(A) an individual who is a national or permanent resident alien of the United States; and

(B) any corporation, business association, partnership, trust, or other juridical entity—

(i) organized under the laws of the United States or any State, the District of Columbia, or any territory or possession of the United States; or

(ii) owned or controlled in fact by individuals described in subparagraph (A).

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 3, § 39A, as added Pub. L. 103-236, title VII, § 733, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 504.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Export Administration Act of 1979, referred to in subsec. (c), is Pub. L. 96-72, Sept. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 503, as amended, which is classified principally to section 2401 et seq. of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2401 of Title 50, Appendix, and Tables.

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of State by Memorandum of President of the United States, July 26, 1994, 59 F.R. 40205, set out as a note under section 2370a of this title.

**§ 2780. Transactions with countries supporting acts of international terrorism**

**(a) Prohibited transactions by United States Government**

The following transactions by the United States Government are prohibited:

(1) Exporting or otherwise providing (by sale, lease or loan, grant, or other means), directly or indirectly, any munitions item to a country described in subsection (d) of this section under the authority of this chapter, the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.], or any other law (except as provided in subsection (h) of this section). In implementing this paragraph, the United States Government—

(A) shall suspend delivery to such country of any such item pursuant to any such transaction which has not been completed at the time the Secretary of State makes the determination described in subsection (d) of this section, and

(B) shall terminate any lease or loan to such country of any such item which is in effect at the time the Secretary of State makes that determination.

(2) Providing credits, guarantees, or other financial assistance under the authority of this chapter, the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.], or any other law (except as provided in subsection (h) of this section), with respect to the acquisition of any munitions item by a country described in subsection (d) of this section. In implementing this paragraph, the United States Government shall suspend expenditures pursuant to any such assistance obligated before the Secretary of State makes the determination described in subsection (d) of this section. The President may authorize expenditures otherwise required to be suspended pursuant to the preceding sentence if the President has determined, and reported to the Congress, that suspension of those expenditures causes undue financial hardship to a supplier, shipper, or similar person and allowing the expenditure will not result in any munitions item being made available for use by such country.

(3) Consenting under section 2753(a) of this title, under section 505(a) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2314(a)], under the regulations issued to carry out section 2778 of this title, or under any other law (except as provided in subsection (h) of this section), to any transfer of any munitions item to a country described in subsection (d) of this section.

In implementing this paragraph, the United States Government shall withdraw any such consent which is in effect at the time the Secretary of State makes the determination described in subsection (d) of this section, except that this sentence does not apply with respect to any item that has already been transferred to such country.

(4) Providing any license or other approval under section 2778 of this title for any export or other transfer (including by means of a technical assistance agreement, manufacturing licensing agreement, or coproduction agreement) of any munitions item to a country described in subsection (d) of this section. In implementing this paragraph, the United States Government shall suspend any such license or other approval which is in effect at the time the Secretary of State makes the determination described in subsection (d) of this section, except that this sentence does not apply with respect to any item that has already been exported or otherwise transferred to such country.

(5) Otherwise facilitating the acquisition of any munitions item by a country described in subsection (d) of this section. This paragraph applies with respect to activities undertaken—

(A) by any department, agency, or other instrumentality of the Government,

(B) by any officer or employee of the Government (including members of the United States Armed Forces), or

(C) by any other person at the request or on behalf of the Government.

The Secretary of State may waive the requirements of the second sentence of paragraph (1), the second sentence of paragraph (3), and the second sentence of paragraph (4) to the extent that the Secretary determines, after consultation with the Congress, that unusual and compelling circumstances require that the United States Government not take the actions specified in that sentence.

**(b) Prohibited transactions by United States persons**

**(1) In general**

A United States person may not take any of the following actions:

(A) Exporting any munitions item to any country described in subsection (d) of this section.

(B) Selling, leasing, loaning, granting, or otherwise providing any munitions item to any country described in subsection (d) of this section.

(C) Selling, leasing, loaning, granting, or otherwise providing any munitions item to any recipient which is not the government of or a person in a country described in subsection (d) of this section if the United States person has reason to know that the munitions item will be made available to any country described in subsection (d) of this section.

(D) Taking any other action which would facilitate the acquisition, directly or indirectly, of any munitions item by the government of any country described in subsection (d) of this section, or any person acting on

behalf of that government, if the United States person has reason to know that that action will facilitate the acquisition of that item by such a government or person.

**(2) Liability for actions of foreign subsidiaries, etc.**

A United States person violates this subsection if a corporation or other person that is controlled in fact by that United States person (as determined under regulations, which the President shall issue) takes an action described in paragraph (1) outside the United States.

**(3) Applicability to actions outside the United States**

Paragraph (1) applies with respect to actions described in that paragraph which are taken either within or outside the United States by a United States person described in subsection (1)(3)(A) or (B) of this section. To the extent provided in regulations issued under subsection (1)(3)(D) of this section, paragraph (1) applies with respect to actions described in that paragraph which are taken outside the United States by a person designated as a United States person in those regulations.

**(c) Transfers to governments and persons covered**

This section applies with respect to—

(1) the acquisition of munitions items by the government of a country described in subsection (d) of this section; and

(2) the acquisition of munitions items by any individual, group, or other person within a country described in subsection (d) of this section, except to the extent that subparagraph (D) of subsection (b)(1) of this section provides otherwise.

**(d) Countries covered by prohibition**

The prohibitions contained in this section apply with respect to a country if the Secretary of State determines that the government of that country has repeatedly provided support for acts of international terrorism. For purposes of this subsection, such acts shall include all activities that the Secretary determines willfully aid or abet the international proliferation of nuclear explosive devices to individuals or groups or willfully aid or abet an individual or groups in acquiring unsafeguarded special nuclear material.

**(e) Publication of determinations**

Each determination of the Secretary of State under subsection (d) of this section shall be published in the Federal Register.

**(f) Rescission**

(1) A determination made by the Secretary of State under subsection (d) of this section may not be rescinded unless the President submits to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate—

(A) before the proposed rescission would take effect, a report certifying that—

(i) there has been a fundamental change in the leadership and policies of the government of the country concerned;

(ii) that government is not supporting acts of international terrorism; and

(iii) that government has provided assurances that it will not support acts of international terrorism in the future; or

(B) at least 45 days before the proposed rescission would take effect, a report justifying the rescission and certifying that—

(i) the government concerned has not provided any support for international terrorism during the preceding 6-month period; and

(ii) the government concerned has provided assurances that it will not support acts of international terrorism in the future.

(2)(A) No rescission under paragraph (1)(B) of a determination under subsection (d) of this section may be made if the Congress, within 45 days after receipt of a report under paragraph (1)(B), enacts a joint resolution the matter after the resolving clause of which is as follows: “That the proposed rescission of the determination under section 40(d) of the Arms Export Control Act pursuant to the report submitted to the Congress on \_\_\_\_\_ is hereby prohibited.”, the blank to be completed with the appropriate date.

(B) A joint resolution described in subparagraph (A) and introduced within the appropriate 45-day period shall be considered in the Senate and the House of Representatives in accordance with paragraphs (3) through (7) of section 8066(c) of the Department of Defense Appropriations Act (as contained in Public Law 98-473), except that references in such paragraphs to the Committees on Appropriations of the House of Representatives and the Senate shall be deemed to be references to the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, respectively.

**(g) Waiver**

The President may waive the prohibitions contained in this section with respect to a specific transaction if—

(1) the President determines that the transaction is essential to the national security interests of the United States; and

(2) not less than 15 days prior to the proposed transaction, the President—

(A) consults with the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate; and

(B) submits to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate a report containing—

(i) the name of any country involved in the proposed transaction, the identity of any recipient of the items to be provided pursuant to the proposed transaction, and the anticipated use of those items;

(ii) a description of the munitions items involved in the proposed transaction (including their market value) and the actual sale price at each step in the transaction (or if the items are transferred by other than sale, the manner in which they will be provided);

(iii) the reasons why the proposed transaction is essential to the national security interests of the United States and the justification for such proposed transaction;

(iv) the date on which the proposed transaction is expected to occur; and

(v) the name of every United States Government department, agency, or other entity involved in the proposed transaction, every foreign government involved in the proposed transaction, and every private party with significant participation in the proposed transaction.

To the extent possible, the information specified in subparagraph (B) of paragraph (2) shall be provided in unclassified form, with any classified information provided in an addendum to the report.

**(h) Exemption for transactions subject to National Security Act reporting requirements**

The prohibitions contained in this section do not apply with respect to any transaction subject to reporting requirements under title V of the National Security Act of 1947 (50 U.S.C. 413 et seq.; relating to congressional oversight of intelligence activities).

**(i) Relation to other laws**

**(1) In general**

With regard to munitions items controlled pursuant to this chapter, the provisions of this section shall apply notwithstanding any other provision of law, other than section 614(a) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2364(a)).

**(2) Section 614(a) waiver authority**

If the authority of section 614(a) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2364(a)] is used to permit a transaction under that Act [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.] or this chapter which is otherwise prohibited by this section, the written policy justification required by that section shall include the information specified in subsection (g)(2)(B) of this section.

**(j) Criminal penalty**

Any person who willfully violates this section shall be fined for each violation not more than \$1,000,000, imprisoned not more than 10 years, or both.

**(k) Civil penalties; enforcement**

In the enforcement of this section, the President is authorized to exercise the same powers concerning violations and enforcement which are conferred upon departments, agencies, and officials by sections 11(c), 11(e), 11(g), and 12(a) of the Export Administration Act of 1979 [50 App. U.S.C. 2410(c), (e), (g), 2411(a)] (subject to the same terms and conditions as are applicable to such powers under that Act [50 App. U.S.C. 2401 et seq.]), except that, notwithstanding section 11(c) of that Act, the civil penalty for each violation of this section may not exceed \$500,000.

**(l) Definitions**

As used in this section—

(1) the term “munitions item” means any item enumerated on the United States Munitions list<sup>1</sup> (without regard to whether the

item is imported into or exported from the United States);

(2) the term “United States”, when used geographically, means the several States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, and any territory or possession of the United States;

(3) the term “United States person” means—

(A) any citizen or permanent resident alien of the United States;

(B) any sole proprietorship, partnership, company, association, or corporation having its principal place of business within the United States or organized under the laws of the United States, any State, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, or any territory or possession of the United States;

(C) any other person with respect to that person’s actions while in the United States; and

(D) to the extent provided in regulations issued by the Secretary of State, any person that is not described in subparagraph (A), (B), or (C) but—

(i) is a foreign subsidiary or affiliate of a United States person described in subparagraph (B) and is controlled in fact by that United States person (as determined in accordance with those regulations), or

(ii) is otherwise subject to the jurisdiction of the United States,

with respect to that person’s actions while outside the United States;

(4) the term “nuclear explosive device” has the meaning given that term in section 830(4) of the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention Act of 1994; and

(5) the term “unsafeguarded special nuclear material” has the meaning given that term in section 830(8) of the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention Act of 1994.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 3, § 40, as added Pub. L. 99-399, title V, § 509(a), Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 874; amended Pub. L. 101-222, § 2(a), Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1892; Pub. L. 102-138, title III, § 321, Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 710; Pub. L. 103-236, title VIII, § 822(a)(2), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 511.)

AMENDMENT OF SECTION

*For termination of amendment by section 851 of Pub. L. 103-236, see Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note below.*

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsecs. (a)(1), (2) and (i)(2), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 32 (§ 2151 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

Section 40(d) of the Arms Export Control Act, referred to in subsec. (f)(2)(A), is classified to subsec. (d) of this section.

Paragraphs (3) through (7) of section 8066(c) of the Department of Defense Appropriations Act (as contained in Public Law 98-473), referred to in subsec. (f)(2)(B), is Pub. L. 98-473, title I, § 101(h) [title VIII, § 8066(c)(3)-(7)], Oct. 12, 1984, 98 Stat. 1904, 1936, 1937, which is not classified to the Code.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be capitalized.

The National Security Act of 1947, referred to in subsec. (h), is act July 26, 1947, ch. 343, 61 Stat. 495, as amended. Title V of the National Security Act of 1947 is classified generally to subchapter III (§ 413 et seq.) of chapter 15 of Title 50, War and National Defense. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 401 of Title 50.

The Export Administration Act of 1979, referred to in subsec. (k), is Pub. L. 96-72, Sept. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 503, as amended, which is classified principally to section 2401 et seq. of the Appendix to Title 50. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2401 of the Appendix to Title 50 and Tables.

Section 830 of the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention Act of 1994, referred to in subsec. (l)(4), (5), is section 830 of Pub. L. 103-236 which is set out in the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention; Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note under section 3201 of this title.

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 103-236, §§ 822(a)(2)(A), 851, temporarily inserted at end “For purposes of this subsection, such acts shall include all activities that the Secretary determines willfully aid or abet the international proliferation of nuclear explosive devices to individuals or groups or willfully aid or abet an individual or groups in acquiring unsafeguarded special nuclear material.” See Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note below.

Subsec. (l). Pub. L. 103-236, §§ 822(a)(2)(B), 851, temporarily amended subsec. (l) by striking “and” after the semicolon in par. (2), substituting a semicolon for the period at the end of par. (3), and adding pars. (4) and (5). See Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note below.

1991—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 102-138, § 321, designated existing provisions as par. (1), redesignated former par. (1) as subpar. (A) and former subpars. (A) to (C) as cls. (i) to (iii), respectively, redesignated former par. (2) as subpar. (B) and former subpars. (A) and (B) as cls. (i) and (ii), respectively, and added par. (2). So much of Pub. L. 102-138, § 321(1), as directed that subpar. (C) of former par. (2) be redesignated cl. (iii) of par. (1)(B), could not be executed because no such subpar. (C) had been enacted.

1989—Pub. L. 101-222 substituted “Transactions with” for “Exports to” in section catchline and amended text generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows:

“(a) PROHIBITION.—Except as provided in subsection (b) of this section, items on the United States Munitions List may not be exported to any country which the Secretary of State has determined, for purposes of section 6(j)(1)(A) of the Export Administration Act of 1979 (50 U.S.C. App. 2405(j)(1)(A)), has repeatedly provided support for acts of international terrorism.

“(b) WAIVER.—The President may waive the prohibition contained in subsection (a) of this section in the case of a particular export if the President determines that the export is important to the national interests of the United States and submits to the Congress a report justifying that determination and describing the proposed export. Any such waiver shall expire at the end of 90 days after it is granted unless the Congress enacts a law extending the waiver.”

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### EFFECTIVE AND TERMINATION DATES OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103-236 effective 60 days after Apr. 30, 1994, and ceases to be effective and is repealed on date of enactment of first Foreign Relations Authorization Act enacted after Apr. 30, 1994, and any provi-

sion repealed by that amendment shall be reenacted, see sections 831 and 851 of Pub. L. 103-236, set out in the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention; Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note under section 3201 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2371, 2656g, 3281 of this title; title 50 section 2202.

#### SUBCHAPTER IV—GENERAL, ADMINISTRATIVE, AND MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

##### § 2791. General provisions

###### (a) Considerations in procurement outside United States

(1) In carrying out this chapter, special emphasis shall be placed on procurement in the United States, but, subject to the provisions of subsection (b) of this section, consideration shall also be given to coproduction or licensed production outside the United States of defense articles of United States origin when such production best serves the foreign policy, national security, and economy of the United States. In evaluating any sale proposed to be made pursuant to this chapter, there shall be taken into consideration (A) the extent to which the proposed sale damages or infringes upon licensing arrangements whereby United States entities have granted licenses for the manufacture of the defense articles selected by the purchasing country to entities located in friendly foreign countries, which licenses result in financial returns to the United States, (B) the portion of the defense articles so manufactured which is of United States origin, and (C) the assessment of the Director of the United States Arms Control and Disarmament Agency as to whether, and the extent to which, such sale might contribute to an arms race, aid in the development of weapons of mass destruction, support international terrorism, increase the possibility of outbreak or escalation of conflict, or prejudice the development of bilateral or multilateral arms control or nonproliferation agreements or other arrangements.

(2) Any proposed sale made pursuant to this chapter shall be approved only after consultation with the Director of the United States Arms Control and Disarmament Agency. The Director of the Arms Control and Disarmament Agency is authorized, whenever the Director determines that a sale under this section would be detrimental to the national security of the United States, to recommend to the President that such sale be disapproved.

###### (b) Information to Congress on credit sales and guaranties

No credit sale shall be extended under section 2763 of this title, and no guarantee shall be issued under section 2764 of this title, in any case involving coproduction or licensed, production outside the United States of any defense article of United States origin unless the Secretary of State shall, in advance of any such transaction, advise the appropriate committees of the Congress and furnish the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the President of the Senate with full information regarding the proposed transaction, including, but not limited to, a de-

scription of the particular defense article or articles which would be produced under a license or coproduced outside the United States, the estimated value of such production or coproduction, and the probable impact of the proposed transaction on employment and production within the United States.

**(c) Availability of funds for procurement outside United States**

Funds made available under this chapter may be used for procurement outside the United States only if the President determines that such procurement will not result in adverse effects upon the economy of the United States or the industrial mobilization base, with special reference to any areas of labor surplus or to the net position of the United States in its balance of payments with the rest of the world, which outweigh the economic or other advantages to the United States of less costly procurement outside the United States.

**(d) Responsibility of Secretary of Defense with respect to sales and guaranties**

(1) With respect to sales and guaranties under sections 2761, 2762, 2763, 2764, 2769 and 2770 of this title, the Secretary of Defense shall, under the direction of the President, have primary responsibility for—

(A) the determination of military end-item requirements;

(B) the procurement of military equipment in a manner which permits its integration with service programs;

(C) the supervision of the training of foreign military personnel;

(D) the movement and delivery of military end-items; and

(E) within the Department of Defense, the performance of any other functions with respect to sales and guaranties.

(2) The establishment of priorities in the procurement, delivery, and allocation of military equipment shall, under the direction of the President, be determined by the Secretary of Defense.

**(e) Revocation and suspension provisions of contracts for sale and export licenses; appropriations for refunds**

(1) Each contract for sale entered into under sections 2761, 2762, 2769 and 2770 of this title, and each contract entered into under section 2767(d) of this title, shall provide that such contract may be canceled in whole or in part, or its execution suspended, by the United States at any time under unusual or compelling circumstances if the national interest so requires.

(2)(A) Each export license issued under section 2778 of this title shall provide that such license may be revoked, suspended, or amended by the Secretary of State, without prior notice, whenever the Secretary deems such action to be advisable.

(B) Nothing in this paragraph may be construed as limiting the regulatory authority of the President under this chapter.

(3) There are authorized to be appropriated from time to time such sums as may be necessary (A) to refund moneys received from purchasers under contracts of sale entered into

under sections 2761, 2762, 2769 and 2770 of this title, or under contracts entered into under section 2767(d) of this title, that are canceled or suspended under this subsection to the extent such moneys have previously been disbursed to private contractors and United States Government agencies for work in progress, and (B) to pay such damages and costs that accrue from the corresponding cancellation or suspension of the existing procurement contracts or United States Government agency work orders involved.

**(f) Use of civilian contract personnel in foreign countries**

The President shall, to the maximum extent possible and consistent with the purposes of this chapter, use civilian contract personnel in any foreign country to perform defense services sold under this chapter.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 4, §42, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1326; Pub. L. 92-226, pt. IV, §401(e), (f), Feb. 7, 1972, 86 Stat. 33; Pub. L. 94-141, title I, §150(b), Nov. 29, 1975, 89 Stat. 760; Pub. L. 94-329, title II, §213, title VI, §605(b), June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 745, 768; Pub. L. 96-533, title I, §105(e)(3), Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3135; Pub. L. 97-392, §2, Dec. 29, 1982, 96 Stat. 1963; Pub. L. 99-83, title I, §115(b)(3), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 201; Pub. L. 99-145, title XI, §1102(a)(4), (5), Nov. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 710; Pub. L. 99-661, div. A, title XIII, §1342(e), Nov. 14, 1986, 100 Stat. 3991; Pub. L. 103-236, title VII, §714(a)(2), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 497.)

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103-236 designated existing provisions as par. (1), redesignated former cls. (1) to (3) as cls. (A) to (C), respectively, amended cl. (C) generally, and added par. (2). Prior to being amended generally, cl. (C) read as follows: “in coordination with the Director of the United States Arms Control and Disarmament Agency, the Director’s opinion as to the extent to which such sale might contribute to an arms race, or increase the possibility of outbreak or escalation of conflict, or prejudice the development of bilateral or multilateral arms control arrangements.”

1986—Subsec. (e)(1), (3). Pub. L. 99-661 repealed section 1102(a)(4) of Pub. L. 99-145 and the amendments made by that section, and provided that this section shall apply as if that section had never been enacted. See 1985 Amendments note below.

1985—Subsec. (e)(1), (3). Pub. L. 99-83 inserted reference to contracts under section 2767(d) of this title.

Pub. L. 99-145, §1102(a)(4), which enacted amendments similar to those provided in Pub. L. 99-83, was repealed. See 1986 Amendments note below and former section 1102(a)(5) of Pub. L. 99-145 set out as a Repeals; Effective Date note under section 2752 of this title.

1982—Subsecs. (d)(1), (e)(1), (3)(A). Pub. L. 97-392 substituted “2769 and 2770” for “and 2769”.

1980—Subsecs. (d)(1), (e)(1), (3). Pub. L. 96-533, §105(e)(3), inserted reference to section 2769 of this title.

1976—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 94-329, §213, added subsec. (e).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 94-329, §605(b), added subsec. (f).

1975—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 94-141 inserted provision relating to coordination with the Director of the United States Arms Control and Disarmament Agency.

1972—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 92-226, §401(e), (f)(1), added cl. (3) and inserted “, subject to the provisions of subsection (b) of this section,” before “consideration shall also be given”, respectively.

Subsecs. (b) to (d). Pub. L. 92-226, §401(f)(2), added subsec. (b) and redesignated former subsecs. (b) and (c) as (c) and (d).

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under subssecs. (c) and (f) of this section delegated to Secretary of Defense, with concurrence of Secretary of State and Secretary of the Treasury required for any determination proposed under subsec. (c) of this section, by section 1(n) of Ex. Ord. No. 11958, Jan. 18, 1977, 42 F.R. 4311, as amended, set out as a note under section 2751 of this title.

**§ 2792. Administrative expenses****(a) Availability of funds**

Funds made available under other law for the operations of United States Government agencies carrying out functions under this chapter shall be available for the administrative expenses incurred by such agencies under this chapter.

**(b) Charges for administrative expenses and official reception and representation expenses**

Charges for administrative services calculated under section 2761(e)(1)(A) of this title shall include recovery of administrative expenses and official reception and representation expenses incurred by any department or agency of the United States Government, including any mission or group thereof, in carrying out functions under this chapter when—

(1) such functions are primarily for the benefit of any foreign country;

(2) such expenses are not directly and fully charged to, and reimbursed from amounts received for, sale of defense services under section 2761(a) of this title; and

(3) such expenses are neither salaries of the Armed Forces of the United States nor represent unfunded estimated costs of civilian retirement and other benefits.

**(c) Limitations on funds used for official reception and representation expenses**

Not more than \$72,500 of the funds derived from charges for administrative services pursuant to section 2761(e)(1)(A) of this title may be used each fiscal year for official reception and representation expenses.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 4, § 43, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1327; Pub. L. 94-329, title II, § 214, June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 746; Pub. L. 95-92, § 7(d), Aug. 4, 1977, 91 Stat. 617; Pub. L. 96-92, § 19(b), Oct. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 709; Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(10), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560; Pub. L. 99-83, title I, § 120, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 204; Pub. L. 101-165, title IX, § 9104(b)(1), Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1152.)

## AMENDMENTS

1989—Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 101-165 added par. (3).

1985—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 99-83, § 120(1), inserted “and official reception and representation expenses”.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 99-83, § 120(2), added subsec. (c).

1981—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 97-113 struck out subsec. (c) which required a Presidential report to Congress no later than Jan. 15 of each year containing analysis and description of Federal personnel arms export control services performed previous fiscal year. See section 2765(a)(6) of this title.

1979—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 96-92 added subsec. (c).

1977—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 95-92 substituted provisions relating to criteria for recovery of charges for adminis-

trative expenses calculated under section 2761(e)(1)(A) of this title, for provisions relating to reimbursement from amounts received for sales under sections 2761 and 2762 of this title of administrative expenses incurred by a United States government department or agency in carrying out functions under this chapter for the benefit of any foreign country.

1976—Pub. L. 94-329 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsec. (b).

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2291c, 2321i, 2761, 2765, 2767, 2795a of this title.

**§ 2793. Other provisions unaffected**

No provision of this chapter shall be construed as modifying in any way the provisions of the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended [42 U.S.C. 2011 et seq.], or section 7307 of title 10.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 4, § 44, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1327.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended, referred to in text, is act Aug. 30, 1954, ch. 1073, § 1, 68 Stat. 921, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 23 (§ 2011 et seq.) of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2011 of Title 42 and Tables.

## SPECIFIC APPLICATION OF OTHER PROVISIONS TO THIS CHAPTER

Except for laws specified in this section, other provisions inapplicable to this chapter without a specific reference thereto or to sales of defense articles and defense services under any Act, see section 45(c) of Pub. L. 90-629, set out as a note under section 2751 of this title.

**§ 2794. Definitions**

For purposes of this chapter, the term—

(1) “excess defense article” has the meaning provided by section 2403(g) of this title;

(2) “value” means, in the case of an excess defense article, except as otherwise provided in section 2761(a) of this title,<sup>1</sup> not less than the greater of—

(A) the gross cost incurred by the United States Government in repairing, rehabilitating, or modifying such article, plus the scrap value; or

(B) the market value, if ascertainable;

(3) “defense article”, except as provided in paragraph (7) of this section, includes—

(A) any weapon, weapons system, munition, aircraft, vessel, boat, or other implement of war,

(B) any property, installation, commodity, material, equipment, supply, or goods used for the purposes of making military sales,

(C) any machinery, facility, tool, material, supply, or other item necessary for the manufacture, production, processing, repair, servicing, storage, construction, transpor-

<sup>1</sup> So in original.



tation, operation, or use of any article listed in this paragraph, and

(D) any component or part of any article listed in this paragraph,

but does not include merchant vessels or (as defined by the Atomic Energy Act of 1954 [42 U.S.C. 2011 et seq.]) source material (except uranium depleted in the isotope 235 which is incorporated in defense articles solely to take advantage of high density or pyrophoric characteristics unrelated to radioactivity), byproduct material, special nuclear material, production facilities, utilization facilities, or atomic weapons or articles involving Restricted Data;

(4) “defense service”, except as provided in paragraph (7) of this section, includes any service, test, inspection, repair, training, publication, technical or other assistance, or defense information (as defined in section 2403(e) of this title), used for the purposes of making military sales, but does not include design and construction services under section 2769 of this title;

(5) “training” includes formal or informal instruction of foreign students in the United States or overseas by officers or employees of the United States, contract technicians, or contractors (including instruction at civilian institutions), or by correspondence courses, technical, educational, or information publications and media of all kinds, training aid, orientation, training exercise, and military advice to foreign military units and forces;

(6) “major defense equipment” means any item of significant military equipment on the United States Munitions List having a non-recurring research and development cost of more than \$50,000,000 or a total production cost of more than \$200,000,000;

(7) “defense articles and defense services” means, with respect to commercial exports subject to the provisions of section 2778 of this title, those items designated by the President pursuant to subsection (a)(1) of such section; and

(8) “design and construction services” means, with respect to sales under section 2769 of this title, the design and construction of real property facilities, including necessary construction equipment and materials, engineering services, construction contract management services relating thereto, and technical advisory assistance in the operation and maintenance of real property facilities provided or performed by any department or agency of the Department of Defense or by a contractor pursuant to a contract with such department or agency.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 4, §47, as added Pub. L. 93-189, §25(12), Dec. 17, 1973, 87 Stat. 731; amended Pub. L. 94-329, title II, §215, June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 746; Pub. L. 96-92, §22, Oct. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 710; Pub. L. 96-533, title I, §105(f), Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3135; Pub. L. 99-83, title I, §107(b), title XII, §1211(b)(3), Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 197, 279.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended, referred to in par. (3), is act Aug. 30, 1954, ch. 1073, §1, 68 Stat. 921, as amended, which is classified principally to chap-

ter 23 (§2011 et seq.) of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2011 of Title 42 and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1985—Par. (2). Pub. L. 99-83, §107(b), inserted “, except as otherwise provided in section 2761(a) of this title.”.

Par. (6). Pub. L. 99-83, §1211(b)(3), substituted “military” for “combat”.

1980—Par. (4). Pub. L. 96-533, §105(f)(1), excluded from term “defense service” design and construction services under section 2769 of this title.

Par. (8). Pub. L. 96-533, §105(f)(2)-(4), added par. (8).

1979—Par. (3). Pub. L. 96-92 defined “defense article” to include uranium depleted in the isotope 235 which is incorporated in defense articles solely to take advantage of high density or pyrophoric characteristics unrelated to radioactivity.

1976—Pars. (3) to (7). Pub. L. 94-329 added pars. (3) to (7).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2770 of this title; title 10 section 2350i; title 12 section 635.

### SUBCHAPTER V—SPECIAL DEFENSE ACQUISITION FUND

#### SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in section 2291c of this title; title 10 section 114.

#### § 2795. Fund

(a) **Establishment; purposes; special requirements and responsibilities; continuous orders for certain articles and services; articles for narcotics control purposes**

(1) Under the direction of the President and in consultation with the Secretary of State, the Secretary of Defense shall establish a Special Defense Acquisition Fund (hereafter in this subchapter referred to as the “Fund”), to be used as a revolving fund separate from other accounts, under the control of the Department of Defense, to finance the acquisition of defense articles and defense service in anticipation of their transfer pursuant to this chapter, the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.], or as otherwise authorized by law, to eligible foreign countries and international organizations, and may acquire such articles and services with the funds in the Fund as he may determine. Acquisition under this subchapter of items for which the initial issue quantity requirements for United States Armed Forces have not been fulfilled and are not under current procurement contract shall be emphasized when compatible with security assistance requirements for the transfer of such items.

(2) Nothing in this subchapter may be construed to limit or impair any responsibilities conferred upon the Secretary of State or the Secretary of Defense under this chapter or the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.].

(3) The Fund may be used to keep on continuous order such defense articles and defense serv-

ices as are assigned by the Department of Defense for integrated management by a single agency thereof for the common use of all military departments in anticipation of the transfer of similar defense articles and defense services to foreign countries and international organizations pursuant to this chapter, the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.], or other law.

(4)(A) The Fund shall also be used to acquire defense articles that are particularly suited for use for narcotics control purposes and are appropriate to the needs of recipient countries, such as small boats, planes (including helicopters), and communications equipment.

(B) Each report pursuant to section 2795b(a) of this title shall designate the defense articles that have been acquired or are to be acquired pursuant to this paragraph and the defense articles acquired under this subchapter that were transferred for use in narcotics control purposes.

**(b) Collections in Fund**

The Fund shall consist of—

(1) collections from sales made under letters of offer issued pursuant to section 2761(a)(1)(A) of this title representing the actual value of defense articles not intended to be replaced in stock,

(2) collections from sales representing the value of asset use charges (including contractor rental payments for United States Government-owned plant and production equipment) and charges for the proportionate recoupment of nonrecurring research, development, and production costs, and

(3) collections from sales made under letters of offer (or transfers made under the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.]) of defense articles and defense services acquired under this subchapter, representing the value of such items calculated in accordance with subparagraph (B) or (C) of section 2761(a)(1) of this title or section 2762 of this title or section 644(m) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2403(m)], as appropriate,

together with such funds as may be authorized and appropriated or otherwise made available for the purposes of the Fund.

**(c) Amounts**

(1) The size of the Fund may not exceed such dollar amount as is prescribed in section 114(c) of title 10. For purposes of this limitation, the size of the Fund is the amounts in the Fund plus the value (in terms of acquisition cost) of the defense articles acquired under this subchapter which have not been transferred from the Fund in accordance with this subchapter.

(2) Amounts in the Fund shall be available for obligation in any fiscal year only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriation Acts.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 5, § 51, as added Pub. L. 97-113, title I, § 108(a), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1522; amended Pub. L. 99-83, title I, § 121, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 204; Pub. L. 99-139, § 1(a), Oct. 30, 1985, 99 Stat. 562; Pub. L. 99-433, title I, § 110(h)(1), Oct. 1, 1986, 100 Stat. 1004; Pub. L. 101-231, § 4, Dec. 13, 1989, 103 Stat. 1957.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (b)(3), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 32 (§ 2151 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1989—Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 101-231 added par. (4).

1986—Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 99-433 substituted “section 114(c)” for “section 138(g)”.

1985—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 99-83, § 121(a), added par. (3).

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 99-139 amended subsec. (b) generally, so as to read similar to how it read prior to the amendment by Pub. L. 99-83.

Pub. L. 99-83 amended subsec. (b) to read as follows: “The Fund shall consist of collections from sales made under letters of offer, or transfers made under the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, of defense articles and defense services acquired under this subchapter (representing the value of such items calculated in accordance with subparagraph (B) or (C) of section 2761(a)(1) of this title or section 2762 of this title or section 644(m) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as appropriate), together with such funds as may be authorized and appropriated or otherwise made available for the purposes of the Fund.”

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENTS

Section 1(b) of Pub. L. 99-139 provided that: “The amendment made by subsection (a) [amending this section] shall take effect as of October 1, 1985.”

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-83 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 1301 of Pub. L. 99-83, set out as a note under section 2151-1 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 10 section 114.

**§ 2795a. Use and transfer of items procured by Fund**

**(a) Authorization**

No defense article or defense service acquired by the Secretary of Defense under this subchapter may be transferred to any foreign country or international organization unless such transfer is authorized by this chapter, the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.], or other law.

**(b) Temporary use**

The President may authorize the temporary use by the United States Armed Forces of defense articles and defense services acquired under this subchapter prior to their transfer to a foreign country or international organization, if such is necessary to meet national defense requirements and the United States Armed Forces bear the costs of operation and maintenance of such articles or services while in their use and the costs of restoration or replacement upon the termination of such use.

**(c) Storage, maintenance and other costs**

Except as provided in subsection (b) of this section, the Fund may be used to pay for storage, maintenance, and other costs related to the preservation and preparation for transfer of defense articles and defense services acquired under this subchapter prior to their transfer, as well as the administrative costs of the Department of Defense incurred in the acquisition of

such items to the extent not reimbursed pursuant to section 2792(b) of this title.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 5, § 52, as added Pub. L. 97-113, title I, § 108(a), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1523.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 32 (§ 2151 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under subsec. (b) of this section delegated to Secretary of Defense by section 1(o) of Ex. Ord. No. 11958, Jan. 18, 1977, 42 F.R. 4311, as amended, set out as a note under section 2751 of this title.

### § 2795b. Annual reports to Congress

#### (a) Comprehensive report on acquisitions of defense articles and services

Not later than December 31 of each year, the President shall submit to the Congress a comprehensive report on acquisitions of defense articles and defense services under this subchapter. Each such report shall include—

(1) a description of each contract for the acquisition of defense articles or defense services under this subchapter which was entered into during the preceding fiscal year;

(2) a description of each contract for the acquisition of defense articles or defense services under this subchapter which the President anticipates will be entered into during the current fiscal year;

(3) a description of each defense article or defense service acquired under this subchapter which was transferred to a foreign country or international organization during the preceding fiscal year; and

(4) an evaluation of the impact of the utilization of the authority of this subchapter on United States defense production and the readiness of the United States Armed Forces.

#### (b) Estimate of likely procurements to be made through Fund

As part of the annual written report to the Congress required by section 2431(a) of title 10, regarding procurement schedules for each weapon system for which funding authorization is required, the President shall provide a report estimating the likely procurements to be made through the Fund.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 5, § 53, as added Pub. L. 97-113, title I, § 108(a), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1524; amended Pub. L. 99-433, title I, § 110(h)(2), Oct. 1, 1986, 100 Stat. 1004.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1986—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 99-433 substituted “section 2431(a)” for “section 139(a)”.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of Defense by section 1(o) of Ex. Ord. No. 11958, Jan. 18, 1977, 42 F.R. 4311, as amended, set out as a note under section 2751 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2795 of this title.

## SUBCHAPTER VI—LEASES OF DEFENSE ARTICLES AND LOAN AUTHORITY FOR COOPERATIVE RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT PURPOSES

#### SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in section 2291c of this title; title 10 section 7307.

### § 2796. Leasing authority

#### (a) Preconditions

The President may lease defense articles in the stocks of the Department of Defense to an eligible foreign country or international organization if—

(1) he determines that there are compelling foreign policy and national security reasons for providing such articles on a lease basis rather than on a sales basis under this chapter;

(2) he determines that the articles are not for the time needed for public use;

(3) the President first considers the effects of the lease of the articles on the national technology and industrial base, particularly the extent, if any, to which the lease reduces the opportunities of entities in the national technology and industrial base to sell new equipment to the country or countries to which the articles are leased; and

(4) the country or international organization has agreed to pay in United States dollars all costs incurred by the United States Government in leasing such articles, including reimbursement for depreciation of such articles while leased, the costs of restoration or replacement if the articles are damaged while leased, and the replacement cost (less any depreciation in the value) of the articles if the articles are lost or destroyed while leased.

The requirement of paragraph (4) shall not apply to leases entered into for purposes of cooperative research or development, military exercises, or communications or electronics interface projects, or to any defense article which has passed three-quarters of its normal service life. The President may waive the requirement of paragraph (4) with respect to a lease which is made in exchange with the lessee for a lease on substantially reciprocal terms of defense articles for the Department of Defense, except that this waiver authority—

(A) may be exercised only if the President submits to the Committee on Foreign Affairs and the Committee on Appropriations of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations and the Committee on Appropriations of the Senate, in accordance with the regular notification procedures of those Committees, a detailed notification for each lease with respect to which the authority is exercised; and

(B) may be exercised only during the fiscal year 1995 and only with respect to one country, unless the Congress hereafter provides otherwise.

The preceding sentence does not constitute authorization of appropriations for payments by the United States for leased articles.

**(b) Duration; termination**

Each lease agreement under this section shall be for a fixed duration of not to exceed five years and shall provide that, at any time during the duration of the lease, the President may terminate the lease and require the immediate return of the leased articles.

**(c) Applicable statutory authorities**

Defense articles in the stocks of the Department of Defense may be leased or loaned to a foreign country or international organization only under the authority of this subchapter or chapter 2 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2311 et seq.], and may not be leased to a foreign country or international organization under the authority of section 2667 of title 10.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 6, § 61, as added Pub. L. 97-113, title I, § 109(a), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1524; amended Pub. L. 99-500, § 147, Oct. 18, 1986, 100 Stat. 1783-351, and Pub. L. 99-591, § 147, Oct. 30, 1986, 100 Stat. 3341-354; Pub. L. 100-202, § 101(e) [title V, § 556], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-170; Pub. L. 100-461, title V, § 552, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-35; Pub. L. 101-167, title V, § 550, Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1235; Pub. L. 101-513, title V, § 546, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2019; Pub. L. 102-145, § 118, as added Pub. L. 102-266, § 102, Apr. 1, 1992, 106 Stat. 93; Pub. L. 102-391, title V, § 544, Oct. 6, 1992, 106 Stat. 1672; Pub. L. 103-87, title V, § 524, Sept. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 952; Pub. L. 103-236, title VII, § 731(e), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 503; Pub. L. 103-306, title V, § 524, Aug. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 1632.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (c), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended. Chapter 2 of part II of that Act is classified generally to part II (§ 2311 et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

## CODIFICATION

Amendment by Pub. L. 102-145 is based on section 545 of H.R. 2621, One Hundred Second Congress, 1st Session, as passed by the House of Representatives on June 19, 1991, which was enacted into law by Pub. L. 102-145, § 118, as added by Pub. L. 102-266, § 102, Apr. 1, 1992, 106 Stat. 93. Section 118 of Pub. L. 102-145 provided that the authority and conditions provided in such section 545 shall be applicable to funds appropriated by Pub. L. 102-145 (and are hereby enacted) in lieu of the authority and conditions provided in section 546 of Pub. L. 101-513. See 1990, 1991, and 1992 Amendment notes below.

Pub. L. 99-591 is a corrected version of Pub. L. 99-500.

## AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103-306 substituted “1995” for “1994” in par. (B).

Pub. L. 103-236 struck out “and” at end of par. (2), added par. (3), redesignated former par. (3) as (4), and substituted “paragraph (4)” for “paragraph (3)” in two places in provisions following par. (4).

1993—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103-87 substituted “1994” for “1993” in par. (B).

1992—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 102-391 substituted “1993” for “1992” in par. (B).

Pub. L. 102-266 added Pub. L. 102-145, § 118. See 1991 Amendment note below.

1991—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 102-145, § 118, as added by Pub. L. 102-266, substituted “1992” for “1991” in par. (B). See Codification note above.

1990—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 101-513 substituted “1991” for “1990” in par. (B).

1989—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 101-167 substituted “1990” for “1989” in par. (B).

1988—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 100-461 substituted “1989” for “1988” in par. (B).

1987—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 100-202 substituted “1988” for “1987” in par. (B).

1986—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99-500 and Pub. L. 99-591 inserted provision authorizing the President to waive the requirements of par. (3) with respect to a lease which is made in exchange with the lessee for a lease on substantially reciprocal terms of defense articles for the Department of Defense and providing exceptions to such waiver authority.

## CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of Defense by section 1(p) of Ex. Ord. No. 11958, Jan. 18, 1977, 42 F.R. 4311, as amended, set out as a note under section 2751 of this title.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2291c of this title.

**§ 2796a. Reports to Congress****(a) Written certification to Speaker of the House and chairmen of Congressional committees**

Not less than 30 days before entering into or renewing any agreement with a foreign country or international organization to lease any defense article under this subchapter, or to loan any defense article under chapter 2 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2311 et seq.], for a period of one year or longer, the President shall transmit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives, and to the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the chairman of the Committee on Armed Services of the Senate, a written certification which specifies—

(1) the country or international organization to which the defense article is to be leased or loaned;

(2) the type, quantity, and value (in terms of replacement cost) of the defense article to be leased or loaned;

(3) the terms and duration of the lease or loan; and

(4) a justification for the lease or loan, including an explanation of why the defense article is being leased or loaned rather than sold under this chapter.

**(b) Waiver; determination of emergency**

The President may waive the requirements of this section (and in the case of an agreement described in section 2796b of this title, may waive the provisions of that section) if he determines, and immediately reports to the Congress, that an emergency exists which requires that the lease or loan be entered into immediately in the national security interests of the United States.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 6, § 62, as added Pub. L. 97-113, title I, § 109(a), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1525.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended. Chapter 2 of part II of that Act is classified generally to part II (§2311 et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

## CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Armed Services of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on National Security of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under subsec. (a) of this section delegated to Secretary of Defense by section 1(p) of Ex. Ord. No. 11958, Jan. 18, 1977, 42 F.R. 4311, as amended, set out as a note under section 2751 of this title.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2796b of this title.

**§ 2796b. Legislative review procedures****(a) Applicability**

(1) In the case of any agreement involving the lease under this subchapter, or the loan under chapter 2 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2311 et seq.], to any foreign country or international organization for a period of one year or longer of any defense articles which are either (i) major defense equipment valued (in terms of its replacement cost less any depreciation in its value) at \$14,000,000 or more, or (ii) defense articles valued (in terms of their replacement cost less any depreciation in their value) at \$50,000,000 or more, the agreement may not be entered into or renewed if the Congress, within 30 calendar days after receiving the certification with respect to that proposed agreement pursuant to section 2796a(a) of this title, enacts a joint resolution prohibiting the proposed lease or loan.

(2) This section shall not apply with respect to a loan or lease to the North Atlantic Treaty Organization, any member country of that Organization, Japan, Australia, or New Zealand.

**(b) Consideration of resolution**

Any joint resolution under subsection (a) of this section shall be considered in the Senate in accordance with the provisions of section 601(b) of the International Security Assistance and Arms Export Control Act of 1976.

**(c) Highly privileged nature of resolution**

For the purpose of expediting the consideration and enactment of joint resolutions under subsection (a) of this section, a motion to proceed to the consideration of any such joint resolution after it has been reported by the appropriate committee shall be treated as highly privileged in the House of Representatives.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 6, § 63, as added Pub. L. 97-113, title I, § 109(a), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1525; amended Pub. L. 99-247, § 1(d), Feb. 12, 1986, 100 Stat. 9.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (a)(1), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as

amended. Chapter 2 of part II of that Act is classified generally to part II (§2311 et seq.) of subchapter II of this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

Section 601(b) of the International Security Assistance and Arms Export Control Act of 1976, referred to in subsec. (b), is section 601(b) of Pub. L. 94-329, June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 765, which made provision for expedited procedures in the Senate, and was not classified to the Code.

## AMENDMENTS

1986—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 99-247, § 1(d)(1), substituted “enacts a joint resolution prohibiting” for “adopts a concurrent resolution stating that it objects to”.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 99-247, § 1(d)(2), inserted “joint” before “resolution”.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 99-247, § 1(d)(3), substituted “enactment of joint resolutions” for “adoption of concurrent resolutions” and “such joint resolution” for “such resolution”.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2796a of this title.

**§ 2796c. Applicability of other statutory provisions**

Any reference to sales of defense articles under this chapter in any provision of law restricting the countries or organizations to which such sales may be made shall be deemed to include a reference to leases of defense articles under this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 6, § 64, as added Pub. L. 97-113, title I, § 109(a), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1526.)

**§ 2796d. Loan of materials, supplies, and equipment for research and development purposes****(a) Loan or gift transactions; written agreement; covered programs**

(1) Except as provided in subsection (c) of this section, the Secretary of Defense may loan to a country that is a NATO or major non-NATO ally materials, supplies, or equipment for the purpose of carrying out a program of cooperative research, development, testing, or evaluation. The Secretary may accept as a loan or a gift from a country that is a NATO or major non-NATO ally materials, supplies, or equipment for such purpose.

(2) Each loan or gift transaction entered into by the Secretary under this section shall be provided for under the terms of a written agreement between the Secretary and the country concerned.

(3) A program of testing or evaluation for which the Secretary may loan materials, supplies, or equipment under this section includes a program of testing or evaluation conducted solely for the purpose of standardization, interchangeability, or technical evaluation if the country to which the materials, supplies, or equipment are loaned agrees to provide the results of the testing or evaluation to the United States without charge.

**(b) Reimbursement of consumed materials, etc.**

The materials, supplies, or equipment loaned to a country under this section may be expended

or otherwise consumed in connection with any testing or evaluation program without a requirement for reimbursement of the United States if the Secretary—

(1) determines that the success of the research, development, test, or evaluation depends upon expending or otherwise consuming the materials, supplies, or equipment loaned to the country; and

(2) approves of the expenditure or consumption of such materials, supplies, or equipment.

**(c) Prohibitions**

The Secretary of Defense may not loan to a country under this section any material if the material is a strategic and critical material and if, at the time the loan is to be made, the quantity of the material in the National Defense Stockpile (provided for under section 98b of title 50) is less than the quantity of such material to be stockpiled, as determined by the President under section 98b(a) of title 50.

**(d) “NATO or major non-NATO ally” defined**

For purposes of this section, the term “NATO or major non-NATO ally” means a member country of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (other than the United States) or a foreign country other than a member nation of NATO designated as a major non-NATO ally under section 2350a(i)(3) of title 10.

(Pub. L. 90–629, ch. 6, §65, as added Pub. L. 100–456, div. A, title X, §1003(a), Sept. 29, 1988, 102 Stat. 2038; amended Pub. L. 102–25, title VII, §705(d)(2), Apr. 6, 1991, 105 Stat. 120.)

AMENDMENTS

1991—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 102–25 substituted “section 2350a(i)(3) of title 10” for “section 2767a of this title”.

SUBCHAPTER VII—CONTROL OF MISSILES AND MISSILE EQUIPMENT OR TECHNOLOGY

SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in title 50 App. section 2410b.

**§ 2797. Licensing**

**(a) Establishment of list of controlled items**

The Secretary of State, in consultation with the Secretary of Defense, the Director of the Arms Control and Disarmament Agency, and the heads of other appropriate departments and agencies, shall establish and maintain, as part of the United States Munitions List, a list of all items on the MTCR Annex the export of which is not controlled under section 2405(l) of title 50, Appendix.

**(b) Referral of license applications**

(1) A determination of the Secretary of State to approve a license for the export of an item on the list established under subsection (a) of this section may be made only after the license application is referred to the Secretary of Defense and the Director of the United States Arms Control and Disarmament Agency.

(2) Within 10 days after a license is issued for the export of an item on the list established under subsection (a) of this section, the Sec-

retary of State shall provide to the Secretary of Defense, the Secretary of Commerce, and the Director of the United States Arms Control and Disarmament Agency the license application and accompanying documents issued to the applicant, to the extent that the relevant Secretary or the Director indicates the need to receive such application and documents.

**(c) Information sharing**

The Secretary of State shall establish a procedure for sharing information with appropriate officials of the intelligence community, as determined by the Director of Central Intelligence, with the Director of the United States Arms Control and Disarmament Agency, and with other appropriate Government agencies, that will ensure effective monitoring of transfers of MTCR equipment or technology and other missile technology.

**(d) Exports to space launch vehicle programs**

Within 15 days after the issuance of a license for the export of items valued at less than \$14,000,000 that are controlled under this chapter pursuant to United States obligations under the Missile Technology Control Regime and intended to support the design, development, or production of a space launch vehicle system listed in Category I of the MTCR Annex, the Secretary shall transmit to the Congress a report describing the licensed export and rationale for approving such export, including the consistency of such export with United States missile nonproliferation policy. The requirement contained in the preceding sentence shall not apply to licenses for exports to countries that were members of the MTCR as of April 17, 1987.

(Pub. L. 90–629, ch. 7, §71, as added Pub. L. 101–510, div. A, title XVII, §1703, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1745; amended Pub. L. 103–236, title VII, §§714(a)(3)–(6), 735(c), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 497, 506.)

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103–236, §714(a)(3), inserted “, the Director of the Arms Control and Disarmament Agency,” after “the Secretary of Defense”.

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 103–236, §714(a)(4), inserted “and the Director of the United States Arms Control and Disarmament Agency” after “Secretary of Defense”.

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 103–236, §714(a)(5), substituted “, the Secretary of Commerce, and the Director of the United States Arms Control and Disarmament Agency” for “and the Secretary of Commerce” and inserted “or the Director” after “relevant Secretary”.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 103–236, §714(a)(6), inserted “with the Director of the United States Arms Control and Disarmament Agency,” after “Director of Central Intelligence,”.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 103–236, §735(c), added subsec. (d).

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Memorandum of President of the United States, June 25, 1991, 56 F.R. 31041, which provided for delegation of certain functions of the President, was superseded by Ex. Ord. No. 12851, §7, June 11, 1993, 58 F.R. 33181, set out below.

REPORT ON MISSILE PROLIFERATION

Section 1704 of Pub. L. 101–510 directed President to submit to Congress reports on international transfers of aircraft which the Secretary had reason to believe

may be intended to be used for delivery of nuclear, biological, or chemical weapons and international transfers of MTCR equipment or technology to any country seeking to acquire such equipment or technology, and which provided for contents of reports, countries excluded from such reports, classification of information, and definitions, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 102-190, div. A, title X, §1097(g), Dec. 5, 1991, 105 Stat. 1491. See section 1097 of Pub. L. 102-190, set out as a note under section 2751 of this title.

EX. ORD. NO. 12851. ADMINISTRATION OF PROLIFERATION SANCTIONS, MIDDLE EAST ARMS CONTROL, AND RELATED CONGRESSIONAL REPORTING RESPONSIBILITIES

Ex. Ord. No. 12851, June 11, 1993, 58 F.R. 33181, provided:

By the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of America, including section 301 of title 3, United States Code; sections 1701-1703 of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 1991, Public Law 101-510 (50 U.S.C. App. 2402 note, 2405, 2410b; 22 U.S.C. 2797-2797c); sections 303, 324 [105 Stat. 708, 711], and 401-405 [22 U.S.C. 2778 note] of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1992 and 1993, Public Law 102-138; sections 305-308 of the Chemical and Biological Weapons Control and Warfare Elimination Act of 1991, Public Law 102-182 (50 U.S.C. App. 2410c; 22 U.S.C. 2798, 5604-5606); sections 241 [105 Stat. 1326] and 1097 [22 U.S.C. 2751 note] of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Years 1992 and 1993, Public Law 102-190; and section 1364 of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 1993, Public Law 102-484 [106 Stat. 2561], I hereby order as follows:

SECTION 1. *Chemical and Biological Weapons Proliferation and Use Sanctions.* (a) *Chemical and Biological Weapons Proliferation.* The authority and duties vested in me by section 81 of the Arms Export Control Act, as amended ("AECA") (22 U.S.C. 2798), and section 11C of the Export Administration Act of 1979, as amended ("EAA") (50 U.S.C. App. 2410c), are delegated to the Secretary of State, except that:

(1) The authority and duties vested in me to deny certain United States Government contracts, as provided in section 81(c)(1)(A) of the AECA and section 11C(c)(1)(A) of the EAA, pursuant to a determination made by the Secretary of State under section 81(a)(1) of the AECA or section 11C(a)(1) of the EAA, as well as the authority and duties vested in me to make the determinations provided for in section 81(c)(2) of the AECA and section 11C(c)(2) of the EAA are delegated to the Secretary of Defense. The Secretary of Defense shall notify the Secretary of the Treasury of determinations made pursuant to section 81(c)(2) of the AECA and section 11C(c)(2) [11C(c)(2)] of the EAA.

(2) The authority and duties vested in me to prohibit certain imports as provided in section 81(c)(1)(B) of the AECA and section 11C(c)(1)(B) of the EAA, pursuant to a determination made by the Secretary of State under section 81(a)(1) of the AECA or section 11C(a)(1) of the EAA, and the obligation to implement the exceptions provided in section 81(c)(2) of the AECA and section 11C(c)(2) of the EAA, insofar as the exceptions affect imports of goods into the United States, are delegated to the Secretary of the Treasury.

(b) *Chemical and Biological Weapons Use.* The authority and duties vested in me by sections 306-308 of the Chemical and Biological Weapons Control and Warfare Elimination Act of 1991 (22 U.S.C. 5604-5606) are delegated to the Secretary of State, except that:

(1) The authority and duties vested in me to restrict certain imports as provided in section 307(b)(2)(D) [22 U.S.C. 5605(b)(2)(D)], pursuant to a determination made by the Secretary of State under section 307(b)(1), are delegated to the Secretary of the Treasury.

(2) The Secretary of State shall issue, transmit to the Congress, and notify the Secretary of the Treasury of, as appropriate, waivers based upon findings made pursuant to section 307(d)(1)(A)(ii).

(3) The authority and duties vested in me to prohibit certain exports as provided in section 307(a)(5) and sec-

tion 307(b)(2)(C), pursuant to a determination made by the Secretary of State under section 306(a)(1) and section 307(b)(1), are delegated to the Secretary of Commerce.

(c) *Coordination Among Agencies.* The Secretaries designated in this section shall exercise all functions delegated to them by this section in consultation with the Secretary of State, the Secretary of Defense, the Secretary of the Treasury, the Secretary of Commerce, the Director of the Arms Control and Disarmament Agency, and other departments and agencies as appropriate, utilizing the appropriate interagency groups prior to any determination to exercise the prohibition authority delegated hereby.

SEC. 2. *Missile Proliferation Sanctions.* (a) *Arms Export Control Act.* The authority and duties vested in me by sections 72-73 of the AECA (22 U.S.C. 2797a-2797b) are delegated to the Secretary of State, except that:

(1) The authority and duties vested in me by section 72(a)(1) to make determinations with respect to violations by United States persons of the EAA [50 App. U.S.C. 2401 et seq.] are delegated to the Secretary of Commerce.

(2) The authority and duties vested in me to deny certain United States Government contracts as provided in sections 73(a)(2)(A)(i) and 73(a)(2)(B)(i), pursuant to a determination made by the Secretary of State under section 73(a)(1), as well as the authority and duties vested in me to make the findings provided in sections 72(c), 73(f), and 73(g)(1), are delegated to the Secretary of Defense. The Secretary of State shall issue, transmit to the Congress, and notify the Secretary of the Treasury of, as appropriate, any waivers based upon findings made pursuant to sections 72(c) and 73(f).

(3) The authority and duties vested in me to prohibit certain imports as provided in section 73(a)(2)(C), pursuant to a determination made by the Secretary of State under that section, and the obligation to implement the exceptions provided in section 73(g), are delegated to the Secretary of the Treasury.

(b) *Export Administration Act.* The authority and duties vested in me by section 11B of the EAA (50 U.S.C. App. 2410b) are delegated to the Secretary of Commerce, except that:

(1) The authority and duties vested in me by sections 11B(a)(1)(A) (insofar as such section authorizes determinations with respect to violations by United States persons of the AECA [22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.]), 11B(b)(1) (insofar as such section authorizes determinations regarding activities by foreign persons), and 11B(b)(5) are delegated to the Secretary of State.

(2) The authority and duties vested in me to make the findings provided in sections 11B(a)(3), 11B(b)(6), and 11B(b)(7)(A) are delegated to the Secretary of Defense. The Secretary of Commerce shall issue, transmit to the Congress, and notify the Secretary of the Treasury of, as appropriate, waivers based upon findings made pursuant to section 11B(a)(3). The Secretary of State shall issue, transmit to the Congress, and notify the Secretary of the Treasury of, as appropriate, waivers based upon findings made pursuant to section 11B(b)(6).

(3) The authority and duties vested in me to prohibit certain imports as provided in section 11B(b)(1), pursuant to a determination by the Secretary of State under that section, and the obligation to implement the exceptions provided in section 11B(b)(7), are delegated to the Secretary of the Treasury.

(c) *Reporting Requirements.* The authority and duties vested in me to make certain reports to the Congress as provided in section 1097 of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Years 1992 and 1993 [22 U.S.C. 2751 note] and section 1364 of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 1993 [Pub. L. 102-484, 106 Stat. 2561] are delegated to the Secretary of State.

(d) *Coordination Among Agencies.* The Secretaries designated in this section shall exercise all functions delegated to them by this section in consultation with the Secretary of State, the Secretary of Defense, the Secretary of the Treasury, the Secretary of Commerce, the

Director of the Arms Control and Disarmament Agency, and other departments and agencies as appropriate, utilizing the appropriate interagency groups prior to any determination to exercise prohibition authority delegated hereby.

SEC. 3. *Arms Control in the Middle East.* The certification and reporting functions vested in me by sections 403 and 404 of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1992 and 1993 [22 U.S.C. 2778 note], are delegated to the Secretary of State. The Secretary of State shall exercise these functions in consultation with the Secretary of Defense and other agencies as appropriate.

SEC. 4. *China and Weapons Proliferation.* The reporting functions regarding China and weapons proliferation vested in me by sections 303(a)(2) and 324 of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1992 and 1993 [Pub. L. 102-138, 105 Stat. 709, 711], are delegated to the Secretary of State. The Secretary of State shall exercise these functions in consultation with the Secretary of Defense and other agencies as appropriate.

SEC. 5. *Arrow Tactical Anti-Missile Program.* The authority and duties vested in me to make certain certifications as provided by section 241(b)(3)(C) of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Years 1992 and 1993 [Pub. L. 102-190, 105 Stat. 1327] are delegated to the Secretary of State.

SEC. 6. *Delegations.* The functions delegated herein may be redelegated as appropriate. Regulations necessary to carry out the functions delegated herein may be issued as appropriate.

SEC. 7. *Priority.* This order supercedes the Memorandum of the President, "Delegation of Authority Regarding Missile Technology Proliferation," June 25, 1991. To the extent that this order is inconsistent with any provisions of any prior Executive order or Presidential memorandum, this order shall control.

WILLIAM J. CLINTON.

### § 2797a. Denial of transfer of missile equipment or technology by United States persons

#### (a) Sanctions

(1) If the President determines that a United States person knowingly—

(A) exports, transfers, or otherwise engages in the trade of any item on the MTCR Annex, in violation of the provisions of section 2778 of this title, section 2404 or 2405 of title 50, Appendix, or any regulations or orders issued under any such provisions,

(B) conspires to or attempts to engage in such export, transfer, or trade, or

(C) facilitates such export, transfer, or trade by any other person,

then the President shall impose the applicable sanctions described in paragraph (2).

(2) The sanctions which apply to a United States person under paragraph (1) are the following:

(A) If the item on the MTCR Annex involved in the export, transfer, or trade is missile equipment or technology within category II of the MTCR Annex, then the President shall deny to such United States person for a period of 2 years—

(i) United States Government contracts relating to missile equipment or technology; and

(ii) licenses for the transfer of missile equipment or technology controlled under this chapter.

(B) If the item on the MTCR Annex involved in the export, transfer, or trade is missile equipment or technology within category I of

the MTCR, then the President shall deny to such United States person for a period of not less than 2 years—

(i) all United States Government contracts, and

(ii) all export licenses and agreements for items on the United States Munitions List.

#### (b) Discretionary sanctions

In the case of any determination made pursuant to subsection (a) of this section, the President may pursue any penalty provided in section 2778(c) of this title.

#### (c) Presumption

In determining whether to apply sanctions under subsection (a) of this section to a United States person involved in the export, transfer, or trade of an item on the MTCR Annex, it should be a rebuttable presumption that such item is designed for use in a missile listed in the MTCR Annex if the President determines that the final destination of the item is a country the government of which the Secretary of State has determined, for purposes of 2405(j)(1)(A)<sup>1</sup> of title 50, Appendix, has repeatedly provided support for acts of international terrorism.

#### (d) Waiver

The President may waive the imposition of sanctions under subsection (a) of this section with respect to a product or service if the President certifies to the Congress that—

(1) the product or service is essential to the national security of the United States; and

(2) such person is a sole source supplier of the product or service, the product or service is not available from any alternative reliable supplier, and the need for the product or service cannot be met in a timely manner by improved manufacturing processes or technological developments.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 7, § 72, as added Pub. L. 101-510, div. A, title XVII, § 1703, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1745; amended Pub. L. 103-236, title VII, § 734(a), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 505.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 103-236 added subsec. (c) and redesignated former subsec. (c) as (d).

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

For delegation of certain functions of the President under this section, see Ex. Ord. No. 12851, § 2(a), June 11, 1993, 58 F.R. 33181, set out as a note under section 2797 of this title.

### § 2797b. Transfers of missile equipment or technology by foreign persons

#### (a) Sanctions

(1) Subject to subsections (c) through (g)<sup>1</sup> of this section, if the President determines that a foreign person, after November 5, 1990, knowingly—

(A) exports, transfers, or otherwise engages in the trade of any MTCR equipment or technology that contributes to the acquisition, design, development, or production of missiles in a country that is not an MTCR adherent and

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be preceded by "section".

<sup>2</sup> See References in Text note below.



would be, if it were United States-origin equipment or technology, subject to the jurisdiction of the United States under this chapter.

(B) conspires to or attempts to engage in such export, transfer, or trade, or

(C) facilitates such export, transfer, or trade by any other person,

or if the President has made a determination with respect to a foreign person under section 2410b(b)(1) of title 50, Appendix, then the President shall impose on that foreign person the applicable sanctions under paragraph (2).

(2) The sanctions which apply to a foreign person under paragraph (1) are the following:

(A) If the item involved in the export, transfer, or trade is within category II of the MTCR Annex, then the President shall deny, for a period of 2 years—

(i) United States Government contracts relating to missile equipment or technology; and

(ii) licenses for the transfer to such foreign person of missile equipment or technology controlled under this chapter.

(B) If the item involved in the export, transfer, or trade is within category I of the MTCR Annex, then the President shall deny, for a period of not less than 2 years—

(i) all United States Government contracts with such foreign person; and

(ii) licenses for the transfer to such foreign person of all items on the United States Munitions List.

(C) If, in addition to actions taken under subparagraphs (A) and (B), the President determines that the export, transfer, or trade has substantially contributed to the design, development, or production of missiles in a country that is not an MTCR adherent, then the President shall prohibit, for a period of not less than 2 years, the importation into the United States of products produced by that foreign person.

**(b) Inapplicability with respect to MTCR adherents**

Subsection (a) of this section does not apply with respect to—

(1) any export, transfer, or trading activity that is authorized by the laws of an MTCR adherent, if such authorization is not obtained by misrepresentation or fraud; or

(2) any export, transfer, or trade of an item to an end user in a country that is an MTCR adherent.

**(c) Effect of enforcement actions by MTCR adherents**

Sanctions set forth in subsection (a) of this section may not be imposed under this section on a person with respect to acts described in such subsection or, if such sanctions are in effect against a person on account of such acts, such sanctions shall be terminated, if an MTCR adherent is taking judicial or other enforcement action against that person with respect to such acts, or that person has been found by the government of an MTCR adherent to be innocent of wrongdoing with respect to such acts.

**(d) Advisory opinions**

The Secretary of State, in consultation with the Secretary of Defense, the Secretary of Commerce, and the Director of the United States Arms Control and Disarmament Agency, may, upon the request of any person, issue an advisory opinion to that person as to whether a proposed activity by that person would subject that person to sanctions under this section. Any person who relies in good faith on such an advisory opinion which states that the proposed activity would not subject a person to such sanctions, and any person who thereafter engages in such activity, may not be made subject to such sanctions on account of such activity.

**(e) Waiver and report to Congress**

(1) In any case other than one in which an advisory opinion has been issued under subsection (d) of this section stating that a proposed activity would not subject a person to sanctions under this section, the President may waive the application of subsection (a) of this section to a foreign person if the President determines that such waiver is essential to the national security of the United States.

(2) In the event that the President decides to apply the waiver described in paragraph (1), the President shall so notify the Congress not less than 20 working days before issuing the waiver. Such notification shall include a report fully articulating the rationale and circumstances which led the President to apply the waiver.

**(f) Presumption**

In determining whether to apply sanctions under subsection (a) of this section to a foreign person involved in the export, transfer, or trade of an item on the MTCR Annex, it should be a rebuttable presumption that such item is designed for use in a missile listed in the MTCR Annex if the President determines that the final destination of the item is a country the government of which the Secretary of State has determined, for purposes of 2405(j)(1)(A)<sup>2</sup> of title 50, Appendix, has repeatedly provided support for acts of international terrorism.

**(g) Additional waiver**

The President may waive the imposition of sanctions under paragraph (1) on a person with respect to a product or service if the President certifies to the Congress that—

(1) the product or service is essential to the national security of the United States; and

(2) such person is a sole source supplier of the product or service, the product or service is not available from any alternative reliable supplier, and the need for the product or service cannot be met in a timely manner by improved manufacturing processes or technological developments.

**(h) Exceptions**

The President shall not apply the sanction under this section prohibiting the importation of the products of a foreign person—

(1) in the case of procurement of defense articles or defense services—

(A) under existing contracts or subcontracts, including the exercise of options

<sup>2</sup> So in original. Probably should be preceded by "section".

for production quantities to satisfy requirements essential to the national security of the United States;

(B) if the President determines that the person to which the sanctions would be applied is a sole source supplier of the defense articles and services, that the defense articles or services are essential to the national security of the United States, and that alternative sources are not readily or reasonably available; or

(C) if the President determines that such articles or services are essential to the national security of the United States under defense coproduction agreements or NATO Programs of Cooperation;

(2) to products or services provided under contracts entered into before the date on which the President publishes his intention to impose the sanctions; or

(3) to—

(A) spare parts,

(B) component parts, but not finished products, essential to United States products or production,

(C) routine services and maintenance of products, to the extent that alternative sources are not readily or reasonably available, or

(D) information and technology essential to United States products or production.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 7, §73, as added Pub. L. 101-510, div. A, title XVII, §1703, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1746; amended Pub. L. 102-138, title III, §323(a), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 711; Pub. L. 103-236, title VII, §§714(a)(7), 734(b), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 497, 505.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Subsections (f) and (g) of this section, referred to in subsec. (a)(1), were redesignated subsections (g) and (h), respectively, by Pub. L. 103-236, title VII, §734(b)(1), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 505.

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 103-236, §714(a)(7), substituted “, the Secretary of Commerce, and the Director of the United States Arms Control and Disarmament Agency,” for “and the Secretary of Commerce.”

Subsecs. (f) to (h). Pub. L. 103-236, §734(b), added subsec. (f) and redesignated former subsections (f) and (g) as (g) and (h), respectively.

1991—Subsec. (a)(1)(A). Pub. L. 102-138 inserted “acquisition,” before “design.”

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

For delegation of certain functions of the President under this section, see Ex. Ord. No. 12851, §2(a), June 11, 1993, 58 F.R. 33181, set out as a note under section 2797 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 50 App. section 2410b.

### § 2797b-1. Notification of admittance of MTCR adherents

Following any action by the United States that results in a country becoming a MTCR adherent, the President shall transmit promptly to the Congress a report which describes the rationale for such action, together with an assess-

ment of that country's nonproliferation policies, practices, and commitments. Such report shall also include the text of any agreements or understandings between the United States and such country regarding the terms and conditions of the country's adherence to the MTCR.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 7, §73A, as added Pub. L. 103-236, title VII, §735(d), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 506.)

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of State by Memorandum of President of the United States, July 26, 1994, 59 F.R. 40205, set out as a note under section 2370a of this title.

### § 2797c. Definitions

For purposes of this subchapter—

(1) the term “missile” means a category I system as defined in the MTCR Annex, and any other unmanned delivery system of similar capability, as well as the specially designed production facilities for these systems;

(2) the term “Missile Technology Control Regime” or “MTCR” means the policy statement, between the United States, the United Kingdom, the Federal Republic of Germany, France, Italy, Canada, and Japan, announced on April 16, 1987, to restrict sensitive missile-relevant transfers based on the MTCR Annex, and any amendments thereto;

(3) the term “MTCR adherent” means a country that participates in the MTCR or that, pursuant to an international understanding to which the United States is a party, controls MTCR equipment or technology in accordance with the criteria and standards set forth in the MTCR;

(4) the term “MTCR Annex” means the Guidelines and Equipment and Technology Annex of the MTCR, and any amendments thereto;

(5) the terms “missile equipment or technology” and “MTCR equipment or technology” mean those items listed in category I or category II of the MTCR Annex;

(6) the term “United States person” has the meaning given that term in section 2415(2) of title 50, Appendix;

(7) the term “foreign person” means any person other than a United States person;

(8)(A) the term “person” means a natural person as well as a corporation, business association, partnership, society, trust, any other nongovernmental entity, organization, or group, and any governmental entity operating as a business enterprise, and any successor of any such entity; and

(B) in the case of countries with non-market economies (excluding former members of the Warsaw Pact), the term “person” means—

(i) all activities of that government relating to the development or production of any missile equipment or technology; and

(ii) all activities of that government affecting the development or production of electronics, space systems or equipment, and military aircraft; and

(9) the term “otherwise engaged in the trade off” means, with respect to a particular export

or transfer, to be a freight forwarder or designated exporting agent, or a consignee or end user of the item to be exported or transferred.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 7, §74, as added Pub. L. 101-510, div. A, title XVII, §1703, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1748; amended Pub. L. 102-138, title III, §323(b), (c), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 711.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1991—Par. (8)(B). Pub. L. 102-138, §323(b), substituted “countries with non-market economies (excluding former members of the Warsaw Pact)” for “countries where it may be impossible to identify a specific governmental entity referred to in subparagraph (A)”.

Par. (8)(B)(ii). Pub. L. 102-138, §323(c), substituted “electronics, space systems or equipment, and military aircraft” for “aircraft, electronics, and space systems or equipment”.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2776 of this title.

### SUBCHAPTER VIII—CHEMICAL OR BIOLOGICAL WEAPONS PROLIFERATION

#### § 2798. Sanctions against certain foreign persons

##### (a) Imposition of sanctions

###### (1) Determination by the President

Except as provided in subsection (b)(2) of this section, the President shall impose both of the sanctions described in subsection (c) of this section if the President determines that a foreign person, on or after October 28, 1991, has knowingly and materially contributed—

(A) through the export from the United States of any goods or technology that are subject to the jurisdiction of the United States,

(B) through the export from any other country of any goods or technology that would be, if they were United States goods or technology, subject to the jurisdiction of the United States, or

(C) through any other transaction not subject to sanctions pursuant to the Export Administration Act of 1979 [50 App. U.S.C. 2401 et seq.],

to the efforts by any foreign country, project, or entity described in paragraph (2) to use, develop, produce, stockpile, or otherwise acquire chemical or biological weapons.

###### (2) Countries, projects, or entities receiving assistance

Paragraph (1) applies in the case of—

(A) any foreign country that the President determines has, at any time after January 1, 1980—

(i) used chemical or biological weapons in violation of international law;

(ii) used lethal chemical or biological weapons against its own nationals; or

(iii) made substantial preparations to engage in the activities described in clause (i) or (ii);

(B) any foreign country whose government is determined for purposes of section 6(j) of the Export Administration Act of 1979 [50 App. U.S.C. 2405(j)] to be a government that

has repeatedly provided support for acts of international terrorism; or

(C) any other foreign country, project, or entity designated by the President for purposes of this section.

##### (3) Persons against whom sanctions are to be imposed

Sanctions shall be imposed pursuant to paragraph (1) on—

(A) the foreign person with respect to which the President makes the determination described in that paragraph;

(B) any successor entity to that foreign person;

(C) any foreign person that is a parent or subsidiary of that foreign person if that parent or subsidiary knowingly assisted in the activities which were the basis of that determination; and

(D) any foreign person that is an affiliate of that foreign person if that affiliate knowingly assisted in the activities which were the basis of that determination and if that affiliate is controlled in fact by that foreign person.

##### (b) Consultations with and actions by foreign government of jurisdiction

###### (1) Consultations

If the President makes the determinations described in subsection (a)(1) of this section with respect to a foreign person, the Congress urges the President to initiate consultations immediately with the government with primary jurisdiction over that foreign person with respect to the imposition of sanctions pursuant to this section.

###### (2) Actions by government of jurisdiction

In order to pursue such consultations with that government, the President may delay imposition of sanctions pursuant to this section for a period of up to 90 days. Following these consultations, the President shall impose sanctions unless the President determines and certifies to the Congress that that government has taken specific and effective actions, including appropriate penalties, to terminate the involvement of the foreign person in the activities described in subsection (a)(1) of this section. The President may delay imposition of sanctions for an additional period of up to 90 days if the President determines and certifies to the Congress that that government is in the process of taking the actions described in the preceding sentence.

###### (3) Report to Congress

The President shall report to the Congress, not later than 90 days after making a determination under subsection (a)(1) of this section, on the status of consultations with the appropriate government under this subsection, and the basis for any determination under paragraph (2) of this subsection that such government has taken specific corrective actions.

##### (c) Sanctions

###### (1) Description of sanctions

The sanctions to be imposed pursuant to subsection (a)(1) of this section are, except as

provided in paragraph (2) of this subsection, the following:

**(A) Procurement sanction**

The United States Government shall not procure, or enter into any contract for the procurement of, any goods or services from any person described in subsection (a)(3) of this section.

**(B) Import sanctions**

The importation into the United States of products produced by any person described in subsection (a)(3) of this section shall be prohibited.

**(2) Exceptions**

The President shall not be required to apply or maintain sanctions under this section—

(A) in the case of procurement of defense articles or defense services—

(i) under existing contracts or subcontracts, including the exercise of options for production quantities to satisfy United States operational military requirements;

(ii) if the President determines that the person or other entity to which the sanctions would otherwise be applied is a sole source supplier of the defense articles or services, that the defense articles or services are essential, and that alternative sources are not readily or reasonably available; or

(iii) if the President determines that such articles or services are essential to the national security under defense production agreements;

(B) to products or services provided under contracts entered into before the date on which the President publishes his intention to impose sanctions;

(C) to—

- (i) spare parts,
- (ii) component parts, but not finished products, essential to United States products or production, or
- (iii) routine servicing and maintenance of products, to the extent that alternative sources are not readily or reasonably available;

(D) to information and technology essential to United States products or production; or

(E) to medical or other humanitarian items.

**(d) Termination of sanctions**

The sanctions imposed pursuant to this section shall apply for a period of at least 12 months following the imposition of sanctions and shall cease to apply thereafter only if the President determines and certifies to the Congress that reliable information indicates that the foreign person with respect to which the determination was made under subsection (a)(1) of this section has ceased to aid or abet any foreign government, project, or entity in its efforts to acquire chemical or biological weapons capability as described in that subsection.

**(e) Waiver**

**(1) Criterion for waiver**

The President may waive the application of any sanction imposed on any person pursuant to this section, after the end of the 12-month period beginning on the date on which that sanction was imposed on that person, if the President determines and certifies to the Congress that such waiver is important to the national security interests of the United States.

**(2) Notification of and report to Congress**

If the President decides to exercise the waiver authority provided in paragraph (1), the President shall so notify the Congress not less than 20 days before the waiver takes effect. Such notification shall include a report fully articulating the rationale and circumstances which led the President to exercise the waiver authority.

**(f) "Foreign person" defined**

For the purposes of this section, the term "foreign person" means—

(1) an individual who is not a citizen of the United States or an alien admitted for permanent residence to the United States; or

(2) a corporation, partnership, or other entity which is created or organized under the laws of a foreign country or which has its principal place of business outside the United States.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 8, §81, as added and amended Pub. L. 102-182, title III, §§305(b), 309(b)(2), Dec. 4, 1991, 105 Stat. 1250, 1258.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Export Administration Act of 1979, referred to in subsec. (a)(1)(C), is Pub. L. 96-72, Sept. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 503, as amended, which is classified principally to section 2401 et seq. of the Appendix to Title 50, War and National Defense. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2401 of the Appendix to Title 50 and Tables.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior subchapter VIII, consisting of former section 2798, as added by Pub. L. 102-138, title V, §505(b), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 727, was substantially identical to subchapter VIII, as added by section 305(b) of Pub. L. 102-182, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 102-182, title III, §309(a), Dec. 4, 1991, 105 Stat. 1258.

AMENDMENTS

1991—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 101-182, §309(b)(2), substituted "October 28, 1991" for reference to the "date of the enactment of this section" which was enacted Dec. 4, 1991.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

For delegation of certain functions of the President under this section, see Ex. Ord. No. 12851, §1(a), June 11, 1993, 58 F.R. 33181, set out as a note under section 2797 of this title.

SUBCHAPTER IX—TRANSFER OF CERTAIN CFE TREATY-LIMITED EQUIPMENT TO NATO MEMBERS

**§ 2799. Purpose**

The purpose of this subchapter is to authorize the President to support, consistent with the CFE Treaty, a NATO equipment transfer program that will—

- (1) enhance NATO's forces,
- (2) increase NATO standardization and interoperability, and
- (3) better distribute defense burdens within the NATO alliance.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 9, §91, as added Pub. L. 102-228, §2, Dec. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 1691.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2799c of this title.

**§ 2799a. CFE Treaty obligations**

The authorities provided in this subchapter shall be exercised consistent with the obligations incurred by the United States in connection with the CFE Treaty.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 9, §92, as added Pub. L. 102-228, §2, Dec. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 1691.)

**§ 2799b. Authorities**

**(a) General authority**

The President may transfer to any NATO/CFE country, in accordance with NATO plans, defense articles—

- (1) that are battle tanks, armoured combat vehicles, or artillery included within the CFE Treaty's definition of "conventional armaments and equipment limited by the Treaty";
- (2) that were, as of the date of signature of the CFE Treaty, in the stocks of the Department of Defense and located in the CFE Treaty's area of application; and
- (3) that the President determines are not needed by United States military forces within the CFE Treaty's area of application.

**(b) Acceptance of NATO assistance in eliminating direct costs of transfers**

In order to eliminate direct costs of facilitating transfers of defense articles under subsection (a) of this section, the United States may utilize services provided by NATO or any NATO/CFE country, including inspection, repair, or transportation services with respect to defense articles so transferred.

**(c) Acceptance of NATO assistance in meeting certain United States obligations**

In order to facilitate United States compliance with the CFE Treaty-mandated obligations for destruction of conventional armaments and equipment limited by the CFE Treaty, the United States may utilize services or funds provided by NATO or any NATO/CFE country.

**(d) Authority to transfer on grant basis**

Defense articles may be transferred under subsection (a) of this section without cost to the recipient country.

**(e) Third country transfers restrictions**

For purposes of sections 2753(a)(2), 2753(a)(3), 2753(c), and 2753(d) of this title, defense articles transferred under subsection (a) of this section shall be deemed to have been sold under this chapter.

**(f) Maintenance of military balance in Eastern Mediterranean**

The President shall ensure that transfers by the United States under subsection (a) of this

section, taken together with transfers by other NATO/CFE countries in implementing the CFE Treaty, are of such valuations so as to be consistent with the United States policy, embodied in section 2373 of this title, of maintaining the military balance in the Eastern Mediterranean.

**(g) Expiration of authority**

**(1) In general**

Except as provided in paragraph (2), the authority of subsection (a) of this section expires at the end of the 40-month period beginning on the date on which the CFE Treaty enters into force.

**(2) Transition rule**

Paragraph (1) does not apply with respect to a transfer of defense articles for which notification under section 2799c(a) of this title is submitted before the end of the period described in that paragraph.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 9, §93, as added Pub. L. 102-228, §2, Dec. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 1691.)

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Memorandum of President of the United States, Feb. 13, 1992, 57 F.R. 6663, provided:

Memorandum for the Secretary of State and the Secretary of Defense

By virtue of the authority vested in me by the Constitution and laws of the United States of America, including section 301 of title 3 of the United States Code, I hereby delegate to the Secretary of Defense the functions vested in me by section 93(a) and section 94 of the Arms Export Control Act, as amended (the "Act") [22 U.S.C. 2799b(a), 2799c], and to the Secretary of State the functions vested in me by section 93(f) of the Act. Consistent with section 2 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2752], transfers of defense articles under section 93(a) shall be subject to the policy direction of the Secretary of State, including the determination of whether such transfers shall occur.

The Secretary of State is authorized and directed to publish this memorandum in the Federal Register.

GEORGE BUSH.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2799c of this title.

**§ 2799c. Notifications and reports to Congress**

**(a) Notifications**

Not less than 15 days before transferring any defense articles pursuant to section 2799b(a) of this title, the President shall notify the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate in accordance with the procedures applicable to reprogramming notifications pursuant to section 2394-1 of this title.

**(b) Annual reports**

Not later than February 1 each year, the President shall submit to the Committee on Foreign Affairs and the Committee on Armed Services of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations and the Committee on Armed Services of the Senate a report that—

- (1) lists all transfers made to each recipient NATO/CFE country by the United States under section 2799b(a) of this title during the preceding calendar year;

(2) describes how those transfers further the purposes described in paragraphs (1) through (3) of section 2799 of this title; and

(3) lists, on a country-by-country basis, all transfers to another country of conventional armaments and equipment limited by the CFE Treaty—

(A) by each NATO/CFE country (other than the United States) in implementing the CFE Treaty, and

(B) by each country of the Eastern Group of States Parties in implementing the CFE Treaty.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 9, §94, as added Pub. L. 102-228, §2, Dec. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 1692; amended Pub. L. 103-199, title IV, § 402(1), Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2324.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1993—Subsec. (b)(3)(B). Pub. L. 103-199 substituted “country of the Eastern Group of States Parties” for “Warsaw Pact country”.

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives and Committee on Armed Services of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on National Security of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of Defense by Memorandum of President of the United States, Feb. 13, 1992, 57 F.R. 6663, set out as a note under section 2799b of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2799b of this title.

### § 2799d. Definitions

As used in this subchapter—

(1) the term “CFE Treaty” means the Treaty on Conventional Armed Forces in Europe (signed at Paris, November 19, 1990);

(2) the term “conventional armaments and equipment limited by the CFE Treaty” has the same meaning as the term “conventional armaments and equipment limited by the Treaty” does under paragraph 1(J) of article II of the CFE Treaty;

(3) the term “NATO” means the North Atlantic Treaty Organization;

(4) the term “NATO/CFE country” means a member country of NATO that is a party to the CFE Treaty and is listed in paragraph 1(A) of article II of the CFE Treaty within the group of States Parties that signed or acceded to the Treaty of Brussels of 1948 or the Treaty of Washington of 1949 (the North Atlantic Treaty); and

(5) the term “country of the Eastern Group of States Parties” means a country that is listed in paragraph 1(A) of article II of the CFE Treaty within the group of States Parties that signed the Treaty of Warsaw of 1955 or a successor state to such a country.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 9, §95, as added Pub. L. 102-228, §2, Dec. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 1693; amended

Pub. L. 103-199, title IV, § 402(2), Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2324.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1993—Par. (5). Pub. L. 103-199 substituted “country of the Eastern Group of States Parties” for “Warsaw Pact country” and inserted before period at end “or a successor state to such a country”.

### SUBCHAPTER X—NUCLEAR NONPROLIFERATION CONTROLS

#### REPEAL OF SUBCHAPTER

*For repeal of subchapter by section 851 of Pub. L. 103-236, see Effective and Termination Dates note set out under section 2799aa of this title.*

### § 2799aa. Nuclear enrichment transfers

#### (a) Prohibitions; safeguards and management

Except as provided in subsection (b) of this section, no funds made available to carry out the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.] or this chapter may be used for the purpose of providing economic assistance (including assistance under chapter 4 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2346 et seq.]), providing military assistance or grant military education and training, providing assistance under chapter 6 of part II of that Act [22 U.S.C. 2348 et seq.], or extending military credits or making guarantees, to any country which the President determines delivers nuclear enrichment equipment, materials, or technology to any other country on or after August 4, 1977, or receives such equipment, materials, or technology from any other country on or after August 4, 1977, unless before such delivery—

(1) the supplying country and receiving country have reached agreement to place all such equipment, materials, or technology, upon delivery, under multilateral auspices and management when available; and

(2) the recipient country has entered into an agreement with the International Atomic Energy Agency to place all such equipment, materials, technology, and all nuclear fuel and facilities in such country under the safeguards system of such Agency.

#### (b) Certification by President of necessity of continued assistance; disapproval by Congress

(1) Notwithstanding subsection (a) of this section, the President may furnish assistance which would otherwise be prohibited under such subsection if he determines and certifies in writing to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate that—

(A) the termination of such assistance would have a serious adverse effect on vital United States interests; and

(B) he has received reliable assurances that the country in question will not acquire or develop nuclear weapons or assist other nations in doing so.

Such certification shall set forth the reasons supporting such determination in each particular case.

(2)(A) A certification under paragraph (1) of this subsection shall take effect on the date on

which the certification is received by the Congress. However, if, within thirty calendar days after receiving this certification, the Congress enacts a joint resolution stating in substance that the Congress disapproves the furnishing of assistance pursuant to the certification, then upon the enactment of that resolution the certification shall cease to be effective and all deliveries of assistance furnished under the authority of that certification shall be suspended immediately.

(B) Any joint resolution under this paragraph shall be considered in the Senate in accordance with the provisions of section 601(b) of the International Security Assistance and Arms Export Control Act of 1976.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 10, §101, as added Pub. L. 103-236, title VIII, §826(a), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 515.)

#### REPEAL OF SECTION

*For repeal of section by section 851 of Pub. L. 103-236, see Effective and Termination Dates note below.*

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 32 (§2151 et seq.) of this title. Chapters 4 and 6 of part II of the Act are classified generally to parts IV (§2346 et seq.) and VI (§2348 et seq.), respectively, of subchapter II of chapter 32 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

Section 601(b) of the International Security Assistance and Arms Export Control Act of 1976, referred to in subsec. (b)(2)(B), is section 601(b) of Pub. L. 94-329, title VI, June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 765, which is not classified to the Code.

#### EFFECTIVE AND TERMINATION DATES

Subchapter effective 60 days after Apr. 30, 1994, and ceases to be effective and is repealed on date of enactment of first Foreign Relations Authorization Act enacted after Apr. 30, 1994, see sections 831 and 851 of Pub. L. 103-236, set out in the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention; Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note under section 3201 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2295a, 2295b, 2375 of this title.

### **§ 2799aa-1. Nuclear reprocessing transfers, illegal exports for nuclear explosive devices, transfers of nuclear explosive devices, and nuclear detonations**

#### **(a) Prohibitions on assistance to countries involved in transfer of nuclear reprocessing equipment, materials, or technology; exceptions; procedures applicable**

(1) Except as provided in paragraph (2) of this subsection, no funds made available to carry out the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.] or this chapter may be used for the purpose of providing economic assistance (including assistance under chapter 4 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2346 et seq.]), providing military assistance or grant military education and training, providing assistance under chapter 6 of part II of that Act [22 U.S.C. 2348 et seq.], or extending military credits

or making guarantees, to any country which the President determines—

(A) delivers nuclear reprocessing equipment, materials, or technology to any other country on or after August 4, 1977, or receives such equipment, materials, or technology from any other country on or after August 4, 1977 (except for the transfer of reprocessing technology associated with the investigation, under international evaluation programs in which the United States participates, of technologies which are alternatives to pure plutonium reprocessing), or

(B) is a non-nuclear-weapon state which, on or after August 8, 1985, exports illegally (or attempts to export illegally) from the United States any material, equipment, or technology which would contribute significantly to the ability of such country to manufacture a nuclear explosive device, if the President determines that the material, equipment, or technology was to be used by such country in the manufacture of a nuclear explosive device.

For purposes of clause (B), an export (or attempted export) by a person who is an agent of, or is otherwise acting on behalf of or in the interests of, a country shall be considered to be an export (or attempted export) by that country.

(2) Notwithstanding paragraph (1) of this subsection, the President in any fiscal year may furnish assistance which would otherwise be prohibited under that paragraph if he determines and certifies in writing during that fiscal year to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate that the termination of such assistance would be seriously prejudicial to the achievement of United States nonproliferation objectives or otherwise jeopardize the common defense and security. The President shall transmit with such certification a statement setting forth the specific reasons therefor.

(3)(A) A certification under paragraph (2) of this subsection shall take effect on the date on which the certification is received by the Congress. However, if, within 30 calendar days after receiving this certification, the Congress enacts a joint resolution stating in substance that the Congress disapproves the furnishing of assistance pursuant to the certification, then upon the enactment of that resolution the certification shall cease to be effective and all deliveries of assistance furnished under the authority of that certification shall be suspended immediately.

(B) Any joint resolution under this paragraph shall be considered in the Senate in accordance with the provisions of section 601(b) of the International Security Assistance and Arms Export Control Act of 1976.

#### **(b) Prohibitions on assistance to countries involved in transfer or use of nuclear explosive devices; exceptions; procedures applicable**

(1) Except as provided in paragraphs (4), (5), and (6), in the event that the President determines that any country, after the effective date of part B of the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention Act of 1994—

(A) transfers to a non-nuclear-weapon state a nuclear explosive device,

(B) is a non-nuclear-weapon state and either—

- (i) receives a nuclear explosive device, or
- (ii) detonates a nuclear explosive device,

(C) transfers to a non-nuclear-weapon state any design information or component which is determined by the President to be important to, and known by the transferring country to be intended by the recipient state for use in, the development or manufacture of any nuclear explosive device, or

(D) is a non-nuclear-weapon state and seeks and receives any design information or component which is determined by the President to be important to, and intended by the recipient state for use in, the development or manufacture of any nuclear explosive device,

then the President shall forthwith report in writing his determination to the Congress and shall forthwith impose the sanctions described in paragraph (2) against that country.

(2) The sanctions referred to in paragraph (1) are as follows:

(A) The United States Government shall terminate assistance to that country under the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.], except for humanitarian assistance or food or other agricultural commodities.

(B) The United States Government shall terminate—

(i) sales to that country under this chapter of any defense articles, defense services, or design and construction services, and

(ii) licenses for the export to that country of any item on the United States Munitions List.

(C) The United States Government shall terminate all foreign military financing for that country under this chapter.

(D) The United States Government shall deny to that country any credit, credit guarantees, or other financial assistance by any department, agency, or instrumentality of the United States Government, except that the sanction of this subparagraph shall not apply—

(i) to any transaction subject to the reporting requirements of title V of the National Security Act of 1947 [50 U.S.C. 413 et seq.] (relating to congressional oversight of intelligence activities), or

(ii) to humanitarian assistance.

(E) The United States Government shall oppose, in accordance with section 262d of this title, the extension of any loan or financial or technical assistance to that country by any international financial institution.

(F) The United States Government shall prohibit any United States bank from making any loan or providing any credit to the government of that country, except for loans or credits for the purpose of purchasing food or other agricultural commodities.

(G) The authorities of section 2405 of title 50, Appendix, shall be used to prohibit exports to that country of specific goods and technology (excluding food and other agricultural commodities), except that such prohibition shall not apply to any transaction subject to the re-

porting requirements of title V of the National Security Act of 1947 [50 U.S.C. 413 et seq.] (relating to congressional oversight of intelligence activities).

(3) As used in this subsection—

(A) the term “design information” means specific information that relates to the design of a nuclear explosive device and that is not available to the public; and

(B) the term “component” means a specific component of a nuclear explosive device.

(4)(A) Notwithstanding paragraph (1) of this subsection, the President may, for a period of not more than 30 days of continuous session, delay the imposition of sanctions which would otherwise be required under paragraph (1)(A) or (1)(B) of this subsection if the President first transmits to the Speaker of the House of Representatives, and to the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, a certification that he has determined that an immediate imposition of sanctions on that country would be detrimental to the national security of the United States. Not more than one such certification may be transmitted for a country with respect to the same detonation, transfer, or receipt of a nuclear explosive device.

(B) If the President transmits a certification to the Congress under subparagraph (A), a joint resolution which would permit the President to exercise the waiver authority of paragraph (5) of this subsection shall, if introduced in either House within thirty days of continuous session after the Congress receives this certification, be considered in the Senate in accordance with subparagraph (C) of this paragraph.

(C) Any joint resolution under this paragraph shall be considered in the Senate in accordance with the provisions of section 601(b) of the International Security Assistance and Arms Export Control Act of 1976.

(D) For purposes of this paragraph, the term “joint resolution” means a joint resolution the matter after the resolving clause of which is as follows: “That the Congress having received on \_\_\_ a certification by the President under section 102(b)(4) of the Arms Export Control Act with respect to \_\_\_, the Congress hereby authorizes the President to exercise the waiver authority contained in section 102(b)(5) of that Act.”, with the date of receipt of the certification inserted in the first blank and the name of the country inserted in the second blank.

(5) Notwithstanding paragraph (1) of this subsection, if the Congress enacts a joint resolution under paragraph (4) of this subsection, the President may waive any sanction which would otherwise be required under paragraph (1)(A) or (1)(B) if he determines and certifies in writing to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate that the imposition of such sanction would be seriously prejudicial to the achievement of United States nonproliferation objectives or otherwise jeopardize the common defense and security. The President shall transmit with such certification a statement setting forth the specific reasons therefor.

(6)(A) In the event the President is required to impose sanctions against a country under para-



graph (1)(C) or (1)(D), the President shall forthwith so inform such country and shall impose the required sanctions beginning 30 days after submitting to the Congress the report required by paragraph (1) unless, and to the extent that, there is enacted during the 30-day period a law prohibiting the imposition of such sanctions.

(B) Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the sanctions which are required to be imposed against a country under paragraph (1)(C) or (1)(D) shall not apply if the President determines and certifies in writing to the Committee on Foreign Relations and the Committee on Governmental Affairs of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives that the application of such sanctions against such country would have a serious adverse effect on vital United States interests. The President shall transmit with such certification a statement setting forth the specific reasons therefor.

(7) For purposes of this subsection, continuity of session is broken only by an adjournment of Congress sine die and the days on which either House is not in session because of an adjournment of more than three days to a day certain are excluded in the computation of any period of time in which Congress is in continuous session.

(8) The President may not delegate or transfer his power, authority, or discretion to make or modify determinations under this subsection.

**(c) “Non-nuclear-weapon state” defined**

As used in this section, the term “non-nuclear-weapon state” means any country which is not a nuclear-weapon state, as defined in Article IX(3) of the Treaty on the Non-Proliferation of Nuclear Weapons.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 10, §102, as added Pub. L. 103-236, title VIII, §826(a), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 516.)

**REPEAL OF SECTION**

*For repeal of section by section 851 of Pub. L. 103-236, see Effective and Termination Dates note set out under section 2799aa of this title.*

**REFERENCES IN TEXT**

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsecs. (a)(1) and (b)(2)(A), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 32 (§2151 et seq.) of this title. Chapters 4 and 6 of part II of the Act are classified generally to parts IV (§2346 et seq.) and VI (§2348 et seq.), respectively, of subchapter II of chapter 32 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

Section 601(b) of the International Security Assistance and Arms Export Control Act of 1976, referred to in subsecs. (a)(3)(B) and (b)(4)(C), is section 601(b) of Pub. L. 94-329, title VI, June 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 765, which is not classified to the Code.

For effective date of part B of the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention Act of 1994 [part B of title VIII of Pub. L. 103-236], referred to in subsec. (b)(1), as 60 days after Apr. 30, 1994, see section 831 of Pub. L. 103-236, set out in the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention; Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note under section 3201 of this title.

The National Security Act of 1947, as amended, referred to in subsec. (b)(2)(D)(i), (G), is act July 26, 1947, ch. 343, 61 Stat. 495, as amended. Title V of the Act is classified generally to subchapter III (§413 et seq.) of chapter 15 of Title 50, War and National Defense. For

complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 401 of Title 50 and Tables.

Section 102 of the Arms Export Control Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(4)(D), is classified to this section.

**CHANGE OF NAME**

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

**SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS**

This section is referred to in sections 2295a, 2295b, 3281 of this title.

**§ 2799aa-2. “Nuclear explosive device” defined**

As used in this subchapter, the term “nuclear explosive device” has the meaning given that term in section 830(4) of the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention Act of 1994.

(Pub. L. 90-629, ch. 10, §103, as added Pub. L. 103-236, title VIII, §826(a), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 519.)

**REPEAL OF SECTION**

*For repeal of section by section 851 of Pub. L. 103-236, see Effective and Termination Dates note set out under section 2799aa of this title.*

**REFERENCES IN TEXT**

Section 830 of the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention Act of 1994, referred to in text, is section 830 of Pub. L. 103-236 which is set out in the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention; Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note under section 3201 of this title.

**CHAPTER 40—INTERNATIONAL EXPOSITIONS**

|            |  |
|------------|--|
| Sec. 2801. | Congressional findings.  |
| 2802.      | Federal recognition. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Eligibility requirements.</li> <li>(b) Recognition and registration procedure; compliance with international convention; participation by States and foreign governments.</li> <li>(c) Report to Congress.</li> </ol>                    |
| 2803.      | Federal participation. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Congressional authorization; proposals.</li> <li>(b) Construction of Federal pavilion.</li> <li>(c) Authorization of appropriations for Federal pavilion.</li> <li>(d) Requisites and temporary nature of Federal pavilion.</li> </ol> |
| 2804.      | Establishment of standards and criteria; publication in the Federal Register.  |
| 2805.      | Withdrawal of Federal recognition or participation.  |
| 2806.      | Other provisions unaffected.   |
| 2807.      | Authorization of appropriations.   |

**§ 2801. Congressional findings**

The Congress finds that—

(a) international expositions, when properly organized, financed, and executed, have a significant impact on the economic growth of the region surrounding the exposition and, under appropriate international sanction, are important instruments of national policy, particularly in the exchange of ideas and the demonstration of cultural achievements between peoples;

(b) in view of the widely varying circumstances under which international expositions have developed in the United States, the different degrees to which the Federal Government has assisted and participated in such expositions, and the increasing number of proposals for future expositions, the national interest requires that Federal action concerning such expositions be given orderly consideration; and

(c) such orderly consideration is best achieved by the development of uniform standards, criteria, and procedures to establish the conditions under which the Government hereafter will (A) recognize international expositions proposed to be held in the United States, and (B) take part in such expositions.

(Pub. L. 91-269, §1, May 27, 1970, 84 Stat. 271.)

### § 2802. Federal recognition

#### (a) Eligibility requirements

Any international exposition proposed to be held in the United States shall be eligible on application from its sponsors to receive the recognition of the Federal Government upon a finding of the President that recognition will be in the national interest. In making such a finding the President shall consider—

(1) a report by the Secretary of Commerce which shall include (A) an evaluation of purposes and reasons for the exposition, and (B) a determination that guaranteed financial and other support has been secured by the exposition from affected State and local governments and from business and civic leadership of the region and others in amounts sufficient in his judgment to assure the successful development and progress of the exposition;

(2) a report by the Secretary of State that the proposed exposition qualifies for consideration of registration by the Bureau of International Expositions (hereafter referred to as BIE); and

(3) such other evidence as the President may consider to be appropriate.

#### (b) Recognition and registration procedure; compliance with international convention; participation by States and foreign governments

Upon a finding by the President that an international exposition is eligible for Federal recognition, the President may take such measures recognizing the exposition as he deems proper, including, but not limited to—

(1) presenting of an official request by the United States for registration of the exposition by the BIE;

(2) providing for fulfillment of the requirements of the Convention of November 22, 1928, as amended, relating to international expositions; and

(3) extending invitations, by proclamation or by such other manner he deems proper, to the several States of the Union and to foreign governments to take part in the exposition, provided that he shall not extend such an invitation until he has been notified officially of BIE registration for the exposition.

#### (c) Report to Congress

The President shall report his actions under this section promptly to the Congress.

(Pub. L. 91-269, §2, May 27, 1970, 84 Stat. 271.)

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2803, 2804 of this title.

### § 2803. Federal participation

#### (a) Congressional authorization; proposals

The Federal Government may participate in an international exposition proposed to be held in the United States only upon the authorization of the Congress. If the President finds that Federal participation is in the national interest, he shall transmit to the Congress his proposal for such participation, which proposal shall include—

(1) evidence that the international exposition has met the criteria for Federal recognition and, pursuant to section 2802 of this title, it has been so recognized;

(2) a statement that the international exposition has been registered by the BIE; and

(3) a plan prepared by the Secretary of Commerce in cooperation with other interested departments and agencies of the Federal Government for Federal participation in the exposition. The Secretary of Commerce shall include in such plan any documentation described in subsection (b)(1)(A) of this section, a rendering of any design described in subsection (b)(1)(B) of this section, and any recommendation based on the determination under subsection (b)(1)(C) of this section.

#### (b) Construction of Federal pavilion

(1) In developing a plan under subsection (a)(3) of this section the Secretary of Commerce shall consider whether the plan should include the construction of a Federal pavilion. If the Secretary of Commerce determines that a Federal pavilion should be constructed, he shall request the Administrator of General Services (hereinafter in this section referred to as the “Administrator”) to determine, in consultation with such Secretary, whether there is a federally endorsed need for a permanent structure in the area of the exposition. If the Administrator determines that any such need exists—

(A) the Administrator shall fully document such determination, including the identification of the need, and shall transmit such documentation to the Secretary of Commerce;

(B) the Secretary of Commerce, in consultation with the Administrator, shall design a pavilion which satisfies the federally endorsed needs for—

(i) participation in the exposition; and

(ii) permanent use of such pavilion after the termination of participation in the exposition; and

(C) the Secretary of Commerce shall determine whether the Federal Government should be deeded a satisfactory site for the Federal pavilion in fee simple, free of all liens and encumbrances, as a condition of participation in the exposition.

(2) Notwithstanding paragraph (1)(B) of this subsection, if the Secretary of Commerce, in consultation with the Administrator determines that no design of a Federal pavilion will satisfy

both needs described in paragraph (1)(B) of this subsection, the Secretary shall design a temporary Federal pavilion.

**(c) Authorization of appropriations for Federal pavilion**

The enactment of a specific authorization of appropriations shall be required—

(1) to construct a Federal pavilion in accordance with the plan prepared pursuant to subsection (a)(3) of this section;

(2) if the Federal pavilion is not temporary, to modify such Federal pavilion after termination of participation in the exposition if modification is necessary to adapt such pavilion for use by the Federal Government to satisfy a need described in subsection (b)(1)(B)(ii) of this section; and

(3) if the Federal pavilion is temporary, to dismantle, demolish, or otherwise dispose of such Federal pavilion after termination of Federal participation in the exposition.

**(d) Requisites and temporary nature of Federal pavilion**

For the purposes of this section—

(1) a Federal pavilion shall be considered to satisfy both needs described in subsection (b)(1)(B) of this section if the Federal pavilion which satisfies the needs described in paragraph (1)(B)(i) of such subsection can be modified after completion of the exposition to satisfy the needs described in paragraph (1)(B)(ii) of such subsection, provided that such modification shall cost no more than the expense of demolition, dismantling, or other disposal, or if the cost is higher, it shall be no more than 50 per centum of the original cost of the construction of the pavilion; and

(2) a Federal pavilion is temporary if the Federal pavilion is designed to satisfy the minimum needs of the Federal Government described in subsection (b)(1)(B)(i) of this section and is intended for disposal by the Federal Government after the termination of participation in the exposition.

(Pub. L. 91-269, § 3, May 27, 1970, 84 Stat. 272; Pub. L. 97-254, § 16(a), Sept. 8, 1982, 96 Stat. 812.)

AMENDMENTS

1982—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 97-254, § 16(a)(1)-(3), designated existing provisions as subsec. (a), redesignated cls. (a) to (c) thereof as cls. (1) to (3) respectively, and in cl. (3) as so redesignated, substituted provisions requiring the Secretary of Commerce to include in a plan under this section any documentation, designs, or recommendations described in subsec. (b) of this section for provisions that the Secretary in developing a plan should consider whether there was a need for the construction of a Federal pavilion, and if so, that there could be included in the plan a recommendation that Government participation in the exposition be conditioned on its being deeded a satisfactory site for the pavilion and that the Secretary would seek the advice of the Administrator of the General Services Administration in carrying out the provisions of former subsec. (c).

Subsecs. (b) to (d). Pub. L. 97-254, § 16(a)(4), added subsecs. (b) to (d).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1982 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 97-254 effective Sept. 8, 1982, see section 15 of Pub. L. 97-254.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2804 of this title.

**§ 2804. Establishment of standards and criteria; publication in the Federal Register**

(a) The Secretary of Commerce is hereby authorized and directed to establish and maintain standards, definitions, and criteria which are adequate to carry out the purposes of section 2802(a)(1) and section 2803(a) of this title; and

(b) Standards, definitions, and criteria established by the Secretary and such revisions in them as he may make from time to time shall be published in the Federal Register.

(Pub. L. 91-269, § 4, May 27, 1970, 84 Stat. 272.)

**§ 2805. Withdrawal of Federal recognition or participation**

The President may withdraw Federal recognition or participation whenever he finds that continuing recognition or participation would be inconsistent with the national interest and with the purposes of this chapter.

(Pub. L. 91-269, § 5, May 27, 1970, 84 Stat. 272.)

**§ 2806. Other provisions unaffected**

Nothing in this chapter shall affect or limit the authority of Federal departments and agencies to participate in international expositions or events otherwise authorized by law.

(Pub. L. 91-269, § 6, May 27, 1970, 84 Stat. 272.)

**§ 2807. Authorization of appropriations**

There are authorized to be appropriated such sums, not to exceed \$200,000 in any fiscal year, as may be necessary to carry out the purposes of this chapter.

(Pub. L. 91-269, § 8, May 27, 1970, 84 Stat. 272.)

**CHAPTER 41—STUDY COMMISSION  
RELATING TO FOREIGN POLICY**

**§§ 2821 to 2826. Omitted**

CODIFICATION

Sections 2821 to 2826 expired, not later than the thirtieth day after June 30, 1975, pursuant to section 2823 of this title.

Section 2821, Pub. L. 92-352, title VI, § 601, July 13, 1972, 86 Stat. 497, declared that it was the purpose of this chapter to establish a commission to make studies and recommendations directed at providing a more effective system for formulation and implementation of foreign policy.

Section 2822, Pub. L. 92-352, title VI, § 602, July 13, 1972, 86 Stat. 497, established the commission, known as the Commission on the Organization of the Government for the Conduct of Foreign Policy.

Section 2823, Pub. L. 92-352, title VI, § 603, July 13, 1972, 86 Stat. 497; Pub. L. 93-126, § 4, Oct. 18, 1973, 87 Stat. 452, related to duties of the commission, required a comprehensive report be submitted to the President and to Congress not later than June 30, 1975, and provided that the commission cease to exist on the thirtieth day after the report was filed.

Section 2824, Pub. L. 92-352, title VI, § 604, July 13, 1972, 86 Stat. 498, related to powers of the commission.

Section 2825, Pub. L. 92-352, title VI, § 605, July 13, 1972, 86 Stat. 498, related to appointment and compensation of personnel and the services of experts and consultants.

Section 2826, Pub. L. 92-352, title VI, § 606, July 13, 1972, 86 Stat. 499, authorized sums as necessary to carry out the provisions of this chapter.

## CHAPTER 42—INTERNATIONAL ECONOMIC POLICY

### §§ 2841 to 2849. Omitted

#### CODIFICATION

Sections 2841 to 2847, 2848, and 2849 expired Sept. 30, 1977, pursuant to section 2848 of this title.

Section 2841, Pub. L. 92-412, title II, §202, Aug. 29, 1972, 86 Stat. 646, related to congressional statement of purpose.

Section 2842, Pub. L. 92-412, title II, §203, Aug. 29, 1972, 86 Stat. 646, related to congressional findings and policy and the establishment and functions of the Council on International Economic Policy.

Section 2843, Pub. L. 92-412, title II, §204, Aug. 29, 1972, 86 Stat. 647, related to creation of Council on International Economic Policy in Executive Office of the President.

Section 2844, Pub. L. 92-412, title II, §205, Aug. 29, 1972, 86 Stat. 647; Pub. L. 93-121, §1, Oct. 4, 1973, 87 Stat. 447, related to membership of Council and designation of a chairman by President.

Section 2845, Pub. L. 92-412, title II, §206, Aug. 29, 1972, 86 Stat. 647, related to duties of Council.

Section 2846, Pub. L. 92-412, title II, §207, Aug. 29, 1972, 86 Stat. 648; Pub. L. 93-121, §4, Oct. 4, 1973, 87 Stat. 448, related to submittal to Congress and scope of International Economic Report and other supplementary reports.

Section 2847, Pub. L. 92-412, title II, §208, Aug. 29, 1972, 86 Stat. 649; Pub. L. 94-87, §1, Aug. 9, 1975, 89 Stat. 432, related to appointment and compensation of an Executive Director and staff personnel, procurement of temporary and intermittent services, and detail of agency personnel to Council.

Section 2847a, Pub. L. 93-121, §5, Oct. 4, 1973, 87 Stat. 448, related to appointment of an Executive Director under section 2847 of this title.

Section 2848, Pub. L. 92-412, title II, §209, Aug. 29, 1972, 86 Stat. 649; Pub. L. 93-121, §2, Oct. 4, 1973, 87 Stat. 447; Pub. L. 94-87, §2, Aug. 9, 1975, 89 Stat. 432, provided for expiration of this chapter on Sept. 30, 1977.

Section 2849, Pub. L. 92-412, title II, §210, Aug. 29, 1972, 86 Stat. 649; Pub. L. 93-121, §3, Oct. 4, 1973, 87 Stat. 448; Pub. L. 93-315, June 22, 1974, 88 Stat. 239; Pub. L. 94-87, §3, Aug. 9, 1975, 89 Stat. 432, related to authorization of appropriations.

#### SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 94-412, title II, §201, Aug. 29, 1972, 86 Stat. 646, provided that this chapter be cited as the International Economic Policy Act of 1972.

#### DISCRIMINATORY TRADE PRACTICES AFFECTING UNITED STATES FOREIGN RELATIONS; REPORT TO CONGRESS

Pub. L. 95-426, title VI, §606, Oct. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 987, provided that since those provisions of United States statutes which authorize or require suspension of or discrimination with respect to all trade between the United States and a particular foreign country and which effect, directly and significantly, the conduct of United States foreign relations should be periodically reevaluated by the President and Congress, and required the President, not later than Jan. 20, 1977, to transmit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and to the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations and the chairmen of other appropriate committees of the Senate, a report which identifies all statutory provisions which provide for such discriminatory trade practices, evaluates each such practice, and recommends, in the form of draft legislation, amendments to those provisions the President certifies would in his judgment advance United States foreign policy interest.

#### EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 11789

Ex. Ord. No. 11789, June 25, 1974, 39 F.R. 23183, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 11808, Sept. 30, 1974, 39 F.R.

35563, which established the President's Committee on East-West Trade Policy, was revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 11846, Mar. 27, 1975, 40 F.R. 14291, set out as a note under section 2111 of Title 19, Customs Duties.

#### EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 11808

Ex. Ord. No. 11808, Sept. 30, 1974, 39 F.R. 35563, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 11865, June 16, 1975, 40 F.R. 25663, Ex. Ord. No. 11903, Feb. 2, 1976, 41 F.R. 4879, which established the President's Economic Policy Board, was revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 11975, Mar. 7, 1977, 42 F.R. 13267, formerly set out under this section.

## CHAPTER 43—INTERNATIONAL BROADCASTING

### §§ 2871 to 2877. Repealed. Pub. L. 103-236, title III, §310(e), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 442

Section 2871, Pub. L. 93-129, §2, Oct. 19, 1973, 87 Stat. 457; Pub. L. 95-105, title III, §302(a), Aug. 17, 1977, 91 Stat. 851; Pub. L. 99-93, title III, §303(a), Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 434; Pub. L. 101-246, title III, §304, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 64, provided congressional findings and declaration of purpose.

Section 2872, Pub. L. 93-129, §3, Oct. 19, 1973, 87 Stat. 457; Pub. L. 94-350, title III, §302(a), (b), July 12, 1976, 90 Stat. 832; Pub. L. 95-105, title III, §302(b), Aug. 17, 1977, 91 Stat. 851; Pub. L. 95-426, title III, §303, Oct. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 976; Pub. L. 97-241, title IV, §403(b), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 296, established Board for International Broadcasting.

Section 2873, Pub. L. 93-129, §4, Oct. 19, 1973, 87 Stat. 458; Pub. L. 94-350, title III, §302(c), July 12, 1976, 90 Stat. 833; Pub. L. 95-105, title III, §302(c), Aug. 17, 1977, 91 Stat. 851; Pub. L. 95-426, title III, §304(a), Oct. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 976; Pub. L. 103-236, title III, §315(c), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 445, provided for functions of Board.

Section 2874, Pub. L. 93-129, §5, Oct. 19, 1973, 87 Stat. 459; Pub. L. 95-105, title III, §302(d), Aug. 17, 1977, 91 Stat. 852; Pub. L. 95-426, title III, §305, Oct. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 976, set forth recordkeeping requirements for RFE/RL, Incorporated.

Section 2875, Pub. L. 93-129, §6, Oct. 19, 1973, 87 Stat. 459; Pub. L. 99-93, title III, §305(a), Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 436, related to duties of Secretary of State to assist Board.

Section 2876, Pub. L. 93-129, §7, Oct. 19, 1973, 87 Stat. 459; Pub. L. 99-514, §2, Oct. 22, 1986, 100 Stat. 2095, authorized Board to receive and use contributions from public.

Section 2877, Pub. L. 93-129, §8, Oct. 19, 1973, 87 Stat. 460; Pub. L. 93-392, Aug. 28, 1974, 88 Stat. 781; Pub. L. 94-104, §1, Oct. 6, 1975, 89 Stat. 508; Pub. L. 94-350, title III, §301, July 12, 1976, 90 Stat. 832; Pub. L. 95-105, title III, §301, Aug. 17, 1977, 91 Stat. 851; Pub. L. 95-426, title III, §§301(a), 302, 306, Oct. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 975, 976; Pub. L. 96-60, title III, §302, Aug. 15, 1979, 93 Stat. 402; Pub. L. 97-241, title I, §112(c), title IV, §402, Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 278, 296; Pub. L. 98-164, title III, §§302, 303, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1036; Pub. L. 99-93, title III, §301(a), 302, Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 434; Pub. L. 100-204, title V, §§501(a), 502, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1383; Pub. L. 101-246, title III, §301(a), Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 63; Pub. L. 102-138, title II, §§241, 242, Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 704, authorized appropriations to carry out this chapter.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Aug. 11, 1995, see section 6209(e) of this title.

#### SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 93-129, §1, Oct. 19, 1973, 87 Stat. 456, provided that Pub. L. 93-129 (enacting this chapter) could be cited as the "Board for International Broadcasting Act of 1973", prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103-236, title III, §310(e), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 442.

**§ 2877a. Repealed. Pub. L. 101-302, title III, § 320(a)(2), May 25, 1990, 104 Stat. 247**

Section, Pub. L. 101-246, title III, § 302, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 63, provided that any funds appropriated for Board of International Broadcasting would not be available for obligation or expenditure unless such funds were appropriated pursuant to an authorization for appropriations or if such funds were appropriated in excess of authorized level of appropriations.

**§§ 2878 to 2883. Repealed. Pub. L. 103-236, title III, § 310(e), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 442**

Section 2878, Pub. L. 93-129, § 9, as added Pub. L. 95-426, title III, § 307, Oct. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 977, required reciprocity in use of broadcasting facilities by Communist countries.

Section 2879, Pub. L. 93-129, § 10, as added Pub. L. 96-60, title III, § 303, Aug. 15, 1979, 93 Stat. 402, required preparation and submission of report to Congress on alternative plans to relocate activities of RFE/RL, Incorporated to United States territory.

Section 2880, Pub. L. 93-129, § 11, as added Pub. L. 97-241, title IV, § 403(a), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 296, related to merger of Board for International Broadcasting and RFE/RL Board.

Section 2881, Pub. L. 93-129, § 12, as added Pub. L. 98-164, title III, § 304, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1036, authorized use of funds for benefits for certain retirees and surviving spouses of employees of RFE/RL.

Section 2882, Pub. L. 93-129, § 13, as added Pub. L. 98-164, title III, § 305(a), Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1037, limited salary of RFE/RL President.

Section 2883, Pub. L. 93-129, § 14, as added Pub. L. 99-93, title III, § 303(b), Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 434, authorized use of funds for radio broadcasting to Afghanistan in the Dari and Pashto languages.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Aug. 11, 1995, see section 6209(e) of this title.

**CHAPTER 44—JAPAN-UNITED STATES FRIENDSHIP**

- Sec.
2901. Congressional statement of findings and declaration of purpose.
2902. Japan-United States Friendship Trust Fund.
- (a) Establishment.
- (b) Use of amounts in Fund for promotion of scholarly, cultural, and artistic activities between Japan and United States.
- (c) Use of amounts in Fund for administrative expenses of Japan-United States Friendship Commission.
- (d) Authorization of appropriations; source of amounts.
- (e) Additional authorization of appropriations; source of amounts; subsequent use of unappropriated portion of amounts authorized to be appropriated.
2903. Japan-United States Friendship Commission.
- (a) Establishment; composition.
- (b) Compensation and travel expenses.
- (c) Chairman; quorum; meetings.
2904. Functions of Commission.
- (a) Promotion of scholarly, cultural, and artistic activities; grants.
- (b) Annual report.
2905. Administrative powers of Commission.
2906. Management of the Friendship Trust Fund.
- (a) Constituent amounts.
- (b) Investments by Secretary of Treasury in authorized obligations; issuance of obligations and special obligations; conditions of acquisition.

Sec.

- (c) Sale of obligations; redemption of special obligations.
- (d) Credit to Fund of interest on, and proceeds from sale or redemption of, any obligations held in Fund.
- (e) Payments for implementation of programs and necessary expenses of Commission, appropriation of amounts; exceptions.

**§ 2901. Congressional statement of findings and declaration of purpose**

(a) The Congress hereby finds that—

(1) the post-World War II evolution of the relationship between Japan and the United States to peacetime friendship and partnership is one of the most significant developments of the postwar period;

(2) the Agreement Between Japan and the United States of America Concerning the Ryukyu Islands and the Daito Islands, signed at Washington and Tokyo on June 17, 1971, is a major achievement and symbol of the new relationship between the United States and Japan; and

(3) the continuation of close United States-Japan friendship and cooperation will make a vital contribution to the prospects for peace, prosperity, and security in Asia and the world.

(b) It is therefore the purpose of this chapter to provide for the use of an amount equal to a part of the total sum payable by Japan to the United States in connection with the reversion of Okinawa to Japanese administration and the remaining funds of the amount set aside in 1962 for educational and cultural exchange with Japan (known as the G.A.R.I.O.A. Account) to aid education and culture at the highest level in order to enhance reciprocal people-to-people understanding and to support the close friendship and mutuality of interests between the United States and Japan.

(Pub. L. 94-118, § 2, Oct. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 603.)

SHORT TITLE

Section 1 of Pub. L. 94-118 provided: "That this Act [enacting this chapter] may be cited as the 'Japan-United States Friendship Act'."

**§ 2902. Japan-United States Friendship Trust Fund**

**(a) Establishment**

There is established in the Treasury of the United States a trust fund to be known as the Japan-United States Friendship Trust Fund (hereafter referred to as the "Fund").

**(b) Use of amounts in Fund for promotion of scholarly, cultural, and artistic activities between Japan and United States**

Amounts in the Fund shall be used for the promotion of scholarly, cultural, and artistic activities between Japan and the United States, including—

(1) support for studies, including language studies, in institutions of higher education or scholarly research in Japan and the United States, designed to foster mutual understanding between Japan and the United States;

(2) support for major collections of Japanese books and publications in appropriate libraries

located throughout the United States and similar support for collections of American books and publications in appropriate libraries located throughout Japan;

(3) support for programs in the arts in association with appropriate institutions in Japan and the United States;

(4) support for fellowships and scholarships at the graduate and faculty levels in Japan and the United States in accord with the purposes of this chapter;

(5) support for visiting professors and lecturers at colleges and universities in Japan and the United States; and

(6) support for other Japan-United States cultural and educational activities consistent with the purposes of this chapter.

**(c) Use of amounts in Fund for administrative expenses of Japan-United States Friendship Commission**

Amounts in the Fund may also be used to pay administrative expenses of the Japan-United States Friendship Commission, established by section 2903 of this title, as directed by that Commission.

**(d) Authorization of appropriations; source of amounts**

There is authorized to be appropriated to the Fund, for fiscal year 1976, an amount equal to 7.5 per centum of the total funds payable to the United States pursuant to the Agreement Between Japan and the United States of America Concerning the Ryukyu Islands and the Daito Islands, signed at Washington and Tokyo, June 17, 1971, including interest and proceeds accruing to the Fund from such funds in accordance with sections 2905(4) and 2906 of this title.

**(e) Additional authorization of appropriations; source of amounts; subsequent use of unappropriated portion of amounts authorized to be appropriated**

(1) There is authorized to be appropriated to the Fund, for fiscal year 1976, in addition to the amount authorized to be appropriated by subsection (d) of this section, those funds available in United States accounts in Japan and transferred by the Government of Japan to the United States pursuant to the United States request made under article V of the agreement between the United States of America and Japan regarding the settlement of Postwar Economic Assistance to Japan, signed in Tokyo, January 9, 1962, and the exchange of notes of the same date (13 U.S.T. 1957; T.I.A.S. 5154) (the G.A.R.I.O.A. Account), including interest accruing to the G.A.R.I.O.A. Account and interest and proceeds accruing to the Fund from such funds in accordance with sections 2905(4) and 2906 of this title.

(2) The amount authorized to be appropriated by paragraph (1) of this subsection shall not include any amount required by law to be applied to United States participation in the International Ocean Exposition to be held in Okinawa, Japan.

(3) Any unappropriated portion of the amount authorized to be appropriated by subsection (d) of this section and paragraph (1) of this subsection for fiscal year 1976 may be appropriated in any subsequent fiscal year.

(Pub. L. 94-118, § 3, Oct. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 603; Pub. L. 94-350, title IV, § 401(2), (3)(A), July 12, 1976, 90 Stat. 833.)

AMENDMENTS

1976—Subsecs. (d), (e)(1). Pub. L. 94-350 included interest and proceeds accruing to the Fund in accordance with sections 2905(4) and 2906 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2904 to 2906 of this title.

**§ 2903. Japan-United States Friendship Commission**

**(a) Establishment; composition**

There is established a commission to be known as the Japan-United States Friendship Commission (hereafter referred to as the "Commission"). The Commission shall be composed of—

(1) the members of the United States Panel of the Joint Committee on United States-Japan Cultural and Educational Cooperation;

(2) two Members of the House of Representatives, to be appointed at the beginning of each Congress or upon the occurrence of a vacancy during a Congress by the Speaker of the House of Representatives;

(3) two Members of the Senate, to be appointed at the beginning of each Congress or upon the occurrence of a vacancy during a Congress by the President pro tempore of the Senate;

(4) the Chairman of the National Endowment for the Arts; and

(5) the Chairman of the National Endowment for the Humanities.

**(b) Compensation and travel expenses**

Members of the Commission who are not full-time officers or employees of the United States and who are not Members of Congress shall, while serving on business of the Commission, be entitled to receive compensation at rates fixed by the President, but not exceeding the rate specified at the time of such service for grade GS-18 in section 5332 of title 5, including travel-time; and while so serving away from their homes or regular places of business, all members of the Commission may be allowed travel expenses including per diem in lieu of subsistence, as authorized by section 5703 of title 5 for persons in Government service employed intermittently.

**(c) Chairman; quorum; meetings**

The Chairman of the United States Panel of the Joint Committee on United States-Japan Cultural and Educational Cooperation shall be the Chairman of the Commission. A majority of the members of the Commission shall constitute a quorum. The Commission shall meet at least twice in each year.

(Pub. L. 94-118, § 4, Oct. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 604.)

REFERENCES IN OTHER LAWS TO GS-16, 17, OR 18 PAY RATES

References in laws to the rates of pay for GS-16, 17, or 18, or to maximum rates of pay under the General Schedule, to be considered references to rates payable under specified sections of Title 5, Government Organi-

zation and Employees, see section 529 [title I, § 101(c)(1)] of Pub. L. 101-509, set out in a note under section 5376 of Title 5.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2902 of this title.

**§ 2904. Functions of Commission**

**(a) Promotion of scholarly, cultural, and artistic activities; grants**

The Commission is authorized to—

(1) develop and carry out programs at public or private institutions for the promotion of scholarly, cultural, and artistic activities in Japan and the United States consistent with the provisions of section 2902(b) of this title; and

(2) make grants to carry out such programs.

**(b) Annual report**

The Commission shall submit to the President and to the Congress an annual report of its activities under this chapter together with such recommendations as the Commission determines appropriate.

(Pub. L. 94-118, § 5, Oct. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 605.)

**§ 2905. Administrative powers of Commission**

In order to carry out its functions under this chapter, the Commission is authorized to—

(1) prescribe such regulations as it deems necessary governing the manner in which its functions shall be carried out;

(2) receive money and property donated, bequeathed, or devised, without condition or restriction other than that it be used for the purposes of this chapter; and to use, sell, or otherwise dispose of such property (including transfer to the Fund) for the purpose of carrying out the purposes of this chapter, and any such donation shall be exempt from any Federal income, State, or gift tax;

(3) in the discretion of the Commission, receive (and use, sell, or otherwise dispose of, in accordance with paragraph (2)) money and other property donated, bequeathed, or devised to the Commission with a condition or restriction, including a condition that the Commission use other funds of the Commission for the purposes of the gift, and any such donation shall be exempt from any Federal income, State, or gift tax;

(4) direct the Secretary of the Treasury to make expenditure of the income of the Fund, any amount of the contributions deposited in the Fund from nonappropriated sources pursuant to paragraph (2) or (3) of this section, and not to exceed 5 percent annually of the principal of the total amount appropriated to the Fund to carry out the purposes of this chapter, including the payment of Commission expenses if needed, except that any amounts expended from amounts appropriated to the Fund under section 2902(e)(1) of this title shall be expended in Japan or for not more than 50 percent of administrative expenses in the United States;

(5) appoint an Executive Director, without regard to the provisions of title 5 governing appointments in the competitive service, who

shall be compensated at the rate provided for a GS-18 of the General Schedule of such title;

(6) obtain the services of experts and consultants in accordance with the provisions of section 3109 of title 5, at rates for individuals not to exceed the rate specified at the time of such service for grade GS-18 in section 5332 of title 5;

(7) accept and utilize the services of voluntary and noncompensated personnel and reimburse them for travel expenses, including per diem, as authorized by section 5703 of title 5;

(8) enter into contracts, grants, or other arrangements, or modifications thereof;

(9) make advances, progress, and other payments which the Commission deems necessary under this chapter;

(10) obtain such administrative support services and personnel as the Commission deems necessary and appropriate to its needs; and

(11) transmit its official mail as penalty mail in the same manner and upon the same conditions as an officer of the United States other than a Member of Congress is permitted to transmit official mail as penalty mail under section 3202 of title 39.

(Pub. L. 94-118, § 6, Oct. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 605; Pub. L. 94-350, title IV, § 401(1), July 12, 1976, 90 Stat. 833; Pub. L. 95-426, title VII, § 703(a), Oct. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 992; Pub. L. 97-241, title V, § 503(a), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 298; Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 167, Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 676.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The provisions of title 5 governing appointments in the competitive service, referred to in par. (5), are classified to section 3301 et seq. of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

AMENDMENTS

1991—Par. (4). Pub. L. 102-138 inserted “or for not more than 50 percent of administrative expenses in the United States” after “Japan”.

1982—Par. (4). Pub. L. 97-241 substituted “, any amount of the contributions deposited in the Fund from nonappropriated sources pursuant to paragraph (2) or (3) of this section, and not to exceed 5 percent annually of the principal of the total amount appropriated to the Fund” for “and not to exceed 5 per centum annually of the principal of the Fund”.

1978—Par. (11). Pub. L. 95-426 added par. (11).

1976—Par. (10). Pub. L. 94-350 struck out “from the Secretary of State, on a reimbursable basis,” after “obtain”.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Section 703(b) of Pub. L. 95-426 provided that: “The amendments made by this section [amending this section] shall take effect on October 1, 1978.”

REFERENCES IN OTHER LAWS TO GS-16, 17, OR 18 PAY RATES

References in laws to the rates of pay for GS-16, 17, or 18, or to maximum rates of pay under the General Schedule, to be considered references to rates payable under specified sections of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, see section 529 [title I, § 101(c)(1)] of Pub. L. 101-509, set out in a note under section 5376 of Title 5.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2902, 2906 of this title.

**§ 2906. Management of the Friendship Trust Fund**

**(a) Constituent amounts**

The Fund shall consist of—

- (1) amounts appropriated under sections 2902(d) and (e)(1) of this title;
- (2) any other amounts received by the Fund by way of gifts and donations; and
- (3) interest and proceeds credited to it under subsection (b) of this section.

**(b) Investments by Secretary of Treasury in authorized obligations; issuance of obligations and special obligations; conditions of acquisition**

It shall be the duty of the Secretary of the Treasury (hereafter referred to as the "Secretary") to invest such portion of the Fund as is not, in the judgment of the Commission, required to meet current withdrawals. Such investment of amounts authorized to be appropriated under section 2902(d) of this title may be made only in interest-bearing obligations of the United States or in obligations guaranteed as to both principal and interest by the United States. For such purposes, the obligations may be acquired (1) on original issue at the issue price, or (2) by purchase of outstanding obligations at the market price. The purposes for which obligations of the United States may be issued under chapter 31 of title 31, are hereby extended to authorize the issuance at par of special obligations exclusively to the Fund. Such special obligations shall bear interest at a rate equal to the average rate of interest, computed as to the end of the calendar month next preceding the date of such issue, borne by all marketable interest-bearing obligations of the United States issued during the preceding two years then forming part of the public debt; except that where such average rate is not a multiple of one-eighth of 1 per centum, the rate of interest of such special obligations shall be the multiple of one-eighth of 1 per centum next lower than such average rate. Such special obligations shall be issued only if the Secretary determines that the purchase of other interest-bearing obligations of the United States, or of obligations guaranteed as to both principal and interest by the United States on original issue or at the market price, is not in the public interest.

**(c) Sale of obligations; redemption of special obligations**

Any obligation acquired by the Fund (except special obligations issued exclusively to the Fund) may be sold by the Secretary at the market price, and such special obligations may be redeemed at par plus accrued interest.

**(d) Credit to Fund of interest on, and proceeds from sale or redemption of, any obligations held in Fund**

The interest on, and the proceeds from the sale or redemption of, any obligations held in the Fund shall be credited to and form a part of the Fund.

**(e) Payments for implementation of programs and necessary expenses of Commission; appropriation of amounts; exceptions**

In accordance with section 2905(4) of this title, the Secretary shall pay out of the Fund such

amounts, including expenses of the Commission, as the Commission considers necessary to carry out the provisions of this chapter; except that amounts in the Fund, other than amounts which have been appropriated and amounts received (including amounts earned as interest on, and proceeds from the sale or redemption of, obligations purchased with amounts received) by the Commission pursuant to sections 2905(2) and (3) of this title, shall be subject to the appropriation process.

(Pub. L. 94-118, § 7, Oct. 20, 1975, 89 Stat. 606; Pub. L. 94-350, title IV, § 401(3)(B), July 12, 1976, 90 Stat. 833; Pub. L. 97-241, title V, § 503(b), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 298.)

CODIFICATION

In subsec. (b), "chapter 31 of title 31" substituted for "the Second Liberty Bond Act, as amended" on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, § 4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

AMENDMENTS

1982—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 97-241 inserted "(including amounts earned as interest on, and proceeds from the sale or redemption of, obligations purchased with amounts received)" after "amounts received".

1976—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 94-350 substituted "investment of amounts authorized to be appropriated under section 2902(d) of this title may be made" for "investment may be made" in second sentence.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 2902 of this title.

**CHAPTER 45—COMMISSION ON SECURITY AND COOPERATION IN EUROPE**

- Sec. 3001. Commission on Security and Cooperation in Europe; establishment.
- 3002. Function and duties of Commission.
- 3003. Commission membership.
  - (a) Selection and appointment of members.
  - (b) Commission Chairman and Cochairman.
  - (c) Designation of Chairman.
  - (d) Designation of Cochairman.
- 3004. Testimony of witnesses, production of evidence; issuance of subpoena; administration of oaths.
- 3005. Presidential report to Congress; annual submission; contents.
- 3006. Commission report to Congress; periodic reports; expenditure of appropriations.
- 3007. Appropriations for Commission.
  - (a) Authorization; disbursements.
  - (b) Use of foreign currencies.
  - (c) Official reception and representational expenses.
  - (d) Foreign travel for official purposes.
- 3008. Commission staff.
  - (a) Personnel and administration committee.
  - (b) Committee functions.
  - (c) Staff appointments.
  - (d) Commission employees as congressional employees.
- 3009. Printing and binding costs.

**§ 3001. Commission on Security and Cooperation in Europe; establishment**

There is established the Commission on Security and Cooperation in Europe (hereafter in this chapter referred to as the "Commission").



(Pub. L. 94-304, §1, June 3, 1976, 90 Stat. 661.)

### § 3002. Function and duties of Commission

The Commission is authorized and directed to monitor the acts of the signatories which reflect compliance with or violation of the articles of the Final Act of the Conference on Security and Cooperation in Europe, with particular regard to the provisions relating to human rights and Cooperation in Humanitarian Fields. The Commission is further authorized and directed to monitor and encourage the development of programs and activities of the United States Government and private organizations with a view toward taking advantage of the provisions of the Final Act to expand East-West economic cooperation and a greater interchange of people and ideas between East and West.

(Pub. L. 94-304, §2, June 3, 1976, 90 Stat. 661; Pub. L. 99-7, §2, Mar. 27, 1985, 99 Stat. 19.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Final Act of the Conference on Security and Cooperation in Europe, referred to in text, means part four of the Helsinki Declaration which deals with follow-up to the Conference and possible steps to encourage compliance with its purposes and undertakings. The Declaration was signed on August 1, 1975 by the nine members of the European Economic Community and the 35 participants to the Conference included all the European States, both Communist (except Albania) and non-Communist, the United States, Canada, and several non-participating Mediterranean states.

#### AMENDMENTS

1985—Pub. L. 99-7 inserted “human rights and” after “relating to”.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Section 6 of Pub. L. 99-7 provided that:

“(a) Except as provided in subsection (b), this Act and the amendments made by this Act [amending this section and sections 3003, 3007, and 3008 of this title and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 3003 of this title] shall take effect on the date of enactment of this Act [Mar. 27, 1985] or April 15, 1985, whichever is later.

“(b)(1) The amendment made by subsection (b) of the first section [amending section 3003 of this title] shall take effect on the first day of the One Hundredth Congress [which convenes in January 1987].

“(2) Subsection (d) of section 8 of the Act entitled ‘An Act to establish a Commission on Security and Cooperation in Europe’, approved June 3, 1976 (as added by section 5 of this Act) [section 3008(d) of this title], shall be effective as of June 3, 1976.”

### § 3003. Commission membership

#### (a) Selection and appointment of members

The Commission shall be composed of twenty-one members as follows:

(1) Nine Members of the House of Representatives appointed by the Speaker of the House of Representatives. Five Members shall be selected from the majority party and four Members shall be selected, after consultation with the minority leader of the House, from the minority party.

(2) Nine Members of the Senate appointed by the President of the Senate. Five Members shall be selected from the majority party of the Senate, after consultation with the majority leader, and four Members shall be selected,

after consultation with the minority leader of the Senate, from the minority party.

(3) One member of the Department of State appointed by the President of the United States.

(4) One member of the Department of Defense appointed by the President of the United States.

(5) One member of the Department of Commerce appointed by the President of the United States.

#### (b) Commission Chairman and Cochairman

There shall be a Chairman and a Cochairman of the Commission.

#### (c) Designation of Chairman

At the beginning of each odd-numbered Congress, the President of the Senate, on the recommendation of the majority leader, shall designate one of the Senate Members as Chairman of the Commission. At the beginning of each even-numbered Congress, the Speaker of the House of Representatives shall designate one of the House Members as Chairman of the Commission.

#### (d) Designation of Cochairman

At the beginning of each odd-numbered Congress, the Speaker of the House of Representatives shall designate one of the House Members as Cochairman of the Commission. At the beginning of each even-numbered Congress, the President of the Senate, on the recommendation of the majority leader, shall designate one of the Senate Members as Cochairman of the Commission.

(Pub. L. 94-304, §3, June 3, 1976, 90 Stat. 661; Pub. L. 99-7, §1(a), (b), Mar. 27, 1985, 99 Stat. 18.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1985—Subsecs. (a), (b). Pub. L. 99-7, §1(a), in amending section generally, designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsec. (b). Prior to amendment, section read as follows: “The Commission shall be composed of fifteen members as follows:

“(1) Six Members of the House of Representatives appointed by the Speaker of the House of Representatives. Four members shall be selected from the majority party and two shall be selected, after consultation with the minority leader of the House, from the minority party. The Speaker shall designate one of the House Members as chairman.

“(2) Six Members of the Senate appointed by the President of the Senate. Four members shall be selected from the majority party and two shall be selected after consultation with the minority leader of the Senate, from the minority party.

“(3) One member of the Department of State appointed by the President of the United States.

“(4) One member of the Defense Department appointed by the President of the United States.

“(5) One member of the Commerce Department appointed by the President of the United States.”

Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 99-7, §1(b), added subsecs. (c) and (d).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 99-7 effective Apr. 15, 1985, see section 6(a) of Pub. L. 99-7, set out as a note under section 3002 of this title.

Amendment by section 1(b) of Pub. L. 99-7 effective on first day of 100th Congress (which convenes in January 1987), see section 6(b)(1) of Pub. L. 99-7, set out as a note under section 3002 of this title.

DESIGNATION OF CHAIRMAN AND COCHAIRMAN FOR  
DURATION OF 99TH CONGRESS

Section 1(c) of Pub. L. 99-7 provided that: "On the effective date of this subsection [Apr. 15, 1985], the President of the Senate, on the recommendation of the majority leader, shall designate one of the Senate Members to serve as Chairman of the Commission for the duration of the Ninety-ninth Congress, and the Speaker of the House of Representatives shall designate one of the House Members to serve as Cochairman of the Commission for the duration of the Ninety-ninth Congress."

**§ 3004. Testimony of witnesses, production of evidence; issuance of subpoena; administration of oaths**

In carrying out this chapter, the Commission may require, by subpoena or otherwise, the attendance and testimony of such witnesses and the production of such books, records, correspondence, memorandums, papers, and documents as it deems necessary. Subpenas may be issued over the signature of the Chairman of the Commission or any member designated by him, and may be served by any person designated by the Chairman or such member. The Chairman of the Commission, or any member designated by him, may administer oaths to any witness.

(Pub. L. 94-304, § 4, June 3, 1976, 90 Stat. 661.)

**§ 3005. Presidential report to Congress; annual submission; contents**

In order to assist the Commission in carrying out its duties, the President shall submit to the Commission an annual report,<sup>1</sup> which shall include (1) a detailed survey of actions by the signatories of the Final Act reflecting compliance with or violation of the provisions of the Final Act, and (2) a listing and description of present or planned programs and activities of the appropriate agencies of the executive branch and private organizations aimed at taking advantage of the provisions of the Final Act to expand East-West economic cooperation and to promote a greater interchange of people and ideas between East and West.

(Pub. L. 94-304, § 5, June 3, 1976, 90 Stat. 661; Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 171, Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 679.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Final Act of the Conference on Security and Cooperation in Europe, referred to in text, means part four of the Helsinki Declaration which deals with follow-up to the Conference and possible steps to encourage compliance with its purposes and undertakings. The Declaration was signed on August 1, 1975 by the nine members of the European Economic Community and the 35 participants to the Conference included all the European States, both Communist (except Albania) and non-Communist, the United States, Canada, and several non-participating Mediterranean states.

## AMENDMENTS

1991—Pub. L. 102-138, § 171(2), which directed the striking out of "the first one to be submitted six months after June 3, 1976" after "report", was executed by striking that language after "report," to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Pub. L. 102-138, § 171(1), substituted "an annual report" for "a semiannual report".

<sup>1</sup> So in original.

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Memorandum of President of the United States, Feb. 10, 1992, 57 F.R. 5367, provided:

Memorandum for the Honorable James A. Baker, III, the Secretary of State

By virtue of the authority vested in me by the Constitution and laws of the United States of America, including section 301 of title 3 of the United States Code, I hereby delegate to you the functions vested in me by section 5 of Public Law 94-304 (22 U.S.C. 3005). The authority delegated by this memorandum may be further delegated within the Department of State.

You are authorized and directed to publish this memorandum in the Federal Register.

GEORGE BUSH.

**§ 3006. Commission report to Congress; periodic reports; expenditure of appropriations**

The Commission is authorized and directed to report to the House of Representatives and the Senate with respect to the matters covered by this chapter on a periodic basis and to provide information to Members of the House and Senate as requested. For each fiscal year for which an appropriation is made the Commission shall submit to Congress a report on its expenditures under such appropriation.

(Pub. L. 94-304, § 6, June 3, 1976, 90 Stat. 662.)

**§ 3007. Appropriations for Commission****(a) Authorization; disbursements**

(1) There are authorized to be appropriated to the Commission for each fiscal year such sums as may be necessary to enable it to carry out its duties and functions. Appropriations to the Commission are authorized to remain available until expended.

(2) Appropriations to the Commission shall be disbursed on vouchers approved—

(A) jointly by the Chairman and the Cochairman, or

(B) by a majority of the members of the personnel and administration committee established pursuant to section 3008(a) of this title.

**(b) Use of foreign currencies**

For purposes of section 1754(b) of this title, the Commission shall be deemed to be a standing committee of the Congress and shall be entitled to use funds in accordance with such sections.

**(c) Official reception and representational expenses**

Not to exceed \$6,000 of the funds appropriated to the Commission for each fiscal year may be used for official reception and representational expenses.

**(d) Foreign travel for official purposes**

Foreign travel for official purposes by Commission members and staff may be authorized by either the Chairman or the Cochairman.

(Pub. L. 94-304, § 7, June 3, 1976, 90 Stat. 662; Pub. L. 94-534, Oct. 17, 1976, 90 Stat. 2495; Pub. L. 95-426, title VII, § 702, Oct. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 992; Pub. L. 96-60, title IV, § 401, Aug. 15, 1979, 93 Stat. 403; Pub. L. 99-7, §§ 3, 4, Mar. 27, 1985, 99 Stat. 19.)

## AMENDMENTS

1985—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99-7, § 3, amended subsec. (a) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (a) read as fol-

lows: "There is authorized to be appropriated to the Commission for each fiscal year and to remain available until expended \$550,000 to assist in meeting the expenses of the Commission for the purpose of carrying out the provisions of this chapter, such appropriation to be disbursed on voucher to be approved by the Chairman of the Commission."

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 99-7, § 4, added subsec. (d).  
1979—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 96-60 added subsec. (c).  
1978—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 95-426 substituted "\$550,000" for "\$350,000".

1976—Pub. L. 94-534 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsec. (b).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-7 effective Apr. 15, 1985, see section 6(a) of Pub. L. 99-7, set out as a note under section 3002 of this title.

### § 3008. Commission staff

#### (a) Personnel and administration committee

The Commission shall have a personnel and administration committee composed of the Chairman, the Cochairman, the senior Commission member from the minority party in the House of Representatives, and the senior Commission member from the minority party in the Senate.

#### (b) Committee functions

All decisions pertaining to the hiring, firing, and fixing of pay of Commission staff personnel shall be by a majority vote of the personnel and administration committee, except that—

(1) the Chairman shall be entitled to appoint and fix the pay of the staff director, and the Cochairman shall be entitled to appoint and fix the pay of his senior staff person; and

(2) the Chairman and Cochairman each shall have the authority to appoint, with the approval of the personnel and administration committee, at least four professional staff members who shall be responsible to the Chairman or the Cochairman (as the case may be) who appointed them.

The personnel and administration committee may appoint and fix the pay of such other staff personnel as it deems desirable.

#### (c) Staff appointments

All staff appointments shall be made without regard to the provisions of title 5 governing appointments in the competitive service, and without regard to the provisions of chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of such title relating to classification and general schedule pay rates.

#### (d) Commission employees as congressional employees

(1) For purposes of pay and other employment benefits, rights, and privileges and for all other purposes, any employee of the Commission shall be considered to be a congressional employee as defined in section 2107 of title 5.

(2) For purposes of section 3304(c)(1) of title 5, staff personnel of the Commission shall be considered as if they are in positions in which they are paid by the Secretary of the Senate or the Clerk of the House of Representatives.

(3) The provisions of paragraphs (1) and (2) of this subsection shall be effective as of June 3, 1976.

(Pub. L. 94-304, § 8, June 3, 1976, 90 Stat. 662; Pub. L. 99-7, § 5, Mar. 27, 1985, 99 Stat. 19.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The provisions of title 5 governing appointments in the competitive service, referred to in subsec. (c), are classified generally to section 3301 et seq. of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

#### AMENDMENTS

1985—Subsecs. (a), (b). Pub. L. 99-7, in amending section generally, added subsecs. (a) and (b).

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 99-7, in amending section generally, designated existing provisions as subsec. (c) and substituted "All staff appointments shall be made" for "The Commission may appoint and fix the pay of such staff personnel as it deems desirable,".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 99-7, in amending section generally, added subsec. (d).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-7 effective Apr. 15, 1985, except for enactment of subsec. (d) which was effective June 3, 1976, see section 6(a), (b)(2) of Pub. L. 99-7, set out as a note under section 3002 of this title.

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

Certain functions of Clerk of House of Representatives transferred to Director of Non-legislative and Financial Services by section 7 of House Resolution No. 423, One Hundred Second Congress, Apr. 9, 1992. Director of Non-legislative and Financial Services replaced by Chief Administrative Officer of House of Representatives by House Resolution No. 6, One Hundred Fourth Congress, Jan. 4, 1995.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3007 of this title.

### § 3009. Printing and binding costs

For purposes of costs relating to printing and binding, including the costs of personnel detailed from the Government Printing Office, the Commission shall be deemed to be a committee of the Congress.

(Pub. L. 94-304, § 9, as added Pub. L. 99-190, § 134, Dec. 19, 1985, 99 Stat. 1322.)

## CHAPTER 46—INTERNATIONAL INVESTMENT AND TRADE IN SERVICES SURVEY

- |       |  |
|-------|--|
| Sec.  |  |
| 3101. | Congressional statement of findings and declaration of purpose. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Findings.</li> <li>(b) Purpose.</li> <li>(c) Nonrestraint and nondeterrence of investment.</li> </ul>   |
| 3102. | Definitions.   |
| 3103. | Presidential authority and duties. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Data collection program; studies and surveys; periodic report to Congressional committees; statistical information publication.</li> <li>(b) Benchmark survey of United States direct investment abroad and foreign direct investment in United States.</li> <li>(c) Benchmark survey of foreign portfolio investment in United States and United States portfolio investment abroad; report to Congress.</li> <li>(d) Foreign agricultural and real property investment and land data system; study; submittal of findings and conclusions to Congress.</li> <li>(e) Report on cost of monitoring and compiling data on legislation enacted by foreign nations regulating and restricting foreign inward investment.</li> </ul> |

- Sec.
- (f) Reporting, recordkeeping, and documentation.
  - (g) Costs for collecting information.
  - (h) Bureau of Economic Analysis report.
3104. Rules and regulations.
- (a) Authorization.
  - (b) Recordkeeping and reports.
  - (c) Access to information; limitation.
  - (d) Access to Bureau of Economic Analysis information.
  - (e) Penalty.
3105. Enforcement.
- (a) Civil penalty for failure to furnish information.
  - (b) Civil action for failure to furnish information.
  - (c) Criminal penalty for failure to submit information.
3106. Use of experts and administrative support services.
- (a) Compensation and travel expenses.
  - (b) Use of available Federal agency services, equipment, personnel, and facilities.
3107. Consultations; creation of independent public advisory committees.
3108. Authorization of appropriations.

CHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This chapter is referred to in sections 3142, 3144 of this title; title 13 section 401.

**§ 3101. Congressional statement of findings and declaration of purpose**

**(a) Findings**

The Congress finds and declares that—

- (1) the United States Government is presently authorized to collect limited amounts of information on United States investment abroad and foreign investment in the United States;
- (2) international investment has increased rapidly within recent years;
- (3) such investment significantly affects the economies of the United States and other nations;
- (4) international efforts to obtain information on the activities of multinational enterprises and other international investors have accelerated recently;
- (5) the potential consequences of international investment cannot be evaluated accurately because the United States Government lacks sufficient information on such investment and its actual or possible effects on the national security, commerce, employment, inflation, general welfare, and foreign policy of the United States;
- (6) accurate and comprehensive information on international investment is needed by the Congress to develop an informed United States policy on such investment;
- (7) United States service industries engaged in interstate and foreign commerce account for a substantial part of the labor force and gross national product of the United States economy, and such commerce is rapidly increasing;
- (8) international trade and services is an important issue for international negotiations and deserves priority in the attention of governments, international agencies, negotiators, and the private sector; and

(9) existing estimates of international investment and trade in services, collected under existing legal authority, are limited in scope and are based on outdated statistical bases, reports, and information which are insufficient for policy formulation and decision-making.

**(b) Purpose**

It is therefore the purpose of this chapter to provide clear and unambiguous authority for the President to collect information on international investment and United States foreign trade in services, whether directly or by affiliates, including related information necessary for assessing the impact of such investment and trade, to authorize the collection and use of information on direct investments owned or controlled directly or indirectly by foreign governments or persons, and to provide analyses of such information to the Congress, the executive agencies, and the general public. It is the intent of the Congress that information which is collected from the public under this chapter be obtained with a minimum burden on business and other respondents and with no unnecessary duplication of effort, consistent with the national interest in obtaining comprehensive and reliable information on international investment and trade in services.

**(c) Nonrestraint and nondeterrence of investment**

Nothing in this chapter is intended to restrain or deter foreign investment in the United States, United States investment abroad, or trade in services.

(Pub. L. 94-472, § 2, Oct. 11, 1976, 90 Stat. 2059; Pub. L. 98-573, title III, § 306(b)(2), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 3009; Pub. L. 101-533, § 6(A)[(a)], Nov. 7, 1990, 104 Stat. 2348.)

AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 101-533 inserted “to authorize the collection and use of information on direct investments owned or controlled directly or indirectly by foreign governments or persons,” after “the impact of such investment and trade,” in first sentence.

1984—Subsec. (a)(7) to (9). Pub. L. 98-573, § 306(b)(2)(A), added pars. (7) and (8), redesignated former par. (7) as (9), and inserted “and trade in services” after “international investment” in par. (9).

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 98-573, § 306(b)(2)(B), substituted “international investment and United States foreign trade in services, whether directly or by affiliates, including related information necessary for assessing the impact of such investment and trade,” for “international investment”, and “international investment and trade in services” for “international investment”.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 98-573, § 306(b)(2)(C), inserted reference to trade in services.

SHORT TITLE

Section 1 of Pub. L. 94-472, as amended by Pub. L. 98-573, title III, § 306(b)(1), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 3009, provided that: “This Act [enacting this chapter] may be cited as the ‘International Investment and Trade in Services Survey Act.’”

EX. ORD. NO. 11961. INTERNATIONAL INVESTMENT AND TRADE IN SERVICES

Ex. Ord. No. 11961, Jan. 19, 1977, 42 F.R. 4321, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 12013, Oct. 7, 1977, 42 F.R. 54931; Ex. Ord. No. 12318, Aug. 21, 1981, 46 F.R. 42833; Ex. Ord. No. 12518, June 3, 1985, 50 F.R. 23661, provided:

By virtue of the authority vested in me by the International Investment and Trade in Services Survey Act (90 Stat. 2059, 22 U.S.C. 3101) [this chapter], and section 301 of title 3 of the United States Code, and as President of the United States of America, it is hereby ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. All the functions vested in the President by the International Investment and Trade in Services Survey Act (90 Stat. 2059, 22 U.S.C. 3101) [this chapter], hereinafter referred to as the Act, are hereby delegated to the Director of the Office of Management and Budget, hereinafter referred to as the Director. The Director may, from time to time, designate other officers or agencies of the Federal Government to perform any or all of the functions hereby delegated to the Director, subject to such instructions, limitations, and directions as the Director deems appropriate.

SEC. 2. Subject to the provisions of section 1 of this order, and in the absence of any contrary delegation or direction by the Director, the Secretary of the Treasury, with respect to portfolio investment, shall perform the functions set forth in sections 4(a)(1), (2), (5) and 4(c) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 3103(a)(1), (2), (5) and (c)].

SEC. 3. Subject to the provisions of section 1 of this order, and in the absence of any contrary delegation or direction by the Director, the Secretary of Commerce, with respect to direct investment and trade in services, shall perform the functions set forth in sections 4(a)(1), (2), (4), (5) and 4(b) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 3103(a)(1), (2), (4), (5) and (b)].

SEC. 4. Subject to the provisions of section 1 of this order, and in the absence of any contrary delegation or direction by the Director, the Secretary of Commerce shall perform the function of making periodic reports to the Committees of the Congress as set forth in Section 4(a)(3) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 3103(a)(3)].

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3141 of this title.

### § 3102. Definitions

As used in this chapter, the term—

(1) “United States”, when used in a geographic sense, means the several States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the Canal Zone, and all territories and possessions of the United States;

(2) “foreign”, when used in a geographic sense, means that which is situated outside the United States or which belongs to or is characteristic of a country other than the United States;

(3) “person” means any individual, branch, partnership, associated group, association, estate, trust, corporation, or other organization (whether or not organized under the laws of any State), and any government (including a foreign government, the United States Government, a State or local government, and any agency, corporation, financial institution, or other entity or instrumentality thereof, including a government-sponsored agency);

(4) “United States person” means any person resident in the United States or subject to the jurisdiction of the United States;

(5) “foreign person” means any person resident outside the United States or subject to the jurisdiction of a country other than the United States;

(6) “business enterprise” means any organization, association, branch, or venture which exists for profitmaking purposes or to otherwise secure economic advantage, and any ownership of any real estate;

(7) “parent” means a person of one country who, directly or indirectly, owns or controls 10

per centum or more of the voting stock of an incorporated business enterprise, or an equivalent ownership interest in an unincorporated business enterprise, which is located outside that country;

(8) “affiliate” means a business enterprise located in one country which is directly or indirectly owned or controlled by a person of another country to the extent of 10 per centum or more of its voting stock for an incorporated business or an equivalent interest for an unincorporated business, including a branch;

(9) “international investment” means (A) the ownership or control, directly or indirectly, by foreign persons of any interest in property in the United States, or of stock, other securities, or short- and long-term debt obligations of a United States person, and (B) the ownership or control, directly or indirectly, by contractual commitment or otherwise, by United States persons of any interest in property outside the United States, or of stock, other securities, or short- and long-term debt obligations of a foreign person;

(10) “direct investment” means the ownership or control, directly or indirectly, by one person of 10 per centum or more of the voting securities of an incorporated business enterprise or an equivalent interest in an unincorporated business enterprise; and

(11) “portfolio investment” means any international investment which is not direct investment.

(Pub. L. 94-472, § 3, Oct. 11, 1976, 90 Stat. 2060.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

For definition of Canal Zone, referred to in par. (1), see section 3602(b) of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3146 of this title; title 13 section 401.

### § 3103. Presidential authority and duties

#### (a) Data collection program; studies and surveys; periodic report to Congressional committees; statistical information publication

The President shall, to the extent he deems necessary and feasible—

(1) conduct a regular data collection program to secure current information on international capital flows and other information related to international investment and trade in services, including (but not limited to) such information as may be necessary for computing and analyzing the United States balance of payments, the employment and taxes of United States parents and affiliates, and the international investment and trade in services position of the United States;

(2) conduct such studies and surveys as may be necessary to prepare reports in a timely manner on specific aspects of international investment and trade in services which may have significant implications for the economic welfare and national security of the United States;

(3) study the adequacy of information, disclosure, and reporting requirements and proce-

dures relating to international investment and trade in services; recommend necessary improvements in information recording, collection, and retrieval and in statistical analysis and presentation; and report periodically to the Committees on Finance<sup>1</sup> Foreign Relations<sup>1</sup> and Commerce of the Senate and the Committees on Ways and Means, Energy and Commerce, and Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives on national and international developments with respect to laws and regulations affecting international investment and trade in services;

(4) conduct (not more frequently than once every five years and in addition to any other surveys conducted pursuant to paragraphs (1) and (2)) benchmark surveys with respect to trade in services between unaffiliated United States persons and foreign persons; and

(5) publish for the use of the general public and United States Government agencies periodic, regular, and comprehensive statistical information collected pursuant to this subsection and to the benchmark surveys conducted pursuant to subsections (b) and (c) of this section, including, with respect to foreign direct investment in the United States, information on ownership by foreign governments of United States affiliates by country, and tables, on an aggregated basis, of business enterprises the ownership or control of which by foreign persons is more than 50 percent of the voting securities or other evidences of ownership of such enterprises, and business enterprises the ownership or control of which by foreign persons is 50 percent or less of the voting securities or other evidences of ownership of such enterprises.

**(b) Benchmark survey of United States direct investment abroad and foreign direct investment in United States**

With respect to foreign direct investment in the United States, the President shall conduct a benchmark survey covering year 1980, a benchmark survey covering year 1987, and benchmark surveys covering every fifth year thereafter. With respect to United States direct investment abroad, the President shall conduct a benchmark survey covering year 1982, a benchmark survey covering year 1989, and benchmark surveys covering every fifth year thereafter. In conducting surveys pursuant to this subsection, the President shall, among other things and to the extent he determines necessary and feasible—

(1) identify the location, nature, and magnitude of, and changes in total investment by any parent in each of its affiliates and the financial transactions between any parent and each of its affiliates;

(2) obtain (A) information on the balance sheet of parents and affiliates and related financial data, (B) income statements, including the gross sales by primary line of business (with as much product line detail as is necessary and feasible) of parents and affiliates in each country in which they have significant operations, and (C) related information regarding trade (including trade in both goods

and services) between a parent and each of its affiliates and between each parent or affiliate and any other person;

(3) collect employment data showing both the number of United States and foreign employees of each parent and affiliate and the levels of compensation, by country, industry, and skill level;

(4) obtain information on tax payments by parents and affiliates by country; and

(5) determine, by industry and country, the total dollar amount of research and development expenditures by each parent and affiliate, payments or other compensation for the transfer of technology between parents and their affiliates, and payments or other compensation received by parents or affiliates from the transfer of technology to other persons.

**(c) Benchmark survey of foreign portfolio investment in United States and United States portfolio investment abroad; report to Congress**

(1) The President shall conduct a comprehensive benchmark survey of foreign portfolio investment in the United States at least once every five years and, for such purposes, shall (among other things and to the extent he determines necessary and feasible) determine the magnitude and aggregate value of portfolio investment, form of investments, types of investors, nationality of investors and recorded residence of foreign private holders, diversification of holdings by economic sector, and holders of record.

(2) In addition to the benchmark surveys conducted pursuant to paragraph (1), the President shall annually compile currently available data on United States portfolio investment abroad including items such as data on the magnitude and aggregate value of portfolio investment, form of investments, types of investors, nationality of investors and recorded residence of private holders, diversification of holdings by economic sector, and holders of record. The President shall submit an analysis of such data to the Congress not later than the first day of July of each year.

**(d) Foreign agricultural and real property investment and land data system: study; submittal of findings and conclusions to Congress**

The President shall conduct a study of the feasibility of establishing a system to monitor foreign direct investment in agricultural, rural, and urban real property, including the feasibility of establishing a nationwide multipurpose land data system, and shall submit his findings and conclusions to the Congress not later than two years after October 11, 1976.

**(e) Report on cost of monitoring and compiling data on legislation enacted by foreign nations regulating and restricting foreign inward investment**

The Secretary of Commerce shall prepare a report on the estimated cost of monitoring and compiling data on legislation enacted by the major trading partners of the United States, and such other foreign nations as the Secretary

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be followed by a comma.

deems appropriate, which regulates or restricts foreign inward investment in such foreign nations.

**(f) Reporting, recordkeeping, and documentation**

Activities shall be conducted so that information obtained pursuant to this chapter shall be timely and useful in the development of policy with respect to international investment and trade in services. Reporting and recordkeeping requirements imposed under this chapter shall be designed in order to minimize costs to the extent feasible, consistent with effective enforcement and the compilation of information required by this chapter. Reporting, recordkeeping, and documentation requirements shall be periodically reviewed and revised in the light of developments in the field of information technology.

**(g) Costs for collecting information**

In collecting information under this chapter, the President shall give due regard to the costs incurred by persons supplying such information, as well as to the costs incurred by the Government, and shall insure that the information collected is only in such detail as is necessary to fulfill the stated purposes for which the information is being gathered.

**(h) Bureau of Economic Analysis report**

(1) The President, or the designee of the President responsible for monitoring the impact of foreign investment in the United States, coordinating implementation of United States policy on investment, and investigating foreign acquisitions under section 2170 of title 50, Appendix, may request a report from the Bureau of Economic Analysis of the Department of Commerce. When such request is made in connection with an investigation under such section 2170, the report shall be provided within 14 days after the request is made. When such request is not made in connection with an investigation under such section 2170, the report shall be provided within 60 days after the request.

(2) A report requested under paragraph (1) shall contain the best available information on the extent of foreign direct investment in a given industry, including a breakdown of total investment in the industry, and any foreign government investment in the industry, by country of the foreign owner, and any other information that the Bureau of Economic Analysis or such designee of the President considers relevant. The industry information provided shall be at the most detailed level available of Standard Industrial Classification, subject to the requirements of section 3104 of this title.

(Pub. L. 94-472, §4, Oct. 11, 1976, 90 Stat. 2060; Pub. L. 95-381, §2, Sept. 22, 1978, 92 Stat. 726; H. Res. 89, Feb. 5, 1979; Pub. L. 97-33, §§1-3, Aug. 7, 1981, 95 Stat. 170; Pub. L. 97-70, Oct. 26, 1981, 95 Stat. 1045; Pub. L. 98-573, title III, §306(b)(3), (4), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 3010; Pub. L. 101-533, §6(b), (c), Nov. 7, 1990, 104 Stat. 2348.)

AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (a)(5). Pub. L. 101-533, §6(b), inserted before period at end “, including, with respect to foreign direct investment in the United States, information on ownership by foreign governments of United States af-

filicates by country, and tables, on an aggregated basis, of business enterprises the ownership or control of which by foreign persons is more than 50 percent of the voting securities or other evidences of ownership of such enterprises, and business enterprises the ownership or control of which by foreign persons is 50 percent or less of the voting securities or other evidences of ownership of such enterprises”.

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 101-533, §6(c), added subsec. (h).  
1984—Subsec. (a)(1), (2). Pub. L. 98-573, §306(b)(4)(A)(ii), inserted “and trade in services” after “international investment” wherever appearing.

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 98-573, §306(b)(3), (4)(A)(i)-(iii), inserted reference to the Committee on Finance of the Senate and the Committees on Ways and Means and Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives, and substituted “presentation” for “presentation relating to international investment”, inserted “and trade in services” after “international investment” in two places, and struck out “and” at end.

Subsec. (a)(4), (5). Pub. L. 98-573, §306(b)(4)(A)(iv), (v), added par. (4) and redesignated former par. (4) as (5).

Subsec. (b)(2)(C). Pub. L. 98-573, §306(b)(4)(B), inserted “(including trade in both goods and services)” after “regarding trade”.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 98-573, §306(b)(4)(C), inserted “and trade in services” after “international investment”.

1981—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 97-70 substituted “year” for “calendar year” in five places in provisions preceding par. (1).

Pub. L. 97-33, §1, substituted “With respect to foreign direct investment in the United States, the President shall conduct a benchmark survey covering calendar year 1980, a benchmark survey covering calendar year 1987, and benchmark surveys covering every fifth calendar year thereafter. With respect to United States direct investment abroad, the President shall conduct a benchmark survey covering calendar year 1982, a benchmark survey covering calendar year 1989, and benchmark surveys covering every fifth year thereafter. In conducting surveys pursuant to this subsection, the President shall,” for “With respect to the United States direct investment abroad and foreign direct investment in the United States, the President shall conduct a comprehensive benchmark survey at least once every five years and, for such purpose, shall,” in provisions preceding par. (1).

Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 97-33, §2, substituted “the President shall annually compile currently available data on United States portfolio investment abroad including items such as data on the magnitude and aggregate value of portfolio investment, form of investments, types of investors, nationality of investors and recorded residence of private holders, diversification of holdings by economic sector, and holders of record. The President shall submit an analysis of such data to the Congress not later than the first day of July of each year” for “the President shall conduct a benchmark survey of United States portfolio investment abroad and, for such purpose, shall (among other things and to the extent he determines necessary and feasible) determine the magnitude and aggregate value of portfolio investment, form of investments, types of investors, nationality of investors and recorded residence of private holders, diversification of holdings by economic sector, and holders of record. The President shall complete such survey not later than the end of the five-year period beginning on October 11, 1976. After completion of such survey, the President shall report to the Congress on the feasibility and desirability of conducting, on a periodic basis, additional benchmark surveys of United States portfolio investment abroad. If he determines that such additional benchmark surveys are feasible and desirable, he may conduct such surveys”.

Subsecs. (e) to (g). Pub. L. 97-33, §3, added subsec. (e) and redesignated subsecs. (e) and (f) as (f) and (g), respectively.

1979—Subsec. (a)(3). H. Res. 89 changed name of Committee on International Relations of the House of Representatives to Committee on Foreign Affairs.

1978—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 95-381 substituted provisions setting forth requirements respecting interim and final reports to Congress, for provisions requiring submission of findings and conclusions to Congress not later than two years after Oct. 11, 1976.

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Energy and Commerce of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Commerce of House of Representatives and Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3103 of this title.

### § 3104. Rules and regulations

#### (a) Authorization

The authorities and responsibilities under this chapter may be exercised through such rules and regulations as may be necessary to carry out the purposes of this chapter.

#### (b) Recordkeeping and reports

Rules or regulations issued pursuant to this chapter may require any person subject to the jurisdiction of the United States—

(1) to maintain a complete record of any information (including journals or other books of original entry, minute books, stock transfer records, lists of shareholders, or financial statements) which is essential to carrying out the surveys and studies to be conducted under this chapter; and

(2) to furnish, under oath, any report containing information which is determined to be necessary to carry out the surveys and studies conducted under this chapter.

When a report under paragraph (2) is furnished under oath, such oath shall be by the officer of such person who is directly responsible for the maintenance and compilation of such information, and shall certify that the report was prepared in accordance with this chapter, is complete, and is to such officer's best knowledge and belief, substantially accurate, except in a case in which, in accordance with rules and regulations issued under this chapter, estimates have been provided because data are not available from customary accounting records or precise data could not be obtained without undue burden, and the data subject to such estimates has been noted in the report.

#### (c) Access to information; limitation

Access to information obtained under subsection (b)(2) of this section shall be available only to officials or employees designated to perform functions under this chapter, including consultants and persons working on contracts awarded pursuant to this chapter. Subject to the limitation of paragraph (1) of this subsection, the President may authorize the exchange between agencies or officials designated by him of information furnished by any person under this chapter as he deems necessary to carry out the purposes of this chapter. Nothing in this section shall be construed to require any Federal agency to disclose to any official exercising authority

under this chapter any information or report collected under legal authority other than this chapter where disclosure is prohibited by law. Information collected pursuant to subsection (b)(2) of this section may be used only—

(1) for analytical or statistical purposes within the United States Government; or

(2) for the purpose of a proceeding under subsection (e) of this section or under section 3105(b) or (c) of this title.

No official or employee designated to perform functions under this chapter, including consultants and persons working on contracts awarded pursuant to this chapter, may publish or make available to any other person any information collected pursuant to subsection (b)(2) of this section in a manner that the person who furnished the information can be specifically identified except as provided in this section. No person can compel the submission or disclosure of any report or constituent part thereof collected pursuant to this chapter, or any copy of such report or constituent part thereof, without the prior written consent of the person who maintained or furnished such report under subsection (b) of this section and without prior written consent of the customer, where the person who maintained or furnished such report included information identifiable as being derived from the records of such customer.

#### (d) Access to Bureau of Economic Analysis information

The Bureau of the Census of the Department of Commerce is authorized, for purposes of augmenting and improving the quality of data collected by the Bureau of the Census, to have, upon written request, access to data relating to business enterprises that is collected directly by the Bureau of Economic Analysis for purposes of this chapter. The Bureau of Labor Statistics of the Department of Labor is authorized, for purposes of augmenting and improving the data collected by the Bureau of Labor Statistics, to have access, upon written request, to selected identification information on business enterprises and data on international services transactions, that is collected directly by the Bureau of Economic Analysis for purposes of this chapter. Officers and employees of the Bureau of the Census and the Bureau of Labor Statistics shall, for purposes of subsection (c) of this section, be deemed to be officials or employees designated to perform functions under this chapter.

#### (e) Penalty

Any person who willfully violates subsection (c) or (d) of this section shall, upon conviction, be fined not more than \$10,000, in addition to any other penalty imposed by law.

(Pub. L. 94-472, § 5, Oct. 11, 1976, 90 Stat. 2062; Pub. L. 98-573, title III, § 306(b)(5), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 3010; Pub. L. 101-533, §§ 6(d), (e), 7(a), Nov. 7, 1990, 104 Stat. 2349.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 101-533, § 7(a), inserted at end “When a report under paragraph (2) is furnished under oath, such oath shall be by the officer of such person who is directly responsible for the maintenance and compilation of such information, and shall certify



that the report was prepared in accordance with this chapter, is complete, and is to such officer's best knowledge and belief, substantially accurate, except in a case in which, in accordance with rules and regulations issued under this chapter, estimates have been provided because data are not available from customary accounting records or precise data could not be obtained without undue burden, and the data subject to such estimates has been noted in the report."

Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 101-533, §6(e)(1), substituted "subsection (e)" for "subsection (d)".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 101-533, §6(d)(2), added subsec. (d). Former subsec. (d) redesignated (e).

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 101-533, §6(d)(1), (e)(2), redesignated subsec. (d) as (e) and inserted "or (d)" after "subsection (c)".

1984—Subsec. (b)(1), (2). Pub. L. 98-573 struck out "international investment" before "surveys".

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 3141, 3143, 3144 of this title.

### § 3105. Enforcement

#### (a) Civil penalty for failure to furnish information

Whoever fails to furnish any information required under this chapter, whether required to be furnished in the form of a report or otherwise, or to comply with any rule, regulation, order, or instruction promulgated under this chapter, shall be subject to a civil penalty of not less than \$2,500, and not more than \$25,000, in a proceeding brought under subsection (b) of this section.

#### (b) Civil action for failure to furnish information

Whenever it appears that any person has failed to furnish any information required under this chapter, whether required to be furnished in the form of a report or otherwise, or has failed to comply with any rule, regulation, order, or instruction promulgated under this chapter, a civil action may be brought in an appropriate district court of the United States, or the appropriate United States court of any territory or other place subject to the jurisdiction of the United States, and such court may enter a restraining order or a permanent or temporary injunction commanding such person to furnish such information or to comply with such rule, regulation, order, or instruction, as the case may be, or impose the civil penalty provided in subsection (a) of this section, or both.

#### (c) Criminal penalty for failure to submit information

Whoever willfully fails to submit any information required under this chapter, whether required to be furnished in the form of a report or otherwise, or willfully violates any rule, regulation, order, or instruction promulgated under this chapter, upon conviction, shall be fined not more than \$10,000 and, if an individual, may be imprisoned for not more than one year, or both, and any officer, director, employee, or agent of any corporation who knowingly participates in such violation, upon conviction, may be punished by a like fine, imprisonment, or both.

(Pub. L. 94-472, §6, Oct. 11, 1976, 90 Stat. 2063; Pub. L. 101-533, §7(b), Nov. 7, 1990, 104 Stat. 2349.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 101-533 substituted "shall be subject to a civil penalty of not less than \$2,500, and not

more than \$25,000," for "may be subject to a civil penalty not exceeding \$10,000".

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3104 of this title.

### § 3106. Use of experts and administrative support services

#### (a) Compensation and travel expenses

Any official designated by the President to carry out this chapter may procure the temporary or intermittent services of experts and consultants in accordance with the provisions of section 3109 of title 5. Persons so employed shall receive compensation at a rate not in excess of the maximum amount payable under such section. While away from his home or regular place of business and engaged in the performance of services in conjunction with the provisions of this chapter, any such person may be allowed travel expenses, including per diem in lieu of subsistence, as authorized by section 5703(b)<sup>1</sup> of title 5 for persons in the Government service employed intermittently.

#### (b) Use of available Federal agency services, equipment, personnel, and facilities

Any official designated by the President to carry out this chapter may use, on a reimbursable basis when appropriate (as determined by the President), the available services, equipment, personnel, and facilities of any agency or instrumentality of the United States Government.

(Pub. L. 94-472, §7, Oct. 11, 1976, 90 Stat. 2064.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 5703 of title 5, referred to in subsec. (a), was amended generally by Pub. L. 94-22, §4, May 19, 1975, 89 Stat. 85, and, as so amended, does not contain a subsec. (b).

### § 3107. Consultations; creation of independent public advisory committees

Officials performing functions pursuant to this chapter shall secure balanced, diverse, and responsible views from qualified persons representing business, organized labor, and the academic community and may, where appropriate, create such independent public advisory committees as are necessary to carry out the purposes of this chapter.

(Pub. L. 94-472, §8, Oct. 11, 1976, 90 Stat. 2064; Pub. L. 95-381, §3, Sept. 22, 1978, 92 Stat. 726; Pub. L. 97-33, §4, Aug. 7, 1981, 95 Stat. 171.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1981—Pub. L. 97-33 struck out designation "(a)" before "Officials performing functions" and struck out subsec. (b) which provided that the President review the results of studies and surveys conducted pursuant to this chapter and report annually to the Committee on International Relations [Foreign Affairs] of the House of Representatives and the appropriate committees of the Senate on any trends or developments which might have had national policy implications and which in the President's opinion warranted the review of the respective committees.

1978—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 95-381 substituted references to President, for references to Council on International Economic Policy.

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

## EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 11962

Ex. Ord. No. 11962, Jan. 19, 1977, 42 F.R. 4323, which established the President's Advisory Board on International Investment, was revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 12007, Aug. 22, 1977, 42 F.R. 42839, set out as a note under section 14 of Appendix of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

**§ 3108. Authorization of appropriations**

To carry out this chapter, there are authorized to be appropriated \$4,400,000 for the fiscal year ending September 30, 1980, \$4,500,000 for the fiscal year ending September 30, 1981, \$4,000,000 for the fiscal year ending September 30, 1982, and such sums as may be necessary for any subsequent fiscal years.

(Pub. L. 94-472, §9, Oct. 11, 1976, 90 Stat. 2064; Pub. L. 95-381, §1, Sept. 22, 1978, 92 Stat. 726; Pub. L. 96-72, §23(a), Sept. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 536; Pub. L. 97-33, §5, Aug. 7, 1981, 95 Stat. 171.)

## AMENDMENTS

1981—Pub. L. 97-33 inserted provisions authorizing appropriations of \$4,000,000 for fiscal year ending Sept. 30, 1982, and such sums as might be necessary for any subsequent fiscal years.

1979—Pub. L. 96-72 substituted provisions authorizing appropriations of \$4,400,000 for fiscal year ending Sept. 30, 1980, and \$4,500,000 for fiscal year ending Sept. 30, 1981, for provisions authorizing appropriations of \$4,000,000 for fiscal year ending Sept. 30, 1979.

1978—Pub. L. 95-381 increased authorization from \$1,000,000 to \$4,000,000, and struck out provisions authorizing appropriation of \$1,000,000 for fiscal year ending Sept. 30, 1978.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1979 AMENDMENT

Section 23(b) of Pub. L. 96-72 provided that: "The amendment made by subsection (a) [amending this section] shall take effect on October 1, 1979."

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Section 4 of Pub. L. 95-381 provided that: "The amendment made by the first section of this Act [amending this section] shall take effect on October 1, 1978."

**CHAPTER 46A—FOREIGN DIRECT INVESTMENT AND INTERNATIONAL FINANCIAL DATA**

- |       |  |
|-------|--|
| Sec.  |  |
| 3141. | Congressional findings.  |
| 3142. | Report by Secretary of Commerce. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Annual report on foreign direct investment in United States.</li> <li>(b) Sources of data.</li> <li>(c) Analyses.</li> </ul>   |
| 3143. | Reports by General Accounting Office. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) In general.</li> <li>(b) Report.</li> <li>(c) Other reviews and reports.</li> <li>(d) Confidentiality; review by other agencies.</li> <li>(e) Right of access.</li> </ul>     |
| 3144. | Access to information; confidentiality. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Confidentiality.</li> <li>(b) Violations and penalties.</li> <li>(c) Unlawful access.</li> <li>(d) Information immune from process.</li> <li>(e) Implementation.</li> </ul> |
| 3145. | Construction of foreign direct investment and international financial data provisions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) In general.</li> <li>(b) Implementation.</li> </ul>  |
| 3146. | Definitions.   |

**§ 3141. Congressional findings**

The Congress makes the following findings:

(1) The United States Government collects substantial amounts of information from foreign owned or controlled business enterprises or affiliates operating in the United States.

(2) Additional analysis and presentation of this information is desirable to assist the public debate on the issue of foreign direct investments in the United States.

(3) Information collected from foreign owned or controlled firms by the Bureau of Economic Analysis has serious analytical limitations because it is largely collected on an "enterprise" basis that does not permit an adequate analysis by industry groupings.

(4) Statistical and analytic comparisons of the performance of foreign owned or controlled businesses operating within the United States with other business enterprises operating within the same industry can be accomplished under sections 3101(b) and 3104(c) of this title, and under Executive Order Numbered 11961, without the need to collect additional information, by sharing with other authorized Government agencies the employer identification numbers maintained by the Bureau of Economic Analysis.

(5) Public disclosures of confidential business information collected by the United States Government relating to international direct investment flows could cause serious damage to the accuracy of the statistical data base.

(6) The General Accounting Office may have limited access to Government data on foreign direct investment.

(Pub. L. 101-533, §2, Nov. 7, 1990, 104 Stat. 2344.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

Executive Order Numbered 11961, referred to in par. (4), is set out as a note under section 3101 of this title.

## SHORT TITLE

Section 1 of Pub. L. 101-533 provided that: "This Act [enacting this chapter and section 401 of Title 13, Census, and amending sections 3101 and 3103 to 3105 of this title and section 9 of Title 13] may be cited as the 'Foreign Direct Investment and International Financial Data Improvements Act of 1990'."

**§ 3142. Report by Secretary of Commerce****(a) Annual report on foreign direct investment in United States**

Not later than 6 months after November 7, 1990, and not later than the end of each 1-year period occurring thereafter, the Secretary of Commerce shall submit to the Committee on Energy and Commerce, the Committee on Ways and Means, and the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives, to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate, and to the Joint Economic Committee of the Congress a report on the role and significance of foreign direct investment in the United States. Such report shall address the history, scope, trends, market concentrations, and effects on the United States economy of such investment. In addition, the Secretary of Commerce shall, if requested by

any such committee, appear before that committee to provide testimony with respect to any report under this subsection.

**(b) Sources of data**

In preparing each report under subsection (a) of this section, the Secretary of Commerce, or the Secretary's designees, shall consider information collected by—

(1) the Bureau of Economic Analysis under the International Investment and Trade in Services Survey Act (22 U.S.C. 3101 and following);

(2) the Bureau of the Census on industry, manufacturing, research and development, and trade, under title 13;

(3) the Bureau of Labor Statistics pertaining to information collected under the International Investment and Trade in Services Survey Act, but only to the extent that such information is in a form that cannot be associated with, or otherwise identify, directly or indirectly, a person, including any enterprise or establishment;

(4) the Secretary of Commerce or the Secretary's designee pursuant to section 2 of Executive Order 11858 of May 7, 1975;

(5) the United States Department of Agriculture under the Agricultural Foreign Investment Disclosure Act of 1978 (7 U.S.C. 3501 and following);

(6) the Department of the Treasury under section 6039C of title 26, but only to the extent that such information is in a form that cannot be associated with, or otherwise identify, directly or indirectly, a person, including any enterprise or establishment;

(7) the Department of Energy under section 7267(8) of title 42, but only to the extent that such information is in a form that cannot be associated with, or otherwise identify, directly or indirectly, a person, including any enterprise or establishment;

(8) other Federal agencies not referred to in paragraphs (1) through (7), but only to the extent that such information is in a form that cannot be associated with, or otherwise identify, directly or indirectly, a person, including any enterprise or establishment;

(9) foreign governments and agencies thereof; and

(10) private sector sources.

**(c) Analyses**

(1) The analysis in each report prepared under subsection (a) of this section shall, to the extent of available data, compare business enterprises controlled by foreign persons with other business enterprises in the United States with respect to employment, market share, value added, productivity, research and development, exports, imports, profitability, taxes paid, and investment incentives and services provided by State and local governments (including quasi-governmental entities).

(2) Each such analysis shall be done by significant industry sectors and geographical regions, except that information shall not be presented in a way in which any person, including any business enterprise or establishment, can be identified. The restriction contained in the preceding sentence on presentation of information

does not apply to information that is obtained from foreign governments or agencies thereof and that has been published pursuant to the lawful disclosure of the information. To the extent that data are available, each such analysis shall include an analysis, together with current levels and trends, of the number and market share of business enterprises at least 10 percent of the voting securities or other evidences of ownership of which are owned or controlled by a foreign person, and of the number and market share of the establishments of such business enterprises, that are engaged substantially in the production or coproduction of any critical technologies included in the most recent plan submitted to the Congress under section 2506 of title 10 or included in the most recent report submitted to the President under section 6683 of title 42.

(Pub. L. 101-533, §3, Nov. 7, 1990, 104 Stat. 2344; Pub. L. 102-484, div. A, title X, §1054(f), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2503; Pub. L. 103-160, div. A, title XI, §1182(d)(2), Nov. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 1773.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The International Investment and Trade in Services Survey Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(1), (3), is Pub. L. 94-472, Oct. 11, 1976, 90 Stat. 2059, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 46 (§3101 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3101 of this title and Tables.

Executive Order 11858, referred to in subsec. (b)(4), is set out as a note under section 78b of Title 15, Commerce and Trade.

The Agricultural Foreign Investment Disclosure Act of 1978, referred to in subsec. (b)(5), is Pub. L. 95-460, Oct. 14, 1978, 92 Stat. 1263, which is classified generally to chapter 66 (§3501 et seq.) of Title 7, Agriculture. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3501 of Title 7 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1993—Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 103-160 substituted “section 2506” for “section 2522”.

1992—Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 102-484 substituted “section 2522” for “section 2368”.

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Energy and Commerce of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Commerce of House of Representatives and Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3143 of this title.

**§ 3143. Reports by General Accounting Office**

**(a) In general**

The Comptroller General, to the extent permitted by law, including section 3144 of this title, is authorized to review the information described in section 3142(b) of this title for purposes of preparing the report required under subsection (b) of this section. Nothing in this section authorizes disclosure of any individually identifiable data or information in any form that can be associated with or otherwise iden-

tify, directly or indirectly, any person, including any enterprise or establishment.

**(b) Report**

Not later than 5 months after each report issued by the Secretary of Commerce under section 3142 of this title, the Comptroller General of the United States shall submit to the Committee on Energy and Commerce, the Committee on Ways and Means, and the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives, to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate, and to the Joint Economic Committee of the Congress a report—

(1) analyzing the report of the Secretary of Commerce;

(2) making recommendations for changes in the analysis done in the report due the following year under section 3142 of this title;

(3) making recommendations for improving the collection by respective Federal agencies of data on foreign direct investment in the United States, including use of private sector data, and improving survey questionnaires to obtain useful and consistent information that avoids unnecessary redundancy among Federal agencies;

(4) reviewing the status and processes for reconciliation of data exchanged as required by this Act and the amendments made by this Act, and making any recommendations for improving and augmenting international financial data;

(5) making recommendations for possible additional policy coordination within the executive branch affecting foreign direct investment in the United States; and

(6) making recommendations for improvement of the coverage, industry classification, and consistency among Federal agencies of their respective surveys.

Reports under this subsection shall be issued only with respect to the first 3 reports issued by the Secretary of Commerce under section 3142 of this title.

**(c) Other reviews and reports**

(1) The Comptroller General may, to the extent permitted by law, including section 3104(c) of this title and section 3144 of this title, also review data and information at the Bureau of the Census, the Bureau of Labor Statistics, and the Bureau of Economic Analysis and from time to time report to the Committee on Energy and Commerce, the Committee on Ways and Means, and the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives, the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate, and to the Joint Economic Committee of the Congress.

(2) The Comptroller General shall, in carrying out paragraph (1), comply with procedures relating to access to and disclosure of data and information established within the Federal statistical agencies referred to in paragraph (1), and maintain any and all individually identifiable data and information at the statistical agency where the information is reviewed.

**(d) Confidentiality; review by other agencies**

In preparing any report under this section, the Comptroller General shall not—

(1) disclose any confidential business information or present any information in a way in which any person, including a business enterprise or establishment, can be identified; or

(2) combine, match, or use in any other way individually identifiable data or information maintained by any of the Federal statistical agencies referred to in subsection (c) of this section with any other individually identifiable confidential data or information that is not collected by such statistical agencies.

Before issuing any such report, the Comptroller General shall in each instance submit the report to the head or heads of the agency or agencies from which confidential or identifiable information described in the preceding sentence was obtained. The agency or agencies concerned shall promptly review the report for the purpose of assuring that the confidentiality of such information and identity is maintained, and for any other purpose, and shall provide the Comptroller General with appropriate comments or other suggestions within 10 working days after receiving the report.

**(e) Right of access**

The access by the Comptroller General to information under this Act shall be in conformity with section 716 of title 31.

(Pub. L. 101-533, §4, Nov. 7, 1990, 104 Stat. 2346.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act and the amendments made by this Act, referred to in subsecs. (b)(4) and (e), is Pub. L. 101-533, Nov. 7, 1990, 104 Stat. 2344, known as the Foreign Direct Investment and International Financial Data Improvements Act of 1990, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3141 of this title and Tables.

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Energy and Commerce of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Commerce of House of Representatives and Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

**§ 3144. Access to information; confidentiality**

**(a) Confidentiality**

(1) Those officers and employees who have access to information under this Act to which the provisions of section 9 of title 13 apply must have been sworn, as provided for in section 23(c) of such title, to observe the limitations imposed by section 9(a) of such title and to be subject to the provisions of section 214 of such title to the same extent as such section applies to officers or employees of the Bureau of the Census.

(2) Only those officers and employees who have sworn to observe the provisions of section 5(c) of the International Investment and Trade in Services Survey Act (22 U.S.C. 3104(c)) may have access under this Act to information to which such provisions apply, and such officers and employees are subject to the penalties for improper disclosure of such information provided in section 5(e) of that Act [22 U.S.C. 3104(e)] to the same extent as such section applies to officers or em-

ployees designated to perform functions under that Act [22 U.S.C. 3101 et seq.].

(3) Those officers and employees referred to in paragraphs (1) and (2) of this section shall be subject to any other restriction or penalty imposed by law with respect to disclosure of information to which such officers or employees have access under this Act.

**(b) Violations and penalties**

Whoever is in possession of information made available to any department or agency by virtue of this Act or the amendments made by this Act and discloses the information in any form which can be associated with, or otherwise identify, any person, including any business enterprise or establishment, shall be fined not less than \$2,500 nor more than \$25,000 or imprisoned not more than 5 years, or both.

**(c) Unlawful access**

Whoever procures, by fraud, misrepresentation, or other unlawful act, access to information made available to any department or agency by virtue of this Act or the amendments made by this Act shall be fined not less than \$2,500 nor more than \$25,000 or imprisoned not more than 5 years, or both.

**(d) Information immune from process**

Information obtained under this Act shall be immune from legal process and shall not be used as evidence or for any purpose in any Federal, State, or local government action, suit, or other administrative or judicial proceeding except as necessary to enforce requirements imposed by law on the collection of information, to enforce the provisions of subsections (b) and (c) of this section.

**(e) Implementation**

(1) The Secretary of Commerce shall be responsible for the implementation of the exchange of information under this Act between the Bureau of the Census and the Bureau of Economic Analysis, and shall resolve any questions on access to information, data, or methodology that may arise between the Bureau of the Census and the Bureau of Economic Analysis, except that the Secretary shall not construe this section in a manner which would prevent the augmentation and improvement of the quality of international data collected under the International Investment and Trade in Services Survey Act [22 U.S.C. 3101 et seq.]. The Bureau of Economic Analysis and the Bureau of the Census shall agree in writing to the data to be shared under this Act.

(2) The Director of the Office of Management and Budget shall be responsible for the implementation of the exchange of information under this Act between the Bureau of Economic Analysis and the Bureau of Labor Statistics, and shall resolve any questions on access to information, data, or methodology that may arise between the Bureau of Economic Analysis and the Bureau of Labor Statistics, except that the Director shall not construe this section in a manner which would prevent the augmentation and improvement of the quality of international data collected under the International Investment and Trade in Services Survey Act [22 U.S.C. 3101 et seq.].

(Pub. L. 101-533, §8, Nov. 7, 1990, 104 Stat. 2350.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act or the amendments made by this Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 101-533, Nov. 7, 1990, 104 Stat. 2344, known as the Foreign Direct Investment and International Financial Data Improvements Act of 1990, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3141 of this title and Tables.

The International Investment and Trade in Services Survey Act, referred to in subsecs. (a)(2) and (e), is Pub. L. 94-472, Oct. 11, 1976, 90 Stat. 2059, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 46 (§3101 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3101 of this title and Tables.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3143 of this title.

**§ 3145. Construction of foreign direct investment and international financial data provisions**

**(a) In general**

Nothing in this Act or the amendments made by this Act shall be construed to require any business enterprise or any of its officers, directors, shareholders, or employees, or any other person, to provide information beyond that which is required before November 7, 1990.

**(b) Implementation**

All departments and agencies implementing this Act and the amendments made by this Act shall, with respect to surveys or questionnaires used in such implementation—

- (1) eliminate questions that are no longer necessary,
- (2) cooperate with one another in order to ensure that questions asked are consistent among the departments and agencies, and
- (3) develop new questions in order to obtain more refined statistics and analyses,

consistent with the purposes of the provisions of law amended by this Act and the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1980.<sup>1</sup>

(Pub. L. 101-533, §9, Nov. 7, 1990, 104 Stat. 2351.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act or the amendments made by this Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 101-533, Nov. 7, 1990, 104 Stat. 2344, known as the Foreign Direct Investment and International Financial Data Improvements Act of 1990, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3141 of this title and Tables.

The Paperwork Reduction Act of 1980, referred to in subsec. (b), is Pub. L. 96-511, Dec. 11, 1980, 94 Stat. 2812, as amended, which was classified principally to chapter 35 (§3501 et seq.) of Title 44, Public Printing and Documents, prior to the general amendment of that chapter by Pub. L. 104-13, §2, May 22, 1995, 109 Stat. 163. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1980 Amendment note set out under section 101 of Title 44 and Tables.

**§ 3146. Definitions**

For purposes of this Act—

- (1) the terms “foreign”, “direct investment”, “international investment”, “United

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

States”, “business enterprise”, “foreign person”, and “United States person” have the meanings given those terms in section 3102 of this title; and

(2) the term “foreign direct investment in the United States” means direct investment by foreign persons in any business enterprise that is a United States person.

(Pub. L. 101-533, §10, Nov. 7, 1990, 104 Stat. 2351.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 101-533, Nov. 7, 1990, 104 Stat. 2344, known as the Foreign Direct Investment and International Financial Data Improvements Act of 1990, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3141 of this title and Tables.

### CHAPTER 47—NUCLEAR NON-PROLIFERATION

- Sec.  
3201. Congressional declaration of policy.  
3202. Congressional statement of purpose.  
3203. Definitions.
- SUBCHAPTER I—UNITED STATES INITIATIVES TO PROVIDE ADEQUATE NUCLEAR FUEL SUPPLY
3221. Congressional declaration of policy.  
3222. Uranium enrichment capacity.  
3223. International undertakings.  
    (a) Development of international approaches for meeting future worldwide nuclear fuel needs; international nuclear fuel authority.  
    (b), (c) Omitted.  
    (d) Adherence of nations to policies designed to prevent proliferation.  
    (e) Report on progress of negotiations.  
    (f) Congressional approval of non-treaty international undertakings; submission of proposals.  
3224. Reevaluation of nuclear fuel cycle.  
3224a. Studies and agreements by Secretary of Energy on multinational or international basis concerning spent fuel storage facilities and transportation systems; Congressional consent; authorization of appropriations; limitations on use of funds; exceptions; special nuclear material for India.

#### SUBCHAPTER II—UNITED STATES INITIATIVES TO STRENGTHEN THE INTERNATIONAL SAFEGUARDS SYSTEM

3241. Congressional declaration of policy.  
3242. Training program.  
3243. Negotiations.  
3244. Actions to combat international nuclear terrorism.  
    (a) Actions to be taken by President.  
    (b) Reports to Congress.

#### SUBCHAPTER III—UNITED STATES ASSISTANCE TO DEVELOPING COUNTRIES

3261. Congressional declaration of policy; Presidential report to Congress.  
3262. Programs.  
    (a) Energy development programs.  
    (b) Energy assessments and cooperative projects.  
    (c) Exchange of scientists, technicians, and energy experts.  
    (d) Authorization of appropriations.  
    (e) Coordination with related United States activities abroad.

#### SUBCHAPTER IV—EXECUTIVE REPORTING

3281. Annual Presidential report to Congress on governmental efforts to prevent proliferation.

- Sec.  
    (a) Review of Government activities; description of progress; assessment of impact of progress; determinations regarding non-nuclear-weapon states; counterproductiveness of policies.  
    (b) Analysis of civil agreements for cooperation.
3282. Reports by departments and agencies.  
    (a) Reports by Nuclear Regulatory Commission and Department of Energy.  
    (b) Additional reporting requirements.  
    (c) Committees on Foreign Relations and Governmental Affairs of Senate and Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives to be kept informed.  
    (d) Classified portions of reports.  
    (e) Omitted.  
    (f) Access by Secretary of Defense to information regarding nuclear proliferation matters; applicability.

#### CHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This chapter is referred to in sections 2778a, 3303, 3408 of this title; title 42 sections 2153c, 2153d, 2153e-1, 2153f, 13492.

### § 3201. Congressional declaration of policy

The Congress finds and declares that the proliferation of nuclear explosive devices or of the direct capability to manufacture or otherwise acquire such devices poses a grave threat to the security interests of the United States and to continued international progress toward world peace and development. Recent events emphasize the urgency of this threat and the imperative need to increase the effectiveness of international safeguards and controls on peaceful nuclear activities to prevent proliferation. Accordingly, it is the policy of the United States to—

- (a) actively pursue through international initiatives mechanisms for fuel supply assurances and the establishment of more effective international controls over the transfer and use of nuclear materials and equipment and nuclear technology for peaceful purposes in order to prevent proliferation, including the establishment of common international sanctions;
- (b) take such actions as are required to confirm the reliability of the United States in meeting its commitments to supply nuclear reactors and fuel to nations which adhere to effective non-proliferation policies by establishing procedures to facilitate the timely processing of requests for subsequent arrangements and export licenses;
- (c) strongly encourage nations which have not ratified the Treaty on the Non-Proliferation of Nuclear Weapons to do so at the earliest possible date; and
- (d) cooperate with foreign nations in identifying and adapting suitable technologies for energy production and, in particular, to identify alternative options to nuclear power in aiding such nations to meet their energy needs, consistent with the economic and material resources of those nations and environmental protection.

(Pub. L. 95-242, §2, Mar. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 120.)

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 603(c) of Pub. L. 95-242 provided that: "Except where otherwise provided, the provisions of this Act [see Short Title note below] shall take effect immediately upon enactment [Mar. 10, 1978] regardless of any requirement for the promulgation of regulations to implement such provisions."

## SHORT TITLE

Section 1 of Pub. L. 95-242 provided: "That this Act [enacting this chapter and sections 2139a, 2141, 2153a to 2153e, 2153f, and 2155 to 2160a of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare, amending sections 2074, 2075, 2077, 2094, 2139, and 2153 of Title 42, and enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 3201, 3222, and 3262 of this title and section 2139 of Title 42] may be cited as the 'Nuclear Non-Proliferation Act of 1978'."

## NUCLEAR PROLIFERATION PREVENTION; EFFECTIVE AND TERMINATION DATES OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 103-236, title VIII, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 507, provided that:

## "SEC. 801. SHORT TITLE.

"This title may be cited as the 'Nuclear Proliferation Prevention Act of 1994'.

## "PART A—REPORTING ON NUCLEAR EXPORTS

## "SEC. 811. REPORTS TO CONGRESS.

"[Amended section 3281 of this title.]

## "PART B—SANCTIONS FOR NUCLEAR PROLIFERATION

## "SEC. 821. IMPOSITION OF PROCUREMENT SANCTION ON PERSONS ENGAGING IN EXPORT ACTIVITIES THAT CONTRIBUTE TO PROLIFERATION.

## "(a) DETERMINATION BY THE PRESIDENT.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in subsection (b)(2), the President shall impose the sanction described in subsection (c) if the President determines in writing that, on or after the effective date of this part, a foreign person or a United States person has materially and with requisite knowledge contributed, through the export from the United States or any other country of any goods or technology (as defined in section 830(2)), to the efforts by any individual, group, or non-nuclear-weapon state to acquire unsafeguarded special nuclear material or to use, develop, produce, stockpile, or otherwise acquire any nuclear explosive device.

"(2) PERSONS AGAINST WHICH THE SANCTION IS TO BE IMPOSED.—The sanction shall be imposed pursuant to paragraph (1) on—

"(A) the foreign person or United States person with respect to which the President makes the determination described in that paragraph;

"(B) any successor entity to that foreign person or United States person;

"(C) any foreign person or United States person that is a parent or subsidiary of that person if that parent or subsidiary materially and with requisite knowledge assisted in the activities which were the basis of that determination; and

"(D) any foreign person or United States person that is an affiliate of that person if that affiliate materially and with requisite knowledge assisted in the activities which were the basis of that determination and if that affiliate is controlled in fact by that person.

"(3) OTHER SANCTIONS AVAILABLE.—The sanction which is required to be imposed for activities described in this subsection is in addition to any other sanction which may be imposed for the same activities under any other provision of law.

"(4) DEFINITION.—For purposes of this subsection, the term 'requisite knowledge' means situations in which a person 'knows', as 'knowing' is defined in section 104 of the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977 (15 U.S.C. 78dd-2).

## "(b) CONSULTATION WITH AND ACTIONS BY FOREIGN GOVERNMENT OF JURISDICTION.—

"(1) CONSULTATIONS.—If the President makes a determination described in subsection (a)(1) with respect to a foreign person, the Congress urges the President to initiate consultations immediately with the government with primary jurisdiction over that foreign person with respect to the imposition of the sanction pursuant to this section.

"(2) ACTIONS BY GOVERNMENT OF JURISDICTION.—In order to pursue such consultations with that government, the President may delay imposition of the sanction pursuant to this section for up to 90 days. Following these consultations, the President shall impose the sanction unless the President determines and certifies in writing to the Congress that that government has taken specific and effective actions, including appropriate penalties, to terminate the involvement of the foreign person in the activities described in subsection (a)(1). The President may delay the imposition of the sanction for up to an additional 90 days if the President determines and certifies in writing to the Congress that that government is in the process of taking the actions described in the preceding sentence.

"(3) REPORT TO CONGRESS.—Not later than 90 days after making a determination under subsection (a)(1), the President shall submit to the Committee on Foreign Relations and the Committee on Governmental Affairs of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs [now Committee on International Relations] of the House of Representatives a report on the status of consultations with the appropriate government under this subsection, and the basis for any determination under paragraph (2) of this subsection that such government has taken specific corrective actions.

## "(c) SANCTION.—

"(1) DESCRIPTION OF SANCTION.—The sanction to be imposed pursuant to subsection (a)(1) is, except as provided in paragraph (2) of this subsection, that the United States Government shall not procure, or enter into any contract for the procurement of, any goods or services from any person described in subsection (a)(2).

"(2) EXCEPTIONS.—The President shall not be required to apply or maintain the sanction under this section—

"(A) in the case of procurement of defense articles or defense services—

"(i) under existing contracts or subcontracts, including the exercise of options for production quantities to satisfy requirements essential to the national security of the United States;

"(ii) if the President determines in writing that the person or other entity to which the sanction would otherwise be applied is a sole source supplier of the defense articles or services, that the defense articles or services are essential, and that alternative sources are not readily or reasonably available; or

"(iii) if the President determines in writing that such articles or services are essential to the national security under defense coproduction agreements;

"(B) to products or services provided under contracts entered into before the date on which the President publishes his intention to impose the sanction;

"(C) to—

"(i) spare parts which are essential to United States products or production;

"(ii) component parts, but not finished products, essential to United States products or production; or

"(iii) routine servicing and maintenance of products, to the extent that alternative sources are not readily or reasonably available;

"(D) to information and technology essential to United States products or production; or

“(E) to medical or other humanitarian items.

“(d) ADVISORY OPINIONS.—Upon the request of any person, the Secretary of State may, in consultation with the Secretary of Defense, issue in writing an advisory opinion to that person as to whether a proposed activity by that person would subject that person to the sanction under this section. Any person who relies in good faith on such an advisory opinion which states that the proposed activity would not subject a person to such sanction, and any person who thereafter engages in such activity, may not be made subject to such sanction on account of such activity.

“(e) TERMINATION OF THE SANCTION.—The sanction imposed pursuant to this section shall apply for a period of at least 12 months following the imposition of the sanction and shall cease to apply thereafter only if the President determines and certifies in writing to the Congress that—

“(1) reliable information indicates that the foreign person or United States person with respect to which the determination was made under subsection (a)(1) has ceased to aid or abet any individual, group, or non-nuclear-weapon state in its efforts to acquire unsafeguarded special nuclear material or any nuclear explosive device, as described in that subsection; and

“(2) the President has received reliable assurances from the foreign person or United States person, as the case may be, that such person will not, in the future, aid or abet any individual, group, or non-nuclear-weapon state in its efforts to acquire unsafeguarded special nuclear material or any nuclear explosive device, as described in subsection (a)(1).

“(f) WAIVER.—

“(1) CRITERION FOR WAIVER.—The President may waive the application of the sanction imposed on any person pursuant to this section, after the end of the 12-month period beginning on the date on which that sanction was imposed on that person, if the President determines and certifies in writing to the Congress that the continued imposition of the sanction would have a serious adverse effect on vital United States interests.

“(2) NOTIFICATION OF AND REPORT TO CONGRESS.—If the President decides to exercise the waiver authority provided in paragraph (1), the President shall so notify the Congress not less than 20 days before the waiver takes effect. Such notification shall include a report fully articulating the rationale and circumstances which led the President to exercise the waiver authority.

#### “SEC. 822. ELIGIBILITY FOR ASSISTANCE.

“(a) AMENDMENTS TO THE ARMS EXPORT CONTROL ACT.—

“(1) PROHIBITION.—[Amended section 2753 of this title.]

“(2) DEFINITION OF SUPPORT FOR INTERNATIONAL TERRORISM.—[Amended section 2780 of this title.]

“(b) FOREIGN ASSISTANCE ACT OF 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.].—

“(1) PRESIDENTIAL DETERMINATION 82-7.—Notwithstanding any other provision of law, Presidential Determination No. 82-7 of February 10, 1982, made pursuant to section 670(a)(2) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2429a(a)(2)], shall have no force or effect with respect to any grounds for the prohibition of assistance under section 102(a)(1) of the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2799aa-1(a)(1)] arising on or after the effective date of this part.

“(2) AMENDMENT.—[Amended section 2375 of this title.]

#### “SEC. 823. ROLE OF INTERNATIONAL FINANCIAL INSTITUTIONS.

“(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States executive director to each of the international financial institutions described in section 701(a) of the International Financial Institutions Act (22 U.S.C. 262d(a)) to use the voice and vote of the United States to oppose any use of the institution's funds to promote the acquisition of unsafeguarded special nuclear material or the development, stockpiling, or use of any nuclear explosive device by any non-nuclear-weapon state.

“(b) DUTIES OF UNITED STATES EXECUTIVE DIRECTORS.—[Amended section 262d of this title.]

#### “SEC. 824. PROHIBITION ON ASSISTING NUCLEAR PROLIFERATION THROUGH THE PROVISION OF FINANCING.

“(a) PROHIBITED ACTIVITY DEFINED.—For purposes of this section, the term ‘prohibited activity’ means the act of knowingly, materially, and directly contributing or attempting to contribute, through the provision of financing, to—

“(1) the acquisition of unsafeguarded special nuclear material; or

“(2) the use, development, production, stockpiling, or other acquisition of any nuclear explosive device, by any individual, group, or non-nuclear-weapon state.

“(b) PROHIBITION.—To the extent that the United States has jurisdiction to prohibit such activity by such person, no United States person and no foreign person may engage in any prohibited activity.

“(c) PRESIDENTIAL DETERMINATION AND ORDER WITH RESPECT TO UNITED STATES AND FOREIGN PERSONS.—If the President determines, in writing after opportunity for a hearing on the record, that a United States person or a foreign person has engaged in a prohibited activity (without regard to whether subsection (b) applies), the President shall, by order, impose the sanctions described in subsection (d) on such person.

“(d) SANCTIONS.—The following sanctions shall be imposed pursuant to any order issued under subsection (c) with respect to any United States person or any foreign person:

“(1) BAN ON DEALINGS IN GOVERNMENT FINANCE.—

“(A) DESIGNATION AS PRIMARY DEALER.—Neither the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System nor the Federal Reserve Bank of New York may designate, or permit the continuation of any prior designation of, the person as a primary dealer in United States Government debt instruments.

“(B) SERVICE AS DEPOSITARY.—The person may not serve as a depositary for United States Government funds.

“(2) RESTRICTIONS ON OPERATIONS.—The person may not, directly or indirectly—

“(A) commence any line of business in the United States in which the person was not engaged as of the date of the order; or

“(B) conduct business from any location in the United States at which the person did not conduct business as of the date of the order.

“(e) JUDICIAL REVIEW.—Any determination of the President under subsection (c) shall be subject to judicial review in accordance with chapter 7 of part I of title 5, United States Code.

“(f) CONSULTATION WITH AND ACTIONS BY FOREIGN GOVERNMENT OF JURISDICTION.—

“(1) CONSULTATIONS.—If the President makes a determination under subsection (c) with respect to a foreign person, the Congress urges the President to initiate consultations immediately with any appropriate foreign government with respect to the imposition of any sanction pursuant to this section.

“(2) ACTIONS BY GOVERNMENT OF JURISDICTION.—

“(A) SUSPENSION OF PERIOD FOR IMPOSING SANCTIONS.—In order to pursue consultations described in paragraph (1) with any government referred to in such paragraph, the President may delay, for up to 90 days, the effective date of an order under subsection (c) imposing any sanction.

“(B) COORDINATION WITH ACTIVITIES OF FOREIGN GOVERNMENT.—Following consultations described in paragraph (1), the order issued by the President under subsection (c) imposing any sanction on a foreign person shall take effect unless the President determines, and certifies in writing to the Congress, that the government referred to in paragraph (1) has taken specific and effective actions, includ-



ing the imposition of appropriate penalties, to terminate the involvement of the foreign person in any prohibited activity.

“(C) EXTENSION OF PERIOD.—After the end of the period described in subparagraph (A), the President may delay, for up to an additional 90 days, the effective date of an order issued under subsection (b) imposing any sanction on a foreign person if the President determines, and certifies in writing to the Congress, that the appropriate foreign government is in the process of taking actions described in subparagraph (B).

“(3) REPORT TO CONGRESS.—Before the end of the 90-day period beginning on the date on which an order is issued under subsection (c), the President shall submit to the Congress a report on—

“(A) the status of consultations under this subsection with the government referred to in paragraph (1); and

“(B) the basis for any determination under paragraph (2) that such government has taken specific corrective actions.

“(g) TERMINATION OF THE SANCTIONS.—Any sanction imposed on any person pursuant to an order issued under subsection (c) shall—

“(1) remain in effect for a period of not less than 12 months; and

“(2) cease to apply after the end of such 12-month period only if the President determines, and certifies in writing to the Congress, that—

“(A) the person has ceased to engage in any prohibited activity; and

“(B) the President has received reliable assurances from such person that the person will not, in the future, engage in any prohibited activity.

“(h) WAIVER.—The President may waive the continued application of any sanction imposed on any person pursuant to an order issued under subsection (c) if the President determines, and certifies in writing to the Congress, that the continued imposition of the sanction would have a serious adverse effect on the safety and soundness of the domestic or international financial system or on domestic or international payments systems.

“(i) ENFORCEMENT ACTION.—The Attorney General may bring an action in an appropriate district court of the United States for injunctive and other appropriate relief with respect to—

“(1) any violation of subsection (b); or

“(2) any order issued pursuant to subsection (c).

“(j) KNOWINGLY DEFINED.—

“(1) IN GENERAL.—For purposes of this section, the term ‘knowingly’ means the state of mind of a person with respect to conduct, a circumstance, or a result in which—

“(A) such person is aware that such person is engaging in such conduct, that such circumstance exists, or that such result is substantially certain to occur; or

“(B) such person has a firm belief that such circumstance exists or that such result is substantially certain to occur.

“(2) KNOWLEDGE OF THE EXISTENCE OF A PARTICULAR CIRCUMSTANCE.—If knowledge of the existence of a particular circumstance is required for an offense, such knowledge is established if a person is aware of a high probability of the existence of such circumstance, unless the person actually believes that such circumstance does not exist.

“(k) SCOPE OF APPLICATION.—This section shall apply with respect to prohibited activities which occur on or after the date this part takes effect.

“SEC. 825. EXPORT-IMPORT BANK.

“[Amended section 635 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.]

“SEC. 826. AMENDMENT TO THE ARMS EXPORT CONTROL ACT.

“(a) IN GENERAL.—[Enacted subchapter X (§2799aa et seq.) of chapter 39 of this title.]

“(b) REPEALS.—[Repealed sections 2429 and 2429a of this title.]

“(c) REFERENCES IN LAW.—Any reference in law as of the date of enactment of this Act [Apr. 30, 1994] to section 669 or 670 of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2429, 2429a] shall, after such date, be deemed to be a reference to section 101 or 102, as the case may be, of the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2799aa, 2799aa-1].

“SEC. 827. REWARD.

“[Amended section 2708 of this title.]

“SEC. 828. REPORTS.

“(a) CONTENT OF ACDA ANNUAL REPORT.—[Amended section 2593a of this title.]

“(b) REPORTING ON DEMARCHES.—(1) It is the sense of the Congress that the Department of State should, in the course of implementing its reporting responsibilities under section 602(c) of the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Act of 1978 [22 U.S.C. 3282(c)], include a summary of demarches that the United States has issued or received from foreign governments with respect to activities which are of significance from the proliferation standpoint.

“(2) For purposes of this section, the term ‘demarche’ means any official communication by one government to another, by written or oral means, intended by the originating government to express—

“(A) a concern over a past, present, or possible future action or activity of the recipient government, or of a person within the jurisdiction of that government, contributing to the global spread of un safeguarded special nuclear material or of nuclear explosive devices;

“(B) a request for the recipient government to counter such action or activity; or

“(C) both the concern and request described in subparagraphs (A) and (B).

“SEC. 829. TECHNICAL CORRECTION.

“[Amended section 2160c of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare.]

“SEC. 830. DEFINITIONS.

“For purposes of this part—

“(1) the term ‘foreign person’ means—

“(A) an individual who is not a citizen of the United States or an alien admitted for permanent residence to the United States; or

“(B) a corporation, partnership, or other non-government entity which is created or organized under the laws of a foreign country or which has its principal place of business outside the United States;

“(2) the term ‘goods or technology’ means—

“(A) nuclear materials and equipment and sensitive nuclear technology (as such terms are defined in section 4 of the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Act of 1978 [22 U.S.C. 3203]), all export items designated by the President pursuant to section 309(c) of the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Act of 1978 [42 U.S.C. 2139a(c)], and all technical assistance requiring authorization under section 57 b. of the Atomic Energy Act of 1954 [42 U.S.C. 2077(b)], and

“(B) in the case of exports from a country other than the United States, any goods or technology that, if exported from the United States, would be goods or technology described in subparagraph (A);

“(3) the term ‘IAEA safeguards’ means the safeguards set forth in an agreement between a country and the International Atomic Energy Agency, as authorized by Article III(A)(5) of the Statute of the International Atomic Energy Agency;

“(4) the term ‘nuclear explosive device’ means any device, whether assembled or disassembled, that is designed to produce an instantaneous release of an amount of nuclear energy from special nuclear material that is greater than the amount of energy that would be released from the detonation of one pound of trinitrotoluene (TNT);

“(5) the term ‘non-nuclear-weapon state’ means any country which is not a nuclear-weapon state, as defined by Article IX (3) of the Treaty on the Non-Proliferation of Nuclear Weapons, signed at Washington, London, and Moscow on July 1, 1968;

“(6) the term ‘special nuclear material’ has the meaning given that term in section 11 aa. of the Atomic Energy Act of 1954 (42 U.S.C. 2014aa; [42 U.S.C. 2014(aa)]);

“(7) the term ‘United States person’ means—

“(A) an individual who is a citizen of the United States or an alien admitted for permanent residence to the United States; or

“(B) a corporation, partnership, or other non-government entity which is not a foreign person; and

“(8) the term ‘unsafeguarded special nuclear material’ means special nuclear material which is held in violation of IAEA safeguards or not subject to IAEA safeguards (excluding any quantity of material that could, if it were exported from the United States, be exported under a general license issued by the Nuclear Regulatory Commission).

“SEC. 831. EFFECTIVE DATE.

“The provisions of this part, and the amendments made by this part, shall take effect 60 days after the date of the enactment of this Act [Apr. 30, 1994].

“PART C—INTERNATIONAL ATOMIC ENERGY AGENCY

“SEC. 841. BILATERAL AND MULTILATERAL INITIATIVES.

“It is the sense of the Congress that in order to maintain and enhance international confidence in the effectiveness of IAEA safeguards and in other multilateral undertakings to halt the global proliferation of nuclear weapons, the United States should seek to negotiate with other nations and groups of nations, including the IAEA Board of Governors and the Nuclear Suppliers Group, to—

“(1) build international support for the principle that nuclear supply relationships must require purchasing nations to agree to full-scope international safeguards;

“(2) encourage each nuclear-weapon state within the meaning of the Treaty to undertake a comprehensive review of its own procedures for declassifying information relating to the design or production of nuclear explosive devices and to investigate any measures that would reduce the risk of such information contributing to nuclear weapons proliferation;

“(3) encourage the deferral of efforts to produce weapons-grade nuclear material for large-scale commercial uses until such time as safeguards are developed that can detect, on a timely and reliable basis, the diversion of significant quantities of such material for nuclear explosive purposes;

“(4) pursue greater financial support for the implementation and improvement of safeguards from all IAEA member nations with significant nuclear programs, particularly from those nations that are currently using or planning to use weapons-grade nuclear material for commercial purposes;

“(5) arrange for the timely payment of annual financial contributions by all members of the IAEA, including the United States;

“(6) pursue the elimination of international commerce in highly enriched uranium for use in research reactors while encouraging multilateral cooperation to develop and to use low-enriched alternative nuclear fuels;

“(7) oppose efforts by non-nuclear-weapon states to develop or use unsafeguarded nuclear fuels for purposes of naval propulsion;

“(8) pursue an international open skies arrangement that would authorize the IAEA to operate surveillance aircraft and would facilitate IAEA access to satellite information for safeguards verification purposes;

“(9) develop an institutional means for IAEA member nations to share intelligence material with the

IAEA on possible safeguards violations without compromising national security or intelligence sources or methods;

“(10) require any exporter of a sensitive nuclear facility or sensitive nuclear technology to a non-nuclear-weapon state to notify the IAEA prior to export and to require safeguards over that facility or technology, regardless of its destination; and

“(11) seek agreement among the parties to the Treaty to apply IAEA safeguards in perpetuity and to establish new limits on the right to withdraw from the Treaty.

“SEC. 842. IAEA INTERNAL REFORMS.

“In order to promote the early adoption of reforms in the implementation of the safeguards responsibilities of the IAEA, the Congress urges the President to negotiate with other nations and groups of nations, including the IAEA Board of Governors and the Nuclear Suppliers Group, to—

“(1) improve the access of the IAEA within nuclear facilities that are capable of producing, processing, or fabricating special nuclear material suitable for use in a nuclear explosive device;

“(2)(A) facilitate the IAEA’s efforts to meet and to maintain its own goals for detecting the diversion of nuclear materials and equipment, giving particular attention to facilities in which there are bulk quantities of plutonium; and

“(B) if it is not technically feasible for the IAEA to meet those detection goals in a particular facility, require the IAEA to declare publicly that it is unable to do so;

“(3) enable the IAEA to issue fines for violations of safeguards procedures, to pay rewards for information on possible safeguards violations, and to establish a ‘hot line’ for the reporting of such violations and other illicit uses of weapons-grade nuclear material;

“(4) establish safeguards at facilities engaged in the manufacture of equipment or material that is especially designated or prepared for the processing, use, or production of special fissionable material or, in the case of non-nuclear-weapon states, of any nuclear explosive device;

“(5) establish safeguards over nuclear research and development activities and facilities;

“(6) implement special inspections of undeclared nuclear facilities, as provided for under existing safeguards procedures, and seek authority for the IAEA to conduct challenge inspections on demand at suspected nuclear sites;

“(7) expand the scope of safeguards to include tritium, uranium concentrates, and nuclear waste containing special fissionable material, and increase the scope of such safeguards on heavy water;

“(8) revise downward the IAEA’s official minimum amounts of nuclear material (‘significant quantity’) needed to make a nuclear explosive device and establish these amounts as national rather than facility standards;

“(9) expand the use of full-time resident IAEA inspectors at sensitive fuel cycle facilities;

“(10) promote the use of near real time material accountancy in the conduct of safeguards at facilities that use, produce, or store significant quantities of special fissionable material;

“(11) develop with other IAEA member nations an agreement on procedures to expedite approvals of visa applications by IAEA inspectors;

“(12) provide the IAEA the additional funds, technical assistance, and political support necessary to carry out the goals set forth in this subsection; and

“(13) make public the annual safeguards implementation report of the IAEA, establishing a public registry of commodities in international nuclear commerce, including dual-use goods, and creating a public repository of current nuclear trade control laws, agreements, regulations, and enforcement and judicial actions by IAEA member nations.

## “SEC. 843. REPORTING REQUIREMENT.

“(a) REPORT REQUIRED.—The President shall, in the report required by section 601(a) of the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Act of 1978 [22 U.S.C. 3281(a)], describe—

“(1) the steps he has taken to implement sections 841 and 842, and

“(2) the progress that has been made and the obstacles that have been encountered in seeking to meet the objectives set forth in sections 841 and 842.

“(b) CONTENTS OF REPORT.—Each report under paragraph (1) shall describe—

“(1) the bilateral and multilateral initiatives that the President has taken during the period since the enactment of this Act [Apr. 30, 1994] in pursuit of each of the objectives set forth in sections 841 and 842;

“(2) any obstacles that have been encountered in the pursuit of those initiatives;

“(3) any additional initiatives that have been proposed by other countries or international organizations to strengthen the implementation of IAEA safeguards;

“(4) all activities of the Federal Government in support of the objectives set forth in sections 841 and 842;

“(5) any recommendations of the President on additional measures to enhance the effectiveness of IAEA safeguards; and

“(6) any initiatives that the President plans to take in support of each of the objectives set forth in sections 841 and 842.

## “SEC. 844. DEFINITIONS.

“As used in this part—

“(1) the term ‘highly enriched uranium’ means uranium enriched to 20 percent or more in the isotope U-235;

“(2) the term ‘IAEA’ means the International Atomic Energy Agency;

“(3) the term ‘near real time material accountancy’ means a method of accounting for the location, quantity, and disposition of special fissionable material at facilities that store or process such material, in which verification of peaceful use is continuously achieved by means of frequent physical inventories and the use of in-process instrumentation;

“(4) the term ‘special fissionable material’ has the meaning given that term by Article XX(1) of the Statute of the International Atomic Energy Agency, done at the Headquarters of the United Nations on October 26, 1956;

“(5) the term ‘the Treaty’ means the Treaty on the Non-Proliferation of Nuclear Weapons, signed at Washington, London, and Moscow on July 1, 1968; and

“(6) the terms ‘IAEA safeguards’, ‘non-nuclear-weapon state’, ‘nuclear explosive device’, and ‘special nuclear material’ have the meanings given those terms in section 830 of this Act.

## “PART D—TERMINATION

## “SEC. 851. TERMINATION UPON ENACTMENT OF NEXT FOREIGN RELATIONS ACT.

“On the date of enactment of the first Foreign Relations Authorization Act that is enacted after the enactment of this Act [Apr. 30, 1994], the provisions of parts A and B of this title shall cease to be effective, the amendments made by those parts shall be repealed, and any provision of law repealed by those parts shall be enacted.”

## ADVOCACY AND ENCOURAGEMENT BY UNITED STATES OF NONPARTIES TO TREATY ON NON-PROLIFERATION OF NUCLEAR WEAPONS TO BECOME SIGNATORIES; REPORT TO CONGRESS

Pub. L. 96-53, title V, § 507, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 378, as amended by Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(3), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560, provided that:

“(a) In accordance with the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Act of 1978 [see Short Title note above], the Con-

gress strongly urges all nations which are not parties to the Treaty on Non-Proliferation of Nuclear Weapons to become parties to that treaty.

“(b) [Repealed. Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(3), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.]”

## EX. ORD. NO. 12058. FUNCTIONS RELATING TO NUCLEAR NON-PROLIFERATION

Ex. Ord. No. 12058, May 11, 1978, 43 F.R. 20947, provided:

By virtue of the authority vested in me by the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Act of 1978 (Public Law 95-242, 92 Stat. 120, 22 U.S.C. 3201) [see Short Title note above] and the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended (42 U.S.C. 2011 et seq.), and Section 301 of Title 3 of the United States Code, and as President of the United States of America, it is hereby ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. *Department of Energy.* The following functions vested in the President by the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Act of 1978 (92 Stat. 120, 22 U.S.C. 3201), hereinafter referred to as the Act, and by the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended (42 U.S.C. 2011 et seq.), hereinafter referred to as the 1954 Act, are delegated or assigned to the Secretary of Energy:

(a) That function vested by Section 402(b) of the Act (92 Stat. 145, 42 U.S.C. 2153a).

(b) Those functions vested by Sections 131a(2)(G), 131b(1), and 131f(2) of the 1954 Act (92 Stat. 127, 42 U.S.C. 2160).

(c) That function vested by Section 131f(1)(A)(ii) of the 1954 Act [42 U.S.C. 2160(f)(1)(A)(ii)], to the extent it relates to the preparation of a detailed generic plan.

SEC. 2. *Department of State.* The Secretary of State shall be responsible for performing the following functions vested in the President:

(a) Those functions vested by Sections 104(a), 104(d), 105, 403, 404, 407, and 501 of the Act (92 Stat. 122, 123, 123, 146, 147, 148, and 148, 22 U.S.C. 3223(a), 3223(d), 3224, and 42 U.S.C. 2153b, 2153c, 2153e, and 22 U.S.C. 3261).

(b) That function vested by Section 128a(2) of the 1954 Act (92 Stat. 137, 42 U.S.C. 2157(a)(2)).

(c) That function vested by Section 601 of the Act [section 3281 of this title] to the extent it relates to the preparation of an annual report.

(d) The preparation of timely information and recommendations related to the President’s functions vested by Sections 126, 128b, and 129 of the 1954 Act (92 Stat. 131, 137, and 138, 42 U.S.C. 2155, 2157, and 2158).

(e) That function vested by Section 131c of the 1954 Act (92 Stat. 129, 42 U.S.C. 2160(c)); except that, the Secretary shall not waive the 60-day requirement for the preparation of a Nuclear Non-Proliferation Assessment Statement for more than 60 days without the approval of the President.

SEC. 3. *Department of Commerce.* The Secretary of Commerce shall be responsible for performing the function vested in the President by Section 309(c) of the Act (92 Stat. 141, 42 U.S.C. 2139a).

SEC. 4. *Coordination.* In performing the functions assigned to them by this Order, the Secretary of Energy and the Secretary of State shall consult and coordinate their actions with each other and with the heads of other concerned agencies.

SEC. 5. *General Provisions.* (a) Executive Order No. 11902 of February 2, 1976, entitled “Procedures for an Export Licensing Policy as to Nuclear Materials and Equipment,” is revoked.

(b) The performance of functions under either the Act or the 1954 Act shall not be delayed pending the development of procedures, even though as many as 120 days are allowed for establishing them. Except where it would be inconsistent to do so, such functions shall be carried out in accordance with procedures similar to those in effect immediately prior to the effective date of the Act.

JIMMY CARTER.

## § 3202. Congressional statement of purpose

It is the purpose of this chapter to promote the policies set forth above by—

(a) establishing a more effective framework for international cooperation to meet the energy needs of all nations and to ensure that the worldwide development of peaceful nuclear activities and the export by any nation of nuclear materials and equipment and nuclear technology intended for use in peaceful nuclear activities do not contribute to proliferation;

(b) authorizing the United States to take such actions as are required to ensure that it will act reliably in meeting its commitment to supply nuclear reactors and fuel to nations which adhere to effective non-proliferation policies;

(c) providing incentives to the other nations of the world to join in such international cooperative efforts and to ratify the Treaty; and

(d) ensuring effective controls by the United States over its exports of nuclear materials and equipment and of nuclear technology.

(Pub. L. 95-242, § 3, Mar. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 120.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 95-242, Mar. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 120, known as the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Act of 1978. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3201 of this title and Tables.

### § 3203. Definitions

(a) As used in this chapter, the term—

(1) "Commission" means the Nuclear Regulatory Commission;

(2) "Director" means the Director of the Arms Control and Disarmament Agency;

(3) "IAEA" means International Atomic Energy Agency;

(4) "nuclear materials and equipment" means source material, special nuclear material, production facilities, utilization facilities, and components, items or substances determined to have significance for nuclear explosive purposes pursuant to subsection 109b<sup>1</sup> of the 1954 Act [42 U.S.C. 2139(b)];

(5) "physical security measures" means measures to reasonably ensure that source or special nuclear material will only be used for authorized purposes and to prevent theft and sabotage;

(6) "sensitive nuclear technology" means any information (including information incorporated in a production or utilization facility or important component part thereof) which is not available to the public and which is important to the design, construction, fabrication, operation or maintenance of a uranium enrichment or nuclear fuel reprocessing facility or a facility for the production of heavy water, but shall not include Restricted Data controlled pursuant to chapter 12 of the 1954 Act [42 U.S.C. 2161 et seq.];

(7) "1954 Act" means the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended [42 U.S.C. 2011 et seq.]; and

(8) "the Treaty" means the Treaty on the Non-Proliferation of Nuclear Weapons.

(b) All other terms used in this chapter not defined in this section shall have the meanings as-

cribed to them by the 1954 Act, the Energy Reorganization Act of 1974 [42 U.S.C. 5801 et seq.], and the Treaty.

(Pub. L. 95-242, § 4, Mar. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 121.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended, referred to in subsec. (a)(6), (7), is act Aug. 30, 1954, ch. 1073, 68 Stat. 921, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 23 (§2011 et seq.) of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare. Chapter 12 of the 1954 Act is classified generally to subchapter XI (§2161 et seq.) of division A of chapter 23 of Title 42. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2011 of Title 42 and Tables.

The Energy Reorganization Act of 1974, referred to in subsec. (b), is Pub. L. 93-438, Oct. 11, 1974, 88 Stat. 1233, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 73 (§5801 et seq.) of Title 42. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 5801 of Title 42 and Tables.

### SUBCHAPTER I—UNITED STATES INITIATIVES TO PROVIDE ADEQUATE NUCLEAR FUEL SUPPLY

#### § 3221. Congressional declaration of policy

The United States, as a matter of national policy, shall take such actions and institute such measures as may be necessary and feasible to assure other nations and groups of nations that may seek to utilize the benefits of atomic energy for peaceful purposes that it will provide a reliable supply of nuclear fuel to those nations and groups of nations which adhere to policies designed to prevent proliferation. Such nuclear fuel shall be provided under agreements entered into pursuant to section 2201 of title 42 or as otherwise authorized by law. The United States shall ensure that it will have available the capacity on a long-term basis to enter into new fuel supply commitments consistent with its non-proliferation policies and domestic energy needs. The Commission shall, on a timely basis, authorize the export of nuclear materials and equipment when all the applicable statutory requirements are met.

(Pub. L. 95-242, title I, §101, Mar. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 121.)

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Subchapter effective Mar. 10, 1978, except as otherwise provided and regardless of any requirements for the promulgation of implementing regulations, see section 603(c) of Pub. L. 95-242, set out as a note under section 3201 of this title.

#### § 3222. Uranium enrichment capacity

The Secretary of Energy is directed to initiate construction planning and design, construction, and operation activities for expansion of uranium enrichment capacity, as elsewhere provided by law. Further the Secretary as well as the Nuclear Regulatory Commission, the Secretary of State, and the Director of the Arms Control and Disarmament Agency are directed to establish and implement procedures which will ensure to the maximum extent feasible, consistent with this chapter, orderly processing of subsequent arrangements and export licenses with minimum time delay.

<sup>1</sup> So in the original. Probably should be "section 109(b)".

(Pub. L. 95-242, title I, §102, Mar. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 122.)

STUDY TO DETERMINE NEED FOR ADDITIONAL UNITED STATES ENRICHMENT CAPACITY; REPORT TO CONGRESS ON OR BEFORE MARCH 10, 1979

Section 103 of Pub. L. 95-242 directed President promptly to undertake a study to determine the need for additional United States enrichment capacity to meet domestic and foreign needs and to promote United States non-proliferation objectives abroad and report to Congress on results of this study within twelve months after Mar. 10, 1978.

**§ 3223. International undertakings**

**(a) Development of international approaches for meeting future worldwide nuclear fuel needs; international nuclear fuel authority**

Consistent with section 3224 of this title, the President shall institute prompt discussions with other nations and groups of nations, including both supplier and recipient nations, to develop international approaches for meeting future worldwide nuclear fuel needs. In particular, the President is authorized and urged to seek to negotiate as soon as practicable with nations possessing nuclear fuel production facilities or source material, and such other nations and groups of nations, such as the IAEA, as may be deemed appropriate, with a view toward the timely establishment of binding international undertakings providing for—

(1) the establishment of an international nuclear fuel authority (INFA) with responsibility for providing agreed upon fuel services and allocating agreed upon quantities of fuel resources to ensure fuel supply on reasonable terms in accordance with agreements between INFA and supplier and recipient nations;

(2) a set of conditions consistent with subsection (d) of this section under which international fuel assurances under INFA auspices will be provided to recipient nations, including conditions which will ensure that the transferred materials will not be used for nuclear explosive devices;

(3) devising, consistent with the policy goals set forth in section 2153b of title 42, feasible and environmentally sound approaches for the siting, development, and management under effective international auspices and inspection of facilities for the provision of nuclear fuel services, including the storage of special nuclear material;

(4) the establishment of repositories for the storage of spent nuclear reactor fuel under effective international auspices and inspection;

(5) the establishment of arrangements under which nations placing spent fuel in such repositories would receive appropriate compensation for the energy content of such spent fuel if recovery of such energy content is deemed necessary or desirable; and

(6) sanctions for violation of the provisions of or for abrogation of such binding international undertakings.

**(b), (c) Omitted**

**(d) Adherence of nations to policies designed to prevent proliferation**

The fuel assurances contemplated by this section shall be for the benefit of nations that ad-

here to policies designed to prevent proliferation. In negotiating the binding international undertakings called for in this section, the President shall, in particular, seek to ensure that the benefits of such undertakings are available to non-nuclear-weapon states only if such states accept IAEA safeguards on all their peaceful nuclear activities, do not manufacture or otherwise acquire any nuclear explosive device, do not establish any new enrichment or reprocessing facilities under their de facto or de jure control, and place any such existing facilities under effective international auspices and inspection.

**(e) Report on progress of negotiations**

The report required by section 3281 of this title shall include information on the progress made in any negotiations pursuant to this section.

**(f) Congressional approval of non-treaty international undertakings; submission of proposals**

(1) The President may not enter into any binding international undertaking negotiated pursuant to subsection (a) of this section which is not a treaty until such time as such proposed undertaking has been submitted to the Congress and has been approved by concurrent resolution.

(2) The proposals prepared pursuant to subsection (b) of this section shall be submitted to the Congress as part of an annual authorization Act for the Department of Energy.

(Pub. L. 95-242, title I, §104, Mar. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 122.)

CODIFICATION

Subsec. (b) of this section, directed the President to submit to Congress not later than six months after Mar. 10, 1978, proposals for initial fuel assurances, including creation of an interim stockpile of uranium enriched to less than 20 percent in the uranium isotope 235 (low-enriched uranium) to be available for transfer pursuant to a sales arrangement to nations which adhere to strict policies designed to prevent proliferation when and if necessary to ensure continuity of nuclear fuel supply to such nations, which submission was to include proposals for the transfer of low-enriched uranium up to an amount sufficient to produce 100,000 MWe years of power from light water nuclear reactors, and also to include proposals for seeking contributions from other supplier nations to such an interim stockpile pending the establishment of INFA.

Subsec. (c) of this section, which directed the President, in the report required by section 103 of Pub. L. 95-242, title I, Mar. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 122, formerly set out as a note under section 3222 of this title, to also address the desirability of and options for foreign participation, including investment, in new United States uranium enrichment facilities, the arrangements that would be required to implement such participation, and the commitments that would be required as a condition of such participation, was omitted in view of the omission of section 103 of Pub. L. 95-242.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Secretary of State responsible for performing functions vested in President under subsecs. (a) and (d), see section 2(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12058, May 11, 1978, 43 F.R. 20947, set out as a note under section 3201 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3281 of this title.

**§ 3224. Reevaluation of nuclear fuel cycle**

The President shall take immediate initiatives to invite all nuclear supplier and recipient

nations to reevaluate all aspects of the nuclear fuel cycle, with emphasis on alternatives to an economy based on the separation of pure plutonium or the presence of high enriched uranium, methods to deal with spent fuel storage, and methods to improve the safeguards for existing nuclear technology. The President shall, in the first report required by section 3281 of this title, detail the progress of such international reevaluation.

(Pub. L. 95-242, title I, §105, Mar. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 123.)

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Secretary of State responsible for performing functions vested in President under this section, see section 2(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12058, May 11, 1978, 43 F.R. 20947, set out as a note under section 3201 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 3223, 3281 of this title; title 42 section 2160.

### **§ 3224a. Studies and agreements by Secretary of Energy on multinational or international basis concerning spent fuel storage facilities and transportation systems; Congressional consent; authorization of appropriations; limitations on use of funds; exceptions; special nuclear material for India**

Department of Energy is hereby authorized to undertake studies, in cooperation with other nations, on a multinational or international basis designed to determine the general feasibility of expanding capacity of existing spent fuel storage facilities; to enter into agreements, subject to the consent of the Congress (by joint or concurrent resolution or legislation hereafter enacted), with other nations or groups of nations, for providing appropriate support to increase international or multinational spent fuel storage capacity; to conduct studies on the feasibility of establishing regional storage sites; and to conduct studies on international transportation and storage systems. For the purpose of carrying out the provisions of this section, there is included in subsection 101(20) of this Act authorization of appropriations in the amount of \$20,000,000: *Provided*, That, notwithstanding any other provision of law, that none of the funds made available to the Secretary of Energy under any other authorization or appropriation Act shall be used, directly or indirectly, for the repurchase, transportation or storage of any foreign spent nuclear fuel (including any nuclear fuel irradiated in any nuclear power reactor located outside of the United States and operated by any foreign legal entity, government or non-government, regardless of the legal ownership or control of the fuel or the reactor, and regardless of the origin or licensing of the fuel or the reactor, but not including fuel irradiated in a research reactor, and not including fuel irradiated in a power reactor if the President determines that (1) use of funds for repurchase, transportation or storage of such fuel is required by an emergency situation, (2) it is in the interest of the common defense and security of the United States to take such action, and (3) he notifies the Congress of the determination and action, with a detailed explanation and justification

thereof, as soon as possible) unless the President formally notifies, with the report information specified herein, the Committee on Energy and Natural Resources of the Senate and the Committee on Science, Space, and Technology of the House of Representatives of such use of funds thirty calendar days, during such time as either House of Congress is in session, before the commitment, expenditure, or obligation of such funds: *And provided further*, That, notwithstanding any other provision of law, that none of the funds appropriated pursuant to this Act or any other funds made available to the Secretary of Energy under any other authorization or appropriation Act shall be used, directly or indirectly, for the repurchase, transportation, or storage of any such foreign spent nuclear fuel for storage or other disposition, interim or permanent, in the United States, unless the use of the funds for that specific purpose has been (1) previously and expressly authorized by Congress in legislation hereafter enacted, (2) previously and expressly authorized by a concurrent resolution, or (3) the President submits a plan for such use, with the report information specified herein, thirty days during which the Congress is in continuous session, as defined in the Impoundment Control Act of 1974 [2 U.S.C. 681 et seq.], prior to such use and neither House of Congress approves a resolution of disapproval of the plan prior to the expiration of the aforementioned thirty-day period. If such a resolution of disapproval has been introduced, but has not been reported by the Committee on or before the twentieth day after transmission of the Presidential message, a privileged motion shall be in order in the respective body to discharge the Committee from further consideration of the resolution and to provide for its immediate consideration, using the procedures specified for consideration of an impoundment resolution in section 1017 of the Impoundment Control Act of 1974 (31 U.S.C. 1407) [2 U.S.C. 688]. Any report or plan proposed under this proviso shall include information and any supporting documentation thereof relating to policy objectives, technical description and discussion, geographic information, cost data, justification and projections, legal and regulatory considerations, environmental impact information and any related bilateral or international agreements, arrangements or understandings: *And provided further*, That nothing contained in this section shall be construed in any executive branch action, administrative proceeding, regulatory proceeding, or legal proceeding as being intended to delay, modify, or reverse the Memorandum and Order of the Nuclear Regulatory Commission of June 28, 1977, for the issuance of License No. XSNM-845 to the agent-applicant for the Government of India and the subsequent export thereby licensed of the special nuclear material to be used as fuel for the Tarapur Atomic Power Station or any other order of the Nuclear Regulatory Commission to issue a license for the export of special nuclear material and subsequent exports thereby licensed, or any consideration by the Nuclear Regulatory Commission of a license application for the export of special nuclear material.

(Pub. L. 95-238, title I, §107, Feb. 25, 1978, 92 Stat. 55; Pub. L. 103-437, §9(c), Nov. 2, 1994, 108 Stat. 4588.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 101(20) of this Act, referred to in text, is section 101(20) of Pub. L. 95-238, title I, Feb. 25, 1978, 92 Stat. 48, which authorized appropriations for fuel cycle research and development and which was not classified to the Code. Pub. L. 95-238 is known as the Department of Energy Act of 1978—Civilian Applications.

The Impoundment Control Act of 1974, referred to in text, is title X of Pub. L. 93-344, July 12, 1974, 88 Stat. 332, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 17B (§681 et seq.) of Title 2, The Congress. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 681 of Title 2 and Tables.

## CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Department of Energy Act of 1978—Civilian Applications, and not as part of the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Act of 1978 which comprises this chapter.

## AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-437 substituted “Science, Space, and Technology” for “Science and Technology”.

## CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Science, Space, and Technology of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Science of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

## SUBCHAPTER II—UNITED STATES INITIATIVES TO STRENGTHEN THE INTERNATIONAL SAFEGUARDS SYSTEM

**§ 3241. Congressional declaration of policy**

The United States is committed to continued strong support for the principles of the Treaty on the Non-Proliferation of Nuclear Weapons, to a strengthened and more effective International Atomic Energy Agency and to a comprehensive safeguards system administered by the Agency to deter proliferation. Accordingly, the United States shall seek to act with other nations to—

(a) continue to strengthen the safeguards program of the IAEA and, in order to implement this section, contribute funds, technical resources, and other support to assist the IAEA in effectively implementing safeguards;

(b) ensure that the IAEA has the resources to carry out the provisions of Article XII of the Statute of the IAEA;

(c) improve the IAEA safeguards system (including accountability) to ensure—

(1) the timely detection of a possible diversion of source or special nuclear materials which could be used for nuclear explosive devices;

(2) the timely dissemination of information regarding such diversion; and

(3) the timely implementation of internationally agreed procedures in the event of such diversion;

(d) ensure that the IAEA receives on a timely basis the data needed for it to administer an effective and comprehensive international safeguards program and that the IAEA provides timely notice to the world community of

any evidence of a violation of any safeguards agreement to which it is a party; and

(e) encourage the IAEA, to the maximum degree consistent with the Statute, to provide nations which supply nuclear materials and equipment with the data needed to assure such nations of adherence to bilateral commitments applicable to such supply.

(Pub. L. 95-242, title II, §201, Mar. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 124.)

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Subchapter effective Mar. 10, 1978, except as otherwise provided and regardless of any requirements for the promulgation of implementing regulations, see section 603(c) of Pub. L. 95-242, set out as a note under section 3201 of this title.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3281 of this title.

**§ 3242. Training program**

The Department of Energy, in consultation with the Commission, shall establish and operate a safeguards and physical security training program to be made available to persons from nations and groups of nations which have developed or acquired, or may be expected to develop or acquire, nuclear materials and equipment for use for peaceful purposes. Any such program shall include training in the most advanced safeguards and physical security techniques and technology, consistent with the national security interests of the United States.

(Pub. L. 95-242, title II, §202, Mar. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 124.)

**§ 3243. Negotiations**

The United States shall seek to negotiate with other nations and groups of nations to—

(1) adopt general principles and procedures, including common international sanctions, to be followed in the event that a nation violates any material obligation with respect to the peaceful use of nuclear materials and equipment or nuclear technology, or in the event that any nation violates the principles of the Treaty, including the detonation by a non-nuclear-weapon state of a nuclear explosive device; and

(2) establish international procedures to be followed in the event of diversion, theft, or sabotage of nuclear materials or sabotage of nuclear facilities, and for recovering nuclear materials that have been lost or stolen, or obtained or used by a nation or by any person or group in contravention of the principles of the Treaty.

(Pub. L. 95-242, title II, §203, Mar. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 124.)

**§ 3244. Actions to combat international nuclear terrorism****(a) Actions to be taken by President**

The Congress hereby directs the President—

(1) to seek universal adherence to the Convention on the Physical Protection of Nuclear Material;

(2) to—

(A) conduct a review, enlisting the participation of all relevant departments and agencies of the Government, to determine whether the recommendations on Physical Protection of Nuclear Material published by the International Atomic Energy Agency are adequate to deter theft, sabotage, and the use of nuclear facilities and materials in acts of international terrorism, and

(B) transmit the results of this review to the Director-General of the International Atomic Energy Agency;

(3) to take, in concert with United States allies and other countries, such steps as may be necessary—

(A) to keep to a minimum the amount of weapons-grade nuclear material in international transit, and

(B) to ensure that when any such material is transported internationally, it is under the most effective means for adequately protecting it from acts or attempted acts of sabotage or theft by terrorist groups or nations; and

(4) to seek agreement in the United Nations Security Council to establish—

(A) an effective regime of international sanctions against any nation or subnational group which conducts or sponsors acts of international nuclear terrorism, and

(B) measures for coordinating responses to all acts of international nuclear terrorism, including measures for the recovery of stolen nuclear material and the clean-up of nuclear releases.

#### **(b) Reports to Congress**

The President shall report to the Congress annually, in the reports required by section 3281 of this title, on the progress made during the preceding year in achieving the objectives described in this section.

(Pub. L. 99-399, title VI, § 601, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 874.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Omnibus Diplomatic Security and Antiterrorism Act of 1986, and not as part of the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Act of 1978 which comprises this chapter.

### SUBCHAPTER III—UNITED STATES ASSISTANCE TO DEVELOPING COUNTRIES

#### **§ 3261. Congressional declaration of policy; Presidential report to Congress**

The United States shall endeavor to cooperate with other nations, international institutions, and private organizations in establishing programs to assist in the development of non-nuclear energy resources, to cooperate with both developing and industrialized nations in protecting the international environment from contamination arising from both nuclear and non-nuclear energy activities, and shall seek to cooperate with and aid developing countries in meeting their energy needs through the development of such resources and the application of non-nuclear technologies consistent with the economic factors, the material resources of

those countries, and environmental protection. The United States shall additionally seek to encourage other industrialized nations and groups of nations to make commitments for similar cooperation and aid to developing countries. The President shall report annually to Congress on the level of other nations' and groups of nations' commitments under such program and the relation of any such commitments to United States efforts under this title. In cooperating with and providing such assistance to developing countries, the United States shall give priority to parties to the Treaty.

(Pub. L. 95-242, title V, § 501, Mar. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 148.)

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Subchapter effective Mar. 10, 1978, except as otherwise provided and regardless of any requirements for the promulgation of implementing regulations, see section 603(c) of Pub. L. 95-242, set out as a note under section 3201 of this title.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Secretary of State responsible for performing functions vested in President under this section, see section 2(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12058, May 11, 1978, 43 F.R. 20947, set out as a note under section 3201 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3262 of this title; title 12 sections 635, 635g.

#### **§ 3262. Programs**

##### **(a) Energy development programs**

The United States shall initiate a program, consistent with the aims of section 3261 of this title, to cooperate with developing countries for the purpose of—

(1) meeting the energy needs required for the development of such countries;

(2) reducing the dependence of such countries on petroleum fuels, with emphasis given to utilizing solar and other renewable energy resources; and

(3) expanding the energy alternatives available to such countries.

##### **(b) Energy assessments and cooperative projects**

Such program shall include cooperation in evaluating the energy alternatives of developing countries, facilitating international trade in energy commodities, developing energy resources, and applying suitable energy technologies. The program shall include both general and country-specific energy assessments and cooperative projects in resource exploration and production, training, research and development.

##### **(c) Exchange of scientists, technicians, and energy experts**

As an integral part of such program, the Department of Energy, under the general policy guidance of the Department of State and in cooperation with the Agency for International Development and other Federal agencies as appropriate, shall initiate, as soon as practicable, a program for the exchange of United States scientists, technicians, and energy experts with those of developing countries to implement the purposes of this section.

##### **(d) Authorization of appropriations**

For the purposes of carrying out this section, there is authorized to be appropriated such sums



as are contained in annual authorization Acts for the Department of Energy, including such sums which have been authorized for such purposes under previous legislation.

**(e) Coordination with related United States activities abroad**

Under the direction of the President, the Secretary of State shall ensure the coordination of the activities authorized by this subchapter with other related activities of the United States conducted abroad, including the programs authorized by sections 2151a(c), 2151d(a)(2),<sup>1</sup> and 2151q<sup>1</sup> of this title.

(Pub. L. 95-242, title V, §502, Mar. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 149.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 2151d(a)(2) of this title, referred to in subsec. (e), which at the time of enactment of this section related to programs to increase energy production and conservation in developing countries, was deleted in the general amendment of section 2151d by Pub. L. 96-53, title I, §§104(b), 105, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 360, 362. For provisions relating to cooperative programs with developing countries in energy production and conservation, see section 2151d(b)(2) of this title.

Section 2151q of this title, referred to in subsec. (e), was repealed by Pub. L. 96-533, title III, §304(g), Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3147. See section 2151d(a)(2), (b)(2), (c) of this title.

FEASIBILITY OF EXPANDING COOPERATIVE ACTIVITIES INTO INTERNATIONAL COOPERATIVE EFFORT; PRESIDENTIAL REPORT TO CONGRESS NOT LATER THAN MARCH 10, 1979

Section 503 of Pub. L. 95-242 directed President, not later than twelve months after Mar. 10, 1978, to report to Congress on feasibility of expanding cooperative activities established pursuant to subsec. (c) of this section into an international cooperative effort to include a scientific peace corps designed to encourage large numbers of technically trained volunteers to live and work in developing countries for varying periods of time for purpose of engaging in projects to aid in meeting the energy needs of such countries through search for and utilization of indigenous energy resources and application of suitable technology, including widespread utilization of renewable and unconventional energy technologies, and to also include in report a discussion of other mechanisms to conduct a coordinated international effort to develop, demonstrate, and encourage utilization of such technologies in developing countries.

SUBCHAPTER IV—EXECUTIVE REPORTING

**§ 3281. Annual Presidential report to Congress on governmental efforts to prevent proliferation**

**(a) Review of Government activities; description of progress; assessment of impact of progress; determinations regarding non-nuclear-weapon states; counterproductiveness of policies**

The President shall review all activities of Government departments and agencies relating to preventing proliferation and shall make a report to Congress in January of 1979 and annually in January of each year thereafter on the Government's efforts to prevent proliferation. This report shall include but not be limited to—

(1) a description of the progress made toward—

(A) negotiating the initiatives contemplated in sections 3223 and 3224 of this title;

(B) negotiating the international arrangements or other mutual undertakings contemplated in section 2153b of title 42;

(C) encouraging non-nuclear-weapon states that are not party to the Treaty to adhere to the Treaty or, pending such adherence, to enter into comparable agreements with respect to safeguards and to forswear the development of any nuclear explosive devices, and discouraging nuclear exports to non-nuclear-weapon states which have not taken such steps;

(D) strengthening the safeguards of the IAEA as contemplated in section 3241 of this title; and

(E) renegotiating agreements for cooperation as contemplated in section 2153c(a) of title 42;

(2) an assessment of the impact of the progress described in paragraph (1) on the non-proliferation policy of the United States; an explanation of the precise reasons why progress has not been made on any particular point and recommendations with respect to appropriate measures to encourage progress; and a statement of what legislative modifications, if any, are necessary in his judgment to achieve the non-proliferation policy of the United States;

(3) a determination as to which non-nuclear-weapon states with which the United States has an agreement for cooperation in effect or under negotiation, if any, have—

(A) detonated a nuclear device; or

(B) refused to accept the safeguards of the IAEA on all of their peaceful nuclear activities; or

(C) refused to give specific assurances that they will not manufacture or otherwise acquire any nuclear explosive device; or

(D) engaged in activities involving source or special nuclear material and having direct significance for the manufacture or acquisition of nuclear explosive devices;

(4) an assessment of whether any of the policies set forth in this chapter have, on balance, been counterproductive from the standpoint of preventing proliferation;

(5) a description of the progress made toward establishing procedures to facilitate the timely processing of requests for subsequent arrangements and export licenses in order to enhance the reliability of the United States in meeting its commitments to supply nuclear reactors and fuel to nations which adhere to effective non-proliferation policies;<sup>1</sup>

(6) a description of the implementation of nuclear and nuclear-related dual-use export controls in the preceding calendar year, including a summary by type of commodity and destination of—

(A) all transactions for which—

(i) an export license was issued for any good controlled under section 2139a(c) of title 42;

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be “; and”.

(ii) an export license was issued under section 2139(b) of title 42;

(iii) approvals were issued under the Export Administration Act of 1979 [50 App. U.S.C. 2401 et seq.], or section 2139(b)(3) of title 42, for the retransfer of any item, technical data, component, or substance; or

(iv) authorizations were made as required by section 2077(b)(2) of title 42 to engage, directly or indirectly, in the production of special nuclear material;

(B) each instance in which—

(i) a sanction has been imposed under section 821(a) or section 824 of the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention Act of 1994 or section 2799aa-1(b)(1) of this title;

(ii) sales or leases have been denied under section 2753(f) of this title or transactions prohibited by reason of acts relating to proliferation of nuclear explosive devices as described in section 2780(d) of this title;

(iii) a sanction has not been imposed by reason of section 821(c)(2) of the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention Act of 1994 or the imposition of a sanction has been delayed under section 2799aa-1(b)(4) of this title, or

(iv) a waiver of a sanction has been made under—

(I) section 821(f) or section 824 of the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention Act of 1994,

(II) section 2375(d) of this title, or paragraph (5) or (6)(B) of section 2799aa-1(b) of this title,

(III) section 2780(g) of this title with respect to the last sentence of section 2780(d) of this title, or

(IV) section 2364 of this title with respect to section 2375 of this title or section 2753(f) of this title, the last sentence of section 2780(d) of this title, or 2799aa-1(b)(1)<sup>2</sup> of this title; and

(C) the progress of those independent states of the former Soviet Union that are non-nuclear-weapon states and of the Baltic states towards achieving the objective of applying full scope safeguards to all their peaceful nuclear activities.

Portions of the information required by paragraph (6) may be submitted in classified form, as necessary. Any such information that may not be published or disclosed under section 12(c)(1) of the Export Administration Act of 1979 [50 App. U.S.C. 2411(c)(1)] shall be submitted as confidential.

**(b) Analysis of civil agreements for cooperation**

In the first report required by this section, the President shall analyze each civil agreement for cooperation negotiated pursuant to section 2153 of title 42, and shall discuss the scope and adequacy of the requirements and obligations relating to safeguards and other controls therein.

(Pub. L. 95-242, title VI, §601, Mar. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 150; Pub. L. 103-236, title VIII, §811, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 507.)

<sup>2</sup> So in original. Probably should be preceded by "section".

AMENDMENT OF SECTION

*For termination of amendment by section 851 of Pub. L. 103-236, see Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note below.*

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Export Administration Act of 1979, referred to in subsec. (a)(6)(A)(iii), is Pub. L. 96-72, Sept. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 503, as amended, which is classified principally to section 2401 et seq. of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2401 of Title 50, Appendix, and Tables.

Sections 821 and 824 of the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention Act of 1994, referred to in subsec. (a)(6)(B), are sections 821 and 824 of Pub. L. 103-236 which are set out in the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention; Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note under section 3201 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103-236 temporarily struck out "and" after the semicolon in par. (4), substituted a semicolon for the period in par. (5), and added par. (6) and concluding provisions. See Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note below.

EFFECTIVE AND TERMINATION DATES OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103-236 effective 60 days after Apr. 30, 1994, and ceases to be effective and is repealed on date of enactment of first Foreign Relations Authorization Act enacted after Apr. 30, 1994, and any provision repealed by that amendment shall be reenacted, see sections 831 and 851 of Pub. L. 103-236, set out in the Nuclear Proliferation Prevention; Effective and Termination Dates of 1994 Amendment note under section 3201 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Subchapter effective Mar. 10, 1978, except as otherwise provided and regardless of any requirements for the promulgation of implementing regulations, see section 603(c) of Pub. L. 95-242, set out as a note under section 3201 of this title.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Secretary of State responsible for performing function vested in President by this section to extent that it relates to preparation of an annual report, see section 2(c) of Ex. Ord. No. 12058, May 11, 1978, 43 F.R. 20947, set out as a note under section 3201 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 3223, 3224, 3244 of this title.

**§ 3282. Reports by departments and agencies**

**(a) Reports by Nuclear Regulatory Commission and Department of Energy**

The annual reports to the Congress by the Commission and the Department of Energy which are otherwise required by law shall also include views and recommendations regarding the policies and actions of the United States to prevent proliferation which are the statutory responsibility of those agencies. The Department's report shall include a detailed analysis of the proliferation implications of advanced enrichment and reprocessing techniques, advanced reactors, and alternative nuclear fuel cycles. This part of the report shall include a comprehensive version which includes any relevant classified information and a summary unclassified version.

**(b) Additional reporting requirements**

The reporting requirements of this subchapter are in addition to and not in lieu of any other reporting requirements under applicable law.

**(c) Committees on Foreign Relations and Governmental Affairs of Senate and Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives to be kept informed**

The Department of State, the Department of Defense, the Arms Control and Disarmament Agency, the Department of Commerce, the Department of Energy, and the Commission shall keep the Committees on Foreign Relations and Governmental Affairs of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives fully and currently informed with respect to their activities to carry out the purposes and policies of this chapter and to otherwise prevent proliferation, and with respect to the current activities of foreign nations which are of significance from the proliferation standpoint.

**(d) Classified portions of reports**

Any classified portions of the reports required by this chapter shall be submitted to the Senate Foreign Relations Committee and the House Foreign Affairs Committee.

**(e) Omitted****(f) Access by Secretary of Defense to information regarding nuclear proliferation matters; applicability**

(1) The Secretary of Defense shall have access, on a timely basis, to all information regarding nuclear proliferation matters which the Secretary of State or the Secretary of Energy has or is entitled to have. Such access shall include access to all communications, materials, documents, and records relating to nuclear proliferation matters.

(2) This subsection does not apply to any intradepartmental document of the Department of State or the Department of Energy, or any portion of such document, that is solely concerned with internal, confidential advice on policy concerning the conduct of interagency deliberations on nuclear proliferation matters.

(Pub. L. 95-242, title VI, §602, Mar. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 151; Pub. L. 99-661, div. A, title XIII, §1370, Nov. 14, 1986, 100 Stat. 4004; Pub. L. 103-437, §9(a)(8), Nov. 2, 1994, 108 Stat. 4588.)

## CODIFICATION

Subsec. (e) directed that, three years after Mar. 10, 1978, the Comptroller General complete a study and report to Congress on the implementation and impact of this chapter on the nuclear non-proliferation policies, purposes, and objectives of this chapter, with such recommendations as deemed necessary to support the nuclear non-proliferation policies, purposes, and objectives of this chapter.

## AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 103-437 substituted “Foreign Affairs” for “International Relations”.

1986—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 99-661, §1370(1), inserted “the Department of Defense.”

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 99-661, §1370(2), added subsec. (f).

## CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Inter-

national Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

**CHAPTER 48—TAIWAN RELATIONS**

- |               |   |
|---------------|---|
| Sec.<br>3301. | Congressional findings and declaration of policy.   |
|               | (a) Findings.   |
|               | (b) Policy.   |
|               | (c) Human rights.   |
| 3302.         | Implementation of United States policy with regard to Taiwan.   |
|               | (a) Defense articles and services.  |
|               | (b) Determination of Taiwan's defense needs.  |
|               | (c) United States response to threats to Taiwan or dangers to United States interests.  |
| 3303.         | Application to Taiwan of laws and international agreements.   |
|               | (a) Application of United States laws generally.  |
|               | (b) Application of United States laws in specific and enumerated areas.   |
|               | (c) Treaties and other international agreements.  |
|               | (d) Membership in international financial institutions and other international organizations.                                   |
| 3304.         | Overseas Private Investment Corporation.  |
|               | (a) Removal of per capita income restriction on Corporation activities with respect to investment projects on Taiwan.           |
|               | (b) Application by Corporation of other criteria.   |
| 3305.         | The American Institute in Taiwan.   |
|               | (a) Conduct of programs, transactions, or other relations with respect to Taiwan.   |
|               | (b) Agreements or transactions relative to Taiwan entered into, performed, and enforced.  |
|               | (c) Preemption of laws, rules, regulations, or ordinances of District of Columbia, States, or political subdivisions of States. |
| 3306.         | Services to United States citizens on Taiwan.   |
|               | (a) Authorized services.  |
|               | (b) Acts by authorized employees.   |
| 3307.         | Exemption from taxation.  |
|               | (a) United States, State, or local taxes.   |
|               | (b) Charitable contributions; transfers for public, charitable, and religious uses; charitable and similar gifts.               |
| 3308.         | Activities of United States Government agencies.  |
|               | (a) Sale, loans, or lease of property; administrative and technical support functions and services.                             |
|               | (b) Acquisition and acceptance of services.   |
|               | (c) Institute books and records; access; audit.   |
| 3309.         | Taiwan instrumentality.   |
|               | (a) Establishment of instrumentality; Presidential determination of necessary authority.  |
|               | (b) Offices and personnel.  |
|               | (c) Privileges and immunities.  |
| 3310.         | Employment of United States Government agency personnel.  |
|               | (a) Separation from Government service; reemployment or reinstatement upon termination of Institute employment; benefits.       |
|               | (b) Employment of aliens on Taiwan.   |
|               | (c) Institute employees not deemed United States employees.   |

- Sec.
- (d) Tax treatment of amounts paid Institute employees.
- 3310a. Commercial personnel at American Institute of Taiwan.
3311. Reporting requirements.
- (a) Texts of agreements to be transmitted to Congress; secret agreements to be transmitted to Senate Foreign Relations Committee and House Foreign Affairs Committee.
- (b) Agreements.
- (c) Congressional notification, review, and approval requirements and procedures.
3312. Rules and regulations.
3313. Congressional oversight.
- (a) Monitoring activities of Senate Foreign Relations Committee, House Foreign Affairs Committee, and other Congressional committees.
- (b) Committee reports to their respective Houses.
3314. Definitions.
3315. Authorization of appropriations.
3316. Severability.

### § 3301. Congressional findings and declaration of policy

#### (a) Findings

The President having terminated governmental relations between the United States and the governing authorities on Taiwan recognized by the United States as the Republic of China prior to January 1, 1979, the Congress finds that the enactment of this chapter is necessary—

(1) to help maintain peace, security, and stability in the Western Pacific; and

(2) to promote the foreign policy of the United States by authorizing the continuation of commercial, cultural, and other relations between the people of the United States and the people on Taiwan.

#### (b) Policy

It is the policy of the United States—

(1) to preserve and promote extensive, close, and friendly commercial, cultural, and other relations between the people of the United States and the people on Taiwan, as well as the people on the China mainland and all other peoples of the Western Pacific area;

(2) to declare that peace and stability in the area are in the political, security, and economic interests of the United States, and are matters of international concern;

(3) to make clear that the United States decision to establish diplomatic relations with the People's Republic of China rests upon the expectation that the future of Taiwan will be determined by peaceful means;

(4) to consider any effort to determine the future of Taiwan by other than peaceful means, including by boycotts or embargoes, a threat to the peace and security of the Western Pacific area and of grave concern to the United States;

(5) to provide Taiwan with arms of a defensive character; and

(6) to maintain the capacity of the United States to resist any resort to force or other forms of coercion that would jeopardize the security, or the social or economic system, of the people on Taiwan.

#### (c) Human rights

Nothing contained in this chapter shall contravene the interest of the United States in human rights, especially with respect to the human rights of all the approximately eighteen million inhabitants of Taiwan. The preservation and enhancement of the human rights of all the people on Taiwan are hereby reaffirmed as objectives of the United States.

(Pub. L. 96-8, § 2, Apr. 10, 1979, 93 Stat. 14.)

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 18 of Pub. L. 96-8 provided that: "This Act [enacting this chapter] shall be effective as of January 1, 1979."

#### SHORT TITLE

Section 1 of Pub. L. 96-8 provided that: "This Act [enacting this chapter] may be cited as the 'Taiwan Relations Act'."

#### EX. ORD. NO. 12143. MAINTAINING UNOFFICIAL RELATIONS WITH THE PEOPLE ON TAIWAN

Ex. Ord. No. 12143, June 22, 1979, 44 F.R. 37191, provided:

In light of the recognition of the People's Republic of China by the United States of America as the sole legal government of China, and by the authority vested in me as President of the United States of America, by the Taiwan Relations Act (Public Law 96-8, 93 Stat. 14, 22 U.S.C. 3301 et seq., hereinafter referred to as "the Act"), and Section 301 of Title 3 of the United States Code, in order to facilitate the maintenance of commercial, cultural and other relations between the people of the United States and the people on Taiwan without official representation or diplomatic relations, it is hereby ordered as follows:

#### 1-1. DELEGATION AND RESERVATION OF FUNCTIONS

1-101. Exclusive of the functions otherwise delegated, or reserved to the President, by this Order, there are delegated to the Secretary of State all functions conferred upon the President by the Act [this chapter]. In carrying out these functions, the Secretary of State shall consult with other departments and agencies as appropriate.

1-102. There are delegated to the Director of the Office of Personnel Management the functions conferred upon the President by paragraphs (1) and (2) of Section 11(a) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 3310(a)]. These functions shall be exercised in consultation with the Secretary of State.

1-103. There are reserved to the President the functions conferred upon the President by Section 3 [22 U.S.C. 3302], Section 7(a)(3) [22 U.S.C. 3306(a)(3)], and the second sentence of Section 9(b) [22 U.S.C. 3308(b)], and the determination specified in Section 10(a) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 3309(a)].

#### 1-2. SPECIFICATION OF LAWS AND DETERMINATIONS

1-201. Pursuant to Section 7(a) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 3306(a)], I specify the following provisions of law:

(a) Section 4082 of the Revised Statutes (22 U.S.C. 1172) [22 U.S.C. 4192];

(b) Section 1707 of the Revised Statutes (22 U.S.C. 1173) [22 U.S.C. 4193];

(c) Section 1708 of the Revised Statutes (22 U.S.C. 1174) [22 U.S.C. 4194];

(d) Section 1709 of the Revised Statutes, as amended (22 U.S.C. 1175) [22 U.S.C. 4195];

(e) Section 1710 of the Revised Statutes, as amended (22 U.S.C. 1176) [22 U.S.C. 4196];

(f) Section 1711 of the Revised Statutes, as amended (22 U.S.C. 1177) [22 U.S.C. 4197];

(g) Section 1718 of the Revised Statutes (22 U.S.C. 1185) [22 U.S.C. 4205]; and

(h) Section 7 of the Act of April 5, 1906 (22 U.S.C. 1195) [22 U.S.C. 4215].

1-202. Pursuant to Section 9(b) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 3308(b)], and in furtherance of the purposes of the Act [this chapter], the procurement of services may be effected without regard to the following provisions of law and limitations of authority:

(a) Section 3648 of the Revised Statutes, as amended (31 U.S.C. 529) [31 U.S.C. 3324(a) and (b)];

(b) Section 9 of the Act of June 30, 1906 (31 U.S.C. 627) [31 U.S.C. 1301]; and Section 3679 and 3732 of the Revised Statutes (31 U.S.C. 665 [31 U.S.C. 1341, 1342, 1351, 1511-1519, 1549, 1550]; 41 U.S.C. 11), to the extent necessary to permit the indemnification of contractors against unusually hazardous risks, as defined in Institute contracts, consistent, to the extent practicable, with regulations prescribed by the Department of Defense pursuant to the provisions of the Act of August 28, 1958 (50 U.S.C. 1431 et seq.), and Executive Order No. 10789 of November 14, 1958, as amended [set out as a note under 50 U.S.C. 1431];

(c) Section 3709 of the Revised Statutes and Section 302 of the Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949 (41 U.S.C. 5, 252);

(d) Section 3710 of the Revised Statutes (41 U.S.C. 8);

(e) Section 2 of Title III of the Act of March 3, 1933 (41 U.S.C. 10a);

(f) Section 3735 of the Revised Statutes (41 U.S.C. 13);

(g) Section 304(b) of the Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949 (41 U.S.C. 254(b)), so as to permit the payment of fees in excess of the prescribed fee limitations, but nothing herein shall be construed as authorizing the use of the cost-plus-a-percentage-of-cost system of contracting;

(h) Section 305 of the Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949 (41 U.S.C. 255);

(i) Sections 2 through 16 of the Contract Disputes Act of 1978 (41 U.S.C. 601-613);

(j) Sections 2304, 2305 and 2306(a) through (f) of Title 10 of the United States Code, but nothing herein shall be construed as authorizing the use of the cost-plus-a-percentage-of-cost system of contracting; and

(k) Section 719 of the Defense Production Act of 1950 (50 U.S.C. App. 2168).

1-203. (a) With respect to cost-type contracts with the American Institute in Taiwan under which no fee is charged or paid, amendments and modifications of such contracts may be made with or without consideration and may be utilized to accomplish the same things as any original contract could have accomplished, irrespective of the time or circumstances of the making, or the form of the contract amended or modified, or of the amending or modifying contract and irrespective of rights which may have accrued under the contract or the amendments or modifications thereof.

(b) With respect to contracts heretofore or hereafter made under the Act [this chapter], other than those described in subsection (a) of this Section, amendments and modifications of such contracts may be made with or without consideration and may be utilized to accomplish the same things as any original contract could have accomplished, irrespective of the time or circumstances of the making, or the form of the contract amended or modified, or of the amending or modifying contract, and irrespective of rights which may have accrued under the contract or the amendments or modifications thereof, if the Secretary of State determines in each case that such action is necessary to protect the foreign policy interests of the United States.

1-204. Pursuant to Section 10(a) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 3309(a)], the Coordination Council for North American Affairs is determined to be the unofficial instrumentality established by the people on Taiwan having the necessary authority under the laws applied by the people on Taiwan to provide assurances and take other actions on behalf of Taiwan in accordance with the Act [this chapter].

#### 1-3. PRESIDENT'S MEMORANDUM OF DECEMBER 30, 1978

1-301. This Order supersedes my memorandum of December 30, 1978 for all departments and agencies enti-

led "Relations With the People on Taiwan" (44 FR 1075). Agreements and arrangements referred to in paragraph (B) of that memorandum shall continue in force and shall be performed in accordance with the Act [this chapter] and this Order.

JIMMY CARTER.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3302 of this title.

### § 3302. Implementation of United States policy with regard to Taiwan

#### (a) Defense articles and services

In furtherance of the policy set forth in section 3301 of this title, the United States will make available to Taiwan such defense articles and defense services in such quantity as may be necessary to enable Taiwan to maintain a sufficient self-defense capability.

#### (b) Determination of Taiwan's defense needs

The President and the Congress shall determine the nature and quantity of such defense articles and services based solely upon their judgment of the needs of Taiwan, in accordance with procedures established by law. Such determination of Taiwan's defense needs shall include review by United States military authorities in connection with recommendations to the President and the Congress.

#### (c) United States response to threats to Taiwan or dangers to United States interests

The President is directed to inform the Congress promptly of any threat to the security or the social or economic system of the people on Taiwan and any danger to the interests of the United States arising therefrom. The President and the Congress shall determine, in accordance with constitutional processes, appropriate action by the United States in response to any such danger.

(Pub. L. 96-8, § 3, Apr. 10, 1979, 93 Stat. 15.)

#### TRANSFER OF WAR RESERVE MATERIEL AND OTHER PROPERTY TO TAIWAN

Pub. L. 96-92, § 23, Oct. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 710, authorized President, during calendar year 1980, to transfer to Taiwan, under such terms and conditions as he may deem appropriate, United States war reserve materiel that was located on Taiwan on Jan. 1, 1979, and during calendar years 1979 and 1980, to transfer to Taiwan, under such terms and conditions as he may deem appropriate, rights of the United States in property (other than war reserve materiel) that was located on Taiwan on Jan. 1, 1979.

### § 3303. Application to Taiwan of laws and international agreements

#### (a) Application of United States laws generally

The absence of diplomatic relations or recognition shall not affect the application of the laws of the United States with respect to Taiwan, and the laws of the United States shall apply with respect to Taiwan in the manner that the laws of the United States applied with respect to Taiwan prior to January 1, 1979.

#### (b) Application of United States laws in specific and enumerated areas

The application of subsection (a) of this section shall include, but shall not be limited to, the following:

(1) Whenever the laws of the United States refer or relate to foreign countries, nations, states, governments, or similar entities, such terms shall include and such laws shall apply with respect to Taiwan.

(2) Whenever authorized by or pursuant to the laws of the United States to conduct or carry out programs, transactions, or other relations with respect to foreign countries, nations, states, governments, or similar entities, the President or any agency of the United States Government is authorized to conduct and carry out, in accordance with section 3305 of this title, such programs, transactions, and other relations with respect to Taiwan (including, but not limited to, the performance of services for the United States through contracts with commercial entities on Taiwan), in accordance with the applicable laws of the United States.

(3)(A) The absence of diplomatic relations and recognition with respect to Taiwan shall not abrogate, infringe, modify, deny, or otherwise affect in any way any rights or obligations (including but not limited to those involving contracts, debts, or property interests of any kind) under the laws of the United States heretofore or hereafter acquired by or with respect to Taiwan.

(B) For all purposes under the laws of the United States, including actions in any court in the United States, recognition of the People's Republic of China shall not affect in any way the ownership of or other rights or interests in properties, tangible and intangible, and other things of value, owned or held on or prior to December 31, 1978, or thereafter acquired or earned by the governing authorities on Taiwan.

(4) Whenever the application of the laws of the United States depends upon the law that is or was applicable on Taiwan or compliance therewith, the law applied by the people on Taiwan shall be considered the applicable law for that purpose.

(5) Nothing in this chapter, nor the facts of the President's action in extending diplomatic recognition to the People's Republic of China, the absence of diplomatic relations between the people on Taiwan and the United States, or the lack of recognition by the United States, and attendant circumstances thereto, shall be construed in any administrative or judicial proceeding as a basis for any United States Government agency, commission, or department to make a finding of fact or determination of law, under the Atomic Energy Act of 1954 [42 U.S.C. 2011 et seq.] and the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Act of 1978 [22 U.S.C. 3201 et seq.], to deny an export license application or to revoke an existing export license for nuclear exports to Taiwan.

(6) For purposes of the Immigration and Nationality Act [8 U.S.C. 1101 et seq.], Taiwan may be treated in the manner specified in the first sentence of section 202(b) of that Act [8 U.S.C. 1152(b)].

(7) The capacity of Taiwan to sue and be sued in courts in the United States, in accordance with the laws of the United States, shall not be abrogated, infringed, modified, denied,

or otherwise affected in any way by the absence of diplomatic relations or recognition.

(8) No requirement, whether expressed or implied, under the laws of the United States with respect to maintenance of diplomatic relations or recognition shall be applicable with respect to Taiwan.

#### (c) Treaties and other international agreements

For all purposes, including actions in any court in the United States, the Congress approves the continuation in force of all treaties and other international agreements, including multilateral conventions, entered into by the United States and the governing authorities on Taiwan recognized by the United States as the Republic of China prior to January 1, 1979, and in force between them on December 31, 1978, unless and until terminated in accordance with law.

#### (d) Membership in international financial institutions and other international organizations

Nothing in this chapter may be construed as a basis for supporting the exclusion or expulsion of Taiwan from continued membership in any international financial institution or any other international organization.

(Pub. L. 96-8, § 4, Apr. 10, 1979, 93 Stat. 15.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Atomic Energy Act of 1954, referred to in subsec. (b)(5), is act Aug. 30, 1954, ch. 1073, 68 Stat. 921, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 23 (§2011 et seq.) of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2011 of Title 42 and Tables.

The Nuclear Non-Proliferation Act of 1978, referred to in subsec. (b)(5), is Pub. L. 95-242, Mar. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 120, which is classified principally to chapter 47 (§3201 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3201 of this title and Tables.

The Immigration and Nationality Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(6), is act June 27, 1952, ch. 477, 66 Stat. 163, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 12 (§1101 et seq.) of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1101 of Title 8 and Tables.

### § 3304. Overseas Private Investment Corporation

#### (a) Removal of per capita income restriction on Corporation activities with respect to investment projects on Taiwan

During the three-year period beginning on April 10, 1979, the \$1,000 per capita income restriction in clause (2) of the second undesignated paragraph of section 2191 of this title shall not restrict the activities of the Overseas Private Investment Corporation in determining whether to provide any insurance, reinsurance, loans, or guaranties with respect to investment projects on Taiwan.

#### (b) Application by Corporation of other criteria

Except as provided in subsection (a) of this section, in issuing insurance, reinsurance, loans, or guaranties with respect to investment projects on Taiwan, the Overseas Private Insurance<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be "Investment".

Corporation shall apply the same criteria as those applicable in other parts of the world.

(Pub. L. 96-8, § 5, Apr. 10, 1979, 93 Stat. 16.)

### § 3305. The American Institute in Taiwan

#### (a) Conduct of programs, transactions, or other relations with respect to Taiwan

Programs, transactions, and other relations conducted or carried out by the President or any agency of the United States Government with respect to Taiwan shall, in the manner and to the extent directed by the President, be conducted and carried out by or through—

(1) The American Institute in Taiwan, a non-profit corporation incorporated under the laws of the District of Columbia, or

(2) such comparable successor nongovernmental entity as the President may designate, (hereafter in this chapter referred to as the “Institute”).

#### (b) Agreements or transactions relative to Taiwan entered into, performed, and enforced

Whenever the President or any agency of the United States Government is authorized or required by or pursuant to the laws of the United States to enter into, perform, enforce, or have in force an agreement or transaction relative to Taiwan, such agreement or transaction shall be entered into, performed, and enforced, in the manner and to the extent directed by the President, by or through the Institute.

#### (c) Preemption of laws, rules, regulations, or ordinances of District of Columbia, States, or political subdivisions of States

To the extent that any law, rule, regulation, or ordinance of the District of Columbia, or of any State or political subdivision thereof in which the Institute is incorporated or doing business, impedes or otherwise interferes with the performance of the functions of the Institute pursuant to this chapter, such law, rule, regulation, or ordinance shall be deemed to be preempted by this chapter.

(Pub. L. 96-8, § 6, Apr. 10, 1979, 93 Stat. 17.)

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3302 of this title.

### § 3306. Services to United States citizens on Taiwan

#### (a) Authorized services

The Institute may authorize any of its employees on Taiwan—

(1) to administer to or take from any person an oath, affirmation, affidavit, or deposition, and to perform any notarial act which any notary public is required or authorized by law to perform within the United States;

(2) To<sup>1</sup> act as provisional conservator of the personal estates of deceased United States citizens; and

(3) to assist and protect the interests of United States persons by performing other acts such as are authorized to be performed outside the United States for consular pur-

poses by such laws of the United States as the President may specify.

#### (b) Acts by authorized employees

Acts performed by authorized employees of the Institute under this section shall be valid, and of like force and effect within the United States, as if performed by any other person authorized under the laws of the United States to perform such acts.

(Pub. L. 96-8, § 7, Apr. 10, 1979, 93 Stat. 17.)

### § 3307. Exemption from taxation

#### (a) United States, State, or local taxes

The Institute, its property, and its income are exempt from all taxation now or hereafter imposed by the United States (except to the extent that section 3310(a)(3) of this title requires the imposition of taxes imposed under chapter 21 of title 26, relating to the Federal Insurance Contributions Act) or by any State or local taxing authority of the United States.

#### (b) Charitable contributions; transfers for public, charitable, and religious uses; charitable and similar gifts

For purposes of title 26, the Institute shall be treated as an organization described in sections 170(b)(1)(A), 170(c), 2055(a), 2106(a)(2)(A), 2522(a), and 2522(b) of title 26.

(Pub. L. 96-8, § 8, Apr. 10, 1979, 93 Stat. 17; Pub. L. 99-514, § 2, Oct. 22, 1986, 100 Stat. 2095.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Federal Insurance Contributions Act, referred to in subsec. (a), is act Aug. 16, 1954, ch. 736, §§3101, 3102, 3111, 3112, 3121 to 3128, 68A Stat. 415, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 21 (§3101 et seq.) of Title 26, Internal Revenue Code. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 3128 of Title 26 and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1986—Pub. L. 99-514 substituted in subsecs. (a) and (b) “Internal Revenue Code of 1986” for “Internal Revenue Code of 1954”, which for purposes of codification was translated as “title 26” thus requiring no change in text.

### § 3308. Activities of United States Government agencies

#### (a) Sale, loans, or lease of property; administrative and technical support functions and services

Any agency of the United States Government is authorized to sell, loan, or lease property (including interests therein) to, and to perform administrative and technical support functions and services for the operations of, the Institute upon such terms and conditions as the President may direct. Reimbursements to agencies under this subsection shall be credited to the current applicable appropriation of the agency concerned.

#### (b) Acquisition and acceptance of services

Any agency of the United States Government is authorized to acquire and accept services from the Institute upon such terms and conditions as the President may direct. Whenever the President determines it to be in furtherance of

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should not be capitalized.

the purposes of this chapter, the procurement of services by such agencies from the Institute may be effected without regard to such laws of the United States normally applicable to the acquisition of services by such agencies as the President may specify by Executive order.

**(c) Institute books and records; access; audit**

Any agency of the United States Government making funds available to the Institute in accordance with this chapter shall make arrangements with the Institute for the Comptroller General of the United States to have access to the books and records of the Institute and the opportunity to audit the operations of the Institute.

(Pub. L. 96-8, §9, Apr. 10, 1979, 93 Stat. 18.)

**§ 3309. Taiwan instrumentality**

**(a) Establishment of instrumentality; Presidential determination of necessary authority**

Whenever the President or any agency of the United States Government is authorized or required by or pursuant to the laws of the United States to render or provide to or to receive or accept from Taiwan, any performance, communication, assurance, undertaking, or other action, such action shall, in the manner and to the extent directed by the President, be rendered or provided to, or received or accepted from, an instrumentality established by Taiwan which the President determines has the necessary authority under the laws applied by the people on Taiwan to provide assurances and take other actions on behalf of Taiwan in accordance with this chapter.

**(b) Offices and personnel**

The President is requested to extend to the instrumentality established by Taiwan the same number of offices and complement of personnel as were previously operated in the United States by the governing authorities on Taiwan recognized as the Republic of China prior to January 1, 1979.

**(c) Privileges and immunities**

Upon the granting by Taiwan of comparable privileges and immunities with respect to the Institute and its appropriate personnel, the President is authorized to extend with respect to the Taiwan instrumentality and its appropriate personnel, such privileges and immunities (subject to appropriate conditions and obligations) as may be necessary for the effective performance of their functions.

(Pub. L. 96-8, §10, Apr. 10, 1979, 93 Stat. 18.)

**§ 3310. Employment of United States Government agency personnel**

**(a) Separation from Government service; reemployment or reinstatement upon termination of Institute employment; benefits**

(1) Under such terms and conditions as the President may direct, any agency of the United States Government may separate from Government service for a specified period any officer or employee of that agency who accepts employment with the Institute.

(2) An officer or employee separated by an agency under paragraph (1) of this subsection for

employment with the Institute shall be entitled upon termination of such employment to reemployment or reinstatement with such agency (or a successor agency) in an appropriate position with the attendant rights, privileges, and benefits with<sup>1</sup> the officer or employee would have had or acquired had he or she not been so separated, subject to such time period and other conditions as the President may prescribe.

(3) An officer or employee entitled to reemployment or reinstatement rights under paragraph (2) of this subsection shall, while continuously employed by the Institute with no break in continuity of service, continue to participate in any benefit program in which such officer or employee was participating prior to employment by the Institute, including programs for compensation for job-related death, injury, or illness; programs for health and life insurance; programs for annual, sick, and other statutory leave; and programs for retirement under any system established by the laws of the United States; except that employment with the Institute shall be the basis for participation in such programs only to the extent that employee deductions and employer contributions, as required, in payment for such participation for the period of employment with the Institute, are currently deposited in the program's or system's fund or depository. Death or retirement of any such officer or employee during approved service with the Institute and prior to reemployment or reinstatement shall be considered a death in or retirement from Government service for purposes of any employee or survivor benefits acquired by reason of service with an agency of the United States Government.

(4) Any officer or employee of an agency of the United States Government who entered into service with the Institute on approved leave of absence without pay prior to April 10, 1979, shall receive the benefits of this section for the period of such service.

**(b) Employment of aliens on Taiwan**

Any agency of the United States Government employing alien personnel on Taiwan may transfer such personnel, with accrued allowances, benefits, and rights, to the Institute without a break in service for purposes of retirement and other benefits, including continued participation in any system established by the laws of the United States for the retirement of employees in which the alien was participating prior to the transfer to the Institute, except that employment with the Institute shall be creditable for retirement purposes only to the extent that employee deductions and employer contributions, as required, in payment for such participation for the period of employment with the Institute, are currently deposited in the system's fund or depository.

**(c) Institute employees not deemed United States employees**

Employees of the Institute shall not be employees of the United States and, in representing the Institute, shall be exempt from section 207 of title 18.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be "which".



**(d) Tax treatment of amounts paid Institute employees**

(1) For purposes of sections 911 and 913<sup>2</sup> of title 26, amounts paid by the Institute to its employees shall not be treated as earned income. Amounts received by employees of the Institute shall not be included in gross income, and shall be exempt from taxation, to the extent that they are equivalent to amounts received by civilian officers and employees of the Government of the United States as allowances and benefits which are exempt from taxation under section 912 of title 26.

(2) Except to the extent required by subsection (a)(3) of this section, service performed in the employ of the Institute shall not constitute employment for purposes of chapter 21 of title 26 and title II of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 401 et seq.].

(Pub. L. 96-8, §11, Apr. 10, 1979, 93 Stat. 18; Pub. L. 99-514, §2, Oct. 22, 1986, 100 Stat. 2095.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 913 of title 26, referred to in subsec. (d)(1), was repealed by Pub. L. 97-34, title I, §112(a), Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 194.

Chapter 21 (§3101 et seq.) of title 26, referred to in subsec. (d)(2), is known as the Federal Insurance Contributions Act.

The Social Security Act, referred to in subsec. (d)(2), is act Aug. 14, 1935, ch. 531, 49 Stat. 620, as amended. Title II of the Social Security Act is classified generally to subchapter II (§401 et seq.) of chapter 7 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1305 of Title 42 and Tables.

## AMENDMENTS

1986—Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 99-514 substituted “Internal Revenue Code of 1986” for “Internal Revenue Code of 1954”, which for purposes of codification was translated as “title 26” thus requiring no change in text.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3307 of this title; title 26 section 3121; title 42 section 410.

**§ 3310a. Commercial personnel at American Institute of Taiwan**

The American Institute of Taiwan shall employ personnel to perform duties similar to those performed by personnel of the United States and Foreign Commercial Service. The number of individuals employed shall be commensurate with the number of United States personnel of the Commercial Service who are permanently assigned to the United States diplomatic mission to South Korea.

(Pub. L. 100-418, title II, §2201, Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1327.)

## CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Export Enhancement Act of 1988 and as part of the Omnibus Trade and Competitiveness Act of 1988, and not as part of the Taiwan Relations Act which comprises this chapter.

<sup>2</sup> See References in Text note below.

**§ 3311. Reporting requirements****(a) Texts of agreements to be transmitted to Congress; secret agreements to be transmitted to Senate Foreign Relations Committee and House Foreign Affairs Committee**

The Secretary of State shall transmit to the Congress the text of any agreement to which the Institute is a party. However, any such agreement the immediate public disclosure of which would, in the opinion of the President, be prejudicial to the national security of the United States shall not be so transmitted to the Congress but shall be transmitted to the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives under an appropriate injunction of secrecy to be removed only upon due notice from the President.

**(b) Agreements**

For purposes of subsection (a) of this section, the term “agreement” includes—

(1) any agreement entered into between the Institute and the governing authorities on Taiwan or the instrumentality established by Taiwan; and

(2) any agreement entered into between the Institute and an agency of the United States Government.

**(c) Congressional notification, review, and approval requirements and procedures**

Agreements and transactions made or to be made by or through the Institute shall be subject to the same congressional notification, review, and approval requirements and procedures as if such agreements and transactions were made by or through the agency of the United States Government on behalf of which the Institute is acting.

(Pub. L. 96-8, §12, Apr. 10, 1979, 93 Stat. 20; Pub. L. 98-164, title X, §1011(a)(3), Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1061.)

## AMENDMENTS

1983—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 98-164 struck out subsec. (d) which required the Secretary of State to make semi-annual reports respecting economic relations between the United States and Taiwan.

## CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

**§ 3312. Rules and regulations**

The President is authorized to prescribe such rules and regulations as he may deem appropriate to carry out the purposes of this chapter. During the three-year period beginning on January 1, 1979, such rules and regulations shall be transmitted promptly to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and to the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate. Such action shall not, however, relieve the Institute of the responsibilities placed upon it by this chapter.

(Pub. L. 96-8, §13, Apr. 10, 1979, 93 Stat. 20.)

**§ 3313. Congressional oversight**

**(a) Monitoring activities of Senate Foreign Relations Committee, House Foreign Affairs Committee, and other Congressional committees**

The Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives, the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, and other appropriate committees of the Congress shall monitor—

- (1) the implementation of the provisions of this chapter;
- (2) the operation and procedures of the Institute;
- (3) the legal and technical aspects of the continuing relationship between the United States and Taiwan; and
- (4) the implementation of the policies of the United States concerning security and cooperation in East Asia.

**(b) Committee reports to their respective Houses**

Such committees shall report, as appropriate, to their respective Houses on the results of their monitoring.

(Pub. L. 96-8, §14, Apr. 10, 1979, 93 Stat. 20.)

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

**§ 3314. Definitions**

For purposes of this chapter—

- (1) the term “laws of the United States” includes any statute, rule, regulation, ordinance, order, or judicial rule of decision of the United States or any political subdivision thereof; and
- (2) the term “Taiwan” includes, as the context may require, the islands of Taiwan and the Pescadores, the people on those islands, corporations and other entities and associations created or organized under the laws applied on those islands, and the governing authorities on Taiwan recognized by the United States as the Republic of China prior to January 1, 1979, and any successor governing authorities (including political subdivisions, agencies, and instrumentalities thereof).

(Pub. L. 96-8, §15, Apr. 10, 1979, 93 Stat. 20.)

**§ 3315. Authorization of appropriations**

In addition to funds otherwise available to carry out the provisions of this chapter, there are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary of State for the fiscal year 1980 such funds as may be necessary to carry out such provisions. Such funds are authorized to remain available until expended.

(Pub. L. 96-8, §16, Apr. 10, 1979, 93 Stat. 21.)

**§ 3316. Severability**

If any provision of this chapter or the application thereof to any person or circumstance is held invalid, the remainder of the chapter and the application of such provision to any other person or circumstance shall not be affected thereby.

(Pub. L. 96-8, §17, Apr. 10, 1979, 93 Stat. 21.)

**CHAPTER 49—SUPPORT OF PEACE TREATY BETWEEN EGYPT AND ISRAEL**

**SUBCHAPTER I—POLITICAL, ECONOMIC, AND TECHNOLOGICAL SUPPORT**

- Sec. 3401. Congressional findings and declaration of policy.
  - (a) Policy of support for peace treaty.
  - (b) Findings.
  - (c) Other agreements, understandings, or commitments.
- 3402. Supplemental authorization of foreign military sales loan guaranties for Egypt and Israel.
  - (a) Congressional findings; use of Arms Export Control Act procedures.
  - (b) Authorization of appropriation.
  - (c) Principal amounts of guaranteed loans.
  - (d) Repayment schedule.
  - (e) Modification of terms of guaranteed loans.
- 3403. Supplemental authorization of economic support for Egypt.
- 3404. Transfer of facilities of United States Sinai Field Mission to Egypt.
- 3405. Contributions by other countries to support peace in the Middle East.
  - (a) Presidential consultations with other countries.
  - (b) Repealed.
- 3406. Trilateral scientific and technological cooperation by Egypt, Israel, and United States.
  - (a) Preparation for United States participation.
  - (b) Plan development.
- 3407. Repealed.
- 3408. Non-proliferation of nuclear weapons.

**SUBCHAPTER II—MULTINATIONAL FORCE AND OBSERVERS PARTICIPATION**

- 3421. Congressional declaration of policy.
- 3422. Participation of United States personnel in the Multinational Force and Observers.
  - (a) Participation by United States Armed Forces; maximum limit on the number of members.
  - (b) Participation by civilian personnel.
  - (c) Status of United States personnel.
- 3423. United States contributions to costs.
  - (a) United States share of the costs.
  - (b) Authorization of appropriations.
  - (c) Reimbursements to the United States.
- 3424. Nonreimbursed costs.
  - (a) Administrative and technical support and services.
  - (b) Costs to be kept at minimum level.
  - (c) Military training of armed forces of other countries.
- 3425. Reports to Congress.
  - (a) Initial report.
  - (b) Annual report; content.
  - (c) Description, detail, and accuracy of reports.
- 3426. Statements of Congressional intent.
  - (a) Disclaimer of Congressional approval of other agreements, understandings, or commitments.
  - (b) Limitations on United States participation.
  - (c) War Powers Resolution.
- 3427. Definitions.

SUBCHAPTER I—POLITICAL, ECONOMIC,  
AND TECHNOLOGICAL SUPPORT

**§ 3401. Congressional findings and declaration of policy**

**(a) Policy of support for peace treaty**

It is the policy of the United States to support the peace treaty concluded between the Government of Egypt and the Government of Israel on March 26, 1979. This treaty is a significant step toward a full and comprehensive peace in the Middle East. The Congress urges the President to continue to exert every effort to bring about a comprehensive peace and to seek an end by all parties to the violence which could jeopardize this peace.

**(b) Findings**

The peace treaty between Egypt and Israel having been ratified, the Congress finds that the national interests of the United States are served—

(1) by authorizing the President to construct air bases in Israel to replace the Israeli air bases on the Sinai peninsula that are to be evacuated;

(2) by authorizing additional funds to finance procurements by Egypt and Israel through the fiscal year 1982 of defense articles and defense services for their respective security requirements; and

(3) by authorizing additional funds for economic assistance for Egypt in order to promote the economic stability and development of that country and to support the peace process in the Middle East.

**(c) Other agreements, understandings, or commitments**

The authorities contained in this subchapter to implement certain arrangements in support of the peace treaty between Egypt and Israel do not signify approval by the Congress of any other agreement, understanding, or commitment made by the executive branch.

(Pub. L. 96-35, § 2, July 20, 1979, 93 Stat. 89.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in subsec. (c), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 96-35, July 20, 1979, 93 Stat. 89, as amended, known as the Special International Security Assistance Act of 1979, which enacted this subchapter and sections 2349, 2349a, and 2349b of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note below and Tables.

SHORT TITLE

Section 1 of Pub. L. 96-35 provided that: "This Act [enacting this subchapter and sections 2349, 2349a, and 2349b of this title] may be cited as the 'Special International Security Assistance Act of 1979'."

Pub. L. 97-132, § 1, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1693, provided that: "This joint resolution [enacting subchapter II of this chapter] may be cited as the 'Multinational Force and Observers Participation Resolution'."

PEACE IN THE MIDDLE EAST

Pub. L. 96-533, title VII, § 711, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3160, provided:

"(a) It is the sense of the Congress that all parties to the Arab-Israeli conflict need to reaffirm their unequivocal commitment to the peace process in order to achieve further progress toward a comprehensive set-

tlement, to reinforce the principles of the Camp David accords, and to take actions to encourage parties not currently involved in the peace process to become active participants in peace efforts.

"(b) It is further the sense of the Congress that to further these goals (1) all parties to the conflict should accept Israel's unequivocal right to exist within secure and recognized borders; (2) the Governments of Israel and Egypt should maintain and strengthen their commitment to the process of normalization of relations and continue actions to support that commitment; (3) the Governments of Israel and Egypt should reaffirm their commitment to United Nations Resolution 242 and its applicability, in all its aspects, to territories under negotiations; and (4) the governments of countries in the Middle East should assure that their policies and actions are consistent with the objectives of achieving peace and of involving other parties in the peace process."

EGYPTIAN-ISRAELI CULTURAL, SCIENTIFIC, AND  
ECONOMIC RELATIONS

Pub. L. 96-60, title IV, § 403, Aug. 15, 1979, 93 Stat. 403, provided that: "It is the sense of the Congress that it should be the policy of the United States to promote and encourage cultural, scientific, and economic relations between the Arab Republic of Egypt and the State of Israel."

**§ 3402. Supplemental authorization of foreign military sales loan guaranties for Egypt and Israel**

**(a) Congressional findings; use of Arms Export Control Act procedures**

The Congress finds that the legitimate defense interests of Israel and Egypt require a one time extraordinary assistance package due to Israel's phased withdrawal from the Sinai and Egypt's shift from reliance on Soviet weaponry. The authorizations contained in this section do not, however, constitute Congressional approval of the sale of any particular weapons system to either country. These sales will be reviewed under the normal procedures set forth in section 36(b) of the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2776(b)].

**(b) Authorization of appropriation**

In addition to amounts authorized to be appropriated for the fiscal year 1979 by section 31(a) of the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2771(a)], there is authorized to be appropriated to the President to carry out that Act [22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.] \$370,000,000 for the fiscal year 1979.

**(c) Principal amounts of guaranteed loans**

Funds made available pursuant to subsection (b) of this section may be used only for guaranties for Egypt and Israel pursuant to section 24(a) of the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2764(a)]. The principal amount of loans guaranteed with such funds may not exceed \$3,700,000,000 of which \$2,200,000,000 shall be available only for Israel and \$1,500,000,000 shall be available only for Egypt. The principal amount of such guaranteed loans shall be in addition to the aggregate ceiling authorized for the fiscal year 1979 by section 31(b) of the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2771(b)].

**(d) Repayment schedule**

Loans guaranteed with funds made available pursuant to subsection (b) of this section shall be on terms calling for repayment within a pe-

riod of not less than thirty years, including an initial grace period of ten years on repayment of principal.

**(e) Modification of terms of guaranteed loans**

(1) The Congress finds that the Governments of Israel and Egypt each have an enormous external debt burden which may be made more difficult by virtue of the financing authorized by this section. The Congress further finds that, as a consequence of the impact of the debt burdens incurred by Israel and Egypt under such financing, it may become necessary in future years to modify the terms of the loans guaranteed with funds made available pursuant to this section.

(2) Repealed. Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(4), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.

(Pub. L. 96-35, § 4, July 20, 1979, 93 Stat. 90; Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(4), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

That Act, referred to in subsec. (b), means the Arms Export Control Act, Pub. L. 90-629, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1320, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 39 (§ 2751 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2751 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1981—Subsec. (e)(2). Pub. L. 97-113 struck out par. (2) which required annual reports respecting economic conditions in Israel and Egypt and their external debt burdens, covered in provisions respecting external debt burdens of Egypt, Israel, and Turkey in section 723 of Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1552, not classified to the Code.

**§ 3403. Supplemental authorization of economic support for Egypt**

There is authorized to be appropriated to the President to carry out chapter 4 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2346 et seq.], \$300,000,000 for the fiscal year 1979 for Egypt, in addition to amounts otherwise authorized to be appropriated for such chapter for the fiscal year 1979. The amounts appropriated pursuant to this section may be made available until expended.

(Pub. L. 96-35, § 5, July 20, 1979, 93 Stat. 91.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended. Chapter 4 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 is classified to part IV (§ 2346 et seq.) of subchapter II of chapter 32 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

**§ 3404. Transfer of facilities of United States Sinai Field Mission to Egypt**

The President is authorized to transfer to Egypt, on such terms and conditions as he may determine, such of the facilities and related property of the United States Sinai Field Mission as he may determine, upon the termination of the activities of the Sinai Field Mission in accordance with the terms of the peace treaty between Egypt and Israel.

(Pub. L. 96-35, § 6, July 20, 1979, 93 Stat. 91.)

**§ 3405. Contributions by other countries to support peace in the Middle East**

**(a) Presidential consultations with other countries**

It is the sense of the Congress that other countries should give favorable consideration to providing support for the implementation of the peace treaty between Egypt and Israel. Therefore, the Congress requests that the President consult with other countries in order to (1) promote and develop an agreement for the establishment of a peace development fund whose purpose would be to underwrite the costs of implementing a Middle East peace, and (2) encourage investments in Israel and Egypt and other countries in the region should they join in Middle East peace agreements.

**(b) Repealed. Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(4), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560**

(Pub. L. 96-35, § 7, July 20, 1979, 93 Stat. 92; Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(4), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.)

AMENDMENTS

1981—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 97-113 struck out subsec. (b) which required a Presidential report to Congress no later than Jan. 31, 1980, on United States efforts to encourage aid to Egypt and Israel.

**§ 3406. Trilateral scientific and technological cooperation by Egypt, Israel, and United States**

**(a) Preparation for United States participation**

It is the sense of the Congress that, in order to continue to build the structure of peace in the Middle East, the United States should be prepared to participate, at an appropriate time, in trilateral cooperative projects of a scientific and technological nature involving Egypt, Israel, and the United States.

**(b) Plan development**

Therefore, the President shall develop a plan to guide the participation of both United States Government agencies and private institutions in such projects. This plan shall identify—

(1) potential projects in a variety of areas appropriate for scientific and technological cooperation by the three countries, including agriculture, health, energy, the environment, education, and water resources;

(2) the resources which are available or which would be needed to implement such projects; and

(3) the means by which such projects would be implemented.

(Pub. L. 96-35, § 8, July 20, 1979, 93 Stat. 92; Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(4), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560.)

AMENDMENTS

1981—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 97-113 struck out subsec. (c) which required Presidential report to Congress no later than twelve months after July 20, 1979, respecting trilateral cooperative projects between Egypt, Israel, and the United States.

**§ 3407. Repealed. Pub. L. 97-113, title VII, § 734(a)(4), Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1560**

Section, Pub. L. 96-35, § 9, July 20, 1979, 93 Stat. 92, required submission of a Presidential report to Congress

ninety days after July 20, 1979, respecting costs of implementation of the peace treaty between Egypt and Israel.

#### § 3408. Non-proliferation of nuclear weapons

In accordance with the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Act of 1978 [22 U.S.C. 3201 et seq.], the Congress strongly encourages all countries in the Middle East which are not parties to the Treaty on the Non-Proliferation of Nuclear Weapons to become parties to that Treaty.

(Pub. L. 96-35, § 10, July 20, 1979, 93 Stat. 93.)

##### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Nuclear Non-Proliferation Act of 1978, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 95-242, Mar. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 120, which is classified principally to chapter 47 (§ 3201 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3201 of this title and Tables.

#### SUBCHAPTER II—MULTINATIONAL FORCE AND OBSERVERS PARTICIPATION

#### § 3421. Congressional declaration of policy

The Congress considers the establishment of the Multinational Force and Observers to be an essential stage in the development of a comprehensive settlement in the Middle East. The Congress enacts this subchapter with the hope and expectation that establishment of the Multinational Force and Observers will assist Egypt and Israel in fulfilling the Camp David accords and bringing about the establishment of a self-governing authority in order to provide full autonomy in the West Bank and Gaza.

(Pub. L. 97-132, § 2, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1693.)

##### SHORT TITLE

For short title of Pub. L. 97-132, which enacted this subchapter, as the Multinational Force and Observers Participation Resolution, see section 1 of Pub. L. 97-132, set out as a note under section 3401 of this title.

#### § 3422. Participation of United States personnel in the Multinational Force and Observers

##### (a) Participation by United States Armed Forces; maximum limit on the number of members

(1) Subject to the limitations contained in this subchapter, the President is authorized to assign, under such terms and conditions as he may determine, members of the United States Armed Forces to participate in the Multinational Force and Observers.

(2) The Congress declares that the participation of the military personnel of other countries in the Multinational Force and Observers is essential to maintain the international character of the peacekeeping function in the Sinai. Accordingly—

(A) before the President assigns or details members of the United States Armed Forces to the Multinational Force and Observers, he shall notify the Congress of the names of the other countries that have agreed to provide military personnel for the Multinational Force and Observers, the number of military personnel to be provided by each country, and the functions to be performed by such personnel; and

(B) if a country withdraws from the Multinational Force and Observers with the result that the military personnel of less than four foreign countries remain, every possible effort must be made by the United States to find promptly a country to replace that country.

(3) Members of the United States Armed Forces, and United States civilian personnel, who are assigned, detailed, or otherwise provided to the Multinational Force and Observers may perform only those functions or responsibilities which are specified for United Nations Forces and Observers in the Treaty of Peace and in accordance with the Protocol.

(4) The number of members of the United States Armed Forces who are assigned or detailed by the United States Government to the Multinational Force and Observers may not exceed one thousand two hundred at any one time.

##### (b) Participation by civilian personnel

Subject to the limitations contained in this subchapter, the President is authorized to provide, under such terms and conditions as he may determine, United States civilian personnel to participate as observers in the Multinational Force and Observers.

##### (c) Status of United States personnel

The status of United States Government personnel assigned to the Multinational Force and Observers under subsection (a)(1) or (b) of this section shall be as provided in section 2389 of this title.

(Pub. L. 97-132, § 3, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1693.)

##### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3424 of this title.

#### § 3423. United States contributions to costs

##### (a) United States share of the costs

In accordance with the agreement set forth in the exchanges of letters between the United States and Egypt and between the United States and Israel which were signed on August 3, 1981, the United States share of the costs of the Multinational Force and Observers—

(1) shall not exceed 60 per centum of the budget for the expenses connected with the establishment and initial operation of the Multinational Force and Observers during the period ending September 30, 1982; and

(2) shall not exceed 33 $\frac{1}{3}$  per centum of the budget for the annual operating expenses of the Multinational Force and Observers for each financial year beginning after that date.

##### (b) Authorization of appropriations

(1) There are authorized to be appropriated to the President to carry out chapter 6 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2348 et seq.], in addition to amounts otherwise available to carry out that chapter, \$125,000,000 for the fiscal year 1982 for use in paying the United States contribution to the budget of the Multinational Force and Observers. Amounts appropriated under this subsection are authorized to remain available until expended.

(2) Expenditures made pursuant to section 138 of the joint resolution entitled "Joint resolution making continuing appropriations for the fiscal

year 1982, and for other purposes”, approved October 1, 1981 (Public Law 97-51), or pursuant to any subsequent corresponding provision applicable to the fiscal year 1982, shall be charged to the appropriation authorized by this subsection.

**(c) Reimbursements to the United States**

Unless required by law, reimbursements to the United States by the Multinational Force and Observers shall be on the basis of identifiable costs actually incurred as a result of requirements imposed by the Multinational Force and Observers, and shall not include administrative surcharges.

(Pub. L. 97-132, § 4, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1694.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (b)(1), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended. Chapter 6 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 is classified to part VI (§2348 et seq.) of subchapter II of chapter 32 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

Section 138 of the joint resolution entitled “Joint resolution making continuing appropriations for the fiscal year 1982, and for other purposes”, approved October 1, 1981 (Public Law 97-51), referred to in subsec. (b)(2), is section 138 of Pub. L. 97-51, Oct. 1, 1981, 95 Stat. 967, which is not classified to the Code.

**§ 3424. Nonreimbursed costs**

**(a) Administrative and technical support and services**

Any agency of the United States Government is authorized to provide administrative and technical support and services to the Multinational Force and Observers, without reimbursement and upon such terms and conditions as the President may direct, when the provision of such support or services would not result in significant incremental costs to the United States.

**(b) Costs to be kept at minimum level**

The provision by the United States to the Multinational Force and Observers under the authority of this subchapter or any other law of any property, support, or services, including the provision of military and civilian personnel under section 3422 of this title, on other than a reimbursable basis shall be kept to a minimum.

**(c) Military training of armed forces of other countries**

The President may provide military training to members of the armed forces of other countries participating in the Multinational Force and Observers.

(Pub. L. 97-132, § 5, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1695.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3425 of this title.

**§ 3425. Reports to Congress**

**(a) Initial report**

Not later than April 30, 1982, the President shall transmit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives, and to the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, a detailed written report with respect to the pe-

riod ending two weeks prior to that date which contains the information specified in subsection (b) of this section.

**(b) Annual report; content**

Not later than January 15 of each year (beginning in 1983), the President shall transmit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives, and to the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, a written report which describes—

(1) the activities performed by the Multinational Force and Observers during the preceding year;

(2) the composition of the Multinational Force and Observers, including a description of the responsibilities and deployment of the military personnel of each participating country;

(3) All costs incurred by the United States Government (including both normal and incremental costs), set forth by category, which are associated with the United States relationship with the Multinational Force and Observers and which were incurred during the preceding fiscal year (whether or not the United States was reimbursed for those costs), specifically including but not limited to—

(A) the costs associated with the United States units and personnel participating in the Multinational Force and Observers (including salaries, allowances, retirement and other benefits, transportation, housing, and operating and maintenance costs), and

(B) the identifiable costs relating to property, support, and services provided by the United States to the Multinational Force and Observers;

(4) the costs which the United States Government would have incurred in maintaining in the United States those United States units and personnel participating in the Multinational Force and Observers;

(5) amounts received by the United States Government from the Multinational Force and Observers as reimbursement;

(6) the types of property, support, or services provided to the Multinational Force and Observers by the United States Government, including identification of the types of property, support, or services provided on a nonreimbursable basis; and

(7) the results of any discussions with Egypt and Israel regarding the future of the Multinational Force and Observers and its possible reduction or elimination.

**(c) Description, detail, and accuracy of reports**

(1) The reports required by this section shall be as detailed as possible.

(2) The information pursuant to subsection (b)(3) of this section shall, in the case of costs which are not identifiable, be set forth with reasonable accuracy.

(3) The information with respect to any administrative and technical support and services provided on a nonreimbursed basis under section 3424(a) of this title shall include a description of the types of support and services which have been provided and an estimate of both the total costs of such support and services and the incre-

mental costs incurred by the United States with respect to such support and services.

(Pub. L. 97-132, § 6, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1695.)

EX. ORD. NO. 12361. DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS FOR MULTINATIONAL FORCE AND OBSERVERS REPORTS

Ex. Ord. No. 12361, Apr. 27, 1982, 47 F.R. 18313, provided:

By the authority vested in me as President of the United States of America by the Multinational Force and Observers Participation Resolution (Public Law 97-132, 95 Stat. 1693) [this subchapter] and Section 301 of Title 3 of the United States Code, it is hereby ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. *Delegation of Functions.* The reporting function conferred upon the President by Section 6 of the Multinational Force and Observers Participation Resolution (22 U.S.C. 3425) is delegated to the Secretary of State.

SEC. 2. *Interagency Coordination.* In the exercise of the function conferred on the Secretary of State by Section 1 of this Order, the Secretary of State shall consult with the Director of the Office of Management and Budget, the Secretary of Defense, the Director of the United States Arms Control and Disarmament Agency, the Assistant to the President for National Security Affairs, and the heads of other Executive agencies as appropriate.

RONALD REAGAN.

§ 3426. Statements of Congressional intent

(a) Disclaimer of Congressional approval of other agreements, understandings, or commitments

Nothing in this subchapter is intended to signify approval by the Congress of any agreement, understanding, or commitment made by the executive branch other than the agreement to participate in the Multinational Force and Observers as set forth in the exchanges of letters between the United States and Egypt and between the United States and Israel which were signed on August 3, 1981.

(b) Limitations on United States participation

The limitations contained in this subchapter with respect to United States participation in the Multinational Force and Observers apply to the exercise of the authorities provided by this subchapter or provided by any other provision of law. No funds appropriated by the Congress may be obligated or expended for any activity which is contrary to the limitations contained in this subchapter.

(c) War Powers Resolution

Nothing in this subchapter shall affect the responsibilities of the President or the Congress under the War Powers Resolution (Public Law 93-148) [50 U.S.C. 1541 et seq.].

(Pub. L. 97-132, § 7, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1696.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The War Powers Resolution, referred to in subsec. (c), is Pub. L. 93-148, Nov. 7, 1973, 87 Stat. 555, which is classified generally to chapter 33 (§ 1541 et seq.) of Title 50, War and National Defense. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1541 of Title 50 and Tables.

§ 3427. Definitions

As used in this subchapter—

(1) the term “Multinational Force and Observers” means the Multinational Force and

Observers established in accordance with the Protocol between Egypt and Israel signed on August 3, 1981, relating to the implementation of the security arrangements of the Treaty of Peace; and

(2) the term “Treaty of Peace” means the Treaty of Peace between the Arab Republic of Egypt and the State of Israel signed on March 26, 1979, including the Annexes thereto.

(Pub. L. 97-132, § 8, Dec. 29, 1981, 95 Stat. 1697.)

CHAPTER 50—INSTITUTE FOR SCIENTIFIC AND TECHNOLOGICAL COOPERATION

- Sec.  
3501. Congressional statement of policy.  
3502. Purposes and establishment; policy guidelines and objectives.  
3503. Functions.  
    (a) Assistance, support, etc., activities in United States and developing countries.  
    (b) Review of programs, projects, and other activities; objectives of review.  
    (c) Presidential utilization of additional statutory authorities.  
    (d) Consultation and cooperation with United States and foreign government agencies, and international organizations.  
    (e) Presidential promulgation of coordination procedures concerning other governmental activities.  
3504. General authorities; fiscal requirement for authorities.  
3505. Director.  
    (a) Appointment; compensation.  
    (b) Exercise of Presidential authority; delegation of authority.  
3506. Deputy Director.  
    (a) Appointment; compensation.  
    (b) Duties and powers.  
    (c) Additional positions; establishment by President; compensation.  
3507. Council on International Scientific and Technological Cooperation.  
    (a) Establishment.  
    (b) Functions.  
    (c) Advice to Director concerning selection, termination, or change in activities, and transfer of government programs and projects to Institute; review and recommendations respecting new programs and initiatives.  
    (d) Composition; Chairman; appointment, terms, etc., of members.  
    (e) Compensation, reimbursement, status, etc., of nongovernmental members.  
    (f) Executive and additional committees; membership, powers, etc., of Executive Committee.  
3508. Fellowships.  
    (a) Authorization; number; duration; renewal; criteria; foreign recipients; designation of recipients as Institute Fellows.  
    (b) Activities of Institute Fellows.  
    (c) Amount of awards; transportation, housing, etc., benefits.  
    (d) Status of Institute Fellows.  
    (e) Admission into United States of alien participants in program.  
3509. Conflict of interest; personnel and activities covered.  
3510. Authorization of appropriations.

|       |  |
|-------|--|
| Sec.  |  |
| 3511. | Repealed.  |
| 3512. | Establishment within International Development Cooperation Agency. |
| 3513. | Expiration of statutory authorities.                               |

(Pub. L. 96-53, title IV, §402, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 372.)

### § 3503. Functions

#### (a) Assistance, support, etc., activities in United States and developing countries

In carrying out its purposes, the Institute shall—

(1) assist developing countries to strengthen their own scientific and technological capacity in order for them to undertake the research and experimentation necessary for development;

(2) support research, in the United States and in developing countries, on critical development problems, with emphasis on research relating to technologies which are labor-intensive or which do not generate additional unemployment or underemployment and with emphasis on those problems which are the greatest impediment to improvement in the lives of the majority of the poor;

(3) foster the exchange of scientists and other technological experts with developing countries, and other forms of exchange and communication to promote the joint solution of problems of mutual concern to the United States and developing countries;

(4) advise and assist other agencies of the United States Government in planning and executing policies and programs of scientific and technological cooperation with developing countries;

(5) facilitate the participation of private United States institutions, businesses, and individuals in scientific and technological cooperation with developing countries; and

(6) gather, analyze, and disseminate information relevant to the scientific and technological needs of developing countries.

#### (b) Review of programs, projects, and other activities; objectives of review

In carrying out the functions specified in subsection (a) of this section, the Institute shall take particular care to review all of its programs, projects, and other activities to ensure that technologies which are developed, utilized, or promoted are assessed with regard to minimizing any new problems and that participants in such programs, projects, and activities are fully aware of the need for such review with respect to any technology-related activities for which the<sup>1</sup> are responsible.

#### (c) Presidential utilization of additional statutory authorities

For purposes of carrying out the functions of the Institute, the President may utilize, in addition to authorities conferred by this chapter, such authority contained in the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.], the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [22 U.S.C. 3901 et seq.], title V of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Year 1979 [22 U.S.C. 2656a to 2656d], and title IV of the International Development and Food Assistance Act of 1978 [22 U.S.C. 2385a], as the President deems necessary.

### § 3501. Congressional statement of policy

As declared by Congress in the Foreign Assistant<sup>1</sup> Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.], a principal objective of the foreign policy of the United States is the encouragement and sustained support of the people of developing countries in their efforts to acquire the knowledge and resources essential to development and to build the economic, political, and social institutions which will improve the quality of their lives. The Congress reaffirms the profound humanitarian and foreign policy concerns of the United States in the economic and social progress of the developing countries and in the alleviation of the worst physical manifestations of poverty in these countries.

In furtherance of that objective, the Congress recognizes that developing countries require extensive scientific and technological capacity in order to deal effectively with their development problems, relate to the industrialized nations, and constructively participate in the shaping of a stable world order.

It is therefore in the mutual interest of the United States and the developing countries to increase scientific and technological cooperation and jointly to support long-term research on critical problems that impede development and limit the efficient use of the world's human, natural, and capital resources.

(Pub. L. 96-53, title IV, §401, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 371.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 32 (§2151 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Chapter effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 512(a) of Pub. L. 96-53, set out as an Effective Date of 1979 Amendment note under section 2151 of this title.

### § 3502. Purposes and establishment; policy guidelines and objectives

(a) To strengthen the capacity of the people of developing countries to solve their development problems through scientific and technological innovation, to foster research on problems of development, and to facilitate scientific and technological cooperation with developing countries, the President is authorized to establish an Institute for Scientific and Technological Cooperation (hereafter in this chapter referred to as the "Institute"), which shall be subject to the foreign policy guidance of the Secretary of State.

(b) The Institute shall be guided by the policies set forth in sections 2151 and 2151-1 of this title and shall direct a substantial share of its resources to those objectives.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be "Assistance".

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be "they".



**(d) Consultation and cooperation with United States and foreign government agencies, and international organizations**

The Institute shall carry out its functions in consultation and cooperation with the agencies of the United States Government, international organizations, and agencies of other governments engaged in promoting economic, social, and technological development in developing countries.

**(e) Presidential promulgation of coordination procedures concerning other governmental activities**

The President shall prescribe appropriate procedures to assure coordination of the activities of the Institute with other activities of the United States Government in furthering the use of science and technology in the cause of development.

(Pub. L. 96-53, title IV, §403, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 372; Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2206(a)(11), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2162.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (c), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 32 (§2151 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

The Foreign Service Act of 1980, referred to in subsec. (c), is Pub. L. 96-465, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2071, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 52 (§3901 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3901 of this title and Tables.

The Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Year 1979, referred to in subsec. (c), is Pub. L. 95-426, Oct. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 963, as amended. Title V of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Year 1979, is classified generally to sections 2656a to 2656d of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

The International Development and Food Assistance Act of 1978, referred to in subsec. (c), is Pub. L. 95-424, Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 937, as amended. Title IV of the International Development and Food Assistance Act of 1978 is classified to section 2385a of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1978 Amendment note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1980—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 96-465 substituted reference to the Foreign Service Act of 1980 for reference to the Foreign Service Act of 1946.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-465 effective Feb. 15, 1981, except as otherwise provided, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

**§ 3504. General authorities; fiscal requirement for authorities**

(a) To carry out the purposes and functions of the Institute, the President may—

(1) make and perform contracts and other agreements with any individual, institution, corporation, or other body of persons however designated, within or outside the United States, and with governments or government agencies, domestic or foreign;

(2) make advances, grants, and loans to any individual, institution, corporation, or other body of persons however designated, within or outside the United States, and to governments or government agencies, domestic or foreign;

(3) employ such personnel as necessary and fix their compensation;

(4) make provision for compensation, transportation, housing, subsistence (or per diem in lieu thereof), and health care or health and accident insurance for foreign nationals engaged in activities authorized by this chapter while they are away from their homes, without regard to the provisions of any other law;

(5) accept and use money, funds, property, and services of any kind by gift, devise, bequest, grant, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of the Institute;

(6) acquire by purchase, lease, loan, bequest, or gift and hold and dispose of by sale, lease, loan, or grant, real and personal property of all kinds;

(7) prescribe, amend, and repeal such rules and regulations as may be necessary to the conduct of the business of the Institute;

(8) utilize information, services, facilities, officers, and employees of any agency of the United States Government;

(9) establish a principal office in the United States and such other offices within or outside the United States, as may be necessary;

(10) make such expenditures as may be necessary for administering the provisions of this chapter;

(11) adopt, alter, and use an official seal for the Institute, which shall be judicially noticed; and

(12) take such other actions as may be necessary and incident to carrying out the functions of the Institute.

(b) Any authority provided by this section involving the expenditure of appropriated funds shall be effective for a fiscal year only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in appropriation Acts.

(Pub. L. 96-53, title IV, §404, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 373.)

INTERNATIONAL AGREEMENTS

The negotiation, conclusion, and termination of international agreements pursuant to this chapter, shall be subject to requirements of section 112b of Title 1, General Provisions, and to applicable regulations and procedures, see section 1-604 of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56677, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

**§ 3505. Director**

**(a) Appointment; compensation**

There shall be a Director of the Institute (hereafter in this chapter referred to as the “Director”) who shall be the chief executive officer of the Institute. The Director shall be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, and shall receive compensation at the rate payable for level III of the Executive Schedule under section 5314 of title 5.

**(b) Exercise of Presidential authority; delegation of authority**

The President may exercise any authorities conferred upon him by this chapter through the

Director or any other agency or officer of the United States Government as he shall direct. The Director or head of any such agency or any such officer may delegate to any of his subordinates authority to perform any of such functions.

(Pub. L. 96-53, title IV, § 405, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 373.)

### § 3506. Deputy Director

#### (a) Appointment; compensation

A Deputy Director of the Institute shall be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate. The Deputy Director shall receive compensation at the rate payable for level IV of the Executive Schedule under section 5315 of title 5.

#### (b) Duties and powers

The Deputy Director shall perform such duties and exercise such powers as the Director may prescribe.

#### (c) Additional positions; establishment by President; compensation

The President may establish up to two additional positions in the Institute to be compensated at the rate payable for level V of the Executive Schedule under section 5316 of title 5.

(Pub. L. 96-53, title IV, § 406, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 374.)

#### ADDITIONAL INSTITUTE POSITIONS; ESTABLISHMENT

The two additional positions in the Institute authorized by subsec. (c) of this section were established by section 1-403 of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56675, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

### § 3507. Council on International Scientific and Technological Cooperation

#### (a) Establishment

In order to further the purposes of the Institute, the President is authorized to establish a Council on International Scientific and Technological Cooperation (hereafter in this chapter referred to as the "Council").

#### (b) Functions

(1) The Council shall—

(A) advise the Director with respect to the policies, programs, planning, and procedures of the Institute;

(B) make recommendations to the Director on the use of the resources available to the Institute; and

(C) advise the Director on matters involving the activities of the Institute overseas and appropriate relationships with the private sector, within and outside the United States.

(2) The Council shall prepare an annual report setting forth the major recommendations made and advice given pursuant to paragraph (1) of this subsection.

#### (c) Advice to Director concerning selection, termination, or change in activities, and transfer of government programs and projects to Institute; review and recommendations respecting new programs and initiatives

The Director shall seek the advice of the Council before making any decision with respect

to the selection or termination of, or any significant change in, the areas and issues in which the Institute conducts its activities, and with respect to the transfer of specific programs and projects from any other Government agency to the Institute. The Council shall have the authority to review all new programs and initiatives before their implementation and to make recommendations with regard to the approval or disapproval of new programs and initiatives having a cost in excess of \$500,000 or a duration greater than two years.

#### (d) Composition; Chairman; appointment, terms, etc., of members

The Council shall consist of up to twenty-five members appointed by the President, one of whom the President shall designate as Chairman. The members of the Council shall be appointed for terms of four years, except that the members first appointed shall be appointed for terms of one, two, three, or four years, as designated by the President at the time of their appointment, so that the terms of approximately one-fourth of the members of the Council expire in any year. The members of the Council shall be selected from among—

(1) citizens of the United States who are widely recognized for their broad knowledge of, or expertise in, science and technology, or their interest in the scientific and technological problems of developing countries;

(2) citizens of foreign countries who by their knowledge and expertise are capable of providing advice and guidance to the Institute on the application of science and technology to the problems of developing countries, except that not more than one-third of the membership of the Council shall consist of members who are citizens of foreign countries; and

(3) officials of the United States Government, except that not to exceed five members of the Council may be appointed under this paragraph, one of whom shall be the Secretary of State or his designee.

#### (e) Compensation, reimbursement, status, etc., of nongovernmental members

Members of the Council who are not officials of the United States Government shall be entitled to compensation, not to exceed the daily equivalent of the highest rate which may be paid to an employee under the General Schedule established by section 5332 of title 5, while in the performance of their duties under this chapter, and to reimbursement for expenses and per diem in lieu of subsistence while away from their homes or regular places of business in the same manner as persons employed intermittently in Government service are allowed expenses under section 5703 of title 5. Members of the Council who are not officials of the United States Government shall not be deemed officers, employees, or otherwise in the service or employment of the United States Government for any purpose, except that members of the Council who are United States citizens shall be deemed Government employees for the purposes of sections 202, 203, 205, 207, 208, and 209 of title 18.

**(f) Executive and additional committees; membership, powers, etc., of Executive Committee**

The Council may appoint from among its members an Executive Committee, and such other committees it deems necessary, to assist it in exercising its powers and functions. The Executive Committee shall consist of seven members, one of whom shall be the Chairman of the Council and not more than three of whom shall be employees of the United States Government. The Executive Committee shall exercise such powers and functions as are delegated to it by the Council.

(Pub. L. 96-53, title IV, § 407, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 374.)

REFERENCES IN OTHER LAWS TO GS-16, 17, OR 18 PAY RATES

References in laws to the rates of pay for GS-16, 17, or 18, or to maximum rates of pay under the General Schedule, to be considered references to rates payable under specified sections of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, see section 529 [title I, § 101(c)(1)] of Pub. L. 101-509, set out in a note under section 5376 of Title 5.

ESTABLISHMENT OF COUNCIL

The Council on International Scientific and Technological Cooperation by subsec. (a) of this section was established by section 1-402 of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56675, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

**§ 3508. Fellowships**

**(a) Authorization; number; duration; renewal; criteria; foreign recipients; designation of recipients as Institute Fellows**

The President is authorized to award up to twenty fellowships annually for periods up to two years, such awards to be renewable for an additional period not to exceed two years, to individuals who have demonstrated exceptional competence and ability in the fields of scientific, technological, economic, or social endeavor selected by the Institute for concentration. The awards shall be made so as to encompass a wide diversity of disciplines and backgrounds, and shall be made on the basis of criteria established by the President upon the advice of the Council. Up to ten of the awards in any year may be made to citizens of countries other than the United States. Individuals awarded fellowships shall be designated as Institute Fellows.

**(b) Activities of Institute Fellows**

The President may assign Institute Fellows to undertake such activities, in the United States or abroad, as will further the purposes of the Institute.

**(c) Amount of awards; transportation, housing, etc., benefits**

The amount of the awards made pursuant to this section shall be established by the President, but shall not in any case exceed the highest rate which may be paid to an employee under the General Schedule established by section 5332 of title 5. In addition, where appropriate, the President may make provisions for transportation, housing (when assigned outside

country of residence), subsistence (or per diem in lieu thereof), and health care or health or accident insurance for Institute Fellows and their dependents while engaged in activities authorized by this chapter.

**(d) Status of Institute Fellows**

Except as provided otherwise in this section, Institute Fellows shall not be deemed employees or otherwise in the service or employment of the United States Government. Institute Fellows shall be considered employees for purposes of compensation of injuries under chapter 81 of title 5 and the tort claim provisions of chapter 171 of title 28. In addition, Institute Fellows who are United States citizens shall be considered Government employees for purposes of sections 202, 203, 205, 207, 208, and 209 of title 18.

**(e) Admission into United States of alien participants in program**

Alien participants in any program of the Institute, including Institute Fellows and their dependents, may be admitted to the United States, if otherwise qualified as non-immigrants under section 1101(a)(15) of title 8, for such time and under such conditions as may be prescribed by regulations promulgated by the Secretary of State and the Attorney General.

(Pub. L. 96-53, title IV, § 408, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 375.)

REFERENCES IN OTHER LAWS TO GS-16, 17, OR 18 PAY RATES

References in laws to the rates of pay for GS-16, 17, or 18, or to maximum rates of pay under the General Schedule, to be considered references to rates payable under specified sections of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, see section 529 [title I, § 101(c)(1)] of Pub. L. 101-509, set out in a note under section 5376 of Title 5.

**§ 3509. Conflict of interest; personnel and activities covered**

Members of the Council and Institute Fellows shall avoid any action, in their activities with respect to the Institute, which might result in, or create the appearance of, a conflict of interest, including but not limited to—

- (1) using their office or position for private gain;
- (2) giving preferential treatment to any person;
- (3) making recommendations or decisions relating to any activity authorized by this chapter in other than an impartial and independent manner;
- (4) misusing Government property or official information obtained through their office or position which has not been made available to the general public; or
- (5) affecting adversely the confidence of the public in the integrity of the Institute.

(Pub. L. 96-53, title IV, § 409, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 376.)

**§ 3510. Authorization of appropriations**

There are authorized to be appropriated to the President to carry out this chapter, in addition to funds otherwise available for such purpose, \$12,000,000 for the fiscal year 1981. Funds appro-

priated under this section are authorized to remain available until expended.  
(Pub. L. 96-53, title IV, § 410, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 376; amended Pub. L. 96-533, title III, § 312, Dec. 16, 1980, 94 Stat. 3148.)

AMENDMENTS

1980—Pub. L. 96-533 substituted appropriations authorization of \$12,000,000 for fiscal year 1981 for such authorization of \$23,750,000 for fiscal year 1980.

ALLOCATION OF FUNDS

Funds available to the President for carrying out this chapter were allocated to the Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency by section 1-801(a)(2) of Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56678, eff. Oct. 1, 1979, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

**§ 3511. Repealed. Pub. L. 98-164, title X, § 1011(a)(6), Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1061**

Section, Pub. L. 96-53, title IV, § 411, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 376, required the President to submit an annual report to Congress relating to the operations of the Institute during the preceding fiscal year, and set forth the contents of such report.

**§ 3512. Establishment within International Development Cooperation Agency**

Upon the establishment of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency pursuant to Reorganization Plan Numbered 2 of 1979, the Institute shall be established within such Agency.

(Pub. L. 96-53, title IV, § 413, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 377.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Reorganization Plan Numbered 2 of 1979, referred to in text, is Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1979, 44 F.R. 41165, 93 Stat. 1378, effective Oct. 1, 1979, pursuant to Ex. Ord. No. 12163, Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56673, set out as notes under section 2381 of this title.

**§ 3513. Expiration of statutory authorities**

The authorities contained in this chapter shall expire on September 30, 1984.

(Pub. L. 96-53, title IV, § 414, Aug. 14, 1979, 93 Stat. 377.)

**CHAPTER 51—PANAMA CANAL**

- Sec.
- 3601. Congressional statement of purpose.
- 3602. Definitions and recommendation for legislation.
  - (a) References to Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 and related agreements.
  - (b) Definitions.
  - (c) Applicability of subsection (b).
  - (d) Recommendation for legislation.

SUBCHAPTER I—ADMINISTRATION AND REGULATIONS

PART 1—PANAMA CANAL COMMISSION

- 3611. Panama Canal Commission; establishment.
- 3612. Supervisory Board.
  - (a) Composition of Board.
  - (b) Membership of Board; appointing authority; compensation and travel expenses; compensation for non-Government Board members.

- Sec.
- 3613. Administrator.
- 3614. Deputy Administrator and Chief Engineer.
  - (a) Appointment and prescription of duties by President.
  - (b) Compensation.
- 3615. Consultative Committee.
  - (a) Designation and coordination.
  - (b) Functions.
- 3616. Joint Commission on the Environment.
  - (a) Establishment; composition.
  - (b) Appointment; compensation and travel expenses.
  - (c) Protection of pay, seniority, or other rights or benefits of appointed or detailed Federal employees.
  - (d) Compensation of necessary personnel.
  - (e) Rules of procedure; establishment; approval.
- 3617. Travel expenses.
- 3618. Defense of Panama Canal.
- 3619. Joint sea level canal study.
  - (a) Committee; appointment of representatives.
  - (b) Transmittal of study to President of Senate and Speaker of House of Representatives.
  - (c) Congressional authorization respecting construction of sea level canal.
- 3620. Authority of Ambassador; independence of Commission regarding its Panama Canal responsibilities.
- 3621. Security legislation.
- 3622. Code of conduct for Commission personnel.
  - (a) Oath; compliance with laws of United States regarding duties and responsibilities of Federal employees.
  - (b) Adoption of code of conduct; time limit; contents.
  - (c) Investigations by Commission respecting violations; recommendations for suspension.
  - (d) Measures to insure compliance with code of conduct.
- 3623. Office of Ombudsman.
  - (a) Establishment; appointment of Ombudsman; functions.
  - (b) Authority to make findings, render assistance, and offer recommendations.
  - (c) Effect on procedures for grievances, appeals, or administrative matters under this chapter, in other provisions of law, or in Federal regulations.
  - (d) Citizenship requirement.
  - (e) Termination date.

PART 2—EMPLOYEES

SUBPART I—PANAMA CANAL COMMISSION PERSONNEL

- 3641. Definitions.
- 3642. Appointment of personnel.
  - (a) Compensation and duties of officers, agents, employees, etc.
  - (b) Eligibility to serve as officer or employee of Commission.
- 3643. Transfer of Federal employees.
  - (a) Authority to enter into agreements; reemployment rights.
  - (b) "Agency" defined.
  - (c) Regulations.
- 3644. Compensation of individuals in uniformed services.
  - (a) Individual serving in a position in Commission.
  - (b) Individual appointed as Administrator, Deputy Administrator, or Chief Engineer.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>Sec.</p> <p>3645. (c) Reimbursement to uniformed service. Deduction from basic pay of amounts due for supplies or services.</p> <p>3646. Cost of living allowance.</p> <p>3647. Educational travel benefits.</p> <p>3648. Privileges and immunities of certain employees.</p> <p>3649. Inapplicability of certain benefits to certain noncitizens.</p> <p>3650. Travel and transportation expenses.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">SUBPART II—WAGE AND EMPLOYMENT PRACTICES</p> <p>3651. Definitions.</p> <p>3652. Panama Canal Employment System.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(a) Establishment; merit and other employment requirements.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(b) Applicability to Commission, any Executive agency, and Smithsonian Institution.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(c) Amendment or modification by President.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(d) Exclusion or inclusion respecting coverage of certain employees.</p> <p>3653. Employment standards.</p> <p>3654. Interim application of Canal Zone Merit System.</p> <p>3655. Basic pay.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(a) Establishment and revision of rates.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(b) Relationship of same or similar work performed in United States or certain other areas outside United States.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(c) Adjustments in rates; limits.</p> <p>3656. Uniform application of standards and rates.</p> <p>3657. Recruitment and retention remuneration.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(a) Determination by head of agency.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(b) Restriction.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(c) Limit on compensation.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(d) Applicability of subchapter III of chapter 59 of title 5.</p> <p>3657a. Quarters allowances.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(a) "Position" and "employee" defined.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(b) Covered employees.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(c) Determination of amount.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(d) Inapplicability of election under section 3652(b) of this title.</p> <p>3658. Benefits based on basic pay.</p> <p>3659. Salary protection upon conversion of pay base.</p> <p>3660. Review and adjustment of classifications, grades, and pay level.</p> <p>3661. Panama Canal Board of Appeals; duties.</p> <p>3662. Appeals to Board; procedures.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(a) Persons entitled to appeal; form; time.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(b) Personal appearance.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(c) Consideration of evidence; decision.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(d) Finality of decision.</p> <p>3663. Administration by President.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(a) Prescription of regulations.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(b) Establishment of office; duties.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(c) Delegation by President.</p> <p>3664. Applicability of certain laws.</p> <p>3665. Minimum level of pay; minimum annual increase.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">SUBPART III—CONDITIONS OF EMPLOYMENT AND PLACEMENT</p> <p>3671. Transferred or reemployed employees.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(a) Terms and conditions of employment.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(b) Break in service.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(c) Applicability of sections 903(c) and 904(a)(2) of title 20; sabbaticals.</p> <p>3672. Placement.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(a) Citizens separated from employment with Panama Canal Company or Canal Zone Government.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(b) Citizens eliminated from employment with Executive agency or Canal Zone Government as a result of implementation of Panama Canal Treaty of 1977.</p> | <p>Sec.</p> <p>(c) Establishment and administration of program by Office of Personnel Management.</p> <p>(d) Effective date.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">SUBPART IV—RETIREMENT</p> <p>3681. Retirement under special treaty provisions.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(a) Purchase of retirement equity; individuals entitled to participate.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(b) Limitation on amount paid to Social Security System of Republic of Panama.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(c) Purchase of nontransferable deferred annuity; employees entitled to participate.</p> <p>3682. Cash relief to certain former employees.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(a) Continuation of cash relief payments to employees under Act of July 8, 1937.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(b) Additional amounts for relief under subsection (a).</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(c) Increases in cash relief payments.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(d) Cash relief payments to widows.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(e) Applicability of subchapter III of chapter 83 of title 5.</p> <p>3683. Appliances for employees injured before September 7, 1916.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">SUBPART V—APPLICATION TO RELATED PERSONNEL</p> <p>3691. Individuals considered employees.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(a) Individuals considered employees for purposes of certain sections.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(b) Individuals considered employees for certain purposes.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">SUBPART VI—LABOR-MANAGEMENT RELATIONS</p> <p>3701. Labor-management relations.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">PART 3—FUNDS AND ACCOUNTS</p> <p style="text-align: center;">SUBPART I—FUNDS</p> <p>3711. Canal Zone Government funds.</p> <p>3712. Panama Canal Revolving Fund.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(a) Termination of Panama Canal Commission Fund; unexpended balances covered into Panama Canal Revolving Fund.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(b) Interest and nonreimbursed appropriations deposited into Treasury.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(c) Tolls and other receipts into Panama Canal Revolving Fund; restriction on use of funds.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(d) Authority of Commission to make deposits.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(e) Review of annual budget.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(f) Costs of implementation.</p> <p>3712a. Authority to lease office space.</p> <p>3713. Panama Canal emergency authority.</p> <p>3714. Borrowing authority.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(a) Limitation on amount; issuance of notes and other obligations.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(b) Restrictions on use.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(c) Effect on investment interest in Panama Canal.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(d) Report to Congress.</p> <p>3714a. Dissolution of Commission.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(a) Study and report.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(b) Termination office.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(c) Panama Canal Commission Dissolution Fund.</p> <p>3715. Establishment of Compensation Fund.</p> <p>3715a. Operation of Fund.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(a) Deposits to Fund.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(b) Calculation of amounts to be deposited.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(c) Investment of amounts in Fund.</p> <p>3715b. Transfers from Fund for compensation benefits.</p> |
|---|---|

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>Sec.<br/>3715c. Final evaluation of Fund; deficiency or surplus in Fund.<br/>    (a) Final evaluation of Fund.<br/>    (b) Deficiency or surplus in Fund.<br/>    (c) Continuity of Fund.</p> <p>3715d. Continuation of benefits.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">SUBPART II—ACCOUNTING POLICIES AND AUDITS</p> <p>3721. Accounting policies.<br/>    (a) Establishment and maintenance of accounts; specifications.<br/>    (b) Regulations establishing the basis of accounting for assets.</p> <p>3722. Repealed.</p> <p>3723. Audit by Comptroller General of the United States.<br/>    (a) Financial transactions of Commission; access to books, accounts, etc.<br/>    (b) Annual report to Congress; contents.<br/>    (c) Consideration of conversion problems respecting accounting system of Panama Canal Company.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">SUBPART III—INTERAGENCY ACCOUNTS</p> <p>3731. Reimbursements.<br/>    (a) Reimbursement of the Employees' Compensation Fund, Bureau of Employees' Compensation, Department of Labor, and other Government departments and agencies by Commission.<br/>    (b) Reimbursement of Commission by Department of Defense.<br/>    (c) Designation of funds of Department of Defense or any other department or agency of United States to carry out purposes of this subsection.<br/>    (d) Reimbursement to departments or agencies furnishing services.<br/>    (e) Availability of funds to defray certain costs.<br/>    (f) Reimbursement of United States by Republic of Panama for salaries and other employment costs.<br/>    (g) Operation of Canal Zone College.<br/>    (h) Prohibition of funds for uses other than Commission activities.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">SUBPART IV—POSTAL MATTERS</p> <p>3741. Postal service.<br/>    (a) Discontinuation of postal service.<br/>    (b) Savings provision.<br/>    (c) Possession or administration of funds by Commission.<br/>    (d) Mail addressed to Canal Zone from or through United States.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">SUBPART V—ACCOUNTS WITH REPUBLIC OF PANAMA</p> <p>3751. Payments to Republic of Panama.<br/>    (a) Payments required under Panama Canal Treaty; annual audit.<br/>    (b) Excess operating revenues.<br/>    (c) Retroactive taxation.<br/>    (d) Accumulated unpaid balances.<br/>    (e) Toll rates; payment of costs of operation and maintenance of canal with unexpended funds.<br/>    (f) Prohibitions.<br/>    (g) Exemption from automatic budget cuts.</p> <p>3752. Transactions with Republic of Panama.</p> <p>3753. Disaster relief.</p> <p>3754. Congressional restraints on property transfers and tax expenditures; formal appraisal of Panama.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">PART 4—CLAIMS FOR INJURIES TO PERSONS OR PROPERTY</p> <p style="text-align: center;">SUBPART I—GENERAL PROVISIONS</p> <p>3761. Settlement of claims generally.</p> | <p>Sec.</p> <p>(a) Claims for injury to, or loss of, property or personal injury or death arising from operation of Panama Canal.</p> <p>(b) Limitation on amount of claims.</p> <p>(c) Source of award; release.</p> <p>(d) Action for damages on claims cognizable under this part; action against officers or employees of United States for injuries resulting from acts outside scope of their employment.</p> <p>(e) Applicability of provisions of section 1346 and chapter 171 of title 28.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">SUBPART II—VESSEL DAMAGE</p> <p>3771. Injuries in locks of canal; adjustment and payment of claims.</p> <p>3772. Injuries outside locks.</p> <p>3773. Measure of damages generally.</p> <p>3774. Delays for which no responsibility is assumed.</p> <p>3775. Settlement of claims.</p> <p>3776. Actions on claims.</p> <p>3777. Investigation of accident or injury giving rise to claim.</p> <p>3778. Board of local inspectors.</p> <p>3779. Insurance.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">PART 5—PUBLIC PROPERTY</p> <p>3781. Assets and liabilities of Panama Canal Company.</p> <p>3782. Transfers and cross-servicing between agencies.<br/>    (a) Transfers of facilities, buildings, structures, improvements, stocks and equipment located in the Republic of Panama.<br/>    (b) Cross-servicing agreements.<br/>    (c) Transfer of records to Government of Republic of Panama.<br/>    (d) Applicability to Smithsonian Institution.</p> <p>3783. Disposition of property of United States.</p> <p>3784. Transfer of property to Republic of Panama.<br/>    (a) Conveyance of Panama Railroad.<br/>    (b) Transfer of certain property pursuant to Panama Canal Treaty of 1977; report to Congress.<br/>    (c) Restriction on transfer of Panama Canal and certain other property.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">PART 6—TOLLS FOR USE OF PANAMA CANAL</p> <p>3791. Prescription of measurement rules and rates of tolls.</p> <p>3792. Bases of tolls.<br/>    (a) Tolls based on net vessel tons and on displacement tonnage.<br/>    (b) Toll rates prescribed to cover all costs of operation and maintenance of Panama Canal.<br/>    (c) Payment of tolls by vessels of United States.<br/>    (d) Levy of tolls.</p> <p>3793. Interest on investments.<br/>    (a) Calculation of interest.<br/>    (b) Increases and decreases in investment of United States.<br/>    (c) Value of property transferred to Commission.<br/>    (d) Payment and deposit of interest.</p> <p>3794. Procedures.<br/>    (a) Publication of notice of proposed changes in rules of measurement and rates of tolls in Federal Register; participation by interested parties; availability of analysis.<br/>    (b) Revision of proposed rules of measurement or rates of tolls.</p> |
|--|--|

- Sec.
- (c) Publication of notice of changes in rules of measurement and rates of tolls in Federal Register.
  - (d) Transmission of complete record of proceedings to President.
  - (e) Effective date of prescribed rules of measurement and rates of tolls.
  - (f) Judicial review.
3795. Interim toll adjustment.
- PART 7—GENERAL REGULATIONS
3801. Authority of President.
3802. Authority of Commission.
- PART 8—SHIPPING AND NAVIGATION
- SUBPART I—OPERATION OF CANAL
3811. Operating regulations.
- SUBPART II—INSPECTION OF VESSELS
3821. Vessels subject to inspection.
3822. Foreign vessels.
3823. Regulations governing inspection.
- SUBCHAPTER II—TREATY TRANSITION PERIOD
- PART 1—LAWS CONTINUED IN FORCE
3831. Laws, regulations, and administrative authority.
- PART 2—COURTS
3841. Jurisdiction.
  - (a) Continuance during transition period.
  - (b) Construction of terms.
3842. Division and terms of United States District Court for the District of the Canal Zone.
3843. Terms of certain offices.
3844. Magistrates' courts.
  - (a) Operation during transition period.
  - (b) Termination of one court; exercise of jurisdiction and retention of records by other court.
- PART 3—TRANSITION AUTHORITY
3851. Transition authority of President.
3852. Commitment of prisoners to custody of Attorney General or Commission.
- SUBCHAPTER III—GENERAL PROVISIONS
- PART 1—CEMETERIES
3861. Disinterment, transportation, and reinterment of remains.
- PART 2—ADMINISTRATION
3871. Annual report.
3872. Notification requirements.

### § 3601. Congressional statement of purpose

It is the purpose of this chapter to provide legislation necessary or desirable for the implementation of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 between the United States of America and the Republic of Panama and of the related agreements accompanying that Treaty.

(Pub. L. 96-70, §2, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 455.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 96-70, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 452, known as the Panama Canal Act of 1979, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note below and Tables.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 3304 of Pub. L. 96-70 provided that: "Except as provided in sections 1231 [enacting section 3671 of this

title and amending sections 5595, 5724a, and 8102 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees], 1232 [enacting section 3672 of this title and provisions set out as a note under section 3672 of this title], 1241 [amending section 8336 of Title 5 and enacting provisions set out as notes under section 8336 of Title 5], 1242 [amending section 8339 of Title 5 and enacting provisions set out as notes under section 8339 of Title 5], 1261 [enacting section 3691 of this title and provisions set out as a note under section 3691 of this title], 1605 [enacting section 3795 of this title and provisions set out as a note under section 3795 of this title], 2203 [enacting section 3843 of this title and provisions set out as a note under section 3843 of this title], 2402 [enacting section 3852 of this title and provisions set out as a note under section 3852 of this title], 3101 [enacting section 3861 of this title], and 3201 [amending sections 1101 and 1182 of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality, and enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 1101 and 1182 of Title 8] of this Act, the preceding provisions of this Act [see Short Title note below] shall take effect on the date on which the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 enters into force [Oct. 1, 1979]."

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1988 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 100-705, §1, Nov. 19, 1988, 102 Stat. 4685, provided that: "This Act [enacting sections 3715 to 3715d of this title, amending sections 3612, 3712, and 3731 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 3612 of this title] may be cited as the 'Panama Canal Commission Compensation Fund Act of 1988'."

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1987 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 100-203, title V, §5421, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1330-271, provided that: "This part [part 2 of subtitle E (§§ 5421-5429) of title V of Pub. L. 100-203, enacting section 3714 of this title, amending sections 3683, 3711, 3712, 3713, 3751, 3753, 3754, 3792, and 3793 of this title and section 8348 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 3683 of this title] may be referred to as the 'Panama Canal Revolving Fund Act'."

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 99-209, §1, Dec. 23, 1985, 99 Stat. 1716, provided that: "This Act [enacting section 3779 of this title, amending sections 3771, 3772, and 3774 to 3776 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 3771 of this title] may be cited as the 'Panama Canal Amendments Act of 1985'."

#### SHORT TITLE

Section 1 of Pub. L. 96-70 provided that: "This Act [enacting this chapter, amending section 2778 of this title, sections 305, 5102, 5316, 5342, 5343, 5348, 5373, 5504, 5533, 5541, 5583, 5595, 5724a, 6301, 6322, 6323, 8102, 8146, 8335, 8336, 8339, 8348, 8701, and 8901 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, sections 1101 and 1182 of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality, section 213 of Title 29, Labor, sections 403, 3401, and 3682 of Title 39, Postal Service, and sections 191, 195, and 196 of Title 50, War and National Defense, repealing section 3402 of Title 39 and section 191b of Title 50, and enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 3601, 3602, 3672, 3691, 3795, 3843, and 3852 of this title, sections 8336 and 8339 of Title 5, and sections 1101 and 1182 of Title 8] may be cited as the 'Panama Canal Act of 1979'."

#### EX. ORD. NO. 12215. DELEGATION OF PANAMA CANAL FUNCTIONS

Ex. Ord. No. 12215, May 27, 1980, 45 F.R. 36043, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 12652, Sept. 19, 1988, 53 F.R. 36775, provided:

By the authority vested in me as President of the United States of America by the Panama Canal Code (76A Stat. 1), as amended, by the Panama Canal Act of 1979 (93 Stat. 452; 22 U.S.C. 3601 et seq.), and by Section 301 of Title 3 of the United States Code, it is hereby ordered as follows:

## 1-1. THE SECRETARY OF DEFENSE

1-101. The Secretary of Defense shall develop for the President's consideration an appropriate legislative proposal as required by Section 3(d) of the Panama Canal Act of 1979 (93 Stat. 456; 22 U.S.C. 3602(d)). The Secretary of Defense shall coordinate development of this proposal with the Secretary of State and the heads of other interested Executive agencies.

1-102. The function vested in the President by Section 1212(d)(1) of the Panama Canal Act of 1979 (93 Stat. 464; 22 U.S.C. 3652(d)(1)) to exclude employees of, or positions within, the Department of Defense from coverage under any provision of subchapter II, Chapter 2 of Title I of the Panama Canal Act of 1979 [22 U.S.C. 3651 et seq.], is delegated to the Secretary of Defense.

1-103. The function vested in the President by Section 1281(b) of Title 6 of the Panama Canal Code (76A Stat. 455; 6 P.C.C. 1281(b)), as amended, with respect to areas and installations made available to the United States pursuant to the Agreement in Implementation of Article IV of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 is delegated to the Secretary of Defense.

1-104. The function vested in the President by Section 1701 of the Panama Canal Act of 1979 (93 Stat. 492; 22 U.S.C. 3801), with respect to regulations applicable within the areas and installations made available to the United States pursuant to the Agreement in Implementation of Article IV of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977, is delegated to the Secretary of Defense.

1-105. The functions vested in the President by Sections 1243(c)(1) and 2401 of the Panama Canal Act of 1979 (93 Stat. 474 and 495; 22 U.S.C. 3681(c)(1) and 3851) are delegated to the Secretary of Defense.

1-106. The functions vested in the President by Section 1502(a) of the Panama Canal Act of 1979 (93 Stat. 488; 22 U.S.C. 3782(a)) are delegated to the Secretary of Defense.

## 1-2. COORDINATION OF PAY AND EMPLOYMENT PRACTICES

1-201. In order to coordinate the policies and activities of agencies under subchapter II of Chapter 2 of Title I of the Panama Canal Act of 1979 (93 Stat. 463; 22 U.S.C. 3651 et seq.), each agency shall periodically consult with the Secretary of Defense with respect to the establishment of rates of pay, in order to develop compatible or unified systems for basic pay. In addition, each agency shall consult with the Secretary of Defense on such other matters as the Secretary may deem appropriate in order to develop compatible or unified employment practices.

1-202. The head of each agency shall, upon approval by the Secretary of Defense, adopt a schedule of basic pay pursuant to Section 1215 of the Panama Canal Act of 1979 (93 Stat. 465; 22 U.S.C. 3655) and adopt regulations governing other matters relating to pay and employment practices.

1-203. The authority vested in the President by Section 1223(a) of the Panama Canal Act of 1979 to coordinate the policies and activities of agencies (93 Stat. 467; 22 U.S.C. 3663(a)) is delegated to the Secretary of Defense. The Secretary shall exercise such functions in a manner which is in accord with the provisions of Sections 1-201 and 1-202 of this Order.

## 1-3. PANAMA CANAL COMMISSION

1-301. The functions vested in the President and delegated to the Secretary of Defense in this Section 1-3 of this Order shall be carried out by the Secretary of Defense, who shall, in carrying out the said functions, provide, by redelegation or otherwise, for their performance, in a manner consistent with paragraph 3 of Article III of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977, by the Panama Canal Commission.

1-302. The authority of the President under Section 1104 of the Panama Canal Act of 1979 (93 Stat. 457; 22 U.S.C. 3614) to fix the compensation of and to define the authorities and duties of the Deputy Administrator and the Chief Engineer is delegated to the Secretary of Defense.

1-303. The functions vested in the President by Sections 1418, 1801, and 2206 of the Panama Canal Act of 1979 (93 Stat. 487, 492, and 494; 22 U.S.C. 3778, 3811, and 3844) are delegated to the Secretary of Defense.

1-304. The authority of the President under Section 1701 of the Panama Canal Act of 1979 (93 Stat. 492; 22 U.S.C. 3801) with respect to regulations applicable within the areas and installations made available to the United States pursuant to the Agreement in Implementation of Article III of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 is delegated to the Secretary of Defense.

1-305. The function vested in the President by Section 1281(b) of Title 6 of the Panama Canal Code (76A Stat. 455; 6 P.C.C. 1281(b)), as amended, with respect to areas and installations in the Republic of Panama made available to the United States pursuant to the Agreement in Implementation of Article III of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 is delegated to the Secretary of Defense.

1-306. The functions vested in the President by Sections 82 and 86 of Title 3 of the Panama Canal Code (76A Stat. 54 and 55; 3 P.C.C. 82 and 86), as amended, are delegated to the Secretary of Defense.

[1-307. Rescinded by Ex. Ord. No. 12652, Sept. 19, 1988, 53 F.R. 36775, eff. Jan. 1, 1989.]

1-308. Except to the extent heretofore delegated, the functions vested in the President pursuant to subchapter II of Chapter 2 of Title I of the Panama Canal Act of 1979 (93 Stat. 463) [22 U.S.C. 3651 et seq.] are hereby delegated to the Secretary of Defense.

## 1-4. OTHER AGENCIES

1-401. The functions vested in the President by Sections 1111 and 3301 of the Panama Canal Act of 1979 (93 Stat. 459 and 497; 22 U.S.C. 3621 and 3871), are delegated to the Secretary of State. The Secretary shall perform these functions in coordination with the Secretary of Defense.

1-402. The functions vested in the President by Sections 1112(d), 1344(b), and 1504(b) of the Panama Canal Act of 1979 (93 Stat. 460, 484, and 488; 22 U.S.C. 3622(d), 3754(b), and 3784(b)) are delegated to the Secretary of State.

1-403. The functions vested in the President by Section 1243(a)(1) of the Panama Canal Act of 1979 (93 Stat. 473; 22 U.S.C. 3681(a)(1)) are delegated to the Director of the Office of Personnel Management.

1-404. Paragraphs (22) and (23) of Section 1 of Executive Order No. 11609, as amended [set out as a note under section 301 of Title 3, The President], and Executive Order No. 11713 are revoked.

JIMMY CARTER.

**§ 3602. Definitions and recommendation for legislation****(a) References to Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 and related agreements**

For purposes of this chapter—

(1) references to the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 refer to the Panama Canal Treaty between the United States of America and the Republic of Panama, signed September 7, 1977; and

(2) references to the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 and related agreements refer to the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977, the agreements relating to and implementing that Treaty, signed September 7, 1977, and the Agreement Between the United States of America and the Republic of Panama Concerning Air Traffic Control and Related Services, concluded January 8, 1979.

**(b) Definitions**

Subject to the provisions of subsection (c) of this section, for purposes of applying the Canal



Zone Code or other laws of the United States and regulations issued pursuant to such Code or other laws with respect to transactions, occurrences, or status on or after October 1, 1979—

(1) “Canal Zone” shall be deemed to refer to the areas and installations in the Republic of Panama made available to the United States pursuant to the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 and related agreements;

(2) “Canal Zone waters” and “waters of the Canal Zone” shall be deemed to refer to “Panama Canal waters” and “waters of the Panama Canal”, respectively;

(3) “Government of the Canal Zone” or “Canal Zone Government” shall be deemed to refer to the United States of America;

(4) “Governor of the Canal Zone” or “Governor”, wherever the reference is to the Governor of the Canal Zone, shall be deemed to refer to the Panama Canal Commission;

(5) “Panama Canal Company” or “Company”, wherever the reference is to the Panama Canal Company, shall be deemed to refer to the Panama Canal Commission;

(6) in chapter 57 of title 5 of the Canal Zone Code, “hospitals” and “Health Bureau” shall be deemed to refer, respectively, to the hospitals operated by the United States in the Republic of Panama, and to the organizational unit operating such hospitals; and

(7) in chapter 57 of title 5 of the Canal Zone Code, in section 4784 of title 6 of such Code, and in section 2 of title 7 of such Code, “health director” shall be deemed to refer to the senior official in charge of the hospitals operated by the United States in the Republic of Panama.

**(c) Applicability of subsection (b)**

Any reference set forth in subsection (b) of this section shall apply except as otherwise provided in this chapter or unless (1) such reference is inconsistent with the provisions of this chapter, (2) in the context in which a term is used such reference is clearly not intended, or (3) a term refers to a time before October 1, 1979.

**(d) Recommendation for legislation**

The President shall, within two years after October 1, 1979, submit to the Congress a request for legislation which would—

(1) amend or repeal provisions of law which in their present form are applicable only during the transition period prescribed in Article XI of that Treaty,

(2) repeal the Canal Zone Code, and

(3) contain provisions considered necessary and appropriate in light of the experience as of that time under that Treaty.

(Pub. L. 96-70, §3, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 455.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (c), was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 96-70, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 452, known as the Panama Canal Act of 1979, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3601 of this title and Tables.

REFERENCES TO CANAL ZONE CODE DEEMED  
REFERENCES TO PANAMA CANAL CODE

Section 3303(b) of Pub. L. 96-70 provided that: “Those provisions of the Canal Zone Code not repealed by this

Act are redesignated as the ‘Panama Canal Code’. Any reference to the Canal Zone Code in those laws and regulations referred to in section 3(b) of this Act [subsec. (b) of this section] shall, subject to the provisions of such section, be deemed to refer to the Panama Canal Code.”

RECOMMENDATION FOR LEGISLATION

For provisions relating to the development of an appropriate legislative proposal by the Secretary of Defense as required by subsec. (d) of this section, see section 1-101 of Ex. Ord. No. 12215, May 27, 1980, 45 F.R. 36043, set out as a note under section 3601 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 5 sections 5343, 5595, 5724, 5724a, 8102; title 8 section 1101.

SUBCHAPTER I—ADMINISTRATION AND  
REGULATIONS

PART 1—PANAMA CANAL COMMISSION

**§ 3611. Panama Canal Commission; establishment**

There is established in the executive branch of the United States Government an agency to be known as the Panama Canal Commission (hereinafter in this chapter referred to as the “Commission”). The Commission shall, under the general supervision of the Board established by section 3612 of this title, be responsible for the maintenance and operation of the Panama Canal and the facilities and appurtenances related thereto. The authority of the President with respect to the Commission shall be exercised through the Secretary of Defense.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1101, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 456.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 96-70, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 452, known as the Panama Canal Act of 1979, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3601 of this title and Tables.

RECOMMENDATIONS BY PRESIDENT ON CHANGES TO  
PANAMA CANAL COMMISSION STRUCTURE

Pub. L. 102-484, div. C, title XXXV, §3522, Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2657, provided that:

“(a) REPORT.—The President shall conduct a study and, if warranted, develop a plan setting forth recommendations for such changes, if any, to the Panama Canal Commission for the operation of the Panama Canal during the period before the termination of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 as the President determines would facilitate and encourage the operation of the canal through an autonomous entity under the Government of Panama after the transfer of the canal on December 31, 1999, pursuant to the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 and related agreements. The President shall submit the study and, if warranted, plan to Congress, together with a legislative proposal containing any changes to existing law required to implement the plan, not later than one year after the date of the enactment of this Act [Oct. 23, 1992].

“(b) PREPARATION OF PLAN.—Recommendations to the President for purposes of the study and plan required by subsection (a) shall be prepared with the participation of a representative of each of the following:

“(1) The Secretary of State.

“(2) The Secretary of Defense.

“(3) The Secretary of the Treasury.

“(4) The Secretary of Commerce.

“(5) The Secretary of Transportation.

“(6) The Panama Canal Commission.

“(c) PLAN TO BE CONSISTENT WITH PANAMA CANAL TREATY.—The study and, if warranted, plan submitted by the President pursuant to subsection (a) shall be consistent with the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 and related agreements.”

REPORT BY COMPTROLLER GENERAL ON CHANGES TO PANAMA CANAL COMMISSION STRUCTURE

Pub. L. 102-484, div. C, title XXXV, § 3523, Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2658, provided that:

“(a) REPORT.—The Comptroller General shall submit to Congress a report analyzing the effectiveness of the fiscal, operational, and management structure of the Panama Canal Commission and setting forth recommendations for such changes to that structure as the Comptroller General determines would, if implemented, enable the Commission to operate more efficiently and, thereby, serve as a model for the Government of Panama for the operation of the Panama Canal after the transfer of the Panama Canal on December 31, 1999, pursuant to the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 and related agreements. The Comptroller General shall submit the report to Congress not later than one year after the date of the enactment of this Act [Oct. 23, 1992].

“(b) PREPARATION OF REPORT.—In developing the report required by subsection (a), the Comptroller General shall seek the views of each of the following:

“(1) The Secretary of State.

“(2) The Secretary of Defense.

“(3) The Secretary of the Treasury.

“(4) The Secretary of Commerce.

“(5) The Secretary of Transportation.

“(6) The Panama Canal Commission.

“(c) REPORT TO BE CONSISTENT WITH PANAMA CANAL TREATY.—The recommendations in the report submitted by the Comptroller General pursuant to subsection (a) shall be consistent with the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 and related agreements.”

### § 3612. Supervisory Board

#### (a) Composition of Board

The Commission shall be supervised by a Board composed of nine members, one of whom shall be the Secretary of Defense or an officer of the Department of Defense designated by the Secretary. Not less than five members of the Board shall be nationals of the United States and the remaining members shall be nationals of the Republic of Panama. At least one of the members of the Board who are nationals of the United States shall be experienced and knowledgeable in the management or operation of an American-flag steamship line which has or had ships regularly transiting the Panama Canal, at least one other such member shall be experienced and knowledgeable in United States port operations or in the business of exporting or importing one of the regular commodities dependent on the Panama Canal as a transportation route, and at least one other such member shall be experienced and knowledgeable in labor matters in the United States. Three members of the Board shall hold no other office in or be employed by the Government of the United States. Members of the Board who are nationals of the United States shall cast their votes as directed by the Secretary of Defense or his designee.

#### (b) Membership of Board; appointing authority; compensation and travel expenses; compensation for non-Government Board members

The President shall appoint the members of the Board. The members of the Board who are

United States nationals shall be appointed by and with the advice and consent of the Senate. Each member of the Board shall hold office at the pleasure of the President and, before assuming the duties of such office, shall take an oath to discharge faithfully the duties of his office. Members of the Board shall serve without compensation but shall be allowed travel or transportation expenses, including per diem in lieu of subsistence, in accordance with section 3617 of this title, except that, in addition to such travel or transportation expenses, members of the Board who hold no other office with either the Government of the United States or the Republic of Panama for which they receive pay are authorized to be compensated at the daily equivalent of the annual rate of basic pay in effect for level V of the Executive Schedule under section 5316 of title 5, for each day during which they are traveling to or from or attending meetings of the Board as provided in subsection (c) of this section or, as authorized by the Chairman of the Board, while on official Panama Canal Commission business.

#### (c) Meetings; quorum; proxies

The Board shall hold meetings as provided in the regulations adopted by the Commission and approved by the Secretary of Defense. A quorum for the transaction of business shall consist of a majority of the Board members of which a majority of those present are nationals of the United States. The Secretary of Defense, or the officer of the Department of Defense designated by the Secretary under subsection (a) of this section, may act by proxy for any other member of the Board if that other member authorizes the proxy in writing and signs the proxy. The proxy may be counted to establish a quorum and may be used by the Secretary of Defense, or the officer of the Department of Defense designated by the Secretary under subsection (a) of this section, to cast the vote of the absent Board member and to act for that member with all the powers that member would possess if present.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, § 1102, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 456; Pub. L. 98-217, Feb. 14, 1984, 98 Stat. 9; Pub. L. 99-223, § 6, Dec. 28, 1985, 99 Stat. 1740; Pub. L. 100-203, title V, § 5416, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1330-270; Pub. L. 100-705, § 7, Nov. 19, 1988, 102 Stat. 4686; Pub. L. 101-510, div. C, title XXXV, § 3504, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1846.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 101-510 substituted “level V of the Executive Schedule under section 5316” for “grade GS-18 of the General Schedule under section 5332”.

1988—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 100-705 struck out after third sentence “Only one proxy may be valid at any one time.”

1987—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 100-203 inserted before period at end “or, as authorized by the Chairman of the Board, while on official Panama Canal Commission business”.

1985—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 99-223 inserted provisions relating to compensation of members of the Board who hold no other office with either the Government of the United States or the Republic of Panama for which they receive pay.

1984—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 98-217 inserted provisions under which the Secretary of Defense or the officer of the Department of Defense designated by the Secretary may act by proxy for other members of the Board.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1988 AMENDMENT

Section 10 of Pub. L. 100-705 provided that: "This Act [enacting sections 3715 to 3715d of this title, amending this section and sections 3712 and 3731 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 3601 of this title] takes effect on October 1, 1988."

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Section 8 of Pub. L. 99-223 provided that: "Section 5 and section 6 of the Act [enacting section 3650 of this title and amending this section and sections 3647 and 3731 of this title] shall be effective as of October 1, 1985."

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 3611, 3714a of this title.

**§ 3613. Administrator**

There shall be an Administrator of the Commission, who shall be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, and shall hold office at the pleasure of the President.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1103, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 457.)

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3642 of this title.

**§ 3614. Deputy Administrator and Chief Engineer****(a) Appointment and prescription of duties by President**

There shall be a Deputy Administrator and a Chief Engineer of the Commission, both of whom shall be appointed by the President. The Deputy Administrator and the Chief Engineer shall perform such duties as may be prescribed by the President.

**(b) Compensation**

The Deputy Administrator and the Chief Engineer shall each be paid compensation at a rate of pay established by the President which does not exceed the rate of basic pay in effect for grade GS-18 of the General Schedule under section 5332 of title 5, and, if eligible, shall each be paid the overseas recruitment or retention differential provided for in section 3657 of this title.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1104, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 457; Pub. L. 101-510, div. C, title XXXV, §3505, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1846.)

## AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 101-510 inserted before period at end "and, if eligible, shall each be paid the overseas recruitment or retention differential provided for in section 3657 of this title".

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Authority of President under this section to fix the compensation of and to define authorities and duties of Deputy Administrator and Chief Engineer delegated to Secretary of Defense, see section 1-302 of Ex. Ord. No. 12215, May 27, 1980, 45 F.R. 36044, set out as a note under section 3601 of this title.

## REFERENCES IN OTHER LAWS TO GS-16, 17, OR 18 PAY RATES

References in laws to the rates of pay for GS-16, 17, or 18, or to maximum rates of pay under the General

Schedule, to be considered references to rates payable under specified sections of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, see section 529 [title I, §101(c)(1)] of Pub. L. 101-509, set out in a note under section 5376 of Title 5.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3642 of this title.

**§ 3615. Consultative Committee****(a) Designation and coordination**

The President shall designate, and the Secretary of State shall coordinate the participation of, representatives of the United States to the Consultative Committee to be established under paragraph 7 of Article III of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977.

**(b) Functions**

The Consultative Committee shall function as a diplomatic forum for the exchange of views between the United States and the Republic of Panama. The Committee shall advise the United States Government and the Government of the Republic of Panama on matters of policy affecting the operation of the Panama Canal. The Committee shall have no authority to direct the Commission or any other department or agency of the United States to initiate or withhold action.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1105, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 457.)

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3617 of this title.

**§ 3616. Joint Commission on the Environment****(a) Establishment; composition**

The United States and the Republic of Panama, in accordance with the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977, shall establish a Joint Commission on the Environment (hereinafter in this section referred to as the "Joint Commission") to be composed of not more than three representatives of the United States and three representatives of the Republic of Panama, or such other equivalent numbers of representatives as may be agreed upon by the Governments of the two countries. The United States members of the Joint Commission shall periodically review the implementation of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 with respect to its impact on the environment and shall, jointly with the representatives of the Government of Panama, make recommendations to the United States Government and the Government of the Republic of Panama with respect to ways to avoid or mitigate adverse environmental impacts resulting from actions taken pursuant to such Treaty.

**(b) Appointment; compensation and travel expenses**

Representatives of the United States on the Joint Commission shall be appointed by the President and shall serve at the pleasure of the President. Such representatives shall serve without compensation but shall be allowed travel or transportation expenses, including per diem in lieu of subsistence, in accordance with section 3617 of this title.

**(c) Protection of pay, seniority, or other rights or benefits of appointed or detailed Federal employees**

Any Federal employee subject to the civil service laws and regulations who is detailed to serve with, or appointed by, the United States representatives on the Joint Commission shall not lose any pay, seniority, or other rights or benefits by reason of such detail or appointment.

**(d) Compensation of necessary personnel**

The United States representatives on the Joint Commission may, to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriation Acts, appoint and fix the compensation of such personnel as the representatives of the United States on the Joint Commission may consider necessary for the participation of the United States on the Joint Commission.

**(e) Rules of procedure; establishment; approval**

The United States representatives on the Joint Commission may, in cooperation with the representatives of the Republic of Panama on the Joint Commission, establish rules of procedure to be used by the Joint Commission in conducting its affairs, subject to the approval of such rules by the Governments of the United States and the Republic of Panama.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1106, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 457.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The civil service laws, referred to in subsec. (c), are set forth in Title 5, Government Organization and Employees. See, particularly, section 3301 et seq. of Title 5.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3617 of this title.

**§ 3617. Travel expenses**

While away from their homes, regular places of business, or official stations in performance of services under this part, members of the Board of the Commission and the representatives of the United States on the Consultative Committee referred to in section 3615 of this title and on the Joint Commission on the Environment referred to in section 3616 of this title shall be allowed travel or transportation expenses, including per diem in lieu of subsistence, in the same manner as persons employed intermittently in Government service are allowed expenses under section 5703 of title 5.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1107, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 458.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 3612, 3616 of this title.

**§ 3618. Defense of Panama Canal**

In the event of an armed attack against the Panama Canal, or when, in the opinion of the President, conditions exist which threaten the security of the Canal, the Administrator of the Commission shall, upon the order of the President, comply with such directives as the United States military officer charged with the protec-

tion and defense of the Panama Canal may consider necessary in the exercise of his duties.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1108, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 458.)

**§ 3619. Joint sea level canal study**

**(a) Committee; appointment of representatives**

The President shall appoint the representatives of the United States to any joint committee or body with the Republic of Panama to study the possibility of a sea level canal in the Republic of Panama pursuant to Article XII of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977.

**(b) Transmittal of study to President of Senate and Speaker of House of Representatives**

Upon the completion of any joint study between the United States and the Republic of Panama concerning the feasibility of a sea level canal in the Republic of Panama pursuant to paragraph 1 of Article XII of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977, the text of the study shall be transmitted by the President to the President of the Senate and to the Speaker of the House of Representatives.

**(c) Congressional authorization respecting construction of sea level canal**

No construction of a sea level canal by the United States in the Republic of Panama shall be undertaken except with express congressional authorization after submission of the study by the President as provided in subsection (b) of this section.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1109, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 459.)

**§ 3620. Authority of Ambassador; independence of Commission regarding its Panama Canal responsibilities**

(a) The United States Ambassador to the Republic of Panama shall have full responsibility for the coordination of the transfer to the Republic of Panama of those functions that are to be assumed by the Republic of Panama pursuant to the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 and related agreements.

(b)(1) The Commission shall not be subject to the direction or supervision of the United States Chief of Mission in the Republic of Panama with respect to the responsibilities of the Commission for the operation, management, or maintenance of the Panama Canal, as established in this chapter or any other Act or in the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 and related agreements, except that the Commission shall keep the Ambassador fully and currently informed with respect to all activities and operations of the Commission.

(2) Except as provided in paragraph (1) of this subsection, section 2680a<sup>1</sup> of this title shall apply with respect to the activities of the Commission.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1110, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 459.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (b)(1), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 96-70, Sept. 27,

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

1979, 93 Stat. 452, known as the Panama Canal Act of 1979, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3601 of this title and Tables.

Section 2680a of this title, referred to in subsec. (b)(2), was repealed by Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2205(10), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2160. See section 3927 of this title.

### § 3621. Security legislation

It is the sense of the Congress that the best interests of the United States require that the President enter into negotiations with the Republic of Panama for the purpose of arranging for the stationing of United States military forces, after the termination of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977, in the area comprising the Canal Zone before October 1, 1979, and for the maintenance of installations and facilities, after the termination of such Treaty, for the use of United States military forces stationed in such area. The President shall report to the Congress in a timely manner the status of negotiations conducted pursuant to this section.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1111, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 459.)

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions vested in President by this section delegated to Secretary of State who shall perform such functions in coordination with Secretary of Defense, see section 1-401 of Ex. Ord. No. 12215, May 27, 1980, 45 F.R. 36044, set out as a note under section 3601 of this title.

### § 3622. Code of conduct for Commission personnel

#### (a) Oath; compliance with laws of United States regarding duties and responsibilities of Federal employees

Before assuming the duties of his office or employment, each member of the Board of the Commission and each officer and employee of the Commission shall take an oath to discharge faithfully the duties of his office or employment. All employees of the Commission shall be subject to the laws of the United States regarding duties and responsibilities of Federal employees.

#### (b) Adoption of code of conduct; time limit; contents

Not later than 60 days after all the members of the Board of the Commission have been appointed, the Board shall adopt a code of conduct applicable to the persons referred to in subsection (a) of this section. The code of conduct shall contain provisions substantially equivalent to those contained in part 735 of title 5 of the Code of Federal Regulations on October 1, 1979. The code of conduct shall, at a minimum, contain provisions substantially equivalent to the following provisions of law:

- (1) the provisions of chapter 11 of title 18, relating to bribery, graft, or conflicts of interest, as appropriate to the employees concerned;
- (2) section 7352 of title 5;
- (3) sections 207, 208, 285, 508, 641, 645, 1001, 1917, and 2071 of title 18;
- (4) section 1343, 1344, and 1349(b) of title 31;

(5) the Ethics in Government Act of 1978 (92 Stat. 1824), as amended; and

(6) those provisions of the laws and regulations of the Republic of Panama which are substantially equivalent to those of the United States set forth in this subsection.

#### (c) Investigations by Commission respecting violations; recommendations for suspension

The Commission shall investigate any allegations regarding the violation of the code of conduct adopted pursuant to subsection (b) of this section. The Commission may recommend that the President suspend from the performance of his duties any member of the Board of the Commission or any officer or employee of the Commission, pending judicial proceedings by appropriate authorities concerning such allegations.

#### (d) Measures to insure compliance with code of conduct

The President shall negotiate suitable arrangements with the Republic of Panama whereby each nation shall agree to take all measures within its legal authority to assure that members of the Board of the Commission comply with the code of conduct established pursuant to subsection (b) of this section. Without prejudice to such jurisdiction as the United States may have with respect to members of the Board, the provisions of law enumerated in subsection (b) of this section shall be enforced with respect to members of the Board only in accordance with such arrangements.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1112, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 459.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Ethics in Government Act of 1978 (92 Stat. 1824), as amended, referred to in subsec. (b)(5), is Pub. L. 95-521, Oct. 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 1824, as amended. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 101 of Pub. L. 95-521 in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, and Tables.

#### CODIFICATION

In subsec. (b)(4), "sections 1343, 1344, and 1349(b) of title 31" substituted for "section 5 of the Act of July 16, 1914 (31 U.S.C. 638a), as amended" on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, §4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions vested in President by subsec. (d) of this section delegated to Secretary of State, see section 1-402 of Ex. Ord. No. 12215, May 27, 1980, 45 F.R. 36044, set out as a note under section 3601 of this title.

### § 3623. Office of Ombudsman

#### (a) Establishment; appointment of Ombudsman; functions

There is established within the Commission an Office of Ombudsman, to be directed by an Ombudsman, who shall be appointed by the Commission. It shall be the function of the Office of Ombudsman to receive individual complaints, grievances, requests, and suggestions of employees (and their dependents) of the Commission and other departments and agencies of the United States, including the Smithsonian Institution, conducting operations before October 1,

1979, in the area then comprising the Canal Zone concerning administrative problems, inefficiencies, and conflicts caused within departments and agencies of the United States, including the Smithsonian Institution, as a result of the implementation of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 and related agreements.

**(b) Authority to make findings, render assistance, and offer recommendations**

The Ombudsman shall make findings and render assistance with respect to the complaints, grievances, requests, and suggestions submitted to the Office of Ombudsman, and shall make appropriate recommendations to the Commission or any other department or agency of the United States, including the Smithsonian Institution.

**(c) Effect on procedures for grievances, appeals, or administrative matters under this chapter, in other provisions of law, or in Federal regulations**

The establishment of the Office of Ombudsman shall not affect any procedures for grievances, appeals, or administrative matters in any other provision of this chapter, any other provision of law, or any Federal regulation.

**(d) Citizenship requirement**

The Ombudsman shall be a citizen of the United States.

**(e) Termination date**

The Office of Ombudsman shall terminate upon the termination of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1113, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 460.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (c), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 96-70, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 452, known as the Panama Canal Act of 1979, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3601 of this title and Tables.

PART 2—EMPLOYEES

SUBPART I—PANAMA CANAL COMMISSION  
PERSONNEL

**§ 3641. Definitions**

As used in this part—

- (1) "Executive agency" has the meaning given that term in section 105 of title 5;
- (2) "uniformed services" has the meaning given that term in section 2101(3) of title 5;
- (3) "competitive service" has the meaning given that term in section 2102 of title 5; and
- (4) "United States", when used in a geographic sense, means each of the several States and the District of Columbia.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1201, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 461.)

EMPLOYMENT OF COMMISSION EMPLOYEES BY  
GOVERNMENT OF PANAMA

Pub. L. 103-160, div. C, title XXXV, §3504, Nov. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 1965, provided that:

"(a) CONSENT OF CONGRESS.—Subject to subsection (b), the Congress consents to employees of the Panama

Canal Commission who are not citizens of the United States accepting civil employment with agencies and organizations affiliated with the Government of Panama (and compensation for that employment) for which the consent of Congress is required by the 8th clause of section 9 of article I of the Constitution of the United States, relating to acceptance of emolument, office, or title from a foreign State.

"(b) CONDITION.—Employees described in subsection (a) may accept employment described in such subsection (and compensation for that employment) only if the employment is approved by the designated agency ethics official of the Panama Canal Commission designated pursuant to the Ethics in Government Act of 1978 (5 U.S.C. App.), and by the Administrator of the Panama Canal Commission."

**§ 3642. Appointment of personnel**

**(a) Compensation and duties of officers, agents, employees, etc.**

In accordance with this part, the Panama Canal Commission may appoint without regard to the provisions of title 5, relating to appointments in the competitive service, fix the compensation of, and define the authority and duties of, officers, agents, attorneys, and employees (other than the Administrator, Deputy Administrator, and Chief Engineer) necessary for the management, operation, and maintenance of the Panama Canal and its complementary works, installations, and equipment.

**(b) Eligibility to serve as officer or employee of Commission**

Individuals serving in any Executive agency (other than the Commission) or the Smithsonian Institution, including individuals serving in the uniformed services, may, if appointed under this section or section 3613 or 3614 of this title, serve as officers or employees of the Commission.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1202, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 461.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The provisions of title 5, relating to appointments in the competitive service, referred to in subsec. (a), are classified to section 3301 et seq. of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3652 of this title; title 5 sections 5373, 5948.

**§ 3643. Transfer of Federal employees**

**(a) Authority to enter into agreements; reemployment rights**

The head of any agency may enter into agreements for the transfer or detail to the Commission of any employee of that agency serving under a permanent appointment. Any employee who so transfers or is so detailed shall, upon completion of the employee's tour of duty with the Commission, be entitled to reemployment with the agency from which the employee was transferred or detailed without loss of pay, seniority, or other rights or benefits to which the employee would have been entitled had the employee not been so transferred or been so detailed.

**(b) "Agency" defined**

For purposes of this section, the term "agency" means an Executive agency, the United

States Postal Service, and the Smithsonian Institution.

**(c) Regulations**

The Office of Personnel Management shall prescribe regulations to carry out the purposes of this section.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1203, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 461.)

**§ 3644. Compensation of individuals in uniformed services**

**(a) Individual serving in a position in Commission**

Except as provided in subsection (b) of this section, any individual who is serving in a position in the Commission and who is a member of a uniformed service shall continue to be paid basic pay by such uniformed service and shall not be paid by the Commission for the period of the service in the uniformed service involved.

**(b) Individual appointed as Administrator, Deputy Administrator, or Chief Engineer**

If the individual appointed as Administrator, Deputy Administrator, or Chief Engineer of the Commission is a member of a uniformed service, the amount of basic pay otherwise payable to the individual for service in that position shall be reduced, up to the amount of that basic pay, by the amount of the basic pay payable to the individual as a member of a uniformed service.

**(c) Reimbursement to uniformed service**

The Commission shall annually pay to each uniformed service amounts sufficient to reimburse that uniformed service for any basic pay paid by that uniformed service to any member of that service during any period of service in the Commission by the member.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1204, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 461.)

**§ 3645. Deduction from basic pay of amounts due for supplies or services**

The Commission may deduct from the basic pay otherwise payable by the Commission to any officer or employee of the Commission any amount due from the officer or employee to the Commission or to any contractor of the Commission for transportation, board, supplies, or any other service. Any amount so deducted may be paid by the Commission to any contractor to whom it is due or may be credited by the Commission to any appropriation from which the Commission has expended such amount.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1205, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 462.)

**§ 3646. Cost of living allowance**

Effective beginning October 1, 1984, each officer and employee of the Commission who is a citizen of the United States and was employed by the Panama Canal Company or the Canal Zone Government on September 30, 1979, or who is an individual of any nationality recruited outside the Republic of Panama after September 30, 1979, may be paid an allowance to offset any increased cost of living which may result from

the termination of the eligibility of the officer or employee and his dependents to use military postal services, sales stores, and exchanges. The amount of the allowance may be determined by the Commission.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1206, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 462.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 3650, 3691 of this title.

**§ 3647. Educational travel benefits**

(a) The Commission shall provide by regulation for round-trip transportation between the Republic of Panama and the United States or, in the case of an employee described in paragraph (2) of this subsection, between the Republic of Panama and the country in which such employee is recruited, for undergraduate college education for dependents of employees of the Commission who—

(1) are United States citizens who were employed by the Panama Canal Company or the Canal Zone Government on September 30, 1979, or

(2) are recruited outside the Republic of Panama after that date.

(b) The regulations prescribed by the Commission under this section shall—

(1) provide eligibility requirements which must be met by such dependents to qualify for transportation under this section, including a requirement that all eligible dependents must be under 23 years of age; and

(2) limit the transportation provided to two round trips during any one-year period.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1207, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 462; Pub. L. 99-223, §5(a), Dec. 28, 1985, 99 Stat. 1739.)

AMENDMENTS

1985—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 99-223 substituted “two round trips” for “one round trip”.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-223 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 8 of Pub. L. 99-223, set out as a note under section 3612 of this title.

**§ 3648. Privileges and immunities of certain employees**

The Secretary of Defense shall designate those officers and employees of the Commission and other individuals entitled to the privileges and immunities accorded under paragraph 3 of Article VIII of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977. The Department of State shall furnish to the Republic of Panama a list of the names of such officers, employees, and other individuals and shall notify the Republic of Panama of any subsequent additions to or deletions from the list.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1208, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 463.)

**§ 3649. Inapplicability of certain benefits to certain noncitizens**

Chapter 81 of title 5, relating to compensation for work injuries, chapter 83 of such title 5, re-

lating to civil service retirement, chapter 87 of such title 5, relating to life insurance, and chapter 89 of such title 5, relating to health insurance, are inapplicable to any individual—

- (1) who is not a citizen of the United States;
- (2) whose initial appointment by the Commission occurs after October 1, 1979; and
- (3) who is covered by the Social Security System of the Republic of Panama pursuant to any provision of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 and related agreements.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1209(a), Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 463.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section 1209(b), (c) of Pub. L. 96-70 amended sections 8701 and 8901 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

### § 3650. Travel and transportation expenses

The Commission may pay the expenses of vacation leave travel for an employee of the Commission to whom section 3646 of this title applies and for transportation of employee's family from the employee's post of duty in Panama to the place of the employee's actual residence at the time of appointment to the post of duty. The authorization of expenses under this section shall be in accordance with subchapter II of chapter 57 of title 5 and the regulations issued under that subchapter, except that the Commission may prescribe required periods of service notwithstanding section 5722 of title 5 and the regulations issued under subchapter II of chapter 57 of such title.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1210, as added Pub. L. 99-223, §5(b)(1), Dec. 28, 1985, 99 Stat. 1739.)

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 8 of Pub. L. 99-223, set out as an Effective Date of 1985 Amendment note under section 3612 of this title.

#### SUBPART II—WAGE AND EMPLOYMENT PRACTICES

### § 3651. Definitions

As used in this subpart—

- (1) "agency" means—
  - (A) the Commission, and
  - (B) an Executive agency or the Smithsonian Institution, to the extent of any election in effect under section 3652(b)(2) of this title;
- (2) "position" means a civilian position in the Commission, or in any other agency if a substantial portion of the duties and responsibilities are performed in the Republic of Panama; and
- (3) "employee" means an individual serving in a position.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1211, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 463.)

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3657a of this title.

### § 3652. Panama Canal Employment System

#### (a) Establishment; merit and other employment requirements

After considering any recommendations of the Commission, the President shall establish a

Panama Canal Employment System. The Panama Canal Employment System shall—

- (1) be established in accordance with and be subject to the provisions of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 and related agreements, the provisions of this part, and any other applicable provision of law;
- (2) be based on the consideration of the merit of each employee or candidate for employment and the qualifications and fitness of the employee to hold the position concerned;
- (3) conform, to the extent practicable and consistent with the provisions of this chapter, to the policies, principles, and standards applicable to the competitive service; and
- (4) in the case of employees who are citizens of the United States, provide for the appropriate interchange of those employees between positions under the Panama Canal Employment System and positions in the competitive service.

#### (b) Applicability to Commission, any Executive agency, and Smithsonian Institution

(1) The Commission, and any Executive agency and the Smithsonian Institution to the extent of any election under paragraph (2) of this subsection, shall conduct their employment and pay practices relating to employees in accordance with the Panama Canal Employment System and regulations prescribed by, or under the authority of, the President in accordance with this subpart.

(2) The head of any Executive agency and the Smithsonian Institution may elect to have the Panama Canal Employment System made applicable in whole or in part to personnel of that agency in the Republic of Panama.

#### (c) Amendment or modification by President

Subject to the provisions of this part, the President may, from time to time and after considering any recommendation of the Commission, amend or modify any provision of the Panama Canal Employment System, including any provision relating to selection for appointment, reappointment, reinstatement, reemployment, and retention, with respect to positions, employees, and candidates for employment.

#### (d) Exclusion or inclusion respecting coverage of certain employees

The President may, to the extent the President determines appropriate—

- (1) exclude any employee or position from coverage under any provision of this subpart; and
- (2) notwithstanding section 3642 of this title, extend to any employee, whether or not the employee is a citizen of the United States, the rights and privileges which are provided by applicable laws and regulations for citizens of the United States employed in the competitive service.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1212, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 464.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a)(3), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 96-70, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 452, known as the Panama Canal Act of 1979, which is classified principally to this chapter. For



complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3601 of this title and Tables.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions vested in President pursuant to this section delegated to Secretary of Defense, see sections 1-102 and 1-308 of Ex. Ord. No. 12215, May 27, 1980, 45 F.R. 36044, set out as a note under section 3601 of this title.

#### COORDINATION OF PAY AND EMPLOYMENT PRACTICES

For provisions requiring consultations with the Secretary of Defense for agencies under this subpart with respect to the establishment of rates of pay and other matters deemed appropriate by the Secretary in order to develop compatible or unified systems of basic pay and employment practices, see section 1-201 of Ex. Ord. No. 12215, May 27, 1980, 45 F.R. 36043, set out as a note under section 3601 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 3651, 3654, 3657a of this title; title 5 section 5102.

### § 3653. Employment standards

The head of each agency shall establish written standards for—

- (1) determining the qualifications and fitness of employees and of candidates for employment in positions; and
- (2) selecting individuals for appointment, promotion, or transfer to positions.

The standards shall conform to the provisions of this subpart, any regulations prescribed thereunder, and the Panama Canal Employment System.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1213, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 464.)

#### COORDINATION OF PAY AND EMPLOYMENT PRACTICES

For provisions requiring consultations with the Secretary of Defense for agencies under this subpart with respect to the establishment of rates of pay and other matters deemed appropriate by the Secretary in order to develop compatible or unified systems of basic pay and employment practices, see section 1-201 of Ex. Ord. No. 12215, May 27, 1980, 45 F.R. 36043, set out as a note under section 3601 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3656 of this title.

### § 3654. Interim application of Canal Zone Merit System

Notwithstanding any repeal made by this chapter or any provision of this part, the provisions of subchapter III of chapter 7 of title 2 of the Canal Zone Code establishing the Canal Zone Merit System, together with the regulations prescribed thereunder, as in effect on September 30, 1979, shall continue in effect and shall apply with respect to employees until the Panama Canal Employment System is established and in effect pursuant to section 3652 of this title.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1214, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 465.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 96-70, Sept. 27, 1979, 93

Stat. 452, known as the Panama Canal Act of 1979, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3601 of this title and Tables.

### § 3655. Basic pay

#### (a) Establishment and revision of rates

The head of each agency, in accordance with the provisions of this subpart, shall establish, and from time to time may revise, the rates of basic pay for positions and employees in the agency.

#### (b) Relationship of same or similar work performed in United States or certain other areas outside United States

The rates of basic pay may be established and revised in relation to the rates of basic pay for the same or similar work performed in the United States or in such areas outside the United States as may be designated in the regulations prescribed under section 3663 of this title.

#### (c) Adjustments in rates; limits

The head of each agency may make adjustments in rates of basic pay established under subsection (b) of this section in amounts not to exceed the amounts of the adjustments made from time to time by or under statute in the corresponding rates of basic pay for the same or similar work referred to in such subsection (b) of this section. The head of the agency may designate the effective date of any such adjustment, except that that date may not be earlier than the effective date of the adjustment in the corresponding rate of basic pay.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1215, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 465.)

#### ADOPTION OF BASIC PAY SCHEDULE AND REGULATIONS GOVERNING OTHER MATTERS RELATING TO PAY AND EMPLOYMENT PRACTICES

For provisions requiring that the head of each agency adopt a schedule of basic pay pursuant to this section and adopt regulations governing other matters relating to pay and employment practices, upon the approval of the Secretary of Defense, see section 1-202 of Ex. Ord. No. 12215, May 27, 1980, 45 F.R. 36043, set out as a note under section 3601 of this title.

#### COORDINATION OF PAY AND EMPLOYMENT PRACTICES

For provisions requiring consultations with the Secretary of Defense for agencies under this subpart with respect to the establishment of rates of pay and other matters deemed appropriate by the Secretary in order to develop compatible or unified systems of basic pay and employment practices, see section 1-201 of Ex. Ord. No. 12215, May 27, 1980, 45 F.R. 36043, set out as a note under section 3601 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 3656, 3658, 3659 of this title.

### § 3656. Uniform application of standards and rates

The standards established pursuant to section 3653 of this title and the rates of basic pay established pursuant to section 3655 of this title shall be applied without regard to whether the employee or individual concerned is a citizen of the

United States or a citizen of the Republic of Panama.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1216, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 465.)

**§ 3657. Recruitment and retention remuneration**

**(a) Determination by head of agency**

In addition to basic pay, additional compensation may be paid, in such amounts as the head of the agency concerned determines, as an overseas recruitment or retention differential to any individual who—

(1) before October 1, 1979, was employed by the Panama Canal Company, by the Canal Zone Government, or by any other agency in the area then known as the Canal Zone;

(2) is an employee who was recruited on or after October 1, 1979, outside of the Republic of Panama for placement in the Republic of Panama; or

(3) is a medical doctor employed by the Department of Defense in the Republic of Panama or by the Commission;

if, in the judgment of the head of the agency concerned, the recruitment or retention of the individual is essential.

**(b) Restriction**

Any employee described in more than one paragraph of subsection (a) of this section may qualify for a recruitment or retention differential under only one of those paragraphs.

**(c) Limit on compensation**

Additional compensation provided under this section may not exceed 25 percent of the rate of basic pay for the same or similar work performed in the United States by individuals employed by the Government of the United States.

**(d) Applicability of subchapter III of chapter 59 of title 5**

Subchapter III of chapter 59 of title 5, relating to overseas differentials and allowances, shall not apply with respect to any employee whose permanent duty station is in the Republic of Panama and who is employed by an agency.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1217, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 465.)

**COORDINATION OF PAY AND EMPLOYMENT PRACTICES**

For provisions requiring consultations with the Secretary of Defense for agencies under this subpart with respect to the establishment of rates of pay and other matters deemed appropriate by the Secretary in order to develop compatible or unified systems of basic pay and employment practices, see section 1-201 of Ex. Ord. No. 12215, May 27, 1980, 45 F.R. 36043, set out as a note under section 3601 of this title.

**SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS**

This section is referred to in sections 3614, 3658 of this title; title 5 section 5924.

**§ 3657a. Quarters allowances**

**(a) "Position" and "employee" defined**

Notwithstanding paragraphs (2) and (3) of section 3651 of this title, as used in this section—

(1) "position" means a civilian position; and

(2) "employee" means an individual serving in a position in the Department of Defense

whose permanent duty station is in the area which, before October 1, 1979, was known as the Canal Zone.

**(b) Covered employees**

Under regulations prescribed by or under authority of the President, the Department of Defense may grant a quarters allowance in the case of—

(1) any employee who is a citizen of the United States and who, before October 1, 1979, was employed by the Panama Canal Company, the Canal Zone Government, or any other agency, in the area then known as the Canal Zone; and

(2) any other employee who is a citizen of the United States and who (before, on, or after the effective date of this section) is or was recruited within the United States;

for whom adequate Government owned or leased quarters are not made available.

**(c) Determination of amount**

The amount of any quarters allowance granted to an employee under this section shall be determined in accordance with the regulations prescribed under subsection (b) of this section, except that such allowance for any period may not exceed the amount, if any, by which—

(1) the lesser of—

(A) the actual expenses for rent and utilities incurred by the employee during such period while occupying quarters other than Government owned or leased quarters; or

(B) the maximum amount which would be authorized for such employee with respect to such period under the Department of State Standardized Regulations (Government Civilians, Foreign Areas) if such employee were covered by those regulations;

exceeds

(2) the estimated total cost of rent and utilities which the employee would have been charged if Government owned or leased quarters had been provided on a rental basis during such period.

**(d) Inapplicability of election under section 3652(b) of this title**

The provisions of this section shall apply without regard to whether any election by the Department of Defense under section 3652(b) of this title is then in effect.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1217a, as added Pub. L. 98-600, §1(a), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 3145.)

**REFERENCES IN TEXT**

For effective date of this section, referred to in subsection (b)(2), see section 2 of Pub. L. 98-600, set out below.

**EFFECTIVE DATE**

Section 2 of Pub. L. 98-600 provided that: "The amendments made by this Act [enacting this section] shall take effect on October 1, 1984, and shall apply with respect to utility costs incurred, and rent payable for any period beginning, on or after that date."

**EX. ORD. NO. 12520. QUARTERS ALLOWANCE TO DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE EMPLOYEES IN PANAMA**

Ex. Ord. No. 12520, June 19, 1985, 50 F.R. 25683, provided:

By the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of

America, including section 1217a of the Panama Canal Act of 1979 (22 U.S.C. 3657a), it is hereby ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. The Secretary of Defense is authorized to prescribe the regulations referred to in section 1217a of the Panama Canal Act of 1979 [22 U.S.C. 3657a], relating to quarters allowances.

SEC. 2. The regulations prescribed under Section 1 shall be consistent with Article VII(4) of the Agreement in Implementation of Article IV of the Panama Canal Treaty and with all other relevant provisions of the Panama Canal Treaty and related agreements.

RONALD REAGAN.

#### § 3658. Benefits based on basic pay

For the purpose of determining—

- (1) amounts of compensation for disability or death under chapter 81 of title 5, relating to compensation for work injuries;
- (2) benefits under subchapter III of chapter 83 of title 5, relating to civil service retirement;
- (3) amounts of insurance under chapter 87 of title 5, relating to life insurance;
- (4) amounts of overtime pay or other premium pay;
- (5) annual leave benefits; and
- (6) any other benefits related to basic pay;

the basic pay of each employee shall include the rate of basic pay established for his position under section 3655 of this title plus the amount of any additional compensation provided under section 3657 of this title.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1218, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 466.)

#### COORDINATION OF PAY AND EMPLOYMENT PRACTICES

For provisions requiring consultations with the Secretary of Defense for agencies under this subpart with respect to the establishment of rates of pay and other matters deemed appropriate by the Secretary in order to develop compatible or unified systems of basic pay and employment practices, see section 1-201 of Ex. Ord. No. 12215, May 27, 1980, 45 F.R. 36043, set out as a note under section 3601 of this title.

#### § 3659. Salary protection upon conversion of pay base

(a) In the case of any employee whose rate of basic pay is determined in relation to rates of basic pay for the same or similar work in the United States and which is converted to a rate of basic pay pursuant to section 3655(b) of this title which is determined in relation to rates in areas other than the United States pursuant to such section 3655(b) of this title, the employee shall continue to receive a rate of basic pay not less than that to which the employee was entitled immediately before the conversion.

(b) This section shall cease to apply with respect to any employee if the employee is placed in a position—

- (1) for which the rate of basic pay is determined in relation to rates of basic pay in the United States pursuant to section 3655(b) of this title; or
- (2) which is of a lower grade.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1219, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 466.)

#### § 3660. Review and adjustment of classifications, grades, and pay level

An employee may request at any time that the employee's agency—

- (1) review the classification of the employee's position or the grade or pay level for the employee's position, or both; and
- (2) revise or adjust that classification, grade or pay level, or both, as the case may be.

The request for review and revision or adjustment shall be submitted and adjudicated in accordance with the regularly established appeals procedures of the agency.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1220, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 466.)

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3662 of this title.

#### § 3661. Panama Canal Board of Appeals; duties

(a) Subject to the provisions of this part, the President shall prescribe regulations establishing a Panama Canal Board of Appeals. The regulations shall provide for the number of members of the Board and their appointment, compensation, and terms of office, the selection of a Chairman of the Board, the appointment and compensation of the Board's employees, and other appropriate matters relating to the Board.

(b) The Board shall review and determine the appeals of employees in accordance with section 3662 of this title. The decisions of the Board shall conform to the provisions of this subpart.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1221, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 466.)

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions vested in President pursuant to this subpart delegated to Secretary of Defense, see section 1-308 of Ex. Ord. No. 12215, May 27, 1980, 45 F.R. 36044, set out as a note under section 3601 of this title.

#### § 3662. Appeals to Board; procedures

##### (a) Persons entitled to appeal; form; time

An employee may appeal to the Panama Canal Board of Appeals from an adverse determination made by an agency under section 3660 of this title. The appeal shall be made in writing within a reasonable time (as specified in regulations prescribed by, or under the authority of, the President) after the date of the transmittal by the agency to the employee of written notice of the adverse determination.

##### (b) Personal appearance

The Board may authorize, in connection with an appeal pursuant to subsection (a) of this section, a personal appearance before the Board by the employee, or by a representative of the employee designated for that purpose.

##### (c) Consideration of evidence; decision

After investigation and consideration of the evidence submitted, the Board shall—

- (1) prepare a written decision on the appeal;
- (2) transmit its decision to the agency concerned; and
- (3) transmit copies of the decision to the employee concerned or to the designated representative.

**(d) Finality of decision**

The decision of the Board on any question or other matter relating to an appeal is final and conclusive. The agency concerned shall take action in accordance with the decision of the Board.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1222, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 467.)

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3661 of this title.

**§ 3663. Administration by President****(a) Prescription of regulations**

The President shall prescribe regulations necessary and appropriate to carry out the provisions of this subpart and coordinate the policies and activities of agencies under this subpart.

**(b) Establishment of office; duties**

The President may establish an office within the Commission as the successor to the Canal Zone Central Examining Office. The purpose of the office shall be to assist the President in—

- (1) carrying out the President's coordination responsibility under subsection (a) of this section; and
- (2) implementing the provisions of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 and related agreements with respect to recruitment, examination, determination of qualification standards, and similar matters.

**(c) Delegation by President**

The President may delegate any authority vested in the President by this subpart and may provide for the redelegation of that authority.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1223, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 467.)

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Authority vested in President by subsec. (a) to coordinate the policies and activities of agencies delegated to Secretary of Defense and functions vested in President pursuant to this subpart delegated to Secretary of Defense, see sections 1-203 and 1-308 of Ex. Ord. No. 12215, May 27, 1980, 45 F.R. 36044, set out as a note under section 3601 of this title.

## COORDINATION OF PAY AND EMPLOYMENT PRACTICES

For provisions requiring consultations with the Secretary of Defense for agencies under this subpart with respect to the establishment of rates of pay and other matters deemed appropriate by the Secretary in order to develop compatible or unified systems of basic pay and employment practices, see section 1-201 of Ex. Ord. No. 12215, May 27, 1980, 45 F.R. 36043, set out as a note under section 3601 of this title.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3655 of this title.

**§ 3664. Applicability of certain laws**

This part does not affect the applicability of—

- (1) the provisions of title 5 which relate to preference eligibles;
- (2) the provisions of title 5 which relate to removal or suspension from the competitive service; and
- (3) the provisions of section 5544(a) of title 5 which relate to wage-board overtime and Sun-

day rates, with respect to classes of employees who were covered by those provisions on September 27, 1979.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1224, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 467.)

**§ 3665. Minimum level of pay; minimum annual increase**

(1) Effective October 1, 1979, each individual employed by an Executive agency or the Smithsonian Institution, whose permanent duty station is located within an area or installation in the Republic of Panama made available to the United States pursuant to the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 and related agreements, shall be paid basic pay at a rate of not less than \$2.90 an hour.

(2) Effective on October 1 of each succeeding calendar year, the rate of basic pay for each individual referred to in paragraph (1) of this section whose basic pay is not fixed in relation to rates of basic pay for the same or similar work performed in the United States shall be increased by an amount equal to not less than 2 percent of the rate of basic pay for that individual in effect immediately before that date.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1225(b), Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 468.)

## COORDINATION OF PAY AND EMPLOYMENT PRACTICES

For provisions requiring consultations with the Secretary of Defense for agencies under this subpart with respect to the establishment of rates of pay and other matters deemed appropriate by the Secretary in order to develop compatible or unified systems of basic pay and employment practices, see section 1-201 of Ex. Ord. No. 12215, May 27, 1980, 45 F.R. 36043, set out as a note under section 3601 of this title.

## SUBPART III—CONDITIONS OF EMPLOYMENT AND PLACEMENT

**§ 3671. Transferred or reemployed employees****(a) Terms and conditions of employment**

(1) With respect to any individual employed in the Panama Canal Company or the Canal Zone Government—

(A) who is transferred—

- (i) to a position in the Commission; or
- (ii) to a position in an Executive agency or in the Smithsonian Institution the permanent duty station of which is in the Republic of Panama (including the area known before October 1, 1979, as the Canal Zone); or

(B) who is separated by reason of a reduction in force on September 30, 1979, and is appointed to a position in the Commission before April 1, 1980;

the terms and conditions of employment set forth in paragraph (2) of this subsection shall be generally no less favorable, on or after the date of the transfer referred to in subparagraph (A) of this paragraph or the date of the appointment referred to in subparagraph (B) of this paragraph, as the case may be, than the terms and conditions of employment with the Panama Canal Company and Canal Zone Government on September 30, 1979, or, in the case of a transfer described in subparagraph (A)(ii) of this para-

graph which takes place before that date, on the date of the transfer.

(2) The terms and conditions of employment referred to in paragraph (1) of this subsection are the following:

- (A) rates of basic pay;
- (B) tropical differential;
- (C) premium pay and night differential;
- (D) reinstatement and restoration rights;
- (E) injury and death compensation benefits;
- (F) leave and travel;
- (G) transportation and repatriation benefits;
- (H) group health and life insurance;
- (I) reduction-in-force rights;
- (J) an employee grievance system, and the right to appeal adverse and disciplinary actions and position classification actions;
- (K) veterans' preference eligibility;
- (L) holidays;
- (M) saved pay provisions; and
- (N) severance pay benefits.

(3)(A) The provisions of this subsection shall take effect on September 27, 1979.

(B) No spending authority (as described in section 651(c)(2)(C) of title 2) provided for under this subsection shall take effect before October 1, 1979.

(C) Effective October 1, 1979, any individual who, but for subparagraph (B) of this paragraph, would have been entitled to one or more payments pursuant to this subsection for periods before October 1, 1979, shall be entitled, to the extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriation Acts, to a lump sum payment equal to the total amount of all such payments.

**(b) Break in service**

Any individual described in subsection (a)(1)(B) of this section who would have met the service requirement for early retirement benefits under section 8336(i) or 8339(d)(2) of title 5 (as amended by sections 1241(a) and 1242 of this Act, respectively), but for a break in service of more than 3 days immediately after September 30, 1979, shall be considered to meet that requirement. Any break in service by any such individual for purposes of section 8332 of such title 5 during the period beginning September 30, 1979, and ending on the date of the appointment referred to in such subsection (a)(1)(B) of this section shall be considered a period of creditable service under such section 8332 for such individual, except that such period shall not be taken into account for purposes of determining average pay (as defined in section 8331(4) of such title 5) and no deduction, contribution, or deposit shall be required for that period under section 8334 of such title 5.

**(c) Applicability of sections 903(c) and 904(a)(2) of title 20; sabbaticals**

(1) Section 903(c) of title 20 shall not apply with respect to any teacher who was employed by the Canal Zone Government school system on September 30, 1979, and who was transferred from such position to a teaching position which is under the Department of Defense Overseas Dependent School System and the permanent duty station of which is in the Republic of Panama, until the rates of basic compensation estab-

lished under section 903(c) of title 20 equal or exceed the rates of basic compensation then in effect for teachers who were so transferred.

(2) Section 904(a)(2) of title 20 shall not apply with respect to any teacher who was employed by the Canal Zone Government school system on September 30, 1979, and who was transferred from such position to a teaching position which is under the Department of Defense Overseas Dependent School System and the permanent duty station of which is in the Republic of Panama.

(3)(A) The head of a department or agency of the United States may grant a sabbatical to any teacher to whom paragraph (1) of this subsection applies for not to exceed 11 months in order to permit the teacher to engage in study or uncompensated work experience which is in the United States and which will contribute to the teacher's development and effectiveness. Basic compensation shall be paid to teachers on sabbatical under this section in the same manner and to the same extent as basic compensation would have been paid to teachers on sabbatical while employed in the Canal Zone Government school system on the day before October 1, 1979. A sabbatical shall not result in a loss of, or reduction in, leave to which the teacher is otherwise entitled, credit for time or service, or performance or efficiency rating. The head of the department or agency may authorize in accordance with chapter 57 of title 5 such travel expenses (including per diem allowance) as the head of the department or agency may determine to be essential for the study or experience.

(B) A sabbatical under this paragraph may not be granted to any teacher—

- (i) more than once in any 10-year period;
- (ii) unless the teacher has completed 7 years of service as a teacher; and
- (iii) if the teacher is eligible for voluntary retirement with a right to an immediate annuity.

(C)(i) Any teacher in a department or agency of the United States may be granted a sabbatical under this paragraph only if the teacher agrees, as a condition of accepting the sabbatical, to serve in the civil service upon the completion of the sabbatical for a period of two consecutive years.

(ii) Each agreement required under clause (i) of this subparagraph shall provide that in the event the teacher fails to carry out the agreement (except for good and sufficient reason as determined by the head of the department or agency that granted the sabbatical) the teacher shall be liable to the United States for payment of all expenses (including salary) of the sabbatical. The amount shall be treated as a debt due the United States.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, § 1231(a)-(c), Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 468, 469.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in subsec. (b), is Pub. L. 96-70, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 452, known as the Panama Canal Act of 1979, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3601 of this title and Tables.

## CODIFICATION

Section 1231(d) of Pub. L. 96-70 amended sections 5595, 5724a, and 8102 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3691 of this title; title 5 section 8348.

**§ 3672. Placement****(a) Citizens separated from employment with Panama Canal Company or Canal Zone Government**

Any citizen of the United States—

(1) who, on March 31, 1979, was an employee of the Panama Canal Company or the Canal Zone Government;

(2) who separates or is scheduled to separate on or after such date for any reason other than misconduct or delinquency; and

(3) who is not placed in another appropriate position in the Government of the United States in the Republic of Panama;

shall, upon the employee's request, be accorded appropriate assistance for placement in vacant positions in the Government of the United States in the United States.

**(b) Citizens eliminated from employment with Executive agency or Canal Zone Government as a result of implementation of Panama Canal Treaty of 1977**

Any citizen of the United States—

(1) who, on March 31, 1979, was employed in the Canal Zone as an employee of an Executive agency (other than the Panama Canal Company or the Canal Zone Government) or the Smithsonian Institution;

(2) whose position is eliminated as the result of the implementation of any provision of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 and related agreements; and

(3) who is not appointed to another appropriate position in the Government of the United States in the Republic of Panama;

shall, upon the employee's request, be accorded appropriate assistance for placement in vacant positions in the Government of the United States in the United States.

**(c) Establishment and administration of program by Office of Personnel Management**

The Office of Personnel Management shall establish and administer a Government-wide placement program for all eligible employees who request appointment to positions under this section.

**(d) Effective date**

The provisions of this section shall take effect on September 27, 1979.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1232, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 470.)

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3691 of this title.

## SUBPART IV—RETIREMENT

**§ 3681. Retirement under special treaty provisions****(a) Purchase of retirement equity; individuals entitled to participate**

(1) Subject to subsection (b) of this section, and under such regulations as the President may prescribe, the Secretary of the Treasury shall pay to the Social Security System of the Republic of Panama, out of funds deposited in the Treasury of the United States to the credit of the Civil Service Retirement and Disability Fund under section 8334(a)(2) of title 5, such sums of money as may be necessary to aid in the purchase of a retirement equity in such System for each individual who—

(A) meets the requirements of paragraph (2) of this subsection;

(B) is separated from employment in the Panama Canal Company, the Canal Zone Government, or the Commission by reason of the implementation of any provision of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 and related agreements; and

(C) becomes employed in a position covered by the Social Security System of the Republic of Panama through the transfer of a function or activity to the Republic of Panama from the United States or through a job placement assistance program.

(2) This subsection applies with respect to any individual only if the individual—

(A) has been credited with at least 5 years of civilian service under section 8332 of title 5, relating to creditable service for purposes of civil service retirement;

(B) is not eligible for an immediate retirement annuity under chapter 83 of title 5, relating to civil service retirement, and elects not to receive a deferred annuity under that chapter based on any portion of that service, and

(C) elects to withdraw from the Civil Service Retirement and Disability Fund the individual's entire lump-sum credit (as defined in section 8331(8) of title 5) and to transfer that amount to the Social Security System of the Republic of Panama pursuant to the special regime referred to in paragraph 3 of Article VIII of the Agreement in Implementation of Article III of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977.

**(b) Limitation on amount paid to Social Security System of Republic of Panama**

The amount paid to the Social Security System of the Republic of Panama with respect to any individual under subsection (a) of this section shall not exceed the individual's entire lump-sum credit (as so defined).

**(c) Purchase of nontransferable deferred annuity; employees entitled to participate**

(1) Pursuant to paragraph 2(b) of Annex C to the Agreement in Implementation of Article IV of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977, the President, or the President's designee, shall purchase from a source determined by the President to be appropriate, in accordance with such regulations as the President or the President's designee may prescribe, and to such extent or in such amounts as may be provided in advance in

appropriation Acts, a nontransferable deferred annuity for the benefit of each employee of an agency or instrumentality of the Government of the United States in the Republic of Panama—

(A) who is not a citizen of the United States;

(B) who was employed on October 1, 1979, and during any period before that date by an agency or instrumentality of the Government of the United States at any permanent duty station in the Republic of Panama (including, with respect to employment before that date, the area then known as the Canal Zone);

(C) who, for any period of service with such agency or instrumentality before October 1, 1979, at any such permanent duty station was not covered, by reason of that service, by the United States Civil Service Retirement system or any other Federal retirement system providing benefits similar to those retirement benefits provided by the Social Security System of the Republic of Panama; and

(D) who, on October 1, 1979, is under a Federal retirement system and, on or before that date, has accrued in one or more agencies or instrumentalities of the United States a total of 5 years or more of service which—

(i) is creditable toward any Federal retirement system as in effect on October 1, 1979;

(ii) would have been creditable toward any such retirement system if the retirement system were in effect at the time of the service accrued by the employee; or

(iii) consists of any combination of service described in clauses (i) and (ii) of this subparagraph.

(2) The retirement annuity referred to in paragraph (1) of this subsection with respect to any employee will cover retroactivity,<sup>1</sup> from October 1, 1979, all periods of service, described in subparagraph (D) of that paragraph, by that employee at any permanent duty station in the Republic of Panama (including the area known before that date as the Canal Zone) in agencies and instrumentalities of the Government of the United States during which that employee was not covered by the United States Civil Service Retirement System or any other Federal retirement system providing benefits similar to those retirement benefits provided by the Social Security System of the Republic of Panama.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1243, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 473.)

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions vested in President by subsec. (a)(1) delegated to Director of Office of Personnel Management and function vested in President by subsec. (c)(1) of this section delegated to Secretary of Defense, see sections 1-105 and 1-403 of Ex. Ord. No. 12215, May 27, 1980, 45 F.R. 36043, 36045, set out as a note under section 3601 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 5 section 8348.

### § 3682. Cash relief to certain former employees

#### (a) Continuation of cash relief payments to employees under Act of July 8, 1937

The Commission, under the regulations prescribed by the President pursuant to the Act en-

titled "An Act authorizing cash relief for certain employees of the Panama Canal not coming within the provisions of the Canal Zone Retirement Act", approved July 8, 1937, as amended (50 Stat. 478; 68 Stat. 17), may continue the payments of cash relief to those individual former employees of the Canal Zone Government or Panama Canal Company or their predecessor agencies not coming within the scope of the former Canal Zone Retirement Act whose services were terminated prior to October 5, 1958, because of unfitness for further useful service by reason of mental or physical disability resulting from age or disease. Subject to subsection (b) of this section, that cash relief may not exceed \$1.50 per month for each year of service of the employees so furnished relief, with a maximum of \$45 per month, plus the amount of any cost-of-living increases in such cash relief granted before October 1, 1979, pursuant to section 181 of title 2 of the Canal Zone Code (as in effect on September 30, 1979), nor be paid to any employee who, at the time of termination for disability prior to October 5, 1958, had less than 10 years' service with the Canal Zone Government, the Panama Canal Company, or their predecessor agencies on the Isthmus of Panama.

#### (b) Additional amounts for relief under subsection (a)

An additional amount of \$20 per month shall be paid to each person who receives payment of cash relief under subsection (a) of this section and shall be allowed without regard to the limitations contained therein.

#### (c) Increases in cash relief payments

Each cash relief payment made pursuant to this section shall be increased on the same effective date and by the same percent, adjusted to the nearest dollar, as civil service retirement annuities are increased under the cost-of-living adjustment provisions of section 8340(b) of title 5. Such increase shall apply only to cash relief payments made after October 1, 1979, as increased by annuity increases made after that date under such section 8340(b) of title 5.

#### (d) Cash relief payments to widows

The Commission may pay cash relief to the widow of any former employee of the Canal Zone Government or the Panama Canal Company who, until the time of his death, receives or has received cash relief under subsection (a) of this section, under section 181 of title 2 of the Canal Zone Code (as in effect on September 30, 1979), or under the Act of July 8, 1937, referred to in such subsection (a) of this section. The term "widow" as used in this subsection includes only the following:

(1) a woman legally married to such employee at the time of his termination for disability and at his death;

(2) a woman who, although not legally married to such former employee at the time of his termination, had resided continuously with him for at least five years immediately preceding the employee's termination under such circumstances as would at common law make the relationship a valid marriage and who continued to reside with him until his death; and

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be "retroactively,".

(3) a woman who has not remarried or assumed a common-law relationship with any other person.

Cash relief granted to such a widow shall not at any time exceed 50 percent of the rate at which cash relief, inclusive of any additional payment under subsection (b) of this section, would be payable to the former employee were he then alive.

**(e) Applicability of subchapter III of chapter 83 of title 5**

Subchapter III of chapter 83 of title 5 applies with respect to those individuals who were in the service of the Canal Zone Government or the Panama Canal Company on October 5, 1958, and who, except for the operation of section 13(a)(1) of the Act entitled "An Act to implement item 1 of a Memorandum of Understanding attached to the treaty of January 25, 1955, entered into by the Government of the United States of America and the Government of the Republic of Panama with respect to wage and employment practices of the Government of the United States of America in the Canal Zone", approved July 25, 1958 (72 Stat. 405), would have been within the classes of individuals subject to the Act of July 8, 1937, referred to in subsection (a) of this section.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1245, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 475.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The reference to the Act of July 8, 1937, in subsecs. (a), (d), and (e), is act July 8, 1937, ch. 443, 50 Stat. 478, as amended, which was classified to section 1372 of Title 48, Territories and Insular Possessions. See section 181 of Title 2 of the Canal Zone Code.

Section 13(a)(1) of Act July 25, 1958, referred to in subsec. (e), probably means section 13(a) of Pub. L. 85-550, July 25, 1958, 72 Stat. 405, as amended, which is set out as a note under section 8331 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

**§ 3683. Appliances for employees injured before September 7, 1916**

Artificial limbs or other appliances may be purchased by the Commission, out of any funds available to the Commission, for persons who were injured in the service of the Isthmian Canal Commission or of the Panama Canal before September 7, 1916.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1246, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 476; Pub. L. 100-203, title V, §5428(a), Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1330-274.)

AMENDMENTS

1987—Pub. L. 100-203 substituted "available" for "appropriated".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1987 AMENDMENT

Section 5429 of Pub. L. 100-203 provided that: "This part and the amendments made by this part [part 2 (§§5421-5429) of subtitle E of title V of Pub. L. 100-203, enacting section 3714 of this title, amending this section, sections 3711, 3712, 3713, 3751, 3753, 3754, 3792, and 3793 of this title, and section 8348 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 3601 of this title] take effect on January 1, 1988."

SUBPART V—APPLICATION TO RELATED PERSONNEL

**§ 3691. Individuals considered employees**

**(a) Individuals considered employees for purposes of certain sections**

For the purposes of sections 3646, 3671, and 3672 of this title, including any amendment made by sections 1231, 1241, and 1242 of this Act, the United States Attorney for the District of the Canal Zone and the Assistant United States Attorneys and their clerical assistants, and the United States Marshal for the District of the Canal Zone and his deputies and clerical assistants shall be considered employees of the Commission.

**(b) Individuals considered employees for certain purposes**

For the purposes of this Act, including any amendment made by this Act, the Executive Director of the Canal Zone Civilian Personnel Policy Coordinating Board, the Manager, Central Examining Office, and their staffs shall be considered to have been employees of the Panama Canal Company with respect to service in those positions before October 1, 1979, and as employees of the Commission with respect to service in those positions on or after that date.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1261(a), (b), Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 476.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 1231 of this Act, referred to in subsec. (a), amended sections 5595, 5724a, and 8102 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

Section 1241 of this Act, referred to in subsec. (a), amended section 8336 of Title 5 and enacted provisions set out as notes thereunder.

Section 1242 of this Act, referred to in subsec. (a), amended section 8339 of Title 5 and enacted provisions set out as notes thereunder.

This Act, referred to in subsec. (b), is Pub. L. 96-70, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 452, known as the Panama Canal Act of 1979, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3601 of this title and Tables.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 1261(c) of Pub. L. 96-70 provided that: "The provisions of this section [enacting this section] shall take effect on the date of the enactment of this Act [Sept. 27, 1979]."

SUBPART VI—LABOR-MANAGEMENT RELATIONS

**§ 3701. Labor-management relations**

(a) Nothing in this chapter shall be construed to affect the applicability of chapter 71 of title 5, relating to labor-management and employee relations, with respect to the Commission or the operations of any other Executive agency conducted in that area of the Republic of Panama which, on September 30, 1979, was the Canal Zone, except that in applying those provisions—

(1) the definition of "employee" shall be applied without regard to clause (i) of section 7103(a)(2) of such title 5 which relates to nationality and citizenship;

(2) a unit shall be considered to be appropriate notwithstanding the fact that it in-



cludes any supervisor if that supervisor's position (or type of position) was, before October 1, 1979, represented before the Panama Canal Company by a labor organization that included employees who were not supervisors; and

(3) any negotiated grievance procedures under section 7121 of title 5, including any provisions relating to binding arbitration, shall, with respect to any personnel action to which subchapter II of chapter 75 of such title applies (as determined under section 7512 of such title), be available to the same extent and in the same manner as if employees of the Panama Canal Commission were not excluded from such subchapter under section 7511(b)(8) of such title.

(b) Labor-management and employee relations of the Commission, other Executive agencies, and the Smithsonian Institution, their employees, and organizations of those employees, in connection with operations conducted in that area of the Republic of Panama which, on September 30, 1979, was the Canal Zone, shall be governed and regulated solely by the applicable laws, rules, and regulations of the United States.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1271, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 476; Pub. L. 103-160, div. C, title XXXV, §3505, Nov. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 1966.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 96-70, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 452, known as the Panama Canal Act of 1979, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3601 of this title and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1993—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 103-160 added par. (3).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Section 3506 of title XXXV of div. C of Pub. L. 103-160 provided that:

"(a) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in subsection (b), this title [amending this section and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 3641 of this title] shall take effect as of October 1, 1993.

"(b) SPECIAL RULE.—Paragraph (3) of section 1271(a) of the Panama Canal Act of 1979 (22 U.S.C. 3701(a)), as added by section 3505(3), shall take effect on the date of the enactment of this Act [Nov. 30, 1993] and shall apply with respect to grievances arising on or after such date."

### PART 3—FUNDS AND ACCOUNTS

#### SUBPART I—FUNDS

#### § 3711. Canal Zone Government funds

On October 1, 1979, any unexpended balances of the appropriation accounts appearing on the books of the United States Government as "Operating Expenses, Canal Zone Government (38-0116-0-1-806)" and "Capital Outlay, Canal Zone Government (38-0118-0-1-806)" shall be covered into the general fund of the Treasury, and any appropriations to which expenditures under such accounts have been chargeable before October 1, 1979, are repealed. The Commission may,

to the extent of funds available to it, pay claims or make payments chargeable to such accounts, upon proper audit of such claims or payments.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1301, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 477; Pub. L. 100-203, title V, §5428(e), Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1330-274.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1987—Pub. L. 100-203 substituted "The Commission may, to the extent of funds available to it, pay claims or make payments chargeable to such accounts, upon proper audit of such claims or payments." for "The Commission may, to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in appropriation Acts to the Commission for such purpose, pay claims or make payments chargeable to such accounts, upon proper audit of such claims or payments. There are authorized to be appropriated to the Commission such funds as may be necessary to pay claims and make payments pursuant to this section."

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1987 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 100-203 effective Jan. 1, 1988, see section 5429 of Pub. L. 100-203, set out as a note under section 3683 of this title.

#### § 3712. Panama Canal Revolving Fund

##### (a) Termination of Panama Canal Commission Fund; unexpended balances covered into Panama Canal Revolving Fund

(1) There is established in the Treasury of the United States a revolving fund to be known as the "Panama Canal Revolving Fund". The Panama Canal Revolving Fund shall, subject to subsection (c) of this section, be available to the Commission to carry out the purposes, functions, and powers authorized by this chapter, including for—

(A) the hire of passenger motor vehicles and aircraft;

(B) uniforms or allowances therefor, as authorized by sections 5901 and 5902 of title 5;

(C) official receptions and representation expenses of the Board, the Secretary of the Commission, and the Administrator;

(D) the operation of guide services;

(E) a residence for the Administrator;

(F) disbursements by the Administrator for employee and community projects; and

(G) the procurement of expert and consultant services as provided in section 3109 of title 5.

(2) On January 1, 1988—

(A) the Panama Canal Commission Fund shall be terminated and the unappropriated balance, including undeposited receipts as of the close of business on the day before January 1, 1988, shall be transferred to the Panama Canal Revolving Fund;

(B) the unexpended balance of appropriations to the Commission, as of the close of business on the day before January 1, 1988, shall be transferred to the Panama Canal Revolving Fund, and such amounts, including amounts appropriated for capital expenditures, shall remain available until expended;

(C) the assets and liabilities recorded before January 1, 1988, under the "Panama Canal Commission Fund" shall be recorded under the Panama Canal Revolving Fund; and

(D) the Panama Canal Emergency Fund shall be terminated and the remaining balance

shall be transferred to the Panama Canal Revolving Fund.

**(b) Interest and nonreimbursed appropriations deposited into Treasury**

Upon completion of the transfers of funds under subsection (a) of this section—

(1) amounts attributable to interest on the investment of the United States in the Panama Canal which accrued before January 1, 1986, shall be transferred from the Panama Canal Revolving Fund to the general fund of the Treasury; and

(2) such amounts as were appropriated to the Commission in the fiscal year which ended September 30, 1980, and for which the Commission has not reimbursed the general fund of the Treasury, shall be transferred to the general fund of the Treasury.

**(c) Tolls and other receipts into Panama Canal Revolving Fund; restriction on use of funds**

(1) There shall be deposited in the Panama Canal Revolving Fund, on a continuing basis, toll receipts (other than amounts of toll receipts deposited into the Panama Canal Commission Dissolution Fund under section 3714a of this title) and all other receipts of the Commission. Except as provided in section 3713 of this title and subject to paragraph (2), no funds may be obligated or expended by the Commission in any fiscal year unless such obligation or expenditure has been specifically authorized by law.

(2) No funds may be obligated or expended by the Commission in any fiscal year for administrative expenses except to the extent or in such amounts as are provided in appropriations Acts.

(3) No funds may be authorized for the use of the Commission, or obligated or expended by the Commission in any fiscal year in excess of—

(A) the amount of revenues deposited in the Panama Canal Revolving Fund and the Panama Canal Dissolution Fund during such fiscal year, plus

(B) the amount of revenues deposited in the Panama Canal Revolving Fund before such fiscal year and remaining unexpended at the beginning of such fiscal year.

Not later than 30 days after the end of each fiscal year, the Secretary of the Treasury shall report to the Congress the amount of revenues deposited in the Panama Canal Revolving Fund during such fiscal year.

**(d) Authority of Commission to make deposits**

With the approval of the Secretary of the Treasury, the Commission may deposit amounts in the Panama Canal Revolving Fund in any Federal Reserve bank, any depository for public funds, or in such other places and in such manner as the Commission and the Secretary may agree.

**(e) Review of annual budget**

The Committee on Appropriations of each House of Congress shall review the annual budget of the Commission, including operations and capital expenditures.

**(f) Costs of implementation**

(1) It is the sense of the Congress that the additional costs resulting from implementation of

the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 and related agreements should be kept to the absolute minimum level. To this end, the Congress declares that the direct appropriated costs of implementation to be borne by the taxpayers over the life of such Treaty should be kept to a level no greater than the March 1979 estimate of those costs (\$870,700,000) presented to the Congress by the executive branch during consideration of this chapter by the Congress, less personnel retirement costs of \$205,000,000, which were subtracted and charged to tolls, therefore resulting in the net taxpayer cost of approximately \$665,700,000, plus appropriate adjustment for inflation.

(2) It is further the sense of the Congress that the actual costs of implementation be consistent with the obligations of the United States to operate the Panama Canal safely and efficiently and keep it secure.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1302, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 477; Pub. L. 99-195, §1(a), Dec. 23, 1985, 99 Stat. 1349; Pub. L. 100-203, title V, §5422(a), (b)(1), Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1330-271, 1330-272; Pub. L. 100-705, §9, Nov. 19, 1988, 102 Stat. 4687; Pub. L. 102-484, div. C, title XXXV, §3521(b)(1), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2657.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subssecs. (a)(1) and (f)(1), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 96-70, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 452, known as the Panama Canal Act of 1979 which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3601 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 102-484, §3521(b)(1)(A), inserted "(other than amounts of toll receipts deposited into the Panama Canal Commission Dissolution Fund under section 3714a of this title)" after "toll receipts".

Subsec. (c)(3)(A). Pub. L. 102-484, §3521(b)(1)(B), inserted "and the Panama Canal Dissolution Fund" after "Panama Canal Revolving Fund".

1988—Subsecs. (e), (f). Pub. L. 100-705 redesignated subsec. (e), relating to costs of implementation, as (f). 1987—Pub. L. 100-203, §5422(b)(1), substituted "Panama Canal Revolving Fund" for "Panama Canal Commission Fund" in section catchline.

Subsecs. (a) to (d). Pub. L. 100-203, §5422(a), added subssecs. (a) to (d) and struck out former subssecs. (a) to (d) which related to termination of Panama Canal Company Fund on Oct. 1, 1979, subsequent deposit of tolls and other receipts into Panama Canal Commission Fund, restriction on use of funds, and authority of the Commission to enter into contracts, respectively.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 100-203, §5422(a), added subsec. (e), directing Appropriations Committee of each House to review annual budget of the Commission.

1985—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 99-195 provided for deposit of interest receipts as miscellaneous receipts.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1988 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 100-705 effective Oct. 1, 1988, see section 10 of Pub. L. 100-705, set out as a note under section 3612 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1987 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 100-203 effective Jan. 1, 1988, see section 5429 of Pub. L. 100-203, set out as a note under section 3683 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Section 2 of Pub. L. 99-195 provided that: "The amendments made by this Act [amending this section

and section 3793 of this title] shall apply only to tolls and other receipts of the Commission deposited in the Treasury on or after the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 23, 1985].”

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 3713, 3751 of this title.

**§ 3712a. Authority to lease office space**

Notwithstanding section 490 of title 40, the Commission is authorized to negotiate directly and enter into contracts for the lease of, and for improvements to, real property in the United States for use by the Commission as office space, on such terms as the Commission considers to be in the interest of the United States, and to make direct payments therefor.

(Pub. L. 100-203, title V, § 5415, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1330-270.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1987, and not as part of the Panama Canal Act of 1979 which comprises this chapter.

**§ 3713. Panama Canal emergency authority**

If authorizing legislation described in section 3712(c)(1) of this title has not been enacted for a fiscal year, then the Commission may withdraw funds from the Panama Canal Revolving Fund in order to defray emergency expenses and to ensure the continuous, efficient, and safe operation of the Panama Canal, including expenses for capital projects. The authority of this section may not be used for administrative expenses. The authority of this section may be exercised only until authorizing legislation described in section 3712(c)(1) of this title is enacted, or for a period of 24 months after the end of the fiscal year for which such authorizing legislation was last enacted, whichever occurs first. Within 60 days after the end of any calendar quarter in which expenditures are made under this section, the Commission shall report such expenditures to the appropriate committees of the Congress.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, § 1303, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 478; Pub. L. 100-203, title V, § 5423(a), (b)(1), Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1330-273.)

AMENDMENTS

1987—Pub. L. 100-203 substituted “authority” for “Fund” in section catchline and amended text generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows:

“(a) On October 1, 1979, the Secretary of the Treasury shall establish and thereafter shall maintain in the Treasury a fund to be known as the ‘Panama Canal Emergency Fund’. There are authorized to be appropriated for deposit in such Fund (1) for the fiscal year beginning on October 1, 1979, \$40,000,000, and (2) for any fiscal year beginning on or after October 1, 1980, such additional sums as may be specifically authorized by law for such fiscal year.

“(b) The Commission may make withdrawals from the Panama Canal Emergency Fund by check in order to defray emergency expenses and to insure the continuous, efficient, and safe operation of the Panama Canal, if funds appropriated for the operation and maintenance of the Canal are insufficient for such purposes. Any withdrawal from such Fund to cover increased costs attributable to unprogrammed increases in traffic may not be made in amounts greater than the

revenues from such increased traffic. Such Fund shall not be available for payments to Panama under Article XIII of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977. Any withdrawal from such fund or expenditure made under this subsection shall be reported forthwith by the Commission to the Congress and to the Office of Management and Budget.”

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1987 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 100-203 effective Jan. 1, 1988, see section 5429 of Pub. L. 100-203, set out as a note under section 3683 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3712 of this title.

**§ 3714. Borrowing authority**

**(a) Limitation on amount; issuance of notes and other obligations**

The Panama Canal Commission may borrow from the Treasury, for any of the purposes of the Commission, not more than \$100,000,000 outstanding at any time. For this purpose, the Commission may issue to the Secretary of the Treasury its notes or other obligations—

(1) which shall have maturities (of not later than December 31, 1999) agreed upon by the Commission and the Secretary of the Treasury, and

(2) which may be redeemable at the option of the Commission before maturity.

**(b) Restrictions on use**

Amounts borrowed under this section shall not be available for payments to Panama under Article XIII of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977.

**(c) Effect on investment interest in Panama Canal**

Amounts borrowed under this section shall increase the investment of the United States in the Panama Canal, and repayment of such amounts shall decrease such investment.

**(d) Report to Congress**

The Commission shall report to the Congress and to the Office of Management and Budget on each exercise of borrowing authority under this section.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, § 1304, as added Pub. L. 100-203, title V, § 5424(a), Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1330-273.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Jan. 1, 1988, see section 5429 of Pub. L. 100-203, set out as an Effective Date of 1987 Amendment note under section 3683 of this title.

**§ 3714a. Dissolution of Commission**

**(a) Study and report**

(1) The Commission shall conduct a study of—

(A) the costs associated with the dissolution of the Commission, including the composition, location, and costs of the office authorized to be established under subsection (b) of this section; and

(B) costs and liabilities incurred or administered by the Commission that will not be paid before the date of that dissolution.

(2) The Commission shall submit to the Congress, by not later than September 30, 1996, a re-

port on the findings and conclusions of the study under this subsection. The report shall include an estimate of the period of time which may be required to close out the affairs of the Commission after the termination of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977.

**(b) Termination office**

The Commission shall during fiscal year 1998 establish an office to close out the affairs of the Commission that are still pending after the termination of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977.

**(c) Panama Canal Commission Dissolution Fund**

(1) There is established in the Treasury of the United States a fund to be known as the “Panama Canal Commission Dissolution Fund” (hereinafter in this section referred to as the “Fund”). The Fund shall be managed by the Commission until the termination of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 and by the office established under subsection (b) of this section thereafter.

(2)(A) Subject to paragraph (5), the Fund shall be available after September 30, 1998, to pay—

- (i) the costs of operating the office established under subsection (b) of this section; and
- (ii) the costs and liabilities associated with dissolution of the Commission, including such costs incurred or identified after the termination of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977.

(B) Payments from the Fund made during the period beginning on October 1, 1998, and ending with the termination of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 shall be subject to the approval of the Board provided for in section 3612 of this title.

(3) The Fund shall consist of—

(A) such amounts as may be deposited into the Fund by the Commission, from amounts collected as toll receipts, to pay the costs described in paragraph (2); and

(B) amounts credited to the Fund under paragraph (4).

(4)(A) The Secretary of the Treasury shall invest excess amounts in the Fund in public debt securities with maturities suitable to the needs of the Fund, as determined by the manager of the Fund.

(B) Securities invested under subparagraph (A) shall bear interest at rates determined by the Secretary of the Treasury, taking into consideration current market yields on outstanding marketable obligations of the United States of comparable maturity.

(C) Interest earned on securities invested under subparagraph (A) shall be credited to and form part of the Fund.

(5) Amounts in the Fund may not be obligated or expended in any fiscal year unless the obligation or expenditure is specifically authorized by law.

(6) The Fund shall terminate on October 1, 2004. Amounts in the Fund on that date shall be deposited in the general fund of the Treasury of the United States.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1305, as added Pub. L. 102-484, div. C, title XXXV, §3521(a), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2656.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 3712, 3792 of this title.

**§ 3715. Establishment of Compensation Fund**

There is established in the Treasury of the United States the Panama Canal Commission Compensation Fund (hereafter in this Act referred to as the “Fund”).

(Pub. L. 100-705, §2, Nov. 19, 1988, 102 Stat. 4685.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 100-705, Nov. 19, 1988, 102 Stat. 4685, known as the Panama Canal Commission Compensation Fund Act of 1988, which enacted sections 3715 to 3715d of this title, amended sections 3612, 3712, and 3731 of this title, and enacted provisions set out as notes under sections 3601 and 3612 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1988 Amendment note set out under section 3601 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Panama Canal Commission Compensation Fund Act of 1988, and not as part of the Panama Canal Act of 1979 which comprises this chapter.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1988, see section 10 of Pub. L. 100-705, set out as an Effective Date of 1988 Amendment note under section 3612 of this title.

**§ 3715a. Operation of Fund**

**(a) Deposits to Fund**

The Panama Canal Commission shall make deposits on a regular basis to the Fund, beginning on October 1, 1988, to accumulate an amount sufficient to defray the estimated total cost of liability for the workers’ compensation benefits and other payments payable under chapter 81 of title 5 for the disability or death of employees of the Panama Canal Commission or any of its predecessor agencies on account of injuries sustained on or before December 31, 1999, except for those claims arising before, on, or after October 1, 1988, for which the Secretary of Labor has assumed fiscal responsibility.

**(b) Calculation of amounts to be deposited**

The amounts deposited under subsection (a) of this section shall be based upon periodic actuarial studies conducted by experts or consultants whose services are procured by the Panama Canal Commission by contract. The amounts of such deposits shall take into consideration interest earnings in accordance with subsection (c) of this section and expected cost of living adjustments as provided in section 8146a of title 5, but not amounts payable by the Commission for continuation of pay pursuant to section 8118 of such title.

**(c) Investment of amounts in Fund**

The Secretary of the Treasury, upon the request of the Secretary of Labor, shall invest moneys in the Fund in public debt securities which shall bear interest at rates determined by the Secretary of the Treasury, taking into consideration the current average market yield on outstanding marketable obligations of the United States of comparable maturity. Such interest shall be credited to and form a part of the Fund.

(Pub. L. 100-705, §3, Nov. 19, 1988, 102 Stat. 4685.)

## CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Panama Canal Commission Compensation Fund Act of 1988, and not as part of the Panama Canal Act of 1979 which comprises this chapter.

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1988, see section 10 of Pub. L. 100-705, set out as an Effective Date of 1988 Amendment note under section 3612 of this title.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 3715b, 3715c of this title.

**§ 3715b. Transfers from Fund for compensation benefits**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall, upon request of the Secretary of Labor, transfer funds from the Fund to the Employees' Compensation Fund to reimburse the Employees' Compensation Fund for the total cost of workers' compensation benefits and other payments described in section 3715a(a) of this title that are provided on or after October 1, 1988.

(Pub. L. 100-705, §4, Nov. 19, 1988, 102 Stat. 4685.)

## CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Panama Canal Commission Compensation Fund Act of 1988, and not as part of the Panama Canal Act of 1979 which comprises this chapter.

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1988, see section 10 of Pub. L. 100-705, set out as an Effective Date of 1988 Amendment note under section 3612 of this title.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3715c of this title.

**§ 3715c. Final evaluation of Fund; deficiency or surplus in Fund**

**(a) Final evaluation of Fund**

Upon the termination of the Panama Canal Commission, the Secretary of Labor shall, on the basis of an actuarial study conducted by experts or consultants whose services are procured by the Secretary of Labor by contract, make a final determination of the amounts estimated to be necessary to meet expenditures for workers' compensation benefits and other payments described in section 3715a(a) of this title, as calculated in accordance with the second sentence of section 3715a(b) of this title. Amounts in the Fund shall be used to pay for the final determination under this subsection.

**(b) Deficiency or surplus in Fund**

If amounts in the Fund are not sufficient to meet expenditures as determined by the Secretary of Labor under subsection (a) of this section for workers' compensation benefits and other payments described in section 3715a(a) of this title, then amounts in the Panama Canal Revolving Fund not otherwise obligated shall be transferred to the Fund to make up the deficiency. Any amounts remaining in the Fund in excess of the final determination amount as described in subsection (a) of this section shall be transferred to the Panama Canal Revolving

Fund, and may be used to satisfy lawful obligations of the Revolving Fund arising on or before December 31, 1999.

**(c) Continuity of Fund**

(1) Amounts in the Fund (including amounts transferred as a result of the final determination made under subsection (a) of this section) shall be maintained by the Secretary of the Treasury, shall be made available for transfer to the Employees' Compensation Fund in such amounts as are requested by the Secretary of Labor pursuant to section 3715b of this title, and may be discontinued only in accordance with paragraph (2).

(2) At such time as the Secretary of Labor certifies that no further liability exists for workers compensation benefits or other payments described in section 3715a(a) of this title, the Secretary of the Treasury may discontinue the Fund in the manner provided by law.

(Pub. L. 100-705, §5, Nov. 19, 1988, 102 Stat. 4686; Pub. L. 101-510, div. C, title XXXV, §3507, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1847.)

## CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Panama Canal Commission Compensation Fund Act of 1988, and not as part of the Panama Canal Act of 1979 which comprises this chapter.

## AMENDMENTS

1990—Pub. L. 101-510, §3507(1), struck out "Upon the termination of the Panama Canal Commission:" before subsec. (a).

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 101-510, §3507(2), substituted "Upon the termination of the Panama Canal Commission, the Secretary of Labor" for "The Secretary of Labor" and struck out at end "The Secretary of the Treasury shall, in accordance with such final determination, transfer from the Fund to the Employee Compensation Fund amounts sufficient to meet expenditures for workers compensation benefits and other payments described in section 3715a(a) of this title."

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 101-510, §3507(3), inserted "under subsection (a) of this section" after "Secretary of Labor" and struck out "Employees Compensation" before "Fund to make up".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 101-510, §3507(4), added subsec. (c).

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1988, see section 10 of Pub. L. 100-705, set out as an Effective Date of 1988 Amendment note under section 3612 of this title.

**§ 3715d. Continuation of benefits**

The provisions of chapter 81 of title 5 shall, on or after October 1, 1988, continue to be the exclusive remedy, in accordance with section 8116 of such title, for the disability or death of any employee of the Panama Canal Commission, or any of its predecessor agencies, who is covered under such chapter, resulting from injuries sustained while in the performance of the employee's duty. The rights of any such employee for workers' compensation benefits shall be based only on the provisions of that chapter.

(Pub. L. 100-705, §6, Nov. 19, 1988, 102 Stat. 4686.)

## CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Panama Canal Commission Compensation Fund Act of 1988, and not as part of the Panama Canal Act of 1979 which comprises this chapter.

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 1, 1988, see section 10 of Pub. L. 100-705, set out as an Effective Date of 1988 Amendment note under section 3612 of this title.

## SUBPART II—ACCOUNTING POLICIES AND AUDITS

**§ 3721. Accounting policies****(a) Establishment and maintenance of accounts; specifications**

The Commission shall establish and maintain its accounts pursuant to chapter 35 of title 31 and the provisions of this part. Such accounts shall specify all revenues received by the Commission, including tolls for the use of the Panama Canal, expenditures for capital replacement, expansion, and improvement, and all costs of maintenance and operation of the Panama Canal and of its complementary works, installations, and equipment, including depreciation, payments to the Republic of Panama under the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977, and interest on the investment of the United States calculated in accordance with section 3793 of this title.

**(b) Regulations establishing the basis of accounting for assets**

The Commission may issue regulations establishing the basis of accounting for the assets which are made available for the use of the Commission. Such regulations may provide for depreciation of the net replacement value of the assets which will ultimately require replacement to maintain the service capacity of the Panama Canal. Such regulations may also provide that depreciation of such assets be recorded ratably over their service lives.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1311, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 479.)

## CODIFICATION

In subsec. (a), “chapter 35 of title 31” substituted for “the Accounting and Auditing Act of 1950 (31 U.S.C. 65 et seq.)” on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, §4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 3723, 3751, 3793 of this title.

**§ 3722. Repealed. Pub. L. 104-66, title II, § 2201(a), Dec. 21, 1995, 109 Stat. 732**

Section, Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1312, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 479, related to annual reports to President and Congress.

**§ 3723. Audit by Comptroller General of the United States****(a) Financial transactions of Commission; access to books, accounts, etc.**

Financial transactions of the Commission shall be audited by the Comptroller General of the United States (hereinafter in this chapter referred to as the “Comptroller General”) pursuant to chapter 35 of title 31. In conducting any audit pursuant to such Act, the appropriate representatives of the Comptroller General shall have access to all books, accounts, financial

records, reports, files, and other papers, items, or property in use by the Commission and necessary to facilitate such audit, and such representatives shall be afforded full facilities for verifying transactions with the balances or securities held by depositories, fiscal agents, and custodians. An audit pursuant to such Act shall first be conducted with respect to the fiscal year in which this chapter becomes effective.

**(b) Annual report to Congress; contents**

The Comptroller General shall, not later than six months after the end of each fiscal year, submit to the Congress a report of the audit conducted pursuant to subsection (a) of this section with respect to such fiscal year. Such report shall set forth the scope of the audit and shall include—

(1) a statement of assets and liabilities, capital, and surplus or deficit, based on the accounts of the Commission established pursuant to this part,

(2) a statement of income and expenses,

(3) a statement of sources and application of funds,

(4) a statement listing all direct and indirect costs incurred by the United States in implementing the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977, including the cost of property transferred to the Republic of Panama during each fiscal year, and

(5) such comments and information as the Comptroller General considers necessary to keep the Congress informed of the operations and financial transactions of the Commission, together with such recommendations with respect to such operations and transactions as the Comptroller General considers advisable.

The report shall identify specifically any program, expenditure, or other financial transaction or undertaking observed in the course of the audit which, in the opinion of the Comptroller General, has been carried out or made and has not been authorized by law. The Comptroller General shall submit a copy of each such report to the President, the Secretary of the Treasury, and the Commission.

**(c) Consideration of conversion problems respecting accounting system of Panama Canal Company**

In conducting the audits and preparing the reports provided for in this section and in carrying out his other responsibilities pursuant to law, the Comptroller General shall, with respect to fiscal year 1980, take into account the problems inherent in converting the existing accounting system of the Panama Canal Company to conform to the requirements established in section 3721 of this title. Accordingly, the Comptroller General shall take no adverse action with respect to the Commission, nor shall any violation of sections 1341, 1342, and 1349-1351 and subchapter II of chapter 15 of title 31 be considered to have taken place, so long as the Commission is in substantial compliance with the requirements of this chapter. The Comptroller General shall make such recommendations to the Commission and to the Congress as he may consider appropriate to insure that full compliance with the financial controls provided for in chapter 35 of title 31 is achieved promptly.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1313, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 479.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subssecs. (a) and (c), was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 96-70, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 452, known as the Panama Canal Act of 1979, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3601 of this title and Tables.

#### CODIFICATION

In subssecs. (a) and (c), “chapter 35 of title 31” substituted for “the Accounting and Auditing Act of 1950 (31 U.S.C. 65 et seq.)”, and in subsec. (c), “sections 1341, 1342, and 1349-1351 and subchapter II of chapter 15 of title 31” substituted for “section 3679 of the Revised Statutes (31 U.S.C. 665)”, on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, §4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

#### SUBPART III—INTERAGENCY ACCOUNTS

### § 3731. Reimbursements

#### (a) Reimbursement of the Employees' Compensation Fund, Bureau of Employees' Compensation, Department of Labor, and other Government departments and agencies by Commission

The Commission shall reimburse the Employees' Compensation Fund, Bureau of Employee's Compensation, Department of Labor, for the benefit payments to the Commission's employees, and shall also reimburse other Government departments and agencies for payments of a similar nature made on its behalf.

#### (b) Reimbursement of Commission by Department of Defense

The Department of Defense shall reimburse the Commission for amounts expended by the Commission in maintaining defense facilities in standby condition for the Department of Defense.

#### (c) Designation of funds of Department of Defense or any other department or agency of United States to carry out purposes of this subsection

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, funds appropriated (for any fiscal year beginning after September 30, 1979) to or for the use of the Department of Defense, or to any other department or agency of the United States as may be designated by the President to carry out the purposes of this subsection, shall be available for—

(1) conducting the educational and health care activities, including kindergartens and college, carried out by the Canal Zone Government and the Panama Canal Company before October 1, 1979, and

(2) providing the services related thereto to the categories of persons to which such services were provided before such effective date.

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Department of Defense, or any department or agency designated by the President to provide health care services to those categories of persons referred to in this subsection, shall provide such services to such categories of persons on a

basis no less favorable than that applied to its own employees and their dependents.

#### (d) Reimbursement to departments or agencies furnishing services

Amounts expended for furnishing services referred to in subsection (c) of this section to persons eligible to receive them, less amounts payable by such persons, shall be fully reimbursable to the department or agency furnishing the services, except to the extent that such expenditures are the responsibility of that department or agency. The appropriations or funds of the Commission shall be available for such reimbursements on behalf of—

(1) employees of the Commission, and

(2) other persons authorized to receive such services who are eligible to receive them pursuant to the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 and related agreements.

The appropriations or funds of any other department or agency of the United States conducting operations in the Republic of Panama, including the Smithsonian Institution, shall be available for reimbursements on behalf of employees of such department or agency and their dependents.

#### (e) Availability of funds to defray certain costs

The appropriations or funds of the Commission, or of any other department or agency of the United States conducting operations in the Republic of Panama, shall be available to defray the cost of—

(1) health care services provided by medical facilities licensed and approved by the Republic of Panama (and not operated by the United States) to elderly or disabled persons who were eligible to receive such services before October 1, 1979, less amounts payable by such persons, and

(2) educational services provided by schools in the Republic of Panama or the United States, which are not operated by the United States, to employees of the Commission who are citizens of the United States and persons who were receiving such services at the expense of the Canal Zone Government before October 1, 1979.

#### (f) Reimbursement of United States by Republic of Panama for salaries and other employment costs

For purposes of the reimbursement of the United States by the Republic of Panama for the salaries and other employment costs of employees of the Commission who are assigned to assist the Republic of Panama in the operation of activities which are transferred to that Government as a result of any provision of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 and related agreements, which reimbursement is provided for in paragraph 8 of Article 10 of that Treaty, the Commission shall be deemed to be the United States of America.

#### (g) Operation of Canal Zone College

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the President, through the appropriate department or agency of the United States, shall, until January 1, 2000, operate the educational institution known as the “Canal Zone College”. Such

institution shall continue to provide, insofar as practicable, the level of services which it offered immediately before October 1, 1979.

**(h) Prohibition of funds for uses other than Commission activities**

Except as expressly provided in this chapter, funds available to the Panama Canal Commission may not be made available to any other agency as that term is defined in section 551 of title 5, nor may funds be authorized or appropriated for any function other than Panama Canal Commission activities.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1321, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 480; Pub. L. 99-223, §5(c), Dec. 28, 1985, 99 Stat. 1739; Pub. L. 100-705, §8, Nov. 19, 1988, 102 Stat. 4686; Pub. L. 102-484, div. C, title XXXV, §3512, Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2655; Pub. L. 103-337, div. C, title XXXVI, §3604, Oct. 5, 1994, 108 Stat. 3112.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (h), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 96-70, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 452, known as the Panama Canal Act of 1979, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3601 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (e)(2). Pub. L. 103-337 inserted "or the United States" after "schools in the Republic of Panama".

1992—Subsec. (e)(1). Pub. L. 102-484 inserted "provided by medical facilities licensed and approved by the Republic of Panama (and not operated by the United States)" after "health care services".

1988—Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 100-705 added subsec. (h).

1985—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 99-223 amended subsec. (e) generally, striking out "in accordance with subsection (d) of this section," after "shall be available" in provisions preceding par. (1) and inserting "employees of the Commission who are citizens of the United States and" in par. (2).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1988 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 100-705 effective Oct. 1, 1988, see section 10 of Pub. L. 100-705, set out as a note under section 3612 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-223 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 8 of Pub. L. 99-223, set out as a note under section 3612 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3751 of this title.

SUBPART IV—POSTAL MATTERS

**§ 3741. Postal service**

**(a) Discontinuation of postal service**

The postal service established and governed by chapter 73 of title 2 of the Canal Zone Code shall be discontinued on October 1, 1979.

**(b) Savings provision**

The provisions of chapter 73 of such title 2 relating to postal-savings deposits, postal-savings certificates, postal money orders, and the accounting for funds shall continue to apply for the purpose of meeting the obligations of the United States concerning outstanding postal

savings and money orders and disposition of funds.

**(c) Possession or administration of funds by Commission**

The Commission shall take possession of and administer the funds of the postal service referred to in subsection (a) of this section and shall assume its obligations. The Commission and the United States Postal Service may enter into agreements for the transfer of funds or property and the assumption of administrative rights or responsibilities with respect to the outstanding obligations of the postal service referred to in subsection (a) of this section. Any transfer or assumption (including any agreement for such transfer or assumption) pursuant to this subsection shall be effective only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriation Acts.

**(d) Mail addressed to Canal Zone from or through United States**

Mail addressed to the Canal Zone from or through the continental United States may be routed by the United States Postal Service to the military post offices of the United States Forces in the Republic of Panama. Such military post offices shall provide the required directory services and shall accept such mail to the extent permitted under the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 and related agreements. The Commission shall furnish personnel, records, and other services to such military post offices to assure wherever appropriate the distribution, routing, or return of such mail.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1331(a)-(d), Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 481, 482.)

SUBPART V—ACCOUNTS WITH REPUBLIC OF PANAMA

**§ 3751. Payments to Republic of Panama**

**(a) Payments required under Panama Canal Treaty; annual audit**

The Commission shall pay to the Republic of Panama those payments required under paragraph 5 of Article III and paragraph 4 of Article XIII of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977. Payments made under paragraph 5 of Article III of such Treaty shall be audited annually by the Comptroller General and any overpayment, as determined in accordance with Understanding (1) incorporated in the Resolution of Ratification of the Panama Canal Treaty (adopted by the United States Senate on April 18, 1978), for the services described in that paragraph which are provided shall be refunded by the Republic of Panama or set off against amounts payable by the United States to the Republic of Panama under paragraph 5 of Article III of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977.

**(b) Excess operating revenues**

In determining whether operating revenues exceed expenditures for the purpose of payments to the Republic of Panama under paragraph 4(c) of Article XIII of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977, such operating revenues in a fiscal period shall be reduced by (1) all costs of such period as shown by the accounts established pursuant to



section 3721 of this title, and (2) the cumulative sum from prior years (beginning with the year in which the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 enters into force) of any excess of costs of the Panama Canal Commission over operating revenues.

**(c) Retroactive taxation**

The President shall not accede to any interpretation of paragraph 1 of Article IX of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 which would permit the Republic of Panama to tax retroactively organizations and businesses operating, and citizens of the United States living, in the Canal Zone before October 1, 1979.

**(d) Accumulated unpaid balances**

Any accumulated unpaid balance under paragraph 4(c) of Article XIII of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 at the termination of such Treaty shall be payable only to the extent of any operating surplus in the last year of the Treaty's duration, and nothing in such paragraph may be construed as obligating the United States to pay after the date of the termination of the Treaty any such unpaid balance which has accrued before such date.

**(e) Toll rates; payment of costs of operation and maintenance of canal with unexpended funds**

As provided in section 3792(b) of this title, tolls shall not be prescribed at rates calculated to cover payments to the Republic of Panama pursuant to paragraph 4(c) of Article XIII of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977. Moreover, no payments may be made to the Republic of Panama under paragraph 4(c) of Article XIII of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 unless unexpended funds are used to pay all costs of operation and maintenance of the canal, including but not limited to (1) operating expenses determined in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, (2) payments to the Republic of Panama under paragraphs 4(a) and 4(b) of such Article XIII and under paragraph (5) of Article III of such Treaty, (3) amounts in excess of depreciation and amortization which are programed for plant replacement, expansion, and improvements, (4) payments to the Treasury of the United States under section 3793 of this title, (5) reimbursement to the Treasury of the United States for costs incurred by other departments and agencies of the United States in providing educational, health, and other services to the Commission, its employees and their dependents, and other categories of persons in accordance with section 3731 of this title, (6) any costs of Treaty implementation associated with the maintenance and operation of the Panama Canal, and (7) amounts programmed to meet working capital requirements.

**(f) Prohibitions**

The prohibitions contained in this section and in sections 3712(c) and 3783 of this title shall apply notwithstanding any other provision of law authorizing transfers of funds between accounts, reprogramming of funds, use of funds for contingency purposes, or waivers of prohibitions.

**(g) Exemption from automatic budget cuts**

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, no reduction under any order issued pursuant to

the Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985 shall apply to the Commission if the implementation of such an order would result in a payment to the Republic of Panama under paragraph 4(c) of article XIII of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 and this section.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1341, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 482; Pub. L. 99-368, §6, Aug. 1, 1986, 100 Stat. 776; Pub. L. 100-203, title V, §5426, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1330-274.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985, referred to in subsec. (g), is title II of Pub. L. 99-177, Dec. 12, 1985, 99 Stat. 1038, as amended, which enacted chapter 20 (§900 et seq.) and sections 654 to 656 of Title 2, The Congress, amended sections 602, 622, 631 to 642, and 651 to 653 of Title 2, sections 1104 to 1106, and 1109 of Title 31, Money and Finance, and section 911 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare, repealed section 661 of Title 2, enacted provisions set out as notes under section 900 of Title 2 and section 911 of Title 42, and amended provisions set out as a note under section 621 of Title 2. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 900 of Title 2 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1987—Subsec. (e)(7). Pub. L. 100-203 added cl. (7).  
1986—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 99-368 added subsec. (g).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1987 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 100-203 effective Jan. 1, 1988, see section 5429 of Pub. L. 100-203, set out as a note under section 3683 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Section 7 of Pub. L. 99-368 provided that: "The amendment made by section 6 [amending this section] shall take effect with respect to fiscal year 1986 and subsequent fiscal years."

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3872 of this title.

**§ 3752. Transactions with Republic of Panama**

The Commission may, on a reimbursable basis, provide to the Republic of Panama materials, supplies, equipment, work, or services, including water and electric power, requested by the Republic of Panama, at such rates as may be agreed upon by the Commission and the Republic of Panama. Payment for such materials, supplies, equipment, work, or services may be made by direct payment by the Republic of Panama to the Commission or by offset against amounts due the Republic of Panama by the United States.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1342, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 483.)

**§ 3753. Disaster relief**

If an emergency arises because of disaster or calamity by flood, hurricane, earthquake, fire, pestilence, or like cause, not foreseen or otherwise provided for, and occurring in the Republic of Panama in such circumstances as to constitute an actual or potential hazard to health, safety, security, or property in the areas and installations made available to the United States pursuant to the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977

and related agreements, the Commission may expend funds available to the Commission for such purpose, and utilize or furnish materials, supplies, equipment, and services for relief, assistance, and protection.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1343, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 483; Pub. L. 100-203, title V, §5428(b), Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1330-274.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1987—Pub. L. 100-203 substituted “funds available” for “available funds appropriated”.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1987 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 100-203 effective Jan. 1, 1988, see section 5429 of Pub. L. 100-203, set out as a note under section 3683 of this title.

### § 3754. Congressional restraints on property transfers and tax expenditures; formal appraisal of Panama

(a) The Congress enacts this section in the exercise of its authority under Article IV, section 3, clause 2 of the Constitution of the United States to dispose of and make necessary rules and regulations with respect to property of the United States.

(b) Prior to the transfer of property of the United States located in the Republic of Panama to the Republic of Panama pursuant to section 3784 of this title the President shall formally advise the Government of Panama that—

(1) in fulfilling its obligations under the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977, the United States shall make no payments to the Republic of Panama derived from tax revenues of the United States;

(2) the United States retains full discretion and authority to determine whether and the extent to which tax revenues of the United States may be expended in exercising United States rights and carrying out United States responsibilities under the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 and related agreements;

(3) no tax revenues of the United States shall be made available for obligations and expenditure after October 1, 1979, for purposes of implementing the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 and related agreements, unless hereafter specifically approved by the Congress through the authorization and appropriation process;

(4) the total amount expended by the Commission from funds available for the use of the Commission shall not exceed the total amount deposited in the Panama Canal Revolving Fund; and

(5) the foregoing paragraphs of this subsection do not apply to expenditures made by the United States in fulfilling United States obligations to transfer the remains of our honored dead from Mount Hope Cemetery in the former Canal Zone to an appropriate and dignified resting place in accordance with Reservation 3 to the Treaty Concerning the Permanent Neutrality and Operation of the Panama Canal.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1344, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 484; Pub. L. 100-203, title V, §5428(c), Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1330-274.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1987—Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 100-203 substituted “available” for “appropriated to or” and “Panama

Canal Revolving Fund” for “Panama Canal Commission Fund”.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1987 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 100-203 effective Jan. 1, 1988, see section 5429 of Pub. L. 100-203, set out as a note under section 3683 of this title.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions vested in President by subsec. (b) delegated to Secretary of State, see section 1-402 of Ex. Ord. No. 12215, May 27, 1980, 45 F.R. 36044, set out as a note under section 3601 of this title.

### PART 4—CLAIMS FOR INJURIES TO PERSONS OR PROPERTY

#### SUBPART I—GENERAL PROVISIONS

### § 3761. Settlement of claims generally

#### (a) Claims for injury to, or loss of, property or personal injury or death arising from operation of Panama Canal

Subject to the provisions of this part, the Commission may adjust and pay claims for injury to, or loss of, property or for personal injury or death, arising from the operation of the Panama Canal or related facilities and appurtenances.

#### (b) Limitation on amount of claims

The Commission may pay not more than \$50,000 on any claim described in subsection (a) of this section.

#### (c) Source of award; release

An award made to a claimant under this section shall be payable out of any moneys appropriated for or made available to the Commission. The acceptance by the claimant of the award shall be final and conclusive on the claimant, and shall constitute a complete release by the claimant of his claim against the United States and against any employee of the United States acting in the course of his employment who is involved in the matter giving rise to the claim.

#### (d) Action for damages on claims cognizable under this part; action against officers or employees of United States for injuries resulting from acts outside scope of their employment

Except as provided in section 3776 of this title, no action for damages on claims cognizable under this part shall lie against the United States or the Commission, and no such action shall lie against any officer or employee of the United States. Neither this section nor section 3776 of this title shall preclude actions against officers or employees of the United States for injuries resulting from their acts outside the scope of their employment or not in the line of their duties, or from their acts committed with the intent to injure the person or property of another.

#### (e) Applicability of provisions of section 1346 and chapter 171 of title 28

The provisions of section 1346(b) of title 28 and the provisions of chapter 171 of such title shall not apply to claims cognizable under this part.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1401, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 484; Pub. L. 100-203, title V, §5417(a), Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1330-271.)

## AMENDMENTS

1987—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 100-203 amended subsec. (b) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (b) read as follows: “No claim for an amount exceeding \$50,000 shall be adjusted and paid by the Commission under the provisions of this subpart.”

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3771 of this title.

## SUBPART II—VESSEL DAMAGE

**§ 3771. Injuries in locks of canal; adjustment and payment of claims**

(a) Subject to subsection (b) of this section, the Commission shall promptly adjust and pay damages for injuries to vessels, or to the cargo, crew, or passengers of vessels, which may arise by reason of their passage through the locks of the Panama Canal when the injury was proximately caused by negligence or fault on the part of an officer or employee of the United States acting within the scope of his employment and in the line of his duties in connection with the operation of the Canal. If the negligence or fault of the vessel, master, crew, or passengers proximately contributed to the injury, the award of damages shall be diminished in proportion to the negligence or fault attributable to the vessel, master, crew, or passengers. Damages may not be allowed and paid for injuries to any propulsion beyond any portion of the hull of a vessel, whether it is permanent or temporary in character. A vessel is considered to be passing through the locks of the Canal, under the control of officers or employees of the United States, from the time the first towing line is made fast on board before entrance into the locks and until the towing lines are cast off upon, or immediately prior to, departure from the lock chamber. No payment for damages on a claim may be made under this section unless the claim is filed with the Commission within 2 years after the date of the injury, or within 1 year after December 23, 1985, whichever is later.

(b)(1) With respect to a claim under subsection (a) of this section for damages for injuries to a vessel or its cargo, if, at the time the injuries were incurred, the navigation or movement of the vessel was not under the control of a Panama Canal pilot, the Commission may pay not more than \$50,000 on the claim, unless the injuries were caused by another vessel under the control of a Panama Canal pilot.

(2) The provisions of subsections (c) through (e) of section 3761 of this title shall apply to any claim described in paragraph (1).

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1411, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 485; Pub. L. 99-209, §2(a), (b), Dec. 23, 1985, 99 Stat. 1716; Pub. L. 100-203, title V, §5417(b), Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1330-271.)

## AMENDMENTS

1987—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 100-203 substituted “pay not more than \$50,000 on the claim” for “adjust and pay the claim only if the amount of the claim does not exceed \$50,000”.

1985—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99-209, §2(a), designated existing provisions as subsec. (a), substituted “Subject to subsection (b) of this section, the” for “The”, substituted “the Panama Canal when the injury was proximately caused by negligence or fault on the part of an

officer or employee of the United States acting within the scope of his employment and in the line of his duties in connection with the operation of the Canal” for “The Panama Canal under the control of officers or employees of the United States”, struck out provision that damages could not be paid where the injury was proximately caused by the negligence or fault of the vessel, master, crew, or passengers, and inserted provision that no payment for damages on a claim may be made under this section unless the claim is filed with the Commission within 2 years after the date of the injury, or within 1 year after Dec. 23, 1985, whichever is later.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 99-209, §2(b), added subsec. (b).

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Section 7 of Pub. L. 99-209 provided that:

“(a) RETROACTIVE APPLICABILITY.—The amendments made by subsections (a) and (c) of section 2 [amending this section and section 3772 of this title], and the amendments made by sections 4 and 5 of this Act [amending sections 3775 and 3776 of this title], shall apply to any claim arising on or after October 1, 1979.

“(b) FUTURE APPLICABILITY.—

“(1) SECTIONS 3 AND 6.—The amendments made by sections 3 [amending section 3774 of this title] and 6 [enacting section 3779 of this title] of this Act shall apply to any claim arising on or after the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 23, 1985].

“(2) SECTION 2(b).—The amendment made by subsection (b) of section 2 [amending this section] shall apply to any claim arising from an incident occurring on or after the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 23, 1985].”

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3776 of this title.

**§ 3772. Injuries outside locks**

The Commission shall promptly adjust and pay damages for injuries to vessels, or to the cargo, crew, or passengers of vessels which may arise by reason of their presence in the Panama Canal, or waters adjacent thereto, other than the locks, when the injury was proximately caused by negligence or fault on the part of an officer or employee of the United States acting within the scope of his employment and in the line of his duties in connection with the operation of the Canal. If the negligence or fault of the vessel, master, crew, or passengers proximately contributed to the injury, the award of damages shall be diminished in proportion to the negligence or fault attributable to the vessel, master, crew, or passengers. In the case of a vessel which is required by or pursuant to regulations prescribed pursuant to section 3811 of this title to have a Panama Canal pilot on duty aboard, damages may not be adjusted and paid for injuries to the vessel, or its cargo, crew, or passengers, incurred while the vessel was underway and in motion, unless at the time the injuries were incurred the navigation or movement of the vessel was under the control of a Panama Canal pilot. No payment for damages on a claim may be made under this section unless the claim is filed with the Commission within 2 years after the date of the injury, or within 1 year after December 23, 1985, whichever is later.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1412, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 485; Pub. L. 99-209, §2(c), Dec. 23, 1985, 99 Stat. 1716.)

## AMENDMENTS

1985—Pub. L. 99-209 struck out provisions limiting the amount of the claim to \$120,000, and inserted provision

that no payment for damages on a claim may be made under this section unless the claim is filed with the Commission within 2 years after the date of the injury, or within 1 year after Dec. 23, 1985, whichever is later.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-209 applicable to any claim arising on or after Oct. 1, 1979, see section 7(a) of Pub. L. 99-209, set out as a note under section 3771 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3776 of this title.

**§ 3773. Measure of damages generally**

In determining the amount of the award of damages for injuries to a vessel for which the Commission is determined to be liable, there may be included—

- (1) the actual or estimated cost of repairs;
- (2) charter hire actually lost by the owners, or charter hire actually paid, depending upon the terms of the charter party, for the time the vessel is undergoing repairs;
- (3) maintenance of the vessel and wages of the crew, if they are found to be actual additional expenses or losses incurred outside of the charter hire; and
- (4) other expenses which are definitely and accurately shown to have been incurred necessarily and by reason of the accident or injuries.

Agent's fees, or commissions, or other incidental expenses of similar character, or any items which are indefinite, indeterminable, speculative, or conjectural may not be allowed. The Commission shall be furnished such vouchers, receipts, or other evidence as may be necessary in support of any item of a claim. If a vessel is not operated under charter but by the owner directly, evidence shall be secured if available as to the sum for which vessels of the same size and class can be chartered in the market. If the charter value cannot be determined, the value of the vessel to its owners in the business in which it was engaged at the time of the injuries shall be used as a basis for estimating the damages for the vessel's detention; and the books of the owners showing the vessel's earnings about the time of the accident or injuries shall be considered as evidence of probable earnings during the time of detention. If the books are unavailable, such other evidence shall be furnished as may be necessary.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1413, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 486.)

**§ 3774. Delays for which no responsibility is assumed**

The Commission is not responsible, and may not consider any claim, for demurrage or delays caused by—

- (1) landslides or other natural causes;
- (2) necessary construction or maintenance work on Canal locks, terminals, or equipment;
- (3) obstruction arising from accidents;
- (4) time necessary for admeasurement;
- (5) congestion of traffic;
- (6) investigation of a marine accident that is conducted within 24 hours after the accident

occurs, except that any liability of the Commission beyond that 24-hour period shall be limited to the extent to which the accident was caused, or contributed to, by the negligence of an employee of the Commission acting within the scope of the employee's official duties; or

(7) except as specially set forth in this subpart, any other cause.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1414, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 486; Pub. L. 99-209, §3, Dec. 23, 1985, 99 Stat. 1717.)

AMENDMENTS

1985—Par. (6). Pub. L. 99-209 amended par. (6) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (6) read as follows: "time necessary for investigation of marine accidents; or".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-209 applicable to any claim arising on or after Dec. 23, 1985, see section 7(b)(1) of Pub. L. 99-209, set out as a note under section 3771 of this title.

**§ 3775. Settlement of claims**

The Commission, by mutual agreement, compromise, or otherwise, may adjust and determine the amounts of the respective awards of damages pursuant to this subpart. Such amounts may be paid only out of money appropriated or allotted for the maintenance and operation of the Panama Canal. Acceptance by a claimant of the amount awarded to him shall be deemed to be in full settlement of such claim against the Government of the United States.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1415, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 486; Pub. L. 99-209, §4, Dec. 23, 1985, 99 Stat. 1717.)

AMENDMENTS

1985—Pub. L. 99-209 struck out the subsec. (a) designation, substituted "The Commission, by" for "Subject to subsection (b) of this section, the Commission, by" and "Such amounts may be paid only out of money appropriated or allotted for the maintenance and operation of the Panama Canal" for "Such amounts shall be payable promptly out of any moneys appropriated or allotted for the maintenance and operation of the Panama Canal", and struck out subsec. (b) which provided that the Commission could not adjust and pay any claim for damages for injuries arising by reason of the presence of the vessel in the Panama Canal or adjacent waters outside the locks where the amount of the claim exceeded \$120,000 but had to submit the claim to the Congress in a special report containing the material facts and the recommendation of the Commission thereon.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-209 applicable to any claim arising on or after Oct. 1, 1979, see section 7(a) of Pub. L. 99-209, set out as a note under section 3771 of this title.

**§ 3776. Actions on claims**

A claimant for damages pursuant to section 3771(a) or 3772 of this title who considers himself aggrieved by the findings, determination, or award of the Commission in reference to his claim may bring an action on the claim against the Commission in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Louisiana. Sub-

ject to the provisions of this part and of applicable regulations issued pursuant to section 3811 of this title relative to navigation of the Panama Canal and adjacent waters, such actions shall proceed and be heard by the court without a jury according to the principles of law and rules of practice obtaining generally in like cases between a private party and a department or agency of the United States. Any judgment obtained against the Commission in an action under this subpart may be paid only out of money appropriated or allotted for the maintenance and operation of the Panama Canal. An action for damages cognizable under this section shall not otherwise lie against the United States or the Commission, nor in any other court, than as provided in this section; nor may it lie against any officer or employee of the United States or of the Commission. Any action on a claim under this section shall be barred unless the action is brought within one year after the date on which the Commission mails to the claimant written notification of the Commission's final determination with respect to the claim, or within one year after December 23, 1985, whichever is later. Attorneys appointed by the Commission shall represent the Commission in any action arising under this subpart.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1416, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 487; Pub. L. 99-209, §5, Dec. 23, 1985, 99 Stat. 1717.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1985—Pub. L. 99-209 substituted "section 3771(a) or 3772 of this title" for "section 3771 of this title", substituted "may be paid only out of money" for "shall be paid out of any moneys", and inserted provisions that any action on a claim under this section shall be barred unless the action is brought within one year after the date on which the Commission mails to the claimant written notification of the Commission's final determination with respect to the claim, or within one year after Dec. 23, 1985, whichever is later, and that attorneys appointed by the Commission shall represent the Commission in any action arising under this subpart.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-209 applicable to any claim arising on or after Oct. 1, 1979, see section 7(a) of Pub. L. 99-209, set out as a note under section 3771 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3761 of this title.

### § 3777. Investigation of accident or injury giving rise to claim

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, a claim may not be considered under this subpart, or an action for damages lie thereon, unless, prior to the departure from the Panama Canal of the vessel involved—

- (1) an investigation by the competent authorities of the accident or injury giving rise to the claim has been completed; and
- (2) the basis for the claim has been laid before the Commission.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1417, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 487.)

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3778 of this title.

### § 3778. Board of local inspectors

(a) The President shall provide for the establishment of a Board of Local Inspectors of the Panama Canal Commission which shall perform, in accordance with regulations prescribed by the President—

- (1) the investigations required by section 3777 of this title; and
- (2) such other duties with respect to marine matters as may be assigned by the President.

(b) In conducting any investigation pursuant to subsection (a) of this section, the Board of Local Inspectors established pursuant to such subsection may summon witnesses, administer oaths, and require the production of books and papers necessary for such investigation.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1418, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 487.)

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions vested in President by this section delegated to Secretary of Defense, see section 1-303 of Ex. Ord. No. 12215, May 27, 1980, 45 F.R. 36044, set out as a note under section 3601 of this title.

### § 3779. Insurance

The Commission is authorized to purchase insurance to protect the Commission against major and unpredictable revenue losses or expenses arising from catastrophic marine accidents or other unpredictable events.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1419, as added Pub. L. 99-209, §6(a), Dec. 23, 1985, 99 Stat. 1717; amended Pub. L. 100-203, title V, §5414, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1330-270.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1987—Pub. L. 100-203 inserted "or other unpredictable events" after "marine accidents".

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section applicable to any claim arising on or after Dec. 23, 1985, see section 7(b)(1) of Pub. L. 99-209, set out as an Effective Date of 1985 Amendment note under section 3771 of this title.

#### PART 5—PUBLIC PROPERTY

### § 3781. Assets and liabilities of Panama Canal Company

All property and other assets of the Panama Canal Company shall revert to the United States on October 1, 1979, and, except as otherwise provided by law, the United States shall assume the liabilities, including contractual obligations, of the Panama Canal Company then outstanding. The Commission may use such property, facilities, and records of the Panama Canal Company as are necessary to carry out its functions.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1501, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 487.)

### § 3782. Transfers and cross-servicing between agencies

(a) **Transfers of facilities, buildings, structures, improvements, stocks and equipment located in the Republic of Panama**

In the interest of economy and maximum efficiency in the utilization of property and facili-

ties of the United States, there are authorized to be transferred between departments and agencies of the United States, with or without reimbursement, such facilities, buildings, structures, improvements, stock, and equipment located in the Republic of Panama, and used for their activities therein, as may be mutually agreed upon by the departments and agencies involved and approved by the President of the United States or his designee.

**(b) Cross-servicing agreements**

The Commission may enter into cross-servicing agreements with any other department or agency of the United States for the use of facilities, furnishing of services, or performance of functions.

**(c) Transfer of records to Government of Republic of Panama**

The Commission, any department or agency of the United States, or any United States court in the Republic of Panama is authorized to transfer to the Government of the Republic of Panama any record of such Commission, department, agency, or court, or copy thereof, including any record acquired from the Canal Zone Government or Panama Canal Company (including any vital statistics record), to any other department, agency, or court of the United States if such action is determined by the Commission, the head of the department or agency concerned, or the judge of the court concerned to be in the interest of the United States. Transfer of any record or copy thereof under this section to the Government of the Republic of Panama shall be made under the coordination of and with the approval of the United States Ambassador to the Republic of Panama.

**(d) Applicability to Smithsonian Institution**

The provisions of this section shall apply to the Smithsonian Institution.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1502, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 488.)

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions vested in President by subsec. (a) of this section delegated to Secretary of Defense, see section 1-106 of Ex. Ord. No. 12215, May 27, 1980, 45 F.R. 36043, set out as a note under section 3601 of this title.

**§ 3783. Disposition of property of United States**

No property of the United States located in the Republic of Panama may be disposed of except pursuant to law enacted by the Congress.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1503, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 488.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3751 of this title.

**§ 3784. Transfer of property to Republic of Panama**

**(a) Conveyance of Panama Railroad**

(1) On October 1, 1979, the Secretary of State may convey to the Republic of Panama the Panama Railroad and such property located in the area which, immediately before such date, comprised the Canal Zone and which is not within the land and water areas the use of which is

made available to the United States pursuant to the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 and related agreements.

(2) Property transferred pursuant to paragraph (1) of this subsection may not include buildings and other facilities, except housing, located outside such areas, the use of which is retained by the United States pursuant to the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 and related agreements.

**(b) Transfer of certain property pursuant to Panama Canal Treaty of 1977; report to Congress**

With respect to the transfer of all other property (not described in subsection (a)(1) of this section) to be transferred in accordance with the terms of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 and related agreements, the Secretary of State may convey such property from time to time in accordance with the terms of such Treaty and related agreements. Before the transfer of any such property, the President must submit a written report to the Congress—

(1) precisely identifying and describing the particular property to be transferred;

(2) certifying the state of compliance by the Republic of Panama with such Treaty and related agreements; and

(3) setting forth the reasons for the conveyance being made at the particular time.

**(c) Restriction on transfer of Panama Canal and certain other property**

The Panama Canal, and such other property referred to in paragraph 2(d) of Article XIII of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 that has not been previously transferred in accordance with paragraphs 2(a), 2(b), and 2(c) of such Article, shall not be transferred to the Republic of Panama prior to December 31, 1999.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1504, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 488; Pub. L. 99-223, §7, Dec. 28, 1985, 99 Stat. 1740.)

AMENDMENTS

1985—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 99-223 substituted “Before” for “At least 180 days before”.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions vested in President by subsec. (b) delegated to Secretary of State, see section 1-402 of Ex. Ord. No. 12215, May 27, 1980, 45 F.R. 36044, set out as a note under section 3601 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3754 of this title.

PART 6—TOLLS FOR USE OF PANAMA CANAL

**§ 3791. Prescription of measurement rules and rates of tolls**

(a) The President is authorized, subject to the provisions of this part, to prescribe and from time to time change—

(1) the rules for the measurement of vessels for the Panama Canal; and

(2) the tolls that shall be levied for the use of the Canal.

(b) Such rules of measurement and tolls prevailing on October 1, 1979, shall continue in effect until changed as provided in this part.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1601, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 489.)

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3794 of this title.

**§ 3792. Bases of tolls****(a) Tolls based on net vessel tons and on displacement tonnage**

Tolls on merchant vessels, army and navy transports, colliers, tankers, hospital ships, supply ships, and yachts shall be based on net vessel tons of one hundred cubic feet each of actual earning capacity, or its equivalent, determined in accordance with the rules for the measurement of vessels for the Panama Canal, and tolls on other floating craft shall be based on displacement tonnage. The tolls on vessels in ballast without passengers or cargo may be less than the tolls for vessels with passengers or cargo.

**(b) Toll rates prescribed to cover all costs of operation and maintenance of Panama Canal**

Tolls shall be prescribed at rates calculated to produce revenues to cover as nearly as practicable all costs of maintaining and operating the Panama Canal (including costs authorized to be paid from the Panama Canal Dissolution Fund under section 3714a(c) of this title), together with the facilities and appurtenances related thereto, including unrecovered costs incurred on or after October 1, 1979, interest, depreciation, working capital, payments to the Republic of Panama pursuant to paragraph 5 of Article III and paragraph 4(a) and (b) of Article XIII of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977, and capital for plant replacement, expansion, and improvements. Tolls shall not be prescribed at rates calculated to produce revenues sufficient to cover payments to the Republic of Panama pursuant to paragraph 4(c) of Article XIII of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977.

**(c) Payment of tolls by vessels of United States**

Vessels operated by the United States, including vessels of war and auxiliary vessels, and ocean-going training ships owned by the United States and operated by State nautical schools, shall pay tolls.

**(d) Levy of tolls**

The levy of tolls is subject to the provisions of section 1 of Article III of the treaty between the United States of America and Great Britain signed November 18, 1901, of Article I of the treaty between the United States of America and the Republic of Colombia signed April 6, 1914, and of Articles II, III, and VI of the Treaty Concerning Permanent Neutrality and Operation of the Panama Canal, between the United States of America and the Republic of Panama, signed September 7, 1977.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1602, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 489; Pub. L. 100-203, title V, §5427, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1330-274; Pub. L. 102-484, div. C, title XXXV, §§3513, 3521(b)(2), Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2655, 2657.)

## AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 102-484, §3513, inserted “, or its equivalent,” after “earning capacity”.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 102-484, §3521(b)(2), substituted “Panama Canal (including costs authorized to be paid

from the Panama Canal Dissolution Fund under section 3714a(c) of this title)” for “Panama Canal”.

1987—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 100-203 inserted “working capital,” after “depreciation,”.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1987 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 100-203 effective Jan. 1, 1988, see section 5429 of Pub. L. 100-203, set out as a note under section 3683 of this title.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 3751, 3793, 3794, 3795 of this title; title 46 section 14302.

**§ 3793. Interest on investments****(a) Calculation of interest**

For purposes of sections 3721 and 3792 of this title, interest shall be computed, at a rate determined by the Secretary of the Treasury, on the investment of the United States in the Panama Canal as shown in the accounts of the Panama Canal Company at the close of business on the day preceding October 1, 1979, and as adjusted in accordance with subsections (b) and (c) of this section. Capital investment for interest purposes shall not include any interest during construction.

**(b) Increases and decreases in investment of United States**

The investment of the United States described in subsection (a) of this section—

(1) shall be increased by—

(A) the amount of expenditures from the Panama Canal Revolving Fund,<sup>1</sup> and

(B) the value of property transferred to the Commission by any other department or agency of the United States, as determined in accordance with subsection (c) of this section; and

(2) shall be decreased by—

(A) the amount of the funds deposited in the Panama Canal Revolving Fund,

(B) the value of property transferred to the Republic of Panama pursuant to this chapter or any other Act on or after October 1, 1979, and

(C) the value of property transferred by the Commission to any other department or agency of the United States.

**(c) Value of property transferred to Commission**

The value of property transferred to the Commission by any other department or agency of the United States shall be determined by the Director of the Office of Management and Budget. In computing such value, such Director shall give due consideration to the cost and probable earning power of the transferred property, or the usable value to the Commission if clearly less than cost, and shall make adequate provisions for depreciation, obsolescence, and other determinable decreases in value. Insofar as practicable, the value of such transferred property shall exclude any portion of such value properly allocable to national defense.

**(d) Payment and deposit of interest**

The Panama Canal Commission shall pay to the Treasury of the United States interest on

<sup>1</sup> So in original.

the investment of the United States, as determined under this section. Such interest shall be deposited in the general fund of the Treasury.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1603, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 490; Pub. L. 99-195, §1(b), Dec. 23, 1985, 99 Stat. 1349; Pub. L. 100-203, title V, §5425(a), Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1330-274.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (b)(2)(B), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 96-70, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 452, known as the Panama Canal Act of 1979, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3601 of this title and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1987—Subsec. (b)(1)(A). Pub. L. 100-203, §5425(a)(1), substituted "the Panama Canal Revolving Fund," for "appropriations to the Commission made on or after October 1, 1979".

Subsec. (b)(2)(A). Pub. L. 100-203, §5425(a)(2), substituted "deposited in the Panama Canal Revolving Fund" for "covered into the Panama Canal Commission Fund pursuant to section 3712 of this title".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 100-203, §5425(a)(3), added subsec. (d).

1985—Subsec. (b)(2)(A). Pub. L. 99-195 substituted "Panama Canal Commission Fund" for "Treasury".

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1987 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 100-203 effective Jan. 1, 1988, see section 5429 of Pub. L. 100-203, set out as a note under section 3683 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-195 applicable only to tolls and other receipts of the Commission deposited in the Treasury on or after Dec. 23, 1985, see section 2 of Pub. L. 99-195, set out as a note under section 3712 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 3721, 3751 of this title.

### § 3794. Procedures

#### (a) Publication of notice of proposed changes in rules of measurement and rates of tolls in Federal Register; participation by interested parties; availability of analysis

The Commission shall publish in the Federal Register notice of any proposed change in the rules of measurement or rates of tolls referred to in section 3791(a) of this title. The Commission shall give interested parties an opportunity to participate in the proceedings through submission of written data, views, or arguments, and participation in a public hearing to be held not less than 30 days after the date of publication of the notice. The notice shall include the substance of the proposed change and a statement of the time, place, and nature of the proceedings. At the time of publication of such notice, the Commission shall make available to the public an analysis showing the basis and justification for the proposed change, which, in the case of a change in rates of tolls, shall indicate the conformity of the existing and proposed rates of tolls with the requirements of section 3792 of this title, and the Commission's adherence to the requirement for full consideration of

the following factors set forth in Understanding (1) incorporated in the Resolution of Ratification of the Treaty Concerning the Permanent Neutrality and Operation of the Panama Canal (adopted by the United States Senate on March 16, 1978):

(1) the costs of operating and maintaining the Panama Canal;

(2) the competitive position of the use of the Canal in relation to other means of transportation;

(3) the interests of the United States and the Republic of Panama in maintaining their domestic fleets;

(4) the impact of such a change in rates of tolls on the various geographical areas of each of the two countries; and

(5) the interests of both countries in maximizing their international commerce.

#### (b) Revision of proposed rules of measurement or rates of tolls

After consideration of the relevant matter presented, the Commission may revise the proposed rules of measurement or rates of tolls, as the case may be, except that, in the case of rates of tolls, if such revision proposes rates greater than those originally proposed, a new analysis of the proposed rates shall be made available to the public, and a new notice of the revised proposal shall be published in the Federal Register apprising interested persons of the opportunity to participate further in the proceedings through submission of written data, views, or arguments, and participation in a public hearing to be held not less than 30 days after the date of publication of the new notice. The procedure set forth in this subsection shall be followed for any subsequent revision of the proposed rates of tolls by the Commission which proposes rates higher than those in the preceding proposal.

#### (c) Publication of notice of changes in rules of measurement and rates of tolls in Federal Register

After the proceedings have been conducted pursuant to subsections (a) and (b) of this section, the Commission shall publish in the Federal Register a notice of the changes in the rules of measurement or rates of tolls, as the case may be, to be recommended to the President.

#### (d) Transmission of complete record of proceedings to President

Upon publication of the notice pursuant to subsection (c) of this section, the Commission shall forward a complete record of the proceedings, with the recommendation of the Commission, to the President for his consideration. The President may approve, disapprove, or modify any or all of the changes in the rules of measurement or rates of tolls recommended by the Commission.

#### (e) Effective date of prescribed rules of measurement and rates of tolls

Rules of measurement or rates of tolls prescribed by the President pursuant to this part shall take effect on a date prescribed by the President which is not less than 30 days after the President publishes such rules or rates in the Federal Register.



**(f) Judicial review**

Action to change the rules of measurement for the Panama Canal or the rates of tolls for the use of the Canal pursuant to this part shall be subject to judicial review in accordance with chapter 7 of title 5.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1604, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 490.)

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3795 of this title.

**§ 3795. Interim toll adjustment**

After September 27, 1979, the Panama Canal Company or the Commission may, without regard to the procedures set forth in section 3794 of this title for making changes in tolls by the Commission and the President, change the rates of tolls calculated to cover the cost of maintaining and operating the Panama Canal during the fiscal year beginning on October 1, 1979. Such rates shall be calculated in accordance with the provisions of section 3792(b) of this title. Any such change in rates of tolls shall be subject to the approval of the President whose action in the matter shall be final. Any change in rates of tolls approved by the President shall become effective on a date prescribed by the President.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1605(a), Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 491.)

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 1605(b) of Pub. L. 96-70 provided that: "This section [enacting this section] shall take effect on the date of the enactment of this Act [Sept. 27, 1979]."

## PART 7—GENERAL REGULATIONS

**§ 3801. Authority of President**

The President may prescribe, and from time to time amend, regulations applicable within the areas and installations made available to the United States for the operation and protection of the Panama Canal pursuant to the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 and related agreements concerning—

- (1) the use of aircraft;
- (2) the possession and use of alcoholic beverages;
- (3) exclusion and removal of persons; and
- (4) health and sanitation.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1701, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 492.)

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions vested in President by this section with respect to regulations applicable to United States pursuant to Agreement in Implementation of Article IV of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 and authority of President under this section with respect to regulations applicable within areas and installations made available to United States pursuant to Agreement in Implementation of Article III of Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 delegated to Secretary of Defense, see sections 1-104 and 1-304 of Ex. Ord. No. 12215, May 27, 1980, 45 F.R. 36043, 36044, set out as a note under section 3601 of this title.

**§ 3802. Authority of Commission**

The Commission may prescribe, and from time to time amend, regulations applicable within

the areas and installations made available to the United States for the operation and protection of the Panama Canal pursuant to the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 and related agreements concerning—

- (1) the keeping and impounding of domestic animals;
- (2) fire prevention;
- (3) the sale or use of fireworks;
- (4) the use of roads and highways;
- (5) photographing of areas, objects, installations, or structures;
- (6) swimming in the Panama Canal and adjacent waters; and
- (7) the protection of wildlife, hunting, and fishing.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1702, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 492.)

## PART 8—SHIPPING AND NAVIGATION

## SUBPART I—OPERATION OF CANAL

**§ 3811. Operating regulations**

The President may prescribe, and from time to time amend, regulations governing—

- (1) the operation of the Panama Canal;
- (2) the navigation of the harbors and other waters of the Panama Canal and areas adjacent thereto, including the ports of Balboa and Cristobal;
- (3) the passage and control of vessels through the Panama Canal or any part thereof, including the locks and approaches thereto;
- (4) pilotage in the Panama Canal or the approaches thereto through the adjacent waters; and
- (5) the licensing of officers or other operators of vessels navigating the waters of the Panama Canal and areas adjacent thereto, including the ports of Balboa and Cristobal.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1801, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 492.)

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions vested in President by this section delegated to Secretary of Defense, see section 1-303 of Ex. Ord. No. 12215, May 27, 1980, 45 F.R. 36044, set out as a note under section 3601 of this title.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 3772, 3776 of this title.

## SUBPART II—INSPECTION OF VESSELS

**§ 3821. Vessels subject to inspection**

With the exception of private vessels merely transiting the Panama Canal, and of public vessels of all nations, vessels navigating the waters of the Panama Canal shall be subject to an annual inspection of hulls, boilers, machinery, equipment, and passenger accommodations.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1811, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 492.)

**§ 3822. Foreign vessels**

With respect to a foreign vessel of a country which has inspection laws approximating those of the United States, any such vessel having an

unexpired certificate of inspection duly issued by the authorities of such country shall not be subject to an inspection other than that necessary to determine whether the vessel, its boilers, and its lifesaving equipment are as stated in the certificate of inspection. A certificate of inspection may not be accepted as evidence of lawful inspection under this section unless similar privileges are granted to vessels of the United States under the laws of the country to which the vessel belongs.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1812, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 493.)

### § 3823. Regulations governing inspection

The Commission shall prescribe, and from time to time may amend, regulations concerning the inspection of vessels conforming as nearly as practicable to the laws and regulations governing marine inspection by the United States Coast Guard.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title I, §1813, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 493.)

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Marine inspection, see section 3301 et seq. of Title 46, Shipping.

## SUBCHAPTER II—TREATY TRANSITION PERIOD

### PART 1—LAWS CONTINUED IN FORCE

#### § 3831. Laws, regulations, and administrative authority

To the extent not inconsistent with the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 and related agreements and the provisions of this chapter, the Canal Zone Code and other laws, regulations, and administrative authority of the United States applicable in the Canal Zone immediately before October 1, 1979, shall continue in force for the purpose of the exercise by the United States of law enforcement and judicial jurisdiction during the transition period provided for in Article XI of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 (hereinafter in this chapter referred to as the “transition period”).

(Pub. L. 96-70, title II, §2101, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 493.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 96-70, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 452, known as the Panama Canal Act of 1979, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3601 of this title and Tables.

The transition period, referred to in text, is the 30 calendar month period beginning Oct. 1, 1979, and ending midnight Mar. 31, 1982.

#### EX. ORD. NO. 12173. CONTINUING APPLICABILITY OF PANAMA CANAL REGULATIONS

Ex. Ord. No. 12173, Nov. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 69271, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 12203, Mar. 26, 1980, 45 F.R. 20451, provided:

By the authority vested in me as President of the United States of America by Section 301 of Title 3 of the United States Code, by the Panama Canal Code (76A Stat. 1), as amended, and by Public Law 96-70 (93

Stat. 452) [see Short Title note set out under section 3601 of this title], and in accordance with the rights granted to the United States of America by the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 “to manage, operate, and maintain the Panama Canal, its complementary works, installations and equipment and to provide for the orderly transit of vessels through the Panama Canal,” it is hereby ordered as follows:

1-101. All regulations that were adopted by the President or his delegates pursuant to former Title 2 of the Canal Zone Code (76A Stat. 6-50), repealed by Section 303(a)(1) [probably should be 3303(a)(1)] of Public Law 96-70, or actions taken pursuant thereto, that were in effect on September 30, 1979, and that address matters which the President is authorized to regulate pursuant to Public Law 96-70 [see Short Title note set out under section 3601 of this title], shall remain in effect unless or until amended, superseded, or otherwise terminated by the President or the Panama Canal Commission. This extension shall not apply to the extent that any such regulation or action is inconsistent with the provisions of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977, its implementing agreements, or Public Law 96-70.

1-102. The Secretary of Defense shall exercise the powers and carry out the responsibilities vested in the President of the United States by the Panama Canal Code (76A Stat. 1), as amended, and Public Law 96-70 (93 Stat. 452), except for those powers and responsibilities vested in the President by Sections 1102(b), 1103, 1104, 1105(a), 1106(b), 1108, 1109(a), 1112(d), 1243(a)(1), 1321(c), 1344(b), 1504(b), 1601(a), 2206(b) and 3301 of Public Law 96-70 [sections 3612(b), 3613, 3614, 3615(a), 3616(b), 3618, 3619(a), 3622(d), 3681(a)(1), 3731(c), 3754(b), 3784(b), 3791(a), 3844(b) and 3871 of this title]. This delegation shall be effective until May 15, 1980.

JIMMY CARTER.

### PART 2—Courts

#### § 3841. Jurisdiction

##### (a) Continuance during transition period

During the transition period, the jurisdiction of the United States District Court for the District of the Canal Zone and the magistrates' courts under title 3 of the Canal Zone Code shall be continued, subject to the limitations set forth in Article XI of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977.

##### (b) Construction of terms

For purposes of the exercise of the jurisdiction provided in Article XI of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977, the United States District Court and magistrates' courts referred to in subsection (a) of this section shall construe the terms “United States citizen employees”, “members of the United States Forces”, “civilian component”, and “dependents” as such terms are defined in the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 and related agreements, and shall construe the term “areas and installations made available for the use of the United States” to mean (1) the Panama Canal operating areas and housing areas described in Annex A to the Agreement in Implementation of Article III of the Panama Canal Treaty, (2) the Ports of Balboa and Cristobal described in Annex B to that Agreement, and (3) the defense sites and Military Areas of Coordination described in Annex A to the Agreement in Implementation of Article IV of the Panama Canal Treaty.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title II, §2201, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 493.)

**§ 3842. Division and terms of United States District Court for the District of the Canal Zone**

The United States District Court for the District of the Canal Zone may conduct its affairs at such places within the areas made available for the use of the United States pursuant to the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 and related agreements, and at such times, as the district judge may designate by rule or order.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title II, §2202, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 494.)

**§ 3843. Terms of certain offices**

Notwithstanding the provisions of sections 5, 41, 45, and 82 of title 3 of the Canal Zone Code, the term of office of a district judge, magistrate, United States attorney, or United States marshal shall extend for a period of 30 months beginning on October 1, 1979, and any such term shall be subject to such extension of time as may be provided for the disposition of pending cases by agreement between the United States and the Republic of Panama, pursuant to the last sentence of paragraph 7 of Article XI of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title II, §2203(a), Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 494.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 2203(b) of Pub. L. 96-70 provided that: "The provisions of this section [enacting this section] shall take effect on the date of the enactment of this Act [Sept. 27, 1979]."

**§ 3844. Magistrates' courts**

**(a) Operation during transition period**

The two magistrates' courts established pursuant to section 81 of title 3 of the Canal Zone Code and existing immediately before October 1, 1979, shall continue in operation during the transition period unless terminated during such period under subsection (b) of this section.

**(b) Termination of one court; exercise of jurisdiction and retention of records by other court**

During the transition period, the President may terminate one magistrate's court, together with the positions of magistrate and constable corresponding thereto, if the President determines that the workload is insufficient to warrant continuance of that court. If one of the magistrates' courts is so terminated, the remaining magistrate's court shall exercise the jurisdiction that otherwise would have been exercised by the terminated court and shall take custody of and administer all records of the terminated court.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title II, §2206, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 494.)

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions vested in President by this section delegated to Secretary of Defense, see section 1-303 of Ex. Ord. No. 12215, May 27, 1980, 45 F.R. 36044, set out as a note under section 3601 of this title.

PART 3—TRANSITION AUTHORITY

**§ 3851. Transition authority of President**

Except as expressly provided to the contrary in this chapter or any other Act, or in the Pan-

ama Canal Treaty of 1977 and related agreements, any authority necessary for the exercise during the transition period of the rights and responsibilities of the United States specified in Article XI of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 shall be vested in the President.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title II, §2401, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 495.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 96-70, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 452, known as the Panama Canal Act of 1979, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3601 of this title and Tables.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions vested in President by this section delegated to Secretary of Defense, see section 1-105 of Ex. Ord. No. 12215, May 27, 1980, 45 F.R. 36043, set out as a note under section 3601 of this title.

**§ 3852. Commitment of prisoners to custody of Attorney General or Commission**

(a) Omitted.

(b) After October 1, 1979—

(1) all prisoners imprisoned in United States prisons pursuant to contracts entered into pursuant to subsection (c) of section 6503 of title 6 of the Canal Zone Code shall be committed to the custody of the Attorney General as if committed in accordance with part III of title 18;

(2) all persons convicted of offenses in the United States District Court for the District of the Canal Zone, and sentenced to terms of imprisonment of one year or less, shall be committed to the custody of the Commission; and

(3) the Commission shall prescribe, and from time to time may amend, regulations providing for the management of prisoners in the jails located in the areas and installations made available for the use of the United States pursuant to the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 and related agreements, including provisions for treatment, care, assignment for work, discipline, and welfare.

(c) After October 1, 1979, all persons convicted of offenses in the United States District Court for the District of the Canal Zone, and sentenced to terms of imprisonment in excess of one year, shall be committed to the custody of the Attorney General pursuant to parts III and IV of title 18.

(d) Omitted.

(e) Subsections (c) and (d) of this section shall take effect 90 days after entry into force of the prisoner transfer agreement referred to in paragraph 11 of Article IX of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 but in no event later than 90 days prior to the end of the transition period.

(f) Omitted.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title II, §2402, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 495.)

CODIFICATION

Subsecs. (a), (d), and (f) amended the Canal Zone Code.

TERMINATION OF UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT FOR  
THE DISTRICT OF THE CANAL ZONE

For termination of the United States District Court for the District of the Canal Zone at end of the "transition period", being the 30-month period beginning Oct. 1, 1979, and ending midnight Mar. 31, 1982, see Paragraph 5 of Article XI of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977 and sections 3831 and 3841 to 3843 of this title.

SUBCHAPTER III—GENERAL PROVISIONS

PART 1—CEMETERIES

**§ 3861. Disinterment, transportation, and reinterment of remains**

(a) There are authorized to be appropriated for the fiscal year beginning October 1, 1979, and subsequent fiscal years, such sums as may be necessary to carry out the purposes and provisions of Reservation (3) to the Resolution of Ratification of the Treaty Concerning the Permanent Neutrality and Operation of the Panama Canal, adopted by the United States Senate on March 16, 1978, such sums to be made available to those agencies that are directed and empowered by the President to carry out such purposes and provisions.

(b) With regard to remains that are to be reinterred in the United States, the United States shall not bear the cost of funeral home services, vaults, plots, or crypts unless otherwise provided for by law.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title III, §3101, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 496.)

PART 2—ADMINISTRATION

**§ 3871. Annual report**

Until the termination of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977, the President shall report annually on the status of the exercise of the rights and responsibilities of the United States under that Treaty. Such report shall include a discussion of the following:

(1) The actions taken by the Government of the Republic of Panama with respect to the living conditions of persons who resided in the Canal Zone before October 1, 1979, and who continue to reside in those areas made available to the United States under the Agreement in Implementation of Article III of the Panama Canal Treaty.

(2) The terms, conditions, and charges for land-use licenses within the canal operating areas specified in the Agreement in Implementation of Article III of the Panama Canal Treaty.

(3) The condition of former employees (and their dependents) of the Panama Canal Company and the Canal Zone Government who reside in the Republic of Panama on or after October 1, 1979.

(Pub. L. 96-70, title III, §3301, Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 497.)

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions vested in President by this section delegated to Secretary of State who shall perform such function in coordination with Secretary of Defense pursuant to section 1-401 of Ex. Ord. No. 12215, May 27, 1980, 45 F.R. 36044, set out as a note under section 3601 of this title.

REPORT TO CONGRESS ON CONDITION OF PANAMA CANAL  
AND CANAL OPERATIONS

Pub. L. 100-203, title V, §5418, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1330-271, provided that: "Out of the funds authorized to be appropriated by this part [part 1, §§5411 to 5418, of subtitle E of Pub. L. 100-203], the Commission shall prepare and submit to the Congress a report on—

"(1) the condition of the Panama Canal and potential adverse effects on United States shipping and commerce;

"(2) the effect on canal operations of the military forces under General Noriega; and

"(3) the Commission's evaluation of the effect on canal operations if the Panamanian Government continues to withhold its consent to major factors in the United States Senate's ratification of the Panama Canal Treaties."

**§ 3872. Notification requirements**

The Panama Canal Commission shall provide written advance notification to the Committee on Merchant Marine and Fisheries of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Armed Services of the Senate regarding—

(1) any proposed change in the rates of tolls for use of the Panama Canal;

(2) any payment estimated to be due the Republic of Panama under paragraph 4(c) of Article XIII of the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977, as provided by section 3751 of this title; and

(3) the initiation of any major capital acquisition or construction project exceeding \$10,000,000 unless the proposed acquisition or project was included in the budget estimates submitted to Congress for the fiscal year in which the acquisition or project is to be undertaken.

(Pub. L. 101-189, div. C, title XXXV, §3503, Nov. 29, 1989, 103 Stat. 1689.)

CODIFICATION

Section enacted as part of the Panama Canal Commission Authorization Act, Fiscal Year 1990, and as part of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Years 1990 and 1991, and not as part of the Panama Canal Act of 1979 which comprises this chapter.

ABOLITION OF HOUSE COMMITTEE ON MERCHANT MARINE  
AND FISHERIES

Committee on Merchant Marine and Fisheries of House of Representatives abolished and its jurisdiction transferred by House Resolution No. 6, One Hundred Fourth Congress, Jan. 4, 1995. Committee on Merchant Marine and Fisheries of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on National Security of House of Representatives in case of provisions relating to interoceanic canals, Merchant Marine Academy and State Maritime Academies, or national security aspects of merchant marine by section 1(b)(3) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

**CHAPTER 52—FOREIGN SERVICE**

SUBCHAPTER I—GENERAL PROVISIONS

Sec.

3901. Congressional findings and objectives.

3902. Definitions.

3903. Members of Service.

3904. Functions of Service.

3905. Personnel actions.

(a) Merit principles; "personnel action" defined.

|                                     |  |               |   |
|-------------------------------------|--|---------------|---|
| Sec.                                | (b) Rules and regulations; discrimination; reprisals for disclosure of information; submission of reports, evaluations, or recommendations; freedom from prohibited personnel practices.   | Sec.<br>3944. | Chiefs of Mission.<br>(a) Qualifications; preference for career members; political contributions as factor in appointment; demonstrated competency report.  |
|                                     | (c) Withholding or disclosure of information to Congress.  |               | (b) Furnishing of information by Secretary; political campaign contributions report.  |
|                                     | (d) Minority recruitment program; report to Congress.  |               | (c) Foreign language competency report.   |
|                                     | (e) Applicability to other judicial or statutory rights or remedies.   | 3945.         | Senior Foreign Service.<br>(a) Salary class.<br>(b) Limited appointment.<br>(c) Appointments by Secretary of Commerce.<br>(d) Recertification process.  |
| SUBCHAPTER II—MANAGEMENT OF SERVICE |  |               |   |
| 3921.                               | Administration by Secretary of State.  |               |   |
| 3922.                               | Utilization of Foreign Service personnel system by other agencies.   | 3946.         | Career appointments.<br>(a) Trial period under limited appointment.<br>(b) Decisions by Secretary.<br>(c) Foreign Service Grievance Board decisions.  |
| 3922a.                              | Representation of minorities and women in Foreign Service.<br>(a) Development of program.<br>(b) Emphasis on mid-levels.   |               |   |
| 3923.                               | Compatibility among agencies utilizing Foreign Service personnel system.   | 3947.         | Entry levels for Foreign Service officer candidates.  |
| 3924.                               | Uniform and consolidated administration of Service.  | 3948.         | Recall and reappointment of career members.<br>(a) Retired career members.<br>(b) Former career members.  |
| 3925.                               | Compatibility between Foreign Service and other Government personnel systems.  | 3949.         | Limited appointments.   |
| 3926.                               | Regulations; delegation of functions.  | 3950.         | Reemployment rights following limited appointment.  |
| 3927.                               | Chief of mission.<br>(a) Duties.<br>(b) Duties of agencies with employees in foreign countries.<br>(c) Promotion of United States goods and services.  | 3951.         | United States citizens hired abroad.<br>(a) Appointment of family members.<br>(b) Family nexus as affirmative hiring factor.<br>(c) Compensation of family and non-family member employees.<br>(d) Non-family member employees ineligible for certain benefits.   |
| 3928.                               | Director General of Foreign Service.   |               |   |
| 3929.                               | Inspector General.<br>(a) Appointment; supervision by Secretary of State; prohibition against interference by State Department with certain duties; inspections, audits, and other functions; removal from office.<br>(b) Subject matter of inspections, investigations, and audits.<br>(c) Policies and procedures governing inspection and audit activities; coordination and cooperation with Comptroller General; report to Attorney General on criminal law violations.<br>(d) Reports by Inspector General and Secretary of State.<br>(e) Applicability of powers and responsibilities under other statutory provisions; assignment of Service employees to Inspector General.<br>(f) Reception and investigation of complaints or information; disclosure of identity of informer.<br>(g) Review of activities and operations of chiefs of mission. | 3952.         | Diplomatic and consular missions.<br>(a) Recommendations by Secretary of State; appointment by President; vice consul; performance of official functions under commission.<br>(b) Function of commissioned Service members.<br>(c) Limits of consular districts.  |
| 3929a.                              | Abolishment of Inspector General of Department of State and Foreign Service.   | 3961.         | Salaries of chiefs of mission.  |
| 3930.                               | Board of Foreign Service.  | 3962.         | Salaries of Senior Foreign Service members.<br>(a) Prescription by President; basic salary rates; adjustments; determinations by Secretary.<br>(b) Career appointees in Senior Executive Service accepting limited appointment in Senior Foreign Service; adjustment.   |
| 3931.                               | Board of Examiners.<br>(a) Establishment; membership; chairman.<br>(b) Review of examinations; report to Secretary of State.<br>(c) Vacancies.   | 3963.         | Foreign Service Schedule.   |
| SUBCHAPTER III—APPOINTMENTS         |  |               |   |
| 3941.                               | General provisions.<br>(a) Citizenship requirement.<br>(b) Examinations.<br>(c) Veteran or disabled veteran.<br>(d) Career and noncareer appointments.   | 3964.         | Assignments to salary class.  |
| 3942.                               | Appointments by the President.   | 3965.         | Performance pay.<br>(a) Eligibility; additional lump sum payment; excessive compensation not precluding award.<br>(b) Criteria; limitations.<br>(c) Determination of amount by Secretary; distribution on basis of selection board recommendations.<br>(d) Recommendations for meritorious or distinguished service awards. |
| 3943.                               | Appointments by the Secretary.   | 3966.         | Within-class salary increases.<br>(a) Time period; limitation.<br>(b) Additional increase for meritorious service.  |
|                                     |  | 3967.         | Salaries for Foreign Service personnel abroad who perform routine duties.   |
|                                     |  | 3968.         | Local compensation plans.<br>(a) Establishment; rates of pay; leaves of absence; supplemental payments; transfer from Civil Service Retirement and Disability Fund.   |

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>Sec.</p> <p>3969. Salaries of consular agents.</p> <p>3970. Compensation for imprisoned foreign national employees.</p> <p>3971. Temporary service as principal officer.</p> <p>3972. Special differentials.</p> <p>3973. Death gratuities.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">SUBCHAPTER V—CLASSIFICATION OF POSITIONS AND ASSIGNMENTS</p> <p>3981. Authority of Secretary.</p> <p>3982. Assignments to Foreign Service positions.</p> <p>3983. Assignments to non-Service and other positions.</p> <p>3984. Service in United States and abroad.</p> <p>3985. Temporary details.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">SUBCHAPTER VI—PROMOTION AND RETENTION</p> <p>4001. Promotions.</p> <p>4002. Establishment of selection boards.</p> <p>4003. Recommendations and rankings.</p> <p>4004. Confidentiality of records.</p> <p>4005. Implementation of selection board recommendations.</p> <p>4006. Other bases for promoting or increasing pay.</p> <p>4007. Retirement for expiration of time in class.</p> | <p>Sec.</p> <p>4008. Retirement based on failure to meet standard of performance.</p> <p>4009. Retirement benefits.</p> <p>4010. Separation for cause.</p> <p>4010a. Reductions in force.</p> <p>4011. Termination of limited appointments.</p> <p>4012. Termination of appointments of consular agents and foreign national employees.</p> <p>4012a. Foreign national employees separation pay.</p> <p>4013. Foreign Service awards.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">SUBCHAPTER VII—CAREER DEVELOPMENT, TRAINING, AND ORIENTATION</p> <p>4021. Institution for training.</p> <p>4022. Foreign language requirements.</p> <p>4023. Career development program.</p> <p>4024. Functions of Secretary.</p> <p>4025. Training grants.</p> <p>4026. Career counseling.</p> <p>4027. Visiting Scholars Program.</p> |
|--|--|
- (b) Employment programs.  
(c) Regulations.
- (a) Eligibility; rates of compensation; terms and conditions of payment; applicability of powers under other statutory provisions.  
(b) Time spent imprisoned considered as period of employment.  
(c) Time of filing of claims.  
(d) Regulations.
- (a) Additional work requirements.  
(b) Repealed.  
(c) Compensatory time off.
- (a) Criteria; amount; payment deemed gift.  
(b) Eligibility to elect monthly compensation as condition to payment.  
(c) Order of payment.  
(d) Definitions.
- (a) Positions assignable; basis for assignment.  
(b) Filling of positions by members of Service; employment of members of State Department and other agencies.  
(c) Charge d'affaires.  
(d) Competitive ability with respect to chief of mission positions and for assignments outside areas of specialization.
- (a) Positions assignable.  
(b) Salary; travel and other expenses.  
(c) Length of assignment.
- (a) Obligation to serve abroad; length of stay in United States.  
(b) Intermittent duty within United States.  
(c) Sabbaticals.
- (a) Method of promotion.  
(b) Recommendations and rankings of selection boards.  
(c) Eligibility; request for promotion; time of consideration; withdrawal of request; basis for decision; affidavits.
- (a) Evaluation of performance; recommendations.  
(b) Public members; appointment of women and minority groups.  
(c) Disqualification for service on foreign service selection boards.
- (a) Facilitation of transition from Service.
- (b) Facilitation of employment of spouses of members; establishment of family liaison office.
- (a) Establishment of program.  
(b) Selection and appointment of scholars.  
(c) Establishment of selection board.
- (d) Extensions.
- (a) Entitlement.  
(b) Computation of amount; refund; death of member.
- (a) Authorization of Secretary; hearing prior to separation; waiver of hearing; suspension pending final resolution.  
(b) Refund of contributions to Fund; annuity election.
- (a) Authorization and regulations.  
(b) Applicability of retirement benefits.  
(c) Grievance procedure.
- (a) Establishment.  
(b) Funding.  
(c) Availability.  
(d) Expenditures from fund.
- (a) Institution or center for training.  
(b) Provision of training.  
(c) Training and instruction to citizens of Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands.  
(d) Training and instruction of employees of foreign governments.
- (a) Establishment; primary attention and emphasis.  
(b) Primary direction for Junior Foreign Service officer training and mid-career training.  
(c) Purpose; completion of training as condition for placement or appointment.  
(d) University degree credit.  
(e) Institutions conducting training.
- (a) Nature and correlation of training and instruction; encouragement of complementary programs; employment of personnel; acquisition of property and equipment.  
(b) Payment of salary, tuition, and other expenses; special monetary or other incentives.  
(c) Orientation and training for family members.
- (a) Family members attending approved programs of study; limitations.  
(b) Compensation for individuals unable to participate in language training furnished by Government.
- (a) Selection and appointment of scholars.

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>Sec.</p> <p>SUBCHAPTER VIII—FOREIGN SERVICE<br/>RETIREMENT AND DISABILITY</p> <p>PART I—FOREIGN SERVICE RETIREMENT AND DISABILITY<br/>SYSTEM</p> <p>4041. Administration.</p> <p>4042. Maintenance of Fund.</p> <p>4043. Participants.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(a) Career appointees or candidates; chiefs of mission.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(b) Executive branch appointees.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(c) Binational Center Grantees.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(d) Exclusion.</p> <p>4044. Definitions.</p> <p>4045. Contributions to Fund.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(a) Rates and sources; deposits in Fund.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(b) Consent to deduction; discharge and acquittance of claims and demands.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(c) Transfer of contributions from other Government retirement fund.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(d) Contribution for civilian service; creditability of interim service.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(e) Contribution for military or naval service.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(f) Exemption for certain military or naval service.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(g) Time of payment; offset against initial annuity accruals.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(h) Computation of contributions for participants with certain creditable civilian service.</p> <p>4046. Computation of annuities.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(a) Measurements; reduction for special contributions; Foreign Service investigators/inspectors.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(b) Married participants.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(c) Surviving children.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(d) Recomputation for remaining children.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(e) Payment period for child.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(f) Unmarried participants.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(g) Marriage after retirement.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(h) Election of benefits.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(i) Reversion to retired status.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(j) Recomputation upon dissolution of marriage; election after remarriage.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(k) Informing of rights by Secretary.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(l) Repealed.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(m) Offset of Social Security benefits.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(n) 18-month period to elect survivor annuity.</p> <p>4047. Payment of annuity.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(a) Commencement of annuity.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(b) Survivor's annuity; application; proof of eligibility; payment to estate.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(c) Waiver.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(d) Recovery of overpayment.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(e) Alternate forms of annuities.</p> <p>4048. Retirement for disability or incapacity.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(a) Causes; service credit.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(b) Physical examination; reinstatement or reappointment upon recovery; fees and expenses; duration and suspension of annuity.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(c) Benefits upon discontinuance of annuity.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(d) Election of benefits; concurrent benefits allowed.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(e) Lump sum disability payments.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(f) Time of filing application; waiver.</p> <p>4049. Death in service.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(a) Lump-sum credit.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(b) Surviving spouse.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(c) Surviving spouse or former spouse, and children.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(d) Surviving children.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(e) Service credit; presumption of qualification.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(f) Recall service.</p> | <p>Sec.</p> <p>(g) Limitation on surviving spouse's annuity.</p> <p>(h) Commencement, termination, and resumption of annuities.</p> <p>4050. Discontinued service retirement.</p> <p>4051. Voluntary retirement.</p> <p>4052. Mandatory retirement.</p> <p>4053. Reassignment and retirement of former Presidential appointees.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(a) Reassignment or retirement of participants not eligible for retirement.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(b) Retirement of participants eligible for retirement.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(c) Retirement of reemployed participants.</p> <p>4054. Former spouses.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(a) Living Service members.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(b) Deceased Service members.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(c) Additional survivor annuity.</p> <p>4055. Lump-sum payments.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(a) Requirements for payment.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(b) Recall service; return of contributions.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(c) Difference between annuity and lump-sum credit.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(d) Lack of eligible survivors.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(e) Death of annuitant who was former participant.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(f) Order of precedence for payments.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(g) Death of survivor annuitant.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(h) Amount of credit.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(i) Former spouses.</p> <p>4056. Creditable service.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(a) Applicability of civil service provisions.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(b) Unused sick leave credit.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(c) Service with other Government agency when on approved leave without pay; arrangement for payment of retirement deductions and agency contributions; special contribution.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(d) Special contribution in repayment of refund of retirement contributions.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(e) Civilian service under other Government retirement system.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(f) Service in military during period of war or national emergency.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(g) Recomputation of annuity for participants of Japanese ancestry interned during World War II.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(h) Service as employees of Member or office of Congress while on approved leave without pay.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(i) Former spouses.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(j) Redetermination of credit for military and naval service.</p> <p>4057. Extra credit for service at unhealthful posts.</p> <p>4058. Estimate of appropriations needed.</p> <p>4059. Investment of Fund.</p> <p>4060. Assignment and attachment of moneys.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(a) Annuities and severance pay benefits.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(b) Participants or annuitants having former spouses.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(c) Applicability of other provisions of law or remedies.</p> <p>4061. Payments for future benefits.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(a) Statutes deemed to authorize appropriations to Fund to finance unfunded liability.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(b) Authorization of appropriations to Fund.</p> <p>4062. Unfunded liability obligations.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(a) Notice of interest and military service credit.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(b) Credit to Fund.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(c) Reports to Congress.</p> <p>4063. Annuity adjustment for recall service.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(a) Full salary in lieu of annuity; contributions to Fund; resumption of annuity with cost-of-living adjustment.</p> |
|--|---|

- |          |   |  |  |
|----------|---|--|--|
| Sec.     |   | Sec.                                   |  |
|          | (b) Refund of contributions to Fund; election for supplemental annuity or determination of annuity anew; prior service counted as recall service.         |  | (c) Period of entitlement; construction with other provisions; application approval and payment.                   |
|          | (c) Annuitant subject to Foreign Service Pension System.  |  | (d) "Benefits" defined.  |
| 4064.    | Reemployment.   | 4069b.                                 | Survivor benefits for certain former spouses.  |
|          | (a) Termination of annuity; coverage under same retirement system or another contributory retirement system; rights and benefits.                         |  | (a) Eligibility; amount of annuity.  |
|          | (b) Part-time, intermittent, or temporary employment; election to continue receiving annuity; reduction in amount of annuity; resumption of full annuity. |  | (b) Election by former spouse.   |
|          | (c) Amount of annuity on resumption; amount resulting from redetermination of rights.   |  | (c) Disqualification.  |
|          | (d) Annuity rights to be determined under this section.   |  | (d) Period of entitlement; application approval and payment.   |
|          | (e) Notice; direct payment of salary.   |  | (e) Promulgation of regulations; notification of rights.   |
|          | (f) Recovery of overpayment.  |  | (f) Effect of section on annuity.  |
| 4065.    | Voluntary contribution account.   | 4069b-1.                               | Survivor benefits for certain former spouses.  |
|          | (a) Composition; election and return.   |  | (a) Eligibility; amount of annuity.  |
|          | (b) Computation of benefits.  |  | (b) Election by former spouse.   |
|          | (c) Lump-sum payment; time; order of precedence.  |  | (c) Disqualification.  |
| 4066.    | Cost-of-living adjustment of annuities.   |  | (d) Period of entitlement; application approval and payment.   |
|          | (a) Effective date.   |  | (e) Promulgation of regulations; notification of rights.   |
|          | (b) Applicability of increases under other provisions of law.   |  | (f) Effect of section on annuity.  |
|          | (c) Eligibility for increases.  | 4069c.                                 | Health benefits for certain former spouses.  |
|          | (d) Exclusion of additional annuity purchased after retirement by voluntary contribution.   |  | (a) Eligibility.   |
|          | (e) Rounding off of amount; minimum increases.  |  | (b) Prerequisites for enrollment; notification of rights.  |
|          | (f) Rate of increase for surviving spouses of annuitants electing reduced annuity.  |  | (c) Disqualification.  |
|          | (g) Maximum annuity.  |  | (d) Prohibition on coverage by more than one plan.   |
| 4067.    | Compatibility between retirement systems.   |  | (e) "Health benefits plan" defined.  |
|          | (a) Civil Service and Foreign Service Retirement Systems.   |  | (f) Former spouses of United States Information Agency and Agency for International Development employees.         |
|          | (b) Regulations to implement prescribed by Executive order.   | 4069c-1.                               | Health benefits for certain former spouses.  |
|          | (c) Federal Employees' Retirement and Foreign Service Pension Systems.  |  | (a) Eligibility.   |
| 4068.    | Remarriage.   |  | (b) Prerequisites for enrollment; notification of rights.  |
| 4069.    | Thrift Savings Fund participation.  |  | (c) Disqualification.  |
| 4069-1.  | Qualified former wives and husbands.  |  | (d) Prohibition on coverage by more than one plan.   |
|          | (a) Construction with provisions relating to compatibility between retirement systems; effective dates.   |  | (e) "Health benefits plan" defined.  |
|          | (b) Payments to other persons as provided in court order or spousal agreement.  | PART II—FOREIGN SERVICE PENSION SYSTEM |  |
|          | (c) "Qualified former wife or husband" defined.   | 4071.                                  | Establishment; application of Federal Employees' Retirement System to Foreign Service Pension System participants. |
|          | (d) Promulgation of regulations.  | 4071a.                                 | Definitions.   |
| 4069a.   | Retirement benefits for certain former spouses.   | 4071b.                                 | Participants.  |
|          | (a) Eligibility; percentage of benefits.  |  | (a) Covered members.   |
|          | (b) Disqualification.   |  | (b) Exclusion of participants in Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System.                                 |
|          | (c) Period of entitlement; construction with other provisions; application approval and payment.  |  | (c) Exclusion of individuals with certain creditable civilian service.   |
|          | (d) "Benefits" defined.   |  | (d) Exclusion of temporary or intermittent employees.  |
|          | (e) Effect of section on annuity.   | 4071c.                                 | Creditable service.  |
|          | (f) Former spouses of United States Information Agency and Agency for International Development employees.  |  | (a) Service included.  |
| 4069a-1. | Retirement benefits for certain former spouses.   |  | (b) Refund of retirement deductions; retirement deduction not made; required deposit; computation of interest.     |
|          | (a) Eligibility; percentage of benefits.  |  | (c) Volunteer service; required payment.   |
|          | (b) Disqualification.   |  | (d) Prior service under other retirement system; waiver of credit and payment into Fund.                           |
|          |   |  | (e) Employees of Members or offices of Congress.   |
|          |   | 4071d.                                 | Entitlement to annuity.  |
|          |   |  | (a) Retirement conditions; definitions.  |
|          |   |  | (b) Voluntary or mandatory retirement with authorization for immediate annuity; computation of annuity.            |



|        |   |       |  |
|--------|---|-------|--|
| Sec.   | (c) Annuity supplement.<br>(d) Separation for cause based on dis-loyalty.   | Sec.  | (e) Removal of members.  |
| 4071e. | Deductions and withholdings from pay.<br>(a) Basic pay.<br>(b) Consent to deductions; discharge of claims.<br>(c) Deposit of amounts.<br>(d) Entry on individual retirement records.  | 4107. | Functions of Foreign Service Labor Relations Board.<br>(a) General provisions.<br>(b) Consistency or precedence of decisions under other provisions of law.<br>(c) Implementation.   |
| 4071f. | Government contributions.   | 4108. | Functions of General Counsel.  |
| 4071g. | Cost-of-living adjustments.   | 4109. | Judicial review and enforcement.<br>(a) Persons entitled to maintain action; time of filing; venue.<br>(b) Enforcement of order; temporary relief or restraining order.<br>(c) Applicability of other provisions of law.<br>(d) Unfair labor practices.  |
| 4071h. | General and administrative provisions.<br>(a) Administration by Secretary of State; issuance of regulations.<br>(b) Appeal of determinations.<br>(c) Periodic valuations by Secretary of the Treasury.  | 4110. | Foreign Service Impasse Disputes Panel.<br>(a) Establishment; composition.<br>(b) Compensation; travel expenses.<br>(c) Impasse investigation and settlement; hearings and other actions upon failure to settle; notice; binding nature of action.   |
| 4071i. | Transition provisions.  | 4111. | Exclusive recognition.<br>(a) Secret ballot election; majority vote.<br>(b) Investigation of petition; hearing; supervision of election; certification of results; length of time between elections.<br>(c) Intervention of labor organizations; placement on ballot.<br>(d) Eligibility to vote; regulations; choices on ballot; preferential voting; certification as exclusive representative.<br>(e) Submission of required material.<br>(f) Grounds for denial of exclusive recognition status.<br>(g) Waiver of hearings; consent elections. |
| 4071j. | Former spouses.<br>(a) Entitlement to share in benefits; conditions; remarriage; payments as income to former spouse; disability annuitants; election regarding method of payment; maximum amount payable.<br>(b) Entitlement to survivor benefits; determination of share; disqualification upon remarriage.<br>(c) Diminution of entitlement of former spouse prohibited.<br>(d) Transfer of participant from Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System; determination of benefit share.<br>(e) Death of participant entitled to deferred annuity; spousal agreement; payment of survivor annuity. | 4112. | Employees represented.   |
| 4071k. | Spousal agreements.   | 4113. | Representation rights and duties.<br>(a) Negotiation of collective bargaining agreements; nondiscriminatory representation.<br>(b) Places of representation.<br>(c) Duty to bargain in good faith; determination of techniques assisting negotiation.<br>(d) Applicability to other employee rights or remedies.<br>(e) Obligations included in good faith bargaining.<br>(f) Approval of agreement by Secretary; effective date; binding effect.<br>(g) Consultation by Department with exclusive representative.                                 |
|        | SUBCHAPTER IX—TRAVEL, LEAVE, AND OTHER BENEFITS   |       |  |
| 4081.  | Travel and related expenses.  |       |  |
| 4082.  | Loan of household effects.  |       |  |
| 4083.  | Required leave.<br>(a) Criteria; length of continuous service.<br>(b) Place leave may be taken.<br>(c) Availability for work or duties in Department.   |       |  |
| 4084.  | Health care program.<br>(a) Establishment.<br>(b) Services provided.<br>(c) Facilities; employment of personnel.<br>(d) Costs of treatment.<br>(e) Death or separation of member.<br>(f) Review; medical care contracts.  |       |  |
| 4085.  | Entertainment and representation expenses.  | 4114. | Resolution of implementation disputes.<br>(a) Grievance procedure.<br>(b) Review by Foreign Service Labor Relations Board.<br>(c) Time of filing exceptions; finality and binding nature of action.<br>(d) Judicial review.  |
| 4086.  | Entitlement to vote in a State in a Federal election; preconditions; applicability.   | 4115. | Unfair labor practices.<br>(a) Department of State.<br>(b) Labor organizations.<br>(c) Personal views, arguments, opinions, or statements.<br>(d) Election of remedies.  |
|        | SUBCHAPTER X—LABOR-MANAGEMENT RELATIONS   | 4116. | Prevention of unfair labor practices.<br>(a) Investigation by General Counsel; issuance of complaint; statement of reasons.<br>(b) Notice in complaint.<br>(c) Answer; personal appearance.<br>(d) Time of filing of charges.<br>(e) Regulations providing for resolution through informal methods.<br>(f) Hearing.  |
| 4101.  | Congressional findings and policy.  |       |  |
| 4102.  | Definitions.  |       |  |
| 4103.  | Application.<br>(a) Departments and agencies affected.<br>(b) Exclusion of subdivisions.<br>(c) Suspension of provisions.   |       |  |
| 4104.  | Employee rights.  |       |  |
| 4105.  | Management rights.  |       |  |
| 4106.  | Foreign Service Labor Relations Board.<br>(a) Establishment; composition.<br>(b) Chairperson serving concurrently as Chairman of Authority; length of terms; designation of alternate Chairperson.<br>(c) Vacancies.<br>(d) Holding other Government offices or positions; compensation.  |       |  |

- |       |  |        |  |
|-------|--|--------|--|
| Sec.  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(g) Findings of fact relative to issuance of orders; backpay.</li> <li>(h) Findings of fact requiring dismissal of complaint.</li> </ul>  | Sec.   | <p style="text-align: center;">SUBCHAPTER XI—FOREIGN SERVICE<br/>INTERNSHIP PROGRAM</p>  |
| 4117. | Standards of conduct for labor organizations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Freedom from corrupt influences and influences opposed to basic democratic principles.</li> <li>(b) Furnishing of information.</li> <li>(c) Reports; bonding of officials and other employees; compliance with trusteeship and election standards.</li> <li>(d) Regulations; filing of complaints; cease and desist orders.</li> <li>(e) Participation in labor organizations restricted.</li> <li>(f) Willful and intentional violations.</li> </ul> | 4141.  | Statement of policy; objectives. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Statement of policy.</li> <li>(b) Objectives.</li> </ul>   |
| 4118. | Administrative provisions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Assignment for deduction of dues.</li> <li>(b) Termination of assignment for deduction of dues.</li> <li>(c) Negotiations with uncertified labor organizations.</li> <li>(d) Official time usage.</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">SUBCHAPTER XI—GRIEVANCES</p>   | 4141a. | Foreign Service Internship Program. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Establishment.</li> <li>(b) Foreign Service Internship Program.</li> <li>(c) Eligibility to participate.</li> <li>(d) Summer internships.</li> <li>(e) Administration.</li> <li>(f) Mentors.</li> <li>(g) Compensation.</li> <li>(h) Study of Foreign Service examination.</li> </ul>   |
| 4131. | Definitions and applicability.   | 4141b. | Report to Congress.  |
| 4132. | Grievances concerning former members or their survivors.   | 4141c. | Authorization of appropriations. <p style="text-align: center;">SUBCHAPTER XII—TRANSITION</p>  |
| 4133. | Freedom of action. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Nature of protection.</li> <li>(b) Right to representation.</li> <li>(c) Administrative leave for witnesses.</li> <li>(d) Records.</li> <li>(e) Expedition of security clearance procedures.</li> </ul>  | 4151.  | Pay and benefits pending conversion.   |
| 4134. | Time limitations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) 3-year period.</li> <li>(b) Failure of Department to resolve grievance; grievance filed with Foreign Service Grievance Board.</li> <li>(c) Grievances based on alleged discrimination.</li> </ul>   | 4152.  | Conversion to Foreign Service Schedule.  |
| 4135. | Foreign Service Grievance Board. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Establishment; composition.</li> <li>(b) Appointment and selection of nominees; length of terms; vacancies.</li> <li>(c) Compensation.</li> <li>(d) Removal.</li> <li>(e) Administrative services; payment of expenses; assignment as staff employees of Board; performance evaluation reports; records.</li> </ul>  | 4153.  | Conversion to Senior Foreign Service. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Criteria; application less than 120 days after effective date of Foreign Service Act of 1980.</li> <li>(b) Limited appointment.</li> <li>(c) Career appointment.</li> <li>(d) Availability for worldwide assignment.</li> <li>(e) Application more than 120 days after effective date of Foreign Service Act of 1980.</li> <li>(f) Forced conversion.</li> </ul>  |
| 4136. | Foreign Service Grievance Board procedures.  | 4154.  | Conversion from Foreign Service. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Individuals serving under appointment.</li> <li>(b) United States Information Agency individuals.</li> <li>(c) Department of State security officers.</li> </ul>   |
| 4137. | Foreign Service Grievance Board decisions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Record; findings of fact and statement of reasons.</li> <li>(b) Authority of Department upon finding of meritorious grievance.</li> <li>(c) Finality of decisions; judicial review.</li> <li>(d) Recommendations.</li> <li>(e) Record of grievances; copy to committee of Congress; right of review.</li> <li>(f) Alleged discrimination; substantive law to be applied.</li> </ul>  | 4155.  | Conversion of certain positions in Department of Agriculture. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Designation and classification of positions to be occupied; notice.</li> <li>(b) Election to convert.</li> <li>(c) Recommendations for appointment.</li> <li>(d) Results of declining to convert.</li> </ul>  |
| 4138. | Access to records. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Review by Foreign Service Grievance Board of decision denying access.</li> <li>(b) Access by Foreign Service Grievance Board; relevant and material records; adverse effect on national security or foreign policy.</li> <li>(c) Access by grievant.</li> <li>(d) Denial of access as factor in determination of grievance.</li> <li>(e) Proceedings and decisions of Foreign Service Grievance Board.</li> </ul>  | 4156.  | Preservation of status and benefits. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Conversion to class, grade, or step corresponding to level prior to conversion; reduction in position or salary; conversion from Foreign Service under section 4154 of this title.</li> <li>(b) Participation in Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System.</li> <li>(c) Conversion to type of appointment corresponding in tenure to that prior to conversion.</li> <li>(d) Reappointment resulting from enactment of Foreign Service Act of 1980.</li> <li>(e) Deferment of retirement provisions.</li> </ul> |
| 4139. | Relationship to other remedies.  | 4157.  | Regulations.   |
| 4140. | Judicial review.   | 4158.  | Authority of other agencies.   |
|       |  | 4159.  | Survivor benefits for certain former spouses. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Eligible participants; election of benefits.</li> <li>(b) Time of election.</li> <li>(c) Portion of annuity as basis for benefits.</li> <li>(d) Amount of reduction; effective date.</li> <li>(e) Definitions.</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">SUBCHAPTER XIII—MISCELLANEOUS</p>  |
|       |  | 4171.  | Model foreign language competence posts. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Designation of posts; time of designation and implementation; determination of competency standards.</li> <li>(b) Continuation; report to Congress concerning operation of posts and advantages of meeting competency requirements.</li> </ul>   |

| Sec.  |  | <i>New</i>       | <i>Old</i>               |
|-------|--|------------------|--------------------------|
|       | (c) Exceptions; report to Congress.  |                  |                          |
| 4172. | Savings provisions.  | 3901 .....       | 801                      |
|       | (a) Determinations, authorizations, etc., under authority of Foreign Service Act of 1946 and grievances, claims, or appeals filed and pending on effective date of this chapter. | 3902 .....       | 802                      |
|       |  | 3903 .....       | 861                      |
|       |  | 3904 .....       | 841                      |
|       |  | 3905 .....       | 807                      |
|       |  | 3921 .....       | 811a                     |
|       |  | 3922 .....       | 1224, 2385, 2506         |
|       |  | 3923 .....       | 1225                     |
|       | (b) Increase in annuity or other right to benefits.  | 3924 .....       |                          |
|       |  | 3925 .....       | 1225                     |
|       |  | 3926 .....       | 842, 843                 |
|       |  | 3927 .....       | 2680a                    |
|       | (c) Cross references.  | 3928 .....       | 811a, 821                |
| 4173. | Congressional oversight of implementation.   | 3929 .....       | 2384 note                |
|       | (a), (b) Repealed.   | 3930 .....       | 826                      |
|       | (c) Consultation with agency representatives.  | 3931 .....       | 827                      |
|       |  | 3941 .....       | 910, 922, 939, 1234      |
|       |  | 3942 .....       | 901, 911, 961            |
|       |  | 3943 .....       | 922, 929, 936, 946, 951  |
|       |  | 3944 .....       | 900, 901a, 902           |
|       |  | 3945 .....       | 906                      |
|       |  | 3946 .....       | 911, 929                 |
|       |  | 3947 .....       | 911, 912                 |
| 4191. | General application of provisions to consular officers.  | 3948 .....       | 915                      |
| 4192. | Repealed.  | 3949 .....       | 922, 936                 |
| 4193. | Protests.  | 3950 .....       | 928                      |
| 4194. | Lists and returns of seamen and vessels, etc.  | 3951 .....       | 889 note, 2693           |
| 4195. | Estates of decedents generally; General Accounting Office as conservator.  | 3952 .....       | 907, 908, 924, 938, 1231 |
|       |  | 3962, 3963 ..... | 866, 881                 |
|       |  | 3964 .....       | 868                      |
| 4196. | Notification of death of decedent; transmission of inventory of effects.   | 3965 .....       |                          |
|       |  | 3966 .....       | 995, 1017                |
|       |  | 3967 .....       |                          |
| 4197. | Following testamentary directions; assistance to testamentary appointee.   | 3968 .....       | 889, 2693                |
|       |  | 3969 .....       | 873, 890                 |
|       |  | 3970 .....       | 889                      |
| 4198. | Bond as administrator or guardian; action on bond.   | 3971 .....       | 876, 877                 |
|       |  | 3972 .....       | 896                      |
| 4199. | Penalty for failure to give bond and for embezzlement.   | 3973 .....       | 2679a                    |
|       |  | 3981 .....       | 886                      |
|       |  | 3982 .....       | 901                      |
| 4200. | Certification of invoices generally.   | 3983 .....       | 961, 964, 966            |
| 4201. | Fees for certification of invoices.  | 3984 .....       | 961, 962, 966            |
| 4202. | Exaction of excessive fees for verification of invoices; penalty.  | 3985 .....       |                          |
|       |  | 4001 .....       | 991                      |
|       |  | 4002 .....       | 993                      |
| 4203. | Destruction of old invoices.   | 4003 .....       | 986, 996                 |
| 4204. | Restriction as to certificate for goods from countries adjacent to United States.  | 4004 .....       | 987                      |
|       |  | 4005, 4006 ..... | 993                      |
| 4205. | Retention of papers of American vessels until payment of demands and wages.  | 4007, 4008 ..... | 1003, 2385, 2506         |
|       |  | 4009 .....       | 1004, 2506               |
|       |  | 4010 .....       | 1007                     |
| 4206. | Fees for services to American vessels or seamen prohibited.  | 4011 .....       | 1005, 1008               |
|       |  | 4012 .....       | 1027, 1028, 1031         |
|       |  | 4013 .....       |                          |
| 4207. | Profits from dealings with discharged seamen; prohibition.   | 4021 .....       | 1041                     |
|       |  | 4022 .....       | 968, 2385                |
|       |  | 4023 .....       |                          |
| 4208. | Valuation of foreign coins in payment of fees.   | 4024 .....       | 1042-1045, 1047, 1048    |
| 4209. | Exaction of excessive fees generally; penalty of treble amount.  | 4025 .....       | 1048                     |
|       |  | 4026 .....       | 1009, 2693               |
|       |  | 4041 .....       | 1061                     |
| 4210. | Liability for uncollected fees.  | 4042 .....       | 1062                     |
| 4211. | Returns as to fees by officers compensated by fees.  | 4043 .....       | 929, 1063, 1229, 2385    |
|       |  | 4044 .....       | 1064, 1086               |
|       |  | 4045 .....       | 1071, 1086               |
|       |  | 4046 .....       | 1076                     |
| 4212. | Receipt for fees; numbering receipts.  | 4047 .....       | 1076a                    |
| 4213. | Registry of fees.  | 4048 .....       | 1081                     |
| 4214. | Account of fees; certification.  | 4049 .....       | 1082                     |
| 4215. | Notarial acts, oaths, affirmations, affidavits, and depositions; fees.   | 4050 .....       | 1084                     |
|       |  | 4051 .....       | 1006                     |
|       |  | 4052 .....       | 1001, 1002               |
| 4216. | Posting rates of fees.   | 4053 .....       | 914                      |
| 4217. | Embezzlement of fees or of effects of American citizens.   | 4054 .....       |                          |
|       |  | 4055 .....       | 1086                     |
|       |  | 4056 .....       | 1091                     |
| 4218. | False certificate as to ownership of property.   | 4057 .....       | 1093                     |
| 4219. | Regulation of fees by President.   | 4058 .....       | 1101                     |
| 4220. | Medium for payment of fees.  | 4059 .....       | 1103                     |
| 4221. | Depositions and notarial acts; perjury.  | 4060 .....       | 1004, 1104               |
| 4222. | Authentication of documents of State of Vatican City by consular officer in Rome.  | 4061 .....       | 1105                     |
|       |  | 4062 .....       | 1106                     |
|       |  | 4063 .....       | 1111                     |
| 4223. | General duty to account for fees.  | 4064 .....       | 1112                     |
| 4224. | Fees; accounting; stamps.  | 4065 .....       | 1116                     |
| 4225. | Fiscal districts; establishment; district accounting and disbursing offices; personnel; duties.  | 4066 .....       | 1121                     |
|       |  | 4067 .....       | 1065                     |
|       |  | 4081 .....       | 966, 1136, 1138, 1157    |
|       |  | 4082 .....       | 1137                     |
|       |  | 4083 .....       | 1148                     |
| 4226. | Fees and official monies from diplomatic missions, consular offices and district accounting and disbursing offices; disposition.   | 4084 .....       | 1156, 1158-1160          |
|       |  | 4085 .....       | 1131                     |
|       |  | 4101-4118 .....  |                          |
|       |  | 4131-4138 .....  | 1037a                    |
|       |  | 4139 .....       | 1037b                    |
|       |  | 4140 .....       | 1037c                    |
|       |  | 4151-4159 .....  |                          |
|       |  | 4171-4173 .....  |                          |
|       |  | 4191-4215 .....  | 1171-1195                |
|       |  | 4216 .....       | 1197                     |
|       |  | 4217 .....       | 1198                     |
|       |  | 4218-4222 .....  | 1200-1204                |

## CODIFICATION

Provisions of this chapter are derived from the Foreign Service Act of 1946, former section 801 et seq. of this title, and related and miscellaneous provisions as follows:

| <i>New</i>      | <i>Old</i> |
|-----------------|------------|
| 4223 .....      | 99         |
| 4224-4226 ..... | 812-814    |

FOREIGN COMMERCIAL SERVICE

For authority of Secretary of Commerce to establish a Foreign Commercial Service in Department of Commerce, see section 1-104 of Ex. Ord. No. 12188, Jan. 2, 1980, 45 F.R. 991, as amended, set out as a note under section 2171 of Title 19, Customs Duties.

CHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This chapter is referred to in sections 285a, 290g-1, 290i-2, 1474, 1928, 2021, 2024, 2385, 2391, 2396, 2504, 2506, 2582, 2588, 2605, 2664a, 2684, 3503, 4823 of this title; title 5 sections 5102, 5724; title 15 section 4721; title 38 section 707; title 42 section 5055.

SUBCHAPTER I—GENERAL PROVISIONS

SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in section 4153 of this title.

§ 3901. Congressional findings and objectives

(a) The Congress finds that—

(1) a career foreign service, characterized by excellence and professionalism, is essential in the national interest to assist the President and the Secretary of State in conducting the foreign affairs of the United States;

(2) the scope and complexity of the foreign affairs of the Nation have heightened the need for a professional foreign service that will serve the foreign affairs interests of the United States in an integrated fashion and that can provide a resource of qualified personnel for the President, the Secretary of State, and the agencies concerned with foreign affairs;

(3) the Foreign Service of the United States, established under the Act of May 24, 1924 (commonly known as the Rogers Act) and continued by the Foreign Service Act of 1946, must be preserved, strengthened, and improved in order to carry out its mission effectively in response to the complex challenges of modern diplomacy and international relations;

(4) the members of the Foreign Service should be representative of the American people, aware of the principles and history of the United States and informed of current concerns and trends in American life, knowledgeable of the affairs, cultures, and languages of other countries, and available to serve in assignments throughout the world; and

(5) the Foreign Service should be operated on the basis of merit principles.

(b) The objective of this chapter is to strengthen and improve the Foreign Service of the United States by—

(1) assuring, in accordance with merit principles, admission through impartial and rigorous examination, acquisition of career status only by those who have demonstrated their fitness through successful completion of probationary assignments, effective career development, advancement and retention of the ablest, and separation of those who do not meet the requisite standards of performance;

(2) fostering the development and vigorous implementation of policies and procedures, in-

cluding affirmative action programs, which will facilitate and encourage (A) entry into and advancement in the Foreign Service by persons from all segments of American society, and (B) equal opportunity and fair and equitable treatment for all without regard to political affiliation, race, color, religion, national origin, sex, marital status, age, or handicapping condition;

(3) providing for more efficient, economical, and equitable personnel administration through a simplified structure of Foreign Service personnel categories and salaries;

(4) establishing a statutory basis for participation by the members of the Foreign Service, through their elected representatives, in the formulation of personnel policies and procedures which affect their conditions of employment, and maintaining a fair and effective system for the resolution of individual grievances that will ensure the fullest measure of due process for the members of the Foreign Service;

(5) minimizing the impact of the hardships, disruptions, and other unusual conditions of service abroad upon the members of the Foreign Service, and mitigating the special impact of such conditions upon their families;

(6) providing salaries, allowances, and benefits that will permit the Foreign Service to attract and retain qualified personnel as well as a system of incentive payments and awards to encourage and reward outstanding performance;

(7) establishing a Senior Foreign Service which is characterized by strong policy formulation capabilities, outstanding executive leadership qualities, and highly developed functional, foreign language, and area expertise;

(8) improving Foreign Service managerial flexibility and effectiveness;

(9) increasing efficiency and economy by promoting maximum compatibility among the agencies authorized by law to utilize the Foreign Service personnel system, as well as compatibility between the Foreign Service personnel system and other personnel systems of the Government; and

(10) otherwise enabling the Foreign Service to serve effectively the interests of the United States and to provide the highest caliber of representation in the conduct of foreign affairs.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §101, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2074.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Act of May 24, 1924 (commonly known as the Rogers Act), referred to in subsec. (a)(3), is act May 24, 1924, ch. 182, 43 Stat. 140, as amended, which was classified generally to section 1 et seq. of this title and was repealed in large part by section 1131 of title XI of act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, 60 Stat. 1037, known as the Foreign Service Act of 1946, which generally revised the laws relating to the administration of the Foreign Service (see below). For complete classification of Act May 24, 1924 to the Code, see Tables.

The Foreign Service Act of 1946, referred to in subsec. (a)(3), is act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, titles I to X, 60 Stat. 999, as amended, which was classified principally to chapter 14 (§801 et seq.) of this title, and was repealed

by Pub. L. 96-465, title II, § 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159, the Foreign Service Act of 1980, as part of the general revision of the laws relating to the administration of the Foreign Service. For complete classification of the 1946 Act to the Code prior to its repeal, see Tables.

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (b), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 96-465, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2071, as amended, known as the Foreign Service Act of 1980, which is classified principally to this chapter (§ 3901 et seq.). For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out below and Tables.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, as amended by Pub. L. 99-93, title I, § 119(b), Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 412, provided that:

"(a) Except as otherwise provided, this Act [see Short Title note set out below] shall take effect on February 15, 1981.

"(b) Personnel actions may be taken on and after the effective date of this Act on the basis of any then current Foreign Service evaluation cycle as if this Act [see Short Title note set out below] had been in effect at the beginning of that cycle.

"[(c) Repealed. Pub. L. 99-93, title I, § 119(b), Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 412, eff. Oct. 1, 1985]

"(d)(1) Section 812 of this Act [section 4052 of this title], and the repeal of sections 631 and 632 of the Foreign Service Act of 1946 [sections 1001 and 1002 of this title] and section 625(k) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [section 2385(k) of this title], shall be effective as of the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 17, 1980].

"(2) For purposes of implementing section 2101 [section 4151 of this title], sections 402(a) and 403 [sections 3962(a) and 3963 of this title] shall be effective as of the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 17, 1980].

"(e)(1) The provisions of chapter 8 of title I [subchapter VIII of this chapter] regarding the rights of former spouses to any annuity under section 814(a) [section 4054(a) of this title] shall apply in the case of any individual who after the effective date of this Act becomes a former spouse of an individual who separates from the Service after such date.

"(2) Except to the extent provided in section 2109 [section 4159 of this title], the provisions of such chapter [subchapter VIII of this chapter] regarding the rights of former spouses to receive survivor annuities under chapter 8 [subchapter VIII of this chapter] shall apply in the case of any individual who after the effective date of this Act becomes a former spouse of a participant or former participant in the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System."

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 99-335, title IV, § 401(a), June 6, 1986, 100 Stat. 609, provided that: "This title [enacting sections 4068 and 4071 to 4071k of this title, amending sections 4041 to 4049, 4054 to 4056, 4058, 4060, 4061, 4063, 4064, 4066, and 4067 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 4046 of this title] may be cited as the 'Foreign Service Pension System Act of 1986'."

#### SHORT TITLE

Section 1 of Pub. L. 96-465 provided that: "This Act [enacting this chapter, sections 2697 to 2704 of this title, and sections 3597, 5927, and 5928 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, amending sections 285a, 287, 287e, 287n, 290a, 290g-1, 1928, 2021, 2024, 2056, 2385, 2389, 2391, 2454, 2504, 2506, 2512 to 2514, 2582, 2588, 2605, 2684, 3503 and 4223 of this title, sections 3323, 5102, 5301, 5303, 5304, 5313, 5522, 5523, 5541, 5595, 5596, 5724, 5727, 5924, 5925, 6301, 6304, 6305, 7103, 8332, and 8501 of Title 5, and Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1939 set out in the Appendix to Title 5, sections 1765a and 1766c of Title 7, Agriculture, section 2002 of Title 10, Armed Forces, section 906 of Title 20, Education, sections 104, 170, 912, and 2055 of Title 26, Internal Revenue Code, section 822a of former Title 31, Money and Finance, section 405a of Title 37,

Pay and Allowances of the Uniformed Services, former section 235 of Title 38, Veterans' Benefits, and section 5055 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare, repealing subchapters I to X of chapter 14 (§ 801 et seq.) of this title and sections 1221 to 1234, 2679a, 2680a, and 2693 of this title, enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and section 2651 of this title, and repealing provisions set out as notes under sections 801, 808, 811a, 886, 889, 912, 913, 936, 1002, 1076, 1079d, 1229, and 2384 of this title] may be cited as the 'Foreign Service Act of 1980'."

#### EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 11636

Ex. Ord. No. 11636, Dec. 17, 1971, 36 F.R. 24901, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 12027, Dec. 5, 1977, 42 F.R. 61851; Ex. Ord. No. 12107, Dec. 28, 1978, 44 F.R. 1055; Ex. Ord. No. 12128, Apr. 4, 1979, 44 F.R. 20625, which related to employee-management relations in the Foreign Service of the United States, was revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 12292, § 10(j), Feb. 23, 1981, 46 F.R. 13967, set out below.

#### EX. ORD. NO. 12292. CONFORMANCE OF EXISTING EXECUTIVE ORDERS TO CHANGES RESULTING FROM THE FOREIGN SERVICE ACT OF 1980

Ex. Ord. No. 12292, Feb. 23, 1981, 46 F.R. 13967, provided:

By the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and laws of the United States of America, including the Foreign Service Act of 1980 (94 Stat. 2071; 22 U.S.C. 3901 et seq.), and in order to conform existing Executive Orders to changes resulting from that Act, it is hereby ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. Section 1(k) of Executive Order No. 9154, as amended, is amended by inserting immediately before the period at the end thereof a comma and the words "or under authority of section 303 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 (22 U.S.C. 3943)".

SEC. 2. Section 1 of Executive Order No. 10471 is amended as follows:

(a) strike out "section 202(c) of the Annual and Sick Leave Act of 1951, as added by the act of July 2, 1953, Public Law 102, 83rd Congress" and insert in lieu thereof "section 6305(b) of title 5 of the United States Code";

(b) strike out "said section 202(c)(2)" and insert in lieu thereof "said section 6305(b)";

(c) strike out "section 411 of the Foreign Service Act of 1946" and insert in lieu thereof "section 401 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 (22 U.S.C. 3961)".

SEC. 3. Section 2 of Executive Order No. 10624, as amended, is amended as follows:

(a) In clause (1), strike out "Title II of the Overseas Differentials and Allowances Act" and insert in lieu thereof "subchapter III of chapter 59 of title 5 of the United States Code";

(b) Clause (2) is amended to read as follows: "so much of the authority vested in the Secretary of State by chapter 9 of Title I of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [22 U.S.C. 4081 et seq.], as relates to allowances and benefits under the said chapter 9 of title I;"

SEC. 4. Executive Order No. 10903 is amended as follows:

(a) In the preamble, strike out "section 303 of the Foreign Service Act of 1946 (22 U.S.C. 843).";

(b) In section 1(a) strike out "section 111(3) of the Overseas Differentials and Allowances Act (74 Stat. 792)" and insert in lieu thereof "section 5921(3) of title 5, United States Code,";

(c) In Section 1(b):

(1) strike out "Title II of the Overseas Differentials and Allowances Act" and insert in lieu thereof "subchapter III of chapter 59 of title 5 of the United States Code,";

(2) strike out "202, 203, and 221(4)(B) of that Act" and insert in lieu thereof "5922(b), 5922(c), and 5924(4)(B) of that title";

(3) strike out "Title II of the Act" and insert in lieu thereof "said subchapter".

(d) In Section 1(c), strike out "section 22 of the Administrative Expenses Act of 1946 (added by section

311(a) of the Overseas Differentials and Allowances Act)" and insert in lieu thereof "section 5913 of title 5 of the United States Code".

(e) In Section 1(e):

(1) strike out "235(a)(2)" and insert in lieu thereof "235(2)"; and

(2) strike out "section 901 of the Foreign Service Act of 1946, as amended" and insert in lieu thereof "section 905 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 (22 U.S.C. 4085)".

(f) strike out paragraphs (d) and (f) of Section 1 and redesignate paragraphs (e) and (g) thereof as paragraphs (d) and (e), respectively.

SEC. 5. Executive Order No. 11034 is amended by striking out in Section 5(c) after "provided by section" all that follows in that sentence and inserting in lieu thereof "310 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 (22 U.S.C. 3950)".

SEC. 6. Executive Order No. 11219 is amended as follows:

(a) Section 1 is amended by striking out "officer or employee" and inserting in lieu thereof "member";

(b) Section 1(b) is amended by inserting after "as amended," "the Foreign Service Act of 1980," [this chapter] and by striking out "that Act" and inserting in lieu thereof "the latter Act";

(c) Section 5 is amended by striking out "an officer or employee in" and inserting in lieu thereof "a member of" and by inserting after "as amended," "the Foreign Service Act of 1980," [this chapter] and by striking out "that Act" and inserting in lieu thereof "the latter Act".

SEC. 7. Executive Order No. 12137 is amended as follows:

(a) Section 1-111 is amended by striking out "1946, as amended" and inserting in lieu thereof "1980" [this chapter].

(b) Section 1-401 is amended by striking out "528 of the Foreign Service Act of 1946 (22 U.S.C. 928)" and inserting in lieu thereof, "310 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 (22 U.S.C. 3950)".

SEC. 8. Executive Order No. 12163 is amended as follows:

(a) Section 1-201(a)(14) is revoked.

(b) Section 1-201(b) is amended by inserting "and" after "602(q)," and by striking out "and 625(k)(1)";

(c) Section 1-602(a) is amended by striking out "625(d)(1)" each time it appears and inserting in lieu thereof "625(d)".

(d) Section 1-602(b) is amended by striking out "section 528 of the Foreign Service Act of 1946" and inserting in lieu thereof "section 310 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 (22 U.S.C. 3950)".

(e) Section 1-603 is amended by striking out after "allowances", all that follows through "Foreign Service Act of 1946 (22 U.S.C. 801 et seq.)," and inserting in lieu thereof "authorized for a chief of mission as defined in section 102(a)(3) of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 (22 U.S.C. 3902(a)(3))."

SEC. 9. Executive Order No. 12228 is amended as follows:

(a) Section 1-102(c)(1) is amended by striking out "Section 911(9) of the Foreign Service Act of 1946, as amended (22 U.S.C. 1136(9))" and inserting in lieu thereof "Section 901(6) of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 (22 U.S.C. 4081(6))";

(b) Section 1-103 is amended by striking out "Foreign Service Act of 1946, as amended" and inserting in lieu thereof "Foreign Service Act of 1980" [this chapter].

SEC. 10. The following are hereby revoked:

(a) Executive Order No. 9452 of June 26, 1944;

(b) Executive Order No. 9799 of November 8, 1946;

(c) Executive Order No. 9837 of March 27, 1947;

(d) Executive Order No. 9932 of February 27, 1948;

(e) Executive Order No. 10249 of June 4, 1951;

(f) Section 2 of Executive Order No. 10477 of August 1, 1953 [22 U.S.C. 1472 note];

(g) Executive Order No. 10897 of December 2, 1960;

(h) Part III of Executive Order No. 11264 of December 31, 1965, as amended [22 U.S.C. 3930 note];

(i) Sections 1, 3, and 5 of Executive Order No. 11434 of November 8, 1968;

(j) Executive Order No. 11636 of December 17, 1971;

(k) Executive Order No. 12066 of June 29, 1978;

(l) Executive Order No. 12145 of July 18, 1979;

(m) Section 1-104(b) of Executive Order No. 12188 of January 2, 1980 [19 U.S.C. 2171 note].

SEC. 11. This Order shall be effective as of February 15, 1981.

RONALD REAGAN.

EX. ORD. NO. 12293. ADMINISTRATION OF FOREIGN SERVICE

Ex. Ord. No. 12293, Feb. 23, 1981, 46 F.R. 13969, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 12363, May 21, 1982, 47 F.R. 22497; Ex. Ord. No. 12388, Oct. 14, 1982, 47 F.R. 46245; Ex. Ord. No. 12536, Oct. 9, 1985, 50 F.R. 41477, provided:

By the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and laws of the United States of America, including the Foreign Service Act of 1980 (94 Stat. 2071, 22 U.S.C. 3901 et seq.), Section 202 of the Revised Statutes (22 U.S.C. 2656), and Section 301 of Title 3 of the United States Code, and in order to provide for the administration of the Foreign Service of the United States, it is hereby ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. There are hereby delegated to the Secretary of State those functions vested in the President by Sections 205, 401(a), 502(c), 613, and 801 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980, hereinafter referred to as the Act (22 U.S.C. 3925, 3942(a)(1), 3892(c) [3982(c)], 4013, and 4041).

SEC. 2. The Secretary of State shall, in accord with Section 205 of the Act (22 U.S.C. 3925), consult with the Secretary of Agriculture, the Secretary of Commerce, the Director of the United States Information Agency, the Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency, the Director of the Office of Personnel Management, and the Director of the Office of Management and Budget, in order to ensure compatibility between the Foreign Service personnel system and other government personnel systems.

SEC. 3. The Secretary of State shall make recommendations to the President through the Director of the Office of Management and Budget whenever action is appropriate under Section 827 of the Act (22 U.S.C. 4067) to maintain existing conformity between the Civil Service Retirement and Disability System and the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System.

SEC. 4. In accord with Section 402 of the Act (22 U.S.C. 3962), there are established the following salary classes with titles for the Senior Foreign Service (SFS), at basic rates of pay equivalent to that established from time to time for the Senior Executive Service (SES) under Section 5382 of Title 5 of the United States Code. Career Minister

(a) Basic rate of pay equivalent to ES 6. Minister-Counselor

(a) Basic rate of pay equivalent to ES 6, or

(b) Basic rate of pay equivalent to ES 5, or

(c) Basic rate of pay equivalent to ES 4.

Counselor

(a) Basic rate of pay equivalent to ES 6, or

(b) Basic rate of pay equivalent to ES 5, or

(c) Basic rate of pay equivalent to ES 4, or

(d) Basic rate of pay equivalent to ES 3, or

(e) Basic rate of pay equivalent to ES 2, or

(f) Basic rate of pay equivalent to ES 1.

SEC. 5. There is hereby delegated to the Secretary of State, without further action by the President, the authority vested in the President by Section 2107 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 4157] to the extent necessary to implement the provisions of Section 2101 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 4151], relating to pay and benefits pending conversion.

SEC. 6. (a) Pursuant to Section 211 of the Act (22 U.S.C. 3931), there is established in the Department of State the Board of Examiners for the Foreign Service.

(b) The Board shall be appointed by, and in accordance with regulations prescribed by, the Secretary of State, except that not less than five shall be career members of the Foreign Service and not less than seven shall be appointed as follows.

(1) not less than five shall be appointed by the heads of the agencies utilizing the Foreign Service personnel system;

(2) not less than one shall be a representative appointed by the Director of the Office of Personnel Management; and

(3) not less than one shall be a representative appointed by the Secretary of Labor.

(c) The Secretary of State shall designate from among the members of the Board a Chairman who is a member of the Service.

(d) The Secretary of State shall provide all necessary administrative services and facilities for the Board.

SEC. 7. For the purpose of ensuring the accuracy of information used in the administration of the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System, the Secretary of State may request from the Secretary of Defense and the Administrator of Veterans Affairs such information as the Secretary deems necessary. To the extent permitted by law: (a) The Secretary of Defense shall provide information on retired or retainer pay provided under Title 10, United States Code; and, (b) the Administrator of Veterans Affairs shall provide information on pensions or compensation provided under Title 38 of the United States Code. The Secretary, in consultation with the officials from whom information is requested, shall ensure that information made available under this Order is used only for the purpose authorized.

SEC. 8. The first seven Sections of this Order shall be effective as of February 15, 1981.

SEC. 9. (a) Pursuant to Section 210 of the Act there is established in the Department of State the Board of the Foreign Service (22 U.S.C. 3930).

(b) The Board shall be composed of the designated number of representatives of the heads of the following agencies:

(1) Department of State, four members, at least three of whom must be career members of the Senior Foreign Service;

(2) United States Information Agency, two members, one of whom must be a career member of the Senior Foreign Service;

(3) United States International Development Cooperation Agency, two members, one of whom must be a career member of the Senior Foreign Service;

(4) Department of Agriculture, two members, one of whom must be a career member of the Senior Foreign Service;

(5) Department of Commerce, two members, one of whom must be a career member of the Senior Foreign Service;

(6) Department of Labor, one member;

(7) Office of Personnel Management, one member;

(8) Office of Management and Budget, one member;

and,

(9) Equal Employment Opportunity Commission, one member;

(c) The membership of the Board shall be selected from among officials who are knowledgeable in matters concerning the management of the Foreign Service. Except for the career members of the Senior Foreign Service from the Department of Agriculture, the Department of Commerce, the United States Information Agency, and the United States International Development Cooperation Agency, the members of the Board shall be selected from among those who have the rank of Assistant Secretary or higher or a position of comparable responsibility.

(d) The Secretary of State may from time to time request the heads of other agencies to designate representatives to participate in the functions of the Board on a regular or occasional basis.

(e) The Secretary of State shall provide all necessary administrative services and facilities for the Board.

SEC. 10. Pursuant to Section 202(a)(2)(B) and (a)(3)(B) of the Act (22 U.S.C. 3922(a)(2)(B), (a)(3)(B)), it is hereby determined to be necessary, in order to enable the Department of Agriculture and the Department of Commerce to carry out functions which require service abroad, for the respective Secretaries, in consultation with the Office of Personnel Management and the Office of Management and Budget, to be able to utilize

the Foreign Service personnel system with respect to personnel of the following:

(a) The Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service of the Department of Agriculture, not to exceed 125 positions, without the prior approval of the Director of the Office of Personnel Management;

(b) The United States Travel and Tourism Administration, and the International Trade Administration of the Department of Commerce, not to exceed 30 positions without the prior approval of the Director of the Office of Personnel Management, and providing that assignments to such positions be administered consistent with policies of the Foreign Commercial Service established under Executive Order No. 12188 [19 U.S.C. 2171 note].

RONALD REAGAN.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4141 of this title.

### § 3902. Definitions

As used in this chapter, the term—

(1) “abroad” means all areas not included within the United States;

(2) “agency” means an agency as defined in section 552(e)<sup>1</sup> of title 5;

(3) “chief of mission” means the principal officer in charge of a diplomatic mission of the United States or of a United States office abroad which is designated by the Secretary of State as diplomatic in nature, including any individual assigned under section 3982(c) of this title to be temporarily in charge of such a mission or office;

(4) “Department” means the Department of State, except that with reference to the exercise of functions under this chapter with respect to another agency authorized by law to utilize the Foreign Service personnel system, such term means that other agency;

(5) “employee” (except as provided in section 4102(8) of this title) means, when used with respect to an agency or to the Government generally, an officer or employee (including a member of the Service) or a member of the Armed Forces of the United States, the commissioned corps of the Public Health Service, or the commissioned corps of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration;

(6) “function” includes any duty, obligation, power, authority, responsibility, right, privilege, discretion, or activity;

(7) “Government” means the Government of the United States;

(8) “merit principles” means the principles set out in section 2301(b) of title 5;

(9) “principal officer” means the officer in charge of a diplomatic mission, consular mission (other than a consular agency), or other Foreign Service post;

(10) “Secretary” means the Secretary of State, except that (subject to section 3921 of this title) with reference to the exercise of functions under this Act with respect to any agency authorized by law to utilize the Foreign Service personnel system, such term means the head of that agency;

(11) “Service” or “Foreign Service” means the Foreign Service of the United States; and

(12) “United States”, when used in a geographic sense, means the several States and the District of Columbia.

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §102, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2075; Pub. L. 98-164, title I, §130(a), Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1027.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 552(e) of title 5, referred to in par. (2), was redesignated section 552(f) of title 5 by section 1802(b) of Pub. L. 99-570.

#### AMENDMENTS

1983—Pub. L. 98-164 struck out “(a)” before “As used in this chapter”, and struck out subsec. (b) which provided that references to Foreign Service officers in any provision be deemed to refer to, with respect to the United States Information Agency, Foreign Service Information officers.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2391, 3982, 4341 of this title; title 5 section 6301.

### § 3903. Members of Service

The following are the members of the Service:

(1) Chiefs of mission, appointed under section 3942(a)(1) of this title or assigned under section 3982(c) of this title.

(2) Ambassadors at large, appointed under section 3942(a)(1) of this title.

(3) Members of the Senior Foreign Service, appointed under section 3942(a)(1) or 3943 of this title, who are the corps of leaders and experts for the management of the Service and the performance of its functions.

(4) Foreign Service officers, appointed under section 3942(a)(1) of this title, who have general responsibility for carrying out the functions of the Service.

(5) Foreign Service personnel, United States citizens appointed under section 3943 of this title, who provide skills and services required for effective performance by the Service.

(6) Foreign national employees, foreign nationals appointed under section 3943 of this title, who provide clerical, administrative, technical, fiscal, and other support at Foreign Service posts abroad.

(7) Consular agents, appointed under section 3943 of this title by the Secretary of State, who provide consular and related services as authorized by the Secretary of State at specified locations abroad where no Foreign Service posts are situated.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §103, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2076.)

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2664a, 4155, 4861 of this title; title 5 sections 7511, 8331, 8351, 8401.

### § 3904. Functions of Service

Members of the Service shall, under the direction of the Secretary—

(1) represent the interests of the United States in relation to foreign countries and international organizations, and perform the functions relevant to their appointments and assignments, including (as appropriate) functions under the Vienna Convention on Diplomatic Relations, the Vienna Convention on Consular Relations, other international agreements to which the United States is a party,

the laws of the United States, and orders, regulations, and directives issued pursuant to law;

(2) provide guidance for the formulation and conduct of programs and activities of the Department and other agencies which relate to the foreign relations of the United States; and

(3) perform functions on behalf of any agency or other Government establishment (including any establishment in the legislative or judicial branch) requiring their services.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §104, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2076.)

### § 3905. Personnel actions

#### (a) Merit principles; “personnel action” defined

(1) All personnel actions with respect to career members and career candidates in the Service (including applicants for career candidate appointments) shall be made in accordance with merit principles.

(2) For purposes of paragraph (1), the term “personnel action” means—

(A) any appointment, promotion, assignment (including assignment to any position or salary class), award of performance pay or special differential, within-class salary increase, separation, or performance evaluation, and

(B) any decision, recommendation, examination, or ranking provided for under this chapter which relates to any action referred to in subparagraph (A).

#### (b) Rules and regulations; discrimination; reprisals for disclosure of information; submission of reports, evaluations, or recommendations; freedom from prohibited personnel practices

The Secretary shall administer the provisions of this chapter and shall prescribe such regulations as may be necessary to ensure that members of the Service, as well as applicants for appointments in the Service—

(1) are free from discrimination on the basis of race, color, religion, sex, national origin, age, handicapping condition, marital status, geographic or educational affiliation within the United States, or political affiliation, as prohibited under section 2302(b)(1) of title 5;

(2) are free from reprisal for—

(A) a disclosure of information by a member or applicant which the member or applicant reasonably believes evidences—

(i) a violation of any law, rule, or regulation, or

(ii) mismanagement, a gross waste of funds, an abuse of authority, or a substantial and specific danger to public health or safety,

if such disclosure is not specifically prohibited by law and if such information is not specifically required by Executive order to be kept secret in the interest of national defense or the conduct of foreign affairs; or

(B) a disclosure to the Special Counsel of the Merit Systems Protection Board, or to the Inspector General of an agency (including the Inspector General of the Department of State and the Foreign Service) or another employee designated by the head of the agency to receive such disclosures, of infor-



mation which the member or applicant reasonably believes evidences—

- (i) a violation of any law, rule, or regulation, or
- (ii) mismanagement, a gross waste of funds, an abuse of authority, or a substantial and specific danger to public health or safety;

(3) are free to submit to officials of the Service and the Department any report, evaluation, or recommendation, including the right to submit such report, evaluation, or recommendation through a separate dissent channel, whether or not the views expressed therein are in accord with approved policy, unless the report, evaluation, or recommendation was submitted with the knowledge that it was false or with willful disregard for its truth or falsity; and

(4) are free from any personnel practice prohibited by section 2302 of title 5.

**(c) Withholding or disclosure of information to Congress**

This section shall not be construed as authorizing the withholding of information from the Congress or the taking of any action against a member of the Service who discloses information to the Congress.

**(d) Minority recruitment program; report to Congress**

(1) The Secretary shall establish a minority recruitment program for the Service consistent with section 7201 of title 5.

(2) The Secretary shall transmit, to the Chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Speaker of the House of Representatives, the Department's reports on its equal employment opportunity and affirmative action programs and its minority recruitment programs, which reports are required by law, regulation, or directive to be submitted to the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission (EEOC) or the Office of Personnel Management (OPM). Each such report shall be transmitted to the Congress at least once annually, and shall be received by the Congress not later than 30 days after its original submission to the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission or the Office of Personnel Management.

**(e) Applicability to other judicial or statutory rights or remedies**

This section shall not be construed to extinguish or lessen any effort to achieve equal employment opportunity through affirmative action or any right or remedy available to any employee or applicant for employment in the civil service under—

- (1) section 2000e-16 of title 42, prohibiting discrimination on the basis of race, color, religion, sex, or national origin;
- (2) sections 631 and 633a of title 29, prohibiting discrimination on the basis of age;
- (3) section 206(d) of title 29, prohibiting discrimination on the basis of sex;
- (4) sections 791 and 794a of title 29, prohibiting discrimination on the basis of handicapping condition; or
- (5) any provision of law, rule, or regulation prohibiting discrimination on the basis of marital status or political affiliation.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §105, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2077; Pub. L. 100-204, title I, §185(a), Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1365; Pub. L. 101-246, title I, §153(d), Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 43.)

AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 101-246 inserted “geographic or educational affiliation within the United States,” after “marital status.”

1987—Subsec. (d)(2). Pub. L. 100-204 amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) read as follows: “Not later than January 31 of each year, the Secretary shall transmit to each House of the Congress a report, signed by the Secretary, on the activities of the Secretary under paragraph (1). Such report shall include any affirmative action plans submitted by the Secretary under section 2000e-16 of title 42 and any data necessary to evaluate the effectiveness of the program under paragraph (1) for the preceding fiscal year, together with recommendations for administrative or legislative action the Secretary considers appropriate.”

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2719, 3929, 4141b of this title.

SUBCHAPTER II—MANAGEMENT OF SERVICE

SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in section 4153 of this title.

**§ 3921. Administration by Secretary of State**

(a) Under the direction of the President, the Secretary of State shall administer and direct the Service and shall coordinate its activities with the needs of the Department of State and other agencies.

(b) The Secretary of State alone among the heads of agencies utilizing the Foreign Service personnel system shall perform the functions expressly vested in the Secretary of State by this chapter.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §201, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2078.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (b), was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 96-465, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2071, as amended, known as the Foreign Service Act of 1980, which is classified principally to this chapter (§3901 et seq.). For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3901 of this title and Tables.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 3902, 3922 of this title.

**§ 3922. Utilization of Foreign Service personnel system by other agencies**

(a)(1) The Director of the United States Information Agency and the Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency may utilize the Foreign Service personnel system with respect to their respective agencies in accordance with this chapter.

(2) The Secretary of Agriculture may utilize the Foreign Service personnel system in accordance with this chapter—

- (A) with respect to personnel of the Foreign Agricultural Service, and

(B) with respect to other personnel of the Department of Agriculture to the extent the President determines to be necessary in order to enable the Department of Agriculture to carry out functions which require service abroad.

(3) The Secretary of Commerce may utilize the Foreign Service personnel system in accordance with this chapter—

(A) with respect to the personnel performing functions transferred to the Department of Commerce from the Department of State by Reorganization Plan Numbered 3 of 1979, and

(B) with respect to other personnel of the Department of Commerce to the extent the President determines to be necessary in order to enable the Department of Commerce to carry out functions which require service abroad.

(b) Subject to section 3921(b) of this title—

(1) the agency heads referred to in subsection (a) of this section, and

(2) the head of any other agency (to the extent authority to utilize the Foreign Service personnel system is granted to such agency head under any other chapter),

shall in the case of their respective agencies exercise the functions vested in the Secretary by this chapter.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 202, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2078; Pub. L. 97-241, title III, § 303(b), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Reorganization Plan Numbered 3 of 1979, referred to in subsec. (a)(3)(A), is Reorg. Plan No. 3 of 1979, 44 F.R. 69273, 93 Stat. 1381, which is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

#### CHANGE OF NAME

“Director of the United States Information Agency” substituted for “Director of the International Communication Agency” in subsec. (a)(1), pursuant to section 303(b) of Pub. L. 97-241, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title.

#### EXERCISE OF CERTAIN FUNCTIONS BY BOARD OF THE FOREIGN SERVICE AND BOARD OF EXAMINERS FOR THE FOREIGN SERVICE

The Board of the Foreign Service and the Board of Examiners for the Foreign Service were authorized to exercise with respect to Foreign Service personnel of the Department of Commerce, functions delegated to them by Ex. Ord. No. 11264, set out as a note under section 3930 of this title, respecting Foreign Service personnel of the Department of State, see section 1-104(c) of Ex. Ord. No. 12188, Jan. 2, 1980, 45 F.R. 991, set out as a note under section 2171 of Title 19, Customs Duties.

#### EX. ORD. NO. 10522. AUTHORITY OF THE DIRECTOR OF THE UNITED STATES INFORMATION AGENCY

Ex. Ord. No. 10522, Mar. 26, 1954, 19 F.R. 1689, provided: SECTION 1. The Director of the United States Information Agency is hereby authorized to carry out the functions of the Board of the Foreign Service, provided for by the Foreign Service Act of 1946 (60 Stat. 999) [this chapter], with respect to personnel appointed or assigned for service in the United States Information Agency under the provisions of such Act, as amended [this chapter]: *Provided*, That nothing herein contained shall be construed as transferring to the said Director any function of the said Board relating to any Foreign Service Officer.

SEC. 2. The Director of the United States Information Agency is hereby authorized to prescribe such regulations and issue such orders and instructions, not inconsistent with law, as may be necessary or desirable for carrying out his functions under section 1 of this order.

DWIGHT D. EISENHOWER.

### § 3922a. Representation of minorities and women in Foreign Service

#### (a) Development of program

The head of each agency utilizing the Foreign Service personnel system shall develop, consistent with section 7201 of title 5, a plan designed to increase significantly the number of members of minority groups and women in the Foreign Service in that agency.

#### (b) Emphasis on mid-levels

Each plan developed pursuant to this section shall, consistent with section 7201 of title 5, place particular emphasis on achieving significant increases in the numbers of minority group members and women who are in the mid-levels of the Foreign Service.

(Pub. L. 99-93, title I, § 152, Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 428; Pub. L. 100-204, title I, § 185(c)(3), Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1366.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1986 and 1987, and not as part of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 which comprises this chapter.

#### AMENDMENTS

1987—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 100-204 struck out subsec. (c) which read as follows: “The head of each agency utilizing the Foreign Service personnel system shall report annually to the Congress on the plan developed pursuant to this section as part of the report required to be submitted pursuant to section 3905(d)(2) of this title. Subsequent reports pursuant to that section shall include reports on the implementation of these plans, giving particular attention to the progress being made in increasing, through advancement and promotion, the numbers of members of minority groups and women in the mid-levels of the Foreign Service.”

#### MID-LEVEL WOMEN AND MINORITY PLACEMENT PROGRAM

Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 178, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 414, provided that:

“(a) PURPOSE.—It is the purpose of this section to promote the acquisition and retention of highly qualified, trained, and experienced women and minority personnel within the Foreign Service, to provide the maximum opportunity for the Foreign Service to meet staffing needs and to acquire the services of experienced and talented women and minority personnel, and to help alleviate the impact of downsizing, reduction-in-force, and budget restrictions occurring in the defense and national security-related agencies of the United States.

“(b) ESTABLISHMENT.—For each of the fiscal years 1994 and 1995, the Secretary of State shall to the maximum extent practicable appoint to the Foreign Service qualified women and minority applicants who are participants in the priority placement program of the Department of Defense, the Department of Defense outplacement referral program, the Office of Personnel Management Automated Applicant Referral System, or the Office of Personnel Management Interagency Placement Program. The Secretary shall make such appointments through the mid-level entry program of the Department of State under section 306 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [22 U.S.C. 3946].

“(c) REPORT.—Not later than 180 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Apr. 30, 1994], the Secretary of State shall prepare and submit a report concerning the implementation of subsection (a) to the Chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Speaker of the House of Representatives. Such report shall include recommendations on methods to improve implementation of the purpose of this section.”

#### WOMEN AND MINORITIES IN FOREIGN SERVICE

Section 183 of Pub. L. 100-204 provided that:

“(a) FINDINGS.—The Congress finds that the Department of State and other Foreign Service agencies have not been successful in their efforts—

“(1) to recruit and retain members of minority groups in order to increase significantly the number of members of minority groups in the Foreign Service; and

“(2) to provide adequate career advancement for women and members of minority groups in order to increase significantly the numbers of women and members of minority groups in the senior levels of the Foreign Service.

“(b) A MORE REPRESENTATIVE FOREIGN SERVICE.—The Secretary of State and the head of each of the other agencies utilizing the Foreign Service personnel system—

“(1) shall substantially increase their efforts to implement effectively the plans required by section 152(a) of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1986 and 1987 [22 U.S.C. 3922a(a)], so that the Foreign Service becomes truly representative of the American people throughout all levels of the Foreign Service; and

“(2) shall ensure that those plans effectively address the need to promote increased numbers of qualified women and members of minority groups into the senior levels of the Foreign Service.

“(c) DEPARTMENT OF STATE HIRING PRACTICES OF MINORITIES AND WOMEN.—The Secretary of State shall include annually as part of the report required to be submitted pursuant to section 105(d)(2) of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [22 U.S.C. 3905(d)(2)]—

“(1) a report on the progress made at the Assistant Secretary and Bureau level of the Department of State in increasing the presence of minorities and women at all levels in the Foreign Service and Civil Service workforces of the Department of State, and

“(2) the specific actions taken to address the lack of Hispanic Americans, Asian Americans, and Native Americans in the Senior Executive Service and Senior Foreign Service of the Department of State.”

#### § 3923. Compatibility among agencies utilizing Foreign Service personnel system

(a) The Service shall be administered to the extent practicable in a manner that will assure maximum compatibility among the agencies authorized by law to utilize the Foreign Service personnel system. To this end, the other heads of such agencies shall consult regularly with the Secretary of State.

(b) Nothing in this subchapter shall be construed as diminishing the authority of the head of any agency authorized by law to utilize the Foreign Service personnel system.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 203, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2079.)

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4001 of this title.

#### § 3924. Uniform and consolidated administration of Service

The Secretary shall on a continuing basis consider the need for uniformity of personnel poli-

cies and procedures and for consolidation (in accordance with section 2695 of this title) of personnel functions among agencies utilizing the Foreign Service personnel system. Where feasible, the Secretary of State shall encourage (in consultation with the other heads of such agencies) the development of uniform policies and procedures and consolidated personnel functions.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 204, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2079.)

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4001 of this title.

#### § 3925. Compatibility between Foreign Service and other Government personnel systems

The Service shall be administered to the extent practicable in conformity with general policies and regulations of the Government. The Secretary shall consult with the Director of the Office of Personnel Management, the Director of the Office of Management and Budget, and the heads of such other agencies as the President shall determine, in order to assure compatibility of the Foreign Service personnel system with other Government personnel systems to the extent practicable.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 205, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2079.)

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of State, see section 1 of Ex. Ord. No. 12293, Feb. 23, 1981, 46 F.R. 13969, set out as a note under section 3901 of this title.

#### CONSULTATION WITH OTHER FEDERAL DEPARTMENTS AND AGENCIES

For authority for the Secretary of State to consult with the Secretary of Agriculture, the Secretary of Commerce, the Director of the United States Information Agency, the Director of the United States International Development Cooperation Agency, the Director of the Office of Personnel Management, and the Director of the Office of Management and Budget to ensure compatibility between the Foreign Service personnel system and other government personnel systems, see section 2 of Ex. Ord. No. 12293, Feb. 23, 1981, 46 F.R. 13969, set out as note under section 3901 of this title.

#### § 3926. Regulations; delegation of functions

(a) The Secretary may prescribe such regulations as the Secretary deems appropriate to carry out functions under this chapter.

(b) The Secretary may delegate functions under this chapter which are vested in the Secretary to any employee of the Department or any member of the Service.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 206, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2079.)

#### REGULATIONS REGARDING FOREIGN LANGUAGE COMPETENCE WITHIN FOREIGN SERVICE

Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 191(a), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 418, as amended by Pub. L. 103-415, § 1(u), Oct. 25, 1994, 108 Stat. 4302, provided that: “Not later than 180 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Apr. 30, 1994], the Secretary of State shall promulgate regulations—

“(1) establishing hiring preferences for Foreign Service Officer candidates competent in languages, with priority preference given to those languages in which the Department of State has a deficit;

“(2) establishing a standard that employees will not receive long-term training in more than 3 languages, and requiring that employees achieve full professional proficiency (S4/R4) in 1 language as a condition for training in a third, with exceptions for priority needs of the service at the discretion of the Director General;

“(3) requiring that employees receiving long-term training in a language, or hired with a hiring preference for a language, serve at least 2 tours in jobs requiring that language, with exceptions for certain limited-use languages and priority needs of the service at the discretion of the Director General;

“(4) requiring that significant consideration be given to foreign language competence and use in the evaluation, assignment, and promotion of all Foreign Service Officers of the Department of State, the Agency for International Development, and the United States Information Agency;

“(5) requiring the identification of appropriate Washington, D.C. metropolitan area positions as language-designated; and

“(6) requiring remedial training and suspension of language differential payments for employees receiving such payments who have failed to maintain required levels of proficiency.”

### § 3927. Chief of mission

#### (a) Duties

Under the direction of the President, the chief of mission to a foreign country—

(1) shall have full responsibility for the direction, coordination, and supervision of all Government executive branch employees in that country (except for employees under the command of a United States area military commander); and

(2) shall keep fully and currently informed with respect to all activities and operations of the Government within that country, and shall insure that all Government executive branch employees in that country (except for employees under the command of a United States area military commander) comply fully with all applicable directives of the chief of mission.

#### (b) Duties of agencies with employees in foreign countries

Any executive branch agency having employees in a foreign country shall keep the chief of mission to that country fully and currently informed with respect to all activities and operations of its employees in that country, and shall insure that all of its employees in that country (except for employees under the command of a United States area military commander) comply fully with all applicable directives of the chief of mission.

#### (c) Promotion of United States goods and services

Each chief of mission to a foreign country shall have as a principal duty the promotion of United States goods and services for export to such country.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 207, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2079; Pub. L. 97-241, title I, § 123, Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 281; Pub. L. 100-204, title I, § 136, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1345.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1987—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 100-204, § 136(1), (2), inserted “executive branch” after “Government” in par. (1) and after second reference to “Government” in par. (2).

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 100-204, § 136(3), inserted “executive branch” after “Any”.

1982—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 97-241 added subsec. (c).

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4341, 4342 of this title; title 15 section 4721; title 49 section 44934; title 50 section 403-4.

### § 3928. Director General of Foreign Service

The President shall appoint, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, a Director General of the Foreign Service, who shall be a current or former career member of the Foreign Service. The Director General should assist the Secretary of State in the management of the Service and perform such functions as the Secretary of State may prescribe.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 208, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2080; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 163, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 411.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-236 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section read as follows: “There shall be a Director General of the Foreign Service, who shall be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, from among the career members of the Senior Foreign Service. The Director General shall assist the Secretary of State in the management of the Service and shall perform such functions as the Secretary of State may prescribe.”

### § 3929. Inspector General

#### (a) Appointment; supervision by Secretary of State; prohibition against interference by State Department with certain duties; inspections, audits, and other functions; removal from office

(1) There shall be an Inspector General of the Department of State and the Foreign Service, who shall be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, without regard to political affiliation from among individuals exceptionally qualified for the position by virtue of their integrity and their demonstrated ability in accounting, auditing, financial analysis, law, management analysis, public administration, or investigations, or their knowledge and experience in the conduct of foreign affairs. The Inspector General shall report to and be under the general supervision of the Secretary of State. Neither the Secretary of State nor any other officer of the Department shall prevent or prohibit the Inspector General from initiating, carrying out, or completing any audit or investigation, or from issuing any subpoena during the course of any audit or investigation. The Inspector General shall periodically (at least every 5 years) inspect and audit the administration of activities and operations of each Foreign Service post and each bureau and other operating unit of the Department of State, and shall perform such other functions as the Secretary of State may prescribe, except that the Secretary of State shall not assign to the Inspector General any general program operating responsibilities.

(2) The Inspector General may be removed from office by the President. The President shall communicate the reasons for any such removal to both Houses of Congress.

**(b) Subject matter of inspections, investigations, and audits**

Inspections, investigations, and audits conducted by or under the direction of the Inspector General shall include the systematic review and evaluation of the administration of activities and operations of Foreign Service posts and bureaus and other operating units of the Department of State, including an examination of—

(1) whether financial transactions and accounts are properly conducted, maintained, and reported;

(2) whether resources are being used and managed with the maximum degree of efficiency, effectiveness, and economy;

(3) whether the administration of activities and operations meets the requirements of applicable laws and regulations and, specifically, whether such administration is consistent with the requirements of section 3905 of this title;

(4) whether there exist instances of fraud or other serious problems, abuses, or deficiencies, and whether adequate steps for detection, correction, and prevention have been taken; and

(5) whether policy goals and objectives are being effectively achieved and whether the interests of the United States are being accurately and effectively represented.

**(c) Policies and procedures governing inspection and audit activities; coordination and cooperation with Comptroller General; report to Attorney General on criminal law violations**

(1) The Inspector General shall develop and implement policies and procedures for the inspection and audit activities carried out under this section. These policies and procedures shall be consistent with the general policies and guidelines of the Government for inspection and audit activities and shall comply with the standards established by the Comptroller General of the United States for audits of Government agencies, organizations, programs, activities, and functions.

(2) In carrying out the duties and responsibilities established under this section, the Inspector General shall give particular regard to the activities of the Comptroller General of the United States with a view toward insuring effective coordination and cooperation.

(3) In carrying out the duties and responsibilities established under this section, the Inspector General shall report expeditiously to the Attorney General whenever the Inspector General has reasonable grounds to believe there has been a violation of Federal criminal law.

**(d) Reports by Inspector General and Secretary of State**

(1) The Inspector General shall keep the Secretary of State fully and currently informed, by means of the reports required by paragraphs (2) and (3) and otherwise, concerning fraud and other serious problems, abuses, and deficiencies relating to the administration of activities and operations administered or financed by the Department of State.

(2) The Inspector General shall, not later than April 30 of each year, prepare and furnish to the

Secretary of State an annual report summarizing the activities of the Inspector General. Such report shall include—

(A) a description of significant problems, abuses, and deficiencies relating to the administration of activities and operations of Foreign Service posts, and bureaus and other operating units of the Department of State, which were disclosed by the Inspector General within the reporting period;

(B) a description of the recommendations for corrective action made by the Inspector General during the reporting period with respect to significant problems, abuses, or deficiencies described pursuant to subparagraph (A);

(C) an identification of each significant recommendation described in previous annual reports on which corrective action has not been completed;

(D) a summary of matters referred to prosecutive authorities and the prosecutions and convictions which have resulted; and

(E) a listing of each audit report completed by the Inspector General during the reporting period.

The Secretary of State shall transmit a copy of such annual report within 30 days after receiving it to the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and to other appropriate committees, together with a report of the Secretary of State containing any comments which the Secretary of State deems appropriate. Within 60 days after transmitting such reports to those committees, the Secretary of State shall make copies of them available to the public upon request and at a reasonable cost.

(3) The Inspector General shall report immediately to the Secretary of State whenever the Inspector General becomes aware of particularly serious or flagrant problems, abuses, or deficiencies relating to the administration of activities and operations of Foreign Service posts or bureaus or other operating units of the Department of State. The Secretary of State shall transmit any such report to the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and to other appropriate committees within 7 days after receiving it, together with a report by the Secretary of State containing any comments the Secretary of State deems appropriate.

(4) Nothing in this subsection shall be construed to authorize the public disclosure by any individual of any information which is—

(A) specifically prohibited from disclosure by any other provision of law; or

(B) specifically required by Executive order to be kept secret in the interest of national defense or the conduct of foreign affairs.

**(e) Applicability of powers and responsibilities under other statutory provisions; assignment of Service employees to Inspector General**

(1) The Inspector General shall have the same authority in carrying out the provisions of this section as is granted under section 6 of the Inspector General Act of 1978 to each Inspector General of an establishment (as defined in section 11(2) of such Act) for carrying out the provi-

sions of that Act, and the responsibilities of other officers of the Government to the Inspector General shall be the same as the responsibilities of the head of an agency or establishment under section 6(b) and (c) of such Act.

(2) At the request of the Inspector General, employees of the Department and members of the Service may be assigned as employees of the Inspector General. The individuals so assigned and individuals appointed pursuant to paragraph (1) shall be responsible solely to the Inspector General, and the Inspector General or his or her designee shall prepare the performance evaluation reports for such individuals.

**(f) Reception and investigation of complaints or information; disclosure of identity of informer**

(1) The Inspector General may receive and investigate complaints or information from a member of the Service or employee of the Department concerning the possible existence of an activity constituting a violation of laws or regulations, constituting mismanagement, gross waste of funds, or abuse of authority, or constituting a substantial and specific danger to public health or safety.

(2) The Inspector General shall not, after receipt of a complaint or information from a member of the Service or employee of the Department, disclose the identity of such individual without the consent of such individual, unless the Inspector General determines such disclosure is unavoidable during the course of the investigation.

**(g) Review of activities and operations of chiefs of mission**

Under the general supervision of the Secretary of State, the Inspector General may review activities and operations performed under the direction, coordination, and supervision of chiefs of mission for the purpose of ascertaining their consonance with the foreign policy of the United States and their consistency with the responsibilities of the Secretary of State and the chief of mission.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 209, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2080; Pub. L. 99-399, title IV, § 413(a)(6), Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 868; Pub. L. 99-529, title IV, § 405, Oct. 24, 1986, 100 Stat. 3020.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Inspector General Act of 1978, referred to in subsec. (e)(1), is Pub. L. 95-452, Oct. 12, 1978, 92 Stat. 1101, as amended, which is set out in Title 5, Appendix, Government Organization and Employees.

AMENDMENTS

1986—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 99-529 repealed § 413(a)(6) of Pub. L. 99-399 and reenacted last sentence which had been struck out by Pub. L. 99-399.

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 3929a, 4102, 4861 of this title.

**§ 3929a. Abolishment of Inspector General of Department of State and Foreign Service**

Notwithstanding section 3929 of this title, the Inspector General of the Department of State and the Foreign Service is hereby abolished.

(Pub. L. 99-93, title I, § 150(b), Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 427; Pub. L. 99-399, title IV, § 413(c), Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 868.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1986 and 1987, and not as part of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 which comprises this chapter.

Another subsec. (c) of section 413 of Pub. L. 99-399 is classified to section 4861(c) of this title.

AMENDMENTS

1986—Pub. L. 99-399 substituted provision abolishing the Inspector General of the Department of State and the Foreign Service for provision limiting the authority of the Inspector General to such functions as necessary to carry out section 3929(g) of this title.

CROSS REFERENCES

Inspector General Act, see Title 5, Appendix, Government Organization and Employees.

**§ 3930. Board of Foreign Service**

The President shall establish a Board of the Foreign Service to advise the Secretary of State on matters relating to the Service, including furtherance of the objectives of maximum compatibility among agencies authorized by law to utilize the Foreign Service personnel system and compatibility between the Foreign Service personnel system and the other personnel systems of the Government. The Board of the Foreign Service shall be chaired by an individual appointed by the President and shall include one or more representatives of the Department of State, the United States Information Agency, the United States International Development Cooperation Agency, the Department of Agriculture, the Department of Commerce, the Department of Labor, the Office of Personnel Management, the Office of Management and Budget, the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission, and such other agencies as the President may designate.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 210, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2082; Pub. L. 97-241, title III, § 303(b), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291; Pub. L. 99-93, title I, § 153, Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 428.)

AMENDMENTS

1985—Pub. L. 99-93 substituted “shall be chaired by an individual appointed by the President” for “shall be chaired by a career member of the Senior Foreign Service designated by the Secretary of State”.

CHANGE OF NAME

“United States Information Agency” substituted in text for “International Communication Agency” pursuant to section 303(b) of Pub. L. 97-241, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title.

EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 11264

Ex. Ord. No. 11264, Dec. 31, 1965, 31 F.R. 67, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 11434, Nov. 8, 1968, 33 F.R. 16485; Ex. Ord. No. 11636, Dec. 17, 1971, 36 F.R. 24901; Ex. Ord. No. 12107, Dec. 28, 1978, 44 F.R. 1055; Ex. Ord. No. 12292, Feb. 23,

1981, 46 F.R. 13967, which provided for the establishment, functions, etc., of the Board of the Foreign Service and Board of Examiners for the Foreign Service, was revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 12363, May 21, 1982, 47 F.R. 22497. See sections 6 and 9 of Ex. Ord. No. 12293, as amended, set out as a note under section 3901 of this title.

EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 11434

Ex. Ord. No. 11434, Nov. 8, 1968, 33 F.R. 16485, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 12107, Dec. 28, 1978, 44 F.R. 1055; Ex. Ord. No. 12292, Feb. 23, 1981, 46 F.R. 13967, which related to administration of foreign service personnel systems, was revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 12553, Feb. 25, 1986, 51 F.R. 7237.

**§ 3931. Board of Examiners**

**(a) Establishment; membership; chairman**

The President shall establish a Board of Examiners for the Foreign Service to develop, and supervise the administration of, examinations prescribed under section 3941(b) of this title to be given to candidates for appointment in the Service. The Board shall consist of 15 members appointed by the President (no fewer than 5 of whom shall be appointed from among individuals who are not Government employees and who shall be qualified for service on the Board by virtue of their knowledge, experience, or training in the fields of testing or equal employment opportunity). The Board shall include representatives of agencies utilizing the Foreign Service personnel system and representatives of other agencies which have responsibility for employment testing. The Board shall be chaired by a member of the Board, designated by the President, who is a member of the Service.

**(b) Review of examinations; report to Secretary of State**

The Board of Examiners shall periodically review the examinations prescribed under section 3941(b) of this title in order to determine—

- (1) whether any such examination has an adverse impact on the hiring, promotion, or other employment opportunity of members of any race, sex, or ethnic group;
- (2) methods of minimizing any such adverse impact;
- (3) alternatives to any examinations which have such an adverse impact; and
- (4) whether such examinations are valid in relation to job performance.

The Board of Examiners shall annually report its findings under this subsection to the Secretary of State and shall furnish to the Secretary of State its recommendations for improvements in the development, use, and administration of the examinations prescribed under section 3941(b) of this title.

**(c) Vacancies**

Any vacancy or vacancies on the Board shall not impair the right of the remaining members to exercise the full powers of the Board.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §211, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2083.)

ESTABLISHMENT OF BOARD OF EXAMINERS

For establishment of the Board of Examiners for the Foreign Service and appointment of its members, see section 6 of Ex. Ord. No. 12293, Feb. 23, 1981, 46 F.R. 13970, set out as note under section 3901 of this title.

SUBCHAPTER III—APPOINTMENTS

SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in sections 4010a, 4153 of this title.

**§ 3941. General provisions**

**(a) Citizenship requirement**

Only citizens of the United States may be appointed to the Service, other than for service abroad as a consular agent or as a foreign national employee.

**(b) Examinations**

The Secretary shall prescribe, as appropriate, written, oral, physical, foreign language, and other examinations for appointment to the Service (other than as a chief of mission or ambassador at large).

**(c) Veteran or disabled veteran**

The fact that an applicant for appointment as a Foreign Service officer candidate is a veteran or disabled veteran shall be considered an affirmative factor in making such appointments. As used in this subsection, the term "veteran or disabled veteran" means an individual who is a preference eligible under subparagraph (A), (B), or (C) of section 2108(3) of title 5.

**(d) Career and noncareer appointments**

(1) Members of the Service serving under career appointments are career members of the Service. Members of the Service serving under limited appointments are either career candidates or noncareer members of the Service.

(2) Chiefs of mission, ambassadors at large, and ministers serve at the pleasure of the President.

(3) An appointment as a Foreign Service officer is a career appointment. Foreign Service employees serving as career candidates or career members of the Service shall not represent to the income tax authorities of the District of Columbia or any other State or locality that they are exempt from income taxation on the basis of holding a Presidential appointment subject to Senate confirmation or that they are exempt on the basis of serving in an appointment whose tenure is at the pleasure of the President.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §301, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2083; Pub. L. 100-204, title I, §179(a), Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1362.)

AMENDMENTS

1987—Subsec. (d)(3). Pub. L. 100-204 inserted sentence at end relating to exemption from income taxation.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1987 AMENDMENT

Section 179(b) of Pub. L. 100-204 provided that: "The amendment made by subsection (a) [amending this section] shall apply with respect to tax years beginning after December 31, 1987."

STUDY OF FOREIGN SERVICE EXAMINATION

Pub. L. 101-246, title I, §153(g), Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 44, provided that: "The Secretary of State shall enter into a contract with a private organization for a comprehensive review and evaluation of the Foreign Service examination. Such review and evaluation shall—

"(1) identify any cultural, racial, ethnic, and sexual bias;

"(2) evaluate the ability of the examination to measure an individual's aptitude for and potential in the Foreign Service;

“(3) consider the relevance of the Foreign Service examination to the work of a Foreign Service officer;

“(4) make recommendations for the removal of any element of bias in the examination; and

“(5) make recommendations for improvements to achieve an examination free of any bias.

Not more than 18 months after the date of the enactment of this Act [Feb. 16, 1990], the Secretary of State shall prepare and submit a report to the Congress which contains the findings of such review and evaluation, together with the comments of the Secretary and measures which the Secretary has initiated to respond to any adverse findings of such review. Such report shall take into consideration the current efforts by the Department of State to review its Foreign Service examination.”

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3931 of this title.

### § 3942. Appointments by the President

(a)(1) The President may, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, appoint an individual as a chief of mission, as an ambassador at large, as an ambassador, as a minister, as a career member of the Senior Foreign Service, or as a Foreign Service officer.

(2)(A) The President may, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, confer the personal rank of career ambassador upon a career member of the Senior Foreign Service in recognition of especially distinguished service over a sustained period.

(B)(i) Subject to the requirement of clause (ii), the President may confer the personal rank of ambassador or minister on an individual in connection with a special mission for the President of a temporary nature not exceeding six months in duration.

(ii) The President may confer such personal rank only if, prior to such conferral, he transmits to the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate a written report setting forth—

(I) the necessity for conferring such rank,

(II) the dates during which such rank will be held,

(III) the justification for not submitting the proposed conferral of personal rank to the Senate as a nomination for advice and consent to appointment, and

(IV) all relevant information concerning any potential conflict of interest which the proposed recipient of such personal rank may have with regard to the special mission.

Such report shall be transmitted not less than 30 days prior to conferral of the personal rank of ambassador or minister except in cases where the President certifies in his report that urgent circumstances require the immediate conferral of such rank.

(C) An individual upon whom a personal rank is conferred under subparagraph (A) or (B) shall not receive any additional compensation solely by virtue of such personal rank.

(3) Except as provided in paragraph (2)(B) of this subsection or in clause 3, section 2, article II of the Constitution (relating to recess appointments), an individual may not be designated as ambassador or minister, or be designated to serve in any position with the title of ambassador or minister, without the advice and consent of the Senate.

(b) If a member of the Service is appointed to any position in the executive branch by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, or by the President alone, the period of service in that position by the member shall be regarded as an assignment under subchapter V of this chapter and the member shall not, by virtue of the acceptance of such assignment, lose his or her status as a member of the Service. A member of the Senior Foreign Service who accepts such an assignment may elect to continue to receive the salary of his or her salary class, to remain eligible for performance pay under subchapter IV of this chapter, and to receive the leave to which such member is entitled under subchapter I of chapter 63, title 5, as a member of the Senior Foreign Service, in lieu of receiving the salary and leave (if any) of the position to which the member is appointed by the President.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §302, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2084; Pub. L. 100-204, title I, §177(b), Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1362; Pub. L. 102-138, title I, §§141, 142(a), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 667.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1991—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 102-138, §141, inserted “as an ambassador,” after “ambassador at large.”

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 102-138, §142(a), substituted “may elect to continue to receive the salary of his or her salary class, to remain eligible for performance pay under subchapter IV of this chapter, and to receive the leave to which such member is entitled under subchapter I of chapter 63, title 5, as a member of the Senior Foreign Service, in lieu of receiving the salary and leave (if any) of the position to which the member is appointed by the President” for “shall receive the salary and leave (if any) of the position to which the member is appointed by the President and shall not be eligible for performance pay under subchapter IV of this chapter”.

1987—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 100-204 substituted “shall receive the salary and leave (if any) of the position to which the member is appointed by the President and shall not be eligible for performance pay under subchapter IV of this chapter.” for “may elect to continue to receive the salary of his or her salary class, to remain eligible for performance pay under subchapter IV of this chapter, and to receive the leave to which such member is entitled under subchapter I of chapter 63 of title 5 as a member of the Senior Foreign Service, in lieu of receiving the salary and leave (if any) of the position to which the member is appointed by the President.”

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1987 AMENDMENT

Section 177(c) of Pub. L. 100-204 provided that: “The amendments made by subsections (a) and (b) [amending this section and section 3961 of this title] shall not apply to the salary of any individual serving under a Presidential appointment under section 302 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [this section] immediately before the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 22, 1987] during the period such individual continues to serve in such position.”

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under subsec. (a)(1) delegated to Secretary of State, see section 1 of Ex. Ord. No. 12293, Feb. 23, 1981, 46 F.R. 13969, set out as a note under section 3901 of this title.

#### EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 10062

Ex. Ord. No. 10062, June 6, 1949, 14 F.R. 2695, as amended by act Aug. 10, 1949, ch. 412, §12(a), 63 Stat. 591; Ex. Ord. No. 10144, July 21, 1950, 15 F.R. 4705, eff. June 6,



1949, which established the position of United States High Commissioner for Germany, was revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 10608, May 5, 1955, 20 F.R. 3093, set out below.

EX. ORD. NO. 10608. UNITED STATES AUTHORITY AND FUNCTIONS IN GERMANY

Ex. Ord. No. 10608, May 5, 1955, 20 F.R. 3093, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 12608, Sept. 9, 1987, 52 F.R. 34617, provided:

By virtue of the authority vested in me by the Constitution and the statutes, including the Foreign Service Act of 1980 (94 Stat. 2071), as amended [this chapter], and as President of the United States and Commander in Chief of the armed forces of the United States, it is ordered as follows:

1. Executive Order No. 10062 of June 6, 1949, and Executive Order No. 10144 of July 21, 1950, amending that order, are hereby revoked, and the position of United States High Commissioner for Germany, established by that order, is hereby abolished.

2. The Chief of the United States Diplomatic Mission to the Federal Republic of Germany, hereinafter referred to as the Chief of Mission, shall have supreme authority, except as otherwise provided herein, with respect to all responsibilities, duties, and governmental functions of the United States in all Germany. The Chief of Mission shall exercise his authority under the supervision of the Secretary of State and subject to ultimate direction by the President.

3. The United States Military Commander having area responsibility in Germany, hereinafter referred to as the Commander, shall have authority with respect to all military responsibilities, duties, and functions of the United States in all Germany, including the command, security, and stationing of United States forces in Germany, the assertion and exercise of their rights and discharge of their obligations therein, and emergency measures which he may consider essential for their protection or the accomplishment of his mission. The Commander may delegate the authority conferred upon him. If action by the Commander or any representative of the Commander, pursuant to the authority herein conferred, affects the foreign policy of the United States or involves relations or negotiations with non-military German authorities, such action shall be taken only after consultation with and agreement by the Chief of Mission or pursuant to procedures previously agreed to between the Chief of Mission and the Commander or his representative. Either the Chief of Mission or the Commander may raise with the other any question which he believes requires such consultation. If agreement is not reached between them, any differences may be referred to the Department of State and the Department of Defense for resolution.

4. The Chief of Mission and the Commander or his designated representatives shall, to the fullest extent consistent with their respective missions, render assistance and support to each other in carrying out the agreements and policies of the United States.

5. With regard to the custody, care, and execution of sentences and disposition (including pardon, clemency, parole, or release) of war criminals confined or hereafter to be confined in Germany as a result of conviction by military tribunals (A) the Chief of Mission shall share the four-power responsibility in the case of persons convicted by the International Military Tribunal, (B) the Chief of Mission shall exercise responsibility in the case of persons convicted by military tribunals established by the United States Military Governor pursuant to Control Council Law No. 10, and (C) the Commander shall exercise responsibility in the case of persons convicted by other military tribunals established by United States Military Commanders in Germany and elsewhere. The Commanders shall, on request of the Chief of Mission, take necessary measures for carrying into execution any sentences adjudged against such persons in category (B) as to whom the Chief of Mission has responsibility and control. Transfer of custody of persons in categories (B) and (C) to the Federal Republic of Germany as provided in the Convention on

the Settlement of Matters Arising Out of the War and Occupation shall terminate the responsibility of the Chief of Mission and the Commander with respect to such persons to the extent that the responsibility of the United States for them is thereupon terminated pursuant to the provisions of the said Convention.

6. If major differences arise over matters affecting the United States Forces in Germany, such differences may be referred to the Department of State and the Department of Defense for resolution.

7. This order shall become effective on the date that the Convention on Relations between the Three Powers and the Federal Republic of Germany and related Conventions, as amended, come into force.

EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 11970

Ex. Ord. No. 11970, Feb. 5, 1977, 42 F.R. 7919, establishing the Presidential Advisory Board on Ambassadorial Appointments, was revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 12299, Mar. 17, 1981, 46 F.R. 17751.

Term of the Presidential Advisory Board on Ambassadorial Appointments extended until Dec. 31, 1980, see Ex. Ord. No. 12110, Dec. 28, 1978, 44 F.R. 1069, formerly set out as a note under section 14 of the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 3903, 3943, 3946, 3948, 3961, 4001, 4006, 4046, 4053 of this title.

§ 3943. Appointments by the Secretary

The Secretary may appoint the members of the Service (other than the members of the Service who are in the personnel categories specified in section 3942(a) of this title) in accordance with this chapter and such regulations as the Secretary may prescribe.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 303, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2085.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 96-465, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2071, as amended, known as the Foreign Service Act of 1980, which is classified principally to this chapter (§ 3901 et seq.). For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3901 of this title and Tables.

PROHIBITION ON CERTAIN EMPLOYMENT AT UNITED STATES DIPLOMATIC AND CONSULAR MISSIONS IN COMMUNIST COUNTRIES

Pub. L. 100-204, title I, § 157, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1354, provided that:

"(a) PROHIBITION.—After September 30, 1990, no national of a Communist country may be employed as a foreign national employee in any area of a United States diplomatic or consular facility in any Communist country where classified materials are maintained.

"(b) DEFINITION.—As used in this section, the term 'Communist country' means a country listed in section 620(f) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2370(f)].

"(c) ADDITIONAL FUNDS FOR HIRING UNITED STATES CITIZENS.—The Congress expresses its willingness to provide additional funds to the Department of State for the expenses of employing United States nationals to replace the individuals dismissed by reason of subsection (a).

"(d) REPORT AND REQUEST FOR FUNDS.—As a part of the Department of State's authorization request for fiscal years 1990 and 1991, the Secretary of State, in consultation with the heads of all relevant agencies, shall submit—

"(1) a report, which shall include—

"(A) a feasibility study of the implementation of this section; and

“(B) an analysis of the impact of the implementation of this section on the budget of the Department of State; and

“(2) a request for funds necessary for the implementation of this section pursuant to the findings and conclusions specified in the report under paragraph (1).

“(e) WAIVER.—The President may waive this section—

“(1) if funds are not specifically authorized and appropriated to carry out this section; or

“(2) the President determines that it is in the national security interest of the United States to continue to employ foreign service nationals.

The President shall notify the appropriate committees of Congress each time he makes the waiver conferred on him by this section.”

#### SOVIET EMPLOYEES AT UNITED STATES DIPLOMATIC AND CONSULAR MISSIONS IN THE SOVIET UNION

Pub. L. 99-93, title I, §136, Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 421, provided that:

“(a) LIMITATION.—To the maximum extent practicable, citizens of the Soviet Union shall not be employed as foreign national employees at United States diplomatic or consular missions in the Soviet Union after September 30, 1986.

“(b) REPORT.—Should the President determine that the implementation of subsection (a) poses undue practical or administrative difficulties, he is requested to submit a report to the Congress describing the number and type of Soviet foreign national employees he wishes to retain at or in proximity to United States diplomatic and consular posts in the Soviet Union, the anticipated duration of their continued employment, the reasons for their continued employment, and the risks associated with the retention of these employees.”

#### EMPLOYMENT OF SOVIET NATIONALS AT U.S. DIPLOMATIC AND CONSULAR MISSIONS IN SOVIET UNION

Determination of President of the United States, No. 92-4, Oct. 24, 1991, 56 F.R. 56567, provided:

Memorandum for the Secretary of State

By the authority vested in me by the Constitution and laws of the United States, including section 301 of title 3 of the United States Code and section 136 of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1986 and 1987 (Public Law 99-93) (“the Act”) [set out as a note above], I hereby determine that implementation of section 136(a) of the Act poses undue practical and administrative difficulties. Consistent with this determination, you are authorized to employ Soviet nationals in nonsensitive areas of the New Embassy Compound in Moscow under strict monitoring by cleared Americans. Further, I delegate to you the responsibility vested in me by section 136(b) of the Act to report to the Congress on circumstances relevant to this determination. Such responsibility may be redelegated within the Department of State.

You are authorized and directed to report this determination to the Congress and to publish it in the Federal Register.

GEORGE BUSH.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 3903, 3946, 3948, 3951, 4001, 4006 of this title.

### § 3944. Chiefs of Mission

#### (a) Qualifications; preference for career members; political contributions as factor in appointment; demonstrated competency report

(1) An individual appointed or assigned to be a chief of mission should possess clearly demonstrated competence to perform the duties of a chief of mission, including, to the maximum extent practicable, a useful knowledge of the principal

language or dialect of the country in which the individual is to serve, and knowledge and understanding of the history, the culture, the economic and political institutions, and the interests of that country and its people.

(2) Given the qualifications specified in paragraph (1), positions as chief of mission should normally be accorded to career members of the Service, though circumstances will warrant appointments from time to time of qualified individuals who are not career members of the Service.

(3) Contributions to political campaigns should not be a factor in the appointment of an individual as a chief of mission.

(4) The President shall provide the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, with each nomination for an appointment as a chief of mission, a report on the demonstrated competence of that nominee to perform the duties of the position in which he or she is to serve.

#### (b) Furnishing of information by Secretary; political campaign contributions report

(1) In order to assist the President in selecting qualified candidates for appointment or assignment as chiefs of mission, the Secretary of State shall from time to time furnish the President with the names of career members of the Service who are qualified to serve as chiefs of mission, together with pertinent information about such members.

(2) Each individual nominated by the President to be a chief of mission, ambassador at large, or minister shall, at the time of nomination, file with the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Speaker of the House of Representatives a report of contributions made by such individual and by members of his or her immediate family during the period beginning on the first day of the fourth calendar year preceding the calendar year of the nomination and ending on the date of the nomination. The report shall be verified by the oath of the nominee, taken before any individual authorized to administer oaths. The chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate shall have each such report printed in the Congressional Record. As used in this paragraph, the term “contribution” has the same meaning given such term by section 431(8) of title 2, and the term “immediate family” means the spouse of the nominee, and any child, parent, grandparent, brother, or sister of the nominee and the spouses of any of them.

#### (c) Foreign language competency report

Within 6 months after assuming the position, the chief of mission to a foreign country shall submit, to the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives, a report describing his or her own foreign language competence and the foreign language competence of the mission staff in the principal language or other dialect of that country.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §304, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2085.)

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Inter-

national Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

### § 3945. Senior Foreign Service

#### (a) Salary class

Appointment to the Senior Foreign Service shall be to a salary class established under section 3962 of this title, and not to a position.

#### (b) Limited appointment

An individual may not be given a limited appointment in the Senior Foreign Service if that appointment would cause the number of members of the Senior Foreign Service serving under limited appointments to exceed 5 percent of the total number of members of the Senior Foreign Service, except that (1) members of the Senior Foreign Service assigned to the Peace Corps shall be excluded in the calculation and application of this limitation, and (2) members of the Senior Foreign Service serving under limited appointments with reemployment rights under section 3950 of this title as career appointees in the Senior Executive Service shall be considered to be career members of the Senior Foreign Service for purposes of this subsection.

#### (c) Appointments by Secretary of Commerce

(1) Appointments to the Senior Foreign Service by the Secretary of Commerce shall be excluded in the calculation and application of the limitation in subsection (b) of this section.

(2) Except as provided in paragraph (3), no more than one individual (other than an individual with reemployment rights under section 3950 of this title as a career appointee in the Senior Executive Service) may serve under a limited appointment in the Senior Foreign Service in the Department of Commerce at any time.

(3) The Secretary of Commerce may appoint an individual to a limited appointment in the Senior Foreign Service for a specific position abroad if—

(A) no career member of the Service who has the necessary qualifications is available to serve in the position; and

(B) the individual appointed has unique qualifications for the specific position.

#### (d) Recertification process

The Secretary shall by regulation establish a recertification process for members of the Senior Foreign Service that is equivalent to the recertification process for the Senior Executive Service under section 3393a of title 5.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §305, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2086; Pub. L. 99-93, title I, §119(a), Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 412; Pub. L. 101-194, title V, §506(c)(1), Nov. 30, 1989, 103 Stat. 1759; Pub. L. 101-280, §6(d)(3), May 4, 1990, 104 Stat. 160.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 101-280 made technical correction to Pub. L. 101-194. See 1989 Amendment note below.

1989—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 101-194, as amended by Pub. L. 101-280, added subsec. (d).

1985—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 99-93 added subsec. (c).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1989 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101-194 effective Jan. 1, 1991, see section 506(d) of Pub. L. 101-194, set out as a note

under section 3151 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Section 119(c) of Pub. L. 99-93 provided that: “The amendments made by subsections (a) and (b) [amending this section and provisions set out as a note under section 3901 of this title] shall take effect on October 1, 1985.”

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Feb. 15, 1981, with an exception that appointments to the Senior Foreign Service by the Secretary of Commerce shall be excluded in the calculation and limitation in subsec. (b) of this section until Oct. 1, 1985, which was repealed by section 119(b) of Pub. L. 99-93, see section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as a note under section 3901 of this title.

### § 3946. Career appointments

#### (a) Trial period under limited appointment

Before receiving a career appointment in the Service, an individual shall first serve under a limited appointment as a career candidate for a trial period of service prescribed by the Secretary. During such trial period of service, the Secretary shall decide whether—

(1) to offer a career appointment to the candidate under section 3943 of this title, or

(2) to recommend to the President that the candidate be given a career appointment under section 3942 of this title.

#### (b) Decisions by Secretary

Decisions by the Secretary under subsection (a) of this section shall be based upon the recommendations of boards, established by the Secretary and composed entirely or primarily of career members of the Service, which shall evaluate the fitness and aptitude of career candidates for the work of the Service.

#### (c) Foreign Service Grievance Board decisions

Nothing in this section shall be construed to limit the authority of the Secretary or the Foreign Service Grievance Board under section 4137 of this title.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §306, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2086; Pub. L. 100-204, title I, §181(c), Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1363.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1987—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 100-204 added subsec. (c).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1987 AMENDMENT

Section 181(e) of Pub. L. 100-204 provided that: “The amendments made by this section [amending this section and sections 4010 and 4137 of this title] shall not apply with respect to any grievance in which the Board has issued a final decision pursuant to section 1107 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 (22 U.S.C. 4137) before the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 22, 1987].”

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 3948, 4043, 4071b, 4131 of this title.

### § 3947. Entry levels for Foreign Service officer candidates

A career candidate for appointment as a Foreign Service officer may not be initially assigned under section 3964 of this title to a salary class higher than class 4 in the Foreign Service Schedule unless—

(1) the Secretary determines in an individual case that assignment to a higher salary class is warranted because of the qualifications (including foreign language competence) and experience of the candidate and the needs of the Service; or

(2) at the time such initial assignment is made, the candidate is serving under a career appointment in the Service and is receiving a salary at a rate equal to or higher than the minimum rate payable for class 4 in the Foreign Service Schedule.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 307, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2086.)

### § 3948. Recall and reappointment of career members

#### (a) Retired career members

Whenever the Secretary determines that the needs of the Service so require, the Secretary may recall any retired career member of the Service for active duty in the same personnel category as that member was serving at the time of retirement. A retired career member may be recalled under this section to any appropriate salary class or rate, except that a retired career member of the Senior Foreign Service may not be recalled to a salary class higher than the one in which the member was serving at the time of retirement unless appointed to such higher class by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate.

#### (b) Former career members

Former career members of the Service may be reappointed under section 3942(a)(1) or 3943 of this title, without regard to section 3946 of this title, in a salary class which is appropriate in light of the qualifications and experience of the individual being reappointed.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 308, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2086.)

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4049, 4054, 4063 of this title.

### § 3949. Limited appointments

(a) A limited appointment in the Service, including an appointment of an individual who is an employee of an agency, may not exceed 5 years in duration and, except as provided in subsection (b) of this section, may not be extended or renewed. A limited appointment in the Service which is limited by its terms to a period of one year or less is a temporary appointment.

(b) A limited appointment may be extended for continued service—

(1) as a consular agent;

(2) in accordance with section 3951(a) of this title;

(3) as a career candidate, if continued service is determined appropriate to remedy a matter that would be cognizable as a grievance under subchapter XI of this chapter;

(4) as a career employee in another Federal personnel system serving in a Foreign Service position on detail from another agency; and

(5) as a foreign national employee.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 309, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2086; Pub. L. 100-204, title I, § 176, Dec. 22, 1987,

101 Stat. 1361; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 180(a)(1), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 415; Pub. L. 103-415, § 1(hh), Oct. 25, 1994, 108 Stat. 4303.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (b)(5). Pub. L. 103-236, as amended by Pub. L. 103-415, added par. (5).

1987—Pub. L. 100-204 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a), substituted “subsection (b) of this section” for “section 3951(a) of this title”, and added subsec. (b).

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1928, 2506, 2582 of this title; title 5 section 3597.

### § 3950. Reemployment rights following limited appointment

Any employee of an agency who accepts a limited appointment in the Service with the consent of the head of the agency in which the employee is employed shall be entitled, upon the termination of such limited appointment, to be reemployed in accordance with section 3597 of title 5.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 310, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2087.)

#### ENTITLEMENT TO BENEFITS FOR SERVICES PERFORMED OUTSIDE UNITED STATES; SERVICE EXCEEDING THIRTY MONTHS

Persons appointed, employed, or assigned after May 19, 1959, under former section 1787(c) of this title or section 2385(d) of this title for the purpose of performing functions under the Mutual Security Act of 1954 (see Short Title note set out under section 1754 of this title) and the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (section 2151 et seq. of this title) outside the United States shall not, unless otherwise agreed by the agency in which such benefits may be exercised, be entitled to the benefits provided for by this section in cases in which their service under the appointment, employment, or assignment exceeds thirty months. See Ex. Ord. No. 12163, § 1-602(b), Sept. 29, 1979, 44 F.R. 56677, as amended, set out as a note under section 2381 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2385, 2454, 2506, 3945, 3965 of this title.

### § 3951. United States citizens hired abroad

#### (a) Appointment of family members

The Secretary, under section 3943 of this title, may appoint United States citizens, who are family members of government employees assigned abroad or are hired for service at their post of residence, for employment in positions customarily filled by Foreign Service officers, Foreign Service personnel, and foreign national employees.

#### (b) Family nexus as affirmative hiring factor

The fact that an applicant for employment in a position referred to in subsection (a) of this section is a family member of a Government employee assigned abroad shall be considered an affirmative factor in employing such person.

#### (c) Compensation of family and non-family member employees

(1) Non-family members employed under this section for service at their post of residence shall be paid in accordance with local compensation plans established under section 3968 of this title.

(2) Family members employed under this section shall be paid in accordance with the Foreign Service Schedule or the salary rates established under section 3967 of this title.

(3) In exceptional circumstances, non-family members may be paid in accordance with the Foreign Service Schedule or the salary rates established under section 3967 of this title, if the Secretary determines that the national interest would be served by such payments.

**(d) Non-family member employees ineligible for certain benefits**

Nonfamily member United States citizens employed under this section shall not be eligible by reason of such employment for benefits under subchapter VIII of this chapter, or under chapters<sup>1</sup> 83 or 84 of title 5.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 311, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2087; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 180(a)(2), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 415; Pub. L. 103-415, § 1(h)(1), Oct. 25, 1994, 108 Stat. 4300.)

AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-415 substituted “United States citizens hired abroad” for “Employment of family members of Government employees” as section catchline and inserted “by reason of such employment” after “eligible” in subsec. (d).

Pub. L. 103-236 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section read as follows:

“(a) The Secretary, when employing individuals abroad in positions to which career members of the Service are not customarily assigned (including, when continuity over a long term is not a significant consideration, vacant positions normally filled by foreign national employees), shall give equal consideration to employing available qualified family members of members of the Service or of other Government employees assigned abroad. Family members so employed shall serve under renewable limited appointments in the Service and may be paid either in accordance with the Foreign Service Schedule or a local compensation plan established under section 3968 of this title.

“(b) Employment of family members in accordance with this section may not be used to avoid fulfilling the need for full-time career positions.”

CROSS REFERENCES

Compensation plans for employees who are family members of Government personnel, see section 3968 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 3949, 3968, 3984, 4010, 4024, 4083, 4102, 4131 of this title.

**§ 3952. Diplomatic and consular missions**

**(a) Recommendations by Secretary of State; appointment by President; vice consul; performance of official functions under commission**

The Secretary of State may recommend to the President that a member of the Service who is a citizen of the United States be commissioned as a diplomatic or consular officer or both. The President may, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, commission such member of the Service as a diplomatic or consular officer or both. The Secretary of State may commission as a vice consul a member of the Service who is

a citizen of the United States. All official functions performed by a diplomatic or consular officer, including a vice consul, shall be performed under such a commission.

**(b) Function of commissioned Service members**

Members of the Service commissioned under this section may, in accordance with their commissions, perform any function which any category of diplomatic officer (other than a chief of mission) or consular officer is authorized by law to perform.

**(c) Limits of consular districts**

The Secretary of State shall define the limits of consular districts.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 312, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2087.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 5 section 6301.

SUBCHAPTER IV—COMPENSATION

SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in sections 3942, 3981, 4153 of this title; title 5 section 5948.

**§ 3961. Salaries of chiefs of mission**

(a) Except as provided in section 3942(b) of this title, each chief of mission shall receive a salary, as determined by the President, at one of the annual rates payable for levels II through V of the Executive Schedule under sections 5313 through 5316 of title 5, except that the total compensation, exclusive of danger pay, for any chief of mission shall not exceed the annual rate payable for level I of such Executive Schedule.

(b) The salary of a chief of mission shall commence upon the effective date of appointment to that position. The official services of a chief of mission are not terminated by the appointment of a successor, but shall continue for such additional period, not to exceed 50 days after relinquishment of charge of the mission, as the Secretary of State may determine. During that period, the Secretary of State may require the chief of mission to perform such functions as the Secretary of State deems necessary in the interest of the Government.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 401, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2087; Pub. L. 100-204, title I, § 177(a), Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1362; Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 142(b), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 668.)

AMENDMENTS

1991—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 102-138 substituted “Except as provided in section 3942(b) of this title, each” for “Each” and “level I of such” for “level II of such”.

1987—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 100-204 substituted “Each chief” for “Except as provided in section 3942(b) of this title, each chief”, and inserted before period at end “, except that the total compensation, exclusive of danger pay, for any chief of mission shall not exceed the annual rate payable for level II of such Executive Schedule”.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1987 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 100-204 not applicable to salary of any individual serving under Presidential appointment under section 3942 of this title immediately before Dec. 22, 1987, during the period such individual continues to serve in such position, see section 177(c) of

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be “chapter”.

Pub. L. 100-204, set out as a note under section 3942 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 287, 2021 of this title.

**§ 3962. Salaries of Senior Foreign Service members**

**(a) Prescription by President; basic salary rates; adjustments; determinations by Secretary**

(1) The President shall prescribe salary classes for the Senior Foreign Service and shall prescribe an appropriate title for each class. The President shall also prescribe one or more basic salary rates for each class. Basic salary rates for the Senior Foreign Service may not exceed the maximum rate or be less than the minimum rate of basic pay payable for the Senior Executive Service under section 5382 of title 5, and shall be adjusted at the same time and in the same manner as rates of basic pay are adjusted for the Senior Executive Service.

(2) The Secretary shall determine which of the basic salary rates prescribed by the President under paragraph (1) for any salary class shall be paid to each member of the Senior Foreign Service who is appointed to that class. The Secretary may adjust the basic salary rate of a member of the Senior Foreign Service not more than once during any 12-month period.

**(b) Career appointees in Senior Executive Service accepting limited appointment in Senior Foreign Service; adjustment**

(1) An individual who is a career appointee in the Senior Executive Service receiving basic pay at one of the rates payable under section 5382 of title 5 and who accepts a limited appointment in the Senior Foreign Service in a salary class for which the basic salary rate is less than such basic rate of pay, shall be paid a salary at his or her former basic rate of pay (with adjustments as provided in paragraph (2)) until the salary for his or her salary class in the Senior Foreign Service equals or exceeds the salary payable to such individual under this subsection.

(2) The salary paid to an individual under this subsection shall be adjusted by 50 percent of each adjustment, which takes effect after the appointment of such individual to the Senior Foreign Service, in the basic rate of pay at which that individual was paid under section 5382 of title 5 immediately prior to such appointment.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 402, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2087; Pub. L. 97-241, title I, § 124, Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 281.)

AMENDMENTS

1982—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 97-241 designated existing provisions as par. (1), inserted provision authorizing the President to prescribe one or more basic salary rates for each class, and added par. (2).

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Feb. 15, 1981, except that subsec. (a), for purposes of implementing section 4151 of this title,

is effective Oct. 17, 1980, see section 2403(a) and (d)(2) of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

ESTABLISHMENT OF SALARY CLASSES WITH TITLES FOR SENIOR FOREIGN SERVICE

For establishment of salary classes with titles for the Senior Foreign Service, at basic rates of pay equivalent to that established from time to time for the Senior Executive Service under section 5382 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, see section 4 of Ex. Ord. No. 12293, Feb. 23, 1981, 46 F.R. 13969, set out as a note under section 3901 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 287, 287n, 290a, 2021, 2385, 2506, 3945, 3965, 4153 of this title.

**§ 3963. Foreign Service Schedule**

The President shall establish a Foreign Service Schedule which shall consist of 9 salary classes and which shall apply to members of the Service who are citizens of the United States and for whom salary rates are not otherwise provided for by this subchapter. The maximum salary rate for the highest class established under this section, which shall be designated class 1, may not exceed the maximum rate of basic pay prescribed for GS-15 of the General Schedule under section 5332 of title 5. Salary rates established under this section shall be adjusted in accordance with section 5303 of title 5.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 403, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2088; Pub. L. 101-509, title V, § 529 [title I, § 101(b)(1)], Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1427, 1439.)

AMENDMENTS

1990—Pub. L. 101-509 substituted “section 5303” for “subchapter I of chapter 53”.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101-509 effective on such date as the President shall determine, but not earlier than 90 days, and not later than 180 days, after Nov. 5, 1990, see section 529 [title I, § 305] of Pub. L. 101-509, set out as a note under section 5301 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Feb. 15, 1981, except that for purposes of implementing section 4151 of this title it is effective Oct. 17, 1980, see section 2403(a) and (d)(2) of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

ADJUSTMENT OF FOREIGN SERVICE SCHEDULE EFFECTIVE FOR PAY PERIODS BEGINNING ON OR AFTER JANUARY 1, 1996

Ex. Ord. No. 12984, Dec. 28, 1995, 61 F.R. 237, set out as a note under section 5332 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, provided in part for an adjustment of the Foreign Service Schedule pay rates effective on the first day of the first applicable pay period beginning on or after Jan. 1, 1996. See Schedule set out as follows:

## SCHEDULE 2

## Foreign Service Schedule

(Effective on the first day of the first applicable pay period beginning on or after January 1, 1996)

| Step | Class 1  | Class 2  | Class 3  | Class 4  | Class 5  | Class 6  | Class 7  | Class 8  | Class 9  |
|------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| 1    | \$69,300 | \$56,154 | \$45,502 | \$36,870 | \$29,876 | \$26,708 | \$23,876 | \$21,344 | \$19,081 |
| 2    | 71,379   | 57,839   | 46,867   | 37,976   | 30,772   | 27,509   | 24,592   | 21,984   | 19,653   |
| 3    | 73,520   | 59,574   | 48,273   | 39,115   | 31,695   | 28,335   | 25,330   | 22,644   | 20,243   |
| 4    | 75,726   | 61,361   | 49,721   | 40,289   | 32,646   | 29,185   | 26,090   | 23,323   | 20,850   |
| 5    | 77,998   | 63,202   | 51,213   | 41,498   | 33,626   | 30,060   | 26,873   | 24,023   | 21,476   |
| 6    | 80,338   | 65,098   | 52,749   | 42,742   | 34,634   | 30,962   | 27,679   | 24,744   | 22,120   |
| 7    | 82,748   | 67,051   | 54,332   | 44,025   | 35,674   | 31,891   | 28,509   | 25,486   | 22,784   |
| 8    | 85,230   | 69,062   | 55,962   | 45,345   | 36,744   | 32,847   | 29,364   | 26,250   | 23,467   |
| 9    | 87,787   | 71,134   | 57,641   | 46,706   | 37,846   | 33,833   | 30,245   | 27,038   | 24,171   |
| 10   | 90,090   | 73,268   | 59,370   | 48,107   | 38,981   | 34,848   | 31,153   | 27,849   | 24,896   |
| 11   | 90,090   | 75,466   | 61,151   | 49,550   | 40,151   | 35,893   | 32,087   | 28,685   | 25,643   |
| 12   | 90,090   | 77,730   | 62,985   | 51,037   | 41,355   | 36,970   | 33,050   | 29,545   | 26,413   |
| 13   | 90,090   | 80,062   | 64,875   | 52,568   | 42,596   | 38,079   | 34,041   | 30,431   | 27,205   |
| 14   | 90,090   | 82,464   | 66,821   | 54,145   | 43,874   | 39,222   | 35,063   | 31,344   | 28,021   |

## EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 12249

Ex. Ord. No. 12249, Oct. 25, 1980, 45 F.R. 71347, which provided for a Foreign Service Schedule, was superseded by Ex. Ord. No. 12330, Oct. 15, 1981, 46 F.R. 50921, formerly set out as a note under section 5332 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

## EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 12330

Ex. Ord. No. 12330, Oct. 15, 1981, 46 F.R. 50921, which provided for adjustments in the Foreign Service Schedule, was superseded by Ex. Ord. No. 12387, Oct. 8, 1982, 47 F.R. 44981, formerly set out as a note under section 5332 of Title 5.

## EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 12387

Ex. Ord. No. 12387, Oct. 8, 1982, 47 F.R. 44981, which provided for adjustments in the Foreign Service Schedule, was superseded by Ex. Ord. No. 12456, Dec. 30, 1983, 49 F.R. 347, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 12477, May 23, 1984, 49 F.R. 22041; Ex. Ord. No. 12487, Sept. 14, 1984, 49 F.R. 36493, formerly set out as a note under section 5332 of Title 5.

## EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 12456

Ex. Ord. No. 12456, Dec. 30, 1983, 49 F.R. 347, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 12477, May 23, 1984, 49 F.R. 22041; Ex. Ord. No. 12487, Sept. 14, 1984, 49 F.R. 36493, which provided for adjustments in the Foreign Service Schedule, was superseded by Ex. Ord. No. 12496, Dec. 28, 1984, 50 F.R. 211, formerly set out as a note under section 5332 of Title 5.

## EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 12496

Ex. Ord. No. 12496, Dec. 28, 1984, 50 F.R. 211, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 12540, Dec. 30, 1985, 51 F.R. 577, which provided for adjustments in the Foreign Service Schedule, was superseded by Ex. Ord. No. 12578, Dec. 31, 1986, 52 F.R. 505, formerly set out as a note under section 5332 of Title 5.

## EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 12578

Ex. Ord. No. 12578, Dec. 31, 1986, 52 F.R. 505, which provided for adjustments in the Foreign Service Schedule, was superseded by Ex. Ord. No. 12622, Dec. 31, 1987, 53 F.R. 222, formerly set out as a note under section 5332 of Title 5.

## EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 12622

Ex. Ord. No. 12622, Dec. 31, 1987, 53 F.R. 222, which provided for adjustments in the Foreign Service Schedule, was superseded by Ex. Ord. No. 12663, Jan. 6, 1989, 54 F.R. 791, formerly set out as a note under section 5332 of Title 5.

## EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 12663

Ex. Ord. No. 12663, Jan. 6, 1989, 54 F.R. 791, which provided for adjustments in the Foreign Service Schedule, was superseded by Ex. Ord. No. 12698, Dec. 23, 1989, 54 F.R. 53473, formerly set out as a note under section 5332 of Title 5.

## EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 12698

Ex. Ord. No. 12698, Dec. 23, 1989, 54 F.R. 53473, which provided for adjustments in the Foreign Service Schedule, was superseded by Ex. Ord. No. 12736, Dec. 12, 1990, 55 F.R. 51385, formerly set out as a note under section 5332 of Title 5.

## EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 12736

Ex. Ord. No. 12736, Dec. 12, 1990, 55 F.R. 51385, which provided for adjustments in the Foreign Service Schedule, was superseded by Ex. Ord. No. 12786, Dec. 26, 1991, 56 F.R. 67453, formerly set out as a note under section 5332 of Title 5.

## EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 12786

Ex. Ord. No. 12786, Dec. 26, 1991, 56 F.R. 67453, which provided for adjustments in the Foreign Service Schedule, was superseded by Ex. Ord. No. 12826, Dec. 30, 1992, 57 F.R. 62909, formerly set out as a note under section 5332 of Title 5.

## EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 12826

Ex. Ord. No. 12826, Dec. 30, 1992, 57 F.R. 62909, which provided for adjustments in the Foreign Service Schedule, was superseded by Ex. Ord. No. 12944, Dec. 28, 1994, 60 F.R. 309, formerly set out as a note under section 5332 of Title 5.

## EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 12944

Ex. Ord. No. 12944, Dec. 28, 1994, 60 F.R. 309, which provided for adjustments in the Foreign Service Schedule, was superseded by Ex. Ord. No. 12984, Dec. 28, 1995, 61 F.R. 237, set out as a note under section 5332 of Title 5.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 287, 287n, 290a, 2021, 2385, 2506, 4066, 4152 of this title; title 5 section 5302.

**§ 3964. Assignments to salary class**

(a) The Secretary shall assign all Foreign Service officers and Foreign Service personnel (other than Foreign Service personnel who are paid in accordance with section 3967 of this title or section 3968 of this title) to appropriate salary classes in the Foreign Service Schedule.

(b)(1) The salary class to which a member of the Service is assigned under this section shall not be affected by the assignment of the member to a position classified under subchapter V of this chapter.

(2) Except as authorized by subchapter I of chapter 35 of title 5, changes in the salary class of a member of the Senior Foreign Service or a member of the Service assigned to a salary class in the Foreign Service Schedule shall be made only in accordance with subchapter VI of this chapter. The Secretary shall prescribe regula-

tions (which shall be consistent with the relevant provisions of subchapter VI of chapter 53 of title 5 and with the regulations prescribed to carry out such provisions) providing for retention of pay by members of the Service in cases in which reduction-in-force procedures are applied.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 404, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2088; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 180(a)(3), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 415.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103-236 struck out “who are family members of Government employees paid in accordance with a local compensation plan established under” after “section 3967 of this title or”.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 3947, 4001 of this title.

### § 3965. Performance pay

#### (a) Eligibility; additional lump sum payment; excessive compensation not precluding award

Members of the Senior Foreign Service who are serving—

- (1) under career or career candidate appointments, or
- (2) under limited appointments with reemployment rights under section 3950 of this title as career appointees in the Senior Executive Service,

shall be eligible to compete for performance pay in accordance with this section. Performance pay shall be paid in a lump sum and shall be in addition to the basic salary prescribed under section 3962 of this title and any other award. The fact that a member of the Senior Foreign Service competing for performance pay would, as a result of the payment of such performance pay, receive compensation exceeding the compensation of any other member of the Service shall not preclude the award or its payment.

#### (b) Criteria; limitations

Awards of performance pay shall take into account the criteria established by the Office of Personnel Management for performance awards under section 5384 of title 5 and rank awards under section 4507 of title 5. Awards of performance pay under this section shall be subject to the following limitations:

- (1) Not more than 50 percent of the members of the Senior Foreign Service may receive performance pay in any fiscal year.
- (2) Except as provided in paragraph (3), performance pay for a member of the Senior Foreign Service may not exceed 20 percent of the annual rate of basic salary for that member.
- (3) Not more than 6 percent of the members of the Senior Foreign Service may receive performance pay in any fiscal year in an amount which exceeds the percentage limitation specified in paragraph (2). Payments under this paragraph to a member of the Senior Foreign Service may not exceed \$10,000 in any fiscal year, except that payments of up to \$20,000 in any fiscal year may be made under this paragraph to up to 1 percent of the members of the Senior Foreign Service.

(4) Any award under this section shall be subject to the limitation on certain payments under section 5307 of title 5.

(5) The Secretary of State shall prescribe regulations, consistent with section 5582 of title 5, under which payment under this section shall be made in the case of any individual whose death precludes payment under paragraph (4) of this subsection.

#### (c) Determination of amount by Secretary; distribution on basis of selection board recommendations

The Secretary shall determine the amount of performance pay available under subsection (b)(2) of this section each year for distribution among the members of the Senior Foreign Service and shall distribute performance pay to particular individuals on the basis of recommendations by selection boards established under section 4002 of this title.

#### (d) Recommendations for meritorious or distinguished service awards

The President may grant awards of performance pay under subsection (b)(3) of this section on the basis of annual recommendations by the Secretary of State of members of the Senior Foreign Service who are nominated by their agencies as having performed especially meritorious or distinguished service. Recommendations by the Secretary of State under this subsection shall be made on the basis of recommendations by special interagency selection boards established by the Secretary of State for the purpose of reviewing and evaluating the nominations of agencies.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 405, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2088; Pub. L. 100-204, title I, § 175(b), Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1361; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 173(d), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 412.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 103-236 amended par. (4) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (4) read as follows: “The total amount of basic salary plus performance pay received in any fiscal year by any member of the Senior Foreign Service may not exceed the salary payable for level I of the Executive Schedule under section 5312 of title 5 as in effect at the end of that fiscal year. Any amount which is not paid to a member of the Senior Foreign Service during a fiscal year because of this limitation shall be paid to that individual in a lump sum at the beginning of the following fiscal year. Any amount paid under this authority during a fiscal year shall be taken into account for purposes of applying the limitation in the first sentence of this subparagraph with respect to such fiscal year.”

1987—Subsec. (b)(4), (5). Pub. L. 100-204 inserted at end of par. (4) “Any amount which is not paid to a member of the Senior Foreign Service during a fiscal year because of this limitation shall be paid to that individual in a lump sum at the beginning of the following fiscal year. Any amount paid under this authority during a fiscal year shall be taken into account for purposes of applying the limitation in the first sentence of this subparagraph with respect to such fiscal year.” and added par. (5).

#### SENIOR FOREIGN SERVICE PERFORMANCE PAY

Section 173(a)–(c) of Pub. L. 103-236, as amended by Pub. L. 103-415, § 1(gg), Oct. 25, 1994, 108 Stat. 4303, provided that:

“(a) PROHIBITION ON AWARDS.—Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Secretary of State may not



award or pay performance payments for fiscal years 1994 and 1995 under section 405 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 (22 U.S.C. 3965), unless the Secretary awards or pays performance awards to other Federal employees for such fiscal years.

“(b) AWARDS IN SUBSEQUENT FISCAL YEARS.—The Secretary may not make a performance award or payment in any fiscal year after a fiscal year referred to in subsection (a) for the purpose of providing an individual with a performance award or payment to which the individual would otherwise have been entitled in a fiscal year referred to in such subsection but for the prohibition described in such subsection.

“(c) APPLICATION TO USIA, AID, AND ACDA.—Subsections (a) and (b) shall apply to the United States Information Agency, the Agency for International Development, and the United States Arms Control and Disarmament Agency in the same manner as such subsections apply to the Department of State, except that the Director of the United States Information Agency, the Administrator of the Agency for International Development, and the Director of the United States Arms Control and Disarmament Agency shall be subject to the limitations and authority of the Secretary of State under subsections (a) and (b) for their respective agencies.”

#### REVIEW OF PERFORMANCE PAY PROGRAMS

Section 175(a) of Pub. L. 100-204 provided that:

“(1) SUSPENSION OF AWARDS DURING REVIEW.—During the period beginning on the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 22, 1987], and ending on the date on which the Inspector General of the Department of State reports to the Congress pursuant to paragraph (2), performance pay may not be awarded under section 405 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 (22 U.S.C. 3965) to any member of the Senior Foreign Service in the Department of State.

“(2) REVIEW BY INSPECTOR GENERAL.—The Inspector General of the Department of State shall conduct a complete and thorough review of—

“(A) the procedures in the Department of State under which performance pay recipients are chosen to determine whether the procedures and award determinations are free from bias and reflect fair standards; and

“(B) the adequacy of the criteria and the equity of the criteria actually applied in making those awards. The review should be conducted in accordance with generally accepted Government auditing standards. The Inspector General shall report the results of this review to the Secretary of State and to the Congress no later than May 1, 1988.

“(3) REPORT BY SECRETARY OF STATE.—No later than 60 days after the report of the Inspector General is submitted to the Secretary of State under paragraph (2), the Secretary shall submit to the Congress a report containing the comments of the Secretary on the report of the Inspector General and describing the actions taken and proposed to be taken by the Secretary as a result of the report.”

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4002, 4006, 4153 of this title.

### § 3966. Within-class salary increases

#### (a) Time period; limitation

Any member of the Service receiving a salary under the Foreign Service Schedule shall be advanced to the next higher salary step in the member's class at the beginning of the first applicable pay period following the completion by that member of a period of—

(1) 52 calendar weeks of service in each of salary steps 1 through 9, and

(2) 104 calendar weeks of service in each of salary steps 10 through 13,

unless the performance of the member during that period is found in a review by a selection board established under section 4002 of this title to fall below the standards of performance for his or her salary class.

#### (b) Additional increase for meritorious service

The Secretary may grant, on the basis of especially meritorious service, to any member of the Service receiving an increase in salary under subsection (a) of this section, an additional salary increase to any higher step in the salary class in which the member is serving.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 406, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2089.)

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4002, 4006 of this title.

### § 3967. Salaries for Foreign Service personnel abroad who perform routine duties

(a) The Secretary may establish salary rates at rates lower than those established for the Foreign Service Schedule for the Foreign Service personnel described in subsection (b) of this section. The rates established under this subsection may be no less than the then applicable minimum wage rate specified in section 206(a)(1) of title 29.

(b) The Secretary may pay Foreign Service personnel who are recruited abroad, who are not available or are not qualified for assignment to another Foreign Service post, and who perform duties of a more routine nature than are generally performed by Foreign Service personnel assigned to class 9 in the Foreign Service Schedule, in accordance with the salary rates established under subsection (a) of this section.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 407, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2090.)

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 3951, 3964, 4011 of this title.

### § 3968. Local compensation plans

#### (a) Establishment; rates of pay; leaves of absence; supplemental payments; transfer from Civil Service Retirement and Disability Fund

(1) The Secretary shall establish compensation (including position classification) plans for foreign national employees of the Service and United States citizens employed under section 3951(c)(1) of this title. To the extent consistent with the public interest, each compensation plan shall be based upon prevailing wage rates and compensation practices (including participation in local social security plans) for corresponding types of positions in the locality of employment, except that such compensation plans shall provide for payment of wages to United States citizens at a rate which is no less than the then applicable minimum wage rate specified in section 206(a)(1) of title 29. Any compensation plan established under this section may include provision for (A) leaves of absence with pay for employees in accordance with prevailing law and employment practices in the locality of employment without regard to any

limitation contained in section 6310 of title 5, (B) programs for voluntary transfers of such leave and voluntary leave banks, which shall, to the extent practicable, be established in a manner consistent with the provisions of subchapters III and IV, respectively, of chapter 63 of title 5, and (C) payments by the Government and employees to a trust or other fund in a financial institution in order to finance future benefits for employees, including provision for retention in the fund of accumulated interest for the benefit of covered employees. For United States citizens under a compensation plan, the Secretary shall (A) provide such citizens with a total compensation package (including wages, allowances, benefits, and other employer payments, such as for social security) that has the equivalent cost to that received by foreign national employees occupying a similar position at that post and (B) define those allowances and benefits provided under United States law which shall be included as part of this total compensation package, notwithstanding any other provision of law, except that this section shall not be used to override United States minimum wage requirements, or any provision of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 301 et seq.] or title 26.

(2) The Secretary may make supplemental payments to any civil service annuitant who is a former foreign national employee of the Service (or who is receiving an annuity as a survivor of a former foreign national employee of the Service) in order to offset exchange rate losses, if the annuity being paid such annuitant is based on—

(A) a salary that was fixed in a foreign currency that has appreciated in value in terms of the United States dollar; and

(B) service in a country in which (as determined by the Secretary) the average retirement benefits being received by individuals who retired from competitive local organizations are superior to the local currency value of civil service annuities plus any other retirement benefits payable to foreign national employees who retired during similar time periods and after comparable careers with the Government.

(3)(A) Whenever a foreign national employee so elects during a one-year period established by the Secretary of State with respect to each post abroad, the Secretary of the Treasury (at the direction of the Secretary of State) shall transfer such employee's interest in the Civil Service Retirement and Disability Fund to a trust or other local retirement plan certified by the United States Government under a local compensation plan established for foreign national employees pursuant to this section (excluding local social security plans).

(B) For purposes of subparagraph (A), the phrase "employee's interest in the Civil Service Retirement and Disability Fund" means the total contributions of the employee and the employing agency with respect to such employee, pursuant to sections 8331(8) and 8334(a)(1) of title 5, respectively, plus interest at the rate provided in section 8334(e)(3) of such title.

(C) Any such transfer shall void any annuity rights or entitlement to lump-sum credit under subchapter III of chapter 83 of such title.

### (b) Employment programs

For the purpose of performing functions abroad, any agency or other Government establishment (including any establishment in the legislative or judicial branch) may administer employment programs for its employees who are foreign nationals, are United States citizens employed in the Service abroad who were hired while residing abroad, or are family members of Government employees assigned abroad, in accordance with the applicable provisions of this chapter.

### (c) Regulations

The Secretary of State may prescribe regulations governing the establishment and administration of local compensation plans under this section by all agencies and other Government establishments.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 408, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2090; Pub. L. 98-164, title I, § 127(a), Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1026; Pub. L. 101-246, title I, § 141(a), Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 35; Pub. L. 102-138, title I, §§ 148, 152, Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 670, 672; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 180(a)(4), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 415.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Social Security Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(1), is act Aug. 14, 1935, ch. 531, 49 Stat. 620, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 7 (§ 301 et seq.) of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1305 of Title 42 and Tables.

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (b), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 96-465, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2071, as amended, known as the Foreign Service Act of 1980, which is classified principally to this chapter (§ 3901 et seq.). For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3901 of this title and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 103-236, § 180(a)(4)(D), inserted at end "For United States citizens under a compensation plan, the Secretary shall (A) provide such citizens with a total compensation package (including wages, allowances, benefits, and other employer payments, such as for social security) that has the equivalent cost to that received by foreign national employees occupying a similar position at that post and (B) define those allowances and benefits provided under United States law which shall be included as part of this total compensation package, notwithstanding any other provision of law, except that this section shall not be used to override United States minimum wage requirements, or any provision of the Social Security Act or title 26."

Pub. L. 103-236, § 180(a)(4)(B), (C), in second sentence struck out "employed in the Service abroad who were hired while residing abroad and to those family members of Government employees who are paid in accordance with such plans" after "United States citizens" and in third sentence struck out "foreign national" before "employees" wherever appearing.

Pub. L. 103-236, § 180(a)(4)(A), inserted first sentence and struck out former first sentence which read as follows: "The Secretary shall establish compensation (including position classification) plans for foreign national employees of the Service, United States citizens employed in the Service abroad who were hired while residing abroad, and for United States citizens employed in the Service abroad who are family members of Government employees."

1991—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 102-138, § 152(a), inserted "United States citizens employed in the Service abroad

who were hired while residing abroad," after "employees of the Service," and "to United States citizens employed in the Service abroad who were hired while residing abroad and" after "payment of wages".

Pub. L. 102-138, §148, added cl. (B) and redesignated former cl. (B) as (C).

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 102-138, §152(b), inserted "are United States citizens employed in the Service abroad who were hired while residing abroad," after "foreign nationals".

1990—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 101-246 added par. (3).

1983—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 98-164 designated existing provisions as cl. (A) and added cl. (B).

#### DATE OF TRANSFER FROM CIVIL SERVICE RETIREMENT AND DISABILITY FUND

Section 141(c) of Pub. L. 101-246 provided that: "The transfer of an employee's interest in the Civil Service Retirement and Disability Fund shall occur after October 1, 1990."

#### FOREIGN NATIONAL PAY PLANS

Pub. L. 96-60, title I, §107(a), Aug. 15, 1979, 93 Stat. 397, provided that: "It is the sense of the Congress that the Secretary of State should—

"(1) improve coordination between the Department of State and the Department of Defense and other departments and agencies of the United States operating outside the United States with respect to foreign national pay systems and wage schedules to the extent that—

"(A) joint wage surveys and compatible pay schedules are adopted in countries where two or more departments or agencies of the United States directly employ foreign nationals, and

"(B) Department of Defense wage rates are included in wage surveys of the Department of State where the Department of Defense operates under indirect-hire arrangements;

"(2) monitor the establishment of wage rates outside the United States more closely to insure that United States missions—

"(A) operate under salary schedules that reflect private sector average pay or average pay ranges,

"(B) include the cost of severance in making pay adjustments, and

"(C) survey jobs in the private sector which represent as closely as possible the work force of the mission; and

"(3) substitute, whenever possible, prevailing local retirement plans for civil service retirement with respect to the retirement of foreign nationals employed by the United States."

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 3951, 3964, 4011 of this title; title 2 section 143a; title 5 sections 6325, 8345.

### § 3969. Salaries of consular agents

The Secretary of State shall establish the salary rate for each consular agent. Such salary rate shall be established after taking into account the workload of the consular agency and the prevailing wage rates in the locality where the agency is located, except that, in the case of a consular agent who is a citizen of the United States, the salary rate may not be less than the then applicable minimum wage rate specified in section 206(a)(1) of title 29.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 409, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2091.)

### § 3970. Compensation for imprisoned foreign national employees

#### (a) Eligibility; rates of compensation; terms and conditions of payment; applicability of powers under other statutory provisions

The head of any agency or other Government establishment (including any in the legislative or judicial branch) may compensate any current or former foreign national employee, or any foreign national who is or was employed under a personal services contract, who is or has been imprisoned by a foreign government if the Secretary of State (or, in the case of a foreign national employed by the Central Intelligence Agency, the Director of Central Intelligence) determines that such imprisonment is the result of the employment of the foreign national by the United States. Such compensation may not exceed the amount that the agency head determines approximates the salary and other benefits to which the foreign national would have been entitled had he or she been employed during the period of such imprisonment. Such compensation may be paid under such terms and conditions as the Secretary of State deems appropriate. For purposes of this section, an agency head shall have the same powers with respect to imprisoned foreign nationals who are or were employed by the agency as an agency head has under subchapter VII of chapter 55 of title 5 to the extent that such powers are consistent with this section.

#### (b) Time spent imprisoned considered as period of employment

Any period of imprisonment of a current or former foreign national employee which is compensable under this section shall be considered for purposes of any other employee benefit to be a period of employment by the Government, except that a period of imprisonment shall not be creditable—

(1) for purposes of subchapter III of chapter 83 of title 5, unless it is expressly creditable under that subchapter; or

(2) for purposes of subchapter I of chapter 81 of title 5, unless the individual was employed by the Government at the time of his or her imprisonment.

#### (c) Time of filing of claims

No compensation or other benefit shall be awarded under this section unless a claim therefor is filed within 3 years after—

(1) the termination of the period of imprisonment giving rise to the claim, or

(2) the date of the claimant's first opportunity thereafter to file such a claim, as determined by the appropriate agency head.

#### (d) Regulations

The Secretary of State may prescribe regulations governing payments under this section by all agencies and other Government establishments.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 410, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2091.)

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 5 section 8332.

**§ 3971. Temporary service as principal officer**

For such time (in excess of such minimum period as the Secretary of State may establish) as any member of the Service is temporarily in charge of a Foreign Service post during the absence or incapacity of the principal officer, that member shall receive, in addition to the basic salary paid to the member and notwithstanding sections 5535 and 5536 of title 5, an amount equal to that portion (which the Secretary of State may determine to be appropriate) of the difference between such salary and the basic salary provided for the principal officer, or, if there is no principal officer, for the former principal officer.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 411, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2091.)

**§ 3972. Special differentials****(a) Additional work requirements**

The Secretary may pay special differentials, in addition to compensation otherwise authorized, to Foreign Service officers who are required because of the nature of their assignments to perform additional work on a regular basis in substantial excess of normal requirements.

**(b) Repealed. Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 139(6), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 398**

**(c) Compensatory time off**

Nothing in this chapter, or in subchapter V of chapter 55 of title 5 shall preclude the granting of compensatory time off for Foreign Service officers.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 412, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2092; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 139(6), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 398.)

## AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 103-236 struck out subsec. (b) which read as follows: “Before implementing any proposal to limit either the number of Foreign Service officers who may receive a special differential under subsection (a) of this section or the amounts of such special differentials, the Secretary shall submit such proposal to the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives.”

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4024, 4046 of this title.

**§ 3973. Death gratuities****(a) Criteria; amount; payment deemed gift**

The Secretary may provide for payment of a gratuity to the surviving dependents of any Foreign Service employee, who dies as a result of injuries sustained in the performance of duty abroad, in an amount equal to one year's salary at the time of death. Any death gratuity payment made under this section shall be held to have been a gift and shall be in addition to any other benefit payable from any source.

**(b) Eligibility to elect monthly compensation as condition to payment**

A death gratuity payment shall be made under this section only if the survivor entitled to pay-

ment under subsection (c) of this section is entitled to elect monthly compensation under section 8133 of title 5, because the death resulted from an injury (excluding a disease proximately caused by the employment) sustained in the performance of duty, without regard to whether such survivor elects to waive compensation under such section 8133.

**(c) Order of payment**

A death gratuity payment under this section shall be made as follows:

- (1) First, to the widow or widower.
- (2) Second, to the child, or children in equal shares, if there is no widow or widower.
- (3) Third, to the dependent parent, or dependent parents in equal shares, if there is no widow, widower, or child.

If there is no survivor entitled to payment under this subsection, no payment shall be made.

**(d) Definitions**

As used in this section—

(1) the term “Foreign Service employee” means any member of the Service or United States representative to an international organization or commission; and

(2) each of the terms “widow”, “widower”, “child”, and “parent” shall have the same meaning given each such term by section 8101 of title 5.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 413, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2092.)

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 10 section 1489; title 50 section 403k.

## SUBCHAPTER V—CLASSIFICATION OF POSITIONS AND ASSIGNMENTS

## SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in sections 3942, 3964, 4131, 4153 of this title.

**§ 3981. Authority of Secretary**

The Secretary shall designate and classify positions in the Department and at Foreign Service posts which are to be occupied by members of the Service (other than by chiefs of mission and ambassadors at large). Positions designated under this section are excepted from the competitive service. Position classifications under this section shall be established, without regard to chapter 51 of title 5, in relation to the salaries established under subchapter IV of this chapter. In classifying positions at Foreign Service posts abroad, the Secretary shall give appropriate weight to job factors relating to service abroad and to the compensation practices applicable to United States citizens employed abroad by United States corporations.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 501, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2092.)

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 3982, 4001, 4102, 4155 of this title.

**§ 3982. Assignments to Foreign Service positions****(a) Positions assignable; basis for assignment**

(1) The Secretary (with the concurrence of the agency concerned) may assign a member of the

Service to any position classified under section 3981 of this title in which that member is eligible to serve (other than as chief of mission or ambassador at large), and may assign a member from one such position to another such position as the needs of the Service may require.

(2) In making assignments under paragraph (1), the Secretary shall assure that a member of the Service is not assigned to a position at a post in a particular geographic area exclusively on the basis of the race, ethnicity, or religion of that member.

**(b) Filling of positions by members of Service; employment of members of State Department and other agencies**

Positions designated as Foreign Service positions normally shall be filled by the assignment of members of the Service to those positions. Subject to that limitation—

(1) Foreign Service positions may be filled by the assignment for specified tours of duty of employees of the Department and, under interagency agreements, employees of other agencies; and

(2) Senior Foreign Service positions may also be filled by other members of the Service.

**(c) Charge d'affaires**

The President may assign a career member of the Service to serve as charge d'affaires or otherwise as the head of a mission (or as the head of a United States office abroad which is designated under section 3902(a)(3)<sup>1</sup> of this title by the Secretary of State as diplomatic in nature) for such period as the public interest may require.

**(d) Competitive ability with respect to chief of mission positions and for assignments outside areas of specialization**

The Secretary of State, in conjunction with the heads of the other agencies utilizing the Foreign Service personnel system, shall implement policies and procedures to insure that Foreign Service officers and members of the Senior Foreign Service of all agencies are able to compete for chief of mission positions and have opportunities on an equal basis to compete for assignments outside their areas of specialization.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 502, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2093; Pub. L. 98-164, title I, § 130(b), Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1027.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 3902(a)(3) of this title, referred to in subsec. (c), was redesignated section 3902(3) of this title pursuant to Pub. L. 98-164, which struck out the designation "(a)" and subsec. (b) of section 3902.

AMENDMENTS

1983—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 98-164 added subsec. (d).

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under subsec. (c) delegated to Secretary of State, see section 1 of Ex. Ord. No. 12293, Feb. 23, 1981, 46 F.R. 13969, set out as a note under section 3901 of this title.

REPORT RESPECTING POLICIES AND PROCEDURES ADOPTED TO IMPROVE COMPETITIVE ABILITY OF PERSONNEL

Section 130(c) of Pub. L. 98-164 directed Secretary of State, not later than one year after Nov. 22, 1983, to

submit a report to Speaker of House of Representatives and chairman of Committee on Foreign Relations of Senate describing policies and procedures adopted pursuant to the amendment made by section 130(b) of Pub. L. 98-164, adding subsec. (d) of this section, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 139(10), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 398.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 3902, 3903 of this title.

**§ 3983. Assignments to non-Service and other positions**

**(a) Positions assignable**

The Secretary may (with the concurrence of the agency, organization, or other body concerned) assign a member of the Service for duty—

(1) in a non-Foreign Service (including Senior Executive Service) position in the Department or another agency, or with an international organization, international commission, or other international body;

(2) with a domestic or international trade, labor, agricultural, scientific, or other conference, congress, or gathering;

(3) for special instruction, training, or orientation at or with a public or private organization; and

(4) in the United States (or in any territory or possession of the United States or in the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico), with a State or local government, a public or private nonprofit organization (including an educational institution), or a Member or office of the Congress.

**(b) Salary; travel and other expenses**

(1) The salary of a member of the Service assigned under this section shall be the higher of the salary which that member would receive but for the assignment under this section or the salary of the position to which that member is assigned.

(2) The salary of a member of the Service assigned under this section shall be paid from appropriations made available for the payment of salaries and expenses of the Service. Such appropriations may be reimbursed for all or any part of the costs of salaries and other benefits for members assigned under this section.

(3) A member of the Service assigned under subsection (a)(4) of this section to a Member or office of the Congress shall be deemed to be an employee of the House of Representatives or the Senate, as the case may be, for purposes of payment of travel and other expenses.

**(c) Length of assignment**

Assignments under this section may not exceed four years of continuous service for any member of the Service unless the Secretary approves an extension of such period for that member because of special circumstances.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 503, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2093.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 7 section 1767.

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

**§ 3984. Service in United States and abroad****(a) Obligation to serve abroad; length of stay in United States**

Career members of the Service shall be obligated to serve abroad and shall be expected to serve abroad for substantial portions of their careers. The Secretary shall establish by regulation limitations upon assignments of members of the Service within the United States. A member of the Service may not be assigned to duty within the United States for any period of continuous service exceeding eight years unless the Secretary approves an extension of such period for that member because of special circumstances.

**(b) Intermittent duty within United States**

Consistent with the needs of the Service, the Secretary shall seek to assign each career member of the Service who is a citizen of the United States (other than those employed in accordance with section 3951 of this title) to duty within the United States at least once during each period of fifteen years that the member is in the Service.

**(c) Sabbaticals**

The Secretary may grant a sabbatical to a career member of the Senior Foreign Service for not to exceed eleven months in order to permit the member to engage in study or uncompensated work experience which will contribute to the development and effectiveness of the member. A sabbatical may be granted under this subsection under conditions specified by the Secretary in light of the provisions of section 3396(c) of title 5, which apply to sabbaticals granted to members of the Senior Executive Service.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 504, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2094; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 180(a)(5), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 416.)

## AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 103-236 inserted “(other than those employed in accordance with section 3951 of this title)” after “citizen of the United States”.

**§ 3985. Temporary details**

A period of duty of not more than six months in duration by a member of the Service shall be considered a temporary detail and shall not be considered an assignment within the meaning of this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 505, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2094.)

SUBCHAPTER VI—PROMOTION AND  
RETENTION

## SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in sections 3964, 4153 of this title.

**§ 4001. Promotions****(a) Method of promotion**

Career members of the Senior Foreign Service are promoted by appointment under section 3942(a) of this title to a higher salary class in the Senior Foreign Service. Members of the Sen-

ior Foreign Service serving under career candidate appointments or noncareer appointments are promoted by appointment under section 3943 of this title to a higher salary class in the Senior Foreign Service. Foreign Service officers, and Foreign Service personnel who are assigned to a class in the Foreign Service Schedule, are promoted by appointment under section 3942(a) of this title as career members of the Senior Foreign Service or by assignment under section 3964 of this title to a higher salary class in the Foreign Service Schedule.

**(b) Recommendations and rankings of selection boards**

Except as provided in section 4006(a) of this title, promotions of—

(1) members of the Senior Foreign Service, and

(2) members of the Service assigned to a salary class in the Foreign Service Schedule (including promotions of such members into the Senior Foreign Service),

shall be based upon the recommendations and rankings of selection boards established under section 4002 of this title, except that the Secretary may by regulation specify categories of career members, categories of career candidates, and other members of the Service assigned to salary classes in the Foreign Service Schedule who may receive promotions on the basis of satisfactory performance.

**(c) Eligibility; request for promotion; time of consideration; withdrawal of request; basis for decision; affidavits**

(1) Promotions into the Senior Foreign Service shall be recommended by selection boards only from among career members of the Service assigned to class 1 in the Foreign Service Schedule who request that they be considered for promotion into the Senior Foreign Service. The Secretary shall prescribe the length of the period after such a request is made (within any applicable time in class limitation established under section 4007(a) of this title) during which such members may be considered by selection boards for entry into the Senior Foreign Service. A request by a member for consideration for promotion into the Senior Foreign Service under this subsection may be withdrawn by the member, but if it is withdrawn, that member may not thereafter request consideration for promotion into the Senior Foreign Service.

(2) Decisions by the Secretary on the numbers of individuals to be promoted into and retained in the Senior Foreign Service shall be based upon a systematic long-term projection of personnel flows and needs designed to provide—

(A) a regular, predictable flow of recruitment in the Service;

(B) effective career development patterns to meet the needs of the Service; and

(C) a regular, predictable flow of talent upward through the ranks and into the Senior Foreign Service.

(3) The affidavit requirements of sections 3332 and 3333(a) of title 5 shall not apply with respect to a member of the Service who has previously complied with those requirements and who subsequently is promoted by appointment to any

class in the Senior Foreign Service without a break in service.

(4) Not later than March 1 of each year, the Secretary of State shall submit a report to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and to the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate which shall—

(A) describe the steps taken and planned in furtherance of—

(i) maximum compatibility among agencies utilizing the Foreign Service personnel system, as provided for in section 3923 of this title, and

(ii) the development of uniform policies and procedures and consolidated personnel functions, as provided for in section 3924 of this title;

(B) specify the upper and lower limits planned by each such agency for recruitment, advancement, and retention of members of the Service, as provided for in paragraph (2), including, with respect to each of the relevant promotion competition groups, the projected ranges of rates of appointment, promotion, and attrition over each of the next 5 fiscal years, as well as a comparison of such projections with the projections for the preceding year and with actual rates of appointment, promotion, and attrition, including a full explanation of any deviations from projections reported in the preceding year; and

(C) specify the numbers of members of the Service who are assigned to positions classified under section 3981 of this title which are more than one grade higher or lower than the personal rank of the member.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 601, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2094; Pub. L. 100-204, title I, § 185(b), Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1366; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 180(a)(6), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 416.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 103-236, which directed amendment of par. (2) by striking “and” the last place it appears and by inserting “and other members of the Service” after “categories of career candidates,” was executed by striking “and” after “categories of career members,” and making the insertion in concluding provisions below par. (2), to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

1987—Subsec. (c)(4). Pub. L. 100-204 added par. (4).

#### REPORTS ELIMINATED

Pub. L. 104-66, title II, § 2241, Dec. 21, 1995, 109 Stat. 733, provided that: “Notwithstanding section 601(c)(4) of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 (22 U.S.C. 4001(c)(4)), the reports otherwise required under such section shall not cover the activities of the United States Information Agency.”

#### LANGUAGE TRAINING IN FOREIGN SERVICE

Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 155, Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 675, provided that: “The Department of State, the Department of Commerce, and the United States Information Agency shall ensure that the precepts for promotion of Foreign Service employees provide that end-of-training reports for employees in full-time language training shall be weighed as heavily as the annual employee efficiency reports, in order to ensure that employees in language training are not disadvantaged in the promotion process.”

#### FOREIGN SERVICE PROMOTION PANELS

Pub. L. 101-246, title I, § 163, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 47, provided that: “It is the sense of the Congress that, to

the greatest extent possible, Foreign Service promotion panels should—

“(1) only promote candidates to the Senior Foreign Service who have demonstrated foreign language proficiency in at least one language at the General Professional Speaking Proficiency level, as defined by the Foreign Service Institute;

“(2) strive for the objective stipulated in the Foreign Service Manual ‘to be able to use two foreign languages at a minimum professional level of proficiency of S-3/R-3, which is the general professional speaking proficiency level’; and

“(3) have at least one person on each Foreign Service promotion panel who has attained at least the General Professional Speaking Proficiency level in one language level.”

[Except as otherwise provided, Secretary of State to have and exercise any authority vested by law in any official or office of Department of State and references to such officials or offices deemed to refer to Secretary of State or Department of State, as appropriate, see section 2651a of this title and section 161(d) of Pub. L. 103-236, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.]

#### LANGUAGE PROFICIENCY IN EMPLOYEE EVALUATION REPORT

Pub. L. 101-246, title I, § 164, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 47, required revision of employee and officer evaluation reports for Foreign Service officers of Department of State and Agency for International Development to include separate assessment of employee’s effectiveness in using foreign language and required that precedence in promotion be given to officers achieving certain levels of proficiency in foreign language, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 191(b), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 418. See section 191(a) of Pub. L. 103-236, set out as a note under section 3926 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4002, 4173 of this title.

### § 4002. Establishment of selection boards

#### (a) Evaluation of performance; recommendations

The Secretary shall establish selection boards to evaluate the performance of members of the Senior Foreign Service and members of the Service assigned to a salary class in the Foreign Service Schedule. Selection boards shall, in accordance with precepts prescribed by the Secretary, rank the members of a salary class on the basis of relative performance and may make recommendations for—

(1) promotions in accordance with section 4001 of this title;

(2) awards of performance pay under section 3965(c) of this title;

(3) denials of within-class step increases under section 3966(a) of this title;

(4) offer or renewal of limited career extensions under section 4007(b) of this title; and

(5) such other actions as the Secretary may prescribe by regulation.

#### (b) Public members; appointment of women and minority groups

All selection boards established under this section shall include public members. The Secretary shall assure that a substantial number of women and members of minority groups are appointed to each selection board established under this section.

#### (c) Disqualification for service on foreign service selection boards

No public members appointed pursuant to this section may be, at the time of their appoint-

ment or during their appointment, an agent of a foreign principal (as defined by section 611(b) of this title) or a lobbyist for a foreign entity (as defined in section 1602(6) of title 2) or receive income from a government of a foreign country.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 602, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2095; Pub. L. 101-246, title I, § 142, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 36; Pub. L. 104-65, § 12(c), Dec. 19, 1995, 109 Stat. 701.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1995—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 104-65 inserted “or a lobbyist for a foreign entity (as defined in section 1602(6) of title 2)” before “or receive income”.

1990—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 101-246 added subsec. (c).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1995 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 104-65 effective Jan. 1, 1996, except as otherwise provided, see section 24 of Pub. L. 104-65, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1601 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 3965, 3966, 4001, 4007, 4131 of this title.

### § 4003. Recommendations and rankings

(a) Recommendations and rankings by selection boards shall be based upon records of the character, ability, conduct, quality of work, industry, experience, dependability, usefulness, and general performance of members of the Service. Such records may include reports prepared by or on behalf of the Inspector General of the Department of State and the Foreign Service, performance evaluation reports of supervisors, records of commendations, reports of language test scores from the Foreign Service Institute, awards, reprimands, and other disciplinary actions, and (with respect to members of the Senior Foreign Service) records of current and prospective assignments.

(b) Precepts for selection boards shall include a description of the needs of the Service for performance requirements, skills, and qualities, which are to be considered in recommendations for promotion. The precepts for selection boards responsible for recommending promotions into and within the Senior Foreign Service shall emphasize performance which demonstrates the strong policy formulation capabilities, executive leadership qualities, and highly developed functional and area expertise, which are required for the Senior Foreign Service.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 603, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2095.)

#### AUTHORITY OF SECRETARY OF STATE

Except as otherwise provided, Secretary of State to have and exercise any authority vested by law in any official or office of Department of State and references to such officials or offices deemed to refer to Secretary of State or Department of State, as appropriate, see section 2651a of this title and section 161(d) of Pub. L. 103-236, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4004 of this title.

### § 4004. Confidentiality of records

The records described in section 4003(a) of this title shall be maintained in accordance with reg-

ulations prescribed by the Secretary. Except to the extent that they pertain to the receipt, disbursement, and accounting for public funds, such records shall be confidential and subject to inspection only by the President, the Secretary, such employees of the Government as may be authorized by law or assigned by the Secretary to work on such records, the legislative and appropriations committees of the Congress charged with considering legislation and appropriations for the Service, and representatives duly authorized by such committees. Access to such records relating to a member of the Service shall be granted to such member, upon written request.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 604, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2096.)

### § 4005. Implementation of selection board recommendations

(a) Recommendations for promotion made by selection boards shall be submitted to the Secretary in rank order by salary class or in rank order by specialization within a salary class. The Secretary shall make promotions and, with respect to career appointments into or within the Senior Foreign Service, shall make recommendations to the President for promotions, in accordance with the rankings of the selection boards.

(b) Notwithstanding subsection (a) of this section, in special circumstances set forth by regulation, the Secretary may remove the name of an individual from the rank order list submitted by a selection board or delay the promotion of an individual named in such a list.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 605, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2096.)

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4006, 4105 of this title.

### § 4006. Other bases for promoting or increasing pay

(a) The Secretary may pursuant to a recommendation of the Foreign Service Grievance Board, an equal employment opportunity appeals examiner, or the Special Counsel of the Merit Systems Protection Board, and shall pursuant to a decision or order of the Merit Systems Protection Board—

(1) recommend to the President a promotion of a member of the Service under section 3942(a) of this title;

(2) promote a member of the Service under section 3943 of this title;

(3) grant performance pay to a member of the Senior Foreign Service under section 3965(c) of this title; or

(4) grant a within-class salary increase under section 3966 of this title to a member of the Service who is assigned to a salary class in the Foreign Service Schedule.

(b) In implementing subsection (a) of this section and in cases in which the Secretary has exercised the authority of section 4005(b) of this title, the Secretary may, in special circumstances set forth by regulation, make retro-



active promotions, grant performance pay, make retroactive within-class salary increases, and recommend retroactive promotions by the President.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 606, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2096.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4001 of this title.

**§ 4007. Retirement for expiration of time in class**

**(a) Maximum time**

(1) The Secretary shall, by regulation, establish maximum time in class limitations for—

(A) career members of the Senior Foreign Service,

(B) Foreign Service officers, and

(C) other career members of the Service who are in such occupational categories as may be designated by the Secretary and who are assigned to salary classes in the Foreign Service Schedule to which Foreign Service officers may also be assigned.

(2) Maximum time in class limitations under this subsection (which may not be less than 3 years for career members of the Senior Foreign Service) may apply with respect to the time a member may remain in a single salary class or in a combination of salary classes.

(3) The Secretary may, by regulation, increase or decrease any maximum time in class established under this subsection as the needs of the Service may require. If maximum time in class is decreased, the Secretary shall provide any member of the Service who is in a category and salary class subject to the new time in class limitation an opportunity to remain in class (notwithstanding the new limitation) for a period which is at least as long as the shorter of—

(A) the period which the member would have been permitted to remain in class but for the decrease in maximum time in class, or

(B) such minimum period as the Secretary determines is necessary to provide members of the Service who are in the same category and salary class as that member a reasonable opportunity to be promoted into the next higher class or combination of classes, as the case may be.

**(b) Limited career extension**

Members of the Service whose maximum time in class under subsection (a) of this section expires—

(1) after they have attained the highest salary class for their respective occupational categories, or

(2) in the case of members of the Senior Foreign Service, while they are in salary classes designated by the Secretary,

may continue to serve only under limited extensions of their career appointments. Such limited extensions may not exceed 5 years in duration and may be granted and renewed by the Secretary in accordance with the recommendations of selection boards established under section 4002 of this title. Members of the Service serving under such limited career extensions shall continue to be career members of the Service.

**(c) Members subject to retirement; reception of retirement benefits**

Any member of the Service—

(1) whose maximum time in class under subsection (a) of this section expires and who is not promoted to a higher class or combination of classes, as the case may be, or

(2) whose limited career extension under subsection (b) of this section expires and is not renewed,

shall be retired from the Service and receive benefits in accordance with section 4009 of this title, subject to any career extension under subsection (d) of this section.

**(d) Extensions**

Notwithstanding any other provision of this section—

(1) the career appointment of a member of the Service whose maximum time in class under subsection (a) of this section expires, or whose limited career extension under subsection (b) of this section expires, while that member is occupying a position to which he or she was appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall be extended until the appointment to that position is terminated; and

(2) if the Secretary determines it to be in the public interest, the Secretary may extend temporarily the career appointment of a career member of the Service whose maximum time in class or limited career extension expires, but in no case may any extension under this paragraph exceed one year and such extensions may be granted only in special circumstances.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 607, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2096.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4001, 4002, 4009, 4071d, 4131, 4136, 4153 of this title.

**§ 4008. Retirement based on failure to meet standard of performance**

(a) The Secretary shall prescribe regulations concerning the standards of performance to be met by career members of the Service who are citizens of the United States. Whenever a selection board review indicates that the performance of such a career member of the Service may not meet the standards of performance for his or her class, the Secretary shall provide for administrative review of the performance of the member. The review shall include an opportunity for the member to be heard.

(b) In any case where the administrative review conducted under subsection (a) of this section substantiates that a career member of the Service has failed to meet the standards of performance for his or her class, the member shall be retired from the Service and receive benefits in accordance with section 4009 of this title.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 608, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2097.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4009, 4071d, 4136, 4156 of this title.

**§ 4009. Retirement benefits****(a) Entitlement**

A member of the Service—

(1) who is retired under section 4007(c)(2) of this title; or

(2) who is retired under section 4007(c)(1) or 4008(b) or 4010a of this title—

(A) after becoming eligible for voluntary retirement under section 4051 of this title, or

(B) from the Senior Foreign Service or while assigned to class 1 in the Foreign Service Schedule,

shall receive retirement benefits in accordance with section 4046 of this title.

**(b) Computation of amount; refund; death of member**

Any member of the Service (other than a member to whom subsection (a) of this section applies) who is retired under section 4007(c)(1) or 4008(b) or 4010a of this title shall receive—

(1) one-twelfth of a year's salary at his or her then current salary rate for each year of service and proportionately for a fraction of a year, but not exceeding a total of one year's salary at his or her then current salary rate, payable without interest from the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability Fund in 3 equal installments, such installments to be paid on January 1 of each of the first 3 calendar years beginning after the retirement of the member (except that in special cases, the Secretary of State may accelerate or combine such installments); and

(2) a refund as provided in section 4055 of this title of the contributions made by the member to the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability Fund, except that in lieu of such refund a member who has at least 5 years of service credit toward retirement under the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System (excluding military and naval service) may elect to receive an annuity, computed under section 4046 of this title, commencing at age 60.

In the event that a member of the Service has elected to receive retirement benefits under paragraph (2) and dies before reaching age 60, his or her death shall be considered a death in service within the meaning of section 4049 of this title.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 609, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2098; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 181(a)(3), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 417.)

**AMENDMENTS**

1994—Subsecs. (a)(2), (b). Pub. L. 103-236 inserted “or 4010a” after “4008(b)”.

**SPECIAL ANNUITY FOR CERTAIN FOREIGN SERVICE OFFICERS**

Pub. L. 95-105, title IV, § 411, Aug. 17, 1977, 91 Stat. 855, as amended by Pub. L. 95-426, title IV, § 412(b), Oct. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 981, provided that:

“(a) Subject to the conditions established in subsection (b), any Foreign Service officer—

“(1) who was retired under section 633(a)(1) of the Foreign Service Act of 1946 [former section 1003(a)(1) of this title, see section 4007(a) of this title] before the date of enactment of this section, [Aug. 17, 1977];

“(2) who was not in class 1, 2, or 3 at the time of retirement;

“(3) who was 40 years of age or older at the time of retirement; and

“(4) who had at least 20 years of service, exclusive of credit for unused sick leave, creditable for purposes of section 821 of such Act [former section 1076 of this title, see section 4046 of this title] at the time of retirement;

shall be entitled to receive retirement benefits in accordance with the provisions of such section 821 [former section 1076 of this title, see section 4046 of this title] in lieu of any retirement benefits which the officer may be entitled to elect under section 634(b)(2) of such Act [former section 1004(b)(2) of this title, see subsec. (b)(2) of this section]. Such retirement benefits shall be paid from the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability Fund and shall be effective on the date the officer reaches age 50, the date of enactment of this section [Aug. 17, 1977], or October 1, 1977, whichever date is latest.

“(b) Retirement benefits may not be paid under this section unless (1) any refund of contributions paid to the officer under section 634(b)(2) of the Foreign Service Act of 1946 [former section 1004(b)(2) of this title, see subsec. (b)(2) of this section] is repaid to the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability Fund, with interest, in accordance with sections 811(d) and (f) of such Act [former section 1071(d) and (f) of this title, see section 4045(d) and (f) of this title]; and (2) the service forming the basis for such retirement benefits is not used as the basis for any other retirement benefits under any retirement system.

“(c) In the event that an officer who is entitled to retirement benefits under this section dies before reaching the age of fifty, but after the date of enactment of this section [Aug. 17, 1977], his or her death shall be considered a death in service within the meaning of section 832 of the Foreign Service Act of 1946 [former section 1082 of this title, see section 4049 of this title], except that no survivor's annuity (other than a survivor's annuity which would be payable under the first complete sentence in section 634(b)(2) of such Act [former section 1004(b)(2) of this title, see subsec. (b)(2) of this section] but for the enactment of this section) shall become effective before October 1, 1977.

“(d) An officer entitled to retirement benefits under this section may make the election described in section 821(b) or (f), as appropriate, of the Foreign Service Act of 1946 [former section 1076(b) or (f) of this title, see section 4046(b) and (f) of this title] at any time before reaching the age of fifty or before the end of the sixty-day period beginning on the date of enactment of this section [Aug. 17, 1977], whichever is later.”

**SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS**

This section is referred to in sections 4007, 4008, 4010a, 4047, 4060, 4153 of this title; title 5 sections 5595, 8501.

**§ 4010. Separation for cause****(a) Authorization of Secretary; hearing prior to separation; waiver of hearing; suspension pending final resolution**

(1) The Secretary may separate any member from the Service for such cause as will promote the efficiency of the Service.

(2) A member of the Service (other than a United States citizen employed under section 3951 of this title who is not a family member) who is a member of the Senior Foreign Service or is assigned to a salary class in the Foreign Service Schedule and who either (A) is serving under a career appointment, or (B) if separation is to be by reason of misconduct, is serving under a limited appointment, shall not be separated from the Service under this section until the member has been granted a hearing before

the Foreign Service Grievance Board and the cause for separation established at such hearing, unless the member waives in writing the right to a hearing or, notwithstanding section 4136(8) of this title, unless the member has been convicted of a crime related to the cause for separation, subject to reinstatement with back pay (for any period during which separation for cause had not been established by such a hearing) if such conviction is reversed on appeal. If such cause is not established at such hearing, the Grievance Board shall have the authority to direct the Department to pay reasonable attorneys fees to the extent and in the manner provided by section 4137(b)(5) of this title. The hearing provided under this paragraph shall be in accordance with the hearing procedures applicable to grievances under section 4136 of this title and shall be in lieu of any other administrative procedure authorized or required by this or any other law. Section 4140 of this title shall apply to proceedings under this paragraph.

(3) Notwithstanding the hearing required by this section, or procedures under any other provision of law, where a member has been convicted of a crime for which a sentence of imprisonment may be imposed, and there is a nexus to the efficiency of the Service, the Secretary, or his designee, may suspend such member without pay pending final resolution of the underlying matter, subject to reinstatement with back pay if cause for separation is not established in a hearing before the Board.

(4) Any member suspended pursuant to subsection (a)(3) of this section shall be entitled to—

- (A) advance written notice of the specific reasons for such suspension;
- (B) a reasonable time, not less than seven days, to answer orally and in writing;
- (C) be represented by an attorney or other representative; and
- (D) a final written decision.

(5) Any member suspended pursuant to subsection (a)(3) of this section shall be entitled to grieve such action in accordance with procedures applicable to grievances under subchapter XI of this chapter. The Board review, however, shall be limited only to a determination of whether the conviction requirements of subsection (a)(3) of this section have been fulfilled, and whether there is a nexus between the conduct and the efficiency of the Service.

**(b) Refund of contributions to Fund; annuity election**

Any participant in the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System who is separated under subsection (a) of this section shall be entitled to receive a refund as provided in section 4055 of this title of the contributions made by the participant to the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability Fund. Except in cases where the Secretary determines that separation was based in whole or in part on the ground of disloyalty to the United States, a participant who has at least 5 years of service credit toward retirement under the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System (excluding military and naval service) may elect, in lieu of such refund, to an annuity, computed under section 4046 of this title, commencing at age 60.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §610, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2098; Pub. L. 100-204, title I, §181(d), Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1364; Pub. L. 101-167, title V, §586(b), Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1252; Pub. L. 101-246, title I, §143, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 36; Pub. L. 102-138, title I, §143(a), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 668; Pub. L. 103-415, §1(h)(2), Oct. 25, 1994, 108 Stat. 4300.)

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 103-415 inserted “(other than a United States citizen employed under section 3951 of this title who is not a family member)” after “A member of the Service”.

1991—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 102-138, §143(a)(1), substituted “a member has been convicted of a crime” for “there is reasonable cause to believe that a member has committed a crime”.

Subsec. (a)(4)(A). Pub. L. 102-138, §143(a)(2), substituted “suspension” for “suspension, including the grounds for reasonable cause to believe a crime has been committed”.

Subsec. (a)(5). Pub. L. 102-138, §143(a)(3), substituted “the conviction requirements of subsection (a)(3) of this section have been fulfilled” for “there exists reasonable cause to believe a crime has been committed for which a sentence of imprisonment may be imposed”.

1990—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 101-246 inserted before period at end of first sentence “or, notwithstanding section 4136(8) of this title, unless the member has been convicted of a crime related to the cause for separation, subject to reinstatement with back pay (for any period during which separation for cause had not been established by such a hearing) if such conviction is reversed on appeal” and inserted sentence at end that section 4140 of this title apply to proceedings under this paragraph.

1989—Subsec. (a)(3) to (5). Pub. L. 101-167 added pars. (3) to (5).

1987—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 100-204 inserted after first sentence “If such cause is not established at such hearing, the Grievance Board shall have the authority to direct the Department to pay reasonable attorneys fees to the extent and in the manner provided by section 4137(b)(5) of this title.”

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1987 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 100-204 not applicable with respect to any grievance in which the Board has issued a final decision pursuant to section 4137 of this title before Dec. 22, 1987, see section 181(e) of Pub. L. 100-204, set out as a note under section 3946 of this title.

DEFINITION OF “REASONABLE CAUSE”

Section 586(c) of Pub. L. 101-167, provided that for purposes of amendments by section 586(a) and (b) of Pub. L. 101-167, which amended this section and section 4136 of this title, reasonable cause to believe that a member has committed a crime for which a sentence of imprisonment may be imposed was to be defined as a member of the Service having been convicted of, and sentence of imprisonment having been imposed for, a job-related crime, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 102-138, title I, §143(c), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 668.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4011, 4071d, 4136 of this title.

**§ 4010a. Reductions in force**

**(a) Authorization and regulations**

The Secretary may conduct reductions in force and shall prescribe regulations for the separation of members of the Service holding a career or career candidate appointment under subchapter III of this chapter, under such reduc-

tions in force which give due effect to the following:

- (1) Organizational changes.
- (2) Documented employee knowledge, skills, or competencies.
- (3) Tenure of employment.
- (4) Documented employee performance.
- (5) Military preference, subject to section 3501(a)(3) of title 5.

**(b) Applicability of retirement benefits**

The provisions of section 4009 of this title shall be applicable to any member of the Service holding a career or career candidate appointment under subchapter III of this chapter, who is separated under the provisions of this section.

**(c) Grievance procedure**

An employee against whom action is taken under this section may elect either to file a grievance under subchapter XI of this chapter or to appeal to the Merit Systems Protection Board under procedures prescribed by the Board. Grievances under subchapter XI of this chapter shall be limited to cases of reprisal, interference in the conduct of an employee's official duties, or similarly inappropriate use of the authority of this section.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 611, as added Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 181(a)(2), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 417; amended Pub. L. 103-415, § 1(ii), Oct. 25, 1994, 108 Stat. 4303.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 611 of Pub. L. 96-465 was renumbered section 612 and is classified to section 4011 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-415 made technical amendment relating to style of section catchline.

EMPLOYMENT ASSISTANCE REFERRAL SYSTEM FOR CERTAIN MEMBERS OF FOREIGN SERVICE

Section 179 of Pub. L. 103-236, as amended by Pub. L. 103-415, § 1(g), Oct. 25, 1994, 108 Stat. 4300, provided that: “(a) REFERRAL SYSTEM.—Certain members of the Foreign Service (as described in subsection (b)), may participate in the Office of Personnel Management's Interagency Placement programs or any successor program. Such members of the Foreign Service shall be treated in the same manner as employees participating in such a program as of the effective date of this Act [Apr. 30, 1994].

“(b) CERTAIN MEMBERS OF THE FOREIGN SERVICE.—For purposes of this section, the term ‘members of the Foreign Service’ means any individuals holding career or career candidate appointments under chapter 3 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [22 U.S.C. 3941 et seq.]”

CONSULTATION WITH DIRECTOR OF OFFICE OF PERSONNEL MANAGEMENT PRIOR TO PRESCRIBING REGULATIONS FOR REDUCTIONS IN FORCE

Section 181(c) of Pub. L. 103-236, as amended by Pub. L. 103-415, § 1(i), Oct. 25, 1994, 108 Stat. 4301, provided that: “The Secretary of State (or in the case of any other agency authorized by law to utilize the Foreign Service personnel system, the head of that agency) shall consult with the Director of the Office of Personnel Management before prescribing regulations for reductions in force under section 611 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [22 U.S.C. 4010a] (as added by subsection (a) of this section), and shall publish such regulations.”

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4009, 4105, 4136 of this title.

**§ 4011. Termination of limited appointments**

Except as provided in section 4010(a)(2) of this title, the Secretary may terminate at any time the appointment of any member of the Service serving under a limited appointment who is in the Senior Foreign Service, who is assigned to a salary class in the Foreign Service Schedule or who is paid in accordance with section 3967 of this title or is a United States citizen paid under a compensation plan under section 3968 of this title.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 612, formerly § 611, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2099; renumbered § 612 and amended Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §§ 180(a)(7), 181(a)(1), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 416.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 612 of Pub. L. 96-465 was renumbered section 613 and is classified to section 4012 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-236, § 180(a)(7), substituted “or who is paid in accordance with section 3967 of this title or is a United States citizen paid under a compensation plan under section 3968 of this title.” for “, or who is a family member of a Government employee serving under a local compensation plan established under section 3968 of this title.”

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4131 of this title.

**§ 4012. Termination of appointments of consular agents and foreign national employees**

(a) The Secretary of State may terminate at any time the appointment of any consular agent in light of the criteria and procedures normally followed in the locality in similar circumstances.

(b) The Secretary may terminate at any time the appointment of any foreign national employee in light of the criteria and procedures normally followed in the locality in similar circumstances.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 613, formerly § 612, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2099; renumbered § 613, Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 181(a)(1), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 416.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 613 of Pub. L. 96-465 was renumbered section 614 and is classified to section 4013 of this title.

**§ 4012a. Foreign national employees separation pay**

**(a) Establishment**

There is established in the Treasury of the United States a fund to provide separation pay for foreign national employees of agencies of the United States Government, other than the Department of Defense.

**(b) Funding**

There shall be deposited in such account—

(1) all amounts previously obligated for accrued separation pay of foreign national employees of such agencies of the United States Government; and

(2) amounts obligated for fiscal years after 1991 by such agencies for the current and fu-

ture costs of separation pay of foreign national employees.

**(c) Availability**

Amounts shall be deposited in the fund annually and are authorized to be available until expended.

**(d) Expenditures from fund**

Amounts deposited in the fund shall be available for expenditure to make separation payments to foreign national employees in countries in which such pay is legally authorized.

(Pub. L. 102-138, title I, §151, Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 672.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1992 and 1993, and not as part of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 which comprises this chapter.

**§ 4013. Foreign Service awards**

The President shall establish a system of awards to confer appropriate recognition of outstanding contributions to the Nation by members of the Service. The awards system established under this section shall provide for presentation by the President and by the Secretary of medals or other suitable commendations for performance in the course of or beyond the call of duty which involves distinguished, meritorious service to the Nation, including extraordinary valor in the face of danger to life or health.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §614, formerly §613, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2099; renumbered §614, Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §181(a)(1), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 416.)

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of State, see section 1 of Ex. Ord. No. 12293, Feb. 23, 1981, 46 F.R. 13969, set out under section 3901 of this title.

SUBCHAPTER VII—CAREER DEVELOPMENT, TRAINING, AND ORIENTATION

SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in section 4153 of this title.

**§ 4021. Institution for training**

**(a) Institution or center for training**

The Secretary of State shall maintain and operate an institution or center for training (hereinafter in this subchapter referred to as the "institution"), originally established under section 701 of the Foreign Service Act of 1946, in order to promote career development within the Service and to provide necessary training and instruction in the field of foreign relations to members of the Service and to employees of the Department and of other agencies. The institution shall be headed by a Director, who shall be appointed by the Secretary of State.

**(b) Provision of training**

To the extent practicable, the Secretary of State shall provide training under this sub-

chapter which meets the needs of all agencies, and other agencies shall avoid duplicating the facilities and training provided by the Secretary of State through the institution and otherwise.

**(c) Training and instruction to citizens of Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands**

Training and instruction may be provided at the Institute<sup>1</sup> for not to exceed sixty citizens of the Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands in order to prepare them to serve as members of the foreign services of the Federated States of Micronesia, the Marshall Islands, and Palau. The authority of this subsection shall expire when the Compact of Free Association is approved by the Congress.

**(d) Training and instruction of employees of foreign governments**

(1) The Secretary of State is authorized to provide for special professional foreign affairs training and instruction of employees of foreign governments through the institution.

(2) Training and instruction under paragraph (1) shall be on a reimbursable or advance-of-funds basis. Such reimbursements or advances to the Department of State may be provided by an agency of the United States Government or by a foreign government and shall be credited to the currently available applicable appropriation account.

(3) In making such training available to employees of foreign governments, priority consideration should be given to officials of newly emerging democratic nations and then to such other countries as the Secretary determines to be in the national interest of the United States.

(4) The authorities of section 4024 of this title shall apply to training and instruction provided under this section.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §701, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2099; Pub. L. 98-164, title I, §126, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1026; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §126(2), (3), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 393, 394; Pub. L. 103-415, §1(y), Oct. 25, 1994, 108 Stat. 4302.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 701 of the Foreign Service Act of 1946, referred to in subsec. (a), which was classified to section 1041 of this title, was repealed by Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-415 made technical amendment relating to style of section catchline.

Pub. L. 103-236, §126(2)(A), substituted "Institution for training" for "Foreign Service Institute" as section catchline.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103-236, §126(2)(B), inserted heading, substituted "an institution or center for training (hereinafter in this subchapter referred to as the 'institution')" for "the Foreign Service Institute (hereinafter in this subchapter referred to as the 'Institute')", and substituted "institution shall" for "Institute shall".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 103-236, §126(3), substituted "institution" for "Institute".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 103-236, §126(2)(C), added subsec. (d).

1983—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 98-164 added subsec. (c).

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be "institution".

TERMINATION OF TRUST TERRITORY OF THE PACIFIC ISLANDS

For termination of Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands, see note set out preceding section 1681 of Title 48, Territories and Insular Possessions.

DESIGNATION OF FOREIGN LANGUAGE RESOURCES COORDINATOR

Section 192 of Pub. L. 103-236 provided that:

“(a) POLICY.—It is the sense of the Congress that—

“(1) the Department of State, by virtue of the Secretary’s overall responsibility under section 701(a) of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 (22 U.S.C. 4011(a) [22 U.S.C. 4021(a)]) for training and instruction in the field of foreign relations to meet the needs of all Federal agencies, should take the lead in this inter-agency effort; and

“(2) in order to promote efficiency and quality in the training provided by the Secretary of State and other Federal agencies, the Secretary should call upon other agencies to share in the joint management and coordination of Federal foreign language resources.

“(b) FOREIGN LANGUAGE RESOURCES COORDINATOR.—

“(1) The Secretary of State should appoint a Foreign Language Resources Coordinator (in this subsection referred to as the ‘Coordinator’) who shall be responsible—

“(A) for coordinating the efforts of the appropriate agencies of Government—

“(i) to strengthen mechanisms for sharing of foreign language resources; and

“(ii) to identify Federal foreign language resource requirements in the areas of diplomacy, military preparedness, international security, and other foreign policy objectives; and

“(B) for making recommendations to the Secretary of State as to which Federal foreign language assets, if any, should be made available to the private sector in support of national global economic competitiveness goals.

“(2) All appropriate United States Government agencies maintaining and utilizing Federal foreign language training and related resources shall cooperate fully with any Coordinator.”

FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE FACILITIES

Pub. L. 99-93, title I, §123, Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 413, as amended by Pub. L. 100-204, title I, §135, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1345; Pub. L. 102-138, title I, §124, Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 659, provided that:

“(a) PURPOSE.—The purpose of this section is to promote comprehensive training to meet the foreign relations and national security objectives of the United States and to provide facilities designed for that purpose to assure cost efficient training.

“(b) CONSTRUCTION OF TRAINING FACILITIES.—The Administrator of General Services may construct a consolidated training facility for the Foreign Service Institute on a site made available by the Secretary of State or acquired by the Administrator of General Services. Such site shall be located outside the District of Columbia but within reasonable proximity to the Department of State. The Administrator of General Services may carry out this subsection only to the extent that funds are provided in advance in appropriation Acts to the Department of State and are transferred to the Administrator of General Services for carrying out this section.

“(c) USE OF FUNDS.—(1)(A) Of amounts authorized to be appropriated to the Department of State for fiscal years 1986 and 1987 for ‘Administration of Foreign Affairs’ by section 101(1) [Pub. L. 99-93, §101(1), which is not classified to the Code], a total of not to exceed \$11,000,000 may be transferred by the Secretary of State to the Administrator of General Services for carrying out feasibility studies, site acquisition, and design, architectural, and engineering planning under subsection (b) of this section.

“(B) Of the amounts authorized to be appropriated to the Department of State for fiscal years beginning after September 30, 1987, the Secretary of State may transfer a total not to exceed \$11,000,000 for ‘Administration of Foreign Affairs’ to the Administrator of General Services for carrying out feasibility studies, site preparation, and design, architectural, and engineering planning under subsection (b).

“(2) Of amounts authorized to be appropriated to the Department of State for fiscal years beginning after September 30, 1987, for ‘Administration of Foreign Affairs’, a total not to exceed \$70,000,000 may be transferred by the Secretary of State to the Administrator of General Services for carrying out construction under subsection (b) of this section.

“(3) Funds may not be obligated for construction of a facility under this section before the end of the period of 30 days of continuous session of Congress beginning on the date on which plans and estimates developed to carry out this section are submitted to the Committees on Foreign Affairs and Public Works and Transportation of the House of Representatives and the Committees on Foreign Relations and Environment and Public Works of the Senate. In determining days of continuous session of Congress for purposes of this paragraph—

“(A) continuity of session is broken only by an adjournment of Congress sine die; and

“(B) the days on which either House is not in session because of an adjournment of more than 3 days to a day certain are excluded in the determination.

If both Houses of Congress are not in session on the day any plans and estimates are submitted to such committees, such submittal shall be deemed to have been submitted on the first succeeding day on which both Houses are in session. If all such committees do not receive a submittal on the same day, such period shall not begin until the date on which all such committees have received it.

“(d) JURISDICTION AND CUSTODY.—The facility constructed under this section and the site of such facility shall be under jurisdiction and in the custody of the Administrator of General Services.

“(e) OPERATION, MAINTENANCE, SECURITY, ALTERATION, AND REPAIR.—(1) The Administrator of General Services shall delegate, in accordance with section 205 of the Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949 (40 U.S.C. 486) and section 15 of the Public Buildings Act of 1959 (40 U.S.C. 614), to the Secretary of State responsibility for the operation, maintenance, and security of and alterations and repairs to the facility constructed pursuant to this section, provided the facility is used by the Secretary for the purposes authorized by this section.

“(2) Not later than three months after occupancy of such facility, the Secretary of State and the Administrator of General Services shall each submit a report to the Committee on Foreign Affairs [now Committee on International Relations] and the Committee on Public Works and Transportation [now Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure] of the House of Representatives, and to the Committee on Foreign Relations and the Committee on Environment and Public Works of the Senate, on the delegation of responsibility, pursuant to paragraph (1), for the operation, maintenance, and security of and alterations and repairs to the facility constructed pursuant to this section.

“(f) EXEMPTION FROM PAYMENT OF CHARGES.—(1) Except as provided in paragraph (2), the Department of State shall be exempt from the charges required by section 210(j) of the Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949 (40 U.S.C. 490(j)) for the use of the facility constructed under this section for the Foreign Service Institute.

“(2) The Administrator of General Services shall charge the Department of State under such section 210(j) for the costs of any operation, maintenance, repairs, or alterations of such facility carried out by the Administrator of General Services.”

LANGUAGE TRAINING FOR FAMILY MEMBERS OF  
FOREIGN SERVICE PERSONNEL

Pub. L. 95-105, title IV, § 414, Aug. 17, 1977, 91 Stat. 857, as amended by Pub. L. 97-241, title V, § 505(a)(3), (b)(1), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 299, provided that: "It is the sense of Congress that, in order to increase the effectiveness of United States diplomatic representation abroad, the Secretary of State should make greater use of his authority under section 701 of the Foreign Service Act of 1946 [former section 1041 of this title] in order to increase the language training opportunities available to the family members of Foreign Service personnel."

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 10 section 2002.

**§ 4022. Foreign language requirements**

(a) The Secretary shall establish foreign language proficiency requirements for members of the Service who are to be assigned abroad in order that Foreign Service posts abroad will be staffed by individuals having a useful knowledge of the language or dialect common to the country in which the post is located.

(b) The Secretary of State shall arrange for appropriate language training of members of the Service by the institution or otherwise in order to assist in meeting the requirements established under subsection (a) of this section.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 702, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2099; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 126(3), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 394.)

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 103-236 substituted "institution" for "Institute".

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4171 of this title.

**§ 4023. Career development program**

**(a) Establishment; primary attention and emphasis**

The Secretary shall establish a professional development program to assure that members of the Service obtain the skills and knowledge required at the various stages of their careers. With regard to Foreign Service officers, primary attention shall be given to training for career candidate officers and for midcareer officers, both after achieving tenure and as they approach eligibility for entry to the Senior Foreign Service, to enhance and broaden their qualifications for more senior levels of responsibility in the Service. Training for other members of the Service shall emphasize programs designed to enhance their particular skills and expert knowledge, including development of the management skills appropriate to their occupational categories.

**(b) Primary direction for Junior Foreign Service officer training and midcareer training**

Junior Foreign Service officer training shall be directed primarily toward providing expert knowledge in the basic functions of analysis and reporting as well as in consular, administrative, and linguistic skills relevant to the full range of future job assignments. Midcareer training shall be directed primarily toward development and perfection of management, functional, negotiat-

ing, and policy development skills to prepare the officers progressively for more senior levels of responsibility.

**(c) Purpose; completion of training as condition for placement or appointment**

At each stage the program of professional development should be designed to provide members of the Service with the opportunity to acquire skills and knowledge relevant to clearly established professional standards of expected performance. Career candidates should satisfactorily complete candidate training prior to attainment of career status. Members of the Service should satisfactorily complete midcareer training before appointment to the Senior Foreign Service.

**(d) University degree credit**

In formulating programs under this section, the Secretary should establish a system to provide, insofar as possible, credit toward university degrees for successful completion of courses comparable to graduate-level, university courses.

**(e) Institutions conducting training**

Training provided under this section shall be conducted by the Department and by other governmental and nongovernmental institutions as the Secretary may consider appropriate.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 703, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2100; Pub. L. 100-204, title I, § 185(c)(1), Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1366.)

AMENDMENTS

1987—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 100-204 struck out subsec. (f) which related to report to Congress and President.

**§ 4024. Functions of Secretary**

**(a) Nature and correlation of training and instruction; encouragement of complementary programs; employment of personnel; acquisition of property and equipment**

In the exercise of functions under this subchapter, the Secretary of State may—

(1) provide for the general nature of the training and instruction to be furnished by the institution, including functional and geographic area specializations;

(2) correlate training and instruction furnished by the institution with courses given at other Government institutions and at private institutions which furnish training and instruction useful in the field of foreign affairs;

(3) encourage and foster programs complementary to those furnished by the institution, including through grants and other gratuitous assistance to nonprofit institutions cooperating in any of the programs under this subchapter;

(4)(A) employ in accordance with the civil service laws such personnel as may be necessary to carry out the provisions of this subchapter, and

(B) if and to the extent determined to be necessary by the Secretary of State, obtain without regard to the provisions of law governing appointments in the competitive service, by appointment or contract (subject to the availability of appropriations), the serv-

ices of individuals to serve as language instructors, linguists, and other academic and training specialists (including, in the absence of suitably qualified United States citizens, qualified individuals who are not citizens of the United States); and

(5) acquire such real and personal property and equipment as may be necessary for the establishment, maintenance, and operation of the facilities necessary to carry out the provisions of this subchapter without regard to section 5 of title 41 and section 252 of title 41.

**(b) Payment of salary, tuition, and other expenses; special monetary or other incentives**

In furtherance of the objectives of this chapter, the Secretary may—

(1) pay the tuition and other expenses of members of the Service and employees of the Department who are assigned or detailed in accordance with law for special instruction or training, including orientation, language, and career development training;

(2) pay the salary (excluding premium pay or any special differential under section 3972 of this title) of members of the Service selected and assigned for training; and

(3) provide special monetary or other incentives to encourage members of the Service to acquire or retain proficiency in foreign languages or special abilities needed in the Service.

**(c) Orientation and training for family members**

The Secretary may provide to family members of members of the Service or of employees of the Department or other agencies, in anticipation of their assignment abroad or while abroad—

(1) appropriate orientation and language training; and

(2) functional training for anticipated prospective employment under section 3951 of this title.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 704, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2100; Pub. L. 97-241, title I, § 125(1), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 281; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 126(3), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 394.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (b), was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 96-465, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2071, as amended, known as the Foreign Service Act of 1980, which is classified principally to this chapter (§ 3901 et seq.). For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3901 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (a)(1) to (3). Pub. L. 103-236 substituted “institution” for “Institute”.

1982—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 97-241 substituted “section 3972 of this title” for “section 3971 of this title”.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4021 of this title.

**§ 4025. Training grants**

**(a) Family members attending approved programs of study; limitations**

To facilitate training provided to members of families of Government employees under this subchapter, the Secretary may make grants (by

advance payment or by reimbursement) to family members attending approved programs of study. No such grant may exceed the amount actually expended for necessary costs incurred in conjunction with such attendance.

**(b) Compensation for individuals unable to participate in language training furnished by Government**

If a member of the Service who is assigned abroad, or a member of his or her family, is unable to participate in language training furnished by the Government through the institution or otherwise, the Secretary may compensate that individual for all or part of the costs of language training, related to the assignment abroad, which is undertaken at a public or private institution.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 705, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2101; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 126(3), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 394.)

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 103-236 substituted “institution” for “Institute” after “through the”.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 10 section 1605; title 37 section 431.

**§ 4026. Career counseling**

**(a) Facilitation of transition from Service**

In order to facilitate their transition from the Service, the Secretary may provide (by contract or otherwise, subject to the availability of appropriations) professional career counseling, advice, and placement assistance to members of the Service, and to former members of the Service who were assigned to receive counseling and assistance under this subsection before they were separated from the Service, other than those separated for cause.

**(b) Facilitation of employment of spouses of members; establishment of family liaison office**

(1) The Secretary may facilitate the employment of spouses of members of the Service by—

(A) providing regular career counseling for such spouses;

(B) maintaining a centralized system for cataloging their skills and the various governmental and nongovernmental employment opportunities available to them; and

(C) otherwise assisting them in obtaining employment.

(2) The Secretary shall establish a family liaison office to carry out this subsection and such other functions as the Secretary may determine.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 706, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2101.)

AUTHORITY OF SECRETARY OF STATE

Except as otherwise provided, Secretary of State to have and exercise any authority vested by law in any official or office of Department of State and references to such officials or offices deemed to refer to Secretary of State or Department of State, as appropriate, see section 2651a of this title and section 161(d) of Pub. L. 103-236, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.



**§ 4027. Visiting Scholars Program****(a) Establishment of program**

There is authorized to be established at the institution a program whereby selected scholars would participate fully in the educational and training activities of the institution. This program may be referred to as the “Visiting Scholars Program”.

**(b) Selection and appointment of scholars**

(1) Scholars participating in the Visiting Scholars Program shall be selected by a five-member board described in subsection (c) of this section.

(2) Each visiting scholar shall serve a term of one year, except that such term may be extended for one additional one-year period.

**(c) Establishment of selection board**

The board referred to in subsection (b) of this section shall be composed of the Director of the institution, who shall serve as chairperson, and four other members appointed by the Secretary of State.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §707, as added Pub. L. 101-246, title I, §144(a), Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 36; amended Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §126(3), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 394.)

## AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsecs. (a), (c). Pub. L. 103-236 substituted “institution” for “Foreign Service Institute” and “Institute” in subsec. (a) and “institution” for “Foreign Service Institute” in subsec. (c).

SUBCHAPTER VIII—FOREIGN SERVICE  
RETIREMENT AND DISABILITY

## SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in sections 3951, 4084, 4153, 4156, 4159 of this title.

PART I—FOREIGN SERVICE RETIREMENT AND  
DISABILITY SYSTEM

## PART REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This part is referred to in sections 4044, 4054, 4055, 4071b, 4071c, 4071d, 4071j of this title; title 5 section 8402.

**§ 4041. Administration**

In accordance with such regulations as the President may prescribe, the Secretary of State shall administer the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System (hereinafter in this part referred to as the “System”), originally established pursuant to section 18 of the Act of May 24, 1924 (43 Stat. 144).

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §801, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2102; Pub. L. 99-335, title IV, §402(a)(2), June 6, 1986, 100 Stat. 609.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 18 of the Act of May 24, 1924 (43 Stat. 144), referred to in text, which was classified to section 21 of this title, was repealed by act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title XI, §1131(44), 60 Stat. 1038.

## AMENDMENTS

1986—Pub. L. 99-335 substituted “part” for “subchapter”.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-335 effective Jan. 1, 1987, see section 702(a) of Pub. L. 99-335, set out as an Effect-

tive Date note under section 8401 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Subchapter effective Feb. 15, 1981, except regarding the rights of former spouses to any annuity under section 4054(a) of this title or except to the extent provided in section 4159 of this title, regarding rights of former spouses to receive survivor annuities under this subchapter, see section 2403(a) and (e) of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as a note under section 3901 of this title.

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of State, see section 1 of Ex. Ord. No. 12293, Feb. 23, 1981, 46 F.R. 13969, set out as a note under section 3901 of this title.

TERMINATION OF RETIREMENT BENEFITS FOR FOREIGN  
NATIONAL EMPLOYEES ENGAGING IN HOSTILE INTEL-  
LIGENCE ACTIVITIES

Pub. L. 100-204, title I, §158, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1355, provided that:

“(a) TERMINATION.—The Secretary of State shall exercise the authorities available to him to ensure that the United States does not provide, directly or indirectly, any retirement benefits of any kind to any present or former foreign national employee of a United States diplomatic or consular post against whom the Secretary has convincing evidence that such employee has engaged in intelligence activities directed against the United States. To the extent practicable, the Secretary shall provide due process in implementing this section.

“(b) WAIVER.—The Secretary of State may waive the applicability of subsection (a) on a case-by-case basis with respect to an employee if he determines that it is vital to the national security of the United States to do so and he reports such waiver to the appropriate committees of the Congress.”

TEMPORARY RETIREMENT CONTRIBUTIONS AND  
PROCEDURES FOR CERTAIN PARTICIPANTS

For temporary provisions providing modified contributions and procedures for members of the Service participating in the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System who are also required to pay employment taxes relating to benefits under title II of the Social Security Act, 42 U.S.C. 401 et seq., until they are covered by a new Government retirement system or Jan. 1, 1986, whichever is earlier, see title II of Pub. L. 98-168, set out as a note under section 8331 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

**§ 4042. Maintenance of Fund**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall maintain the special fund known as the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability Fund (hereinafter in this part referred to as the “Fund”), originally created by section 18 of the Act of May 24, 1924 (43 Stat. 144).

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §802, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2102; Pub. L. 99-335, title IV, §402(a)(2), June 6, 1986, 100 Stat. 609.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 18 of the Act of May 24, 1924 (43 Stat. 144), referred to in text, which was classified to section 21 of this title, was repealed by act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title XI, §1131(44), 60 Stat. 1038.

## AMENDMENTS

1986—Pub. L. 99-335 substituted “part” for “subchapter”.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-335 effective Jan. 1, 1987, see section 702(a) of Pub. L. 99-335, set out as an Effect-

tive Date note under section 8401 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4071a of this title.

**§ 4043. Participants**

**(a) Career appointees or candidates; chiefs of mission**

Except as provided in subsection (d) of this section, the following members of the Service (hereinafter in this part referred to as “participants”) shall be entitled to the benefits of the System:

(1) Every member who is serving under a career appointment or as a career candidate under section 3946 of this title—

(A) in the Senior Foreign Service, or

(B) assigned to a salary class in the Foreign Service Schedule.

(2) Every chief of mission, who is not a participant under paragraph (1), who—

(A) has served as chief of mission for an aggregate period of 20 years or more, and

(B) has paid into the Fund a special contribution for each year of such service in accordance with section 4045 of this title.

**(b) Executive branch appointees**

Any otherwise eligible member of the Service who is appointed to a position in the executive branch by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, or by the President alone, shall not by virtue of the acceptance of such appointment cease to be eligible to participate in the System.

**(c) Binational Center Grantees**

In addition to the individuals who are participants in the System under subsection (a) of this section, any individual who was appointed as a Binational Center Grantee and who completed at least 5 years of satisfactory service as such a grantee or under any other appointment under the Foreign Service Act of 1946 may become a participant in the System, and shall receive credit for such service if an appropriate special contribution is made to the Fund in accordance with section 4045(d) or (f) of this title.

**(d) Exclusion**

An individual subject to the Foreign Service Pension System (described in part II of this subchapter) is not a participant in this System.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 803, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2102; Pub. L. 99-335, title IV, §§ 402(a)(2), 414, June 6, 1986, 100 Stat. 609, 614.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Service Act of 1946, referred to in subsection (c), is act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, titles I to X, 60 Stat. 999, as amended, which was classified principally to chapter 14 (§ 801 et seq.) of this title, and was repealed by Pub. L. 96-465, title II, 2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159.

AMENDMENTS

1986—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99-335, §§ 402(a)(2), 414(1), substituted “Except as provided in subsection (d) of this section, the” for “The” and “part” for “subchapter” in provisions preceding par. (1).

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 99-335, § 414(2), added subsec. (d).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-335 effective Jan. 1, 1987, see section 702(a) of Pub. L. 99-335, set out as an Effective Date note under section 8401 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4071b, 4159 of this title.

**§ 4044. Definitions**

As used in this part, unless otherwise specified, the term—

(1) “annuitant” means any individual, including a former participant or survivor, who meets all requirements for an annuity from the Fund under this chapter or any other Act and who has filed a claim for such annuity;

(2) “child” means an individual—

(A) who—

(i) is an offspring or adopted child of the participant,

(ii) is a stepchild or recognized natural child of the participant and who received more than one-half support from the participant, or

(iii) lived with the participant, for whom a petition of adoption was filed by the participant, and who is adopted by the surviving spouse of the participant after the death of the participant;

(B) who is unmarried; and

(C) who—

(i) is under the age of 18 years,

(ii) is a student under the age of 22 years (for purposes of this clause, an individual whose 22d birthday occurs before July 1 or after August 31 of the calendar year in which that birthday occurs, and while the individual is a student, is deemed to become 22 years of age on the first July 1 which occurs after that birthday), or

(iii) is incapable of self-support because of a physical or mental disability which was incurred before the individual reached the age of 18 years;

(3) “court” means any court of any State, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, Guam, the Northern Mariana Islands, or the Virgin Islands, and any Indian court as defined by section 1301(3) of title 25;

(4) “court order” means any court decree of divorce or annulment, or any court order or court approved property settlement agreement incident to any court decree of divorce or annulment;

(5) “Foreign Service normal cost” means the level percentage of payroll required to be deposited in the Fund to meet the cost of benefits payable under the System (computed in accordance with generally accepted actuarial practice on an entry-age basis) less the value of retirement benefits earned under another retirement system for Government employees and less the cost of credit allowed for military and naval service;

(6) “former spouse” means a former wife or husband of a participant or former participant who was married to such participant for not less than 10 years during periods of service by

that participant which are creditable under section 4056 of this title;

(7) "Fund balance" means the sum of—

(A) the investments of the Fund calculated at par value, plus

(B) the cash balance of the Fund on the books of the Treasury;

(8) "lump-sum credit" means the compulsory and special contributions to the credit of a participant or former participant in the Fund plus interest on such contributions at 4 percent a year compounded annually to December 31, 1976, and after such date, for a participant who separates from the Service after completing at least 1 year of civilian service and before completing 5 years of such service, at the rate of 3 percent per year to the date of separation (except that interest shall not be paid for a fractional part of a month in the total service or on compulsory and special contributions from an annuitant for recall service or other service performed after the date of separation which forms the basis for annuity);

(9) "military and naval service" means honorable active service—

(A) in the Armed Forces of the United States,

(B) in the Regular or Reserve Corps of the Public Health Service after June 30, 1960, or

(C) as a commissioned officer of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, or a predecessor organization, after June 30, 1961,

but does not include service in the National Guard except when ordered to active duty in the service of the United States;

(10) "pro rata share", in the case of any former spouse of any participant or former participant, means a percentage which is equal to the percentage that (A) the number of years during which the former spouse was married to the participant during the creditable service (creditable under part I or II of this subchapter) of that participant is of (B) the total number of years of such creditable service (creditable under part I or II of this subchapter);

(11) "spousal agreement" means any written agreement between—

(A) a participant or former participant; and

(B) his or her spouse or former spouse;

(12) "student" means a child regularly pursuing a full-time course of study or training in residence in a high school, trade school, technical or vocational institute, junior college, college, university, or comparable recognized educational institution (for purposes of this paragraph, a child who is a student shall not be deemed to have ceased to be a student during any period between school years, semesters, or terms if the period of nonattendance does not exceed 5 calendar months and if the child shows to the satisfaction of the Secretary of State that he or she has a bona fide intention of continuing to pursue his or her course of study during the school year, semester, or term immediately following such period);

(13) "surviving spouse" means the surviving wife or husband of a participant or annuitant who was married to the participant or annuitant for at least 9 months immediately preceding his or her death or is a parent of a child born of the marriage, except that the requirement for at least 9 months of marriage shall be deemed satisfied in any case in which the participant or annuitant dies within the applicable 9-month period, if—

(A) the death of such participant or annuitant was accidental; or

(B) the surviving spouse of such individual had been previously married to the individual and subsequently divorced and the aggregate time married is at least 9 months; and

(14) "unfunded liability" means the estimated excess of the present value of all benefits payable from the Fund under this part over the sum of—

(A) the present value of deductions to be withheld from the future basic salary of participants and of future agency contributions to be made on their behalf, plus

(B) the present value of Government payments to the Fund under section 4061 of this title, plus

(C) the Fund balance as of the date the unfunded liability is determined.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §804, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2102; Pub. L. 99-335, title IV, §§402(a)(2), (3), 403, 404(a), June 6, 1986, 100 Stat. 609, 610; Pub. L. 100-238, title II, §211, Jan. 8, 1988, 101 Stat. 1773.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in par. (1), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 96-465, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2071, as amended, known as the Foreign Service Act of 1980, which is classified principally to this chapter (§3901 et seq.). For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3901 of this title and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1988—Par. (13). Pub. L. 100-238, §211(1), which directed the amendment of par. (13) by striking out "in the case of death in service or marriage after retirement," was executed by striking out "in the case of a death in service or marriage after retirement," after "annuitant who", as the probable intent of Congress.

Pub. L. 100-238, §211(2), (3), substituted "9 months" for "one year" and inserted before semicolon at end "except that the requirement for at least 9 months of marriage shall be deemed satisfied in any case in which the participant or annuitant dies within the applicable 9-month period, if—

"(A) the death of such participant or annuitant was accidental; or

"(B) the surviving spouse of such individual had been previously married to the individual and subsequently divorced and the aggregate time married is at least 9 months".

1986—Pub. L. 99-335, §402(a)(2), substituted "part" for "subchapter" in provision preceding par. (1).

Par. (3). Pub. L. 99-335, §403, substituted "the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, Guam, the Northern Mariana Islands, or the Virgin Islands, and any Indian court as defined in section 1301(3) of title 25" for "or of the District of Columbia".

Par. (10). Pub. L. 99-335, §404(a), inserted "(creditable under part I or II of this subchapter)" after "creditable service" in two places.

Par. (14). Pub. L. 99-335, §402(a)(3), inserted "under this part" after "payable from the Fund" in provision preceding subpar. (A).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1988 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 100-238 effective 90 days after Jan. 8, 1988, see section 261(a) of Pub. L. 100-238, set out as a note under section 4054 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-335 effective Jan. 1, 1987, see section 702(a) of Pub. L. 99-335, set out as an Effective Date note under section 8401 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4046, 4055, 4057, 4060, 4071a, 4159 of this title.

**§ 4045. Contributions to Fund**

**(a) Rates and sources; deposits in Fund**

(1) Except as provided in subsection (h) of this section, 7 percent of the basic salary received by each participant shall be deducted from the salary and contributed to the Fund for the payment of annuities, cash benefits, refunds, and allowances. An equal amount shall be contributed by the Department from the appropriations or fund used for payment of the salary of the participant. The Department shall deposit in the Fund the amounts deducted and withheld from basic salary and the amounts contributed by the Department.

(2) Notwithstanding the percentage limitation contained in paragraph (1) of this subsection—

(A) the Department shall deduct and withhold from the basic pay of a Foreign Service criminal investigator/inspector of the Office of the Inspector General, Agency for International Development, who is qualified to have his annuity computed in the same manner as that of a law enforcement officer pursuant to section 8339(d) of title 5, an amount equal to that to be withheld from a law enforcement officer pursuant to section 8334(a)(1) of title 5. The amounts so deducted shall be contributed to the Fund for the payment of annuities, cash benefits, refunds, and allowances. An equal amount shall be contributed by the Department from the appropriations or fund used for payment of the salary of the participant. The Department shall deposit in the Fund the amount deducted and withheld from basic salary and amounts contributed by the Department.

(B) The Department shall deduct and withhold from the basic pay of a Foreign Service criminal investigator/inspector of the Office of the Inspector General, Agency for International Development, who is qualified to have his annuity computed pursuant to section 8415(d) of title 5, an amount equal to that to be withheld from a law enforcement officer pursuant to section 8422(a)(2)(B) of title 5. The amounts so deducted shall be contributed to the Fund for the payment of annuities, cash benefits, refunds, and allowances. An equal amount shall be contributed by the Department from the appropriations or fund used for payment of the salary of the participant. The Department shall deposit in the Fund the amounts deducted and withheld from basic salary and amounts contributed by the Department.

**(b) Consent to deduction; discharge and acquittance of claims and demands**

Each participant shall be deemed to consent and agree to such deductions from basic salary. Payment less such deductions shall be a full and complete discharge and acquittance of all claims and demands whatsoever for all regular services during the period covered by such payment, except the right to the benefits to which the participant shall be entitled under this chapter, notwithstanding any law, rule, or regulation affecting the salary of the individual.

**(c) Transfer of contributions from other Government retirement fund**

(1) If a member of the Service who is under another retirement system for Government employees becomes a participant in the System by direct transfer, the total contributions and deposits of that member that would otherwise be refundable on separation (except voluntary contributions), including interest thereon, shall be transferred to the Fund effective as of the date such member becomes a participant in the System. Each such member shall be deemed to consent to the transfer of such funds, and such transfer shall be a complete discharge and acquittance of all claims and demands against the other Government retirement fund on account of service rendered by such member prior to becoming a participant in the System.

(2) A member of the Service whose contributions are transferred to the Fund pursuant to paragraph (1) shall not be required to make additional contributions for periods of service for which required contributions were made to the other Government retirement fund; nor shall any refund be made to any such member on account of contributions made during any period to the other Government retirement fund at a higher rate than that fixed by subsection (d) of this section.

**(d) Contribution for civilian service; creditability of interim service**

(1) Any participant credited with civilian service after July 1, 1924—

(A) for which no retirement contributions, deductions, or deposits have been made, or

(B) for which a refund of such contributions, deductions, or deposits has been made which has not been redeposited,

may make a special contribution to the Fund. Special contributions for purposes of subparagraph (A) shall equal the following percentages of basic salary received for such service:

| Time of service:   | Percent of basic salary |
|--|-------------------------|
| July 1, 1924, through October 15, 1960, inclusive .....      | 5                       |
| October 16, 1960, through December 31, 1969, inclusive ..... | 6½                      |
| On and after January 1, 1970 .....                           | 7                       |

Special contributions for refunds under subparagraph (B) shall equal the amount of the refund received by the participant.

(2) Notwithstanding paragraph (1), a special contribution for prior nondeposit service as a National Guard technician which would be creditable toward retirement under subchapter III of

chapter 83 of title 5, and for which a special contribution has not been made, shall be equal to the special contribution for such service computed in accordance with the schedule in paragraph (1) multiplied by the percentage of such service that is creditable under section 4056 of this title.

(3) Special contributions under this subsection shall include interest computed from the midpoint of each service period included in the computation, or from the date refund was paid, to the date of payment of the special contribution or commencing date of annuity, whichever is earlier. <sup>1</sup>Interest shall be compounded at the annual rate of 4 percent to December 31, 1976, and 3 percent thereafter. No interest shall be charged on special contributions for any period of separation from Government service which began before October 1, 1956. Special contributions may be paid in installments (including by allotment of pay) when authorized by the Secretary of State.

(4) Notwithstanding the preceding provisions of this subsection and any provision of section 206(b)(3) of the Federal Employees' Retirement Contribution Temporary Adjustment Act of 1983, the percentage of basic pay required under this subsection in the case of a participant described in section 4071b(c) of this title shall, with respect to any covered service (as defined by section 203(a)(3) of such Act) performed by such individual after December 31, 1983, and before January 1, 1987, be equal to 1.3 percent.

(5) Notwithstanding paragraph (1), a special contribution for past service as a Foreign Service criminal investigator/inspector of the Office of the Inspector General, Agency for International Development which would have been creditable toward retirement under either section 8336(c) or 8412(d) of title 5, and for which a special contribution has not been made shall be equal to the difference between the amount actually contributed pursuant to either this section or section 4071e of this title and the amount that should have been contributed pursuant to either section 8334 or 8422 of title 5.

**(e) Contribution for military or naval service**

(1) Each participant who has performed military or naval service before the date of separation on which the entitlement to any annuity under this part is based may pay to the Secretary a special contribution equal to 7 percent of the amount of the basic pay paid under section 204 of title 37, to the participant for each period of military or naval service after December 1956. The amount of such payments shall be based on such evidence of basic pay for military service as the participant may provide or if the Secretary determines sufficient evidence has not been so provided to adequately determine basic pay for military or naval service, such payment shall be based upon estimates of such basic pay provided to the Department under paragraph (4).

(2) Any deposit made under paragraph (1) of this subsection more than two years after the later of—

(A) October 17, 1983, or

(B) the date on which the participant making the deposit first became a participant in a

Federal staff retirement system for civilian employees,—

shall include interest on such amount computed and compounded annually beginning on the date of the expiration of the two-year period. The interest rate that is applicable in computing interest in any year under this paragraph shall be equal to the interest rate that is applicable for such year under subsection (d) of this section.

(3) Any payment received by the Secretary under this section shall be remitted to the Fund.

(4) The Secretary of Defense, the Secretary of Transportation, the Secretary of Commerce, or the Secretary of Health and Human Services, as appropriate, shall furnish such information to the Secretary as the Secretary may determine to be necessary for the administration of this subsection.

**(f) Exemption for certain military or naval service**

Contributions shall only be required to obtain credit for periods of military or naval service to the extent provided under subsection (e) of this section and section 4056(a) of this title, except that credit shall be allowed in the absence of contributions to individuals of Japanese ancestry under section 4056 of this title for periods of internment during World War II.

**(g) Time of payment; offset against initial annuity accruals**

A participant or survivor may make a special contribution at any time before receipt of annuity and may authorize payment by offset against initial annuity accruals.

**(h) Computation of contributions for participants with certain creditable civilian service**

Effective with respect to pay periods beginning after December 31, 1986, in administering this section with respect to a participant described in section 4071b(c) of this title whose service is employment for the purposes of title II of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 401 et seq.] and chapter 21 of title 26, contributions to the Fund and interest thereon shall be computed as if section 8334(k) of title 5 were applicable.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §805, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2104; Ex. Ord. No. 12446, §4(a), Oct. 17, 1983, 48 F.R. 48444; Pub. L. 99-335, title IV, §§402(a)(2), 405, June 6, 1986, 100 Stat. 609, 610; Pub. L. 99-514, §2, Oct. 22, 1986, 100 Stat. 2095; Pub. L. 100-238, title II, §212, Jan. 8, 1988, 101 Stat. 1773; Pub. L. 102-499, §4(a), (b), Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3265.)

AMENDMENT OF SECTION

*Section 1(a) and (c) of Ex. Ord. No. 12446, Oct. 17, 1983, 48 F.R. 48443, set out as a note under section 4067 of this title, provided that the second sentence of subsec. (d)(3) of this section, applicable (i) to contributions for civilian service performed on or after the first day of Nov. 1983, (ii) to contributions for prior refunds to participants for which application is received by the employing agency on and after such first day of Nov. 1983, and (iii) to excess contributions under section 4055(h) of this title and voluntary contributions under section 4065(a) of this title from the first day of Nov. 1983, is deemed to be amended to provide that interest*

<sup>1</sup> See Amendment of Section note below.

*shall be compounded at the annual rate of 3 percent per annum through December 31, 1984, and thereafter at a rate equal to the overall average yield to the Fund during the preceding fiscal year from all obligations purchased by the Secretary of the Treasury during such fiscal year under section 4059 of this title, as determined by the Secretary of the Treasury.*

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

Sections 206(b)(3) and 203(a)(3) of the Federal Employees' Retirement Contribution Temporary Adjustment Act of 1983, referred to in subsec. (d)(4), are set out as a note under section 8331 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

The Social Security Act, referred to in subsec. (h), is act Aug. 14, 1935, ch. 531, 49 Stat. 620, as amended. Title II of the Social Security Act is classified generally to subchapter II (§401 et seq.) of chapter 7 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1305 of Title 42 and Tables.

## AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 102-499, §4(a), designated existing provisions as par. (1) and added par. (2).

Subsec. (d)(5). Pub. L. 102-499, §4(b), added par. (5).

1988—Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 100-238, in concluding provisions, substituted "Fund. Special contributions for purposes of subparagraph (A) shall equal" for "Fund equal to" and inserted "Special contributions for refunds under subparagraph (B) shall equal the amount of the refund received by the participant."

1986—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99-335, §405(a)(1), inserted "Except as provided in subsection (h) of this section," before "7 percent".

Subsec. (d)(4). Pub. L. 99-335, §405(b), added par. (4).

Subsec. (e)(1). Pub. L. 99-335, §402(a)(2), substituted "part" for "subchapter".

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 99-514 substituted "Internal Revenue Code of 1986" for "Internal Revenue Code of 1954", which for purposes of codification was translated as "title 26" thus requiring no change in text.

Pub. L. 99-335, §405(a)(2), added subsec. (h).

1983—Subsecs. (e) to (g). Ex. Ord. No. 12446 added subsecs. (e) and (f), struck out former subsec. (e), and redesignated former subsec. (f) as (g). Prior to amendment, subsec. (e) read as follows: "Contributions shall not be required for any period of military and naval service or for any period for which credit is allowed to individuals of Japanese ancestry under section 4056 of this title for periods of internment during World War II."

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1988 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 100-238 effective 90 days after Jan. 8, 1988, see section 261(a) of Pub. L. 100-238, set out as a note under section 4054 of this title.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-335 effective Jan. 1, 1987, see section 702(a) of Pub. L. 99-335, set out as an Effective Date note under section 8401 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1983 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Ex. Ord. No. 12446 effective Oct. 17, 1983, see section 4(e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12446, set out under section 4067 of this title.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4043, 4046, 4051, 4055, 4056, 4061, 4062, 4063, 4071c of this title.

## § 4046. Computation of annuities

**(a)<sup>1</sup> Measurements; reduction for special contributions; Foreign Service investigator/inspectors**

(1) The annuity of a participant shall be equal to 2 percent of his or her average basic salary for the highest 3 consecutive years of service multiplied by the number of years, not exceeding 35, of service credit obtained in accordance with sections 4056 and 4057 of this title, except that the highest 3 years of service shall be used in computing the annuity of any participant who serves an assignment in a position, as described in section 3942(b) of this title, to which the participant was appointed by the President and whose continuity of service in that position is interrupted prior to retirement by appointment or assignment to any other position determined by the Secretary of State to be of comparable importance. In determining the aggregate period of service upon which the annuity is to be based, the fractional part of a month, if any, shall not be counted. The annuity shall be reduced by 10 percent of any special contribution described in section 4045(d) of this title which is due for service for which no contributions were made and which remains unpaid unless the participant elects to eliminate the service involved for purposes of annuity computation.

(2) Notwithstanding the percentage limitation contained in paragraph (1) of this subsection—

(A) utilizing the definition of average pay contained in section 8331(4) of title 5, the annuity of a Foreign Service criminal investigator/inspector of the Office of the Inspector General, Agency for International Development, who was appointed to a law enforcement position, as defined in section 8331(20) of title 5, prior to January 1, 1984, and would have been eligible to retire pursuant to section 8336(c) of that title, after attaining 50 years of age and completing 20 years as a law enforcement officer had the employee remained in the civil service shall be computed in the same manner as that of a law enforcement officer pursuant to section 8339(d) of that title, except as provided in paragraph (3); and

(B) the annuity of a Foreign Service criminal investigator/inspector of such office, who was appointed to a law enforcement position as defined in section 8401(17) of that title on or after January 1, 1984, and who would have been eligible to retire pursuant to section 8412(d) of that title, after attaining 50 years of age and completing 20 years of service as such a law enforcement officer, had the employee remained in the civil service, shall be computed in the same manner as that of a law enforcement officer pursuant to section 8415(d) of that title.

(3) The annuity of a Foreign Service investigator/inspector of the Office of the Inspector General, Agency for International Development, appointed to a law enforcement position prior to January 1, 1984, who exercised election rights under section 4071i of this title, shall be computed as follows: for the period prior to election

<sup>1</sup> See Amendment of Section note below.

the annuity shall be computed in accordance with section 8339(d) of title 5; for the period following election the annuity shall be computed in accordance with section 8415(d) of that title.

(4) All service in a law enforcement position, as defined in section 8331(20) or 8401(17) of that title, as applicable, in any agency or combination of agencies shall be included in the computation of time for purposes of this paragraph.

(5) The annuity of a Foreign Service criminal investigator/inspector of the Office of the Inspector General of the Agency for International Development who has not completed 20 years of service as a law enforcement officer, as defined in section 8331(20) or 8401(17) of that title, shall be computed in accordance with paragraph (1).

(6) For purposes of paragraphs (2), (3), and (4) of this subsection, the term "basic pay" includes pay as provided in accordance with section 3972 of this title or section 5545(c)(2) of title 5.

**(b) Married participants**

(1)(A) Except to the extent provided otherwise under a written election under subparagraph (B) or (C), if at the time of retirement a participant or former participant is married (or has a former spouse who has not remarried before attaining age 60), the participant shall receive a reduced annuity and provide a survivor annuity for his or her spouse under this subsection or former spouse under section 4054(b) of this title, or a combination of such annuities, as the case may be.

(B) At the time of retirement, a married participant or former participant and his or her spouse may jointly elect in writing to waive a survivor annuity for that spouse under this section (or under section 4054(b) of this title if the spouse later qualifies as a former spouse under section 4044(6) of this title), or to reduce such survivor annuity under this section (or section 4054(b) of this title) by designating a portion of the annuity of the participant as the base for the survivor benefit. In the event the marriage is dissolved following an election for such a reduced annuity and the spouse qualifies as a former spouse, the base used in calculating any annuity of the former spouse under section 4054(b) of this title may not exceed the portion of the participant's annuity designated under this subparagraph.

(C) If a participant or former participant has a former spouse, the participant and such former spouse may jointly elect by spousal agreement under section 4060(b)(1) of this title to waive a survivor annuity under section 4054(b) of this title for that former spouse if the election is made (i) before the end of the 24-month period after the divorce or annulment involving that former spouse becomes final or (ii) at the time of retirement, whichever occurs first.

(D) The Secretary of State may prescribe regulations under which a participant or former participant may make an election under subparagraph (B) or (C) without the participant's spouse or former spouse if the participant establishes to the satisfaction of the Secretary of State that the participant does not know, and has taken all reasonable steps to determine, the whereabouts of the spouse or former spouse.

(2) The annuity of a participant or former participant providing a survivor benefit under this section (or section 4054(b) of this title), excluding any portion of the annuity not designated or committed as a base for any survivor annuity, shall be reduced by 2½ percent of the first \$3,600 plus 10 percent of any amount over \$3,600. The reduction under this paragraph shall be calculated before any reduction under section 4054(a)(5) of this title.

(3)(A) If a former participant entitled to receive a reduced annuity under this subsection dies and is survived by a spouse, a survivor annuity shall be paid to the surviving spouse equal to 55 percent of the full amount of the participant's annuity computed under subsection (a) of this section, or 55 percent of any lesser amount elected as the base for the survivor benefit under paragraph (1)(B).

(B) Notwithstanding subparagraph (A), the amount of the annuity calculated under subparagraph (A) for a surviving spouse in any case in which there is also a surviving former spouse of the participant who qualifies for an annuity under section 4054(b) of this title may not exceed 55 percent of the portion (if any) of the base for survivor benefits which remains available under section 4054(b)(4)(B) of this title.

(C) An annuity payable from the Fund under this part to a surviving spouse under this paragraph shall commence on the day after the participant dies and shall terminate on the last day of the month before the surviving spouse's death or remarriage before attaining age 60. If such a survivor annuity is terminated because of remarriage, it shall be restored at the same rate commencing on the date such remarriage is terminated if any lump sum paid upon termination of the annuity is returned to the Fund.

**(c) Surviving children**

(1) If an annuitant who was a participant dies and is survived by a spouse or a former spouse who is the natural or adoptive parent of a surviving child of the annuitant and by a child or children, in addition to the annuity payable to the surviving spouse, there shall be paid to or on behalf of each child an annuity equal to the smaller of—

- (A) \$900, or
- (B) \$2,700 divided by the number of children.

(2) If an annuitant who was a participant dies and is not survived by a spouse or a former spouse who is the natural or adoptive parent of a surviving child of the annuitant but by a child or children, each surviving child shall be paid an annuity equal to the smaller of—

- (A) \$1,080, or
- (B) \$3,240 divided by the number of children.

(3) The amounts specified in this subsection are subject to—

- (A) cost-of-living adjustments as specified under section 4066(c)(3) of this title, and
- (B) the minimum specified in subsection (1)(2) of this section.

**(d) Recomputation for remaining children**

On the death of the surviving spouse or former spouse or termination of the annuity of a child, the annuity of any other child or children shall be recomputed and paid as though the spouse,

former spouse, or child had not survived the participant. If the annuity to a surviving child who has not been receiving an annuity is initiated or resumed, the annuities of any other children shall be recomputed and paid from that date as though the annuities to all currently eligible children in the family were then being initiated.

**(e) Payment period for child**

The annuity payable to a child under subsection (c) or (d) of this section shall begin on the day after the participant dies, or if the child is not then qualified, on the first day of the month in which the child becomes eligible. The annuity of a child shall terminate on the last day of the month which precedes the month in which eligibility ceases.

**(f) Unmarried participants**

At the time of retirement an unmarried participant who does not have a former spouse for whose benefit a reduction is made under subsection (b) of this section may elect to receive a reduced annuity and to provide for an annuity equal to 55 percent of the reduced annuity payable after his or her death to a beneficiary whose name is designated in writing to the Secretary of State. The annuity payable to a participant making such election shall be reduced by 10 percent of an annuity computed under subsection (a) of this section and by 5 percent of an annuity so computed for each full 5 years the designated beneficiary is younger than the retiring participant, but such total reduction shall not exceed 40 percent. No such election of a reduced annuity payable to a beneficiary shall be valid until the participant has satisfactorily passed a physical examination as prescribed by the Secretary of State. The annuity payable to a beneficiary under this subsection shall begin on the day after the annuitant dies and shall terminate on the last day of the month preceding the death of the beneficiary. An annuity which is reduced under this subsection (or any similar prior provision of law) shall, effective the first day of the month following the death of the beneficiary named under this subsection, be recomputed and paid as if the annuity had not been so reduced.

**(g) Marriage after retirement**

A participant or former participant who was unmarried at retirement and who later marries may, within one year after such marriage, irrevocably elect in writing to receive a reduced annuity and to provide a survivor annuity for the spouse (if such spouse qualifies as a surviving spouse under section 4044(13) of this title). Receipt by the Secretary of State of notice of an election under this subsection voids prospectively any election previously made under subsection (f) of this section. The reduction in annuity required by an election under this subsection shall be computed and the amount of the survivor annuity shall be determined in accordance with subsections (b)(2) and (3) of this section. The annuity reduction or recomputation shall be effective the first day of the month beginning one year after the date of marriage.

**(h) Election of benefits**

A surviving spouse or surviving former spouse of any participant or former participant shall

not become entitled to a survivor annuity or to the restoration of a survivor annuity payable from the Fund under this part unless the survivor elects to receive it instead of any other survivor annuity to which he or she may be entitled under this or any other retirement system for Government employees on the basis of a marriage to someone other than that participant.

**(i) Reversion to retired status**

(1) Any married annuitant who reverts to retired status with entitlement to a supplemental annuity under section 4063 of this title shall, unless the annuitant and his or her spouse jointly elect in writing to the contrary at that time, have the supplemental annuity reduced by 10 percent to provide a supplemental survivor annuity for his or her spouse. Such supplemental survivor annuity shall be equal to 55 percent of the supplemental annuity of the annuitant and shall be payable to a surviving spouse to whom the annuitant was married at the time of reversion to retired status or whom the annuitant subsequently married.

(2) The Secretary of State shall issue regulations to provide for the application of paragraph (1) of this subsection and of section 4063 of this title in any case in which an annuitant has a former spouse who was married to the participant at any time during a period of recall service and who qualifies for an annuity under this part.

**(j) Recomputation upon dissolution of marriage; election after remarriage**

An annuity which is reduced under this section or any similar prior provision of law to provide a survivor benefit for a spouse shall, if the marriage of the participant to such spouse is dissolved, be recomputed and paid for each full month during which an annuitant is not married (or is remarried if there is no election in effect under the following sentence) as if the annuity had not been so reduced, subject to any reduction required to provide a survivor benefit under section 4054(b) or (c) of this title. Upon remarriage the retired participant may irrevocably elect, by means of a signed writing received by the Secretary within one year after such remarriage, to receive during such marriage a reduction in annuity for the purpose of allowing an annuity for the new spouse of the annuitant in the event such spouse survives the annuitant. Such reduction shall be equal to the reduction in effect immediately before the dissolution of the previous marriage (unless such reduction is adjusted under section 4054(b)(5) of this title), and shall be effective the first day of the first month beginning one year after the date of remarriage. A survivor annuity elected under this subsection shall be treated in all respects as a survivor annuity under subsection (b) of this section.

**(k) Informing of rights by Secretary**

The Secretary of State shall, on an annual basis—

(1) inform each participant of his or her right of election under subsections (g) and (j) of this section; and

(2) to the maximum extent practicable, inform spouses or former spouses of participants



or former participants of their rights under this section and section 4054 of this title.

**(l) Repealed. Pub. L. 100-238, title II, §217(c)(1), Jan. 8, 1988, 101 Stat. 1775**

**(m) Offset of Social Security benefits**

The retirement, disability, or survivor annuity payable to any person based on the service of an individual subject to section 4045(h) of this title beginning with the first day of the month for which such person first becomes—

- (1) eligible for an annuity under this part based on the service of such individual, and
- (2) entitled, or would, upon proper application, be entitled to old age, disability, or survivor benefits under title II of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 401 et seq.], based on the service of such individual under this part,

shall be computed as if section 8349 of title 5 were applicable.

**(n) 18-month period to elect survivor annuity**

(1)(A) A participant—

- (i) who, at the time of retirement, is married; and
- (ii) who elects at such time (in accordance with subsection (b) of this section) to waive a survivor annuity,

may, during the 18-month period beginning on the date of the retirement of such participant, elect to have a reduction under subsection (b) of this section made in the annuity of the participant (or in such portion thereof as the participant may designate) in order to provide a survivor annuity for the spouse of such participant.

(B) A participant—

- (i) who, at the time of retirement, is married, and
- (ii) who at such time designates (in accordance with subsection (b) of this section) that a limited portion of the annuity of such participant is to be used as the base for a survivor annuity,

may, during the 18-month period beginning on the date of the retirement of such participant, elect to have a greater portion of the annuity of such participant so used.

(2)(A) An election under subparagraph (A) or (B) of paragraph (1) of this subsection shall not be considered effective unless the amount specified in subparagraph (B) of this paragraph is deposited into the Fund before the expiration of the applicable 18-month period under paragraph (1).

(B) The amount to be deposited with respect to an election under this subsection is an amount equal to the sum of—

- (i) the additional cost to the System which is associated with providing a survivor annuity under subsection (b) of this section and results from such election taking into account (I) the difference (for the period between the date on which the annuity of the former participant commences and the date of the election) between the amount paid to such former participant under this part and the amount which would have been paid if such election had been made at the time the participant or former participant applied for the annuity, and (II) the costs associated with providing the later election; and

(ii) interest on the additional cost determined under clause (i)(I) of this subparagraph computed using the interest rate specified or determined under section 4045(d)(3) of this title for the calendar year in which the amount to be deposited is determined.

(3) An election by a participant under this subsection voids prospectively any election previously made in the case of such participant under subsection (b) of this section.

(4) An annuity which is reduced in connection with an election under this subsection shall be reduced by the same percentage reductions as were in effect at the time of the retirement of the participant whose annuity is so reduced.

(5) Rights and obligations resulting from the election of a reduced annuity under this subsection shall be the same as the rights and obligations which would have resulted had the participant involved elected such annuity at the time of retiring.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §806, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2106; Pub. L. 99-335, title IV, §§402(a)(2), (3), 406, 407, June 6, 1986, 100 Stat. 609-611; Pub. L. 99-556, title IV, §402, Oct. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 3136; Pub. L. 100-238, title II, §§213, 214(a), 217(c)(1), Jan. 8, 1988, 101 Stat. 1774, 1775; Pub. L. 101-513, title V, §587(a), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2055; Pub. L. 102-499, §4(d), Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3266.)

AMENDMENT OF SECTION

*Section 1(b) and (c) of Ex. Ord. No. 12446, Oct. 17, 1983, 48 F.R. 48443, set out as a note under section 4067 of this title, provided that subsection (a) of this section, applicable (i) to contributions for civilian service performed on or after the first day of Nov. 1983, (ii) to contributions for prior refunds to participants for which application is received by the employing agency on and after such first day of Nov. 1983, and (iii) to excess contributions under section 4055(h) of this title and voluntary contributions under section 4065(a) of this title from the first day of Nov. 1983, is deemed to be amended to exclude from the computation of creditable civilian service under section 4056(a) of this title any period of civilian service for which retirement deductions or contributions have not been made under section 4045(d) of this title unless—*

*(1) the participant makes a contribution for such period as provided in such section 4045(d) of this title; or*

*(2) no contribution is required for such service as provided under section 4045(f) of this title as deemed to be amended by this Order, or under any other statute.*

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Social Security Act, referred to in subsec. (m)(2), is act Aug. 14, 1935, ch. 531, 49 Stat. 620, as amended. Title II of the Social Security Act is classified generally to subchapter II (§401 et seq.) of chapter 7 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1305 of Title 42 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (a)(6). Pub. L. 102-499 substituted “section 5545(c)(2)” for “section 5545(a)(2)”.

1990—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 101-513 designated existing provisions as par. (1) and added pars. (2) to (6).

1988—Subsec. (b)(1)(C). Pub. L. 100-238, §213(a), substituted “24-month” for “12-month”.

Subsec. (c)(1), (2). Pub. L. 100-238, §214(a)(1), inserted “or a former spouse who is the natural or adoptive parent of a surviving child of the annuitant” after “survived by a spouse”.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 100-238, §214(a)(2), amended first sentence generally. Prior to amendment, first sentence read as follows: “If a surviving spouse dies or the annuity of a child is terminated, the annuities of any remaining children shall be recomputed and paid as though such spouse or child had not survived the participant.”

Subsec. (i)(2). Pub. L. 100-238, §213(b), substituted “this part” for “section 4054(b) of this title”.

Subsec. (l). Pub. L. 100-238, §217(c)(1), struck out subsec. (l) which set minimum rates for annuities paid under this part.

1986—Subsecs. (b)(3)(C), (h). Pub. L. 99-335, §402(a)(3), inserted “under this part” after “payable from the Fund”.

Subsec. (l)(1), (2). Pub. L. 99-335, §402(a)(2), substituted “part” for “subchapter”.

Subsec. (m). Pub. L. 99-556, §402, amended subsec. (m) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (m) read as follows: “The annuity or survivor annuity payable to any individual subject to section 4045(h) of this title beginning with the first month for which such individual both—

“(1) attains the minimum age for old-age benefits under title II of the Social Security Act, and

“(2) first becomes entitled, or would upon proper application become entitled, for disability or survivor benefits under title II of the Social Security Act based on the service of any individual under this part, shall be computed as if section 8349 of title 5 were applicable.”

Pub. L. 99-335, §406, added subsec. (m).

Subsec. (n). Pub. L. 99-335, §407, added subsec. (n).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1988 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 100-238 effective 90 days after Jan. 8, 1988, see section 261(a) of Pub. L. 100-238, set out as a note under section 4054 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENTS

Section 408 of title IV of Pub. L. 99-556 provided that: “This title and the amendments made by this title [enacting section 4069 of this title and amending this section and sections 4064, 4071c, 4071d, and 4071j of this title] shall take effect on January 1, 1987. The amendment made by section 403 [amending section 4064 of this title] shall apply to any individual in a reemployed status on or after January 1, 1987.”

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-335 effective Jan. 1, 1987, see section 702(a) of Pub. L. 99-335, set out as an Effective Date note under section 8401 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

Section 417 of Pub. L. 99-335 provided that:

“(a) REGULATIONS.—Notwithstanding section 702 of this Act [5 U.S.C. 8401 note], the authority of the Secretary of State to issue regulations under subchapter II of title 8 [probably means subchapter II of chapter 8 of title I] of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [part II of this subchapter] shall take effect on the date of enactment of this Act [June 6, 1986].

“(b) 18-MONTH PERIOD TO ELECT SURVIVOR ANNUITY.—(1) Notwithstanding section 702 of this Act, the amendment made by section 407 [enacting subsec. (n) of this section] shall take effect 3 months after the date of enactment of this Act.

“(2)(A) Subject to subparagraph (B), the amendment made by section 407 shall apply with respect to participants and former participants who retire before, on, or after such amendment first takes effect.

“(B) For the purpose of applying the provisions of paragraph (1) of section 806(n) of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 (as added by section 407) to former participants who retire before the date on which the amendment first takes effect—

“(i) the period referred to in subparagraph (A) or (B) of such paragraph (as the case may be) shall be considered to begin on the date on which such amendment first becomes effective; and

“(ii) the amount referred to in paragraph (2) of such section 806(n) shall be computed without regard to the provisions of subparagraph (B)(ii) of such paragraph (relating to interest).

“(3) For purposes of this subsection, the term ‘participant’ has the meaning given that term in section 803 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 (22 U.S.C. 4043).”

#### ELECTION TO PROVIDE SURVIVOR ANNUITY FOR CERTAIN SPOUSES ACQUIRED BEFORE EFFECTIVE DATE OF FOREIGN SERVICE ACT OF 1980

Section 203 of title II of Pub. L. 100-238 provided that:

“(a) ELECTION.—A former participant who married his or her current spouse before the effective date of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [see Effective Date note set out under section 3901 of this title] and who married such spouse after retirement under the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System and who was unable to provide a survivor annuity for such spouse because—

“(1) the participant was married at the time of retirement and elected not to provide a survivor annuity for that spouse at the time of retirement, or

“(2) subject to subsection (e), the participant failed to notify the Secretary of State of the participant’s post-retirement marriage within one year after the marriage,

may make the election described in subsection (b).

“(b) ELECTION DESCRIBED.—

“(1) The election referred to in subsection (a) is an election in writing—

“(A) to provide for a survivor annuity for such spouse under section 806(g) of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 (22 U.S.C. 4046(g));

“(B) to have his or her annuity reduced under section 806(b)(2) of such Act; and

“(C) to deposit in the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability Fund an amount determined by the Secretary of State, as nearly as may be administratively feasible, to reflect the amount by which such participant’s annuity would have been reduced had the election been continuously in effect since the annuity commenced, plus interest computed under paragraph (2).

“(2) For the purposes of paragraph (1), the annual rate of interest shall be 6 percent for each year during which the annuity would have been reduced if the election had been in effect on and after the date the annuity commenced.

“(c) OFFSET.—If the participant does not make the deposit referred to in subsection (b)(1)(C), the Secretary of State shall collect such amount by offset against such participant’s annuity, up to a maximum of 25 percent of the net annuity otherwise payable to such participant. Such participant is deemed to consent to such offset.

“(d) NOTICE.—The Secretary of State shall provide for notice to the general public of the right to make an election under this section.

“(e) PROOF OF ATTEMPTED ELECTION.—In any case in which subsection (a)(2) applies, the retired employee or Member shall provide the Secretary of State with such documentation as the Secretary of State shall decide is appropriate, to show that such participant attempted to elect a reduced annuity with survivor benefit for his or her current spouse and that such election was rejected by the Secretary of State because it was untimely filed.

“(f) DEPOSIT.—A deposit required by this subsection may be made by the surviving spouse of the participant.

“(g) LIMITATION.—The election authorized in subsection (a) may only be made within one year after the date of enactment of this title [Jan. 8, 1988] in accordance with procedures prescribed by the Secretary of State.

“(h) DEFINITIONS.—For the purposes of this section, the terms ‘participant’ and ‘surviving spouse’ have the

same meaning given such terms in subchapter I of chapter 8 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [this part].”

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4009, 4010, 4047, 4048, 4049, 4050, 4051, 4052, 4053, 4054, 4055, 4056, 4063, 4066, 4069a, 4069a-1, 4069b, 4069b-1, 4159 of this title.

**§ 4047. Payment of annuity**

**(a) Commencement of annuity**

(1) Except as otherwise provided in paragraph (2), the annuity of a participant who has met the eligibility requirements for an annuity shall commence on the first day of the month after—

(A) separation from the Service occurs; or

(B) pay ceases and the service and age requirements for entitlement to annuity are met.

(2) The annuity of—

(A) a participant who is retired and is eligible for benefits under section 4009(a) of this title or a participant who is retired under section 4053 of this title or is otherwise involuntarily separated from the Service, except by removal for cause on charges of misconduct or delinquency,

(B) a participant retiring under section 4048 of this title due to a disability, and

(C) a participant who serves 3 days or less in the month of retirement—

shall commence on the day after separation from the Service or the day after pay ceases and the requirements for entitlement to annuity are met.

**(b) Survivor's annuity; application; proof of eligibility; payment to estate**

The annuity to a survivor shall become effective as otherwise specified but shall not be paid until the survivor submits an application for such annuity, supported by such proof of eligibility as the Secretary of State may require. If such application or proof of eligibility is not submitted during the lifetime of an otherwise eligible individual, no annuity shall be due or payable to his or her estate.

**(c) Waiver**

An individual entitled to annuity from the Fund may decline to accept all or any part of the annuity by submitting a signed waiver to the Secretary of State. The waiver may be revoked in writing at any time. Payment of the annuity waived may not be made for the period during which the waiver was in effect.

**(d) Recovery of overpayment**

Recovery of overpayments under this part may not be made from an individual when, in the judgment of the Secretary of State, the individual is without fault and recovery would be against equity and good conscience or administratively infeasible.

**(e) Alternate forms of annuities**

(1) The Secretary of State shall prescribe regulations under which any participant who has a life-threatening affliction or other critical medical condition may, at the time of retiring under this part (other than under section 4048 of this

title), elect annuity benefits under this section instead of any other benefits under this part (including survivor benefits) based on the service of the participant.

(2) Subject to paragraph (3), the Secretary of State shall by regulation provide for such alternative forms of annuities as the Secretary considers appropriate, except that among the alternatives offered shall be—

(A) an alternative which provides for—

(i) payment of the lump-sum credit (excluding interest) to the participant; and

(ii) payment of an annuity to the participant for life; and

(B) in the case of a participant who is married at the time of retirement, an alternative which provides for—

(i) payment of the lump-sum credit (excluding interest) to the participant; and

(ii) payment of an annuity to the participant for life, with a survivor annuity payable for the life of a surviving spouse.

(3) Each alternative provided for under paragraph (2) shall, to the extent practicable, be designed such that the total value of the benefits provided under such alternative (including any lump-sum credit) is actuarially equivalent to the value of the annuity which would otherwise be provided the participant under this part, as computed under section 4046(a) of this title.

(4) A participant who, at the time of retiring under this part—

(A) is married, shall be ineligible to make an election under this section unless a waiver is made under section 4046(b)(1)(B) of this title; or

(B) has a former spouse, shall be ineligible to make an election under this section if the former spouse is entitled to benefits under this part (based on the service of the participant) unless a waiver has been made under section 4046(b)(1)(C) of this title.

(5) A participant who is married at the time of retiring under this part and who makes an election under this section may, during the 18-month period beginning on the date of retirement, make the election provided for under section 4046(n) of this title, subject to the deposit requirement thereunder.

(6) Notwithstanding any other provision of law, any lump-sum credit provided pursuant to an election under this subsection shall not preclude an individual from receiving any other benefits under this subsection.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §807, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2109; Ex. Ord. No. 12446, §3(a), Oct. 17, 1983, 48 F.R. 48443; Pub. L. 99-335, title IV, §§402(a)(2), 408, June 6, 1986, 100 Stat. 609, 612; Pub. L. 103-66, title XI, §11002(b), Aug. 10, 1993, 107 Stat. 409.)

AMENDMENTS

1993—Subsec. (e)(1). Pub. L. 103-66 substituted “any participant who has a life-threatening affliction or other critical medical condition” for “a participant”.

1986—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 99-335, §402(a)(2), substituted “part” for “subchapter”.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 99-335, §408, added subsec. (e).

1983—Subsec. (a). Ex. Ord. No. 12446 amended subsec. (a) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (a) read as follows: “Except as otherwise provided, the annuity of

a former participant who has met the eligibility requirements for an annuity shall commence on the day after separation from the Service or on the day after pay ceases. The annuity of a former participant who is entitled to a deferred annuity under this chapter shall become effective on the day he or she attains age 60.”

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103-66 effective Oct. 1, 1994, and applicable with respect to any annuity commencing on or after that date, see section 11002(d) of Pub. L. 103-66, set out as a note under section 8343a of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-335 effective Jan. 1, 1987, see section 702(a) of Pub. L. 99-335, set out as an Effective Date note under section 8401 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1983 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Ex. Ord. No. 12446 effective 30 days after Oct. 17, 1983, see section 3(b) of Ex. Ord. No. 12446, set out under section 4067 of this title.

**§ 4048. Retirement for disability or incapacity**

**(a) Causes; service credit**

Any participant who has at least 5 years of service credit toward retirement under the System (excluding military and naval service) and who becomes totally disabled or incapacitated for useful and efficient service by reason of disease, illness, or injury (not due to vicious habits, intemperance, or willful conduct of the participant) shall, upon his or her own application or upon order of the Secretary, be retired on an annuity computed as prescribed in section 4046 of this title. If the disabled or incapacitated participant has less than 20 years of service credit toward retirement under the System at the time of retirement, his or her annuity shall be computed on the assumption that the participant has had 20 years of service, except that the additional service credit that may accrue to a participant under this sentence shall in no case exceed the difference between his or her age at the time of retirement and age 60.

However, if a participant retiring under this section is receiving retired pay or retainer pay for military service (except that specified in section 8332(c)(1) or (2) of title 5) or Department of Veterans Affairs pension or compensation in lieu of such retired or retainer pay, the annuity of that participant shall be computed under this part excluding extra credit authorized by this subsection and excluding credit for military service from that computation. If the amount of the annuity so computed, plus the retired or retainer pay which is received, or which would be received but for the application of the limitation in section 5532 of title 5 or the Department of Veterans Affairs pension or compensation in lieu of such retired pay or retainer pay, is less than the annuity that would be payable under this part in the absence of the previous sentence, an amount equal to the difference shall be added to the annuity computed under this part.

**(b) Physical examination; reinstatement or reappointment upon recovery; fees and expenses; duration and suspension of annuity**

Before being retired under this section, the participant shall be given a physical examina-

tion by one or more duly qualified physicians or surgeons designated by the Secretary of State to conduct examinations. Disability or incapacity shall be determined by the Secretary of State on the basis of the advice of such physicians or surgeons. Unless the disability or incapacity is permanent, like examinations shall be made annually until the annuitant has attained age 60. If the Secretary of State determines on the basis of the advice of one or more duly qualified physicians or surgeons conducting such examinations that an annuitant has recovered to the extent that he or she can return to duty, the annuitant may apply for reinstatement or reappointment in the Service within 1 year from the date recovery is determined. Upon application, the Secretary shall reinstate such recovered annuitant in the class in which the annuitant was serving at time of retirement, or the Secretary may, taking into consideration the age, qualifications, and experience of such annuitant, and the present class of his or her contemporaries in the Service, appoint or recommend that the President appoint the annuitant to a higher class. Payment of the annuity shall continue until a date 6 months after the date of the examination showing recovery or until the date of reinstatement or reappointment in the Service, whichever is earlier. Fees for examinations under this section, together with reasonable traveling and other expenses incurred in order to submit to examination, shall be paid out of the Fund. If the annuitant fails to submit to examination as required under this subsection, payment of the annuity shall be suspended until continuance of the disability or incapacity is satisfactorily established.

**(c) Benefits upon discontinuance of annuity**

If a recovered annuitant whose annuity is discontinued is for any reason not reinstated or reappointed in the Service, he or she shall be considered to have been separated within the meaning of section 4050 of this title as of the date of retirement for disability or incapacity and shall, after the discontinuance of the annuity, be entitled to the benefits of that section or of section 4055 of this title, except that he or she may elect voluntary retirement if eligible under section 4051 of this title.

**(d) Election of benefits; concurrent benefits allowed**

No participant shall be entitled to receive an annuity under this part and compensation for injury or disability to himself or herself under subchapter I of chapter 81 of title 5, covering the same period of time, except that a participant may simultaneously receive both an annuity under this section and scheduled disability payments under section 8107 of title 5. This subsection shall not bar the right of any claimant to the greater benefit conferred by either this part or subchapter I of such chapter 8<sup>1</sup> for any part of the same period of time. Neither this subsection nor any provision of subchapter I of such chapter 8<sup>1</sup> shall be construed to deny the right of any participant to receive an annuity under this part and to receive concurrently any

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be chapter “81”.

payment under subchapter I of such chapter 8<sup>1</sup> by reason of the death of any other individual.

**(e) Lump sum disability payments**

Notwithstanding any other law, the right of any individual entitled to an annuity under this part shall not be affected because such person has received an award of compensation in a lump sum under section 8135 of title 5, except that where such annuity is payable on account of the same disability for which compensation under such section has been paid, so much of such compensation as has been paid for any period extended beyond the date such annuity becomes effective, as determined by the Secretary of Labor, shall be refunded to the Department of Labor, to be paid into the Federal Employees' Compensation Fund. Before such individual receives such annuity, he or she shall—

(1) refund to the Department of Labor the amount representing such commuted payments for such extended period, or

(2) authorize the deduction of such amount from the annuity payable under this part, which amount shall be transmitted to the Department of Labor for reimbursement to such Fund.

Deductions from such annuity may be made from accrued and accruing payments, or may be prorated against and paid from accruing payments in such manner as the Secretary of Labor shall determine, whenever the Secretary of Labor finds that the financial circumstances of the annuitant warrant deferred refunding.

**(f) Time of filing application; waiver**

A claim may be allowed under this section only if the application is filed with the Secretary of State before the participant is separated from the Service or within one year thereafter. This time limitation may be waived by the Secretary of State for a participant who at the date of separation from the Service or within one year thereafter is mentally incompetent, if the application is filed with the Secretary of State within one year from the date of restoration of the participant to competency or the appointment of a fiduciary, whichever is earlier.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 808, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2110; Ex. Ord. No. 12289, § 2, Feb. 14, 1981, 46 F.R. 12693; Pub. L. 99-335, title IV, § 402(a)(2), (b), June 6, 1986, 100 Stat. 609; Pub. L. 100-238, title II, § 215(a), Jan. 8, 1988, 101 Stat. 1774; Pub. L. 102-54, § 13(h)(2), June 13, 1991, 105 Stat. 275.)

AMENDMENTS

1991—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 102-54 substituted "Department of Veterans Affairs" for "Veterans' Administration" in two places in second par.

1988—Subsecs. (a), (b). Pub. L. 100-238 substituted "60" for "65".

1986—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99-335, § 402(a)(2), substituted "part" for "subchapter" in three places.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 99-335, § 402(b)(1), substituted "subchapter I of such chapter 8" for "such subchapter" in three places and "part" for "chapter" in three places.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 99-335, § 402(b)(2), substituted "part" for "chapter" in two places.

1981—Subsec. (a). Ex. Ord. No. 12289 added second par. relating to computation of annuity for participant retiring under this section and receiving retired or retiree pay.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1988 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 100-238 effective 90 days after Jan. 8, 1988, see section 261(a) of Pub. L. 100-238, set out as a note under section 4054 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-335 effective Jan. 1, 1987, see section 702(a) of Pub. L. 99-335, set out as an Effective Date note under section 8401 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1981 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Ex. Ord. No. 12289 effective Feb. 15, 1981, see section 3 of Ex. Ord. No. 12289, set out under section 4067 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4047, 4056, 4071h of this title; title 26 section 104.

**§ 4049. Death in service**

**(a) Lump-sum credit**

If a participant dies and no claim for annuity is payable under this part, the lump-sum credit shall be paid in accordance with section 4055 of this title.

**(b) Surviving spouse**

If a participant who has at least 18 months of civilian service credit toward retirement under the System dies before retirement or other separation from the Service and is survived by a spouse or former spouse qualifying for an annuity under section 4054(b) of this title, such surviving spouse shall be entitled to an annuity equal to 55 percent of the annuity computed in accordance with subsections (e) and (g) of this section and section 4046(a) of this title and any surviving former spouse shall be entitled to an annuity under section 4054(b) of this title as if the participant died after being entitled to an annuity under this part. If the participant had less than 3 years creditable civilian service at the time of death, the survivor annuity shall be computed on the basis of the average salary for the entire period of such service.

**(c) Surviving spouse or former spouse, and children**

If a participant who has at least 18 months of civilian service credit toward retirement under the System dies before retirement or other separation from the Service and is survived by a spouse or a former spouse who is the natural or adoptive parent of a surviving child of the annuitant, and a child or children, each surviving child shall be entitled to an annuity computed in accordance with subsections (c)(1) and (d) of section 4046 of this title.

**(d) Surviving children**

If a participant who has at least 18 months of civilian service credit toward retirement under the System dies before retirement or other separation from the Service and is not survived by a spouse, or a former spouse who is the natural or adoptive parent of a surviving child of the annuitant, but by a child or children, each surviving child shall be entitled to an annuity computed in accordance with subsections (c)(2) and (d) of section 4046 of this title.

**(e) Service credit; presumption of qualification**

If, at the time of his or her death, the participant had less than 20 years of service credit to-

ward retirement under the System, the annuity payable in accordance with subsection (b) of this section shall be computed in accordance with section 4046 of this title on the assumption he or she has had 20 years of service, except that the additional service credit that may accrue to a deceased participant under this subsection shall in no case exceed the difference between his or her age on the date of death and age 60. In all cases arising under this subsection or subsection (b), (c), (d), or (g) of this section, it shall be assumed that the deceased participant was qualified for retirement on the date of death.

**(f) Recall service**

If an annuitant entitled to a reduced annuity dies in service after being recalled under section 3948 of this title and is survived by a spouse or former spouse entitled to a survivor annuity based on the service of such annuitant, such survivor annuity shall be computed as if the recall service had otherwise terminated on the day of death and the annuity of the deceased had been resumed in accordance with section 4063 of this title. If such death occurs after the annuitant had completed sufficient recall service to attain eligibility for a supplemental annuity, a surviving spouse or surviving former spouse who was married to the participant at any time during a period of recall service shall be entitled to elect, in addition to any other benefits and in lieu of a refund of retirement contributions made during the recall service, a supplemental survivor annuity computed and paid under section 4046(i) of this title as if the recall service had otherwise terminated. If the annuitant had completed sufficient recall service to attain eligibility to have his or her annuity determined anew, a surviving spouse or such a surviving former spouse may elect, in lieu of any other survivor benefit under this subchapter, to have the rights of the annuitant redetermined and to receive a survivor annuity computed under subsection (b) of this section on the basis of the total service of the annuitant.

**(g) Limitation on surviving spouse's annuity**

Notwithstanding subsection (b) of this section, if the participant or former participant had a former spouse qualifying for an annuity under section 4054(b) of this title, the annuity of the spouse under this section shall be subject to the limitation of section 4046(b)(3)(B) of this title.

**(h) Commencement, termination, and resumption of annuities**

Annuities that become payable under this section shall commence, terminate, and be resumed in accordance with subsection (b)(4), (e), or (h) of section 4046 of this title, as appropriate.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 809, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2111; Pub. L. 99-335, title IV, § 402(a)(2), (c), June 6, 1986, 100 Stat. 609; Pub. L. 100-238, title II, § 214(b), 215(b), Jan. 8, 1988, 101 Stat. 1774.)

AMENDMENTS

1988—Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 100-238, § 214(b), inserted “or a former spouse who is the natural or adoptive parent of a surviving child of the annuitant,” after “spouse”.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 100-238, § 215(b), substituted “60” for “65”.

1986—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99-335, § 402(c), substituted “part” for “chapter”.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 99-335, § 402(a)(2), substituted “part” for “subchapter”.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1988 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 100-238 effective 90 days after Jan. 8, 1988, see section 261(a) of Pub. L. 100-238, set out as a note under section 4054 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-335 effective Jan. 1, 1987, see section 702(a) of Pub. L. 99-335, set out as an Effective Date note under section 8401 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4009, 4056, 4066 of this title.

**§ 4050. Discontinued service retirement**

Any participant who voluntarily separates from the Service after obtaining at least 5 years of service credit toward retirement under the System (excluding military and naval service) may upon separation from the Service or at any time prior to becoming eligible for an annuity elect to have his or her contributions to the Fund returned in accordance with section 4055 of this title, or to leave his or her contributions in the Fund and receive an annuity, computed under section 4046 of this title, commencing at age 60.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 810, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2112.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4048 of this title.

**§ 4051. Voluntary retirement**

Any participant who is at least 50 years of age and has 20 years of creditable service, including at least 5 years of service credit toward retirement under the System (excluding military and naval service), may on his or her own application and with the consent of the Secretary be retired from the Service and receive retirement benefits in accordance with section 4046 of this title. The Secretary shall withhold consent for retirement under this section by any participant who has not been a member of the Service for 5 years. Any participant who voluntarily separates from the Service before completing 5 years in the System and who, on the date of separation, would be eligible for an annuity, based on a voluntary separation, under section 8336 or 8338 of title 5, if the participant had been covered under the Civil Service Retirement System rather than subject to this subchapter while a member of the Service, may receive an annuity under section 8336 or 8338, notwithstanding section 8333(b) of title 5, if all contributions transferred to the Fund under section 4045(c)(1) of this title, as well as all contributions withheld from the participant's pay or contributed by the employer, and deposited into the Fund during the period he or she was subject to this subchapter, including interest on these amounts, are transferred to the Civil Service Retirement and Disability Fund effective on the date the participant separates from the Service.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §811, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2112; Pub. L. 100-238, title II, §216, Jan. 8, 1988, 101 Stat. 1774.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1988—Pub. L. 100-238 inserted last two sentences relating to withholding consent to retirement and to certain participants who voluntarily separate from the Service before completing 5 years in the System.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1988 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 100-238 effective 90 days after Jan. 8, 1988, see section 261(a) of Pub. L. 100-238, set out as a note under section 4054 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4009, 4048, 4071d of this title.

### § 4052. Mandatory retirement

(a)(1) Except as provided in subsection (b) of this section, any participant shall be retired from the Service at the end of the month in which the participant has reached age 65 and has at least 5 years of service credit toward retirement under the System (excluding military and naval service), and shall receive retirement benefits in accordance with section 4046 of this title.

(2) Notwithstanding paragraph (1), a Foreign Service criminal investigator/inspector of the Office of Inspector General of the Agency for International Development who would have been eligible for retirement pursuant to either section 8336(c) or 8412(d) of title 5, as applicable, had the employee remained in civil service, shall be separated from the Service on the last day of the month in which that Foreign Service criminal investigator/inspector attains 57 years of age or completes 20 years of service if then over that age. If the head of the agency judges that the public interest so requires, that agency head may exempt such an employee from automatic separation under this subsection until that employee attains 60 years of age. The employing office shall notify the employee in writing of the date of separation at least 60 days before that date. Action to separate the employee is not effective without the consent of the employee, until the last day of the month in which the 60-day notice expires.

(b)(1) Any participant who is otherwise required to retire under subsection (a) of this section while occupying a position to which he or she was appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, may continue to serve until that appointment is terminated.

(2) Whenever the Secretary determines it to be in the public interest, any participant who is otherwise required to retire under subsection (a) of this section may be retained on active service for a period not to exceed 5 years.

(3) Any participant who completes a period of service authorized by this subsection shall be retired at the end of the month in which such authorized service is completed.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §812, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2113; Pub. L. 101-513, title V, §587(b), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2056; Pub. L. 102-499, §4(c), Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3265.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 102-499 substituted “57” for “55”.

1990—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 101-513 designated existing provisions as par. (1) and added par. (2).

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Officer retired under this section not barred from employment in a civil service position, see section 3323 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4071d of this title; title 5 section 3323.

### § 4053. Reassignment and retirement of former Presidential appointees

#### (a) Reassignment or retirement of participants not eligible for retirement

A participant, who completes an assignment under section 3942(b) of this title in a position to which the participant was appointed by the President, and is not otherwise eligible for retirement—

(1) shall be reassigned within 90 days after the termination of such assignment and any period of authorized leave, or

(2) if the Secretary of State determines that reassignment is not in the interest of the Foreign Service, shall be retired from the Service and receive retirement benefits in accordance with section 4046 or 4071d of this title, as appropriate.

#### (b) Retirement of participants eligible for retirement

A participant who completes an assignment under section 3942(b) of this title in a position to which the participant was appointed by the President and is eligible for retirement and is not reassigned within 90 days after the termination of such assignment and any period of authorized leave, shall be retired from the Service and receive retirement benefits in accordance with section 4046 of this title or section 4071d of this title, as appropriate.

#### (c) Retirement of reemployed participants

A participant who is retired under subsection (a)(2) of this section and is subsequently employed by the United States Government, thereafter, shall be eligible to retire only under the terms of the applicable retirement system.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §813, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2113; Pub. L. 102-138, title I, §149, Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 670; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §174, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 413.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-236 added subsecs. (a) to (c) and struck out former subsecs. (a) to (c) which read as follows:

“(a) Except as provided under subsection (b) of this section, a participant, who completes an assignment under section 3942(b) of this title in a position to which he or she was appointed by the President, shall be offered reassignment within 90 days after the termination of such assignment and any period of authorized leave.

“(b) Subsection (a) of this section shall not apply with respect to a participant, if the Secretary of State determines that reassignment of the participant is not in the interest of the United States and the Foreign Service.

“(c) A participant who is not reassigned under subsection (a) of this section shall be retired from the Service and receive retirement benefits in accordance with section 4046 or 4071d of this title, as appropriate.”

1991—Pub. L. 102-138 inserted “Reassignment and” in section catchline and amended text generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: “If a participant completes an assignment under section 3942(b) of this title in a position to which he or she was appointed by the President and has not been reassigned within 3 months after the termination of such assignment (plus any period of authorized leave), the participant shall be retired from the Service and receive retirement benefits in accordance with section 4046 of this title.”

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4047, 4071d of this title.

### § 4054. Former spouses

#### (a) Living Service members

(1) Unless otherwise expressly provided by any spousal agreement or court order under section 4060(b)(1) of this title, a former spouse of a participant or former participant is entitled to an annuity if such former spouse was married to the participant for at least 10 years during service of the participant which is creditable under this subchapter with at least 5 of such years occurring while the participant was a member of the Foreign Service and—

(A) if married to the participant throughout the creditable service of the participant, equal to 50 percent of the annuity of the participant; or

(B) if not married to the participant throughout such creditable service, equal to that former spouse's pro rata share of 50 percent of such annuity.

For the purposes of this paragraph, the term “creditable service” means service which is creditable under part I or II of this subchapter.

(2) A former spouse shall not be qualified for an annuity under this subsection if before the commencement of that annuity the former spouse remarries before becoming 60 years of age.

(3) The annuity of a former spouse under this subsection commences on the later of the day the participant upon whose service the annuity is based becomes entitled to an annuity under this part or the first day of the month in which the divorce or annulment involved becomes final. The annuity of such former spouse and the right thereto terminate on—

(A) the last day of the month before the former spouse dies or remarries before 60 years of age; or

(B) the date the annuity of the participant terminates (except in the case of an annuity subject to paragraph (5)(B)).

(4) No spousal agreement or court order under section 4060(b)(1) of this title involving any participant may provide for an annuity or any combination of annuities under this subsection which exceeds the annuity of the participant, nor may any such court order relating to an annuity under this subsection be given effect if it is issued more than 24 months after the date the divorce or annulment involved becomes final.

(5)(A) The annuity payable to any participant shall be reduced by the amount of an annuity

under this subsection paid to any former spouse based upon the service of that participant. Such reduction shall be disregarded in calculating the survivor annuity for any spouse, former spouse, or other survivor under this part, and in calculating any reduction in the annuity of the participant to provide survivor benefits under subsection (b) of this section or section 4046(b)(3) of this title.

(B) If any annuitant whose annuity is reduced under subparagraph (A) is recalled to service under section 3948 of this title, or reinstated or reappointed in the Service in the case of a recovered disability annuitant or if any annuitant is reemployed as provided for under section 4064 of this title, the salary of that annuitant shall be reduced by the same amount as the annuity would have been reduced if it had continued. Amounts equal to the reductions under this subparagraph shall be deposited in the Treasury of the United States to the credit of the Fund.

(6) Notwithstanding paragraph (3), in the case of any former spouse of a disability annuitant—

(A) the annuity of that former spouse shall commence on the date the participant would qualify on the basis of his or her creditable service for an annuity under this part (other than a disability annuity) or the date the disability annuity begins, whichever is later, and

(B) the amount of the annuity of the former spouse shall be calculated on the basis of the annuity for which the participant would otherwise so qualify.

(7) An annuity under this subsection shall be treated the same as a survivor annuity under subsection (b) of this section for purposes of section 4046(h) of this title or any comparable provision of law.

#### (b) Deceased Service members

(1) Subject to any election under section 4046(b)(1)(C) of this title and unless otherwise expressly provided by any spousal agreement or court order under section 4060(b)(1) of this title, if a former participant who is entitled to receive an annuity is survived by a former spouse, the former spouse shall be entitled to a survivor annuity—

(A) if married to the participant throughout the creditable service of the participant, equal to 55 percent of the full amount of the participant's annuity, as computed under section 4046(a) of this title; or

(B) if not married to the participant throughout such creditable service, equal to that former spouse's pro rata share of 55 percent of the full amount of such annuity.

For the purposes of this paragraph, the term “creditable service” means service which is creditable under part I or II of this subchapter.

(2) A former spouse shall not be qualified for an annuity under this subsection if before the commencement of that annuity the former spouse remarries before becoming 60 years of age.

(3) An annuity payable from the Fund under this part to a surviving former spouse under this subsection shall commence on the day after the annuitant dies and shall terminate on the last day of the month before the former spouse's



death or remarriage before attaining age 60. If such a survivor annuity is terminated because of remarriage, it shall be restored at the same rate commencing on the date such remarriage is terminated if any lump sum paid upon termination of the annuity is returned to the Fund.

(4)(A) The maximum survivor annuity or combination of survivor annuities under this section (and section 4046(b)(3) of this title) with respect to any participant or former participant may not exceed 55 percent of the full amount of the participant's annuity, as calculated under section 4046(a) of this title.

(B) Once a survivor annuity has been provided for under this subsection for any former spouse, a survivor annuity may thereafter be provided for under this subsection (or section 4046(b)(3) of this title) with respect to a participant or former participant only for that portion (if any) of the maximum available which is not committed for survivor benefits for any former spouse whose prospective right to such annuity has not terminated by reason of death or remarriage.

(C) After the death of a participant or former participant, a court order under section 4060(b)(1) of this title may not adjust the amount of the annuity of any former spouse under this section.

(5)(A) For each full month after a former spouse of a participant or former participant dies or remarries before attaining age 60, the annuity of the participant, if reduced to provide a survivor annuity for that former spouse, shall be recomputed and paid as if the annuity had not been so reduced, unless an election is in effect under subparagraph (B).

(B) Subject to paragraph (4)(B), the participant may elect in writing within one year after receipt of notice of the death or remarriage of the former spouse to continue the reduction in order to provide a higher survivor annuity under section 4046(b)(3) of this title for any spouse of the participant.

**(c) Additional survivor annuity**

(1) In the case of any participant or former participant providing a survivor annuity benefit under subsection (b) of this section for a former spouse—

(A) such participant may elect, or

(B) a spousal agreement or court order under section 4060(b)(1) of this title may provide for, an additional survivor annuity under this subsection for any other former spouse or spouse surviving the participant, if the participant satisfactorily passes a physical examination as prescribed by the Secretary of State.

(2) Neither the total amount of survivor annuity or annuities under this subsection with respect to any participant or former participant, nor the survivor annuity or annuities for any one surviving spouse or former spouse of such participant under this section and section 4046 of this title, shall exceed 55 percent of the full amount of the participant's annuity, as computed under section 4046(a) of this title.

(3)(A) In accordance with regulations which the Secretary of State shall prescribe, the participant involved may provide for any annuity under this subsection—

(i) by a reduction in the annuity or an allotment from the salary of the participant,

(ii) by a lump sum payment or installment payments to the Fund, or

(iii) by any combination thereof.

(B) The present value of the total amount to accrue to the Fund under subparagraph (A) to provide any annuity under this subsection shall be actuarially equivalent in value to such annuity, as calculated upon such tables of mortality as may from time to time be prescribed for this purpose by the Secretary of State.

(C) If a former spouse predeceases the participant or remarries before attaining age 60 (or, in the case of a spouse, the spouse does not qualify as a former spouse upon dissolution of the marriage)—

(i) if an annuity reduction or salary allotment under subparagraph (A) is in effect for that spouse or former spouse, the annuity shall be recomputed and paid as if it had not been reduced or the salary allotment terminated, as the case may be, and

(ii) any amount accruing to the Fund under subparagraph (A) shall be refunded, but only to the extent that such amount may have exceeded the actuarial cost of providing benefits under this subsection for the period such benefits were provided, as determined under regulations prescribed by the Secretary of State.

(D) Under regulations prescribed by the Secretary of State, an annuity shall be recomputed (or salary allotment terminated or adjusted), and a refund provided (if appropriate), in a manner comparable to that provided under subparagraph (C), in order to reflect a termination or reduction of future benefits under this subsection for a spouse in the event a former spouse of the participant dies or remarries before attaining age 60 and an increased annuity is provided for that spouse in accordance with this part.

(4) An annuity payable under this subsection to a spouse or former spouse shall commence on the day after the participant dies and shall terminate on the last day of the month before the former spouse's death or remarriage before attaining age 60.

(5) Section 4066 of this title shall not apply to any annuity under this subsection, unless authorized under regulations prescribed by the Secretary of State.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §814, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2113; Pub. L. 97-241, title I, §125(2), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 282; Pub. L. 99-335, title IV, §§402(a)(2), (3), 404(b), June 6, 1986, 100 Stat. 609, 610; Pub. L. 100-238, title II, §217(a), (b), (c)(2), Jan. 8, 1988, 101 Stat. 1775.)

AMENDMENTS

1988—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 100-238, §217(a), which directed the amendment of par. (1) by inserting "if such former spouse was married to the participant for at least 10 years during service of the participant which is creditable under this subchapter with at least 5 of such years occurring while the participant was a member of the Foreign Service and" after "annuity", was executed by inserting the new language after "annuity" in introductory provisions, as the probable intent of Congress.

Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 100-238, §217(b), substituted "24" for "12".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 100-238, §217(c)(2), struck out subsec. (d) which read as follows: "Section 4046(l) of this title shall not apply—

“(1) to any annuity payable under subsection (a) or (b) of this section to any former spouse if the amount of that annuity varies by reason of a spousal agreement or court order under section 4060(b)(1) of this title, or an election under section 4046(b)(1)(B) of this title, from the amount which would be calculated under subsection (a)(1) or (b)(1) of this section, as the case may be, in the absence of such spousal agreement, court order, or election; and

“(2) to any annuity payable under subsection (c) of this section.”

1986—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 99-335, § 404(b)(1), inserted provision defining “creditable service” as service creditable under part I or II of this subchapter.

Subsec. (a)(3), (5)(A), (6)(A). Pub. L. 99-335, § 402(a)(2), substituted “part” for “subchapter”.

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 99-335, § 404(b)(2), inserted provision defining “creditable service” as service creditable under part I or II of this subchapter.

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 99-335, § 402(a)(3), inserted “under this part” after “payable from the Fund”.

Subsec. (c)(3)(D). Pub. L. 99-335, § 402(a)(2), substituted “part” for “subchapter”.

1982—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 97-241 substituted “or the first” for “on the first” in provision preceding subpar. (A).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1988 AMENDMENT

Section 261 of title II of Pub. L. 100-238 provided that:“(a) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in subsection (b), this title and the amendments made by this title [enacting sections 4069-1 to 4069c-1 of this title, amending this section and sections 4044 to 4046, 4048, 4049, 4051, 4055, 4066, 4071a, 4071c, and 4084 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 4046 of this title] shall take effect 90 days after the date of enactment of this title [Jan. 8, 1988].

“(b) EXCEPTIONS.—

“(1) The amendments made by section 202 [enacting section 4069-1 of this title] shall apply to any individual who, on or after the date of enactment of this title [Jan. 8, 1988], is married to a participant or former participant.

“(2) The amendment made by section 217(a) [amending this section] shall not apply with respect to the former spouse of a participant or former participant who is subject to subchapter I of chapter 8 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [this part] if, on the date of enactment of this title [Jan. 8, 1988], that former spouse—

“(A) was the spouse of that participant or former participant; or

“(B) is entitled to an annuity under section 814 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [this section] pursuant to the divorce or annulment of the marriage to that participant or former participant.

“(c) DEFINITIONS.—For the purpose of this section, the terms ‘participant’ and ‘former participant’ have the same meaning as such terms in chapter 8 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [this subchapter].”

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-335 effective Jan. 1, 1987, see section 702(a) of Pub. L. 99-335, set out as an Effective Date note under section 8401 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4046, 4049, 4060, 4064, 4069a, 4069a-1, 4071j, 4159 of this title.

### § 4055. Lump-sum payments

#### (a) Requirements for payment

(1) A participant is entitled to be paid a lump-sum credit if the participant—

(A) is separated from the Service for at least 31 consecutive days, or is transferred to a posi-

tion in which the participant is not subject to this subchapter and remains in such a position for at least 31 consecutive days;

(B) files an application with the Secretary of State for payment of the lump-sum credit;

(C) is not reemployed in a position in which the participant is subject to this subchapter at the time the participant files the application;

(D) will not become eligible to receive an annuity under this part within 31 days after filing the application; and

(E) has notified any spouse or former spouse the participant may have of the application for payment in accordance with regulations prescribed by the Secretary of State.

Such regulations may provide for waiver of subparagraph (E) under circumstances described in section 4046(b)(1)(D) of this title.

(2) Such lump-sum credit shall be paid to the participant and to any former spouse of the participant in accordance with subsection (i) of this section.

#### (b) Recall service; return of contributions

Whenever an annuitant becomes separated from the Service following a period of recall service without becoming eligible for a supplemental or recomputed annuity under section 4063 of this title, the compulsory contributions of the annuitant to the Fund for such service, together with any special contributions the annuitant may have made for other service performed after the date of separation from the Service which forms the basis for annuity, shall be returned to the annuitant (and any former spouse of the annuitant who was married to the participant during the period of recall service, in accordance with subsection (i) of this section).

#### (c) Difference between annuity and lump-sum credit

If all annuity rights under this part based on the service of a deceased participant or annuitant terminate before the total annuity paid equals the lump-sum credit to which the participant or annuitant is entitled, the difference shall be paid in accordance with subsection (f) of this section.

#### (d) Lack of eligible survivors

If a participant or former participant dies and is not survived by an individual eligible for an annuity under this part or by such an individual or individuals all of whose annuity rights terminate before a claim for survivor annuity is filed, the lump-sum credit to which the participant or annuitant is entitled shall be paid in accordance with subsection (f) of this section.

#### (e) Death of annuitant who was former participant

If an annuitant who was a former participant dies, any annuity accrued and unpaid shall be paid in accordance with subsection (f) of this section.

#### (f) Order of precedence for payments

Payments under subsections (c) through (e) of this section shall be paid in the following order of precedence to individuals surviving the participant and alive on the date entitlement to the

payment arises, upon the establishment of a valid claim therefor, and such payment shall be a bar to recovery by any other person:

(1) To the beneficiary or beneficiaries last designated by the participant before or after retirement in a signed and witnessed writing filed with the Secretary of State prior to the death of the participant, for which purpose a designation, change, or cancellation of beneficiary in a will or other document which is not so executed and filed shall have no force or effect.

(2) If there is no such beneficiary, to the surviving wife or husband of the participant.

(3) If none of the above, to the child (without regard to the definition in section 4044(2) of this title) or children of the participant (including adopted and natural children but not stepchildren) and descendants of deceased children by representation.

(4) If none of the above, to the parents of the participant or the survivor of them.

(5) If none of the above, to the duly appointed executor or administrator of the estate of the participant.

(6) If none of the above, to such other next of kin of the participant as may be determined in the judgment of the Secretary of State to be legally entitled to such payment, except that no payment shall be made under this paragraph until after the expiration of 30 days after the death of the participant or annuitant.

**(g) Death of survivor annuitant**

Annuity accrued and unpaid on the death of a survivor annuitant shall be paid in the following order of precedence, and the payment bars recovery by any other person:

(1) To the duly appointed executor or administrator of the estate of the survivor annuitant.

(2) If there is no such executor or administrator, to such person as may be determined by the Secretary of State (after the expiration of 30 days from the date of death of the survivor annuitant) to be entitled under the laws of the domicile of the survivor annuitant at the time of death.

**(h) Amount of credit**

<sup>1</sup>Amounts deducted and withheld from basic salary of a participant under section 4045 of this title from the beginning of the first pay period after the participant has completed 35 years of service computed under section 4056 of this title (excluding service credit for unused sick leave under section 4056(b) of this title), together with interest on the amounts at the rate of 3 percent a year compounded annually from the date of the deduction to the date of retirement or death, shall be applied toward any special contribution due under section 4045(d) of this title), and any balance not so required shall be refunded in a lump sum to the participant after separation or, in the event of a death in service, to a beneficiary in the order of precedence specified in subsection (f) of this section.

**(i) Former spouses**

Unless otherwise expressly provided by any spousal agreement or court order under section

4060(b)(1) of this title, the amount of a participant's or former participant's lump-sum credit payable to a former spouse of that participant shall be—

(1) if the former spouse was married to the participant throughout the period of creditable service of the participant, 50 percent of the lump-sum credit to which such participant would be entitled in the absence of this subsection, or

(2) if such former spouse was not married to the participant throughout such creditable service, an amount equal to such former spouse's pro rata share of 50 percent of such lump-sum credit.

The lump-sum credit of the participant shall be reduced by the amount of the lump-sum credit payable to the former spouse. For the purposes of this subsection, the term "creditable service" means service which is creditable under part I or II of this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §815, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2116; Pub. L. 99-335, title IV, §§402(a)(2), 404(c), 413, June 6, 1986, 100 Stat. 609, 610, 614; Pub. L. 100-238, title II, §218, Jan. 8, 1988, 101 Stat. 1775.)

AMENDMENT OF SECTION

*Section 1(a) and (c) of Ex. Ord. No. 12446, Oct. 17, 1983, 48 F.R. 48443, set out as a note under section 4067 of this title, provided that the first sentence of subsection (h) of this section, applicable (i) to contributions for civilian service performed on or after the first day of Nov. 1983, (ii) to contributions for prior refunds to participants for which application is received by the employing agency on and after such first day of Nov. 1983, and (iii) to excess contributions under section 4055(h) of this title and voluntary contributions under section 4065(a) of this title from the first day of Nov. 1983, is deemed to be amended to provide that interest shall be compounded at the annual rate of 3 percent per annum through December 31, 1984, and thereafter at a rate equal to the overall average yield to the Fund during the preceding fiscal year from all obligations purchased by the Secretary of the Treasury during such fiscal year under section 4059 of this title, as determined by the Secretary of the Treasury.*

AMENDMENTS

1988—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 100-238 amended subsec. (a) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (a) read as follows: "Whenever a participant becomes separated from the Service without becoming eligible for an annuity or a deferred annuity under this subchapter, a lump-sum credit shall be paid to the participant (and to any former spouse of the participant, in accordance with subsection (i) of this section). A participant who becomes subject to part II of this subchapter shall be entitled to payment of the lump-sum credit if, and to the extent that, such lump-sum credit relates to service of a type described in clauses (i) through (iii) of section 302(a)(1)(C) of the Federal Employees' Retirement System Act of 1986."

1986—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99-335, §413, inserted provision relating to payment of a lump-sum credit for a participant who becomes subject to part II of this subchapter.

Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 99-335, §402(a)(2), substituted "part" for "subchapter".

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 99-335, §404(c), inserted provision defining "creditable service" as service creditable under part I or II of this subchapter.

<sup>1</sup> See Amendment of Section note below.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1988 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 100-238 effective 90 days after Jan. 8, 1988, see section 261(a) of Pub. L. 100-238, set out as a note under section 4054 of this title.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-335 effective Jan. 1, 1987, see section 702(a) of Pub. L. 99-335, set out as an Effective Date note under section 8401 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4009, 4010, 4048, 4049, 4050, 4056, 4060, 4063, 4065, 4071j of this title.

**§ 4056. Creditable service****(a) Applicability of civil service provisions**

(1) <sup>1</sup>Except as otherwise specified by law, all periods of civilian and military and naval service, and all other periods through the date of final separation of a participant from the Service that the Secretary of State determines would be creditable toward retirement under the Civil Service Retirement and Disability System (as determined in accordance with section 8332 of title 5), shall be creditable for purposes of this part. Conversely, any such service performed after December 31, 1976, that would not be creditable under specified conditions under section 8332 of title 5, shall be excluded under this part under the same conditions.

(2) The service of an individual who first becomes a participant on or after October 17, 1983, without any credit under this section for civilian service performed prior to October 1, 1982, shall include credit for:

(A) each period of military or naval service performed before January 1, 1957, and

(B) each period of military or naval service performed after December 31, 1956, and before the separation on which the entitlement to annuity under this part is based, only if a deposit (with interest if any is required) is made with respect to that period, as provided in section 4045(e) of this title.

(3) The service of an individual who first became a participant on or after October 17, 1983, with credit under this section for civilian service performed prior to October 1982, shall include credit for each period of military or naval service performed before the date of the separation on which the entitlement to an annuity under this part is based, subject, in the case of military or naval service performed after December 1956, to subsection (j) of this section.

(4) The service of an individual who first became a participant before October 17, 1983, shall include credit for each period of military or naval service performed before the date of the separation on which the entitlement to an annuity under this part is based, subject, in the case of military or naval service performed after December 1976, to subsection (j) of this section.

**(b) Unused sick leave credit**

In computing any annuity under this part, the total service of a participant who retires on an immediate annuity or who dies leaving a survivor or survivors entitled to annuity includes

(without regard to the 35-year limitation imposed by section 4046(a) of this title) the days of unused sick leave to the credit of the participant, except that these days shall not be counted in determining average basic salary or annuity eligibility under this part. A contribution to the Fund shall not be required from a participant for this service credit.

**(c) Service with other Government agency when on approved leave without pay; arrangement for payment of retirement deductions and agency contributions; special contribution**

(1) A participant who enters on approved leave without pay to serve as a full-time officer or employee of an organization composed primarily of Government employees may, within 60 days after entering on that leave without pay, file with the employing agency an election to receive full retirement credit for such periods of leave without pay and arrange to pay concurrently into the Fund through the employing agency, amounts equal to the retirement deductions and agency contributions on the Foreign Service salary rate that would be applicable if the participant were in a pay status. If the election and all payments provided by this subsection are not made for the periods of such leave without pay occurring after November 7, 1976, the participant may not receive any credit for such periods of leave without pay occurring after such date.

(2) A participant may make a special contribution for any period or periods of approved leave without pay while serving before November 7, 1976, as a full-time officer or employee of an organization composed primarily of Government employees. Any such contribution shall be based upon the suspended Foreign Service salary rate and shall be computed in accordance with section 4045 of this title. A participant who makes such contributions shall be allowed full retirement credit for the period or periods of leave without pay. If this contribution is not made, up to 6 months' retirement credit shall be allowed for such periods of leave without pay each calendar year.

**(d) Special contribution in repayment of refund of retirement contributions**

<sup>2</sup>A participant who has received a refund of retirement contributions (which has not been repaid) under this or any other retirement system for Government employees covering service which may be creditable may make a special contribution for such service under section 4045 of this title. Credit may not be allowed for service covered by the refund unless the special contribution is made.

**(e) Civilian service under other Government retirement system**

No credit in annuity computation shall be allowed for any period of civilian service for which a participant made retirement contributions to another retirement system for Government employees unless—

(1) the right to any annuity under the other system which is based on such service is waived, and

<sup>1</sup> See Amendment of Section note below.

<sup>2</sup> See Amendment of Section note below.

(2) a special contribution is made under section 4045 of this title covering such service.

**(f) Service in military during period of war or national emergency**

A participant who during a period of war, or national emergency proclaimed by the President or declared by the Congress, leaves the Service to enter the military service is deemed, for the purpose of this part, as not separated from the Service unless the participant applies for and receives a lump-sum payment under section 4055 of this title. However, the participant is deemed to be separated from the Service after the expiration of 5 years of such military service.

**(g) Recomputation of annuity for participants of Japanese ancestry interned during World War II**

(1) An annuity or survivor annuity based on the service of a participant of Japanese ancestry who would be eligible under section 8332(l) of title 5, for credit for civilian service for periods of internment during World War II shall, upon application to the Secretary of State, be recomputed to give credit for that service. Any such recomputation of an annuity shall apply with respect to months beginning more than 30 days after the date on which application for such recomputation is received by the Secretary of State.

(2) The Secretary of State shall take such action as may be necessary and appropriate to inform individuals entitled to have any service credited or annuity recomputed under this subsection of their entitlement to such credit or recomputation.

(3) The Secretary of State shall, on request, assist any individual referred to in paragraph (1) in obtaining from any agency or other Government establishment information necessary to verify the entitlement of the individual to have any service credited or any annuity recomputed under this subsection.

(4) Any agency or other Government establishment shall, upon request, furnish to the Secretary of State any information it possesses with respect to the internment or other detention, as described in section 8332(l) of title 5, of any participant.

**(h) Service as employees of Member or office of Congress while on approved leave without pay**

A participant who, while on approved leave without pay, serves as a full-time paid employee of a Member or office of the Congress shall continue to make contributions to the Fund based upon the Foreign Service salary rate that would be in effect if the participant were in a pay status. The participant's employing office in the Congress shall make a matching contribution (from the appropriation or fund which is used for payment of the salary of the participant) to the Treasury of the United States to the credit of the Fund. All periods of service for which full contributions to the Fund are made under this subsection shall be counted as creditable service for purposes of this part and shall not, unless all retirement credit is transferred, be counted as creditable service under any other Government retirement system.

**(i) Former spouses**

(1) Service of a participant shall be considered creditable service for purposes of applying provisions of this part relating to former spouses if such service would be creditable—

(A) under subsection (c)(1) or (2) of this section but for the fact an election was not made under subsection (c)(1) of this section or a special contribution was not made under subsection (c)(2) of this section, and

(B) under subsection (d) of this section but for the fact that a refund of contributions has not been repaid unless the former spouse received under this part a portion of the lump sum (or a spousal agreement or court order provided otherwise).

(2) A former spouse shall not be considered as married to a participant for periods assumed to be creditable service under section 4048(a) of this title or section 4049(e) of this title.

**(j) Redetermination of credit for military and naval service**

(1) Except as otherwise provided by statute or Executive Order, section 8332(j) of title 5, relating to redetermination of credit for military and naval service, shall be applied to annuities payable under this part. The Secretary of State shall redetermine service, and may request and obtain information from the Secretary of Health and Human Services, as the Office of Personnel Management is directed or authorized to do in section 8332(j).

(2) Section 8332(j) of title 5 shall not apply with respect to:

(A) the service of any individual who first became a participant on or after October 17, 1983, without any credit under this section for civilian service performed prior to October 1982; or

(B) any military or naval service performed prior to 1957 by an individual who first became a participant on or after October 17, 1983, with credit under this section for civilian service performed prior to October 1982, or any period of military or naval service performed after 1956 with respect to which the participant has made a contribution (with interest if any is required) under section 4045(e) of this title; or

(C) any military or naval service performed prior to 1977 by any individual who first became a participant before October 17, 1983, or any period of military or naval service performed after 1976 with respect to which the participant has made a contribution (with interest if any is required) under section 4045(e) of this title.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §816, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2118; Ex. Ord. No. 12446, §4(b), (c), Oct. 17, 1983, 48 F.R. 48444, 48445; Pub. L. 99-335, title IV, §402(a)(2), June 6, 1986, 100 Stat. 609; Pub. L. 101-246, title I, §145(a), Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 36.)

AMENDMENT OF SECTION

*Section 5 of Ex. Ord. No. 12446, Oct. 17, 1983, 48 F.R. 48445, set out as a note under section 4067 of this title, provided that:*

*“(a) Section 816(a) of the Act (22 U.S.C. 4056(a)) is deemed to be further amended so that the provisions of section 8332(j) of Title 5 of the United States*

Code, relating to credit for military service, shall not apply with respect to any individual who is entitled to an annuity under such Act [this chapter] on or before the date of approval of this Order [Oct. 17, 1983], or who is entitled to an annuity based on a separation from service occurring on or before such date.

“(b) Subject to subsection (c), in any case in which an individual described in subsection (a) is also entitled to old-age or survivors insurance benefits under section 202 of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 402] (or would be entitled to such benefits upon filing application therefor), the amount of the annuity to which such individual is entitled under chapter 8 of the Act [this subchapter] (after taking into account subsection (a)) which is payable for any month shall be reduced by an amount determined by multiplying the amount of such old-age or survivors insurance benefit for the determination month by a fraction—

“(1) the numerator of which is the total of the wages (within the meaning of section 209 of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 409]) for service referred to in section 210(1) of such Act [42 U.S.C. 410] (relating to service in the uniformed services) and deemed additional wages (within the meaning of section 229 of such Act [42 U.S.C. 429]) of such individual credited for years after 1956 and before the calendar year in which the determination month occurs, up to the contribution and benefit base determined under section 230 of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 430] (or other applicable maximum annual amount referred to in section 215(e)(1) of such Act [42 U.S.C. 415(e)(1)]) for each such year, and

“(2) the denominator of which is the total of all wages deemed additional wages described in paragraph (1) of this subsection plus all other wages (within the meaning of section 209 of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 409]) and all self-employment income (within the meaning of section 211(b) of such Act [42 U.S.C. 411(b)]) of such individual credited for years after 1936 and before the calendar year in which the determination month occurs, up to the contribution and benefit base (or such other amount referred to in such section 215(e)(1) of such Act [42 U.S.C. 415(e)(1)]) for each such year.

“(c) Subsection (b) shall not reduce the annuity of any individual below the amount of the annuity which would be payable under chapter 8 of the Act [this subchapter] to the individual for the determination month if section 8332(j) of Title 5 of the United States Code applied to the individual for such month.

“(d) For purposes of this section, the term ‘determination month’ means—

“(1) the first month the individual described in subsection (a) is entitled to old-age or survivors insurance benefits under section 202 of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 402] (or would be entitled to such benefits upon filing application therefor); or

“(2) the first day of the month following the month in which this Order is issued [Oct. 1983] in the case of any individual so entitled to such benefits for such month.

“(e) The preceding provisions of this section shall take effect with respect to any annuity payment payable under chapter 8 of the Act [this subchapter]

for calendar months beginning after the date of this Order [Oct. 17, 1983].

“(f) The Secretary of Health and Human Services shall furnish such information to the Secretary of State as may be necessary to carry out the preceding provisions of this section.”

Section 1(b) and (c) of Ex. Ord. No. 12446 provided that subsection (d) of this section, applicable (i) to contributions for civilian service performed on or after the first day of Nov. 1983, (ii) to contributions for prior refunds to participants for which application is received by the employing agency on and after such first day of Nov. 1983, and (iii) to excess contributions under section 4055(h) of this title and voluntary contributions under section 4065(a) of this title from the first day of Nov. 1983, is deemed to be amended to exclude from the computation of creditable civilian service under subsec. (a) of this section any period of civilian service for which retirement deductions or contributions have not been made under section 4045(d) of this title unless—

(1) the participant makes a contribution for such period as provided in such section 4045(d) of this title; or

(2) no contribution is required for such service as provided under section 4045(f) of this title as deemed to be amended by this Order, or under any other statute.

#### AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (i)(2). Pub. L. 101-246 amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) read as follows: “A former spouse shall not be considered as married to a participant—

“(A) for periods assumed to be creditable service under section 4048(a) of this title or section 4049(e) of this title, or

“(B) for any extra period of creditable service provided under section 4057 of this title for service of a participant at an unhealthful post unless the former spouse resided with the participant at that post during that period.”

1986—Subsecs. (a), (b), (f), (h), (i)(1), (j)(1). Pub. L. 99-335 substituted “part” for “subchapter” wherever appearing.

1983—Subsec. (a). Ex. Ord. No. 12446, §4(b), designated existing provisions as par. (1) and added pars. (2) to (4). Subsec. (j). Ex. Ord. No. 12446, §4(c), added subsec. (j).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-335 effective Jan. 1, 1987, see section 702(a) of Pub. L. 99-335, set out as an Effective Date note under section 8401 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1983 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 4 of Ex. Ord. No. 12446 effective Oct. 17, 1983, see section 4(e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12446, set out under section 4067 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2504, 4044, 4045, 4046, 4055, 4063 of this title.

#### § 4057. Extra credit for service at unhealthful posts

The Secretary of State may from time to time establish a list of places which by reason of climatic or other extreme conditions are to be classed as unhealthful posts. Each year of duty at such posts, inclusive of regular leaves of ab-

sence, shall be counted as one and a half years in computing the length of the service of a participant for the purpose of retirement, fractional months being considered as full months in computing such service. No such extra credit for service at such unhealthful posts shall be credited to any participant who is paid a differential under section 5925 or 5928 of title 5 for such service. Such extra credit may not be used to determine the eligibility of a person to qualify as a former spouse under this part, or to compute the pro rata share under section 4044(10) of this title. No extra credit for service at unhealthful posts may be given under this section for any service as part of a tour of duty, or extension thereof, beginning on or after February 16, 1990.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 817, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2120; Pub. L. 101-246, title I, § 145(b), Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 37.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1990—Pub. L. 101-246 inserted provisions at end that extra credit not be used to determine eligibility to qualify as former spouse under this part or to compute the pro rata share under section 4044(10) of this title and that no extra credit for service at unhealthful posts be given under this section for any service as part of a tour of duty, or extension thereof, beginning on or after Feb. 16, 1990.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4046, 4071a of this title.

### § 4058. Estimate of appropriations needed

The Secretary of the Treasury shall prepare the estimates of the annual appropriations required to be made to the Fund, and shall make actuarial valuations of the System at intervals of not more than five years. The Secretary of State may expend from money to the credit of the Fund an amount not exceeding \$5,000 per year for the incidental expenses necessary in administering the provisions of this part, including actuarial advice.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 818, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2120; Pub. L. 99-335, title IV, § 402(a)(2), June 6, 1986, 100 Stat. 609.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1986—Pub. L. 99-335 substituted “part” for “subchapter”.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-335 effective Jan. 1, 1987, see section 702(a) of Pub. L. 99-335, set out as an Effective Date note under section 8401 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

### § 4059. Investment of Fund

The Secretary of the Treasury shall invest from time to time in interest-bearing securities of the United States such portions of the Fund as in the judgment of the Secretary of the Treasury may not be immediately required for the payment of annuities, cash benefits, refunds, and allowances. The income derived from such investments shall constitute a part of the Fund.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 819, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2120.)

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4071a of this title.

### § 4060. Assignment and attachment of moneys

#### (a) Annuities and severance pay benefits

(1) An individual entitled to an annuity from the Fund may make allotments or assignments of amounts from such annuity for such purposes as the Secretary of State in his or her sole discretion considers appropriate.

(2) Notwithstanding section 3727 of title 31 or any other law, a member of the Service who is entitled to receive benefits under section 4009(b)(1) of this title may assign to any person the whole or any part of those benefits. Any such assignment shall be on a form approved by the Secretary of the Treasury and a copy of such assignment form shall be deposited with the Secretary of the Treasury by the member executing the assignment.

#### (b) Participants or annuitants having former spouses

(1)(A) In the case of any participant or annuitant who has a former spouse who is covered by a court order or who is a party to a spousal agreement—

(i) any right of the former spouse to any annuity under section 4054(a) of this title in connection with any retirement or disability annuity of the participant, and the amount of any such annuity;

(ii) any right of the former spouse to a survivor annuity under section 4054(b) or (c) of this title, and the amount of any such annuity; and

(iii) any right of the former spouse to any payment of a lump-sum credit under section 4055(a) or (b) of this title;

shall be determined in accordance with that spousal agreement or court order, if and to the extent expressly provided for in the terms of that spousal agreement or court order.

(B) This paragraph shall not apply in the case of any spousal agreement or court order which, as determined by the Secretary of State—

(i) would provide for a survivor annuity for a spouse or any former spouse of a participant with respect to which there has not been an annuity reduction (or a salary reduction or payment under section 4054(c)(3) of this title); or

(ii) is otherwise inconsistent with the requirements of this part.

(2) Except with respect to obligations between participants and former spouses, payments under this part which would otherwise be made to a participant or annuitant based upon his or her service shall be paid (in whole or in part) by the Secretary of State to another individual to the extent expressly provided for in the terms of any order or any court decree of legal separation, or the terms of any court order or court-approved property settlement agreement incident to any court decree of legal separation.

(3) Paragraphs (1) and (2) shall apply only to payments made under this part for periods beginning after the date of receipt by the Secretary of State of written notice of such decree,

order, or agreement, and such additional information and such documentation as the Secretary of State may require.

(4) Any payment under this subsection to an individual bars recovery by any other individual.

(5) The 10-year requirement of section 4044(b)(6) of this title, or any other provision of this part, shall not be construed to affect the rights any spouse or individual formerly married to a participant or annuitant may have, under any law or rule of law of any State or the District of Columbia, with respect to an annuity of a participant or annuitant under this part.

**(c) Applicability of other provisions of law or remedies**

None of the moneys mentioned in this part shall be assignable either in law or equity, except under subsection (a) or (b) of this section, or subject to execution, levy, attachment, garnishment, or other legal process, except as otherwise may be provided by Federal law.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 820, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2120; Pub. L. 99-335, title IV, § 402(a)(2), June 6, 1986, 100 Stat. 609.)

CODIFICATION

In subsec. (a)(2), “section 3727 of title 31” substituted for “section 3477 of the Revised Statutes of the United States (31 U.S.C. 203)” on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, § 4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

AMENDMENTS

1986—Subsecs. (b)(1)(B)(ii), (2), (3), (5), (c). Pub. L. 99-335 substituted “this part” for “this subchapter” wherever appearing.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-335 effective Jan. 1, 1987, see section 702(a) of Pub. L. 99-335, set out as an Effective Date note under section 8401 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4046, 4054, 4055, 4064, 4159 of this title.

**§ 4061. Payments for future benefits**

**(a) Statutes deemed to authorize appropriations to Fund to finance unfunded liability**

Any statute which authorizes—

(1) new or liberalized benefits payable from the Fund under this part, including annuity increases other than under section 4065 of this title;

(2) extension of the benefits of the System to new groups of employees; or

(3) increases in salary on which benefits are computed;

is deemed to authorize appropriations to the Fund to finance the unfunded liability created by that statute, in 30 equal annual installments with interest computed at the rate used in the then most recent valuation of the System and with the first payment thereof due as of the end of the fiscal year in which each new or liberalized benefit, extension of benefits, or increase in salary is effective.

**(b) Authorization of appropriations to Fund**

There is authorized to be appropriated to the Fund for each fiscal year an amount equal to

the amount of the Foreign Service normal cost for that year which is not met by contributions to the Fund under section 4045(a) of this title.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 821, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2121; Pub. L. 99-335, title IV, § 402(a)(3), June 6, 1986, 100 Stat. 609.)

AMENDMENTS

1986—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 99-335 inserted “under this part” after “payable from the Fund”.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-335 effective Jan. 1, 1987, see section 702(a) of Pub. L. 99-335, set out as an Effective Date note under section 8401 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4044, 4062 of this title.

**§ 4062. Unfunded liability obligations**

**(a) Notice of interest and military service credit**

At the end of each fiscal year, the Secretary of State shall notify the Secretary of the Treasury of the amount equivalent to—

(1) interest on the unfunded liability computed for that year at the interest rate used in the then most recent valuation of the System, and

(2) that portion of disbursement for annuities for that year which the Secretary of State estimates is attributable to credit allowed for military and naval service, less an amount determined by the Secretary of State to be appropriate to reflect the value of the deposits made to the credit of the Fund under section 4045(e) of this title.

**(b) Credit to Fund**

Before closing the accounts for each fiscal year, the Secretary of the Treasury shall credit such amounts to the Fund, as a Government contribution, out of any money in the Treasury of the United States not otherwise appropriated.

**(c) Reports to Congress**

Requests for appropriations to the Fund under section 4061(b) of this title shall include reports to the Congress on the sums credited to the Fund under this section.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 822, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2121; Ex. Ord. No. 12446, § 4(d), Oct. 17, 1983, 48 F.R. 48445.)

AMENDMENTS

1983—Subsec. (a)(2). Ex. Ord. No. 12446 inserted “, less an amount determined by the Secretary of State to be appropriate to reflect the value of the deposits made to the credit of the Fund under section 4045(e) of this title”.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1983 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Ex. Ord. No. 12446 effective Oct. 17, 1983, see section 4(e) of Ex. Ord. No. 12446, set out under section 4067 of this title.

**§ 4063. Annuity adjustment for recall service**

**(a) Full salary in lieu of annuity; contributions to Fund; resumption of annuity with cost-of-living adjustment**

Any annuitant recalled to duty in the Service under section 3948(a) of this title shall, while so



serving, be entitled in lieu of annuity to the full salary of the class in which serving. During such service the recalled annuitant shall make contributions to the Fund in accordance with section 4045 of this title. On the day following termination of the recall service, the former annuity shall be resumed, adjusted by any cost-of-living increases under section 4065 of this title that became effective during the recall period.

**(b) Refund of contributions to Fund; election for supplemental annuity or determination of annuity anew; prior service counted as recall service**

If the recall service lasts less than one year, the contributions of the annuitant to the Fund during recall service shall be refunded in accordance with section 4055 of this title. If the recall service lasts more than one year, the annuitant may, in lieu of such refund, elect a supplemental annuity computed under section 4046 of this title on the basis of service credit and average salary earned during the recall period irrespective of the number of years of service credit previously earned. If the recall service continues for at least 5 years, the annuitant may elect to have his or her annuity determined anew under section 4046 of this title in lieu of any other benefits under this section. Any annuitant who is recalled under section 3948 of this title may upon written application count as recall service any prior service that is creditable under section 4056 of this title that was performed after the separation upon which his or her annuity is based.

**(c) Annuitant subject to Foreign Service Pension System**

If an annuitant becomes subject to part II of this subchapter by reason of recall service—

- (1) subsections (a) and (b) of this section shall not apply to such annuitant; and
- (2) section 4064 of this title shall apply to the recall service as if such service were reemployment.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 823, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2122; Pub. L. 99-335, title IV, § 409, June 6, 1986, 100 Stat. 612.)

AMENDMENTS

1986—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 99-335 added subsec. (c).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-335 effective Jan. 1, 1987, see section 702(a) of Pub. L. 99-335, set out as an Effective Date note under section 8401 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4046, 4049, 4055 of this title.

**§ 4064. Reemployment**

**(a) Termination of annuity; coverage under same retirement system or another contributory retirement system; rights and benefits**

<sup>1</sup>(1)(A) Except in the case of an annuitant who makes an election under subsection (b) of this section, if any former participant, who has re-

tired and is receiving an annuity under this part or part II of this subchapter, becomes employed in an appointive or elective position in the Government, payment of any annuity under either part to the annuitant shall terminate effective on the date of the employment and the reemployment service shall be covered service under the rules of the system under which the appointment is made.

(B) If the annuity of an individual is terminated under subparagraph (A) and that individual becomes covered under the same retirement system from which that annuity is terminated, that individual shall be entitled to a redetermination of rights under that system upon termination of the employment.

(C) If the annuity is terminated and the individual becomes covered under another contributory retirement system for Government employees pursuant to paragraph (A), the individual shall be entitled to benefits under the rules of that system. In addition, the individual shall be entitled to a resumption of any annuity terminated by reason of the employment.

**(b) Part-time, intermittent, or temporary employment; election to continue receiving annuity; reduction in amount of annuity; resumption of full annuity**

(1) A participant who is entitled to an annuity under this part or part II of this subchapter and becomes employed in an appointive or elective position in the Government on a part-time, intermittent, or temporary basis may elect to continue to receive either or both annuities as provided in this subsection.

(2) The total annuity payable under this subchapter to an annuitant making an election under paragraph (1) shall be reduced during the part-time, intermittent, or temporary employment referred to in paragraph (1) as necessary to meet the requirements of paragraph (3).

(3)(A) The sum of—

(i) the total annuity payable under this subchapter to an annuitant making an election under paragraph (1), and

(ii) the annual rate of pay payable to the annuitant during the part-time, intermittent, or temporary employment referred to in paragraph (1),

may not exceed, in any calendar year, the amount described in subparagraph (B).

(B) The amount referred to in subparagraph (A) is the greater of—

(i) the highest annual rate of basic pay which is payable during such year for full-time employment in the position in which the annuitant is employed, or

(ii) the basic pay the annuitant was entitled to receive under this chapter on the date of retirement from the Service.

(C) For purposes of this section, the term “annuity” means the annuity earned by the reemployed member based on his or her service irrespective of whether or not the amount payable is reduced by the amount of an annuity payable under section 4054 or 4060(b) of this title.

(4) Upon termination of the part-time, intermittent, or temporary employment referred to in paragraph (1), payment of the full annuity of

<sup>1</sup> So in original. No par. (2) has been enacted.

an annuitant who has made an election under paragraph (1) of this subsection shall resume.

**(c) Amount of annuity on resumption; amount resulting from redetermination of rights**

The amount of annuity which has been terminated or reduced under this section by reason of the reemployment of the annuitant and is resumed under this section shall be the amount of the annuity which would have been payable if the annuitant had not accepted the reemployment. The amount of an annuity resulting from a redetermination of rights pursuant to subsection (a) of this section shall not be less than the amount of an annuity resumed under the previous sentence.

**(d) Annuity rights to be determined under this section**

The annuity rights of any participant who is reemployed in the Government shall be determined under this section instead of section 8468 of title 5.

**(e) Notice; direct payment of salary**

When any such retired participant is reemployed, the employer shall send a notice of such reemployment to the Secretary of State, together with all pertinent information relating to such employment, and shall pay directly to such participant the salary of the position in which he or she is serving.

**(f) Recovery of overpayment**

In the event of any overpayment under this section, such overpayment shall be recovered by withholding the amount involved from the salary payable to such reemployed participant or from any other moneys, including annuity payments, payable under this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 824, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2122; Pub. L. 99-335, title IV, §§ 402(a)(2), 410, June 6, 1986, 100 Stat. 609, 613; Pub. L. 99-556, title IV, § 403, Oct. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 3136.)

AMENDMENTS

1986—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99-335, § 410, amended subsec. (a) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (a) read as follows: “Notwithstanding any other law, any member of the Service who has retired and is receiving an annuity under this part, and who is reemployed in the Government service in any part-time or full-time appointive position, shall be entitled to receive the salary of the position in which he or she is serving plus so much of the annuity payable under this part which when combined with such salary does not exceed during any calendar year the basic salary the member was entitled to receive under this chapter on the date of retirement from the Service. Any such reemployed member of the Service who receives salary during any calendar year in excess of the maximum amount which he or she may be entitled to receive under this subsection shall be entitled to such salary in lieu of benefits under this part.”

Pub. L. 99-335, § 402(a)(2), substituted “this part” for “this subchapter” in three places.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 99-335, § 410, amended subsec. (b) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (b) read as follows: “When any such retired member of the Service is reemployed, the employer shall send a notice of such reemployment to the Secretary of State, together with all pertinent information relating to such employment, and shall pay directly to such member the salary of the position in which he or she is serving.”

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 99-556, § 403, amended par. (3) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (3) read as follows: “The sum of—

“(A) the total annuity payable under this subchapter to an annuitant making an election under paragraph (1), and

“(B) the annual rate of pay payable to the annuitant during the part-time, intermittent, or temporary employment referred to in paragraph (1), may not exceed, in any calendar year, the highest annual rate of pay which is payable during such year for full-time employment in the position in which the annuitant is employed.”

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 99-335, § 410, amended subsec. (c) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (c) read as follows: “In the event of any overpayment under this section, such overpayment shall be recovered by withholding the amount involved from the salary payable to such reemployed member of the Service or from any other moneys, including annuity payments, payable under this part.”

Pub. L. 99-335, § 402(a)(2), substituted “this part” for “this subchapter”.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENTS

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-556 effective Jan. 1, 1987, and applicable to any individual in a reemployed status on or after that date, see section 408 of Pub. L. 99-556, set out as a note under section 4046 of this title.

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-335 effective Jan. 1, 1987, see section 702(a) of Pub. L. 99-335, set out as an Effective Date note under section 8401 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2512, 4054, 4063 of this title.

**§ 4065. Voluntary contribution account**

**(a) Composition; election and return**

<sup>1</sup>The voluntary contribution account shall be the sum of unrefunded amounts voluntarily contributed prior to February 15, 1981, by any participant or former participant under any prior law authorizing such contributions to the Fund, plus interest compounded at the rate of 3 percent per year to the date of separation from the Service or (in case of participant or former participant separated with entitlement to a deferred annuity) to the date the voluntary contribution account is claimed, the commencing date fixed for the deferred annuity, or the date of death, whichever is earlier. Effective on the date the participant becomes eligible for an annuity or a deferred annuity and at the election of the participant, his or her account shall be—

- (1) returned in a lump sum;
- (2) used to purchase an additional life annuity;
- (3) used to purchase an additional life annuity for the participant and to provide for a cash payment on his or her death to a beneficiary whose name shall be notified in writing to the Secretary of State by the participant; or
- (4) used to purchase an additional life annuity for the participant and a life annuity commencing on his or her death payable to a beneficiary whose name shall be notified in writing to the Secretary of State by the participant, with a guaranteed return to the beneficiary or his or her legal representative of an amount equal to the cash payment referred to in paragraph (3).

<sup>1</sup> See Amendment of Section note below.

**(b) Computation of benefits**

The benefits provided by subsection (a) (2), (3), or (4) of this section shall be actuarially equivalent in value to the payment provided for by subsection (a)(1) of this section and shall be calculated upon such tables of mortality as may be from time to time prescribed for this purpose by the Secretary of the Treasury.

**(c) Lump-sum payment; time; order of precedence**

A voluntary contribution account shall be paid in a lump sum following receipt of an application therefor from a present or former participant if application is filed prior to payment of any additional annuity. If not sooner paid, the account shall be paid at such time as the participant separates from the Service for any reason without entitlement to an annuity or a deferred annuity or at such time as a former participant dies or withdraws compulsory contributions from the Fund. In case of death, the account shall be paid in the order of precedence specified in section 4055(f) of this title.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 825, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2122.)

## AMENDMENT OF SECTION

*Section 1(a) and (c) of Ex. Ord. No. 12446, Oct. 17, 1983, 48 F.R. 48443, set out as a note under section 4067 of this title, provided that the first sentence of subsection (a) of this section, applicable (i) to contributions for civilian service performed on or after the first day of Nov. 1983, (ii) to contributions for prior refunds to participants for which application is received by the employing agency on and after such first day of Nov. 1983, and (iii) to excess contributions under section 4055(h) of this title and voluntary contributions under section 4065(a) of this title from the first day of Nov. 1983, is deemed to be amended to provide that interest shall be compounded at the annual rate of 3 percent per annum through December 31, 1984, and thereafter at a rate equal to the overall average yield to the Fund during the preceding fiscal year from all obligations purchased by the Secretary of the Treasury during such fiscal year under section 4059 of this title, as determined by the Secretary of the Treasury.*

## CODIFICATION

In subsec. (a), "February 15, 1981" substituted for "the effective date of this Act" pursuant to section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4061, 4063 of this title.

**§ 4066. Cost-of-living adjustment of annuities****(a) Effective date**

A cost-of-living annuity increase shall become effective under this section on the effective date of each such increase under section 8340(b) of title 5. Each such increase shall be applied to each annuity payable from the Fund under this part which has a commencing date not later than the effective date of the increase.

**(b) Applicability of increases under other provisions of law**

Each annuity increase under this section shall be identical to the corresponding percentage increase under section 8340(b) of title 5.

**(c) Eligibility for increases**

Eligibility for an annuity increase under this section shall be governed by the commencing date of each annuity payable from the Fund under this part as of the effective date of an increase except as follows:

(1) The first increase (if any) made under this section to an annuity which is payable from the Fund to a participant or to the surviving spouse or former spouse of a deceased participant who died in service or a deceased annuitant whose annuity was not increased under this section, shall be equal to the product (adjusted to the nearest  $\frac{1}{10}$  of 1 percent) of—

(A)  $\frac{1}{12}$  of the applicable percent change computed under subsection (b) of this section, multiplied by

(B) the number of months (counting any portion of a month as a month)—

(i) for which the annuity was payable from the Fund before the effective date of the increase, or

(ii) in the case of a surviving spouse or former spouse of a deceased annuitant whose annuity has not been so increased, since the annuity was first payable to the deceased annuitant.

(2) Effective from its commencing date, an annuity payable from the Fund under this part to the survivor of an annuitant, except a child entitled to an annuity under section 4046(c) of this title or section 4049(c) or (d) of this title, shall be increased by the total percentage increase the annuitant was receiving under this section at death.

(3) For purposes of computing or recomputing an annuity to a child under section 4046(c) or (d) of this title or section 4049(c) or (d) of this title, the items \$900, \$1,080, \$2,700, and \$3,240 appearing in section 4046(c) of this title shall be increased by the total percentage increases by which corresponding amounts are being increased under section 8340 of title 5 on the date the annuity of the child becomes effective.

**(d) Exclusion of additional annuity purchased after retirement by voluntary contribution**

No increase in annuity provided by this section shall be computed on any additional annuity purchased at retirement by voluntary contributions.

**(e) Rounding off of amount; minimum increases**

The monthly installment of annuity after adjustment under this section shall be rounded to the next lowest dollar, except such installment shall after adjustment reflect an increase of at least \$1.

**(f) Rate of increase for surviving spouses of annuitants electing reduced annuity**

Effective from its commencing date, there shall be an increase of 10 percent in the annuity of each surviving spouse whose entitlement to

annuity resulted from the death of an annuitant who, prior to October 1, 1976, elected a reduced annuity in order to provide a spouse's survivor annuity.

**(g) Maximum annuity**

(1) An annuity shall not be increased by reason of any adjustment under this section to an amount which exceeds the greater of—

(A) the maximum pay rate payable for class FS-1 under section 3963 of this title, 30 days before the effective date of the adjustment under this section; or

(B) the final pay (or average pay, if higher) of the former participant with respect to whom the annuity is paid, increased by the overall annual average percentage adjustments (compounded) in rates of pay of the Foreign Service Schedule under such section 3963 of this title during the period—

(i) beginning on the date the annuity commenced (or, in the case of a survivor of the retired participant, the date the participant's annuity commenced), and

(ii) ending on the effective date of the adjustment under this section.

(2) For the purposes of paragraph (1) of this subsection, "pay" means the rate of salary or basic pay as payable under any provision of law, including any provision of law limiting the expenditure of appropriated funds.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 826, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2123; Ex. Ord. No. 12289, § 1, Feb. 14, 1981, 46 F.R. 12693; Ex. Ord. No. 12446, §§ 2(a), 6(a), Oct. 17, 1983, 48 F.R. 48443, 48446; Pub. L. 99-335, title IV, § 402(a)(3), June 6, 1986, 100 Stat. 609; Pub. L. 100-238, title II, § 219, Jan. 8, 1988, 101 Stat. 1775.)

AMENDMENTS

1988—Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 100-238 amended par. (1) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (1) read as follows: "The first increase (if any) made under this section to an annuity which is payable from the Fund under this part to a participant or to the surviving spouse of a deceased participant who dies in service shall be equal to the product (adjusted to the nearest  $\frac{1}{10}$  of 1 percent) of—

"(a)  $\frac{1}{2}$  of the applicable percent change determined under subsection (b) of this section, multiplied by

"(b) the number of full months for which the annuity was payable from the Fund under this part before the effective date of the increase (counting any portion of a month as a full month).

In the administration of this paragraph, the number of days of unused sick leave to the credit of a participant or deceased participant on the effective date of the then last preceding general annuity increase under this section shall be deemed to be equal to the number of days of unused sick leave to his or her credit on the day of separation from the Service."

1986—Subsecs. (a), (c). Pub. L. 99-335 inserted "under this part" after "payable from the Fund" wherever appearing.

1983—Subsec. (e). Ex. Ord. No. 12446, § 2(a), substituted "rounded to the next lowest" for "fixed at the nearest".

Subsec. (g). Ex. Ord. No. 12446, § 6(a), added subsec. (g).

1981—Subsec. (c)(1). Ex. Ord. No. 12289 amended first sentence of par. (1) generally. Prior to amendment, first sentence read as follows: "An annuity (except a deferred annuity) payable from the Fund to a participant who retires and receives an immediate annuity, or to a surviving spouse or former spouse of a deceased

participant who dies in service or who dies after being separated with benefits under section 4009(b)(2) of this title, which has a commencing date after the effective date of the then last preceding general annuity increase under this section shall not be less than the annuity which would have been payable if the commencing date of such annuity had been the effective date of such last preceding increase."

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1988 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 100-238 effective 90 days after Jan. 8, 1988, see section 261(a) of Pub. L. 100-238, set out as a note under section 4054 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-335 effective Jan. 1, 1987, see section 702(a) of Pub. L. 99-335, set out as an Effective Date note under section 8401 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1983 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 2(a) Ex. Ord. No. 12446 effective with respect to any adjustment or redetermination of any annuity made on or after Oct. 17, 1983, see section 2(b) of Ex. Ord. No. 12446, set out under section 4067 of this title.

Amendment by section 6 of Ex. Ord. No. 12446 applicable to any adjustment occurring on or after Apr. 1, 1983 under this section to any annuity payable from the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability Fund, whether such annuity has a commencing date before, on, or after Oct. 17, 1983, but shall not cause any annuity to be reduced below the rate that is payable on Oct. 17, 1983, see section 6(b) of Ex. Ord. No. 12446, set out under section 4067 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1981 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Ex. Ord. No. 12289 effective Feb. 15, 1981, see section 3 of Ex. Ord. No. 12289, set out under section 4067 of this title.

DELAY IN COST-OF-LIVING ADJUSTMENTS DURING FISCAL YEARS 1994, 1995, AND 1996

Any cost-of-living increase scheduled to take effect during fiscal year 1994, 1995, or 1996 under this section delayed until first day of third calendar month after date such increase would otherwise take effect, see section 11001 of Pub. L. 103-66, set out as a note under section 8340 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4046, 4054 of this title.

**§ 4067. Compatibility between retirement systems**

**(a) Civil Service and Foreign Service Retirement Systems**

In order to maintain existing conformity between the Civil Service Retirement and Disability System under subchapter III of chapter 83 of title 5, and the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System, whenever a law of general applicability is enacted which—

(1) affects the treatment of current or former participants, annuitants, or survivors under the Civil Service Retirement and Disability System; and

(2) affects treatment which, immediately prior to the enactment of such law, was substantially identical to the treatment accorded to participants, former participants, annuitants, or survivors under the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System;

such law shall be extended in accordance with subsection (b) of this section to the Foreign

Service Retirement and Disability System so that it applies in like manner with respect to participants, former participants, annuitants, or survivors under that System.

**(b) Regulations to implement prescribed by Executive order**

The President shall by Executive order prescribe regulations to implement this section and may make such extension retroactive to a date no earlier than the effective date of the provision of law applicable to the Civil Service Retirement and Disability System. Any provision of an Executive order issued under this section shall modify, supersede, or render inapplicable, as the case may be, to the extent inconsistent therewith—

(1) all provisions of law enacted prior to the effective date of that provision of the Executive order, and

(2) any prior provision of an Executive order issued under this section.

**(c) Federal Employees' Retirement and Foreign Service Pension Systems**

The President shall maintain, under the same conditions and in the same manner as provided in subsections (a) and (b) of this section existing conformity between the Federal Employees' Retirement System provided in chapter 84 of title 5 and the Foreign Service Pension System provided in part II of this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 827, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2124; Pub. L. 99-335, title IV, § 411, June 6, 1986, 100 Stat. 614.)

AMENDMENTS

1986—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 99-335 added subsec. (c).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-335 effective Jan. 1, 1987, see section 702(a) of Pub. L. 99-335, set out as an Effective Date note under section 8401 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

REFERENCE TO VETERANS' ADMINISTRATION DEEMED  
REFERENCE TO DEPARTMENT OF VETERANS AFFAIRS

Pub. L. 102-54, § 13(h)(2), June 13, 1991, 105 Stat. 275, provided that: "Any reference to the Veterans' Administration in any regulation prescribed or Executive order issued pursuant to section 827(a) of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 (22 U.S.C. 4067(a)) shall be deemed to be a reference to the Department of Veterans Affairs."

CONSTRUCTION OF SECTION WITH CIVIL SERVICE  
RETIREMENT SPOUSE EQUITY ACT OF 1984

This section not applicable with respect to either the amendments made by section 2 of Pub. L. 98-615 or the provisions of section 4 of Pub. L. 98-615 relating to equitable treatment under the Civil Service Retirement System for former spouses, except that, notwithstanding section 4(h) of Pub. L. 98-615, this section applicable with respect to sections 8339(j) and 8341(e) and (h) of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, and section 4 (except subsec. (b)) of Pub. L. 98-615 to the extent that those sections apply to a qualified former wife or husband, see section 4069-1 of this title and section 4(h) of Pub. L. 98-615, set out as an Effective Date of 1984 Amendment note under section 8341 of Title 5.

RECOMMENDATIONS BY SECRETARY OF STATE TO  
PRESIDENT

For authority for the Secretary of State to make recommendations to the President through the Director of

the Office of Management and Budget whenever action is appropriate under this section to maintain existing conformity between the Civil Service Retirement and Disability System and the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System, see section 3 of Ex. Ord. No. 12293, Feb. 23, 1981, 46 F.R. 13969, set out as a note under section 3901 of this title.

EX. ORD. NO. 12289. CONFORMING THE FOREIGN SERVICE  
AND CIVIL SERVICE RETIREMENT AND DISABILITY SYSTEMS

Ex. Ord. No. 12289, Feb. 14, 1981, 46 F.R. 12693, as amended by Pub. L. 102-54, § 13(h)(2), June 13, 1991, 105 Stat. 275, provided:

By the authority vested in me as President of the United States of America by Section 827 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 (22 U.S.C. 4067), and in order to conform further the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System to the Civil Service Retirement and Disability System, it is hereby ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. (a) Section 826(c) of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 (22 U.S.C. 4066(c)) is deemed to be amended by striking out the first sentence of paragraph (1) thereof, and inserting in lieu thereof the following sentence:

"(1) The first increase (if any) made under this section to an annuity which is payable from the Fund to a participant or to the surviving spouse of a deceased participant who dies in service shall be equal to the product (adjusted to the nearest  $\frac{1}{10}$  of 1 percent) of—

"(a)  $\frac{1}{2}$  of the applicable percent change determined under Subsection (b) of this Section, multiplied by

"(b) the number of full months for which the annuity was payable from the Fund before the effective date of the increase (counting any portion of a month as a full month)."

SEC. 2. Section 808(a) of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 (22 U.S.C. 4048(a)) is deemed to be amended by adding at the end thereof the following:

"However, if a participant retiring under this section is receiving retired pay or retainer pay for military service (except that specified in Section 8332(c) (1) or (2) of title 5 of the United States Code) or Department of Veterans Affairs pension or compensation in lieu of such retired or retainer pay, the annuity of that participant shall be computed under this chapter excluding extra credit authorized by this subsection and excluding credit for military service from that computation. If the amount of the annuity so computed, plus the retired or retainer pay which is received, or which would be received but for the application of the limitation in Section 5532 of title 5 of the United States Code, or the Department of Veterans Affairs pension or compensation in lieu of such retired pay or retainer pay, is less than the annuity that would be payable under this chapter in the absence of the previous sentence, an amount equal to the difference shall be added to the annuity computed under this chapter."

SEC. 3. The amendments to be deemed made by this Order shall take effect as of February 15, 1981.

EX. ORD. NO. 12446. CONFORMING THE FOREIGN SERVICE  
AND CIVIL SERVICE RETIREMENT AND DISABILITY SYSTEMS

Ex. Ord. No. 12446, Oct. 17, 1983, 48 F.R. 48443, provided:

By the authority vested in me as President of the United States of America by Section 827 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 (22 U.S.C. 4067) (hereafter referred to as "the Act" [this chapter]), and in order to conform further the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System to the Civil Service Retirement and Disability System, it is hereby ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. *Interest Rates, Deposits, Refunds, and Redeposits.* (a) The second sentence of Section 805(d)(3) of the Act (22 U.S.C. 4045(d)(3)), the first sentence of Section 815(h) (22 U.S.C. 4055(h)), and the first sentence of Section 825(a) (22 U.S.C. 4065(a)), are deemed to be

amended to provide that interest shall be compounded at at the annual rate of 3 percent per annum through December 31, 1984, and thereafter at a rate equal to the overall average yield to the Fund during the preceding fiscal year from all obligations purchased by the Secretary of the Treasury during such fiscal year under section 819 [22 U.S.C. 4059], as determined by the Secretary of the Treasury.

(b) Sections 806(a) and 816(d) of the Act (22 U.S.C. 4046(a) and 4056(d)) are deemed to be amended to exclude from the computation of creditable civilian service under section 816(a) of the Act any period of civilian service for which retirement deductions or contributions have not been made under section 805(d) [22 U.S.C. 4045] of the Act unless—

(1) the participant makes a contribution for such period as provided in such section 805(d); or

(2) no contribution is required for such service as provided under section 805(f) of the Act as deemed to be amended by this Order, or under any other statute.

(c) The amendments deemed to be made by section 1 of this Order shall apply (i) to contributions for civilian service performed on or after the first day of the month following issuance of this Order [Oct. 17, 1983], (ii) to contributions for prior refunds to participants for which application is received by the employing agency on and after such first day of the month, and (iii) to excess contributions under section 815(h) [22 U.S.C. 4055(h)] and voluntary contributions under section 825(a) [22 U.S.C. 4065(a)] from the first day of the month following issuance of this Order.

**SEC. 2. Rounding Down of Annuities.** (a) Section 826(e) of the Act (22 U.S.C. 4066(e)) is deemed to be amended by striking out “fixed at the nearest” and inserting in lieu thereof “rounded to the next lowest”.

(b) The amendment deemed to be made by section 2(a) of this Order shall be effective with respect to any adjustment or redetermination of any annuity made on or after the date of this Order [Oct. 17, 1983].

**SEC. 3. Later Commencement Date For Certain Annuities.**

(a) Section 807(a) of the Act (22 U.S.C. 4047(a)) is deemed to be amended to read as follows:

“(1) Except as otherwise provided in paragraph (2), the annuity of a participant who has met the eligibility requirements for an annuity shall commence on the first day of the month after—

“(A) separation from the Service occurs; or

“(B) pay ceases and the service and age requirements for entitlement to annuity are met.

“(2) The annuity of—

“(A) a participant who is retired and is eligible for benefits under section 609(a) [22 U.S.C. 4009(a)] or a participant who is retired under section 813 [22 U.S.C. 4053] or is otherwise involuntarily separated from the Service, except by removal for cause on charges of misconduct or delinquency.

“(B) a participant retiring under section 808 [22 U.S.C. 4048] due to a disability, and

“(C) a participant who serves 3 days or less in the month of retirement—

shall commence on the day after separation from the Service or the day after pay ceases and the requirements for entitlement to annuity are met.”

(b) The amendment deemed to be made by paragraph 3(a) of this Order shall become effective thirty days after the effective date of this Order [Oct. 17, 1983].

**SEC. 4. Credit For Military Service.** (a) Section 805 of the Act (22 U.S.C. 4045) is deemed to be amended—

(i) by striking out subsection (e) and substituting the following subsection in lieu thereof:

“(e)(1) Each participant who has performed military or naval service before the date of separation on which the entitlement to any annuity under this chapter is based may pay to the Secretary a special contribution equal to 7 percent of the amount of the basic pay paid under section 204 of title 37 of the United States Code, to the participant for each period of military or naval service after December 1956. The amount of such payments shall be based on such evidence of basic pay for military service as the participant may provide or if

the Secretary determines sufficient evidence has not been so provided to adequately determine basic pay for military or naval service, such payment shall be based upon estimates of such basic pay provided to the Department under paragraph (4).

“(2) Any deposit made under paragraph (1) of this subsection more than two years after the later of—

“(A) the effective date of this Order, or

“(B) the date on which the participant making the deposit first became a participant in a Federal staff retirement system for civilian employees,— shall include interest on such amount computed and compounded annually beginning on the date of the expiration of the two-year period. The interest rate that is applicable in computing interest in any year under this paragraph shall be equal to the interest rate that is applicable for such year under subsection (d) of this section.

“(3) Any payment received by the Secretary under this section shall be remitted to the Fund.

“(4) The Secretary of Defense, the Secretary of Transportation, the Secretary of Commerce, or the Secretary of Health and Human Services, as appropriate, shall furnish such information to the Secretary as the Secretary may determine to be necessary for the administration of this subsection.

“(f) Contributions shall only be required to obtain credit for periods of military or naval service to the extent provided under section 805(e) [22 U.S.C. 4045(e)] and section 816(a) [22 U.S.C. 4056(a)], except that credit shall be allowed in the absence of contributions to individuals of Japanese ancestry under section 816 [22 U.S.C. 4056] for periods of internment during World War II”; and—

(ii) by redesignating subsection (f) as subsection (g). Section 816(a) of the Act (22 U.S.C. 4056(a)) is deemed to be amended by adding “(1)” after “(a)” and by adding the following new paragraphs at the end thereof:

“(2) The service of an individual who first becomes a participant on or after the date of this Order without any credit under section 816 for civilian service performed prior to October 1, 1982, shall include credit for: “(A) each period of military or naval service performed before January 1, 1957, and

“(B) each period of military or naval service performed after December 31, 1956, and before the separation on which the entitlement to annuity under this chapter is based, only if a deposit (with interest if any is required) is made with respect to that period, as provided in section 805(e) [22 U.S.C. 4045(e)].

“(3) The service of an individual who first became a participant on or after the date of this Order with credit under section 816 [22 U.S.C. 4056] for civilian service performed prior to October 1982, shall include credit for each period of military or naval service performed before the date of the separation on which the entitlement to an annuity under this chapter is based, subject, in the case of military or naval service performed after December 1956, to section 816(j) [22 U.S.C. 4056(j)], as deemed to be added by this Order.

“(4) The service of an individual who first became a participant before the date of this Order shall include credit for each period of military or naval service performed before the date of the separation on which the entitlement to an annuity under this chapter is based, subject, in the case of military or naval service performed after December 1976, to section 816(j) [22 U.S.C. 4056(j)], as deemed to be added by this Order”;

(c) Section 816 of the Act (22 U.S.C. 4056) is deemed to be further amended by adding a new subsection (j) at the end thereof to read as follows:

“(1) Except as otherwise provided by statute or Executive Order, Section 8332(j) of Title 5, United States Code, relating to redetermination of credit for military and naval service, shall be applied to annuities payable under this chapter. The Secretary of State shall redetermine service, and may request and obtain information from the Secretary of Health and Human Services, as the Office of Personnel Management is directed or authorized to do in Section 8332(j).

“(2) Section 8332(j) of Title 5, United States Code, shall not apply with respect to:

“(A) the service of any individual who first became a participant on or after the date of this Order without any credit under section 816 [22 U.S.C. 4056] for civilian service performed prior to October 1982; or

“(B) any military or naval service performed prior to 1957 by an individual who first became a participant on or after the date of this Order with credit under section 816 [22 U.S.C. 4056] for civilian service performed prior to October 1982, or any period of military or naval service performed after 1956 with respect to which the participant has made a contribution (with interest if any is required) under section 805(e) [22 U.S.C. 4045(e)]; or

“(C) any military or naval service performed prior to 1977 by any individual who first became a participant before the date of this Order or any period of military or naval service performed after 1976 with respect to which the participant has made a contribution (with interest if any is required) under section 805(e) [22 U.S.C. 4045(e)].”

(d) Section 822(a) of the Act (22 U.S.C. 4062(a)) is deemed to be amended by striking out the period at the end thereof and inserting in lieu thereof: “, less an amount determined by the Secretary of State to be appropriate to reflect the value of the deposits made to the credit of the Fund under section 805(e).”

(e) The amendments deemed to be made by Section 4 of this Order shall be effective on the date of this Order [Oct. 17, 1983].

SEC. 5. *Recomputation at Age 62 of Credit for Military Service of Current Annuitants.* (a) Section 816(a) of the Act (22 U.S.C. 4056(a)) is deemed to be further amended so that the provisions of section 8332(j) of Title 5 of the United States Code, relating to credit for military service, shall not apply with respect to any individual who is entitled to an annuity under such Act [this chapter] on or before the date of approval of this order [Oct. 17, 1983], or who is entitled to an annuity based on a separation from service occurring on or before such date.

(b) Subject to subsection (c), in any case in which an individual described in subsection (a) is also entitled to old-age or survivors insurance benefits under section 202 of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 402] (or would be entitled to such benefits upon filing application therefor), the amount of the annuity to which such individual is entitled under chapter 8 of the Act [this subchapter] (after taking into account subsection (a)) which is payable for any month shall be reduced by an amount determined by multiplying the amount of such old-age or survivors insurance benefit for the determination month by a fraction—

(1) the numerator of which is the total of the wages (within the meaning of section 209 of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 409]) for service referred to in section 210(1) of such Act [42 U.S.C. 410] (relating to service in the uniformed services) and deemed additional wages (within the meaning of section 229 of such Act [42 U.S.C. 429]) of such individual credited for years after 1956 and before the calendar year in which the determination month occurs, up to the contribution and benefit base determined under section 230 of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 415(e)(1)] (or other applicable maximum annual amount referred to in section 215(e)(1) of such Act [42 U.S.C. 409]) for each such year, and

(2) the denominator of which is the total of all wages deemed additional wages described in paragraph (1) of this subsection plus all other wages (within the meaning of section 209 of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 409]) and all self-employment income (within the meaning of section 211(b) of such Act [42 U.S.C. 411(b)]) of such individual credited for years after 1936 and before the calendar year in which the determination month occurs, up to the contribution and benefit base (or such other amount referred to in such section 215(e)(1) of such Act [42 U.S.C. 415(e)(1)]) for each such year.

(c) Subsection (b) shall not reduce the annuity of any individual below the amount of the annuity which would be payable under chapter 8 of the Act [this sub-

chapter] to the individual for the determination month if section 8332(j) of Title 5 of the United States Code applied to the individual for such month.

(d) For purposes of this section, the term “determination month” means—

(1) the first month the individual described in subsection (a) is entitled to old-age or survivors insurance benefits under section 202 of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 402] (or would be entitled to such benefits upon filing application therefor); or

(2) the first day of the month following the month in which this Order is issued [Oct. 17, 1983] in the case of any individual so entitled to such benefits for such month.

(e) The preceding provisions of this section shall take effect with respect to any annuity payment payable under chapter 8 of the Act [this subchapter] for calendar months beginning after the date of this Order [Oct. 17, 1983].

(f) The Secretary of Health and Human Services shall furnish such information to the Secretary of State as may be necessary to carry out the preceding provisions of this section.

SEC. 6. *General Limitation on Cost-of-Living Adjustment for Annuities.* (a) Section 826 of the Act (22 U.S.C. 4066) is deemed to be amended to add at the end thereof the following new subsection:

“(g)(1) An annuity shall not be increased by reason of any adjustment under this section to an amount which exceeds the greater of—

“(A) the maximum pay rate payable for class FS-1 under section 403, 30 days before the effective date of the adjustment under this section; or

“(B) the final pay (or average pay, if higher) of the former participant with respect to whom the annuity is paid, increased by the overall annual average percentage adjustments (compounded) in rates of pay of the Foreign Service Schedule under such section 403 during the period—

“(i) beginning on the date the annuity commenced (or, in the case of a survivor of the retired participant, the date the participant’s annuity commenced), and

“(ii) ending on the effective date of the adjustment under this section.

“(2) For the purposes of paragraph (1) of this subsection, ‘pay’ means the rate of salary or basic pay as payable under any provision of law, including any provision of law limiting the expenditure of appropriated funds.”

(b) The amendment made by subsection (a) of this Section shall not cause any annuity to be reduced below the rate that is payable on the date of approval of this Order [Oct. 17, 1983], but shall apply to any adjustment occurring on or after April 1, 1983 under Section 826 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 4066] to any annuity payable from the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability Fund, whether such annuity has a commencing date before, on, or after the date of this Order.

RONALD REAGAN.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4069-1 of this title.

#### § 4068. Remarriage

Notwithstanding any other provision of this part, any benefit payable under this part to a surviving spouse, former spouse, or surviving former spouse that would otherwise terminate or be lost if the individual remarried before 60 years of age, shall not terminate or be lost if the remarriage occurred on or after November 8, 1984, and the individual was 55 years of age or over on the date of the remarriage.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 828, as added Pub. L. 99-335, title IV, § 412, June 6, 1986, 100 Stat. 614.)

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Jan. 1, 1987, see section 702(a) of Pub. L. 99-335, set out as a note under section 8401 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

**§ 4069. Thrift Savings Fund participation**

Participants in this System shall be deemed to be employees for the purposes of section 8351 of title 5. Any reference in such section 8351 or in subchapter III of chapter 84 of such title 5 to retirement or separation under subchapter III of chapter 83 or chapter 84 of such title 5 shall be deemed to be references to retirement or separation under part I or II of this subchapter with similar benefits or entitlements with respect to participants under such part I or II, respectively.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §829, as added Pub. L. 99-556, title IV, §404(a), Oct. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 3137.)

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Jan. 1, 1987, see section 408 of Pub. L. 99-556, set out as an Effective Date of 1986 Amendment note under section 4046 of this title.

**§ 4069-1. Qualified former wives and husbands****(a) Construction with provisions relating to compatibility between retirement systems; effective dates**

Notwithstanding section 4(h) of the Civil Service Retirement Spouse Equity Act of 1984, section 4067 of this title shall apply with respect to section 8339(j), section 8341(e), and section 8341(h) of title 5, and section 4 (except for subsection (b)) of the Civil Service Retirement Spouse Equity Act of 1984 to the extent that those sections apply to a qualified former wife or husband. For the purposes of this section any reference in the Civil Service Retirement Spouse Equity Act of 1984 to the effective date of that Act shall be deemed to be a reference to the effective date of this section.

**(b) Payments to other persons as provided in court order or spousal agreement**

(1) Payments pursuant to this section which would otherwise be made to a participant or former participant based upon his service shall be paid (in whole or in part) by the Secretary of State to another person if and to the extent expressly provided for in the terms of any court order or spousal agreement. Any payment under this paragraph to a person bars recovery by any other person.

(2) Paragraph (1) shall only apply to payments made by the Secretary of State under this subchapter after the date of receipt by the Secretary of State of written notice of such court order or spousal agreement and such additional information and documentation as the Secretary of State may prescribe.

**(c) "Qualified former wife or husband" defined**

For the purposes of this section, the term "qualified former wife or husband" means a former wife or husband of an individual if—

(1) such individual performed at least 18 months of civilian service creditable under this subchapter; and

(2) the former wife or husband was married to such individual for at least 9 months but not more than 10 years.

**(d) Promulgation of regulations**

Regulations issued pursuant to section 4067 of this title to implement this section shall be submitted to the Committee on Post Office and Civil Service and the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Governmental Affairs and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate. Such regulations shall not take effect until 60 days after the date on which such regulations are submitted to the Congress.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §830, as added Pub. L. 100-238, title II, §202(a), Jan. 8, 1988, 101 Stat. 1768.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Civil Service Retirement Spouse Equity Act of 1984, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 98-615, Nov. 8, 1984, 98 Stat. 3195, as amended. Section 4 of that Act is set out as a note under section 8341 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1984 Amendment note set out under section 8331 of Title 5 and Tables.

For effective date of this section, referred to in subsec. (a), see Effective Date note set out below.

## CODIFICATION

Another section 830 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 was enacted by Pub. L. 100-204 and is classified to section 4069a of this title.

## CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section applicable to any individual who, on or after Jan. 8, 1988, is married to a participant or former participant, see section 261(b)(1) of Pub. L. 100-238, set out as an Effective Date of 1988 Amendment note under section 4054 of this title.

## ABOLITION OF HOUSE COMMITTEE ON POST OFFICE AND CIVIL SERVICE

Committee on Post Office and Civil Service of House of Representatives abolished by House Resolution No. 6, One Hundred Fourth Congress, Jan. 4, 1995. References to Committee on Post Office and Civil Service treated as referring to Committee on Government Reform and Oversight of House of Representatives, see section 1(b) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

**§ 4069a. Retirement benefits for certain former spouses****(a) Eligibility; percentage of benefits**

Any individual who was a former spouse of a participant or former participant on February 14, 1981, shall be entitled, to the extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriations Acts, and except to the extent such former spouse is disqualified under subsection (b) of this section, to benefits—

(1) if married to the participant throughout the creditable service of the participant, equal to 50 percent of the benefits of the participant; or

(2) if not married to the participant throughout such creditable service, equal to that



former spouse's pro rata share of 50 percent of such benefits.

**(b) Disqualification**

A former spouse shall not be entitled to benefits under this section if—

(1) the former spouse remarries before age 55; or

(2) the former spouse was not married to the participant at least 10 years during service of the participant which is creditable under this subchapter with at least 5 years occurring while the participant was a member of the Foreign Service.

**(c) Period of entitlement; construction with other provisions; application approval and payment**

(1) The entitlement of a former spouse to benefits under this section—

(A) shall commence on the later of—

(i) the day the participant upon whose service the benefits are based becomes entitled to benefits under this subchapter; or

(ii) the first day of the month in which the divorce or annulment involved becomes final; and

(B) shall terminate on the earlier of—

(i) the last day of the month before the former spouse dies or remarries before 55 years of age; or

(ii) the date the benefits of the participant terminates.

(2) Notwithstanding paragraph (1), in the case of any former spouse of a disability annuitant—

(A) the benefits of the former spouse shall commence on the date the participant would qualify on the basis of his or her creditable service for benefits under this subchapter (other than a disability annuity) or the date the disability annuity begins, whichever is later, and

(B) the amount of benefits of the former spouse shall be calculated on the basis of benefits for which the participant would otherwise so qualify.

(3) Benefits under this section shall be treated the same as an annuity under section 4054(a)(7) of this title for purposes of section 4046(h) of this title or any comparable provision of law.

(4)(A) Benefits under this section shall not be payable unless appropriate written application is provided to the Secretary, complete with any supporting documentation which the Secretary may by regulation require, within 30 months after December 22, 1987. The Secretary may waive the 30-month application requirement under this subparagraph in any case in which the Secretary determines that the circumstances so warrant.

(B) Upon approval of an application provided under subparagraph (A), the appropriate benefits shall be payable to the former spouse with respect to all periods before such approval during which the former spouse was entitled to such benefits under this section, but in no event shall benefits be payable under this section with respect to any period before December 22, 1987.

**(d) "Benefits" defined**

For the purposes of this section, the term "benefits" means—

(1) with respect to a participant or former participant subject to this part, the annuity of the participant or former participant; and

(2) with respect to a participant or former participant subject to part II of this subchapter, the benefits of the participant or former participant under that part.

**(e) Effect of section on annuity**

Nothing in this section shall be construed to impair, reduce, or otherwise affect the annuity or the entitlement to an annuity of a participant or former participant under this subchapter.

**(f) Former spouses of United States Information Agency and Agency for International Development employees**

Any individual who on February 14, 1981, was an otherwise qualified former spouse pursuant to this section, but who was married to a former Foreign Service employee of the United States Information Agency or of the Agency for International Development, shall be entitled to benefits under this section if—

(1) the former employee retired from the Civil Service Retirement and Disability System on a date before his employing agency could legally participate in the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System; and

(2) the marriage included at least five years during which the employee was assigned overseas.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 830, as added Pub. L. 100-204, title I, § 188(a), Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1369; amended Pub. L. 101-246, title I, § 146(a), Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 37.)

CODIFICATION

Another section 830 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 was enacted by Pub. L. 100-238 and is classified to section 4069-1 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 101-246 added subsec. (f).

**§ 4069a-1. Retirement benefits for certain former spouses**

**(a) Eligibility; percentage of benefits**

Any individual who was a former spouse of a participant or former participant on February 14, 1981, shall be entitled, to the extent of available appropriations, and except to the extent such former spouse is disqualified under subsection (b) of this section, to benefits—

(1) if married to the participant throughout the creditable service of the participant, equal to 50 percent of the benefits of the participant; or

(2) if not married to the participant throughout such creditable service, equal to that former spouse's pro rata share of 50 percent of such benefits.

**(b) Disqualification**

A former spouse shall not be entitled to benefits under this section if—

(1) the former spouse remarries before age 55; or

(2) the former spouse was not married to the participant at least 10 years during service of

the participant which is creditable under this subchapter with at least 5 years occurring while the participant was a member of the Foreign Service.

**(c) Period of entitlement; construction with other provisions; application approval and payment**

(1) The entitlement of a former spouse to benefits under this section—

(A) shall commence on the later of—

(i) the day the participant upon whose service the benefits are based becomes entitled to benefits under this subchapter; or

(ii) the first day of the month in which the divorce or annulment involved becomes final; and

(B) shall terminate on the earlier of—

(i) the last day of the month before the former spouse dies or remarries before 55 years of age; or

(ii) the date of the benefits of the participant terminates.

(2) Notwithstanding paragraph (1), in the case of any former spouse of a disability annuitant—

(A) the benefits of the former spouse shall commence on the date the participant would qualify on the basis of his or her creditable service for benefits under this subchapter (other than a disability annuity) or the date the disability annuity begins, whichever is later, and

(B) the amount of benefits of the former spouse shall be calculated on the basis of benefits for which the participant would otherwise so qualify.

(3) Benefits under this section shall be treated the same as an annuity under section 4054(a)(7) of this title for purposes of section 4046(h) of this title or any comparable provision of law.

(4)(A) Benefits under this section shall not be payable unless appropriate written application is provided to the Secretary, complete with any supporting documentation which the Secretary may by regulation require, within 30 months after the effective date of this section. The Secretary may waive the 30-month application requirement under this subparagraph in any case in which the Secretary determines that the circumstances so warrant.

(B) Upon approval of an application provided under subparagraph (A), the appropriate benefits shall be payable to the former spouse with respect to all periods before such approval during which the former spouse was entitled to such benefits under this section, but in no event shall benefits be payable under this section with respect to any period before the effective date of this section.

**(d) “Benefits” defined**

For the purpose of this section, the term “benefits” means—

(1) with respect to a participant or former participant subject to this part, the annuity of the participant or former participant; and

(2) with respect to a participant or former participant subject to part II of this subchapter, the benefits of the participant or former participant under that part.

**(e) Effect of section on annuity**

Nothing in this section shall be construed to impair, reduce, or otherwise affect the annuity or the entitlement to an annuity of a participant or former participant under this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §831, as added Pub. L. 100-238, title II, §204(a), Jan. 8, 1988, 101 Stat. 1770.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

For the effective date of this section, referred to in subsec. (c)(4), see Effective Date note set out below.

CODIFICATION

Another section 831 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 was enacted by Pub. L. 100-204 and is classified to section 4069b of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective 90 days after Jan. 8, 1988, see section 261(a) of Pub. L. 100-238, set out as an Effective Date of 1988 Amendment note under section 4054 of this title.

**§ 4069b. Survivor benefits for certain former spouses**

**(a) Eligibility; amount of annuity**

Any individual who was a former spouse of a participant or former participant on February 14, 1981, shall be entitled, to the extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriations Acts, and except to the extent such former spouse is disqualified under subsection (b) of this section, to a survivor annuity equal to 55 percent of the greater of—

(1) the full amount of the participant's or former participant's annuity, as computed under this subchapter; or

(2) the full amount of what such annuity as so computed would be if the participant or former participant had not withdrawn a lump-sum portion of contributions made with respect to such annuity.

**(b) Election by former spouse**

If an election has been made with respect to such former spouse under section 4159 or 4046(f) of this title, then the survivor annuity under subsection (a) of this section of such former spouse shall be equal to the full amount of the participant's or former participant's annuity referred to in subsection (a) of this section less the amount of such election.

**(c) Disqualification**

A former spouse shall not be entitled to a survivor annuity under this section if—

(1) the former spouse remarries before age 55; or

(2) the former spouse was not married to the participant at least 10 years during service of the participant which is creditable under this subchapter with at least 5 years occurring while the participant was a member of the Foreign Service.

**(d) Period of entitlement; application approval and payment**

(1) The entitlement of a former spouse to a survivor annuity under this section—

(A) shall commence—

(i) in the case of a former spouse of a participant or former participant who is deceased as of December 22, 1987, beginning on December 22, 1987; and

(ii) in the case of any other former spouse, beginning on the later of—

(I) the date that the participant or former participant to whom the former spouse was married dies; or

(II) December 22, 1987; and

(B) shall terminate on the last day of the month before the former spouse's death or remarriage before attaining the age 55.

(2)(A) A survivor annuity under this section shall not be payable unless appropriate written application is provided to the Secretary, complete with any supporting documentation which the Secretary may by regulation require, within 30 months after December 22, 1987. The Secretary may waive the 30-month application requirement under this subparagraph in any case in which the Secretary determines that the circumstances so warrant.

(B) Upon approval of an application provided under subparagraph (A), the appropriate survivor annuity shall be payable to the former spouse with respect to all periods before such approval during which the former spouse was entitled to such annuity under this section, but in no event shall a survivor annuity be payable under this section with respect to any period before December 22, 1987.

**(e) Promulgation of regulations; notification of rights**

The Secretary shall—

(1) as soon as possible, but not later than 60 days after December 22, 1987, issue such regulations as may be necessary to carry out this section; and

(2) to the extent practicable, and as soon as possible, inform each individual who was a former spouse of a participant or former participant on February 14, 1981, of any rights which such individual may have under this section.

**(f) Effect of section on annuity**

Nothing in this section shall be construed to impair, reduce, or otherwise affect the annuity or the entitlement to an annuity of a participant or former participant under this subchapter.

**(g) Former spouses of United States Information Agency and Agency for International Development employees**

Any individual who on February 14, 1981, was an otherwise qualified former spouse pursuant to this section, but who was married to a former Foreign Service employee of the United States Information Agency or of the Agency of International Development, shall be entitled to benefits under this section if—

(1) the former employee retired from the Civil Service Retirement and Disability System on a date before his employing agency could legally participate in the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System; and

(2) the marriage included at least five years during which the employee was assigned overseas.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §831, as added Pub. L. 100-204, title I, §188(a), Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1370; amended Pub. L. 101-246, title I, §146(b), Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 37.)

CODIFICATION

Another section 831 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 was enacted by Pub. L. 100-238 and is classified to section 4069a-1 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 101-246 added subsec. (g).

**§ 4069b-1. Survivor benefits for certain former spouses**

**(a) Eligibility; amount of annuity**

Any individual who was a former spouse of a participant or former participant on February 14, 1981, shall be entitled, to the extent of available appropriations, and except to the extent such former spouse is disqualified under subsection (b) of this section, to a survivor annuity equal to 55 percent of the greater of—

(1) the full amount of the participant's or former participant's annuity, as computed under this subchapter; or

(2) the full amount of what such annuity as so computed would be if the participant or former participant had not withdrawn a lump-sum portion of contributions made with respect to such annuity.

**(b) Election by former spouse**

If an election has been made with respect to such former spouse under section 4159 or 4046(f) of this title, then the survivor annuity under subsection (a) of this section of such former spouse shall be equal to the full amount of the participant's or former participant's annuity referred to in subsection (a) of this section less the amount of such election.

**(c) Disqualification**

A former spouse shall not be entitled to a survivor annuity under this section if—

(1) the former spouse remarries before age 55; or

(2) the former spouse was not married to the participant at least 10 years during service of the participant which is creditable under this subchapter with at least 5 years occurring while the participant was a member of the Foreign Service.

**(d) Period of entitlement; application approval and payment**

(1) The entitlement of a former spouse to a survivor annuity under this section—

(A) shall commence—

(i) in the case of a former spouse of a participant or former participant who is deceased as of the effective date of this section, beginning on such date; and

(ii) in the case of any other former spouse, beginning on the later of—

(I) the date that the participant or former participant to whom the former spouse was married dies; or

(II) the effective date of this section; and

(B) shall terminate on the last day of the month before the former spouse's death or remarriage before attaining the age 55.

(2)(A) A survivor annuity under this section shall not be payable unless appropriate written application is provided to the Secretary, complete with any supporting documentation which the Secretary may by regulation require, within 30 months after the effective date of this section. The Secretary may waive the 30-month application requirement under this subparagraph in any case in which the Secretary determines that the circumstances so warrant.

(B) Upon approval of an application provided under subparagraph (A), the appropriate survivor annuity shall be payable to the former spouse with respect to all periods before such approval during which the former spouse was entitled to such annuity under this section, but in no event shall a survivor annuity be payable under this section with respect to any period before the effective date of this section.

**(e) Promulgation of regulations; notification of rights**

The Secretary shall—

(1) as soon as possible, but not later than 60 days after the effective date of this section, issue such regulations as may be necessary to carry out this section; and

(2) to the extent practicable, and as soon as possible, inform each individual who was a former spouse of a participant or former participant on February 14, 1981, of any rights which such individual may have under this section.

**(f) Effect of section on annuity**

Nothing in this section shall be construed to impair, reduce, or otherwise affect the annuity or the entitlement to an annuity of a participant or former participant under this chapter.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 832, as added Pub. L. 100-238, title II, § 204(a), Jan. 8, 1988, 101 Stat. 1771.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

For the effective date of this section, referred to in subsecs. (d)(1)(A)(i), (ii)(II), (2) and (e)(1), see Effective Date note set out below.

CODIFICATION

Another section 832 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 was enacted by Pub. L. 100-204 and is classified to section 4069c of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective 90 days after Jan. 8, 1988, see section 261(a) of Pub. L. 100-238, set out as an Effective Date of 1988 Amendment note under section 4054 of this title.

**§ 4069c. Health benefits for certain former spouses**

**(a) Eligibility**

Except as provided in subsection (c)(1) of this section, any individual—

(1) formerly married to an employee or former employee of the Foreign Service, whose marriage was dissolved by divorce or annulment before May 7, 1985;

(2) who, at any time during the 18-month period before the divorce or annulment became final, was covered under a health benefits plan as a member of the family of such employee or former employee; and

(3) who was married to such employee for not less than 10 years during periods of government service by such employee, is eligible for coverage under a health benefits plan in accordance with the provisions of this section.

**(b) Prerequisites for enrollment; notification of rights**

(1) Any individual eligible for coverage under subsection (a) of this section may enroll in a health benefits plan for self alone or for self and family if, before the expiration of the 6-month period beginning on December 22, 1987, and in accordance with such procedures as the Director of the Office of Personnel Management shall by regulation prescribe, such individual—

(A) files an election for such enrollment; and

(B) arranges to pay currently into the Employees Health Benefits Fund under section 8909 of title 5 an amount equal to the sum of the employee and agency contributions payable in the case of an employee enrolled under chapter 89 of such title in the same health benefits plan and with the same level of benefits.

(2) The Secretary shall, as soon as possible, take all steps practicable—

(A) to determine the identity and current address of each former spouse eligible for coverage under subsection (a) of this section; and

(B) to notify each such former spouse of that individual's rights under this section.

(3) The Secretary shall waive the 6-month limitation set forth in paragraph (1) in any case in which the Secretary determines that the circumstances so warrant.

**(c) Disqualification**

(1) Any former spouse who remarries before age 55 is not eligible to make an election under subsection (b)(1) of this section.

(2) Any former spouse enrolled in a health benefits plan pursuant to an election under subsection (b)(1) of this section may continue the enrollment under the conditions of eligibility which the Director of the Office of Personnel Management shall by regulation prescribe, except that any former spouse who remarries before age 55 shall not be eligible for continued enrollment under this section after the end of the 31-day period beginning on the date of remarriage.

**(d) Prohibition on coverage by more than one plan**

No individual may be covered by a health benefits plan under this section during any period in which such individual is enrolled in a health benefits plan under any other authority, nor may any individual be covered under more than one enrollment under this section.

**(e) "Health benefits plan" defined**

For purposes of this section the term "health benefits plan" means an approved health benefits plan under chapter 89 of title 5.

**(f) Former spouses of United States Information Agency and Agency for International Development employees**

Any individual who on February 14, 1981, was an otherwise qualified former spouse pursuant

to subsections (a), (b), and (c) of this section, but who was married to a former Foreign Service employee of the United States Information Agency or of the Agency for International Development, shall be entitled to benefits under this section if—

(1) the former employee retired from the Civil Service Retirement and Disability System on a date before his employing agency could legally participate in the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System; and

(2) the marriage included at least five years during which the employee was assigned overseas.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §832, as added Pub. L. 100-204, title I, §188(a), Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1371; amended Pub. L. 101-246, title I, §146(c), Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 37.)

#### CODIFICATION

Another section 832 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 was enacted by Pub. L. 100-238 and is classified to section 4069b-1 of this title.

#### AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 101-246 added subsec. (f).

### § 4069c-1. Health benefits for certain former spouses

#### (a) Eligibility

Except as provided in subsection (c)(1) of this section, any individual—

(1) formerly married to an employee or former employee of the Foreign Service, whose marriage was dissolved by divorce or annulment before May 7, 1985;

(2) who, at any time during the 18-month period before the divorce or annulment became final, was covered under a health benefits plan as a member of the family of such employee or former employee; and

(3) who was married to such employee for not less than 10 years during periods of government service by such employee, is eligible for coverage under a health benefits plan in accordance with the provisions of this section.

#### (b) Prerequisites for enrollment; notification of rights

(1) Any individual eligible for coverage under subsection (a) of this section may enroll in a health benefits plan for self alone or for self and family if, before the expiration of the 6-month period beginning on the effective date of this section, and in accordance with such procedures as the Director of the Office of Personnel Management shall by regulation prescribe, such individual—

(A) files an election for such enrollment; and

(B) arranges to pay currently into the Employees Health Benefits Fund under section 8909 of title 5 an amount equal to the sum of the employee and agency contributions payable in the case of an employee enrolled under chapter 89 of such title in the same health benefits plan and with the same level of benefits.

(2) The Secretary shall, as soon as possible, take all steps practicable—

(A) to determine the identity and current address of each former spouse eligible for coverage under subsection (a) of this section; and

(B) to notify each such former spouse of that individual's rights under this section.

(3) The Secretary shall waive the 6-month limitation set forth in paragraph (1) in any case in which the Secretary determines that the circumstances so warrant.

#### (c) Disqualification

(1) Any former spouse who remarries before age 55 is not eligible to make an election under subsection (b)(1) of this section.

(2) Any former spouse enrolled in a health benefits plan pursuant to an election under subsection (b)(1) of this section may continue the enrollment under the conditions of eligibility which the Director of the Office of Personnel Management shall by regulation prescribe, except that any former spouse who remarries before age 55 shall not be eligible for continued enrollment under this section after the end of the 31-day period beginning on the date of remarriage.

#### (d) Prohibition on coverage by more than one plan

No individual may be covered by a health benefits plan under this section during any period in which such individual is enrolled in a health benefits plan under any other authority, nor may any individual be covered under more than one enrollment under this section.

#### (e) "Health benefits plan" defined

For purposes of this section the term "health benefits plan" means an approved health benefits plan under chapter 89 of title 5.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §833, as added Pub. L. 100-238, title II, §204(a), Jan. 8, 1988, 101 Stat. 1772.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

For the effective date of this section, referred to in subsec. (b)(1), see Effective Date note set out below.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective 90 days after Jan. 8, 1988, see section 261(a) of Pub. L. 100-238, set out as an Effective Date of 1988 Amendment note under section 4054 of this title.

## PART II—FOREIGN SERVICE PENSION SYSTEM

### PART REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This part is referred to in sections 4043, 4044, 4054, 4055, 4063, 4064, 4067, 4069, 4069a, 4069a-1 of this title; title 5 sections 8402, 8411; title 26 section 3121; title 42 sections 402, 410.

### § 4071. Establishment; application of Federal Employees' Retirement System to Foreign Service Pension System participants

(a) There is hereby established a Foreign Service Pension System.

(b) Except as otherwise specifically provided in this part or any other provision of law, the provisions of chapter 84 of title 5 shall apply to all participants in the Foreign Service Pension System and such participants shall be treated in all respects similar to persons whose participation in the Federal Employees' Retirement System provided in that chapter is required.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §851, as added Pub. L. 99-335, title IV, §415, June 6, 1986, 100 Stat. 615.)

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Part effective Jan. 1, 1987, see section 702(a) of Pub. L. 99-335, set out as a note under section 8401 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

**§ 4071a. Definitions**

As used in this part, unless otherwise specified—

(1) the term “court order” has the same meaning given in section 4044(4) of this title;

(2) the term “Fund” means the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability Fund maintained by the Secretary of the Treasury pursuant to section 4042 of this title;

(3) the term “lump-sum credit” means the unrefunded amount consisting of—

(A) retirement deductions made from the basic pay of a participant under section 4071e of this title (or under section 204 of the Federal Employees’ Retirement Contribution Temporary Adjustment Act of 1983);

(B) amounts deposited by a participant under section 4071c of this title to obtain credit under this System for prior civilian or military service; and

(C) interest on the deductions and deposits which, for any calendar year, shall be equal to the overall average yield to the Fund during the preceding fiscal year from all obligations purchased by the Secretary of the Treasury during such fiscal year under section 4059 of this title, as determined by the Secretary of the Treasury (compounded annually); but does not include interest—

(i) if the service covered thereby aggregates 1 year or less; or

(ii) for a fractional part of a month in the total service;

(4) the term “normal cost” means the entry-age normal cost of the provisions of the System which relate to the Fund, computed by the Secretary of State in accordance with generally accepted actuarial practice and standards (using dynamic assumptions) and expressed as a level percentage of aggregate basic pay;

(5) the term “participant” means a person who participates in the Foreign Service Pension System;

(6) the term “pro rata share” in the case of any former spouse of any participant or former participant means the percentage which is equal to the percentage that (A) the number of years during which the former spouse was married to the participant during the service of the participant which is creditable under this subchapter is of (B) the total number of years of such service, disregarding extra credit under section 4057 of this title;

(7) the term “supplemental liability” means the estimated excess of—

(A) the actuarial present value of all future benefits payable from the Fund under this part based on the service of participants or former participants, over

(B) the sum of—

(i) the actuarial present value of (I) deductions to be withheld from the future basic pay of participants pursuant to section 4071e of this title and (II) contributions for past civilian and military service;

(ii) the actuarial present value of future contributions to be made pursuant to section 4071f of this title;

(iii) the Fund balance as of the date the supplemental liability is determined, to the extent that such balance is attributable—

(I) to the System, or

(II) to the contributions made under the Federal Employees’ Retirement Contribution Temporary Adjustment Act of 1983 (5 U.S.C. 8331 note); and

(iv) any other appropriate amount, as determined by the Secretary of State in accordance with generally accepted actuarial practices and principles; and

(8) the term “System” means the Foreign Service Pension System.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §852, as added Pub. L. 99-335, title IV, §415, June 6, 1986, 100 Stat. 615; amended Pub. L. 100-238, title II, §241, Jan. 8, 1988, 101 Stat. 1776.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Federal Employees’ Retirement Contribution Temporary Adjustment Act of 1983, referred to in pars. (3)(A) and (7)(B)(iii)(II), is title II of Pub. L. 98-168, Nov. 29, 1983, 97 Stat. 1106, as amended, which is set out as a note under section 8331 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

## AMENDMENTS

1988—Pars. (3) to (8). Pub. L. 100-238 added par. (3) and redesignated former pars. (3) to (7) as (4) to (8), respectively.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1988 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 100-238 effective 90 days after Jan. 8, 1988, see section 261(a) of Pub. L. 100-238, set out as a note under section 4054 of this title.

**§ 4071b. Participants****(a) Covered members**

Except for persons excluded by subsection (b), (c), or (d) of this section, all members of the Foreign Service, any of whose service after December 31, 1983, is employment for the purpose of title II of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 401 et seq.] and chapter 21 of title 26, who would, but for this section, be participants in the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System pursuant to section 4043 of this title shall instead be participants in the Foreign Service Pension System.

**(b) Exclusion of participants in Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System**

Members of the Service who were participants in the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System on or before December 31, 1983, and who have not had a break in service in excess of one year since that date, are not made participants in the System by this section, without regard to whether they are subject to title II of the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 401 et seq.].

**(c) Exclusion of individuals with certain creditable civilian service**

Individuals who become members of the Service after having completed at least 5 years of civilian service creditable under part I of this sub-

chapter, subchapter III of chapter 83 of title 5 (the Civil Service Retirement System), or title II of the Central Intelligence Agency Retirement Act (50 U.S.C. 2011 et seq.) (determined without regard to any deposit or redeposit requirement under any such part, subchapter, or title, any requirement that the individual become subject to such part, subchapter, or title after performing the service involved, or any requirement that the individual give notice in writing to the official by whom such individual is paid of such individual's desire to become subject to such part, subchapter, or title) are not participants in the System, except to the extent provided for under title III of the Federal Employees' Retirement System Act of 1986 pursuant to an election under such title to become subject to this part (under regulations issued by the Secretary of State pursuant to section 4071i of this title).

**(d) Exclusion of temporary or intermittent employees**

The Secretary may exclude from the operation of this part any member of the Foreign Service, or group of members, whose employment is temporary or intermittent, except a member whose employment is part-time career appointment or career candidate appointment under section 3946 of this title.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §853, as added Pub. L. 99-335, title IV, §415, June 6, 1986, 100 Stat. 616; amended Pub. L. 99-514, §2, Oct. 22, 1986, 100 Stat. 2095; Pub. L. 103-178, title II, §204(b)(1), Dec. 3, 1993, 107 Stat. 2033.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Social Security Act, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (b), is act Aug. 14, 1935, ch. 531, 49 Stat. 620, as amended. Title II of the Social Security Act is classified generally to subchapter II (§401 et seq.) of chapter 7 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1305 of Title 42 and Tables.

The Central Intelligence Agency Retirement Act, referred to in subsec. (c), is Pub. L. 88-643, as revised generally by Pub. L. 102-496, title VIII, §802, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3196. Title II of the Act is classified generally to subchapter II (§2011 et seq.) of chapter 38 of Title 50, War and National Defense. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2001 of Title 50 and Tables.

The Federal Employees' Retirement System Act of 1986, referred to in subsec. (c), is Pub. L. 99-335, June 6, 1986, 100 Stat. 514. Title III of the Federal Employees' Retirement System Act of 1986 amended sections 3121 and 6103 of Title 26, Internal Revenue Code, section 1005 of Title 39, Postal Service, and section 410 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare, enacted provisions set out as notes under sections 8331, 8401, 8432, and 8472 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, and section 6103 of Title 26, and amended provisions set out as a note under section 8331 of Title 5. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 8401 of Title 5 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1993—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 103-178 substituted “the Central Intelligence Agency Retirement Act (50 U.S.C. 2011 et seq.)” for “the Central Intelligence Agency Retirement Act of 1964 for Certain Employees”.

1986—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99-514 substituted “Internal Revenue Code of 1986” for “Internal Revenue Code of 1954”, which for purposes of codification was translated as “title 26” thus requiring no change in text.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4045 of this title.

**§ 4071c. Creditable service**

**(a) Service included**

For purposes of this part, creditable service of a participant includes—

(1) service as a participant after December 31, 1986;

(2) service with respect to which deductions and withholdings under section 204(a)(2) of the Federal Employees' Retirement Contribution Temporary Adjustment Act of 1983 have been made; and

(3) except as provided in subsection (b) of this section, any civilian service performed before January 1, 1989 (other than service under paragraph (1) or (2)), which, but for the amendment made by section 414 of the Federal Employees' Retirement System Act of 1986, would be creditable under part I of this subchapter (determined without regard to any deposit or redeposit requirement under such part, subchapter III of chapter 83 of title 5 (the Civil Service Retirement System), or title II of the Central Intelligence Agency Retirement Act (50 U.S.C. 2011 et seq.)), any requirement that the individual become subject to such part, subchapter, or title after performing the service involved, or any requirement that the individual give notice in writing to the official by whom such individual is paid of such individual's desire to become subject to such part, subchapter, or title).

**(b) Refund of retirement deductions; retirement deduction not made; required deposit; computation of interest**

(1) A participant who has received a refund of retirement deductions under part I of this subchapter with respect to any service described in subsection (a)(3) of this section may not be allowed credit for such service under this part unless such participant deposits into the Fund an amount equal to 1.3 percent of basic pay for such service, with interest.

(2) A participant may not be allowed credit under this part for any service described in subsection (a)(3) of this section for which retirement deductions under part I of this subchapter have not been made, unless such participant deposits into the Fund an amount equal to 1.3 percent of basic pay for such service, with interest.

(3) Interest under paragraph (1) or (2) shall be computed in accordance with section 4045(d) of this title and regulations issued by the Secretary of State.

**(c) Volunteer service; required payment**

Credit shall be given under this System to a participant for a period of prior satisfactory service as—

(1) a volunteer or volunteer leader under the Peace Corps Act (22 U.S.C. 2501 et seq.),

(2) a volunteer under part A of title VIII of the Economic Opportunity Act of 1964, or

(3) a full-time volunteer for a period of service of at least one year's duration under part A, B, or C of title I of the Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973 (42 U.S.C. 4951 et seq.),

if the participant makes a payment to the Fund equal to 3 percent of pay received for the volun-

teer service (as determined in accordance with regulations of the Secretary of State consistent with regulations for making corresponding determinations under chapter 83, title 5) together with interest determined under regulations issued by the Secretary of State.

**(d) Prior service under other retirement system; waiver of credit and payment into Fund**

Credit shall be given under this System to a participant for a period of prior service under the Federal Employees' Retirement System (described in chapter 84 of title 5) or under title III of the Central Intelligence Agency Retirement Act (50 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.) if the participant waives credit under the other retirement system and makes a payment to the Fund equal to the amount which was deducted and withheld from the individual's basic pay under the other retirement system during the prior creditable service under the other retirement system together with interest on such amount computed in accordance with regulations issued by the Secretary of State.

**(e) Employees of Members or offices of Congress**

A participant who, while on approved leave without pay, serves as a full-time paid employee of a Member or office of the Congress shall continue to make contributions to the Fund based upon the Foreign Service salary rate that would be in effect if the participant were in a pay status. The participant's employing Member or office in the Congress shall make a contribution (from the appropriation or fund which is used for payment of the salary of the participant) determined under section 4071f(a) of this title to the Treasury of the United States to the credit of the Fund. All periods of service for which full contributions to the Fund are made under this subsection shall be counted as creditable service for purposes of this part and shall not, unless all retirement credit is transferred, be counted as creditable service under any other Government retirement system.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §854, as added Pub. L. 99-335, title IV, §415, June 6, 1986, 100 Stat. 616; amended Pub. L. 99-556, title IV, §405, Oct. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 3137; Pub. L. 100-238, title II, §242, Jan. 8, 1988, 101 Stat. 1776; Pub. L. 103-178, title II, §204(b)(2), Dec. 3, 1993, 107 Stat. 2033.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 204(a)(2) of the Federal Employees' Retirement Contribution Temporary Adjustment Act of 1983, referred to in subsec. (a)(2), is section 204(a)(2) of Pub. L. 98-168, which is set out as a note under section 8331 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

Section 414 of the Federal Employees' Retirement System Act of 1986, referred to in subsec. (a)(3), is section 414 of Pub. L. 99-335, title IV, June 6, 1986, 100 Stat. 614, which amended section 4043 of this title.

The Central Intelligence Agency Retirement Act, referred to in subsecs. (a)(3) and (d), is Pub. L. 88-643, as revised generally by Pub. L. 102-496, title VIII, §802, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3196. Titles II and III of the Act are classified generally to subchapters II (§2011 et seq.) and III (§2151 et seq.), respectively, of chapter 38 of Title 50, War and National Defense. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2001 of Title 50 and Tables.

The Peace Corps Act, referred to in subsec. (c)(1), is Pub. L. 87-293, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 612, as amended,

which is classified principally to chapter 34 (§2501 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2501 of this title and Tables.

The Economic Opportunity Act of 1964, referred to in subsec. (c)(2), is Pub. L. 88-452, Aug. 20, 1964, 73 Stat. 508, as amended. Part A of title VIII of that Act is part A of title VIII of Pub. L. 88-452 as added by Pub. L. 90-222, title I, §110, Dec. 23, 1967, 81 Stat. 722, which was classified generally to part A (§2992 et seq.) of subchapter VIII of chapter 34 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare, prior to its repeal by Pub. L. 93-113, title VI, §603, Oct. 1, 1973, 87 Stat. 417. See sections 4951 et seq., 5042(13)(A), and 5055 of Title 42.

The Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973, referred to in subsec. (c)(3), is Pub. L. 93-113, Oct. 1, 1973, 87 Stat. 394, as amended. Parts A, B, and C of title I of the Domestic Volunteer Service Act of 1973 are classified to Parts A (§4951 et seq.), B (§4971 et seq.), and C (§4991 et seq.), respectively, of subchapter I of chapter 66 of Title 42. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4950 of Title 42 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1993—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 103-178, §204(b)(1), substituted “the Central Intelligence Agency Retirement Act (50 U.S.C. 2011 et seq.)” for “the Central Intelligence Agency Retirement Act of 1964 for Certain Employees”.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 103-178, §204(b)(2)(B), substituted “the Central Intelligence Agency Retirement Act (50 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.)” for “the Central Intelligence Agency Retirement Act of 1964 for Certain Employees”.

1988—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 100-238 struck out “matching” after “shall make a” and inserted “determined under section 4071f(a) of this title” after “participant”.

1986—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 99-556, §405(a), which directed that subsec. (d) be amended by substituting “which was deducted and withheld from the individual's basic pay under the other retirement system” for “which would have been deducted from pay under section 4071c(a) of this title had the individual been a participant”, was executed by making the substitution for “which would have been deducted from pay under section 4071e(a) of this title had the individual been a participant”, as the probable intent of Congress.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 99-556, §405(b), added subsec. (e).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1988 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 100-238 effective 90 days after Jan. 8, 1988, see section 261(a) of Pub. L. 100-238, set out as a note under section 4054 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-556 effective Jan. 1, 1987, see section 408 of Pub. L. 99-556, set out as a note under section 4046 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4071a of this title.

**§ 4071d. Entitlement to annuity**

**(a) Retirement conditions; definitions**

(1) Any participant may be retired under the conditions specified in section 4051 of this title and shall be retired under the conditions specified in sections 4052 and 4053 of this title and receive benefits under this part.

(2) For the purposes of this subsection—

(A) the term “participant”, as used in the sections referred to in paragraph (1), means a participant in the Foreign Service Pension System; and



(B) the term “System”, as used in those sections, means the Foreign Service Pension System.

**(b) Voluntary or mandatory retirement with authorization for immediate annuity; computation of annuity**

(1) Any participant who retires voluntarily or mandatorily under section 4007, 4008, 4051, 4052, or 4053 of this title under conditions authorizing an immediate annuity for participants in the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System and who has completed at least 5 years as a member of the Foreign Service shall be entitled to an immediate annuity computed under paragraph (2).

(2) An annuity under paragraph (1) shall be computed—

(A) in accordance with section 8415(d)(1) of title 5 for all service while a participant in this System and for prior service creditable under this part not otherwise counted as—

(i) a member of the Service,

(ii) an employee of the Central Intelligence Agency entitled to retirement credit under title II of the Central Intelligence Agency Retirement Act (50 U.S.C. 2011 et seq.) or under section 302(a) or 303(b) of that Act (50 U.S.C. 2152(a), 2153(b)), or

(iii) a participant as a Member of Congress, a congressional employee, law enforcement officer, firefighter, or air traffic controller in the Civil Service Retirement System under subchapter III of chapter 83, title 5, or in the Federal Employees’ Retirement System under chapter 84 of title 5; and

(B) at the rate stated in section 8415(a) of title 5 for all other service creditable under this System including service in excess of 20 years otherwise creditable under paragraph (A).

(3) Any participant who is involuntarily retired or separated under section 4007, 4008, or 4010 of this title and who would if a participant under part I of this subchapter, become eligible for a refund of contributions or a deferred annuity under part I of this subchapter, shall, in lieu thereof, receive benefits for an involuntary separation under this part.

(4) A disability annuity under this part required to be redetermined under section 8452(b) of title 5, or computed under section 8452(c) or (d) of such title 5, shall be recomputed or computed using the formula in subsection (b)(2)(A) of this section rather than section 8415 of such title 5 (as stated in section 8452(b)(2)(A) and 8452(c) and (d) of such title). Such annuity shall also be computed in accordance with the preceding sentence if, as of the day on which such annuity commences or is restored, the annuitant satisfies the age and service requirements for entitlement to an immediate annuity under section 4051 of this title.

(5) A former participant entitled to a deferred annuity under section 8413(b) of title 5 shall not be subject to section 8415(f)(1) of such title 5 if the former participant has 20 years of service creditable under this part and is at least 50 years of age as of the date on which the annuity is to commence.

(6)(A) The amount of a survivor annuity for a widow or widower of a participant or former participant shall be 50 percent of an annuity computed for the deceased under this part rather than under section 8415 of such title 5 (as stated in sections 8442(a)(1), (b)(1)(B), and (c)(2) of such title).

(B) Any calculation for a widow or widower of a participant or former participant under section 8442(f)(2)(A) shall be based on an “assumed FSRDS annuity” rather than an “assumed CSRS annuity” as stated in such section. For the purpose of this subparagraph, the term “assumed FSRDS annuity” means the amount of the survivor annuity to which the widow or widower would be entitled under part I of this subchapter based on the service of the deceased annuitant determined under section 8442(f)(5) of such title 5.

**(c) Annuity supplement**

A participant who is entitled to an immediate annuity under subsection (b) of this section shall be entitled to receive an annuity supplement while the annuitant is under 62 years of age. The annuity supplement shall be based on the total creditable service of the annuitant and shall be computed in accordance with sections 8421(b) and 8421a of title 5 as if the participant were a law enforcement officer retired under section 8412(d) of such title.

**(d) Separation for cause based on disloyalty**

Any participant who is separated for cause under section 4010 of this title shall not be entitled to an annuity under this System when the Secretary determines that the separation was based in whole or in part on disloyalty to the United States.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §855, as added Pub. L. 99-335, title IV, §415, June 6, 1986, 100 Stat. 617; amended Pub. L. 99-556, title IV, §406, Oct. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 3138; Pub. L. 103-178, title II, §204(b)(3), Dec. 3, 1993, 107 Stat. 2033.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Central Intelligence Agency Retirement Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(2)(A)(ii), is Pub. L. 88-643, as revised generally by Pub. L. 102-496, title VIII, §802, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3196. Title II of the Act is classified generally to subchapter II (§2011 et seq.) of chapter 38 of Title 50, War and National Defense. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2001 of Title 50 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1993—Subsec. (b)(2)(A)(ii). Pub. L. 103-178 substituted “under title II of the Central Intelligence Agency Retirement Act (50 U.S.C. 2011 et seq.) or under section 302(a) or 303(b) of that Act (50 U.S.C. 2152(a), 2153(b))” for “under title II of the Central Intelligence Agency Retirement Act of 1964 for Certain Employees or under section 302(a) or 303(b) of that Act”.

1986—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 99-556, §406(a), substituted “as a member of the Foreign Service” for “of service subject to this subchapter”.

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 99-556, §406(b), amended par. (2) by substituting subpars. (A) and (B) for former subpars. (A) to (C). Prior to amendment, subpars. (A) to (C) read as follows:

“(A) for all service earned while a participant in this System, at the rate stated in section 8415(d) of title 5; and

“(B) for all service earned while a participant in another retirement system creditable under section

4071c(d) of this title, at the rate which would have been applicable to the individual had that individual remained a participant in the other system; and  
“(C) for all volunteer service creditable under section 4071c(c) of this title, at the rate stated in section 8415(a) of title 5.”

Subsec. (b)(3) to (6), Pub. L. 99-556, §406(c), added pars. (3) to (6).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-556 effective Jan. 1, 1987, see section 408 of Pub. L. 99-556, set out as a note under section 4046 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4053 of this title.

### § 4071e. Deductions and withholdings from pay

#### (a) Basic pay

The employing agency shall deduct and withhold from basic pay of each participant a percentage of basic pay equal to 7½ percent minus the percentage then in effect under section 3101(a) of title 26 (relating to the rate of tax for old age, survivors and disability insurance).

#### (b) Consent to deductions; discharge of claims

Each participant is deemed to consent and agree to the deductions under subsection (a) of this section. Notwithstanding any law or regulation affecting the pay of a participant, payment less such deductions is a full and complete discharge and acquittance of all claims and demands for regular services during the period covered by the payment, except the right to any benefits under this part based on the service of the participant.

#### (c) Deposit of amounts

Amounts deducted and withheld under this section shall be deposited in the Treasury of the United States to the credit of the Fund under such procedures as the Comptroller General of the United States may prescribe.

#### (d) Entry on individual retirement records

Under such regulations as the Secretary of State may issue, amounts deducted under subsection (a) of this section shall be entered on individual retirement records.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §856, as added Pub. L. 99-335, title IV, §415, June 6, 1986, 100 Stat. 618; amended Pub. L. 99-514, §2, Oct. 22, 1986, 100 Stat. 2095.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1986—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99-514 substituted “Internal Revenue Code of 1986” for “Internal Revenue Code of 1954”, which for purposes of codification was translated as “title 26” thus requiring no change in text.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4045, 4071a of this title.

### § 4071f. Government contributions

(a) Each agency employing any participant shall contribute to the Fund the amount computed in a manner similar to that used under section 8423(a) of title 5 pursuant to determinations of the normal cost percentage for the Foreign Service Pension System by the Secretary of State.

(b)(1) The Secretary of State shall compute the amount of the supplemental liability of the Fund as of the close of each fiscal year beginning after September 30, 1987. The amount of any such supplemental liability shall be amortized in 30 equal annual installments with interest computed at the rate used in the most recent valuation of the System.

(2) At the end of each fiscal year, the Secretary of State shall notify the Secretary of the Treasury of the amount of the installment computed under this subsection for such year.

(3) Before closing the accounts for a fiscal year, the Secretary of the Treasury shall credit to the Fund, as a Government contribution, out of any money in the Treasury of the United States not otherwise appropriated, the amount under paragraph (2) of this subsection for such year.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §857, as added Pub. L. 99-335, title IV, §415, June 6, 1986, 100 Stat. 618.)

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4071a, 4071c of this title.

### § 4071g. Cost-of-living adjustments

Cost-of-living adjustments for annuitants under this System shall be granted under procedures in section 8462 of title 5 in the same manner as such adjustments are made for annuitants referred to in subsection (c)(3)(B)(ii) of such section.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §858, as added Pub. L. 99-335, title IV, §415, June 6, 1986, 100 Stat. 619.)

#### DELAY IN COST-OF-LIVING ADJUSTMENTS DURING FISCAL YEARS 1994, 1995, AND 1996

Any cost-of-living increase scheduled to take effect during fiscal year 1994, 1995, or 1996 under this section delayed until first day of third calendar month after date such increase would otherwise take effect, see section 11001 of Pub. L. 103-66, set out as a note under section 8340 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

### § 4071h. General and administrative provisions

#### (a) Administration by Secretary of State; issuance of regulations

The Secretary of State shall administer the Foreign Service Pension System except for matters relating to the Thrift Savings Plan provided in subchapters III and VII of chapter 84 of title 5. The Secretary of State shall, with respect to the Foreign Service Pension System, perform the functions and exercise the authority vested in the Office of Personnel Management or the Director of such Office by such chapter 84 and may issue regulations for such purposes.

#### (b) Appeal of determinations

Determinations of the Secretary of State under the Foreign Service Pension System which, if made by the Office of Personnel Management under chapter 84 of title 5 or the Director of such Office, would be appealable to the Merit Systems Protection Board shall, instead, be appealable to the Foreign Service Grievance Board, except that determinations of disability for participants shall be based upon the standards in section 4048 of this title (other than the

exclusion for vicious habits, intemperance, or willful misconduct) and subject to review in the same manner as under that section.

**(c) Periodic valuations by Secretary of the Treasury**

At least every 5 years, the Secretary of the Treasury shall prepare periodic valuations of the Foreign Service Pension System and shall advise the Secretary of State of (1) the normal cost of the System, (2) the supplemental liability of the System, and (3) the amounts necessary to finance the costs of the System.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §859, as added Pub. L. 99-335, title IV, §415, June 6, 1986, 100 Stat. 619.)

**§ 4071i. Transition provisions**

The Secretary of State shall issue regulations providing for the transition from the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System to the Foreign Service Pension System in a manner comparable to the transition of employees subject to subchapter III of chapter 83 of title 5 (the Civil Service Retirement System) to the Federal Employees' Retirement System. For this and related purposes, references made to participation in subchapter III of chapter 83 of title 5 (the Civil Service Retirement System), the Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. 301 et seq.], and title 26 shall be deemed to refer to participation in the Foreign Service Pension System or the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System, as appropriate.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §860, as added Pub. L. 99-335, title IV, §415, June 6, 1986, 100 Stat. 619; amended Pub. L. 99-514, §2, Oct. 22, 1986, 100 Stat. 2095.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Social Security Act, referred to in text, is act Aug. 14, 1935, ch. 531, 49 Stat. 620, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 7 (§301 et seq.) of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1305 of Title 42 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1986—Pub. L. 99-514 substituted "Internal Revenue Code of 1986" for "Internal Revenue Code of 1954", which for purposes of codification was translated as "title 26" thus requiring no change in text.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4046, 4071b of this title; title 26 section 3121; title 42 section 410.

**§ 4071j. Former spouses**

**(a) Entitlement to share in benefits; conditions; remarriage; payments as income to former spouse; disability annuities; election regarding method of payment; maximum amount payable**

(1)(A) Unless otherwise expressly provided by any spousal agreement or court order governing disposition of benefits under this part, a former spouse of a participant or former participant is entitled, during the period described in subparagraph (B), to a share (determined under paragraph (2)) of all benefits otherwise payable to such participant under this part if such former spouse was married to the participant for at

least 10 years during service of the participant which is creditable under this subchapter with at least 5 of such years occurring while the participant was a member of the Foreign Service.

(B) The period referred to in subparagraph (A) is the period which begins on the first day of the month following the month in which the divorce or annulment becomes final and ends on the last day of the month before the former spouse dies or remarries before 55 years of age.

(2) The share referred to in paragraph (1) equals—

(A) 50 percent, if such former spouse was married to the participant throughout the actual years of service of the participant which are creditable under this subchapter; or

(B) a pro rata share of 50 percent, if such former spouse was not married to the participant throughout such creditable service.

(3) A former spouse shall not be qualified for any benefit under this subsection if, before the commencement of any benefit, the former spouse remarries before becoming 55 years of age.

(4)(A) For purposes of title 26, payments to a former spouse under this section shall be treated as income to the former spouse and not to the participant.

(B) Any reduction in payments to a participant or former participant as a result of payments to a former spouse under this subsection shall be disregarded in calculating—

(i) the survivor annuity for any spouse, former spouse, or other survivor under this part, and

(ii) any reduction in the annuity of the participant to provide survivor benefits under this part.

(5) Notwithstanding subsection (a)(1) of this section, in the case of any former spouse of a disability annuitant—

(A) the annuity of the former spouse shall commence on the date the participant would qualify, on the basis of his or her creditable service, for an annuity under this subchapter (other than a disability annuity) or the date the disability annuity begins, whichever is later, and

(B) the amount of the annuity of the former spouse shall be calculated on the basis of the annuity for which the participant would otherwise so qualify.

(6)(A) Except as provided in subparagraph (B), any former spouse who becomes entitled to receive any benefit under this part which would otherwise be payable to a participant or former participant shall be entitled to make any election regarding method of payment to such former spouse that such participant would have otherwise been entitled to elect, and the participant may elect an alternate method for the remaining share of such benefits. Such elections shall not increase the actuarial present value of benefits expected to be paid under this part.

(B) A former spouse may not elect a method of payment under subchapter II, chapter 84 of title 5, providing for payment of a survivor annuity to any survivor of the former spouse.

(7) The maximum amount payable to any former spouse pursuant to this subsection shall

be the difference, if any, between 50 percent of the total benefits authorized to be paid to a former participant by this part, disregarding any apportionment of these benefits to others, and the aggregate amount payable to all others at any one time.

**(b) Entitlement to survivor benefits; determination of share; disqualification upon remarriage**

(1) Unless otherwise expressly provided for by any spousal agreement or court order governing survivorship benefits under this part to a former spouse married to a participant or former participant for the periods specified in subsection (a)(1)(A) of this section, such former spouse is entitled to a share, determined under subsection (b)(2) of this section, of all survivor benefits that would otherwise be payable under this part to an eligible surviving spouse of the participant.

(2) The share referred to in subsection (b)(1) of this section equals—

(A) 100 percent if such former spouse was married to the participant throughout the entire period of service of the participant which is creditable under this subchapter; or

(B) a pro rata share of 100 percent if such former spouse was not married to the participant throughout such creditable service.

(3) A former spouse shall not be qualified for any benefit under this subsection if, before the commencement of any benefit, the former spouse remarries before becoming 55 years of age.

**(c) Diminution of entitlement of former spouse prohibited**

A participant or former participant may not make any election or modification of election under section 8417, 8418, or 8433 of title 5 or other section relating to the participant's account in the Thrift Savings Plan or annuity under the basic plan that would diminish the entitlement of a former spouse to any benefit granted to the former spouse by this section or in a current spousal agreement.

**(d) Transfer of participant from Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System; determination of benefit share**

If a member becomes a participant under this part after qualifying for benefits under part I of this subchapter and, at the time of transfer, has a former spouse entitled to benefits under part I of this subchapter which are determined under section 4054 or 4055 of this title (as determined by the Secretary of State) and are similar in amount to a pro rata share division under section 4054 or 4055 of this title and the service of the member as a participant under this part is not recognized in determining that pro rata share, then subsections (a) and (b) of this section shall not apply to such former spouse. Otherwise, subsections (a) and (b) of this section shall apply.

**(e) Death of participant entitled to deferred annuity; spousal agreement; payment of survivor annuity**

If a participant dies after completing at least 18 months of service or a former participant dies entitled to a deferred annuity, but before becom-

ing eligible to receive the annuity, and such participant or former participant has left with the Secretary of State a spousal agreement promising a share of a survivor annuity under subchapter IV, chapter 84, title 5, to a former spouse, such survivor annuity shall be paid under the terms of this part as if the survivor annuity had been ordered by a court.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §861, as added Pub. L. 99-335, title IV, §415, June 6, 1986, 100 Stat. 619; amended Pub. L. 99-514, §2, Oct. 22, 1986, 100 Stat. 2095; Pub. L. 99-556, title IV, §407, Oct. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 3139.)

AMENDMENTS

1986—Subsec. (a)(4)(A). Pub. L. 99-514 substituted “Internal Revenue Code of 1986” for “Internal Revenue Code of 1954”, which for purposes of codification was translated as “title 26” thus requiring no change in text.

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 99-556 added par. (3).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99-556 effective Jan. 1, 1987, see section 408 of Pub. L. 99-556, set out as a note under section 4046 of this title.

**§ 4071k. Spousal agreements**

A spousal agreement is any written agreement (properly authenticated as determined by the Secretary of State) between a participant or former participant and his or her spouse or former spouse on file with the Secretary of State. A spousal agreement shall be consistent with the terms of this chapter and applicable regulations and, if executed at the time a participant or former participant is currently married, shall be approved by such current spouse. It may be used to fix the level of benefits payable under this part to a spouse or former spouse.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §862, as added Pub. L. 99-335, title IV, §415, June 6, 1986, 100 Stat. 621.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 96-465, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2071, as amended, known as the Foreign Service Act of 1980, which is classified principally to this chapter (§3901 et seq.). For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3901 of this title and Tables.

SUBCHAPTER IX—TRAVEL, LEAVE, AND OTHER BENEFITS

SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in section 4153 of this title; title 7 section 1766c; title 26 section 912; title 31 section 325; title 42 section 242f; title 50 section 403e.

**§ 4081. Travel and related expenses**

The Secretary may pay the travel and related expenses of members of the Service and their families, including costs or expenses incurred for—

(1) proceeding to and returning from assigned posts of duty;

(2) authorized or required home leave;

(3) family members to accompany, precede, or follow a member of the Service to a place of temporary duty;

(4) representational travel within the country to which the member of the Service is assigned or, when not more than one family member participates, outside such country;

(5) obtaining necessary medical care for an illness, injury, or medical condition while abroad in a locality where there is no suitable person or facility to provide such care (without regard to those laws and regulations limiting or restricting the furnishing or payment of transportation and traveling expenses), as well as expenses for—

(A) an attendant or attendants for a member of the Service or a family member who is too ill to travel unattended or for a family member who is too young to travel alone, and

(B) a family member incapable of caring for himself or herself if he or she remained at the post at which the member of the Service is serving;

(6) rest and recuperation travel of members of the Service who are United States citizens, and members of their families, while serving at locations abroad specifically designated by the Secretary for purposes of this paragraph, to—

(A) other locations abroad having different social, climatic, or other environmental conditions than those at the post at which the member of the Service is serving, or

(B) locations in the United States;

except that, unless the Secretary otherwise specifies in extraordinary circumstances, travel expenses under this paragraph shall be limited to the cost for a member of the Service, and for each member of the family of the member, of 1 round trip during any continuous 2-year tour unbroken by home leave and of 2 round trips during any continuous 3-year tour unbroken by home leave;

(7) removal of the family members of a member of the Service, and the furniture and household and personal effects (including automobiles) of the family, from a Foreign Service post where there is imminent danger because of the prevalence of disturbed conditions, and the return of such individuals, furniture, and effects to such post upon the cessation of such conditions, or to such other Foreign Service post as may in the meantime have become the post to which the member of the Service has been reassigned;

(8) trips by a member of the Service for purposes of family visitation in situations where the family of the member is prevented by official order from accompanying the member to, or has been ordered from, the assigned post of the member because of imminent danger due to the prevalence of disturbed conditions, except that—

(A) with respect to any such member whose family is located in the United States, the Secretary may pay the costs and expenses for not to exceed two round trips in a 12-month period; and

(B) with respect to any such member whose family is located abroad, the Secretary may pay such costs and expenses for trips in a 12-month period as do not exceed

the cost of 2 round trips (at less than first class) to the District of Columbia;

(9) roundtrip travel to or from an employee's post of assignment for purposes of family visitation in emergency situations involving personal hardship, except that payment for travel by family members to an employee's post of assignment may be authorized under this paragraph only where the family of the member is prevented by official order from residing at such post.<sup>1</sup>

(10) preparing and transporting to the designated home in the United States or to a place not more distant, the remains of a member of the Service, or of a family member of a member of the Service, who dies abroad or while in travel status or, if death occurs in the United States, transport of the remains to the designated home in the United States or to a place not more distant;

(11) transporting the furniture and household and personal effects of a member of the Service (and of his or her family) to successive posts of duty and, on separation of a member from the Service, to the place where the member will reside (or if the member has died, to the place where his or her family will reside);

(12) packing and unpacking, transporting to and from a place of storage, and storing the furniture and household and personal effects of a member of the Service (and of his or her family)—

(A) when the member is absent from his or her post of assignment under orders or is assigned to a Foreign Service post to which such furniture and household and personal effects cannot be taken or at which they cannot be used, or when it is in the public interest or more economical to authorize storage;

(B) in connection with an assignment of the member to a new post, except that costs and expenses may be paid under this subparagraph only for the period beginning on the date of departure from his or her last post or (in the case of a new member) on the date of departure from the place of residence of the member and ending on the earlier of the date which is 3 months after arrival of the member at the new post or the date on which the member establishes residence quarters, except that in extraordinary circumstances the Secretary may extend this period for not more than an additional 90 days; and

(C) in connection with separation of the member from the Service, except that costs or expenses may not be paid under this subparagraph for storing furniture and household and personal effects for more than 3 months, except that in extraordinary circumstances the Secretary may extend this period for not more than an additional 90 days;

(13) transporting, for or on behalf of a member of the Service, a privately owned motor vehicle in any case in which the Secretary determines that water, rail, or air transpor-

<sup>1</sup> So in original. The period probably should be a semicolon.

tation of the motor vehicle is necessary or expedient for all or any part of the distance between points of origin and destination, but transportation may be provided under this paragraph for only one motor vehicle of a member during any 48-month period while the member is continuously serving abroad, except that another motor vehicle may be so transported as a replacement for such motor vehicle if such replacement—

(A) is determined, in advance, by the Secretary to be necessary for reasons beyond the control of the member and in the interest of the Government, or

(B) is incident to a reassignment when the cost of transporting the replacement motor vehicle does not exceed the cost of transporting the motor vehicle that is replaced;

(14) the travel and relocation of members of the Service, and members of their families, assigned to or within the United States (or any territory or possession of the United States or the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico), including assignments under subchapter VI of chapter 33 of title 5 (notwithstanding section 3375(a) of such title, if an agreement similar to that required by section 3375(b) of such title is executed by the member of the Service); and

(15) 1 round-trip per year for each child below age 21 of a member of the Service assigned abroad—

(A) to visit the member abroad if the child does not regularly reside with the member and the member is not receiving an education allowance or educational travel allowance for the child under section 5924(4) of title 5; or

(B) to visit the other parent of the child if the other parent resides in a country other than the country to which the member is assigned and the child regularly resides with the member and does not regularly attend school in the country in which the other parent resides,

except that a payment under this paragraph may not exceed the cost of round-trip travel between the post to which the member is assigned and the port of entry in the contiguous 48 States which is nearest to that post.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §901, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2124; Pub. L. 101-246, title I, §148, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 38; Pub. L. 102-138, title I, §§145, 146, Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 668, 669.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1991—Par. (10). Pub. L. 102-138, §146, inserted before semicolon “or, if death occurs in the United States, transport of the remains to the designated home in the United States or to a place not more distant”.

Par. (12)(B). Pub. L. 102-138, §145(1), inserted before semicolon “, except that in extraordinary circumstances the Secretary may extend this period for not more than an additional 90 days”.

Par. (12)(C). Pub. L. 102-138, §145(2), inserted before semicolon “, except that in extraordinary circumstances the Secretary may extend this period for not more than an additional 90 days”.

1990—Par. (9). Pub. L. 101-246 amended par. (9) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (9) read as follows: “round-trip travel from a location abroad for purposes of family visitation in emergency situations involving personal hardship”.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 2 section 143a; title 10 section 1605; title 28 section 530A; title 37 section 431; title 38 section 707.

#### § 4082. Loan of household effects

The Secretary may, as a means of eliminating transportation costs, provide members of the Service with basic household furnishing and equipment for use on a loan basis in personally owned or leased residences.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §902, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2127.)

#### § 4083. Required leave

##### (a) Criteria; length of continuous service

The Secretary may order a member of the Service (other than a member employed under section 3951 of this title) who is a citizen of the United States to take a leave of absence under section 6305 of title 5 (without regard to the introductory clause of subsection (a) of that section), upon completion by that member of 18 months of continuous service abroad. The Secretary shall order on such a leave of absence a member of the Service (other than a member employed under section 3951 of this title) who is a citizen of the United States as soon as possible after completion by that member of 3 years of continuous service abroad.

##### (b) Place leave may be taken

Leave ordered under this section may be taken in the United States, its territories and possessions, or the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico.

##### (c) Availability for work or duties in Department

While on a leave of absence ordered under this section, the services of any member of the Service shall be available for such work or duties in the Department or elsewhere as the Secretary may prescribe, but the time of such work or duties shall not be counted as leave.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §903, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2127; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §180(a)(8), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 416.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103-236 inserted “(other than a member employed under section 3951 of this title)” after “member of the Service” in two places.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 10 section 1605; title 37 section 431; title 38 section 707.

#### § 4084. Health care program

##### (a) Establishment

The Secretary of State shall establish a health care program to promote and maintain the physical and mental health of members of the Service, and (when incident to service abroad) other designated eligible Government employees, and members of the families of such members and employees.

##### (b) Services provided

Any such health care program may include (1) medical examinations for applicants for employment, (2) medical examinations and inoculations

or vaccinations, and other preventive and remedial care and services as necessary, for members of the Service and employees of the Department who are citizens of the United States and for members of their families, and (3) examinations necessary in order to establish disability or incapacity of participants in the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System or Foreign Service Pension System or to provide survivor benefits under subchapter VIII of this chapter.

**(c) Facilities; employment of personnel**

The Secretary of State may establish health care facilities and provide for the services of physicians, nurses, or other health care personnel at Foreign Service posts abroad at which, in the opinion of the Secretary of State, a sufficient number of Government employees are assigned to warrant such facilities or services.

**(d) Costs of treatment**

If an individual eligible for health care under this section incurs an illness, injury, or medical condition which requires treatment while assigned to a post abroad or located overseas pursuant to Government authorization, the Secretary may pay the cost of such treatment.

**(e) Death or separation of member**

Health care may be provided under this section to a member of the Service or other designated eligible Government employee after the separation of such member or employee from Government service. Health care may be provided under this section to a member of the family of a member of the Service or of a designated eligible Government employee after the separation from Government service or the death of such member of the Service or employee or after dissolution of the marriage.

**(f) Review; medical care contracts**

The Secretary of State shall review on a continuing basis the health care program provided for in this section. Whenever the Secretary of State determines that all or any part of such program can be provided for as well and as cheaply in other ways, the Secretary may, for such individuals, locations, and conditions as the Secretary of State deems appropriate, contract for health care pursuant to such arrangements as the Secretary deems appropriate.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 904, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2127; Pub. L. 99-93, title I, § 122, Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 413; Pub. L. 100-238, title II, § 243, Jan. 8, 1988, 101 Stat. 1776.)

AMENDMENTS

1988—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 100-238 inserted “or Foreign Service Pension System” after “System”.

1985—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99-93, § 122(1), substituted “shall” for “may”.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 99-93, § 122(2), inserted “, and other preventive and remedial care and services as necessary,”.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 99-93, § 122(3), amended subsec. (d) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (d) read as follows: “If an individual eligible for health care under this section incurs an illness, injury, or medical condition while abroad which requires hospitalization or similar treatment, the Secretary may pay all or part of the cost of such treatment. Limitations on such payments established by regulation may be waived whenever the Secretary determines that the illness, injury,

or medical condition clearly was caused or materially aggravated by the fact that the individual concerned is or has been located abroad.”

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1988 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 100-238 effective 90 days after Jan. 8, 1988, see section 261(a) of Pub. L. 100-238, set out as a note under section 4054 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 2 section 143a; title 28 section 530A; title 38 section 707.

**§ 4085. Entertainment and representation expenses**

Notwithstanding section 5536 of title 5, the Secretary may provide for official receptions and may pay entertainment and representational expenses (including expenses of family members) to enable the Department and the Service to provide for the proper representation of the United States and its interests. In carrying out this section, the Secretary shall, to the maximum extent practicable, provide for the use of United States products, including American wine.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 905, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2128.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 287e, 1452, 2389, 2513 of this title; title 38 section 707.

**§ 4086. Entitlement to vote in a State in a Federal election; preconditions; applicability**

(a) Except as provided in subsection (b) of this section and in such manner as shall be otherwise authorized by a State or other jurisdiction within the territory of the United States, a member of the Service residing outside the United States shall, in addition to any entitlement to vote in a State in a Federal election under section 3 of the Overseas Citizens Voting Rights Act (42 U.S.C. 1973dd-1), be entitled to vote in a Federal election in the State in which such member was last domiciled immediately before entering the Service if such member—

(1) makes an election of that State;

(2) notifies that State of such election and notifies any other States in which he or she is entitled to vote of such election; and

(3) otherwise meets the requirements of such Act [42 U.S.C. 1973dd et seq.].

(b) The provisions of subsection (a) of this section shall apply only to an individual who becomes a member of the Service on or after November 22, 1983, and shall not apply to an individual who registers to vote in a State in which he is entitled to vote under section 3 of Overseas Citizens Voting Rights Act [42 U.S.C. 1973dd-1].

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, § 906, as added Pub. L. 98-164, title I, § 129(a), Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1027.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Overseas Citizens Voting Rights Act, referred to in text, probably means the Overseas Citizens Voting Rights Act of 1975, Pub. L. 94-203, Jan. 2, 1976, 89 Stat. 1142, as amended, which was classified generally to subchapter I-E (§1973dd et seq.) of chapter 20 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare, and which was repealed by Pub. L. 99-410, title II, § 203, Aug. 28, 1986, 100 Stat. 930. See section 1973ff et seq. of Title 42.

SUBCHAPTER X—LABOR-MANAGEMENT  
RELATIONS

SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in sections 4131, 4153 of this title.

**§ 4101. Congressional findings and policy**

The Congress finds that—

(1) experience in both private and public employment indicates that the statutory protection of the right of workers to organize, bargain collectively, and participate through labor organizations of their own choosing in decisions which affect them—

(A) safeguards the public interest,

(B) contributes to the effective conduct of public business, and

(C) facilitates and encourages the amicable settlement of disputes between workers and their employers involving conditions of employment;

(2) the public interest demands the highest standards of performance by members of the Service and the continuous development and implementation of modern and progressive work practices to facilitate improved performance and efficiency; and

(3) the unique conditions of Foreign Service employment require a distinct framework for the development and implementation of modern, constructive, and cooperative relationships between management officials and organizations representing members of the Service.

Therefore, labor organizations and collective bargaining in the Service are in the public interest and are consistent with the requirement of an effective and efficient Government. The provisions of this subchapter should be interpreted in a manner consistent with the requirement of an effective and efficient Government.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §1001, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2128.)

**§ 4102. Definitions**

As used in this subchapter, the term—

(1) “Authority” means the Federal Labor Relations Authority, described in section 7104(a) of title 5;

(2) “Board” means the Foreign Service Labor Relations Board, established by section 4106(a) of this title;

(3) “collective bargaining” means the performance of the mutual obligation of the management representative of the Department and of the exclusive representative of employees to meet at reasonable times and to consult and bargain in a good-faith effort to reach agreement with respect to the conditions of employment affecting employees, and to execute, if requested by either party, a written document incorporating any collective bargaining agreement reached, but this obligation does not compel either party to agree to a proposal or to make a concession;

(4) “collective bargaining agreement” means an agreement entered into as a result of collective bargaining under the provisions of this subchapter;

(5) “conditions of employment” means personnel policies, practices, and matters, whether established by regulation or otherwise, affecting working conditions, but does not include policies, practices, and matters—

(A) relating to political activities prohibited abroad or prohibited under subchapter III of chapter 73 of title 5;

(B) relating to the designation or classification of any position under section 3981 of this title;

(C) to the extent such matters are specifically provided for by Federal statute; or

(D) relating to Government-wide or multi-agency responsibility of the Secretary affecting the rights, benefits, or obligations of individuals employed in agencies other than those which are authorized to utilize the Foreign Service personnel system;

(6) “confidential employee” means an employee who acts in a confidential capacity with respect to an individual who formulates or effectuates management policies in the field of labor-management relations;

(7) “dues” means dues, fees, and assessments;

(8) “employee” means—

(A) a member of the Service who is a citizen of the United States, wherever serving, other than a management official, a confidential employee, a consular agent, a member of the Service who is a United States citizen (other than a family member) employed under section 3951 of this title, or any individual who participates in a strike in violation of section 7311 of title 5; or

(B) a former member of the Service as described in subparagraph (A) whose employment has ceased because of an unfair labor practice under section 4115 of this title and who has not obtained any other regular and substantially equivalent employment, as determined under regulations prescribed by the Board;

(9) “exclusive representative” means any labor organization which is certified as the exclusive representative of employees under section 4111 of this title;

(10) “General Counsel” means the General Counsel of the Authority;

(11) “labor organization” means an organization composed in whole or in part of employees, in which employees participate and pay dues, and which has as a purpose dealing with the Department concerning grievances (as defined in section 4131 of this title) and conditions of employment, but does not include—

(A) an organization which, by its constitution, bylaws, tacit agreement among its members, or otherwise, denies membership because of race, color, creed, national origin, sex, age, preferential or nonpreferential civil service status, political affiliation, marital status, or handicapping condition;

(B) an organization which advocates the overthrow of the constitutional form of government of the United States;

(C) an organization sponsored by the Department; or

(D) an organization which participates in the conduct of a strike against the Govern-



ment or any agency thereof or imposes a duty or obligation to conduct, assist, or participate in such a strike;

(12) “management official” means an individual who—

(A) is a chief of mission or principal officer;

(B) is serving in a position to which appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, or by the President alone;

(C) occupies a position which in the sole judgment of the Secretary is of comparable importance to the offices mentioned in subparagraph (A) or (B);

(D) is serving as a deputy to any individual described by subparagraph (A), (B), or (C);

(E) is assigned to carry out functions of the Inspector General of the Department of State and the Foreign Service under section 3929 of this title; or

(F) is engaged in the administration of this subchapter or in the formulation of the personnel policies and programs of the Department;

(13) “Panel” means the Foreign Service Impasse Disputes Panel, established by section 4110(a) of this title; and

(14) “person” means an individual, a labor organization, or an agency to which this subchapter applies.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §1002, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2129; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §180(a)(9), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 416.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Par. (8)(A). Pub. L. 103-236 inserted “a member of the Service who is a United States citizen (other than a family member) employed under section 3951 of this title,”.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 3902 of this title; title 5 section 5596.

### § 4103. Application

#### (a) Departments and agencies affected

This subchapter applies only with respect to the Department of State, the United States Information Agency, the United States International Development Cooperation Agency, the Department of Agriculture, and the Department of Commerce.

#### (b) Exclusion of subdivisions

The President may by Executive order exclude any subdivision of the Department from coverage under this subchapter if the President determines that—

(1) the subdivision has as a primary function intelligence, counterintelligence, investigative, or national security work, and

(2) the provisions of this subchapter cannot be applied to that subdivision in a manner consistent with national security requirements and considerations.

#### (c) Suspension of provisions

The President may by Executive order suspend any provision of this subchapter with respect to

any post, bureau, office, or activity of the Department, if the President determines in writing that the suspension is necessary in the interest of national security because of an emergency.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §1003, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2130; Pub. L. 97-241, title III, §303(b), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291.)

#### CHANGE OF NAME

“United States Information Agency” substituted for “International Communication Agency” in subsec. (a), pursuant to section 303(b) of Pub. L. 97-241, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4173 of this title.

### § 4104. Employee rights

(a) Every employee has the right to form, join, or assist any labor organization, or to refrain from any such activity, freely and without fear of penalty or reprisal. Each employee shall be protected in the exercise of such right.

(b) Except as otherwise provided under this subchapter, such right includes the right—

(1) to act for a labor organization in the capacity of a representative and, in that capacity, to present the views of the labor organization to the Secretary and other officials of the Government, including the Congress, or other appropriate authorities; and

(2) to engage in collective bargaining with respect to conditions of employment through representatives chosen by employees under this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §1004, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2130.)

### § 4105. Management rights

(a) Subject to subsection (b) of this section, nothing in this subchapter shall affect the authority of any management official of the Department, in accordance with applicable law—

(1) to determine the mission, budget, organization, and internal security practices of the Department, and the number of individuals in the Service or in the Department;

(2) to hire, assign, direct, lay off, and retain individuals in the Service or in the Department, to suspend, remove, or take other disciplinary action against such individuals, and to determine the number of members of the Service to be promoted and to remove the name of or delay the promotion of any member in accordance with regulations prescribed under section 4005(b) of this title;

(3) to conduct reductions in force, and to prescribe regulations for the separation of employees pursuant to such reductions in force conducted under section 4010a of this title;

(4) to assign work, to make determinations with respect to contracting out, and to determine the personnel by which the operations of the Department shall be conducted;

(5) to fill positions from any appropriate source;

(6) to determine the need for uniform personnel policies and procedures between or among the agencies to which this subchapter applies; and

(7) to take whatever actions may be necessary to carry out the mission of the Department during emergencies.

(b) Nothing in this section shall preclude the Department and the exclusive representative from negotiating—

(1) at the election of the Department, on the numbers, types, and classes of employees or positions assigned to any organizational subdivision, work project, or tour of duty, or on the technology, methods, and means of performing work;

(2) procedures which management officials of the Department will observe in exercising any function under this section; or

(3) appropriate arrangements for employees adversely affected by the exercise of any function under this section by such management officials.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §1005, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2131; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §181(b), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 417; Pub. L. 103-415, §1(jj)(2), Oct. 25, 1994, 108 Stat. 4303.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (a)(3) to (7). Pub. L. 103-236, as amended by Pub. L. 103-415, added par. (3) and redesignated former pars. (3) to (6) as (4) to (7), respectively.

### § 4106. Foreign Service Labor Relations Board

#### (a) Establishment; composition

There is established within the Federal Labor Relations Authority the Foreign Service Labor Relations Board. The Board shall be composed of 3 members, 1 of whom shall be the Chairman of the Authority, who shall be the Chairperson of the Board. The remaining 2 members shall be appointed by the Chairperson of the Board from nominees approved in writing by the agencies to which this subchapter applies, and the exclusive representative (if any) of employees in each such agency. In the event of inability to obtain agreement on a nominee, the Chairperson shall appoint the remaining 2 members from among individuals the Chairperson considers knowledgeable in labor-management relations and the conduct of foreign affairs.

#### (b) Chairperson serving concurrently as Chairman of Authority; length of terms; designation of alternate Chairperson

The Chairperson shall serve on the Board while serving as Chairman of the Authority. Of the 2 original members of the Board other than the Chairperson, one shall be appointed for a 2-year term and one shall be appointed for a 3-year term. Thereafter, each member of the Board other than the Chairperson shall be appointed for a term of 3 years, except that an individual appointed to fill a vacancy occurring before the end of a term shall be appointed for the unexpired term of the member replaced. The Chairperson may at any time designate an alternate Chairperson from among the members of the Authority.

#### (c) Vacancies

A vacancy on the Board shall not impair the right of the remaining members to exercise the full powers of the Board.

#### (d) Holding other Government offices or positions; compensation

The members of the Board, other than the Chairperson, may not hold another office or position in the Government except as authorized by law, and shall receive compensation at the daily equivalent of the rate payable for level V of the Executive Schedule under section 5316 of title 5 for each day they are performing their duties (including traveltime).

#### (e) Removal of members

The Chairperson may remove any other Board member, upon written notice, for corruption, neglect of duty, malfeasance, or demonstrated incapacity to perform his or her functions, established at a hearing, except where the right to a hearing is waived in writing.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §1006, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2131.)

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4102 of this title.

### § 4107. Functions of Foreign Service Labor Relations Board

#### (a) General provisions

The Board shall—

(1) supervise or conduct elections and determine whether a labor organization has been selected as the exclusive representative by a majority of employees who cast valid ballots and otherwise administer the provisions of this subchapter relating to the according of exclusive recognition to a labor organization;

(2) resolve complaints of alleged unfair labor practices;

(3) resolve issues relating to the obligation to bargain in good faith;

(4) resolve disputes concerning the effect, the interpretation, or a claim of breach of a collective bargaining agreement, in accordance with section 4114 of this title; and

(5) take any action considered necessary to administer effectively the provisions of this subchapter.

#### (b) Consistency or precedence of decisions under other provisions of law

Decisions of the Board under this subchapter shall be consistent with decisions rendered by the Authority under chapter 71 of title 5, other than in cases in which the Board finds that special circumstances require otherwise. Decisions of the Board under this subchapter shall not be construed as precedent by the Authority, or any court or other authority, for any decision under chapter 71 of title 5.

#### (c) Implementation

In order to carry out its functions under this subchapter—

(1) the Board shall by regulation adopt procedures to apply in the administration of this subchapter; and

(2) the Board may—

(A) adopt other regulations concerning its functions under this subchapter;

(B) conduct appropriate inquiries wherever persons subject to this subchapter are located;

(C) hold hearings;

(D) administer oaths, take the testimony or deposition of any individual under oath, and issue subpoenas;

(E) require the Department or a labor organization to cease and desist from violations of this subchapter and require it to take any remedial action the Board considers appropriate to carry out this subchapter; and

(F) consistent with the provisions of this subchapter, exercise the functions the Authority has under chapter 71 of title 5 to the same extent and in the same manner as is the case with respect to persons subject to chapter 71 of such title.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §1007, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2132.)

#### § 4108. Functions of General Counsel

The General Counsel may—

(1) investigate alleged unfair labor practices under this subchapter,

(2) file and prosecute complaints under this subchapter, and

(3) exercise such other powers of the Board as the Board may prescribe.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §1008, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2133.)

#### § 4109. Judicial review and enforcement

##### (a) Persons entitled to maintain action; time of filing; venue

Except as provided in section 4114(d) of this title, any person aggrieved by a final order of the Board may, during the 60-day period beginning on the date on which the order was issued, institute an action for judicial review of such order in the United States Court of Appeals for the District of Columbia.

##### (b) Enforcement of order; temporary relief or restraining order

The Board may petition the United States Court of Appeals for the District of Columbia for the enforcement of any order of the Board under this subchapter and for any appropriate temporary relief or restraining order.

##### (c) Applicability of other provisions of law

Subsection (c) of section 7123 of title 5 shall apply to judicial review and enforcement of actions by the Board in the same manner that it applies to judicial review and enforcement of actions of the Authority under chapter 71 of title 5.

##### (d) Unfair labor practices

The Board may, upon issuance of a complaint as provided in section 4116 of this title charging that any person has engaged in or is engaging in an unfair labor practice, petition the United States District Court for the District of Columbia, for appropriate temporary relief (including a restraining order). Upon the filing of the petition, the court shall cause notice thereof to be served upon the person, and thereupon shall have jurisdiction to grant any temporary relief (including a temporary restraining order) it considers just and proper. A court shall not grant

any temporary relief under this section if it would interfere with the ability of the Department to carry out its essential functions or if the Board fails to establish probable cause that an unfair labor practice is being committed.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §1009, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2133.)

#### § 4110. Foreign Service Impasse Disputes Panel

##### (a) Establishment; composition

There is established within the Federal Labor Relations Authority the Foreign Service Impasse Disputes Panel, which shall assist in resolving negotiating impasses arising in the course of collective bargaining under this subchapter. The Chairperson shall select the Panel from among individuals the Chairperson considers knowledgeable in labor-management relations or the conduct of foreign affairs. The Panel shall be composed of 5 members, as follows:

(1) 2 members of the Service (other than a management official, a confidential employee, or a labor organization official);

(2) one individual employed by the Department of Labor;

(3) one member of the Federal Service Impasses Panel; and

(4) one public member who does not hold any other office or position in the Government.

The Chairperson of the Board shall set the terms of office for Panel members and determine who shall chair the Panel.

##### (b) Compensation; travel expenses

Panel members referred to in subsection (a) (3) and (4) of this section shall receive compensation for each day they are performing their duties (including traveltime) at the daily equivalent of the maximum rate payable for grade GS-18 of the General Schedule under section 5332 of title 5, except that the member who is also a member of the Federal Service Impasses Panel shall not be entitled to pay under this subsection for any day for which he or she receives pay under section 7119(b)(4)<sup>1</sup> of title 5. Members of the Panel shall be entitled to travel expenses as provided under section 5703 of title 5.

##### (c) Impasse investigation and settlement; hearings and other actions upon failure to settle; notice; binding nature of action

(1) The Panel or its designee shall promptly investigate any impasse presented to it by a party. The Panel shall consider the impasse and shall either—

(A) recommend to the parties to the negotiation procedures for the resolution of the impasse; or

(B) assist the parties in resolving the impasse through whatever methods and procedures, including factfinding and recommendations, it may consider appropriate to accomplish the purpose of this section.

(2) If the parties do not arrive at a settlement after assistance by the Panel under paragraph (1), the Panel may—

(A) hold hearings;

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

(B) administer oaths, take the testimony or deposition of any individual under oath, and issue subpoenas as provided in section 7132 of title 5; and

(C) take whatever action is necessary and not inconsistent with this subchapter to resolve the impasse.

(3) Notice of any final action of the Panel under this section shall be promptly served upon the parties, and the action shall be binding on such parties during the term of the collective bargaining agreement unless the parties agree otherwise.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §1010, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2133.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 7119(b)(4) of title 5, referred to in subsec. (b), probably means section 7119(c)(4) of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

#### REFERENCES IN OTHER LAWS TO GS-16, 17, OR 18 PAY RATES

References in laws to the rates of pay for GS-16, 17, or 18, or to maximum rates of pay under the General Schedule, to be considered references to rates payable under specified sections of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, see section 529 [title I, §101(c)(1)] of Pub. L. 101-509, set out in a note under section 5376 of Title 5.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4102, 4113 of this title.

### § 4111. Exclusive recognition

#### (a) Secret ballot election; majority vote

The Department shall accord exclusive recognition to a labor organization if the organization has been selected as the representative, in a secret ballot election, by a majority of the employees in a unit who cast valid ballots in the election.

#### (b) Investigation of petition; hearing; supervision of election; certification of results; length of time between elections

If a petition is filed with the Board—

(1) by any person alleging—

(A) in the case of a unit for which there is no exclusive representative, that 30 percent of the employees in the unit wish to be represented for the purpose of collective bargaining by an exclusive representative, or

(B) in the case of a unit for which there is an exclusive representative, that 30 percent of the employees in the unit alleged that the exclusive representative is no longer the representative of the majority of the employees in the unit; or

(2) by any person seeking clarification of, or an amendment to, a certification then in effect or a matter relating to representation;

the Board shall investigate the petition, and if it has reasonable cause to believe that a question of representation exists, it shall provide an opportunity for a hearing (for which a transcript shall be kept) after reasonable notice. If the Board finds on the record of the hearing that a question of representation exists, the Board

shall supervise or conduct an election on the question by secret ballot and shall certify the results thereof. An election under this subsection shall not be conducted in any unit within which a valid election under this subsection has been held during the preceding 12 calendar months or with respect to which a labor organization has been certified as the exclusive representative during the preceding 24 calendar months.

#### (c) Intervention of labor organizations; placement on ballot

A labor organization which—

(1) has been designated by at least 10 percent of the employees in the unit; or

(2) is the exclusive representative of the employees involved;

may intervene with respect to a petition filed pursuant to subsection (b) of this section and shall be placed on the ballot of any election under subsection (b) of this section with respect to the petition.

#### (d) Eligibility to vote; regulations; choices on ballot; preferential voting; certification as exclusive representative

(1) The Board shall determine who is eligible to vote in any election under this section and shall establish regulations governing any such election, which shall include regulations allowing employees eligible to vote the opportunity to choose—

(A) from labor organizations on the ballot, that labor organization which the employees wish to have represent them; or

(B) not to be represented by a labor organization.

(2) In any election in which more than two choices are on the ballot, the regulations of the Board shall provide for preferential voting. If no choice receives a majority of first preferences, the Board shall distribute to the two choices having the most first preferences the preferences as between those two of the other valid ballots cast. The choice receiving a majority of preferences shall be declared the winner. A labor organization which is declared the winner of the election shall be certified by the Board as the exclusive representative.

#### (e) Submission of required material

A labor organization seeking exclusive recognition shall submit to the Board and to the Department a roster of its officers and representatives, a copy of its constitution and by-laws, and a statement of its objectives.

#### (f) Grounds for denial of exclusive recognition status

Exclusive recognition shall not be accorded to a labor organization—

(1) if the Board determines that the labor organization is subject to corrupt influence or influences opposed to democratic principles; or

(2) in the case of a petition filed under subsection (b)(1)(A) of this section, if there is not credible evidence that at least 30 percent of the employees wish to be represented for the purpose of collective bargaining by the labor organization seeking exclusive recognition.

**(g) Waiver of hearings; consent elections**

Nothing in this section shall be construed to prohibit the waiving of hearings by stipulation for the purpose of a consent election in conformity with regulations and rules or decisions of the Board.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §1011, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2134.)

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4102, 4118 of this title.

**§ 4112. Employees represented**

The employees of the Department shall constitute a single and separate worldwide bargaining unit, from which there shall be excluded—

- (1) employees engaged in personnel work in other than a purely clerical capacity; and
- (2) employees engaged in criminal or national security investigations or who audit the work of individuals to insure that their functions are discharged honestly and with integrity.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §1012, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2135.)

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4113 of this title.

**§ 4113. Representation rights and duties****(a) Negotiation of collective bargaining agreements; nondiscriminatory representation**

A labor organization which has been accorded exclusive recognition is the exclusive representative of, and is entitled to act for, and negotiate collective bargaining agreements covering, all employees in the unit described in section 4112 of this title. An exclusive representative is responsible for representing the interests of all employees in that unit without discrimination and without regard to labor organization membership.

**(b) Places of representation**

(1) An exclusive representative shall be given the opportunity to be represented at—

(A) any formal discussion between one or more representatives of the Department and one or more employees in the unit (or their representatives), concerning any grievance (as defined in section 4131 of this title) or any personnel policy or practice or other general condition of employment; and

(B) any examination of an employee by a Department representative in connection with an investigation if—

- (i) the employee reasonably believes that the examination may result in disciplinary action against the employee, and
- (ii) the employee requests such representation.

(2) The Department shall annually inform employees of their rights under paragraph (1)(B).

**(c) Duty to bargain in good faith; determination of techniques assisting negotiation**

The Department and the exclusive representative, through appropriate representatives, shall

meet and negotiate in good faith for the purposes of arriving at a collective bargaining agreement. In addition, the Department and the exclusive representative may determine appropriate techniques, consistent with the provisions of section 4110 of this title, to assist in any negotiation.

**(d) Applicability to other employee rights or remedies**

The rights of an exclusive representative under this section shall not preclude an employee from—

- (1) being represented by an attorney or other representative of the employee's own choosing, other than the exclusive representative, in any grievance proceeding under subchapter XI of this chapter; or
- (2) exercising grievance or appeal rights established by law, rule, or regulation.

**(e) Obligations included in good faith bargaining**

The duty of the Department and the exclusive representative to negotiate in good faith shall include the obligation—

- (1) to approach the negotiations with a sincere resolve to reach a collective bargaining agreement;
- (2) to be represented at the negotiations by duly authorized representatives prepared to discuss and negotiate on any condition of employment;
- (3) to meet at reasonable times and convenient places as frequently as may be necessary and to avoid unnecessary delays;
- (4) for the Department to furnish to the exclusive representative, or its authorized representative, upon request and to the extent not prohibited by law, data—

(A) which is normally maintained by the Department in the regular course of business;

(B) which is reasonably available and necessary for full and proper discussion, understanding, and negotiation of subjects within the scope of collective bargaining; and

(C) which does not constitute guidance, advice, counsel, or training provided for management officials or confidential employees, relating to collective bargaining;

(5) to negotiate jointly with respect to conditions of employment applicable to employees in more than one of the agencies authorized to utilize the Foreign Service personnel system, as determined by the heads of such agencies; and

(6) if agreement is reached, to execute, upon the request of any party to the negotiation, a written document embodying the agreed terms, and to take the steps necessary to implement the agreement.

**(f) Approval of agreement by Secretary; effective date; binding effect**

(1) An agreement between the Department and the exclusive representative shall be subject to approval by the Secretary.

(2) The Secretary shall approve the agreement within 30 days after the date of the agreement unless the Secretary finds in writing that the agreement is contrary to applicable law, rule, or regulation.

(3) Unless the Secretary disapproves the agreement by making a finding under paragraph (2), the agreement shall take effect after 30 days from its execution and shall be binding on the Department and the exclusive representative subject to all applicable laws, orders, and regulations.

**(g) Consultation by Department with exclusive representative**

The Department shall consult with the exclusive representative with respect to Government-wide or multiagency matters affecting the rights, benefits, or obligations of individuals employed in agencies not authorized to utilize the Foreign Service personnel system. The exclusive representative shall be informed of any change proposed by the Department with respect to such matters, and shall be permitted reasonable time to present its views and recommendations regarding such change. The Department shall consider the views and recommendations of the exclusive representative before taking final action on any such change, and shall provide the exclusive representative a written statement of the reasons for taking the final action.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §1013, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2135.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4173 of this title.

**§ 4114. Resolution of implementation disputes**

**(a) Grievance procedure**

Any dispute between the Department and the exclusive representative concerning the effect, interpretation, or a claim of breach of a collective bargaining agreement shall be resolved through procedures negotiated by the Department and the exclusive representative. Any procedures negotiated under this section shall—

- (1) be fair and simple,
- (2) provide for expeditious processing, and
- (3) include provision for appeal to the Foreign Service Grievance Board by either party of any dispute not satisfactorily settled.

**(b) Review by Foreign Service Labor Relations Board**

Either party to an appeal under subsection (a)(3) of this section may file with the Board an exception to the action of the Foreign Service Grievance Board in resolving the implementation dispute. If, upon review, the Board finds that the action is deficient—

- (1) because it is contrary to any law, rule, or regulation; or
- (2) on other grounds similar to those applied by Federal courts in private sector labor-management relations;

the Board may take such action and make such recommendations concerning the Foreign Service Grievance Board action as it considers necessary, consistent with applicable laws, rules, and regulations.

**(c) Time of filing exceptions; finality and binding nature of action**

If no exception to a Foreign Service Grievance Board action is filed under subsection (b) of this

section within 30 days after such action is communicated to the parties, such action shall become final and binding and shall be implemented by the parties.

**(d) Judicial review**

Resolutions of disputes under this section shall not be subject to judicial review.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §1014, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2137.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4107, 4109, 4115 of this title.

**§ 4115. Unfair labor practices**

**(a) Department of State**

It shall be an unfair labor practice for the Department—

(1) to interfere with, restrain, or coerce any employee in the exercise by the employee of any right under this subchapter;

(2) to encourage or discourage membership in any labor organization by discrimination in connection with hiring, tenure, promotion, or other conditions of employment;

(3) to sponsor, control, or otherwise assist any labor organization, other than to furnish upon request customary and routine services and facilities on an impartial basis to labor organizations having equivalent status;

(4) to discipline or otherwise discriminate against an employee because the employee has filed a complaint or petition, or has given any information, affidavit, or testimony under this subchapter;

(5) to refuse to consult or negotiate in good faith with a labor organization, as required under this subchapter;

(6) to fail or refuse to cooperate in impasse procedures and impasse decisions, as required under this subchapter;

(7) to enforce any rule or regulation (other than a rule or regulation implementing section 2302 of title 5) which is in conflict with an applicable collective bargaining agreement if the agreement was in effect before the date the rule or regulation was prescribed; or

(8) to fail or refuse otherwise to comply with any provision of this subchapter.

**(b) Labor organizations**

It shall be an unfair labor practice for a labor organization—

(1) to interfere with, restrain, or coerce any employee in the exercise by the employee of any right under this subchapter;

(2) to cause or attempt to cause the Department to discriminate against any employee in the exercise by the employee of any right under this subchapter;

(3) to coerce, discipline, fine, or attempt to coerce a member of the labor organization as punishment or reprisal, or for the purpose of hindering or impeding the member's work performance or productivity as an employee or the discharge of the member's functions as an employee;

(4) to discriminate against an employee with regard to the terms and conditions of membership in the labor organization on the basis of

race, color, creed, national origin, sex, age preferential or nonpreferential civil service status, political affiliation, marital status, or handicapping condition;

(5) to refuse to consult or negotiate in good faith with the Department, as required under this subchapter;

(6) to fail or refuse to cooperate in impasse procedures and impasse decisions, as required under this subchapter;

(7)(A) to call, or participate in, a strike, work stoppage, or slowdown, or to picket the Department in a labor-management dispute (except that any such picketing in the United States which does not interfere with the Department's operations shall not be an unfair labor practice); or

(B) to condone any unfair labor practice described in subparagraph (A) by failing to take action to prevent or stop such activity;

(8) to deny membership to any employee in the unit represented by the labor organization except—

(A) for failure to tender dues uniformly required as a condition of acquiring and retaining membership, or

(B) in the exercise of disciplinary procedures consistent with the organization's constitution or bylaws and this subchapter; or

(9) to fail or refuse otherwise to comply with any provision of this subchapter.

**(c) Personal views, arguments, opinions, or statements**

The expression of any personal view, argument, or opinion, or the making of any statement, which—

(1) publicizes the fact of a representational election and encourages employees to exercise their right to vote in such an election;

(2) corrects the record with respect to any false or misleading statement made by any person; or

(3) informs employees of the Government's policy relating to labor-management relations and representation,

if the expression contains no threat of reprisal or force or promise of benefit and was not made under coercive conditions shall not—

(A) constitute an unfair labor practice under this subchapter, or

(B) constitute grounds for the setting aside of any election conducted under this subchapter.

**(d) Election of remedies**

Issues which can properly be raised under an appeals procedure may not be raised as unfair labor practices prohibited under this section. Except for matters wherein, under section 4139(a)(2) of this title, an employee has an option of using the grievance procedure under subchapter XI of this chapter or an appeals procedure, issues which can be raised under section 4114 of this title or subchapter XI of this chapter may, in the discretion of the aggrieved party, be raised either under such section or subchapter or else raised as an unfair labor practice under this section, but may not be raised both under this section and under section 4114 of this title or subchapter XI of this chapter.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §1015, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2137; Pub. L. 102-138, title I, §153(d)(2), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 674.)

AMENDMENTS

1991—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 102-138 substituted “section 4139(a)(2)” for “section 4139(b)”.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1991 AMENDMENT

Section 153(f) of Pub. L. 102-138 provided that: “The amendments made by this section [amending this section and sections 4131, 4134, 4137, 4139, and 4140 of this title] shall not apply with respect to any grievance (within the meaning of section 1101 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 4131], as amended by this section) arising before the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 28, 1991].”

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4102, 4117 of this title; title 5 section 5596.

**§ 4116. Prevention of unfair labor practices**

**(a) Investigation by General Counsel; issuance of complaint; statement of reasons**

If the Department or labor organization is charged by any person with having engaged in or engaging in an unfair labor practice, the General Counsel shall investigate the charge and may issue and cause to be served upon the Department or labor organization a complaint. In any case in which the General Counsel does not issue a complaint because the charge fails to state an unfair labor practice, the General Counsel shall provide the person making the charge a written statement of the reasons for not issuing a complaint.

**(b) Notice in complaint**

Any complaint under subsection (a) of this section shall contain a notice—

(1) of the charge;

(2) that a hearing will be held before the Board (or any member thereof or before an individual employed by the Board and designated for such purpose); and

(3) of the time and place fixed for the hearing.

**(c) Answer; personal appearance**

The labor organization or Department involved shall have the right to file an answer to the original and any amended complaint and to appear in person or otherwise and give testimony at the time and place fixed in the complaint for the hearing.

**(d) Time of filing of charges**

(1) Except as provided in paragraph (2), no complaint shall be issued based on any alleged unfair labor practice which occurred more than 6 months before the filing of the charge with the Board.

(2) If the General Counsel determines that the person filing any charge was prevented from filing the charge during the 6-month period referred to in paragraph (1) by reason of—

(A) any failure of the Department or labor organization against which the charge is made to perform a duty owed to the person, or

(B) any concealment which prevented discovery of the alleged unfair labor practice during the 6-month period,

the General Counsel may issue a complaint based on the charge if the charge was filed dur-

ing the 6-month period beginning on the day of the discovery by the person of the alleged unfair labor practice.

**(e) Regulations providing for resolution through informal methods**

The General Counsel may prescribe regulations providing for informal methods by which the alleged unfair labor practice may be resolved prior to the issuance of a complaint.

**(f) Hearing**

The Board (or any member thereof or any individual employed by the Board and designated for such purpose) shall conduct a hearing on the complaint not earlier than 5 days after the date on which the complaint is served. In the discretion of the individual or individuals conducting the hearing, any person involved may be allowed to intervene in the hearing and to present testimony. Any such hearing shall, to the extent practicable, be conducted in accordance with the provisions of subchapter II of chapter 5 of title 5, except that the parties shall not be bound by rules of evidence, whether statutory, common law, or adopted by a court. A transcript shall be kept of the hearing. After such a hearing the Board, in its discretion, may upon notice receive further evidence or hear argument.

**(g) Findings of fact relative to issuance of orders; backpay**

If the Board (or any member thereof or any individual employed by the Board and designated for such purpose) determines after any hearing on a complaint under subsection (f) of this section that the preponderance of the evidence received demonstrates that the Department or labor organization named in the complaint has engaged in or is engaging in an unfair labor practice, then the individual or individuals conducting the hearing shall state in writing their findings of fact and shall issue and cause to be served on the Department or labor organization an order—

- (1) to cease and desist from any such unfair labor practice in which the Department or labor organization is engaged;
- (2) requiring the parties to renegotiate a collective bargaining agreement in accordance with the order of the Board and requiring that the agreement, as amended, be given retroactive effect;
- (3) requiring reinstatement of an employee with backpay in accordance with section 5596 of title 5; or
- (4) including any combination of the actions described in paragraphs (1) through (3) or such other action as will carry out the purpose of this subchapter.

If any such order requires reinstatement of an employee with backpay, backpay may be required of the Department (as provided in section 5596 of title 5) or of the labor organization, as the case may be, which is found to have engaged in the unfair labor practice involved.

**(h) Findings of fact requiring dismissal of complaint**

If the individual or individuals conducting the hearing determine that the preponderance of the evidence received fails to demonstrate that the

Department or labor organization named in the complaint has engaged in or is engaging in an unfair labor practice, the individual or individuals shall state in writing their findings of fact and shall issue an order dismissing the complaint.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §1016, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2139.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4109 of this title.

**§ 4117. Standards of conduct for labor organizations**

**(a) Freedom from corrupt influences and influences opposed to basic democratic principles**

The Department shall accord recognition only to a labor organization that is free from corrupt influences and influences opposed to basic democratic principles. Except as provided in subsection (b) of this section, an organization is not required to prove that it is free from such influences if it is subject to a governing requirement adopted by the organization or by a national or international labor organization or federation of labor organizations with which it is affiliated, or in which it participates, containing explicit and detailed provisions to which it subscribes calling for—

(1) the maintenance of democratic procedures and practices, including—

(A) provisions for periodic elections to be conducted subject to recognized safeguards, and

(B) provisions defining and securing the right of individual members to participate in the affairs of the organization, to receive fair and equal treatment under the governing rules of the organization, and to receive fair process in disciplinary proceedings;

(2) the exclusion from office in the organization of persons affiliated with Communist or other totalitarian movements and persons identified with corrupt influences;

(3) the prohibition of business or financial interests on the part of organization officers and agents which conflict with their duty to the organization and its members; and

(4) the maintenance of fiscal integrity in the conduct of the affairs of the organization, including provisions for accounting and financial controls and regular financial reports or summaries to be made available to members.

**(b) Furnishing of information**

A labor organization may be required to furnish evidence of its freedom from corrupt influences opposed to basic democratic principles if there is reasonable cause to believe that—

(1) the organization has been suspended or expelled from, or is subject to other sanction by, a parent labor organization, or federation of organizations with which it has been affiliated, because it has demonstrated an unwillingness or inability to comply with governing requirements comparable in purpose to those required by subsection (a) of this section; or

(2) the organization is in fact subject to influences that would preclude recognition under this subchapter.



**(c) Reports; bonding of officials and other employees; compliance with trusteeship and election standards**

A labor organization which has or seeks recognition as a representative of employees under this subchapter shall file financial and other reports with the Assistant Secretary of Labor for Labor Management Relations, provide for bonding of officials and others employed by the organization, and comply with trusteeship and election standards.

**(d) Regulations; filing of complaints; cease and desist orders**

The Assistant Secretary of Labor shall prescribe such regulations as are necessary to carry out this section. Such regulations shall conform generally to the principles applied to labor organizations in the private sector. Complaints of violations of this section shall be filed with the Assistant Secretary. In any matter arising under this section, the Assistant Secretary may require a labor organization to cease and desist from violations of this section and require it to take such actions as the Assistant Secretary considers appropriate to carry out the policies of this section.

**(e) Participation in labor organizations restricted**

(1) Notwithstanding any other provision of this subchapter—

(A) participation in the management of a labor organization for purposes of collective bargaining or acting as a representative of a labor organization for such purposes is prohibited under this subchapter—

(i) on the part of any management official or confidential employee;

(ii) on the part of any individual who has served as a management official or confidential employee during the preceding two years; or

(iii) on the part of any other employee if the participation or activity would result in a conflict of interest or apparent conflict of interest or would otherwise be incompatible with law or with the official functions of such employee; and

(B) service as a management official or confidential employee is prohibited on the part of any individual having participated in the management of a labor organization for purposes of collective bargaining or having acted as a representative of a labor organization during the preceding two years.

(2) For the purposes of paragraph (1)(A)(ii) and paragraph (1)(B), the term “management official” shall not include chiefs of mission, principal officers and their deputies, and administrative and personnel officers abroad.

**(f) Willful and intentional violations**

If the Board finds that any labor organization has willfully and intentionally violated section 4115(b)(7) of this title by omission or commission with regard to any strike, work stoppage, slowdown, the Board shall—

(1) revoke the exclusive recognition status of the labor organization, which shall then immediately cease to be legally entitled and obligated to represent employees in the unit; or

(2) take any other appropriate disciplinary action.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §1017, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2140; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §171, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 411.)

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 103-236 amended subsec. (e) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (e) read as follows: “This subchapter does not authorize participation in the management of a labor organization or acting as a representative of a labor organization by a management official, a confidential employee, or any other employee if the participation or activity would result in a conflict or apparent conflict of interest or would otherwise be incompatible with law or with the official functions of such management official or such employee.”

**§ 4118. Administrative provisions**

**(a) Assignment for deduction of dues**

If the Department has received from any individual a written assignment which authorizes the Department to deduct from the salary of that individual amounts for the payment of regular and periodic dues of the exclusive representative, the Department shall honor the assignment. Any such assignment shall be made at no cost to the exclusive representative or the individual. Except as provided in subsection (b) of this section, any such assignment may not be revoked for a period of one year from its execution.

**(b) Termination of assignment for deduction of dues**

An assignment for deduction of dues shall terminate when—

(1) the labor organization ceases to be the exclusive representative;

(2) the individual ceases to receive a salary from the Department as a member of the Service; or

(3) the individual is suspended or expelled from membership in the exclusive representative.

**(c) Negotiations with uncertified labor organizations**

During any period when no labor organization is certified as the exclusive representative of employees in the Department, the Department shall have the duty to negotiate with a labor organization which has filed a petition under section 4111(b)(1)(A) of this title alleging that 10 percent of the employees in the Department have membership in the organization if the Board has determined that the petition is valid. Negotiations under this subsection shall be concerned solely with the deduction of dues of the labor organization from the salary of the individuals who are members of the labor organization and who make a voluntary allotment for that purpose. Any agreement between the Department and a labor organization under this subsection shall terminate upon the certification of an exclusive representative of any employees to whom the agreement applies.

**(d) Official time usage**

The following provisions shall apply to the use of official time:

(1) Any employee representing an exclusive representative in the negotiation of a collective bargaining agreement under this subchapter shall be authorized official time for such purposes, including attendance at impasse proceedings, during the time the employee otherwise would be in a duty status. The number of employees for whom official time is authorized under this paragraph shall not exceed the number of individuals designated as representing the Department for such purposes.

(2) Any activities performed by any employee relating to the internal business of the labor organization, including the solicitation of membership, elections of labor organization officials, and collection of dues, shall be performed during the time the employee is in a nonduty status.

(3) Except as provided in paragraph (1), the Board shall determine whether any employee participating for, or on behalf of, a labor organization in any phase of proceedings before the Board shall be authorized official time for such purpose during the time the employee would otherwise be in a duty status.

(4) Except as provided in paragraphs (1), (2), and (3), any employee representing an exclusive representative, or engaged in any other matter covered by this subchapter, shall be granted official time in any amount the Department and the exclusive representative agree to be reasonable, necessary, and in the public interest.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §1018, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2141.)

#### SUBCHAPTER XI—GRIEVANCES

##### SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in sections 3949, 4010, 4010a, 4113, 4115, 4153 of this title; title 5 section 5596.

#### § 4131. Definitions and applicability

(a)(1) Except as provided in subsection (b) of this section, for purposes of this subchapter, the term “grievance” means any act, omission, or condition subject to the control of the Secretary which is alleged to deprive a member of the Service who is a citizen of the United States (other than a United States citizen employed under section 3951 of this title who is not a family member) of a right or benefit authorized by law or regulation or which is otherwise a source of concern or dissatisfaction to the member, including—

(A) separation of the member allegedly contrary to laws or regulations, or predicated upon alleged inaccuracy, omission, error, or falsely prejudicial character of information in any part of the official personnel record of the member;

(B) other alleged violation, misinterpretation, or misapplication of applicable laws, regulations, or published policy affecting the terms and conditions of the employment or career status of the member;

(C) allegedly wrongful disciplinary action against the member;

(D) dissatisfaction with respect to the working environment of the member;

(E) alleged inaccuracy, omission, error, or falsely prejudicial character of information in the official personnel record of the member which is or could be prejudicial to the member;

(F) action alleged to be in the nature of reprisal or other interference with freedom of action in connection with participation by the member in procedures under this subchapter;

(G) alleged denial of an allowance, premium pay, or other financial benefit to which the member claims entitlement under applicable laws or regulations; and

(H) any discrimination prohibited by—

(i) section 2000e-16 of title 42,

(ii) section 206(d) of title 29,

(iii) section 791 of title 29,

(iv) sections 631 and 633a of title 29, or

(v) any rule, regulation, or policy directive prescribed under any provision of law described in clauses (i) through (iv).

(2) The scope of grievances described in paragraph (1) may be modified by written agreement between the Department and the labor organization accorded recognition as the exclusive representative under subchapter X of this chapter (hereinafter in this subchapter referred to as the “exclusive representative”).

(b) For purposes of this subchapter, the term “grievance” does not include—

(1) an individual assignment of a member under subchapter V of this chapter, other than an assignment alleged to be contrary to law or regulation;

(2) the judgment of a selection board established under section 4002 of this title, a tenure board established under section 3946(b) of this title, or any other equivalent body established by laws or regulations which similarly evaluates the performance of members of the Service on a comparative basis;

(3) the expiration of a limited appointment, the termination of a limited appointment under section 4011 of this title, or the denial of a limited career extension or of a renewal of a limited career extension under section 4007(b) of this title; or

(4) any complaint or appeal where a specific statutory hearing procedure exists, except as provided in section 4139(a)(2) of this title.

Nothing in this subsection shall exclude any act, omission, or condition alleged to violate any law, rule, regulation, or policy directive referred to in subsection (a)(1)(H) of this section from such term.

(c) This subchapter applies only with respect to the Department of State, the United States Information Agency, the United States International Development Cooperation Agency, the Department of Agriculture, and the Department of Commerce.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §1101, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2142; Pub. L. 97-241, title III, §303(b), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291; Pub. L. 102-138, title I, §153(a), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 673; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §§180(a)(10), 181(a)(4)(A), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 416, 417.)

##### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 103-236, §180(a)(10), inserted “(other than a United States citizen employed

under section 3951 of this title who is not a family member)" after "citizen of the United States" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 103-236, §181(a)(4), made technical amendment to reference to section 4011 of this title to reflect renumbering of corresponding section of original act.

1991—Subsec. (a)(1)(H). Pub. L. 102-138, §153(a)(1), added subpar. (H).

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 102-138, §153(a)(2), in par. (4), substituted "section 4139(a)(2)" for "section 4139(b)" and inserted at end "Nothing in this subsection shall exclude any act, omission, or condition alleged to violate any law, rule, regulation, or policy directive referred to in subsection (a)(1)(H) of this section from such term."

#### CHANGE OF NAME

"United States Information Agency" substituted for "International Communication Agency" in subsec. (c), pursuant to section 303(b) of Pub. L. 97-241, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1991 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 102-138 not applicable with respect to any grievance, within the meaning of this section, arising before Oct. 28, 1991, see section 153(f) of Pub. L. 102-138, set out as a note under section 4115 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4102, 4113, 4132, 4134, 4137, 4139, 4140 of this title; title 5 section 5596.

### § 4132. Grievances concerning former members or their survivors

Within the time limitations of section 4134 of this title, a former member of the Service or the surviving spouse (or, if none, another member of the family) of a deceased member or former member of the Service may file a grievance under this subchapter only with respect to allegations described in section 4131(a)(1)(G) of this title.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §1102, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2143.)

### § 4133. Freedom of action

#### (a) Nature of protection

Any individual filing a grievance under this subchapter (hereinafter in this subchapter referred to as the "grievant"), and any witness, labor organization, or other person involved in a grievance proceeding, shall be free from any restraint, interference, coercion, harassment, discrimination, or reprisal in those proceedings or by virtue of them.

#### (b) Right to representation

(1) The grievant has the right to a representative of his or her own choosing at every stage of the proceedings under this subchapter.

(2) In any case where the grievant is a member of a bargaining unit represented by an exclusive representative, but is not represented in the grievance by that exclusive representative, the exclusive representative shall have the right to appear during the grievance proceedings.

(3) The grievant, and any representative of the grievant who is a member of the Service or employee of the Department, shall be granted reasonable periods of administrative leave to prepare and present the grievance and to attend proceedings under this subchapter.

#### (c) Administrative leave for witnesses

Any witness who is a member of the Service or employee of the Department shall be granted reasonable periods of administrative leave to appear and testify at any proceedings under this subchapter.

#### (d) Records

(1) No record of—

(A) a determination by the Secretary to reject a recommendation of the Foreign Service Grievance Board,

(B) a finding by the Grievance Board against the grievant, or

(C) the fact that a grievance proceeding is pending or has been held,

shall be entered in the personnel records of the grievant (except by order of the Grievance Board as a remedy for the grievance) or those of any other individual connected with the grievance.

(2) The Department shall maintain records pertaining to grievances under appropriate safeguards to preserve confidentiality.

(3) The Foreign Service Grievance Board may enforce compliance with the requirements of paragraphs (1) and (2).

#### (e) Expedition of security clearance procedures

The Department will use its best endeavors to expedite security clearance procedures whenever necessary to assure a fair and prompt resolution of a grievance.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §1103, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2143.)

### § 4134. Time limitations

#### (a) 3-year period

A grievance is forever barred under this subchapter unless it is filed with the Department within a period of 3 years after the occurrence or occurrences giving rise to the grievance or such shorter period as may be agreed to by the Department and the exclusive representative. There shall be excluded from the computation of any such period any time during which, as determined by the Foreign Service Grievance Board, the grievant was unaware of the grounds for the grievance and could not have discovered such grounds through reasonable diligence.

#### (b) Failure of Department to resolve grievance; grievance filed with Foreign Service Grievance Board

If a grievance is not resolved under Department procedures (which have been negotiated with the exclusive representative, if any) within ninety days after it is filed with the Department, the grievant or the exclusive representative (on behalf of a grievant who is a member of the bargaining unit) shall be entitled to file a grievance with the Foreign Service Grievance Board for its consideration and resolution.

#### (c) Grievances based on alleged discrimination

(1) In applying subsection (a) of this section with respect to an alleged violation of a law, rule, regulation, or policy directive referred to in section 4131(a)(1)(H) of this title, the reference to "3 years" shall be deemed to read "180 days", subject to paragraph (2).

(2) If the occurrence or occurrences giving rise to the grievance are alleged to have occurred while the grievant was assigned to a post abroad, the 180-day period provided for under paragraph (1) shall not commence until the earlier of—

(A) the date as of which the grievant is no longer assigned to such post; or

(B) the expiration of the 18-month period beginning on the date of the occurrence giving rise to the grievance or the last such occurrence, as the case may be.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §1104, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2144; Pub. L. 102-138, title I, §153(b), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 673.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1991—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 102-138, §153(b)(1), inserted “under this subchapter” before “unless”.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 102-138, §153(b)(2), added subsec. (c).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1991 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 102-138 not applicable with respect to any grievance, within the meaning of section 4131 of this title, arising before Oct. 28, 1991, see section 153(f) of Pub. L. 102-138, set out as a note under section 4115 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4132 of this title.

### § 4135. Foreign Service Grievance Board

#### (a) Establishment; composition

There is established the Foreign Service Grievance Board (hereinafter in this subchapter referred to as the “Board”). The Board shall consist of no fewer than 5 members who shall be independent, distinguished citizens of the United States, well known for their integrity, who are not employees of the Department or members of the Service.

#### (b) Appointment and selection of nominees; length of terms; vacancies

The Chairperson and other members of the Board shall be appointed by the Secretary of State, from nominees approved in writing by the agencies to which this subchapter applies and the exclusive representative (if any) for each such agency. Each member of the Board shall be appointed for a term of 2 years, subject to renewal with the same written approvals required for initial appointment. In the event of a vacancy on the Board, an appointment for the unexpired term may be made by the Secretary of State in accordance with the procedures specified in this section. In the event of inability to obtain agreement on a nominee, each such agency and exclusive representative shall select 2 nominees and shall, in an order determined by lot, in turn strike a name from a list of such nominees until only one name remains. For purposes of this section, the nominee whose name remains shall be deemed to be approved in writing by each such agency head and exclusive representative.

#### (c) Compensation

Members of the Board who are not employees of the Government shall be paid for each day they are performing their duties (including trav-

eltime) at the daily equivalent of the maximum rate payable for grade GS-18 of the General Schedule under section 5332 of title 5.

#### (d) Removal

The Secretary of State may, upon written notice, remove a Board member for corruption, neglect of duty, malfeasance, or demonstrated incapacity to perform his or her functions, established at a hearing (unless the right to a hearing is waived in writing by the Board member).

#### (e) Administrative services; payment of expenses; assignment as staff employees of Board; performance evaluation reports; records

The Board may obtain facilities, services, and supplies through the general administrative services of the Department of State. All expenses of the Board, including necessary costs of the travel and travel-related expenses of a grievant, shall be paid out of funds appropriated to the Department for obligation and expenditure by the Board. At the request of the Board, employees of the Department and members of the Service may be assigned as staff employees for the Board. Within the limits of appropriated funds, the Board may appoint and fix the compensation of such other employees as the Board considers necessary to carry out its functions. The individuals so appointed or assigned shall be responsible solely to the Board, and the Board shall prepare the performance evaluation reports for such individuals. The records of the Board shall be maintained by the Board and shall be separate from all other records of the Department of State under appropriate safeguards to preserve confidentiality.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §1105, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2144.)

#### REFERENCES IN OTHER LAWS TO GS-16, 17, OR 18 PAY RATES

References in laws to the rates of pay for GS-16, 17, or 18, or to maximum rates of pay under the General Schedule, to be considered references to rates payable under specified sections of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, see section 529 [title I, §101(c)(1)] of Pub. L. 101-509, set out in a note under section 5376 of Title 5.

### § 4136. Foreign Service Grievance Board procedures

The Board may adopt regulations concerning its organization and procedures. Such regulations shall include provision for the following:

(1) The Board shall conduct a hearing at the request of a grievant in any case which involves—

(A) disciplinary action or the retirement of a grievant from the Service under section 4007 or 4008 of this title, or

(B) issues which, in the judgment of the Board, can best be resolved by a hearing or presentation of oral argument.

(2) The grievant, the representatives of the grievant, the exclusive representative (if the grievant is a member of the bargaining unit represented by the exclusive representative), and the representatives of the Department are entitled to be present at the hearing. The Board may, after considering the views of the

parties and any other individuals connected with the grievance, decide that a hearing should be open to others. Testimony at a hearing shall be given under oath, which any Board member or individual designated by the Board shall have authority to administer.

(3) Each party (including an exclusive representative appearing in the proceedings) shall be entitled to examine and cross-examine witnesses at the hearing or by deposition and to serve interrogatories upon another party and have such interrogatories answered by the other party unless the Board finds such interrogatory irrelevant, immaterial, or unduly repetitive. Upon request of the Board, or upon a request of the grievant deemed relevant and material by the Board, an agency shall promptly make available at the hearing or by deposition any witness under its control, supervision, or responsibility, except that if the Board determines that the presence of such witness at the hearing is required for just resolution of the grievance, then the witness shall be made available at the hearing, with necessary costs and travel expenses paid by the Department.

(4) During any hearing held by the Board, any oral or documentary evidence may be received, but the Board shall exclude any irrelevant, immaterial, or unduly repetitious evidence, as determined under section 556 of title 5.

(5) A verbatim transcript shall be made of any hearing and shall be part of the record of proceedings.

(6) In those grievances in which the Board does not hold a hearing, the Board shall afford to each party the opportunity to review and to supplement, by written submissions, the record of proceedings prior to the decision by the Board. The decision of the Board shall be based exclusively on the record of proceedings.

(7) The Board may act by or through panels or individual members designated by the Chairperson, except that hearings within the continental United States shall be held by panels of at least three members unless the parties agree otherwise. References in this subchapter to the Board shall be considered to be references to a panel or member of the Board where appropriate. All members of the Board shall act as impartial individuals in considering grievances.

(8) If the Board determines that the Department is considering the involuntary separation of the grievant, disciplinary action against the grievant, or recovery from the grievant of alleged overpayment of salary, expenses, or allowances, which is related to a grievance pending before the Board and that such action should be suspended, the Department shall suspend such action until the date which is one year after such determination or until the Board has ruled upon the grievance, whichever comes first. The Board shall extend the one-year limitation under the preceding sentence and the Department shall continue to suspend such action, if the Board determines that the agency or the Board is responsible for the delay in the resolution of the grievance. The Board may also extend the 1-

year limit if it determines that the delay is due to the complexity of the case, the unavailability of witnesses or to circumstances beyond the control of the agency, the Board or the grievant. Notwithstanding such suspension of action, the head of the agency concerned or a chief of mission or principal officer may exclude the grievant from official premises or from the performance of specified functions when such exclusion is determined in writing to be essential to the functioning of the post or office to which the grievant is assigned. Notwithstanding the first sentence of this paragraph, the Board's authority to suspend such action shall not extend to instances where the Secretary, or his designee, has exercised his authority under subsection (a)(3) of section 4010 of this title or with respect to any action which would delay the separation of an employee pursuant to a reduction in force conducted under section 4010a of this title.

(9) The Board may reconsider any decision upon presentation of newly discovered or previously unavailable material evidence.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §1106, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2145; Pub. L. 101-167, title V, §586(a), Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1252; Pub. L. 102-138, title I, §143(b), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 668; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §§177(a), 181(a)(4)(B), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 414, 417.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Par. (8). Pub. L. 103-236, §181(a)(4)(B), inserted before period at end “or with respect to any action which would delay the separation of an employee pursuant to a reduction in force conducted under section 4010a of this title”.

Pub. L. 103-236, §177(a), substituted “until the date which is one year after such determination or until the Board has ruled upon the grievance, whichever comes first. The Board shall extend the one-year limitation under the preceding sentence and the Department shall continue to suspend such action, if the Board determines that the agency or the Board is responsible for the delay in the resolution of the grievance. The Board may also extend the 1-year limit if it determines that the delay is due to the complexity of the case, the unavailability of witnesses or to circumstances beyond the control of the agency, the Board or the grievant.” for “until the Board has ruled upon the grievance.”

1991—Par. (8). Pub. L. 102-138 substituted “exercised his authority under subsection (a)(3) of section 4010 of this title” for “determined that there is reasonable cause to believe that a grievant has committed a job-related crime for which a sentence of imprisonment may be imposed and has taken action to suspend the grievant without pay pending a final resolution of the underlying matter”.

1989—Par. (8). Pub. L. 101-167 inserted at end “Notwithstanding the first sentence of this paragraph, the Board's authority to suspend such action shall not extend to instances where the Secretary, or his designee, has determined that there is reasonable cause to believe that a grievant has committed a job-related crime for which a sentence of imprisonment may be imposed and has taken action to suspend the grievant without pay pending a final resolution of the underlying matter.”

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4010 of this title.

**§ 4137. Foreign Service Grievance Board decisions**

**(a) Record; findings of fact and statement of reasons**

Upon completion of its proceedings, the Board shall expeditiously decide the grievance on the basis of the record of proceedings. In each case the decision of the Board shall be in writing, and shall include findings of fact and a statement of the reasons for the decision of the Board.

**(b) Authority of Department upon finding of meritorious grievance**

If the Board finds that the grievance is meritorious, the Board shall have the authority to direct the Department—

(1) to correct any official personnel record relating to the grievant which the Board finds to be inaccurate or erroneous, to have an omission, or to contain information of a falsely prejudicial character;

(2) to reverse a decision denying the grievant compensation or any other perquisite of employment authorized by laws or regulations when the Board finds that such decision was arbitrary, capricious, or contrary to laws or regulations;

(3) to retain in the Service a member whose separation would be in consequence of the matter by which the member is aggrieved;

(4) to reinstate the grievant, and to grant the grievant back pay in accordance with section 5596(b)(1) of title 5;

(5) to pay reasonable attorney fees to the grievant to the same extent and in the same manner as such fees may be required by the Merit Systems Protection Board under section 7701(g) of title 5; and

(6) to take such other remedial action as may be appropriate under procedures agreed to by the Department and the exclusive representative (if any).

**(c) Finality of decisions; judicial review**

Except as provided in subsection (d) of this section, decisions of the Board under this subchapter shall be final, subject only to judicial review as provided in section 4140 of this title.

**(d) Recommendations**

(1) If the Board finds that the grievance is meritorious and that remedial action should be taken that relates directly to promotion, tenure or assignment of the grievant or to other remedial action not otherwise provided for in this section, or if the Board finds that the evidence before it warrants disciplinary action against any employee of the Department or member of the Service, it shall make an appropriate recommendation to the Secretary. The Secretary shall make a written decision on the recommendation of the Board within 30 days after receiving the recommendation. The Secretary shall implement the recommendation of the Board except to the extent that, in a decision made within that 30-day period, the Secretary rejects the recommendation in whole or in part on the basis of a determination that implementation of the recommendation would be contrary to law or would adversely affect the foreign policy or national security of the United States. If the Secretary

rejects the recommendation in whole or in part, the decision shall specify the reasons for such action. Pending the decision of the Secretary, there shall be no ex parte communication concerning the grievance between the Secretary and any person involved in the proceedings of the Board. The Secretary shall, however, have access to the entire record of the proceedings of the Board.

(2) A recommendation under paragraph (1) shall, for purposes of section 4140 of this title, be considered a final action upon the expiration of the 30-day period referred to in such paragraph, except to the extent that it is rejected by the Secretary by an appropriate written decision.

(3)(A) If the Secretary makes a written decision under paragraph (1) rejecting a recommendation in whole or in part on the basis of a determination that implementing such recommendation would be contrary to law, the Secretary shall, within the 30-day period referred to in such paragraph—

(i) submit a copy of such decision to the Board; and

(ii) request that the Board reconsider its recommendation or, if less than the entirety is rejected, that the Board reconsider the portion rejected.

(B)(i) Within 30 days after receiving a request under subparagraph (A), the Board shall, after reviewing the Secretary's decision, make a recommendation to the Secretary either confirming, modifying, or vacating its original recommendation or, if less than the entirety was rejected, the portion involved.

(ii) Reconsideration under this subparagraph shall be limited to the question of whether implementing the Board's original recommendation, either in whole or in part, as applicable, would be contrary to law.

(C) A recommendation made under subparagraph (B) shall be considered a final action for purposes of section 4140 of this title, and shall be implemented by the Secretary.

**(e) Record of grievances; copy to committee of Congress; right of review**

(1) The Board shall maintain records of all grievances awarded in favor of the grievant in which the grievance concerns gross misconduct by a supervisor. Subject to paragraph (2), the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate shall be provided with a copy of the grievance decision whenever such a supervisor is nominated for any position requiring the advice and consent of the Senate and the Board shall provide access to the entire record of any proceedings of the Board concerning such a grievance decision to any Member of the Committee on Foreign Relations upon a request by the Chairman or Ranking Minority Member of such committee.

(2)(A) Except as provided in subparagraph (B), all decisions, proceedings, and other records disclosed pursuant to paragraph (1) shall be treated as confidential and may be disclosed only to Committee members and appropriate staff.

(B) Whenever material is provided to the Committee or a Member thereof pursuant to paragraph (1), the Board shall, at the same time, provide a copy of all such material to the supervisor who is the subject of such material.

(C) A supervisor who is the subject of records disclosed to the committee<sup>1</sup> pursuant to this subsection shall have the right to review such record and provide comments to the Committee concerning such record. Such comments shall be treated in a confidential manner.

**(f) Alleged discrimination; substantive law to be applied**

The Board shall, with respect to any grievance based on an alleged violation of a law, rule, regulation, or policy directive referred to in section 4131(a)(1)(H) of this title, apply the substantive law that would be applied by the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission if a charge or claim alleging discrimination under such law, rule, regulation, or policy directive had been filed with the commission.<sup>2</sup>

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §1107, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2146; Pub. L. 100-204, title I, §§181(a), (b), 182, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1363, 1364; Pub. L. 102-138, title I, §153(c), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 673.)

AMENDMENTS

1991—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 102-138 added subsec. (f).

1987—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 100-204, §181(a), (b), designated existing provisions as par. (1), inserted “, tenure” after “promotion” in first sentence, and added pars. (2) and (3).

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 100-204, §182, added subsec. (e).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1991 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 102-138 not applicable with respect to any grievance, within the meaning of section 4131 of this title, arising before Oct. 28, 1991, see section 153(f) of Pub. L. 102-138, set out as a note under section 4115 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1987 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 100-204 not applicable with respect to any grievance in which the Board has issued a final decision pursuant to this section before Dec. 22, 1987, see section 181(e) of Pub. L. 100-204, set out as a note under section 3946 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 3946, 4010 of this title.

**§ 4138. Access to records**

**(a) Review by Foreign Service Grievance Board of decision denying access**

If a grievant is denied access to any agency record prior to or during the consideration of the grievance by the Department, the grievant may raise such denial before the Board in connection with the grievance.

**(b) Access by Foreign Service Grievance Board; relevant and material records; adverse effect on national security or foreign policy**

In considering a grievance, the Board shall have access to any agency record as follows:

(1)(A) The Board shall request access to any agency record which the grievant requests to substantiate the grievance if the Board determines that such record may be relevant and material to the grievance.

(B) The Board may request access to any other agency record which the Board deter-

mines may be relevant and material to the grievance.

(2) Any agency shall make available to the Board any agency record requested under paragraph (1) unless the head or deputy head of such agency personally certifies in writing to the Board that disclosure of the record to the Board and the grievant would adversely affect the foreign policy or national security of the United States or that such disclosure is prohibited by law. If such a certification is made with respect to any record, the agency shall supply to the Board a summary or extract of such record unless the reasons specified in the preceding sentence preclude such a summary or extract.

**(c) Access by grievant**

If the Board determines that an agency record, or a summary or extract of a record, made available to the Board under subsection (b) of this section is relevant and material to the grievance, the agency concerned shall make such record, summary, or extract, as the case may be, available to the grievant.

**(d) Denial of access as factor in determination of grievance**

In considering a grievance, the Board may take into account the fact that the grievant or the Board was denied access to an agency record which the Board determines is or may be relevant and material to the grievance.

**(e) Proceedings and decisions of Foreign Service Grievance Board**

The grievant in any case decided by the Board shall have access to the record of the proceedings and the decision of the Board.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §1108, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2147.)

**§ 4139. Relationship to other remedies**

(a)(1) A grievant may not file a grievance with the Board if the grievant has formally requested, prior to filing a grievance, that the matter or matters which are the basis of the grievance be considered or resolved and relief be provided under another provision of law, regulation, or Executive order, other than under section 1214 or 1221 of title 5, and the matter has been carried to final decision under such provision on its merits or is still under consideration.

(2) If a grievant is not prohibited from filing a grievance under paragraph (1), the grievant may file with the Board a grievance which is also eligible for consideration, resolution, and relief under chapter 12 of title 5 or a regulation or Executive order other than under this subchapter. An election of remedies under this subsection shall be final upon the acceptance of jurisdiction by the Board.

(3) This subsection shall not apply to any grievance with respect to which subsection (b) of this section applies.

(b)(1) With respect to a grievance based on an alleged violation of a law, rule, regulation, or policy directive referred to in section 4131(a)(1)(H) of this title, a grievant may either—

(A) file a grievance under this subchapter, or

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be capitalized.

<sup>2</sup> So in original. Probably should be capitalized.

(B) initiate in writing a proceeding under another provision of law, regulation, or Executive order that authorizes relief,

but not both.

(2) A grievant shall be considered to have exercised the option under paragraph (1) as soon as the grievant timely either—

(A) files a grievance under this subchapter, or

(B) initiates in writing a proceeding under such other provision of law, regulation, or Executive order.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §1109, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2148; Pub. L. 101-12, §9(a)(3), Apr. 10, 1989, 103 Stat. 35; Pub. L. 102-138, title I, §153(d)(1), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 673.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1991—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 102-138, §153(d)(1)(A), (B), redesignated former subsec. (a) as par. (1), redesignated former subsec. (b) as par. (2) of subsec. (a) and substituted “paragraph (1)” for “subsection (a) of this section” and “under this subsection” for “under this section”, and added par. (3).

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 102-138, §153(d)(1)(C), added subsec. (b). Former subsec. (b) redesignated (a)(2).

1989—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 101-12 substituted “1214 or 1221” for “1206”.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1991 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 102-138 not applicable with respect to any grievance, within the meaning of section 4131 of this title, arising before Oct. 28, 1991, see section 153(f) of Pub. L. 102-138, set out as a note under section 4115 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1989 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101-12 effective 90 days following Apr. 10, 1989, see section 11 of Pub. L. 101-12, set out as a note under section 1201 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4115, 4131 of this title.

### § 4140. Judicial review

(a) Any aggrieved party may obtain judicial review of a final action of the Secretary or the Board on any grievance in the district courts of the United States in accordance with the standards set forth in chapter 7 of title 5, if the request for judicial review is filed not later than 180 days after the final action of the Secretary or the Board (or in the case of an aggrieved party who is posted abroad at the time of the final action of the Secretary or the Board, if the request for judicial review is filed not later than 180 days after the aggrieved party’s return to the United States). Section 706 of title 5 shall apply without limitation or exception. This subsection shall not apply to any grievance with respect to which subsection (b) of this section applies.

(b)(1) For purposes of this subsection, the term “aggrieved party” means a grievant.

(2) With respect to a grievance based on an alleged violation of a law, rule, regulation, or policy directive referred to in section 4131(a)(1)(H) of this title, judicial review of whether the act, omission, or condition that is the basis of the grievance violates such law, rule, regulation, or

policy directive may be obtained by an aggrieved party only if such party commences a civil action, not later than 90 days after such party receives notice of the final action of the Secretary or the Board, in an appropriate district court of the United States for de novo review.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §1110, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2148; Pub. L. 102-138, title I, §153(e), Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 674; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §177(b), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 414.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103-236 inserted before period at end of first sentence “, if the request for judicial review is filed not later than 180 days after the final action of the Secretary or the Board (or in the case of an aggrieved party who is posted abroad at the time of the final action of the Secretary or the Board, if the request for judicial review is filed not later than 180 days after the aggrieved party’s return to the United States)”.

1991—Pub. L. 102-138 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a), inserted provision that subsec. (a) not apply to any grievance with respect to which subsec. (b) applies, and added subsec. (b).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1991 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 102-138 not applicable with respect to any grievance, within the meaning of section 4131 of this title, arising before Oct. 28, 1991, see section 153(f) of Pub. L. 102-138, set out as a note under section 4115 of this title.

#### JUDICIAL REVIEW OF CERTAIN FOREIGN SERVICE GRIEVANCES

Pub. L. 101-246, title I, §152, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 42, provided that: “For the purposes of judicial review under section 1110 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [22 U.S.C. 4140], any recommendation made by the Foreign Service Grievance Board with respect to the tenure of a grievant which was reviewed by the Secretary of State before the date of enactment of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1988 and 1989 [Dec. 22, 1987], shall be considered to be a final action of the Department of State, and any such recommendation shall be considered to have been made within the authority of the Foreign Service Grievance Board.”

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4010, 4137 of this title.

### SUBCHAPTER XI-A—FOREIGN SERVICE INTERNSHIP PROGRAM

#### § 4141. Statement of policy; objectives

##### (a) Statement of policy

Consistent with the findings of section 3901 of this title, the Foreign Service of the United States should be representative of the American people. In order to facilitate and encourage the entry into the Foreign Service of individuals who meet the rigorous requirements of the Service, while ensuring a Foreign Service system which reflects the cultural and ethnic diversity of the United States, intensive recruitment efforts are mandated. This is particularly true for Native Americans, African Americans, and Hispanic Americans, where other affirmative action and equal opportunity efforts have not been successful in attracting the ablest applicants for entry into the Foreign Service. The United States remains committed to equal opportunity



and to a Foreign Service system operated on the basis of merit principles.

**(b) Objectives**

The objective of this subchapter is to strengthen and improve the Foreign Service of the United States through the establishment of a Foreign Service Internship Program. The program shall promote the Foreign Service as a viable and rewarding career opportunity for qualified individuals who reflect the cultural and ethnic diversity of the United States through a highly selective internship program for students enrolled in institutions of higher education.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §1201, as added Pub. L. 101-246, title I, §149(b), Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 39.)

**§ 4141a. Foreign Service Internship Program**

**(a) Establishment**

In consultation with the heads of other agencies utilizing the Foreign Service system, the Secretary of State shall establish a Foreign Service internship program to carry out the objectives of this subchapter in accordance with the provisions of this subchapter.

**(b) Foreign Service Internship Program**

The program shall introduce interns to the practice of diplomacy and the unique rewards of the Foreign Service. The program shall consist of three successive summer internships of not less than eight weeks duration in each year to be completed over the course of not more than four years. Special emphasis shall be given to preparing the intern for the Foreign Service examination process. In each year not less than 10 interns shall enter the program.

**(c) Eligibility to participate**

(1) Students enrolled full-time in institutions of higher education from groups which are underrepresented in the Foreign Service in terms of the cultural and ethnic diversity of the Foreign Service and for whom equal opportunity and affirmative action recruitment efforts have not been successful in achieving balanced representation in appointments to the Foreign Service shall be eligible to be interns in programs under this subchapter.

(2) An intern shall have successfully completed not less than one academic year of study at an institution of higher education to be admitted to the program. In each succeeding year of participation an intern shall have completed an additional year of undergraduate or graduate study and shall maintain an exemplary record of academic achievement.

(3) In selecting interns, the Secretary shall consider only the ablest students of superior ability selected on the basis of demonstrated achievement and exceptional promise whose academic records reflect the requisite standards of performance necessary for the Foreign Service.

**(d) Summer internships**

(1) The primary focus of the first internship shall be the study of international relations, the functions of the Department of State and other agencies which utilize the Foreign Service sys-

tem, and the nature of the Foreign Service. The internship shall be held in Washington, District of Columbia, at the Department of State. As appropriate, the Secretary shall utilize the personnel and facilities of the Foreign Service Institute.

(2) The second internship shall be, principally, an assignment to a specific bureau of the Department of State. Emphasis shall be on providing insight into the economic and political functional areas.

(3) The third internship shall be an assignment to a United States mission abroad in the political or economic area.

(4) The first and second internships may include a detail to the Congress.

**(e) Administration**

The Secretary of State shall determine the academic requirements, other selection criteria, and standards for successful completion of each internship period. The Secretary shall be responsible for the design, implementation, and operation of the program.

**(f) Mentors**

Each intern shall be assigned a career Foreign Service officer as a mentor. The mentor shall act as a counselor and advisor throughout each summer internship and as a personal Foreign Service contact throughout the period of participation in the program. In the assignment of mentors, the Secretary shall give preference to Foreign Service officers who volunteer for such assignment and who may be role models for the interns.

**(g) Compensation**

Interns shall be compensated at a rate determined by the Secretary which shall not be less than the compensation of comparable summer interns at the Department of State. As determined by the Secretary, for the purposes of travel, housing, health insurance, and other appropriate benefits, interns shall be considered employees of the Foreign Service during each internship period.

**(h) Study of Foreign Service examination**

The Secretary of State shall study the feasibility of administering the Foreign Service examination in separate segments over several years. Not later than 180 days after February 16, 1990, the Secretary shall submit a report summarizing the findings of such a study to the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §1202, as added Pub. L. 101-246, title I, §149(b), Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 40.)

CODIFICATION

February 16, 1990, referred to in subsec. (h), was in the original "the date of the enactment of this Act", which was translated as meaning the date of enactment of Pub. L. 101-246, which enacted this subchapter, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

## AUTHORITY OF SECRETARY OF STATE

Except as otherwise provided, Secretary of State to have and exercise any authority vested by law in any official or office of Department of State and references to such officials or offices deemed to refer to Secretary of State or Department of State, as appropriate, see section 2651a of this title and section 161(d) of Pub. L. 103-236, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

**§ 4141b. Report to Congress**

Together with the annual submission required under section 3905(d)(2) of this title, the Secretary of State shall submit a report to the Congress concerning the implementation of the program established under this subchapter. Such report accompanied by such other information as the Secretary considers appropriate, shall include specific information concerning the completion rates of interns in the program, interns who took the Foreign Service examination, interns who passed the examination, former interns appointed to the Foreign Service, assignments of former interns, and the advancement of former interns through the Foreign Service System.<sup>1</sup>

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §1203, as added Pub. L. 101-246, title I, §149(b), Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 41.)

**§ 4141c. Authorization of appropriations**

Of the amounts authorized to be appropriated by section 101(a)(1) of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1990 and 1991, \$100,000 for the fiscal year 1990 and \$150,000 for the fiscal year 1991 shall be available only to carry out this subchapter. Sums appropriated for the purposes of this subchapter are authorized to remain available until expended.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title I, §1204, as added Pub. L. 101-246, title I, §149(b), Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 41.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 101(a)(1) of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1990 and 1991, referred to in text, is section 101(a)(1) of Pub. L. 101-246, title I, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 18, which is not classified to the Code.

## SUBCHAPTER XII—TRANSITION

**§ 4151. Pay and benefits pending conversion**

Until converted under the provisions of this subchapter, any individual who is in the Foreign Service before February 15, 1981, and is serving under an appointment as a Foreign Service officer, Foreign Service information officer, Foreign Service Reserve officer with limited or unlimited tenure, or Foreign Service staff officer or employee, shall be treated for purposes of salary, allowances, and other matters as if such individual had been converted under section 4152 or 4153 of this title, as the case may be, on February 15, 1981, except that any adjustment of salary under this section shall take effect—

(1) in the case of an individual who is in the Foreign Service on October 17, 1980, on the first day of the first pay period which begins on or after October 1, 1980, and

(2) in the case of an individual who is appointed to the Foreign Service after October

17, 1980, on the date such appointment becomes effective.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2101, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2148.)

## CODIFICATION

“February 15, 1981” substituted in text for “the effective date of this Act” pursuant to section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

**§ 4152. Conversion to Foreign Service Schedule**

(a) Not later than 120 days after February 15, 1981, the Secretary shall, in accordance with section 4156 of this title, convert to the appropriate class in the Foreign Service Schedule established under section 3963 of this title those individuals in the Foreign Service who are serving immediately before February 15, 1981, under appointments at or below class 3 of the schedule established under section 412 or 414 of the Foreign Service Act of 1946, or at any class in the schedule established under section 415 of such Act, as—

(1) Foreign Service officers, or

(2) Foreign Service Reserve officers with limited or unlimited tenure, and Foreign Service staff officers or employees, who the Secretary determines are available for worldwide assignment.

(b) Not later than 3 years after February 15, 1981, Foreign Service Reserve officers and staff officers and employees who the Secretary determines under subsection (a)(2) of this section are not available for worldwide assignment shall also be converted, in accordance with section 4156 of this title, to the appropriate class in the Foreign Service Schedule established under section 3963 of this title if—

(1) the Secretary certifies that there is a need for their services in the Foreign Service; and

(2) they agree in writing to accept availability for worldwide assignment as a condition of continued employment.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2102, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2148.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

Sections 412, 414 and 415 of the Foreign Service Act of 1946, referred to in subsec. (a), which were classified to sections 867, 869 and 870, respectively, of this title, were repealed by Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159.

## CODIFICATION

In subsecs. (a) and (b), “February 15, 1981” substituted for “the effective date of this Act” pursuant to section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4151, 4154 of this title.

**§ 4153. Conversion to Senior Foreign Service**

**(a) Criteria; application less than 120 days after effective date of Foreign Service Act of 1980**

Foreign Service officers and Foreign Service Reserve officers with limited or unlimited ten-

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should not be capitalized.

ure who, immediately before February 15, 1981, are serving under appointments at class 2 or a higher class of the schedule established under section 412 or 414 of the Foreign Service Act of 1946 may at any time within 120 days after such date submit to the Secretary a written request for appointment to the Senior Foreign Service.

**(b) Limited appointment**

Except as provided in subsection (d) of this section, if a request is submitted under subsection (a) of this section by a Foreign Service Reserve officer with limited tenure, the Secretary shall grant to such officer a limited appointment to the Senior Foreign Service in the appropriate class established under section 3962 of this title.

**(c) Career appointment**

If a request is submitted under subsection (a) of this section by a Foreign Service officer or, except as provided in subsection (d) of this section, a Foreign Service Reserve officer with unlimited tenure, the Secretary shall recommend to the President a career appointment of such officer, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to the Senior Foreign Service in the appropriate class established under section 3962 of this title.

**(d) Availability for worldwide assignment**

If the Secretary determines that a Foreign Service Reserve officer with limited or unlimited tenure who submits a request under subsection (a) of this section is not available for worldwide assignment, an appointment under subsection (b) of this section or a recommendation for appointment under subsection (c) of this section shall be made only if—

(1) the Secretary certifies that there is a need for the services of such officer in the Senior Foreign Service; and

(2) such officer agrees in writing to accept availability for worldwide assignment as a condition of continued employment.

**(e) Application more than 120 days after effective date of Foreign Service Act of 1980**

If a Foreign Service officer or a Foreign Service Reserve officer who is eligible to submit a request under subsection (a) of this section submits a written request for appointment to the Senior Foreign Service to the Secretary more than 120 days after February 15, 1981, and before the end of the 3-year period beginning on February 15, 1981, the Secretary (in the case of a Foreign Service Reserve officer with limited tenure) may grant a limited appointment to, or (in the case of a Foreign Service officer or Foreign Service Reserve officer with unlimited tenure) may recommend to the President a career appointment of, the requesting officer to the appropriate class established under section 3962 of this title, subject to the conditions specified in subsection (d) of this section and such other conditions as the Secretary may prescribe consistent with the provisions of subchapter VI of this chapter relating to promotion into the Senior Foreign Service.

**(f) Forced conversion**

Any officer of the Foreign Service who is eligible to submit a request under subsection (a) of this section and—

(1) who does not submit a request under subsection (a) of this section, or

(2) who submits such a request more than 120 days after February 15, 1981, and is not appointed to the Senior Foreign Service for any reason other than failure to meet the conditions specified in subsection (d) of this section,

may not remain in the Foreign Service for more than 3 years after February 15, 1981. During such period, the officer shall be subject to the provisions of subchapters I to XI of this chapter applicable to members of the Senior Foreign Service, except that such officer shall not be eligible to compete for performance pay under section 3965 of this title, and shall not be eligible for a limited career extension as described in section 4007(b) of this title. Upon separation from the Service, any such officer who is a participant in the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System shall be entitled to retirement benefits on the same basis as a member retired from the Senior Foreign Service under section 4007(c)(1) of this title, and section 4009(a)(2)(B) of this title shall be deemed to apply to such officer.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2103, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2149; Pub. L. 98-164, title I, §128, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1027.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Sections 412 and 414 of the Foreign Service Act of 1946, referred to in subsec. (a), which were classified to sections 867 and 869, respectively, of this title, were repealed by Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159.

CODIFICATION

In subsecs. (a), (e), and (f), “February 15, 1981” substituted for “the effective date of this Act” and “such effective date” pursuant to section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

1983—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 98-164 substituted provisions relating to applicability of sections 4007(c)(1) and 4009(a)(2)(B) of this title, for provisions relating to applicability of subchapter VIII of this chapter.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4151, 4154 of this title.

**§ 4154. Conversion from Foreign Service**

**(a) Individuals serving under appointment**

In the case of any individual in the Foreign Service who, immediately before February 15, 1981, is serving under an appointment described in section 4152(a) or 4153(a) of this title and who is not converted under section 4152 or section 4153 of this title because such individual does not meet the conditions specified in section 4152(b) or 4153(d) of this title, the Secretary shall, not later than 3 years after February 15, 1981, provide that—

(1) the position such individual holds shall be subject to chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of title 5;

(2) such individual shall be appointed to such position without competitive examination; and

(3) such position shall be considered to be in the competitive service so long as the individual continues to hold that position;

except that any such individual who meets the eligibility requirements for the Senior Executive Service and who elects to join that Service shall be converted by the Secretary to the Senior Executive Service in the appropriate rate of basic pay established under section 5382 of title 5.

**(b) United States Information Agency individuals**

In the case of individuals in the Foreign Service in the United States Information Agency who immediately before October 17, 1980, are covered by a collective bargaining agreement between the Agency and the exclusive representative of those individuals, the 3-year period referred to in subsection (a) of this section shall begin on July 1, 1981.

**(c) Department of State security officers**

The three-year period referred to in subsection (a) of this section shall be extended for an additional period not to exceed one year from November 22, 1983, in the case of Department of State security officers who are members of the Service and who were initially ineligible for conversion under that subsection because they were available for worldwide assignment and there was a need for their services in the Service, but as to whom subsequent events require the services of these members (and of those later employed who are similarly situated) only or primarily for domestic functions.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2104, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2150; Pub. L. 97-241, title III, §303(b), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 291; Pub. L. 98-164, title I, §132, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1028.)

CODIFICATION

In subsec. (a), "February 15, 1981" substituted for "the effective date of this Act" pursuant to section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

In subsec. (c), "November 22, 1983" was in the original "the date of enactment of this section" which was translated as meaning the date of enactment of this subsection, as the probable intent of Congress.

AMENDMENTS

1983—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 98-164 added subsec. (c).

CHANGE OF NAME

"United States Information Agency" substituted for "International Communication Agency" in subsec. (b), pursuant to section 303(b) of Pub. L. 97-241, set out as a note under section 1461 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4156 of this title.

**§ 4155. Conversion of certain positions in Department of Agriculture**

**(a) Designation and classification of positions to be occupied; notice**

Not later than 15 days after February 15, 1981, the Secretary of Agriculture shall—

(1) designate and classify under section 3981 of this title those positions in the Foreign Agricultural Service under the General Schedule described in section 5332 of title 5 which the Secretary of Agriculture determines are to be occupied by career members of the Foreign Service, and

(2) provide written notice to individuals holding those positions of such designation and classification of the personnel category under section 3903 of this title which will apply to such individual.

**(b) Election to convert**

Each employee serving in a position at the time it is designated under subsection (a) of this section shall, not later than 120 days after notice of such designation, elect—

(1) to accept conversion to the Foreign Service, in which case such employee shall be converted in accordance with the provisions of subsection (c) of this section; or

(2) to decline conversion to the Foreign Service and have the provisions of subsection (d) of this section apply.

**(c) Recommendations for appointment**

(1) The Secretary of Agriculture shall recommend to the President for appointment to the appropriate class (as determined under paragraph (2)), by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, those employees who elect conversion under subsection (a)(1) of this section.

(2) The Secretary of Agriculture shall appoint as Foreign Service personnel those employees who elect to accept conversion and who are not eligible for appointment under paragraph (1).

**(d) Results of declining to convert**

Any employee who declines conversion under subsection (b)(2) of this section shall for so long as that employee continues to hold the designated position be deemed to be a member of the Foreign Service for purposes of allowances, differentials, and similar benefits (as determined by the Secretary of Agriculture).

(Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2105, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2150.)

CODIFICATION

In subsec. (a), "February 15, 1981" substituted for "the effective date of this Act" pursuant to section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

**§ 4156. Preservation of status and benefits**

**(a) Conversion to class, grade, or step corresponding to level prior to conversion; reduction in position or salary; conversion from Foreign Service under section 4154 of this title**

(1) Every individual who is converted under this subchapter shall be converted to the class or grade and pay rate that most closely corresponds to the class or grade and step at which the individual was serving immediately before conversion. No conversion under this subchapter shall cause any individual to incur a reduction in his or her class, grade, or basic rate of salary.

(2) An individual converted under section 4154 of this title to a position in the competitive service shall be entitled to have that position, or any other position to which the individual is subsequently assigned (other than at the request of the individual), be considered for all purposes as at the grade which corresponds to the class in which the individual served immediately before conversion so long as the individual continues to hold that position.

**(b) Participation in Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System**

(1) Any participant in the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System who would, but for this paragraph, participate in the Civil Service Retirement and Disability System by virtue of conversion under this subchapter shall remain a participant in the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System for 120 days after participation in the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System would otherwise cease. During such 120-day period, the individual may elect in writing to continue to participate in the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System instead of the Civil Service Retirement and Disability System so long as he or she is employed in an agency which is authorized to utilize the Foreign Service personnel system. If such an election is not made, the individual shall then be covered by the Civil Service Retirement and Disability System and contributions made by the participant to the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability Fund shall be transferred to the Civil Service Retirement and Disability Fund.

(2) Any Foreign Service Reserve officer with limited tenure who has reemployment rights to a personnel category in the Foreign Service in which he or she would be a participant in the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System and who would, but for this paragraph, continue to participate in the Civil Service Retirement and Disability System by virtue of conversion under section 4154 of this title may elect, during the 120-day period beginning on the date of such conversion, to become a participant in the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System so long as he or she is employed in an agency which is authorized to utilize the Foreign Service personnel system. If such an election is made, the individual shall be transferred to the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability System and contributions made by that individual to the Civil Service Retirement and Disability Fund shall be transferred to the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability Fund.

**(c) Conversion to type of appointment corresponding in tenure to that prior to conversion**

Individuals who are converted under this subchapter shall be converted to the type of appointment which corresponds most closely in tenure to the type of appointment under which they were serving immediately prior to such conversion, except that this subchapter shall not operate to extend the duration of any limited appointment or previously applicable time in class.

**(d) Reappointment resulting from enactment of Foreign Service Act of 1980**

Any individual who on February 15, 1981, is serving—

(1) under an appointment in the Foreign Service, or

(2) in any other office or position continued by this chapter, may continue to serve under such appointment, subject to the provisions of this chapter, and need not be reappointed by virtue of the enactment of this chapter.

**(e) Deferment of retirement provisions**

Any individual in the Foreign Service—

(1) who is serving under a career appointment on October 17, 1980, and

(2) who was not subject to section 633(a)(2) of the Foreign Service Act of 1946 immediately before February 15, 1981,

may not be retired under section 4008 of this title until 10 years after February 15, 1981, or when such individual first becomes eligible for an immediate annuity under subchapter VIII of this chapter, whichever occurs first.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2106, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2151.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (d), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 96-465, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2071, as amended, known as the Foreign Service Act of 1980, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3901 of this title and Tables.

Section 633(a)(2) of the Foreign Service Act of 1946, referred to in subsec. (e)(2), which was classified to section 1003(a)(2) of this title, was repealed by Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159.

CODIFICATION

In subssecs. (d) and (e), "February 15, 1981" substituted for "the effective date of this Act" pursuant to section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4152 of this title.

**§ 4157. Regulations**

Under the direction of the President, the Secretary shall prescribe regulations for the implementation of this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2107, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2152.)

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Authority of President under this section to extent necessary to implement provisions of section 4151 of this title, relating to pay and benefits pending conversion, delegated to Secretary of State, see section 5 of Ex. Ord. No. 12293, Feb. 23, 1981, 46 F.R. 13969, set out as a note under section 3901 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4158 of this title.

**§ 4158. Authority of other agencies**

The heads of agencies other than the Department of State which utilize the Foreign Service personnel system shall perform functions under this subchapter in accordance with regulations prescribed by the Secretary of State under section 4157 of this title. Such agency heads shall consult with the Secretary of State in the exercise of such functions.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2108, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2152.)

**§ 4159. Survivor benefits for certain former spouses**

**(a) Eligible participants; election of benefits**

Any participant or former participant in the Foreign Service Retirement and Disability Sys-

tem who on February 15, 1981, has a former spouse may, by a spousal agreement, elect to receive a reduced annuity and provide a survivor annuity for such former spouse under section 4054(b) of this title.

**(b) Time of election**

(1) If the participant or former participant has not retired under such system on or before February 15, 1981, an election under this section may be made at any time before retirement.

(2) If the participant or former participant has retired under such system on or before February 15, 1981, an election under this section may be made within such period after February 15, 1981, as the Secretary of State may prescribe.

(3) For purposes of applying subchapter VIII of this chapter, any such election shall be treated the same as if it were a spousal agreement under section 4060(b)(1) of this title.

**(c) Portion of annuity as basis for benefits**

An election under this section may provide for a survivor benefit based on all or any portion of that part of the annuity of the participant which is not designated or committed as a base for survivor benefits for a spouse or any other former spouse of the participant. The participant and his or her spouse may make an election under section 4046(b)(1)(B) of this title prior to the time of retirement for the purpose of allowing an election to be made under this section.

**(d) Amount of reduction; effective date**

The amount of the reduction in the participant's annuity shall be determined in accordance with section 4046(b)(2) of this title. Such reduction shall be effective as of—

(1) the commencing date of the participant's annuity, in the case of an election under subsection (b)(1) of this section, or

(2) February 15, 1981, in the case of an election under subsection (b)(2) of this section.

**(e) Definitions**

For purposes of this section, the terms "former spouse", "participant", and "spousal agreement" have the meanings given such terms in sections 4043 and 4044 of this title.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2109, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2152.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4069b, 4069b-1 of this title.

SUBCHAPTER XIII—MISCELLANEOUS

**§ 4171. Model foreign language competence posts**

**(a) Designation of posts; time of designation and implementation; determination of competency standards**

In order to carry out the purposes of section 4022 of this title and to help ascertain the relationship between foreign language competence and the effectiveness of representation of the United States abroad, the Secretary of State shall designate as model foreign language competence posts at least two Foreign Service posts in countries where English is not the common language. Such designation shall be made no later than October 1, 1981, and shall be imple-

mented so that no later than October 1, 1983, each Government employee permanently assigned to those posts shall possess an appropriate level of competence in the language common to the country where the post is located. The Secretary of State shall determine appropriate levels of language competence for employees assigned to those posts by reference to the nature of their functions and the standards employed by the Foreign Service Institute.

**(b) Continuation; report to Congress concerning operation of posts and advantages of meeting competency requirements**

The posts designated under subsection (a) of this section shall continue as model foreign language competence posts at least until September 30, 1985. The Secretary of State shall submit no later than January 31, 1986, a report to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate describing the operation of such posts and the costs, advantages and disadvantages associated with meeting the foreign language competence requirements of this section.

**(c) Exceptions; report to Congress**

The Secretary of State may authorize exceptions to the requirements of this section if he determines that unanticipated exigencies so require.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2207, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2163; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §139(7), (25), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 398, 399.)

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 103-236, §139(7), (25), amended subsec. (c) identically, striking out at end "Such exceptions shall be annually reported to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate."

AUTHORITY OF SECRETARY OF STATE

Except as otherwise provided, Secretary of State to have and exercise any authority vested by law in any official or office of Department of State and references to such officials or offices deemed to refer to Secretary of State or Department of State, as appropriate, see section 2651a of this title and section 161(d) of Pub. L. 103-236, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

EXPANSION OF MODEL FOREIGN LANGUAGE COMPETENCE POSTS

Pub. L. 101-246, title I, §161, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 46, as amended by Pub. L. 101-302, title III, §320(b)(3), May 25, 1990, 104 Stat. 247, provided that:

"(a) DESIGNATION OF POSTS.—In order to carry out the purposes of section 702 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [22 U.S.C. 4022], and in light of the positive report issued on March 28, 1986, by the Department of State, as required by section 2207 of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 [22 U.S.C. 4171], the Secretary of State shall designate as model foreign language competence posts a minimum of six Foreign Service posts, representing the Department of State's five geographic bureaus, in countries where English is not the common language. Such designation shall be made not later than 120 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Feb. 16, 1990], and shall be implemented so that not later than October 1, 1991, in the case of non-hard language posts, and October 1, 1992, in the case of hard language posts, each Government employee permanently assigned to those posts shall possess an appropriate level of competence in the language common to the country where the post

is located. The Secretary of State shall determine appropriate levels of language competence for employees assigned to those posts by reference to the nature of their functions and the standards employed by the Foreign Service Institute.

“(b) ‘HARD LANGUAGE COUNTRY’ POST TO BE DESIGNATED.—At least one of the posts designated under subsection (a) shall be in a ‘hard language’ country, as identified in the report to the Under Secretary of State for Management of May 12, 1986, entitled ‘Hard Language Proficiency in the Foreign Service’. Such post shall be in one of the countries where the official or principal language is Arabic, Chinese, Japanese, or Russian.

“(c) TERMINATION DATE.—The posts designated under subsection (a) shall continue as model foreign language posts at least until September 30, 1993, in the case of non-hard language posts, and September 30, 1994, in the case of hard language posts. Not later than January 31, 1995, the Secretary of State shall submit to the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs [now Committee on International Relations] of the House of Representatives a report describing the operation of such posts and the costs, advantages, and disadvantages associated with meeting the foreign language competence requirements of this section.

“(d) EXEMPTION AUTHORITY.—The Secretary of State may authorize exceptions to the requirements of this section if—

“(1) he determines that unanticipated exigencies so require; and

“(2) he immediately reports such exceptions to the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs [now Committee on International Relations] of the House of Representatives.

“(e) EXCLUDED POSTS.—The posts designated under subsection (a) may not include Dakar, Senegal, or Montevideo, Uruguay. The report required under subsection (c) shall include progress made in these posts in maintaining the high foreign language standards achieved under the initial pilot program.

“(f) AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.—There are authorized to be appropriated such sums as may be necessary to carry out this section.”

#### § 4172. Savings provisions

##### (a) Determinations, authorizations, etc., under authority of Foreign Service Act of 1946 and grievances, claims, or appeals filed and pending on effective date of this chapter

All determinations, authorizations, regulations, orders, agreements, exclusive recognition of an organization or other actions made, issued, undertaken, entered into, or taken under the authority of the Foreign Service Act of 1946 or any other law repealed, modified, or affected by this chapter shall continue in full force and effect until modified, revoked, or superseded by appropriate authority. Any grievances, claims, or appeals which were filed or made under any such law and are pending resolution on February 15, 1981, shall continue to be governed by the provisions repealed, modified, or affected by this chapter.

##### (b) Increase in annuity or other right to benefits

This chapter shall not affect any increase in annuity or other right to benefits, which was provided by any provision amended or repealed by this chapter, with respect to any individual who became entitled to such benefit prior to February 15, 1981.

##### (c) Cross references

References in law to provisions of the Foreign Service Act of 1946 or other law superseded by

this chapter shall be deemed to include reference to the corresponding provisions of this chapter.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2401, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2168.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Service Act of 1946, referred to in subsections (a) and (c), is act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, titles I to X, 60 Stat. 999, as amended, which was classified principally to chapter 14 (§801 et seq.) of this title, and was repealed by Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159.

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 96-465, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2071, as amended, known as the Foreign Service Act of 1980, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3901 of this title and Tables.

#### CODIFICATION

In subsections (a) and (b), “February 15, 1981” substituted for “the effective date of this Act” pursuant to section 2403 of Pub. L. 96-465, set out as an Effective Date note under section 3901 of this title.

#### § 4173. Congressional oversight of implementation

(a), (b) Repealed. Pub. L. 100-204, title I, § 185(c)(2), Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1366

##### (c) Consultation with agency representatives

The Secretary shall consult, in accordance with the procedures set out in section 4113(g) of this title, with the exclusive representative (if any) of members of the Foreign Service in each agency specified in section 4103(a) of this title with respect to steps to be taken in implementing this chapter and reported under section 4001(c)(4) of this title. To that end, each such exclusive representative will have timely access to all relevant information at each stage. Each such report shall include the views of each such exclusive representative on any and all aspects of the report and the information contained in such report.

(Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2402, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2168; Pub. L. 100-204, title I, §185(c)(2), Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1366.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1987—Subsecs. (a), (b). Pub. L. 100-204 struck out subsec. (a) which related to report by Secretary of State and its contents and subsec. (b) which related to annual supplemental report and its contents.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 100-204 substituted “under section 4001(c)(4) of this title” for “under this section”.

#### SUBCHAPTER XIV—POWERS, DUTIES AND LIABILITIES OF CONSULAR OFFICERS GENERALLY

#### CODIFICATION

Subchapter was not enacted as a part of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 which comprises this chapter.

#### § 4191. General application of provisions to consular officers

The various provisions of title 18 of the Revised Statutes which are expressed in terms of general application to any particular classes of

consular officers, shall be deemed to apply as well to all other classes of such officers, so far as may be consistent with the subject matter of the same and with the treaties of the United States.

(R.S. § 1689.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Title 18 of the Revised Statutes, referred to in text, was in the original "this Title", meaning title 18 of the Revised Statutes, consisting of R.S. §§1674 to 1752, and insofar as classified to the Code, is classified to sections 4191, 4193 to 4197, 4200, 4202, 4204, 4205, 4207 to 4214, and 4216 to 4221 of this title. For complete classification of R.S. §§1674 to 1752 to the Code, see Tables.

#### CODIFICATION

R.S. § 1689 derived from act Aug. 18, 1856, ch. 127, § 31, 11 Stat. 64.

Section was not enacted as part of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 which comprises this chapter.

Section was formerly classified to section 1171 of this title, and prior thereto to section 53 of this title.

#### § 4192. Repealed. Pub. L. 101-246, title I, § 123, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 27

Section, R.S. § 4082, related to solemnization of marriages by consular officers of the United States in a foreign country.

#### CODIFICATION

Pub. L. 101-246, § 123, which directed the repeal of section 31 of the Act of June 22, 1860 (12 Stat. 79; 22 U.S.C. 4192), was executed as though repealing section 4082 of the Revised Statutes, which is classified to this section, to reflect the probable intent of Congress. Section 31 of the Act of June 22, 1860, was restated in section 4082 of the Revised Statutes and repealed by section 5596 of the Revised Statutes.

#### § 4193. Protests

Consuls and vice consuls shall have the right, in the ports or places to which they are severally appointed, of receiving the protests or declarations which captains, masters, crews, passengers, or merchants, who are citizens of the United States, may respectively choose to make there; and also such as any foreigner may choose to make before them relative to the personal interest of any citizen of the United States.

(R.S. § 1707; June 25, 1948, ch. 646, § 39, 62 Stat. 992.)

#### CODIFICATION

R.S. § 1707 derived from act Apr. 14, 1792, ch. 24, § 2, 1 Stat. 255.

Section was not enacted as part of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 which comprises this chapter.

Section was formerly classified to section 1173 of this title, and prior thereto to section 73 of this title.

#### AMENDMENTS

1948—Act June 25, 1948, repealed second sentence relating to authenticated copies of consular acts received as evidence.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1948 AMENDMENT

Section 38 of act June 25, 1948, provided that the amendment made by that act is effective Sept. 1, 1948.

#### AMERICAN INSTITUTE IN TAIWAN

Employees of the American Institute in Taiwan authorized to assist and protect interests of United States

persons by performing acts such as are authorized to be performed outside the United States for consular purposes by these sections, see section 1-201 of Ex. Ord. No. 12143, June 22, 1979, 44 F.R. 37191, set out as a note under section 3301 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4191 of this title.

#### § 4194. Lists and returns of seamen and vessels, etc.

Every consular officer shall keep a detailed list of all seamen and mariners shipped and discharged by him, specifying their names and the names of the vessels on which they are shipped and from which they are discharged, and the payments, if any, made on account of each so discharged; also of the number of the vessels arrived and departed, the amounts of their registered tonnage, and the number of their seamen and mariners, and of those who are protected, and whether citizens of the United States or not, and as nearly as possible the nature and value of their cargoes, and where produced, and shall make returns of the same, with their accounts and other returns, to the Secretary of Commerce.

(R.S. § 1708; Feb. 14, 1903, ch. 552, § 10, 32 Stat. 829; Mar. 4, 1913, ch. 141, § 1, 37 Stat. 736.)

#### CODIFICATION

R.S. § 1708 derived from act Aug. 18, 1856, ch. 127, § 27, 11 Stat. 62.

Act Feb. 14, 1903, substituted "Secretary of Commerce and Labor" for "Secretary of the Treasury". Act Mar. 4, 1913, substituted "Secretary of Commerce" for "Secretary of Commerce and Labor".

Section was not enacted as part of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 which comprises this chapter.

Section was formerly classified to section 1174 of this title, and prior thereto to section 74 of this title.

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

Certain shipping and navigation functions of Secretary of Commerce transferred to Commandant of Coast Guard and Commissioner of Customs by Reorg. Plan No. 3 of 1946, §§101 to 104, eff. July 16, 1946, 11 F.R. 7875, 60 Stat. 1097, 1098 set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

Functions of all officers of Department of the Treasury [which included Commandant of Coast Guard and Commissioner of Customs], and functions of all agencies and employees of Department, transferred, with certain exceptions, to Secretary of the Treasury, with power vested in him to authorize their performance or performance of any of his functions, by any of such officers, agencies, and employees, by Reorg. Plan No. 26 of 1950, §§ 1, 2, eff. July 31, 1950, 15 F.R. 4935, 64 Stat. 1280, set out in the Appendix to Title 5. Coast Guard was generally a service in Department of the Treasury but such Plan excepted, from transfer, functions of Coast Guard, and of Commandant thereof, when Coast Guard was operating as a part of Navy under section 3 of Title 14, Coast Guard.

Coast Guard transferred to Department of Transportation and functions, powers, and duties, relating to Coast Guard, of Secretary of the Treasury and of other offices and officers of Department of the Treasury transferred to Secretary of Transportation by Pub. L. 89-670, § 6(b)(1), Oct. 15, 1966, 80 Stat. 931. Section 6(b)(2) of Pub. L. 89-670, however, provided that notwithstanding such transfer of functions, Coast Guard shall operate as part of Navy in time of war or when President directs as provided in section 3 of Title 14. See section 108 of Title 49, Transportation.



## AMERICAN INSTITUTE IN TAIWAN

Employees of the American Institute in Taiwan authorized to assist and protect interests of United States persons by performing acts such as are authorized to be performed outside the United States for consular purposes by this section, see section 1-201 of Ex. Ord. No. 12143, June 22, 1979, 44 F.R. 37191, set out as a note under section 3301 of this title.

## CROSS REFERENCES

Consular powers as to seamen extended to United States naval officers in certain instances, see section 5948 of Title 10, Armed Forces.

Other powers and duties of consular officers as to merchant seamen, see sections 10308, 10309, 10318, 10703-10705, 10902, 10905, 10906, and 11104 of Title 46, Shipping.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4191 of this title.

**§ 4195. Estates of decedents generally; General Accounting Office as conservator**

It shall be the duty of a consular officer, or, if no consular officer is present, a diplomatic officer, under such procedural regulations as the Secretary of State may prescribe—

First. To take possession and to dispose of the personal estate left by any citizen of the United States, except a seaman who is a member of the crew of an American vessel, who shall die within or is domiciled at time of death within his jurisdiction: *Provided*, That such procedure is authorized by treaty provisions or permitted by the laws or authorities of the country wherein the death occurs, or the decedent is domiciled, or that such privilege is accorded by established usage: *Provided further*, That the decedent shall leave in the country where the death occurred or where he was domiciled, no legal representative, partner in trade, or trustee by him appointed to take care of his personal estate. A consular officer or, in his absence, a diplomatic officer shall act as the provisional conservator of the personal property within his jurisdiction of a deceased citizen of the United States but, unless authorized by treaty provisions, local law, or usage, he shall not act as administrator of such personal property. He shall render assistance in guarding, collecting, and transmitting the property to the United States to be disposed of according to the law of the decedent's domicile.

Second. After having taken possession of the personal property, as provisional conservator, to inventory and carefully appraise the effects with the assistance of two competent persons who, together with such officer, shall sign the inventory and annex thereto an appropriate certificate as to the accuracy of the appraised value of each article.

Third. To collect the debts due to the decedent in his jurisdiction and pay from the estate the obligations owed there by the decedent.

Fourth. To sell at auction, after reasonable public notice, unless the amount involved does not justify such expenditure, such part of the estate as shall be of a perishable nature, and after reasonable public notice and notice to next of kin if they can be ascertained by reasonable diligence such further part, if any, as shall be necessary for the payment of the decedent's debts incurred in such country, and funeral expenses,

and expenses incident to the disposition of the estate. If, at the expiration of one year from the date of death (or for such additional period as may be required for final settlement of the estate), no claimant shall appear, the residue of the estate, with the exception of investments of bonds, shares of stocks, notes of indebtedness, jewelry or heirlooms, or other articles having a sentimental value, shall be sold.

Fifth. To transmit to the General Accounting Office the proceeds of the sale (and any unsold effects, such as investments of bonds, shares of stocks, notes of indebtedness, jewelry or heirlooms, or other articles having a sentimental value), there to be held in trust for the legal claimant. If, however, at any time prior to such transmission, the decedent's legal representative should appear and demand the proceeds and effects in the officer's hands, he shall deliver them to such representative after having collected the prescribed fee therefor.

The Comptroller General of the United States, or such member of the General Accounting Office as he may duly empower to act as his representative for the purpose, shall act as conservator of such parts of these estates as may be received by the General Accounting Office or are in its possession, and may, when deemed to be in the interest of the estate, sell such effects, including bonds, shares of stock, notes of indebtedness, jewelry, or other articles, which have heretofore or may hereafter be so received, and pay the expenses of such sale out of the proceeds: *Provided*, That application for such effects shall not have been made by the legal claimant within six years after their receipt. The Comptroller General is authorized, for and in behalf of the estate of the deceased, to receive any balances due to such estates, to draw therefor on banks, safe deposits, trust or loan companies, or other like institutions, to endorse all checks, bills of exchange, promissory notes, and other evidences of indebtedness due to such estates, and take such other action as may be deemed necessary for the conservation of such estates. The net proceeds of such sales, together with such other moneys as may be collected by him, shall be deposited into the Treasury to a fund in trust for the legal claimant and reported to the Secretary of State.

If no claim to the effects the proceeds of which have been so deposited shall have been received from a legal claimant of the deceased within six years from the date of the receipt of the effects by the General Accounting Office, the funds so deposited, with any remaining unsold effects, less transmittal charges, shall be transmitted by that office to the proper officer of the State or Territory of the last domicile in the United States of the deceased citizen, if known, or, if not, such funds shall be covered into the general fund of the Treasury as miscellaneous receipts on account of proceeds of deceased citizens, and any such remaining unsold effects shall be disposed of by the General Accounting Office in such manner as, in the judgment of the Comptroller General, is deemed appropriate, or they may be destroyed if considered no longer possessed of any value: *Provided*, That when the estate shall be valued in excess of \$500, and no claim therefor has been presented to the General

Accounting Office by a legal claimant within the period specified in this paragraph or the legal claimant is unknown, before disposition of the estate as provided herein, notice shall be given by publishing once a week for four consecutive weeks in a newspaper published in the county of the last known domicile of the deceased, in the United States, the expense thereof to be deducted from the proceeds of such estate, and any lawful claim received as the result of such advertisement shall be adjusted and settled as provided for herein.

(R.S. §1709; Mar. 3, 1911, ch. 223, 36 Stat. 1083; June 10, 1921, ch. 18, title III, §304, 42 Stat. 24; July 12, 1940, ch. 618, 54 Stat. 758; Nov. 14, 1986, Pub. L. 99-653, §21, 100 Stat. 3658; Oct. 24, 1988, Pub. L. 100-525, §8(p), 102 Stat. 2618.)

#### CODIFICATION

R.S. §1709 derived from act Apr. 14, 1792, ch. 24, §2, 1 Stat. 255.

Section was not enacted as part of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 which comprises this chapter.

Section was formerly classified to section 1175 of this title, and prior thereto to section 75 of this title.

#### AMENDMENTS

1988—Pub. L. 100-525 amended Pub. L. 99-653, see 1986 Amendment note below.

1986—Pub. L. 99-653, as amended by Pub. L. 100-525, in par. designated “Second”, struck out “, article by article,” after “appraise the effects”.

1940—Act July 12, 1940, amended section generally.

1911—Act Mar. 3, 1911, inserted par. designated “Sixth” which required the Auditor for the State and other Departments to act as conservator of such part of the estates of certain deceased citizens as may be received at the Treasury.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1988 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 100-525 effective as if included in the enactment of the Immigration and Nationality Act Amendments of 1986, Pub. L. 99-653, see section 309(b)(15) of Pub. L. 102-232, set out as an Effective and Termination Dates of 1988 Amendments note under section 1101 of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Section 23(h) of Pub. L. 99-653, as added by Pub. L. 100-525, §8(r), Oct. 24, 1988, 102 Stat. 2619, provided that: “The amendment made by section 21 [amending this section] shall apply to individuals who die on or after November 14, 1986.”

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

Act June 10, 1921, transferred to General Accounting Office all powers and duties conferred upon Comptroller, six auditors, and certain other officers of the Treasury.

Functions of Comptroller General under this section transferred, effective June 30, 1996, to Director of Office of Management and Budget, see section 211 of Pub. L. 104-53, set out as a note under section 501 of Title 31, Money and Finance.

#### ADMINISTRATIVE ASSISTANCE IN ARRANGEMENTS FOLLOWING DEATH OF UNITED STATES CITIZEN ABROAD

Pub. L. 95-426, title I, §121, Oct. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 970, as amended by Pub. L. 97-241, title V, §505(a)(2), (b)(1), Aug. 24, 1982, 96 Stat. 299, provided that: “The Congress finds that the Department of State should, in the performance of its consular duties, render all reasonable administrative assistance to a United States citizen who is making necessary arrangements following the death of another United States citizen abroad.”

#### AMERICAN INSTITUTE IN TAIWAN

Employees of the American Institute in Taiwan authorized to assist and protect interests of United States

persons by performing acts such as are authorized to be performed outside the United States for consular purposes by this section, see section 1-201 of Ex. Ord. No. 12143, June 22, 1979, 44 F.R. 37191, set out as a note under section 3301 of this title.

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Acceptance by consular officers of appointment from any foreign state as administrator, guardian, etc., see sections 4198 and 4199 of this title.

Duties of consular officers where seaman, dying out of United States, leaves money or effects not on board of his vessel, see sections 10704 and 10705 of Title 46, Shipping.

Embezzlement by a consular officer of money, property, etc., of a citizen of the United States received by him made punishable, see section 4217 of this title.

Estates of Decedents, Department of State, Trust Fund, see section 1321(63) of Title 31, Money and Finance.

Permanent appropriation for payment of the proceeds of the personal estates of American citizens who die abroad, to their legal representatives, see section 1305 of Title 31.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4191 of this title.

### § 4196. Notification of death of decedent; transmission of inventory of effects

For the information of the representative of the deceased, the consular officer, or, if no consular officer is present, a diplomatic officer, in the settlement of his estate shall immediately notify his death in one of the gazettes published in the consular district, and also to the Secretary of State, that the same may be notified in the State to which the deceased belonged; and he shall, as soon as may be, transmit to the Secretary of State an inventory of the effects of the deceased taken as before directed.

(R.S. §1710; July 12, 1940, ch. 618, 54 Stat. 760.)

#### CODIFICATION

R.S. §1710 derived from act Apr. 14, 1792, ch. 24, §2, 1 Stat. 255.

Section was not enacted as part of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 which comprises this chapter.

Section was formerly classified to section 1176 of this title, and prior thereto to section 76 of this title.

#### AMENDMENTS

1940—Act July 12, 1940, substituted “the consular officer, or, if no consular officer is present, a diplomatic officer,” for “the consul or vice-consul.”

#### AMERICAN INSTITUTE IN TAIWAN

Employees of the American Institute in Taiwan authorized to assist and protect interests of United States persons by performing acts such as are authorized to be performed outside the United States for consular purposes by this section, see section 1-201 of Ex. Ord. No. 12143, June 22, 1979, 44 F.R. 37191, set out as a note under section 3301 of this title.

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Inventory directed to be taken, see paragraph “Second” of section 4195 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4191 of this title.

### § 4197. Following testamentary directions; assistance to testamentary appointee

When a citizen of the United States dies in a foreign country and leaves, by any lawful testa-

mentary disposition, special directions for the custody and management, by the consular officer, or in his absence a diplomatic officer, within whose jurisdiction the death occurred, of the personal property in the foreign country which he possessed at the time of death, such officer shall, so far as the laws of the foreign country permit, strictly observe such directions if not contrary to the laws of the United States. If such citizen has named, by any lawful testamentary disposition, any other person than a consular officer or diplomatic officer to take charge of and manage such property, it shall be the duty of the officer, whenever required by the person so named, to give his official aid in whatever way may be practicable to facilitate the proceedings of such person in the lawful execution of his trust, and, so far as the laws of the country or treaty provisions permit, to protect the property of the deceased from any interference by the authorities of the country where such citizen died. To this end it shall be the duty of the consular officer, or if no consular officer is present a diplomatic officer, to safeguard the decedent's property by placing thereon his official seal and to break and remove such seal only upon the request of the person designated by the deceased to take charge of and manage his property.

(R.S. §1711; July 12, 1940, ch. 618, 54 Stat. 760.)

#### CODIFICATION

R.S. §1711 derived from act Aug. 18, 1856, ch. 127, §28, 11 Stat. 63.

Section was not enacted as part of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 which comprises this chapter.

Section was formerly classified to section 1177 of this title, and prior thereto to section 77 of this title.

#### AMENDMENTS

1940—Act July 12, 1940, amended section generally.

#### AMERICAN INSTITUTE IN TAIWAN

Employees of the American Institute in Taiwan authorized to assist and protect interests of United States persons by performing acts such as are authorized to be performed outside the United States for consular purposes by this section, see section 1-201 of Ex. Ord. No. 12143, June 22, 1979, 44 F.R. 37191, set out as a note under section 3301 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4191 of this title.

### § 4198. Bond as administrator or guardian; action on bond

No consular officer of the United States shall accept an appointment from any foreign state as administrator, guardian, or to any other office or trust for the settlement or conservation of estates of deceased persons or of their heirs or of persons under legal disabilities, without executing a bond, with security, to be approved by the Secretary of State, and in a penal sum to be fixed by him and in such form as he may prescribe, conditioned for the true and faithful performance of all his duties according to law and for the true and faithful accounting for delivering, and paying over to the persons thereto entitled of all moneys, goods, effects, and other property which shall come to his hands or to the hands of any other person to his use as such ad-

ministrator, guardian, or in other fiduciary capacity. Said bond shall be deposited with the Secretary of the Treasury. In case of a breach of any such bond, any person injured by the failure of such officer faithfully to discharge the duties of his said trust according to law, may institute, in his own name and for his sole use, a suit upon said bond and thereupon recover such damages as shall be legally assessed, with costs of suit, for which execution may issue in due form; but if such party fails to recover in the suit, judgment shall be rendered and execution may issue against him for costs in favor of the defendant; and the United States shall in no case be liable for the same. The said bond shall remain, after any judgment rendered thereon, as a security for the benefit of any person injured by a breach of the condition of the same until the whole penalty has been recovered.

(June 30, 1902, ch. 1331, §1, 32 Stat. 546.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as part of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 which comprises this chapter.

Section was formerly classified to section 1178 of this title, and prior thereto to section 78 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4199 of this title.

### § 4199. Penalty for failure to give bond and for embezzlement

Every consular officer who accepts any appointment to any office of trust mentioned in section 4198 of this title without first having complied with the provisions thereof by due execution of a bond as therein required, or who shall willfully fail or neglect to account for, pay over, and deliver any money, property, or effects so received to any person lawfully entitled thereto, after having been requested by the latter, his representative or agent so to do, shall be deemed guilty of embezzlement and shall be punishable by imprisonment for not more than five years and by a fine of not more than \$5,000.

(June 30, 1902, ch. 1331, §2, 32 Stat. 547.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as part of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 which comprises this chapter.

Section was formerly classified to section 1179 of this title, and prior thereto to section 79 of this title.

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Embezzlement and theft, see section 641 et seq. of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

Embezzlement of fees or of effects of American citizens, see section 4217 of this title.

### § 4200. Certification of invoices generally

No consular officer shall certify any invoice unless he is satisfied that the person making oath thereto is the person he represents himself to be, that he is a credible person, and that the statements made under such oath are true; and he shall, thereupon, by his certificate, state that he was so satisfied.

(R.S. §1715.)

#### CODIFICATION

R.S. §1715 derived from act Aug. 18, 1856, ch. 127, §27, 11 Stat. 62.

Section was not enacted as part of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 which comprises this chapter.

Section was formerly classified to section 1180 of this title, and prior thereto to section 83 of this title.

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Certification of invoices, see sections 338 to 341 of Title 19, Customs Duties.

False certification of invoices and other papers, by consular officers, see section 1019 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4191 of this title.

### § 4201. Fees for certification of invoices

Fees for the consular certification of invoices shall be, and they are, included with the fees for official services for which the President is authorized by section 4219 of this title to prescribe rates or tariffs.

(Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, §9, 34 Stat. 101.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as part of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 which comprises this chapter.

A further provision of section 9 of act Apr. 5, 1906, repealed R.S. §2851, which provided for certification of invoices of imported merchandise by the collector of the post, and R.S. §1721, which prescribed a fee of one dollar to be charged by the consul-general for the British North American provinces, for certifying invoices of goods not exceeding \$100 in value.

Section was formerly classified to section 1181 of this title, and prior thereto to section 84 of this title.

### § 4202. Exaction of excessive fees for verification of invoices; penalty

The fee provided by law for the verification of invoices by consular officers shall, when paid, be held to be a full payment for furnishing blank forms of declaration to be signed by the shipper, and for making, signing, and sealing the certificate of the consular officer thereto; and any consular officer who, under pretense of charging for blank forms, advice, or clerical services in the preparation of such declaration or certificate, charges or receives any fee greater in amount than that provided by law for the verification of invoices, or who demands or receives for any official services, or who allows any clerk or subordinate to receive for any such service, any fee or reward other than the fee provided by law for such service, shall be punishable by imprisonment for not more than one year, or by a fine of not more than \$2,000, and shall be removed from his office.

(R.S. §1716.)

#### CODIFICATION

R.S. §1716 derived from act Mar. 3, 1869, ch. 125, §3, 15 Stat. 321.

Section was not enacted as part of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 which comprises this chapter.

Section was formerly classified to section 1182 of this title, and prior thereto to section 85 of this title.

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Refunding excessive fees, with a penalty for the collection thereof, see section 4209 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4191 of this title.

### § 4203. Destruction of old invoices

The Secretary of State is authorized to cause, from time to time, the destruction of invoices that have been filed in the consular offices for a period of more than five years.

(Feb. 24, 1903, ch. 753, 32 Stat. 854.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as part of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 which comprises this chapter.

Section was formerly classified to section 1183 of this title, and prior thereto to section 86 of this title.

### § 4204. Restriction as to certificate for goods from countries adjacent to United States

No consular officer of the United States shall grant a certificate for goods, wares, or merchandise shipped from countries adjacent to the United States which have passed a consulate after purchase for shipment.

(R.S. §1717.)

#### CODIFICATION

R.S. §1717 derived from act Feb. 22, 1873, ch. 184, §3, 17 Stat. 474.

Section was not enacted as part of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 which comprises this chapter.

Section was formerly classified to section 1184 of this title, and prior thereto to section 87 of this title.

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Restriction on consular certificates, see section 339 of Title 19, Customs Duties.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4191 of this title.

### § 4205. Retention of papers of American vessels until payment of demands and wages

All consular officers are authorized and required to retain in their possession all the papers of vessels of the United States, which shall be deposited with them as directed by law, till payment shall be made of all demands and wages on account of such vessels.

(R.S. §1718.)

#### CODIFICATION

R.S. §1718 derived from act Aug. 18, 1856, ch. 127, §28, 11 Stat. 63.

Section was not enacted as part of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 which comprises this chapter.

Section was formerly classified to section 1185 of this title, and prior thereto to section 88 of this title.

#### AMERICAN INSTITUTE IN TAIWAN

Employees of the American Institute in Taiwan authorized to assist and protect interests of United States persons by performing acts such as are authorized to be performed outside the United States for consular purposes by this section, see section 1-201 of Ex. Ord. No. 12143, June 22, 1979, 44 F.R. 37191, set out as a note under section 3301 of this title.

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Deposit of ships' papers with consular officers by masters of vessels, see section 354 of Title 46, Appendix, Shipping.

Entry of vessels, see section 1434 of Title 19, Customs Duties.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4191 of this title.

**§ 4206. Fees for services to American vessels or seamen prohibited**

No fees named in the tariff of consular fees prescribed by order of the President shall be charged or collected by consular officers for the official services to American vessels and seamen. Consular officers shall furnish the master of every such vessel with an itemized statement of such services performed on account of said vessel, with the fee so prescribed for each service, and make a detailed report to the Secretary of the Treasury of such services and fees, under such regulations as the Secretary of State may prescribe.

(June 26, 1884, ch. 121, §12, 23 Stat. 56.)

CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as part of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 which comprises this chapter.

Provisions of section 12 of act June 26, 1884 (this section), permitting the Secretary of the Treasury to allow consular officers who are paid in whole or in part by fees such compensation for their services as they would have received but for the prohibition in this section were superseded by section 4223 of this title and were omitted, as was a provision of said section appropriating a sum sufficient for the payment of the compensation herein mentioned.

Section was formerly classified to section 1186 of this title, and prior thereto to section 89 of this title.

**§ 4207. Profits from dealings with discharged seamen; prohibition**

No consular officer, nor any person under any consular officer shall make any charge or receive, directly or indirectly, any compensation, by way of commission or otherwise, for receiving or disbursing the wages or extra wages to which any seaman or mariner is entitled who is discharged in any foreign country, or for any money advanced to any such seaman or mariner who seeks relief from any consulate; nor shall any consular officer, or any person under any consular officer, be interested, directly or indirectly, in any profit derived from clothing, boarding or otherwise supplying or sending home any such seaman or mariner. Such prohibition as to profit, however, shall not be construed to relieve or prevent any such officer who is the owner of or otherwise interested in any vessel of the United States from transporting in such vessel any such seaman or mariner, or from receiving or being interested in such reasonable allowance as may be made for such transportation by law.

(R.S. §1719; Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, §3, 34 Stat. 100.)

CODIFICATION

R.S. §1719 derived from act Aug. 18, 1856, ch. 127, §20, 11 Stat. 59.

Reference to "commercial agency" was omitted in view of the abolition of the grade of commercial agent by act Apr. 5, 1906.

Section was not enacted as part of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 which comprises this chapter.

Section was formerly classified to section 1187 of this title, and prior thereto to section 90 of this title.

CROSS REFERENCES

Discharge and return by consular officers of seamen, see sections 10318, 10906, 11106, and 11503 of Title 46, Shipping.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4191 of this title.

**§ 4208. Valuation of foreign coins in payment of fees**

Consuls, vice consuls, and consular agents in the Dominion of Canada, in the collection of official fees, shall receive foreign moneys at the rate given in the Treasury schedule of the value of foreign coins.

(R.S. §1722.)

CODIFICATION

R.S. §1722 derived from act Mar. 3, 1869, ch. 125, §3, 15 Stat. 321.

Provisions of R.S. §1722 that no consul, vice consul, or consular agent in the Dominion of Canada shall be allowed tonnage fees for any services, actual or constructive, rendered any vessel owned and registered in the United States that may touch at a Canadian port, were omitted as superseded by section 12 of act June 26, 1884, ch. 121, 23 Stat. 56, which is classified to section 4206 of this title.

Section was not enacted as part of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 which comprises this chapter.

Section was formerly classified to section 1188 of this title, and prior thereto to section 91 of this title.

CROSS REFERENCES

Medium for payment of fees, see section 4220 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4191 of this title.

**§ 4209. Exaction of excessive fees generally; penalty of treble amount**

Whenever any consular officer collects, or knowingly allows to be collected for any service, any other or greater fees than are allowed by law for such service, he shall, besides his liability to refund the same, be liable to pay to the person by whom or in whose behalf the same are paid, treble the amount of the unlawful charge so collected, as a penalty, to be recovered with costs, in any proper form of action, by such person for his own use. And in any such case the Secretary of the Treasury may retain, out of the compensation of such officer, the amount of such overcharge and of such penalty, and charge the same to such officer in account, and may thereupon refund such unlawful charge, and pay such penalty to the person entitled to the same if he shall think proper so to do.

(R.S. §1723.)

CODIFICATION

R.S. §1723 derived from act Aug. 18, 1856, ch. 127, §17, 11 Stat. 58.

Section was not enacted as part of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 which comprises this chapter.

Section was formerly classified to section 1189 of this title, and prior thereto to section 92 of this title.

CROSS REFERENCES

Exaction of excessive fees for verification of invoices made punishable, see section 4202 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4191 of this title.

**§ 4210. Liability for uncollected fees**

Every consul general, consul, or vice consul appointed to perform the duty of any such offi-

cer, who omits to collect any fees which he is entitled to charge for any official service, shall be liable to the United States therefor, as if he had collected the same; unless, upon good cause shown therefor, the Secretary of the Treasury shall think proper to remit the same.

(R.S. § 1724; Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, § 3, 34 Stat. 100.)

#### CODIFICATION

R.S. § 1724 derived from act Aug. 18, 1856, ch. 127, § 18, 11 Stat. 58.

References to “commercial agent” and “vice-commercial agent” were omitted in view of the abolition of the grade of commercial agent by act Apr. 5, 1906.

Section was not enacted as part of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 which comprises this chapter.

Section was formerly classified to section 1190 of this title, and prior thereto to section 93 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4191 of this title.

### § 4211. Returns as to fees by officers compensated by fees

All consular agents, as are allowed for their compensation the whole or any part of the fees which they may collect, shall make returns in such manner as the General Accounting Office shall prescribe, of all such fees as they or any person in their behalf so collect.

(R.S. § 1725; July 31, 1894, ch. 174, § 5, 28 Stat. 206; Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, § 3, 34 Stat. 100; June 10, 1921, ch. 18, title III, § 304, 42 Stat. 24.)

#### CODIFICATION

R.S. § 1725 derived from act Aug. 18, 1856, ch. 127, § 18, 11 Stat. 58.

References to “commercial agents” and “vice-commercial agents” were omitted in view of the abolition of the grade of commercial agent by act Apr. 5, 1906.

Section was not enacted as part of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 which comprises this chapter.

Section was formerly classified to section 1191 of this title, and prior thereto to section 94 of this title.

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“General Accounting Office” substituted in text for “Comptroller of the Treasury” pursuant to act June 10, 1921, which transferred all powers and duties conferred upon Comptroller, six auditors, and certain other officers of the Treasury to General Accounting Office. See section 701 et seq. of Title 31, Money and Finance. Previously, functions of Secretary of State under this section transferred to Comptroller of the Treasury by act July 31, 1894.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4191 of this title.

### § 4212. Receipt for fees; numbering receipts

Every consular officer shall give receipts for all fees collected for his official services, expressing the particular services for which the same were collected. He shall number all receipts given by him for fees received for official services, in the order of their dates, beginning with number one at the commencement of the period of his service, and on the first day of January in every year thereafter.

(R.S. §§ 1726, 1727.)

#### CODIFICATION

R.S. §§ 1726, 1727 derived from act Aug. 18, 1856, ch. 127, §§ 17, 18, 11 Stat. 58.

Section was not enacted as part of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 which comprises this chapter.

Section was formerly classified to section 1192 of this title, and prior thereto to section 95 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4191 of this title.

### § 4213. Registry of fees

Every consular officer shall also register in a book to be kept by him for that purpose all fees so received by him, in the order in which they are received, specifying each item of service and the amount received therefor, from whom, and the dates when received, and if for any service connected with any vessel, the name thereof, and indicating what items and amounts are embraced in each receipt given by him therefor, and numbering the same according to the number of the receipts, respectively, so that the receipts and register shall correspond with each other; and he shall, in such register, specify the name of the person for whom, and the date when he shall grant, issue, or verify any passport, certify any invoice, or perform any other official service in the entry of the receipt of the fees therefor, and also number each consular act so receipted for with the number of such receipt, and as shown by such register.

(R.S. § 1727.)

#### CODIFICATION

R.S. § 1727 derived from act Aug. 18, 1856, ch. 127, § 18, 11 Stat. 58.

Section was not enacted as part of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 which comprises this chapter.

Section was formerly classified to section 1193 of this title, and prior thereto to section 96 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4191 of this title.

### § 4214. Account of fees; certification

Every consular officer responsible for the collection of fees, in rendering his account of fees received, shall furnish a full transcript of the register which he is required to keep, and certify that such transcript is an accurate and complete record of all fees received for the period shown.

(R.S. § 1728; June 28, 1955, ch. 196, 69 Stat. 187.)

#### CODIFICATION

R.S. § 1728 derived from act Aug. 18, 1856, ch. 127, § 18, 11 Stat. 58.

Section was not enacted as part of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 which comprises this chapter.

Section was formerly classified to section 1194 of this title, and prior thereto to section 97 of this title.

#### AMENDMENTS

1955—Act June 28, 1955, permitted certification by consular officers of their accounts of fees.

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Embezzlement of fees or of effects of American citizens, see section 4217 of this title.

Perjury, see sections 1621, 1622, and 3185 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4191 of this title.

**§ 4215. Notarial acts, oaths, affirmations, affidavits, and depositions; fees**

Every consular officer of the United States is required, whenever application is made to him therefor, within the limits of his consulate, to administer to or take from any person any oath, affirmation, affidavit, or deposition, and to perform any other notarial act which any notary public is required or authorized by law to do within the United States; and for every such notarial act performed he shall charge in each instance the appropriate fee prescribed by the President under section 4219 of this title.

(Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, §7, 34 Stat. 101; Apr. 30, 1994, Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §127(b), 108 Stat. 394; Oct. 25, 1994, Pub. L. 103-415, §1(mm)(1), 108 Stat. 4303.)

CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as part of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 which comprises this chapter.

Section was formerly classified to section 1195 of this title, and prior thereto to section 98 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-415 struck out sentence inserted at end by Pub. L. 103-236. See below.

Pub. L. 103-236 inserted at end “Pursuant to such regulations as the Secretary of State may prescribe, the Secretary may designate any other employee of the Department of State who is a citizen of the United States to perform any notarial function authorized to be performed by a consular officer of the United States under this Act.”

AMERICAN INSTITUTE IN TAIWAN

Employees of the American Institute in Taiwan authorized to assist and protect interests of United States persons by performing acts such as are authorized to be performed outside the United States for consular purposes by these sections, see section 1-201 of Ex. Ord. No. 12143, June 22, 1979, 44 F.R. 37191, set out as a note under section 3301 of this title.

CROSS REFERENCES

Oaths, affirmations, affidavits, or depositions, see section 4221 of this title.

**§ 4216. Posting rates of fees**

It shall be the duty of all consular officers at all times to keep posted up in their offices, respectively, in a conspicuous place, and subject to the examination of all persons interested therein, a copy of such rates or tariffs as shall be in force.

(R.S. §1731.)

CODIFICATION

R.S. §1731 derived from act Aug. 18, 1856, ch. 127, §16, 11 Stat. 57.

Section was not enacted as part of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 which comprises this chapter.

Section was formerly classified to section 1197 of this title, and prior thereto to section 101 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4191 of this title.

**§ 4217. Embezzlement of fees or of effects of American citizens**

Every consular officer who willfully neglects to render true and just quarterly accounts and

returns of the business of his office, and of moneys received by him for the use of the United States, or who neglects to pay over any balance of said moneys due to the United States at the expiration of any quarter, before the expiration of the next succeeding quarter, or who shall receive money, property, or effects belonging to a citizen of the United States and shall not within a reasonable time after demand made upon him by the Secretary of State or by such citizen, his executor, administrator, or legal representative, account for and pay over all moneys, property, and effects, less his lawful fees, due to such citizen, shall be deemed guilty of embezzlement, and shall be punishable by imprisonment for not more than five years, and by a fine of not more than \$2,000.

(R.S. §1734; Dec. 21, 1898, ch. 36, §3, 30 Stat. 771.)

CODIFICATION

R.S. §1734 derived from act Mar. 3, 1869, ch. 125, §5, 15 Stat. 322.

Section was not enacted as part of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 which comprises this chapter.

Section was formerly classified to section 1198 of this title, and prior thereto to section 102 of this title.

CROSS REFERENCES

Embezzlement and theft, see section 641 et seq. of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

Penalty for failure to give bond and for embezzlement, perjury, and making false oaths in accounting for fees, see sections 4199 and 4214 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4191 of this title.

**§ 4218. False certificate as to ownership of property**

If any consul or vice consul falsely and knowingly certifies that property belonging to foreigners is property belonging to citizens of the United States, he shall be punishable by imprisonment for not more than three years, and by a fine of not more than \$10,000.

(R.S. §1737; Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, §3, 34 Stat. 100.)

CODIFICATION

R.S. §1737 derived from act Feb. 22, 1803, ch. 9, §7, 2 Stat. 204.

References to “commercial agent” and “vice-commercial agent” were omitted in view of the abolition of the grade of commercial agent by act Apr. 5, 1906.

Section was not enacted as part of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 which comprises this chapter.

Section was formerly classified to section 1200 of this title, and prior thereto to section 104 of this title.

CROSS REFERENCES

False certification of invoice, or other paper, by a consular officer, made punishable, see section 1019 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4191 of this title.

**§ 4219. Regulation of fees by President**

The President is authorized to prescribe, from time to time, the rates or tariffs of fees to be charged for official services, and to designate what shall be regarded as official services, besides such as are expressly declared by law, in

the business of the several embassies, legations, and consulates, and to adapt the same, by such differences as may be necessary or proper, to each embassy, legation, or consulate; and it shall be the duty of all officers and persons connected with such embassies, legations, and consulates to collect for such official services such and only such fees as may be prescribed for their respective embassies, legations, and consulates, and such rates or tariffs shall be reported annually to Congress.

(R.S. § 1745; Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, § 3, 34 Stat. 100.)

#### CODIFICATION

R.S. § 1745 derived from act Aug. 18, 1856, ch. 127, § 16, 11 Stat. 57.

References to “commercial agencies” and “commercial agency” were omitted in view of the abolition of the grade of commercial agent by act Apr. 5, 1906.

Section was not enacted as part of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 which comprises this chapter.

Section was formerly classified to section 1201 of this title, and prior thereto to section 127 of this title.

#### EX. ORD. NO. 10718. DELEGATION OF AUTHORITY TO SECRETARY OF STATE

Ex. Ord. No. 10718, June 27, 1957, 22 F.R. 4632, provided:

SECTION 1. There is hereby delegated to the Secretary of State the authority vested in the President by section 1745 of the Revised Statutes of the United States (22 U.S.C. 1201) [this section] to prescribe, from time to time, the rates or tariffs of fees to be charged for official services, and to designate what shall be regarded as official services, besides such as are expressly declared by law, in the business of the several embassies, legations, and consulates, and to adapt the same, by such differences as may be necessary or proper, to each embassy, legation, or consulate.

SEC. 2. This order shall not operate to amend, supersede, or terminate any rates or tariffs of fees, designations, or adaptations prescribed or made under authority of the said section 1745 [this section] and in force immediately prior to the issuance of this order; but authority to amend, supersede, or terminate the same, and to prescribe regulations necessary or desirable for the implementation of rates or tariffs of fees, designations, or adaptations heretofore or hereafter prescribed or made, shall be deemed to be included within the authority delegated by section 1 of this order.

SEC. 3. The rates or tariffs of fees and the regulations prescribed and any other actions taken by the Secretary of State under authority of this order shall be published in the Federal Register.

DWIGHT D. EISENHOWER.

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Fees for consular certification of invoices, see section 4201 of this title.

Fees named in tariff of consular fees prescribed by order of the President, see section 4206 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4191, 4201, 4215 of this title.

### § 4220. Medium for payment of fees

All fees collected by diplomatic and consular officers for and in behalf of the United States shall be collected in the coin of the United States, or at its representative value in exchange.

(R.S. § 1746.)

#### CODIFICATION

R.S. § 1746 derived from act Aug. 18, 1856, ch. 127, § 30, 11 Stat. 63.

Section was not enacted as part of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 which comprises this chapter.

Section was formerly classified to section 1202 of this title, and prior thereto to section 128 of this title.

#### CROSS REFERENCES

All coins and currencies of United States to be legal tender for all debts, see section 5103 of Title 31, Money and Finance.

Valuation of foreign coins in payment of fees, see section 4208 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4191 of this title.

### § 4221. Depositions and notarial acts; perjury

Every secretary of embassy or legation and consular officer is authorized, whenever he is required or deems it necessary or proper so to do, at the post, port, place, or within the limits of his embassy, legation, or consulate, to administer to or take from any person an oath, affirmation, affidavit, or deposition, and to perform any notarial act which any notary public is required or authorized by law to do within the United States. Every such oath, affirmation, affidavit, deposition, and notarial act administered, sworn, affirmed, taken, had, or done, by or before any such officer, when certified under his hand and seal of office, shall be as valid, and of like force and effect within the United States, to all intents and purposes, as if administered, sworn, affirmed, taken, had, or done, by or before any other person within the United States duly authorized and competent thereto. If any person shall willfully and corruptly commit perjury, or by any means procure any person to commit perjury in any such oath, affirmation, affidavit, or deposition, within the intent and meaning of any Act of Congress now or hereafter made, such offender may be charged, proceeded against, tried, convicted, and dealt with in any district of the United States, in the same manner, in all respects, as if such offense had been committed in the United States, before any officer duly authorized therein to administer or take such oath, affirmation, affidavit, or deposition, and shall be subject to the same punishment and disability therefor as are or shall be prescribed by any such act for such offense; and any document purporting to have affixed, impressed, or subscribed thereto, or thereon the seal and signature of the officer administering or taking the same in testimony thereof, shall be admitted in evidence without proof of any such seal or signature being genuine or of the official character of such person; and if any person shall forge any such seal or signature, or shall tender in evidence any such document with a false or counterfeit seal or signature thereto, knowing the same to be false or counterfeit, he shall be deemed and taken to be guilty of a misdemeanor and on conviction shall be imprisoned not exceeding three years nor less than one year, and fined, in a sum not to exceed \$3,000, and may be charged, proceeded against, tried, convicted, and dealt with therefor in the district where he may be arrested or in custody. Pursuant to such regulations as the Secretary of State may prescribe, the Secretary may designate any other employee of the Department of State who is a citizen of the United States to



perform any notarial function authorized to be performed by a consular officer of the United States under this Act.

(R.S. §1750; Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, §3, 34 Stat. 100; Oct. 25, 1994, Pub. L. 103-415, §1(mm)(2), 108 Stat. 4304.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, probably means the act of Aug. 18, 1856, ch. 127, 11 Stat. 52, as amended. That act was incorporated into the Revised Statutes as R.S. 208, 211, 1674 to 1676, 1680, 1685 to 1687, 1689, 1690, 1692, 1695, 1697, 1699, 1700, 1701, 1703, 1706, 1708, 1711, 1713, 1715, 1718, 1719, 1730, 1731, 1735, 1738 to 1741, 1743 to 1748, 1750 to 1752, 4207, 4213, 4580, 4581, 4583, and 4584. For complete classification of those sections of the Revised Statutes to the Code, see Tables.

#### CODIFICATION

R.S. §1750 derived from act Aug. 18, 1856, ch. 127, §24, 11 Stat. 61.

Reference to “commercial agency” was omitted in view of the abolition of the grade of commercial agent by act Apr. 5, 1906.

Section was not enacted as part of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 which comprises this chapter.

Section was formerly classified to section 1203 of this title, and prior thereto to section 131 of this title.

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-415, which directed amendment of section 24 of the Act of August 18, 1856 (11 Stat. 61, 22 U.S.C. 4221) by inserting at end “Pursuant to such regulations as the Secretary of State may prescribe, the Secretary may designate any other employee of the Department of State who is a citizen of the United States to perform any notarial function authorized to be performed by a consular officer of the United States under this Act.”, was executed to this section, which is section 1750 of the Revised Statutes, to reflect the probable intent of Congress. Section 24 of the Act of Aug. 18, 1856, was restated in section 1750 of the Revised Statutes and repealed by section 5596 of the Revised Statutes.

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Certificate of acknowledgment of assignments, grants, or conveyances of patents as prima facie evidence of execution, see section 261 of Title 35, Patents.

Counterfeiting and forgery, see section 471 et seq. of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

Performance of notarial acts, see section 4215 of this title.

Perjury, see sections 1621, 1622, and 3185 of Title 18.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4191 of this title.

### § 4222. Authentication of documents of State of Vatican City by consular officer in Rome

Until the United States shall have consular officer resident in the State of the Vatican City, a copy of any document of record or on file in a public office of said State of the Vatican City, certified by the lawful custodian of such document, may be authenticated, as provided in section 1741 of title 28, by a consular officer of the United States resident in the city of Rome, Kingdom of Italy, and such document or record shall, when so certified and authenticated, be admissible in evidence in any court of the United States.

(June 20, 1936, ch. 640, §6A, as added June 25, 1938, ch. 682, 52 Stat. 1163.)

#### CODIFICATION

“Section 1741 of title 28” substituted in text for “section 6 of this Act [28 U.S.C. 695e]” on authority of act June 25, 1948, ch. 646, 62 Stat. 869, section 1 of which enacted Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

Section was not enacted as part of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 which comprises this chapter.

Section was formerly classified to section 1204 of this title, and prior thereto to section 695e-1 of Title 28.

#### FEDERAL RULES OF CIVIL PROCEDURE

Proof of official records, see rule 44, Title 28, Appendix, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

#### FEDERAL RULES OF CRIMINAL PROCEDURE

Proof of official records, see rule 27, Title 18, Appendix, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

### § 4223. General duty to account for fees

All fees, official or unofficial, received by any officer in the Consular Service for services rendered in connection with the duties of his office or as a consular officer, including fees for notarial services, and fees for taking depositions, executing commissions or letters rogatory, settling estates, receiving or paying out moneys, caring for or disposing of property, shall be accounted for and paid into the Treasury of the United States, and the sole and only compensation of such officers shall be by salaries fixed by law. And vice-consuls, in addition to such compensation as they may be entitled to receive as consuls or clerks, may receive such portion of the salaries of the consul-general or consuls for whom they act as shall be provided by regulation.

(Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, §8, 34 Stat. 101; Feb. 5, 1915, ch. 23, §§3, 6, 38 Stat. 805, 806; May 24, 1924, ch. 182, §11, 43 Stat. 142; Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title XI, §1131(26), 60 Stat. 1037.)

#### CODIFICATION

Compensation provisions pertaining to the positions of vice-consuls-general, deputy consuls-general, and deputy consuls were omitted from this section on the authority of act Feb. 5, 1915.

Section was not enacted as a part of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 which comprises this chapter.

Section was formerly classified to section 99 of this title.

#### AMENDMENTS

1946—Act Aug. 13, 1946, struck out “but this shall not apply to consular agents, who shall be paid one-half of the fees received in their offices, up to a maximum sum of one thousand dollars in any one year, the other half being accounted for and paid into the Treasury of the United States.”

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1946 AMENDMENT

Amendment by act Aug. 13, 1946, effective three months after Aug. 13, 1946.

#### REPEALS

Act Aug. 13, 1946, ch. 957, title XI, §1131(26), 60 Stat. 1037, cited as a credit to this section, was repealed by Pub. L. 96-465, title II, §2205(1), Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2159.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4224 of this title.

**§ 4224. Fees; accounting; stamps**

The provisions of sections 1196<sup>1</sup> and 4223 of this title, relative to official fees and the method of accounting therefor shall apply to diplomatic officers below the grade of minister and to consular officers.

(May 24, 1924, ch. 182, §18, formerly §11, 43 Stat. 142, renumbered and amended Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, §7, 46 Stat. 1209.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 1196 of this title, referred to in text, was repealed by act June 28, 1955, ch. 196, 69 Stat. 187.

## CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as part of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 which comprises this chapter.

Section was formerly classified to section 812 of this title, and prior thereto to section 13 of this title.

## AMENDMENTS

1931—Act Feb. 23, 1931, substituted “shall apply to diplomatic officers below the grade of minister and to consular officers” for “shall include both branches of the Foreign Service”.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1931 AMENDMENT

Section 7 of act Feb. 23, 1931, provided: “That this Act [see Tables for classification] shall take effect on July 1, 1931.”

**§ 4225. Fiscal districts; establishment; district accounting and disbursing offices; personnel; duties**

The President is authorized, whenever the necessity for such offices with a view to effecting economies in accounting procedure is apparent, to prescribe certain fiscal districts or areas and to establish within each such district as a part of the Department of State service, a district accounting and disbursing office to exercise control over the accounts and returns of all diplomatic missions and consular offices within the district in such manner as the President may direct. To each such office may be assigned the administrative accounting responsibility for receipts and expenditures of the diplomatic missions and consular offices within the district. Each district office shall be in charge of an accountable officer, to whom all fees, and other official monies, received by any diplomatic, consular, or Foreign Service officer may be accounted for, under such rules and regulations as may be prescribed by the Secretary of State, all such fees and monies, or the residue thereof after the payment of salaries, allowances, and current expenses of the diplomatic missions and consular offices within the district, to be paid by the district accounting and disbursing officer into the Treasury of the United States. Such district accounting and disbursing officers accountable for public monies may entrust monies to other officers for the purpose of having them make disbursements as his agent, and the officer to whom the monies are entrusted, as well as the officer who entrusts the monies to him, shall be held pecuniarily responsible therefor to the United States. All diplomatic, consular or Foreign Service officers on duty within the area

covered by such district offices may be required to render accounts of their disbursements to the officer in charge of such district office to be included in his accounts.

*Provided further*, That the Secretary of State is authorized to appoint such district accounting and disbursing officers and their assistants in the same manner as clerks in diplomatic missions and consular offices are appointed.

Section 3522 of title 31, and any other existing statutes, in so far as they conflict with this section are hereby amended.

(May 24, 1924, ch. 182, §35, as added Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, §7, 46 Stat. 1216; amended June 6, 1972, Pub. L. 92-310, title II, §227(b), 86 Stat. 207.)

## CODIFICATION

“Section 3522 of title 31” substituted in text for “Section 3622 of the Revised Statutes of the United States (U.S.C., title 31, sec. 496)”, on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, §4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

Section was not enacted as part of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 which comprises this chapter.

Section was formerly classified to section 813 of this title, and prior thereto to section 23k of this title.

## AMENDMENTS

1972—Pub. L. 92-310 struck out provisions which required district accounting and disbursing officers and their agents to be bonded.

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective July 1, 1931, see section 7 of act Feb. 23, 1931, set out as an Effective Date of 1931 Amendment note under section 4224 of this title.

## TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

Function of disbursement of moneys of the United States of any agency (with certain exceptions) transferred to Treasury Department by Ex. Ord. No. 6166, §4, June 10, 1933, set out as a note under section 901 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees. Section 4 of Ex. Ord. No. 6166 was repealed by Pub. L. 97-258, §5(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1086, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance. See section 3321 of Title 31.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4226 of this title.

**§ 4226. Fees and official monies from diplomatic missions, consular offices and district accounting and disbursing offices; disposition**

All fees and other official monies received by diplomatic missions or consular offices or by the district accounting and disbursing offices provided in section 4225 of this title, may be transmitted through the Department of State for deposit in the United States Treasury, or may be used in payment of salaries, allowances, and current expenses of said missions and offices, under such rules and regulations as the President may from time to time prescribe; the residue, if any, to be transmitted through the Department of State for deposit in the United States Treasury. Section 3302(b) of title 31 is hereby amended.

(May 24, 1924, ch. 182, §36, as added Feb. 23, 1931, ch. 276, §7, 46 Stat. 1216.)

## CODIFICATION

“Section 3302(b) of title 31” substituted in text for “Section 3617 of the Revised Statutes of the United

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

States (U.S.C., title 31, sec. 484)", on authority of Pub. L. 97-258, §4(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1067, the first section of which enacted Title 31, Money and Finance.

Section was not enacted as part of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 which comprises this chapter.

Section was formerly classified to section 814 of this title, and prior thereto to section 231 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective July 1, 1931, see section 7 of act Feb. 23, 1931, set out as an Effective Date of 1931 Amendment note under section 4224 of this title.

### CHAPTER 53—AUTHORITIES RELATING TO THE REGULATION OF FOREIGN MISSIONS

- Sec.  
4301. Congressional declaration of findings and policy.  
    (a) Findings.  
    (b) Policy.  
    (c) Treatment of foreign missions in United States.
4302. Definitions.
4303. Authorities of Secretary of State.
4304. Provision of benefits.  
    (a) Request by foreign mission; terms and conditions as approved by Secretary.  
    (b) Benefits through Secretary as mandatory; compliance with terms and conditions.  
    (c) Surcharge or fee; waiver of recourse.  
    (d) Agent for waiver of recourse.  
    (e) Secret Service protection.  
    (f) In-kind exchange of properties with foreign government; transfer of funds; reciprocal agreement; regulations.
- 4304a. Enforcement of compliance with liability insurance requirements.  
    (a) Notice to Secretary by head of foreign mission of lapse or termination of coverage; report to Secretary by head of foreign mission respecting motor vehicles, vessels and aircraft registered in United States.  
    (b) Surcharge or fee covering unsatisfied part of judgment; preconditions for imposition.  
    (c) Definitions.
4305. Property of foreign missions.  
    (a) Proposed acquisition, sale, or other disposition.  
    (b) Divestiture.  
    (c) Cessation of diplomatic, consular, and other governmental activities in United States; protecting power or other agent; disposition of property.  
    (d) Protection from future hostile intelligence activities in United States.
4306. Location of foreign missions in the District of Columbia.  
    (a) Section as governing location, replacement, or expansion.  
    (b) Acceptable areas; limitations and conditions.  
    (c) Filing of application with Board of Zoning Adjustment; publication of notice; public participation; final determination.  
    (d) Criteria for determination.  
    (e) Consistency of regulations, proceedings, and other actions; review and comment by National Planning Commission.  
    (f) Rule-making nature of proceedings.  
    (g) Compliance with District of Columbia building and related codes.  
    (h) Approval of Board of Zoning Adjustment or Zoning Commission not required.

- Sec.  
4307. Preemption.  
4308. General provisions.  
    (a) Issuance of regulations.  
    (b) Discharge of obligation; liability.  
    (c) Use of employees from other Federal agencies; experts and consultants.  
    (d) Contracts and subcontracts for supplies and services; advertisement; factors considered.  
    (e) Transfer or loan of property to or from Department of State.  
    (f) Attachment, execution, etc., of assets.  
    (g) Discretion of Secretary.  
    (h) Transfer and credit of funds.
4309. Application to public international organizations and official missions to such organizations.  
    (a) Determination by Secretary.  
    (b) "International organization" defined.
- 4309a. United States responsibilities for employees of the United Nations.  
    (a) Findings.  
    (b) Activities of United Nations employees.  
    (c) Reports.  
    (d) United States nationals.  
    (e) "United Nations Headquarters District" defined.
4310. Privileges and immunities.  
4311. Enforcement.  
    (a) Benefits to foreign missions contrary to this chapter; standing of United States to bring action for compliance.  
    (b) Advice of Secretary concerning transactions with foreign missions.
4312. Presidential guidelines.  
4313. Severability.  
4314. Extraordinary protective services.  
    (a) General authority.  
    (b) Requirement of extraordinary circumstances.  
    (c) Repealed.  
    (d) Restrictions on use of funds.  
    (e) Period of agreement with State or local authority.  
    (f) Requirement for appropriations.  
    (g) Working capital fund.
4315. Use of foreign mission in manner incompatible with its status as foreign mission.  
    (a) Establishment of limitation on certain uses.  
    (b) Temporary lodging.  
    (c) Waiver.  
    (d) Report.  
    (e) Definitions.
4316. Application of travel restrictions to personnel of certain countries and organizations.  
    (a) Requirement for restrictions.  
    (b) Individuals subject to restrictions.  
    (c) Waivers.  
    (d) Repealed.  
    (e) Definitions.

#### CHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This chapter is referred to in sections 302, 2684, 4852 of this title; title 3 section 208.

### § 4301. Congressional declaration of findings and policy

#### (a) Findings

The Congress finds that the operation in the United States of foreign missions and public

international organizations and the official missions to such organizations, including the permissible scope of their activities and the location and size of their facilities, is a proper subject for the exercise of Federal jurisdiction.

**(b) Policy**

The Congress declares that it is the policy of the United States to support the secure and efficient operation of United States missions abroad, to facilitate the secure and efficient operation in the United States of foreign missions and public international organizations and the official missions to such organizations, and to assist in obtaining appropriate benefits, privileges, and immunities for those missions and organizations and to require their observance of corresponding obligations in accordance with international law.

**(c) Treatment of foreign missions in United States**

The treatment to be accorded to a foreign mission in the United States shall be determined by the Secretary after due consideration of the benefits, privileges, and immunities provided to missions of the United States in the country or territory represented by that foreign mission, as well as matters relating to the protection of the interests of the United States.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title II, § 201, as added Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, § 202(b), 96 Stat. 283; amended Aug. 16, 1985, Pub. L. 99-93, title I, § 127(a), 99 Stat. 418.)

CODIFICATION

Section is also set out in D.C. Code, § 5-1201.

AMENDMENTS

1985—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 99-93 inserted “, as well as matters relating to the protection of the interests of the United States”.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 204 of title II of Pub. L. 97-241 provided that: “The amendments made by this title [see Short Title note below] shall take effect on October 1, 1982.”

SHORT TITLE OF 1983 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 98-164, title VI, § 601, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1042, provided that: “This title [enacting section 4304a of this title, amending sections 254e and 4303 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 4303 of this title] may be cited as the ‘Foreign Missions Amendments Act of 1983’.”

SHORT TITLE

Section 201 of title II of Pub. L. 97-241 provided that: “This title [enacting this chapter, amending sections 254a, 254b, 254c, 2662, and 2684 of this title and section 1364 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure, and enacting provisions set out as a note under this section] may be cited as the ‘Foreign Missions Act’.”

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF STATE FREEDOM OF  
EXPRESSION

Pub. L. 100-204, title I, § 133, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1344, provided that:

“(a) FINDING.—Congress finds that the United States Department of State, on September 15, 1987, declared itself to be a temporary foreign diplomatic mission for the purpose of denying free speech to American citizens who planned to protest the tyranny of the Soviet regime.

“(b) PROHIBITION.—It is not in the national security interest of the United States for the Department of State to declare, and it shall not declare, itself to be a foreign diplomatic mission.”

UNITED STATES-SOVIET RECIPROCITY IN MATTERS  
RELATING TO EMBASSIES

Pub. L. 101-246, title I, § 134, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 33, authorized Secretary of State to allow Soviet mission to United States to occupy, on a reciprocal basis, a consulate facility in United States, provided that United States mission in Kiev would be able to occupy an interim facility intended for conduct of unclassified activities, and required Secretary of State to submit to Congress a long-term plan for acquiring secure permanent facilities for United States mission in Kiev, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103-199, title V, § 502(c)(1), Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2326.

Pub. L. 100-204, title I, § 153(a)-(d), Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1353, authorized Secretary of State to obtain full cooperation of Soviet government, on a reciprocal basis, in areas of diplomatic and consular finance, access to goods, and use of real property and prohibited Secretary of State from allowing Soviet mission to United States to occupy any new consulate in United States until United States mission in Kiev was able to occupy secure permanent facilities, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103-199, title V, § 502(e)(1), Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2326. Section 153(d) of Pub. L. 100-204 was also repealed by Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 139(15), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 398.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4309, 4309a of this title.

**§ 4302. Definitions**

(a) For purposes of this chapter—

(1) “benefit” (with respect to a foreign mission) means any acquisition, or authorization for an acquisition, in the United States by or for a foreign mission, including the acquisition of—

(A) real property by purchase, lease, exchange, construction, or otherwise,

(B) public services, including services relating to customs, importation, and utilities, and the processing of applications or requests relating to public services,

(C) supplies, maintenance, and transportation,

(D) locally engaged staff on a temporary or regular basis,

(E) travel and related services,

(F) protective services, and

(G) financial and currency exchange services,

and includes such other benefits as the Secretary may designate;

(2) “chancery” means the principal offices of a foreign mission used for diplomatic or related purposes, and annexes to such offices (including ancillary offices and support facilities), and includes the site and any building on such site which is used for such purposes;

(3) “foreign mission” means any mission to or agency or entity in the United States which is involved in the diplomatic, consular, or other activities of, or which is substantially owned or effectively controlled by—

(A) a foreign government, or

(B) an organization (other than an international organization, as defined in section 4309(b) of this title) representing a territory

or political entity which has been granted diplomatic or other official privileges and immunities under the laws of the United States or which engages in some aspect of the conduct of the international affairs of such territory or political entity,

including any real property of such a mission and including the personnel of such a mission;

(4) “real property” includes any right, title, or interest in or to, or the beneficial use of, any real property in the United States, including any office or other building;

(5) “Secretary” means the Secretary of State;

(6) “sending State” means the foreign government, territory, or political entity represented by a foreign mission; and

(7) “United States” means, when used in a geographic sense, the several States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, and the territories and possessions of the United States.

(b) Determinations with respect to the meaning and applicability of the terms used in subsection (a) of this section shall be committed to the discretion of the Secretary.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title II, § 202, as added Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, § 202(b), 96 Stat. 283; amended Aug. 16, 1985, Pub. L. 99-93, title I, § 127(b), 99 Stat. 418; Oct. 27, 1986, Pub. L. 99-569, title VII, § 701, 100 Stat. 3204; Dec. 22, 1987, Pub. L. 100-204, title I, § 153(e), 101 Stat. 1353; Apr. 30, 1994, Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 162(o)(1), 108 Stat. 409.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original “this title”, meaning title II of act Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, as added Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, § 202(b), 96 Stat. 283, known as the Foreign Missions Act, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of title II to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4301 of this title and Tables.

#### CODIFICATION

Section is also set out in D.C. Code, § 5-1202.

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (a)(3) to (8). Pub. L. 103-236 struck out par. (3) and redesignated former pars. (4) to (8) as (3) to (7), respectively. Prior to amendment, par. (3) read as follows: “‘Director’ means the Director of the Office of Foreign Missions established pursuant to section 4303(a) of this title;”.

1987—Subsec. (a)(1)(G). Pub. L. 100-204 added subpar. (G).

1986—Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 99-569 amended par. (4) generally, substituting “which is involved in the diplomatic, consular, or other activities of, or which is substantially owned or effectively controlled by” for “involving diplomatic, consular, or other governmental activities of”.

1985—Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 99-93 substituted “mission to or agency in” for “official mission to” in introductory provisions, and inserted “or which engages in some aspect of the conduct of the international affairs of such territory or political entity” before the comma at end of subpar. (B).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103-236 applicable with respect to officials, offices, and bureaus of Department of

State when executive orders, regulations, or departmental directives implementing the amendments by sections 161 and 162 of Pub. L. 103-236 become effective, or 90 days after Apr. 30, 1994, whichever comes earlier, see section 161(b) of Pub. L. 103-236, as amended, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 302, 2709, 4307 of this title.

### § 4303. Authorities of Secretary of State

The Secretary shall carry out the following functions:

(1) Assist agencies of Federal, State, and municipal government with regard to ascertaining and according benefits, privileges, and immunities to which a foreign mission may be entitled.

(2) Provide or assist in the provision of benefits for or on behalf of a foreign mission in accordance with section 4304 of this title.

(3) As determined by the Secretary, dispose of property acquired in carrying out the purposes of this chapter.<sup>1</sup>

(4) As determined by the Secretary, designate an office within the Department of State to carry out the purposes of this chapter.<sup>1</sup> If such an office is established, the President may appoint, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, a Director, with the rank of ambassador. Of the Director and the next most senior person in the office, one should be an individual who has served in the Foreign Service and the other should be an individual who has served in the United States intelligence community.

(5) Perform such other functions as the Secretary may determine necessary in furtherance of the policy of this chapter.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title II, § 203, as added Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, § 202(b), 96 Stat. 284; amended Nov. 22, 1983, Pub. L. 98-164, title VI, § 604(a), (b), 97 Stat. 1043, 1044; Nov. 8, 1984, Pub. L. 98-618, title VI, § 601(c), 98 Stat. 3303; Dec. 22, 1987, Pub. L. 100-204, title I, § 173(a)(2), 101 Stat. 1360; Feb. 16, 1990, Pub. L. 101-246, title I, § 116(a), 104 Stat. 24; Apr. 30, 1994, Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 162(o)(2), 108 Stat. 409.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section is also set out in D.C. Code, § 5-1203.

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in pars. (3) and (4), was in the original “this Act” and was translated as reading “this title” meaning title II of act Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, as added Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, § 202(b), 96 Stat. 283, known as the Foreign Missions Act, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of title II to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4301 of this title and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-236 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section required Secretary of State to establish Office of Foreign Missions in Department of State, provided for Director and Deputy Director of Office, and specified their powers and duties.

1990—Subsec. (c)(3), (4). Pub. L. 101-246 added par. (3) and redesignated former par. (3) as (4).

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

1987—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 100-204 inserted sentence at end relating to compensation of Director.

1984—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 98-618, §601(c)(1), struck out requirements that Director be an individual with: minimum of ten years service in the Foreign Service, significant administrative experience, and service in countries wherein the United States has had significant problems in assuring secure and efficient operations of its missions as result of the actions of other countries.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 98-618, §601(c)(2), substituted requirement of prior complementary service of the Director and Deputy Director in the Foreign Service and the Intelligence Community for requirement that Deputy Director must have served in the Intelligence Community.

1983—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 98-164, §604(a), inserted provisions respecting rank, and experience required of the Director, and substituted provision requiring appointment by the President by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, for provision requiring appointment by the Secretary.

Subsecs. (b), (c). Pub. L. 98-164, §604(b), added subsec. (b) and redesignated former subsec. (b) as (c).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103-236 applicable with respect to officials, offices, and bureaus of Department of State when executive orders, regulations, or departmental directives implementing the amendments by sections 161 and 162 of Pub. L. 103-236 become effective, or 90 days after Apr. 30, 1994, whichever comes earlier, see section 161(b) of Pub. L. 103-236, as amended, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1987 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 100-204 effective 30 days after Dec. 22, 1987, see section 173(b) of Pub. L. 100-204, set out as a note under section 2707 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1984 AMENDMENT

Section 601(d) of Pub. L. 98-618 provided that: "The amendments made by subsection (c) [amending this section] shall apply only with respect to any appointment of a Director or Deputy Director of the Office of Foreign Missions, as the case may be, after the date of the enactment of this section [Nov. 8, 1984]."

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1983 AMENDMENT

Section 604(c) of Pub. L. 98-164 provided that: "The amendments made by this section [amending this section] shall apply with respect to any Director of the Office of Foreign Missions, and to any Deputy Director of the Office of Foreign Missions, appointed after the date of enactment of this Act [Nov. 22, 1983]."

#### NEW SPENDING AUTHORITY

Any new spending authority provided by amendment by section 173(a)(2) of Pub. L. 100-204 effective for any fiscal year only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriation Acts, see section 173(c) of Pub. L. 100-204, set out as a note under section 2707 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4307 of this title.

### § 4304. Provision of benefits

#### (a) Request by foreign mission; terms and conditions as approved by Secretary

Upon the request of a foreign mission, benefits may be provided to or for that foreign mission by or through the Secretary on such terms and conditions as the Secretary may approve.

#### (b) Benefits through Secretary as mandatory; compliance with terms and conditions

If the Secretary determines that such action is reasonably necessary on the basis of reciprocity or otherwise—

(1) to facilitate relations between the United States and a sending State,

(2) to protect the interests of the United States,

(3) to adjust for costs and procedures of obtaining benefits for missions of the United States abroad,

(4) to assist in resolving a dispute affecting United States interests and involving a foreign mission or sending State, or

(5) subject to subsection (f) of this section, to implement an exchange of property between the Government of the United States and the government of a foreign country, such property to be used by each government in the respective receiving state for, or in connection with, diplomatic or consular establishments,

then the Secretary may require a foreign mission (A) to obtain benefits from or through the Secretary on such terms and conditions as the Secretary may approve, or (B) to forego the acceptance, use, or relation of any benefit or to comply with such terms and conditions as the Secretary may determine as a condition to the execution or performance in the United States of any contract or other agreement, the acquisition, retention, or use of any real property, or the application for or acceptance of any benefit (including any benefit from or authorized by any Federal, State, or municipal governmental authority, or any entity providing public services).

#### (c) Surcharge or fee; waiver of recourse

Terms and conditions established by the Secretary under this section may include—

(1) a requirement to pay to the Secretary a surcharge or fee, and

(2) a waiver by a foreign mission (or any assignee of or person deriving rights from a foreign mission) of any recourse against any governmental authority, any entity providing public services, any employee or agent of such an authority or entity, or any other person, in connection with any action determined by the Secretary to be undertaken in furtherance of this chapter.

#### (d) Agent for waiver of recourse

For purposes of effectuating a waiver of recourse which is required under this section, the Secretary may designate any officer of the Department of State as the agent of a foreign mission (or of any assignee of or person deriving rights from a foreign mission). Any such waiver by an officer so designated shall for all purposes (including any court or administrative proceeding) be deemed to be a waiver by the foreign mission (or the assignee of or other person deriving rights from a foreign mission).

#### (e) Secret Service protection

Nothing in this chapter shall be deemed to preclude or limit in any way the authority of the United States Secret Service to provide protective services pursuant to section 202 of title 3 or section 3056 of title 18 at a level commensurate with protective requirements as determined by the United States Secret Service.

#### (f) In-kind exchange of properties with foreign government; transfer of funds; reciprocal agreement; regulations

(1) Upon a determination in each specific case by the Secretary of State or the Secretary's des-

ignee that the purpose of the Foreign Service Buildings Act, 1926 [22 U.S.C. 292 et seq.], can best be met on the basis of an in-kind exchange of properties with a foreign country pursuant to subsection (b)(5) of this section, the Secretary of State may transfer funds made available under the heading "Acquisition and Maintenance of Buildings Abroad" (including funds held in the Foreign Service Buildings Fund) for such purpose to the Working Capital Fund, as provided in section 4308(h)(1) of this title. Except for funds that may be provided by a foreign government for the purchase of property, only funds transferred under the preceding sentence may be used for the purposes of subsection (b)(5) of this section.

(2) The Secretary of State may acquire property in the United States for the purposes of subsection (b)(5) of this section only in the context of a specific reciprocal agreement with a specified foreign government. Property acquired by the United States in the foreign country through such an exchange shall benefit the United States at least to the same extent as the property acquired in the United States benefits the foreign government.

(3) The Secretary of State shall prescribe regulations for the implementation of any in-kind exchange of properties pursuant to subsection (b)(5) of this section.

(4) At least 15 days before entering into any reciprocal agreement for the exchange of property with another foreign government, the Secretary of State shall notify the Committee on Foreign Affairs and the Committee on Public Works and Transportation of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate.

(5)(A) Proceeds from the disposition of properties acquired pursuant to this subsection shall be credited to the Foreign Service Buildings Fund (referred to in section 9 of the Foreign Service Buildings Act, 1926 [22 U.S.C. 300]).

(B) The authority to spend proceeds received under subparagraph (A) may be exercised only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in an appropriation Act.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title II, § 204, as added Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, § 202(b), 96 Stat. 284; amended Aug. 16, 1985, Pub. L. 99-93, title I, § 126(b), 127(c), 99 Stat. 418; Feb. 16, 1990, Pub. L. 101-246, title I, § 116(b), 104 Stat. 24; Apr. 30, 1994, Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 162(o)(3), 108 Stat. 410; Oct. 25, 1994, Pub. L. 103-415, § 1(cc), 108 Stat. 4302.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Service Buildings Act, 1926, referred to in subsec. (f)(1), is act May 7, 1926, ch. 250, 44 Stat. 403, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 8 (§ 292 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 299 of this title and Tables.

#### CODIFICATION

Section is also set out in D.C. Code, § 5-1204.

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsecs. (a) to (c)(1). Pub. L. 103-236, § 162(o)(3)(A), substituted "Secretary on such terms" for "Director on such terms" in subsecs. (a) and (b) and "Secretary" for "Director" in subsec. (c)(1).

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 103-236, § 162(o)(3)(B), as amended by Pub. L. 103-415, substituted "any officer" for "the Director or any other officer".

1990—Subsec. (b)(5). Pub. L. 101-246, § 116(b)(1), added par. (5).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 101-246, § 116(b)(2), added subsec. (f).

1985—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 99-93, § 127(c), inserted "to forego the acceptance, use, or relation of any benefit or" after "(B)" in provisions following par. (4).

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 99-93, § 126(b), substituted "chapter" for "section" and was executed by making the substitution to first reference to "section" as the probable intent of Congress.

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives and Committee on Public Works and Transportation of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103-236 applicable with respect to officials, offices, and bureaus of Department of State when executive orders, regulations, or departmental directives implementing the amendments by sections 161 and 162 of Pub. L. 103-236 become effective, or 90 days after Apr. 30, 1994, whichever comes earlier, see section 161(b) of Pub. L. 103-236, as amended, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 126(b) of Pub. L. 99-93 effective Oct. 1, 1985, see section 126(e) of Pub. L. 99-93, set out as an Effective Date note under section 4314 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 300, 4303, 4307, 4309 of this title; title 40 section 1107.

### § 4304a. Enforcement of compliance with liability insurance requirements

#### (a) Notice to Secretary by head of foreign mission of lapse or termination of coverage; report to Secretary by head of foreign mission respecting motor vehicles, vessels and aircraft registered in United States

(1) The head of a foreign mission shall notify promptly the Secretary of the lapse or termination of any liability insurance coverage held by a member of the mission, by a member of the family of such member, or by an individual described in section 19 of the Convention on Privileges and Immunities of the United Nations of February 13, 1946.

(2) Not later than February 1 of each year, the head of each foreign mission shall prepare and transmit to the Secretary a report including a list of motor vehicles, vessels, and aircraft registered in the United States by members of the mission, members of the families of such members, individuals described in section 19 of the Convention on Privileges and Immunities of the United Nations of February 13, 1946, and by the mission itself. Such list shall set forth for each such motor vehicle, vessel, or aircraft—

- (A) the jurisdiction in which it is registered;
- (B) the name of the insured;

- (C) the name of the insurance company;
- (D) the insurance policy number and the extent of insurance coverage; and
- (E) such other information as the Secretary may prescribe.

**(b) Surcharge or fee covering unsatisfied part of judgment; preconditions for imposition**

Whenever the Secretary finds that a member of a foreign mission, a member of the family of such member, or an individual described in section 19 of the Convention on Privileges and Immunities of the United Nations of February 13, 1946—

- (1) is at fault for personal injury, death, or property damage arising out of the operation of a motor vehicle, vessel, or aircraft in the United States,
- (2) is not covered by liability insurance, and
- (3) has not satisfied a court-rendered judgment against him or is not legally liable,

the Secretary shall impose a surcharge or fee on the foreign mission of which such member or individual is a part, amounting to the unsatisfied portion of the judgment rendered against such member or individual or, if there is no court-rendered judgment, an estimated amount of damages incurred by the victim. The payment of any such surcharge or fee shall be available only for compensation of the victim or his estate.

**(c) Definitions**

For purposes of this section—

- (1) the term “head of a foreign mission” has the same meaning as is ascribed to the term “head of a mission” in Article 1 of the Vienna Convention on Diplomatic Relations of April 18, 1961 (T.I.A.S. numbered 7502; 23 U.S.T. 3227); and
- (2) the terms “members of a mission” and “family” have the same meanings as is ascribed to them by paragraphs (1) and (2) of section 254a of this title.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title II, §204A, as added Nov. 22, 1983, Pub. L. 98-164, title VI, §603, 97 Stat. 1042; amended Apr. 30, 1994, Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §162(o)(4), 108 Stat. 410.)

CODIFICATION

Section is also set out in D.C. Code, §5-1204.1.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsecs. (a), (b). Pub. L. 103-236 substituted “Secretary” for “Director” wherever appearing.

**§ 4305. Property of foreign missions**

**(a) Proposed acquisition, sale, or other disposition**

(1) The Secretary shall require any foreign mission, including any mission to an international organization (as defined in section 4309(b)(2) of this title), to notify the Secretary prior to any proposed acquisition, or any proposed sale or other disposition, of any real property by or on behalf of such mission. The foreign mission (or other party acting on behalf of the foreign mission) may initiate or execute any contract, proceeding, application, or other action required for the proposed action—

- (A) only after the expiration of the 60-day period beginning on the date of such notifica-

tion (or after the expiration of such shorter period as the Secretary may specify in a given case); and

(B) only if the mission is not notified by the Secretary within that period that the proposal has been disapproved; however, the Secretary may include in such a notification such terms and conditions as the Secretary may determine appropriate in order to remove the disapproval.

(2) For purposes of this section, “acquisition” includes any acquisition or alteration of, or addition to, any real property or any change in the purpose for which real property is used by a foreign mission.

**(b) Divestiture**

The Secretary may require any foreign mission to divest itself of, or forgo the use of, any real property determined by the Secretary—

- (1) not to have been acquired in accordance with this section;
- (2) to exceed limitations placed on real property available to a United States mission in the sending State; or
- (3) where otherwise necessary to protect the interests of the United States.

**(c) Cessation of diplomatic, consular, and other governmental activities in United States; protecting power or other agent; disposition of property**

If a foreign mission has ceased conducting diplomatic, consular, and other governmental activities in the United States and has not designated a protecting power or other agent approved by the Secretary to be responsible for the property of that foreign mission, the Secretary—

- (1) until the designation of a protecting power or other agent approved by the Secretary, may protect and preserve any property of that foreign mission; and
- (2) may dispose of such property at such time as the Secretary may determine after the expiration of the one-year period beginning on the date that the foreign mission ceased those activities, and may remit to the sending State the net proceeds from such disposition.

**(d) Protection from future hostile intelligence activities in United States**

(1) After December 22, 1987, real property in the United States may not be acquired (by sale, lease, or other means) by or on behalf of the foreign mission of a foreign country described in paragraph (4) if, in the judgment of the Secretary of Defense (after consultation with the Secretary of State), the acquisition of that property might substantially improve the capability of that country to intercept communications involving United States Government diplomatic, military, or intelligence matters.

(2) After December 22, 1987, real property in the United States may not be acquired (by sale, lease, or other means) by or on behalf of the foreign mission of a foreign country described in paragraph (4) if, in the judgment of the Director of the Federal Bureau of Investigation (after consultation with the Secretary of State), the acquisition of that property might substantially improve the capability of that country to en-



gage in intelligence activities directed against the United States Government, other than the intelligence activities described in paragraph (1).

(3) The Secretary of State shall inform the Secretary of Defense and the Director of the Federal Bureau of Investigation immediately upon notice being given pursuant to subsection (a) of this section of a proposed acquisition of real property by or on behalf of the foreign mission of a foreign country described in paragraph (4).

(4) For the purposes of this subsection, the term “foreign country” means—

(A) any country listed as a Communist country in section 2370(f) of this title;

(B) any country determined by the Secretary of State, for purposes of section 2405(j) of the Appendix to title 50, to be a country which has repeatedly provided support for acts of international terrorism; and

(C) any other country which engages in intelligence activities in the United States which are adverse to the national security interests of the United States.

(5) As used in this section, the term “substantially improve” shall not be construed to prevent the establishment of a foreign mission by a country which, on December 22, 1987—

(A) does not have a mission in the United States, or

(B) with respect to a city in the United States, did not maintain a mission in that city.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title II, § 205, as added Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, § 202(b), 96 Stat. 285; amended Aug. 16, 1985, Pub. L. 99-93, title I, § 127(d), (e), 99 Stat. 418; Dec. 22, 1987, Pub. L. 100-204, title I, § 161, 101 Stat. 1356; Apr. 30, 1994, Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 162(o)(5), 108 Stat. 410.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section is also set out in D.C. Code, § 5-1205.

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103-236, § 162(o)(5)(A), substituted “Secretary prior to” for “Director prior to” in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 103-236, § 162(o)(5)(B), struck out “authorize the Director to” before “dispose of”.

1987—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 100-204 added subsec. (d).

1985—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 99-93, § 127(e), substituted “shall” for “may” and inserted “, including any mission to an international organization (as defined in section 4309(b)(2) of this title),” after “foreign mission” in first sentence, and substituted “The” for “If such a notification is required, the” in second sentence.

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 99-93, § 127(d), added par. (3).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103-236 applicable with respect to officials, offices, and bureaus of Department of State when executive orders, regulations, or departmental directives implementing the amendments by sections 161 and 162 of Pub. L. 103-236 become effective, or 90 days after Apr. 30, 1994, whichever comes earlier, see section 161(b) of Pub. L. 103-236, as amended, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4306, 4307 of this title.

### § 4306. Location of foreign missions in the District of Columbia

#### (a) Section as governing location, replacement, or expansion

The location, replacement, or expansion of chanceries in the District of Columbia shall be subject to this section.

#### (b) Acceptable areas; limitations and conditions

(1) A chancery shall be permitted to locate as a matter of right in any area which is zoned commercial, industrial, waterfront, or mixed-use (CR).

(2) A chancery shall also be permitted to locate—

(A) in any area which is zoned medium-high or high density residential, and

(B) in any other area, determined on the basis of existing uses, which includes office or institutional uses, including but not limited to any area zoned mixed-use diplomatic or special purpose,

subject to disapproval by the District of Columbia Board of Zoning Adjustment in accordance with this section.

(3) In each of the areas described in paragraphs (1) and (2), the limitations and conditions applicable to chanceries shall not exceed those applicable to other office or institutional uses in that area.

#### (c) Filing of application with Board of Zoning Adjustment; publication of notice; public participation; final determination

(1) If a foreign mission wishes to locate a chancery in an area described in subsection (b)(2) of this section, or wishes to appeal an administrative decision relating to a chancery based in whole or in part upon any zoning map or regulation, it shall file an application with the Board of Zoning Adjustment which shall publish notice of that application in the District of Columbia Register.

(2) Regulations issued to carry out this section shall provide appropriate opportunities for participation by the public in proceedings concerning the location, replacement, or expansion of chanceries.

(3) A final determination concerning the location, replacement, or expansion of a chancery shall be made not later than six months after the date of the filing of an application with respect to such location, replacement, or expansion. Such determination shall not be subject to the administrative proceedings of any other agency or official except as provided in this chapter.

#### (d) Criteria for determination

Any determination concerning the location of a chancery under subsection (b)(2) of this section, or concerning an appeal of an administrative decision with respect to a chancery based in whole or in part upon any zoning regulation or map, shall be based solely on the following criteria:

(1) The international obligation of the United States to facilitate the provision of adequate and secure facilities for foreign missions in the Nation's Capital.

(2) Historic preservation, as determined by the Board of Zoning Adjustment in carrying

out this section; and in order to ensure compatibility with historic landmarks and districts, substantial compliance with District of Columbia and Federal regulations governing historic preservation shall be required with respect to new construction and to demolition of or alteration to historic landmarks.

(3) The adequacy of off-street or other parking and the extent to which the area will be served by public transportation to reduce parking requirements, subject to such special security requirements as may be determined by the Secretary, after consultation with Federal agencies authorized to perform protective services.

(4) The extent to which the area is capable of being adequately protected, as determined by the Secretary, after consultation with Federal agencies authorized to perform protective services.

(5) The municipal interest, as determined by the Mayor of the District of Columbia.

(6) The Federal interest, as determined by the Secretary.

**(e) Consistency of regulations, proceedings, and other actions; review and comment by National Planning Commission**

(1) Regulations, proceedings, and other actions of the National Capital Planning Commission, the Zoning Commission for the District of Columbia, and the Board of Zoning Adjustment affecting the location, replacement, or expansion of chanceries shall be consistent with this section (including the criteria set out in subsection (d) of this section) and shall reflect the policy of this chapter.

(2) Proposed actions of the Zoning Commission concerning implementation of this section shall be referred to the National Capital Planning Commission for review and comment.

**(f) Rule-making nature of proceedings**

Regulations issued to carry out this section shall provide for proceedings of a rule-making and not of an adjudicatory nature.

**(g) Compliance with District of Columbia building and related codes**

The Secretary shall require foreign missions to comply substantially with District of Columbia building and related codes in a manner determined by the Secretary to be not inconsistent with the international obligations of the United States.

**(h) Approval of Board of Zoning Adjustment or Zoning Commission not required**

Approval by the Board of Zoning Adjustment or the Zoning Commission or, except as provided in section 4305 of this title, by any other agency or official is not required—

(1) for the location, replacement, or expansion of a chancery to the extent that authority to proceed, or rights or interests, with respect to such location, replacement, or expansion were granted to or otherwise acquired by the foreign mission before October 1, 1982; or

(2) for continuing use of a chancery by a foreign mission to the extent that the chancery was being used by a foreign mission on October 1, 1982.

**(i) Membership on Zoning Commission and Board of Zoning Adjustment**

(1) The President may designate the Secretary of Defense, the Secretary of the Interior, or the Administrator of General Services (or such alternate as such official may from time to time designate) to serve as a member of the Zoning Commission in lieu of the Director of the National Park Service whenever the President determines that the Zoning Commission is performing functions concerning the implementation of this section.

(2) Whenever the Board of Zoning Adjustment is performing functions regarding an application by a foreign mission with respect to the location, expansion, or replacement of a chancery—

(A) the representative from the Zoning Commission shall be the Director of the National Park Service or if another person has been designated under paragraph (1) of this subsection, the person so designated; and

(B) the representative from the National Capital Planning Commission shall be the Executive Director of that Commission.

**(j) Application of other laws**

Provisions of law (other than this chapter) applicable with respect to the location, replacement, or expansion of real property in the District of Columbia shall apply with respect to chanceries only to the extent that they are consistent with this section.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title II, § 206, as added Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, § 202(b), 96 Stat. 286.)

CODIFICATION

Section is also set out in D.C. Code, § 5-1206.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4309 of this title.

**§ 4307. Preemption**

Notwithstanding any other law, no act of any Federal agency shall be effective to confer or deny any benefit with respect to any foreign mission contrary to this chapter. Nothing in section 4302, 4303, 4304, or 4305 of this title may be construed to preempt any State or municipal law or governmental authority regarding zoning, land use, health, safety, or welfare, except that a denial by the Secretary involving a benefit for a foreign mission within the jurisdiction of a particular State or local government shall be controlling.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title II, § 207, as added Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, § 202(b), 96 Stat. 288.)

CODIFICATION

Section is also set out in D.C. Code, § 5-1207.

**§ 4308. General provisions**

**(a) Issuance of regulations**

The Secretary may issue such regulations as the Secretary may determine necessary to carry out the policy of this chapter.

**(b) Discharge of obligation; liability**

Compliance with any regulation, instruction, or direction issued by the Secretary under this

chapter shall to the extent thereof be a full acquittance and discharge for all purposes of the obligation of the person making the same. No person shall be held liable in any court or administrative proceeding for or with respect to anything done or omitted in good faith in connection with the administration of, or pursuant to and in reliance on, this chapter, or any regulation, instruction, or direction issued by the Secretary under this chapter.

**(c) Use of employees from other Federal agencies; experts and consultants**

For purposes of administering this chapter—

(1) the Secretary may accept details and assignments of employees of Federal agencies to the Department of State on a reimbursable or nonreimbursable basis (with any such reimbursements to be credited to the appropriations made available for the salaries and expenses of officers and employees of the employing agency); and

(2) the Secretary may, to the extent necessary to obtain services without delay, exercise his authority to employ experts and consultants under section 3109 of title 5 without requiring compliance with such otherwise applicable requirements for that employment as the Secretary may determine, except that such employment shall be terminated after 60 days if by that time those requirements are not complied with.

**(d) Contracts and subcontracts for supplies and services; advertisement; factors considered**

Contracts and subcontracts for supplies or services, including personal services, made by or on behalf of the Secretary shall be made after advertising, in such manner and at such times as the Secretary shall determine to be adequate to ensure notice and opportunity for competition, except that advertisement shall not be required when (1) the Secretary determines that it is impracticable or will not permit timely performance to obtain bids by advertising, or (2) the aggregate amount involved in a purchase of supplies or procurement of services does not exceed \$10,000. Such contracts and subcontracts may be entered into without regard to laws and regulations otherwise applicable to solicitation, negotiation, administration, and performance of government contracts. In awarding contracts, the Secretary may consider such factors as relative quality and availability of supplies or services and the compatibility of the supplies or services with implementation of this chapter.

**(e) Transfer or loan of property to or from Department of State**

The head of any Federal agency may, for purposes of this chapter—

(1) transfer or loan any property to, and perform administrative and technical support functions and services for the operations of, the Department of State (with reimbursements to agencies under this paragraph to be credited to the current applicable appropriation of the agency concerned); and

(2) acquire and accept services from the Department of State, including (whenever the Secretary determines it to be in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter) acquisitions

without regard to laws normally applicable to the acquisition of services by such agency.

**(f) Attachment, execution, etc., of assets**

Assets of or under the control of the Department of State, wherever situated, which are used by or held for the use of a foreign mission shall not be subject to attachment, execution, injunction, or similar process, whether intermediate or final.

**(g) Discretion of Secretary**

Except as otherwise provided, any determination required under this chapter shall be committed to the discretion of the Secretary.

**(h) Transfer and credit of funds**

(1) In order to implement this chapter, the Secretary may transfer to the working capital fund established by section 2684 of this title such amounts available to the Department of State as may be necessary.

(2) All revenues, including proceeds from gifts and donations, received by the Secretary in carrying out this chapter may be credited to the working capital fund established by section 2684 of this title and shall be available for purposes of this chapter in accordance with that section.

(3) Only amounts transferred or credited to the working capital fund established by section 2684 of this title may be used in carrying out the functions of the Secretary or the Director under this chapter.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title II, § 208, as added Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, § 202(b), 96 Stat. 288; amended Apr. 30, 1994, Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 162(o)(6), 108 Stat. 410.)

CODIFICATION

Section is also set out in D.C. Code, § 5-1208.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 103-236, § 162(o)(6)(B), substituted “Department of State” for “Office of Foreign Missions”.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 103-236, § 162(o)(6)(A), substituted “behalf of the Secretary” for “behalf of the Director”.

Subsecs. (e), (f). Pub. L. 103-236, § 162(o)(6)(B), substituted “Department of State” for “Office of Foreign Missions” wherever appearing.

Subsec. (h)(2). Pub. L. 103-236, § 162(o)(6)(C), struck out “Director or the” after “received by the”.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103-236 applicable with respect to officials, offices, and bureaus of Department of State when executive orders, regulations, or departmental directives implementing the amendments by sections 161 and 162 of Pub. L. 103-236 become effective, or 90 days after Apr. 30, 1994, whichever comes earlier, see section 161(b) of Pub. L. 103-236, as amended, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4304, 4314 of this title.

**§ 4309. Application to public international organizations and official missions to such organizations**

**(a) Determination by Secretary**

The Secretary may make section 4306 of this title, or any other provision of this chapter, ap-

plicable with respect to an international organization to the same extent that it is applicable with respect to a foreign mission if the Secretary determines that such application is necessary to carry out the policy set forth in section 4301(b) of this title and to further the objectives set forth in section 4304(b) of this title.

**(b) “International organization” defined**

For purposes of this section, “international organization” means—

(1) a public international organization designated as such pursuant to the International Organizations Immunities Act (22 U.S.C. 288—288f-2) or a public international organization created pursuant to a treaty or other international agreement as an instrument through or by which two or more foreign governments engage in some aspect of their conduct of international affairs; and

(2) an official mission (other than a United States mission) to such a public international organization,

including any real property of such an organization or mission and including the personnel of such an organization or mission.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title II, §209, as added Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, §202(b), 96 Stat. 289.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The International Organizations Immunities Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(1), is act Dec. 29, 1945, ch. 652, title I, 59 Stat. 669, as amended, which is classified principally to subchapter XVIII (§288 et seq.) of chapter 7 of this title. For complete classification of that Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 288 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section is also set out in D.C. Code, §5-1209.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2709, 4302, 4305, 4315, 4316 of this title.

**§ 4309a. United States responsibilities for employees of the United Nations**

**(a) Findings**

The Congress finds that—

(1) pursuant to the Agreement Between the United States and the United Nations Regarding the Headquarters of the United Nations (authorized by Public Law 80-357 (22 U.S.C. 287 note)), the United States has accepted—

(A) the obligation to permit and to facilitate the right of individuals, who are employed by or are authorized by the United Nations to conduct official business in connection with that organization or its agencies, to enter into and exit from the United States for purposes of conducting official activities within the United Nations Headquarters District, subject to regulation as to points of entry and departure; and

(B) the implied obligation to permit and to facilitate the acquisition of facilities in order to conduct such activities within or in proximity to the United Nations Headquarters District, subject to reasonable regulation including regulation of the location and size of such facilities; and

(2) taking into account paragraph (1) and consistent with the obligation of the United States to facilitate the functioning of the United Nations, the United States has no additional obligation to permit the conduct of any other activities, including nonofficial activities, by such individuals outside of the United Nations Headquarters District.

**(b) Activities of United Nations employees**

(1) The conduct of any activities, or the acquisition of any benefits (as defined in section 4301(a)(1) of this title), outside the United Nations Headquarters District by any individual employed by, or authorized by the United Nations to conduct official business in connection with, that organization or its agencies, or by any person or agency acting on behalf thereof, may be permitted or denied or subject to reasonable regulation, as determined to be in the best interests of the United States and pursuant to this chapter.

(2) Repealed. Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §139(26), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 399.

**(c) Reports**

The Secretary shall report to the Congress—

(1) not later than 30 days after August 16, 1985, on the plans of the Secretary for implementing this section; and

(2) not later than 6 months thereafter, on the actions taken pursuant to those plans.

**(d) United States nationals**

This section shall not apply with respect to any United States national.

**(e) “United Nations Headquarters District” defined**

For purposes of this section, the term “United Nations Headquarters District” means the area within the United States which is agreed to by the United Nations and the United States to constitute such a district, together with such other areas as the Secretary of State may approve from time to time in order to permit effective functioning of the United Nations or missions to the United Nations.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title II, §209A, as added Aug. 16, 1985, Pub. L. 99-93, title I, §141, 99 Stat. 423; amended Apr. 30, 1994, Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §139(26), 108 Stat. 399.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Public Law 80-357, referred to in subsec. (a)(1), is act Aug. 4, 1947, ch. 482, 61 Stat. 756, which is set out as a note under section 287 of this title.

CODIFICATION

Section is also set out in D.C. Code, §5-1209.1.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 103-236 struck out par. (2) which read as follows: “The Secretary shall apply to those employees of the United Nations Secretariat who are nationals of a foreign country or members of a foreign mission all terms, limitations, restrictions, and conditions which are applicable pursuant to this chapter to the members of that country’s mission or of any other mission to the United Nations unless the Secretary determines and reports to the Congress that national security and foreign policy circumstances require that this paragraph be waived in specific circumstances.”

**§ 4310. Privileges and immunities**

Nothing in this chapter shall be construed to limit the authority of the United States to carry out its international obligations, or to supersede or limit immunities otherwise available by law. No act or omission by any foreign mission, public international organization, or official mission to such an organization, in compliance with this chapter shall be deemed to be an implied waiver of any immunity otherwise provided for by law.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title II, §210, as added Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, §202(b), 96 Stat. 290.)

## CODIFICATION

Section is also set out in D.C. Code, §5-1210.

**§ 4311. Enforcement****(a) Benefits to foreign missions contrary to this chapter; standing of United States to bring action for compliance**

It shall be unlawful for any person to make available any benefits to a foreign mission contrary to this chapter. The United States, acting on its own behalf or on behalf of a foreign mission, has standing to bring or intervene in an action to obtain compliance with this chapter, including any action for injunctive or other equitable relief.

**(b) Advice of Secretary concerning transactions with foreign missions**

Upon the request of any Federal agency, any State or local government agency, or any business or other person that proposes to enter into a contract or other transaction with a foreign mission, the Secretary shall advise whether the proposed transaction is prohibited by any regulation or determination of the Secretary under this chapter.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title II, §211, as added Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, §202(b), 96 Stat. 290.)

## CODIFICATION

Section is also set out in D.C. Code, §5-1211.

**§ 4312. Presidential guidelines**

The authorities granted to the Secretary pursuant to the provisions of this chapter shall be exercised in accordance with procedures and guidelines approved by the President.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title II, §212, as added Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, §202(b), 96 Stat. 290.)

## CODIFICATION

Section is also set out in D.C. Code, §5-1212.

**§ 4313. Severability**

If any provision of this chapter or the application thereof to any person or circumstance is held invalid, the remainder of this chapter and the application of such provision to any other person or circumstance shall not be affected thereby.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title II, §213, as added Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, §202(b), 96 Stat. 290.)

## CODIFICATION

Section is also set out as a note under D.C. Code, §5-1201.

**§ 4314. Extraordinary protective services****(a) General authority**

The Secretary may provide extraordinary protective services for foreign missions directly, by contract, or through State or local authority to the extent deemed necessary by the Secretary in carrying out this chapter, except that the Secretary may not provide under this section any protective services for which authority exists to provide such services under sections 202(7)<sup>1</sup> and 208 of title 3.

**(b) Requirement of extraordinary circumstances**

The Secretary may provide funds to a State or local authority for protective services under this section only if the Secretary has determined that a threat of violence, or other circumstances, exists which requires extraordinary security measures which exceed those which local law enforcement<sup>2</sup> agencies can reasonably be expected to take.

**(c) Repealed. Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 139(2), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 397****(d) Restrictions on use of funds**

Of the funds made available for obligation under this section in any fiscal year—

(1) not more than 20 percent may be obligated for protective services within any single State during that year; and

(2) not less than 15 percent shall be retained as a reserve for protective services provided directly by the Secretary or for expenditures in local jurisdictions not otherwise covered by an agreement for protective services under this section.

The limitations on funds available for obligation in this subsection shall not apply to unobligated funds during the final quarter of any fiscal year.

**(e) Period of agreement with State or local authority**

Any agreement with a State or local authority for the provision of protective services under this section shall be for a period of not to exceed 90 days in any calendar year, but such agreements may be renewed after review by the Secretary.

**(f) Requirement for appropriations**

Contracts may be entered into in carrying out this section only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriation Acts.

**(g) Working capital fund**

Amounts used to carry out this section shall not be subject to section 4308(h) of this title.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title II, §214, as added Aug. 16, 1985, Pub. L. 99-93, title I, §126(a), 99 Stat. 417; amended Apr. 30, 1994, Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §139(2), 108 Stat. 397.)

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

<sup>2</sup> So in original. Probably should be "enforcement".

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 202(7) of title 3, referred to in subsec. (a), was redesignated section 202(8) of title 3 by Pub. L. 99-500 and Pub. L. 99-591.

## CODIFICATION

Section is also set out in D.C. Code, §5-1213.

## AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 103-236 struck out subsec. (c) which read as follows: “Funds may be obligated under this section only after regulations to implement this section have been issued by the Secretary after consultation with appropriate committees of the Congress.”

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 126(e) of Pub. L. 99-93 provided that: “The amendments made by this section [enacting this section and amending section 4304 of this title and section 208 of Title 3, The President] shall take effect on October 1, 1985.”

**§ 4315. Use of foreign mission in manner incompatible with its status as foreign mission**

**(a) Establishment of limitation on certain uses**

A foreign mission may not allow an unaffiliated alien the use of any premise of that foreign mission which is inviolable under United States law (including any treaty) for any purpose which is incompatible with its status as a foreign mission, including use as a residence.

**(b) Temporary lodging**

For the purposes of this section, the term “residence” does not include such temporary lodging as may be permitted under regulations issued by the Secretary.

**(c) Waiver**

The Secretary may waive subsection (a) of this section with respect to all foreign missions of a country (and may revoke such a waiver) 30 days after providing written notification of such a waiver, together with the reasons for such waiver (or revocation of such a waiver), to the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate.

**(d) Report**

Not later than 180 days after December 22, 1987, the Secretary of State shall submit a report to the Congress concerning the implementation of this section and shall submit such other reports to the Congress concerning changes in implementation as may be necessary.

**(e) Definitions**

For the purposes of this section—

(1) the term “foreign mission” includes any international organization as defined in section 4309(b) of this title; and

(2) the term “unaffiliated alien” means, with respect to a foreign country, an alien who—

(A) is admitted to the United States as a nonimmigrant, and

(B) is not a member, or a family member of a member, of a foreign mission of that foreign country.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title II, §215, as added Dec. 22, 1987, Pub. L. 100-204, title I, §128(a), 101 Stat. 1343.)

## CODIFICATION

December 22, 1987, referred to in subsec. (d), was in the original “the date of the enactment of this Act”, which was translated as meaning the date of enactment of Pub. L. 100-204, which enacted this section, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Section is also set out in D.C. Code, §5-1214.

## CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 128(b) of Pub. L. 100-204 provided that:

“(1) Except as provided in paragraph (2), the amendment made by subsection (a) [enacting this section] shall apply to any foreign mission beginning on the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 22, 1987].

“(2)(A) The amendment made by subsection (a) shall apply beginning 6 months after the date of enactment of this Act with respect to any nonimmigrant alien who is using a foreign mission as a residence or a place of business on the date of enactment of this Act.

“(B) The Secretary of State may delay the effective date provided for in subparagraph (A) for not more than 6 months with respect to any nonimmigrant alien if the Secretary finds that a hardship to that alien would result from the implementation of subsection (a).”

**§ 4316. Application of travel restrictions to personnel of certain countries and organizations**

**(a) Requirement for restrictions**

The Secretary shall apply the same generally applicable restrictions to the travel while in the United States of the individuals described in subsection (b) of this section as are applied under this chapter to the members of the missions of the Soviet Union in the United States.

**(b) Individuals subject to restrictions**

The restrictions required by subsection (a) of this section shall be applied with respect to those individuals who (as determined by the Secretary) are—

(1) the personnel of an international organization, if the individual is a national of any foreign country whose government engages in intelligence activities in the United States that are harmful to the national security of the United States;

(2) the personnel of a mission to an international organization, if that mission is the mission of a foreign government that engages in intelligence activities in the United States that are harmful to the national security of the United States; or

(3) the family members or dependents of an individual described in paragraphs (1) and (2); and who are not nationals or permanent resident aliens of the United States.

**(c) Waivers**

The Secretary, after consultation with the Director of Central Intelligence and the Director of the Federal Bureau of Investigation, may waive application of the restrictions required by subsection (a) of this section if the Secretary determines that the national security and foreign policy interests of the United States so require.

**(d) Repealed. Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 139(3), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 397****(e) Definitions**

For purposes of this section—

(1) the term “generally applicable restrictions” means any limitations on the radius within which unrestricted travel is permitted and obtaining travel services through the auspices of the Office of Foreign Missions for travel elsewhere, and does not include any restrictions which unconditionally prohibit the members of missions of the Soviet Union in the United States from traveling to designated areas of the United States and which are applied as a result of particular factors in relations between the United States and the Soviet Union.<sup>1</sup>

(2) the term “international organization” means an organization described in section 4309(b)(1) of this title; and

(3) the term “personnel” includes—

(A) officers, employees, and any other staff member, and

(B) any individual who is retained under contract or other arrangement to serve functions similar to those of an officer, employee, or other staff member.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title II, § 216, as added Dec. 22, 1987, Pub. L. 100-204, title I, § 162(a), 101 Stat. 1357; amended Apr. 30, 1994, Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 139(3), 108 Stat. 397.)

**CODIFICATION**

Section is also set out in D.C. Code, § 5-1215.

**AMENDMENTS**

1994—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 103-236 struck out heading and text of subsec. (d). Text read as follows: “The Secretary shall transmit to the Select Committee on Intelligence and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, and to the Permanent Select Committee on Intelligence and the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives, not later than six months after December 22, 1987, and not later than every six months thereafter, a report on the actions taken by the Secretary in carrying out this section during the previous six months.”

**EFFECTIVE DATE**

Section 162(b) of Pub. L. 100-204 provided that: “Subsection (a) of the section enacted by this section [this section] shall take effect 90 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 22, 1987].”

**AUTHORITY OF SECRETARY OF STATE**

Except as otherwise provided, Secretary of State to have and exercise any authority vested by law in any official or office of Department of State and references to such officials or offices deemed to refer to Secretary of State or Department of State, as appropriate, see section 2651a of this title and section 161(d) of Pub. L. 103-236, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

**CHAPTER 53A—DISPOSITION OF PERSONAL PROPERTY ABROAD**

|       |  |
|-------|--|
| Sec.  |  |
| 4341. | Definitions.                                     |
| 4342. | Limitations on disposition of personal property. |

Sec.

- (a) General rule.
- (b) Approval by chief of mission.
- (c) Violation.

4343.

Regulations.

- (a) Issuance; purpose.
- (b) Contractors.
- (c) Chief of mission.

**§ 4341. Definitions**

For purposes of this chapter, the following terms have the following meanings:

(1) The term “employee” means an individual who is under the jurisdiction of a chief of mission to a foreign country (as provided under section 3927 of this title) and who is—

(A) an employee as defined by section 2105 of title 5;

(B) an officer or employee of the United States Postal Service or of the Postal Rate Commission;

(C) a member of a uniformed service who is not under the command of an area military commander; or

(D) an expert or consultant as authorized pursuant to section 3109 of title 5 with the United States or any agency, department, or establishment thereof; but is not a national or permanent resident of the foreign country in which employed.

(2) The term “contractor” means—

(A) an individual employed by personal services contract pursuant to section 2669(c) of this title, section 2396(a)(3) of this title, or pursuant to other similar authority, including, in the case of an organization performing services under such authority, an individual involved in the performance of such services; and

(B) such other individuals or firms providing goods or services by contract as are designated by regulations issued pursuant to section 4343 of this title;

but does not include a contractor with or under the supervision of an area military commander.

(3) The term “charitable contribution” means a contribution or gift as defined in section 170(c) of title 26, or other similar contribution or gift to a bona fide charitable foreign entity as determined pursuant to regulations or policies issued pursuant to section 4343 of this title.

(4) The term “chief of mission” has the meaning given such term by section 3902(3) of this title.

(5) The term “foreign country” means any country or territory, excluding the United States, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, the Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands, American Samoa, Guam, the Virgin Islands, and other territories or possessions of the United States.

(6) The term “personal property” means any item of personal property, including automobiles, computers, boats, audio and video equipment, and any other items acquired for personal use, but excluding items of minimal value as determined by regulation or policy issued pursuant to section 4343 of this title.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. The period probably should be a semicolon.

(7) The term “profit” means any proceeds (including cash and other valuable consideration but not including amounts of such proceeds given as charitable contributions) for the sale, disposition, or assignment of personal property in excess of the basis for such property. For purposes of this chapter, basis shall include initial price, inland and overseas transportation costs (if not reimbursed by the United States Government), shipping insurance, taxes, customs fees, duties or other charges, and capital improvements, but shall not include insurance on an item while in use, or maintenance and related costs. For purposes of computing profit, proceeds and costs shall be valued in United States dollars at the time of receipt or payment, at a rate of exchange as determined by regulation or policy issued pursuant to section 4343 of this title.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title III, § 301, as added Dec. 22, 1987, Pub. L. 100–204, title I, § 186(a), 101 Stat. 1366.)

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 186(b) of Pub. L. 100–204 provided that: “This section [enacting this chapter] shall take effect 180 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 22, 1987].”

#### TERMINATION OF TRUST TERRITORY OF THE PACIFIC ISLANDS

For termination of Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands, see note set out preceding section 1681 of Title 48, Territories and Insular Possessions.

### § 4342. Limitations on disposition of personal property

#### (a) General rule

Except as authorized under subsection (b) of this section, employees or members of their family shall not sell, assign, or otherwise dispose of personal property within a foreign country which was imported into or purchased within that foreign country and which, by virtue of the official status of the employee, was exempt from import limitation, customs duties, or taxes which would otherwise apply.

#### (b) Approval by chief of mission

The chief of mission to a foreign country, or a designee of such chief of mission, is authorized to approve within that foreign country sales, assignment, or other dispositions of property by employees under the chief of mission’s jurisdiction (as described in section 3927 of this title) to the extent that such sale, assignment, or other disposition is in accordance with regulations and policies, rules, and procedures issued pursuant to section 4343 of this title.

#### (c) Violation

Violation of this section, or other importation, sale, or other disposition of personal property within a foreign country which violates its laws or regulations or governing international law and is prohibited by regulations and policies, rules, and procedures issued pursuant to section 4343 of this title, shall be grounds for disciplinary action against an employee.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title III, § 302, as added Dec. 22, 1987, Pub. L. 100–204, title I, § 186(a), 101 Stat. 1368.)

### § 4343. Regulations

#### (a) Issuance; purpose

The Secretary of State may issue regulations to carry out the purposes of this chapter. The primary purpose of such regulations and related policies, rules, and procedures shall be to assure that employees and members of their families do not profit personally from sales or other transactions with persons who are not themselves entitled to exemption from import restrictions, duties, or taxes.

#### (b) Contractors

Such regulations shall require that, to the extent contractors enjoy importation or tax privileges in a foreign country because of their contractual relationship to the United States Government, after the effective date of this chapter contracting agencies shall include provisions in their contracts to carry out the purpose of this chapter.

#### (c) Chief of mission

In order to ensure that due account is taken of local conditions, including applicable laws, markets, exchange rate factors, and accommodation exchange facilities, such regulations may authorize the chief of mission to each foreign country to establish more detailed policies, rules, or procedures for the application of this chapter within that country to employees under the chief of mission’s jurisdiction.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title III, § 303, as added Dec. 22, 1987, Pub. L. 100–204, title I, § 186(a), 101 Stat. 1368.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

For the effective date of this chapter, referred to in subsec. (b), as being 180 days after Dec. 22, 1987, see section 186(b) of Pub. L. 100–204 set out as an Effective Date note under section 4341 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4341, 4342 of this title.

### CHAPTER 53B—FOREIGN RELATIONS OF THE UNITED STATES HISTORICAL SERIES

| Sec.  |   |
|-------|---|
| 4351. | General authority and contents of publication. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Charter of publication.</li> <li>(b) Editing principles.</li> <li>(c) Deadline for publication of records.</li> </ul>   |
| 4352. | Responsibility for preparation of FRUS series. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) In general.</li> <li>(b) National Archives and Records Administration.</li> </ul>   |
| 4353. | Procedures for identifying records for FRUS series; declassification, revisions, and summaries. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Development of procedures.</li> <li>(b) Declassification review.</li> </ul>                                      |
| 4354. | Declassification of State Department records. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Deadline for declassification.</li> <li>(b) Exempted records.</li> <li>(c) Review.</li> <li>(d) Reporting requirement.</li> <li>(e) Report to Congress.</li> </ul> |
| 4355. | Relationship to Privacy Act and Freedom of Information Act. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Privacy Act.</li> </ul>  |



- Sec. (b) Freedom of Information Act.
4356. Advisory Committee.  
 (a) Establishment.  
 (b) Terms of service for appointments.  
 (c) Selection of chairperson.  
 (d) Meetings.  
 (e) Security clearances.  
 (f) Compensation.
4357. Definitions.

### § 4351. General authority and contents of publication

#### (a) Charter of publication

The Department of State shall continue to publish the “Foreign Relations of the United States historical series” (hereafter in this chapter referred to as the “FRUS series”), which shall be a thorough, accurate, and reliable documentary record of major United States foreign policy decisions and significant United States diplomatic activity. Volumes of this publication shall include all records needed to provide a comprehensive documentation of the major foreign policy decisions and actions of the United States Government, including the facts which contributed to the formulation of policies and records providing supporting and alternative views to the policy position ultimately adopted.

#### (b) Editing principles

The editing of records for preparation of the FRUS series shall be guided by the principles of historical objectivity and accuracy. Records shall not be altered and deletions shall not be made without indicating in the published text that a deletion has been made. The published record shall omit no facts which were of major importance in reaching a decision, and nothing shall be omitted for the purpose of concealing a defect of policy.

#### (c) Deadline for publication of records

The Secretary of State shall ensure that the FRUS series shall be published not more than 30 years after the events recorded.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title IV, § 401, as added Oct. 28, 1991, Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 198(a), 105 Stat. 685.)

#### COMPLIANCE WITH DEADLINE FOR PUBLICATION OF FRUS SERIES; NOTIFICATION TO CONGRESSIONAL COMMITTEES ON FAILURE TO COMPLY; FINAL DEADLINE

Section 198(c)(2) of Pub. L. 102-138 provided that:

“(A) In order to come into compliance with section 401(c) of the State Department Basic Authorities Act of 1956 [22 U.S.C. 4351(c)] (as amended by this section) the Secretary of State shall ensure that, by the end of the 3-year period beginning on the date of the enactment of this Act [Oct. 28, 1991], all volumes of the Foreign Relations of the United States historical series (FRUS) for the years that are more than 30 years before the end of that 3-year period have been published.

“(B) If the Secretary cannot reasonably meet the requirements of subparagraph (A), the Secretary shall notify the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and describe how the Department of State plans to meet the requirements of subparagraph (A). In no event shall volumes subject to subparagraph (A) be published later than 5 years after the date of the enactment of this Act.”

### § 4352. Responsibility for preparation of FRUS series

#### (a) In general

(1)(A) The Historian of the Department of State shall be responsible for the preparation of the FRUS series, including the selection of records, in accordance with the provisions of this chapter.

(B) The Advisory Committee on Historical Diplomatic Documentation shall review records, and shall advise and make recommendations to the Historian concerning all aspects of preparation and publication of the FRUS series, including, in accordance with the procedures contained in section 4353 of this title, the review and selection of records for inclusion in volumes of the series.

(2) Other departments, agencies, and other entities of the United States Government shall cooperate with the Office of the Historian by providing full and complete access to the records pertinent to United States foreign policy decisions and actions and by providing copies of selected records in accordance with the procedures developed under section 4353 of this title, except that no access to any record, and no provision of any copy of a record, shall be required in the case of any record that was prepared less than 26 years before the date of a request for such access or copy made by the Office of the Historian.

#### (b) National Archives and Records Administration

Notwithstanding any other provision of this chapter, the requirement for the National Archives and Records Administration to provide access to, and copies of, records to the Department of State for the FRUS series shall be governed by chapter 21 of title 44, by any agreement concluded between the Department of State and the National Archives and Records Administration, and, in the case of Presidential records, by section 2204 of such title.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title IV, § 402, as added Oct. 28, 1991, Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 198(a), 105 Stat. 685.)

#### AUTHORITY OF SECRETARY OF STATE

Except as otherwise provided, Secretary of State to have and exercise any authority vested by law in any official or office of Department of State and references to such officials or offices deemed to refer to Secretary of State or Department of State, as appropriate, see section 2651a of this title and section 161(d) of Pub. L. 103-236, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

### § 4353. Procedures for identifying records for FRUS series; declassification, revisions, and summaries

#### (a) Development of procedures

Not later than 180 days after October 28, 1991, each department, agency, or other entity of the United States Government engaged in foreign policy formulation, execution, or support shall develop procedures for its historical office (or a designated individual in the event that there is no historical office)—

(1) to coordinate with the State Department's Office of the Historian in selecting

records for possible inclusion in the FRUS series;

(2) to permit full access to the original, unrevised records by such individuals holding appropriate security clearances as have been designated by the Historian as liaison to that department, agency, or entity, for purposes of this chapter, and by members of the Advisory Committee; and

(3) to permit access to specific types of records not selected for inclusion in the FRUS series by the individuals identified in paragraph (2) when requested by the Historian in order to confirm that records selected by that department, agency, or entity accurately represent the policymaking process reflected in the relevant part of the FRUS series.

**(b) Declassification review**

(1) Subject to the provisions of this subsection, records selected by the Historian for inclusion in the FRUS series shall be submitted to the respective originating agency for declassification review in accordance with that agency's procedures for such review, except that such declassification review shall be completed by the originating agency within 120 days after such records are submitted for review. If the originating agency determines that any such record is not declassifiable because of a continuing need to protect sources and methods for the collection of intelligence information or to protect other sensitive national security information, then the originating agency shall attempt to make such deletions in the text as will make the record declassifiable.

(2) If the Historian determines that the meaning of the records proposed for inclusion in a volume of the FRUS series would be so altered or changed by deletions made under paragraph (1) that publication in that condition could be misleading or lead to an inaccurate or incomplete historical record, then the Historian shall take steps to achieve a satisfactory resolution of the problem with the originating agency. Within 60 days of receiving a proposed solution from the Historian, the originating agency shall furnish the Historian a written response agreeing to the solution or explaining the reasons for the alteration or deletion.

(3) The Historian shall inform the Advisory Committee of any failure by an originating agency to complete its declassification review of a record within 120 days and of any steps taken under paragraph (2).

(4) If the Advisory Committee determines that the meaning of the records proposed for inclusion in a volume of the FRUS series would be so altered or changed by deletions made under paragraph (1), or if the Advisory Committee determines as a result of inspection of other documents under subsection (a)(3) of this section that the selection of documents could be misleading or lead to an inaccurate or incomplete historical record, then the Advisory Committee shall so advise the Secretary of State and submit recommendations to resolve the issue.

(5)(A) The Advisory Committee shall have full and complete access to the original text of any record in which deletions have been made. In the event that the head of any originating agency

considers it necessary to deny access by the Advisory Committee to the original text of any record, that agency head shall promptly notify the Advisory Committee in writing, describing the nature of the record in question and the justification for withholding that record.

(B) The Historian shall provide the Advisory Committee with a complete list of the records described in subparagraph (A).

(6) If a record is deleted in whole or in part as a result of review under this subsection then a note to that effect shall be inserted at the appropriate place in the FRUS volume.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title IV, § 403, as added Oct. 28, 1991, Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 198(a), 105 Stat. 686.)

**AUTHORITY OF SECRETARY OF STATE**

Except as otherwise provided, Secretary of State to have and exercise any authority vested by law in any official or office of Department of State and references to such officials or offices deemed to refer to Secretary of State or Department of State, as appropriate, see section 2651a of this title and section 161(d) of Pub. L. 103-236, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

**SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS**

This section is referred to in sections 4352, 4355 of this title.

**§ 4354. Declassification of State Department records**

**(a) Deadline for declassification**

(1) Except as provided in subsection (b) of this section, each classified record of permanent historical value (as determined by the Secretary of State and the Archivist of the United States) which was published, issued, or otherwise prepared by the Department of State (or any officer or employee thereof acting in an official capacity) shall be declassified not later than 30 years after the record was prepared, shall be transferred to the National Archives and Records Administration, and shall be made available at the National Archives for public inspection and copying.

(2) Nothing in this subsection may be construed to require the declassification of a record wholly prepared by a foreign government.

**(b) Exempted records**

Subsection (a) of this section shall not apply to any record (or portion thereof) the publication of which the Secretary of State, in coordination with any agency that originated information in the records, determines—

(1) would compromise weapons technology important to the national defense of the United States or reveal sensitive information relating to the design of United States or foreign military equipment or relating to United States cryptologic systems or activities;

(2) would disclose the names or identities of living persons who provided confidential information to the United States and would pose a substantial risk of harm to such persons;

(3) would demonstrably impede current diplomatic negotiations or other ongoing official activities of the United States Government or would demonstrably impair the national security of the United States; or

(4) would disclose matters that are related solely to the internal personnel rules and practices of the Department of State or are contained in personnel, medical, or similar files the disclosure of which would constitute a clearly unwarranted invasion of personal privacy.

**(c) Review**

(1) The Advisory Committee shall review—

(A) the State Department's declassification procedures,

(B) all guidelines used in declassification, including those guidelines provided to the National Archives and Records Administration which are in effect on October 28, 1991, and

(C) by random sampling, records representative of all Department of State records published, issued, or otherwise prepared by the Department of State that remain classified after 30 years.

(2) In the event that the Secretary of State considers it necessary to deny access to records under paragraph (1)(C), the Secretary shall notify the Advisory Committee in writing, describing the nature of the records in question and the justification for withholding them.

**(d) Reporting requirement**

The Advisory Committee shall annually submit to the Secretary of State a report setting forth its findings from the review conducted under subsection (c) of this section.

**(e) Report to Congress**

Not later than 180 days after October 28, 1991, the Secretary of State shall prepare and submit a written report to the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate on factors relevant to compliance with this section, and the procedures to be used for implementing the requirements of this section.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title IV, § 404, as added Oct. 28, 1991, Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 198(a), 105 Stat. 687.)

**CHANGE OF NAME**

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

**COMPLIANCE WITH DECLASSIFICATION OF STATE DEPARTMENT RECORDS; NOTIFICATION TO CONGRESSIONAL COMMITTEES ON INABILITY TO COMPLY; FINAL DEADLINE**

Section 198(c)(1) of Pub. L. 102-138 provided that: "The Secretary of State shall ensure that the requirements of section 404 of the State Department Basic Authorities Act of 1956 [22 U.S.C. 4354] (as amended by this section) are met not later than one year after the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 28, 1991]. If the Secretary cannot reasonably meet the requirements of such section, he shall so notify the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives, and describe how the Department of State intends to meet the requirements of that section. In no event shall full compliance with the requirements of such section take place later than 2 years after the date of enactment of this Act."

**SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS**

This section is referred to in section 4355 of this title.

**§ 4355. Relationship to Privacy Act and Freedom of Information Act**

**(a) Privacy Act**

Nothing in this chapter may be construed as requiring the public disclosure of records or portions of records protected under section 552a of title 5 (relating to the privacy of personal records).

**(b) Freedom of Information Act**

(1) Except as provided in paragraph (2), no record (or portion thereof) shall be excluded from publication in the FRUS series under section 4353 of this title, or exempted from the declassification requirement of section 4354 of this title, solely by virtue of the application of section 552(b) of title 5 (relating to the exemption of certain matters from freedom of information requirements).

(2) Records described in section 1202(f) of title 8 (relating to visa records) shall be excluded from publication in the FRUS series under section 4353 of this title and, to the extent applicable, exempted from the declassification requirement of section 4354 of this title.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title IV, § 405, as added Oct. 28, 1991, Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 198(a), 105 Stat. 688.)

**§ 4356. Advisory Committee**

**(a) Establishment**

(1) There is established on a permanent basis the Advisory Committee on Historical Diplomatic Documentation for the Department of State. The activities of the Advisory Committee shall be coordinated by the Office of the Historian of the Department of State.

(2) The Advisory Committee shall be composed of 9 members and an executive secretary. The Historian shall serve as executive secretary.

(3)(A) The members of the Advisory Committee shall be appointed by the Secretary of State from among distinguished historians, political scientists, archivists, international lawyers, and other social scientists who have a demonstrable record of substantial research pertaining to the foreign relations of the United States. No officer or employee of the United States Government shall be appointed to the Advisory Committee.

(B)(i) Six members of the Advisory Committee shall be appointed from lists of individuals nominated by the American Historical Association, the Organization of American Historians, the American Political Science Association, Society of American Archivists, the American Society of International Law, and the Society for Historians of American Foreign Relations. One member shall be appointed from each list.

(ii) If an organization does not submit a list of nominees under clause (i) in a timely fashion, the Secretary of State shall make an appointment from among the nominees on other lists.

**(b) Terms of service for appointments**

(1) Except as provided in paragraph (2), members of the Advisory Committee shall be appointed for terms of three years.

(2) Of the members first appointed, as designated by the Secretary of State at the time of their appointment (after consultation with the

appropriate organizations) three shall be appointed for terms of one year, three shall be appointed for terms of two years, and three shall be appointed for terms of three years.

(3) Each term of service under paragraph (1) shall begin on September 1 of the year in which the appointment is made.

(4) A vacancy in the membership of the Advisory Committee shall be filled in the same manner as provided under this subsection to make the original appointment. A member appointed to fill a vacancy occurring before the expiration of a term shall serve for the remainder of that term. A member may continue to serve when his or her term expires until a successor is appointed. A member may be appointed to a new term upon the expiration of his or her term.

**(c) Selection of chairperson**

The Advisory Committee shall select, from among its members, a chairperson to serve a term of 1 year. A chairperson may be reelected upon expiration of his or her term as chairperson.

**(d) Meetings**

A majority of the members of the Advisory Committee shall constitute a quorum. The Advisory Committee shall meet at least quarterly or as frequently as may be necessary to carry out its duties.

**(e) Security clearances**

(1) All members of the Advisory Committee shall be granted the necessary security clearances, subject to the standard procedures for granting such clearances.

(2) For purposes of any law or regulation governing access to classified records, a member of the Advisory Committee seeking access under this paragraph to a record shall be deemed to have a need to know.

**(f) Compensation**

(1) Members of the Advisory Committee—

(A) shall each receive compensation at a rate of not to exceed the daily equivalent of the annual rate of basic pay payable for positions at GS-15 of the General Schedule under section 5332 of title 5 for each day such member is engaged in the actual performance of the duties of the Advisory Committee; and

(B) shall be allowed travel expenses, including per diem in lieu of subsistence at rates authorized for employees of agencies under subchapter I of chapter 57 of title 5, while away from their homes or regular places of business in the performance of services of the Advisory Committee.

(2) The Secretary of State is authorized to provide for necessary secretarial and staff assistance for the Advisory Committee.

(3) The Federal Advisory Committee Act shall not apply to the Advisory Committee to the extent that the provisions of this chapter are inconsistent with that Act.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title IV, § 406, as added Oct. 28, 1991, Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 198(a), 105 Stat. 688.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Federal Advisory Committee Act, referred to in subsec. (f)(3), is Pub. L. 92-463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 770,

as amended, which is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

TERMINATION OF PREVIOUS ADVISORY COMMITTEE ON HISTORICAL DIPLOMATIC DOCUMENTATION

Section 198(b) of Pub. L. 102-138 provided that: "The Advisory Committee on Historical Documentation for the Department of State established before the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 28, 1991] shall terminate on such date."

**§ 4357. Definitions**

For purposes of this chapter—

(1) the term "Advisory Committee" means the Advisory Committee on Historical Diplomatic Documentation for the Department of State;

(2) the term "Historian" means the Historian of the Department of State or any successor officer of the Department of State responsible for carrying out the functions of the Office of the Historian, Bureau of Public Affairs, of the Department of State, as in effect on October 28, 1991;

(3) the term "originating agency" means, with respect to a record, the department, agency, or entity of the United States (or any officer or employee thereof of acting in his official capacity) that originates, develops, publishes, issues, or otherwise prepares that record or receives that record from outside the United States Government; and

(4) the term "record" includes any written material (including any document, memorandum, correspondence, statistical data, book, or other papers), map, photograph, machine readable material, or other documentary material, regardless of physical form or characteristics, made or received by an agency of the United States Government under Federal law or in connection with the transaction of public business and preserved or appropriate for preservation by that agency or its legitimate successor as evidence of the organization, functions, policies, decisions, procedures, operations, or other activities of the Government or because of the informational value in them, and such term does not include library or museum material made or acquired and preserved solely for reference or exhibition purposes, any extra copy of a document preserved only for convenience of reference, or any stocks of publications or of processed documents.

(Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, title IV, § 407, as added Oct. 28, 1991, Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 198(a), 105 Stat. 690.)

AUTHORITY OF SECRETARY OF STATE

Except as otherwise provided, Secretary of State to have and exercise any authority vested by law in any official or office of Department of State and references to such officials or offices deemed to refer to Secretary of State or Department of State, as appropriate, see section 2651a of this title and section 161(d) of Pub. L. 103-236, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

**CHAPTER 54—PRIVATE ORGANIZATION ASSISTANCE**

SUBCHAPTER I—THE ASIA FOUNDATION

Sec. 4401. Findings.

- Sec.  
4402. Grants; authorization; purposes; terms and conditions; deposit of interest.
4403. Funding.  
(a) Authorization of appropriations.  
(b) Allocation of funds.
- SUBCHAPTER II—NATIONAL ENDOWMENT FOR DEMOCRACY
4411. Findings; statement of purposes.
4412. Grants to the Endowment.  
(a) Authorization; funding; grant agreement.  
(b) Implementation of purposes.  
(c) Status of Endowment.  
(d) Oversight procedures applicable.  
(e) Amounts to Free Trade Union Institute and National Chamber Foundation.  
(f) Independent labor unions.
4413. Eligibility of the Endowment for grants.  
(a) Compliance with statutory requirements.  
(b) Funding for private sector groups and covered programs only.  
(c) Compensation, etc., for officers and employees of the Endowment.  
(d) Prohibitions respecting financial matters.  
(e) Audit of accounts; reporting requirements.  
(f) Audit of financial transactions; reporting requirements.  
(g) Audits by United States Information Agency.  
(h) Recordkeeping requirements; audit and examination of books, etc.  
(i) Annual report; contents; testimony respecting report.  
(j) Grantee; conflict of interest.
4414. Requirements relating to the Endowment and its grantees.  
(a) Partisan politics.  
(b) Consultation with Department of State.
4415. Freedom of information.  
(a) Compliance with Freedom of Information Act.  
(b) Publication in Federal Register.  
(c) Review by United States Information Agency.

#### SUBCHAPTER I—THE ASIA FOUNDATION

##### § 4401. Findings

The Congress finds that—

(1) The Asia Foundation, a private nonprofit corporation incorporated in 1954 in the State of California, has long been active in promoting Asian-American friendship and cooperation and in lending encouragement and assistance to Asians in their own efforts to develop more open, more just, and more democratic societies;

(2) The Asia Foundation's commitment to strengthening indigenous Asian institutions which further stable national development, constructive social change, equitable economic growth, and cooperative international relationships is fully consistent with and supportive of long-term United States interests in Asia;

(3) The Asia Foundation, as a private organization, is able to conduct programs in response to Asian initiatives that would be difficult or impossible for an official United States instrumentality, and it is in a position

in Asia to respond quickly and flexibly to meet new opportunities;

(4) in recognition of the valuable contributions of The Asia Foundation to long-range United States foreign policy interests, the United States Government has, through a variety of agencies, provided financial support for The Asia Foundation; and

(5) it is in the interest of the United States, and the further strengthening of Asian-American friendship and cooperation, to establish a more permanent mechanism for United States Government financial support for the ongoing activities of The Asia Foundation, while preserving the independent character of the Foundation.

(Pub. L. 98-164, title IV, § 402, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1038.)

#### SHORT TITLE

Section 401 of title IV of Pub. L. 98-164 provided that: "This title [enacting this subchapter] may be cited as 'The Asia Foundation Act'."

For short title of title V of Pub. L. 98-164, which enacted subchapter II of this chapter, as the "National Endowment for Democracy Act", see section 501 of Pub. L. 98-164, set out as a Short Title note under section 4411 of this title.

##### § 4402. Grants; authorization; purposes; terms and conditions; deposit of interest

(a) The Secretary of State shall make an annual grant to The Asia Foundation with the funds made available under section 4403 of this title. Such grants shall be in general support of the Foundation's programs and operations. The terms and conditions of grants pursuant to this section shall be set forth in a grant agreement between the Secretary of State and The Asia Foundation.

(b) If funds made available to The Asia Foundation pursuant to this subchapter or pursuant to any other provision of law are, with the permission of the head of the Federal agency making the funds available, invested by the Foundation or any of its subgrantees pending disbursement, the resulting interest is not required to be deposited in the United States Treasury if that interest is used for the purposes for which the funds were made available.

(Pub. L. 98-164, title IV, § 403, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1038.)

##### § 4403. Funding

###### (a) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary of State \$13,900,000 for the fiscal year 1990 and \$18,000,000 for the fiscal year 1991 for grants to The Asia Foundation pursuant to this subchapter.

###### (b) Allocation of funds

Of amounts authorized to be appropriated under subsection (a) of this section, \$1,324,000 for the fiscal year 1990 and \$1,324,000 for the fiscal year 1991 shall be available only for the expansion of programs and services (including the establishment of a field office) for Oceania, comprised of Polynesia, Micronesia, and Melanesia.

(Pub. L. 98-164, title IV, § 404, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1039; Pub. L. 99-93, title IV, § 401, Aug. 16,

1985, 99 Stat. 437; Pub. L. 100-204, title VI, § 601, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1383; Pub. L. 101-246, title V, § 501, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 73.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1990—Pub. L. 101-246 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section read as follows: “There is authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary of State \$13,700,000 for the fiscal year 1988 and \$15,000,000 for the fiscal year 1989 for grants to the Asia Foundation pursuant to this subchapter.”

1987—Pub. L. 100-204 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section read as follows: “There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary of State \$10,500,000 for each of the fiscal years 1986 and 1987 for grants to The Asia Foundation pursuant to this subchapter.”

1985—Pub. L. 99-93 amended section generally, substituting “\$10,500,000 for each of the fiscal years 1986 and 1987” for “\$5,000,000 for the fiscal year 1983, \$10,000,000 for the fiscal year 1984, and \$10,000,000 for the fiscal year 1985”.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4402 of this title.

### SUBCHAPTER II—NATIONAL ENDOWMENT FOR DEMOCRACY

#### SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in section 2275 of this title.

#### § 4411. Findings; statement of purposes

(a) The Congress finds that there has been established in the District of Columbia a private, nonprofit corporation known as the National Endowment for Democracy (hereafter in this subchapter referred to as the “Endowment”) which is not an agency or establishment of the United States Government.

(b) The purposes of the Endowment, as set forth in its articles of incorporation, are—

(1) to encourage free and democratic institutions throughout the world through private sector initiatives, including activities which promote the individual rights and freedoms (including internationally recognized human rights) which are essential to the functioning of democratic institutions;

(2) to facilitate exchanges between United States private sector groups (especially the two major American political parties, labor, and business) and democratic groups abroad;

(3) to promote United States nongovernmental participation (especially through the two major American political parties, labor, business, and other private sector groups) in democratic training programs and democratic institution-building abroad;

(4) to strengthen democratic electoral processes abroad through timely measures in cooperation with indigenous democratic forces;

(5) to support the participation of the two major American political parties, labor, business, and other United States private sector groups in fostering cooperation with those abroad dedicated to the cultural values, institutions, and organizations of democratic pluralism; and

(6) to encourage the establishment and growth of democratic development in a manner consistent both with the broad concerns of

United States national interests and with the specific requirements of the democratic groups in other countries which are aided by programs funded by the Endowment.

(Pub. L. 98-164, title V, § 502, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1039.)

#### SHORT TITLE

Section 501 of title V of Pub. L. 98-164 provided that: “This title [enacting this subchapter] may be cited as the ‘National Endowment for Democracy Act.’”

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4412, 4413 of this title.

#### § 4412. Grants to the Endowment

##### (a) Authorization; funding; grant agreement

The Director of the United States Information Agency shall make an annual grant to the Endowment to enable the Endowment to carry out its purposes as specified in section 4411(b) of this title. Such grants shall be made with funds specifically appropriated for grants to the Endowment or with funds appropriated to the Agency for the “Salaries and Expenses” account. Such grants shall be made pursuant to a grant agreement between the Director and the Endowment which requires that grant funds will only be used for activities which the Board of Directors of the Endowment determines are consistent with the purposes described in section 4411(b) of this title, that the Endowment will allocate funds in accordance with subsection (e) of this section, and that the Endowment will otherwise comply with the requirements of this subchapter. The grant agreement may not require the Endowment to comply with requirements other than those specified in this subchapter.

##### (b) Implementation of purposes

Funds so granted may be used by the Endowment to carry out the purposes described in section 4411(b) of this title, and otherwise applicable limitations on the purposes for which funds appropriated to the United States Information Agency may be used shall not apply to funds granted to the Endowment.

##### (c) Status of Endowment

Nothing in this subchapter shall be construed to make the Endowment an agency or establishment of the United States Government or to make the members of the Board of Directors of the Endowment, or the officers or employees of the Endowment, officers or employees of the United States.

##### (d) Oversight procedures applicable

The Endowment and its grantees shall be subject to the appropriate oversight procedures of the Congress.

##### (e) Amounts to Free Trade Union Institute and National Chamber Foundation

Of the amounts made available to the Endowment for each of the fiscal years 1984 and 1985 to carry out programs in furtherance of the purposes of this Act—

(1) not less than \$13,800,000 shall be for the Free Trade Union Institute; and

(2) not less than \$2,500,000 shall be to support private enterprise development programs of the National Chamber Foundation.

**(f) Independent labor unions**

Nothing in this subchapter shall preclude the Endowment from making grants to independent labor unions.

(Pub. L. 98-164, title V, §503, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1040; Pub. L. 100-204, title II, §212, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1376.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in subsec. (e), is Pub. L. 98-164, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1017. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

## AMENDMENTS

1987—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 100-204 added subsec. (f).

**§ 4413. Eligibility of the Endowment for grants****(a) Compliance with statutory requirements**

Grants may be made to the Endowment under this subchapter only if the Endowment agrees to comply with the requirements specified in this section and elsewhere in this subchapter.

**(b) Funding for private sector groups and covered programs only**

(1) The Endowment may only provide funding for programs of private sector groups and may not carry out programs directly.

(2) The Endowment may provide funding only for programs which are consistent with the purposes set forth in section 4411(b) of this title.

**(c) Compensation, etc., for officers and employees of Endowment**

(1) Officers of the Endowment may not receive any salary or other compensation from any source, other than the Endowment, for services rendered during the period of their employment by the Endowment.

(2) If an individual who is an officer or employee of the United States Government serves as a member of the Board of Directors or as an officer or employee of the Endowment, that individual may not receive any compensation or travel expenses in connection with services performed for the Endowment.

**(d) Prohibitions respecting financial matters**

(1) The Endowment shall not issue any shares of stock or declare or pay any dividends.

(2) No part of the assets of the Endowment shall inure to the benefit of any member of the Board, any officer or employee of the Endowment, or any other individual, except as salary or reasonable compensation for services.

**(e) Audit of accounts; reporting requirements**

(1) The accounts of the Endowment shall be audited annually in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards by independent certified public accountants or independent licensed public accountants certified or licensed by a regulatory authority of a State or other political subdivision of the United States. The audits shall be conducted at the place or places where the accounts of the Endowment are normally kept. All books, accounts, financial records, reports, files, and all other papers, things, or property belonging to or in use by the Endowment and necessary to facilitate the audits shall be made available to the person or per-

sons conducting the audits; and full facilities for verifying transactions with any assets held by depositories, fiscal agents, and custodians shall be afforded to such person or persons.

(2) The report of each such independent audit shall be included in the annual report required by subsection (h) of this section. The audit report shall set forth the scope of the audit and include such statements as are necessary to present fairly the Endowment's assets and liabilities, surplus or deficit, with an analysis of the changes therein during the year, supplemented in reasonable detail by a statement of the Endowment's income and expenses during the year, and a statement of the application of funds, together with the independent auditor's opinion of those statements.

**(f) Audit of financial transactions; reporting requirements**

(1) The financial transactions of the Endowment for each fiscal year may be audited by the General Accounting Office in accordance with such principles and procedures and under such rules and regulations as may be prescribed by the Comptroller General of the United States. Any such audit shall be conducted at the place or places where accounts of the Endowment are normally kept. The representatives of the General Accounting Office shall have access to all books, accounts, records, reports, files, and all other papers, things, or property belonging to or in use by the Endowment pertaining to its financial transactions and necessary to facilitate the audit; and they shall be afforded full facilities for verifying transactions with any assets held by depositories, fiscal agents, and custodians. All such books, accounts, records, reports, files, papers, and property of the Endowment shall remain in the possession and custody of the Endowment.

(2) A report of each such audit shall be made by the Comptroller General to the Congress. The report to the Congress shall contain such comments and information as the Comptroller General may deem necessary to inform the Congress of the financial operations and condition of the Endowment, together with such recommendations with respect thereto as he may deem advisable. The report shall also show specifically any program, expenditure, or other financial transaction or undertaking observed in the course of the audit, which, in the opinion of the Comptroller General, has been carried on or made contrary to the requirements of this subchapter. A copy of each report shall be furnished to the President and to the Endowment at the time submitted to the Congress.

**(g) Audits by United States Information Agency**

The financial transactions of the Endowment for each fiscal year shall be audited by the United States Information Agency under the conditions set forth in subsection (f)(1) of this section.

**(h) Recordkeeping requirements; audit and examination of books, etc.**

(1) The Endowment shall ensure that each recipient of assistance provided through the Endowment under this subchapter keeps separate bank accounts or separate self-balancing ledger

accounts with respect to such assistance and such records as may be reasonably necessary to fully disclose the amount and the disposition by such recipient of the proceeds of such assistance, the total cost of the project or undertaking in connection with which such assistance is given or used, and the amount and nature of that portion of the cost of the project or undertaking supplied by other sources, and such other records as will facilitate an effective audit.

(2) The Endowment shall ensure that it, or any of its duly authorized representatives, shall have access for the purpose of audit and examination to any books, documents, papers, and records of the recipient that are pertinent to assistance provided through the Endowment under this subchapter. The Comptroller General of the United States or any of his duly authorized representatives shall also have access thereto for such purpose.

**(i) Annual report; contents; testimony respecting report**

Not later than February 1 of each year, the Endowment shall submit an annual report for the preceding fiscal year to the President for transmittal to the Congress. The report shall include a comprehensive and detailed report of the Endowment's operations, activities, financial condition, and accomplishments under this subchapter and may include such recommendations as the Endowment deems appropriate. The Board members and officers of the Endowment shall be available to testify before appropriate committees of the Congress with respect to such report, the report of any audit made by the Comptroller General pursuant to subsection (f) of this section, or any other matter which any such committee may determine.

**(j) Grantee; conflict of interest**

After January 31, 1993, no member of the Board of the Endowment may be a member of the board of directors or an officer of any grantee of the National Endowment for Democracy which receives more than 5 percent of the funds of the Endowment for any fiscal year.

(Pub. L. 98-164, title V, § 504, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1040; Pub. L. 99-93, title II, § 210(b), (d), Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 432; Pub. L. 100-204, title II, § 211, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1376; Pub. L. 102-138, title II, §§ 211(d), 215, Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 695, 697; Pub. L. 103-236, title II, § 228, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 423.)

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (h)(1). Pub. L. 103-236 substituted “bank accounts or separate self-balancing ledger accounts” for “accounts”.

1991—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 102-138, § 211(d), substituted “shall” for “may also” before “be audited”.

Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 102-138, § 215, added subsec. (j).

1987—Subsec. (h)(1). Pub. L. 100-204 inserted “separate accounts with respect to such assistance and” after “keeps”.

1985—Subsecs. (g) to (i). Pub. L. 99-93 added subsec. (g), redesignated existing subsecs. (g) and (h) as (h) and (i), respectively, and in subsec. (i) substituted “February 1” for “December 31”.

**§ 4414. Requirements relating to the Endowment and its grantees**

**(a) Partisan politics**

(1) Funds may not be expended, either by the Endowment or by any of its grantees, to finance the campaigns of candidates for public office.

(2) No funds granted by the Endowment may be used to finance activities of the Republican National Committee or the Democratic National Committee.

(3) No grants may be made to any institute, foundation, or organization engaged in partisan activities on behalf of the Republican or Democratic National Committee, on behalf of any candidate for public office, or on behalf of any political party in the United States.

**(b) Consultation with Department of State**

The Endowment shall consult with the Department of State on any overseas program funded by the Endowment prior to the commencement of the activities of that program.

(Pub. L. 98-164, title V, § 505, as added Pub. L. 99-93, title II, § 210(a), Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 431.)

**§ 4415. Freedom of information**

**(a) Compliance with Freedom of Information Act**

Notwithstanding the fact that the Endowment is not an agency or establishment of the United States Government, the Endowment shall fully comply with all of the provisions of section 552 of title 5.

**(b) Publication in Federal Register**

For purposes of complying pursuant to subsection (a) of this section with section 552(a)(1) of such title, the Endowment shall make available to the Director of the United States Information Agency such records and other information as the Director determines may be necessary for such purposes. The Director shall cause such records and other information to be published in the Federal Register.

**(c) Review by United States Information Agency**

(1) In the event that the Endowment determines not to comply with a request for records under section 552, the Endowment shall submit a report to the Director of the United States Information Agency explaining the reasons for not complying with such request.

(2) If the Director approves the determination not to comply with such request, the United States Information Agency shall assume full responsibility, including financial responsibility, for defending the Endowment in any litigation relating to such request.

(3) If the Director disapproves the determination not to comply with such request, the Endowment shall comply with such request.

(Pub. L. 98-164, title V, § 506, as added Pub. L. 99-93, title II, § 210(a), Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 432.)

**CHAPTER 55—RESEARCH AND TRAINING FOR EASTERN EUROPE AND INDEPENDENT STATES OF FORMER SOVIET UNION**

Sec.  
4501. Findings and declarations.



- Sec.  
4502. “Institution of higher education” and “Advisory Committee” defined.  
4503. Establishment of Advisory Committee.  
    (a) Establishment; composition; Chairman.  
    (b) Meetings; quorum.  
    (c) Technical and clerical assistance.  
    (d) Functions.  
4504. Authority to make payments; purposes.  
4505. Applications; payments to eligible institutions.  
4506. Reporting requirements.  
4507. Federal control of education prohibited.  
4508. Allocation of funds.  
4509. Repealed.

#### § 4501. Findings and declarations

The Congress finds and declares that—

(1) factual knowledge, independently verified, about the countries of Eastern Europe and the independent states of the former Soviet Union is of the utmost importance for the national security of the United States, for the furtherance of our national interests in the conduct of foreign relations, and for the prudent management of our domestic affairs;

(2) the development and maintenance of knowledge about the countries of Eastern Europe and the independent states of the former Soviet Union depends upon the national capability for advanced research by highly trained and experienced specialists, available for service in and out of Government;

(3) certain essential functions are necessary to ensure the existence of that knowledge and the capability to sustain it, including—

- (A) graduate training;
- (B) advanced research;
- (C) public dissemination of research data, methods, and findings;
- (D) contact and collaboration among Government and private specialists; and
- (E) firsthand experience of the countries of Eastern Europe and the independent states of the former Soviet Union by American specialists, including on site conduct of advanced training and research to the extent practicable; and

(4) it is in the national interest for the United States Government to provide a stable source of financial support for the functions described in this section and to supplement the financial support for those functions which is currently being furnished by Federal, State, local, regional, and private agencies, organizations, and individuals, and thereby to stabilize the conduct of these functions on a national scale, consistently, and on a long range unclassified basis.

(Pub. L. 98-164, title VIII, § 802, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1047; Pub. L. 103-199, title III, § 302(3), Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2322.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1993—Pars. (1), (2), (3)(E). Pub. L. 103-199 substituted “countries of Eastern Europe and the independent states of the former Soviet Union” for “Soviet Union and Eastern European countries”.

#### SHORT TITLE

Section 801 of title VIII of Pub. L. 98-164, as amended by Pub. L. 103-199, title III, § 302(2), Dec. 17, 1993, 107

Stat. 2322, provided that: “This title [enacting this chapter] may be cited as the ‘Research and Training for Eastern Europe and the Independent States of the Former Soviet Union Act of 1983’.”

#### DEFINITIONS

In pars. (1), (2), and (3)(E), independent states of the former Soviet Union has the meaning given in section 5801 of this title, see section 3 of Pub. L. 103-199, set out as a note under section 5801 of this title.

#### § 4502. “Institution of higher education” and “Advisory Committee” defined

As used in this chapter—

(1) the term “institution of higher education” has the same meaning given such term in section 1141(a) of title 20; and

(2) the term “Advisory Committee” means the Advisory Committee for Studies of Eastern Europe and the Independent States of the Former Soviet Union established by section 4503(a) of this title.

(Pub. L. 98-164, title VIII, § 803, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1048; Pub. L. 103-199, title III, § 302(4), Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2322.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1993—Par. (2). Pub. L. 103-199 substituted “Advisory Committee for Studies of Eastern Europe and the Independent States of the Former Soviet Union” for “Soviet-Eastern European Studies Advisory Committee”.

#### § 4503. Establishment of Advisory Committee

##### (a) Establishment; composition; Chairman

There is established within the Department of State the Advisory Committee for Studies of Eastern Europe and the Independent States of the Former Soviet Union which shall be composed of the Secretary of State, the Secretary of Defense, the Secretary of Education, the Librarian of Congress, the President of the American Association for the Advancement of Slavic Studies, and the President of the Association of American Universities. The Secretary of State shall be the Chairman.

##### (b) Meetings; quorum

The Advisory Committee shall meet at the call of the Chairman and shall hold at least one meeting each year. Three members of the Advisory Committee shall constitute a quorum.

##### (c) Technical and clerical assistance

The Secretary of State may detail personnel of the Department of State to provide technical and clerical assistance to the Advisory Committee in carrying out its functions under this chapter.

##### (d) Functions

The Advisory Committee shall recommend grant policies for the advancement of the objectives of this chapter. In proposing recipients for grants under this chapter, the Advisory Committee shall give the highest priority to national organizations with an interest and expertise in conducting research and training concerning the countries of Eastern Europe and the independent states of the former Soviet Union and in disseminating the results of such research. In making its recommendations, the Advisory Committee shall emphasize the development of a stable, long-term research program.

(Pub. L. 98-164, title VIII, § 804, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1048; Pub. L. 103-199, title III, § 302(5), Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2322.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1993—Pub. L. 103-199, § 302(5)(A), substituted “Establishment of Advisory Committee” for “Establishment of the Soviet-Eastern European Studies Advisory Committee” in section catchline.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103-199, § 302(5)(B), substituted “Advisory Committee for Studies of Eastern Europe and the Independent States of the Former Soviet Union” for “Soviet-Eastern European Studies Advisory Committee”.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 103-199, § 302(5)(C), substituted “the countries of Eastern Europe and the independent states of the former Soviet Union” for “Soviet and Eastern European countries”.

#### TERMINATION OF ADVISORY COMMITTEES

Advisory committees established after Jan. 5, 1973, to terminate not later than the expiration of the 2-year period beginning on the date of their establishment, unless, in the case of a committee established by the President or an officer of the Federal Government, such committee is renewed by appropriate action prior to the expiration of such 2-year period, or in the case of a committee established by the Congress, its duration is otherwise provided by law. See section 14 of Pub. L. 92-463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 776, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

#### DEFINITIONS

In subsec. (d), independent states of the former Soviet Union has the meaning given in section 5801 of this title, see section 3 of Pub. L. 103-199, set out as a note under section 5801 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4502 of this title.

### § 4504. Authority to make payments; purposes

(a) The Secretary of State, after consultation with the Advisory Committee, shall make payments, in accordance with the provisions of this section, out of funds made available to carry out this chapter.

(b)(1) One part of the payments made in each fiscal year shall be used to conduct a national research program at the postdoctoral or equivalent level, such program to include—

(A) the dissemination of information about the research program and the solicitation of proposals for research contracts from American institutions of higher education and not-for-profit corporations, such contracts to contain shared-cost provisions; and

(B) the awarding of contracts for such research projects as the respective institution determines will best serve to carry out the purposes of this chapter after reviewing proposals submitted under subparagraph (A).

(2) One part of the payments made in each fiscal year shall be used—

(A) to establish and carry out a program of graduate, postdoctoral, and teaching fellowships for advanced training in studies on the countries of Eastern Europe and the independent states of the former Soviet Union and related studies, such program—

(i) to be coordinated with the research program described in paragraph (1);

(ii) to be conducted, on a shared-cost basis, at American institutions of higher education; and

(iii) to include—

(I) the dissemination of information on the fellowship program and the solicitation of applications for fellowships from qualified institutions of higher education and qualified individuals; and

(II) the awarding of such fellowships as the respective institution determines will best serve to carry out the purposes of this chapter after reviewing applications submitted under subclause (I); and

(B) to disseminate research, data, and findings on studies on the countries of Eastern Europe and the independent states of the former Soviet Union and related fields in such a manner and to such extent as the respective institution determines will best serve to carry out the purposes of this chapter.

(3) One part of the payments made in each fiscal year shall be used—

(A) to provide fellowship and research support for American specialists in the independent states of the former Soviet Union and the countries of Eastern Europe and related fields to conduct advanced research with particular emphasis upon the use of data on those states and countries; and

(B) to conduct seminars, conferences, and other similar workshops designed to facilitate research collaboration between Government and private specialists in the independent states of the former Soviet Union and the countries of Eastern Europe and related fields.

(4) One part of the payments made in each fiscal year shall be used to conduct specialized programs in advanced training and research on a reciprocal basis in the independent states of the former Soviet Union and the countries of Eastern Europe designed to facilitate access for American specialists to research institutes, personnel, archives, documentation, and other research and training resources located in those states and countries.

(5) One part of the payments made in each fiscal year shall be used to support training in the languages of the independent states of the former Soviet Union and the countries of Eastern Europe. Such payments shall include grants to individuals to pursue such training and to summer language institutes operated by institutions of higher education. Preference shall be given for Russian language studies and, as appropriate, studies of other languages of the independent states of the former Soviet Union.

(6) Payments may be made to carry out other research and training in studies on the countries of Eastern Europe and the independent states of the former Soviet Union not otherwise described in this section.

(Pub. L. 98-164, title VIII, § 805, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1048; Pub. L. 103-199, title III, § 302(6), Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2323.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1993—Subsec. (b)(2)(A), (B). Pub. L. 103-199, § 302(6)(A), substituted “studies on the countries of Eastern Europe and the independent states of the former Soviet Union” for “Soviet and Eastern European studies”.

Subsec. (b)(3)(A). Pub. L. 103-199, § 302(6)(B), (C), substituted “independent states of the former Soviet

Union and the countries of Eastern Europe and related fields” for “fields of Soviet and Eastern European studies and related studies” and “those states and countries” for “the Soviet Union and Eastern European countries”.

Subsec. (b)(3)(B). Pub. L. 103-199, §302(6)(B), which directed the substitution of “independent states of the former Soviet Union and the countries of Eastern Europe and related fields” for “fields of Soviet and Eastern European studies and related studies”, was executed by making the substitution for “fields of Soviet and East European studies and related studies”, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 103-199, §302(6)(D), substituted “independent states of the former Soviet Union” for “Union of Soviet Socialist Republics” and “those states and countries” for “the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics and Eastern European countries”.

Subsec. (b)(5). Pub. L. 103-199, §302(6)(E), substituted “training in the languages of the independent states of the former Soviet Union and the countries of Eastern Europe” for “language training in Russian and Eastern European languages” and inserted before period at end “and, as appropriate, studies of other languages of the independent states of the former Soviet Union”.

Subsec. (b)(6). Pub. L. 103-199, §302(6)(A), substituted “studies on the countries of Eastern Europe and the independent states of the former Soviet Union” for “Soviet and Eastern European studies”.

#### DEFINITIONS

In subsec. (b)(2)–(6), independent states of the former Soviet Union has the meaning given in section 5801 of this title, see section 3 of Pub. L. 103-199, set out as a note under section 5801 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4505 of this title.

#### § 4505. Applications; payments to eligible institutions

(a) Any institution seeking funding under this chapter shall prepare and submit an application to the Secretary of State once each fiscal year. Each such application shall—

(1) provide a description of the purposes for which the payments will be used in accordance with section 4504 of this title; and

(2) provide such fiscal control and such accounting procedures as may be necessary (A) to ensure a proper accounting of Federal funds paid under this chapter, and (B) to ensure the verification of the costs of the continuing education and research programs conducted under this chapter.

(b) Payments under this chapter may be made in installments, in advance, or by way of reimbursement, with necessary adjustments on account of overpayments and underpayments.

(Pub. L. 98-164, title VIII, § 806, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1050.)

#### § 4506. Reporting requirements

The Secretary of State shall prepare and submit to the President and the Congress at the end of each fiscal year in which an institution receives assistance under this chapter a report of the activities of such institution supported by such assistance, if the administrative expenses of such institution which are covered by such assistance represent more than 10 per centum of such assistance, together with such recommendations as the Advisory Committee deems advisable.

(Pub. L. 98-164, title VIII, § 807, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1050.)

#### § 4507. Federal control of education prohibited

Nothing contained in this chapter may be construed to authorize any department, agency, officer, or employee of the United States to exercise any direction, supervision, or control over the curriculum, program of instruction or research, administration, or personnel of any educational institution.

(Pub. L. 98-164, title VIII, § 808, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1050.)

#### § 4508. Allocation of funds

Of the funds authorized to be appropriated by section 102(1) of this Act—

(1) up to \$5,000,000 for the fiscal year 1984 shall be available to carry out this chapter; and

(2) \$5,000,000 for the fiscal year 1985 shall be available only to carry out this chapter.

(Pub. L. 98-164, title VIII, § 809, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1050.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 102(1) of this Act, referred to in text, is section 102(1) of Pub. L. 98-164, title I, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1017, which is not classified to the Code.

#### § 4509. Repealed. Pub. L. 102-138, title II, § 209, Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 694

Section, Pub. L. 98-164, title VIII, § 810, Nov. 22, 1983, 97 Stat. 1051, provided that provisions of this chapter were to cease to be effective at end of ten-year period beginning on Nov. 22, 1983.

#### CHAPTER 56—UNITED STATES INSTITUTE OF PEACE

|       |  |
|-------|--|
| Sec.  |  |
| 4601. | Congressional declaration of findings and purposes.  |
| 4602. | Definitions.   |
| 4603. | United States Institute of Peace. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Establishment.</li> <li>(b) Status; restrictions.</li> <li>(c) Establishment and functions of an “Endowment of the United States Institute for Peace”.</li> <li>(d) Liability for acts within scope of authority.</li> <li>(e) Trade name and trademark rights; vested rights protected; condition for use of Federal identity.</li> </ul>  |
| 4604. | Powers and duties. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) District of Columbia nonprofit-corporative powers.</li> <li>(b) Description of specific activities.</li> <li>(c) Annual award of Spark M. Matsunaga Medal of Peace.</li> <li>(d) Description of extension and outreach activities.</li> <li>(e) Services for Federal agencies.</li> <li>(f) Contracts for operation of Institute.</li> <li>(g) Personnel; administrative assistance.</li> <li>(h) Grants and contracts; gifts and contributions; domestic and foreign restrictions.</li> <li>(i) Fees for periodicals and other materials.</li> <li>(j) Participation fees and costs.</li> <li>(k) Civil actions.</li> <li>(l) Corporate mark of recognition and colorable simulations.</li> </ul> |

- Sec.
- (m) General authority.
  - (n) Legislative influencing-activity prohibition; communications or testimony of personnel.
  - (o) Administrative services from General Services Administration.
4605. Board of Directors.
- (a) Vested powers.
  - (b) Membership.
  - (c) Political affiliation.
  - (d) Qualifications.
  - (e) Term of office: commencement and termination, interim and remainder service, limitation.
  - (f) Removal from office.
  - (g) Conflict of interests.
  - (h) Meetings; Chairman; Vice Chairman; quorum; notice in Federal Register; closure.
  - (i) Compensation.
  - (j) Travel expenses.
4606. Officers and employees.
- (a) Appointment, compensation and status of president of Institute and other officers.
  - (b) Authorization of activities.
  - (c) Appointment, compensation and status of personnel.
  - (d) Assignment of Federal officers or employees to the Institute.
  - (e) Dual compensation restriction.
  - (f) Federal employment status only for stated purposes.
  - (g) Distributions prohibited during life or upon dissolution or liquidation of Institute or legal entity; compensation for services or expenses.
  - (h) Loans prohibition; joint and several liability.
4607. Procedures and records.
- (a) Monitoring and evaluation of programs.
  - (b) Suspension procedures.
  - (c) Selection considerations.
  - (d) Accounts of receipts and disbursements; financial reports.
  - (e) Minutes of proceedings.
  - (f) Record and inspection of required items.
  - (g) Audits.
  - (h) Report of audit to Congress; copies for public.
  - (i) Freedom of information provisions applicable.
4608. Independence and limitations.
4609. Funding.
- (a) Authorization of appropriations.
  - (b) Transfer of unobligated funds; reports of use of funds to Congress and President.
  - (c) Contractual authority.
4610. Dissolution or liquidation.
4611. Biennial reports to President and Congress; comments, findings, and recommendations; Congressional Committee hearings.

**§ 4601. Congressional declaration of findings and purposes**

(a) The Congress finds and declares that—

(1) a living institution embodying the heritage, ideals, and concerns of the American people for peace would be a significant response to the deep public need for the Nation to develop fully a range of effective options, in addition to armed capacity, that can leash international violence and manage international conflict;

(2) people throughout the world are fearful of nuclear war, are divided by war and threats of war, are experiencing social and cultural hostilities from rapid international change and real and perceived conflicts over interests, and are diverted from peace by the lack of problem-solving skills for dealing with such conflicts;

(3) many potentially destructive conflicts among nations and peoples have been resolved constructively and with cost efficiency at the international, national, and community levels through proper use of such techniques as negotiation, conciliation, mediation, and arbitration;

(4) there is a national need to examine the disciplines in the social, behavioral, and physical sciences and the arts and humanities with regard to the history, nature, elements, and future of peace processes, and to bring together and develop new and tested techniques to promote peaceful economic, political, social, and cultural relations in the world;

(5) existing institutions providing programs in international affairs, diplomacy, conflict resolution, and peace studies are essential to further development of techniques to promote peaceful resolution of international conflict, and the peacemaking activities of people in such institutions, government, private enterprise, and voluntary associations can be strengthened by a national institution devoted to international peace research, education and training, and information services;

(6) there is a need for Federal leadership to expand and support the existing international peace and conflict resolution efforts of the Nation and to develop new comprehensive peace education and training programs, basic and applied research projects, and programs providing peace information;

(7) the Commission on Proposals for the National Academy of Peace and Conflict Resolution, created by the Education Amendments of 1978, recommended establishing an academy as a highly desirable investment to further the Nation's interest in promoting international peace;

(8) an institute strengthening and symbolizing the fruitful relation between the world of learning and the world of public affairs, would be the most efficient and immediate means for the Nation to enlarge its capacity to promote the peaceful resolution of international conflicts; and

(9) the establishment of such an institute is an appropriate investment by the people of this Nation to advance the history, science, art, and practice of international peace and the resolution of conflicts among nations without the use of violence.

(b) It is the purpose of this chapter to establish an independent, nonprofit, national institute to serve the people and the Government through the widest possible range of education and training, basic and applied research opportunities, and peace information services on the means to promote international peace and the resolution of conflicts among the nations and peoples of the world without recourse to violence.

(Pub. L. 98-525, title XVII, §1702, Oct. 19, 1984, 98 Stat. 2649.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Education Amendments of 1978, referred to in subsec. (a)(7), is Pub. L. 95-561, Nov. 1, 1978, 92 Stat. 2143, as amended, Part B (§§1511-1519) of title XV of Pub. L. 95-561, which provided for the Commission on Proposals for the National Academy of Peace and Conflict Resolution, was set out as a note under section 1123 of Title 20, Education. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1978 Amendment note under section 6301 of Title 20 and Tables.

## SHORT TITLE

Section 1701 of title XVII of Pub. L. 98-525 provided that: "This title [enacting this chapter] may be cited as the 'United States Institute of Peace Act'."

**§ 4602. Definitions**

As used in this chapter, the term—

(1) "Institute" means the United States Institute of Peace established by this chapter; and

(2) "Board" means the Board of Directors of the Institute.

(Pub. L. 98-525, title XVII, §1703, Oct. 19, 1984, 98 Stat. 2651.)

**§ 4603. United States Institute of Peace****(a) Establishment**

There is hereby established the United States Institute of Peace.

**(b) Status; restrictions**

The Institute is an independent nonprofit corporation and an organization described in section 170(c)(2)(B) of title 26. The Institute does not have the power to issue any shares of stock or to declare or pay any dividends.

**(c) Establishment and functions of an "Endowment of the United States Institute for Peace"**

As determined by the Board, the Institute may establish, under the laws of the District of Columbia, a legal entity which is capable of receiving, holding, and investing public funds for purposes in furtherance of the Institute under this chapter. The Institute may designate such legal entity as the "Endowment of the United States Institute for Peace".

**(d) Liability for acts within scope of authority**

The Institute is liable for the acts of its directors, officers, employees, and agents when acting within the scope of their authority.

**(e) Trade name and trademark rights; vested rights protected; condition for use of Federal identity**

(1) The Institute has the sole and exclusive right to use and to allow or refuse others the use of the terms "United States Institute of Peace", "Jennings Randolph Program for International Peace", "Spark M. Matsunaga Medal of Peace", and "Endowment of the United States Institute of Peace" and the use of any official United States Institute of Peace emblem, badge, seal, and other mark of recognition or any colorable simulation thereof. No powers or privileges hereby granted shall interfere or conflict with

established or vested rights secured as of September 1, 1981.

(2) Notwithstanding any other provision of this chapter, the Institute may use "United States" or "U.S." or any other reference to the United States Government or Nation in its title or in its corporate seal, emblem, badge, or other mark of recognition or colorable simulation thereof in any fiscal year only if there is an authorization of appropriations for the Institute for such fiscal year provided by law.

(Pub. L. 98-525, title XVII, §1704, Oct. 19, 1984, 98 Stat. 2651; Pub. L. 99-514, §2, Oct. 22, 1986, 100 Stat. 2095; Pub. L. 101-520, title III, §319(b), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2285.)

## AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (e)(1). Pub. L. 101-520 inserted reference to Spark M. Matsunaga Medal of Peace.

1986—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 99-514 substituted "Internal Revenue Code of 1986" for "Internal Revenue Code of 1954", which for purposes of codification was translated as "title 26" thus requiring no change in text.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4604, 4609 of this title.

**§ 4604. Powers and duties****(a) District of Columbia nonprofit-corporative powers**

The Institute may exercise the powers conferred upon a nonprofit corporation by the District of Columbia Nonprofit Corporation Act [D.C. Code, §29-501 et seq.] consistent with this chapter, except for section 5(o) of the District of Columbia Nonprofit Corporation Act [D.C. Code, §29-505(15)].

**(b) Description of specific activities**

The Institute, acting through the Board, may—

(1) establish a Jennings Randolph Program for International Peace and appoint, for periods up to two years, scholars and leaders in peace from the United States and abroad to pursue scholarly inquiry and other appropriate forms of communication on international peace and conflict resolution and, as appropriate, provide stipends, grants, fellowships, and other support to the leaders and scholars;

(2) enter into formal and informal relationships with other institutions, public and private, for purposes not inconsistent with this chapter;

(3) establish a Jeannette Rankin Research Program on Peace to conduct research and make studies, particularly of an interdisciplinary or of a multidisciplinary nature, into the causes of war and other international conflicts and the elements of peace among the nations and peoples of the world, including peace theories, methods, techniques, programs, and systems, and into the experiences of the United States and other nations in resolving conflicts with justice and dignity and without violence as they pertain to the advancement of international peace and conflict resolution, placing particular emphasis on realistic approaches to past successes and failures in the quest for peace and arms control and utilizing to the

maximum extent possible United States Government documents and classified materials from the Department of State, the Department of Defense, the Arms Control and Disarmament Agency, and the intelligence community;

(4) develop programs to make international peace and conflict resolution research, education, and training more available and useful to persons in government, private enterprise, and voluntary associations, including the creation of handbooks and other practical materials;

(5) provide, promote, and support peace education and research programs at graduate and postgraduate levels;

(6) conduct training, symposia, and continuing education programs for practitioners, policymakers, policy implementers, and citizens and noncitizens directed to developing their skills in international peace and conflict resolution;

(7) develop, for publication or other public communication, and disseminate, the carefully selected products of the Institute;

(8) establish a clearinghouse and other means for disseminating information, including classified information that is properly safeguarded, from the field of peace learning to the public and to government personnel with appropriate security clearances;

(9) secure directly, upon request of the president of the Institute to the head of any Federal department or agency and in accordance with section 552 of title 5 (relating to freedom of information), information necessary to enable the Institute to carry out the purposes of this chapter if such release of the information would not unduly interfere with the proper functioning of a department or agency, including classified information if the Institute staff and members of the Board who have access to such classified information obtain appropriate security clearances from the Department of Defense and the Department of State; and

(10) establish the Spark M. Matsunaga Scholars Program, which shall include the provision of scholarships and educational programs in international peace and conflict management and related fields for outstanding secondary school students and the provision of scholarships to outstanding undergraduate students, with program participants and recipients of such scholarships to be known as "Spark M. Matsunaga Scholars".

**(c) Annual award of Spark M. Matsunaga Medal of Peace**

(1)(A) The Institute, acting through the Board, may each year make an award to such person or persons who it determines to have contributed in extraordinary ways to peace among the nations and peoples of the world, giving special attention to contributions that advance society's knowledge and skill in peacemaking and conflict management. The award shall include the public presentation to such person or persons of the Spark M. Matsunaga Medal of Peace and a cash award in an amount of not to exceed \$25,000 for any recipient.

(B)(i) The Secretary of the Treasury shall strike the Spark M. Matsunaga Medal of Peace

with suitable emblems, devices, and inscriptions which capture the goals for which the Medal is presented. The design of the medals shall be determined by the Secretary of the Treasury in consultation with the Board and the Commission of Fine Arts.

(ii) The Spark M. Matsunaga Medal of Peace shall be struck in bronze and in the size determined by the Secretary of the Treasury in consultation with the Board.

(iii) The appropriate account of the Treasury of the United States shall be reimbursed for costs incurred in carrying out this subparagraph out of funds appropriated pursuant to section 4609(a)(1) of this title.

(2) The Board shall establish an advisory panel composed of persons eminent in peacemaking, diplomacy, public affairs, and scholarship, and such advisory panel shall advise the Board during its consideration of the selection of the recipient of the award.

(3) The Institute shall inform the Committee on Foreign Relations and the Committee on Labor and Human Resources of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs and the Committee on Education and Labor of the House of Representatives about the selection procedures it intends to follow, together with any other matters relevant to making the award and emphasizing its prominence and significance.

**(d) Description of extension and outreach activities**

The Institute may undertake extension and outreach activities under this chapter by making grants and entering into contracts with institutions of postsecondary, community, secondary, and elementary education (including combinations of such institutions), with public and private educational, training, or research institutions (including the American Federation of Labor—the Congress of Industrial Organizations) and libraries, and with public departments and agencies (including State and territorial departments of education and of commerce). No grant may be made to an institution unless it is a nonprofit or official public institution, and at least one-fourth of the Institute's annual appropriations shall be paid to such nonprofit and official public institutions. A grant or contract may be made to—

(1) initiate, strengthen, and support basic and applied research on international peace and conflict resolution;

(2) promote and advance the study of international peace and conflict resolution by educational, training, and research institutions, departments, and agencies;

(3) educate the Nation about and educate and train individuals in peace and conflict resolution theories, methods, techniques, programs, and systems;

(4) assist the Institute in its publication, clearinghouse, and other information services programs;

(5) assist the Institute in the study of conflict resolution between free trade unions and Communist-dominated organizations in the context of the global struggle for the protection of human rights; and

(6) promote the other purposes of this chapter.

**(e) Services for Federal agencies**

The Institute may respond to the request of a department or agency of the United States Government to investigate, examine, study, and report on any issue within the Institute's competence, including the study of past negotiating histories and the use of classified materials.

**(f) Contracts for operation of Institute**

The Institute may enter into contracts for the proper operation of the Institute.

**(g) Personnel; administrative assistance**

The Institute may fix the duties of its officers, employees, and agents, and establish such advisory committees, councils, or other bodies, as the efficient administration of the business and purposes of the Institute may require.

**(h) Grants and contracts; gifts and contributions; domestic and foreign restrictions**

(1) Except as provided in paragraphs (2) and (3), the Institute may obtain grants and contracts, including contracts for classified research for the Department of State, the Department of Defense, the Arms Control and Disarmament Agency, and the intelligence community, and receive gifts and contributions from government at all levels.

(2) The Institute and the legal entity described in section 4603(c) of this title may not accept any gift, contribution or grant from a foreign government, any agency or instrumentality of such government, any international organization, or any corporation or other legal entity in which natural persons who are nationals of a foreign country own, directly or indirectly, more than 50 percent of the outstanding capital stock or other beneficial interest in such legal entity.

(3) Notwithstanding any other provision of this chapter, the Institute and the legal entity described in section 4603(c) of this title may not obtain any grant or contract or receive any gift or contribution from any private agency, organization, corporation or other legal entity, institution, or individual, except such Institute or legal entity may accept such a gift or contribution to—

(A) purchase, lease for purchase, or otherwise acquire, construct, improve, furnish, or maintain a suitable permanent headquarters, any related facility, or any site or sites for such facilities for the Institute and the legal entity described in section 4603(c) of this title; or

(B) provide program-related hospitality, including such hospitality connected with the presentation of the Spark M. Matsunaga Medal of Peace.

**(i) Fees for periodicals and other materials**

The Institute may charge and collect subscription fees and develop, for publication or other public communication, and disseminate, periodicals and other materials.

**(j) Participation fees and costs**

The Institute may charge and collect fees and other participation costs from persons and institutions participating in the Institute's direct activities authorized in subsection (b) of this section.

**(k) Civil actions**

The Institute may sue and be sued, complain, and defend in any court of competent jurisdiction.

**(l) Corporate mark of recognition and colorable simulations**

The Institute may adopt, alter, use, and display a corporate seal, emblem, badge, and other mark of recognition and colorable simulations thereof.

**(m) General authority**

The Institute may do any and all lawful acts and things necessary or desirable to carry out the objectives and purposes of this chapter.

**(n) Legislative influencing-activity prohibition; communications or testimony of personnel**

The Institute shall not itself undertake to influence the passage or defeat of any legislation by the Congress of the United States or by any State or local legislative bodies, or by the United Nations, except that personnel of the Institute may testify or make other appropriate communication when formally requested to do so by a legislative body, a committee, or a member thereof.

**(o) Administrative services from General Services Administration**

The Institute may obtain administrative support services from the Administrator of General Services on a reimbursable basis.

(Pub. L. 98-525, title XVII, §1705, Oct. 19, 1984, 98 Stat. 2651; Pub. L. 100-50, §25, June 3, 1987, 101 Stat. 363; Pub. L. 100-418, title VI, §6272, Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1523; Pub. L. 101-520, title III, §319(a), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2284; Pub. L. 102-325, title XV, §1554(b), (c), July 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 839.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The District of Columbia Nonprofit Corporation Act, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 87-569, Aug. 6, 1962, 76 Stat. 265, as amended, which appears in chapter 5 (§29-501 et seq.) of Title 29, Corporations, of the District of Columbia Code. Section 5(o) of the District of Columbia Nonprofit Corporation Act now appears in section 29-505(15) of such Title 29.

## AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (b)(10). Pub. L. 102-325, §1554(b), added par. (10).

Subsec. (h)(2). Pub. L. 102-325, §1554(c)(1), amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) read as follows: "The Institute may not accept any gift, contribution, or grant from, or enter into any contract with, a foreign government, any agency or instrumentality of such government, any international organization, or any foreign national, except that the Institute may accept the payment of tuition by foreign nationals for instruction provided by the Institute. For purposes of this paragraph, the term—

"(A) 'foreign national' means—

"(i) a natural person who is a citizen of a foreign country or who owes permanent allegiance to a foreign country; and

"(ii) a corporation or other legal entity in which natural persons who are nationals of a foreign country own, directly or indirectly, more than 50 percent of the outstanding capital stock or other beneficial interest in such legal entity; and

"(B) 'person' means a natural person, partnership, association, other unincorporated body, or corporation."

Subsec. (h)(3). Pub. L. 102-325, § 1554(c)(2), substituted at end “individual, except such Institute or legal entity may accept such a gift or contribution to—” for “individual.” and added subpars. (A) and (B).

1990—Subsec. (b)(9), (10). Pub. L. 101-520, § 319(a)(1), redesignated par. (10) as (9) and struck out former par. (9) which read as follows: “recommend to the Congress the establishment of a United States Medal of Peace to be awarded under such procedures as the Congress may determine, except that no person associated with the Institute may receive the United States Medal of Peace; and”.

Subsecs. (c) to (o). Pub. L. 101-520, § 319(a)(2), (3), added subsec. (c) and redesignated former subsecs. (c) to (n) as (d) to (o), respectively.

1988—Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 100-418 made technical amendment to directory language of Pub. L. 100-50, see 1987 Amendment note below.

1987—Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 100-50, as amended by Pub. L. 100-418, inserted “establish a Jeannette Rankin Research Program on Peace to” before “conduct research”.

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives and Committee on Education and Labor of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Economic and Educational Opportunities of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1992 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 102-325 effective Oct. 1, 1992, see section 2 of Pub. L. 102-325, set out as a note under section 1001 of Title 20, Education.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1987 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 100-50 effective as if enacted as part of the Higher Education Amendments of 1986, Pub. L. 99-498, see section 27 of Pub. L. 100-50, set out as a note under section 1001 of Title 20, Education.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4606 of this title.

### § 4605. Board of Directors

#### (a) Vested powers

The powers of the Institute shall be vested in a Board of Directors unless otherwise specified in this chapter.

#### (b) Membership

The Board shall consist of fifteen voting members as follows:

(1) The Secretary of State (or if the Secretary so designates, another officer of the Department of State who was appointed with the advice and consent of the Senate).

(2) The Secretary of Defense (or if the Secretary so designates, another officer of the Department of Defense who was appointed with the advice and consent of the Senate).

(3) The Director of the Arms Control and Disarmament Agency (or if the Director so designates, another officer of that Agency who was appointed with the advice and consent of the Senate).

(4) The president of the National Defense University (or if the president so designates, the vice president of the National Defense University).

(5) Eleven individuals appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate.

#### (c) Political affiliation

Not more than eight voting members of the Board (including members described in paragraphs (1) through (4) of subsection (b) of this section) may be members of the same political party.

#### (d) Qualifications

(1) Each individual appointed to the Board under subsection (b)(5) of this section shall have appropriate practical or academic experience in peace and conflict resolution efforts of the United States.

(2) Officers and employees of the United States Government may not be appointed to the Board under subsection (b)(5) of this section.

#### (e) Term of office: commencement and termination

(1) Members of the Board appointed under subsection (b)(5) of this section shall be appointed to four year terms, except that—

(A) the term of six of the members initially appointed shall be two years, as designated by the President at the time of their nomination;

(B) a member may continue to serve until his or her successor is appointed; and

(C) a member appointed to replace a member whose term has not expired shall be appointed to serve the remainder of that term.

(2) The terms of the members of the Board initially appointed under subsection (b)(5) of this section shall begin on January 20, 1985, and subsequent terms shall begin upon the expiration of the preceding term, regardless of when a member is appointed to fill that term.

(3) The President may not nominate an individual for appointment to the Board under subsection (b)(5) of this section prior to January 20, 1985, but shall submit the names of eleven nominees for initial Board membership under subsection (b)(5) of this section not later than ninety days after that date. If the Senate rejects such a nomination or if such a nomination is withdrawn, the President shall submit the name of a new nominee within fifteen days.

(4) An individual appointed as a member of the Board under subsection (b)(5) of this section may not be appointed to more than two terms on the Board.

#### (f) Removal from office

A member of the Board appointed under subsection (b)(5) of this section may be removed by the President—

(1) in consultation with the Board, for conviction of a felony, malfeasance in office, persistent neglect of duties, or inability to discharge duties;

(2) upon the recommendation of eight voting members of the Board; or

(3) upon the recommendation of a majority of the members of the Committee on Foreign Affairs and the Committee on Education and Labor of the House of Representatives and a majority of the members of the Committee on Foreign Relations and the Committee on Labor and Human Resources of the Senate.

A recommendation made in accordance with paragraph (2) may be made only pursuant to ac-



tion taken at a meeting of the Board, which may be closed pursuant to the procedures of subsection (h)(3) of this section. Only members who are present may vote. A record of the vote shall be maintained. The President shall be informed immediately by the Board of the recommendation.

**(g) Conflict of interests**

No member of the Board may participate in any decision, action, or recommendation with respect to any matter which directly and financially benefits the member or pertains specifically to any public body or any private or non-profit firm or organization with which the member is then formally associated or has been formally associated within a period of two years, except that this subsection shall not be construed to prohibit an ex officio member of the Board from participation in actions of the Board which pertain specifically to the public body of which that member is an officer.

**(h) Meetings; Chairman; Vice Chairman; quorum; notice in Federal Register; closure**

Meetings of the Board shall be conducted as follows:

(1) The President shall stipulate by name the nominee who shall be the first Chairman of the Board. The first Chairman shall serve for a term of three years. Thereafter, the Board shall elect a Chairman every three years from among the directors appointed by the President under subsection (b)(5) of this section and may elect a Vice Chairman if so provided by the Institute's bylaws.

(2) The Board shall meet at least semiannually, at any time pursuant to the call of the Chairman or as requested in writing to the Chairman by at least five members of the Board. A majority of the members of the Board shall constitute a quorum for any Board meeting.

(3) All meetings of the Board shall be open to public observation and shall be preceded by reasonable public notice. Notice in the Federal Register shall be deemed to be reasonable public notice for purposes of the preceding sentence. In exceptional circumstances, the Board may close those portions of a meeting, upon a majority vote of its members present and with the vote taken in public session, which are likely to disclose information likely to affect adversely any ongoing peace proceeding or activity or to disclose information or matters exempted from public disclosure pursuant to subsection (c) of section 552b of title 5.

**(i) Compensation**

A director appointed by the President under subsection (b)(5) of this section shall be entitled to receive the daily equivalent of the annual rate of basic pay in effect for grade GS-18 of the General Schedule under section 5332 of title 5 for each day during which the director is engaged in the performance of duties as a member of the Board.

**(j) Travel expenses**

While away from his home or regular place of business in the performance of duties for the Institute, a director shall be allowed travel ex-

penses, including a per diem in lieu of subsistence, not to exceed the expenses allowed persons employed intermittently in Government service under section 5703(b)<sup>1</sup> of title 5.

(Pub. L. 98-525, title XVII, §1706, Oct. 19, 1984, 98 Stat. 2654.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 5703 of title 5, referred to in subsec. (j), was amended generally by Pub. L. 94-22, §4, May 19, 1975, 89 Stat. 85, and, as so amended, does not contain a subsec. (b).

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives and Committee on Education and Labor of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Economic and Educational Opportunities of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

REFERENCES IN OTHER LAWS TO GS-16, 17, OR 18 PAY RATES

References in laws to the rates of pay for GS-16, 17, or 18, or to maximum rates of pay under the General Schedule, to be considered references to rates payable under specified sections of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, see section 529 [title I, §101(c)(1)] of Pub. L. 101-509, set out in a note under section 5376 of Title 5.

**§ 4606. Officers and employees**

**(a) Appointment, compensation and status of president of Institute and other officers**

The Board shall appoint the president of the Institute and such other officers as the Board determines to be necessary. The president of the Institute shall be a nonvoting ex officio member of the Board. All officers shall serve at the pleasure of the Board. The president shall be appointed for an explicit term of years. Notwithstanding any other provision of law limiting the payment of compensation, the president and other officers appointed by the Board shall be compensated at rates determined by the Board, but no greater than that payable for level I of the Executive Schedule under chapter 53 of title 5.

**(b) Authorization of activities**

Subject to the provisions of section 4604(h)(3) of this title, the Board shall authorize the president and any other officials or employees it designates to receive and disburse public moneys, obtain and make grants, enter into contracts, establish and collect fees, and undertake all other activities necessary for the efficient and proper functioning of the Institute.

**(c) Appointment, compensation and status of personnel**

The president, subject to Institute's bylaws and general policies established by the Board, may appoint, fix the compensation of, and remove such employees of the Institute as the president determines necessary to carry out the purposes of the Institute. In determining employee rates of compensation, the president shall be governed by the provisions of title 5 re-

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

lating to classification and General Schedule pay rates.

**(d) Assignment of Federal officers or employees to the Institute**

(1) The president may request the assignment of any Federal officer or employee to the Institute by an appropriate department, agency, or congressional official or Member of Congress and may enter into an agreement for such assignment, if the affected officer or employee agrees to such assignment and such assignment causes no prejudice to the salary, benefits, status, or advancement within the department, agency, or congressional staff of such officer or employee.

(2) The Secretary of State, the Secretary of Defense, the Director of the Arms Control and Disarmament Agency, and the Director of Central Intelligence each may assign officers and employees of his respective department or agency, on a rotating basis to be determined by the Board, to the Institute if the affected officer or employee agrees to such assignment and such assignment causes no prejudice to the salary, benefits, status, or advancement within the respective department or agency of such officer or employee.

**(e) Dual compensation restriction**

No officer or full-time employee of the Institute may receive any salary or other compensation for services from any source other than the Institute during the officer's or employee's period of employment by the Institute, except as authorized by the Board.

**(f) Federal employment status only for stated purposes**

(1) Officers and employees of the Institute shall not be considered officers and employees of the Federal Government except for purposes of the provisions of title 28, which relate to Federal tort claims liability, and the provisions of title 5, which relate to compensation and benefits, including the following provisions: chapter 51 (relating to classification); subchapters I and III of chapter 53 (relating to pay rates); subchapter I of chapter 81 (relating to compensation for work injuries); chapter 83 (relating to civil service retirement); chapter 87 (relating to life insurance); and chapter 89 (relating to health insurance). The Institute shall make contributions at the same rates applicable to agencies of the Federal Government under the provisions of title 5 referred to in this section.

(2) The Institute shall not make long-term commitments to employees that are inconsistent with rules and regulations applicable to Federal employees.

**(g) Distributions prohibited during life or upon dissolution or liquidation of Institute or legal entity; compensation for services or expenses**

No part of the financial resources, income, or assets of the Institute or of any legal entity created by the Institute shall inure to any agent, employee, officer, or director or be distributable to any such person during the life of the corporation or upon dissolution or final liquidation. Nothing in this section may be construed to prevent the payment of reasonable compensation

for services or expenses to the directors, officers, employees, and agents of the Institute in amounts approved in accordance with the provisions of this chapter.

**(h) Loans prohibition; joint and several liability**

The Institute shall not make loans to its directors, officers, employees, or agents, or to any legal entity created by the Institute. A director, officer, employee, or agent who votes for or assents to the making of a loan or who participates in the making of a loan shall be jointly and severally liable to the Institute for the amount of the loan until repayment thereof.

(Pub. L. 98-525, title XVII, §1707, Oct. 19, 1984, 98 Stat. 2656; Pub. L. 100-569, title III, §301(b), Oct. 31, 1988, 102 Stat. 2864; Pub. L. 101-520, title III, §319(c), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 2285.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Level I of the Executive Schedule, referred to in subsec. (a), is set out in section 5312 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

The provisions of title 5 relating to classification and General Schedule pay rates, referred to in subsec. (c), are set out in chapter 51 (§5101 et seq.) and subchapter III (§5331 et seq.) of chapter 53 of Title 5.

The provisions of title 28 which relate to Federal tort claims liability, referred to in subsec. (f)(1), are the provisions of the Federal Tort Claims Act, which is classified generally to section 1346(b) and to chapter 171 (§2671 et seq.) of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 101-520 substituted “4604(h)(3)” for “4604(g)(3)”.

1988—Subsec. (f)(2). Pub. L. 100-569 struck out first sentence which read as follows: “No Federal funds shall be used to pay for private fringe benefit programs.”

**§ 4607. Procedures and records**

**(a) Monitoring and evaluation of programs**

The Institute shall monitor and evaluate and provide for independent evaluation if necessary of programs supported in whole or in part under this chapter to ensure that the provisions of this chapter and the bylaws, rules, regulations, and guidelines promulgated pursuant to this chapter are adhered to.

**(b) Suspension procedures**

The Institute shall prescribe procedures to ensure that grants, contracts, and financial support under this chapter are not suspended unless the grantee, contractor, or person or entity receiving financial support has been given reasonable notice and opportunity to show cause why the action should not be taken.

**(c) Selection considerations**

In selecting persons to participate in Institute activities, the Institute may consider a person's practical experience or equivalency in peace study and activity as well as other formal requirements.

**(d) Accounts of receipts and disbursements; financial reports**

The Institute shall keep correct and complete books and records of account, including separate and distinct accounts of receipts and disbursements of Federal funds. The Institute's annual

financial report shall identify the use of such funding and shall present a clear description of the full financial situation of the Institute.

**(e) Minutes of proceedings**

The Institute shall keep minutes of the proceedings of its Board and of any committees having authority under the Board.

**(f) Record and inspection of required items**

The Institute shall keep a record of the names and addresses of its Board members; copies of this chapter, of any other Acts relating to the Institute, and of all Institute bylaws, rules, regulations, and guidelines; required minutes of proceedings; a record of all applications and proposals and issued or received contracts and grants; and financial records of the Institute. All items required by this subsection may be inspected by any Board member or the member's agent or attorney for any proper purpose at any reasonable time.

**(g) Audits**

The accounts of the Institute shall be audited annually in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards by independent certified public accountants or independent licensed public accountants, certified or licensed by a regulatory authority of a State or other political subdivision of the United States on or before December 31, 1970. The audit shall be conducted at the place or places where the accounts of the Institute are normally kept. All books, accounts, financial records, files, and other papers, things, and property belonging to or in use by the Institute and necessary to facilitate the audit shall be made available to the person or persons conducting the audit, and full facilities for verifying transactions with the balances or securities held by depositories, fiscal agents, and custodians shall be afforded to such person or persons.

**(h) Report of audit to Congress; copies for public**

The Institute shall provide a report of the audit to the President and to each House of Congress no later than six months following the close of the fiscal year for which the audit is made. The report shall set forth the scope of the audit and include such statements, together with the independent auditor's opinion of those statements, as are necessary to present fairly the Institute's assets and liabilities, surplus or deficit, with reasonable detail, including a statement of the Institute's income and expenses during the year, including a schedule of all contracts and grants requiring payments in excess of \$5,000 and any payments of compensation, salaries, or fees at a rate in excess of \$5,000 per year. The report shall be produced in sufficient copies for the public.

**(i) Freedom of information provisions applicable**

The Institute and its directors, officers, employees, and agents shall be subject to the provisions of section 552 of title 5 (relating to freedom of information).

(Pub. L. 98-525, title XVII, §1708, Oct. 19, 1984, 98 Stat. 2657.)

**§ 4608. Independence and limitations**

(a) Nothing in this chapter may be construed as limiting the authority of the Office of Man-

agement and Budget to review and submit comments on the Institute's budget request at the time it is transmitted to the Congress.

(b) No political test or political qualification may be used in selecting, appointing, promoting, or taking any other personnel action with respect to any officer, employee, agent, or recipient of Institute funds or services or in selecting or monitoring any grantee, contractor, person, or entity receiving financial assistance under this chapter.

(Pub. L. 98-525, title XVII, §1709, Oct. 19, 1984, 98 Stat. 2659.)

**§ 4609. Funding**

**(a) Authorization of appropriations**

**(1) In general**

For the purpose of carrying out this chapter, there are authorized to be appropriated \$15,000,000 for fiscal year 1993 and such sums as may be necessary for each of the 6 succeeding fiscal years.

**(2) Availability**

Funds appropriated pursuant to the authority of paragraph (1) shall remain available until expended.

**(b) Transfer of unobligated funds; reports of use of funds to Congress and President**

The Board of Directors may transfer to the legal entity authorized to be established under section 4603(c) of this title any funds not obligated or expended from appropriations to the Institute for a fiscal year, and such funds shall remain available for obligation or expenditure for the purposes of such legal entity without regard to fiscal year limitations. Any use by such legal entity of appropriated funds shall be reported to each House of the Congress and to the President of the United States.

**(c) Contractual authority**

Any authority provided by this chapter to enter into contracts shall be effective for a fiscal year only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in appropriation Acts.

(Pub. L. 98-525, title XVII, §1710, Oct. 19, 1984, 98 Stat. 2659; Pub. L. 99-498, title XVI, §1601(a)(1), (b), Oct. 17, 1986, 100 Stat. 1612; Pub. L. 100-569, title III, §301(a), Oct. 31, 1988, 102 Stat. 2863; Pub. L. 102-325, title XV, §1554(a), July 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 839; Pub. L. 103-208, §2(k)(14), Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2486.)

AMENDMENTS

1993—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 103-208 substituted “6” for “4” before “succeeding fiscal years”.

1992—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 102-325 amended subsec. (a) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (a) read as follows:

“(1) For the purpose of carrying out this chapter (except for paragraph (9) of section 4604(b) of this title), there are authorized to be appropriated \$10,000,000 for fiscal year 1989; \$10,000,000 for fiscal year 1990; \$10,000,000 for fiscal year 1991; \$15,000,000 for fiscal year 1992; and \$15,000,000 for fiscal year 1993.

“(2) Funds appropriated pursuant to paragraph (1) are authorized to remain available until expended.”

1988—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 100-569 amended subsec. (a) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (a) read as follows: “For the purpose of carrying out this chapter (ex-

cept for paragraph (9) of section 4604(b) of this title), there are authorized to be appropriated \$6,000,000 for the fiscal year 1987 and \$10,000,000 for the fiscal year 1988. Amounts appropriated under this section are authorized to remain available to the Institute until expended.”

1986—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99-498 substituted “fiscal year 1987” for “fiscal year 1985”, “fiscal year 1988” for “fiscal year 1986”, and “Amounts appropriated under this section are authorized to remain available to the Institute until expended” for “Moneys appropriated for the fiscal year 1985 shall remain available to the Institute through the fiscal year 1986”.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103-208 effective as if included in the Higher Education Amendments of 1992, Pub. L. 102-325, except as otherwise provided, see section 5(a) of Pub. L. 103-208, set out as a note under section 1003 of Title 20, Education.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1992 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 102-325 effective Oct. 1, 1992, see section 2 of Pub. L. 102-325, set out as a note under section 1001 of Title 20, Education.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Section 1601(a)(2) of Pub. L. 99-498 provided that: “The amendments made by paragraph (1) [amending this section] shall take effect on October 1, 1986.”

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4604 of this title.

**§ 4610. Dissolution or liquidation**

Upon dissolution or final liquidation of the Institute or of any legal entity created pursuant to this chapter, all income and assets of the Institute or other legal entity shall revert to the United States Treasury.

(Pub. L. 98-525, title XVII, §1711, Oct. 19, 1984, 98 Stat. 2659.)

**§ 4611. Biennial reports to President and Congress; comments, findings, and recommendations; Congressional Committee hearings**

Beginning two years after October 19, 1984, and at intervals of two years thereafter, the Chairman of the Board shall prepare and transmit to the Congress and the President a report detailing the progress the Institute has made in carrying out the purposes of this chapter during the preceding two-year period. The President shall prepare and transmit to the Congress within a reasonable time after the receipt of such report the written comments and recommendations of the appropriate agencies of the United States with respect to the contents of such report and their recommendations with respect to any legislation which may be required concerning the Institute. After receipt of such report by the Congress, the Committee on Foreign Affairs and the Committee on Education and Labor of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations and the Committee on Labor and Human Resources of the Senate shall hold hearings to review the findings and recommendations of such report and the written comments received from the President.

(Pub. L. 98-525, title XVII, §1712, Oct. 19, 1984, 98 Stat. 2659.)

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Inter-

national Relations of House of Representatives and Committee on Education and Labor of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Economic and Educational Opportunities of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

**CHAPTER 57—UNITED STATES SCHOLARSHIP PROGRAM FOR DEVELOPING COUNTRIES**

- Sec.
- 4701. Statement of purpose.
- 4702. Congressional findings and declaration of policy.
- 4703. Scholarship program authority.
  - (a) In general.
  - (b) Form of scholarship; forgiveness of loan repayment.
  - (c) Consultation.
  - (d) “Institution of higher education” defined.
- 4704. Guidelines.
- 4705. Authority to enter into agreements.
- 4706. Policy regarding other international educational programs.
  - (a) AID-funded programs.
  - (b) USIA-funded postgraduate study in the United States.
  - (c) Study by Americans in developing countries.
- 4707. Establishment and maintenance of counseling services.
  - (a) Counseling services abroad.
  - (b) Counseling services in the United States.
- 4708. J. William Fulbright Foreign Scholarship Board.
- 4709. General authorities.
  - (a) Public and private sector contributions.
  - (b) Utilization of returning program participants.
  - (c) Promotion abroad of scholarship program.
  - (d) Increasing United States understanding of developing countries.
  - (e) Other activities to promote improved understanding.
- 4710. English teaching, textbooks, and other teaching materials.
- 4711. Repealed.
- 4712. Funding of scholarships for fiscal year 1986 and fiscal year 1987.
  - (a) Central American undergraduate scholarship program.
  - (b) Scholarships for students from other developing countries.
- 4713. Latin American exchanges.
- 4714. Feasibility study of training programs in sizable Hispanic populations.
- 4715. Compliance with Congressional Budget Act.

**§ 4701. Statement of purpose**

The purpose of this chapter is to establish an undergraduate scholarship program designed to bring students of limited financial means from developing countries to the United States for study at United States institutions of higher education.

(Pub. L. 99-93, title VI, §601, Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 439.)

**§ 4702. Congressional findings and declaration of policy**

The Congress finds and declares that—  
 (1) it is in the national interest for the United States Government to provide a stable

source of financial support to give students in developing countries the opportunity to study in the United States, in order to improve the range and quality of educational alternatives, increase mutual understanding, and build lasting links between those countries and the United States;

(2) providing scholarships to foreign students to study in the United States has proven over time to be an effective means of creating strong bonds between the United States and the future leadership of developing countries and, at the same time, assists countries substantially in their development efforts;

(3) study in United States institutions by foreign students enhances trade and economic relationships by providing strong English language skills and establishing professional and business contacts;

(4) students from families of limited financial means have, in the past, largely not had the opportunity to study in the United States, and scholarship programs sponsored by the United States have made no provision for identifying, preparing, or supporting such students for study in the United States;

(5) it is essential that the United States citizenry develop its knowledge and understanding of the developing countries and their languages, cultures, and socioeconomic composition as these areas assume an ever larger role in the world community;

(6) an undergraduate scholarship program for students of limited financial means from developing countries to study in the United States would complement current assistance efforts in the areas of advanced education and training of people of developing countries in such disciplines as are required for planning and implementation of public and private development activities;

(7) the National Bipartisan Commission on Central America has recommended a program of 10,000 United States Government-sponsored scholarships to bring Central American students to the United States, which program would involve careful targeting to encourage participation by young people from all social and economic classes, would maintain existing admission standards by providing intensive English and other training, and would encourage graduates to return to their home countries after completing their education; and

(8) it is also in the interest of the United States, as well as peaceful cooperation in the Western Hemisphere, that particular attention be given to the students of the Caribbean region.

(Pub. L. 99-93, title VI, §602, Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 439; Pub. L. 103-199, title III, §305, Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2324.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1993—Pars. (6) to (10). Pub. L. 103-199 redesignated pars. (8) to (10) as (6) to (8), respectively, and struck out former pars. (6) and (7) which read as follows:

“(6) the number of United States Government-sponsored scholarships for students in developing countries has been exceeded as much as twelve times in a given year by the number of scholarships offered by Soviet-bloc governments to students in developing countries,

and this disparity entails the serious long-run cost of having so many of the potential future leaders of the developing world educated in Soviet-bloc countries;

“(7) from 1972 through 1982 the Soviet Union and Eastern European governments collectively increased their education exchange programs to Latin America and the Caribbean by 205 percent while those of the United States declined by 52 percent;”.

#### § 4703. Scholarship program authority

##### (a) In general

The President, acting through the United States Information Agency, shall provide scholarships (including partial assistance) for undergraduate study at United States institutions of higher education by citizens and nationals of developing countries who have completed their secondary education and who would not otherwise have an opportunity to study in the United States due to financial limitations.

##### (b) Form of scholarship; forgiveness of loan repayment

To encourage students to use their training in their countries of origin, each scholarship pursuant to this section shall be in the form of a loan with all repayment to be forgiven upon the student's prompt return to his or her country of origin for a period which is at least one year longer than the period spent studying in the United States. If the student is granted asylum in the United States pursuant to section 1158 of title 8 or is admitted to the United States as a refugee pursuant to section 1157 of title 8, half of the repayment shall be forgiven.

##### (c) Consultation

Before allocating any of the funds made available to carry out this chapter, the President shall consult with United States institutions of higher education, educational exchange organizations, United States missions in developing countries, and the governments of participating countries on how to implement the guidelines specified in section 4704 of this title.

##### (d) “Institution of higher education” defined

For purposes of this chapter, the term “institution of higher education” has the same meaning as given to such term by section 1141(a) of title 20.

(Pub. L. 99-93, title VI, §603, Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 440.)

#### § 4704. Guidelines

The scholarship program under this chapter shall be carried out in accordance with the following guidelines:

(1) Consistent with section 2460(b)<sup>1</sup> of this title, all programs created pursuant to this chapter shall be nonpolitical and balanced, and shall be administered in keeping with the highest standards of academic integrity.

(2) United States missions shall design ways to identify promising students who are in secondary educational institutions, or who have completed their secondary education, for study in the United States. In carrying out this paragraph, the United States mission in a

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

country shall consult with Peace Corps volunteers and staff assigned to that country and with private and voluntary organizations with a proven record of providing development assistance to developing countries.

(3) United States missions shall develop and strictly implement specific economic need criteria. Scholarships under this chapter may only be provided to students who meet the economic need criteria.

(4) The program shall utilize educational institutions in the United States and in developing countries to help participants in the programs acquire necessary skills in English and other appropriate education training.

(5) Each participant from a developing country shall be selected on the basis of academic and leadership potential and the economic, political, and social development needs of such country. Such needs shall be determined by each United States mission in consultation with the government of the respective country. Scholarship opportunities shall emphasize fields that are critical to the development of the participant's country, including agriculture, civil engineering, communications, social science, education, public and business administration, health, nutrition, environmental studies, population and family planning, and energy.

(6) The program shall be flexible in order to take advantage of different training and educational opportunities offered by universities, postsecondary vocational training schools, and community colleges in the United States.

(7) The program shall be flexible with respect to the number of years of undergraduate education financed but in no case shall students be brought to the United States for a period less than one year.

(8) Adequate allowance shall be made in the scholarship for the purchase of books and related educational material relevant to the program of study.

(9) Further allowance shall be made to provide adequate opportunities for professional, academic, and cultural enrichment for scholarship recipients.

(10) The program shall, to the maximum extent practicable, offer equal opportunities for both male and female students to study in the United States.

(11) The United States Information Agency shall recommend to each student, who receives a scholarship under this chapter for study at a college or university, that the student enroll in a course on the classics of American political thought or which otherwise emphasizes the ideas, principles, and documents upon which the United States was founded.

(Pub. L. 99-93, title VI, §604, Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 440.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 2460(b) of this title, referred to in par. (1), was redesignated section 2460(c) of this title by Pub. L. 101-246, title II, §204(a)(2)(A), Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 50.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4703, 4706, 4708, 4710 of this title.

### § 4705. Authority to enter into agreements

The President may enter into agreements with foreign governments in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter. Such agreements may provide for the creation or continuation of binational or multinational educational and cultural foundations and commissions for the purposes of administering programs under this chapter.

(Pub. L. 99-93, title VI, §605, Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 441.)

### § 4706. Policy regarding other international educational programs

#### (a) AID-funded programs

The Congress urges the administrator of the agency primarily responsible for administering part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.], in implementing programs authorized under that part, to increase assistance for undergraduate scholarships for students of limited financial means from developing countries to study in the United States at United States institutions of higher education. To the maximum extent practicable, such scholarship assistance shall be furnished in accordance with the guidelines contained in section 4704 of this title.

#### (b) USIA-funded postgraduate study in the United States

The Congress urges the Director of the United States Information Agency to expand opportunities for students of limited financial means from developing countries to receive financial assistance for postgraduate study at United States institutions of higher education.

#### (c) Study by Americans in developing countries

The Congress urges the President to take such steps as are necessary to expand the opportunities for Americans from all economic classes to study in developing countries.

(Pub. L. 99-93, title VI, §606, Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 442.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended. Part I of the Act is classified generally to subchapter I (§2151 et seq.) of chapter 32 of this title. For provisions deeming references to subchapter I to include parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of chapter 32, see section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-228, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

### § 4707. Establishment and maintenance of counseling services

#### (a) Counseling services abroad

For the purpose of assisting foreign students in choosing fields of study, selecting appropriate institutions of higher education, and preparing for their stay in the United States, the President may make suitable arrangements for counseling and orientation services abroad.

#### (b) Counseling services in the United States

For the purposes of assisting foreign students in making the best use of their opportunities

while attending United States institutions of higher education, and assisting such students in directing their talents and initiative into channels which will make them more effective leaders upon return to their native lands, the President may make suitable arrangements (by contract or otherwise) for the establishment and maintenance of adequate counseling services at United States institutions of higher education which are attended by foreign students.

(Pub. L. 99-93, title VI, §607, Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 442.)

**§ 4708. J. William Fulbright Foreign Scholarship Board**

The J. William Fulbright Foreign Scholarship Board shall advise and assist the President in the discharge of the scholarship program carried out pursuant to this chapter, in accordance with the guidelines set forth in section 4704 of this title. The President may provide for such additional secretarial and staff assistance for the Board as may be required to carry out this chapter.

(Pub. L. 99-93, title VI, §608, Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 442; Pub. L. 101-246, title II, §204(c), Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 50.)

AMENDMENTS

1990—Pub. L. 101-246 substituted “J. William Fulbright Foreign Scholarship Board” for “Board of Foreign Scholarships” in section catchline and in text.

**§ 4709. General authorities**

**(a) Public and private sector contributions**

The public and private sectors in the United States and in the developing countries shall be encouraged to contribute to the costs of the scholarship program financed under this chapter.

**(b) Utilization of returning program participants**

The President shall seek to engage the public and private sectors of developing countries in programs to maximize the utilization of recipients of scholarships under this chapter upon their return to their own countries.

**(c) Promotion abroad of scholarship program**

The President may provide for publicity and promotion abroad of the scholarship program provided for in this chapter.

**(d) Increasing United States understanding of developing countries**

The President shall encourage United States institutions of higher education, which are attended by students from developing countries who receive scholarships under this chapter, to provide opportunities for United States citizens attending those institutions to develop their knowledge and understanding of the developing countries, and the languages and cultures of those countries, represented by those foreign students.

**(e) Other activities to promote improved understanding**

Funds allocated by the United States Information Agency, or the agency primarily responsible for carrying out part I of the Foreign As-

sistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.], for scholarships in accordance with this chapter shall be available to enhance the educational training and capabilities of the people of Latin America and the Caribbean and to promote better understanding between the United States and Latin America and the Caribbean through programs of cooperation, study, training, and research. Such funds may be used for program and administrative costs for institutions carrying out such programs.

(Pub. L. 99-93, title VI, §609, Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 442.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (e), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended. Part I of the Act is classified generally to subchapter I (§2151 et seq.) of chapter 32 of this title. For provisions deeming references to subchapter I to include parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of chapter 32, see section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-228, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

**§ 4710. English teaching, textbooks, and other teaching materials**

Wherever adequate facilities or materials are not available to carry out the purposes of paragraph (4) of section 4704 of this title in the participant's country and the President determines that the purposes of this chapter are best served by providing the preliminary training in the participant's country, the President may (by purchase, contract, or other appropriate means) provide the necessary materials and instructors to achieve such purpose.

(Pub. L. 99-93, title VI, §610, Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 443.)

**§ 4711. Repealed. Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 139(13), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 398**

Section, Pub. L. 99-93, title VI, §611, Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 443, required annual report to Congress on activities and expenditures pursuant to this chapter.

**§ 4712. Funding of scholarships for fiscal year 1986 and fiscal year 1987**

**(a) Central American undergraduate scholarship program**

The undergraduate scholarship program financed by the United States Information Agency for students from Central America for fiscal year 1986 and fiscal year 1987 shall be conducted in accordance with this chapter.

**(b) Scholarships for students from other developing countries**

Any funds appropriated to the United States Information Agency for fiscal year 1986 or fiscal year 1987 for any purpose (other than funds appropriated for educational exchange programs under section 2452(a)(1) of this title<sup>1</sup> may be used to carry out this chapter with respect to

<sup>1</sup>So in original. Probably should be followed by a closing parenthesis.

students from developing countries outside Central America.

(Pub. L. 99-93, title VI, §612, Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 443.)

**§ 4713. Latin American exchanges**

Of any funds authorized to be appropriated for activities authorized by this chapter, not less than 25 percent shall be allocated to fund grants and exchanges to Latin America and the Caribbean.

(Pub. L. 99-93, title VI, §613, Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 444.)

**§ 4714. Feasibility study of training programs in sizable Hispanic populations**

No later than December 15, 1985, the Director of the United States Information Agency and the Administrator of the Agency for International Development shall report jointly, to the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives, on the feasibility of greater utilization in those two agencies' scholarship and participant training programs of the United States universities in States bordering Latin American and Caribbean<sup>1</sup> which are located in areas characterized by the presence of sizable Hispanic populations.

(Pub. L. 99-93, title VI, §614, Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 444.)

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

**§ 4715. Compliance with Congressional Budget Act**

Any authority provided by this chapter to enter into contracts shall be effective only—

(1) to the extent that the budget authority for the obligation to make outlays, which is created by the contract, has been provided in advance by an appropriation Act; or

(2) to the extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriation Acts.

(Pub. L. 99-93, title VI, §615, Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 444.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Congressional Budget Act, referred to in section catchline, probably means the Congressional Budget Act of 1974, titles I through IX of Pub. L. 93-344, July 12, 1974, 88 Stat. 297, as amended. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 621 of Title 2, The Congress, and Tables.

**CHAPTER 58—DIPLOMATIC SECURITY**

SUBCHAPTER I—GENERALLY

Sec.  
4801. Findings and purposes.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be "Latin America and the Caribbean".

Sec.  
4802. (a) Findings.  
(b) Purposes.  
Responsibility of Secretary of State.  
(a) Security functions.  
(b) Overseas evacuations.  
(c) Oversight of posts abroad.  
(d) Federal agency.  
4803, 4804. Repealed.  
4805. Cooperation of other Federal agencies.  
(a) Assistance.  
(b) Other agencies.  
(c) Certain lease arrangements.  
4806. Protection of foreign consulates.  
SUBCHAPTER II—PERSONNEL  
4821. Diplomatic Security Service.  
4822. Director of Diplomatic Security Service.  
4823. Special agents.  
SUBCHAPTER III—PERFORMANCE AND ACCOUNTABILITY  
4831. Accountability review.  
4832. Accountability Review Board.  
(a) Membership.  
(b) Facilities, services, supplies, and staff.  
4833. Procedures.  
(a) Evidence.  
(b) Confidentiality.  
(c) Records.  
(d) Status of Boards.  
4834. Findings and recommendations by a Board.  
(a) Findings.  
(b) Program recommendations.  
(c) Personnel recommendations.  
(d) Reports.  
4835. Relation to other proceedings.  
SUBCHAPTER IV—DIPLOMATIC SECURITY PROGRAM  
4851. Authorization.  
(a) Diplomatic security program.  
(b) Notification to authorizing Committees of requests for appropriations.  
(c) Repealed.  
(d) Prohibition on reallocations of authorizations.  
(e) Security requirements of other foreign affairs agencies.  
(f) Insufficiency of funds.  
(g) Allocation of funds for certain security programs.  
(h) Furniture, furnishings, and equipment.  
4852. Diplomatic construction program.  
(a) Preference for United States contractors.  
(b) Exception.  
(c) Definitions.  
(d) American minority contractors.  
(e) American small business contractors.  
(f) Limitation on subcontracting.  
4853. Security requirements for contractors.  
4854. Qualifications of persons hired for diplomatic construction program.  
4855. Cost overruns.  
4856. Efficiency in contracting.  
(a) Bonuses and penalties.  
(b) Surety bonds and guarantees.  
(c) Disqualification of contractors.  
4857. Advisory Panel on Overseas Security.  
4858. Training to improve perimeter security at United States diplomatic missions abroad.  
(a) Training.  
(b) Repealed.  
4859. Protection of public entrances of United States diplomatic missions abroad.  
4860. Reimbursement of Department of the Treasury.



- Sec.  
4861. Inspector General for Department of State.  
 (a) Direction to establish.  
 (b) Duties and responsibilities.  
 (c) Earmark.  
 (d) Limitation on appointment.
4862. Prohibition on use of funds for facilities in Israel, Jerusalem, or West Bank.
4863. Use of cleared personnel to ensure secure maintenance and repair of diplomatic facilities abroad.  
 (a) Policies and regulations.  
 (b) Study and report.
4864. Increased participation of United States contractors in local guard contracts abroad under diplomatic security program.  
 (a) Findings.  
 (b) Objective.  
 (c) Participation of United States contractors in local guard contracts abroad.  
 (d) Definitions.  
 (e) United States minority contractors.  
 (f) United States small business contractors.  
 (g) Limitation of subcontracting.

## SUBCHAPTER I—GENERALLY

## § 4801. Findings and purposes

## (a) Findings

The Congress finds and declares that—

(1) the United States has a crucial stake in the presence of United States Government personnel representing United States interests abroad;

(2) conditions confronting United States Government personnel and missions abroad are fraught with security concerns which will continue for the foreseeable future; and

(3) the resources now available to counter acts of terrorism and protect and secure United States Government personnel and missions abroad, as well as foreign officials and missions in the United States, are inadequate to meet the mounting threat to such personnel and facilities.

## (b) Purposes

The purposes of this chapter are—

(1) to set forth the responsibility of the Secretary of State with respect to the security of diplomatic operations in the United States and abroad;

(2) to maximize coordination by the Department of State with Federal, State, and local agencies and agencies of foreign governments in order to enhance security programs;

(3) to promote strengthened security measures and to provide for the accountability of United States Government personnel with security-related responsibilities;

(4) to set forth the responsibility of the Secretary of State with respect to the safe and efficient evacuation of United States Government personnel, their dependents, and private United States citizens when their lives are endangered by war, civil unrest, or natural disaster; and

(5) to provide authorization of appropriations for the Department of State to carry out its responsibilities in the area of security and counterterrorism, and in particular to finance the acquisition and improvements of United

States Government missions abroad, including real property, buildings, facilities, and communications, information, and security systems.

(Pub. L. 99-399, title I, §102, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 855; Pub. L. 101-246, title I, §115(a), Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 22; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §162(g)(1), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 406.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (b), was in the original “titles I through IV”, meaning titles I through IV of Pub. L. 99-399, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 855, known as the Diplomatic Security Act, which are classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of titles I through IV of Pub. L. 99-399 to the Code, see Short Title note set out below and Tables.

## AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (b)(2) to (6). Pub. L. 103-236 struck out par. (2) and redesignated pars. (3) to (6) as (2) to (5), respectively. Prior to amendment, par. (2) read as follows: “to provide for an Assistant Secretary of State to head the Bureau of Diplomatic Security of the Department of State, and to set forth certain provisions relating to the Diplomatic Security Service of the Department of State;”.

1990—Subsec. (b)(5), (6). Pub. L. 101-246 added par. (5) and redesignated former par. (5) as (6).

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103-236 applicable with respect to officials, offices, and bureaus of Department of State when executive orders, regulations, or departmental directives implementing the amendments by sections 161 and 162 of Pub. L. 103-236 become effective, or 90 days after Apr. 30, 1994, whichever comes earlier, see section 161(b) of Pub. L. 103-236, as amended, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

## SHORT TITLE

Section 1 of Pub. L. 99-399 provided that: “This Act [enacting this chapter and sections 2656e, 2711, 2712, 2780, 3244, and 4901 to 4904 of this title, sections 5569 and 5570 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, sections 1051, 1095, and 2181 to 2185 of Title 10, Armed Forces, section 2331 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, section 1226 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters, sections 559 and 1013 of Title 37, Pay and Allowances of the Uniformed Services, sections 2160b, 2160c, and 2169 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare, and sections 1801 to 1809 of Title 46, Appendix, Shipping, amending sections 300, 2151a, 2349aa-2, 2349aa-4, 2349aa-7, 2502, 2652, 2708, 3929, and 3929a of this title, section 208 of Title 3, The President, sections 5315 and 6325 of Title 5, sections 2 and 11 of the Inspector General Act of 1978, Pub. L. 95-452, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, sections 793, 794, and 3671 of Title 18, and section 2405 of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense, enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 2708 and 4901 of this title, section 5569 of Title 5, sections 133, 1051, 1095, and 2181 of Title 10, section 559 of Title 37, section 2169 of Title 42, and section 1801 of Title 46, Appendix, and amending a provision set out as a note under section 2651 of this title] may be cited as the ‘Omnibus Diplomatic Security and Anti-terrorism Act of 1986.’”

Section 101 of Pub. L. 99-399 provided that: “Titles I through IV of this Act [enacting this chapter and amending sections 300, 2349aa-4, 2652, 3929, and 3929a of this title, section 208 of Title 3, The President, section 5315 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, and sections 2 and 11 of the Inspector General Act of 1978, Pub. L. 95-452, set out in the Appendix to Title 5] may be cited as the ‘Diplomatic Security Act.’”

**§ 4802. Responsibility of Secretary of State****(a) Security functions**

(1) The Secretary of State shall develop and implement (in consultation with the heads of other Federal agencies having personnel or missions abroad where appropriate and within the scope of the resources made available) policies and programs, including funding levels and standards, to provide for the security of United States Government operations of a diplomatic nature and foreign government operations of a diplomatic nature in the United States. Such policies and programs shall include—

(A) protection of all United States Government personnel on official duty abroad (other than those personnel under the command of a United States area military commander) and their accompanying dependents;

(B) establishment and operation of security functions at all United States Government missions abroad (other than facilities or installations subject to the control of a United States area military commander);

(C) establishment and operation of security functions at all Department of State facilities in the United States; and

(D) protection of foreign missions, international organizations, and foreign officials and other foreign persons in the United States, as authorized by law.

(2) Security responsibilities shall include the following:

**(A) Former Office of Security functions**

Functions and responsibilities exercised by the Office of Security, Department of State, before November 11, 1985.

**(B) Security and protective operations**

(i) Establishment and operation of post security and protective functions abroad.

(ii) Development and implementation of communications, computer, and information security.

(iii) Emergency planning.

(iv) Establishment and operation of local guard services abroad.

(v) Supervision of the United States Marine Corps security guard program.

(vi) Liaison with American overseas private sector security interests.

(vii) Protection of foreign missions and international organizations, foreign officials, and diplomatic personnel in the United States, as authorized by law.

(viii) Protection of the Secretary of State and other persons designated by the Secretary of State, as authorized by law.

(ix) Physical protection of Department of State facilities, communications, and computer and information systems in the United States.

(x) Conduct of investigations relating to protection of foreign officials and diplomatic personnel and foreign missions in the United States, suitability for employment, employee security, illegal passport and visa issuance or use, and other investigations, as authorized by law.

(xi) Carrying out the rewards program for information concerning international terrorism authorized by section 2708(a) of this title.

(xii) Performance of other security, investigative, and protective matters as authorized by law.

**(C) Counterterrorism planning and coordination**

Development and coordination of counterterrorism planning, emergency action planning, threat analysis programs, and liaison with other Federal agencies to carry out this paragraph.

**(D) Security technology**

Development and implementation of technical and physical security programs, including security-related construction, radio and personnel security communications, armored vehicles, computer and communications security, and research programs necessary to develop such measures.

**(E) Diplomatic courier service**

Management of the diplomatic courier service.

**(F) Personnel training**

Development of facilities, methods, and materials to develop and upgrade necessary skills in order to carry out this section.

**(G) Foreign government training**

Management and development of anti-terrorism assistance programs to assist foreign government security training which are administered by the Department of State under chapter 8 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2349aa et seq.).

**(b) Overseas evacuations**

The Secretary of State shall develop and implement policies and programs to provide for the safe and efficient evacuation of United States Government personnel, dependents, and private United States citizens when their lives are endangered. Such policies shall include measures to identify high risk areas where evacuation may be necessary and, where appropriate, providing staff to United States Government missions abroad to assist in those evacuations. In carrying out these responsibilities, the Secretary shall—

(1) develop a model contingency plan for evacuation of personnel, dependents, and United States citizens from foreign countries;

(2) develop a mechanism whereby United States citizens can voluntarily request to be placed on a list in order to be contacted in the event of an evacuation, or which, in the event of an evacuation, can maintain information on the location of United States citizens in high risk areas submitted by their relatives;

(3) assess the transportation and communications resources in the area being evacuated and determine the logistic support needed for the evacuation; and

(4) develop a plan for coordinating communications between embassy staff, Department of State personnel, and families of United States citizens abroad regarding the whereabouts of those citizens.

**(c) Oversight of posts abroad**

The Secretary of State shall—

(1) have full responsibility for the coordination of all United States Government personnel assigned to diplomatic or consular posts or other United States missions abroad pursuant to United States Government authorization (except for facilities, installations, or personnel under the command of a United States area military commander)<sup>1</sup>

(2) establish appropriate overseas staffing levels for all such posts or missions for all Federal agencies with activities abroad (except for personnel and activities under the command of a United States area military commander or regional inspector general offices under the jurisdiction of the inspector<sup>2</sup> General, Agency for International Development).

#### (d) Federal agency

As used in this subchapter and subchapter III of this chapter, the term “Federal agency” includes any department or agency of the United States Government.

(Pub. L. 99-399, title I, §103, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 856; Pub. L. 100-202, §101(e) [title II, §201], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-131, 1329-141; Pub. L. 100-461, title II, §201, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2268-10; Pub. L. 101-246, title I, §115(b), Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 22; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §162(g)(2), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 406; Pub. L. 103-415, §1(f)(4)(A)(i), Oct. 25, 1994, 108 Stat. 4300.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (a)(2)(G), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended. Chapter 8 of part II of the Act is classified generally to part VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of chapter 32 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103-415 substituted “operation” for “operations” in par. (2)(B)(i).

Pub. L. 103-236 designated existing provisions as par. (1), redesignated former pars. (1) to (4) as subpars. (A) to (D), respectively, and added par. (2).

1990—Subsecs. (b) to (d). Pub. L. 101-246 added subsec. (b) and redesignated former subsecs. (b) and (c) as (c) and (d), respectively.

1988—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 100-461 inserted “or regional inspector general offices under the jurisdiction of the inspector General, Agency for International Development” after “commander”, and substituted a period for “; and” at end.

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 100-461 struck out par. (3) which read as follows: “establish, notwithstanding any other provision of law, appropriate overseas staffing levels of the Regional Offices of the Inspector General of the Agency for International Development in effective consultation with the Inspector General of the Agency: *Provided*, That the authority of the Secretary of State shall be exercised only by the Secretary and shall not be delegated to a subordinate officer of the Department of State: *Provided further*, That the Inspector General must report to the appropriate committees of both Houses of the Congress within thirty days the denial by the Secretary of State of a request by the Inspector General to increase or reduce an existing position level of a regional office: *Provided further*, That the total number of positions authorized for the Office of the Inspector General in Washington and overseas shall

be determined by the Inspector General within the limitation of the appropriations level provided.”

1987—Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 100-202 added par. (3).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103-236 applicable with respect to officials, offices, and bureaus of Department of State when executive orders, regulations, or departmental directives implementing the amendments by sections 161 and 162 of Pub. L. 103-236 become effective, or 90 days after Apr. 30, 1994, whichever comes earlier, see section 161(b) of Pub. L. 103-236, as amended, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

#### PERSONNEL SECURITY PROGRAM FOR EMBASSIES IN HIGH INTELLIGENCE THREAT COUNTRIES

Pub. L. 100-204, title I, §155, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1353, provided that:

“(a) SPECIAL SECURITY PROGRAM.—The Secretary of State shall develop and implement, within three months after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 22, 1987], a special personnel security program for personnel of the Department of State assigned to United States diplomatic and consular posts in high intelligence threat countries who are responsible for security at those posts and for any individuals performing guard functions at those posts. Such program shall include—

“(1) selection criteria and screening to ensure suitability for assignment to high intelligence threat countries;

“(2) counterintelligence awareness and related training;

“(3) security reporting and command arrangements designed to counter intelligence threats; and

“(4) length of duty criteria and policies regarding rest and recuperative absences.

“(b) REPORT TO CONGRESS.—Not later than 6 months after the date of enactment of this subsection [Dec. 22, 1987], the Secretary of State shall report to the Congress on the special personnel security program required by subsection (a).

“(c) DEFINITION.—As used in subsection (a), the term ‘high intelligence threat country’ means—

“(1) a country listed as a Communist country in section 620(f) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2370(f)]; and

“(2) any other country designated as a high intelligence threat country for purposes of this section by the Secretary of State, the Secretary of Defense, the Director of Central Intelligence, or the Director of the Federal Bureau of Investigation.”

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4805 of this title; title 15 section 4721; title 49 section 44934.

#### §§ 4803, 4804. Repealed. Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 162(g)(3), (4), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 407

Section 4803, Pub. L. 99-399, title I, §104(a), Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 856, established Bureau of Diplomatic Security in Department of State.

Section 4804, Pub. L. 99-399, title I, §105, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 856, set out responsibilities of Assistant Secretary of State for Diplomatic Security.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal applicable with respect to officials, offices, and bureaus of Department of State when executive orders, regulations, or departmental directives implementing the amendments by sections 161 and 162 of Pub. L. 103-236 become effective, or 90 days after Apr. 30, 1994, whichever comes earlier, see section 161(b) of Pub. L. 103-236, as amended, set out as an Effective Date of 1994 Amendment note under section 2651a of this title.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be followed by “; and”.

<sup>2</sup> So in original. Probably should be capitalized.

**§ 4805. Cooperation of other Federal agencies****(a) Assistance**

In order to facilitate fulfillment of the responsibilities described in section 4802(a) of this title, other Federal agencies shall cooperate (through agreements) to the maximum extent possible with the Secretary of State. Such agencies may, with or without reimbursement, provide assistance to the Secretary, perform security inspections, provide logistical support relating to the differing missions and facilities of other Federal agencies, and perform other overseas security functions as may be authorized by the Secretary. Specifically, the Secretary may agree to delegate operational control of overseas security functions of other Federal agencies to the heads of such agencies, subject to the Secretary's authority as set forth in section 4802(a) of this title. The agency head receiving such delegated authority shall be responsible to the Secretary in the exercise of the delegated operational control.

**(b) Other agencies**

Nothing contained in this chapter shall be construed to limit or impair the authority or responsibility of any other Federal, State, or local agency with respect to law enforcement, domestic security operations, or intelligence activities as defined in Executive Order 12333.

**(c) Certain lease arrangements**

The Administrator of General Services is authorized to lease (to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in appropriation Acts) such amount of space in the United States as may be necessary for the Department of State to accommodate the personnel required to carry out this subchapter. The Department of State shall pay for such space at the rate established by the Administrator of General Services for space and related services.

(Pub. L. 99-399, title I, §106, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 857.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

Executive Order 12333, referred to in subsec. (b), is Ex. Ord. No. 12333, Dec. 4, 1981, 46 F.R. 59941, which is set out as a note under section 401 of Title 50, War and National Defense.

**§ 4806. Protection of foreign consulates**

The Secretary of State shall take into account security considerations in making determinations with respect to accreditation of all foreign consular personnel in the United States.

(Pub. L. 99-399, title I, §107, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 858; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §162(g)(5), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 407.)

## AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-236 substituted “The Secretary of State shall take into account security considerations” for “The Chief of Protocol of the Department of State shall consult with the Assistant Secretary of Diplomatic Security”.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103-236 applicable with respect to officials, offices, and bureaus of Department of State when executive orders, regulations, or depart-

mental directives implementing the amendments by sections 161 and 162 of Pub. L. 103-236 become effective, or 90 days after Apr. 30, 1994, whichever comes earlier, see section 161(b) of Pub. L. 103-236, as amended, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

## SUBCHAPTER II—PERSONNEL

## SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in title 5 section 5545a.

**§ 4821. Diplomatic Security Service**

The Secretary of State may establish a Diplomatic Security Service, which shall perform such functions as the Secretary may determine.

(Pub. L. 99-399, title II, §201, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 858; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §162(g)(7), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 407.)

## AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-236 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section read as follows: “There shall be, within the Bureau of Diplomatic Security, the Diplomatic Security Service. The Diplomatic Security Service shall perform such functions as may be assigned to it by the Secretary of State.”

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103-236 applicable with respect to officials, offices, and bureaus of Department of State when executive orders, regulations, or departmental directives implementing the amendments by sections 161 and 162 of Pub. L. 103-236 become effective, or 90 days after Apr. 30, 1994, whichever comes earlier, see section 161(b) of Pub. L. 103-236, as amended, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

**§ 4822. Director of Diplomatic Security Service**

Any such Diplomatic Security Service should be headed by a Director designated by the Secretary of State. The Director should be a career member of the Senior Foreign Service or the Senior Executive Service and should be qualified for the position by virtue of demonstrated ability in the areas of security, law enforcement, management, and public administration. Experience in management or operations abroad should be considered an affirmative factor in the selection of the Director.

(Pub. L. 99-399, title II, §202, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 858; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §162(g)(8), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 407.)

## AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-236 substituted “Any such” for “The” in first sentence, struck out last sentence which read as follows: “The Director shall act under the supervision and direction of the Assistant Secretary for Diplomatic Security.”, and directed the substitution of “should” for “shall” in first, third, and fourth sentences, which was executed to first, second, and third sentences to reflect the probable intent of Congress and the striking out of last sentence which also was the fourth sentence. See H.Rept. 103-126, pp. 168, 169.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103-236 applicable with respect to officials, offices, and bureaus of Department of State when executive orders, regulations, or departmental directives implementing the amendments by sections 161 and 162 of Pub. L. 103-236 become effective, or 90 days after Apr. 30, 1994, whichever comes earlier, see section 161(b) of Pub. L. 103-236, as amended, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

### § 4823. Special agents

Special agent positions shall be filled in accordance with the provisions of the Foreign Service Act of 1980 (22 U.S.C. 3901 et seq.) and title 5. In filling such positions, the Secretary of State shall actively recruit women and members of minority groups. The Secretary of State shall prescribe the qualifications required for assignment or appointment to such positions. The qualifications may include minimum and maximum entry age restrictions and other physical standards and shall incorporate such standards as may be required by law in order to perform security functions, to bear arms, and to exercise investigatory, warrant, arrest, and such other authorities as are available by law to special agents of the Department of State and the Foreign Service.

(Pub. L. 99-399, title II, §203, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 858; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §162(g)(9), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 407.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Service Act of 1980, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 96-465, Oct. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 2071, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 52 (§3901 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3901 of this title and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-236 amended section catchline to read “Special agents” and in text substituted “Special agent positions” for “Positions in the Diplomatic Security Service” and “The qualifications” for “In the case of positions designated for special agents, the qualifications”.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103-236 applicable with respect to officials, offices, and bureaus of Department of State when executive orders, regulations, or departmental directives implementing the amendments by sections 161 and 162 of Pub. L. 103-236 become effective, or 90 days after Apr. 30, 1994, whichever comes earlier, see section 161(b) of Pub. L. 103-236, as amended, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

## SUBCHAPTER III—PERFORMANCE AND ACCOUNTABILITY

### SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in section 4802 of this title.

### § 4831. Accountability review

In any case of serious injury, loss of life, or significant destruction of property at or related to a United States Government mission abroad, and in any case of a serious breach of security involving intelligence activities of a foreign government directed at a United States Government mission abroad, which is covered by the provisions of this chapter (other than a facility or installation subject to the control of a United States area military commander), the Secretary of State shall convene an Accountability Review Board (hereafter in this subchapter referred to as the “Board”). With respect to breaches of security involving intelligence activities, the Secretary of State may delay establishing an Accountability Review Board if, after consultation

with the Chairman of the Select Committee on Intelligence of the Senate and the Chairman of the Permanent Select Committee on Intelligence of the House of Representatives, the Secretary determines that doing so would compromise intelligence sources and methods. The Secretary shall promptly advise the Chairmen of such committees of each determination pursuant to this section to delay the establishment of an Accountability Review Board. The Secretary shall not convene a Board where the Secretary determines that a case clearly involves only causes unrelated to security.

(Pub. L. 99-399, title III, §301, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 859; Pub. L. 100-204, title I, §156(a), Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1354.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “titles I through IV”, meaning titles I through IV of Pub. L. 99-399, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 855, known as the Diplomatic Security Act, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of titles I through IV of Pub. L. 99-399 to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4801 of this title and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1987—Pub. L. 100-204 inserted “, and in any case of a serious breach of security involving intelligence activities of a foreign government directed at a United States Government mission abroad,” after “mission abroad” in first sentence, and inserted after first sentence “With respect to breaches of security involving intelligence activities, the Secretary of State may delay establishing an Accountability Review Board if, after consultation with the Chairman of the Select Committee on Intelligence of the Senate and the Chairman of the Permanent Select Committee on Intelligence of the House of Representatives, the Secretary determines that doing so would compromise intelligence sources and methods. The Secretary shall promptly advise the Chairmen of such committees of each determination pursuant to this section to delay the establishment of an Accountability Review Board.”

### § 4832. Accountability Review Board

#### (a) Membership

A Board shall consist of five members, 4 appointed by the Secretary of State, and 1 appointed by the Director of Central Intelligence. The Secretary of State shall designate the Chairperson of the Board. Members of the Board who are not Federal officers or employees shall each be paid at a rate not to exceed the maximum rate of basic pay payable for level GS-18 of the General Schedule for each day (including travel time) during which they are engaged in the actual performance of duties vested in the Board. Members of the Board who are Federal officers or employees shall receive no additional pay by reason of such membership.

#### (b) Facilities, services, supplies, and staff

##### (1) Supplied by Department of State

A Board shall obtain facilities, services, and supplies through the Department of State. All expenses of the Board, including necessary costs of travel, shall be paid by the Department of State. Travel expenses authorized under this paragraph shall be paid in accordance with subchapter I of chapter 57 of title 5 or other applicable law.

**(2) Detail**

At the request of a Board, employees of the Department of State or other Federal agencies, members of the Foreign Service, or members of the uniformed services may be temporarily assigned, with or without reimbursement, to assist the Board.

**(3) Experts and consultants**

A Board may employ and compensate (in accordance with section 3109 of title 5) such experts and consultants as the Board considers necessary to carry out its functions. Experts and consultants so employed shall be responsible solely to the Board.

(Pub. L. 99-399, title III, §302, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 859.)

REFERENCES IN OTHER LAWS TO GS-16, 17, OR 18 PAY RATES

References in laws to the rates of pay for GS-16, 17, or 18, or to maximum rates of pay under the General Schedule, to be considered references to rates payable under specified sections of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, see section 529 [title I, §101(c)(1)] of Pub. L. 101-509, set out in a note under section 5376 of Title 5.

**§ 4833. Procedures****(a) Evidence****(1) United States Government personnel and contractors**

(A) With respect to any individual described in subparagraph (B), a Board may—

- (i) administer oaths and affirmations;
- (ii) require that depositions be given and interrogatories answered; and
- (iii) require the attendance and presentation of testimony and evidence by such individual.

Failure of any such individual to comply with a request of the Board shall be grounds for disciplinary action by the head of the Federal agency in which such individual is employed or serves, or in the case of a contractor, debarment.

(B) The individuals referred to in subparagraph (A) are—

- (i) employees as defined by section 2105 of title 5 (including members of the Foreign Service);
- (ii) members of the uniformed services as defined by section 101(3) of title 37;
- (iii) employees of instrumentalities of the United States; and
- (iv) individuals employed by any person or entity under contract with agencies or instrumentalities of the United States Government to provide services, equipment, or personnel.

**(2) Other persons**

With respect to a person who is not described in paragraph (1)(B), a Board may administer oaths and affirmations and require that depositions be given and interrogatories answered.

**(3) Subpoenas**

(A) The Board may issue a subpoena for the attendance and testimony of any person (other

than a person described in clause (i), (ii), or (iii) of paragraph (1)(B)) and the production of documentary or other evidence from any such person if the Board finds that such a subpoena is necessary in the interests of justice for the development of relevant evidence.

(B) In the case of contumacy or refusal to obey a subpoena issued under this paragraph, a court of the United States within the jurisdiction of which a person is directed to appear or produce information, or within the jurisdiction of which the person is found, resides, or transacts business, may upon application of the Attorney General, issue to such person an order requiring such person to appear before the Board to give testimony or produce information as required by the subpoena.

(C) Subpoenaed witnesses shall be paid the same fee and mileage allowances which are paid subpoenaed witnesses in the courts of the United States.

**(b) Confidentiality**

A Board shall adopt for administrative proceedings under this subchapter such procedures with respect to confidentiality as may be deemed necessary, including procedures relating to the conduct of closed proceedings or the submission and use of evidence in camera, to ensure in particular the protection of classified information relating to national defense, foreign policy, or intelligence matters. The Director of Central Intelligence shall establish the level of protection required for intelligence information and for information relating to intelligence personnel, including standards for secure storage.

**(c) Records**

Records pertaining to administrative proceedings under this subchapter shall be separated from all other records of the Department of State and shall be maintained under appropriate safeguards to preserve confidentiality and classification of information. Such records shall be prohibited from disclosure to the public until such time as a Board completes its work and is dismissed. The Department of State shall turn over to the Director of Central Intelligence intelligence information and information relating to intelligence personnel which shall then become records of the Central Intelligence Agency. After that time, only such exemptions from disclosure under section 552(b) of title 5 (relating to freedom of information), as apply to other records of the Department of State, and to any information transmitted under section 4834(c) of this title to the head of a Federal agency or instrumentality, shall be available for the remaining records of the Board.

**(d) Status of Boards**

The provisions of the Federal Advisory Committee Act (5 U.S.C. App. 1 et seq.) and section 552b of title 5 (relating to open meetings) shall not apply to any Board.

(Pub. L. 99-399, title III, §303, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 859.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Federal Advisory Committee Act, referred to in subsec. (d), is Pub. L. 92-463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 770, as amended, which is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4834 of this title.

**§ 4834. Findings and recommendations by a Board**

**(a) Findings**

A Board convened in any case shall examine the facts and circumstances surrounding the serious injury, loss of life, or significant destruction of property at or related to a United States Government mission abroad or surrounding the serious breach of security involving intelligence activities of a foreign government directed at a United States Government mission abroad (as the case may be) and shall make written findings determining—

- (1) the extent to which the incident or incidents with respect to which the Board was convened was security related;
- (2) whether the security systems and security procedures at that mission were adequate;
- (3) whether the security systems and security procedures were properly implemented;
- (4) the impact of intelligence and information availability; and
- (5) such other facts and circumstances which may be relevant to the appropriate security management of United States missions abroad.

**(b) Program recommendations**

A Board shall submit its findings (which may be classified to the extent deemed necessary by the Board) to the Secretary of State, together with recommendations as appropriate to improve the security and efficiency of any program or operation which the Board has reviewed.

**(c) Personnel recommendations**

Whenever a Board finds reasonable cause to believe that an individual described in section 4833(a)(1)(B) of this title has breached the duty of that individual, the Board shall—

- (1) notify the individual concerned,
- (2) transmit the finding of reasonable cause, together with all information relevant to such finding, to the head of the appropriate Federal agency or instrumentality, and
- (3) recommend that such agency or instrumentality initiate an appropriate investigatory or disciplinary action.

In determining whether an individual has breached a duty of that individual, the Board shall take into account any standard of conduct, law, rule, regulation, contract, or order which is pertinent to the performance of the duties of that individual.

**(d) Reports**

**(1) Program recommendations**

In any case in which a Board transmits recommendations to the Secretary of State under subsection (b) of this section, the Secretary shall, not later than 90 days after the receipt of such recommendations, submit a report to the Congress on each such recommendation and the action taken with respect to that recommendation.

**(2) Personnel recommendations**

In any case in which a Board transmits a finding of reasonable cause under subsection

(c) of this section, the head of the Federal agency or instrumentality receiving the information shall review the evidence and recommendations and shall, not later than 30 days after the receipt of that finding, transmit to the Congress a report specifying—

(A) the nature of the case and a summary of the evidence transmitted by the Board; and

(B) the decision by the Federal agency or instrumentality to take disciplinary or other appropriate action against that individual or the reasons for deciding not to take disciplinary or other action with respect to that individual.

(Pub. L. 99-399, title III, §304, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 861; Pub. L. 100-204, title I, §156(b), Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1354.)

## AMENDMENTS

1987—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 100-204 inserted “or surrounding the serious breach of security involving intelligence activities of a foreign government directed at a United States Government mission abroad (as the case may be)” after first reference to “mission abroad”.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 4833 of this title.

**§ 4835. Relation to other proceedings**

Nothing in this subchapter shall be construed to create administrative or judicial review remedies or rights of action not otherwise available by law, nor shall any provision of this subchapter be construed to deprive any person of any right or legal defense which would otherwise be available to that person under any law, rule, or regulation.

(Pub. L. 99-399, title III, §305, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 862.)

SUBCHAPTER IV—DIPLOMATIC SECURITY PROGRAM

**§ 4851. Authorization**

**(a) Diplomatic security program**

**(1) In general**

In addition to amounts otherwise available for such purposes, the following amounts are authorized to be appropriated for fiscal years 1986 and 1987, for the Department of State to carry out diplomatic security construction, acquisition, and operations pursuant to the Department of State’s Supplemental Diplomatic Security Program, as justified to the Congress for the respective fiscal year for “Administration of Foreign Affairs”, as follows:

- (A) For “Salaries and Expenses”, \$308,104,000.
- (B) For “Acquisition and Maintenance of Buildings Abroad”, \$857,806,000.
- (C) For “Counterterrorism Research and Development”, \$15,000,000.

**(2) Omitted**

**(3) Repealed. Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §101(c), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 388**

**(4) Allocation of amounts authorized to be appropriated**

Amounts authorized to be appropriated by this subsection, and by the amendment made

by paragraph (2), shall be allocated as provided in the table entitled “Diplomatic Security Program” relating to this section which appears in the Joint Explanatory Statement of the Committee of Conference to accompany H.R. 4151 of the 99th Congress (the Omnibus Diplomatic Security and Antiterrorism Act of 1986).

**(b) Notification to authorizing Committees of requests for appropriations**

In any fiscal year, whenever the Secretary of State submits to the Congress a request for appropriations to carry out the program described in subsection (a) of this section, the Secretary shall notify the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate of such request, together with a justification of each item listed in such request.

**(c) Repealed. Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 122(b), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 392**

**(d) Prohibition on reallocations of authorizations**

Section 2696(d) of this title shall not apply with respect to any amounts authorized to be appropriated under this section.

**(e) Security requirements of other foreign affairs agencies**

Based solely on security requirements and within the total amount of funds available for security, the Secretary of State shall ensure that an equitable level of funding is provided for the security requirements of other foreign affairs agencies.

**(f) Insufficiency of funds**

In the event that sufficient funds are not available in any fiscal year for all of the diplomatic security construction, acquisition, and operations pursuant to the Department of State’s Supplemental Diplomatic Security Program, as justified to the Congress for such fiscal year, the Secretary of State shall report to the Congress the effect that the insufficiency of funds will have with respect to the Department of State and each of the other foreign affairs agencies.

**(g) Allocation of funds for certain security programs**

Of the amount of funds authorized to be appropriated by subsection (a)(1)(A) of this section, \$34,537,000 shall be available to the Secretary of State only for the protection of classified office equipment, the expansion of information systems security, and the hiring of American systems managers and operators for computers at high threat locations.

**(h) Furniture, furnishings, and equipment**

**(1) Use of existing furniture, furnishings, and equipment**

If physically possible, facilities constructed or acquired pursuant to subsection (a) of this section shall be furnished and equipped with the furniture, furnishings, and equipment that were being used in the facilities being replaced, rather than with newly acquired furniture, furnishings, and equipment.

**(2) Omitted**

**(3) Repealed. Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 122(b), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 392**

(Pub. L. 99-399, title IV, § 401, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 862; Pub. L. 100-204, title I, § 101(c), Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1336; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §§ 101(c), 122(b), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 388, 392.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The amendment made by paragraph (2), referred to in subsec. (a)(4), is the amendment made by section 401(a)(2) of Pub. L. 99-399 to section 2349aa-4 of this title.

H.R. 4151 of the 99th Congress (the Omnibus Diplomatic Security and Antiterrorism Act of 1986), referred to in subsec. (a)(4), as enacted into law, is Pub. L. 99-399, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 853. The Joint Explanatory Statement of the Committee of Conference to accompany H.R. 4151 is set forth in H. Rept. No. 99-783, 99th Congress.

CODIFICATION

Section is comprised of section 401 of Pub. L. 99-399. Subsecs. (a)(2) and (h)(2) of section 401 of Pub. L. 99-399 amended sections 2349aa-4 and 300, respectively, of this title.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 103-236, § 101(c), struck out heading and text of par. (3). Text read as follows: “There is authorized to be appropriated for the Department of State for ‘Acquisition and Maintenance of Buildings Abroad’ for each of the fiscal years 1988 through 1990, \$417,962,000 to carry out diplomatic security construction, acquisition, and operations pursuant to the Department of State’s Supplemental Diplomatic Security Program. Authorizations of appropriations under this paragraph shall remain available until the appropriations are made.”

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 103-236, § 122(b), struck out heading and text of subsec. (c). Text read as follows: “Amounts made available for capital projects pursuant to subsection (a) of this section shall be treated as a reprogramming of funds under section 2706 of this title and shall not be available for obligation or expenditure except in compliance with the procedures applicable to such reprogramming.”

Subsec. (h)(3). Pub. L. 103-236, § 122(b), struck out heading and text of par. (3). Text read as follows: “Amounts made available for furniture, furnishings, and equipment pursuant to subsection (a) of this section shall be treated as a reprogramming of funds under section 2706 of this title and shall not be available for obligation or expenditure except in compliance with the procedures applicable to such reprogramming.”

1987—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 100-204 inserted sentence at end providing that authorizations of appropriations under this paragraph remain available until appropriations are made.

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Section 101(c) of Pub. L. 103-236 provided that the amendment made by that section is effective Oct. 1, 1995.

CONSTRUCTION SECURITY CERTIFICATION

Section 160 of Pub. L. 100-204, as amended by Pub. L. 101-246, title I, § 135, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 33, provided that:



“(a) CERTIFICATION.—Before undertaking any new construction or major renovation project in any foreign facility intended for the storage of classified materials or the conduct of classified activities, or approving occupancy of a similar facility for which construction or major renovation began before the effective date of this section [Dec. 22, 1987], the Secretary of State, after consultation with the Director of Central Intelligence, shall certify to the Committee on Foreign Affairs [now Committee on International Relations] of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate that—

“(1) appropriate and adequate steps have been taken to ensure the security of the construction project (including an evaluation of how all security-related factors with respect to such project are being addressed);

“(2) the facility resulting from such project incorporates—

“(A) adequate measures for protecting classified information and national security-related activities; and

“(B) adequate protection for the personnel working in the diplomatic facility; and

“(3) a plan has been put into place for the continued evaluation and maintenance of adequate security at such facility, which plan shall specify the physical security methods and technical countermeasures necessary to ensure secure operations, including any personnel requirements for such purposes.

“(b) AVAILABILITY OF DOCUMENTATION.—All documentation with respect to a certification referred to in subsection (a) and any dissenting views thereto shall be available, in an appropriately classified form, to the Chairman of the Committee on Foreign Affairs [now Committee on International Relations] of the House of Representatives and the Chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate.

“(c) DIRECTOR OF CENTRAL INTELLIGENCE.—The Director of Central Intelligence shall provide to the Secretary of State such assistance with respect to the implementation of this section as the Secretary of State may request.

“(d) DISSENTING VIEWS.—If the Director of Central Intelligence disagrees with the Secretary of State with respect to any project certification made pursuant to subsection (a), the Director shall submit in writing disagreeing views to the Secretary of State.”

#### REPORT TO CONGRESS ON OBLIGATION OF FUNDS

Pub. L. 100-459, title III, §302, Oct. 1, 1988, 102 Stat. 2207, provided that: “The Secretary of State shall report to the appropriate committees of the Congress on the obligation of funds provided for diplomatic security and related expenses every month.”

Similar provisions were contained in the following prior appropriation acts:

Pub. L. 100-202, §101(a) [title III, §302], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329, 1329-23.

Pub. L. 99-500, §101(b) [title III, §302], Oct. 18, 1986, 100 Stat. 1783-39, 1783-60, and Pub. L. 99-591, §101(b) [title III, §302], Oct. 30, 1986, 100 Stat. 3341-39, 3341-60.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 4852, 4854, 4855, 4860 of this title.

### § 4852. Diplomatic construction program

#### (a) Preference for United States contractors

Notwithstanding section 302 of this title, and where adequate competition exists, only United States persons and qualified United States joint venture persons may—

(1) bid on a diplomatic construction or design project which has an estimated total project value exceeding \$10,000,000; and

(2) bid on a diplomatic construction or design project which involves technical security,

unless the project involves low-level technology, as determined by the Secretary of State.

#### (b) Exception

Subsection (a) of this section shall not apply with respect to any diplomatic construction or design project in a foreign country whose statutes prohibit the use of United States contractors on such projects. The exception contained in this subsection shall only become effective with respect to a foreign country 30 days after the Secretary of State certifies to the Committee on Foreign Affairs and the Committee on Appropriations of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations and the Committee on Appropriations of the Senate what specific actions he has taken to urge such foreign country to permit the use of United States contractors on such projects, and what actions he shall take with respect to that country as authorized by title II of the State Department Basic Authorities Act of 1956 (22 U.S.C. 4301 et seq.; commonly referred to as the “Foreign Missions Act”).

#### (c) Definitions

For the purposes of this section—

(1) the term “adequate competition” means with respect to a construction or design project, the presence of two or more qualified bidders submitting responsive bids for that project;

(2) the term “United States person” means a person which—

(A) is incorporated or legally organized under the laws of the United States, including State, the District of Columbia, and local laws;

(B) has its principal place of business in the United States;

(C) has been incorporated or legally organized in the United States—

(i) for more than 5 years before the issuance date of the invitation for bids or request for proposals with respect to a construction project under subsection (a)(1) of this section; and

(ii) for more than 2 years before the issuance date of the invitation for bids or request for proposals with respect to a construction or design project which involves physical or technical security under subsection (a)(2) of this section;

(D) has performed within the United States administrative and technical, professional, or construction services similar in complexity, type of construction, and value to the project being bid;

(E) with respect to a construction project under subsection (a)(1) of this section, has achieved total business volume equal to or greater than the value of the project being bid in 3 years of the 5-year period before the date specified in subparagraph (C)(i);

(F)(i) employs United States citizens in at least 80 percent of its principal management positions in the United States,

(ii) employs United States citizens in more than half of its permanent, full-time positions in the United States, and

(iii) will employ United States citizens in at least 80 percent of the supervisory positions on the foreign buildings office project site; and

(G) has the existing technical and financial resources in the United States to perform the contract; and

(3) the term “qualified United States joint venture person” means a joint venture in which a United States person or persons owns at least 51 percent of the assets of the joint venture.

**(d) American minority contractors**

Not less than 10 percent of the amount appropriated pursuant to section 4851(a) of this title for diplomatic construction or design projects each fiscal year shall be allocated to the extent practicable for contracts with American minority contractors.

**(e) American small business contractors**

Not less than 10 percent of the amount appropriated pursuant to section 4851(a) of this title for diplomatic construction or design projects each fiscal year shall be allocated to the extent practicable for contracts with American small business contractors.

**(f) Limitation on subcontracting**

With respect to a diplomatic construction project, a prime contractor may not subcontract more than 50 percent of the total value of its contract for that project.

(Pub. L. 99-399, title IV, § 402, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 864; Pub. L. 101-246, title I, § 132, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 32; Pub. L. 102-138, title I, § 131, Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 662; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 162(g)(10), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 407.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Title II of the State Department Basic Authorities Act of 1956, referred to in subsec. (b), is title II of act Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 841, as added Aug. 24, 1982, Pub. L. 97-241, title II, § 202(b), 96 Stat. 283, known as the Foreign Missions Act, which is classified principally to chapter 53 (§ 4301 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of title II to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4301 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 103-236 substituted “Secretary of State” for “Assistant Secretary for Diplomatic Security”.

1991—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 102-138, § 131(1), substituted “\$10,000,000” for “\$5,000,000”.

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 102-138, § 131(2), amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) read as follows: “bid on a diplomatic construction or design project which involves physical or technical security, unless the project—

“(A) involves nonsophisticated, low-level technology, as determined by the Assistant Secretary for Diplomatic Security;

“(B) is for the design or construction of a facility that does not process or store classified material; and

“(C) does not exceed a total value of \$500,000.”

1990—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 101-246 amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) read as follows: “bid on a diplomatic construction or design project which involves physical or technical security.”

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Inter-

national Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103-236 applicable with respect to officials, offices, and bureaus of Department of State when executive orders, regulations, or departmental directives implementing the amendments by sections 161 and 162 of Pub. L. 103-236 become effective, or 90 days after Apr. 30, 1994, whichever comes earlier, see section 161(b) of Pub. L. 103-236, as amended, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

CONSTRUCTION OF UNITED STATES EMBASSY IN OTTAWA

Section 125 of Pub. L. 101-246 provided that: “Section 402(a) of the Diplomatic Security Act (22 U.S.C. 4852(a)) shall not apply to the construction or renovation of the United States Embassy in Ottawa, Canada.”

**§ 4853. Security requirements for contractors**

Not later than 90 days after August 27, 1986, the Secretary of State shall issue regulations to—

(1) strengthen the security procedures applicable to contractors and subcontractors involved in any way with any diplomatic construction or design project; and

(2) permit a contractor or subcontractor to have access to any design or blueprint relating to such a project only in accordance with those procedures.

(Pub. L. 99-399, title IV, § 403, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 865.)

**§ 4854. Qualifications of persons hired for diplomatic construction program**

In carrying out the diplomatic construction program referred to in section 4851(a) of this title, the Secretary of State shall employ as professional staff (by appointment, contract, or otherwise) only those persons with a demonstrated specialized background in the fields of construction, construction law, or contract management. In filling such positions, the Secretary shall actively recruit women and members of minority groups.

(Pub. L. 99-399, title IV, § 404, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 865.)

**§ 4855. Cost overruns**

Any amount required to complete any capital project described in the Department of State’s Supplemental Diplomatic Security Program, as justified to the Congress for the respective fiscal year, which is in excess of the amount made available for that project pursuant to section 4851(a)(1) or (3)<sup>1</sup> shall be treated as a reprogramming of funds under section 2706 of this title and shall not be available for obligation or expenditure except in compliance with the procedures applicable to such reprogrammings.

(Pub. L. 99-399, title IV, § 405, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 865.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 4851(a)(3) of this title, referred to in text, was repealed by Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 101(c), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 388.

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

**§ 4856. Efficiency in contracting****(a) Bonuses and penalties**

The Director of the Office of Foreign Buildings shall provide for a contract system of bonuses and penalties for the diplomatic construction program funded pursuant to the authorizations of appropriations provided in this subchapter. Not later than 3 months after August 27, 1986, the Director shall submit a report to the Congress on the implementation of this section.

**(b) Surety bonds and guarantees**

The Director of the Office of Foreign Buildings shall require each person awarded a contract for work under the diplomatic construction program to post a surety bond or guarantee, in such amount as the Director may determine, to assure performance under such contract.

**(c) Disqualification of contractors**

No person doing business with Libya may be eligible for any contract awarded pursuant to this Act.

(Pub. L. 99-399, title IV, § 406, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 866.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original “this title”, meaning title IV of Pub. L. 99-399, which enacted this subchapter and amended sections 300, 2349aa-4, 3929, and 3929a of this title, section 208 of Title 3, The President, section 5315 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, and sections 2 and 11 of the Inspector General Act of 1978, Pub. L. 95-452, set out in the Appendix to Title 5. For complete classification of title IV of Pub. L. 99-399 to the Code, see Tables.

This Act, referred to in subsec. (c), is Pub. L. 99-399, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 853, known as the Omnibus Diplomatic Security and Antiterrorism Act of 1986. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4801 of this title and Tables.

## AUTHORITY OF SECRETARY OF STATE

Except as otherwise provided, Secretary of State to have and exercise any authority vested by law in any official or office of Department of State and references to such officials or offices deemed to refer to Secretary of State or Department of State, as appropriate, see section 2651a of this title and section 161(d) of Pub. L. 103-236, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

**§ 4857. Advisory Panel on Overseas Security**

Not later than 90 days after August 27, 1986, the Secretary of State shall submit a report to the Congress on the implementation of the 91 recommendations contained in the final report of the Advisory Panel on Overseas Security. If any such recommendation has been rejected, the Secretary shall provide the reasons why that recommendation was rejected.

(Pub. L. 99-399, title IV, § 407, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 866.)

**§ 4858. Training to improve perimeter security at United States diplomatic missions abroad****(a) Training**

It is the sense of Congress that the President should use the authority under chapter 8 of title II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22

U.S.C. 2349aa et seq.] (relating to antiterrorism assistance) to improve perimeter security of United States diplomatic missions abroad.

**(b) Repealed. Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 139(20), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 398; Pub. L. 103-415, § 1(c), Oct. 25, 1994, 108 Stat. 4299**

(Pub. L. 99-399, title IV, § 408, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 866; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, § 139(20), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 398; Pub. L. 103-415, § 1(c), Oct. 25, 1994, 108 Stat. 4299.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended. Chapter 8 of title II of that Act probably means chapter 8 of part II of that Act, which is classified generally to part VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of chapter 32 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

## AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 103-236, as amended by Pub. L. 103-415, struck out heading and text of subsec. (b). Text read as follows: “Not later than October 1 of each year, the President shall submit a report to the Congress on the progress and problems of improving perimeter security of United States diplomatic missions abroad.”

**§ 4859. Protection of public entrances of United States diplomatic missions abroad**

The Secretary of State shall install and maintain a walk-through metal detector or other advanced screening system at public entrances of each United States diplomatic mission abroad.

(Pub. L. 99-399, title IV, § 409, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 866.)

**§ 4860. Reimbursement of Department of the Treasury**

The Secretary of State shall reimburse the appropriate appropriations account of the Department of the Treasury out of funds appropriated pursuant to section 4851(a)(1) of this title for the actual costs incurred by the United States Secret Service, as agreed to by the Secretary of the Treasury, for providing protection for the spouses of foreign heads of state during fiscal years 1986 and 1987.

(Pub. L. 99-399, title IV, § 411, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 867.)

**§ 4861. Inspector General for Department of State****(a) Direction to establish**

The Congress directs the Secretary of State to proceed immediately to establish an Office of Inspector General of the Department of State not later than October 1, 1986. Not later than January 31, 1987, the Secretary of State shall submit a report to the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives on the progress in establishing that office. Such report shall include an accounting of the obligation of funds for fiscal year 1987 for that office.

**(b) Duties and responsibilities**

The Inspector General of the Department of State (as established by the amendment made

by section 150(a) of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1986 and 1987) is authorized to perform all duties and responsibilities, and to exercise the authorities, stated in section 3929 of this title and in the Inspector General Act of 1978.

**(c) Earmark**

Of the amounts made available for fiscal year 1987 for salaries and expenses under the heading "Administration of Foreign Affairs", not less than \$6,500,000 shall be used for the sole purpose of establishing and maintaining the Office of Inspector General of the Department of State.

**(d) Limitation on appointment**

No career member of the Foreign Service, as defined by section 3903 of this title, may be appointed Inspector General of the Department of State.

(Pub. L. 99-399, title IV, § 413, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 867; Pub. L. 100-204, title I, § 134, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1344.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The amendment made by section 150(a) of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1986 and 1987, referred to in subsec. (b), is the amendment made by section 150(a) of Pub. L. 99-93, title I, Aug. 16, 1985, 99 Stat. 427, to sections 2 and 11 of the Inspector General Act of 1978. See note below.

The Inspector General Act of 1978, referred to in subsec. (b), is Pub. L. 95-452, Oct. 12, 1978, 92 Stat. 1101, as amended, which is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

CODIFICATION

Section is comprised of section 413 of Pub. L. 99-399, as amended. Subsec. (e), formerly subsec. (a)(5), of section 413 amended section 5315 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees. A former subsec. (a)(6) of section 413, which amended section 3929 of this title, was repealed by Pub. L. 99-529, title IV, § 405, Oct. 24, 1986, 100 Stat. 3020. Another subsec. (c) of section 413 amended section 3929a of this title.

AMENDMENTS

1987—Pub. L. 100-204 struck out former subsec. (a) designation and heading "Inspector General of Department of State", redesignated former pars. (1) to (5) as subsecs. (a) to (e), respectively, and struck out former subsec. (b) which related to establishment of the Office of Policy and Program Review. See Codification note above.

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

**§ 4862. Prohibition on use of funds for facilities in Israel, Jerusalem, or West Bank**

None of the funds authorized to be appropriated by this Act may be obligated or expended for site acquisition, development, or construction of any facility in Israel, Jerusalem, or the West Bank.

(Pub. L. 99-399, title IV, § 414, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 868.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 99-399, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 853, known as the Omnibus Diplomatic

Security and Antiterrorism Act of 1986. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4801 of this title and Tables.

**§ 4863. Use of cleared personnel to ensure secure maintenance and repair of diplomatic facilities abroad**

**(a) Policies and regulations**

The Secretary of State shall develop and implement policies and regulations to provide for the use of persons who have been granted an appropriate United States security clearance to ensure that the security of areas intended for the storage of classified materials or the conduct of classified activities in a United States diplomatic mission or consular post abroad is not compromised in the performance of maintenance and repair services in those areas.

**(b) Study and report**

The Secretary of State shall conduct a study of the feasibility and necessity of requiring that, in the case of certain United States diplomatic facilities abroad, no contractor shall be hired to perform maintenance or repair services in an area intended for the storage of classified materials or the conduct of classified activities unless such contractor has been granted an appropriate United States security clearance. Such study shall include, but is not limited to, United States facilities located in Cairo, New Delhi, Riyadh, and Tokyo. Not later than 180 days after February 16, 1990, the Secretary of State shall report the results of such study to the Chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives.

(Pub. L. 99-399, title IV, § 415, as added Pub. L. 101-246, title I, § 133(a), Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 32.)

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

**§ 4864. Increased participation of United States contractors in local guard contracts abroad under diplomatic security program**

**(a) Findings**

The Congress makes the following findings:

(1) State Department policy concerning the advertising of security contracts at Foreign Service buildings has been inconsistent over the years. In many cases, diplomatic and consular posts abroad have been given the responsibility to determine the manner in which the private sector was notified concerning an invitation for bids or a request for proposals with respect to a local guard contract. Some United States foreign missions have only chosen to advertise locally the availability of a local security guard contract abroad.

(2) As a result, many United States security firms that provide local guard services abroad have been unaware that local guard contracts were available for bidding abroad and such firms have been disadvantaged as a result.

(3) Undoubtedly, United States security firms would be interested in bidding on more

local guard contracts abroad if such firms knew of the opportunity to bid on such contracts.

**(b) Objective**

It is the objective of this section to improve the efficiency of the local guard programs abroad administered by the Bureau of Diplomatic Security of the Department of State and to ensure maximum competition for local guard contracts abroad concerning Foreign Service buildings.

**(c) Participation of United States contractors in local guard contracts abroad**

With respect to local guard contracts for a Foreign Service building which exceed \$250,000 and are entered into after February 16, 1990, the Secretary of State shall—

(1) establish procedures to ensure that all solicitations for such contracts are adequately advertised in the Commerce and Business Daily;

(2) absent compelling reasons, award such contracts through the competitive process;

(3) in evaluating and scoring proposals for such contracts, award not less than 60 percent of the total points on the basis of technical factors and subfactors;

(4) in countries where contract denomination and/or payment in local currencies constitutes a barrier to competition by United States firms—

(A) allow solicitations to be bid in United States dollars; and

(B) allow contracts awarded to United States firms to be paid in United States dollars;

(5) ensure that United States diplomatic and consular posts assist United States firms in obtaining local licenses and permits;

(6) establish procedures to ensure that appropriate measures are taken by diplomatic and consular post management to assure that United States persons and qualified United States joint venture persons are not disadvantaged during the solicitation and bid evaluation process; and

(7) give preference to United States persons and qualified United States joint venture persons where such persons are price competitive to the non-United States persons bidding on the contract, are properly licensed by the host government, and are otherwise qualified to carry out all the terms of the contract.

**(d) Definitions**

For the purposes of this section—

(1) the term “United States person” means a person which—

(A) is incorporated or legally organized under the laws of the United States, including the laws of any State, locality, or the District of Columbia;

(B) has its principal place of business in the United States;

(C) has been incorporated or legally organized in the United States for more than 2 years before the issuance date of the invitation for bids or request for proposals with respect to the contract under subsection (c) of this section;

(D) has performed within the United States or overseas security services similar in complexity to the contract being bid;

(E) with respect to the contract under subsection (c) of this section, has achieved a total business volume equal to or greater than the value of the project being bid in 3 years of the 5-year period before the date specified in subparagraph (C);

(F)(i) employs United States citizens in at least 80 percent of its principal management positions in the United States; and

(ii) employs United States citizens in more than half of its permanent, full-time positions in the United States; and

(G) has the existing technical and financial resources in the United States to perform the contract;

(2) the term “qualified United States joint venture person” means a joint venture in which a United States person or persons owns at least 51 percent of the assets of the joint venture;

(3) the term “Foreign Service building” means any building or grounds of the United States which is in a foreign country and is under the jurisdiction and control of the Secretary of State, including residences of United States personnel assigned overseas under the authority of the Ambassador; and

(4) the term “barrier to local competition” means—

(A) conditions of extreme currency volatility;

(B) restrictions on repatriation of profits;

(C) multiple exchange rates which significantly disadvantage United States firms;

(D) government restrictions inhibiting the free convertibility of foreign exchange; or

(E) conditions of extreme local political instability.

**(e) United States minority contractors**

Not less than 10 percent of the amount of funds obligated for local guard contracts for Foreign Service buildings subject to subsection (c) of this section shall be allocated to the extent practicable for contracts with United States minority small business contractors.

**(f) United States small business contractors**

Not less than 10 percent of the amount of funds obligated for local guard contracts for Foreign Service buildings subject to subsection (c) of this section shall be allocated to the extent practicable for contracts with United States small business contractors.

**(g) Limitation of subcontracting**

With respect to local guard contracts subject to subsection (c) of this section, a prime contractor may not subcontract more than 50 percent of the total value of its contract for that project.

(Pub. L. 101-246, title I, §136, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 33; Pub. L. 103-236, title I, §141, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 401.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1990 and 1991, and not

as part of the Diplomatic Security Act which comprise this chapter.

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 103-236, §141(1), added pars. (2) to (5), redesignated former pars. (2) and (3) as (6) and (7), respectively, and in par. (6) struck out “due to their distance from the post” after “evaluation process”.

Subsec. (d)(1)(D). Pub. L. 103-236, §141(2)(A), substituted “or” for “and”.

Subsec. (d)(4). Pub. L. 103-236, §141(2)(B)-(D), added par. (4).

#### AUTHORITY OF SECRETARY OF STATE

Except as otherwise provided, Secretary of State to have and exercise any authority vested by law in any official or office of Department of State and references to such officials or offices deemed to refer to Secretary of State or Department of State, as appropriate, see section 2651a of this title and section 161(d) of Pub. L. 103-236, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

### CHAPTER 59—FASCELL FELLOWSHIP PROGRAM

- Sec.
4901. Fellowship program for temporary service at United States missions abroad.
- (a) Establishment.
  - (b) Designation of fellowships.
  - (c) Purpose of fellowships.
  - (d) Individuals who may receive a fellowship.
  - (e) Women and members of minority groups.
4902. Fellowship Board.
- (a) Establishment and function.
  - (b) Membership.
  - (c) Meetings.
  - (d) Compensation and per diem.
4903. Fellowships.
- (a) Number.
  - (b) Remuneration and period.
  - (c) Training.
  - (d) Housing and transportation.
  - (e) Effective date.
4904. Secretary of State.
- (a) Determinations.
  - (b) Authorities.
  - (c) Funding.

#### § 4901. Fellowship program for temporary service at United States missions abroad

##### (a) Establishment

There is hereby established a fellowship program pursuant to which the Secretary of State will provide fellowships to United States citizens while they serve, for a period of between one and two years, in positions which would otherwise be held by foreign national employees at United States diplomatic or consular missions abroad.

##### (b) Designation of fellowships

Fellowships under this chapter shall be known as “Fascell Fellowships”.

##### (c) Purpose of fellowships

Fellowships under this chapter shall be provided in order to allow the recipient (hereafter in this chapter referred to as a “Fellow”) to serve on a short-term basis at a United States diplomatic or consular mission abroad in order to obtain first hand exposure to that country, including (as appropriate) independent study in that country’s area studies or languages.

##### (d) Individuals who may receive a fellowship

To receive a fellowship under this chapter, an individual must be a United States citizen who is an undergraduate or graduate student, a teacher, scholar, or other academic, or an other individual, who has expertise in international affairs, foreign languages, or career and professional experience or interest in international affairs, and who has a working knowledge of the principal language of the country in which he or she would serve.

##### (e) Women and members of minority groups

In carrying out this section, the Secretary of State shall actively recruit women and members of minority groups.

(Pub. L. 99-399, title X, §1002, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 893; Pub. L. 101-454, §9(b), Oct. 24, 1990, 104 Stat. 1065; Pub. L. 103-199, title III, §303, Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2323.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1993—Pub. L. 103-199 substituted “abroad” for “in the Soviet Union and Eastern Europe” in section catchline.

1990—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 101-454, §9(b)(1), substituted “which would otherwise be” for “formerly” and “abroad” for “in the Soviet Union or Eastern European countries”.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 101-454, §9(b)(2), substituted “abroad” for “in the Soviet Union or an Eastern European country” and “that country’s” for “Soviet or Eastern European”.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 101-454, §9(b)(3), substituted “international affairs, foreign languages, or career and professional experience or interest in international affairs,” for “Soviet or Eastern European area studies or languages”.

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Section 9(a) of Pub. L. 101-454 provided that: “This section [amending this section and sections 4902 and 4904 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 4902 of this title] may be cited as the ‘Fascell Fellowship Amendments Act of 1990.’”

#### SHORT TITLE

Section 1001 of title X of Pub. L. 99-399 provided that: “This title [enacting this chapter] may be cited as the ‘Fascell Fellowship Act.’”

#### § 4902. Fellowship Board

##### (a) Establishment and function

There is hereby established a Fellowship Board (hereafter in this chapter referred to as the “Board”), which shall select the individuals who will be eligible to serve as Fellows.

##### (b) Membership

The Board shall consist of 9 members as follows:

(1) A senior official of the Department of State (who shall be the chair of the Board), designated by the Secretary of State.

(2) An officer or employee of the Department of Commerce, designated by the Secretary of Commerce.

(3) An officer or employee of the United States Information Agency, designated by the Director of that Agency.

(4) Six academic specialists in international affairs or foreign languages, appointed by the Secretary of State (in consultation with the chairman and ranking minority member of the

Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and the chairman and ranking minority<sup>1</sup> of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate).

**(c) Meetings**

The Board shall meet at least once each year to select the individuals who will be eligible to serve as Fellows.

**(d) Compensation and per diem**

Members of the Board shall receive no compensation on account of their service on the Board, but while away from their homes or regular places of business in the performance of their duties under this chapter, may be allowed travel expenses, including per diem in lieu of subsistence, in the same manner as persons employed intermittently in the Government service are allowed expenses under section 5703 of title 5.

(Pub. L. 99-399, title X, §1003, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 893; Pub. L. 101-454, §9(c)(1), Oct. 24, 1990, 104 Stat. 1066.)

AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 101-454 substituted “international affairs or foreign languages,” for “Soviet or Eastern European area studies or languages.”

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Section 9(c)(2) of Pub. L. 101-454 provided that: “The amendment made by paragraph (1) [amending this section] shall apply only to appointments to the Fascell Fellowship Board after the date of the enactment of this section [Oct. 24, 1990] and shall not affect the service of members of such board on the date of the enactment of this section.”

**§ 4903. Fellowships**

**(a) Number**

Up to 100 fellowships may be provided under this chapter each year. Not less than 15 shall be provided during fiscal year 1993.

**(b) Remuneration and period**

The Board shall determine, taking into consideration the position in which each Fellow will serve and his or her experience and expertise—

- (1) the amount of remuneration the Fellow will receive for his or her service under this chapter, and
- (2) the period of the fellowship, which shall be between one and two years.

**(c) Training**

Each Fellow may be given appropriate training at the Foreign Service Institute or other appropriate institution.

**(d) Housing and transportation**

The Secretary of State shall, pursuant to regulations—

- (1) provide housing for each Fellow while the Fellow is serving abroad, including (where appropriate) housing for family members; and

(2) pay the costs and expenses incurred by each Fellow in traveling between the United States and the country in which the Fellow serves, including (where appropriate) travel for family members.

**(e) Effective date**

Subsection (d) of this section shall not take effect until October 1, 1986.

(Pub. L. 99-399, title X, §1004, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 894; Pub. L. 102-511, title VIII, §804(a), Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3353.)

AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 102-511 inserted at end “Not less than 15 shall be provided during fiscal year 1993.”

AUTHORITY OF SECRETARY OF STATE

Except as otherwise provided, Secretary of State to have and exercise any authority vested by law in any official or office of Department of State and references to such officials or offices deemed to refer to Secretary of State or Department of State, as appropriate, see section 2651a of this title and section 161(d) of Pub. L. 103-236, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

FUNDING

Section 804(b) of Pub. L. 102-511 provided that: “In addition to the funds made available pursuant to section 1005(c) of that Act [22 U.S.C. 4904(c)], funds authorized to be appropriated by chapter 11 of part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2295 et seq.] may be used in carrying out the amendment made by subsection (a) [amending this section] with respect to missions in the independent states of the former Soviet Union.”

**§ 4904. Secretary of State**

**(a) Determinations**

The Secretary of State shall determine which of the individuals selected by the Board will serve at each United States diplomatic or consular mission abroad and the position in which each will serve.

**(b) Authorities**

Fellows may be employed—

- (1) under a temporary appointment in the civil service;
- (2) under a limited appointment in the Foreign Service; or
- (3) by contract under the provisions of section 2669(c) of this title.

**(c) Funding**

Funds appropriated to the Department of State for “Salaries and Expenses” shall be used for the expenses incurred in carrying out this chapter.

(Pub. L. 99-399, title X, §1005, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 894; Pub. L. 100-204, title I, §187, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1368; Pub. L. 101-454, §9(d), Oct. 24, 1990, 104 Stat. 1066.)

AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 101-454 substituted “abroad” for “in the Soviet Union or Eastern Europe”.

1987—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 100-204 amended subsec. (b) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (b) read as follows: “Such service shall be in accordance with the relevant authorities of the Foreign Service Act of 1980, the State Department Basic Authorities Act of 1956, and title 5.”

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be followed by “member”.

**CHAPTER 60—ANTI-APARTHEID PROGRAM****§ 5001. Repealed. Pub. L. 103-149, § 4(a)(2), Nov. 23, 1993, 107 Stat. 1505**

Section, Pub. L. 99-440, § 3, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1087; Pub. L. 99-631, § 1(a)(2), Nov. 7, 1986, 100 Stat. 3515; Pub. L. 103-149, § 4(a)(3)(A), Nov. 23, 1993, 107 Stat. 1505, defined terms for purposes of this chapter.

**EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL**

Repeal effective June 8, 1994, date on which President certified to Congress that interim government, elected on nonracial basis through free and fair elections, had taken office in South Africa, see section 4(a)(2) of Pub. L. 103-149, set out in a Repeal of Chapter; South African Democratic Transition Support note below.

**SHORT TITLE**

Section 1 of Pub. L. 99-440 provided that Pub. L. 99-440, which enacted this chapter and sections 2151o and 2346d of this title, amended sections 2151c and 2151n of this title and section 635 of Title 12, Banks and Banking, and enacted provisions set out as a note under section 2346d of this title, could be cited as the "Comprehensive Anti-Apartheid Act of 1986", prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103-149, § 4(a)(2), Nov. 23, 1993, 107 Stat. 1505.

**REPEAL OF CHAPTER; SOUTH AFRICAN DEMOCRATIC TRANSITION SUPPORT**

Pub. L. 103-149, Nov. 23, 1993, 107 Stat. 1503, provided that:

**"SECTION 1. SHORT TITLE.**

"This Act may be cited as the 'South African Democratic Transition Support Act of 1993'.

**"SEC. 2. FINDINGS.**

"The Congress makes the following findings:

"(1) After decades of apartheid, South Africa has entered a new era which presents a historic opportunity for a transition to a peaceful, stable, and democratic future.

"(2) The United States policy of economic sanctions toward the apartheid government of South Africa, as expressed in the Comprehensive Anti-Apartheid Act of 1986 [22 U.S.C. 5001 et seq.], helped bring about reforms in that system of government and has facilitated the establishment of a nonracial government.

"(3) Through broad and open negotiations, the parties in South Africa have reached a landmark agreement on the future of their country. This agreement includes the establishment of a Transitional Executive Council and the setting of a date for nonracial elections.

"(4) The international community has a vital interest in supporting the transition from apartheid toward nonracial democracy.

"(5) The success of the transition in South Africa is crucial to the stability and economic development of the southern African region.

"(6) Nelson Mandela of the African National Congress and other representative leaders in South Africa have declared that the time has come when the international community should lift all economic sanctions against South Africa.

"(7) In light of recent developments, the continuation of these economic sanctions is detrimental to persons disadvantaged by apartheid.

"(8) Those calling for the lifting of economic sanctions against South Africa have made clear that they do not seek the immediate termination of the United Nations-sponsored special sanctions relating to arms transfers, nuclear cooperation, and exports of oil. The Ad Hoc Committee on Southern Africa of the Organization of African Unity, for example, has urged that the oil embargo established pursuant to a 1986 General Assembly resolution be lifted after the establishment and commencement of the work of the Transitional Executive Council.

**"SEC. 3. UNITED STATES POLICY.**

"It is the sense of the Congress that—

"(1) the United States should—

"(A) strongly support the Transitional Executive Council in South Africa,

"(B) encourage rapid progress toward the establishment of a nonracial democratic government in South Africa, and

"(C) support a consolidation of democracy in South Africa through democratic elections for an interim government and a new nonracial constitution;

"(2) the United States should continue to provide assistance to support the transition to a nonracial democracy in South Africa, and should urge international financial institutions and other donors to also provide such assistance;

"(3) to the maximum extent practicable, the United States should consult closely with international financial institutions, other donors, and South African entities on a coordinated strategy to support the transition to a nonracial democracy in South Africa;

"(4) in order to provide ownership and managerial opportunities, professional advancement, training, and employment for disadvantaged South Africans and to respond to the historical inequities created under apartheid, the United States should—

"(A) promote the expansion of private enterprise and free markets in South Africa,

"(B) encourage the South African private sector to take a special responsibility and interest in providing such opportunities, advancement, training, and employment for disadvantaged South Africans,

"(C) encourage United States private sector investment in and trade with South Africa,

"(D) urge United States investors to develop a working partnership with representative organs of South African civil society, particularly churches and trade unions, in promoting responsible codes of corporate conduct and other measures to address the historical inequities created under apartheid;

"(5) the United States should urge the Government of South Africa to liberalize its trade and investment policies to facilitate the expansion of the economy, and to shift resources to meet the needs of disadvantaged South Africans;

"(6) the United States should promote cooperation between South Africa and other countries in the region to foster regional stability and economic growth; and

"(7) the United States should demonstrate its support for an expedited transition to, and should adopt a long term policy beneficial to the establishment and perpetuation of, a nonracial democracy in South Africa.

**"SEC. 4. REPEAL OF APARTHEID SANCTIONS LAWS AND OTHER MEASURES DIRECTED AT SOUTH AFRICA.**

"(a) COMPREHENSIVE ANTI-APARTHEID ACT.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—All provisions of the Comprehensive Anti-Apartheid Act of 1986 (22 U.S.C. 5001 and following) are repealed as of the date of enactment of this Act [Nov. 23, 1993], except for the sections specified in paragraph (2).

"(2) EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL OF CODE OF CONDUCT REQUIREMENTS.—Sections 1, 3, 203(a), 203(b), 205, 207, 208, 601, 603, and 604 of the Comprehensive Anti-Apartheid Act of 1986 [22 U.S.C. 5001 note, 5001, 5031(a), (b), 5032, 5034, 5035, 5111, 5113, 5114] are repealed as of the date on which the President certifies to the Congress that an interim government, elected on a nonracial basis through free and fair elections, has taken office in South Africa. [A Presidential message to Congress dated June 8, 1994, set out in 30 Weekly Compilation of Presidential Documents 1258, June 13, 1994, certified that interim government, elected on nonracial basis through free and fair elections, had taken office in South Africa.]

"(3) CONFORMING AMENDMENTS.—(A) Section 3 of the Comprehensive Anti-Apartheid Act of 1986 [22 U.S.C.



5001] is amended by striking paragraphs (2) through (4) and paragraphs (7) through (9), by inserting ‘and’ at the end of paragraph (5), and by striking ‘; and’ at the end of paragraph (6) and inserting a period.

“(B) The following provisions of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 that were enacted by the Comprehensive Anti-Apartheid Act of 1986 are repealed: subsections (e)(2), (f), and (g) of section 116 (22 U.S.C. 2151n); section 117 (22 U.S.C. 2151o), relating to assistance for disadvantaged South Africans; and section 535 (22 U.S.C. 2346d). Section 116(e)(1) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 is amended by striking ‘(1)’.

“(b) OTHER PROVISIONS.—The following provisions are repealed or amended as follows:

“(1) Subsections (c) and (d) of section 802 of the International Security and Development Cooperation Act of 1985 (99 Stat. 261) is repealed.

“(2) Section 211 of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1986 and 1987 (99 Stat. 432) is repealed, and section 1(b) of that Act is amended by striking the item in the table of contents relating to section 211.

“(3) Sections 1223 and 1224 of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1988 and 1989 (101 Stat. 1415) is repealed, and section 1(b) of that Act is amended by striking the items in the table of contents relating to sections 1223 and 1224.

“(4) Section 362 of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1992 and 1993 (105 Stat. 716) is repealed, and section 2 of that Act is amended by striking the item in the table of contents relating to section 362.

“(5) Section 2(b)(9) of the Export-Import Bank Act of 1945 (12 U.S.C. 635(b)(9)) is repealed.

“(6) Section 43 of the Bretton Woods Agreements Act (22 U.S.C. 286aa) is amended by repealing subsection (b) and by striking ‘(a)’.

“(7) Section 330 of H.R. 5205 of the 99th Congress (Department of Transportation and Related Agencies Appropriations Act, 1987) (22 U.S.C. 5056a) as incorporated by reference in section 101(l) of Public Law 99-500 and Public Law 99-591, and made effective as if enacted into law by section 106 of Public Law 100-202, is repealed.

“(8)(A) Section 901(j)(2)(C) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (26 U.S.C. 901(j)(2)(C)) is repealed.

“(B) Subparagraph (A) shall not be construed as affecting any of the transitional rules contained in Revenue Ruling 92-62 which apply by reason of the termination of the period for which section 901(j) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 was applicable to South Africa.

“(9) The table in section 502(b) of the Trade Act of 1974 (19 U.S.C. 2462(b)) is amended by striking ‘Republic of South Africa’.

“(C) SANCTIONS MEASURES ADOPTED BY STATE OR LOCAL GOVERNMENTS OR PRIVATE ENTITIES.—

“(1) POLICY REGARDING RESCISSION.—The Congress urges all State or local governments and all private entities in the United States that have adopted any restriction on economic interactions with South Africa, or any policy discouraging such interaction, to rescind such restriction or policy.

“(2) REPEAL OF PROVISIONS RELATING TO WITHHOLDING FEDERAL FUNDS.—Effective October 1, 1995, the following provisions are repealed:

“(A) The undesignated paragraph entitled ‘STATE AND LOCAL ANTI-APARTHEID POLICIES’ in chapter IX of the Dire Emergency Supplemental Appropriations and Transfers, Urgent Supplementals, and Correcting Enrollment Errors Act of 1989 (22 U.S.C. 5117).

“(B) Section 210 of the Urgent Supplemental Appropriations Act, 1986 (100 Stat. 749).

“(d) CONTINUATION OF UN SPECIAL SANCTIONS.—It is the sense of the Congress that the United States should continue to respect United Nations Security Council resolutions on South Africa, including the resolution providing for a mandatory embargo on arms sales to South Africa and the resolutions relating to the import

of arms, restricting exports to the South African military and police, and urging states to refrain from nuclear cooperation that would contribute to the manufacture and development by South Africa of nuclear weapons or nuclear devices.

“SEC. 5. UNITED STATES ASSISTANCE FOR THE TRANSITION TO A NONRACIAL DEMOCRACY.

“(a) IN GENERAL.—The President is authorized and encouraged to provide assistance under chapter 10 of part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2293 et seq.] (relating to the Development Fund for Africa) or chapter 4 of part II of that Act [22 U.S.C. 2346 et seq.] (relating to the Economic Support Fund) to support the transition to nonracial democracy in South Africa. Such assistance shall—

“(1) focus on building the capacity of disadvantaged South Africans to take their rightful place in the political, social, and economic systems of their country;

“(2) give priority to working with and through South African nongovernmental organizations whose leadership and staff represent the majority population and which have the support of the disadvantaged communities being served by such organizations;

“(3) in the case of education programs—

“(A) be used to increase the capacity of South African institutions to better serve the needs of individuals disadvantaged by apartheid;

“(B) emphasize education within South Africa to the extent that assistance takes the form of scholarships for disadvantaged South African students; and

“(C) fund nontraditional training activities;

“(4) support activities to prepare South Africa for elections, including voter and civic education programs, political party building, and technical electoral assistance;

“(5) support activities and entities, such as the Peace Accord structures, which are working to end the violence in South Africa; and

“(6) support activities to promote human rights, democratization, and a civil society.

“(b) GOVERNMENT OF SOUTH AFRICA.—

“(1) LIMITATION ON ASSISTANCE.—Except as provided in paragraph (2), assistance provided in accordance with this section may not be made available to the Government of South Africa, or organizations financed and substantially controlled by that government, unless the President certifies to the Congress that an interim government that was elected on a nonracial basis through free and fair elections has taken office in South Africa.

“(2) EXCEPTIONS.—Notwithstanding paragraph (1), assistance may be provided for—

“(A) the Transitional Executive Council;

“(B) South African higher education institutions, particularly those traditionally disadvantaged by apartheid policies; and

“(C) any other organization, entity, or activity if the President determines that the assistance would promote the transition to nonracial democracy in South Africa.

Any determination under subparagraph (C) should be based on consultations with South African individuals and organizations representative of the majority population in South Africa (particularly consultations through the Transitional Executive Council) and consultations with the appropriate congressional committees.

“(c) INELIGIBLE ORGANIZATIONS.—

“(1) ACTS OF VIOLENCE.—An organization that has engaged in armed struggle or other acts of violence shall not be eligible for assistance provided in accordance with this section unless that organization is committed to a suspension of violence in the context of progress toward nonracial democracy.

“(2) VIEWS INCONSISTENT WITH DEMOCRACY AND FREE ENTERPRISE.—Assistance provided in accordance with

this section may not be made available to any organization that has espoused views inconsistent with democracy and free enterprise unless such organization is engaged actively and positively in the process of transition to a nonracial democracy and such assistance would advance the United States objective of promoting democracy and free enterprise in South Africa.

“SEC. 6. UNITED STATES INVESTMENT AND TRADE.

“(a) TAX TREATY.—The President should begin immediately to negotiate a tax treaty with South Africa to facilitate United States investment in that country.

“(b) OPIC.—The President should immediately initiate negotiations with the Government of South Africa for an agreement authorizing the Overseas Private Investment Corporation to carry out programs with respect to South Africa in order to expand United States investment in that country.

“(c) TRADE AND DEVELOPMENT AGENCY.—In carrying out section 661 of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2421], the Director of the Trade and Development Agency should provide additional funds for activities related to projects in South Africa.

“(d) EXPORT-IMPORT BANK.—The Export-Import Bank of the United States should expand its activities in connection with exports to South Africa.

“(e) PROMOTING DISADVANTAGED ENTERPRISES.—

“(1) INVESTMENT AND TRADE PROGRAMS.—Each of the agencies referred to in subsections (b) through (d) should take active steps to encourage the use of its programs to promote business enterprises in South Africa that are majority-owned by South Africans disadvantaged by apartheid.

“(2) UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT PROCUREMENT.—To the extent not inconsistent with the obligations of the United States under any international agreement, the Secretary of State and the head of any other department or agency of the United States carrying out activities in South Africa shall, to the maximum extent practicable, in procuring goods or services, make affirmative efforts to assist business enterprises having more than 50 percent beneficial ownership by South African blacks or other nonwhite South Africans, notwithstanding any law relating to the making or performance of, or the expenditure of funds for, United States Government contracts.

“SEC. 7. INFORMATION AND EDUCATIONAL EXCHANGE PROGRAMS.

“The Director of the United States Information Agency should use the authorities of the United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948 [22 U.S.C. 1431 et seq.] to promote the development of a nonracial democracy in South Africa.

“SEC. 8. OTHER COOPERATIVE AGREEMENTS.

“In addition to the actions specified in the preceding sections of this Act, the President should seek to conclude cooperative agreements with South Africa on a range of issues, including cultural and scientific issues.

“SEC. 9. INTERNATIONAL FINANCIAL INSTITUTIONS AND OTHER DONORS.

“(a) IN GENERAL.—The President should encourage other donors, particularly Japan and the European Community countries, to expand their activities in support of the transition to nonracial democracy in South Africa.

“(b) INTERNATIONAL FINANCIAL INSTITUTIONS.—The Secretary of the Treasury should instruct the United States Executive Director of each relevant international financial institution, including the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development and the International Development Association, to urge that institution to initiate or expand its lending and other financial assistance activities to South Africa in order to support the transition to nonracial democracy in South Africa.

“(c) TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE.—The Secretary of the Treasury should instruct the United States Executive

Director of each relevant international financial institution to urge that institution to fund programs to initiate or expand technical assistance to South Africa for the purpose of training the people of South Africa in government management techniques.

“SEC. 10. CONSULTATION WITH SOUTH AFRICANS.

“In carrying out this Act, the President should consult closely with South African individuals and organizations representative of the majority population in South Africa (particularly consultations through the Transitional Executive Council) and others committed to abolishing the remnants of apartheid.”

NON-FEDERAL RESTRICTIONS AND REGULATIONS

House Resolution 549, Ninety-ninth Congress, Sept. 12, 1986, provided: “That in passing the bill, H.R. 4868, as amended by the Senate [enacted into law as Pub. L. 99-440], it is not the intent of the House of Representatives that the bill limit, preempt, or affect, in any fashion, the authority of any State or local government or the District of Columbia or of any Commonwealth, territory, or possession of the United States or political subdivision thereof to restrict or otherwise regulate any financial or commercial activity respecting South Africa.”

**§ 5002. Repealed. Pub. L. 103-149, § 4(a)(1), Nov. 23, 1993, 107 Stat. 1504**

Section, Pub. L. 99-440, § 4, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1089, related to purpose of this chapter.

SUBCHAPTER I—POLICY OF UNITED STATES WITH RESPECT TO ENDING APARTHEID

**§§ 5011 to 5020. Repealed. Pub. L. 103-149, § 4(a)(1), Nov. 23, 1993, 107 Stat. 1504**

Section 5011, Pub. L. 99-440, title I, § 101, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1089, stated United States policy toward Government of South Africa.

Section 5012, Pub. L. 99-440, title I, § 102, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1090; Pub. L. 99-631, § 1(a)(3), Nov. 7, 1986, 100 Stat. 3515, stated United States policy toward African National Congress, Pan African Congress, and their affiliates.

Section 5013, Pub. L. 99-440, title I, § 103, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1090; Pub. L. 99-631, § 1(a)(4), Nov. 7, 1986, 100 Stat. 3515, stated United States policy toward victims of apartheid.

Section 5014, Pub. L. 99-440, title I, § 104, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1091; Pub. L. 99-631, § 1(a)(5), Nov. 7, 1986, 100 Stat. 3515, stated United States policy toward other countries in Southern Africa.

Section 5015, Pub. L. 99-440, title I, § 105, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1091; Pub. L. 99-631, § 1(a)(6), Nov. 7, 1986, 100 Stat. 3516, stated sense of Congress as to Presidential discussions with “frontline” African states.

Section 5016, Pub. L. 99-440, title I, § 106, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1092; Pub. L. 99-631, § 1(a)(7), Nov. 7, 1986, 100 Stat. 3516, stated United States policy toward negotiated settlement.

Section 5017, Pub. L. 99-440, title I, § 107, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1093, stated congressional findings and policy toward international cooperation on measures to end apartheid.

Section 5018, Pub. L. 99-440, title I, § 108, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1093, stated sense of Congress relating to “necklacing”.

Section 5019, Pub. L. 99-440, title I, § 109, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1093; Pub. L. 99-631, § 1(a)(8), Nov. 7, 1986, 100 Stat. 3516, stated sense of Congress that United States Ambassador should meet with Nelson Mandela.

Section 5020, Pub. L. 99-440, title I, § 110, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1093, stated congressional findings and sense of Congress relating to recruitment and training of black South Africans by United States employers.

SUBCHAPTER II—MEASURES TO ASSIST  
VICTIMS OF APARTHEID

**§§ 5031, 5032. Repealed. Pub. L. 103-149, § 4(a)(2),  
Nov. 23, 1993, 107 Stat. 1505**

Section 5031, Pub. L. 99-440, title II, § 203, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1095; Pub. L. 103-149, § 4(a)(1), Nov. 23, 1993, 107 Stat. 1504, related to expansion of participation of black and other nonwhite South Africans in economy of South Africa.

Section 5032, Pub. L. 99-440, title II, § 205, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1096, related to labor practices of United States Government in South Africa.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective June 8, 1994, date on which President certified to Congress that interim government, elected on nonracial basis through free and fair elections, had taken office in South Africa, see section 4(a)(2) of Pub. L. 103-149, set out in a Repeal of Chapter; South African Democratic Transition Support note under section 5001 of this title.

**§ 5033. Repealed. Pub. L. 103-149, § 4(a)(1), Nov.  
23, 1993, 107 Stat. 1504**

Section, Pub. L. 99-440, title II, § 206, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1097, directed Secretary of State to provide housing assistance to employees of the United States who are victims of apartheid.

**§§ 5034, 5035. Repealed. Pub. L. 103-149, § 4(a)(2),  
Nov. 23, 1993, 107 Stat. 1505**

Section 5034, Pub. L. 99-440, title II, § 207, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1097; Pub. L. 99-631, § 1(a)(9), Nov. 7, 1986, 100 Stat. 3516, related to employment practices of United States nationals in South Africa.

Section 5035, Pub. L. 99-440, title II, § 208, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1097; Pub. L. 99-631, § 1(a)(10), Nov. 7, 1986, 100 Stat. 3516, related to Code of Conduct for Americans in South Africa.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective June 8, 1994, date on which President certified to Congress that interim government, elected on nonracial basis through free and fair elections, had taken office in South Africa, see section 4(a)(2) of Pub. L. 103-149, set out in a Repeal of Chapter; South African Democratic Transition Support note under section 5001 of this title.

**§§ 5036 to 5039. Repealed. Pub. L. 103-149,  
§ 4(a)(1), Nov. 23, 1993, 107 Stat. 1504**

Section 5036, Pub. L. 99-440, title II, § 209, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1098, prohibited assistance under this chapter to certain groups.

Section 5037, Pub. L. 99-440, title II, § 210, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1098, authorized President to use Emergency Reserve for African Famine Relief to meet food shortages in southern Africa.

Section 5038, Pub. L. 99-440, title II, § 211, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1098, prohibited assistance under this chapter, chapter 32 of this title, or any other law to any person or group engaging in "necklacing".

Section 5039, Pub. L. 99-440, title II, § 212, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1098; Pub. L. 99-631, § 1(a)(11), Nov. 7, 1986, 100 Stat. 3516, related to participation of South Africa in agricultural export credit and promotion programs conducted by Secretary of Agriculture.

SUBCHAPTER III—MEASURES BY  
UNITED STATES TO UNDERMINE  
APARTHEID

**§§ 5051 to 5072. Repealed. Pub. L. 103-149,  
§ 4(a)(1), (b)(7), Nov. 23, 1993, 107 Stat. 1504,  
1505**

Section 5051, Pub. L. 99-440, title III, § 301, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1099, prohibited importation of krugerrands.

Section 5052, Pub. L. 99-440, title III, § 302, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1099, prohibited importation of military articles.

Section 5053, Pub. L. 99-440, title III, § 303, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1099; Pub. L. 99-631, § 1(a)(12), Nov. 7, 1986, 100 Stat. 3516, prohibited importation of products from parastatal organizations.

Section 5054, Pub. L. 99-440, title III, § 304, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1099, prohibited computer exports to South Africa.

Section 5055, Pub. L. 99-440, title III, § 305, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1100, prohibited loans to Government of South Africa.

Section 5056, Pub. L. 99-440, title III, § 306, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1100; Pub. L. 99-631, § 1(a)(13), Nov. 7, 1986, 100 Stat. 3516, prohibited air transportation with South Africa.

Section 5056a, Pub. L. 99-500, § 101(l), Oct. 18, 1986, 100 Stat. 1783-308, and Pub. L. 99-591, § 101(l), Oct. 30, 1986, 100 Stat. 3341-308; Pub. L. 100-202, § 106, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329-433, related to prohibition on landing rights of South African aircraft.

Section 5057, Pub. L. 99-440, title III, § 307, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1101, prohibited nuclear trade with South Africa.

Section 5058, Pub. L. 99-440, title III, § 308, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1102, related to bank accounts of Government of South Africa.

Section 5059, Pub. L. 99-440, title III, § 309, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1102; Pub. L. 99-631, § 1(a)(14), Nov. 7, 1986, 100 Stat. 3516; Pub. L. 100-418, title I, § 1214(n), Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1158, prohibited importation of uranium, coal, and textiles from South Africa.

Section 5060, Pub. L. 99-440, title III, § 310, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1102, prohibited new investment in South Africa.

Section 5061, Pub. L. 99-440, title III, § 311, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1103, provided for termination of this subchapter and sections 5091(c) and 5094(b) of this title, if the Government of South Africa met five specific conditions. See Ex. Ord. No. 12769, July 10, 1991, 56 F.R. 31855, formerly set out below.

Section 5062, Pub. L. 99-440, title III, § 312, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1103; Pub. L. 99-631, § 1(a)(15), Nov. 7, 1986, 100 Stat. 3517, stated United States policy toward violence and terrorism in South Africa.

Section 5063, Pub. L. 99-440, title III, § 313, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1104; Pub. L. 99-631, § 1(a)(16), Nov. 7, 1986, 100 Stat. 3517, provided for termination of tax treaty and protocol.

Section 5064, Pub. L. 99-440, title III, § 314, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1104; Pub. L. 99-631, § 1(a)(17), Nov. 7, 1986, 100 Stat. 3517, prohibited procurement by United States Government from South Africa.

Section 5065, Pub. L. 99-440, title III, § 315, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1104, prohibited promotion of United States tourism in South Africa.

Section 5066, Pub. L. 99-440, title III, § 316, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1104, prohibited United States Government assistance to, investment in, or subsidy for trade with, South Africa.

Section 5067, Pub. L. 99-440, title III, § 317, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1104; Pub. L. 99-631, § 1(a)(18), Nov. 7, 1986, 100 Stat. 3517, prohibited exportation of items on United States Munitions List to South Africa.

Section 5068, Pub. L. 99-440, title III, § 318, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1105; Pub. L. 99-631, § 1(a)(19), Nov. 7, 1986, 100 Stat. 3517, provided notification procedures for proposed export of items on United States Munitions List.

Section 5069, Pub. L. 99-440, title III, § 319, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1105; Pub. L. 99-631, § 1(a)(20), Nov. 7, 1986, 100 Stat. 3517, prohibited importation of South African agricultural products and food.

Section 5070, Pub. L. 99-440, title III, § 320, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1105; Pub. L. 99-631, § 1(a)(21), Nov. 7, 1986, 100 Stat. 3517, prohibited importation of iron and steel from South Africa.

Section 5071, Pub. L. 99-440, title III, § 321, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1105; Pub. L. 99-631, § 1(a)(22), Nov. 7, 1986, 100 Stat. 3518, prohibited exportation of crude oil and petroleum products to South Africa.

Section 5072, Pub. L. 99-440, title III, § 322, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1105; Pub. L. 99-631, § 1(a)(23), Nov. 7, 1986, 100 Stat. 3518, prohibited cooperation with armed forces of South Africa.

**§ 5072a. Repealed. Pub. L. 103-359, title III, § 304, Oct. 14, 1994, 108 Stat. 3426**

Section, Pub. L. 99-569, title I, § 107, Oct. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 3191, restricted intelligence agencies from cooperating with Government of South Africa.

**§ 5073. Repealed. Pub. L. 103-149, § 4(a)(1), Nov. 23, 1993, 107 Stat. 1504**

Section, Pub. L. 99-440, title III, § 323(a), Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1105, prohibited importation of South African sugar products.

SUBCHAPTER IV—MULTILATERAL MEASURES TO UNDERMINE APARTHEID

**§§ 5081 to 5083. Repealed. Pub. L. 103-149, § 4(a)(1), Nov. 23, 1993, 107 Stat. 1504**

Section 5081, Pub. L. 99-440, title IV, § 401, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1106; Pub. L. 99-631, § 1(a)(24), Nov. 7, 1986, 100 Stat. 3518, related to negotiating authority of President to reach agreements on multilateral measures to undermine apartheid.

Section 5082, Pub. L. 99-440, title IV, § 402, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1107; Pub. L. 99-631, § 1(a)(25), Nov. 7, 1986, 100 Stat. 3518, authorized President to limit imports from foreign countries benefitting from sanctions or prohibitions imposed under this chapter.

Section 5083, Pub. L. 99-440, title IV, § 403, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1107, related to private right of action.

SUBCHAPTER V—FUTURE POLICY TOWARD SOUTH AFRICA

**§§ 5091 to 5099. Repealed. Pub. L. 103-149, § 4(a)(1), Nov. 23, 1993, 107 Stat. 1504**

Section 5091, Pub. L. 99-440, title V, § 501, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1108; Pub. L. 99-631, § 1(a)(26), Nov. 7, 1986, 100 Stat. 3518, related to imposition of additional measures against Government of South Africa.

Section 5092, Pub. L. 99-440, title V, § 502, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1109; Pub. L. 99-631, § 1(a)(27), Nov. 7, 1986, 100 Stat. 3518, related to lifting of prohibitions contained in this chapter.

Section 5093, Pub. L. 99-440, title V, § 503, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1109, related to study of health conditions in “homelands” areas of South Africa.

Section 5094, Pub. L. 99-440, title V, § 504, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1109, related to report on imports of strategic and critical materials from South Africa.

Section 5095, Pub. L. 99-440, title V, § 505, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1109; Pub. L. 99-631, § 1(a)(28), Nov. 7, 1986, 100 Stat. 3518, related to study and report on economy of southern Africa.

Section 5096, Pub. L. 99-440, title V, § 506, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1110, related to report on relations between other industrialized democracies and South Africa.

Section 5097, Pub. L. 99-440, title V, § 507, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1110, related to study and report on deposit accounts of South African nationals in United States banks.

Section 5098, Pub. L. 99-440, title V, § 508, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1110, related to study and report on violation of international embargo on sale and export of military articles to South Africa.

Section 5099, Pub. L. 99-440, title V, § 509, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1111, related to report on Communist activities in South Africa.

**§ 5100. Repealed. Pub. L. 102-182, § 4, Dec. 4, 1991, 105 Stat. 1234**

Section, Pub. L. 99-440, title V, § 510, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1111; Pub. L. 99-631, § 1(a)(29), Nov. 7, 1986, 100 Stat. 3518, prohibited importation of Soviet gold coins.

**§ 5101. Repealed. Pub. L. 103-149, § 4(a)(1), Nov. 23, 1993, 107 Stat. 1504**

Section, Pub. L. 99-440, title V, § 512, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1112; Pub. L. 99-631, § 1(a)(30), Nov. 7, 1986, 100 Stat. 3519, related to report on African National Congress.

SUBCHAPTER VI—ENFORCEMENT AND ADMINISTRATIVE PROVISIONS

**§ 5111. Repealed. Pub. L. 103-149, § 4(a)(2), Nov. 23, 1993, 107 Stat. 1505**

Section, Pub. L. 99-440, title VI, § 601, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1112, authorized President to issue rules, regulations, licenses, and orders as necessary to carry out this chapter.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective June 8, 1994, date on which President certified to Congress that interim government, elected on nonracial basis through free and fair elections, had taken office in South Africa, see section 4(a)(2) of Pub. L. 103-149, set out in a Repeal of Chapter; South African Democratic Transition Support note under section 5001 of this title.

**§ 5112. Repealed. Pub. L. 103-149, § 4(a)(1), Nov. 23, 1993, 107 Stat. 1504**

Section, Pub. L. 99-440, title VI, § 602, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1112; Pub. L. 99-631, § 1(a)(31), Nov. 7, 1986, 100 Stat. 3519, related to congressional priority procedures for consideration of certain joint resolutions under this chapter.

**§§ 5113, 5114. Repealed. Pub. L. 103-149, § 4(a)(2), Nov. 23, 1993, 107 Stat. 1505**

Section 5113, Pub. L. 99-440, title VI, § 603, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1114, related to enforcement of this chapter and penalties for noncompliance.

Section 5114, Pub. L. 99-440, title VI, § 604, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1115, provided that this chapter applied to persons undertaking transactions or activities with intent to evade this chapter.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective June 8, 1994, date on which President certified to Congress that interim government, elected on nonracial basis through free and fair elections, had taken office in South Africa, see section 4(a)(2) of Pub. L. 103-149, set out in a Repeal of Chapter; South African Democratic Transition Support note under section 5001 of this title.

**§§ 5115, 5116. Repealed. Pub. L. 103-149, § 4(a)(1), Nov. 23, 1993, 107 Stat. 1504**

Section 5115, Pub. L. 99-440, title VI, § 605, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1115, related to construction of this chapter.

Section 5116, Pub. L. 99-440, title VI, § 606, Oct. 2, 1986, 100 Stat. 1115, related to penalties for application of State and local anti-apartheid laws to certain State and local government contracts.

**§ 5117. Repealed. Pub. L. 103-149, § 4(c)(2)(A), Nov. 23, 1993, 107 Stat. 1506**

Section, Pub. L. 101-45, title I, June 30, 1989, 103 Stat. 110, related to State and local anti-apartheid policies.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Oct. 1, 1995, see section §4(c)(2)(A) of Pub. L. 103-149, set out in a Repeal of Chapter; South African Democratic Transition Support note under section 5001 of this title.

**CHAPTER 61—ANTI-TERRORISM—PLO**

|       |   |
|-------|---|
| Sec.  |   |
| 5201. | Findings; determinations.<br>(a) Findings.<br>(b) Determinations. |
| 5202. | Prohibitions regarding PLO.                                       |
| 5203. | Enforcement.<br>(a) Attorney General.<br>(b) Relief.              |

**§ 5201. Findings; determinations**

**(a) Findings**

The Congress finds that—

(1) Middle East terrorism accounted for 60 percent of total international terrorism in 1985;

(2) the Palestine Liberation Organization (hereafter in this chapter referred to as the “PLO”) was directly responsible for the murder of an American citizen on the Achille Lauro cruise liner in 1985, and a member of the PLO’s Executive Committee is under indictment in the United States for the murder of that American citizen;

(3) the head of the PLO has been implicated in the murder of a United States Ambassador overseas;

(4) the PLO and its constituent groups have taken credit for, and been implicated in, the murders of dozens of American citizens abroad;

(5) the PLO covenant specifically states that “armed struggle is the only way to liberate Palestine, thus it is an overall strategy, not merely a tactical phase”;

(6) the PLO rededicated itself to the “continuing struggle in all its armed forms” at the Palestine National Council meeting in April 1987; and

(7) the Attorney General has stated that “various elements of the Palestine Liberation Organization and its allies and affiliates are in the thick of international terror”.

**(b) Determinations**

Therefore, the Congress determines that the PLO and its affiliates are a terrorist organization and a threat to the interests of the United States, its allies, and to international law and should not benefit from operating in the United States.

(Pub. L. 100-204, title X, §1002, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1406.)

EFFECTIVE DATE AND TERMINATION

Section 1005 of title X of Pub. L. 100-204 provided that:

“(a) EFFECTIVE DATE.—Provisions of this title [enacting this chapter] shall take effect 90 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 22, 1987].

“(b) TERMINATION.—The provisions of this title shall cease to have effect if the President certifies in writing to the President pro tempore of the Senate and the Speaker of the House that the Palestine Liberation Organization, its agents, or constituent groups thereof no longer practice or support terrorist actions anywhere in the world.”

SHORT TITLE

Section 1001 of title X of Pub. L. 100-204 provided that: “This title [enacting this chapter] may be cited as the ‘Anti-Terrorism Act of 1987.’”

**§ 5202. Prohibitions regarding PLO**

It shall be unlawful, if the purpose be to further the interests of the Palestine Liberation Organization or any of its constituent groups, any successor to any of those, or any agents thereof, on or after the effective date of this chapter—

(1) to receive anything of value except informational material from the PLO or any of its constituent groups, any successor thereto, or any agents thereof;

(2) to expend funds from the PLO or any of its constituent groups, any successor thereto, or any agents thereof; or

(3) notwithstanding any provision of law to the contrary, to establish or maintain an office, headquarters, premises, or other facilities or establishments within the jurisdiction of the United States at the behest or direction of, or with funds provided by the Palestine Liberation Organization or any of its constituent groups, any successor to any of those, or any agents thereof.

(Pub. L. 100-204, title X, §1003, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1407.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

For the effective date of this chapter, referred to in text, as being 90 days after Dec. 22, 1987, see section 1005 of Pub. L. 100-204, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5201 of this title.

**§ 5203. Enforcement**

**(a) Attorney General**

The Attorney General shall take the necessary steps and institute the necessary legal action to effectuate the policies and provisions of this chapter.

**(b) Relief**

Any district court of the United States for a district in which a violation of this chapter occurs shall have authority, upon petition of relief by the Attorney General, to grant injunctive and such other equitable relief as it shall deem necessary to enforce the provisions of this chapter.

(Pub. L. 100-204, title X, §1004, Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1407.)

**CHAPTER 62—INTERNATIONAL FINANCIAL POLICY**

SUBCHAPTER I—EXCHANGE RATES AND INTERNATIONAL ECONOMIC POLICY COORDINATION

|       |                      |
|-------|----------------------|
| Sec.  |                      |
| 5301. | Short title.         |
| 5302. | Findings.            |
| 5303. | Statement of policy. |

- Sec.  
5304. International negotiations on exchange rate and economic policies.  
    (a) Multilateral negotiations.  
    (b) Bilateral negotiations.  
5305. Reporting requirements.  
    (a) Reports required.  
    (b) Contents of report.  
5306. Definitions.

## SUBCHAPTER II—INTERNATIONAL DEBT

## PART A—FINDINGS, PURPOSES, AND STATEMENT OF POLICY

5321. Short title.  
5322. Findings.  
5323. Purposes.  
5324. Statement of policy.

## PART B—INTERNATIONAL DEBT MANAGEMENT AUTHORITY

5331. International initiative.  
    (a) Directive.  
    (b) Objectives.  
    (c) Interim reports.  
    (d) Final report.  
5332. Actions to facilitate creation of Authority.  
    (a) In general.  
    (b) Construction of section.  
5333. IMF-World Bank review.  
    (a) IMF review.  
    (b) World Bank review.

## SUBCHAPTER III—PRIMARY DEALERS

5341. Short title.  
5342. Requirement of national treatment in underwriting government debt instruments.  
    (a) Findings.  
    (b) Designation of certain persons as primary dealers prohibited.  
    (c) Exception for countries having or negotiating bilateral agreements with United States.  
    (d) “Persons of a foreign country” defined.  
    (e) Effective date.

## SUBCHAPTER IV—FINANCIAL REPORTS

5351. Short title.  
5352. Quadrennial reports on foreign treatment of United States financial institutions.  
5353. Fair trade in financial services.  
    (a) Discussions.  
    (b) Consultation before discussions.  
    (c) Recommendations.  
    (d) Construction of section.  
5354. Banks loan loss reserves.

## SUBCHAPTER I—EXCHANGE RATES AND INTERNATIONAL ECONOMIC POLICY COORDINATION

**§ 5301. Short title**

This subchapter may be cited as the “Exchange Rates and International Economic Policy Coordination Act of 1988”.

(Pub. L. 100-418, title III, §3001, Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1372.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this subtitle”, meaning subtitle A (§§3001-3006) of title III of Pub. L. 100-418, which enacted this subchapter and amended section 225a of Title 12, Banks and Banking. For complete classification of subtitle A to the Code, see Tables.

**§ 5302. Findings**

The Congress finds that—

(1) the macroeconomic policies, including the exchange rate policies, of the leading industrialized nations require improved coordination and are not consistent with long-term economic growth and financial stability;

(2) currency values have a major role in determining the patterns of production and trade in the world economy;

(3) the rise in the value of the dollar in the early 1980’s contributed substantially to our current trade deficit;

(4) exchange rates among major trading nations have become increasingly volatile and a pattern of exchange rates has at times developed which contribute to substantial and persistent imbalances in the flow of goods and services between nations, imposing serious strains on the world trading system and frustrating both business and government planning;

(5) capital flows between nations have become very large compared to trade flows, respond at times quickly and dramatically to policy and economic changes, and, for these reasons, contribute significantly to uncertainty in financial markets, the volatility of exchange rates, and the development of exchange rates which produce imbalances in the flow of goods and services between nations;

(6) policy initiatives by some major trading nations that manipulate the value of their currencies in relation to the United States dollar to gain competitive advantage continue to create serious competitive problems for United States industries;

(7) a more stable exchange rate for the dollar at a level consistent with a more appropriate and sustainable balance in the United States current account should be a major focus of national economic policy;

(8) procedures for improving the coordination of macroeconomic policy need to be strengthened considerably; and

(9) under appropriate circumstances, intervention by the United States in foreign exchange markets as part of a coordinated international strategic intervention effort could produce more orderly adjustment of foreign exchange markets and, in combination with necessary macroeconomic policy changes, assist adjustment toward a more appropriate and sustainable balance in current accounts.

(Pub. L. 100-418, title III, §3002, Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1372.)

**§ 5303. Statement of policy**

It is the policy of the United States that—

(1) the United States and the other major industrialized countries should take steps to continue the process of coordinating monetary, fiscal, and structural policies initiated in the Plaza Agreement of September 1985;

(2) the goal of the United States in international economic negotiations should be to achieve macroeconomic policies and exchange rates consistent with more appropriate and sustainable balances in trade and capital flows and to foster price stability in conjunction with economic growth;

(3) the United States, in close coordination with the other major industrialized countries

should, where appropriate, participate in international currency markets with the objective of producing more orderly adjustment of foreign exchange markets and, in combination with necessary macroeconomic policy changes, assisting adjustment toward a more appropriate and sustainable balance in current accounts; and

(4) the accountability of the President for the impact of economic policies and exchange rates on trade competitiveness should be increased.

(Pub. L. 100-418, title III, §3003, Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1373.)

**§ 5304. International negotiations on exchange rate and economic policies**

**(a) Multilateral negotiations**

The President shall seek to confer and negotiate with other countries—

(1) to achieve—

(A) better coordination of macroeconomic policies of the major industrialized nations; and

(B) more appropriate and sustainable levels of trade and current account balances, and exchange rates of the dollar and other currencies consistent with such balances; and

(2) to develop a program for improving existing mechanisms for coordination and improving the functioning of the exchange rate system to provide for long-term exchange rate stability consistent with more appropriate and sustainable current account balances.

**(b) Bilateral negotiations**

The Secretary of the Treasury shall analyze on an annual basis the exchange rate policies of foreign countries, in consultation with the International Monetary Fund, and consider whether countries manipulate the rate of exchange between their currency and the United States dollar for purposes of preventing effective balance of payments adjustments or gaining unfair competitive advantage in international trade. If the Secretary considers that such manipulation is occurring with respect to countries that (1) have material global current account surpluses; and (2) have significant bilateral trade surpluses with the United States, the Secretary of the Treasury shall take action to initiate negotiations with such foreign countries on an expedited basis, in the International Monetary Fund or bilaterally, for the purpose of ensuring that such countries regularly and promptly adjust the rate of exchange between their currencies and the United States dollar to permit effective balance of payments adjustments and to eliminate the unfair advantage. The Secretary shall not be required to initiate negotiations in cases where such negotiations would have a serious detrimental impact on vital national economic and security interests; in such cases, the Secretary shall inform the chairman and the ranking minority member of the Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs of the Senate and of the Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of the House of Representatives of his determination.

(Pub. L. 100-418, title III, §3004, Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1373.)

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Banking and Financial Services of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

NEGOTIATIONS ON CURRENCY EXCHANGE RATES

Section 1124 of Pub. L. 100-418 provided that:

“(a) FINDINGS.—The Congress finds that—

“(1) the benefit of trade concessions can be adversely affected by misalignments in currency, and

“(2) misalignments in currency caused by government policies intended to maintain an unfair trade advantage tend to nullify and impair trade concessions.

“(b) NEGOTIATIONS.—Whenever, in the course of negotiating a trade agreement under this subtitle [subtitle A (§§1101 to 1125) of title I of Pub. L. 100-418, see Tables for classification], the President is advised by the Secretary of the Treasury that a foreign country that is a party to the negotiations satisfies the criteria for initiating bilateral currency negotiations listed in section 3004(b) of this Act [22 U.S.C. 5304(b)], the Secretary of the Treasury shall take action to initiate bilateral currency negotiations on an expedited basis with such foreign country.”

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 5305 of this title.

**§ 5305. Reporting requirements**

**(a) Reports required**

In furtherance of the purpose of this chapter, the Secretary, after consultation with the Chairman of the Board, shall submit to the Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs of the Senate, on or before October 15 of each year, a written report on international economic policy, including exchange rate policy. The Secretary shall provide a written update of developments six months after the initial report. In addition, the Secretary shall appear, if requested, before both committees to provide testimony on these reports.

**(b) Contents of report**

Each report submitted under subsection (a) of this section shall contain—

(1) an analysis of currency market developments and the relationship between the United States dollar and the currencies of our major trade competitors;

(2) an evaluation of the factors in the United States and other economies that underlie conditions in the currency markets, including developments in bilateral trade and capital flows;

(3) a description of currency intervention or other actions undertaken to adjust the actual exchange rate of the dollar;

(4) an assessment of the impact of the exchange rate of the United States dollar on—

(A) the ability of the United States to maintain a more appropriate and sustainable balance in its current account and merchandise trade account;

(B) production, employment, and non-inflationary growth in the United States;

(C) the international competitive performance of United States industries and the external indebtedness of the United States;

(5) recommendations for any changes necessary in United States economic policy to attain a more appropriate and sustainable balance in the current account;

(6) the results of negotiations conducted pursuant to section 5304 of this title;

(7) key issues in United States policies arising from the most recent consultation requested by the International Monetary Fund under article IV of the Fund's Articles of Agreement; and

(8) a report on the size and composition of international capital flows, and the factors contributing to such flows, including, where possible, an assessment of the impact of such flows on exchange rates and trade flows.

(Pub. L. 100-418, title III, §3005(a), (b), Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1374.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original "this title", meaning title III of Pub. L. 100-418, Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1372, which enacted this chapter and section 262q of this title, amended sections 225a, 635, 635i-3, 1843, and 3912, of Title 12, Banks and Banking, and enacted provisions set out as notes under section 262q of this title and sections 635, 635i-3, and 1841 of Title 12. For complete classification of title III to the Code, see Tables.

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Banking and Financial Services of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

### § 5306. Definitions

As used in this subchapter:

#### (1) Secretary

The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of the Treasury.

#### (2) Board

The term "Board" means the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System.

(Pub. L. 100-418, title III, §3006, Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1375.)

## SUBCHAPTER II—INTERNATIONAL DEBT

### PART A—FINDINGS, PURPOSES, AND STATEMENT OF POLICY

#### § 5321. Short title

This subchapter may be cited as the "International Debt Management Act of 1988".

(Pub. L. 100-418, title III, §3101, Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1375.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this subtitle", meaning subtitle B (§§3101-3123) of title III of Pub. L. 100-418, which enacted this subchapter and amended section 3912 of Title 12, Banks and Banking. For complete classification of subtitle B to the Code, see Tables.

### § 5322. Findings

The Congress finds that—

(1) the international debt problem threatens the safety and soundness of the international financial system, the stability of the international trading system, and the economic development of the debtor countries;

(2) orderly reduction of international trade imbalances requires very substantial growth in all parts of the world economy, particularly in the developing countries;

(3) growth in developing countries with substantial external debts has been significantly constrained over the last several years by a combination of high debt service obligations and insufficient new flows of financial resources to these countries;

(4) substantial interest payment outflows from debtor countries, combined with inadequate net new capital inflows, have produced a significant net transfer of financial resources from debtor to creditor countries;

(5) negative resource transfers at present levels severely depress both investment and growth in the debtor countries, and force debtor countries to reduce imports and expand exports in order to meet their debt service obligations;

(6) current adjustment policies in debtor countries, which depress domestic demand and increase production for export, help to depress world commodity prices and limit the growth of export markets for United States industries;

(7) the United States has borne a disproportionate share of the burden of absorbing increased exports from debtor countries, while other industrialized countries have increased their imports from developing countries only slightly;

(8) current approaches to the debt problem should not rely solely on new lending as a solution to the debt problem, and should focus on other financing alternatives including a reduction in current debt service obligations;

(9) new international mechanisms to improve the management of the debt problem and to expand the range of financing options available to developing countries should be explored; and

(10) industrial countries with strong current account surpluses have a disproportionate share of the world's capital resources, and bear an additional responsibility for contributing to a viable long-term solution to the debt problem.

(Pub. L. 100-418, title III, §3102, Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1375.)

### § 5323. Purposes

The purposes of this subchapter are—

(1) to expand the world trading system and raise the level of exports from the United States to the developing countries in order to reduce the United States trade deficit and foster economic expansion and an increase in the standard of living throughout the world;

(2) to alleviate the current international debt problem in order to make the debt situation of developing countries more manageable



and permit the resumption of sustained growth in those countries; and

(3) to increase the stability of the world financial system and ensure the safety and soundness of United States depository institutions.

(Pub. L. 100-418, title III, §3103, Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1376.)

#### § 5324. Statement of policy

It is the policy of the United States that—

(1) increasing growth in the developing world is a major goal of international economic policy;

(2) it is necessary to broaden the range of options in dealing with the debt problem to include improved mechanisms to restructure existing debt;

(3) active consideration of a new multilateral authority to improve the management of the debt problem and to share the burdens of adjustment more equitably must be undertaken; and

(4) countries with strong current account surpluses bear a major responsibility for providing the financial resources needed for growth in the developing world.

(Pub. L. 100-418, title III, §3104, Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1376.)

#### PART B—INTERNATIONAL DEBT MANAGEMENT AUTHORITY

#### § 5331. International initiative

##### (a) Directive

###### (1) Study

The Secretary of the Treasury shall study the feasibility and advisability of establishing the International Debt Management Authority described in this section.

###### (2) Explanation of determinations

If the Secretary of the Treasury determines that initiation of international discussions with regard to such authority would (A) result in material increase in the discount at which sovereign debt is sold, (B) materially increase the probability of default on such debt, or (C) materially enhance the likelihood of debt service failure or disruption, the Secretary shall include in his interim reports to the Congress an explanation in detail of the reasons for such determination.

###### (3) Initiation of discussions

Unless such a determination is made, the Secretary of the Treasury shall initiate discussions with such industrialized and developing countries as the Secretary may determine to be appropriate with the intent to negotiate the establishment of the International Debt Management Authority, which would undertake to—

(A) purchase sovereign debt of less developed countries from private creditors at an appropriate discount;

(B) enter into negotiations with the debtor countries for the purpose of restructuring the debt in order to—

(i) ease the current debt service burden on the debtor countries; and

(ii) provide additional opportunities for economic growth in both debtor and industrialized countries; and

(C) assist the creditor banks in the voluntary disposition of their Third World loan portfolio.

##### (b) Objectives

In any discussions initiated under subsection (a) of this section, the Secretary should include the following specific proposals:

(1) That any loan restructuring assistance provided by such an authority to any debtor nation should involve substantial commitments by the debtor to (A) economic policies designed to improve resource utilization and minimize capital flight, and (B) preparation of an economic management plan calculated to provide sustained economic growth and to allow the debtor to meet its restructured debt obligations.

(2) That support for such an authority should come from industrialized countries, and that greater support should be expected from countries with strong current account surpluses.

(3) That such an authority should have a clearly defined close working relationship with the International Monetary Fund and the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development and the various regional development banks.

(4) That such an authority should be designed to operate as a self-supporting entity, requiring no routine appropriation of resources from any member government, and to function subject to the prohibitions contained in the first sentence of section 5332(a) of this title.

(5) That such an authority should have a defined termination date and a clear proposal for the restoration of creditworthiness to debtor countries within this timeframe.

##### (c) Interim reports

At the end of the 6-month period beginning on August 23, 1988, and at the end of the 12-month period beginning on August 23, 1988, the Secretary of the Treasury shall submit a report on the progress being made on the study or in discussions described in subsection (a) of this section to the Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, and shall consult with such committees after submitting each such report.

##### (d) Final report

On the conclusion of the study or of discussions described in subsection (a) of this section, the Secretary shall transmit a report containing a detailed description thereof to the Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, together with such recommendations for legislation which the Secretary may determine to be necessary or appropriate for the establishment of the International Debt Management Authority.

(Pub. L. 100-418, title III, §3111, Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1376.)

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Banking and Financial Services of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 5332, 5333 of this title.

**§ 5332. Actions to facilitate creation of Authority**

**(a) In general**

No funds, appropriations, contributions, callable capital, financial guarantee, or any other financial support or obligation or contingent support or obligation on the part of the United States Government may be used for the creation, operation, or support of the International Debt Management Authority specified in section 5331 of this title, without the express approval of the Congress through subsequent law, nor shall any expenses associated with such authority, either directly or indirectly, accrue to any United States person without the consent of such person. Except as restricted in the preceding sentence, the Secretary of the Treasury shall review all potential resources available to the multilateral financial institutions which could be used to support the creation of the International Debt Management Authority. In the course of this review, the Secretary shall direct—

(1) the United States Executive Director of the International Monetary Fund to determine the amount of, and alternative methods by which, gold stock of the Fund which, subject to action by its Board of Governors, could be pledged as collateral to obtain financing for the activities of the authority specified in section 5331 of this title; and

(2) the United States Executive Director to the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development to determine the amount of, and alternative methods by which, liquid assets controlled by such Bank and not currently committed to any loan program which, subject to action by its Board of Governors, could be pledged as collateral for obtaining financing for the activities of the authority specified in section 5331 of this title.

The Secretary of the Treasury shall include a report on the results of the review in the first report submitted under section 5331(c) of this title.

**(b) Construction of section**

Subsection (a) of this section shall not be construed to affect any provision of the Articles of Agreement of the International Monetary Fund or of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development or any agreement entered into under either of such Agreements.

(Pub. L. 100-418, title III, §3112, Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1378.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 5331 of this title.

**§ 5333. IMF-World Bank review**

**(a) IMF review**

The United States Executive Director of the International Monetary Fund shall request the management of the International Monetary Fund to prepare a review and analysis of the debt burden of the developing countries, with particular attention to alternatives for dealing with the debt problem including new lending instruments, rescheduling and refinancing of existing debt, securitization and debt conversion techniques, discounted debt repurchases, and the International Debt Management Authority described in section 5331 of this title no later than 1 year after August 23, 1988.

**(b) World Bank review**

The United States Executive Director to the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development shall request the management of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development to prepare a review and analysis of the debt burden of the developing countries, with particular attention to alternatives for dealing with the debt problem including new lending instruments, rescheduling and refinancing of existing debt, securitization and debt conversion techniques, discounted debt repurchases, and the International Debt Management Authority described in section 5331 of this title no later than 1 year after August 23, 1988.

(Pub. L. 100-418, title III, §3113, Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1378.)

SUBCHAPTER III—PRIMARY DEALERS

**§ 5341. Short title**

This subchapter may be cited as the “Primary Dealers Act of 1988”.

(Pub. L. 100-418, title III, §3501, Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1386.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this subtitle”, meaning subtitle F (§§3501, 3502) of title III of Pub. L. 100-418, which enacted this subchapter.

**§ 5342. Requirement of national treatment in underwriting government debt instruments**

**(a) Findings**

The Congress finds that—

(1) United States companies can successfully compete in foreign markets if they are given fair access to such markets;

(2) a trade surplus in services could offset the deficit in manufactured goods and help lower the overall trade deficit significantly;

(3) in contrast to the barriers faced by United States firms in Japan, Japanese firms generally have enjoyed access to United States financial markets on the same terms as United States firms; and

(4) United States firms seeking to compete in Japan face or have faced a variety of discriminatory barriers effectively precluding such firms from fairly competing for Japanese business, including—

(A) limitations on membership on the Tokyo Stock Exchange;

(B) high fixed commission rates (ranging as high as 80 percent) which must be paid to members of the exchange by nonmembers for executing trades;

(C) unequal opportunities to participate in and act as lead manager for equity and bond underwritings;

(D) restrictions on access to automated teller machines;

(E) arbitrarily applied employment requirements for opening branch offices;

(F) long delays in processing applications and granting approvals for licenses to operate; and

(G) restrictions on foreign institutions' participation in Ministry of Finance policy advisory councils.

**(b) Designation of certain persons as primary dealers prohibited**

**(1) General rule**

Neither the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System nor the Federal Reserve Bank of New York may designate, or permit the continuation of any prior designation of, any person of a foreign country as a primary dealer in government debt instruments if such foreign country does not accord to United States companies the same competitive opportunities in the underwriting and distribution of government debt instruments issued by such country as such country accords to domestic companies of such country.

**(2) Certain prior acquisitions excepted**

Paragraph (1) shall not apply to the continuation of the prior designation of a company as a primary dealer in government debt instruments if—

(A) such designation occurred before July 31, 1987; and

(B) before July 31, 1987—

(i) control of such company was acquired from a person (other than a person of a foreign country) by a person of a foreign country; or

(ii) in conjunction with a person of a foreign country, such company informed the Federal Reserve Bank of New York of the intention of such person to acquire control of such company.

**(c) Exception for countries having or negotiating bilateral agreements with United States**

Subsection (b) of this section shall not apply to any person of a foreign country if—

(1) that country, as of January 1, 1987, was negotiating a bilateral agreement with the United States under the authority of section 2112(b)(4)(A) of title 19; or

(2) that country has a bilateral free trade area agreement with the United States which entered into force before January 1, 1987.

**(d) "Person of a foreign country" defined**

For purposes of this section, a person is a "person of a foreign country" if that person, or any other person which directly or indirectly owns or controls that person, is a resident of that country, is organized under the laws of that country, or has its principal place of business in that country.

**(e) Effective date**

This section shall take effect 12 months after August 23, 1988.

(Pub. L. 100-418, title III, §3502, Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1386.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 10 section 2491.

SUBCHAPTER IV—FINANCIAL REPORTS

**§ 5351. Short title**

This subchapter may be cited as the "Financial Reports Act of 1988".

(Pub. L. 100-418, title III, §3601, Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1387.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this subtitle", meaning subtitle G (§§3601-3604) of title III of Pub. L. 100-418, which enacted this subchapter.

**§ 5352. Quadrennial reports on foreign treatment of United States financial institutions**

Not less frequently than every 4 years, beginning December 1, 1990, the Secretary of the Treasury, in conjunction with the Secretary of State, the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, the Comptroller of the Currency, the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, the Securities and Exchange Commission, and the Department of Commerce, shall report to the Congress on (1) the foreign countries from which foreign financial services institutions have entered into the business of providing financial services in the United States, (2) the kinds of financial services which are being offered, (3) the extent to which foreign countries deny national treatment to United States banking organizations and securities companies, and (4) the efforts undertaken by the United States to eliminate such discrimination. The report shall focus on those countries in which there are significant denials of national treatment which impact United States financial firms. The report shall also describe the progress of discussions pursuant to section 5353 of this title.

(Pub. L. 100-418, title III, §3602, Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1387.)

**§ 5353. Fair trade in financial services**

**(a) Discussions**

When advantageous the President or his designee shall conduct discussions with the governments of countries that are major financial centers, aimed at:

(1) ensuring that United States banking organizations and securities companies have access to foreign markets and receive national treatment in those markets;

(2) reducing or eliminating barriers to, and other distortions of, international trade in financial services;

(3) achieving reasonable comparability in the types of financial services permissible for financial service companies; and

(4) developing uniform supervisory standards for banking organizations and securities companies, including uniform capital standards.

**(b) Consultation before discussions**

Before entering into those discussions, the President or his designee shall consult with the committees of jurisdiction in the Senate and the House of Representatives.

**(c) Recommendations**

After completing those discussions and after consultation with the committees of jurisdiction, the President shall transmit to the Congress any recommendations that have emerged from those discussions. Any recommendations for changes in United States financial laws or practices shall be accompanied by a description of the changes in foreign financial laws or practices that would accompany action by the Congress, and by an explanation of the benefits that would accrue to the United States from adoption of the recommendations.

**(d) Construction of section**

Nothing in this section may be construed as prior approval of any legislation which may be necessary to implement any recommendations resulting from discussions under this section.

(Pub. L. 100-418, title III, §3603, Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1387.)

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of the Treasury by section 1 of Ex. Ord. No. 12781, Nov. 20, 1991, 56 F.R. 59203, set out as a note under section 301 of Title 3, The President.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 5352 of this title.

**§ 5354. Banks loan loss reserves**

The Federal Reserve Board shall submit to the Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs of the Senate and the Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of the House of Representatives a report on the issues raised by including loan loss reserves as part of banks' primary capital for regulatory purposes by March 31, 1989. Such report shall include a review of the treatment of loan loss reserves and the composition of primary capital of banks in other major industrialized countries, and shall include an analysis as to whether loan loss reserves should continue to be counted as primary capital for regulatory purposes.

(Pub. L. 100-418, title III, §3604, Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1388.)

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Banking and Financial Services of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

**CHAPTER 63—SUPPORT FOR EAST EUROPEAN DEMOCRACY (SEED)**

- Sec.
- 5401. Support for East European Democracy (SEED) Program.
  - (a) SEED Program.
  - (b) Objectives of SEED assistance.
  - (c) SEED Actions.
- 5402. Scope of authority.

- Sec.
  - (a) General authorization.
  - (b) Administration of justice programs.
  - (c) "East European country" defined.

SUBCHAPTER I—STRUCTURAL ADJUSTMENT

- 5411. Multilateral support for structural adjustment in Poland and Hungary.
  - (a) Multilateral assistance for Poland and Hungary.
  - (b) Stabilization assistance, debt relief, and agricultural assistance for Poland.
- 5412. Stabilization assistance for Poland.
  - (a) Immediate emergency assistance.
  - (b) Immediate, multilateral response to Poland's economic stabilization needs.
  - (c) Additional authority to provide stabilization assistance.
- 5413. Agricultural assistance.
  - (a) Agricultural assistance strategy.
  - (b) Agricultural assistance for Poland.
  - (c) FY 1990 minimum level of agricultural assistance for Poland.
  - (d) Consistency with budget requirements.
- 5414. Debt-for-equity swaps and other special techniques.
  - (a) Reduction of debt burden.
  - (b) Authority for discounted sales of debt.
  - (c) Condition.

SUBCHAPTER II—PRIVATE SECTOR DEVELOPMENT

- 5421. Enterprise Funds for Poland and Hungary.
  - (a) Purposes.
  - (b) Authorization of appropriations.
  - (c) Nonapplicability of other laws.
  - (d) Designation of Enterprise Funds.
  - (e) Grants to Enterprise Funds.
  - (f) Eligible programs and projects.
  - (g) Matters to be considered by Enterprise Funds.
  - (h) Retention of interest.
  - (i) Use of United States private venture capital.
  - (j) Financial instruments for individual investment in Poland.
  - (k) Nonapplicability of other laws.
  - (l) Limitation on payments to Enterprise Fund personnel.
  - (m) Independent private audits.
  - (n) GAO audits.
  - (o) Recordkeeping requirements.
  - (p) Annual reports.
- 5422. Labor market transition in Poland and Hungary.
  - (a) Technical assistance.
  - (b) Types of technical assistance authorized.
  - (c) Administrative authorities.
  - (d) Consultation with appropriate officers.
  - (e) Consultation with labor and business representatives.
  - (f) Delegation of responsibilities.
  - (g) Authorization of appropriations.
- 5423. Technical training for private sector development in Poland and Hungary.
  - (a) Technical training program.
  - (b) Participation by Enterprise Funds and other agencies and organizations.
  - (c) Nonapplicability of other provisions of law.
  - (d) Authorization of appropriations.
  - (e) Limitation with respect to Farmer-to-Farmer Program.

- Sec.  
5424. Peace Corps programs in Poland and Hungary.
5425. Use of Polish currency generated by agricultural assistance.  
(a) Additional assistance for Poland.  
(b) Emphasis on agricultural development.  
(c) Commodities subject to requirements.  
(d) Other uses not precluded.
5426. United States policy of private financial support for Polish and Hungarian credit unions.  
(a) In general.  
(b) Omitted.  
(c) Definitions.

SUBCHAPTER III—EDUCATIONAL, CULTURAL, AND SCIENTIFIC ACTIVITIES

5441. Educational and cultural exchanges and sister institutions programs with Poland and Hungary.  
(a) Educational and cultural exchanges.  
(b) Binational Fulbright commissions.  
(c) Reciprocal cultural centers.  
(d) Sister institutions programs.  
(e) Authorization of appropriations.
5442. Poland-Hungary scholarship partnership.  
(a) Establishment of scholarship program.  
(b) Emphasis on business and economics.  
(c) Grants to States.  
(d) Consultation with States.  
(e) Federal share.  
(f) Non-Federal share.  
(g) Forgiveness of scholarship assistance.  
(h) Private sector participation.  
(i) Funding.  
(j) Restrictions not applicable.  
(k) "State" defined.
5443. Science and technology exchange with Poland and Hungary.  
(a) Agreement with Poland.  
(b) Agreement with Hungary.  
(c) Definition of agreements being funded.

SUBCHAPTER IV—OTHER ASSISTANCE PROGRAMS

5451. Assistance in support of democratic institutions in Poland and Hungary.  
(a) Authorization of assistance.  
(b) Nonapplicability of other laws.
5452. Environmental initiatives for Poland and Hungary.  
(a) Priority for control of pollution.  
(b) EPA activities generally.  
(c) EPA activities in Poland.  
(d) EPA activities in Hungary.  
(e) Funding of EPA activities.  
(f) Department of Energy activities relating to fossil fuels.  
(g) Priority for efficient energy use.  
(h) Alternative investments in energy in Hungary.
5453. Medical supplies, hospital equipment, and medical training for Poland.  
(a) Authorization of assistance.  
(b) Nonapplicability of other laws.

SUBCHAPTER V—ADDITIONAL SEED PROGRAM ACTIONS

5461. Policy coordination of SEED Program.
5462. SEED Information Center System.  
(a) Establishment.  
(b) Functions.  
(c) Location.
5463. Encouraging voluntary assistance for Poland and Hungary.  
(a) Encouraging private contributions.

- Sec.  
(b) Transportation to Poland of private contributions.
5464. Economic and commercial officers at United States embassies and missions in Poland and Hungary.

SUBCHAPTER VI—REPORTS TO CONGRESS

5471. Report on initial steps taken by United States and on Poland's requirement for agricultural assistance.  
(a) Initial report.  
(b) Updating assessments.
5472. Report on confidence building measures by Poland and Hungary.
5473. Report on environmental problems in Poland and Hungary.
5474. Annual SEED Program report.  
(a) Findings.  
(b) Initial SEED Program report.  
(c) Annual SEED Program report.
5475. Reports on certain activities.
5476. Notifications to Congress regarding assistance.

SUBCHAPTER VII—MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

5491. Suspension of SEED assistance.
5492. Declaration of the Republic of Hungary.  
(a) Findings.  
(b) Congressional declarations.
5493. Administrative expenses of Agency for International Development.
5494. Relation of provisions of this chapter to certain provisions of appropriations acts.
5495. Certain uses of excess foreign currencies.  
(a) Authority to use.  
(b) Purposes for which currency may be used.  
(c) Currencies which may be used.  
(d) Where currencies may be used.  
(e) Nonapplicability of other provisions of law.  
(f) Requirement for appropriations action.

CHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This chapter is referred to in sections 2295b, 2421d of this title.

**§ 5401. Support for East European Democracy (SEED) Program**

**(a) SEED Program**

The United States shall implement, beginning in fiscal year 1990, a concerted Program of Support for East European Democracy (which may also be referred to as the "SEED Program"). The SEED Program shall be comprised of diverse undertakings designed to provide cost-effective assistance to those countries of Eastern Europe that have taken substantive steps toward institutionalizing political democracy and economic pluralism.

**(b) Objectives of SEED assistance**

The President should ensure that the assistance provided to East European countries pursuant to this chapter is designed—

(1) to contribute to the development of democratic institutions and political pluralism characterized by—

(A) the establishment of fully democratic and representative political systems based on free and fair elections,

(B) effective recognition of fundamental liberties and individual freedoms, including freedom of speech, religion, and association,

(C) termination of all laws and regulations which impede the operation of a free press and the formation of political parties,

(D) creation of an independent judiciary, and

(E) establishment of non-partisan military, security, and police forces;

(2) to promote the development of a free market economic system characterized by—

(A) privatization of economic entities,

(B) establishment of full rights to acquire and hold private property, including land and the benefits of contractual relations,

(C) simplification of regulatory controls regarding the establishment and operation of businesses,

(D) dismantlement of all wage and price controls,

(E) removal of trade restrictions, including on both imports and exports,

(F) liberalization of investment and capital, including the repatriation of profits by foreign investors;

(G) tax policies which provide incentives for economic activity and investment,

(H) establishment of rights to own and operate private banks and other financial service firms, as well as unrestricted access to private sources of credit, and

(I) access to a market for stocks, bonds, and other instruments through which individuals may invest in the private sector; and

(3) not to contribute any substantial benefit—

(A) to Communist or other political parties or organizations which are not committed to respect for the democratic process, or

(B) to the defense or security forces of any member country of the Warsaw Pact.

**(c) SEED Actions**

Assistance and other activities under the SEED Program (which may be referred to as “SEED Actions”) shall include activities such as the following:

**(1) Leadership in the World Bank and International Monetary Fund**

United States leadership in supporting—

(A) loans by the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development and its affiliated institutions in the World Bank group that are designed to modernize industry, agriculture, and infrastructure, and

(B) International Monetary Fund programs designed to stimulate sound economic growth.

**(2) Currency stabilization loans**

United States leadership in supporting multilateral agreement to provide government-to-government loans for currency stabilization where such loans can reduce inflation and thereby foster conditions necessary for the effective implementation of economic reforms.

**(3) Debt reduction and rescheduling**

Participation in multilateral activities aimed at reducing and rescheduling a country’s international debt, when reduction and

deferral of debt payments can assist the process of political and economic transition.

**(4) Agricultural assistance**

Assistance through the grant and concessional sale of food and other agricultural commodities and products when such assistance can ease critical shortages but not inhibit agricultural production and marketing in the recipient country.

**(5) Enterprise Funds**

Grants to support private, nonprofit “Enterprise Funds”, designated by the President pursuant to law and governed by a Board of Directors, which undertake loans, grants, equity investments, feasibility studies, technical assistance, training, and other forms of assistance to private enterprise activities in the Eastern European country for which the Enterprise Fund so is designated.

**(6) Labor market-oriented technical assistance**

Technical assistance programs directed at promoting labor market reforms and facilitating economic adjustment.

**(7) Technical training**

Programs to provide technical skills to assist in the development of a market economy.

**(8) Peace Corps**

Establishment of Peace Corps programs.

**(9) Support for indigenous credit unions**

Support for the establishment of indigenous credit unions.

**(10) Generalized System of Preferences**

Eligibility for trade benefits under the Generalized System of Preferences.

**(11) Most favored nation trade status**

The granting of temporary or permanent nondiscriminatory treatment (commonly referred to as “most favored nation status”) to the products of an East European country through the application of the criteria and procedures established by section 2432 of title 19 (commonly referred to as the “Jackson-Vanik amendment”).

**(12) Overseas Private Investment Corporation**

Programs of the Overseas Private Investment Corporation.

**(13) Export-Import Bank programs**

Programs of the Export-Import Bank of the United States.

**(14) Trade and Development Program activities**

Trade and Development Agency activities under the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.].

**(15) Investment treaties**

Negotiation of bilateral investment treaties.

**(16) Special tax treatment of below-market loans**

Exempting bonds from Internal Revenue Code [title 26] rules relating to below-market loans.

**(17) Exchange activities**

Expanded exchange activities under the Fulbright, International Visitors, and other pro-

grams conducted by the United States Information Agency.

**(18) Cultural centers**

Contributions toward the establishment of reciprocal cultural centers that can facilitate educational and cultural exchange and expanded understanding of Western social democracy.

**(19) Sister institutions**

Establishment of sister institution programs between American and East European schools and universities, towns and cities, and other organizations in such fields as medicine and health care, business management, environmental protection, and agriculture.

**(20) Scholarships**

Scholarships to enable students to study in the United States.

**(21) Science and technology exchanges**

Grants for the implementation of bilateral agreements providing for cooperation in science and technology exchange.

**(22) Assistance for democratic institutions**

Assistance designed to support the development of legal, legislative, electoral, journalistic, and other institutions of free, pluralist societies.

**(23) Environmental assistance**

Environmental assistance directed at overcoming crucial deficiencies in air and water quality and other determinants of a healthful society.

**(24) Medical assistance**

Medical assistance specifically targeted to overcome severe deficiencies in pharmaceuticals and other basic health supplies.

**(25) Encouragement for private investment and voluntary assistance**

Encouraging private investment and voluntary private assistance, using a variety of means including a SEED Information Center System and the provision by the Department of Defense of transportation for private non-financial contributions.

(Pub. L. 101-179, § 2, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1299; Pub. L. 102-549, title II, § 202(e), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3658.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (b), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101-179, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1298, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out below and Tables.

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (c)(14), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 32 (§ 2151 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (c)(14). Pub. L. 102-549 substituted "Agency" for "Program".

SHORT TITLE

Section 1(a) of Pub. L. 101-179 provided that: "This Act [enacting this chapter and section 2185 of this title,

amending sections 2184 and 2199 of this title, section 1757 of Title 12, Banks and Banking, and section 2462 of Title 19, Customs Duties, enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 2185, 2199, and 2421 of this title, section 635 of Title 12, and section 7872 of Title 26, Internal Revenue Code, and amending provisions set out as a note under section 7872 of Title 26] may be cited as the 'Support for East European Democracy (SEED) Act of 1989'."

EX. ORD. NO. 12703. SUPPORT FOR EAST EUROPEAN DEMOCRACY (SEED) PROGRAM

Ex. Ord. No. 12703, Feb. 20, 1990, 55 F.R. 6351, provided: By the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and laws of the United States of America, including the Support for East European Democracy (SEED) Act (P.L. 101-179, hereinafter referred to as the "Act") [22 U.S.C. 5401 et seq.] and section 301 of Title 3 of the United States Code, it is hereby ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. *SEED Program Coordinator.* The functions conferred by Title VII of the Act [22 U.S.C. 5471 et seq.] relating to reports to the Congress are hereby delegated to the Coordinator of the SEED Program. The Coordinator is authorized to assign responsibility for particular aspects of the reports to appropriate agencies.

SEC. 2. *United States Agency for International Development.* The functions conferred upon the President by section 201 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 5421] relating to Enterprise Funds for Poland and Hungary are hereby delegated to the Administrator of the United States Agency for International Development. The Administrator shall consult, as appropriate, with other relevant agencies in exercising the functions herein delegated.

SEC. 3. *Department of Commerce.* The functions conferred upon the President by section 602 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 5462] regarding the establishment of a SEED Information Center System in cooperation with the Governments of Poland and Hungary are hereby delegated to the Secretary of Commerce. This authority is to be exercised in consultation with the SEED Program Coordinator and in consultation with other agencies as appropriate.

SEC. 4. *Department of the Treasury.* The functions conferred upon the President by section 104 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 5414] regarding debt reduction of certain East European countries are hereby delegated to the Secretary of the Treasury. The Secretary shall consult, as appropriate, with other relevant agencies in exercising the functions herein delegated.

GEORGE BUSH.

**§ 5402. Scope of authority**

**(a) General authorization**

The President is authorized to conduct activities for any East European country that are similar to any activity authorized by this chapter to be conducted in Poland or Hungary (excluding those authorized by section 5412 of this title or the amendments made by sections 301 and 304) if such similar activities would effectively promote a transition to market-oriented democracy.

**(b) Administration of justice programs**

In order to strengthen the administration of justice in East European countries, the President may exercise the same authorities with respect to those countries as are available under section 2346c of this title, subject to the limitations and requirements of that section, other than subsection (c) and the last two sentences of subsection (e).

**(c) "East European country" defined**

For purposes of this chapter, the term "East European country" includes Albania, Bulgaria,

the Czech and Slovak Federal Republic, Estonia, Hungary, Latvia, Lithuania, Poland, Romania, and states that were part of the former Socialist Federal Republic of Yugoslavia.

(Pub. L. 101-179, §3, as added Pub. L. 102-511, title IX, §903(a), 106 Stat. 3355.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (c), was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 101-179, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1298, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 5401 of this title and Tables.

Sections 301 and 304, referred to in subsec. (a), are sections 301 and 304 of Pub. L. 101-179, title III, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1311, 1312. Section 301 amended section 2462 of Title 19, Customs Duties. Section 304 enacted section 2185 of this title, amended section 2184 of this title, and enacted provisions set out as a note under section 2185 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 12 section 635.

### SUBCHAPTER I—STRUCTURAL ADJUSTMENT

#### SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in section 5471 of this title.

## § 5411. Multilateral support for structural adjustment in Poland and Hungary

### (a) Multilateral assistance for Poland and Hungary

#### (1) In general

To the extent that Poland and Hungary continue to evolve toward pluralism and democracy and to develop and implement comprehensive economic reform programs, the United States Government shall take the leadership in mobilizing international financial institutions, in particular the International Monetary Fund and the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development and its affiliated institutions in the World Bank group, to provide timely and appropriate resources to help Poland and Hungary.

#### (2) World Bank structural adjustment loan for Poland

In furtherance of paragraph (1), the Secretary of the Treasury shall direct the United States Executive Director of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development to urge expeditious approval and disbursement by the Bank of a structural adjustment loan to Poland in an appropriate amount in time to facilitate the implementation of major economic reforms scheduled for early 1990, including the termination of energy, export, and agricultural subsidies and wage indexation.

### (b) Stabilization assistance, debt relief, and agricultural assistance for Poland

To the extent that Poland continues to evolve toward pluralism and democracy and to develop and implement comprehensive economic reform programs, the United States Government shall do the following:

#### (1) Stabilization assistance

The United States Government, in conjunction with other member governments of the

Organization of Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD) and international financial institutions (including the International Monetary Fund), shall support the implementation of a plan of the Government of Poland to attack hyperinflation and other structural economic problems, address pressing social problems, carry out comprehensive economic reform, and relieve immediate and urgent balance of payments requirements in Poland, through the use of mechanisms such as—

(A) the Exchange Stabilization Fund pursuant to section 5302 of title 31 and in accordance with established Department of the Treasury policies and procedures; and

(B) the authority provided in section 5412(c) of this title.

### (2) Debt relief

The United States Government—

(A) shall urge all members of the “Paris Club” of creditor governments and other creditor governments to adopt, and participate in, a generous and early rescheduling program for debts owed by the Government of Poland; and

(B) in coordination with other creditor governments, shall seek to expedite consultations between the Government of Poland and its major private creditors in order to facilitate a rescheduling and reduction of payments due on debt owed to such creditors in a manner consistent with the international debt policy announced by the Secretary of the Treasury on March 10, 1989.

### (3) Agricultural assistance

The United States Government shall provide agricultural assistance for Poland in accordance with section 5413 of this title.

(Pub. L. 101-179, title I, §101, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1302.)

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 5412, 5413 of this title.

## § 5412. Stabilization assistance for Poland

### (a) Immediate emergency assistance

To the extent that the ongoing International Monetary Fund review of the Polish economy projects a probable balance of payments shortage for the fourth quarter of 1989, the United States Government, in carrying out paragraph (1) of section 5411(b) of this title—

(1) should work closely with the European Community and international financial institutions to determine the extent of emergency assistance required by Poland for the fourth quarter of 1989, and

(2) should consider extending a bridge loan to relieve immediate and urgent balance of payments requirements using the Exchange Stabilization Fund in accordance with paragraph (1)(A) of section 5411(b) of this title.

### (b) Immediate, multilateral response to Poland's economic stabilization needs

In furtherance of section 5411(b)(1) of this title, the President, acting in coordination with the European Community, should seek to ensure



that the industrialized democracies undertake an immediate, multilateral effort to respond to Poland's request for \$1,000,000,000 to support its economic stabilization program.

**(c) Additional authority to provide stabilization assistance**

**(1) Authority**

In order to carry out paragraph (1) of section 5411(b) of this title, the President is authorized to furnish assistance for Poland, notwithstanding any other provision of law, to assist in the urgent stabilization of the Polish economy and ultimately to promote longer-term economic growth and stability, based on movement toward free market principles. Such assistance may be provided for balance of payments support (including commodity import programs), support for private sector development, or for other activities to further efforts to develop a free market-oriented economy in Poland.

**(2) Authorization of appropriations**

For purposes of providing the assistance authorized by this subsection, there are authorized to be appropriated \$200,000,000 for fiscal year 1990 to carry out chapter 4 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2346 and following; relating to the economic support fund), in addition to amounts otherwise available for such purposes.

(Pub. L. 101-179, title I, §102, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1303.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (c)(2), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended. Chapter 4 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 is classified to part IV (§2346 et seq.) of subchapter II of chapter 32 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 5402, 5411, 5471 of this title.

**§ 5413. Agricultural assistance**

**(a) Agricultural assistance strategy**

**(1) United States assistance**

A principal component of the SEED Program shall be the provision by the United States of food and other agricultural commodities and products to alleviate crucial shortages that may be created in an East European country by the transition from state-directed controls to a free market economy.

**(2) Assistance from other countries**

In order to ensure the necessary quantity and diversity of agricultural assistance for that purpose, the United States shall take all appropriate steps to encourage parallel efforts by the European Community and other agricultural surplus countries.

**(3) Avoiding disincentives to private agricultural production and marketing**

In participating in such multilateral agricultural assistance, the United States shall seek to strike a balance wherein agricultural

commodities and products are supplied in such quantities as will be effective in overcoming severe shortages and dampening inflation but without impeding the development of incentives for private agricultural production and marketing in the recipient country.

**(b) Agricultural assistance for Poland**

Pursuant to section 5411(b)(3) of this title, the United States Government—

(1) shall make available to Poland, in coordination with the European Community, United States agricultural assistance—

(A) to alleviate immediate food shortages (such assistance to be specifically targeted toward elements of the Polish population most vulnerable to hunger and malnutrition, in particular the infirm, the elderly, and children), and

(B) to facilitate the transition from state-directed controls to a free market economy, while avoiding disincentives to domestic agricultural production and reform; and

(2) in order to ensure the necessary quantity and diversity of such agricultural assistance, shall take all appropriate steps to encourage parallel efforts by the European Community and other agricultural surplus countries.

**(c) FY 1990 minimum level of agricultural assistance for Poland**

In carrying out subsection (b) of this section, the level of assistance for Poland for fiscal year 1990 under section 1431(b) of title 7, the Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954 (7 U.S.C. 1691 and following), and section 1736o of title 7 should not be less than \$125,000,000. Such assistance—

(1) to the maximum extent practicable, shall be provided through nongovernmental organizations; and

(2) shall emphasize feed grains.

**(d) Consistency with budget requirements**

Subsection (c) of this section should not be construed to authorize or require any budgetary obligations or outlays that are inconsistent with House Concurrent Resolution 106 of the 101st Congress (setting forth the congressional budget for the United States Government for fiscal year 1990).

(Pub. L. 101-179, title I, §103, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1303.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954, referred to in subsec. (c), is act July 10, 1954, ch. 469, 68 Stat. 454, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 41 (§1691 et seq.) of Title 7, Agriculture. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1691 of Title 7 and Tables.

House Concurrent Resolution 106 of the 101st Congress, referred to in subsec. (d), is H. Con. Res. 106, May 18, 1989, 103 Stat. 2450, which is not classified to the Code.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 5411, 5425 of this title.

**§ 5414. Debt-for-equity swaps and other special techniques**

**(a) Reduction of debt burden**

The President shall take all appropriate actions to explore and encourage innovative approaches to the reduction of the government-to-government and commercial debt burden of East European countries which have taken substantive steps toward political democracy and economic pluralism.

**(b) Authority for discounted sales of debt**

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the President may undertake the discounted sale, to private purchasers, of United States Government debt obligations of an East European country which has taken substantive steps toward political democracy and economic pluralism, subject to subsection (c) of this section.

**(c) Condition**

An obligation may be sold under subsection (b) of this section only if the sale will facilitate so-called debt-for-equity or debt-for-development swaps wherein such newly privatized debt is exchanged by the new holder of the obligation for—

- (1) local currencies, policy commitments, or other assets needed for development or other economic activities, or
- (2) for an equity interest in an enterprise theretofore owned by the particular East European government.

(Pub. L. 101-179, title I, §104, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1304.)

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of the Treasury by section 4 of Ex. Ord. No. 12703, Feb. 20, 1990, 55 F.R. 6351, set out as a note under section 5401 of this title.

SUBCHAPTER II—PRIVATE SECTOR  
DEVELOPMENT

**§ 5421. Enterprise Funds for Poland and Hungary**

**(a) Purposes**

The purposes of this section are to promote—

- (1) development of the Polish and Hungarian private sectors, including small businesses, the agricultural sector, and joint ventures with United States and host country participants, and
- (2) policies and practices conducive to private sector development in Poland and Hungary,

through loans, grants, equity investments, feasibility studies, technical assistance, training, insurance, guarantees, and other measures.

**(b) Authorization of appropriations**

To carry out the purposes specified in subsection (a) of this section, there are authorized to be appropriated to the President—

- (1) \$240,000,000 to support the Polish-American Enterprise Fund; and
- (2) \$60,000,000 to support the Hungarian-American Enterprise Fund.

Such amounts are authorized to be made available until expended.

**(c) Nonapplicability of other laws**

The funds appropriated under subsection (b) of this section may be made available to the Polish-American Enterprise Fund and the Hungarian-American Enterprise Fund and used for the purposes of this section notwithstanding any other provision of law.

**(d) Designation of Enterprise Funds**

**(1) Designation**

The President is authorized to designate two private, nonprofit organizations as eligible to receive funds and support pursuant to this section upon determining that such organizations have been established for the purposes specified in subsection (a) of this section. For purposes of this chapter, the organizations so designated shall be referred to as the Polish-American Enterprise Fund and the Hungarian-American Enterprise Fund (hereinafter in this section referred to as the “Enterprise Funds”).

**(2) Consultation with Congress**

The President shall consult with the leadership of each House of Congress before designating an organization pursuant to paragraph (1).

**(3) Board of Directors**

(A) Each Enterprise Fund shall be governed by a Board of Directors comprised of private citizens of the United States, and citizens of the respective host country, who have demonstrated experience and expertise in those areas of private sector development in which the Enterprise Fund is involved.

(B) A majority of the members of the Board of Directors of each Enterprise Fund shall be United States citizens.

(C) A host country citizen who is not committed to respect for democracy and a free market economy may not serve as a member of the Board of Directors of an Enterprise Fund.

**(4) Eligibility of Enterprise Funds for grants**

Grants may be made to an Enterprise Fund under this section only if the Enterprise Fund agrees to comply with the requirements specified in this section.

**(5) Private character of Enterprise Funds**

Nothing in this section shall be construed to make an Enterprise Fund an agency or establishment of the United States Government, or to make the officers, employees, or members of the Board of Directors of an Enterprise Fund officers or employees of the United States for purposes of title 5.

**(e) Grants to Enterprise Funds**

Funds appropriated to the President pursuant to subsection (b) of this section shall be granted to the Enterprise Funds by the Agency for International Development to enable the Enterprise Funds to carry out the purposes specified in subsection (a) of this section and for the administrative expenses of each Enterprise Fund.

**(f) Eligible programs and projects**

**(1) In general**

The Enterprise Funds may provide assistance pursuant to this section only for pro-

grams and projects which are consistent with the purposes set forth in subsection (a) of this section.

**(2) Employee stock ownership plans**

Funds available to the Enterprise Funds may be used to encourage the establishment of Employee Stock Ownership Plans (ESOPs) in Poland and Hungary.

**(3) Indigenous credit unions**

Funds available to the Enterprise Funds may be used for technical and other assistance to support the development of indigenous credit unions in Poland and Hungary. As used in this paragraph, the term “credit union” means a member-owned, nonprofit, cooperative depository institution—

(A) which is formed to permit individuals in the field of membership specified in such institution’s charter to pool their savings, lend the savings to one another, and own the organization where they save, borrow, and obtain related financial services; and

(B) whose members are united by a common bond and democratically operate the institution.

**(4) Telecommunications modernization in Poland**

The Polish-American Enterprise Fund may use up to \$25,000,000 for grants for projects providing for the early introduction in Poland of modern telephone systems and telecommunications technology, which are crucial in establishing the conditions for successful transition to political democracy and economic pluralism.

**(5) Economic foundation of NSZZ Solidarność**

Funds available to the Polish-American Enterprise Fund may be used to support the Economic Foundation of NSZZ Solidarność.

**(g) Matters to be considered by Enterprise Funds**

In carrying out this section, each Enterprise Fund shall take into account such considerations as internationally recognized worker rights and other internationally recognized human rights, environmental factors, United States economic and employment effects, and the likelihood of commercial viability of the activity receiving assistance from the Enterprise Fund.

**(h) Retention of interest**

An Enterprise Fund may hold funds granted to it pursuant to this section in interest-bearing accounts, prior to the disbursement of such funds for purposes specified in subsection (a) of this section, and may retain for such program purposes any interest earned on such deposits without returning such interest to the Treasury of the United States and without further appropriation by the Congress.

**(i) Use of United States private venture capital**

In order to maximize the effectiveness of the activities of the Enterprise Funds, each Enterprise Fund may conduct public offerings or private placements for the purpose of soliciting and accepting United States venture capital which may be used, separately or together with funds

made available pursuant to this section, for any lawful investment purpose that the Board of Directors of the Enterprise Fund may determine in carrying out this section. Financial returns on Enterprise Fund investments that include a component of private venture capital may be distributed, at such times and in such amounts as the Board of Directors of the Enterprise Fund may determine, to the investors of such capital.

**(j) Financial instruments for individual investment in Poland**

In order to maximize the effectiveness of the activities of the Polish-American Enterprise Fund, that Enterprise Fund should undertake all possible efforts to establish financial instruments that will enable individuals to invest in the private sectors of Poland and that will thereby have the effect of multiplying the impact of United States grants to that Enterprise Fund.

**(k) Nonapplicability of other laws**

Executive branch agencies may conduct programs and activities and provide services in support of the activities of the Enterprise Funds notwithstanding any other provision of law.

**(l) Limitation on payments to Enterprise Fund personnel**

No part of the funds of either Enterprise Fund shall inure to the benefit of any board member, officer, or employee of such Enterprise Fund, except as salary or reasonable compensation for services.

**(m) Independent private audits**

The accounts of each Enterprise Fund shall be audited annually in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards by independent certified public accountants or independent licensed public accountants certified or licensed by a regulatory authority of a State or other political subdivision of the United States. The report of each such independent audit shall be included in the annual report required by this section.

**(n) GAO audits**

The financial transactions undertaken pursuant to this section by each Enterprise Fund may be audited by the General Accounting Office in accordance with such principles and procedures and under such rules and regulations as may be prescribed by the Comptroller General of the United States, so long as the Enterprise Fund is in receipt of United States Government grants.

**(o) Recordkeeping requirements**

The Enterprise Funds shall ensure—

(1) that each recipient of assistance provided through the Enterprise Funds under this section keeps—

(A) separate accounts with respect to such assistance;

(B) such records as may be reasonably necessary to disclose fully the amount and the disposition by such recipient of the proceeds of such assistance, the total cost of the project or undertaking in connection with which such assistance is given or used, and the amount and nature of that portion of the cost of the project or undertaking supplied by other sources; and

(C) such other records as will facilitate an effective audit; and

(2) that the Enterprise Funds, or any of their duly authorized representatives, have access for the purpose of audit and examination to any books, documents, papers, and records of the recipient that are pertinent to assistance provided through the Enterprise Funds under this section.

**(p) Annual reports**

Each Enterprise Fund shall publish an annual report, which shall include a comprehensive and detailed description of the Enterprise Fund's operations, activities, financial condition, and accomplishments under this section for the preceding fiscal year. This report shall be published not later than January 31 each year, beginning in 1991.

(Pub. L. 101-179, title II, §201, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1305.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (d)(1), was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 101-179, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1298, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 5401 of this title and Tables.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Administrator of United States Agency for International Development by section 2 of Ex. Ord. No. 12703, Feb. 20, 1990, 55 F.R. 6351, set out as a note under section 5401 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2295b, 5425, 5953 of this title.

**§ 5422. Labor market transition in Poland and Hungary**

**(a) Technical assistance**

The Secretary of Labor (hereinafter in this section referred to as the "Secretary"), in consultation with representatives of labor and business in the United States, shall—

- (1) provide technical assistance to Poland and Hungary for the implementation of labor market reforms; and
- (2) provide technical assistance to Poland and Hungary to facilitate adjustment during the period of economic transition and reform.

**(b) Types of technical assistance authorized**

In carrying out subsection (a) of this section, the Secretary is authorized to provide technical assistance regarding policies and programs for training and retraining, job search and employment services, unemployment insurance, occupational safety and health protection, labor-management relations, labor statistics, analysis of productivity constraints, entrepreneurial support for small businesses, market-driven systems of wage and income determinations, job creation, employment security, the observance of internationally recognized worker rights (including freedom of association and the right to organize and bargain collectively), and other matters that the Secretary may deem appropriate regarding free labor markets and labor organizations.

**(c) Administrative authorities**

In carrying out subsection (a) of this section, the Secretary is authorized to do the following:

(1) Solicit and accept in the name of the Department of Labor, and employ or dispose of in furtherance of the purposes of this section, any money or property, real, personal, or mixed, tangible or intangible, received by gift, devise, bequest, or otherwise. Gifts and donations of property which are no longer required for the discharge of the purposes of this section shall be reported to the Administrator of General Services for transfer, donation, or other disposal in accordance with the Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949 (40 U.S.C. 471 and following).

(2) Solicit and accept voluntary and uncompensated services notwithstanding section 1342 of title 31. A volunteer under this paragraph shall not be deemed to be an employee of the United States except for the purposes of—

(A) the tort claims provisions of title 28, and

(B) subchapter I of chapter 81 of title 5, relating to compensation for work injuries.

(3) Enter into arrangements or agreements with appropriate departments, agencies, and establishments of Poland and Hungary.

(4) Enter into arrangements or agreements with appropriate private and public sector United States parties, and international organizations.

**(d) Consultation with appropriate officers**

In carrying out the responsibilities established by this section, the Secretary shall seek information and advice from, and consult with, appropriate officers of the United States.

**(e) Consultation with labor and business representatives**

For purposes of this section, consultation between the Secretary and United States labor and business representatives shall not be subject to the Federal Advisory Committee Act (5 U.S.C. App.).

**(f) Delegation of responsibilities**

The Secretary shall delegate the authority to carry out the programs authorized by this section to the head of the Bureau of International Labor Affairs of the Department of Labor.

**(g) Authorization of appropriations**

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Department of Labor for the 3-year period beginning October 1, 1989, to carry out this section—

- (1) \$4,000,000 for technical assistance to Poland; and
- (2) \$1,000,000 for technical assistance to Hungary.

(Pub. L. 101-179, title II, §202, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1308.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949, referred to in subsec. (c)(1), is act June 30, 1949, ch. 288, 63 Stat. 377, as amended. Provisions of that Act relating to management and disposal of Government property are classified to chapter 10 (§471 et seq.) of Title 40, Public Buildings, Property, and Works. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see

Short Title note set out under section 471 of Title 40 and Tables.

The tort claims provisions of title 28, referred to in subsec. (c)(2)(A), are classified to section 1346(b) and chapter 171 (§2671 et seq.) of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

The Federal Advisory Committee Act, referred to in subsec. (e), is Pub. L. 92-463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 770, as amended, which is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

**§ 5423. Technical training for private sector development in Poland and Hungary**

**(a) Technical training program**

The Agency for International Development shall develop and implement a program for extending basic agribusiness, commercial, entrepreneurial, financial, scientific, and technical skills to the people of Poland and Hungary to enable them to better meet their needs and develop a market economy. This program shall include management training and agricultural extension activities.

**(b) Participation by Enterprise Funds and other agencies and organizations**

In carrying out subsection (a) of this section, the Agency for International Development may utilize the Polish-American Enterprise Fund and the Hungarian-American Enterprise Fund and other appropriate Government and private agencies, programs, and organizations such as—

- (1) the Department of Agriculture;
- (2) the Farmer-to-Farmer Program under section 1736(a)(1) and (2) of title 7;
- (3) the International Executive Service Corps;
- (4) the Foundation for the Development of Polish Agriculture;
- (5) the World Council of Credit Unions; and
- (6) other United States, Polish, and Hungarian private and voluntary organizations and private sector entities.

**(c) Nonapplicability of other provisions of law**

Assistance provided pursuant to subsection (a) of this section under the authorities of part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.] may be provided notwithstanding any other provision of law.

**(d) Authorization of appropriations**

For purposes of implementing this section, there are authorized to be appropriated \$10,000,000 for the 3-year period beginning October 1, 1989, to carry out chapter 1 of part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2151 and following; relating to development assistance), in addition to amounts otherwise available for such purposes.

**(e) Limitation with respect to Farmer-to-Farmer Program**

Any activities carried out pursuant to this chapter through the Farmer-to-Farmer Program under section 1736(a)(1) and (2) of title 7 shall be funded with funds authorized to be appropriated by this chapter and local currencies made available under section 5425 of this title, and shall not be funded with funds made available pursuant to section 1107 of the Food Security Act of 1985 (7 U.S.C. 1736 note) or a similar, subsequent provision of law.

(Pub. L. 101-179, title II, §203, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1309.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsecs. (c) and (d), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended. Part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 is classified generally to subchapter I (§2151 et seq.) of chapter 32 of this title. Chapter 1 of part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 is classified generally to part I (§2151 et seq.) of subchapter I of chapter 32 of this title. For provisions deeming references to subchapter I to include parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter I of chapter 32, see section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92-228, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa-5 of this title. For provisions deeming references to part I of subchapter I to include a reference to section 2293 of this title, see section 2293(d)(1) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

Section 1107 of the Food Security Act of 1985, referred to in subsec. (e), is section 1107 of Pub. L. 99-198, which is set out as a note under section 1736 of Title 7, Agriculture.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 5424, 5425 of this title.

**§ 5424. Peace Corps programs in Poland and Hungary**

There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out programs in Poland and Hungary under the Peace Corps Act [22 U.S.C. 2501 et seq.], \$6,000,000 for the 3-year period beginning October 1, 1989, in addition to amounts otherwise available for such purposes. Such programs shall include the use of Peace Corps volunteers—

- (1) to provide English language training, and
- (2) to extend the technical skills described in section 5423(a) of this title to the people of Poland and Hungary, using the Associate Volunteer Program to the extent practicable.

(Pub. L. 101-179, title II, §204, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1310.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Peace Corps Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 87-293, Sept. 22, 1961, 75 Stat. 612, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 34 (§2501 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2501 of this title and Tables.

**§ 5425. Use of Polish currency generated by agricultural assistance**

**(a) Additional assistance for Poland**

A portion of the agricultural commodities described in subsection (c) of this section may be made available and sold or bartered in Poland to generate local currencies to be used—

- (1) to complement the assistance for Poland authorized by sections 5413(b), 5421, and 5423 of this title, and
- (2) to support the activities of the joint commission established pursuant to section 2226 of the American Aid to Poland Act of 1988 (7 U.S.C. 1431 note),

notwithstanding section 1431(b)(7) of title 7 or any other provision of law.

**(b) Emphasis on agricultural development**

The uses of local currencies generated under this section should emphasize the development of agricultural infrastructure, agriculture-related training, and other aspects of agricultural development in Poland.

**(c) Commodities subject to requirements**

Subsection (a) of this section applies with respect to agricultural commodities made available for Poland for fiscal years 1990, 1991, and 1992 under section 1431(b) of title 7, the Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954 (7 U.S.C. 1691 and following), and section 1736*o* of title 7.

**(d) Other uses not precluded**

The uses of agricultural commodities and local currencies specified in subsection (a) of this section are in addition to other uses authorized by law.

(Pub. L. 101-179, title II, §205, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1310.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 2226 of the American Aid to Poland Act of 1988, referred to in subsec. (a)(2), is section 2226 of Pub. L. 100-418, which is set out as a note under section 1431 of Title 7, Agriculture.

The Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954, referred to in subsec. (c), is act July 10, 1954, ch. 469, 68 Stat. 454, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 41 (§1691 et seq.) of Title 7. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1691 of Title 7 and Tables.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 5423 of this title.

**§ 5426. United States policy of private financial support for Polish and Hungarian credit unions****(a) In general**

In order to facilitate the development of indigenous credit unions in Poland and Hungary, it is the policy of the United States that—

(1) United States citizens, financial institutions (other than federally insured depository institutions), and other persons may make contributions and loans to, make capital deposits in, and provide other forms of financial and technical assistance to credit unions in Poland and Hungary; and

(2) federally insured depository institutions may provide technical assistance to credit unions in Poland and Hungary, to the extent that the provision of such assistance is prudent and not inconsistent with safe and sound banking practice.

**(b) Omitted****(c) Definitions**

For purposes of subsection (a) of this section—

(1) the term “credit union” means a member-owned, nonprofit, cooperative depository institution—

(A) which is formed to permit individuals in the field of membership specified in such institution’s charter to pool their savings, lend the savings to one another, and own the

organization where they save, borrow, and obtain related financial services; and

(B) whose members are united by a common bond and democratically operate the institution; and

(2) the term “federally insured depository institution” means—

(A) any insured depository institution (as defined in section 1813(c)(2) of title 12); and

(B) any insured credit union (as defined in section 1752(7) of title 12).

(Pub. L. 101-179, title II, §206, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1310.)

## CODIFICATION

Section is comprised of section 206 of Pub. L. 101-179. Subsec. (b) of section 206 of Pub. L. 101-179 amended section 1757 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

## SUBCHAPTER III—EDUCATIONAL, CULTURAL, AND SCIENTIFIC ACTIVITIES

**§ 5441. Educational and cultural exchanges and sister institutions programs with Poland and Hungary****(a) Educational and cultural exchanges****(1) Support for expanded U.S. participation**

The United States should expand its participation in educational and cultural exchange activities with Poland and Hungary, using the full array of existing government-funded and privately-funded programs, with particular emphasis on the J. William Fulbright Educational Exchange Program, the International Visitors Program, the Samantha Smith Memorial Exchange Program, the exchange programs of the National Academy of Sciences, youth and student exchanges through such private organizations as The Experiment in International Living, The American Field Service Committee, and Youth for Understanding, and research exchanges sponsored by the International Research and Exchanges Board (IREX).

**(2) Emphasis on skills in business and economics**

The United States should place particular emphasis on expanding its participation in educational exchange activities that will assist in developing the skills in business and economics that are necessary for the development of a free market economy in Poland and Hungary.

**(b) Binational Fulbright commissions**

The United States should take all appropriate action to establish binational Fulbright commissions with Poland and Hungary in order to facilitate and enhance academic and scholarly exchanges with those countries.

**(c) Reciprocal cultural centers**

The President should consider the establishment of reciprocal cultural centers in Poland and the United States and in Hungary and the United States to facilitate government-funded and privately-funded cultural exchanges.

**(d) Sister institutions programs**

The President shall act to encourage the establishment of “sister institution” programs be-

tween American and Polish organizations and between American and Hungarian organizations, including such organizations as institutions of higher education, cities and towns, and organizations in such fields as medicine and health care, business management, environmental protection, and agricultural research and marketing.

**(e) Authorization of appropriations**

To enable the United States Information Agency to support the activities described in this section, there are authorized to be appropriated \$12,000,000 for the 3-year period beginning October 1, 1989, in addition to amounts otherwise available for such purposes.

(Pub. L. 101-179, title IV, §401, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1314.)

**§ 5442. Poland-Hungary scholarship partnership**

**(a) Establishment of scholarship program**

The Administrator of the Agency for International Development is authorized to establish and administer a program of scholarship assistance, in cooperation with State governments, universities, community colleges, and businesses, to provide scholarships to enable students from Poland and Hungary to study in the United States.

**(b) Emphasis on business and economics**

The scholarship program provided for in this section shall emphasize scholarships to enable students from Poland and Hungary to study business and economics in the United States. Such scholarships may be provided for study in programs that range from the standard management courses to more specialized assistance in commercial banking and the creation of a stock market.

**(c) Grants to States**

In carrying out this section, the Administrator may make grants to States to provide scholarship assistance for undergraduate or graduate degree programs, and training programs of one year or longer, in study areas related to the critical development needs of Poland and Hungary.

**(d) Consultation with States**

The Administrator shall consult with the participating States with regard to the educational opportunities available within each State and on the assignment of scholarship recipients.

**(e) Federal share**

The Federal share for each year for which a State receives payments under this section shall not be more than 50 percent.

**(f) Non-Federal share**

The non-Federal share of payments under this section may be in cash, including the waiver of tuition or the offering of in-State tuition or housing waivers or subsidies, or in-kind fairly evaluated, including the provision of books or supplies.

**(g) Forgiveness of scholarship assistance**

The obligation of any recipient to reimburse any entity for any or all scholarship assistance

provided under this section shall be forgiven upon the recipient's prompt return to Poland or Hungary, as the case may be, for a period which is at least one year longer than the period spent studying in the United States with scholarship assistance.

**(h) Private sector participation**

To the maximum extent practicable, each participating State shall enlist the assistance of the private sector to enable the State to meet the non-Federal share of payments under this section. Wherever appropriate, each participating State shall encourage the private sector to offer internships or other opportunities consistent with the purposes of this section to students receiving scholarships under this section.

**(i) Funding**

Grants to States pursuant to this section shall be made with funds made available to carry out chapter 1 of part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2151 and following; relating to development assistance) or chapter 4 of part II of that Act (22 U.S.C. 2346 and following; relating to the economic support fund). In addition to amounts otherwise available for such purpose under those chapters, there are authorized to be appropriated \$10,000,000 for the 3-year period beginning October 1, 1989, for use in carrying out this section.

**(j) Restrictions not applicable**

Prohibitions on the use of foreign assistance funds for assistance for Poland and Hungary shall not apply with respect to the funds made available to carry out this section.

**(k) "State" defined**

As used in this section, the term "State" means each of the several States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, Guam, American Samoa, the Virgin Islands, the Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands, and the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands.

(Pub. L. 101-179, title IV, §402, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1315.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (i), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended. Chapter 1 of part I and chapter 4 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 are classified generally to part I (§2151 et seq.) of subchapter I and part IV (§2346 et seq.) of subchapter II, respectively, of chapter 32 of this title. For provisions deeming references to part I of subchapter I to include a reference to section 2293 of this title, see section 2293(d)(1) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

TERMINATION OF TRUST TERRITORY OF THE PACIFIC ISLANDS

For termination of Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands, see note set out preceding section 1681 of Title 48, Territories and Insular Possessions.

**§ 5443. Science and technology exchange with Poland and Hungary**

**(a) Agreement with Poland**

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary of State for purposes of continuing to

implement the 1987 United States-Polish science and technology agreement—

- (1) \$1,500,000 for fiscal year 1990,
- (2) \$2,000,000 for fiscal year 1991, and
- (3) \$2,000,000 for fiscal year 1992.

**(b) Agreement with Hungary**

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary of State for purposes of implementing the 1989 United States-Hungarian science and technology agreement—

- (1) \$500,000 for fiscal year 1990,
- (2) \$1,000,000 for fiscal year 1991, and
- (3) \$1,000,000 for fiscal year 1992.

**(c) Definition of agreements being funded**

For purposes of this section—

(1) the term “1987 United States-Polish science and technology agreement” refers to the agreement concluded in 1987 by the United States and Poland, entitled “Agreement Between the Government of the United States of America and the Polish People’s Republic on Cooperation in Science and Technology and Its Funding”, together with annexes relating thereto; and

(2) the term “1989 United States-Hungarian science and technology agreement” refers to the agreement concluded in 1989 by the United States and Hungary, entitled “Agreement Between the Government of the United States of America and the Government of the Hungarian People’s Republic for Scientific and Technology Cooperation”, together with annexes relating thereto.

(Pub. L. 101-179, title IV, § 403, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1316.)

SUBCHAPTER IV—OTHER ASSISTANCE  
PROGRAMS

**§ 5451. Assistance in support of democratic institutions in Poland and Hungary**

**(a) Authorization of assistance**

In addition to amounts otherwise available for such purposes, there are authorized to be appropriated to carry out chapter 4 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2346 and following; relating to the economic support fund) \$12,000,000 for the 3-year period beginning October 1, 1989, which shall be available only for the support of democratic institutions and activities in Poland and Hungary.

**(b) Nonapplicability of other laws**

Assistance may be provided under this section notwithstanding any other provision of law.

(Pub. L. 101-179, title V, § 501, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1317.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended. Chapter 4 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 is classified to part IV (§ 2346 et seq.) of subchapter II of chapter 32 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

**§ 5452. Environmental initiatives for Poland and Hungary**

**(a) Priority for control of pollution**

The Congress recognizes the severe pollution problems affecting Poland and Hungary and the

serious health problems which ensue from such pollution. The Congress therefore directs that a high priority be given in the implementation of assistance to Poland and Hungary to the control of pollution and the restoration of the natural resource base on which a sustainable, healthy economy depends.

**(b) EPA activities generally**

In addition to specific authorities contained in any of the environmental statutes administered by the Environmental Protection Agency, the Administrator of that Agency (hereinafter in this section referred to as the “Administrator”) is authorized to undertake such educational, policy training, research, and technical and financial assistance, monitoring, coordinating, and other activities as the Administrator may deem appropriate, either alone or in cooperation with other United States or foreign agencies, governments, or public or private institutions, in protecting the environment in Poland and Hungary.

**(c) EPA activities in Poland**

The Administrator shall cooperate with Polish officials and experts to—

(1) establish an air quality monitoring network in the Krakow metropolitan area as a part of Poland’s national air monitoring network; and

(2) improve both water quality and the availability of drinking water in the Krakow metropolitan area.

**(d) EPA activities in Hungary**

The Administrator shall work with other United States and Hungarian officials and private parties to establish and support a regional center in Budapest for facilitating cooperative environmental activities between governmental experts and public and private organizations from the United States and Eastern and Western Europe.

**(e) Funding of EPA activities**

To enable the Environmental Protection Agency to carry out subsections (b), (c), and (d) of this section, there are authorized to be appropriated \$10,000,000 for the 3-year period beginning October 1, 1989, to carry out chapter 1 of part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2151 and following; relating to development assistance) or chapter 4 of Part<sup>1</sup> II of that Act (22 U.S.C. 2346 and following; relating to the economic support fund). These funds may be used to carry out those subsections notwithstanding any provision of law relating to the use of foreign assistance funds.

**(f) Department of Energy activities relating to fossil fuels**

**(1) Clean coal**

The Secretary of Energy shall cooperate with Polish officials and experts to retrofit a coal-fired commercial powerplant in the Krakow, Poland, region with advanced clean coal technology that has been successfully demonstrated at a comparably scaled powerplant in the United States. Such retrofit shall

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should not be capitalized.



be carried out by one or more United States companies using United States technology and equipment manufactured in the United States. The Secretary may vest title in any property acquired under this paragraph in an entity other than the United States.

**(2) Equipment assessment**

The Secretary of Energy shall cooperate with Polish officials and experts and companies within the United States to assess and develop the capability within Poland to manufacture or modify boilers, furnaces, smelters, or other equipment that will enable industrial facilities within Poland to use fossil fuels cleanly. The Secretary may vest title in any property acquired under this paragraph in an entity other than the United States.

**(3) Authorization of appropriations**

To carry out paragraphs (1) and (2) of this subsection, there are authorized to be appropriated \$30,000,000 for the 3-year period beginning October 1, 1989. Not more than \$10,000,000 of the funds appropriated under this paragraph may be used to carry out the requirements of paragraph (1).

**(g) Priority for efficient energy use**

In view of the high energy usage per unit of output in Hungary and Poland, the Secretary of Energy shall give high priority to assisting officials of Poland and Hungary in improving the efficiency of their energy use, through emphasis on such measures as efficient motors, lights, gears, and appliances and improvements in building insulation and design.

**(h) Alternative investments in energy in Hungary**

It is the sense of the Congress that the Executive branch should work with the Government of Hungary to achieve environmentally safe alternative investments in energy efficiency, particularly with regard to projects along the Danube River.

(Pub. L. 101-179, title V, § 502, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1317.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (e), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended. Chapter 1 of part I and chapter 4 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 are classified generally to part I (§2151 et seq.) of subchapter I and part IV (§2346 et seq.) of subchapter II, respectively, of chapter 32 of this title. For provisions deeming references to part I of subchapter I to include a reference to section 2293 of this title, see section 2293(d)(1) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

**§ 5453. Medical supplies, hospital equipment, and medical training for Poland**

**(a) Authorization of assistance**

In addition to amounts otherwise available for such purposes, there are authorized to be appropriated to carry out chapter 4 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2346 and following; relating to the economic support fund) \$4,000,000 for the 3-year period beginning October 1, 1989, which shall be available only—

(1) for providing medical supplies and hospital equipment to Poland through private and voluntary organizations, including for the expenses of purchasing, transporting, and distributing such supplies and equipment, and

(2) for training of Polish medical personnel.

**(b) Nonapplicability of other laws**

Assistance may be provided under this section notwithstanding any other provision of law, other than—

(1) section 104(f) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2151b(f); relating to the prohibition on the use of funds for abortions and involuntary sterilizations), and

(2) any provision of the annual Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Act that relates to abortion.

(Pub. L. 101-179, title V, § 503, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1318.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended. Chapter 4 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 is classified to part IV (§2346 et seq.) of subchapter II of chapter 32 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

The Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(2), is for fiscal year 1990, Pub. L. 101-167, Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1195. For complete classification of this and other Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Acts to the Code, see Tables.

SUBCHAPTER V—ADDITIONAL SEED PROGRAM ACTIONS

**§ 5461. Policy coordination of SEED Program**

The President shall designate, within the Department of State, a SEED Program coordinator who shall be directly responsible for overseeing and coordinating all programs described in this chapter and all other activities that the United States Government conducts in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter.

(Pub. L. 101-179, title VI, § 601, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1319.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 101-179, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1298, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 5401 of this title and Tables.

**§ 5462. SEED Information Center System**

**(a) Establishment**

The President shall establish a SEED Information Center System, using existing Executive branch agencies and acting in cooperation with the Government of Poland and the Government of Hungary.

**(b) Functions**

**(1) In general**

The SEED Information Center System shall serve as a central clearinghouse mechanism for information relating to—

(A) business needs and opportunities in Eastern Europe, and

(B) voluntary assistance to countries in Eastern Europe.

**(2) Private enterprise development**

The SEED Information Center System shall be organized, among other purposes, to encourage—

(A) the submission of economically sound proposals to the Polish-American Enterprise Fund and Hungarian-American Enterprise Fund, and

(B) other sources of finance for the development of private enterprise in Eastern Europe.

**(c) Location**

The SEED Information Center System shall be based jointly in Washington, District of Columbia; Warsaw, Poland; and Budapest, Hungary; and should it become appropriate, the capitals of other East European countries.

(Pub. L. 101-179, title VI, §602, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1319.)

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of Commerce by section 3 of Ex. Ord. No. 12703, Feb. 20, 1990, 55 F.R. 6351, set out as a note under section 5401 of this title.

**§ 5463. Encouraging voluntary assistance for Poland and Hungary**

**(a) Encouraging private contributions**

It is the sense of the Congress that the President should take all possible steps to encourage across the Nation a massive outpouring of private contributions of money and nonperishable foods, to be collected by civic, religious, school, and youth organizations, for assistance to Poland and to refugees from Romania who are in Hungary.

**(b) Transportation to Poland of private contributions**

In further<sup>1</sup> of subsection (a) of this section, the President—

(1) using all available authorities, including section 402 of title 10 (relating to transportation of humanitarian relief supplies), should use resources of the Department of Defense (including the National Guard) to transport nonfinancial private contributions to Poland;<sup>2</sup>

(2) should request additional authorities as needed for the use of those resources for that purpose; and

(3) should encourage maximum participation by such recognized private and voluntary organizations as the Polish-American Congress in the transportation of nonfinancial private contributions to Poland.

(Pub. L. 101-179, title VI, §603, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1319.)

**§ 5464. Economic and commercial officers at United States embassies and missions in Poland and Hungary**

It is the sense of the Congress that, to the extent practicable—

(1) the United States Embassy in Budapest, Hungary, should be assigned one additional economic and commercial officer;

(2) the United States Embassy in Warsaw, Poland, should be assigned one additional economic officer and one additional commercial officer;

(3) the United States Trade Center in Warsaw, Poland, should be assigned one additional economic and commercial officer; and

(4) the United States mission in Krakow, Poland, should be assigned one additional economic and commercial officer.

(Pub. L. 101-179, title VI, §604, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1320.)

SUBCHAPTER VI—REPORTS TO CONGRESS

**§ 5471. Report on initial steps taken by United States and on Poland's requirement for agricultural assistance**

**(a) Initial report**

Not later than 60 days after November 28, 1989, the President shall submit a report to the Congress—

(1) describing the steps taken by the United States Government pursuant to subchapter I of this chapter, in particular sections<sup>1</sup> 5412(a) and (b) of this title;

(2) assessing Poland's requirements for additional agricultural assistance during fiscal year 1990 and its requirements for agricultural assistance during fiscal years 1991 and 1992; and

(3) specifying how much agricultural assistance the President proposes be provided by the United States to meet those requirements.

**(b) Updating assessments**

As additional information becomes available, the President shall provide to the Congress revised assessments of Poland's requirements for agricultural assistance during fiscal years 1991 and 1992, specifying how much agricultural assistance the President proposes be provided by the United States to meet those requirements.

(Pub. L. 101-179, title VII, §701, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1320.)

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this subchapter relating to reports to Congress delegated to Coordinator of the SEED Program by section 1 of Ex. Ord. No. 12703, Feb. 20, 1990, 55 F.R. 6351, set out as a note under section 5401 of this title.

**§ 5472. Report on confidence building measures by Poland and Hungary**

Not later than 180 days after November 28, 1989, the President shall submit a report to the Congress identifying—

(1) the confidence building measures Poland and Hungary could undertake to facilitate the negotiation of agreements, including bilateral customs and technology transfer agreements, that would encourage greater direct private sector investment in that country; and

(2) the confidence building measures Poland and Hungary could undertake with respect to

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be "furtherance".

<sup>2</sup> So in original. The comma probably should be a semicolon.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be "section".

the treatment accorded those countries under the Export Administration Act of 1979 [50 App. U.S.C. 2401 et seq.].

(Pub. L. 101–179, title VII, §702, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1320.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Export Administration Act of 1979, referred to in par. (2), is Pub. L. 96–72, Sept. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 503, as amended, which is classified principally to section 2401 et seq. of the Appendix to Title 50, War and National Defense. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2401 of the Appendix to Title 50 and Tables.

### § 5473. Report on environmental problems in Poland and Hungary

The first report submitted pursuant to section 5474 of this title shall include the following:

#### (1) Assessment of problems

An overall assessment of the environmental problems facing Poland and Hungary, including—

- (A) a relative ranking of the severity of the problems and their effects on both human health and the general environment;
- (B) a listing of the geographical areas of each country that have suffered the heaviest environmental damage, and a description of the source and scope of the damage; and
- (C) an assessment of the environmental performance of leading industrial polluters in those countries and the expected effect on pollution levels of industrial modernization.

#### (2) Priorities and costs for action

An analysis of the priorities that Poland and Hungary should each assign in addressing its environmental problems, and an estimate of the capital and human resources required to undertake a comprehensive program of environmental protection in that country.

#### (3) Role of United States and multilateral assistance

A statement of strategy for United States assistance for the next 5 years to address environmental problems in Poland and Hungary, including—

- (A) recommendations for appropriate levels and forms of bilateral financial and technical assistance;
- (B) recommendations concerning United States participation in cooperative multilateral undertakings;
- (C) an assessment of the feasibility of debt-for-nature swaps as a technique of environmental protection in each country; and
- (D) recommendations for minimizing further environmental damage to Krakow, and for the protection and restoration of historic sites in that city.

(Pub. L. 101–179, title VII, §703, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1321.)

### § 5474. Annual SEED Program report

#### (a) Findings

The Congress finds that—

- (1) in order to provide the President with maximum flexibility and opportunity for inno-

vation in implementation of the SEED Program, this chapter sets forth general goals and modalities for the support of democracy and economic pluralism in Eastern Europe;

(2) prompt United States action in devising specific measures to achieve the goals outlined in this chapter will be crucial in generating the public awareness, and the international commitment, necessary for United States leadership of a successful multilateral program of assistance in Eastern Europe; and

(3) clear-cut delineation of such United States actions at an early date is integral to United States leadership of this effort.

#### (b) Initial SEED Program report

Accordingly, the first report pursuant to subsection (c) of this section shall be a comprehensive report that includes a full description of all SEED Actions taken pursuant to each provision of this chapter since November 28, 1989.

#### (c) Annual SEED Program report

Not later than January 31 of each year (beginning in 1991), the President shall submit to the Congress a “Report on the United States Program of Support for East European Democracy (the SEED Program)”. Each such report shall describe the assistance provided to each East European country under this chapter during the preceding fiscal year. In addition, each such report shall contain an assessment of the progress made by each such recipient country in—

(1) implementing economic policies designed to promote sustained economic growth, develop economic freedom, and increase opportunities for the people of that country; and

(2) adopting and implementing constitutional, legal, and administrative measures that—

(A) affect the powers of the executive and legislative authorities and the independence of the judiciary,

(B) affect the formation and operation of independent political parties, groups, associations, or organizations, or

(C) affect fundamental human rights and civil liberties.

(Pub. L. 101–179, title VII, §704, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1321.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 101–179, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1298, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 5401 of this title and Tables.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 5473, 5475 of this title.

### § 5475. Reports on certain activities

At the same time each report is submitted pursuant to section 5474(c) of this title, the President shall submit to the appropriate committees of the Congress a report on the extent of espionage activities against the United States and other member countries of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization by operatives of the government of any East European country that

is receiving assistance under this chapter. Such reports may be submitted in classified form.

(Pub. L. 101-179, title VII, §705, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1322.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 101-179, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1298, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 5401 of this title and Tables.

**§ 5476. Notifications to Congress regarding assistance**

Section 634A of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2394-1; relating to reprogramming notifications) applies with respect to obligations of funds made available under that Act [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.] to carry out this chapter, notwithstanding any other provision of this chapter.

(Pub. L. 101-179, title VII, §706, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1322.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 32 (§2151 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 101-179, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1298, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 5401 of this title and Tables.

SUBCHAPTER VII—MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

**§ 5491. Suspension of SEED assistance**

The President should suspend all assistance to an East European country pursuant to this chapter if the President determines, and reports to the Congress, that—

(1) that country is engaged in international activities directly and fundamentally contrary to United States national security interests;

(2) the president or any other government official of that country initiates martial law or a state of emergency for reasons other than to respond to a natural disaster or a foreign invasion; or

(3) any member who was elected to that country’s parliament has been removed from that office or arrested through extra-constitutional processes.

(Pub. L. 101-179, title VIII, §801, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1322.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 101-179, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1298, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 5401 of this title and Tables.

**§ 5492. Declaration of the Republic of Hungary**

**(a) Findings**

The Congress finds that—

(1) on October 23, 1989, in a public ceremony in Budapest, the acting President of Hungary declared the Hungarian state to be an independent, democratic Republic of Hungary;

(2) this public ceremony was held on the 33d anniversary of Hungary’s 1956 revolution that was bloodily suppressed by Soviet troops;

(3) this public ceremony was held in the same Kossuth Square where the first mass rally of the 1956 revolution was held;

(4) as a further symbol of Hungary’s faithfulness to the legacy of the revolution of 1956, the declaration by the acting President was made from the same balcony from which Imre Nagy, the martyred Prime Minister of the revolutionary government of 1956, addressed the citizens of Budapest 33 years before;

(5) the heroic revolt and freedom fight of the Hungarian people in 1956 was an inspirational event, reminding a generation of Americans of the sacrifices people are willing to undertake as the price of liberty; and

(6) the present efforts of the Hungarian people to validate the legacy of the revolution of 1956 by establishing a free, independent, and prosperous Hungary have gained the sympathy and admiration of the American people.

**(b) Congressional declarations**

The Congress—

(1) congratulates the people of Hungary on the declaration of a Republic of Hungary committed to democratic principles; and

(2) expresses its desire to enhance the friendly relations between the people of Hungary and the people of the United States and between their respective governments.

(Pub. L. 101-179, title VIII, §802, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1322.)

**§ 5493. Administrative expenses of Agency for International Development**

For the purpose of paying administrative expenses incurred in connection with carrying out its functions under this chapter, the Agency for International Development may use up to \$500,000 each fiscal year of the funds made available to the Agency under this chapter.

(Pub. L. 101-179, title VIII, §803, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1323.)

ADMINISTRATIVE EXPENSES OF AGENCY FOR INTERNATIONAL DEVELOPMENT FOR FISCAL YEAR 1991; SUPPLEMENTATION OF SECTION

Pub. L. 101-513, title II, (d), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1994, provided that: “Up to \$1,000,000 of the funds appropriated under this heading [“Assistance for Eastern Europe”] may be used for the administrative expenses incurred by the Agency for International Development in connection with administering programs for Eastern Europe: *Provided*, That the authority of this subsection shall supersede for fiscal year 1991 the provisions of section 803 of the Support for East European Democracy (SEED) Act of 1989 [22 U.S.C. 5493].”

**§ 5494. Relation of provisions of this chapter to certain provisions of appropriations acts**

Any provision of the annual Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Act that provides that assistance for Poland or Hungary under that Act may

be provided “notwithstanding any other provision of law” shall not supersede any otherwise applicable provision of this chapter. This section shall not, however, be construed to apply with respect to section 599C(b) of the Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Act, 1990 (or a corresponding provision of a subsequent such appropriations Act. (Pub. L. 101–179, title VIII, § 804, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1323.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Act, referred to in text, is for fiscal year 1990, Pub. L. 101–167, Nov. 21, 1989, 103 Stat. 1195. Section 599C(b) of the 1990 Act, 103 Stat. 1261, is not classified to the Code. For complete classification of this and other Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Appropriations Acts to the Code, see Tables.

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this Act”, meaning Pub. L. 101–179, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1298, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 5401 of this title and Tables.

**§ 5495. Certain uses of excess foreign currencies****(a) Authority to use**

During fiscal year 1990, the Administrator of the Agency for International Development may use, for the purposes described in subsection (b) of this section, such sums of foreign currencies described in subsection (c) of this section as the Administrator may determine, subject to subsection (f) of this section.

**(b) Purposes for which currency may be used**

Foreign currencies may be used under this section—

(1) for the same purposes for which assistance may be provided under part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2151 and following; relating to economic assistance), and

(2) for the support of any institution providing education for a significant number of United States nationals (who may include members of the United States Armed Forces or the Foreign Service or dependents of such members).

**(c) Currencies which may be used**

The foreign currencies which may be used under this section are United States-owned excess foreign currencies that are in excess of amounts necessary for satisfaction of preexisting commitments to use such currencies for other purposes specified by law.

**(d) Where currencies may be used**

Foreign currencies may be used under this section in the country where such currencies are held or in other foreign countries.

**(e) Nonapplicability of other provisions of law**

Foreign currencies may be used under this section notwithstanding section 1306 of title 31 or any other provision of law.

**(f) Requirement for appropriations action**

The authority of this section may be exercised only to such extent or in such amount as may be provided in advance in an appropriation Act.

(Pub. L. 101–179, title VIII, § 805, Nov. 28, 1989, 103 Stat. 1323.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (b)(1), is Pub. L. 87–195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended. Part I of the Act is classified generally to subchapter I (§2151 et seq.) of chapter 32 of this title. For provisions deeming references to subchapter I to include parts IV (§2346 et seq.), VI (§2348 et seq.), and VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of chapter 32, see section 202(b) of Pub. L. 92–228, set out as a note under section 2346 of this title, and sections 2348c and 2349aa–5 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

**CHAPTER 64—UNITED STATES RESPONSE TO TERRORISM AFFECTING AMERICANS ABROAD**

|       |   |
|-------|---|
| Sec.  |   |
| 5501. | International negotiations concerning aviation security.<br>(a) United States policy.<br>(b) Negotiations for aviation security.  |
| 5502. | Coordinator for Counterterrorism.   |
| 5503. | Department of State notification of families of victims.<br>(a) Department of State policy.<br>(b) Department of State guidelines.  |
| 5504. | Designation of State Department-family liaison and toll-free family communications system.<br>(a) Designation of State Department-family liaison.<br>(b) Toll-free communications system.   |
| 5505. | Disaster training for State Department personnel.<br>(a) Additional training.<br>(b) Training improvements.   |
| 5506. | Department of State responsibilities and procedures at international disaster site.<br>(a) Dispatch of senior State Department official to site.<br>(b) Criteria for Department of State staffing at disaster site.<br>(c) State Department ombudsman.<br>(d) Crisis teams. |
| 5507. | Recovery and disposition of remains and personal effects.   |
| 5508. | Assessment of Lockerbie experience.<br>(a) Assessment.<br>(b) Guidelines.   |
| 5509. | Official Department of State recognition.   |
| 5510. | United States Government compensation for victims of terrorism.<br>(a) Compensation.<br>(b) Board.<br>(c) Income tax benefit for victims of Lockerbie terrorism.  |
| 5511. | Overseas Security Electronic Bulletin Board.  |
| 5512. | Antiterrorism measures.<br>(a) Guidelines for international aviation travelers.<br>(b) Development of international standards.<br>(c) Publication of rewards for terrorism-related information.<br>(d) Sense of Congress.   |
| 5513. | Proposal for consideration by International Civil Aviation Organization.  |

**§ 5501. International negotiations concerning aviation security****(a) United States policy**

It is the policy of the United States—

(1) to seek bilateral agreements to achieve United States aviation security objectives with foreign governments;

(2) to continue to press vigorously for security improvements through the Foreign Airport Security Act<sup>1</sup> and the foreign airport assessment program; and

(3) to continue to work through the International Civil Aviation Organization to improve aviation security internationally.

**(b) Negotiations for aviation security**

(1) The Department of State, in consultation with the Department of Transportation, shall be responsible for negotiating requisite aviation security agreements with foreign governments concerning the implementation of United States rules and regulations which affect the foreign operations of United States air carriers, foreign air carriers, and foreign international airports. The Secretary of State is directed to enter, expeditiously, into negotiations for bilateral and multilateral agreements—

(A) for enhanced aviation security objectives;

(B) to implement the Foreign Airport Security Act<sup>1</sup> and the foreign airport assessment program to the fullest extent practicable; and

(C) to achieve improved availability of passenger manifest information.

(2) A principal objective of bilateral and multilateral negotiations with foreign governments and the International Civil Aviation Organization shall be improved availability of passenger manifest information.

(Pub. L. 101-604, title II, §201, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3081.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

No act with the title Foreign Airport Security Act, referred to in subsecs. (a)(2) and (b)(1)(B), has been enacted. The Foreign Airport Security Act probably means part B (§§551-559) of title V of Pub. L. 99-83, Aug. 8, 1985, 99 Stat. 222. For complete classification of part B to the Code, see Tables.

CONGRESSIONAL FINDINGS

Section 2 of Pub. L. 101-604 provided that: “Congress finds that—

“(1) the safety and security of passengers of United States air carriers against terrorist threats should be given the highest priority by the United States Government;

“(2) the report of the President’s Commission on Aviation Security and Terrorism, dated May 15, 1990, found that current aviation security systems are inadequate to provide such protection;

“(3) the United States Government should immediately take steps to ensure fuller compliance with existing laws and regulations relating to aviation security;

“(4) the United States Government should work through the International Civil Aviation Organization and directly with foreign governments to enhance aviation security of foreign carriers and at foreign airports;

“(5) the United States Government should ensure that enhanced security measures are fully implemented by both United States and foreign air carriers;

“(6) all nations belonging to the Summit Seven should promptly amend the Bonn Declaration to extend sanctions for all terrorist acts, including attacks against airports and air carrier ticket offices;

“(7) the United States Government, in bilateral negotiations with foreign governments, should empha-

size upgrading international aviation security objectives;

“(8) the United States Government should have in place a mechanism by which the Government notifies the public, on a case-by-case basis and through the application of a uniform national standard, of certain credible threats to civil aviation security;

“(9) the United States Government has a special obligation to United States victims of acts of terrorism directed against this Nation and should provide prompt assistance to the families of such victims and assure that fair and prompt compensation is provided to such victims and their families;

“(10) the United States should work with other nations to treat as outlaws state sponsors of terrorism, isolating such sponsors politically, economically, and militarily;

“(11) the United States must develop a clear understanding that state-sponsored terrorism threatens United States values and interests, and that active measures are needed to counter more effectively the terrorist threat; and

“(12) the United States must have the national will to take every feasible action to prevent, counter, and respond to terrorist activities.”

**§ 5502. Coordinator for Counterterrorism**

The Coordinator for Counterterrorism shall be responsible for the coordination of international aviation security for the Department of State.

(Pub. L. 101-604, title II, §202, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3082.)

AUTHORITY OF SECRETARY OF STATE

Except as otherwise provided, Secretary of State to have and exercise any authority vested by law in any official or office of Department of State and references to such officials or offices deemed to refer to Secretary of State or Department of State, as appropriate, but for not less than one year after Apr. 30, 1994, an Office of the Coordinator for Counterterrorism, headed by a Coordinator for Counterterrorism, to be in Department of State and to have same responsibilities and function as such Office had as of Jan. 20, 1993, see section 2651a of this title and section 161(d), (e) of Pub. L. 103-236, set out as notes under section 2651a of this title.

**§ 5503. Department of State notification of families of victims**

**(a) Department of State policy**

It is the policy of the Department of State pursuant to section 2715 of this title to directly and promptly notify the families of victims of aviation disasters abroad concerning citizens of the United States directly affected by such a disaster, including timely written notice. The Secretary of State shall ensure that such notification by the Department of State is carried out notwithstanding notification by any other person.

**(b) Department of State guidelines**

Not later than 60 days after November 16, 1990, the Secretary of State shall issue such regulations, guidelines, and circulars as are necessary to ensure that the policy under subsection (a) of this section is fully implemented.

(Pub. L. 101-604, title II, §204, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3083.)

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

**§ 5504. Designation of State Department-family liaison and toll-free family communications system**

**(a) Designation of State Department-family liaison**

Not later than 60 days after November 16, 1990, the Secretary of State shall issue such rules and guidelines as are necessary to provide that in the event of an aviation disaster directly involving United States citizens abroad, if possible, the Department of State will assign a specific individual, and an alternate, as the Department of State liaison for the family of each such citizen.

**(b) Toll-free communications system**

In the establishment of the Department of State toll-free communications system to facilitate inquiries concerning the affect of any disaster abroad on United States citizens residing or traveling abroad, the Secretary of State shall ensure that a toll-free telephone number is reserved for the exclusive use of the families of citizens who have been determined to be directly involved in any such disaster.

(Pub. L. 101-604, title II, §205, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3083.)

**§ 5505. Disaster training for State Department personnel**

**(a) Additional training**

The Secretary of State shall institute a supplemental program of training in disaster management for all consular officers.

**(b) Training improvements**

(1) In expanding the training program under subsection (a) of this section, the Secretary of State shall consult with death and bereavement counselors concerning the particular demands posed by aviation tragedies and terrorist activities.

(2) In providing such additional training under subsection (a) of this section the Secretary of State shall consider supplementing the current training program through—

(A) providing specialized training to create a team of “disaster specialists” to deploy immediately in a crisis; or

(B) securing outside experts to be brought in during the initial phases to assist consular personnel.

(Pub. L. 101-604, title II, §206, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3084.)

**§ 5506. Department of State responsibilities and procedures at international disaster site**

**(a) Dispatch of senior State Department official to site**

Not later than 60 days after November 16, 1990, the Secretary of State shall issue such rules and guidelines as are necessary to provide that in the event of an international disaster, particularly an aviation tragedy, directly involving significant numbers of United States citizens abroad not less than one senior officer from the Bureau of Consular Affairs of the Department of State shall be dispatched to the site of such disaster.

**(b) Criteria for Department of State staffing at disaster site**

Not later than 60 days after November 16, 1990, the Secretary of State shall promulgate criteria for Department of State staffing of disaster sites abroad. Such criteria shall define responsibility for staffing decisions and shall consider the deployment of crisis teams under subsection (d) of this section. The Secretary of State shall promptly issue such rules and guidelines as are necessary to implement criteria developed pursuant to this subsection.

**(c) State Department ombudsman**

Not later than 60 days after November 16, 1990, the Secretary of State shall issue such rules and guidelines as are necessary to provide that in the event of an international aviation disaster involving significant numbers of United States citizens abroad not less than one officer or employee of the Department of State shall be dispatched to the disaster site to provide on-site assistance to families who may visit the site and to act as an ombudsman in matters involving the foreign local government authorities and social service agencies.

**(d) Crisis teams**

Not later than 60 days after November 16, 1990, the Secretary of State shall promulgate procedures for the deployment of a “crisis team”, which may include public affairs, forensic, and bereavement experts, to the site of any international disaster involving United States citizens abroad to augment in-country Embassy and consulate staff. The Secretary of State shall promptly issue such rules and guidelines as are necessary to implement procedures developed pursuant to this subsection.

(Pub. L. 101-604, title II, §207, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3084.)

AUTHORITY OF SECRETARY OF STATE

Except as otherwise provided, Secretary of State to have and exercise any authority vested by law in any official or office of Department of State and references to such officials or offices deemed to refer to Secretary of State or Department of State, as appropriate, see section 2651a of this title and section 161(d) of Pub. L. 103-236, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

**§ 5507. Recovery and disposition of remains and personal effects**

It is the policy of the Department of State (pursuant to section 2715 of this title) to provide liaison with foreign governments and persons and with United States air carriers concerning arrangements for the preparation and transport to the United States of the remains of citizens who die abroad, as well as the disposition of personal effects. The Secretary of State shall ensure that regulations and guidelines of the Department of State reflect such policy and that such assistance is rendered to the families of United States citizens who are killed in terrorist incidents and disasters abroad.

(Pub. L. 101-604, title II, §208, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3085.)

**§ 5508. Assessment of Lockerbie experience****(a) Assessment**

The Secretary of State shall compile an assessment of the Department of State response to the Pan American Airways Flight 103 aviation disaster over Lockerbie, Scotland, on December 21, 1988.

**(b) Guidelines**

The Secretary of State shall establish, based on the assessment compiled under subsection (a) of this section and other relevant factors, guidelines for future Department of State responses to comparable disasters and shall distribute such guidelines to all United States diplomatic and consular posts abroad.

(Pub. L. 101-604, title II, §209, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3085.)

**§ 5509. Official Department of State recognition**

Not later than 60 days after November 16, 1990, the Secretary of State shall promulgate guidelines for appropriate ceremonies or other official expressions of respect and support for the families of United States citizens who are killed through acts of terrorism abroad.

(Pub. L. 101-604, title II, §210, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3085.)

**§ 5510. United States Government compensation for victims of terrorism****(a) Compensation**

The President shall submit to the Congress, not later than one year after November 16, 1990, recommendations on whether or not legislation should be enacted to authorize the United States to provide monetary and tax relief as compensation to United States citizens who are victims of terrorism.

**(b) Board**

The President may establish a board to develop criteria for compensation and to recommend changes to existing laws to establish a single comprehensive approach to victim compensation for terrorist acts.

**(c) Income tax benefit for victims of Lockerbie terrorism****(1) In general**

Subject to paragraph (2), in the case of any individual whose death was a direct result of the Pan American Airways Flight 103 terrorist disaster over Lockerbie, Scotland, on December 21, 1988, any tax imposed by subtitle A of title 26 shall not apply—

(A) with respect to the taxable year which includes December 21, 1988, and

(B) with respect to the prior taxable year.

**(2) Limitation**

In no case may the tax benefit pursuant to paragraph (1) for any taxable year, for any individual, exceed an amount equal to 28 percent of the annual rate of basic pay at Level V of the Executive Schedule of the United States as of December 21, 1988.

(Pub. L. 101-604, title II, §211, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3085.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

Level V of the Executive Schedule, referred to in subsec. (c)(2), is set out in section 5316 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

**§ 5511. Overseas Security Electronic Bulletin Board**

Not later than 60 days after November 16, 1990, the Secretary of State shall issue such rules and regulations as may be necessary to establish, under the Bureau of Consular Affairs, an electronic bulletin board accessible to the general public. Such bulletin board shall contain all information, updated daily, which is available on the Overseas Security Electronic Bulletin Board of the Bureau of Diplomatic Security.

(Pub. L. 101-604, title II, §212, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3086.)

## AUTHORITY OF SECRETARY OF STATE

Except as otherwise provided, Secretary of State to have and exercise any authority vested by law in any official or office of Department of State and references to such officials or offices deemed to refer to Secretary of State or Department of State, as appropriate, see section 2651a of this title and section 161(d) of Pub. L. 103-236, set out as a note under section 2651a of this title.

**§ 5512. Antiterrorism measures****(a) Guidelines for international aviation travelers**

For the purpose of notifying the public, the Secretary of State, in consultation with the Secretary of Transportation, shall develop and publish guidelines for thwarting efforts by international terrorists to enlist the unwitting assistance of international aviation travelers in terrorist activities. Notices concerning such guidelines shall be posted and prominently displayed domestically and abroad in international airports.

**(b) Development of international standards**

The Secretary of State and the Secretary of Transportation in all appropriate fora, particularly talks and meetings related to international civil aviation, shall enter into negotiations with other nations for the establishment of international standards regarding guidelines for thwarting efforts by international terrorists to enlist the unwitting assistance of international aviation travelers in terrorist activities.

**(c) Publication of rewards for terrorism-related information**

For the purpose of notifying the public, the Secretary of State shall publish the availability of United States Government rewards for information on international terrorist-related activities, including rewards available under section 2708(a) of this title and chapter 204 of title 18. To the extent appropriate and feasible, notices making such publication shall be posted and prominently displayed domestically and abroad in international airports.

**(d) Sense of Congress**

It is the sense of Congress that the Secretary of Transportation should take appropriate meas-



ures to utilize and train properly the officers and employees of other United States Government agencies who have functions at international airports in the United States and abroad in the detection of explosives and firearms which could be a threat to international civil aviation.

(Pub. L. 101-604, title II, §214, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3087.)

#### § 5513. Proposal for consideration by International Civil Aviation Organization

Not later than 60 days after November 16, 1990, the Secretary of State, in consultation with the Secretary of Transportation, shall propose to the International Civil Aviation Organization the establishment of a comprehensive aviation security program which shall include (1) training for airport security personnel, (2) grants for security equipment acquisition for certain nations, and (3) expansion of the appropriate utilization of canine teams in the detection of explosive devices in all airport areas, including use in passenger screening areas and nonpublic baggage assembly and processing areas.

(Pub. L. 101-604, title II, §215, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3087.)

### CHAPTER 65—CONTROL AND ELIMINATION OF CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL WEAPONS

|       |  |
|-------|--|
| Sec.  |  |
| 5601. | Purposes.  |
| 5602. | Multilateral efforts. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Multilateral controls on proliferation.</li> <li>(b) Multilateral controls on chemical agents, precursors, and equipment.</li> </ol>  |
| 5603. | United States export controls.   |
| 5604. | Determinations regarding use of chemical or biological weapons. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Determination by President.</li> <li>(b) Congressional requests; report.</li> </ol>   |
| 5605. | Sanctions against use of chemical or biological weapons. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Initial sanctions.</li> <li>(b) Additional sanctions if certain conditions not met.</li> <li>(c) Removal of sanctions.</li> <li>(d) Waiver.</li> <li>(e) Contract sanctity.</li> </ol> |
| 5606. | Presidential reporting requirements. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Reports to Congress.</li> <li>(b) Protection of classified information.</li> </ol>   |

#### PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior chapter 65, enacted by Pub. L. 102-138, title V, Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 722, contained provisions substantially identical to those enacted by Pub. L. 102-182, title III, Dec. 4, 1991, 105 Stat. 1245, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 102-182, title III, §309(a), Dec. 4, 1991, 105 Stat. 1258.

#### CHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This chapter is referred to in title 50 section 441c; title 50 App. section 2405.

#### § 5601. Purposes

The purposes of this chapter are—

(1) to mandate United States sanctions, and to encourage international sanctions, against countries that use chemical or biological weapons in violation of international law or use lethal chemical or biological weapons

against their own nationals, and to impose sanctions against companies that aid in the proliferation of chemical and biological weapons;

(2) to support multilaterally coordinated efforts to control the proliferation of chemical and biological weapons;

(3) to urge continued close cooperation with the Australia Group and cooperation with other supplier nations to devise ever more effective controls on the transfer of materials, equipment, and technology applicable to chemical or biological weapons production; and

(4) to require Presidential reports on efforts that threaten United States interests or regional stability by Iran, Iraq, Syria, Libya, and others to acquire the materials and technology to develop, produce, stockpile, deliver, transfer, or use chemical or biological weapons.

(Pub. L. 102-182, title III, §302, Dec. 4, 1991, 105 Stat. 1245.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original “this title”, meaning title III of Pub. L. 102-182, Dec. 4, 1991, 105 Stat. 1245, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note below and Tables.

#### SHORT TITLE

Section 301 of title III of Pub. L. 102-182 provided that: “This title [enacting this chapter, section 2798 of this title, and section 2410c of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense, amending sections 2798 and 5604 of this title and sections 2405 and 2410c of Title 50, Appendix, and repealing provisions which enacted this chapter, section 2798 of this title, and section 2410c of Title 50, Appendix, and which amended section 2405 of Title 50, Appendix] may be cited as the ‘Chemical and Biological Weapons Control and Warfare Elimination Act of 1991.’”

Pub. L. 102-138, title V, §501, Oct. 28, 1991, 105 Stat. 722, which provided that title V of Pub. L. 102-138, which enacted this chapter, section 2798 of this title, and section 2410c of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense, and amended section 2405 of Title 50, Appendix, was to be cited as the “Chemical and Biological Weapons Control and Warfare Elimination Act of 1991”, was repealed by section 309(a) of Pub. L. 102-182.

#### § 5602. Multilateral efforts

##### (a) Multilateral controls on proliferation

It is the policy of the United States to seek multilaterally coordinated efforts with other countries to control the proliferation of chemical and biological weapons. In furtherance of this policy, the United States shall—

(1) promote agreements banning the transfer of missiles suitable for armament with chemical or biological warheads;

(2) set as a top priority the early conclusion of a comprehensive global agreement banning the use, development, production, and stockpiling of chemical weapons;

(3) seek and support effective international means of monitoring and reporting regularly on commerce in equipment, materials, and technology applicable to the attainment of a chemical or biological weapons capability; and

(4) pursue and give full support to multilateral sanctions pursuant to United Nations

Security Council Resolution 620, which declared the intention of the Security Council to give immediate consideration to imposing “appropriate and effective” sanctions against any country which uses chemical weapons in violation of international law.

**(b) Multilateral controls on chemical agents, precursors, and equipment**

It is also the policy of the United States to strengthen efforts to control chemical agents, precursors, and equipment by taking all appropriate multilateral diplomatic measures—

(1) to continue to seek a verifiable global ban on chemical weapons at the 40 nation Conference on Disarmament in Geneva;

(2) to support the Australia Group’s objective to support the norms and restraints against the spread and the use of chemical warfare, to advance the negotiation of a comprehensive ban on chemical warfare by taking appropriate measures, and to protect the Australia Group’s domestic industries against inadvertent association with supply of feedstock chemical equipment that could be misused to produce chemical weapons;

(3) to implement paragraph (2) by proposing steps complementary to, and not mutually exclusive of, existing multilateral efforts seeking a verifiable ban on chemical weapons, such as the establishment of—

(A) a harmonized list of export control rules and regulations to prevent relative commercial advantage and disadvantages accruing to Australia Group members,

(B) liaison officers to the Australia Group’s coordinating entity from within the diplomatic missions,

(C) a close working relationship between the Australia Group and industry,

(D) a public unclassified warning list of controlled chemical agents, precursors, and equipment,

(E) information-exchange channels of suspected proliferants,

(F) a “denial” list of firms and individuals who violate the Australia Group’s export control provisions, and

(G) broader cooperation between the Australia Group and other countries whose political commitment to stem the proliferation of chemical weapons is similar to that of the Australia Group; and

(4) to adopt the imposition of stricter controls on the export of chemical agents, precursors, and equipment and to adopt tougher multilateral sanctions against firms and individuals who violate these controls or against countries that use chemical weapons.

(Pub. L. 102–182, title III, § 303, Dec. 4, 1991, 105 Stat. 1245.)

**§ 5603. United States export controls**

The President shall—

(1) use the authorities of the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.] to control the export of those defense articles and defense services, and

(2) use the authorities of the Export Administration Act of 1979 [50 App. U.S.C. 2401 et

seq.] to control the export of those goods and technology,

that the President determines would assist the government of any foreign country in acquiring the capability to develop, produce, stockpile, deliver, or use chemical or biological weapons.

(Pub. L. 102–182, title III, § 304(a), Dec. 4, 1991, 105 Stat. 1246.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Arms Export Control Act, referred to in par. (1), is Pub. L. 90–629, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1320, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 39 (§ 2751 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2751 of this title and Tables.

The Export Administration Act of 1979, referred to in par. (2), is Pub. L. 96–72, Sept. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 503, as amended, which is classified principally to section 2401 et seq. of the Appendix to Title 50, War and National Defense. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2401 of the Appendix to Title 50 and Tables.

**§ 5604. Determinations regarding use of chemical or biological weapons**

**(a) Determination by President**

**(1) When determination required; nature of determination**

Whenever persuasive information becomes available to the executive branch indicating the substantial possibility that, on or after October 28, 1991, the government of a foreign country has made substantial preparation to use or has used chemical or biological weapons, the President shall, within 60 days after the receipt of such information by the executive branch, determine whether that government, on or after October 28, 1991, has used chemical or biological weapons in violation of international law or has used lethal chemical or biological weapons against its own nationals. Section 5605 of this title applies if the President determines that that government has so used chemical or biological weapons.

**(2) Matters to be considered**

In making the determination under paragraph (1), the President shall consider the following:

(A) All physical and circumstantial evidence available bearing on the possible use of such weapons.

(B) All information provided by alleged victims, witnesses, and independent observers.

(C) The extent of the availability of the weapons in question to the purported user.

(D) All official and unofficial statements bearing on the possible use of such weapons.

(E) Whether, and to what extent, the government in question is willing to honor a request from the Secretary General of the United Nations to grant timely access to a United Nations fact-finding team to investigate the possibility of chemical or biological weapons use or to grant such access to other legitimate outside parties.

**(3) Determination to be reported to Congress**

Upon making a determination under paragraph (1), the President shall promptly report

that determination to the Congress. If the determination is that a foreign government had used chemical or biological weapons as described in that paragraph, the report shall specify the sanctions to be imposed pursuant to section 5605 of this title.

**(b) Congressional requests; report**

**(1) Request**

The Chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate (upon consultation with the ranking minority member of such committee) or the Chairman of the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives (upon consultation with the ranking minority member of such committee) may at any time request the President to consider whether a particular foreign government, on or after December 4, 1991, has used chemical or biological weapons in violation of international law or has used lethal chemical or biological weapons against its own nationals.

**(2) Report to Congress**

Not later than 60 days after receiving such a request, the President shall provide to the Chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Chairman of the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives a written report on the information held by the executive branch which is pertinent to the issue of whether the specified government, on or after December 4, 1991, has used chemical or biological weapons in violation of international law or has used lethal chemical or biological weapons against its own nationals. This report shall contain an analysis of each of the items enumerated in subsection (a)(2) of this section.

(Pub. L. 102-182, title III, §§ 306, 309(b)(3), Dec. 4, 1991, 105 Stat. 1252, 1259.)

AMENDMENTS

1991—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 101-182, § 309(b)(3), substituted “October 28, 1991” for reference to the “date of the enactment of this title”, meaning the date of the enactment of title V of Pub. L. 101-182 which was enacted Dec. 4, 1991. “October 28, 1991”, the second time appearing, was substituted for “such date of enactment” for purposes of codification.

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of State, with certain exceptions, by section 1(b) of Ex. Ord. No. 12851, June 11, 1993, 58 F.R. 33181, set out as a note under section 2797 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2295a, 2295b, 5605 of this title.

**§ 5605. Sanctions against use of chemical or biological weapons**

**(a) Initial sanctions**

If, at any time, the President makes a determination pursuant to section 5604(a)(1) of this

title with respect to the government of a foreign country, the President shall forthwith impose the following sanctions:

**(1) Foreign assistance**

The United States Government shall terminate assistance to that country under the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.], except for urgent humanitarian assistance and food or other agricultural commodities or products.

**(2) Arms sales**

The United States Government shall terminate—

(A) sales to that country under the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.] of any defense articles, defense services, or design and construction services, and

(B) licenses for the export to that country of any item on the United States Munitions List.

**(3) Arms sales financing**

The United States Government shall terminate all foreign military financing for that country under the Arms Export Control Act.

**(4) Denial of United States Government credit or other financial assistance**

The United States Government shall deny to that country any credit, credit guarantees, or other financial assistance by any department, agency, or instrumentality of the United States Government, including the Export-Import Bank of the United States.

**(5) Exports of national security-sensitive goods and technology**

The authorities of section 2405 of title 50, Appendix, shall be used to prohibit the export to that country of any goods or technology on that part of the control list established under section 2404(c)(1) of title 50, Appendix.

**(b) Additional sanctions if certain conditions not met**

**(1) Presidential determination**

Unless, within 3 months after making a determination pursuant to section 5604(a)(1) of this title with respect to a foreign government, the President determines and certifies in writing to the Congress that—

(A) that government is no longer using chemical or biological weapons in violation of international law or using lethal chemical or biological weapons against its own nationals,

(B) that government has provided reliable assurances that it will not in the future engage in any such activities, and

(C) that government is willing to allow on-site inspections by United Nations observers or other internationally recognized, impartial observers, or other reliable means exist, to ensure that that government is not using chemical or biological weapons in violation of international law and is not using lethal chemical or biological weapons against its own nationals,

then the President, after consultation with the Congress, shall impose on that country the

sanctions set forth in at least 3 of subparagraphs (A) through (F) of paragraph (2).

**(2) Sanctions**

The sanctions referred to in paragraph (1) are the following:

**(A) Multilateral development bank assistance**

The United States Government shall oppose, in accordance with section 262d of this title, the extension of any loan or financial or technical assistance to that country by international financial institutions.

**(B) Bank loans**

The United States Government shall prohibit any United States bank from making any loan or providing any credit to the government of that country, except for loans or credits for the purpose of purchasing food or other agricultural commodities or products.

**(C) Further export restrictions**

The authorities of section 2405 of title 50, Appendix, shall be used to prohibit exports to that country of all other goods and technology (excluding food and other agricultural commodities and products).

**(D) Import restrictions**

Restrictions shall be imposed on the importation into the United States of articles (which may include petroleum or any petroleum product) that are the growth, product, or manufacture of that country.

**(E) Diplomatic relations**

The President shall use his constitutional authorities to downgrade or suspend diplomatic relations between the United States and the government of that country.

**(F) Presidential action regarding aviation**

(i)(I) The President is authorized to notify the government of a country with respect to which the President has made a determination pursuant to section 5604(a)(1) of this title of his intention to suspend the authority of foreign air carriers owned or controlled by the government of that country to engage in foreign air transportation to or from the United States.

(II) Within 10 days after the date of notification of a government under subclause (I), the Secretary of Transportation shall take all steps necessary to suspend at the earliest possible date the authority of any foreign air carrier owned or controlled, directly or indirectly, by that government to engage in foreign air transportation to or from the United States, notwithstanding any agreement relating to air services.

(ii)(I) The President may direct the Secretary of State to terminate any air service agreement between the United States and a country with respect to which the President has made a determination pursuant to section 5604(a)(1) of this title, in accordance with the provisions of that agreement.

(II) Upon termination of an agreement under this clause, the Secretary of Transportation shall take such steps as may be necessary to revoke at the earliest possible date

the right of any foreign air carrier owned, or controlled, directly or indirectly, by the government of that country to engage in foreign air transportation to or from the United States.

(iii) The Secretary of Transportation may provide for such exceptions from clauses (i) and (ii) as the Secretary considers necessary to provide for emergencies in which the safety of an aircraft or its crew or passengers is threatened.

(iv) For purposes of this subparagraph, the terms “air transportation”, “air carrier”, “foreign air carrier”, and “foreign air transportation” have the meanings such terms have under section 40102(a) of title 49.

**(c) Removal of sanctions**

The President shall remove the sanctions imposed with respect to a country pursuant to this section if the President determines and so certifies to the Congress, after the end of the 12-month period beginning on the date on which sanctions were initially imposed on that country pursuant to subsection (a) of this section, that—

(1) the government of that country has provided reliable assurances that it will not use chemical or biological weapons in violation of international law and will not use lethal chemical or biological weapons against its own nationals;

(2) that government is not making preparations to use chemical or biological weapons in violation of international law or to use lethal chemical or biological weapons against its own nationals;

(3) that government is willing to allow on-site inspections by United Nations observers or other internationally recognized, impartial observers to verify that it is not making preparations to use chemical or biological weapons in violation of international law or to use lethal chemical or biological weapons against its own nationals, or other reliable means exist to verify that it is not making such preparations; and

(4) that government is making restitution to those affected by any use of chemical or biological weapons in violation of international law or by any use of lethal chemical or biological weapons against its own nationals.

**(d) Waiver**

**(1) Criteria for waiver**

The President may waive the application of any sanction imposed with respect to a country pursuant to this section—

(A) if—

(i) in the case of any sanction other than a sanction specified in subsection (b)(2)(D) of this section (relating to import restrictions) or (b)(2)(E) of this section (relating to the downgrading or suspension of diplomatic relations), the President determines and certifies to the Congress that such waiver is essential to the national security interests of the United States, and if the President notifies the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of

Representatives of his determination and certification at least 15 days before the waiver takes effect, in accordance with the procedures applicable to reprogramming notifications under section 634A of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2394–1], or

(ii) in the case of any sanction specified in subsection (b)(2)(D) of this section (relating to import restrictions), the President determines and certifies to the Congress that such waiver is essential to the national security interest of the United States, and if the President notifies the Committee on Finance of the Senate and the Committee on Ways and Means of the House of Representatives of his determination and certification at least 15 days before the waiver takes effect; or

(B) if the President determines and certifies to the Congress that there has been a fundamental change in the leadership and policies of the government of that country, and if the President notifies the Congress at least 20 days before the waiver takes effect.

## (2) Report

In the event that the President decides to exercise the waiver authority provided in paragraph (1) with respect to a country, the President's notification to the Congress under such paragraph shall include a report fully articulating the rationale and circumstances which led the President to exercise that waiver authority, including a description of the steps which the government of that country has taken to satisfy the conditions set forth in paragraphs (1) through (4) of subsection (c) of this section.

## (e) Contract sanctity

### (1) Sanctions not applied to existing contracts

(A) A sanction described in paragraph (4) or (5) of subsection (a) of this section or in any of subparagraphs (A) through (D) of subsection (b)(2) of this section shall not apply to any activity pursuant to any contract or international agreement entered into before the date of the presidential determination under section 5604(a)(1) of this title unless the President determines, on a case-by-case basis, that to apply such sanction to that activity would prevent the performance of a contract or agreement that would have the effect of assisting a country in using chemical or biological weapons in violation of international law or in using lethal chemical or biological weapons against its own nationals.

(B) The same restrictions of subsection (p) of section 2405 of title 50, Appendix, as that subsection is so redesignated by section 304(b) of this title, which are applicable to exports prohibited under section 2405 of title 50, Appendix, shall apply to exports prohibited under subsection (a)(5) or (b)(2)(C) of this section. For purposes of this subparagraph, any contract or agreement the performance of which (as determined by the President) would have the effect of assisting a foreign government in using chemical or biological weapons in violation of international law or in using lethal chemical

or biological weapons against its own nationals shall be treated as constituting a breach of the peace that poses a serious and direct threat to the strategic interest of the United States, within the meaning of subparagraph (A) of section 2405(p) of title 50, Appendix.

### (2) Sanctions applied to existing contracts

The sanctions described in paragraphs (1), (2), and (3) of subsection (a) of this section shall apply to contracts, agreements, and licenses without regard to the date the contract or agreement was entered into or the license was issued (as the case may be), except that such sanctions shall not apply to any contract or agreement entered into or license issued before the date of the presidential determination under section 5604(a)(1) of this title if the President determines that the application of such sanction would be detrimental to the national security interests of the United States.

(Pub. L. 102–182, title III, §307, Dec. 4, 1991, 105 Stat. 1254.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (a)(1), is Pub. L. 87–195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 32 (§2151 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

The Arms Export Control Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(2)(A), (3), is Pub. L. 90–629, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1320, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 39 (§2751 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2751 of this title and Tables.

Section 304(b) of this title, referred to in subsec. (e)(1)(B), is section 304(b) of Pub. L. 102–182, title III, Dec. 4, 1991, 105 Stat. 1246, which amended section 2405 of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense.

#### CODIFICATION

In subsec. (b)(2)(F)(iv), “section 40102(a) of title 49” substituted for “section 101 of the Federal Aviation Act of 1958 (49 U.S.C. App. 1301)” on authority of Pub. L. 103–272, §6(b), July 5, 1994, 108 Stat. 1378, the first section of which enacted subtitles II, III, and V to X of Title 49, Transportation.

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104–14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of State, with certain exceptions, by section 1(b) of Ex. Ord. No. 12851, June 11, 1993, 58 F.R. 33181, set out as a note under section 2797 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 2295a, 2295b, 5604 of this title.

## § 5606. Presidential reporting requirements

### (a) Reports to Congress

Not later than 90 days after December 4, 1991, and every 12 months thereafter, the President shall transmit to the Congress a report which shall include—

(1) a description of the actions taken to carry out this chapter, including the amendments made by this chapter;

(2) a description of the current efforts of foreign countries and subnational groups to acquire equipment, materials, or technology to develop, produce, or use chemical or biological weapons, together with an assessment of the current and likely future capabilities of such countries and groups to develop, produce, stockpile, deliver, transfer, or use such weapons;

(3) a description of—

(A) the use of chemical weapons by foreign countries in violation of international law,

(B) the use of chemical weapons by subnational groups,

(C) substantial preparations by foreign countries and subnational groups to do so, and

(D) the development, production, stockpiling, or use of biological weapons by foreign countries and subnational groups; and

(4) a description of the extent to which foreign persons or governments have knowingly and materially assisted third countries or subnational groups to acquire equipment, material, or technology intended to develop, produce, or use chemical or biological weapons.

**(b) Protection of classified information**

To the extent practicable, reports submitted under subsection (a) of this section or any other provision of this chapter should be based on unclassified information. Portions of such reports may be classified.

(Pub. L. 102-182, title III, § 308, Dec. 4, 1991, 105 Stat. 1257.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a)(1) and (b), was in the original “this title”, meaning title III of Pub. L. 102-182, Dec. 4, 1991, 105 Stat. 1245, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 5601 of this title and Tables.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under this section delegated to Secretary of State, with certain exceptions, by section 1(b) of Ex. Ord. No. 12851, June 11, 1993, 58 F.R. 33181, set out as a note under section 2797 of this title.

**CHAPTER 66—UNITED STATES-HONG KONG POLICY**

- Sec. 5701. Findings and declarations.
- 5702. Definitions.

SUBCHAPTER I—POLICY

- 5711. Bilateral ties between United States and Hong Kong.
- 5712. Participation in multilateral organizations, rights under international agreements, and trade status.
- 5713. Commerce between United States and Hong Kong.
- 5714. Transportation.
- 5715. Cultural and educational exchanges.

SUBCHAPTER II—STATUS OF HONG KONG IN UNITED STATES LAW

- 5721. Continued application of United States law.
  - (a) In general.

- Sec. 5722. Presidential order.
  - (a) Presidential determination.
  - (b) Factor for consideration.
  - (c) Publication in Federal Register.
  - (d) Termination of suspension.
- 5723. Rules and regulations.
- 5724. Consultation with Congress.

SUBCHAPTER III—REPORTING PROVISIONS

- 5731. Reporting requirement.
- 5732. Separate part of country reports.

**§ 5701. Findings and declarations**

The Congress makes the following findings and declarations:

(1) The Congress recognizes that under the 1984 Sino-British Joint Declaration:

(A) The People’s Republic of China and the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland have agreed that the People’s Republic of China will resume the exercise of sovereignty over Hong Kong on July 1, 1997. Until that time, the United Kingdom will be responsible for the administration of Hong Kong.

(B) The Hong Kong Special Administrative Region of the People’s Republic of China, beginning on July 1, 1997, will continue to enjoy a high degree of autonomy on all matters other than defense and foreign affairs.

(C) There is provision for implementation of a “one country, two systems” policy, under which Hong Kong will retain its current lifestyle and legal, social, and economic systems until at least the year 2047.

(D) The legislature of the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region will be constituted by elections, and the provisions of the International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights and the International Covenant on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights, as applied to Hong Kong, shall remain in force.

(E) Provision is made for the continuation in force of agreements implemented as of June 30, 1997, and for the ability of the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region to conclude new agreements either on its own or with the assistance of the Government of the People’s Republic of China.

(2) The Congress declares its wish to see full implementation of the provisions of the Joint Declaration.

(3) The President has announced his support for the policies and decisions reflected in the Joint Declaration.

(4) Hong Kong plays an important role in today’s regional and world economy. This role is reflected in strong economic, cultural, and other ties with the United States that give the United States a strong interest in the continued vitality, prosperity, and stability of Hong Kong.

(5) Support for democratization is a fundamental principle of United States foreign policy. As such, it naturally applies to United States policy toward Hong Kong. This will remain equally true after June 30, 1997.

(6) The human rights of the people of Hong Kong are of great importance to the United

States and are directly relevant to United States interests in Hong Kong. A fully successful transition in the exercise of sovereignty over Hong Kong must safeguard human rights in and of themselves. Human rights also serve as a basis for Hong Kong's continued economic prosperity.

(Pub. L. 102-383, § 2, Oct. 5, 1992, 106 Stat. 1448.)

#### SHORT TITLE

Section 1 of Pub. L. 102-383 provided that: "This Act [enacting this chapter] may be cited as the 'United States-Hong Kong Policy Act of 1992'."

#### § 5702. Definitions

For purposes of this chapter—

(1) the term "Hong Kong" means, prior to July 1, 1997, the British Dependent Territory of Hong Kong, and on and after July 1, 1997, the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region of the People's Republic of China;

(2) the term "Joint Declaration" means the Joint Declaration of the Government of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland and the Government of the People's Republic of China on the Question of Hong Kong, done at Beijing on December 19, 1984; and

(3) the term "laws of the United States" means provisions of law enacted by the Congress.

(Pub. L. 102-383, § 3, Oct. 5, 1992, 106 Stat. 1449.)

#### SUBCHAPTER I—POLICY

#### § 5711. Bilateral ties between United States and Hong Kong

It is the sense of the Congress that the following, which are based in part on the relevant provisions of the Joint Declaration, should be the policy of the United States with respect to its bilateral relationship with Hong Kong:

(1) The United States should play an active role, before, on, and after July 1, 1997, in maintaining Hong Kong's confidence and prosperity, Hong Kong's role as an international financial center, and the mutually beneficial ties between the people of the United States and the people of Hong Kong.

(2) The United States should actively seek to establish and expand direct bilateral ties and agreements with Hong Kong in economic, trade, financial, monetary, aviation, shipping, communications, tourism, cultural, sport, and other appropriate areas.

(3) The United States should seek to maintain, after June 30, 1997, the United States consulate-general in Hong Kong, together with other official and semi-official organizations, such as the United States Information Agency American Library.

(4) The United States should invite Hong Kong to maintain, after June 30, 1997, its official and semi-official missions in the United States, such as the Hong Kong Economic & Trade Office, the Office of the Hong Kong Trade Development Council, and the Hong Kong Tourist Association. The United States should invite Hong Kong to open and maintain other official or semi-official missions to rep-

resent Hong Kong in those areas in which Hong Kong is entitled to maintain relations on its own, including economic, trade, financial, monetary, aviation, shipping, communications, tourism, cultural, and sport areas.

(5) The United States should recognize passports and travel documents issued after June 30, 1997, by the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region.

(6) The resumption by the People's Republic of China of the exercise of sovereignty over Hong Kong after June 30, 1997, should not affect treatment of Hong Kong residents who apply for visas to visit or reside permanently in the United States, so long as such treatment is consistent with the Immigration and Nationality Act [8 U.S.C. 1101 et seq.].

(Pub. L. 102-383, title I, § 101, Oct. 5, 1992, 106 Stat. 1449.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Immigration and Nationality Act, referred to in par. (6), is act June 27, 1952, ch. 477, 66 Stat. 163, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 12 (§1101 et seq.) of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1101 of Title 8 and Tables.

#### § 5712. Participation in multilateral organizations, rights under international agreements, and trade status

It is the sense of the Congress that the following, which are based in part on the relevant provisions of the Joint Declaration, should be the policy of the United States with respect to Hong Kong after June 30, 1997:

(1) The United States should support Hong Kong's participation in all appropriate multilateral conferences, agreements, and organizations in which Hong Kong is eligible to participate.

(2) The United States should continue to fulfill its obligations to Hong Kong under international agreements, so long as Hong Kong reciprocates, regardless of whether the People's Republic of China is a party to the particular international agreement, unless and until such obligations are modified or terminated in accordance with law.

(3) The United States should respect Hong Kong's status as a separate customs territory, and as a contracting party to the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade, whether or not the People's Republic of China participates in the latter organization.

(Pub. L. 102-383, title I, § 102, Oct. 5, 1992, 106 Stat. 1450.)

#### § 5713. Commerce between United States and Hong Kong

It is the sense of the Congress that the following, which are based in part on the relevant provisions of the Joint Declaration, are and should continue after June 30, 1997, to be the policy of the United States with respect to commerce between the United States and Hong Kong:

(1) The United States should seek to maintain and expand economic and trade relations with Hong Kong and should continue to treat

Hong Kong as a separate territory in economic and trade matters, such as import quotas and certificates of origin.

(2) The United States should continue to negotiate directly with Hong Kong to conclude bilateral economic agreements.

(3) The United States should continue to treat Hong Kong as a territory which is fully autonomous from the United Kingdom and, after June 30, 1997, should treat Hong Kong as a territory which is fully autonomous from the People's Republic of China with respect to economic and trade matters.

(4) The United States should continue to grant the products of Hong Kong nondiscriminatory trade treatment (commonly referred to as "most-favored-nation status") by virtue of Hong Kong's membership in the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade.

(5) The United States should recognize certificates of origin for manufactured goods issued by the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region.

(6) The United States should continue to allow the United States dollar to be freely exchanged with the Hong Kong dollar.

(7) United States businesses should be encouraged to continue to operate in Hong Kong, in accordance with applicable United States and Hong Kong law.

(8) The United States should continue to support access by Hong Kong to sensitive technologies controlled under the agreement of the Coordinating Committee for Multilateral Export Controls (commonly referred to as "COCOM") for so long as the United States is satisfied that such technologies are protected from improper use or export.

(9) The United States should encourage Hong Kong to continue its efforts to develop a framework which provides adequate protection for intellectual property rights.

(10) The United States should negotiate a bilateral investment treaty directly with Hong Kong, in consultation with the Government of the People's Republic of China.

(11) The change in the exercise of sovereignty over Hong Kong should not affect ownership in any property, tangible or intangible, held in the United States by any Hong Kong person.

(Pub. L. 102-383, title I, §103, Oct. 5, 1992, 106 Stat. 1450.)

#### § 5714. Transportation

It is the sense of the Congress that the following, which are based in part on the relevant provisions of the Joint Declaration, should be the policy of the United States after June 30, 1997, with respect to transportation from Hong Kong:

(1) Recognizing Hong Kong's position as an international transport center, the United States should continue to recognize ships and airplanes registered in Hong Kong and should negotiate air service agreements directly with Hong Kong.

(2) The United States should continue to recognize ships registered by Hong Kong.

(3) United States commercial ships, in accordance with applicable United States and

Hong Kong law, should remain free to port in Hong Kong.

(4) The United States should continue to recognize airplanes registered by Hong Kong in accordance with applicable laws of the People's Republic of China.

(5) The United States should recognize licenses issued by the Hong Kong to Hong Kong airlines.

(6) The United States should recognize certificates issued by the Hong Kong to United States air carriers for air service involving travel to, from, or through Hong Kong which does not involve travel to, from, or through other parts of the People's Republic of China.

(7) The United States should negotiate at the appropriate time directly with the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region, acting under authorization from the Government of the People's Republic of China, to renew or amend all air service agreements existing on June 30, 1997, and to conclude new air service agreements affecting all flights to, from, or through the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region which do not involve travel to, from, or through other parts of the People's Republic of China.

(8) The United States should make every effort to ensure that the negotiations described in paragraph (7) lead to procompetitive air service agreements.

(Pub. L. 102-383, title I, §104, Oct. 5, 1992, 106 Stat. 1451.)

#### § 5715. Cultural and educational exchanges

It is the sense of the Congress that the following, which are based in part on the relevant provisions of the Joint Declaration, are and should continue after June 30, 1997, to be the policy of the United States with respect to cultural and educational exchanges with Hong Kong:

(1) The United States should seek to maintain and expand United States-Hong Kong relations and exchanges in culture, education, science, and academic research. The United States should encourage American participation in bilateral exchanges with Hong Kong, both official and unofficial.

(2) The United States should actively seek to further United States-Hong Kong cultural relations and promote bilateral exchanges, including the negotiating and concluding of appropriate agreements in these matters.

(3) Hong Kong should be accorded separate status as a full partner under the Fulbright Academic Exchange Program (apart from the United Kingdom before July 1, 1997, and apart from the People's Republic of China thereafter), with the continuation or establishment of a Fulbright Commission or functionally equivalent mechanism.

(4) The United States should actively encourage Hong Kong residents to visit the United States on nonimmigrant visas for such purposes as business, tourism, education, and scientific and academic research, in accordance with applicable United States and Hong Kong laws.

(5) Upon the request of the Legislative Council of Hong Kong, the Librarian of Congress,



acting through the Congressional Research Service, should seek to expand educational and informational ties with the Council.

(Pub. L. 102-383, title I, §105, Oct. 5, 1992, 106 Stat. 1452.)

#### SUBCHAPTER II—STATUS OF HONG KONG IN UNITED STATES LAW

### § 5721. Continued application of United States law

#### (a) In general

Notwithstanding any change in the exercise of sovereignty over Hong Kong, the laws of the United States shall continue to apply with respect to Hong Kong, on and after July 1, 1997, in the same manner as the laws of the United States were applied with respect to Hong Kong before such date unless otherwise expressly provided by law or by Executive order under section 5722 of this title.

#### (b) International agreements

For all purposes, including actions in any court in the United States, the Congress approves the continuation in force on and after July 1, 1997, of all treaties and other international agreements, including multilateral conventions, entered into before such date between the United States and Hong Kong, or entered into before such date between the United States and the United Kingdom and applied to Hong Kong, unless or until terminated in accordance with law. If in carrying out this subchapter, the President determines that Hong Kong is not legally competent to carry out its obligations under any such treaty or other international agreement, or that the continuation of Hong Kong's obligations or rights under any such treaty or other international agreement is not appropriate under the circumstances, such determination shall be reported to the Congress in accordance with section 5731 of this title.

(Pub. L. 102-383, title II, §201, Oct. 5, 1992, 106 Stat. 1452.)

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 5722, 5731 of this title.

### § 5722. Presidential order

#### (a) Presidential determination

On or after July 1, 1997, whenever the President determines that Hong Kong is not sufficiently autonomous to justify treatment under a particular law of the United States, or any provision thereof, different from that accorded the People's Republic of China, the President may issue an Executive order suspending the application of section 5721(a) of this title to such law or provision of law.

#### (b) Factor for consideration

In making a determination under subsection (a) of this section with respect to the application of a law of the United States, or any provision thereof, to Hong Kong, the President should consider the terms, obligations, and expectations expressed in the Joint Declaration with respect to Hong Kong.

#### (c) Publication in Federal Register

Any Executive order issued under subsection (a) of this section shall be published in the Federal Register and shall specify the law or provision of law affected by the order.

#### (d) Termination of suspension

An Executive order issued under subsection (a) of this section may be terminated by the President with respect to a particular law or provision of law whenever the President determines that Hong Kong has regained sufficient autonomy to justify different treatment under the law or provision of law in question. Notice of any such termination shall be published in the Federal Register.

(Pub. L. 102-383, title II, §202, Oct. 5, 1992, 106 Stat. 1453.)

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 5721, 5731 of this title.

### § 5723. Rules and regulations

The President is authorized to prescribe such rules and regulations as the President may deem appropriate to carry out this chapter.

(Pub. L. 102-383, title II, §203, Oct. 5, 1992, 106 Stat. 1453.)

### § 5724. Consultation with Congress

In carrying out this subchapter, the President shall consult appropriately with the Congress.

(Pub. L. 102-383, title II, §204, Oct. 5, 1992, 106 Stat. 1453.)

#### SUBCHAPTER III—REPORTING PROVISIONS

### § 5731. Reporting requirement

Not later than March 31, 1993, March 31, 1995, March 31, 1997, March 31, 1998, March 31, 1999, and March 31, 2000, the Secretary of State shall transmit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate a report on conditions in Hong Kong of interest to the United States. This report shall cover (in the case of the initial report) the period since October 5, 1992, or (in the case of subsequent reports) the period since the most recent report pursuant to this section and shall describe—

(1) significant developments in United States relations with Hong Kong, including a description of agreements that have entered into force between the United States and Hong Kong;

(2) other matters, including developments related to the change in the exercise of sovereignty over Hong Kong, affecting United States interests in Hong Kong or United States relations with Hong Kong;

(3) the nature and extent of United States-Hong Kong cultural, education, scientific, and academic exchanges, both official and unofficial;

(4) the laws of the United States with respect to which the application of section 5721(a) of this title has been suspended pursuant to section 5722(a) of this title or with re-

spect to which such a suspension has been terminated pursuant to section 5722(d) of this title, and the reasons for the suspension or termination, as the case may be;

(5) treaties and other international agreements with respect to which the President has made a determination described in the last sentence of section 5721(b) of this title, and the reasons for each such determination;

(6) significant problems in cooperation between Hong Kong and the United States in the area of export controls;

(7) the development of democratic institutions in Hong Kong; and

(8) the nature and extent of Hong Kong's participation in multilateral forums.

(Pub. L. 102-383, title III, §301, Oct. 5, 1992, 106 Stat. 1453.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 5721 of this title.

**§ 5732. Separate part of country reports**

Whenever a report is transmitted to the Congress on a country-by-country basis there shall be included in such report, where applicable, a separate subreport on Hong Kong under the heading of the state that exercises sovereignty over Hong Kong. The reports to which this section applies include the reports transmitted under—

(1) sections 2151n(d) and 2304(b) of this title (relating to human rights);

(2) section 2241 of title 19 (relating to trade barriers); and

(3) section 4711 of title 15 (relating to economic policy and trade practices).

(Pub. L. 102-383, title III, §302, Oct. 5, 1992, 106 Stat. 1454.)

**CHAPTER 67—FREEDOM FOR RUSSIA AND EMERGING EURASIAN DEMOCRACIES AND OPEN MARKETS SUPPORT**

Sec.  
5801. Definition of independent states.

SUBCHAPTER I—GENERAL PROVISIONS

5811. Findings.  
5812. Program coordination, implementation, and oversight.

- (a) Coordination.
- (b) Export promotion activities.
- (c) International economic activities.
- (d) Accountability for funds.

5813. Report on overall assistance and economic cooperation strategy.  
(a) Requirement for submission.  
(b) Assistance plan.

5814. Annual report.

SUBCHAPTER II—BUSINESS AND COMMERCIAL DEVELOPMENT

5821. American Business Centers.  
(a) Establishment.  
(b) Environmental business centers and agribusiness centers.  
(c) Additional policy guidance.  
(d) Funding.

5822. Business and Agriculture Advisory Council.  
(a) Establishment.  
(b) Membership.  
(c) Staff.

5823. Funding for export promotion activities and capital projects.

Sec.  
(a) Allocation of A.I.D. funds.  
(b) Export promotion, finance, and related activities.

5824. Interagency working group on energy of the Trade Promotion Coordinating Committee.

5825. Repealed.

5826. Policy on combatting tied aid practices.

5827. Technical assistance for Russian Far East.

- (a) Authorization.
- (b) Authorization of appropriations.

5828. Funding for OPIC programs.  
(a) Authority to make additional funds available.  
(b) Enactment of OPIC Authorization Act.

SUBCHAPTER III—THE DEMOCRACY CORPS

5841. Authorization for establishment of Democracy Corps.

- (a) Establishment; purpose.
- (b) Board of Directors.
- (c) Grants to Democracy Corps; purpose.
- (d) Activities.
- (e) Grant agreement.
- (f) Coordination.
- (g) Prohibition on campaign financing.
- (h) Freedom of information.
- (i) Annual reports.
- (j) Authorization of appropriations.
- (k) Sunset provision.
- (l) Definitions.

SUBCHAPTER IV—NONPROLIFERATION AND DISARMAMENT PROGRAMS AND ACTIVITIES

5851. Findings.  
5852. Eligibility.

5853. Nonproliferation and disarmament activities in independent states.

- (a) Authorization.
- (b) Funding priorities.
- (c) Use of defense funds.

5854. Nonproliferation and disarmament fund.

- (a) Authorization.
- (b) Funding priorities.
- (c) Use of security assistance funds.

5855. Limitations on defense conversion authorities.

5856. Soviet weapons destruction.  
(a), (b) Omitted.  
(c) Avoidance of duplicative amendments.

5857. Waiver of certain provisions.

- (a) In general.
- (b) Exceptions.

5858. Notice and reports to Congress.

- (a) Notice of proposed obligations.
- (b) Semiannual report.
- (c) Appropriate congressional committees.

5859. International nonproliferation initiative.

- (a) to (e) Omitted.
- (f) Avoidance of duplicative authorizations.

5859a. International nonproliferation initiative.

- (a) Assistance for international nonproliferation activities.
- (b) Activities for which assistance may be provided.
- (c) Form of assistance.
- (d) Sources of assistance.
- (e) Quarterly report.

5860. Report on special nuclear materials.

5861. Research and Development Foundation.

- (a) Establishment.
- (b) Purposes.
- (c) Functions.
- (d) Funding.

SUBCHAPTER V—SPACE TRADE AND COOPERATION

5871. Facilitating discussions regarding acquisition of space hardware, technology, and services from former Soviet Union.

|       |   |
|-------|---|
| Sec.  | (a) Expedited review.                     |
|       | (b) Notice to Congress if license denied. |
|       | (c) Description of discussions.           |
| 5872. | Office of Space Commerce.                 |
|       | (a) Trade missions.                       |
|       | (b) Monitoring negotiations.              |
| 5873. | Report to Congress.                       |
| 5874. | Definitions.                              |

### § 5801. Definition of independent states

For purposes of this Act, the terms “independent states of the former Soviet Union” and “independent states” mean the following: Armenia, Azerbaijan, Belarus, Georgia, Kazakhstan, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova, Russia, Tajikistan, Turkmenistan, Ukraine, and Uzbekistan.

(Pub. L. 102-511, § 3, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3321.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 102-511, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3320, known as the Freedom for Russia and Emerging Eurasian Democracies and Open Markets Support Act of 1992 and also as the FREEDOM Support Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note below and Tables.

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 103-199, § 1, Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2317, provided that: “This Act [amending sections 295, 2301, 2364, 2370, 2460, 2461, 2578, 2591, 2592, 2595, 2799c, 2799d, 4501 to 4504, 4702, and 4901 of this title, section 4101 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, sections 1151 and 1152 of Title 16, Conservation, section 951 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, section 783 of Title 50, War and National Defense, and sections 2401 and 2402 of Title 50, Appendix, repealing sections 254c-2, 2592a, and 2592b of this title, sections 781, 782, 784, 785, 788 to 795, and 798 of Title 50, and section 2403-1 of Title 50, Appendix, enacting provisions set out as notes under this section, sections 113 and 2431 of Title 10, Armed Forces, and section 2402 of Title 50, Appendix, amending provisions set out as notes under section 4501 of this title, section 113 of Title 10, section 2901 of Title 15, and section 1003 of Title 40, Public Buildings, Property, and Works, and repealing provisions set out as notes under sections 287, 2151, 2293, 2458, and 4301 of this title, section 1307 of Title 19, Customs Duties, and section 781 of Title 50] may be cited as the ‘Act For Reform In Emerging New Democracies and Support and Help for Improved Partnership with Russia, Ukraine, and Other New Independent States’ or as the ‘FRIENDSHIP Act.’”

#### SHORT TITLE

Section 1 of Pub. L. 102-511 provided that: “This Act [enacting this chapter and sections 282m, 282n, 286e-1f, 286e-5b, 286e-13, 286ll, 286mm, 288j, 2295 to 2295c, and 5402 of this title, amending sections 262d, 2370, 2507, and 4903 of this title and sections 1736o, 3293, 5602, 5621, 5622, and 5651 of Title 7, Agriculture, enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 2295a, 2452, 2753, 4903, and 5812 of this title, section 5621 of Title 7, and section 955 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, amending provisions set out as notes under section 2452 of this title, section 5622 of Title 7, and sections 1157 and 1255 of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality, and repealing provisions set out as a note under section 2452 of this title] may be cited as the ‘Freedom for Russia and Emerging Eurasian Democracies and Open Markets Support Act of 1992’ or the ‘FREEDOM Support Act.’”

#### POLICY OF FRIENDSHIP AND COOPERATION

Pub. L. 103-199, title I, §§101-103, Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2318, 2319, provided that:

#### “SEC. 101. STATEMENT OF PURPOSE.

“The purpose of this Act [see Short Title of 1993 Amendment note above] is to amend or repeal numer-

ous statutory provisions that restrict or otherwise impede normal relations between the United States and the Russian Federation, Ukraine, and the other independent states of the former Soviet Union. All of the statutory provisions amended or repealed by this Act were relevant and appropriate at the time of enactment, but with the end of the Cold War, they have become obsolete. It is not the purpose of this Act to rewrite or erase history, or to forget those who suffered in the past from the injustices or repression of communist regimes in the Soviet Union, but rather to update United States law to reflect changed international circumstances and to demonstrate to reformers and democrats in the independent states of the former Soviet Union the resolve of the people of the United States to support the process of democratic and economic reform and to conduct business with those states in a new spirit of friendship and cooperation.

#### “SEC. 102. FINDINGS.

“The Congress finds and declares as follows:

“(1) The Vancouver Declaration issued by President Clinton and President Yeltsin in April 1993 marked a new milestone in the development of the spirit of cooperation and partnership between the United States and Russia. The Congress affirms its support for the principles contained in the Vancouver Declaration.

“(2) The Vancouver Declaration underscored that—

“(A) a dynamic and effective partnership between the United States and Russia is vital to the success of Russia’s historic transformation;

“(B) the rapid integration of Russia into the community of democratic nations and the world economy is important to the national interest of the United States; and

“(C) cooperation between the United States and Russia is essential to the peaceful resolution of international conflicts and the promotion of democratic values, the protection of human rights, and the solution of global problems such as environmental pollution, terrorism, and narcotics trafficking.

“(3) The Congress enacted the FREEDOM Support Act (Public Law 102-511) [see Short Title note above], as well as other legislation such as the Soviet Nuclear Threat Reduction Act of 1991 (title II of Public Law 102-228) [22 U.S.C. 2551 note] and the Former Soviet Union Demilitarization Act of 1992 (title XIV of Public Law 102-484) [22 U.S.C. 5901 et seq.], to help meet the historic opportunities and challenges presented by the transformation that has taken place, and is continuing to take place, in what once was the Soviet Union.

“(4) The process of reform in Russia, Ukraine, and the other independent states of the former Soviet Union is ongoing. The holding of a referendum in Russia on April 25, 1993, that was free and fair, and that reflected the support of the Russian people for the process of continued and strengthened democratic and economic reform, represents an important and encouraging hallmark in this ongoing process.

“(5) There remain in force many United States laws that are relics of the Cold War, and repeals or revisions of these provisions can play an important role in efforts to foster and strengthen the bonds of trust and friendship, as well as mutually beneficial trade and economic relations, between the United States and Russia, the United States and Ukraine, and the United States and the other independent states of the former Soviet Union.

#### “SEC. 103. STATUTORY PROVISIONS THAT HAVE BEEN APPLICABLE TO THE SOVIET UNION.

“(a) IN GENERAL.—There are numerous statutory provisions that were enacted in the context of United States relations with a country, the Soviet Union, that are fundamentally different from the relations that now exist between the United States and Russia, between the United States and Ukraine, and between the United States and the other independent states of the former Soviet Union.

“(b) EXTENT OF SUCH PROVISIONS.—Many of the provisions referred to in subsection (a) imposed limitations specifically with respect to the Soviet Union, and its constituent republics, or utilized language that reflected the tension that existed between the United States and the Soviet Union at the time of their enactment. Other such provisions did not refer specifically to the Soviet Union, but nonetheless were directed (or may be construed as having been directed) against the Soviet Union on the basis of the relations that formerly existed between the United States and the Soviet Union, particularly in its role as the leading communist country.

“(c) FINDINGS AND AFFIRMATION.—The Congress finds and affirms that provisions such as those described in this section, including—

“(1) section 216 of the State Department Basic Authorities Act of 1956 (22 U.S.C. 4316),

“(2) sections 136 [22 U.S.C. 3943 note] and 804 [99 Stat. 449] of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1986 and 1987 (Public Law 99-93),

“(3) section 1222 of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1988 and 1989 (Public Law 100-204; 101 Stat. 1411 [1414]),

“(4) the Multilateral Export Control Enhancement Amendments Act [see Short Title of 1988 Amendment note set out under section 2410 of Title 50, App., War and National Defense] (50 [App.] U.S.C. 2410 note, et seq.),

“(5) the joint resolution providing for the designation of ‘Captive Nations Week’ (Public Law 86-90) [73 Stat. 212],

“(6) the Communist Control Act of 1954 (Public Law 83-637) [see Short Title of 1954 Amendment note set out under section 781 of Title 50],

“(7) provisions in the Immigration and Nationality Act (8 U.S.C. 1101 et seq.), including sections 101(a)(40), 101(e)(3), and 313(a)(3) [8 U.S.C. 1101(a)(40), (e)(3), 1424(a)(3)],

“(8) section 2 of the joint resolution entitled ‘A joint resolution to promote peace and stability in the Middle East’, approved March 9, 1957 (Public Law 85-7) [22 U.S.C. 1961 et seq.], and

“(9) section 43 of the Bretton Woods Agreements Act (22 U.S.C. 286aa),

should not be construed as being directed against Russia, Ukraine, or the other independent states of the former Soviet Union, connoting an adversarial relationship between the United States and the independent states, or signifying or implying in any manner unfriendliness toward the independent states.”

#### DEFINITIONS FOR PUB. L. 103-199

Pub. L. 103-199, § 3, Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2318, provided that: “As used in this Act [see Short Title of 1993 Amendment note above] (including the amendments made by this Act), the terms ‘independent states of the former Soviet Union’ and ‘independent states’ have the meaning given those terms by section 3 of the Freedom for Russia and Emerging Eurasian Democracies and Open Markets Support Act of 1992 (22 U.S.C. 5801).”

#### ACT REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

The Freedom for Russian and Emerging Eurasian Democracies and Open Markets Support Act of 1992, also known as the FREEDOM Support Act, is referred to in sections 2421d, 5958 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 262d, 282m, 2295b of this title.

### SUBCHAPTER I—GENERAL PROVISIONS

#### § 5811. Findings

The Congress finds that—

(1) recent developments in Russia and the other independent states of the former Soviet

Union present an historic opportunity for a transition to a peaceful and stable international order and the integration of the independent states of the former Soviet Union into the community of democratic nations;

(2) the entire international community has a vital interest in the success of this transition, and the dimension of the problems now faced in the independent states of the former Soviet Union makes it imperative for donor countries and institutions to provide the expertise and support necessary to ensure continued progress on economic and political reforms;

(3) the United States is especially well-positioned because of its heritage and traditions to make a substantial contribution to this transition by building on current technical cooperation, medical, and food assistance programs, by assisting in the development of democratic institutions, and by fostering conditions that will encourage the United States business community to engage in trade and investment;

(4) failure to meet the opportunities presented by these developments could threaten United States national security interests and jeopardize substantial savings in United States defense that these developments have made possible;

(5) the independent states of the former Soviet Union face unprecedented environmental problems that jeopardize the quality of life and the very existence of not only their own peoples but also the peoples of other countries, and it is incumbent on the international community to assist the independent states in addressing these problems and in promoting sustainable use of resources and development;

(6) the success of United States assistance for the independent states of the former Soviet Union depends on—

(A) effective coordination of United States efforts with similar activities of friendly and allied donor countries and of international financial institutions, and

(B) reciprocal commitments by the governments of the independent states to work toward the creation of democratic institutions and an environment hospitable to foreign investment based upon the rule of law, including negotiation of bilateral and multilateral agreements on open trade and investment, adoption of commercial codes, establishment of transparency in regulatory and other governmental decision making, and timely payment of obligations carried over from previous governmental entities; and

(7) trade and investment opportunities in the independent states of the former Soviet Union will generate employment and other economic benefits for the United States as the economies of the independent states of the former Soviet Union begin to realize their enormous potential as both customers and suppliers.

(Pub. L. 102-511, title I, §101, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3321.)

**§ 5812. Program coordination, implementation, and oversight**

**(a) Coordination**

The President shall designate, within the Department of State, a coordinator who shall be responsible for—

- (1) designing an overall assistance and economic cooperation strategy for the independent states of the former Soviet Union;
- (2) ensuring program and policy coordination among agencies of the United States Government in carrying out the policies set forth in this Act (including the amendments made by this Act);
- (3) pursuing coordination with other countries and international organizations with respect to assistance to independent states;
- (4) ensuring that United States assistance programs for the independent states are consistent with this Act (including the amendments made by this Act);
- (5) ensuring proper management, implementation, and oversight by agencies responsible for assistance programs for the independent states; and
- (6) resolving policy and program disputes among United States Government agencies with respect to United States assistance for the independent states.

**(b) Export promotion activities**

Consistent with subsection (a) of this section, coordination of activities related to the promotion of exports of United States goods and services to the independent states of the former Soviet Union shall continue to be primarily the responsibility of the Secretary of Commerce, in the Secretary's role as Chair of the Trade Promotion Coordination Committee.

**(c) International economic activities**

Consistent with subsection (a) of this section, coordination of activities relating to United States participation in international financial institutions and relating to organization of multilateral efforts aimed at currency stabilization, currency convertibility, debt reduction, and comprehensive economic reform programs shall continue to be primarily the responsibility of the Secretary of the Treasury, in the Secretary's role as Chair of the National Advisory Council on International Monetary and Financial Policies and as the United States Governor of the international financial institutions.

**(d) Accountability for funds**

Any agency managing and implementing an assistance program for the independent states of the former Soviet Union shall be accountable for any funds made available to it for such program.

(Pub. L. 102-511, title I, § 102, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3322.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(2), (4), is Pub. L. 102-511, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3320, known as the Freedom for Russia and Emerging Eurasian Democracies and Open Markets Support Act of 1992 and also as the FREEDOM Support Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 5801 of this title and Tables.

RESTRICTION ON ASSISTANCE TO AZERBAIJAN

Section 907 of Pub. L. 102-511 provided that: "United States assistance under this or any other Act (other than assistance under title V of this Act [22 U.S.C. 5851 et seq.]) may not be provided to the Government of Azerbaijan until the President determines, and so reports to the Congress, that the Government of Azerbaijan is taking demonstrable steps to cease all blockades and other offensive uses of force against Armenia and Nagorno-Karabakh."

SUPPORT FOR MACROECONOMIC STABILIZATION IN INDEPENDENT STATES OF FORMER SOVIET UNION

Section 1004 of Pub. L. 102-511 provided that:

"(a) IN GENERAL.—In order to promote macroeconomic stabilization and the integration of the independent states of the former Soviet Union into the international financial system, enhance the opportunities for trade, improve the climate for foreign investment, and strengthen the process of transformation of the former socialist economies into free enterprise systems and thereby progressively enhance the well-being of the citizens of these states, the United States should in appropriate circumstances take a leading role in organizing and supporting multilateral efforts at macroeconomic stabilization and debt rescheduling, conditioned on the appropriate development and implementation of comprehensive economic reform programs.

"(b) CURRENCY STABILIZATION.—In furtherance of the purposes and consistent with the conditions described in subsection (a), the Congress expresses its support for United States participation, in sums of up to \$3,000,000,000, in a currency stabilization fund or funds for the independent states of the former Soviet Union.

"(c) STUDY OF THE NEED FOR AND FEASIBILITY OF A CURRENCY STABILIZATION FUND FOR UKRAINE.—The Secretary of the Treasury shall instruct the United States Executive Director of the International Monetary Fund to use the voice and vote of the United States to urge the Fund to conduct a study of the need for and feasibility of a currency stabilization fund for Ukraine, and, if it is found that such a fund is needed and is feasible, which considers and makes recommendations with respect to the economic and policy conditions required for the success of such a fund."

REPORT ON DEBT OF FORMER SOVIET UNION HELD BY COMMERCIAL FINANCIAL INSTITUTIONS

Section 1007 of Pub. L. 102-511 directed Secretary of the Treasury, using information available from the International Monetary Fund, the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, and other appropriate international financial institutions, to report to Congress, not later than one year after Oct. 24, 1992, on the debt incurred by the former Soviet Union that is held by commercial financial institutions outside the independent states of the former Soviet Union that are obligated on such debt.

EX. ORD. NO. 12884. DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS UNDER FREEDOM SUPPORT ACT AND RELATED PROVISIONS OF FOREIGN OPERATIONS, EXPORT FINANCING AND RELATED PROGRAMS APPROPRIATIONS ACT

Ex. Ord. No. 12884, Dec. 1, 1993, 58 F.R. 64099, provided: By the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of America, including the FREEDOM Support Act (Public Law 102-511) (the "Act") [22 U.S.C. 5801 et seq.], the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as amended (the "Foreign Assistance Act") [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.], the Foreign Operations, Export Financing and Related Programs Appropriations Act, 1993 (Public Law 102-391) [see Tables for classification], and section 301 of title 3, United States Code, it is hereby ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. *Secretary of State.* (a) There are delegated to the Secretary of State the functions conferred upon the President by:

- (1) section 907 of the Act [set out above];
- (2) paragraphs (1), (2), and (3) of section 498A(b) of the Foreign Assistance Act [22 U.S.C. 2295a(b)(1), (2), (3)];

(3) paragraph (1) of section 498A(C) of the Foreign Assistance Act [22 U.S.C. 2295a(c)(1)] and the requirement to make reports under that section regarding determinations under that paragraph; and

(4) section 599B of Public Law 102-391 [106 Stat. 1697].

(b) The Secretary of State may at any time exercise any function delegated to the Coordinator under this order or otherwise assigned to the Coordinator.

SEC. 2. *Coordinator*. There are delegated to the Coordinator designated in accordance with section 102 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 5812] the functions conferred upon the President by:

(a) section 104 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 5814], and the Coordinator is authorized to assign responsibility for particular aspects of the reports described in that section to the heads of appropriate agencies;

(b) section 301 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 5821], insofar as it relates to determinations and directives;

(c) section 498A(a), section 498B(c), and section 498B(g) of the Foreign Assistance Act [22 U.S.C. 2295a(a), 2295b(c), (g)]; and

(d) paragraph (2) of section 498A(c) of the Foreign Assistance Act [22 U.S.C. 2295a(c)(2)] and the requirement to make reports under that section regarding determinations under that paragraph.

SEC. 3. *International Development Cooperation Agency*. There are delegated to the United States International Development Cooperation Agency the functions conferred upon the President by:

(a) sections 301(a) and 307 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 5821(a), 5827], except insofar as provided otherwise in section 2(b) of this order;

(b) section 498 and section 498C(b)(2) of the Foreign Assistance Act [22 U.S.C. 2295, 2295c(b)(2)];

(c) paragraph (3) of section 498A(c) of the Foreign Assistance Act [22 U.S.C. 2295a(c)(3)] and the requirement to make reports under that section regarding determinations under that paragraph;

(d) subsection (d) under the heading "Assistance for the New Independent States of the Former Soviet Union" contained in Title II of Public Law 102-391 [106 Stat. 1650]; and

(e) section 592 of Public Law 102-391 [106 Stat. 1691], except to the extent otherwise provided in section 5(b) of this order.

SEC. 4. *Secretary of Agriculture*. There are delegated to the Secretary of Agriculture the functions conferred upon the President by section 807(d) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 2452 note].

SEC. 5. *Other Agencies*. The functions conferred upon the President by:

(a) sections 498B(h) and 498B(i) of the Foreign Assistance Act [22 U.S.C. 2295b(h), (i)] are delegated to the head of the agency that is responsible for administering the particular program or activity with respect to which the authority is to be exercised; and

(b) the third proviso in section 592 of Public Law 102-391 [106 Stat. 1691] are delegated to the head of each agency that is responsible for administering relevant programs or activities.

SEC. 6. *General*. (a) the [sic] functions described in sections 3, 4, and 5 of this order shall be exercised subject to the authority of the Coordinator under section 102(a) of the Act [22 U.S.C. 5812(a)] or otherwise.

(b) As used in this order, the word "function" includes any duty, obligations, power, authority, responsibility, right, privilege, discretion, or activity.

(c) Functions delegated under this order shall be construed as excluded from the functions delegated under section 1-102(a) of Executive Order No. 12163, as amended [22 U.S.C. 2381 note].

(d) Any officer to whom functions are delegated or otherwise assigned under this order may, to the extent consistent with law, redelegate such functions and authorize their successive redelegation.

WILLIAM J. CLINTON.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 5813, 5841 of this title.

### § 5813. Report on overall assistance and economic cooperation strategy

#### (a) Requirement for submission

As soon as practicable after October 24, 1992, the coordinator designated pursuant to section 5812(a) of this title shall submit to the Congress a report on the overall assistance and economic cooperation strategy for the independent states of the former Soviet Union that is required to be developed pursuant to paragraph (1) of that section.

#### (b) Assistance plan

The report submitted pursuant to subsection (a) of this section shall include a plan specifying—

(1) the amount of the funds authorized to be appropriated for fiscal year 1993 by chapter 11 of part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2295 et seq.] proposed to be allocated for each of the categories of activities authorized by section 498 of that Act [22 U.S.C. 2295] and to carry out section 5821 of this title (relating to American Business Centers), section 5823 of this title (relating to export promotion activities and capital projects), and subchapter III of this chapter (relating to the Democracy Corps);

(2) the amount of other funds made available for fiscal year 1993 to carry out the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.] proposed to be allocated for assistance under that Act for the independent states of the former Soviet Union; and

(3) the amount of funds available for fiscal year 1993 under the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.] that are proposed to be made to each agency to carry out activities for the independent states under that Act or this Act.

(Pub. L. 102-511, title I, §103, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3323.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (b), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 32 (§2151 et seq.) of this title. Chapter 11 of part I of the Act is classified generally to part XI (§2295 et seq.) of subchapter I of chapter 32 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

This Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(3), is Pub. L. 102-511, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3320, known as the Freedom for Russia and Emerging Eurasian Democracies and Open Markets Support Act of 1992 and also as the FREEDOM Support Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 5801 of this title and Tables.

### § 5814. Annual report

Not later than January 31 of each year, the President shall submit to the Congress a report on United States assistance for the independent states of the former Soviet Union under this Act or other provisions of law. Each such report shall include—

(1) an assessment of the progress each independent state has made in meeting the standards set forth in section 2295a of this title, including a description of the steps each inde-

pendent state has taken or is taking toward meeting those standards and a discussion of additional steps that each independent state could take to meet those standards;

(2) a description of the United States assistance for each independent state that was provided during the preceding fiscal year, is planned for the current fiscal year, and is proposed for the coming fiscal year, specifying the extent to which such assistance for the preceding fiscal year and for current fiscal year has actually been delivered;

(3) an assessment of the effectiveness of United States assistance in achieving its purposes; and

(4) an evaluation of the manner in which the “notwithstanding” authority provided in section 2295b(j)(1) of this title, and the “notwithstanding” authority provided in any other provision of law with respect to assistance for the independent states, has been used and why the use of that authority was necessary.

(Pub. L. 102-511, title I, §104, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3324.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 102-511, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3320, known as the Freedom for Russia and Emerging Eurasian Democracies and Open Markets Support Act of 1992 and also as the FREEDOM Support Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 5801 of this title and Tables.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

For delegation of certain functions of President under this section, see section 2(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12884, Dec. 1, 1993, 58 F.R. 64099, set out as a note under section 5812 of this title.

#### PRESIDENTIAL REPORT ON FUNDING FOR NEW INDEPENDENT STATES OF FORMER SOVIET UNION

Pub. L. 103-306, title II, Aug. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 1617, provided in part that: “(o) The report required by subsection (d) under the heading ‘Assistance for the New Independent States of the Former Soviet Union’, contained in Public Law 102-391 [set out below], shall be updated at least annually and shall also contain a listing of all grants and contracts issued from funds appropriated annually for the new independent states of the former Soviet Union, to include for each grant and contract (1) a description of its purpose, (2) its amount, and (3) the country where the grant or contract funds are to be expended.”

Pub. L. 102-391, title III, Oct. 6, 1992, 106 Stat. 1650, provided in part that: “(d) REPORTS.—The President shall submit a report to the Committees on Appropriations containing the amount of funds obligated and expended for each project and subproject funded from amounts appropriated under this heading for the new independent states of the former Soviet Union. The report required by this subsection shall be submitted to the Committees on Appropriations no later than January 1, 1993, and an update of this report shall be submitted by the President to those Committees no later than July 1, 1993.”

#### RESTRICTIONS ON ASSISTANCE FOR NEW INDEPENDENT STATES OF FORMER SOVIET UNION; REPORT TO CONGRESS

Pub. L. 103-87, title V, §560(g), Sept. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 967, provided that: “None of the funds appropriated by this Act [see Tables for classification] shall be made available to any government of the New Independent States of the former Soviet Union if that government

directs any action in violation of the territorial integrity or national sovereignty of any other New Independent State, such as those violations included in Principle Six of the Helsinki Final Act: *Provided*, That such funds may be made available without regard to the restriction in this subsection if the President determines that to do so is in the national interest of the United States: *Provided further*, That the restriction of this subsection shall not apply to the use of such funds for the provision of assistance for purposes of humanitarian, disaster and refugee relief: *Provided further*, That thirty days after the date of enactment of this Act [Sept. 30, 1993], and then annually thereafter, the Secretary of State shall report to the Committees on Appropriations on steps taken by the governments of the New Independent States concerning violations referred to in this subsection: *Provided further*, That in preparing this report the Secretary shall consult with the United States Representative to the Conference on Security and Cooperation in Europe.”

Similar provisions relating to nonavailability of funds to any government of the new independent states of the former Soviet Union if that government directs any action in violation of the territorial integrity or national sovereignty of any other new independent state, were contained in the following appropriations act:

Pub. L. 103-306, title II, Aug. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 1616.

#### REPORT TO CONGRESS UNDER FREEDOM SUPPORT ACT

Memorandum of President of the United States, Jan. 29, 1993, 58 F.R. 8201, provided:

Memorandum for the Secretary of State

By the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of America, including the FREEDOM Support Act (Public Law 102-511) (the “Act”) [see Short Title note set out under section 5801 of this title] and section 301 of Title 3 of the United States Code, I hereby delegate the functions and authorities relating to the report required to be submitted not later than January 31, 1993, under section 104 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 5814] to the Secretary of State, who is authorized to redelegate these functions and authorities consistent with applicable law.

You are authorized and directed to publish this memorandum in the Federal Register.

WILLIAM J. CLINTON.

#### SUBCHAPTER II—BUSINESS AND COMMERCIAL DEVELOPMENT

#### § 5821. American Business Centers

##### (a) Establishment

The President is authorized and encouraged to establish American Business Centers in the independent states of the former Soviet Union receiving assistance under chapter 11 of part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2295 et seq.] where the President determines that such centers can be cost-effective in promoting the objectives described in section 498 of that Act [22 U.S.C. 2295] and United States economic interests and in establishing commercial partnerships between the people of the United States and the peoples of the independent states.

##### (b) Environmental business centers and agricultural business centers

For purposes of this section, the term “American Business Centers” includes the following:

(1) Environmental business centers in those independent states that offer promising market possibilities for the export of United States environmental goods and services. To the maximum extent practicable, these environmental business centers should be established as a component of other centers.

(2) Agribusiness centers that include the participation of private United States agribusinesses or agricultural cooperatives, private nonprofit organizations, State universities and land grant colleges, and financial institutions, that make appropriate contributions of equipment, materials, and personnel for the operation of such centers. The purposes of these agribusiness centers shall be—

(A) to enhance the ability of farmers and other agribusiness practitioners in the independent states to better meet the needs of the people of the independent states;

(B) to assist the transition from a command and control system in agriculture to a free market system; and

(C) to facilitate the demonstration and use of United States agricultural equipment and technology.

**(c) Additional policy guidance**

To the maximum extent possible, and consistent with the particular purposes of the specific types of centers, the President should direct that—

(1) the American Business Centers established pursuant to this section place special emphasis on assistance to United States small- and medium-sized businesses to facilitate their entry into the commercial markets of the independent states;

(2) such centers offer office space, business facilities, and market analysis services to United States firms, trade associations, and State economic development offices on a user-fee basis that minimizes the cost of operating such centers;

(3) such centers serve as a repository for commercial, legal, and technical information, including environmental and export control information;

(4) such centers identify existing or potential counterpart businesses or organizations that may require specific technical coordination or assistance;

(5) such centers be established in several sites in the independent states; and

(6) host countries be asked to make appropriate contributions of real estate and personnel for the establishment and operation of such centers.

**(d) Funding**

**(1) Reimbursement agreement**

Not later than 90 days after October 24, 1992, the Administrator of the Agency for International Development shall conclude a reimbursement agreement with the Secretary of Commerce for the Department of Commerce's services in establishing and operating American Business Centers pursuant to this section.

**(2) Authorization of appropriations**

Of the amount authorized to be appropriated to carry out chapter 11 of part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2295 et seq.], up to \$12,000,000 for fiscal year 1993 are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section, in addition to amounts otherwise available for such purpose.

(Pub. L. 102-511, title III, §301, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3332.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (d)(2), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended. Chapter 11 of part I of the Act is classified generally to part XI (§2295 et seq.) of subchapter I of chapter 32 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Functions of President under subsec. (a) of this section delegated to United States International Development Cooperation Agency, except that all functions under this section, insofar as relating to determinations and directives, delegated to Coordinator, see sections 2(b) and 3(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12884, Dec. 1, 1993, 58 F.R. 64099, set out as a note under section 5812 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 5813 of this title; title 15 section 4729.

**§ 5822. Business and Agriculture Advisory Council**

**(a) Establishment**

The President is authorized to establish an advisory council to be known as the Independent States Business and Agriculture Advisory Council (hereinafter in this section referred to as the "Council")—

(1) to consult with and advise the President periodically regarding programs of assistance for the independent states of the former Soviet Union; and

(2) to evaluate, and consult periodically with the President regarding, the adequacy of bilateral and multilateral assistance programs that would facilitate exports by United States companies to, and investments by United States companies in, the independent states.

**(b) Membership**

The Council should consist of 15 members, appointed by the President, who are drawn from United States companies reflecting diverse businesses and perspectives that have experience and expertise in dealing with the independent states of the former Soviet Union. The President should designate one such member to serve as Chair of the Council. Five such members should be appointed upon the recommendation of the Speaker and the Minority Leader of the House of Representatives and 5 should be appointed upon the recommendation of the Majority Leader and Minority Leader of the Senate. Members of the Council shall receive no compensation from the United States Government by reason of their service on the Council.

**(c) Staff**

Upon request of the Chair of the Council, the head of any United States Government agency may detail, on a nonreimbursable basis, any of the personnel of such agency to the Council to assist the Council.

(Pub. L. 102-511, title III, §302, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3333.)

TERMINATION OF ADVISORY COUNCILS

Advisory councils established after Jan. 5, 1973, to terminate not later than the expiration of the 2-year



period beginning on the date of their establishment, unless, in the case of a council established by the President or an officer of the Federal Government, such council is renewed by appropriate action prior to the expiration of such 2-year period, or in the case of a council established by Congress, its duration is otherwise provided for by law. See sections 3(2) and 14 of Pub. L. 92-643, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 770, 776, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 15 section 4729.

**§ 5823. Funding for export promotion activities and capital projects**

**(a) Allocation of A.I.D. funds**

The President is encouraged to use a portion of the funds made available for the independent states of the former Soviet Union under chapter 11 of part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2295 et seq.]—

(1) to fund the export promotion, finance, and related activities carried out pursuant to subsection (b)(1) of this section, including activities relating to the export of intermediary goods; and

(2) to fund capital projects, including projects for telecommunications, environmental cleanup, power production, and energy related projects.

**(b) Export promotion, finance, and related activities**

The Secretary of Commerce, as Chair of the Trade Promotion Coordination Committee, should, in conjunction with other members of that committee, design and implement programs to provide adequate commercial and technical assistance to United States businesses seeking markets in the independent states of the former Soviet Union, including the following:

(1) Increasing the United States and Foreign Commercial Service presence in the independent states, in particular in the Russian Far Eastern cities of Vladivostok and Khabarovsk.

(2) Preparing profiles of export opportunities for United States businesses in the independent states and providing other technical assistance.

(3) Utilizing the Market Development Co-operator Program under section 4723 of title 15.

(4) Developing programs specifically for the purpose of assisting small- and medium-sized businesses in entering commercial markets of the independent states. In carrying out this paragraph, the Secretary of Commerce, to the extent possible, should work directly with private sector organizations with proven experience in trade and economic relations with the independent states.

(5) Supporting projects undertaken by the United States business community on the basis of partnership, joint venture, contractual, or other cooperative agreements with appropriate entities in the independent states.

(6) Supporting export finance programs, feasibility studies, political risk insurance, and other related programs through increased funding and flexibility in the implementation of such programs.

(7) Supporting the Business Information Service (BISNIS) and its related programs.

(Pub. L. 102-511, title III, § 303, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3333.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended. Chapter 11 of part I of the Act is classified generally to part XI (§ 2295 et seq.) of subchapter I of chapter 32 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 5813 of this title; title 15 section 4727.

**§ 5824. Interagency working group on energy of the Trade Promotion Coordinating Committee**

The Trade Promotion Coordinating Committee should utilize its interagency working group on energy to assist United States energy sector companies to develop a long-term strategy for penetrating the energy market in the independent states of the former Soviet Union. The working group should—

(1) work with officials from the independent states in creating an environment conducive to United States energy investment;

(2) help to coordinate assistance to United States companies involved with projects to clean up former Soviet nuclear weapons sites and commercial nuclear waste; and

(3) work with representatives from United States business and industry involved with the energy sector to help facilitate the identification of business opportunities, including the promotion of oil, gas, and clean coal technology and products, energy efficiency, and the formation of joint ventures between United States companies and companies of the independent nations.

(Pub. L. 102-511, title III, § 304, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3334.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 15 section 4727.

**§ 5825. Repealed. Pub. L. 104-66, title I, § 1021(e), Dec. 21, 1995, 109 Stat. 713**

Section, Pub. L. 102-511, title III, § 305, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3335, directed Secretary of Commerce to submit to Congress annual reports describing implementation of business and commercial development provisions, analyzing programs of other industrialized countries, and examining trade practices of other Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development nations.

**§ 5826. Policy on combatting tied aid practices**

Should the Secretary of the Treasury determine that foreign countries are engaged in tied aid practices with respect to any of the independent states of the former Soviet Union that violate the 1991 Helsinki agreement of the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development, the President should give priority attention to combatting such practices.

(Pub. L. 102-511, title III, § 306, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3335.)

**§ 5827. Technical assistance for Russian Far East****(a) Authorization**

The President is authorized to provide technical assistance, through an American university in a region which received nonstop air service to and from the Russian Far East as of July 1, 1992, to facilitate the development of United States business opportunities, free markets, and democratic institutions in the Russian Far East.

**(b) Authorization of appropriations**

There are authorized to be appropriated \$2,000,000 to carry out subsection (a) of this section.

(Pub. L. 102-511, title III, §307, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3335.)

## DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

For delegation of certain functions of President under this section, see section 3(a) of Ex. Ord. No. 12884, Dec. 1, 1993, 58 F.R. 64099, set out as a note under section 5812 of this title.

**§ 5828. Funding for OPIC programs****(a) Authority to make additional funds available**

Funds authorized to be appropriated for fiscal year 1993 to carry out chapter 11 of part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2295 et seq.] may be made available to cover costs incurred by the Overseas Private Investment Corporation in carrying out programs with respect to the independent states of the former Soviet Union under title IV of chapter 2 of part I of that Act (22 U.S.C. 2191 and following), in addition to amounts otherwise available for that purpose.

**(b) Enactment of OPIC Authorization Act**

The authority of subsection (a) of this section shall cease to be effective upon the enactment of the Overseas Private Investment Corporation Act Amendments Act of 1992.

(Pub. L. 102-511, title III, §308, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3335.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended. Chapter 11 of part I of the Act is classified generally to part II (§2295 et seq.) of subchapter I of chapter 32 of this title. Title IV of chapter 2 of part I of the Act is classified generally to subpart IV (§2191 et seq.) of part II of subchapter I of chapter 32 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

The Overseas Private Investment Corporation Act Amendments Act of 1992, referred to in subsec. (b), probably means the Overseas Private Investment Corporation Amendments Act of 1992, which was title I of H.R. 4996, 102d Congress, as passed by the House of Representatives. H.R. 4996 was enacted into law as Pub. L. 102-549 and title I was significantly revised and no longer contained provisions designating it as the Overseas Private Investment Corporation Amendments Act of 1992.

## SUBCHAPTER III—THE DEMOCRACY CORPS

## SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in section 5813 of this title.

**§ 5841. Authorization for establishment of Democracy Corps****(a) Establishment; purpose**

The President is authorized to provide for the establishment of the Democracy Corps as a private nonprofit organization, incorporated in the District of Columbia, whose purpose shall be to maintain a presence in the independent states of the former Soviet Union as described in subsection (c) of this section.

**(b) Board of Directors**

The Board of Directors of the Democracy Corps shall have not more than 10 members, appointed by the President. Individuals appointed to the Board—

(1) shall, individually or through the organizations they represent, have experience and expertise appropriate to carrying out the purpose of the Democracy Corps, including involvement either with activities of the type described in subsection (d) of this section or in the independent states;

(2) shall be United States citizens; and

(3) may not be officers or employees of the United States Government or Members of Congress.

**(c) Grants to Democracy Corps; purpose**

The Administrator is authorized to make an annual grant to the Democracy Corps with the funds made available pursuant to this section. The purpose of such grants shall be to enable the Democracy Corps to maintain a presence in independent states of the former Soviet Union that will assist at the local level in the development of—

(1) institutions of democratic governance (including judicial, electoral, legislative, and administrative processes), and

(2) the nongovernmental organizations of a civil society (including charitable, educational, trade union, business, professional, voluntary, community, and other civic organizations),

by mobilizing the expertise of the American people to provide practical assistance through “on the ground” person-to-person advice, technical assistance, and small grants to indigenous individuals and indigenous entities, in accordance with subsection (d) of this section.

**(d) Activities**

The Democracy Corps shall be required to carry out its purpose through the placement within the independent states of teams of United States citizens with appropriate expertise and knowledge. Under guidelines developed by the Board, these teams shall assist indigenous individuals and entities in the independent states that are involved in the development of the institutions and organizations referred to in paragraphs (1) and (2) of subsection (c) of this section by—

(1) providing advice and technical assistance;

(2) making small grants (which in most cases should not exceed \$5,000) to such individuals and entities to assist the development of those institutions and organizations;

(3) identifying other sources of assistance; and

(4) operating local centers to serve as information, logistical, and educational centers and otherwise encourage cooperation and effectiveness by those involved in the development of democratic institutions, a market-oriented economy, and a civil society in the independent states.

These local centers may be designated as “Democracy Houses” or given another appropriate appellation.

**(e) Grant agreement**

Grants under this section shall be made pursuant to a grant agreement requiring the Democracy Corps to comply with the requirements specified in this section and with such other terms and conditions as the Administrator may require, which shall include requirements regarding consultation with the coordinator designated pursuant to section 5812(a) of this title, conflicts of interest, and accountability for funds, including a requirement for annual independent audits.

**(f) Coordination**

The Democracy Corps shall be required to—

(1) coordinate its activities pursuant to this section with the programs and activities of other entities operating in or providing assistance to the independent states of the former Soviet Union in support of the development of democratic institutions, a market-oriented economy, and a civil society; and

(2) ensure that its activities pursuant to this section are designed to avoid duplication with activities carried out under other United States Government foreign assistance and international information, educational, cultural, and exchange programs.

**(g) Prohibition on campaign financing**

Funds made available to the Democracy Corps under this section may not be expended by the Democracy Corps, or any recipient of a grant from the Democracy Corps, to finance the campaigns of candidates for public office.

**(h) Freedom of information**

**(1) In general**

Notwithstanding the fact that the Democracy Corps is not an agency or establishment of the United States Government, the Democracy Corps shall be required to comply fully with all of the provisions of section 552 of title 5.

**(2) Publication in Federal Register**

For purposes of complying pursuant to paragraph (1) with section 552(a)(1) of title 5, the Democracy Corps shall make available to the Administrator such records and other information as the Administrator determines may be necessary for such purposes. The Administrator shall cause such records and other information to be published in the Federal Register.

**(3) AID review**

In the event that the Democracy Corps determines not to comply with a request for records under section 552 of title 5, the Democracy Corps shall submit a report to the Admin-

istrator explaining the reasons for not complying with such request. If the Administrator approves such determination, the Agency for International Development shall assume full responsibility, including financial responsibility, for defending the Democracy Corps in any litigation relating to such request. If the Administrator disapproves such determination, the Democracy Corps shall be required to comply with such request.

**(i) Annual reports**

The Board shall be required to submit to the Administrator and the Congress, not later than January 31 each year, a comprehensive report on the activities of the Democracy Corps. Each such report shall list each grant made by the Democracy Corps under subsection (d)(2) of this section during the preceding fiscal year, specifying the grantee and the amount of the grant.

**(j) Authorization of appropriations**

Of the amount authorized to be appropriated to carry out chapter 11 of part I of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2295 et seq.], up to \$15,000,000 for fiscal year 1993 are authorized to be appropriated for grants to the Democracy Corps under this section, in addition to amounts otherwise available for such purpose.

**(k) Sunset provision**

Grants may not be made to the Democracy Corps under this section after the end of fiscal year 1997.

**(l) Definitions**

As used in this section—

(1) the term “Administrator” means the Administrator of the Agency for International Development; and

(2) the term “Board” means the Board of Directors of the Democracy Corps.

(Pub. L. 102-511, title IV, §401, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3335.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsection (j), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended. Chapter 11 of part I of the Act is classified generally to part XI (§2295 et seq.) of subchapter I of chapter 32 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

SUBCHAPTER IV—NONPROLIFERATION AND DISARMAMENT PROGRAMS AND ACTIVITIES

**§ 5851. Findings**

The Congress finds that it is in the national security interest of the United States—

(1) to facilitate, on a priority basis—

(A) the transportation, storage, safeguarding, and destruction of nuclear and other weapons of mass destruction of the independent states of the former Soviet Union;

(B) the prevention of proliferation of weapons of mass destruction and destabilizing conventional weapons of the independent states, and the establishment of verifiable safeguards against the proliferation of such weapons;

(C) the prevention of diversion of weapons-related scientific expertise of the former So-

viet Union to terrorist groups or third countries; and

(D) other efforts designed to reduce the military threat from the former Soviet Union;

(2) to support the conversion of the massive defense-related industry and equipment of the independent states of the former Soviet Union for civilian purposes and uses; and

(3) to expand military-to-military contacts between the United States and the independent states.

(Pub. L. 102-511, title V, §501, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3338.)

#### § 5852. Eligibility

Funds may be obligated for a fiscal year for assistance or other programs or activities for an independent state of the former Soviet Union under sections 5853 and 5854 of this title only if the President has certified to the Congress, during that fiscal year, that such independent state is committed to—

(1) making a substantial investment of its resources for dismantling or destroying such weapons of mass destruction, if that independent state has an obligation under a treaty or other agreement to destroy or dismantle any such weapons;

(2) forgoing any military modernization program that exceeds legitimate defense requirements and forgoing the replacement of destroyed weapons of mass destruction;

(3) forgoing any use in new nuclear weapons of fissionable or other components of destroyed nuclear weapons; and

(4) facilitating United States verification of any weapons destruction carried out under section 5853(a) or 5854(a) of this title or section 212 of the Soviet Nuclear Threat Reduction Act of 1991 (title II of Public Law 102-228; 22 U.S.C. 2551 note).

(Pub. L. 102-511, title V, §502, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3338.)

#### DELEGATION OF AUTHORITY

Memorandum of President of the United States, Dec. 30, 1992, 58 F.R. 3193, provided:

Memorandum for the Secretary of State, the Secretary of Defense [and] the Director, Office of Management & Budget

By the authority vested in me by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of America, including section 301 of title 3 of the United States Code, I hereby delegate:

1. to the Secretary of State the authority and duty vested in the President under section 1412(d) of the Former Soviet Union Demilitarization Act of 1992 (title XIV of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 1993, Public Law 102-484) [22 U.S.C. 5902(d)] and section 502 of the Freedom Support Act (Public Law 102-511 [22 U.S.C. 5852]).

2. to the Secretary of Defense the authorities and duties vested in the President under sections 1412(a), 1431, and 1432 of Public Law 102-484 [22 U.S.C. 5902(a), 5921, 5922] and sections 503 and 508 of Public Law 102-511 [22 U.S.C. 5853, 5858].

The Secretary of Defense shall not exercise authority delegated by paragraph 2 hereof with respect to any former Soviet republic unless the Secretary of State has exercised his authority and performed the duty delegated by paragraph 1 hereof with respect to that

former Soviet Republic. The Secretary of Defense shall not obligate funds in the exercise of authority delegated by paragraph 2 hereof unless the Director of the Office of Management and Budget has determined that expenditures during fiscal year 1993 pursuant to such obligation shall be counted against the defense category of discretionary spending limits for that fiscal year (as defined in section 601(a)(2) of the Congressional Budget Act of 1974 [2 U.S.C. 665(a)(2)]) for purposes of Part C of the Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985 [2 U.S.C. 900 et seq.].

The Secretary of State is directed to publish this memorandum in the Federal Register.

GEORGE BUSH.

#### § 5853. Nonproliferation and disarmament activities in independent states

##### (a) Authorization

The President is authorized to promote bilateral and multilateral nonproliferation and disarmament activities—

(1) by supporting the dismantlement and destruction of nuclear, biological, and chemical weapons, their delivery systems, and conventional weapons of the independent states of the former Soviet Union;

(2) by supporting bilateral and multilateral efforts to halt the proliferation of nuclear, biological, and chemical weapons, their delivery systems, related technologies, and other weapons of the independent states, including activities such as—

(A) the storage, transportation, and safeguarding of such weapons, and

(B) the purchase, barter, or other acquisition of such weapons or materials derived from such weapons;

(3) by establishing programs for safeguarding against the proliferation of nuclear, biological, chemical, and other weapons of the independent states;

(4) by establishing programs for preventing diversion of weapons-related scientific and technical expertise of the independent states to terrorist groups or to third countries;

(5) by establishing science and technology centers in the independent states for the purpose of engaging weapons scientists and engineers of the independent states (in particular those who were previously involved in the design and production of nuclear, biological, and chemical weapons) in productive, nonmilitary undertakings; and

(6) by establishing programs for facilitating the conversion of military technologies and capabilities and defense industries of the former Soviet Union into civilian activities.

##### (b) Funding priorities

Priority in carrying out this section shall be given to the activities described in paragraphs (1) through (5) of subsection (a) of this section.

##### (c) Use of defense funds

###### (1) Authorization

In recognition of the direct contributions to the national security interests of the United States of the programs and activities authorized by subsection (a) of this section, the President is authorized to make available for use in carrying out those programs and activities, in addition to amounts otherwise avail-

able for such purposes, funds made available pursuant to sections 108 and 109 of Public Law 102-229 or under the amendments made by section 506(a) of this Act.

**(2) Limitation**

Funds described in paragraph (1) may not be obligated for programs and activities under subsection (a) of this section unless the Director of the Office of Management and Budget has determined that expenditures during fiscal year 1993 pursuant to such obligation shall be counted against the defense category of the discretionary spending limits for that fiscal year (as defined in section 665(a)(2) of title 2) for purposes of part C of the Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985 [2 U.S.C. 900 et seq.].

(Pub. L. 102-511, title V, § 503, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3338.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Sections 108 and 109 of Public Law 102-229, referred to in subsec. (c)(1), are sections 108 and 109 of Pub. L. 102-229, title I, Dec. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 1708, which are not classified to the Code.

Section 506(a) of this Act, referred to in subsec. (c)(1), is section 506(a) of Pub. L. 102-511, which was classified to section 5856(a) of this title and was omitted from the Code. Section 506(a) directed amendment of section 221 of Pub. L. 102-228, set out as a note under section 2551 of this title, but did not become effective pursuant to section 5856(c) of this title.

The Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985, referred to in subsec. (c)(2), is title II of Pub. L. 99-177, Dec. 12, 1985, 99 Stat. 1038. Part C of the Act is classified generally to subchapter I (§900 et seq.) of chapter 20 of Title 2, The Congress. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 900 of Title 2 and Tables.

DELEGATION OF AUTHORITY

Authority of President under this section delegated to Secretary of Defense by section 2 of Memorandum of President of the United States, Dec. 30, 1992, 58 F.R. 3193, set out as a note under section 5852 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 5852, 5855, 5856, 5857, 5858 of this title.

**§ 5854. Nonproliferation and disarmament fund**

**(a) Authorization**

The President is authorized to promote bilateral and multilateral nonproliferation and disarmament activities—

(1) by supporting the dismantlement and destruction of nuclear, biological, and chemical weapons, their delivery systems, and conventional weapons;

(2) by supporting bilateral and multilateral efforts to halt the proliferation of nuclear, biological, and chemical weapons, their delivery systems, related technologies, and other weapons, including activities such as—

(A) the storage, transportation, and safeguarding of such weapons, and

(B) the purchase, barter, or other acquisition of such weapons or materials derived from such weapons;

(3) by establishing programs for safeguarding against the proliferation of nuclear, bio-

logical, chemical, and other weapons of the independent states of the former Soviet Union;

(4) by establishing programs for preventing diversion of weapons-related scientific and technical expertise of the independent states to terrorist groups or to third countries;

(5) by establishing science and technology centers in the independent states for the purpose of engaging weapons scientists and engineers of the independent states (in particular those who were previously involved in the design and production of nuclear, biological, and chemical weapons) in productive, nonmilitary undertakings; and

(6) by establishing programs for facilitating the conversion of military technologies and capabilities and defense industries of the former Soviet Union into civilian activities.

**(b) Funding priorities**

Priority in carrying out this section shall be given to the activities described in paragraphs (1) through (5) of subsection (a) of this section.

**(c) Use of security assistance funds**

**(1) Authorization**

In recognition of the direct contributions to the national security interests of the United States of the programs and activities authorized by subsection (a) of this section, the President is authorized to make available for use in carrying out those programs and activities, in addition to amounts otherwise available for such purposes, up to \$100,000,000 of security assistance funds for fiscal year 1993.

**(2) “Security assistance funds” defined**

As used in paragraph (1), the term “security assistance funds” means funds made available for assistance under chapter 4 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2346 et seq.] (relating to the Economic Support Fund) or assistance under section 2763 of this title (relating to the “Foreign Military Financing Program”).

**(3) Exemption from certain restrictions**

Section 531(e) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2346(e)], and any provision that corresponds to section 510 of the Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Act, 1991 (relating to the prohibition on financing exports of nuclear equipment, fuel, and technology), shall not apply with respect to funds used pursuant to this subsection.

(Pub. L. 102-511, title V, § 504, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3339.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (c)(2), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended. Chapter 4 of part II of the Act is classified to part IV (§2346 et seq.) of subchapter II of chapter 32 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

Section 510 of the Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Act, 1991, referred to in subsec. (c)(3), is section 510 of Pub. L. 101-513, title V, Nov. 5, 1991, 104 Stat. 2003, which is not classified to the Code.

DELEGATION OF AUTHORITY WITH RESPECT TO ALLOCATION AND ADMINISTRATION OF NONPROLIFERATION AND DISARMAMENT FUND

Memorandum of President of the United States, Apr. 21, 1994, 59 F.R. 21619, provided:

Memorandum for the Secretary of State [and] the Secretary of Defense

By the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of America, including sections 504 and 508 [22 U.S.C. 5854, 5858] of the FREEDOM Support Act (Public Law 102-511) (the “Act”), title III of the Foreign Operations, Export Financing, and Related Programs Appropriations Act, 1994 (Public Law 103-87) [107 Stat. 941] and section 301 of title 3 of the United States Code, it is hereby ordered as follows:

1. The authorities and duties vested in the President under section 504 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 5854] are hereby delegated to the Secretary of State. These authorities and duties shall be exercised in consultation with the Secretary of Defense and other appropriate agencies. The Secretary of State may, to the extent consistent with law, redelegate such authorities and duties and authorize their successive redelegation.

2. Notwithstanding the Presidential Memorandum of December 30, 1992 [22 U.S.C. 5852 note] (Delegation of Responsibilities under Title XIV of Public Law 102-484 and Title V of Public Law 102-511), the Secretary of State is hereby delegated the duties vested in the President under section 508 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 5858] insofar as those duties relate to notice of and reports on obligations and activities under section 504 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 5854].

3. Funds appropriated or otherwise made available to the President for a “Nonproliferation and Disarmament Fund” authorized under section 504 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 5854] shall be deemed to be allocated to the Secretary of State without any further action of the President. Such funds may be reallocated or transferred as appropriate by the Secretary of State to any agency or part thereof for obligation or expenditure consistent with applicable law.

The Secretary of State is authorized and directed to publish this memorandum in the Federal Register.

WILLIAM J. CLINTON.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 5852, 5855, 5857, 5858 of this title.

**§ 5855. Limitations on defense conversion authorities**

Notwithstanding any other provision of law (including any other provision of this Act), funds may not be obligated in any fiscal year for purposes of facilitating the conversion of military technologies and capabilities and defense industries of the former Soviet Union into civilian activities, as authorized by sections 5853(a)(6) and 5854(a)(6) of this title or any other provision of law, unless the President has previously obligated in the same fiscal year an amount equal to or greater than that amount of funds for defense conversion and defense transition activities in the United States. For purposes of this section, the term “defense conversion and defense transition activities in the United States” means those United States Government funded programs whose primary purpose is to assist United States private sector defense workers, United States companies that manufacture or otherwise provide defense goods or services, or United States communities adversely affected by reductions in United States defense spending, such as programs funded

through the Office of Economic Adjustment in the Department of Defense, through the Defense Conversion Adjustment Program (as authorized by the Job Training Partnership Act [29 U.S.C. 1501 et seq.]), or through the Economic Development Administration.

(Pub. L. 102-511, title V, § 505, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3340.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 102-511, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3320, known as the Freedom for Russia and Emerging Eurasian Democracies and Open Markets Support Act of 1992 and also as the FREEDOM Support Act. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 5801 of this title and Tables.

The Job Training Partnership Act, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 97-300, Oct. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1322, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 19 (§ 1501 et seq.) of Title 29, Labor. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1501 of Title 29 and Tables.

**§ 5856. Soviet weapons destruction**

**(a), (b) Omitted**

**(c) Avoidance of duplicative amendments**

The amendments made by this section shall not be effective if the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 1993 enacts an amendment to section 221(a) of the Soviet Nuclear Threat Reduction Act of 1991 that authorizes the transfer of an amount that is the same or greater than the amount that is authorized by the amendment made by subsection (a)(1) of this section and enacts amendments identical to those in subsections (a)(2) and (b) of this section. If that Act enacts such amendments, sections 5853 and 5858 of this title shall be deemed to apply with respect to the funds made available under such amendments.

(Pub. L. 102-511, title V, § 506, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3341.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

For the amendments made by this section, referred to in subsec. (c), see Codification note below.

The National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 1993, referred to in subsec. (c), is Pub. L. 102-484, Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2315. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables. See, also, Codification note below.

Section 221(a) of the Soviet Nuclear Threat Reduction Act of 1991, referred to in subsec. (c), is section 221(a) of Pub. L. 102-228, which is set out as a note under section 2551 of this title. See Codification note below.

CODIFICATION

Section is comprised of section 506 of Pub. L. 102-511. Subsec. (a) of this section directed the amendment of section 221 of Pub. L. 102-228 which is set out as a note under section 2551 of this title and subsec. (b) of this section directed the amendment of sections 108 and 109 of Pub. L. 102-229 which are not classified to the Code. Because of amendments by section 1421(a)(2)(B), (3) and (b) of Pub. L. 102-484, div. A, title XIV, Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2565, to section 221 of Pub. L. 102-228 and sections 108 and 109 of Pub. L. 102-229, the amendments directed by subsecs. (a) and (b) of this section did not take effect pursuant to subsec. (c) of this section.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 5853, 5858 of this title.

**§ 5857. Waiver of certain provisions****(a) In general**

Funds made available for fiscal year 1993 under sections 5853 and 5854 of this title to provide assistance or otherwise carry out programs and activities with respect to the independent states of the former Soviet Union under those sections may be used notwithstanding any other provision of law, other than the provisions cited in subsection (b) of this section.

**(b) Exceptions**

Subsection (a) of this section does not apply with respect to—

(1) this subchapter; and

(2) section 1341 of title 31 (commonly referred to as the “Anti-Deficiency Act”), the Congressional Budget and Impoundment Control Act of 1974, the Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985, and the Budget Enforcement Act of 1990.

(Pub. L. 102-511, title V, §507, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3341.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Congressional Budget and Impoundment Control Act of 1974, referred to in subsec. (b)(2), is Pub. L. 93-344, July 12, 1974, 88 Stat. 297, as amended. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 621 of Title 2, The Congress, and Tables.

The Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985, referred to in subsec. (b)(2), is title II of Pub. L. 99-177, Dec. 12, 1985, 99 Stat. 1038, as amended, which enacted chapter 20 (§900 et seq.) and sections 654 to 656 of Title 2, amended sections 602, 622, 631 to 642, and 651 to 653 of Title 2, sections 1104 to 1106, and 1109 of Title 31, Money and Finance, and section 911 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare, repealed section 661 of Title 2, enacted provisions set out as notes under section 900 of Title 2 and section 911 of Title 42, and amended provisions set out as a note under section 621 of Title 2. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 900 of Title 2 and Tables.

The Budget Enforcement Act of 1990, referred to in subsec. (b)(2), is title XIII of Pub. L. 101-508, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1388-573. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1990 Amendment note set out under section 900 of Title 2 and Tables.

**§ 5858. Notice and reports to Congress****(a) Notice of proposed obligations**

Not less than 15 days before obligating any funds under section 5853 or 5854 of this title or the amendments made by section 506(a),<sup>1</sup> the President shall transmit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives, the President Pro Tempore of the Senate, and the appropriate congressional committees a report on the proposed obligation. Each such report shall specify—

(1) the account, budget activity, and particular program or programs from which the funds proposed to be obligated are to be derived and the amount of the proposed obligations; and

(2) the activities and forms of assistance for which the President plans to obligate such funds.

**(b) Semiannual report**

Not later than April 30, 1993, and not later than October 30, 1993, the President shall trans-

mit to the Speaker of the House of Representatives, the President Pro Tempore of the Senate, and the appropriate congressional committees a report on the activities carried out under sections 5853 and 5854 of this title and the amendments made by section 506(a).<sup>1</sup> Each such report shall set forth, for the preceding 6-month period and cumulatively, the following:

(1) The amounts expended for such activities and the purposes for which they were expended.

(2) The source of the funds obligated for such activities, specified by program.

(3) A description of the participation of all United States Government departments and agencies in such activities.

(4) A description of the activities carried out and the forms of assistance provided.

(5) Such other information as the President considers appropriate to fully inform the Congress concerning the operation of the programs and activities carried out under sections 5853 and 5854 of this title and the amendments made by section 506(a).<sup>1</sup>

**(c) Appropriate congressional committees**

As used in this section—

(1) the term “appropriate congressional committees” means—

(A) the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives, and the Committees on Appropriations of the House and the Senate, wherever the account, budget activity, or program is funded from appropriations made under the international affairs budget function (150);

(B) the Committees on Armed Services and the Committees on Appropriations of the Senate and the House of Representatives, wherever the account, budget activity, or program is funded from appropriations made under the national defense budget function (050); and

(2) the committee to which the specified activities of section 5853(a) or 5854(a) of this title or subtitle B of the Soviet Nuclear Threat Reduction Act of 1991 (as the case may be), if the subject of separate legislation, would be referred, under the rules of the respective House of Congress.

(Pub. L. 102-511, title V, §508, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3342.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 506(a), referred to in subssecs. (a) and (b), is section 506(a) of Pub. L. 102-511, which was classified to section 5856(a) of this title and was omitted from the Code. Section 506(a) directed amendment of section 221 of Pub. L. 102-228, set out as a note under section 2551 of this title, but did not become effective, pursuant to section 5856(c) of this title.

The Soviet Nuclear Threat Reduction Act of 1991, referred to in subsec. (c)(2), is title II of Pub. L. 102-228, Dec. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 1693. The reference to subtitle B of the Act probably means part B of title II of Pub. L. 102-228, which is set out as a note under section 2551 of this title. Title II of Pub. L. 102-228 does not contain a subtitle B. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

## CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Inter-

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

national Relations of House of Representatives and Committee on Armed Services of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on National Security of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

For delegation of certain functions of the President under this section, see Memorandum of President of the United States, Apr. 21, 1994, 59 F.R. 21619, set out as a note under section 5854 of this title.

Authority of President under this section delegated to Secretary of Defense by section 2 of Memorandum of President of the United States, Dec. 30, 1992, 58 F.R. 3193, set out as a note under section 5852 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 5856 of this title.

### § 5859. International nonproliferation initiative

#### (a) to (e) Omitted

#### (f) Avoidance of duplicative authorizations

This section shall not apply if the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 1993 enacts the same authorities and requirements as are contained in this section and authorizes the appropriation of the same (or a greater) amount to carry out such authorities.

(Pub. L. 102-511, title V, § 509, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3343.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 1993, referred to in subsec. (f), is Pub. L. 102-484, Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2315. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables. See Codification note below.

#### CODIFICATION

Section is comprised of section 509 of Pub. L. 102-511. Subsecs. (a) to (e) were omitted pursuant to subsec. (f) because section 1505 of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 1993, Pub. L. 102-484, which is classified to section 5859a of this title, enacted the same authorities and requirements as contained in subsecs. (a) to (e) and authorized the appropriation of the same or a greater amount to carry out such authorities.

### § 5859a. International nonproliferation initiative

#### (a) Assistance for international nonproliferation activities

Subject to the limitations and requirements provided in this section, during fiscal years 1994 and 1995 the Secretary of Defense, under the guidance of the President, may provide assistance to support international nonproliferation activities.

#### (b) Activities for which assistance may be provided

Activities for which assistance may be provided under this section are activities such as the following:

(1) Activities carried out by international organizations that are designed to ensure more effective safeguards against proliferation and more effective verification of compliance with international agreements on nonproliferation.

(2) Activities of the On-Site Inspection Agency in support of the United Nations Special Commission on Iraq.

(3) Collaborative international nuclear security and nuclear safety projects to combat the threat of nuclear theft, terrorism, or accidents, including joint emergency response exercises, technical assistance, and training.

(4) Efforts to improve international cooperative monitoring of nuclear, biological, chemical, and missile proliferation through technical projects and improved information sharing.

#### (c) Form of assistance

(1) Assistance under this section may include funds and in-kind contributions of supplies, equipment, personnel, training, and other forms of assistance.

(2) Assistance under this section may be provided to international organizations in the form of funds only if the amount in the "Contributions to International Organizations" account of the Department of State is insufficient or otherwise unavailable to meet the United States fair share of assessments for international nuclear nonproliferation activities.

(3) No amount may be obligated for an expenditure under this section unless the Director of the Office of Management and Budget determines that the expenditure will be counted against the defense category of the discretionary spending limits for fiscal year 1993 (as defined in section 665(a)(2) of title 2) for purposes of part C of the Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985 [2 U.S.C. 900 et seq.].

(4) No assistance may be furnished under this section unless the Secretary of Defense determines and certifies to the Congress 30 days in advance that the provision of such assistance—

(A) is in the national security interest of the United States; and

(B) will not adversely affect the military preparedness of the United States.

(5) The authority to provide assistance under this section in the form of funds may be exercised only to the extent and in the amounts provided in advance in appropriations Act.

#### (d) Sources of assistance

(1) Funds provided as assistance under this section for fiscal year 1994 shall be derived from amounts made available to the Department of Defense for fiscal year 1994. Funds provided as assistance under this section for fiscal year 1995 shall be derived from amounts made available to the Department of Defense for fiscal year 1995. Funds provided as assistance under this section for a fiscal year referred to in this paragraph may also be derived from balances in working capital accounts of the Department of Defense.

(2) Supplies and equipment provided as assistance under this section may be provided, by loan or donation, from existing stocks of the Department of Defense and the Department of Energy.

(3) The total amount of the assistance provided in the form of funds under this section may not exceed <sup>1</sup>\$25,000,000 for fiscal year 1994 or \$20,000,000 for fiscal year 1995, including funds used for activities of the On-Site Inspection

<sup>1</sup> So in original.



Agency in support of the United Nations Special Commission on Iraq.

**(e) Quarterly report**

(1) Not later than 30 days after the end of each quarter of fiscal years 1994 and 1995, the Secretary of Defense shall transmit to the committees of Congress named in paragraph (2) a report of the activities to reduce the proliferation threat carried out under this section. Each report shall set forth (for the preceding quarter and cumulatively)—

(A) the amounts spent for such activities and the purposes for which they were spent;

(B) a description of the participation of the Department of Defense and the Department of Energy and the participation of other Government agencies in those activities; and

(C) a description of the activities for which the funds were spent.

(2) The committees of Congress to which reports under paragraph (1) are to be transmitted are—

(A) the Committee on Armed Services, the Committee on Appropriations, and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate; and

(B) the Committee on Armed Services, the Committee on Appropriations, the Committee on Foreign Affairs, and the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives.

(Pub. L. 102-484, div. A, title XV, §1505, Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2569; Pub. L. 103-160, div. A, title XI, §1182(c)(5), title XVI, §1602, Nov. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 1772, 1843; Pub. L. 103-337, div. A, title X, §1070(c)(1), title XV, §1501, Oct. 5, 1994, 108 Stat. 2857, 2914.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985, referred to in subsec. (c)(3), is title II of Pub. L. 99-177, Dec. 12, 1985, 99 Stat. 1038, as amended. Part C of the Act is classified generally to subchapter I (§900 et seq.) of chapter 20 of Title 2, The Congress. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 900 of Title 2 and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Weapons of Mass Destruction Control Act of 1992 and also as part of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 1993, and not as part of the Freedom for Russia and Emerging Eurasian Democracies and Open Markets Support Act of 1992 or Freedom Support Act which comprises this chapter.

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103-337, §1501(a)(1), substituted “fiscal years 1994 and 1995” for “fiscal year 1994”.

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 103-337, §1501(b)(1), substituted “international organizations” for “the International Atomic Energy Agency (IAEA)”, struck out “nuclear” after “safeguards against”, and substituted “effective verification” for “aggressive verification” and “international agreements on nonproliferation” for “the Treaty on the Non-Proliferation of Nuclear Weapons, done on July 1, 1968”.

Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 103-337, §1501(b)(2), substituted “nuclear, biological, chemical, and missile proliferation through technical projects and improved information sharing” for “nuclear proliferation through joint technical projects and improved intelligence sharing”.

Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 103-337, §1501(c)(1), inserted “for fiscal year 1994” after “under this section” and substituted “fiscal year 1994. Funds provided as assistance under this section for fiscal year 1995 shall be derived from amounts made available to the Department of Defense for fiscal year 1995. Funds provided as assistance under this section for a fiscal year referred to in this paragraph may also be derived” for “fiscal year 1994 or”.

Subsec. (d)(3). Pub. L. 103-337, §1501(c)(2), inserted “for fiscal year 1994 or \$20,000,000 for fiscal year 1995”.

Subsec. (e)(1). Pub. L. 103-337, §1501(a), substituted “fiscal years 1994 and 1995” for “fiscal year 1994”.

Subsec. (e)(2). Pub. L. 103-337, §1070(c)(1), which directed amendment of subsec. (e)(2) by striking out “and under subsection (d)(4) of this section” effective as of Oct. 23, 1992, and as if included in the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 1993 (Pub. L. 102-484), as enacted, was executed to subsec. (e)(2) as amended by Pub. L. 103-160, §1182(c)(5), to reflect the probable intent of Congress. See 1993 Amendment note below.

1993—Subsecs. (a), (d)(1). Pub. L. 103-160, §1602(a), substituted “fiscal year 1994” for “fiscal year 1993”.

Subsec. (d)(3). Pub. L. 103-160, §1602(b)(2), struck out at end “Of such amount, not more than \$20,000,000 may be used for the activities of the On-Site Inspection Agency in support of the United Nations Special Commission on Iraq.”

Pub. L. 103-160, §1602(b)(1), substituted “\$25,000,000, including funds used for activities of the On-Site Inspection Agency in support of the United Nations Special Commission on Iraq” for “40,000,000”.

Subsec. (d)(4). Pub. L. 103-160, §1602(c), struck out par. (4) which read as follows: “Not less than 30 days before obligating any funds to provide assistance under this section, the Secretary of Defense shall transmit to the committees of Congress named in subsection (e)(2) of this section a report on the proposed obligation. Each such report shall specify—

“(A) the account, budget activity, and particular program or programs from which the funds proposed to be obligated are to be derived and the amount of the proposed obligation; and

“(B) the activities and forms of assistance for which the Secretary of Defense plans to obligate the funds.”

Subsec. (e)(1). Pub. L. 103-160, §1602(a), substituted “fiscal year 1994” for “fiscal year 1993”.

Subsec. (e)(2). Pub. L. 103-160, §1182(c)(5), substituted “(d)(4)” for “(d)(2)” in introductory provisions.

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Armed Services of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on National Security of House of Representatives, Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives, and Committee on Energy and Commerce of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Commerce of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Section 1070(c) of Pub. L. 103-337 provided in part that the amendment made by that section is effective as of Oct. 23, 1992, and as if included in the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 1993, Pub. L. 102-484, as enacted.

**§ 5860. Report on special nuclear materials**

Not later than 180 days after October 24, 1992, the Secretary of State shall prepare, in consultation with the Secretary of Defense and the Secretary of Energy, and shall transmit to the Congress a report on the possible alternatives for the ultimate disposition of special nuclear materials of the former Soviet Union. This report shall include—

(1) a cost-benefit analysis comparing (A) the relative merits of the indefinite storage and safeguarding of such materials in the independent states of the former Soviet Union and (B) its acquisition by the United States by purchase, barter, or other means;

(2) a discussion of relevant issues such as the protection of United States uranium producers from dumping, the relative vulnerability of these stocks of special nuclear materials to illegal proliferation, and the potential electrical and other savings associated with their being made available in the fuel cycle in the United States; and

(3) a discussion of how highly enriched uranium stocks could be diluted for reactor fuel.

(Pub. L. 102-511, title V, §510, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3344.)

### § 5861. Research and Development Foundation

#### (a) Establishment

The Director of the National Science Foundation (hereinafter in this section referred to as the “Director”) is authorized to establish an endowed, nongovernmental, nonprofit foundation (hereinafter in this section referred to as the “Foundation”) in consultation with the Director of the National Institute of Standards and Technology.

#### (b) Purposes

The purposes of the Foundation shall be the following:

(1) To provide productive research and development opportunities within the independent states of the former Soviet Union that offer scientists and engineers alternatives to emigration and help prevent the dissolution of the technological infrastructure of the independent states.

(2) To advance defense conversion by funding civilian collaborative research and development projects between scientists and engineers in the United States and in the independent states of the former Soviet Union.

(3) To assist in the establishment of a market economy in the independent states of the former Soviet Union by promoting, identifying, and partially funding joint research, development, and demonstration ventures between United States businesses and scientists, engineers, and entrepreneurs in those independent states.

(4) To provide a mechanism for scientists, engineers, and entrepreneurs in the independent states of the former Soviet Union to develop an understanding of commercial business practices by establishing linkages to United States scientists, engineers, and businesses.

(5) To provide access for United States businesses to sophisticated new technologies, talented researchers, and potential new markets within the independent states of the former Soviet Union.

#### (c) Functions

In carrying out its purposes, the Foundation shall—

(1) promote and support joint research and development projects for peaceful purposes be-

tween scientists and engineers in the United States and independent states of the former Soviet Union on subjects of mutual interest; and

(2) seek to establish joint nondefense industrial research, development, and demonstration activities through private sector linkages which may involve participation by scientists and engineers in the university or academic sectors, and which shall include some contribution from industrial participants.

#### (d) Funding

##### (1) Use of certain Department of Defense funds

(A) To the extent funds appropriated to carry out subtitle E of title XIV of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 1993 [22 U.S.C. 5931] (relating to joint research and development programs with the independent states of the former Soviet Union) are otherwise available for such purpose, such funds may be made available to the Director for use by the Director in establishing the endowment of the Foundation and otherwise carrying out this section.

(B) For each fiscal year after fiscal year 1993, not more than 50 percent of the funds made available to the Foundation by the United States Government may be funds appropriated in the national defense budget function (function 050).

##### (2) Contribution to endowment by participating independent states

As a condition of participation in the Foundation, an independent state of the former Soviet Union must make a minimum contribution to the endowment of the Foundation, as determined by the Director, which shall reflect the ability of the independent state to make a financial contribution and its expected level of participation in the Foundation’s programs.

##### (3) Debt conversions

To the extent provided in advance by appropriations Acts, local currencies or other assets resulting from government-to-government debt conversions may be made available to the Foundation. For purposes of this paragraph, the term “debt conversion” means an agreement whereby a country’s government-to-government or commercial external debt burden is exchanged by the holder for local currencies, policy commitments, other assets, or other economic activities, or for an equity interest in an enterprise theretofore owned by the debtor government.

##### (4) Local currencies

In addition to other uses provided by law, and subject to agreement with the foreign government, local currencies generated by United States assistance programs may be made available to the Foundation.

##### (5) Investment of Government assistance

The Foundation may invest any revenue provided to it through United States Government assistance, and any interest earned on such investment may be used only for the purpose for which the assistance was provided.

**(6) Other funds from Government and non-governmental sources**

The Foundation may accept such other funds as may be provided to it by Government agencies or nongovernmental entities.

(Pub. L. 102-511, title V, §511, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3345.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Subtitle E of title XIV of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 1993, referred to in subsec. (d)(1), is subtitle E of title XIV of div. A of Pub. L. 102-484, Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2566, which is classified generally to subchapter IV (§5931) of chapter 68 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 5931 of this title.

SUBCHAPTER V—SPACE TRADE AND COOPERATION

**§ 5871. Facilitating discussions regarding acquisition of space hardware, technology, and services from former Soviet Union**

**(a) Expedited review**

Any request for a license or other approval described in subsection (c) of this section that is submitted to any United States Government agency by the National Aeronautics and Space Administration, any of its contractors, or any other person shall be considered on an expedited basis by that agency and any other agency involved in an applicable interagency review process.

**(b) Notice to Congress if license denied**

If any United States Government agency denies a request for a license or other approval described in subsection (c) of this section, that agency shall immediately notify the designated congressional committees. Each such notification shall include a statement of the reasons for the denial.

**(c) Description of discussions**

This section applies to a request for any license or other approval that may be necessary to conduct discussions with an independent state of the former Soviet Union with respect to the possible acquisition of any space hardware, space technology, or space service for integration into—

- (1) United States space projects that have been approved by the Congress, or
- (2) commercial space ventures,

including discussions relating to technical evaluation of such hardware, technology, or service.

(Pub. L. 102-511, title VI, §601, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3346.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 5872, 5873 of this title.

**§ 5872. Office of Space Commerce**

**(a) Trade missions**

The Office of Space Commerce of the Department of Commerce is authorized and encouraged to conduct one or more trade missions to appro-

priate independent states of the former Soviet Union for the purpose of familiarizing United States aerospace industry representatives with space hardware, space technologies, and space services that may be available from the independent states, and with the business practices and overall business climate in the independent states.

**(b) Monitoring negotiations**

The Office of Space Commerce—

(1) shall monitor the progress of any discussions described in section 5871(c)(1) of this title that are being conducted; and

(2) shall advise the Administrator of the National Aeronautics and Space Administration as to the impact on United States industry of each potential acquisition of space hardware, space technology, or space services from the independent states of the former Soviet Union, specifically including any anticompetitive issues the Office may observe.

(Pub. L. 102-511, title VI, §602, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3347.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 5873 of this title.

**§ 5873. Report to Congress**

Within one year after October 24, 1992, the President shall submit to the designated congressional committees a report describing—

(1) the opportunities for increased space-related trade with the independent states of the former Soviet Union;

(2) a technology procurement plan for identifying and evaluating all unique space hardware, space technology, and space services available to the United States from the independent states;

(3) specific space hardware, space technology, and space services that have been, or could be, the subject of discussions described in section 5871(c) of this title;

(4) the trade missions carried out pursuant to section 5872(a) of this title, including the private participation in and the results of such missions;

(5) any barriers, regulatory or practical, that inhibit space-related trade between the United States and independent states, including any such barriers in either the United States or the independent states; and

(6) any anticompetitive issues raised during the course of negotiations, as observed pursuant to section 5872(b) of this title.

(Pub. L. 102-511, title VI, §603, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3347.)

**§ 5874. Definitions**

For purposes of this subchapter—

(1) the term “contractor” means a National Aeronautics and Space Administration contractor to the extent that the acquisition of space hardware, space technology, or space services from the independent states of the former Soviet Union may be relevant to the contractor’s responsibilities under the contract; and

(2) the term “designated congressional committees” means the Committee on Science,

Space, and Technology and the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate.

(Pub. L. 102-511, title VI, §604, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3348.)

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Science, Space, and Technology of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Science of House of Representatives and Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

### CHAPTER 68—DEMILITARIZATION OF FORMER SOVIET UNION

#### SUBCHAPTER I—FINDINGS AND PROGRAM AUTHORITY

- Sec.
5901. Demilitarization of independent states of former Soviet Union.
5902. Authority for programs to facilitate demilitarization.
- (a) In general.
- (b) Types of programs.
- (c) United States participation.
- (d) Restrictions.

#### SUBCHAPTER II—ADMINISTRATIVE AND FUNDING AUTHORITIES

5911. Administration of demilitarization programs.
- (a) Funding.
- (b) Omitted.

#### SUBCHAPTER III—REPORTING REQUIREMENTS

5921. Prior notice to Congress of obligation of funds.
- (a) In general.
- (b) Industrial demilitarization.
5922. Quarterly reports on programs.

#### SUBCHAPTER IV—JOINT RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMS

5931. Programs with states of former Soviet Union.

#### SUBCHAPTER I—FINDINGS AND PROGRAM AUTHORITY

### § 5901. Demilitarization of independent states of former Soviet Union

The Congress finds that it is in the national security interest of the United States—

(1) to facilitate, on a priority basis—

(A) the transportation, storage, safeguarding, and destruction of nuclear and other weapons of the independent states of the former Soviet Union, including the safe and secure storage of fissile materials, dismantlement of missiles and launchers, and the elimination of chemical and biological weapons capabilities;

(B) the prevention of proliferation of weapons of mass destruction and their components and destabilizing conventional weapons of the independent states of the former Soviet Union, and the establishment of verifiable safeguards against the proliferation of such weapons;

(C) the prevention of diversion of weapons-related scientific expertise of the former So-

viet Union to terrorist groups or third countries; and

(D) other efforts designed to reduce the military threat from the former Soviet Union;

(2) to support the demilitarization of the massive defense-related industry and equipment of the independent states of the former Soviet Union and conversion of such industry and equipment to civilian purposes and uses; and

(3) to expand military-to-military contacts between the United States and the independent states of the former Soviet Union.

(Pub. L. 102-484, div. A, title XIV, §1411, Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2563.)

#### SHORT TITLE

Section 1401 of title XIV of div. A of Pub. L. 102-484 provided that: "This title [enacting this chapter and amending provisions set out as a note under section 2551 of this title] may be cited as the 'Former Soviet Union Demilitarization Act of 1992'."

#### NUCLEAR WEAPONS REDUCTION

Section 1321 of Pub. L. 102-484 provided that:

"(a) FINDINGS.—The Congress makes the following findings:

"(1) On February 1, 1992, the President of the United States and the President of the Russian Federation agreed in a Joint Statement that 'Russia and the United States do not regard each other as potential adversaries' and stated further that, 'We will work to remove any remnants of cold war hostility, including taking steps to reduce our strategic arsenals'.

"(2) In the Treaty on the Non-Proliferation of Nuclear Weapons, in exchange for the non-nuclear-weapon states agreeing not to seek a nuclear weapons capability nor to assist other non-nuclear-weapon states in doing so, the United States agreed to seek the complete elimination of all nuclear weapons worldwide, as declared in the preamble to the Treaty, which states that it is a goal of the parties to the Treaty to 'facilitate the cessation of the manufacture of nuclear weapons, the liquidation of all their existing stockpiles, and the elimination from national arsenals of nuclear weapons and the means of their delivery' as well as in Article VI of the Treaty, which states that 'each of the parties to the Treaty undertakes to pursue negotiations in good faith on effective measures relating to the cessation of the nuclear arms race at an early date and to nuclear disarmament'.

"(3) Carrying out a policy of seeking further significant and continuous reductions in the nuclear arsenals of all countries, besides reducing the likelihood of the proliferation of nuclear weapons and increasing the likelihood of a successful extension and possible strengthening of the Treaty on the Non-Proliferation of Nuclear Weapons in 1995, when the Treaty is scheduled for review and possible extension, has additional benefits to the national security of the United States, including—

"(A) a reduced risk of accidental enablement and launch of a nuclear weapon, and

"(B) a defense cost savings which could be reallocated for deficit reduction or other important national needs.

"(4) The Strategic Arms Reduction Talks (START) Treaty and the agreement by the President of the United States and the President of the Russian Federation on June 17, 1992, to reduce the strategic nuclear arsenals of each country to a level between 3,000 and 3,500 weapons are commendable intermediate stages in the process of achieving the policy goals described in paragraphs (1) and (2).

“(5) The current international era of cooperation provides greater opportunities for achieving worldwide reduction and control of nuclear weapons and material than any time since the emergence of nuclear weapons 50 years ago.

“(6) It is in the security interests of both the United States and the world community for the President and the Congress to begin the process of reducing the number of nuclear weapons in every country through multilateral agreements and other appropriate means.

“(7) In a 1991 study, a committee of the National Academy of Sciences concluded that: ‘The appropriate new levels of nuclear weapons cannot be specified at this time, but it seems reasonable to the committee that U.S. strategic forces could in time be reduced to 1,000–2,000 nuclear warheads, provided that such a multilateral agreement included appropriate levels and verification measures for the other nations that possess nuclear weapons. This step would require successful implementation of our proposed post-START U.S.-Soviet reductions, related confidence-building measures in all the countries involved, and multilateral security cooperation in areas such as conventional force deployments and planning.’

“(b) UNITED STATES POLICY.—It shall be the goal of the United States—

“(1) to encourage and facilitate the denuclearization of Ukraine, Byelarus, and Kazakhstan, as agreed upon in the Lisbon ministerial meeting of May 23, 1992;

“(2) to rapidly complete and submit for ratification by the United States the treaty incorporating the agreement of June 17, 1992, between the United States and the Russian Federation to reduce the number of strategic nuclear weapons in each country’s arsenal to a level between 3,000 and 3,500;

“(3) to facilitate the ability of the Russian Federation, Ukraine, Byelarus, and Kazakhstan to implement agreed mutual reductions under the START Treaty, and under the Joint Understanding of June 16–17, 1992 between the United States and the Russian Federation, on an accelerated timetable, so that all such reductions can be completed by the year 2000;

“(4) to build on the agreement reached in the Joint Understanding of June 16–17, 1992, by entering into multilateral negotiations with the Russian Federation, the United Kingdom, France, and the People’s Republic of China, and, at an appropriate point in that process, enter into negotiations with other nuclear armed states in order to reach subsequent stage-by-stage agreements to achieve further reductions in the number of nuclear weapons in all countries;

“(5) to continue and extend cooperative discussions with the appropriate authorities of the former Soviet military on means to maintain and improve secure command and control over nuclear forces;

“(6) in consultation with other member countries of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization and other allies, to initiate discussions to bring tactical nuclear weapons into the arms control process; and

“(7) to ensure that the United States assistance to securely transport and store, and ultimately dismantle, former Soviet nuclear weapons and missiles for such weapons is being properly and effectively utilized.

“(c) ANNUAL REPORT.—By February 1 of each year, the President shall submit to the Congress a report on—

“(1) the actions that the United States has taken, and the actions the United States plans to take during the next 12 months, to achieve each of the goals set forth in paragraphs (1) through (6) of subsection (b); and

“(2) the actions that have been taken by the Russian Federation, by other former Soviet republics, and by other countries to achieve those goals.

Each such report shall be submitted in unclassified form, with a classified appendix if necessary.”

## § 5902. Authority for programs to facilitate demilitarization

### (a) In general

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the President is authorized, in accordance with this chapter, to establish and conduct programs described in subsection (b) of this section to assist the demilitarization of the independent states of the former Soviet Union.

### (b) Types of programs

The programs referred to in subsection (a) of this section are limited to—

(1) transporting, storing, safeguarding, and destroying nuclear, chemical, and other weapons of the independent states of the former Soviet Union, as described in section 212(b) of the Soviet Nuclear Threat Reduction Act of 1991 (title II of Public Law 102–228);

(2) establishing verifiable safeguards against the proliferation of such weapons and their components;

(3) preventing diversion of weapons-related scientific expertise of the former Soviet Union to terrorist groups or third countries;

(4) facilitating the demilitarization of the defense industries of the former Soviet Union and the conversion of military technologies and capabilities into civilian activities;

(5) establishing science and technology centers in the independent states of the former Soviet Union for the purpose of engaging weapons scientists, engineers, and other experts previously involved with nuclear, chemical, and other weapons in productive, non-military undertakings; and

(6) expanding military-to-military contacts between the United States and the independent states of the former Soviet Union.

### (c) United States participation

The programs described in subsection (b) of this section should, to the extent feasible, draw upon United States technology and expertise, especially from the United States private sector.

### (d) Restrictions

United States assistance authorized by subsection (a) of this section may not be provided unless the President certifies to the Congress, on an annual basis, that the proposed recipient country is committed to—

(1) making a substantial investment of its resources for dismantling or destroying such weapons of mass destruction, if such recipient has an obligation under a treaty or other agreement to destroy or dismantle any such weapons;

(2) forgoing any military modernization program that exceeds legitimate defense requirements and forgoing the replacement of destroyed weapons of mass destruction;

(3) forgoing any use in new nuclear weapons of fissionable or other components of destroyed nuclear weapons;

(4) facilitating United States verification of any weapons destruction carried out under this chapter or section 212 of the Soviet Nuclear Threat Reduction Act of 1991 (title II of Public Law 102–228);

(5) complying with all relevant arms control agreements; and

(6) observing internationally recognized human rights, including the protection of minorities.

(Pub. L. 102-484, div. A, title XIV, §1412, Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2563.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 212 of the Soviet Nuclear Threat Reduction Act of 1991 (title II of Public Law 102-228), referred to in subsecs. (b)(1) and (d)(4), is set out in a note under section 2551 of this title.

#### DELEGATION OF AUTHORITY

Authority of President under subsec. (a) of this section delegated to Secretary of Defense by section 2 of Memorandum of President of the United States, Dec. 30, 1992, 58 F.R. 3193, set out as a note under section 5852 of this title.

Authority of President under subsec. (d) of this section delegated to Secretary of State by section 1 of Memorandum of President of the United States, Dec. 30, 1992, 58 F.R. 3193.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 5911, 5952 of this title.

### SUBCHAPTER II—ADMINISTRATIVE AND FUNDING AUTHORITIES

#### § 5911. Administration of demilitarization programs

##### (a) Funding

(1) In recognition of the direct contributions to the national security interests of the United States of the activities specified in section 5902 of this title, funds transferred under sections 108 and 109 of Public Law 102-229 (105 Stat. 1708) are authorized to be made available to carry out this chapter. Of the amount available to carry out this chapter—

(A) not more than \$40,000,000 may be made available for programs referred to in section 5902(b)(4) of this title relating to demilitarization of defense industries;

(B) not more than \$15,000,000 may be made available for programs referred to in section 5902(b)(6) of this title relating to military-to-military contacts;

(C) not more than \$25,000,000 may be made available for joint research development programs pursuant to section 5931 of this title;

(D) not more than \$10,000,000 may be made available for the study, assessment, and identification of nuclear waste disposal activities by the former Soviet Union in the Arctic region;

(E) not more than \$25,000,000 may be made available for Project PEACE; and

(F) not more than \$10,000,000 may be made available for the Volunteers Investing in Peace and Security (VIPS) program under chapter 89 of title 10.

(2), (3) Omitted.

##### (b) Omitted

(Pub. L. 102-484, div. A, title XIV, §1421, Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2564.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Sections 108 and 109 of Public Law 102-229 (105 Stat. 1708), referred to in subsec. (a)(1), are not classified to the Code.

#### CODIFICATION

Section is comprised of section 1421 of Pub. L. 102-484. Subsec. (a)(2) and (3) of section 1421 of Pub. L. 102-484 amended section 221 of Pub. L. 102-228 which is set out as a note under section 2551 of this title. Subsec. (b) of section 1421 of Pub. L. 102-484 amended sections 108 and 109 of Pub. L. 102-229 which are not classified to the Code.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 5931 of this title.

### SUBCHAPTER III—REPORTING REQUIREMENTS

#### § 5921. Prior notice to Congress of obligation of funds

##### (a) In general

Not less than 15 days before obligating any funds made available for a program under this chapter, the President shall transmit to the Congress a report on the proposed obligation. Each such report shall specify—

(1) the account, budget activity, and particular program or programs from which the funds proposed to be obligated are to be derived and the amount of the proposed obligation; and

(2) the activities and forms of assistance under this chapter for which the President plans to obligate such funds, including the projected involvement of United States Government departments and agencies and the United States private sector.

##### (b) Industrial demilitarization

Any report under subsection (a) of this section that covers proposed industrial demilitarization projects shall contain additional information to assist the Congress in determining the merits of the proposed projects. Such information shall include descriptions of—

(1) the facilities to be demilitarized;

(2) the types of activities conducted at those facilities and of the types of nonmilitary activities planned for those facilities;

(3) the forms of assistance to be provided by the United States Government and by the United States private sector;

(4) the extent to which military production capability will consequently be eliminated at those facilities; and

(5) the mechanisms to be established for monitoring progress on those projects.

(Pub. L. 102-484, div. A, title XIV, §1431, Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2565.)

#### DELEGATION OF AUTHORITY

Authority of President under this section delegated to Secretary of Defense by section 2 of Memorandum of President of the United States, Dec. 30, 1992, 58 F.R. 3193, set out as a note under section 5852 of this title.

#### § 5922. Quarterly reports on programs

Not later than 30 days after the end of the last fiscal year quarter of fiscal year 1992 and not later than 30 days after the end of each fiscal year quarter of fiscal year 1993, the President shall transmit to the Congress a report on the activities carried out under this chapter. Each such report shall set forth, for the preceding fiscal year quarter and cumulatively, the following:

(1) The amounts expended for such activities and the purposes for which they were expended.

(2) The source of the funds obligated for such activities, specified by program.

(3) A description of the participation of all United States Government departments and agencies and the United States private sector in such activities.

(4) A description of the activities carried out under this chapter and the forms of assistance provided under this chapter, including, with respect to proposed industrial demilitarization projects, additional information on the progress toward demilitarization of facilities and the conversion of the demilitarized facilities to civilian activities.

(5) Such other information as the President considers appropriate to fully inform the Congress concerning the operation of the programs authorized under this chapter.

(Pub. L. 102-484, div. A, title XIV, §1432, Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2566.)

#### DELEGATION OF AUTHORITY

Authority of President under this section delegated to Secretary of Defense by section 2 of Memorandum of President of the United States, Dec. 30, 1992, 58 F.R. 3193, set out as a note under section 5852 of this title.

#### SUBCHAPTER IV—JOINT RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMS

##### SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in section 5861 of this title.

#### § 5931. Programs with states of former Soviet Union

The Congress encourages the Secretary of Defense to participate actively in joint research and development programs with the independent states of the former Soviet Union through the nongovernmental foundation established for this purpose by section 5861 of this title. To that end, the Secretary of Defense may spend those funds authorized in section 5911(a)(1)(C) of this title for support, technical cooperation, in-kind assistance, and other activities with the following purposes:

(1) To advance defense conversion by funding civilian collaborative research and development projects between scientists and engineers in the United States and in the independent states of the former Soviet Union.

(2) To assist the establishment of a market economy in the independent states of the former Soviet Union by promoting, identifying, and partially funding joint research, development, and demonstration ventures between United States businesses and scientists, engineers, and entrepreneurs in those independent states.

(3) To provide a mechanism for scientists, engineers, and entrepreneurs in the independent states of the former Soviet Union to develop an understanding of commercial business practices by establishing linkages to United States scientists, engineers, and businesses.

(4) To provide access for United States businesses to sophisticated new technologies, tal-

ented researchers, and potential new markets within the independent states of the former Soviet Union.

(5) To provide productive research and development opportunities within the independent states of the former Soviet Union that offer scientists and engineers alternatives to emigration and help prevent proliferation of weapons technologies and the dissolution of the technological infrastructure of those states.

(Pub. L. 102-484, div. A, title XIV, §1441, Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2566; Pub. L. 103-160, div. A, title XI, §1182(c)(4), Nov. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 1772.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1993—Pub. L. 103-160 made technical amendment to reference to section 5861 of this title to correct reference to corresponding section of original Act.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 5911 of this title.

#### CHAPTER 68A—COOPERATIVE THREAT REDUCTION WITH STATES OF FORMER SOVIET UNION

|               |  |
|---------------|--|
| Sec.<br>5951. | Findings on cooperative threat reduction.  |
| 5952.         | Authority for programs to facilitate cooperative threat reduction. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) In general.</li> <li>(b) Authorized programs.</li> <li>(c) United States participation.</li> <li>(d) Restrictions.</li> </ol>  |
| 5953.         | Demilitarization Enterprise Fund. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Designation of Fund.</li> <li>(b) Purpose of Fund.</li> <li>(c) Grant authority.</li> <li>(d) Risk capital funding of demilitarization.</li> <li>(e) Eligible organization.</li> <li>(f) Operational provisions.</li> <li>(g) Experience of other Enterprise Funds.</li> <li>(h) Consultation requirement.</li> <li>(i) Initial implementation.</li> <li>(j) Termination of designation.</li> </ol> |
| 5954.         | Funding for fiscal year 1994. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Authorization of appropriations.</li> <li>(b) Limitations.</li> <li>(c) Authorization of extension of availability of prior year funds.</li> </ol>  |
| 5955.         | Prior notice to Congress of obligation of funds. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Notice of proposed obligation.</li> <li>(b) Reports on demilitarization or conversion projects.</li> </ol>   |
| 5956.         | Semiannual report.   |
| 5957.         | “Appropriate congressional committees” defined.  |
| 5958.         | Authorization for additional fiscal year 1993 assistance to independent states of the former Soviet Union. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Authorization of appropriations.</li> <li>(b) Authorization of transfer of funds.</li> <li>(c) Administrative provisions.</li> <li>(d) Coordination of programs.</li> </ol>  |

#### § 5951. Findings on cooperative threat reduction

The Congress finds that it is in the national security interest of the United States for the United States to do the following:

(1) Facilitate, on a priority basis, the transportation, storage, safeguarding, and elimination of nuclear and other weapons of the independent states of the former Soviet Union, including—

(A) the safe and secure storage of fissile materials derived from the elimination of nuclear weapons;

(B) the dismantlement of (i) intercontinental ballistic missiles and launchers for such missiles, (ii) submarine-launched ballistic missiles and launchers for such missiles, and (iii) heavy bombers; and

(C) the elimination of chemical, biological and other weapons capabilities.

(2) Facilitate, on a priority basis, the prevention of proliferation of weapons (and components of weapons) of mass destruction and destabilizing conventional weapons of the independent states of the former Soviet Union and the establishment of verifiable safeguards against the proliferation of such weapons and components.

(3) Facilitate, on a priority basis, the prevention of diversion of weapons-related scientific expertise of the independent states of the former Soviet Union to terrorist groups or third world countries.

(4) Support (A) the demilitarization of the defense-related industry and equipment of the independent states of the former Soviet Union, and (B) the conversion of such industry and equipment to civilian purposes and uses.

(5) Expand military-to-military and defense contacts between the United States and the independent states of the former Soviet Union.

(Pub. L. 103-160, div. A, title XII, § 1202, Nov. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 1777.)

#### SHORT TITLE

Section 1201 of title XII of div. A of Pub. L. 103-160 provided that: "This title [enacting this chapter] may be cited as the 'Cooperative Threat Reduction Act of 1993'."

### § 5952. Authority for programs to facilitate cooperative threat reduction

#### (a) In general

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the President may conduct programs described in subsection (b) of this section to assist the independent states of the former Soviet Union in the demilitarization of the former Soviet Union. Any such program may be carried out only to the extent that the President determines that the program will directly contribute to the national security interests of the United States.

#### (b) Authorized programs

The programs referred to in subsection (a) of this section are the following:

(1) Programs to facilitate the elimination, and the safe and secure transportation and storage, of nuclear, chemical, and other weapons and their delivery vehicles.

(2) Programs to facilitate the safe and secure storage of fissile materials derived from the elimination of nuclear weapons.

(3) Programs to prevent the proliferation of weapons, weapons components, and weapons-related technology and expertise.

(4) Programs to expand military-to-military and defense contacts.

(5) Programs to facilitate the demilitarization of defense industries and the conversion

of military technologies and capabilities into civilian activities.

(6) Programs to assist in the environmental restoration of former military sites and installations when such restoration is necessary to the demilitarization or conversion programs authorized in paragraph (5).

(7) Programs to provide housing for former military personnel of the former Soviet Union released from military service in connection with the dismantlement of strategic nuclear weapons, when provision of such housing is necessary for dismantlement of strategic nuclear weapons and when no other funds are available for such housing.

(8) Other programs as described in section 212(b) of the Soviet Nuclear Threat Reduction Act of 1991 (title II of Public Law 102-228; 22 U.S.C. 2551 note) and section 5902(b) of this title.

#### (c) United States participation

The programs described in subsection (b) of this section should, to the extent feasible, draw upon United States technology and expertise, especially from the private sector of the United States.

#### (d) Restrictions

Assistance authorized by subsection (a) of this section may not be provided to any independent state of the former Soviet Union for any year unless the President certifies to Congress for that year that the proposed recipient state is committed to each of the following:

(1) Making substantial investment of its resources for dismantling or destroying its weapons of mass destruction, if such state has an obligation under a treaty or other agreement to destroy or dismantle any such weapons.

(2) Foregoing any military modernization program that exceeds legitimate defense requirements and foregoing the replacement of destroyed weapons of mass destruction.

(3) Foregoing any use in new nuclear weapons of fissionable or other components of destroyed nuclear weapons.

(4) Facilitating United States verification of any weapons destruction carried out under this chapter, section 5902(b) of this title, or section 212(b) of the Soviet Nuclear Threat Reduction Act of 1991 (title II of Public Law 102-228; 22 U.S.C. 2551 note).

(5) Complying with all relevant arms control agreements.

(6) Observing internationally recognized human rights, including the protection of minorities.

(Pub. L. 103-160, div. A, title XII, § 1203, Nov. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 1778.)

#### DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

Memorandum of President of the United States, Jan. 29, 1994, 59 F.R. 5929, provided:

Memorandum for the Secretary of State, the Secretary of Defense, [and] the Director of the Office of Management and Budget

By the authority vested in me by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of America, including section 301 of title 3 of the United States Code, I hereby delegate:



1. to the Secretary of State the authority and duty vested in the President under section 1203(d) of the Cooperative Threat Reduction Act of 1993, Title XII of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 1994 (Public Law 103-160) [22 U.S.C. 5952(d)];

2. to the Secretary of Defense the authorities and duties vested in the President under sections 1203(a), 1204, 1206, and 1207 of Public Law 103-160 [22 U.S.C. 5952(a), 5953, 5955, 5956].

The Secretary of Defense shall not exercise authority delegated by number 2 hereof with respect to any former Soviet republic unless the Secretary of State has exercised his authority and performed the duty delegated by number 1 hereof, as applicable, with respect to that former Soviet republic. The Secretary of Defense shall not obligate funds in exercise of authority delegated by number 2 hereof unless the Director of the Office of Management and Budget has made the determination that expenditures are to be counted as discretionary spending in the national defense function (050), as applicable to the funds to be transferred.

The Secretary of State is authorized and directed to publish this memorandum in the Federal Register.

WILLIAM J. CLINTON.

#### COOPERATIVE THREAT REDUCTION PROGRAMS DEFINED

Pub. L. 103-337, div. A, title XII, §1201, Oct. 5, 1994, 108 Stat. 2882, provided that: "For purposes of section 301 [108 Stat. 2706] and other provisions of this Act [see Tables for classification], Cooperative Threat Reduction programs are the programs described in section 1203(b) of the Cooperative Threat Reduction Act of 1993 (title XII of Public Law 103-160; 107 Stat. 1778; 22 U.S.C. 5952(b))."

#### MULTIYEAR PLANNING AND ALLIED SUPPORT

Pub. L. 103-337, div. A, title XII, §1205(a)-(c), Oct. 5, 1994, 108 Stat. 2883, provided that:

"(a) FUNDING REPORT TO CONGRESS.—The Secretary of Defense shall submit to Congress a report as described in subsection (b) on funding for Cooperative Threat Reduction programs with states of the former Soviet Union. The report shall be submitted at the time of the transmission to Congress of the budget justification materials for the funding request in the fiscal year 1996 budget for such Cooperative Threat Reduction programs.

"(b) MATTERS TO BE INCLUDED IN ANNUAL REPORT.—The Secretary of Defense shall include in the report under subsection (a) the following:

"(1) An estimate of the total amount that will be required to be expended by the United States in order to achieve the objectives of Cooperative Threat Reduction programs.

"(2) A multiyear plan for the use of amounts and other resources provided by the United States for Cooperative Threat Reduction programs and to provide guidance for preparation of annual budget submissions.

"(c) SUBSEQUENT REVISIONS TO REPORT.—The Secretary of Defense shall submit an updated version of the report under subsection (a) for any fiscal year after fiscal year 1996 for which the budget of the President proposes that funds be appropriated to the Department of Defense for Cooperative Threat Reduction programs."

#### CONDITION ON ASSISTANCE TO RUSSIA FOR CONSTRUCTION OF PLUTONIUM STORAGE FACILITY

Section 1612 of Pub. L. 103-160 provided:

"(a) LIMITATION.—Until a certification under subsection (b) is made, no funds may be obligated or expended by the United States for the purpose of assisting the Ministry of Atomic Energy of Russia to construct a storage facility for surplus plutonium from dismantled weapons.

"(b) CERTIFICATION OF RUSSIA'S COMMITMENT TO HALT CHEMICAL SEPARATION OF WEAPON-GRADE PLUTONIUM.—The prohibition in subsection (a) shall cease to apply

upon a certification by the President to Congress that Russia—

"(1) is committed to halting the chemical separation of weapon-grade plutonium from spent nuclear fuel; and

"(2) is taking all practical steps to halt such separation at the earliest possible date.

"(c) SENSE OF CONGRESS ON PLUTONIUM POLICY.—It is the sense of Congress that a key objective of the United States with respect to the nonproliferation of nuclear weapons should be to obtain a clear and unequivocal commitment from the Government of Russia that it will (1) cease all production and separation of weapon-grade plutonium, and (2) halt chemical separation of plutonium produced in civil nuclear power reactors.

"(d) REPORT.—Not later than June 1, 1994, the President shall submit to Congress a report on the status of efforts by the United States to secure the commitments and achieve the objective described in subsections (b) and (c). The President shall include in the report a discussion of the status of joint efforts by the United States and Russia to replace any remaining Russian plutonium production reactors with alternative power sources or to convert such reactors to operation with alternative fuels that would permit their operation without generating weapon-grade plutonium."

[Memorandum of President of the United States, Mar. 3, 1994, 59 F.R. 14070, delegated to Secretary of State authority and duty of President under section 1612(b) and (d) of Public Law 103-160 set out above.]

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 5954, 5955, 5956, 5957 of this title.

### § 5953. Demilitarization Enterprise Fund

#### (a) Designation of Fund

The President is authorized to designate a Demilitarization Enterprise Fund for the purposes of this section. The President may designate as the Demilitarization Enterprise Fund any organization that satisfies the requirements of subsection (e) of this section.

#### (b) Purpose of Fund

The purpose of the Demilitarization Enterprise Fund is to receive grants pursuant to this section and to use the grant proceeds to provide financial support under programs described in subsection (b)(5) of this section for demilitarization of industries and conversion of military technologies and capabilities into civilian activities.

#### (c) Grant authority

The President may make one or more grants to the Demilitarization Enterprise Fund.

#### (d) Risk capital funding of demilitarization

The Demilitarization Enterprise Fund shall use the proceeds of grants received under this section to provide financial support in accordance with subsection (b) of this section through transactions as follows:

- (1) Making loans.
- (2) Making grants.
- (3) Providing collateral for loan guaranties by the Export-Import Bank of the United States.
- (4) Taking equity positions.
- (5) Providing venture capital in joint ventures with United States industry.
- (6) Providing risk capital through any other form of transaction that the President consid-

ers appropriate for supporting programs described in subsection (b)(5) of this section.

**(e) Eligible organization**

An organization is eligible for designation as the Demilitarization Enterprise Fund if the organization—

- (1) is a private, nonprofit organization;
- (2) is governed by a board of directors consisting of private citizens of the United States; and
- (3) provides assurances acceptable to the President that it will use grants received under this section to provide financial support in accordance with this section.

**(f) Operational provisions**

The following provisions of section 5421 of this title shall apply with respect to the Demilitarization Enterprise Fund in the same manner as such provisions apply to Enterprise Funds designated pursuant to subsection (d) of such section:

- (1) Subsection (d)(5), relating to the private character of Enterprise Funds.
- (2) Subsection (h), relating to retention of interest earned in interest bearing accounts.
- (3) Subsection (i), relating to use of United States private venture capital.
- (4) Subsection (k), relating to support from Executive agencies.
- (5) Subsection (l), relating to limitation on payments to Fund personnel.
- (6) Subsections (m) and (n), relating to audits.
- (7) Subsection (o), relating to record keeping requirements.
- (8) Subsection (p), relating to annual reports.

In addition, returns on investments of the Demilitarization Enterprise Fund and other payments to the Fund may be reinvested in projects of the Fund.

**(g) Experience of other Enterprise Funds**

To the maximum extent practicable, the Board of Directors of the Demilitarization Enterprise Fund should adopt for that Fund practices and procedures that have been developed by Enterprise Funds for which funding has been made available pursuant to section 5421 of this title.

**(h) Consultation requirement**

In the implementation of this section, the Secretary of State and the Administrator of the Agency for International Development shall be consulted to ensure that the Articles of Incorporation of the Fund (including provisions specifying the responsibilities of the Board of Directors of the Fund), the terms of United States Government grant agreements with the Fund, and United States Government oversight of the Fund are, to the maximum extent practicable, consistent with the Articles of Incorporation of, the terms of grant agreements with, and the oversight of the Enterprise Funds established pursuant to section 5421 of this title and comparable provisions of law.

**(i) Initial implementation**

The Board of Directors of the Demilitarization Enterprise Fund shall publish the first annual

report of the Fund not later than January 31, 1995.

**(j) Termination of designation**

A designation of an organization as the Demilitarization Enterprise Fund under subsection (a) of this section shall be temporary. When making the designation, the President shall provide for the eventual termination of the designation.

(Pub. L. 103-160, div. A, title XII, § 1204, Nov. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 1779.)

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

For delegation of certain authorities and duties of the President under this section to Secretary of Defense, see Memorandum of President of the United States, Jan. 29, 1994, 59 F.R. 5929, set out as a note under section 5952 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 5954 of this title.

**§ 5954. Funding for fiscal year 1994**

**(a) Authorization of appropriations**

Funds authorized to be appropriated under section 301(21)<sup>1</sup> shall be available for cooperative threat reduction with states of the former Soviet Union under this chapter.

**(b) Limitations**

(1) Not more than \$15,000,000 of the funds referred to in subsection (a) of this section may be made available for programs authorized in subsection (b)(6) of section 5952 of this title.

(2) Not more than \$20,000,000 of such funds may be made available for programs authorized in subsection (b)(7) of section 5952 of this title.

(3) Not more than \$40,000,000 of such funds may be made available for grants to the Demilitarization Enterprise Fund designated pursuant to section 5953 of this title and for related administrative expenses.

**(c) Authorization of extension of availability of prior year funds**

To the extent provided in appropriations Acts, the authority to transfer funds of the Department of Defense provided in section 9110(a) of the Department of Defense Appropriations Act, 1993 (Public Law 102-396; 106 Stat. 1928), and in section 108 of Public Law 102-229 (105 Stat. 1708) shall continue to be in effect during fiscal year 1994.

(Pub. L. 103-160, div. A, title XII, § 1205, Nov. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 1781.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 301(21), referred to in subsec. (a), means section 301(21) of Pub. L. 103-160, div. A, title III, Nov. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 1616, which is not classified to the Code.

Section 9110(a) of the Department of Defense Appropriations Act, 1993, referred to in subsec. (c), is section 9110(a) of Pub. L. 102-396, title IX, Oct. 6, 1992, 106 Stat. 1928, which is not classified to the Code.

Section 108 of Public Law 102-229, referred to in subsec. (c), is section 108 of Pub. L. 102-229, title I, Dec. 12, 1991, 105 Stat. 1708, as amended, which is not classified to the Code.

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

**§ 5955. Prior notice to Congress of obligation of funds**

**(a) Notice of proposed obligation**

Not less than 15 days before obligation of any funds for programs under section 5952 of this title, the President shall transmit to the appropriate congressional committees as defined in section 5957 of this title a report on the proposed obligation. Each such report shall specify—

- (1) the activities and forms of assistance for which the President plans to obligate such funds;
- (2) the amount of the proposed obligation; and
- (3) the projected involvement of the departments and agencies of the United States Government and the private sector of the United States.

**(b) Reports on demilitarization or conversion projects**

Any report under subsection (a) of this section that covers proposed demilitarization or conversion projects under paragraph (5) or (6) of section 5952(b) of this title shall contain additional information to assist the Congress in determining the merits of the proposed projects. Such information shall include descriptions of—

- (1) the facilities to be demilitarized;
- (2) the types of activities conducted at those facilities and of the types of nonmilitary activities planned for those facilities;
- (3) the forms of assistance to be provided by the United States Government and by the private sector of the United States;
- (4) the extent to which military activities and production capability will consequently be eliminated at those facilities; and
- (5) the mechanisms to be established for monitoring progress on those projects.

(Pub. L. 103-160, div. A, title XII, §1206, Nov. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 1781.)

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

For delegation of certain authorities and duties of the President under this section to Secretary of Defense, see Memorandum of President of the United States, Jan. 29, 1994, 59 F.R. 5929, set out as a note under section 5952 of this title.

**§ 5956. Semiannual report**

Not later than April 30 and not later than October 30 of each year, the President shall transmit to the appropriate congressional committees a report on the activities carried out under programs described in section 5952(b) of this title. Each such report shall set forth, for the preceding six-month period and cumulatively, the following:

- (1) The amounts obligated and expended for such activities and the purposes for which they were obligated and expended.
- (2) A description of the participation, if any, of each department and agency of the United States Government in such activities.
- (3) A description of the activities carried out and the forms of assistance provided, and a description of the extent to which the private sector of the United States has participated in the activities for which amounts were obli-

gated and expended under the programs described in section 5952(b) of this title.

(4) Such other information as the President considers appropriate to fully inform the Congress concerning the operation of the programs and activities carried out under this chapter, including, with respect to proposed demilitarization or conversion projects, additional information on the progress toward demilitarization of facilities and the conversion of the demilitarized facilities to civilian activities.

(5) A description of how all of the activities carried out under the authority of this chapter and other laws providing authority for cooperative threat reduction are coordinated with similar activities that are carried out under any other authority, including activities relating to military-to-military contacts, environmental restoration, and housing.

(Pub. L. 103-160, div. A, title XII, §1207, Nov. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 1782; Pub. L. 103-337, div. A, title XII, §§1202, 1208(b), Oct. 5, 1994, 108 Stat. 2882, 2887.)

AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-337, §1202(1), (2), substituted “Not later than April 30 and not later than October 30 of each year,” for “Not later than April 30, 1994, and not later than October 30, 1994,” and “under programs described in section 5952(b) of this title” for “under this chapter” in introductory provisions.

Par. (3). Pub. L. 103-337, §1202(3), substituted “the programs described in section 5952(b) of this title” for “this chapter”.

Par. (5). Pub. L. 103-337, §1208(b), added par. (5).

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

For delegation of certain authorities and duties of the President under this section to Secretary of Defense, see Memorandum of President of the United States, Jan. 29, 1994, 59 F.R. 5929, set out as a note under section 5952 of this title.

**§ 5957. “Appropriate congressional committees” defined**

In this chapter, the term “appropriate congressional committees” means—

- (1) the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate, the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives, and the Committees on Appropriations of the House and the Senate, wherever the account, budget activity, or program is funded from appropriations made under the international affairs budget function (150);
- (2) the Committees on Armed Services and the Committees on Appropriations of the Senate and the House of Representatives, wherever the account, budget activity, or program is funded from appropriations made under the national defense budget function (050); and
- (3) the committee to which the specified activities of section 5952 of this title, if the subject of separate legislation, would be referred under the rules of the respective House of Congress.

(Pub. L. 103-160, div. A, title XII, §1208, Nov. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 1782.)

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Inter-

national Relations of House of Representatives and Committee on Armed Services of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on National Security of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 5955 of this title.

**§ 5958. Authorization for additional fiscal year 1993 assistance to independent states of the former Soviet Union**

**(a) Authorization of appropriations**

There is hereby authorized to be appropriated for fiscal year 1993 for "Operation and Maintenance, Defense Agencies" the additional sum of \$979,000,000, to be available for the purposes of providing assistance to the independent states of the former Soviet Union.

**(b) Authorization of transfer of funds**

The Secretary of Defense may, to the extent provided in appropriations Acts, transfer from the account "Operation and Maintenance, Defense Agencies" for fiscal year 1993 a sum not to exceed the amount appropriated pursuant to the authorization in subsection (a) of this section to—

(1) other accounts of the Department of Defense for the purpose of providing assistance to the independent states of the former Soviet Union; or

(2) appropriations available to the Department of State and other agencies of the United States Government for the purpose of providing assistance to the independent states of the former Soviet Union for programs that the President determines will increase the national security of the United States.

**(c) Administrative provisions**

(1) Amounts transferred under subsection (b) of this section shall be available subject to the same terms and conditions as the appropriations to which transferred.

(2) The authority to make transfers pursuant to this section is in addition to any other transfer authority of the Department of Defense.

**(d) Coordination of programs**

The President shall coordinate the programs described in subsection (b) of this section with those authorized in the other provisions of this chapter and in the provisions of the Freedom for Russia and Emerging Eurasian Democracies and Open Markets Support Act of 1992 (Public Law 102-511) so as to optimize the contribution such programs make to the national interests of the United States.

(Pub. L. 103-160, div. A, title XII, § 1209, Nov. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 1782.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Freedom for Russia and Emerging Eurasian Democracies and Open Markets Support Act of 1992, referred to in subsec. (d), is Pub. L. 102-511, Oct. 24, 1992, 106 Stat. 3320. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 5801 of this title and Tables.

**CHAPTER 69—CUBAN DEMOCRACY**

Sec.  
6001. Findings.

- Sec. 6002. Statement of policy.
- 6003. International cooperation.
  - (a) Cuban trading partners.
  - (b) Sanctions against countries assisting Cuba.
- 6004. Support for Cuban people.
  - (a) Provisions of law affected.
  - (b) Donations of food.
  - (c) Exports of medicines and medical supplies.
  - (d) Requirements for certain exports.
  - (e) Telecommunications services and facilities.
  - (f) Direct mail delivery to Cuba.
  - (g) Assistance to support democracy in Cuba.
- 6005. Sanctions.
  - (a) Prohibition on certain transactions between certain United States firms and Cuba.
  - (b) Prohibitions on vessels.
  - (c) Restrictions on remittances to Cuba.
  - (d) Clarification of applicability of sanctions.
- 6006. Policy toward a transitional Cuban Government.
- 6007. Policy toward a democratic Cuban Government.
  - (a) Waiver of restrictions.
  - (b) Policies.
- 6008. Existing claims not affected.
- 6009. Enforcement.
  - (a) Enforcement authority.
  - (b) Authorization of appropriations.
  - (c) Omitted.
  - (d) Applicability of penalties.
  - (e) Office of Foreign Assets Control.
- 6010. "United States person" defined.

**§ 6001. Findings**

The Congress makes the following findings:

(1) The government of Fidel Castro has demonstrated consistent disregard for internationally accepted standards of human rights and for democratic values. It restricts the Cuban people's exercise of freedom of speech, press, assembly, and other rights recognized by the Universal Declaration of Human Rights adopted by the General Assembly of the United Nations on December 10, 1948. It has refused to admit into Cuba the representative of the United Nations Human Rights Commission appointed to investigate human rights violations on the island.

(2) The Cuban people have demonstrated their yearning for freedom and their increasing opposition to the Castro government by risking their lives in organizing independent, democratic activities on the island and by undertaking hazardous flights for freedom to the United States and other countries.

(3) The Castro government maintains a military-dominated economy that has decreased the well-being of the Cuban people in order to enable the government to engage in military interventions and subversive activities throughout the world and, especially, in the Western Hemisphere. These have included involvement in narcotics trafficking and support for the FMLN guerrillas in El Salvador.

(4) There is no sign that the Castro regime is prepared to make any significant concessions to democracy or to undertake any form of democratic opening. Efforts to suppress dis-

sent through intimidation, imprisonment, and exile have accelerated since the political changes that have occurred in the former Soviet Union and Eastern Europe.

(5) Events in the former Soviet Union and Eastern Europe have dramatically reduced Cuba's external support and threaten Cuba's food and oil supplies.

(6) The fall of communism in the former Soviet Union and Eastern Europe, the now universal recognition in Latin America and the Caribbean that Cuba provides a failed model of government and development, and the evident inability of Cuba's economy to survive current trends, provide the United States and the international democratic community with an unprecedented opportunity to promote a peaceful transition to democracy in Cuba.

(7) However, Castro's intransigence increases the likelihood that there could be a collapse of the Cuban economy, social upheaval, or widespread suffering. The recently concluded Cuban Communist Party Congress has underscored Castro's unwillingness to respond positively to increasing pressures for reform either from within the party or without.

(8) The United States cooperated with its European and other allies to assist the difficult transitions from Communist regimes in Eastern Europe. Therefore, it is appropriate for those allies to cooperate with United States policy to promote a peaceful transition in Cuba.

(Pub. L. 102-484, div. A, title XVII, §1702, Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2575.)

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 1712 of title XVII of div. A of Pub. L. 102-484 provided that: "This title [enacting this chapter, amending section 16 of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense, and enacting provisions set out as a note below] shall take effect on the date of the enactment of this Act [Oct. 23, 1992]."

#### SHORT TITLE

Section 1701 of title XVII of div. A of Pub. L. 102-484 provided that: "This title [enacting this chapter, amending section 16 of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense, and enacting provisions set out as a note above] may be cited as the 'Cuban Democracy Act of 1992'."

#### EX. ORD. NO. 12854. IMPLEMENTATION OF CUBAN DEMOCRACY ACT

Ex. Ord. No. 12854, July 4, 1993, 58 F.R. 36587, provided: By the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of America, including the Trading with the Enemy Act, as amended (50 U.S.C. App. 1-6, 7-39, 41-44), the Cuban Democracy Act of 1992 (Public Law 102-484, sections 1701-1712, October 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2575) (the "Act") [22 U.S.C. 6001 et seq.], and section 301 of title 3, United States Code,

I, WILLIAM J. CLINTON, President of the United States of America, hereby order:

SECTION 1. *Implementation of the Act.* All agencies are hereby directed to take all appropriate measures within their authority, including the promulgation of rules and regulations, to carry out the provisions of the Act.

SEC. 2. *Functions of the Department of State.* The Secretary of State shall be responsible for implementing sections 1704, 1707, and 1708 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 6003, 6006, 6007]. Responsibility for transmitting the certification required by section 1707 and the report required

by section 1708 of the Act is delegated to the Secretary of State.

SEC. 3. *Functions of the Department of the Treasury.* Except as provided in section 4 of this order, the Secretary of the Treasury shall be responsible for implementing sections 1705(b)-(e) and 1706 [22 U.S.C. 6004(b)-(e), 6005] of the Act, to the extent that these sections pertain to transactions with Cuba.

SEC. 4. *Functions of the Department of Commerce.* The Secretary of Commerce shall be responsible for implementing sections 1705(b)-(e) of the Act, to the extent that these sections pertain to the exportation to Cuba from the United States or from a third country of goods and technology subject to the jurisdiction of the Department of Commerce.

SEC. 5. *Consultation.* In consultation with the Secretary of State, the Secretary of the Treasury and the Secretary of Commerce are hereby authorized to take such actions, including the promulgation of rules and regulations, as may be necessary to carry out the purposes of the Act and this order.

SEC. 6. Nothing in this order shall be deemed to affect any functions vested by law in the Federal Communications Commission.

SEC. 7. *Effective Date.* This order shall be effective immediately.

WILLIAM J. CLINTON.

#### § 6002. Statement of policy

It should be the policy of the United States—

(1) to seek a peaceful transition to democracy and a resumption of economic growth in Cuba through the careful application of sanctions directed at the Castro government and support for the Cuban people;

(2) to seek the cooperation of other democratic countries in this policy;

(3) to make clear to other countries that, in determining its relations with them, the United States will take into account their willingness to cooperate in such a policy;

(4) to seek the speedy termination of any remaining military or technical assistance, subsidies, or other forms of assistance to the Government of Cuba from any of the independent states of the former Soviet Union;

(5) to continue vigorously to oppose the human rights violations of the Castro regime;

(6) to maintain sanctions on the Castro regime so long as it continues to refuse to move toward democratization and greater respect for human rights;

(7) to be prepared to reduce the sanctions in carefully calibrated ways in response to positive developments in Cuba;

(8) to encourage free and fair elections to determine Cuba's political future;

(9) to request the speedy termination of any military or technical assistance, subsidies, or other forms of assistance to the Government of Cuba from the government of any other country; and

(10) to initiate immediately the development of a comprehensive United States policy toward Cuba in a post-Castro era.

(Pub. L. 102-484, div. A, title XVII, §1703, Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2576.)

#### § 6003. International cooperation

##### (a) Cuban trading partners

The President should encourage the governments of countries that conduct trade with Cuba

to restrict their trade and credit relations with Cuba in a manner consistent with the purposes of this chapter.

**(b) Sanctions against countries assisting Cuba**

**(1) Sanctions**

The President may apply the following sanctions to any country that provides assistance to Cuba:

(A) The government of such country shall not be eligible for assistance under the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.] or assistance or sales under the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.].

(B) Such country shall not be eligible, under any program, for forgiveness or reduction of debt owed to the United States Government.

**(2) “Assistance to Cuba” defined**

For purposes of paragraph (1), the term “assistance to Cuba”—

(A) means assistance to or for the benefit of the Government of Cuba that is provided by grant, concessional sale, guaranty, or insurance, or by any other means on terms more favorable than that generally available in the applicable market, whether in the form of a loan, lease, credit, or otherwise, and such term includes subsidies for exports to Cuba and favorable tariff treatment of articles that are the growth, product, or manufacture of Cuba; and

(B) does not include—

(i) donations of food to nongovernmental organizations or individuals in Cuba, or

(ii) exports of medicines or medical supplies, instruments, or equipment that would be permitted under section 6004(c) of this title.

**(3) Applicability of section**

This section, and any sanctions imposed pursuant to this section, shall cease to apply at such time as the President makes and reports to the Congress a determination under section 6007(a) of this title.

(Pub. L. 102-484, div. A, title XVII, §1704, Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2576.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (b)(1)(A), is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 32 (§2151 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

The Arms Export Control Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(1)(A), is Pub. L. 90-629, Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1320, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 39 (§2751 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2751 of this title and Tables.

**§ 6004. Support for Cuban people**

**(a) Provisions of law affected**

The provisions of this section apply notwithstanding any other provision of law, including section 2370(a) of this title, and notwithstanding the exercise of authorities, before October 23, 1992, under section 5(b) of the Trading With the Enemy Act [12 U.S.C. 95a, 50 App. U.S.C. 5(b)],

the International Emergency Economic Powers Act [50 U.S.C. 1701 et seq.], or the Export Administration Act of 1979 [50 App. U.S.C. 2401 et seq.].

**(b) Donations of food**

Nothing in this or any other Act shall prohibit donations of food to nongovernmental organizations or individuals in Cuba.

**(c) Exports of medicines and medical supplies**

Exports of medicines or medical supplies, instruments, or equipment to Cuba shall not be restricted—

(1) except to the extent such restrictions would be permitted under section 5(m) of the Export Administration Act of 1979 [50 App. U.S.C. 2404(m)] or section 203(b)(2) of the International Emergency Economic Powers Act [50 U.S.C. 1702(b)(2)];

(2) except in a case in which there is a reasonable likelihood that the item to be exported will be used for purposes of torture or other human rights abuses;

(3) except in a case in which there is a reasonable likelihood that the item to be exported will be reexported; and

(4) except in a case in which the item to be exported could be used in the production of any biotechnological product.

**(d) Requirements for certain exports**

**(1) Onsite verifications**

(A) Subject to subparagraph (B), an export may be made under subsection (c) of this section only if the President determines that the United States Government is able to verify, by onsite inspections and other appropriate means, that the exported item is to be used for the purposes for which it was intended and only for the use and benefit of the Cuban people.

(B) Subparagraph (A) does not apply to donations to nongovernmental organizations in Cuba of medicines for humanitarian purposes.

**(2) Licenses**

Exports permitted under subsection (c) of this section shall be made pursuant to specific licenses issued by the United States Government.

**(e) Telecommunications services and facilities**

**(1) Telecommunications services**

Telecommunications services between the United States and Cuba shall be permitted.

**(2) Telecommunications facilities**

Telecommunications facilities are authorized in such quantity and of such quality as may be necessary to provide efficient and adequate telecommunications services between the United States and Cuba.

**(3) Licensing of payments to Cuba**

(A) The President may provide for the issuance of licenses for the full or partial payment to Cuba of amounts due Cuba as a result of the provision of telecommunications services authorized by this subsection, in a manner that is consistent with the public interest and the purposes of this chapter, except that this paragraph shall not require any withdrawal from any account blocked pursuant to regulations

issued under section 5(b) of the Trading With the Enemy Act [12 U.S.C. 95a, 50 App. U.S.C. 5(b)].

(B) If only partial payments are made to Cuba under subparagraph (A), the amounts withheld from Cuba shall be deposited in an account in a banking institution in the United States. Such account shall be blocked in the same manner as any other account containing funds in which Cuba has any interest, pursuant to regulations issued under section 5(b) of the Trading With the Enemy Act.

**(4) Authority of Federal Communications Commission**

Nothing in this subsection shall be construed to supersede the authority of the Federal Communications Commission.

**(f) Direct mail delivery to Cuba**

The United States Postal Service shall take such actions as are necessary to provide direct mail service to and from Cuba, including, in the absence of common carrier service between the 2 countries, the use of charter service providers.

**(g) Assistance to support democracy in Cuba**

The United States Government may provide assistance, through appropriate nongovernmental organizations, for the support of individuals and organizations to promote nonviolent democratic change in Cuba.

(Pub. L. 102-484, div. A, title XVII, §1705, Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2577.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The International Emergency Economic Powers Act, referred to in subsec. (a), is title II of Pub. L. 95-223, Dec. 28, 1977, 91 Stat. 1626, which is classified generally to chapter 35 (§1701 et seq.) of Title 50, War and National Defense. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1701 of Title 50 and Tables.

The Export Administration Act of 1979, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 96-72, Sept. 29, 1979, 93 Stat. 503, as amended, which is classified principally to section 2401 et seq. of the Appendix to Title 50. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2401 of the Appendix to Title 50 and Tables.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 6003, 6005, 6008, 6009 of this title.

**§ 6005. Sanctions**

**(a) Prohibition on certain transactions between certain United States firms and Cuba**

**(1) Prohibition**

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, no license may be issued for any transaction described in section 515.559 of title 31, Code of Federal Regulations, as in effect on July 1, 1989.

**(2) Applicability to existing contracts**

Paragraph (1) shall not affect any contract entered into before October 23, 1992.

**(b) Prohibitions on vessels**

**(1) Vessels engaging in trade**

Beginning on the 61st day after October 23, 1992, a vessel which enters a port or place in

Cuba to engage in the trade of goods or services may not, within 180 days after departure from such port or place in Cuba, load or unload any freight at any place in the United States, except pursuant to a license issued by the Secretary of the Treasury.

**(2) Vessels carrying goods or passengers to or from Cuba**

Except as specifically authorized by the Secretary of the Treasury, a vessel carrying goods or passengers to or from Cuba or carrying goods in which Cuba or a Cuban national has any interest may not enter a United States port.

**(3) Inapplicability of ship stores general license**

No commodities which may be exported under a general license described in section 771.9 of title 15, Code of Federal Regulations, as in effect on May 1, 1992, may be exported under a general license to any vessel carrying goods or passengers to or from Cuba or carrying goods in which Cuba or a Cuban national has an interest.

**(4) Definitions**

As used in this subsection—

(A) the term “vessel” includes every description of water craft or other contrivance used, or capable of being used, as a means of transportation in water, but does not include aircraft;

(B) the term “United States” includes the territories and possessions of the United States and the customs waters of the United States (as defined in section 1401 of title 19; and

(C) the term “Cuban national” means a national of Cuba, as the term “national” is defined in section 515.302 of title 31, Code of Federal Regulations, as of August 1, 1992.

**(c) Restrictions on remittances to Cuba**

The President shall establish strict limits on remittances to Cuba by United States persons for the purpose of financing the travel of Cubans to the United States, in order to ensure that such remittances reflect only the reasonable costs associated with such travel, and are not used by the Government of Cuba as a means of gaining access to United States currency.

**(d) Clarification of applicability of sanctions**

The prohibitions contained in subsections (a), (b), and (c) of this section shall not apply with respect to any activity otherwise permitted by section 6004 of this title or section 6006 of this title or any activity which may not be regulated or prohibited under section 5(b)(4) of the Trading With the Enemy Act [12 U.S.C. 95a(4), 50 App. U.S.C. 5(b)(4)].

(Pub. L. 102-484, div. A, title XVII, §1706, Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2578.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 6007 of this title.

**§ 6006. Policy toward a transitional Cuban Government**

Food, medicine, and medical supplies for humanitarian purposes should be made available

for Cuba under the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2151 et seq.] and the Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954 [7 U.S.C. 1691 et seq.] if the President determines and certifies to the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate that the government in power in Cuba—

(1) has made a public commitment to hold free and fair elections for a new government within 6 months and is proceeding to implement that decision;

(2) has made a public commitment to respect, and is respecting, internationally recognized human rights and basic democratic freedoms; and

(3) is not providing weapons or funds to any group, in any other country, that seeks the violent overthrow of the government of that country.

(Pub. L. 102-484, div. A, title XVII, §1707, Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2579.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 87-195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 32 (§2151 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of this title and Tables.

The Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954, referred to in text, is act July 10, 1954, ch. 469, 68 Stat. 454, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 41 (§1691 et seq.) of Title 7, Agriculture. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1691 of Title 7 and Tables.

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 6005 of this title.

### § 6007. Policy toward a democratic Cuban Government

#### (a) Waiver of restrictions

The President may waive the requirements of section 6005 of this title if the President determines and reports to the Congress that the Government of Cuba—

(1) has held free and fair elections conducted under internationally recognized observers;

(2) has permitted opposition parties ample time to organize and campaign for such elections, and has permitted full access to the media to all candidates in the elections;

(3) is showing respect for the basic civil liberties and human rights of the citizens of Cuba;

(4) is moving toward establishing a free market economic system; and

(5) has committed itself to constitutional change that would ensure regular free and fair elections that meet the requirements of paragraph (2).

#### (b) Policies

If the President makes a determination under subsection (a) of this section, the President

shall take the following actions with respect to a Cuban Government elected pursuant to elections described in subsection (a) of this section:

(1) To encourage the admission or reentry of such government to international organizations and international financial institutions.

(2) To provide emergency relief during Cuba's transition to a viable economic system.

(3) To take steps to end the United States trade embargo of Cuba.

(Pub. L. 102-484, div. A, title XVII, §1708, Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2580.)

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 6003 of this title.

### § 6008. Existing claims not affected

Except as provided in section 6004(a) of this title, nothing in this chapter affects the provisions of section 2370(a)(2) of this title.

(Pub. L. 102-484, div. A, title XVII, §1709, Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2580.)

### § 6009. Enforcement

#### (a) Enforcement authority

The authority to enforce this chapter shall be carried out by the Secretary of the Treasury. The Secretary of the Treasury shall exercise the authorities of the Trading With the Enemy Act [50 App. U.S.C. 1 et seq.] in enforcing this chapter. In carrying out this subsection, the Secretary of the Treasury shall take the necessary steps to ensure that activities permitted under section 6004 of this title are carried out for the purposes set forth in this chapter and not for purposes of the accumulation by the Cuban Government of excessive amounts of United States currency or the accumulation of excessive profits by any person or entity.

#### (b) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary of the Treasury such sums as may be necessary to carry out this chapter.

#### (c) Omitted

#### (d) Applicability of penalties

The penalties set forth in section 16 of the Trading With the Enemy Act [50 App. U.S.C. 16] shall apply to violations of this chapter to the same extent as such penalties apply to violations under that Act [50 App. U.S.C. 1 et seq.].

#### (e) Office of Foreign Assets Control

The Department of the Treasury shall establish and maintain a branch of the Office of Foreign Assets Control in Miami, Florida, in order to strengthen the enforcement of this chapter.

(Pub. L. 102-484, div. A, title XVII, §1710, Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2580.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Trading With the Enemy Act, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (d), is act Oct. 6, 1917, ch. 106, 40 Stat. 411, as amended, which is classified to sections 1 to 6, 7 to 39 and 41 to 44 of Title 50, Appendix, War and National Defense. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

#### CODIFICATION

Section is comprised of section 1710 of Pub. L. 102-484. Subsec. (c) of section 1710 of Pub. L. 102-484 amended



section 16 of the Appendix to Title 50, War and National Defense.

#### § 6010. “United States person” defined

As used in this chapter, the term “United States person” means any United States citizen or alien admitted for permanent residence in the United States, and any corporation, partnership, or other organization organized under the laws of the United States.

(Pub. L. 102-484, div. A, title XVII, §1711, Oct. 23, 1992, 106 Stat. 2581.)

### CHAPTER 70—MANSFIELD FELLOWSHIP PROGRAM

|       |  |
|-------|--|
| Sec.  |  |
| 6101. | Establishment of Fellowship Program. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Establishment.</li> <li>(b) Eligibility of Center for grants.</li> <li>(c) International agreement.</li> <li>(d) Private sources.</li> <li>(e) Use of Federal facilities.</li> </ul> |
| 6102. | Program requirements.  |
| 6103. | Separation of Government personnel during fellowships. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Separation.</li> <li>(b) Reemployment.</li> <li>(c) Rights and benefits.</li> <li>(d) Compliance with Budget Act.</li> </ul>                                       |
| 6104. | Mansfield Fellows on detail from Government service. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) In general.</li> <li>(b) Status as Government employee.</li> <li>(c) Reimbursement.</li> <li>(d) Allowances and benefits.</li> </ul>                                 |
| 6105. | Liability for repayments.  |
| 6106. | Definitions.   |

#### § 6101. Establishment of Fellowship Program

##### (a) Establishment

(1) There is hereby established the “Mike Mansfield Fellowship Program” pursuant to which the Director of the United States Information Agency will make grants, subject to the availability of appropriations, to the Mansfield Center for Pacific Affairs to award fellowships to eligible United States citizens for periods of 2 years each (or, pursuant to section 6102(5)(C) of this title, for such shorter period of time as the Center may determine based on a Fellow’s level of proficiency in the Japanese language or knowledge of the political economy of Japan) as follows:

(A) During the first year each fellowship recipient will study the Japanese language as well as Japan’s political economy.

(B) During the second year each fellowship recipient will serve as a fellow in a parliamentary office, ministry, or other agency of the Government of Japan or, subject to the approval of the Center, a nongovernmental Japanese institution associated with the interests of the fellowship recipient, and the agency of the United States Government from which the fellow originated, consistent with the purposes of this chapter.

(2) Fellowships under this chapter may be known as “Mansfield Fellowships”, and individuals awarded such fellowships may be known as “Mansfield Fellows”.

##### (b) Eligibility of Center for grants

Grants may be made to the Center under this section only if the Center agrees to comply with the requirements of section 6102 of this title.

##### (c) International agreement

The Director of the United States Information Agency should enter into negotiations for an agreement with the Government of Japan for the purpose of placing fellows in the Government of Japan.

##### (d) Private sources

The Center is authorized to accept, use, and dispose of gifts or donations of services or property in carrying out the fellowship program, subject to the review and approval of the Director of the United States Information Agency.

##### (e) Use of Federal facilities

The National Foreign Affairs Training Center is authorized and encouraged to assist, on a reimbursable basis, in carrying out Japanese language training by the Center through the provision of teachers, classroom space, teaching materials, and facilities, to the extent that such provision is not detrimental to the Institute’s carrying out its other responsibilities under law.

(Pub. L. 103-236, title II, §252, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 428.)

#### SHORT TITLE

Section 251 of Pub. L. 103-236 provided that: “This part [part C (§§251-257) of title II of Pub. L. 103-236, enacting this chapter] may be cited as the ‘Mike Mansfield Fellowship Act.’”

#### § 6102. Program requirements

The program established under this chapter shall comply with the following requirements:

(1) United States citizens who are eligible for fellowships under this chapter shall be employees of the Federal Government having at least two years experience in any branch of the Government, a strong career interest in United States-Japan relations, and a demonstrated commitment to further service in the Federal Government, and such other qualifications as are determined by the Center.

(2) Not more than 10 fellowships may be awarded each year of which not more than 3 shall be awarded to individuals who are not detailed employees of the Government.

(3)(A) Fellows shall agree to maintain satisfactory progress in language training and appropriate behavior in Japan, as determined by the Center, as a condition of continued receipt of Federal funds.

(B) Fellows who are not detailees shall agree to return to the Federal Government for further employment for a period of at least 2 years following the end of their fellowships, unless, in the determination of the Center, the fellow is unable (for reasons beyond the fellow’s control and after receiving assistance from the Center as provided in paragraph (8)) to find reemployment for such period.

(4) During the period of the fellowship, the Center shall provide—

(A) to each fellow who is not a detailee a stipend at a rate of pay equal to the rate of pay that individual was receiving when he or she entered the program, plus a cost-of-living adjustment calculated at the same rate of pay, and for the same period of time, for which such adjustments were made to the

salaries of individuals occupying competitive positions in the civil service during the same period as the fellowship; and

(B) to each fellow (including detailees) certain allowances and benefits as that individual would have been entitled to, but for his or her separation from Government service, as a United States Government civilian employee overseas under the Standardized Regulations (Government Civilians, Foreign Areas) of the Department of State, as follows: a living quarters allowance to cover the higher cost of housing in Japan, a post allowance to cover the significantly higher costs of living in Japan, an education allowance to assist parents in providing their children with educational services ordinarily provided without charge by United States public schools, moving expenses of up to \$1,000 for personal belongings of fellows and their families in their move to Japan and one-round-trip economy-class airline ticket to Japan for each fellow and the fellow's immediate family.

(5)(A) For the first year of each fellowship, the Center shall provide fellows with intensive Japanese language training in the Washington, D.C., area, as well as courses in the political economy of Japan.

(B) Such training shall be of the same quality as training provided to Foreign Service officers before they are assigned to Japan.

(C) The Center may waive any or all of the training required by subparagraph (A) to the extent that a fellow has Japanese language skills or knowledge of Japan's political economy, and the 2-year fellowship period shall be shortened to the extent such training is less than one year.

(6) Any fellow who is not a detailee who does not comply with the requirements of this section shall reimburse the United States Information Agency for the Federal funds expended for the Fellow's participation in the fellowship, together with interest on such funds (calculated at the prevailing rate), as follows:

(A) Full reimbursement for noncompliance with paragraph (3)(A) or (9).

(B) Pro rata reimbursement for noncompliance with paragraph (3)(B) for any period the fellow is reemployed by the Federal Government that is less than the period specified in paragraph (3)(B), at a rate equal to the amount the fellow received during the final year of the fellowship for the same period of time, including any allowances and benefits provided under paragraph (4).

(7) The Center shall select fellows based solely on merit. The Center shall make positive efforts to recruit candidates reflecting the cultural, racial, and ethnic diversity of the United States.

(8) The Center shall assist, to the extent possible, any fellow who is not a detailee in finding employment in the Federal Government if such fellow was not able, at the end of the fellowship, to be reemployed in the agency from which he or she separated to become a fellow.

(9) No fellow may engage in any intelligence or intelligence-related activity on behalf of the United States Government.

(10) The financial records of the Center shall be audited annually in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards by independent certified public accountants or independent licensed public accountants, certified or licensed by a regulatory authority of a State or other political subdivision of the United States. The audit shall be conducted at the place or places where the financial records of the Center are normally kept. All books, financial records, files, and other papers, things, and property belonging to or in use by the Center and necessary to facilitate the audit shall be made available to the person or persons conducting the audit, and full facilities for verifying transactions with the balances or securities held by depositories, fiscal agents, and custodians shall be afforded to such person or persons.

(11) The Center shall provide a report of the audit to the Director of the United States Information Agency no later than six months following the close of the fiscal year for which the audit is made. The report shall set forth the scope of the audit and include such statements, together with the independent auditor's opinion of those statements, as are necessary to present fairly the Center's assets and liabilities, surplus or deficit, with reasonable detail, including a statement of the Center's income and expenses during the year, including a schedule of all contracts and grants requiring payments in excess of \$5,000 and any payments of compensation, salaries, or fees at a rate in excess of \$5,000 per year. The report shall be produced in sufficient copies for the public.

(Pub. L. 103-236, title II, §253, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 428.)

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 6101, 6104 of this title.

### § 6103. Separation of Government personnel during fellowships

#### (a) Separation

Under such terms and conditions as the agency head may direct, any agency of the United States Government may separate from Government service for a specified period any officer or employee of that agency who accepts a fellowship under the program established by this chapter and is not detailed under section 6104 of this title.

#### (b) Reemployment

Any fellow who is not a detailee, at the end of the fellowship, is entitled to be reemployed in the same manner as if covered by section 3582 of title 5.

#### (c) Rights and benefits

Notwithstanding section 8347(o), 8713, or 8914 of title 5 and in accordance with regulations of the Office of Personnel Management, an employee, while serving as a fellow who is not a detailee, is entitled to the same rights and benefits as if covered by section 3582 of title 5. The Center shall reimburse the employing agency for any costs incurred under section 3582 of title 5.

**(d) Compliance with Budget Act**

Funds are available under this section to the extent and in the amounts provided in appropriation Acts.

(Pub. L. 103-236, title II, §254, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 430.)

**§ 6104. Mansfield Fellows on detail from Government service****(a) In general**

(1) An agency head may detail, for a period of not more than 2 years, an employee of the agency who has been awarded a Mansfield Fellowship, to the Center.

(2) Each fellow who is detailed under this section shall enter into a written agreement with the Federal Government before receiving a fellowship that the fellow will—

(A) continue in the service of the fellow's agency at the end of the fellowship for a period of at least 2 years unless the fellow is involuntarily separated from the service of such agency; and

(B) pay to the United States Information Agency any additional expenses incurred by the Federal Government in connection with the fellowship if the fellow is voluntarily separated from service with the fellow's agency before the end of the period for which the fellow has agreed to continue in the service of such agency.

(3) The payment agreed to under paragraph (2)(B) may not be required of a fellow who leaves the service of such agency to enter into the service of another agency in any branch of the United States Government unless the head of the agency that authorized the fellowship notifies the employee before the effective date of entry into the service of the other agency that payment will be required under this section.

**(b) Status as Government employee**

A fellow detailed under subsection (a) of this section is deemed, for the purpose of preserving allowances, privileges, rights, seniority, and other benefits, an employee of the agency from which detailed, and is entitled to pay, allowances, and benefits from funds available to that agency. The authorization and payment of such allowances and other benefits from appropriations available therefore is deemed to comply with section 5536 of title 5.

**(c) Reimbursement**

Fellows may be detailed under subsection (a) of this section without reimbursement to the United States by the Center.

**(d) Allowances and benefits**

A fellow detailed under subsection (a) of this section may be paid by the Center for allowances and benefits listed in section 6102(4)(B) of this title.

(Pub. L. 103-236, title II, §255, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 431.)

**SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS**

This section is referred to in section 6103 of this title.

**§ 6105. Liability for repayments**

If any fellow fails to fulfill the fellow's agreement to pay the United States Information

Agency for the expenses incurred by the United States Information Agency in connection with the fellowship, a sum equal to the amount of the expenses of the fellowship shall be recoverable by the United States Information Agency from the fellow (or a legal representative) by—

(1) setoff against accrued pay, compensation, amount of retirement credit, or other amount due the fellow from the Federal Government; and

(2) such other method as is provided by law for the recovery of amounts owing to the Federal Government.

(Pub. L. 103-236, title II, §256, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 432.)

**§ 6106. Definitions**

For purposes of this chapter—

(1) the term "agency of the United States Government" includes any agency of the legislative branch and any court of the judicial branch as well as any agency of the executive branch;

(2) the term "agency head" means—

(A) in the case of the executive branch of Government or an agency of the legislative branch other than the House of Representatives or the Senate, the head of the respective agency;

(B) in the case of the judicial branch of Government, the chief judge of the respective court;

(C) in the case of the Senate, the President pro tempore, in consultation with the Majority Leader and Minority Leader of the Senate; and

(D) in the case of the House of Representatives, the Speaker of the House, in consultation with the Majority Leader and Minority Leader of the House;

(3) the term "Center" means the Mansfield Center for Pacific Affairs; and

(4) the term "detailee" means an employee of an agency of the United States Government on assignment or loan to the Mansfield Center for Pacific Affairs without a change of position from the agency by which he or she is employed.

(Pub. L. 103-236, title II, §257, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 432.)

**CHAPTER 71—UNITED STATES INTERNATIONAL BROADCASTING**

|       |  |
|-------|--|
| Sec.  |  |
| 6201. | Congressional findings and declaration of purposes.  |
| 6202. | Standards and principles. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Broadcasting standards.</li> <li>(b) Broadcasting principles.</li> <li>(c) Voice of America broadcasts.</li> </ul>  |
| 6203. | Establishment of Broadcasting Board of Governors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Establishment.</li> <li>(b) Composition of Board.</li> <li>(c) Term of office.</li> <li>(d) Selection of Board.</li> <li>(e) Compensation.</li> <li>(f) Decisions.</li> </ul> |
| 6204. | Authorities of Board. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Authorities.</li> <li>(b) Broadcasting budgets.</li> </ul>  |

- Sec.
6205. Foreign policy guidance.
6206. International Broadcasting Bureau.  
 (a) Establishment.  
 (b) Selection of Director of Bureau.
6207. Limits on grants for Radio Free Europe and Radio Liberty.  
 (a) Board of RFE/RL, Incorporated.  
 (b) Location of principal place of business.  
 (c) Limitation on grant amounts.  
 (d) Alternative grantee.  
 (e) Not a Federal agency or instrumentality.  
 (f) Authority.  
 (g) Grant agreement.  
 (h) Prohibited uses of grant funds.  
 (i) Report on management practices.  
 (j) Audit authority.  
 (k) Plan for relocation.  
 (l) Reports on personnel classification.
6208. Radio Free Asia.  
 (a) Authority.  
 (b) Functions.  
 (c) Submission of detailed plan for Radio Free Asia.  
 (d) Grant agreement.  
 (e) Limitations on administrative and managerial costs.  
 (f) Assessment of effectiveness of Radio Free Asia.  
 (g) Sunset provision.  
 (h) Notification and consultation regarding displacement of Voice of America broadcasting.  
 (i) Not a Federal agency or instrumentality.
6209. Transition.  
 (a) Authorization.  
 (b) New appointees.  
 (c) Board for International Broadcasting personnel.  
 (d) Other authorities.  
 (e) Repeal.  
 (f) Savings provisions.
6210. Preservation of American jobs.
6211. Privatization of Radio Free Europe and Radio Liberty.  
 (a) Declaration of policy.  
 (b) Presidential submission.  
 (c) Reports on transfer of RFE/RL Research Institute.
6212. Requirement for authorization of appropriations.  
 (a) Limitation on obligation and expenditure of funds.  
 (b) Subsequent authorization.  
 (c) Application.
6213. Definitions.
6214. Relocation costs.

### § 6201. Congressional findings and declaration of purposes

The Congress makes the following findings and declarations:

(1) It is the policy of the United States to promote the right of freedom of opinion and expression, including the freedom “to seek, receive, and impart information and ideas through any media and regardless of frontiers,” in accordance with Article 19 of the Universal Declaration of Human Rights.

(2) Open communication of information and ideas among the peoples of the world contributes to international peace and stability and the promotion of such communication is in the interests of the United States.

(3) It is in the interest of the United States to support broadcasting to other nations consistent with the requirements of this chapter.

(4) The continuation of existing United States international broadcasting, and the creation of a new broadcasting service to the people of the People’s Republic of China and other countries of Asia which lack adequate sources of free information, would enhance the promotion of information and ideas, while advancing the goals of United States foreign policy.

(5) The reorganization and consolidation of United States international broadcasting will achieve important economies and strengthen the capability of the United States to use broadcasting to support freedom and democracy in a rapidly changing international environment.

(Pub. L. 103–236, title III, §302, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 432.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in par. (3), was in the original “this title”, meaning title III of Pub. L. 103–236, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 432, as amended, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of title III to the Code, see Short Title note set out below and Tables.

#### SHORT TITLE

Section 301 of title III of Pub. L. 103–236 provided that: “This title [enacting this chapter, amending sections 1465b, 1465c, and 2873 of this title and section 5315 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, and repealing sections 1463, 2871 to 2877, and 2878 to 2883 of this title and provisions set out as a note under section 2871 of this title] may be cited as the ‘United States International Broadcasting Act of 1994.’”

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 6211 of this title.

### § 6202. Standards and principles

#### (a) Broadcasting standards

United States international broadcasting shall—

(1) be consistent with the broad foreign policy objectives of the United States;

(2) be consistent with the international telecommunications policies and treaty obligations of the United States;

(3) not duplicate the activities of private United States broadcasters;

(4) not duplicate the activities of government supported broadcasting entities of other democratic nations;

(5) be conducted in accordance with the highest professional standards of broadcast journalism;

(6) be based on reliable information about its potential audience; and

(7) be designed so as to effectively reach a significant audience.

#### (b) Broadcasting principles

United States international broadcasting shall include—

(1) news which is consistently reliable and authoritative, accurate, objective, and comprehensive;

(2) a balanced and comprehensive projection of United States thought and institutions, re-

flecting the diversity of United States culture and society;

(3) clear and effective presentation of the policies of the United States Government and responsible discussion and opinion on those policies;

(4) programming to meet needs which remain unserved by the totality of media voices available to the people of certain nations;

(5) information about developments in each significant region of the world;

(6) a variety of opinions and voices from within particular nations and regions prevented by censorship or repression from speaking to their fellow countrymen;

(7) reliable research capacity to meet the criteria under this section;

(8) adequate transmitter and relay capacity to support the activities described in this section; and

(9) training and technical support for independent indigenous media through government agencies or private United States entities.

**(c) Voice of America broadcasts**

The long-range interests of the United States are served by communicating directly with the peoples of the world by radio. To be effective, the Voice of America must win the attention and respect of listeners. These principles will therefore govern Voice of America (VOA) broadcasts:

(1) VOA will serve as a consistently reliable and authoritative source of news. VOA news will be accurate, objective, and comprehensive.

(2) VOA will represent America, not any single segment of American society, and will therefore present a balanced and comprehensive projection of significant American thought and institutions.

(3) VOA will present the policies of the United States clearly and effectively, and will also present responsible discussions and opinion on these policies.

(Pub. L. 103-236, title III, §303, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 433; Pub. L. 103-415, §1(p), Oct. 25, 1994, 108 Stat. 4301.)

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 103-415 added subsec. (c).

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 6204 of this title.

**§ 6203. Establishment of Broadcasting Board of Governors**

**(a) Establishment**

There is hereby established within the United States Information Agency a Broadcasting Board of Governors (hereafter in this chapter referred to as the “Board”).

**(b) Composition of Board**

(1) The Board shall consist of 9 members, as follows:

(A) 8 voting members who shall be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate.

(B) The Director of the United States Information Agency who shall also be a voting member.

(2) The President shall designate one member (other than the Director of the United States Information Agency) as Chairman of the Board.

(3) Exclusive of the Director of the United States Information Agency, not more than 4 of the members of the Board appointed by the President shall be of the same political party.

**(c) Term of office**

The term of office of each member of the Board shall be three years, except that the Director of the United States Information Agency shall remain a member of the Board during the Director’s term of service. Of the other 8 voting members, the initial terms of office of two members shall be one year, and the initial terms of office of 3 other members shall be two years, as determined by the President. The President shall appoint, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, Board members to fill vacancies occurring prior to the expiration of a term, in which case the members so appointed shall serve for the remainder of such term. Any member whose term has expired may serve until a successor has been appointed and qualified. When there is no Director of the United States Information Agency, the acting Director of the agency shall serve as a member of the Board until a Director is appointed.

**(d) Selection of Board**

Members of the Board appointed by the President shall be citizens of the United States who are not regular full-time employees of the United States Government. Such members shall be selected by the President from among Americans distinguished in the fields of mass communications, print, broadcast media, or foreign affairs.

**(e) Compensation**

Members of the Board, while attending meetings of the Board or while engaged in duties relating to such meetings or in other activities of the Board pursuant to this section (including travel time) shall be entitled to receive compensation equal to the daily equivalent of the compensation prescribed for level IV of the Executive Schedule under section 5315 of title 5. While away from their homes or regular places of business, members of the Board may be allowed travel expenses, including per diem in lieu of subsistence, as authorized by law (5 U.S.C. 5703) for persons in the Government service employed intermittently. The Director of the United States Information Agency shall not be entitled to any compensation under this chapter, but may be allowed travel expenses as provided under this subsection.

**(f) Decisions**

Decisions of the Board shall be made by majority vote, a quorum being present. A quorum shall consist of 5 members.

(Pub. L. 103-236, title III, §304, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 434.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 6207 of this title.

**§ 6204. Authorities of Board**

**(a) Authorities**

The Board shall have the following authorities:

(1) To direct and supervise all broadcasting activities conducted pursuant to this chapter, the Radio Broadcasting to Cuba Act [22 U.S.C. 1465 et seq.], and the Television Broadcasting to Cuba Act [22 U.S.C. 1465aa et seq.].

(2) To review and evaluate the mission and operation of, and to assess the quality, effectiveness, and professional integrity of, all such activities within the context of the broad foreign policy objectives of the United States.

(3) To ensure that United States international broadcasting is conducted in accordance with the standards and principles contained in section 6202 of this title.

(4) To review, evaluate, and determine, at least annually, the addition or deletion of language services.

(5) To make and supervise grants for broadcasting and related activities in accordance with sections 6207 and 6208 of this title.

(6) To allocate funds appropriated for international broadcasting activities among the various elements of the International Broadcasting Bureau and grantees, subject to the limitations in sections 6207 and 6208 of this title and subject to reprogramming notification requirements in law for the reallocation of funds.

(7) To review engineering activities to ensure that all broadcasting elements receive the highest quality and cost-effective delivery services.

(8) To undertake such studies as may be necessary to identify areas in which broadcasting activities under its authority could be made more efficient and economical.

(9) To submit to the President and the Congress, through the Director of the United States Information Agency, an annual report which summarizes and evaluates activities under this chapter, the Radio Broadcasting to Cuba Act [22 U.S.C. 1465 et seq.], and the Television Broadcasting to Cuba Act [22 U.S.C. 1465aa et seq.].

(10) To the extent considered necessary to carry out the functions of the Board, procure supplies, services, and other personal property.

(11) To appoint such staff personnel for the Board as the Board may determine to be necessary, subject to the provisions of title 5 governing appointments in the competitive service, and to fix their compensation in accordance with the provisions of chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of such title relating to classification and General Schedule pay rates.

(12) To obligate and expend, for official reception and representation expenses, such amount as may be made available through appropriations (which for each of the fiscal years 1994 and 1995 may not exceed the amount made available to the Board for International Broadcasting for such purposes for fiscal year 1993).

(13) To make available in the annual report required by paragraph (9) information on funds expended on administrative and managerial services by the Bureau and by grantees and the steps the Board has taken to reduce unnecessary overhead costs for each of the broadcasting services.

(14) The Board may provide for the use of United States Government transmitter capacity for relay of Radio Free Asia.

#### (b) Broadcasting budgets

(1) The Director of the Bureau and the grantees identified in sections 6207 and 6208 of this title shall submit proposed budgets to the Board. The Board shall forward its recommendations concerning the proposed budget for the Board and broadcasting activities under this chapter, the Radio Broadcasting to Cuba Act [22 U.S.C. 1465 et seq.], and the Television Broadcasting to Cuba Act [22 U.S.C. 1465aa et seq.] to the Director of the United States Information Agency for the consideration of the Director as a part of the Agency's budget submission to the Office of Management and Budget.

(2) The Director of the United States Information Agency shall include in the Agency's submission to the Office of Management and Budget the comments and recommendations of the Board concerning the proposed broadcasting budget.

#### (c) Implementation

The Director of the United States Information Agency and the Board, in carrying out their functions, shall respect the professional independence and integrity of the International Broadcasting Bureau, its broadcasting services, and grantees.

(Pub. L. 103-236, title III, §305, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 435; Pub. L. 103-415, §1(s)(1), Oct. 25, 1994, 108 Stat. 4302.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Radio Broadcasting to Cuba Act, referred to in subsecs. (a)(1), (9) and (b)(1), is Pub. L. 98-111, Oct. 4, 1983, 97 Stat. 749, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter V-A (§1465 et seq.) of chapter 18 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1465 of this title and Tables.

The Television Broadcasting to Cuba Act, referred to in subsecs. (a)(1), (9) and (b)(1), is part D of title II of Pub. L. 101-246, Feb. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 58, as amended, which is classified principally to subchapter V-B (§1465aa et seq.) of chapter 18 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1465aa of this title and Tables.

The provisions of title 5 governing appointments in the competitive service, referred to in subsec. (a)(11), are classified generally to section 3301 et seq. of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

#### CODIFICATION

Section is comprised of section 305 of Pub. L. 103-236. Subsec. (d) of section 305 of Pub. L. 103-236 amended sections 1465b and 1465c of this title.

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (a)(14). Pub. L. 103-415 substituted “relay of Radio” for “relay to Radio”.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 6207, 6208 of this title.

#### § 6205. Foreign policy guidance

To assist the Board in carrying out its functions, the Secretary of State, acting through the Director of the United States Information Agen-

cy, shall provide information and guidance on foreign policy issues to the Board.

(Pub. L. 103-236, title III, §306, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 436.)

#### § 6206. International Broadcasting Bureau

##### (a) Establishment

There is hereby established an International Broadcasting Bureau within the United States Information Agency (hereafter in this chapter referred to as the “Bureau”), to carry out all nonmilitary international broadcasting activities supported by the United States Government other than those described in sections 6207 and 6208 of this title.

##### (b) Selection of Director of Bureau

(1) The Director of the Bureau shall be appointed by the Chairman of the Board, in consultation with the Director of the United States Information Agency and with the concurrence of a majority of the Board. The Director of the Bureau shall be entitled to receive compensation at the rate prescribed by law for level IV of the Executive Schedule.

(2) Omitted.

(Pub. L. 103-236, title III, §307, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 436.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Level IV of the Executive Schedule, referred to in subsec. (b)(1), is set out in section 5315 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

#### CODIFICATION

Section is comprised of section 307 of Pub. L. 103-236. Subsec. (b)(2) of section 307 of Pub. L. 103-236 amended section 5315 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 6211, 6213 of this title.

#### § 6207. Limits on grants for Radio Free Europe and Radio Liberty

##### (a) Board of RFE/RL, Incorporated

The Board may not make any grant to RFE/RL, Incorporated, unless the certificate of incorporation of RFE/RL, Incorporated, has been amended to provide that—

(1) the Board of Directors of RFE/RL, Incorporated, shall consist of the members of the Broadcasting Board of Governors established under section 6203 of this title and of no other members; and

(2) such Board of Directors shall make all major policy determinations governing the operation of RFE/RL, Incorporated, and shall appoint and fix the compensation of such managerial officers and employees of RFE/RL, Incorporated, as it considers necessary to carry out the purposes of the grant provided under this chapter.

##### (b) Location of principal place of business

(1) The Board may not make any grant to RFE/RL, Incorporated unless the headquarters of RFE/RL, Incorporated and its senior administrative and managerial staff are in a location

which ensures economy, operational effectiveness, and accountability to the Board.

(2) Not later than 90 days after confirmation of all members of the Board, the Board shall provide a report to Congress on the number of administrative, managerial, and technical staff of RFE/RL, Incorporated who will be located within the metropolitan area of Washington, D.C., and the number of employees whose principal place of business will be located outside the metropolitan area of Washington, D.C.

##### (c) Limitation on grant amounts

The total amount of grants made by the Board for the operating costs of Radio Free Europe and Radio Liberty may not exceed \$75,000,000 for any fiscal year after fiscal year 1995.

##### (d) Alternative grantee

If the Board determines at any time that RFE/RL, Incorporated, is not carrying out the functions described in section 6208 of this title in an effective and economical manner, the Board may award the grant to carry out such functions to another entity after soliciting and considering applications from eligible entities in such manner and accompanied by such information as the Board may reasonably require.

##### (e) Not a Federal agency or instrumentality

Nothing in this chapter may be construed to make RFE/RL, Incorporated a Federal agency or instrumentality.

##### (f) Authority

Grants authorized under section 6204 of this title for RFE/RL, Incorporated, shall be available to make annual grants for the purpose of carrying out similar functions as were carried out by RFE/RL, Incorporated, on the day before April 30, 1994, with respect to Radio Free Europe and Radio Liberty, consistent with section 2 of the Board for International Broadcasting Act of 1973 [22 U.S.C. 2871], as in effect on such date.

##### (g) Grant agreement

Grants to RFE/RL, Incorporated, by the Board shall only be made in compliance with a grant agreement. The grant agreement shall establish guidelines for such grants. The grant agreement shall include the following provisions—

(1) that a grant be used only for activities which the Board determines are consistent with the purposes of subsection (f) of this section;

(2) that RFE/RL, Incorporated, shall otherwise comply with the requirements of this section;

(3) that failure to comply with the requirements of this section may result in suspension or termination of a grant without further obligation by the Board or the United States;

(4) that duplication of language services and technical operations between RFE/RL, Incorporated and the International Broadcasting Bureau be reduced to the extent appropriate, as determined by the Board; and

(5) that RFE/RL, Incorporated, justify in detail each proposed expenditure of grant funds, and that such funds may not be used for any other purpose unless the Board gives its prior written approval.

**(h) Prohibited uses of grant funds**

No grant funds provided under this section may be used for the following purposes:

(1)(A) Except as provided in subparagraph (B), to pay any salary or other compensation, or enter into any contract providing for the payment of salary or compensation in excess of the rates established for comparable positions under title 5 or the foreign relations laws of the United States, except that no employee may be paid a salary or other compensation in excess of the rate of pay payable for level IV of the Executive Schedule under section 5315 of title 5.

(B) Salary and other compensation limitations under subparagraph (A) shall not apply prior to October 1, 1995, with respect to any employee covered by a union agreement requiring a salary or other compensation in excess of such limitations.

(2) For any activity for the purpose of influencing the passage or defeat of legislation being considered by Congress.

(3) To enter into a contract or obligation to pay severance payments for voluntary separation for employees hired after December 1, 1990, except as may be required by United States law or the laws of the country where the employee is stationed.

(4) For first class travel for any employee of RFE/RL, Incorporated, or the relative of any employee.

(5) To compensate freelance contractors without the approval of the Board.

**(i) Report on management practices**

(1)<sup>1</sup> Effective not later than March 31 and September 30 of each calendar year, the Inspector General of the United States Information Agency shall submit to the Board, the Director of the United States Information Agency, and the Congress a report on management practices of RFE/RL, Incorporated, under this section. The Inspector General of the United States Information Agency shall establish a special unit within the Inspector General's office to monitor and audit the activities of RFE/RL, Incorporated, and shall provide for on-site monitoring of such activities.

**(j) Audit authority**

(1) Such financial transactions of RFE/RL, Incorporated, as relate to functions carried out under this section may be audited by the General Accounting Office in accordance with such principles and procedures and under such rules and regulations as may be prescribed by the Comptroller General of the United States. Any such audit shall be conducted at the place or places where accounts of RFE/RL, Incorporated, are normally kept.

(2) Representatives of the General Accounting Office shall have access to all books, accounts, records, reports, files, papers, and property belonging to or in use by RFE/RL, Incorporated pertaining to such financial transactions and necessary to facilitate an audit. Such representatives shall be afforded full facilities for verifying transactions with any assets held by deposi-

tories, fiscal agents, and custodians. All such books, accounts, records, reports, files, papers, and property of RFE/RL, Incorporated, shall remain in the possession and custody of RFE/RL, Incorporated.

(3) Notwithstanding any other provision of law and upon repeal of the Board for International Broadcasting Act [22 U.S.C. 2871 et seq.], the Inspector General of the United States Information Agency is authorized to exercise the authorities of the Inspector General Act of 1978 with respect to RFE/RL, Incorporated.

**(k) Plan for relocation**

None of the funds authorized to be appropriated for the fiscal years<sup>2</sup> 1994 or 1995 may be used to relocate the offices or operations of RFE/RL, Incorporated from Munich, Germany, unless—

(1) such relocation is specifically provided for in an appropriation Act or pursuant to a reprogramming notification; and

(2)(A) such relocation is authorized by the Board and the Board submits to the Comptroller General of the United States and the appropriate Congressional<sup>3</sup> committees a detailed plan for such relocation, including cost estimates and any and all fiscal data, audits, business plans, and other documents which justify such relocation; or

(B) prior to the confirmation of all members of the Board, such relocation is authorized by the President, the President certifies that a significant national interest requires that such relocation determination be made before the confirmation of all members of the Board, and the President submits to the Comptroller General of the United States and the appropriate congressional committees a detailed plan for such relocation, including cost estimates and any and all fiscal data, audits, business plans, and other documents which justify such relocation.

**(l) Reports on personnel classification**

Not later than 90 days after the date of confirmation of all members of the Board, the Board shall submit a report to the Congress containing a justification, in terms of the types of duties performed at specific rates of salary and other compensation, of the classification of personnel employed by RFE/RL, Incorporated. The report shall include a comparison of the rates of salary or other compensation and classifications provided to employees of RFE/RL, Incorporated, with the rates of salary or other compensation and classifications of employees of the Voice of America stationed overseas in comparable positions and shall identify any disparities and steps which should be taken to eliminate such disparities.

(Pub. L. 103-236, title III, § 308, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 437.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The foreign relations laws of the United States, referred to in subsec. (h)(1)(A), are classified generally to this title.

The Board for International Broadcasting Act, referred to in subsecs. (f) and (j)(3), is Pub. L. 93-129, Oct.

<sup>2</sup> So in original. Probably should be "year".

<sup>3</sup> So in original. Probably should not be capitalized.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. No par. (2) has been enacted.



19, 1973, 87 Stat. 456, as amended, which was classified generally to chapter 43 (§2871 et seq.) of this title prior to repeal by Pub. L. 103-236, title III, §310(e), Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 442. See section 6209(e) of this title.

The Inspector General Act of 1978, referred to in subsec. (j)(3), is Pub. L. 95-452, Oct. 12, 1978, 92 Stat. 1101, as amended, which is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

LIAISON WITH RFE/RL, INCORPORATED;  
REPRESENTATION AT BOARD MEETINGS

Section 305(b) of Pub. L. 99-93 provided that: “The Secretary of State shall—

“(1) establish an office within the United States Consulate in Munich, Federal Republic of Germany, which shall be responsible for the daily liaison operations of the Department of State with RFE/RL, Incorporated; and

“(2) be represented by an observer at each meeting of the Board for International Broadcasting and of the Board of Directors of RFE/RL, Incorporated.”

PRESIDENTIAL DETERMINATION ON RFE/RL RELOCATION

Determination of President of the United States, No. 94-32, July 12, 1994, 59 F.R. 37649, provided:

Pursuant to the authority vested in me by section 308(k) of the United States International Broadcasting Act of 1994 (Public Law 103-236) [22 U.S.C. 6207(k)] (the “Act”), I hereby certify that significant national interest requires a relocation of the operations of RFE/RL, Incorporated from Munich, Germany, to Prague, Czech Republic, before the confirmation of a new Board of Broadcasting Governors can be completed.

You are authorized and directed to transmit this determination to the appropriate committees of the Congress (as defined in section 314 of the Act [22 U.S.C. 6213]) and to arrange for its publication in the Federal Register.

WILLIAM J. CLINTON.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 6204, 6206 of this title.

**§ 6208. Radio Free Asia**

**(a) Authority**

(1) Grants authorized under section 6204 of this title shall be available to make annual grants for the purpose of carrying out radio broadcasting to the following countries: The People’s Republic of China, Burma, Cambodia, Laos, North Korea, Tibet, and Vietnam.

(2) Such broadcasting service shall be referred to as “Radio Free Asia”.

**(b) Functions**

Radio Free Asia shall—

(1) provide accurate and timely information, news, and commentary about events in the respective countries of Asia and elsewhere; and

(2) be a forum for a variety of opinions and voices from within Asian nations whose people do not fully enjoy freedom of expression.

**(c) Submission of detailed plan for Radio Free Asia**

(1) No grant may be awarded to carry out this section unless the Board, through the Director of the United States Information Agency, has submitted to Congress a detailed plan for the establishment and operation of Radio Free Asia, including—

(A) a description of the manner in which Radio Free Asia would meet the funding limitations provided in subsection (d)(4) of this section;

(B) a description of the numbers and qualifications of employees it proposes to hire; and

(C) how it proposes to meet the technical requirements for carrying out its responsibilities under this section.

(2) The plan required by paragraph (1) shall be submitted not later than 90 days after the date on which all members of the Board are confirmed.

(3) No grant may be awarded to carry out the provisions of this section unless the plan submitted by the Board includes a certification by the Board that Radio Free Asia can be established and operated within the funding limitations provided for in subsection (d)(4) of this section and subsection (d)(5) of this section.

(4) If the Board determines that a Radio Free Asia cannot be established or operated effectively within the funding limitations provided for in this section, the Board may submit, through the Director of the United States Information Agency, an alternative plan and such proposed changes in legislation as may be necessary to the appropriate congressional committees.

**(d) Grant agreement**

Any grant agreement or grants under this section shall be subject to the following limitations and restrictions:

(1)(A) The Board may not make any grant to Radio Free Asia unless the headquarters of Radio Free Asia and its senior administrative and managerial staff are in a location which ensures economy, operational effectiveness, and accountability to the Board.

(B) Not later than 90 days after confirmation of all members of the Board, the Board shall provide a report to Congress on the number of administrative, managerial, and technical staff of Radio Free Asia who will be located within the metropolitan area of Washington, D.C., and the number of employees whose principal place of business will be located outside the metropolitan area of Washington, D.C.

(2) Any grant agreement under this section shall require that any contract entered into by Radio Free Asia shall specify that all obligations are assumed by Radio Free Asia and not by the United States Government, and shall further specify that funds to carry out the activities of Radio Free Asia may not be available after September 30, 1999.

(3) Any grant agreement shall require that any lease agreements entered into by Radio Free Asia shall be, to the maximum extent possible, assignable to the United States Government.

(4) Grants made for the operating costs of Radio Free Asia may not exceed \$22,000,000 in any fiscal year.

(5) The total amount of grant funds made available for one-time capital costs of Radio Free Asia may not exceed \$8,000,000.

(6) Grants awarded under this section shall be made pursuant to a grant agreement which requires that grant funds be used only for activities consistent with this section, and that failure to comply with such requirements shall permit the grant to be terminated without fiscal obligation to the United States.

**(e) Limitations on administrative and managerial costs**

It is the sense of the Congress that administrative and managerial costs for operation of Radio Free Asia should be kept to a minimum and, to the maximum extent feasible, should not exceed the costs that would have been incurred if Radio Free Asia had been operated as a Federal entity rather than as a grantee.

**(f) Assessment of effectiveness of Radio Free Asia**

Not later than 3 years after the date on which initial funding is provided for the purpose of operating Radio Free Asia, the Board shall submit to the appropriate congressional committees a report on—

(1) whether Radio Free Asia is technically sound and cost-effective,

(2) whether Radio Free Asia consistently meets the standards for quality and objectivity established by this chapter,

(3) whether Radio Free Asia is received by a sufficient audience to warrant its continuation,

(4) the extent to which such broadcasting is already being received by the target audience from other credible sources; and

(5) the extent to which the interests of the United States are being served by maintaining broadcasting of Radio Free Asia.

**(g) Sunset provision**

The Board may not make any grant for the purpose of operating Radio Free Asia after September 30, 1998, unless the President of the United States determines in the President's fiscal year 1999 budget submission that continuation of funding for Radio Free Asia for 1 additional year is in the interest of the United States.

**(h) Notification and consultation regarding displacement of Voice of America broadcasting**

The Board shall notify the appropriate congressional committees before entering into any agreements for the utilization of Voice of America transmitters, equipment, or other resources that will significantly reduce the broadcasting activities of the Voice of America in Asia or any other region in order to accommodate the broadcasting activities of Radio Free Asia. The Chairman of the Board shall consult with such committees on the impact of any such reduction in Voice of America broadcasting activities.

**(i) Not a Federal agency or instrumentality**

Nothing in this chapter may be construed to make Radio Free Asia a Federal agency or instrumentality.

(Pub. L. 103-236, title III, §309, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 439; Pub. L. 103-415, §1(s)(2), Oct. 25, 1994, 108 Stat. 4302.)

## AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (d)(1)(B). Pub. L. 103-415 inserted “of all members” after “confirmation”.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 6204, 6206, 6207 of this title.

**§ 6209. Transition****(a) Authorization**

(1) The President is authorized consistent with the purposes of this Act to direct the transfer of all functions and authorities from the Board for International Broadcasting to the United States Information Agency, the Board, or the Bureau as may be necessary to implement this chapter.

(2)(A) Not later than 120 days after April 30, 1994, the Director of the United States Information Agency and the Chairman of the Board for International Broadcasting shall jointly prepare and submit to the President for approval and implementation a plan to implement the provisions of this chapter. Such plan shall include at a minimum a detailed cost analysis to implement fully the recommendations of such plan. The plan shall identify all costs in excess of those authorized for such purposes and shall provide that any excess cost to implement the plan shall be derived only from funds authorized in section 201 of this Act.

(B) The President shall transmit copies of the approved plan, together with any recommendations for legislative changes that may be necessary, to the appropriate congressional committees.

**(b) New appointees**

The Director of the United States Information Agency may assign employees of the Agency for service with RFE/RL, Incorporated, with the concurrence of the president of RFE/RL, Incorporated. Such assignment shall not affect the rights and benefits of such personnel as employees of the United States Information Agency.

**(c) Board for International Broadcasting personnel**

All Board for International Broadcasting full-time United States Government personnel (except special Government employees) and part-time United States Government personnel holding permanent positions shall be transferred to the United States Information Agency, the Board, or the Bureau. Such transfer shall not cause any such employee to be separated or reduced in grade or compensation.

**(d) Other authorities**

The Director of the United States Information Agency is authorized to utilize the provisions of titles VIII and IX of the United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948 [22 U.S.C. 1471 et seq., 1478, 1479], and any other authority available to the Director on April 30, 1994, to the extent that the Director considers necessary in carrying out the provisions and purposes of this chapter.

**(e) Repeal**

The Board for International Broadcasting Act of 1973 (22 U.S.C. 2871, et seq.) is repealed effective September 30, 1995, or the date on which all members of the Board are confirmed, whichever is earlier.<sup>1</sup>

**(f) Savings provisions****(1) Continuing effect of legal documents**

All orders, determinations, rules, regulations, permits, agreements, grants, contracts,

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

certificates, licenses, registrations, privileges, and other administrative actions—

(A) which have been issued, made, granted, or allowed to become effective by the President, any Federal agency or official thereof, or by a court of competent jurisdiction, in the performance of functions which are transferred under this chapter; and

(B) which are in effect at the time this chapter takes effect, or were final before the effective date of this chapter and are to become effective on or after the effective date of this chapter,

shall continue in effect according to their terms until modified, terminated, superseded, set aside, or revoked in accordance with law by the President, the Director of the United States Information Agency or other authorized official, a court of competent jurisdiction, or by operation of law.

**(2) Proceedings not affected**

The provisions of this chapter shall not affect any proceedings pending before the Board for International Broadcasting at the time this chapter takes effect, with respect to functions transferred by this chapter, but such proceedings shall be continued. Orders shall be issued in such proceedings, appeals shall be taken therefrom, and payments shall be made pursuant to such orders, as if this chapter had not been enacted, and orders issued in any such proceedings shall continue in effect until modified, terminated, superseded, or revoked by a duly authorized official, by a court of competent jurisdiction, or by operation of law. Nothing in this subsection shall be deemed to prohibit the termination or modification of any such proceeding under the same terms and conditions and to the same extent that such proceeding could have been terminated or modified if this chapter had not been enacted.

**(3) Suits not affected**

The provisions of this chapter shall not affect suits commenced before the effective date of this chapter, and in all such suits, proceedings shall be had, appeals taken, and judgments rendered in the same manner and with the same effect as if this chapter had not been enacted.

**(4) Nonabatement of actions**

No suit, action, or other proceeding commenced by or against the Board for International Broadcasting or by or against any individual in the official capacity of such individual as an officer of the Board for International Broadcasting shall abate by reason of the enactment of this chapter.

**(5) Administrative actions relating to promulgation of regulations**

Any administrative action relating to the preparation or promulgation of a regulation by the Board for International Broadcasting relating to a function transferred under this chapter may be continued by the United States Information Agency with the same effect as if this chapter had not been enacted.

**(6) References**

A reference in any provision of law, reorganization plan, or other authority to the Asso-

ciate Director for Broadcasting of the United States Information Agency shall be considered to be a reference to the Director of the International Broadcasting Bureau of the United States Information Agency.

**(7) Effect on other laws**

The provisions of, and authorities contained in or transferred pursuant to, this chapter are not intended to repeal, limit, or otherwise derogate from the authorities or functions of or available to the Director of the United States Information Agency or the Secretary of State under law, reorganization plan, or otherwise, unless such provision hereof—

(A) specifically refers to the provision of law or authority existing on the effective date of this chapter, so affected; or

(B) is in direct conflict with such law or authority existing on the effective date of this chapter.

(Pub. L. 103-236, title III, §310, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 442.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(1), is Pub. L. 103-236, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 382, known as the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, Fiscal Years 1994 and 1995. Section 201 of the Act, 108 Stat. 420, is not classified to the Code. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2651 of this title and Tables.

The United States Information and Educational Exchange Act of 1948, referred to in subsec. (d), is act Jan. 27, 1948, ch. 36, 62 Stat. 6, as amended. Title VIII of the Act is classified generally to subchapter VIII (§1471 et seq.) of chapter 18 of this title. Title IX of the Act is classified to sections 1478 and 1479 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1431 of this title and Tables.

The Board for International Broadcasting Act of 1973, referred to in subsec. (e), is Pub. L. 93-129, Oct. 19, 1973, 87 Stat. 456, as amended, which was classified generally to chapter 43 (§2871 et seq.) of this title. As to the date on which all members of the Broadcasting Board of Governors are confirmed, the Members of the Board were confirmed by the Senate on Aug. 11, 1995, see Cong. Rec., vol. 141, p. S12519, Daily Issue.

The effective date of this chapter, referred to in subsec. (f)(1)(B), (3), (7), probably means the date of enactment of title III of Pub. L. 103-236 which enacted this chapter and was approved Apr. 30, 1994.

**§ 6210. Preservation of American jobs**

It is the sense of the Congress that the Director of the United States Information Agency and the Chairman of the Board for International Broadcasting should, in developing the plan for consolidation and reorganization of overseas international broadcasting services, limit, to the maximum extent feasible, consistent with the purposes of the consolidation, elimination of any United States-based positions and should affirmatively seek to transfer as many positions as possible to the United States.

(Pub. L. 103-236, title III, §311, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 444.)

**§ 6211. Privatization of Radio Free Europe and Radio Liberty**

**(a) Declaration of policy**

It is the sense of the Congress that, in furtherance of the objectives of section 6201 of this

title, the funding of Radio Free Europe and Radio Liberty should be assumed by the private sector not later than December 31, 1999, and that the funding of Radio Free Europe and Radio Liberty Research Institute should be assumed by the private sector at the earliest possible time.

**(b) Presidential submission**

The President shall submit with his annual budget submission as provided for in section 6206<sup>1</sup> of this title an analysis and recommendations for achieving the objectives of subsection (a) of this section.

**(c) Reports on transfer of RFE/RL Research Institute**

Not later than 120 days after April 30, 1994, the Board for International Broadcasting, or the Board, if established, shall submit to the appropriate congressional committees a report on the steps being taken to transfer RFE/RL Research Institute pursuant to subsection (a) of this section and shall provide periodic progress reports on such efforts until such transfer has been achieved.

(Pub. L. 103-236, title III, §312, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 444.)

**§ 6212. Requirement for authorization of appropriations**

**(a) Limitation on obligation and expenditure of funds**

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, for the fiscal year 1994 and for each subsequent fiscal year, any funds appropriated for the purposes of broadcasting subject to the direction and supervision of the Board shall not be available for obligation or expenditure—

- (1) unless such funds are appropriated pursuant to an authorization of appropriations; or
- (2) in excess of the authorized level of appropriations.

**(b) Subsequent authorization**

The limitation under subsection (a) of this section shall not apply to the extent that an authorization of appropriations is enacted after such funds are appropriated.

**(c) Application**

The provisions of this section—

- (1) may not be superseded, except by a provision of law which specifically repeals, modifies, or supersedes the provisions of this section; and
- (2) shall not apply to, or affect in any manner, permanent appropriations, trust funds, and other similar accounts which are authorized by law and administered under or pursuant to this chapter.

(Pub. L. 103-236, title III, §313, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 444.)

**CONTINUED AVAILABILITY OF FUNDS FOLLOWING REPEAL OF BOARD FOR INTERNATIONAL BROADCASTING ACT OF 1973**

Pub. L. 103-317, title V, Aug. 26, 1994, 108 Stat. 1771, provided in part: “That on the date upon which the

Board for International Broadcasting Act of 1973 (22 U.S.C. 2871, et seq.) is repealed, as provided for by section 310(e) of the Foreign Relations Authorization Act, fiscal years 1994 and 1995 (Public Law 103-236; 108 Stat. 442) [22 U.S.C. 6209(e)], funds made available for expenses of the Board for International Broadcasting shall be made available until expended only for expenses necessary to enable the Broadcasting Board of Governors to carry out the authorities provided in section 305(a) of Public Law 103-236 [22 U.S.C. 6204(a)], including the appointment of staff personnel as authorized by section 305(a)(11) of Public Law 103-236: *Provided further*, That such amounts appropriated to the Board for International Broadcasting in fiscal year 1994 as are certified by the Office of Management and Budget to the Congress as gains due to the fluctuation of foreign currency, may be used in fiscal year 1995 and thereafter either to offset foreign currency losses or to offset unfunded RFE/RL costs associated with the implementation of Public Law 103-236 [see Tables for classification]: *Provided further*, That obligated but unexpended balances appropriated in fiscal year 1990 to fund planned transmitter modernization expenses may be expended in fiscal year 1995 for unfunded RFE/RL costs associated with the implementation of Public Law 103-236”.

**§ 6213. Definitions**

For the purposes of this chapter—

(1) the term “appropriate congressional committees” means the Committee on Foreign Relations and the Committee on Appropriations of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs and the Committee on Appropriations of the House of Representatives;

(2) the term “RFE/RL, Incorporated” includes—

(A) the corporation having the corporate title described in section 6206(b)(3)<sup>1</sup> of this title; and

(B) any alternative grantee described in section 6206(e)<sup>2</sup> of this title; and

(3) the term “salary or other compensation” includes any deferred compensation or pension payments, any payments for expenses for which the recipient is not obligated to itemize, and any payments for personnel services provided to an employee of RFE/RL, Incorporated.

(Pub. L. 103-236, title III, §314, Apr. 30, 1994, 108 Stat. 445.)

**CHANGE OF NAME**

Committee on Foreign Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on International Relations of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

**§ 6214. Relocation costs**

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, funds derived from the sale of real property assets of RFE/RL in Munich, Germany, may be retained, obligated, and expended to meet one-time costs associated with the consolidation of United States Government broadcasting activities in accordance with this chapter, including the costs of relocating RFE/RL offices and operations.

(Pub. L. 103-236, title III, §315(d), as added Pub. L. 103-415, §1(l), Oct. 25, 1994, 108 Stat. 4303.)

<sup>1</sup> Section 6206 of this title does not relate to annual budget submissions.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. There is no section “6206(b)(3)”.

<sup>2</sup> So in original. Probably should be section “6207(d)”.